Oracle® Database

PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference

12c Release 1 (12.1)

E41829-07

September 2016

ORACLE®

Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference, 12c Release 1 (12.1)

E41829-07

Primary Author: Prashant Kannan

Contributing Authors: Lance Ashdown, Drue Baker, Donna Carver, Maitreyee Chaliha, Beethoven Cheng, Rhonda Day, Steve Fogel, Bryn Llewellyn, Paul Lane, Tony Morales, Chuck Murray, Sue Pelski, Kathy Rich, Antonio Romero, Vivian Schupmann, Cathy Shea, Margaret Taft, Kathy Taylor, Randy Urbano, Rodney Ward

Contributor: The Database 12*c* documentation is dedicated to Mark Townsend, who was an inspiration to all who worked on this release.

Contents

22 DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO

23 DBMS_APPLY_ADM

24 DBMS_AQ

25 DBMS_AQADM

29 DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT

30 DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE

31 DBMS_AUTO_REPORT

32 DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN

33 DBMS_AW_STATS

34 DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM

37 DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL

38 DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION

39 DBMS_CREDENTIAL

40 DBMS_CRYPTO

41 DBMS_CSX_ADMIN

42 DBMS_CUBE

45 DBMS_DATA_MINING

46 DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM

47 DBMS_DATAPUMP

48 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT

52 DBMS_DB_VERSION

53 DBMS_DEBUG

58 DBMS_DESCRIBE

59 DBMS_DG

60 DBMS_DIMENSION

61 DBMS_DNFS

62 DBMS_DST

70 DBMS_FLASHBACK

71 DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE

72 DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH

73 DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET

74 DBMS_HEAT_MAP

75 DBMS_HM

76 DBMS_HPROF

77 DBMS_HS_PARALLEL

78 DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH

89 DBMS_LOCK

90 DBMS_LOGMNR

91 DBMS_LOGMNR_D

92 DBMS_LOGSTDBY

93 DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT

94 DBMS_METADATA

95 DBMS_METADATA_DIFF

96 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL

97 DBMS_MGWADM

98 DBMS_MGWMSG

101 DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN

102 DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY

103 DBMS_ODCI

104 DBMS_OFFLINE_OG

105 DBMS_OUTLN

106 DBMS_OUTPUT

107 DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE

108 DBMS_PART

109 DBMS_PCLXUTIL

110 DBMS_PDB

111 DBMS_PERF

112 DBMS_PIPE

123 DBMS_REFRESH

124 DBMS_REPAIR

125 DBMS_REPCAT

126 DBMS_REPCAT_ADMIN

127 DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE

128 DBMS_REPCAT_RGT

129 DBMS_REPUTIL

130 DBMS_RESCONFIG

131 DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER

138 DBMS_RULE

139 DBMS_RULE_ADM

140 DBMS_SCHEDULER

141 DBMS_SERVER_ALERT

142 DBMS_SERVICE

143 DBMS_SESSION

144 DBMS_SHARED_POOL

145 DBMS_SPACE

146 DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN

149 DBMS_SQL

150 DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR

151 DBMS_SQL_MONITOR

152 DBMS_SQLDIAG

153 DBMS_SQLPA

154 DBMS_SQLTUNE

155 DBMS_STATS

159 DBMS_STREAMS_ADM

160 DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM

161 DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH

162 DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM

163 DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING

164 DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM

179 DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY

180 DBMS_XA

181 DBMS_XDB

184 DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS

185 DBMS_XDB_REPOS

188 DBMS_XDBT

191 DBMS_XMLDOM

192 DBMS_XMLGEN

204 DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM

208 HTP

251 UTL_FILE

252 UTL_HTTP

253 UTL_I18N

260 UTL_RAW

265 UTL_TCP

266 UTL_URL

267 WPG_DOCLOAD

268 ANYDATA TYPE

269 ANYDATASET TYPE

270 ANYTYPE TYPE

271 Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) Types

272 DBFS Content Interface Types

273 Database URI TYPEs

274 JMS Types

275 Logical Change Record TYPEs

284 UTL Streams Types

285 XMLTYPE

Index

Preface

This Preface contains these topics:

Audience

Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference is intended for programmers, systems analysts, project managers, and others interested in developing database applications. This manual assumes a working knowledge of application programming and familiarity with SQL to access information in relational database systems. Some sections also assume a knowledge of basic object-oriented programming.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at
http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit
http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit
http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents:

- *Oracle Database Development Guide*
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference*

Many of the examples in this book use the sample schemas, which are installed by default when you select the Basic Installation option with an Oracle Database installation. Refer to *Oracle Database Sample Schemas* for information on how these schemas were created and how you can use them yourself.

Printed documentation is available for sale in the Oracle Store at

http://shop.oracle.com/

To download free release notes, installation documentation, white papers, or other collateral, please visit the Oracle Technology Network (OTN).

http://docs.oracle.com/

Conventions

This section describes the conventions used in the text and code examples of this documentation set. It describes:

- Conventions in Text
- Conventions in Code Examples

Conventions in Text

We use various conventions in text to help you more quickly identify special terms. The following table describes those conventions and provides examples of their use.

Convention	Meaning	Example
Bold	Bold typeface indicates terms that are defined in the text or terms that appear in a glossary, or both.	When you specify this clause, you create an **index-organized table**.
Italics	Italic typeface indicates book titles or emphasis.	*Oracle Database Concepts* Ensure that the recovery catalog and target database do *not* reside on the same disk.
`UPPERCASE monospace (fixed-width) font`	Uppercase monospace typeface indicates elements supplied by the system. Such elements include parameters, privileges, datatypes, RMAN keywords, SQL keywords, SQL*Plus or utility commands, packages and methods, as well as system-supplied column names, database objects and structures, usernames, and roles.	You can specify this clause only for a `NUMBER` column. You can back up the database by using the `BACKUP` command. Query the `TABLE_NAME` column in the `USER_TABLES` data dictionary view. Use the `DBMS_STATS.GENERATE_STATS` procedure.
`lowercase monospace (fixed-width) font`	Lowercase monospace typeface indicates executable programs, filenames, directory names, and sample user-supplied elements. Such elements include computer and database names, net service names and connect identifiers, user-supplied database objects and structures, column names, packages and classes, usernames and roles, program units, and parameter values. *Note:* Some programmatic elements use a mixture of UPPERCASE and lowercase. Enter these elements as shown.	Enter `sqlplus` to start SQL*Plus. The password is specified in the `orapwd` file. Back up the datafiles and control files in the `/disk1/oracle/dbs` directory. The `department_id`, `department_name`, and `location_id` columns are in the `hr.departments` table. Set the `QUERY_REWRITE_ENABLED` initialization parameter to `true`. The `JRepUtil` class implements these methods.
`lowercase italic monospace (fixed-width) font`	Lowercase italic monospace font represents placeholders or variables.	You can specify the *`parallel_clause`*. Run *`old_release`*`.SQL` where *`old_release`* refers to the release you installed prior to upgrading.

Conventions in Code Examples

Code examples illustrate SQL, PL/SQL, SQL*Plus, or other command-line statements. They are displayed in a monospace (fixed-width) font and separated from normal text as shown in this example:

```
SELECT username FROM dba_users WHERE username = 'MIGRATE';
```

The following table describes typographic conventions used in code examples and provides examples of their use.

Convention	Meaning	Example
`[ ]`	Anything enclosed in brackets is optional.	`DECIMAL (digits [ , precision ])`
`{ }`	Braces are used for grouping items.	`{ENABLE | DISABLE}`
`|`	A vertical bar represents a choice of two options.	`{ENABLE | DISABLE}` `[COMPRESS | NOCOMPRESS]`
`...`	Ellipsis points mean repetition in syntax descriptions.	`CREATE TABLE ... AS subquery;`
	In addition, ellipsis points can mean an omission in code examples or text.	`SELECT col1, col2, ... , coln FROM employees;`
Other symbols	You must use symbols other than brackets ([ ]), braces ({ }), vertical bars (|), and ellipsis points (...) exactly as shown.	`acctbal NUMBER(11,2);` `acct CONSTANT NUMBER(4) := 3;`

Italics	Italicized text indicates placeholders or variables for which you must supply particular values.	`enter password`
		
		`DB_NAME = database_name`

`UPPERCASE`	Uppercase typeface indicates elements supplied by the system. We show these terms in uppercase in order to distinguish them from terms you define. Unless terms appear in brackets, enter them in the order and with the spelling shown. Because these terms are not case sensitive, you can use them in either UPPERCASE or lowercase.	`SELECT last_name, employee_id FROM employees;`
		`SELECT * FROM USER_TABLES;`
		`DROP TABLE hr.employees;`

`lowercase`	Lowercase typeface indicates user-defined programmatic elements, such as names of tables, columns, or files.
	Note: Some programmatic elements use a mixture of UPPERCASE and lowercase. Enter these elements as shown.
		`SELECT last_name, employee_id FROM employees;`
		`sqlplus hr/hr`
		`CREATE USER mjones IDENTIFIED BY ty3MU9;`

Changes in This Release for Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference

This preface contains:

Changes in Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1)

The following are changes in *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1).

New Features

The following features are new in this release:

- Decision Tree Mining Text Data

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING
- Native Text Support

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING and DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM
- Native Text Support

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING and DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM
- XStream Support for XML Object Relational and Binary

  See Logical Change Record TYPEs
- Native Double in Data Mining Functions

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING and DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM
- Feature Selection and Creation for Generalized Linear Models (GLM)

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM
- Expectation Maximization (EM) Clustering and Density Estimation

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING
- Feature Extraction Using Singular Value Decomposition

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING
- Privilege Analysis

  See DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE
- Database Replay Support for Database Consolidation

See DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY

- Rules Engine Result Cache

  See DBMS_RULE

- AQ Rules Engine Fast Evaluation of `SYS_CONTEXT` and Other Predicates

  See DBMS_RULE

- Oracle Data Redaction

  See DBMS_REDACT

- Real-Time Database Operations Monitoring

  See DBMS_MONITOR

- Support for Secure Hash Algorithm SHA-2 in Oracle Database

  See DBMS_CRYPTO

- Pluggable Databases Resource Plans

  See DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER

- Segment-Level Compression Tiering

  See DBMS_ILM, DBMS_ILM_ADMIN and DBMS_HEAT_MAP

- Row-Level Compression Tiering

  See DBMS_ILM, DBMS_ILM_ADMIN and DBMS_HEAT_MAP

- PL/SQL Interface for Managing ADO Policies

  See DBMS_ILM, DBMS_ILM_ADMIN and DBMS_HEAT_MAP

- Resource Manager Runaway Query Management

  See DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER

- Oracle Data Pump No Logging Option for Import

  See DBMS_DATAPUMP

- Oracle Data Pump Export View As a Table

  See DBMS_DATAPUMP and DBMS_METADATA

- Oracle Data Pump: Support SecureFiles LOB as Default

  See DBMS_DATAPUMP and DBMS_METADATA

- Pluggable Databases

  See DBMS_PDB and UTL_RECOMP

- Synchronous Materialized View Refresh

  See DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH

- Enhanced Parallel Statement Queuing

  See DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER and DBMS_SESSION

- XStream New Apply Parameters

  See DBMS_APPLY_ADM

- XStream Optimized Management of Large Transactions

  See DBMS_APPLY_ADM

- Adaptive SQL Plan Management

  See DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE, DBMS_SPM and DBMS_XPLAN
- SQL Plan Directives

  See DBMS_SPD and DBMS_STATS
- Mechanism to Pass Results From SQL Statements Embedded in Database PL/SQL Programs Implicitly to the External Client Program

  See DBMS_SQL
- Concurrent Statistics Gathering

  See DBMS_SPD and DBMS_STATS
- Application Continuity for Java

  See DBMS_APP_CONT and DBMS_SERVICE
- SQL Translation Framework

  See DBMS_SERVICE, DBMS_SQL and DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR
- New Types of Optimizer Statistics

  See DBMS_SPD and DBMS_STATS
- Session-Private Statistics for Global Temporary Table

  See DBMS_SPD and DBMS_STATS
- Adaptive Query Optimization

  See DBMS_XPLAN
- Rolling Upgrade Using Active Data Guard

  See DBMS_ROLLING
- Enable Digest Authentication with Oracle Database HTTP Listener

  See DBMS_XDB, DBMS_XDB_ADMIN and DBMS_XDBZ
- XStream New Capture Parameters

  See DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM
- Online Redefinition of Multiple Partitions

  See DBMS_REDEFINITION
- Support Redefinition of Tables With VPD Policies

  See DBMS_REDEFINITION
- Lock Timeout for `FINISH_REDEF_TABLE`

  See DBMS_REDEFINITION
- New Job Types

  See DBMS_SCHEDULER
- Native Text Support

  See DBMS_DATA_MINING and DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM
- Sharded Queues for Performance and Scalability

  See DBMS_AQ, DBMS_AQADM and DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM

- New PL/SQL `DBMS_UTILITY.EXPAND_SQL_TEXT` Procedure

  See DBMS_UTILITY
- New PL/SQL Package `UTL_CALL_STACK`

  See UTL_CALL_STACK
- Oracle Data Pump Support for Database Consolidation: Full Transportable

  See DBMS_DATAPUMP
- Automatic Column Group Detection

  See DBMS_STATS
- Heat Map

  See DBMS_HEAT_MAP, DBMS_ILM, DBMS_ILM_ADMIN and DBMS_FLASHBACK
- New `schema` Parameter for `DBMS_SQL.PARSE` Procedure

  See DBMS_SQL
- Asynchronous Global Index Maintenance for `DROP` and `TRUNCATE` Partition

  See DBMS_PART
- VPD Fine-Grained Context-Sensitive Policies

  See DBMS_RLS
- Out-of-Place Materialized View Refresh

  See DBMS_MVIEW
- Improved Automatic Degree of Parallelism

  See DBMS_STATS
- Transparent Sensitive Data Protection

  See DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE and DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT
- Oracle Data Pump Enhanced Compression Options

  See DBMS_DATAPUMP
- Enhancements to System Statistics

  See DBMS_STATS
- Transaction Guard

  See DBMS_APP_CONT
- Enhancements to Incremental Statistics

  See DBMS_STATS
- Temporal Validity Flashback Queries

  See DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE
- `LOGTIME` Parameter for Oracle Data Pump Command

  See DBMS_DATAPUMP
- Queryable Patch Inventory

  See DBMS_QOPATCH

- Enterprise Manager Database Express

  See DBMS_XDB_ADMIN and DBMS_XDB_CONFIG

1

Introduction to Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages & Types

Oracle supplies many PL/SQL packages with the Oracle server to extend database functionality and provide PL/SQL access to SQL features. You can use the supplied packages when creating your applications or for ideas in creating your own stored procedures.

This manual covers the packages provided with the Oracle database server. Packages supplied with other products, such as Oracle Developer or the Oracle Application Server, are not covered.

Note that not every package or type described in this manual or elsewhere in the Oracle Database Documentation Library is installed by default. In such cases, the documentation states this and explains how to install the object. Run this query as a suitably privileged user:

```
SELECT DISTINCT Owner, Object_Type, Object_Name FROM DBA_Objects_AE
     WHERE Owner IN (
       'SYS', 'OUTLN', 'SYSTEM', 'CTXSYS', 'DBSNMP',
       'LOGSTDBY_ADMINISTRATOR', 'ORDSYS',
       'ORDPLUGINS', 'OEM_MONITOR', 'MDSYS', 'LBACSYS',
       'DMSYS', 'WMSYS', 'OLAPDBA', 'OLAPSVR', 'OLAP_USER',
       'OLAPSYS', 'EXFSYS', 'SYSMAN', 'MDDATA',
       'SI_INFORMTN_SCHEMA', 'XDB', 'ODM')
     AND Object_Type IN ('PACKAGE', 'TYPE')
     ORDER BY Owner, Object_Type, Object_Name
```

This lists every Oracle-supplied package and type that is currently installed in the database. Note that it lists a number of objects not mentioned in the Oracle Database Documentation Library. This is deliberate. Some of the Oracle-supplied packages and types are intended to be used only by other Oracle-supplied components. Any package or type that is not described in the Oracle Database Documentation Library is not supported for direct customer use.

This chapter contains the following topics:

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide* for information on how to create your own packages

Package Overview

A *package* is an encapsulated collection of related program objects stored together in the database. Program objects are procedures, functions, variables, constants, cursors, and exceptions.

Package Components

PL/SQL packages have two parts: the specification and the body, although sometimes the body is unnecessary. The specification is the interface to your application; it declares the types, variables, constants, exceptions, cursors, and subprograms available for use. The body fully defines cursors and subprograms, and so implements the specification.

Unlike subprograms, packages cannot be called, parameterized, or nested. However, the formats of a package and a subprogram are similar:

```
CREATE PACKAGE name AS  -- specification (visible part)
   -- public type and item declarations
   -- subprogram specifications
END [name];

CREATE PACKAGE BODY name AS  -- body (hidden part)
   -- private type and item declarations
   -- subprogram bodies
[BEGIN
   -- initialization statements]
END [name];
```

The specification holds public declarations that are visible to your application. The body holds implementation details and private declarations that are hidden from your application. You can debug, enhance, or replace a package body without changing the specification. You can change a package body without recompiling calling programs because the implementation details in the body are hidden from your application.

Using Oracle Supplied Packages

Most Oracle supplied packages are automatically installed when the database is created. Certain packages are not installed automatically. Special installation instructions for these packages are documented in the individual chapters.

To call a PL/SQL function from SQL, you must either own the function or have `EXECUTE` privileges on the function. To select from a view defined with a PL/SQL function, you must have `SELECT` privileges on the view. No separate `EXECUTE` privileges are needed to select from the view. Instructions on special requirements for packages are documented in the individual chapters.

Creating New Packages

To create packages and store them permanently in an Oracle database, use the `CREATE PACKAGE` and `CREATE PACKAGE BODY` statements. You can execute these statements interactively from SQL*Plus or Enterprise Manager.

To create a new package, do the following:

1. Create the package specification with the `CREATE PACKAGE` statement.

   You can declare program objects in the package specification. Such objects are called *public* objects. Public objects can be referenced outside the package, as well as by other objects in the package.

   Note: It is often more convenient to add the `OR REPLACE` clause in the `CREATE PACKAGE` statement. But note that `CREATE PACKAGE` warns you if you are about to overwrite an existing package with the same name while `CREATE OR REPLACE just` overwrites it with no warning.

2. Create the package body with the `CREATE PACKAGE BODY` statement.

   You can declare and define program objects in the package body.

   - You must define public objects declared in the package specification.
   - You can declare and define additional package objects, called *private* objects. Private objects are declared in the package body rather than in the package specification, so they can be referenced only by other objects in the package. They cannot be referenced outside the package.

   See Also:

   - *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference*
   - *Oracle Database Development Guide*for more information on creating new packages
   - *Oracle Database Concepts*

   for more information on storing and executing packages

Separating the Specification and Body

The specification of a package declares the public types, variables, constants, and subprograms that are visible outside the immediate scope of the package. The body of a package defines the objects declared in the specification, as well as private objects that are not visible to applications outside the package.

Oracle stores the specification and body of a package separately in the database. Other schema objects that call or reference public program objects depend only on the package specification, not on the package body. Using this distinction, you can change the definition of a program object in the package body without causing Oracle to invalidate other schema objects that call or reference the program object. Oracle invalidates dependent schema objects only if you change the declaration of the program object in the package specification.

Creating a New Package: Example

The following example shows a package specification for a package named `EMPLOYEE_MANAGEMENT`. The package contains one stored function and two stored procedures.

```
CREATE PACKAGE employee_management AS
   FUNCTION hire_emp (name VARCHAR2, job VARCHAR2,
      mgr NUMBER, hiredate DATE, sal NUMBER, comm NUMBER,
      deptno NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER;
   PROCEDURE fire_emp (emp_id NUMBER);
   PROCEDURE sal_raise (emp_id NUMBER, sal_incr NUMBER);
END employee_management;
```

The body for this package defines the function and the procedures:

```
CREATE PACKAGE BODY employee_management AS
   FUNCTION hire_emp (name VARCHAR2, job VARCHAR2,
      mgr NUMBER, hiredate DATE, sal NUMBER, comm NUMBER,
      deptno NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
```

The function accepts all arguments for the fields in the employee table except for the employee number. A value for this field is supplied by a sequence. The function returns the sequence number generated by the call to this function.

```
       new_empno    NUMBER(10);

   BEGIN
      SELECT emp_sequence.NEXTVAL INTO new_empno FROM dual;
      INSERT INTO emp VALUES (new_empno, name, job, mgr,
         hiredate, sal, comm, deptno);
      RETURN (new_empno);
   END hire_emp;

   PROCEDURE fire_emp(emp_id IN NUMBER) AS
```

The procedure deletes the employee with an employee number that corresponds to the argument `emp_id`. If no employee is found, then an exception is raised.

```
   BEGIN
      DELETE FROM emp WHERE empno = emp_id;
      IF SQL%NOTFOUND THEN
      raise_application_error(-20011, 'Invalid Employee
         Number: ' || TO_CHAR(emp_id));
   END IF;
END fire_emp;

PROCEDURE sal_raise (emp_id IN NUMBER, sal_incr IN NUMBER) AS
```

The procedure accepts two arguments. `Emp_id` is a number that corresponds to an employee number. `Sal_incr` is the amount by which to increase the employee's salary.

```
   BEGIN

   -- If employee exists, then update salary with increase.

      UPDATE emp
         SET sal = sal + sal_incr
         WHERE empno = emp_id;
      IF SQL%NOTFOUND THEN
         raise_application_error(-20011, 'Invalid Employee
            Number: ' || TO_CHAR(emp_id));
      END IF;
   END sal_raise;
END employee_management;
```

Note: If you want to try this example, then first create the sequence number `emp_sequence`. You can do this using the following SQL*Plus statement:

```
SQL> CREATE SEQUENCE emp_sequence
   > START WITH 8000 INCREMENT BY 10;
```

Referencing Package Contents

To reference the types, items, and subprograms declared in a package specification, use the dot notation. For example:

```
package_name.type_name
package_name.item_name
package_name.subprogram_name
```

Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages and Types

Table 1–1 lists the supplied PL/SQL server packages. These packages run as the invoking user, rather than the package owner. Unless otherwise noted, the packages are callable through public synonyms of the same name.

Caution:

- The procedures and functions provided in these packages and their external interfaces are reserved by Oracle and are subject to change.
- Modifying Oracle supplied packages can cause internal errors and database security violations. Do not modify supplied packages.

Table 1–1 Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
APEX_CUSTOM_AUTH	Provides an interface for authentication and session management
APEX_APPLICATION	Enables users to take advantage of global variables
APEX_ITEM	Enables users to create form elements dynamically based on a SQL query instead of creating individual items page by page
APEX_UTIL	Provides utilities for getting and setting session state, getting files, checking authorizations for users, resetting different states for users, and also getting and setting preferences for users
CTX_ADM	Lets you administer servers and the data dictionary
CTX_CLS	Lets you generate CTXRULE rules for a set of documents
CTX_DDL	Lets you create and manage the preferences, section lists and stopgroups required for Text indexes
CTX_DOC	Lets you request document services
CTX_OUTPUT	Lets you manage the index log
CTX_QUERY	Lets you generate query feedback, count hits, and create stored query expressions
CTX_REPORT	Lets you create various index reports
CTX_THES	Lets you to manage and browse thesauri
CTX_ULEXER	For use with the user-lexer
DBMS_ADDM	Facilitates the use of Advisor functionality regarding the Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor
DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE	Contains interfaces for advanced query rewrite users to create, drop, and maintain functional equivalence declarations for query rewrite
DBMS_ADVISOR	Part of the SQLAccess Advisor, an expert system that identifies and helps resolve performance problems relating to the execution of SQL statements

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_ALERT	Provides support for the asynchronous notification of database events
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO	Lets you register an application name with the database for auditing or performance tracking purposes
DBMS_APPLY_ADM	Provides administrative procedures to start, stop, and configure an apply process
DBMS_AQ	Lets you add a message (of a predefined object type) onto a queue or to dequeue a message
DBMS_AQADM	Lets you perform administrative functions on a queue or queue table for messages of a predefined object type
DBMS_AQELM	Provides procedures to manage the configuration of Advanced Queuing asynchronous notification by e-mail and HTTP
DBMS_AQIN	Plays a part in providing secure access to the Oracle JMS interfaces
DBMS_ASSERT	Provides an interface to validate properties of the input value
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN	Used by the DBA as well as Enterprise Manager to access the AUTOTASK controls
DBMS_AW_STATS	Contains a subprogram that generates and stores optimizer statistics for cubes and dimensions
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM	Describes administrative procedures to start, stop, and configure a capture process; used in Streams
DBMS_COMPARISON	Provides interfaces to compare and converge database objects at different databases
DBMS_COMPRESSION	Provides an interface to facilitate choosing the correct compression level for an application
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL	Provides an interface to manage the Database Resident Connection Pool
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION	Is part of a set of features that clients use to receive notifications when result sets of a query have changed. The package contains interfaces that can be used by mid-tier clients to register objects and specify delivery mechanisms.
DBMS_CRYPTO	Lets you encrypt and decrypt stored data, can be used in conjunction with PL/SQL programs running network communications, and supports encryption and hashing algorithms
DBMS_CSX_ADMIN	Provides an interface to customize the setup when transporting a tablespace containing binary XML data
DBMS_CUBE	Contains subprograms that create OLAP cubes and dimensions, and that load and process the data for querying
DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE	Contains subprograms for evaluating cube materialized views to support log-based fast refresh and query rewrite
DBMS_DATA_MINING	Implements the Oracle Data Mining interface for creating, evaluating, and managing mining models
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM	Provides subroutines that can be used to prepare data for Oracle Data Mining

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_DATAPUMP	Lets you move all, or part of, a database between databases, including both data and metadata
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT	Provides an interface comprising a file system-like abstraction backed by one or more Store Providers
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI	Provides the Application Programming Interface (API) specification for DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT service providers
DBMS_DBFS_HS	Provides users the ability to use tape or Amazon S3 Web service as a storage tier when doing Information Lifecycle Management for their database tables
DBMS_DBFS_SFS	Provides an interface to operate a SecureFile-based store (SFS) for the content interface described in the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package
DBMS_DB_VERSION	Specifies the Oracle version numbers and other information useful for simple conditional compilation selections based on Oracle versions
DBMS_DDL	Provides access to some SQL DDL statements from stored procedures, and provides special administration operations not available as DDLs
DBMS_DEBUG	Implements server-side debuggers and provides a way to debug server-side PL/SQL program units
DBMS_DEFER	Provides the user interface to a replicated transactional deferred remote procedure call facility. Requires the Distributed Option.
DBMS_DEFER_QUERY	Permits querying the deferred remote procedure calls (RPC) queue data that is not exposed through views. Requires the Distributed Option.
DBMS_DEFER_SYS	Provides the system administrator interface to a replicated transactional deferred remote procedure call facility. Requires the Distributed Option.
DBMS_DESCRIBE	Describes the arguments of a stored procedure with full name translation and security checking
DBMS_DG	Allows applications to notify the primary database in an Oracle Data Guard broker environment to initiate a fast-start failover when the application encounters a condition that warrants a failover
DBMS_DIMENSION	Enables you to verify dimension relationships and provides an alternative to the Enterprise Manager Dimension Wizard for displaying a dimension definition
DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN	Maintains the Trusted Database List, which is used to determine if a privileged database link from a particular server can be accepted
DBMS_EPG	Implements the embedded PL/SQL gateway that enables a Web browser to invoke a PL/SQL stored procedure through an HTTP listener
DBMS_ERRLOG	Provides a procedure that enables you to create an error logging table so that DML operations can continue after encountering errors rather than abort and roll back
DBMS_EXPFIL	Contains all the procedures used to manage attribute sets, expression sets, expression indexes, optimizer statistics, and privileges by Expression Filter

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_FGA	Provides fine-grained security functions
DBMS_FILE_GROUP	One of a set of Streams packages, provides administrative interfaces for managing file groups, file group versions, files and file group repositories
DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER	Lets you copy a binary file within a database or to transfer a binary file between databases
DBMS_FLASHBACK	Lets you flash back to a version of the database at a specified wall-clock time or a specified system change number (SCN)
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE	Contains procedures for disassociation and re-association of a Flashback Data Archive (FDA) enabled table from/with its underlying FDA respectively.
DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET	Enables frequent itemset counting
DBMS_HM	Contains constants and procedure declarations for health check management
DBMS_HPROF	Provides an interface for profiling the execution of PL/SQL applications
DBMS_HS_PARALLEL	Enables parallel processing for heterogeneous targets access
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH	Lets you use Heterogeneous Services to send pass-through SQL statements to non-Oracle systems
DBMS_IOT	Creates a table into which references to the chained rows for an Index Organized Table can be placed using the ANALYZE command
DBMS_JAVA	Provides a PL/SQL interface for accessing database functionality from Java
DBMS_JOB	Schedules and manages jobs in the job queue
DBMS_LDAP	Provides functions and procedures to access data from LDAP servers
DBMS_LDAP_UTL	Provides the Oracle Extension utility functions for LDAP
DBMS_LIBCACHE	Prepares the library cache on an Oracle instance by extracting SQL and PL/SQL from a remote instance and compiling this SQL locally without execution
DBMS_LOB	Provides general purpose routines for operations on Oracle Large Object (LOBs) datatypes - BLOB, CLOB (read/write), and BFILEs (read-only)
DBMS_LOCK	Lets you request, convert and release locks through Oracle Lock Management services
DBMS_LOGMNR	Provides functions to initialize and run the log reader
DBMS_LOGMNR_D	Queries the dictionary tables of the current database, and creates a text based file containing their contents
DBMS_LOGSTDBY	Describes procedures for configuring and managing the logical standby database environment
DBMS_METADATA	Lets callers easily retrieve complete database object definitions (metadata) from the dictionary

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_METADATA_DIFF	Contains the interfaces for comparing two metadata documents in SXML format. The result of the comparison is an SXML difference document. This document can be converted to other formats using the DBMS_METADATA submit interface and the CONVERT API.
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL	Provides a set of utility subprograms
DBMS_MGWADM	Describes the Messaging Gateway administrative interface; used in Advanced Queuing
DBMS_MGWMSG	Describes object types (used by the canonical message types to convert message bodies) and helper methods, constants, and subprograms for working with the Messaging Gateway message types; used in Advanced Queuing.
DBMS_MONITOR	Let you use PL/SQL for controlling additional tracing and statistics gathering
DBMS_MVIEW	Lets you refresh snapshots that are not part of the same refresh group and purge logs. DBMS_SNAPSHOT is a synonym.
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN	Provides the interface to administer the network Access Control List (ACL)
DBMS_NETWORK_UTL	Provides the interface to administer the network Access Control List (ACL)
DBMS_ODCI	Returns the CPU cost of a user function based on the elapsed time of the function
DBMS_OFFLINE_OG	Provides a public interface for offline instantiation of master groups
DBMS_OLAP	Provides procedures for summaries, dimensions, and query rewrites
DBMS_OUTLN	Provides the interface for procedures and functions associated with management of stored outlines Synonymous with OUTLN_PKG
DBMS_OUTPUT	Accumulates information in a buffer so that it can be retrieved later
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE	Enables the user to incrementally update table data in parallel
DBMS_PCLXUTIL	Provides intra-partition parallelism for creating partition-wise local indexes
DBMS_PIPE	Provides a DBMS pipe service which enables messages to be sent between sessions
DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS	Provides subroutines that implement automatic data mining operations for predict, explain, and profile
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR	Provides an interface to print or retrieve the source text of a PL/SQL unit in its post-processed form
DBMS_PROFILER	Provides a Probe Profiler API to profile existing PL/SQL applications and identify performance bottlenecks
DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM	Provides administrative procedures for configuring propagation from a source queue to a destination queue
DBMS_RANDOM	Provides a built-in random number generator

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_RECTIFIER_DIFF	Provides an interface to detect and resolve data inconsistencies between two replicated sites
DBMS_REDEFINITION	Lets you perform an online reorganization of tables
DBMS_REFRESH	Lets you create groups of snapshots that can be refreshed together to a transactionally consistent point in time Requires the Distributed Option
DBMS_REPAIR	Provides data corruption repair procedures
DBMS_REPCAT	Provides routines to administer and update the replication catalog and environment. Requires the Replication Option.
DBMS_REPCAT_ADMIN	Lets you create users with the privileges needed by the symmetric replication facility. Requires the Replication Option.
DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE	Instantiates deployment templates. Requires the Replication Option.
DBMS_REPCAT_RGT	Controls the maintenance and definition of refresh group templates. Requires the Replication Option.
DBMS_REPUTIL	Provides routines to generate shadow tables, triggers, and packages for table replication.
DBMS_RESCONFIG	Provides an interface to operate on the Resource Configuration List, and to retrieve listener information for a resource
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER	Maintains plans, consumer groups, and plan directives; it also provides semantics so that you may group together changes to the plan schema
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS	Maintains privileges associated with resource consumer groups
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE	Provides an interface to operate on the Result Cache
DBMS_RESUMABLE	Lets you suspend large operations that run out of space or reach space limits after executing for a long time, fix the problem, and make the statement resume execution
DBMS_RLMGR	Contains various procedures to create and manage rules and rule sessions by the Rules Manager
DBMS_RLS	Provides row level security administrative interface
DBMS_ROWID	Provides procedures to create rowids and to interpret their contents
DBMS_RULE	Describes the EVALUATE procedure used in Streams
DBMS_RULE_ADM	Describes the administrative interface for creating and managing rules, rule sets, and rule evaluation contexts; used in Streams
DBMS_SCHEDULER	Provides a collection of scheduling functions that are callable from any PL/SQL program
DBMS_SERVER_ALERT	Lets you issue alerts when some threshold has been violated
DBMS_SERVICE	Lets you create, delete, activate and deactivate services for a single instance

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_SESSION	Provides access to SQL ALTER SESSION statements, and other session information, from stored procedures
DBMS_SHARED_POOL	Lets you keep objects in shared memory, so that they will not be aged out with the normal LRU mechanism
DBMS_SPACE	Provides segment space information not available through standard SQL
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN	Provides tablespace and segment space administration not available through the standard SQL
DBMS_SPM	Supports the SQL plan management feature by providing an interface for the DBA or other user to perform controlled manipulation of plan history and SQL plan baselines maintained for various SQL statements
DBMS_SQL	Lets you use dynamic SQL to access the database
DBMS_SQLDIAG	Provides an interface to the SQL Diagnosability functionality
DBMS_SQLPA	Provides an interface to implement the SQL Performance Analyzer.
DBMS_SQLTUNE	Provides the interface to tune SQL statements
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS	Provides statistical functions
DBMS_STATS	Provides a mechanism for users to view and modify optimizer statistics gathered for database objects
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP	Communicates with FMON to invoke mapping operations
DBMS_STREAMS	Describes the interface to convert SYS.AnyData objects into LCR objects and an interface to annotate redo entries generated by a session with a binary tag.
DBMS_STREAMS_ADMIN	Describes administrative procedures for adding and removing simple rules, without transformations, for capture, propagation, and apply at the table, schema, and database level
DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM	Provides an interface to gather information about an Oracle Streams environment and advise database administrators based on the information gathered
DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH	Provides interfaces for granting privileges to Streams administrators and revoking privileges from Streams administrators
DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM	Provides interfaces to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from a SYS.AnyData queue
DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING	Provides interfaces to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from a SYS.AnyData queue
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM	Provides administrative procedures for copying tablespaces between databases and moving tablespaces from one database to another

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_TDB	Reports whether a database can be transported between platforms using the RMAN CONVERT DATABASE command. It verifies that databases on the current host platform are of the same endian format as the destination platform, and that the state of the current database does not prevent transport of the database.
DBMS_TRACE	Provides routines to start and stop PL/SQL tracing
DBMS_TRANSACTION	Provides access to SQL transaction statements from stored procedures and monitors transaction activities
DBMS_TRANSFORM	Provides an interface to the message format transformation features of Oracle Advanced Queuing
DBMS_TTS	Checks if the transportable set is self-contained
DBMS_TYPES	Consists of constants, which represent the built-in and user-defined types
DBMS_UTILITY	Provides various utility routines
DBMS_WARNING	Provides the interface to query, modify and delete current system or session settings
DBMS_WM	Describes how to use the programming interface to Oracle Database Workspace Manager to work with long transactions
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE	Configures the Workload Capture system and produce the workload capture data.
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY	Provides an interface to replay and report on a record of a workload on a production or test system
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY	Lets you manage the Workload Repository, performing operations such as managing snapshots and baselines
DBMS_XA	Contains the XA/Open interface for applications to call XA interface in PL/SQL
DBMS_XDB	Describes Resource Management and Access Control interface for PL/SQL
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN	Provides an interface to implement XMLIndex administration operation
DBMS_XDBRESOURCE	Provides an interface to operate on the XDB resource's metadata and contents
DBMS_XDB_VERSION	Describes the versioning interface
DBMS_XDBT	Describes how an administrator can create a ConText index on the XML DB hierarchy and configure it for automatic maintenance
DBMS_XDBZ	Controls the Oracle XML DB repository security, which is based on Access Control Lists (ACLs)
DBMS_XEVENT	Provides event-related types and supporting subprograms
DBMS_XMLDOM	Explains access to XMLType objects
DBMS_XMLGEN	Converts the results of a SQL query to a canonical XML format
DBMS_XMLINDEX	Provides an interface to implement asychronous indexing and apply node referencing

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
DBMS_XMLPARSER	Explains access to the contents and structure of XML documents
DBMS_XMLQUERY	Provides database-to-XMLType functionality
DBMS_XMLSAVE	Provides XML-to-database-type functionality
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA	Explains procedures to register and delete XML schemas
DBMS_XMLSTORE	Provides the ability to store XML data in relational tables
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS	Provides an interface to perform translations so that strings can be searched or displayed in various languages
DBMS_XPLAN	Describes how to format the output of the EXPLAIN PLAN command
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR	Explains access to the contents and structure of XML documents
DEBUG_EXTPROC	Lets you debug external procedures on platforms with debuggers that attach to a running process
HTF	Hypertext functions generate HTML tags
HTP	Hypertext procedures generate HTML tags
ORD_DICOM	Supports the management and manipulation of Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) content stored in BLOBs or BFILEs rather than in an ORDDicom object type
ORD_DICOM_ADMIN	Used by Oracle Multimedia Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) administrators to maintain the Oracle Multimedia DICOM data model repository
OWA_CACHE	Provides an interface that enables the PL/SQL Gateway cache to improve the performance of PL/SQL Web applications
OWA_COOKIE	Provides an interface for sending and retrieving HTTP cookies from the client's browser
OWA_CUSTOM	Provides a Global PLSQL Agent Authorization callback function
OWA_IMAGE	Provides an interface to access the coordinates where a user clicked on an image
OWA_OPT_LOCK	Contains subprograms that impose optimistic locking strategies so as to prevent lost updates
OWA_PATTERN	Provides an interface to locate text patterns within strings and replace the matched string with another string
OWA_SEC	Provides an interface for custom authentication
OWA_TEXT	Contains subprograms used by OWA_PATTERN for manipulating strings. They are externalized so you can use them directly.
OWA_UTIL	Contains utility subprograms for performing operations such as getting the value of CGI environment variables, printing the data that is returned to the client, and printing the results of a query in an HTML table

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
SDO_CS	Provides functions for coordinate system transformation
SDO_CSW_PROCESS	Contains subprograms for various processing operations related to support for Catalog Services for the Web (CSW)
SDO_GCDR	Contains the Oracle Spatial geocoding subprograms, which let you geocode unformatted postal addresses
SDO_GEOM	Provides functions implementing geometric operations on spatial objects
SDO_GEOR	Contains functions and procedures for the Spatial GeoRaster feature, which lets you store, index, query, analyze, and deliver raster image data and its associated Spatial vector geometry data and metadata
SDO_GEOR_ADMIN	Contains subprograms for administrative operations related to GeoRaster.
SDO_GEOR_UTL	Contains utility functions and procedures for the Spatial GeoRaster feature, including those related to using triggers with GeoRaster data
SDO_LRS	Provides functions for linear referencing system support
SDO_MIGRATE	Provides functions for migrating spatial data from previous releases
SDO_NET	Provides functions and procedures for working with data modeled as nodes and links in a network
SDO_NET_MEM	Contains functions and procedures for performing editing and analysis operations on network data using a network memory object
SDO_OLS	Contains functions and procedures for performing editing and analysis operations on network data using a network memory object
SDO_PC_PKG	Contains subprograms to support the use of point clouds in Spatial
SDO_SAM	Contains functions and procedures for spatial analysis and data mining
SDO_TIN_PKG	Contains subprograms to support the use of triangulated irregular networks (TINs) in Spatial
SDO_TOPO	Provides procedures for creating and managing Spatial topologies
SDO_TOPO_MAP	Contains subprograms for editing Spatial topologies using a cache (TopoMap object)
SDO_TUNE	Provides functions for selecting parameters that determine the behavior of the spatial indexing scheme used in Oracle Spatial
SDO_UTIL	Provides utility functions and procedures for Oracle Spatial
SDO_WFS_LOCK	Contains subprograms for WFS support for registering and unregistering feature tables
SDO_WFS_PROC	Provides utility functions and procedures for Oracle Spatial

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
SEM_APIS	Contains subprograms for working with the Resource Description Framework (RDF) and Web Ontology Language (OWL) in an Oracle database.
SEM_PERF	Contains subprograms for examining and enhancing the performance of the Resource Description Framework (RDF) and Web Ontology Language (OWL) support in an Oracle database
SEM_RDFCTX	Contains subprograms for managing extractor policies and semantic indexes created for documents
SEM_RDFSA	Contains subprograms for providing fine-grained access control to RDF data, using either a virtual private database (VPD) or Oracle Label Security (OLS)
UTL_COLL	Enables PL/SQL programs to use collection locators to query and update
UTL_COMPRESS	Provides a set of data compression utilities
UTL_DBWS	Provides database Web services
UTL_ENCODE	Provides functions that encode RAW data into a standard encoded format so that the data can be transported between hosts
UTL_FILE	Enables your PL/SQL programs to read and write operating system text files and provides a restricted version of standard operating system stream file I/O
UTL_HTTP	Enables HTTP callouts from PL/SQL and SQL to access data on the Internet or to call Oracle Web Server Cartridges
UTL_I18N	Provides a set of services (Oracle Globalization Service) that help developers build multilingual applications
UTL_INADDR	Provides a procedure to support internet addressing
UTL_IDENT	Specifies which database or client PL/SQL is running
UTL_LMS	Retrieves and formats error messages in different languages
UTL_MAIL	A utility for managing email which includes commonly used email features, such as attachments, CC, BCC, and return receipt
UTL_NLA	Exposes a subset of the BLAS and LAPACK (Version 3.0) operations on vectors and matrices represented as VARRAYs
UTL_RAW	Provides SQL functions for manipulating RAW datatypes
UTL_RECOMP	Recompiles invalid PL/SQL modules, invalid views, Java classes, indextypes and operators in a database, either sequentially or in parallels
UTL_REF	Enables a PL/SQL program to access an object by providing a reference to the object
UTL_SMTP	Provides PL/SQL functionality to send emails
UTL_SPADV	Provides subprograms to collect and analyze statistics for the Oracle Streams components in a distributed database environment

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
UTL_TCP	Provides PL/SQL functionality to support simple TCP/IP-based communications between servers and the outside world
UTL_URL	Provides escape and unescape mechanisms for URL characters
WPG_DOCLOAD	Provides an interface to download files, both BLOBs and BFILEs
ANYDATA TYPE	A self-describing data instance type containing an instance of the type plus a description
ANYDATASET TYPE	Contains a description of a given type plus a set of data instances of that type
ANYTYPE TYPE	Contains a type description of any persistent SQL type, named or unnamed, including object types and collection types; or, it can be used to construct new transient type descriptions
Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Types	Describes the types used in Advanced Queuing
DBFS Content Interface Types	Describes public types defined to support the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.
Database URI Type	Contains URI Support, UriType Super Type, HttpUriType Subtype, DBUriType Subtype, XDBUriType Subtype, UriFactory Package
Expression Filter Types	Expression Filter feature is supplied with a set of predefined types and public synonyms for these types.
JMS TYPES	Describes JMS types so that a PL/SQL application can use JMS queues of JMS types
Oracle Multimedia ORDAudio TYPE	Supports the storage and management of audio data
Oracle Multimedia ORDDicom Type	Supports the storage, management, and manipulation of Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) data
Oracle Multimedia ORDDoc TYPE	Supports the storage and management of heterogeneous media data including image, audio, and video
Oracle Multimedia ORDImage TYPE	Supports the storage, management, and manipulation of image data
Oracle Multimedia SQL/MM Still Image TYPE	Supports the SQL/MM Still Image Standard, which lets you store, retrieve, and modify images in the database and locate images using visual predicates
Oracle Multimedia ORDVideo TYPE	Supports the storage and management of video data
LOGICAL CHANGE RECORD TYPES	Describes LCR types, which are message payloads that contain information about changes to a database, used in Streams
MG_ID Package Types	Provides an extensible framework that supports current RFID tags with the standard family of EPC bit encodings for the supported encoding types
RULES TYPEs	Describes the types used with rules, rule sets, and evaluation contexts
RULES Manager Types	Rules Manager is supplied with one predefined type and a public synonym

Table 1–1 (Cont.) Summary of Oracle Supplied PL/SQL Packages

Package Name	Description
`UTL Streams Types`	Describes describes abstract streams types used with Oracle XML functionality
`XMLType`	Describes the types and functions used for native XML support in the server

2

APEX_CUSTOM_AUTH

The APEX_CUSTOM_AUTH package provides an interface for authentication and session management.

- Documentation of APEX_CUSTOM_AUTH

Documentation of APEX_CUSTOM_AUTH

For a complete description of this package within the context of APEX, see `APEX_CUSTOM_AUTH` in the *Oracle Application Express API Reference.*

3

APEX_APPLICATION

The APEX_APPLICATION package enables users to take advantage of global variables.

- Documentation of APEX_APPLICATION

Documentation of APEX_APPLICATION

For a complete description of this package within the context of APEX, see `APEX_APPLICATION` in the *Oracle Application Express API Reference.*

4

APEX_ITEM

The APEX_ITEM package enables users to create form elements dynamically based on a SQL query instead of creating individual items page by page.

Documentation of APEX_ITEM

For a complete description of this package within the context of APEX, see `APEX_ITEM` in the *Oracle Application Express API Reference*.

5

APEX_UTIL

The APEX_UTIL package provides utilities for getting and setting session state, getting files, checking authorizations for users, resetting different states for users, and also getting and setting preferences for users.

Documentation of APEX_UTIL

For a complete description of this package within the context of APEX, see `APEX_UTIL` in the *Oracle Application Express API Reference*.

6

CTX_ADM

The CTX_ADM package lets you administer the Oracle Text data dictionary. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_ADM

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_ADM` in the *Oracle Text Reference*.

7

CTX_ANL

The CTX_ANL package is used with AUTO_LEXER and provides procedures for adding and dropping a custom dictionary from the lexer. A custom dictionary might be one that you develop for a special field of study or for your industry. In most cases, the dictionaries supplied for the supported languages with Oracle Text are more than sufficient to handle your requirements.

Documentation of CTX_ANL

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_ANL` in the *Oracle Text Reference*.

8

CTX_CLS

The CTX_CLS package enables generation of CTXRULE rules for a set of documents.

Documentation of CTX_CLS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_CLS` in the *Oracle Text Reference*.

9

CTX_DDL

The CTX_DDL package lets you create and manage the preferences, section groups, and stoplists required for Text indexes. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_DDL

For complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_DDL` in the *Oracle Text Reference*.

10

CTX_DOC

The CTX_DOC package lets you request document services. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_DOC

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_DOC` in the *Oracle Text Reference*.

11

CTX_ENTITY

The CTX_ENTITY package enables you to search for terms that are unknown to you without specifying a particular search text. It does this by identifying names, places, dates, and other objects when they are mentioned in a document and by tagging each occurrence (called a mention) with its type and subtype. This process enables you to produce a structured view of a document that can later be used for text and data mining and more comprehensive intelligence analysis.

Documentation of CTX_ENTITY

For the complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_ENTITY` in the *Oracle Text Reference.*

12

CTX_OUTPUT

This Oracle Text package lets you manage the index log. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_OUTPUT

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_OUTPUT` in the *Oracle Text Reference.*

13

CTX_QUERY

This Oracle Text package lets you generate query feedback, count hits, and create stored query expressions. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_QUERY

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see CTX_QUERY in the *Oracle Text Reference.*

14

CTX_REPORT

This Oracle Text package lets you create various index reports. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_REPORT

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_REPORT` in the *Oracle Text Reference.*

15

CTX_THES

This Oracle Text package lets you to manage and browse thesauri. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_THES

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see `CTX_THES` in the *Oracle Text Reference.*

16

CTX_ULEXER

This Oracle Text package is for use with the user-lexer. Note that you must install this package in order to use it.

Documentation of CTX_ULEXER

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Text, see CTX_ULEXER in the *Oracle Text Reference.*

17

DBMS_ADDM

The DBMS_ADDM package facilitates the use of Advisor functionality regarding the Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor.

See Also:

- *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide* for more information about "Automatic Workload Repository in Oracle Real Application Clusters Environments"
- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about "Automatic Performance Diagnostics"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ADDM

Security Model

The DBMS_ADDM package runs with the caller's permission, not the definer's, and then applies the security constraints required by the DBMS_ADVISOR package.

> **See Also:** The DBMS_ADVISOR package for more information about "Security Model".

Summary of DBMS_ADDM Subprograms

Table 17–1 DBMS_ADDM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ANALYZE_DB Procedure on page 17-6	Creates an ADDM task for analyzing in database analysis mode and executes it
ANALYZE_INST Procedure on page 17-7	Creates an ADDM task for analyzing in instance analysis mode and executes it.
ANALYZE_PARTIAL Procedure on page 17-8	Creates an ADDM task for analyzing a subset of instances in partial analysis mode and executes it
COMPARE_CAPTURE_ REPLAY_REPORT Function on page 17-9	Produces a Compare Period ADDM report comparing the performance of a capture to a replay
COMPARE_DATABASES Function on page 17-10	Produces a Compare Period ADDM report for a database-wide performance comparison
COMPARE_INSTANCES Function on page 17-11	Produces a Compare Period ADDM report for an instance-level performance comparison
COMPARE_REPLAY_REPLAY_ REPORT Function on page 17-12	Produces a Compare Period ADDM report comparing the performance of a replay to another replay
DELETE Procedure on page 17-13	Deletes an already created ADDM task (of any kind)
DELETE_FINDING_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-14	Deletes a finding directive
DELETE_PARAMETER_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-15	Deletes a parameter directive
DELETE_SEGMENT_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-16	Deletes a segment directive
DELETE_SQL_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-17	Deletes a SQL directive
GET_ASH_QUERY Function on page 17-18	Returns a string containing the SQL text of an ASH query identifying the rows in ASH with impact for the finding
GET_REPORT Function on page 17-19	Retrieves the default text report of an executed ADDM task
INSERT_FINDING_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-20	Creates a directive to limit reporting of a specific finding type.
INSERT_PARAMETER_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-21	Creates a directive to prevent ADDM from creating actions to alter the value of a specific system parameter
INSERT_SEGMENT_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-22	Creates a directive to prevent ADDM from creating actions to "run Segment Advisor" for specific segments
INSERT_SQL_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 17-24	Creates a directive to limit reporting of actions on specific SQL

Table 17–1 (Cont.) DBMS_ADDM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REAL_TIME_ADDM_REPORT Function on page 17-25	Produces a real-time report of ADDM activity

ANALYZE_DB Procedure

This procedure creates an ADDM task for analyzing in database analysis mode and executes it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_DB (
   task_name           IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   begin_snapshot      IN     NUMBER,
   end_snapshot        IN     NUMBER,
   db_id               IN     NUMBER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 17–2 ANALYZE_DB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task to be created
begin_snapshot	Number of the snapshot that starts the analysis period
end_snapshot	Number of the snapshot that ends the analysis period
db_id	Database ID for the database you to analyze. By default, this is the database currently connected

Return Values

The name of the created task is returned in the task_name parameter. It may be different from the value that is given as input (only in cases that name is already used by another task).

Examples

To create an ADDM task in database analysis mode and execute it, with its name in variable tname:

```
var tname VARCHAR2(60);
BEGIN
  :tname := 'my_database_analysis_mode_task';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_DB(:tname, 1, 2);
END
```

To see a report:

```
SET LONG 100000
SET PAGESIZE 50000
SELECT DBMS_ADDM.GET_REPORT(:tname) FROM DUAL;
```

Note that the return type of a report is a CLOB, formatted to fit line size of 80.

ANALYZE_INST Procedure

This procedure creates an ADDM task for analyzing in instance analysis mode and executes it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_INST (
   task_name           IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   begin_snapshot      IN     NUMBER,
   end_snapshot        IN     NUMBER,
   instance_number     IN     NUMBER := NULL,
   db_id               IN     NUMBER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 17–3 ANALYZE_INST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task to be created
begin_snapshot	Number of the snapshot that starts the analysis period
end_snapshot	Number of the snapshot that ends the analysis period
instance_number	Number of the instance to analyze. By default it is the instance currently connected
db_id	Database ID for the database you to analyze. By default, this is the database currently connected

Return Values

The name of the created task is returned in the task_name parameter. It may be different from the value that is given as input (only in cases that name is already used by another task).

Usage Notes

On single instance systems (when not using Oracle RAC) the resulting task is identical to using the ANALYZE_DB procedure.

Examples

To create an ADDM task in instance analysis mode and execute it, with its name in variable tname:

```
var tname VARCHAR2(60);
BEGIN
  :tname := 'my_instance_analysis_mode_task';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_INST(:tname, 1, 2);
END
```

To see a report:

```
SET LONG 100000
SET PAGESIZE 50000
SELECT DBMS_ADDM.GET_REPORT(:tname) FROM DUAL;
```

Note that the return type of a report is a CLOB, formatted to fit line size of 80.

ANALYZE_PARTIAL Procedure

This procedure creates an ADDM task for analyzing a subset of instances in partial analysis mode and executes it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_PARTIAL (
   task_name           IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   instance_numbers    IN     VARCHAR2,
   begin_snapshot      IN     NUMBER,
   end_snapshot        IN     NUMBER,
   db_id               IN     NUMBER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 17–4 ANALYZE_PARTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task to be created
instance_numbers	Comma separated list of instance numbers to analyze
begin_snapshot	Number of the snapshot that starts the analysis period
end_snapshot	Number of the snapshot that ends the analysis period
db_id	Database ID for the database you to analyze. By default, this is the database currently connected

Return Values

The name of the created task is returned in the task_name parameter. It may be different from the value that is given as input (only in cases that name is already used by another task).

Examples

To create an ADDM task in partial analysis mode and execute it, with its name in variable tname:

```
var tname VARCHAR2(60);
BEGIN
  :tname := 'my_partial_analysis_modetask';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_PARTIAL(:tname, '1,2,3', 1, 2);
END
```

To see a report:

```
SET LONG 100000
SET PAGESIZE 50000
SELECT DBMS_ADDM.GET_REPORT(:tname) FROM DUAL;
```

Note that the return type of a report is a CLOB, formatted to fit line size of 80.

COMPARE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_REPORT Function

This function produces a Compare Period ADDM report comparing the performance of a capture to a replay. The AWR data must reside in the same database, but it can originate from different databases. The function generates a report in either XML or HTML(Active Report) format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.COMPARE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_REPORT (
   replay_id             IN NUMBER,
   report_type           IN VARCHAR2 := 'HTML')
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 17–5 COMPARE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_id`	Replay ID to use as the base period. The base period is the baseline period to compare in order to determine improvement or regression.
`report_type`	`'HTML'` (the default) for an HTML active report, `'XML'` for an XML report

Return Values

A `CLOB` containing a compare period ADDM report

COMPARE_DATABASES Function

This function produces a Compare Period ADDM report comparing the performance of a database over two different time periods or the performance of two different databases over two different time periods.The AWR data must reside in the same database, but it can originate from different databases. The function generates a report in either XML or HTML(Active Report) format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.COMPARE_DATABASES (
   base_dbid             IN NUMBER := NULL,
   base_begin_snap_id    IN NUMBER,
   base_end_snap_id      IN NUMBER,
   comp_dbid             IN NUMBER := NULL,
   comp_begin_snap_id    IN NUMBER,
   comp_end_snap_id      IN NUMBER,
   report_type           IN VARCHAR2 := 'HTML')
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 17–6 COMPARE_DATABASES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
base_dbid	Database id (DBID) of the base period. The base period is the baseline period that we compare to in order to determine improvement or regression.
base_begin_snap_ids	Begin AWR snapshot ID of the base period.
base_end_snap_id	End AWR snapshot ID of the base period.
comp_dbid	Database id (DBID) of the comparison period. The comparison period is the period we compare to the base period.
comp_begin_snap_id	Begin AWR snapshot ID of the comparison period
comp_end_snap_id	End AWR snapshot ID of the comparison period
report_type	'HTML' (the default) for an HTML active report, 'XML' for an XML report

Return Values

A CLOB containing a compare period ADDM report

COMPARE_INSTANCES Function

This function produces a Compare Period ADDM report comparing the performance of a single instance over two different time periods or the performance of two different instances over two different time periods.The AWR data must reside in the same database, but it can originate from different databases. The function generates a report in either XML or HTML(Active Report) format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.COMPARE_INSTANCES (
   base_dbid             IN NUMBER := NULL,
   base_instance_id      IN NUMBER
   base_begin_snap_id    IN NUMBER,
   base_end_snap_id      IN NUMBER,
   comp_dbid             IN NUMBER := NULL,
   comp_instance_id      IN NUMBER,
   comp_begin_snap_id    IN NUMBER,
   comp_end_snap_id      IN  NUMBER,
   report_type           IN VARCHAR2 := 'HTML')
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 17–7 COMPARE_INSTANCES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
base_dbid	Database id (DBID) of the base period. The base period is the baseline period that we compare to in order to determine improvement or regression.
base_instance_id	Instance number of the database instance to include from the base period
base_begin_snap_id	Begin AWR snapshot ID of the base period.
base_end_snap_id	End AWR snapshot ID of the base period.
comp_dbid	Database id (DBID) of the comparison period. The comparison period is the period we compare to the base period.
comp_instance_id	Instance number of the database instance to include from the comparison period
comp_begin_snap_id	Begin AWR snapshot ID of the comparison period
comp_end_snap_id	End AWR snapshot ID of the comparison period
report_type	'HTML' (the default) for an HTML active report, 'XML' for an XML report

Return Values

A CLOB containing a compare period ADDM report

COMPARE_REPLAY_REPLAY_REPORT Function

This function produces a Compare Period ADDM report comparing the performance of a replay to another replay. The AWR data must reside in the same database, but it can originate from different databases. The function generates a report in either XML or HTML(Active Report) format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.COMPARE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_REPORT (
   replay_id1            IN NUMBER,
   replay_id2            IN NUMBER,
   report_type           IN VARCHAR2 := 'HTML')
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 17–8 COMPARE_REPLAY_REPLAY_REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_id1`	Replay ID to use as the base period. The base period is the baseline period to compare in order to determine improvement or regression.
`replay_id2`	Replay ID to use as the comparison period. The comparison period is the period to compare to the base period in order to determine improvement or regression.
`report_type`	`'HTML'` (the default) for an HTML active report, `'XML'` for an XML report

Return Values

A `CLOB` containing a compare period ADDM report

DELETE Procedure

This procedure deletes an already created ADDM task (of any kind). For database analysis mode and partial analysis mode this deletes the local tasks associated with the main task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.DELETE (
   task_name           IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 17–9 DELETE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task to be deleted

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADDM.DELETE ('my_partial_analysis_mode_task');
END
```

DELETE_FINDING_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure deletes a finding directive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.DELETE_FINDING_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 17–10 DELETE_FINDING_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is `NULL`, it is a system directive.
`dir_name`	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.

DELETE_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure deletes a parameter directive. This removes a specific system directive for parameters. Subsequent ADDM tasks are not affected by this directive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.DELETE_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 17–11 DELETE_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is NULL, it is a system directive.
dir_name	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_ADDM.DELETE_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE (NULL,'my Parameter directive');
END;
```

DELETE_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure deletes a segment directive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.DELETE_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 17–12 DELETE_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is `NULL`, it is a system directive.
`dir_name`	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.

DELETE_SQL_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure deletes a SQL directive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.DELETE_SQL_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 17–13 DELETE_SQL_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is NULL, it is a system directive.
dir_name	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.

GET_ASH_QUERY Function

The function returns a string containing the SQL text of an ASH query identifying the rows in ASH with impact for the finding. For most types of findings this identifies the exact rows in ASH corresponding to the finding. For some types of findings the query is an approximation and should not be used for exact identification of the finding's impact or the finding's specific activity.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.GET_ASH_QUERY (
   task_name           IN   VARCHAR2,
   finding_id          IN   NUMBER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 17–14 GET_ASH_QUERY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	Name of the task
`finding`	ID of the finding within the task

Return Values

A `VARCHAR` containing an ASH query identifying the rows in ASH with impact for the finding

GET_REPORT Function

This function retrieves the default text report of an executed ADDM task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.GET_REPORT (
   task_name           IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 17–15 GET_REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task

Examples

```
Set long 1000000
Set pagesize 50000
SELECT DBMS_ADDM.GET_REPORT('my_partial_analysis_mode_task') FROM DUAL;
```

INSERT_FINDING_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates a directive to limit reporting of a specific finding type. The directive can be created for a specific task (only when the task is in INITIAL status), or for all subsequently created ADDM tasks (such as a system directive).

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_FINDING_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   finding_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   min_active_sessions   IN NUMBER := 0,
   min_perc_impact       IN NUMBER := 0);
```

Parameters

Table 17–16 INSERT_FINDING_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is NULL, it applies to all subsequently created ADDM Tasks.
dir_name	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.
finding_name	Name of an ADDM finding to which this directive applies. All valid findings names appear in the NAME column of view DBA_ADVISOR_FINDING_NAMES.
min_active_sessions	Minimal number of active sessions for the finding. If a finding has less than this number, it is filtered from the ADDM result.
min_perc_impact	Minimal number for the "percent impact" of the finding relative to total database time in the analysis period. If the finding's impact is less than this number, it is filtered from the ADDM result.

Examples

A new ADDM task is created to analyze a local instance. However, it has special treatment for 'Undersized SGA' findings. The result of GET_REPORT shows only an 'Undersized SGA' finding if the finding is responsible for at least 2 average active sessions during the analysis period, and this constitutes at least 10% of the total database time during that period.

```
var tname VARCHAR2(60);
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_FINDING_DIRECTIVE(
   NULL,
   'Undersized SGA directive',
   'Undersized SGA',
   2,
   10);
  :tname := 'my_instance_analysis_mode_task';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_INST(:tname, 1, 2);
END;
```

To see a report containing 'Undersized SGA' findings regardless of the directive:

```
SELECT DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_REPORT(:tname, 'TEXT', 'ALL') FROM DUAL;
```

INSERT_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates a directive to prevent ADDM from creating actions to alter the value of a specific system parameter. The directive can be created for a specific task (only when the task is in INITIAL status), or for all subsequently created ADDM tasks (such as a system directive).

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter_name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 17–17 INSERT_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is NULL, it applies to all subsequently created ADDM Tasks.
dir_name	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.
parameter_name	Specifies the parameter to use. Valid parameter names appear in V$PARAMETER.

Examples

A new ADDM task is created to analyze a local instance. However, it has special treatment for all actions that recommend modifying the parameter 'sga_target'. The result of GET_REPORT does not show these actions.

```
var tname varchar2(60);
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_PARAMETER_DIRECTIVE(
   NULL,
   'my Parameter directive',
   'sga_target');
  :tname := 'my_instance_analysis_mode_task';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_INST(:tname, 1, 2);
END;
```

To see a report containing all actions regardless of the directive:

```
SELECT DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_REPORT(:tname, 'TEXT', 'ALL') FROM DUAL;
```

INSERT_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates a directive to prevent ADDM from creating actions to "run Segment Advisor" for specific segments. The directive can be created for a specific task (only when the task is in INITIAL status), or for all subsequently created ADDM tasks (such as a system directive).

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   owner_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sub_object_name       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);

DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   object_number         IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 17–18 INSERT_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is NULL, it applies to all subsequently created ADDM Tasks.
dir_name	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.
owner_name	Specifies the owner of the segment/s to be filtered. A wildcard is allowed in the same syntax used for "like" constraints.
object_name	Name of the main object to be filtered. Again, wildcards are allowed. The default value of NULL is equivalent to a value of '%'.
sub_object_name	Name of the part of the main object to be filtered. This could be a partition name, or even sub partitions (separated by a '.'). Again, wildcards are allowed. The default value of NULL is equivalent to a value of '%'.
object_number	Object number of the SEGMENT that this directive is to filter, found in views DBA_OBJECTS or DBA_SEGMENTS

Examples

A new ADDM task is created to analyze a local instance. However, it has special treatment for all segments that belong to user SCOTT. The result of GET_REPORT does not show actions for running Segment advisor for segments that belong to SCOTT.

```
var tname VARCHAR2(60);
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_SEGMENT_DIRECTIVE(NULL,
                                     'my Segment directive',
                                     'SCOTT');
  :tname := 'my_instance_analysis_mode_task';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_INST(:tname, 1, 2);
END;
```

To see a report containing all actions regardless of the directive:

```
SELECT DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_REPORT(:tname, 'TEXT', 'ALL') FROM DUAL;
```

INSERT_SQL_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates a directive to limit reporting of actions on specific SQL. The directive can be created for a specific task (only when the task is in INITIAL status), or for all subsequently created ADDM tasks (such as a system directive).

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_SQL_DIRECTIVE (
   task_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   dir_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   sql_id                IN VARCHAR2,
   min_active_sessions   IN NUMBER := 0,
   min_response_time     IN NUMBER := 0);
```

Parameters

Table 17–19 INSERT_SQL_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task this directive applies to. If the value is NULL, it applies to all subsequently created ADDM Tasks.
dir_name	Name of the directive. All directives must be given unique names.
sql_id	Identifies which SQL statement to filter. A valid value contains exactly 13 characters from '0' to '9' and 'a' to 'z'.
min_active_sessions	Minimal number of active sessions for the SQL. If a SQL action has less than this number, it is filtered from the ADDM result.
min_response_time	Minimal value for response time of the SQL (in microseconds). If the SQL had lower response time, it is filtered from the ADDM result.

Examples

A new ADDM task is created to analyze a local instance. However, it has special treatment for SQL with id 'abcd123456789'. The result of GET_REPORT shows only actions for that SQL (actions to tune the SQL, or to investigate application using it) if the SQL is responsible for at least 2 average active sessions during the analysis period, and the average response time was at least 1 second.

```
var tname VARCHAR2(60);
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADDM.INSERT_SQL_DIRECTIVE(
      NULL,
      'my SQL directive',
      'abcd123456789',
      2,
      1000000);
  :tname := 'my_instance_analysis_mode_task';
  DBMS_ADDM.ANALYZE_INST(:tname, 1, 2);
END;
```

To see a report containing all actions regardless of the directive:

```
SELECT DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_REPORT(:tname, 'TEXT', 'ALL') FROM DUAL;
```

REAL_TIME_ADDM_REPORT Function

This function produces a real-time ADDM report for ADDM-related activity for the last five minutes. In an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, the function assumes that executing SQL over `GV$` is possible.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADDM.REAL_TIME_ADDM_REPORT ()
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Return Values

`CLOB` containing a real-time ADDM report

18

DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE

DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE contains interfaces for advanced query rewrite users. Using this package, you can create, drop, and maintain functional equivalence declarations for query rewrite.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information about query rewrite

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE` package.

Security Model

No privileges to access these procedures are granted to anyone by default. To gain access to these procedures, you must connect as SYSDBA and explicitly grant execute access to the desired database administrators.

You can control security on this package by granting the EXECUTE privilege to selected database administrators or roles. For example, the user er can be given access to use this package by the following statement, executed as SYSDBA:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE TO er;
```

You may want to write a separate cover package on top of this package for restricting the alert names used. Instead of granting the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE package directly, you can then grant it to the cover package.

In addition, similar to the privilege required for regular materialized views, the user should be granted the privilege to create an equivalence. For example, the user er can be granted this privilege by executing the following statement as SYSDBA:

```
GRANT CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW TO er;
```

Summary of DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE Subprograms

This table list the all the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 18–1 DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure on page 18-5	Changes the mode of the rewrite equivalence declaration to the mode you specify
BUILD_SAFE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure on page 18-6	Enables the rewrite of top-level materialized views using submaterialized views. Oracle Corporation does not recommend you directly use this procedure
DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedures on page 18-7	Creates a declaration indicating that `source_stmt` is functionally equivalent to `destination_stmt` for as long as the equivalence declaration remains enabled, and that `destination_stmt` is more favorable in terms of performance
DROP_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure on page 18-9	Drops the specified rewrite equivalence declaration
VALIDATE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure on page 18-10	Validates the specified rewrite equivalence declaration using the same validation method as described with the `validate` parameter

ALTER_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure

This procedure changes the mode of the rewrite equivalence declaration to the mode you specify.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE.ALTER_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE (
   name            VARCHAR2,
   rewrite_mode    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 18–2 ALTER_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	A name for the equivalence declaration to alter. The name can be of the form owner.name, where owner complies with the rules for a schema name, and name compiles with the rules for a table name. Alternatively, a simple name that complies with the rules for a table name can be specified. In this case, the rewrite equivalence is altered in the current schema. The invoker must have the appropriate alter materialized view privileges to alter an equivalence declaration outside their own schema.
rewrite_mode	The following modes are supported, in increasing order of power: disabled: Query rewrite does not use the equivalence declaration. Use this mode to temporarily disable use of the rewrite equivalence declaration. text_match: Query rewrite uses the equivalence declaration only in its text match modes. This mode is useful for simple transformations. general: Query rewrite uses the equivalence declaration in all of its transformation modes against the incoming request queries. However, query rewrite makes no attempt to rewrite the specified destination_query. recursive: Query rewrite uses the equivalence declaration in all of its transformation modes against the incoming request queries. Moreover, query rewrite further attempts to rewrite the specified destination_query for further performance enhancements whenever it uses the equivalence declaration. Oracle recommends you use the least powerful mode that is sufficient to solve your performance problem.

BUILD_SAFE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure

This procedure enables the rewrite and refresh of top-level materialized views using submaterialized views. It is provided for the exclusive use by scripts generated by the `DBMS_ADVISOR.TUNE_MVIEW` procedure. It is required to enable query rewrite and fast refresh when `DBMS_ADVISOR.TUNE_MVIEW` decomposes a materialized view into a top-level materialized view and one or more submaterialized views.

Oracle does not recommend you directly use the `BUILD_SAFE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE` procedure. You should use either the `DBMS_ADVISOR.TUNE_MVIEW` or the `DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE.CREATE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE` procedure as appropriate.

DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedures

This procedure creates a declaration indicating that source_stmt is functionally equivalent to destination_stmt for as long as the equivalence declaration remains enabled, and that destination_stmt is more favorable in terms of performance. The scope of the declaration is system wide. The query rewrite engine uses such declarations to perform rewrite transformations in QUERY_REWRITE_INTEGRITY = trusted and stale_tolerated modes.

Because the underlying equivalences between the source and destination statements cannot be enforced by the query rewrite engine, queries can be only rewritten in trusted and stale_tolerated integrity modes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE.DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE (
   name                 VARCHAR2,
   source_stmt          VARCHAR2,
   destination_stmt     VARCHAR2,
   validate             BOOLEAN    := TRUE,
   rewrite_mode         VARCHAR2   := 'TEXT_MATCH');

DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE.DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE (
   name                 VARCHAR2,
   source_stmt          CLOB,
   destination_stmt     CLOB,
   validate             BOOLEAN   := TRUE,
   rewrite_mode         VARCHAR2  := 'TEXT_MATCH');
```

Parameters

Table 18–3 DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	A name for the equivalence declaration. The name can be of the form owner.name, where owner complies with the rules for a schema name, and name compiles with the rules for a table name. Alternatively, a simple name that complies with the rules for a table name can be specified. In this case, the rewrite equivalence is created in the current schema. The invoker must have the appropriate CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW privileges to alter an equivalence declaration.
source_stmt	A sub-SELECT expression in either VARCHAR2 or CLOB format. This is the query statement that is the target of optimization.
destination_stmt	A sub-SELECT expression in either VARCHAR2 or CLOB format.
validate	A Boolean indicating whether to validate that the specified source_stmt is functionally equivalent to the specified destination_stmt. If validate is specified as TRUE, DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE evaluates the two sub-SELECTs and compares their results. If the results are not the same, DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE does not create the rewrite equivalence and returns an error condition. If FALSE, DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE does not validate the equivalence.

Table 18–3 (Cont.) DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rewrite_mode	The following modes are supported, in increasing order of power: ■ disabled: Query rewrite does not use the equivalence declaration. Use this mode to temporarily disable use of the rewrite equivalence declaration. ■ text_match: Query rewrite uses the equivalence declaration only in its text match modes. This mode is useful for simple transformations. ■ general: Query rewrite uses the equivalence declaration in all of its transformation modes against the incoming request queries. However, query rewrite makes no attempt to rewrite the specified destination_query. ■ recursive: Query rewrite uses the equivalence declaration in all of its transformation modes against the incoming request queries. Moreover, query rewrite further attempts to rewrite the specified destination_query for further performance enhancements whenever it uses the equivalence declaration. Oracle recommends you use the least powerful mode that is sufficient to solve your performance problem.

Exceptions

Table 18–4 DECLARE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-30388	Name of the rewrite equivalence is not specified
ORA-30391	The specified rewrite equivalence does not exist
ORA-30392	The checksum analysis for the rewrite equivalence failed
ORA-30393	A query block in the statement did not write
ORA-30396	Rewrite equivalence procedures require the COMPATIBLE parameter to be set to 10.1 or greater

Usage Notes

Query rewrite using equivalence declarations occurs simultaneously and in concert with query rewrite using materialized views. The same query rewrite engine is used for both. The query rewrite engine uses the same rewrite rules to rewrite queries using both equivalence declarations and materialized views. Because the rewrite equivalence represents a specific rewrite crafted by a sophisticated user, the query rewrite engine gives priority to rewrite equivalences over materialized views when it is possible to perform a rewrite with either a materialized view or a rewrite equivalence. For this same reason, the cost-based optimizer (specifically, cost-based rewrite) will not choose an unrewritten query plan over a query plan that is rewritten to use a rewrite equivalence even if the cost of the un-rewritten plan appears more favorable. Query rewrite matches properties of the incoming request query against the equivalence declaration's source_stmt or the materialized view's defining statement, respectively, and derives an equivalent relational expression in terms of the equivalence declaration's destination_stmt or the materialized view's container table, respectively.

DROP_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure

This procedure drops the specified rewrite equivalence declaration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE.DROP_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE (
   name        VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 18–5 DROP_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	A name for the equivalence declaration to drop. The name can be of the form owner.name, where owner complies with the rules for a schema name, and name compiles with the rules for a table name. Alternatively, a simple name that complies with the rules for a table name can be specified. In this case, the rewrite equivalence is dropped in the current schema. The invoker must have the appropriate drop materialized view privilege to drop an equivalence declaration outside their own schema.

VALIDATE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure

This procedure validates the specified rewrite equivalence declaration using the same validation method as described with the `VALIDATE` parameter in "VALIDATE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure" on page 18-10.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVANCED_REWRITE.VALIDATE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE (
   name         VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 18–6 VALIDATE_REWRITE_EQUIVALENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	A name for the equivalence declaration to validate. The name can be of the form owner.name, where owner complies with the rules for a schema name, and name compiles with the rules for a table name. Alternatively, a simple name that complies with the rules for a table name can be specified. In this case, the rewrite equivalence is validated in the current schema. The invoker must have sufficient privileges to execute both the `source_stmt` and `destination_stmt` of the specified equivalence declaration.

19

DBMS_ADVISOR

DBMS_ADVISOR is part of the server manageability suite of advisors, a set of expert systems that identifies and helps resolve performance problems relating to database server components.

Some advisors have their own packages. For these advisors, Oracle recommends that you use the advisor-specific package rather than DBMS_ADVISOR. Each of the following advisors has its own package, tailored to its specific functionality:

- Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (DBMS_ADDM)
- SQL Performance Analyzer (DBMS_SQLPA)
- SQL Repair Advisor (DBMS_SQLDIAG)
- SQL Tuning Advisor (DBMS_SQLTUNE)
- Compression Advisor (DBMS_COMPRESSION.GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO)

SQL Access Advisor and Segment Advisor are the only advisors with common use cases for DBMS_ADVISOR. Undo Advisor and Compression Advisor do not support DBMS_ADVISOR subprograms.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* to learn about Segment Advisor
- *Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide* for information regarding how to use SQL Access Advisor in Enterprise Manager
- *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for information regarding SQL Access Advisor

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ADVISOR

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_ADVISOR` package.

Deprecated Subprograms

> **Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*:

- ADD_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure
- CREATE_SQLWKLD Procedure
- DELETE_SQLWKLD Procedure
- DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure
- DELETE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedures
- IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SCHEMA Procedure
- IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SQLCACHE Procedure
- IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS Procedure
- IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SUMADV Procedure
- IMPORT_SQLWKLD_USER Procedure
- RESET_SQLWKLD Procedure
- SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER Procedures
- UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure
- UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure

Security Model

The ADVISOR privilege is required to use this package.

Summary of DBMS_ADVISOR Subprograms

Table 19–1 summarizes the subprograms in this package. The `Used in` column lists advisors relevant for each subprogram, but excludes ADDM, SQL Performance Analyzer, SQL Repair Advisor, and SQL Tuning Advisor because these advisors have their own packages.

Table 19–1 DBMS_ADVISOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Used in
ADD_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure on page 19-8	Adds a workload reference to an Advisor task (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
ADD_SQLWKLD_ STATEMENT Procedure on page 19-9	Adds a single statement to a workload	SQL Access Advisor
ADD_STS_REF Procedure on page 19-11	Establishes a link between the current SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL tuning set	SQL Access Advisor
CANCEL_TASK Procedure on page 19-12	Cancels a currently executing task operation	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
COPY_SQLWKLD_TO_ STS Procedure on page 19-13	Copies the contents of a SQL workload object to a SQL tuning set	SQL Access Advisor
CREATE_FILE Procedure on page 19-14	Creates an external file from a PL/SQL CLOB variable, which is useful for creating scripts and reports	SQL Access Advisor
CREATE_OBJECT Procedure on page 19-16	Creates a new task object	Segment Advisor
CREATE_SQLWKLD Procedure on page 19-18	Creates a new workload object (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
CREATE_TASK Procedures on page 19-20	Creates a new Advisor task in the repository	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
DELETE_SQLWKLD Procedure on page 19-22	Deletes an entire workload object (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
DELETE_SQLWKLD_ REF Procedure on page 19-23	Deletes an entire workload object (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
DELETE_SQLWKLD_ STATEMENT Procedures on page 19-24	Deletes one or more statements from a workload (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
DELETE_STS_REF Procedure on page 19-25	Removes a link between the current SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL tuning set object	SQL Access Advisor
DELETE_TASK Procedure on page 19-26	Deletes the specified task from the repository	SQL Access Advisor
EXECUTE_TASK Procedure on page 19-27	Executes the specified task	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
GET_REC_ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 19-29	Retrieves specific recommendation attributes from a task	SQL Access Advisor

Table 19–1 (Cont.) DBMS_ADVISOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Used in
GET_TASK_REPORT Function on page 19-30	Creates and returns a report for the specified task	
GET_TASK_SCRIPT Function on page 19-31	Creates and returns an executable SQL script of the Advisor task's recommendations in a buffer	SQL Access Advisor
IMPLEMENT_TASK Procedure on page 19-33	Implements the recommendations for a task	SQL Access Advisor
IMPORT_SQLWKLD_ SCHEMA Procedure on page 19-34	Imports data into a workload from the current SQL cache (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
IMPORT_SQLWKLD_ SQLCACHE Procedure on page 19-36	Imports data into a workload from the current SQL cache (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
IMPORT_SQLWKLD_ STS Procedure on page 19-38	Imports data from a SQL tuning set into a SQL workload data object (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
IMPORT_SQLWKLD_ SUMADV Procedure on page 19-40	Imports data into a workload from the current SQL cache (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
IMPORT_SQLWKLD_ USER Procedure on page 19-42	Imports data into a workload from the current SQL cache (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
INTERRUPT_TASK Procedure on page 19-44	Stops a currently executing task, ending its operations as it would at a normal exit, so that the recommendations are visible	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
MARK_ RECOMMENDATION Procedure on page 19-45	Sets the `annotation_status` for a particular recommendation	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
QUICK_TUNE Procedure on page 19-46	Performs an analysis on a single SQL statement	SQL Access Advisor
RESET_SQLWKLD Procedure on page 19-48	Resets a workload to its initial starting point (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)	SQL Access Advisor
RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49	Resets a task to its initial state	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
SET_DEFAULT_ SQLWKLD_ PARAMETER Procedures on page 19-50	Imports data into a workload from schema evidence	SQL Access Advisor
SET_DEFAULT_TASK_ PARAMETER Procedures on page 19-51	Modifies a default task parameter	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor
SET_SQLWKLD_ PARAMETER Procedures on page 19-52	Sets the value of a workload parameter	SQL Access Advisor
SET_TASK_ PARAMETER Procedure on page 19-53	Sets the specified task parameter value	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor

Table 19–1 (Cont.) DBMS_ADVISOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Used in
TUNE_MVIEW Procedure on page 19-66	Shows how to decompose a materialized view into two or more materialized views or to restate the materialized view in a way that is more advantageous for fast refresh and query rewrite	SQL Access Advisor
UPDATE_OBJECT Procedure on page 19-68	Updates a task object	Segment Advisor
UPDATE_REC_ ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 19-70	Updates an existing recommendation for the specified task	SQL Access Advisor
UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 19-72	Updates a workload object	SQL Access Advisor
UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ STATEMENT Procedure on page 19-73	Updates one or more SQL statements in a workload	SQL Access Advisor
UPDATE_TASK_ ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 19-75	Updates a task's attributes	Segment Advisor, SQL Access Advisor

ADD_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure establishes a link between the current SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL Workload object. The link allows an advisor task to access interesting data for doing an analysis. The link also provides a stable view of the data. Once a connection between a SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL Workload object is made, the workload is protected from removal or modification.

Users should use `ADD_STS_REF` instead of `ADD_SQLWKLD_REF` for all SQL tuning set-based advisor runs. This function is only provided for backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF (
   task_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   workload_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   is_sts                 IN NUMBER :=0);
```

Parameters

Table 19–2 ADD_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	The SQL Access Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
`workload_name`	The name of the workload object to be linked. Once a object has been linked to a task, it becomes read-only and cannot be deleted. There is no limit to the number of links to workload objects. To remove the link to the workload object, use the procedure `DELETE_REFERENCE`.
`is_sts`	Indicates the type of workload source. Possible values are: ■ 0 - SQL workload object ■ 1 - SQL tuning set

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name, 1);
END;
/
```

ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure adds a single statement to the specified workload.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT (
   workload_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   module                 IN VARCHAR2,
   action                 IN VARCHAR2,
   cpu_time               IN NUMBER := 0,
   elapsed_time           IN NUMBER := 0,
   disk_reads             IN NUMBER := 0,
   buffer_gets            IN NUMBER := 0,
   rows_processed         IN NUMBER := 0,
   optimizer_cost         IN NUMBER := 0,
   executions             IN NUMBER := 1,
   priority               IN NUMBER := 2,
   last_execution_date    IN DATE := 'SYSDATE',
   stat_period            IN NUMBER := 0,
   username               IN VARCHAR2,
   sql_text               IN CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 19–3 ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
module	An optional business application module that will be associated with the SQL statement.
action	An optional application action that will be associated with the SQL statement.
cpu_time	The total CPU time in seconds that is consumed by the SQL statement.
elapsed_time	The total elapsed time in seconds that is consumed by the SQL statement.
disk_reads	The total disk-read operations that are consumed by the SQL statement.
buffer_gets	The total buffer-get operations that are consumed by the SQL statement.
rows_processed	The average number of rows processed by the SQL statement.
optimizer_cost	The optimizer's calculated cost value.
executions	The total execution count by the SQL statement. This value should be greater than zero.
priority	The relative priority of the SQL statement. The value must be one of the following: 1-HIGH, 2-MEDIUM, or 3-LOW.
last_execution_ date	The date and time at which the SQL statement last executed. If the value is NULL, then the current date and time will be used.
stat_period	Time interval in seconds from which statement statistics were calculated.

Table 19–3 (Cont.) ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
username	The Oracle user name that executed the SQL statement. Because a user name is an Oracle identifier, the username value must be entered exactly as it is stored in the server. For example, if the user SCOTT is the executing user, then you must provide the user identifier SCOTT in all uppercase letters. It will not recognize the user scott as a match for SCOTT.
sql_text	The complete SQL statement. To increase the quality of a recommendation, the SQL statement should not contain bind variables.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 for directions on setting a task to its initial state.

The ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT procedure accepts several parameters that may be ignored by the caller. cpu_time, elapsed_time, disk_reads, buffer_gets, and optimizer_cost are only used to sort workload data when actual analysis occurs, so actual values are only necessary when the order_list task parameter references a particular statistic.To determine what statistics to provide when adding a new SQL statement to a workload, examine or set the task parameter order_list. The order_list parameter accepts any combination of the keys: buffer_gets, optimizer_cost, cpu_time, disk_reads, elapsed_time, executions, and priority. A typical setting of priority, optimizer_cost would indicate the SQL Access Advisor will sort the workload data by priority and optimizer_cost and process the highest cost statements first. Any statements added to the workload would need to include appropriate priority and optimizer_cost values. All other statistics can be defaulted or set to zero.For the statistical keys referenced by the order_list task parameter, the actual parameter values should be reasonably accurate since they will be compared to other statements in the workload. If the caller is unable to estimate values, choose values that would determine its importance relative to other statements in the workload. For example, if the current statement is considered the most critical query in your business, then an appropriate value would be anything greater than all other values for the same statistic found in the workload.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
FROM sh.sales');
END;
/
```

ADD_STS_REF Procedure

This procedure establishes a link between the current SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL tuning set. The link enables an advisor task to access data for the purpose of doing an analysis. The link also provides a stable view of the data. Once a connection between a SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL tuning set is made, the STS is protected from removal or modification.

Use ADD_STS_REF for any STS-based advisor runs. The older method of using ADD_SQLWKLD_REF with parameter IS_STS=1 is only supported for backward compatibility. Furthermore, the ADD_STS_REF function accepts a SQL tuning set owner name, whereas ADD_SQLWKLD_REF does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_STS_REF(
  task_name       IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL,
  sts_owner       IN VARCHAR2,
  workload_name   IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–4 ADD_STS_REF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The SQL Access Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
sts_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set. The value of this parameter may be NULL, in which case the advisor assumes the SQL tuning set to be owned by the currently logged-in user.
workload_name	The name of the workload to be linked. A workload consists of one or more SQL statements, plus statistics and attributes that fully describe each statement. The database stores a workload as a SQL tuning set. After a workload has been linked to a task, it becomes read-only and cannot be deleted. There is no limit to the number of links to workloads. To remove the link to the workload, use the procedure DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_STS_REF.

Examples

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_STS_REF ('My Task', 'SCOTT', 'My Workload');
```

CANCEL_TASK Procedure

This procedure causes a currently executing operation to terminate. This call does a soft interrupt. It will not break into a low-level database access call like a hard interrupt such as `Ctrl-C`. The SQL Access Advisor periodically checks for soft interrupts and acts appropriately. As a result, this operation may take a few seconds to respond to a call.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.CANCEL_TASK (
   task_name      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–5 CANCEL_TASK Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	A valid Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.

Usage Notes

A cancel command restores the task to its condition prior to the start of the cancelled operation. Therefore, a cancelled task or data object cannot be resumed.

Because all Advisor task procedures are synchronous, to cancel an operation, you must use a separate database session.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CANCEL_TASK('My Task');
END;
/
```

COPY_SQLWKLD_TO_STS Procedure

This procedure copies the contents of a SQL workload object to a SQL tuning set.

Syntax

To use this procedure, the caller must have privileges to create and modify a SQL tuning set.

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.COPY_SQLWKLD_TO_STS (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   sts_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode           IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW');
```

Parameters

Table 19–6 COPY_SQLWKLD_TO_STS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The SQL Workload object name to copy.
sts_name	The SQL tuning set name into which the SQL Workload object will be copied.
import_mode	Specifies the handling of the target SQL tuning set. Possible values are: ■ APPEND Causes SQL Workload data to be appended to the target SQL tuning set. ■ NEW Indicates the SQL tuning set can only contain the copied contents. If the SQL tuning set exists and has data, an error will be reported. ■ REPLACE Causes any existing data in the target SQL tuning set to be purged prior to the workload copy. In all cases, if the specified SQL tuning set does not exist, it will be created.

Usage Notes

To use this procedure, the caller must have privileges to create and modify a SQL tuning set.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_ADVISOR.COPY_SQLWKLD_TO_STS('MY_OLD_WORKLOAD', 'MY_NEW_STS', 'NEW');
END;
/
```

CREATE_FILE Procedure

This procedure creates an external file from a PL/SQL CLOB variable, which is used for creating scripts and reports. CREATE_FILE accepts a CLOB input parameter and writes the character string contents to the specified file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_FILE (
   buffer       IN  CLOB,
   location     IN  VARCHAR2,
   filename     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–7 CREATE_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
buffer	A CLOB buffer containing report or script information.
location	Specifies the directory that will contain the new file. You must use the directory alias as defined by the CREATE DIRECTORY statement. The Advisor will translate the alias into the actual directory location.
filename	Specifies the output file to receive the script commands. The filename can only contain the name and an optional file type of the form filename.filetype.

Usage Notes

All formatting must be embedded within the CLOB.

The Oracle server restricts file access within Oracle Stored Procedures. This means that file locations and names must adhere to the known file permissions in the server.

Examples

```
CREATE DIRECTORY MY_DIR as '/homedir/user4/gssmith';
GRANT READ,WRITE ON DIRECTORY MY_DIR TO PUBLIC;

DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_FILE(DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_SCRIPT(task_name),
    'MY_DIR','script.sql');

END;
```

/

CREATE_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure creates a new task object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_OBJECT (
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type       IN VARCHAR2,
   attr1             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   attr2             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   attr3             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   attr4             IN CLOB     :=  NULL,
   object_id         OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_OBJECT (
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type       IN VARCHAR2,
   attr1             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   attr2             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   attr3             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   attr4             IN CLOB     :=  NULL,
   attr5             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   object_id         OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–8 CREATE_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	A valid Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
object_type	Specifies the external object type.
attr1	Advisor-specific data.
attr2	Advisor-specific data.
attr3	Advisor-specific data.
attr4	Advisor-specific data.
attr5	Advisor-specific data.
object_id	The advisor-assigned object identifier.

The attribute parameters have different values depending upon the object type. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for details regarding these parameters and object types.

Return Values

Returns the new object identifier.

Usage Notes

Task objects are typically used as input data for a particular advisor. Segment advice can be generated at the object, segment, or tablespace level. If for the object level, advice is generated on all partitions of the object (if the object is partitioned). The advice is not cascaded to any dependent objects. If for the segment level, advice can be

obtained on a single segment, such as the partition or subpartition of a table, index, or LOB column. If for a tablespace level, target advice for every segment in the tablespace will be generated.

See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for further information regarding the Segment Advisor.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  obj_id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_OBJECT (task_name,'SQL',NULL,NULL,NULL,
                              'SELECT * FROM SH.SALES',obj_id);
END;
/
```

CREATE_SQLWKLD Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure creates a new private SQL Workload object for the user. A SQL Workload object manages a SQL workload on behalf of the SQL Access Advisor. A SQL Workload object must exist prior to performing any other SQL Workload operations, such as importing or updating SQL statements.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD (
   workload_name            IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   description              IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   template                 IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   is_template              IN VARCHAR2 := 'FALSE');
```

Parameters

Table 19–9 CREATE_SQLWKLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	A name that uniquely identifies the created workload. If not specified, the system will generate a unique name. Names can be up to 30 characters long.
description	Specifies an optional workload description. Descriptions can be up to 256 characters.
template	An optional SQL Workload name of an existing workload data object or data object template.
is_template	An optional value that enables you to set the newly created workload as a template. Valid values are TRUE and FALSE.

Return Values

The SQL Access Advisor returns a unique workload object identifier number that must be used for subsequent activities within the new SQL Workload object.

Usage Notes

By default, workload objects are created using built-in default settings. To create a workload using the parameter settings of an existing workload or workload template, the user may specify an existing workload name.

After a SQL Workload object is present, it can then be referenced by one or more SQL Access Advisor tasks using the ADD_SQLWKLD_REF procedure.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
END;
```

/

CREATE_TASK Procedures

This procedure creates a new Advisor task in the repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK (
   advisor_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   task_id               OUT NUMBER,
   task_name             IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   task_desc             IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   template              IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   is_template           IN VARCHAR2 := 'FALSE',
   how_created           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);

DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK (
   advisor_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   task_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   task_desc             IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   template              IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   is_template           IN VARCHAR2 := 'FALSE',
   how_created           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);

DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK (
   parent_task_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   rec_id                IN NUMBER,
   task_id               OUT NUMBER,
   task_name             IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   task_desc             IN VARCHAR2,
   template              IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–10 CREATE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
advisor_name	Specifies the unique advisor name as defined in the view DBA_ADVISOR_DEFINITIONS.
task_id	A number that uniquely identifies the created task. The number is generated by the procedure and returned to the user.
task_name	Specifies a new task name. Names must be unique among all tasks for the user. When using the second form of the CREATE_TASK syntax listed above (with OUT), a unique name can be generated. Names can be up to 30 characters long.
task_desc	Specifies an optional task description. Descriptions can be up to 256 characters in length.
template	An optional task name of an existing task or task template. To specify built-in SQL Access Advisor templates, use the template name as described earlier.
is_template	An optional value that allows the user to set the newly created task as template. Valid values are: TRUE and FALSE.
how_created	An optional value that identifies how the source was created.

Return Values

Returns a unique task ID number and a unique task name if one is not specified.

Usage Notes

A task must be associated with an advisor, and once the task has been created, it is permanently associated with the original advisor. By default, tasks are created using built-in default settings. To create a task using the parameter settings of an existing task or task template, the user may specify an existing task name.

For the SQL Access Advisor, use the identifier `DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR` as the `advisor_name`.

The SQL Access Advisor provides three built-in task templates, using the following constants:

- `DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_OLTP`

  Parameters are preset to favor an OLTP application environment.

- `DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_WAREHOUSE`

  Parameters are preset to favor a data warehouse application environment.

- `DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_GENERAL`

  Parameters are preset to favor a hybrid application environment where both OLTP and data warehouse operations may occur. For the SQL Access Advisor, this is the default template.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
END;
/
```

DELETE_SQLWKLD Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure deletes an existing SQL Workload object from the repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–11 DELETE_SQLWKLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload. The wildcard % is supported as a WORKLOAD_NAME. The rules of use are identical to the LIKE operator. For example, to delete all tasks for the current user, use the wildcard % as the WORKLOAD_NAME. If a wildcard is provided, the DELETE_SQLWKLD operation will not delete any workloads marked as READ_ONLY or TEMPLATE.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See the RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD(workload_name);
END;
/
```

DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure removes a link between the current SQL Access task and a SQL Workload data object.

Use `DELETE_STS_REF` instead of `DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF` for all SQL tuning set-based advisor runs. This function is only provided for backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF (
   task_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   workload_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   is_sts                 IN NUMBER :=0);
```

Parameters

Table 19–12 DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	The SQL Access task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
`workload_name`	The name of the workload object to be unlinked. The wildcard `%` is supported as a `workload_name`. The rules of use are identical to the `LIKE` operator. For example, to remove all links to workload objects, use the wildcard `%` as the `workload_name`.
`is_sts`	Indicates the type of workload source. Possible values are: ■ 0 - SQL workload object ■ 1 - SQL tuning set

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
END;
/
```

DELETE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedures

This procedure has been deprecated.

This procedure deletes one or more statements from a workload.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   sql_id               IN NUMBER);

DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   search               IN VARCHAR2,
   deleted              OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–13 DELETE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
sql_id	The Advisor-generated identifier number that is assigned to the statement. To specify all workload statements, use the constant ADVISOR_ALL.
search	Disabled.
deleted	Returns the number of statements deleted by the searched deleted operation.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See the RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  deleted NUMBER;
  id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'YEARLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales');

   SELECT sql_id INTO id FROM USER_ADVISOR_SQLW_STMTS
   WHERE workload_name = 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, id);
END;
/
```

DELETE_STS_REF Procedure

This procedure removes a link between the current SQL Access Advisor task and a SQL tuning set.Use DELETE_STS_REF for any STS-based advisor runs. The older method of using DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF with parameter IS_STS=1 is only supported for backward compatibility. Furthermore, the DELETE_STS_REF function accepts an STS owner name, whereas DELETE_SQLWKLD_REF does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_STS_REF (
  task_name      IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL,
  sts_owner      IN VARCHAR2,
  workload_name  IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–14 DELETE_STS_REF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The SQL Access Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
sts_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set. The value of this parameter may be NULL, in which case the advisor assumes the SQL tuning set to be owned by the currently logged-in user.
workload_name	The name of the workload to be unlinked. A workload consists of one or more SQL statements, plus statistics and attributes that fully describe each statement. The database stores a workload as a SQL tuning set. The wildcard % is supported as a workload name. The rules of use are identical to the SQL LIKE operator. For example, to remove all links to SQL tuning set objects, use the wildcard % as the STS_NAME.

Examples

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_STS_REF ('My task', 'SCOTT', 'My workload');
```

DELETE_TASK Procedure

This procedure deletes an existing task from the repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_TASK (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–15 DELETE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	A single Advisor task name that will be deleted from the repository. The wildcard % is supported as a TASK_NAME. The rules of use are identical to the LIKE operator. For example, to delete all tasks for the current user, use the wildcard % as the TASK_NAME. If a wildcard is provided, the DELETE_TASK operation will not delete any tasks marked as READ_ONLY or TEMPLATE.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.DELETE_TASK(task_name);
END;
/
```

EXECUTE_TASK Procedure

This procedure performs the Advisor analysis or evaluation for the specified task. The procedure is overloaded.

The execution-related arguments are optional and you do not need to set them for advisors that do not allow their tasks to be executed multiple times.

Advisors can execute a task multiple times and use the results for further processing and analysis.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK (
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   execution_type    IN VARCHAR2             := NULL,
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2             := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2             := NULL,
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 19–16 EXECUTE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
execution_type	The type of action to be performed by the function. If NULL, it will default to the value of the DEFAULT_EXECUTION_TYPE parameter. As an example, the SQL Performance Analyzer accepts the following possible values: ■ EXPLAIN PLAN: Generate an explain plan for a SQL statement. This is similar to an EXPLAIN PLAN command. The resulting plans will be stored in the advisor framework in association with the task. ■ TEST EXECUTE: Test execute the SQL statement and collect its execute plan and statistics. The resulting plans and statistics are stored in the advisor framework. ■ ANALYZE PERFORMANCE: Analyze and compare two versions of SQL performance data. The performance data is generated by test executing a SQL statement or generating its explain plan.
execution_name	A name to qualify and identify an execution. If not specified, it will be generated by the Advisor and returned by function.
execution_params	A list of parameters (name, value) for the specified execution. Note that execution parameters are real task parameters, but they affect only the execution they are specified for. As an example, consider the following: DBMS_ADVISOR.ARGLIST('time_limit', 12, 'username', 'hr')
execution_desc	A 256-length string describing the execution.

Usage Notes

Task execution is a synchronous operation. Control will not be returned to the caller until the operation has completed, or a user-interrupt was detected.

Upon return, you can check the DBA_ADVISOR_LOG table for the execution status.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);
END;
/
```

GET_REC_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure retrieves a specified attribute of a new object as recommended by Advisor analysis.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_REC_ATTRIBUTES (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   rec_id                IN NUMBER,
   action_id             IN NUMBER,
   attribute_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value                 OUT VARCHAR2,
   owner_name            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–17 GET_REC_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
rec_id	The Advisor-generated identifier number that is assigned to the recommendation.
action_id	The Advisor-generated action identifier that is assigned to the particular command.
attribute_name	Specifies the attribute to change.
value	The buffer to receive the requested attribute value.
owner_name	Optional owner name of the target task. This permits access to task data not owned by the current user.

Return Values

The requested attribute value is returned in the VALUE argument.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  attribute VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id = 10');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_REC_ATTRIBUTES(task_name, 1, 1, 'NAME', attribute);
END;
/
```

GET_TASK_REPORT Function

This function creates and returns a report for the specified task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_REPORT (
   task_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   type           IN VARCHAR2 := 'TEXT',
   level          IN VARCHAR2 := 'TYPICAL',
   section        IN VARCHAR2 := 'ALL',
   owner_name     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   execution_name IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_id      IN NUMBER   := NULL)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 19–18 GET_TASK_REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the task from which the script will be created.
type	The only valid value is TEXT.
level	The possible values are BASIC, TYPICAL, and ALL.
section	Advisor-specific report sections.
owner_name	Owner of the task. If specified, the system will check to see if the current user has read privileges to the task data.
execution_name	An identifier of a specific execution of the task. It is needed only for advisors that allow their tasks to be executed multiple times.
object_id	An identifier of an advisor object that can be targeted by the script.

Return Values

Returns the buffer receiving the script.

GET_TASK_SCRIPT Function

This function creates a SQL*Plus-compatible SQL script and sends the output to file. The script will contain all of the accepted recommendations from the specified task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_SCRIPT (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2
   type               IN VARCHAR2 := 'IMPLEMENTATION',
   rec_id             IN NUMBER   := NULL,
   act_id             IN NUMBER   := NULL,
   owner_name         IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   execution_name     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_id          IN NUMBER   := NULL)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 19–19 GET_TASK_SCRIPT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
type	Specifies the type of script to generate. The possible values are IMPLEMENTATION and UNDO.
rec_id	An optional recommendation identifier number that can be used to extract a subset of the implementation script. A zero or the value DBMS_ADVISOR.ADVISOR_ALL indicates all accepted recommendations would be included. The default is to include all accepted recommendations for the task.
act_id	Optional action identifier number that can be used to extract a single action as a DDL command. A zero or the value DBMS_ADVISOR.ADVISOR_ALL indicates all actions for the recommendation would be included. The default is to include all actions for a recommendation.
owner_name	An optional task owner name.
execution_name	An identifier of a specific execution of the task. It is needed only for advisors that allow their tasks to be executed multiple times.
object_id	An identifier of an advisor object that can be targeted by the script.

Return Values

Returns the script as a CLOB buffer.

Usage Notes

Though the script is ready to execute, Oracle recommends that the user review the script for acceptable locations for new materialized views and indexes.

For a recommendation to appear in a generated script, it must be marked as accepted.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
```

```
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  buf CLOB;
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);
    buf := DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_SCRIPT(task_name);
END;
/
```

IMPLEMENT_TASK Procedure

This procedure implements the recommendations of the specified task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPLEMENT_TASK (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   rec_id             IN NUMBER := NULL,
   exit_on_error      IN BOOLEAN := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–20 IMPLEMENT_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the task.
rec_id	An optional recommendation ID.
exit_on_error	An optional boolean to exit on the first error.

IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SCHEMA Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure constructs and loads a SQL workload based on schema evidence. The workload is also referred to as a hypothetical workload.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SCHEMA (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode           IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW',
   priority              IN NUMBER := 2,
   saved_rows            OUT NUMBER,
   failed_rows           OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–21 IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
import_mode	Specifies the action to be taken when storing the workload. Possible values are: ■ APPEND Indicates that the collected workload will be added to any existing workload in the task. ■ NEW Indicates that the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, an exception will be thrown. ■ REPLACE Indicates the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, it will be deleted prior to saving the new workload. The default value is NEW.
priority	Specifies the application priority for each statement that is saved in the workload object. The value must be one of the following: 1-HIGH, 2-MEDIUM, or 3-LOW.
failed_rows	Returns the number or rows that were not saved due to syntax or validation errors
saved_rows	Returns the number of rows actually saved in the repository.

Return Values

This call returns the number of rows saved and failed as output parameters.

Usage Notes

To successfully import a hypothetical workload, the target schemas must contain dimensions.

If the VALID_TABLE_LIST parameter is not set, the search space may become very large and require a significant amount of time to complete. Oracle recommends that you limit your search space to specific set of tables.

If a task contains valid recommendations from a prior run, adding or modifying task will mark the task as invalid, preventing the viewing and reporting of potentially valuable recommendation data.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  saved NUMBER;
  failed NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER(workload_name,'VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SCHEMA(workload_name, 'REPLACE', 1, saved,
     failed);
END;
/
```

IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SQLCACHE Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure creates a SQL workload from the current contents of the server's SQL cache.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SQLCACHE (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode           IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW',
   priority              IN NUMBER := 2,
   saved_rows            OUT NUMBER,
   failed_rows           OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–22 IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SQLCACHE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
import_mode	Specifies the action to be taken when storing the workload. Possible values are: ■ APPEND Indicates that the collected workload will be added to any existing workload in the task. ■ NEW Indicates that the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, an exception will be thrown. ■ REPLACE Indicates the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, it will be deleted prior to saving the new workload. The default value is NEW.
priority	Specifies the application priority for each statement that is saved in the workload object. The value must be one of the following 1-HIGH, 2-MEDIUM, or 3-LOW.
saved_rows	Returns the number of rows saved as output parameters.
failed_rows	Returns the number of rows that were not saved due to syntax or validation errors.

Return Values

This call returns the number of rows saved and failed as output parameters.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
```

```
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  saved NUMBER;
  failed NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER(workload_name,'VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SQLCACHE(workload_name, 'REPLACE', 1, saved,
     failed);
END;
/
```

IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure loads a SQL workload from an existing SQL tuning set. A SQL tuning set is typically created from the server workload repository using various time and data filters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   sts_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode           IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW',
   priority              IN NUMBER := 2,
   saved_rows            OUT NUMBER,
   failed_rows           OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   sts_owner             IN VARCHAR2,
   sts_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode           IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW',
   priority              IN NUMBER := 2,
   saved_rows            OUT NUMBER,
   failed_rows           OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–23 IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
sts_owner	The optional owner of the SQL tuning set.
sts_name	The name of an existing SQL tuning set workload from which the data will be imported. If the sts_owner value is not provided, the owner will default to the current user.
import_mode	Specifies the action to be taken when storing the workload. Possible values are: ■ APPEND Indicates that the collected workload will be added to any existing workload in the task. ■ NEW Indicates that the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, an exception will be thrown. ■ REPLACE Indicates the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, it will be deleted prior to saving the new workload. The default value is NEW.
priority	Specifies the application priority for each statement that is saved in the workload object. The value must be one of the following: 1-HIGH, 2-MEDIUM, or 3-LOW. The default value is 2.
saved_rows	Returns the number of rows actually saved in the repository.

Table 19–23 (Cont.) IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
failed_rows	Returns the number of rows that were not saved due to syntax or validation errors.

Return Values

This call returns the number of rows saved and failed as output parameters.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  saved NUMBER;
  failed NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER(workload_name,'VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_STS(workload_name, 'MY_SQLSET', 'REPLACE', 1,
     saved, failed);
END;
/
```

IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SUMADV Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure collects a SQL workload from a Summary Advisor workload. This procedure is intended to assist Oracle9*i* Database Summary Advisor users in the migration to SQL Access Advisor.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SUMADV (
   workload_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode           IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW',
   priority              IN NUMBER := 2,
   sumadv_id             IN NUMBER,
   saved_rows            OUT NUMBER,
   failed_rows           OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–24 IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SUMADV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
import_mode	Specifies the action to be taken when storing the workload. Possible values are: ■ APPEND Indicates that the collected workload will be added to any existing workload in the task. ■ NEW Indicates that the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, an exception will be thrown. ■ REPLACE Indicates the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, it will be deleted prior to saving the new workload. The default value is NEW.
priority	Specifies the default application priority for each statement that is saved in the workload object. If a Summary Advisor workload statement contains a priority of zero, the default priority will be applied. If the workload statement contains a valid priority, then the Summary Advisor priority will be converted to a comparable SQL Access Advisor priority. The value must be one of the following: 1-HIGH, 2-MEDIUM, or 3-LOW.
sumadv_id	Specifies the Summary Advisor workload identifier number.
saved_rows	Returns the number of rows actually saved in the repository.
failed_rows	Returns the number of rows that were not saved due to syntax or validation errors.

Return Values

This call returns the number of rows saved and failed as output parameters.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  saved NUMBER;
  failed NUMBER;
  sumadv_id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';
  sumadv_id := 394;

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER(workload_name,'VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_SUMADV(workload_name, 'REPLACE', 1, sumadv_id,
    saved, failed);
END;
/
```

IMPORT_SQLWKLD_USER Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure collects a SQL workload from a specified user table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_USER (
   workload_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   import_mode            IN VARCHAR2 := 'NEW',
   owner_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   saved_rows             OUT NUMBER,
   failed_rows            OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–25 IMPORT_SQLWKLD_USER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
import_mode	Specifies the action to be taken when storing the workload. Possible values are: ■ APPEND Indicates that the collected workload will be added to any existing workload in the task. ■ NEW Indicates that the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, an exception will be thrown. ■ REPLACE Indicates the collected workload will be the exclusive workload for the task. If an existing workload is found, it will be deleted prior to saving the new workload. The default value is NEW.
owner_name	Specifies the owner name of the table or view from which workload data will be collected.
table_name	Specifies the name of the table or view from which workload data will be collected.
saved_rows	Returns the number of rows actually saved in the workload object.
failed_rows	Returns the number of rows that were not saved due to syntax or validation errors.

Return Values

This call returns the number of rows saved and failed as output parameters.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  saved NUMBER;
  failed NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER(workload_name,'VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.IMPORT_SQLWKLD_USER(workload_name, 'REPLACE', 'SH',
    'USER_WORKLOAD', saved, failed);
END;
/
```

INTERRUPT_TASK Procedure

This procedure stops a currently executing task. The task will end its operations as it would at a normal exit. The user will be able to access any recommendations that exist to this point.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.INTERRUPT_TASK (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–26 INTERRUPT_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	A single Advisor task name that will be interrupted.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);
END;
/
```

While this session is executing its task, you can interrupt the task from a second session using the following statement:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADVISOR.INTERRUPT_TASK('My Task');
END;
/
```

MARK_RECOMMENDATION Procedure

This procedure marks a recommendation for import or implementation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.MARK_RECOMMENDATION (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2
   id                 IN NUMBER,
   action             IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–27 MARK_RECOMMENDATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task.
id	The recommendation identifier number assigned by the Advisor.
action	The recommendation action setting. The possible actions are: ■ ACCEPT Marks the recommendation as accepted. With this setting, the recommendation will appear in implementation and undo scripts. ■ IGNORE Marks the recommendation as ignore. With this setting, the recommendation will not appear in an implementation or undo script. ■ REJECT Marks the recommendation as rejected. With this setting, the recommendation will not appear in any implementation or undo scripts.

Usage Notes

For a recommendation to be implemented, it must be marked as accepted. By default, all recommendations are considered accepted and will appear in any generated scripts.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  attribute VARCHAR2(100);
  rec_id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id = 10');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);

  rec_id := 1;
  DBMS_ADVISOR.MARK_RECOMMENDATION(task_name, rec_id, 'REJECT');
END;
/
```

QUICK_TUNE Procedure

This procedure performs an analysis and generates recommendations for a single SQL statement.

This provides a shortcut method of all necessary operations to analyze the specified SQL statement. The operation creates a task using the specified task name. The task will be created using a specified Advisor task template. Finally, the task will be executed and the results will be saved in the repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.QUICK_TUNE (
   advisor_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   task_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   attr1                  IN CLOB,
   attr2                  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   attr3                  IN NUMBER := NULL,
   task_or_template       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–28 QUICK_TUNE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
advisor_name	Name of the Advisor that will perform the analysis.
task_name	Name of the task.
attr1	Advisor-specific attribute in the form of a CLOB variable.
attr2	Advisor-specific attribute in the form of a VARCHAR2 variable.
attr3	Advisor-specific attribute in the form of a NUMBER.
task_or_template	An optional task name of an existing task or task template.

Usage Notes

If indicated by the user, the final recommendations can be implemented by the procedure.

The task will be created using either a specified SQL Access task template or the built-in default template of SQLACCESS_GENERAL. The workload will only contain the specified statement, and all task parameters will be defaulted.

attr1 must be the single SQL statement to tune. For the SQL Access Advisor, attr2 is the user who would execute the single statement. If omitted, the current user will be used.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.QUICK_TUNE(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_name,
                  'SELECT AVG(amount_sold) FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id=10');
END;
```

/

RESET_SQLWKLD Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure resets a workload to its initial starting point. This has the effect of removing all journal messages, log messages, and recalculating necessary volatility and usage statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.RESET_SQLWKLD (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–29 RESET_SQLWKLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The SQL Workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.

Usage Notes

RESET_SQLWKLD should be executed after any workload adjustments such as adding or removing SQL statements.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id = 10');

  DBMS_ADVISOR.RESET_SQLWKLD(workload_name);
END;
/
```

RESET_TASK Procedure

This procedure re-initializes the metadata for the specified task. The task status will be set to INITIAL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.RESET_TASK (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–30 RESET_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.RESET_TASK(task_name);
END;
/
```

SET_DEFAULT_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER Procedures

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure modifies the default value for a user parameter within a SQL Workload object or SQL Workload object template. A user parameter is a simple variable that stores various attributes that affect workload collection, tuning decisions and reporting. When a default value is changed for a parameter, workload objects will inherit the new value when they are created.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_DEFAULT_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER (
   parameter            IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_DEFAULT_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER (
   parameter            IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–31 SET_DEFAULT_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter	The name of the data parameter to be modified. Parameter names are not case sensitive. Parameter names are unique to the workload object type, but not necessarily unique to all workload object types. Various object types may use the same parameter name for different purposes.
value	The value of the specified parameter. The value can be specified as a string or a number. If the value is DBMS_ADVISOR.DEFAULT, the value will be reset to the default value.

Usage Notes

A parameter will only affect operations that modify the workload collection. Therefore, parameters should be set prior to importing or adding new SQL statements to a workload. If a parameter is set after data has been placed in a workload object, it will have no effect on the existing data.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_DEFAULT_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER('VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
END;
/
```

SET_DEFAULT_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures

This procedure modifies the default value for a user parameter within a task or a template. A user parameter is a simple variable that stores various attributes that affect various Advisor operations. When a default value is changed for a parameter, tasks will inherit the new value when they are created.

A default task is different from a regular task. The default value is the initial value that will be inserted into a newly created task, while setting a task parameter with SET_TASK_PARAMETER sets the local value only. Thus, SET_DEFAULT_TASK_PARAMETER has no effect on an existing task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_DEFAULT_TASK_PARAMETER (
   advisor_name        IN VARCHAR2
   parameter           IN VARCHAR2,
   value               IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_DEFAULT_TASK_PARAMETER (
   advisor_name        IN VARCHAR2
   parameter           IN VARCHAR2,
   value               IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–32 SET_DEFAULT_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
advisor_name	Specifies the unique advisor name as defined in the view DBA_ADVISOR_DEFINITIONS.
parameter	The name of the task parameter to be modified. Parameter names are not case sensitive. Parameter names are unique to the task type, but not necessarily unique to all task types. Various task types may use the same parameter name for different purposes.
value	The value of the specified task parameter. The value can be specified as a string or a number.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_DEFAULT_TASK_PARAMETER(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR,
   'VALID_TABLE_LIST', 'SH.%');
END;
/
```

SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER Procedures

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure modifies a user parameter within a SQL Workload object or SQL Workload object template. A user parameter is a simple variable that stores various attributes that affect workload collection, tuning decisions and reporting.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter            IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter            IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–33 SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The SQL Workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
parameter	The name of the data parameter to be modified. Parameter names are not case sensitive.
value	The value of the specified parameter. The value can be specified as a string or a number. If the value is DBMS_ADVISOR.DEFAULT, the value will be reset to the default value.

Usage Notes

A parameter will only affect operations that modify the workload collection. Therefore, parameters should be set prior to importing or adding new SQL statements to a workload. If a parameter is set after data has been placed in a workload object, it will have no effect on the existing data.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_SQLWKLD_PARAMETER(workload_name, 'VALID_TABLE_LIST','SH.%');
END;
/
```

SET_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure modifies a user parameter within an Advisor task or a template. A user parameter is a simple variable that stores various attributes that affect workload collection, tuning decisions and reporting.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER (
   task_name            IN VARCHAR2
   parameter            IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER (
   task_name            IN VARCHAR2
   parameter            IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 19–34 SET_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
parameter	The name of the task parameter to be modified. Parameter names are not case sensitive. Parameter names are unique to the task type, but not necessarily unique to all task types. Various task types may use the same parameter name for different purposes.
value	The value of the specified task parameter. The value can be specified as a string or a number. If the value is DEFAULT, the value will be reset to the default value.

Usage Notes

A task cannot be modified unless it is in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state. See your Advisor-specific documentation for further information on using this procedure.

SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Table 19–35 lists SQL Access Advisor task parameters.

Table 19–35 SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
ANALYSIS_SCOPE	A comma-separated list that specifies the tuning artifacts to consider during analysis. The possible values are: ■ ALL Short name for specifying INDEX, MVIEW, TABLE, and PARTITION. ■ EVALUATION Causes a read-only evaluation of the specified workload. No new recommendations will be made. Can only be specified alone. ■ INDEX Allows the SQL Access Advisor to recommend index structure changes. ■ MVIEW Allows the SQL Access Advisor to recommend materialized view and log changes. ■ PARTITION Allows the SQL Access Advisor to recommend partition options. Use this in conjunction with the INDEX, MVIEW, and TABLE options. ■ TABLE Allows the SQL Access Advisor to make base-table recommendations. In this release, the only base-table recommendation is partitioning. Using the new keywords, the following combinations are valid: ■ INDEX ■ MVIEW ■ INDEX, PARTITION ■ INDEX, MVIEW, PARTITION ■ INDEX, TABLE, PARTITION ■ MVIEW, PARTITION ■ MIVEW, TABLE, PARTITION ■ INDEX, MVIEW, TABLE, PARTITION ■ TABLE, PARTITION ■ EVALUATION The default value is INDEX. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
CREATION_COST	When set to true (default), the SQL Access Advisor will weigh the cost of creation of the access structure (index or materialized view) against the frequency of the query and potential improvement in the query execution time. When set to false, the cost of creation is ignored. The datatype is STRING.
DAYS_TO_EXPIRE	Specifies the expiration time in days for the current SQL Access Advisor task. The value is relative to the last modification date. Once the task expires, it will become a candidate for removal by an automatic purge operation. Specifies the expiration time in days for the current Access Advisor task. The value is relative to the last modification date. The datatype is NUMBER. Once the task expires, it becomes a candidate for removal by an automatic purge operation. The possible values are: ■ an integer in the range of 0 to 2147483647 ■ ADVISOR_UNLIMITED ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is 30.
DEF_EM_TEMPLATE	Contains the default task or template name from which the Enterprise Manager SQL Access Advisor Wizard reads its initial values. The default value is SQLACCESS_EMTASK. The datatype is STRING.
DEF_INDEX_OWNER	Specifies the default owner for new index recommendations. When a script is created, this value will be used to qualify the index name. Possible values are: ■ Existing schema name. Quoted identifiers are supported. ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRING.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
DEF_INDEX_ TABLESPACE	Specifies the default tablespace for new index recommendations. When a script is created, this value will be used to specify a tablespace clause. Possible values are: ■ Existing tablespace name. Quoted identifiers are supported. ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED No tablespace clause will be present in the script for indexes. The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRING.
DEF_MVIEW_OWNER	Specifies the default owner for new materialized view recommendations. When a script is created, this value will be used to qualify the materialized view name. Possible values are: ■ Existing schema name. Quoted identifiers are supported. ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRING.
DEF_MVIEW_ TABLESPACE	Specifies the default tablespace for new materialized view recommendations. When a script is created, this value will be used to specify a tablespace clause. Possible values are ■ Existing tablespace name. Quoted identifiers are supported. ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED. No tablespace clause will be present in the script for materialized view logs. The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRING.
DEF_MVLOG_ TABLSPACE	Specifies the default tablespace for new materialized view log recommendations. When a script is created, this value will be used to specify a tablespace clause. Possible values are: ■ Existing tablespace name. Quoted identifiers are supported. ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED. No tablespace clause will be present in the script for materialized view logs. The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRING.
DEF_PARTITION_ TABLESPACE	Specifies the default tablespace for new partitioning recommendations. When a script is created, this value will be used to specify a tablespace clause. Possible values are: ■ Existing tablespace name. Quoted identifiers are supported. ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED. No tablespace clause will be present in the script for materialized views. The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRING.
DML_VOLATILITY	When set to TRUE, the SQL Access Advisor will consider the impact of index maintenance and materialized view refresh in determining the recommendations. It will limit the access structure recommendations involving columns or tables that are frequently updated. For example, if there are too many DML statements on a column, then it may favor a B-tree index over a bitmap index on that column. For this process to be effective, the workload must include DML (insert/update/delete/merge/direct path inserts) statements that represent the update behavior of the application. The datatype is STRING. See the related parameter refresh_mode.
END_TIME	Specifies an end time for selecting SQL statements. If the statement did not execute on or before the specified time, it will not be processed. Each date must be in the standard Oracle form of MM-DD-YYYY HH24:MI:SS, where: ■ DD is the numeric date ■ MM is the numeric month ■ YYYY is the numeric year ■ HH is the hour in 24 hour format ■ MI is the minute ■ SS is the second The datatype is STRING.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
EVALUATION_ONLY	This parameter is maintained for backward compatibility. All values will be translated and placed into the ANALYSIS_SCOPE task parameter. If set to TRUE, causes SQL Access Advisor to analyze the workload, but only comment on how well the current configuration is supporting it. No tuning recommendations will be generated. Possible values are: ■ FALSE ■ TRUE The default value is FALSE. The datatype is STRING.
EXECUTION_TYPE	This parameter is maintained for backward compatibility. All values will be translated and placed into the ANALYSIS_SCOPE task parameter. The translated values are: ■ FULL => FULL ■ INDEX_ONLY => INDEX ■ MVIEW_ONLY => MVIEW ■ MVIEW_LOG_ONLY => MVIEW_LOG_ONLY The type of recommendations that is desired. Possible values: ■ FULL All supported recommendation types will be considered. ■ INDEX_ONLY The SQL Access Advisor will only consider index solutions as recommendations. ■ MVIEW_ONLY The SQL Access Advisor will consider materialized view and materialized view log solutions as recommendations. ■ MVIEW_LOG_ONLY The SQL Access Advisor will only consider materialized view log solutions as recommendations. The default value is FULL. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
IMPLEMENT_EXIT_ON_ERROR	When performing an IMPLEMENT_TASK operation, this parameter will control behavior when an action fails to implement. If set to TRUE, IMPLEMENT_TASK will stop on the first unexpected error. The possible values are: ■ TRUE ■ FALSE The default value is TRUE. The datatype is STRING.
INDEX_NAME_TEMPLATE	Specifies the method by which new index names are formed. If the *TASK_ID* is omitted from the template, names generated by two concurrently executing SQL Access Advisor tasks may conflict and cause undesirable effects. So it is recommended that you include the *TASK_ID* in the template. Once formatted, the maximum size of a name is 30 characters. Valid keywords are: ■ Any literal value up to 22 characters. ■ TABLE Causes the parent table name to be substituted into the index name. If the name is too long, it will be trimmed to fit. ■ TASK_ID Causes the current task identifier number to be inserted in hexadecimal form. ■ SEQ Causes a sequence number to be inserted in hexadecimal form. Because this number is used to guarantee uniqueness, it is a required token. The default template is *table*_IDX$$_*task_idsequence*. The datatype is STRING.
INVALID_ACTION_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of actions that are not eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. An action can be any string. If an action is not quoted, it will be changed to uppercase lettering and stripped of leading and trailing spaces. An action string is not scanned for correctness. During a task execution, if a SQL statement's action matches a name in the action list, it will not be processed by the task. An action name is case sensitive. The possible values are: ■ single action ■ comma-delimited action list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
INVALID_MODULE_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of modules that are not eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. A module can be any string. If a module is not quoted, it will be changed to uppercase lettering and stripped of leading and trailing spaces. A module string is not scanned for correctness. During a task execution, if a SQL statement's module matches a name in the list, it will not be processed by the task. A module name is case sensitive. The possible values are: ■ single application ■ comma-delimited module list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
INVALID_SQLSTRING_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of text strings that are not eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted values are supported. A SQL string can be any string. If a string is not quoted, it will be changed to uppercase lettering and stripped of leading and trailing spaces. A SQL string is not scanned for correctness. During a task execution, if a SQL statement contains a string in the SQL string list, it will not be processed by the task. The possible values are: ■ single string ■ comma-delimited string list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
INVALID_USERNAME_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of user names that are not eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. During a task execution, if a SQL statement's user name matches a name in the user name list, it will not be processed by the task. A user name is not case sensitive unless it is quoted. The possible values are: ■ single user name ■ comma-delimited user name list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
JOURNALING	Controls the logging of messages to the journal (DBA_ADVISOR_JOURNAL and USER_ADVISOR_JOURNAL views). The higher the setting, the more information is logged to the journal. Possible values are: ■ UNUSED: no journal messages ■ FATAL: explanation of fatal conditions ■ ERROR: explanation of errors ■ WARNING: explanation of warnings ■ INFORMATION: information message ■ INFORMATION2: common information ■ INFORMATION3: common information ■ INFORMATION4: common information ■ INFORMATION5: common information ■ INFORMATION6: common information Each journal value represents all recorded messages at that level or lower. For example, when choosing WARNING, all messages marked WARNING as well as ERROR and FATAL will be recorded in the repository. INFORMATION6 represents the most thorough message recording and UNUSED is the least. The default value is INFORMATION. The datatype is NUMBER.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
LIMITED_ PARTITION_ SCHEMES	User can suggest that the Partition Expert cut off the number of partitioning schemes to investigate. This can help with cutting down the run time of the advisor. Possible values are: ■ An integer in the range of 1 to 10 ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is NUMBER.
MAX_NUMBER_ PARTITIONS	Limits the number of partitions the advisor will recommend for any base table, index, or materialized view. Possible values are: ■ An integer in the range of 1 to 4294967295 ■ ADVISOR_UNLIMITED ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNLIMITED. The datatype is NUMBER.
MODE	Specifies the mode by which Access Advisor will operate during an analysis. Valid values are: ■ LIMITED Indicates the Advisor will attempt to a quick job by limiting the search-space of candidate recommendations, and correspondingly, the results may be of a low quality. ■ COMPREHENSIVE Indicates the Advisor will search a large pool of candidates that may take long to run, but the resulting recommendations will be of the highest quality. The default value is COMPREHENSIVE. The datatype is STRING.
MVIEW_NAME_ TEMPLATE	Specifies the method by which new materialized view names are formed. If the *TASK_ID* is omitted from the template, names generated by two concurrently executing SQL Access Advisor tasks may conflict and cause undesirable effects. So it is recommended that you include the *TASK_ ID* in the template. The format is any combination of keyword tokens and literals. However, once formatted, the maximum size of a name is 30 characters. Valid tokens are: ■ Any literal value up to 22 characters. ■ *TASK_ID* Causes the current task identifier number to be inserted in hexadecimal form. ■ *SEQ* Causes a sequence number to be inserted in hexadecimal form. Because this number is used to guarantee uniqueness, it is a required token. The default template is: MV$$_*task_idsequence*. The datatype is STRING.
ORDER_LIST	This parameter has been deprecated. Contains the primary natural order in which the Access Advisor processes workload elements during the analysis operation. To determine absolute natural order, Access Advisor sorts the workload using ORDER_ LIST values. A comma must separate multiple order keys. Possible values are: ■ BUFFER_GETS Sets the order using the SQL statement's buffer-get count value. ■ CPU_TIME Sets the order using the SQL statement's CPU time value. ■ DISK_READS Sets the order using the SQL statement's disk-read count value. ■ ELAPSED_TIME Sets the order using the SQL statement's elapsed time value. ■ EXECUTIONS Sets the order using the SQL statement's execution frequency value. ■ OPTIMIZER_COST Sets the order using the SQL statement's optimizer cost value. ■ I/O Sets the order using the SQL statement's I/O count value. ■ PRIORITY Sets the order using the user-supplied business priority value. All values are accessed in descending order, where a high value is considered more interesting than a low value. The default value is PRIORITY, OPTIMIZER_COST. The datatype is STRINGLIST.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
PARTITION_NAME_ TEMPLATE	Specifies the method by which new partition names are formed. The format is any combination of keyword tokens and literals. However, once formatted, the maximum size of a name is 30 characters. Valid tokens are: ■ Any literal value up to 22 characters. ■ *table* - Causes the parent table name to be substituted into the partition name. If the name is too long, it will be trimmed to fit. ■ *task_id* - Causes the current task identifier number to be inserted in hexadecimal form. ■ *sequence* - Causes a sequence number to be inserted in hexadecimal form. Because this number is used to guarantee uniqueness, it is a required token. The default template is PTN$$_*table_task_idsequence*. The datatype is STRING.
PARTITIONING_ GOAL	Specifies the approach used to make partitioning recommendations. One possible value is PERFORMANCE, which is the default. The datatype is STRING.
PARTITIONING_ TYPES	Specifies the type of partitioning used. Possible values are RANGE and HASH. The datatype is STRING.
RANKING_MEASURE	Contains the primary natural order in which the SQL Access Advisor processes workload elements during the analysis operation. To determine absolute natural order, SQL Access Advisor sorts the workload using RANKING_MEASURE values. A comma must separate multiple order keys. Possible values are: ■ BUFFER_GETS Sets the order using the SQL statement's buffer-get count value. ■ CPU_TIME Sets the order using the SQL statement's CPU time value. ■ DISK_READS Sets the order using the SQL statement's disk-read count value. ■ ELAPSED_TIME Sets the order using the SQL statement's elapsed time value. ■ EXECUTIONS Sets the order using the SQL statement's elapsed time value. ■ OPTIMIZER_COST Sets the order using the SQL statement's optimizer cost value. ■ PRIORITY Sets the order using the user-supplied business priority value. All values are accessed in descending order, where a high value is considered more interesting than a low value. The default value is PRIORITY, OPTIMIZER_COST. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
RECOMMEND_MV_ EXACT_TEXT_MATCH	When considering candidate materialized views, exact text match solutions will only be included if this parameter contains TRUE. The possible values are: ■ TRUE ■ FALSE The default value is TRUE. The datatype is STRING.
RECOMMENDED_ TABLESPACES	Allows the SQL Access Advisor to recommend optimal tablespaces for any partitioning scheme. If this is not set, the SQL Access Advisor will simply recommend a partitioning method but give no advice on physical storage. Possible values are: ■ TRUE ■ FALSE (the default) The datatype is STRING.
REFRESH_MODE	Specifies whether materialized views are refreshed ON_DEMAND or ON_COMMIT. This will be used to weigh the impact of materialized view refresh when the parameter dml_volatility is set to TRUE. Possible values are: ■ ON_DEMAND ■ ON_COMMIT The default value is ON_DEMAND. The datatype is STRING.
REPORT_DATE_ FORMAT	This is the default date and time formatting template. The default format is DD/MM/YYYYHH24:MI. The datatype is STRING.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
SHOW_RETAINS	Controls the display of RETAIN actions within an implementation script and the SQL Access Advisor wizard. The possible values are: ■ TRUE ■ FALSE The default value is TRUE. The datatype is STRING.
SQL_LIMIT	Specifies the number of SQL statements to be analyzed. The SQL_LIMIT filter is applied after all other filters have been applied. For example, if only statements referencing the table foo.bar are to be accepted, the SQL_LIMIT value will be only apply to those statements. When used in conjunction with the parameter ORDER_LIST, SQL Access Advisor will process the most interesting SQL statements by ordering the statements according to the specified sort keys. The possible values are: ■ an integer in the range of 1 to 2147483647 ■ ADVISOR_UNLIMITED ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is NUMBER.
START_TIME	Specifies a start time for selecting SQL statements. If the statement did not execute on or before the specified time, it will not be processed. Each date must be in the standard Oracle form of MM-DD-YYYY HH24:MI:SS, where: ■ DD is the numeric date ■ MM is the numeric month ■ YYYY is the numeric year ■ HH is the hour in 24 hour format ■ MI is the minute ■ SS is the second The datatype is STRING.
STORAGE_CHANGE	Contains the amount of space adjustment that can be consumed by SQL Access Advisor recommendations. Zero or negative values are only permitted if the workload scope is marked as FULL. When the SQL Access Advisor produces a set of recommendations, the resultant physical structures must be able to fit into the budgeted space. A space budget is computed by adding the STORAGE_CHANGE value to the space quantity currently used by existing access structures. A negative STORAGE_CHANGE value may force SQL Access Advisor to remove existing structures in order to shrink space demand. Possible values: ■ Any valid integer including negative values, zero and positive values. The default value is ADVISOR_UNLIMITED. The datatype is NUMBER.
TIME_LIMIT	Specifies the time in minutes that the SQL Access Advisor can use to perform an analysis operation. If the SQL Access Advisor reaches a specified recommendation quality or all input data has been analyzed, processing will terminate regardless of any remaining time. Possible values: ■ An integer in the range of 1 to 10,000 ■ ADVISOR_UNLIMITED The default value is 720 (12 hours). The datatype is NUMBER. Note that specifying ADVISOR_UNLIMITED has the same effect as setting the parameter to the maximum of 10,000 (about one week). The SQL Access Advisor will never run for more than 10,000 minutes.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
VALID_ACTION_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of actions that are eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. An action can be any string. If an action is not quoted, it will be changed to uppercase lettering and stripped of leading and trailing spaces. An action string is not scanned for correctness. During a task execution, if a SQL statement's action does not match a name in the action list, it will not be processed by the task. An action name is case sensitive. The possible values are: ■ single action ■ comma-delimited action list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
VALID_MODULE_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of application modules that are eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. A module can be any string. If a module is not quoted, it will be changed to uppercase lettering and stripped of leading and trailing spaces. A module string is not scanned for correctness. During a task execution, if a SQL statement's module does not match a name in the module list, it will not be processed by the task. A module name is case sensitive. The possible values are: ■ single application ■ comma-delimited module list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
VALID_SQLSTRING_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of text strings that are eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. A SQL string can be any string. If a string is not quoted, it will be changed to uppercase lettering and stripped of leading and trailing spaces. A SQL string is not scanned for correctness. During a task execution, if a SQL statement does not contain string in the SQL string list, it will not be processed by the task. The possible values are: ■ single string ■ comma-delimited string list ■ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.

Table 19–35 (Cont.) SQL Access Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
VALID_TABLE_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of tables that are eligible for tuning. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted identifiers are supported. Wildcard specifications are supported for tables. The default value is all tables within the user's scope are eligible for tuning. Supported wildcard character is %. A % wildcard matches any set of consecutive characters. When a SQL statement is processed, it will not be accepted unless at least one referenced table is specified in the valid table list. If the list is unused, then all table references within a SQL statement are considered valid. The valid syntax for a table reference is: ▪ schema.table ▪ schema ▪ schema.% (equivalent to schema) ▪ comma-delimited action list ▪ ADVISOR_UNUSED The possible values are: ▪ single table reference ▪ comma-delimited reference list ▪ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is TABLELIST.
VALID_USERNAME_LIST	Contains a fully qualified list of user names that are eligible for processing in a SQL workload object. The list elements are comma-delimited, and quoted names are supported. During a task execution, if a SQL statement's user name does not match a name in the user name list, it will not be processed by the task. A user name is not case sensitive unless it is quoted. The possible values are: ▪ single user name ▪ comma-delimited user name list ▪ ADVISOR_UNUSED The default value is ADVISOR_UNUSED. The datatype is STRINGLIST.
WORKLOAD_SCOPE	Describes the level of application coverage the workload represents. Possible values are FULL and PARTIAL. FULL Should be used if the workload contains all interesting application SQL statements for the targeted tables. PARTIAL (default) Should be used if the workload contains anything less than a full representation of the interesting application SQL statements for the targeted tables. The datatype is STRING.

Segment Advisor Parameters

Table 19–36 lists the input task parameters that can be set in the Segment Advisor using the SET_TASK_PARAMETER procedure.

Table 19–36 Segment Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
MODE	The data to use for analysis. The default value is COMPREHENSIVE, and the possible values are: ▪ LIMITED: Analysis restricted to statistics available in the Automatic Workload Repository ▪ COMPREHENSIVE: Analysis based on sampling and Automatic Workload Repository statistics
TIME_LIST	The time limit for which the Advisor should run. It is specified in seconds, and the default and possible values are UNLIMITED.

Table 19–36 (Cont.) Segment Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
RECOMMEND_ALL	Whether to generate recommendations for all segments. The default value is TRUE. If set to TRUE, it generates recommendations all segments specified by the user. If set to FALSE, it generates recommendations for only those objects that are eligible for shrink.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';

   DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
   DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER(task_name, 'VALID_TABLELIST',
      'SH.%,SCOTT.EMP');
END;
/
```

Undo Advisor Task Parameters

Table 19–37 lists the input task parameters that can be set in the Undo Advisor using the SET_TASK_PARAMETER procedure.

Table 19–37 Undo Advisor Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
TARGET_OBJECTS	The undo tablespace of the system. There is no default value, and the possible value is UNDO_TBS.
START_SNAPSHOT	The starting time for the system to perform analysis using the snapshot numbers in the AWR repository. There is no default value and the possible values are the valid snapshot numbers in the AWR repository.
END_SNAPSHOT	The ending time for the system to perform analysis using the snapshot numbers in the AWR repository. There is no default value and the possible values are the valid snapshot numbers in the AWR repository.
BEGIN_TIME_SEC	The number of seconds between the beginning time of the period and now. Describes a period of time for the system to perform analysis. BEGIN_TIME_SEC should be greater than END_TIME_SEC. There is no default value and the possible values are any positive integer.
END_TIME_SEC	The number of seconds between the ending time of the period and now. END_TIME_SEC should be less than BEGIN_TIME_SEC. There is no default value and the possible values are any positive integer.

Examples

```
DECLARE
   tname  VARCHAR2(30);
   oid    NUMBER;
   BEGIN
     DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK('Undo Advisor', tid, tname, 'Undo Advisor Task');
```

```
    DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_OBJECT(tname, 'UNDO_TBS', null, null, null, 'null', oid);
    DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER(tname, 'TARGET_OBJECTS', oid);
    DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER(tname, 'START_SNAPSHOT', 1);
    DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER(tname, 'END_SNAPSHOT', 2);
    DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(tname);
  END;
/
```

Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM) Task Parameters

Table 19–38 lists the input task parameters that can be set in ADDM using the SET_TASK_PARAMETER procedure. See *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information on using these parameters.

Table 19–38 ADDM Task Parameters

Parameter	Description
START_SNAPSHOT	The starting time for the system to perform analysis using the snapshot numbers in the AWR repository. There is no default value, and the possible values are the valid snapshot numbers in the AWR repository.
END_SNAPSHOT	The ending time for the system to perform analysis using the snapshot numbers in the AWR repository. There is no default value, and the possible values are the valid snapshot numbers in the AWR repository.
DB_ID	The database for START_SNAPSHOT and END_SNAPSHOT. The default value is the current database ID.
INSTANCE	The instance for START_SNAPSHOT and END_SNAPSHOT. The default value is 0 or UNUSED, and the possible values are all positive integers. By default, all instances are analyzed.
INSTANCES	If the INSTANCE parameter has been set, INSTANCES is ignored. The default value is UNUSED, and the possible values are comma-separated list of instance numbers (for example, "1, 3, 5"). By default, all instances are analyzed.
DBIO_EXPECTED	The average time to read the database block in microseconds. The default value is 10 milliseconds, and the possible values are system-dependent.

Examples

The following creates and executes an ADDM task for the current database and an AWR snapshot range between 19 and 26. Note that this example will analyze all instances, whether you have only one or an Oracle RAC database.

```
DECLARE
  tid     NUMBER;
  tname VARCHAR2(30) := 'ADDM_TEST';
BEGIN
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK('ADDM', tid, tname, 'my test');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER(tname, 'START_SNAPSHOT', '19');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.SET_TASK_PARAMETER(tname, 'END_SNAPSHOT', '26');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(tname);
END;
/
```

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information regarding ADDM usage
- The DBMS_ADDM package for details on how to create and execute ADDM tasks

SQL Tuning Advisor Task Parameters

See the DBMS_SQLTUNE package on page 154-1 and *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information.

TUNE_MVIEW Procedure

This procedure shows how to decompose a materialized view into two or more materialized views and to restate the materialized view in a way that is more advantageous for fast refresh and query rewrite. It also shows how to fix materialized view logs and to enable query rewrite.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.TUNE_MVIEW (
   task_name IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   mv_create_stmt IN [CLOB | VARCHAR2]);
```

Parameters

Table 19–39 TUNE_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The task name for looking up the results in a catalog view. If not specified, the system will generate a name and return.
mv_create_stmt	The original materialized view creation statement.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information about using the TUNE_MVIEW procedure

Usage Notes

Executing TUNE_MVIEW generates two sets of output results: one is for CREATE implementation and the other is for undoing the CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW implementation. The output results are accessible through USER_TUNE_MVIEW and DBA_TUNE_MVIEW views. You can also use DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_SCRIPT and DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_FILE to output the TUNE_MVIEW results into a script file for later execution.

USER_TUNE_MVIEW and DBA_TUNE_MVIEW Views

These views are to get the result after executing the TUNE_MVIEW procedure.

Table 19–40 USER_TUNE_MVIEW and DBA_TUNE_MVIEW Views

Column Name	Column Description
OWNER	The materialized view owner's name.
TASK_NAME	The task name as a key to access the set of recommendations
SCRIPT_TYPE	Recommendation ID used to indicate the row is for IMPLEMENTATION or UNDO script.
ACTION_ID	Action ID used as the command order number.
STATEMENT	For TUNE_MVIEW output, this column represents the following statements, and includes statement properties such as REFRESH and REWRITE options: ■ CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG ■ ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG FORCE ■ [CREATE | DROP] MATERIALIZED VIEW

Examples

```
name VARCHAR2(30);
DBMS_ADVISOR.TUNE_MVIEW.(name, 'SELECT AVG(C1) FROM my_fact_table WHERE c10 = 7');
```

The following is an example to show how to use TUNE_MVIEW to optimize a CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW statement:

```
NAME VARCHAR2(30) := 'my_tune_mview_task';
EXECUTE DBMS_ADVISOR.TUNE_MVIEW (name, 'CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW MY_MV
REFRESH FAST AS SELECT C2, AVG(C1) FROM MY_FACT_TABLE WHERE C10 = 7
GROUP BY C2');
```

You can view the CREATE output results by querying USER_TUNE_MVIEW or DBA_TUNE_MVIEW as the following example:

```
SELECT * FROM USER_TUNE_MVIEW WHERE TASK_NAME='my_tune_mview_task' AND
SCRIPT_TYPE='CREATE';
```

Alternatively, you can save the output results in an external script file as in the following example:

```
CREATE DIRECTORY TUNE_RESULTS AS  ''/myscript_dir'' ;
GRANT READ, WRITE ON DIRECTORY TUNE_RESULTS TO PUBLIC;
EXECUTE DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_FILE(DBMS_ADVISOR.GET_TASK_SCRIPT('my_tune_mview_
task'), -
'/homes/tune','my_tune_mview_create.sql');
```

The preceding statement will save the CREATE output results in /myscript_dir/my_tune_mview_create.sql.

UPDATE_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure updates an existing task object. Task objects are typically used as input data for a particular advisor. Segment advice can be generated at the object, segment, or tablespace level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_OBJECT (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2
   object_id       IN NUMBER,
   attr1           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   attr2           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   attr3           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   attr4           IN CLOB := NULL,
   attr5           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–41 UPDATE_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	A valid advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
object_id	The advisor-assigned object identifier.
attr1	Advisor-specific data. If set to NULL, there will be no effect on the target object.
attr2	Advisor-specific data. If set to NULL, there will be no effect on the target object.
attr3	Advisor-specific data. If set to NULL, there will be no effect on the target object.
attr4	Advisor-specific data. If set to NULL, there will be no effect on the target object.
attr5	Advisor-specific data. If set to null, there will be no effect on the target object.

The attribute parameters have different values depending upon the object type. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for details regarding these parameters and object types.

Usage Notes

If for the object level, advice is generated on all partitions of the object (if the object is partitioned). The advice is not cascaded to any dependent objects. If for the segment level, advice can be obtained on a single segment, such as the partition or subpartition of a table, index, or lob column. If for a tablespace level, target advice for every segment in the tablespace will be generated.

See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for further information regarding the Segment Advisor.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  obj_id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
```

```
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_OBJECT (task_name,'SQL',NULL,NULL,NULL,
                              'SELECT * FROM SH.SALES',obj_id);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_OBJECT (task_name, obj_id,NULL,NULL,NULL,
                              'SELECT count(*) FROM SH.SALES');
END;
/
```

UPDATE_REC_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure updates the owner, name, and tablespace for a recommendation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_REC_ATTRIBUTES (
   task_name            IN VARCHAR2
   rec_id               IN NUMBER,
   action_id            IN NUMBER,
   attribute_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   value                IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 19–42 UPDATE_REC_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
rec_id	The Advisor-generated identifier number that is assigned to the recommendation.
action_id	The Advisor-generated action identifier that is assigned to the particular command.
attribute_name	Name of the attribute to be changed. The valid values are: ■ owner The new owner of the object. ■ name The new name of the object. ■ tablespace The new tablespace for the object.
value	Specifies the new value for the recommendation attribute.

Usage Notes

Recommendation attributes cannot be modified unless the task has successfully executed.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  attribute VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_REF(task_name, workload_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id = 10');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.EXECUTE_TASK(task_name);

attribute := 'SH';
```

```
  DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_REC_ATTRIBUTES(task_name, 1, 3, 'OWNER', attribute);
END;
/
```

UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure changes various attributes of a SQL Workload object or template.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ATTRIBUTES (
   workload_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   new_name             IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   read_only            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   is_template          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   how_created          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–43 UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
new_name	The new workload object name. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the workload will not be renamed. A task name can be up to 30 characters long.
description	A new workload description. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the description will not be changed. Names can be up to 256 characters long.
read_only	Set to TRUE so it cannot be changed.
is_template	TRUE if workload is to be used as a template.
how_created	Indicates a source application name that initiated the workload creation. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the source will not be changed.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id = 10');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_SQLWKLD_ATTRIBUTES(workload_name,'New workload name');
END;
/
```

UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated starting in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure updates an existing SQL statement in a specified SQL workload.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT (
   workload_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   sql_id            IN NUMBER,
   application       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   action            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   priority          IN NUMBER := NULL,
   username          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);

DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT (
   workload_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   search            IN VARCHAR2,
   updated           OUT NUMBER,
   application       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   action            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   priority          IN NUMBER := NULL,
   username          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–44 UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
workload_name	The SQL Workload object name that uniquely identifies an existing workload.
sql_id	The Advisor-generated identifier number that is assigned to the statement. To specify all workload statements, use the constant DBMS_ADVISOR.ADVISOR_ALL.
updated	Returns the number of statements changed by a searched update.
application	Specifies a business application name that will be associated with the SQL statement. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, then the column will not be updated in the repository.
action	Specifies the application action for the statement. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, then the column will not be updated in the repository.
priority	The relative priority of the SQL statement. The value must be one of the following: 1 - HIGH, 2 - MEDIUM, or 3 - LOW. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, then the column will not be updated in the repository.

Table 19–44 (Cont.) UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
username	The Oracle user name that executed the SQL statement. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, then the column will not be updated in the repository. Because a user name is an Oracle identifier, the username value must be entered exactly like it is stored in the database. For example, if the user SCOTT is the executing user, then you must provide the user identifier SCOTT in all uppercase letters. The database does not recognize the user scott as a match for SCOTT.
search	Disabled.

Usage Notes

A workload cannot be modified or deleted if it is currently referenced by an active task. A task is considered active if it is not in its initial state. See RESET_TASK Procedure on page 19-49 to set a task to its initial state.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  workload_name VARCHAR2(30);
  updated NUMBER;
  id NUMBER;
BEGIN
  workload_name := 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_SQLWKLD(workload_name, 'My Workload');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.ADD_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, 'MONTHLY', 'ROLLUP',
                                     100,400,5041,103,640445,680000,2,
                                     1,SYSDATE,1,'SH','SELECT AVG(amount_sold)
                                     FROM sh.sales WHERE promo_id = 10');

   SELECT sql_id INTO id FROM USER_ADVISOR_SQLW_STMTS
   WHERE workload_name = 'My Workload';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_SQLWKLD_STATEMENT(workload_name, id);
END;
/
```

UPDATE_TASK_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure changes various attributes of a task or a task template.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_TASK_ATTRIBUTES (
   task_name          IN VARCHAR2
   new_name           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   read_only          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   is_template        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   how_created        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 19–45 UPDATE_TASK_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The Advisor task name that uniquely identifies an existing task.
new_name	The new Advisor task name. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the task will not be renamed. A task name can be up to 30 characters long.
description	A new task description. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the description will not be changed. Names can be up to 256 characters long.
read_only	Sets the task to read-only. Possible values are: TRUE and FALSE. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the setting will not be changed.
is_template	Marks the task as a template. Physically, there is no difference between a task and a template; however, a template cannot be executed. Possible values are: TRUE and FALSE. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the setting will not be changed.
how_created	Indicates a source application name that initiated the task creation. If the value is NULL or contains the value ADVISOR_UNUSED, the source will not be changed.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  task_id NUMBER;
  task_name VARCHAR2(30);
BEGIN
  task_name := 'My Task';

  DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_TASK(DBMS_ADVISOR.SQLACCESS_ADVISOR, task_id, task_name);
  DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_TASK_ATTRIBUTES(task_name,'New Task Name');
  DBMS_ADVISOR.UPDATE_TASK_ATTRIBUTES('New Task Name',NULL,'New description');
END;
/
```

20

DBMS_ALERT

DBMS_ALERT supports asynchronous notification of database events (alerts). By appropriate use of this package and database triggers, an application can notify itself whenever values of interest in the database are changed.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ALERT

Overview

Suppose a graphics tool is displaying a graph of some data from a database table. The graphics tool can, after reading and graphing the data, wait on a database alert (`WAITONE`) covering the data just read. The tool automatically wakes up when the data is changed by any other user. All that is required is that a trigger be placed on the database table, which performs a signal (`SIGNAL`) whenever the trigger is fired.

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled by granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles. You might want to write a cover package on top of this one that restricts the alert names used. `EXECUTE` privilege on this cover package can then be granted rather than on this package.

Constants

The DBMS_ALERT package uses the constants shown in Table 20–1:

Table 20–1 DBMS_ALERT Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
MAXWAIT	INTEGER	86400000	The maximum time to wait for an alert (1000 days which is essentially forever).

Restrictions

Because database alerters issue commits, they cannot be used with Oracle Forms. For more information on restrictions on calling stored procedures while Oracle Forms is active, refer to your Oracle Forms documentation.

Exceptions

DBMS_ALERT raises the application error -20000 on error conditions. Table 20–2 shows the messages and the procedures that can raise them.

Operational Notes

The following notes relate to general and specific applications:

- Alerts are transaction-based. This means that the waiting session is not alerted until the transaction signalling the alert commits. There can be any number of concurrent signalers of a given alert, and there can be any number of concurrent waiters on a given alert.
- A waiting application is blocked in the database and cannot do any other work.
- An application can register for multiple events and can then wait for any of them to occur using the `WAITANY` procedure.
- An application can also supply an optional `timeout` parameter to the `WAITONE` or `WAITANY` procedures. A `timeout` of 0 returns immediately if there is no pending alert.
- The signalling session can optionally pass a message that is received by the waiting session.
- Alerts can be signalled more often than the corresponding application wait calls. In such cases, the older alerts are discarded. The application always gets the latest alert (based on transaction commit times).
- If the application does not require transaction-based alerts, the `DBMS_PIPE` package may provide a useful alternative.

  See Also: Chapter 112, "DBMS_PIPE"

- If the transaction is rolled back after the call to `SIGNAL`, no alert occurs.
- It is possible to receive an alert, read the data, and find that no data has changed. This is because the data changed after the *prior* alert, but before the data was read for that *prior* alert.
- Usually, Oracle is event-driven; this means that there are no polling loops. There are two cases where polling loops can occur:
  - Shared mode. If your database is running in shared mode, a polling loop is required to check for alerts from another instance. The polling loop defaults to one second and can be set by the `SET_DEFAULTS` procedure.
  - `WAITANY` procedure. If you use the `WAITANY` procedure, and if a signalling session does a signal but does not commit within one second of the signal, a polling loop is required so that this uncommitted alert does not camouflage other alerts. The polling loop begins at a one second interval and exponentially backs off to 30-second intervals.

Table 20–2 DBMS_ALERT Error Messages

Error Message	Procedure
`ORU-10001 lock request error, status: N`	`SIGNAL`
`ORU-10015 error: N waiting for pipe status`	`WAITANY`
`ORU-10016 error: N sending on pipe 'X'`	`SIGNAL`
`ORU-10017 error: N receiving on pipe 'X'`	`SIGNAL`
`ORU-10019 error: N on lock request`	`WAIT`
`ORU-10020 error: N on lock request`	`WAITANY`

Table 20–2 (Cont.) DBMS_ALERT Error Messages

Error Message	Procedure
ORU-10021 lock request error; status: N	REGISTER
ORU-10022 lock request error, status: N	SIGNAL
ORU-10023 lock request error; status N	WAITONE
ORU-10024 there are no alerts registered	WAITANY
ORU-10025 lock request error; status N	REGISTER
ORU-10037 attempting to wait on uncommitted signal from same session	WAITONE

Examples

Suppose you want to graph average salaries by department, for all employees. Your application needs to know whenever EMP is changed. Your application would look similar to this code:

```
DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER('emp_table_alert');
    <<readagain>>:
   /* ... read the emp table and graph it */
      DBMS_ALERT.WAITONE('emp_table_alert', :message, :status);
      if status = 0 then goto <<readagain>>; else
      /* ... error condition */
```

The EMP table would have a trigger similar to this:

```
CREATE TRIGGER emptrig AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
    BEGIN
      DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL('emp_table_alert', 'message_text');
   END;
```

When the application is no longer interested in the alert, it makes this request:

```
DBMS_ALERT.REMOVE('emp_table_alert');
```

This reduces the amount of work required by the alert signaller. If a session exits (or dies) while registered alerts exist, the alerts are eventually cleaned up by future users of this package.

The example guarantees that the application always sees the latest data, although it may not see every intermediate value.

Summary of DBMS_ALERT Subprograms

Table 20–3 DBMS_ALERT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REGISTER Procedure on page 20-12	Receives messages from an alert
REMOVE Procedure on page 20-13	Disables notification from an alert
REMOVEALL Procedure on page 20-14	Removes all alerts for this session from the registration list
SET_DEFAULTS Procedure on page 20-15	Sets the polling interval
SIGNAL Procedure on page 20-16	Signals an alert (send message to registered sessions)
WAITANY Procedure on page 20-17	Waits `timeout` seconds to receive alert message from an alert registered for session
WAITONE Procedure on page 20-18	Waits `timeout` seconds to receive message from named alert

REGISTER Procedure

This procedure lets a session register interest in an alert.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.REGISTER (
   name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   cleanup   IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 20–4 REGISTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the alert in which this session is interested
cleanup	Specifies whether to perform cleanup of any extant orphaned pipes used by the DBMS_ALERT package. This cleanup is only performed on the first call to REGISTER for each package instantiation. The default for the parameter is TRUE.

Caution: Alert names beginning with 'ORA$' are reserved for use for products provided by Oracle. Names must be 30 bytes or less. The name is case insensitive.

Usage Notes

A session can register interest in an unlimited number of alerts. Alerts should be deregistered when the session no longer has any interest, by calling REMOVE.

REMOVE Procedure

This procedure enables a session that is no longer interested in an alert to remove that alert from its registration list. Removing an alert reduces the amount of work done by signalers of the alert.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.REMOVE (
   name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 20–5 REMOVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the alert (case-insensitive) to be removed from registration list.

Usage Notes

Removing alerts is important because it reduces the amount of work done by signalers of the alert. If a session dies without removing the alert, that alert is eventually (but not immediately) cleaned up.

REMOVEALL Procedure

This procedure removes all alerts for this session from the registration list. You should do this when the session is no longer interested in any alerts.

This procedure is called automatically upon first reference to this package during a session. Therefore, no alerts from prior sessions which may have terminated abnormally can affect this session.

This procedure always performs a commit.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.REMOVEALL;
```

SET_DEFAULTS Procedure

In case a polling loop is required, use the SET_DEFAULTS procedure to set the polling interval.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.SET_DEFAULTS (
   sensitivity  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 20–6 SET_DEFAULTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sensitivity	Polling interval, in seconds, to sleep between polls. The default interval is five seconds.

SIGNAL Procedure

This procedure signals an alert. The effect of the `SIGNAL` call only occurs when the transaction in which it is made commits. If the transaction rolls back, `SIGNAL` has no effect.

All sessions that have registered interest in this alert are notified. If the interested sessions are currently waiting, they are awakened. If the interested sessions are not currently waiting, they are notified the next time they do a wait call.

Multiple sessions can concurrently perform signals on the same alert. Each session, as it signals the alert, blocks all other concurrent sessions until it commits. This has the effect of serializing the transactions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.SIGNAL (
   name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   message  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 20–7 SIGNAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Name of the alert to signal.
`message`	Message, of 1800 bytes or less, to associate with this alert. This message is passed to the waiting session. The waiting session might be able to avoid reading the database after the alert occurs by using the information in the message.

WAITANY Procedure

Call this procedure to wait for an alert to occur for any of the alerts for which the current session is registered.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.WAITANY (
   name      OUT  VARCHAR2,
   message   OUT  VARCHAR2,
   status    OUT  INTEGER,
   timeout   IN   NUMBER DEFAULT MAXWAIT);
```

Parameters

Table 20–8 WAITANY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Returns the name of the alert that occurred.
message	Returns the message associated with the alert. This is the message provided by the SIGNAL call. If multiple signals on this alert occurred before WAITANY, the message corresponds to the most recent SIGNAL call. Messages from prior SIGNAL calls are discarded.
status	Values returned: 0 - alert occurred 1 - timeout occurred
timeout	Maximum time to wait for an alert. If no alert occurs before timeout seconds, this returns a status of 1.

Usage Notes

An implicit COMMIT is issued before this procedure is executed. The same session that waits for the alert may also first signal the alert. In this case remember to commit after the signal and before the wait; otherwise, DBMS_LOCK.REQUEST (which is called by DBMS_ALERT) returns status 4.

Exceptions

```
-20000, ORU-10024: there are no alerts registered.
```

WAITONE Procedure

This procedure waits for a specific alert to occur. An implicit COMMIT is issued before this procedure is executed. A session that is the first to signal an alert can also wait for the alert in a subsequent transaction. In this case, remember to commit after the signal and before the wait; otherwise, DBMS_LOCK.REQUEST (which is called by DBMS_ALERT) returns status 4.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ALERT.WAITONE (
   name      IN   VARCHAR2,
   message   OUT  VARCHAR2,
   status    OUT  INTEGER,
   timeout   IN   NUMBER DEFAULT MAXWAIT);
```

Parameters

Table 20–9 WAITONE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the alert to wait for.
message	Returns the message associated with the alert. This is the message provided by the SIGNAL call. If multiple signals on this alert occurred before WAITONE, the message corresponds to the most recent SIGNAL call. Messages from prior SIGNAL calls are discarded.
status	Values returned: 0 - alert occurred 1 - timeout occurred
timeout	Maximum time to wait for an alert. If the named alert does not occurs before timeout seconds, this returns a status of 1.

21

DBMS_APP_CONT

The DBMS_APP_CONT package provides an interface to determine if the in-flight transaction on a now unavailable session committed or not, and if the last call on that session completed or not.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide* for explanations of application continuity and Transaction Guard, and the relationship between these two features:
>
> - "Using Transaction Guard"
> - "Ensuring Application Continuity"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_APP_CONT

Overview

Problem Description

One of the fundamental problems for recovering applications after an outage is that the commit message that is sent back to the client is not durable. If there is a break between the client and the server, the client sees an error message indicating that the communication failed. This error does not inform the application whether the submission executed any commit operations or if a procedural call, ran to completion executing all expected commits and session state changes or failed part way through or yet worse, is still running disconnected from the client.

GET_LTXID_OUTCOME

The purpose of the GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure is to determine if the in-flight transaction on a now unavailable session completed or not. It is used when the original session returned an error due to unavailability. Situations that can cause such session unavailability may occur at the session, instance, server, or network, and result from planned or unplanned outages. When such an outage occurs, the application receives a disconnection error. Such an error provides no insight as to whether the transaction committed. It also does not reveal what the application might have been expecting from that commit if it had returned.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Concepts* for explanation of Logical Transaction ID

Security Model

Applications must have the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_APP_CONT package. To grant this privilege, ask your database administrator to run the following SQL statement:

```
GRANT execute on DBMS_APP_CONT to application user ;
```

Summary of DBMS_APP_CONT Subprograms

Table 21–1 DBMS_APP_CONT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure on page 21-6	Lets customer applications and third party application servers determine the transactional status of the last session when that session becomes unavailable.

GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure

This procedure lets customer applications and third party application servers determine the transactional status of the last session when that session becomes unavailable.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APP_CONT.GET_LTXID_OUTCOME (
 client_ltxid          IN    RAW,
 committed             OUT   BOOLEAN,
 user_call_completed   OUT   BOOLEAN)
```

Parameters

Table 21–2 GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_ltxid	Client-side logical transaction ID. Obtain the LTXID from the previous failed session using the client driver provided APIs - getLTXID for JDBC, and LogicalTransactionId for ODP.net., and OCI_ATTR_GET with LTXID for OCI.
committed	Returns TRUE if the transaction with the named logical LTXID has COMMITTED. Returns FALSE if the logical LTXID has not COMMITTED. When returning FALSE, the procedure blocks the LTXID from further use so that there is no possibility of previous in-flight work committing this LTXID.
user_call_completed	Whether all information has been returned to the client. Examples of such messages are the number of rows processed when using autocommit or commit on success, parameter and function results when calling PL/SQL, or PL/SQL with more work to do after the COMMIT. Applications that expect to use data returned from the commit in order to function correctly must look at this second parameter.

Exceptions

Table 21–3 GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-14950 - SERVER_AHEAD	The server is ahead so the transaction is both an old transaction and one which has already committed. This is an error as the application is passing an older LTXID that is the not the last used for that session. The purpose of GET_LTXID_OUTCOME is to return the current transaction outcome for that session after a recoverable outage.
ORA-14951 - CLIENT_AHEAD	The client is ahead of the server. This can happen if the server has been flashed backed, recovered using media recovery, or is a standby that has opened earlier with data loss.
ORA-14906 - SAME_SESSION	Executing GET_LTXID_OUTCOME is not supported on the session owning the LTXID as it blocks further processing on that session after a recoverable outage.
ORA-14909 - COMMIT_BLOCKED	Your session has been blocked from committing by another user with the same username using GET_LTXID_OUTCOME. GET_LTXID_OUTCOME should only be called on dead sessions. Please check with your application administrator.

Table 21–3 (Cont.) GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-14952 - ERROR	The outcome cannot be determined. During processing an error happened. The error stack shows the error detail.

22

DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO

Application developers can use the `DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO` package with Oracle Trace and the SQL trace facility to record names of executing modules or transactions in the database for later use when tracking the performance of various modules and debugging.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO

Overview

Registering the application allows system administrators and performance tuning specialists to track performance by module. System administrators can also use this information to track resource use by module. When an application registers with the database, its name and actions are recorded in the `V$SESSION` and `V$SQLAREA` views.

Security Model

> **Note:** The public synonym for `DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO` is not dropped before creation so that you can redirect the public synonym to point to your own package.

No further privileges are required. The `DBMSAPIN.SQL` script is already run as a part of standard database creation.

Operational Notes

Your applications should set the name of the module and name of the action automatically each time a user enters that module. The module name could be the name of a form in an Oracle Forms application, or the name of the code segment in an Oracle Precompilers application. The action name should usually be the name or description of the current transaction within a module.

If you want to gather your own statistics based on module, you can implement a wrapper around this package by writing a version of this package in another schema that first gathers statistics and then calls the `SYS` version of the package. The public synonym for `DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO` can then be changed to point to the DBA's version of the package.

Summary of DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO Subprograms

Table 22–1 DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
READ_CLIENT_INFO Procedure on page 22-7	Reads the value of the `client_info` field of the current session
READ_MODULE Procedure on page 22-8	Reads the values of the module and action fields of the current session
SET_ACTION Procedure on page 22-9	Sets the name of the current action within the current module
SET_CLIENT_INFO Procedure on page 22-10	Sets the `client_info` field of the session
SET_MODULE Procedure on page 22-11	Sets the name of the module that is currently running to a new module
SET_SESSION_LONGOPS Procedure on page 22-12	Sets a row in the `V$SESSION_LONGOPS` table

READ_CLIENT_INFO Procedure

This procedure reads the value of the `client_info` field of the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.READ_CLIENT_INFO (
   client_info OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 22–2 READ_CLIENT_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`client_info`	Last client information value supplied to the `SET_CLIENT_INFO` procedure.

READ_MODULE Procedure

This procedure reads the values of the module and action fields of the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.READ_MODULE (
   module_name OUT VARCHAR2,
   action_name OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 22–3 READ_MODULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
module_name	Last value that the module name was set to by calling SET_MODULE.
action_name	Last value that the action name was set to by calling SET_ACTION or SET_MODULE.

Usage Notes

Module and action names for a registered application can be retrieved by querying V$SQLAREA or by calling the READ_MODULE procedure. Client information can be retrieved by querying the V$SESSION view, or by calling the READ_CLIENT_INFO Procedure.

Examples

The following sample query illustrates the use of the MODULE and ACTION column of the V$SQLAREA.

```
SELECT sql_text, disk_reads, module, action
FROM v$sqlarea
WHERE module = 'add_employee';

SQL_TEXT DISK_READS MODULE ACTION
------------------- ---------- ------------------ ----------------
INSERT INTO emp 1 add_employee insert into emp
(ename, empno, sal, mgr, job, hiredate, comm, deptno)
VALUES
(name, next.emp_seq, manager, title, SYSDATE, commission, department)

1 row selected.
```

SET_ACTION Procedure

This procedure sets the name of the current action within the current module.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_ACTION (
   action_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 22–4 SET_ACTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
action_name	The name of the current action within the current module. When the current action terminates, call this procedure with the name of the next action if there is one, or NULL if there is not. Names longer than 32 bytes are truncated.

Usage Notes

The action name should be descriptive text about the current action being performed. You should probably set the action name before the start of every transaction.

Set the transaction name to NULL after the transaction completes, so that subsequent transactions are logged correctly. If you do not set the transaction name to NULL, subsequent transactions may be logged with the previous transaction's name.

Example

The following is an example of a transaction that uses the registration procedure:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE bal_tran (amt IN NUMBER(7,2)) AS
BEGIN

-- balance transfer transaction

   DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_ACTION(
      action_name => 'transfer from chk to sav');
   UPDATE chk SET bal = bal + :amt
      WHERE acct# = :acct;
   UPDATE sav SET bal = bal - :amt
      WHERE acct# = :acct;
   COMMIT;
   DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_ACTION(null);

END;
```

SET_CLIENT_INFO Procedure

This procedure supplies additional information about the client application.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_CLIENT_INFO (
   client_info IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 22–5 SET_CLIENT_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_info	Supplies any additional information about the client application. This information is stored in the V$SESSION view. Information exceeding 64 bytes is truncated.

Note: CLIENT_INFO is readable and writable by any user. For storing secured application attributes, you can use the application context feature.

SET_MODULE Procedure

This procedure sets the name of the current application or module.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE (
   module_name IN VARCHAR2,
   action_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 22–6 SET_MODULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
module_name	Name of module that is currently running. When the current module terminates, call this procedure with the name of the new module if there is one, or NULL if there is not. Names longer than 48 bytes are truncated.
action_name	Name of current action within the current module. If you do not want to specify an action, this value should be NULL. Names longer than 32 bytes are truncated.

Usage Notes

Example

```
CREATE or replace PROCEDURE add_employee(
  name VARCHAR2,
  salary NUMBER,
  manager NUMBER,
  title VARCHAR2,
  commission NUMBER,
  department NUMBER) AS
BEGIN
  DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE(
    module_name => 'add_employee',
    action_name => 'insert into emp');
  INSERT INTO emp
    (ename, empno, sal, mgr, job, hiredate, comm, deptno)
    VALUES (name, emp_seq.nextval, salary, manager, title, SYSDATE,
            commission, department);
  DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE(null,null);
END;
```

SET_SESSION_LONGOPS Procedure

This procedure sets a row in the V$SESSION_LONGOPS view. This is a view that is used to indicate the on-going progress of a long running operation. Some Oracle functions, such as parallel execution and Server Managed Recovery, use rows in this view to indicate the status of, for example, a database backup.

Applications may use the SET_SESSION_LONGOPS procedure to advertise information on the progress of application specific long running tasks so that the progress can be monitored by way of the V$SESSION_LONGOPS view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_SESSION_LONGOPS (
   rindex      IN OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   slno        IN OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   op_name     IN     VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   target      IN     BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   context     IN     BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   sofar       IN     NUMBER         DEFAULT 0,
   totalwork   IN     NUMBER         DEFAULT 0,
   target_desc IN     VARCHAR2       DEFAULT 'unknown target',
   units       IN     VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL)

set_session_longops_nohint constant BINARY_INTEGER := -1;
```

Parameters

Table 22–7 SET_SESSION_LONGOPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rindex	A token which represents the v$session_longops row to update. Set this to set_session_longops_nohint to start a new row. Use the returned value from the prior call to reuse a row.
slno	Saves information across calls to set_session_longops: It is for internal use and should not be modified by the caller.
op_name	Specifies the name of the long running task. It appears as the OPNAME column of v$session_longops. The maximum length is 64 bytes.
target	Specifies the object that is being worked on during the long running operation. For example, it could be a table ID that is being sorted. It appears as the TARGET column of v$session_longops.
context	Any number the client wants to store. It appears in the CONTEXT column of v$session_longops.
sofar	Any number the client wants to store. It appears in the SOFAR column of v$session_longops. This is typically the amount of work which has been done so far.
totalwork	Any number the client wants to store. It appears in the TOTALWORK column of v$session_longops. This is typically an estimate of the total amount of work needed to be done in this long running operation.
target_desc	Specifies the description of the object being manipulated in this long operation. This provides a caption for the target parameter. This value appears in the TARGET_DESC field of v$session_longops. The maximum length is 32 bytes.

Table 22–7 (Cont.) SET_SESSION_LONGOPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
units	Specifies the units in which sofar and totalwork are being represented. It appears as the UNITS field of v$session_longops. The maximum length is 32 bytes.

Example

This example performs a task on 10 objects in a loop. As the example completes each object, Oracle updates V$SESSION_LONGOPS on the procedure's progress.

```
DECLARE
        rindex    BINARY_INTEGER;
        slno      BINARY_INTEGER;
        totalwork number;
        sofar     number;
        obj       BINARY_INTEGER;

      BEGIN
        rindex := dbms_application_info.set_session_longops_nohint;
        sofar := 0;
        totalwork := 10;

        WHILE sofar < 10 LOOP
          -- update obj based on sofar
          -- perform task on object target

          sofar := sofar + 1;
          dbms_application_info.set_session_longops(rindex, slno,
            "Operation X", obj, 0, sofar, totalwork, "table", "tables");
        END LOOP;
      END;
```

23

DBMS_APPLY_ADM

The `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package provides subprograms to configure and manage Oracle Streams apply processes, XStream outbound servers, and XStream inbound servers.

This chapter contains the following topics:

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and apply processes
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about XStream outbound servers and inbound servers

Using DBMS_APPLY_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package.

Overview

This package provides interfaces to start, stop, and configure Oracle Streams apply processes, XStream outbound servers, and XStream inbound servers. This package includes subprograms for configuring apply handlers, setting enqueue destinations for messages, and specifying execution directives for messages. This package also provides administrative subprograms that set the instantiation SCN for objects at a destination database. This package also includes subprograms for managing apply errors.

XStream inbound servers and outbound servers can be used in an XStream configuration in a multitenant container database (CDB). A CDB is an Oracle database that includes zero, one, or many user-created pluggable databases (PDBs).

Note:

- For simplicity, this chapter refers to apply processes, XStream outbound servers, and XStream inbound servers as **apply components**. This chapter identifies a specific type of apply component when necessary.
- Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
- *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information about CDBs and PDBs

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

When the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package is used to manage an Oracle Streams configuration, it requires that the user is granted the privileges of an Oracle Streams administrator.

When the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package is used to manage an XStream configuration, it requires that the user is granted the privileges of an XStream administrator.

Note: The user must be granted additional privileges to perform some administrative tasks using the subprograms in this package, such as setting an apply user. If additional privileges are required for a subprogram, then the privileges are documented in the section that describes the subprogram.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for information about configuring an XStream administrator

Operational Notes

The following sections contain operational notes for this package:

- Deprecated Apply Component Parameter Value

Deprecated Apply Component Parameter Value

Note: Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated apply component parameter values. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The `NONE` value for the `commit_serialization` apply component parameter is deprecated. It is replaced by the `DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS` value.

See Also: SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 23-56

Summary of DBMS_APPLY_ADM Subprograms

Table 23–1 DBMS_APPLY_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure on page 23-8	Adds a statement DML handler for a specified operation on a specified database object to a single apply component or to all apply components in the database
ALTER_APPLY Procedure on page 23-10	Alters an apply component
COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure on page 23-16	Specifies whether to compare the old value of one or more columns in a row logical change record (row LCR) with the current value of the corresponding columns at the destination site during apply
CREATE_APPLY Procedure on page 23-18	Creates an apply component
CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure on page 23-24	Creates an object dependency
DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure on page 23-25	Deletes all the error transactions for the specified apply component
DELETE_ERROR Procedure on page 23-26	Deletes the specified error transaction
DROP_APPLY Procedure on page 23-27	Drops an apply component
DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure on page 23-29	Drops an object dependency
EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure on page 23-30	Reexecutes the error transactions for the specified apply component
EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure on page 23-31	Reexecutes the specified error transaction
GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Function on page 23-34	Returns the message payload from the error queue for the specified message number and transaction identifier
REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER on page 23-36	Removes a statement DML handler for a specified operation on a specified database object from a single apply component or from all apply components in the database
SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure on page 23-38	Sets or unsets a statement DML handler that tracks changes for a specified operation on a specified database object for a single apply component
SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure on page 23-41	Sets a user procedure as a procedure DML handler for a specified operation on a specified database object for a single apply component or for all apply components in the database
SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure on page 23-46	Sets the queue where the apply component automatically enqueues a message that satisfies the specified rule
SET_EXECUTE Procedure on page 23-48	Specifies whether a message that satisfies the specified rule is executed by an apply component

Table 23–1 (Cont.) DBMS_APPLY_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-50	Records the specified instantiation SCN for the specified source database and, optionally, for the schemas at the source database and the tables owned by these schemas
SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedures on page 23-53	Records the set of columns to be used as the substitute primary key for local apply purposes and removes existing substitute primary key columns for the specified object if they exist
SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 23-56	Sets an apply parameter to the specified value
SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-74	Records the specified instantiation SCN for the specified schema in the specified source database and, optionally, for the tables owned by the schema at the source database
SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-77	Records the specified instantiation SCN for the specified table in the specified source database
SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure on page 23-80	Adds, updates, or drops an update conflict handler for the specified object
SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure on page 23-84	Sets or removes a value dependency
START_APPLY Procedure on page 23-86	Directs the apply component to start applying messages
STOP_APPLY Procedure on page 23-87	Stops the apply component from applying any messages and rolls back any unfinished transactions being applied

Note: All procedures commit unless specified otherwise. However, the `GET_ERROR_MESSAGE` function does not commit.

ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure adds a statement DML handler for a specified operation on a specified database object. The procedure adds the statement DML handler to a single apply component or to all apply components in the database.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains the `statement` and `comment` parameters, and the other does not. The `statement` parameter enables you to create the statement DML handler and add it to one or more processes in one step. Otherwise, create the statement DML handler using the `DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM` package before adding it to one or more processes.

See Also:

- Chapter 162, "DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM"
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.ADD_STMT_HANDLER(
   object_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   operation_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   handler_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   statement       IN  CLOB,
   apply_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_APPLY_ADM.ADD_STMT_HANDLER(
   object_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   operation_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   handler_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   apply_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–2 ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the source object specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified object does not need to exist when you run this procedure. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`operation_name`	The name of the operation, which can be specified as: ■ `INSERT` ■ `UPDATE` ■ `DELETE` If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** Statement DML handlers cannot be specified for LOB operations.

Table 23–2 (Cont.) ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler_name	The name of the statement DML handler. If the specified statement DML handler exists, then the statement in the statement parameter is added to the existing handler. Ensure that the existing statement DML handler is for the same operation on the same database object as the settings for the operation_name and object_name parameters, respectively. If the existing handler is for a different operation or database object, then an apply error results when the handler is invoked. If the specified statement DML handler does not exist and a non-NULL statement parameter is specified, then this procedure creates the statement DML handler. If the specified statement DML handler does not exist and the statement parameter is not specified or is NULL, then this procedure raises an error. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
statement	The text of the SQL statement to add to the statement DML handler. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
apply_name	The name of the apply component that uses the statement DML handler. If NULL, then the procedure adds the statement DML handler as a general handler to all apply components in the database.
comment	A comment for the statement DML handler. If NULL, then no comment is recorded for the statement DML handler.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers. Outbound servers ignore all apply handlers.

The ADD_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

ALTER_APPLY Procedure

This procedure alters an apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.ALTER_APPLY(
   apply_name                IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_rule_set           IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   message_handler           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL
   remove_message_handler    IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   ddl_handler               IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_ddl_handler        IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   apply_user                IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_tag                 IN  RAW       DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_apply_tag          IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   precommit_handler         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_precommit_handler  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   negative_rule_set_name    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_negative_rule_set  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 23–3 ALTER_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The name of the apply component being altered. You must specify the name of an existing apply component. Do not specify an owner.
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the apply component. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the apply component to apply messages. If you want to use a positive rule set for the apply component, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the hr schema named job_apply_rules, enter hr.job_apply_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL and the remove_rule_set parameter is set to FALSE, then this procedure retains any existing positive rule set for the specified apply component. If you specify NULL and the remove_rule_set parameter is set to TRUE, then this procedure removes any existing positive rule set from the specified apply component.

Table 23–3 (Cont.) ALTER_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remove_rule_set	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the positive rule set for the specified apply component. If you remove the positive rule set for an apply component, and the apply component does not have a negative rule set, then the apply component dequeues all messages in its queue. If you remove the positive rule set for an apply component, and a negative rule set exists for the apply component, then the apply component dequeues all messages in its queue that are not discarded by the negative rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure retains the positive rule set for the specified apply component. If the rule_set_name parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.
message_handler	A user-defined procedure that processes non-LCR messages in the queue for the apply component. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 in the CREATE_APPLY Procedure for more information about a message handler procedure.
remove_message_handler	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the message handler for the specified apply component. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any message handler for the specified apply component. If the message_handler parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.
ddl_handler	A user-defined procedure that processes DDL logical change records (DDL LCRs) in the queue for the apply component. All applied DDL LCRs commit automatically. Therefore, if a DDL handler calls the EXECUTE member procedure of a DDL LCR, then a commit is performed automatically. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 in the CREATE_APPLY Procedure for more information about a DDL handler procedure.
remove_ddl_handler	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the DDL handler for the specified apply component. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any DDL handler for the specified apply component. If the ddl_handler parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

Table 23–3 (Cont.) ALTER_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_user	The user in whose security domain an apply component dequeues messages that satisfy its rule sets, applies messages directly to database objects, runs custom rule-based transformations, and runs apply handlers. If NULL, then the apply user is not changed. If a non-NULL value is specified to change the apply user, then the user who invokes the ALTER_APPLY procedure must be granted the DBA role. Only the SYS user can set the apply_user to SYS. If you change the apply user, then this procedure grants the new apply user dequeue privilege on the queue used by the apply component. It also configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue. In addition to the privileges granted by this procedure, you also should grant the following privileges to the apply user: ■ The necessary privileges to perform DML and DDL changes on the apply objects ■ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the apply component ■ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set ■ EXECUTE privilege on all apply handler procedures These privileges can be granted directly to the apply user, or they can be granted through roles. In addition, the apply user must be granted the EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle-supplied packages, that are invoked in subprograms run by the apply component. These privileges must be granted directly to the apply user. They cannot be granted through roles. By default, this parameter is set to the user who created the apply component by running either the CREATE_APPLY procedure in this package or a procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. **Note:** If the apply user for an apply component is dropped using DROP USER. . . CASCADE, then the apply component is also dropped automatically.
apply_tag	A binary tag that is added to redo entries generated by the specified apply component. The tag is a binary value that can be used to track LCRs. The tag is relevant only if a capture process at the database where the apply component is running captures changes made by the apply component. If so, then the captured changes include the tag specified by this parameter. If NULL, the default, then the apply tag for the apply component is not changed. The following is an example of a tag with a hexadecimal value of 17: HEXTORAW('17') **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 23–3 (Cont.) ALTER_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remove_apply_tag	If TRUE, then the procedure sets the apply tag for the specified apply component to NULL, and the apply component generates redo entries with NULL tags. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any apply tag for the specified apply component. If the apply_tag parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.
precommit_handler	A user-defined procedure that can receive internal commit directives in the queue for the apply component before they are processed by the apply component. Typically, precommit handlers are used for auditing commit information for transactions processed by an apply component. An internal commit directive is enqueued in the following ways: ▪ When a capture process captures row LCRs, the capture process enqueues the commit directive for the transaction that contains the row LCRs. ▪ When a user or application enqueues messages and then issues a COMMIT statement, the commit directive is enqueued automatically. For a captured row LCR, a commit directive contains the commit SCN of the transaction from the source database. For a user message, the commit SCN is generated by the apply component. The precommit handler procedure must conform to the following restrictions: ▪ Any work that commits must be an autonomous transaction. ▪ Any rollback must be to a named savepoint created in the procedure. If a precommit handler raises an exception, then the entire apply transaction is rolled back, and all of the messages in the transaction are moved to the error queue. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 in the CREATE_APPLY Procedure for more information about a precommit handler procedure.
remove_precommit_handler	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the precommit handler for the specified apply component. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any precommit handler for the specified apply component. If the precommit_handler parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

Table 23–3 (Cont.) ALTER_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
negative_rule_set_name	The name of the negative rule set for the apply component. The negative rule set contains the rules that instruct the apply component to discard messages. If you want to use a negative rule set for the apply component, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form *[schema_name.]rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a negative rule set in the hr schema named neg_apply_rules, enter hr.neg_apply_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL and the remove_negative_rule_set parameter is set to FALSE, then the procedure retains any existing negative rule set. If you specify NULL and the remove_negative_rule_set parameter is set to TRUE, then the procedure removes any existing negative rule set. If you specify both a positive and a negative rule set for an apply component, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.
remove_negative_rule_set	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the negative rule set for the specified apply component. If you remove the negative rule set for an apply component, and the apply component does not have a positive rule set, then the apply component dequeues all messages in its queue. If you remove the negative rule set for an apply component, and a positive rule set exists for the apply component, then the apply component dequeues all messages in its queue that are not discarded by the positive rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure retains the negative rule set for the specified apply component. If the negative_rule_set_name parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Automatic Restart of Apply Components
- The ALTER_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The ALTER_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Automatic Restart of Apply Components

An apply component is stopped and restarted automatically when you change the value of one or more of the following ALTER_APPLY procedure parameters:

- message_handler
- ddl_handler
- apply_user
- apply_tag
- precommit_handler

The ALTER_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

The following usage notes apply to this procedure and XStream outbound servers:

- The `apply_user` parameter can change the connect user for an outbound server.
- You cannot specify an apply handler for an outbound server. An outbound server ignores the settings for the following parameters: `message_handler`, `ddl_handler`, and `precommit_handler`.

  The client application can perform custom processing of the LCRs instead if necessary.
- An outbound server cannot set an apply tag for the changes it processes. An outbound server ignores the setting for the `apply_tag` parameter.

The ALTER_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Inbound servers can use apply handlers and process only DML and DDL LCRs. Therefore, inbound servers ignore message handlers specified in the `message_handler` parameter.

COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure

This procedure specifies whether to compare the old values of one or more columns in a row logical change record (row LCR) with the current values of the corresponding columns at the destination site during apply. This procedure is relevant only for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations because only these operations result in old column values in row LCRs. The default is to compare old values for all columns.

This procedure is overloaded. The `column_list` and `column_table` parameters are mutually exclusive.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about conflict detection and resolution in an Oracle Streams environment

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.COMPARE_OLD_VALUES(
   object_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   column_list         IN VARCHAR2,
   operation           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'UPDATE',
   compare             IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   apply_database_link IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_APPLY_ADM.COMPARE_OLD_VALUES(
   object_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   column_table        IN DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY,
   operation           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'UPDATE',
   compare             IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   apply_database_link IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–4 COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the source table specified as `[`*`schema_name.`*`]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`column_list`	A comma-delimited list of column names in the table. There must be no spaces between entries. Specify `*` to include all nonkey columns.
`column_table`	A PL/SQL associative array of type `DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY` that contains names of columns in the table. The first column name should be at position 1, the second at position 2, and so on. The table does not need to be `NULL` terminated.
`operation`	The name of the operation, which can be specified as: ■ `UPDATE` for `UPDATE` operations ■ `DELETE` for `DELETE` operations ■ `*` for both `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations
`compare`	If `compare` is `TRUE`, the old values of the specified columns are compared during apply. If `compare` is `FALSE`, the old values of the specified columns are not compared during apply.

Table 23–4 (Cont.) COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_database_link	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database is a non-Oracle database.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Conflict Detection
- The COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Conflict Detection

By default, an apply component uses the old column values in a row LCR to detect conflicts. You can choose not to compare old column values to avoid conflict detection for specific tables. For example, if you do not want to compare the old values for a set of columns during apply, then, using the COMPARE_OLD_VALUES procedure, specify the set of columns in the column_list or column_table parameter, and set the compare parameter to FALSE.

In addition, when the compare_key_only apply component parameter is set to Y, automatic conflict detection is disabled, and the apply component only uses primary key and unique key columns to identify the table row for a row LCR. When the compare_key_only apply component parameter is set to N, automatic conflict detection is enabled, and the apply component uses all of the old values in a row LCR to identify the table row for a row LCR.

Note:

- An apply component compares old values for non-key columns when they are present in a row LCR and when the apply component parameter compare_key_only is set to N.
- This procedure raises an error if a key column is specified in column_list or column_table and the compare parameter is set to FALSE.

See Also: SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 23-56 for more information about the compare_key_only apply component parameter

The COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

CREATE_APPLY Procedure

This procedure creates an apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.CREATE_APPLY(
   queue_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   apply_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   message_handler         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   ddl_handler             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_user              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_database_link     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_tag               IN  RAW       DEFAULT '00',
   apply_captured          IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   precommit_handler       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   negative_rule_set_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_database         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–5 CREATE_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the queue from which the apply component dequeues messages. You must specify an existing queue in the form [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. For example, to specify a queue in the hr schema named streams_queue, enter hr.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **Note:** The queue_name setting cannot be altered after the apply component is created.
apply_name	The name of the apply component being created. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. The specified name must not match the name of an existing apply component or messaging client. **Note:** The apply_name setting cannot be altered after the apply component is created.
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the apply component. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the apply component to apply messages. If you want to use a positive rule set for the apply component, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name*.]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the hr schema named job_apply_rules, enter hr.job_apply_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If you specify NULL, and no negative rule set is specified, then the apply component applies either all captured messages or all messages in the persistent queue, depending on the setting of the apply_captured parameter. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package.

Table 23–5 (Cont.) CREATE_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
message_handler	A user-defined procedure that processes non-LCR messages in the queue for the apply component. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 for more information about a message handler procedure.
ddl_handler	A user-defined procedure that processes DDL logical change record (DDL LCRs) in the queue for the apply component. All applied DDL LCRs commit automatically. Therefore, if a DDL handler calls the EXECUTE member procedure of a DDL LCR, then a commit is performed automatically. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 for more information about a DDL handler procedure.
apply_user	The user who applies all DML and DDL changes that satisfy the apply component rule sets and who runs user-defined apply handlers. If NULL, then the user who runs the CREATE_APPLY procedure is used. The apply user is the user in whose security domain an apply component dequeues messages that satisfy its rule sets, applies messages directly to database objects, runs custom rule-based transformations configured for apply component rules, and runs apply handlers configured for the apply component. This user must have the necessary privileges to apply changes. This procedure grants the apply user dequeue privilege on the queue used by the apply component and configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue. In addition to the privileges granted by this procedure, you also should grant the following privileges to the apply user: ▪ The necessary privileges to perform DML and DDL changes on the apply objects ▪ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the apply component ▪ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set ▪ EXECUTE privilege on all apply handler procedures These privileges can be granted directly to the apply user, or they can be granted through roles. In addition, the apply user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle-supplied packages, that are invoked in subprograms run by the apply component. These privileges must be granted directly to the apply user. They cannot be granted through roles. You can use the packages DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH and DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH to grant and revoke administrative privileges in Oracle Streams and XStream configurations, respectively. These packages do not configure the necessary privileges to perform DML or DDL changes on the apply objects. **Note:** If the apply user for an apply component is dropped using DROP USER . . . CASCADE, then the apply component is also dropped automatically. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 for more information about this parameter.

Table 23–5 (Cont.) CREATE_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_database_link	The database at which the apply component applies messages. This parameter is used by an apply component when applying changes from Oracle to non-Oracle systems, such as Sybase. Set this parameter to NULL to specify that the apply component applies messages at the local database. **Note:** The apply_database_link setting cannot be altered after the apply component is created.
apply_tag	A binary tag that is added to redo entries generated by the specified apply component. The tag is a binary value that can be used to track LCRs. The tag is relevant only if a capture process at the database where the apply component is running captures changes made by the apply component. If so, then the captured changes include the tag specified by this parameter. By default, the tag for an apply component is the hexadecimal equivalent of '00' (double zero). The following is an example of a tag with a hexadecimal value of 17: HEXTORAW('17') If NULL, then the apply component generates redo entries with NULL tags. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
apply_captured	Either TRUE or FALSE. If TRUE, then the apply component applies only the captured LCRs in the queue. Captured LCRs are LCRs that were captured by an Oracle Streams capture process. If FALSE, then the apply component applies only the messages in a persistent queue. These are messages that were not captured by an Oracle Streams capture process, such as persistent LCRs or user messages. To apply both captured LCRs and messages in a persistent queue, you must create at least two apply components. **Note:** The apply_captured setting cannot be altered after the apply component is created. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about processing messages with an apply component

Table 23–5 (Cont.) CREATE_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
precommit_handler	A user-defined procedure that can receive internal commit directives in the queue for the apply component before they are processed by the apply component. Typically, precommit handlers are used for auditing commit information for transactions processed by an apply component. An internal commit directive is enqueued in the following ways: ▪ When a capture process captures row LCRs, the capture process enqueues the commit directive for the transaction that contains the row LCRs. ▪ When a synchronous capture captures row LCRs, the persistent LCRs that were enqueued by the synchronous capture are organized into a message group. The synchronous capture records the transaction identifier in each persistent LCR in a transaction. ▪ When a user or application enqueues messages and then issues a COMMIT statement, the commit directive is enqueued automatically. For a row LCR captured by a capture process or synchronous capture, a commit directive contains the commit SCN of the transaction from the source database. For a message enqueued by a user or application, the commit SCN is generated by the apply component. The precommit handler procedure must conform to the following restrictions: ▪ Any work that commits must be an autonomous transaction. ▪ Any rollback must be to a named savepoint created in the procedure. If a precommit handler raises an exception, then the entire apply transaction is rolled back, and all of the messages in the transaction are moved to the error queue. See "Usage Notes" on page 23-22 for more information about a precommit handler procedure.
negative_rule_set_name	The name of the negative rule set for the apply component. The negative rule set contains the rules that instruct the apply component to discard messages. If you want to use a negative rule set for the apply component, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name*.]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a negative rule set in the hr schema named neg_apply_rules, enter hr.neg_apply_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If you specify NULL, and no positive rule set is specified, then the apply component applies either all captured LCRs or all of the messages in the persistent queue, depending on the setting of the apply_captured parameter. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify both a positive and a negative rule set for an apply component, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.

Table 23–5 (Cont.) CREATE_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database for the changes that will be applied by the apply component. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply component applies captured messages, then the apply component can apply messages from only one capture process at one source database. If NULL, then the source database name of the first LCR received by the apply component is used for the source database. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. The rules in the apply component rule sets determine which messages are dequeued by the apply component. If the apply component dequeues an LCR with a source database that is different than the source database for the apply component, then an error is raised. You can determine the source database for an apply component by querying the DBA_APPLY_PROGRESS data dictionary view.

Usage Notes

The following sections describe usage notes for this procedure:

- DBA Role Requirement
- Handler Procedure Names
- Message Handler and DDL Handler Procedure
- Precommit Handler Procedure
- The CREATE_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The CREATE_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

DBA Role Requirement

If the user who invokes this procedure is different from the user specified in the apply_user parameter, then the invoking user must be granted the DBA role. If the user who invokes this procedure is the same as the user specified in the apply_user parameter, then the DBA role is not required for the invoking user. Only the SYS user can set the apply_user to SYS.

Handler Procedure Names

For the message_handler, ddl_handler, and precommit_handler parameters, specify an existing procedure in one of the following forms:

- *[schema_name.]procedure_name*
- *[schema_name.]package_name.procedure_name*

If the procedure is in a package, then the package_name must be specified. For example, to specify a procedure in the apply_pkg package in the hr schema named process_ddls, enter hr.apply_pkg.process_ddls. An error is returned if the specified procedure does not exist.

The user who invokes the CREATE_APPLY procedure must have EXECUTE privilege on a specified handler procedure. Also, if the *schema_name* is not specified, then the user who invokes the CREATE_APPLY procedure is the default.

Message Handler and DDL Handler Procedure

The procedure specified in both the message_handler parameter and the ddl_handler parameter must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE handler_procedure (
   parameter_name  IN  ANYDATA);
```

Here, *handler_procedure* stands for the name of the procedure and *parameter_name* stands for the name of the parameter passed to the procedure. For the message handler, the parameter passed to the procedure is a ANYDATA encapsulation of a user message. For the DDL handler procedure, the parameter passed to the procedure is a ANYDATA encapsulation of a DDL LCR.

> **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs" for information about DDL LCRs

Precommit Handler Procedure

The procedure specified in the precommit_handler parameter must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE handler_procedure (
   parameter_name   IN  NUMBER);
```

Here, *handler_procedure* stands for the name of the procedure and *parameter_name* stands for the name of the parameter passed to the procedure. The parameter passed to the procedure is the commit SCN of a commit directive.

The CREATE_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure cannot create an XStream outbound server. To create an XStream outbound server, use the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package.

The CREATE_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The following usage notes apply to this procedure and XStream inbound servers:

- The CREATE_APPLY procedure always creates an apply process. The apply process remains an apply process if it receives messages from a source other than an XStream client application, such as a capture process. The apply process can become an inbound server if an XStream client application attaches to it before it receives messages from any other source. After the initial contact, an apply process cannot be changed into an inbound server, and an inbound server cannot be changed into an apply process.
- When creating an inbound server using the CREATE_APPLY procedure, set the apply_captured parameter to TRUE. Inbound servers only process LCRs captured by a capture process.
- Inbound servers can use apply handlers. Inbound servers process only DML and DDL LCRs. Therefore, inbound servers ignore message handlers specified in the message_handler parameter.

CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure

This procedure creates an object dependency. An object dependency is a virtual dependency definition that defines a parent-child relationship between two objects at a destination database.

An apply component schedules execution of transactions that involve the child object after all transactions with a lower commit system change number (commit SCN) that involve the parent object have been committed. An apply component uses the object identifier of the objects in the logical change records (LCRs) to detect dependencies. The apply component does not use column values in the LCRs to detect dependencies.

Note: An error is raised if `NULL` is specified for either of the procedure parameters.

See Also:

- DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure on page 23-29
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY(
   object_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   parent_object_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 23–6 CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the child database object, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`parent_object_name`	The name of the parent database object, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.departments`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure

This procedure deletes all the error transactions for the specified apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.DELETE_ALL_ERRORS(
   apply_name  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameter

Table 23–7 DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The name of the apply component that raised the errors while processing the transactions. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, then all error transactions for all apply components are deleted.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers do not enqueue error transactions into an error queue. This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The DELETE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

DELETE_ERROR Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified error transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.DELETE_ERROR(
   local_transaction_id  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 23–8 DELETE_ERROR Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`local_transaction_id`	The identification number of the error transaction to delete. If the specified transaction does not exist in the error queue, then an error is raised.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

The DELETE_ERROR Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers do not enqueue error transactions into an error queue. This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The DELETE_ERROR Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

DROP_APPLY Procedure

This procedure drops an apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.DROP_APPLY(
   apply_name             IN  VARCHAR2,
   drop_unused_rule_sets  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 23–9 DROP_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The name of the apply component being dropped. You must specify an existing apply component name. Do not specify an owner.
drop_unused_rule_sets	If TRUE, then the procedure drops any rule sets, positive and negative, used by the specified apply component if these rule sets are not used by any other Oracle Streams or XStream component. These components include capture processes, propagations, apply processes, inbound servers, and messaging clients. If this procedure drops a rule set, then this procedure also drops any rules in the rule set that are not in another rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the rule sets used by the specified apply component, and the rule sets retain their rules.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The DROP_APPLY Procedure and Rules
- The DROP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The DROP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The DROP_APPLY Procedure and Rules

When you use this procedure to drop an apply component, information about rules created for the apply component using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package is removed from the data dictionary views for rules. Information about such a rule is removed even if the rule is not in either the positive or negative rule set for the apply component. The following are the data dictionary views for rules:

- ALL_STREAMS_GLOBAL_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_GLOBAL_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_MESSAGE_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_MESSAGE_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_SCHEMA_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_SCHEMA_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_TABLE_RULES

- DBA_STREAMS_TABLE_RULES

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about Oracle Streams data dictionary views

The DROP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

When the DROP_APPLY procedure is executed on an outbound server, it runs the DROP_OUTBOUND procedure in the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package. Therefore, it might also drop the outbound server's capture process and queue.

The DROP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

When the DROP_APPLY procedure is executed on an inbound server, it runs the DROP_INBOUND procedure in the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package. Therefore, it might also drop the inbound server's queue.

DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure

This procedure drops an object dependency. An object dependency is a virtual dependency definition that defines a parent-child relationship between two objects at a destination database.

Note:

- An error is raised if an object dependency does not exist for the specified database objects.
- An error is raised if `NULL` is specified for either of the procedure parameters.

See Also:

- CREATE_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure on page 23-24
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY(
   object_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   parent_object_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 23–10 DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the child database object, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`parent_object_name`	The name of the parent database object, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.departments`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

The DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The DROP_OBJECT_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure

This procedure reexecutes the error transactions in the error queue for the specified apply component.

The transactions are reexecuted in commit SCN order. Error reexecution stops if an error is raised.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the error queue

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS(
   apply_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   execute_as_user  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 23–11 EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The name of the apply component that raised the errors while processing the transactions. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, then all error transactions for all apply components are reexecuted.
execute_as_user	If TRUE, then the procedure reexecutes the transactions in the security context of the current user. If FALSE, then the procedure reexecutes each transaction in the security context of the original receiver of the transaction. The original receiver is the user who was processing the transaction when the error was raised. The DBA_APPLY_ERROR data dictionary view lists the original receiver for each error transaction. The user who executes the transactions must have privileges to perform DML and DDL changes on the apply objects and to run any apply handlers. This user must also have dequeue privileges on the queue used by the apply component.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers do not enqueue error transactions into an error queue. This procedure cannot be used with XStream outbound servers.

The EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure

This procedure reexecutes the specified error transaction in the error queue.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the error queue

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.EXECUTE_ERROR(
   local_transaction_id  IN  VARCHAR2,
   execute_as_user       IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   user_procedure        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–12 EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`local_transaction_id`	The identification number of the error transaction to execute. If the specified transaction does not exist in the error queue, then an error is raised.
`execute_as_user`	If `TRUE`, then the procedure reexecutes the transaction in the security context of the current user. If `FALSE`, then the procedure reexecutes the transaction in the security context of the original receiver of the transaction. The original receiver is the user who was processing the transaction when the error was raised. The `DBA_APPLY_ERROR` data dictionary view lists the original receiver for each error transaction. The user who executes the transaction must have privileges to perform DML and DDL changes on the apply objects and to run any apply handlers. This user must also have dequeue privileges on the queue used by the apply component.
`user_procedure`	A user-defined procedure that modifies the error transaction so that it can be successfully executed. Specify `NULL` to execute the error transaction without running a user procedure. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-31 for more information about the user procedure

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The User Procedure
- The EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The User Procedure

You must specify the full procedure name for the `user_procedure` parameter in one of the following forms:

- [*schema_name.*]*package_name.procedure_name*
- [*schema_name.*]*procedure_name*

If the procedure is in a package, then the *package_name* must be specified. The user who invokes the EXECUTE_ERROR procedure must have EXECUTE privilege on the specified procedure. Also, if the *schema_name* is not specified, then the user who invokes the EXECUTE_ERROR procedure is the default.

For example, suppose the procedure_name has the following properties:

- strmadmin is the *schema_name*.
- fix_errors is the *package_name*.
- fix_hr_errors is the *procedure_name*.

In this case, specify the following:

```
strmadmin.fix_errors.fix_hr_errors
```

The procedure you create for error handling must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE user_procedure (
     in_anydata                    IN      ANYDATA,
     error_record                  IN      DBA_APPLY_ERROR%ROWTYPE,
     error_message_number          IN      NUMBER,
     messaging_default_processing  IN OUT  BOOLEAN,
     out_anydata                   OUT     ANYDATA);
```

The user procedure has the following parameters:

- in_anydata: The ANYDATA encapsulation of a message that the apply component passes to the procedure. A single transaction can include multiple messages. A message can be a row logical change record (row LCR), a DDL logical change record (DDL LCR), or a user message.
- error_record: The row in the DBA_APPLY_ERROR data dictionary view that identifies the transaction
- error_message_number: The message number of the ANYDATA object in the in_anydata parameter, starting at 1
- messaging_default_processing: If TRUE, then the apply component continues processing the message in the in_anydata parameter, which can include executing DML or DDL statements and invoking apply handlers.

  If FALSE, then the apply component skips processing the message in the in_anydata parameter and moves on to the next message in the in_anydata parameter.
- out_anydata: The ANYDATA object processed by the user procedure and used by the apply component if messaging_default_processing is TRUE.

If an LCR is executed using the EXECUTE LCR member procedure in the user procedure, then the LCR is executed directly, and the messaging_default_processing parameter should be set to FALSE. In this case, the LCR is not passed to any apply handlers.

Processing an error transaction with a user procedure results in one of the following outcomes:

- The user procedure modifies the transaction so that it can be executed successfully.
- The user procedure fails to make the necessary modifications, and an error is raised when transaction execution is attempted. In this case, the transaction is rolled back and remains in the error queue.

The following restrictions apply to the user procedure:

- Do not execute COMMIT or ROLLBACK statements. Doing so can endanger the consistency of the transaction.
- Do not modify LONG, LONG RAW or LOB column data in an LCR.
- If the ANYDATA object in the in_anydata parameter is a row LCR, then the out_anydata parameter must be row LCR if the messaging_default_processing parameter is set to TRUE.
- If the ANYDATA object in the in_anydata parameter is a DDL LCR, then the out_anydata parameter must be DDL LCR if the messaging_default_processing parameter is set to TRUE.
- The user who runs the user procedure must have the SELECT or READ privilege on the DBA_APPLY_ERROR data dictionary view.

Note: LCRs containing transactional directives, such as COMMIT and ROLLBACK, are not passed to the user procedure.

The EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers do not enqueue error transactions into an error queue. This procedure cannot be used with XStream outbound servers.

The EXECUTE_ERROR Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Function

This function returns the message payload from the error queue for the specified message number and transaction identifier. The message can be a logical change record (LCR) or a non-LCR message.

This function is overloaded. One version of this function contains two `OUT` parameters. These `OUT` parameters contain the destination queue into which the message should be enqueued, if one exists, and whether the message should be executed. The destination queue is specified using the `SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION` procedure, and the execution directive is specified using the `SET_EXECUTE` procedure.

See Also:

- SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure on page 23-46
- SET_EXECUTE Procedure on page 23-48

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.GET_ERROR_MESSAGE(
   message_number          IN   NUMBER,
   local_transaction_id    IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  OUT  VARCHAR2,
   execute                 OUT  BOOLEAN)
RETURN ANYDATA;

DBMS_APPLY_ADM.GET_ERROR_MESSAGE(
   message_number          IN   NUMBER,
   local_transaction_id    IN   VARCHAR2)
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 23–13 GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`message_number`	The identification number of the message. This number identifies the position of the message in the transaction. Query the `DBA_APPLY_ERROR` data dictionary view to view the message number of each apply error.
`local_transaction_id`	Identifier of the error transaction for which to return a message
`destination_queue_name`	Contains the name of the queue into which the message should be enqueued. If the message should not be enqueued into a queue, then this parameter contains `NULL`.
`execute`	Contains `TRUE` if the message should be executed Contains `FALSE` if the message should not be executed

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers do not enqueue error transactions into an error queue. This procedure cannot be used with XStream outbound servers.

The GET_ERROR_MESSAGE Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER

This procedure removes a statement DML handler for a specified operation on a specified database object from a single apply component or from all apply components in the database.

See Also:

- Chapter 162, "DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM"
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER(
   object_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   operation_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   handler_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   apply_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–14 REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the source object specified as `[schema_name.]object_name`. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified object does not need to exist when you run this procedure. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`operation_name`	The name of the operation, which can be specified as: ■ `INSERT` ■ `UPDATE` ■ `DELETE` If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`handler_name`	The name of the statement DML handler. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`apply_name`	The name of the apply component that uses the statement DML handler. If `NULL`, then the procedure removes the statement DML handler from all apply components in the database.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers ignore all apply handlers. This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The REMOVE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure sets or unsets a change handler that tracks changes for a specified operation on a specified database object for a single apply component.

A change handler is a special type of statement DML handler that tracks table changes and was created by either the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE procedure or this SET_CHANGE_HANDLER procedure. Information about change handlers is stored in the ALL_APPLY_CHANGE_HANDLERS and DBA_APPLY_CHANGE_HANDLERS views.

This procedure automatically generates the statement that is added to the change handler based on values specified in the procedure parameters. You should only run this procedure when a configuration that tracks database changes exists.

Note: Use the MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure to configure an environment that tracks table changes

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_CHANGE_HANDLER(
   change_table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   capture_values       IN  VARCHAR2,
   apply_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   operation_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   change_handler_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–15 SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
change_table_name	The table that records changes to the source table. Specify the table as [*schema_name.*]*table_name*. For example, hr.jobs_change_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
source_table_name	The table at the source database for which changes are recorded. Specify the table as [*schema_name.*]*table_name*. For example, hr.jobs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 23–15 (Cont.) SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_values	Specify which values to record in the change table when update operations are performed on the source table: ■ old - To record the original values for an updated column in the source table ■ new - To record the new values for an updated column in the source table ■ * - To record both the original and the new values for an updated column in the source table If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** For insert operations, only new column values are captured. For delete operations, only old column values are captured.
apply_name	The name of the apply component that applies changes to the change table. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
operation_name	The name of the operation, which can be specified as: ■ INSERT ■ UPDATE ■ DELETE If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** Change handlers cannot be specified for LOB operations.
change_handler_name	The name of the change handler. If the specified change handler exists, then a statement is added to the existing handler. Ensure that the existing change handler is for the same operation on the same table as the settings for the operation_name and source_table_name parameters, respectively. If the existing handler is for a different operation or table, then an apply error results when the handler is invoked. If non-NULL and the specified change handler does not exist, then this procedure creates the change handler. If NULL and a change handler exists for the same operation on the same table as the settings for the operation_name and source_table_name parameters, respectively, then the existing change handler is removed. If NULL and the specified change handler does not exist, then the procedure raises an error. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-39 for more information about this parameter.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Checking for an Existing Change Handler
- The SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Checking for an Existing Change Handler

To check for an existing change handler for a specific operation on a specific source table, run the following query:

```
SELECT HANDLER_NAME, APPLY_NAME FROM DBA_APPLY_CHANGE_HANDLERS
 WHERE  operation_name     = 'operation'
   AND  source_table_owner = 'source_table_owner'
   AND  source_table_name  = 'source_table_name'
   AND  change_table_owner = 'change_table_owner'
   AND  change_table_name  = 'change_table_name';
```

where:

- *operation* is operation specified for the new handler, either `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`
- *source_table_owner* is the owner of the source table
- *source_table_name* is the name of the source table
- *change_table_owner* is the owner of the change table
- *change_table_owner* is the owner of the change table

The SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers ignore all apply handlers. This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_CHANGE_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure sets or unsets a user procedure as a procedure DML handler for a specified operation on a specified database object for a single apply component or for all apply components in the database. The user procedure alters the apply behavior for the specified operation on the specified object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_DML_HANDLER(
   object_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_type          IN  VARCHAR2,
   operation_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   error_handler        IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   user_procedure       IN  VARCHAR2,
   apply_database_link  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   assemble_lobs        IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 23–16 SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_name	The name of the source object specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified object does not need to exist when you run this procedure.
object_type	The type of the source object. Currently, TABLE is the only possible source object type.
operation_name	The name of the operation, which can be specified as: ■ INSERT ■ UPDATE ■ DELETE ■ LOB_UPDATE ■ DEFAULT For example, suppose you run this procedure twice for the hr.employees table. In one call, you set operation_name to UPDATE and user_procedure to employees_update. In another call, you set operation_name to INSERT and user_procedure to employees_insert. Both times, you set error_handler to FALSE. In this case, the employees_update procedure is run for UPDATE operations on the hr.employees table, and the employees_insert procedure is run for INSERT operations on the hr.employees table. Specify DEFAULT to set the procedure as the default procedure DML handler for the database object. In this case, the procedure DML handler is used for any INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and LOB_WRITE on the database object, if another procedure DML handler is not specifically set for the operation on the database object.

Table 23–16 (Cont.) SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_handler	If TRUE, then the specified user procedure is run when a row logical change record (row LCR) involving the specified operation on the specified object raises an apply error. You can code the user procedure to resolve possible error conditions, notify administrators of the error, log the error, or any combination of these actions. If FALSE, then the handler being set is run for all row LCRs involving the specified operation on the specified object.
user_procedure	A user-defined procedure that is invoked during apply for the specified operation on the specified object. If the procedure is a procedure DML handler, then it is invoked instead of the default apply performed by Oracle. If the procedure is an error handler, then it is invoked when an apply error is encountered. Specify NULL to unset a procedure DML handler that is set for the specified operation on the specified object.
apply_database_link	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database is a non-Oracle database.
apply_name	The name of the apply component that uses the procedure DML handler or error handler. If NULL, then the procedure sets the procedure DML handler or error handler as a general handler for all apply components in the database. If the user_procedure parameter is set to NULL to unset a handler, and the handler being unset is set for a specific apply component, then use the apply_name parameter to specify the apply component to unset the handler.
assemble_lobs	If TRUE, then LOB assembly is used for LOB columns in LCRs processed by the handler. LOB assembly combines multiple LCRs for a LOB column resulting from a single row change into one row LCR before passing the LCR to the handler. Database compatibility must be 10.2.0 or higher to use LOB assembly. If FALSE, then LOB assembly is not used for LOB columns in LCRs processed by the handler.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Run the SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure at the Destination Database
- Procedure DML Handlers and Error Handlers
- The apply_name Parameter
- Signature of a DML Handler Procedure or Error Handler Procedure
- LOB Assembly
- The SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Run the SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure at the Destination Database

Run this procedure at the destination database. The SET_DML_HANDLER procedure provides a way for users to apply logical change records containing DML changes (row LCRs) using a customized apply.

Procedure DML Handlers and Error Handlers

If the error_handler parameter is set to TRUE, then it specifies that the user procedure is an error handler. An error handler is invoked only when a row LCR raises an apply error. Such an error can result from a data conflict if no conflict handler is specified or if the update conflict handler cannot resolve the conflict. If the error_handler parameter is set to FALSE, then the user procedure is a procedure DML handler, not an error handler, and a procedure DML handler is always run instead of performing the specified operation on the specified object.

This procedure either sets a procedure DML handler or an error handler for a particular operation on an object. It cannot set both a procedure DML handler and an error handler for the same object and operation.

Note: Currently, setting an error handler for an apply component that is applying changes to a non-Oracle database is not supported.

The apply_name Parameter

If the apply_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure DML handler or error handler is set for the specified apply component. In this case, this handler is not invoked for other apply components at the local destination database. If the apply_name parameter is NULL, the default, then the handler is set as a general handler for all apply components at the destination database. When a handler is set for a specific apply component, then this handler takes precedence over any general handlers. For example, consider the following scenario:

- A procedure DML handler named handler_hr is specified for an apply component named apply_hr for UPDATE operations on the hr.employees table.
- A general procedure DML handler named handler_gen also exists for UPDATE operations on the hr.employees table.

In this case, the apply_hr apply component uses the handler_hr procedure DML handler for UPDATE operations on the hr.employees table.

At the source database, you must specify an unconditional supplemental log group for the columns needed by a DML or error handler.

Signature of a DML Handler Procedure or Error Handler Procedure

You can use the SET_DML_HANDLER procedure to set either a procedure DML handler or an error handler for row LCRs that perform a specified operation on a specified object. The signatures of a DML handler procedure and of an error handler procedure are described following this section.

In either case, you must specify the full procedure name for the user_procedure parameter in one of the following forms:

- [*schema_name*.]*package_name.procedure_name*
- [*schema_name*.]*procedure_name*

If the procedure is in a package, then the *package_name* must be specified. The user who invokes the SET_DML_HANDLER procedure must have EXECUTE privilege on the

specified procedure. Also, if the *schema_name* is not specified, then the user who invokes the SET_DML_HANDLER procedure is the default.

For example, suppose the procedure_name has the following properties:

- hr is the *schema_name*.
- apply_pkg is the *package_name*.
- employees_default is the *procedure_name*.

In this case, specify the following:

```
hr.apply_pkg.employees_default
```

The following restrictions apply to the user procedure:

- Do not execute COMMIT or ROLLBACK statements. Doing so can endanger the consistency of the transaction that contains the LCR.
- If you are manipulating a row using the EXECUTE member procedure for the row LCR, then do not attempt to manipulate more than one row in a row operation. You must construct and execute manually any DML statements that manipulate more than one row.
- If the command type is UPDATE or DELETE, then row operations resubmitted using the EXECUTE member procedure for the LCR must include the entire key in the list of old values. The key is the primary key or the smallest unique index that has at least one NOT NULL column, unless a substitute key has been specified by the SET_KEY_COLUMNS procedure. If there is no specified key, then the key consists of all non LOB, non LONG, and non LONG RAW columns.
- If the command type is INSERT, then row operations resubmitted using the EXECUTE member procedure for the LCR should include the entire key in the list of new values. Otherwise, duplicate rows are possible. The key is the primary key or the smallest unique index that has at least one NOT NULL column, unless a substitute key has been specified by the SET_KEY_COLUMNS procedure. If there is no specified key, then the key consists of all of the table columns, except for columns of the following data types: LOB, LONG, LONG RAW, user-defined types (including object types, REFs, varrays, nested tables), and Oracle-supplied types (including Any types, XML types, spatial types, and media types).

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about and restrictions regarding procedure DML handlers and LOB, LONG, and LONG RAW data types

The procedure specified in the user_procedure parameter must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE user_procedure (
   parameter_name  IN  ANYDATA);
```

Here, *user_procedure* stands for the name of the procedure and *parameter_name* stands for the name of the parameter passed to the procedure. The parameter passed to the procedure is a ANYDATA encapsulation of a row LCR.

> **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs" for more information about LCRs

The procedure you create for error handling must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE user_procedure (
```

```
message            IN  ANYDATA,
error_stack_depth  IN  NUMBER,
error_numbers      IN  DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY,
error_messages     IN  emsg_array);
```

If you want to retry the DML operation within the error handler, then have the error handler procedure run the `EXECUTE` member procedure for the LCR. The last error raised is on top of the error stack. To specify the error message at the top of the error stack, use `error_numbers(1)` and `error_messages(1)`.

Note:

- Each parameter is required and must have the specified datatype. However, you can change the names of the parameters.
- The `emsg_array` value must be a user-defined array that is a table of type `VARCHAR2` with at least 76 characters.

Running an error handler results in one of the following outcomes:

- The error handler successfully resolves the error and returns control to the apply component.
- The error handler fails to resolve the error, and the error is raised. The raised error causes the transaction to be rolled back and placed in the error queue.

LOB Assembly

Do not modify `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, or nonassembled LOB column data in an LCR with procedure DML handlers, error handlers, or custom rule-based transformation functions. Procedure DML handlers and error handlers can modify LOB columns in row LCRs that have been constructed by LOB assembly.

The SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers ignore all apply handlers. This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure

This procedure sets the queue where the apply component automatically enqueues a message that satisfies the specified rule.

This procedure modifies the specified rule's action context to specify the queue. A rule action context is optional information associated with a rule that is interpreted by the client of the rules engine after the rule evaluates to TRUE for a message. In this case, the client of the rules engine is an apply component. The information in an action context is an object of type SYS.RE$NV_LIST, which consists of a list of name-value pairs.

A queue destination specified by this procedure always consists of the following name-value pair in an action context:

- The name is APPLY$_ENQUEUE.
- The value is an ANYDATA instance containing the queue name specified as a VARCHAR2.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION(
  rule_name               IN  VARCHAR2,
  destination_queue_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 23–17 SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name*.]*rule_name*. For example, to specify a rule named hr5 in the hr schema, enter hr.hr5 for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the queue into which the apply component enqueues the message. Specify the queue in the form [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. Only local queues can be specified. For example, to specify a queue in the hr schema named streams_queue, enter hr.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then an existing name-value pair with the name APPLY$_ENQUEUE is removed. If no name-value pair exists with the name APPLY$_ENQUEUE for the rule, then no action is taken. If non-NULL and a name-value pair exists for the rule with the name APPLY$_ENQUEUE, then it is removed, and a new name-value pair with the value specified by this parameter is added.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure and Apply Handlers
- Considerations for the SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure
- The SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

The SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure and Apply Handlers

If an apply handler, such as a procedure DML handler, DDL handler, or message handler, processes a message that also is enqueued into a destination queue, then the apply handler processes the message before it is enqueued.

Considerations for the SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure

The following are considerations for using this procedure:

- This procedure does not verify that the specified queue exists. If the queue does not exist, then an error is raised when an apply component tries to enqueue a message into it.
- Oracle Streams capture processes, propagations, and messaging clients ignore the action context created by this procedure.
- The apply user of the apply component using the specified rule must have the necessary privileges to enqueue messages into the specified queue. If the queue is a secure queue, then the apply user must be a secure queue user of the queue.
- The specified rule must be in the positive rule set for an apply component. If the rule is in the negative rule set for an apply component, then the apply component does not enqueue the message into the destination queue.
- If the commit SCN for a message is less than or equal to the relevant instantiation SCN for the message, then the message is not enqueued into the destination queue, even if the message satisfies the apply component rule sets.

The SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_ENQUEUE_DESTINATION Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

SET_EXECUTE Procedure

This procedure specifies whether a message that satisfies the specified rule is executed by an apply component.

This procedure modifies the specified rule's action context to specify message execution. A rule action context is optional information associated with a rule that is interpreted by the client of the rules engine after the rule evaluates to TRUE for a message. In this case, the client of the rules engine is an apply component. The information in an action context is an object of type SYS.RE$NV_LIST, which consists of a list of name-value pairs.

A message execution directive specified by this procedure always consists of the following name-value pair in an action context:

- The name is APPLY$_EXECUTE.
- The value is an ANYDATA instance that contains NO as a VARCHAR2. When the value is NO, an apply component does not execute the message and does not send the message to any apply handler.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_EXECUTE(
  rule_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  execute    IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 23–18 SET_EXECUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name*.]*rule_name*. For example, to specify a rule named hr5 in the hr schema, enter hr.hr5 for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
execute	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the name-value pair with the name APPLY$_EXECUTE for the specified rule. Removing the name-value pair means that the apply component executes messages that satisfy the rule. If no name-value pair with name APPLY$_EXECUTE exists for the rule, then no action is taken. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a name-value pair to the rule's action context. The name is APPLY$_EXECUTE and the value is NO. An apply component does not execute a message that satisfies the rule and does not send the message to any apply handler. If a name-value pair exists for the rule with the name APPLY$_EXECUTE, then it is removed, and a new one with the value NO is added. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Considerations for the SET_EXECUTE Procedure
- The SET_EXECUTE Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_EXECUTE Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Considerations for the SET_EXECUTE Procedure

The following are considerations for using this procedure:

- If the message is a logical change record (LCR) and the message is not executed, then the change encapsulated in the LCR is not made to the relevant local database object. Also, if the message is not executed, then it is not sent to any apply handler.
- Oracle Streams capture processes, propagations, and messaging clients ignore the action context created by this procedure.
- The specified rule must be in the positive rule set for an apply component for the apply component to follow the execution directive. If the rule is in the negative rule set for an apply component, then the apply component ignores the execution directive for the rule.

The SET_EXECUTE Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_EXECUTE Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure

This procedure records the specified instantiation SCN for the specified source database and, optionally, for the schemas at the source database and the tables owned by these schemas. This procedure overwrites any existing instantiation SCN for the database, and, if it sets the instantiation SCN for a schema or a table, then it overwrites any existing instantiation SCN for the schema or table.

This procedure gives you precise control over which DDL logical change records (DDL LCRs) from a source database are ignored and which DDL LCRs are applied by an apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN(
  source_database_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  instantiation_scn     IN  NUMBER,
  apply_database_link   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  recursive             IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
  source_root_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–19 SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database_name	The global name of the source database. For example, DBS1.NET. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
instantiation_scn	The instantiation SCN. Specify NULL to remove the instantiation SCN metadata for the source database from the data dictionary.
apply_database_link	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database of a local apply component is a non-Oracle database.
recursive	If TRUE, then the procedure sets the instantiation SCN for the source database, all schemas in the source database, and all tables owned by the schemas in the source database. This procedure selects the schemas and tables from the ALL_USERS and ALL_TABLES data dictionary views, respectively, at the source database under the security context of the current user. If FALSE, then the procedure sets the global instantiation SCN for the source database, but does not set the instantiation SCN for any schemas or tables **Note:** If recursive is set to TRUE, then a database link from the destination database to the source database is required. This database link must have the same name as the global name of the source database and must be accessible to the current user. Also, a table must be accessible to the current user in either the ALL_TABLES or DBA_TABLES data dictionary view at the source database for this procedure to set the instantiation SCN for the table at the destination database.

Table 23–19 (Cont.) SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_root_name	The global name of the source root database. In a non-CDB, this parameter must be NULL. In a CDB, if you want to do the instantiation for a specific container than you must specify both source_database and source_root_name. If you want to do the instantiation for all the containers in the CDB, specify the source_root_name for the database and leave the source_database name as NULL.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Instantiation SCNs and DDL LCRs
- The recursive Parameter
- Considerations for the SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure
- The SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers
- The SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and CDBs

See Also:

- SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-74
- SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-77
- LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type on page 275-6 for more information about DDL LCRs
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Instantiation SCNs and DDL LCRs

If the commit SCN of a DDL LCR for a database object from a source database is less than or equal to the instantiation SCN for that source database at a destination database, then the apply component at the destination database disregards the DDL LCR. Otherwise, the apply component applies the DDL LCR.

The global instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is used for a DDL LCR only if the DDL LCR does not have object_owner, base_table_owner, and base_table_name specified. For example, the global instantiation SCN set by this procedure is used for DDL LCRs with a command_type of CREATE USER.

The recursive Parameter

If the recursive parameter is set to TRUE, then this procedure sets the instantiation SCN for each schema at a source database and for the tables owned by these schemas. This procedure uses the SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN procedure to set the instantiation SCN for each schema, and it uses the SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN procedure to set the instantiation SCN for each table. Each schema instantiation SCN is used for DDL LCRs on the schema, and each table instantiation SCN is used for DDL LCRs and row LCRs on the table.

If the `recursive` parameter is set to `FALSE`, then this procedure does not set the instantiation SCN for any schemas or tables.

Considerations for the SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure

The following are considerations for using this procedure:

- Any instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is used only for LCRs captured by a capture process. It is not used for user-created LCRs.
- The instantiation SCN is not set for the `SYS` or `SYSTEM` schemas.

The SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Instantiation SCNs are not required for database objects processed by an outbound server. If an instantiation SCN is set for a database object, then the outbound server only sends the LCRs for the database object with SCN values that are greater than the instantiation SCN value. If a database object does not have an instantiation SCN set, then the outbound server skips the instantiation SCN check and sends all LCRs for that database object. In both cases, the outbound server only sends LCRs that satisfy its rule sets.

The `apply_database_link` parameter must be set to `NULL` or to the local database for this procedure to set an instantiation SCN for an outbound server.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about outbound servers and instantiation SCNs

The SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Inbound servers ignore instantiation SCNs. This procedure has no effect on XStream inbound servers.

The SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and CDBs

In a CDB, this procedure must be invoked from the same container as the apply process that uses the instantiation SCN information.

SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedures

This procedure records the set of columns to be used as the substitute primary key for apply purposes and removes existing substitute primary key columns for the specified object if they exist.

This procedure is overloaded. The `column_list` and `column_table` parameters are mutually exclusive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_KEY_COLUMNS(
   object_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_list          IN  VARCHAR2,
   apply_database_link  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_KEY_COLUMNS(
   object_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_table         IN  DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY,
   apply_database_link  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–20 SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the table specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the apply component is applying changes to a non-Oracle database in a heterogeneous environment, then the object name is not verified.
`column_list`	A comma-delimited list of the columns in the table to use as the substitute primary key, with no spaces between the column names. If the `column_list` parameter is empty or `NULL`, then the current set of key columns is removed.
`column_table`	A PL/SQL associative array of type `DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY` of the columns in the table to use as the substitute primary key. The index for `column_table` must be 1-based, increasing, dense, and terminated by a `NULL`. If the `column_table` parameter is empty or `NULL`, then the current set of key columns is removed.
`apply_database_link`	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database is a non-Oracle database.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Considerations for the SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure
- Duplicate Rows and Substitute Primary Key Columns
- The SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

- The SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers
- The SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure and CDBs

Considerations for the SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure

The following are considerations for using this procedure:

- When not empty, the specified set of columns takes precedence over any primary key for the specified object. Do not specify substitute key columns if the object has primary key columns and you want to use those primary key columns as the key.
- Run this procedure at the destination database. At the source database, you must specify an unconditional supplemental log group for the substitute key columns.
- Unlike true primary keys, columns specified as substitute key column columns can contain `NULL`s. However, Oracle recommends that each column you specify as a substitute key column be a `NOT NULL` column. You also should create a single index that includes all of the columns in a substitute key. Following these guidelines improves performance for updates, deletes, and piecewise updates to LOBs because Oracle can locate the relevant row more efficiently.
- Do not permit applications to update the primary key or substitute key columns of a table. This ensures that Oracle can identify rows and preserve the integrity of the data.
- If there is neither a primary key, nor a unique index that has at least one `NOT NULL` column, nor a substitute key for a table, then the key consists of all of the table columns, except for columns of the following data types: LOB, `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, user-defined types (including object types, `REF`s, varrays, nested tables), and Oracle-supplied types (including `Any` types, XML types, spatial types, and media types).

Duplicate Rows and Substitute Primary Key Columns

A table has duplicate rows when all of the column values are identical for two or more rows in the table, excluding LOB, `LONG`, and `LONG RAW` columns. You can specify substitute primary key columns for a table at a destination database using by the `SET_KEY_COLUMNS` procedure. When substitute primary key columns are specified for a table with duplicate rows at a destination database, and the `allow_duplicate_rows` apply component parameter is set to `Y`, meet the following requirements to keep the table data synchronized at the source and destination databases:

- Ensure that supplemental logging is specified at source database for the columns specified as substitute key columns at the destination database. The substitute key columns must be in an unconditional log group at the source database.
- Ensure that the substitute key columns uniquely identify each row in the table at the destination database.

The rest of this section provides more details about these requirements.

When there is no key for a table and the `allow_duplicate_rows` apply component parameter is set to `Y`, a single row LCR with an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` command type only is applied to one of the duplicate rows. In this case, if the table at the source database and the table at the destination database have corresponding duplicate rows, then a change that changes all of the duplicate rows at the source database also changes all the duplicate rows at the destination database when the row LCRs resulting from the change are applied.

For example, suppose a table at a source database has two duplicate rows. An update is performed on the duplicate rows, resulting in two row LCRs. At the destination

database, one row LCR is applied to one of the duplicate rows. At this point, the rows are no longer duplicate at the destination database because one of the rows has changed. When the second row LCR is applied at the destination database, the rows are duplicate again. Similarly, if a delete is performed on these duplicate rows at the source database, then both rows are deleted at the destination database when the row LCRs resulting from the source change are applied.

When substitute primary key columns are specified for a table, row LCRs are identified with rows in the table during apply using the substitute primary key columns. If substitute primary key columns are specified for a table with duplicate rows at a destination database, and the `allow_duplicate_rows` apply component parameter is set to `Y`, then an update performed on duplicate rows at the source database can result in different changes when the row LCRs are applied at the destination database. Specifically, if the update does not change one of the columns specified as a substitute primary key column, then the same duplicate row can be updated multiple times at the destination database, while other duplicate rows might not be updated.

Also, if the substitute key columns do not identify each row in the table at the destination database uniquely, then a row LCR identified with multiple rows can update any one of the rows. In this case, the update in the row LCR might not be applied to the correct row in the table at the destination database.

An apply component ignores substitute primary key columns when it determines whether rows in a table are duplicates. An apply component determines that rows are duplicates only if all of the column values in the rows are identical (excluding LOB, `LONG`, and `LONG RAW` columns). Therefore, an apply component always raises an error if a single update or delete changes two or more nonduplicate rows in a table.

For example, consider a table with columns `c1`, `c2`, and `c3` on which the `SET_KEY_COLUMNS` procedure is used to designate column `c1` as the substitute primary key. If two rows have the same key value for the `c1` column, but different value for the `c2` or `c3` columns, then an apply component does not treat the rows as duplicates. If an update or delete modifies more than one row because the `c1` values in the rows are the same, then the apply component raises an error regardless of the setting for the `allow_duplicate_rows` apply component parameter.

> **See Also:** SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 23-56 for more information about the `allow_duplicate_rows` apply component parameter

The SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

The SET_KEY_COLUMNS Procedure and CDBs

This procedure defines the columns that are used as a substitute primary key. You must perform the `SET_KEY_COLUMNS` procedure in the appropriate PDB.

SET_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure sets an apply parameter to the specified value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_PARAMETER (
   apply_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   parameter   IN  VARCHAR2,
   value       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–21 SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The apply component name. Do not specify an owner.
parameter	The name of the parameter you are setting. See "Apply Component Parameters" on page 23-56 for a list of these parameters.
value	The value to which the parameter is set. If NULL, then the parameter is set to its default value.

Apply Component Parameters

The following table lists the parameters for an apply component.

Table 23–22 Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
allow_duplicate_rows	Y or N	N	If Y and more than one row is changed by a single row logical change record (row LCR) with an UPDATE or DELETE command type, then the apply component only updates or deletes one of the rows. If N, then the apply component raises an error when it encounters a single row LCR with an UPDATE or DELETE command type that changes more than one row in a table. **Note:** Regardless of the setting for this parameter, apply components do not allow changes to duplicate rows for tables with LOB, LONG, or LONG RAW columns. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71 and "Duplicate Rows and Substitute Primary Key Columns" on page 23-54
apply_sequence_nextval	Y or N	N for apply processes Y for XStream outbound servers and XStream inbound servers	Controls whether the apply component checks and adjusts sequence values. If Y, then the apply component checks and adjusts sequence values. For ascending sequences, setting this parameter to Y ensures that the destination sequence values are equal to or greater than the source sequence values. For descending sequences, setting this parameter to Y ensures that the destination sequence values are equal to or less than the source sequence values. If N, then the apply component does not check or adjust sequence values. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not set this parameter to Y for an apply process in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 34-42 for information about the capture_sequence_nextval capture process parameter

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
commit_serialization	DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS or FULL	DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS	The order in which applied transactions are committed. Apply servers can apply nondependent transactions at the destination database in an order that is different from the commit order at the source database. Dependent transactions are always applied at the destination database in the same order as they were committed at the source database. You control whether the apply servers can apply nondependent transactions in a different order at the destination database using the commit_serialization apply parameter. This parameter has the following settings: ■ DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS - The apply component can commit nondependent transactions in any order. Performance is best if you specify DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS. ■ FULL - The apply component commits applied transactions in the order in which they were committed at the source database. Regardless of the specification, applied transactions can execute in parallel subject to data dependencies and constraint dependencies. If you specify DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS, then a destination database might commit changes in a different order than the source database. For example, suppose two nondependent transactions are committed at the source database in the following order: 1. Transaction A 2. Transaction B At the destination database, these transactions might be committed in the opposite order: 1. Transaction B 2. Transaction A If you specify DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS and there are application constraints that are not enforced by the database, then use virtual dependency definitions or add RELY constraints to account for the application constraints. See *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about virtual dependency definitions and *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for information about RELY constraints. **Note:** The NONE value is deprecated for this parameter. It is replaced by the DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS value. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
compare_key_only	Y or N	N for apply processes Y for XStream inbound servers	If Y, then disables automatic conflict detection and only uses primary and unique key columns to identify the table row for a row LCR. If N, then enables automatic conflict detection and uses all of the old values in a row LCR to identify the table row for a row LCR. **Note:** The COMPARE_OLD_VALUES procedure in this package can disable comparison of old values for specified columns during apply. See COMPARE_OLD_VALUES Procedure on page 23-16. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71 and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about automatic conflict detection

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
compute_lcr_dep_on_arrival	Y or N	N	If Y, the dependencies are computed as the LCRs for the transaction are received. If N, the dependencies are computed only after all the LCRs for a transaction are received. If the target table has all of the same constraints as the source table, you can improve the performance by setting this parameter to Y. If the number of LCRs in transaction exceeds the value of the number of the eager_size parameter, then the dependencies for that transaction are calculated on arrival regardless of the setting of compute_lcr_dep_on_arrival. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not set this parameter to Y for an apply process in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations.
disable_on_error	Y or N	Y	If Y, then the apply component is disabled on the first unresolved error, even if the error is not irrecoverable. If N, then the apply component continues regardless of unresolved errors.
disable_on_limit	Y or N	N	If Y, then the apply component is disabled if the apply component terminates because it reached a value specified by the time_limit parameter or transaction_limit parameter. If N, then the apply component is restarted immediately after stopping because it reached a limit. When an apply component is restarted, it gets a new session identifier, and the processes associated with the apply component also get new session identifiers. However, the coordinator process number (APnn) remains the same.

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
eager_size	A positive integer	9500	The apply component usually waits until it receives a commit record before starting to apply changes of a transaction. If XStream is enabled and more than eager_size LCRs arrive for a given transaction, then apply starts processing the changes. If XStream is not enabled and more than eager_size LCRs arrive for a given transaction, then apply waits until the complete transaction is received before processing the changes. Since it is possible that all existing apply servers are handling complete transactions from the source, additional apply servers are automatically created to handle outstanding eager transactions. The apply parameter max_parallelism limits the maximum number of apply servers that can be used for an apply process. This apply parameter is relevant only if its value is less than the value of the txn_lcr_spill_threshold apply parameter. When the value of txn_lcr_spill_threshold is lower than the value of eager_size, transactions spill to disk before eager apply begins. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations.
enable_xstream_table_stats	Y orN	Y	When this parameter is set to Y, statistics about the operations of applied transactions are collected and made available in the V$XSTREAM_TABLE_STATS view. When this parameter is set to N, no statistics are collected. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not set this parameter to Y for an apply process in an Oracle Streams replication environment.
excludetag	Comma-delimited list of Oracle Streams tags	NULL	Controls whether the capture process for an outbound server captures DML changes that are tagged with one of the specified Oracle Streams tags. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process. XStream inbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER procedure for more information about this parameter

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
excludetrans	Comma-delimited list of transaction names	NULL	Controls whether the capture process for an outbound server captures DML changes in the specified transaction names. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process. XStream inbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER procedure for more information about this parameter
excludeuser	Comma-delimited list of user names	NULL	Controls whether the capture process for an outbound server captures DML changes made by the specified users. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. Specify an exact pattern match for each user name. The pattern match is case sensitive. For example, specify HR for the hr user. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process. XStream inbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER procedure for more information about this parameter
excludeuserid	Comma-delimited list of user ID values	NULL	Controls whether the capture process for an outbound server captures data manipulation language (DML) changes made by the specified users. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. To view the user ID for a user, query the USER_ID column in the ALL_USERS data dictionary view. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process. XStream inbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER procedure for more information about this parameter

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
getapplops	Y or N	Y	If Y, then the capture process captures DML changes if the original user is not specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is not specified in the excludetrans parameter. If N, then the capture process ignores DML changes if the original user is not specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is not specified in the excludetrans parameter. In either case, the capture process captures a DML change only if it satisfies the capture process's rule sets. When N is set for both getapplops and getreplicates, no data is captured. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process. XStream inbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER procedure for more information about this parameter
getreplicates	Y or N	N	If Y, then the capture process captures DML changes if the original user is specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is specified in the excludetrans parameter. If N, then the capture process ignores DML changes if the original user is specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is specified in the excludetrans parameter. In either case, the capture process captures a DML change only if it satisfies the capture process's rule sets. When N is set for both getapplops and getreplicates, no data is captured. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process. XStream inbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER procedure for more information about this parameter

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
grouptransops	A positive integer from 1 to 10000	250 for apply processes and XStream inbound servers	The minimum number of LCRs that can be grouped into a single transaction. The commit LCR for a transaction is not included in the LCR count for the transaction.
		10000 for XStream outbound servers	This parameter enables an apply component to group LCRs from multiple transactions into a single transaction. The apply component groups only LCRs that are part of committed transactions. If a transaction has more LCRs than the setting for this parameter, then the transaction is applied as a single transaction. The apply component does not split a transaction into separate transactions. This parameter only takes effect if the parallelism parameter setting is 1. The grouptransops parameter is ignored if the parallelism parameter setting is greater than 1. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream outbound servers and inbound servers. An Oracle Streams apply process ignores this parameter unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
handlecollisions	Y or N	N	This parameter controls whether the apply component tries to resolve duplicate-record and missing-record errors when applying changes during data loading. This parameter should be set to N for normal replication activity. It should be set to Y only when data is being loaded (instantiated) and replication is enabled. If Y, then does the equivalent of OVERWRITE for INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE operations that get ROW_EXISTS errors, and ignores UPDATE and DELETE operations that get ROW_MISSING errors. Specifically, the apply component performs the following actions when this parameter is set to Y: ▪ If the operation is an insert and the primary key or unique key exists, then the insert is converted to an update. ▪ If the operation is an update that does not modify the primary key or unique key columns, and the row does not exist, then the change is ignored. ▪ If the operation is an update that modifies the primary key or unique key columns, and the row does not exist, then the change is ignored. ▪ If the operation is an update that modifies the primary key or unique key columns, and the a row with the new key values already exists, then delete the row with the old key values and replace the row with the new key values. ▪ If the operation is a delete and the row does not exist, then the change is ignored. If N then it disables the above settings. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream In environment with one or more inbound servers. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment.

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
ignore_transaction	A valid source transaction ID or NULL	NULL	Instructs the apply component to ignore the specified transaction from the source database, effective immediately. Use caution when setting this parameter because ignoring a transaction might lead to data divergence between the source database and destination database. To ignore multiple transactions, specify each transaction in a separate call to the SET_PARAMETER procedure. The DBA_APPLY_PARAMETERS view displays a comma-delimited list of all transactions to be ignored. To clear the list of ignored transactions, run the SET_PARAMETER procedure and specify NULL for the ignore_transaction parameter. If NULL, then the apply component ignores this parameter. **Note:** An apply component ignores this parameter for transactions that were not captured by a capture process. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
maximum_scn	A valid SCN or INFINITE	INFINITE	The apply component is disabled before applying a transaction with a commit SCN greater than or equal to the value specified. If INFINITE, then the apply component runs regardless of the SCN value. **Note:** An apply component ignores this parameter for transactions that were not captured by a capture process. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
max_parallelism	A positive integer	50	Limits the maximum number of apply servers that can be used for an apply component. When the apply parallelism parameter is set greater than one, the apply component adds apply servers when necessary to process transactions until it reaches the limit set by this parameter (max_parallelism). Transactions include both unassigned (eager) and assigned transactions. Apply servers that idle for more than 5 minutes are shut down until the configured parallelism is attained. Runtime statistics for servers that have been shut down are aggregated into apply server 0 so that accurate apply statistics for the entire apply process can be maintained. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not set this parameter to Y for an apply process in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations.

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
max_sga_size	A positive integer	INFINITE	Controls the amount of system global area (SGA) memory allocated specifically to the apply component, in megabytes. The memory is allocated for the duration of the apply component's session and is released when the apply component becomes disabled. **Note:** The sum of system global area (SGA) memory allocated for all components on a database must be less than the value set for the STREAMS_POOL_SIZE initialization parameter. If NULL, then the apply component uses the original default value. A NULL value has the same effect as resetting the parameter to its default value. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use or attempt to set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
optimize_progress_table	Y or N	Y	This parameter determines if a table or the redo log tracks the apply transactions. The progress table tracks completed apply transactions. If Y, transactions are tracked in the redo log. If N, transactions are tracked in a table. If the database is not in archivelog mode, then the setting of Y is ignored. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
optimize_self_updates	Y or N	Y	This parameter affects conflict resolution when an update in the source database sets a column to its existing value. When this parameter is set to Y, a conflict between the value in the LCR and the corresponding column in the target database is considered resolved. When this parameter is set to N, the conflict is processed.

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
parallelism	A positive integer	4	The number of apply servers that can concurrently apply transactions. The reader server and the apply server process names are ASnn, where nn can include letters and numbers. The total number of ASnn processes is the value of the parallelism parameter plus one. For example, if parallelism is set to 4, then an apply component uses a total of five ASnn processes. In this case, there is one reader server and four apply servers. Setting the parallelism parameter to a number higher than the number of available operating system user processes can disable the apply component. Make sure the PROCESSES initialization parameter is set appropriately when you set the parallelism parameter. **Note:** When the value of this parameter is changed from 1 to a higher value for a running apply component, the apply component is stopped and restarted automatically. This can take some time depending on the size of the transactions currently being applied. When the value of this parameter is greater than 1, and the parameter value is decreased or increased, the apply component does not restart. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
parallelism_interval	0 or a positive integer	0	The parallelism interval is the interval in seconds at which the current workload activity is computed. The apply component calculates the mean throughput every 5 X parallelism_interval seconds. After each calculation, the apply component can increase or decrease the number of apply servers to try to improve throughput. If throughput is improved, then the apply component keeps the new number of apply servers. The parallelism interval is used only if the parallelism parameter is set to a value greater than one and the max_parallelism parameter value is greater than the parallelism parameter value. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream In environment with one or more inbound servers. XStream outbound servers ignore this parameter. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
preserve_encryption	Y or N	Y	Whether to preserve encryption for columns encrypted using Transparent Data Encryption. If Y, then columns in tables at the destination database must be encrypted when corresponding columns in row LCRs are encrypted. If columns are encrypted in row LCRs but the corresponding columns are not encrypted in the tables at the destination database, then an error is raised when the apply component tries to apply the row LCRs. If N, then columns in tables at the destination database do not need to be encrypted when corresponding columns in row LCRs are encrypted. If columns are encrypted in row LCRs but the corresponding columns are not encrypted in the tables at the destination database, then the apply component applies the changes in the row LCRs. **Note:** When the value of this parameter is changed for a running apply component, the apply component is stopped and restarted automatically. This can take some time depending on the size of the transactions currently being applied. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
rtrim_on_implicit_conversion	Y or N	Y	Whether to remove blank padding from the right end of a column when automatic datatype conversion is performed during apply. If Y, then blank padding is removed when a CHAR or NCHAR source column in a row LCR is converted to a VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR2, or CLOB column in a table. If N, then blank padding is preserved in the column. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71 and *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about automatic datatype conversion during apply
startup_seconds	0, a positive integer, or INFINITE	0	The maximum number of seconds to wait for another instantiation of the same apply component to finish. If the other instantiation of the same apply component does not finish within this time, then the apply component does not start. If INFINITE, then an apply component does not start until another instantiation of the same apply component finishes. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
suppresstriggers	Y or N	Y	This parameter controls whether triggers fire when a change is made by the apply component. If Y, triggers do not fire for changes made by the apply component. If N, triggers fire for changes made by the apply component. If a trigger's firing property is set to always fire, then the trigger always fires for changes made by the apply component, regardless of the value of the suppresstriggers parameter. A trigger's firing property is set to always fire by running the the DBMS_DDL.SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY procedure with the fire_once parameter set to FALSE. **Note:** This parameter is intended for an XStream In environment with one or more inbound servers. Do not set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
time_limit	A positive integer or INFINITE	INFINITE	The apply component stops as soon as possible after the specified number of seconds since it started. If INFINITE, then the apply component continues to run until it is stopped explicitly. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
trace_level	0 or a positive integer	0	Set this parameter only under the guidance of Oracle Support Services. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
transaction_limit	A positive integer or INFINITE	INFINITE	The apply component stops after applying the specified number of transactions. If INFINITE, then the apply component continues to run regardless of the number of transactions applied. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
txn_age_spill_threshold	A positive integer or INFINITE	900	The apply component begins to spill messages from memory to hard disk for a particular transaction when the amount of time that any message in the transaction has been in memory exceeds the specified number. The parameter specifies the age in seconds. When the reader server spills messages from memory, the messages are stored in a database table on the hard disk. These messages are not spilled from memory to a queue table. Message spilling occurs at the transaction level. For example, if this parameter is set to 900, and the reader server of an apply component detects that one message in a transaction has been in memory longer than 900 seconds, then all of the messages in the transaction spill from memory to hard disk. If INFINITE, then the apply component does not spill messages to the hard disk based on the age of the messages. Query the DBA_APPLY_SPILL_TXN data dictionary view for information about transactions spilled by an apply component. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71

Table 23–22 (Cont.) Apply Component Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
txn_lcr_spill_threshold	A positive integer or INFINITE	10000	The apply component begins to spill messages from memory to hard disk for a particular transaction when the number of messages in memory for the transaction exceeds the specified number. The number of messages in first chunk of messages spilled from memory equals the number specified for this parameter, and the number of messages spilled in future chunks is either 100 or the number specified for this parameter, whichever is less. If the reader server of an apply component has the specified number of messages in memory for a particular transaction, then when it detects the next message for this transaction, it spills the messages that are in memory to the hard disk. For example, if this parameter is set to 10000, and a transaction has 10,200 messages, then the reader server handles the transaction in the following way: 1. Reads the first 10,000 messages in the transaction into memory 2. Spills messages 1 - 10,000 to hard disk when it detects message 10,000 3. Reads the next 100 messages in the transaction into memory 4. Spills messages 10,001 - 10,100 to hard disk when it detects message 10,100 5. Reads the next 100 messages in the transaction into memory The apply component applies the first 10,100 messages from the hard disk and the last 100 messages from memory. When the reader server spills messages from memory, the messages are stored in a database table on the hard disk. These messages are not spilled from memory to a queue table. Message spilling occurs at the transaction level. For example, if this parameter is set to 10000, and the reader server of an apply component is assembling two transactions, one with 7,500 messages and another with 8,000 messages, then it does not spill any messages. If INFINITE, then the apply component does not spill messages to the hard disk based on the number of messages in a transaction. Query the DBA_APPLY_SPILL_TXN data dictionary view for information about transactions spilled by an apply component. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 23-71
write_alert_log	Y or N	Y	If Y, then the apply component writes a message to the alert log on exit. If N, then the apply component does not write a message to the alert log on exit. The message specifies the reason why the apply component stopped.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Delays Are Possible Before New Parameter Settings Take Effect

Delays Are Possible Before New Parameter Settings Take Effect

When you alter a parameter value, a short amount of time might pass before the new value for the parameter takes effect.

Parameters Interpreted as Positive Integers

For all parameters that are interpreted as positive integers, the maximum possible value is `4,294,967,295`. Where applicable, specify `INFINITE` for larger values.

Parameters with a System Change Number (SCN) Setting

For parameters that require an SCN setting, any valid SCN value can be specified.

The SET_PARAMETER Procedure and Streams

You can use the following parameters in Streams if you enable XStream performance optimizations for Oracle Streams using the procedure `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS`:

- `apply_sequence_nextval`
- `compute_lcr_dep_on_arrival`
- `eager_size`
- `grouptransops`
- `max_parallelism`
- `max_sga_size`
- `optimize_progress_table`
- `parallelism_interval`

The SET_PARAMETER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Outbound servers ignore the settings for the following apply parameters:

- `allow_duplicate_rows`
- `commit_serialization`
- `compare_key_only`
- `compute_lcr_dep_on_arrival`
- `disable_on_error`
- `eager_size`
- `enable_xstream_table_stats`
- `grouptransops`
- `handlecollisions`
- `optimize_self_updates`

- parallelism
- parallelism_interval
- preserve_encryption
- rtrim_on_implicit_conversion
- suppresstriggers

The commit_serialization parameter is always set to FULL for an outbound server, and the parallelism parameter is always set to 1 for an outbound server.

You can use the other apply parameters with outbound servers.

> **Note:** Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

The SET_PARAMETER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Inbound servers ignore the settings for the following apply parameters:

- excludetag
- excludetrans
- excludeuser
- excludeuserid
- getapplops
- getreplicates
- ignore_transaction
- maximum_scn

You can use all of the other apply component parameters with inbound servers.

The default setting for the compare_key_only parameter for an inbound server is Y.

The default setting for the parallelism parameter for an inbound server is 4.

> **Note:** Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure

This procedure records the specified instantiation SCN for the specified schema in the specified source database and, optionally, for the tables owned by the schema at the source database. This procedure overwrites any existing instantiation SCN for the schema, and, if it sets the instantiation SCN for a table, it overwrites any existing instantiation SCN for the table.

This procedure gives you precise control over which DDL logical change records (LCRs) for a schema are ignored and which DDL LCRs are applied by an apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN(
  source_schema_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
  source_database_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  instantiation_scn     IN  NUMBER,
  apply_database_link   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  recursive             IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
  source_root_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–23 SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_schema_name	The name of the source schema. For example, hr. When setting an instantiation SCN for schema, always specify the name of the schema at the source database, even if a rule-based transformation or apply handler is configured to change the schema name.
source_database_name	The global name of the source database. For example, DBS1.NET. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
instantiation_scn	The instantiation SCN. Specify NULL to remove the instantiation SCN metadata for the source schema from the data dictionary.
apply_database_link	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database of a local apply component is a non-Oracle database.

Table 23–23 (Cont.) SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
recursive	If TRUE, then the procedure sets the instantiation SCN for the specified schema and all tables owned by the schema in the source database. This procedure selects the tables owned by the specified schema from the ALL_TABLES data dictionary view at the source database under the security context of the current user. If FALSE, then the procedure sets the instantiation SCN for specified schema, but does not set the instantiation SCN for any tables **Note:** If recursive is set to TRUE, then a database link from the destination database to the source database is required. This database link must have the same name as the global name of the source database and must be accessible to the current user. Also, a table must be accessible to the current user in either the ALL_TABLES or DBA_TABLES data dictionary view at the source database for this procedure to set the instantiation SCN for the table at the destination database.
source_root_name	The global name of the source root database. In a non-CDB, this parameter must be NULL. In a CDB, both source_database and source_root_name must be specified to identify a specific container.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and LCRs
- Instantiation SCNs and DDL LCRs
- The recursive Parameter
- The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers
- The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and CDBs

See Also:

- SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-50
- SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-77
- LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type on page 275-6 for more information about DDL LCRs
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and LCRs

Any instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is used only for LCRs captured by a capture process. It is not used for user-created LCRs.

Instantiation SCNs and DDL LCRs

If the commit SCN of a DDL LCR for a database object in a schema from a source database is less than or equal to the instantiation SCN for that database object at a destination database, then the apply component at the destination database disregards the DDL LCR. Otherwise, the apply component applies the DDL LCR.

The schema instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is used on the following types of DDL LCRs:

- DDL LCRs with a `command_type` of `CREATE TABLE`
- DDL LCRs with a non-`NULL` `object_owner` specified and neither `base_table_owner` nor `base_table_name` specified.

For example, the schema instantiation SCN set by this procedure is used for a DDL LCR with a `command_type` of `CREATE TABLE` and `ALTER USER`.

The schema instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is not used for DDL LCRs with a `command_type` of `CREATE USER`. A global instantiation SCN is needed for such DDL LCRs.

The recursive Parameter

If the `recursive` parameter is set to `TRUE`, then this procedure sets the table instantiation SCN for each table at the source database owned by the schema. This procedure uses the `SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN` procedure to set the instantiation SCN for each table. Each table instantiation SCN is used for DDL LCRs and row LCRs on the table.

If the `recursive` parameter is set to `FALSE`, then this procedure does not set the instantiation SCN for any tables.

The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Instantiation SCNs are not required for database objects processed by an outbound server. If an instantiation SCN is set for a database object, then the outbound server only sends the LCRs for the database object with SCN values that are greater than the instantiation SCN value. If a database object does not have an instantiation SCN set, then the outbound server skips the instantiation SCN check and sends all LCRs for that database object. In both cases, the outbound server only sends LCRs that satisfy its rule sets.

The `apply_database_link` parameter must be set to `NULL` or to the local database for this procedure to set an instantiation SCN for an outbound server.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about outbound servers and instantiation SCNs

The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Inbound servers ignore instantiation SCNs. This procedure has no effect on XStream inbound servers.

The SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and CDBs

In a CDB, this procedure must be invoked from the same container as the apply process that uses the instantiation SCN information.

SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure

This procedure records the specified instantiation SCN for the specified table in the specified source database. This procedure overwrites any existing instantiation SCN for the particular table.

This procedure gives you precise control over which logical change records (LCRs) for a table are ignored and which LCRs are applied by an apply component.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN(
  source_object_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
  source_database_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  instantiation_scn     IN  NUMBER,
  apply_database_link   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  source_root_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–24 SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_object_name	The name of the source object specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. When setting an instantiation SCN for a database object, always specify the name of the schema and database object at the source database, even if a rule-based transformation or apply handler is configured to change the schema name or database object name.
source_database_name	The global name of the source database. For example, DBS1.NET. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
instantiation_scn	The instantiation SCN. Specify NULL to remove the instantiation SCN metadata for the source table from the data dictionary.
apply_database_link	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database of a local apply component is a non-Oracle database. **Note:** This parameter must be NULL when the procedure is invoked from the root of a CDB.
source_root_name	The global name of the source root database. In a non-CDB, this parameter must be NULL. In a CDB, both source_database and source_root_name must be specified to identify a specific container.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Instantiation SCNs and LCRs

- The SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers
- The SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and CDBs

Instantiation SCNs and LCRs

If the commit SCN of an LCR for a table from a source database is less than or equal to the instantiation SCN for that table at some destination database, then the apply component at the destination database disregards the LCR. Otherwise, the apply component applies the LCR.

The table instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is used on the following types of LCRs:

- Row LCRs for the table
- DDL LCRs that have a non-`NULL` `base_table_owner` and `base_table_name` specified, except for DDL LCRs with a `command_type` of `CREATE TABLE`

For example, the table instantiation SCN set by this procedure is used for DDL LCRs with a `command_type` of `ALTER TABLE` or `CREATE TRIGGER`.

Note: The instantiation SCN specified by this procedure is used only for LCRs captured by a capture process. It is not used for user-created LCRs.

See Also:

- SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-50
- SET_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure on page 23-74
- LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type on page 275-15 for more information about row LCRs
- LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type on page 275-6 for more information about DDL LCRs
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

The SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

Instantiation SCNs are not required for database objects processed by an outbound server. If an instantiation SCN is set for a database object, then the outbound server only sends the LCRs for the database object with SCN values that are greater than the instantiation SCN value. If a database object does not have an instantiation SCN set, then the outbound server skips the instantiation SCN check and sends all LCRs for that database object. In both cases, the outbound server only sends LCRs that satisfy its rule sets.

The `apply_database_link` parameter must be set to `NULL` or to the local database for this procedure to set an instantiation SCN for an outbound server.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about outbound servers and instantiation SCNs

The SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Inbound servers ignore instantiation SCNs. This procedure has no effect on XStream inbound servers.

The SET_TABLE_INSTANTIATION_SCN Procedure and CDBs

In a CDB, this procedure must be invoked from the same container as the apply process that uses the instantiation SCN information.

SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure adds, modifies, or removes a prebuilt update conflict handler for the specified object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER(
   object_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   method_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   resolution_column    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_list          IN  DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY,
   apply_database_link  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 23–25 SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_name	The schema and name of the table, specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*, for which an update conflict handler is being added, modified, or removed. For example, if an update conflict handler is being added for table employees owned by user hr, then specify hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
method_name	Type of update conflict handler to create. You can specify one of the prebuilt handlers, which determine whether the column list from the source database is applied for the row or whether the values in the row at the destination database are retained: ■ MAXIMUM: Applies the column list from the source database if it has the greater value for the resolution column. Otherwise, retains the values at the destination database. ■ MINIMUM: Applies the column list from the source database if it has the lesser value for the resolution column. Otherwise, retains the values at the destination database. ■ OVERWRITE: Applies the column list from the source database, overwriting the column values at the destination database. ■ DISCARD: Retains the column list from the destination database, discarding the column list from the source database. If NULL, then the procedure removes any existing update conflict handler with the same object_name, resolution_column, and column_list. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces any existing update conflict handler with the same object_name and resolution_column.
resolution_column	Name of the column used to uniquely identify an update conflict handler. For the MAXIMUM and MINIMUM prebuilt methods, the resolution column is also used to resolve the conflict. The resolution column must be one of the columns listed in the column_list parameter. NULL is not allowed for this parameter. For the OVERWRITE and DISCARD prebuilt methods, you can specify any column in the column list.

Table 23–25 (Cont.) SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
column_list	List of columns for which the conflict handler is called. The same column cannot be in more than one column list. If a conflict occurs for one or more of the columns in the list when an apply component tries to apply a row logical change record (row LCR), then the conflict handler is called to resolve the conflict. The conflict handler is not called if a conflict occurs only for columns that are not in the list. **Note:** Prebuilt update conflict handlers do not support LOB, LONG, LONG RAW, user-defined type, and Oracle-suppled type columns. Therefore, you should not include these types of columns in the column_list parameter.
apply_database_link	The name of the database link to a non-Oracle database. This parameter should be set only when the destination database is a non-Oracle database. **Note:** Currently, conflict handlers are not supported when applying changes to a non-Oracle database.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Modifying an Existing Update Conflict Handler
- Removing an Existing Update Conflict Handler
- Series of Actions for Conflicts
- Procedure DML Handlers for Conflicts
- A Column Can Be in Only One Column List
- Update Conflict Handlers and Non-Oracle Databases
- The SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about prebuilt and custom update conflict handlers

Modifying an Existing Update Conflict Handler

If you want to modify an existing update conflict handler, then you specify the table and resolution column of an the existing update conflict handler. You can modify the prebuilt method or the column list.

Removing an Existing Update Conflict Handler

If you want to remove an existing update conflict handler, then specify NULL for the prebuilt method and specify the table, column list, and resolution column of the existing update conflict handler.

Series of Actions for Conflicts

If an update conflict occurs, then Oracle completes the following series of actions:

1. Calls the appropriate update conflict handler to resolve the conflict

2. If no update conflict handler is specified or if the update conflict handler cannot resolve the conflict, then calls the appropriate error handler for the apply component, table, and operation to handle the error
3. If no error handler is specified or if the error handler cannot resolve the error, then raises an error and moves the transaction containing the row LCR that caused the error to the error queue

> **See Also:** "Signature of a DML Handler Procedure or Error Handler Procedure" on page 23-43 for information about setting an error handler

Procedure DML Handlers for Conflicts

If you cannot use a prebuilt update conflict handler to meet your requirements, then you can create a PL/SQL procedure to use as a custom conflict handler. You use the `SET_DML_HANDLER` procedure to designate one or more custom conflict handlers for a particular table. In addition, a custom conflict handler can process LOB columns and use LOB assembly.

> **See Also:** SET_DML_HANDLER Procedure on page 23-41

A Column Can Be in Only One Column List

When a column is in a column list, and you try to add the same column to another column list, this procedure returns the following error:

```
ORA-00001: UNIQUE CONSTRAINT (SYS.APPLY$_CONF_HDLR_COLUMNS_UNQ1) VIOLATED
```

Update Conflict Handlers and Non-Oracle Databases

Setting an update conflict handler for an apply component that is applying to a non-Oracle database is not supported.

The SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

Examples

The following is an example for setting an update conflict handler for the `employees` table in the `hr` schema:

```
DECLARE
  cols  DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY;
BEGIN
  cols(1) := 'salary';
  cols(2) := 'commission_pct';
  DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER(
    object_name           =>  'hr.employees',
    method_name           =>  'MAXIMUM',
    resolution_column     =>  'salary',
    column_list           =>  cols);
END;
/
```

This example sets a conflict handler that is called if a conflict occurs for the `salary` or `commission_pct` column in the `hr.employees` table. If such a conflict occurs, then the `salary` column is evaluated to resolve the conflict. If a conflict occurs only for a column that is not in the column list, such as the `job_id` column, then this conflict handler is not called.

SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure

This procedure sets or removes a value dependency. A value dependency is a virtual dependency definition that defines a relationship between the columns of two or more tables.

An apply component uses the name of a value dependencies to detect dependencies between row logical change records (row LCRs) that contain the columns defined in the value dependency. Value dependencies can define virtual foreign key relationships between tables, but, unlike foreign key relationships, value dependencies can involve more than two database objects.

This procedure is overloaded. The `attribute_list` and `attribute_table` parameters are mutually exclusive.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY(
   dependency_name IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute_list  IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY(
   dependency_name IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute_table IN DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 23–26 SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`dependency_name`	The name of the value dependency. If a dependency with the specified name does not exist, then it is created. If a dependency with the specified name exists, then the specified object and attributes are added to the dependency. If `NULL`, an error is raised.
`object_name`	The name of the table, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`table_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If `NULL` and the specified dependency exists, then the dependency is removed. If `NULL` and the specified dependency does not exist, then an error is raised. If `NULL`, then `attribute_list` and `attribute_table` also must be `NULL`.
`attribute_list`	A comma-delimited list of column names in the table. There must be no spaces between entries.
`attribute_table`	A PL/SQL associative array of type `DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY` that contains names of columns in the table. The first column name should be at position 1, the second at position 2, and so on. The table does not need to be `NULL` terminated.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

The SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure has no effect on XStream outbound servers.

The SET_VALUE_DEPENDENCY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

START_APPLY Procedure

This procedure directs the apply component to start applying messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.START_APPLY(
   apply_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 23–27 START_APPLY Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The apply component name. A NULL setting is not allowed. Do not specify an owner.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Apply Component Status
- The START_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The START_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Apply Component Status

The apply component status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is ENABLED, then the apply component is started upon database instance startup. An apply component (a*nnn*) is an Oracle background process. The enqueue and dequeue state of DBMS_AQADM.START_QUEUE and DBMS_AQADM.STOP_QUEUE have no effect on the start status of an apply component.

The START_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and outbound servers.

The START_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

STOP_APPLY Procedure

This procedure stops the apply component from applying messages and rolls back any unfinished transactions being applied.

Syntax

```
DBMS_APPLY_ADM.STOP_APPLY(
   apply_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   force       IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 23–28 STOP_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_name	The apply component name. A NULL setting is not allowed. Do not specify an owner.
force	If TRUE, then the procedure stops the apply component as soon as possible. If FALSE, then the procedure stops the apply component after ensuring that there are no gaps in the set of applied transactions. The behavior of the apply component depends on the setting specified for the force parameter and the setting specified for the commit_serialization apply component parameter. See "Usage Notes" for more information.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- Apply Component Status
- Queue Subprograms Have No Effect on Apply Component Status
- The STOP_APPLY force Parameter and the commit_serialization Apply Parameter
- The STOP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers
- The STOP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

Apply Component Status

The apply component status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is DISABLED or ABORTED, then the apply component is not started upon database instance startup.

Queue Subprograms Have No Effect on Apply Component Status

The enqueue and dequeue state of DBMS_AQADM.START_QUEUE and DBMS_AQADM.STOP_QUEUE have no effect on the STOP status of an apply component.

The STOP_APPLY force Parameter and the commit_serialization Apply Parameter

The following table describes apply component behavior for each setting of the force parameter in the STOP_APPLY procedure and the commit_serialization apply component parameter. In all cases, the apply component rolls back any unfinished transactions when it stops.

force	commit_serialization	Apply Component Behavior
TRUE	FULL	The apply component stops immediately and does not apply any unfinished transactions.
TRUE	DEPENDENT_ TRANSACTIONS	When the apply component stops, some transactions that have been applied locally might have committed at the source database at a later point in time than some transactions that have not been applied locally.
FALSE	FULL	The apply component stops after applying the next uncommitted transaction in the commit order, if any such transaction is in progress.
FALSE	DEPENDENT_ TRANSACTIONS	Before stopping, the apply component applies all of the transactions that have a commit time that is earlier than the applied transaction with the most recent commit time.

For example, assume that the commit_serialization apply component parameter is set to DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS and there are three transactions: transaction 1 has the earliest commit time, transaction 2 is committed after transaction 1, and transaction 3 has the latest commit time. Also assume that an apply component has applied transaction 1 and transaction 3 and is in the process of applying transaction 2 when the STOP_APPLY procedure is run. Given this scenario, if the force parameter is set to TRUE, then transaction 2 is not applied, and the apply component stops (transaction 2 is rolled back). If, however, the force parameter is set to FALSE, then transaction 2 is applied before the apply component stops.

A different scenario would result if the commit_serialization apply component parameter is set to FULL. For example, assume that the commit_serialization apply component parameter is set to FULL and there are three transactions: transaction A has the earliest commit time, transaction B is committed after transaction A, and transaction C has the latest commit time. In this case, the apply component has applied transaction A and is in the process of applying transactions B and C when the STOP_APPLY procedure is run. Given this scenario, if the force parameter is set to TRUE, then transactions B and C are not applied, and the apply component stops (transactions B and C are rolled back). If, however, the force parameter is set to FALSE, then transaction B is applied before the apply component stops, and transaction C is rolled back.

> **See Also:** SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 23-56 for more information about the commit_serialization apply component parameter

The STOP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Outbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and outbound servers.

The STOP_APPLY Procedure and XStream Inbound Servers

This procedure functions the same way for apply processes and inbound servers.

24

DBMS_AQ

The DBMS_AQ package provides an interface to Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing (AQ).

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*
- Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) Types for information about TYPEs to use with DBMS_AQ.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_AQ

This section contains the following topics.

Security Model

Initially, only SYS and SYSTEM have execution privilege for the procedures in DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM.

Queue Security

To enqueue or dequeue, users need EXECUTE rights on DBMS_AQ and either ENQUEUE or DEQUEUE privileges on target queues, or ENQUEUE_ANY/DEQUEUE_ANY system privileges. Users who have been granted EXECUTE rights to DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM are able to create, manage, and use queues in their own schemas. The MANAGE_ANY AQ system privilege is used to create and manage queues in other schemas.

As a database user, you do not need any explicit object-level or system-level privileges to enqueue or dequeue to queues in your own schema other than the EXECUTE right on DBMS_AQ.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information on queue privileges and access control.

OCI Applications and Queue Access

For an Oracle Call Interface (OCI) application to access a queue, the session user must be granted either the object privilege of the queue he intends to access or the ENQUEUE ANY QUEUE or DEQUEUE ANY QUEUE system privileges. The EXECUTE right of DBMS_AQ is not checked against the session user's rights.

Security Required for Propagation

Propagation jobs are owned by SYS, but the propagation occurs in the security context of the queue table owner. Previously propagation jobs were owned by the user scheduling propagation, and propagation occurred in the security context of the user setting up the propagation schedule. The queue table owner must be granted EXECUTE privileges on the DBMS_AQADM package. Otherwise, the Oracle Database snapshot processes do not propagate and generate trace files with the error identifier SYS.DBMS_AQADM not defined. Private database links owned by the queue table owner can be used for propagation. The username specified in the connection string must have EXECUTE access on the DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM packages on the remote database.

> **See Also:**
>
> - Chapter 25, "DBMS_AQADM."
> - *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information on security required for propagation.

Constants

The DBMS_AQ package uses the constants shown in Table 24–1.

When using enumerated constants such as BROWSE, LOCKED, or REMOVE, the PL/SQL constants must be specified with the scope of the packages defining it. All types associated with the operational interfaces have to be prepended with DBMS_AQ. For example: DBMS_AQ.BROWSE.

> **Note:** The sequence_deviation attribute has no effect in releases prior to Oracle Streams AQ 10g Release 1 (10.1) if message_grouping parameter of DBMS_AQADM subprograms is set to TRANSACTIONAL. The sequence deviation feature is deprecated in Oracle Streams AQ 10g Release 2 (10.2).

Table 24–1 Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Options	Type	Description
VISIBILITY	IMMEDIATE		
.	ON_COMMIT		
DEQUEUE_MODE	BROWSE		
.	LOCKED		
.	REMOVE		
.	REMOVE_NODATA		
NAVIGATION	FIRST_MESSAGE		
.	NEXT_MESSAGE		
STATE	WAITING		
.	READY		
.	PROCESSED		
.	EXPIRED		
SEQUENCE_DEVIATION	BEFORE		
.	TOP		
WAIT	FOREVER	BINARY_INTEGER	
.	NO_WAIT	BINARY_INTEGER	
DELAY	NO_DELAY		
EXPIRATION	NEVER		
NAMESPACE	NAMESPACE_AQ		
.	NAMESPACE_ANONYMOUS		
NTFN_GROUPING_CLASS	NFTN_GROUPING_CLASS_TIME	NUMBER	
NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE	NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_SUMMARY	NUMBER	
.	NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_LAST	NUMBER	

Table 24–1 (Cont.) Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Options	Type	Description
NTFN_GROUPING_ REPEAT_COUNT	NTFN_GROUPING_FOREVER	NUMBER	

Data Structures

Table 24–2 DBMS_AQ Data Structures

Data Structures	Description
Object Name on page 24-6	Names database objects
Type Name on page 24-6	Defines queue types
Oracle Database Advanced Queuing PL/SQL Callback on page 24-7	Specifies the user-defined PL/SQL procedure, defined in the database to be invoked on message notification

Object Name

The `object_name` data structure names database objects. It applies to queues, queue tables, agent names, and object types.

Syntax

```
object_name := VARCHAR2;
object_name := [schema_name.]name;
```

Usage Notes

Names for objects are specified by an optional schema name and a name. If the schema name is not specified, the current schema is assumed. The name must follow object name guidelines in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* with regard to reserved characters. Schema names, agent names, and object type names can be up to 30 bytes long. Queue names and queue table names can be up to 24 bytes long.

Type Name

The `type_name` data structure defines queue types.

Syntax

```
type_name := VARCHAR2;
type_name := object_type | "RAW";
```

Attributes

Table 24–3 Type Name Attributes

Attribute	Description
object_type	Maximum number of attributes in the object type is limited to 900.

Table 24–3 (Cont.) Type Name Attributes

Attribute	Description
"RAW"	To store payload of type RAW, Oracle Database Advanced Queuing creates a queue table with a LOB column as the payload repository. The theoretical maximum size of the message payload is the maximum amount of data that can be stored in a LOB column. However, the maximum size of the payload is determined by which programmatic environment you use to access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing. For PL/SQL, Java and precompilers the limit is 32K; for the OCI the limit is 4G. Because the PL/SQL enqueue and dequeue interfaces accept RAW buffers as the payload parameters you will be limited to 32K bytes. In OCI, the maximum size of your RAW data will be limited to the maximum amount of contiguous memory (as an OCIRaw is simply an array of bytes) that the OCI Object Cache can allocate. Typically, this will be at least 32K bytes and much larger in many cases. Because LOB columns are used for storing RAW payload, the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing administrator can choose the LOB tablespace and configure the LOB storage by constructing a LOB storage string in the storage_clause parameter during queue table creation time.

Oracle Database Advanced Queuing PL/SQL Callback

The plsqlcallback data structure specifies the user-defined PL/SQL procedure, defined in the database to be invoked on message notification.

Syntax

If a notification message is expected for a RAW payload enqueue, then the PL/SQL callback must have the following signature:

```
procedure plsqlcallback(
  context  IN  RAW,
  reginfo  IN  SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO,
  descr    IN  SYS.AQ$_DESCRIPTOR,
  payload  IN  RAW,
  payloadl IN  NUMBER);
```

Attributes

Table 24–4 Oracle Database Advanced Queuing PL/SQL Callback Attributes

Attribute	Description
context	Specifies the context for the callback function that was passed by dbms_aq.register. See AQ$_REG_INFO Type on page 271-14.
reginfo	See AQ$_REG_INFO Type on page 271-14.
descr	See AQ$_DESCRIPTOR Type on page 271-7
payload	If a notification message is expected for a raw payload enqueue then this contains the raw payload that was enqueued into a non persistent queue. In case of a persistent queue with raw payload this parameter will be null.
payloadl	Specifies the length of payload. If payload is null, payload1 = 0.

If the notification message is expected for an ADT payload enqueue, the PL/SQL callback must have the following signature:

```
procedure plsqlcallback(
  context  IN RAW,
```

```
reginfo  IN SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO,
descr    IN SYS.AQ$_DESCRIPTOR,
payload  IN VARCHAR2,
payloadl IN NUMBER);
```

Operational Notes

DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM Java Classes

Java interfaces are available for `DBMS_AQ` and `DBMS_AQADM`. The Java interfaces are provided in the `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/jlib/aqapi.jar`. Users are required to have `EXECUTE` privileges on the `DBMS_AQIN` package to use these interfaces.

Summary of DBMS_AQ Subprograms

Table 24–5 DBMS_AQ Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
BIND_AGENT Procedure on page 24-11	Creates an entry for an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent in the LDAP directory
DEQUEUE Procedure on page 24-12	Dequeues a message from the specified queue
DEQUEUE_ARRAY Function on page 24-15	Dequeues an array of messages from the specified queue
ENQUEUE Procedure on page 24-17	Adds a message to the specified queue
ENQUEUE_ARRAY Function on page 24-19	Adds an array of messages to the specified queue
LISTEN Procedures on page 24-20	Listen to one or more queues on behalf of a list of agents
POST Procedure on page 24-22	Posts to a anonymous subscription which allows all clients who are registered for the subscription to get notifications
REGISTER Procedure on page 24-23	Registers for message notifications
UNBIND_AGENT Procedure on page 24-24	Removes an entry for an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent from the LDAP directory
UNREGISTER Procedure on page 24-25	Unregisters a subscription which turns off notification

Note: `DBMS_AQ` does not have a purity level defined; therefore, you cannot call any procedure in this package from other procedures that have `RNDS`, `WNDS`, `RNPS` or `WNPS` constraints defined.

BIND_AGENT Procedure

This procedure creates an entry for an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent in the LDAP server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.BIND_AGENT(
   agent        IN SYS.AQ$_AGENT,
   certificate  IN VARCHAR2 default NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 24–6 BIND_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`agent`	Agent that is to be registered in LDAP server.
`certificate`	Location (LDAP distinguished name) of the "organizationalperson" entry in LDAP whose digital certificate (attribute `usercertificate`) is to be used for this agent. Example: "cn=OE, cn=ACME, cn=com" is a distinguished name for a OrganizationalPerson OE whose certificate will be used with the specified agent.

Usage Notes

In the LDAP server, digital certificates are stored as an attribute (`usercertificate`) of the `OrganizationalPerson` entity. The distinguished name for this `OrganizationalPerson` must be specified when binding the agent.

DEQUEUE Procedure

This procedure dequeues a message from the specified queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE (
   queue_name           IN      VARCHAR2,
   dequeue_options      IN      dequeue_options_t,
   message_properties   OUT     message_properties_t,
   payload              OUT     "<ADT_1>"
   msgid                OUT     RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 24–7 DEQUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_name`	Specifies the name of the queue.
`dequeue_options`	See DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type on page 271-19.
`message_properties`	See MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type on page 271-26.
`payload`	Not interpreted by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing. The payload must be specified according to the specification in the associated queue table. For the definition of *`type_name`* refer to Type Name on page 24-6.
`msgid`	System generated identification of the message.

Usage Notes

The search criteria for messages to be dequeued is determined by the following parameters in `dequeue_options`:

- `consumer_name`
- `msgid`

  `Msgid` uniquely identifies the message to be dequeued. Only messages in the `READY` state are dequeued unless `msgid` is specified.

- `correlation`

  Correlation identifiers are application-defined identifiers that are not interpreted by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing.

- `deq_condition`

  Dequeue condition is an expression based on the message properties, the message data properties and PL/SQL functions. A `deq_condition` is specified as a Boolean expression using syntax similar to the `WHERE` clause of a SQL query. This Boolean expression can include conditions on message properties, user data properties (object payloads only), and PL/SQL or SQL functions (as specified in the where clause of a SQL query). Message properties include `priority`, `corrid` and other columns in the queue table.

  To specify dequeue conditions on a message payload (object payload), use attributes of the object type in clauses. You must prefix each attribute with `tab.user_data` as a qualifier to indicate the specific column of the queue table that stores the payload.

Example: `tab.user_data.orderstatus='EXPRESS'`

The dequeue order is determined by the values specified at the time the queue table is created unless overridden by the `msgid` and correlation ID in `dequeue_options`.

The database-consistent read mechanism is applicable for queue operations. For example, a `BROWSE` call may not see a message that is enqueued after the beginning of the browsing transaction.

The default `NAVIGATION` parameter during dequeue is `NEXT_MESSAGE`. This means that subsequent dequeues will retrieve the messages from the queue based on the snapshot obtained in the first dequeue. In particular, a message that is enqueued after the first dequeue command will be processed only after processing all the remaining messages in the queue. This is usually sufficient when all the messages have already been enqueued into the queue, or when the queue does not have a priority-based ordering. However, applications must use the `FIRST_MESSAGE` navigation option when the first message in the queue needs to be processed by every dequeue command. This usually becomes necessary when a higher priority message arrives in the queue while messages already-enqueued are being processed.

Note: It may be more efficient to use the `FIRST_MESSAGE` navigation option when messages are concurrently enqueued. If the `FIRST_MESSAGE` option is not specified, Oracle Database Advanced Queuing continually generates the snapshot as of the first dequeue command, leading to poor performance. If the `FIRST_MESSAGE` option is specified, then Oracle Database Advanced Queuing uses a new snapshot for every dequeue command.

Messages enqueued in the same transaction into a queue that has been enabled for message grouping will form a group. If only one message is enqueued in the transaction, then this will effectively form a group of one message. There is no upper limit to the number of messages that can be grouped in a single transaction.

In queues that have not been enabled for message grouping, a dequeue in `LOCKED` or `REMOVE` mode locks only a single message. By contrast, a dequeue operation that seeks to dequeue a message that is part of a group will lock the entire group. This is useful when all the messages in a group need to be processed as an atomic unit.

When all the messages in a group have been dequeued, the dequeue returns an error indicating that all messages in the group have been processed. The application can then use the `NEXT_TRANSACTION` to start dequeuing messages from the next available group. In the event that no groups are available, the dequeue will time out after the specified `WAIT` period.

Using Secure Queues

For secure queues, you must specify `consumer_name` in the `dequeue_options` parameter. See DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type on page 271-19 for more information about `consumer_name`.

When you use secure queues, the following are required:

- You must have created a valid Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent using `DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_AQ_AGENT`. See CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-24.
- You must map the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent to a database user with dequeue privileges on the secure queue. Use `DBMS_AQADM.ENABLE_DB_ACCESS` to do this. See ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure on page 25-39.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about secure queues

DEQUEUE_ARRAY Function

This function dequeues an array of messages and returns them in the form of an array of payloads, an array of message properties and an array of message IDs. This function returns the number of messages successfully dequeued.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_ARRAY (
   queue_name                IN   VARCHAR2,
   dequeue_options           IN   dequeue_options_t,
   array_size                IN   pls_integer,
   message_properties_array  OUT  message_properties_array_t,
   payload_array             OUT  "<COLLECTION_1>",
   msgid_array               OUT  msgid_array_t,
   error_array               OUT  error_array_t)
RETURN pls_integer;
```

Parameters

Table 24–8 DEQUEUE_ARRAY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The queue name from which messages are dequeued (same as single-row dequeue).
dequeue_options	The set of options which will be applied to all messages in the array (same as single-row dequeue).
array_size	The number of elements to dequeue.
message_properties_array	A record containing an array corresponding to each message property. Each payload element has a corresponding set of message properties. See MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_ARRAY_T Type on page 271-30.
payload_array	An array of dequeued payload data. "<COLLECTION_1>" can be an associative array, varray or nested table in its PL/SQL representation.
msgid_array	An array of message IDs of the dequeued messages. See MSGID_ARRAY_T Type on page 271-31.
error_array	Currently not implemented

Usage Notes

A nonzero wait time, as specified in dequeue_options, is recognized only when there are no messages in the queue. If the queue contains messages that are eligible for dequeue, then the DEQUEUE_ARRAY function will dequeue up to array_size messages and return immediately.

Dequeue by message_id is not supported. See DEQUEUE Procedure on page 24-12 for more information on the navigation parameter. Existing NAVIGATION modes are supported. In addition, two new NAVIGATION modes are supported for queues enabled for message grouping:

- FIRST_MESSAGE_MULTI_GROUP
- NEXT_MESSAGE_MULTI_GROUP

See Also: ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type on page 271-22

For transaction grouped queues and ONE_GROUP navigation, messages are dequeued from a single transaction group only, subject to the array_size limit. In MULTI_GROUP navigation, messages are dequeued across multiple transaction groups, still subject to the array_size limit. ORA-25235 is returned to indicate the end of a transaction group.

DEQUEUE_ARRAY is not supported for buffered messages, but you can still use this procedure on individual buffered messages by setting array_size to one message.

ENQUEUE Procedure

This procedure adds a message to the specified queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE (
   queue_name           IN      VARCHAR2,
   enqueue_options      IN      enqueue_options_t,
   message_properties   IN      message_properties_t,
   payload              IN       "<ADT_1>",
   msgid                OUT     RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 24–9 ENQUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Specifies the name of the queue to which this message should be enqueued. The queue cannot be an exception queue.
enqueue_options	See ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type on page 271-22.
message_properties	See MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type on page 271-26.
payload	Not interpreted by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing. The payload must be specified according to the specification in the associated queue table. NULL is an acceptable parameter. For the definition of *type_name* refer to Type Name on page 24-6.
msgid	System generated identification of the message. This is a globally unique identifier that can be used to identify the message at dequeue time.

Usage Notes

The sequence_deviation parameter in enqueue_options can be used to change the order of processing between two messages. The identity of the other message, if any, is specified by the enqueue_options parameter relative_msgid. The relationship is identified by the sequence_deviation parameter.

Specifying sequence_deviation for a message introduces some restrictions for the delay and priority values that can be specified for this message. The delay of this message must be less than or equal to the delay of the message before which this message is to be enqueued. The priority of this message must be greater than or equal to the priority of the message before which this message is to be enqueued.

> **Note:** The sequence_deviation attribute has no effect in releases prior to Oracle Streams AQ 10g Release 1 (10.1) if message_grouping parameter of DBMS_AQADM subprograms is set to TRANSACTIONAL. The sequence deviation feature is deprecated in Oracle Streams AQ 10g Release 2 (10.2).

If a message is enqueued to a multiconsumer queue with no recipient, and if the queue has no subscribers (or rule-based subscribers that match this message), then Oracle error ORA_24033 is raised. This is a warning that the message will be discarded because there are no recipients or subscribers to whom it can be delivered.

Using Secure Queues

For secure queues, you must specify the `sender_id` in the `messages_properties` parameter. See MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type on page 271-26 for more information about `sender_id`.

When you use secure queues, the following are required:

- You must have created a valid Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent using `DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_AQ_AGENT`. See CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-24.
- You must map `sender_id` to a database user with enqueue privileges on the secure queue. Use `DBMS_AQADM.ENABLE_DB_ACCESS` to do this. See ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure on page 25-39.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about secure queues

ENQUEUE_ARRAY Function

This function enqueues an array of payloads using a corresponding array of message properties. The output will be an array of message IDs of the enqueued messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE_ARRAY (
   queue_name                IN   VARCHAR2,
   enqueue_options           IN   enqueue_options_t,
   array_size                IN   pls_integer,
   message_properties_array  IN   message_properties_array_t,
   payload_array             IN   "<COLLECTION_1>",
   msgid_array               OUT  msgid_array_t,
   error_array               OUT  error_array_t)
RETURN pls_integer;
```

Parameters

Table 24–10 ENQUEUE_ARRAY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The queue name in which messages are enqueued (same as single-row enqueue).
enqueue_options	See ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type on page 271-22.
array_size	The number of elements to enqueue.
message_properties_array	A record containing an array corresponding to each message property. For each property, the user must allocate array_size elements. See MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_ARRAY_T Type on page 271-30.
payload_array	An array of payload data. "<COLLECTION_1>" can be an associative array, VARRAY, or nested table in its PL/SQL representation.
msgid_array	An array of message IDs for the enqueued messages. If an error occurs for a particular message, then its corresponding message ID is null. See MSGID_ARRAY_T Type on page 271-31.
error_array	Currently not implemented

Usage Notes

ENQUEUE_ARRAY is not supported for buffered messages, but you can still use this procedure on individual buffered messages by setting array_size to one message.

LISTEN Procedures

This procedure listens on one or more queues on behalf of a list of agents. The address field of the agent indicates the queue the agent wants to monitor. Only local queues are supported as addresses. Protocol is reserved for future use.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.LISTEN (
   agent_list            IN    AQ$_AGENT_LIST_T,
   wait                  IN    BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_AQ.FOREVER,
   agent                 OUT   SYS.AQ$_AGENT);

DBMS_AQ.LISTEN (
   agent_list             IN   AQ$_AGENT_LIST_T,
   wait                   IN   BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT FOREVER,
   listen_delivery_mode   IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT,
   agent                  OUT  SYS.AQ$_AGENT,
   message_delivery_mode  OUT  PLS_INTEGER);

TYPE aq$_agent_list_t IS TABLE of aq$_agent INDEXED BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE aq$_agent_list_t IS TABLE of aq$_agent INDEXED BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 24–11 LISTEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_list	List of agents to listen for
wait	Time out for the listen call in seconds. By default, the call will block forever.
listen_delivery_mode	The caller specifies whether it is interested in persistent, buffered messages or both types of messages, specifying a delivery mode of DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT or DBMS_AQ.BUFFERED or DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT_OR_BUFFERED
agent	Agent with a message available for consumption
message_delivery_mode	Returns the message type along with the queue and consumer for which there is a message

Usage Notes

If agent-address is a multiconsumer queue, then agent-name is mandatory. For single-consumer queues, agent-name must not be specified.

This procedure takes a list of agents as an argument. You specify the queue to be monitored in the address field of each agent listed. You also must specify the name of the agent when monitoring multiconsumer queues. For single-consumer queues, an agent name must not be specified. Only local queues are supported as addresses. Protocol is reserved for future use.

This is a blocking call that returns when there is a message ready for consumption for an agent in the list. If there are messages for more than one agent, only the first agent listed is returned. If there are no messages found when the wait time expires, an error is raised.

A successful return from the LISTEN call is only an indication that there is a message for one of the listed agents in one the specified queues. The interested agent must still dequeue the relevant message.

Note: You cannot call LISTEN on nonpersistent queues.

POST Procedure

This procedure posts to a list of anonymous subscriptions that allows all clients who are registered for the subscriptions to get notifications.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.POST (
  post_list       IN  SYS.AQ$_POST_INFO_LIST,
  post_count      IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 24–12 POST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
post_list	Specifies the list of anonymous subscriptions to which you want to post. It is a list of AQ$_POST_INFO_LIST Type.
post_count	Specifies the number of entries in the post_list.

Usage Notes

This procedure is used to post to anonymous subscriptions which allows all clients who are registered for the subscriptions to get notifications. Several subscriptions can be posted to at one time.

REGISTER Procedure

This procedure registers an e-mail address, user-defined PL/SQL procedure, or HTTP URL for message notification.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.REGISTER (
   reg_list     IN  SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST,
   count        IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 24–13 REGISTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
reg_list	Specifies the list of subscriptions to which you want to register for message notifications. It is a list of AQ$_REG_INFO Type.
count	Specifies the number of entries in the reg_list.

Usage Notes

- This procedure is used to register for notifications. You can specify an e-mail address to which message notifications are sent, register a procedure to be invoked on a notification, or register an HTTP URL to which the notification is posted. Interest in several subscriptions can be registered at one time.
- The procedure can also be used to register for grouping notifications using five grouping attributes:
  - Class – grouping criterion (currently only TIME criterion is supported)
  - Value – the value of the grouping criterion (currently only time in seconds for criterion TIME)
  - Type – summary or last, also contains count of notifications received in group (for AQ namespace only, not for DBCHANGE namespace)
  - Repeat count – how many times to perform grouping (Default is FOREVER)
  - Start time – when to start grouping (Default is current time)
- If you register for e-mail notifications, you should set the host name and port name for the SMTP server that will be used by the database to send e-mail notifications. If required, you should set the send-from e-mail address, which is set by the database as the sent from field. You need a Java-enabled database to use this feature.
- If you register for HTTP notifications, you may want to set the host name and port number for the proxy server and a list of no-proxy domains that will be used by the database to post HTTP notifications.

See Also: Chapter 26, "DBMS_AQELM" for more information on e-mail and HTTP notifications

UNBIND_AGENT Procedure

This procedure removes the entry for an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent from the LDAP server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.UNBIND_AGENT(
   agent     IN SYS.AQ$_AGENT);
```

Parameters

Table 24–14 BIND_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent	Agent that is to be removed from the LDAP server

UNREGISTER Procedure

This procedure unregisters a subscription which turns off notifications.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.UNREGISTER (
   reg_list     IN  SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST,
   reg_count    IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 24–15 UNREGISTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`reg_list`	Specifies the list of subscriptions to which you want to register for message notifications. It is a list of AQ$_REG_INFO Type.
`reg_count`	Specifies the number of entries in the `reg_list`.

Usage Notes

This procedure is used to unregister a subscription which turns off notifications. Several subscriptions can be unregistered from at one time.

25

DBMS_AQADM

The DBMS_AQADM package provides procedures to manage Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) configuration and administration information.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*
- Chapter 271, "Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) Types" for information about the TYPEs to use with DBMS_AQADM

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_AQADM

This section contains the following topics.

Security Model

Initially, only SYS and SYSTEM have execution privilege for the procedures in DBMS_AQADM and DBMS_AQ. Users who have been granted EXECUTE rights to DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM are able to create, manage, and use queues in their own schemas. The MANAGE_ANY AQ system privilege is used to create and manage queues in other schemas and can be granted and revoked through DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE and DBMS_AQADM.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE respectively.

User Roles

The database administrator has the option of granting the system privileges ENQUEUE_ANY and DEQUEUE_ANY, exercising DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE and DBMS_AQADM.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE directly to a database user, if you want the user to have this level of control.

The application developer gives rights to a queue by granting and revoking privileges at the object level by exercising DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE and DBMS_AQADM.REVOKE_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE.

See Also:
- Chapter 24, "DBMS_AQ."
- *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information on queue privileges and access control.

Security Required for Propagation

Propagation jobs are owned by SYS, but the propagation occurs in the security context of the queue table owner. Previously propagation jobs were owned by the user scheduling propagation, and propagation occurred in the security context of the user setting up the propagation schedule. The queue table owner must be granted EXECUTE privileges on the DBMS_AQADM package. Otherwise, the Oracle Database snapshot processes do not propagate and generate trace files with the error identifier SYS.DBMS_AQADM not defined. Private database links owned by the queue table owner can be used for propagation. The username specified in the connection string must have EXECUTE access on the DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM packages on the remote database.

See Also: *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information on security required for propagation.

Queue Table Migration

The MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE procedure requires that the EXECUTE privilege on DBMS_AQADM be granted to the queue table owner, who is probably an ordinary queue user. If you do not want ordinary queue users to be able to create and drop queues and queue tables, add and delete subscribers, and so forth, then you must revoke the EXECUTE privilege as soon as the migration is done.

See Also:
- "MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure" on page 25-47.
- *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information on granting Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges.

Constants

When using enumerated constants, such as INFINITE, TRANSACTIONAL, or NORMAL_QUEUE, the symbol must be specified with the scope of the packages defining it. All types associated with the administrative interfaces must be prepended with DBMS_AQADM. For example: DBMS_AQADM.NORMAL_QUEUE.

Table 25–1 Enumerated Types in the Administrative Interface

Parameter	Options
retention	0, 1, 2...INFINITE
message_grouping	TRANSACTIONAL, NONE
queue_type	NORMAL_QUEUE, EXCEPTION_QUEUE, NON_PERSISTENT_QUEUE

See Also: For more information on the Java classes and data structures used in both DBMS_AQ and DBMS_AQADM, see the DBMS_AQ package.

Subprogram Groups

This DBMS_AQADM package is made up of the following subprogram groups:

Queue Table Subprograms

Table 25–2 Queue Table Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-22	Alters the existing properties of a queue table
CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-30	Creates a queue table for messages of a predefined type
DROP_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-38	Drops an existing queue table
ENABLE_JMS_TYPES Procedure on page 25-40	A precondition for the enqueue of JMS types and XML types
MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-47	Upgrades an 8.0-compatible queue table to an 8.1-compatible or higher queue table, or downgrades an 8.1-compatible or higher queue table to an 8.0-compatible queue table
PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-48	Purges messages from queue tables

Privilege Subprograms

Table 25–3 Privilege Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-45	Grants privileges on a queue to users and roles
GRANT_SYSTEM_ PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-46	Grants Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges to users and roles
REVOKE_QUEUE_ PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-52	Revokes privileges on a queue from users and roles
REVOKE_SYSTEM_ PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-53	Revokes Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges from users and roles

Queue Subprograms

Table 25–4 Queue Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ALTER_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-21	Alters existing properties of a queue
CREATE_NP_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-25	Creates a nonpersistent `RAW` queue
CREATE_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-26	Creates a queue in the specified queue table
CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-28	Creates a queue and its queue table for a sharded queue all together.
DROP_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-29	Drops an existing sharded queue from the database queuing system
DROP_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-37	Drops an existing queue
QUEUE_SUBSCRIBERS Function on page 25-50	Returns the subscribers to an 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queue in the PL/SQL index by table collection type `DBMS_AQADM.AQ$_subscriber_list_t`
START_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-59	Enables the specified queue for enqueuing or dequeuing
STOP_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-60	Disables enqueuing or dequeuing on the specified queue

Subscriber Subprograms

Table 25–5 Subscriber Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 25-18	Adds a default subscriber to a queue
ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 25-23	Alters existing properties of a subscriber to a specified queue
REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 25-51	Removes a default subscriber from a queue

Notification Subprograms

Table 25–6 Notification Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
GET_WATERMARK Procedure on page 25-42	Retrieves the value of watermark set by the SET_WATERMARK Procedure
GET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-43	Retrieves the value of Oracle Database Advanced Queuing maximum streams pool memory limit
GET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-44	Retrieves the value of Oracle Database Advanced Queuing minimum streams pool memory limit
SET_WATERMARK Procedure on page 25-56	Used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing notification to specify and limit memory use
SET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-57	Used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to specify and limit maximum streams pool memory use
SET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-58	used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to specify and limit minimum streams pool memory use

Propagation Subprograms

Table 25–7 Propagation Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 25-20	Alters parameters for a propagation schedule
DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 25-35	Disables a propagation schedule
ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 25-41	Enables a previously disabled propagation schedule
SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 25-54	Schedules propagation of messages from a queue to a destination identified by a specific database link
UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 25-61	Unschedules previously scheduled propagation of messages from a queue to a destination identified by a specific database link
VERIFY_QUEUE_TYPES Procedure on page 25-62	Verifies that the source and destination queues have identical types

Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Agent Subprograms

Table 25–8 Oracle Streams AQ Agent Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ALTER_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-19	Alters an agent registered for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access, and an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent that accesses secure queues
CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-24	Registers an agent for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access using HTTP/SMTP protocols, and creates an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent to access secure queues
DISABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure on page 25-34	Revokes the privileges of a specific database user from an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent
DROP_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-36	Drops an agent that was previously registered for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access
ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure on page 25-39	Grants an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent the privileges of a specific database user

Alias Subprograms

Table 25–9 Alias Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ADD_ALIAS_TO_LDAP Procedure on page 25-17	Creates an alias for a queue, agent, or a JMS ConnectionFactory in LDAP
DEL_ALIAS_FROM_LDAP Procedure on page 25-33	Drops an alias for a queue, agent, or JMS ConnectionFactory in LDAP

Summary of DBMS_AQADM Subprograms

Table 25–10 DBMS_AQADM Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ADD_ALIAS_TO_LDAP Procedure on page 25-17	Creates an alias for a queue, agent, or a JMS ConnectionFactory in LDAP
ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 25-18	Adds a default subscriber to a queue
ALTER_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-19	Alters an agent registered for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access, and an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent that accesses secure queues
ALTER_PROPAGATION_ SCHEDULE Procedure on page 25-20	Alters parameters for a propagation schedule
ALTER_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-21	Alters existing properties of a queue
ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-22	Alters the existing properties of a queue table
ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 25-23	Alters existing properties of a subscriber to a specified queue
CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-24	Registers an agent for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access using HTTP/SMTP protocols, and creates an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent to access secure queues
CREATE_NP_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-25	Creates a nonpersistent `RAW` queue
CREATE_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-26	Creates a queue in the specified queue table
CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-28	Creates a queue and its queue table for a sharded queue all together.
CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-30	Creates a queue table for messages of a predefined type
DROP_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-29	Drops an existing sharded queue from the database queuing system
DEL_ALIAS_FROM_LDAP Procedure on page 25-33	Drops an alias for a queue, agent, or JMS ConnectionFactory in LDAP
DISABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure on page 25-34	Revokes the privileges of a specific database user from an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent
DISABLE_PROPAGATION_ SCHEDULE Procedure on page 25-35	Disables a propagation schedule
DROP_AQ_AGENT Procedure on page 25-36	Drops an agent that was previously registered for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access
DROP_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-37	Drops an existing queue
DROP_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-38	Drops an existing queue table
ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure on page 25-39	Grants an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent the privileges of a specific database user

Table 25–10 (Cont.) DBMS_AQADM Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ENABLE_JMS_TYPES Procedure on page 25-40	A precondition for the enqueue of JMS types and XML types
ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 25-41	Enables a previously disabled propagation schedule
GET_WATERMARK Procedure on page 25-42	Retrieves the value of watermark set by the `SET_WATERMARK` Procedure
GET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-43	Retrieves the value of Oracle Database Advanced Queuing maximum streams pool memory limit
GET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-44	Retrieves the value of Oracle Database Advanced Queuing minimum streams pool memory limit
GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-45	Grants privileges on a queue to users and roles
GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-46	Grants Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges to users and roles
MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-47	Upgrades an 8.0-compatible queue table to an 8.1-compatible or higher queue table, or downgrades an 8.1-compatible or higher queue table to an 8.0-compatible queue table
PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-48	Purges messages from queue tables
QUEUE_SUBSCRIBERS Function on page 25-50	Returns the subscribers to an 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queue in the PL/SQL index by table collection type `DBMS_AQADM.AQ$_subscriber_list_t`
REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 25-51	Removes a default subscriber from a queue
REVOKE_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-52	Revokes privileges on a queue from users and roles
REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 25-53	Revokes Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges from users and roles
SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 25-54	Schedules propagation of messages from a queue to a destination identified by a specific database link
SET_WATERMARK Procedure on page 25-56	Used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing notification to specify and limit memory use
SET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-57	Used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to specify and limit maximum streams pool memory use
SET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure on page 25-58	used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to specify and limit minimum streams pool memory use
START_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-59	Enables the specified queue for enqueuing or dequeuing
STOP_QUEUE Procedure on page 25-60	Disables enqueuing or dequeuing on the specified queue
UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 25-61	Unschedules previously scheduled propagation of messages from a queue to a destination identified by a specific database link

Table 25–10 (Cont.) DBMS_AQADM Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
VERIFY_QUEUE_TYPES Procedure on page 25-62	Verifies that the source and destination queues have identical types

ADD_ALIAS_TO_LDAP Procedure

This procedure creates an alias for a queue, agent, or a JMS ConnectionFactory in LDAP. The alias will be placed directly under the database server's distinguished name in LDAP hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ADD_ALIAS_TO_LDAP(
   alias          IN VARCHAR2,
   obj_location   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–11 ADD_ALIAS_TO_LDAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`alias`	Name of the alias. Example: `west_shipping`.
`obj_location`	The distinguished name of the object (queue, agent or connection factory) to which `alias` refers.

Usage Notes

This method can be used to create aliases for queues, agents, and JMS ConnectionFactory objects. These object must exist before the alias is created. These aliases can be used for JNDI lookup in JMS and Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access.

ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure adds a default subscriber to a queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ADD_SUBSCRIBER (
   queue_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   subscriber      IN    sys.aq$_agent,
   rule            IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   transformation  IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
   queue_to_queue  IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   delivery_mode   IN    PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT);
```

Parameters

Table 25–12 ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue.
subscriber	Agent on whose behalf the subscription is being defined.
rule	A conditional expression based on the message properties, the message data properties and PL/SQL functions. A rule is specified as a Boolean expression using syntax similar to the WHERE clause of a SQL query. This Boolean expression can include conditions on message properties, user data properties (object payloads only), and PL/SQL or SQL functions (as specified in the where clause of a SQL query). Currently supported message properties are priority and corrid. To specify rules on a message payload (object payload), use attributes of the object type in clauses. You must prefix each attribute with tab.user_data as a qualifier to indicate the specific column of the queue table that stores the payload. The rule parameter cannot exceed 4000 characters.
transformation	Specifies a transformation that will be applied when this subscriber dequeues the message. The source type of the transformation must match the type of the queue. If the subscriber is remote, then the transformation is applied before propagation to the remote queue.
queue_to_queue	If TRUE, propagation is from queue-to-queue.
delivery_mode	The administrator may specify one of DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT, DBMS_AQADM.BUFFERED, or DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT_OR_BUFFERED for the delivery mode of the messages the subscriber is interested in. This parameter will not be modifiable by ALTER_SUBSCRIBER.

Usage Notes

A program can enqueue messages to a specific list of recipients or to the default list of subscribers. This operation only succeeds on queues that allow multiple consumers. This operation takes effect immediately, and the containing transaction is committed. Enqueue requests that are executed after the completion of this call will reflect the new behavior.

Any string within the rule must be quoted:

```
rule   => 'PRIORITY <= 3 AND CORRID =  ''FROM JAPAN'''
```

Note that these are all single quotation marks.

ALTER_AQ_AGENT Procedure

This procedure alters an agent registered for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access. It is also used to alter an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent that accesses secure queues.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about secure queues

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_AQ_AGENT (
  agent_name                IN VARCHAR2,
  certificate_location      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  enable_http               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  enable_smtp               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  enable_anyp               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE )
```

Parameters

Table 25–13 ALTER_AQ_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_name	Specifies the username of the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.
certification_location	Agent's certificate location in LDAP (default is NULL). If the agent is allowed to access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through SMTP, then its certificate must be registered in LDAP. For access through HTTP, the certificate location is not required.
enable_http	TRUE means the agent can access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through HTTP. FALSE means the agent cannot access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through HTTP.
enable_smtp	TRUE means the agent can access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through SMTP (e-mail). FALSE means the agent cannot access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through SMTP.
enable_anyp	TRUE means the agent can access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through any protocol (HTTP or SMTP).

ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure alters parameters for a propagation schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE (
   queue_name           IN    VARCHAR2,
   destination          IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   duration             IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   next_time            IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   latency              IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT 60,
   destination_queue    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–14 ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the source queue whose messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the user.
destination	Destination database link. Messages in the source queue for recipients at this destination are propagated. If it is NULL, then the destination is the local database and messages are propagated to other queues in the local database. The length of this field is currently limited to 128 bytes, and if the name is not fully qualified, then the default domain name is used.
duration	Duration of the propagation window in seconds. A NULL value means the propagation window is forever or until the propagation is unscheduled.
next_time	Date function to compute the start of the next propagation window from the end of the current window. If this value is NULL, then propagation is stopped at the end of the current window. For example, to start the window at the same time every day, next_time should be specified as SYSDATE + 1 - duration/86400.
latency	Maximum wait, in seconds, in the propagation window for a message to be propagated after it is enqueued. The default value is 60. Caution: if latency is not specified for this call, then latency will over-write any existing value with the default value. For example, if the latency is 60 seconds and there are no messages to be propagated during the propagation window, then messages from that queue for the destination are not propagated for at least 60 more seconds. It will be at least 60 seconds before the queue will be checked again for messages to be propagated for the specified destination. If the latency is 600, then the queue will not be checked for 10 minutes and if the latency is 0, then a job queue process will be waiting for messages to be enqueued for the destination and as soon as a message is enqueued it will be propagated.
destination_queue	Name of the target queue to which messages are to be propagated in the form of a dblink

ALTER_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure alters existing properties of a queue. The parameters max_retries, retention_time, and retry_delay are not supported for nonpersistent queues.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_QUEUE (
   queue_name        IN    VARCHAR2,
   max_retries       IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   retry_delay       IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   retention_time    IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   auto_commit       IN    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   comment           IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–15 ALTER_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue that is to be altered
max_retries	Limits the number of times a dequeue with REMOVE mode can be attempted on a message. The maximum value of max_retries is 2**31 -1. A message is moved to an exception queue if RETRY_COUNT is greater than MAX_RETRIES. RETRY_COUNT is incremented when the application issues a rollback after executing the dequeue. If a dequeue transaction fails because the server process dies (including ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION) or SHUTDOWN ABORT on the instance, then RETRY_COUNT is not incremented. Note that max_retries is supported for all single consumer queues and 8.1-compatible or higher multiconsumer queues but not for 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queues.
retry_delay	Delay time in seconds before this message is scheduled for processing again after an application rollback. The default is NULL, which means that the value will not be altered. Note that retry_delay is supported for single consumer queues and 8.1-compatible or higher multiconsumer queues but not for 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queues.
retention_time	Retention time in seconds for which a message is retained in the queue table after being dequeued. The default is NULL, which means that the value will not be altered.
auto_commit	TRUE causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the ALTER_QUEUE operation is carried out. The ALTER_QUEUE operation become persistent when the call returns. This is the default. FALSE means the operation is part of the current transaction and becomes persistent only when the caller enters a commit. Caution: This parameter has been deprecated.
comment	User-specified description of the queue. This user comment is added to the queue catalog. The default value is NULL, which means that the value will not be changed.

ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure alters the existing properties of a queue table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE (
   queue_table          IN   VARCHAR2,
   comment              IN   VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   primary_instance     IN   BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   secondary_instance   IN   BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–16 ALTER_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_table	Name of a queue table to be created.
comment	Modifies the user-specified description of the queue table. This user comment is added to the queue catalog. The default value is NULL which means that the value will not be changed.
primary_instance	This is the primary owner of the queue table. Queue monitor scheduling and propagation for the queues in the queue table will be done in this instance. The default value is NULL, which means that the current value will not be changed.
secondary_instance	The queue table fails over to the secondary instance if the primary instance is not available. The default value is NULL, which means that the current value will not be changed.

ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure alters existing properties of a subscriber to a specified queue. Only the rule can be altered.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ALTER_SUBSCRIBER (
   queue_name     IN    VARCHAR2,
   subscriber     IN    sys.aq$_agent,
   rule           IN    VARCHAR2
   transformation IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–17 ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_name`	Name of the queue.
`subscriber`	Agent on whose behalf the subscription is being altered. See "AQ$_ AGENT Type" on page 271-5.
`rule`	A conditional expression based on the message properties, the message data properties and PL/SQL functions. The rule parameter cannot exceed 4000 characters. To eliminate the rule, set the rule parameter to `NULL`.
`transformation`	Specifies a transformation that will be applied when this subscriber dequeues the message. The source type of the transformation must match the type of the queue. If the subscriber is remote, then the transformation is applied before propagation to the remote queue.

Usage Notes

This procedure alters both the rule and the transformation for the subscriber. If you want to retain the existing value for either of them, you must specify its old value. The current values for rule and transformation for a subscriber can be obtained from the *schema*.AQ$*queue_table*_R and *schema*.AQ$*queue_table*_S views.

CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure

This procedure registers an agent for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access using HTTP/SMTP protocols. It is also used to create an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing agent to access secure queues.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about secure queues

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_AQ_AGENT (
  agent_name                IN VARCHAR2,
  certificate_location      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  enable_http               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  enable_smtp               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  enable_anyp               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE )
```

Parameters

Table 25–18 CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_name	Specifies the username of the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.
certification_location	Agent's certificate location in LDAP (default is NULL). If the agent is allowed to access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through SMTP, then its certificate must be registered in LDAP. For access through HTTP, the certificate location is not required.
enable_http	TRUE means the agent can access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through HTTP. FALSE means the agent cannot access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through HTTP.
enable_smtp	TRUE means the agent can access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through SMTP (e-mail). FALSE means the agent cannot access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through SMTP.
enable_anyp	TRUE means the agent can access Oracle Database Advanced Queuing through any protocol (HTTP or SMTP).

Usage Notes

The SYS.AQ$INTERNET_USERS view has a list of all Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agents.

CREATE_NP_QUEUE Procedure

> **Note:** nonpersistent queues are deprecated as of Release 10gR2. Oracle recommends using buffered messaging.

This procedure creates a nonpersistent `RAW` queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_NP_QUEUE (
   queue_name              IN        VARCHAR2,
   multiple_consumers      IN        BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   comment                 IN        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–19 CREATE_NP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_name`	Name of the nonpersistent queue that is to be created. The name must be unique within a schema and must follow object name guidelines in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference.*
`multiple_consumers`	`FALSE` means queues created in the table can only have one consumer for each message. This is the default. `TRUE` means queues created in the table can have multiple consumers for each message. Note that this parameter is distinguished at the queue level, because a nonpersistent queue does not inherit this characteristic from any user-created queue table.
`comment`	User-specified description of the queue. This user comment is added to the queue catalog.

Usage Notes

The queue may be either single-consumer or multiconsumer queue. All queue names must be unique within a schema. The queues are created in a 8.1-compatible or higher system-created queue table (`AQ$_MEM_SC` or `AQ$_MEM_MC`) in the same schema as that specified by the queue name.

If the queue name does not specify a schema name, the queue is created in the login user's schema. After a queue is created with `CREATE_NP_QUEUE`, it can be enabled by calling `START_QUEUE`. By default, the queue is created with both enqueue and dequeue disabled.

You cannot dequeue from a nonpersistent queue. The only way to retrieve a message from a nonpersistent queue is by using the OCI notification mechanism. You cannot invoke the `LISTEN` call on a nonpersistent queue.

CREATE_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure creates a queue in the specified queue table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE (
   queue_name          IN       VARCHAR2,
   queue_table         IN       VARCHAR2,
   queue_type          IN       BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NORMAL_QUEUE,
   max_retries         IN       NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL,
   retry_delay         IN       NUMBER         DEFAULT 0,
   retention_time      IN       NUMBER         DEFAULT 0,
   dependency_tracking IN       BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
   comment             IN       VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   auto_commit         IN       BOOLEAN        DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–20 CREATE_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue that is to be created. The name must be unique within a schema and must follow object name guidelines in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* with regard to reserved characters.
queue_table	Name of the queue table that will contain the queue.
queue_type	Specifies whether the queue being created is an exception queue or a normal queue. NORMAL_QUEUE means the queue is a normal queue. This is the default. EXCEPTION_QUEUE means it is an exception queue. Only the dequeue operation is allowed on the exception queue.
max_retries	Limits the number of times a dequeue with the REMOVE mode can be attempted on a message. The maximum value of max_retries is 2**31 -1. A message is moved to an exception queue if RETRY_COUNT is greater than MAX_RETRIES. RETRY_COUNT is incremented when the application issues a rollback after executing the dequeue. If a dequeue transaction fails because the server process dies (including ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION) or SHUTDOWN ABORT on the instance, then RETRY_COUNT is not incremented. Note that max_retries is supported for all single consumer queues and 8.1-compatible or higher multiconsumer queues but not for 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queues.
retry_delay	Delay time, in seconds, before this message is scheduled for processing again after an application rollback. The default is 0, which means the message can be retried as soon as possible. This parameter has no effect if max_retries is set to 0. Note that retry_delay is supported for single consumer queues and 8.1-compatible or higher multiconsumer queues but not for 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queues.
retention_time	Number of seconds for which a message is retained in the queue table after being dequeued from the queue. INFINITE means the message is retained forever. NUMBER is the number of seconds for which to retain the messages. The default is 0, no retention.

Table 25–20 (Cont.) CREATE_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dependency_tracking	Reserved for future use. FALSE is the default. TRUE is not permitted in this release.
comment	User-specified description of the queue. This user comment is added to the queue catalog.
auto_commit	TRUE causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the CREATE_QUEUE operation is carried out. The CREATE_QUEUE operation becomes persistent when the call returns. This is the default. FALSE means the operation is part of the current transaction and becomes persistent only when the caller enters a commit. Caution: This parameter has been deprecated.

Usage Notes

All queue names must be unique within a schema. After a queue is created with CREATE_QUEUE, it can be enabled by calling START_QUEUE. By default, the queue is created with both enqueue and dequeue disabled.

CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure

CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE is a new API in 12*c* Release 1 (12.1) to create a queue and its queue table as appropriate for a JMS sharded queue. This API cannot be used to create unsharded queues. JMS sharded queues must be created using this single integrated API that will automatically set AQ properties as needed for JMS.

JMS Sharded queues may be either a single consumer or a multi-consumer queue.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE (
    queue_name              IN VARCHAR2,
    storage_clause          IN VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
    multiple_consumers      IN BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
    max_retries             IN NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL,
    comment                 IN VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–21 CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	This required parameter specifies the name of the new queue.
storage_clause	The storage parameter is included in the CREATE TABLE statement when the queue table is created. The storage_clause argument can take any text that can be used in a standard CREATE TABLE storage_clause argument.The storage parameter can be made up of any combinations of the following parameters: PCTFREE, PCTUSED, INITRANS, MAXTRANS, TABLESPACE, LOB, and a table storage clause. If a tablespace is not specified here, then the queue table and all its related objects are created in the default user tablespace. If a tablespace is specified here, then the queue table and all its related objects are created in the tablespace specified in the storage clause. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for the usage of these parameters.
multiple_consumers	FALSE means queues can only have one consumer for each message. This is the default. TRUE means queues created in the table can have multiple consumers for each message.
max_retries	This optional parameter limits the number of times that a dequeue can reattempted on a message after a failure. The maximum value of max_retries is 2**31 -1. After the retry limit has been exceeded, the message will be purged from the queue. RETRY_COUNT is incremented when the application issues a rollback after executing the dequeue. If a dequeue transaction fails because the server process dies (including ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION) or SHUTDOWN ABORT on the instance, then RETRY_COUNT is not incremented.
comment	This optional parameter is a user-specified description of the queue table. This user comment is added to the queue catalog.

DROP_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure drops an existing sharded queue from the database queuing system. You must stop the queue before calling DROP_SHARDED_QUEUE. User must stop the queue explicitly if force is set to FALSE before calling DROP_SHARDED_QUEUE. If force is set to TRUE then queue will be stopped internally and then dropped.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.DROP_SHARDED_QUEUE(
       queue_name IN VARCHAR2,
       force      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE )
```

Parameters

Table 25–22 CREATE_SHARDED_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	This required parameter specifies the name of the sharded queue.
force	The sharded queue is dropped even if the queue is not stopped.

CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a queue table for messages of a predefined type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE (
   queue_table          IN      VARCHAR2,
   queue_payload_type   IN      VARCHAR2,
   storage_clause       IN      VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   sort_list            IN      VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   multiple_consumers   IN      BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
   message_grouping     IN      BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NONE,
   comment              IN      VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   auto_commit          IN      BOOLEAN         DEFAULT TRUE,
   primary_instance     IN      BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT 0,
   secondary_instance   IN      BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT 0,
   compatible           IN      VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   secure               IN      BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–23 CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_table	Name of a queue table to be created
queue_payload_type	Type of the user data stored. See Type Name on page 24-6 for valid values for this parameter.
storage_clause	Storage parameter. The storage parameter is included in the CREATE TABLE statement when the queue table is created. The storage_clause argument can take any text that can be used in a standard CREATE TABLE storage_clause argument.The storage parameter can be made up of any combinations of the following parameters: PCTFREE, PCTUSED, INITRANS, MAXTRANS, TABLESPACE, LOB, and a table storage clause. If a tablespace is not specified here, then the queue table and all its related objects are created in the default user tablespace. If a tablespace is specified here, then the queue table and all its related objects are created in the tablespace specified in the storage clause. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for the usage of these parameters.

Table 25–23 (Cont.) CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sort_list	The columns to be used as the sort key in ascending order. This parameter has the following format: '*sort_column_1*,*sort_column_2*' The allowed column names are priority, enq_time, and commit_time.If both columns are specified, then *sort_column_1* defines the most significant order. After a queue table is created with a specific ordering mechanism, all queues in the queue table inherit the same defaults. The order of a queue table cannot be altered after the queue table has been created. If no sort list is specified, then all the queues in this queue table are sorted by the enqueue time in ascending order. This order is equivalent to FIFO order. Even with the default ordering defined, a dequeuer is allowed to choose a message to dequeue by specifying its msgid or correlation. msgid, correlation, and sequence_deviation take precedence over the default dequeueing order, if they are specified. When commit_time is specified for the sort_list parameter the resulting queue table uses commit-time ordering. See "Commit-Time Queues" in *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about commit-time ordering. See also "Priority and Ordering of Messages" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for information about message ordering in Oracle Database Advanced Queuing.
multiple_consumers	FALSE means queues created in the table can only have one consumer for each message. This is the default. TRUE means queues created in the table can have multiple consumers for each message.
message_grouping	Message grouping behavior for queues created in the table. NONE means each message is treated individually. TRANSACTIONAL means messages enqueued as part of one transaction are considered part of the same group and can be dequeued as a group of related messages.
comment	User-specified description of the queue table. This user comment is added to the queue catalog.
auto_commit	TRUE causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE operation is carried out. The CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE operation becomes persistent when the call returns. This is the default. FALSE means the operation is part of the current transaction and becomes persistent only when the caller enters a commit. Note: This parameter has been deprecated.
primary_instance	The primary owner of the queue table. Queue monitor scheduling and propagation for the queues in the queue table are done in this instance. The default value for primary instance is 0, which means queue monitor scheduling and propagation will be done in any available instance.

Table 25–23 (Cont.) CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
secondary_instance	The queue table fails over to the secondary instance if the primary instance is not available. The default value is 0, which means that the queue table will fail over to any available instance.
compatible	The lowest database version with which the queue is compatible. Currently the possible values are either 8.0, 8.1, or 10.0. If the database is in 10.1-compatible mode, the default value is 10.0. If the database is in 8.1-compatible or 9.2-compatible mode, the default value is 8.1. If the database is in 8.0 compatible mode, the default value is 8.0.
secure	This parameter must be set to TRUE if you want to use the queue table for secure queues. Secure queues are queues for which AQ agents must be associated explicitly with one or more database users who can perform queue operations, such as enqueue and dequeue. The owner of a secure queue can perform all queue operations on the queue, but other users cannot perform queue operations on a secure queue, unless they are configured as secure queue users.

Usage Notes

The sort keys for dequeue ordering, if any, must be defined at table creation time. The following objects are created at this time:

- aq$_*queue_table_name*_e, a default exception queue associated with the queue table
- aq$*queue_table_name*, a read-only view, which is used by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing applications for querying queue data
- aq$_*queue_table_name*_t, an index (or an index organized table (IOT) in the case of multiple consumer queues) for the queue monitor operations
- aq$_*queue_table_name*_i, an index (or an index organized table in the case of multiple consumer queues) for dequeue operations

For 8.1-compatible or higher queue tables, the following index-organized tables are created:

- aq$_*queue_table_name*_s, a table for storing information about the subscribers
- aq$_*queue_table_name*_r, a table for storing information about rules on subscriptions

aq$_*queue_table_name*_h, an index-organized table for storing the dequeue history data

CLOB, BLOB, and BFILE are valid attributes for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing object type payloads. However, only CLOB and BLOB can be propagated using Oracle Database Advanced Queuing propagation in Oracle8*i* release 8.1.5 or later. See the *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information.

The default value of the compatible parameter depends on the database compatibility mode in the init.ora. If the database is in 10.1-compatible mode, the default value is 10.0. If the database is in 8.1-compatible or 9.2-compatible mode, the default value is 8.1. If the database is in 8.0 compatible mode, the default value is 8.0

You can specify and modify the primary_instance and secondary_instance only in 8.1-compatible or higher mode. You cannot specify a secondary instance unless there is a primary instance.

DEL_ALIAS_FROM_LDAP Procedure

This procedure drops an alias for a queue, agent, or JMS ConnectionFactory in LDAP.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQ.DEL_ALIAS_FROM_LDAP(
   alias IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–24 DEL_ALIAS_FROM_LDAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
alias	The alias to be removed.

DISABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure

This procedure revokes the privileges of a specific database user from an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.DISABLE_DB_ACCESS (
  agent_name                IN VARCHAR2,
  db_username               IN VARCHAR2)
```

Parameters

Table 25–25 DISABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_name	Specifies the username of the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.
db_username	Specifies the database user whose privileges are to be revoked from the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.

Usage Notes

The Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent should have been previously granted those privileges using the ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure.

DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure disables a propagation schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE (
   queue_name            IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_queue  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–26 DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the source queue whose messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the user.
destination	Destination database link. Messages in the source queue for recipients at this destination are propagated. If it is NULL, then the destination is the local database and messages are propagated to other queues in the local database. The length of this field is currently limited to 128 bytes, and if the name is not fully qualified, then the default domain name is used.
destination_queue	Name of the target queue to which messages are to be propagated in the form of a dblink

DROP_AQ_AGENT Procedure

This procedure drops an agent that was previously registered for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet access.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.DROP_AQ_AGENT (
  agent_name                IN VARCHAR2)
```

Parameters

Table 25–27 DROP_AQ_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_name	Specifies the username of the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent

DROP_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure drops an existing queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.DROP_QUEUE (
   queue_name        IN    VARCHAR2,
   auto_commit       IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–28 DROP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue that is to be dropped.
auto_commit	TRUE causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the DROP_QUEUE operation is carried out. The DROP_QUEUE operation becomes persistent when the call returns. This is the default. FALSE means the operation is part of the current transaction and becomes persistent only when the caller enters a commit. Caution: This parameter has been deprecated.

Usage Notes

DROP_QUEUE is not allowed unless STOP_QUEUE has been called to disable the queue for both enqueuing and dequeuing. All the queue data is deleted as part of the drop operation.

DROP_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure drops an existing queue table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.DROP_QUEUE_TABLE (
   queue_table       IN    VARCHAR2,
   force             IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_commit       IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–29 DROP_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_table	Name of a queue table to be dropped.
force	FALSE means the operation does not succeed if there are any queues in the table. This is the default. TRUE means all queues in the table are stopped and dropped automatically.
auto_commit	TRUE causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the DROP_QUEUE_TABLE operation is carried out. The DROP_QUEUE_TABLE operation becomes persistent when the call returns. This is the default. FALSE means the operation is part of the current transaction and becomes persistent only when the caller enters a commit. Caution: This parameter has been deprecated.

Usage Notes

All the queues in a queue table must be stopped and dropped before the queue table can be dropped. You must do this explicitly unless the force option is used, in which case this is done automatically.

ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure

This procedure grants an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent the privileges of a specific database user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ENABLE_DB_ACCESS (
  agent_name                IN VARCHAR2,
  db_username               IN VARCHAR2)
```

Parameters

Table 25–30 ENABLE_DB_ACCESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_name	Specifies the username of the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.
db_username	Specified the database user whose privileges are to be granted to the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent.

Usage Notes

The Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agent should have been previously created using the CREATE_AQ_AGENT Procedure.

For secure queues, the sender and receiver agent of the message must be mapped to the database user performing the enqueue or dequeue operation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about secure queues

The SYS.AQ$INTERNET_USERS view has a list of all Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Internet agents and the names of the database users whose privileges are granted to them.

ENABLE_JMS_TYPES Procedure

Enqueue of JMS types and XML types does not work with Oracle Streams `Sys.Anydata` queues unless you call this procedure after `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_UP_QUEUE`. Enabling an Oracle Streams queue for these types may affect import/export of the queue table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ENABLE_JMS_TYPES (
   queue_table   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–31 ENABLE_JMS_TYPES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_table`	Specifies name of the queue table to be enabled for JMS and XML types.

ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure enables a previously disabled propagation schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE (
   queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination         IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_queue   IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–32 ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the source queue whose messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the user.
destination	Destination database link. Messages in the source queue for recipients at this destination are propagated. If it is NULL, then the destination is the local database and messages are propagated to other queues in the local database. The length of this field is currently limited to 128 bytes, and if the name is not fully qualified, then the default domain name is used.
destination_ queue	Name of the target queue to which messages are to be propagated in the form of a dblink

GET_WATERMARK Procedure

This procedure retrieves the value of watermark set by `SET_WATERMARK`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.GET_WATERMARK (
   wmvalue     IN      NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–33 GET_WATERMARK Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`wmvalue`	Watermark value in megabytes.

GET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure

This procedure retrieves the value of Oracle Database Advanced Queuing maximum streams pool memory limit.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.GET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL (
   value     OUT      NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–34 GET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
value	Value in megabytes.

GET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure

This procedure retrieves the value of Oracle Database Advanced Queuing minimum streams pool memory limit.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.GET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL (
   value     OUT      NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–35 GET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
value	Value in megabytes.

GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grants privileges on a queue to users and roles. The privileges are ENQUEUE or DEQUEUE. Initially, only the queue table owner can use this procedure to grant privileges on the queues.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE (
   privilege        IN    VARCHAR2,
   queue_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   grantee          IN    VARCHAR2,
   grant_option     IN    BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–36 GRANT_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue privilege to grant. The options are ENQUEUE, DEQUEUE, and ALL. ALL means both ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE.
queue_name	Name of the queue.
grantee	Grantee(s). The grantee(s) can be a user, a role, or the PUBLIC role.
grant_option	Specifies if the access privilege is granted with the GRANT option or not. If the privilege is granted with the GRANT option, then the grantee is allowed to use this procedure to grant the access privilege to other users or roles, regardless of the ownership of the queue table. The default is FALSE.

GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grants Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges to users and roles. The privileges are ENQUEUE_ANY, DEQUEUE_ANY, and MANAGE_ANY. Initially, only SYS and SYSTEM can use this procedure successfully.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE (
   privilege         IN    VARCHAR2,
   grantee           IN    VARCHAR2,
   admin_option      IN    BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–37 GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privilege to grant. The options are ENQUEUE_ANY, DEQUEUE_ANY, and MANAGE_ANY. ENQUEUE_ANY means users granted this privilege are allowed to enqueue messages to any queues in the database. DEQUEUE_ANY means users granted this privilege are allowed to dequeue messages from any queues in the database. MANAGE_ANY means users granted this privilege are allowed to run DBMS_AQADM calls on any schemas in the database.
grantee	Grantee(s). The grantee(s) can be a user, a role, or the PUBLIC role.
admin_option	Specifies if the system privilege is granted with the ADMIN option or not. If the privilege is granted with the ADMIN option, then the grantee is allowed to use this procedure to grant the system privilege to other users or roles. The default is FALSE.

MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure upgrades an 8.0-compatible queue table to an 8.1-compatible or higher queue table, or downgrades an 8.1-compatible or higher queue table to an 8.0-compatible queue table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE (
   queue_table    IN   VARCHAR2,
   compatible     IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–38 MIGRATE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_table`	Specifies name of the queue table to be migrated.
`compatible`	Set this to `8.1` to upgrade an 8.0-compatible queue table, or set this to `8.0` to downgrade an 8.1-compatible queue table.

PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure purges messages from queue tables. You can perform various purge operations on both single-consumer and multiconsumer queue tables for persistent and buffered messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE(
   queue_table        IN   VARCHAR2,
   purge_condition    IN   VARCHAR2,
   purge_options      IN   aq$_purge_options_t);
```

where type aq$_purge_options_t is described in Chapter 271, "Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) Types".

Parameters

Table 25–39 PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_table	Specifies the name of the queue table to be purged.
purge_condition	Specifies the purge condition to use when purging the queue table. The purge condition must be in the format of a SQL WHERE clause, and it is case-sensitive. The condition is based on the columns of aq$queue_table_name view. When specifying the purge_condition, qualify the column names in aq$queue_table_name view with qtview. To purge all queues in a queue table, set purge_condition to either NULL (a bare null word, no quotes) or'' (two single quotes).
purge_options	Type aq$_purge_options_t contains a block parameter and a delivery_mode parameter. ■ If block is TRUE, then an exclusive lock on all the queues in the queue table is held while purging the queue table. This will cause concurrent enqueuers and dequeuers to block while the queue table is purged. The purge call always succeeds if block is TRUE. The default for block is FALSE. This will not block enqueuers and dequeuers, but it can cause the purge to fail with an error during high concurrency times. ■ delivery_mode is used to specify whether DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT, DBMS_AQADM.BUFFERED or DBMS_AQADM.PERSISTENT_OR_BUFFERED types of messages are to be purged. You cannot implement arbitrary purge conditions if buffered messages have to be purged.

Usage Notes

- You an purge selected messages from the queue table by specifying a purge_condition. Table 25–39 describes these parameters. Messages can be enqueued to and dequeued from the queue table while the queue table is being purged.

- A trace file is generated in the `udump` destination when you run this procedure. It details what the procedure is doing.
- This procedure commits batches of messages in autonomous transactions. Several such autonomous transactions may get executed as a part of one `purge_queue_table` call depending on the number of messages in the queue table.

QUEUE_SUBSCRIBERS Function

This function returns the subscribers to an 8.0-compatible multiconsumer queue in the PL/SQL index by table collection type `DBMS_AQADM.AQ$_subscriber_list_t`. Each element of the collection is of type `sys.aq$_agent`. This functionality is provided for 8.1-compatible queues by the `AQ$`*`queue_table_name`*`_S` view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.QUEUE_SUBSCRIBERS (
   queue_name         IN         VARCHAR2);
RETURN aq$_subscriber_list_t IS
```

Parameters

Table 25–40 QUEUE_SUBSCRIBERS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_name`	Specifies the queue whose subscribers are to be printed.

REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure removes a default subscriber from a queue. This operation takes effect immediately, and the containing transaction is committed. All references to the subscriber in existing messages are removed as part of the operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER (
   queue_name          IN          VARCHAR2,
   subscriber          IN          sys.aq$_agent);
```

Parameters

Table 25–41 REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue.
subscriber	Agent who is being removed. See AQ$_AGENT Type on page 271-5.

REVOKE_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes privileges on a queue from users and roles. The privileges are ENQUEUE or DEQUEUE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.REVOKE_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE (
   privilege         IN      VARCHAR2,
   queue_name        IN      VARCHAR2,
   grantee           IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–42 REVOKE_QUEUE_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue privilege to revoke. The options are ENQUEUE, DEQUEUE, and ALL. ALL means both ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE.
queue_name	Name of the queue.
grantee	Grantee(s). The grantee(s) can be a user, a role, or the PUBLIC role. If the privilege has been propagated by the grantee through the GRANT option, then the propagated privilege is also revoked.

Usage Notes

To revoke a privilege, the revoker must be the original grantor of the privilege. The privileges propagated through the GRANT option are revoked if the grantor's privileges are revoked.

REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privileges from users and roles. The privileges are ENQUEUE_ANY, DEQUEUE_ANY and MANAGE_ANY. The ADMIN option for a system privilege cannot be selectively revoked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE (
   privilege         IN   VARCHAR2,
   grantee           IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 25–43 REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The Oracle Database Advanced Queuing system privilege to revoke. The options are ENQUEUE_ANY, DEQUEUE_ANY, and MANAGE_ANY. The ADMIN option for a system privilege cannot be selectively revoked.
grantee	Grantee(s). The grantee(s) can be a user, a role, or the PUBLIC role.

SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure schedules propagation of messages from a queue to a destination identified by a specific database link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION (
   queue_name          IN    VARCHAR2,
   destination         IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time          IN    DATE     DEFAULT SYSDATE,
   duration            IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   next_time           IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   latency             IN    NUMBER   DEFAULT 60,
   destination_queue   IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–44 SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the source queue whose messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the administrative user.
destination	Destination database link. Messages in the source queue for recipients at this destination are propagated. If it is NULL, then the destination is the local database and messages are propagated to other queues in the local database. The length of this field is currently limited to 128 bytes, and if the name is not fully qualified, then the default domain name is used.
start_time	Initial start time for the propagation window for messages from the source queue to the destination.
duration	Duration of the propagation window in seconds. A NULL value means the propagation window is forever or until the propagation is unscheduled.
next_time	Date function to compute the start of the next propagation window from the end of the current window. If this value is NULL, then propagation is stopped at the end of the current window. For example, to start the window at the same time every day, next_time should be specified as SYSDATE + 1 - duration/86400.
latency	Maximum wait, in seconds, in the propagation window for a message to be propagated after it is enqueued. For example, if the latency is 60 seconds and there are no messages to be propagated during the propagation window, then messages from that queue for the destination are not propagated for at least 60 more seconds. It is at least 60 seconds before the queue is checked again for messages to be propagated for the specified destination. If the latency is 600, then the queue is not checked for 10 minutes, and if the latency is 0, then a job queue process will be waiting for messages to be enqueued for the destination. As soon as a message is enqueued, it is propagated.
destination_queue	Name of the target queue to which messages are to be propagated in the form of a dblink

Usage Notes

Messages may also be propagated to other queues in the same database by specifying a NULL destination. If a message has multiple recipients at the same destination in

either the same or different queues, the message is propagated to all of them at the same time.

SET_WATERMARK Procedure

This procedure is used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing notification to specify and limit memory use.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.SET_WATERMARK (
   wmvalue     IN      NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–45 SET_WATERMARK Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
wmvalue	Watermark value in megabytes.

SET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure

This procedure is used for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to specify and limit maximum streams pool memory use.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.SET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL (
   value     IN      NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–46 SET_MAX_STREAMS_POOL Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
value	Value in megabytes.

SET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure

This procedure is used for Oracle Database AQ to specify and limit minimum streams pool memory use.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.SET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL (
   value     IN      NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–47 SET_MIN_STREAMS_POOL Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
value	Value in megabytes.

START_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure enables the specified queue for enqueuing or dequeuing.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.START_QUEUE (
   queue_name       IN     VARCHAR2,
   enqueue          IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   dequeue          IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–48 START_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue to be enabled
enqueue	Specifies whether ENQUEUE should be enabled on this queue. TRUE means enable ENQUEUE. This is the default. FALSE means do not alter the current setting.
dequeue	Specifies whether DEQUEUE should be enabled on this queue. TRUE means enable DEQUEUE. This is the default. FALSE means do not alter the current setting.

Usage Notes

After creating a queue, the administrator must use START_QUEUE to enable the queue. The default is to enable it for both ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE. Only dequeue operations are allowed on an exception queue. This operation takes effect when the call completes and does not have any transactional characteristics.

STOP_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure disables enqueuing or dequeuing on the specified queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.STOP_QUEUE (
   queue_name      IN   VARCHAR2,
   enqueue         IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   dequeue         IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   wait            IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 25–49 STOP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue to be disabled
enqueue	Specifies whether ENQUEUE should be disabled on this queue. TRUE means disable ENQUEUE. This is the default. FALSE means do not alter the current setting.
dequeue	Specifies whether DEQUEUE should be disabled on this queue. TRUE means disable DEQUEUE. This is the default. FALSE means do not alter the current setting.
wait	Specifies whether to wait for the completion of outstanding transactions. TRUE means wait if there are any outstanding transactions. In this state no new transactions are allowed to enqueue to or dequeue from this queue. FALSE means return immediately either with a success or an error.

Usage Notes

By default, this call disables both ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE. A queue cannot be stopped if there are outstanding transactions against the queue. This operation takes effect when the call completes and does not have any transactional characteristics.

UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure unschedules previously scheduled propagation of messages from a queue to a destination identified by a specific database link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION (
   queue_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
   destination_queue  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 25–50 UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	Name of the source queue whose messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the administrative user.
destination	Destination database link. Messages in the source queue for recipients at this destination are propagated. If it is NULL, then the destination is the local database and messages are propagated to other queues in the local database. The length of this field is currently limited to 128 bytes, and if the name is not fully qualified, then the default domain name is used.
destination_ queue	Name of the target queue to which messages are to be propagated in the form of a dblink

VERIFY_QUEUE_TYPES Procedure

This procedure verifies that the source and destination queues have identical types. The result of the verification is stored in the table `sys.aq$_message_types`, overwriting all previous output of this command.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQADM.VERIFY_QUEUE_TYPES (
   src_queue_name    IN    VARCHAR2,
   dest_queue_name   IN    VARCHAR2,
   destination       IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   rc                OUT   BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 25–51 VERIFY_QUEUE_TYPES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`src_queue_name`	Name of the source queue whose messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the user.
`dest_queue_name`	Name of the destination queue where messages are to be propagated, including the schema name. If the schema name is not specified, then it defaults to the schema name of the user.
`destination`	Destination database link. Messages in the source queue for recipients at this destination are propagated. If it is `NULL`, then the destination is the local database and messages are propagated to other queues in the local database. The length of this field is currently limited to 128 bytes, and if the name is not fully qualified, then the default domain name is used.
`rc`	Return code for the result of the procedure. If there is no error, and if the source and destination queue types match, then the result is 1. If they do not match, then the result is 0. If an Oracle error is encountered, then it is returned in `rc`.

26

DBMS_AQELM

The DBMS_AQELM package provides subprograms to manage the configuration of Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing (AQ) asynchronous notification by e-mail and HTTP.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for detailed information about DBMS_AQELM

This chapter contains the following topic:

Using DBMS_AQELM

This section contains the following topic:

- Security Model

Security Model

You need the administrator role `AQ_ADMINISTRATOR_ROLE` to run all procedures in `DBMS_AQELM`.

Summary of DBMS_AQELM Subprograms

Table 26–1 DBMS_ALERT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SET_MAILHOST Procedure on page 26-5	Sets the host name for the SMTP server that the database will uses send out e-mail notifications
SET_MAILPORT Procedure on page 26-6	Sets the port number for the SMTP server
SET_SENDFROM Procedure on page 26-7	Sets the sent-from e-mail address

SET_MAILHOST Procedure

This procedure sets the host name for the SMTP server. The database uses this SMTP server host name to send out e-mail notifications.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQELM.SET_MAILHOST (
   mailhost  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 26–2 SET_MAILHOST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mailhost	SMTP server host name.

Usage Notes

As part of the configuration for e-mail notifications, a user with AQ_ADMINISTRATOR_ROLE or with EXECUTE permissions on the DBMS_AQELM package needs to set the host name before registering for e-mail notifications.

SET_MAILPORT Procedure

This procedure sets the port number for the SMTP server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQELM.SET_MAILPORT (
   mailport  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 26–3 SET_MAILPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mailport	SMTP server port number.

Usage Notes

As part of the configuration for e-mail notifications, a user with AQ_ADMINISTRATOR_ROLE or with EXECUTE permissions on DBMS_AQELM package needs to set the port number before registering for e-mail notifications. The database uses this SMTP server port number to send out e-mail notifications. If not set, the SMTP mailport defaults to 25

SET_SENDFROM Procedure

This procedure sets the sent-from e-mail address. This e-mail address is used in the sent-from field in all the e-mail notifications sent out by the database to the registered e-mail addresses.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AQELM.SET_SENDFROM (
   sendfrom  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 26–4 SET_SENDFROM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sendfrom	The sent-from e-mail address.

Usage Notes

As part of the configuration for e-mail notifications, a user with AQ_ADMINISTRATOR_ROLE or with EXECUTE permissions on the DBMS_AQELM package should set the sent-from address before registering for e-mail notifications

27

DBMS_AQIN

The DBMS_AQIN package plays a part in providing secure access to the Oracle JMS interfaces.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for detailed information about DBMS_AQIN

This chapter contains the following topic:

Using DBMS_AQIN

This section contains the following topic.

- Security Model

Security Model

While you should not call any subprograms in the DBMS_AQIN package directly, you must have the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_AQIN and DBMS_AQJMS packages to use the Oracle JMS interfaces. Use the following syntax to accomplish this with regard to the DBMS_AQIN package:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_AQIN to user;
```

You must have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_AQIN and DBMS_AQJMS packages to use the Oracle JMS interfaces. You can also acquire these rights through the AQ_USER_ROLE or the AQ_ADMINSTRATOR_ROLE.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information on accessing standard and Oracle JMS applications.

28

DBMS_ASSERT

The DBMS_ASSERT package provides an interface to validate properties of the input value.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about "Avoiding SQL Injection in PL/SQL"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ASSERT

Operational Notes

If the condition which determines the property asserted in a function is not met then a value error is raised. Otherwise the input value is returned through the return value. Most functions return the value unchanged, however, several functions modify the value.

Summary of DBMS_ASSERT Subprograms

Table 28–1 DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ENQUOTE_LITERAL Function on page 28-5	Enquotes a string literal
ENQUOTE_NAME Function on page 28-6	Encloses a name in double quotes
NOOP Functions on page 28-7	Returns the value without any checking
QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME Function on page 28-8	Verifies that the input string is a qualified SQL name
SCHEMA_NAME Function on page 28-9	Verifies that the input string is an existing schema name
SIMPLE_SQL_NAME Function on page 28-10	Verifies that the input string is a simple SQL name
SQL_OBJECT_NAME Function on page 28-11	Verifies that the input parameter string is a qualified SQL identifier of an existing SQL object

ENQUOTE_LITERAL Function

This function adds leading and trailing single quotes to a string literal.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.ENQUOTE_LITERAL (
   str            VARCHAR2)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 28–2 ENQUOTE_LITERAL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	String to enquote

Usage Notes

- Verify that all single quotes except leading and trailing characters are paired with adjacent single quotes.
- No additional quotes are added if the name was already in quotes.

ENQUOTE_NAME Function

This function encloses the provided string within quotation marks. However, additional quotation marks are not added if the string is already in quotation marks. The quoted string is then checked to see if it is a valid identifier.

For more information on Database object names and qualifiers, see Oracle Database SQL Language Reference Guide.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.ENQUOTE_NAME (
   str            VARCHAR2,
   capitalize     BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 28–3 ENQUOTE_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`str`	String to enquote
`capitalize`	If `TRUE` or defaulted, alphabetic characters of `str` which was not in quotes are translated to upper case

Usage Notes

- No additional quotes are added if the name was already in quotes.
- Verify that all other double quotes in the string are adjacent pairs of double quotes.

NOOP Functions

This function returns the value without any checking.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.NOOP (
   str      VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN     VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;

DBMS_ASSERT.NOOP (
   str      CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN     CLOB CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 28–4 NOOP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	Input value

QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME Function

This function verifies that the input string is a qualified SQL name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME (
   str      VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN     VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 28–5 QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	Input value

Exceptions

ORA44004: string is not a qualified SQL name

Usage Notes

A qualified SQL name <qualified name> can be expressed by the following grammar:

```
<local qualified name> ::= <simple name> {'.' <simple name>}
<database link name> ::= <local qualified name> ['@' <connection string>]
<connection string> ::= <simple name>
<qualified name> ::= <local qualified name> ['@' <database link name>]
```

SCHEMA_NAME Function

This function verifies that the input string is an existing schema name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.SCHEMA_NAME (
   str      VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN     VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 28–6 SCHEMA_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	Input value

Exceptions

ORA44001: Invalid schema name

Usage Notes

By definition, a schema name need not be just a simple SQL name. For example, "FIRST LAST" is a valid schema name. As a consequence, care must be taken to quote the output of schema name before concatenating it with SQL text.

SIMPLE_SQL_NAME Function

This function verifies that the input string is a simple SQL name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.SIMPLE_SQL_NAME (
   str      VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN     VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 28–7 SIMPLE_SQL_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	Input value

Exceptions

ORA44003: string is not a simple SQL name

Usage Notes

- The input value must be meet the following conditions:
  - The name must begin with an alphabetic character. It may contain alphanumeric characters as well as the characters _, $, and # in the second and subsequent character positions.
  - Quoted SQL names are also allowed.
  - Quoted names must be enclosed in double quotes.
  - Quoted names allow any characters between the quotes.
  - Quotes inside the name are represented by two quote characters in a row, for example, "a name with "" inside" is a valid quoted name.
  - The input parameter may have any number of leading and/or trailing white space characters.
- The length of the name is not checked.

SQL_OBJECT_NAME Function

This function verifies that the input parameter string is a qualified SQL identifier of an existing SQL object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ASSERT.SQL_OBJECT_NAME (
   str      VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN     VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 28–8 SQL_OBJECT_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	Input value

Exceptions

ORA44002: Invalid object name

Usage Notes

The use of synonyms requires that the base object exists.

29

DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package provides subprograms to manage audit trail records. These subprograms enable audit administrators to manage the audit trail. In a mixed-mode environment, these audit trails comprise the database, operating system (OS), and XML audit trails. In a unified auditing environment, this comprises the unified audit trail.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Security Guide* regarding verifying security access with auditing
- *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* regarding migrating to unified auditing

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT` package. The following topics are included:

Overview

Database auditing helps meet your database security and compliance requirements. In a mixed mode environment, audit records are written to database tables, operating system (OS) files, or XML files depending on the AUDIT_TRAIL initialization parameter setting. If you have upgraded to unified auditing, then the audit records are written to the unified audit trail.

In a mixed mode environment, when AUDIT_TRAIL is set to DB, database records are written to the AUD$ table. In a unified auditing environment, audit records are written to a read-only table in the AUDSYS schema. The contents of this table are available from the UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL data dictionary view.When AUDIT_TRAIL is set to OS, audit records are written to operating system files. When AUDIT_TRAIL is set to XML, audit records are written to operating system files in XML format.

With Unified Auditing facility, all audit records are written to the unified audit trail in a uniform format and are made available through the UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL views.

It is important to manage your audit records properly in order to ensure efficient performance and disk space management. The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT subprograms enable you to efficiently manage your audit trail records.

If you have not yet migrated to unified auditing, the DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package provides a subprogram that allows you to move the database audit trail tables out of the SYSTEM tablespace. This improves overall database performance by reducing the load on the SYSTEM tablespace. It also enables you to dedicate an optimized tablespace for audit records.

For a mixed mode environment, the DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT subprograms also enable you to manage your operating system and XML audit files. You can define properties like the maximum size and age of an audit file. This enables you to keep the file sizes of OS and XML audit files in check.

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT subprograms enable you to perform cleanup operations on all audit trail types. Audit trails can be cleaned based on the last archive timestamp value. The last archive timestamp represents the timestamp of the most recent audit record that was securely archived.

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package provides a subprogram that enables audit administrators to set the last archive timestamp for archived audit records. This subprogram can also be used by external archival systems to set the last archive timestamp.

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT subprograms also enable you to configure jobs that periodically delete audit trail records. The frequency with which these jobs should run can be controlled by the audit administrator.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Security Guide* for a detailed description of unified auditing

Security Model

All DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT subprograms require the user to have EXECUTE privilege over the DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package. The SYSDBA and AUDIT_ADMIN roles have EXECUTE privileges on the package by default.

Oracle strongly recommends that only audit administrators should have the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package and be granted the AUDIT_ADMIN role.

Executions of the DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT subprograms are always audited.

Constants

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package defines several constants that can be used for specifying parameter values.

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package includes the constants shown in the following tables:

- DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types
- DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Properties
- DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Purge Job Status

Audit trails can be classified based on whether audit records are written to database tables, operating system files, or XML files. Table 29–1 lists the audit trail type constants.

Table 29–1 DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types

Constant	Type	Description
AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL	PLS_INTEGER	All audit trail types. This includes the standard database audit trail (SYS.AUD$, SYS.FGA_LOG$ and unified audit trail tables), operating system (OS) audit trail, and XML audit trail.
AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD	PLS_INTEGER	Standard database audit records in the SYS.AUD$ table
AUDIT_TRAIL_DB_STD	PLS_INTEGER	Both standard audit (SYS.AUD$) and FGA audit(SYS.FGA_LOG$) records
AUDIT_TRAIL_FGA_STD	PLS_INTEGER	Standard database fine-grained auditing (FGA) records in the SYS.FGA_LOG$ table
AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES	PLS_INTEGER	Both operating system (OS) and XML audit trails
AUDIT_TRAIL_OS	PLS_INTEGER	Operating system audit trail. This refers to the audit records stored in operating system files.
AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED	PLS_INTEGER	Unified audit trail. In unified auditing, all audit records are written to the unified audit trail and are made available through the unified audit trail views, such as UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL.
AUDIT_TRAIL_XML	PLS_INTEGER	XML audit trail. This refers to the audit records stored in XML files.

Audit trail properties determine the audit configuration settings. Table 29–2 lists the constants related to audit trail properties.

Table 29–2 DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Properties

Constant	Type	Description
AUDIT_TRAIL_WRITE_MODE	PLS_INTEGER	A value of AUDIT_TRAIL_IMMEDIATE_WRITE indicates that the audit record must be immediately persisted and not to be queued. By contrast, AUDIT_TRAIL_QUEUED_WRITE indicates that the audit record can be queued and persisting can be done according the database's flushing strategy. See Also *Oracle Database Security Guide*

Table 29–2 (Cont.) DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Properties

Constant	Type	Description
CLEAN_UP_INTERVAL	PLS_INTEGER	Interval, in hours, after which the cleanup procedure is called to clear audit records in the specified audit trail
DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE	PLS_INTEGER	Specifies the batch size to be used for deleting audit records in database audit tables. The audit records are deleted in batches of size equal to DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE.
FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE	PLS_INTEGER	Specifies the batch size to be used for deleting audit files in the audit directory. The audit files are deleted in batches of size equal to FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE.
OS_FILE_MAX_AGE	PLS_INTEGER	Specifies the maximum number of days for which an operating system (OS) or XML audit file can be kept open before a new audit file gets created
OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE	PLS_INTEGER	Specifies the maximum size, in kilobytes (KB), to which an operating system (OS) or XML audit file can grow before a new file is opened

The audit trail purge job cleans the audit trail. Table 29–3 lists the constants related to purge job status values.

Table 29–3 DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Purge Job Status

Constant	Type	Description
PURGE_JOB_DISABLE	PLS_INTEGER	Disables a purge job
PURGE_JOB_ENABLE	PLS_INTEGER	Enables a purge job

Views

The views listed in Table 29–4 are used to display DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT configuration and cleanup events.

Table 29–4 Views used by DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT

View	Description
DBA_AUDIT_MGMT_CLEAN_EVENTS	Displays the cleanup event history
DBA_AUDIT_MGMT_CLEANUP_JOBS	Displays the currently configured audit trail purge jobs
DBA_AUDIT_MGMT_CONFIG_PARAMS	Displays the currently configured audit trail properties
DBA_AUDIT_MGMT_LAST_ARCH_TS	Displays the last archive timestamps set for the audit trails

See Also: *Oracle Database Reference* for more information on these views

Subprogram Groups

The DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT package subprograms can be grouped into the following categories:

- Audit Trail Management Subprograms
- Audit Trail Cleanup Subprograms

Audit Trail Management Subprograms

Audit trail management subprograms enable you to manage audit trail properties.

Table 29–5 Audit Trail Management Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure on page 29-14	Clears the value for the audit trail property that you specify
FLUSH_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure on page 29-23	Writes the unified audit trail records in the SGA queue to disk
GET_ AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY_VALUE Function on page 29-25	Returns the property value set by the SET_ AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure
GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Function on page 29-26	Returns the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure in that database instance
LOAD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_FILES Procedure on page 29-30	Loads the data from the spillover OS audit files in a unified audit trail into the designated unified audit trail tablespace
SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure on page 29-31	Moves the audit trail tables from their current tablespace to a user-specified tablespace
SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure on page 29-33	Sets an audit trail property for the audit trail type that you specify
SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure on page 29-36	Sets a timestamp indicating when the audit records or files were last archived

The Summary of DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

Audit Trail Cleanup Subprograms

Audit trail cleanup subprograms help you perform cleanup related operations on the audit trail records.

Table 29–6 Audit Trail Cleanup Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure on page 29-12	Deletes audit trail records or files that have been archived
CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure on page 29-16	Clears the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure
CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure on page 29-18	Creates a purge job for periodically deleting the audit trail records or files
DEINIT_CLEANUP Procedure on page 29-20	Undoes the setup and initialization performed by the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure
DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TABLES Procedure on page 29-21	Drops old unified audit tables following the cloning of a pluggable database (PDB)
DROP_PURGE_JOB Procedure on page 29-22	Drops the purge job created using the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure
INIT_CLEANUP Procedure on page 29-27	Sets up the audit management infrastructure and sets a default cleanup interval for audit trail records or files
IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED Function on page 29-29	Checks to see if the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure has been run for an audit trail type
SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL Procedure on page 29-38	Sets the interval at which the CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure is called for the purge job that you specify
SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS Procedure on page 29-39	Enables or disables the purge job that you specify

The Summary of DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

Summary of DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Subprograms

Table 29–7 DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure on page 29-12	Deletes audit trail records that have been archived
CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure on page 29-14	Clears the value for the audit trail property that you specify
CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_ TIMESTAMP Procedure on page 29-16	Clears the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure
CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure on page 29-18	Creates a purge job for periodically deleting the audit trail records
DEINIT_CLEANUP Procedure on page 29-20	Undoes the setup and initialization performed by the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure
DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_ TABLES Procedure on page 29-21	Drops old unified audit tables following the cloning of a pluggable database (PDB)
DROP_PURGE_JOB Procedure on page 29-22	Drops the purge job created using the CREATE_ PURGE_JOB Procedure
FLUSH_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure on page 29-23	Writes the unified audit trail records in the SGA queue to disk
GET_AUDIT_COMMIT_DELAY Function on page 29-24	Returns the audit commit delay time as the number of seconds. This is the maximum time that it takes to `COMMIT` an audit record to the database audit trail.
GET_ AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY_ VALUE Function on page 29-25	Returns the property value set by the SET_AUDIT_ TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure
GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Function on page 29-26	Returns the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure in that database instance
INIT_CLEANUP Procedure on page 29-27	Sets up the audit management infrastructure and sets a default cleanup interval for audit trail records
IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED Function on page 29-29	Checks to see if the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure has been run for an audit trail type
LOAD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_FILES Procedure on page 29-30	Loads the data from the spillover OS audit files in a unified audit trail into the designated unified audit trail tablespace
SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure on page 29-31	Moves the audit trail tables from their current tablespace to a user-specified tablespace
SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure on page 29-33	Sets the audit trail properties for the audit trail type that you specify
SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure on page 29-36	Sets a timestamp indicating when the audit records were last archived
SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL Procedure on page 29-38	Sets the interval at which the CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure is called for the purge job that you specify
SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS Procedure on page 29-39	Enables or disables the purge job that you specify

CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure

This procedure deletes audit trail records. The `CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL` procedure is usually called after the SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure has been used to set the last archived timestamp for the audit records.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL(
   audit_trail_type         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   use_last_arch_timestamp  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   container                IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT,
   database_id              IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   container_guid           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 29–8 CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`audit_trail_type`	The audit trail type for which the cleanup operation needs to be performed. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5.
`use_last_arch_timestamp`	Specifies whether the last archived timestamp should be used for deciding on the records that should be deleted. A value of `TRUE` indicates that only audit records created before the last archive timestamp should be deleted. A value of `FALSE` indicates that all audit records should be deleted. The default value is `TRUE`. Oracle recommends using this value, as this helps guard against inadvertent deletion of records.
`container`	Values: `CONTAINER_CURRENT` for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or `CONTAINER_ALL` for all pluggable databases (PDBs). When `CONTAINER` is set to `CONTAINER_ALL`, this purges the audit trail in all the PDBs, otherwise it only purges from the connected PDB.
`database_id`	Database ID (DBID) of the `SYS.AUD$` and `SYS.FGA$` audit records to cleanup; does not apply to unified audit records
`container_guid`	Container GUID of the audit records to cleanup; applies to unified audit records

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- When cleaning up operating system (OS) or XML audit files, only files in the current audit directory, specified by the `AUDIT_FILE_DEST` parameter, are cleaned up.
- For Windows platforms, no cleanup is performed when the `audit_trail_type` parameter is set to `DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS`. This is because operating system (OS) audit records on Windows are written to the Windows Event Viewer.

- For Unix platforms, no cleanup is performed for cases where the operating system (OS) audit records are written to the syslog. When the `audit_trail_type` parameter is set to `DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS`, it removes only the `*.aud` files under the directory specified by the `AUDIT_FILE_DEST` initialization parameter.

  See Also: "AUDIT_SYSLOG_LEVEL" in the *Oracle Database Reference*

- When the `audit_trail_type` parameter is set to `DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_XML`, this procedure only removes XML audit files (`*.xml`) from the current audit directory.

  Oracle database maintains a book-keeping file (`adx_$ORACLE_SID.txt`) for the XML audit files. This file is not removed by the cleanup procedure.

Examples

The following example calls the `CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL` procedure to clean up the operating system (OS) audit trail records that were updated before the last archive timestamp.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL(
   audit_trail_type         =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
   use_last_arch_timestamp  =>  TRUE);
END;
```

CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure

This procedure clears the value for the audit trail property that is specified. Audit trail properties are set using the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure.

The CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY procedure can optionally reset the property value to it's default value through the use_default_values parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY(
   audit_trail_type        IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_property    IN PLS_INTEGER,
   use_default_values      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–9 CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the property needs to be cleared. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5
audit_trail_property	The audit trail property whose value needs to be cleared. You cannot clear the value for the CLEANUP_INTERVAL property. Audit trail properties are listed in Table 29–2, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Properties"
use_default_values	Specifies whether the default value of the audit_trail_property should be used in place of the cleared value. A value of TRUE causes the default value of the parameter to be used. A value of FALSE causes the audit_trail_property to have no value. The default value for this parameter is FALSE.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- You can use this procedure to clear the value for an audit trail property that you do not wish to use. For example, if you do not want a restriction on the operating system audit file size, then you can use this procedure to reset the OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE property.

  You can also use this procedure to reset an audit trail property to it's default value. You need to set use_default_values to TRUE when invoking the procedure.

- The DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property needs to be individually cleared for the AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD and AUDIT_TRAIL_FGA_STD audit trail types. You cannot clear this property collectively using the AUDIT_TRAIL_DB_STD and AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL audit trail types.

- If you clear the value of the DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property with use_default_value set to FALSE, the default value of DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE is still assumed. This is because audit records are always deleted in batches.

- The FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property needs to be individually cleared for the AUDIT_TRAIL_OS and AUDIT_TRAIL_XML audit trail types. You cannot clear this

property collectively using the AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES and AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL audit trail types.

- If you clear the value of the FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property with use_default_value set to FALSE, the default value of FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE is still assumed. This is because audit files are always deleted in batches.
- You cannot clear the value for the CLEANUP_INTERVAL property.
- You cannot clear the value for the AUDIT_TRAIL_WRITE_MODE property.

Examples

The following example calls the CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY procedure to clear the value for the audit trail property, OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE. The procedure uses a value of FALSE for the USE_DEFAULT_VALUES parameter. This means that there will be no maximum size threshold for operating system (OS) audit files.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CLEAR_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY(
   AUDIT_TRAIL_TYPE        =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
   AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY    =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE,
   USE_DEFAULT_VALUES      =>  FALSE );
END;
```

CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure

This procedure clears the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
   audit_trail_type         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   rac_instance_number      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   container                IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT,
   database_id              IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   container_guid           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 29–10 CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the timestamp needs to be cleared. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5.
rac_instance_number	The instance number for the Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) instance. The default value is NULL. The rac_instance_number is not relevant for single instance databases. You can find the instance number by issuing the SHOW PARAMETER INSTANCE_NUMBER command in SQL*Plus.
container	Values: CONTAINER_CURRENT for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or CONTAINER_ALL for all pluggable databases (PDBs). When CONTAINER is set to CONTAINER_ALL, this clears the last archive timestamp from all the PDBs, otherwise it clears from only the connected PDB.
database_id	Database ID (DBID) of the audit records to cleanup
container_guid	Container GUID of the audit records to cleanup

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- The timestamp for only one audit_trail_type can be cleared at a time.
- The following are invalid audit_trail_type values for this procedure and cannot be used:
  - AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL
  - AUDIT_TRAIL_DB_STD
  - AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES

Examples

The following example calls the CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP procedure to clear the timestamp value for the operating system (OS) audit trail type.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CLEAR_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
   audit_trail_type     =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
```

```
   rac_instance_number  =>  1);
END;
```

CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure

This procedure creates a purge job for periodically deleting the audit trail records.

This procedure carries out the cleanup operation at intervals specified by the user. It calls the CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure to perform the cleanup operation.

The SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL Procedure is used to modify the frequency of the purge job.

The SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS Procedure is used to enable or disable the purge job.

The DROP_PURGE_JOB Procedure is used to drop a purge job created with the `CREATE_PURGE_JOB` procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CREATE_PURGE_JOB(
   audit_trail_type            IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_purge_interval  IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_purge_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   use_last_arch_timestamp     IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   container                   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–11 CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`audit_trail_type`	The audit trail type for which the purge job needs to be created. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5.
`audit_trail_purge_interval`	The interval, in hours, at which the clean up procedure is called. A lower value means that the cleanup is performed more often.
`audit_trail_purge_name`	A name to identify the purge job.
`use_last_arch_timestamp`	Specifies whether the last archived timestamp should be used for deciding on the records that should be deleted. A value of `TRUE` indicates that only audit records created before the last archive timestamp should be deleted. A value of `FALSE` indicates that all audit records should be deleted. The default value is `TRUE`.
`container`	Values: `CONTAINER_CURRENT` for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or `CONTAINER_ALL` for all pluggable databases (PDBs). When `CONTAINER` is set to `CONTAINER_ALL`, it creates one job in the Root PDB and the invocation of this job will invoke cleanup in all the PDBs.

Usage Notes

Use this procedure to schedule the CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure for your audit trail records.

Examples

The following example calls the CREATE_PURGE_JOB procedure to create a cleanup job called CLEANUP, for all audit trail types. It sets the audit_trail_purge_interval parameter to 100. This means that the cleanup job is invoked every 100 hours. It also sets the use_last_arch_timestamp parameter value to TRUE. This means that all audit records older than the last archive timestamp are deleted.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.CREATE_PURGE_JOB(
  audit_trail_type             =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL,
  audit_trail_purge_interval   =>  100 /* hours */,
  audit_trail_purge_name       =>  'CLEANUP',
  use_last_arch_timestamp      =>  TRUE);
END;
```

DEINIT_CLEANUP Procedure

This procedure undoes the setup and initialization performed by the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure. The DEINIT_CLEANUP procedure clears the value of the default_cleanup_interval parameter. However, when used for audit tables, it does not move the audit trail tables back to their original tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DEINIT_CLEANUP(
   audit_trail_type  IN PLS_INTEGER,
   container         IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT);
```

Parameters

Table 29–12 DEINIT_CLEANUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the procedure needs to be called. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5
container	Values: CONTAINER_CURRENT for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or CONTAINER_ALL for all pluggable databases (PDBs). When CONTAINER is set to CONTAINER_ALL, this de-initializes the audit trail from cleanup in all the pluggable databases, otherwise it de-initializes the audit trail from cleanup in the connected PDB only.

Usage Notes

You cannot invoke this procedure for AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED. Doing so it will raise ORA-46250 : Invalid value for argument 'AUDIT_TRAIL_TYPE'

Examples

The following example clears the default_cleanup_interval parameter setting for the standard database audit trail:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DEINIT_CLEANUP(
  AUDIT_TRAIL_TYPE  => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD);
END;
```

DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TABLES Procedure

This procedure drops old unified audit tables following the cloning of a pluggable database (PDB).

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TABLES(
   container_guid    IN VARCHAR2) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–13 DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
container_guid	Container GUID of the old unified audit tables

Usage Notes

When a pluggable database gets cloned, the unified audit tables get newly created in the new pluggable database. To drop the old unified audit tables, use the DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TABLES by specifying the old GUID of the PDB from which the clone was created. You can query the historical GUIDs from the DBA_PDB_HISTORY view for the given PDB.

Examples

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DROP_OLD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TABLES (
      container_guid => 'E4721865A9321CB5E043EFA9E80A2D77');
END;
```

DROP_PURGE_JOB Procedure

This procedure drops the purge job created using the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure. The name of the purge job is passed as an argument.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DROP_PURGE_JOB(
   audit_trail_purge_name    IN VARCHAR2) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–14 DROP_PURGE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_purge_name	The name of the purge job which is being deleted. This is the purge job name that you specified with the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure.

Examples

The following example calls the DROP_PURGE_JOB procedure to drop the purge job called CLEANUP.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DROP_PURGE_JOB(
  AUDIT_TRAIL_PURGE_NAME  => 'CLEANUP');
END;
```

FLUSH_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure

This procedure writes the unified audit trail records in the SGA queue to disk.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.FLUSH_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL (
   flush_type      IN BINARY_INTEGER   DEFAULT FLUSH_CURRENT_INSTANCE,
   container       IN BINARY_INTEGER   DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT);
```

Parameters

Table 29–15 FLUSH_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`flush_type`	Takes one of the following two arguments: ■ `FLUSH_CURRENT_INSTANCE` - Flushes the audit records from SGA queues in that particular RAC instance ■ `FLUSH_ALL_INSTANCES` - Flushes the audit records from SGA queues in all the RAC instances
`container`	The containers where the SGA queues should be flushed. It takes one of the following two arguments: ■ `CONTAINER_CURRENT` - Flushes the audit records from SGA queues in that particular PDB ■ `CONTAINER_ALL` - Flushes the audit records from SGA queues in all the active PDBs.

GET_AUDIT_COMMIT_DELAY Function

This function returns the audit commit delay time as the number of seconds. audit commit delay time is the maximum time that it takes to `COMMIT` an audit record to the database audit trail. If it takes more time to COMMIT an audit record than defined by the audit commit delay time, then a copy of the audit record is written to the operating system (OS) audit trail.

The audit commit delay time value is useful when determining the last archive timestamp for database audit records.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.GET_AUDIT_COMMIT_DELAY
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

GET_ AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY_VALUE Function

This procedure returns the property value set by the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
   audit_trail_type         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_property     IN PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 29–16 GET_ AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for the timestamp to be retrieved. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5.
audit_trail_property	The audit trail property that is being queried. Audit trail properties are listed in Table 29–2, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Properties" on page 29-5.

Return Values

If the property value is cached in SGA memory, this function will return the value set by the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure. Else it will return NULL.

Examples

The following example prints the property value of OS_FILE_MAX_AGE set by the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure.

```
SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY.
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
 OS_MAX_AGE_VAL NUMBER;
BEGIN
 OS_MAX_AGE_VAL := DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.GET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY_VALUE(
      audit_trail_type          => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
      audit_trail_property      => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT. OS_FILE_MAX_AGE);
 IF OS_MAX_AGE_VAL is not NULL THEN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The Maximum Age configured for OS Audit files is: ' ||
                       OS_MAX_AGE_VAL);
 END IF;
END;
```

GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Function

This procedure returns the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure in that database instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
   audit_trail_type     IN PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN TIMESTAMP;
```

Parameters

Table 29–17 GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for the timestamp to be retrieved. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5.

Return Values

In a database that is opened for READ WRITE, since there will no timestamp stored in SGA memory, this function will return NULL. But in a database that is opened for READ ONLY, if a timestamp is set by the SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure, the timestamp will be returned. Else it will return NULL.

Usage Notes

This function will return NULL on a database that is opened READ WRITE. Use DBA_AUDIT_MGMT_LAST_ARCH_TS view to check the timestamp set in such a case.

Examples

The following example prints the timestamp set by the SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure on a READ ONLY database.

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
 LAT_TS TIMESTAMP;
BEGIN
 LAT_TS := DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.GET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
      audit_trail_type          => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS);
 IF LAT_TS is not NULL THEN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The Last Archive Timestamp is: ' || to_char(LAT_TS));
 END IF;
END;
```

INIT_CLEANUP Procedure

This procedure sets up the audit management infrastructure and a default cleanup interval for the audit trail records. If the audit trail tables are in the SYSTEM tablespace, then the procedure moves them to the SYSAUX tablespace. If you are using unified auditing, you do not need to run this procedure because the unified audit trail tables are in the SYSAUX tablespace by default. If you are not using unified auditing, refer to *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for documentation which references an environment without unified auditing.

Moving the audit trail tables out of the SYSTEM tablespace enhances overall database performance. The INIT_CLEANUP procedure moves the audit trail tables to the SYSAUX tablespace. If the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure has already moved the audit tables elsewhere, then no tables are moved.

The SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure enables you to specify an alternate target tablespace for the database audit tables.

The INIT_CLEANUP procedure is currently not relevant for the AUDIT_TRAIL_OS, AUDIT_TRAIL_XML, and AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES audit trail types. No preliminary set up is required for these audit trail types.

> **See Also:** Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5 for a list of all audit trail types

This procedure also sets a default cleanup interval for the audit trail records.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.INIT_CLEANUP(
   audit_trail_type          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   default_cleanup_interval  IN PLS_INTEGER
   container                 IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT);
```

Parameters

Table 29–18 INIT_CLEANUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the clean up operation needs to be initialized. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5 except AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED
default_cleanup_interval	The default time interval, in hours, after which the cleanup procedure should be called. The minimum value is 1 and the maximum is 999.
container	Values: CONTAINER_CURRENT for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or CONTAINER_ALL for all pluggable databases (PDBs). When CONTAINER is set to CONTAINER_ALL, this initializes the audit trails for clean up in all the pluggable databases, otherwise this initializes the audit trail in the connected PDB only.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- This procedure may involve data movement across tablespaces. This can be a resource intensive operation especially if your database audit trail tables are already populated. Oracle recommends that you invoke the procedure during non-peak hours.
- You should ensure that the SYSAUX tablespace, into which the audit trail tables are being moved, has sufficient space to accommodate the audit trail tables. You should also optimize the SYSAUX tablespace for frequent write operations.
- You can change the default_cleanup_interval later using the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure.
- If you do not wish to move the audit trail tables to the SYSAUX tablespace, then you should use the DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION procedure to move the audit trail tables to another tablespace before calling the INIT_CLEANUP procedure.
- Invoking this procedure with AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED results in ORA-46250. It requires no initializations for cleanup since it is cleanup-ready by default.

See Also: "SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure" on page 29-31

Examples

The following example calls the INIT_CLEANUP procedure to set a default_cleanup_interval of 12 hours for all audit trail types:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.INIT_CLEANUP(
              audit_trail_type   => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL,
      default_cleanup_interval   => 12 /* hours */);
END;
```

See Also: Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5 for a list of all audit trail types

IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED Function

This function checks to see if the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure has been run for an audit trail type. The IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED function returns TRUE if the procedure has already been run for the audit trail type. It returns FALSE if the procedure has not been run for the audit trail type.

This function is currently not relevant for the AUDIT_TRAIL_OS, AUDIT_TRAIL_XML, and AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES audit trail types. The function always returns TRUE for these audit trail types. No preliminary set up is required for these audit trail types.

> **See Also:** Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5 for a list of all audit trail types

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED(
   audit_trail_type  IN PLS_INTEGER
   container         IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 29–19 IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the function needs to be called. Note that this does not apply to AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5
container	Values: CONTAINER_CURRENT for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or CONTAINER_ALL for all pluggable databases (PDBs). ▪ When CONTAINER is set to CONTAINER_ALL, this function returns the initialization status of all the pluggable databases. The function returns FALSE even if one of the PDBs is not initialized. ▪ When CONTAINER is set to CONTAINER_CURRENT, this returns the initialization status of the connected PDB.

Examples

The following example checks to see if the standard database audit trail type has been initialized for cleanup operation. If the audit trail type has not been initialized, then it calls the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure to initialize the audit trail type.

```
BEGIN
 IF
   NOT DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.IS_CLEANUP_INITIALIZED(DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD)
 THEN
   DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.INIT_CLEANUP(
      audit_trail_type          => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD,
      default_cleanup_interval  => 12 /* hours */);
 END IF;
END;
```

LOAD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_FILES Procedure

This procedure loads the data from the spillover OS audit files in a unified audit trail into the designated unified audit trail tablespace.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Security Guide* for information about moving the OS audit trail records into the unified audit trail

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.LOAD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_FILES (
   container       IN BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 29–20 LOAD_UNIFIED_AUDIT_FILES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
container	Values: CONTAINER_CURRENT for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or CONTAINER_ALL for all pluggable databases (PDBs). ■ CONTAINER_CURRENT - loads the unified audit files from $ORACLE_BASE/audit/$ORACLE_SID OS directory to the tables in only current PDB ■ CONTAINER_ALL - loads the unified audit files from $ORACLE_BASE/audit/$ORACLE_SID OS directory to the tables in the respective PDBs, but for all the active PDBs

SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure

This procedure moves the audit trail tables from their current tablespace to a user-specified tablespace.

The `SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION` procedure is not relevant for the `AUDIT_TRAIL_OS`, `AUDIT_TRAIL_XML`, and `AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES` audit trail types. The `AUDIT_FILE_DEST` initialization parameter is the only way you can specify the destination directory for these audit trail types.

See Also:

- Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5 for a list of all audit trail types
- "AUDIT_FILE_DEST" in the *Oracle Database Reference*

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION(
   audit_trail_type            IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_location_value  IN VARCHAR2) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–21 SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`audit_trail_type`	The audit trail type for which the audit trail location needs to be set. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5
`audit_trail_location_value`	Target location or tablespace for the audit trail records

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- This procedure involves data movement across tablespaces. This can be a resource intensive operation especially if your database audit trail tables are already populated. Oracle recommends that you invoke the procedure during non-peak hours.
- You should ensure that the target tablespace, into which the audit trail tables are being moved, has sufficient space to accommodate the audit trail tables. You should also optimize the target tablespace for frequent write operations.
- This procedure is valid for the following `audit_trail_type` values only:
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD`
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_FGA_STD`
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_DB_STD`
- You optionally can specify an encrypted tablespace for the audit trail location.

When AUDIT_TRAIL_TYPE is AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED, this procedure sets the tablespace for newer audit records in the unified audit trail but does not move the older audit records. Thus, it is not resource intensive for unified audit trail.

Examples

The following example moves the database audit trail tables, AUD$ and FGA_LOG$, from the current tablespace to a user-created tablespace called RECORDS:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_LOCATION(
       audit_trail_type            => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_DB_STD,
       audit_trail_location_value  =>  'RECORDS');
END;
```

SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure

This procedure sets an audit trail property for the audit trail type that is specified.

The procedure sets the properties OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE, OS_FILE_MAX_AGE, and FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE for operating system (OS) and XML audit trail types. The OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE and OS_FILE_MAX_AGE properties determine the maximum size and age of an audit trail file before a new audit trail file gets created. The FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property specifies the number of audit trail files that are deleted in one batch.

The procedure sets the properties DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE and CLEANUP_INTERVAL for the database audit trail type. DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE specifies the batch size in which records get deleted from audit trail tables. This ensures that if a cleanup operation gets interrupted midway, the process does not need to start afresh the next time it is invoked. This is because all batches before the last processed batch are already committed.

The CLEANUP_INTERVAL specifies the frequency, in hours, with which the cleanup procedure is called.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY(
   audit_trail_type            IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_property        IN PLS_INTEGER,
   audit_trail_property_value  IN PLS_INTEGER) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–22 SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the property needs to be set. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5
audit_trail_property	The audit trail property that is being set. Audit trail properties are listed in Table 29–2, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Properties"

Table 29–22 (Cont.) SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_property_value	The value of the property specified using audit_trail_property. The following are valid values for audit trail properties: ■ OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE can have a minimum value of 1 and maximum value of 2000000. The default value is 10000. OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE is measured in kilobytes (KB). ■ OS_FILE_MAX_AGE can have a minimum value of 1 and a maximum value of 497. The default value is 5. OS_FILE_MAX_AGE is measured in days. ■ DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE can have a minimum value of 100 and a maximum value of 1000000. The default value is 10000. DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE is measured as the number of audit records that are deleted in one batch. ■ FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE can have a minimum value of 100 and a maximum value of 1000000. The default value is 1000. FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE is measured as the number of audit files that are deleted in one batch. ■ CLEANUP_INTERVAL can have a minimum value of 1 and a maximum value of 999. The default value is set using the INIT_CLEANUP Procedure. CLEANUP_INTERVAL is measured in hours.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- The audit trail properties for which you do not explicitly set values use their default values.
- If you have set both the OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE and OS_FILE_MAX_AGE properties for an operating system (OS) or XML audit trail type, then a new audit trail file gets created depending on which of these two limits is reached first.

  For example, let us take a scenario where OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE is 10000 and OS_FILE_MAX_AGE is 5. If the operating system audit file is already more than 5 days old and has a size of 9000 KB, then a new audit file is opened. This is because one of the limits has been reached.
- The DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property needs to be individually set for the AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD and AUDIT_TRAIL_FGA_STD audit trail types. You cannot set this property collectively using the AUDIT_TRAIL_DB_STD and AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL audit trail types.
- The DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property enables you to control the number of audit records that are deleted in one batch. Setting a large value for this parameter requires increased allocation for the undo log space.
- The FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property needs to be individually set for the AUDIT_TRAIL_OS and AUDIT_TRAIL_XML audit trail types. You cannot set this property collectively using the AUDIT_TRAIL_FILES and AUDIT_TRAIL_ALL audit trail types.
- The FILE_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property enables you to control the number of audit files that are deleted in one batch. Setting a very large value may engage the GEN0 background process for a long time.

- In Oracle Database Standard Edition, you can only associate the tablespace for unified auditing once. You should perform this association before you generate any audit records for the unified audit trail. The default tablespace is SYSAUX. After you have associated the tablespace, you cannot modify it on the Standard Edition because the partitioning feature is not supported in the Standard Edition.

Examples

The following example calls the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY procedure to set the OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE property for the operating system (OS) audit trail. It sets this property value to 102400. This means that a new audit file gets created every time the current audit file size reaches 100 MB.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY(
       audit_trail_type            => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
       audit_trail_property        =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.OS_FILE_MAX_SIZE,
       audit_trail_property_value  =>  102400 /* 100MB*/ );
END;
```

The following example calls the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY procedure to set the OS_FILE_MAX_AGE property for the operating system (OS) audit trail. It sets this property value to 5. This means that a new audit file gets created every sixth day.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY(
       audit_trail_type            => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
       audit_trail_property        =>  DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.OS_FILE_MAX_AGE,
       audit_trail_property_value  =>  5 /* days */);
END;
```

The following example calls the SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY procedure to set the DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE property for the AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD audit trail. It sets this property value to 100000. This means that during a cleanup operation, audit records are deleted from the SYS.AUD$ table in batches of size 100000.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_AUDIT_TRAIL_PROPERTY(
       audit_trail_type              => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD,
       audit_trail_property          => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.DB_DELETE_BATCH_SIZE,
       audit_trail_property_value    => 100000 /* delete batch size */);
END;
```

SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure

This procedure sets a timestamp indicating when the audit records were last archived. The audit administrator provides the timestamp to be attached to the audit records. The CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure uses this timestamp to decide on the audit records to be deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
   audit_trail_type         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   last_archive_time        IN TIMESTAMP,
   rac_instance_number      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   container                IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT CONTAINER_CURRENT,
   database_id              IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   container_guid           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 29–23 SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_type	The audit trail type for which the timestamp needs to be set. Audit trail types are listed in Table 29–1, " DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Audit Trail Types" on page 29-5.
last_archive_time	The TIMESTAMP value based on which the audit records or files should be deleted. This indicates the last time when the audit records or files were archived.
rac_instance_number	The instance number for the Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) instance.The default value is NULL. The rac_instance_number is not relevant for the database audit trail type, as the database audit trail tables are shared by all Oracle RAC instances. The rac_instance_number is also not relevant for a single-instance database.
container	Values: CONTAINER_CURRENT for the connected pluggable database (PDB) or CONTAINER_ALL for all pluggable databases (PDBs). When CONTAINER is set to CONTAINER_ALL, this sets the value for last archive timestamp in all the pluggable databases, otherwise it sets the value in the connected PDB only.
database_id	Database ID (DBID) of the audit records to cleanup
container_guid	Container GUID of the audit records to cleanup

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- The last_archive_time must be specified in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) when the audit trail types are AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD, AUDIT_TRAIL_FGA_STD, or AUDIT_TRAIL_UNIFIED. This is because the database audit trails store the timestamps in UTC. UTC is also known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
- The last_archive_time must be specified as the local time zone time when the audit trail types are AUDIT_TRAIL_OS or AUDIT_TRAIL_XML. The time zone must be the time zone of the machine where the OS or XML audit files were created. This is because the operating system audit files are cleaned based on the audit file's Last

Modification Timestamp property. The Last Modification Timestamp property value is stored in the local time zone of the machine.

- The following `audit_trail_type` values for valid for this procedure:
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_AUD_STD`
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_FGA_STD`
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_OS`
  - `AUDIT_TRAIL_XML`
- When using an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database, Oracle recommends that you use the Network Time Protocol (NTP) to synchronize individual Oracle RAC nodes.

Examples

The following example calls the `SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP` procedure to set the last archive timestamp for the operating system (OS) audit trail type on Oracle RAC instance 1. It uses the `TO_TIMESTAMP` function to convert a character string into a timestamp value.

A subsequent call to the CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure, with `use_last_arch_timestamp` set to `TRUE`, will delete all those OS audit files from the current `AUDIT_FILE_DEST` directory that were modified before 10-Sep-2012 14:10:10.0.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_LAST_ARCHIVE_TIMESTAMP(
   audit_trail_type     => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.AUDIT_TRAIL_OS,
   last_archive_time    => TO_
TIMESTAMP('12-SEP-0714:10:10.0','DD-MON-RRHH24:MI:SS.FF'),
   rac_instance_number  => 1);
END;
```

SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL Procedure

This procedure sets the interval at which the CLEAN_AUDIT_TRAIL Procedure is called for the purge job specified. The purge job must have already been created using the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL(
   audit_trail_purge_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   audit_trail_interval_value  IN PLS_INTEGER) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–24 SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_purge_name	The name of the purge job for which the interval is being set. This is the purge job name that you specified with the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure.
audit_trail_interval_value	The interval, in hours, at which the clean up procedure should be called. This value modifies the audit_trail_purge_interval parameter set using the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure

Usage Notes

Use this procedure to modify the audit_trail_purge_interval parameter set using the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure.

Examples

The following example calls the SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL procedure to change the frequency at which the purge job called CLEANUP is invoked. The new interval is set to 24 hours.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_PURGE_JOB_INTERVAL(
  AUDIT_TRAIL_PURGE_NAME       => 'CLEANUP',
  AUDIT_TRAIL_INTERVAL_VALUE   => 24 );
END;
```

SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS Procedure

This procedure enables or disables the specified purge job. The purge job must have already been created using the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS(
   audit_trail_purge_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   audit_trail_status_value  IN PLS_INTEGER) ;
```

Parameters

Table 29–25 SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_trail_purge_name	The name of the purge job for which the status is being set. This is the purge job name that you specified with the CREATE_PURGE_JOB Procedure.
audit_trail_status_value	One of the values specified in DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT Constants - Purge Job Status. The value PURGE_JOB_ENABLE enables the specified purge job. The value PURGE_JOB_DISABLE disables the specified purge job.

Examples

The following example calls the SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS procedure to enable the CLEANUP purge job.

```
BEGIN
DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.SET_PURGE_JOB_STATUS(
  audit_trail_purge_name      => 'CLEANUP',
  audit_trail_status_value    => DBMS_AUDIT_MGMT.PURGE_JOB_ENABLE);
END;
```

30

DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE

The DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE package is the interface for managing the Automatic SQL Tuning task. Unlike DBMS_SQLTUNE, the DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE package requires the DBA role.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE

Overview

The DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE package is the interface to SQL Tuning Advisor (DBMS_SQLTUNE) when run within the Autotask framework. The database creates the automated system task SYS_AUTO_SQL_TUNING_TASK as part of the catalog scripts. This task automatically chooses a set of high-load SQL from AWR and runs the SQL Tuning Advisor on this SQL. The automated task performs the same comprehensive analysis as any other SQL Tuning task.

The automated task tests any SQL profiles it finds by executing both the old and new query plans. Automatic SQL Tuning differs from manual SQL tuning in one important way. If automatic implementation of SQL profiles is enabled (the default is disabled), then the database implements any SQL profiles that promise a great performance benefit. The implementation occurs at tuning time so that the database can immediately benefit from the new plan. You can enable or disable automatic implementation by using the SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER API to set the ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILES parameter.

In each maintenance window, the automated tuning task stores its results as a new execution. Each execution result has the same task name but a different execution name. Query the DBA_ADVISOR_EXECUTIONS view for information about task executions. Use the REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function to view reports that span multiple executions.

Security Model

This package is available to users with the DBA role. For other users, you must grant the EXECUTE privilege on the package explicitly. Note that the EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK procedure is an exception: only SYS can invoke it.

Users can call APIs in this package to control how the automatic tuning task behaves when it runs, such as enabling automatic SQL profile creation and configuring the total and per-SQL time limits under which the task runs. Because these settings affect the overall performance of the database, it may not be appropriate for all users with the ADVISOR privilege to have access to this package.

Summary of DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE Subprograms

Table 30–1 DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function & Procedure on page 30-6	Executes the Automatic SQL Tuning task immediately (`SYS` only)
REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function on page 30-7	Displays a text report of the automatic tuning task's history
SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures on page 30-9	Changes a task parameter value for the daily automatic runs

EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function & Procedure

This function and procedure executes the Automatic SQL Tuning task (SYS_AUTO_SQL_TUNING_TASK). Both the function and the procedure run in the context of a new task execution. The difference is that the function returns that new execution name. Note that only SYS can invoke this subprogram.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList   := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList   := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 30–2 EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
execution_name	A name to qualify and identify an execution. If not specified, it is generated by the advisor and returned by function.
execution_params	List of parameters (name, value) for the specified execution. The execution parameters have effect only on the execution for which they are specified. They override the values for the parameters stored in the task (set through the SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures).
execution_desc	A 256-length string describing the execution

Usage Notes

A tuning task can be executed multiple times without having to reset it.

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(:exec_name);
```

REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function

This procedure displays the results of an Automatic SQL Tuning task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(
   begin_exec      IN   VARCHAR2   := NULL,
   end_exec        IN   VARCHAR2   := NULL,
   type            IN   VARCHAR2   := 'TEXT',
   level           IN   VARCHAR2   := 'TYPICAL',
   section         IN   VARCHAR2   := ALL,
   object_id       IN   NUMBER     := NULL,
   result_limit    IN   NUMBER     := NULL)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 30–3 REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
begin_exec	Name of the beginning task execution to use. If NULL, the report is generated for the most recent task execution.
end_exec	Name of the ending task execution to use. If NULL, the report is generated for the most recent task execution.
type	Type of the report to produce. Possible values are TEXT which produces a text report.
level	Level of detail in the report: ■ BASIC: simple version of the report. Just show info about the actions taken by the advisor. ■ TYPICAL: show information about every statement analyzed, including requests not implemented. ■ ALL: highly detailed report level, also provides annotations about statements skipped over.
section	Section of the report to include: ■ SUMMARY: summary information ■ FINDINGS: tuning findings ■ PLAN: explain plans ■ INFORMATION: general information ■ ERROR: statements with errors ■ ALL: all sections
object_id	Advisor framework object id that represents a single statement to restrict reporting to. NULL for all statements. Only valid for reports that target a single execution.
result_limit	Maximum number of SQL statements to show in the report

Return Values

A CLOB containing the desired report.

Examples

```
-- Get the whole report for the most recent execution
SELECT DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK
FROM   DUAL;

-- Show the summary for a range of executions
SELECT DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(:begin_exec, :end_exec, 'TEXT',
       'TYPICAL', 'SUMMARY')
FROM   DUAL;

-- Show the findings for the statement of interest
SELECT DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(:exec, :exec, 'TEXT',
       'TYPICAL', 'FINDINGS', 5)
FROM   DUAL;
```

SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures

This procedure updates the value of a SQL tuning parameter of type `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER` as used for the reserved auto tuning task, `SYS_AUTO_SQL_TUNING_TASK`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER(
   parameter    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value        IN  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER(
   parameter    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value        IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 30–4 SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter	Name of the parameter to set. The possible tuning parameters that can be set by this procedure using the parameter in the form VARCHAR2: ■ MODE: tuning scope (comprehensive, limited) ■ USERNAME: username under which the statement is parsed ■ DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the task is deleted ■ EXECUTION_DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the tasks's executions is deleted (without deleting the task) ■ DEFAULT_EXECUTION_TYPE: the task defaults to this type of execution when none is specified by the EXECUTE_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function & Procedure. ■ TIME_LIMIT: global time out (seconds) ■ LOCAL_TIME_LIMIT: per-statement time out (seconds) ■ TEST_EXECUTE: FULL/AUTO/OFF. * FULL - test-execute for as much time as necessary, up to the local time limit for the SQL (or the global task time limit if no SQL time limit is set) * AUTO - test-execute for an automatically-chosen time proportional to the tuning time * OFF - do not test-execute ■ BASIC_FILTER: basic filter for SQL tuning set ■ OBJECT_FILTER: object filter for SQL tuning set ■ PLAN_FILTER: plan filter for SQL tuning set (see SELECT_SQLSET for possible values) ■ RANK_MEASURE1: first ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RANK_MEASURE2: second possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RANK_MEASURE3: third possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RESUME_FILTER: a extra filter for SQL tuning sets besides BASIC_FILTER ■ SQL_LIMIT: maximum number of SQL statements to tune ■ SQL_PERCENTAGE: percentage filter of SQL tuning set statements The following parameters are supported for the automatic tuning task only: ■ ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILES: TRUE/FALSE: whether the task should accept SQL profiles automatically ■ MAX_AUTO_SQL_PROFILES: maximum number of automatic SQL profiles allowed on the system, in sum ■ MAX_SQL_PROFILES_PER_EXEC: maximum number of SQL profiles that can be automatically implemented per execution of the task.
value	New value of the specified parameter

31

DBMS_AUTO_REPORT

The DBMS_AUTO_REPORT package provides an interface to view SQL Monitoring and Real-time Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM) data that has been captured into Automatic Workload Repository (AWR). It also provides subprograms to control the behavior of how these data are captured to AWR.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information about reporting database operations

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_AUTO_REPORT

Overview

This package provides an interface to view SQL Monitoring and Real-time ADDM data that has been captured into AWR. It also provides subprograms to control the behavior of how these data are captured to AWR.Captured data are stored in AWR and exposed via 2 views: `DBA_HIST_REPORTS` and `DBA_HIST_REPORTS_DETAILS`.

Security Model

This package is available to PUBLIC and performs its own security checking.

Summary of DBMS_AUTO_REPORT Subprograms

Table 31–1 DBMS_AUTO_REPORT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FINISH_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure on page 31-6	Ends the complete capture of SQL monitor data that was started with the START_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure.
REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL Function on page 31-7	Obtains the stored report for a given report ID
REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL_XML Function on page 31-8	Obtains the stored XML report for a given report ID
REPORT_REPOSITORY_LIST_XML Function on page 31-9	Obtains an XML report of the list of SQL Monitor and Real-time ADDM data captured in AWR
START_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure on page 31-11	Captures SQL monitor data of any newly monitored SQLs every minute since the last run of the capture cycle, and stores it in AWR.

FINISH_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure ends the complete capture of SQL monitor data that was started with the START_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure. This subprogram runs a last capture cycle immediately to capture any new data and then ends the per-minute complete capture.

After calling this subprogram, capture of data continues every minute except that it is not captured for all active SQLs but only for those deemed important, namely the top 5 SQLs (by elapsed time, or elapsed time*DOP in case of PQ) whose monitoring has completed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_REPORT.FINISH_REPORT_CAPTURE;
```

REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL Function

This procedure obtains the stored report for a given report ID in the specified format such as XML or HTML.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_REPORT.REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL (
   rid              IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   type             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'XML',
   base_path        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURNS CLOB
```

Parameters

Table 31–2 REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rid`	ID of the stored report which returned by the function
`type`	Desired format of the report. Values can be `'XML'`, `'TEXT'`, `'HTML'`, `'EM'` or `'ACTIVE'`. The last two options generate a report in the same format called active HTML. Default value is `'XML'`.
`base_path`	Unused/Non-operative

Return Values

The persisted report for the given record ID

REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL_XML Function

This procedure obtains the stored XML report for a given report ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_REPORT.REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL_XML (
   rid              IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   base_path        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURNS XMLTYPE
```

Parameters

Table 31–3 REPORT_REPOSITORY_DETAIL_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rid	ID of the stored report which returned by the function
base_path	Unused/Non-operative

Return Values

The persisted XML report for the given record ID

REPORT_REPOSITORY_LIST_XML Function

This procedure obtains an XML report of the list of SQL Monitor and Real-time ADDM data captured in AWR. The input parameters can be used to select and restrict which captured data will be included in the list report. All parameters are optional.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_REPORT.REPORT_REPOSITORY_LIST_XML (
    active_since              IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
    active_upto               IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
    snapshot_id               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    dbid                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    inst_id                   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    con_dbid                  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    session_id                IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    session_serial            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    component_name            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    key1                      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    key2                      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    key3                      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    report_level              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
    base_path                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURNS XMLTYPE
```

Parameters

Table 31–4 REPORT_REPOSITORY_LIST_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
active_since	Start of a time range used to select data. When a time range is specified, only those data are included in the list that were active during the time range. When no value is specified the time range is chosen as the last 24 hours ending at the current system time.
active_upto	Same as active_since except that it is the end of the time range
snapshot_id	If a value is specified, only those data captured during the specified snapshot ID are included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed on snapshot ID.
dbid	If a value is specified, only those data captured for the specified database ID are included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed on database ID
inst_id	If a value is specified, only those data captured on the specified instance number are included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed on the instance ID.
con_dbid	If a value is specified, only those data captured on the specified container DBID are included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed on the container DBID.
session_id	If a value is specified, only those data captured for the specified session ID are included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed on session ID.
session_serial	If a value is specified, only those data captured for the specified session are included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed on session serial number. This parameter should be used in conjunction with the session_id parameter.

Table 31–4 (Cont.) REPORT_REPOSITORY_LIST_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
component_name	Can be 'sqlmonitor' for SQL Monitor data or 'rtaddm' for Real-time ADDM data. If a value is specified then data pertaining only to the specified component will be included in the list report. If no value is specified, no filtering is performed.
key1	Key value relevant to a component. For SQL Monitor, key1 is the SQL ID of the captured SQL statement. If a value is specified, only those data having specified value for key1 are included, else no filtering is performed on key1.
key2	Key value relevant to a component. For SQL Monitor, key2 is the SQL execution ID of the captured SQL statement. If a value is specified, only those data having specified value for key2 are included, else no filtering is performed on key2.
key3	Key value relevant to a component. For SQL Monitor, key3 is the SQL execution start time of the captured SQL statement. If a value is specified, then only those data having specified value for key3 are included, else no filtering is performed on key3.
report_level	Currently only 'TYPICAL' is used
base_path	Unused/Non-operative

START_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure captures SQL monitor data of any newly monitored SQLs every minute since the last run of the capture cycle, and stores it in AWR. Every capture cycle attempts to capture data for SQLs that are not currently executing or queued. This is a complete capture since data of all newly monitored SQLs is captured. It continues to run every minute until it is explicitly ended with the FINISH_REPORT_CAPTURE Procedure. In the case of a RAC system, the capture will start on each node of the cluster.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_REPORT.START_REPORT_CAPTURE;
```

32

DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN

The DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN package provides an interface to AUTOTASK functionality. It is used by the DBA as well as Enterprise Manager to access the AUTOTASK controls. Enterprise Manager also uses the AUTOTASK Advisor.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about "Configuring Automated Maintenance Task"

This chapter contains the following sections:

Using DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN

Deprecated Subprograms

Note: Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

- OVERRIDE_PRIORITY Procedures

Security Model

DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN is a definer's rights package, and EXECUTE is automatically granted to DBA, IMP_FULL_DATABASE and DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE.

Constants

The DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN package uses the constants shown in Table 32–1:

Table 32–1 DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
PRIORITY_MEDIUM	VARCHAR2	'MEDIUM'	Task with this priority should be executed as time permits
PRIORITY_HIGH	VARCHAR2	'HIGH'	Task with this priority should be executed within the current Maintenance Window
PRIORITY_URGENT	VARCHAR2	'URGENT'	Task with this priority is to be executed at the earliest opportunity

Summary of DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN Subprograms

Table 32–2 DBMS_XMLSTORE Package Subprograms

Method	Description
DISABLE Procedures on page 32-7	Prevents AUTOTASK from executing any requests from a specified client or operation.
ENABLE Procedures on page 32-8	Allows a previously disabled client, operation, target type, or individual target to be enabled under AUTOTASK control
GET_CLIENT_ ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 32-9	Returns values of select client attributes
GET_P1_RESOURCES Procedure on page 32-10	Returns percent of resources allocated to each AUTOTASK High Priority Consumer Groups
OVERRIDE_PRIORITY Procedures on page 32-11	Manually overrides task priority.
SET_CLIENT_SERVICE Procedure on page 32-12	Associates an AUTOTASK Client with a specified Service
SET_P1_RESOURCES Procedure on page 32-13	Sets percentage-based resource allocation for each High Priority Consumer Group used by AUTOTASK Clients

DISABLE Procedures

This procedure prevents AUTOTASK from executing any requests from a specified client or operation.

Syntax

Disables all AUTOTASK functionality.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.DISABLE;
```

Disables all tasks for the client or operation.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.DISABLE (
   client_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   operation         IN    VARCHAR2,
   window_name       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 32–3 DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_name	Name of the client, as found in DBA_AUTOTASK_CLIENT View
operation	Name of the operation as specified in DBA_AUTOTASK_OPERATION View
window_name	Optional name of the window in which client is to be disabled

Usage Notes

- If operation and window_name are both NULL, the client is disabled.
- If operation is not NULL, window_name is ignored and the operation is disabled
- If operation is NULL and window_name is not NULL, the client is disabled in the specified window.

ENABLE Procedures

This procedure allows a previously disabled client, operation, target type, or individual target to be enabled under AUTOTASK control. Specifying the DEFERRED option postpones the effect of the call until the start of the next maintenance window. If IMMEDIATE option is specified the effect of this call is immediate – as long as there is a currently open maintenance window.

Syntax

Re-enabling AUTOTASK. This version enables the specified client. Note that any explicitly disabled tasks or operations must be re-enabled individually.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.ENABLE;
```

Re-enabling a client or operation.Note that any explicitly disabled tasks or operations must be re-enabled individually.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.ENABLE (
   client_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   operation         IN    VARCHAR2,
   window_name       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 32–4 ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_name	Name of the client, as found in DBA_AUTOTASK_CLIENT View
operation	Name of the operation as specified in DBA_AUTOTASK_OPERATION View
window_name	Optional name of the window in which client is to be enabled

Usage Notes

- If operation and window_name are both NULL, the client is enabled.
- If operation is not NULL, window_name is ignored and the specified operation is enabled
- If operation is NULL and window_name is not NULL, the client is enabled in the specified window.

GET_CLIENT_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure returns values of select client attributes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.GET_CLIENT_ATTRIBUTES(
   client_name        IN    VARCHAR2,   service_name       OUT   VARCHAR2,
window_group       OUT   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 32–5 GET_CLIENT_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_name	Name of the client, as found in DBA_AUTOTASK_CLIENT View
service_name	Service name for client, may be NULL
window_group	Name of the window group in which the client is active

GET_P1_RESOURCES Procedure

This procedure returns percent of resources allocated to each AUTOTASK High Priority Consumer Group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.GET_P1_RESOURCES(
   stats_group_pct     OUT   NUMBER,
   seg_group_pct       OUT   NUMBER,
   tune_group_pct      OUT   NUMBER,
   health_group_pct    OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 32–6 GET_P1_RESOURCES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stats_group_pct	%resources for Statistics Gathering
seq_group_pct	%resources for Space Management
tune_group_pct	%resources for SQL Tuning
health_group_pct	%resources for Health Checks

Usage Notes

Values will add up to 100%.

OVERRIDE_PRIORITY Procedures

> **Note:** This subprogram is deprecated and becomes nonoperative with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This procedure is used to manually override task priority. This can be done at the client, operation or individual task level. This priority assignment is honored during the next maintenance window in which the named client is active. Specifically, setting the priority to `URGENT` causes a high priority job to be generated at the start of the maintenance window. Setting `priority` to `CLEAR` removes the override.

Syntax

Override Priority for a Client.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.OVERRIDE_PRIORITY (
   client_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   priority          IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Override Priority for an Operation.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.OVERRIDE_PRIORITY (
   client_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   operation         IN    VARCHAR2,
   priority          IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Override Priority for a Task.

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.OVERRIDE_PRIORITY (
   client_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   operation         IN    VARCHAR2,
   task_target_type  IN    VARCHAR2,
   task_target_name  IN    VARCHAR2,
   priority          IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 32–7 OVERRIDE_PRIORITY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`client_name`	Name of the client, as found in `DBA_AUTOTASK_CLIENT` View
`priority`	`URGENT`, `HIGH`, `MEDIUM` or `LOW`
`operation`	Name of the operation as specified in `DBA_AUTOTASK_OPERATION` View
`task_target_type`	Type of target to be affected, as found in V$`AUTOTASK_TARGET_TYPE` View
`task_target_name`	Name of the specific target to be affected

SET_CLIENT_SERVICE Procedure

This procedure associates an AUTOTASK Client with a specified Service.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.SET_CLIENT_SERVICE(
   client_name        IN    VARCHAR2,
   service_name       IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 32–8 SET_CLIENT_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_name	Name of the client, as found in DBA_AUTOTASK_CLIENT View
service_name	Service name for client, may be NULL

Usage Notes

All work performed on behalf of the Client takes place only on instances where the service is enabled.

SET_P1_RESOURCES Procedure

This procedure sets percentage-based resource allocation for each High Priority Consumer Group used by AUTOTASK Clients.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AUTO_TASK_ADMIN.SET_P1_RESOURCES(
   stats_group_pct     OUT   NUMBER,
   seg_group_pct       OUT   NUMBER,
   tune_group_pct      OUT   NUMBER,
   health_group_pct    OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 32–9 SET_P1_RESOURCES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stats_group_pct	%resources for Statistics Gathering
seq_group_pct	%resources for Space Management
tune_group_pct	%resources for SQL Tuning
health_group_pct	%resources for Health Checks

Usage Notes

Values must be integers in the range 0 to 100, and must add up to 100 (percent), otherwise, an exception is raised.

33

DBMS_AW_STATS

DBMS_AW_STATS contains subprograms for managing optimizer statistics for cubes and dimensions. Generating the statistics does not have a significant performance cost.

> **See Also:** *Oracle OLAP User's Guide* regarding use of the OLAP option to support business intelligence and analytical applications

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Using DBMS_AW_STATS
- Summary of DBMS_AW_STATS Subprograms

Using DBMS_AW_STATS

Cubes and dimensions are first class data objects that support multidimensional analytics. They are stored in a container called an analytic workspace. Multidimensional objects and analytics are available with the OLAP option to Oracle Database.

Optimizer statistics are used to create execution plans for queries that join two cube views or join a cube view to a table or a view of a table. They are also used for query rewrite to cube materialized views. You need to generate the statistics only for these types of queries.

Queries against a single cube do not use optimizer statistics. These queries are automatically optimized within the analytic workspace.

Summary of DBMS_AW_STATS Subprograms

Table 33–1 DBMS_AW_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ANALYZE Procedure on page 33-4	Generates optimizer statistics on cubes and cube dimensions.
CLEAR Procedure on page 33-7	Clears optimizer statistics from cubes and cube dimensions.

ANALYZE Procedure

This procedure generates optimizer statistics on a cube or a cube dimension. These statistics are used to generate some execution plans, as described in "Using DBMS_AW_STATS" on page 33-2.

For a cube, the statistics are for all of the measures and calculated measures associated with the cube. These statistics include:

- The average length of data values
- The length of the largest data value
- The minimum value
- The number of distinct values
- The number of null values

For a dimension, the statistics are for the dimension and its attributes, levels, and hierarchies. These statistics include:

- The average length of a value
- The length of the largest value
- The minimum value
- The maximum value

Syntax

```
DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE
     (inname       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 33–2 ANALYZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
inname	The qualified name of a cube or a dimension. For a cube, the format of a qualified name is *owner.cube_name*. For a dimension, the format is *owner.dimension_name*.

Usage Notes

Always analyze the dimensions first, then the cube.

After analyzing a dimension, analyze all cubes that use that dimension.

Example

This sample script generates optimizer statistics on UNITS_CUBE and its dimensions.

```
BEGIN
     DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE('time');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE('customer');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE('product');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE('channel');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE('units_cube');
END;
/
```

The following statements create and display an execution plan for a`SELECT` statement that joins columns from `UNITS_CUBE_VIEW`, `CUSTOMER_PRIMARY_VIEW`, and the `ACCOUNTS` table:

```
EXPLAIN PLAN FOR SELECT
     cu.long_description customer,
     a.city city,
     a.zip_pc zip,
     cu.level_name "LEVEL",
     round(f.sales) sales
/* From dimension views and cube view */
FROM time_calendar_view t,
     product_primary_view p,
     customer_view cu,
     channel_view ch,
     units_cube_view f,
     account a
/* Create level filters instead of GROUP BY */
WHERE t.long_description = '2004'
    AND p.level_name ='TOTAL'
    AND cu.customer_account_id like 'COMP%'
    AND ch.level_name = 'TOTAL'
/* Join dimension views to cube view */
    AND t.dim_key = f.TIME
    AND p.dim_key = f.product
    AND cu.dim_key = f.customer
    AND ch.dim_key = f.channel
    AND a.account_id = cu.customer_account_id
ORDER BY zip;
```

```
SQL>  SELECT plan_table_output FROM TABLE(dbms_xplan.display());

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Plan hash value: 3890178023

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation                          | Name       | Rows  | Bytes | Cost (%CPU)| Time     |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT                   |            |     1 |    89 |     6  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|   1 |  SORT ORDER BY                     |            |     1 |    89 |     6  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|*  2 |   HASH JOIN                        |            |     1 |    89 |     5  (20)| 00:00:01 |
|   3 |    JOINED CUBE SCAN PARTIAL OUTER|            |       |       |            |          |
|   4 |     CUBE ACCESS                    | UNITS_CUBE |       |       |            |          |
|   5 |     CUBE ACCESS                    | CHANNEL    |       |       |            |          |
|   6 |     CUBE ACCESS                    | CUSTOMER   |       |       |            |          |
|   7 |     CUBE ACCESS                    | PRODUCT    |       |       |            |          |
|*  8 |     CUBE ACCESS                    | TIME       |     1 |    55 |     2   (0)| 00:00:01 |
|*  9 |    TABLE ACCESS FULL               | ACCOUNT    |     3 |   102 |     2   (0)| 00:00:01 |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------------------

   2 - access("A"."ACCOUNT_ID"=SYS_OP_ATG(VALUE(KOKBF$),39,40,2))
   8 - filter(SYS_OP_ATG(VALUE(KOKBF$),16,17,2)='2004' AND
              SYS_OP_ATG(VALUE(KOKBF$),39,40,2) LIKE 'COMP%' AND
              SYS_OP_ATG(VALUE(KOKBF$),47,48,2)='TOTAL' AND
              SYS_OP_ATG(VALUE(KOKBF$),25,26,2)='TOTAL')
```

```
   9 - filter("A"."ACCOUNT_ID" LIKE 'COMP%')

Note
-----
   - dynamic statistics used for this statement

30 rows selected.
```

CLEAR Procedure

Clears the statistics generated by the ANALYZE Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_AW_STATS.CLEAR (
          inname        IN  VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 33–3 CLEAR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
inname	The qualified name of a cube or a dimension. For a cube, the format of a qualified name is *owner.cube_name*. For a dimension, the format is *owner.dimension_name*.

Examples

The following scripts clears the statistics from UNITS_CUBE and its dimensions.

```
BEGIN
     DBMS_AW_STATS.clear('units_cube');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.clear('time');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.clear('customer');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.clear('product');
     DBMS_AW_STATS.clear('channel');
END;
/
```

34

DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM

The DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides subprograms for starting, stopping, and configuring a capture process. The source of the captured changes is the redo logs, and the repository for the captured changes is a queue.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and capture processes

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package.

Overview

This package provides interfaces to start, stop, and configure a capture process or a synchronous capture. This package includes subprograms for preparing database objects for instantiation.

Capture processes can be used in an XStream configuration in a multitenant container database (CDB). A CDB is an Oracle database that includes zero, one, or many user-created pluggable databases (PDBs).

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information about CDBs and PDBs

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

When the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package is used to manage an Oracle Streams configuration, it requires that the user is granted the privileges of an Oracle Streams administrator.

When the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package is used to manage an XStream configuration, it requires that the user is granted the privileges of an XStream administrator.

Note:

- The user must be granted additional privileges to perform some administrative tasks using the subprograms in this package, such as setting a capture user. If additional privileges are required for a subprogram, then the privileges are documented in the section that describes the subprogram.
- Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for information about configuring an XStream administrator

Summary of DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM Subprograms

Table 34–1 DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ABORT_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-7	Reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION, PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION, and PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedures
ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-8	Reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION and PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedures
ABORT_SYNC_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-9	Reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION procedure
ABORT_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-10	Reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedure
ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-11	Alters a capture process
ALTER_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-16	Alters a synchronous capture
BUILD Procedure on page 34-18	Extracts the data dictionary of the current database to the redo logs and automatically specifies database supplemental logging for all primary key and unique key columns
CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-19	Creates a capture process
CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-29	Creates a synchronous capture
DROP_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-31	Drops a capture process
INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 34-33	Includes or excludes an extra attribute in logical change records (LCRs) captured by the specified capture process or synchronous capture
PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-35	Performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating all the tables in the database at another database and can enable supplemental logging for key columns or all columns in these tables
PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-37	Performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating all tables in the schema at another database and can enable supplemental logging for key columns or all columns in these tables
PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION Function on page 34-39	Performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating one or more tables at another database and returns the prepare SCN
PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure on page 34-40	Performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating the table at another database and can enable supplemental logging for key columns or all columns in the table
SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 34-42	Sets a capture process parameter to the specified value

Table 34–1 (Cont.) DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
START_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-57	Starts the capture process, which mines redo logs and enqueues the mined redo information into the associated queue
STOP_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-58	Stops the capture process from mining redo logs

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ABORT_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION, PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION, and PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedures.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

- Removes data dictionary information related to the database, schema, and table instantiations
- Removes any supplemental logging enabled by the PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION, PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION, and PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedures

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ABORT_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION(
   container    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameter

Table 34–2 ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
container	Either CURRENT, ALL, or *pdb_name*. If CURRENT is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for the current container. If ALL is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for all of the containers in the current CDB. If *pdb_name* is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for the specified PDB. ALL and *pdb_name* are valid only when you invoke the procedure from the root.

ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION procedure. It also reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedure on tables in the specified schema.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

- Removes data dictionary information related to schema instantiations and table instantiations of tables in the schema
- Removes any supplemental logging enabled by the PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION procedure
- Removes any supplemental logging enabled by the PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedure for tables in the specified schema

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION(
   schema_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   container    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameter

Table 34–3 ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
schema_name	The name of the schema for which to abort the effects of preparing instantiation
container	Either CURRENT, ALL, or *pdb_name*. If CURRENT is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for the current container. If ALL is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for all of the containers in the current CDB. If *pdb_name* is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for the specified PDB. ALL and *pdb_name* are valid only when you invoke the procedure from the root.

ABORT_SYNC_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION procedure. Specifically, this procedure removes data dictionary information related to the table instantiation.

This procedure is overloaded. The table_names parameter is VARCHAR2 datatype in one version and DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY datatype in the other version.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ABORT_SYNC_INSTANTIATION(
   table_names IN  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ABORT_SYNC_INSTANTIATION(
   table_names IN  DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 34–4 ABORT_SYNC_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
table_names	When the table_names parameter is VARCHAR2 datatype, a comma-delimited list of the tables for which to abort the effects of preparing instantiation. There must be no spaces between entries. When the table_names parameter is DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY datatype, specify a PL/SQL associative array of this type that contains the names of the tables for which to abort the effects of preparing instantiation. The first table name is at position 1, the second at position 2, and so on. The table does not need to be NULL terminated. In either version of the procedure, specify the name of each table in the form [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

ABORT_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure reverses the effects of running the PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedure.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

- Removes data dictionary information related to the table instantiation
- Removes any supplemental logging enabled by the PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ABORT_TABLE_INSTANTIATION(
   table_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
   container   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameter

Table 34–5 ABORT_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table for which to abort the effects of preparing instantiation, specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
container	Either CURRENT, ALL, or *pdb_name*. If CURRENT is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for the current container. If ALL is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for all of the containers in the current CDB. If *pdb_name* is specified, then this procedure removes supplemental logging for the specified PDB. ALL and *pdb_name* are valid only when you invoke the procedure from the root.

ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure alters a capture process.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about altering a capture process

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ALTER_CAPTURE(
   capture_name               IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name              IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_rule_set            IN  BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   start_scn                  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   use_database_link          IN  BOOLEAN    DEFAULT NULL,
   first_scn                  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   negative_rule_set_name     IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_negative_rule_set   IN  BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   capture_user               IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   checkpoint_retention_time  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time                 IN  TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 34–6 ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`capture_name`	The name of the capture process being altered. You must specify an existing capture process name. Do not specify an owner.
`rule_set_name`	The name of the positive rule set for the capture process. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the capture process to capture changes. To change the positive rule set for the capture process, specify an existing rule set in the form `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_set_name`*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the `hr` schema named `job_capture_rules`, enter `hr.job_capture_rules`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package or the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package. If you specify `NULL` and the `remove_rule_set` parameter is set to `FALSE`, then the procedure retains any existing positive rule set. If you specify `NULL` and the `remove_rule_set` parameter is set to `TRUE`, then the procedure removes any existing positive rule set. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the changes that can be captured by a capture process

Table 34–6 (Cont.) ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remove_rule_set	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the positive rule set for the specified capture process. If you remove a positive rule set for a capture process, and the capture process does not have a negative rule set, then the capture process captures all supported changes to all objects in the database, excluding database objects in the SYS and SYSTEM schemas. If you remove a positive rule set for a capture process, and the capture process has a negative rule set, then the capture process captures all supported changes that are not discarded by the negative rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure retains the positive rule set for the specified capture process. If the rule_set_name parameter is non-NULL, then ensure that this parameter is set to FALSE.
start_scn	A valid SCN for the database from which the capture process starts capturing changes. The SCN value must be greater than or equal to the first SCN for the capture process. Also, the capture process must be stopped before resetting its start SCN. An error is returned if an invalid SCN is specified or if the capture process is enabled.
use_database_link	If TRUE, then the capture process at a downstream database uses a database link to the source database for administrative purposes relating to the capture process. If you want a capture process that is not using a database link currently to begin using a database link, then specify TRUE. In this case, a database link with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist at the downstream database. If FALSE, then either the capture process is running on the source database, or the capture process at a downstream database does not use a database link to the source database. If you want a capture process that is using a database link currently to stop using a database link, then specify FALSE. In this case, you must prepare source database objects for instantiation manually when you add or change capture process rules that pertain to these objects. If NULL, then the current value of this parameter for the capture process is not changed.

Table 34–6 (Cont.) ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
first_scn	The lowest SCN in the redo log from which a capture process can capture changes. If you specify a new first SCN for the capture process, then the specified first SCN must meet the following requirements: ■ It must be greater than the current first SCN for the capture process. ■ It must be less than or equal to the current applied SCN for the capture process. However, this requirement does not apply if the current applied SCN for the capture process is zero. ■ It must be less than or equal to the required checkpoint SCN for the capture process. An error is returned if the specified SCN does not meet the first three requirements. See "Usage Notes" on page 34-15 for information about determining an SCN value that meets all of these conditions. When the first SCN is modified, the capture process purges information from its LogMiner data dictionary that is required to restart it at an earlier SCN. See BUILD Procedure on page 34-18 for more information about a LogMiner data dictionary. If the specified first SCN is higher than the current start SCN for the capture process, then the start SCN is set automatically to the new value of the first SCN.
negative_rule_set_name	The name of the negative rule set for the capture process. The negative rule set contains the rules that instruct the capture process to discard changes. To change the negative rule set for the capture process, specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name*.]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a negative rule set in the hr schema named neg_capture_rules, enter hr.neg_capture_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL and the remove_negative_rule_set parameter is set to FALSE, then the procedure retains any existing negative rule set. If you specify NULL and the remove_negative_rule_set parameter is set to TRUE, then the procedure removes any existing negative rule set. If you specify both a positive and a negative rule set for a capture process, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.

Table 34–6 (Cont.) ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remove_negative_rule_set	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the negative rule set for the specified capture process. If you remove a negative rule set for a capture process, and the capture process does not have a positive rule set, then the capture process captures all supported changes to all objects in the database, excluding database objects in the SYS and SYSTEM schemas. If you remove a negative rule set for a capture process, and a positive rule set exists for the capture process, then the capture process captures all changes that are not discarded by the positive rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure retains the negative rule set for the specified capture process. If the negative_rule_set_name parameter is non-NULL, then ensure that this parameter is set to FALSE.
capture_user	The user in whose security domain a capture process captures changes that satisfy its rule sets and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for capture process rules. If NULL, then the capture user is not changed. To change the capture user, the user who invokes the ALTER_CAPTURE procedure must be granted the DBA role. Only the SYS user can set the capture_user to SYS. If you change the capture user, then this procedure grants the new capture user enqueue privilege on the queue used by the capture process and configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue. In addition, ensure that the capture user has the following privileges: ■ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the capture process ■ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set These privileges can be granted directly to the capture user, or they can be granted through roles. In addition, the capture user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle-supplied packages, that are invoked in rule-based transformations run by the capture process. These privileges must be granted directly to the capture user. They cannot be granted through roles. The capture process is stopped and restarted automatically when you change the value of this parameter. **Note:** If the capture user for a capture process is dropped using DROP USER . . . CASCADE, then the capture process is also dropped automatically.

Table 34–6 (Cont.) ALTER_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
checkpoint_retention_time	Either the number of days that a capture process retains checkpoints before purging them automatically, or DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.INFINITE if checkpoints should not be purged automatically. If NULL, then the checkpoint retention time is not changed. If a number is specified, then a capture process purges a checkpoint the specified number of days after the checkpoint was taken. Partial days can be specified using decimal values. For example, .25 specifies 6 hours. When a checkpoint is purged, LogMiner data dictionary information for the archived redo log file that corresponds to the checkpoint is purged, and the first_scn of the capture process is reset to the SCN value corresponding to the first change in the next archived redo log file. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about checkpoint retention time
start_time	A valid time from which the capture process starts capturing changes. The capture process must be stopped before resetting its start time. An error is returned if an invalid time is specified or if the capture process is enabled. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive.

Usage Notes

If you want to alter the first SCN for a capture process, then the value specified must meet the conditions in the description for the first_scn parameter.

Examples

The following query determines the current first SCN, applied SCN, and required checkpoint SCN for each capture process in a database:

```
SELECT CAPTURE_NAME, FIRST_SCN, APPLIED_SCN, REQUIRED_CHECKPOINT_SCN
   FROM DBA_CAPTURE;
```

ALTER_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure alters a synchronous capture.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about altering a capture process

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.ALTER_SYNC_CAPTURE(
   capture_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_user   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 34–7 ALTER_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of the synchronous capture being altered. You must specify an existing synchronous capture name. Do not specify an owner.
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the synchronous capture. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the synchronous capture to capture changes. To change the rule set for the synchronous capture, specify an existing rule set in the form *[schema_name.]rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the strmadmin schema named sync_cap_rules, enter strmadmin.sync_cap_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You must specify a rule set that was created using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. If NULL, then the rule set is not changed. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the changes that can be captured by a synchronous capture
capture_user	The user in whose security domain a synchronous capture captures changes that satisfy its rule set and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for synchronous capture rules. If NULL, then the capture user is not changed. To change the capture user, the user who invokes the ALTER_SYNC_CAPTURE procedure must be granted the DBA role. Only the SYS user can set the capture_user to SYS. If you change the capture user, then this procedure grants the new capture user enqueue privilege on the queue used by the synchronous capture and configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue. In addition, ensure that capture user has the following privileges: ■ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the synchronous capture ■ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set These privileges can be granted directly to the capture user, or they can be granted through roles. In addition, the capture user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle-supplied packages, that are invoked in rule-based transformations run by the synchronous capture. These privileges must be granted directly to the capture user. They cannot be granted through roles.

Usage Notes

If the capture user for a synchronous capture is dropped using `DROP USER . . . CASCADE`, then the synchronous capture is also dropped automatically.

BUILD Procedure

This procedure extracts the data dictionary of the current database to the redo log and automatically specifies database supplemental logging by running the following SQL statement:

```
ALTER DATABASE ADD SUPPLEMENTAL LOG DATA;
```

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains the `OUT` parameter `first_scn`, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD(
   first_scn OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD;
```

Parameters

Table 34–8 BUILD Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`first_scn`	Contains the lowest SCN value corresponding to the data dictionary extracted to the redo log that can be specified as a first SCN for a capture process

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- You can run this procedure multiple times at a source database.
- If you plan to capture changes originating at a source database with a capture process, then this procedure must be executed at the source database at least once. When the capture process is started, either at a local source database or at a downstream database, the capture process uses the extracted information in the redo log to create a LogMiner data dictionary.
- A LogMiner data dictionary is a separate data dictionary used by a capture process to determine the details of a change that it is capturing. The LogMiner data dictionary is necessary because the primary data dictionary of the source database might not be synchronized with the redo data being scanned by a capture process.
- After executing this procedure, you can query the `FIRST_CHANGE#` column of the `V$ARCHIVED_LOG` dynamic performance view where the `DICTIONARY_BEGIN` column is `YES` to determine the lowest SCN value for the database that can be specified as a first SCN for a capture process. The first SCN for a capture process is the lowest SCN in the redo log from which the capture process can capture changes.You can specify the first SCN for a capture process when you run the `CREATE_CAPTURE` or `ALTER_CAPTURE` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package.
- In a CDB, the `BUILD` procedure must be executed from the root.

CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure creates a capture process.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about creating a capture process
- Chapter 139, "DBMS_RULE_ADM" for more information about rules and rule sets

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.CREATE_CAPTURE(
   queue_name                 IN  VARCHAR2,
   capture_name               IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name              IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   start_scn                  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   source_database            IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   use_database_link          IN  BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   first_scn                  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   logfile_assignment         IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'implicit',
   negative_rule_set_name     IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_user               IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   checkpoint_retention_time  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT 60,
   start_time                 IN  TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_root_name           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_class              IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'Streams');
```

Parameters

Table 34–9 CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the queue into which the capture process enqueues changes. You must specify an existing queue in the form [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, to specify a queue in the hr schema named streams_queue, enter hr.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **Note:** The queue_name setting cannot be altered after the capture process is created.
capture_name	The name of the capture process being created. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. **Note:** The capture_name setting cannot be altered after the capture process is created.

Table 34–9 (Cont.) CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the capture process. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the capture process to capture changes. If you want to use a positive rule set for the capture process, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the hr schema named job_capture_rules, enter hr.job_capture_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL, and no negative rule set is specified, then the capture process captures all supported changes to all objects in the database, excluding database objects in the SYS and SYSTEM schemas. If you specify NULL, and a negative rule set exists for the capture process, then the capture process captures all changes that are not discarded by the negative rule set. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the changes that can be captured by a capture process
start_scn	A valid SCN for the database from which the capture process starts capturing changes. An error is returned if an invalid SCN is specified. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-23 for more information setting the start_scn parameter
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the changes to be captured originated. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. If NULL, or if the specified name is the same as the global name of the current database, then local capture is assumed and only the default values for use_database_link and first_scn can be specified.

Table 34–9 (Cont.) CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
use_database_link	If TRUE, then the capture process at a downstream database uses a database link to the source database for administrative purposes relating to the capture process. A database link with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist at the downstream database. The capture process uses the database link to prepare database objects for instantiation at the source database and run the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure at the source database, if necessary. During the creation of a downstream capture process, if the first_scn parameter is set to NULL, then the use_database_link parameter must be set to TRUE. Otherwise, an error is returned. If FALSE, then either the capture process is running on the source database, or the capture process at a downstream database does not use a database link to the source database. In this case, you must perform the following administrative tasks manually: ■ Run the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure at the source database to extract the data dictionary at the source database to the redo log when a capture process is created. ■ Obtain the first SCN for the downstream capture process if the first SCN is not specified during capture process creation. The first SCN is needed to create and maintain a capture process. ■ Prepare source database objects for instantiation.
first_scn	The lowest SCN in the redo log from which a capture process can capture changes. A non-NULL value for this parameter is valid only if the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure has been run at least once at the source database. You can query the FIRST_CHANGE# column of the V$ARCHIVED_LOG dynamic performance view where the DICTIONARY_BEGIN column is YES to determine whether the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure has been run on a source database. Any of the values returned by such a query can be used as a first_scn value if the redo log containing that SCN value is still available. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-23 for more information setting the first_scn parameter

Table 34–9 (Cont.) CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
logfile_assignment	If implicit, which is the default, then the capture process at a downstream database scans all redo log files added by redo transport services or manually from the source database to the downstream database. If explicit, then a redo log file is scanned by a capture process at a downstream database only if the capture process name is specified in the FOR *logminer_session_name* clause. If explicit, then the redo log file must be added manually to the downstream database, and redo transport services cannot be used to add redo log files to the capture process being created. If you specify explicit for this parameter for a local capture process, then the local capture process cannot use the online redo log to find changes. In this case, the capture process must use the archived redo log. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-23 for information about adding redo log files manually
negative_rule_set_name	The name of the negative rule set for the capture process. The negative rule set contains the rules that instruct the capture process to discard changes. If you want to use a negative rule set for the capture process, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a negative rule set in the hr schema named neg_capture_rules, enter hr.neg_capture_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If you specify NULL, and no positive rule set is specified, then the capture process captures all supported changes to all objects in the database, excluding database objects in the SYS and SYSTEM schemas. If you specify NULL, and a positive rule set exists for the capture process, then the capture process captures all changes that are not discarded by the positive rule set. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify both a positive and a negative rule set for a capture process, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.
capture_user	The user in whose security domain a capture process captures changes that satisfy its rule sets and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for capture process rules. If NULL, then the user who runs the CREATE_CAPTURE procedure is used. **Note:** If the capture user for a capture process is dropped using DROP USER . . . CASCADE, then the capture process is also dropped automatically. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-23 for more information about this parameter.

Table 34–9 (Cont.) CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
checkpoint_retention_time	Either specify the number of days that a capture process retains checkpoints before purging them automatically, or specify DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.INFINITE if checkpoints should not be purged automatically. If a number is specified, then a capture process purges a checkpoint the specified number of days after the checkpoint was taken. Partial days can be specified using decimal values. For example, .25 specifies 6 hours. When a checkpoint is purged, LogMiner data dictionary information for the archived redo log file that corresponds to the checkpoint is purged, and the first_scn of the capture process is reset to the SCN value corresponding to the first change in the next archived redo log file. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about checkpoint retention time
start_time	A valid time from which the capture process starts capturing changes. An error is returned if an invalid time is specified. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-23 for more information setting the start_time parameter
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. If you specify NULL, or if the specified name is the same as the global name of the current root, then local capture is assumed. If not NULL, then remote capture is assumed and a condition is added to the generated rules to filter the LCRs based on the root in the source CDB. **Note:** In a downstream capture configuration, if the capture database is CDB and the source database is a non-CDB, then specify the same value for source_root_name and source_database. The source_root_name parameter does not need to be specified for local capture for either a CDB or a non-CDB.
capture_class	The valid values are 'Streams', 'XStream' or 'GoldenGate'. If NULL is specified, then 'Streams' is assumed. **Note:** The capture_class parameter cannot be set to 'Streams' or NULL when the capture database is a CDB.

Usage Notes

Consider the following usage notes when you run this procedure:

- DBA Role Requirement
- Capture User Requirements
- First SCN and Start SCN Settings
- Explicit Log File Assignment

DBA Role Requirement

If the user who invokes this procedure is different from the user specified in the `capture_user` parameter, then the invoking user must be granted the `DBA` role. If the user who invokes this procedure is the same as the user specified in the `capture_user` parameter, then the `DBA` role is not required for the invoking user. Only the `SYS` user can set the `capture_user` to `SYS`.

Capture User Requirements

The `capture_user` parameter specifies the user who captures changes that satisfy the capture process rule sets. This user must have the necessary privileges to capture changes. This procedure grants the capture user enqueue privilege on the queue used by the capture process and configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue.

In addition, ensure that the capture user has the following privileges:

- `EXECUTE` privilege on the rule sets used by the capture process
- `EXECUTE` privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the positive rule set

These privileges can be granted directly to the capture user, or they can be granted through roles.

In addition, the capture user must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on all packages, including Oracle-supplied packages, that are invoked in rule-based transformations run by the capture process. These privileges must be granted directly to the capture user. They cannot be granted through roles.

Note:

- A capture user does not require privileges on a database object to capture changes to the database object. The capture process can pass these changes to a rule-based transformation function. Therefore, ensure that you consider security implications when you configure a capture process.
- Creation of the first capture process in a database might take some time because the data dictionary is duplicated during this creation.

First SCN and Start SCN Settings

When you create a capture process using this procedure, you can specify the first SCN and start SCN for the capture process. A capture process scans the redo data from the first SCN or an existing capture process checkpoint forward, even if the start SCN is higher than the first SCN or the checkpoint SCN. In this case, the capture process does not capture any changes in the redo data before the start SCN. Oracle recommends that, at capture process creation time, the difference between the first SCN and start SCN be as small as possible to keep the amount of redo scanned by the capture process to a minimum.

Note: When you specify the `start_time` parameter instead of the `start_scn` parameter, the `start_time` corresponds with a specific SCN. In this case, the information in this section also applies to the SCN that corresponds with the specified `start_time`.

In some cases, the behavior of the capture process is different depending on the settings of these SCN values and on whether the capture process is local or downstream.

The following table describes capture process behavior for SCN value settings:

first_scn Setting	start_scn Setting	Capture Process Type	Description
Non-NULL	NULL	Local or Downstream	The new capture process is created at the local database with a new LogMiner session starting from the value specified for the first_scn parameter. The start SCN is set to the specified first SCN value automatically, and the new capture process does not capture changes that were made before this SCN. The BUILD procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package is not run automatically. This procedure must have been run at least once before on the source database, and the specified first SCN must correspond to the SCN value of a previous build that is still available in the redo log. When the new capture process is started for the first time, it creates a new LogMiner data dictionary using the data dictionary information in the redo log. If the BUILD procedure has not been run at least once on the source database, then an error is raised when the capture process is started. Capture process behavior is the same for a local capture process and a downstream capture process created with these SCN settings, except that a local capture process is created at the source database and a downstream capture process is created at the downstream database.
Non-NULL	Non-NULL	Local or Downstream	If the specified value for the start_scn parameter is greater than or equal to the specified value for the first_scn parameter, then the new capture process is created at the local database with a new LogMiner session starting from the specified first SCN. In this case, the new capture process does not capture changes that were made before the specified start SCN. If the specified value for the start_scn parameter is less than the specified value for the first_scn parameter, then an error is raised. The BUILD procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package is not run automatically. This procedure must have been called at least once before on the source database, and the specified first_scn must correspond to the SCN value of a previous build that is still available in the redo log. When the new capture process is started for the first time, it creates a new LogMiner data dictionary using the data dictionary information in the redo log. If the BUILD procedure has not been run at least once on the source database, then an error is raised. Capture process behavior is the same for a local capture process and a downstream capture process created with these SCN settings, except that a local capture process is created at the source database and a downstream capture process is created at the downstream database.

first_scn Setting	start_scn Setting	Capture Process Type	Description
NULL	Non-NULL	Local	The new capture process creates a new LogMiner data dictionary if either one of the following conditions is true: ■ There is no existing capture process for the local source database, and the specified value for the start_scn parameter is greater than or equal to the current SCN for the database. ■ There are existing capture processes, but none of the capture processes have taken a checkpoint yet, and the specified value for the start_scn parameter is greater than or equal to the current SCN for the database. In either of these cases, the BUILD procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package is run during capture process creation. The new capture process uses the resulting build of the source data dictionary in the redo log to create a LogMiner data dictionary the first time it is started, and the first SCN corresponds to the SCN of the data dictionary build. If there are any in-flight transactions, then the BUILD procedure waits until these transactions commit before completing. An in-flight transaction is one that is active during capture process creation or a data dictionary build. However, if there is at least one existing local capture process for the local source database that has taken a checkpoint, then the new capture process shares an existing LogMiner data dictionary with one or more of the existing capture processes. In this case, a capture process with a first SCN that is lower than or equal to the specified start SCN must have been started successfully at least once. Also, if there are any in-flight transactions, then the capture process is created after these transactions commit. If there is no existing capture process for the local source database (or if no existing capture processes have taken a checkpoint yet), and the specified start SCN is less than the current SCN for the database, then an error is raised.

first_scn Setting	start_scn Setting	Capture Process Type	Description
NULL	Non-NULL	Downstream	When the CREATE_CAPTURE procedure creates a downstream capture process, the use_database_link parameter must be set to TRUE when the first_scn parameter is set to NULL. Otherwise, an error is raised. The database link is used to obtain the current SCN of the source database. The new capture process creates a new LogMiner data dictionary if either one of the following conditions is true: ▪ There is no existing capture process that captures changes to the source database at the downstream database, and the specified value for the start_scn parameter is greater than or equal to the current SCN for the source database. ▪ There are existing capture processes that capture changes to the source database at the downstream database, but none of the capture processes have taken a checkpoint yet, and the specified value for the start_scn parameter is greater than or equal to the current SCN for the source database. In either of these cases, the BUILD procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package is run during capture process creation. The first time you start the new capture process, it uses the resulting build of the source data dictionary in the redo log files copied to the downstream database to create a LogMiner data dictionary. Here, the first SCN for the new capture process corresponds to the SCN of the data dictionary build. If there are any in-flight transactions, then the BUILD procedure waits until these transactions commit before completing. However, if at least one existing capture process has taken a checkpoint and captures changes to the source database at the downstream database, then the new capture process shares an existing LogMiner data dictionary with one or more of these existing capture processes. In this case, one of these existing capture processes with a first SCN that is lower than or equal to the specified start SCN must have been started successfully at least once. Also, if there are any in-flight transactions, then the capture process is created after these transactions commit. If there is no existing capture process that captures changes to the source database at the downstream database (or no existing capture process has taken a checkpoint), and the specified start_scn parameter value is less than the current SCN for the source database, then an error is raised.
NULL	NULL	Local or Downstream	The behavior is the same as setting the first_scn parameter to NULL and setting the start_scn parameter to the current SCN of the source database.

Note: When you create a capture process using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package, both the first SCN and the start SCN are set to NULL during capture process creation.

See Also: BUILD Procedure on page 34-18 for more information about the BUILD procedure and the LogMiner data dictionary

Explicit Log File Assignment

If you specify explicit for the logfile_assignment parameter, then you add a redo log file manually to a downstream database using the following statement:

```
ALTER DATABASE REGISTER LOGICAL LOGFILE
   file_name FOR capture_process;
```

Here, *file_name* is the name of the redo log file being added and *capture_process* is the name of the capture process that will use the redo log file at the downstream database. The *capture_process* is equivalent to the *logminer_session_name* and must be specified. The redo log file must be present at the site running the downstream database. You must transfer this file manually to the site running the downstream database using the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package, FTP, or some other transfer method.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about the ALTER DATABASE statement and *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for more information registering redo log files

CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure creates a synchronous capture.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about creating a synchronous capture

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE(
   queue_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   capture_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   capture_user   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NUL);
```

Parameters

Table 34–10 CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the queue into which the synchronous capture enqueues changes. You must specify an existing queue in the form *[schema_name.]queue_name*. For example, to specify a queue in the strmadmin schema named streams_queue, enter strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **Note:** The queue_name setting cannot be altered after the synchronous capture is created.
capture_name	The name of the synchronous capture being created. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. **Note:** The capture_name setting cannot be altered after the synchronous capture is created.
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the synchronous capture. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the synchronous capture to capture changes. Specify an existing rule set in the form *[schema_name.]rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the strmadmin schema named sync_cap_rules, enter strmadmin.sync_cap_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You must specify a rule set that was created using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. If NULL, then an error is returned. **Note:** Synchronous capture rules must be added to the synchronous capture rule set using the ADD_TABLE_RULES or ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. A synchronous capture ignores rules added to the rule set with other procedures. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the changes that can be captured by a synchronous capture

Table 34–10 (Cont.) CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_user	The user in whose security domain the synchronous capture captures changes that satisfy its rule set and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for synchronous capture rules. If NULL, then the user who runs the CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE procedure is used. Only a user who is granted the DBA role can set a capture user. Only the SYS user can set the capture_user to SYS. **Note:** If the capture user for a synchronous capture is dropped using DROP USER . . . CASCADE, then the synchronous capture is also dropped automatically. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-30 for more information about this parameter.

Usage Notes

When the CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE procedure creates a synchronous capture, the procedure must obtain an exclusive lock on each table for which it will capture changes. The rules in the specified rule set for the synchronous capture determine these tables. If there are outstanding transactions on a table for which the synchronous capture will capture changes, then the procedure waits until it can obtain a lock.

The capture_user parameter specifies the user who captures changes that satisfy the synchronous capture rule set. This user must have the necessary privileges to capture changes.

In addition, ensure that the capture user has the following privileges:

- ENQUEUE privilege on the queue specified in the queue_name parameter
- EXECUTE privilege on the rule set used by the synchronous capture
- EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set

These privileges can be granted directly to the capture user, or they can be granted through roles.

In addition, the capture user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle-supplied packages, that are invoked in rule-based transformations run by the synchronous capture. These privileges must be granted directly to the capture user. These privileges cannot be granted through roles.

Note: A capture user does not require privileges on a database object to capture changes to the database object. The synchronous capture can pass these changes to a rule-based transformation function. Therefore, ensure that you consider security implications when you configure a synchronous capture.

DROP_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure drops a capture process.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.DROP_CAPTURE(
   capture_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   drop_unused_rule_sets  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 34–11 DROP_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of the capture process being dropped. Specify an existing capture process name. Do not specify an owner.
drop_unused_rule_sets	If TRUE, then the procedure drops any rule sets, positive and negative, used by the specified capture process if these rule sets are not used by any other Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients. If this procedure drops a rule set, then this procedure also drops any rules in the rule set that are not in another rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the rule sets used by the specified capture process, and the rule sets retain their rules.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The Capture Process Must Be Stopped Before It Is Dropped
- The DROP_CAPTURE Procedure and Rules-related Information

The Capture Process Must Be Stopped Before It Is Dropped

A capture process must be stopped before it can be dropped.

See Also: STOP_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-58

The DROP_CAPTURE Procedure and Rules-related Information

When you use this procedure to drop a capture process, rules-related information for the capture process created by the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package is removed from the data dictionary views for Oracle Streams rules. Information about such a rule is removed even if the rule is not in either rule set for the capture process.

The following are the data dictionary views for Oracle Streams rules:

- ALL_STREAMS_GLOBAL_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_GLOBAL_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_MESSAGE_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_MESSAGE_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_SCHEMA_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_SCHEMA_RULES

- ALL_STREAMS_TABLE_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_TABLE_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_RULES

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about Oracle Streams data dictionary views

INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure includes or excludes an extra attribute in logical change records (LCRs) captured by the specified capture process or synchronous capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE(
   capture_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   include         IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 34–12 INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of the capture process or synchronous capture. Specify an existing capture process name or synchronous capture name. Do not specify an owner.
attribute_name	The name of the attribute to be included in or excluded from LCRs captured by the capture process or synchronous capture. The following names are valid settings: ■ row_id The rowid of the row changed in a row LCR. This attribute is not included in DDL LCRs, or in row LCRs for index-organized tables. The type is VARCHAR2. ■ serial# The serial number of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is NUMBER. ■ session# The identifier of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is NUMBER. ■ thread# The thread number of the instance in which the change captured in the LCR was performed. Typically, the thread number is relevant only in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment. The type is NUMBER. ■ tx_name The name of the transaction that includes the LCR. The type is VARCHAR2. ■ username The name of the user who performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is VARCHAR2.
include	If TRUE, then the specified attribute is included in LCRs captured by the capture process or synchronous capture. If FALSE, then the specified attribute is excluded from LCRs captured by the capture process or synchronous capture.

Usage Notes

Some information is not captured by a capture process or synchronous capture unless you use this procedure to specify that the information should be captured. If you want

to exclude an extra attribute that is being captured by a capture process or synchronous capture, then specify the attribute and specify `FALSE` for the `include` parameter.

PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating all the tables in the database at another database and can enable supplemental logging for key columns or all columns in these tables. This procedure prepares the tables in the database for instantiation when a capture process will be used to capture changes to the tables in the database.

This procedure records the lowest SCN of each object in the database for instantiation. SCNs after the lowest SCN for an object can be used for instantiating the object. Running this procedure prepares all current and future objects in the database for instantiation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about instantiation and supplemental logging

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION
   supplemental_logging  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'KEYS',
   container             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameter

Table 34–13 PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
supplemental_logging	Either NONE, KEYS, or ALL. If NONE is specified, then this procedure does not enable supplemental logging for any columns in the tables in the database. This procedure does not remove existing supplemental logging specifications for these tables. If KEYS is specified, then this procedure enables supplemental logging for primary key, unique key, bitmap index, and foreign key columns in the tables in the database and for any table added to the database in the future. Primary key columns are logged unconditionally. Unique key, bitmap index, and foreign key columns are logged conditionally. Specifying KEYS does not enable supplemental logging of bitmap join index columns. If ALL is specified, then this procedure enables supplemental logging for all columns in the tables in the database and for any table added to the database in the future. The columns are logged unconditionally. Supplemental logging is not enabled for columns of the following types: LOB, LONG, LONG RAW, user-defined types, and Oracle-supplied types.
container	Either CURRENT, ALL, or *pdb_name*. If CURRENT is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for the current container. If ALL is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for all of the containers in the current CDB. If *pdb_name* is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for the specified PDB. ALL and *pdb_name* are valid only when you invoke the procedure from the root.

Usage Notes

Run this procedure at the source database.

If you use a capture process to capture all of the changes to a database, then use this procedure to prepare the tables in the database for instantiation after the capture process has been configured.

PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating all tables in the schema at another database and can enable supplemental logging for key columns or all columns in these tables. This procedure prepares the tables in the schema for instantiation when a capture process will be used to capture changes to the tables in the schema.

This procedure records the lowest SCN of each object in the schema for instantiation. SCNs after the lowest SCN for an object can be used for instantiating the object. Running this procedure prepares all current and future objects in the schema for instantiation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about instantiation and supplemental logging

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION(
   schema_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   supplemental_logging  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'KEYS',
   container             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameters

Table 34–14 PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	The name of the schema. For example, hr.
supplemental_logging	Either NONE, KEYS, or ALL. If NONE is specified, then this procedure does not enable supplemental logging for any columns in the tables in the schema. This procedure does not remove existing supplemental logging specifications for these tables. If KEYS is specified, then this procedure enables supplemental logging for primary key, unique key, bitmap index, and foreign key columns in the tables in the schema and for any table added to this schema in the future. Primary key columns are logged unconditionally. Unique key, bitmap index, and foreign key columns are logged conditionally. Specifying KEYS does not enable supplemental logging of bitmap join index columns. If ALL is specified, then this procedure enables supplemental logging for all columns in the tables in the schema and for any table added to this schema in the future. The columns are logged unconditionally. Supplemental logging is not enabled for columns of the following types: LOB, LONG, LONG RAW, user-defined types, and Oracle-supplied types.
container	Either CURRENT, ALL, or *pdb_name*. If CURRENT is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for the current container. If ALL is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for all of the containers in the current CDB. If *pdb_name* is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for the specified PDB ALL and *pdb_name* are valid only when you invoke the procedure from the root.

Usage Notes

Run this procedure at the source database. If you use a capture process to capture all of the changes to a schema, then use this procedure to prepare the tables in the schema for instantiation after the capture process has been configured.

PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION Function

This function performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating one or more tables at another database. This function returns the prepare system change number (SCN) for the table or tables being prepared for instantiation.

This function prepares one or more tables for instantiation when a synchronous capture will be used to capture changes to the tables.

This function records the lowest SCN of each table for instantiation (prepare SCN). SCNs after the lowest SCN for an object can be used for instantiating the object.

This function is overloaded. The `table_names` parameter is `VARCHAR2` datatype in one version and `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY` datatype in the other version.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about instantiation

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION(
   table_names  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION(
   table_names  IN  DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 34–15 PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
`table_names`	When the `table_names` parameter is `VARCHAR2` datatype, a comma-delimited list of the tables to prepare for instantiation. There must be no spaces between entries. When the `table_names` parameter is `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY` datatype, specify a PL/SQL associative array of this type that contains the names of the tables to prepare for instantiation. The first table name is at position 1, the second at position 2, and so on. The table does not need to be `NULL` terminated. In either version of the function, specify the name of each table in the form `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`table_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure

This procedure performs the synchronization necessary for instantiating the table at another database and can enable supplemental logging for key columns or all columns in the table. This procedure prepares the table for instantiation when a capture process will be used to capture changes to the table.

This procedure records the lowest SCN of the table for instantiation. SCNs after the lowest SCN for an object can be used for instantiating the object.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about instantiation and supplemental logging

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION(
   table_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   supplemental_logging  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'KEYS',
   container             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameters

Table 34–16 PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	The name of the table specified as `[schema_name.]object_name`. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`supplemental_logging`	Either `NONE`, `KEYS`, or `ALL`. If `NONE` is specified, then this procedure does not enable supplemental logging for any columns in the table. This procedure does not remove existing supplemental logging specifications for the table. If `KEYS` is specified, then this procedure enables supplemental logging for primary key, unique key, bitmap index, and foreign key columns in the table. The procedure places the key columns for the table in three separate log groups: the primary key columns in an unconditional log group, the unique key columns and bitmap index columns in a conditional log group, and the foreign key columns in a conditional log group. Specifying `KEYS` does not enable supplemental logging of bitmap join index columns. If `ALL` is specified, then this procedure enables supplemental logging for all columns in the table. The procedure places all of the columns for the table in an unconditional log group. Supplemental logging is not enabled for columns of the following types: LOB, `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, user-defined types, and Oracle-supplied types.

Table 34–16 (Cont.) PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
container	Either CURRENT, ALL, or *pdb_name*. If CURRENT is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for the current container. If ALL is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for all of the containers in the current CDB. If *pdb_name* is specified, then this procedure adds supplemental logging for the specified PDB. ALL and *pdb_name* are valid only when you invoke the procedure from the root.

Usage Notes

Run this procedure at the source database. If you use a capture process to capture all of the changes to a table, then use this procedure to prepare the table for instantiation after the capture process has been configured.

SET_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure sets a capture process parameter to the specified value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.SET_PARAMETER(
   capture_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   parameter     IN  VARCHAR2,
   value         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 34–17 SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of the capture process. Do not specify an owner.
parameter	The name of the parameter you are setting. See "Capture Process Parameters" on page 34-42 for a list of these parameters.
value	The value to which the parameter is set. If NULL, then the parameter is set to its default value.

Capture Process Parameters

The following table lists the parameters for the capture process.

Table 34–18 Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
capture_idkey_objects	Y or N	N	If Y, then the capture process captures ID key logical change records (LCRs). If N, then the capture process does not capture ID key LCRs. Capture processes do not fully support capturing changes to some data types from the redo log. ID key LCRs enable an XStream configuration to capture these changes and process them with an XStream client application. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter and *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about ID key LCRs
capture_sequence_nextval	Y or N	N	If Y, then the capture process captures sequence LCRs for all of the sequences in the database, except for sequences in Oracle-supplied, administrative schemas such as SYS and SYSTEM. The capture process's rule sets can filter sequence LCRs in the same way that they filter row LCRs and DDL LCRs. If N, then the capture process does not capture sequence LCRs. An apply process or XStream inbound server can use sequence LCRs to ensure that the sequence values at a destination database use the appropriate values. For increasing sequences, the sequence values at the destination are equal to or greater than the sequence values at the source database. For decreasing sequences, the sequence values at the destination are less than or equal to the sequence values at the source database. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter and "SET_PARAMETER Procedure" on page 23-56 for information about the apply_sequence_nextval apply process parameter

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
disable_on_limit	Y or N	N	If Y, then the capture process is disabled because it reached a value specified by the time_limit parameter or message_limit parameter. If N, then the capture process is restarted immediately after stopping because it reached a limit. When a capture process is restarted, it starts to capture changes at the point where it last stopped. A restarted capture process gets a new session identifier, and the processes associated with the capture process also get new session identifiers. However, the capture process number (CP*nn*) remains the same.
downstream_real_time_mine	Y or N	Y for local capture processes N for downstream capture processes	If Y, then the capture process is a real-time downstream capture process. After setting this parameter to Y, switch the redo log file at the source database using the SQL statement ALTER SYSTEM ARCHIVE LOG CURRENT to begin real-time downstream capture. If this parameter is set to Y, then redo data from the source database must be sent to the standby redo log at the downstream database. See *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about creating a real-time downstream capture process. If N, then the capture process is an archived-log downstream capture process. An error is raised if an attempt is made to set this parameter for a local capture process.
excludetag	Comma-delimited list of Oracle Streams tags	NULL	Controls whether the capture process captures DML changes that are tagged with one of the specified Oracle Streams tags. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
excludetrans	Comma-delimited list of transaction names	NULL	Controls whether the capture process captures DML changes in the specified transaction names. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
excludeuser	Comma-delimited list of user names	NULL	Controls whether the capture process captures DML changes made by the specified users. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. Specify an exact pattern match for each user name. The pattern match is case sensitive. For example, specify HR for the hr user. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
excludeuserid	Comma-delimited list of user ID values	NULL	Controls whether the capture process captures data manipulation language (DML) changes made by the specified users. Whether the capture process captures these changes depends on the settings for the getapplops and getreplicates parameters. To view the user ID for a user, query the USER_ID column in the ALL_USERS data dictionary view. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
getapplops	Y or N	Y	If Y, then the capture process captures DML changes if the original user is not specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is not specified in the excludetrans parameter. If N, then the capture process ignores DML changes if the original user is not specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is not specified in the excludetrans parameter. In either case, the capture process captures a DML change only if it satisfies the capture process's rule sets. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
getreplicates	Y or N	N	If Y, then the capture process captures DML changes if the original user is specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is specified in the excludetrans parameter. If N, then the capture process ignores DML changes if the original user is specified in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters and the transaction name is specified in the excludetrans parameter. In either case, the capture process captures a DML change only if it satisfies the capture process's rule sets. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
ignore_transaction	A valid transaction ID or NULL	NULL	Instructs the capture process to ignore the specified transaction from the source database, effective immediately. The capture process eliminates all subsequent LCRs for the transaction. If the specified transaction is committed successfully at the source database, the destination database will receive a ROLLBACK statement instead, and any LCRs from the transaction that were enqueued before the ignore transaction request are rolled backed at the destination database. If NULL, then the capture process ignores this parameter. Use caution when setting this parameter because ignoring a transaction might lead to data divergence between the source database and destination database. To ignore multiple transactions, specify each transaction in a separate call to the SET_PARAMETER procedure. The DBA_CAPTURE_PARAMETERS view displays a comma-delimited list of all transactions to be ignored. To clear the list of ignored transactions, run the SET_PARAMETER procedure and specify NULL for the ignore_transaction parameter.
ignore_unsupported_table	A fully qualified table name, *, or -	*	Controls the behavior of the capture process when it tries to capture changes to a specified table or to an unsupported table. A capture process tries to capture changes to an unsupported table when its rule sets instruct it to do so. If you do not want the capture process to try to capture changes to unsupported tables, then ensure that the capture process's rule sets exclude unsupported tables. When a table name is specified, the capture process does not capture changes to the specified table. The table name must be entered in the form *table_owner. table_name*. For example. hr.employees. To specify multiple tables, specify each table in a separate call to the SET_PARAMETER procedure. When * is specified and the capture process tries to capture a change to an unsupported table, the capture process ignores the change and continues to run. The change to the unsupported table is not captured, and the capture process records the unsupported table in the alert log. When - is specified and the capture process tries to capture a change to an unsupported table, the capture process aborts.

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
include_objects	A list of tables or schema names separated by commas	none	Directs capture to include changes from the specified tables or schemas. An LCR that is selected by include_objects is passed to the outbound server regardless of any further filtering that is specified. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use or attempt to set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
inline_lob_optimization	Y or N	N	If Y, then LOBs that can be processed inline (such as small LOBs) are included in the LCR directly, rather than sending LOB chunk LCRs. If N, then each LOB column is sent as NULL followed by LOB chunk LCRs to update the LOB column. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use or attempt to set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
maximum_scn	A valid SCN or INFINITE	INFINITE	The capture process is disabled before capturing a change record with an SCN greater than or equal to the value specified. If INFINITE, then the capture process runs regardless of the SCN value.

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
max_sga_size	A positive integer	INFINITE	Controls the amount of system global area (SGA) memory allocated specifically to the capture process, in megabytes. The capture process attempts to allocate memory up to this limit. A capture process uses Oracle LogMiner to scan for changes in the redo log. The memory is allocated for the duration of the capture process session and is released when the capture process becomes disabled. **Note:** The sum of system global area (SGA) memory allocated for all components on a database must be less than the value set for the STREAMS_POOL_SIZE initialization parameter. If NULL, then the capture component uses the original default value. A NULL value has the same effect as resetting the parameter to its default value. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use or attempt to set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
merge_threshold	A negative integer, 0, a positive integer, or INFINITE	60	The amount of time, in seconds, between the message creation time of the original capture process and the message creation time of the cloned capture process. Specifically, if the difference, in seconds, between the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process and the original capture process is less than or equal to the value specified for this parameter, then automatic merge begins by running the MERGE_STREAMS procedure. If the difference is greater than the value specified by this parameter, then automatic merge does not begin, and the value is recorded in the LAG column of the DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE view. The CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME is recorded in the V$STREAMS_CAPTURE view. This parameter is relevant only when changes captured by the capture process are applied by two or more apply processes and the split_threshold parameter is set to a value other than INFINITE. If a negative value is specified, then automatic merge is disabled. If 0 (zero) is specified, then there must be no lag between the original capture process and the cloned capture process to begin the merge. If INFINITE is specified, then automatic merging starts immediately. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*
message_limit	A positive integer or INFINITE	INFINITE	The capture process stops after capturing the specified number of messages. If INFINITE, then the capture process continues to run regardless of the number of messages captured.

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
message_tracking_frequency	0 or a positive integer	2000000	The frequency at which messages captured by the capture process are tracked automatically. For example, if this parameter is set to the default value of 2000000, then every two-millionth message is tracked automatically. The tracking label used for automatic message tracking is *capture_process_name*:AUTOTRACK, where *capture_process_name* is the name of the capture process. Only the first 20 bytes of the capture process name are used; the rest is truncated if it exceeds 20 bytes. If 0 (zero), then no messages are tracked automatically. See *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about message tracking.
parallelism	A positive integer	1	The number of preparer servers that can concurrently mine the redo log for the capture process. A capture process consists of one reader server, one or more preparer servers, and one builder server. The preparer servers concurrently format changes found in the redo log into logical change records (LCRs). Each reader server, preparer server, and builder server is a process, and the number of preparer servers equals the number specified for the parallelism capture process parameter. So, if parallelism is set to 5, then a capture process uses a total of seven processes: one reader server, five preparer servers, and one builder server. Setting the parallelism parameter to a number higher than the number of available parallel execution servers might disable the capture process. Ensure that the PROCESSES initialization parameter is set appropriately when you set the parallelism capture process parameter. **Note:** When you change the value of this parameter, the capture process is stopped and restarted automatically. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about capture process components
skip_autofiltered_table_ddl	Y or N	Y	If Y, then the capture process does not capture data definition language (DDL) changes to tables that are automatically filtered by the capture process. If N, then the capture process can capture DDL changes to tables that are automatically filtered by the capture process if the DDL changes satisfy the capture process rule sets. The AUTO_FILTERED column in the DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED data dictionary view shows which tables are automatically filtered by capture processes.

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
split_threshold	0, a positive integer, or INFINITE	1800	The amount of time, in seconds, that a stream is broken before the stream is automatically split from other streams that flow from the capture process. When a stream is split, the capture process, queue, and propagation are cloned. In this case, a stream is a flow of logical change records (LCRs) that flows from a capture process to an apply. A stream is broken when LCRs captured by the capture process cannot reach the apply process. For example, a stream is broken when the relevant propagation or apply process is disabled. This parameter is relevant only when changes captured by the capture process are applied by two or more apply processes. If 0 (zero), then automatic splitting starts immediately. If INFINITE, then automatic splitting is disabled. The stream is not split regardless of the amount of time that it is broken. This parameters is designed to be used with the merge_threshold parameter. You can monitor an automatic split and merge operation by querying the DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE view. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*
startup_seconds	0, a positive integer, or INFINITE	0	The maximum number of seconds to wait for another instantiation of the same capture process to finish. If the other instantiation of the same capture process does not finish within this time, then the capture process does not start. This parameter is useful only if you are starting the capture process manually. If INFINITE, then the capture process does not start until another instantiation of the same capture process finishes.
time_limit	A positive integer or INFINITE	INFINITE	The capture process stops as soon as possible after the specified number of seconds since it started. If INFINITE, then the capture process continues to run until it is stopped explicitly.
trace_level	0 or a positive integer	0	Set this parameter only under the guidance of Oracle Support Services.

Table 34–18 (Cont.) Capture Process Parameters

Parameter Name	Possible Values	Default	Description
use_rac_service	Y or N	Y if Streams N if XStream	If Y, then the capture process is run in the owning instance of its queue. If N, then the client specifies where the capture process is to run. **Note:** This parameter is intended for XStream. Do not use or attempt to set this parameter in an Oracle Streams replication environment unless XStream optimizations are enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure. See "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75 for information about enabling XStream optimizations. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 34-53 for more information about this parameter
write_alert_log	Y or N	Y	If Y, then the capture process writes a message to the alert log on exit. If N, then the capture process does not write a message to the alert log on exit. The message specifies the reason the capture process stopped.
xout_client_exists	Y or N	Y if the capture process sends LCRs to XStream outbound servers N if the capture process sends LCRs to Oracle Streams apply processes	Y indicates that the capture process sends LCRs to one or more XStream outbound servers. N indicates that the capture process sends LCRs to one or more Oracle Streams apply processes. A single capture process cannot send LCRs to both outbound servers and apply processes. In an XStream configuration where an outbound server runs on a different database than its capture process, set this parameter to Y to enable the capture process to send LCRs to the outbound server. **Note:** Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to the SET_PARAMETER procedure:

- Delays Are Possible Before New Parameter Settings Take Effect
- Parameters Interpreted as Positive Integers
- Parameters with a System Change Number (SCN) Setting
- Parameters that Require XStream Optimizations
- XStream or Oracle GoldenGate Integrated Capture Configurations

Delays Are Possible Before New Parameter Settings Take Effect

When you alter a parameter value, a short amount of time might pass before the new value for the parameter takes effect.

Parameters Interpreted as Positive Integers

For all parameters that are interpreted as positive integers, the maximum possible value is 4,294,967,295. Where applicable, specify INFINITE for larger values.

Parameters with a System Change Number (SCN) Setting

For parameters that require an SCN setting, any valid SCN value can be specified.

Parameters that Require XStream Optimizations

A capture process uses the following parameters only when the capture process is sending logical change records (LCRs) to an XStream outbound server or when XStream optimizations are enabled for Oracle Streams components:

- capture_idkey_objects
- capture_sequence_nextval
- excludetag
- excludetrans
- excludeuser
- excludeuserid
- getapplops
- getreplicates
- include_objects
- inline_lob_optimization
- max_sga_size
- use_rac_services

The DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure enables XStream optimizations for Oracle Streams. When XStream optimizations are not enabled by the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS procedure, a capture process raises an error if one of these parameters is set to any value other than its default value.

When XStream optimizations are enabled for Oracle Streams and the capture_idkey_objects parameter is set to Y, a capture process can capture ID key LCRs. ID key LCRs do not contain all of the columns for a row change. Instead, they contain the rowid of the changed row, a group of key columns to identify the row in the table, and the data for the scalar columns of the table that are supported by capture processes. An apply process can apply these changes using the information available the ID key LCRs.

To determine the database objects for which a capture process will capture ID key LCRs, run the following query on the source database:

```
SELECT OWNER, OBJECT_NAME
  FROM DBA_XSTREAM_OUT_SUPPORT_MODE
  WHERE SUPPORT_MODE='ID KEY';
```

Note: Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

XStream or Oracle GoldenGate Integrated Capture Configurations

In an XStream or Oracle GoldenGate integrated capture configuration, the following parameters control which changes are captured by a capture process:

- capture_idkey_objects
- capture_sequence_nextval

- excludetag
- excludetrans
- excludeuser
- excludeuserid
- getapplops
- getreplicates
- include_objects
- inline_lob_optimization
- max_sga_size
- use_rac_services

You can set these parameters to avoid change cycling. Change cycling sends a change back to the database where it originated. Typically, change cycling should be avoided in a replication environment so that the same change is not made to a database more than once.

In an XStream or Oracle GoldenGate integrated capture configuration that performs bi-directional replication, a GoldenGate Replicat process runs on the source database for a capture process. Therefore, the changes made by the GoldenGate Replicat are recorded in the redo log.

If an integrated configuration performs bi-directional replication, then, to avoid change cycling, the capture process should not capture the changes made by the Oracle GoldenGate Replicat process. To accomplish this goal, use the default settings for the `getapplops` and `getreplicates` parameters and exclude changes made by the user running the Replicat process. To exclude these changes, specify this user in the `excludeuserid` or `excludeuser` parameter. Typically, the user running the Oracle GoldenGate Replicat process is the XStream administrator.

In some configurations, the goal might be to capture or exclude changes made by applications or by the Replicat process. For example, an intermediate database in a replication environment might capture all of the changes made to the database, including both application changes and Replicat process changes, and send these changes to a different destination database.

Table 34–19 describes the capture process behavior when at least one of the exclude parameters is non-`NULL`.

Table 34–19 Behavior When at Least One exclude Parameter Is Non-NULL

getapplops Setting	getreplicates Setting	Description
`Y`	`Y`	The capture process captures all DML changes.
`Y`	`N`	The capture process captures the DML changes made by the users that are not in the `excludeuserid` or `excludeuser` parameters. The capture process captures the DML changes that are not in the transactions in the `excludetrans` parameter. The capture process captures only the DML changes that do not have a tag that is in the `excludetags` parameter.

Table 34–19 (Cont.) Behavior When at Least One exclude Parameter Is Non-NULL

getapplops Setting	getreplicates Setting	Description
N	Y	The capture process captures only the DML changes made by the users that are in the excludeuserid or excludeuser parameters. The capture process captures only the DML changes that are in the transactions in the excludetrans parameter. The capture process captures only the DML changes that have a tag that is in the excludetags parameter.
N	N	The capture process does not capture any DML changes.

Table 34–19 describes the capture process behavior when all of the exclude parameters are set to NULL.

Table 34–20 Behavior When All exclude Parameters Are Set to NULL

getapplops Setting	getreplicates Setting	Description
Y	Y	The capture process captures all DML changes.
Y	N	The capture process captures all DML changes.
N	Y	The capture process does not capture any DML changes.
N	N	The capture process does not capture any DML changes.

See the documentation for the Oracle GoldenGate product for more information:

http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E15881_01/index.htm

Note: A capture process evaluates a change using these parameters before it evaluates a change using its rule sets. Therefore, a capture process can discard a change before the change is evaluated against the capture process's rule sets. Also, regardless of the settings for these parameters, a capture process captures a change only if the change satisfies the capture process's rule sets.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide*

START_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure starts the capture process, which mines redo logs and enqueues the mined redo information into the associated queue.

The start status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is ENABLED, then the capture process is started upon database instance startup.

The capture process is a background Oracle process and is prefixed by c.

The enqueue and dequeue state of DBMS_AQADM.START_QUEUE and DBMS_AQADM.STOP_QUEUE have no effect on the start status of a capture process.

See Also: Chapter 159, "DBMS_STREAMS_ADM"

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.START_CAPTURE(
   capture_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 34–21 START_CAPTURE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of the capture process. Do not specify an owner. The capture process uses LogMiner to capture changes in the redo information. A NULL setting is not allowed.

Usage Notes

The capture process status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is ENABLED, then the capture process is started upon database instance startup. A capture process (*cnnn*) is an Oracle background process.

STOP_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure stops the capture process from mining redo logs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.STOP_CAPTURE(
   capture_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   force         IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 34–22 STOP_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of the capture process. A NULL setting is not allowed. Do not specify an owner.
force	If TRUE, then the procedure stops the capture process as soon as possible. If the capture process cannot stop normally, then it aborts. If FALSE, then the procedure stops the capture process as soon as possible. If the capture process cannot stop normally, then an ORA-26672 error is returned, and the capture process might continue to run.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- The capture process status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is DISABLED or ABORTED, then the capture process is not started upon database instance startup.
- A capture process is an Oracle background process with a name in the form CP*nn*, where *nn* can include letters and numbers.
- The enqueue and dequeue state of DBMS_AQADM.START_QUEUE and DBMS_AQADM.STOP_QUEUE have no effect on the stop status of a capture process.

35

DBMS_COMPARISON

The DBMS_COMPARISON package provides interfaces to compare and converge database objects at different databases.

This chapter contains the following topics:

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about using the basic features of this package

Using DBMS_COMPARISON

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package.

Overview

The DBMS_COMPARISON package is an Oracle-supplied package that you can use to compare database objects at two databases. This package also enables you converge the database objects so that they are consistent at different databases. Typically, this package is used in environments that share a database object at multiple databases. When copies of the same database object exist at multiple databases, the database object is a **shared database object**. Several data dictionary views contain information about comparisons made with the DBMS_COMPARISON package.

Shared database objects might be maintained by data replication. For example, materialized views or Oracle Streams components might replicate the database objects and maintain them at multiple databases. A custom application might also maintain shared database objects. When a database object is shared, it can diverge at the databases that share it. You can use this package to identify differences in the shared database objects. After identifying the differences, you can optionally use this package to synchronize the shared database objects.

To compare a database object that is shared at two different databases, complete the following general steps:

1. Run the CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure in this package to create a **comparison**. The comparison identifies the database objects to compare and specifies parameters for the comparison.
2. Run the COMPARE Function in this package to compare the database object at the two databases and identify differences. This function returns TRUE when no differences are found and FALSE when differences are found. This function also populates data dictionary views with comparison results. Separate comparison results are generated for each execution of the COMPARE function.
3. If you want to examine the comparison results, query the following data dictionary views:
   - DBA_COMPARISON_SCAN
   - USER_COMPARISON_SCAN
   - DBA_COMPARISON_SCAN_VALUES
   - USER_COMPARISON_SCAN_VALUES
   - DBA_COMPARISON_ROW_DIF
   - USER_COMPARISON_ROW_DIF
4. If there are differences, and you want to synchronize the database objects at the two databases, then run the CONVERGE procedure in this package.

After you create a comparison with the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure in the DBMS_COMPARISON package, you can run the comparison at any time using the COMPARE function. Each time you run the COMPARE function, it records comparison results in the appropriate data dictionary views. Comparison results might be modified when subprograms in this package are invoked and the scans in the comparison results are specified. For example, comparison results might be modified when you run the RECHECK function.

The comparison results for a single execution of the COMPARE function can include one or more **scans**. A scan checks for differences in some or all of the rows in a shared database object at a single point in time. You can compare database objects multiple times, and a unique scan ID identifies each scan in the comparison results.

A **bucket** is a range of rows in a database object that is being compared. Buckets improve performance by splitting the database object into ranges and comparing the ranges independently. Every comparison divides the rows being compared into an appropriate number of buckets, and each bucket is compared by a scan.

Each time the `COMPARE` function splits a bucket into smaller buckets, it performs new scans of the smaller buckets. The scan that analyzes a larger bucket is the **parent scan** of each scan that analyzes the smaller buckets into which the larger bucket was split. The **root scan** in the comparison results is the highest level parent scan. The root scan does not have a parent.

You can recheck a scan using the `RECHECK` function, and you can converge a scan using the `CONVERGE` procedure. When you want to recheck or converge all of the rows comparison results, specify the root scan ID for the comparison results in the appropriate subprogram. When you want to recheck or converge a portion of the rows in comparison results, specify the scan ID of the scan that contains the differences.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about comparisons, including detailed information about scans, buckets, parent scans, and root scans

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting EXECUTE on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted EXECUTE privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

Each subprogram in the DBMS_COMPARISON package has a comparison_name parameter. The current user must be the owner of the specified comparison to run a subprogram in the DBMS_COMPARISON package.

To run the COMPARE function, RECHECK function, or CONVERGE procedure, the following users must have the SELECT or READ privilege on each copy of the shared database object:

- The comparison owner at the local database
- When a database link is used, the user at the remote database to which the comparison owner connects through a database link

The CONVERGE procedure also requires additional privileges for one of these users at the database where it makes changes to the shared database object. The user must have INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE privileges on the shared database object at this database.

In addition, when the CONVERGE procedure is run with either the local_converge_tag or remote_converge_tag parameter set to a non-NULL value, then the following additional requirements must be met:

- If the local table "wins," then the user at the remote database to which the invoker of the CONVERGE procedure connects through a database link must be granted either EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE or EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package.
- If the remote table "wins," then the invoker of the CONVERGE procedure at the local database must be granted either EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE or EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package.

Note: The database administrator (DBA) can assume control over some of the DBMS_COMPARISON functions and procedures owned by other users. This control applies to DROP_COMPARISON and PURGE_COMPARISON. This DBA override can be particularly useful in cleanup operations when comparisons created by another user need to be dropped

---

Constants

The DBMS_COMPARISON package defines several enumerated constants to use specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name. For example, DBMS_COMPARISON.CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL.

Table 35–1 lists the parameters and enumerated constants.

Table 35–1 DBMS_COMPARISON Parameters with Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Option	Type	Description
comparison_mode	■ CMP_COMPARE_MODE_OBJECT	VARCHAR2(30)	CMP_COMPARE_MODE_OBJECT is a database object. This constant can be specified as 'OBJECT'.
scan_mode	■ CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL ■ CMP_SCAN_MODE_RANDOM ■ CMP_SCAN_MODE_CYCLIC ■ CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM	VARCHAR2(30)	CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL indicates that the entire database object is compared. This constant can be specified as 'FULL'. CMP_SCAN_MODE_RANDOM indicates that a random portion of the database object is compared. This constant can be specified as 'RANDOM'. CMP_SCAN_MODE_CYCLIC indicates that a portion of the database object is compared when you perform a single comparison. When you compare the database object again, another portion of the database object is compared, starting where the last comparison ended. This constant can be specified as 'CYCLIC'. CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM indicates that the user who runs the subprogram specifies the range to compare in the database object. This constant can be specified as 'CUSTOM'.
converge_options	■ CMP_CONVERGE_LOCAL_WINS ■ CMP_CONVERGE_REMOTE_WINS	VARCHAR2(30)	CMP_CONVERGE_LOCAL_WINS indicates that the column values at the local database replace the column values at the remote database when these column values are different. This constant can be specified as 'LOCAL'. CMP_CONVERGE_REMOTE_WINS indicates that the column values at the remote database replace the column values at the local database when these column values are different. This constant can be specified as 'REMOTE'.

Table 35–1 (Cont.) DBMS_COMPARISON Parameters with Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Option	Type	Description
null_value	■ CMP_NULL_VALUE_DEF	VARCHAR2(100)	CMP_NULL_VALUE_DEF indicates that ORA$STREAMS$NV is substituted for NULL values in database objects during comparison. This constant can be specified as 'ORA$STREAMS$NV'.
max_num_buckets	■ CMP_MAX_NUM_BUCKETS	INTEGER	CMP_MAX_NUM_BUCKETS indicates that the maximum number of buckets is 1,000. This constant can be specified as 1000.
min_rows_in_bucket	■ CMP_MIN_ROWS_IN_BUCKET	INTEGER	CMP_MIN_ROWS_IN_BUCKET indicates that the minimum number of rows in a bucket is 10,000. This constant can be specified as 10000.

Views

The DBMS_COMPARISON package uses the following views:

- DBA_COMPARISON
- USER_COMPARISON
- DBA_COMPARISON_COLUMNS
- USER_COMPARISON_COLUMNS
- DBA_COMPARISON_SCAN
- USER_COMPARISON_SCAN
- DBA_COMPARISON_SCAN_VALUES
- USER_COMPARISON_SCAN_VALUES
- DBA_COMPARISON_ROW_DIF
- USER_COMPARISON_ROW_DIF

See Also: *Oracle Database Reference*

Operational Notes

This section contains the following operational notes for the DBMS_COMPARISON package:

- Oracle Database Release Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package
- Database Character Set Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package
- Database Object Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package
- Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package
- Datatype Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package
- Only Converge Rows That Are Not Being Updated

Oracle Database Release Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package

Meet the following Oracle Database release requirements when running the subprograms in the DBMS_COMPARISON package:

- The local database that runs the subprograms in the DBMS_COMPARISON package must be an Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1) database.
- The remote database must be an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 (10.1) or later database. Oracle databases before this release and non-Oracle databases are not supported.

Database Character Set Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package

The database character sets must be the same for the databases that contain the database objects being compared.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for information about database character sets

Database Object Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package

The DBMS_COMPARISON package can compare the following types of database objects:

- Tables
- Single-table views
- Materialized views
- Synonyms for tables, single-table views, and materialized views

Database objects of different types can be compared and converged at different databases. For example, a table at one database and a materialized view at another database can be compared and converged with this package.

To run the subprograms in the DBMS_COMPARISON package, the specified database objects must have the same shape at each database. Specifically, the database objects must have the same number of columns at each database, and the datatypes of corresponding columns must match.

If a database object being compared contains columns that do not exist in the other database object, then you can compare the database objects by excluding the extra columns during comparison creation. Use the column_list parameter in the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure to list only the columns that exist in both database objects.

See Also: CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-20

Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package

This section discusses number, timestamp, and interval columns. These include the following datatypes:

- Number columns are of the following datatypes: `NUMBER`, `FLOAT`, `BINARY_FLOAT`, and `BINARY_DOUBLE`.
- Timestamp columns are of the following datatypes: `TIMESTAMP`, `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE`, and `TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE`
- Interval columns are of the following datatypes: `INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH` and `INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND`.

For all scan modes to be supported by the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package, the database objects must have one of the following types of indexes:

- A single-column index on a number, timestamp, interval, or `DATE` datatype column
- A composite index that only includes number, timestamp, interval, or `DATE` datatype columns. Each column in the composite index must either have a `NOT NULL` constraint or be part of the primary key.

For the scan modes `CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL` and `CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM` to be supported, the database objects must have one of the following types of indexes:

- A single-column index on a number, timestamp, interval, `DATE`, `VARCHAR2`, or `CHAR` datatype column
- A composite index that only includes number, timestamp, interval, `DATE`, `VARCHAR2`, or `CHAR` columns. Each column in the composite index must either have a `NOT NULL` constraint or be part of the primary key.

If the database objects do not have one of these types of indexes, then the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package does not support the database objects. For example, if the database objects only have a single index on an `NVARCHAR2` column, then the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package does not support them. Or, if the database objects have only one index, and it is a composite index that includes a `NUMBER` column and an `NCHAR` column, then the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package does not support them.

You can specify an index when you create a comparison using the `index_schema_name` and `index_name` parameters in the `CREATE_COMPARISON` procedure. If you specify an index, then make sure the columns in the index meet the requirements of the scan mode used for the comparison.

The index columns in a comparison must uniquely identify every row involved in a comparison. The following constraints satisfy this requirement:

- A primary key constraint
- A unique constraint on one or more non-`NULL` columns

If these constraints are not present on a table, then use the `index_schema_name` and `index_name` parameters in the `CREATE_COMPARISON` procedure to specify an index whose columns satisfy this requirement.

When a single index value identifies both a local row and a remote row, the two rows must be copies of the same row in the replicated tables. In addition, each pair of copies of the same row must always have the same index value.

The DBMS_COMPARISON package can use an index only if all of the columns in the index are included in the column_list parameter when the comparison is created with the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure.

After a comparison is created, you can determine the index column or columns for it by running the following query:

```
SELECT COLUMN_NAME, COLUMN_POSITION FROM DBA_COMPARISON_COLUMNS
  WHERE COMPARISON_NAME = 'COMPARE_CUSTOM' AND
        INDEX_COLUMN    = 'Y';
```

If there are multiple index columns, then the index column with 1 for the COLUMN_POSITION is the lead index column in the composite index.

See Also:

- "Constants" on page 35-6 for information about scan modes
- CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-20 for information about specifying an index for a comparison

Datatype Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package

The DBMS_COMPARISON package can compare data in columns of the following datatypes:

- VARCHAR2
- NVARCHAR2
- NUMBER
- FLOAT
- DATE
- BINARY_FLOAT
- BINARY_DOUBLE
- TIMESTAMP
- TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
- TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE
- INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH
- INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND
- RAW
- CHAR
- NCHAR

If a column with datatype TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE is compared, then the two databases must use the same time zone. Also, if a column with datatype NVARCHAR2 or NCHAR is compared, then the two databases must use the same national character set.

The DBMS_COMPARISON package cannot compare data in columns of the following datatypes:

- LONG
- LONG RAW
- ROWID

- UROWID
- CLOB
- NCLOB
- BLOB
- BFILE
- User-defined types (including object types, REFs, varrays, and nested tables)
- Oracle-supplied types (including any types, XML types, spatial types, and media types)

You can compare database objects that contain unsupported columns by excluding the unsupported columns during comparison creation. Use the column_list parameter in the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure to list only the supported columns in a shared database object.

See Also:

- CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-20
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about datatypes
- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for information about national character sets

Only Converge Rows That Are Not Being Updated

You should only converge rows that are not being updated on either database. For example, if the shared database object is updated by replication components, then only converge rows for which replication changes have been applied and make sure no new changes are in the process of being replicated for these rows. If you compare replicated database objects, then it is typically best to compare them during a time of little or no replication activity to identify persistent differences.

Attention: If a scan identifies that a row is different in the shared database object at two databases, and the row is modified after the scan, then it can result in unexpected data in the row after the CONVERGE procedure is run.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about the DBMS_COMPARISON package in an Oracle Streams replication environment

Data Structures

The DBMS_COMPARISON package defines a RECORD type.

RECORD Types

- COMPARISON_TYPE Record Type

COMPARISON_TYPE Record Type

Contains information returned by the `COMPARE` function or `CONVERGE` procedure in the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package.

> **Note:** The `COMPARE` function only returns a value for the `scan_id` field.

Syntax

```
TYPE COMPARISON_TYPE IS RECORD(
  scan_id            NUMBER,
  loc_rows_merged    NUMBER,
  rmt_rows_merged    NUMBER,
  loc_rows_deleted   NUMBER,
  rmt_rows_deleted   NUMBER);
```

Fields

Table 35–2 COMPARISON_TYPE Attributes

Field	Description
`scan_id`	The scan ID of the scan
`loc_rows_merged`	The number of rows in the local database object updated with information from the database object at the remote site
`rmt_rows_merged`	The number of rows in the database object updated at the remote site with information from the database object at the local site
`loc_rows_deleted`	The number of rows deleted from the local database object
`rmt_rows_deleted`	The number of rows deleted from the remote database object

Summary of DBMS_COMPARISON Subprograms

Table 35–3 DBMS_COMPARISON Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
COMPARE Function on page 35-16	Performs the specified comparison
CONVERGE Procedure on page 35-18	Executes data manipulation language (DML) changes to synchronize the portion of the database object that was compared in the specified scan
CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-20	Creates a comparison
DROP_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-24	Drops a comparison
PURGE_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-25	Purges the comparison results, or a subset of the comparison results, for a comparison
RECHECK Function on page 35-26	Rechecks the differences in a specified scan for a comparison

COMPARE Function

This function performs the specified comparison.

Each time a comparison is performed, it results in at least one new scan, and each scan has a unique scan ID. You can define and name a comparison using the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure.

See Also:

- "Overview" on page 35-3
- CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure on page 35-20

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPARISON.COMPARE(
   comparison_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   scan_info        OUT  COMPARISON_TYPE,
   min_value        IN   VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   max_value        IN   VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   perform_row_dif  IN   BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 35–4 COMPARE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
comparison_name	The name of the comparison.
scan_info	Information about the compare operation returned in the COMPARISON_TYPE datatype. See COMPARISON_TYPE Record Type on page 35-14.
min_value	When the scan mode for the comparison is set to CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, specify the minimum index column value for the range of rows that are being compared. To determine the index column for a comparison, query the DBA_COMPARISON_COLUMNS data dictionary view. For a composite index, specify a value for the column with column_position equal to 1 in the DBA_COMPARISON_COLUMNS view. See "Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package" on page 35-10. If the scan mode is set to a value other than CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then this parameter must be set to NULL. If NULL and the scan_mode parameter is set to CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then an error is raised. To determine the scan mode for the comparison, query the DBA_COMPARISON data dictionary view. See Constants on page 35-6 for information about scan modes.

Table 35–4 (Cont.) COMPARE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
max_value	When the scan mode for the comparison is set to CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, specify the maximum index column value for the range of rows that are being compared. To determine the index column for a comparison, query the DBA_COMPARISON_COLUMNS data dictionary view. For a composite index, specify a value for the column with column_position equal to 1 in the DBA_COMPARISON_COLUMNS view. See "Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package" on page 35-10. If the scan mode is set to a value other than CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then this parameter must be set to NULL. If NULL and the scan_mode parameter is set to CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then an error is raised. To determine the scan mode for the comparison, query the DBA_COMPARISON data dictionary view. See Constants on page 35-6 for information about scan modes.
perform_row_dif	If TRUE, then compares each row individually in the database object being compared after reaching the smallest possible bucket for the comparison. If FALSE, then compares buckets for differences but does not compare each row individually when differences are found in the smallest possible bucket. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for information about buckets.

Return Values

This function returns TRUE when no differences are found in the database objects being compared. This function returns FALSE when differences are found in the database objects being compared.

CONVERGE Procedure

This procedure executes data manipulation language (DML) changes to synchronize the portion of the database objects that was compared in the specified scan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPARISON.CONVERGE(
   comparison_name      IN   VARCHAR2,
   scan_id              IN   NUMBER,
   scan_info            OUT  COMPARISON_TYPE,
   converge_options     IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT CMP_CONVERGE_LOCAL_WINS,
   perform_commit       IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   local_converge_tag   IN   RAW       DEFAULT NULL,
   remote_converge_tag  IN   RAW       DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 35–5 CONVERGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
comparison_name	The name of the comparison.
scan_id	The identifier for the scan that contains the differences between the database objects being converged. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for more information about specifying a scan ID in this parameter.
scan_info	Information about the converge operation returned in the COMPARISON_TYPE datatype. See COMPARISON_TYPE Record Type on page 35-14.
converge_options	Either the CMP_CONVERGE_LOCAL_WINS constant or the CMP_CONVERGE_REMOTE_WINS constant. See "Constants" on page 35-6 for information about these constants.
perform_commit	If TRUE, then performs a COMMIT periodically while making the DML changes. The CONVERGE procedure might perform more than one COMMIT when this parameter is set to TRUE. If FALSE, then does not perform a COMMIT after making DML changes.
local_converge_tag	The Oracle Streams tag to set in the session on the local database before performing any changes to converge the data in the database objects being converged. If non-NULL, then this parameter setting takes precedence over the local_converge_tag parameter in the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure that created the comparison. If NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the local_converge_tag parameter in the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure that created the comparison is used. See "Security Model" on page 35-5 for information about security requirement related to this parameter, and see the *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags.

Table 35–5 (Cont.) CONVERGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remote_converge_tag	The Oracle Streams tag to set in the session on the remote database before performing any changes to converge the data in the database objects being converged. If non-NULL, then this parameter setting takes precedence over the remote_converge_tag parameter in the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure that created the comparison. If NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the remote_converge_tag parameter in the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure that created the comparison is used. See "Security Model" on page 35-5 for information about security requirement related to this parameter, and see the *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags.

Usage Notes

If one of the database objects being converged is a read-only materialized view, then the converge_options parameter must be set to ensure that the read-only materialized view "wins" in the converge operation. The CONVERGE procedure raises an error if it tries to make changes to a read-only materialized view.

CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure

This procedure creates a comparison.

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPARISON.CREATE_COMPARISON(
   comparison_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   schema_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   dblink_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   index_schema_name    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   index_name           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remote_schema_name   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remote_object_name   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comparison_mode      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT CMP_COMPARE_MODE_OBJECT,
   column_list          IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   scan_mode            IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL,
   scan_percent         IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   null_value           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT CMP_NULL_VALUE_DEF,
   local_converge_tag   IN  RAW       DEFAULT NULL,
   remote_converge_tag  IN  RAW       DEFAULT NULL,
   max_num_buckets      IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT CMP_MAX_NUM_BUCKETS,
   min_rows_in_bucket   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT CMP_MIN_ROWS_IN_BUCKET);
```

Parameters

Table 35–6 CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
comparison_name	The name of the comparison.
schema_name	The name of the schema that contains the local database object to compare.
object_name	The name of the local database object to compare.
dblink_name	Database link to the remote database. The specified database object in the remote database is compared with the database object in the local database. If NULL, then the comparison is configured to compare two database objects in the local database. In this case, parameters that specify the remote database object apply to the second database object in the comparison and to operations on the second database object. For example, specify the second database object in this procedure by using the remote_schema_name and remote_object_name parameters.
index_schema_name	The name of the schema that contains the index. If NULL, then the schema specified in the schema_name parameter is used.
index_name	The name of the index. If NULL, then the system determines the index columns for the comparison automatically. If the index_schema_name parameter is non-NULL, then the index_name parameter must also be non-NULL. Otherwise, an error is raised. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 35-22 for more information about specifying an index

Table 35–6 (Cont.) CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remote_schema_name	The name of the schema that contains the database object at the remote database. Specify a non-NULL value if the schema names are different at the two databases. If NULL, then the schema specified in the schema_name parameter is used.
remote_object_name	The name of the database object at the remote database. Specify a non-NULL value if the database object names are different at the two databases. If NULL, then the database object specified in the object_name parameter is used.
comparison_mode	Specify the default value CMP_COMPARE_MODE_OBJECT. Additional modes might be added in future releases.
column_list	Specify '*' to include all of the columns in the database objects being compared. To compare a subset of columns in the database objects, specify a comma-delimited list of the columns to check. Any columns that are not in the list are ignored during a comparison and convergence. See "Usage Notes" on page 35-22 for information about columns that are required in the column_list parameter.
scan_mode	Either CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL, CMP_SCAN_MODE_RANDOM, CMP_SCAN_MODE_CYCLIC, or CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM. If you specify CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then make sure you specify an index using the index_schema_name and index_name parameters. Specifying an index ensures that you can specify the correct min_value and max_value for the lead index column when you run the COMPARE or RECHECK function. See "Constants" on page 35-6 for information about these constants.
scan_percent	The percentage of the database object to scan for comparison when the scan_mode parameter is set to either CMP_SCAN_MODE_RANDOM or CMP_SCAN_MODE_CYCLIC. For these scan_mode settings, a non-NULL value that is greater than 0 (zero) and less than 100 is required. If NULL and the scan_mode parameter is set to CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL, then the entire database object is scanned for comparison. If NULL and the scan_mode parameter is set to CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then the portion of the database object scanned for comparison is specified when the COMPARE function is run. If non-NULL and the scan_mode parameter is set to either CMP_SCAN_MODE_FULL or CMP_SCAN_MODE_CUSTOM, then the scan_percent parameter is ignored. **Note:** When the scan_percent parameter is non-NULL, and the lead index column for the comparison does not distribute the rows in the database object evenly, the portion of the database object that is compared might be smaller or larger than the specified scan_percent value. See "Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package" on page 35-10 for more information about the lead index column.

Table 35–6 (Cont.) CREATE_COMPARISON Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
null_value	The value to substitute for each NULL in the database objects being compared. Specify a value or use the CMP_NULL_VALUE_DEF constant. If a column being compared can contain NULLs, then the value specified for this parameter must be different than any non-NULL value in the column. Otherwise, if the value specified for this parameter can appear in the column, some row differences might not be found. See "Constants" on page 35-6 for information about this constant.
local_converge_tag	The Oracle Streams tag to set in the session on the local database before performing any changes to converge the data in the database objects being compared. If the local_converge_tag parameter is non-NULL in the CONVERGE procedure when comparison results for this comparison are converged, then the setting in the CONVERGE procedure takes precedence. See CONVERGE Procedure on page 35-18 for more information. See the *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags.
remote_converge_tag	The Oracle Streams tag to set in the session on the remote database before performing any changes to converge the data in the database objects being compared. If the remote_converge_tag parameter is non-NULL in the CONVERGE procedure when comparison results for this comparison are converged, then the setting in the CONVERGE procedure takes precedence. See CONVERGE Procedure on page 35-18 for more information. See the *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags.
max_num_buckets	Specify the maximum number of buckets to use. Specify a value or use the CMP_MAX_NUM_BUCKETS constant. See "Constants" on page 35-6 for information about this constant. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for information about buckets. **Note:** If an index column for a comparison is a VARCHAR2 or CHAR column, then the number of buckets might exceed the value specified for the max_num_buckets parameter.
min_rows_in_bucket	Specify the minimum number of rows in each bucket. Specify a value or use the CMP_MIN_ROWS_IN_BUCKET constant. See "Constants" on page 35-6 for information about this constant. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for information about buckets.

Usage Notes

This section contains usage notes for the CREATE_COMPARISON procedure.

Usage Notes for the index_schema_name and index_name Parameters

When you specify an index for a comparison with the index_schema_name and index_name parameters, the specified index determines the comparison's index columns and their ordering. The order of the columns in the index determines the index column ordering for the comparison. Therefore, the column in column position 1 in the index is the lead column for the comparison.

The index columns and their ordering affect the details of each SQL statement generated and executed for a comparison. For each SQL statement, the optimizer decides whether to use indexes. If the optimizer decides to use indexes, then the optimizer decides which particular indexes to use. An index specified in `column_list` parameter might or might not be used.

The columns in the specified index must meet the requirements described in "Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package" on page 35-10. If the index columns do not meet these requirements, then an error is raised.

> **Note:** If you do not specify an index when you create a comparison, then the `CREATE_COMPARISON` procedure selects either the primary key, if it exists, or an existing unique index. The procedure never selects a non-unique index. However, if you specify an index, then the `CREATE_COMPARISON` procedure does not check its uniqueness. Therefore, if you specify a non-unique index, and duplicate index keys exist, then the results might be incorrect when the `CONVERGE` procedure synchronizes data.

Usage Notes for the column_list Parameter

When the `column_list` parameter is set to a value other than `'*'`, the following columns are required in the `column_list` parameter:

- Any columns that are required to meet the index column requirements for the `DBMS_COMPARISON` package. If the `index_name` parameter is non-`NULL`, then the columns in the specified index must be in the column list. If the `index_name` parameter is `NULL`, then see "Index Column Requirements for the DBMS_COMPARISON Package" on page 35-10.
- If you plan to use the `CONVERGE` procedure to make changes to a database object based on the comparison, then any columns in this database object that have a `NOT NULL` constraint but no default value must be included in the column list. If these columns are not included, then the `CONVERGE` procedure returns an error. See CONVERGE Procedure on page 35-18.

DROP_COMPARISON Procedure

This procedure drops a comparison.

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPARISON.DROP_COMPARISON(
   comparison_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 35–7 DROP_COMPARISON Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
comparison_name	The name of the comparison.

PURGE_COMPARISON Procedure

This procedure purges the comparison results, or a subset of the comparison results, for a comparison.

> **Note:** At least one of the following parameters must be set to `NULL`: `scan_id` or `purge_time`. If both the `scan_id` and `purge_time` parameters are `NULL`, then this procedure purges all comparison results for the comparison.

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPARISON.PURGE_COMPARISON(
   comparison_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   scan_id          IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   purge_time       IN  TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 35–8 PURGE_COMPARISON Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`comparison_name`	The name of the comparison.
`scan_id`	The scan ID of the scan for which results are purged. The scan ID must identify a root scan. If the scan ID does not identify a root scan, then an error is raised. When a root scan ID is specified, it is purged, and all direct and indirect child scans of the specified root scan are purged. If `NULL`, then no scan ID is considered when purging comparison results for the comparison. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for information about scans.
`purge_time`	The date before which results are purged. If `NULL`, then no date is considered when purging comparison results for the comparison.

RECHECK Function

This function rechecks the differences in a specified scan for a comparison.

This function performs one of the following actions:

- If the specified scan completed successfully the last time it ran, then this function checks the previously identified differences in the scan.
- If the specified scan completed partially, then this function continues to check the database object from the point where the previous scan ended.

Note: This function does not compare the shared database object for differences that were not recorded in the specified comparison scan. To check for those differences, run the `COMPARE` function.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*
- COMPARE Function on page 35-16

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPARISON.RECHECK(
   comparison_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   scan_id          IN  NUMBER,
   perform_row_dif  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 35–9 RECHECK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`comparison_name`	The name of the comparison.
`scan_id`	The scan ID of the scan to recheck. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for more information about specifying a scan ID in this parameter.
`perform_row_dif`	If `TRUE`, then compares each row individually in the database objects being compared after reaching the smallest possible bucket for the comparison. If `FALSE`, then compares buckets for differences but does not compare each row individually when differences are found in the smallest possible bucket. See "Overview" on page 35-3 for information about buckets.

Return Values

This function returns `TRUE` when no differences are found in the database objects being compared. This function returns `FALSE` when differences are found in the database objects being compared.

36

DBMS_COMPRESSION

The DBMS_COMPRESSION package provides an interface to facilitate choosing the correct compression level for an application.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Concepts*
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide*
- *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide*
- *Oracle Database Reference*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_COMPRESSION

Overview

The DBMS_COMPRESSION package gathers compression-related information within a database environment. This includes tools for estimating compressibility of a table for both partitioned and non-partitioned tables, and gathering row-level compression information on previously compressed tables. This gives the user with adequate information to make compression-related decision.

Security Model

The DBMS_COMPRESSSION package is defined with AUTHID CURRENT USER, so it executes with the privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_COMPRESSION package uses the constants shown in Table 36–1, " DBMS_COMPRESSION Constants - Compression Types"e:

Table 36–1 DBMS_COMPRESSION Constants - Compression Types

Constant	Type	Value	Description
COMP_NOCOMPRESS	NUMBER	1	No compression
COMP_ADVANCED	NUMBER	2	Advanced compression level
COMP_QUERY_HIGH	NUMBER	4	High compression level for query operations
COMP_QUERY_LOW	NUMBER	8	Low compression level for query operations
COMP_ARCHIVE_HIGH	NUMBER	16	High compression level for archive operations
COMP_ARCHIVE_LOW	NUMBER	32	Low compression level for archive operations
COMP_BLOCK	NUMBER	64	Compressed row
COMP_LOB_HIGH	NUMBER	128	High compression level for LOB operations
COMP_LOB_MEDIUM	NUMBER	256	Medium compression level for LOB operations
COMP_LOB_LOW	NUMBER	512	Low compression level for LOB operations
COMP_INDEX_ADVANCED_HIGH	NUMBER	1024	High compression level for indexes
COMP_INDEX_ADVANCED_LOW	NUMBER	2048	Low compression level for indexes
COMP_RATIO_LOB_MINROWS	NUMBER	1000	Minimum required number of LOBs in the object for which LOB compression ratio is to be estimated
COMP_BASIC	NUMBER	4096	Basic compression level
COMP_RATIO_LOB_MAXROWS	NUMBER	5000	Maximum number of LOBs used to compute the LOB compression ratio
COMP_INMEMORY_NOCOMPRESS	NUMBER	8192	In-Memory with no compression
COMP_INMEMORY_DML	NUMBER	16384	In-Memory compression level for DML
COMP_INMEMORY_QUERY_LOW	NUMBER	32768	In-Memory compression level optimized for query performance
COMP_INMEMORY_QUERY_HIGH	NUMBER	65536	In-Memory compression level optimized on query performance as well as space saving
COMP_INMEMORY_CAPACITY_LOW	NUMBER	32768	In-Memory low compression level optimizing for capacity

Table 36–1 (Cont.) DBMS_COMPRESSION Constants - Compression Types

Constant	Type	Value	Description
COMP_INMEMORY_CAPACITY_HIGH	NUMBER	65536	In-Memory high compression level optimizing for capacity
COMP_RATIO_MINROWS	NUMBER	1000000	Minimum required number of rows in the object for which HCC ratio is to be estimated
COMP_RATIO_ALLROWS	NUMBER	-1	To indicate the use of all the rows in the object to estimate HCC ratio
OBJTYPE_TABLE	PLS_INTEGER	1	Identifies the object whose compression ratio is estimated as of type table
OBJTYPE_INDEX	PLS_INTEGER	2	Identifies the object whose compression ratio is estimated as of type index

Note: Hybrid columnar compression is a feature of certain Oracle storage systems. See *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information.

Data Structures

The DBMS_COMPRESSION package defines a RECORD type and a TABLE type.

RECORD TYPES

COMPREC Record Type

TABLE TYPES

COMPRECLIST Table Type

COMPREC Record Type

Record for calculating an individual index compression ratio on a table.

Syntax

```
TYPE COMPREC IS RECORD(
  ownname           varchar2(255),
  objname           varchar2(255),
  blkcnt_cmp        PLS_INTEGER,
  blkcnt_uncmp      PLS_INTEGER,
  row_cmp           PLS_INTEGER,
  row_uncmp         PLS_INTEGER,
  cmp_ratio         NUMBER,
  objtype           PLS_INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 36–2 COMPREC Attributes

Field	Description
ownname	Schema of the object owner
objname	Name of the object
blkcnt_cmp	Number of blocks used by the compressed sample of the object
blkcnt_uncmp	Number of blocks used by the uncompressed sample of the object
row_cmp	Number of rows in a block in compressed sample of the object
row_uncmp	Number of rows in a block in uncompressed sample of the object
cmp_ratio	Compression ratio, blkcnt_uncmp divided by blkcnt_cmp
objtype	Type of the object

COMPRECLIST Table Type

A table type of COMPREC Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE compreclist IS TABLE OF comprec;
```

Summary of DBMS_COMPRESSION Subprograms

Table 36–3 DBMS_COMPRESSION Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO Procedure on page 36-11	Analyzes the compression ratio of a table, and gives information about compressibility of a table
GET_COMPRESSION_TYPE Function on page 36-13	Returns the compression type for a specified row

GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO Procedure

This procedure analyzes the compression ratio of a table, and gives information about compressibility of a table. Various parameters can be provided by the user to selectively analyze different compression types.

Syntax

Get compression ratio for an object (table or index, default is table):

```
DBMS_COMPRESSION.GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO (
   scratchtbsname        IN     VARCHAR2,
   ownname               IN     VARCHAR2,
   objname               IN     VARCHAR2,
   subobjname            IN     VARCHAR2,
   comptype              IN     NUMBER,
   blkcnt_cmp            OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   blkcnt_uncmp          OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   row_cmp               OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   row_uncmp             OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   cmp_ratio             OUT    NUMBER,
   comptype_str          OUT    VARCHAR2,
   subset_numrows        IN     NUMBER  DEFAULT COMP_RATIO_MINROWS,
   objtype               IN     PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT OBJTYPE_TABLE);
```

Get compression ratio for LOBs:

```
DBMS_COMPRESSION.GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO (
   scratchtbsname        IN     VARCHAR2,
   tabowner              IN     VARCHAR2,
   tabname               IN     VARCHAR2,
   lobname               IN     VARCHAR2,
   partname              IN     VARCHAR2,
   comptype              IN     NUMBER,
   blkcnt_cmp            OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   blkcnt_uncmp          OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   lobcnt                OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
   cmp_ratio             OUT    NUMBER,
   comptype_str          OUT    VARCHAR2,
   subset_numrows        IN     number DEFAULT COMP_RATIO_LOB_MAXROWS);
```

Get compression ratio for all indexes on a table. The compression ratios are returned as a collection.

```
DBMS_COMPRESSION.GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO (
  scratchtbsname        IN     VARCHAR2,
  ownname               IN     VARCHAR2,
  tabname               IN     VARCHAR2,
  comptype              IN     NUMBER,
  index_cr              OUT    compRecList,
  comptype_str          OUT    VARCHAR2,
  subset_numrows        IN     NUMBER DEFAULT COMP_RATIO_INDEX_MINROWS);
```

Parameters

Table 36–4 GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
scratchtbsname	Temporary scratch tablespace that can be used for analysis

Table 36–4 (Cont.) GET_COMPRESSION_RATIO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname / tabowner	Schema of the table to analyze
tabname	Name of the table to analyze
objname	Name of the object
subobjname	Name of the partition or sub-partition of the object
comptype	Compression types for which analysis should be performed
blkcnt_cmp	Number of blocks used by compressed sample of the table
blkcnt_uncmp	Number of blocks used by uncompressed sample of the table
row_cmp	Number of rows in a block in compressed sample of the table
row_uncmp	Number of rows in a block in uncompressed sample of the table
cmp_ratio	Compression ratio, blkcnt_uncmp divided by blkcnt_cmp
comptype_str	String describing the compression type
subset_numrows	Number of rows sampled to estimate compression ratio.
objtype	Type of the object. Should be a constant to indicate object types defined in this package.
lobname	Name of the LOB column
partname	In case of partitioned tables, the related partition name
lobcnt	Number of lobs actually sampled to estimate compression ratio
index_cr	List of indexes and their estimated compression ratios

Usage Notes

The procedure creates different tables in the scratch tablespace and runs analysis on these objects. It does not modify anything in the user-specified tables.

GET_COMPRESSION_TYPE Function

This function returns the compression type for a specified row. If the row is chained, the function returns the compression type of the head piece only, and does not examine the intermediate or the tail piece since head pieces can be differently compressed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_COMPRESSION.GET_COMPRESSION_TYPE (
   ownname      IN    VARCHAR2,
   tabname      IN    VARCHAR2,
   row_id       IN    ROWID,
   subobjname   IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL))
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 36–5 GET_COMPRESSION_TYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema name of the table
tabname	Name of table
rowid	Rowid of the row
subobjname	Name of the table partition or subpartition

Return Values

Flag to indicate the compression type (see DBMS_COMPRESSION Constants - Compression Types).

37

DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL

The `DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL` package provides an interface to manage Database Resident Connection Pool.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information on "Database Resident Connection Pooling"

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Summary of DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL Subprograms

Summary of DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL Subprograms

Table 37–1 DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_PARAM Procedure on page 37-3	Alters a specific configuration parameter as a standalone unit and does not affect other parameters
CONFIGURE_POOL Procedure on page 37-4	Configures the pool with advanced options
START_POOL Procedure on page 37-6	Starts the pool for operations. It is only after this call that the pool could be used by connection clients for creating sessions
STOP_POOL Procedure on page 37-7	Stops the pool and makes it unavailable for the registered connection clients
RESTORE_DEFAULTS Procedure on page 37-8	Restores the pool to default settings

ALTER_PARAM Procedure

This procedure alters a specific configuration parameter as a standalone unit and does not affect other parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL.ALTER_PARAM (
   pool_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SYS_DEFAULT_CONNECTION_POOL',   param_name
IN  VARCHAR2,   param_value   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 37–2 ALTER_PARAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pool_name	Pool to be configured. Currently only the default pool name is supported.
param_name	Any parameter name from CONFIGURE_POOL
param_value	Parameter value for param_name.

Exceptions

Table 37–3 ALTER_PARAM Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-56500	Connection pool not found
ORA-56504	Invalid connection pool configuration parameter name
ORA-56505	Invalid connection pool configuration parameter value
ORA-56507	Connection pool alter configuration failed

Examples

```
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL.ALTER_PARAM(
   'SYS_DEFAULT_CONNECTION_POOL', 'MAX_LIFETIME_SESSION', '120');
```

CONFIGURE_POOL Procedure

This procedure configures the pool with advanced options.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL.CONFIGURE_POOL (
   pool_name                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SYS_DEFAULT_CONNECTION_POOL',
   minsize                  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 4,
   maxsize                  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 40,
   incrsize                 IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 2,
   session_cached_cursors   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 20,
   inactivity_timeout       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 300,
   max_think_time           IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 120,
   max_use_session          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 500000,
   max_lifetime_session     IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 86400,
   num_cbrok                IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 1,
   maxconn_cbrok            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 40000);
```

Parameters

Table 37–4 CONFIGURE_POOL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pool_name	Pool to be configured. Currently only the default pool name is supported.
minsize	Minimum number of pooled servers in the pool
maxsize	Maximum allowed pooled servers in the pool
incrsize	Pool would increment by this number of pooled server when pooled server are unavailable at application request time
session_cached_cursors	Turn on SESSION_CACHED_CURSORS for all connections in the pool. This is an existing init.ora parameter
inactivity_timeout	TTL (Time to live) for an idle session in the pool. This parameter helps to shrink the pool when it is not used to its maximum capacity. If a connection remains in the pool idle for this time, it is killed.
max_think_time	Maximum time of inactivity by the client after getting a session from the pool. If the client does not issue a database call after grabbing a server from the pool, the client will be forced to relinquish control of the pooled server and will get an ORA-xxxxx error. The freed up server may or may not be returned to the pool.
max_use_session	Maximum number of times a connection can be taken and released to the pool
max_lifetime_session	TTL (Time to live) for a pooled session
num_cbrok	Number of brokers to be started at pool start
maxconn_brok	Maximum number of connections for each broker

Exceptions

Table 37–5 CONFIGURE_POOL Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-56500	Connection pool not found
ORA-56507	Connection pool alter configuration failed

Usage Notes

- All expressions of time are in seconds
- All of the parameters should be set based on statistical request patterns.
- minsize should be set keeping in mind that it puts a lower bound on server resource consumption. This is to prevent the timeout from dragging the pool too low, because of a brief period of inactivity.
- maxsize should be set keeping in mind that it puts an upper bound on concurrency and response-times and also server resource consumption.
- session_cached_cursors is typically set to the number of most frequently used statements. It occupies cursor resource on the server
- In doubt, do not set the increment and inactivity_timeout. The pool will have reasonable defaults.
- max_use_session and max_lifetime_session allow for software rejuvenation or defensive approaches to potential bugs, leaks, accumulations, and like problems, by getting brand new sessions once in a while.
- The connection pool reserves 5% of the pooled servers for authentication, and at least one pooled server is always reserved for authentication. When setting the maxsize parameter, ensure that there are enough pooled servers for both authentication and connections.

START_POOL Procedure

This procedure starts the pool for operations. It is only after this call that the pool could be used by connection classes for creating sessions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL.START_POOL (
   pool_name  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SYS_DEFAULT_CONNECTION_POOL');
```

Parameters

Table 37–6 START_POOL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pool_name	Pool to be started. Currently only the default pool name is supported.

Exceptions

Table 37–7 START_POOL Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-56500	Connection pool not found
ORA-56501	Connection pool startup failed

Usage Notes

If the instance is restarted (shutdown followed by startup), the pool is automatically started.

STOP_POOL Procedure

This procedure stops the pool and makes it unavailable for the registered connection classes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL.STOP_POOL (
   pool_name   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SYS_DEFAULT_CONNECTION_POOL');
```

Parameters

Table 37–8 STOP_POOL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pool_name	Pool to be stopped. Currently only the default pool name is supported.

Exceptions

Table 37–9 STOP_POOL Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-56500	Connection pool not found
ORA-56506	Connection pool shutdown failed

Usage Notes

This stops the pool and takes it offline. This does not destroy the persistent data (such as, the pool name and configuration parameters) associated with the pool.

RESTORE_DEFAULTS Procedure

This procedure restores the pool to default settings.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CONNECTION_POOL.RESTORE_DEFAULTS (
   pool_name   IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SYS_DEFAULT_CONNECTION_POOL');
```

Parameters

Table 37–10 RESTORE_DEFAULTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pool_name	Pool to be restored. Currently only the default pool name is supported.

Exceptions

Table 37–11 RESTORE_DEFAULTS Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-56500	Connection pool not found
ORA-56507	Connection pool alter configuration failed

Usage Notes

If the instance is restarted (shutdown followed by startup), the pool is automatically started.

38

DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package is part of the database change notification feature that provides the functionality to create registration on queries designated by a client application and so to receive notifications in response to DML or DDL changes on the objects associated with the queries. The notifications are published by the database when the DML or DDL transaction commits.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide* regarding implementing database change notification.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION

Overview

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package provides PL/SQL based registration interfaces. A client can use this interface to create registrations on queries based on objects of interest and specify a PL/SQL callback handler to receive notifications. In case of object level registration, when a transaction changes any of the objects associated with the registered queries and |COMMIT|s, the PL/SQL callback, specified during registration for those objects, is invoked. The application can define client-specific processing inside the implementation of its PL/SQL callback handler.

The interface lets you define a registration block (using a mechanism similar to a BEGIN-END block). The recipient of notifications namely the name of the PL/SQL callback handler and a few other registration properties like time-outs can be specified during the BEGIN phase. Any queries executed subsequently (inside the registration block) are considered "interesting queries" and objects referenced by those queries during query execution are registered. The registration is completed by ENDing the registration block.The registration block lets you create new registrations or add objects to existing registrations.

When a registration is created through the PL/SQL interface, a unique registration ID is assigned to the registration by the RDBMS. The client application can use the registration ID to keep track of registrations created by it. When a notification is published by the RDBMS, the registration ID will be part of the notification.

Typical Applications

This functionality is useful for example to applications that cache query result sets on mostly read-only objects in the mid-tier to avoid network round trips to the database. Such an application can create a registration on the queries it is interested in caching. On changes to objects referenced inside those queries, the database publishes a notification when the underlying transaction commits. In response to the notification, the mid-tier application can refresh its cache by re-executing the query/queries.

Security Model

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package requires that the user have the CHANGE NOTIFICATION system privilege in order to receive notifications, and be granted EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package.

In addition the user is required to have SELECT or READ privileges on all objects to be registered. Note that if the SELECT or READ privilege on an object was granted at the time of registration creation but lost subsequently (due to a revoke), then the registration will be purged and a notification to that effect will be published.

Constants

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package uses the constants shown in Table 38–1. The constants are used as flag parameters either during registration or when received during the notification.

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package has sets of constants:

- EVENT_STARTUP, EVENT_SHUTDOWN, EVENT_SHUTDOWN_ANY, EVENT_DEREG describe the type of the notification published by the database.
- INSERTOP, DELETEOP, UPDATEOP, ALTEROP, DROPOP and UNKNOWNOP describe the type of operation on a table (during a notification published by the database).
- QOS_RELIABLE, QOS_DEREG_NFY, QOS_ROWIDs describe registration Quality of Service properties that the client requires. These are specified during registration.

Table 38–1 DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
ALL_OPERATIONS	BINARY_INTEGER	0	Interested in being notified on all operations, specified as a parameter during registration
ALL_ROWS	BINARY_INTEGER	1	All rows within the table may have been potentially modified
EVENT_STARTUP	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Instance startup notification
EVENT_SHUTDOWN	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Instance shutdown notification
EVENT_SHUTDOWN_ANY	BINARY_INTEGER	3	Any instance shutdown when running Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC)
EVENT_DEREG	BINARY_INTEGER	5	Registration has been removed
EVENT_OBJCHANGE	BINARY_INTEGER	6	Notification for object change
EVENT_QUERYCHANGE	BINARY_INTEGER	7	Notification for query result set change
INSERTOP	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Insert operation
UPDATEOP	BINARY_INTEGER	4	Update operation
DELETEOP	BINARY_INTEGER	8	Delete operation
ALTEROP	BINARY_INTEGER	16	Table altered
DROPOP	BINARY_INTEGER	32	Table dropped
UNKNOWNOP	BINARY_INTEGER	64	Unknown operation
QOS_RELIABLE	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Reliable or persistent notification. Also implies that the notifications will be inserted into the persistent storage atomically with the committing transaction that results in an object change.
QOS_DEREG_NFY	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Purge registration on first notification
QOS_ROWIDS	BINARY_INTEGER	4	Require rowids of modified rows
QOS_QUERY	BINARY_INTEGER	8	Register at query granularity
QOS_BEST_EFFORT	BINARY_INTEGER	16	Best effort evaluation

Table 38–1 (Cont.) DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
NTFN_GROUPING_CLASS_TIME	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Group notifications by time
NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_SUMMARY	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Summary grouping of notifications
NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_LAST	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Last notification in the group
NTFN_GROUPING_FOREVER	BINARY_INTEGER	-1	Repeat notifications forever

Operational Notes

With regard to object level registration:

- The notifications are published by the database when a transaction changes the registered objects and COMMITs.
- All objects referenced in the queries executed inside the registration block starting from the previous NEW_REG_START or ENABLE_REG to REG_END are considered interesting objects and added to the registration.

With regard to query result change registration:

- The notifications are published by the database when a transaction changes the result set of the registered query and COMMITs.

Troubleshooting

If you have created a registration and seem to not receive notifications when the underlying tables are changed, please check the following.

- Is the job_queue_processes parameter set to a nonzero value? This parameter needs to be configured to a nonzero value in order to receive PL/SQL notifications through the handler.
- Are the registrations being created as a non-SYS user?
- If you are attempting DML changes on the registered object, are you COMMITing the transaction? Please note that the notifications are transactional and will be generated when the transaction COMMITs.
- It maybe possible that there are run-time errors during the execution of the PL/SQL callback due to implementation errors. If so, they would be logged to the trace file of the JOBQ process that attempts to execute the procedure. The trace file would be usually named <ORACLE_SID>_j*_<PID>.trc. '

  For example, if the ORACLE_SID is 'dbs1' and the process is 12483, the trace file might be named 'dbs1_j000_12483.trc.

  Suppose a registration is created with 'chnf_callback as the notification handler and with registration_id 100. Let us suppose the user forgets to define the chnf_callback procedure. Then the JOBQ trace file might contain a message of the following form.

```
Runtime error during execution of PL/SQL cbk chnf_callback for reg CHNF100
   Error in PLSQL notification of msgid:
   Queue :
   Consumer Name :
   PLSQL function :chnf_callback
   Exception Occured, Error msg:
   ORA-00604: error occurred at recursive SQL level 2
   ORA-06550: line 1, column 7:
   PLS-00201: identifier 'CHNF_CALLBACK' must be declared
   ORA-06550: line 1, column 7:
   PL/SQL: Statement ignored
```

See Also: For more information about troubleshooting Database Change Notification, see *Oracle Database Development Guide*.

Examples

Object Change Registration Example

Suppose that a mid-tier application has a lot of queries on the HR.EMPLOYEES table. If the EMPLOYEES table is infrequently updated, it can obtain better performance by caching rows from the table because that would avoid a round-trip to the backend database server and server side execution latency. Let us assume that the application has implemented a mid-tier HTTP listener that listens for notifications and updates the mid-tier cache in response to a notification.

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package can be utilized in this scenario to send notifications about changes to the table by means of the following steps:

1. Implement a mid-tier listener component of the cache management system (for example, using HTTP) that listens to notification messages sent from the database and refreshes the mid-tier cache in response to the notification.
2. Create a server side stored procedure to process notifications

```
CONNECT system;
Enter password: password
GRANT CHANGE NOTIFICATION TO hr;
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION TO hr;

Rem Enable job queue processes to receive notifications.
ALTER SYSTEM SET "job_queue_processes"=2;

CONNECT hr;
Enter password: password
Rem Create a table to record notification events
CREATE TABLE nfevents(regid number, event_type number);

Rem create a table to record changes to registered tables
CREATE TABLE nftablechanges(regid number, table_name varchar2(100),
                            table_operation number);

Rem create a table to record rowids of changed rows.
CREATE TABLE nfrowchanges(regid number, table_name varchar2(100),
                          row_id varchar2(30));

Rem Create a PL/SQL callback handler to process notifications.
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE chnf_callback(ntfnds IN SYS.CHNF$_DESC) IS
   regid           NUMBER;
   tbname          VARCHAR2(60);
   event_type      NUMBER;
   numtables       NUMBER;
   operation_type  NUMBER;
   numrows         NUMBER;
   row_id          VARCHAR2(20);
 BEGIN
     regid      := ntfnds.registration_id;
     numtables  := ntfnds.numtables;
     event_type := ntfnds.event_type;

  INSERT INTO nfevents VALUES(regid, event_type);
  IF (event_type = DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.EVENT_OBJCHANGE) THEN
    FOR i IN 1..numtables LOOP
      tbname          := ntfnds.table_desc_array(i).table_name;
      operation_type  := ntfnds.table_desc_array(I). Opflags;
      INSERT INTO nftablechanges VALUES(regid, tbname, operation_type);
```

```
      /* Send the table name and operation_type to client side listener using
UTL_HTTP */
      /* If interested in the rowids, obtain them as follows */
      IF (bitand(operation_type, DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.ALL_ROWS) = 0) THEN
        numrows := ntfnds.table_desc_array(i).numrows;
      ELSE
        numrows :=0;   /* ROWID INFO NOT AVAILABLE */
      END IF;

      /* The body of the loop is not executed when numrows is ZERO */
      FOR j IN 1..numrows LOOP
          Row_id := ntfnds.table_desc_array(i).row_desc_array(j).row_id;
          INSERT INTO nfrowchanges VALUES(regid, tbname, Row_id);
        /* optionally Send out row_ids to client side listener using UTL_HTTP;
*/
      END LOOP;

    END LOOP;
  END IF;
  COMMIT;
END;
/
```

In Step 2 we can send as much information about the invalidation as the mid-tier application needs based on the information obtained from the notification descriptor.

Notes

a. In the above example, a registration was created on the `EMPLOYEES` table with '`chnf_callback`' as the PL/SQL handler for notifications. During registration, the client specified reliable notifications (`QOS_RELIABLE`) and rowid notifications (`QOS_ROWIDS`)

b. The handler accesses the table descriptor array from the notification descriptor only if the notification type is of `EVENT_OBJCHANGE`. In all other cases (e.g `EVENT_DEREG`, `EVENT_SHUTDOWN`), the table descriptor array should not be accessed.

c. The handler accesses the row descriptor array from the table notification descriptor only if the `ALL_ROWS` bit is not set in the table operation flag. If the `ALL_ROWS` bit is set in the table operation flag, then it means that all rows within the table may have been potentially modified. In addition to operations like `TRUNCATE` that affect all rows in the tables, this bit may also be set if individual rowids have been rolled up into a FULL table invalidation.

This can occur if too many rows were modified on a given table in a single transaction (more than 80) or the total shared memory consumption due to rowids on the RDBMS is determined too large (exceeds 1% of the dynamic shared pool size). In this case, the recipient must conservatively assume that the entire table has been invalidated and the callback/application must be able to handle this condition.

Also note that the implementation of the user defined callback is up to the developer. In the above example, the callback was used to record event details into database tables. The application can additionally send the notification details to a mid-tier `HTTP` listener of its cache management system (as in the example) using `UTL_HTTP`. The listener could then refresh its cache by querying from the back-end database.

3. Create a registrations on the tables that we wish to be notified about. We pass in the previously defined procedure name (`chnf_callback`) as the name of the server side PL/SQL procedure to be executed when a notification is generated.

```
Rem Create a REGISTRATION on the EMPLOYEES TABLE
DECLARE
  REGDS      SYS.CHNF$_REG_INFO;
  regid      NUMBER;
  mgr_id     NUMBER;
  dept_id    NUMBER;
  qosflags   NUMBER;
BEGIN
 qosflags := DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.QOS_RELIABLE +
         DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.QOS_ROWIDS;
REGDS := SYS.CHNF$_REG_INFO ('chnf_callback', qosflags, 0,0,0);
regid := DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NEW_REG_START (REGDS);
SELECT manager_id INTO mgr_id FROM EMPLOYEES WHERE employee_id = 200;
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.REG_END;
END;
/
```

Once the registration is created in Step 3 above, the server side PL/SQL procedure defined in Step 2 is executed in response to any `COMMIT`ted changes to the `HR.EMPLOYEES` table. As an example, let us assume that the following update is performed on the employees table.

```
UPDATE employees SET salary=salary*1.05 WHERE employee_id=203;COMMIT;
```

Once the notification is processed, you will find rows which might look like the following in the `nfevents`, `nftablechanges` and `nfrowchanges` tables.

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM nfevents;

     REGID     EVENT_TYPE
---------------------------
     20045          6


SQL> SELECT * FROM nftablechanges;

  REGID      TABLE_NAME         TABLE_OPERATION
-----------------------------------------
  20045      HR.EMPLOYEES            4


SQL> select * from nfrowchanges;

    REGID      TABLE_NAME          ROW_ID
-----------------------------------------------------
    20045     HR.EMPLOYEES    AAAKB/AABAAAJ8zAAF
```

Query Result Change Registration Example

1. Creating a Callback

```
CONNECT system;
Enter password: password
GRANT CHANGE NOTIFICATION TO hr;
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION TO hr;
CONNECT hr;
Enter password: password
Rem Create a table to record notification events
CREATE TABLE nfevents(regid NUMBER, event_type NUMBER);

Rem Create a table to record notification queries
```

```
CREATE TABLE nfqueries (qid NUMBER, qop NUMBER);

Rem Create a table to record changes to registered tables
CREATE TABLE nftablechanges(
       qid               NUMBER,
       table_name        VARCHAR2(100),
       table_operation   NUMBER);

Rem Create a table to record rowids of changed rows.
CREATE TABLE nfrowchanges(
       qid               NUMBER,
       table_name        VARCHAR2(100),
       row_id            VARCHAR2(2000));


CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE chnf_callback
  (ntfnds IN CQ_NOTIFICATION$_DESCRIPTOR)
IS
  regid           NUMBER;
  tbname          VARCHAR2(60);
  event_type      NUMBER;
  numtables       NUMBER;
  operation_type  NUMBER;
  numrows         NUMBER;
  row_id          VARCHAR2(2000);
  numqueries      NUMBER;
  qid NUMBER;
  qop NUMBER;

BEGIN
  regid := ntfnds.registration_id;
  event_type := ntfnds.event_type;
  INSERT INTO nfevents VALUES(regid, event_type);
  numqueries :=0;
  IF (event_type = DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.EVENT_QUERYCHANGE) THEN
      numqueries := ntfnds.query_desc_array.count;
      FOR i in 1..numqueries LOOP
         qid := ntfnds.QUERY_DESC_ARRAY(i).queryid;
         qop := ntfnds.QUERY_DESC_ARRAY(i).queryop;
         INSERT INTO nfqueries VALUES(qid, qop);
         numtables := 0;
         numtables := ntfnds.QUERY_DESC_ARRAY(i).table_desc_array.count;
         FOR j IN 1..numtables LOOP
           tbname := ntfnds.QUERY_DESC_ARRAY(i).table_desc_array(j).table_name;
           operation_type := ntfnds.QUERY_DESC_ARRAY(i).table_desc_
array(j).Opflags;
           INSERT INTO nftablechanges VALUES(qid, tbname, operation_type);
           IF (bitand(operation_type, DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.ALL_ROWS) = 0)
           THEN
             numrows := ntfnds.query_desc_array(i).table_desc_array(j).numrows;
           ELSE
             numrows :=0;   /* ROWID INFO NOT AVAILABLE */
           END IF;

            /* The body of the loop is not executed when numrows is ZERO */
            FOR k IN 1..numrows LOOP
               Row_id := ntfnds.query_desc_array(i).table_desc_array(j).row_
desc_array(k).row_id;
               INSERT INTO nfrowchanges VALUES(qid, tbname, Row_id);
```

```
           END LOOP;  /* loop over rows */
         END LOOP;     /* loop over tables */
       END LOOP;        /* loop over queries */
  END IF;
  COMMIT;
END;
/
```

2. Creates a query registration

```
DECLARE
  reginfo    cq_notification$_reg_info;
  mgr_id     NUMBER;
  dept_id    NUMBER;
  v_cursor   SYS_REFCURSOR;
  regid      NUMBER;
  qosflags   NUMBER;

BEGIN
  /* Register two queries for result-set-change notifications: */

  /* 1. Construct registration information.
        'chnf_callback' is name of notification handler.
        QOS_QUERY specifies result-set-change notifications. */

   qosflags := DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.QOS_QUERY +
               DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.QOS_ROWIDS;

   reginfo := cq_notification$_reg_info('chnf_callback', qosflags,0, 0, 0);

  /* 2. Create registration */

        regid := DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NEW_REG_START(reginfo);

        OPEN v_cursor FOR
           SELECT DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.CQ_NOTIFICATION_QUERYID, manager_id
           FROM HR.employees
           WHERE employee_id = 7902;
        CLOSE v_cursor;

       OPEN v_cursor for
        SELECT DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.CQ_NOTIFICATION_QUERYID, department_id
        FROM HR.departments
        WHERE department_name = 'IT';
       CLOSE v_cursor;

  DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.REG_END;
END;
/
```

3. After creating the query registrations, the output from `USER_CQ_NOTIFICATION_QUERIES` would appear as follows.

```
SQL> SELECT queryid, regid, to_char(querytext)
     FROM user_cq_notification_queries;

   QUERYID      REGID
---------- ----------
TO_CHAR(QUERYTEXT)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
-
        22         41
 SELECT HR.DEPARTMENTS.DEPARTMENT_ID  FROM HR.DEPARTMENTS  WHERE
HR.DEPARTMENTS.
DEPARTMENT_NAME  = 'IT'

        21         41
 SELECT HR.EMPLOYEES.MANAGER_ID  FROM HR.EMPLOYEES  WHERE
HR.EMPLOYEES.EMPLOYEE_
ID  = 7902


Now, let us perform an UPDATE that changes the result of the query with queryid
22
by renaming the department with name 'IT' to FINANCE.

SQL>  update departments set department_name = 'FINANCE' where department_name
= 'IT';

1 row updated.

SQL> commit;

Commit complete.

Now we can query the notifications that we recorded in the callback.

SQL> select * from nfevents;

     REGID EVENT_TYPE
---------- ----------
        61          7


Event type 7 corresponds to EVENT_QUERYCHANGE

SQL> select * from nfqueries;

       QID        QOP
---------- ----------
        42          7

Event type 7 corresponds to EVENT_QUERYCHANGE

SQL> select * from nftablechanges;
SQL> select * from nftablechanges;

     REGID
----------
TABLE_NAME
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-
TABLE_OPERATION
---------------
        42
HR.DEPARTMENTS
              4


TABLE_OPERATION 4 corresponds to UPDATEOP
```

```
SQL> select * from nfrowchanges;
     REGID
----------
TABLE_NAME
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-
ROW_ID
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-
        61
HR.DEPARTMENTS
AAANkdAABAAALinAAF
```

Data Structures

The DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION package defines the following OBJECT types.

OBJECT Types

- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_DESCRIPTOR Object Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY Object Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY_ARRAY Object (Array) Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE Object Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE_ARRAY Object (Array) Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW Object Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW_ARRAY Object (Array) Type
- CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO Object Type

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_DESCRIPTOR Object Type

This is the top level change notification descriptor type. It is a synonym for the SYS.CHNF$_DESC type.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.CHNF$_DESC IS OBJECT(
   registration_id    NUMBER,
   transaction_id     RAW(8),
   dbname             VARCHAR2(30),
   event_type         NUMBER,
   numtables          NUMBER,
   table_desc_array   CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE_ARRAY,
   query_desc_array   CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY_ARRAY);
```

Attributes

Table 38–2 CQ_NOTIFICATION$_DESCRIPTOR Object Type

Attribute	Description
registration_id	Registration ID returned during registration
transaction_id	Transaction ID. transaction_id of the transaction that made the change. Will be NULL unless the event_type is EVENT_OBJCHANGE or EVENT_QUERYCHANGE.
dbname	Name of database
event_type	Database event associated with the notification. Can be one of EVENT_OBJCHANGE (change to a registered object), EVENT_STARTUP, or EVENT_QUERYCHANGE, EVENT_SHUTDOWN or EVENT_DEREG (registration has been removed due to a timeout or other reason)
numtables	Number of modified tables. Will be NULL unless the event_type is EVENT_OBJCHANGE.
table_desc_array	Array of table descriptors. Will be NULL unless the event_type is EVENT_OBJCHANGE.
query_desc_array	Array of queries changed. This will be NULL unless event_type is EVENT_QUERYCHANGE

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY Object Type

The object type describes the changes to a query result caused by an event such as a transaction commit. An array of CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY descriptors is embedded inside the top level notification descriptor (CQ_NOTIFICATION$_DESCRIPTOR) for events of type EVENT_QUERYCHANGE. The array corresponds to the SET of queryids which were invalidated as a result of the event.

This is a synonym for the base type SYS.CHNF$_QDESC.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.CHNF$_QDESC IS OBJECT (
  queryid            NUMBER,
  queryop            NUMBER,
  table_desc_array   CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE_ARRAY);
```

Attributes

Table 38–3 TYPE SYS.CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY Object Type

Attribute	Description
queryid	QueryId of the changed query
queryop	Operation describing change to the query
table_desc_array	Array of table changes which contributed to the query Result Set change

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY_ARRAY Object (Array) Type

This type corresponds to an array of `CQ_NOTIFICATION$_QUERY` objects. It is a synonym for the `SYS.CHNF$_QUERY_ARRAY` type.

Syntax

```
TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE_ARRAY IS VARRAY (1073741824) OF CQ_NOTIFICATION$_
TABLE;
```

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE Object Type

This descriptor type describes a change to a table and is embedded inside the top level change notification descriptor type for events of type EVENT_OBJCHANGE For query result set changes (event type will be set to EVENT_QUERYCHANGE), the array of table descriptors is embedded inside each query change descriptor.

Note that this is a synonym for the type previously named SYS.CHNF$_TDESC.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.CHNF$_TDESC IS OBJECT (
  opflags            NUMBER,
  table_name         VARCHAR2(2*M_IDEN+1),
  numrows            NUMBER,
  row_desc_array     CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW_ARRAY)
```

Attributes

Table 38–4 TYPE SYS.CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE Object Type

Attribute	Description
opflags	Table level operation flags. This is a flag field (bit-vector) that describes the operations that occurred on the table. It can be an OR of the following bit fields - INSERTOP, UPDATEOP, DELETEOP, DROPOP, ALTEROP, ALL_ROWS. If the ALL_ROWS (0x1) bit is set it means that either the entire table is modified (for example, DELETE * FROM t) or row level granularity of information is not requested or not available in the notification and the receiver has to conservatively assume that the entire table has been invalidated.
table_name	Name of modified table
numrows	Number of modified rows within the table. numrows will be NULL and hence should not be accessed if the ALL_ROWS bit is set in the table change descriptor.
row_desc_array	Array of row descriptors. This field will be NULL if the ALL_ROWS bit is set in opflags.

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE_ARRAY Object (Array) Type

This type corresponds to an array of `CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE` objects. It is a synonym for the `SYS.CHNF$_TDESC_ARRAY` type.

Syntax

```
TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE_ARRAY IS VARRAY (1073741824) OF CQ_NOTIFICATION$_
TABLE;
```

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW Object Type

An array of CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW is embedded inside a CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE (table change descriptor) if the QOS_ROWIDS option was chosen at the time of registration and the ALL_ROWS bit is not set in the opflags field of the table change descriptor.

Note that this is a synonym for the type previously named SYS.CHNF$_RDESC.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.CHNF$_RDESC IS OBJECT (
  opflags            NUMBER,
  row_id             VARCAHR2 (2000));
```

Attributes

Table 38–5 TYPE SYS.CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW Object Type

Attribute	Description
opflags	Row level operation flags. The flag field (bit vector) describes the operations in the row (could be INSERTOP, UPDATEOP or DELETEOP).
row_id	The rowid of the modified row

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW_ARRAY Object (Array) Type

This object type corresponds to an array of `CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW` objects and is embedded inside the `CQ_NOTIFICATION$_TABLE` if `QOS_ROWIDS` was specified during registration and the `ALL_ROWS` bit is not set in the `opflags` field of the table change descriptor.

This type is a synonym for the `SYS.CHNF$_RDESC_ARRAY` type.

Syntax

```
TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW_ARRAY IS VARRAY (1073741824) OF CQ_NOTIFICATION$_ROW;
```

CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO Object Type

The object type describes the attributes associated with creating a new registration. It is a synonym for the type `previously named SYS.CHNF$_REG_INFO`.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.CHNF$_REG_INFO IS OBJECT (
  callback                        VARCHAR2(20),
  quosflags                       NUMBER,
  timeout                         NUMBER,
  operations_filter               NUMBER,
  transaction_lag                 NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_class             NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_value             NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_type              NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_start_time        TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  ntfn_grouping_repeat_count      NUMBER);
```

Attributes

Table 38–6 TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO Object Type

Attribute	Description
`callback`	Name of the server side PL/SQL procedure to be executed on a notification. Prototype is `<call_backname>(ntfnds IN SYS.chnf$_desc)`
`qosflags`	Quality of service flags. Can be set to an `OR` of the following values: ■ `QOS_RELIABLE` (`0x1`): Notifications are reliable (persistent) and survive instance death. This means that on an instance death in an Oracle RAC cluster, surviving instances will be able to deliver any queued invalidations. Similarly, pending invalidations can be delivered on instance restart, in a single instance configuration. The disadvantage is that there is a CPU cost/ latency involved in inserting the invalidation message to a persistent store. If this parameter is false, then server side CPU and latency are minimized, because invalidations are buffered into an in memory queue but the client could lose invalidation messages on an instance shutdown. ■ `QOS_DEREG_NFY` (`0x2`): The registration will be expunged on the first notification ■ `QOS_ROWIDS` (`0x4`): The notification needs to include information about the rowids that were modified ■ `QOS_QUERY (0x8)`: specifies query result change notification as opposed to object change notification ■ `QOS_BEST_EFFORt (0x16)`: can register simplified versions of queries and minimizes evaluation with some false positives.

Table 38–6 (Cont.) TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO Object Type

Attribute	Description
timeout	If set to a nonzero value, specifies the time in seconds after which the registration is automatically expunged by the database. If zero / NULL, the registration lives until explicitly deregistered. Note that the timeout option can be combined with the purge on notification (QOS_DEREG_NFY) option as well.
operations_filter	if nonzero, specifies a filter to be selectively notified on certain operations. These flags can be used to filter based on specific operation types: ■ 0: Notify on all operations (DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.ALL_OPERATIONS) ■ 0x2: Notify on every INSERT (DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.INSERTOP) ■ 0x4: Notify on every UPDATE (DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.UPDATEOP) ■ 0x8: Notify on every DELETE (DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.DELETEOP) A combination of operations can be specified by using a bitwise OR. Caution: This parameter will be honored for object level registrations but ignored for query result change registrations. To implement notification flow control in 11g, the applications can use the "GROUPING notification" option.
transaction_lag	Lag between consecutive notifications in units of transactions. Can be used to specify the number of transactions/database changes, by which the client is willing to lag behind the database. If 0, it means that the client needs to receive an invalidation message as soon as it is generated. **Caution**: This parameter will be honored for object level registrations but ignored for query result change notification registrations.
ntfn_grouping_class	When grouping notifications, the class based on which the group is derived. Currently, the only allowed value is DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NTFN_GROUPING_CLASS_TIME by which notifications are grouped by time.
ntfn_grouping_value	The grouping value. This describes the time interval that defines the group in seconds. For example, if this were set to 900, it would mean that notifications that were generated in each 15 minute interval would be grouped together.
ntfn_grouping_type	The type of grouping desired. It can be one of two allowed values ■ DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_SUMMARY - all notifications in the group are summarized into a single notification ■ DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_LAST - only the last notification in the group is published and the earlier ones discarded
ntfn_grouping_start_time	When to start generating notifications. If specified as NULL, it defaults to the current system generated time.

Table 38–6 (Cont.) TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO Object Type

Attribute	Description
ntfn_grouping_repeat_count	How many times the notification should be repeated. Set this to DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NTFN_GROUPING_FOREVER to receive notifications for the life time of the registration. Set to a nonzero value if only a certain number of notifications are desired for the life time of the registration.

Usage Notes

- The type declaration incorporates three other alternative constructors. In the first case all other parameters default to their default values.

```
TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO IS OBJECT (
  callback                      VARCHAR2(20),
  quosflags                     NUMBER,
  timeout                       NUMBER);
```

  The second option applies to the type constructor defined in a previous release, and which is retained for backward compatibility:

```
TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO IS OBJECT (
  callback                      VARCHAR2(20),
  quosflags                     NUMBER,
  timeout                       NUMBER,
  operations_filter             NUMBER,
  transaction_lag               NUMBER);
```

  The third definition contains all the members of the type except transaction_lag which is being deprecated:

```
TYPE CQ_NOTIFICATION$_REG_INFO IS OBJECT (
  callback                      VARCHAR2(20),
  quosflags                     NUMBER,
  timeout                       NUMBER,
  operations_filter             NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_class           NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_value           NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_type            NUMBER,
  ntfn_grouping_start_time      TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  ntfn_grouping_repeat_count    NUMBER);
```

- In response to a database change, the server side PL/SQL procedure specified by "callback" is executed. The PL/SQL procedure name has to be specified in the format schema_name.procedure_name. The procedure must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE <procedure_name>(ntfnds IN SYS.chnf$_desc)
```

  CHNF$_DESC describes the change notification descriptor.

- The init.ora parameter job_queue_processes must be set to a nonzero value to receive PL/SQL notifications, because the specified procedure is executed inside a job queue process when a notification is generated.

Summary of DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION Subprograms

Table 38–7 DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CQ_NOTIFICATION_QUERYID Function on page 38-27	Returns the queryid of the most recent query that was attempted to be registered in a registration block
DEREGISTER Procedure on page 38-28	De-subscribes the client with the supplied registration identifier (ID)
ENABLE_REG Procedure on page 38-29	Begins a registration block using an existing registration identifier (ID)
NEW_REG_START Function on page 38-30	Begins a new registration block
REG_END Procedure on page 38-31	Ends the registration boundary
SET_ROWID_THRESHOLD Procedure on page 38-32	Configures the maximum number of rows of a table published in a change notification if the rows of the table are modified in a transaction

CQ_NOTIFICATION_QUERYID Function

This function returns the queryid of the most recent query that was attempted to be registered in a registration block.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.CQ_NOTIFICATION_QUERYID
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Return Values

Returns the queryid of the most recently registered query.

DEREGISTER Procedure

This procedure desubscribes the client with the specified registration identifier (ID).

Syntax

```
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.DEREGISTER (
  regid IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 38–8 DEREGISTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
regid	Client registration ID

Usage Notes

Only the user that created the registration (or the SYS user) will be able to desubscribe the registration.

ENABLE_REG Procedure

This procedure adds objects to an existing registration identifier (ID). It is similar to the interface for creating a new registration, except that it takes an existing `regid` to which to add objects.Subsequent execution of queries causes the objects referenced in the queries to be added to the specified `regid`, and the registration is completed on invoking the REG_END Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.ENABLE_REG (
  regid IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 38–9 ENABLE_REG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`regid`	Client registration ID

Usage Notes

Only the user that created the registration will be able to add further objects to the registration.

NEW_REG_START Function

This procedure begins a new registration block. Any objects referenced by queries executed within the registration block are considered interesting objects and added to the registration. The registration block ends upon calling the `REG_END` procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.NEW_REG_START (
  regds IN sys.chnf$_reg_info)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 38–10 NEW_REG_START Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sys.chnf$_reg_info`	Registration descriptor describing the notification handler and other properties of the registration

Return Values

The procedure returns a registration-id which is a unique integer assigned by the database to this registration. The registration-id will be echoed back in every notification received for this registration.

Usage Notes

- The only operations permitted inside a registration block are queries (the ones the user wishes to register). DML and DDL operations are not permitted.
- The registration block is a session property and implicitly terminates upon exiting the session. While the registration block is a session property, the registration itself is a persistent database entity. Once created, the registration survives until explicitly deregistered by the client application or timed-out or removed by the database for some other reason (such as loss of privileges).
- The user must have the `CHANGE NOTIFICATION` system privilege and `SELECT` or `READ` privileges on any objects to be registered.
- The `SYS` user will not be permitted to create new registrations.
- Nesting of registration block is not permitted.

REG_END Procedure

This procedure marks the end of the registration block. No newly executed queries are tracked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.REG_END;
```

SET_ROWID_THRESHOLD Procedure

This procedure configures the maximum number of rows of a table published in a change notification if the rows of the table are modified in a transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CQ_NOTIFICATION.SET_ROWID_THRESHOLD (
  tbname     IN  VARCHAR2,
  threshold  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 38–11 SET_ROWID_THRESHOLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tbname`	Table name qualified by the schema name in the form `schemaname.tablename`
`threshold`	Maximum number of modified rows of the table to be published in the change notification

Usage Notes

- The table needs to be registered for change notification either at object change granularity or at query result set granularity.
- The threshold set by means of this subprogram applies to that instance only and does not persist across instance startup/shutdown.

39

DBMS_CREDENTIAL

The DBMS_CREDENTIAL package provides an interface for authenticating and impersonating EXTPROC callout functions, as well as external jobs, remote jobs and file watchers from the SCHEDULER.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* regarding Specifying Job Credentials
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* regarding Guidelines for Securing External Processes

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_CREDENTIAL

Overview

Credentials are database objects that hold a username/password pair for authenticating and impersonating `EXTPROC` callout functions, as well as remote jobs, external jobs and file watchers from the `SCHEDULER`. They are created using the CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure. The procedure also allows you to specify the Windows domain for remote external jobs executed against a Windows server.

Security Model

Every Oracle credential has a unique credential name and we can associate a credential through its unique credential name with EXTPROC by means of a PL/SQL alias library.

In order to associate a credential with a PL/SQL alias library and external procedure, you must have the CREATE AND/OR REPLACE LIBRARY privilege or CREATE AND/OR REPLACE FUNCTION / PROCEDURE privilege and read permission of the DLL or shared object that the alias library to be associated with so that you can create and/or replace function or procedure to make use of the alias library.

Once authenticated, EXTPROC must act on behalf of the client based on client's identity defined in the supplied user credential. If not authenticated, EXTPROC must return an error message.

In order to create or alter a credential, you must have the CREATE CREDENTIAL privilege. If you are attempting to create or alter a credential in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL privilege.

Operational Notes

As the existing CREATE OR REPLACE LIBRARY statement and CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION/PROCEDURE do not support a CREDENTIAL clause, this model requires syntax and semantic changes in CREATE OR REPLACE LIBRARY and CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION/PROCEDURE statement.

For example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE LIBRARY test
  AS '$ORACLE_HOME/bin/test.so' CREDENTIAL ricky_cred;
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION ftest1
  (x VARCHAR2, y BINARY_INTEGER)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER
AS LANGUAGE C
LIBRARY test
NAME "negative"
PARAMETERS(x STRING, y INT);
```

The credential name defined in the CREDENTIAL clause is a name of a database object. Therefore, do not enclose the credential name with single or double quotes.

An example of a credential being used on an external job:

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB(
   job_name            => 'example_job',
   job_type            => 'EXECUTABLE',
   job_action          => '/bin/ls',
   credential_name     => 'ricky_cred');
END;
/
```

Summary of DBMS_CREDENTIAL Subprograms

Table 39–1 DBMS_CREDENTIAL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 39-7	Creates a stored username/password pair in a database object called an Oracle credential
DISABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 39-9	Disables an Oracle credential
DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 39-10	Drops an Oracle credential
ENABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 39-11	Enables an Oracle credential
UPDATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 39-12	Updates an existing Oracle credential

CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure

This procedure creates a stored username/password pair in a database object called an Oracle credential.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   username          IN  VARCHAR2,
   password          IN  VARCHAR2,
   database_role     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
   windows_domain    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   comments          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   enabled           IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 39–2 CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
credential_name	Name of the credential. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema. This cannot be set to NULL. It is converted to upper case unless enclosed in double quotes.
username	User name to login to the operating system or remote database to run a job if this credential is chosen. This cannot be set to NULL.
password	Password to login to the remote operating system to run a job if this credential is chosen. It is case sensitive.
database_role	Whether a database job using this credential should attempt to log in with administrative privileges. Values: SYSDBA, SYSDG, SYSADMIN or SYSBACKUP.
windows_domain	For a Windows remote executable target, this is the domain that the specified user belongs to. The domain will be converted to uppercase automatically.
comments	A text string that can be used to describe the credential to the user. The Scheduler does not use this field.
enabled	Determines whether the credential is enabled or not

Usage Notes

- Credentials reside in a particular schema and can be created by any user with the CREATE CREDENTIAL or CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL system privilege. To create a credential in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE CREDENTIAL or CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL privilege.
- The user name is case sensitive. It cannot contain double quotes or spaces.
- Attempting to create a credential with an existing credential name returns an error. To alter an existing credential, users must drop the existing credential first using the DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure.
- Attempting to drop an existing credential, which is already referenced by alias libraries, returns an error. To drop an existing credential without any checking, users must set the force parameter of DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure to TRUE.

- You may also alter a credential, by means of the UPDATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure.

Examples

Create a Basic Credential

```
CONN scott
Enter password: password

BEGIN
-- Basic credential.
   DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL(
      credential_name  =>  'TIM_HALL_CREDENTIAL',
      username         =>  'tim_hall',
      password         =>  'password');
END
```

Create a Windows Credential

```
CONN scott
Enter password: password

-- Credential including Windows domain
BEGIN
  DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL(
     credential_name   =>  'TIM_HALL_WIN_CREDENTIAL',
     username          =>  'tim_hall',
     password          =>  'password',
     windows_domain    =>  'localdomain');
END
```

Display Information about Credentials

Information about credentials is displayed using the `[DBA|ALL|USER] _CREDENTIALS` views.

```
COLUMN credential_name FORMAT A25
COLUMN username FORMAT A20
COLUMN windows_domain FORMAT A20
SELECT credential_name,
       username,
       windows_domain
FROM   user_credentials
ORDER BY credential_name;

CREDENTIAL_NAME           USERNAME             WINDOWS_DOMAIN
------------------------- -------------------- --------------------
TIM_HALL_CREDENTIAL       tim_hall
TIM_HALL_WIN_CREDENTIAL   tim_hall             LOCALDOMAIN
2 rows selected.

SQL>
```

DISABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure

This procedure disables an Oracle credential.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CREDENTIAL.DISABLE_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   force             IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 39–3 DISABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
credential_name	Name of the credential. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema. This cannot be set to NULL. It is converted to upper case unless enclosed in double quotes.
force	If FALSE, the credential is not disabled provided it has no dependency on any existing scheduler job or PL/SQL library. An error is returned if the dependency is observed.If TRUE, the credential is disabled whether or not there is any scheduler job or PL/SQL library referencing it.

Usage Notes

- Credentials reside in a particular schema and can be disabled by any user with the CREATE CREDENTIAL or CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL system privilege. To disable a credential in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL privilege.
- A credential for an OS user can be viewed as an entry point into an operating system as a particular user. Allowing a credential to be disabled lets an administrator (or credential owner) to quickly, easily and reversibly disallow all logins from the database to the OS as a particular user of external jobs, database jobs, file transfers, external procedures, and file watching. To enable an existing disabled credential, you need to use the ENABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure.
- A library can become invalid if the properties of the credential – windows domain, username, password, its enable/disable bit – are changed.

DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure

This procedure drops an Oracle credential.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CREDENTIAL.DROP_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   force             IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 39–4 DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`credential_name`	Name of the credential. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema. This cannot be set to `NULL`.
`force`	If set to `FALSE`, the credential must not be referenced by any `EXTPROC` alias library or an error is raised. If set to `TRUE`, the credential is dropped whether or not there are extproc alias libraries referencing it. `EXTPROC` alias libraries that reference the dropped credential become invalid.

Usage Notes

Only the owner of a credential or a user with the `CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL` system privilege may drop the credential.

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_CREDENTIAL.DROP_CREDENTIAL('TIM_HALL_CREDENTIAL', FALSE);
EXEC DBMS_CREDENTIAL.DROP_CREDENTIAL('TIM_HALL_WIN_CREDENTIAL', FALSE);
```

ENABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure

This procedure enables an Oracle credential.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CREDENTIAL.ENABLE_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 39–5 ENABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
credential_name	Name of the credential. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema. This cannot be set to NULL. It is converted to upper case unless enclosed in double quotes.

Usage Notes

- Credentials reside in a particular schema and can be disabled by any user with the CREATE CREDENTIAL OR CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL system privilege. To disable a credential in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE CREDENTIAL OR CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL privilege.
- A credential for an OS user can be viewed as an entry point into an operating system as a particular user. Allowing a credential to be disabled would allow an administrator (or credential owner) to quickly, easily and reversibly disallow all logins from the database to the OS as a particular user (external jobs, file transfers, external procedures, file watching). To disable an existing credential, you need to use the DISABLE_CREDENTIAL Procedure.
- A library can become invalid if the properties of the credential – windows domain, username, password, its enable/disable bit – are changed.

UPDATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure

This procedure updates an existing Oracle credential.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CREDENTIAL.UPDATE_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name   IN   VARCHAR2,
   attribute         IN   VARCHAR2,
   value             IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 39–6 UPDATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
credential_name	Name of the credential. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema. This cannot be set to NULL. It is converted to upper case unless enclosed in double quotation marks.
attribute	Name of attribute to update: USERNAME, PASSWORD, WINDOWS_DOMAIN, DATABASE_ROLE or COMMENTS
value	New value for the selected attribute

Usage Notes

- Credentials reside in a particular schema and can be created by any user with the CREATE CREDENTIAL or CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL system privilege. To create a credential in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE ANY CREDENTIAL privilege.
- The user name is case sensitive. It cannot contain double quotes or spaces.
- EXTPROC alias libraries that reference the updated credential will become invalid. A library becomes invalid if the properties of the credential – windows domain, username, password, its enable/disable bit – are changed.

Examples

Update a Basic Credential

```
CONN scott
Enter password: password

BEGIN
-- Basic credential.
   DBMS_CREDENTIAL.UPDATE_CREDENTIAL (
      credential_name  =>  'TIM_HALL_CREDENTIAL',
      attribute        =>  'password',
      value            =>  'password2');

   DBMS_CREDENTIAL.UPDATE_CREDENTIAL (
      credential_name  =>  'TIM_HALL_CREDENTIAL',
      attribute        =>  'username',
      value            => 'tim_hall');
END;
```

Update a Windows Credential

```
CONN scott
Enter password: password

-- Credential including Windows domain
BEGIN
  DBMS_CREDENTIAL.UPDATE_CREDENTIAL(
     credential_name   =>  'TIM_HALL_WIN_CREDENTIAL',
     username          =>  'tim_hall',
     password          =>  'password',
     windows_domain    =>  'localdomain');
END
```

Display Information about Credentials

Information about credentials is displayed using the [DBA|ALL|USER] _CREDENTIALS views.

```
COLUMN credential_name FORMAT A25
COLUMN username FORMAT A20
COLUMN windows_domain FORMAT A20
SELECT credential_name,
       username,
       windows_domain
FROM   all_credentials
ORDER BY credential_name;

CREDENTIAL_NAME           USERNAME             WINDOWS_DOMAIN
------------------------- -------------------- --------------------
TIM_HALL_CREDENTIAL       tim_hall
TIM_HALL_WIN_CREDENTIAL   tim_hall             LOCALDOMAIN
2 rows selected.

SQL>
```

40

DBMS_CRYPTO

DBMS_CRYPTO provides an interface to encrypt and decrypt stored data, and can be used in conjunction with PL/SQL programs running network communications. It provides support for several industry-standard encryption and hashing algorithms, including the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption algorithm. AES has been approved by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) to replace the Data Encryption Standard (DES).

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Security Guide* for further information about using this package and about encrypting data in general.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using the DBMS_CRYPTO Subprograms

Overview

DBMS_CRYPTO contains basic cryptographic functions and procedures. To use this package correctly and securely, a general level of security expertise is assumed.

The DBMS_CRYPTO package enables encryption and decryption for common Oracle datatypes, including RAW and large objects (LOBs), such as images and sound. Specifically, it supports BLOBs and CLOBs. In addition, it provides Globalization Support for encrypting data across different database character sets.

The following cryptographic algorithms are supported:

- Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES, 2-key and 3-key)
- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
- MD5, MD4, SHA-1, and SHA-2 cryptographic hashes
- MD5, SHA-1, and SHA-2 Message Authentication Code (MAC)

Block cipher modifiers are also provided with DBMS_CRYPTO. You can choose from several padding options, including PKCS (Public Key Cryptographic Standard) #5, and from four block cipher chaining modes, including Cipher Block Chaining (CBC).

Table 40–1 summarizes the DBMS_CRYPTO package features.

Table 40–1 DBMS_CRYPTO Features

Package Feature	DBMS_CRYPTO
Cryptographic algorithms	DES, 3DES, AES, RC4, 3DES_2KEY
Padding forms	PKCS5, zeroes
Block cipher chaining modes	CBC, CFB, ECB, OFB
Cryptographic hash algorithms	MD5, SHA-1, SHA-2 (SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512), MD4
Keyed hash (MAC) algorithms	HMAC_MD5, HMAC_SH1, HMAC_SH256, HMAC_SH384, HMAC_SH512
Cryptographic pseudo-random number generator	RAW, NUMBER, BINARY_INTEGER
Database types	RAW, CLOB, BLOB

The DBMS_CRYPTO package replaces DBMS_OBFUSCATION_TOOLKIT, providing greater ease of use and support for a range of algorithms to accommodate new and existing systems. Specifically, 3DES_2KEY and MD4 are provided for backward compatibility. It is not recommended that you use these algorithms because they do not provide the same level of security as provided by 3DES, AES, MD5, SHA-1, or SHA-2.

Security Model

Oracle Database installs this package in the `SYS` schema. You can then grant package access to existing users and roles as needed.

Datatypes

Parameters for the DBMS_CRYPTO subprograms use these datatypes:

Table 40–2 DBMS_CRYPTO Datatypes

Type	Description
BLOB	A source or destination binary LOB
CLOB	A source or destination character LOB (excluding NCLOB)
PLS_INTEGER	Specifies a cryptographic algorithm type (used with BLOB, CLOB, and RAW datatypes)
RAW	A source or destination RAW buffer

Algorithms

The following cryptographic algorithms, modifiers, and cipher suites are predefined in this package.

Table 40–3 DBMS_CRYPTO Cryptographic Hash Functions

Name	Description
HASH_MD4	Produces a 128-bit hash, or message digest of the input message
HASH_MD5	Also produces a 128-bit hash, but is more complex than MD4
HASH_SH1	Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA-1). Produces a 160-bit hash.
HASH_SH256	SHA-2, produces a 256-bit hash.
HASH_SH384	SHA-2, produces a 384-bit hash.
HASH_SH512	SHA-2, produces a 512-bit hash.

Table 40–4 DBMS_CRYPTO MAC (Message Authentication Code) Functions

Name	Description
HMAC_MD5[1]	Same as MD5 hash function, except it requires a secret key to verify the hash value.
HMAC_SH1[1]	Same as SHA hash function, except it requires a secret key to verify the hash value.
HMAC_SH256	Same as SHA-2 256-bit hash function, except it requires a secret key to verify the hash value.
HMAC_SH384	Same as SHA-2 384-bit hash function, except it requires a secret key to verify the hash value.
HMAC_SH512	Same as SHA-2 512-bit hash function, except it requires a secret key to verify the hash value.

[1] Complies with IETF RFC 2104 standard

Table 40–5 DBMS_CRYPTO Encryption Algorithms

Name	Description
ENCRYPT_DES	Data Encryption Standard. Block cipher. Uses key length of 56 bits.
ENCRYPT_3DES_2KEY	Data Encryption Standard. Block cipher. Operates on a block 3 times with 2 keys. Effective key length of 112 bits.
ENCRYPT_3DES	Data Encryption Standard. Block cipher. Operates on a block 3 times.
ENCRYPT_AES128	Advanced Encryption Standard. Block cipher. Uses 128-bit key size.
ENCRYPT_AES192	Advanced Encryption Standard. Block cipher. Uses 192-bit key size.
ENCRYPT_AES256	Advanced Encryption Standard. Block cipher. Uses 256-bit key size.
ENCRYPT_RC4	Stream cipher. Uses a secret, randomly generated key unique to each session.

Table 40–6 DBMS_CRYPTO Block Cipher Suites

Name	Description
DES_CBC_PKCS5	ENCRYPT_DES[1] + CHAIN_CBC[2]+ PAD_PKCS5[3]
DES3_CBC_PKCS5	ENCRYPT_3DES[1] + CHAIN_CBC[2] + PAD_PKCS5[3]

[1] See Table 40–5, " DBMS_CRYPTO Encryption Algorithms"
[2] See Table 40–7, " DBMS_CRYPTO Block Cipher Chaining Modifiers"
[3] See Table 40–8, " DBMS_CRYPTO Block Cipher Padding Modifiers"

Table 40–7 DBMS_CRYPTO Block Cipher Chaining Modifiers

Name	Description
CHAIN_ECB	Electronic Codebook. Encrypts each plaintext block independently.
CHAIN_CBC	Cipher Block Chaining. Plaintext is XORed with the previous ciphertext block before it is encrypted.
CHAIN_CFB	Cipher-Feedback. Enables encrypting units of data smaller than the block size.
CHAIN_OFB	Output-Feedback. Enables running a block cipher as a synchronous stream cipher. Similar to CFB, except that *n* bits of the previous output block are moved into the right-most positions of the data queue waiting to be encrypted.

Table 40–8 DBMS_CRYPTO Block Cipher Padding Modifiers

Name	Description
PAD_PKCS5	Provides padding which complies with the PKCS #5: Password-Based Cryptography Standard
PAD_NONE	Provides option to specify no padding. Caller must ensure that blocksize is correct, else the package returns an error.
PAD_ZERO	Provides padding consisting of zeroes

Restrictions

The VARCHAR2 datatype is not directly supported by DBMS_CRYPTO. Before you can perform cryptographic operations on data of the type VARCHAR2, you must convert it to the uniform database character set AL32UTF8, and then convert it to the RAW datatype. After performing these conversions, you can then encrypt it with the DBMS_CRYPTO package.

> **See Also:** "Conversion Rules" on page 40-11 for information about converting datatypes.

Exceptions

Table 40–9 lists exceptions that have been defined for DBMS_CRYPTO.

Table 40–9 DBMS_CRYPTO Exceptions

Exception	Code	Description
CipherSuiteInvalid	28827	The specified cipher suite is not defined.
CipherSuiteNull	28829	No value has been specified for the cipher suite to be used.
KeyNull	28239	The encryption key has not been specified or contains a NULL value.
KeyBadSize	28234	DES keys: Specified key size is too short. DES keys must be at least 8 bytes (64 bits). AES keys: Specified key size is not supported. AES keys must be 128, 192, or 256 bits in length.
DoubleEncryption	28233	Source data was previously encrypted.

Operational Notes

When to Use Encrypt and Decrypt Procedures or Functions

This package includes both `ENCRYPT` and `DECRYPT` procedures and functions. The procedures are used to encrypt or decrypt `LOB` datatypes (overloaded for `CLOB` and `BLOB` datatypes). In contrast, the `ENCRYPT` and `DECRYPT` functions are used to encrypt and decrypt `RAW` datatypes. Data of type `VARCHAR2` must be converted to `RAW` before you can use `DBMS_CRYPTO` functions to encrypt it.

When to Use Hash or Message Authentication Code (MAC) Functions

This package includes two different types of one-way hash functions: the `HASH` function and the `MAC` function. Hash functions operate on an arbitrary-length input message, and return a fixed-length hash value. One-way hash functions work in one direction only. It is easy to compute a hash value from an input message, but it is extremely difficult to generate an input message that hashes to a particular value. Note that hash values should be at least 128 bits in length to be considered secure.

You can use hash values to verify whether data has been altered. For example, before storing data, the user runs `DBMS_CRYPTO.HASH` against the stored data to create a hash value. On returning the stored data, the user can again run the hash function against it, using the same algorithm. If the second hash value is identical to the first one, then the data has not been altered. Hash values are similar to "file fingerprints" and are used to ensure data integrity.

The `HASH` function included with `DBMS_CRYPTO`, is a one-way hash function that you can use to generate a hash value from either `RAW` or `LOB` data. The `MAC` function is also a one-way hash function, but with the addition of a secret key. It works the same way as the `DBMS_CRYPTO.HASH` function, except only someone with the key can verify the hash value.

MACs can be used to authenticate files between users. They can also be used by a single user to determine if her files have been altered, perhaps by a virus. A user could compute the MAC of his files and store that value in a table. If the user did not use a MAC function, then the virus could compute the new hash value after infection and replace the table entry. A virus cannot do that with a MAC because the virus does not know the key.

About Generating and Storing Encryption Keys

The `DBMS_CRYPTO` package can generate random material for encryption keys, but it does not provide a mechanism for maintaining them. Application developers must take care to ensure that the encryption keys used with this package are securely generated and stored. Also note that the encryption and decryption operations performed by `DBMS_CRYPTO` occur on the server, not on the client. Consequently, if the key is sent over the connection between the client and the server, the connection must be protected by using network encryption. Otherwise, the key is vulnerable to capture over the wire.

Although DBMS_CRYPTO cannot generate keys on its own, it does provide tools you can use to aid in key generation. For example, you can use the RANDOMBYTES function to generate random material for keys.

When generating encryption keys for DES, it is important to remember that some numbers are considered weak and semiweak keys. Keys are considered weak or semiweak when the pattern of the algorithm combines with the pattern of the initial key value to produce ciphertext that is more susceptible to cryptanalysis. To avoid this, filter out the known weak DES keys. Lists of the known weak and semiweak DES keys are available on several public Internet sites.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide* for information about configuring network encryption and SSL.
- "RANDOMBYTES Function" on page 40-20

Conversion Rules

- To convert VARCHAR2 to RAW, use the UTL_I18N.STRING_TO_RAW function to perform the following steps:

  1. Convert VARCHAR2 in the current database character set to VARCHAR2 in the AL32UTF8 database character.
  2. Convert VARCHAR2 in the AL32UTF8 database character set to RAW.

  Syntax example:

  ```
  UTL_I18N.STRING_TO_RAW (string, 'AL32UTF8');
  ```

- To convert RAW to VARCHAR2, use the UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR function to perform the following steps:

  1. Convert RAW to VARCHAR2 in the AL32UTF8 database character set.
  2. Convert VARCHAR2 in the AL32UTF8 database character set to VARCHAR2 in the database character set you wish to use.

  Syntax example:

  ```
  UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR (data, 'AL32UTF8');
  ```

  See Also: Chapter 253, "UTL_I18N" for information about using the UTL_I18N PL/SQL package.

- If you want to store encrypted data of the RAW datatype in a VARCHAR2 database column, then use RAWTOHEX or UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_ENCODE to make it suitable for VARCHAR2 storage. These functions expand data size by 2 and 4/3, respectively.

Examples

The following listing shows PL/SQL block encrypting and decrypting pre-defined 'input_string' using 256-bit AES algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining and PKCS#5 compliant padding.

```
DECLARE
   input_string       VARCHAR2 (200) :=  'Secret Message';
   output_string      VARCHAR2 (200);
   encrypted_raw      RAW (2000);             -- stores encrypted binary text
   decrypted_raw      RAW (2000);             -- stores decrypted binary text
   num_key_bytes      NUMBER := 256/8;        -- key length 256 bits (32 bytes)
   key_bytes_raw      RAW (32);               -- stores 256-bit encryption key
   encryption_type    PLS_INTEGER :=          -- total encryption type
                         DBMS_CRYPTO.ENCRYPT_AES256
                       + DBMS_CRYPTO.CHAIN_CBC
                       + DBMS_CRYPTO.PAD_PKCS5;
   iv_raw             RAW (16);

BEGIN
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ( 'Original string: ' || input_string);
   key_bytes_raw := DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMBYTES (num_key_bytes);
   iv_raw        := DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMBYTES (16);
   encrypted_raw := DBMS_CRYPTO.ENCRYPT
      (
         src => UTL_I18N.STRING_TO_RAW (input_string,  'AL32UTF8'),
         typ => encryption_type,
         key => key_bytes_raw,
         iv  => iv_raw
      );
    -- The encrypted value "encrypted_raw" can be used here

   decrypted_raw := DBMS_CRYPTO.DECRYPT
      (
         src => encrypted_raw,
         typ => encryption_type,
         key => key_bytes_raw,
         iv  => iv_raw
      );
   output_string := UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR (decrypted_raw, 'AL32UTF8');

   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Decrypted string: ' || output_string);

END;
```

Summary of DBMS_CRYPTO Subprograms

Table 40–10 DBMS_CRYPTO Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DECRYPT Function on page 40-14	Decrypts `RAW` data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV (initialization vector)
DECRYPT Procedures on page 40-15	Decrypts `LOB` data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV
ENCRYPT Function on page 40-16	Encrypts `RAW` data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV
ENCRYPT Procedures on page 40-17	Encrypts `LOB` data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV
HASH Function on page 40-18	Applies one of the supported cryptographic hash algorithms (MD4, MD5, SHA-1, or SHA-2) to data
MAC Function on page 40-19	Applies Message Authentication Code algorithms (MD5, SHA-1, or SHA-2) to data to provide keyed message protection
RANDOMBYTES Function on page 40-20	Returns a `RAW` value containing a cryptographically secure pseudo-random sequence of bytes, and can be used to generate random material for encryption keys
RANDOMINTEGER Function on page 40-21	Returns a random `BINARY_INTEGER`
RANDOMNUMBER Function on page 40-22	Returns a random 128-bit integer of the `NUMBER` datatype

DECRYPT Function

This function decrypts RAW data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV (initialization vector).

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.DECRYPT(
   src IN RAW,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN RAW,
   iv  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(decrypt,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–11 DECRYPT Function Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
src	RAW data to be decrypted.
typ	Stream or block cipher type and modifiers to be used.
key	Key to be used for decryption.
iv	Optional initialization vector for block ciphers. Default is NULL.

Usage Notes

- To retrieve original plaintext data, DECRYPT must be called with the same cipher, modifiers, key, and IV that was used to encrypt the data originally.

  See Also: "Usage Notes" for the ENCRYPT function on page 40-16 for additional information about the ciphers and modifiers available with this package.

- If VARCHAR2 data is converted to RAW before encryption, then it must be converted back to the appropriate database character set by using the UTL_I18N package.

  See Also: "Conversion Rules" on page 40-11 for a discussion of the VARCHAR2 to RAW conversion process.

DECRYPT Procedures

These procedures decrypt LOB data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV (initialization vector).

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.DECRYPT(
   dst IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   src IN            BLOB,
   typ IN            PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN            RAW,
   iv  IN            RAW          DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_CRYPT.DECRYPT(
   dst IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB         CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   src IN            BLOB,
   typ IN            PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN            RAW,
   iv  IN            RAW          DEFAULT NULL);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(decrypt,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–12 DECRYPT Procedure Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
dst	LOB locator of output data. The value in the output LOB <dst> will be overwritten.
src	LOB locator of input data.
typ	Stream or block cipher type and modifiers to be used.
key	Key to be used for decryption.
iv	Optional initialization vector for block ciphers. Default is all zeroes.

ENCRYPT Function

This function encrypts RAW data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV (initialization vector).

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.ENCRYPT(
   src IN RAW,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN RAW,
   iv  IN RAW          DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(encrypt,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–13 ENCRYPT Function Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
src	RAW data to be encrypted.
typ	Stream or block cipher type and modifiers to be used.
key	Encryption key to be used for encrypting data.
iv	Optional initialization vector for block ciphers. Default is NULL.

Usage Notes

- Block ciphers may be modified with chaining and padding type modifiers. The chaining and padding type modifiers are added to the block cipher to produce a cipher suite. Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) is the most commonly used chaining type, and PKCS #5 is the recommended padding type. See Table 40–7 and Table 40–8 on page 40-7 for block cipher chaining and padding modifier constants that have been defined for this package.
- To improve readability, you can define your own package-level constants to represent the cipher suites you use for encryption and decryption. For example, the following example defines a cipher suite that uses DES, cipher block chaining mode, and no padding:

  ```
  DES_CBC_NONE CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_CRYPTO.ENCRYPT_DES
                                     + DBMS_CRYPTO.CHAIN_CBC
                                     + DBMS_CRYPTO.PAD_NONE;
  ```

  See Table 40–6 on page 40-7 for the block cipher suites already defined as constants for this package.
- To encrypt VARCHAR2 data, it should first be converted to the AL32UTF8 character set.

  See Also: "Conversion Rules" on page 40-11 for a discussion of the conversion process.

- Stream ciphers, such as RC4, are not recommended for stored data encryption.

ENCRYPT Procedures

These procedures encrypt LOB data using a stream or block cipher with a user supplied key and optional IV (initialization vector).

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.ENCRYPT(
   dst IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   src IN            BLOB,
   typ IN            PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN            RAW,
   iv  IN            RAW          DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_CRYPTO.ENCRYPT(
   dst IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   src IN            CLOB         CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   typ IN            PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN            RAW,
   iv  IN            RAW          DEFAULT NULL);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(encrypt,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–14 ENCRYPT Procedure Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
dst	LOB locator of output data. The value in the output LOB <dst> will be overwritten.
src	LOB locator of input data.
typ	Stream or block cipher type and modifiers to be used.
key	Encryption key to be used for encrypting data.
iv	Optional initialization vector for block ciphers. Default is NULL.

Usage Notes

See "Conversion Rules" on page 40-11 for usage notes about using the ENCRYPT procedure.

HASH Function

A one-way hash function takes a variable-length input string, the data, and converts it to a fixed-length (generally smaller) output string called a *hash value*. The hash value serves as a unique identifier (like a fingerprint) of the input data. You can use the hash value to verify whether data has been changed or not.

Note that a one-way hash function is a hash function that works in one direction. It is easy to compute a hash value from the input data, but it is hard to generate data that hashes to a particular value. Consequently, one-way hash functions work well to ensure data integrity. Refer to "When to Use Hash or Message Authentication Code (MAC) Functions" on page 40-10 for more information about using one-way hash functions.

This function applies to data one of the supported cryptographic hash algorithms listed in Table 40–3 on page 40-6.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.Hash (
   src IN RAW,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN RAW;

DBMS_CRYPTO.Hash (
   src IN BLOB,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN RAW;

DBMS_CRYPTO.Hash (
   src IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(hash,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–15 HASH Function Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
src	The source data to be hashed.
typ	The hash algorithm to be used.

Usage Note

Oracle recommends that you use the SHA-1 (Secure Hash Algorithm) or SHA-2 because it is more resistant to brute-force attacks than MD4 or MD5. If you must use a Message Digest algorithm, then MD5 provides greater security than MD4.

MAC Function

A Message Authentication Code, or MAC, is a key-dependent one-way hash function. MACs have the same properties as the one-way hash function described in "HASH Function" on page 40-18, but they also include a key. Only someone with the identical key can verify the hash. Also refer to "When to Use Hash or Message Authentication Code (MAC) Functions" on page 40-10 for more information about using MACs.

This function applies MAC algorithms to data to provide keyed message protection. See Table 40–4 on page 40-6 for a list of MAC algorithms that have been defined for this package.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.MAC (
   src IN RAW,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER,
   key IN RAW)
 RETURN RAW;

DBMS_CRYPTO.MAC (
   src IN BLOB,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER
   key IN RAW)
 RETURN RAW;

DBMS_CRYPTO.MAC (
   src IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   typ IN PLS_INTEGER
   key IN RAW)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(mac,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–16 MAC Function Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
src	Source data to which MAC algorithms are to be applied.
typ	MAC algorithm to be used.
key	Key to be used for MAC algorithm.

RANDOMBYTES Function

This function returns a RAW value containing a cryptographically secure pseudo-random sequence of bytes, which can be used to generate random material for encryption keys. The RANDOMBYTES function is based on the RSA X9.31 PRNG (Pseudo-Random Number Generator).

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMBYTES (
   number_bytes IN POSITIVE)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(randombytes,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 40–17 RANDOMBYTES Function Parameter

Parameter Name	Description
number_bytes	The number of pseudo-random bytes to be generated.

Usage Note

The number_bytes value should not exceed the maximum length of a RAW variable.

RANDOMINTEGER Function

This function returns an integer in the complete range available for the Oracle `BINARY_INTEGER` datatype.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMINTEGER
 RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(randominteger,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

RANDOMNUMBER Function

This function returns an integer in the Oracle `NUMBER` datatype in the range of [0..2**128-1].

Syntax

```
DBMS_CRYPTO.RANDOMNUMBER
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(randomnumber,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

41

DBMS_CSX_ADMIN

The DBMS_CSX_ADMIN package provides an interface to customize the setup when transporting a tablespace containing binary XML data.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_CSX_ADMIN

Overview

This package can be used by DBAs to customize the setup when transporting a tablespace containing binary XML data. The use of the package is not required in order for a transportable tablespace job to run.

By default, all binary XML tables will use the default token table set, which will be replicated during transport on the target database. To avoid the cost of transporting a potentially large token table set, the DBA may opt for registering a new set of token tables for a given tablespace. The package provides routines for token table set registration and lookup.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_CSX_ADMIN package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to SYS or XDB or DBA. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_CSX_ADMIN package uses the constants shown in Table 41–1:

Table 41–1 DBMS_CSX_ADMIN Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
DEFAULT_LEVEL	BINARY_INTEGER	0	Default token table
TAB_LEVEL	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Token table set associated with tables, not tablespaces
TBS_LEVEL	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Token table set associated with a tablespace
NO_CREATE	BINARY_INTEGER	0	Token tables already exist, associate them with the given table/tablespace
NO_INDEXES	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Do not create indexes on the new set of token tables
WITH_INDEXES	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Create indexes on the token tables
DEFAULT_TOKS	BINARY_INTEGER	0	Prepopulate the token tables with default token mappings
NO_DEFAULT_TOKS	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Do not prepopulate the token tables with default token mappings

Summary of DBMS_CSX_ADMIN

Table 41–2 DBMS_CSX_ADMIN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETTOKENTABLEINFO Procedure & Function on page 41-7	Returns the GUID of the token table set where token mappings for this table
GETTOKENTABLEINFOBYTABLESPACE Procedure on page 41-8	Returns the GUID and the token table names for this tablespace
NAMESPACEIDTABLE Function on page 41-9	Returns default namespace-ID token table
PATHIDTABLE Function on page 41-10	Returns the default path-ID token table
QNAMEIDTABLE Function on page 41-11	Returns the default qname-ID token table.

GETTOKENTABLEINFO Procedure & Function

Given the table name and the owner, the first overload of the procedure returns the globally unique identifier (GUID) of the token table set where token mappings for this table can be found. The procedure returns also the names of the token tables, and whether the token table set is the default one.

Given the object number of a table, the second overload of the procedure returns the GUID of the token table set used by the table, and whether this is the default token table set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CSX_ADMIN.GETTOKENTABLEINFO  (
   ownername      IN   VARCHAR2,
   tablename      IN   VARCHAR2,
   guid           OUT  RAW,
   qnametable     OUT  VARCHAR2,
   nmspctable     OUT  VARCHAR2,
   level          OUT  NUMBER,
   tabno          OUT  NUMBER);

DBMS_CSX_ADMIN.GETTOKENTABLEINFO  (
   tabno          IN   NUMBER,
   guid           OUT  RAW);
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 41–3 GETTOKENTABLEINFO Procedure & Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownername	Owner of the table
tablename	Name of the table
guid	GUID of the token table set used by the given table
qnametable	Name of the qname-ID table in the new set
nmspctable	Name of the namespace-ID table in the new set
level	DEFAULT_LEVEL if default token table set, TBS_LEVEL if same token table set is used by all tables in the same tablespace as the given table, TAB_LEVEL otherwise
tabno	Table object number

GETTOKENTABLEINFOBYTABLESPACE Procedure

Given a tablespace number, this procedure returns the GUID and the token table names for this tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CSX_ADMIN.GETTOKENTABLEINFOBYTABLESPACE  (
   tsname          IN   VARCHAR2,
   tablespaceno    IN   NUMBER,
   guid            OUT  RAW,
   qnametable      OUT  VARCHAR2,
   nmspctable      OUT  VARCHAR2,
   isdefault       OUT  BOOLEAN,
   containTokTab   OUT  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 41–4 GETTOKENTABLEINFOBYTABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tsname`	Tablespace name
`tablespaceno`	Tablespace number
`guid`	GUID of the token table set associated with this tablespace (if any)
`qnametable`	Name of the qname-ID table
`nmspctable`	Name of the namespace-ID table
`isdefault`	`TRUE` if the token table is the default one
`containTokTab`	`TRUE` if the tablespace contains its own token table set

NAMESPACEIDTABLE Function

This procedure returns default namespace-ID token table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CSX_ADMIN.NAMESPACEIDTABLE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

PATHIDTABLE Function

This procedure returns the default path-ID token table. This is used for granting permissions on the default path-ID token table for a user before executing `EXPLAIN PLAN` for a query on an XML table with an XML index.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CSX_ADMIN.PATHIDTABLE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

QNAMEIDTABLE Function

This procedure returns the default qname-ID token table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CSX_ADMIN.QNAMEIDTABLE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

42

DBMS_CUBE

DBMS_CUBE contains subprograms that create OLAP cubes and dimensions, and that load and process the data for querying.

> **See Also:** *Oracle OLAP User's Guide* regarding use of the OLAP option to support business intelligence and analytical applications

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_CUBE

Cubes and cube dimensions are first class data objects that support multidimensional analytics. They are stored in a container called an analytic workspace. Multidimensional objects and analytics are available with the OLAP option to Oracle Database.

Cubes can be enabled as cube materialized views for automatic refresh of the cubes and dimensions, and for query rewrite. Several `DBMS_CUBE` subprograms support the creation and maintenance of cube materialized views as a replacement for relational materialized views. These subprograms are discussed in "Using SQL Aggregation Management" on page 42-4.

The metadata for cubes and dimensions is defined in XML documents, called *templates*, which you can derive from relational materialized views using the `CREATE_CUBE` or `DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW` functions. Using a graphical tool named Analytic Workspace Manager, you can enhance the cube with analytic content or create the metadata for new cubes and cube dimensions from scratch.

Several other `DBMS_CUBE` subprograms provide a SQL alternative to Analytic Workspace Manager for creating an analytic workspace from an XML template and for refreshing the data stored in cubes and dimensions. The `IMPORT_XML` procedure creates an analytic workspace with its cubes and cube dimensions from an XML template. The `BUILD` procedure loads data into the cubes and dimensions from their data sources and performs whatever processing steps are needed to prepare the data for querying.

Security Model

The following roles and system privileges are required to use this package:

To create dimensional objects in the user's own schema:

- `OLAP_USER` role
- `CREATE SESSION` privilege

To create dimensional objects in different schemas:

- `OLAP_DBA` role
- `CREATE SESSION` privilege

To create cube materialized views in the user's own schema:

- `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` privilege
- `CREATE DIMENSION` privilege
- `ADVISOR` privilege

To create cube materialized views in different schemas:

- `CREATE ANY MATERIALIZED VIEW` privilege
- `CREATE ANY DIMENSION` privilege
- `ADVISOR` privilege

If the source tables are in a different schema, then the owner of the dimensional objects needs `SELECT` object privileges on those tables.

Using SQL Aggregation Management

SQL Aggregation Management is a group of PL/SQL subprograms in DBMS_CUBE that supports the rapid deployment of cube materialized views from existing relational materialized views. Cube materialized views are cubes that have been enhanced to use the automatic refresh and query rewrite features of Oracle Database. A single cube materialized view can replace many of the relational materialized views of summaries on a fact table, providing uniform response time to all summary data.

Cube materialized views bring the fast update and fast query capabilities of the OLAP option to applications that query summaries of detail relational tables. The summary data is generated and stored in a cube, and query rewrite automatically redirects queries to the cube materialized views. Applications experience excellent querying performance.

In the process of creating the cube materialized views, DBMS_CUBE also creates a fully functional analytic workspace including a cube and the cube dimensions. The cube stores the data for a cube materialized view instead of the table that stores the data for a relational materialized view. A cube can also support a wide range of analytic functions that enhance the database with information-rich content.

Cube materialized views are registered in the data dictionary along with all other materialized views. A CB$ prefix identifies a cube materialized view.

The DBMS_CUBE subprograms also support life-cycle management of cube materialized views.

> **See Also:** *Oracle OLAP User's Guide* for more information about cube materialized views and enhanced OLAP analytics.

Subprograms in SQL Aggregation Management

These subprograms are included in SQL Aggregation Management:

- CREATE_MVIEW Function
- DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW Function
- DROP_MVIEW Procedure
- REFRESH_MVIEW Procedure

Requirements for the Relational Materialized View

SQL Aggregation Management uses an existing relational materialized view to derive all the information needed to generate a cube materialized view. The relational materialized view determines the detail level of data that is stored in the cube materialized view. The related relational dimension objects determine the scope of the aggregates, from the lowest level specified in the GROUP BY clause of the materialized view subquery, to the highest level of the dimension hierarchy.

The relational materialized view must conform to these requirements:

- Explicit `GROUP BY` clause for one or more columns.
- No expressions in the select list or `GROUP BY` clause.
- At least one of these numeric aggregation methods: `SUM`, `MIN`, `MAX`, or `AVG`.
- No outer joins.
- Summary keys with at least one simple column associated with a relational dimension.

  or

  Summary keys with at least one simple column and no hierarchies or levels.
- Numeric datatype of any type for the fact columns. All facts are converted to `NUMBER`.
- Eligible for rewrite. `REWRITE_CAPABILITY` should be `GENERAL`; it cannot be `NONE`. Refer to the `ALL_MVIEWS` entry in the *Oracle Database Reference*.
- Cannot use the `DISTINCT` or `UNIQUE` keywords with an aggregate function in the defining query. For example, `AVG(DISTINCT units)` causes an error in `STRICT` mode and is ignored in `LOOSE` mode.

You can choose between two modes when rendering the cube materialized view, `LOOSE` and `STRICT`. In `STRICT` mode, any deviation from the requirements raises an exception and prevents the materialized view from being created. In `LOOSE` mode (the default), some deviations are allowed, but they affect the content of the materialized view. These elements in the relational materialized view generate warning messages:

- Complex expressions in the defining query are ignored and do not appear in the cube materialized view.
- The `AVG` function is changed to `SUM` and `COUNT`.
- The `COUNT` function without a `SUM`, `MIN`, `MAX`, or `AVG` function is ignored.
- The `STDDEV` and `VARIANCE` functions are ignored.

You can also choose how conditions in the `WHERE` clause are filtered. When filtering is turned off, the conditions are ignored. When turned on, valid conditions are rendered in the cube materialized view, but asymmetric conditions among dimension levels raise an exception.

Permissions for Managing and Querying Cube Materialized Views

To create cube materialized views, you must have these privileges:

- `CREATE [ANY] MATERIALIZED VIEW` privilege
- `CREATE [ANY] DIMENSION` privilege
- `ADVISOR` privilege

To access cube materialized views from another schema using query rewrite, you must have these privileges:

- `GLOBAL QUERY REWRITE` privilege
- `SELECT` or `READ` privilege on the relational source tables
- `SELECT` or `READ` privilege on the analytic workspace (`AW$`*`name`*) that supports the cube materialized view
- `SELECT` or `READ` privilege on the cube
- `SELECT` or `READ` privilege on the dimensions of the cube

Note that you need `SELECT` or `READ` privileges on the database objects that *support* the cube materialized views, but not on the cube materialized views.

Example of SQL Aggregation Management

All examples for the SQL Aggregate Management subprograms use the sample Sales History schema, which is installed in Oracle Database with two relational materialized views: CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV and FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV.

About Relational Materialized View CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV

This example uses CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV as the basis for creating a cube materialized view. The following query was used to create CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV. CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV summarizes the daily sales data stored in the SALES table by month.

```
SELECT query FROM user_mviews
     WHERE mview_name='CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV';

QUERY
-------------------------------------------
SELECT   t.calendar_month_desc
  ,        sum(s.amount_sold) AS dollars
  FROM     sales s
  ,        times t
  WHERE    s.time_id = t.time_id
  GROUP BY t.calendar_month_desc
```

DBMS_CUBE uses relational dimensions to derive levels and hierarchies for the cube materialized view. The SH schema has relational dimensions for most dimension tables in the schema, as shown by the following query.

```
SELECT dimension_name FROM user_dimensions;

DIMENSION_NAME
-----------------------------------
CUSTOMERS_DIM
PRODUCTS_DIM
TIMES_DIM
CHANNELS_DIM
PROMOTIONS_DIM
```

Creating the Cube Materialized View

This PL/SQL script uses the CREATE_MVIEW function to create a cube materialized view from CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV. CREATE_MVIEW sets the optional BUILD parameter to refresh the cube materialized view immediately.

```
SET serverout ON format wrapped

DECLARE
     salesaw  varchar2(30);

BEGIN
     salesaw := dbms_cube.create_mview('SH', 'CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV',
                'build=immediate');
END;
/
```

These messages confirm that the script created and refreshed CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES successfully:

```
Completed refresh of cube mview "SH"."CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES" at 20130212 08:42:58.0
03.
```

```
Created cube organized materialized view "CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES" for rewrite at 200
130212 08:42:58.004.
```

The following query lists the materialized views in the SH schema:

```
SELECT mview_name FROM user_mviews;

MVIEW_NAME
------------------------------
CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES
CB$TIMES_DIM_D1_CAL_ROLLUP
CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV
FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV
```

Two new materialized views are registered in the data dictionary:

- CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES: Cube materialized view
- CB$TIMES_DIM_D1_CAL_ROLLUP: Cube dimension materialized view for the TIME_DIM Calendar Rollup hierarchy

Cube dimension materialized views support refresh of the cube materialized view. You do not directly administer dimension materialized views.

Disabling the Relational Materialized Views

After creating a cube materialized view, disable query rewrite on all relational materialized views for the facts now supported by the cube materialized view. You can drop them when you are sure that you created the cube materialized view with the optimal parameters.

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW cal_month_sales_mv DISABLE QUERY REWRITE;

Materialized view altered.
```

You can also use the DISABLEQRW parameter in the CREATE_MVIEW function, which disables query rewrite on the source materialized view as described in Table 42–7.

Creating Execution Plans for Cube Materialized Views

You can create execution plans for cube materialized views the same as for relational materialized views. The following command generates an execution plan for a query against the SALES table, which contains data at the day level. The answer set requires data summarized by quarter. Query rewrite would not use the original relational materialized view for this query, because its data is summarized by month. However, query rewrite can use the new cube materialized view for summary data for months, quarters, years, and all years.

```
EXPLAIN PLAN FOR SELECT
           t.calendar_quarter_desc,
           sum(s.amount_sold) AS dollars
  FROM     sales s,
           times t
  WHERE    s.time_id = t.time_id
  AND      t.calendar_quarter_desc LIKE '2001%'
  GROUP BY t.calendar_quarter_desc
  ORDER BY t.calendar_quarter_desc;
```

The query returns these results:

```
CALENDAR_QUARTER_DESC    DOLLARS
-------------------- ----------
```

```
2001-01              6547097.44
2001-02              6922468.39
2001-03              7195998.63
2001-04              7470897.52
```

The execution plan shows that query rewrite returned the summary data from the cube materialized view, CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES, instead of recalculating it from the SALES table.

```
SELECT plan_table_output FROM TABLE(dbms_xplan.display());

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Plan hash value: 2999729407

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation                       | Name               | Rows  | Bytes | Cost (%CPU)| Time     |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT                |                    |     1 |    30 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|   1 |  SORT GROUP BY                  |                    |     1 |    30 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|*  2 |   MAT_VIEW REWRITE CUBE ACCESS | CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES |     1 |    30 |     2   (0)| 00:00:01 |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------------------

   2 - filter("CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES"."D1_CALENDAR_QUARTER_DESC" LIKE '2001%' AND
              "CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES"."SYS_GID"=63)

15 rows selected.
```

Maintaining Cube Materialized Views

You can create a cube materialized view that refreshes automatically. However, you can force a refresh at any time using the REFRESH_MVIEW Procedure:

```
BEGIN
     dbms_cube.refresh_mview('SH', 'CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES');
END;
/

Completed refresh of cube mview "SH"."CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES" at 20130212
14:30:59.534.
```

If you want to drop a cube materialized view, use the DROP_MVIEW Procedure so that all supporting database objects (analytic workspace, cube, cube dimensions, and so forth) are also dropped:

```
BEGIN
     dbms_cube.drop_mview('SH', 'CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES');
END;
/

Dropped cube organized materialized view "SH"."CAL_MONTH_SALES" including
container analytic workspace "SH"."CAL_MONTH_SALES_AW" at 20130212 13:38:47.878.
```

New Database Objects

The CREATE_MVIEW function creates several first class database objects in addition to the cube materialized views. You can explore these objects through the data dictionary by querying views such as ALL_CUBES and ALL_CUBE_DIMENSIONS.

This example created the following supporting objects:

- Analytic workspace CAL_MONTH_SALES_AW (AW$CAL_MONTH_SALES_AW table)
- Cube CAL_MONTH_SALES
- Cube dimension TIMES_DIM_D1
- Dimension hierarchy CAL_ROLLUP
- Dimension levels ALL_TIMES_DIM, YEAR, QUARTER, and MONTH
- Numerous attributes for levels in the CAL_ROLLUP hierarchy

Upgrading 10*g* Analytic Workspaces

Oracle OLAP metadata is the same in OLAP 11*g* and OLAP 12*c* so you do not need to upgrade an OLAP 11*g* analytic workspace to OLAP 12*c*. This topic describes upgrading an Oracle OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace to OLAP 12*c*.

You can upgrade an OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace to OLAP 12*c* by saving the OLAP 10*g* objects as an XML template and importing the XML into a different schema. The original analytic workspace remains accessible and unchanged by the upgrade process.

> **Tip:** Oracle recommends using Analytic Workspace Manager for performing upgrades. See the *Oracle OLAP User's Guide*.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for information on upgrading Oracle Database.

These subprograms in `DBMS_CUBE` support the upgrade process:

- CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure
- CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure
- EXPORT_XML Procedure
- EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE Procedure
- IMPORT_XML Procedure
- INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE Procedure
- UPGRADE_AW Procedure

Prerequisites:

- The OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace can use OLAP standard form metadata.
- Customizations to the OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace may not be exported to the XML template. You must re-create them in OLAP 12*c*.
- The original relational source data must be available to load into the new analytic workspace. If the data is in a different schema or the table names are different, then you must remap the dimensional objects to the new relational sources after the upgrade.
- You can create the OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace in the same schema as the OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace. However, if you prefer to create it in a different schema, then create a new user with the following privileges:
  - `SELECT` or `READ` privileges on the OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace (`GRANT SELECT ON schema.AW$analytic_workspace`).
  - `SELECT` or `READ` privileges on all database tables and views that contain the source data for the OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace.
  - Appropriate privileges for an OLAP administrator.
  - Same default tablespace as the Oracle 10*g* user.

  See the *Oracle OLAP User's Guide*.

Correcting Naming Conflicts

The namespaces are different in OLAP 10*g* than those in OLAP 12*c*. For a successful upgrade, you must identify any 10*g* object names that are used multiple times under the 12*c* naming rules and provide unique names for them.

The following namespaces control the uniqueness of OLAP object names in Oracle 12*c*:

- **Schema**: The names of cubes, dimensions, and measure folders must be unique within a schema. They cannot conflict with the names of tables, views, indexes, relational dimensions, or any other first class objects. However, these OLAP 12*c* object names do not need to be distinct from 10*g* object names, because they are in different namespaces.
- **Cube**: The names of measures must be unique within a cube.
- **Dimension**: The names of hierarchies, levels, and attributes must be unique within a dimension. For example, a dimension cannot have a hierarchy named Customers and a level named Customers.

You can use an initialization table and a rename table to rename objects in the upgraded 12*c* analytic workspace.

Initialization Table

The `INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE` procedure identifies ambiguous names under the OLAP 12*c* naming rules. For example, a 10*g* dimension might have a hierarchy and a level with the same name. Because hierarchies and levels are in the same 12*c* namespace, the name is not unique in 12*c*; to a 12*c* client, the hierarchy and the level cannot be differentiated by name.

`INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE` creates and populates a table named `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` with unique names for these levels, hierarchies, and attributes. By using the unique names provided in the table, a 12*c* client can browse the OLAP 12*c* metadata. You cannot attach an OLAP 12*c* client to the analytic workspace or perform an upgrade without a `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` table, if the 10*g* metadata contains ambiguous names.

You can edit `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` to change the default unique names to names of your choosing. You can also add rows to change the names of any other objects. When using an 12*c* client, you see the new object names. When using an 10*g* client, you see the original names. However, the `INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE` procedure overwrites this table, so you may prefer to enter customizations in a rename table.

During an upgrade from OLAP 10*g*, the unique object names in `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` are used as the names of 12*c* objects in the new analytic workspace. However, `INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE` does not automatically provide unique names for cubes, dimensions, and measure folders. To complete an upgrade, you must assure that these objects have unique names within the 12*c* namespace. You can provide these objects with new names in the `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` table or in a rename table.

OLAP 12*c* clients automatically use `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` when it exists in the same schema as the OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace.

> **See Also:** "INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE Procedure" on page 42-53

Rename Table

You can create a rename table that contains new object names for an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace. You can then use the rename table in the `CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS` and `UPGRADE_AW` procedures.

When upgrading within the same schema, you must provide a unique name for the 12*c* analytic workspace. The `UPGRADE_AW` procedure provides a parameter for this purpose; otherwise, you must provide the new name in the rename table. The duplication of cube names does not create ambiguity because the 12*c* cubes are created in a different namespace than the 10*g* cubes.

The names provided in a rename table are used only during an upgrade and overwrite any names entered in the `CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO` table.

To create a rename table:

1. Open SQL*Plus or another SQL client, and connect to Oracle Database as the owner of the 10*g* analytic workspace.
2. Issue a command like the following:

```
CREATE TABLE table_name (
          source_id    VARCHAR2(300),
          new_name     VARCHAR2(30),
          object_type  VARCHAR2(30));
```

3. Populate the rename table with the appropriate values, as follows.

`table_name` is the name of the rename table.

`source_id` is the identifier for an object described in the XML document supplied to IMPORT_XML. The identifier must have this format:

`schema_name.object_name``[.`*`subobject_name`*`]`

`new_name` is the object name given during the import to the object specified by `source_id`.

`object_type` is the object type as described in the XML, such as StandardDimension or DerivedMeasure.

For example, these SQL statements populate the table with new names for the analytic workspace, a cube, and four dimensions:

```
INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.GLOBAL10.AW', 'GLOBAL12', 'AW');
INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.UNITS_CUBE', 'UNIT_SALES_CUBE',
'Cube');
INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.CUSTOMER', 'CUSTOMERS',
'StandardDimension');
INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.CHANNEL', 'CHANNELS',
'StandardDimension');
INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.PRODUCT', 'PRODUCTS',
'StandardDimension');
INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.TIME', 'TIME_PERIODS',
'TimeDimension');
```

See Also: "CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure" on page 42-35

Simple Upgrade

A simple upgrade creates an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace from an OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace.

To perform a simple upgrade of an Oracle OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace:

1. Open SQL*Plus or a similar SQL command-line interface and connect to Oracle Database 12*c* as the schema owner for the OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace.
2. To rename any objects in the 12*c* analytic workspace, create a rename table as described in "Rename Table" on page 42-14. (Optional)
3. Perform the upgrade, as described in "UPGRADE_AW Procedure" on page 42-57.
4. Use the `DBMS_CUBE.BUILD` procedure to load data into the cube.

Example 42–1 Performing a Simple Upgrade to the GLOBAL Analytic Workspace

This example creates an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace named `GLOBAL12` from an OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace named `GLOBAL10`. `GLOBAL10` contains no naming conflicts between cubes, dimensions, measure folders, or tables in the schema, so a rename table is not needed in this example.

```
BEGIN

  -- Upgrade the analytic workspace
  dbms_cube.upgrade_aw(sourceaw =>'GLOBAL10', destaw => 'GLOBAL12');

  -- Load and aggregate the data
  dbms_cube.build(script => 'UNITS_CUBE, PRICE_AND_COST_CUBE');

END;
/
```

Custom Upgrade

A custom upgrade enables you to set the export and import options.

To perform a custom upgrade of an Oracle OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace:

1. Open SQL*Plus or a similar SQL command-line interface and connect to Oracle Database 12*c* as the schema owner of the OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace.
2. Generate an initialization table, as described in "Initialization Table" on page 42-13. Review the new, default object names and modify them as desired.
3. Create a rename table, as described in "Rename Table" on page 42-14. If you are upgrading in the same schema, you must use a rename table to provide a unique name for the 12*c* analytic workspace. Otherwise, a rename table is needed only if names are duplicated among the cubes, dimensions, and measure folders of the analytic workspace, or between those names and the existing cubes, dimensions, measure folders, or tables of the destination schema.
4. Create a SQL script that does the following:
   a. Create an XML document for the export options, as described in "CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure" on page 42-32. The `SUPPRESS_NAMESPACE` option must be set to `TRUE` for the upgrade to occur.
   b. Create an XML document for the import options, as described in "CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure" on page 42-35.
   c. Create an XML template in OLAP 12*c* format, as described in "EXPORT_XML Procedure" on page 42-46.
   d. Create an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace from the XML template, as described in "IMPORT_XML Procedure" on page 42-50.
5. Load and aggregate the data in the new analytic workspace, as described in "BUILD Procedure" on page 42-19.

Example 42–2 Performing a Custom Upgrade to the GLOBAL Analytic Workspace

This example upgrades the `GLOBAL10` analytic workspace from OLAP 10*g* metadata to OLAP 12*c* metadata in the `GLOBAL_AW` schema.

The rename table provides the new name of the analytic workspace. These commands define the rename table.

```
CREATE TABLE my_object_map(
       source_id    VARCHAR2(300),
       new_name     VARCHAR2(30),
       object_type  VARCHAR2(30));

INSERT INTO my_object_map VALUES('GLOBAL_AW.GLOBAL10.AW',  'GLOBAL12', 'AW');
COMMIT;
```

Following is the script for performing the upgrade.

```
set serverout on

DECLARE
  importClob    clob;
  exportClob    clob;
  exportOptClob clob;
  importOptClob clob;
```

```
BEGIN

  -- Create table of reconciled names
  dbms_cube.initialize_cube_upgrade;

  -- Create a CLOB containing the export options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportOptClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_export_options(out_options_xml=>exportOptClob, suppress_
namespace=>TRUE, preserve_table_owners=>TRUE);

  -- Create a CLOB containing the import options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importOptClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_import_options(out_options_xml=>importOptClob, rename_table =>
'MY_OBJECT_MAP');

   -- Create CLOBs for the metadata
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importClob, TRUE);
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportClob, TRUE);

  -- Export metadata from a 10g analytic workspace to a CLOB
  dbms_cube.export_xml(object_ids=>'GLOBAL_AW', options_xml=>exportOptClob, out_
xml=>exportClob);

  -- Import metadata from the CLOB
  dbms_cube.import_xml(in_xml => exportClob, options_xml=>importOptClob, out_
xml=>importClob);

  -- Load and aggregate the data
  dbms_cube.build('UNITS_CUBE, PRICE_AND_COST_CUBE');

END;
/
```

Summary of DBMS_CUBE Subprograms

Table 42–1 DBMS_CUBE Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BUILD Procedure on page 42-19	Loads data into one or more cubes and dimensions, and prepares the data for querying.
CREATE_EXPORT_ OPTIONS Procedure on page 42-32	Creates an input XML document of processing options for the EXPORT_XML procedure.
CREATE_IMPORT_ OPTIONS Procedure on page 42-35	Creates an input XML document of processing options for the IMPORT_XML procedure.
CREATE_MVIEW Function on page 42-37	Creates a cube materialized view from the definition of a relational materialized view.
DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW Function on page 42-42	Creates an XML template for a cube materialized view from the definition of a relational materialized view.
DROP_MVIEW Procedure on page 42-44	Drops a cube materialized view.
EXPORT_XML Procedure on page 42-46	Exports the XML of an analytic workspace to a CLOB.
EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE Procedure on page 42-48	Exports the XML of an analytic workspace to a file.
IMPORT_XML Procedure on page 42-50	Creates, modifies, or drops an analytic workspace by using an XML template
INITIALIZE_CUBE_ UPGRADE Procedure on page 42-53	Processes Oracle OLAP 10*g* objects with naming conflicts to enable Oracle 12*c* clients to access them.
REFRESH_MVIEW Procedure on page 42-55	Refreshes a cube materialized view.
UPGRADE_AW Procedure on page 42-57	Upgrades an analytic workspace from Oracle OLAP 10*g* to 12*c*.
VALIDATE_XML Procedure on page 42-59	Checks the XML to assure that it is valid, without committing the results to the database.

BUILD Procedure

This procedure loads data into one or more cubes and dimensions, and generates aggregate values in the cubes. The results are automatically committed to the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.BUILD (
       script                IN  VARCHAR2,
       method                IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
       refresh_after_errors  IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
       parallelism           IN  BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT 0,
       atomic_refresh        IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
       automatic_order       IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT TRUE,
       add_dimensions        IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT TRUE,
       scheduler_job         IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
       master_build_id       IN  BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT 0,
       nested                IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE);
       job_class             IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS'
```

Parameters

Table 42–2 BUILD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`script`	A list of cubes and dimensions and their build options (see "SCRIPT Parameter" on page 42-20).
`method`	A full or a fast (partial) refresh. In a fast refresh, only changed rows are inserted in the cube and the affected areas of the cube are re-aggregated. You can specify a method for each cube and dimension in sequential order, or a single method to apply to all cubes and dimensions. If you list more objects than methods, then the last method applies to the additional objects. ■ `C`: Complete refresh clears all dimension values before loading. (Default) ■ `F`: Fast refresh of a cube materialized view, which performs an incremental refresh and re-aggregation of only changed rows in the source table. ■ `?`: Fast refresh if possible, and otherwise a complete refresh. ■ `P`: Recomputes rows in a cube materialized view that are affected by changed partitions in the detail tables. ■ `S`: Fast solve of a compressed cube. A fast solve reloads all the detail data and re-aggregates only the changed values. See the "Usage Notes" on page 42-26 for additional details. Methods do not apply to dimensions.
`refresh_after_errors`	`TRUE` to roll back just the cube or dimension with errors, and then continue building the other objects. `FALSE` to roll back all objects in the build.
`parallelism`	Number of parallel processes to allocate to this job (see Usage Notes).

Table 42–2 (Cont.) BUILD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
atomic_refresh	TRUE prevents users from accessing intermediate results during a build. It freezes the current state of an analytic workspace at the beginning of the build to provide current sessions with consistent data. This option thaws the analytic workspace at the end of the build to give new sessions access to the refreshed data. If an error occurs during the build, then all objects are rolled back to the frozen state. FALSE enables users to access intermediate results during an build.
automatic_order	TRUE enables optimization of the build order. Dimensions are loaded before cubes. FALSE builds objects in the order you list them in the script.
add_dimensions	TRUE automatically includes all the dimensions of the cubes in the build, whether or not you list them in the script. If a cube materialized view with a particular dimension is fresh, then that dimension is not reloaded. You can list a cube once in the script. FALSE includes only dimensions specifically listed in the script.
scheduler_job	Any text identifier for the job, which will appear in the log table. The string does not need to be unique.
master_build_id	A unique name for the build.
nested	TRUE performs nested refresh operations for the specified set of cube materialized views. Nested refresh operations refresh all the depending materialized views and the specified set of materialized views based on a dependency order to ensure the nested materialized views are truly fresh with respect to the underlying base tables. All objects must reside in a single analytic workspace.
job_class	The class this job is associated with.

SCRIPT Parameter

The SCRIPT parameter identifies the objects to include in the build, and specifies the type of processing to perform on each one. The parameter has this syntax:

```
[VALIDATE | NO COMMIT] objects [ USING ( commands ) ][,...]
```

Where:

VALIDATE checks all steps of the build and sends the planned steps to CUBE_BUILD_LOG without executing the steps. You can view all generated SQL in the OUTPUT column of the log table.

NO COMMIT builds the objects in the current attach mode (or Read Only when the analytic workspace is not attached) but does not commit the changes. This option supports what-if analysis, since it enables you to change data values temporarily. See "SCRIPT Parameter: USING Clause: SET command" on page 42-25.

objects is the qualified name of one or more cubes or dimensions, separated by commas, in the form *[aw_name.]object*, such as UNITS_CUBE or GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE.

SCRIPT Parameter: USING Clause

The USING clause specifies the processing options. It consists of one or more commands separated by commas.

> **Note:** A cube with a rewrite materialized view cannot have a USING clause, except for the ANALYZE command. It uses the default build options.

The commands can be any of the following.

- AGGREGATE USING [MEASURE]

  Generates aggregate values using the syntax described in "SCRIPT Parameter: USING Clause: AGGREGATE command".

- ANALYZE

  Runs DBMS_AW_STATS.ANALYZE, which generates and stores optimizer statistics for cubes and dimensions.

- CLEAR [VALUES | LEAVES | AGGREGATES] [SERIAL | PARALLEL]

  Prepares the cube for a data refresh. It can also be used on dimensions, but CLEAR removes all dimension keys, and thus deletes all data values for cubes that use the dimension.

  These optional arguments control the refresh method. If you omit the argument, then the behavior of CLEAR depends on the refresh method. The 'C' (complete) refresh method runs CLEAR VALUES, and all other refresh methods run CLEAR LEAVES.

  – VALUES: Clears all data in the cube. All facts must be reloaded and all aggregates must be recomputed. This option supports the COMPLETE refresh method. (Default for the C and F methods)

  – LEAVES: Clears the detail data and retains the aggregates. All facts must be reloaded, and the aggregates for any new or changed facts must be computed. This option supports the FAST refresh method. (Default for the ? method)

  – AGGREGATES: Retains the detail data and clears the aggregates. All aggregates must be recomputed.

  These optional arguments control the load method, and can be combined with any of the refresh options:

  – PARALLEL: Each partition is cleared separately. (Default)

  – SERIAL: All partitions are cleared together.

  If you omit the CLEAR command, DBMS_CUBE loads new and updated facts, but does not delete any old detail data. This is equivalent to a LOAD NO SYNC for dimensions.

- COMPILE [SORT | NO SORT | SORT ONLY]

  Creates the supporting structures for the dimension. (Dimensions only)

  These options control the use of a sort order attribute:

  – SORT: The user-defined sort order attribute populates the sort column in the embedded-total (ET) view. (Default)

  – NO SORT: Any sort order attribute is ignored. This option is for very large dimensions where sorting could consume too many resources.

  – SORT ONLY: The compile step only runs the sort.

- EXECUTE PLSQL string

Executes a PL/SQL command or script in the database.

- `EXECUTE OLAP DML string [PARALLEL | SERIAL]`

  Executes an OLAP DML command or program in the analytic workspace. The options control execution of the command or program:

  – `PARALLEL`: Execute the command or program once for each partition. This option can be used to provide a performance boost to complex DML operations, such as forecasts and models.

  – `SERIAL`: Execute the command or program once for the entire cube. (Default)

- `[INSERT | MERGE] INTO [ALL HIERARCHIES | HIERARCHIES (`*`dimension.hierarchy`*`)] VALUES (`*`dim_key, parent, level_name`*`)`

  Adds a dimension member to one or more hierarchies. `INSERT` throws an error if the member already exists, while `MERGE` does not. See "Dimension Maintenance Example" on page 42-29.

  `dimension.hierarchy`: The name of a hierarchy the new member belongs to. Enclose each part of the name in double quotes, for example, `"PRODUCT"."PRIMARY"`.

  `dim_key`: The `DIM_KEY` value of the dimension member.

  `parent`: The parent of the dimension key.

  `level_name`: The level of the dimension key.

- `UPDATE [ALL HIERARCHIES | HIERARCHIES (`*`dimension.hierarchy`*`)] SET PARENT = `*`parent`*`, LEVEL=`*`level_name`*` WHERE MEMBER = `*`dim_key`*

  Alters the level or parent of an existing dimension member. See `INSERT` for a description of the options. Also see "Dimension Maintenance Example" on page 42-29.

- `DELETE FROM DIMENSION WHERE MEMBER=`*`dim_key`*

  Deletes a dimension member. See "Dimension Maintenance Example" on page 42-29.

  `dim_key`: The `DIM_KEY` value of the dimension member to be deleted.

- `SET `*`dimension.attribute[qdr]`*` = CAST('`*`attribute_value`*`' AS VARCHAR2))`

  Sets the value of an attribute for a dimension member. See "Dimension Maintenance Example" on page 42-29.

  `dimension.attribute`: The name of the attribute. Enclose each part of the name in double quotes, for example, `"PRODUCT"."LONG_DESCRIPTION"`.

  `qdr`: The dimension member being given an attribute value in the form of a qualified data reference, such as `"PRODUCT"='OPT MOUSE'`.

  `attribute_value`: The value of the attribute, such as 'Optical Mouse'.

- `FOR `*`dimension_clause measure_clause`*` BUILD (`*`commands`*`)`

  Restricts the build to particular measures and dimension values, using the following arguments. See "FOR Clause Example" on page 42-28.

  – *`dimension_clause`*:

    `dimension` `ALL | NONE | WHERE `*`condition`*` | LEVELS (`*`level`*` [, `*`level`*`...])`

    `dimension` is the name of a dimension of the cube.

ALL sets the dimension status to all members before executing the list of commands.

NONE loads values for no dimension members.

WHERE loads values for those dimension members that match the condition.

LEVELS loads values for dimension members in the named levels.

level is a level of the named dimension.

– *measure_clause*:

MEASURES (*measure* [, *measure*...])

measure is the name of a measure in the cube.

– *commands*: Any of the other USING commands.

- LOAD [SYNCH | NO SYNCH | RETAIN] [PRUNE | PARALLEL | SERIAL] [WHERE *condition*]

  Loads data into the dimension or cube.

  – WHERE limits the load to those values in the mapped relational table that match *condition*.

  – *condition* is a valid predicate based on the columns of the mapped table. See the "Examples" on page 42-28.

  These optional arguments apply only to dimensions:

  – SYNCH matches the dimension keys to the relational data source. (Default)

  – NO SYNCH loads new dimension keys but does not delete old keys.

    If the parent of a dimension key has changed in the relational data source, this option allows the load to change the parent/child relation in the analytic workspace.

  – RETAIN loads new dimension keys but does not delete old keys.

    This option does not allow the parent of a dimension key to change. If the parent has changed, the load rejects the record. The rejection generates an error in the rejected records log, if the log is enabled.

  These optional arguments apply only to cubes:

  – PRUNE: Runs a full table scan on the fact table to determine which partitions to load. For example, if a cube is partitioned by month and the fact table has values only for the last two months, then jobs are only started to load the partitions for the last two months.

  – PARALLEL: Each partition is loaded separately. (Default)

  – SERIAL: All partitions are loaded in one SELECT statement.

- MODEL model_name [PARALLEL | SERIAL]

  Executes a model previously created for the cube. It accepts these arguments:

  – PARALLEL: The model runs separately on each partition.

  – SERIAL: The model runs on all cubes at the same time. (Default)

- SET

  Supports write-back to the cube using the syntax described in "SCRIPT Parameter: USING Clause: SET command" on page 42-25. (Cubes only)

- SOLVE [PARALLEL | SERIAL]

  Aggregates the cube using the rules defined for the cube, including the aggregation operator and the precompute specifications. (Cubes only)

  It accepts these arguments:

  – PARALLEL: Each partition is solved separately. (Default)

  – SERIAL: All partitions are solved at the same time.

SCRIPT Parameter: USING Clause: AGGREGATE command

The AGGREGATE command in a script specifies the aggregation rules for one or more measures.

> **Note:** The AGGREGATE command is available only for uncompressed cubes.

AGGREGATE has the following syntax:

```
{ AGGREGATE USING MEASURE
     WHEN measure1 THEN operator1
     WHEN measure2 THEN operator2...
          ELSE default_operator
|
 [AGGREGATE USING] operator_clause }
processing_options
OVER { ALL | dimension | dimension HIERARCHIES (hierarchy)}
```

USING MEASURE Clause

This clause enables you to specify different aggregation operators for different measures in the cube.

Operator Clause

The operator_clause has this syntax:

```
operator(WEIGHTBY expression | SCALEBY expression)
```

WEIGHTBY multiplies each data value by an expression before aggregation.

SCALEBY adds the value of an expression to each data value before aggregation.

Table 42–3 Aggregation Operators

Operator	Option	Description
AVG	WEIGHTBY	Adds data values, then divides the sum by the number of data values that were added together.
FIRST	WEIGHTBY	The first real data value.
HIER_AVG	WEIGHTBY	Adds data values, then divides the sum by the number of the children in the dimension hierarchy. Unlike AVERAGE, which counts only non-NA children, HAVERAGE counts all of the logical children of a parent, regardless of whether each child does or does not have a value.
HIER_FIRST	WEIGHTBY	The first data value in the hierarchy, even when that value is NA.

Table 42–3 (Cont.) Aggregation Operators

Operator	Option	Description
HIER_LAST	WEIGHTBY	The last data value in the hierarchy, even when that value is NA.
LAST	WEIGHTBY	The last real data value.
MAX	WEIGHTBY	The largest data value among the children of each parent.
MIN	WEIGHTBY	The smallest data value among the children of each parent.
NO AGGREGATION	No option	Do not aggregate the values of the dimension or dimensions. Leave all aggregated values as NA.
SUM	SCALEBY | WEIGHTBY	Adds data values. (Default)

Processing Options

You can specify these processing options for aggregation:

- (ALLOW | DISALLOW) OVERFLOW

  Specifies whether to allow decimal overflow, which occurs when the result of a calculation is very large and can no longer be represented by the exponent portion of the numerical representation.

  - ALLOW: A calculation that generates overflow executes without error and produces null results. (Default)
  - DISALLOW: A calculation involving overflow stops executing and generates an error message.

- (ALLOW | DISALLOW) DIVISION BY ZERO

  Specifies whether to allow division by zero.

  - ALLOW: A calculation involving division by zero executes without error but returns a null value. (Default)
  - DISALLOW: A calculation involving division by zero stops executing and generates an error message.

- (CONSIDER | IGNORE) NULLS

  Specifies whether nulls are included in the calculations.

  - CONSIDER: Nulls are included in the calculations. A calculation that includes a null value returns a null value.
  - IGNORE: Only actual data values are used in calculations. Nulls are treated as if they do not exist. (Default)

- MAINTAIN COUNT

  Stores an up-to-date count of the number of dimension members for use in calculating averages. Omit this option to count the members on the fly.

SCRIPT Parameter: USING Clause: SET command

The SET command in a script assigns values to one or more cells in a stored measure. It has this syntax:

```
SET target = expression
```

Where:

target is a a measure or a qualified data reference.

expression returns values of the appropriate datatype for *target*.

Qualified Data References

Qualified data references (QDRs) limit a dimensional object to a single member in one or more dimensions for the duration of a query.

A QDR has the following syntax:

```
expression [ { dimension = member }[ , { dimension = member } ...] ]
```

Where:

expression is a dimensional expression, typically the name of a measure.

dimension is a primary dimension of expression.

member is a value of dimension.

The outside square brackets shown in bold are literal syntax elements; they do not indicate an optional argument. The inside square brackets shown in regular text delimit an optional argument and are not syntax elements.

This example returns Sales values for calendar year 2007:

```
global.sales[global.time = 'CY2007'
]
```

The next example returns Sales values only for the United States in calendar year 2007:

```
sales[customer = 'US', time = 'CY2007'
]
```

See the Examples for qualified data references in SET commands.

Usage Notes

Build Methods

The `C`, `S`, and `?` methods always succeed and can be used on any cube.

The `F` and `P` methods require that the cube have a materialized view that was created as a fast or a rewrite materialized view.

Parallelism

Partitioned cubes can be loaded and aggregated in parallel processes. For example, a cube with five partitions can use up to five processes. Dimensions are always loaded serially.

The number of parallel processes actually allocated by a build is controlled by the smallest of these factors:

- Number of cubes in the build and the number of partitions in each cube.
- Setting of the `PARALLELISM` argument of the `BUILD` procedure.
- Setting of the `JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES` database initialization parameter.

Suppose `UNITS_CUBE` has 12 partitions, `PARALLELISM` is set to 10, and `JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES` is set to 4. OLAP uses four processes, which appear as slave processes in the build log.

The SQL engine may allocate additional processes when the PARALLEL_DEGREE_POLICY database initialization parameter is set to AUTO or LIMITED. For example, if OLAP allocates four processes, the SQL engine might determine that two of those processes should be done by four processes instead, for a total of six processes.

Build Logs

OLAP generates three logs that provide diagnostic information about builds:

- Cube build log
- Rejected records log
- Cube dimension compile log

Analytic Workspace Manager creates these logs automatically as tables in the same schema as the analytic workspace. If you do not use Analytic Workspace Manager, you can create and manage the logs in PL/SQL using the `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` package.

You can also create the cube log file by running `$ORACLE_HOME/olap/admin/utlolaplog.sql`. This script creates three additional views:

- `CUBE_BUILD_LATEST`: Returns rows only from the last build.
- `CUBE_BUILD_REPORT`: Returns one row for each command with elapsed times.
- `CUBE_BUILD_REPORT_LATEST`: Returns a report like `CUBE_BUILD_REPORT` only from the last build.

This report shows a successfully completed build of the objects in the `GLOBAL` analytic workspace, which has four dimensions and two cubes.

```
SELECT command, status, build_object, build_object_type type
     FROM cube_build_report_latest;

COMMAND                   STATUS     BUILD_OBJECT                   TYPE
------------------------- ---------- ------------------------------ ----------
BUILD                     COMPLETED                                 BUILD
FREEZE                    COMPLETED                                 BUILD
LOAD NO SYNCH             COMPLETED  CHANNEL                        DIMENSION
COMPILE                   COMPLETED  CHANNEL                        DIMENSION
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  CHANNEL                        DIMENSION
LOAD NO SYNCH             COMPLETED  CUSTOMER                       DIMENSION
COMPILE                   COMPLETED  CUSTOMER                       DIMENSION
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  CUSTOMER                       DIMENSION
LOAD NO SYNCH             COMPLETED  PRODUCT                        DIMENSION
COMPILE                   COMPLETED  PRODUCT                        DIMENSION
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  PRODUCT                        DIMENSION
LOAD NO SYNCH             COMPLETED  TIME                           DIMENSION
COMPILE                   COMPLETED  TIME                           DIMENSION
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  TIME                           DIMENSION
COMPILE AGGMAP            COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
COMPILE AGGMAP            COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
BUILD                     COMPLETED                                BUILD
LOAD                      COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
SOLVE                     COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
UPDATE/COMMIT             COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
BUILD                     COMPLETED                                BUILD
LOAD                      COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
SOLVE                     COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
```

```
UPDATE/COMMIT            COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
ANALYZE                  COMPLETED  PRICE_CUBE                    CUBE
ANALYZE                  COMPLETED  UNITS_CUBE                    CUBE
THAW                     COMPLETED                                BUILD

31 rows selected.
```

Examples

This example uses the default parameters to build UNITS_CUBE.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_CUBE.BUILD('GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE');
```

The next example builds UNITS_CUBE and explicitly builds two of its dimensions, TIME and CHANNEL. The dimensions use the complete (C) method, and the cube uses the fast solve (S) method.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_CUBE.BUILD(
    script=>'GLOBAL."TIME", GLOBAL.CHANNEL, GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE',
    method=>'CCS',
    parallelism=>2);
END;
/
```

The following example loads only the selection of data identified by the WHERE clause:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_CUBE.BUILD(q'!
  GLOBAL."TIME",
  GLOBAL.CHANNEL,
  GLOBAL.CUSTOMER,
  GLOBAL.PRODUCT,
  GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE USING (LOAD NO SYNCH
     WHERE UNITS_FACT.MONTH_ID LIKE '2006%'
     AND UNITS_FACT.SALES > 5000)!');
END;
/
```

FOR Clause Example

In this example, the Time dimension is partitioned by calendar year, and DBMS_CUBE builds only the partition identified by CY2006. The HIER_ANCESTOR is an analytic function in the OLAP expression syntax.

```
BEGIN
   dbms_cube.build(q'!
   UNITS_CUBE USING
   (
   FOR "TIME"
     WHERE HIER_ANCESTOR(WITHIN "TIME".CALENDAR LEVEL "TIME".CALENDAR_YEAR) =
'CY2006'
     BUILD (LOAD, SOLVE)
   )!',
   parallelism=>1);
END;
/
```

The next example uses a FOR clause to limit the build to the SALES measure in 2006. All objects are built using the complete (C) method.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_CUBE.BUILD(
```

```
  script => '
  GLOBAL."TIME",
  GLOBAL.CHANNEL,
  GLOBAL.CUSTOMER,
  GLOBAL.PRODUCT,
  GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE USING
  (
    FOR MEASURES(GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE.SALES)
      BUILD(LOAD NO SYNCH WHERE GLOBAL.UNITS_FACT.MONTH_ID LIKE ''2006%'')
   )',
  method => 'C',
  parallelism => 2);
END;
/
```

Write-Back Examples

The following examples show various use of the `SET` command in a `USING` clause.

This example sets Sales Target to Sales increased by 5%:

```
DBMS_CUBE.BUILD('UNITS_CUBE USING(
   SET UNITS_CUBE.SALES_TARGET = UNITS_CUBE.SALES * 1.05, SOLVE)');
```

This example sets the price of the Deluxe Mouse in May 2007 to $29.99:

```
DBMS_CUBE.BUILD('PRICE_CUBE USING(
  SET PRICE_CUBE.UNIT_PRICE["TIME"=''2007.05'', "PRODUCT"=''DLX MOUSE'']
  = 29.99, SOLVE)');
```

The next example contains two SET commands, but does not reaggregate the cube:

```
DBMS_CUBE.BUILD('PRICE_CUBE USING(
   SET PRICE_CUBE.UNIT_PRICE["TIME"=''2006.12'', "PRODUCT"=''DLX MOUSE'']
   = 29.49,
   SET PRICE_CUBE.UNIT_PRICE["TIME"=''2007.05'', "PRODUCT"=''DLX MOUSE'']
   = 29.99)');
```

Dimension Maintenance Example

This script shows dimension maintenance. It adds a new dimension member named `OPT MOUSE` to all hierarchies, alters its position in the Primary hierarchy, assigns it a long description, then deletes it from the dimension.

```
BEGIN
dbms_output.put_line('Add optical mouse');
dbms_cube.build(q'!
   "PRODUCT" using (MERGE INTO ALL HIERARCHIES
   VALUES ('ITEM_OPT MOUSE', 'CLASS_SFT', "PRODUCT"."FAMILY"))
!');

dbms_output.put_line('Alter optical mouse');
dbms_cube.build(q'!
   "PRODUCT" using (UPDATE HIERARCHIES ("PRODUCT"."PRIMARY")
   SET PARENT = 'FAMILY_ACC', LEVEL = "PRODUCT"."ITEM"
   WHERE MEMBER = 'ITEM_OPT MOUSE')
!');

dbms_output.put_line('Provide attributes to optical mouse');
dbms_cube.build(q'!
   "PRODUCT" USING (SET "PRODUCT"."LONG_DESCRIPTION"["PRODUCT" = 'ITEM_OPT MOUSE']
    = CAST('Optical Mouse' AS VARCHAR2))
!');
```

```
dbms_output.put_line('Delete optical mouse');
dbms_cube.build(q'!
   "PRODUCT" USING (DELETE FROM DIMENSION WHERE MEMBER='ITEM_OPT MOUSE')
!');

END;
/
```

OLAP DML Example

This example uses the OLAP DML to add comments to the cube build log:

```
BEGIN
 DBMS_CUBE.BUILD(q'!
  global.units_cube USING (
   EXECUTE OLAP DML 'SHOW STATLEN(units_cube_prt_list)' PARALLEL,
   EXECUTE OLAP DML 'SHOW LIMIT(units_cube_prt_list KEEP ALL)' PARALLEL,
   EXECUTE OLAP DML 'SHOW STATLEN(time)' parallel,
   EXECUTE OLAP DML 'SHOW LIMIT(time KEEP time_levelrel ''CALENDAR_YEAR'')'
parallel)!',
  parallelism=>2,
  add_dimensions=>false);
END;
/
```

This query shows the comments in the cube build log:

```
SELECT partition, slave_number, TO_CHAR(output) output
   FROM cube_build_log
   WHERE command = 'OLAP DML'
   AND status = 'COMPLETED'
   ORDER BY slave_number, time;

PARTITION    SLAVE_NUMBER OUTPUT
------------ ------------ ------------------------------------------------------
P10:CY2007              1 <OLAPDMLExpression
                            Expression="TO_CHAR(statlen(units_cube_prt_list))"
                            Value="1"/>

P10:CY2007              1 <OLAPDMLExpression
                            Expression="TO_CHAR(limit(units_cube_prt_list keep al
                          l))"
                            Value="P10"/>

P10:CY2007              1 <OLAPDMLExpression
                            Expression="TO_CHAR(statlen(time))"
                            Value="17"/>

P10:CY2007              1 <OLAPDMLExpression
                            Expression="TO_CHAR(limit(time keep time_levelrel &ap
                          os;CALENDAR_YEAR&apos;))"
                            Value="CALENDAR_YEAR_CY2007"/>

P9:CY2006               2 <OLAPDMLExpression
                            Expression="TO_CHAR(statlen(units_cube_prt_list))"
                            Value="1"/>

P9:CY2006               2 <OLAPDMLExpression
                            Expression="TO_CHAR(limit(units_cube_prt_list keep al
                          l))"
```

```
                                Value="P9"/>

P9:CY2006                   2 <OLAPDMLExpression
                                Expression="TO_CHAR(statlen(time))"
                                Value="17"/>
                        .
                        .
                        .
```

CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure

This procedure creates an input XML document that describes processing options for the EXPORT_XML Procedure on page 42-46 and the EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE Procedure on page 42-48.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS (
          out_options_xml         IN/OUT  CLOB,
          target_version          IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
          suppress_owner          IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
          suppress_namespace      IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
          preserve_table_owners   IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
          metadata_changes        IN      CLOB      DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 42–4 CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`out_options_xml`	Contains the generated XML document, which can be passed into the `options_xml` parameter of the EXPORT_XML Procedure.
`target_version`	Specifies the version of Oracle Database in which the XML document generated by EXPORT_XML or EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE will be imported. You can specify two to five digits, such as 12.1 or 12.1.0.1.0. This parameter defaults to the current database version, and so can typically be omitted.
`suppress_owner`	Controls the use of the Owner attribute in XML elements and the owner qualifier in object names. Enter `True` to drop the owner from the XML, or enter `False` to retain it. Enter `True` if you plan to import the exported metadata into a different schema.
`suppress_namespace`	Controls the use of Namespace attributes in XML elements and the namespace qualifier in object names. Enter `True` to drop the namespace from the XML, or enter `False` to retain it (default). Enter `True` when upgrading to Oracle OLAP 12*c* metadata. Namespaces allow objects created in Oracle 10*g* to coexist with objects created in Oracle 12*c*. You cannot set or change namespaces.
`preserve_table_owners`	Controls the use of the owner in qualifying table names in the mapping elements, such as GLOBAL.UNITS_HISTORY_FACT instead of UNITS_HISTORY_FACT. Enter `True` to retain the table owner, or enter `False` to default to the current schema for table mappings. If you plan to import the exported metadata to a different schema, you must set this option to `True` to load data from tables and views in the original schema, unless the destination schema has its own copies of the tables and views.
`metadata_changes`	Contains an 12*c* XML description of an object that overwrites the exported object description. The XML document must contain all parent XML elements of the modified element with the attributes needed to uniquely identify them. Use the Name attribute if it exists. See the Examples.

Examples

The following example generates an XML document of export options:

```
DECLARE
   optionsClob  CLOB;

BEGIN
   dbms_lob.createtemporary(optionsClob, false, dbms_lob.CALL);
   dbms_cube.create_export_options(out_options_xml=>optionsClob, suppress_
namespace=>TRUE);
   dbms_output.put_line(optionsClob);
END;
/
```

The `DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE` procedure displays this XML document (formatted for readability:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Export TargetVersion="12.1.0.1">
  <ExportOptions>
    <Option Name="SuppressOwner" Value="FALSE"/>
    <Option Name="SuppressNamespace" Value="TRUE"/>
    <Option Name="PreserveTableOwners" Value="FALSE"/>
  </ExportOptions>
</Export>
```

The next example generates an XML document with a metadata change to the mapping of the American long description attribute of the `CHANNEL` dimension.

```
DECLARE
  importClob         clob;
  exportClob         clob;
  overClob           clob;
  exportOptClob      clob;
  importOptClob      clob;

BEGIN
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(overClob, TRUE);
  dbms_lob.open(overClob, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE);
  dbms_lob.writeappend(overClob,58, '<Metadata Version="1.3"
MinimumDatabaseVersion="12.1.0.1">');
  dbms_lob.writeappend(overClob,34, '<StandardDimension Name="CHANNEL">');
  dbms_lob.writeappend(overClob,75, '<Description Type="Description"
Language="AMERICAN" Value="Sales Channel"/>');
  dbms_lob.writeappend(overClob,20, '</StandardDimension>');
  dbms_lob.writeappend(overClob,11, '</Metadata>');
  dbms_lob.close(overClob);

  -- Enable Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1) clients to access 10g metadata
  dbms_cube.initialize_cube_upgrade;

  -- Create a CLOB containing the export options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportOptClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_export_options(out_options_xml=>exportOptClob, suppress_
namespace=>TRUE, metadata_changes=>overClob);

  -- Create a CLOB containing the import options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importOptClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_import_options(out_options_xml=>importOptClob, rename_table =>
'MY_OBJECT_MAP');

   -- Create CLOBs for the metadata
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importClob, TRUE);
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportClob, TRUE);
```

```
  -- Export metadata from a 10g analytic workspace to a CLOB
  dbms_cube.export_xml(object_ids=>'GLOBAL_AW', options_xml=>exportOptClob, out_
xml=>exportClob);

  -- Import metadata from the CLOB
  dbms_cube.import_xml(in_xml => exportClob, options_xml=>importOptClob, out_
xml=>importClob);

  -- Load and aggregate the data
  dbms_cube.build(script=>'UNITS_CUBE, PRICE_AND_COST_CUBE');

END;
/
```

The following is the content of `exportClob` (formatting added for readability). The XML document changes the description of Channel to Sales Channel.

```
<Metadata Version="1.3" MinimumDatabaseVersion="12.1.0.1">
  <StandardDimension Name="CHANNEL">
    <Description Type="Description" Language="AMERICAN" Value="Sales Channel"/>
  </StandardDimension>
</Metadata>
```

CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure

This procedure creates an input XML document that describes processing options for the IMPORT_XML Procedure on page 42-50.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS (
          out_options_xml  IN/OUT  CLOB,
          validate_only    IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
          rename_table     IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 42–5 CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
out_options_xml	Contains the generated XML document, which can be passed to the options_xml parameter of the IMPORT_XML Procedure.
validate_only	TRUE causes the IMPORT_XML procedure to validate the metadata described in the input file or the in_xml parameter, without committing the changes to the metadata.
rename_table	The name of a table identifying new names for the imported objects, in the form [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. The IMPORT_XML procedure creates objects using the names specified in the table instead of the ones specified in the XML document. See the Usage Notes for the format of the rename table.

Usage Notes

See "Rename Table" on page 42-14.

Examples

This example specifies validation only and a rename table. For an example of the import CLOB being used in an import, see "IMPORT_XML Procedure" on page 42-50.

```
DECLARE
importClob  clob;

BEGIN
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importClob, TRUE);

  dbms_cube.create_import_options(out_options_xml => importClob, rename_table =>
'MY_OBJECT_MAP', validate_only => TRUE);

  dbms_output.put_line(importClob);
END;
/
```

It generates the following XML document:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Import>
  <ImportOptions>
    <Option Name="ValidateOnly" Value="TRUE"/>
    <Option Name="RenameTable" Value="MY_OBJECT_MAP"/>
  </ImportOptions>
```

```
</Import>
```

CREATE_MVIEW Function

This function creates a cube materialized view from the definition of a relational materialized view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.CREATE_MVIEW (
          mvowner        IN  VARCHAR2,
          mvname         IN  VARCHAR2,
          sam_parameters IN  CLOB  DEFAULT NULL)
    RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 42–6 CREATE_MVIEW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
mvowner	Owner of the relational materialized view.
mvname	Name of the relational materialized view. For restrictions, see "Requirements for the Relational Materialized View" on page 42-6. A single cube materialized view can replace many of the relational materialized views for a table. Choose the materialized view that has the lowest levels of the dimension hierarchies that you want represented in the cube materialized view.
sam_parameters	Parameters in the form '*parameter1=value1, parameter2=value2,...*'. See "SQL Aggregation Management Parameters".

SQL Aggregation Management Parameters

The CREATE_MVIEW and DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW functions use the SQL aggregation management (SAM) parameters described in Table 42–7. Some parameters support the development of cubes with advanced analytics. Other parameters support the development of Java applications. The default settings are appropriate for cube materialized views that are direct replacements for relational materialized views.

Table 42–7 SQL Aggregation Management Parameters

Parameter	Description
ADDTOPS	Adds a top level and a level member to every dimension hierarchy in the cube. If the associated relational dimension has no hierarchy, then a dimension hierarchy is created. TRUE: Creates levels named ALL_*dimension* with level members All_*dimension*. (Default) FALSE: Creates only the hierarchies and levels identified by the relational dimensions.
ADDUNIQUEKEYPREFIX	Controls the creation of dimension keys. TRUE: Creates cube dimension keys by concatenating the level name with the relational dimension key. This practice assures that the dimension keys are unique across all levels, such as CITY_NEW_YORK and STATE_NEW_YORK. (Default) FALSE: Uses the relational dimension keys as cube dimension keys.

Table 42–7 (Cont.) SQL Aggregation Management Parameters

Parameter	Description
ATRMAPTYPE	Specifies whether attributes are mapped by hierarchy levels, dimension levels, or both. HIER_LEVEL: Maps attributes to the levels of a particular dimension hierarchy. (Default) DIM_LEVEL: Maps attributes to the levels of the dimension regardless of hierarchy. BOTH: Maps attributes to both dimension and hierarchy levels. AUTO: Maps attributes to the levels of the dimension for a star schema and to the levels of a particular dimension hierarchy for a snowflake schema.
AWNAME	Provides the name of the analytic workspace that owns the cube. Choose a simple database object name of 1 to 30 bytes. The default name is *fact_tablename*_AW*n*.
BUILD	Specifies whether a data refresh will immediately follow creation of the cube materialized view. IMMEDIATE: Refreshes immediately. DEFERRED: Does not perform a data refresh. (Default) **Note**: Only the CREATE_MVIEW function uses this parameter.
CUBEMVOPTION	Controls validation and creation of a cube materialized view. Regardless of this setting, the function creates an analytic workspace containing a cube and its related cube dimensions. COMPLETE_REFRESH: Creates a complete refresh cube materialized view (full update). FAST_REFRESH: Creates a fast refresh materialized view (incremental update). REWRITE_READY: Runs validation checks for a rewrite cube materialized view, but does not create it. REWRITE: Creates a rewrite cube materialized view. REWRITE_WITH_ATTRIBUTES: Creates a rewrite cube materialized view that includes columns with dimension attributes, resulting in faster query response times. (Default) **Note**: *The following settings do not create a cube materialized view.* Use Analytic Workspace Manager to drop an analytic workspace that does not have a cube materialized view. You can use the DROP_MVIEW procedure to delete an analytic workspace only when it supports a cube materialized view. NONE: Does not create a cube materialized view. COMPLETE_REFRESH_READY: Runs validation checks for a complete refresh cube materialized view, but does not create it. FAST_REFRESH_READY: Runs validation checks for fast refresh, but does not create the cube materialized view.
CUBENAME	Provides the name of the cube derived from the relational materialized view. Choose simple database object name of 1 to 30 bytes. The default name is *fact_tablename*_C*n*.

Table 42–7 (Cont.) SQL Aggregation Management Parameters

Parameter	Description
DIMJAVABINDVARS	Supports access by Java programs to the XML document. TRUE: Generates an XML template that uses Java bind variable notation for the names of dimensions. No XML validation is performed. You cannot use the IMPORT_XML procedure to create a cube using this template. FALSE: Generates an XML template that does not support Java bind variables. (Default)
DISABLEQRW	Controls disabling of query rewrite on the source relational materialized view. TRUE: Issues an ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW *mview_name* DISABLE QUERY REWRITE command. FALSE: No action. **Note**: Only the CREATE_MVIEW function with BUILD=IMMEDIATE uses this parameter.
EXPORTXML	Exports the XML that defines the dimensional objects to a file, which you specify as *dir/filename*. Both the directory and the file name are case sensitive. *dir*: Name of a database directory. *filename*: The name of the file, typically given an XML filename extension.
FILTERPARTITIONANCESTORLEVELS	Controls the generation of aggregate values above the partitioning level of a partitioned cube. TRUE: Removes levels above the partitioning level from the cube. Requests for summary values above the partitioning level are solved by SQL. FALSE: All levels are retained in the cube. Requests for summary values are solved by OLAP. (Default)
LOGDEST	Directs and stores log messages. By default, the messages are not available. SERVEROUT: Sends messages to server output (typically the screen), which is suitable when working interactively such as in SQL*Plus or SQL Developer. TRACEFILE: Sends messages to the session trace file.
PARTITIONOPTION	Controls partitioning of the cube. NONE: Prevents partitioning. DEFAULT: Allows the Sparsity Advisor to determine whether partitioning is needed and how to partition the cube. (Default) FORCE: Partitions the cube even when the Sparsity Advisor recommends against it. The Sparsity Advisor identifies the best dimension, hierarchy, and level to use for partitioning. *dimension.hierarchy.level*: Partitions the cube using the specified dimension, hierarchy, and level.
POPULATELINEAGE	Controls the appearance of attributes in a cube materialized view. TRUE: Includes all dimension attributes in the cube materialized view. (Default) FALSE: Omits all dimension attributes from the cube materialized view.

Table 42–7 (Cont.) SQL Aggregation Management Parameters

Parameter	Description
PRECOMPUTE	Identifies a percentage of the data that is aggregated and stored. The remaining values are calculated as required by queries during the session. *precompute_percentage*[:*precompute_top_percentage*] Specify the top percentage for partitioned cubes. The default value is 35:0, which specifies precomputing 35% of the bottom partition and 0% of the top partition. If the cube is not partitioned, then the second number is ignored.
REMAPCOMPOSITEKEYS	Controls how multicolumn keys are rendered in the cube. TRUE: Creates a unique key attribute whose values are concatenated string expressions with an underscore between the column values. For example, the value BOSTON_MA_USA might be an expression produced from a multicolumn key composed of CITY, STATE, and COUNTRY columns. In addition, an attribute is created for each individual column to store the relational keys. (Default) FALSE: Creates a unique key attribute for each column.
RENDERINGMODE	Controls whether a loss in fidelity between the relational materialized view and the cube materialized view results in a warning message or an exception. See "Requirements for the Relational Materialized View" on page 42-6. LOOSE: Losses are noted in the optional logs generated by the CREATE_MVIEW Function and the DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW Function. No exceptions are raised. (Default) STRICT: Any loss in fidelity raises an exception so that no XML template is created.
SEEFILTERS	Controls whether conditions in the WHERE clause of the relational materialized view's defining query are retained or ignored. TRUE: Renders valid conditions in the XML template. (Default) FALSE: Ignores all conditions.
UNIQUENAMES	Controls whether top level dimensional objects have unique names. Cross namespace conflicts may occur because dimensional objects have different namespaces than relational objects. TRUE: Modifies all relational names when they are rendered in the cube.(Default) FALSE: Duplicates relational names in the cube unless a naming conflict is detected. In that case, a unique name is created.
UNKNOWNKEYASDIM	Controls handling of simple columns with no levels or hierarchies in the GROUP BY clause of the relational materialized view's defining query. TRUE: Renders a simple column without a relational dimension as a cube dimension with no levels or hierarchies. FALSE: Raises an exception when no relational dimension is found for the column. (Default)
VALIDATEXML	Controls whether the generated XML document is validated. TRUE: Validates the template using the VALIDATE_XML procedure. (Default) FALSE: No validation is done.

Returns

The name of the cube materialized view created by the function.

Usage Notes

See "Using SQL Aggregation Management" on page 42-4

Examples

All examples for the SQL Aggregate Management subprograms use the sample Sales History schema, which is installed in Oracle Database with two relational materialized views: CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV and FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV.

The following script creates a cube materialized view using CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV as the relational materialized view. It uses all default options.

```
SET serverout ON format wrapped

DECLARE
     salesaw  varchar2(30);

BEGIN
     salesaw := dbms_cube.create_mview('SH', 'CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV');
END;
/
```

The next example sets several parameters for creating a cube materialized view from FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV. These parameters change the cube materialized view in the following ways:

- ADDTOPS: Adds a top level consisting of a single value to the hierarchies. All of the dimensions in Sales History have a top level already.
- PRECOMPUTE: Changes the percentage of materialized aggregates from 35:0 to 40:10.
- EXPORTXML: Creates a text file for the XML document.
- BUILD: Performs a data refresh.

```
DECLARE
     salescubemv   varchar2(30);
     sam_param     clob := 'ADDTOPS=FALSE,
                            PRECOMPUTE=40:10,
                            EXPORTXML=WORK_DIR/sales.xml,
                            BUILD=IMMEDIATE';

BEGIN
     salescubemv := dbms_cube.create_mview('SH', 'FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV',
                     sam_param);
END;
/
```

DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW Function

This function generates an XML template that defines a cube with materialized view capabilities, using the information derived from an existing relational materialized view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW (
          mvowner        IN  VARCHAR2,
          mvname         IN  VARCHAR2,
          sam_parameters IN  CLOB  DEFAULT NULL)
     RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 42–8 DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
mvowner	Owner of the relational materialized view.
mvname	Name of the relational materialized view. For restrictions, see "Requirements for the Relational Materialized View" on page 42-6. A single cube materialized view can replace many of the relational materialized views for a table. Choose the materialized view that has the lowest levels of the dimension hierarchies that you want represented in the cube materialized view.
sam_parameters	Optional list of parameters in the form '*parameter1=value1, parameter2=value2,...*'. See "SQL Aggregation Management Parameters" on page 42-37.

Returns

An XML template that defines an analytic workspace containing a cube enabled as a materialized view.

Usage Notes

To create a cube materialized view from an XML template, use the IMPORT_XML procedure. Then use the REFRESH_MVIEW procedure to refresh the cube materialized view with data.

See "Using SQL Aggregation Management" on page 42-4.

Examples

The following example generates an XML template named sales_cube.xml from the CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV relational materialized view in the SH schema.

```
DECLARE
     salescubexml  clob := null;
     sam_param     clob := 'exportXML=WORK_DIR/sales_cube.xml';

BEGIN
     salescubexml := dbms_cube.derive_from_mview('SH', 'CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV',
     sam_param);
```

```
END;
/
```

DROP_MVIEW Procedure

This procedure drops a cube materialized view and all associated objects from the database. These objects include the dimension materialized views, cubes, cube dimensions, levels, hierarchies, and the analytic workspace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.DROP_MVIEW (
          mvowner        IN  VARCHAR2,
          mvname         IN  VARCHAR2,
          sam_parameters IN  CLOB  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 42–9 DROP_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mvowner	Owner of the cube materialized view
mvname	Name of the cube materialized view
sam_parameters	EXPORTXML: Exports the XML that drops the dimensional objects to a file, which you specify as *dir/filename*. Both the directory and the file name are case sensitive. *dir*: Name of a database directory. *filename*: The name of the file, typically given an XML filename extension.

Usage Notes

Use this procedure to drop a cube materialized view that you created using the CREATE_MVIEW and DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW functions. If you make modifications to the cubes or dimensions, then DROP_MVIEW may not be able to drop the cube materialized view.

Some of the CUBEMVOPTION parameters used by the CREATE_MVIEW and DERIVE_FROM_MVIEW functions do not create a materialized view. Use Analytic Workspace Manager to drop the analytic workspace, cubes, and cube dimensions.

If you use the EXPORTXML parameter, then you can use the XML document to drop the cube materialized view, after you re-create it. Use the IMPORT_XML procedure.

See "Using SQL Aggregation Management" on page 42-4.

Examples

The current schema has four materialized views. CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES is a cube materialized view for the SALES table. CB$TIMES_DIM_D1_CAL_ROLLUP is a cube dimension materialized view for the TIMES_DIM dimension on the TIMES dimension table. The others are relational materialized views.

```
SELECT mview_name FROM user_mviews;

MVIEW_NAME
------------------------------
CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES
CB$TIMES_DIM_D1_CAL_ROLLUP
CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV
```

```
FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV
```

The following command drops both CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES and CB$TIMES_DIM_D1_CAL_ROLLUP.

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube.drop_mview('SH', 'CB$CAL_MONTH_SALES');

Dropped cube organized materialized view "SH"."CAL_MONTH_SALES"
including container analytic workspace "SH"."CAL_MONTH_SALES_AW"
at 20130213 16:31:40.056.
```

This query against the data dictionary confirms that the materialized views have been dropped.

```
SELECT mview_name FROM user_mviews;

MVIEW_NAME
------------------------------
CAL_MONTH_SALES_MV
FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES_MV
```

EXPORT_XML Procedure

This procedure writes OLAP metadata to a CLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.EXPORT_XML
       (object_ids             IN      VARCHAR2,
        out_xml                IN/OUT  CLOB;

DBMS_CUBE.EXPORT_XML
       (object_ids             IN      VARCHAR2,
        options_xml            IN      CLOB,
        out_xml                IN/OUT  CLOB;

DBMS_CUBE.EXPORT_XML
       (object_ids             IN      VARCHAR2,
        options_dirname        IN      VARCHAR2,
        options_filename       IN      VARCHAR2,
        out_xml                IN/OUT  CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 42–10 EXPORT_XML Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_ids`	Any of these identifiers. ▪ The name of a schema, such as `GLOBAL`. ▪ The fully qualified name of an analytic workspace in the form *`owner.aw_name`*`.AW`, such as `GLOBAL.GLOBAL.AW`. ▪ Cube ▪ Dimension ▪ Named build process ▪ Measure folder You can specify multiple objects by separating the names with commas. **Note**: When exporting an individual object, be sure to export any objects required to reconstruct it. For example, when exporting a cube, you must also export the dimensions of the cube.
`options_dirname`	The case-sensitive name of a database directory that contains *`options_filename`*.
`options_filename`	A file containing an XML document of export options.
`options_xml`	A CLOB variable that contains an XML document of export options. Use the CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure to generate this document.
`out_xml`	A CLOB variable that will store the XML document of OLAP metadata for the objects listed in *`object_ids`*.

Export Options

The default settings for the export options are appropriate in many cases, so you can omit the *`options_xml`* parameter or the *`options_dirname`* and *`options_filename`*

parameters. However, when upgrading Oracle OLAP 10*g* metadata to OLAP 12*c*, you must specify an XML document that changes the default settings. This example changes all of the parameters from False to True; set them appropriately for your schema.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Export>
  <ExportOptions>
    <Option Name="SuppressNamespace" Value="True"/>
    <Option Name="SuppressOwner" Value="True"/>
    <Option Name="PreserveTableOwners" Value="True"/>
  </ExportOptions>
</Export>
```

You can create this XML document manually or by using the CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure on page 42-32.

Usage Notes

See "Upgrading 10g Analytic Workspaces" on page 42-12.

Example

For an example of using `EXPORT_XML` in an upgrade to the same schema, see "Upgrading 10g Analytic Workspaces" on page 42-12.

The following PL/SQL script copies an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace named `GLOBAL12` from the `GLOBAL_AW` schema to the `GLOBAL` schema. No upgrade is performed.

To upgrade into a different schema, change the example as follows:

- Call the `INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE` procedure.
- Call the `CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS` procedure with the additional parameter setting `SUPPRESS_NAMESPACE=>TRUE`.

The PL/SQL client must be connected to the database as `GLOBAL`. The `GLOBAL` user must have `SELECT` permissions on `GLOBAL_AW.AW$GLOBAL` and on all relational data sources.

```
BEGIN
  -- Create a CLOB for the export options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(optionsClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_export_options(out_options_xml=>optionsClob, suppress_
owner=>TRUE, preserve_table_owners=>TRUE);

  -- Create a CLOB for the XML template
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportClob, TRUE);

  -- Export metadata from an analytic workspace to a CLOB
  dbms_cube.export_xml(object_ids=>'GLOBAL_AW.GLOBAL12.AW', options_
xml=>optionsClob, out_xml=>exportClob);

  -- Import metadata from the CLOB
  dbms_cube.import_xml(in_xml=>exportClob);

  -- Load and aggregate the data
  dbms_cube.build(script=>'GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE, GLOBAL.PRICE_AND_COST_CUBE');

END;
/
```

EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE Procedure

This procedure exports OLAP metadata to a file. This file can be imported into a new or existing analytic workspace using the `IMPORT_XML` procedure. In this way, you can create a copy of the analytic workspace in another schema or database.

This procedure can also be used as part of the process for upgrading OLAP standard form metadata contained in an Oracle OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace to OLAP 12*c* format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE
       (object_ids             IN      VARCHAR2,
        output_dirname         IN      VARCHAR2,
        output_filename        IN      VARCHAR2;

DBMS_CUBE.EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE
       (object_ids             IN      VARCHAR2,
        options_dirname        IN      VARCHAR2,
        options_filename       IN      VARCHAR2,
        output_dirname         IN      VARCHAR2,
        output_filename        IN      VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 42–11 EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_ids`	Any of these identifiers. ▪ The name of a schema, such as `GLOBAL`. ▪ The fully qualified name of an analytic workspace in the form *`owner.aw_name`*`.AW`, such as `GLOBAL.GLOBAL.AW`. ▪ Cube ▪ Dimension ▪ Named build process ▪ Measure folder You can specify multiple objects by separating the names with commas. **Note**: When exporting an individual object, be sure to export any objects required to reconstruct it. For example, when you export a cube, you must also export the dimensions of the cube.
`options_dirname`	The case-sensitive name of a database directory that contains `options_filename`. See "Export Options".
`options_filename`	The name of a file containing an XML document of export options. See "Export Options".
`output_dirname`	The case-sensitive name of a database directory where *`output_filename`* is created.
`output_filename`	The name of the template file created by the procedure.

Export Options

The default settings for the export options are appropriate in most cases, and you can omit the *options_dirname* and *options_filename* parameters. However, when upgrading Oracle OLAP 10*g* metadata to OLAP 12*c*, you must specify an XML document that changes the default settings, like the following:

```
<?xml version="2.0"?>
<Export>
  <ExportOptions>
    <Option Name="SuppressNamespace" Value="True"/>
    <Option Name="SuppressOwner" Value="True"/>
    <Option Name="PreserveTableOwners" Value="True"/>
  </ExportOptions>
</Export>
```

You can create this XML document manually or by using the CREATE_EXPORT_OPTIONS Procedure on page 42-32.

Usage Notes

See "Upgrading 10g Analytic Workspaces" on page 42-12.

Examples

The following example generates an XML file named global.xml in OLAP 12*c* format using the default export settings. The metadata is derived from all analytic workspaces and CWM metadata in the GLOBAL_AW schema. The output file is generated in the WORK_DIR database directory.

```
execute dbms_cube.export_xml_to_file('GLOBAL_AW', 'WORK_DIR', 'global.xml');
```

The next example also generates an XML file named global.xml in OLAP 12*c* format using the export options set in options.xml. The metadata is derived from the GLOBAL analytic workspace in the GLOBAL_AW schema. Both the options file and the output file are in the WORK_DIR database directory.

```
execute dbms_cube.export_xml_to_file('GLOBAL_AW.GLOBAL.AW', 'WORK_DIR',
'options.xml', 'WORK_DIR', 'global.xml');
```

IMPORT_XML Procedure

This procedure creates, modifies, or drops an analytic workspace by using an XML template.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.IMPORT_XML
       (dirname               IN      VARCHAR2,
        filename              IN      VARCHAR2 );

DBMS_CUBE.IMPORT_XML
       (dirname               IN      VARCHAR2,
        filename              IN      VARCHAR2,
        out_xml               IN/OUT  CLOB );

DBMS_CUBE.IMPORT_XML
       (input_dirname         IN      VARCHAR2,
        input_filename        IN      VARCHAR2
        options_dirname       IN      VARCHAR2,
        options_filename      IN      VARCHAR2,
        out_xml               IN/OUT  CLOB );

DBMS_CUBE.IMPORT_XML
       (in_xml                IN      CLOB );

DBMS_CUBE.IMPORT_XML
       (in_xml                IN      CLOB,
        out_xml               IN/OUT  CLOB );

DBMS_CUBE.IMPORT_XML

       (in_xml                IN      CLOB,
        options_xml           IN      CLOB,
        out_xml               IN/OUT  CLOB );
```

Parameters

Table 42–12 IMPORT_XML Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dirname	The case-sensitive name of a database directory containing the XML document describing an analytic workspace.
filename	A file containing an XML document describing an analytic workspace.
in_xml	A CLOB containing an XML document describing an analytic workspace.
input_dirname	The case-sensitive name of a database directory containing the XML document describing an analytic workspace.
input_filename	A file containing an XML document describing an analytic workspace.
options_dirname	The case-sensitive name of a database directory containing a file of import options.
options_filename	A file of import options.

Table 42–12 (Cont.) IMPORT_XML Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
options_xml	An XML document describing the import options. Use the CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure on page 42-35 to generate this document.
out_xml	An XML document that either describes the analytic workspace or, for validation only, describes any errors. It may contain changes that DBMS_CUBE made to the imported XML, such as setting default values or making minor corrections to the XML.

Usage Notes

The XML can define, modify, or drop an entire analytic workspace, or one or more cubes or dimensions. When defining just cubes or dimensions, you must do so within an existing analytic workspace.

You can also use IMPORT_XML to drop an analytic workspace by using the XML document generated by the DROP_MVIEW procedure with the EXPORTXML parameter.

See "Upgrading 10g Analytic Workspaces" on page 42-12.

Example

This example loads an XML template from a file named GLOBAL.XML and located in a database directory named XML_DIR.

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube.import_xml('XML_DIR', 'GLOBAL.XML');
```

The next example exports an OLAP 10*g* template and uses IMPORT_XML to validate it before an upgrade to 12*c*.

```
DECLARE

  exportOptClob clob;
  importOptClob clob;
  importClob    clob;
  exportClob    clob;

BEGIN

  -- Create a CLOB for the export options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportOptClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_export_options(out_options_xml=>exportOptClob, suppress_
namespace=>TRUE, preserve_table_owners=>TRUE);

  -- Create a CLOB for the XML template
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(exportClob, TRUE);

  -- Create a CLOB for import options
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importOptClob, TRUE);
  dbms_cube.create_import_options(out_options_xml=>importOptClob, validate_
only=>TRUE);

  -- Create a CLOB for the change log
  dbms_lob.createtemporary(importClob, TRUE);

  -- Enable Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1) clients to access 10g metadata
  dbms_cube.initialize_cube_upgrade;

  -- Export metadata from an analytic workspace to a CLOB
```

```
  dbms_cube.export_xml(object_ids=>'GLOBAL_AW', options_xml=>exportOptClob, out_
xml=>exportClob);

  /* Import metadata from the CLOB. No objects are committed to the database
     because the validate_only parameter of CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS is set to
     TRUE.
  */

  dbms_cube.import_xml(in_xml=>exportClob, options_xml=>importOptClob, out_
xml=>importClob);

   -- Output the metadata changes
  dbms_output.put_line('This is the validation log:');
  dbms_output.put_line(importClob);

END;
/
```

The contents of `importClob` show that the XML is valid. Otherwise, error messages appear in the `<RootCommitResult>` element.

```
This is the validation log:
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-16"?>
<RootCommitResult>

</RootCommitResult>
```

For an example of `IMPORT_XML` within the context of an upgrade from 10*g* to 12*c* metadata, see "Custom Upgrade" on page 42-16.

INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE Procedure

This procedure processes analytic workspaces created in Oracle OLAP 10*g* so they can be used by Oracle OLAP 12*c* clients. It processes all analytic workspaces in the current schema. Run this procedure once for each schema in which there are 10*g* analytic workspaces.

Without this processing step, 12*c* clients cannot connect to a database containing a 10*g* analytic workspace with subobjects of a dimension or cube having the same name. Additionally, some DBMS_CUBE procedures and functions, such as EXPORT_XML and EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE, do not work on the 10*g* metadata.

After processing, OLAP 12*c* clients can connect and use the alternate names provided by INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE for the conflicting subobjects. OLAP 10*g* clients continue to use the original names.

INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE does not upgrade any OLAP 10*g* objects to OLAP 12*c* format.

See "Upgrading 10g Analytic Workspaces" on page 42-12.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE;
```

Usage Notes

This procedure creates and populates a table named CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO. If it already exists, the table is truncated and repopulated.

While the 10*g* namespace allowed subobjects with the same name in the same dimension or cube, the 12*c* namespace does not. When INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE detects a name conflict among subobjects such as levels, hierarchies, and dimension attributes, it creates a row in CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO providing a new, unique name for each one. Rows may also be created for objects that do not require renaming; these rows are distinguished by a value of 0 or null in the CONFLICT column. Top-level objects, such as dimensions and cubes, are not listed.

You can edit the table using SQL INSERT and UPDATE if you want to customize the names of OLAP 10*g* objects on OLAP 12*c* clients.

The UPGRADE_AW, EXPORT_XML and EXPORT_XML_TO_FILE procedures use the names specified in the NEW_NAME column of the table to identify objects in CWM or OLAP standard form (AWXML) analytic workspaces, rather than the original names.

The following table describes the columns of CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
OWNER	VARCHAR2	NOT NULL	Owner of the analytic workspace.
AW	VARCHAR2	NOT NULL	Name of the analytic workspace.
AWXML_ID	VARCHAR2	NOT NULL	Full logical name of the object requiring modification, in the form *simple_name.[subtype_name].object_type*. For example, TIME.DIMENSION and PRODUCT.COLOR.ATTRIBUTE.
NEW_NAME	VARCHAR2	NOT NULL	The name the object will have in Oracle 12*c* after the upgrade.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
OBJECT_CLASS	VARCHAR2	--	DerivedMeasure for calculated measures, or empty for all other object types.
CONFLICT	NUMBER	--	Indicates the reason that the row was added to CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO: ■ 0: The object does not have a naming conflict but appears in the table for other reasons. ■ 1: Two objects have the same name and would create a conflict in the OLAP 12*c* namespace. The object type (such as level or hierarchy) will be added to the names.

Examples

The following command creates and populates the CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO table:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube.initialize_cube_upgrade;
```

The table shows that the OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace has a hierarchy and a level named MARKET_SEGMENT, which will be renamed. The table also contains rows for calculated measures, but these objects do not require renaming: The value of CONFLICT is 0.

```
SELECT awxml_id, new_name, conflict FROM cube_upgrade_info;

AWXML_ID                                    NEW_NAME                    CONFLICT
------------------------------------------- --------------------------- ----------
CUSTOMER.MARKET_SEGMENT.HIERARCHY           MARKET_SEGMENT_HIERARCHY             1
CUSTOMER.MARKET_SEGMENT.LEVEL               MARKET_SEGMENT_LEVEL                 1
UNITS_CUBE.EXTENDED_COST.MEASURE            EXTENDED_COST                        0
UNITS_CUBE.EXTENDED_MARGIN.MEASURE          EXTENDED_MARGIN                      0
UNITS_CUBE.CHG_SALES_PP.MEASURE             CHG_SALES_PP                         0
UNITS_CUBE.CHG_SALES_PY.MEASURE             CHG_SALES_PY                         0
UNITS_CUBE.PCTCHG_SALES_PP.MEASURE          PCTCHG_SALES_PP                      0
UNITS_CUBE.PCTCHG_SALES_PY.MEASURE          PCTCHG_SALES_PY                      0
UNITS_CUBE.PRODUCT_SHARE.MEASURE            PRODUCT_SHARE                        0
UNITS_CUBE.CHANNEL_SHARE.MEASURE            CHANNEL_SHARE                        0
UNITS_CUBE.MARKET_SHARE.MEASURE             MARKET_SHARE                         0
UNITS_CUBE.CHG_EXTMRGN_PP.MEASURE           CHG_EXTMRGN_PP                       0
UNITS_CUBE.CHG_EXTMRGN_PY.MEASURE           CHG_EXTMRGN_PY                       0
UNITS_CUBE.PCTCHG_EXTMRGN_PP.MEASURE        PCTCHG_EXTMRGN_PP                    0
UNITS_CUBE.PCTCHG_EXTMRGN_PY.MEASURE        PCTCHG_EXTMRGN_PY                    0
UNITS_CUBE.CHG_UNITS_PP.MEASURE             CHG_UNITS_PP                         0
UNITS_CUBE.EXTMRGN_PER_UNIT.MEASURE         EXTMRGN_PER_UNIT                     0
UNITS_CUBE.SALES_YTD.MEASURE                SALES_YTD                            0
UNITS_CUBE.SALES_YTD_PY.MEASURE             SALES_YTD_PY                         0
UNITS_CUBE.PCTCHG_SALES_YTD_PY.MEASURE      PCTCHG_SALES_YTD_PY                  0
UNITS_CUBE.SALES_QTD.MEASURE                SALES_QTD                            0
UNITS_CUBE.CHG_UNITS_PY.MEASURE             CHG_UNITS_PY                         0
```

REFRESH_MVIEW Procedure

This procedure refreshes the data in a cube materialized view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.REFRESH_MVIEW (
          mvowner              IN  VARCHAR2,
          mvname               IN  VARCHAR2,
          method               IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
          refresh_after_errors IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
          parallelism          IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
          atomic_refresh       IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
          scheduler_job        IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
          sam_parameters       IN  CLOB           DEFAULT NULL,
          nested               IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE );
```

Parameters

Table 42–13 REFRESH_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mvowner	Owner of the cube materialized view.
mvname	Name of the cube materialized view.
method	A full or a fast (partial) refresh. In a fast refresh, only changed rows are inserted in the cube and the affected areas of the cube are re-aggregated. You can specify a method for each cube in sequential order, or a single method to apply to all cubes. If you list more cubes than methods, then the last method applies to the additional cubes. ■ C: Complete refresh clears all dimension values before loading. (Default) ■ F: Fast refresh of a cube materialized view, which performs an incremental refresh and re-aggregation of only changed rows in the source table. ■ ?: Fast refresh if possible, and otherwise a complete refresh. ■ P: Recomputes rows in a cube materialized view that are affected by changed partitions in the detail tables. ■ S: Fast solve of a compressed cube. A fast solve reloads all the detail data and re-aggregates only the changed values. See the "Usage Notes" for the BUILD procedure on page 42-26 for additional details.
refresh_after_errors	TRUE to roll back just the cube or dimension with errors, and then continue building the other objects. FALSE to roll back all objects in the build.
parallelism	Number of parallel processes to allocate to this job. See the "Usage Notes" for the BUILD procedure for additional details.

Table 42–13 (Cont.) REFRESH_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
atomic_refresh	TRUE prevents users from accessing intermediate results during a build. It freezes the current state of an analytic workspace at the beginning of the build to provide current sessions with consistent data. This option thaws the analytic workspace at the end of the build to give new sessions access to the refreshed data. If an error occurs during the build, then all objects are rolled back to the frozen state. FALSE enables users to access intermediate results during an build.
scheduler_job	Any text identifier for the job, which will appear in the log table. The string does not need to be unique.
sam_parameters	None.
nested	TRUE performs nested refresh operations for the specified set of cube materialized views. Nested refresh operations refresh all the depending materialized views and the specified set of materialized views based on a dependency order to ensure the nested materialized views are truly fresh with respect to the underlying base tables. All objects must reside in a single analytic workspace.

Usage Notes

REFRESH_MVIEW changes *mvname* to the name of the cube, then passes the cube name and all parameters to the BUILD procedure. Thus, you can use the BUILD procedure to refresh a cube materialized view. See the "BUILD Procedure" on page 42-19 for additional information about the parameters.

Examples

The following example uses the default settings to refresh a cube materialized view named CB$FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES.

```
SET serverout ON format wrapped

EXECUTE dbms_cube.refresh_mview('SH', 'CB$FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES');
```

The next example changes the refresh method to use fast refresh if possible, continue refreshing after an error, and use two parallel processes.

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube.refresh_mview('SH', 'CB$FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES', '?', TRUE, 2);
```

After successfully refreshing the cube materialized view, REFRESH_MVIEW returns a message like the following:

```
Completed refresh of cube mview "SH"."CB$FWEEK_PSCAT_SALES" at 20130212
15:04:46.370.
```

UPGRADE_AW Procedure

This procedure creates an Oracle OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace from a copy of the metadata contained in an OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace. The original OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace is not affected and can exist at the same time and in the same schema as the OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace.

UPGRADE_AW automatically runs INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE if the CUBE_UPGRADE_INFO table does not exist. If it does exist, then UPGRADE_AW does not overwrite it, thus preserving any changes you made to the table.

See "Upgrading 10g Analytic Workspaces" on page 42-12.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.UPGRADE_AW
       (sourceaw              IN  VARCHAR2,
        destaw                IN  VARCHAR2,
        upgoptions            IN  CLOB DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 42–14 UPGRADE_AW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sourceaw	The name of a 10*g* analytic workspace.
destaw	A new name for the generated 12*c* analytic workspace. It cannot be the same as *sourceaw*.
upgoptions	One or more of these upgrade options, as a string in the form '*OPTION=VALUE*'. Separate multiple options with commas. ■ PRESERVE_TABLE_OWNERS: YES preserves the original source table mappings. Use this option when creating an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace in a different schema from the 10*g* analytic workspace, and you want the new objects mapped to tables in the original schema. (Default) NO removes the schema owner from the source table mappings. Use this option when creating an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace in a different schema from the 10*g* analytic workspace, and you want the new objects mapped to tables in the destination schema. ■ RENAME_TABLE: The name of a table that specifies new names for objects as they are created in OLAP 12*c* format. These changes are in addition to those specified by the INITIALIZE_CUBE_UPGRADE procedure. See "CREATE_IMPORT_OPTIONS Procedure" on page 42-35 for information about creating a rename table.

Examples

This example upgrades an OLAP 10*g* analytic workspace named GLOBAL10 to an OLAP 12*c* analytic workspace named GLOBAL12, using a rename table named MY_OBJECT_MAP:

```
BEGIN

  -- Upgrade the analytic workspace
  dbms_cube.upgrade_aw(sourceaw =>'GLOBAL10', destaw => 'GLOBAL12', upgoptions =>
```

```
'RENAME_TABLE=MY_OBJECT_MAP');

  -- Load and aggregate the data
  dbms_cube.build(script=>'UNITS_CUBE, PRICE_AND_COST_CUBE');

END;
/
```

VALIDATE_XML Procedure

This procedure checks the XML to assure that it is valid without committing the results to the database. It does not create an analytic workspace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE.VALIDATE_XML
       (dirname               IN  VARCHAR2,
        filename              IN  VARCHAR2 );

DBMS_CUBE.VALIDATE_XML
       (in_xml                IN  CLOB );
```

Parameters

Table 42–15 VALIDATE_XML Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dirname	The case-sensitive name of a database directory.
filename	The name of a file containing an XML template.
IN_XML	The name of a CLOB containing an XML template.

Usage Notes

You should always load a template into the same version and release of Oracle Database as the one used to generate the template. The XML may not be valid if it was generated by a different release of the software.

Example

This example reports a problem in the schema:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube.validate_xml('UPGRADE_DIR', 'MYGLOBAL.XML');
BEGIN dbms_cube.validate_xml('UPGRADE_DIR', 'MYGLOBAL.XML'); END;

*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-37162: OLAP error
'GLOBAL.PRICE_CUBE.$AW_ORGANIZATION': XOQ-01950: The AWCubeOrganization for
cube "GLOBAL.PRICE_CUBE" contains multiple BuildSpecifications with the same
name.
'GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE.$AW_ORGANIZATION': XOQ-01950: The AWCubeOrganization for
cube "GLOBAL.UNITS_CUBE" contains multiple BuildSpecifications with the same
name.
XOQ-01400: invalid metadata objects
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_CUBE", line 411
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_CUBE", line 441
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_CUBE", line 501
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_CUBE", line 520
ORA-06512: at line 1
```

After the problems are corrected, the procedure reports no errors:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube.validate_xml('UPGRADE_DIR', 'MYGLOBAL.XML');

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

This example loads an XML template into a temporary CLOB, then validates it. The script is named GLOBAL.XML, and it is located in a database directory named XML_DIR.

```
DEFINE xml_file = 'GLOBAL.XML';

SET ECHO ON;
SET SERVEROUT ON;


DECLARE
     xml_file     BFILE := bfilename('XML_DIR', '&xml_file');
     in_xml       CLOB;
     out_xml      CLOB := NULL;
     dest_offset  INTEGER := 1;
     src_offset   INTEGER := 1;
     lang_context INTEGER := 0;
     warning      INTEGER;
BEGIN
     -- Setup the clob from a file
     DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(in_xml, TRUE);
     DBMS_LOB.OPEN(in_xml, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE);
     DBMS_LOB.OPEN(xml_file, DBMS_LOB.FILE_READONLY);
     DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE(in_xml, xml_file, DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE,
        dest_offset, src_offset, 0, lang_context, warning);

     -- Validate the xml
     DBMS_CUBE.VALIDATE_XML(in_xml);
END;
/
```

43

DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE

DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE contains subprograms for evaluating cube materialized views to support log-based fast refresh and query rewrite.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE
- Summary of DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE Subprograms

> **See Also:** *Oracle OLAP User's Guide* for information about cube materialized views

Using DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE

Security Model

The `MV_CUBE_ADVICE` function requires the `ADVISOR` privilege.

Summary of DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE Subprograms

Table 43–1 Summary of DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
MV_CUBE_ADVICE Function on page 43-5	Evaluates the metadata of a cube materialized view and generates recommendations for constraints, SQL dimension objects, and materialized view logs to support a broad range of query rewrite and fast refresh opportunities.
SET_CNS_EXCEPTION_LOG Procedure on page 43-8	Identifies the name of an exception log used in validated constraints generated by `MV_CUBE_ADVICE`.
TRACE Procedure on page 43-9	Displays or suppresses diagnostic messages for `MV_CUBE_ADVICE`.

MV_CUBE_ADVICE Function

This table function evaluates the metadata for a specified cube materialized view. It generates recommendations and returns them as a SQL result set. These SQL statements can be used to create constraints, SQL dimension objects, and materialized view logs that allow the broadest range of query rewrite transformations and log-based fast refresh of the cube materialized view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE.MV_CUBE_ADVICE (
          owner        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT USER,
          mvname       IN  VARCHAR2,
          reqtype      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '0',
          validate     IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0)
     RETURN COAD_ADVICE_T  PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 43–2 MV_CUBE_ADVICE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner of the cube materialized view
mvname	Name of the cube, such as UNITS_CUBE, or the cube materialized view, such as CB$UNITS_CUBE
reqtype	Type of advice to generate: ■ 0: All applicable advice types ■ 1: Column NOT NULL constraints ■ 2: Primary key constraints ■ 3: Foreign key constraints ■ 4: Relational dimension objects ■ 5: Cube materialized view logs with primary key
validate	Validation option: ■ 0: Validate the constraints ■ 1: Do not validate the constraints

Returns

A table of type COAD_ADVICE_T, consisting of a set of rows of type COAD_ADVICE_REC. Table 43–3 describes the columns.

Table 43–3 MV_CUBE_ADVICE Return Values

Column	Datatype	Description
OWNER	VARCHAR2(30)	Owner of the dimensional object identified in APIOBJECT.
APIOBJECT	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a cube enhanced with materialized view capabilities, such as UNITS_CUBE.
SQLOBJOWN	VARCHAR2(30)	Owner of the relational object identified in SQLOBJECT.
SQLOBJECT	VARCHAR2(65)	Name of the master table, such as UNITS_FACT, or the cube materialized view, such as CB$UNITS_CUBE.

Table 43–3 (Cont.) MV_CUBE_ADVICE Return Values

Column	Datatype	Description
ADVICETYPE	NUMBER(38,0)	Type of recommendation: ■ 1: Create NOT NULL constraints on the foreign key columns ■ 2: Create primary key constraints on the master table ■ 3: Create primary key constraints on the master view ■ 4: Create foreign key constraints on the master table ■ 5: Create foreign key constraints on the master view ■ 6: Create relational dimensions on the master dimension tables ■ 7: Create a materialized view log ■ 8: Compile the materialized view
DISPOSITION	CLOB	Pre-existing conditions that conflict with the recommendations and should be resolved before SQLTEXT can be executed.
SQLTEXT	CLOB	SQL statement that implements the recommendation.
DROPTEXT	CLOB	SQL statement that reverses SQLTEXT. Pre-existing conditions may prevent these statements from restoring the schema to its previous state.

Usage Notes

This function is available in Analytic Workspace Manager as the Materialized View Advisor, which will generate a SQL script with the recommendations.

You can query the returned rows the same as any other table, as shown in the example.

MV_CUBE_ADVICE generates unique object names each time it is called. You should execute the function once, capture the results, and work with those SQL statements.

Take care when dropping database objects. If a table already has a materialized view log, it will have the same name used in the SQL DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG statement in the DROPTEXT column. You should avoid inadvertently dropping materialized view logs, especially when they may be used for remote data replication.

Examples

The following query displays the SQL statements recommended by MV_CUBE_ADVICE. UNITS_FACT is the master table for UNITS_CUBE, and MV_CUBE_ADVICE generates an ALTER TABLE command to add primary key constraints.

It also generates an ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW command to compile the CB$UNITS_CUBE cube materialized view.

```
SQL> SELECT apiobject, sqlobject, sqltext
      FROM TABLE(dbms_cube_advise.mv_cube_advice('GLOBAL', 'CB$UNITS_CUBE'));

APIOBJECT    SQLOBJECT       SQLTEXT
------------ --------------- --------------------------------------------
UNITS_CUBE   UNITS_FACT      alter table "GLOBAL"."UNITS_FACT" add constra
                             int "COAD_PK000208" PRIMARY KEY ("CHANNEL_ID"
```

```
                                , "ITEM_ID", "SHIP_TO_ID", "MONTH_ID") rely d
                                isable novalidate

UNITS_CUBE    CB$UNITS_CUBE     alter materialized view "GLOBAL"."CB$UNITS_CU
                                BE" compile
```

SET_CNS_EXCEPTION_LOG Procedure

This procedure identifies the name of an exception log used in validated constraints generated by MV_CUBE_ADVICE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE.SET_CNS_EXCEPTION_LOG (
       exceptlogtab     IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT user.EXCEPTIONS);
```

Parameters

Table 43–4 SET_CNS_EXCEPTION_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
exceptlogtab	The name of an existing exception log.

Usage Notes

To create an exception log, use the utlexcpt.sql or the utlexpt1.sql script before executing SET_CNS_EXCEPTION_LOG.

The validate parameter of MV_CUBE_ADVICE must be set to 1.

Examples

The utlexcpt.sql script creates a table named EXCEPTIONS, and the SET_CNS_EXCEPTION_LOG procedure identifies it as the exception log for MV_CUBE_ADVICE. The ALTER TABLE statement now includes the clause VALIDATE EXCEPTIONS INTO "GLOBAL"."EXCEPTIONS".

```
SQL> @utlexcpt
Table created.

SQL> EXECUTE dbms_cube_advise.set_cns_exception_log;
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> SELECT apiobject, sqlobject, advicetype type, sqltext
     FROM TABLE(
     dbms_cube_advise.mv_cube_advice('GLOBAL', 'CB$UNITS_CUBE', '2', 1));

APIOBJECT    SQLOBJECT       TYPE SQLTEXT
------------ --------------- ---- ----------------------------------------------
UNITS_CUBE   UNITS_FACT         2 alter table "GLOBAL"."UNITS_FACT" add constrai
                                  nt "COAD_PK000219" PRIMARY KEY ("CHANNEL_ID",
                                  "ITEM_ID", "SHIP_TO_ID", "MONTH_ID") norely en
                                  able validate exceptions into "GLOBAL"."EXCEPT
                                  IONS"

UNITS_CUBE   CB$UNITS_CUBE      8 alter materialized view "GLOBAL"."CB$UNITS_CUB
                                  E" compile
```

TRACE Procedure

This procedure turns on and off diagnostic messages to server output for the MV_CUBE_ADVICE function.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_ADVISE.TRACE (
     diaglevel       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 43–5 TRACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
diaglevel	0 to turn tracing off, or 1 to turn tracing on.

Examples

The following example directs the diagnostic messages to server output. The SQL*Plus SERVEROUTPUT setting displays the messages.

```
SQL> SET SERVEROUT ON FORMAT WRAPPED
SQL> EXECUTE dbms_cube_advise.trace(1);
DBMS_COAD_DIAG: Changing diagLevel from [0] to [1]

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> SELECT sqlobject, sqltext, droptext
     FROM TABLE(
     dbms_cube_advise.mv_cube_advice('GLOBAL', 'CB$UNITS_CUBE'))
     WHERE apiobject='UNITS_CUBE';

SQLOBJECT       SQLTEXT                                    DROPTEXT
--------------- ------------------------------------------ ----------------------------------------
UNITS_FACT      alter table "GLOBAL"."UNITS_FACT" add co alter table "GLOBAL"."UNITS_FACT" drop c
                nstraint "COAD_PK000222" PRIMARY KEY ("C onstraint "COAD_PK000222" cascade
                HANNEL_ID", "ITEM_ID", "SHIP_TO_ID", "MO
                NTH_ID") rely disable novalidate

CB$UNITS_CUBE   alter materialized view "GLOBAL"."CB$UNI alter materialized view "GLOBAL"."CB$UNI
                TS_CUBE" compile                         TS_CUBE" compile


20070706 07:25:27.462780000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Parameter mvOwner  : GLOBAL
20070706 07:25:27.462922000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Parameter mvName   : CB$UNITS_CUBE
20070706 07:25:27.462967000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Parameter factTab  : .
20070706 07:25:27.463011000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Parameter cubeName : UNITS_CUBE
20070706 07:25:27.463053000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Parameter cnsState : rely disable novalidate
20070706 07:25:27.463094000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Parameter NNState  : disable novalidate
20070706 07:25:27.462368000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Begin NN:
20070706 07:25:27.833530000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: End   NN:
20070706 07:25:27.833620000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Begin PK:
20070706 07:25:28.853418000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: End   PK:
20070706 07:25:28.853550000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Begin FK:
20070706 07:25:28.853282000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: End   FK:
20070706 07:25:28.853359000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Begin RD:
20070706 07:25:29.660471000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: End   RD:
```

```
20070706 07:25:29.661363000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: Begin CM:
20070706 07:25:29.665106000 DBMS_COAD_DIAG NOTE: End   CM:

SQL> EXECUTE dbms_cube_advise.trace(0);
DBMS_COAD_DIAG: Changing diagLevel from [1] to [0]

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

44

DBMS_CUBE_LOG

DBMS_CUBE_LOG contains subprograms for creating and managing logs for cubes and cube dimensions.

> **See Also:** *Oracle OLAP User's Guide* regarding use of the OLAP option to support business intelligence and analytical applications

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_CUBE_LOG

DBMS_CUBE_LOG manages several logs. These logs enable you to track the progress of long running processes, then use the results to profile performance characteristics. They provide information to help you diagnose and remedy problems that may occur during development and maintenance of a cube, such as hierarchies that are improperly structured in the relational source tables, records that fail to load, or data refreshes that take too long to complete. They also help diagnose performance problems in querying cubes.

Analytic Workspace Manager creates the logs automatically using the default names and types. It also disables the logs when Analytic Workspace Manager is closed. To use the same logs outside of Analytic Workspace Manager, you must first enable them. Alternatively, you can create and manage different logs for use outside of Analytic Workspace Manager.

This section contains the following topics:

Logging Types

Several logs are available, each one dedicated to storing messages of a particular type. You may use all of them or only those that you find particularly valuable. The logs and their contents are described later in this topic.

- Cube Build Log
- Cube Dimension Compile Log
- Cube Operations Log
- Cube Rejected Records Log

`DBMS_CUBE_LOG` provides functions that return the binary integer for each log type. You can produce more readable code by using these functions instead of integers for the argument values of other `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` procedures and functions. Refer to these descriptions:

- TYPE_BUILD Function
- TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE Function
- TYPE_OPERATIONS Function
- TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS Function

Logging Targets

The TABLE_CREATE procedure creates database tables for storing the logs. Using the ENABLE procedure, you can create additional targets with changes in the destination or logging level. For example, you might target the Cube Operations log to both a table and a disk file. These are the available targets:

- Disk file
- LOB
- Database table
- Trace file

See "ENABLE Procedure" on page 44-17 for more information about creating multiple targets.

DBMS_CUBE_LOG provides functions that return the binary integer for each target type. You can produce more readable code by using these functions instead of integers for the argument values of other DBMS_CUBE_LOG procedures and functions. Refer to these descriptions:

- TARGET_FILE Function
- TARGET_LOB Function
- TARGET_TABLE Function
- TARGET_TRACE Function

Verbosity Levels

You can decide how much information is recorded in a log. You may want fewer details when leaving a job to run overnight than when you are monitoring the success of a new build. You can choose from these verbosity levels. Each level adds to the preceding level.

- `LOWEST`: Logs the status of each command used to build the cube dimensions and cubes, the use of slave processes, and summary records. This is the basic logging level.
- `LOW`: Logs messages from the OLAP engine, such as start and finish records for SQL Import, Aggregate, and Update.
- `MEDIUM`: Logs messages at the level used by Analytic Workspace Manager.
- `HIGH`: Logs messages that provide tuning information, such as composite lengths, partitioning details, object sizes, and aggregation work lists. This level is intended for use by Oracle Field Services.
- `HIGHEST`: Logs debugging messages and other information typically sent to a trace file. This level is intended for use by Oracle Support Services.

`DBMS_CUBE_LOG` provides functions that return the binary integer for each verbosity level. You can produce more readable code by using these functions instead of integers for the argument values of other `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` procedures and functions. Refer to these descriptions:

- LEVEL_LOWEST Function
- LEVEL_LOW Function
- LEVEL_MEDIUM Function
- LEVEL_HIGH Function
- LEVEL_HIGHEST Function

Security Model

The TABLE_CREATE procedure requires the CREATE TABLE privilege.

Creating Cube Logs

To store logging information in a database table, you must create that table using the TABLE_CREATE procedure. Cube Build logs are always stored in tables. The ENABLE procedure creates the other target types for the other logs.

To create a Cube Build log:

- Execute the `TABLE_CREATE` procedure.

The following command creates a Cube Build log with the default name of `CUBE_BUILD_LOG`:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.table_create(dbms_cube_log.type_build);
```

To create a Cube Dimension Compile log, Cube Operations log, or Cube Rejected Records log with a database table target:

1. Execute the `TABLE_CREATE` procedure to create the table.
2. Execute the `ENABLE` procedure to begin logging.

These commands create and enable a Cube Operations table with the default name of `CUBE_OPERATIONS_LOG` and the default verbosity level:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.table_create(dbms_cube_log.type_operations);
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_operations);
```

To create a Cube Dimension Compile log, Cube Operations log, or Cube Rejected Records log with a trace file, disk file, or LOB target:

- Execute the `ENABLE` procedure.

This command enables the Cube Rejected Records log, sets verbosity to the lowest level, and directs the output to a disk file named `rejects.log` in the `WORK_DIR` database directory:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, -
     dbms_cube_log.target_file, dbms_cube_log.level_lowest, -
     'WORK_DIR/rejects.log');
```

Cube Build Log

The Cube Build log provides information about what happened during a build. Use this log to determine whether the build produced the results you were expecting, and if not, why not.

The contents of the Cube Build log are refreshed continuously during a build. You can query the log at any time to evaluate the progress of the build and to estimate the time to completion.

The default name of the Cube Build log is CUBE_BUILD_LOG. The following table describes its contents.

Note: To manage a Cube Build log, use only the TABLE_CREATE and VERSION procedures.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
BUILD_ID	NUMBER	--	A unique sequence number for the build. The same number is used for slave processes in a parallel build.
SLAVE_NUMBER	NUMBER	--	A counter for slave processes in a parallel build: 0 is the master process, 1 is the first slave, 2 is the second slave, and so forth.
STATUS	VARCHAR2(10)	--	The current status of the command: STARTED, COMPLETED, FAILED, or WORKING.
COMMAND	VARCHAR2(25)	--	The name of the command being executed, such as BUILD, LOAD, and SOLVE.
BUILD_OBJECT	VARCHAR2(500)	--	The name of the cube or cube dimension being processed.
BUILD_OBJECT_TYPE	VARCHAR2(10)	--	The type of object: CUBE, DIMENSION, or BUILD.
OUTPUT	CLOB	--	Information structured like an XML document about the command, or NULL when there is no additional information, such as for a STARTED row.
AW	VARCHAR2(30)	--	The name of the analytic workspace that contains the objects of the build.
OWNER	VARCHAR2(30)		The owner of the analytic workspace and all the objects of the build.
PARTITION	VARCHAR2(10)	--	The name of the partition being processed, or NULL when the current operation does not correspond to a partition.
SCHEDULER_JOB	VARCHAR2(100)	--	A user-specified string to identify the build.
TIME	TIMESTAMP(6)	--	The time the row is added to the table.
BUILD_SCRIPT	CLOB	--	The cube build script. Populated only in rows where COMMAND is BUILD.
BUILD_TYPE	VARCHAR2(22)	--	The origin of the build: DBMS_CUBE, DBMS_MVIEW, JAVA, or SLAVE.
COMMAND_DEPTH	NUMBER(2)	--	The nesting depth of the command. For example, COMPILE HIERARCHIES is a component step of COMPILE, so if COMPILE has a depth of 1, then COMPILE HIERARCHIES has a depth of 2.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
BUILD_SUB_OBJECT	VARCHAR2(30)	--	The name of a subobject being processed, such as a measure that does not inherit the aggregation rules of the cube.
REFRESH_METHOD	VARCHAR2(1)	--	The refresh method, such as C or F, that is associated with the current command. The refresh method is important only for the CLEAR step.
SEQ_NUMBER	NUMBER	--	Not currently used.
COMMAND_NUMBER	NUMBER	--	The sequence number of the command in the current process, which can be used to distinguish the same command on different objects. For example, a LOAD on PRODUCT and a LOAD on TIME.
IN_BRANCH	NUMBER(1)	--	Not currently used.
COMMAND_STATUS_ NUMBER	NUMBER	--	Identifies the sequence number of all rows for a particular command. For example, a particular command might be represented by four rows: The first row has a status of STARTED and the last row has a status of COMPLETED. This column is used for sorting.

Cube Dimension Compile Log

When solving a cube, OLAP checks the dimension hierarchies to make sure they are valid. Errors that occur during this validation are written to the Cube Dimension Compile log. The checks include:

- Circularity: Hierarchies are defined by parent-child relations among dimension members. Circularity occurs when a dimension member is specified as its own ancestor or descendant.
- Hierarchy type: Hierarchies can be level based or value based. You can define a cube so that only level-based hierarchies are valid, such as a cube materialized view.
- Level options: Level-based hierarchies can be regular, ragged, or skip level. You can define a dimension so that only regular hierarchies are valid, such as a Time dimension.

The default name of the Cube Dimension Compile log is `CUBE_DIMENSION_COMPILE`. The following table describes its contents.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
`ID`	`NUMBER`	--	Current operation identifier
`SEQ_NUMBER`	`NUMBER`	--	Sequence number in the Cube Build log
`ERROR#`	`NUMBER(8)`	`NOT NULL`	Number of the error being reported
`ERROR_MESSAGE`	`VARCHAR2(2000)`	--	Error message associated with the error
`DIMENSION`	`VARCHAR2(100)`	--	Name of the dimension being compiled
`DIMENSION_MEMBER`	`VARCHAR2(100)`	--	Faulty dimension member
`MEMBER_ANCESTOR`	`VARCHAR2(100)`	--	Parent of `DIMENSION_MEMBER`
`HIERARCHY1`	`VARCHAR2(100)`	--	First hierarchy involved in the error
`HIERARCHY2`	`VARCHAR2(100)`	--	Second hierarchy involved in the error
`ERROR_CONTEXT`	`CLOB`	--	Additional information about the error

Cube Operations Log

The Cube Operations log contains messages and debugging information for all OLAP engine events. You can track current operations at a very detailed level. Using the SQL_ID column, you can join the Cube Operations log to dynamic performance views such as VSQL, VSESSION, and V$SESSION_LONGOPS to see cube operations in the context of other database operations such as I/O Wait and CPU.

The default name of the Cube Operations log is CUBE_OPERATIONS_LOG. The following table describes its contents.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
INST_ID	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Instance identifier
SID	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Session identifier
SERIAL#	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Session serial number
USER#	NUMBER	NOT NULL	User identifier
SQL_ID	VARCHAR2(13)	--	Executing SQL statement identifier
JOB	NUMBER	--	Job identifier
ID	NUMBER	--	Current operation identifier
PARENT_ID	NUMBER	--	Parent operation identifier
SEQ_NUMBER	NUMBER	--	Sequence number in the Cube Build log
TIME	TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE	NOT NULL	Time the record was added to the Cube Operations log
LOG_LEVEL	NUMBER(4)	NOT NULL	Verbosity level of the record, as specified by the DBMS_CUBE_LOG.ENABLE procedure.
DEPTH	NUMBER(4)	--	Nesting depth of the record. For example, a level of 0 indicates that the operation and suboperation are not nested within other operations and suboperations.
OPERATION	VARCHAR2(15)	NOT NULL	Current operation, such as AGGREGATE, ROWSOURCE, or SQLIMPORT.
SUBOPERATION	VARCHAR2(20)	--	Current suboperation, such as Loading or Import
STATUS	VARCHAR2(10)	NOT NULL	Current status of the operation, such as START, TRACE, COMPLETED, or Failed.
NAME	VARCHAR2(20)	NOT NULL	Name of the record, such as ROWS LOADED, AVE_ROW_LEN, and PAGEPOOLSIZE
VALUE	VARCHAR2(4000)	--	Value of NAME
DETAILS	CLOB	--	Additional information about NAME.

Cube Rejected Records Log

The Cube Rejected Records log contains a summary of the loader job and any records that were rejected because they did not meet the expected format.

A single row in the source table may have errors in more than one field. Each field generates an error in the log, resulting in multiple rows with the same rowid4

in the SOURCE_ROW column.

The default name of the Cube Rejected Records log is CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS. The following table describes its contents.

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ID	NUMBER	--	Current operation identifier
SEQ_NUMBER	NUMBER	--	Sequence number in the Cube Build log
ERROR#	NUMBER(8)	NOT NULL	Number of the error triggered by the record
ERROR_MESSAGE	VARCHAR2	--	Error message associated with the error
RECORD#	NUMBER(38)	--	Input record number
SOURCE_ROW	ROWID	--	Rowid of the row in the source table; null when the source is a view or a query

Summary of DBMS_CUBE_LOG Subprograms

Table 44–1 DBMS_CUBE_LOG Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DEFAULT_NAME Function on page 44-15	Returns the default table names of the various log types.
DISABLE Procedure on page 44-16	Turns logging off for the duration of a session.
ENABLE Procedure on page 44-17	Turns on logging for the duration of a session, redirects logging to additional output types, and changes the verbosity level in the logs.
FLUSH Procedure on page 44-19	Forces all buffered messages to be written to the logs.
GET_LOG Procedure on page 44-20	Returns the current settings for the level and location of a particular log.
GET_LOG_SPEC Function on page 44-22	Retrieves a description of all active logs.
GET_PARAMETER Function on page 44-23	Returns the current values of the options that control various aspects of logging.
LEVEL_HIGH Function on page 44-24	Returns the integer value of the high verbosity level.
LEVEL_HIGHEST Function on page 44-25	Returns the integer value of the highest verbosity level.
LEVEL_LOW Function on page 44-26	Returns the integer value of the low verbosity level.
LEVEL_LOWEST Function on page 44-27	Returns the integer value of the lowest verbosity level.
LEVEL_MEDIUM Function on page 44-28	Returns the integer value of the medium verbosity level.
SET_LOG_SPEC Procedure on page 44-29	Sets all logging to the values specified in the input string.
SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 44-30	Sets options that control various aspects of logging.
TABLE_CREATE Procedure on page 44-32	Creates the table targets for the OLAP logs.
TARGET_FILE Function on page 44-33	Returns the integer value of a disk file target.
TARGET_LOB Function on page 44-34	Returns the integer value of a LOB target.
TARGET_TABLE Function on page 44-35	Returns the integer value of a database table target
TARGET_TRACE Function on page 44-36	Returns the integer value of a trace file target.
TYPE_BUILD Function on page 44-37	Returns the integer value of the Cube Build log.
TYPE_DIMENSION_ COMPILE Function on page 44-38	Returns the integer value of the Cube Dimension Compile log.

Table 44–1 (Cont.) DBMS_CUBE_LOG Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
TYPE_OPERATIONS Function on page 44-39	Returns the integer value of the Cube Operations log.
TYPE_REJECTED_ RECORDS Function on page 44-40	Returns the integer value of the Cube Rejected Records log.
VERSION Function on page 44-41	Returns the version number of a specific log table or the current version number of a specific log type.

DEFAULT_NAME Function

This function returns the default table names of the various log types.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.DEFAULT_NAME (
           LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT TYPE_OPERATIONS)
     RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 44–2 DEFAULT_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE ■ 4: TYPE_BUILD See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.

Returns

The default table name of the specified log type.

Examples

This example returns the default name of the Cube Operations log:

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.default_name FROM dual;

DEFAULT_NAME
------------------------------
CUBE_OPERATIONS_LOG
```

The next example returns the default name of the Cube Rejected Records log:

```
select dbms_cube_log.default_name(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records) -
     "Default Name" from dual;

Default Name
-------------------------
CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS
```

DISABLE Procedure

This procedure turns logging off for the duration of a session, unless logging is explicitly turned on again with the ENABLE procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.DISABLE (
          LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT,
          LOG_TARGET     IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT);
```

Parameters

Table 44–3 DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE **Note**: You cannot disable the Cube Build log with this procedure. See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
log_target	One of the following destinations for the logging records. The logs are sent to a table unless you previously specified a different target using the ENABLE procedure. ■ 1: TARGET_TABLE ■ 2: TARGET_TRACE ■ 3: TARGET_FILE ■ 4: TARGET_LOB See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4

Example

This command disables the dimension compilation error log table:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.disable(dbms_cube_log.type_dimension_compile);
```

ENABLE Procedure

This procedure turns on logging for the duration of a session or until it is turned off using the DISABLE procedure.

The ENABLE procedure also allows you to direct logging to additional output types and to change the amount of detail in the logs. You can enable a log type to each of the log targets. For example, you can enable the Cube Operations log to the trace file, a table, and a file at different verbosity levels, but you cannot enable the Cube Operations log to two files at the same time.

This procedure also checks the format of the logs and updates them if necessary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.ENABLE (
          LOG_TYPE       IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_TARGET     IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_LEVEL      IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_CUBE_LOG.ENABLE (
          LOG_TYPE       IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_TARGET     IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_LEVEL      IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_LOCATION   IN     VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_CUBE_LOG.ENABLE (
          LOG_TYPE       IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_TARGET     IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_LEVEL      IN     BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
          LOG_LOCATION   IN/OUT CLOB );
```

Parameters

Table 44–4 ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE **Note**: You cannot disable the Cube Build log with this procedure. See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
log_target	One of the following destinations for the logging records. The logs are sent to a table unless you previously specified a different target using the ENABLE procedure. ■ 1: TARGET_TABLE ■ 2: TARGET_TRACE ■ 3: TARGET_FILE ■ 4: TARGET_LOB See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4

Table 44–4 (Cont.) ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_level	One of the following log verbosity levels. Each level adds new types of messages to the previous level. ■ 1: LEVEL_LOWEST ■ 2: LEVEL_LOW ■ 3: LEVEL_MEDIUM ■ 4: LEVEL_HIGH ■ 5: LEVEL_HIGHEST See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.
log_location	The full identity of the log, such as *owner.table_name* when log_target is a table.

Examples

The following command enables all cube logs:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable;
```

The following PL/SQL procedure sets the log level to LEVEL_LOWEST:

```
BEGIN
     dbms_cube_log.disable(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records);
     dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records,
          dbms_cube_log.target_table, dbms_cube_log.level_lowest);
END;
/
```

FLUSH Procedure

This procedure forces all buffered messages to be written to the logs. The buffers are flushed automatically throughout a session, but manually flushing them before viewing the logs assures that you can view all of the messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.FLUSH ( );
```

Example

The following example flushes the buffers for all of the logs:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.flush;
```

GET_LOG Procedure

This procedure returns the current settings for the level and location of a particular log.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.GET_LOG (
          LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT TYPE_OPERATIONS,
          LOG_TARGET     IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT TARGET_TABLE,
          LOG_LEVEL      OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
          LOG_LOCATION   OUT  VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 44–5 GET_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
log_target	One of the following destinations for the logging records. The logs are sent to a table unless you previously specified a different target using the ENABLE procedure. ■ 1: TARGET_TABLE ■ 2: TARGET_TRACE ■ 3: TARGET_FILE ■ 4: TARGET_LOB See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4
log_level	One of the following log verbosity levels. Each level adds new types of messages to the previous level. ■ 1: LEVEL_LOWEST ■ 2: LEVEL_LOW ■ 3: LEVEL_MEDIUM ■ 4: LEVEL_HIGH ■ 5: LEVEL_HIGHEST See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.
log_location	The full identity of the log, such as *owner.table_name* when log_target is a table.

Usage Notes

If log_type is not active, then log_level and log_location are null. Use DBMS_CUBE_LOG.ENABLE to activate a log.

Examples

This PL/SQL procedure provides information about the Cube Rejected Records log:

```
SET serverout ON format wrapped

DECLARE
     myloglevel  binary_integer;
     mylogtarget varchar2(128);

BEGIN
     dbms_cube_log.get_log(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records,
     dbms_cube_log.target_table, myloglevel, mylogtarget);

     dbms_output.put_line('Log Level: ' || myloglevel);
     dbms_output.put_line('Log Target: ' || mylogtarget);
END;
/
```

The procedure generates results like the following:

```
Log Level: 5

Log Target: GLOBAL.CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS
```

GET_LOG_SPEC Function

This function retrieves a description of all active Cube Operations logs, Cube Rejected Records logs, and Cube Dimension Compile logs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.GET_LOG_SPEC ( )
     RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns

The type and target of all active logs.

Usage Notes

You can use the output from this function as the input to `SET_LOG_SPEC`.

Examples

The following example shows that the Cube Operations log, Cube Rejected Records log, and Cube Dimension Compile log are active. The Cube Operations log is stored in the session trace file and the other logs are stored in tables.

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.get_log_spec FROM dual;

GET_LOG_SPEC
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
OPERATIONS(TABLE, TRACE) REJECTED_RECORDS(TABLE[DEBUG])
```

GET_PARAMETER Function

This function returns the current values of the options that control various aspects of logging. To set these options, use the SET_PARAMETER function.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.GET_PARAMETER (
          LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
          LOG_PARAMETER  IN   BINARY_INTEGER )
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 44–6 GET_PARAMETER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
log_parameter	One of the following options: ■ 1: MAX_ERRORS ■ 2: FLUSH_INTERVAL ■ 3: LOG_FULL_RECORD ■ 4: LOG_EVERY_N ■ 5: ALLOW_ERRORS See "SET_PARAMETER Procedure" on page 44-30.

Returns

The value of the specified *log_parameter*.

Examples

This example shows the current maximum number of errors in the Cube Rejected Records log before logging stops. This parameter was previously set with the SET_PARAMETER procedure.

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.get_parameter(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, 1) -
     "Maximum Records" FROM dual;

Maximum Records
---------------
            100
```

LEVEL_HIGH Function

This function returns the integer value of the high verbosity level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.LEVEL_HIGH ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

4

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the *LOG_LEVEL* parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.

Example

This command sets the verbosity level of the cube operations table to high:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_operations, -
     dbms_cube_log.target_table, dbms_cube_log.level_high);
```

LEVEL_HIGHEST Function

This function returns the integer value of the highest verbosity level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.LEVEL_HIGHEST ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

5

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the LOG_LEVEL parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.

Example

This command sets the verbosity level of the cube operations table to highest:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_operations, -
     dbms_cube_log.target_table, dbms_cube_log.level_highest);
```

LEVEL_LOW Function

This function returns the integer value of the low verbosity level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.LEVEL_LOW ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

2

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the LOG_LEVEL parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.

Example

This command sets the verbosity level of the cube operations table to low:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_operations, -
     dbms_cube_log.target_table, dbms_cube_log.level_low);
```

LEVEL_LOWEST Function

This function returns the integer value of the lowest verbosity level. This level logs the status of each command used to build the cube dimensions and cubes, the use of slave processes, and summary records.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.LEVEL_LOWEST ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

```
1
```

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the `LOG_LEVEL` parameter in `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` subprograms. See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.

Example

This command sets the verbosity level of the cube operations table to lowest:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_operations, -
     dbms_cube_log.target_table, dbms_cube_log.level_lowest);
```

LEVEL_MEDIUM Function

This function returns the integer value of the medium verbosity level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.LEVEL_MEDIUM ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

3

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the LOG_LEVEL parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Verbosity Levels" on page 44-5.

Example

This command sets the verbosity level of the cube operations table to medium:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.enable(dbms_cube_log.type_operations, -
     dbms_cube_log.target_table, dbms_cube_log.level_medium);
```

SET_LOG_SPEC Procedure

This procedure sets all logging to the values specified in the input string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.SET_LOG_SPEC (
          LOG_SPEC       IN   VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 44–7 SET_LOG_SPEC Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_spec	A string consisting of *type*(*target*) pairs. *Type* can be: ■ OPERATIONS ■ REJECTED_RECORDS ■ DIMENSION_COMPILE *Target* can be: ■ TABLE ■ TRACE ■ FILE ■ LOB

Usage Notes

The GET_LOG_SPEC function returns a properly formatted string for SET_LOG_SPEC.

Examples

This PL/SQL procedure disables all logs, verifies that they are disabled, then activates the Cube Operations log and the Cube Rejected Records log.

```
BEGIN
     dbms_cube_log.disable;
     dbms_output.put_line('Cube Logs: ' || dbms_cube_log.get_log_spec);

     dbms_cube_log.set_log_spec('OPERATIONS(TRACE) REJECTED_RECORDS(TABLE)');
     dbms_output.put_line('Cube Logs: ' || dbms_cube_log.get_log_spec);
END;
/
```

The output from the procedure verifies that the DISABLE function de-activated all logs, and the SET_LOG_SPEC function activated two logs:

```
Cube Logs:

Cube Logs: OPERATIONS(TRACE) REJECTED_RECORDS(TABLE)
```

SET_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure sets options that control various aspects of logging. To obtain the current value of these options, use the GET_PARAMETER function.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.SET_PARAMETER (
          LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
          LOG_PARAMETER  IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
          VALUE          IN   BINARY_INTEGER );
```

Parameters

Table 44–8 SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE ■ 4: TYPE_BUILD See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
log_parameter	One of the following parameters: ■ 1: MAX_ERRORS Maximum number of records before signalling an end to logging, such as the number of rejected records in the Cube Rejected Records log or the number of compilation errors in the dimension compilation error log. ■ 2: FLUSH_INTERVAL The number of seconds to buffer the records before writing them to a log. When this parameter is 0, the records are written directly to the logs without buffering. ■ 3: LOG_FULL_RECORD Controls logging of rejected records. Set this parameter to one of the following constants: 0: FULL_RECORD_AUTO: Log the full record when no row ID is available. 1: FULL_RECORD_ALWAYS: Always log the full record. 2: FULL_RECORD_NEVER: Never log the full record. ■ 4: LOG_EVERY_N Enters a progress message every *n* rows during data maintenance. ■ 5: ALLOW_ERRORS: Displays logging errors, which are initially turned off to allow processing to proceed.
value	The new value of *log_parameter*.

Examples

This PL/SQL procedure sets the two parameters, then uses the GET_PARAMETER function to show the settings:

```
BEGIN
     dbms_cube_log.set_parameter(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, 1, 150);
     dbms_cube_log.set_parameter(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, 2, 5);

     dbms_output.put_line('Max rejected records: ' ||
        dbms_cube_log.get_parameter(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, 1));

     dbms_output.put_line('Buffer time: ' ||
        dbms_cube_log.get_parameter(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, 2) ||
          ' seconds');
END;
/
```

The procedure displays this information:

```
Max rejected records: 150

Buffer time: 5 seconds
```

TABLE_CREATE Procedure

This procedure creates the table targets for the OLAP logs. You must have the CREATE TABLE privilege to use this procedure.

TABLE_CREATE also upgrades existing log tables to the current version while preserving the data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TABLE_CREATE (
          LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT,
          TBLNAME        IN   VARCHAR2        DEFAULT );
```

Parameters

Table 44–9 TABLE_CREATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE ■ 4: TYPE_BUILD See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
tblname	A table name for the log. These are the default names: ■ CUBE_OPERATIONS_LOG ■ CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ CUBE_DIMENSION_COMPILE ■ CUBE_BUILD_LOG

Examples

This example creates a Cube Operations log table named CUBE_OPERATIONS_LOG:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.table_create;
```

This example creates a Cube Rejected Records log table named CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.table_create(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records);
```

The next example creates a Cube Build log table named MY_BUILD_LOG:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.table_create -
     (dbms_cube_log.type_build, 'MY_BUILD_LOG');
```

TARGET_FILE Function

This function returns the integer value of a file target in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TARGET_FILE ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

3

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the *LOG_LEVEL* parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4.

Example

This command disables the Cube Operations log file:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.disable -
     (dbms_cube_log.type_operations, dbms_cube_log.target_file);
```

TARGET_LOB Function

This function returns the integer value of a LOB target.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TARGET_LOB ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

4

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the *LOG_LEVEL* parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4.

Example

This command disables the Cube Operations log LOB:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.disable -
     (dbms_cube_log.type_operations, dbms_cube_log.target_lob);
```

TARGET_TABLE Function

This function returns the integer value of a table target.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TARGET_TABLE ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

1

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the `LOG_TARGET` parameter in `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` subprograms. See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4.

Example

This command disables the Cube Operations log table:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.disable -
     (dbms_cube_log.type_operations, dbms_cube_log.target_table);
```

TARGET_TRACE Function

This function returns the integer value of a trace file target.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TARGET_TRACE ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

2

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the LOG_TARGET parameter in DBMS_CUBE_LOG subprograms. See "Logging Targets" on page 44-4.

Example

This command disables the Cube Operations log trace file:

```
EXECUTE dbms_cube_log.disable -
     (dbms_cube_log.type_operations, dbms_cube_log.target_trace);
```

TYPE_BUILD Function

This function returns the integer value of the Cube Build log.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TYPE_BUILD ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

4

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the `LOG_TYPE` parameter in `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` subprograms. See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.

Example

This query returns the default name of a Cube Build log:

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.default_name(dbms_cube_log.type_build) "Log Name" -
     FROM dual;

Log Name
-------------------------
CUBE_BUILD_LOG
```

TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE Function

This function returns the integer value of the Cube Dimension Compile log.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

```
3
```

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the `LOG_TYPE` parameter in `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` subprograms. See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.

Example

This query returns the default name of a Cube Dimension Compile log:

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.default_name(dbms_cube_log.type_dimension_compile) -
     "Log Name" FROM dual;

Log Name
-------------------------
CUBE_DIMENSION_COMPILE
```

TYPE_OPERATIONS Function

This function returns the integer value of the Cube Operations log.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TYPE_OPERATIONS ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

```
1
```

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the `LOG_TYPE` parameter in `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` subprograms. See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.

Example

This query returns the default name of a Cube Dimension Compile log:

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.default_name(dbms_cube_log.type_operations) "Log Name" -
     FROM dual;

Log Name
-------------------------
CUBE_OPERATIONS_LOG
```

TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS Function

This function returns the integer value of the cube Cube Rejected Records log.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ()
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Returns

2

Usage Notes

Use this function instead of its binary integer equivalent for the `LOG_TYPE` parameter in `DBMS_CUBE_LOG` subprograms. See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.

Example

This query returns the default name of a Cube Rejected Records log:

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.default_name(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records) -
     "Log Name" FROM dual;

Log Name
-------------------------
CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS
```

VERSION Function

This function returns the version number of a specific log table or the current version number of a specific log type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_CUBE_LOG.VERSION (
          LOG_TYPE       IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT 1,
          TBLNAME        IN   VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL)
     RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 44–10 VERSION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_type	One of the following log types: ■ 1: TYPE_OPERATIONS ■ 2: TYPE_REJECTED_RECORDS ■ 3: TYPE_DIMENSION_COMPILE ■ 4: TYPE_BUILD See "Logging Types" on page 44-3.
tblname	The name of the log table whose version is returned.

Returns

A version number

Examples

This example returns the current version of the Cube Operations log:

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.version FROM dual;

   VERSION
----------
         2
```

This example returns the version number of an existing Cube Rejected Records log named CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS.

```
SELECT dbms_cube_log.version(dbms_cube_log.type_rejected_records, -
     'CUBE_REJECTED_RECORDS') version FROM dual;

   VERSION
----------
         2
```

45

DBMS_DATA_MINING

The DBMS_DATA_MINING package is the application programming interface for creating, evaluating, and querying data mining models.

See Also:

- *Oracle Data Mining Concepts*
- *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*
- Chapter 46, "DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM"
- Chapter 113, "DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DATA_MINING

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_DATA_MINING` package.

Overview

Oracle Data Mining supports both supervised and unsupervised data mining. Supervised data mining predicts a target value based on historical data. Unsupervised data mining discovers natural groupings and does not use a target. You can use Oracle Data Mining to mine structured data and unstructured text.

Supervised data mining functions include:

- Classification
- Regression
- Feature Selection (Attribute Importance)

Unsupervised data mining functions include:

- Clustering
- Association
- Feature Extraction
- Anomaly Detection

The steps you use to build and apply a mining model depend on the data mining function and the algorithm being used. The algorithms supported by Oracle Data Mining are listed in Table 45–1.

Table 45–1 Oracle Data Mining Algorithms

Algorithm	Abbreviation	Function
Apriori	AP	Association
Decision Tree	DT	Classification
Expectation Maximization	EM	Clustering
Generalized Linear Model	GLM	Classification, Regression
k-Means	KM	Clustering
Minimum Descriptor Length	MDL	Attribute Importance)
Naive Bayes	NB	Classification
Non-Negative Matrix Factorization	NMF	Feature Extraction
Orthogonal Partitioning Clustering	O-Cluster	Clustering
Singular Value Decomposition and Principal Component Analysis	SVD and PCA	Feature Extraction
Support Vector Machine	SVM	Classification, Regression, Anomaly Detection

Oracle Data Mining supports more than one algorithm for the classification, regression, clustering, and feature extraction mining functions. Each of these mining functions has a default algorithm, as shown in Table 45–2.

Table 45–2 Oracle Data Mining Default Algorithms

Mining Function	Default Algorithm
Classification	Naive Bayes

Table 45–2 (Cont.) Oracle Data Mining Default Algorithms

Mining Function	Default Algorithm
Clustering	*k*-Means
Feature Extraction	Non-Negative Matrix Factorization
Feature Selection	Minimum Descriptor Length
Regression	Support Vector Machine

Security Model

The DBMS_DATA_MINING package is owned by user SYS and is installed as part of database installation. Execution privilege on the package is granted to public. The routines in the package are run with invokers' rights (run with the privileges of the current user).

The DBMS_DATA_MINING package exposes APIs that are leveraged by the Oracle Data Mining component of the Advanced Analytics Option. Users who wish to create mining models in their own schema require the CREATE MINING MODEL system privilege (as well as the CREATE TABLE and CREATE VIEW system privilege). Users who wish to create mining models in other schemas require the CREATE ANY MINING MODEL system privilege (as well as the corresponding table and view creation privileges).

Users have full control over managing models that exist within their own schema. Additional system privileges necessary for managing data mining models in other schemas include ALTER ANY MINING MODEL, DROP ANY MINING MODEL, SELECT ANY MINING MODEL, COMMENT ANY MINING MODEL, and AUDIT ANY.

Individual object privileges on mining models, ALTER MINING MODEL and SELET MINING MODEL, can be used to selectively grant privileges on a model to a different user.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for more information about the security features of Oracle Data Mining

Mining Functions

A data mining **function** refers to the methods for solving a given class of data mining problems. The mining function must be specified when a model is created. (See **CREATE_MODEL Procedure**.)

Table 45–3 Mining Functions

Value	Description
ASSOCIATION	Association is a descriptive mining function. An association model identifies relationships and the probability of their occurrence within a data set. Association models use the Apriori algorithm.
ATTRIBUTE_IMPORTANCE	Attribute importance is a predictive mining function, also known as feature selection. An attribute importance model identifies the relative importance of an attribute in predicting a given outcome. Attribute importance models use Minimum Description Length.
CLASSIFICATION	Classification is a predictive mining function. A classification model uses historical data to predict a categorical target. Classification models can use: Naive Bayes, Decision Tree, Logistic Regression, or Support Vector Machine. The default is Naive Bayes. The classification function can also be used for **anomaly detection**. In this case, the SVM algorithm with a null target is used (One-Class SVM).
CLUSTERING	Clustering is a descriptive mining function. A clustering model identifies natural groupings within a data set. Clustering models can use *k*-Means, O-Cluster, or Expectation Maximization. The default is *k*-Means.
FEATURE_EXTRACTION	Feature Extraction is a descriptive mining function. A feature extraction model creates an optimized data set on which to base a model. Feature extraction models can use Non-Negative Matrix Factorization, Singular Value Decomposition, or Principal Component Analysis. Non-Negative Matrix Factorization is the default.
REGRESSION	Regression is a predictive mining function. A regression model uses historical data to predict a numerical target. Regression models can use Support Vector Machine or Linear Regression. The default is Support Vector Machine.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for more information about mining functions

Model Settings

Oracle Data Mining uses settings to specify the algorithm and other characteristics of a model. Some settings are general, some are specific to a mining function, and some are specific to an algorithm.

All settings have default values. If you want to override one or more of the settings for a model, you must create a settings table. The settings table must have the column names and datatypes shown in Table 45–4.

Table 45–4 Required Columns in the Model Settings Table

Column Name	Datatype
SETTING_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)
SETTING_VALUE	VARCHAR2(4000)

The information you provide in the settings table is used by the model at build time. The name of the settings table is an optional argument to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure.

You can find the settings used by a model by querying the data dictionary view ALL_MINING_MODEL_SETTINGS. This view lists the model settings used by the mining models to which you have access. All the setting values are included in the view, whether default or user-specified.

See Also:

- ALL_MINING_MODEL_SETTINGS in *Oracle Database Reference*
- *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about specifying model settings

Algorithm Names

The **ALGO_NAME** setting specifies the model algorithm. The values for the ALGO_NAME setting are listed in Table 45–5.

Table 45–5 Algorithm Names

ALGO_NAME Value	Description	Mining Function
ALGO_AI_MDL	Minimum Description Length	Attribute Importance
ALGO_APRIORI_ASSOCIATION_RULES	Apriori	Association Rules
ALGO_DECISION_TREE	Decision Tree	Classification
ALGO_EXPECTATION_MAXIMIZATION	Expectation Maximization	Clustering
ALGO_GENERALIZED_LINEAR_MODEL	Generalized Linear Model	Classification, Regression; also Feature Selection and Extraction
ALGO_KMEANS	Enhanced *k*_Means	Clustering
ALGO_NAIVE_BAYES	Naive Bayes	Classification
ALGO_NONNEGATIVE_MATRIX_FACTOR	Non-Negative Matrix Factorization	Feature Extraction
ALGO_O_CLUSTER	O-Cluster	Clustering
ALGO_SINGULAR_VALUE_DECOMP	Singular Value Decomposition	Feature Extraction
ALGO_SUPPORT_VECTOR_MACHINES	Support Vector Machine	Classification and Regression

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about algorithms

Automatic Data Preparation

The **PREP_AUTO** setting indicates whether or not the model will use Automatic Data Preparation (ADP). By default ADP is disabled.

When you enable ADP, the model uses heuristics to transform the build data according to the requirements of the algorithm. The transformation instructions are stored with the model and reused whenever the model is applied. You can view the transformation instructions in the model details (`DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_*` functions).

You can choose to supplement automatic data preparations by specifying additional transformations in the `xform_list` parameter when you build the model. (See "CREATE_MODEL Procedure" on page 45-53.)

If you do not use ADP (default) *and* do not specify transformations in the `xform_list` parameter to `CREATE_MODEL` (also the default), you must implement your own transformations separately in the build, test, and scoring data. You must take special care to implement the exact same transformations in each data set.

If you do not use ADP, but you *do* specify transformations in the `xform_list` parameter to `CREATE_MODEL`, Oracle Data Mining embeds the transformation definitions in the model and prepares the test and scoring data to match the build data.

The values for the `PREP_AUTO` setting are described in Table 45–6.

Table 45–6 PREP_AUTO Setting

PREP_AUTO Value	Description
`PREP_AUTO_OFF`	Disable Automatic Data Preparation (default).
`PREP_AUTO_ON`	Enable Automatic Data Preparation.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about data transformations

Mining Function Settings

The settings described in Table 45–7 apply to a mining function.

Table 45–7 Mining Function Settings

Mining Function	Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
Association	`ASSO_MAX_RULE_LENGTH`	`TO_CHAR( 2<= numeric_expr <=20)`	Maximum rule length for association rules. Default is 4.
Association	`ASSO_MIN_CONFIDENCE`	`TO_CHAR( 0<= numeric_expr <=1)`	Minimum confidence for association rules. Default is 0.1.
Association	`ASSO_MIN_SUPPORT`	`TO_CHAR( 0<= numeric_expr <=1)`	Minimum support for association rules. Default is 0.1.

Table 45–7 (Cont.) Mining Function Settings

Mining Function	Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
Classification	CLAS_COST_TABLE_NAME	*table_name*	(Decision Tree only) Name of a table that stores a cost matrix to be used by the algorithm in building the model. The cost matrix specifies the costs associated with misclassifications. Only Decision Tree models can use a cost matrix at build time. All classification algorithms can use a cost matrix at apply time. The cost matrix table is user-created. See "ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-26 for the column requirements. See *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about costs.
Classification	CLAS_PRIORS_TABLE_NAME	*table_name*	(Naive Bayes) Name of a table that stores prior probabilities to offset differences in distribution between the build data and the scoring data. The priors table is user-created. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for the column requirements. See *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for additional information about priors.
Classification	CLAS_WEIGHTS_TABLE_NAME	*table_name*	(GLM and SVM only) Name of a table that stores weighting information for individual target values in SVM classification and GLM logistic regression models. The weights are used by the algorithm to bias the model in favor of higher weighted classes. The class weights table is user-created. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for the column requirements. See *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for additional information about class weights.
Clustering	CLUS_NUM_CLUSTERS	*TO_CHAR(numeric_expr* >=1)	Maximum number of leaf clusters generated by a clustering algorithm. The algorithm may return fewer clusters, depending on the data. Enhanced *k*-Means usually produces the exact number of clusters specified by CLUS_NUM_CLUSTERS, unless there are fewer distinct data points. Expectation Maximization (EM) may return fewer clusters than the number specified by CLUS_NUM_CLUSTERS depending on the data. The number of clusters returned by EM cannot be greater than the number of components, which is governed by algorithm-specific settings. (See Table 45–10, " Expectation Maximization Settings for Data Preparation and Analysis") Depending on these settings, there may be fewer clusters than components. If component clustering is disabled, the number of clusters equals the number of components. For EM, the default value of CLUS_NUM_CLUSTERS is system-determined. For *k*-Means and O-CLuster, the default is 10.
Feature Extraction	FEAT_NUM_FEATURES	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=1)	Number of features to be extracted by a feature extraction model. The default is estimated from the data by the algorithm.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about mining functions

Global Settings

The configuration settings in Table 45–8 are applicable to any type of model, but are currently only implemented for specific algorithms.

Table 45–8 Global Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
ODMS_APPROXIMATE_COMPUTATION	ODMS_APPR_COMP_ENABLE ODMS_APPR_COMP_DISABLE	(EM, GLM, and SVD) Whether the algorithm should use approximate computations to improve performance. For EM, approximation is appropriate for large models with many components and for data sets with many columns. The approximate computation uses localized parameter optimization that restricts learning to parameters that are likely to have the most significant impact on the model. For SVD, approximation is often appropriate for data sets with many columns. An approximate low-rank decomposition provides good solutions at a reasonable computational cost. If you disable ODMS_APPROXIMATE_COMPUTATION for SVD, approximation is dependent on the characteristics of the data. For data sets with more than 2500 attributes (the maximum number of features allowed) only approximate decomposition is possible. If approximate computation is disabled for a data set with more than 2500 attributes, an exception is raised. For GLM, approximation is appropriate for data sets that have many rows and are densely populated (not sparse). Default is system determined.
ODMS_ITEM_ID_COLUMN_NAME	*column_name*	(Association Rules only) Name of a column that contains the items in a transaction. When this setting is specified, the algorithm expects the data to be presented in native transactional format, consisting of two columns: ■ Case ID, either categorical or numerical ■ Item ID, either categorical or numerical, specified by ODMS_ITEM_ID_COLUMN_NAME A typical example of transactional data is market basket data, wherein a case represents a basket that may contain many items. Each item is stored in a separate row, and many rows may be needed to represent a case. The case ID values do not uniquely identify each row. Transactional data is also called multi-record case data. Association Rules is normally used with transactional data, but it can also be applied to single-record case data (similar to other algorithms). For more information about single-record and multi-record case data, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
ODMS_ITEM_VALUE_COLUMN_NAME	*column_name*	(Association Rules only) Name of a column that contains a value associated with each item in a transaction. This setting is only used when a value has been specified for ODMS_ITEM_ID_COLUMN_NAME indicating that the data is presented in native transactional format. When ODMS_ITEM_VALUE_COLUMN_NAME is specified, the algorithm expects the build data to consist of three columns: ■ Case ID, either categorical or numerical ■ Item ID, either categorical or numerical, specified by ODMS_ITEM_ID_COLUMN_NAME ■ Item value, either categorical or numerical, specified by ODMS_ITEM_VALUE_COLUMN_NAME The item value column may specify information such as the number of items (for example, three apples) or the type of the item (for example, macintosh apples).

Table 45–8 (Cont.) Global Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_TREATMENT	ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_MEAN_MODE ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_DELETE_ROW	(GLM only) How to treat missing values in the training data. This setting does not affect the scoring data. The default value is ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_MEAN_MODE, which causes missing numeric values in the training data to be replaced with the mean and missing categorical values in the training data to be replaced with the mode. Oracle Data Mining replaces missing values with the mean (numeric attributes) or the mode (categorical attributes) both at build time and apply time. You can set ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_TREATMENT to ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_DELETE_ROW to override this behavior in the training data. When ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_TREATMENT is set to ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_DELETE_ROW, the rows in the training data that contain missing values are deleted. However, if you want to replicate this missing value treatment in the scoring data, you must perform the transformation explicitly. The value ODMS_MISSING_VALUE_DELETE_ROW is only valid for tables without nested columns. If this value is used with nested data, an exception is raised.
ODMS_ROW_WEIGHT_COLUMN_NAME	*column_name*	(GLM only) Name of a column in the training data that contains a weighting factor for the rows. The column datatype must be NUMBER. Row weights can be used as a compact representation of repeated rows, as in the design of experiments where a specific configuration is repeated several times. Row weights can also be used to emphasize certain rows during model construction. For example, to bias the model towards rows that are more recent and away from potentially obsolete data.
ODMS_TEXT_POLICY_NAME	The name of an Oracle Text POLICY created using CTX_DDL.CREATE_POLICY.	Affects how individual tokens are extracted from unstructured text. For details about CTX_DDL.CREATE_POLICY, see *Oracle Text Reference*.
ODMS_TEXT_MAX_FEATURES	1 <= *value* <= 100000	Maximum number of distinct features, across all text attributes, to use from a document set passed to CREATE_MODEL. The default is 3000.

See Also:

Oracle Data Mining Concepts for information about GLM

Oracle Data Mining Concepts for information about Association Rules

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for information about mining unstructured text

Algorithm Settings: Decision Tree

These settings configure the behavior of the Decision Tree algorithm.

Table 45–9 Decision Tree Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
TREE_IMPURITY_METRIC	TREE_IMPURITY_ENTROPY	Tree impurity metric for Decision Tree.
	TREE_IMPURITY_GINI	Tree algorithms seek the best test question for splitting data at each node. The best splitter and split value are those that result in the largest increase in target value homogeneity (purity) for the entities in the node. Purity is measured in accordance with a metric. Decision trees can use either gini (TREE_IMPURITY_GINI) or entropy (TREE_IMPURITY_ENTROPY) as the purity metric. By default, the algorithm uses gini.
TREE_TERM_MAX_DEPTH	TO_CHAR(2<= *numeric_expr* <=20)	Criteria for splits: maximum tree depth (the maximum number of nodes between the root and any leaf node, including the leaf node).
		Default is 7.
TREE_TERM_MINPCT_MODE	TO_CHAR(0<= *numeric_expr* <=10)	No child shall have fewer records than this number, which is expressed as a percentage of the training rows.
		Default is 0.05, indicating 0.05%.
TREE_TERM_MINPCT_SPLIT	TO_CHAR(0 <= *numeric_expr* <=20)	Criteria for splits: minimum number of records in a parent node expressed as a percent of the total number of records used to train the model. No split is attempted if number of records is below this value.
		Default is 0.1, indicating 0.1%.
TREE_TERM_MINREC_NODE	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=0)	No child shall have fewer records than this number.
		Default is 10.
TREE_TERM_MINREC_SPLIT	TO_CHAR(numeric_expr >=0)	Criteria for splits: minimum number of records in a parent node expressed as a value. No split is attempted if number of records is below this value.
		Default is 20.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about Decision Tree

Algorithm Settings: Expectation Maximization

The settings described in the following tables configure the behavior of the Expectation Maximization algorithm.

- Table 45–10, " Expectation Maximization Settings for Data Preparation and Analysis"
- Table 45–11, " Expectation Maximization Settings for Learning"
- Table 45–12, " Expectation Maximization Settings for Component Clustering"
- Table 45–13, " Expectation Maximization Settings for Cluster Statistics"

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about Expectation Maximization

Table 45–10 Expectation Maximization Settings for Data Preparation and Analysis

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
EMCS_ATTRIBUTE_FILTER	EMCS_ATTR_FILTER_ENABLE EMCS_ATTR_FILTER_DISABLE	Whether or not to include uncorrelated attributes in the model. When EMCS_ATTRIBUTE_FILTER is enabled, uncorrelated attributes are not included. Note: This setting applies only to attributes that are not nested. Default is system-determined.
EMCS_MAX_NUM_ATTR_2D	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=1)	Maximum number of correlated attributes to include in the model. Note: This setting applies only to attributes that are not nested (2D). Default is 50.
EMCS_NUM_DISTRIBUTION	EMCS_NUM_DISTR_BERNOULLI EMCS_NUM_DISTR_GAUSSIAN EMCS_NUM_DISTR_SYSTEM	The distribution for modeling numeric attributes. Applies to the input table/view as a whole and does not allow per-attribute specifications. The options include Bernoulli, Gaussian, or system-determined distribution. When Bernoulli or Gaussian distribution is chosen, all numerical attributes are modeled using the same type of distribution. When the distribution is system-determined, individual attributes may use different distributions (either Bernoulli or Gaussian), depending on the data. Default is EMCS_NUM_DISTR_SYSTEM.
EMCS_NUM_EQUIWIDTH_BINS	TO_CHAR(1 <*numeric_expr* <=255)	Number of equi-width bins that will be used for gathering cluster statistics for numerical columns. Default is 11.
EMCS_NUM_PROJECTIONS	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=1)	Specifies the number of projections that will be used for each nested column. If a column has fewer distinct attributes than the specified number of projections, the data will not be projected. The setting applies to all nested columns. Default is 50.
EMCS_NUM_QUANTILE_BINS	TO_CHAR(1 <*numeric_expr* <=255)	Specifies the number of quantile bins that will be used for modeling numerical columns with multivalued Bernoulli distributions. Default is system-determined.
EMCS_NUM_TOPN_BINS	TO_CHAR(1 <*numeric_expr* <=255)	Specifies the number of top-N bins that will be used for modeling categorical columns with multivalued Bernoulli distributions. Default is system-determined.

Table 45–11 Expectation Maximization Settings for Learning

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
EMCS_CONVERGENCE_CRITERION	EMCS_CONV_CRIT_HELDASIDE EMCS_CONV_CRIT_BIC	The convergence criterion for EM. The convergence criterion may be based on a held-aside data set, or it may be Bayesian Information Criterion. Default is system determined.
EMCS_LOGLIKE_IMPROVEMENT	TO_CHAR(0 < *numeric_expr* < 1)	When the convergence criterion is based on a held-aside data set (EMCS_CONVERGENCE_CRITERION = EMCS_CONV_CRIT_HELDASIDE), this setting specifies the percentage improvement in the value of the log likelihood function that is required for adding a new component to the model. Default value is 0.001.
EMCS_NUM_COMPONENTS	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=1)	Maximum number of components in the model. The algorithm automatically determines the number of components, based on improvements in the likelihood function or based on regularization, up to the specified maximum. The number of components must be greater than or equal to the number of clusters. Default is 20.
EMCS_NUM_ITERATIONS	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=1)	Specifies the maximum number of iterations in the EM algorithm. Default is 100.

Table 45–12 Expectation Maximization Settings for Component Clustering

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
EMCS_CLUSTER_COMPONENTS	EMCS__CLUSTER_COMP_ENABLE EMCS_CLUSTER_COMP_DISABLE	Enables or disables the grouping of EM components into high-level clusters. When disabled, the components themselves are treated as clusters. When component clustering is enabled, model scoring through the SQL CLUSTER function will produce assignments to the higher level clusters. When clustering is disabled, the CLUSTER function will produce assignments to the original components. Default is EMCS_CLUSTER_COMP_ENABLE.
EMCS_CLUSTER_THRESH	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >=1)	Dissimilarity threshold that controls the clustering of EM components. When the dissimilarity measure is less than the threshold, the components are combined into a single cluster. A lower threshold may produce more clusters that are more compact. A higher threshold may produce fewer clusters that are more spread out. Default is 2.
EMCS_LINKAGE_FUNCTION	EMCS_LINKAGE_SINGLE EMCS_LINKAGE_AVERAGE EMCS_LINKAGE_COMPLETE	Allows the specification of a linkage function for the agglomerative clustering step. EMCS_LINKAGE_SINGLE uses the nearest distance within the branch. The clusters tend to be larger and have arbitrary shapes. EMCS_LINKAGE_AVERAGE uses the average distance within the branch. There is less chaining effect and the clusters are more compact. EMCS_LINKAGE_COMPLETE uses the maximum distance within the branch. The clusters are smaller and require strong component overlap. Default is EMCS_LINKAGE_SINGLE.

Table 45–13 Expectation Maximization Settings for Cluster Statistics

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
EMCS_CLUSTER_STATISTICS	EMCS_CLUS_STATS_ENABLE EMCS_CLUS_STATS_DISABLE	Enables or disables the gathering of descriptive statistics for clusters (centroids, histograms, and rules). When statistics are disabled, model size is reduced, and GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM only returns taxonomy (hierarchy) and cluster counts. Default is EMCS_CLUS_STATS_ENABLE.
EMCS_MIN_PCT_ATTR_SUPPORT	TO_CHAR(0 < *numeric_expr* < 1)	Minimum support required for including an attribute in the cluster rule. The support is the percentage of the data rows assigned to a cluster that must have non-null values for the attribute. Default is 0.1

Algorithm Settings: Generalized Linear Models

These settings configure the behavior of Generalized Linear Models.

Table 45–14 GLM Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
GLMS_CONF_LEVEL	TO_CHAR(0< *numeric_expr* <1)	The confidence level for coefficient confidence intervals. The default confidence level is 0.95.
GLMS_DIAGNOSTICS_TABLE_NAME	*table_name*	The name of a table to contain row-level diagnostic information for GLM. The table is created during model build. The specified table name must not be the name of an existing table. If you use a diagnostics table, you must specify a case ID for the model. (See the CREATE_MODEL Procedure.) If you specify a diagnostics table name but do not provide a case ID for the model, an exception is raised. For information about GLM diagnostics, see *Oracle Data Mining Concepts*.
GLMS_FTR_ACCEPTANCE	GLMS_FTR_ACCEPTANCE_STRICT GLMS_FTR_ACCEPTANCE_RELAXED	Whether to use a strict or relaxed approach to feature acceptance. A strict approach guards against spurious features but may miss some true features, especially in small data samples. A relaxed approach is unlikely to miss true features, but might include some spurious features. When feature selection or generation is enabled, the algorithm automatically chooses a strict or relaxed approach to feature acceptance based on the data.
GLMS_FTR_GEN_METHOD	GLMS_FTR_GEN_QUADRATIC GLMS_FTR_GEN_CUBIC	Whether feature generation is quadratic or cubic. When feature generation is enabled, the algorithm automatically chooses the most appropriate feature generation method based on the data.
GLMS_FTR_GENERATION	GLMS_FTR_GENERATION_ENABLE GLMS_FTR_GENERATION_DISABLE	Whether or not feature generation is enabled for GLM. By default, feature generation is not enabled. **Note:** Feature generation can only be enabled when feature selection is also enabled.
GLMS_FTR_IDENTIFICATION	GLMS_FTR_IDENT_QUICK GLMS_FTR_IDENT_COMPLETE	Whether or not GLM uses internal sampling for identifying model features. With sampling, GLM operates on a reduced set of rows and thus can identify the model features more quickly. When GLM operates on all the rows in the data set, the identification of features can be a more lengthy process. By default, GLM chooses whether or not to sample and determines the sample size based on characteristics of the training data, including the number of rows and attributes.

Table 45–14 (Cont.) GLM Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
GLMS_FTR_SEL_CRIT	GLMS_FTR_SEL_AIC GLMS_FTR_SEL_SBIC GLMS_FTR_SEL_RIC GLMS_FTR_SEL_ALPHA_INV	Feature selection penalty criterion for adding a feature to the model. When feature selection is enabled, the algorithm automatically chooses the penalty criterion based on the data.
GLMS_FTR_SELECTION	GLMS_FTR_SELECTION_ENABLE GLMS_FTR_SELECTION_DISABLE	Whether or not feature selection is enabled for GLM. By default, feature selection is not enabled.
GLMS_MAX_FEATURES	TO_CHAR(0 < *numeric_expr* <= 2000)	When feature selection is enabled, this setting specifies the maximum number of features that can be selected for the final model. By default, the algorithm limits the number of features to ensure sufficient memory.
GLMS_PRUNE_MODEL	GLMS_PRUNE_MODEL_ENABLE GLMS_PRUNE_MODEL_DISABLE	Whether or not to prune the features in the final model. Pruning is based on t-statistics for linear regression or wald statistics for logistic regression. Features are pruned in a loop until all features are statistically significant with respect to the full data. When feature selection is enabled, the algorithm automatically determines whether or not to perform pruning based on the data.
GLMS_REFERENCE_CLASS_NAME	*target_value*	The target value to be used as the reference class in a binary logistic regression model. Probabilities will be produced for the other class. By default, the algorithm chooses the value with the highest prevalence (the most cases) for the reference class.
GLMS_RIDGE_REGRESSION	GLMS_RIDGE_REG_ENABLE GLMS_RIDGE_REG_DISABLE	Whether or not to use ridge regression. Ridge applies to both regression and classification mining functions. When ridge is enabled, prediction bounds are not produced by the PREDICTION_BOUNDS SQL function. By default, the algorithm determines whether or not to use ridge. **Note**: Ridge may only be enabled when feature selection is not specified or has been explicitly disabled. If ridge regression and feature selection are both explicitly enabled, an exception is raised.
GLMS_RIDGE_VALUE	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* > 0)	The value of the ridge parameter. This setting is only used when the algorithm is configured to use ridge regression. If ridge regression is enabled internally by the algorithm, the ridge parameter is determined by the algorithm.
GLMS_SELECT_BLOCK	GLMS_SELECT_BLOCK_ENABLE GLMS_SELECT_BLOCK_DISABLE	Whether to add the entire group of values for a categorical attribute to the model all at once or one at a time. A categorical attribute is represented as a collection of binary (exploded) attributes. When GLMS_SELECT_BLOCK is enabled, the values are added all at once. When feature selection is enabled, the algorithm automatically determines whether to add the exploded categorical values all at once or one at a time.
GLMS_VIF_FOR_RIDGE	GLMS_VIF_RIDGE_ENABLE GLMS_VIF_RIDGE_DISABLE	(Linear regression only) Whether or not to produce Variance Inflation Factor (VIF) statistics when ridge is being used. VIF statistics can only be produced when ridge regression is explicitly enabled (GLMS_RIDGE_REGRESSION = GLMS_RIDGE_REG_ENABLE). When ridge is explicitly enabled and you request VIF, the algorithm produces VIF if there is sufficient memory. By default, VIF is not produced when ridge is enabled.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about GLM

Algorithm Settings: *k*-Means

These settings configure the behavior of the *k*-Means algorithm.

Table 45–15 k-Means Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
KMNS_BLOCK_GROWTH	TO_CHAR(1<*numeric_expr*<=5)	Growth factor for memory allocated to hold cluster data. The default block growth factor is 2
KMNS_CONV_TOLERANCE	TO_CHAR(0<*numeric_expr*<=0.5)	Minimum convergence tolerance for *k*-Means. The algorithm iterates until the minimum convergence tolerance is satisfied or until the maximum number of iterations, specified in KMNS_ITERATIONS, is reached. Decreasing the convergence tolerance produces a more accurate solution but may result in longer run times. The default convergence tolerance is 0.01.
KMNS_DISTANCE	KMNS_COSINE KMNS_EUCLIDEAN KMNS_FAST_COSINE	Distance function for *k*-Means. The default distance function is euclidean.
KMNS_ITERATIONS	TO_CHAR(*positive_numeric_expr*)	Maximum number of iterations for *k*-Means. The algorithm iterates until either the maximum number of iterations is reached or the minimum convergence tolerance, specified in KMNS_CONV_TOLERANCE, is satisfied. The default number of iterations is 3.
KMNS_MIN_PCT_ATTR_SUPPORT	TO_CHAR(0<=*numeric_expr*<=1)	Minimum percentage of attribute values that must be non-null in order for the attribute to be included in the rule description for the cluster. If the data is sparse or includes many missing values, a minimum support that is too high can cause very short rules or even empty rules. The default minimum support is 0.1.
KMNS_NUM_BINS	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr*>0)	Number of bins in the attribute histogram produced by *k*-Means. The bin boundaries for each attribute are computed globally on the entire training data set. The binning method is equi-width. All attributes have the same number of bins with the exception of attributes with a single value that have only one bin. The default number of histogram bins is 10.
KMNS_SPLIT_CRITERION	KMNS_SIZE KMNS_VARIANCE	Split criterion for *k*-Means. The split criterion controls the initialization of new *k*-Means clusters. The algorithm builds a binary tree and adds one new cluster at a time. When the split criterion is based on size, the new cluster is placed in the area where the largest current cluster is located. When the split criterion is based on the variance, the new cluster is placed in the area of the most spread-out cluster. The default split criterion is the variance.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about *k*-Means

Algorithm Settings: Naive Bayes

These settings configure the behavior of the Naive Bayes Algorithm.

Table 45–16 Naive Bayes Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
NABS_PAIRWISE_THRESHOLD	TO_CHAR(0<= *numeric_expr* <=1)	Value of pairwise threshold for NB algorithm Default is 0.01.
NABS_SINGLETON_THRESHOLD	TO_CHAR(0<= *numeric_expr* <=1)	Value of singleton threshold for NB algorithm Default value is 0.01

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about Naive Bayes

Algorithm Settings: Non-Negative Matrix Factorization

These settings configure the behavior of the Non-Negative Matrix Factorization algorithm.

You can query the data dictionary view *_MINING_MODEL_SETTINGS (using the ALL, USER, or DBA prefix) to find the setting values for a model. See *Oracle Database Reference* for information about *_MINING_MODEL_SETTINGS.

Table 45–17 NMF Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
NMFS_CONV_TOLERANCE	TO_CHAR(0< *numeric_expr* <=0.5)	Convergence tolerance for NMF algorithm Default is 0.05
NMFS_NONNEGATIVE_SCORING	NMFS_NONNEG_SCORING_ENABLE NMFS_NONNEG_SCORING_DISABLE	Whether negative numbers should be allowed in scoring results. When set to NMFS_NONNEG_SCORING_ENABLE, negative feature values will be replaced with zeros. When set to NMFS_NONNEG_SCORING_DISABLE, negative feature values will be allowed. Default is NMFS_NONNEG_SCORING_ENABLE
NMFS_NUM_ITERATIONS	TO_CHAR(1 <= *numeric_expr* <=500)	Number of iterations for NMF algorithm Default is 50
NMFS_RANDOM_SEED	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr*)	Random seed for NMF algorithm. Default is –1.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about NMF

Algorithm Settings: O-Cluster

These settings configure the behavior of the O-Cluster algorithm.

Table 45–18 O-CLuster Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
OCLT_MAX_BUFFER	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >0)	Buffer size for O-Cluster. Default is 50,000.
OCLT_SENSITIVITY	TO_CHAR(0 <=*numeric_expr* <=1)	A fraction that specifies the peak density required for separating a new cluster. The fraction is related to the global uniform density. Default is 0.5.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about O-Cluster

Algorithm Constants and Settings: Singular Value Decomposition

The following constant affects the behavior of the Singular Value Decomposition algorithm.

Table 45–19 Singular Value Decomposition Constant

Constant Name	Constant Value	Description
SVDS_MAX_NUM_FEATURES	2500	The maximum number of features supported by SVD.

These settings configure the behavior of the Singular Value Decomposition algorithm.

Table 45–20 Singular Value Decomposition Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
SVDS_U_MATRIX_OUTPUT	SVDS_U_MATRIX_ENABLE	Whether or not to persist the U matrix produced by SVD.
	SVDS_U_MATRIX_DISABLE	The U matrix in SVD has as many rows as the number of rows in the build data. To avoid creating a large model, the U matrix is persisted only when SVDS_U_MATRIX_OUTPUT is enabled. When SVDS_U_MATRIX_OUTPUT is enabled, the build data must include a case ID. If no case ID is present and the U matrix is requested, an exception is raised. Default is SVDS_U_MATRIX_DISABLE.
SVDS_SCORING_MODE	SVDS_SCORING_SVD	Whether to use SVD or PCA scoring for the model.
	SVDS_SCORING_PCA	When the build data is scored with SVD, the projections will be the same as the U matrix. When the build data is scored with PCA, the projections will be the product of the U and S matrices. Default is SVDS_SCORING_SVD.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts*

Algorithm Settings: Support Vector Machine

These settings configure the behavior of the Support Vector Machine algorithm.

Table 45–21 SVM Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
SVMS_ACTIVE_LEARNING	SVMS_AL_DISABLE SVMS_AL_ENABLE	Whether active learning is enabled or disabled. By default, active learning is enabled. When active learning is enabled, the SVM algorithm uses active learning to build a reduced size model. When active learning is disabled, the SVM algorithm builds a standard model.
SVMS_COMPLEXITY_FACTOR	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >0)	Value of complexity factor for SVM algorithm (both classification and regression). Default value estimated from the data by the algorithm.
SVMS_CONV_TOLERANCE	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >0)	Convergence tolerance for SVM algorithm. Default is 0.001.
SVMS_EPSILON	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >0)	Value of epsilon factor for SVM regression. Default value estimated from the data by the algorithm.
SVMS_KERNEL_CACHE_SIZE	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >0)	Value of kernel cache size for SVM algorithm. Applies to Gaussian kernel only. Default is 50000000 bytes.

Table 45–21 (Cont.) SVM Settings

Setting Name	Setting Value	Description
SVMS_KERNEL_FUNCTION	svm_gaussian svms_linear	Kernel for Support Vector Machine. The default is determined by the algorithm based on the number of attributes in the training data. When there are many attributes, the algorithm uses a linear kernel, otherwise it uses a nonlinear (Gaussian) kernel. The number of attributes does not correspond to the number of columns in the training data. The algorithm explodes categorical attributes to binary, numeric attributes. In addition, Oracle Data Mining handles each row in a nested column as a separate attribute. SVM takes these factors into account when choosing the kernel function.
SVMS_OUTLIER_RATE	TO_CHAR(*0< numeric_expr* <1)	The desired rate of outliers in the training data. Valid for One-Class SVM models only (anomaly detection). Default is.1.
SVMS_STD_DEV	TO_CHAR(*numeric_expr* >0)	Value of standard deviation for SVM algorithm. This is applicable only for Gaussian kernel. Default value estimated from the data by the algorithm.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about SVM

Datatypes

The DBMS_DATA_MINING package defines object datatypes for storing information about model attributes. Most of these types are returned by the table functions GET_*n*, where *n* identifies the type of information to return. These functions take a model name as input and return the requested information as a collection of rows. For a list of the GET functions, see "Summary of DBMS_DATA_MINING Subprograms" on page 45-24.

The DBMS_DATA_MINING package also defines object datatypes for mining transactional data. These types are called DM_NESTED_*n*, where *n* identifies the Oracle datatype of the nested attributes. For more information about mining nested data, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

All the table functions use pipelining, which causes each row of output to be materialized as it is read from model storage, without waiting for the generation of the complete table object. For more information on pipelined, parallel table functions, consult the *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference.*

The Data Mining object datatypes are described in Table 45–22.

Table 45–22 DBMS_DATA_MINING Summary of Datatypes

Datatype	Description
DM_CENTROID	The centroid of a cluster.
DM_CENTROIDS	A collection of DM_CENTROID. A member of DM_CLUSTER.
DM_CHILD	A child node of a cluster.
DM_CHILDREN	A collection of DM_CHILD. A member of DM_CLUSTER.
DM_CLUSTER	A cluster. A cluster includes DM_PREDICATES, DM_CHILDREN, DM_CENTROIDS, and DM_HISTOGRAMS. It also includes a DM_RULE.
DM_CLUSTERS	A collection of DM_CLUSTER. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function, and GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function.
DM_CONDITIONAL	The conditional probability of an attribute in a Naive Bayes model.
DM_CONDITIONALS	A collection of DM_CONDITIONAL. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB Function.
DM_COST_ELEMENT	The actual and predicted values in a cost matrix.
DM_COST_MATRIX	A collection of DM_COST_ELEMENT. Returned by GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX Function.
DM_EM_COMPONENT	A component of an Expectation Maximization model.
DM_EM_COMPONENT_SET	A collection of DM_EM_COMPONENT. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP Function.
DM_EM_PROJECTION	A projection of an Expectation Maximization model.
DM_EM_PROJECTION_SET	A collection of DM_EM_PROJECTION. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ Function.
DM_GLM_COEFF	The coefficient and associated statistics of an attribute in a Generalized Linear Model.
DM_GLM_COEFF_SET	A collection of DM_GLM_COEFF. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM Function.
DM_HISTOGRAM_BIN	A histogram associated with a cluster.

Table 45–22 (Cont.) DBMS_DATA_MINING Summary of Datatypes

Datatype	Description
DM_HISTOGRAMS	A collection of DM_HISTOGRAM_BIN. A member of DM_CLUSTER.
DM_ITEM	An item in an association rule.
DM_ITEMS	A collection of DM_ITEM.
DM_ITEMSET	A collection of DM_ITEMS.
DM_ITEMSETS	A collection of DM_ITEMSET. Returned by GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS Function.
DM_MODEL_GLOBAL_DETAIL	High-level statistics about a model.
DM_MODEL_GLOBAL_DETAILS	A collection of DM_MODEL_GLOBAL_DETAIL. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLOBAL Function.
DM_NB_DETAIL	Information about an attribute in a Naive Bayes model.
DM_NB_DETAILS	A collection of DM_DB_DETAIL. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB Function.
DM_NESTED_BINARY_DOUBLE	The name and value of a numerical attribute of type BINARY_DOUBLE.
DM_NESTED_BINARY_DOUBLES	A collection of DM_NESTED_BINARY_DOUBLE.
DM_NESTED_BINARY_FLOAT	The name and value of a numerical attribute of type BINARY_FLOAT.
DM_NESTED_BINARY_FLOATS	A collection of DM_NESTED_BINARY_FLOAT.
DM_NESTED_CATEGORICAL	The name and value of a categorical attribute of type CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
DM_NESTED_CATEGORICALS	A collection of DM_NESTED_CATEGORICAL.
DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL	The name and value of a numerical attribute of type NUMBER or FLOAT.
DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS	A collection of DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL.
DM_NMF_ATTRIBUTE	An attribute in a feature of a Non-Negative Matrix Factorization model.
DM_NMF_ATTRIBUTE_SET	A collection of DM_NMF_ATTRIBUTE. A member of DM_NMF_FEATURE.
DM_NMF_FEATURE	A feature in a Non-Negative Matrix Factorization model.
DM_NMF_FEATURE_SET	A collection of DM_NMF_FEATURE. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF Function.
DM_PREDICATE	Antecedent and consequent in a rule.
DM_PREDICATES	A collection of DM_PREDICATE. A member of DM_RULE and DM_CLUSTER. Predicates are returned by GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function, and GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function.
DM_RANKED_ATTRIBUTE	An attribute ranked by its importance in an Attribute Importance model.
DM_RANKED_ATTRIBUTES	A collection of DM_RANKED_ATTRIBUTE. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI Function.

Table 45–22 (Cont.) DBMS_DATA_MINING Summary of Datatypes

Datatype	Description
DM_RULE	A rule that defines a conditional relationship. The rule can be one of the association rules returned by GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function, or it can be a rule associated with a cluster in the collection of clusters returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function and GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function.
DM_RULES	A collection of DM_RULE. Returned by GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function.
DM_SVD_MATRIX	A factorized matrix S, V, or U returned by a Singular Value Decomposition model.
DM_SVD_MATRIX_SET	A collection of DM_SVD_MATRIX. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD Function.
DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE	The name, value, and coefficient of an attribute in a Support Vector Machine model.
DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE_SET	A collection of DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM Function. Also a member of DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF.
DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF	The linear coefficient of each attribute in a Support Vector Machine model.
DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF_SET	A collection of DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF. Returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM Function for an SVM model built using the linear kernel.
DM_TRANSFORM	The transformation and reverse transformation expressions for an attribute.
DM_TRANSFORMS	A collection of DM_TRANSFORM. Returned by GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function.
TRANSFORM_LIST	A list of user-specified transformations for a model. Accepted as a parameter by the CREATE_MODEL Procedure. This collection type is defined in the DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package.

Summary of DBMS_DATA_MINING Subprograms

Table 45–23 summarizes the subprograms included in the `DBMS_DATA_MINING` package.

Table 45–23 DBMS_DATA_MINING Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Purpose
ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure on page 45-26	Adds a cost matrix to a classification model
ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION Procedure on page 45-29	Changes the reverse transformation expression to an expression that you specify
APPLY Procedure on page 45-33	Applies a model to a data set (scores the data)
COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure on page 45-37	Computes the confusion matrix for a classification model
COMPUTE_LIFT Procedure on page 45-43	Computes lift for a a classification model
COMPUTE_ROC Procedure on page 45-48	Computes Receiver Operating Characteristic (ROC) for a classification model
CREATE_MODEL Procedure on page 45-53	Creates a model
DROP_MODEL Procedure on page 45-57	Drops a model
EXPORT_MODEL Procedure on page 45-58	Exports a model to a dump file
GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function on page 45-61	Returns the rules from an association model
GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS Function on page 45-66	Returns the frequent itemsets for an association model
GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX Function on page 45-68	Returns the cost matrix for a model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI Function on page 45-70	Returns details about an Attribute Importance model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function on page 45-72	Returns details about an Expectation Maximization model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP Function on page 45-76	Returns details about the parameters of an Expectation Maximization model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ Function on page 45-78	Returns details about the projects of an Expectation Maximization model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM Function on page 45-80	Returns details about a Generalized Linear Model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLOBAL Function on page 45-83	Returns high-level statistics about a model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function on page 45-87	Returns details about a *k*-Means model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB Function on page 45-91	Returns details about a Naive Bayes model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF Function on page 45-93	Returns details about a Non-Negative Matrix Factorization model

Table 45–23 (Cont.) DBMS_DATA_MINING Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Purpose
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function on page 45-95	Returns details about an O-Cluster model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD Function on page 45-99	Returns details about a Singular Value Decomposition model
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM Function on page 45-101	Returns details about a Support Vector Machine model with a linear kernel
GET_MODEL_DETAILS_XML Function on page 45-103	Returns details about a Decision Tree model
GET_MODEL_ TRANSFORMATIONS Function on page 45-105	Returns the transformations embedded in a model
GET_TRANSFORM_LIST Procedure on page 45-107	Converts between two different transformation specification formats
IMPORT_MODEL Procedure on page 45-110	Imports a model into a user schema
RANK_APPLY Procedure on page 45-115	Ranks the predictions from the `APPLY` results for a classification model
REMOVE_COST_MATRIX Procedure on page 45-118	Removes a cost matrix from a model
RENAME_MODEL Procedure on page 45-119	Renames a model

ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure

This procedure associates a cost matrix table with a classification model. The cost matrix biases the model by assigning costs or benefits to specific model outcomes.

The cost matrix is stored with the model and taken into account when the model is scored. The stored cost matrix is the default scoring matrix for the model.

You can also specify a cost matrix inline when you invoke a Data Mining SQL function for scoring. When an inline cost matrix is specified, it is used instead of the default, stored cost matrix (if one exists).

To obtain the default scoring matrix for a model, use the `GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX` function. To remove the default scoring matrix from a model, use the `REMOVE_COST_MATRIX` procedure. See "GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX Function" on page 45-68 and "REMOVE_COST_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-118.

See Also:

- "Biasing a Classification Model" in *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for more information about costs
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for syntax of inline cost matrix

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.ADD_COST_MATRIX (
       model_name                IN VARCHAR2,
       cost_matrix_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
       cost_matrix_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–24 ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`model_name`	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name.*]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is assumed.
`cost_matrix_table_name`	Name of the cost matrix table (described in Table 45–25).
`cost_matrix_schema_name`	Schema of the cost matrix table. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. If the model is not in your schema, then `ADD_COST_MATRIX` requires the `ALTER ANY MINING MODEL` system privilege or the `ALTER` object privilege for the mining model.
2. The cost matrix table must have the columns shown in Table 45–25.

Table 45–25 Required Columns in a Cost Matrix Table

Column Name	Datatype
`ACTUAL_TARGET_VALUE`	Valid target data type
`PREDICTED_TARGET_VALUE`	Valid target data type

Table 45–25 (Cont.) Required Columns in a Cost Matrix Table

Column Name	Datatype
COST	NUMBER, FLOAT, BINARY_DOUBLE, or BINARY_FLOAT

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for valid target datatypes

3. The types of the actual and predicted target values must be the same as the type of the model target. For example, if the target of the model is BINARY_DOUBLE, then the actual and predicted values must be BINARY_DOUBLE. If the actual and predicted values are CHAR or VARCHAR, ADD_COST_MATRIX treats them as VARCHAR2 internally.

   If the types do not match, or if the actual or predicted value is not a valid target value, the ADD_COST_MATRIX procedure raises an error.

   Note: If a reverse transformation is associated with the target, the actual and predicted values must be consistent with the target after the reverse transformation has been applied.

   See "Reverse Transformations and Model Transparency" on page 46-7 for more information.

4. Since a benefit can be viewed as a negative cost, you can specify a benefit for a given outcome by providing a negative number in the costs column of the cost matrix table.

5. All classification algorithms can use a cost matrix for scoring. The Decision Tree algorithm can also use a cost matrix at build time. If you want to build a Decision Tree model with a cost matrix, specify the cost matrix table name in the CLAS_COST_TABLE_NAME setting in the settings table for the model. See Table 45–7, " Mining Function Settings".

   The cost matrix used to create a Decision Tree model becomes the default scoring matrix for the model. If you want to specify different costs for scoring, use the REMOVE_COST_MATRIX procedure to remove the cost matrix and the ADD_COST_MATRIX procedure to add a new one.

Example

This example creates a cost matrix table called COSTS_NB and adds it to a Naive Bayes model called NB_SH_CLAS_SAMPLE. The model has a binary target: 1 means that the customer responds to a promotion; 0 means that the customer does not respond. The cost matrix assigns a cost of .25 to misclassifications of customers who do not respond and a cost of .75 to misclassifications of customers who do respond. This means that it is three times more costly to misclassify responders than it is to misclassify non-responders.

```
CREATE TABLE costs_nb (
  actual_target_value           NUMBER,
  predicted_target_value        NUMBER,
  cost                          NUMBER);
INSERT INTO costs_nb values (0, 0, 0);
INSERT INTO costs_nb values (0, 1, .25);
INSERT INTO costs_nb values (1, 0, .75);
INSERT INTO costs_nb values (1, 1, 0);
COMMIT;
```

```
EXEC dbms_data_mining.add_cost_matrix('nb_sh_clas_sample', 'costs_nb');

SELECT cust_gender, COUNT(*) AS cnt, ROUND(AVG(age)) AS avg_age
   FROM mining_data_apply_v
   WHERE PREDICTION(nb_sh_clas_sample COST MODEL
      USING cust_marital_status, education, household_size) = 1
   GROUP BY cust_gender
   ORDER BY cust_gender;

C        CNT    AVG_AGE
- ---------- ----------
F         72         39
M        555         44
```

ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION Procedure

This procedure replaces a reverse transformation expression with an expression that you specify. If the attribute does not have a reverse expression, the procedure creates one from the specified expression.

You can also use this procedure to customize the output of clustering, feature extraction, and anomaly detection models.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION (
         model_name             VARCHAR2,
         expression             CLOB,
         attribute_name         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
         attribute_subname      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–26 ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`model_name`	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
`expression`	An expression to replace the reverse transformation associated with the attribute.
`attribute_name`	Name of the attribute. Specify `NULL` if you wish to apply *`expression`* to a cluster, feature, or One-Class SVM prediction.
`attribute_subname`	Name of the nested attribute if *`attribute_name`* is a nested column, otherwise `NULL`.

Usage Notes

1. For purposes of model transparency, Oracle Data Mining provides reverse transformations for transformations that are embedded in a model. Reverse transformations are applied to the attributes returned in model details (`GET_MODEL_DETAILS_*` functions) and to the scored target of predictive models.

   See Also: About Transformation Lists in Chapter 46, "DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM"

2. If you alter the reverse transformation for the target of a model that has a cost matrix, you must specify a transformation expression that has the same type as the actual and predicted values in the cost matrix. Also, the reverse transformation that you specify must result in values that are present in the cost matrix.

   See Also: "ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-26 and *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about cost matrixes.

3. To prevent reverse transformation of an attribute, you can specify `NULL` for *`expression`*.

4. The reverse transformation expression can contain a reference to a PL/SQL function that returns a valid Oracle datatype. For example, you could define a

function like the following for a categorical attribute named blood_pressure that has values 'Low', 'Medium' and 'High'.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION numx(c char) RETURN NUMBER IS
  BEGIN
    CASE c WHEN ''Low'' THEN RETURN 1;
           WHEN ''Medium'' THEN RETURN 2;
           WHEN ''High'' THEN RETURN 3;
           ELSE RETURN null;
    END CASE;
  END numx;
```

Then you could invoke ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESION for blood_pressure as follows.

```
EXEC dbms_data_mining.alter_reverse_expression(
            '<model_name>', 'NUMX(blood_pressure)', 'blood_pressure');
```

5. You can use ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION to label clusters produced by clustering models and features produced by feature extraction.

   You can use ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION to replace the zeros and ones returned by anomaly-detection models. By default, anomaly-detection models label anomalous records with 0 and all other records with 1.

   See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for information about anomaly detection

Examples

1. In this example, the target (affinity_card) of the model CLASS_MODEL is manipulated internally as yes or no instead of 1 or 0 but returned as 1s and 0s when scored. The ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION procedure causes the target values to be returned as TRUE or FALSE.

   The data sets MINING_DATA_BUILD and MINING_DATA_TEST are included with the Oracle Data Mining sample programs. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about the sample programs.

```
DECLARE
        v_xlst dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
  BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(v_xlst,
          'affinity_card', NULL,
          'decode(affinity_card, 1, ''yes'', ''no'')',
          'decode(affinity_card, ''yes'', 1, 0)');
    dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL(
      model_name             => 'CLASS_MODEL',
      mining_function        => dbms_data_mining.classification,
      data_table_name        => 'mining_data_build',
      case_id_column_name    => 'cust_id',
      target_column_name     => 'affinity_card',
      settings_table_name    => NULL,
      data_schema_name       => 'dmuser',
      settings_schema_name   => NULL,
      xform_list             => v_xlst );
  END;
/
SELECT cust_income_level, occupation,
           PREDICTION(CLASS_MODEL USING *) predict_response
      FROM mining_data_test WHERE age = 60 AND cust_gender IN 'M'
      ORDER BY cust_income_level;
```

```
CUST_INCOME_LEVEL              OCCUPATION                PREDICT_RESPONSE
------------------------------ --------------------      --------------------
A: Below 30,000                Transp.                                  1
E: 90,000 - 109,999            Transp.                                  1
E: 90,000 - 109,999            Sales                                    1
G: 130,000 - 149,999           Handler                                  0
G: 130,000 - 149,999           Crafts                                   0
H: 150,000 - 169,999           Prof.                                    1
J: 190,000 - 249,999           Prof.                                    1
J: 190,000 - 249,999           Sales                                    1

BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining.ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION (
     model_name      => 'CLASS_MODEL',
     expression      => 'decode(affinity_card, ''yes'', ''TRUE'', ''FALSE'')',
     attribute_name  => 'affinity_card');
END;
/
column predict_response on
column predict_response format a20
SELECT cust_income_level, occupation,
             PREDICTION(CLASS_MODEL USING *) predict_response
      FROM mining_data_test WHERE age = 60 AND cust_gender IN 'M'
      ORDER BY cust_income_level;

CUST_INCOME_LEVEL              OCCUPATION            PREDICT_RESPONSE
------------------------------ --------------------  --------------------
A: Below 30,000                Transp.               TRUE
E: 90,000 - 109,999            Transp.               TRUE
E: 90,000 - 109,999            Sales                 TRUE
G: 130,000 - 149,999           Handler               FALSE
G: 130,000 - 149,999           Crafts                FALSE
H: 150,000 - 169,999           Prof.                 TRUE
J: 190,000 - 249,999           Prof.                 TRUE
J: 190,000 - 249,999           Sales                 TRUE
```

2. This example specifies labels for the clusters that result from the `sh_clus` model. The labels consist of the word "Cluster" and the internal numeric identifier for the cluster.

```
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining.ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION( 'sh_clus', '''Cluster ''||value');
END;
/

SELECT cust_id, cluster_id(sh_clus using *) cluster_id
   FROM sh_aprep_num
       WHERE cust_id < 100011
       ORDER by cust_id;

CUST_ID CLUSTER_ID
------- --------------------------------------------------
 100001 Cluster 18
 100002 Cluster 14
 100003 Cluster 14
 100004 Cluster 18
 100005 Cluster 19
 100006 Cluster 7
 100007 Cluster 18
```

```
100008 Cluster 14
100009 Cluster 8
100010 Cluster 8
```

APPLY Procedure

This procedure applies a mining model to the data of interest, and generates the results in a table. The apply process is also referred to as **scoring**.

For predictive mining functions, the apply process generates predictions in a target column. For descriptive mining functions such as clustering, the apply process assigns each case to a cluster with a probability.

In Oracle Data Mining, the apply operation is not applicable to association models and attribute importance models.

Note: Scoring can also be performed directly in SQL using the Data Mining functions. See

- "Data Mining Functions" in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- "Scoring and Deployment" in *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.APPLY (
      model_name           IN VARCHAR2,
      data_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
      case_id_column_name  IN VARCHAR2,
      result_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
      data_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–27 APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`model_name`	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
`data_table_name`	Name of table or view containing the data to be scored
`case_id_column_name`	Name of the case identifier column
`result_table_name`	Name of the table in which to store apply results
`data_schema_name`	Name of the schema containing the data to be scored

Usage Notes

1. The data provided for `APPLY` must undergo the same preprocessing as the data used to create and test the model. When you use Automatic Data Preparation, the preprocessing required by the algorithm is handled for you by the model — both at build time and apply time. (See "Automatic Data Preparation" on page 45-8.)
2. `APPLY` creates a table in the user's schema to hold the results. The columns are algorithm-specific.

   The columns in the results table are listed in Table 45–28 through Table 45–32. The case ID column name in the results table will match the case ID column name provided by you. The type of the incoming case ID column is also preserved in `APPLY` output.

Note: Make sure that the case ID column does not have the same name as one of the columns that will be created by `APPLY`. For example, when applying a classification model, the case ID in the scoring data must not be '`PREDICTION`' or '`PROBABILITY`' (See Table 45–28).

3. The datatype for the '`PREDICTION`', '`CLUSTER_ID`', and '`FEATURE_ID`' output columns is influenced by any reverse expression that is embedded in the model by the user. If the user does not provide a reverse expression that alters the scored value type, then the types will conform to the descriptions in the following tables. See "ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION Procedure" on page 45-29.

Classification

The results table for classification has the columns described in Table 45–28. If the target of the model is categorical, the `PREDICTION` column will have a `VARCHAR2` datatype. If the target has a binary type, the `PREDICTION` column will have the binary type of the target.

Table 45–28 APPLY Results Table for Classification

Column Name	Datatype
`Case ID column name`	Type of the case ID
`PREDICTION`	Type of the target
`PROBABILITY`	`BINARY_DOUBLE`

Anomaly Detection

The results table for anomaly detection has the columns described in Table 45–29.

Table 45–29 APPLY Results Table for Anomaly Detection

Column Name	Datatype
`Case ID column name`	Type of the case ID
`PREDICTION`	`NUMBER`
`PROBABILITY`	`BINARY_DOUBLE`

Values in the `PREDICTION` column can be either 0 or 1. When the prediction is 1, the case is a typical example. When the prediction is 0, the case is an outlier.

Regression

The results table for regression has the columns described in Table 45–30.

Table 45–30 APPLY Results Table for Regression

Column Name	Datatype
`Case ID column name`	Type of the case ID
`PREDICTION`	Type of the target

Clustering

Clustering is an unsupervised mining function, and hence there are no targets. The results of an APPLY operation will contain simply the cluster identifier corresponding to a case, and the associated probability. The results table has the columns described in Table 45–31.

Table 45–31 APPLY Results Table for Clustering

Column Name	Datatype
Case ID column name	Type of the case ID
CLUSTER_ID	NUMBER
PROBABILITY	BINARY_DOUBLE

Feature Extraction

Feature extraction is also an unsupervised mining function, and hence there are no targets. The results of an APPLY operation will contain simply the feature identifier corresponding to a case, and the associated match quality. The results table has the columns described in Table 45–32.

Table 45–32 APPLY Results Table for Feature Extraction

Column Name	Datatype
Case ID column name	Type of the case ID
FEATURE_ID	NUMBER
MATCH_QUALITY	BINARY_DOUBLE

Examples

This example applies the GLM regression model GLMR_SH_REGR_SAMPLE to the data in the MINING_DATA_APPLY_V view. The apply results are output to the table REGRESSION_APPLY_RESULT.

```
SQL> BEGIN
       DBMS_DATA_MINING.APPLY (
       model_name     => 'glmr_sh_regr_sample',
       data_table_name     => 'mining_data_apply_v',
       case_id_column_name => 'cust_id',
       result_table_name   => 'regression_apply_result');
    END;
    /

SQL> SELECT * FROM regression_apply_result WHERE cust_id >  101485;

   CUST_ID PREDICTION
---------- ----------
    101486 22.8048824
    101487 25.0261101
    101488 48.6146619
    101489   51.82595
    101490 22.6220714
    101491 61.3856816
    101492 24.1400748
    101493  58.034631
    101494 45.7253149
    101495 26.9763318
```

```
101496 48.1433425
101497 32.0573434
101498 49.8965531
101499  56.270656
101500 21.1153047
```

COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure

This procedure computes a confusion matrix, stores it in a table in the user's schema, and returns the model accuracy.

A confusion matrix is a test metric for classification models. It compares the predictions generated by the model with the actual target values in a set of test data. The confusion matrix lists the number of times each class was correctly predicted and the number of times it was predicted to be one of the other classes.

COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX accepts three input streams:

- The predictions generated on the test data. The information is passed in three columns:
  - Case ID column
  - Prediction column
  - Scoring criterion column containing either probabilities or costs
- The known target values in the test data. The information is passed in two columns:
  - Case ID column
  - Target column containing the known target values
- (Optional) A cost matrix table with predefined columns. See the Usage Notes for the column requirements.

See Also:

Oracle Data Mining Concepts for more details about confusion matrixes and other test metrics for classification

"COMPUTE_LIFT Procedure" on page 45-43

"COMPUTE_ROC Procedure" on page 45-48

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX (
      accuracy                     OUT NUMBER,
      apply_result_table_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
      target_table_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
      case_id_column_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
      target_column_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
      confusion_matrix_table_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
      score_column_name            IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PREDICTION',
      score_criterion_column_name  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PROBABILITY',
      cost_matrix_table_name       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      apply_result_schema_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      target_schema_name           IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      cost_matrix_schema_name      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      score_criterion_type         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PROBABILITY');
```

Parameters

Table 45–33 COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
accuracy	Output parameter containing the overall percentage accuracy of the predictions.
apply_result_table_name	Table containing the predictions.
target_table_name	Table containing the known target values from the test data.
case_id_column_name	Case ID column in the apply results table. Must match the case identifier in the targets table.
target_column_name	Target column in the targets table. Contains the known target values from the test data.
confusion_matrix_table_name	Table containing the confusion matrix. The table will be created by the procedure in the user's schema. The columns in the confusion matrix table are described in the Usage Notes.
score_column_name	Column containing the predictions in the apply results table. The default column name is PREDICTION, which is the default name created by the APPLY procedure (See "APPLY Procedure" on page 45-33).
score_criterion_column_name	Column containing the scoring criterion in the apply results table. Contains either the probabilities or the costs that determine the predictions. By default, scoring is based on probability; the class with the highest probability is predicted for each case. If scoring is based on cost, the class with the lowest cost is predicted. The score_criterion_type parameter indicates whether probabilities or costs will be used for scoring. The default column name is 'PROBABILITY', which is the default name created by the APPLY procedure (See "APPLY Procedure" on page 45-33). See the Usage Notes for additional information.
cost_matrix_table_name	(Optional) Table that defines the costs associated with misclassifications. If a cost matrix table is provided and the score_criterion_type parameter is set to 'COSTS', the costs in this table will be used as the scoring criteria. The columns in a cost matrix table are described in the Usage Notes.
apply_result_schema_name	Schema of the apply results table. If null, the user's schema is assumed.
target_schema_name	Schema of the table containing the known targets. If null, the user's schema is assumed.
cost_matrix_schema_name	Schema of the cost matrix table, if one is provided. If null, the user's schema is assumed.

Table 45–33 (Cont.) COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
score_criterion_type	Whether to use probabilities or costs as the scoring criterion. Probabilities or costs are passed in the column identified in the score_criterion_column_name parameter. The default value of score_criterion_type is 'PROBABILITY'. To use costs as the scoring criterion, specify 'COST'. If score_criterion_type is set to 'COST' but no cost matrix is provided and if there is a scoring cost matrix associated with the model, then the associated costs are used for scoring. See the Usage Notes and the Examples.

Usage Notes

- The predictive information you pass to COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX may be generated using SQL PREDICTION functions, the DBMS_DATA_MINING.APPLY procedure, or some other mechanism. As long as you pass the appropriate data, the procedure can compute the confusion matrix.
- Instead of passing a cost matrix to COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX, you can use a scoring cost matrix associated with the model. A scoring cost matrix can be embedded in the model or it can be defined dynamically when the model is applied. To use a scoring cost matrix, invoke the SQL PREDICTION_COST function to populate the score criterion column.
- The predictions that you pass to COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX are in a table or view specified in apply_result_table_name.

```
CREATE TABLE apply_result_table_name AS (
            case_id_column_name           VARCHAR2,
            score_column_name             VARCHAR2,
            score_criterion_column_name   VARCHAR2);
```

- A cost matrix must have the columns described in Table 45–34.

Table 45–34 Columns in a Cost Matrix

Column Name	Datatype
actual_target_value	Type of the target column in the build data
predicted_target_value	Type of the predicted target in the test data. The type of the predicted target must be the same as the type of the actual target unless the predicted target has an associated reverse transformation.
cost	BINARY_DOUBLE

See Also:

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for valid target datatypes

Oracle Data Mining Concepts for more information about cost matrixes

- The confusion matrix created by COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX has the columns described in Table 45–35.

Table 45–35 Columns in a Confusion Matrix

Column Name	Datatype
actual_target_value	Type of the target column in the build data
predicted_target_value	Type of the predicted target in the test data. The type of the predicted target is the same as the type of the actual target unless the predicted target has an associated reverse transformation.
value	BINARY_DOUBLE

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for more information about confusion matrixes

Examples

These examples use the Naive Bayes model nb_sh_clas_sample, which is created by one of the Oracle Data Mining sample programs.

Compute a Confusion Matrix Based on Probabilities

The following statement applies the model to the test data and stores the predictions and probabilities in a table.

```
CREATE TABLE nb_apply_results AS
       SELECT cust_id,
              PREDICTION(nb_sh_clas_sample USING *) prediction,
              PREDICTION_PROBABILITY(nb_sh_clas_sample USING *) probability
       FROM mining_data_test_v;
```

Using probabilities as the scoring criterion, you can compute the confusion matrix as follows.

```
DECLARE
   v_accuracy    NUMBER;
      BEGIN
        DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX (
                   accuracy                     => v_accuracy,
                   apply_result_table_name      => 'nb_apply_results',
                   target_table_name            => 'mining_data_test_v',
                   case_id_column_name          => 'cust_id',
                   target_column_name           => 'affinity_card',
                   confusion_matrix_table_name  => 'nb_confusion_matrix',
                   score_column_name            => 'PREDICTION',
                   score_criterion_column_name  => 'PROBABILITY'
                   cost_matrix_table_name       =>  null,
                   apply_result_schema_name     =>  null,
                   target_schema_name           =>  null,
                   cost_matrix_schema_name      =>  null,
                   score_criterion_type         => 'PROBABILITY');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('**** MODEL ACCURACY ****: ' || ROUND(v_accuracy,4));
      END;
      /
```

The confusion matrix and model accuracy are shown as follows.

```
 **** MODEL ACCURACY ****: .7847

SQL>SELECT * from nb_confusion_matrix;
ACTUAL_TARGET_VALUE PREDICTED_TARGET_VALUE      VALUE
------------------- ---------------------- ----------
```

```
                  1                    0         60
                  0                    0        891
                  1                    1        286
                  0                    1        263
```

Compute a Confusion Matrix Based on a Cost Matrix Table

The confusion matrix in the previous example shows a high rate of false positives. For 263 cases, the model predicted 1 when the actual value was 0. You could use a cost matrix to minimize this type of error.

The cost matrix table `nb_cost_matrix` specifies that a false positive is 3 times more costly than a false negative.

```
SQL> SELECT * from nb_cost_matrix;
ACTUAL_TARGET_VALUE PREDICTED_TARGET_VALUE       COST
------------------- ---------------------- ----------
                  0                      0          0
                  0                      1        .75
                  1                      0        .25
                  1                      1          0
```

This statement shows how to generate the predictions using `APPLY`.

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_DATA_MINING.APPLY(
          model_name          => 'nb_sh_clas_sample',
          data_table_name     => 'mining_data_test_v',
          case_id_column_name => 'cust_id',
          result_table_name   => 'nb_apply_results');
 END;
/
```

This statement computes the confusion matrix using the cost matrix table. The score criterion column is named '`PROBABILITY`', which is the name generated by `APPLY`.

```
DECLARE
  v_accuracy    NUMBER;
     BEGIN
       DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX (
                accuracy                     => v_accuracy,
                apply_result_table_name      => 'nb_apply_results',
                target_table_name            => 'mining_data_test_v',
                case_id_column_name          => 'cust_id',
                target_column_name           => 'affinity_card',
                confusion_matrix_table_name  => 'nb_confusion_matrix',
                score_column_name            => 'PREDICTION',
                score_criterion_column_name  => 'PROBABILITY',
                cost_matrix_table_name       => 'nb_cost_matrix',
                apply_result_schema_name     => null,
                target_schema_name           => null,
                cost_matrix_schema_name      => null,
                score_criterion_type         => 'COST');
       DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('**** MODEL ACCURACY ****: ' || ROUND(v_accuracy,4));
    END;
    /
```

The resulting confusion matrix shows a decrease in false positives (212 instead of 263).

```
**** MODEL ACCURACY ****: .798
```

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM nb_confusion_matrix;
ACTUAL_TARGET_VALUE PREDICTED_TARGET_VALUE      VALUE
------------------- ---------------------- ----------
                  1                      0         91
                  0                      0        942
                  1                      1        255
                  0                      1        212
```

Compute a Confusion Matrix Based on Embedded Costs

You can use the ADD_COST_MATRIX procedure to embed a cost matrix in a model. The embedded costs can be used instead of probabilities for scoring. This statement adds the previously-defined cost matrix to the model.

```
BEGIN    DBMS_DATA_MINING.ADD_COST_MATRIX ('nb_sh_clas_sample', 'nb_cost_
matrix');END;/
```

The following statement applies the model to the test data using the embedded costs and stores the results in a table.

```
CREATE TABLE nb_apply_results AS
         SELECT cust_id,
              PREDICTION(nb_sh_clas_sample COST MODEL USING *) prediction,
              PREDICTION_COST(nb_sh_clas_sample COST MODEL USING *) cost
          FROM mining_data_test_v;
```

You can compute the confusion matrix using the embedded costs.

```
DECLARE
   v_accuracy         NUMBER;
   BEGIN
       DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX (
            accuracy                     => v_accuracy,
            apply_result_table_name      => 'nb_apply_results',
            target_table_name            => 'mining_data_test_v',
            case_id_column_name          => 'cust_id',
            target_column_name           => 'affinity_card',
            confusion_matrix_table_name  => 'nb_confusion_matrix',
            score_column_name            => 'PREDICTION',
            score_criterion_column_name  => 'COST',
            cost_matrix_table_name       => null,
            apply_result_schema_name     => null,
            target_schema_name           => null,
            cost_matrix_schema_name      => null,
            score_criterion_type         => 'COST');
   END;
   /
```

The results are:

```
**** MODEL ACCURACY ****: .798

SQL> SELECT * FROM nb_confusion_matrix;
ACTUAL_TARGET_VALUE PREDICTED_TARGET_VALUE      VALUE
------------------- ---------------------- ----------
                  1                      0         91
                  0                      0        942
                  1                      1        255
                  0                      1        212
```

COMPUTE_LIFT Procedure

This procedure computes lift and stores the results in a table in the user's schema.

Lift is a test metric for binary classification models. To compute lift, one of the target values must be designated as the positive class. COMPUTE_LIFT compares the predictions generated by the model with the actual target values in a set of test data. Lift measures the degree to which the model's predictions of the positive class are an improvement over random chance.

Lift is computed on scoring results that have been ranked by probability (or cost) and divided into quantiles. Each quantile includes the scores for the same number of cases.

COMPUTE_LIFT calculates quantile-based and cumulative statistics. The number of quantiles and the positive class are user-specified. Additionally, COMPUTE_LIFT accepts three input streams:

- The predictions generated on the test data. The information is passed in three columns:
  - Case ID column
  - Prediction column
  - Scoring criterion column containing either probabilities or costs associated with the predictions
- The known target values in the test data. The information is passed in two columns:
  - Case ID column
  - Target column containing the known target values
- (Optional) A cost matrix table with predefined columns. See the Usage Notes for the column requirements.

See Also:

Oracle Data Mining Concepts for more details about lift and test metrics for classification

"COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-37

"COMPUTE_ROC Procedure" on page 45-48

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_LIFT (
      apply_result_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
      target_table_name            IN VARCHAR2,
      case_id_column_name          IN VARCHAR2,
      target_column_name           IN VARCHAR2,
      lift_table_name              IN VARCHAR2,
      positive_target_value        IN VARCHAR2,
      score_column_name            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PREDICTION',
      score_criterion_column_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PROBABILITY',
      num_quantiles                IN NUMBER DEFAULT 10,
      cost_matrix_table_name       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      apply_result_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      target_schema_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      cost_matrix_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
      score_criterion_type         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PROBABILITY');
```

Parameters

Table 45–36 COMPUTE_LIFT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_result_table_name	Table containing the predictions.
target_table_name	Table containing the known target values from the test data.
case_id_column_name	Case ID column in the apply results table. Must match the case identifier in the targets table.
target_column_name	Target column in the targets table. Contains the known target values from the test data.
lift_table_name	Table containing the lift statistics. The table will be created by the procedure in the user's schema. The columns in the lift table are described in the Usage Notes.
positive_target_value	The positive class. This should be the class of interest, for which you want to calculate lift. If the target column is a NUMBER, you can use the TO_CHAR() operator to provide the value as a string.
score_column_name	Column containing the predictions in the apply results table. The default column name is 'PREDICTION', which is the default name created by the APPLY procedure (See "APPLY Procedure" on page 45-33).
score_criterion_column_name	Column containing the scoring criterion in the apply results table. Contains either the probabilities or the costs that determine the predictions. By default, scoring is based on probability; the class with the highest probability is predicted for each case. If scoring is based on cost, the class with the lowest cost is predicted. The score_criterion_type parameter indicates whether probabilities or costs will be used for scoring. The default column name is 'PROBABILITY', which is the default name created by the APPLY procedure (See "APPLY Procedure" on page 45-33). See the Usage Notes for additional information.
num_quantiles	Number of quantiles to be used in calculating lift. The default is 10.
cost_matrix_table_name	(Optional) Table that defines the costs associated with misclassifications. If a cost matrix table is provided and the score_criterion_type parameter is set to 'COST', the costs will be used as the scoring criteria. The columns in a cost matrix table are described in the Usage Notes.
apply_result_schema_name	Schema of the apply results table. If null, the user's schema is assumed.
target_schema_name	Schema of the table containing the known targets. If null, the user's schema is assumed.

Table 45–36 (Cont.) COMPUTE_LIFT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cost_matrix_schema_name	Schema of the cost matrix table, if one is provided. If null, the user's schema is assumed.
score_criterion_type	Whether to use probabilities or costs as the scoring criterion. Probabilities or costs are passed in the column identified in the score_criterion_column_name parameter. The default value of score_criterion_type is 'PROBABILITY'. To use costs as the scoring criterion, specify 'COST'. If score_criterion_type is set to 'COST' but no cost matrix is provided and if there is a scoring cost matrix associated with the model, then the associated costs are used for scoring. See the Usage Notes and the Examples.

Usage Notes

- The predictive information you pass to COMPUTE_LIFT may be generated using SQL PREDICTION functions, the DBMS_DATA_MINING.APPLY procedure, or some other mechanism. As long as you pass the appropriate data, the procedure can compute the lift.
- Instead of passing a cost matrix to COMPUTE_LIFT, you can use a scoring cost matrix associated with the model. A scoring cost matrix can be embedded in the model or it can be defined dynamically when the model is applied. To use a scoring cost matrix, invoke the SQL PREDICTION_COST function to populate the score criterion column.
- The predictions that you pass to COMPUTE_LIFT are in a table or view specified in apply_results_table_name.

```
CREATE TABLE apply_result_table_name AS (
            case_id_column_name           VARCHAR2,
            score_column_name             VARCHAR2,
            score_criterion_column_name   VARCHAR2);
```

- A cost matrix must have the columns described in Table 45–37.

Table 45–37 Columns in a Cost Matrix

Column Name	Datatype
actual_target_value	Type of the target column in the build data
predicted_target_value	Type of the predicted target in the test data. The type of the predicted target must be the same as the type of the actual target unless the predicted target has an associated reverse transformation.
cost	NUMBER

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for more information about cost matrixes

- The table created by COMPUTE_LIFT has the columns described in Table 45–38

Table 45–38 Columns in a Lift Table

Column Name	Datatype
quantile_number	NUMBER
probability_threshold	NUMBER
gain_cumulative	NUMBER
quantile_total_count	NUMBER
quantile_target_count	NUMBER
percent_records_cumulative	NUMBER
lift_cumulative	NUMBER
target_density_cumulative	NUMBER
targets_cumulative	NUMBER
non_targets_cumulative	NUMBER
lift_quantile	NUMBER
target_density	NUMBER

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for details about the information in the lift table

- When a cost matrix is passed to COMPUTE_LIFT, the cost threshold is returned in the probability_threshold column of the lift table.

Examples

This example uses the Naive Bayes model nb_sh_clas_sample, which is created by one of the Oracle Data Mining sample programs.

The example illustrates lift based on probabilities. For examples that show computation based on costs, see "COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-37.

The following statement applies the model to the test data and stores the predictions and probabilities in a table.

```
CREATE TABLE nb_apply_results AS
    SELECT cust_id, t.prediction, t.probability
    FROM mining_data_test_v, TABLE(PREDICTION_SET(nb_sh_clas_sample USING *)) t;
```

Using probabilities as the scoring criterion, you can compute lift as follows.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_LIFT (
        apply_result_table_name        => 'nb_apply_results',
        target_table_name              => 'mining_data_test_v',
        case_id_column_name            => 'cust_id',
        target_column_name             => 'affinity_card',
        lift_table_name                => 'nb_lift',
        positive_target_value          =>  to_char(1),
        score_column_name              => 'PREDICTION',
        score_criterion_column_name    => 'PROBABILITY',
        num_quantiles                  =>  10,
        cost_matrix_table_name         =>  null,
        apply_result_schema_name       =>  null,
        target_schema_name             =>  null,
```

```
      cost_matrix_schema_name        =>  null,
      score_criterion_type           =>  'PROBABILITY');
  END;
  /
```

This query displays some of the statistics from the resulting lift table.

```
SQL>SELECT quantile_number, probability_threshold, gain_cumulative,
           quantile_total_count
           FROM nb_lift;

QUANTILE_NUMBER PROBABILITY_THRESHOLD GAIN_CUMULATIVE QUANTILE_TOTAL_COUNT
--------------- --------------------- --------------- --------------------
              1            .989335775       .15034965                   55
              2            .980534911       .26048951                   55
              3            .968506098      .374125874                   55
              4            .958975196      .493006993                   55
              5            .946705997      .587412587                   55
              6            .927454174       .66958042                   55
              7            .904403627      .748251748                   55
              8            .836482525      .839160839                   55
             10            .500184953               1                   54
```

COMPUTE_ROC Procedure

This procedure computes receiver operating characteristic (ROC), stores the results in a table in the user's schema, and returns a measure of the model accuracy.

ROC is a test metric for binary classification models. To compute ROC, one of the target values must be designated as the positive class. `COMPUTE_ROC` compares the predictions generated by the model with the actual target values in a set of test data.

ROC measures the impact of changes in the probability threshold. The probability threshold is the decision point used by the model for predictions. In binary classification, the default probability threshold is 0.5. The value predicted for each case is the one with a probability greater than 50%.

ROC can be plotted as a curve on an X-Y axis. The false positive rate is placed on the X axis. The true positive rate is placed on the Y axis. A false positive is a positive prediction for a case that is negative in the test data. A true positive is a positive prediction for a case that is positive in the test data.

`COMPUTE_ROC` accepts two input streams:

- The predictions generated on the test data. The information is passed in three columns:
  - Case ID column
  - Prediction column
  - Scoring criterion column containing probabilities
- The known target values in the test data. The information is passed in two columns:
  - Case ID column
  - Target column containing the known target values

See Also:

Oracle Data Mining Concepts for more details about ROC and test metrics for classification

"COMPUTE_CONFUSION_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-37

"COMPUTE_LIFT Procedure" on page 45-43

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_ROC (
      roc_area_under_curve         OUT NUMBER,
      apply_result_table_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
      target_table_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
      case_id_column_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
      target_column_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
      roc_table_name               IN  VARCHAR2,
      positive_target_value        IN  VARCHAR2,
      score_column_name            IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PREDICTION',
      score_criterion_column_name  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'PROBABILITY',
      apply_result_schema_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      target_schema_name           IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–39 COMPUTE_ROC Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
roc_area_under_the_curve	Output parameter containing the area under the ROC curve (AUC). The AUC measures the likelihood that an actual positive will be predicted as positive. The greater the AUC, the greater the flexibility of the model in accommodating trade-offs between positive and negative class predictions. AUC can be especially important when one target class is rarer or more important to identify than another.
apply_result_table_name	Table containing the predictions.
target_table_name	Table containing the known target values from the test data.
case_id_column_name	Case ID column in the apply results table. Must match the case identifier in the targets table.
target_column_name	Target column in the targets table. Contains the known target values from the test data.
roc_table_name	Table containing the ROC output. The table will be created by the procedure in the user's schema. The columns in the ROC table are described in the Usage Notes.
positive_target_value	The positive class. This should be the class of interest, for which you want to calculate ROC. If the target column is a NUMBER, you can use the TO_CHAR() operator to provide the value as a string.
score_column_name	Column containing the predictions in the apply results table. The default column name is 'PREDICTION', which is the default name created by the APPLY procedure (See "APPLY Procedure" on page 45-33).
score_criterion_column_name	Column containing the scoring criterion in the apply results table. Contains the probabilities that determine the predictions. The default column name is 'PROBABILITY', which is the default name created by the APPLY procedure (See "APPLY Procedure" on page 45-33).
apply_result_schema_name	Schema of the apply results table. If null, the user's schema is assumed.
target_schema_name	Schema of the table containing the known targets. If null, the user's schema is assumed.

Usage Notes

- The predictive information you pass to COMPUTE_ROC may be generated using SQL PREDICTION functions, the DBMS_DATA_MINING.APPLY procedure, or some other mechanism. As long as you pass the appropriate data, the procedure can compute the receiver operating characteristic.
- The predictions that you pass to COMPUTE_ROC are in a table or view specified in apply_results_table_name.

```
CREATE TABLE apply_result_table_name AS (
            case_id_column_name           VARCHAR2,
            score_column_name             VARCHAR2,
            score_criterion_column_name   VARCHAR2);
```

- The table created by COMPUTE_ROC has the columns shown in Table 45–40.

Table 45–40 COMPUTE_ROC Output

Column	Datatype
probability	BINARY_DOUBLE
true_positives	NUMBER
false_negatives	NUMBER
false_positives	NUMBER
true_negatives	NUMBER
true_positive_fraction	NUMBER
false_positive_fraction	NUMBER

> **See Also:** *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* for details about the output of COMPUTE_ROC

- ROC is typically used to determine the most desirable probability threshold. This can be done by examining the true positive fraction and the false positive fraction. The true positive fraction is the percentage of all positive cases in the test data that were correctly predicted as positive. The false positive fraction is the percentage of all negative cases in the test data that were incorrectly predicted as positive.

  Given a probability threshold, the following statement returns the positive predictions in an apply result table ordered by probability.

```
SELECT case_id_column_name
       FROM apply_result_table_name
       WHERE probability > probability_threshold
       ORDER BY probability DESC;
```

- There are two approaches to identifying the most desirable probability threshold. Which approach you use depends on whether or not you know the relative cost of positive versus negative class prediction errors.

  If the costs are known, you can apply the relative costs to the ROC table to compute the minimum cost probability threshold. Suppose the relative cost ratio is: Positive Class Error Cost / Negative Class Error Cost = 20. Then execute a query like this.

```
WITH cost AS (
  SELECT probability_threshold, 20 * false_negatives + false_positives cost
    FROM ROC_table
  GROUP BY probability_threshold),
    minCost AS (
      SELECT min(cost) minCost
        FROM cost)
      SELECT max(probability_threshold)probability_threshold
        FROM cost, minCost
    WHERE cost = minCost;
```

If relative costs are not well known, you can simply scan the values in the ROC table (in sorted order) and make a determination about which of the displayed trade-offs (misclassified positives versus misclassified negatives) is most desirable.

```
SELECT * FROM ROC_table
         ORDER BY probability_threshold;
```

Examples

This example uses the Naive Bayes model `nb_sh_clas_sample`, which is created by one of the Oracle Data Mining sample programs.

The following statement applies the model to the test data and stores the predictions and probabilities in a table.

```
CREATE TABLE nb_apply_results AS
    SELECT cust_id, t.prediction, t.probability
    FROM mining_data_test_v, TABLE(PREDICTION_SET(nb_sh_clas_sample USING *)) t;
```

Using the predictions and the target values from the test data, you can compute ROC as follows.

```
DECLARE
     v_area_under_curve NUMBER;
  BEGIN
     DBMS_DATA_MINING.COMPUTE_ROC (
         roc_area_under_curve          => v_area_under_curve,
         apply_result_table_name       => 'nb_apply_results',
         target_table_name             => 'mining_data_test_v',
         case_id_column_name           => 'cust_id',
         target_column_name            => 'affinity_card',
         roc_table_name                => 'nb_roc',
         positive_target_value         => '1',
         score_column_name             => 'PREDICTION',
         score_criterion_column_name   => 'PROBABILITY');
     DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('**** AREA UNDER ROC CURVE ****: ' ||
     ROUND(v_area_under_curve,4));
  END;
 /
```

The resulting AUC and a selection of columns from the ROC table are shown as follows.

```
**** AREA UNDER ROC CURVE ****: .8212

SQL> SELECT probability, true_positive_fraction, false_positive_fraction
            FROM nb_roc;

PROBABILITY  TRUE_POSITIVE_FRACTION  FALSE_POSITIVE_FRACTION
-----------  ----------------------  -----------------------
     .00000                       1                        1
     .50018             .826589595              .227902946
     .53851             .823699422              .221837088
     .54991             .820809249              .217504333
     .55628             .815028902              .215771231
     .55628             .817919075              .215771231
     .57563             .800578035              .214904679
     .57563             .812138728              .214904679
      .                   .                       .
      .                   .                       .
      .                   .                       .
```

CREATE_MODEL Procedure

This procedure creates a mining model with a given mining function.

By passing an `xform_list` to `CREATE_MODEL`, you can specify a list of transformations to be performed on the input data. If the `PREP_AUTO` setting is on, the transformations are used in addition to the automatic transformations. If the `PREP_AUTO` setting is off, the specified transformations are the only ones implemented by the model. In both cases, the transformation definitions are embedded in the model and executed automatically whenever the model is applied. See "Automatic Data Preparation" on page 45-8.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.CREATE_MODEL (
      model_name            IN VARCHAR2,
      mining_function       IN VARCHAR2,
      data_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
      case_id_column_name   IN VARCHAR2,
      target_column_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      settings_table_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      data_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      settings_schema_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      xform_list            IN TRANSFORM_LIST DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–41 CREATE_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`model_name`	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used. See the Usage Notes for model naming restrictions.
`mining_function`	The mining function. Values are listed in Table 45–3, " Mining Functions".
`data_table_name`	Table or view containing the build data.
`case_id_column_name`	Case identifier column in the build data.
`target_column_name`	For supervised models, the target column in the build data. `NULL` for unsupervised models.
`settings_table_name`	Table containing build settings for the model. `NULL` if there is no settings table (only default settings are used).
`data_schema_name`	Schema hosting the build data. If `NULL`, the user's schema is assumed.
`settings_schema_name`	Schema hosting the settings table. If `NULL`, the user's schema is assumed.

Table 45–41 (Cont.) CREATE_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description

xform_list	A list of transformations to be used in addition to or instead of automatic transformations, depending on the value of the PREP_AUTO setting. (See "Automatic Data Preparation" on page 45-8.)
	
	The datatype of xform_list is TRANSFORM_LIST, which consists of records of type TRANSFORM_REC. Each TRANSFORM_REC specifies the transformation information for a single attribute.
	
	`TYPE`
	`  TRANFORM_REC     IS RECORD (`
	`    attribute_name       VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`    attribute_subname    VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`    expression           EXPRESSION_REC,`
	`    reverse_expression   EXPRESSION_REC,`
	`    attribute_spec       VARCHAR2(4000));`
	
	The expression field stores a SQL expression for transforming the attribute. The reverse_expression field stores a SQL expression for reversing the transformation in model details and, if the attribute is a target, in the results of scoring. The SQL expressions are manipulated by routines in the DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package:
	
	■ SET_EXPRESSION Procedure
	■ GET_EXPRESSION Function
	■ SET_TRANSFORM Procedure
	
	The attribute_spec field identifies individualized treatment for the attribute. See the Usage Notes for details.
	
	See Table 46–1, " Datatypes in DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM"for details about the TRANSFORM_REC type.

Usage Notes

1. You can use the attribute_spec field of the xform_list argument to identify an attribute as unstructured text or to disable Automatic Data Preparation for the attribute. The attribute_spec can have the following values:

   - TEXT — Indicates that the attribute contains unstructured text. The TEXT value may optionally be followed by an Oracle Text POLICY name. (For information about creating a Text POLICY, see CTX_DDL.CREATE_POLICY in *Oracle Text Reference*.)

     Oracle Data Mining can process columns of VARCHAR2/CHAR, CLOB, BLOB, and BFILE as text. If the column is VARCHAR2 or CHAR and you do not specify TEXT, Oracle Data Mining will process the column as categorical data. If the column is CLOB, Oracle Data Mining will process it as text by default (You do not need to specify it as TEXT). If the column is BLOB or BFILE, you must specify it as TEXT, otherwise CREATE_MODEL will return an error.

     If you specify TEXT for a nested column or for an attribute in a nested column, CREATE_MODEL will return an error.

   - NOPREP — Disables ADP for the attribute. When ADP is off, the NOPREP value is ignored.

     You can specify NOPREP for a nested column, but not for an attribute in a nested column. If you specify NOPREP for an attribute in a nested column when ADP is on, CREATE_MODEL will return an error.

2. You can obtain information about a model by querying the data dictionary views.

   ```
   ALL/USER/DBA_MINING_MODELS
   ALL/USER/DBA_MINING_MODEL_ATTRIBUTES
   ALL/USER/DBA_MINING_MODEL_SETTINGS
   ```

3. You can obtain information about model attributes by querying the model details.

   ```
   dbms_data_mining.get_model_details_algorithm (model_name)
   ```

4. The naming rules for models are more restrictive than the naming rules for most database schema objects. A model name must satisfy the following additional requirements:

   - It must be 25 or fewer characters long.
   - It must be a nonquoted identifier. Oracle requires that nonquoted identifiers contain only alphanumeric characters, the underscore (_), dollar sign ($), and pound sign (#); the initial character must be alphabetic. Oracle strongly discourages the use of the dollar sign and pound sign in nonquoted literals.

   Naming requirements for schema objects are fully documented in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.

Examples

The first example builds a classification model using the Support Vector Machine algorithm.

```
-- Create the settings table
CREATE TABLE svm_model_settings (
  setting_name  VARCHAR2(30),
  setting_value VARCHAR2(30));

-- Populate the settings table
-- Specify SVM. By default, Naive Bayes is used for classification.
-- Specify ADP. By default, ADP is not used.
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO svm_model_settings (setting_name, setting_value) VALUES
     (dbms_data_mining.algo_name, dbms_data_mining.algo_support_vector_machines);
  INSERT INTO svm_model_settings (setting_name, setting_value) VALUES
     (dbms_data_mining.prep_auto,dbms_data_mining.prep_auto_on);
  COMMIT;
END;
/
-- Create the model using the specified settings
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING.CREATE_MODEL(
    model_name          => 'svm_model',
    mining_function     => dbms_data_mining.classification,
    data_table_name     => 'mining_data_build_v',
    case_id_column_name => 'cust_id',
    target_column_name  => 'affinity_card',
    settings_table_name => 'svm_model_settings');
END;
/
```

You can display the model settings with the following query.

```
SELECT * FROM user_mining_model_settings
       WHERE model_name IN 'SVM_MODEL';
```

```
MODEL_NAME     SETTING_NAME            SETTING_VALUE                  SETTING
-------------  ----------------------  -----------------------------  -------
SVM_MODEL      ALGO_NAME               ALGO_SUPPORT_VECTOR_MACHINES  INPUT
SVM_MODEL      SVMS_KERNEL_CACHE_SIZE  50000000                       DEFAULT
SVM_MODEL      SVMS_ACTIVE_LEARNING    SVMS_AL_ENABLE                 DEFAULT
SVM_MODEL      SVMS_STD_DEV            3.004524                       DEFAULT
SVM_MODEL      PREP_AUTO               ON                             INPUT
SVM_MODEL      SVMS_COMPLEXITY_FACTOR  1.887389                       DEFAULT
SVM_MODEL      SVMS_KERNEL_FUNCTION    SVMS_GAUSSIAN                  DEFAULT
SVM_MODEL      SVMS_CONV_TOLERANCE     .001                           DEFAULT
```

The second example creates an anomaly detection model. Anomaly detection uses SVM classification without a target. This example uses the same settings table created for the SVM classification model in the first example.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING.CREATE_MODEL(
    model_name          => 'anomaly_detect_model',
    mining_function     => dbms_data_mining.classification,
    data_table_name     => 'mining_data_build_v',
    case_id_column_name => 'cust_id',
    target_column_name  => null,
    settings_table_name => 'svm_model_settings');
END;
/
```

This query shows that the models created in these examples are the only ones in your schema.

```
SELECT model_name, mining_function, algorithm FROM user_mining_models;

MODEL_NAME              MINING_FUNCTION      ALGORITHM
----------------------  -------------------- ------------------------------
SVM_MODEL               CLASSIFICATION       SUPPORT_VECTOR_MACHINES
ANOMALY_DETECT_MODEL    CLASSIFICATION       SUPPORT_VECTOR_MACHINES
```

This query shows that only the SVM classification model has a target.

```
SELECT model_name, attribute_name, attribute_type, target
       FROM user_mining_model_attributes
       WHERE target = 'YES';

MODEL_NAME          ATTRIBUTE_NAME   ATTRIBUTE_TYPE     TARGET
------------------  ---------------  -----------------  ------
SVM_MODEL           AFFINITY_CARD    CATEGORICAL         YES
```

DROP_MODEL Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified mining model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.DROP_MODEL (model_name IN VARCHAR2,
                             force      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 45–42 DROP_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`model_name`	Name of the mining model in the form [*schema_name.*]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
`force`	Forces the mining model to be dropped even if it is invalid. A mining model may be invalid if a serious system error interrupted the model build process.

Usage Note

To drop a mining model, you must be the owner or you must have the `DROP ANY MINING MODEL` privilege. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about privileges for data mining.

Example

You can use the following command to delete a valid mining model named `nb_sh_clas_sample` that exists in your schema.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING.DROP_MODEL(model_name => 'nb_sh_clas_sample');
END;
/
```

EXPORT_MODEL Procedure

This procedure exports the specified data mining models to a dump file set. To import the models from the dump file set, use the IMPORT_MODEL Procedure. EXPORT_MODEL and IMPORT_MODEL use Oracle Data Pump technology.

When Oracle Data Pump is used to export/import an entire schema or database, the mining models in the schema or database are included. However, EXPORT_MODEL and IMPORT_MODEL are the only utilities that support the export/import of individual models.

See Also:

Oracle Database Utilities for information about Oracle Data Pump

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for more information about exporting and importing mining models

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.EXPORT_MODEL (
      filename          IN VARCHAR2,
      directory         IN VARCHAR2,
      model_filter      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      filesize          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      operation         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      remote_link       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      jobname           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–43 EXPORT_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
filename	Name of the dump file set to which the models should be exported. The name must be unique within the schema. The dump file set can contain one or more files. The number of files in a dump file set is determined by the size of the models being exported (both metadata and data) and a specified or estimated maximum file size. You can specify the file size in the filesize parameter, or you can use the operation parameter to cause Oracle Data Pump to estimate the file size. If the size of the models to export is greater than the maximum file size, one or more additional files are created. When the export operation completes successfully, the name of the dump file set is automatically expanded to *filename01.dmp*, even if there is only one file in the dump set. If there are additional files, they are named sequentially as *filename02.dmp*, *filename03.dmp*, and so forth.
directory	Name of a pre-defined directory object that specifies where the dump file set should be created. The exporting user must have read/write privileges on the directory object and on the file system directory that it identifies. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about directory objects.

Table 45–43 (Cont.) EXPORT_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_filter	Optional parameter that specifies which model or models to export. If you do not specify a value for model_filter, all models in the schema are exported. You can also specify NULL (the default) or 'ALL' to export all models. You can export individual models by name and groups of models based on mining function or algorithm. For instance, you could export all regression models or all Naive Bayes models. Examples are provided in Table 45–44.
filesize	Optional parameter that specifies the maximum size of a file in the dump file set. The size may be specified in bytes, kilobytes (K), megabytes (M), or gigabytes (G). The default size is 50 MB. If the size of the models to export is larger than filesize, one or more additional files are created within the dump set. See the description of the filename parameter for more information.
operation	Optional parameter that specifies whether or not to estimate the size of the files in the dump set. By default the size is not estimated and the value of the filesize parameter determines the size of the files. You can specify either of the following values for operation: ■ 'EXPORT' — Export all or the specified models. (Default) ■ 'ESTIMATE' — Estimate the size of the exporting models.
remote_link	Optional parameter that specifies the name of a database link to a remote system. The default value is NULL. A database link is a schema object in a local database that enables access to objects in a remote database. When you specify a value for remote_link, you can export the models in the remote database. The EXP_FULL_DATABASE role is required for exporting the remote models. The EXP_FULL_DATABASE privilege, the CREATE DATABASE LINK privilege, and other privileges may also be required.
jobname	Optional parameter that specifies the name of the export job. By default, the name has the form *username*_exp_*nnnn*, where *nnnn* is a number. For example, a job name in the SCOTT schema might be SCOTT_exp_134. If you specify a job name, it must be unique within the schema. The maximum length of the job name is 30 characters. A log file for the export job, named *jobname.log*, is created in the same directory as the dump file set.

Usage Notes

The model_filter parameter specifies which models to export. You can list the models by name, or you can specify all models that have the same mining function or algorithm. You can query the USER_MINING_MODELS view to list the models in your schema.

```
SQL> describe user_mining_models
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 MODEL_NAME                                NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)
 MINING_FUNCTION                                    VARCHAR2(30)
 ALGORITHM                                          VARCHAR2(30)
 CREATION_DATE                             NOT NULL DATE
 BUILD_DURATION                                     NUMBER
 MODEL_SIZE                                         NUMBER
 COMMENTS                                           VARCHAR2(4000)
```

Examples of model filters are provided in Table 45–44.

Table 45–44 Sample Values for the Model Filter Parameter

Sample Value	Meaning
`'mymodel'`	Export the model named `mymodel`
`'name= ''mymodel'''`	Export the model named `mymodel`
`'name IN (''mymodel2'',''mymodel3'')'`	Export the models named `mymodel2` and `mymodel3`
`'ALGORITHM_NAME = ''NAIVE_BAYES'''`	Export all Naive Bayes models. See Table 45–5 for a list of algorithm names.
`'FUNCTION_NAME =''CLASSIFICATION'''`	Export all classification models. See Table 45–3 for a list of mining functions.

Examples

1. The following statement exports all the models in the `DMUSER3` schema to a dump file set called `models_out` in the directory `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/log`. This directory is mapped to a directory object called `DATA_PUMP_DIR`. The `DMUSER3` user has read/write access to the directory and to the directory object.

```
SQL>execute dbms_data_mining.export_model ('models_out', 'DATA_PUMP_DIR');
```

   You can exit SQL*Plus and list the resulting dump file and log file.

```
SQL>EXIT
>cd $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/log
>ls
>DMUSER3_exp_1027.log  models_out01.dmp
```

2. The following example uses the same directory object and is executed by the same user.This example exports the models called `NMF_SH_SAMPLE` and `SVMR_SH_REGR_SAMPLE` to a different dump file set in the same directory.

```
SQL>EXECUTE DBMS_DATA_MINING.EXPORT_MODEL ( 'models2_out', 'DATA_PUMP_DIR',
            'name in (''NMF_SH_SAMPLE'', ''SVMR_SH_REGR_SAMPLE'')');
SQL>EXIT
>cd $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/log
>ls
>DMUSER3_exp_1027.log  models_out01.dmp
 DMUSER3_exp_924.log  models2_out01.dmp
```

3. The following examples show how to export models with specific algorithm and mining function names.

```
SQL>EXECUTE DBMS_DATA_MINING.EXPORT_MODEL('algo.dmp','DM_DUMP',
        'ALGORITHM_NAME IN (''O_CLUSTER'',''GENERALIZED_LINEAR_MODEL'',
        ''SUPPORT_VECTOR_MACHINES'',''NAIVE_BAYES'')');

SQL>EXECUTE DBMS_DATA_MINING.EXPORT_MODEL('func.dmp', 'DM_DUMP',
        'FUNCTION_NAME IN (CLASSIFICATION,CLUSTERING,FEATURE_EXTRACTION)');
```

GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function

This table function returns the rules produced by an association model.

You can specify filtering criteria to cause GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES to return a subset of the rules. Filtering criteria can improve the performance of the table function. If the number of rules is large, the greatest performance improvement will result from specifying the topn parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES (
   model_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   topn                  IN NUMBER                 DEFAULT NULL,
   rule_id               IN NUMBER (38)            DEFAULT NULL,
   min_confidence        IN NUMBER                 DEFAULT NULL,
   min_support           IN NUMBER                 DEFAULT NULL,
   max_rule_length       IN NUMBER (38)            DEFAULT NULL,
   min_rule_length       IN NUMBER (38)            DEFAULT NULL,
   sort_order            IN ORA_MINING_VARCHAR2_NT DEFAULT NULL,
   antecedent_items      IN DM_ITEMS               DEFAULT NULL,
   consequent_items      IN DM_ITEMS               DEFAULT NULL,
   min_lift              IN NUMBER                 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN DM_RULES PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–45 GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used. This is the only required parameter of GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES. All other parameters specify optional filters on the rules to return.
topn	Return the *n* top rules ordered by confidence and then support, both descending. If you specify a sort order, the top *n* rules are derived after the sort is performed. If topn is specified and no maximum or minimum rule length is specified, then the only columns allowed in the sort order are RULE_CONFIDENCE and RULE_SUPPORT. If topn is specified and a maximum or minimum rule length *is* specified, then RULE_CONFIDENCE, RULE_SUPPORT, and NUMBER_OF_ITEMS are allowed in the sort order.
rule_id	Identifier of the rule to return. If you specify a value for rule_id, do not specify values for the other filtering parameters.
min_confidence	Return the rules with confidence greater than or equal to this number.
min_support	Return the rules with support greater than or equal to this number.
max_rule_length	Return the rules with a length less than or equal to this number. Rule length refers to the number of items in the rule (See NUMBER_OF_ITEMS in Table 45–46). For example, in the rule A=>B (if A, then B), the number of items is 2. If max_rule_length is specified, then the NUMBER_OF_ITEMS column is permitted in the sort order.

Table 45–45 (Cont.) GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
min_rule_length	Return the rules with a length greater than or equal to this number. See max_rule_length for a description of rule length. If min_rule_length is specified, then the NUMBER_OF_ITEMS column is permitted in the sort order.
sort_order	Sort the rules by the values in one or more of the returned columns. Specify one or more column names, each followed by ASC for ascending order or DESC for descending order. (See Table 45–46, " GET_ASSOCIATION RULES Function Return Values" for the column names.) For example, to sort the result set in descending order first by the NUMBER_OF_ITEMS column, then by the RULE_CONFIDENCE column, you would specify: ORA_MINING_VARCHAR2_NT('NUMBER_OF_ITEMS DESC', 'RULE_CONFIDENCE DESC') If you specify topn, the results will vary depending on the sort order. By default, the results are sorted by confidence in descending order, then by support in descending order.
antecedent_items	Return the rules with these items in the antecedent.
consequent_items	Return the rules with this item in the consequent.
min_lift	Return the rules with lift greater than or equal to this number.

Return Values

The object type returned by GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES is described in Table 45–46. For descriptions of each field, see the Usage Notes.

Table 45–46 GET_ASSOCIATION RULES Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_RULES	A set of rows of type DM_RULE. The rows have the following columns: (rule_id INTEGER, antecedent DM_PREDICATES, consequent DM_PREDICATES, rule_support NUMBER, rule_confidence NUMBER, rule_lift NUMBER, antecedent_support NUMBER, consequent_support NUMBER, number_of_items INTEGER) The antecedent and consequent columns each return nested tables of type DM_PREDICATES. The rows, of type DM_PREDICATE, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), conditional_operator CHAR(2)/*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/, attribute_num_value NUMBER, attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_support NUMBER, attribute_confidence NUMBER)

Usage Notes

1. This table function pipes out rows of type DM_RULES. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.
2. The ORA_MINING_VARCHAR2_NT type is defined as a table of VARCHAR2(4000).
3. The columns returned by GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES are described as follows. (See Table 45–46 for the DM_RULE column data types.)

Column in DM_RULES	Description
rule_id	Unique identifier for the rule
antecedent	The independent condition in the rule. When this condition exists, the dependent condition in the consequent also exists. The condition is a combination of attribute values called a predicate (DM_PREDICATE). The predicate specifies a condition for each attribute. The condition may specify equality (=), inequality (<>), greater than (>), less than (<), greater than or equal to (>=), or less than or equal to (<=) a given value. Support and confidence for each attribute condition in the antecedent is returned in the predicate. Support is the number of transactions that satisfy the antecedent. Confidence is the likelihood that a transaction will satisfy the antecedent. **Note:** The occurence of the attribute as a DM_PREDICATE indicates the presence of the item in the transaction. The actual value for attribute_num_value or attribute_str_value is meaningless. For example, the following predicate indicates that 'Mouse Pad' is present in the transaction *even though* the attribute value is NULL. `DM_PREDICATE('PROD_NAME', 'Mouse Pad', '= ', NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL))`
consequent	The dependent condition in the rule. This condition exists when the antecedent exists. The consequent, like the antecedent, is a predicate (DM_PREDICATE). Support and confidence for each attribute condition in the consequent is returned in the predicate. Support is the number of transactions that satisfy the consequent. Confidence is the likelihood that a transaction will satisfy the consequent.
rule_support	The number of transactions that satisfy the rule.
rule_confidence	The likelihood of a transaction satisfying the rule.
rule_lift	The degree of improvement in the prediction over random chance when the rule is satisfied.
antecedent_support	The ratio of the number of transactions that satisfy the antecedent to the total number of transactions.
consequent_support	The ratio of the number of transactions that satisfy the consequent to the total number of transactions.
number_of_items	The total number of attributes referenced in the antecedent and consequent of the rule.

Examples

The following example demonstrates an Association model build followed by several invocations of the GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES table function.

```
-- prepare a settings table to override default settings
```

```
CREATE TABLE market_settings AS
SELECT *
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_DEFAULT_SETTINGS)
 WHERE setting_name LIKE 'ASSO_%';
BEGIN
-- update the value of the minimum confidence
UPDATE market_settings
   SET setting_value = TO_CHAR(0.081)
 WHERE setting_name = DBMS_DATA_MINING.asso_min_confidence;

-- build an AR model
DBMS_DATA_MINING.CREATE_MODEL(
  model_name => 'market_model',
  function => DBMS_DATA_MINING.ASSOCIATION,
  data_table_name => 'market_build',
  case_id_column_name => 'item_id',
  target_column_name => NULL,
  settings_table_name => 'market_settings');
END;
/
-- View the (unformatted) rules
SELECT rule_id, antecedent, consequent, rule_support,
       rule_confidence
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES('market_model'));
```

In the previous example, you view all rules. To view just the top 20 rules, use the following statement.

```
-- View the top 20 (unformatted) rules
SELECT rule_id, antecedent, consequent, rule_support,
       rule_confidence
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES('market_model', 20));
```

The following query uses the association model `AR_SH_SAMPLE`, which is created from one of the Oracle Data Mining sample programs. (See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about the sample programs.)

```
SELECT * FROM TABLE (
   DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES (
      'AR_SH_SAMPLE', 10, NULL, 0.5, 0.01, 2, 1,
         ORA_MINING_VARCHAR2_NT (
         'NUMBER_OF_ITEMS DESC', 'RULE_CONFIDENCE DESC', 'RULE_SUPPORT DESC'),
         DM_ITEMS(DM_ITEM('CUSTPRODS', 'Mouse Pad', 1, NULL),
                  DM_ITEM('CUSTPRODS', 'Standard Mouse', 1, NULL)),
         DM_ITEMS(DM_ITEM('CUSTPRODS', 'Extension Cable', 1, NULL))));
```

The query returns three rules, shown as follows.

```
13  DM_PREDICATES(
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Mouse Pad', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL),
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Standard Mouse', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL))
    DM_PREDICATES(
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Extension Cable', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL))
    .15532      .84393   2.7075     .18404     .3117   2

11  DM_PREDICATES(
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Standard Mouse', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL))
    DM_PREDICATES(
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Extension Cable', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL))
    .18085      .56291   1.8059     .32128     .3117   1
```

```
9   DM_PREDICATES(
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Mouse Pad', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL))
    DM_PREDICATES(
       DM_PREDICATE('CUSTPRODS', 'Extension Cable', '= ', 1, NULL, NULL, NULL))
      .17766    .55116   1.7682     .32234     .3117   1
```

GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS Function

This table function returns a set of rows that represent the frequent itemsets from an Association model. For a detailed description of frequent itemsets, consult *Oracle Data Mining Concepts*.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS (
    model_name          IN VARCHAR2,
    topn                IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
    max_itemset_length  IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN DM_ITEMSETS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–47 GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`model_name`	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
`topn`	When not `NULL`, return the top *n* rows ordered by support in descending order
`max_itemset_length`	Maximum length of an item set.

Return Values

Table 45–48 GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS Function Return Values

Return Value	Description

`DM_ITEMSETS`	A set of rows of type `DM_ITEMSET`. The rows have the following columns:
	`(itemsets_id NUMBER,`
	`items DM_ITEMS,`
	`support NUMBER,`
	`number_of_items NUMBER)`
	The `items` column returns a nested table of type `DM_ITEMS`. The rows have type `DM_ITEM`:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_num_value NUMBER,`
	`attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000))`

Usage Notes

This table function pipes out rows of type `DM_ITEMSETS`. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.

Examples

The following example demonstrates an Association model build followed by an invocation of `GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS` table function from Oracle SQL.

```
-- prepare a settings table to override default settings
CREATE TABLE market_settings AS
```

```
    SELECT *
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_DEFAULT_SETTINGS)
 WHERE setting_name LIKE 'ASSO_%';
BEGIN
-- update the value of the minimum confidence
UPDATE market_settings
   SET setting_value = TO_CHAR(0.081)
 WHERE setting_name = DBMS_DATA_MINING.asso_min_confidence;

/* build a AR model */
DBMS_DATA_MINING.CREATE_MODEL(
  model_name           => 'market_model',
  function             => DBMS_DATA_MINING.ASSOCIATION,
  data_table_name      => 'market_build',
  case_id_column_name  => 'item_id',
  target_column_name   => NULL,
  settings_table_name  => 'market_settings');
END;
/

-- View the (unformatted) Itemsets from SQL*Plus
SELECT itemset_id, items, support, number_of_items
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS('market_model'));
```

In the example above, you view all itemsets. To view just the top 20 itemsets, use the following statement:

```
-- View the top 20 (unformatted) Itemsets from SQL*Plus
SELECT itemset_id, items, support, number_of_items
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_FREQUENT_ITEMSETS('market_model', 20));
```

GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX Function

This function returns the rows of the default scoring matrix associated with the specified model.

By default, this function returns the scoring matrix that was added to the model with the ADD_COST_MATRIX procedure. If you wish to obtain the cost matrix used to create a model, specify cost_matrix_type_create as the matrix_type. See Table 45–49.

See also ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX (
      model_name        IN VARCHAR2,
      matrix_type       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT cost_matrix_type_score)
RETURN DM_COST_MATRIX PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–49 GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
matrix_type	The type of cost matrix. COST_MATRIX_TYPE_SCORE — cost matrix used for scoring. (Default.) COST_MATRIX_TYPE_CREATE — cost matrix used to create the model (Decision Tree only).

Return Values

Table 45–50 GET_MODEL_COST_MATRIX Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_COST_MATRIX	A set of rows of type DM_COST_ELEMENT. The rows have the following columns: actual VARCHAR2(4000), NUMBER, predicted VARCHAR2(4000), cost NUMBER)

Usage Notes

Only Decision Tree models can be built with a cost matrix. If you want to build a Decision Tree model with a cost matrix, specify the cost matrix table name in the CLAS_COST_TABLE_NAME setting in the settings table for the model. See Table 45–7, " Mining Function Settings".

The cost matrix used to create a Decision Tree model becomes the default scoring matrix for the model. If you want to specify different costs for scoring, you can modify the values in the cost matrix table or you can use the REMOVE_COST_MATRIX procedure to remove the cost matrix and the ADD_COST_MATRIX procedure to add a new one.

Example

This example returns the scoring cost matrix associated with the Naive Bayes model NB_SH_CLAS_SAMPLE.

```
column actual format a10
column predicted format a10
SELECT *
    FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.get_model_cost_matrix('nb_sh_clas_sample'))
    ORDER BY predicted, actual;

ACTUAL     PREDICTED   COST
---------- ---------- -----
0          0            .00
1          0            .75
0          1            .25
1          1            .00
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of an Attribute Importance model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI (
  model_name          IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DM_RANKED_ATTRIBUTES PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–51 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–52 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_RANKED_ATTRIBUTES	A set of rows of type DM_RANKED_ATTRIBUTE. The rows have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000, attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), importance_value NUMBER, rank NUMBER(38))

Examples

The following example returns model details for the attribute importance model AI_SH_sample, which was created by the sample program dmaidemo.sql. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

```
SELECT attribute_name, importance_value, rank
    FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_AI('AI_SH_sample'))
    ORDER BY RANK;

ATTRIBUTE_NAME                          IMPORTANCE_VALUE       RANK
--------------------------------------- ---------------- ----------
HOUSEHOLD_SIZE                                .151685183          1
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                           .145294546          2
YRS_RESIDENCE                                  .07838928          3
AGE                                           .075027496          4
Y_BOX_GAMES                                   .063039952          5
EDUCATION                                     .059605314          6
HOME_THEATER_PACKAGE                          .056458722          7
OCCUPATION                                    .054652937          8
CUST_GENDER                                   .035264741          9
BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION                       .019204751         10
PRINTER_SUPPLIES                                       0         11
OS_DOC_SET_KANJI                             -.00050013         12
FLAT_PANEL_MONITOR                           -.00509564         13
BULK_PACK_DISKETTES                          -.00540822         14
```

```
COUNTRY_NAME                                -.01201116          15
CUST_INCOME_LEVEL                           -.03951311          16
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide statistics about the clusters produced by an Expectation Maximization model.

By default, the EM algorithm groups components into high-level clusters, and GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM returns only the high-level clusters with their hierarchies. Alternatively, you can configure EM to disable the grouping of components into high-level clusters. In this case, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM returns the components themselves as clusters with their hierarchies. See Table 45–10, " Expectation Maximization Settings for Data Preparation and Analysis".

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM (
          model_name          VARCHAR2,
          cluster_id          NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
          attribute           VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
          centroid            NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
          histogram           NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
          rules               NUMBER    DEFAULT 2,
          attribute_subname   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
          topn_attributes     NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN DM_CLUSTERS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–53 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
cluster_id	The ID of a cluster in the model. When a valid cluster ID is specified, only the details of this cluster are returned. Otherwise the details for all clusters are returned.
attribute	The name of an attribute. When a valid attribute name is specified, only the details of this attribute are returned. Otherwise the details for all attributes are returned
centroid	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 1 — Details about centroids are returned (default) ■ 0 — Details about centroids are not returned
histogram	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 1 — Details about histograms are returned (default) ■ 0 — Details about histograms are not returned
rules	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 2 — Details about rules are returned (default) ■ 1 — Rule summaries are returned ■ 0 — No information about rules is returned

Table 45–53 (Cont.) GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute_subname	The name of a nested attribute. The full name of a nested attribute has the form: *attribute_name.attribute_subname* where *attribute_name* is the name of the column and *attribute_subname* is the name of the nested attribute in that column. If the attribute is not nested, attribute_subname is null.
topn_attributes	Restricts the number of attributes returned in the centroid, histogram, and rules objects. Only the *n* attributes with the highest confidence values in the rules are returned. If the number of attributes included in the rules is less than *topn*, then up to *n* additional attributes in alphabetical order are returned. If both the attribute and topn_attributes parameters are specified, then topn_attributes is ignored.

Return Values

Table 45–54 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_CLUSTERS	A set of rows of type DM_CLUSTER. The rows have the following columns: (id NUMBER, cluster_id VARCHAR2(4000), record_count NUMBER, parent NUMBER, tree_level NUMBER, dispersion NUMBER, split_predicate DM_PREDICATES, child DM_CHILDREN, centroid DM_CENTROIDS, histogram DM_HISTOGRAMS, rule DM_RULES) Note: The Expectation Maximization algorithm uses all the fields except dispersion and split_predicate. The split_predicate column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_PREDICATES. Each row, of type DM_PREDICATE, has the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), conditional_operator CHAR(2) /*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/, attribute_num_value NUMBER, attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_support NUMBER, attribute_confidence NUMBER) The child column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_CHILDREN. The rows, of type DM_CHILD, have a single column of type NUMBER, which contains the identifiers of each child.

Table 45–54 (Cont.) GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
	The centroid column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_CENTROIDS. The rows, of type DM_CENTROID, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), mean NUMBER, mode_value VARCHAR2(4000), variance NUMBER) The histogram column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_HISTOGRAMS. The rows, of type DM_HISTOGRAM_BIN, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), bin_id NUMBER, lower_bound NUMBER, upper_bound NUMBER, label VARCHAR2(4000), count NUMBER) The rule column of DM_CLUSTER returns a single row of type DM_RULE. The columns are: (rule_id INTEGER, antecedent DM_PREDICATES, consequent DM_PREDICATES, rule_support NUMBER, rule_confidence NUMBER, rule_lift NUMBER, antecedent_support NUMBER, consequent_support NUMBER, number_of_items INTEGER) The antecedent and consequent columns each return nested tables of type DM_PREDICATES. The rows, of type DM_PREDICATE, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), conditional_operator CHAR(2) /*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/, attribute_num_value NUMBER, attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_support NUMBER, attribute_confidence NUMBER)

Usage Notes

1. This table function pipes out rows of type DM_CLUSTERS. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.
2. GET_MODEL_DETAILS functions preserve model transparency by automatically reversing the transformations applied during the build process. Thus the attributes returned in the model details are the original attributes (or a close approximation of the original attributes) used to build the model.
3. When cluster statistics are disabled (EMCS_CLUSTER_STATISTICS is set to EMCS_CLUS_STATS_DISABLE), GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM does not return centroids, histograms, or rules. Only taxonomy (hierarchy) and cluster counts are returned.

4. For descriptions of predicates (`DM_PREDICATE`) and rules (`DM_RULE`), see GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function.

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide details about the parameters of an Expectation Maximization model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP (
          model_name         VARCHAR2)
RETURN DM_EM_COMPONENT_SET PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–55 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–56 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_EM_COMPONENT_SET	A set of rows of type DM_EM_COMPONENT. The rows have the following columns: (info_type VARCHAR2(30), component_id NUMBER, cluster_id NUMBER, attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), covariate_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_value VARCHAR2(4000), value NUMBER)

Usage Notes

1. This table function pipes out rows of type DM_EM_COMPONENT. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.

   The columns in each row returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_COMP are described as follows:

Column in DM_EM_COMPONENT	Description
info_type	The type of information in the row. The following information types are supported: ■ cluster ■ prior ■ mean ■ covariance ■ frequency
component_id	Unique identifier of a component

Column in DM_EM_COMPONENT	Description
cluster_id	Unique identifier of the high-level leaf cluster for each component
attribute_name	Name of an original attribute or a derived feature ID. The derived feature ID is used in models built on data with nested columns. The derived feature definitions can be obtained from the GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ Function.
covariate_name	Name of an original attribute or a derived feature ID used in variance/covariance definition
attribute_value	Categorical value or bin interval for binned numerical attributes
value	Encodes different information depending on the value of info_type, as follows: ■ cluster — The value field is NULL ■ prior — The value field returns the component prior ■ mean — The value field returns the mean of the attribute specified in attribute_name ■ covariance — The value field returns the covariance of the attributes specified in attribute_name and covariate_name. Using the same attribute in attribute_name and covariate_name, returns the variance. ■ frequency— The value field returns the multivalued Bernoulli frequency parameter for the attribute/value combination specified by attribute_name and attribute_value See Usage Note 2 for details.

2. The following table shows which fields are used for each info_type. The blank cells represent NULLs.

info_type	component_id	cluster_id	attribute_name	covariate_name	attribute_value	value
cluster	X	X				
prior	X	X				X
mean	X	X	X			X
covariance	X	X	X	X		X
frequency	X	X	X		X	X

3. GET_MODEL_DETAILS functions preserve model transparency by automatically reversing the transformations applied during the build process. Thus the attributes returned in the model details are the original attributes (or a close approximation of the original attributes) used to build the model.

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide statistics about the projections produced by an Expectation Maximization model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ (
          model_name          VARCHAR2 )
RETURN DM_EM_PROJECTION_SET PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–57 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–58 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_EM_PROJECTION_SET	A set of rows of type DM_EM_PROJECTION. The rows have the following columns: (feature_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_value VARCHAR2(4000), coefficient NUMBER) See Usage Notes for details.

Usage Notes

1. This table function pipes out rows of type DM_EM_PROJECTION. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.

   The columns in each row returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM_PROJ are described as follows:

Column in DM_EM_PROJECTION	Description
feature_name	Name of a derived feature. The feature maps to the attribute_name returned by the GET_MODEL_DETAILS_EM Function.
attribute_name	Name of a column in the build data
attribute_subname	Subname in a nested column
attribute_value	Categorical value.
coefficient	Projection coefficient. The representation is sparse; only the non-zero coefficients are returned.

2. `GET_MODEL_DETAILS` functions preserve model transparency by automatically reversing the transformations applied during the build process. Thus the attributes returned in the model details are the original attributes (or a close approximation of the original attributes) used to build the model.

   The coefficients are related to the transformed, not the original, attributes. When returned directly with the model details, the coefficients may not provide meaningful information. If you want `GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM` to transform the coefficients such that they relate to the original attributes, set the `reverse_coef` parameter to 1.

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM Function

This table function returns the coefficient statistics for a Generalized Linear Model.

The same set of statistics is returned for both linear and logistic regression, but statistics that do not apply to the mining function are returned as NULL. For more details, see the Usage Notes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM (
             model_name             VARCHAR2)
RETURN DM_GLM_COEFF_SET PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–59 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–60 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_GLM_COEFF_SET	A set of rows of type DM_GLM_COEFF. The rows have the following columns: (class VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_value VARCHAR2(4000), feature_expression VARCHAR2(4000), coefficient NUMBER, std_error NUMBER, test_statistic NUMBER, p_value NUMBER, VIF NUMBER, std_coefficient NUMBER, lower_coeff_limit NUMBER, upper_coeff_limit NUMBER, exp_coefficient BINARY_DOUBLE, exp_lower_coeff_limit BINARY_DOUBLE, exp_upper_coeff_limit BINARY_DOUBLE)

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLM returns a row of statistics for each attribute and one extra row for the intercept, which is identified by a null value in the attribute name. Each row has the DM_GLM_COEFF datatype. The statistics are described in Table 45–61.

Table 45–61 DM_GLM_COEFF Datatype Description

Column	Description
class	The non-reference target class for logistic regression. The model is built to predict the probability of this class. The other class (the reference class) is specified in the model setting GLMS_REFERENCE_CLASS_NAME. See Table 45–14, " GLM Settings". For linear regression, class is null.
attribute_name	The attribute name when there is no subname, or first part of the attribute name when there is a subname. The value of attribute_name is also the name of the column in the case table that is the source for this attribute. For the intercept, attribute_name is null. Intercepts are equivalent to the bias term in SVM models.
attribute_subname	The name of an attribute in a nested table. The full name of a nested attribute has the form: *attribute_name.attribute_subname* where *attribute_name* is the name of the nested column in the case table that is the source for this attribute. If the attribute is not nested, attribute_subname is null. If the attribute is an intercept, both the attribute_name and the attribute_subname are null.
attribute_value	The value of the attribute (categorical attribute only). For numerical attributes, attribute_value is null.
feature_expression	The feature name constructed by the algorithm when feature selection is enabled. If feature selection is not enabled, the feature name is simply the fully-qualified attribute name (*attribute_name.attribute_subname* if the attribute is in a nested column). For categorical attributes, the algorithm constructs a feature name that has the following form: *fully-qualified_attribute_name.attribute_value* For numerical attributes, the algorithm constructs a name for the higher-order feature by subtracting the mean from each of the component attributes and taking the product of the resulting values: (*attrib1*-mean(*attrib1*))*(*attrib2*-mean(*attrib2*))*..... where *attrib1* and *attrib2* are fully-qualified attribute names.
coefficient	The linear coefficient estimate.
std_error	Standard error of the coefficient estimate.
test_statistic	For linear regression, the t-value of the coefficient estimate. For logistic regression, the Wald chi-square value of the coefficient estimate.
p-value	Probability of the test_statistic. Used to analyze the significance of specific attributes in the model.
VIF	Variance Inflation Factor. The value is zero for the intercept. For logistic regression, VIF is null.
std_coefficient	Standardized estimate of the coefficient.
lower_coeff_limit	Lower confidence bound of the coefficient.

Table 45–61 (Cont.) DM_GLM_COEFF Datatype Description

Column	Description
upper_coeff_limit	Upper confidence bound of the coefficient.
exp_coefficient	Exponentiated coefficient for logistic regression. For linear regression, exp_coefficient is null.
exp_lower_coeff_limit	Exponentiated coefficient for lower confidence bound of the coefficient for logistic regression. For linear regression, exp_lower_coeff_limit is null.
exp_upper_coeff_limit	Exponentiated coefficient for upper confidence bound of the coefficient for logistic regression. For linear regression, exp_lower_coeff_limit is null.

Usage Notes

Not all statistics are necessarily returned for each coefficient. Statistics will be null if:

- They do not apply to the mining function. For example, exp_coefficient does not apply to linear regression.
- They cannot be computed from a theoretical standpoint. For example, when ridge regression is enabled, the coefficient values are returned with no statistics except VIF if it is enabled. (For information on ridge regression, see Table 45–14, " GLM Settings".)
- They cannot be computed because of limitations in system resources.
- Their values would be infinity.

Examples

The following example returns some of the model details for the GLM regression model GLMR_SH_Regr_sample, which was created by the sample program dmglrdem.sql. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

```
SQL> SELECT *
   FROM (SELECT class, attribute_name, attribute_value, coefficient, std_error
              FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.get_model_details_glm(
                           'GLMR_SH_Regr_sample'))
           ORDER BY class, attribute_name, attribute_value)
     WHERE ROWNUM < 11;

CLASS     ATTRIBUTE_NAME      ATTRIBUTE_VALUE  COEFFICIENT  STD_ERROR
--------- ------------------  ---------------- -----------  ----------
          AFFINITY_CARD                         -.60686139   .531250033
          BULK_PACK_DISKETTES                   -1.9729645   .924531227
          COUNTRY_NAME        Argentina         -1.3340963  1.1942193
          COUNTRY_NAME        Australia           -.340504  5.13688361
          COUNTRY_NAME        Brazil             5.3855269  1.93197882
          COUNTRY_NAME        Canada            4.13393291  2.41283125
          COUNTRY_NAME        China              .74409259  3.59923638
          COUNTRY_NAME        Denmark           -2.5287879  3.18569293
          COUNTRY_NAME        France            -1.0908689  7.18471003
          COUNTRY_NAME        Germany           -1.7472166  2.53689456
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLOBAL Function

This table function returns statistics about the model as a whole. Global details are available for Generalized Linear Models, Association Rules, Singular Value Decomposition, and Expectation Maximization.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLOBAL (
      model_name     IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN DM_MODEL_GLOBAL_DETAILS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–62 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLOBAL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–63 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_GLOBAL Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_MODEL_GLOBAL_DETAILS	A collection of rows of type DM_MODEL_GLOBAL_DETAIL. The rows have the following columns: (global_detail_name VARCHAR2(30), global_detail_value NUMBER)

Global Details for GLM: Linear Regression

Table 45–64 Global Details for Linear Regression

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
MODEL_DF	Model degrees of freedom
MODEL_SUM_SQUARES	Model sum of squares
MODEL_MEAN_SQUARE	Model mean square
F_VALUE	Model *F* value statistic
MODEL_F_P_VALUE	Model *F* value probability
ERROR_DF	Error degrees of freedom
ERROR_SUM_SQUARES	Error sum of squares
ERROR_MEAN_SQUARE	Error mean square
CORRECTED_TOTAL_DF	Corrected total degrees of freedom
CORRECTED_TOT_SS	Corrected total sum of squares
ROOT_MEAN_SQ	Root mean square error
DEPENDENT_MEAN	Dependent mean
COEFF_VAR	Coefficient of variation

Table 45–64 (Cont.) Global Details for Linear Regression

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
R_SQ	R-Square
ADJUSTED_R_SQUARE	Adjusted R-Square
AIC	Akaike's information criterion
SBIC	Schwarz's Bayesian information criterion
GMSEP	Estimated mean square error of the prediction, assuming multivariate normality
HOCKING_SP	Hocking Sp statistic
J_P	JP statistic (the final prediction error)
NUM_PARAMS	Number of parameters (the number of coefficients, including the intercept)
NUM_ROWS	Number of rows
MODEL_CONVERGED	Whether or not the model converged. Value is 1 if it converged, or 0 if it did not converge
VALID_COVARIANCE_MATRIX	Valid covariance matrix. Value is 1 if the covariance matrix was computed, or 0 if it was not computed

Global Details for GLM: Logistic Regression

Table 45–65 Global Details for Logistic Regression

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
AIC_INTERCEPT	Akaike's criterion for the fit of the intercept only model
AIC_MODEL	Akaike's criterion for the fit of the intercept and the covariates (predictors) mode
SC_INTERCEPT	Schwarz's Criterion for the fit of the intercept only model
SC_MODEL	Schwarz's Criterion for the fit of the intercept and the covariates (predictors) model
NEG2_LL_INTERCEPT	-2 log likelihood of the intercept only model
NEG2_LL_MODEL	-2 log likelihood of the model
LR_DF	Likelihood ratio degrees of freedom
LR_CHI_SQ	Likelihood ratio chi-square value
LR_CHI_SQ_P_VALUE	Likelihood ratio chi-square probability value
PSEUDO_R_SQ_CS	Pseudo R-square Cox and Snell
PSEUDO_R_SQ_N	Pseudo R-square Nagelkerke
DEPENDENT_MEAN	Dependent mean
PCT_CORRECT	Percent of correct predictions
PCT_INCORRECT	Percent of incorrectly predicted rows
PCT_TIED	Percent of cases where probability for both cases is the same
NUM_PARAMS	Number of parameters (the number of coefficients, including the intercept)
NUM_ROWS	Number of rows

Table 45–65 (Cont.) Global Details for Logistic Regression

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
MODEL_CONVERGED	Whether or not the model converged. Value is 1if it converged, or 0 if it did not converge.
VALID_COVARIANCE_MATRIX	Valid covariance matrix. Value is 1 if the covariance matrix was computed, or 0 if the covariance matrix not computed

Note: When ridge regression is enabled, fewer global details are returned. For information about ridge, see *Oracle Data Mining Concepts*.

Global Detail for Association Rules

A single global detail is produced by an Association model.

Table 45–66 Global Detail for Association Rules

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
RULE_COUNT	The number of association rules in the model.

Global Details for Singular Value Decomposition

Table 45–67 Global Details for Singular Value Decomposition

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
NUM_COMPONENTS	Number of features (components) produced by the model
SUGGESTED_CUTOFF	Suggested cutoff that indicates how many of the top computed features capture most of the variance in the model. Using only the features below this cutoff would be a reasonable strategy for dimensionality reduction.

Global Details for Expectation Maximization

Table 45–68 Global Details for Expectation Maximization

GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME	Description
NUM_COMPONENTS	Number of components produced by the model
NUM_CLUSTERS	Number of clusters produced by the model
LOGLIKELIHOOD	Percent improvement in the value of the log likelihood function required to add a new component to the model.

Examples

The following example returns the global model details for the GLM regression model GLMR_SH_Regr_sample, which was created by the sample program dmglrdem.sql. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

```
SELECT *
  FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.get_model_details_global(
              'GLMR_SH_Regr_sample'))
ORDER BY global_detail_name;
GLOBAL_DETAIL_NAME             GLOBAL_DETAIL_VALUE
------------------------------ -------------------
```

```
ADJUSTED_R_SQUARE                .731412557
AIC                                5931.814
COEFF_VAR                        18.1711243
CORRECTED_TOTAL_DF                     1499
CORRECTED_TOT_SS                 278740.504
DEPENDENT_MEAN                       38.892
ERROR_DF                               1433
ERROR_MEAN_SQUARE                49.9440956
ERROR_SUM_SQUARES                71569.8891
F_VALUE                          62.8492452
GMSEP                             52.280819
HOCKING_SP                       .034877162
J_P                              52.1749319
MODEL_CONVERGED                           1
MODEL_DF                                 66
MODEL_F_P_VALUE                           0
MODEL_MEAN_SQUARE                3138.94871
MODEL_SUM_SQUARES                207170.615
NUM_PARAMS                               67
NUM_ROWS                               1500
ROOT_MEAN_SQ                     7.06711367
R_SQ                             .743238288
SBIC                             6287.79977
VALID_COVARIANCE_MATRIX                   1
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of a *k*-Means clustering model.

You can provide input to GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM to request specific information about the model, thus improving the performance of the query. If you do not specify filtering parameters, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM returns all the information about the model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM (
          model_name          VARCHAR2,
          cluster_id          NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
          attribute           VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
          centroid            NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
          histogram           NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
          rules               NUMBER    DEFAULT 2,
          attribute_subname   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
          topn_attributes     NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN DM_CLUSTERS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–69 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
cluster_id	The ID of a cluster in the model. When a valid cluster ID is specified, only the details of this cluster are returned. Otherwise the details for all clusters are returned.
attribute	The name of an attribute. When a valid attribute name is specified, only the details of this attribute are returned. Otherwise the details for all attributes are returned
centroid	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 1 — Details about centroids are returned (default) ■ 0 — Details about centroids are not returned
histogram	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 1 — Details about histograms are returned (default) ■ 0 — Details about histograms are not returned
rules	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 2 — Details about rules are returned (default) ■ 1 — Rule summaries are returned ■ 0 — No information about rules is returned
attribute_subname	The name of a nested attribute. The full name of a nested attribute has the form: *attribute_name.attribute_subname* where *attribute_name* is the name of the column and *attribute_subname* is the name of the nested attribute in that column. If the attribute is not nested, attribute_subname is null.

Table 45–69 (Cont.) GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
topn_attributes	Restricts the number of attributes returned in the centroid, histogram, and rules objects. Only the *n* attributes with the highest confidence values in the rules are returned. If the number of attributes included in the rules is less than *topn*, then up to *n* additional attributes in alphabetical order are returned. If both the attribute and topn_attributes parameters are specified, then topn_attributes is ignored.

Return Values

Table 45–70 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_CLUSTERS	A set of rows of type DM_CLUSTER. The rows have the following columns: (id NUMBER, cluster_id VARCHAR2(4000), record_count NUMBER, parent NUMBER, tree_level NUMBER, dispersion NUMBER, split_predicate DM_PREDICATES, child DM_CHILDREN, centroid DM_CENTROIDS, histogram DM_HISTOGRAMS, rule DM_RULE) The split_predicate column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_PREDICATES. Each row, of type DM_PREDICATE, has the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), conditional_operator CHAR(2) /*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/, attribute_num_value NUMBER, attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_support NUMBER, attribute_confidence NUMBER) The child column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_CHILDREN. The rows, of type DM_CHILD, have a single column of type NUMBER, which contains the identifiers of each child. The centroid column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_CENTROIDS. The rows, of type DM_CENTROID, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), mean NUMBER, mode_value VARCHAR2(4000), variance NUMBER)

Table 45–70 (Cont.) GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM Function Return Values

Return Value	Description

	The `histogram` column of `DM_CLUSTER` returns a nested table of type `DM_HISTOGRAMS`. The rows, of type `DM_HISTOGRAM_BIN`, have the following columns:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`bin_id NUMBER,`
	`lower_bound NUMBER,`
	`upper_bound NUMBER,`
	`label VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`count NUMBER)`
	The `rule` column of `DM_CLUSTER` returns a single row of type `DM_RULE`. The columns are:
	`(rule_id INTEGER,`
	`antecedent DM_PREDICATES,`
	`consequent DM_PREDICATES,`
	`rule_support NUMBER,`
	`rule_confidence NUMBER,`
	`rule_lift NUMBER,`
	`antecedent_support NUMBER,`
	`consequent_support NUMBER,`
	`number_of_items INTEGER)`
	The `antecedent` and `consequent` columns of `DM_RULE` each return nested tables of type `DM_PREDICATES`. The rows, of type `DM_PREDICATE`, have the following columns:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`conditional_operator CHAR(2)/*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/,`
	`attribute_num_value NUMBER,`
	`attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_support NUMBER,`
	`attribute_confidence NUMBER)`

Usage Notes

1. The table function pipes out rows of type `DM_CLUSTERS`. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.
2. For descriptions of predicates (`DM_PREDICATE`) and rules (`DM_RULE`), see GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function.

Examples

The following example returns model details for the *k*-Means clustering model `KM_SH_Clus_sample`, which was created by the sample program `dmkmdemo.sql`. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

```
SELECT T.id           clu_id,
       T.record_count rec_cnt,
       T.parent       parent,
       T.tree_level   tree_level,
       T.dispersion   dispersion
  FROM (SELECT *
          FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_KM(
                     'KM_SH_Clus_sample'))
```

```
       ORDER BY id) T
 WHERE ROWNUM < 6;

    CLU_ID    REC_CNT     PARENT TREE_LEVEL DISPERSION
---------- ---------- ---------- ---------- ----------
         1       1500                   1  5.9152211
         2        638          1          2 3.98458982
         3        862          1          2 5.83732097
         4        376          3          3 5.05192137
         5        486          3          3 5.42901522
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of a Naive Bayes model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB (
   model_name      IN       VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DM_NB_DETAILS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–71 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–72 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_NB_DETAILS	A set of rows of type DM_NB_DETAIL. The rows have the following columns: (target_attribute_name VARCHAR2(30), target_attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), target_attribute_num_value NUMBER, prior_probability NUMBER, conditionals DM_CONDITIONALS) The conditionals column of DM_NB_DETAIL returns a nested table of type DM_CONDITIONALS. The rows, of type DM_CONDITIONAL, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_num_value NUMBER, conditional_probability NUMBER)

Usage Notes

The table function pipes out rows of type DM_NB_DETAILS. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.

Examples

The following query is from the sample program dmnbdemo.sql. It returns model details about the model NB_SH_Clas_sample. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

The query creates labels from the bin boundary tables that were used to bin the training data. It replaces the attribute values with the labels. For numeric bins, the labels are (*lower_boundary*,*upper_boundary*]; for categorical bins, the label matches

the value it represents. (This method of categorical label representation will only work for cases where one value corresponds to one bin.) The target was not binned.

```
WITH
    bin_label_view AS (
    SELECT col, bin, (DECODE(bin,'1','[','(') || lv || ',' || val || ']') label
      FROM (SELECT col,
                   bin,
                   LAST_VALUE(val) OVER (
                   PARTITION BY col ORDER BY val
                   ROWS BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND 1 PRECEDING) lv,
                   val
              FROM nb_sh_sample_num)
   UNION ALL
   SELECT col, bin, val label
     FROM nb_sh_sample_cat
   ),
   model_details AS (
   SELECT T.target_attribute_name                                          tname,
         NVL(TO_CHAR(T.target_attribute_num_value,T.target_attribute_str_value))
tval,
          C.attribute_name                                                 pname,
          NVL(L.label, NVL(C.attribute_str_value, C.attribute_num_value)) pval,
          T.prior_probability                                            priorp,
          C.conditional_probability                                       condp
     FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NB('NB_SH_Clas_sample')) T,
          TABLE(T.conditionals) C,
          bin_label_view L
    WHERE C.attribute_name = L.col (+) AND
          (NVL(C.attribute_str_value,C.attribute_num_value) = L.bin(+))
   ORDER BY 1,2,3,4,5,6
   )
   SELECT tname, tval, pname, pval, priorp, condp
     FROM model_details
    WHERE ROWNUM < 11;

TNAME          TVAL PNAME                     PVAL           PRIORP   CONDP
-------------- ---- ------------------------- ------------- ------- -------
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       (24,30]         .6500   .1714
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       (30,35]         .6500   .1509
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       (35,40]         .6500   .1125
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       (40,46]         .6500   .1134
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       (46,53]         .6500   .1071
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       (53,90]         .6500   .1312
AFFINITY_CARD  0    AGE                       [17,24]         .6500   .2134
AFFINITY_CARD  0    BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION   0               .6500   .1500
AFFINITY_CARD  0    BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION   1               .6500   .8500
AFFINITY_CARD  0    BULK_PACK_DISKETTES       0               .6500   .3670
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of a Non-Negative Matrix Factorization model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF (
   model_name        IN        VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DM_NMF_FEATURE_SET PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–73 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–74 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF Function Return Values

Return Value	Description

DM_NMF_FEATURE_SET	A set of rows of DM_NMF_FEATURE. The rows have the following columns:
	`(feature_id NUMBER,`
	`mapped_feature_id VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_set DM_NMF_ATTRIBUTE_SET)`
	The attribute_set column of DM_NMF_FEATURE returns a nested table of type DM_NMF_ATTRIBUTE_SET. The rows, of type DM_NMF_ATTRIBUTE, have the following columns:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_value VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`coefficient NUMBER)`

Usage Notes

The table function pipes out rows of type DM_NMF_FEATURE_SET. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.

Examples

The following example returns model details for the feature extraction model NMF_SH_Sample, which was created by the sample program dmnmdemo.sql. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

```
SELECT * FROM (
SELECT F.feature_id,
       A.attribute_name,
       A.attribute_value,
       A.coefficient
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_NMF('NMF_SH_Sample')) F,
       TABLE(F.attribute_set) A
```

```
ORDER BY feature_id,attribute_name,attribute_value
) WHERE ROWNUM < 11;

FEATURE_ID ATTRIBUTE_NAME          ATTRIBUTE_VALUE          COEFFICIENT
---------- ----------------------  ---------------- --------------------
         1 AFFINITY_CARD                              .051208078859308
         1 AGE                                       .0390513260041573
         1 BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION                   .0512734004239326
         1 BULK_PACK_DISKETTES                        .232471260895683
         1 COUNTRY_NAME            Argentina         .00766817464479959
         1 COUNTRY_NAME            Australia         .000157637881096675
         1 COUNTRY_NAME            Brazil              .0031409632415604
         1 COUNTRY_NAME            Canada            .00144213099311427
         1 COUNTRY_NAME            China             .000102279310968754
         1 COUNTRY_NAME            Denmark           .000242424084307513
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of an O-Cluster clustering model. The rows are an enumeration of the clustering patterns generated during the creation of the model.

You can provide input to GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC to request specific information about the model, thus improving the performance of the query. If you do not specify filtering parameters, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC returns all the information about the model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC (
          model_name         VARCHAR2,
          cluster_id         NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
          attribute          VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
          centroid           NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
          histogram          NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
          rules              NUMBER    DEFAULT 2,
          topn_attributes    NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN DM_CLUSTERS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–75 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
cluster_id	The ID of a cluster in the model. When a valid cluster ID is specified, only the details of this cluster are returned. Otherwise the details for all clusters are returned.
attribute	The name of an attribute. When a valid attribute name is specified, only the details of this attribute are returned. Otherwise the details for all attributes are returned
centroid	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 1 — Details about centroids are returned (default) ■ 0 — Details about centroids are not returned
histogram	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 1 — Details about histograms are returned (default) ■ 0 — Details about histograms are not returned
rules	This parameter accepts the following values: ■ 2 — Details about rules are returned (default) ■ 1 — Rule summaries are returned ■ 0 — No information about rules is returned

Table 45–75 (Cont.) GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
topn_attributes	Restricts the number of attributes returned in the centroid, histogram, and rules objects. Only the *n* attributes with the highest confidence values in the rules are returned. If the number of attributes included in the rules is less than *topn*, then up to *n* additional attributes in alphabetical order are returned. If both the attribute and topn_attributes parameters are specified, then topn_attributes is ignored.

Return Values

Table 45–76 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_CLUSTERS	A set of rows of type DM_CLUSTER. The rows have the following columns: (id NUMBER, cluster_id VARCHAR2(4000), record_count NUMBER, parent NUMBER, tree_level NUMBER, dispersion NUMBER, split_predicate DM_PREDICATES, child DM_CHILDREN, centroid DM_CENTROIDS, histogram DM_HISTOGRAMS, rule DM_RULE) The split_predicate column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_PREDICATES. Each row, of type DM_PREDICATE, has the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), conditional_operator CHAR(2) /*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/, attribute_num_value NUMBER, attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_support NUMBER, attribute_confidence NUMBER) The child column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_CHILDREN. The rows, of type DM_CHILD, have a single column of type NUMBER, which contains the identifiers of each child. The centroid column of DM_CLUSTER returns a nested table of type DM_CENTROIDS. The rows, of type DM_CENTROID, have the following columns: (attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), mean NUMBER, mode_value VARCHAR2(4000), variance NUMBER)

Table 45–76 (Cont.) GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC Function Return Values

Return Value	Description

	The `histogram` column of `DM_CLUSTER` returns a nested table of type `DM_HISTOGRAMS`. The rows, of type `DM_HISTOGRAM_BIN`, have the following columns:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`bin_id NUMBER,`
	`lower_bound NUMBER,`
	`upper_bound NUMBER,`
	`label VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`count NUMBER)`
	The `rule` column of `DM_CLUSTER` returns a single row of type `DM_RULE`. The columns are:
	`(rule_id INTEGER,`
	`antecedent DM_PREDICATES,`
	`consequent DM_PREDICATES,`
	`rule_support NUMBER,`
	`rule_confidence NUMBER,`
	`rule_lift NUMBER,`
	`antecedent_support NUMBER,`
	`consequent_support NUMBER,`
	`number_of_items INTEGER)`
	The `antecedent` and `consequent` columns each return nested tables of type `DM_PREDICATES`. The rows, of type `DM_PREDICATE`, have the following columns:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`conditional_operator CHAR(2)/*=,<>,<,>,<=,>=*/,`
	`attribute_num_value NUMBER,`
	`attribute_str_value VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`attribute_support NUMBER,`
	`attribute_confidence NUMBER)`

Usage Notes

1. The table function pipes out rows of type `DM_CLUSTER`. For information about Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.
2. For descriptions of predicates (`DM_PREDICATE`) and rules (`DM_RULE`), see GET_ASSOCIATION_RULES Function.

Examples

The following example returns model details for the clustering model `OC_SH_Clus_sample`, which was created by the sample program `dmocdemo.sql`. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

For each cluster in this example, the split predicate indicates the attribute and the condition used to assign records to the cluster's children during model build. It provides an important piece of information on how the population within a cluster can be divided up into two smaller clusters.

```
SELECT clu_id, attribute_name, op, s_value
     FROM (SELECT a.id clu_id, sp.attribute_name, sp.conditional_operator op,
                  sp.attribute_str_value s_value
```

```
            FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_OC(
                   'OC_SH_Clus_sample')) a,
                 TABLE(a.split_predicate) sp
          ORDER BY a.id, op, s_value)
     WHERE ROWNUM < 11;

     CLU_ID ATTRIBUTE_NAME       OP S_VALUE
----------- -------------------- ---------------------------------
          1 OCCUPATION           IN ?
          1 OCCUPATION           IN Armed-F
          1 OCCUPATION           IN Cleric.
          1 OCCUPATION           IN Crafts
          2 OCCUPATION           IN ?
          2 OCCUPATION           IN Armed-F
          2 OCCUPATION           IN Cleric.
          3 OCCUPATION           IN Exec.
          3 OCCUPATION           IN Farming
          3 OCCUPATION           IN Handler
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of a Singular Value Decomposition model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD (
        model_name        VARCHAR2,
        matrix_type       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN DM_SVD_MATRIX_SET PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–77 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
matrix_type	Specifies which of the three SVD matrix types to return. Values are: U, S, V, and NULL. When matrix_type is null (default), all matrices are returned. The U matrix is only computed when the SVDS_U_MATRIX_OUTPUT setting is enabled. It is not computed by default. If the model does not contain U matrices and you set matrix_type to U, an empty set of rows is returned. See Table 45–20, " Singular Value Decomposition Settings".

Return Values

Table 45–78 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
DM_SVD_MATRIX_SET	A set of rows of type DM_SVD_MATRIX. The rows have the following columns: (matrix_type CHAR(1), feature_id NUMBER, mapped_feature_id VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), case_id VARCHAR2(4000), value NUMBER, variance NUMBER, pct_cum_variance NUMBER) See Usage Notes for details.

Usage Notes

1. This table function pipes out rows of type DM_SVD_MATRIX. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.

   The columns in each row returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVD are described as follows:

Column in DM_SVD_MATRIX_SET	Description
matrix_type	The type of matrix. Possible values are **S**, **V**, and **U**. This field is never null.
feature_id	The feature that the matrix entry refers to.
mapped_feature_id	A descriptive name for the feature.
attribute_name	Column name in the **V** matrix component bases. This field is null for the **S** and **U** matrices.
attribute_subname	Subname in the **V** matrix component bases. This is relevant only in the case of a nested column. This field is null for the **S** and **U** matrices.
case_id	Unique identifier of the row in the build data described by the **U** matrix projection. This field is null for the **S** and **V** matrices.
value	The matrix entry value.
variance	The variance explained by a component. It is non-null only for **S** matrix entries.
pct_cum_variance	The percent cumulative variance explained by the components thus far. The components are ranked by the explained variance in descending order.

2. The output of GET_MODEL_DETAILS is in sparse format. Zero values are not returned. Only the diagonal elements of the **S** matrix, the non-zero coefficients in the **V** matrix bases, and the non-zero **U** matrix projections are returned.

   There is one exception: If the data row does not produce non-zero **U** matrix projections, the case ID for that row is returned with nulls for the feature ID and value. This is done to avoid losing any records from the original data.

3. GET_MODEL_DETAILS functions preserve model transparency by automatically reversing the transformations applied during the build process. Thus the attributes returned in the model details are the original attributes (or a close approximation of the original attributes) used to build the model.

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM Function

This table function returns a set of rows that provide the details of a linear Support Vector Machine (SVM) model. If invoked for nonlinear SVM, it returns ORA-40215.

In linear SVM models, only nonzero coefficients are stored. This reduces storage and speeds up model loading. As a result, if an attribute is missing in the coefficient list returned by GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM, then the coefficient of this attribute should be interpreted as zero.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM (
        model_name        VARCHAR2,
        reverse_coef      NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
 RETURN DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF_SET PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–79 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.
reverse_coef	Whether or not GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM should transform the attribute coefficients using the original attribute transformations. When reverse_coef is set to 0 (default), GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM returns the coefficients directly from the model without applying transformations. When reverse_coef is set to 1, GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM transforms the coefficients and bias by applying the normalization shifts and scales that were generated using automatic data preparation. See Usage Note 4.

Return Values

Table 45–80 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM Function Return Values

Return Value	Description

DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF_SET	A set of rows of type DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF. The rows have the following columns:
	`(class VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_set DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE_SET)`
	The attribute_set column returns a nested table of type DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE_SET. The rows, of type DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE, have the following columns:
	`(attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), attribute_value VARCHAR2(4000), coefficient NUMBER)`
	See Usage Notes.

Usage Notes

1. This table function pipes out rows of type DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF. For information on Data Mining datatypes and piped output from table functions, see "Datatypes" on page 45-21.
2. The class column of DM_SVM_LINEAR_COEFF contains classification target values. For SVM regression models, class is null. For each classification target value, a set of coefficients is returned. For binary classification, one-class classification, and regression models, only a single set of coefficients is returned.
3. The attribute_value column in DM_SVM_ATTRIBUTE_SET is used for categorical attributes.
4. GET_MODEL_DETAILS functions preserve model transparency by automatically reversing the transformations applied during the build process. Thus the attributes returned in the model details are the original attributes (or a close approximation of the original attributes) used to build the model.

   The coefficients are related to the transformed, not the original, attributes. When returned directly with the model details, the coefficients may not provide meaningful information. If you want GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM to transform the coefficients such that they relate to the original attributes, set the reverse_coef parameter to 1.

Examples

The following example returns model details for the SVM classification model SVMC_SH_Clas_sample, which was created by the sample program dmsvcdem.sql. For information about the sample programs, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.

```
WITH
  mod_dtls AS (
  SELECT *
    FROM TABLE(DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_SVM('SVMC_SH_Clas_sample'))
  ),
  model_details AS (
  SELECT D.class, A.attribute_name, A.attribute_value, A.coefficient
    FROM mod_dtls D,
      TABLE(D.attribute_set) A
    ORDER BY D.class, ABS(A.coefficient) DESC
  )
  SELECT class, attribute_name aname, attribute_value aval, coefficient coeff
    FROM model_details
    WHERE ROWNUM < 11;

CLASS      ANAME                     AVAL                      COEFF
---------- ------------------------- ------------------------- -----
1                                                             -2.85
1          BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION                             1.11
1          OCCUPATION                Other                     -.94
1          HOUSEHOLD_SIZE            4-5                        .88
1          CUST_MARITAL_STATUS       Married                    .82
1          YRS_RESIDENCE                                        .76
1          HOUSEHOLD_SIZE            6-8                       -.74
1          OCCUPATION                Exec.                      .71
1          EDUCATION                 11th                      -.71
1          EDUCATION                 Masters                    .63
```

GET_MODEL_DETAILS_XML Function

This function returns an XML object that provides the details of a Decision Tree model.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_DETAILS_XML (
         model_name      IN       VARCHAR2)
   RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 45–81 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name.*]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–82 GET_MODEL_DETAILS_XML Function Return Value

Return Value	Description
XMLTYPE	The XML definition for the decision tree model. See Chapter 285, "XMLTYPE" for details. The XML conforms to the Data Mining Group Predictive Model Markup Language (PMML) version 2.1 specification. The specification is available at http://www.dmg.org.

Usage Notes

Special characters that cannot be displayed by Oracle XML are converted to '#'.

Examples

The following statements in SQL*Plus return the details of the decision tree model dt_sh_clas_sample. This model is created by the program dmdtdemo.sql, one of the sample data mining programs provided with Oracle Database Examples.

Note: The "&quot" characters you will see in the XML output are a result of SQL*Plus behavior. To display the XML in proper format, cut and past it into a file and open the file in a browser.

```
column dt_details format a320
SELECT
 dbms_data_mining.get_model_details_xml('dt_sh_clas_sample')
 AS DT_DETAILS
FROM dual;


DT_DETAILS
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
<PMML version="2.1">
  <Header copyright="Copyright (c) 2004, Oracle Corporation. All rights
      reserved."/>
  <DataDictionary numberOfFields="9">
    <DataField name="AFFINITY_CARD" optype="categorical"/>
```

```
    <DataField name="AGE" optype="continuous"/>
    <DataField name="BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION" optype="continuous"/>
    <DataField name="CUST_MARITAL_STATUS" optype="categorical"/>
    <DataField name="EDUCATION" optype="categorical"/>
    <DataField name="HOUSEHOLD_SIZE" optype="categorical"/>
    <DataField name="OCCUPATION" optype="categorical"/>
    <DataField name="YRS_RESIDENCE" optype="continuous"/>
    <DataField name="Y_BOX_GAMES" optype="continuous"/>
  </DataDictionary>
  <TreeModel modelName="DT_SH_CLAS_SAMPLE" functionName="classification"
      splitCharacteristic="binarySplit">
    <Extension name="buildSettings">
      <Setting name="TREE_IMPURITY_METRIC" value="TREE_IMPURITY_GINI"/>
      <Setting name="TREE_TERM_MAX_DEPTH" value="7"/>
      <Setting name="TREE_TERM_MINPCT_NODE" value=".05"/>
      <Setting name="TREE_TERM_MINPCT_SPLIT" value=".1"/>
      <Setting name="TREE_TERM_MINREC_NODE" value="10"/>
      <Setting name="TREE_TERM_MINREC_SPLIT" value="20"/>
      <costMatrix>
        <costElement>
          <actualValue>0</actualValue>
          <predictedValue>0</predictedValue>
          <cost>0</cost>
        </costElement>
        <costElement>
          <actualValue>0</actualValue>
          <predictedValue>1</predictedValue>
          <cost>1</cost>
        </costElement>
        <costElement>
          <actualValue>1</actualValue>
          <predictedValue>0</predictedValue>
          <cost>8</cost>
        </costElement>
        <costElement>
          <actualValue>1</actualValue>
          <predictedValue>1</predictedValue>
          <cost>0</cost>
        </costElement>
      </costMatrix>
    </Extension>
    <MiningSchema>
      .
      .
      .
      .
      .
      .
      </Node>
    </Node>
  </TreeModel>
</PMML>
```

GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function

This function returns the transformation expressions embedded in the specified model.

See Also:

"About Transformation Lists" in Chapter 46, "DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM"

"GET_TRANSFORM_LIST Procedure" on page 45-107

"CREATE_MODEL Procedure" on page 45-53

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS (
      model_name     IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN DM_TRANSFORMS PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 45–83 GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Return Values

Table 45–84 GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function Return Value

Return Value	Description
DM_TRANSFORMS	The transformation expressions embedded in *model_name*. The DM_TRANSFORMS type is a table of DM_TRANSFORM objects. Each DM_TRANSFORM has these fields: attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000) attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000) expression CLOB reverse_expression CLOB

Usage Notes

When Automatic Data Preparation (ADP) is enabled, both automatic and user-defined transformations may be associated with an attribute. In this case, the user-defined transformations are evaluated before the automatic transformations.

Examples

In this example, several columns in the SH.CUSTOMERS table are used to create a Naive Bayes model. A transformation expression is specified for one of the columns. The model does not use ADP.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
   SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_income_level,cust_credit_limit
   FROM sh.customers;
```

```
describe mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_INCOME_LEVEL                                  VARCHAR2(30)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                  NUMBER

CREATE TABLE settings_nb(
      setting_name  VARCHAR2(30),
      setting_value VARCHAR2(30));
BEGIN
     INSERT INTO settings_nb (setting_name, setting_value) VALUES
           (dbms_data_mining.algo_name, dbms_data_mining.algo_naive_bayes);
     INSERT INTO settings_nb (setting_name, setting_value) VALUES
           (dbms_data_mining.prep_auto, dbms_data_mining.prep_auto_off);
     COMMIT;
END;
/
DECLARE
    mining_data_xforms   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
  BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (
         xform_list           =>  mining_data_xforms,
         attribute_name       => 'cust_year_of_birth',
         attribute_subname    =>  null,
         expression           => 'cust_year_of_birth + 10',
         reverse_expression   => 'cust_year_of_birth - 10');
    dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL (
        model_name           =>  'new_model',
        mining_function      =>   dbms_data_mining.classification,
        data_table_name      =>  'mining_data',
        case_id_column_name  =>  'cust_id',
        target_column_name   =>  'cust_income_level',
        settings_table_name  =>  'settings_nb',
        data_schema_name     =>   nulL,
        settings_schema_name =>   null,
        xform_list           =>   mining_data_xforms );
  END;
 /
SELECT attribute_name, TO_CHAR(expression), TO_CHAR(reverse_expression)
      FROM TABLE (dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('new_model'));

ATTRIBUTE_NAME      TO_CHAR(EXPRESSION)       TO_CHAR(REVERSE_EXPRESSION)
------------------  ------------------------  ----------------------------
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH  cust_year_of_birth + 10   cust_year_of_birth - 10
```

GET_TRANSFORM_LIST Procedure

This procedure converts transformation expressions specified as DM_TRANSFORMS to a transformation list (TRANSFORM_LIST) that can be used in creating a model. DM_TRANSFORMS is returned by the GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS function.

You can also use routines in the DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package to construct a transformation list.

See Also:

"About Transformation Lists" in Chapter 46, "DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM"

"GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function" on page 45-105

"CREATE_MODEL Procedure" on page 45-53

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.GET_TRANSFORM_LIST (
      xform_list           OUT NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
      model_xforms         IN  DM_TRANSFORMS);
```

Parameters

Table 45–85 GET_TRANSFORM_LIST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xform_list	A list of transformation specifications that can be embedded in a model. Accepted as a parameter to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure. The TRANSFORM_LIST type is a table of TRANSFORM_REC objects. Each TRANSFORM_REC has these fields: attribute_name VARCHAR2(30) attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000) expression EXPRESSION_REC reverse_expression EXPRESSION_REC attribute_spec VARCHAR2(4000) For details about the TRANSFORM_LIST collection type, see Table 46–1, " Datatypes in DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM".
model_xforms	A list of embedded transformation expressions returned by the GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function for a specific model. The DM_TRANSFORMS type is a table of DM_TRANSFORM objects. Each DM_TRANSFORM has these fields: attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000) attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000) expression CLOB reverse_expression CLOB

Examples

In this example, a model mod1 is trained using several columns in the SH.CUSTOMERS table. The model uses ADP, which automatically bins one of the columns.

A second model mod2 is trained on the same data without ADP, but it uses a transformation list that was obtained from mod1. As a result, both mod1 and mod2 have the same embedded transformation expression.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
     SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_income_level, cust_credit_limit
     FROM sh.customers;

describe mining_data
 Name                                    Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                 NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                      NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_INCOME_LEVEL                                VARCHAR2(30)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                NUMBER

CREATE TABLE setmod1(setting_name  VARCHAR2(30),setting_value VARCHAR2(30));
BEGIN
   INSERT INTO setmod1 VALUES (dbms_data_mining.algo_name, dbms_data_mining.algo_naive_bayes);
   INSERT INTO setmod1 VALUES (dbms_data_mining.prep_auto,dbms_data_mining.prep_auto_on);
   dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL (
               model_name            => 'mod1',
               mining_function       => dbms_data_mining.classification,
               data_table_name       => 'mining_data',
               case_id_column_name   => 'cust_id',
               target_column_name    => 'cust_income_level',
               settings_table_name   => 'setmod1');
    COMMIT;
END;
/
CREATE TABLE setmod2(setting_name  VARCHAR2(30),setting_value VARCHAR2(30));
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO setmod2
      VALUES (dbms_data_mining.algo_name, dbms_data_mining.algo_naive_bayes);
  COMMIT;
END;
/
DECLARE
  v_xform_list       dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
  dmxf               DM_TRANSFORMS;
BEGIN
   EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
    'SELECT dm_transform(attribute_name, attribute_subname,expression, reverse_expression)
     FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS (''mod1''))'
     BULK COLLECT INTO dmxf;
   dbms_data_mining.GET_TRANSFORM_LIST (
        xform_list             =>  v_xform_list,
        model_xforms           =>  dmxf);
   dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL(
         model_name            => 'mod2',
         mining_function       =>  dbms_data_mining.classification,
         data_table_name       => 'mining_data',
         case_id_column_name   => 'cust_id',
         target_column_name    => 'cust_income_level',
         settings_table_name   => 'setmod2',
         xform_list            =>  v_xform_list);
END;
/

-- Transformation expression embedded in mod1
SELECT TO_CHAR(expression) FROM TABLE (dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('mod1'));

TO_CHAR(EXPRESSION)
```

```
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<1915 THEN 0 WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1915 THEN 0
WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1920.5 THEN 1 WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1924.5 THEN 2
.
.
.
.5 THEN 29 WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" IS NOT NULL THEN 30 END

-- Transformation expression embedded in mod2
SELECT TO_CHAR(expression) FROM TABLE (dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('mod2'));

TO_CHAR(EXPRESSION)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<1915 THEN 0 WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1915 THEN 0
WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1920.5 THEN 1 WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1924.5 THEN 2
.
.
.
.5 THEN 29 WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" IS NOT NULL THEN 30 END

-- Reverse transformation expression embedded in mod1
SELECT TO_CHAR(reverse_expression)FROM TABLE (dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('mod1'));

TO_CHAR(REVERSE_EXPRESSION)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DECODE("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",0,'( ; 1915), [1915; 1915]',1,'(1915; 1920.5]',2,'(1
920.5; 1924.5]',3,'(1924.5; 1928.5]',4,'(1928.5; 1932.5]',5,'(1932.5; 1936.5]',6
.
.
.
8,'(1987.5; 1988.5]',29,'(1988.5; 1989.5]',30,'(1989.5;  )',NULL,'NULL')

-- Reverse transformation expression embedded in mod2
SELECT TO_CHAR(reverse_expression) FROM TABLE (dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('mod2'));

TO_CHAR(REVERSE_EXPRESSION)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DECODE("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",0,'( ; 1915), [1915; 1915]',1,'(1915; 1920.5]',2,'(1
920.5; 1924.5]',3,'(1924.5; 1928.5]',4,'(1928.5; 1932.5]',5,'(1932.5; 1936.5]',6
.
.
.
8,'(1987.5; 1988.5]',29,'(1988.5; 1989.5]',30,'(1989.5;  )',NULL,'NULL')
```

IMPORT_MODEL Procedure

This procedure imports one or more data mining models. The procedure is overloaded. You can call it to import mining models from a dump file set, or you can call it to import a single mining model from a PMML document.

Import from a dump file set

You can import mining models from a dump file set that was created by the EXPORT_MODEL Procedure. `IMPORT_MODEL` and `EXPORT_MODEL` use Oracle Data Pump technology to export to and import from a dump file set.

When Oracle Data Pump is used directly to export/import an entire schema or database, the mining models in the schema or database are included. `EXPORT_MODEL` and `IMPORT_MODEL` export/import mining models only.

Import from PMML

You can import a mining model represented in Predictive Model Markup Language (PMML). The model must be of type `RegressionModel`, either linear regression or binary logistic regression.

PMML is an XML-based standard specified by the Data Mining Group (`http://www.dmg.org`). Applications that are PMML-compliant can deploy PMML-compliant models that were created by any vendor. Oracle Data Mining supports the core features of PMML 3.1 for regression models.

See Also:

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for more information about exporting and importing mining models

Oracle Database Utilities for information about Oracle Data Pump

`http://www.dmg.org/faq.html` for more information about PMML

Syntax

Imports a mining model from a dump file set:

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.IMPORT_MODEL (
      filename          IN  VARCHAR2,
      directory         IN  VARCHAR2,
      model_filter      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      operation         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      remote_link       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      jobname           IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      schema_remap      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      tablespace_remap  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Imports a mining model from a PMML document:

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.IMPORT_MODEL (
      model_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
      pmmldoc           IN  XMLTYPE
      strict_check      IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 45–86 IMPORT_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
filename	Name of the dump file set from which the models should be imported. The dump file set must have been created by the EXPORT_MODEL procedure or the expdp export utility of Oracle Data Pump. The dump file set can contain one or more files. (Refer to "EXPORT_MODEL Procedure" on page 45-58 for details.) If the dump file set contains multiple files, you can specify '*filename*%U' instead of listing them. For example, if your dump file set contains 3 files, archive01.dmp, archive02.dmp, and archive03.dmp, you can import them by specifying 'archive%U'.
directory	Name of a pre-defined directory object that specifies where the dump file set is located. Both the exporting and the importing user must have read/write access to the directory object and to the file system directory that it identifies. Note: The target database must have also have read/write access to the file system directory.
model_filter	Optional parameter that specifies one or more models to import. If you do not specify a value for model_filter, all models in the dump file set are imported. You can also specify NULL (the default) or 'ALL' to import all models. The value of model_filter can be one or more model names. The following are valid filters. 'mymodel1' 'name IN (''mymodel2'',''mymodel3'')' The first causes IMPORT_MODEL to import a single model named mymodel1. The second causes IMPORT_MODEL to import two models, mymodel2 and mymodel3.
operation	Optional parameter that specifies whether to import the models or the SQL statements that create the models. By default, the models are imported. You can specify either of the following values for operation: ■ 'IMPORT' — Import the models (Default) ■ 'SQL_FILE'— Write the SQL DDL for creating the models to a text file. The text file is named *job_name*.sql and is located in the dump set directory.
remote_link	Optional parameter that specifies the name of a database link to a remote system. The default value is NULL. A database link is a schema object in a local database that enables access to objects in a remote database. When you specify a value for remote_link, you can import models into the local database from the remote database. The import is fileless; no dump file is involved. The IMP_FULL_DATABASE role is required for importing the remote models. The EXP_FULL_DATABASE privilege, the CREATE DATABASE LINK privilege, and other privileges may also be required. (See Example 2.)
jobname	Optional parameter that specifies the name of the import job. By default, the name has the form *username*_imp_*nnnn*, where *nnnn* is a number. For example, a job name in the SCOTT schema might be SCOTT_imp_134. If you specify a job name, it must be unique within the schema. The maximum length of the job name is 30 characters. A log file for the import job, named *jobname*.log, is created in the same directory as the dump file set.

Table 45–86 (Cont.) IMPORT_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_remap	Optional parameter for importing into a different schema. By default, models are exported and imported within the same schema. If the dump file set belongs to a different schema, you must specify a schema mapping in the form *export_user*:*import_user*. For example, you would specify 'SCOTT:MARY' to import a model exported by SCOTT into the MARY schema. Note: In some cases, you may need to have the IMP_FULL_DATABASE privilege or the SYS role to import a model from a different schema.
tablespace_remap	Optional parameter for importing into a different tablespace. By default, models are exported and imported within the same tablespace. If the dump file set belongs to a different tablespace, you must specify a tablespace mapping in the form *export_tablespace*:*import_tablespace*. For example, you would specify 'TBLSPC01:TBLSPC02' to import a model that was exported from tablespace TBLSPC01 into tablespace TBLSPC02. Note: In some cases, you may need to have the IMP_FULL_DATABASE privilege or the SYS role to import a model from a different tablespace.
model_name	Name for the new model that will be created in the database as a result of an import from PMML The name must be unique within the user's schema.
pmmldoc	The PMML document representing the model to be imported. The PMML document has an XMLTYPE object type. See Chapter 285, "XMLTYPE" for details.
strict_check	Whether or not an error occurs when the PMML document contains sections that are not part of core PMML (for example, Output or Targets). Oracle Data Mining supports only core PMML; any non-core features may affect the scoring representation. If the PMML does not strictly conform to core PMML and strict_check is set to TRUE, then IMPORT_MODEL returns an error. If strict_check is FALSE (the default), then the error is suppressed. The model may be imported and scored.

Examples

1. This example shows a model being exported and imported within the schema dmuser2. Then the same model is imported into the dmuser3 schema. The dmuser3 user has the IMP_FULL_DATABASE privilege. The dmuser2 user has been assigned the USER2 tablespace; dmuser3 has been assigned the USER3 tablespace.

```
SQL> connect dmuser2
Enter password: dmuser2_password
Connected.
SQL> select model_name from user_mining_models;

MODEL_NAME
------------------------------
NMF_SH_SAMPLE
SVMO_SH_CLAS_SAMPLE
SVMR_SH_REGR_SAMPLE

-- export the model called NMF_SH_SAMPLE to a dump file in same schema
SQL>EXECUTE DBMS_DATA_MINING.EXPORT_MODEL (
            filename =>'NMF_SH_SAMPLE_out',
            directory =>'DATA_PUMP_DIR',
            model_filter => 'name = ''NMF_SH_SAMPLE''');
```

```
-- import the model back into the same schema
SQL>EXECUTE DBMS_DATA_MINING.IMPORT_MODEL (
            filename => 'NMF_SH_SAMPLE_out01.dmp',
            directory => 'DATA_PUMP_DIR',
            model_filter => 'name = ''NMF_SH_SAMPLE''');

-- connect as different user
-- import same model into that schema
SQL> connect dmuser3
Enter password: dmuser3_password
Connected.
SQL>EXECUTE DBMS_DATA_MINING.IMPORT_MODEL (
            filename => 'NMF_SH_SAMPLE_out01.dmp',
            directory => 'DATA_PUMP_DIR',
            model_filter => 'name = ''NMF_SH_SAMPLE''',
            operation =>'IMPORT',
            remote_link => NULL,
            jobname => 'nmf_imp_job',
            schema_remap => 'dmuser2:dmuser3',
            tablespace_remap => 'USER2:USER3');
```

The following example shows user MARY importing all models from a dump file, model_exp_001.dmp, which was created by user SCOTT. User MARY has been assigned a tablespace named USER2; user SCOTT was assigned the tablespace USERS when the models were exported into the dump file model_exp_001.dmp.The dump file is located in the file system directory mapped to a directory object called DM_DUMP. If user MARY does not have IMP_FULL_DATABASE privileges, IMPORT_MODEL will raise an error.

```
-- import all models
DECLARE
  file_name  VARCHAR2(40);
BEGIN
  file_name := 'model_exp_001.dmp';
  DBMS_DATA_MINING.IMPORT_MODEL(
            filename=> 'file_name',
            directory=>'DM_DUMP',
            schema_remap=>'SCOTT:MARY',
            tablespace_remap=>'USERS:USER2');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(
           'DBMS_DATA_MINING.IMPORT_MODEL of all models from SCOTT done!');
END;
/
```

2. This example shows how the user xuser could import the model dmuser.r1mod from a remote database. The SQL*Net connection alias for the remote database is R1DB. The user xuser is assigned the SYSAUX tablespace; the user dmuser is assigned the TBS_1 tablespace.

```
CONNECT / AS SYSDBA;
GRANT CREATE DATABASE LINK TO xuser;
GRANT imp_full_database TO xuser;
CONNECT xuser/xuserpassword
CREATE DATABASE LINK dmuser_link
         CONNECT TO dmuser IDENTIFIED BY dmuserpassword USING 'R1DB';
EXEC dbms_data_mining.import_model (
    NULL,
   'DMUSER_DIR',
   'R1MOD',
    remote_link => 'DMUSER_LINK', schema_remap => 'DMUSER:XUSER',
```

```
                    tablespace_remap => 'TBS_1:SYSAUX' );
SELECT name FROM dm_user_models;

NAME
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
R1MOD
```

3. This example shows how a PMML document called `SamplePMML1.xml` could be imported from a location referenced by directory object `PMMLDIR` into the schema of the current user. The imported model will be called `PMMLMODEL1`.

```
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining.import_model ('PMMLMODEL1',
        XMLType (bfilename ('PMMLDIR', 'SamplePMML1.xml'),
          nls_charset_id ('AL32UTF8')
        ));
END;
```

RANK_APPLY Procedure

This procedure ranks the results of an APPLY operation based on a top-N specification for predictive and descriptive model results. For classification models, you can provide a cost matrix as input, and obtain the ranked results with costs applied to the predictions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.RANK_APPLY (
      apply_result_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
      case_id_column_name            IN VARCHAR2,
      score_column_name              IN VARCHAR2,
      score_criterion_column_name    IN VARCHAR2,
      ranked_apply_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
      top_N                          IN NUMBER (38) DEFAULT 1,
      cost_matrix_table_name         IN VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
      apply_result_schema_name       IN VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
      cost_matrix_schema_name        IN VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–87 RANK_APPLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_result_table_name	Name of the table or view containing the results of an APPLY operation on the test data set (see Usage Notes)
case_id_column_name	Name of the case identifier column. This must be the same as the one used for generating APPLY results.
score_column_name	Name of the prediction column in the apply results table
score_criterion_column_name	Name of the probability column in the apply results table
ranked_apply_result_tab_name	Name of the table containing the ranked apply results
top_N	Top N predictions to be considered from the APPLY results for precision recall computation
cost_matrix_table_name	Name of the cost matrix table
apply_result_schema_name	Name of the schema hosting the APPLY results table
cost_matrix_schema_name	Name of the schema hosting the cost matrix table

Usage Notes

You can use RANK_APPLY to generate ranked apply results, based on a top-N filter and also with application of cost for predictions, if the model was built with costs.

The behavior of RANK_APPLY is similar to that of APPLY with respect to other DDL-like operations such as CREATE_MODEL, DROP_MODEL, and RENAME_MODEL. The procedure does not depend on the model; the only input of relevance is the apply results generated in a fixed schema table from APPLY.

The main intended use of RANK_APPLY is for the generation of the final APPLY results against the scoring data in a production setting. You can apply the model against test

data using APPLY, compute various test metrics against various cost matrix tables, and use the candidate cost matrix for RANK_APPLY.

The schema for the apply results from each of the supported algorithms is listed in subsequent sections. The case_id column will be the same case identifier column as that of the apply results.

Classification Models — NB and SVM

For numerical targets, the ranked results table will have the definition as shown:

```
(case_id       VARCHAR2/NUMBER,
prediction     NUMBER,
probability    NUMBER,
cost           NUMBER,
rank           INTEGER)
```

For categorical targets, the ranked results table will have the following definition:

```
(case_id       VARCHAR2/NUMBER,
prediction     VARCHAR2,
probability    NUMBER,
cost           NUMBER,
rank           INTEGER)
```

Clustering using *k*-Means or O-Cluster

Clustering is an unsupervised mining function, and hence there are no targets. The results of an APPLY operation contains simply the cluster identifier corresponding to a case, and the associated probability. Cost matrix is not considered here. The ranked results table will have the definition as shown, and contains the cluster ids ranked by top-N.

```
(case_id       VARCHAR2/NUMBER,
cluster_id     NUMBER,
probability    NUMBER,
rank           INTEGER)
```

Feature Extraction using NMF

Feature extraction is also an unsupervised mining function, and hence there are no targets. The results of an APPLY operation contains simply the feature identifier corresponding to a case, and the associated match quality. Cost matrix is not considered here. The ranked results table will have the definition as shown, and contains the feature ids ranked by top-N.

```
(case_id        VARCHAR2/NUMBER,
feature_id      NUMBER,
match_quality   NUMBER,
rank            INTEGER)
```

Examples

```
BEGIN
/* build a model with name census_model.
 * (See example under CREATE_MODEL)
 */

/* if training data was pre-processed in any manner,
 * perform the same pre-processing steps on apply
 * data also.
 * (See examples in the section on DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM)
```

```
 */

/* apply the model to data to be scored */
DBMS_DATA_MINING.RANK_APPLY(
  apply_result_table_name       => 'census_apply_result',
  case_id_column_name           => 'person_id',
  score_column_name             => 'prediction',
  score_criterion_column_name   => 'probability
  ranked_apply_result_tab_name  => 'census_ranked_apply_result',
  top_N                         => 3,
  cost_matrix_table_name        => 'census_cost_matrix');
END;
/

-- View Ranked Apply Results
SELECT *
  FROM census_ranked_apply_result;
```

REMOVE_COST_MATRIX Procedure

Removes the default scoring matrix from a classification model.

See Also:

- "ADD_COST_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-26
- "REMOVE_COST_MATRIX Procedure" on page 45-118

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.REMOVE_COST_MATRIX (
      model_name   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 45–88 Remove_Cost_Matrix Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Name of the model in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used.

Usage Notes

If the model is not in your schema, then REMOVE_COST_MATRIX requires the ALTER ANY MINING MODEL system privilege or the ALTER object privilege for the mining model.

Example

The Naive Bayes model NB_SH_CLAS_SAMPLE has an associated cost matrix that can be used for scoring the model.

```
SQL>SELECT *
      FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.get_model_cost_matrix('nb_sh_clas_sample'))
      ORDER BY predicted, actual;

ACTUAL     PREDICTED        COST
---------- ---------- ----------
0          0                   0
1          0                 .75
0          1                 .25
1          1                   0
```

You can remove the cost matrix with REMOVE_COST_MATRIX.

```
SQL>EXECUTE dbms_data_mining.remove_cost_matrix('nb_sh_clas_sample');

SQL>SELECT *
      FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.get_model_cost_matrix('nb_sh_clas_sample'))
      ORDER BY predicted, actual;

no rows selected
```

RENAME_MODEL Procedure

This procedure changes the name of the mining model indicated by *model_name* to the name that you specify as *new_model_name*. If a model with *new_model_name* already exists, then the procedure optionally renames *new_model_name* to *versioned_model_name* before renaming *model_name* to *new_model_name*.

The model name is in the form [*schema_name*.]*model_name*. If you do not specify a schema, your own schema is used. For mining model naming restrictions, see the Usage Notes for "CREATE_MODEL Procedure" on page 45-53.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING.RENAME_MODEL (
     model_name            IN VARCHAR2,
     new_model_name        IN VARCHAR2,
     versioned_model_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 45–89 RENAME_MODEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
model_name	Model to be renamed.
new_model_name	New name for the model *model_name*.
versioned_model_name	New name for the model *new_model_name* if it already exists.

Usage Notes

If you attempt to rename a model while it is being applied, then the model will be renamed but the apply operation will return indeterminate results.

Examples

1. This example changes the name of model census_model to census_model_2012.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING.RENAME_MODEL(
    model_name      => 'census_model',
    new_model_name  => 'census_model_2012');
END;
/
```

2. In this example, there are two classification models in the user's schema: clas_mod, the working model, and clas_mod_tst, a test model. The RENAME_MODEL procedure preserves clas_mod as clas_mod_old and makes the test model the new working model.

```
SELECT model_name FROM user_mining_models;
MODEL_NAME
------------------------------------------------------------------------
CLAS_MOD
CLAS_MOD_TST

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING.RENAME_MODEL(
    model_name            => 'clas_mod_tst',
```

```
    new_model_name        => 'clas_mod',
    versioned_model_name  => 'clas_mod_old');
END;
/

SELECT model_name FROM user_mining_models;
MODEL_NAME
------------------------------------------------------------------------
CLAS_MOD
CLAS_MOD_OLD
```

46

DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM

DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM implements a set of transformations that are commonly used in data mining.

See Also:

- Chapter 45, "DBMS_DATA_MINING"
- *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM` package.

Overview

A transformation is a SQL expression that modifies the data in one or more columns.

Data must typically undergo certain transformations before it can be used to build a mining model. Many data mining algorithms have specific transformation requirements.

Data that will be scored must be transformed in the same way as the data that was used to create (train) the model.

External or Embedded Transformations

DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM offers two approaches to implementing transformations. For a given model, you can either:

- Create a list of transformation expressions and pass it to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure

  or

- Create a view that implements the transformations and pass the name of the view to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure

If you create a transformation list and pass it to CREATE_MODEL, the transformation expressions are embedded in the model and automatically implemented whenever the model is applied.

If you create a view, the transformation expressions are external to the model. You will need to re-create the transformations whenever you apply the model.

> **Note:** Embedded transformations significantly enhance the model's usability while simplifying the process of model management.

Automatic Transformations

Oracle Data Mining supports an Automatic Data Preparation (ADP) mode. When ADP is enabled, most algorithm-specific transformations are *automatically* embedded. Any additional transformations must be explicitly provided in an embedded transformation list or in a view.

If ADP is enabled and you create a model with a transformation list, both sets of transformations are embedded. The model will execute the user-specified transformations from the transformation list before executing the automatic transformations specified by ADP.

Within a transformation list, you can selectively disable ADP for individual attributes.

See Also:

"Automatic Data Preparation" in Chapter 45, "DBMS_DATA_MINING"

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for a more information about ADP

"About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7

Transformations in DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM

The transformations supported by DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM are summarized in this section.

Binning

Binning refers to the mapping of continuous or discrete values to discrete values of reduced cardinality.

- Supervised Binning (Categorical and Numerical)

  Binning is based on intrinsic relationships in the data as determined by a decision tree model.

  See "INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure" on page 46-51.

- Top-N Frequency Categorical Binning

  Binning is based on the number of cases in each category.

  See "INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ Procedure" on page 46-39

- Equi-Width Numerical Binning

  Binning is based on equal-range partitions.

  See "INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure" on page 46-44.

- Quantile Numerical Binning

  Binning is based on quantiles computed using the SQL `NTILE` function.

  See "INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE Procedure" on page 46-48.

Linear Normalization

Normalization is the process of scaling continuous values down to a specific range, often between zero and one. Normalization transforms each numerical value by subtracting a number (the **shift**) and dividing the result by another number (the **scale**).

```
x_new = (x_old-shift)/scale
```

- Min-Max Normalization

  Normalization is based on the minimum and maximum with the following shift and scale:

  ```
  shift = min
  scale = max-min
  ```

  See "INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure" on page 46-67.

- Scale Normalization

  Normalization is based on the minimum and maximum with the following shift and scale:

  ```
  shift = 0
  scale = max{abs(max), abs(min)}
  ```

  See "INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure" on page 46-70.

- Z-Score Normalization

  Normalization is based on the mean and standard deviation with the following shift and scale:

  ```
  shift = mean
  scale = standard_deviation
  ```

  See "INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure" on page 46-73.

Outlier Treatment

An outlier is a numerical value that is located far from the rest of the data. Outliers can artificially skew the results of data mining.

- Winsorizing

  Outliers are replaced with the nearest value that is not an outlier.

  See "INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure" on page 46-58

- Trimming

  Outliers are set to `NULL`.

  See "INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure" on page 46-55.

Missing Value Treatment

Missing data may indicate sparsity or it may indicate that some values are missing at random. `DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM` supports the following transformations for minimizing the effects of missing values:

- Missing numerical values are replaced with the mean.

  See "INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure" on page 46-64.

- Missing categorical values are replaced with the mode.

  See "INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure" on page 46-61.

> **Note:** Oracle Data Mining also has default mechanisms for handling missing data. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details.

Operational Notes

The DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package offers a flexible framework for specifying data transformations. If you choose to embed transformations in the model (the preferred method), you will create a **transformation list** object and pass it to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure. If you choose to transform the data without embedding, you will create a view.

When specified in a transformation list, the transformation expressions are executed by the model. When specified in a view, the transformation expressions are executed by the view.

Transformation Definitions

Transformation definitions are used to generate the SQL expressions that transform the data. For example, the transformation definitions for normalizing a numeric column are the shift and scale values for that data.

With the DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package, you can call procedures to compute the transformation definitions, or you can compute them yourself, or you can do both.

Transformation Definition Tables

DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM provides **INSERT** procedures that compute transformation definitions and insert them in transformation definition tables. You can modify the values in the transformation definition tables or populate them yourself.

XFORM routines use populated definition tables to transform data in external views. **STACK** routines use populated definition tables to build transformation lists.

To specify transformations based on definition tables, follow these steps:

1. Use **CREATE** routines to create transformation definition tables.

   The tables have columns to hold the transformation definitions for a given type of transformation. For example, the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure creates a definition table that has a column for storing data values and another column for storing the associated bin identifiers.

2. Use **INSERT** routines to compute and insert transformation definitions in the tables.

   Each INSERT routine uses a specific technique for computing the transformation definitions. For example, the INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure computes bin boundaries by identifying the minimum and maximum values then setting the bin boundaries at equal intervals.

3. Use **STACK** or **XFORM** routines to generate transformation expressions based on the information in the definition tables:

   - Use **STACK** routines to add the transformation expressions to a transformation list. Pass the transformation list to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure. The transformation expressions will be assembled into one long SQL query and embedded in the model.
   - Use **XFORM** routines to execute the transformation expressions within a view. The transformations will be external to the model and will need to be re-created whenever the model is applied to new data.

Transformations Without Definition Tables

STACK routines are not the only method for adding transformation expressions to a transformation list. You can also build a transformation list without using definition tables.

To specify transformations without using definition tables, follow these steps:

1. Write a SQL expression for transforming an attribute.
2. Write a SQL expression for reversing the transformation. (See "Reverse Transformations and Model Transparency" on page 46-7.)
3. Determine whether or not to disable ADP for the attribute. By default ADP is enabled for the attribute if it is specified for the model. (See "Disabling Automatic Data Preparation" on page 46-8.)
4. Specify the SQL expressions and ADP instructions in a call to the SET_TRANSFORM Procedure, which adds the information to a transformation list.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 4 for each attribute that you wish to transform.
6. Pass the transformation list to the CREATE_MODEL Procedure. The transformation expressions will be assembled into one long SQL query and embedded in the model.

> **Note:** SQL expressions that you specify with SET_TRANSFORM must fit within a VARCHAR2. To specify a longer expression, you can use the SET_EXPRESSION Procedure. With SET_EXPRESSION, you can build an expression by appending rows to a VARCHAR2 array.

About Transformation Lists

The elements of a transformation list are **transformation records**. Each transformation record provides all the information needed by the model for managing the transformation of a single attribute.

Each transformation record includes the following fields:

- *attribute_name* — Name of the column of data to be transformed
- *attribute_subname* — Name of the nested attribute if *attribute_name* is a nested column, otherwise NULL
- *expression* — SQL expression for transforming the attribute
- *reverse_expression* — SQL expression for reversing the transformation
- *attribute_spec* — Identifies special treatment for the attribute during the model build. See Table 46–33, " SET_TRANSFORM Procedure Parameters" for details.

See Also:

- Table 46–1 for details about the TRANSFORM_LIST and TRANSFORM_REC object types
- SET_TRANSFORM Procedure
- CREATE_MODEL Procedure

Reverse Transformations and Model Transparency

An algorithm manipulates transformed attributes to train and score a model. The transformed attributes, however, may not be meaningful to an end user. For example,

if attribute *x* has been transformed into bins 1 — 4, the bin names 1, 2 , 3, and 4 are manipulated by the algorithm, but a user is probably not interested in the model details about bins 1 — 4 or in predicting the numbers 1 — 4.

To return original attribute values in model details and predictions, you can provide a reverse expression in the transformation record for the attribute. For example, if you specify the transformation expression **`'log(10, y)'`** for attribute *y*, you could specify the reverse transformation expression **`'power(10, y)'`**.

Reverse transformations enable **model transparency**. They make internal processing transparent to the user.

Note: `STACK` procedures automatically reverse normalization transformations, but they do not provide a mechanism for reversing binning, clipping, or missing value transformations.

You can use the `DBMS_DATA_MINING.ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION` procedure to specify or update reverse transformations expressions for an existing model.

See Also:

Example 46–1, "Stacking a Clipping Transformation"

"ALTER_REVERSE_EXPRESSION Procedure" on page 45-29

"Summary of DBMS_DATA_MINING Subprograms" on page 45-24 for links to the model details functions

Disabling Automatic Data Preparation

ADP is controlled by a model-specific setting (`PREP_AUTO`). The `PREP_AUTO` setting affects all model attributes unless you disable it for individual attributes.

If ADP is enabled and you set *`attribute_spec`* to `NOPREP`, only the transformations that you specify for that attribute will be evaluated. If ADP is enabled and you do *not* set *`attribute_spec`* to `NOPREP`, the automatic transformations will be evaluated *after* the transformations that you specify for the attribute.

If ADP is not enabled for the model, the *`attribute_spec`* field of the transformation record is ignored.

See Also: "Automatic Data Preparation" on page 45-8 for information about the `PREP_AUTO` setting

Adding Transformation Records to a Transformation List

A transformation list is a stack of transformation records. When a new transformation record is added, it is appended to the top of the stack. (See "About Stacking" for details.)

When you use `SET_TRANSFORM` to add a transformation record to a transformation list, you can specify values for all the fields in the transformation record.

When you use `STACK` procedures to add transformation records to a transformation list, only the transformation expression field is populated. For normalization transformations, the reverse transformation expression field is also populated.

You can use both `STACK` procedures and `SET_TRANSFORM` to build one transformation list. Each `STACK` procedure call adds transformation records for all the attributes in a

specified transformation definition table. Each SET_TRANSFORM call adds a transformation record for a single attribute.

About Stacking

Transformation lists are built by stacking transformation records. Transformation lists are evaluated from bottom to top. Each transformation expression depends on the result of the transformation expression below it in the stack.

Stack Procedures

STACK procedures create transformation records from the information in transformation definition tables. For example STACK_BIN_NUM builds a transformation record for each attribute specified in a definition table for numeric binning. STACK procedures stack the transformation records as follows:

- If an attribute is specified in the definition table but not in the transformation list, the STACK procedure creates a transformation record, computes the reverse transformation (if possible), inserts the transformation and reverse transformation in the transformation record, and appends the transformation record to the top of the transformation list.
- If an attribute is specified in the transformation list but not in the definition table, the STACK procedure takes no action.
- If an attribute is specified in the definition table *and* in the transformation list, the STACK procedure stacks the transformation expression from the definition table on top of the transformation expression in the transformation record and updates the reverse transformation. See Example 46–1, "Stacking a Clipping Transformation"and Example 46–4, "Stacking a Nested Normalization Transformation".

Example 46–1 Stacking a Clipping Transformation

This example shows how STACK_CLIP Procedure would add transformation records to a transformation list. Note that the clipping transformations are not reversed in COL1 and COL2 after stacking (as described in "Reverse Transformations and Model Transparency" on page 46-7).

Refer to:

- CREATE_CLIP Procedure — Creates the definition table
- INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure — Inserts definitions in the table
- INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure — Inserts definitions in the table
- Table 46–1 — Describes the structure of the transformation list (TRANSFORM_LIST object)

Assume a clipping definition table populated as follows.

col	att	lcut	lval	rcut	rval
COL1	null	-1.5	-1.5	4.5	4.5
COL2	null	0	0	1	1

Assume the following transformation list before stacking.

```
------------------------
transformation record #1:
```

```
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL1
     attribute_subname    = null
     expression           = log(10, COL1)
     reverse_expression   = power(10, COL1)
-------------------------
transformation record #2:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL3
     attribute_subname    = null
     expression           = ln(COL3)
     reverse_expression   = exp(COL3)
```

After stacking, the transformation list is as follows.

```
-------------------------
transformation record #1:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL1
     attribute_subname    = null
     expression           = CASE WHEN log(10, COL1) < -1.5 THEN -1.5
                                 WHEN log(10, COL1) > 4.5  THEN 4.5
                                 ELSE log(10, COL1)
                            END;
     reverse_expression   = power(10, COL1)
-------------------------
transformation record #2:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL3
     attribute_subname    = null
     expression           = ln(COL3)
     reverse_expression   = exp(COL3)
-------------------------
transformation record #3:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL2
     attribute_subname    = null
     expression           = CASE WHEN COL2 < 0 THEN 0
                                 WHEN COL2 > 1 THEN 1
                                 ELSE COL2
                            END;
     reverse_expression   = null
```

Nested Data Transformations

The `CREATE` routines create transformation definition tables that include two columns, `col` and `att`, for identifying attributes. The column `col` holds the name of a column in the data table. If the data column is not nested, then `att` is null, and the name of the attribute is *`col`*. If the data column is nested, then `att` holds the name of the nested attribute, and the name of the attribute is *`col.att`*.

The `INSERT` and `XFORM` routines ignore the `att` column in the definition tables. Neither the `INSERT` nor the `XFORM` routines support nested data.

Only the `STACK` procedures and `SET_TRANSFORM` support nested data. Nested data transformations are always embedded in the model.

Nested columns in Oracle Data Mining can have the following types:

```
DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS
DM_NESTED_CATEGORICALS
DM_NESTED_BINARY_DOUBLES
```

DM_NESTED_BINARY_FLOATS

See Also:

"Constants" on page 46-16

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for details about nested attributes in Oracle Data Mining

Specifying Nested Attributes in a Transformation Record

A transformation record (TRANSFORM_REC) includes two fields, attribute_name and attribute_subname, for identifying the attribute. The field attribute_name holds the name of a column in the data table. If the data column is not nested, then attribute_subname is null, and the name of the attribute is *attribute_name*. If the data column is nested, then attribute_subname holds the name of the nested attribute, and the name of the attribute is *attribute_name.attribute_subname*.

Transforming Individual Nested Attributes

You can specify different transformations for different attributes in a nested column, and you can specify a default transformation for all the remaining attributes in the column. To specify a default nested transformation, specify null in the attribute_name field and the name of the nested column in the attribute_subname field as shown in Example 46–2. Note that the keyword VALUE is used to represent the value of a nested attribute in a transformation expression.

Example 46–2 Transforming a Nested Column

The following statement transforms two of the nested attributes in COL_N1. Attribute ATTR1 is transformed with normalization; Attribute ATTR2 is set to null, which causes attribute removal transformation (ATTR2 is not used in training the model). All the remaining attributes in COL_N1 are divided by 10.

```
DECLARE
  stk dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(
      stk,'COL_N1', 'ATTR1', '(VALUE - (-1.5))/20', 'VALUE *20 + (-1.5)');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(
      stk,'COL_N1', 'ATTR2', NULL, NULL);
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(
      stk, NULL, 'COL_N1', 'VALUE/10', 'VALUE*10');
END;
/
```

The following SQL is generated from this statement.

```
CAST(MULTISET(SELECT DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                               "ATTRIBUTE_NAME",
                               DECODE("ATTRIBUTE_NAME",
                                 'ATTR1', ("VALUE" - (-1.5))/20,
                                 "VALUE"/10))
                       FROM TABLE("COL_N1")
                      WHERE "ATTRIBUTE_NAME" IS NOT IN ('ATTR2'))
            AS DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS)
```

If transformations are not specified for COL_N1.ATTR1 and COL_N1.ATTR2, then the default transformation is used for all the attributes in COL_N1, and the resulting SQL does not include a DECODE.

```
    CAST(MULTISET(SELECT DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                               "ATTRIBUTE_NAME",
```

```
                                "VALUE"/10)
                            FROM TABLE("COL_N1"))
                AS DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS)
```

Since DECODE is limited to 256 arguments, multiple DECODE functions are nested to support an arbitrary number of individual nested attribute specifications.

Adding a Nested Column

You can specify a transformation that adds a nested column to the data, as shown in Example 46–3.

Example 46–3 Adding a Nested Column to a Transformation List

```
DECLARE
    v_xlst dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
  BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(v_xlst,
      'YOB_CREDLIM', NULL,
      'dm_nested_numericals(
           dm_nested_numerical(
                 ''CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH'', cust_year_of_birth),
           dm_nested_numerical(
                 ''CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT'', cust_credit_limit))',
        NULL);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(
              v_xlst, 'CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH', NULL, NULL, NULL);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM(
              v_xlst, 'CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT', NULL, NULL, NULL);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK(
              v_xlst, 'mining_data', 'mining_data_v');
END;
/

set long 2000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_V';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_POSTAL_CODE",dm_nested_numericals(
        dm_nested_numerical(
           'CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH', cust_year_of_birth),
        dm_nested_numerical(
           'CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT', cust_credit_limit)) "YOB_CREDLIM" FROM mining_data

SELECT * FROM mining_data_v WHERE cust_id = 104500;

CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE YOB_CREDLIM(ATTRIBUTE_NAME, VALUE)
------- ---------------- ------------------------------------------------------
 104500 68524             DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS(DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                         'CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH', 1962),
                          DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL('CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT', 15000))
```

Stacking Nested Transformations

Example 46–4 shows how the STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure would add transformation records for nested column COL_N to a transformation list.

Refer to:

- CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure — Creates the definition table

- INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure — Inserts definitions in the table
- INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure — Inserts definitions in the table
- INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure — Inserts definitions in the table
- Table 46–1 — Describes the structure of the transformation list

Example 46–4 Stacking a Nested Normalization Transformation

Assume a linear normalization definition table populated as follows.

col	att	shift	scale
COL_N	ATT2	0	20
null	COL_N	0	10

Assume the following transformation list before stacking.

```
-------------------------
transformation record #1:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL_N
     attribute_subname    = ATT1
     expression           = log(10, VALUE)
     reverse_expression   = power(10, VALUE)
-------------------------
transformation record #2:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = null
     attribute_subname    = COL_N
     expression           = ln(VALUE)
     reverse_expression   = exp(VALUE)
```

After stacking, the transformation list is as follows.

```
-------------------------
transformation record #1:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL_N
     attribute_subname    = ATT1
     expression           = (log(10, VALUE) - 0)/10
     reverse_expression   = power(10, VALUE*10 + 0)
-------------------------
transformation record #2:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = NULL
     attribute_subname    = COL_N
     expression           = (ln(VALUE)- 0)/10
     reverse_expression   = exp(VALUE *10 + 0)
-------------------------
transformation record #3:
-------------------------
     attribute_name       = COL_N
     attribute_subname    = ATT2
     expression           = (ln(VALUE) - 0)/20
     reverse_expression   = exp(VALUE * 20 + 0)
```

Security Model

The DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package is owned by user SYS and is installed as part of database installation. Execution privilege on the package is granted to public. The routines in the package are run with invokers' rights (run with the privileges of the current user).

The DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_* procedures have a *data_table_name* parameter that enables the user to provide the input data for transformation purposes. The value of *data_table_name* can be the name of a physical table or a view. The *data_table_name* parameter can also accept an inline query.

Important: Because an inline query can be used to specify the data for transformation, Oracle strongly recommends that the calling routine perform any necessary SQL injection checks on the input string.

See Also: "Operational Notes" on page 46-6 for a description of the DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_* procedures

Datatypes

DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM defines the datatypes described in Table 46–1.

Table 46–1 Datatypes in DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM

List Type	List Elements	Description
COLUMN_LIST	VARRAY(1000) OF varchar2(32)	COLUMN_LIST stores quoted and non-quoted identifiers for column names. COLUMN_LIST is the datatype of the *exclude_list* parameter in the INSERT procedures. See "INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure" on page 46-35 for an example. See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for information about populating VARRAY structures.
DESCRIBE_LIST	DBMS_SQL.DESC_TAB2 TYPE desc_tab2 IS TABLE OF desc_rec2 INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER TYPE desc_rec2 IS RECORD (col_type BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_max_len BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_name VARCHAR2(32767):= '', col_name_len BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_schema_name VARCHAR2(32) := '', col_schema_name_len BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_precision BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_scale BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_charsetid BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_charsetform BINARY_INTEGER := 0, col_null_ok BOOLEAN := TRUE);	DESCRIBE_LIST describes the columns of the data table after the transformation list has been applied. A DESCRIBE_LIST is returned by the DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure. The DESC_TAB2 and DESC_REC2 types are defined in the DBMS_SQL package. See "DESC_REC2 Record Type" on page 149-25. The col_type field of DESC_REC2 identifies the datatype of the column. The datatype is expressed as a numeric constant that represents a built-in datatype. For example, a 1 indicates a variable length character string. The codes for Oracle built-in datatypes are listed in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*. The codes for the Oracle Data Mining nested types are described in "Constants" on page 46-16. The col_name field of DESC_REC2 identifies the column name. It may be populated with a column name, an alias, or an expression. If the column name is a SELECT expression, it may be very long. If the expression is longer than 30 bytes, it cannot be used in a view unless it is given an alias.
TRANSFORM_LIST	**TABLE OF transform_rec** **TYPE transform_rec IS RECORD** (attribute_name VARCHAR2(30), attribute_subname VARCHAR2(4000), expression **EXPRESSION_REC**, reverse_expression **EXPRESSION_REC**, attribute_spec VARCHAR2(4000)); **TYPE expression_rec IS RECORD** (lstmt DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2A, lb BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 1, ub BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0); TYPE varchar2a IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;	TRANSFORM_LIST is a list of transformations that can be embedded in a model. A TRANSFORM_LIST is accepted as an argument by the CREATE_MODEL Procedure. Each element in a TRANSFORM_LIST is a TRANSFORM_REC that specifies how to transform a single attribute. The attribute_name is a column name. The attribute_subname is the nested attribute name if the column is nested, otherwise attribute_subname is null. The expression field holds a SQL expression for transforming the attribute. See "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7 for an explanation of reverse expressions. The attribute_spec field can be used to cause the attribute to be handled in a specific way during the model build. See Table 46–33, " SET_TRANSFORM Procedure Parameters" for details. The expressions in a TRANSFORM_REC have type EXPRESSION_REC. The lstmt field stores a VARCHAR2A, which is a table of VARCHAR2(32767). The VARCHAR2A datatype allows transformation expressions to be very long, as they can be broken up across multiple rows of VARCHAR2. The VARCHAR2A type is defined in the DBMS_SQL package. See "VARCHAR2A Table Type" on page 149-46. The ub (upper bound) and lb (lower bound) fields indicate how many rows there are in the VARCHAR2A table. If ub < lb (default) the EXPRESSION_REC is empty; if lb=ub=1 there is one row; if lb=1 and ub=2 there are 2 rows, and so on.

Constants

DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM defines the constants described in Table 46–2.

Table 46–2 Constants in DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM

Constant	Value	Description
NEST_NUM_COL_TYPE	100001	Indicates that an attribute in the transformation list comes from a row in a column of DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS. Nested numerical attributes are defined as follows: attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000) value NUMBER
NEST_CAT_COL_TYPE	100002	Indicates that an attribute in the transformation list comes from a row in a column of DM_NESTED_CATEGORICALS. Nested categorical attributes are defined as follows: attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000) value VARCHAR2(4000)
NEST_BD_COL_TYPE	100003	Indicates that an attribute in the transformation list comes from a row in a column of DM_NESTED_BINARY_DOUBLES. Nested binary double attributes are defined as follows: attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000) value BINARY_DOUBLE
NEST_BF_COL_TYPE	100004	Indicates that an attribute in the transformation list comes from a row in a column of DM_NESTED_BINARY_FLOATS. attribute_name VARCHAR2(4000) value BINARY_FLOAT

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about nested data in Oracle Data Mining

Summary of DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM Subprograms

Table 46–3 DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Purpose
CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure on page 46-19	Creates a transformation definition table for categorical binning
CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure on page 46-21	Creates a transformation definition table for numerical binning
CREATE_CLIP Procedure on page 46-23	Creates a transformation definition table for clipping
CREATE_COL_REM Procedure on page 46-25	Creates a transformation definition table for column removal
CREATE_MISS_CAT Procedure on page 46-26	Creates a transformation definition table for categorical missing value treatment
CREATE_MISS_NUM Procedure on page 46-28	Creates a transformation definition table for numerical missing values treatment
CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure on page 46-30	Creates a transformation definition table for linear normalization
DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure on page 46-32	Describes the transformation list
GET_EXPRESSION Function on page 46-34	Returns a `VARCHAR2` chunk from a transformation expression
INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure on page 46-34	Inserts numeric automatic equi-width binning definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ Procedure on page 46-39	Inserts categorical frequency-based binning definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure on page 46-44	Inserts numeric equi-width binning definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE Procedure on page 46-48	Inserts numeric quantile binning expressions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure on page 46-51	Inserts supervised binning definitions in numerical and categorical transformation definition tables
INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure on page 46-55	Inserts numerical trimming definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure on page 46-58	Inserts numerical winsorizing definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure on page 46-61	Inserts categorical missing value treatment definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure on page 46-64	Inserts numerical missing value treatment definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure on page 46-67	Inserts linear min-max normalization definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure on page 46-70	Inserts linear scale normalization definitions in a transformation definition table
INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure on page 46-73	Inserts linear zscore normalization definitions in a transformation definition table

Table 46–3 (Cont.) DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Purpose
SET_EXPRESSION Procedure on page 46-76	Adds a VARCHAR2 chunk to an expression
SET_TRANSFORM Procedure on page 46-78	Adds a transformation record to a transformation list
STACK_BIN_CAT Procedure on page 46-80	Adds a categorical binning expression to a transformation list
STACK_BIN_NUM Procedure on page 46-82	Adds a numerical binning expression to a transformation list
STACK_CLIP Procedure on page 46-85	Adds a clipping expression to a transformation list
STACK_COL_REM Procedure on page 46-87	Adds a column removal expression to a transformation list
STACK_MISS_CAT Procedure on page 46-89	Adds a categorical missing value treatment expression to a transformation list
STACK_MISS_NUM Procedure on page 46-91	Adds a numerical missing value treatment expression to a transformation list
STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure on page 46-93	Adds a linear normalization expression to a transformation list
XFORM_BIN_CAT Procedure on page 46-95	Creates a view of the data table with categorical binning transformations
XFORM_BIN_NUM Procedure on page 46-97	Creates a view of the data table with numerical binning transformations
XFORM_CLIP Procedure on page 46-100	Creates a view of the data table with clipping transformations
XFORM_COL_REM Procedure on page 46-102	Creates a view of the data table with column removal transformations
XFORM_EXPR_NUM Procedure on page 46-104	Creates a view of the data table with the specified numeric transformations
XFORM_EXPR_STR Procedure on page 46-106	Creates a view of the data table with the specified categorical transformations
XFORM_MISS_CAT Procedure on page 46-109	Creates a view of the data table with categorical missing value treatment
XFORM_MISS_NUM Procedure on page 46-112	Creates a view of the data table with numerical missing value treatment
XFORM_NORM_LIN Procedure on page 46-114	Creates a view of the data table with linear normalization transformations
XFORM_STACK Procedure on page 46-117	Creates a view of the transformation list

CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for categorical binning. The columns are described in Table 46–4.

Table 46–4 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Binning

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of categorical data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is a nested column. If *col* is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.
val	VARCHAR2(4000)	Values of the attribute
bin	VARCHAR2(4000)	Bin assignments for the values

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_BIN_CAT (
     bin_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     bin_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–5 CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about categorical data.
2. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
3. You can use the following procedures to populate the transformation definition table:
   - INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ Procedure — frequency-based binning
   - INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure — supervised binning

See Also:

"Binning" on page 46-4

"Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

The following statement creates a table called `bin_cat_xtbl` in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with bin assignments for categorical attributes.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_BIN_CAT('bin_cat_xtbl');
END;
/
DESCRIBE bin_cat_xtbl
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                                VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
 VAL                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
 BIN                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
```

CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for numerical binning. The columns are described in Table 46–6.

Table 46–6 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Numerical Binning

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of numerical data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is a nested column. If *col* is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.
val	NUMBER	Values of the attribute
bin	VARCHAR2(4000)	Bin assignments for the values

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_BIN_NUM (
     bin_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
     bin_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–7 CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
3. You can use the following procedures to populate the transformation definition table:
   - INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure — automatic equi-width binning
   - INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure — user-specified equi-width binning
   - INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE Procedure — quantile binning
   - INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure — supervised binning

See Also:

"Binning" on page 46-4

"Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

The following statement creates a table called `bin_num_xtbl` in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with bin assignments for numerical attributes.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_BIN_NUM('bin_num_xtbl');
END;
/

DESCRIBE bin_num_xtbl
 Name                                    Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                               VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                               VARCHAR2(4000)
 VAL                                               NUMBER
 BIN                                               VARCHAR2(4000)
```

CREATE_CLIP Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for clipping or winsorizing to minimize the effect of outliers. The columns are described in Table 46–8.

Table 46–8 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Clipping or Winsorizing

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of numerical data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is a nested column of DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS. If *col* is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.
lcut	NUMBER	The lowest typical value for the attribute. If the attribute values were plotted on an *xy* axis, *lcut* would be the left-most boundary of the range of values considered typical for this attribute. Any values to the left of *lcut* are outliers.
lval	NUMBER	Value assigned to an outlier to the left of *lcut*
rcut	NUMBER	The highest typical value for the attribute If the attribute values were plotted on an *xy* axis, *rcut* would be the right-most boundary of the range of values considered typical for this attribute. Any values to the right of *rcut* are outliers.
rval	NUMBER	Value assigned to an outlier to the right of *rcut*

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_CLIP (
     clip_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
     clip_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–9 CREATE_CLIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
clip_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
clip_schema_name	Schema of *clip_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
3. You can use the following procedures to populate the transformation definition table:
   - INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure — replaces outliers with nulls

- INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure — replaces outliers with an average value

See Also:

"Outlier Treatment" on page 46-5

"Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

The following statement creates a table called `clip_xtbl` in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with clipping instructions for numerical attributes.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_CLIP('clip_xtbl');
END;
/

DESCRIBE clip_xtbl
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                                VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
 LCUT                                               NUMBER
 LVAL                                               NUMBER
 RCUT                                               NUMBER
 RVAL                                               NUMBER
```

CREATE_COL_REM Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for removing columns from the data table. The columns are described in Table 46–10.

Table 46–10 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Column Removal

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is nested (DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS or DM_NESTED_CATEGORICALS). If col is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_COL_REM (
      rem_table_name           VARCHAR2,
      rem_schema_name          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–11 CREATE_COL_REM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rem_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
rem_schema_name	Schema of *rem_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
2. See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

The following statement creates a table called rem_att_xtbl in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with the names of attributes to exclude from the data to be mined.

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_COL_REM ('rem_att_xtbl');
END;
 /
DESCRIBE rem_att_xtbl
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                                VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
```

CREATE_MISS_CAT Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for replacing categorical missing values. The columns are described in Table 46–12.

Table 46–12 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Missing Value Treatment

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of categorical data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is a nested column of DM_NESTED_CATEGORICALS. If *col* is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.
val	VARCHAR2(4000)	Replacement for missing values in the attribute

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_MISS_CAT (
     miss_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
     miss_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–13 CREATE_MISS_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about categorical data.
2. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
3. You can use the INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure to populate the transformation definition table.

See Also:

"Missing Value Treatment" on page 46-5

"Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

The following statement creates a table called miss_cat_xtbl in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with values for missing data in categorical attributes.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_MISS_CAT('miss_cat_xtbl');
```

```
END;
/

DESCRIBE miss_cat_xtbl
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                                VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
 VAL                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
```

CREATE_MISS_NUM Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for replacing numerical missing values. The columns are described in Table 46–14.

Table 46–14 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Numerical Missing Value Treatment

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of numerical data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is a nested column of DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS. If *col* is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.
val	NUMBER	Replacement for missing values in the attribute

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_MISS_NUM (
     miss_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
     miss_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–15 CREATE_MISS_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
3. You can use the INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure to populate the transformation definition table.

See Also:

"Missing Value Treatment" on page 46-5

"Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Example

The following statement creates a table called miss_num_xtbl in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with values for missing data in numerical attributes.

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_MISS_NUM('miss_num_xtbl');
```

```
END;
/

DESCRIBE miss_num_xtbl
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                                VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
 VAL                                                NUMBER
```

CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation definition table for linear normalization. The columns are described in Table 46–16.

Table 46–16 Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Linear Normalization

Name	Datatype	Description
col	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column of numerical data. If the column is not nested, the column name is also the attribute name. For information about attribute names, see *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide*.
att	VARCHAR2(4000)	The attribute subname if *col* is a nested column of DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS. If *col* is nested, the attribute name is *col.att*. If *col* is not nested, *att* is null.
shift	NUMBER	A constant to subtract from the attribute values
scale	NUMBER	A constant by which to divide the shifted values

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_NORM_LIN (
     norm_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
     norm_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 46–17 CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
norm_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table to be created
norm_schema_name	Schema of *norm_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. See "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10 for information about transformation definition tables and nested data.
3. You can use the following procedures to populate the transformation definition table:
   - INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure — Uses linear min-max normalization
   - INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure — Uses linear scale normalization
   - INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure — Uses linear zscore normalization

See Also:

"Linear Normalization" on page 46-4

"Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

The following statement creates a table called `norm_xtbl` in the current schema. The table has columns that can be populated with shift and scale values for normalizing numerical attributes.

```
BEGIN
     DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_NORM_LIN('norm_xtbl');
END;
/

DESCRIBE norm_xtbl
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 COL                                                VARCHAR2(30)
 ATT                                                VARCHAR2(4000)
 SHIFT                                              NUMBER
 SCALE                                              NUMBER
```

DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure

This procedure describes the columns of the data table after a list of transformations has been applied. Only the columns that are specified in the transformation list are transformed. The remaining columns in the data table are included in the output without changes.

To create a view of the data table after the transformations have been applied, use the XFORM_STACK Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.DESCRIBE_STACK (
     xform_list           IN  TRANSFORM_LIST,
     data_table_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
     describe_list        OUT DESCRIBE_LIST,
     data_schema_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–18 DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xform_list	A list of transformations. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
describe_list	Descriptions of the columns in the data table after the transformations specified in *xform_list* have been applied. See Table 46–1 for a description of the DESCRIBE_LIST object type.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6 for information about transformation lists and embedded transformations.

Examples

This example shows the column name and datatype, the column name length, and the column maximum length for the view dmuser.cust_info after the transformation list has been applied. All the transformations are user-specified. The results of DESCRIBE_STACK do not include one of the columns in the original table, because the SET_TRANSFORM procedure sets that column to NULL.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW cust_info AS
         SELECT a.cust_id, c.country_id, c.cust_year_of_birth,
         CAST(COLLECT(DM_Nested_Numerical(
                  b.prod_name, 1))
                AS DM_Nested_Numericals) custprods
                 FROM sh.sales a, sh.products b, sh.customers c
                  WHERE a.prod_id = b.prod_id AND
                        a.cust_id=c.cust_id and
                        a.cust_id between 100001 AND 105000
         GROUP BY a.cust_id, country_id, cust_year_of_birth;

describe cust_info
```

```
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 COUNTRY_ID                                NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUSTPRODS                                          SYS.DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS

DECLARE
  cust_stack   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
  cust_cols    dbms_data_mining_transform.DESCRIBE_LIST;
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
     'country_id', NULL, 'country_id/10', 'country_id*10');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
      'cust_year_of_birth', NULL, NULL, NULL);
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
      'custprods', 'Mouse Pad', 'value*100', 'value/100');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.DESCRIBE_STACK(
       xform_list => cust_stack,
       data_table_name => 'cust_info',
       describe_list => cust_cols);
  dbms_output.put_line('====');
  for i in 1..cust_cols.COUNT loop
    dbms_output.put_line('COLUMN_NAME:     '||cust_cols(i).col_name);
    dbms_output.put_line('COLUMN_TYPE:     '||cust_cols(i).col_type);
    dbms_output.put_line('COLUMN_NAME_LEN: '||cust_cols(i).col_name_len);
    dbms_output.put_line('COLUMN_MAX_LEN:  '||cust_cols(i).col_max_len);
    dbms_output.put_line('====');
  END loop;
END;
/
====
COLUMN_NAME:     CUST_ID
COLUMN_TYPE:     2
COLUMN_NAME_LEN: 7
COLUMN_MAX_LEN:  22
====
COLUMN_NAME:     COUNTRY_ID
COLUMN_TYPE:     2
COLUMN_NAME_LEN: 10
COLUMN_MAX_LEN:  22
====
COLUMN_NAME:     CUSTPRODS
COLUMN_TYPE:     100001
COLUMN_NAME_LEN: 9
COLUMN_MAX_LEN:  40
====
```

GET_EXPRESSION Function

This function returns a row from a VARCHAR2 array that stores a transformation expression. The array is built by calls to the SET_EXPRESSION Procedure.

The array can be used for specifying SQL expressions that are too long to be used with the SET_TRANSFORM Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.GET_EXPRESSION (
     expression           IN EXPRESSION_REC,
     chunk_num            IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 46–19 GET_EXPRESSION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
expression	An expression record (EXPRESSION_REC) that specifies a transformation expression or a reverse transformation expression for an attribute. Each expression record includes a VARCHAR2 array and index fields for specifying upper and lower boundaries within the array. There are two EXPRESSION_REC fields within a transformation record (TRANSFORM_REC): one for the transformation expression; the other for the reverse transformation expression. See Table 46–1 for a description of the EXPRESSION_REC type.
chunk	A VARCHAR2 chunk (row) to be appended to *expression*.

Usage Notes

1. Chunk numbering starts with one. For chunks outside of the range, the return value is null. When a chunk number is null the whole expression is returned as a string. If the expression is too big, a VALUE_ERROR is raised.
2. See "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7.
3. See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

See the example for the SET_EXPRESSION Procedure.

INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure

This procedure performs numerical binning and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. The procedure identifies the minimum and maximum values and computes the bin boundaries at equal intervals.

INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH computes the number of bins separately for each column. If you want to use equi-width binning with the same number of bins for each column, use the INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure.

INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH bins all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH (
     bin_table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
     bin_num                IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 3,
     max_bin_num            IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 100,
     exclude_list           IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     round_num              IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 6,
     sample_size            IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 50000,
     bin_schema_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     rem_table_name         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     rem_schema_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL));
```

Parameters

Table 46–20 INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL NUMBER BIN VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_BIN_NUM creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
bin_num	Minimum number of bins. If *bin_num* is 0 or NULL, it is ignored. The default value of *bin_num* is 3.
max_bin_num	Maximum number of bins. If *max_bin_num* is 0 or NULL, it is ignored. The default value of *max_bin_num* is 100.
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from the binning process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns in the data source are binned. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col*1*','col*2*', ...'col*n*')

Table 46–20 (Cont.) INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
round_num	Specifies how to round the number in the VAL column of the transformation definition table. When *round_num* is positive, it specifies the most significant digits to retain. When *round_num* is negative, it specifies the least significant digits to remove. In both cases, the result is rounded to the specified number of digits. See the Usage Notes for an example. The default value of *round_num* is 6.
sample_size	Size of the data sample. If *sample_size* is less than the total number of non-NULL values in the column, then *sample_size* is used instead of the SQL COUNT function in computing the number of bins. If *sample_size* is 0 or NULL, it is ignored. See the Usage Notes. The default value of *sample_size* is 50,000.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
rem_table_name	Name of a transformation definition table for column removal. The table must have the columns described in "CREATE_COL_REM Procedure" on page 46-25. INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH ignores columns with all nulls or only one unique value. If you specify a value for *rem_table_name*, these columns are removed from the mining data. If you do not specify a value for *rem_table_name*, these unbinned columns remain in the data.
rem_schema_name	Schema of *rem_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH computes the number of bins for a column based on the number of non-null values (COUNT), the maximum (MAX), the minimum (MIN), the standard deviation (STDDEV), and the constant C=3.49/0.9:

   ```
   N=floor(power(COUNT,1/3)*(max-min)/(c*dev))
   ```

   If the *sample_size* parameter is specified, it is used instead of COUNT.

   See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the COUNT, MAX, MIN, STDDEV, FLOOR, and POWER functions.
3. INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH uses absolute values to compute the number of bins. The sign of the parameters *bin_num*, *max_bin_num*, and *sample_size* has no effect on the result.
4. In computing the number of bins, INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH evaluates the following criteria in the following order:
   1. The minimum number of bins (*bin_num*)
   2. The maximum number of bins (*max_bin_num*)
   3. The maximum number of bins for integer columns, calculated as the number of distinct values in the range *max-min+1*.
5. The *round_num* parameter controls the rounding of column values in the transformation definition table, as follows:

```
    For a value of 308.162:
    when round_num =  1       result is 300
    when round_num =  2       result is 310
    when round_num =  3       result is 308
    when round_num =  0       result is 308.162
    when round_num = -1       result is 308.16
    when round_num = -2       result is 308.2
```

Examples

In this example, INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH computes the bin boundaries for the cust_year_of_birth column in sh.customers and inserts the transformations in a transformation definition table. The STACK_BIN_NUM Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table. The CREATE_MODEL Procedure embeds the transformation list in a new model called nb_model.

The transformation and reverse transformation expressions embedded in nb_model are returned by the GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_postal_code
       FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH             NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE               NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)

BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_NUM(
     bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH (
     bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl',
     data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
     bin_num          => 3,
     max_bin_num      => 5,
     exclude_list     => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
END;
/

set numwidth 4
column val off
SELECT col, val, bin FROM bin_tbl
      ORDER BY val ASC;

COL                         VAL BIN
------------------------- ---- -----
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH        1913
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH        1928 1
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH        1944 2
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH        1959 3
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH        1975 4
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH        1990 5

DECLARE
     year_birth_xform   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
     dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_NUM (
         bin_table_name           => 'bin_tbl',
```

```
         xform_list               =>  year_birth_xform);
     dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL(
         model_name              => 'nb_model',
         mining_function         => dbms_data_mining.classification,
         data_table_name         => 'mining_data',
         case_id_column_name     => 'cust_id',
         target_column_name      => 'cust_postal_code',
         settings_table_name     => null,
         data_schema_name        => null,
         settings_schema_name    => null,
         xform_list              => year_birth_xform);
END;
/

SELECT attribute_name
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('nb_model'));

ATTRIBUTE_NAME
------------------------
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH

SELECT expression
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('nb_model'));

EXPRESSION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<1913 THEN NULL WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1928.4
 THEN '1' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1943.8 THEN '2' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"
<=1959.2 THEN '3' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1974.6 THEN '4' WHEN
"CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" <=1990 THEN '5' END

SELECT reverse_expression
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('nb_model'));

REVERSE_EXPRESSION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DECODE("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",'5','(1974.6; 1990]','1','[1913; 1928.4]','2','(1928
.4; 1943.8]','3','(1943.8; 1959.2]','4','(1959.2; 1974.6]',NULL,'( ; 1913), (199
0;  ), NULL')
```

INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ Procedure

This procedure performs categorical binning and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. The procedure computes the bin boundaries based on frequency.

INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ bins all the CHAR and VARCHAR2 columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ (
     bin_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
     bin_num              IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 9,
     exclude_list         IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     default_num          IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 2,
     bin_support          IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
     bin_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–21 INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure to create the definition table.The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL VARCHAR2(4000) BIN VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_BIN_CAT creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
bin_num	The number of bins to fill using frequency-based binning The total number of bins will be *bin_num*+1. The additional bin is the default bin. Classes that are not assigned to a frequency-based bin will be assigned to the default bin. The default binning order is from highest to lowest: the most frequently occurring class is assigned to the first bin, the second most frequently occurring class is assigned to the second bin, and so on.You can reverse the binning order by specifying a negative number for *bin_num*. The negative sign causes the binning order to be from lowest to highest. If the total number of distinct values (classes) in the column is less than *bin_num*, then a separate bin will be created for each value and the default bin will be empty. If you specify NULL or 0 for *bin_num*, no binning is performed. The default value of *bin_num* is 9.

Table 46–21 (Cont.) INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
exclude_list	List of categorical columns to be excluded from the binning process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all categorical columns in the data source are binned. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
default_num	The number of class occurrences (rows of the same class) required for assignment to the default bin By default, *default_num* is the minimum number of occurrences required for assignment to the default bin. For example, if *default_num* is 3 and a given class occurs only once, it will not be assigned to the default bin. You can change the occurrence requirement from minimum to maximum by specifying a negative number for *default_num*. For example, if *default_num* is -3 and a given class occurs only once, it *will* be assigned to the default bin, but a class that occurs four or more times will not be included. If you specify NULL or 0 for *default_bin*, there are no requirements for assignment to the default bin. The default value of *default_num* is 2.
bin_support	The number of class occurrences (rows of the same class) required for assignment to a frequency-based bin. *bin_support* is expressed as a fraction of the total number of rows. By default, *bin_support* is the minimum percentage required for assignment to a frequency-based bin. For example, if there are twenty rows of data and you specify.2 for *bin_support*, then there must be four or more occurrences of a class (.2*20) in order for it to be assigned to a frequency-based bin. You can change *bin_support* from a minimum percentage to a maximum percentage by specifying a negative number for *bin_support*. For example, if there are twenty rows of data and you specify -.2 for *bin_support*, then there must be four or less occurrences of a class in order for it to be assigned to a frequency-based bin. Classes that occur less than a positive *bin_support* or more than a negative *bin_support* will be assigned to the default bin. If you specify NULL or 0 for *bin_support*, then there is no support requirement for frequency-based binning. The default value of *bin_support* is NULL.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about categorical data.
2. If values occur with the same frequency, INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ assigns them in descending order when binning is from most to least frequent, or in ascending order when binning is from least to most frequent.

Examples

1. In this example, INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ computes the bin boundaries for the cust_postal_code and cust_city columns in sh.customers and inserts the transformations in a transformation definition table. The STACK_BIN_CAT

Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table, and the CREATE_MODEL Procedure embeds the transformation list in a new model called nb_model.

The transformation and reverse transformation expressions embedded in nb_model are returned by the GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
          SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_postal_code, cust_city
          FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE                          NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CITY                                 NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)

BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_CAT(
       bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl_1');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ (
       bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl_1',
       data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
       bin_num          => 4);
END;
/

column col format a18
column val format a15
column bin format a10
SELECT col, val, bin
       FROM bin_tbl_1
       ORDER BY col ASC, bin ASC;

COL                VAL             BIN
------------------ --------------- ----------
CUST_CITY          Los Angeles     1
CUST_CITY          Greenwich       2
CUST_CITY          Killarney       3
CUST_CITY          Montara         4
CUST_CITY                          5
CUST_POSTAL_CODE   38082           1
CUST_POSTAL_CODE   63736           2
CUST_POSTAL_CODE   55787           3
CUST_POSTAL_CODE   78558           4
CUST_POSTAL_CODE                   5

DECLARE
      city_xform   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
      dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_CAT (
          bin_table_name           => 'bin_tbl_1',
          xform_list               =>  city_xform);
      dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL(
           model_name              => 'nb_model',
           mining_function         => dbms_data_mining.classification,
           data_table_name         => 'mining_data',
           case_id_column_name     => 'cust_id',
           target_column_name      => 'cust_city',
```

```
           settings_table_name     => null,
           data_schema_name        => null,
           settings_schema_name    => null,
           xform_list              => city_xform);
END;
/

SELECT attribute_name
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('nb_model'));

ATTRIBUTE_NAME
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
CUST_CITY
CUST_POSTAL_CODE

SELECT expression
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('nb_model'));

EXPRESSION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DECODE("CUST_CITY",'Greenwich','2','Killarney','3','Los Angeles','1',
'Montara','4',NULL,NULL,'5')
DECODE("CUST_POSTAL_
CODE",'38082','1','55787','3','63736','2','78558','4',NULL,NULL,'5')

SELECT reverse_expression
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('nb_model'));

REVERSE_EXPRESSION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DECODE("CUST_CITY",'2','''Greenwich''','3','''Killarney''','1',
'''Los Angeles''','4','''Montara''',NULL,'NULL','5','DEFAULT')
DECODE("CUST_POSTAL_CODE",'1','''38082''','3','''55787''','2','''63736''',
'4','''78558''',NULL,'NULL','5','DEFAULT')
```

2. The binning order in example 1 is from most frequent to least frequent. The following example shows reverse order binning (least frequent to most frequent). The binning order is reversed by setting *bin_num* to -4 instead of 4.

```
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_CAT(
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl_reverse');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ (
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl_reverse',
        data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
        bin_num          => -4);
 END;
 /

column col format a20
SELECT col, val, bin
       FROM bin_tbl_reverse
       ORDER BY col ASC, bin ASC;

COL                  VAL             BIN
-------------------- --------------- ----------
CUST_CITY            Tokyo           1
CUST_CITY            Sliedrecht      2
CUST_CITY            Haarlem         3
CUST_CITY            Diemen          4
```

```
CUST_CITY                                5
CUST_POSTAL_CODE      49358              1
CUST_POSTAL_CODE      80563              2
CUST_POSTAL_CODE      74903              3
CUST_POSTAL_CODE      71349              4
CUST_POSTAL_CODE                         5
```

INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure

This procedure performs numerical binning and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. The procedure identifies the minimum and maximum values and computes the bin boundaries at equal intervals.

INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH computes a specified number of bins (*n*) and assigns *(max-min)/n* values to each bin. The number of bins is the same for each column. If you want to use equi-width binning, but you want the number of bins to be calculated on a per-column basis, use the INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure.

INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH bins all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH (
     bin_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
     bin_num               IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 10,
     exclude_list          IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     round_num             IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 6,
     bin_schema_name       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–22 INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL NUMBER BIN VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_BIN_NUM creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
bin_num	Number of bins. No binning occurs if *bin_num* is 0 or NULL. The default number of bins is 10.
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from the binning process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns in the data source are binned. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col*1*','col*2*', ...'col*n*')

Table 46–22 (Cont.) INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
round_num	Specifies how to round the number in the VAL column of the transformation definition table. When *round_num* is positive, it specifies the most significant digits to retain. When *round_num* is negative, it specifies the least significant digits to remove. In both cases, the result is rounded to the specified number of digits. See the Usage Notes for an example. The default value of *round_num* is 6.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. The *round_num* parameter controls the rounding of column values in the transformation definition table, as follows:

```
For a value of 308.162:
when round_num =  1       result is 300
when round_num =  2       result is 310
when round_num =  3       result is 308
when round_num =  0       result is 308.162
when round_num = -1       result is 308.16
when round_num = -2       result is 308.2
```

3. INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH ignores columns with all NULL values or only one unique value.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH computes the bin boundaries for the affinity_card column in mining_data_build and inserts the transformations in a transformation definition table. The STACK_BIN_NUM Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table. The CREATE_MODEL Procedure embeds the transformation list in a new model called glm_model.

The transformation and reverse transformation expressions embedded in glm_model are returned by the GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS Function.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, cust_income_level, cust_gender, affinity_card
       FROM mining_data_build;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                      Null?    Type
 ------------------------- -------- -----------------
 CUST_ID                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_INCOME_LEVEL                  VARCHAR2(30)
 CUST_GENDER                        VARCHAR2(1)
 AFFINITY_CARD                      NUMBER(10)

BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_NUM(
```

```
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH (
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl',
        data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
        bin_num          => 4,
        exclude_list     => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
END;
/

set numwidth 10
column val off
column col format a20
column bin format a10
SELECT col, val, bin FROM bin_tbl
    ORDER BY val ASC;

COL                          VAL  BIN
-------------------- ----------  ----------
AFFINITY_CARD                 0
AFFINITY_CARD               .25  1
AFFINITY_CARD                .5  2
AFFINITY_CARD               .75  3
AFFINITY_CARD                 1  4

CREATE TABLE glmsettings(
        setting_name  VARCHAR2(30),
        setting_value VARCHAR2(30));

BEGIN
   INSERT INTO glmsettings (setting_name, setting_value) VALUES
         (dbms_data_mining.algo_name, dbms_data_mining.algo_generalized_linear_
model);
   COMMIT;
END;
/

DECLARE
     xforms   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
     dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_NUM (
         bin_table_name           => 'bin_tbl',
         xform_list               =>  xforms,
         literal_flag             =>  TRUE);
     dbms_data_mining.CREATE_MODEL(
         model_name              => 'glm_model',
         mining_function         => dbms_data_mining.regression,
         data_table_name         => 'mining_data',
         case_id_column_name     => 'cust_id',
         target_column_name      => 'affinity_card',
         settings_table_name     => 'glmsettings',
         data_schema_name        => null,
         settings_schema_name    => null,
         xform_list              => xforms);
END;
/

SELECT attribute_name
      FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('glm_model'));

ATTRIBUTE_NAME
```

```
------------------------
AFFINITY_CARD

SELECT expression
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('glm_model'));

EXPRESSION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
CASE WHEN "AFFINITY_CARD"<0 THEN NULL WHEN "AFFINITY_CARD"<=.25 THEN 1 WHEN
"AFFINITY_CARD"<=.5 THEN 2 WHEN "AFFINITY_CARD"<=.75 THEN 3 WHEN
"AFFINITY_CARD"<=1 THEN 4 END

SELECT reverse_expression
       FROM TABLE(dbms_data_mining.GET_MODEL_TRANSFORMATIONS('glm_model'));

REVERSE_EXPRESSION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
DECODE("AFFINITY_CARD",4,'(.75; 1]',1,'[0; .25]',2,'(.25; .5]',3,'(.5; .75]',
NULL,'( ; 0), (1;  ), NULL')
```

INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE Procedure

This procedure performs numerical binning and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. The procedure calls the SQL NTILE function to order the data and divide it equally into the specified number of bins (quantiles).

INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE bins all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE (
    bin_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
    bin_num              IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 10,
    exclude_list         IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
    bin_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–23 INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL NUMBER BIN VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_BIN_NUM creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
bin_num	Number of bins. No binning occurs if *bin_num* is 0 or NULL. The default number of bins is 10.
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from the binning process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns in the data source are binned. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col*1*','col*2*', ...'col*n*')
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. After dividing the data into quantiles, the NTILE function distributes any remainder values one for each quantile, starting with the first. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for details.

3. Columns with all NULL values are ignored by INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE computes the bin boundaries for the cust_year_of_birth and cust_credit_limit columns in sh.customers and inserts the transformations in a transformation definition table. The STACK_BIN_NUM Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in STACK_VIEW. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
        SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_credit_limit, cust_city
        FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                         NUMBER
 CUST_CITY                                 NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_NUM(
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE (
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_tbl',
        data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
        bin_num          => 3,
        exclude_list     => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
END;
/

set numwidth 8
column val off
column col format a20
column bin format a10
SELECT col, val, bin
      FROM bin_tbl
      ORDER BY col ASC, val ASC;

COL                       VAL BIN
-------------------- -------- ----------
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT        1500
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT        3000 1
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT        9000 2
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT       15000 3
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH       1913
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH       1949 1
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH       1965 2
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH       1990 3

DECLARE
   xforms   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_NUM (
        bin_table_name        => 'bin_tbl',
```

```
        xform_list           =>  xforms);
   dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
        xform_list           =>  xforms,
        data_table_name      => 'mining_data',
        xform_view_name      => 'stack_view');
END;
/

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name in 'STACK_VIEW';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID",CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<1913 THEN NULL WHEN "CUST_YEAR_O
F_BIRTH"<=1949 THEN '1' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1965 THEN '2' WHEN "CUST_YEAR
_OF_BIRTH"<=1990 THEN '3' END "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",CASE WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"
<1500 THEN NULL WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=3000 THEN '1' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"
<=9000 THEN '2' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=15000 THEN '3' END "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"
,"CUST_CITY" FROM mining_data
```

INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure

This procedure performs numerical and categorical binning and inserts the transformation definitions in transformation definition tables. The procedure computes bin boundaries based on intrinsic relationships between predictors and a target.

INSERT_BIN_SUPER uses an intelligent binning technique known as **supervised binning**. It builds a single-predictor decision tree and derives the bin boundaries from splits within the tree.

INSERT_BIN_SUPER bins all the VARCHAR2, CHAR, NUMBER, and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_BIN_SUPER (
    num_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
    cat_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    target_column_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    max_bin_num           IN PLS_INTEGER  DEFAULT 1000,
    exclude_list          IN COLUMN_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
    num_schema_name       IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT NULL,
    cat_schema_name       IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT NULL,
    rem_table_name        IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT NULL,
    rem_schema_name       IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–24 INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
num_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL VNUMBER BIN VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_BIN_NUM creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_BIN_SUPER.
cat_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL VARCHAR2(4000) BIN VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_BIN_CAT creates an additional column, ATT, which is used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_BIN_SUPER.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
target_column_name	Name of a column to be used as the target for the decision tree models

Table 46–24 (Cont.) INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
max_bin_num	The maximum number of bins. The default is 1000.
exclude_list	List of columns to be excluded from the binning process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical and categorical columns in the data source are binned. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
num_schema_name	Schema of *num_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
cat_schema_name	Schema of *cat_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
rem_table_name	Name of a column removal definition table. The table must have the columns described in "CREATE_COL_REM Procedure" on page 46-25. You can use CREATE_COL_REM to create the table. See Usage Notes.
rem_schema_name	Schema of *rem_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical and categorical data.
2. Columns that have no significant splits are not binned. You can remove the unbinned columns from the mining data by specifying a column removal definition table. If you do not specify a column removal definition table, the unbinned columns remain in the mining data.
3. See *Oracle Data Mining Concepts* to learn more about decision trees in Oracle Data Mining

Examples

In this example, INSERT_BIN_SUPER computes the bin boundaries for predictors of cust_credit_limit and inserts the transformations in transformation definition tables. One predictor is numerical, the other is categorical. (INSERT_BIN_SUPER determines that the cust_postal_code column is not a significant predictor.) STACK procedures create transformation lists from the contents of the definition tables.

The SQL expressions that compute the transformations are shown in the views MINING_DATA_STACK_NUM and MINING_DATA_STACK_CAT. The views are for display purposes only; they cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
     SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_marital_status,
            cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
     FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- -----------------------------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
```

```
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH              NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                      VARCHAR2(20)
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE                NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                        NUMBER

BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_NUM(
         bin_table_name      => 'bin_num_tbl');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_CAT(
         bin_table_name      => 'bin_cat_tbl');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_COL_REM(
         rem_table_name      => 'rem_tbl');
END;
/

BEGIN
   COMMIT;
   dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_SUPER (
      num_table_name      => 'bin_num_tbl',
      cat_table_name      => 'bin_cat_tbl',
      data_table_name     => 'mining_data',
      target_column_name  => 'cust_credit_limit',
      max_bin_num         =>  4,
      exclude_list        =>  dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'),
      num_schema_name     => 'dmuser',
      cat_schema_name     => 'dmuser',
      data_schema_name    => 'dmuser',
      rem_table_name      => 'rem_tbl',
      rem_schema_name     => 'dmuser');
   COMMIT;
END;
/

set numwidth 8
column val off
SELECT col, val, bin FROM bin_num_tbl
      ORDER BY bin ASC;

COL                        VAL BIN
-------------------- -------- ----------
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH     1923.5 1
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH     1923.5 1
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH     1945.5 2
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH     1980.5 3
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH            4

column val on
column val format a20
SELECT col, val, bin FROM bin_cat_tbl
      ORDER BY bin ASC;

COL                  VAL                  BIN
-------------------- -------------------- ----------
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  married              1
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  single               2
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  Mar-AF               3
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  Mabsent              3
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  Divorc.              3
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  Married              3
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  Widowed              3
```

```
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  NeverM              3
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  Separ.              3
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  divorced            4
CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  widow               4

SELECT col from rem_tbl;

COL
--------------------
CUST_POSTAL_CODE

DECLARE
    xforms_num      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
    xforms_cat      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
    BEGIN
       dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_NUM (
            bin_table_name    => 'bin_num_tbl',
            xform_list        => xforms_num);
       dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
            xform_list         => xforms_num,
            data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
            xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack_num');
       dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_CAT (
             bin_table_name    => 'bin_cat_tbl',
             xform_list        => xforms_cat);
       dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
             xform_list         => xforms_cat,
             data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
             xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack_cat');
   END;
 /

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK_NUM';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID",CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<1923.5 THEN '1' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_
OF_BIRTH"<=1923.5 THEN '1' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1945.5 THEN '2' WHEN "CUST
_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"<=1980.5 THEN '3' WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" IS NOT NULL THEN '4'
END "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH","CUST_MARITAL_STATUS","CUST_POSTAL_CODE","CUST_CREDIT_L
IMIT" FROM mining_data


SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK_CAT';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",DECODE("CUST_MARITAL_STATUS",'Divorc.','3'
,'Mabsent','3','Mar-AF','3','Married','3','NeverM','3','Separ.','3','Widowed','3
','divorced','4','married','1','single','2','widow','4') "CUST_MARITAL_STATUS","
CUST_POSTAL_CODE","CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" FROM mining_data
```

INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure

This procedure replaces numeric outliers with nulls and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table.

INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL computes the boundaries of the data based on a specified percentage. It removes the values that fall outside the boundaries (tail values) from the data. If you wish to replace the tail values instead of removing them, use the INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure.

INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL clips all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL (
    clip_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
    tail_frac           IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0.025,
    exclude_list        IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
    clip_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–25 INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
clip_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical clipping. You can use the CREATE_CLIP Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) LCUT NUMBER LVAL NUMBER RCUT NUMBER RVAL NUMBER CREATE_CLIP creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
tail_frac	The percentage of non-null values to be designated as outliers at each end of the data. For example, if *tail_frac* is .01, then 1% of the data at the low end and 1% of the data at the high end will be treated as outliers. If *tail_frac* is greater than or equal to .5, no clipping occurs. The default value of *tail_frac* is 0.025.
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from the clipping process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns in the data are clipped. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col*1*','col*2*', ...'col*n*')
clip_schema_name	Schema of *clip_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Table 46–25 (Cont.) INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. The DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package provides two clipping procedures: INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL and INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL. Both procedures compute the boundaries as follows:
   - Count the number of non-null values, ***n***, and sort them in ascending order
   - Calculate the number of outliers, ***t***, as ***n*tail_frac***
   - Define the lower boundary ***lcut*** as the value at position ***1+floor(t)***
   - Define the upper boundary ***rcut*** as the value at position ***n-floor(t)***

     (The SQL FLOOR function returns the largest integer less than or equal to ***t***.)
   - All values that are <= ***lcut*** or => ***rcut*** are designated as outliers.

   INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL replaces the outliers with nulls, effectively removing them from the data.

   INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL assigns ***lcut*** to the low outliers and ***rcut*** to the high outliers.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL trims 10% of the data in two columns (5% from the high end and 5% from the low end) and inserts the transformations in a transformation definition table. The STACK_CLIP Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the trimming is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_credit_limit, cust_city
       FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- --------------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH             NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                       NUMBER
 CUST_CITY                      NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_CLIP(
      clip_table_name    => 'clip_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL(
      clip_table_name    => 'clip_tbl',
      data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
      tail_frac          => 0.05,
      exclude_list       => DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
```

```
END;
/

SELECT col, lcut, lval, rcut, rval
      FROM clip_tbl
      ORDER BY col ASC;

COL                     LCUT     LVAL     RCUT     RVAL
-------------------- -------- -------- -------- --------
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT        1500            11000
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH       1934             1982

DECLARE
     xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
     dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_CLIP (
          clip_table_name    => 'clip_tbl',
          xform_list         => xforms);
     dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
          xform_list         => xforms,
          data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
          xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
 END;
 /

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID",CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" < 1934 THEN NULL WHEN "CUST_YEAR
_OF_BIRTH" > 1982 THEN NULL ELSE "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" END "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",C
ASE WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" < 1500 THEN NULL WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" > 11000 T
HEN NULL ELSE "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" END "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT","CUST_CITY" FROM minin
g_data
```

INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure

This procedure replaces numeric outliers with the upper or lower boundary values. It inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table.

INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL computes the boundaries of the data based on a specified percentage. It replaces the values that fall outside the boundaries (tail values) with the related boundary value. If you wish to set tail values to null, use the INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL Procedure.

INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL clips all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL (
    clip_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    tail_frac          IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0.025,
    exclude_list       IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
    clip_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–26 INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
clip_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical clipping. You can use the CREATE_CLIP Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) LCUT NUMBER LVAL NUMBER RCUT NUMBER RVAL NUMBER CREATE_CLIP creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
tail_frac	The percentage of non-null values to be designated as outliers at each end of the data. For example, if *tail_frac* is .01, then 1% of the data at the low end and 1% of the data at the high end will be treated as outliers. If *tail_frac* is greater than or equal to .5, no clipping occurs. The default value of *tail_frac* is 0.025.
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from the clipping process. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns in the data are clipped. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')
clip_schema_name	Schema of *clip_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Table 46–26 (Cont.) INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. The DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM package provides two clipping procedures: INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL and INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL. Both procedures compute the boundaries as follows:
   - Count the number of non-null values, ***n***, and sort them in ascending order
   - Calculate the number of outliers, ***t***, as ***n*tail_frac***
   - Define the lower boundary ***lcut*** as the value at position ***1+floor(t)***
   - Define the upper boundary ***rcut*** as the value at position ***n-floor(t)***

     (The SQL FLOOR function returns the largest integer less than or equal to ***t***.)
   - All values that are <= ***lcut*** or => ***rcut*** are designated as outliers.

   INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL assigns ***lcut*** to the low outliers and ***rcut*** to the high outliers.

   INSERT_CLIP_TRIM_TAIL replaces the outliers with nulls, effectively removing them from the data.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL winsorizes 10% of the data in two columns (5% from the high end, and 5% from the low end) and inserts the transformations in a transformation definition table. The STACK_CLIP Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
        SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_credit_limit, cust_city
        FROM sh.customers;

describe mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- -------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                  NUMBER
 CUST_CITY                                 NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)

BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_CLIP(
      clip_table_name   => 'clip_tbl');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_CLIP_WINSOR_TAIL(
      clip_table_name   => 'clip_tbl',
      data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
      tail_frac         => 0.05,
      exclude_list      => DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
```

```
END;
/

SELECT col, lcut, lval, rcut, rval FROM clip_tbl
   ORDER BY col ASC;
COL                            LCUT     LVAL     RCUT     RVAL
------------------------------ -------- -------- -------- --------
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                 1500     1500    11000    11000
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                1934     1934     1982     1982

DECLARE
   xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_CLIP (
   clip_table_name    => 'clip_tbl',
   xform_list        => xforms);
dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
   xform_list         => xforms,
   data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
   xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
END;
/

set long 3000
SQL> SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID",CASE WHEN "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" < 1934 THEN 1934 WHEN "CUST_YEAR
_OF_BIRTH" > 1982 THEN 1982 ELSE "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH" END "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",C
ASE WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" < 1500 THEN 1500 WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" > 11000 T
HEN 11000 ELSE "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" END "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT","CUST_CITY" FROM mini
ng_data
```

INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure

This procedure replaces missing categorical values with the value that occurs most frequently in the column (the mode). It inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table.

INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE replaces missing values in all VARCHAR2 and CHAR columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE (
    miss_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    exclude_list       IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
    miss_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–27 INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical missing value treatment. You can use the CREATE_MISS_CAT Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL VARCHAR2(4000) CREATE_MISS_CAT creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
exclude_list	List of categorical columns to be excluded from missing value treatment. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all categorical columns are transformed. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about categorical data.
2. If you wish to replace categorical missing values with a value other than the mode, you can edit the transformation definition table.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about default missing value treatment in Oracle Data Mining

Example

In this example, INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE computes missing value treatment for cust_city and inserts the transformation in a transformation definition table. The STACK_MISS_CAT Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
         SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_city
         FROM sh.customers;

describe mining_data
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- ----------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH             NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_CITY                      NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)

BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.create_miss_cat(
      miss_table_name   => 'missc_tbl');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_miss_cat_mode(
      miss_table_name   => 'missc_tbl',
      data_table_name   => 'mining_data');
END;
/

SELECT stats_mode(cust_city) FROM mining_data;

STATS_MODE(CUST_CITY)
-----------------------------
Los Angeles

SELECT col, val
    from missc_tbl;

COL                            VAL
------------------------------ ------------------------------
CUST_CITY                      Los Angeles

DECLARE
    xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_MISS_CAT (
        miss_table_name    => 'missc_tbl',
        xform_list        => xforms);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
         xform_list         => xforms,
         data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
         xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
END;
/

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",NVL("CUST_CITY",'Los Angeles') "CUST_CITY"
 FROM mining_data
```

INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure

This procedure replaces missing numerical values with the average (the mean) and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table.

INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN replaces missing values in all NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN (
    miss_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    exclude_list       IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
    round_num          IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 6,
    miss_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–28 INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical missing value treatment. You can use the CREATE_MISS_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required by INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN: COL VARCHAR2(30) VAL NUMBER CREATE_MISS_NUM creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from missing value treatment. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns are transformed. The format of *exclude_list* is: dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')
round_num	The number of significant digits to use for the mean. The default number is 6.
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.
2. If you wish to replace numerical missing values with a value other than the mean, you can edit the transformation definition table.

See Also: *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for information about default missing value treatment in Oracle Data Mining

Example

In this example, INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN computes missing value treatment for cust_year_of_birth and inserts the transformation in a transformation definition table. The STACK_MISS_NUM Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
    SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_city
    FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_CITY                                 NOT NULL VARCHAR2(30)

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.create_miss_num(
       miss_table_name   => 'missn_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_miss_num_mean(
       miss_table_name   => 'missn_tbl',
       data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
       exclude_list      => DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
END;
/

set numwidth 4
column val off
SELECT col, val
  FROM missn_tbl;

COL                  VAL
-------------------- ----
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH   1957

SELECT avg(cust_year_of_birth) FROM mining_data;

AVG(CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH)
-----------------------
                   1957

DECLARE
    xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_MISS_NUM (
         miss_table_name    => 'missn_tbl',
         xform_list        => xforms);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
         xform_list         => xforms,
         data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
         xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
```

```
END;
/

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID",NVL("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",1957.4) "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH","CUST_CIT
Y" FROM mining_data
```

INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure

This procedure performs linear normalization and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX computes the minimum and maximum values from the data and sets the value of *shift* and *scale* as follows:

```
shift = min
scale = max - min
```

Normalization is computed as:

```
x_new = (x_old - shift)/scale
```

INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX rounds the value of *scale* to a specified number of significant digits before storing it in the transformation definition table.

INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX normalizes all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX (
     norm_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     exclude_list        IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     round_num           IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 6,
     norm_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–29 INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description

norm_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for linear normalization. You can use the CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required:
	`COL VARCHAR2(30)`
	`SHIFT NUMBER`
	`SCALE NUMBER`
	CREATE_NORM_LIN creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX.

data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from normalization. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns are transformed. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
round_num	The number of significant digits to use for the minimum and maximum. The default number is 6.
norm_schema_name	Schema of *norm_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Table 46–29 (Cont.) INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX normalizes the cust_year_of_birth column and inserts the transformation in a transformation definition table. The STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
         SELECT cust_id, cust_gender, cust_year_of_birth
         FROM sh.customers;

describe mining_data
 Name                                    Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------- -------- ----------------
 CUST_ID                                 NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_GENDER                             NOT NULL CHAR(1)
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                      NOT NULL NUMBER(4)

BEGIN
       dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_NORM_LIN(
         norm_table_name  => 'norm_tbl');
       dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX(
         norm_table_name  => 'norm_tbl',
         data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
         exclude_list     => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST( 'cust_id'),
         round_num        => 3);
END;
/

SELECT col, shift, scale FROM norm_tbl;

COL                               SHIFT      SCALE
------------------------------ ---------- ----------
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                  1910         77

DECLARE
     xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
     dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_NORM_LIN (
          norm_table_name    => 'norm_tbl',
          xform_list        => xforms);
     dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
          xform_list         => xforms,
          data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
          xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
END;
```

```
/

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_GENDER",("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"-1910)/77 "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRT
H" FROM mining_data
```

INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure

This procedure performs linear normalization and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE computes the minimum and maximum values from the data and sets the value of *shift* and *scale* as follows:

```
shift = 0
scale = max(abs(max), abs(min))
```

Normalization is computed as:

```
x_new = (x_old)/scale
```

INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE rounds the value of *scale* to a specified number of significant digits before storing it in the transformation definition table.

INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE normalizes all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data source unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE (
     norm_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     exclude_list        IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     round_num           IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 6,
     norm_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–30 INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description

norm_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for linear normalization. You can use the CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required:
	`COL VARCHAR2(30)`
	`SHIFT NUMBER`
	`SCALE NUMBER`
	CREATE_NORM_LIN creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE.

data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from normalization. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns are transformed. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
round_num	The number of significant digits to use for *scale*. The default number is 6.
norm_schema_name	Schema of *norm_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Table 46–30 (Cont.) INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE normalizes the cust_year_of_birth column and inserts the transformation in a transformation definition table. The STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
      SELECT cust_id, cust_gender, cust_year_of_birth
      FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                              Null?    Type
 --------------------------------- -------- ------------------
 CUST_ID                           NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_GENDER                       NOT NULL CHAR(1)
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                NOT NULL NUMBER(4)

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_NORM_LIN(
       norm_table_name  => 'norm_tbl');
       dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_NORM_LIN_SCALE(
       norm_table_name  => 'norm_tbl',
       data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
       exclude_list     => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST( 'cust_id'),
       round_num        => 3);
 END;
 /

SELECT col, shift, scale FROM norm_tbl;

COL                  SHIFT SCALE
-------------------- ----- -----
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH       0  1990

DECLARE
    xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_NORM_LIN (
        norm_table_name    => 'norm_tbl',
        xform_list        => xforms);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
        xform_list         => xforms,
        data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
        xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
END;
```

```
/

set long 3000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_GENDER",("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"-0)/1990 "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH
" FROM mining_data
```

INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure

This procedure performs linear normalization and inserts the transformation definitions in a transformation definition table. INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE computes the mean and the standard deviation from the data and sets the value of *shift* and *scale* as follows:

```
shift = mean
scale = stddev
```

Normalization is computed as:

```
x_new = (x_old - shift)/scale
```

INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE rounds the value of *scale* to a specified number of significant digits before storing it in the transformation definition table.

INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE normalizes all the NUMBER and FLOAT columns in the data unless you specify a list of columns to ignore.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE (
     norm_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     exclude_list        IN COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     round_num           IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 6,
     norm_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–31 INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description

norm_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for linear normalization. You can use the CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure to create the definition table. The following columns are required:
	`COL VARCHAR2(30)`
	`SHIFT NUMBER`
	`SCALE NUMBER`
	CREATE_NORM_LIN creates an additional column, ATT, which may be used for specifying nested attributes. This column is not used by INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE.

data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to be excluded from normalization. If you do not specify *exclude_list*, all numerical columns are transformed. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
round_num	The number of significant digits to use for *scale*. The default number is 6.
norm_schema_name	Schema of *norm_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Table 46–31 (Cont.) INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for details about numerical data.

Examples

In this example, INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE normalizes the cust_year_of_birth column and inserts the transformation in a transformation definition table. The STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure creates a transformation list from the contents of the definition table.

The SQL expression that computes the transformation is shown in the view MINING_DATA_STACK. The view is for display purposes only; it cannot be used to embed the transformations in a model.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, cust_gender, cust_year_of_birth
       FROM sh.customers;

DESCRIBE mining_data
 Name                              Null?    Type
 --------------------------------- -------- --------------------
 CUST_ID                           NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_GENDER                       NOT NULL CHAR(1)
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                NOT NULL NUMBER(4)

BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_NORM_LIN(
       norm_table_name  => 'norm_tbl');
       dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_NORM_LIN_ZSCORE(
       norm_table_name  => 'norm_tbl',
       data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
       exclude_list     => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST( 'cust_id'),
       round_num        => 3);
END;
/

SELECT col, shift, scale FROM norm_tbl;

COL                  SHIFT SCALE
-------------------- ----- -----
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH    1960    15

DECLARE
    xforms      dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_NORM_LIN (
        norm_table_name    => 'norm_tbl',
        xform_list        => xforms);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
        xform_list         => xforms,
        data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
        xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack');
END;
```

```
/

set long 3000
SQL> SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_STACK';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_GENDER",("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"-1960)/15 "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRT
H" FROM mining_data
```

SET_EXPRESSION Procedure

This procedure appends a row to a VARCHAR2 array that stores a SQL expression. The array can be used for specifying a transformation expression that is too long to be used with the SET_TRANSFORM Procedure.

The GET_EXPRESSION Function returns a row in the array.

When you use SET_EXPRESSION to build a transformation expression, you must build a corresponding reverse transformation expression, create a transformation record, and add the transformation record to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.SET_EXPRESSION (
           expression    IN OUT NOCOPY EXPRESSION_REC,
           chunk                       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–32 SET_EXPRESSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
expression	An expression record (EXPRESSION_REC) that specifies a transformation expression or a reverse transformation expression for an attribute. Each expression record includes a VARCHAR2 array and index fields for specifying upper and lower boundaries within the array. There are two EXPRESSION_REC fields within a transformation record (TRANSFORM_REC): one for the transformation expression; the other for the reverse transformation expression. See Table 46–1 for a description of the EXPRESSION_REC type.
chunk	A VARCHAR2 chunk (row) to be appended to *expression*.

Notes

1. You can pass NULL in the *chunk* argument to SET_EXPRESSION to clear the previous chunk. The default value of *chunk* is NULL.
2. See "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7.
3. See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

In this example, two calls to SET_EXPRESSION construct a transformation expression and two calls construct the reverse transformation.

> **Note:** This example is for illustration purposes only. It shows how SET_EXPRESSION appends the text provided in *chunk* to the text that already exists in *expression*. The SET_EXPRESSION procedure is meant for constructing very long transformation expressions that cannot be specified in a VARCHAR2 argument to SET_TRANSFORM.
>
> Similarly while transformation lists are intended for embedding in a model, the transformation list v_xlst is shown in an external view for illustration purposes.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
       FROM sh.customers;

DECLARE
        v_expr dbms_data_mining_transform.EXPRESSION_REC;
        v_rexp dbms_data_mining_transform.EXPRESSION_REC;
        v_xrec dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_REC;
        v_xlst dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST :=
                                dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST(NULL);
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_EXPRESSION(
         EXPRESSION  => v_expr,
         CHUNK       => '("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"-1910)');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_EXPRESSION(
          EXPRESSION  => v_expr,
          CHUNK       => '/77');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_EXPRESSION(
          EXPRESSION  => v_rexp,
          CHUNK       => '"CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"*77');
    dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_EXPRESSION(
          EXPRESSION  => v_rexp,
          CHUNK       => '+1910');

    v_xrec := null;
    v_xrec.attribute_name := 'CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH';
    v_xrec.expression := v_expr;
    v_xrec.reverse_expression := v_rexp;
    v_xlst.TRIM;
    v_xlst.extend(1);
    v_xlst(1) := v_xrec;

    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
        xform_list           =>  v_xlst,
        data_table_name      => 'mining_data',
        xform_view_name      => 'v_xlst_view');

    dbms_output.put_line('====');
    FOR i IN 1..v_xlst.count LOOP
      dbms_output.put_line('ATTR: '||v_xlst(i).attribute_name);
      dbms_output.put_line('SUBN: '||v_xlst(i).attribute_subname);
      FOR j IN v_xlst(i).expression.lb..v_xlst(i).expression.ub LOOP
        dbms_output.put_line('EXPR: '||v_xlst(i).expression.lstmt(j));
      END LOOP;
      FOR j IN v_xlst(i).reverse_expression.lb..
               v_xlst(i).reverse_expression.ub LOOP
        dbms_output.put_line('REXP: '||v_xlst(i).reverse_expression.lstmt(j));
      END LOOP;
      dbms_output.put_line('====');
    END LOOP;
  END;
/
====
ATTR: CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH
SUBN:
EXPR: ("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"-1910)
EXPR: /77
REXP: "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"*77
REXP: +1910
====
```

SET_TRANSFORM Procedure

This procedure appends the transformation instructions for an attribute to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.SET_TRANSFORM (
          xform_list               IN OUT NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
          attribute_name           VARCHAR2,
          attribute_subname        VARCHAR2,
          expression               VARCHAR2,
          reverse_expression       VARCHAR2,
          attribute_spec           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–33 SET_TRANSFORM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xform_list`	A transformation list. See Table 46–1for a description of the `TRANSFORM_LIST` object type.
`attribute_name`	Name of the attribute to be transformed
`attribute_subname`	Name of the nested attribute if *`attribute_name`* is a nested column, otherwise `NULL`.
`expression`	A SQL expression that specifies the transformation of the attribute.
`reverse_expression`	A SQL expression that reverses the transformation for readability in model details and in the target of a supervised model (if the attribute is a target)
`attribute_spec`	One or more keywords that identify special treatment for the attribute during model build. Values are: ■ `NOPREP` — When ADP is on, prevents automatic transformation of the attribute. If ADP is not on, this value has no effect. ■ `TEXT` — Causes the attribute to be treated as unstructured text data ■ `FORCE_IN` — Forces the inclusion of the attribute in the model build. Applies only to GLM models with feature selection enabled (`ftr_selection_enable` = yes). Feature selection is disabled by default. If the model is not using GLM with feature selection, this value has no effect. See "Specifying Transformation Instructions for an Attribute" in *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide* for more information about `attribute_spec`.

Usage Notes

1. See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:
   - "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
   - "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

2. As shown in the following example, you can eliminate an attribute by specifying a null transformation expression and reverse expression. You can also use the STACK interface to remove a column (CREATE_COL_REM Procedure and STACK_COL_REM Procedure).

Examples

This example uses SET_TRANSFORM to append transformations to cust_stack for the data set cust_info and displays one row of the transformed data.

SET_TRANSFORM divides the country_id column by 10, removes the cust_year_of_birth column, and multiplies the nested attribute custprods.mouse pad by 10. (See "DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure" on page 46-32 for the definition of cust_info.)

```
describe cust_info
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 COUNTRY_ID                                NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUSTPRODS                                          SYS.DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS

DECLARE
  cust_stack   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
     'country_id', NULL, 'country_id/10', 'country_id*10');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
      'cust_year_of_birth', NULL, NULL, NULL);
  dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
      'custprods', 'Mouse Pad', 'value*100', 'value/100');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (cust_stack,
     'cust_info', 'xform_cust_view');
END;
/

select * from xform_cust_view where cust_id = 100004;

CUST_ID  COUNTRY_ID  CUSTPRODS(ATTRIBUTE_NAME, VALUE)
-------  ----------  ----------------------------------------------
100004         5279  DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS(DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL
                     ('External 8X CD-ROM', 1),
                     DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL('Keyboard Wrist Rest', 1))
```

STACK_BIN_CAT Procedure

This procedure adds categorical binning transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_BIN_CAT (
     bin_table_name     IN            VARCHAR2,
     xform_list         IN OUT NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
     literal_flag       IN            BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
     bin_schema_name    IN            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–34 STACK_BIN_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call STACK_BIN_CAT. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for categorical binning or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–4, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Binning"
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
literal_flag	Indicates whether the values in the bin column in the transformation definition table are valid SQL literals. When *literal_flag* is FALSE (the default), the bin identifiers will be transformed to SQL literals by surrounding them with single quotes. Set *literal_flag* to TRUE if the bin identifiers are numbers that should have a numeric datatype, as is the case for an O-Cluster model. See "INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure" on page 46-44 for an example.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how a binning transformation for the categorical column cust_postal_code could be added to a stack called mining_data_stack.

Note: This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
CREATE or REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
    SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
       FROM sh.customers
       WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100100;
BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_CAT ('bin_cat_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_CAT_FREQ (
        bin_table_name   => 'bin_cat_tbl',
        data_table_name  => 'mining_data',
        bin_num          =>  3);
  END;
/
DECLARE
  MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_CAT (
    bin_table_name       => 'bin_cat_tbl',
    xform_list           =>  mining_data_stack);
  dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
    xform_list           =>  mining_data_stack,
    data_table_name      => 'mining_data',
    xform_view_name      => 'mining_data_stack_view');
  END;
/
-- Before transformation
column cust_postal_code format a16
SELECT * from mining_data
              WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100053
              ORDER BY cust_id;

  CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
---------- ---------------- -----------------
    100050 76486                       1500
    100051 73216                       9000
    100052 69499                       5000
    100053 45704                       7000

-- After transformation
SELECT * FROM mining_data_stack_view
              WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100053
              ORDER BY cust_id;

  CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
---------- ---------------- -----------------
    100050 4                           1500
    100051 1                           9000
    100052 4                           5000
    100053 4                           7000
```

STACK_BIN_NUM Procedure

This procedure adds numerical binning transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_BIN_NUM (
     bin_table_name     IN             VARCHAR2,
     xform_list         IN OUT  NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
     literal_flag       IN             BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
     bin_schema_name    IN             VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–35 STACK_BIN_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call STACK_BIN_NUM. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for numerical binning or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–6, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Numerical Binning".
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
literal_flag	Indicates whether the values in the bin column in the transformation definition table are valid SQL literals. When *literal_flag* is FALSE (the default), the bin identifiers will be transformed to SQL literals by surrounding them with single quotes. Set *literal_flag* to TRUE if the bin identifiers are numbers that should have a numeric datatype, as is the case for an O-Cluster model. See "INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure" on page 46-44 for an example.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how a binning transformation for the numerical column cust_credit_limit could be added to a stack called mining_data_stack.

Note: This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
    SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
      FROM sh.customers
      WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 and 100100;
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.create_bin_num ('bin_num_tbl');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_bin_num_qtile (
  bin_table_name    => 'bin_num_tbl',
  data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
  bin_num           => 5,
  exclude_list      =>  dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
END;
/
DECLARE
   MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_CAT (
      bin_table_name    => 'bin_num_tbl',
      xform_list        =>  mining_data_stack);
   dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
      xform_list        =>  mining_data_stack,
      data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
      xform_view_name   => 'mining_data_stack_view');
END;
/
-- Before transformation
SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, ROUND(cust_credit_limit) FROM mining_data
   WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100055
   ORDER BY cust_id;
CUST_ID   CUST_POSTAL_CODE   ROUND(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT)
-------   -----------------  -------------------------
100050    76486                                 1500
100051    73216                                 9000
100052    69499                                 5000
100053    45704                                 7000
100055    74673                                11000
100055    74673                                11000

-- After transformation
SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, ROUND(cust_credit_limit)
   FROM mining_data_stack_view
   WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100055
   ORDER BY cust_id;
CUST_ID   CUST_POSTAL_CODE   ROUND(CUST_CREDIT_LIMITT)
-------   ----------------   -------------------------
100050    76486
100051    73216                                    2
100052    69499                                    1
100053    45704
100054    88021                                    3
```

```
    100055    74673                                3
```

STACK_CLIP Procedure

This procedure adds clipping transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_CLIP (
          clip_table_name     IN            VARCHAR2,
          xform_list          IN OUT NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
          clip_schema_name    IN            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–36 STACK_CLIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
clip_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for clipping.You can use the CREATE_CLIP Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call STACK_CLIP. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for clipping or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–8, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Clipping or Winsorizing"
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
clip_schema_name	Schema of *clip_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how a clipping transformation for the numerical column cust_credit_limit could be added to a stack called mining_data_stack.

> **Note:** This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
       FROM sh.customers
       WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100100;
```

```
BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.create_clip ('clip_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_clip_winsor_tail (
       clip_table_name   => 'clip_tbl',
       data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
       tail_frac         => 0.25,
       exclude_list      => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
END;
/
DECLARE
      MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
      dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_CLIP (
         clip_table_name     => 'clip_tbl',
         xform_list          =>  mining_data_stack);
      dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
          xform_list        =>  mining_data_stack,
          data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
          xform_view_name   => 'mining_data_stack_view');
END;
/
-- Before transformation
SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, round(cust_credit_limit)
  FROM mining_data
    WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100054
    ORDER BY cust_id;

CUST_ID   CUST_POSTAL_CODE   ROUND(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT)
-------   ----------------   ------------------------
100050    76486                                 1500
100051    73216                                 9000
100052    69499                                 5000
100053    45704                                 7000
100054    88021                                11000

-- After transformation
SELECT cust_id, cust_postal_code, round(cust_credit_limit)
  FROM mining_data_stack_view
    WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100054
    ORDER BY cust_id;

CUST_ID   CUST_POSTAL_CODE   ROUND(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT)
-------   ----------------   ------------------------
100050    76486                                 5000
100051    73216                                 9000
100052    69499                                 5000
100053    45704                                 7000
100054    88021                                11000
```

STACK_COL_REM Procedure

This procedure adds column removal transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_COL_REM (
     rem_table_name     IN            VARCHAR2,
     xform_list         IN OUT NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
     rem_schema_name    IN            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–37 STACK_COL_REM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rem_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for column removal. You can use the CREATE_COL_REM Procedure to create the definition table. See Table 46–10, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Column Removal".
	The table must be populated with column names before you call STACK_COL_REM. The INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure and the INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure can optionally be used to populate the table. You can also use SQL INSERT statements.
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
rem_schema_name	Schema of *rem_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how the column cust_credit_limit could be removed in a transformation list called mining_data_stack.

> **Note:** This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
     SELECT cust_id, country_id, cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
        FROM sh.customers;
```

```
BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.create_col_rem ('rem_tbl');
END;
/

INSERT into rem_tbl VALUES (upper('cust_postal_code'), null);

DECLARE
  MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
     dbms_data_mining_transform.stack_col_rem (
          rem_table_name     => 'rem_tbl',
          xform_list         =>  mining_data_stack);
      dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
          xform_list         =>  mining_data_stack,
          data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
          xform_view_name    => 'mining_data_stack_view');
END;
/

SELECT *  FROM mining_data
  WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100051
  ORDER BY cust_id;

CUST_ID   COUNTRY_ID   CUST_POSTAL_CODE   CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
-------   ----------   ----------------   -----------------
100050         52773   76486                          1500
100051         52790   73216                          9000

SELECT *  FROM mining_data_stack_view
  WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100050 AND 100051
  ORDER BY cust_id;

CUST_ID   COUNTRY_ID   CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
-------   ----------   -----------------
100050         52773              1500
100051         52790              9000
```

STACK_MISS_CAT Procedure

This procedure adds categorical missing value transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_MISS_CAT (
     miss_table_name     IN       VARCHAR2,
     xform_list          IN OUT   NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
     miss_schema_name    IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–38 STACK_MISS_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical missing value treatment. You can use the CREATE_MISS_CAT Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call STACK_MISS_CAT. To populate the table, you can use the INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–12, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Missing Value Treatment".
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how the missing values in the column cust_marital_status could be replaced with the mode in a transformation list called mining_data_stack.

> **Note:** This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
      SELECT cust_id, country_id, cust_marital_status
         FROM sh.customers
         where cust_id BETWEEN 1 AND 10;
```

```
BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.create_miss_cat ('miss_cat_tbl');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_miss_cat_mode ('miss_cat_tbl', 'mining_data');
END;
/

DECLARE
  MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
     dbms_data_mining_transform.stack_miss_cat (
          miss_table_name   => 'miss_cat_tbl',
          xform_list        => mining_data_stack);
      dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
          xform_list        =>  mining_data_stack,
          data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
          xform_view_name   => 'mining_data_stack_view');
END;
/
SELECT * FROM mining_data
  ORDER BY cust_id;

CUST_ID   COUNTRY_ID   CUST_MARITAL_STATUS
-------   ----------   --------------------
      1      52789
      2      52778
      3      52770
      4      52770
      5      52789
      6      52769     single
      7      52790     single
      8      52790     married
      9      52770     divorced
     10      52790     widow

SELECT * FROM mining_data_stack_view
   ORDER By cust_id;

CUST_ID   COUNTRY_ID   CUST_MARITAL_STATUS
-------   -----------  --------------------
      1       52789    single
      2       52778    single
      3       52770    single
      4       52770    single
      5       52789    single
      6       52769    single
      7       52790    single
      8       52790    married
      9       52770    divorced
     10       52790    widow
```

STACK_MISS_NUM Procedure

This procedure adds numeric missing value transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_MISS_NUM (
     miss_table_name     IN       VARCHAR2,
     xform_list          IN OUT   NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
     miss_schema_name    IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–39 STACK_MISS_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical missing value treatment. You can use the CREATE_MISS_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call STACK_MISS_NUM. To populate the table, you can use the INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–14, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Numerical Missing Value Treatment".
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how the missing values in the column cust_credit_limit could be replaced with the mean in a transformation list called mining_data_stack.

> **Note:** This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
describe mining_data
 Name                                              Null?    Type
 ------------------------------------------------- -------- -----
 CUST_ID                                           NOT NULL NUMBER
```

```
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                                NUMBER

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.create_miss_num ('miss_num_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_miss_num_mean ('miss_num_tbl','mining_data');
END;
/
SELECT * FROM miss_num_tbl;

COL                  ATT      VAL
-------------------- ----- ------
CUST_ID                       5.5
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT          185.71

DECLARE
    MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
  BEGIN
    dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_MISS_NUM (
          miss_table_name   => 'miss_num_tbl',
          xform_list        => mining_data_stack);
    dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
          xform_list        =>  mining_data_stack,
          data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
          xform_view_name   => 'mining_data_stack_view');
END;
/
-- Before transformation
SELECT * FROM mining_data
  ORDER BY cust_id;
CUST_ID CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
------- -----------------
      1               100
      2
      3               200
      4
      5               150
      6               400
      7               150
      8
      9               100
     10               200

-- After transformation
SELECT * FROM mining_data_stack_view
  ORDER BY cust_id;
CUST_ID CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
------- -----------------
      1               100
      2            185.71
      3               200
      4            185.71
      5               150
      6               400
      7               150
      8            185.71
      9               100
     10               200
```

STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure

This procedure adds linear normalization transformations to a transformation list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.STACK_NORM_LIN (
     norm_table_name     IN       VARCHAR2,
     xform_list          IN OUT   NOCOPY TRANSFORM_LIST,
     norm_schema_name    IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–40 STACK_NORM_LIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
norm_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for linear normalization. You can use the CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call STACK_NORM_LIN.To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for normalization or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–16, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Linear Normalization".
xform_list	A transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
norm_schema_name	Schema of *norm_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example shows how the column cust_credit_limit could be normalized in a transformation list called mining_data_stack.

> **Note:** This example invokes the XFORM_STACK Procedure to show how the data is transformed by the stack. XFORM_STACK simply generates an external view of the transformed data. The actual purpose of the STACK procedures is to assemble a list of transformations for embedding in a model. The transformations are passed to CREATE_MODEL in the xform_list parameter. See INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure for an example.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
       SELECT cust_id, country_id, cust_postal_code, cust_credit_limit
          FROM sh.customers;
BEGIN
```

```
   dbms_data_mining_transform.create_norm_lin ('norm_lin_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_norm_lin_minmax (
       norm_table_name   => 'norm_lin_tbl',
       data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
       exclude_list      =>  dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id',
                                                            'country_id'));
END;
/
SELECT * FROM norm_lin_tbl;
COL                  ATT    SHIFT  SCALE
-------------------- ----- ------ ------
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT            1500  13500

DECLARE
   MINING_DATA_STACK   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.stack_norm_lin (
        norm_table_name   => 'norm_lin_tbl',
        xform_list        => mining_data_stack);
   dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK (
        xform_list        =>  mining_data_stack,
        data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
        xform_view_name   => 'mining_data_stack_view');
END;
/
SELECT * FROM mining_data
  WHERE cust_id between 1 and 10
  ORDER BY cust_id;
CUST_ID COUNTRY_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE     CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
------- ---------- -------------------- -----------------
      1      52789 30828                             9000
      2      52778 86319                            10000
      3      52770 88666                             1500
      4      52770 87551                             1500
      5      52789 59200                             1500
      6      52769 77287                             1500
      7      52790 38763                             1500
      8      52790 58488                             3000
      9      52770 63033                             3000
     10      52790 52602                             3000

SELECT * FROM mining_data_stack_view
  WHERE cust_id between 1 and 10
  ORDER BY cust_id;
CUST_ID COUNTRY_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE     CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
------- ---------- -------------------- -----------------
      1      52789 30828                           .55556
      2      52778 86319                           .62963
      3      52770 88666                                0
      4      52770 87551                                0
      5      52789 59200                                0
      6      52769 77287                                0
      7      52790 38763                                0
      8      52790 58488                           .11111
      9      52770 63033                           .11111
     10      52790 52602                           .11111
```

XFORM_BIN_CAT Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the categorical binning transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_BIN_CAT (
     bin_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name      IN VARCHAR2,
     literal_flag         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
     bin_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–41 XFORM_BIN_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_CAT Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call XFORM_BIN_CAT. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for categorical binning or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–4, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Binning".
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed.
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *bin_table_name*.
literal_flag	Indicates whether the values in the bin column in the transformation definition table are valid SQL literals. When *literal_flag* is FALSE (the default), the bin identifiers will be transformed to SQL literals by surrounding them with single quotes. Set *literal_flag* to TRUE if the bin identifiers are numbers that should have a numeric datatype, as is the case for an O-Cluster model. See "INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure" on page 46-44 for an example.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

This example creates a view that bins the `cust_postal_code` column. The data source consists of three columns from `sh.customer`.

```
describe mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE                          NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                  NUMBER

SELECT * FROM mining_data WHERE cust_id between 104066 and 104069;

  CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE    CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
--------- -------------------- -----------------
   104066 69776                         7000
   104067 52602                         9000
   104068 55787                        11000
   104069 55977                         5000

BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.create_bin_cat(
     bin_table_name     => 'bin_cat_tbl');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_bin_cat_freq(
     bin_table_name     => 'bin_cat_tbl',
     data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
     bin_num      => 10);
   dbms_data_mining_transform.xform_bin_cat(
     bin_table_name     => 'bin_cat_tbl',
     data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
     xform_view_name    => 'bin_cat_view');
END;
/

SELECT * FROM bin_cat_view WHERE cust_id between 104066 and 104069;

  CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE    CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
---------- -------------------- -----------------
   104066 6                             7000
   104067 11                            9000
   104068 3                            11000
   104069 11                            5000

SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'BIN_CAT_VIEW';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT"CUST_ID",DECODE("CUST_POSTAL_CODE",'38082','1','45704','9','48346','5','
55787','3','63736','2','67843','7','69776','6','72860','10','78558','4','80841',
'8',NULL,NULL,'11') "CUST_POSTAL_CODE","CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" FROM mining_data
```

XFORM_BIN_NUM Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the numerical binning transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_BIN_NUM (
     bin_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name    IN VARCHAR2,
     literal_flag       IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
     bin_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–42 XFORM_BIN_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bin_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical binning. You can use the CREATE_BIN_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call XFORM_BIN_NUM. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for numerical binning or you can write your own SQL. See " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Numerical Binning" on page 46-21.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *bin_table_name*.
literal_flag	Indicates whether the values in the bin column in the transformation definition table are valid SQL literals. When *literal_flag* is FALSE (the default), the bin identifiers will be transformed to SQL literals by surrounding them with single quotes. Set *literal_flag* to TRUE if the bin identifiers are numbers that should have a numeric datatype, as is the case for an O-Cluster model. See "INSERT_BIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure" on page 46-44 for an example.
bin_schema_name	Schema of *bin_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

This example creates a view that bins the `cust_credit_limit` column. The data source consists of three columns from `sh.customer`.

```
describe mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE                          NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                  NUMBER

column cust_credit_limit off
SELECT * FROM mining_data WHERE cust_id between 104066 and 104069;

   CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE   CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
---------  ------------------  --------------------
    104066 69776                         7000
    104067 52602                         9000
    104068 55787                        11000
    104069 55977                         5000

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.create_bin_num(
       bin_table_name     => 'bin_num_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_autobin_num_eqwidth(
       bin_table_name     => 'bin_num_tbl',
       data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
       bin_num            => 5,
       max_bin_num        => 10,
       exclude_list       => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
  dbms_data_mining_transform.xform_bin_num(
      bin_table_name      => 'bin_num_tbl',
      data_table_name     => 'mining_data',
      xform_view_name     => 'mining_data_view');
END;
/
describe mining_data_view
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE                          NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                  VARCHAR2(2)

col cust_credit_limit on
col cust_credit_limit format a25
SELECT * FROM mining_data_view WHERE cust_id between 104066 and 104069;

   CUST_ID CUST_POSTAL_CODE    CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
---------- -------------------- -------------------------
    104066 69776                5
    104067 52602                6
    104068 55787                8
    104069 55977                3

set long 2000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'MINING_DATA_VIEW';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_POSTAL_CODE",CASE WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<1500 THEN NULL
```

```
 WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=2850 THEN '1' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=4200 THEN '2'
 WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=5550 THEN '3' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=6900 THEN '4'
 WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=8250 THEN '5' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=9600 THEN '6'
 WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=10950 THEN '7' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=12300 THEN '
8' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=13650 THEN '9' WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT"<=15000 THEN
 '10' END "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" FROM mining_data
```

XFORM_CLIP Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the clipping transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_CLIP (
    clip_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    xform_view_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    clip_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2,DEFAULT NULL,
    xform_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2,DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–43 XFORM_CLIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
clip_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for clipping. You can use the CREATE_CLIP Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call XFORM_CLIP. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for clipping you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–8, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Clipping or Winsorizing".
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *clip_table_name*.
clip_schema_name	Schema of *clip_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Examples

This example creates a view that clips the cust_credit_limit column. The data source consists of three columns from sh.customer.

```
describe mining_data
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- -------------------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE               NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                        NUMBER

BEGIN
   dbms_data_mining_transform.create_clip(
      clip_table_name    => 'clip_tbl');
   dbms_data_mining_transform.insert_clip_trim_tail(
      clip_table_name   => 'clip_tbl',
```

```
      data_table_name   => 'mining_data',
      tail_frac         => 0.05,
      exclude_list      => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('cust_id'));
   dbms_data_mining_transform.xform_clip(
      clip_table_name     => 'clip_tbl',
      data_table_name    => 'mining_data',
      xform_view_name    => 'clip_view');
END;
/
describe clip_view
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- --------------------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_POSTAL_CODE               NOT NULL VARCHAR2(10)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                       NUMBER

SELECT MIN(cust_credit_limit), MAX(cust_credit_limit) FROM mining_data;

MIN(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT) MAX(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT)
---------------------- ----------------------
                  1500                  15000

SELECT MIN(cust_credit_limit), MAX(cust_credit_limit) FROM clip_view;

MIN(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT) MAX(CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT)
---------------------- ----------------------
                  1500                  11000

set long 2000
SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'CLIP_VIEW';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID","CUST_POSTAL_CODE",CASE WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" < 1500 THEN NU
LL WHEN "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" > 11000 THEN NULL ELSE "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" END "CUST
_CREDIT_LIMIT" FROM mining_data
```

XFORM_COL_REM Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the column removal transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are removed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_COL_REM (
     rem_table_name     IN       VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
     rem_schema_name    IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name   IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name  IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–44 XFORM_COL_REM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rem_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for column removal. You can use the CREATE_COL_REM Procedure to create the definition table. See Table 46–10, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Column Removal".
	The table must be populated with column names before you call XFORM_COL_REM. The INSERT_BIN_SUPER Procedure and the INSERT_AUTOBIN_NUM_EQWIDTH Procedure can optionally be used to populate the table. You can also use SQL INSERT statements.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents the columns in *data_table_name* that are not specified in *rem_table_name*.
rem_schema_name	Schema of *rem_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

This example creates a view that includes all but one column from the table customers in the current schema.

```
describe customers
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                                VARCHAR2(20)
 OCCUPATION                                         VARCHAR2(21)
 AGE                                                NUMBER
```

```
 YRS_RESIDENCE                                      NUMBER

BEGIN
    DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_COL_REM ('colrem_xtbl');
END;
 /
INSERT INTO colrem_xtbl VALUES('CUST_MARITAL_STATUS', null);

BEGIN
   DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_COL_REM (
     rem_table_name        => 'colrem_xtbl',
     data_table_name       => 'customers',
     xform_view_name       => 'colrem_view');
END;
/
describe colrem_view

 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 OCCUPATION                                         VARCHAR2(21)
 AGE                                                NUMBER
 YRS_RESIDENCE                                      NUMBER
```

XFORM_EXPR_NUM Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the specified numeric transformations. Only the columns that you specify are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_EXPR_NUM (
     expr_pattern       IN       VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
     exclude_list       IN       COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     include_list       IN       COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     col_pattern        IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ':col',
     data_schema_name   IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name  IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–45 XFORM_EXPR_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
expr_pattern	A numeric transformation expression
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *expr_pattern* and *col_pattern*.
exclude_list	List of numerical columns to exclude. If NULL, no numerical columns are excluded. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
include_list	List of numeric columns to include. If NULL, all numeric columns are included. The format of *include_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
col_pattern	The value within *expr_pattern* that will be replaced with a column name. The value of *col_pattern* is case-sensitive. The default value of *col_pattern* is ':col'
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. The XFORM_EXPR_NUM procedure constructs numeric transformation expressions from the specified expression pattern (*expr_pattern*) by replacing every occurrence of the specified column pattern (*col_pattern*) with an actual column name.

XFORM_EXPR_NUM uses the SQL REPLACE function to construct the transformation expressions.

```
REPLACE (expr_pattern,col_pattern,'"column_name"') || '"column_name"'
```

If there is a column match, then the replacement is made in the transformation expression; if there is not a match, then the column is used without transformation.

> **See:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the REPLACE function

2. Because of the include and exclude list parameters, the XFORM_EXPR_NUM and XFORM_EXPR_STR procedures allow you to easily specify individual columns for transformation within large data sets. The other XFORM_* procedures support an exclude list only. In these procedures, you must enumerate every column that you do not want to transform.
3. See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

This example creates a view that transforms the datatype of numeric columns.

```
describe customers
 Name                              Null?    Type
 --------------------------------- -------- ------------------------
 CUST_ID                           NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                        VARCHAR2(20)
 OCCUPATION                                 VARCHAR2(21)
 AGE                                        NUMBER
 YRS_RESIDENCE                              NUMBER

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_EXPR_NUM(
    expr_pattern         => 'to_char(:col)',
    data_table_name      => 'customers',
    xform_view_name      => 'cust_nonum_view',
    exclude_list         => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST( 'cust_id'),
    include_list         => null,
    col_pattern          => ':col');
END;
/
describe cust_nonum_view
 Name                              Null?    Type
 --------------------------------- -------- ------------------------
 CUST_ID                           NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                        VARCHAR2(20)
 OCCUPATION                                 VARCHAR2(21)
 AGE                                        VARCHAR2(40)
 YRS_RESIDENCE                              VARCHAR2(40)
```

XFORM_EXPR_STR Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the specified categorical transformations. Only the columns that you specify are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_EXPR_STR (
     expr_pattern       IN       VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
     exclude_list       IN       COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     include_list       IN       COLUMN_LIST DEFAULT NULL,
     col_pattern        IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ':col',
     data_schema_name   IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name  IN       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–46 XFORM_EXPR_STR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
expr_pattern	A character transformation expression
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *expr_pattern* and *col_pattern*.
exclude_list	List of categorical columns to exclude. If NULL, no categorical columns are excluded. The format of *exclude_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
include_list	List of character columns to include. If NULL, all character columns are included. The format of *include_list* is: `dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST('col1','col2', ...'coln')`
col_pattern	The value within *expr_pattern* that will be replaced with a column name. The value of *col_pattern* is case-sensitive. The default value of *col_pattern* is ':col'
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

1. The XFORM_EXPR_STR procedure constructs character transformation expressions from the specified expression pattern (*expr_pattern*) by replacing every

occurrence of the specified column pattern (*col_pattern*) with an actual column name.

XFORM_EXPR_STR uses the SQL REPLACE function to construct the transformation expressions.

```
REPLACE (expr_pattern,col_pattern,'"column_name"') || '"column_name"'
```

If there is a column match, then the replacement is made in the transformation expression; if there is not a match, then the column is used without transformation.

> **See:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the REPLACE function

2. Because of the include and exclude list parameters, the XFORM_EXPR_STR and XFORM_EXPR_NUM procedures allow you to easily specify individual columns for transformation within large data sets. The other XFORM_* procedures support an exclude list only. In these procedures, you must enumerate every column that you do not want to transform.
3. See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6

Examples

This example creates a view that transforms character columns to upper case.

```
describe customers
 Name                                    Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------- -------- ------------------------
 CUST_ID                                 NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                              VARCHAR2(20)
 OCCUPATION                                       VARCHAR2(21)
 AGE                                              NUMBER
 YRS_RESIDENCE                                    NUMBER

SELECT cust_id,  cust_marital_status, occupation FROM customers
    WHERE   cust_id > 102995
    ORDER BY cust_id desc;

CUST_ID CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  OCCUPATION
------- -------------------- --------------------
 103000 Divorc.              Cleric.
 102999 Married              Cleric.
 102998 Married              Exec.
 102997 Married              Exec.
 102996 NeverM               Other

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_EXPR_STR(
       expr_pattern            => 'upper(:col)',
       data_table_name         => 'customers',
       xform_view_name         => 'cust_upcase_view');
END;
/
describe cust_upcase_view
 Name                           Null?    Type
 ------------------------------ -------- --------------------
 CUST_ID                        NOT NULL NUMBER
```

```
 CUST_MARITAL_STATUS                    VARCHAR2(20)
 OCCUPATION                             VARCHAR2(21)
 AGE                                    NUMBER
 YRS_RESIDENCE                          NUMBER

SELECT cust_id,  cust_marital_status, occupation FROM cust_upcase_view
   WHERE   cust_id > 102995
   ORDER BY cust_id desc;

CUST_ID CUST_MARITAL_STATUS  OCCUPATION
------- -------------------- --------------------
 103000 DIVORC.              CLERIC.
 102999 MARRIED              CLERIC.
 102998 MARRIED              EXEC.
 102997 MARRIED              EXEC.
 102996 NEVERM               OTHER
```

XFORM_MISS_CAT Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the categorical missing value treatment transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_MISS_CAT (
    miss_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    xform_view_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    miss_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    xform_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL;
```

Parameters

Table 46–47 XFORM_MISS_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for categorical missing value treatment. You can use the CREATE_MISS_CAT Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call XFORM_MISS_CAT. To populate the table, you can use the INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE Procedure or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–12, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Missing Value Treatment".
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *miss_table_name*.
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

This example creates a view that replaces missing categorical values with the mode.

```
SELECT * FROM geog;

REG_ID REGION
------ ------------------------------
     1 NE
     2 SW
     3 SE
     4 SW
```

```
     5
     6 NE
     7 NW
     8 NW
     9
    10
    11 SE
    12 SE
    13 NW
    14 SE
    15 SE

SELECT STATS_MODE(region) FROM geog;

STATS_MODE(REGION)
------------------------------
SE

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_MISS_CAT('misscat_xtbl');
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_MISS_CAT_MODE (
    miss_table_name         => 'misscat_xtbl',
    data_table_name         => 'geog' );
END;
/

SELECT col, val FROM misscat_xtbl;

COL        VAL
---------- ----------
REGION     SE

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_MISS_CAT (
     miss_table_name        => 'misscat_xtbl',
     data_table_name        => 'geog',
     xform_view_name        => 'geogxf_view');
END;
/

SELECT * FROM geogxf_view;

REG_ID REGION
------ ------------------------------
     1 NE
     2 SW
     3 SE
     4 SW
     5 SE
     6 NE
     7 NW
     8 NW
     9 SE
    10 SE
    11 SE
    12 SE
    13 NW
    14 SE
    15 SE
```

XFORM_MISS_NUM Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the numerical missing value treatment transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_MISS_NUM (
    miss_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    data_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    xform_view_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    miss_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    data_schema_name      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    xform_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL;
```

Parameters

Table 46–48 XFORM_MISS_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
miss_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for numerical missing value treatment. You can use the CREATE_MISS_NUM Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call XFORM_MISS_NUM. To populate the table, you can use the INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN Procedure or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–14, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Numerical Missing Value Treatment".
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *miss_table_name*.
miss_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

This example creates a view that replaces missing numerical values with the mean.

```
SELECT * FROM items;

ITEM_ID       QTY
---------- ------
aa            200
bb            200
cc            250
dd
```

```
ee
ff            100
gg            250
hh            200
ii
jj            200

SELECT AVG(qty) FROM items;

AVG(QTY)
--------
     200

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.CREATE_MISS_NUM('missnum_xtbl');
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.INSERT_MISS_NUM_MEAN (
     miss_table_name          => 'missnum_xtbl',
     data_table_name         => 'items' );
END;
/

SELECT col, val FROM missnum_xtbl;

COL           VAL
----------- ------
QTY           200

BEGIN
    DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_MISS_NUM (
        miss_table_name        => 'missnum_xtbl',
        data_table_name        => 'items',
        xform_view_name        => 'items_view');
END;
/

SELECT * FROM items_view;

ITEM_ID       QTY
---------- ------
aa            200
bb            200
cc            250
dd            200
ee            200
ff            100
gg            250
hh            200
ii            200
jj            200
```

XFORM_NORM_LIN Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the linear normalization transformations specified in a definition table. Only the columns that are specified in the definition table are transformed; the remaining columns from the data table are present in the view, but they are not changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_NORM_LIN (
     norm_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
     data_table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name      IN VARCHAR2,
     norm_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     data_schema_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–49 XFORM_NORM_LIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
norm_table_name	Name of the transformation definition table for linear normalization. You can use the CREATE_NORM_LIN Procedure to create the definition table. The table must be populated with transformation definitions before you call XFORM_NORM_LIN. To populate the table, you can use one of the INSERT procedures for normalization or you can write your own SQL. See Table 46–12, " Columns in a Transformation Definition Table for Categorical Missing Value Treatment".
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view presents columns in *data_table_name* with the transformations specified in *miss_table_name*.
norm_schema_name	Schema of *miss_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6.

Examples

This example creates a view that normalizes the cust_year_of_birth and cust_credit_limit columns. The data source consists of three columns from sh.customer.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW mining_data AS
     SELECT cust_id, cust_year_of_birth, cust_credit_limit
     FROM sh.customers;

describe mining_data
 Name                                      Null?    Type
 ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
```

```
 CUST_ID                                   NOT NULL NUMBER
 CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                        NOT NULL NUMBER(4)
 CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                                  NUMBER

SELECT * FROM mining_data WHERE cust_id > 104495
  ORDER BY cust_year_of_birth;

 CUST_ID CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
-------- ------------------ -----------------
  104496               1947              3000
  104498               1954             10000
  104500               1962             15000
  104499               1970              3000
  104497               1976              3000

BEGIN
  dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_NORM_LIN(
       norm_table_name=> 'normx_tbl');
 dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_NORM_LIN_MINMAX(
      norm_table_name => 'normx_tbl',
      data_table_name => 'mining_data',
      exclude_list => dbms_data_mining_transform.COLUMN_LIST( 'cust_id'),
      round_num  => 3);
END;
/

SELECT col, shift, scale FROM normx_tbl;

COL                             SHIFT    SCALE
------------------------------ -------- --------
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH                1910       77
CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT                 1500    13500

BEGIN
  DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_NORM_LIN (
     norm_table_name => 'normx_tbl',
     data_table_name => 'mining_data',
     xform_view_name => 'norm_view');
END;
/

SELECT * FROM norm_view WHERE cust_id > 104495
  ORDER BY cust_year_of_birth;

 CUST_ID CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT
-------- ------------------ -----------------
  104496           .4805195          .1111111
  104498           .5714286          .6296296
  104500           .6753247                 1
  104499           .7792208          .1111111
  104497           .8571429          .1111111


set long 2000
SQL> SELECT text FROM user_views WHERE view_name IN 'NORM_VIEW';

TEXT
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT "CUST_ID",("CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH"-1910)/77 "CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH",("CUST
_CREDIT_LIMIT"-1500)/13500 "CUST_CREDIT_LIMIT" FROM mining_data
```

XFORM_STACK Procedure

This procedure creates a view that implements the transformations specified by the stack. Only the columns and nested attributes that are specified in the stack are transformed. Any remaining columns and nested attributes from the data table appear in the view without changes.

To create a list of objects that describe the transformed columns, use the DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure.

See Also:

"Overview" on page 46-3

Oracle Data Mining User's Guide for more information about data mining attributes

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATA_MINING_TRANSFORM.XFORM_STACK (
     xform_list         IN     TRANSFORM_list,
     data_table_name    IN     VARCHAR2,
     xform_view_name    IN     VARCHAR2,
     data_schema_name   IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     xform_schema_name  IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 46–50 XFORM_STACK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xform_list	The transformation list. See Table 46–1 for a description of the TRANSFORM_LIST object type.
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be transformed
xform_view_name	Name of the view to be created. The view applies the transformations in *xform_list* to *data_table_name*.
data_schema_name	Schema of *data_table_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.
xform_schema_name	Schema of *xform_view_name*. If no schema is specified, the current schema is used.

Usage Notes

See "Operational Notes" on page 46-6. The following sections are especially relevant:

- "About Transformation Lists" on page 46-7
- "About Stacking" on page 46-9
- "Nested Data Transformations" on page 46-10

Examples

This example applies a transformation list to the view dmuser.cust_info and shows how the data is transformed.The CREATE statement for cust_info is shown in "DESCRIBE_STACK Procedure" on page 46-32.

```
BEGIN
```

```
  dbms_data_mining_transform.CREATE_BIN_NUM ('birth_yr_bins');
  dbms_data_mining_transform.INSERT_BIN_NUM_QTILE (
        bin_table_name   => 'birth_yr_bins',
        data_table_name  =>  'cust_info',
        bin_num          =>   6,
        exclude_list     =>  dbms_data_mining_transform.column_list(
                                 'cust_id','country_id'));
END;
/
SELECT * FROM birth_yr_bins;

COL                  ATT      VAL BIN
-------------------- ----- ------ ----------
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1922
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1951 1
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1959 2
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1966 3
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1973 4
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1979 5
CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH           1986 6

DECLARE
      cust_stack   dbms_data_mining_transform.TRANSFORM_LIST;
BEGIN
      dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
          'country_id', NULL, 'country_id/10', 'country_id*10');
      dbms_data_mining_transform.STACK_BIN_NUM ('birth_yr_bins',
          cust_stack);
      dbms_data_mining_transform.SET_TRANSFORM (cust_stack,
          'custprods', 'Mouse Pad', 'value*100', 'value/100');
      dbms_data_mining_transform.XFORM_STACK(
          xform_list        => cust_stack,
          data_table_name   => 'cust_info',
          xform_view_name   =>  'cust_xform_view');
  END;
/

-- Two rows of data without transformations
SELECT * from cust_info WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100010 AND 100011;

CUST_ID COUNTRY_ID CUST_YEAR_OF_BIRTH CUSTPRODS(ATTRIBUTE_NAME, VALUE)
------- ---------- ----------------- ----------------------------------------
 100010      52790              1975 DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS(
                                       DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        '18" Flat Panel Graphics Monitor', 1),
                                       DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        'SIMM- 16MB PCMCIAII card', 1))
 100011      52775              1972 DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS(
                                      DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        'External 8X CD-ROM', 1),
                                      DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        'Mouse Pad', 1),
                                      DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                       'SIMM- 16MB PCMCIAII card', 1),
                                      DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        'Keyboard Wrist Rest', 1),
                                      DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        '18" Flat Panel Graphics Monitor', 1),
                                      DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                                        'O/S Documentation Set - English', 1))
```

```
-- Same two rows of data with transformations
SELECT * FROM cust_xform_view WHERE cust_id BETWEEN 100010 AND 100011;

CUST_ID  COUNTRY_ID  C  CUSTPRODS(ATTRIBUTE_NAME, VALUE)
-------  ----------  -  ------------------------------------------------------
 100010       5279   5  DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS(
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                            '18" Flat Panel Graphics Monitor', 1),
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             'SIMM- 16MB PCMCIAII card', 1))
 100011     5277.5   4  DM_NESTED_NUMERICALS(
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             'External 8X CD-ROM', 1),
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             'Mouse Pad', 100),
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             'SIMM- 16MB PCMCIAII card', 1),
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             'Keyboard Wrist Rest', 1),
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             '18" Flat Panel Graphics Monitor', 1),
                           DM_NESTED_NUMERICAL(
                             'O/S Documentation Set - English', 1))
```

47

DBMS_DATAPUMP

The DBMS_DATAPUMP package is used to move all, or part of, a database between databases, including both data and metadata.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for more information on the concepts behind the DBMS_DATAPUMP API, how it works, and how it is implemented in the Data Pump Export and Import utilities

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DATAPUMP

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_DATAPUMP` package.

Overview

The support and functionality provided by `DBMS_DATAPUMP` is as follows:

- The source and target databases can have different hardware, operating systems, character sets, time zones, and versions.
- All object types and datatypes existing in Oracle Database 11*g* and higher are supported.
- Data and metadata can be transferred between databases without using any intermediary files.
- A subset of a database can be moved based upon object type and names of objects.
- Schema names, data file names, tablespace names, and data can be transformed at import time.
- Previously aborted export and import jobs can be restarted without duplicating or omitting any data or metadata from the original job.
- The resources applied to an export or import job can be modified.
- Data in an Oracle proprietary format can be unloaded and loaded.

Security Model

Security for the DBMS_DATAPUMP package is implemented through roles.

Roles

The DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE and DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE roles allow privileged users to take full advantage of the API. The Data Pump API will use these roles to determine whether privileged application roles should be assigned to the processes comprising the job.

DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE

The DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE role affects only Export operations. It allows users running these operations to do the following:

- Perform the operation outside of the scope of their schema
- Monitor jobs that were initiated by another user
- Export objects (for example, TABLESPACE definitions) that unprivileged users cannot reference

Although the SYS schema does not have the DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE role assigned to it, all security checks performed by Data Pump that require the DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE role will also grant access to the SYS schema.

DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE

The DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role affects only Import and SQL_FILE operations. It allows users running these operations to do the following:

- Perform the operation outside of the scope of their schema
- Monitor jobs that were initiated by another user
- Import objects (for example, DIRECTORY definitions) that unprivileged users cannot create

Although the SYS schema does not have the DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role assigned to it, all security checks performed by Data Pump that require the DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role will also grant access to the SYS schema.

Constants

There are several public constants defined for use with the DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_STATUS procedure. All such constants are defined as part of the DBMS_DATAPUMP package. Any references to these constants must be prefixed by DBMS_DATAPUMP. and followed by the symbols in the following lists:

Mask Bit Definitions

The following mask bit definitions are used for controlling the return of data through the DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_STATUS procedure.

- KU$_STATUS_WIP CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1;
- KU$_STATUS_JOB_DESC CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 2;
- KU$_STATUS_JOB_STATUS CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 4;
- KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 8;

Dump File Type Definitions

The following definitions are used for identifying types of dump files returned through the DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_STATUS procedure.

- KU$_DUMPFILE_TYPE_DISK CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
- KU$_DUMPFILE_TYPE_TEMPLATE CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 3;

Data Structures

The DBMS_DATAPUMP package defines OBJECT types. The types described in this section are defined in the SYS schema for use by the GET_STATUS function. *The way in which these types are defined and used may be different than what you are accustomed to. Be sure to read this section carefully.*

The collection of types defined for use with the GET_STATUS procedure are version-specific and include version information in the names of the types. Once introduced, these types will always be provided and supported in future versions of Oracle Database and will not change. However, in future releases of Oracle Database, new versions of these types might be created that provide new or different information. The new versions of these types will have different version information embedded in the type names.

For example, in Oracle Database 12*c*, Release 1 (12.1), there is a sys.ku$_Status1210 type, and in the next Oracle Database release, there could be a sys.ku$_Status1310 type defined. Both types could be used with the GET_STATUS procedure.

Public synonyms have been defined for each of the types used with the GET_STATUS procedure. This makes it easier to use the types and means that you do not have to be concerned with changes to the actual type names or schemas where they reside. Oracle recommends that you use these synonyms whenever possible.

For each of the types, there is a version-specific synonym and a generic synonym. For example, the version-specific synonym ku$_Status1210 is defined for the sys.ku$_Status1210 type.

The generic synonym always describes the latest version of that type. For example, in Oracle Database 12*c*, Release 1 (12.1), the generic synonym ku$_Status is defined as ku$_Status1210. In a future release, there might be a ku$_Status1310 synonym for sys.ku$Status1310. Because the ku$_Status generic synonym always points to the latest definition, it would then point to ku$_Status1310 rather than to ku$_Status1210.

The choice of whether to use version-specific synonyms or generic synonyms makes a significant difference in how you work. Using version-specific names protects your code from changes in future releases of Oracle Database because those types will continue to exist and be supported. However, access to new information will require code changes to use new synonym names for each of the types. Using the generic names implies that you always want the latest definition of the types and are prepared to deal with changes in different releases of Oracle Database.

When the version of Oracle Database that you are using changes, any C code that accesses types through generic synonym names will need to be recompiled.

Note: Languages other than PL/SQL must ensure that their type definitions are properly aligned with the version-specific definitions.

See Also: GET_STATUS Procedure on page 47-30 for additional information about how types are used

Data Structures - Object Types

The DBMS_DATAPUMP package defines the following kinds of OBJECT types:

- Worker Status Types
- Log Entry and Error Types
- Job Status Types
- Job Description Types
- Status Types

Worker Status Types

The worker status types describe what each worker process in a job is doing. The schema, object name, and object type of an object being processed will be provided. For workers processing user data, the partition name for a partitioned table (if any), the number of bytes processed in the partition, and the number of rows processed in the partition are also returned. Workers processing metadata provide status on the last object that was processed. No status for idle threads is returned.

The percent_done refers to the amount completed for the current data item being processed. It is not updated for metadata objects.

The worker status types are defined as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1010 AS OBJECT
       (
               worker_number     NUMBER,       -- Worker process identifier
               process_name      VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process name
               state             VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process state
               schema            VARCHAR2(30), -- Schema name
               name              VARCHAR2(4000),-- Object name
               object_type       VARCHAR2(200),-- Object type
               partition         VARCHAR2(30), -- Partition name
               completed_objects NUMBER,       -- Completed number of objects
               total_objects     NUMBER,       -- Total number of objects
               completed_rows    NUMBER,       -- Number of rows completed
               completed_bytes   NUMBER,       -- Number of bytes completed
               percent_done      NUMBER        -- Percent done current object
       )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatus1010
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1010;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1020 AS OBJECT
       (
               worker_number     NUMBER,       -- Worker process identifier
               process_name      VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process name
               state             VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process state
               schema            VARCHAR2(30), -- Schema name
               name              VARCHAR2(4000),-- Object name
               object_type       VARCHAR2(200),-- Object type
               partition         VARCHAR2(30), -- Partition name
               completed_objects NUMBER,       -- Completed number of objects
               total_objects     NUMBER,       -- Total number of objects
               completed_rows    NUMBER,       -- Number of rows completed
               completed_bytes   NUMBER,       -- Number of bytes completed
               percent_done      NUMBER,       -- Percent done current object
               degree            NUMBER        -- Degree of parallelism
```

```
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatus1020
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1020;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1120 AS OBJECT
        (
                worker_number     NUMBER,       -- Worker process identifier
                process_name      VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process name
                state             VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process state
                schema            VARCHAR2(30), -- Schema name
                name              VARCHAR2(4000),-- Object name
                object_type       VARCHAR2(200),-- Object type
                partition         VARCHAR2(30), -- Partition name
                completed_objects NUMBER,       -- Completed number of objects
                total_objects     NUMBER,       -- Total number of objects
                completed_rows    NUMBER,       -- Number of rows completed
                completed_bytes   NUMBER,       -- Number of bytes completed
                percent_done      NUMBER,       -- Percent done current object
                degree            NUMBER,       -- Degree of parallelism
                instance_id       NUMBER        -- Instance ID where running
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatus1120
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1120;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1210 AS OBJECT
        (
                worker_number     NUMBER,       -- Worker process identifier
                process_name      VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process name
                state             VARCHAR2(30), -- Worker process state
                schema            VARCHAR2(30), -- Schema name
                name              VARCHAR2(4000),-- Object name
                object_type       VARCHAR2(200),-- Object type
                partition         VARCHAR2(30), -- Partition name
                completed_objects NUMBER,       -- Completed number of objects
                total_objects     NUMBER,       -- Total number of objects
                completed_rows    NUMBER,       -- Number of rows completed
                completed_bytes   NUMBER,       -- Number of bytes completed
                percent_done      NUMBER,       -- Percent done current object
                degree            NUMBER,       -- Degree of parallelism
                instance_id       NUMBER,       -- Instance ID where running
                instance_name     VARCHAR2(60), -- Instance Name where running
                host_name         VARCHAR2(64)  -- Host name where running
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatus1210
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1210;

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatus FOR ku$_WorkerStatus1210;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1010 AS TABLE OF sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1010
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1020 AS TABLE OF sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1020
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1120 AS TABLE OF sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1120
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1210 AS TABLE OF sys.ku$_WorkerStatus1210

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatusList1010
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1010;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatusList1020
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1020;
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatusList1120
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1120;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatusList1210
  FOR sys.ku$_WorkerStatusList1210;

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_WorkerStatusList
  FOR ku$_WorkerStatusList1210;
```

Log Entry and Error Types

These types provide informational and error text to attached clients and the log stream. The `ku$LogLine.errorNumber` type is set to `NULL` for informational messages but is specified for error messages. Each log entry may contain several lines of text messages.

The log entry and error types are defined as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_LogLine1010 AS OBJECT (
              logLineNumber   NUMBER,
              errorNumber     NUMBER,
              LogText         VARCHAR2(2000))

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_LogLine1010 FOR sys.ku$_LogLine1010;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_LogLine1020 FOR sys.ku$_LogLine1010;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_LogLine FOR ku$_LogLine1010;
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_LogEntry1010 AS TABLE OF sys.ku$_LogLine1010

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_LogEntry1010 FOR sys.ku$_LogEntry1010;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_LogEntry1020 FOR sys.ku$_LogEntry1010;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_LogEntry FOR ku$_LogEntry1010;
```

Job Status Types

The job status type returns status about a job. Usually, the status concerns a running job but it could also be about a stopped job when a client attaches. It is typically requested at attach time, when the client explicitly requests status from interactive mode and every N seconds when the client has requested status periodically.

The job status types are defined as follows (`percent_done` applies to data only):

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobStatus1010 IS OBJECT
       (
              job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Name of the job
              operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
              job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
              bytes_processed NUMBER,                 -- Bytes so far
              total_bytes     NUMBER,                 -- Total bytes for job
              percent_done    NUMBER,                 -- Percent done
              degree          NUMBER,                 -- Of job parallelism
              error_count     NUMBER,                 -- #errors so far
              state           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current job state
              phase           NUMBER,                 -- Job phase
              restart_count   NUMBER,                 -- #Job restarts
              worker_status_list ku$_WorkerStatusList1010, -- For (non-idle)
                                                      -- job worker processes
              files           ku$_DumpFileSet1010     -- Dump file info
       )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobStatus1010 FOR sys.ku$_JobStatus1010;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobStatus1020 IS OBJECT
       (
```

```
                job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Name of the job
                operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
                job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
                bytes_processed NUMBER,                 -- Bytes so far
                total_bytes     NUMBER,                 -- Total bytes for job
                percent_done    NUMBER,                 -- Percent done
                degree          NUMBER,                 -- Of job parallelism
                error_count     NUMBER,                 -- #errors so far
                state           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current job state
                phase           NUMBER,                 -- Job phase
                restart_count   NUMBER,                 -- #Job restarts
                worker_status_list ku$_WorkerStatusList1020, -- For (non-idle)
                                                        -- job worker processes
                files           ku$_DumpFileSet1010     -- Dump file info
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobStatus1020 FOR sys.ku$_JobStatus1020;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobStatus1120 IS OBJECT
        (
                job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Name of the job
                operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
                job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
                bytes_processed NUMBER,                 -- Bytes so far
                total_bytes     NUMBER,                 -- Total bytes for job
                percent_done    NUMBER,                 -- Percent done
                degree          NUMBER,                 -- Of job parallelism
                error_count     NUMBER,                 -- #errors so far
                state           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current job state
                phase           NUMBER,                 -- Job phase
                restart_count   NUMBER,                 -- #Job restarts
                worker_status_list ku$_WorkerStatusList1120, -- For (non-idle)
                                                        -- job worker processes
                files           ku$_DumpFileSet1010     -- Dump file info
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobStatus1120 FOR sys.ku$_JobStatus1120;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobStatus1210 IS OBJECT
        (
                job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Name of the job
                operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
                job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
                bytes_processed NUMBER,                 -- Bytes so far
                total_bytes     NUMBER,                 -- Total bytes for job
                percent_done    NUMBER,                 -- Percent done
                degree          NUMBER,                 -- Of job parallelism
                error_count     NUMBER,                 -- #errors so far
                state           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current job state
                phase           NUMBER,                 -- Job phase
                restart_count   NUMBER,                 -- #Job restarts
                worker_status_list ku$_WorkerStatusList1210, -- For (non-idle)
                                                        -- job worker processes
                files           ku$_DumpFileSet1010     -- Dump file info
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobStatus1210 FOR sys.ku$_JobStatus1210;

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobStatus FOR ku$_JobStatus1210;
```

Job Description Types

The job description type holds all the environmental information about the job such as parameter settings and dump file set members. There are a couple of subordinate types required as well.

The job description types are defined as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobDesc1010 IS OBJECT
        (
                job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- The job name
                guid            RAW(16),                -- The job GUID
                operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
                job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
                remote_link     VARCHAR2(4000),         -- DB link, if any
                owner           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Job owner
                instance        VARCHAR2(16),           -- The instance name
                db_version      VARCHAR2(30),           -- Version of objects
                creator_privs   VARCHAR2(30),           -- Privs of job
                start_time      DATE,                   -- This job start time
                max_degree      NUMBER,                 -- Max. parallelism
                log_file        VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Log file name
                sql_file        VARCHAR2(4000),         -- SQL file name
                params          ku$_ParamValues1010     -- Parameter list
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobDesc1010 FOR sys.ku$_JobDesc1010;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobDesc1020 IS OBJECT
        (
                job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- The job name
                guid            RAW(16),                -- The job GUID
                operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
                job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
                remote_link     VARCHAR2(4000),         -- DB link, if any
                owner           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Job owner
                platform        VARCHAR2(101),          -- Current job platform
                exp_platform    VARCHAR2(101),          -- Export platform
                global_name     VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Current global name
                exp_global_name VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Export global name
                instance        VARCHAR2(16),           -- The instance name
                db_version      VARCHAR2(30),           -- Version of objects
                exp_db_version  VARCHAR2(30),           -- Export version
                scn             NUMBER,                 -- Job SCN
                creator_privs   VARCHAR2(30),           -- Privs of job
                start_time      DATE,                   -- This job start time
                exp_start_time  DATE,                   -- Export start time
                term_reason     NUMBER,                 -- Job termination code
                max_degree      NUMBER,                 -- Max. parallelism
                log_file        VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Log file name
                sql_file        VARCHAR2(4000),         -- SQL file name
                params          ku$_ParamValues1010     -- Parameter list
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobDesc1020 FOR sys.ku$_JobDesc1020;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_JobDesc1210 IS OBJECT
        (
                job_name        VARCHAR2(30),           -- The job name
                guid            RAW(16),                -- The job GUID
                operation       VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current operation
```

```
                job_mode        VARCHAR2(30),           -- Current mode
                remote_link     VARCHAR2(4000),         -- DB link, if any
                owner           VARCHAR2(30),           -- Job owner
                platform        VARCHAR2(101),          -- Current job platform
                exp_platform    VARCHAR2(101),          -- Export platform
                global_name     VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Current global name
                exp_global_name VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Export global name
                instance        VARCHAR2(16),           -- The instance name
                db_version      VARCHAR2(30),           -- Cur. server software
version
                exp_db_version  VARCHAR2(30),           -- Export svr. software
version
                job_version     VARCHAR2(30),           -- Negotiated data version
                scn             NUMBER,                 -- Job SCN
                creator_privs   VARCHAR2(30),           -- Privs of job
                start_time      DATE,                   -- This job start time
                exp_start_time  DATE,                   -- Export start time
                term_reason     NUMBER,                 -- Job termination code
                max_degree      NUMBER,                 -- Max. parallelism
                timezone        VARCHAR2(64),           -- Cur. server timezone
                exp_timezone    VARCHAR2(64),           -- Exp. server timezone
                tstz_version    NUMBER,                 -- Cur. server timezone
version
                exp_tstz_version NUMBER,                -- Exp. server timezone
                endianness      VARCHAR2(16),           -- Cur. platform's
endianness
                exp_endianness  VARCHAR2(16),           -- Exp. platform's
endianness
-- endianness is 'BIG' or 'LITTLE'
                charset         VARCHAR2(28),           -- Cur. server charset
                exp_charset     VARCHAR2(28),           -- Exp. server charset
                ncharset        VARCHAR2(28),           -- Cur. server national
charset
                exp_ncharset    VARCHAR2(28),           -- Exp. server national
charset
                log_file        VARCHAR2(4000),         -- Log file name
                sql_file        VARCHAR2(4000),         -- SQL file name
                params          ku$_ParamValues1010     -- Parameter list
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobDesc1210 FOR sys.ku$_JobDesc1210;

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_JobDesc FOR ku$_JobDesc1210;
```

Status Types

The status type is an aggregate of some the previous types defined and is the return value for the `GET_STATUS` call. The mask attribute indicates which types of information are being returned to the caller. It is created by a client's shadow process from information it retrieves off the status queue or directly from the master table.

For errors, the `ku$_LogEntry` that is returned has already had its log lines ordered for proper output. That is, the original `ku$_LogEntry` objects have been ordered from outermost context to innermost.

The status types are defined as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_Status1010 IS OBJECT
        (
                mask            NUMBER,           -- Status types present
```

```
                wip             ku$_LogEntry1010, -- Work in progress
                job_description ku$_JobDesc1010,  -- Complete job description
                job_status      ku$_JobStatus1010,-- Detailed job status
                error           ku$_LogEntry1010  -- Multi-level context errors
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_Status1010 FOR sys.ku$_Status1010;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_Status1020 IS OBJECT
        (
                mask            NUMBER,           -- Status types present
                wip             ku$_LogEntry1010, -- Work in progress
                job_description ku$_JobDesc1020,  -- Complete job description
                job_status      ku$_JobStatus1020,-- Detailed job status
                error           ku$_LogEntry1010  -- Multi-level context errors
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_Status1020 FOR sys.ku$_Status1020;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_Status1120 IS OBJECT
        (
                mask            NUMBER,           -- Status types present
                wip             ku$_LogEntry1010, -- Work in progress
                job_description ku$_JobDesc1020,  -- Complete job description
                job_status      ku$_JobStatus1120,-- Detailed job status
                error           ku$_LogEntry1010  -- Multi-level context errors
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_Status1120 FOR sys.ku$_Status1120;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_Status1210 IS OBJECT
        (
                mask            NUMBER,           -- Status types present
                wip             ku$_LogEntry1010, -- Work in progress
                job_description ku$_JobDesc1210,  -- Complete job description
                job_status      ku$_JobStatus1210,-- Detailed job status
                error           ku$_LogEntry1010  -- Multi-level context errors
        )

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_Status1210 FOR sys.ku$_Status1210;

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_Status FOR ku$_Status1210;
```

Summary of DBMS_DATAPUMP Subprograms

Table 47–1 DBMS_DATAPUMP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_FILE Procedure on page 47-15	Adds dump files to the dump file set for an Export, Import, or SQL_FILE operation. In addition to dump files, other types of files can also be added by using the `FILETYPE` parameter provided with this procedure.
ATTACH Function on page 47-18	Used to gain access to a Data Pump job that is in the Defining, Executing, Idling, or Stopped state
DATA_FILTER Procedures on page 47-20	Specifies restrictions on the rows that are to be retrieved
DATA_REMAP Procedure on page 47-23	Specifies transformations to be applied to column data as it is exported from, or imported into, a database.
DETACH Procedure on page 47-25	Specifies that the user has no further interest in using the handle
GET_DUMPFILE_INFO Procedure on page 47-26	Retrieves information about a specified dump file
GET_STATUS Procedure on page 47-30	Monitors the status of a job or waits for the completion of a job or for more details on API errors
LOG_ENTRY Procedure on page 47-33	Inserts a message into the log file
METADATA_FILTER Procedure on page 47-34	Provides filters that allow you to restrict the items that are included in a job
METADATA_REMAP Procedure on page 47-37	Specifies a remapping to be applied to objects as they are processed in the specified job
METADATA_TRANSFORM Procedure on page 47-40	Specifies transformations to be applied to objects as they are processed in the specified job
OPEN Function on page 47-45	Declares a new job using the Data Pump API, the handle returned being used as a parameter for calls to all other procedures (but not to the `ATTACH` function)
SET_PARALLEL Procedure on page 47-48	Adjusts the degree of parallelism within a job
SET_PARAMETER Procedures on page 47-50	Specifies job-processing options
START_JOB Procedure on page 47-60	Begins or resumes execution of a job
STOP_JOB Procedure on page 47-62	Terminates a job, but optionally, preserves the state of the job
WAIT_FOR_JOB Procedure on page 47-64	Runs a job until it either completes normally or stops for some other reason

ADD_FILE Procedure

This procedure adds files to the dump file set for an Export, Import, or SQL_FILE operation or specifies the log file or the output file for a SQL_FILE operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.ADD_FILE (
   handle     IN NUMBER,
   filename   IN VARCHAR2,
   directory  IN VARCHAR2,
   filesize   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   filetype   IN NUMBER DEFAULT DBMS_DATAPUMP.KU$_FILE_TYPE_DUMP_FILE,
   reusefile  IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–2 ADD_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function.
filename	The name of the file being added. filename must be a simple filename without any directory path information. For dump files, the filename can include a substitution variable, %U, which indicates that multiple files may be generated with the specified filename as a template. The %U is expanded in the resulting file names into a two-character, fixed-width, incrementing integer starting at 01. For example, the dump filename of export%U would cause export01, export02, export03, and so on, to be created depending on how many files are needed to perform the export. For filenames containing the % character, the % must be represented as %% to avoid ambiguity. Any % in a filename must be followed by either a % or a U.
directory	The name of a directory object within the database that is used to locate filename. A directory must be specified. See the Data Pump Export chapter in *Oracle Database Utilities* for information about the DIRECTORY command-line parameter.
filesize	The size of the dump file that is being added. It may be specified as the number of bytes, number of kilobytes (if followed by K), number of megabytes (if followed by M), number of gigabytes (if followed by G) or number of terabytes (if followed by T). An Export operation will write no more than the specified number of bytes to the file. Once the file is full, it will be closed. If there is insufficient space on the device to write the specified number of bytes, the Export operation will fail, but it can be restarted. If not specified, filesize will default to an unlimited size. For Import and SQL_FILE operations, filesize is ignored. The minimum value for filesize is ten times the default Data Pump block size, which is 4 kilobytes. A filesize can only be specified for dump files.
filetype	The type of the file to be added. The legal values are as follows and must be preceded by DBMS_DATAPUMP.: ■ KU$_FILE_TYPE_DUMP_FILE (dump file for a job) ■ KU$_FILE_TYPE_LOG_FILE (log file for a job) ■ KU$_FILE_TYPE_SQL_FILE (output for SQL_FILE job)

Table 47–2 (Cont.) ADD_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
reusefile	If 0, a preexisting file will cause an error. If 1, a preexisting file will be overwritten. If NULL, the default action for the file type will be applied (that is, dump files will not be overwritten). This parameter should only be non-NULL for dump files. The reusefile parameter is restricted to export jobs.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_ARGVAL. An invalid value was supplied for an input parameter.
- INVALID_STATE. The job is completing, or the job is past the defining state for an import or SQL_FILE job or is past the defining state for LOG and SQL files.
- INVALID_OPERATION. A dump file was specified for a Network Import or ESTIMATE_ONLY export operation.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- Adds files to a Data Pump job. Three types of files may be added to jobs: Dump files to contain the data that is being moved, log files to record the messages associated with an operation, and SQL files to record the output of a SQL_FILE operation. Log and SQL files will overwrite previously existing files. Dump files will never overwrite previously existing files. Instead, an error will be generated.
- Import and SQL_FILE operations require that all dump files be specified during the definition phase of the job. For Export operations, dump files can be added at any time. For example, if the user ascertains that the file space is running low during an Export, additional dump files may be added through this API. If the specified dump file already exists for an Export operation and reusefile is not set to 1, an error will be returned.
- For Export operations, the parallelism setting should be less than or equal to the number of dump files in the dump file set. If there are not enough dump files, the job will not be able to maximize parallelism to the degree specified by the SET_PARALLEL procedure.
- For Import operations, the parallelism setting should also be less than or equal to the number of dump files in the dump file set. If there are not enough dump files, the performance will not be optimal as multiple threads of execution try to access the same dump file.
- If the substitution variable (%U) is included in a filename, multiple dump files may be specified through a single call to ADD_FILE. For Export operations, the new dump files will be created as they are needed. Enough dump files will be created to allow all of the processes specified by the current SET_PARALLEL value to be active. If one of the dump files fills, it will be closed and a new dump file (with a new generated name) will be created to take its place. If multiple ADD_FILEs with substitution variables have been specified for dump files in a job, they will be used to generate dump files in a round robin fashion. For example, if expa%U, expb%U and expc%U were all specified for a job having a parallelism of 6, the initial dump files created would look like: expa01, expb01, expc01, expa02, expb02, and expc02.

- If presented with dump file specifications, `expa%U`, `expb%U` and `expc%U`, an Import or SQL_FILE operation will begin by attempting to open the dump files, `expa01`, `expb01`, and `expc01`. If the dump file containing the master table is not found in this set, the operation will expand its search for dump files by incrementing the substitution variable and looking up the new filenames (for example, `expa02`, `expb02`, and `expc02`). The DataPump API will keep expanding the search until it locates the dump file containing the master table. If the DataPump API determines that the dump file does not exist or is not part of the current dump set at any iteration, the DataPump API will stop incrementing the substitution variable for the dump file specification that was in error. Once the master table is found, the master table will be used to ascertain when all of dump files in the dump file set have been located.

ATTACH Function

This function gains access to a previously-created job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.ATTACH(
   job_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   job_owner    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 47–3 ATTACH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the job. The default is the job name owned by the user who is specified in the job_owner parameter (assuming that user has only one job in the Defining, Executing, or Idling states).
job_owner	The user who originally started the job. If NULL, the value defaults to the owner of the current session. To specify a job owner other than yourself, you must have either the DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE role (for export operations) or the DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role (for import and SQL_FILE operations). Being a privileged user allows you to monitor another user's job, but you cannot restart another user's job.

Return Values

An opaque handle for the job. This handle is used as input to the following procedures: ADD_FILE, DATA_FILTER, DETACH, GET_STATUS, LOG_ENTRY, METADATA_FILTER, METADATA_REMAP, METADATA_TRANSFORM, SET_PARALLEL, SET_PARAMETER, START_JOB, STOP_JOB, and WAIT_FOR_JOB.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. An invalid value was supplied for an input parameter.
- OBJECT_NOT_FOUND. The specified job no longer exists or the user specified a job owned by another schema, but the user did not have the DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE or DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The function succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- If the job was in the Stopped state, the job is placed into the Idling state. Once the ATTACH succeeds, you can monitor the progress of the job or control the job. The stream of KU$_STATUS_WIP and KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR messages returned through the GET_STATUS procedure will be returned to the newly attached job starting at the approximate time of the client's attachment. There will be no repeating of status and error messages that were processed before the client attached to a job.
- If you want to perform a second attach to a job, you must do so from a different session.

- If the ATTACH fails, use a null handle in a subsequent call to GET_STATUS for more information about the failure.

DATA_FILTER Procedures

This procedure specifies restrictions on the rows that are to be retrieved.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.DATA_FILTER (
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN NUMBER,
   table_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_name IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DATAPUMP.DATA_FILTER(
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_name IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DATAPUMP.DATA_FILTER(
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN CLOB,
   table_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_name IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–4 DATA_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle that is returned from the OPEN function
name	The name of the filter
value	The value of the filter
table_name	The name of the table on which the data filter is applied. If no table name is supplied, the filter applies to all tables in the job.
schema_name	The name of the schema that owns the table on which the filter is applied. If no schema name is specified, the filter applies to all schemas in the job. If you supply a schema name you must also supply a table name.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. There can be several reasons for this message:
  - A bad filter name is specified
  - The mode is TRANSPORTABLE, which does not support data filters
  - The specified table does not exist
  - The filter has already been set for the specified values of schema_name and table_name
- INVALID_STATE. The user called DATA_FILTER when the job was not in the Defining state.

- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. The value parameter is missing or its datatype does not match the filter name. Or a schema name was supplied, but not a table name.
- PRIVILEGE_ERROR. A schema name was supplied, but the user did not have the DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE or DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- Each data filter can only appear once in each table (for example, you cannot supply multiple SUBQUERY filters to a table) or once in each job. If different filters using the same name are applied to both a particular table and to the whole job, the filter parameter supplied for the specific table will take precedence.

  With the exception of the INCLUDE_ROWS filter, data filters are not supported on tables having nested tables or domain indexes defined upon them. Data filters are not supported in jobs performed in Transportable Tablespace mode.

  The available data filters are described in Table 47–5.

Table 47–5 Data Filters

Name	Datatype	Operations that Support Filter	Description
INCLUDE_ROWS	NUMBER	EXPORT, IMPORT	If nonzero, this filter specifies that user data for the specified table should be included in the job. The default is 1.
PARTITION_EXPR PARTITION_LIST	TEXT	EXPORT, IMPORT	For Export jobs, these filters specify which partitions are unloaded from the database. For Import jobs, they specify which table partitions are loaded into the database. Partition names are included in the job if their names satisfy the specified expression (for PARTITION_EXPR) or are included in the list (for PARTITION_LIST). Whereas the expression version of the filter offers more flexibility, the list version provides for full validation of the partition names. Double quotation marks around partition names are required only if the partition names contain special characters. PARTITION_EXPR is not supported on jobs across a network link. Default=All partitions are processed
SAMPLE	NUMBER	EXPORT, IMPORT	For Export jobs, specifies a percentage for sampling the data blocks to be moved. This filter allows subsets of large tables to be extracted for testing purposes.

Table 47–5 (Cont.) Data Filters

Name	Datatype	Operations that Support Filter	Description
SUBQUERY	TEXT	EXPORT, IMPORT	Specifies a subquery that is added to the end of the SELECT statement for the table. If you specify a WHERE clause in the subquery, you can restrict the rows that are selected. Specifying an ORDER BY clause orders the rows dumped in the export which improves performance when migrating from heap-organized tables to index-organized tables.

DATA_REMAP Procedure

This procedure specifies transformations to be applied to column data as it is exported from, or imported into, a database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.DATA_REMAP(
   handle          IN NUMBER,
   name            IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   column          IN VARCHAR2,
   remap_function  IN VARCHAR2),
   schema          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–6 DATA_REMAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of the current job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to an OPEN function.
name	The name of the remap
table_name	The table containing the column to be remapped
column	The name of the column to be remapped
remap_function	The meaning of remap_function is dependent upon the value of name. See Table 47–7 for a list of possible names.
schema	The schema containing the column to be remapped. If NULL, the remapping applies to all schemas moved in the job that contain the specified table.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. The mode is transportable (which does not support data modifications) or it has specified that no data to be included in the job. An invalid remap name was supplied.
- INVALID_OPERATION. Data remaps are only supported for Export and Import operations.
- INVALID_STATE. The DATA_REMAP procedure was called after the job started (that is, it was not in the defining state).
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The job handle is no longer valid.

Usage Notes

- The DATA_REMAP procedure is only supported for Export and Import operations. It allows you to manipulate user data being exported or imported. The name of the remap determines the remap operation to be performed.
- For export operations, you might wish to define a data remap to obscure sensitive data such as credit card numbers from a dump file, but leave the remainder of the data so that it can be read. To accomplish this, the remapping should convert each unique source number into a distinct generated number. So that the mapping is

consistent across the dump file set, the same function should be called for every column that contains the credit card number.

- For import operations, you might wish to define a data remap to reset the primary key when data is being merged into an existing table that contains colliding primary keys. A single remapping function should be provided for all columns defining or referencing the primary key to ensure that remapping is consistent.

> **Note:** If the called function uses package state variables, then to ensure that remapping is performed consistently across all tables, the job should be run with a SET_PARALLEL value of 1 and no restart operations should be performed.

The Data Remap functions are listed in Table 47–7.

Table 47–7 Names of Data Remap Functions

Name	Meaning of `remap_function`	Meaning
`COLUMN_FUNCTION`	String having the format: `[schema.]package.function`	The `name` parameter references a PL/SQL package function which is called to modify the data for the specified column. The function accepts a single parameter, which has the same datatype as the remapped column, and returns a value having the same datatype as the remapped column. Note that the default for the schema is the schema of the user performing the export.

DETACH Procedure

This procedure specifies that the user has no further interest in using the handle.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.DETACH(
   handle  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 47–8 DETACH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of the job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either an OPEN or ATTACH function.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- Through this call, you specify that you have no further interest in using the handle. Resources associated with a completed job cannot be reclaimed until all users are detached from the job. An implicit detach from a handle is performed when the user's session is exited or aborted. An implicit detach from a handle is also performed upon the expiration of the timeout associated with a STOP_JOB that was applied to the job referenced by the handle. All previously allocated DBMS_DATAPUMP handles are released when an instance is restarted.

GET_DUMPFILE_INFO Procedure

This procedure retrieves information about a specified dump file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_DUMPFILE_INFO(
   filename    IN VARCHAR2,
   directory   IN VARCHAR2,
   info_table  OUT ku$_dumpfile_info,
   filetype    OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 47–9 GET_DUMPFILE_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
filename	A simple filename with no directory path information
directory	A directory object that specifies where the file can be found
info_table	A PL/SQL table for storing information about the dump file
filetype	The type of file (Data Pump dump file, original Export dump file, external tables dump file, or unknown)

Exceptions

The GET_DUMPFILE_INFO procedure is a utility routine that operates outside the context of any Data Pump job. Exceptions are handled differently for this procedure than for procedures associated in some way with a Data Pump job. A full exception stack should be available directly, without the need to call the GET_STATUS procedure to retrieve the detailed information. The exception for this procedure is as follows:

- NO_DUMPFILE_INFO. Unable to retrieve dump file information as specified.

Usage Notes

You can use the GET_DUMPFILE_INFO procedure to request information about a specific file. If the file is not recognized as any type of dump file, then a filetype of 0 (zero) is returned and the dump file info_table remains empty.

A filetype value of 1 indicates a Data Pump dump file. A filetype value of 2 indicates an original Export dump file. A filetype value of 3 indicates an external tables dump file. In all cases, the dump file info_table will be populated with information retrieved from the dump file header. Rows of this table consist of item code and value pairs, where the item code indicates the type of information and the value column is a VARCHAR2 containing the actual data (converted to a string in some cases). The table is defined as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_dumpfile_item IS OBJECT (
               item_code       NUMBER,           -- Identifies header item
               value           VARCHAR2(2048)    -- Text string value)/

GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.ku$_dumpfile_item TO PUBLIC;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_dumpfile_item FOR sys.ku$_dumpfile_item;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_dumpfile_info AS TABLE OF sys.ku$_dumpfile_item/
```

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.ku$_dumpfile_info TO PUBLIC;
CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_dumpfile_info FOR sys.ku$_dumpfile_info;
```

The item codes, which can easily be extended to provide more information as needed, are currently defined as shown in Table 47–10 (prepended with the package name, DBMS_DATAPUMP.). Assume the following with regard to these item codes:

- Unless otherwise stated, all item codes may be returned only for Oracle Data Pump and external tables dump files (filetypes 1 and 3).
- Unless otherwise stated, all item codes have been available since Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 (10.2).

Table 47–10 Item Codes For the DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_DUMPFILE_INFO Procedure

Item Code	Description
KU$_DFHDR_FILE_VERSION	The internal file version of the dump file.
KU$_DFHDR_MASTER_PRESENT	If the Data Pump master table is present in the dump file, then the value for this item code is 1; otherwise the value is 0. Returned only for filetype 1.
KU$_DFHDR_GUID	A unique identifier assigned to the Data Pump export job or the external tables unload job that produced the dump file. For a multifile dump set, each file in the set has the same value for this item code.
KU$_DFHDR_FILE_NUMBER	A numeric identifier assigned to the dump file.Each dump file in a multifile dump set has its own identifier, unique only within the dump set.
KU$_DFHDR_CHARSET_ID	A numeric code that represents the character set in use at the source system when the dump file was created. Returned for all filetypes.
KU$_DFHDR_CREATION_DATE	The date and time that the dump file was created.
KU$_DFHDR_FLAGS	Internal flag values.
KU$_DFHDR_JOB_NAME	The name assigned to the export job that created the dump file. Returned only for filetype 1.
KU$_DFHDR_PLATFORM	The operating system name of the source system on which the dump file was created.
KU$_DFHDR_INSTANCE	The instance name of the source system on which the dump file was created.
KU$_DFHDR_LANGUAGE	The language name that corresponds to the character set of the source system where the export dump file was created.
KU$_DFHDR_BLOCKSIZE	The blocksize, in bytes, of the dump file.
KU$_DFHDR_DIRPATH	If direct path mode was used when the dump file was created, then the value for this item code is 1, otherwise the value is 0. Returned only for filetype 2.
KU$_DFHDR_METADATA_COMPRESSED	If the system metadata is stored in the dump file in compressed format, then the value for this item code is 1, otherwise the value is 0. Returned only for filetype 1.
KU$_DFHDR_DB_VERSION	The database job version used to create the dump file. Returned for all filetypes.

Table 47–10 (Cont.) Item Codes For the DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_DUMPFILE_INFO Procedure

Item Code	Description
KU$_DFHDR_MASTER_PIECE_COUNT	The Data Pump master table may be split into multiple pieces and written to multiple dump files in the set, one piece per file. The value returned for this item code indicates the number of dump files that contain pieces of the master table. The value for this item code is only meaningful if the Data Pump master table is present in the dump file, as indicated by the item code KU$_DFHDR_MASTER_PRESENT. Returned only for filetype 1. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).
KU$_DFHDR_MASTER_PIECE_NUMBER	The Data Pump master table may be split into multiple pieces and written to multiple dump files in the set, one piece per file. The value returned for this item code indicates which master table piece is contained in the dump file. The value for this item code is only meaningful if the Data Pump master table is present in the dump file, as indicated by the item code KU$_DFHDR_MASTER_PRESENT. Returned only for filetype 1. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).
KU$_DFHDR_DATA_COMPRESSED	If the table data is stored in the dump file in compressed format, then the value for this item code is 1, otherwise the value is 0. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).
KU$_DFHDR_METADATA_ENCRYPTED	If the system metadata is stored in the dump file in encrypted format, then the value for this item code is 1, otherwise the value is 0. Returned only for filetype 1. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).
KU$_DFHDR_DATA_ENCRYPTED	If the table data is stored in the dump file in encrypted format, then the value for this item code is 1, otherwise the value is 0. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).

Table 47–10 (Cont.) Item Codes For the DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_DUMPFILE_INFO Procedure

Item Code	Description
KU$_DFHDR_COLUMNS_ENCRYPTED	If encrypted column data is stored in the dump file in encrypted format, then the value for this item code is 1, otherwise the value is 0. Returned only for filetype 1. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).
KU$_DFHDR_ENCRYPTION_MODE	The encryption mode indicates whether a user-provided password or the Oracle Encryption Wallet was used to encrypt data written to the dump file. The possible values returned for this item code are: ■ KU$_DFHDR_ENCMODE_NONE No data was written to the dump file in encrypted format. ■ KU$_DFHDR_ENCMODE_PASSWORD Data was written to the dump file in encrypted format using a provided password. ■ KU$_DFHDR_ENCMODE_DUAL Data was written to the dump file in encrypted format using both a provided password as well as an Oracle Encryption Wallet. ■ KU$_DFHDR_ENCMODE_TRANS Data was written to the dump file in encrypted format transparently using an Oracle Encryption Wallet. Only available since Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1).
KU$_DFHDR_COMPRESSION_ALG	The compression algorithm used when writing system metadata and/or table data to the dump file in compressed format. The possible values returned for this item code are: ■ KU$_DFHDR_CMPALG_NONE No data was written to the dump file in compressed format. ■ KU$_DFHDR_CMPALG_BASIC Data was written to the dump file in compressed format using an internal algorithm. This is the default algorithm used since Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 (10.2). ■ KU$_DFHDR_CMPALG_LOW Data was written to the dump file in compressed format using the LOW algorithm. ■ KU$_DFHDR_CMPALG_MEDIUM Data was written to the dump file in compressed format using the MEDIUM algorithm. ■ KU$_DFHDR_CMPALG_HIGH Data was written to the dump file in compressed format using the HIGH algorithm. Only available since Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1).

GET_STATUS Procedure

This procedure monitors the status of a job or waits for the completion of a job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.GET_STATUS(
   handle    IN NUMBER,
   mask      IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   timeout   IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   job_state OUT VARCHAR2,
   status    OUT ku$_Status);
```

Parameters

Table 47–11 GET_STATUS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function. A null handle can be used to retrieve error information after OPEN and ATTACH failures.
mask	A bit mask that indicates which of four types of information to return: ■ KU$_STATUS_WIP ■ KU$_STATUS_JOB_DESC ■ KU$_STATUS_JOB_STATUS ■ KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR Each status has a numerical value. You can request multiple types of information by adding together different combinations of values. See Data Structures - Object Types on page 47-7.
timeout	Maximum number of seconds to wait before returning to the user. A value of 0 requests an immediate return. A value of -1 requests an infinite wait. If KU$_STATUS_WIP or KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR information is requested and becomes available during the timeout period, then the procedure returns before the timeout period is over.
job_state	Current state of the job. If only the job state is needed, it is much more efficient to use this parameter than to retrieve the full ku$_Status structure.
status	A ku$_Status is returned. The ku$_Status mask indicates what kind of information is included. This could be none if only KU$_STATUS_WIP or KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR information is requested and the timeout period expires.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_VALUE. The mask or timeout contains an illegal value.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

The GET_STATUS procedure is used to monitor the progress of an ongoing job and to receive error notification. You can request various type of information using the mask parameter. The KU$_STATUS_JOB_DESC and KU$_STATUS_JOB_STATUS values are classified as synchronous information because the information resides in the master table. The KU$_STATUS_WIP and KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR values are classified as asynchronous because the messages that embody these types of information can be generated at any time by various layers in the Data Pump architecture.

- If synchronous information *only* is requested, the interface will ignore the timeout parameter and simply return the requested information.
- If asynchronous information is requested, the interface will wait a *maximum* of timeout seconds before returning to the client. If a message of the requested asynchronous information type is received, the call will complete prior to timeout seconds. If synchronous information was also requested, it will be returned whenever the procedure returns.
- If the job_state returned by GET_STATUS does not indicate a terminating job, it is possible that the job could still terminate before the next call to GET_STATUS. This would result in an INVALID_HANDLE exception. Alternatively, the job could terminate during the call to GET_STATUS, which would result in a NO_SUCH_JOB exception. Callers should be prepared to handle these cases.

Error Handling

There are two types of error scenarios that need to be handled using the GET_STATUS procedure:

- Errors resulting from other procedure calls: For example, the SET_PARAMETER procedure may produce an INCONSISTENT_ARGS exception. The client should immediately call GET_STATUS with mask=8 (errors) and timeout=0. The returned ku$_Status.error will contain a ku$_LogEntry that describes the inconsistency in more detail.
- Errors resulting from events asynchronous to the client(s): An example might be Table already exists when trying to create a table. The ku$_Status.error will contain a ku$_LogEntry with all error lines (from all processing layers that added context about the error) properly ordered.

After a job has begun, a client's main processing loop will typically consist of a call to GET_STATUS with an infinite timeout (-1) "listening" for KU$_STATUS_WIP and KU$_STATUS_JOB_ERROR messages. If status was requested, then JOB_STATUS information will also be in the request.

When the ku$_Status is interpreted, the following guidelines should be used:

- ku$_Status.ku$_JobStatus.percent_done refers only to the amount of data that has been processed in a job. Metadata is not considered in the calculation. It is determined using the following formulas:
  - EXPORT or network IMPORT--(bytes_processed/estimated_bytes) * 100
  - IMPORT--(bytes_processed/total_expected_bytes) * 100
  - SQL_FILE or estimate-only EXPORT--0.00 if not done or 100.00 if done

  The effects of the QUERY and PARTITION_EXPR data filters are not considered in computing percent_done.

It is expected that the status returned will be transformed by the caller into more user-friendly status. For example, when percent done is not zero, an estimate of completion time could be produced using the following formula:

```
((SYSDATE - start time) / ku$_Status.ku$_JobStatus.percent_done) * 100
```

- The caller should not use `ku$_Status.ku$_JobStatus.percent_done` for determining whether the job has completed. Instead, the caller should only rely on the state of the job as found in `job_state`.

LOG_ENTRY Procedure

This procedure inserts a message into the log file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.LOG_ENTRY(
   handle         IN NUMBER,
   message        IN VARCHAR2
   log_file_only  IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 47–12 LOG_ENTRY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function.
message	A text line to be added to the log file
log_file_only	Specified text should be written only to the log file. It should not be returned in GET_STATUS work-in-progress (KU$_STATUS_WIP) messages.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

The message is added to the log file. If log_file_only is zero (the default), the message is also broadcast as a KU$_STATUS_WIP message through the GET_STATUS procedure to all users attached to the job.

The LOG_ENTRY procedure allows applications to tailor the log stream to match the abstractions provided by the application. For example, the command-line interface supports INCLUDE and EXCLUDE parameters defined by the user. Identifying these values as calls to the underlying METADATA_FILTER procedure would be confusing to users. Instead, the command-line interface can enter text into the log describing the settings for the INCLUDE and EXCLUDE parameters.

Lines entered in the log stream from LOG_ENTRY are prefixed by the string, ";;; "

METADATA_FILTER Procedure

This procedure provides filters that allow you to restrict the items that are included in a job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.METADATA_FILTER(
   handle       IN NUMBER,
   name         IN VARCHAR2,
   value        IN VARCHAR2,
   object_path  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DATAPUMP.METADATA_FILTER(
   handle       IN NUMBER,
   name         IN VARCHAR2,
   value        IN CLOB,
   object_path  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–13 METADATA_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from the OPEN function
name	The name of the filter. See Table 47–14 for descriptions of the available filters.
value	The value of the filter
object_path	The object path to which the filter applies. If the default is used, the filter applies to all applicable objects. Lists of the object paths supported for each mode are contained in the catalog views for DATABASE_EXPORT_OBJECTS, SCHEMA_EXPORT_OBJECTS, and TABLE_EXPORT_OBJECTS. (Note that the TABLE_EXPORT_OBJECTS view is applicable to both Table and Tablespace mode because their object paths are the same.) For an import operation, object paths reference the mode used to create the dump file rather than the mode being used for the import.

Table 47–14 describes the name, the object type, and the meaning of the filters available with the METADATA_FILTER procedure. The datatype for all the filters is a text expression. All operations support all filters.

Table 47–14 Filters Provided by METADATA_FILTER Procedure

Name	Object Type	Meaning
NAME_EXPR NAME_LIST	Named objects	Defines which object names are included in the job. You use the object type parameter to limit the filter to a particular object type. For Table mode, identifies which tables are to be processed.

Table 47–14 (Cont.) Filters Provided by METADATA_FILTER Procedure

Name	Object Type	Meaning
SCHEMA_EXPR SCHEMA_LIST	Schema objects	Restricts the job to objects whose owning schema name is satisfied by the expression. For Table mode, only a single SCHEMA_EXPR filter is supported. If specified, it must only specify a single schema (for example, 'IN (''SCOTT'')'). For Schema mode, identifies which users are to be processed.
TABLESPACE_EXPR TABLESPACE_LIST	TABLE, CLUSTER, INDEX, ROLLBACK_SEGMENT	Restricts the job to objects stored in a tablespace whose name is satisfied by the expression. For Tablespace mode, identifies which tablespaces are to be processed. If a partition of an object is stored in the tablespace, the entire object is added to the job. For Transportable mode, identifies which tablespaces are to be processed. If a table has a single partition in the tablespace set, all partitions must be in the tablespace set. An index is not included within the tablespace set unless all of its partitions are in the tablespace set. A domain index is not included in the tablespace set unless all of its secondary objects are included in the tablespace set.
INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR INCLUDE_PATH_LIST EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR EXCLUDE_PATH_LIST	All	Defines which object paths are included in, or excluded from, the job. You use these filters to select only certain object types from the database or dump file set. Objects of paths satisfying the condition are included (INCLUDE_PATH_*) or excluded (EXCLUDE_PATH_*) from the operation. The object_path parameter is not supported for these filters.
EXCLUDE_TABLES	TABLE_EXPORT	Specifies that no tables are to be exported.
VIEWS_AS_TABLES	TABLE_EXPORT	A comma-separated list of views to be exported as tables: [schema_name.]view_name[:table_name] The filter can be called multiple times with multiple values and all values get added to a list. All views on the list are exported as tables.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_ARGVAL. This exception can indicate any of the following conditions:
  - An object_path was specified for an INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR or EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR filter.
  - The specified object_path is not supported for the current mode.
  - The SCHEMA_EXPR filter specified multiple schemas for a Table mode job.
- INVALID_STATE. The user called the METADATA_FILTER procedure after the job left the defining state.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. The filter value is of the wrong datatype or is missing.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.

- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- Metadata filters identify a set of objects to be included or excluded from a Data Pump operation. Except for EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR and INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR, dependent objects of an identified object will be processed along with the identified object. For example, if an index is identified for inclusion by a filter, grants upon that index will also be included by the filter. Likewise, if a table is excluded by a filter, then indexes, constraints, grants and triggers upon the table will also be excluded by the filter.
- Two versions of each filter are supported: SQL expression and List. The SQL expression version of the filters offer maximum flexibility for identifying objects (for example the use of LIKE to support use of wild cards). The names of the expression filters are as follows:
  - NAME_EXPR
  - SCHEMA_EXPR
  - TABLESPACE_EXPR
  - INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR
  - EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR

  The list version of the filters allow maximum validation of the filter. An error will be reported if one of the elements in the filter is not found within the source database (for Export and network-based jobs) or is not found within the dump file (for file-based Import and SQLFILE jobs). The names of the list filters are as follows:
  - NAME_LIST
  - SCHEMA_LIST
  - TABLESPACE_LIST
  - INCLUDE_PATH_LIST
  - EXCLUDE_PATH_LIST
- Filters allow a user to restrict the items that are included in a job. For example, a user could request a full export, but without Package Specifications or Package Bodies.
- If multiple filters are specified for a object type, they are implicitly 'ANDed' together (that is, objects participating in the job must pass all of the filters applied to their object types).
- The same filter name can be specified multiple times within a job. For example, specifying NAME_EXPR as '!=''EMP''' and NAME_EXPR as '!=''DEPT''' on a Table mode export would produce a file set containing all of the tables except for EMP and DEPT.

METADATA_REMAP Procedure

This procedure specifies a remapping to be applied to objects as they are processed in the specified job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.METADATA_REMAP (
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   old_value   IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–15 METADATA_REMAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle for the current job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to the OPEN function.
name	The name of the remap. See Table 47–16 for descriptions of the available remaps.
old_value	Specifies which value in the dump file set should be reset to value
value	The value of the parameter for the remap. This signifies the new value that old_value should be translated into.
object_type	Designates the object type to which the remap applies. The list of object types supported for each mode are contained in the DATABASE_EXPORT_OBJECTS, SCHEMA_EXPORT_OBJECTS, TABLE_EXPORT_OBJECTS, and TABLESPACE_EXPORT_OBJECTS catalog views. By default, the remap applies to all applicable objects within the job. The object_type parameter allows a caller to specify different parameters for different object types within a job. Remaps that explicitly specify an object type override remaps that apply to all object types.

Table 47–16 describes the remaps provided by the METADATA_REMAP procedure.

Table 47–16 Remaps Provided by the METADATA_REMAP Procedure

Name	Datatype	Object Type	Meaning
REMAP_SCHEMA	TEXT	Schema objects	Any schema object in the job that matches the object_type parameter and was located in the old_value schema will be moved to the value schema. Privileged users can perform unrestricted schema remaps. Nonprivileged users can perform schema remaps only if their schema is the target schema of the remap. For example, SCOTT can remap his BLAKE's objects to SCOTT, but SCOTT cannot remap SCOTT's objects to BLAKE.

Table 47–16 (Cont.) Remaps Provided by the METADATA_REMAP Procedure

Name	Datatype	Object Type	Meaning
REMAP_TABLESPACE	TEXT	TABLE, INDEX, ROLLBACK_SEGMENT, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG,TABLE_SPACE	Any storage segment in the job that matches the object_type parameter and was located in the old_value tablespace will be relocated to the value tablespace.
REMAP_DATAFILE	TEXT	LIBRARY, TABLESPACE, DIRECTORY	Any data file reference in the job that matches the object_type parameter and referenced the old_value data file will be redefined to use the value data file.
REMAP_TABLE	TEXT	TABLE	Any reference to a table in the job that matches the old_value table name will be replaced with the value table name. The old_value parameter may refer to a partition such as employees.low. This allows names for tables constructed the by PARTITION_OPTIONS=DEPARTITION parameter to be specified by the user.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_ARGVAL. This message can indicate any of the following:
  - The job's mode does not include the specified object_type.
  - The remap has already been specified for the specified old_value and object_type.
- INVALID_OPERATION. Remaps are only supported for SQL_FILE and Import operations. The job's operation was Export, which does not support the use of metadata remaps.
- INVALID_STATE. The user called METADATA_REMAP after the job had started (that is, the job was not in the defining state).
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. There was no value supplied or it was of the wrong datatype for the remap.
- PRIVILEGE_ERROR. A nonprivileged user attempted to do a REMAP_SCHEMA to a different user's schema or a REMAP_DATAFILE.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- The METADATA_REMAP procedure is only supported for Import and SQL_FILE operations. It enables you to apply commonly desired, predefined remappings to the definition of objects as part of the transfer. If you need remaps that are not supported within this procedure, you should do a preliminary SQL_FILE operation to produce a SQL script corresponding to the dump file set. By editing the DDL directly and then executing it, you can produce any remappings that you need.

- Transforms for the DataPump API are a subset of the remaps implemented by the `DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAMETER` API. Multiple remaps can be defined for a single job. However, each remap defined must be unique according its parameters. That is, two remaps cannot specify conflicting or redundant remaps.

METADATA_TRANSFORM Procedure

This procedure specifies transformations to be applied to objects as they are processed in the specified job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.METADATA_TRANSFORM (
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DATAPUMP.METADATA_TRANSFORM (
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN NUMBER,
   object_type IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–17 METADATA_TRANSFORM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle for the current job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to the OPEN function.
name	The name of the transformation. See Table 47–18 for descriptions of the available transforms.
value	The value of the parameter for the transform
object_type	Designates the object type to which the transform applies. The list of object types supported for each mode are contained in the DATABASE_EXPORT_OBJECTS, SCHEMA_EXPORT_OBJECTS, TABLE_EXPORT_OBJECTS, and TABLESPACE_EXPORT_OBJECTS catalog views. By default, the transform applies to all applicable objects within the job. The object_type parameter allows a caller to specify different transform parameters for different object types within a job. Transforms that explicitly specify an object type override transforms that apply to all object types.

Table 47–18 describes the transforms provided by the METADATA_TRANSFORM procedure.

Table 47–18 Transforms Provided by the METADATA_TRANFORM Procedure

Name	Datatype	Object Type	Meaning
DISABLE_ARCHIVE_LOGGING	NUMBER	TABLE INDEX	Specifies whether to disable archive logging for specified object types during import. A value of zero (FALSE) is the default. It specifies that archive logging will take place. This is the default behavior if this transform parameter is not specified. A non-zero (TRUE) value disables archive logging for the specified object types before data is loaded during import. If no object type is specified, then archive logging is disabled for both TABLE and INDEX object types. All other object types processed during data pump import are logged. **Note:** If the database is in FORCE LOGGING mode, then the DISABLE_ARCHIVE_LOGGING transform does not disable logging when indexes and tables are created.
INMEMORY	NUMBER	TABLE TABLESPACE MATERIALIZED VIEWS	The INMEMORY transform is related to the In-Memory Column Store (IM column store), an optional area in the SGA that stores whole tables, table partitions, and individual columns in a compressed columnar format. If a non-zero value (TRUE) is specified on import, then Data Pump generates an IM clause that preserves the IM setting those objects had at export time. This is the default. If a value of zero (FALSE) is specified on import, then Data Pump does not include an IM clause for any objects. **Note**: The INMEMORY transform is available only in Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1.0.2) or higher.
INMEMORY_CLAUSE	TEXT	TABLE TABLESPACE MATERIALIZED VIEWS	The INMEMORY_CLAUSE transform is related to the In-Memory Column Store (IM column store), an optional area in the SGA that stores whole tables, table partitions, and individual columns in a compressed columnar format. When you specify this transform, Data Pump uses the contents of the string as the IM clause for all objects being imported that have an IM clause in their DDL. This transform is useful when you want to override the IM clause for an object in the dump file. **Note**: The INMEMORY_CLAUSE transform is available only in Oracle Database 12*c* Release (12.1.0.2) or higher.

Table 47–18 (Cont.) Transforms Provided by the METADATA_TRANFORM Procedure

Name	Datatype	Object Type	Meaning
LOB_STORAGE	TEXT	TABLE	Specifies the storage type to use for LOB segments. The options are as follows: ■ SECUREFILE - LOB storage is returned as SECUREFILE ■ BASICFILE - LOB storage is returned as BASICFILE ■ DEFAULT - The keyword (SECUREFILE or BASICFILE) is omitted in the LOB STORE AS clause. ■ NO_CHANGE - LOB segments are created with the same storage they had in the source database. This is the default. Specifying this transform changes the LOB storage for all tables in the job, including tables that provide storage for materialized views.
OID	NUMBER	TYPE TABLE	If zero, inhibits the assignment of the exported OID during type or table creation. Instead, a new OID will be assigned. Use of this transform on Object Tables will cause breakage in REF columns that point to the table. Defaults to 1.
PCTSPACE	NUMBER	TABLE INDEX TABLESPACE	Specifies a percentage multiplier used to alter extent allocations and data file sizes. Used to shrink large tablespaces for testing purposes. Defaults to 100.
SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES	NUMBER	TABLE, INDEX	If nonzero (TRUE), emit storage segment parameters. Defaults to 1.
SEGMENT_ CREATION	NUMBER	TABLE	If nonzero (TRUE), the SQL SEGMENT CREATION clause is added to the CREATE TABLE statement. That is, the CREATE TABLE statement will explicitly say either SEGMENT CREATION DEFERRED or SEGMENT CREATION IMMEDIATE. If the value is FALSE, then the SEGMENT CREATION clause is omitted from the CREATE TABLE statement. Set this parameter to FALSE to use the default segment creation attributes for the table(s) being loaded. Defaults to nonzero (TRUE).
STORAGE	NUMBER	TABLE	If nonzero (TRUE), emit storage clause. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES is zero.) Defaults to nonzero (TRUE).

Table 47–18 (Cont.) Transforms Provided by the METADATA_TRANFORM Procedure

Name	Datatype	Object Type	Meaning
TABLE_COMPRESSION_CLAUSE	TEXT	TABLE	Specifies a table compression clause (for example, COMPRESS BASIC) to use when the table is created. Specify NONE to omit the table compression clause. The table will have the default compression for the tablespace. Specifying this transform changes the compression type for all tables in the job, including tables that provide storage for materialized views. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about table compression options and syntax.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_ARGVAL. This message can indicate any of the following:
  - The mode is transportable, which doesn't support transforms.
  - The job's mode does not include the specified object_type.
  - The transform has already been specified for the specified value and object_type.
- INVALID_OPERATION. Transforms are only supported for SQL_FILE and Import operations. The job's operation was Export which does not support the use of metadata transforms.
- INVALID_STATE. The user called METADATA_TRANSFORM after the job had started (that is, the job was not in the defining state).
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. There was no value supplied or it was of the wrong datatype for the transform.
- PRIVILEGE_ERROR. A nonprivileged user attempted to do a REMAP_SCHEMA to a different user's schema or a REMAP_DATAFILE.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- The METADATA_TRANSFORM procedure is only supported for Import and SQL_FILE operations. It enables you to apply commonly desired, predefined transformations to the definition of objects as part of the transfer. If you need transforms that are not supported within this procedure, you should do a preliminary SQL_FILE operation to produce a SQL script corresponding to the dump file set. By editing the DDL directly and then executing it, you can produce any transformations that you need.
- Transforms for the DataPump API are a subset of the transforms implemented by the DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAMETER API. Multiple transforms can be defined for a single job. However, each transform defined must be unique

according its parameters. That is, two transforms cannot specify conflicting or redundant transformations.

OPEN Function

This function is used to declare a new job using the Data Pump API. The handle that is returned is used as a parameter for calls to all other procedures (but not to the ATTACH function).

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.OPEN (
   operation    IN VARCHAR2,
   job_mode         IN VARCHAR2,
   remote_link  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   job_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   version      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE')
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 47–19 OPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Meaning
operation	The type of operation to be performed. Table 47–20 contains descriptions of valid operation types.
job_mode	The scope of the operation to be performed. Table 47–21 contains descriptions of valid modes. Specifying NULL generates an error.
remote_link	If the value of this parameter is non-null, it provides the name of a database link to the remote database that will be the source of data and metadata for the current job.
job_name	The name of the job. The name is limited to 30 characters; it will be truncated if more than 30 characters are used. It may consist of printable characters and spaces. It is implicitly qualified by the schema of the user executing the OPEN function and must be unique to that schema (that is, there cannot be other Data Pump jobs using the same name). The name is used to identify the job both within the API and with other database components such as identifying the job in the DBA_RESUMABLE view if the job becomes suspended through lack of resources. If no name is supplied, a system generated name will be provided for the job in the following format: "SYS_<OPERATION>_<MODE>_%N". The default job name is formed where %N expands to a two-digit incrementing integer starting at '01' (for example, "SYS_IMPORT_FULL_03"). The name supplied for the job will also be used to name the master table and other resources associated with the job.

Table 47–19 (Cont.) OPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Meaning
version	The version of database objects to be extracted. This option is only valid for Export, network Import, and SQL_FILE operations. Database objects or attributes that are incompatible with the version will not be extracted. Legal values for this parameter are as follows: ■ COMPATIBLE - (default) the version of the metadata corresponds to the database compatibility level and the compatibility release level for feature (as given in the V$COMPATIBILITY view). Database compatibility must be set to 9.2 or higher. ■ LATEST - the version of the metadata corresponds to the database version. ■ A specific database version, for example, '11.0.0'. Specify a value of 12 to allow all existing database features, components, and options to be exported from Oracle Database 11*g* release 2 (11.2.0.3) or later into an Oracle Database 12 *c* Release 1 (12.1) (either a multitenant container database (CDB) or a non-CDB).

Table 47–20 describes the valid operation types for the OPEN function.

Table 47–20 Valid Operation Types for the OPEN Function

Operation	Description
EXPORT	Saves data and metadata to a dump file set or obtains an estimate of the size of the data for an operation.
IMPORT	Restores data and metadata from a dump file set or across a database link.
SQL_FILE	Displays the metadata within a dump file set, or from across a network link, as a SQL script. The location of the SQL script is specified through the ADD_FILE procedure.

Table 47–21 describes the valid modes for the OPEN function.

Table 47–21 Valid Modes for the OPEN Function

Mode	Description
FULL	Operates on the full database or full dump file set except for Oracle Database internal schemas. (Some tables from Oracle Database internal schemas may be registered to be exported and imported in full operations in order to provide consistent metadata during import.) The TRANSPORTABLE parameter can be set to ALWAYS during a full database export in order to move data via transportable tablespaces rather than in the Data Pump dump file.
SCHEMA	Operates on a set of selected schemas. Defaults to the schema of the current user. All objects in the selected schemas are processed. In SCHEMA mode, you cannot specify Oracle-internal schemas (for example, SYS, XDB, ORDSYS, MDSYS, CTXSYS, ORDPLUGINS, or LBACSYS).
TABLE	Operates on a set of selected tables. Defaults to all of the tables in the current user's schema. Only tables and their dependent objects are processed.

Table 47–21 (Cont.) Valid Modes for the OPEN Function

Mode	Description
TABLESPACE	Operates on a set of selected tablespaces. No defaulting is performed. Tables that have storage in the specified tablespaces are processed in the same manner as in Table mode.
TRANSPORTABLE	Operates on metadata for tables (and their dependent objects) within a set of selected tablespaces to perform a transportable tablespace export/import.

Return Values

- An opaque handle for the job. This handle is used as input to the following procedures: ADD_FILE, CREATE_JOB_VIEW, DATA_FILTER, DETACH, GET_STATUS, LOG_ENTRY, LOG_ERROR, METADATA_FILTER, METADATA_REMAP, METADATA_TRANSFORM, SET_PARALLEL, SET_PARAMETER, START_JOB, STOP_JOB, and WAIT_FOR_JOB

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. An invalid operation or mode was specified. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- JOB_EXISTS. A table already exists with the specified job name.
- PRIVILEGE_ERROR. The user does not have the necessary privileges or roles to use the specified mode.
- INTERNAL_ERROR. The job was created under the wrong schema or the master table was of the wrong format.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The function succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- When the job is created, a master table is created for the job under the caller's schema within the caller's default tablespace. A handle referencing the job is returned that attaches the current session to the job. Once attached, the handle remains valid until either an explicit or implicit detach occurs. The handle is only valid in the caller's session. Other handles can be attached to the same job from a different session by using the ATTACH function.
- If the call to the OPEN function fails, call the GET_STATUS procedure with a null handle to retrieve additional information about the failure.

SET_PARALLEL Procedure

This procedure adjusts the degree of parallelism within a job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.SET_PARALLEL(
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   degree      IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 47–22 SET_PARALLEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function.
degree	The maximum number of worker processes that can be used for the job. You use this parameter to adjust the amount of resources used for a job.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_OPERATION. The SET_PARALLEL procedure is only valid for export and import operations.
- INVALID_ARGVAL. An invalid value was supplied for an input parameter.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- The SET_PARALLEL procedure is only available in the Enterprise Edition of the Oracle database.
- The SET_PARALLEL procedure can be executed by any session attached to a job. The job must be in one of the following states: Defining, Idling, or Executing.
- The effect of decreasing the degree of parallelism may be delayed because ongoing work needs to find an orderly completion point before SET_PARALLEL can take effect.
- Decreasing the parallelism will not result in fewer worker processes associated with the job. It will only decrease the number of worker processes that will be executing at any given time.
- Increasing the parallelism will take effect immediately if there is work that can be performed in parallel.
- The degree of parallelism requested by a user may be decreased based upon settings in the resource manager or through limitations introduced by the PROCESSES or SESSIONS initialization parameters in the init.ora file.
- To parallelize an Export job to a degree of *n*, the user should supply *n* files in the dump file set or specify a substitution variable in a file specification. Otherwise, some of the worker processes will be idle while waiting for files.

- SQL_FILE operations always operate with a degree of 1. Jobs running in the Transportable mode always operate with a degree of 1.

SET_PARAMETER Procedures

This procedure is used to specify job-processing options.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.SET_PARAMETER(
   handle       IN NUMBER,
   name         IN VARCHAR2,
   value        IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_DATAPUMP.SET_PARAMETER (
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2,
   value       IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 47–23 SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to the OPEN function.
name	The name of the parameter. Table 47–24 describes the valid parameter names.
value	The value for the specified parameter

Table 47–24 describes the valid options for the name parameter of the SET_PARAMETER procedure.

Table 47–24 Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
CLIENT_COMMAND	TEXT	All	An opaque string used to describe the current operation from the client's perspective. The command-line procedures will use this string to store the original command used to invoke the job.
COMPRESSION	TEXT	Export	Allows you to trade off the size of the dump file set versus the time it takes to perform export and import operations. The DATA_ONLY option compresses only user data in the dump file set. The METADATA_ONLY option compresses only metadata in the dump file set. The ALL option compresses both user data and metadata. The NONE option stores the dump file set in an uncompressed format. The METADATA_ONLY and NONE options require a job version of 10.2 or later. All other options require a job version of 11.1 or later. Default=METADATA_ONLY
COMPRESSION_ ALGORITHM	TEXT	Export	Indicates the compression algorithm is to be used when compressing dump file data. The choices are as follows: ■ BASIC--Offers a good combination of compression ratios and speed; the algorithm used is the same as in previous versions of Oracle Data Pump. ■ LOW---Least impact on backup throughput and suited for environments where CPU resources are the limiting factor. ■ MEDIUM---Recommended for most environments. This option, like the BASIC option, provides a good combination of compression ratios and speed, but it uses a different algorithm than BASIC. ■ HIGH--Best suited for exports over slower networks where the limiting factor is network speed. To use this feature, the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter must be set to at least 12.0.0. This feature requires that the Oracle Advanced Compression option be enabled.
DATA_ACCESS_ METHOD	TEXT	Export and Import	Allows you to specify an alternative method to unload data if the default method does not work for some reason. The choices are AUTOMATIC, DIRECT_PATH, or EXTERNAL_ TABLE. Oracle recommends that you use the default option (AUTOMATIC) whenever possible because it allows Data Pump to automatically select the most efficient method.

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
DATA_OPTIONS	Number	Export and Import	A bitmask to supply special options for processing the job. The possible values are as follows: ■ KU$_DATAOPT_SKIP_CONST_ERR ■ KU$_DATAOPT_XMLTYPE_CLOB ■ KU$_DATAOPT_DISABL_APPEND_HINT Export supports the value KU$_DATAOPT_XMLTYPE_CLOB. This option stores compressed XMLType columns in the dump file in CLOB format rather than as XML documents. **Note**: XMLType stored as CLOB is deprecated as of Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1). Import supports the value KU$_DATAOPT_SKIP_CONST_ERR. This option specifies that if constraint violations occur while data is being imported into user tables, the rows that cause the violations will be rejected and the load will continue. If this option is not set, a constraint error will abort the loading of the entire partition (or table for unpartitioned tables). Setting this option may affect performance, especially for pre-existing tables with unique indexes or constraints. Import also supports the value KU$_DATAOPT_DISABL_APPEND_HINT. This option prevents the append hint from being applied to the data load. Disabling the APPEND hint can be useful if there is a small set of data objects to load that already exist in the database and some other application may be concurrently accessing one or more of the data objects. Use of this parameter requires that the version on the OPEN function be set to 11.1 or later. Default=0

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
ENCRYPTION	TEXT	Export	Specifies what to encrypt in the dump file set, as follows: ALL enables encryption for all data and metadata in the export operation. DATA_ONLY specifies that only data is written to the dump file set in encrypted format. ENCRYPTED_COLUMNS_ONLY specifies that only encrypted columns are written to the dump file set in encrypted format. METADATA_ONLY specifies that only metadata is written to the dump file set in encrypted format. NONE specifies that no data is written to the dump file set in encrypted format. This parameter requires a job version of 11.1 or later. The default value depends upon the combination of encryption-related parameters that are used. To enable encryption, either ENCRYPTION or ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD or both, must be specified. If only ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD is specified, then ENCRYPTION defaults to ALL. If neither ENCRYPTION nor ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD is specified, then ENCRYPTION defaults to NONE. To specify ALL, DATA_ONLY, or METADATA_ONLY, the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter must be set to at least 11.1. **NOTE**: If the data being exported includes SecureFiles that you want to be encrypted, then you must specify ENCRYPTION=ALL to encrypt the entire dump file set. Encryption of the entire dump file set is the only way to achieve encryption security for SecureFiles during a Data Pump export operation.
ENCRYPTION_ ALGORITHM	TEXT	Export	Identifies which cryptographic algorithm should be used to perform encryption. Possible values are AES128, AES192, and AES256. The ENCRYPTION_ALGORITHM parameter requires that you also specify either ENCRYPTION or ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD; otherwise an error is returned. See *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide* for information about encryption algorithms. This parameter requires a job version of 11.1 or later. Default=AES128

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
ENCRYPTION_MODE	TEXT	Export	Identifies the types of security used for encryption and decryption. The values are as follows: PASSWORD requires that you provide a password when creating encrypted dump file sets. You will need to provide the same password when you import the dump file set. PASSWORD mode requires that you also specify the ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD parameter. The PASSWORD mode is best suited for cases in which the dump file set will be imported into a different or remote database, but which must remain secure in transit. TRANSPARENT allows an encrypted dump file set to be created without any intervention from a database administrator (DBA), provided the required Oracle Encryption Wallet is available. Therefore, the ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD parameter is not required, and will in fact, cause an error if it is used in TRANSPARENT mode. This encryption mode is best suited for cases in which the dump file set will be imported into the same database from which it was exported. DUAL creates a dump file set that can later be imported using either the Oracle Encryption Wallet or the password that was specified with the ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD parameter. DUAL mode is best suited for cases in which the dump file set will be imported on-site using the Oracle Encryption Wallet, but which may also need to be imported offsite where the Oracle Encryption Wallet is not available. When you use the ENCRYPTION_MODE parameter, you must also use either the ENCRYPTION or ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD parameter. Otherwise, an error is returned. To use DUAL or TRANSPARENT mode, the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter must be set to at least 11.1. The default mode depends on which other encryption-related parameters are used. If only ENCRYPTION is specified, then the default mode is TRANSPARENT. If ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD is specified and the Oracle Encryption Wallet is open, then the default is DUAL. If ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD is specified and the Oracle Encryption Wallet is closed, then the default is PASSWORD.
ENCRYPTION_PASSWORD	TEXT	Export and Import	For export operations, this parameter is required if ENCRYPTION_MODE is set to either PASSWORD or DUAL. It is also required for transportable export/import operations (job mode=FULL and TRANSPORTABLE=ALWAYS) when the database includes either encrypted tablespaces or tables with encrypted columns.

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
ESTIMATE	TEXT	Export and Import	Specifies that the estimate method for the size of the tables should be performed before starting the job. If BLOCKS, a size estimate for the user tables is calculated using the count of blocks allocated to the user tables. If STATISTICS, a size estimate for the user tables is calculated using the statistics associated with each table. If no statistics are available for a table, the size of the table is estimated using BLOCKS. The ESTIMATE parameter cannot be used in Transportable Tablespace mode. Default=BLOCKS
ESTIMATE_ONLY	NUMBER	Export	Specifies that only the estimation portion of an export job should be performed. This option is useful for estimating the size of dump files when the size of the export is unknown.
FLASHBACK_SCN	NUMBER	Export and network Import	System change number (SCN) to serve as transactionally consistent point for reading user data. If neither FLASHBACK_SCN nor FLASHBACK_TIME is specified, there will be no transactional consistency between partitions, except for logical standby databases and Streams targets. FLASHBACK_SCN is not supported in Transportable mode.
FLASHBACK_TIME	TEXT	Export and network Import	Either the date and time used to determine a consistent point for reading user data or a string of the form TO_TIMESTAMP(...). If neither FLASHBACK_SCN nor FLASHBACK_TIME is specified, there will be no transactional consistency between partitions. FLASHBACK_SCN and FLASHBACK_TIME cannot both be specified for the same job. FLASHBACK_TIME is not supported in Transportable mode.
INCLUDE_METADATA	NUMBER	Export and Import	If nonzero, metadata for objects will be moved in addition to user table data. If zero, metadata for objects will not moved. This parameter converts an Export operation into an unload of user data and an Import operation into a load of user data. INCLUDE_METADATA is not supported in Transportable mode. Default=1
KEEP_MASTER	NUMBER	Export and Import	Specifies whether the master table should be deleted or retained at the end of a Data Pump job that completes successfully. The master table is automatically retained for jobs that do not complete successfully. Default=0.

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
LOGTIME	TEXT	Export and Import	Specifies that messages displayed during export and import operations be timestamped. Valid options are as follows: ■ NONE--No timestamps on status or log file messages (this is the default) ■ STATUS--Timestamps on status messages only ■ LOGFILE--Timestamps on log file messages only ■ ALL--Timestamps on both status and log file messages
MASTER_ONLY	NUMBER	Import	Indicates whether to import just the master table and then stop the job so that the contents of the master table can be examined. Default=0.
METRICS	NUMBER	Export and Import	Indicates whether additional information about the job should be reported to the Data Pump log file. Default=0.
PARTITION_ OPTIONS	TEXT	Import	Specifies how partitioned tables should be handled during an import operation. The options are as follows: NONE means that partitioning is reproduced on the target database as it existed in the source database. DEPARTITION means that each partition or subpartition that contains storage in the job is reproduced as a separate unpartitioned table. Intermediate partitions that are subpartitioned are not re-created (although their subpartitions are converted into tables). The names of the resulting tables are system-generated from the original table names and partition names unless the name is overridden by the REMAP_TABLE metadata transform. MERGE means that each partitioned table is re-created in the target database as an unpartitioned table. The data from all of the source partitions is merged into a single storage segment. This option is not supported for transportable jobs or when the TRANSPORTABLE parameter is set to ALWAYS. This parameter requires a job version of 11.1 or later. Default=NONE
REUSE_DATAFILES	NUMBER	Import	Specifies whether the import job should reuse existing data files for tablespace creation. Default=0.
SKIP_UNUSABLE_ INDEXES	NUMBER	Import	If nonzero, rows will be inserted into tables having unusable indexes. SKIP_UNUSABLE_INDEXES is not supported in Transportable mode. Default=1
SOURCE_EDITION	TEXT	Export and network Import	The application edition that will be used for determining the objects that will be unloaded for export and for network import.
STREAMS_ CONFIGURATION	NUMBER	Import	Specifies whether to import any Streams metadata that may be present in the export dump file. Default=1.

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
TABLE_EXISTS_ACTION	TEXT	Import	Specifies the action to be performed when data is loaded into a preexisting table. The possible actions are: TRUNCATE, REPLACE, APPEND, and SKIP. If INCLUDE_METADATA=0, only TRUNCATE and APPEND are supported. If TRUNCATE, rows are removed from a preexisting table before inserting rows from the Import. Note that if TRUNCATE is specified on tables referenced by foreign key constraints, the TRUNCATE will be modified into a REPLACE. If REPLACE, preexisting tables are replaced with new definitions. Before creating the new table, the old table is dropped. If APPEND, new rows are added to the existing rows in the table. If SKIP, the preexisting table is left unchanged. TABLE_EXISTS_ACTION is not supported in Transportable mode. The default is SKIP if metadata is included in the import. The default is APPEND if INCLUDE_METADATA is set to 0.
TABLESPACE_DATAFILE	TEXT	Import	Specifies the full file specification for a data file in the transportable tablespace set. TABLESPACE_DATAFILE is only valid for transportable mode imports. TABLESPACE_DATAFILE can be specified multiple times, but the value specified for each occurrence must be different.
TARGET_EDITION	TEXT	Import	The application edition that will be used for determining where the objects will be loaded for import and for network import.

Table 47–24 (Cont.) Valid Options for the name Parameter in the SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Datatype	Supported Operations	Meaning
TRANSPORTABLE	TEXT	Export (and network import or full-mode import)	This option is for export operations done in table mode, and also for full-mode imports and network imports. It allows the data to be moved using transportable tablespaces. In table-mode storage segments in the moved tablespaces that are not associated with the parent schemas (tables) will be reclaimed at import time. If individual partitions are selected in a table-mode job, only the tablespaces referenced by those partitions will be moved. During import, the moved partitions can only be reconstituted as tables by using the PARTITION_OPTIONS=DEPARTITION parameter. Use of the TRANSPORTABLE parameter prohibits the subsequent import of the dump file into a database at a lower version or using different character sets. Additionally, the data files may need to be converted if the target database is on a different platform. In table-mode, the TRANSPORTABLE parameter is not allowed if a network link is supplied on the OPEN call. The possible values for this parameter are as follows: ALWAYS - data is always moved by moving data files. This option is valid only for table mode and full mode. NEVER - data files are never used for copying user data This parameter requires a job version of 11.1 or later This parameter requires a job version of 12.1 or later when the job mode is FULL. Default=NEVER
TTS_FULL_CHECK	NUMBER	Export	If nonzero, verifies that a transportable tablespace set has no dependencies (specifically, IN pointers) on objects outside the set, and vice versa. Only valid for Transportable mode Exports. Default=0
USER_METADATA	NUMBER	Export and network Import	For schema-mode operations, specifies that the metadata to re-create the users' schemas (for example, privilege grants to the exported schemas) should also be part of the operation if set to nonzero. Users must be privileged to explicitly set this parameter. The USER_METADATA parameter cannot be used in Table, Tablespace, or Transportable Tablespace mode. Default=1 if user has DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE role; 0 otherwise.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_ARGVAL. This exception could be due to any of the following causes:
  - An invalid name was supplied for an input parameter
  - The wrong datatype was used for value
  - A value was not supplied
  - The supplied value was not allowed for the specified parameter name

  - A flashback parameter had been established after a different flashback parameter had already been established
  - A parameter was specified that did not support duplicate definitions
- INVALID_OPERATION. The operation specified is invalid in this context.
- INVALID_STATE. The specified job is not in the Defining state.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. Either the specified parameter is not supported for the current operation type or it is not supported for the current mode.
- PRIVILEGE_ERROR. The user does not have the DATAPUMP_EXP_FULL_DATABASE or DATAPUMP_IMP_FULL_DATABASE role required for the specified parameter.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- The SET_PARAMETER procedure is used to specify optional features for the current job. See Table 47–24 for a list of supported options.

START_JOB Procedure

This procedure begins or resumes execution of a job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.START_JOB (
   handle       IN NUMBER,
   skip_current    IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   abort_step      IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   cluster_ok      IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 1,
   service_name    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 47–25 START_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function.
skip_current	If nonzero, causes actions that were 'in progress' on a previous execution of the job to be skipped when the job restarts. The skip will only be honored for Import jobs. This mechanism allows the user to skip actions that trigger fatal bugs and cause the premature termination of a job. Multiple actions can be skipped on a restart. The log file will identify which actions are skipped. If a domain index was being processed, all pieces of the domain index are skipped even if the error occurred in only a subcomponent of the domain index. A description of the actions skipped is entered into the log file. skip_current is ignored for the initial START_JOB in a job. If zero, no data or metadata is lost upon a restart.
abort_step	Value must be 0. Inserting values other than 0 into this argument will have unintended consequences.
cluster_ok	If = 0, all workers are started on the current instance. Otherwise, workers are started on instances usable by the job.
service_name	If specified, indicates a service name used to constrain the job to specific instances or to a specific resource group.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID_STATE. The causes of this exception can be any of the following:
  - No files have been defined for an Export, non-network Import, or SQL_FILE job
  - An ADD_FILE procedure has not been called to define the output for a SQL_FILE job
  - A TABLESPACE_DATAFILE parameter has not been defined for a Transportable Import job
  - A TABLESPACE_EXPR metadata filter has not been defined for a Transportable or Tablespace mode Export or Network job
  - The dump file set on an Import or SQL_FILE job was either incomplete or missing a master table specification

- INVALID_OPERATION. Unable to restore master table from a dump file set.
- INTERNAL_ERROR. An inconsistency was detected when the job was started. Additional information may be available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- When this procedure is called to request that the corresponding job be started or restarted, the state of the job is changed from either the Defining or Idling state to the Executing state.
- If the SET_PARALLEL procedure was not called prior to the START_JOB procedure, the initial level of parallelism used in the job will be 1. If SET_PARALLEL was called prior to the job starting, the degree specified by the last SET_PARALLEL call determines the parallelism for the job. On restarts, the parallelism is determined by the previous parallel setting for the job, unless it is overridden by another SET_PARALLEL call.
- To restart a stopped job, an ATTACH function must be performed prior to executing the START_JOB procedure.

STOP_JOB Procedure

This procedure terminates a job, but optionally, preserves the state of the job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.STOP_JOB (
   handle      IN NUMBER,
   immediate   IN NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   keep_master IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   delay       IN NUMBER DEFAULT 60);
```

Parameters

Table 47–26 STOP_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of a job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function. At the end of the procedure, the user is detached from the handle.
immediate	If nonzero, the worker processes are aborted immediately. This halts the job quickly, but parts of the job will have to be rerun if the job is ever restarted. If zero, the worker processes are allowed to complete their current work item (either metadata or table data) before they are terminated. The job is placed in a Stop Pending state while the workers finish their current work.
keep_master	If nonzero, the master table is retained when the job is stopped. If zero, the master table is dropped when the job is stopped. If the master table is dropped, the job will not be restartable. If the master table is dropped during an export job, the created dump files are deleted.
delay	The number of seconds to wait until other attached sessions are forcibly detached. The delay allows other sessions attached to the job to be notified that a stop has been performed. The job keeps running until either all clients have detached or the delay has been satisfied. If no delay is specified, then the default delay is 60 seconds. If a shorter delay is used, clients might not be able to retrieve the final messages for the job through the GET_STATUS procedure.

Exceptions

- INVALID_HANDLE. The specified handle is not attached to a Data Pump job.
- INVALID STATE. The job is already in the process of being stopped or completed.
- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS procedure.
- NO_SUCH_JOB. The specified job does not exist.

Usage Notes

- This procedure is used to request that the corresponding job stop executing.
- The termination of a job that is in an Executing state may take several minutes to complete in an orderly fashion.
- For jobs in the Defining, Idling, or Completing states, this procedure is functionally equivalent to the DETACH procedure.

- Once a job is stopped, it can be restarted using the `ATTACH` function and `START_JOB` procedures, provided the master table and the dump file set are left intact.
- If the `KEEP_MASTER` parameter is not specified, and the job is in the Defining state or has a mode of Transportable, the master table is dropped. Otherwise, the master table is retained.

WAIT_FOR_JOB Procedure

This procedure runs a job until it either completes normally or stops for some other reason.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DATAPUMP.WAIT_FOR_JOB (
  handle      IN   NUMBER,
  job_state   OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 47–27 WAIT_FOR_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle of the job. The current session must have previously attached to the handle through a call to either the OPEN or ATTACH function. At the end of the procedure, the user is detached from the handle.
job_state	The state of the job when it has stopped executing; either STOPPED or COMPLETED.

Exceptions

- SUCCESS_WITH_INFO. The procedure succeeded, but further information is available through the GET_STATUS API.
- INVALID_HANDLE. The job handle is no longer valid.

Usage Notes

This procedure provides the simplest mechanism for waiting for the completion of a Data Pump job. The job should be started before calling WAIT_FOR_JOB. When WAIT_FOR_JOB returns, the job will no longer be executing. If the job completed normally, the final status will be COMPLETED. If the job stopped executing because of a STOP_JOB request or an internal error, the final status will be STOPPED.

48

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package provides an interface comprising a file system-like abstraction backed by one or more Store Providers.

See Also:

Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT

Overview

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package provides an interface that connects the Oracle database to the DBFS client-side.

In the server, the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package is backed by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI package, which includes descriptions but not actual implementations of DBFS stores.

See Also:

- Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide for a description of DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT and the DBFS architecture
- Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide for conceptual information about the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package

Security Model

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package runs under AUTHID CURRENT_USER.

Constants

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package uses the constants shown in the following tables:

Path Name Constants and Types

The following constants are useful for declaring paths and item names. Paths are limited to 1024 characters and item names are limited to 256 characters.

Table 48–1 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Names

Constant	Type	Value	Description
NAME_MAX	PLS_INTEGER	256	Maximum length of an absolute path name visible to clients
NAME_T	VARCHAR2(256)	NAME_MAX	Portable alias for string that can represent component names
PATH_MAX	PLS_INTEGER	1024	Maximum length of any individual component of an absolute path name visible to clients
PATH_T	VARCHAR2(1024)	PATH_MAX	Portable alias for string that can represent path names

ContentID Constants

Stores may expose to the user a unique identifier that represents a particular path item in the store. These identifiers are limited to 128 characters.

Table 48–2 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - ContentID

Constant	Type	Value	Description
CONTENT_ID_MAX	PLS_INTEGER	128	Maximum length of a store-specific provider-generated contentID that identifies a file-type content item
CONTENT_ID_T	RAW(128)	CONTENT_ID_MAX	Portable alias for raw buffers that can represent contentID values

Path Properties Constants

Every path name in a store is associated with a set of properties. Each property is identified by a string "name", has a string "value" (which might be NULL if unset or undefined or unsupported by a specific store implementation) and a value "typecode" (a numeric discriminant for the actual type of value held in the "value" string.)

Table 48–3 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Properties

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROPNAME_MAX	PLS_INTEGER	32	Maximum length of a property name
PROPNAME_T	VARCHAR2(32)	PROPNAME_MAX	Portable alias for string that can represent property names
PROPVAL_MAX	PLS_INTEGER	1024	Maximum length of the string value of a property
PROPVAL_T	VARCHAR2(1024)	PATH_MAX	Portable alias for string that can represent property values

Path Name Type Constants

Path items in a store have a item type associated with them. These types represent the kind of entry the item represents in the store.

Table 48–4 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types

Constant	Type	Value	Description
TYPE_FILE	PLS_INTEGER	1	A regular file storing content (a logically linear sequence of bytes accessed as a BLOB
TYPE_DIRECTORY	PLS_INTEGER	2	A container of other path name types, including file types
TYPE_LINK	PLS_INTEGER	3	A symbolic link (that is, an uninterpreted string value associated with a path name). Since symbolic links may represent path names that fall outside the scope of any given store (or even the entire aggregation of stores managed by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface), or may not even represent path names, clients must be careful in creating symbolic links, and stores must be careful in trying to resolve these links internally.
TYPE_REFERENCE	PLS_INTEGER	4	A hard link which is always a valid path name alias to content

Store Feature Constants

The DBFS content API allows different store providers (and different stores) to describe themselves through a *feature set* (a bitmask indicating which features they support and which ones they do not).

Table 48–5 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features

Constant	Type	Value	Description
FEATURE_FOLDERS	PLS_INTEGER	1	Set if the store supports folders (or directories) as part of hierarchical path names
FEATURE_FOIAT	PLS_INTEGER	2	Set if implicit folder operations within the store (performed as part of a client-requested operation) runs inside autonomous transactions.In general, the use of autonomous transactions is a compromise between (a) simplicity in the implementation and client-controlled transaction scope for all operations, at the cost of greatly reduced concurrency (FEATURE_FOIAT not set), versus (b) more complex implementation and smaller client-controlled transaction scope, at the benefit of greatly increased concurrency (FEATURE_FOIAT set).
FEATURE_NOWAIT	PLS_INTEGER	4	Set if the store allows nowait gets of path elements. The default behavior is to wait for row locks; if nowait gets are implemented, the get operation raises an ORA-54 exception if the path element is already locked by another transaction.
FEATURE_ACLS	PLS_INTEGER	8	Set if the store supports Access Control Lists (ACLs) and internal authorization or checking based on these ACLs. ACLs are standard properties but a store may do nothing more than store and retrieve the ACLs without interpreting them in any way.
FEATURE_LINKS	PLS_INTEGER	16	Set if the store supports symbolic links, and if certain types of symbolic links (specifically non-absolute path names) can be internally resolved by the store itself
FEATURE_LINK_DEREF	PLS_INTEGER	32	Set if the store supports symbolic links, and if certain types of symbolic links (specifically non-absolute path names) can be internally resolved by the store itself
FEATURE_REFERENCES	PLS_INTEGER	64	Set if the store supports hard links

Table 48–5 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features

Constant	Type	Value	Description
FEATURE_LOCKING	PLS_INTEGER	128	Set if the store supports user-level locks (read-only, write-only, read-write) that can be applied on various items of the store, and if the store uses these lock settings to control various types of access to the locked items. User-level locks are orthogonal to transaction locks and persist beyond the scope of any specific transaction, session, or connection — this implies that the store itself may not be able to clean up after dangling locks, and client-applications need to perform any garbage collection.
FEATURE_LOCK_ HIERARCHY	PLS_INTEGER	256	Set if the store allows a user-lock to control access to the entire sub-tree under the locked path name.
FEATURE_LOCK_CONVERT	PLS_INTEGER	512	Set if the store supports upgrade or downgrade of locks from one mode to another
FEATURE_VERSIONING	PLS_INTEGER	1024	Set if the store supports at least a linear versioning and version management. Different versions of the same path name are identified by monotonic version numbers, with a version-nonqualified path name representing the latest version.
FEATURE_VERSION_PATH	PLS_INTEGER	2048	Set if the store supports a hierarchical namespace for different versions of a path name
FEATURE_SOFT_DELETES	PLS_INTEGER	4096	Set if the store supports a "soft-delete", that is, the ability to delete a path name and make it invisible to normal operations, but retain the ability to restore the path name later (as long as it has not been overwritten by a new create operation). The store also supports purging soft-deleted path names (making them truly deleted), and navigation modes that show soft-deleted items.
FEATURE_HASHING	PLS_INTEGER	8192	Set if the store automatically computes and maintains some type of a secure hash of the contents of a path name (typically a TYPE_FILE path).
FEATURE_HASH_LOOKUP	PLS_INTEGER	16384	Set if the store allows "content-based addressing", that is, the ability to locate a content item based, not on its path name, but on its content hash.

Table 48–5 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features

Constant	Type	Value	Description

FEATURE_FILTERING	PLS_INTEGER	32768	Set if the store allows clients to pass a filter function (a PL/SQL function conforming to the signature below) that returns a logical boolean indicating if a given store item satisfies a selection predicate. Stores that support filtering may be able to more efficiently perform item listing, directory navigation, and deletions by embedding the filtering logic inside their implementation. If filtering is not supported, clients can retrieve more items than necessary and perform the filtering checks themselves, albeit less efficiently.
			
			A filter predicate is a function with the following signature:
			
			`function filterFunction(`
			` path IN VARCHAR2,`
			` store_name IN VARCHAR2,`
			` opcode IN INTEGER,`
			` item_type IN INTEGER,`
			` properties IN DBMS_DBFS_`
			`CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,`
			` content IN BLOB)`
			`  RETURN INTEGER;`
			
			Any PL/SQL function conforming to this signature can examine the contents and properties of a store item, and determine if the item satisfies the selection criterion for the current operation. Any nonzero return value results in the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface processing the item as part of the current operation; a return value that is zero or NULL results in the item being skipped from processing.

FEATURE_SEARCHING	PLS_INTEGER	65536	Set if the store allows clients to pass a text-search filter query to locate type_file path names based on their content. Stores that support searching may use indexes to accelerate such searches; otherwise, clients need to build their own indexes, or else search a potentially larger set of items to locate the ones of interest for the current search.
FEATURE_ASOF	PLS_INTEGER	131072	Set if the store allows clients to use a flashback timestamp in query operations (non-mutating GETPATH Procedures and LIST Function).

Table 48–5 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features

Constant	Type	Value	Description
FEATURE_PROVIDER_PROPS	PLS_INTEGER	262144	Set if the store allows per-operation properties (that control the behavior of the store with regard to the current operation, as opposed to properties associated with individual items).
FEATURE_SNAPSHOTS	PLS_INTEGER	524288	Set if the store allows the use of named, read-only snapshots of its contents. It is up to the provider to implement snapshots using any suitable means (including creating immediate copies of the content, or using copy-on-write) and managing dependencies between snapshots and its parent content view.
FEATURE_CLONES	PLS_INTEGER	1048576	Set if the store allows the use of named, writable clones of its contents. It is up to the provider to implement clones using any suitable means (including creating immediate copies of the content, or using copy-on-write) and managing dependencies between clones and its parent content view.
FEATURE_LOCATOR	PLS_INTEGER	2097152	Set if the store allows direct access to file contents through a LOB locator. Stores that internally manipulate the file contents, perhaps by shredding or reassembling them in separate pieces, performing other transformations, and so on, cannot transparently give out a LOB locator to clients. The file contents of these stores should be accessed using the buffer-based interfaces.
FEATURE_CONTENT_ID	PLS_INTEGER	4194304	Set if the store allows a "pathless", contentID-based access to files (there is no notion of a directory, link, or reference in this model)
FEATURE_LAZY_PATH	PLS_INTEGER	8388608	Set if the store allows a lazy binding of a path name to file content elements that are otherwise identified by a contentID; this feature makes sense only in conjunction with FEATURE_CONTENT_ID

Lock Type Constants

Stores that support locking should implement 3 types of locks: LOCK_READ_ONLY, LOCK_WRITE_ONLY, and LOCK_READ_WRITE.

Table 48–6 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Lock Types

Constant	Type	Value	Description
LOCK_READ_ONLY	PLS_INTEGER	1	Locks as read-only
LOCK_WRITE_ONLY	PLS_INTEGER	2	Locks as write-only
LOCK_READ_WRITE	PLS_INTEGER	3	Locks as read-write

Standard Property Constants

Standard properties are well-defined, mandatory properties associated with all content path names that all stores should support (in the manner described by the content interface), with some exceptions. For example, a read-only store need not implement a `modification_time` or `creation_time`.

All standard properties informally use the `STD` namespace, which clients and stores should avoid using.

Table 48–7 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Standard Properties

Constant	Type	Value	Description
STD_ACCESS_TIME	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:access_time'	TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP in UTC: The time of last access of a path name's contents
STD_ACL	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:acl'	TYPECODE_VARCHAR2: The access control list (in standard ACL syntax) associated with the path name
STD_CANONICAL_PATH	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:canonical_path'	TYPECODE_VARCHAR2: The canonical store-specific path name of an item.
STD_CHANGE_TIME	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:change_time'	TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP in UTC: The time of last change to the metadata of a path name
STD_CHILDREN	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:children'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The number of child directories/folders a directory/folder path has (this property should be available in providers that support the FEATURE_FOLDERS feature)
STD_CONTENT_TYPE	VARCHAR2 (32)	'std:content_type'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The client-supplied mime-type(s) (in standard RFC syntax) describing the (typically type_file) path name. The content type is not necessarily interpreted by the store.
STD_CREATION_TIME	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:creation_time'	TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP in UTC: The time at which the item was created (once set, this value never changes for the lifetime of the path name)
STD_DELETED	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:deleted'	TYPECODE_NUMBER as a BOOLEAN: Set to a nonzero number if the path name has been soft-deleted but not yet purged.

Table 48–7 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Standard Properties

Constant	Type	Value	Description
STD_GUID	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:guid'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: A store-specific unique identifier for a path name. Clients must not depend on the GUID being unique across different stores, but a given (*store-name*, *store-specific-path name*) has a stable and unique GUID for its lifetime.
STD_LENGTH	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:length'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The length of the content (BLOB) of a TYPE_FILE/TYPE_REFERENCE path, or the length of the referent of a TYPE_LINK symbolic link. Directories do not have a well-defined length and stores are free to set this property to zero, NULL, or any other value.
STD_MODIFICATION_TIME	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:modification_time'	TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP in UTC: The time of last change to the data associated with a path name. Change to the content of a TYPE_FILE/TYPE_REFERENCE path, the referent of the TYPE_LINK path, and addition or deletion of immediate children in a TYPE_DIRECTORY path, all constitute data changes.
STD_OWNER	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:owner'	TYPECODE_VARCHAR2: A client-supplied (or implicit) owner name for the path name. The owner name may be used (along with the current "principal") for access checks by stores that support ACLs, locking, or both.
STD_PARENT_GUID	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:parent_guid'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: A store-specific unique identifier for the parent of a path name. Clients must not depend on the GUID being unique across different stores, but a given (*store-name*, *store-specific-path name*) has a stable and unique GUID for its lifetime. STD_PARENT_GUID(path name) == STD_GUID(parent(path name))
STD_REFERENT	VARCHAR2(32)	'std:referent'	TYPECODE_VARCHAR2: The content of the symbolic link of a TYPE_LINK path; NULL otherwise. As mentioned, the STD_REFERENT can be an arbitrary string and must not necessarily be interpreted as path name by clients (or such interpretation should be done with great care).

Optional Property Constants

Optional properties are well-defined properties (not mandatory) associated with all content path names that all stores are free to support (but only in the manner described by the DBFS content API).

All optional properties informally use the `opt:` namespace, which clients and stores should avoid using.

Table 48–8 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Optional Properties

Constant	Type	Value	Description
OPT_HASH_TYPE	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:hash_type'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The type of hash provided in the opt_hash_value property; see DBMS_CRYPTO for possible options.
OPT_HASH_VALUE	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:hash_value'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The hash value of type OPT_HASH_TYPE describing the content of the path name.
OPT_LOCK_COUNT	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:lock_count'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The number of (compatible) locks placed on a path name. If different principals are allowed to place compatible (read) locks on a path, the opt_locker must specify all lockers (with repeats so that lock counts can be correctly maintained).
OPT_LOCK_DATA	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:lock_data'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: The client-supplied user-data associated with a user-lock, uninterpreted by the store.
OPT_LOCKER	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:locker'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: One or more implicit or client-specified principals that applied a user-lock on a path name.
OPT_LOCK_STATUS	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:lock_status'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: One of the LOCK_READ_ONLY, LOCK_WRITE_ONLY, LOCK_READ_WRITE values describing the type of lock currently applied on a path name.
OPT_VERSION	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:version'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: A sequence number for linear versioning of a path name.
OPT_VERSION_PATH	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:version_path'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: A version-path name for hierarchical versioning of a path name.
OPT_CONTENT_ID	VARCHAR2(32)	'opt:content_id'	TYPECODE_NUMBER: A provider-generated store-specific unique contentID in the form of a string for a file content element (that may optionally not be associated with a path; see FEATURE_CONTENT_ID and FEATURE_LAZY_PATH).

Property Access Flag Constants

Content interface methods to get or set properties can use combinations of property access flags to fetch properties from different name spaces in a single interface call.

Table 48–9 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROP_NONE	PLS_INTEGER	0	None: used when the client is not interested in any properties, and is invoking the content access method for other reasons (path name existence or lockability validation, data access, and so on)
PROP_STD	PLS_INTEGER	1	Mandatory: used when the client is interested in the standard properties; all standard properties are retrieved if this flag is specified.
PROP_OPT	PLS_INTEGER	2	Optional: used when the client is interested in the optional properties; all optional properties are retrieved if this flag is specified.
PROP_USR	PLS_INTEGER	3	User-defined: used when the client is interested in the user-defined properties; all user-defined properties are retrieved if this flag is specified.
PROP_ALL	PLS_INTEGER	PROP_STD + PROP_ OPT + PROP_ USR;	All: an alias for the combination of all standard, optional, and user-defined properties
PROP_DATA	PLS_INTEGER	8	Content: used when the client is interested only in data access, and does not care about properties
PROP_SPC	PLS_INTEGER	16	Specific: used when the client is interested in a mix-and-match of different subsets of various property name spaces; the names of the specific properties to fetch are passed into the content interface method call as arguments, and only these property values are fetched and returned to the client. This is useful in cases where there are a very large number of properties potentially accessible, but the client is interested in only a small number of them (and knows the names of these "interesting" properties beforehand). PROP_SPC is applicable only to the various GETPATH operations. Other operations that specify properties ignore PROP_SPC specifications.

Operation Code Constants

All of the operations in the DBFS content API are represented as abstract opcodes.

Clients can use these opcodes to directly and explicitly by invoking the CHECKACCESS Function to verify if a particular operation can be invoked by a given principal on a particular path name.

Table 48–10 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Operation Codes

Constant	Type	Value	Description
OP_CREATE	PLS_INTEGER	1	Create a path item
OP_CREATEFILE	PLS_INTEGER	OP_CREATE	Create a file
OP_CREATELINK	PLS_INTEGER	OP_CREATE	Create a soft link
OP_CREATEREFERENCE	PLS_INTEGER	OP_CREATE	Create a reference (hard link)
OP_DELETE	PLS_INTEGER	2	Soft-deletion, purge, and restore operations are all represented by OP_DELETE
OP_DELETEFILE	PLS_INTEGER	OP_DELETE	Delete a file
OP_DELETEDIRECTORY	PLS_INTEGER	OP_DELETE	Delete a directory
OP_RESTORE	PLS_INTEGER	OP_DELETE	Restore a soft-deleted path item
OP_PURGE	PLS_INTEGER	OP_DELETE	Purge a soft-deleted path item
OP_READ	PLS_INTEGER	3	Read from a path item
OP_GET	PLS_INTEGER	OP_READ	Get a path item for either read or update operations
OP_WRITE	PLS_INTEGER	4	Write a path item
OP_PUT	PLS_INTEGER	OP_WRITE	Put (write) to a path item
OP_RENAME	PLS_INTEGER	5	Rename a path item
OP_RENAMEFROM	PLS_INTEGER	OP_RENAME	Operations performed on the source of a rename
OP_RENAMETO	PLS_INTEGER	OP_RENAME	Operations performed on the destination of a rename
OP_SETPATH	PLS_INTEGER	OP_RENAME	Set a path item name
OP_LIST	PLS_INTEGER	6	Perform a path listing
OP_SEARCH	PLS_INTEGER	7	Perform a search
OP_LOCK	PLS_INTEGER	8	Lock a path item
OP_UNLOCK	PLS_INTEGER	9	Unlock a path item
OP_ACL	PLS_INTEGER	10	An implicit operation invoked during an OP_CREATE or OP_PUT that specifies a STD_ACL property; the operation tests to see if the principal is allowed to set or change the ACL of a store item

Table 48–10 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Operation Codes

Constant	Type	Value	Description
OP_STORE	PLS_INTEGER	11	A catch-all category for miscellaneous store operations that do not fall under any of the other operational interfaces

Exceptions

DBFS content API operations can raise any one of these top-level exceptions.

Table 48–11 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Exceptions

Exception	Code	Description
PATH_EXISTS	64000	A specified path name already exists
INVALID_PARENT	64001	Parent of a specified path name does not exist
INVALID_PATH	64002	Specified path name does not exist, or is not valid
UNSUPPORTED_OPERATION	64003	An operation unsupported by a store was invoked
INVALID_ARGUMENTS	64004	An operation was invoked with invalid arguments
INVALID_ACCESS	64005	Access control checks failed for the current operation
LOCK_CONFLICT	64006	Current operation failed lock conflict check
INVALID_STORE	64007	An invalid store name was specified
INVALID_MOUNT	64008	An invalid mount point was specified
INVALID_PROVIDER	64009	An invalid provider-package was specified
READONLY_PATH	64010	A mutating operation was invoked on a read-only mount or store

Operational Notes

Implementation

Since the interconnection of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface and the provider SPI is a 1-to-many pluggable architecture, the interface uses dynamic SQL to invoke methods in the provider SPI, this can lead to runtime errors.

There are no explicit `INIT` or `FINI` methods to indicate when the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` interface plugs or unplugs a particular provider SPI. Provider SPIs must be willing to auto-initialize themselves at any SPI entry-point.

All operations performed by a store provider are "stateless" in that they are complete operations unto themselves. If state is necessary to be maintained for some reason, then the state must be maintained in data structures such as auxiliary tables that can be queried as needed.

Path Names

All path names used in the provider SPI are store-qualified in pair form (`store_name`, `pathname`) where the path name is rooted within the store namespace.

Stores and their providers that support contentID-based access (see `FEATURE_CONTENT_ID` in DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features) also support a form of addressing that is not based on path names. Content items are identified by an explicit store name, a `NULL` path name, and possibly a contentID specified as a parameter or by way of the `OPT_CONTENT_ID` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Optional Properties) property.

Not all operations are supported with contentID-based access, and applications should depend only on the simplest create or delete functionality being available.

This table lists other operations and provides links to related discussions.

Other DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Operations

Table 48–12 Other DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Operations

Other Operations	See ...
Creation	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on creation operations
Deletion	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on deletion operations
Get (Retrieve) and Put (Insert)	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Get and Put operations
Rename and Move	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Rename and Move operations
Directory Navigation and Search	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Navigation and Search operations
Locking	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Locking operations

Table 48–12 (Cont.) Other DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Operations

Other Operations	See ...
Access Check	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Access Check operations

Data Structures

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package defines RECORD types and TABLE types.

RECORD Types

- FEATURE_T Record Type
- MOUNT_T Record Type
- PATH_ITEM_T Record Type
- PROP_ITEM_T Record Type
- PROPERTY_T Record Type
- STORE_T Record Type

TABLE Types

- FEATURES_T Table Type
- MOUNTS_T Table Type
- PATH_ITEMS_T Table Type
- PROP_ITEMS_T Table Type
- PROPERTIES_T Table Type
- STORES_T Table Type

Usage Notes

There is an approximate correspondence between DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T and PROPERTY_T — the former is a SQL object type that describes the full property tuple, while the latter is a PL/SQL record type that describes only the property value component.

Likewise, there is an approximate correspondence between DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T and PROPERTIES_T — the former is a SQL nested table type, while the latter is a PL/SQL hash table type.

Dynamic SQL calling conventions force the use of SQL types, but PL/SQL code may be implemented more conveniently in terms of the hash-table types.

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface provides convenient utility functions to convert between DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T and PROPERTIES_T (see propertiesT2H and propertiesH2T).

Clients can query the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface for the list of available stores, determine which store is to handle access to a given path name, and determine the feature set for the store.

FEATURE_T Record Type

This type describes a store mount point and its properties.

Syntax

```
TYPE feature_t IS RECORD (
   feature_name    VARCHAR2(32),
   feature_mask    INTEGER,
   feature_state   VARCHAR2(3));
```

Fields

Table 48–13 MOUNT_T Fields

Field	Description
feature_name	Name of feature
feature_mask	Value used to mask off all other bits other than this feature in the feature value
feature_state	'YES' or 'NO' depending on whether the feature is supported on this store

MOUNT_T Record Type

This type describes a store mount point and its properties.

Syntax

```
TYPE mount_t IS RECORD (
   store_name          VARCHAR2(32),
   store_id            NUMBER,
   provider_name       VARCHAR2(32),
   provider_pkg        VARCHAR2(32),
   provider_id         NUMBER,
   provider_version    VARCHAR2(32),
   store_features      INTEGER,
   store_guid          NUMBER,
   store_mount         NAME_T,
   mount_properties    DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T);
```

Fields

Table 48–14 MOUNT_T Fields

Field	Description
store_name	Name of store
store_id	ID of store
provider_name	Name of the content store
provider_pkg	PL/SQL package name for the content store
provider_id	Unique identifier for the content store
provider_version	Version number for the content store
respos_features	Features supported by this content store
store_guid	Unique ID for this instance of the store
store_mount	Location at which this store instance is mounted
mount_properties	Properties for this mount point (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)

PATH_ITEM_T Record Type

A PATH_ITEM_T is a tuple describing a (store, mount) qualified path in a store, with all standard and optional properties associated with it.

Syntax

```
TYPE path_item_t IS RECORD (
   store                   NAME_T,
   mount                   NAME_T,
   pathname                PATH_T,
   pathtype                VARCHAR2(32),
   filedata                BLOB,
   std_access_time         TIMESTAMP,
   std_acl                 VARCHAR2(1024),
   std_change_time         TIMESTAMP,
   std_children            NUMBER,
   std_content_type        VARCHAR2(1024),
   std_creation_time       TIMESTAMP,
   std_deleted             INTEGER,
   std_guid                INTEGER,
   std_modification_time   TIMESTAMP,
   std_owner               VARCHAR2(32),
   std_parent_guid         INTEGER,
   std_referent            VARCHAR2(1024),
   opt_hash_type           VARCHAR2(32),
   opt_hash_value          VARCHAR2(128),
   opt_lock_count          INTEGER,
   opt_lock_data           VARCHAR2(128),
   opt_locker              VARCHAR2(128),
   opt_lock_status         INTEGER,
   opt_version             INTEGER,
   opt_version_path        PATH_T,
   opt_content_id          CONTENT_ID_T);
```

Fields

Table 48–15 PATH_ITEM_T Fields

Field	Description
store	Name of store
mount	Location at which instance of store is mounted
pathname	Name of path to item
pathtype	Type of object path (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
filedata	BLOB locator that can be used to access data in the path item
std_access_time	Time of last access of a pathname's contents
std_acl	Access Control List (in standard ACL syntax)
std_change_time	Time of last change to the metadata of a path name
std_children	Number of child directories or folders a directory or folder path (this property should be available in providers that support the feature_folders feature).

Table 48–15 (Cont.) PATH_ITEM_T Fields

Field	Description
std_content_type	One or more client-supplied mime-types (in standard RFC syntax) describing the path name which is typically of type_file. The content type s not necessarily interpreted by the store.
std_creation_time	Time at which the item was created. Once set, this value remains the same for the lifetime of the path name.
std_deleted	Set to a nonzero number if the path name has been soft-deleted but not yet purged (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features)
std_guid	Store-specific unique identifier for a path name. Clients must not depend on the GUID being unique across different stores, but a given *store-name*, *store-specific-pathname* has a stable and unique GUID for its lifetime.
std_modification_time	Time of last change to the data associated with a path name. Changes to the content of a type_file or type_reference path, the referent of the type_link path, and addition or deletion of immediate children in a type_directory path, all constitute data changes.
std_owner	Client-supplied (or implicit) owner name for the path name
std_parent_guid	Store-specific unique identifier for the parent of a path name. Clients must not depend on the GUID being unique across different stores, but a given *store-name*, *store-specific-pathname* has a stable and unique GUID for its lifetime. std_parent_guid(pathname) == std_guid(parent(pathname))
std_referent	Content of the symbolic link of a type_link path, otherwise NULL. As mentioned before, the std_referent can be an arbitrary string and must not necessarily be interpreted as pathname by clients (or such interpretation should be done with great care).
opt_hash_type	Type of hash provided in the opt_hash_value property (see DBMS_CRYPTO for possible options)
opt_hash_value	Hash value of type opt_hash_type describing the content of the path name
opt_lock_count	Number of compatible locks placed on a path name. If different principals are allowed to place compatible (read) locks on a path, the opt_locker must specify all lockers with repeats so that lock counts can be correctly maintained.
opt_lock_data	Client-supplied user-data associated with a user-lock, uninterpreted by the store
opt_locker	One or more implicit or client-specified principals that applied a user-lock on a path name
opt_lock_status	One of the lock_read_only, lock_write_only, lock_read_write values describing the type of lock currently applied on a path name
opt_version	Sequence number for linear versioning of a path name
opt_version_path	Version path name for hierarchical versioning of a path name
opt_content_id	Stringified provider-generated store-specific unique contentID for a file element (that may optionally not be associated with a path (see FEATURE_CONTENT_ID and FEATURE_LAZY_PATH in DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features)

PROP_ITEM_T Record Type

A PROP_ITEM_T is a tuple describing a (store, mount) qualified path in a store, with all user-defined properties associated with it, expanded out into individual (name, value, type) tuples.

Syntax

```
TYPE prop_item_t IS RECORD (
   store               NAME_T,
   mount                    NAME_T,
   pathname                 PATH_T,
   property_name            PROPNAME_T,
   property_value           PROPVAL_T,
   property_type            INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 48–16 PROP_ITEM_T Fields

Field	Description
store	Name of store
mount	Location at which instance of store is mounted
pathname	Name of path to item
property_name	Name of the property
property_value	Value of the property
property_type	PL/SQL typecode for the property value

PROPERTY_T Record Type

This type describes a single (`value`, `typecode`) property value tuple; the property name is implied (see PROPERTIES_T Table Type).

Syntax

```
TYPE property_t  IS RECORD (
   propvalue    PROPVAL_T,
   typecode     INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 48–17 PROPERTY_T Fields

Field	Description
`propvalue`	Value of property
`typecode`	Typecode

STORE_T Record Type

This type describes a store registered with and managed by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Syntax

```
TYPE store_t IS RECORD (
   store_name          VARCHAR2(32),
   store_id            NUMBER,
   provider_name       VARCHAR2(32),
   provider_pkg        VARCHAR2(32),
   provider_id         NUMBER,
   provider_version    VARCHAR2(32),
   store_features      INTEGER,
   store_guid          NUMBER);
```

Fields

Table 48–18 STORET_T Fields

Field	Description
store_name	Name of store
store_name	ID of store
provider_name	Name of the content store
provider_pkg	PL/SQL package name for the content store
provider_id	Unique identifier for the content store
provider_version	Version number for the content store
respos_features	Features supported by this content store
store_guid	Unique ID for this instance of the store

FEATURES_T Table Type

A table type of FEATURE_T Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE features_t IS TABLE OF feature_t;
```

MOUNTS_T Table Type

A table type of MOUNT_T Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE mounts_t IS TABLE OF mount_t;
```

PATH_ITEMS_T Table Type

A table type of PATH_ITEM_T Record Type

Syntax

```
TYPE path_items_t IS TABLE OF path_item_t;
```

PROP_ITEMS_T Table Type

A table type of PATH_ITEM_T Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE prop_items_t IS TABLE OF prop_item_t;
```

PROPERTIES_T Table Type

This is a name-indexed hash table of property tuples. The implicit hash-table association between the index and the value allows the client to build up the full `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T` tuples for a `PROPERTIES_T`.

Syntax

```
TYPE properties_t IS TABLE OF property_t INDEX BY propname_t;
```

STORES_T Table Type

This type describes a store registered with and managed by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Syntax

```
TYPE stores_t IS TABLE OF store_t;
```

Summary of DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Subprograms

Table 48–19 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CHECKACCESS Function on page 48-37	Reports if the user (`principal`) can perform the specified operation on the given path
CHECKSPI Functions and Procedures on page 48-38	Checks if a user-provided package implements all of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI` subprograms with the proper signatures, and reports on the conformance.
CREATEDIRECTORY Procedures on page 48-39	Creates a directory
CREATEFILE Procedures on page 48-40	Creates a file
CREATELINK Procedures on page 48-41	Creates a new reference to the source file system element
CREATEREFERENCE Procedures on page 48-42	Creates a physical link to an already existing file system element
DECODEFEATURES Function on page 48-43	Given a feature bit set integer value, returns a `FEATURES_T` table of the feature bits as `FEATURE_T` records
DELETECONTENT Procedure on page 48-44	Deletes the file specified by the given contentID
DELETEDIRECTORY Procedure on page 48-45	Deletes a directory
DELETEFILE Procedure on page 48-43	Deletes a file
FEATURENAME Function on page 48-47	Given a feature bit, returns a `VARCHAR2` of that feature's name
FLUSHSTATS Function on page 48-48	Flushes `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` statistics to disk
GETDEFAULTACL Procedure on page 48-49	Returns the ACL parameter of the default context
GETDEFAULTASOF Procedure on page 48-50	Returns the `asof` parameter of the default context
GETTDEFAULTCONTEXT Procedure on page 48-51	Returns the default context
GETDEFAULTOWNER Procedure on page 48-52	Returns the `owner` parameter of the default context
GETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL Procedure on page 48-53	Returns the `principal` parameter of the default context
GETFEATURESBYMOUNT Function on page 48-54	Returns features of a store by mount point
GETFEATURESBYNAME Function on page 48-55	Returns features of a store by store name
GETFEATURESBYPATH Function on page 48-56	Returns features of a store by path
GETPATHBYMOUNTID Function on page 48-60	Returns the full absolute path name

Table 48–19 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETPATH Procedures on page 48-60	Returns existing path items (such as files and directories)
GETPATHBYSTOREID Function on page 48-61	If the underlying GUID is found in the underlying store, returns the store-qualified path name
GETPATHNOWAIT Procedures on page 48-62	Implies that the operation is for an update, and, if implemented, allows providers to return an exception (ORA-00054) rather than wait for row locks.
GETSTOREBYMOUNT Function on page 48-64	Returns a store by way of its mount point
GETSTOREBYNAME Function on page 48-65	Returns a store by way of its name
GETSTOREBYPATH Function on page 48-66	Returns a store by way of its path
GETSTATS Procedure on page 48-67	Returns information about DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT statistics collection
GETTRACE Function on page 48-68	Returns whether or not DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT tracing is turned on
GETVERSION Function on page 48-69	Returns the version of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface in a standardized format associated with a store
LIST Function on page 48-70	Lists the path items in the specified path meeting the specified filter and other criteria
LISTALLCONTENT Function on page 48-72	Lists all path items in all mounts
LISTALLPROPERTIES Function on page 48-71	Returns a table of all properties for all path items in all mounts
LISTMOUNTS Function on page 48-73	Lists all available mount points, their backing stores, and the store features
LISTSTORES Function on page 48-74	Lists all available stores and their features
LOCKPATH Procedure on page 48-75	Applies user-level locks to the given valid path name
MOUNTSTORE Procedure on page 48-76	Mounts a previously registered store and binds it to the mount point
NORMALIZEPATH Functions on page 48-77	Converts a store-specific or full-absolute path name into normalized form
PROPANY Functions on page 48-78	Provides constructors that take one of a variety of types and return a PROPERTY_T
PROPERTIESH2T Function on page 48-79	Converts a PROPERTY_T hash to a DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T table
PROPERTIEST2H Function on page 48-80	Converts a DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T table to a PROPERTY_T hash
PROPNUMBER Function on page 48-81	Is a constructor that takes a NUMBER and returns a PROPERTY_T
PROPRAW Function on page 48-82	Is a constructor that takes a RAW and returns a PROPERTY_T
PROPTIMESTAMP Function on page 48-83	Is a constructor that takes a TIMESTAMP and returns a PROPERTY_T

Table 48–19 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
PROPVARCHAR2 Function on page 48-84	Is a constructor that takes a `VARCAHR2` and returns a `PROPERTY_T`
PURGEALL Procedure on page 48-85	Purges all soft-deleted entries matching the path and optional filter criteria
PURGEPATH Procedure on page 48-86	Purges any soft-deleted versions of the given path item
PUTPATH Procedures on page 48-87	Creates a new path item
REGISTERSTORE Procedure on page 48-89	Registers a new store
RENAMEPATH Procedures on page 48-90	Renames or moves a path
RESTOREALL Procedure on page 48-91	Restores all soft-deleted path items meeting the path and filter criteria
RESTOREPATH Procedure on page 48-92	Restores all soft-deleted path items that match the given path and filter criteria
SETDEFAULTACL Procedure on page 48-93	Sets the ACL parameter of the default context
SETDEFAULTASOF Procedure on page 48-94	Sets the "as of" parameter of the default context
SETDEFAULTCONTEXT Procedure on page 48-95	Sets the default context
SETDEFAULTOWNER Procedure on page 48-96	Sets the "owner" parameter of the default context
SETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL Procedure on page 48-97	Sets the "principal" parameter of the default context
SETPATH Procedures on page 48-98	Assigns a path name to a path item represented by contentID
SETSTATS Procedure on page 48-99	Enables and disables statistics collection
SETTRACE Procedure on page 48-100	Sets `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` tracing on or off
SPACEUSAGE Procedure on page 48-101	Queries file system space usage statistics
TRACE Procedure on page 48-102	Returns a `CLOB` that contains the evaluation results
TRACEENABLED Function on page 48-103	Determines if the current trace "severity" set by the SETTRACE Procedure is at least as high as the given trace level
UNLOCKPATH Procedure on page 48-104	Unlocks path items that were previously locked with the LOCKPATH Procedure
UNMOUNTSTORE Procedure on page 48-105	Unmounts a registered store
UNREGISTERSTORE Procedure on page 48-106	Unregisters a store

CHECKACCESS Function

This function reports if the user (`principal`) can perform the specified operation on the given path. This enables verifying the validity of an operation without attempting to perform the operation. If `CHECKACCESS` returns 0, then the subprogram invoked to implement that operation should fail with an error.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CHECKACCESS (
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   pathtype       IN     INTEGER,
   operation      IN     VARCHAR2,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2,
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN  BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 48–20 CHECKACCESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to check for access
`pathtype`	Type of object `path` represents (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
`operation`	Operation to be checked (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Optional Properties)
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made
`store_name`	Name of store

Usage Notes

Whether or not the user invokes this function, a store that supports access control internally performs these checks to guarantee security.

CHECKSPI Functions and Procedures

Given the name of a putative DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI conforming package, this function or procedure checks whether the package implements all of the provider subprograms with the proper signatures, and reports on the conformance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CHECKSPI (
   package_name        IN              VARCHAR2)
  RETURN  CLOB;

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CHECKSPI (
   schema_name         IN              VARCHAR2,
   package_name        IN              VARCHAR2)
  return  clob;

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CHECKSPI (
   package_name        IN              VARCHAR2,
   chk                 IN OUT NOCOPY   CLOB);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CHECKSPI (
   schema_name         in              VARCHAR2,
   package_name        in              VARCHAR2,
   chk                 in out nocopy   CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 48–21 CHECKSPI Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
package_name	Name of package
schema_name	Name of schema
chk	CLOB that contains the evaluation results

Usage Notes

- The functional form returns a cached temporary LOB of session duration with the results of the analysis. The caller is expected to manage the lifetime of this LOB, as needed.
- The procedural form generates the results of the analysis into the chk LOB parameter; if the value passed in is NULL, the results are written to the foreground trace file provided that DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface tracing is enabled. If neither tracing is enabled nor a valid LOB passed in, the checker does not provide any useful indication of the analysis (other than raise exceptions if it encounters a serious error).
- If schema_name is NULL, standard name resolution rules (current schema, private synonym, public synonym) are used to try and locate a suitable package to analyze.

CREATEDIRECTORY Procedures

This procedure creates a directory.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATEDIRECTORY (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT PROP_STD,
   recurse     IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATEDIRECTORY (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT PROP_STD,
   recurse     IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–22 CREATEDIRECTORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to the directory
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned, or both, depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`prop_flags`	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is `PROP_STD`. Specify properties to be returned by setting `PROP_SPC` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags), and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
`recurse`	If 0, do not execute recursively; otherwise, recursively create the directories above the given directory
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

CREATEFILE Procedures

This procedure creates a file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATEFILE (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   content     IN OUT NOCOPY   BLOB,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD + PROP_DATA),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATEFILE (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   content     IN OUT NOCOPY   BLOB,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD + PROP_DATA),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–23 CREATEFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to the file
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned, or both, depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`content`	`BLOB` holding data with which to populate the file (optional)
`prop_flags`	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is `PROP_STD`. Specify properties to be returned by setting `prop_spec`, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

CREATELINK Procedures

This procedure creates a new link element `srcPath` with the value of `dstPath`. The value of `dstPath` is not validated or interpreted in any way by this procedure. This is analogous to a UNIX file system symbolic link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATELINK (
   srcPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   dstPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT PROP_STD,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATELINK (
   srcPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   dstPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT PROP_STD,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–24 CREATELINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`srcPath`	File system entry to create.
`dstPath`	Value to associate with `srcPath`.
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned depending, or both, on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`prop_flags`	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is `PROP_STD`. Specify properties to be returned by setting `prop_spec`, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

CREATEREFERENCE Procedures

This procedure creates a physical link, srcPath, to an already existing file system element, dstPath (such as file or directory). The resulting entry shares the same metadata structures as the value of the dstPath parameter, and so is similar to incrementing a reference count on the file system element. This is analogous to a UNIX file system hard link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATEREFERENCE (
   srcPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   dstPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT PROP_STD,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.CREATEREFERENCE (
   srcPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   dstPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT PROP_STD,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–25 CREATEREFERENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srcPath	File system entry to create.
dstPath	Path that is the reference to srcPath.
properties	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned, or both, depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set, returned. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
store_name	Name of store
principal	File system user for whom the access check is made

DECODEFEATURES Function

Given a feature bit set integer value, this function returns a FEATURES_T table of the feature bits as FEATURE_T records.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.DECODEFEATURES (
   featureSet          IN      INTEGER)
  RETURN FEATURES_T DETERMINISTIC PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 48–26 DECODEFEATURES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
featureSet	Feature set

Return Values

FEATURES_T Table Type

DELETECONTENT Procedure

This procedure deletes the file specified by the given contentID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.DELETECONTENT (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   contentID      IN     RAW,
   filter         IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   soft_delete    IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–27 DELETECONTENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`contentID`	Unique identifier for the file to be deleted
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`soft_delete`	If 0, execute a hard (permanent) delete. For any value other than 0, perform a soft delete (see *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*, Deletion Operations).
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

DELETEDIRECTORY Procedure

This procedure deletes a directory. If `recurse` is nonzero, it recursively deletes all elements of the directory. A filter, if supplied, determines which elements of the directory are deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.DELETEDIRECTORY (
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   soft_delete    IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT NULL,
   recurse        IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–28 DELETEDIRECTORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to the directory
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`soft_delete`	If 0, execute a hard (permanent) delete. For any value other than 0, perform a soft delete see *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*, Deletion Operations.
`recurse`	If 0, do not execute recursively. Otherwise, recursively delete the directories and files below the given directory.
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

DELETEFILE Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.DELETEFILE (
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   soft_delete    IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–29 DELETEFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to the file
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`soft_delete`	If 0, execute a hard (permanent) delete. For any value other than 0, perform a soft delete (see *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*, Deletion Operations).
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

FEATURENAME Function

Given a feature bit, this function returns a VARCHAR2 of that feature's name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.FEATURENAME (
   featureBit          IN      INTEGER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 48–30 FEATURENAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
featureBit	Bit representation of the feature (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features)

Return Values

Name of the feature

FLUSHSTATS Function

This procedure flushes `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` statistics to disk.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.FLUSHSTATS;
```

GETDEFAULTACL Procedure

This procedure returns the ACL parameter of the default context. This information can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETDEFAULTACL (
   acl    OUT NOCOPY     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–31 GETDEFAULTACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	ACL for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation

GETDEFAULTASOF Procedure

This procedure returns the "as of" parameter of the default context. This information can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETDEFAULTASOF (
  asof    OUT NOCOPY     TIMESTAMP);
```

Parameters

Table 48–32 GETDEFAULTASOF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
asof	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes

GETTDEFAULTCONTEXT Procedure

This procedure returns the default context. The information contained in the context can be inserted explicitly by way of arguments to the various method calls, allowing for fine-grained control over individual operations.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETTDEFAULTCONTEXT (
   principal    OUT NOCOPY     VARCHAR2,
   owner        OUT NOCOPY     VARCHAR2,
   acl          OUT NOCOPY     VARCHAR2,
   asof         OUT NOCOPY     TIMESTAMP);
```

Parameters

Table 48–33 GETTDEFAULTCONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation
`owner`	Owner for new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation
`acl`	ACL for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation
`asof`	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes

GETDEFAULTOWNER Procedure

This procedure returns the "owner" parameter of the default context. This information can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETDEFAULTOWNER (
   principal    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–34 GETDEFAULTOWNER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner for new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation

GETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL Procedure

This procedure returns the "principal" parameter of the default context. This information contained can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL (
   principal    OUT NOCOPY     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–35 GETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

GETFEATURESBYMOUNT Function

This function returns features of a store by mount point.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETFEATURESBYMOUNT (
   store_mount       IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 48–36 GETFEATURESBYMOUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_mount	Mount point

Return Values

A bit mask of supported features (see FEATURES_T Table Type)

GETFEATURESBYNAME Function

This function returns features of a store by store name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETFEATURESBYNAME (
   store_name       IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 48–37 GETFEATURESBYNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Return Values

A bit mask of supported features (see FEATURES_T Table Type)

GETFEATURESBYPATH Function

This function returns features of a store by path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETFEATURESBYPATH (
   path       IN      PATH_T)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 48–38 GETFEATURESBYPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	PATH_T

Return Values

A bit mask of supported features (see FEATURES_T Table Type)

GETPATH Procedures

This procedure returns existing path items (such as files and directories). This includes both data and metadata (properties).

The client can request (using `prop_flags`) that specific properties be returned. File path names can be read either by specifying a `BLOB` locator using the `prop_data` bitmask in `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags) or by passing one or more `RAW` buffers.

When `forUpdate` is 0, this procedure also accepts a valid `asof` timestamp parameter as part of `ctx` that can be used by stores to implement "as of" style flashback queries. Mutating versions of the `GETPATH` Procedures do not support these modes of operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATH (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
        content     OUT    NOCOPY   BLOB,
        item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        asof        IN              TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
        forUpdate   IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
        deref       IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATH (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
        content     OUT    NOCOPY   BLOB,
        item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        asof        IN              TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
        forUpdate   IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
        deref       IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATH (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
        amount      IN OUT          NUMBER,
        offset      IN              NUMBER,
        buffers     OUT    NOCOPY   RAW,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        asof        IN              TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATH (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
```

```
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
        amount      IN OUT          NUMBER,
        offset      IN              NUMBER,
        buffers     OUT    NOCOPY   RAW,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        asof        IN              TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATH (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
        amount      IN OUT          NUMBER,
        offset      IN              NUMBER,
        buffers     OUT    NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        asof        IN              TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATH (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
        amount      IN OUT          NUMBER,
        offset      IN              NUMBER,
        buffers     OUT    NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        asof        IN              TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–39 GETPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to path items
properties	One or more properties and their values to be returned depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
content	BLOB holding data which populates the file (optional)
item_type	Type of the path item specified (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
amount	On input, number of bytes to be read. On output, number of bytes read
offset	Byte offset from which to begin reading
buffer	Buffer to which to write
buffers	Buffers to which to write

Table 48–39 (Cont.) GETPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
asof	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes
forUpdate	Specifies that a lock should be taken to signify exclusive write access to the path item
deref	If nonzero, attempts to resolve the given path item to actual data provided it is a reference
store_name	Name of store
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

GETPATHBYMOUNTID Function

If the underlying GUID is found in the underlying store, this function returns the full absolute path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATHBYMOUNTID (
   store_mount         IN      VARCHAR2,
   guid                IN      INTEGER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 48–40 GETPATHBYMOUNTID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_mount`	Mount point in which the path item with `guid` resides
`guid`	Unique ID for the path item

Usage Notes

If the GUID is unknown, a `NULL` value is returned. Clients are expected to handle this as appropriate.

Return Values

Path of the path item represented by GUID in `store_mount`

GETPATHBYSTOREID Function

If the underlying GUID is found in the underlying store, this function returns the store-qualified path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATHBYSTOREID (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2,
   guid                IN      INTEGER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 48–41 GETPATHBYSTOREID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
guid	Unique ID representing the desired path item

Usage Notes

If the GUID is unknown, a NULL value is returned. Clients are expected to handle this as appropriate.

Return Values

Store-qualified path name represented by the GUID

GETPATHNOWAIT Procedures

This procedure implies that the operation is for an update, and, if implemented (see FEATURE_NOWAIT in DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features), allows providers to return an exception (ORA-00054) rather than wait for row locks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATHNOWAIT (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
        content     OUT    NOCOPY   BLOB,
        item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        deref       IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETPATHNOWAIT (
        path        IN              VARCHAR2,
        properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
        content     OUT    NOCOPY   BLOB,
        item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
        prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                         PROP_OPT +
                                                         PROP_DATA),
        deref       IN              BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
        store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
        principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–42 GETPATHNOWAIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to path items
properties	One or more properties and their values to be returned depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
content	BLOB holding data which populates the file (optional)
item_type	Type of the path item specified (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
prop_flags	Determines which properties are returned. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
asof	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes
deref	If nonzero, attempts to resolve the given path item to actual data provided it is a reference
store_name	Name of store

Table 48–42 (Cont.) GETPATHNOWAIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

GETSTOREBYMOUNT Function

This function returns a store by way of its name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETSTOREBYMOUNT (
   store_mount       IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN STORE_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–43 GETSTOREBYMOUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_mount	Location at which the store instance is mounted

Return Values

STORE_T Record Type

GETSTOREBYNAME Function

This function returns a store by way of its name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETSTOREBYNAME (
   store_name       IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN STORE_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–44 GETSTOREBYNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Return Values

STORE_T Record Type

GETSTOREBYPATH Function

This function returns a store by way of its path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETSTOREBYPATH (
   path        IN      PATH_T)
  RETURN STORE_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–45 GETSTOREBYPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	PATH_T s

Return Values

STORE_T Record Type

GETSTATS Procedure

This procedure returns information about DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT statistics collection.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETSTATS (
   enabled         OUT    BOOLEAN,
   flush_time      OUT    INTEGER,
   flush_count     OUT    INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 48–46 GETSTATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enabled	Whether statistics collection is enabled
flush_time	How often to flush the statistics to disk in centiseconds
flush_count	Number of operations to allow between statistics flushes

GETTRACE Function

This function returns whether DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT tracing is turned on or not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETTRACE
  RETURN INTEGER.
```

Return Values

Returns 0 if tracing is off, non-zero if tracing is on.

GETVERSION Function

This function marks each version of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.GETVERSION (
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

A string enumerating the version of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface in standard naming convention: string: *a.b.c* corresponding to *major*, *minor*, and *patch* components.

LIST Function

This function lists the path items in the specified path meeting the specified filter and other criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.LIST (
   path          IN     VARCHAR2,
   filter        IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   recurse       IN     INTEGER     DEFAULT 0,
   asof          IN     TIMESTAMP   DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name    IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal     IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 48–47 LIST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to directories
filter	A filter, if any, to be applied
recurse	If 0, do not execute recursively. Otherwise, recursively list the contents of directories and files below the given directory.
asof	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes
store_name	Name of repository
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

Return Values

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T Table Type

LISTALLPROPERTIES Function

This function returns a table of all properties for all path items in all mounts

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.LISTALLPROPERTIES
  RETURN  PROP_ITEMS_T PIPELINED;
```

Return Values

PROP_ITEMS_T Table Type

LISTALLCONTENT Function

This function lists all path items in all mounts.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.LISTALLCONTENT
  RETURN  PATH_ITEMS_T PIPELINED;
```

Return Values

PATH_ITEMS_T Table Type

LISTMOUNTS Function

This function lists all available mount points, their backing stores, and the store features.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.LISTMOUNTS
  RETURN MOUNTS_T PIPELINED;
```

Return Values

MOUNTS_T Table Type

Usage Notes

A single mount results in a single returned row, with its `store_mount` field of the returned records set to `NULL`.

LISTSTORES Function

This function lists all available stores and their features.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.LISTSTORES
  RETURN STORES_T PIPELINED;
```

Return Values

STORES_T Table Type

Usage Notes

The `store_mount` field of the returned records is set to `NULL` (since mount-points are separate from stores themselves).

LOCKPATH Procedure

This procedure applies user-level locks to the given valid path name (subject to store feature support), and optionally associates user-data with the lock.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.LOCKPATH (
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   lock_type      IN     INTEGER     DEFAULT LOCK_READ_ONLY,
   lock_data      IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–48 LOCKPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to file items
`lock_type`	One of the available lock types (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Lock Types)
`lock_data`	Optional user data to be associated with the lock
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

MOUNTSTORE Procedure

This procedure mounts a previously registered store and binds it to the mount point.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.MOUNTSTORE (
   store_mount    in      VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   singleton      in      BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   principal      in      VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   owner          in      VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   acl            in      VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   asof           in      TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL,
   read_only      in      BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 48–49 MOUNTSTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_mount`	Path name to use to mount this store
`singleton`	Whether the mount is a single backend store on the system
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation
`owner`	Owner for new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation
`acl`	ACL for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation
`asof`	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes
`read_only`	Whether the mount is read-only

Usage Notes

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for information on mounting a registered store

NORMALIZEPATH Functions

This function converts a store-specific or full-absolute path name into normalized form:

- verifies that the path name is absolute, and so starts with "/"
- collapses multiple consecutive "/" into a single "/"
- strips trailing "/"
- breaks up a store-specific normalized path name into 2 components - parent pathname, trailing component name
- breaks up a full-absolute normalized path name into 3 components - store name, parent pathname, trailing component name

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.NORMALIZEPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   parent      OUT NOCOPY      VARCHAR2,
   tpath       OUT NOCOPY      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.NORMALIZEPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   store_name  OUT NOCOPY      VARCHAR2,
   parent      OUT NOCOPY      VARCHAR2,
   tpath       OUT NOCOPY      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 48–50 NORMALIZEPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to file items
store_name	Name of store
parent	Parent path name
tpath	Name of trailing path item

Return Values

The completely normalized store-specific or full-absolute path name

PROPANY Functions

This function provides constructors that take one of a variety of types and return a PROPERTY_T.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPANY (
   val      IN      NUMBER)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPANY (
   val      IN      VARCHAR2)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPANY (
   val      IN      TIMESTAMP)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPANY (
   val      IN      RAW)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–51 PROPANY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
val	Value

Return Values

PROPERTY_T Record Type

PROPERTIESH2T Function

This function converts a PROPERTY_T hash to a DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPERTIEST2H (
   pprops      IN      PROPERTIES_T)
RETURN DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–52 PROPERTIEST2H Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sprops	A PROPERTIES_T hash

Return Values

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type

PROPERTIEST2H Function

This function converts a DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T table to a PROPERTY_T hash.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPERTIEST2H (
   sprops      IN      DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T)
RETURN properties_t;
```

Parameters

Table 48–53 PROPERTIEST2H Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sprops	A DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T table

Return Values

PROPERTIES_T Table Type

PROPNUMBER Function

This function is a constructor that takes a number and returns a `PROPERTY_T`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPNUMBER (
   val      IN      NUMBER)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–54 PROPNUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`val`	Value

Return Values

PROPERTY_T Record Type

PROPRAW Function

This function is a constructor that takes a `RAW` and returns a `PROPERTY_T`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPRAW (
   val       IN      RAW)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–55 PROPRAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`val`	Value

Return Values

PROPERTY_T Record Type

PROPTIMESTAMP Function

This function is a constructor that takes a `TIMESTAMP` and returns a `PROPERTY_T`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPTIMESTAMP (
   val      IN      TIMESTAMP)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–56 PROPTIMESTAMP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`val`	Value

Return Values

PROPERTY_T Record Type

PROPVARCHAR2 Function

This function is a constructor that takes a VARCHAR2 and returns a `PROPERTY_T`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PROPVARCHAR2 (
   val      IN      VARCHAR2)
RETURN PROPERTY_T;
```

Parameters

Table 48–57 PROPNUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`val`	Value

Return Values

PROPERTY_T Record Type

PURGEALL Procedure

This procedure purges all soft-deleted entries matching the path and optional filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PURGEALL (
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–58 PURGEALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to file items
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied based on specified criteria
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

PURGEPATH Procedure

This procedure purges any soft-deleted versions of the given path item.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PURGEPATH (
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–59 PURGEPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to file items
filter	A filter, if any, to be applied
store_name	Name of store
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

PUTPATH Procedures

This procedure creates a new path item.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PUTPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   content     IN OUT NOCOPY   BLOB,
   item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                    PROP_OPT +
                                                    PROP_DATA),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PUTPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   content     IN OUT NOCOPY   BLOB,
   item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                    PROP_OPT +
                                                    PROP_DATA),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PUTPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   amount      IN              NUMBER,
   offset      IN              NUMBER,
   buffer      IN              RAW,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                    PROP_OPT),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PUTPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   amount      IN              NUMBER,
   offset      IN              NUMBER,
   buffer      IN              RAW,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                    PROP_OPT),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PUTPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   written     OUT             NUMBER,
   offset      IN              NUMBER,
   buffers     IN             DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                    PROP_OPT),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
```

```
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.PUTPATH (
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   written     OUT             NUMBER,
   offset      IN              NUMBER,
   buffers     IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER     DEFAULT (PROP_STD +
                                                    PROP_OPT),
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–60 PUTPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to file items
properties	One or more properties and their values to be set depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
content	BLOB holding data which populates the file (optional)
item_type	Type of the path item specified (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
amount	Number of bytes to be read
offset	Byte offset from which to begin reading
buffer	Buffer to which to write
buffers	Buffers to which to write
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
store_name	Name of store
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

REGISTERSTORE Procedure

This procedure registers a new store backed by a provider that uses a store provider (conforming to the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI package signature). This method is to be used primarily by store providers after they have created a new store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.REGISTERSTORE (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2,
   provider_name       IN      VARCHAR2,
   provider_package    IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–61 REGISTERSTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store, must be unique
provider_name	Name of provider
provider_package	Store provider

RENAMEPATH Procedures

This procedure renames or moves a path. This operation can be performed across directory hierarchies and mount-points as long as it is within the same store.

Note: See *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for Rename and Move operations

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.RENAMEPATH (
   oldPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   newPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.RENAMEPATH (
   oldPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   newPath     IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–62 RENAMEPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
oldPath	Name of path prior to renaming
newPath	Name of path after renaming
properties	One or more properties and their values to be set depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
store_name	Name of store, must be unique
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

RESTOREALL Procedure

This procedure restores all soft-deleted path items meeting the path and optional filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.RESTOREALL (
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–63 RESTOREALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to file items
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

RESTOREPATH Procedure

This procedure restores all soft-deleted path items that match the given path and optional filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.RESTOREPATH (
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–64 RESTOREPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Name of path to file items
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`store_name`	Name of store
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

SETDEFAULTACL Procedure

This procedure sets the ACL parameter of the default context. This information can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETDEFAULTACL (
   acl    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–65 SETDEFAULTACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
acl	ACL for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation

Usage Notes

- NULL by default, this parameter be can be cleared by setting it to NULL.
- The parameters, once set, remain as a default for the duration of the session, and is inherited by all operations for which the default is not explicitly overridden.

SETDEFAULTASOF Procedure

This procedure sets the "as of" parameter of the default context. This information can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETDEFAULTASOF (
  asof    IN     TIMESTAMP);
```

Parameters

Table 48–66 SETDEFAULTASOF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
asof	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes

Usage Notes

- NULL by default, this parameter be can be cleared by setting it to NULL.
- The parameters, once set, remain as a default for the duration of the session, and is inherited by all operations for which the default is not explicitly overridden.

SETDEFAULTCONTEXT Procedure

This procedure sets the default context. The information contained in the context can be inserted explicitly by way of arguments to the various method calls, allowing for fine-grained control over individual operations.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETDEFAULTCONTEXT (
   principal    IN     VARCHAR2,
   owner        IN     VARCHAR2,
   acl          IN     VARCHAR2,
   asof         IN     TIMESTAMP);
```

Parameters

Table 48–67 SETDEFAULTCONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation
`owner`	Owner for new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation
`acl`	ACL for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation
`asof`	The "as of" timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) executes

Usage Notes

- All of the context parameters are `NULL` by default, and be can be cleared by setting them to `NULL`.
- The context parameters, once set, remain as defaults for the duration of the session, and are inherited by all operations for which the defaults are not explicitly overridden.

SETDEFAULTOWNER Procedure

This procedure sets the "owner" parameter of the default context. This information can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETDEFAULTOWNER (
   principal    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–68 SETDEFAULTOWNER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner for new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation

Usage Notes

- NULL by default, this parameter be can be cleared by setting it to NULL.
- The parameters, once set, remain as a default for the duration of the session, and is inherited by all operations for which the default is not explicitly overridden.

SETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL Procedure

This procedure sets the "principal" parameter of the default context. This information contained can be inserted explicitly by way of argument into other method calls, allowing for a more fine-grained control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL (
   principal    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 48–69 SETDEFAULTPRINCIPAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

Usage Notes

- NULL by default, this parameter be can be cleared by setting it to NULL.
- The parameters, once set, remain as a default for the duration of the session, and is inherited by all operations for which the default is not explicitly overridden.

SETPATH Procedures

This procedure assigns a path name to a path item represented by contentID.

Stores and their providers that support contentID-based access and lazy path name binding also support the `SETPATH Procedure` that associates an existing `contentID` with a new path.

> **Note:** See *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for Rename and Move operations

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETPATH (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   contentID   IN              RAW,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETPATH (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   contentID   IN              RAW,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   PROPERTIES_T,
   principal   IN              VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–70 SETPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of the store
`contentID`	Unique identifier for the item to be associated
`path`	Name of path to path item
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`principal`	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

SETSTATS Procedure

This procedure enables and disables statistics collection. The client can optionally control the flush settings by specifying non-NULL values for the time, count or both parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETSTATS (
   enable          IN    BOOLEAN,
   flush_time      IN    INTEGER,
   flush_count     IN    INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 48–71 SETSTATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enable	If TRUE, enable statistics collection. If FALSE, disable statistics collection.
flush_time	How often to flush the statistics to disk in centiseconds
flush_count	Number of operations to allow between statistics flushes

Usage Notes

The SETSTATS Procedure buffers statistics in-memory for a maximum of flush_time centiseconds or a maximum of flush_count operations (whichever limit is reached first), or both, at which time the buffers are implicitly flushed to disk.

SETTRACE Procedure

This procedure sets the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT tracing severity to the given level, 0 being "off".

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SETTRACE
     trclvl      IN         INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 48–72 SETTRACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
trclvl	Level of the tracing, higher values implying more tracing

SPACEUSAGE Procedure

This procedure queries file system space usage statistics. Providers are expected to support this subprogram for their stores (and to make a best effort determination of space usage, especially if the store consists of multiple tables, indexes, LOBs, and so on).

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.SPACEUSAGE (
   path          IN        VARCHAR2,
   blksize       OUT       INTEGER,
   tbytes        OUT       INTEGER,
   fbytes        OUT       INTEGER,
   nfile         OUT       INTEGER,
   ndir          OUT       INTEGER,
   nlink         OUT       INTEGER,
   nref          OUT       INTEGER,
   store_name    IN        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–73 SPACEUSAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to file items
blksize	Natural tablespace blocksize that holds the store. If multiple tablespaces with different blocksizes are used, any valid blocksize is acceptable.
tbytes	Total size of the store in bytes computed over all segments that comprise the store
fbytes	Free or unused size of the store in bytes computed over all segments that comprise the store
nfile	Number of currently available files in the store
ndir	Number of currently available directories in the store
nlink	Number of currently available links in the store
nref	Number of currently available references in the store
store_name	Name of store

Usage Notes

- A space usage query on the top-level root directory returns a combined summary of the space usage of all available distinct stores under it (if the same store is mounted multiple times, is still counted only once).
- Since database objects are dynamically expandable, it is not easy to estimate the division between "free" space and "used" space.

TRACE Procedure

This procedure outputs tracing to the current foreground trace file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.TRACE
   sev         IN              INTEGER,
   msg0        IN              VARCHAR2,
   msg1        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg2        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg3        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg4        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg5        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg6        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg7        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg8        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg9        IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '',
   msg10       IN              VARCHAR     DEFAULT '');
```

Parameters

Table 48–74 TRACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sev	Severity at which trace message is output
msg*	One or more message strings to be output. If more than one message is specified, all are output.

Usage Notes

- Trace information is written to the foreground trace file, with varying levels of detail as specified by the trace level arguments.
- The global trace level consists of 2 components: "severity" and "detail". These can be thought of as additive bitmasks.

  The "severity" allows the separation of top level as compared to low-level tracing of different components, and allows the amount of tracing to be increased as needed. There are no semantics associated with different levels, and users are free to set trace at any severity they choose, although a good rule of thumb would use severity "1" for top level API entry and exit traces, "2" for internal operations, and "3" or greater for very low-level traces.

  The "detail" controls how much additional information: timestamps, short-stack, etc. is dumped along with each trace record.

TRACEENABLED Function

This function determines if the current trace "severity" set by the SETTRACE Procedure is at least as high as the given trace level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.TRACEENABLED(
   sev          IN              INTEGER)
  RETURN  INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 48–75 TRACEENABLED Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sev	Severity at which trace message is output

Return Values

Returns 0 if the requested severity level is lower than the currently set trace severity level; 1 otherwise.

UNLOCKPATH Procedure

This procedure unlocks path items that were previously locked with the LOCKPATH Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.UNLOCKPATH (
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 48–76 UNLOCKPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Name of path to file items
store_name	Name of store
principal	Agent (principal) invoking the current operation

UNMOUNTSTORE Procedure

This procedure unmounts a registered store, either by name or by mount point.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.UNMOUNTSTORE (
   store_name        IN      VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   store_mount       IN      VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ignore_unknown    IN      BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 48–77 UNMOUNTSTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
store_mount	Location at which the store instance is mounted
ignore_unknown	If TRUE, attempts to unregister unknown stores will not raise an exception.

Usage Notes

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on unmounting a previously unmounted store

UNREGISTERSTORE Procedure

This procedure unregisters a previously registered store (invalidating all mount points associated with it).

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.UNREGISTERSTORE (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2,
   ignore_unknown      IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 48–78 UNREGISTERSTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
ignore_unknown	If TRUE, attempts to unregister unknown stores will not raise an exception.

Usage Notes

- Once unregistered all access to the store (and its mount points) are not guaranteed to work
- If the ignore_unknown argument is TRUE, attempts to unregister unknown stores do not raise an exception.

49

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI package is a specification for DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT store providers, which must be implemented. Application designers can create PL/SQL packages conforming to this specification to extend DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT to use custom store providers.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI

Overview

The DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI package describes an internal contract between the implementation of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface and individual store providers, and whichever package contains their code.

Since PL/SQL does not allow a compile-time, declarative type-conformation between package signatures, store providers should informally conform to the SPI, which is to say, they should implement the SPI by means of a package that contains all of the methods specified in package DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI, with the same method signatures and semantics.

Obviously, these provider packages can implement other methods and expose other interfaces, however, these interfaces are not to be used by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface itself.

Since the provider SPI is merely a contract specification, there is no package body for DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI, and it is not possible to actually invoke any methods using this package.

The SPI references various elements (constants, types, exceptions) defined by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Additionally, there is an almost one-to-one correspondence between the client API exported by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface and the provider interface that the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface itself expects to work against.

The main distinction in the method naming conventions is that all path name references are always store-qualified. That is, the notion of mount-points and full-absolute path names have been normalized and converted to store-qualified path names by the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface before it invokes any of the provider SPI methods.

Since the interconnection of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface and the provider SPI is a 1-to-many pluggable architecture, and the interface uses dynamic SQL to invoke methods in the provider SPI, this can lead to runtime errors.

Security Model

Implementations of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI` package should be created as `AUTHID CURRENT_USER`.

Operational Notes

Implementation

Since the interconnection of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface and the provider SPI is a 1-to-many pluggable architecture, the interface uses dynamic SQL to invoke methods in the provider SPI, this can lead to runtime errors.

There are no explicit `INIT` or `FINI` methods to indicate when the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` interface plugs or unplugs a particular provider SPI. Provider SPIs must be willing to auto-initialize themselves at any SPI entry-point.

All operations performed by a store provider are "stateless" in that they are complete operations unto themselves. If state is necessary to be maintained for some reason, then the state must be maintained in data structures such as auxiliary tables that can be queried as needed.

Path Names

All path names used in the provider SPI are store-qualified in pair form (`store_name`, `pathname`) where the path name is rooted within the store namespace.

Stores and their providers that support contentID-based access (see `FEATURE_CONTENT_ID` in DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features) also support a form of addressing that is not based on path names. Content items are identified by an explicit store name, a `NULL` path name, and possibly a contentID specified as a parameter or by way of the `OPT_CONTENT_ID` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Optional Properties) property.

Not all operations are supported with contentID-based access, and applications should depend only on the simplest create or delete functionality being available.

Other DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Operations

This table lists other operations and provides links to related discussions.

Table 49–1 Other DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Operations

Other Operations	See ...
Creation	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on creation operations
Deletion	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on deletion operations
Get (Retrieve) and Put (Insert)	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Get and Put operations
Rename and Move	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Rename and Move operations
Directory Navigation and Search	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Navigation and Search operations
Locking	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Locking operations

Table 49–1 (Cont.) Other DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Operations

Other Operations	See ...
Access Check	*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Access Check operations

Summary of DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI Subprograms

Table 49–2 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CHECKACCESS Function on page 49-9	Reports if the user (`principal`) can perform the specified operation on the given path
CREATEDIRECTORY Procedure on page 49-10	Creates a directory
CREATEFILE Procedure on page 49-11	Creates a file
CREATELINK Procedure on page 49-12	Creates a physical link to an already existing file system element
CREATEREFERENCE Procedure on page 49-13	Creates a new reference to the source file system element
DELETECONTENT Procedure on page 49-14	Deletes the file specified by the given contentID
DELETEDIRECTORY Procedure on page 49-15	Deletes a directory
DELETEFILE Procedure on page 49-16	Deletes a file
GETFEATURES Function on page 49-17	Returns the features of a store
GETPATH Procedures on page 49-18	Returns existing path items (such as files and directories)
GETPATHBYSTOREID Function on page 49-20	If the underlying GUID is found in the underlying store, returns the store-qualified path name
GETPATHNOWAIT Procedure on page 49-21	Implies that the operation is for an update, and, if implemented, allows providers to return an exception (`ORA-00054`) rather than wait for row locks.
GETSTOREID Function on page 49-22	Returns the ID of a store
GETVERSION Function on page 49-23	Returns the version associated with a store
LIST Function on page 49-24	Lists the contents of a directory path name
LOCKPATH Procedure on page 49-25	Applies user-level locks to the given valid path name
PURGEALL Procedure on page 49-26	Purges all soft-deleted entries matching the path and optional filter criteria
PURGEPATH Procedure on page 49-27	Purges any soft-deleted versions of the given path item
PUTPATH Procedures on page 49-28	Creates a new path item
RENAMEPATH Procedure on page 49-30	Renames or moves a path
RESTOREALL Procedure on page 49-31	Restores all soft-deleted path items meeting the path and filter criteria

Table 49–2 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
RESTOREPATH Procedure on page 49-32	Restores all soft-deleted path items that match the given path and filter criteria
SEARCH Function on page 49-33	Searches for path items matching the given path and filter criteria
SETPATH Procedure on page 49-34	Assigns a path name to a path item represented by contentID
SPACEUSAGE Procedure on page 49-35	Queries file system space usage statistics
UNLOCKPATH Procedure on page 49-36	Unlocks path items that were previously locked with the LOCKPATH Procedure

CHECKACCESS Function

This function reports if the user (`principal`) can perform the specified operation on the given path. This enables verifying the validity of an operation without attempting to perform the operation. If `CHECKACCESS` returns 0, then the subprogram invoked to implement that operation should fail with an error.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.CHECKACCESS (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   pathtype       IN     INTEGER,
   operation      IN     VARCHAR2,
   principal      IN     VARCHAR2)
  RETURN  INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 49–3 CHECKACCESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to check for access
`pathtype`	Type of object `path` represents (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
`operation`	Operation to be checked (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Optional Properties)
`principal`	File system user for whom the access check is made

Usage Notes

Whether or not the user invokes this function, a store that supports access control internally performs these checks to guarantee security.

CREATEDIRECTORY Procedure

This procedure creates a directory.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.CREATEDIRECTORY (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER,
   recurse     IN              INTEGER,
   ctx         IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–4 CREATEDIRECTORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
path	Name of path to the directory
properties	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned, or both, depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting PROP_SPC (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags), and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
recurse	If 0, do not execute recursively; otherwise, recursively create the directories above the given directory
ctx	Context with which to create the directory (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

CREATEFILE Procedure

This procedure creates a file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.CREATEFILE (
   store_name     IN              VARCHAR2,
   path           IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties     IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   content        IN OUT NOCOPY   BLOB,
   prop_flags     IN              INTEGER,
   ctx            IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–5 CREATEFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to the file
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned or both depending, or both on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`content`	`BLOB` holding data with which to populate the file (optional)
`prop_flags`	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is `PROP_STD`. Specify properties to be returned by setting `prop_spec`, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
`ctx`	Context with which to create the file (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

CREATELINK Procedure

This procedure creates a physical link to an already existing file system element (such as file or directory). The resulting entry shares the same metadata structures as the value of the `srcPath` parameter, and so is similar to incrementing a reference count on the file system element. This is analogous to a UNIX file system hard link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.CREATELINK (
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   srcPath       IN              VARCHAR2,
   dstPath       IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags    IN              INTEGER,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–6 CREATELINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`srcPath`	File system entry with which to link
`dstPath`	Path of the new link element to be created
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned, or both, depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`prop_flags`	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is `PROP_STD`. Specify properties to be returned by setting `prop_spec`, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
`ctx`	Context with which to create the link (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

CREATEREFERENCE Procedure

This procedure creates a new reference to the source file system element (such as a file, or directory). The resulting reference points to the source element but does not directly share metadata with the source element. This is analogous to a UNIX file system symbolic link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.CREATEREFERENCE (
   srcPath       IN              VARCHAR2,
   dstPath       IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   prop_flags    IN              INTEGER,
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–7 CREATEREFERENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
srcPath	File system entry with which to link
dstPath	Path of the new link element to be created
properties	One or more properties and their values to be set, returned, or both, depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
ctx	Context with which to create the reference (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

DELETECONTENT Procedure

This procedure deletes the file specified by the given contentID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.DELETECONTENT (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   contentID      IN     RAW,
   filter         IN     VARCHAR2,
   soft_delete    IN     INTEGER,
   ctx            IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–8 DELETECONTENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`contentID`	Unique identifier for the file to be deleted
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`soft_delete`	If 0, execute a hard (permanent) delete. For any value other than 0, perform a soft delete see *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*, Deletion Operations).
`ctx`	Context with which to delete the file (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

DELETEDIRECTORY Procedure

This procedure deletes a directory. If `recurse` is nonzero, it recursively deletes all elements of the directory. A filter, if supplied, determines which elements of the directory are deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.DELETEDIRECTORY (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN     VARCHAR2,
   soft_delete    IN     INTEGER,
   recurse        IN     INTEGER,
   ctx            IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–9 DELETEDIRECTORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to the directory
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`soft_delete`	If 0, execute a hard (permanent) delete. For any value other than 0, perform a soft delete see *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*, Deletion Operations).
`recurse`	If 0, do not execute recursively. Otherwise, recursively delete the directories and files below the given directory.
`ctx`	Context with which to delete the directory (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

DELETEFILE Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.DELETEFILE (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN     VARCHAR2,
   soft_delete    IN     BOOLEAN,
   ctx            IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–10 DELETEFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to the file
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`soft_delete`	If 0, execute a hard (permanent) delete. For any value other than 0, perform a soft delete see *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*, Deletion Operations).
`ctx`	Context with which to delete the file (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

GETFEATURES Function

This function returns the features of a store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETFEATURES (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN  INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 49–11 GETFEATURES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Return Values

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.FEATURE_* features supported by the Store Provider

GETPATH Procedures

This procedure returns existing path items (such as files and directories). This includes both data and metadata (properties).

The client can request (using `prop_flags`) that specific properties be returned. File path names can be read either by specifying a `BLOB` locator using the `prop_data` bitmask in `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags) or by passing one or more `RAW` buffers.

When `forUpdate` is 0, this procedure also accepts a valid "as of" timestamp parameter as part of `ctx` that can be used by stores to implement "as of" style flashback queries. Mutating versions of the `GETPATH` Procedures do not support these modes of operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETPATH (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   content     OUT    NOCOPY   BLOB,
   item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER,
   forUpdate   IN              INTEGER,
   deref       IN              INTEGER,
   ctx         IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETPATH (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   amount      IN OUT          NUMBER,
   offset      IN              NUMBER,
   buffer      OUT    NOCOPY   RAW,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER,
   ctx         IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETPATH (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   amount      IN OUT          NUMBER,
   offset      IN              NUMBER,
   buffers     OUT    NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER,
   ctx         IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–12 GETPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to path items
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be returned depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)

Table 49–12 (Cont.) GETPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
content	BLOB holding data which populates the file (optional)
item_type	Type of the path item specified (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
amount	On input, number of bytes to be read. On output, number of bytes read
offset	Byte offset from which to begin reading
buffer	Buffer to which to write
buffers	Buffers to which to write
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set, returned, or both. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
forUpdate	Specifies that a lock should be taken to signify exclusive write access to the path item
deref	If nonzero, attempts to resolve the given path item to actual data provided it is a reference (symbolic link)
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

GETPATHBYSTOREID Function

If the underlying GUID is found in the underlying store, this function returns the store-qualified path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETPATHBYSTOREID (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2,
   guid                IN      INTEGER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 49–13 GETPATHBYSTOREID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
guid	Unique ID representing the desired path item

Return Values

Store-qualified path name represented by the GUID

Usage Notes

If the STD_GUID is unknown, a NULL value is returned. Clients are expected to handle this as appropriate.

GETPATHNOWAIT Procedure

This procedure implies that the operation is for an update, and, if implemented (see FEATURE_NOWAIT in DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Store Features), allows providers to return an exception (ORA-00054) rather than wait for row locks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETPATHNOWAIT (
   store_name  IN              VARCHAR2,
   path        IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   content     OUT    NOCOPY   BLOB,
   item_type   OUT             INTEGER,
   prop_flags  IN              INTEGER,
   deref       IN              INTEGER,
   ctx         IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–14 GETPATHNOWAIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
path	Name of path to path items
properties	One or more properties and their values to be returned depending on prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
content	BLOB holding data which populates the file (optional)
item_type	Type of the path item specified (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
prop_flags	Determines which properties are returned. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
deref	If nonzero, attempts to resolve the given path item to actual data provided it is a reference (symbolic link)
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

GETSTOREID Function

This function returns the ID of a store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETSTOREID (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN  NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 49–15 GETSTOREID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Return Values

ID of the Store

Usage Notes

A store ID identifies a provider-specific store, across registrations and mounts, but independent of changes to the store contents. For this reason, changes to the store table or tables should be reflected in the store ID, but re-initialization of the same store table or tables should preserve the store ID.

GETVERSION Function

This function returns the version associated with a store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.GETVERSION (
   store_name          IN      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN  VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 49–16 GETVERSION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Return Values

A "version" (either specific to a provider package, or to an individual store) based on a standard *a.b.c* naming convention (for *major*, *minor*, and *patch* components)

LIST Function

This function lists the contents of a directory path name.

The invoker of the subprogram has the option to investigate recursively into sub-directories, to make soft-deleted items visible, to use a flashback "as of" a specified timestamp, and to filter items within the store based on list predicates.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.LIST (
   store_name    IN     VARCHAR2,
   path          IN     VARCHAR2,
   filter        IN     VARCHAR2,
   recurse       IN     INTEGER,
   ctx           IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T)
  RETURN  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 49–17 LIST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of repository
`path`	Name of path to directories
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`recurse`	If 0, do not execute recursively. Otherwise, recursively list the contents of directories and files below the given directory.
`ctx`	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

Return Values

Path items found that match the path, filter and criteria for executing recursively (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T Table Type)

Usage Notes

This function returns only list items; the client is expected to explicitly use one of the GETPATH Procedures to access the properties or content associated with an item.

LOCKPATH Procedure

This procedure applies user-level locks to the given valid path name (subject to store feature support), and optionally associates user-data with the lock.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.LOCKPATH (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   lock_type      IN     INTEGER,
   lock_data      IN     VARCHAR2,
   ctx            IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–18 LOCKPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Path name of items to be locked
`lock_type`	One of the available lock types (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Lock Types)
`lock_data`	Optional user data to be associated with the lock
`ctx`	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

Usage Notes

- It is the responsibility of the store and its providers (assuming it supports user-defined lock checking) to ensure that lock and unlock operations are performed in a consistent manner.
- The status of locked items is available by means of various optional properties (see `OPT_LOCK*` in DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Optional Properties).

PURGEALL Procedure

This procedure purges all soft-deleted entries matching the path and optional filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.PURGEALL (
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2,
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2,
   ctx            IN      DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–19 PURGEALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to file items
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied based on specified criteria
`ctx`	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

PURGEPATH Procedure

This procedure purges any soft-deleted versions of the given path item.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.PURGEPATH (
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2,
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2,
   ctx            IN      DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–20 PURGEPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
path	Name of path to file items
filter	A filter, if any, to be applied
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

PUTPATH Procedures

This procedure creates a new path item.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.PUTPATH (
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   path          IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   content       IN OUT NOCOPY   BLOB,
   item_type     OUT             INTEGER,
   prop_flags    IN              INTEGER,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.PUTPATH (
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   path          IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   amount        IN              NUMBER,
   offset        IN              NUMBER,
   buffer        IN              RAW,
   prop_flags    IN              INTEGER,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.PUTPATH (
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   path          IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   written       OUT             NUMBER,
   offset        IN              NUMBER,
   buffers       IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T,
   prop_flags    IN              INTEGER,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–21 PUTPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Path name of item to be put
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`content`	`BLOB` holding data which populates the file (optional)
`item_type`	Type of the path item specified (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types)
`amount`	Number of bytes to be read
`written`	Number of bytes written
`offset`	Byte offset from which to begin reading
`buffer`	Buffer to which to write
`buffers`	Buffers to which to write

Table 49–21 (Cont.) PUTPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
prop_flags	Determines which properties are set. Default is PROP_STD. Specify properties to be returned by setting prop_spec, and providing an instance of the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type with properties whose values are of interest.
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

Usage Notes

- All path names allow their metadata (properties) to be read and modified. On completion of the call, the client can access specific properties using prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags).
- On completion of the call, the client can request a new BLOB locator that can be used to continue data access using the prop_data bitmask in prop_flags (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Property Access Flags).
- Files can also be written without using BLOB locators, by explicitly specifying logical offsets or buffer-amounts, and a suitably sized buffer.

RENAMEPATH Procedure

This procedure renames or moves a path. This operation can be performed across directory hierarchies and mount-points as long as it is within the same store.

Note: See *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Rename and Move operations

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.RENAMEPATH (
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   oldPath       IN              VARCHAR2,
   newPath       IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–22 RENAMEPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store, must be unique
`oldPath`	Name of path prior to renaming
`newPath`	Name of path after renaming
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`ctx`	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

RESTOREALL Procedure

This procedure restores all soft-deleted path items meeting the path and optional filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.RESTOREALL (
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2,
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2,
   ctx            IN      DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–23 RESTOREALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
path	Name of path to path items
filter	A filter, if any, to be applied
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

RESTOREPATH Procedure

This procedure restores all soft-deleted path items that match the given path and optional filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.RESTOREPATH (
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2,
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2,
   ctx            IN      DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–24 RESTOREPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`path`	Name of path to path items
`filter`	A filter, if any, to be applied
`ctx`	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

SEARCH Function

This function searches for path items matching the given path and filter criteria.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.SEARCH (
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2,
   path           IN      VARCHAR2,
   filter         IN      VARCHAR2,
   recurse        IN      INTEGER,
   ctx            IN      DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T)
 RETURN  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 49–25 LIST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
path	Name of path to the path items
filter	A filter, if any, to be applied
recurse	If 0, do not execute recursively. Otherwise, recursively search the contents of directories and files below the given directory.
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

Return Values

Path items matching the given path and filter criteria (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T Table Type)

SETPATH Procedure

This procedure assigns a path name to a path item represented by contentID.

Stores and their providers that support contentID-based access and lazy path name binding also support the `SETPATH Procedure` that associates an existing `contentID` with a new path.

> **Note:** See *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for further information on Rename and Move operations

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.SETPATH (
   store_name    IN              VARCHAR2,
   contentID     IN              RAW,
   path          IN              VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN OUT NOCOPY   DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T,
   ctx           IN              DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–26 SETPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of the store
`contentID`	Unique identifier for the item to be associated
`path`	Name of path to path item
`properties`	One or more properties and their values to be set depending on `prop_flags` (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type)
`ctx`	Context with which to access the path items (seE DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

SPACEUSAGE Procedure

This procedure queries file system space usage statistics. Providers are expected to support this subprogram for their stores and to make a best effort determination of space usage, especially if the store consists of multiple tables, indexes, LOBs, and so on.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.SPACEUSAGE (
   store_name    IN        VARCHAR2,
   blksize       OUT       INTEGER,
   tbytes        OUT       INTEGER,
   fbytes        OUT       INTEGER,
   nfile         OUT       INTEGER,
   ndir          OUT       INTEGER,
   nlink         OUT       INTEGER,
   nref          OUT       INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 49–27 SPACEUSAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
blksize	Natural tablespace blocksize that holds the store. If multiple tablespaces with different blocksizes are used, any valid blocksize is acceptable.
tbytes	Total size of the store in bytes computed over all segments that comprise the store
fbytes	Free or unused size of the store in bytes computed over all segments that comprise the store
nfile	Number of currently available files in the store
ndir	Number of currently available directories in the store
nlink	Number of currently available links in the store
nref	Number of currently available references in the store

Usage Notes

- A space usage query on the top-level root directory returns a combined summary of the space usage of all available distinct stores under it (if the same store is mounted multiple times, it is still counted only once).
- Since database objects are dynamically expandable, it is not easy to estimate the division between "free" space and "used" space.

UNLOCKPATH Procedure

This procedure unlocks path items that were previously locked with the LOCKPATH Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.UNLOCKPATH (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   path           IN     VARCHAR2,
   ctx            IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T);
```

Parameters

Table 49–28 UNLOCKPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
path	Name of path to the path items
ctx	Context with which to access the path items (see DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type)

50

DBMS_DBFS_HS

The Oracle Database File System Hierarchical Store is implemented in the `DBMS_DBFS_HS` package. This package provides users the ability to use tape or Amazon S3 Web service as a storage tier when doing Information Lifecycle Management for their database tables.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DBFS_HS

Overview

The DBMS_DBFS_HS package is a service provider underneath the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package that enables use of tape or Amazon S3 Web service as storage for data.

The data on tape or Amazon S3 Web service is part of the Oracle Database and can be accessed through all standard interfaces, but only through the database. The package allows users to use tape or Amazon S3 Web service as a storage tier when doing Information Lifecycle Management of their content.

The package initially stores all content files in level-1 cache. As the level-1 cache fills up, content files are moved to level-2 cache and then to an external storage device using bulk writes.

Security Model

The DBMS_DBFS_HS package runs with invoker's rights.

Constants

The DBMS_DBFS_HS package uses the constants shown in following tables:

- DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the CREATESTORE Procedure
- DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure and the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function
- DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Function
- DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Failure/Success/Error

Table 50–1 DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the CREATESTORE Procedure

Constant	Type	Value	Description
STORETYPE_TAPE	VARCHAR2(50)	'HS_TAPE'	Use tape as a storage tier
STORETYPE_ AMAZONS3	VARCHAR2(50)	'HS_S3'	Use Amazon S3 Web service as a storage tier

Table 50–2 DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure and the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROPNAME_BUCKET	VARCHAR2(50)	'BUCKET'	Specifies the AWS bucket to be used as a storage tier by the Hierarchical Store. Restrictions on bucket name are: 1) Bucket names can only contain lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.) and dashes(-). Note that underscores (_) are invalid. 2) Bucket names must start with a number or letter. 3) Bucket names cannot be in an IP address style (192.168.5.4). 4) Bucket names must be between 3 and 63 characters long. 5) Bucket names should not end with a dash. 6) Dashes cannot appear next to periods. For example, my-.bucket.com is invalid.
PROPNAME_ CACHESIZE	VARCHAR2(50)	'CACHE_SIZE'	Specifies the cumulative cache size used for the Hierarchical Store. This property is set by the CREATESTORE Procedure and can be modified by the RECONFIGCACHE Procedure. It cannot be modified by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure, though its value can be queried by the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function.

Table 50–2 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure and the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROPNAME_ COMPRESSLEVEL	VARCHAR2(50)	'COMPRESSION_ LEVEL'	Use to enable compression of files stored in the DBFS hierarchical store. It specifies the compression level to be used for compressing the files
PROPNAME_ ENABLECLEANUPOND ELETE	VARCHAR2(50)	'ENABLE_ CLEANUP_ON_ DELETE'	If this property is set to 'TRUE', whenever the user invokes the DELETEFILE Procedure in the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface on a file residing in the DBMS_DBFS_ HS store, the DBMS_DBFS_HS removes the file on the external storage that contains this user file, provided that the file has no other useful data.By default, the property is set to 'TRUE' for STORETYPE_AMAZONS3 and 'FALSE' for STORETYPE_TAPE.
PROPNAME_ HTTPPROXY	VARCHAR2(50)	'HTTP_PROXY'	Specifies the DNS name of the HTTP proxy, if any, that is needed to access the Amazon S3 storage service
PROPNAME_ LICENSEID	VARCHAR2(50)	'LICENSE_ID'	Specifies the license ID associated with the library libosbws11.so.
PROPNAME_ LOBCACHE_QUOTA	VARCHAR2(50)	'LOBCACHE_ QUOTA'	Specifies fraction of the cache_size which is allocated for level 1 cache. The default value of this parameter is NULL which means that 0.8 (= 80%) of the cache_size is used for level 1 cache. This property cannot be modified by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedurethough its value can be queried by the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function. Its value is set by CREATESTORE Procedure and can be modified by the RECONFIGCACHE Procedure.
PROPNAME_ MEDIAPOOL	VARCHAR2(50)	'MEDIA_POOL'	Specifies the media pool number to use for storing the content
PROPVAL_COMPLVL_ NONE	VARCHAR2(50)	'NONE'	Indicates no compression
PROPVAL_COMPLVL_ LOW	VARCHAR2(50)	'LOW'	Use to set the compression level to LOW. This is expected to have the best performance while still providing a good compression ratio.
PROPVAL_COMPLVL_ MEDIUM	VARCHAR2(50)	'MEDIUM'	Use to set the compression level to MEDIUM. This compression level is expected to provide better compression ratio than LOW but the time required for compression will be higher than compression level LOW.

Table 50–2 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure and the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROPVAL_COMPLVL_HIGH	VARCHAR2(50)	'HIGH'	Use to set the compression level to HIGH. This compression level is expected to provide the best compression ratio but compression time will in general be highest among the 3 compression levels.
PROPNAME_OPTTARBALLSIZE	VARCHAR2(50)	'OPTIMAL_TARBALL_SIZE'	Specifies optimal_tarball_size as the maximum possible size of an archive file. Multiple content files are bundled together into one archive file and then the archive file is transferred to tape or Amazon S3. This is because creating one file on tape or Amazon S3 for every content file in the store is a prohibitively expensive operation. This property cannot be modified by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedurethough its value can be queried by the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function. Its value is set by CREATESTORE Procedure and can be modified by the RECONFIGCACHE Procedure.
PROPNAME_READCHUNKSIZE	VARCHAR2(50)	'READ_CHUNK_SIZE'	Specifies the size used by the SBT protocol to transfer data from tape or S3.This chunk is allocated in memory per transaction for retrieval of content files from an archive store, so the value of this property should be conservative. The default size of 1MB is typically good for most users.
PROPNAME_S3HOST	VARCHAR2(50)	'S3_HOST'	Specifies the HOST name of the Amazon S3 storage service. It must be s3.amazonaws.com.
PROPNAME_SBT_LIBRARY	VARCHAR2(50)	'SBT_LIBRARY'	Specifies the path of the shared library used by RMAN to communicate with Amazon S3. It is named libosbws11.so and is available in rdbms/lib directory.
PROPNAME_STREAMABLE	VARCHAR2(50)	'STREAMABLE'	Indicates whether buffer-based PUT or GET should be done on this store. Valid values for are TRUE and FALSE. The default value of this property is TRUE.

Table 50–2 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure and the GETSTOREPROPERTY Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROPNAME_WALLET	VARCHAR2(50)	'WALLET'	The value of this property should be of the form: LOCATION=file:*filename* CREDENTIAL_ALIAS=*access/secret_alias* PROXY_AUTH_ALIAS=*proxyusername/password alias* Defines the Oracle Wallet which contains the credentials of the Amazon S3 account associated with the store under consideration. LOCATION: The directory path that contains the Oracle wallet. The format is file:*directory-path* The format of wallet_path in Windows is, for example: file:c:\WINNT\Profiles*username*\WALLETS In UNIX or Linux it is, for example: file:/home/*username*/wallets When the package is executed in the Oracle database server, the wallet is accessed from the database server. PASSWORD: Defines the wallet password. If auto-login is enabled in wallet (this can be changed using the OWM utility), this parameter does not have to be specified. By default, the mkstore utility enables auto-login. CREDENTIAL_ALIAS: Defines the credential alias for ACCESS_KEY and SECRET_KEY
PROPNAME_WRITECHUNKSIZ	VARCHAR2(50)	'WRITE_CHUNK_SIZE'	Specifies the size used by the SBT protocol to transfer data to tape or S3. This chunk is allocated in memory per transaction for PUT of Content Files to an archive store so the value should be conservative. The default size of 1MB is typically good for most users.

Table 50–3 DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
BEFORE_PUT	NUMBER	'1'	Specified operation must be performed before writing a SECUREFILE to the remote store

Table 50–3 (Cont.) DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Used by the REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
BEFORE_GET	NUMBER	'2'	Specified operation must be performed before a retrieval operation such as reading a SECUREFILE from the remote device

Table 50–4 DBMS_DBFS_HS Constants - Failure/Success/Error

Constant	Type	Value	Description
FAIL	NUMBER	'0'	Procedure or function did not execute successfully
SUCCESS	NUMBER	'1'	Procedure or function completed successfully
ERROR	NUMBER	'2'	Procedure or function returned an error

Operational Notes

When the DBMS_DBFS_HS package is executed in the Oracle database server, the wallet is accessed from the database server.

Summary of DBMS_DBFS_HS Subprograms

Table 50–5 DBMS_DBFS_HS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES Procedure on page 50-12	Removes files created on the external storage device that hold no currently used data
CREATEBUCKET Procedure on page 50-13	Creates an AWS bucket, associated with a store of type `STORETYPE_AMAZONS3` into which the Hierarchical Store can then move data
CREATESTORE Procedure on page 50-14	Creates a new hierarchical store
DEREGSTORECOMMAND Function on page 50-16	Removes a command that had been previously associated with a store through the RECONFIGCACHE Procedure
DROPSTORE Procedure on page 50-16	Deletes a previously created hierarchical store
FLUSHCACHE Procedure on page 50-18	Flushes (writes out) dirty contents from the level-1 cache.
GETSTOREPROPERTY Function on page 50-19	Retrieves the values of a property of a store
RECONFIGCACHE Procedure on page 50-20	Reconfigures the parameters of the database cache used by the store
REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Procedure on page 50-21	Registers commands for a store with the Hierarchical Store to be sent to the Media Manager for the external storage device associated with the store
SENDCOMMAND Procedures on page 50-22	Sends a command to be executed on the external storage device's Media Manager
SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure on page 50-23	Stores properties of a store in the database
STOREPUSH Procedure on page 50-26	Pushes locally staged data to the remote storage

CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES Procedure

This procedure removes files created on the external storage device that hold no currently used data in them.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 50–6 CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Usage Notes

- The action of removing files from external storage device can not be rolled back.
- This method can be executed periodically to clear space on the external storage device. Asynchronously deleting content from the external storage device is useful because it has minimal impact on the OLTP performance. The periodic scheduling can be accomplished using the DBMS_SCHEDULER package.

CREATEBUCKET Procedure

This procedure creates an AWS bucket, associated with a store of type STORETYPE_AMAZONS3 into which the Hierarchical Store can then move data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.CREATEBUCKET  (
   store_name    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 50–7 CREATEBUCKET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

Usage Notes

- The PROPNAME_BUCKET property of the store should be set before this subprogram is called.
- Once this procedure has successfully created a bucket in Amazon S3, the bucket can only be deleted using out-of-band methods, such as logging-in to S3 and deleting data (directories, files, and other items) for the bucket.

CREATESTORE Procedure

This procedure creates a new hierarchical store `store_name` of type `STORE_TYPE` (`STORETYPE_TAPE` or `STORETYPE_AMAZONS3`) in schema `schema_name` (defaulting to current schema) under the ownership of the invoking session user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.CREATESTORE  (
   store_name              IN     VARCHAR2,
   store_type              IN     VARCHAR2,
   tbl_name                IN     VARCHAR2,
   tbs_name                IN     VARCHAR2,
   cache_size              IN     NUMBER,
   lob_cache_quota         IN     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   optimal_tarball_size    IN     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_name             IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 50–8 CREATESTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`store_type`	`STORETYPE_TAPE` or `STORETYPE_AMAZONS3`
`tbl_name`	Table for store entries
`tbs_name`	Tablespace for the store
`cache_size`	Amount of space used by the store to cache content in given tablespace
`lob_cache_quota`	Fraction of the cache_size which is allocated for level 1 cache. The default value of this parameter is `NULL` which means that 0.8 (= 80%) of the `cache_size` is used for level 1 cache.
`optimal_tarball_size`	Maximum possible size of the archive file. Multiple content files are bundled together into one archive file, and then the archive file is transferred to tape or Amazon S3. This is because creating one file on tape or Amazon S3 for every content file in the store is a prohibitively expensive operation. The value of is set by default to 10GB for tape and to 100MB for Amazon S3.
`schema_name`	Schema for the store

Usage Notes

`CREATESTORE()` sets certain properties of the store to default values. The user can use the methods `SETSTOREPROPERTY()` and `RECONFIGCACHE()` to appropriately change the property values and to set other properties of the store.

- Store names must be unique for an owner. The same store names can be used for different stores owned by different owners.
- Once a table space has been specified to store the store's content in a database, it cannot be changed later.

- This subprogram will execute like a DDL statement, performing an automatic `COMMIT` before and after execution.
- Stores using `DBMS_DBFS_HS` must not use singleton mount. This means that the singleton parameter should be `FALSE` and the `store_mount` parameter should have a non-`NULL` value in a call to the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.MOUNTSTORE` procedure.

DEREGSTORECOMMAND Function

This procedure removes a command that had been previously associated with a store through the REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.DEREGSTORECOMMAND (
   store_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   message         IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 50–9 DEREGSTORECOMMAND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
message	Message to be deregistered

Usage Notes

If this subprogram successfully executes, its actions cannot be rolled back by the user. If the user wants to restore the previous state, the user must call the REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Procedure.

DROPSTORE Procedure

This procedure deletes a previously created hierarchical store specified by name and owned by the invoking session user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.DROPSTORE  (
   store_name   IN     VARCHAR2,
   opt_flags    IN     INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 50–10 DROPSTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store owned by the invoking session user
opt_flags	User can specify optional flags. If DISABLE_CLEANUPBACKUPFILES is specified as one of the optional flags, the call to the CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES Procedure is not issued. By default, when this flag is not set, the procedure implicitly cleans-up all unused backup files.

Usage Notes

- The procedure executes like a DDL in that it auto-commits before and after its execution.
- If CLEANUPBACKUPFILES is disabled during the procedure, the user must resort to out-of-band techniques to cleanup unused backup files. No further invocations of CLEANUPBACKFILES for a dropped store are possible through hierarchical store.
- This subprogram will un-register the store from DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package. All files in the given store are deleted from the store (Tape or Amazon S3 Web service). The database table holding the store's entries in the database, is also dropped by this subprogram.

FLUSHCACHE Procedure

This procedure flushes out dirty contents from level-1 cache, which can be locked, to level-2 cache, thereby freeing-up space in level 1 cache.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.FLUSHCACHE  (
   store_name    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 50–11 FLUSHCACHE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store

GETSTOREPROPERTY Function

This function retrieves the values of a property.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.GETSTOREPROPERTY  (
   store_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   property_name   IN     VARCHAR2,
   noexcp          IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE) RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 50–12 GETSTOREPROPERTY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
property_name	Name of property
noexcp	If set to FALSE, raises an exception if the property does not exist in the database. If noexcp is set to TRUE, returns NULL if the property does not exist.

Return Values

The values of a property.

Usage Notes

The specified store must already have been created.

RECONFIGCACHE Procedure

This procedure reconfigures the parameters of the database cache being used by the store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.RECONFIGCACHE (
   store_name              IN    VARCHAR2,
   cache_size              IN    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   lobcache_quota          IN    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   optimal_tarball_size    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 50–13 RECONFIGCACHE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`cache_size`	Cumulative cache size used for the Hierarchical Store
`lobcache_quota`	Fraction of the cache size that are assigned to level 1 cache
`optimal_tarball_size`	Maximum possible size of an archive file. Since creating one file for every content file in the store is a prohibitively expensive operation, multiple content files are bundled together into one archive file for transfer to tape or Amazon S3.

Usage Notes

- The specified store must already have been created before reconfiguration.
- The Hierarchical Store uses a level 1 cache and a level 2 cache. The level 1 cache subsumes most of the working set and the level 2 cache is used to perform bulk writes to the backend device.
- If any of the last 3 parameters is `NULL`, its value specified during store creation is used. If the parameter was `NULL` when the call to the CREATESTORE Procedure was issued, the `DBMS_DBFS_HS` package assigns a default value.

  The `DBMS_DBFS_HS` package optimistically tries to allocate more than 1 tarball's worth of size for level 2 cache to facilitate concurrency, though a minimum of 1 tarball size is necessary for level 2 cache.

  The values for cumulative cache size and LOB cache quota decide allocation of space for the two caches. If values are not provided, a user might see an `INSUFFICIENT_CACHE` exception. In that case, it is better to revise the cache parameters in order to have a working store.
- If this subprogram successfully executes, its actions cannot be rolled back by the user. In that case, the user should call `RECONFIGCACHE` again with new or modified parameters.

REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Procedure

This procedure registers commands for a store with the Hierarchical Store. These commands are sent to the Media Manager for the external storage device associated with the store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.REGISTERSTORECOMMAND (
   store_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   message         IN     VARCHAR2,
   flags           IN     NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 50–14 REGISTERSTORECOMMAND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
message	Message to be sent to the Media Manager of the external store
flags	Valid values: ■ BEFORE_PUT CONSTANT NUMBER := 1; ■ BEFORE_GET CONSTANT NUMBER := 2;

Usage Notes

- These commands are sent before the next read or write of content. When the Hierarchical Store wants to push (or get) data to (or from) the storage device, it begins a session (to communicate with the device). After beginning the session, it sends all registered commands for the to the relevant device before writing (or getting) any data.
- If this method successfully executes, its actions cannot be rolled back by the user. To restore the previous state the user must call the DEREGSTORECOMMAND Function.

SENDCOMMAND Procedures

This procedure sends a command to be executed on the external storage device's Media Manager.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.SENDCOMMAND (
   store_name    IN       VARCHAR2,
   message       IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 50–15 SENDCOMMAND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store
`message`	Message string to be executed

SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure

This procedure stores properties of a store in the database as name-value pairs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.SETSTOREPROPERTY  (
   store_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   property_name   IN     VARCHAR2,
   property_value  IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 50–16 SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
property_name	For a store using Tape device, there are three properties whose values must be set by the user, and four properties that have default values. Stores of type STORETYPE_AMAZONS3 have properties with default values. The various options for both types of stores are detailed under property_value.
property_value	**Stores using a Tape Device** The values for the following properties must be set by the user: ■ PROPNAME_SBTLIBRARY - This should point to the shared library used by RMAN to communicate with the external tape device. It is usually named libobk.so. ■ PROPNAME_MEDIAPOOL - Media pool number for storing content ■ PROPNAME_CACHE_SIZE - Amount of space, in bytes, used for the cache of this store The following properties, which have default values assigned to them when a store is created, benefit from tuning: ■ PROPNAME_READCHUNKSIZE and PROPNAME_WRITECHUNKSIZE - These are the sizes used by the SBT protocol to transfer data to and from the tapes. These chunks are allocated in memory per transaction, so the values should be conservative. The default size is 1MB. ■ PROPNAME_STREAMABLE – Indicates whether DBFS_LINKs can perform read operations (for example SELECT or DBMS_LOB.READ) directly from the store, or if the data must be copied back into the database before it can be read ■ PROPNAME_ENABLECLEANUPONDELETE - Indicates if DBMS_DBFS_HS should delete unused files on the external storage. Valid values for this property are 'FALSE' for STORETYPE_TAPE. ■ PROPNAME_COMPRESSLEVEL - Describes how files written to Tape should be compressed. It can be set to PROPVAL_COMPLVL_NONE, PROPVAL_COMPLVL_LOW, PROPVAL_COMPLVL_MEDIUM or PROPVAL_COMPLVL_HIGH. By default it is set to PROPVAL_COMPLVL_NONE.

Table 50–16 (Cont.) SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
(cont) property_value	**Stores of type STORETYPE_AMAZONS3** It is mandatory that the following properties have assigned values, and default values are provided: ■ PROPNAME_SBTLIBRARY - Specifies the path of the shared library used by RMAN to communicate with Amazon S3. It is named libosbws11.so and is available in rdbms/lib directory. ■ PROPNAME_S3HOST - Defines the HOST name of the Amazon S3 storage service. It must be s3.amazonaws.com. ■ PROPNAME_BUCKET - Defines the AWS bucket used as a storage tier by the Hierarchical Store. Restrictions on bucket names are: -- Bucket names can only contain lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.) and dashes (-). Use of an underscore (_) is invalid. -- Bucket names must start with a number or letter -- Bucket names cannot be in an IP address style ("192.168.5.4") -- Bucket names must be between 3 and 63 characters in length -- Bucket names should not end with a dash -- Dashes cannot appear next to periods. For example, "my-.bucket.com" is invalid. ■ PROPNAME_LICENSEID - Specifies the license ID associated with the library libosbws11.so. ■ PROPNAME_WALLET - Has the form: 'LOCATION=file:<filename> CREDENTIAL_ALIAS=<access/secret_alias> PROXY_AUTH_ALIAS=<proxyusername/password alias>' -- LOCATION - Directory path that contains the Oracle wallet. The format is file:*directory-path*. See Examples for variations in format. -- PASSWORD - Defines the wallet password. If auto-login is enabled in the wallet (this can be changed using the user's own utility), and does not have to be specified. By default, the mkstore utility enables auto-login. -- CREDENTIAL_ALIAS - Defines the credential alias for ACCESS_KEY and SECRET_KEY -- PROXY_AUTH_ALIAS - Defines authentication credentials for the proxy server, if applicable.

Table 50–16 (Cont.) SETSTOREPROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
(property_value (contd.)	The following properties are optional: ■ PROPNAME_HTTPPROXY - Defines the DNS name of the HTTP proxy, if any, that is needed to access the Amazon S3 storage service. ■ PROPNAME_STREAMABLE – Indicates whether buffer-based PUT or GET operation should be done on this store. Valid values for this property are TRUE (default) and FALSE. ■ PROPNAME_ENABLECLEANUPONDELETE - Indicates if DBMS_DBFS_HS should delete unused files on the external storage device. Default values for this property are FALSE for STORETYPE_TAPE and TRUE for STORETYPE_AMAZONS3. ■ PROPNAME_COMPRESSLEVEL - Describes how files written to tape should be compressed. It can be set to PROPVAL_COMPLVL_NONE, PROPVAL_COMPLVL_LOW, PROPVAL_COMPLVL_MEDIUM or PROPVAL_COMPLVL_HIGH. By default it is set to PROPVAL_COMPLVL_NONE.

Usage Notes

- The specified store must already have been created.
- If this subprogram successfully executes, its actions cannot be rolled back by the user.
- The same property can be set multiple times to the same or different values using this subprogram
- Regarding PROPNAME_ENABLECLEANUPONDELETE behavior, a job is created for each store by the DBMS_DBFS_HS to remove the unused files from the external storage. By default, the job is enabled for STORETYPE_AMAZONS3 and is disabled for STORETYPE_TAPE. If the ENABLECLEANUPONDELETE property is set to TRUE, the job is enabled; if the property is set to FALSE, the job is disabled. If enabled, the job runs at an interval of one hour by default. The DBMS_SCHEDULER package can be used to modify the schedule. The name of the job can be obtained by querying USER_DBFS_HS_FIXED_PROPERTIES for prop_name = 'DELJOB_NAME'.

Examples

Format

The format of wallet_path in Windows is, for example:

```
file:c:\WINNT\Profiles\<username>\WALLETS
```

The format of wallet_path in UNIX or Linux is, for example:

```
file:/home/username/wallets
```

STOREPUSH Procedure

This procedure pushes locally staged data to the remote storage.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.STOREPUSH (
   store_name   IN        VARCHAR2,
   path         IN        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 50–17 STOREPUSH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store whose content the client writes from local cache to the external store
path	A non-mount qualified (without mount point) path within the store. By default, its value is NULL which corresponds to the root path of the store.

Usage Notes

- The Hierarchical Store caches the content files locally in database tables. When enough content is amassed in the cache to make it efficient to write to the external storage device (or the cache is completely filled), the Hierarchical Store creates a tarball out of the local content and writes these tarballs as files on the external device. The size of the tarball created by the Hierarchical Store is controlled by the store property PROPNAME_OPTTARBALLSIZE.
- When the amount of free space in the cache is such that the caching of a content file will push the space used above cache_size, the Hierarchical Store will internally call STOREPUSH. The STOREPUSH Procedure creates tarball(s) out of the existing dirty or modified content files in the cache and writes them out to the external device. A STOREPUSH call is not guaranteed to write all the dirty content from local cache to the external storage, since some files may be locked by other sessions.
- STOREPUSH has a built-in ability feature allowing it to automatically resume operation. If a STOREPUSH call is interrupted (say by a network outage) after it has transferred some tarballs to the external device, it can be restarted after the outage and will then resume transferring data from the point it was interrupted. In other words, work done before the outage is not lost. STOREPUSH can safely be restarted and the effect is such as if the outage never occurred.
- If this method successfully executes, its actions cannot be rolled back by the user.
- By default, when path is NULL, all files in the store are candidates for STOREPUSH. If path has a valid input value, all files which are under the namespace of given path are written from the local cache to the external store. If a given path is an existing file, it is pushed out again to the remote store.

51

DBMS_DBFS_SFS

The DBMS_DBFS_SFS package provides an interface to operate a SecureFile-based store (SFS) for the content interface described in the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DBFS_SFS

Overview

The DBMS_DBFS_SFS package is a sample implementation of a package that implements and extends the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI interface. It provides a POSIX-compliant file system stored in the RDBMS.

Security Model

The DBMS_DBFS_SFS package runs with AUTHID CURRENT_USER.

Constants

The DBMS_DBFS_SFS package uses the constants shown in following tables:

- DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Compression Levels
- DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the encryption Parameter
- DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the npartitions Parameter
- DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the partition_key Parameter

Table 51–1 DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Compression Levels

Constant	Type	Value	Description
COMPRESSION_DEFAULT	VARCHAR2(32)	''	Use the default SecureFile compression level
COMPRESSION_LOW	VARCHAR2(32)	'LOW'	Use compression level 'LOW'
COMPRESSION_MEDIUM	VARCHAR2(32)	'MEDIUM'	Use compression level 'MEDIUM'
COMPRESSION_HIGH	VARCHAR2(32)	'HIGH'	Use compression level 'HIGH'

Table 51–2 DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the encryption Parameter

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ENCRYPTION_DEFAULT	VARCHAR2(32)	''	Use the default SecureFile encryption algorithm
ENCRYPTION_3DES168	VARCHAR2(32)	'3DES168'	Use encryption 3DES 168 bit
ENCRYPTION_AES128	VARCHAR2(32)	'AES128'	Use encryption AES 128 bit
ENCRYPTION_AES192	VARCHAR2(32)	'AES192'	Use encryption AES 192 bit
ENCRYPTION_AES256	VARCHAR2(32)	'AES256'	Use encryption AES 256 bit

Table 51–3 DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the npartitions Parameter

Constant	Type	Value	Description
DEFAULT_PARTITIONS	INTEGER	16	Default to 16 partitions

Table 51–4 DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the partition_key Parameter

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PARTITION_BY_ITEM	INTEGER	1	Use a hash of the item name for the partition key
PARTITION_BY_PATH	INTEGER	2	Use a hash of the path name for the partition key
PARTITION_BY_GUID	INTEGER	3	Use a hash of the GUID as the partition key

Summary of DBMS_DBFS_SFS Subprograms

Table 51–5 DBMS_DBFS_SFS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATEFILESYSTEM Procedure on page 51-7	Creates a file system store
CREATESTORE Procedure on page 51-9	Creates a new DBFS SFS store
DROPFILESYSTEM Procedures on page 51-10	Drops the DBFS SFS store
INITFS Procedure on page 51-11	Initializes a POSIX file system store

CREATEFILESYSTEM Procedure

This procedure creates a file system store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_SFS.CREATEFILESYSTEM (
   store_name          IN     VARCHAR2,
   schema_name         IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   tbl_name            IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   tbl_tbs             IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   lob_tbs             IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   use_bf              IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   properties          IN     DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T DEFAULT NULL,
   create_only         IN     BOOLEAN     FALSE,
   use_objects         IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   with_grants         IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   do_dedup            IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   do_compress         IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE
   compression         IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT COMPRESSION_DEFAULT,
   do_encrypt          IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   encryption          IN     VARCHAR2    DEFAULT ENCRYPTION_DEFAULT,
   do_partition        IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   npartitions         IN     NUMBER      DEFAULTDEFAULT_PARTITIONS,
   partition_key       IN     NUMBER      DEFAULT PARTITION_BY_ITEM,
   partition_guidi     IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   partition_pathi     IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   partition_prop      IN     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 51–6 CREATEFILESYSTEM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
schema_name	Schema for the store, defaulting to the current schema
tbl_name	Table for store entries. If not specified, an internally generated name is used.
tbl_tb	Tablespace for the store, defaulting to the schema's default tablespace
lob_tbs	Tablespace in which to create the LOB segment. It defaults to the user's default tablespace.
use_bf	If TRUE, a BasicFile LOB is used; otherwise a SecureFile LOB is used.
properties	Table of (name, value, typecode) tuples used to configure the store properties. Currently no such properties are defined or used.
create_only	If TRUE, the file system is created, but not registered with the current user
use_objects	If TRUE, a single base-table with an object-type column (using a nested table) is created to backup the new file system. Otherwise, a pair of (parent, child) tables is used to backup the file system. In both cases, the object type nested table or the child table is used only for user-defined properties.

Table 51–6 (Cont.) CREATEFILESYSTEM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
with_grants	If TRUE, DML and query access permissions are granted to the DBFS_ROLE as part of creating the file system. Otherwise, explicit grants (or existing permissions) are required to access the file system.
do_dedup	If TRUE, do deduplication the underlying SecureFile column
do_compress	If TRUE, do compression the underlying SecureFile column
compression	Compression algorithm to use (see DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Compression Levels)
do_encrypt	If TRUE, encrypt the underlying SecureFile column
encryption	encryption algorithm to use (see DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the encryption Parameter)
do_partition	If TRUE, partition the table used for storage
npartitions	Number of partitions to create for the table (see DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the npartitions Parameter).
partition_key	How to partition the table: by item name, by path name, or by GUID (see DBMS_DBFS_SFS Constants - Used by the partition_key Parameter).
partition_guidi	If TRUE, build an index on GUID
partition_pathi	If TRUE, build an index on path name
partition_prop	If TRUE, partition the properties table

Usage Notes

The procedure executes like a DDL in that it auto-commits before and after its execution.

CREATESTORE Procedure

This procedure creates a new DBFS SFS store owned by the invoking session user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_SFS.CREATESTORE  (
   store_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   tbl_name       IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   tbs_name       in     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   use_bf         in     BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   stgopts        in     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '');
```

Parameters

Table 51–7 CREATESTORE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
store_name	Name of store
store_type	STORETYPE_TAPE or STORETYPE_AMAZONS3
tbl_name	Placeholder for the store content cached in database
tbs_name	Named tablespace
use_bf	If TRUE, a BasicFile LOB is used; otherwise a SecureFile LOB is used.
stgopts	Currently non-operational, reserved for future use

DROPFILESYSTEM Procedures

This procedure drops the DBFS SFS store, purging all dictionary information associated with the store, and dropping the underlying file system table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_SFS.DROPFILESYSTEM  (
   schema_name    IN      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   tbl_name       IN      INTEGER);

DBMS_DBFS_SFS.DROPFILESYSTEM  (
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 51–8 DROPFILESYSTEM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Name of schema
tbl_name	Name of tablespace
store_name	Name of store path

Usage Notes

- If the specified store table is registered by the current user, it will be unregistered from the content interface described in the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT package and the POSIX metadata tables.
- Subsequent to unregistration, an attempt will be made to store table(s). This operation may fail if other users are currently using this store table.
- The user attempting a drop of the tables underlying the store must actually have the privileges to complete the drop operation (either as the owner of the tables, or as a sufficiently privileged user for cross-schema operations).
- The procedure executes like a DDL in that it auto-commits before and after its execution.

INITFS Procedure

This procedure initialize a POSIX file system store. The table associated with the POSIX file system store `store_name` is truncated and reinitialized with a single "root" directory entry.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DBFS_SFS.INITFS (
   store_name     IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 51–9 INITFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`store_name`	Name of store

Usage Notes

The procedure executes like a DDL in that it auto-commits before and after its execution.

52

DBMS_DB_VERSION

The DBMS_DB_VERSION package specifies the Oracle version numbers and other information useful for simple conditional compilation selections based on Oracle versions.

> **See Also:** *PL/SQL Users Guide and Reference* regarding conditional compilation

This package contains the following topics

- Using DBMS_DB_VERSION
  - Overview
  - Constants
  - Examples

Using DBMS_DB_VERSION

Overview

The DBMS_DB_VERSION package specifies the Oracle version numbers and other information useful for simple conditional compilation selections based on Oracle versions.

The package for the Oracle Database 11g Release 1 version is shown below.

```
PACKAGE DBMS_DB_VERSION IS
   VERSION CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 11; -- RDBMS version number
   RELEASE CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 1;  -- RDBMS release number
   ver_le_9_1    CONSTANT BOOLEAN := FALSE;
   ver_le_9_2    CONSTANT BOOLEAN := FALSE;
   ver_le_9      CONSTANT BOOLEAN := FALSE;
   ver_le_10_1   CONSTANT BOOLEAN := FALSE;
   ver_le_10_2   CONSTANT BOOLEAN := FALSE;
   ver_le_10     CONSTANT BOOLEAN := FALSE;
   ver_le_11_1   CONSTANT BOOLEAN := TRUE;
   ver_le_11     CONSTANT BOOLEAN := TRUE;
END DBMS_DB_VERSION;
```

The boolean constants follow a naming convention. Each constant gives a name for a boolean expression. For example:

- VER_LE_9_1 represents version <= 9 and release <= 1
- VER_LE_10_2 represents version <= 10 and release <= 2
- VER_LE_10 represents version <= 10

A typical usage of these boolean constants is:

```
$IF DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_10 $THEN
   version 10 and earlier code
$ELSIF DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_11 $THEN
   version 11 code
$ELSE
   version 12 and later code
$END
```

This code structure will protect any reference to the code for hypothetical version 12. It also prevents the controlling package constant DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_11 from being referenced when the program is compiled under version 10. A similar observation applies to version 11. This scheme works even though the static constant VER_LE_11 is not defined in version 10 database because conditional compilation protects the $ELSIF from evaluation if DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_10 is TRUE.

Constants

The DBMS_DB_VERSION package contains different constants for different Oracle Database releases. The Oracle Database 11g Release 1 version of the DBMS_DB_VERSION package uses the constants shown in Table 52–1.

Table 52–1 DBMS_DB_VERSION Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
VERSION	PLS_INTEGER	10	Current version
RELEASE	PLS_INTEGER	2	Current release
VER_LE_9	BOOLEAN	FALSE	Version <= 9
VER_LE_9_1	BOOLEAN	FALSE	Version <= 9 and release <= 1
VER_LE_9_2	BOOLEAN	FALSE	Version <= 9 and release <= 2
VER_LE_10	BOOLEAN	TRUE	Version <= 10
VER_LE_10_1	BOOLEAN	FALSE	Version <= 10 and release <= 1
VER_LE_10_2	BOOLEAN	TRUE	Version <=10 and release <= 2
VER_LE_11	BOOLEAN	FALSE	Version <= 11
VER_LE_11_1	BOOLEAN	TRUE	Version <=11 and release <= 1

Examples

This example uses conditional compilation to guard new features.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE whetstone IS

 -- Notice that conditional compilation constructs
 -- can interrupt a regular PL/SQL statement.
 -- You can locate a conditional compilation directive anywhere
 -- there is whitespace in the regular statement.

 SUBTYPE my_real IS
    $IF DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_9 $THEN NUMBER
                                 $ELSE BINARY_DOUBLE
    $END;

 t  CONSTANT my_real := $IF DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_9 $THEN 0.499975
                                                     $ELSE 0.499975d
                        $END;

 t2 CONSTANT my_real := $if DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_9 $THEN 2.0
                                                     $ELSE 2.0d
                        $END;

 x  CONSTANT my_real := $IF DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_9 $THEN 1.0
                                                     $ELSE 1.0d
                        $END;

 y  CONSTANT my_real := $IF DBMS_DB_VERSION.VER_LE_9 $THEN 1.0
                                                     $ELSE 1.0d
                        $END;

 z  MY_REAL;

 PROCEDURE P(x IN my_real, y IN my_real, z OUT NOCOPY my_real) IS
   x1 my_real;
   y1 my_real;
 BEGIN
   x1 := x;
   y1 := y;
   x1 := t * (x1 + y1);
   y1 := t * (x1 + y1);
   z := (x1 + y1)/t2;
 END P;
BEGIN
 P(x, y, z);
 DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('z = '|| z);
END whetstone;
/
```

53

DBMS_DEBUG

DBMS_DEBUG is a PL/SQL interface to the PL/SQL debugger layer, Probe, in the Oracle server.

This API is primarily intended to implement server-side debuggers and it provides a way to debug server-side PL/SQL program units.

> **Note:** The term *program unit* refers to a PL/SQL program of any type (procedure, function, package, package body, trigger, anonymous block, object type, or object type body).

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DEBUG

Overview

To debug server-side code, you must have two database sessions: one session to run the code in debug mode (the target session), and a second session to supervise the target session (the debug session).

The target session becomes available for debugging by making initializing calls with DBMS_DEBUG. This marks the session so that the PL/SQL interpreter runs in debug mode and generates debug events. As debug events are generated, they are posted from the session. In most cases, debug events require return notification: the interpreter pauses awaiting a reply.

Meanwhile, the debug session must also initialize itself using DBMS_DEBUG: This tells it which target session to supervise. The debug session may then call entry points in DBMS_DEBUG to read events that were posted from the target session and to communicate with the target session.

The following subprograms are run in the target session (the session that is to be debugged):

- SYNCHRONIZE Function
- DEBUG_ON Procedure
- DEBUG_OFF Procedure

DBMS_DEBUG does not provide an interface to the PL/SQL compiler, but it does depend on debug information optionally generated by the compiler. Without debug information, it is not possible to examine or modify the values of parameters or variables.

Constants

A breakpoint status may have the following value:

- `breakpoint_status_unused`—breakpoint is not in use

Otherwise, the status is a mask of the following values:

- `breakpoint_status_active`—a line breakpoint
- `breakpoint_status_disabled`—breakpoint is currently disabled
- `breakpoint_status_remote`—a shadow breakpoint (a local representation of a remote breakpoint)

Variables

The DBMS_DEBUG uses the variables shown in Table 53–1.

Table 53–1 DBMS_DEBUG Variables

Variable	Description
default_timeout	The timeout value (used by both sessions).The smallest possible timeout is 1 second. If this value is set to 0, then a large value (3600) is used.

Exceptions

These values are returned by the various functions called in the debug session (SYNCHRONIZE, CONTINUE, SET_BREAKPOINT, and so on). If PL/SQL exceptions worked across client/server and server/server boundaries, then these would all be exceptions rather than error codes.

Value	Description
success	Normal termination

Statuses returned by GET_VALUE and SET_VALUE:

Status	Description
error_bogus_frame	No such entrypoint on the stack
error_no_debug_info	Program was compiled without debug symbols
error_no_such_object	No such variable or parameter
error_unknown_type	Debug information is unreadable
error_indexed_table	Returned by GET_VALUE if the object is a table, but no index was provided
error_illegal_index	No such element exists in the collection
error_nullcollection	Table is atomically NULL
error_nullvalue	Value is NULL

Statuses returned by SET_VALUE:

Status	Description
error_illegal_value	Constraint violation
error_illegal_null	Constraint violation
error_value_malformed	Unable to decipher the given value
error_other	Some other error
error_name_incomplete	Name did not resolve to a scalar

Statuses returned by the breakpoint functions:

Status	Description
error_no_such_breakpt	No such breakpoint
error_idle_breakpt	Cannot enable or disable an unused breakpoint
error_bad_handle	Unable to set breakpoint in given program (nonexistent or security violation)

General error codes (returned by many of the DBMS_DEBUG subprograms):

Status	Description
error_unimplemented	Functionality is not yet implemented

Status	Description
error_deferred	No program running; operation deferred
error_exception	An exception was raised in the DBMS_DEBUG or Probe packages on the server
error_communication	Some error other than a timeout occurred
error_timeout	Timout occurred

Exception	Description
illegal_init	DEBUG_ON was called prior to INITIALIZE

The following exceptions are raised by procedure SELF_CHECK:

Exception	Description
pipe_creation_failure	Could not create a pipe
pipe_send_failure	Could not write data to the pipe
pipe_receive_failure	Could not read data from the pipe
pipe_datatype_mismatch	Datatype in the pipe was wrong
pipe_data_error	Data got garbled in the pipe

Operational Notes

There are two ways to ensure that debug information is generated: through a session switch, or through individual recompilation.

To set the session switch, enter the following statement:

```
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_DEBUG = true;
```

This instructs the compiler to generate debug information for the remainder of the session. It does not recompile any existing PL/SQL.

To generate debug information for existing PL/SQL code, use one of the following statements (the second recompiles a package or type body):

```
ALTER [PROCEDURE | FUNCTION | PACKAGE | TRIGGER | TYPE] <name> COMPILE DEBUG;
ALTER [PACKAGE | TYPE] <name> COMPILE DEBUG BODY;
```

Figure 53–1 and Figure 53–2 illustrate the flow of operations in the session to be debugged and in the debugging session.

Figure 53–1 Target Session

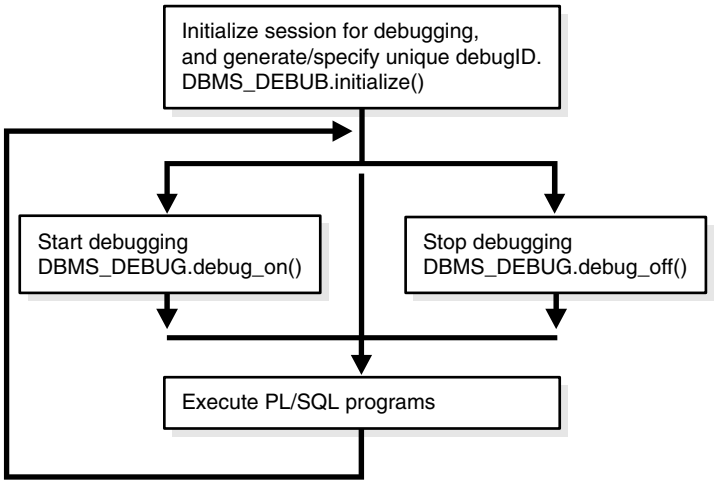


Figure 53–2 Debug Session

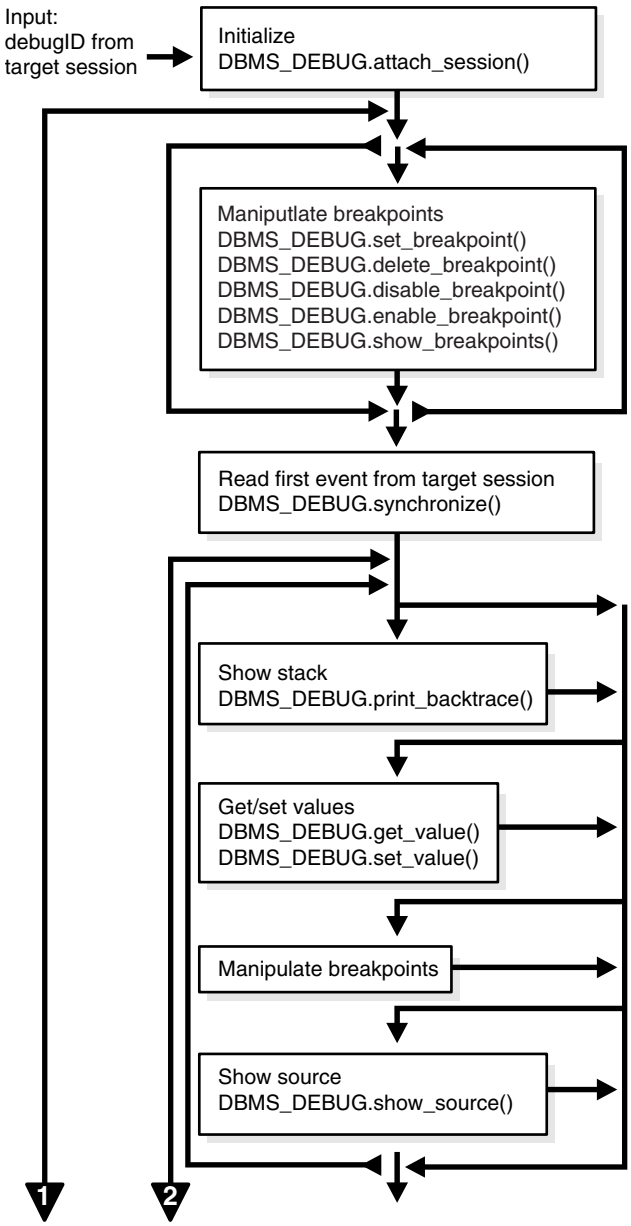
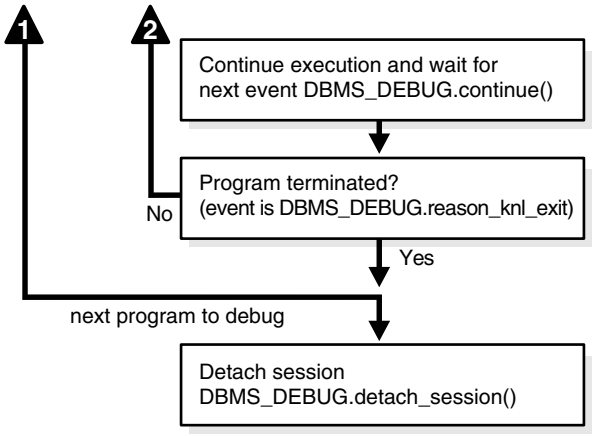


Figure 53–3 Debug Session (Cont.)



Control of the Interpreter

The interpreter pauses execution at the following times:

1. At startup of the interpreter so any deferred breakpoints may be installed prior to execution.
2. At any line containing an enabled breakpoint.
3. At any line where an *interesting* event occurs. The set of interesting events is specified by the flags passed to `DBMS_DEBUG.CONTINUE` in the `breakflags` parameter.

Session Termination

There is no event for session termination. Therefore, it is the responsibility of the debug session to check and make sure that the target session has not ended. A call to `DBMS_DEBUG.SYNCHRONIZE` after the target session has ended causes the debug session to hang until it times out.

Deferred Operations

The diagram suggests that it is possible to set breakpoints prior to having a target session. This is true. In this case, Probe caches the breakpoint request and transmits it to the target session at first synchronization. However, if a breakpoint request is deferred in this fashion, then:

- `SET_BREAKPOINT` does not set the breakpoint number (it can be obtained later from `SHOW_BREAKPOINTS` if necessary).
- `SET_BREAKPOINT` does not validate the breakpoint request. If the requested source line does not exist, then an error silently occurs at synchronization, and no breakpoint is set.

Diagnostic Output

To debug Probe, there are *diagnostics* parameters to some of the calls in `DBMS_DEBUG`. These parameters specify whether to place diagnostic output in the RDBMS tracefile. If output to the RDBMS tracefile is disabled, these parameters have no effect.

Common and Debug Session Sections

- Common Section

- Target Session
- Debug Session Section

Common Section

The following subprograms may be called in either the target or the debug session:

- PROBE_VERSION Procedure
- SELF_CHECK Procedure
- SET_TIMEOUT Function

Target Session

The following subprograms may be called only in the target session:

- INITIALIZE Function
- DEBUG_ON Procedure
- SET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Procedure
- GET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Function

Debug Session Section

The following subprograms should be run in the debug session only:

- ATTACH_SESSION Procedure
- SYNCHRONIZE Function
- SHOW_FRAME_SOURCE Procedure
- SHOW_SOURCE Procedures
- GET_MORE_SOURCE Procedure
- PRINT_BACKTRACE Procedure
- CONTINUE Function
- SET_BREAKPOINT Function
- DELETE_BREAKPOINT Function
- SET_OER_BREAKPOINT Function
- DELETE_OER_BREAKPOINT Function
- ENABLE_BREAKPOINT Function
- DISABLE_BREAKPOINT Function
- SHOW_BREAKPOINTS Procedures
- SET_VALUE Functionn
- GET_VALUE Function
- TARGET_PROGRAM_RUNNING Procedure
- DETACH_SESSION Procedure
- GET_RUNTIME_INFO Function
- PRINT_INSTANTIATIONS Procedure
- PING Procedure
- GET_LINE_MAP Function

- GET_RUNTIME_INFO Function
- GET_INDEXES Function
- EXECUTE Procedure

OER Breakpoints

Exceptions that are declared in PL/SQL programs are known as user-defined exceptions. In addition, there are Oracle Errors (OERs) that are returned from the Oracle kernel. To tie the two mechanisms together, PL/SQL provides the `exception_init` pragma that turns a user-defined exception into an OER, so that a PL/SQL handler may be used for it, and so that the PL/SQL engine can return OERs to the Oracle kernel. As of the current release, the only information available about an OER is its number. If two user-defined exceptions are exception_init'd to the same OER, they are indistinguishable.

Namespaces

Program units on the server reside in different namespaces. When setting a breakpoint, specify the desired namespace.

1. `Namespace_cursor` contains cursors (anonymous blocks).
2. `Namespace_pgkspec_or_toplevel` contains:
   - Package specifications.
   - Procedures and functions that are not nested inside other packages, procedures, or functions.
   - Object types.
3. `Namespace_pkg_body` contains package bodies and type bodies.
4. `Namespace_trigger` contains triggers.

Libunit Types

These values are used to disambiguate among objects in a given namespace. These constants are used in `PROGRAM_INFO` when Probe is giving a stack backtrace.

- `LibunitType_cursor`
- `LibunitType_procedure`
- `LibunitType_function`
- `LibunitType_package`
- `LibunitType_package_body`
- `LibunitType_trigger`
- `LibunitType_Unknown`

Breakflags

These are values to use for the `breakflags` parameter to `CONTINUE`, in order to tell Probe what events are of interest to the client. These flags may be combined.

Value	Description
`break_next_line`	Break at next source line (step over calls)

Value	Description
break_any_call	Break at next source line (step into calls)
break_any_return	Break after returning from current entrypoint (skip over any entrypoints called from the current routine)
break_return	Break the next time an entrypoint gets ready to return. (This includes entrypoints called from the current one. If interpreter is running Proc1, which calls Proc2, then break_return stops at the end of Proc2.)
break_exception	Break when an exception is raised
break_handler	Break when an exception handler is executed
abort_execution	Stop execution and force an 'exit' event as soon as DBMS_DEBUG.CONTINUE is called.

Information Flags

These are flags which may be passed as the info_requested parameter to SYNCHRONIZE, CONTINUE, and GET_RUNTIME_INFO.

Flag	Description
info_getStackDepth	Get the current depth of the stack
info_getBreakpoint	Get the breakpoint number
info_getLineinfo	Get program unit information

Reasons for Suspension

After CONTINUE is run, the program either runs to completion or breaks on some line.

Reason	Description
reason_none	-
reason_interpreter_starting	Interpreter is starting
reason_breakpoint	Hit a breakpoint
reason_enter	Procedure entry
reason_return	Procedure is about to return
reason_finish	Procedure is finished
reason_line	Reached a new line
reason_interrupt	An interrupt occurred
reason_exception	An exception was raised
reason_exit	Interpreter is exiting (old form)
reason_knl_exit	Kernel is exiting
reason_handler	Start exception-handler
reason_timeout	A timeout occurred
reason_instantiate	Instantiation block
reason_abort	Interpreter is aborting

Data Structures

The DBMS_DEBUG package defines RECORD types and TABLE types.

RECORD Types

- BREAKPOINT_INFO Record Type
- PROGRAM_INFO Record Type
- RUNTIME_INFO Record Type

TABLE Types

- BACKTRACE_TABLE Table Type
- BREAKPOINT_TABLE Table Type
- INDEX_TABLE Table Type
- VC2_TABLE Table Type

BREAKPOINT_INFO Record Type

This type gives information about a breakpoint, such as its current status and the program unit in which it was placed.

Syntax

```
TYPE breakpoint_info IS RECORD (
   name        VARCHAR2(30),
   owner       VARCHAR2(30),
   dblink      VARCHAR2(30),
   line#       BINARY_INTEGER,
   libunittype BINARY_INTEGER,
   status      BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 53–2 BREAKPOINT_INFO Fields

Field	Description
`name`	Name of the program unit
`owner`	Owner of the program unit
`dblink`	Database link, if remote
`line#`	Line number
`libunittype`	`NULL`, unless this is a nested procedure or function
`status`	See Constants on page 53-4 for values of `breakpoint_status_*`

PROGRAM_INFO Record Type

This type specifies a program location. It is a line number in a program unit. This is used for stack backtraces and for setting and examining breakpoints. The read-only fields are currently ignored by Probe for breakpoint operations. They are set by Probe only for stack backtraces.

Syntax

```
TYPE program_info IS RECORD(
    -- The following fields are used when setting a breakpoint
    namespace        BINARY_INTEGER,
    name             VARCHAR2(30),
    owner            VARCHAR2(30),
    dblink           VARCHAR2(30),
    line#            BINARY_INTEGER,
    -- Read-only fields (set by Probe when doing a stack backtrace)
    libunittype      BINARY_INTEGER,
    entrypointname   VARCHAR2(30));
```

Fields

Table 53–3 PROGRAM_INFO Fields

Field	Description
`namespace`	See Namespaces on page 53-12
`name`	Name of the program unit
`owner`	Owner of the program unit
`dblink`	Database link, if remote
`line#`	Line number
`libunittype`	`A read-only field, NULL`, unless this is a nested procedure or function
`entrypointname`	A read-only field, to disambiguate among objects that share the same namespace (for example, procedure and package specifications). See the Libunit Types on page 53-12 for more information.

RUNTIME_INFO Record Type

This type gives context information about the running program.

Syntax

```
TYPE runtime_info IS RECORD(
    line#            BINARY_INTEGER,
    terminated       binary_integer,
    breakpoint       binary_integer,
    stackdepth       BINARY_INTEGER,
    interpreterdepth BINARY_INTEGER,
    reason           BINARY_INTEGER,
    program          program_info);
```

Fields

Table 53–4 RUNTIME_INFO Fields

Field	Description
`line#`	Duplicate of `program.line#`
`terminated`	Whether the program has terminated
`breakpoint`	Breakpoint number
`stackdepth`	Number of frames on the stack
`interpreterdepth`	[A reserved field]
`reason`	Reason for suspension
`program`	Source location

BACKTRACE_TABLE Table Type

This type is used by `PRINT_BACKTRACE`.

Syntax

```
TYPE backtrace_table IS TABLE OF program_info INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

BREAKPOINT_TABLE Table Type

This type is used by SHOW_BREAKPOINTS.

Syntax

```
TYPE breakpoint_table IS TABLE OF breakpoint_info INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

INDEX_TABLE Table Type

This type is used by `GET_INDEXES` to return the available indexes for an indexed table.

Syntax

```
TYPE index_table IS table of BINARY_INTEGER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

VC2_TABLE Table Type

This type is used by SHOW_SOURCE.

Syntax

```
TYPE vc2_table IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(90) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_DEBUG Subprograms

Table 53–5 DBMS_DEBUG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ATTACH_SESSION Procedure on page 53-24	Notifies the debug session about the target debugID
CONTINUE Function on page 53-25	Continues execution of the target program
DEBUG_OFF Procedure on page 26	Turns debug-mode off
DEBUG_ON Procedure on page 53-27	Turns debug-mode on
DELETE_BREAKPOINT Function on page 53-28	Deletes a breakpoint
DELETE_OER_ BREAKPOINT Function on page 53-29	Deletes an OER breakpoint
DETACH_SESSION Procedure on page 53-30	Stops debugging the target program
DISABLE_BREAKPOINT Function on page 53-31	Disables a breakpoint
ENABLE_BREAKPOINT Function on page 53-32	Activates an existing breakpoint
EXECUTE Procedure on page 53-33	Executes SQL or PL/SQL in the target session
GET_INDEXES Function on page 53-35	Returns the set of indexes for an indexed table
GET_MORE_SOURCE Procedure on page 53-36	Provides additional source in the event of buffer overflow when using SHOW_SOURCE
GET_LINE_MAP Function on page 53-37	Returns information about line numbers in a program unit
GET_RUNTIME_INFO Function on page 53-38	Returns information about the current program
GET_TIMEOUT_ BEHAVIOUR Function on page 53-39	Returns the current timeout behavior
GET_VALUE Function on page 53-40	Gets a value from the currently-running program
INITIALIZE Function on page 53-42	Sets debugID in target session
PING Procedure on page 53-44	Pings the target session to prevent it from timing out
PRINT_BACKTRACE Procedure on page 53-45	Prints a stack backtrace
PRINT_INSTANTIATIONS Procedure on page 53-46	Prints a stack backtrace
PROBE_VERSION Procedure on page 53-47	Returns the version number of `DBMS_DEBUG` on the server

Table 53–5 (Cont.) DBMS_DEBUG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SELF_CHECK Procedure on page 53-48	Performs an internal consistency check
SET_BREAKPOINT Function on page 53-49	Sets a breakpoint in a program unit
SET_OER_BREAKPOINT Function on page 53-50	Sets an OER breakpoint
SET_TIMEOUT Function on page 53-51	Sets the timeout value
SET_TIMEOUT_ BEHAVIOUR Procedure on page 53-52	Tells Probe what to do with the target session when a timeout occurs
SET_VALUE Function on page 53-53	Sets a value in the currently-running program
SHOW_BREAKPOINTS Procedures on page 53-55	Returns a listing of the current breakpoints
SHOW_FRAME_SOURCE Procedure on page 53-56	Fetches the frame source
SHOW_SOURCE Procedures on page 53-57	Fetches program source
SYNCHRONIZE Function on page 53-59	Waits for program to start running
TARGET_PROGRAM_ RUNNING Procedure on page 53-60	Returns `TRUE` if the target session is currently executing a stored procedure, or `FALSE` if it is not

ATTACH_SESSION Procedure

This procedure notifies the debug session about the target program.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.ATTACH_SESSION (
   debug_session_id  IN VARCHAR2,
   diagnostics       IN BINARY_INTEGER := 0);
```

Parameters

Table 53–6 ATTACH_SESSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
debug_session_id	Debug ID from a call to INITIALIZE in target session
diagnostics	Generate diagnostic output if nonzero

CONTINUE Function

This function passes the given breakflags (a mask of the events that are of interest) to Probe in the target process. It tells Probe to continue execution of the target process, and it waits until the target process runs to completion or signals an event.

If `info_requested` is not `NULL`, then calls `GET_RUNTIME_INFO`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.CONTINUE (
   run_info       IN OUT runtime_info,
   breakflags     IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   info_requested IN     BINARY_INTEGER := NULL)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–7 CONTINUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`run_info`	Information about the state of the program
`breakflags`	Mask of events that are of interest (see "Breakflags" on page 53-12)
`info_requested`	Which information should be returned in `run_info` when the program stops (see "Information Flags" on page 53-13)

Return Values

Table 53–8 CONTINUE Function Return Values

Return	Description
`success`	
`error_timeout`	Timed out before the program started running
`error_communication`	Other communication error

DEBUG_OFF Procedure

Caution: There must be a debug session waiting if immediate is `TRUE`.

This procedure notifies the target session that debugging should no longer take place in that session. It is not necessary to call this function before ending the session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.DEBUG_OFF;
```

Usage Notes

The server does not handle this entrypoint specially. Therefore, it attempts to debug this entrypoint.

DEBUG_ON Procedure

This procedure marks the target session so that all PL/SQL is run in debug mode. This must be done before any debugging can take place.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.DEBUG_ON (
   no_client_side_plsql_engine BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   immediate                   BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 53–9 DEBUG_ON Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
no_client_side_plsql_engine	Should be left to its default value unless the debugging session is taking place from a client-side PL/SQL engine
immediate	If this is TRUE, then the interpreter immediately switches itself into debug-mode, instead of continuing in regular mode for the duration of the call.

DELETE_BREAKPOINT Function

This function deletes a breakpoint.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.DELETE_BREAKPOINT (
   breakpoint IN BINARY_INTEGER)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–10 DELETE_BREAKPOINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
breakpoint	Breakpoint number from a previous call to SET_BREAKPOINT

Return Values

Table 53–11 DELETE_BREAKPOINT Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	
error_no_such_breakpt	No such breakpoint exists
error_idle_breakpt	Cannot delete an unused breakpoint
error_stale_breakpt	The program unit was redefined since the breakpoint was set

DELETE_OER_BREAKPOINT Function

This function deletes an OER breakpoint.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.DELETE_OER_BREAKPOINT (
   oer  IN PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–12 DELETE_OER_BREAKPOINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
oer	The OER (positive 4-byte number) to delete

DETACH_SESSION Procedure

This procedure stops debugging the target program. This procedure may be called at any time, but it does not notify the target session that the debug session is detaching itself, and it does not terminate execution of the target session. Therefore, care should be taken to ensure that the target session does not hang itself.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.DETACH_SESSION;
```

DISABLE_BREAKPOINT Function

This function makes an existing breakpoint inactive but leaves it in place.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.DISABLE_BREAKPOINT (
   breakpoint IN BINARY_INTEGER)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–13 DISABLE_BREAKPOINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
breakpoint	Breakpoint number from a previous call to SET_BREAKPOINT

Return Values

Table 53–14 DISABLE_BREAKPOINT Function Return Values

Returns	Description
success	
error_no_such_breakpt	No such breakpoint exists
error_idle_breakpt	Cannot disable an unused breakpoint

ENABLE_BREAKPOINT Function

This function is the reverse of disabling. This enables a previously disabled breakpoint.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.ENABLE_BREAKPOINT (
   breakpoint IN BINARY_INTEGER)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–15 ENABLE_BREAKPOINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
breakpoint	Breakpoint number from a previous call to SET_BREAKPOINT

Return Values

Table 53–16 ENABLE_BREAKPOINT Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	Success
error_no_such_breakpt	No such breakpoint exists
error_idle_breakpt	Cannot enable an unused breakpoint

EXECUTE Procedure

This procedure executes SQL or PL/SQL code in the target session. The target session is assumed to be waiting at a breakpoint (or other event). The call to DBMS_DEBUG.EXECUTE occurs in the debug session, which then asks the target session to execute the code.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.EXECUTE (
   what         IN VARCHAR2,
   frame#       IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   bind_results IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   results      IN OUT NOCOPY dbms_debug_vc2coll,
   errm         IN OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 53–17 EXECUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
what	SQL or PL/SQL source to execute
frame#	The context in which to execute the code. Only -1 (global context) is supported at this time.
bind_results	Whether the source wants to bind to results in order to return values from the target session: 0 = No 1 = Yes
results	Collection in which to place results, if bind_results is not 0
errm	Error message, if an error occurred; otherwise, NULL

Examples

Example 1

This example executes a SQL statement. It returns no results.

```
DECLARE
   coll sys.dbms_debug_vc2coll; -- results (unused)
   errm VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
   dbms_debug.execute('insert into emp(ename,empno,deptno) ' ||
                      'values(''LJE'', 1, 1)',
                      -1, 0, coll, errm);
END;
```

Example 2

This example executes a PL/SQL block, and it returns no results. The block is an autonomous transaction, which means that the value inserted into the table becomes visible in the debug session.

```
DECLARE
   coll sys.dbms_debug_vc2coll;
   errm VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
```

```
   dbms_debug.execute(
       'DECLARE PRAGMA autonomous_transaction; ' ||
       'BEGIN ' ||
       '   insert into emp(ename, empno, deptno) ' ||
       '   values(''LJE'', 1, 1); ' ||
       ' COMMIT; ' ||
       'END;',
       -1, 0, coll, errm);
END;
```

Example 3

This example executes a PL/SQL block, and it returns some results.

```
DECLARE
   coll sys.dbms_debug_vc2coll;
   errm VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
   dbms_debug.execute(
      'DECLARE ' ||
      '   pp SYS.dbms_debug_vc2coll := SYS.dbms_debug_vc2coll(); ' ||
      '   x  PLS_INTEGER; ' ||
      '   i  PLS_INTEGER := 1; ' ||
      'BEGIN ' ||
      '   SELECT COUNT(*) INTO x FROM emp; ' ||
      '   pp.EXTEND(x * 6); ' ||
      '   FOR c IN (SELECT * FROM emp) LOOP ' ||
      '      pp(i) := ''Ename: '' || c.ename; i := i+1; ' ||
      '      pp(i) := ''Empno: '' || c.empno; i := i+1; ' ||
      '      pp(i) := ''Job:   '' || c.job;   i := i+1; ' ||
      '      pp(i) := ''Mgr:   '' || c.mgr;   i := i+1; ' ||
      '      pp(i) := ''Sal:   '' || c.sal;   i := i+1; ' ||
      '      pp(i) := null;                   i := i+1; ' ||
      '   END LOOP; ' ||
      '   :1 := pp;' ||
      'END;',
       -1, 1, coll, errm);
   each := coll.FIRST;
   WHILE (each IS NOT NULL) LOOP
      dosomething(coll(each));
      each := coll.NEXT(each);
   END LOOP;
END;
```

GET_INDEXES Function

Given a name of a variable or parameter, this function returns the set of its indexes, if it is an indexed table. An error is returned if it is not an indexed table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_INDEXES (
   varname   IN  VARCHAR2,
   frame#    IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   handle    IN  program_info,
   entries   OUT index_table)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–18 GET_INDEXES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
varname	Name of the variable to get index information about
frame#	Number of frame in which the variable or parameter resides; NULL for a package variable
handle	Package description, if object is a package variable
entries	1-based table of the indexes: if non-NULL, then entries(1) contains the first index of the table, entries(2) contains the second index, and so on.

Return Values

Table 53–19 GET_INDEXES Function Return Values

Return	Description
error_no_such_object	One of the following: - The package does not exist - The package is not instantiated - The user does not have privileges to debug the package - The object does not exist in the package

GET_MORE_SOURCE Procedure

When source does not fit in the buffer provided by that version of the SHOW_SOURCE Procedures which produce a formatted buffer, this procedure provides additional source.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_MORE_SOURCE (
   buffer          IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   buflen          IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   piece#          IN BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 53–20 GET_MORE_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
buffer	The buffer
buflen	The length of the buffer
piece#	A value between 2 and the value returned in the parameter pieces from the call to the relevant version of the SHOW_SOURCE Procedures

Usage Notes

This procedure should be called only after the version of SHOW_SOURCE that returns a formatted buffer.

GET_LINE_MAP Function

This function finds line and entrypoint information about a program so that a debugger can determine the source lines at which it is possible to place breakpoints.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_LINE_MAP (
   program                IN   program_info,
   maxline                OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
   number_of_entry_points OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
   linemap                OUT  RAW)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–21 GET_LINE_MAP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
program	A top-level program unit (procedure / package / function / package body, and so on). Its Namespace, Name, and Owner fields must be initialized, the remaining fields are ignored.
maxline	The largest source code line number in 'program'
number_of_entry_points	The number of subprograms in 'program'
linemap	A bitmap representing the executable lines of 'program'. If line number N is executable, bit number N MOD 8 will be set to 1 at linemap position N / 8. The length of returned linemap is either maxline divided by 8 (plus one if maxline MOD 8 is not zero) or 32767 in the unlikely case of maxline being larger than 32767 * 8.

Return Values

Table 53–22 GET_LINE_MAP Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	A successful completion
error_no_debug_info	The program unit exists, but has no debug info
error_bad_handle	No such program unit exists

GET_RUNTIME_INFO Function

This function returns information about the current program. It is only needed if the `info_requested` parameter to `SYNCHRONIZE` or `CONTINUE` was set to `0`.

Note: This is currently only used by client-side PL/SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_RUNTIME_INFO (
   info_requested  IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   run_info        OUT runtime_info)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–23 GET_RUNTIME_INFO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`info_requested`	Which information should be returned in `run_info` when the program stops (see "Information Flags" on page 53-13)
`run_info`	Information about the state of the program

GET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Function

This procedure returns the current timeout behavior. This call is made in the target session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR
 RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–24 GET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
oer	The OER (a 4-byte positive number)

Return Values

Table 53–25 GET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	A successful completion

Information Flags

```
info_getOerInfo CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER:= 32;
```

Usage Notes

Less functionality is supported on OER breakpoints than on code breakpoints. In particular, note that:

- No "breakpoint number" is returned - the number of the OER is used instead. Thus it is impossible to set duplicate breakpoints on a given OER (it is a no-op).
- It is not possible to disable an OER breakpoint (although clients are free to simulate this by deleting it).
- OER breakpoints are deleted using `delete_oer_breakpoint`.

GET_VALUE Function

This function gets a value from the currently-running program. There are two overloaded GET_VALUE functions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_VALUE (
   variable_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   frame#         IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   scalar_value   OUT VARCHAR2,
   format         IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–26 GET_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
variable_name	Name of the variable or parameter
frame#	Frame in which it lives; 0 means the current procedure
scalar_value	Value
format	Optional date format to use, if meaningful

Return Values

Table 53–27 GET_VALUE Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	A successful completion
error_bogus_frame	Frame does not exist
error_no_debug_info	Entrypoint has no debug information
error_no_such_object	variable_name does not exist in frame#
error_unknown_type	The type information in the debug information is illegible
error_nullvalue	Value is NULL
error_indexed_table	The object is a table, but no index was provided

This form of GET_VALUE is for fetching package variables. Instead of a frame#, it takes a handle, which describes the package containing the variable.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.GET_VALUE (
   variable_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   handle         IN  program_info,
   scalar_value   OUT VARCHAR2,
   format         IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–28 GET_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
variable_name	Name of the variable or parameter
handle	Description of the package containing the variable
scalar_value	Value
format	Optional date format to use, if meaningful

Return Values

Table 53–29 GET_VALUE Function Return Values

Return	Description
error_no_such_object	One of the following: - Package does not exist - Package is not instantiated - User does not have privileges to debug the package - Object does not exist in the package
error_indexed_table	The object is a table, but no index was provided

Examples

This example illustrates how to get the value with a given package PACK in schema SCOTT, containing variable VAR:

```
DECLARE
   handle     dbms_debug.program_info;
   resultbuf  VARCHAR2(500);
   retval     BINARY_INTEGER;
BEGIN
   handle.Owner     := 'SCOTT';
   handle.Name      := 'PACK';
   handle.namespace := dbms_debug.namespace_pkgspec_or_toplevel;
   retval           := dbms_debug.get_value('VAR', handle, resultbuf, NULL);
END;
```

INITIALIZE Function

This function initializes the target session for debugging.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.INITIALIZE (
   debug_session_id  IN VARCHAR2       := NULL,
   diagnostics       IN BINARY_INTEGER := 0)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 53–30 INITIALIZE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
debug_session_id	Name of session ID. If NULL, then a unique ID is generated.
diagnostics	Indicates whether to dump diagnostic output to the tracefile: 0 = (default) no diagnostics 1 = print diagnostics

Return Values

The newly-registered debug session ID (debugID)

Usage Notes

You cannot use DBMS_DEBUG and the JDWP-based debugging interface simultaneously. This call will either fail with an ORA-30677 error if the session is currently being debugged with the JDWP-based debugging interface or, if the call succeeds, any further use of the JDWP-based interface to debug this session will be disallowed.

Calls to DBMS_DEBUG will succeed only if either the caller or the specified debug role carries the DEBUG CONNECT SESSION privilege. Failing that, an ORA-1031 error will be raised. Other exceptions are also possible if a debug role is specified but the password does not match, or if the calling user has not been granted the role, or the role is application-enabled and this call does not originate from within the role-enabling package.

The CREATE ANY PROCEDURE privilege does not affect the visibility of routines through the debugger. A privilege DEBUG for each object has been introduced with a corresponding DEBUG ANY PROCEDURE variant. These are required in order to see routines owned by users other than the session's login user.

Authentication of the debug role and the check for DEBUG CONNECT SESSION privilege will be done in the context of the caller to this routine. If the caller is a definer's rights routine or has been called from one, only privileges granted to the defining user, the debug role, or PUBLIC will be used to check for DEBUG CONNECT SESSION. If this call is from within a definer's rights routine, the debug role, if specified, must be one that has been granted to that definer, but it need not also have been granted to the session login user or be enabled in the calling session at the time the call is made.

The checks made by the debugger after this call is made looking for the DEBUG privilege on individual procedures will be done in the context of the session's login user, the roles that were enabled at session level at the moment this call was made

(even if those roles were not available within a definer's rights environment of the call), and the debug role.

PING Procedure

This procedure pings the target session to prevent it from timing out. Use this procedure when execution is suspended in the target session, for example at a breakpoint.

If the `timeout_behaviour` is set to `retry_on_timeout` then this procedure is not necessary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.PING;
```

Exceptions

Oracle will display the `no_target_program` exception if there is no target program or if the target session is not currently waiting for input from the debug session.

Usage Notes

Timeout options for the target session are registered with the target session by calling `set_timeout_behaviour`:

- `retry_on_timeout` - Retry. Timeout has no effect. This is like setting the timeout to an infinitely large value.
- `continue_on_timeout` - Continue execution, using same event flags.
- `nodebug_on_timeout` - Turn debug-mode OFF (in other words, call debug_off) and then continue execution. No more events will be generated by this target session unless it is re-initialized by calling debug_on.
- `abort_on_timeout` - Continue execution, using the abort_execution flag, which should cause the program to terminate immediately. The session remains in debug-mode.

```
retry_on_timeout CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER:= 0;

continue_on_timeout CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER:= 1;

nodebug_on_timeout CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER:= 2;

abort_on_timeout CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER:= 3;
```

PRINT_BACKTRACE Procedure

This procedure prints a backtrace listing of the current execution stack. This should only be called if a program is currently running.

There are two overloaded PRINT_BACKTRACE procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.PRINT_BACKTRACE (
  listing IN OUT VARCHAR2);

DBMS_DEBUG.PRINT_BACKTRACE (
  backtrace OUT backtrace_table);
```

Parameters

Table 53–31 PRINT_BACKTRACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
listing	A formatted character buffer with embedded newlines
backtrace	1-based indexed table of backtrace entries. The currently-running procedure is the last entry in the table (that is, the frame numbering is the same as that used by GET_VALUE). Entry 1 is the oldest procedure on the stack.

PRINT_INSTANTIATIONS Procedure

This procedure returns a list of the packages that have been instantiated in the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.PRINT_INSTANTIATIONS (
   pkgs   IN OUT NOCOPY backtrace_table,
   flags  IN BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 53–32 PRINT_INSTANTIATIONS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pkgs	The instantiated packages
flags	Bitmask of options: ■ 1 - show specs ■ 2 - show bodies ■ 4 - show local instantiations ■ 8 - show remote instantiations (NYI) ■ 16 - do a fast job. The routine does not test whether debug information exists or whether the libunit is shrink-wrapped.

Exceptions

no_target_program - target session is not currently executing

Usage Notes

On return, pkgs contains a program_info for each instantiation. The valid fields are: Namespace, Name, Owner, and LibunitType.

In addition, Line# contains a bitmask of:

- 1 - the libunit contains debug info
- 2 - the libunit is shrink-wrapped

PROBE_VERSION Procedure

This procedure returns the version number of DBMS_DEBUG on the server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.PROBE_VERSION (
   major out BINARY_INTEGER,
   minor out BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 53–33 PROBE_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
major	Major version number
minor	Minor version number: increments as functionality is added

SELF_CHECK Procedure

This procedure performs an internal consistency check. SELF_CHECK also runs a communications test to ensure that the Probe processes are able to communicate.

If SELF_CHECK does not return successfully, then an incorrect version of DBMS_DEBUG was probably installed on this server. The solution is to install the correct version (pbload.sql loads DBMS_DEBUG and the other relevant packages).

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SELF_CHECK (
   timeout IN binary_integer := 60);
```

Parameters

Table 53–34 SELF_CHECK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
timeout	The timeout to use for the communication test. Default is 60 seconds.

Exceptions

Table 53–35 SELF_CHECK Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
OER-6516	Probe version is inconsistent
pipe_creation_failure	Could not create a pipe
pipe_send_failure	Could not write data to the pipe
pipe_receive_failure	Could not read data from the pipe
pipe_datatype_mismatch	Datatype in the pipe was wrong
pipe_data_error	Data got garbled in the pipe

All of these exceptions are fatal. They indicate a serious problem with Probe that prevents it from working correctly.

SET_BREAKPOINT Function

This function sets a breakpoint in a program unit, which persists for the current session. Execution pauses if the target program reaches the breakpoint.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SET_BREAKPOINT (
   program     IN  program_info,
   line#       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   breakpoint# OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   fuzzy       IN  BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
   iterations  IN  BINARY_INTEGER := 0)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–36 SET_BREAKPOINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
program	Information about the program unit in which the breakpoint is to be set. (In version 2.1 and later, the namespace, name, owner, and dblink may be set to NULL, in which case the breakpoint is placed in the currently-running program unit.)
line#	Line at which the breakpoint is to be set
breakpoint#	On successful completion, contains the unique breakpoint number by which to refer to the breakpoint
fuzzy	Only applicable if there is no executable code at the specified line: 0 means return error_illegal_line 1 means search forward for an adjacent line at which to place the breakpoint -1 means search backward for an adjacent line at which to place the breakpoint
iterations	Number of times to wait before signalling this breakpoint

Return Values

Note: The fuzzy and iterations parameters are not yet implemented

Table 53–37 SET_BREAKPOINT Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	A successful completion
error_illegal_line	Cannot set a breakpoint at that line
error_bad_handle	No such program unit exists

SET_OER_BREAKPOINT Function

This function sets an OER breakpoint.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SET_OER_BREAKPOINT (
   oer  IN PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–38 SET_OER_BREAKPOINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
oer	The OER (positive 4-byte number) to set

Return Values

Table 53–39 SET_OER_BREAKPOINT Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	A successful completion
error_no_such_breakpt	No such OER breakpoint exists

SET_TIMEOUT Function

This function sets the timeout value and returns the new timeout value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SET_TIMEOUT (
   timeout BINARY_INTEGER)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–40 SET_TIMEOUT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
timeout	The timeout to use for communication between the target and debug sessions

SET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Procedure

This procedure tells Probe what to do with the target session when a timeout occurs. This call is made in the target session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR (
   behaviour IN PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 53–41 SET_TIMEOUT_BEHAVIOUR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`behaviour - One of the following:`	
`retry_on_timeout`	Retry. Timeout has no effect. This is like setting the timeout to an infinitely large value.
`continue_on_timeout`	Continue execution, using same event flags
`nodebug_on_timeout`	Turn debug-mode OFF (in other words, call `debug_off`) and continue execution. No more events will be generated by this target session unless it is re-initialized by calling `debug_on`.
`abort_on_timeout`	Continue execution, using the `abort_execution` flag, which should cause the program to terminate immediately. The session remains in debug-mode.

Exceptions

unimplemented - the requested behavior is not recognized

Usage Notes

The default behavior (if this procedure is not called) is `continue_on_timeout`, since it allows a debugger client to reestablish control (at the next event) but does not cause the target session to hang indefinitely.

SET_VALUE Function

This function sets a value in the currently-running program. There are two overloaded SET_VALUE functions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SET_VALUE (
   frame#               IN binary_integer,
   assignment_statement IN varchar2)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_DEBUG.SET_VALUE (
   handle               IN program_info,
   assignment_statement IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–42 SET_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
frame#	Frame in which the value is to be set; 0 means the currently executing frame.
handle	Description of the package containing the variable
assignment_statement	An assignment statement (which must be legal PL/SQL) to run in order to set the value. For example, 'x := 3;'.
	Only scalar values are supported in this release. The right side of the assignment statement must be a scalar.

Return Values

Table 53–43 SET_VALUE Function Return Values

Return	Description
success	-
error_illegal_value	Not possible to set it to that value
error_illegal_null	Cannot set to NULL because object type specifies it as 'not NULL'
error_value_malformed	Value is not a scalar
error_name_incomplete	The assignment statement does not resolve to a scalar. For example, 'x := 3;', if x is a record.
error_no_such_object	One of the following:
	- Package does not exist
	- Package is not instantiated
	- User does not have privileges to debug the package
	- Object does not exist in the package

Usage Notes

In some cases, the PL/SQL compiler uses temporaries to access package variables, and does not guarantee to update such temporaries. It is possible, although unlikely, that

modification to a package variable using SET_VALUE might not take effect for a line or two.

Examples

To set the value of SCOTT.PACK.var to 6:

```
DECLARE
   handle  dbms_debug.program_info;
   retval  BINARY_INTEGER;
BEGIN
   handle.Owner     := 'SCOTT';
   handle.Name      := 'PACK';
   handle.namespace := dbms_debug.namespace_pkgspec_or_toplevel;
   retval           := dbms_debug.set_value(handle, 'var := 6;');
END;
```

SHOW_BREAKPOINTS Procedures

There are two overloaded procedures that return a listing of the current breakpoints. There are three overloaded SHOW_BREAKPOINTS procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SHOW_BREAKPOINTS (
   listing    IN OUT VARCHAR2);

DBMS_DEBUG.SHOW_BREAKPOINTS (
   listing    OUT breakpoint_table);

DBMS_DEBUG.SHOW_BREAKPOINTS (
   code_breakpoints  OUT breakpoint_table,
   oer_breakpoints   OUT oer_table);
```

Parameters

Table 53–44 SHOW_BREAKPOINTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
listing	A formatted buffer (including newlines) of the breakpoints.
	Indexed table of breakpoint entries. The breakpoint number is indicated by the index into the table. Breakpoint numbers start at 1 and are reused when deleted.
code_breakpoints	The indexed table of breakpoint entries, indexed by breakpoint number
oer_breakpoints	The indexed table of OER breakpoints, indexed by OER

SHOW_FRAME_SOURCE Procedure

The procedure gets the source code. There are two overloaded SHOW_SOURCE procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SHOW_FRAME_SOURCE (
   first_line  IN            BINARY_INTEGER,
   last_line   IN            BINARY_INTEGER,
   source      IN OUT NOCOPY vc2_table,
   frame_num   IN            BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 53–45 SHOW_FRAME_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
first_line	Line number of first line to fetch (PL/SQL programs always start at line 1 and have no holes)
last_line	Line number of last line to fetch. No lines are fetched past the end of the program.
source	The resulting table, which may be indexed by line#
frame_num	1-based frame number

Usage Notes

- You use this function only when backtrace shows an anonymous unit is executing at a given frame position and you need to view the source in order to set a breakpoint.
- If frame number is top of the stack and it's an anonymous block then SHOW_SOURCE can also be used.
- If it's a stored PLSQL package/function/procedure then use SQL as described in the Usage Notes to SHOW_SOURCE Procedures.

SHOW_SOURCE Procedures

The procedure gets the source code. There are two overloaded `SHOW_SOURCE` procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SHOW_SOURCE (
   first_line  IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   last_line   IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   source      OUT  vc2_table);

DBMS_DEBUG.SHOW_SOURCE (
   first_line   IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   last_line    IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   window       IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   print_arrow  IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   buffer       IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   buflen       IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   pieces       OUT    BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 53–46 SHOW_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`first_line`	Line number of first line to fetch (PL/SQL programs always start at line 1 and have no holes)
`last_line`	Line number of last line to fetch. No lines are fetched past the end of the program.
`source`	The resulting table, which may be indexed by line#
`window`	'Window' of lines (the number of lines around the current source line)
`print_arrow`	Nonzero means to print an arrow before the current line
`buffer`	Buffer in which to place the source listing
`buflen`	Length of buffer
`pieces`	Set to nonzero if not all the source could be placed into the given buffer

Return Values

An indexed table of source-lines. The source lines are stored starting at `first_line`. If any error occurs, then the table is empty.

Usage Notes

The best way to get the source code (for a program that is being run) is to use SQL. For example:

```
DECLARE
    info DBMS_DEBUG.runtime_info;
BEGIN
   -- call DBMS_DEBUG.SYNCHRONIZE, CONTINUE,
   -- or GET_RUNTIME_INFO to fill in 'info'
   SELECT text INTO <buffer> FROM all_source
```

```
   WHERE owner = info.Program.Owner
     AND name  = info.Program.Name
     AND line  = info.Line#;
END;
```

However, this does not work for nonpersistent programs (for example, anonymous blocks and trigger invocation blocks). For nonpersistent programs, call `SHOW_SOURCE`. There are two flavors: one returns an indexed table of source lines, and the other returns a packed (and formatted) buffer.

The second overloading of `SHOW_SOURCE` returns the source in a formatted buffer, complete with line-numbers. It is faster than the indexed table version, but it does not guarantee to fetch all the source.

If the source does not fit in bufferlength (`buflen`), then additional pieces can be retrieved using the `GET_MORE_SOURCE` procedure (`pieces` returns the number of additional pieces that need to be retrieved).

SYNCHRONIZE Function

This function waits until the target program signals an event. If `info_requested` is not `NULL`, then it calls `GET_RUNTIME_INFO`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.SYNCHRONIZE (
   run_info       OUT  runtime_info,
   info_requested IN   BINARY_INTEGER := NULL)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 53–47 SYNCHRONIZE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`run_info`	Structure in which to write information about the program. By default, this includes information about what program is running and at which line execution has paused.
`info_requested`	Optional bit-field in which to request information other than the default (which is `info_getStackDepth` + `info_getLineInfo`). 0 means that no information is requested at all (see "Information Flags" on page 53-13).

Return Values

Table 53–48 SYNCHRONIZE Function Return Values

Return	Description
`success`	A successful completion
`error_timeout`	Timed out before the program started execution
`error_communication`	Other communication error

TARGET_PROGRAM_RUNNING Procedure

This procedure returns `TRUE` if the target session is currently executing a stored procedure, or `FALSE` if it is not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DEBUG.TARGET_PROGRAM_RUNNING
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

54

DBMS_DDL

This package provides access to some SQL data definition language (DDL) statements from stored procedures. It also provides special administration operations that are not available as Data Definition Language statements (DDLs).

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DDL

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_DDL` package.

Deprecated Subprograms

Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only

The following subprograms are deprecated with release Oracle Database 10*g*:

- ALTER_COMPILE Procedure

Security Model

This package runs with the privileges of the calling user, rather than the package owner `SYS`.

Operational Notes

The `ALTER_COMPILE` procedure commits the current transaction, performs the operation, and then commits again.

Summary of DBMS_DDL Subprograms

Table 54–1 DBMS_DDL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_COMPILE Procedure on page 54-7	Compiles the PL/SQL object
ALTER_TABLE_NOT_ REFERENCEABLE Procedure on page 54-8	Reorganizes object tables
ALTER_TABLE_REFERENCEABLE Procedure on page 54-9	Reorganizes object tables
CREATE_WRAPPED Procedures on page 54-10	Takes as input a single `CREATE OR REPLACE` statement that specifies creation of a PL/SQL package specification, package body, function, procedure, type specification or type body, generates a `CREATE OR REPLACE` statement with the PL/SQL source text obfuscated and executes the generated statement
IS_TRIGGER_FIRE_ONCE Function on page 54-12	Returns `TRUE` if the specified DML or DDL trigger is set to fire once. Otherwise, returns `FALSE`
SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY Procedures on page 54-13	Sets the specified DML or DDL trigger's firing property
WRAP Functions on page 54-15	Takes as input a `CREATE OR REPLACE` statement that specifies creation of a PL/SQL package specification, package body, function, procedure, type specification or type body and returns a `CREATE OR REPLACE` statement where the text of the PL/SQL unit has been obfuscated

ALTER_COMPILE Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the following SQL statement:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE|FUNCTION|PACKAGE [<schema>.] <name> COMPILE [BODY]
```

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 (10.2) While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the DDL equivalent in a dynamic SQL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DDL.ALTER_COMPILE (
   type             VARCHAR2,
   schema           VARCHAR2,
   name             VARCHAR2
   reuse_settings   BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 54–2 ALTER_COMPILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
type	Must be either PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY or TRIGGER
schema	Schema name If NULL, then use current schema (case-sensitive)
name	Name of the object (case-sensitive)
reuse_settings	Indicates whether the session settings in the objects should be reused, or whether the current session settings should be adopted instead

Exceptions

Table 54–3 ALTER_COMPILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-20000:	Insufficient privileges or object does not exist
ORA-20001:	Remote object, cannot compile
ORA-20002:	Bad value for object type: should be either PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, or TRIGGER

ALTER_TABLE_NOT_REFERENCEABLE Procedure

This procedure alters the given object table `table_schema.table_name` so it becomes not the default referenceable table for the schema `affected_schema`. This is equivalent to SQL

```
ALTER TABLE [<table_schema>.]<table_name> NOT REFERENCEABLE FOR <affected_schema>
```

which is currently not supported or available as a DDL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DDL.ALTER_TABLE_NOT_REFERENCEABLE (
   table_name        IN           VARCHAR2,
   table_schema      IN  DEFAULT  NULL,
   affected_schema   IN  DEFAULT  NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 54–4 ALTER_TABLE_NOT_REFERENCEABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	Name of the table to be altered. Cannot be a synonym. Must not be `NULL`. Case sensitive.
`table_schema`	Name of the schema owning the table to be altered. If `NULL` then the current schema is used. Case sensitive.
`affected_schema`	Name of the schema affected by this alteration. If NULL then the current schema is used. Case sensitive.

Usage Notes

This procedure simply reverts for the affected schema to the default table referenceable for `PUBLIC`; that is., it simply undoes the previous `ALTER_TABLE_REFERENCEABLE` call for this specific schema. The affected schema must a particular schema (cannot be `PUBLIC`).

The user that executes this procedure must own the table (that is, the schema is the same as the user), and the affected schema must be the same as the user.

If the user executing this procedure has `ALTER ANY TABLE` and `SELECT ANY TABLE` and `DROP ANY TABLE` privileges, the user doesn't have to own the table and the affected schema can be any valid schema.

ALTER_TABLE_REFERENCEABLE Procedure

This procedure alters the given object table `table_schema.table_name` so it becomes the referenceable table for the given schema `affected_schema`. This is equivalent to SQL

```
ALTER TABLE [<table_schema>.]<table_name>  REFERENCEABLE FOR <affected_schema>
```

which is currently not supported or available as a DDL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DDL.ALTER_TABLE_REFERENCEABLE
   table_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_schema     IN  DEFAULT  NULL,
   affected_schema  IN  DEFAULT  NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 54–5 ALTER_TABLE_REFERENCEABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	Name of the table to be altered. Cannot be a synonym. Must not be `NULL`. Case sensitive.
`table_schema`	Name of the schema owning the table to be altered. If `NULL` then the current schema is used. Case sensitive.
`affected_schema`	Name of the schema affected by this alteration. If NULL then the current schema is used. Case sensitive.

Usage Notes

When you create an object table, it automatically becomes referenceable, unless you use the `OID AS` clause when creating the table. The `OID AS` clause makes it possible for you to create an object table and to assign to the new table the same EOID as another object table of the same type. After you create a new table using the `OID AS` clause, you end up with two object table with the same `EOID`; the new table is not referenceable, the original one is. All references that used to point to the objects in the original table still reference the same objects in the same original table.

If you execute this procedure on the new table, it makes the new table the referenceable table replacing the original one; thus, those references now point to the objects in the new table instead of the original table.

CREATE_WRAPPED Procedures

The procedure takes as input a single CREATE OR REPLACE statement that specifies creation of a PL/SQL package specification, package body, function, procedure, type specification or type body. It then generates a CREATE OR REPLACE statement with the PL/SQL source text obfuscated and executes the generated statement. In effect, this procedure bundles together the operations of wrapping the text and creating the PL/SQL unit.

See Also: WRAP Functions on page 54-15

This procedure has 3 overloads. Each of the three functions provides better performance than using a combination of individual WRAP Functions and DBMS_SQL.PARSE (or EXECUTE IMMEDIATE) calls. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented with the definition.

Syntax

Is a shortcut for EXECUTE IMMEDIATE SYS.DBMS_DDL.WRAP(*ddl*):

```
DBMS_DDL.CREATE_WRAPPED (
   ddl     VARCHAR2);
```

Is a shortcut for DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, SYS.DBMS_DDL.WRAP (input, lb, ub)):

```
DBMS_DDL.CREATE_WRAPPED(
   ddl     DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2A,
   lb      PLS_INTEGER,
   ub      PLS_INTEGER);
```

Is a shortcut for DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, SYS.DBMS_DDL.WRAP (input, lb, ub)):

```
DBMS_DDL.CREATE_WRAPPED(
   ddl     DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2S,
   lb      PLS_INTEGER,
   ub      PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 54–6 CREATE_WRAPPED Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ddl	A CREATE OR REPLACE statement that specifies creation of a PL/SQL package specification, package body, function, procedure, type specification or type body
lb	Lower bound for indices in the string table that specify the CREATE OR REPLACE statement
ub	Upper bound for indices in the string table that specify the CREATE OR REPLACE statement.

Usage Notes

- The CREATE OR REPLACE statement is executed with the privileges of the user invoking DBMS_DDL.CREATE_WRAPPED.
- Any PL/SQL code that attempts to call these interfaces should use the fully qualified package name SYS.DBMS_DDL to avoid the possibility that the name DBMS_

DDL is captured by a locally-defined unit or by redefining the DBMS_DDL public synonym.

- Each invocation of any accepts only a single PL/SQL unit. By contrast, the PL/SQL wrap utility accepts a entire SQL*Plus file and obfuscates the PL/SQL units within the file leaving all other text as-is. These interfaces are intended to be used in conjunction with or as a replacement for PL/SQL's dynamic SQL interfaces (EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and DBMS_SQL.PARSE). Since these dynamic SQL interfaces only accept a single unit at a time (and do not understand the SQL*Plus "/" termination character), both the CREATE_WRAPPED Procedures and the WRAP Functions require input to be a single unit.

Exceptions

ORA-24230: If the input is not a CREATE OR REPLACE statement specifying a PL/SQL unit, exception DBMS_DDL.MALFORMED_WRAP_INPUT is raised.

Examples

```
DECLARE
    ddl VARCHAR2(32767);
BEGIN
    ddl := GENERATE_PACKAGE(...);
    SYS.DBMS_DDL.CREATE_WRAPPED(ddl); -- Instead of EXECUTE IMMEDIATE ddl
END;
```

IS_TRIGGER_FIRE_ONCE Function

This function returns TRUE if the specified DML or DDL trigger is set to fire once. Otherwise, it returns FALSE.

A fire once trigger fires in a user session but does not fire in the following cases:

- For changes made by a Streams apply process
- For changes made by executing one or more Streams apply errors using the EXECUTE_ERROR or EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS procedure in the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package
- For changes made by a Logical Standby apply process

Note: Only DML and DDL triggers can be fire once. All other types of triggers always fire.

See Also: "SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY Procedures" on page 54-13

Syntax

```
DBMS_DDL.IS_TRIGGER_FIRE_ONCE
   trig_owner          IN  VARCHAR2,
   trig_name           IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 54–7 IS_TRIGGER_FIRE_ONCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
trig_owner	Schema of trigger
trig_name	Name of trigger

SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY Procedures

This procedure sets the specified DML or DDL trigger's firing property whether or not the property is set for the trigger. Use this procedure to control a DML or DDL trigger's firing property for changes:

- Applied by a Streams apply process
- Made by executing one or more Streams apply errors using the `EXECUTE_ERROR` or `EXECUTE_ALL_ERRORS` procedure in the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package.
- Applied by a Logical Standby apply process

Syntax

```
DBMS_DDL.SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY (
   trig_owner         IN  VARCHAR2,
   trig_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   fire_once          IN  BOOLEAN);

DBMS_DDL.SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY (
   trig_owner         IN  VARCHAR2,
   trig_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   property           IN INTEGER,
   setting            IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 54–8 SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`trig_owner`	Schema of the trigger to set
`trig_name`	Name of the trigger to set
`fire_once`	■ If `TRUE`, the trigger is set to fire once. By default, the `fire_once` parameter is set to `TRUE` for DML and DDL triggers. ■ If `FALSE`, the trigger is set to always fire unless `apply_server_only` property is set to `TRUE`, which overrides `fire_once` property setting.
`property`	■ `DBMS_DDL.fire_once` to set the `fire_once` property of the trigger ■ `DBMS_DDL.apply_server_only` to indicate whether trigger fires only in the context of SQL apply processes maintaining a logical standby database or Streams apply processes
`setting`	Value of property being set

Usage Notes

DML triggers created on a table have their fire-once property set to `TRUE`. In this case, the triggers only fire when the table is modified by an user process, and they are automatically disabled inside Oracle processes maintaining either a logical standby database (SQL Apply) or Oracle processes doing replication (Streams Apply) processes, and thus do not fire when a SQL Apply or a Streams Apply process modifies the table. There are two ways for a user to fire a trigger as a result of SQL Apply or a Streams Apply process making a change to a maintained table: (a) setting the fire-once property of a trigger to `FALSE`, which allows it fire both in the context of a user process or a SQL or Streams Apply process, or (b) by setting the

apply-server-only property to TRUE and thus making the trigger fire only in the context of a SQL Apply or a Streams Apply process and not in the context of a user process.

- FIRE_ONCE=TRUE, APPLY_SERVER_ONLY=FALSE

  This is the default property setting for a DML trigger. The trigger only fires when user process modifies the base table.

- FIRE_ONCE=TRUE or FALSE, APPLY_SERVER_ONLY=TRUE

  The trigger only fires when SQL Apply or Streams Apply process modifies the base table. The trigger does not fire when a user process modifies the base table.Thus the apply-server-only property overrides the fire-once property of a trigger.

Note:

- If you dequeue an error transaction from the error queue and execute it without using the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package, then relevant changes resulting from this execution cause a trigger to fire, regardless of the trigger firing property.
- Only DML and DDL triggers can be fire once. All other types of triggers always fire.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the apply process and controlling a trigger's firing property

WRAP Functions

This function takes as input a single CREATE OR REPLACE statement that specifies creation of a PL/SQL package specification, package body, function, procedure, type specification or type body and returns a CREATE OR REPLACE statement where the text of the PL/SQL unit has been obfuscated.

The function has 3 overloads to allow for the different ways in which DDL statements can be generated dynamically and presented to DBMS_SQL or EXECUTE IMMEDIATE. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented with the definition.

See Also: CREATE_WRAPPED Procedures on page 54-10

Syntax

Provides basic functionality:

```
DBMS_DDL.WRAP(
   ddl      VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Provides the same functionality as the first form, but allows for larger inputs. This function is intended to be used with the PARSE Procedures in the DBMS_SQL package and its argument list follows the convention of DBMS_SQL.PARSE:

```
DBMS_DDL.WRAP(
   ddl      DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2S,
   lb       PLS_INTEGER,
   ub       PLS_INTEGER)
  RETURN DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2S;
```

Provides the same functionality as the second form and is provided for compatibility with multiple forms of the PARSE Procedures in the DBMS_SQL package:

```
DBMS_DDL.WRAP(
   ddl      DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2A,
   lb       PLS_INTEGER,
   ub       PLS_INTEGER)
  RETURN DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2A;
```

Parameters

Table 54–9 WRAP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ddl	A CREATE OR REPLACE statement that specifies creation of a PL/SQL package specification, package body, function, procedure, type specification or type body
lb	Lower bound for indices in the string table that specify the CREATE OR REPLACE statement
ub	Upper bound for indices in the string table that specify the CREATE OR REPLACE statement.

Return Values

A CREATE OR REPLACE statement with the text obfuscated. In the case of the second and third form, the return value is a table of strings that need to be concatenated in order to construct the CREATE OR REPLACE string containing obfuscated source text.

Usage Notes

- Any PL/SQL code that attempts to call these interfaces should use the fully qualified package name SYS.DBMS_DDL to avoid the possibility that the name DBMS_DDL is captured by a locally-defined unit or by redefining the DBMS_DDL public synonym.
- Each invocation of any accepts only a single PL/SQL unit. By contrast, the PL/SQL wrap utility accepts a full SQL file and obfuscates the PL/SQL units within the file leaving all other text as-is. These interfaces are intended to be used in conjunction with or as a replacement for PL/SQL's dynamic SQL interfaces (EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and DBMS_SQL.PARSE). Since these dynamic SQL interfaces only accept a single unit at a time (and do not understand the SQL*Plus "/" termination character), both the CREATE_WRAPPED Procedures and the WRAP Functions require input to be a single unit.

Exceptions

ORA-24230: If the input is not a CREATE OR REPLACE statement specifying a PL/SQL unit, exception DBMS_DDL.MALFORMED_WRAP_INPUT is raised.

Examples

```
DECLARE
   ddl VARCHAR2(32767);
BEGIN
   ddl := GENERATE_PACKAGE(...);
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE SYS.DBMS_DDL.WRAP(ddl); -- Instead of EXECUTE IMMEDIATE ddl
END;
```

55

DBMS_DEFER

DBMS_DEFER is the user interface to a replicated transactional deferred remote procedure call facility. Replicated applications use the calls in this interface to queue procedure calls for later transactional execution at remote nodes.

These procedures are typically called from either after row triggers or application specified update procedures.

Documentation of DBMS_DEFER

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see DBMS_DEFER in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference.*

56

DBMS_DEFER_QUERY

DBMS_DEFER_QUERY enables you to query the deferred transactions queue data that is not exposed through views.

- Documentation of DBMS_DEFER_QUERY

Documentation of DBMS_DEFER_QUERY

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see DBMS_DEFER_QUERY in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference*.

57

DBMS_DEFER_SYS

DBMS_DEFER_SYS subprograms manage default replication node lists. This package is the system administrator interface to a replicated transactional deferred remote procedure call facility. Administrators and replication daemons can execute transactions queued for remote nodes using this facility, and administrators can control the nodes to which remote calls are destined.

Documentation of DBMS_DEFER_SYS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_DEFER_SYS` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference.*

58

DBMS_DESCRIBE

You can use the DBMS_DESCRIBE package to get information about a PL/SQL object. When you specify an object name, DBMS_DESCRIBE returns a set of indexed tables with the results. Full name translation is performed and security checking is also checked on the final object.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DESCRIBE

Overview

This package provides the same functionality as the Oracle Call Interface `OCIDescribeAny` call.

See Also: *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*

Security Model

This package is available to PUBLIC and performs its own security checking based on the schema object being described.

Types

The DBMS_DESCRIBE package declares two PL/SQL table types, which are used to hold data returned by DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE in its OUT parameters. The types are:

```
TYPE VARCHAR2_TABLE IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30)
    INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;

TYPE NUMBER_TABLE IS TABLE OF NUMBER
    INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Exceptions

DBMS_DESCRIBE can raise application errors in the range -20000 to -20004.

Table 58–1 DBMS_DESCRIBE Errors

Error	Description
ORA-20000	ORU 10035: cannot describe a package ('X') only a procedure within a package.
ORA-20001	ORU-10032: procedure 'X' within package 'Y' does not exist.
ORA-20002	ORU-10033: object 'X' is remote, cannot describe; expanded name 'Y'.
ORA-20003	ORU-10036: object 'X' is invalid and cannot be described.
ORA-20004	Syntax error attempting to parse 'X'.

Examples

One use of the DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE procedure is as an external service interface.

For example, consider a client that provides an OBJECT_NAME of SCOTT.ACCOUNT_UPDATE, where ACCOUNT_UPDATE is an overloaded function with specification:

```
TABLE account (accnt_no NUMBER, person_id NUMBER,
               balance NUMBER(7,2))
TABLE person  (person_id number(4), person_nm varchar2(10))

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE ACCOUNT_PKG is
   FUNCTION ACCOUNT_UPDATE (accnt_no    NUMBER,
                            person      person%rowtype,
                            amounts     DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE,
                            trans_date  DATE)
                            return       account.balance%type;

   FUNCTION ACCOUNT_UPDATE (accnt_no     NUMBER,
                            person       person%rowtype,
                            amounts      DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE,
                            trans_no     NUMBER)
                            return       account.balance%type;
END;
```

This procedure might look similar to the following output:

```
overload position  argument level  datatype length prec scale rad
-------- --------- -------- ------ -------- ------ ---- ----- ---
       1         0                0        2     22    7     2  10
       1         1   ACCNT_NO     0        2      0    0     0   0
       1         2   PERSON       0      250      0    0     0   0
       1         1   PERSON_ID    1        2     22    4     0  10
       1         2   PERSON_NM    1        1     10    0     0   0
       1         3   AMOUNTS      0      251      0    0     0   0
       1         1                1        2     22    0     0   0
       1         4   TRANS_DATE   0       12      0    0     0   0
       2         0                0        2     22    7     2  10
       2         1   ACCNT_NO     0        2     22    0     0   0
       2         2   PERSON       0        2     22    4     0  10
       2         3   AMOUNTS      0      251     22    4     0  10
       2         1                1        2      0    0     0   0
       2         4   TRANS_NO     0        2      0    0     0   0
```

The following PL/SQL procedure has as its parameters all of the PL/SQL datatypes:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE p1 (
        pvc2    IN     VARCHAR2,
        pvc     OUT    VARCHAR,
        pstr    IN OUT STRING,
        plong   IN     LONG,
        prowid  IN     ROWID,
        pchara  IN     CHARACTER,
        pchar   IN     CHAR,
        praw    IN     RAW,
        plraw   IN     LONG RAW,
        pbinint IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
        pplsint IN     PLS_INTEGER,
        pbool   IN     BOOLEAN,
        pnat    IN     NATURAL,
        ppos    IN     POSITIVE,
```

```
        pposn   IN     POSITIVEN,
        pnatn   IN     NATURALN,
        pnum    IN     NUMBER,
        pintgr  IN     INTEGER,
        pint    IN     INT,
        psmall  IN     SMALLINT,
        pdec    IN     DECIMAL,
        preal   IN     REAL,
        pfloat  IN     FLOAT,
        pnumer  IN     NUMERIC,
        pdp     IN     DOUBLE PRECISION,
        pdate   IN     DATE,
        pmls    IN     MLSLABEL) AS

BEGIN
    NULL;
END;
```

If you describe this procedure using the following:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE describe_it AS

    PROCEDURE desc_proc (name VARCHAR2);

END describe_it;

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY describe_it AS

  PROCEDURE prt_value(val VARCHAR2, isize INTEGER) IS
    n INTEGER;
  BEGIN
    n := isize - LENGTHB(val);
    IF n < 0 THEN
      n := 0;
    END IF;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(val);
    FOR i in 1..n LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(' ');
    END LOOP;
  END prt_value;

  PROCEDURE desc_proc (name VARCHAR2) IS

      overload     DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      position     DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      c_level      DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      arg_name     DBMS_DESCRIBE.VARCHAR2_TABLE;
      dty          DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      def_val      DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      p_mode       DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      length       DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      precision    DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      scale        DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      radix        DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      spare        DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
      idx          INTEGER := 0;

  BEGIN
      DBMS_DESCRIBE.DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE(
              name,
              null,
```

```
            null,
            overload,
            position,
            c_level,
            arg_name,
            dty,
            def_val,
            p_mode,
            length,
            precision,
            scale,
            radix,
            spare);

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Position    Name        DTY  Mode');
    LOOP
        idx := idx + 1;
        prt_value(TO_CHAR(position(idx)), 12);
        prt_value(arg_name(idx), 12);
        prt_value(TO_CHAR(dty(idx)), 5);
        prt_value(TO_CHAR(p_mode(idx)), 5);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
    END LOOP;
  EXCEPTION
     WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;

  END desc_proc;
END describe_it;
```

Then the results list all the numeric codes for the PL/SQL datatypes:

```
Position  Name    Datatype_Code  Mode
1         PVC2      1              0
2         PVC       1              1
3         PSTR      1              2
4         PLONG     8              0
5         PROWID    11             0
6         PCHARA    96             0
7         PCHAR     96             0
8         PRAW      23             0
9         PLRAW     24             0
10        PBININT   3              0
11        PPLSINT   3              0
12        PBOOL     252            0
13        PNAT      3              0
14        PPOS      3              0
15        PPOSN     3              0
16        PNATN     3              0
17        PNUM      2              0
18        PINTGR    2              0
19        PINT      2              0
20        PSMALL    2              0
21        PDEC      2              0
22        PREAL     2              0
23        PFLOAT    2              0
24        PNUMER    2              0
25        PDP       2              0
26        PDATE     12             0
27        PMLS      106            0
```

Summary of DBMS_DESCRIBE Subprograms

Table 58–2 DBMS_DESCRIBE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE Procedure on page 58-11	Provides a brief description of a PL/SQL stored procedure

DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE Procedure

The procedure DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE provides a brief description of a PL/SQL stored procedure. It takes the name of a stored procedure and returns information about each parameter of that procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DESCRIBE.DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE(
   object_name                    IN  VARCHAR2,
   reserved1                      IN  VARCHAR2,
   reserved2                      IN  VARCHAR2,
   overload                       OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   position                       OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   level                          OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   argument_name                  OUT VARCHAR2_TABLE,
   datatype                       OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   default_value                  OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   in_out                         OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   length                         OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   precision                      OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   scale                          OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   radix                          OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
   spare                          OUT NUMBER_TABLE
   include_string_constraints     OUT BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 58–3 DBMS_DESCRIBE.DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_name	Name of the procedure being described. The syntax for this parameter follows the rules used for identifiers in SQL. The name can be a synonym. This parameter is required and may not be null. The total length of the name cannot exceed 197 bytes. An incorrectly specified OBJECT_NAME can result in one of the following exceptions: ORA-20000 - A package was specified. You can only specify a stored procedure, stored function, packaged procedure, or packaged function. ORA-20001 - The procedure or function that you specified does not exist within the given package. ORA-20002 - The object that you specified is a remote object. This procedure cannot currently describe remote objects. ORA-20003 - The object that you specified is invalid and cannot be described. ORA-20004 - The object was specified with a syntax error.
reserved1 reserved2	Reserved for future use -- must be set to NULL or the empty string.
overload	A unique number assigned to the procedure's signature. If a procedure is overloaded, then this field holds a different value for each version of the procedure.
position	Position of the argument in the parameter list. Position 0 returns the values for the return type of a function.

Table 58–3 (Cont.) DBMS_DESCRIBE.DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE Parameters

Parameter	Description
level	If the argument is a composite type, such as record, then this parameter returns the level of the datatype. See the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for a description of the ODESSP call for an example.
argument_name	Name of the argument associated with the procedure that you are describing.
datatype	Oracle datatype of the argument being described. The datatypes and their numeric type codes are: 0 placeholder for procedures with no arguments 1 VARCHAR, VARCHAR, STRING 2 NUMBER, INTEGER, SMALLINT, REAL, FLOAT, DECIMAL 3 BINARY_INTEGER, PLS_INTEGER, POSITIVE, NATURAL 8 LONG 11 ROWID 12 DATE 23 RAW 24 LONG RAW 58 OPAQUE TYPE 96 CHAR (ANSI FIXED CHAR), CHARACTER 106 MLSLABEL 121 OBJECT 122 NESTED TABLE 123 VARRAY 178 TIME 179 TIME WITH TIME ZONE 180 TIMESTAMP 181 TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE 231 TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE 250 PL/SQL RECORD 251 PL/SQL TABLE 252 PL/SQL BOOLEAN
default_value	1 if the argument being described has a default value; otherwise, the value is 0.
in_out	Describes the mode of the parameter: 0 IN 1 OUT 2 IN OUT
length	For %rowtype formal arguments, the length constraint is returned, otherwise 0 is returned.If the include_string_constraints parameter is set to TRUE, the argument's formal length constraint is passed back if it is of the appropriate type. Those are the string types: 1;8;23;24;96
precision	If the argument being described is of datatype 2 (NUMBER), then this parameter is the precision of that number.
scale	If the argument being described is of datatype 2 (NUMBER), then this parameter is the scale of that number.
radix	If the argument being described is of datatype 2 (NUMBER), then this parameter is the radix of that number.
spare	Reserved for future functionality.
include_string_constraints	The default is FALSE. If the parameter is set to TRUE, the arguments' formal type constraints is passed back if it is of the appropriate type.Those are the string types: 1;8;23;24;96

Return Values

All values from `DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE` are returned in its `OUT` parameters. The datatypes for these are PL/SQL tables, to accommodate a variable number of parameters.

59

DBMS_DG

The DBMS_DG package allows applications to notify the primary database or the fast-start failover target database in an Oracle Data Guard broker environment to initiate a fast-start failover when the application encounters a condition that warrants a failover.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Data Guard Broker* for more information about performing a fast-start failover in a broker configuration

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DG

There are conditions detectable by applications running outside of the Oracle database that may warrant the Oracle Data Guard broker to perform a fast-start failover. Because the range of possible conditions is virtually unlimited, it is left to the applications to determine which conditions warrant a fast-start failover.

When such conditions occur, the application calls the `DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER` procedure to alert either the primary or fast-start failover target standby database that the application wants a fast-start failover to occur immediately. The database on which the procedure was called then notifies the observer, which immediately initiates a fast-start failover as long as the standby database is in a valid fast-start failover state ("observed" and either "synchronized" or "within lag") to accept a failover.If the configuration is not in a valid fast-start failover state, the `INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER` subprogram returns an ORA error message (it will not signal an exception) to inform the calling application that a fast-start failover could not be performed.

Note: If you are working in a multitenant container database (CDB), then functions within `DBMS_DG` are only executed at the root level. Ensure you are connected at the root level, not at the individual pluggable database (PDB) level.

Security Model

The DBMS_DG package runs with invoker's rights and requires the SYSDBA privilege.

Summary of the DBMS_DG Subprogram

Table 59–1 DBMS_DG Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description
INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER Procedure on page 59-5	Enables an application to notify either the primary or fast-start failover target standby database that a fast-start failover is necessary when the application encounters conditions that warrant a failover. This procedure can only be called while connected to a primary database or a fast-start failover standby database.

INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER Procedure

Use this procedure to specify a condition string that, when encountered by an application, allows the application to request that a fast-start failover be invoked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER (
     condstr          IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 59–2 INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
condstr	Specifies the condition string for which a fast-start failover should be requested. If no condition string argument is supplied, the default string of "Application Failover Requested" will be logged in the broker log file and in the database alert log of the database on which the procedure was called.

Usage Notes

- This procedure returns a binary integer.
- Query the V$FS_FAILOVER_STATS view to see the time of the last fast-start failover and the reason it was performed.
- This procedure can only be called while connected to a primary database or a fast-start failover standby database.

Errors

Table 59–3 INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER Procedure Errors

Error	Description
ORA-00000: normal, successful completion	The request to initiate a fast-start failover has been posted to the observer.
ORA-16646: fast-start failover is disabled	Either a broker configuration does not exist or fast-start failover has not been enabled.
ORA-16666: unable to initiate fast-start failover on a bystander standby database	DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER was invoked on a bystander standby database. That is, it was not invoked on the primary or on the fast-start failover target standby database.
ORA-16817: unsynchronized fast-start failover configuration	DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER was invoked in a maximum available fast-start failover configuration when the configuration was not synchronized.
ORA-16819: fast-start failover observer not started	DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER was invoked but an observer had not yet been started.
ORA-16820: fast-start failover observer is no longer observing this database	DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER was invoked but the configuration detects that the observer may not be running.

Table 59–3 (Cont.) INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER Procedure Errors

Error	Description
ORA-16829: lagging fast-start failover configuration	DBMS_DG.INITIATE_FS_FAILOVER was invoked in a maximum performance fast-start failover configuration when the configuration was not in the user-specified redo lag limit.

Example

In this example, the program attempts to initiate a fast-start failover when fast-start failover is disabled. To use this example, connect as user SYS with SYDDBA privileges.

```
set serveroutput on

declare
status integer;

begin
status := dbms_dg.initiate_fs_failover(''Failover Requested'');

dbms_output.put_line(''Fast-Start Failover is disabled: Expected status =
ORA-16646'');
dbms_output.put_line(''                 Actual Status = ORA-'' || status);

end;
/
exit;
```

60

DBMS_DIMENSION

DBMS_DIMENSION enables you to verify dimension relationships and provides an alternative to the Enterprise Manager Dimension Wizard for displaying a dimension definition.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for detailed conceptual and usage information about the DBMS_DIMENSION package

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DIMENSION

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_DIMENSION` package.

- Security Model

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled by granting `EXECUTE` to selected users or roles.

A user can validate or describe all the dimensions in his own schema. To validate or describe a dimension in another schema, you must have either an object privilege on the dimension or one of the following system privileges: `CREATE ANY DIMENSION`, `ALTER ANY DIMENSION`, and `DROP ANY DIMENSION`.

Summary of DBMS_DIMENSION Subprograms

Table 60–1 DBMS_DIMENSION Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DESCRIBE_DIMENSION Procedure on page 60-5	Prints out the definition of the input dimension, including dimension owner and name, levels, hierarchies, and attributes
VALIDATE_DIMENSION Procedure on page 60-6	Verifies that the relationships specified in a dimension are correct

DESCRIBE_DIMENSION Procedure

This procedure displays the definition of the dimension, including dimension name, levels, hierarchies, and attributes. It displays the output using the DBMS_OUTPUT package.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DIMENSION.DESCRIBE_DIMENSION (
   dimension  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 60–2 DESCRIBE_DIMENSION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
dimension	The owner and name of the dimension in the format of owner.name.

VALIDATE_DIMENSION Procedure

This procedure verifies that the relationships specified in a dimension are valid. The rowid for any row that is found to be invalid will be stored in the table DIMENSION_EXCEPTIONS in the user's schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DIMENSION.VALIDATE_DIMENSION (
   dimension               IN VARCHAR2,
   incremental             IN BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   check_nulls             IN BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   statement_id            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 60–3 VALIDATE_DIMENSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dimension	The owner and name of the dimension in the format of owner.name.
incremental	If TRUE, check only the new rows for tables of this dimension. If FALSE, check all the rows.
check_nulls	If TRUE, then all level columns are verified to be non-null. If FALSE, this check is omitted. Specify FALSE when non-NULLness is guaranteed by other means, such as NOT NULL constraints.
statement_id	A client-supplied unique identifier to associate output rows with specific invocations of the procedure.

61

DBMS_DNFS

The DBMS_DNFS package provides an interface to assists in creating a database using files in the backup set.

See Also: *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_DNFSZ
  - Security Model
- Using DBMS_DNFS

Using DBMS_DNFS

Security Model

This package has to be executed by users with `SYSDBA` privileges.

Summary of DBMS_DNFS Subprograms

Table 61–1 DBMS_DNFS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLONEDB_RENAMEFILE Procedure on page 61-5	Renames datafiles that were pointing to the backup set to the actual file name in cloned database.

CLONEDB_RENAMEFILE Procedure

This procedure is used to rename datafiles that were pointing to the backup set to the actual file name in cloned database. The `srcfile` is the file name that represents the data file in the backup image copy or a read-only storage snapshot. The `destfile` destination file path must point to a NFS volume where cloneDB datafiles will be created. When the procedure is run successfully, the control file record is updated with the new datafile name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DNFS.CLONEDB_RENAMEFILE (
   srcfile        IN         VARCHAR2,
   destfile       IN         VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 61–2 CLONEDB_RENAMEFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`srcfile`	Source datafile name in the control file
`destfile`	New datafile name

62

DBMS_DST

The DBMS_DST package provides an interface to apply the Daylight Saving Time (DST) patch to the Timestamp with Time Zone datatype.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*
- *Oracle Database Reference*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DST

Overview

The transition period during which Daylight Saving Time comes into effect, or stops being in effect, has the potential for problems, such as data loss, when handling timestamps with time zone data. The `DBMS_DST` package enables working with these transitions in the context of a set of rules.

Security Model

The DBMS_DST package is an invoker's rights package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about using Invoker Rights or Definer Rights

The execute privilege on the package is granted to the EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE role. This role is normally granted to selected users to allow EXECUTE privileges for packages and procedures in the data dictionary.

The user that invokes the package must have the following privileges:

- CREATE ANY TABLE
- ALTER ANY TABLE
- DROP ANY TABLE
- SELECT ANY TABLE
- LOCK ANY TABLE
- ALTER ANY INDEX
- ALTER ANY TRIGGER
- UPDATE ANY TABLE
- EXECUTE ANY TYPE

Views

The DBMS_DST package uses the views shown in Table 62–1, " Views used by DBMS_DST", further described in the *Oracle Database Reference*:

Table 62–1 Views used by DBMS_DST

View	Description
DBA_TSTZ_TABLES	Displays information about all tables in the database, which have columns defined on TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatypes or object types containing attributes of TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatypes. Its columns are the same as those in ALL_TSTZ_TABLES
USER_TSTZ_TABLES	Displays information about the tables owned by the current user, which have columns defined on TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatypes or object types containing attributes of TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatypes. Its columns (except for OWNER) are the same as those in ALL_TSTZ_TABLES.
ALL_TSTZ_TABLES	Displays information about the tables accessible to the current user, which have columns defined on TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatypes or object types containing attributes of TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatypes

Summary of DBMS_DST Subprograms

Table 62–2 DBMS_DST Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BEGIN_PREPARE Procedure on page 62-7	Starts a prepare window
BEGIN_UPGRADE Procedure on page 62-8	Starts an upgrade window
CREATE_AFFECTED_TABLE Procedure on page 62-9	Creates a table that has the schema shown in the comments for the FIND_AFFECTED_TABLES Procedure
CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure on page 62-10	Creates a log error table
CREATE_TRIGGER_TABLE Procedure on page 62-11	Creates a table that is used to record active triggers disabled before performing upgrade on the table, having not been enabled due to fatal failure during the upgrading process
END_PREPARE Procedure on page 62-12	Ends a prepare window
END_UPGRADE Procedure on page 62-13	Ends an upgrade window
FIND_AFFECTED_TABLES Procedure on page 62-14	Finds all the tables that have affected TSTZ data due to the new timezone version
UPGRADE_DATABASE Procedure on page 62-15	Upgrades all tables in the database that have one or more columns defined on the TSTZ type, or an ADT containing the TSTZ type
UPGRADE_SCHEMA Procedure on page 62-17	Upgrades tables in a specified list of schemas that has one or more columns defined on the TSTZ type, or an ADT containing the TSTZ type
UPGRADE_TABLE Procedure on page 62-19	Upgrades a specified list of tables that has one or more columns defined on the TSTZ type or an ADT containing the TSTZ type

BEGIN_PREPARE Procedure

This procedure starts a prepare window. Once a prepare window is started successfully, the database property 'DST_UPGRADE_STATE' is set to 'PREPARE', and the database property 'SECONDARY_TT_VERSION' is set to a new timezone version.

The prepare window lets a DBA investigate data affected by the upgrade, and so judge when it is optimal to perform the upgrade. The prepare window can overlap normal database operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.BEGIN_PREPARE (
   new_version                IN  BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 62–3 BEGIN_PREPARE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_version	New timezone version to which the database is to be prepared to upgrade

BEGIN_UPGRADE Procedure

This procedure starts an upgrade window. When an upgraded window is started successfully, the TSTZ data in the dictionary tables is upgraded to reflect the new timezone version, and the database property `'DST_UPGRADE_STATE'` is set to `'UPGRADE'`. Once `BEGIN_UPGRADE` has been performed successfully, the user must re-start the database. After a successful restart, the database property `'PRIMARY_TT_VERSION'` is the new timezone version, and `'SECONDARY_TT_VERSION'` is the old timezone version.

The procedure operates atomically, and upgrades all or none of the dictionary tables and the database properties. It must be called in the database in `OPEN MIGRATE` mode.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.BEGIN_UPGRADE (
   new_version                IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   error_on_overlap_time      IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   error_on_nonexisting_time  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 62–4 BEGIN_UPGRADE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`new_version`	New timezone version to which the database is to be upgraded
`error_on_overlap_time`	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'overlap' time semantic conversion error. The default is `TRUE`. For more information about boundary cases, see *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.
`error_on_nonexisting_time`	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'non-existing' time semantic conversion error. The default is `TRUE`.

CREATE_AFFECTED_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a table that has the schema shown in the comments for the FIND_AFFECTED_TABLES Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.CREATE_AFFECTED_TABLE (
   table_name      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 62–5 CREATE_AFFECTED_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of the table created

Usage Notes

This procedures takes a table_name without schema qualification, creating a table within the current user schema.

CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a log error table which has the following schema:

```
CREATE TABLE dst$error_table(
   table_owner     VARCHAR2(30),
   table_name      VARCHAR2(30),
   column_name     VARCHAR2(4000),
   rid             ROWID,
   error_number    NUMBER)
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.CREATE_ERROR_TABLE (
   table_name      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 62–6 CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of the table created

Usage Notes

- This procedures takes a table_name without schema qualification, creating a table within the current user schema.
- The error number is found when upgrading time zone file and timestamp with time zone data. For more information about error handling when upgrading time zone file and timestamp with time zone data, see Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide

CREATE_TRIGGER_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a table that has the following schema.

```
CREATE TABLE dst_trigger_table (
trigger_owner  VARCHAR2(30),
trigger_name   VARCHAR2(30));
```

This table is used to record active triggers that are disabled before performing upgrade on the table, having not been enabled due to fatal failure during the upgrading process.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.CREATE_TRIGGER_TABLE (
   table_name     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 62–7 CREATE_TRIGGER_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of table to be created

Usage Notes

This procedures takes a table_name without schema qualification, creating a table within the current user schema.

END_PREPARE Procedure

This procedure ends a prepare window.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.BEGIN_PREPARE;
```

END_UPGRADE Procedure

This procedure ends an upgrade window. An upgraded window is ended if all the affected user tables have been upgraded. Otherwise, the `OUT` parameter `num_of_failures` indicates how many tables have not been converted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.END_UPGRADE (
  num_of_failures    OUT  BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 62–8 END_UPGRADE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`num_of_failures`	Number of tables that fail to complete

FIND_AFFECTED_TABLES Procedure

This procedure finds all the tables which have affected TSTZ data due to the new timezone version. This procedure can only be invoked during a prepare window. The tables which have affected TSTZ data are recorded into a table indicated by parameter `affected_tables`. If semantic errors must be logged, they are recorded into a table indicated by parameter `log_errors_table`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.FIND_AFFECTED_TABLES (
   affected_tables             IN  VARCHAR2 =: 'sys.dst$affected_tables',
   log_errors                  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_errors_table            IN  VARCHAR2 =: 'sys.dst$error_table');
```

Parameters

Table 62–9 FIND_AFFECTED_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description

`affected_tables`	Name of table with the following schema:
	`CREATE TABLE dst$affected_tables (`
	`table_owner VARCHAR2(30),`
	`table_name VARCHAR2(30),`
	`column_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`row_count NUMBER,`
	`error_count NUMBER)`
	The table can be created with the CREATE_AFFECTED_TABLE Procedure.

`log_errors`	Boolean flag indicating whether to log errors during upgrade. If `FALSE`, no error is logged into the `log_errors_table` after aborting conversion of the current table. If `TRUE`, the error is logged to the `log_errors_table`. The default is `FALSE`.

`log_errors_table`	Table name with the following schema:
	`CREATE TABLE dst$error_table (`
	`table_owner VARCHAR2(30),`
	`table_name VARCHAR2(30),`
	`column_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`rid ROWID,`
	`error_number NUMBER)`
	The table can be created with the CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure. The `rid` column records the rowids of the offending rows, and the `error_number` column records the corresponding error number.

UPGRADE_DATABASE Procedure

This procedure upgrades all tables in the database, which have one or more columns defined on the TSTZ type or an ADT containing the TSTZ type. This procedure can only be invoked after an upgrade window has been started. Each table is upgraded in an atomic transaction. Note that, a base table and its materialized view log table are upgraded in an atomic transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.UPGRADE_DATABASE  (
   num_of_failures             OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   upgrade_data                IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   parallel                    IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   continue_after_errors       IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   log_errors                  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_errors_table            IN  VARCHAR2 =: 'sys.dst$error_table' ,
   error_on_overlap_time       IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   error_on_nonexisting_time   IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_triggers_table          IN  VARCHAR2 := 'sys.dst$trigger_table');
```

Parameters

Table 62–10 UPGRADE_DATABASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
num_of_failures	Number of tables that fail to complete
upgrade_data	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert TSTZ data using the new Time Zone patch File (TRUE), or to leave it unconverted (FALSE).The default is TRUE.
parallel	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert tables using PDML (Parallel DML) or Serial DML.The default is FALSE.
continue_after_errors	Boolean flag indicating whether to continue after upgrade fails on the current table. The default is TRUE.
log_errors	Boolean flag indicating whether to log errors during upgrade. If FALSE, no error is logged into the log_errors_table after aborting conversion of the current table. If TRUE, errors are logged to the log_errors_table. The default is FALSE.
log_errors_table	Table name with the following schema: CREATE TABLE dst$error_table (table_owner VARCHAR2(30), table_name VARCHAR2(30), column_name VARCHAR2(4000), rid ROWID, error_number NUMBER) The table can be created with the CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure. The rid column records the rowids of the offending rows, and the error_number column records the corresponding error number.
error_on_overlap_time	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'overlap' time semantic conversion error. The default is TRUE.

Table 62–10 (Cont.) UPGRADE_DATABASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`error_on_nonexisting_time`	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'non-existing' time semantic conversion error. The default is `TRUE`.
`log_triggers_table`	Table to log triggers which are disabled before upgrade, having not been enabled due to a fatal failure when performing an upgrade

UPGRADE_SCHEMA Procedure

This procedure upgrades tables in a specified list of schemas that have one or more columns defined on the TSTZ type, or an ADT containing the TSTZ type. This procedure can be invoked only after an upgrade window has been started. Each table is upgraded in an atomic transaction. Note that a base table and its materialized view log table are upgraded in an atomic transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.UPGRADE_SCHEMA (
   num_of_failures             OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   schema_list                 IN  VARCHAR2,
   upgrade_data                IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   parallel                    IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   continue_after_errors       IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   log_errors                  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_errors_table            IN  VARCHAR2 =: 'sys.dst$error_table' ,
   error_on_overlap_time       IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   error_on_nonexisting_time   IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_triggers_table          IN  VARCHAR2 := 'sys.dst$trigger_table');
```

Parameters

Table 62–11 UPGRADE_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
num_of_failures	Number of tables that fail to complete
schema_list	Schema name list (comma separated strings)
upgrade_data	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert TSTZ data using the new Time Zone patch File (TRUE) or to leave unconverted (FALSE).The default is TRUE.
parallel	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert tables using PDML (Parallel DML) or Serial DML.The default is FALSE.
continue_after_errors	Boolean flag indicating whether to continue after upgrade fails on the current table.The default is TRUE.
log_errors	Boolean flag indicating whether to log errors during upgrade. If FALSE, no error is logged into the log_errors_table after aborting conversion of the current table. If TRUE, the error is logged to the log_errors_table. The default is FALSE.

log_errors_table	Table name with the following schema:
	`CREATE TABLE dst$error_table (`
	`table_owner VARCHAR2(30),`
	`table_name VARCHAR2(30),`
	`column_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`rid ROWID,`
	`error_number NUMBER)`
	The table can be created with the CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure. The rid column records the rowids of the offending rows, and the error_number column records the corresponding error number.

Table 62–11 (Cont.) UPGRADE_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_on_overlap_time	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'overlap' time semantic conversion error. The default is TRUE.
error_on_nonexisting_time	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'non-existing' time semantic conversion error. The default is TRUE.
log_triggers_table	Table to log triggers that are disabled before upgrade, having not been enabled due to a fatal failure when performing an upgrade

UPGRADE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure upgrades a specified list of tables that have one or more columns defined on the TSTZ type, or an ADT containing the TSTZ type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DST.UPGRADE_TABLE  (
   num_of_failures             OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   table_list                  IN  VARCHAR2,
   upgrade_data                IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   parallel                    IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   continue_after_errors       IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   log_errors                  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_errors_table            IN  VARCHAR2 =: 'sys.dst$error_table' ,
   error_on_overlap_time       IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   error_on_nonexisting_time   IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   log_triggers_table          IN  VARCHAR2 := 'sys.dst$trigger_table',
   atomic_upgrade              IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 62–12 UPGRADE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
num_of_failures	Number of tables that fail to complete
table_list	Table name list (comma separated strings)
upgrade_data	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert TSTZ data using the new Time Zone patch File (TRUE), or to leave unconverted (FALSE). The default is TRUE.
parallel	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert tables using PDML (Parallel DML), or Serial DML. The default is FALSE.
continue_after_errors	Boolean flag indicating whether to continue after upgrade fails on the current table. The default is TRUE.
log_errors	Boolean flag indicating whether to log errors during upgrade. If FALSE, no error is logged into the log_errors_table after aborting conversion of the current table. If TRUE, the error is logged to the log_errors_table. The default is FALSE.

log_errors_table	Table name with the following schema:
	`CREATE TABLE dst$error_table (`
	`table_owner VARCHAR2(30),`
	`table_name VARCHAR2(30),`
	`column_name VARCHAR2(4000),`
	`rid ROWID,`
	`error_number NUMBER)`
	The table can be created with the CREATE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure. The rid parameter records the rowids of the offending rows and the corresponding error number.

Table 62–12 (Cont.) UPGRADE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_on_overlap_time	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'overlap' time semantic conversion error. The default is TRUE.
error_on_nonexisting_time	Boolean flag indicating whether to report errors on the 'non-existing' time semantic conversion error. The default is TRUE.
log_triggers_table	Table to log triggers that are disabled before upgrade, having not been enabled due to a fatal failure when performing an upgrade
atomic_upgrade	Boolean flag indicating whether to convert the listed tables atomically (in a single transaction). If FALSE, each table is converted in its own transaction. The default is FALSE.

Usage Notes

This procedure can only be invoked after an upgrade window has been started. The table list has to satisfy the following partial ordering:

1. If a base table has a materialized view log table, the log table must be the next item in the list.
2. If the container table for a materialized view appears in the list, the materialized view's 'non-upgraded' base tables and log tables must appear in the table list and before the container table.

A base table and its materialized view log table need to be upgraded in an atomic transaction by specifying atomic_upgrade to TRUE.

63

DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN

DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN procedures maintain the Trusted Servers List. Use these procedures to define whether a server is trusted. If a database is not trusted, Oracle refuses current user database links from the database.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN

Overview

Oracle uses local Trusted Servers Lists, along with enterprise domain membership lists stored in the enterprise LDAP directory service, to determine if another database is trusted. The LDAP directory service entries are managed with the Enterprise Security Manager Tool in Oracle Enterprise Manager.

Oracle considers another database to be "trusted" if it meets the following criteria:

1. It is in the same enterprise domain in the directory service as the local database.
2. The enterprise domain is marked as trusted in the directory service.
3. It is not listed as untrusted in the local Trusted Servers List. Current user database links will only be accepted from another database if both databases involved trust each other.

You can list a database server locally in the Trusted Servers List regardless of what is listed in the directory service. However, if you list a database that is not in the same domain as the local database, or if that domain is untrusted, the entry will have no effect.

This functionality is part of the Enterprise User Security feature of the Oracle Advanced Security Option.

Security Model

To execute DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN, the EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE role must be granted to the DBA. To select from the view TRUSTED_SERVERS, the SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE role must be granted to the DBA.

It is important to know whether all servers are trusted or not trusted. Trusting a particular server with the ALLOW_SERVER procedure does not have any effect if the database already trusts all databases, or if that database is already trusted. Similarly, denying a particular server with the DENY_SERVER procedure does not have any effect if the database already does not trust any database or if that database is already untrusted.

The procedures DENY_ALL and ALLOW_ALL delete all entries (in other words, server names) that are explicitly allowed or denied using the ALLOW_SERVER procedure or DENY_SERVER procedure respectively.

Examples

If you have not yet used the package DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN to change the trust listing, by default you trust all databases in the same enterprise domain if that domain it listed as trusted in the directory service:

```
SELECT * FROM TRUSTED_SERVERS;
TRUST     NAME
--------- --------------------
Trusted   All
```

Because all servers are currently trusted, you can execute the DENY_SERVER Procedure and specify that a particular server is not trusted:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.DENY_SERVER
                           ('SALES.US.AMERICAS.ACME_AUTO.COM');
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SELECT * FROM TRUSTED_SERVERS;
TRUST      NAME
--------- ----------------------------------------------
Untrusted SALES.US.AMERICAS.ACME_AUTO.COM
```

By executing the DENY_ALL Procedure, you can choose to not trust any database server:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.DENY_ALL;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SELECT * FROM TRUSTED_SERVERS;

TRUST      NAME
--------- ----------------------------------------------
Untrusted All
```

The ALLOW_SERVER Procedure can be used to specify that one particular database is to be trusted:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.ALLOW_SERVER
                            ('SALES.US.AMERICAS.ACME_AUTO.COM');
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SELECT * FROM TRUSTED_SERVERS;
TRUST      NAME
--------- ----------------------------------------------
Trusted   SALES.US.AMERICAS.ACME_AUTO.COM
```

Summary of DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN Subprograms

Table 63–1 DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALLOW_ALL Procedure on page 63-7	Empties the list and inserts a row indicating that all servers should be trusted
ALLOW_SERVER Procedure on page 63-8	Enables a specific server to be allowed access even though `deny` all is indicated in the list
DENY_ALL Procedure on page 63-9	Empties the list and inserts a row indicating that all servers should be untrusted
on page 63-10DENY_ SERVER Procedure	Enables a specific server to be denied access even though allow all is indicated in the list

ALLOW_ALL Procedure

This procedure empties the Trusted Servers List and specifies that all servers that are members of a trusted domain in an enterprise directory service and that are in the same domain are allowed access.

The view TRUSTED_SERVERS will show "TRUSTED ALL" indicating that the database trusts all servers that are currently trusted by the enterprise directory service.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.ALLOW_ALL;
```

Usage Notes

ALLOW_ALL only applies to servers listed as trusted in the enterprise directory service and in the same enterprise domain.

ALLOW_SERVER Procedure

This procedure ensures that the specified server is considered trusted (even if you have previously specified "`deny all`").

Syntax

```
DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.ALLOW_SERVER (
   server IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 63–2 ALLOW_SERVER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`server`	Unique, fully-qualified name of the server to be trusted.

Usage Notes

If the Trusted Servers List contains the entry "`deny all`", then this procedure adds a specification indicating that a specific database (for example, `DBx`) is to be trusted.

If the Trusted Servers List contains the entry "`allow all`", and if there is no "`deny DBx`" entry in the list, then executing this procedure causes no change.

If the Trusted Servers List contains the entry "`allow all`", and if there is a "`deny DBx`" entry in the list, then that entry is deleted.

DENY_ALL Procedure

This procedure empties the Trusted Servers List and specifies that all servers are denied access.

The view TRUSTED_SERVERS will show "UNTRUSTED ALL" indicating that no servers are currently trusted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.DENY_ALL;
```

DENY_SERVER Procedure

This procedure ensures that the specified server is considered untrusted (even if you have previously specified `allow all`).

Syntax

```
DBMS_DISTRIBUTED_TRUST_ADMIN.DENY_SERVER (
   server IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 63–3 DENY_SERVER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`server`	Unique, fully-qualified name of the server to be untrusted.

Usage Notes

If the Trusted Servers List contains the entry `allow all`, then this procedure adds an entry indicating that the specified database (for example, `DBx`) is not to be trusted.

If the Trusted Servers List contains the entry "`deny all`", and if there is no "`allow DBx`" entry in the list, then this procedure causes no change.

If the Trusted Servers List contains the entry "`deny all`", and if there is an "`allow DBx`" entry, then this procedure causes that entry to be deleted.

64

DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES

The `DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES` package provides helper functions for edition-related operations.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES

Overview

The DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES package implements an interface which provides helper functions for edition-related operations.

Security Model

This package is owned by `SYS` with execute access granted to `PUBLIC`. It runs with invoker's rights, that is, with the security profile of the caller.

Exceptions

Table 64–1 DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES Error Messages

Error	Description
ORA-38817	Insufficient privileges
ORA-942	Missing table

Summary of DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES Subprograms

Table 64–2 DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SET_EDITIONING_VIEWS_READ_ONLY Procedure on page 64-7	Given the schema name and table name, this procedure sets the corresponding editioning views in all editions to `READ ONLY` or `READ/WRITE`
SET_NULL_COLUMN_VALUES_TO_EXPR Procedure on page 64-8	For use only during an edition-based redefinition (EBR) exercise

SET_EDITIONING_VIEWS_READ_ONLY Procedure

Given the schema name and table name, this procedure sets the corresponding editioning views in all editions to READ ONLY or READ/WRITE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES.SET_EDITIONING_VIEWS_READ_ONLY (
   table_name IN VARCHAR2,
   owner      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   read_only  IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 64–3 SET_EDITIONING_VIEWS_READ_ONLY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Base table of the editioning views
owner	Base table schema. The default (or NULL) is the current schema.
read_only	TRUE to set the views to read-only; FALSE (or NULL) sets the views to READ/WRITE. Default is TRUE.

Usage Notes

The user must have the following privileges:

- Owner of the table, or have the ALTER ANY TABLE system privileges
- USE object privilege on all the editions for which the views are defined

SET_NULL_COLUMN_VALUES_TO_EXPR Procedure

This procedure replaces `NULL` values in a replacement column with the value of an expression. The expression evaluation cost is deferred to future updates and queries. The procedure is intended for use only during an edition-based redefinition (EBR) exercise.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Development Guide* regarding transforming pre- to post-upgrade representation

Syntax

```
DBMS_EDITIONS_UTILITIES.SET_NULL_COLUMN_VALUES_TO_EXPR;
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   expression    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 64–4 SET_NULL_COLUMN_VALUES_TO_EXPR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	A potentially schema-qualified table name
`column_name`	Name of the column to be updated
`expression`	An expression composed of columns in the same table, constants, and SQL functions

65

DBMS_EPG

The DBMS_EPG package implements the embedded PL/SQL gateway that enables a Web browser to invoke a PL/SQL stored procedure through an HTTP listener.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_EPG

Overview

The DBMS_EPG package is a platform on which PL/SQL users develop and deploy PL/SQL Web applications. The embedded PL/SQL gateway is an embedded version of the gateway that runs in the XML database HTTP server in the Oracle database. It provides the core features of mod_plsql in the database but does not require the Oracle HTTP server powered by Apache.

In order to make a PL/SQL application accessible from a browser by way of HTTP, a Database Access Descriptor (DAD) must be created and mapped to a virtual path. A DAD is a set of configuration values used for database access and the virtual path mapping makes the application accessible under a virtual path of the XML DB HTTP Server. A DAD is represented as a servlet in XML DB HTTP Server.

Security Model

The XDBADMIN role is required to invoke the configuration interface. It may invoked by the database user "XDB".

The authorization interface can be invoked by any user.

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by the DBMS_EPG package.

Table 65–1 DBMS_EPG Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Description
DAD_NOT_FOUND	20000	Database Access Descriptor (DAD) %s not found. Ensure that the name of the DAD is correct and that it exists.

Data Structures

The DBMS_EPG package defines a TABLE type.

VARCHAR2_TABLE Table Type

This type is used by the procedures GET_ALL_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTES, GET_ALL_DAD_ATTRIBUTES, GET_ALL_DAD_MAPPINGS, and GET_DAD_LIST to return lists of attribute names, attribute values, virtual paths, and database access descriptors (DAD).

```
TYPE VARCHAR2_TABLE IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(4000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Subprogram Groups

The DBMS_EPG consists of two interfaces:

- Configuration Subprograms
- Authorization Subprograms

Configuration Subprograms

The Configuration subprogram group contain the subprogram interfaces to examine and modify the global and database access descriptor (DAD) specific settings of the embedded PL/SQL gateway.

Table 65–2 Configuration Subprogram Group

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_DAD Procedure on page 65-12	Creates a new DAD
DELETE_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-14	Deletes a DAD attribute
DELETE_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-15	Deletes a global attribute
DROP_DAD Procedure on page 65-16	Drops a DAD
GET_ALL_DAD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 65-17	Retrieves all the attributes of a DAD.
GET_ALL_DAD_MAPPINGS Procedure on page 65-18	Retrieves all virtual paths to which the specified DAD is mapped.
GET_ALL_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 65-19	Retrieves all global attributes and values
GET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Function on page 65-20	Retrieves the value of a DAD attribute
GET_DAD_LIST Procedure on page 65-21	Retrieves a list of all DADs for an Embedded Gateway instance.
GET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Function on page 65-22	Retrieves the value of a global attribute
MAP_DAD Procedure on page 65-23	Maps a DAD to the specified virtual path.
SET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-24	Sets the value for a DAD
SET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-26	Sets the value of a global attribute
UNMAP_DAD Procedure on page 65-27	Unmaps a DAD from the specified virtual path

Authorization Subprograms

The Authorization subprogram group contains the subprogram interfaces to authorize and deauthorize the use of a database user's privileges by the embedded PL/SQL gateway through a specific database access descriptor (DAD)

Table 65–3 Authorization Subprogram Group

Subprogram	Description
AUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure on page 65-11	Authorizes a DAD to invoke procedures and access document tables with a database user's privileges
DEAUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure on page 65-13	Deauthorizes a DAD with regard to invoking procedures and accessing document tables with a database user's privileges

Summary of DBMS_EPG Subprograms

Table 65–4 DBMS_EPG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
AUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure on page 65-11	authorizes a DAD to invoke procedures and access document tables with a database user's privileges
CREATE_DAD Procedure on page 65-12	Creates a new DAD
DEAUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure on page 65-13	Deauthorizes a DAD with regard to invoking procedures and accessing document tables with a database user's privileges
DELETE_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-14	Deletes a DAD attribute
DELETE_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-15	Deletes a global attribute
DROP_DAD Procedure on page 65-16	Drops a DAD
GET_ALL_DAD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 65-17	Retrieves all the attributes of a DAD.
GET_ALL_DAD_MAPPINGS Procedure on page 65-18	Retrieves all virtual paths to which the specified DAD is mapped.
GET_ALL_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 65-19	Retrieves all global attributes and values
GET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Function on page 65-20	Retrieves the value of a DAD attribute
GET_DAD_LIST Procedure on page 65-21	Retrieves a list of all DADs for an Embedded Gateway instance.
GET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Function on page 65-22	Retrieves the value of a global attribute
MAP_DAD Procedure on page 65-23	Maps a DAD to the specified virtual path.
SET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-24	Sets the value for a DAD
SET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 65-26	Sets the value of a global attribute
UNMAP_DAD Procedure on page 65-27	Unmaps a DAD from the specified virtual path

AUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure

This procedure authorizes a DAD to invoke procedures and access document tables with a database user's privileges. The invoker can always authorize the use of her/his own privileges.

> **See Also:** Authorization Subprograms on page 65-9 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.AUTHORIZE_DAD (
   dad_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   path      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 65–5 AUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD to create
user	The user whose privileges to deauthorize. If use, the invoker is assumed.

Usage Notes

- To authorize the use of another user's privileges, the invoker must have the ALTER USER system privilege.
- The DAD must exist but its "database-username" DAD attribute does not have to be set to user to authorize.
- Multiple users can authorize the same DAD and it is up to the DAD's "database-username" setting to decide which user's privileges to use.

Exceptions

Raises an error if the DAD or user does not exist, or the invoker does not have the needed system privilege.

Examples

```
DBMS_EPG.AUTHORIZE_DAD('HR');
```

CREATE_DAD Procedure

This procedure creates a new DAD.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.CREATE_DAD (
   dad_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   path      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 65–6 CREATE_DAD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD to create
path	The virtual path to which to map the DAD

DEAUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure

This procedure deauthorizes a DAD with regard to invoking procedures and accessing document tables with a database user's privileges. The invoker can always deauthorize the use of his own privileges.

> **See Also:** Authorization Subprograms on page 65-9 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.DEAUTHORIZE_DAD (
   dad_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   path      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 65–7 DEAUTHORIZE_DAD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD for which to deauthorize use
user	The user whose privileges to deauthorize. If use, the invoker is assumed.

Usage Notes

To deauthorize the use of another user's privileges, the invoker must have the ALTER USER system privilege.

Exceptions

Raises an error if the DAD or user does not exist, or the invoker does not have the needed system privilege.

Examples

```
DBMS_EPG.DEAUTHORIZE_DAD('HR');
```

DELETE_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure deletes a DAD attribute.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.DELETE_DAD_ATTRIBUTE (
   dad_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   attr_name     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 65–8 DELETE_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD for which to delete a DAD attribute
attr_name	The name of the DAD attribute to delete

Exceptions

Raises an error if DAD does not exist

DELETE_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure deletes a global attribute.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.DELETE_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE (
   attr_name     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 65–9 DELETE_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attr_name	The global attribute to delete

DROP_DAD Procedure

This procedure drops a DAD. All the virtual-path mappings of the DAD will be dropped also

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.DROP_DAD (
   dadname  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 65–10 DROP_DAD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The DAD to drop

Exceptions

Raises an error if the DAD does not exist.

GET_ALL_DAD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure retrieves all the attributes of a DAD. The outputs are 2 correlated index-by tables of the name/value pairs.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.GET_ALL_DAD_ATTRIBUTES (
   dad_name      IN          VARCHAR2,
   attr_names    OUT NOCOPY  VARCHAR2_TABLE,
   attr_values   OUT NOCOPY  VARCHAR2_TABLE);
```

Parameters

Table 65–11 GET_ALL_DAD_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_names	The name of the DAD
attr_names	The attribute names
attr_values	The attribute values

Exceptions

Raises an error if DAD does not exist.

Usage Notes

If the DAD has no attributes set, then attr_names and attr_values will be set to empty arrays.

GET_ALL_DAD_MAPPINGS Procedure

This procedure retrieves all virtual paths to which the specified DAD is mapped.

See Also: Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.GET_ALL_DAD_MAPPINGS (
   dad_name      IN          VARCHAR2,
   paths         OUT NOCOPY  VARCHAR2_TABLE);
```

Parameters

Table 65–12 GET_ALL_DAD_MAPPINGS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_names	The name of the DAD
paths	The virtual paths to which h the DAD is mapped

Exceptions

Raises an error if DAD does not exist.

Usage Notes

If the DAD is not mapped to any virtual path, paths will be set to empty arrays.

GET_ALL_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure retrieves all global attributes and values. The outputs are 2 correlated index-by tables of the name/value pairs.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.GET_ALL_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTES (
   attr_names     OUT   NOCOPY  VARCHAR2_TABLE,
   attr_values    OUT   NOCOPY  VARCHAR2_TABLE);
```

Parameters

Table 65–13 GET_ALL_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attr_names	The global attribute names
attr_values	The values of the global attributes

Usage Notes

If the gateway instance has no global attributes set, then attr_names and attr_values will be set to empty arrays.

GET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Function

This procedure retrieves the value of a DAD attribute.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.GET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE (
   dad_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   attr_name    IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 65–14 GET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD for which to delete an attribute
attr_name	The name of the attribute to delete

Return values

Returns the DAD attribute value. Returns NULL if attribute is unknown or has not been set.

Exceptions

Raises an error if DAD does not exist.

GET_DAD_LIST Procedure

This procedure retrieves a list of all DADs for an Embedded Gateway instance.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.GET_DAD_LIST (
   dad_names     OUT NOCOPY  VARCHAR2_TABLE);
```

Parameters

Table 65–15 GET_DAD_LIST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_names	The list of all DADs

Usage Notes

If no DADs exist then dad_names will be set to an empty array.

GET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Function

This function retrieves the value of a global attribute.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.GET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE (
   attr_name  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 65–16 GET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attr_name	The global attribute to retrieve

Return Values

Returns the global attribute value. Returns NULL if attribute has not been set or is not a valid attribute.

MAP_DAD Procedure

This procedure maps a DAD to the specified virtual path. If the virtual path exists already, the old virtual-path mapping will be overridden.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.MAP_DAD (
   dad_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   path      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 65–17 MAP_DAD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD to map
path	The virtual path to map

Exceptions

Raises and error if the DAD does not exist.

SET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure sets the value for a DAD.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.SET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE (
   dad_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   attr_name   IN  VARCHAR2,   attr_value  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 65–18 SET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dad_name	The name of the DAD for which to set the attribute
attr_name	The name of the attribute to set
attr_value	The attribute value to set

Table 65–19 Mapping Between mod_plsql and Embedded PL/SQL Gateway DAD Attributes

mod_plsql DAD Attribute	Embedded PL/SQL Gateway DAD Attribute	Allows Multiple Occurr-ences	Legal Values
PlsqlAfterProcedure	after-procedure	No	String
PlsqlAlwaysDescribeProcedure	always-describe-procedure	No	Enumeration of On, Off
PlsqlAuthenticationMode	authentication-mode	No	Enumeration of Basic, SingleSignOn, GlobalOwa, CustomOwa, PerPackageOwa
PlsqlBeforeProcedure	before-procedure	No	String
PlsqlBindBucketLengths	bind-bucket-lengths	Yes	Unsigned integer
PlsqlBindBucketWidths	bind-bucket-widths	Yes	Unsigned integer
PlsqlCGIEnvironmentList	cgi-environment-list	Yes	String
PlsqlCompatibilityMode	compatibility-mode	No	Unsigned integer
PlsqlDatabaseUsername	database-username	No	String
PlsqlDefaultPage	default-page	No	String
PlsqlDocumentPath	document-path	No	String
PlsqlDocumentProcedure	document-procedure	No	String
PlsqlDocumentTablename	document-table-name	No	String

Table 65–19 (Cont.) Mapping Between mod_plsql and Embedded PL/SQL Gateway DAD Attributes

mod_plsql DAD Attribute	Embedded PL/SQL Gateway DAD Attribute	Allows Multiple Occurr-ences	Legal Values
PlsqlErrorStyle	error-style	No	Enumeration of ApacheStyle, ModplsqlStyle, DebugStyle
PlsqlExclusionList	exclusion-list	Yes	String
PlsqlFetchBufferSize	fetch-buffer-size	No	Unsigned integer
PlsqlInfoLogging	info-logging	No	Enumeration of InfoDebug
PlsqlOWADebugEnable	owa-debug-enable	No	Enumeration of On, Off
PlsqlMaxRequestsPerSession	max-requests-per-session	No	Unsigned integer
PlsqlNLSLanguage	nls-language	No	String
PlsqlPathAlias	path-alias	No	String
PlsqlPathAliasProcedure	path-alias-procedure	No	String
PlsqlRequestValidationFunction	request-validation-function	No	String
PlsqlSessionCookieName	session-cookie-name	No	String
PlsqlSessionStateManagement	session-state-management	No	Enumeration of StatelessWithResetP kageState, StatelessWithFastRe ackageState, StatelessWithPreserv ackageState
PlsqlTransferMode	transfer-mode	No	Enumeration of Cha Raw
PlsqlUploadAsLongRaw	upload-as-long-raw	No	String

Exceptions

Raises an error if DAD does not exist or the attribute is unknown.

Usage Notes

- If `attr_name` attribute has been set before, then the old value will be overwritten with the new `attr_value` argument.
- The embedded gateway assumes default values when the attributes are not set. The default values of the DAD attributes should be sufficient for most users of the embedded gateway. mod_plsql users should note the following
  - The `PlsqlDatabasePassword` attribute is not needed.
  - The `PlsqlDatabaseConnectString` attribute is not needed because the embedded gateway does not support logon to external databases.

Examples

```
DBMS_EPG.SET_DAD_ATTRIBUTE('HR', 'default-page', 'HRApp.home');
```

SET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure sets the value of a global attribute.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.SET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE (
   attr_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_value   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 65–20 SET_GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attr_name	The global attribute to set
attr_value	The attribute value to set

Table 65–21 Mapping Between mod_plsql and Embedded PL/SQL Gateway Global Attributes

mod_plsql Global Attribute	Embedded PL/SQL Gateway Global Attribute	Allows Multiple Occurr-ences	Legal Values
PlsqlLogLevel	log-level	No	Unsigned integer
PlsqlMaxParameters	max-parameters	No	Unsigned integer

Usage Notes

- The attribute name is case sensitive. The value may or may not be case-sensitive depending on the attribute.
- If attr_name attribute has been set before, then the old value will be overwritten with the new attr_value argument.

Exceptions

Raises an error if the attribute is unknown.

Examples

```
dbms_epg.set_global_attribute('max-parameters', '100');
```

UNMAP_DAD Procedure

This procedure unmaps a DAD from the specified virtual path. If path is `NULL`, the procedure removes all virtual-path mappings for the DAD but keeps the DAD.

> **See Also:** Configuration Subprograms on page 65-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_EPG.UNMAP_DAD (
   dad_name IN VARCHAR2,
   path     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 65–22 UNMAP_DAD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`dad_name`	The name of the DAD to unmap
`path`	The virtual path to unmap

Usage Notes

Raises and error if the DAD does not exist.

66

DBMS_ERRLOG

The DBMS_ERRLOG package provides a procedure that enables you to create an error logging table so that DML operations can continue after encountering errors rather than abort and roll back. This enables you to save time and system resources.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information regarding how to use DBMS_ERRLOG and *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for error_logging_clause syntax

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ERRLOG

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_ERRLOG` package.

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled by granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles. The `EXECUTE` privilege is granted publicly. However, to create an error logging table, you need `SELECT` access on the base table or view, the `CREATE TABLE` privilege, as well as tablespace quota for the target tablespace.

Summary of DBMS_ERRLOG Subprograms

Table 66–1 DBMS_ERRLOG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_ERROR_LOG Procedure on page 66-5	Creates the error logging table used in DML error logging

CREATE_ERROR_LOG Procedure

This procedure creates the error logging table needed to use the DML error logging capability.

LONG, CLOB, BLOB, BFILE, and ADT datatypes are not supported in the columns.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ERRLOG.CREATE_ERROR_LOG (
   dml_table_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   err_log_table_name        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   err_log_table_owner       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   err_log_table_space       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   skip_unsupported          IN BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 66–2 CREATE_ERROR_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dml_table_name	The name of the DML table to base the error logging table on. The name can be fully qualified (for example, emp, scott.emp, "EMP", "SCOTT"."EMP"). If a name component is enclosed in double quotes, it will not be upper cased.
err_log_table_name	The name of the error logging table you will create. The default is the first 25 characters in the name of the DML table prefixed with 'ERR$_'. Examples are the following: dml_table_name: 'EMP', err_log_table_name: 'ERR$_EMP' dml_table_name: '"Emp2"', err_log_table_name: 'ERR$_Emp2'
err_log_table_owner	The name of the owner of the error logging table. You can specify the owner in dml_table_name. Otherwise, the schema of the current connected user is used.
err_log_table_space	The tablespace the error logging table will be created in. If not specified, the default tablespace for the user owning the DML error logging table will be used.
skip_unsupported	When set to TRUE, column types that are not supported by error logging will be skipped over and not added to the error logging table. When set to FALSE, an unsupported column type will cause the procedure to terminate. The default is FALSE.

Examples

First, create an error log table for the channels table in the SH schema, using the default name generation.

Then, see all columns of the table channels:

```
SQL> DESC channels
Name                                      Null?    Type
----------------------------              -------  -----
CHANNEL_ID                                NOT NULL CHAR(1)
CHANNEL_DESC                              NOT NULL VARCHAR2(20)
CHANNEL_CLASS                                      VARCHAR2(20)
```

Finally, see all columns of the generated error log table. Note the mandatory control columns that are created by the package:

```
SQL> DESC ERR$_CHANNELS
Name                              Null?    Type
----------------- ----    ----ORA_ERR_NUMBER$
NUMBER
ORA_ERR_MESG$                             VARCHAR2(2000)
ORA_ERR_ROWID$                            ROWID
ORA_ERR_OPTYP$                            VARCHAR2(2)
ORA_ERR_TAG$                              VARCHAR2(2000)
CHANNEL_ID                                VARCHAR2(4000)
CHANNEL_DESC                              VARCHAR2(4000)
CHANNEL_CLASS                             VARCHAR2(4000)
```

See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information regarding control columns.

67

DBMS_FGA

The DBMS_FGA package provides fine-grained security functions.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_FGA

Security Model

You must have the AUDIT_ADMIN role and the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_FGA package to administer audit policies. Because the audit function can potentially capture all user environment and application context values, policy administration should be executable by privileged users only. The policy event handler module will be executed with the module owner's privilege.

Operational Notes

This package is available for only cost-based optimization. The rule-based optimizer may generate unnecessary audit records since audit monitoring can occur before row filtering. For both the rule-based optimizer and the cost-based optimizer, you can query the `SQL_TEXT` and `SQL_BINDS` columns of the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL` view to analyze the SQL text and corresponding bind variables that are issued.

Summary of DBMS_FGA Subprograms

Table 67–1 DBMS_FGA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_POLICY Procedure on page 67-6	Creates an audit policy using the supplied predicate as the audit condition
DISABLE_POLICY Procedure on page 67-11	Disables an audit policy
DROP_POLICY Procedure on page 67-12	Drops an audit policy
ENABLE_POLICY Procedure on page 67-13	Enables an audit policy

ADD_POLICY Procedure

This procedure creates an audit policy using the supplied predicate as the audit condition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FGA.ADD_POLICY(
   object_schema      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   policy_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   audit_condition    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   audit_column       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   handler_schema     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   handler_module     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   enable             IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   statement_types    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT SELECT,
   audit_trail        IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   audit_column_opts  IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT ANY_COLUMNS,
   policy_owner       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 67–2 ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema of the object to be audited. If NULL, the current log-on user schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of the object to be audited
policy_name	Unique name of the policy
audit_condition	A condition in a row that indicates a monitoring condition. NULL is allowed and acts as TRUE.
audit_column	Columns to be checked for access. These can include OLS hidden columns or object type columns. The default, NULL, causes audit if any column is accessed or affected.
handler_schema	Schema that contains the event handler. The default, NULL, causes the current schema to be used.
handler_module	Function name of the event handler; includes the package name if necessary. This function is invoked only after the first row that matches the audit condition in the query is processed. If the procedure fails with an exception, the user SQL statement will fail as well.
enable	Enables the policy if TRUE, which is the default
statement_types	SQL statement types to which this policy is applicable: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT only
audit_trail	In an environment that has not yet migrated to unified auditing, the destination (DB or XML) of fine-grained audit records. Also specifies whether to populate the LSQLTEXT and LSQLBIND columns in the FGA_LOG$ system table.
audit_column_opts	Establishes whether a statement is audited when the query references *any* column specified in the audit_column parameter or only when *all* such columns are referenced

Table 67–2 (Cont.) ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
policy_owner	User who owns the fine-grained auditing policy. However, this setting is not a user-supplied argument. The Oracle Data Pump client uses this setting internally to recreate the fine-grained audit policies appropriately.

Usage Notes

- A table or view can have a maximum of 256 fine-grained audit policies applied to it.
- If object_schema is not specified, then the current log-on user schema is assumed.
- An FGA policy should not be applied to out-of-line columns such as LOB columns.
- Each audit policy is applied to the query individually. However, at most one audit record may be generated for each policy, no matter how many rows being returned satisfy that policy's audit_condition. In other words, whenever any number of rows being returned satisfy an audit condition defined on the table, a single audit record will be generated for each such policy.
- If a table with an FGA policy defined on it receives a Fast Path insert or a vectored update, the hint is automatically disabled before any such operations. Disabling the hint allows auditing to occur according to the policy's terms. (One example of a Fast Path insert is the statement INSERT-WITH-APPEND-hint.)
- The audit_condition must be a boolean expression that can be evaluated using the values in the row being inserted, updated, or deleted. The expression can also use functions, such as the USER or SYS_CONTEXT functions.

  The expression must not combine conditions using operators such as AND and OR. audit_condition can be NULL (or omitted), which is interpreted as TRUE, but it cannot contain the following elements:

  - Subqueries or sequences
  - The following attributes of the USERENV namespace when accessed using the SYS_CONTEXT function:
    * CURRENT_SQL
    * CURRENT_SQL_LENGTH
    * CURRENT_BIND
  - Any use of the pseudo columns LEVEL, PRIOR, or ROWNUM.

  Specifying an audit condition of "1=1" to force auditing of all specified statements ("statement_types") affecting the specified column ("audit_column") is no longer needed to achieve this purpose. A NULL value for audit_condition causes audit to happen even if no rows are processed, so that all actions on a table with this policy are audited.
- The audit_condition is evaluated using the privileges of the user who creates the policy.
- For the audit_condition setting, do not include functions, which execute the auditable statement on the same base table, in the audit_condition setting. For example, suppose you create a function that executes an INSERT statement on the HR.EMPLOYEES table. The policy audit_condition contains this function and it is

for INSERT statements (as set by the statement_types parameter). When the policy is used, the function executes recursively until the system has run out of memory. This can raise the error ORA-1000: maximum open cursors exceeded or ORA-00036: maximum number of recursive SQL levels (50) exceeded.

- Do not issue the DBMS_FGA.ENABLE_POLICY or DBMS_FGA.DISABLE_POLICY statement from a policy function in a condition.
- The audit function (handler_module) is an alerting mechanism for the administrator. The required interface for such a function is as follows:

  ```
  PROCEDURE fname ( object_schema VARCHAR2, object_name VARCHAR2, policy_name
  VARCHAR2 )  AS ...
  ```

  where *fname* is the name of the procedure, *object_schema* is the name of the schema of the table audited, *object_name* is the name of the table to be audited, and *policy_name* is the name of the policy being enforced. The audit function will be executed with the function owner's privilege.
- If you have migrated to unified auditing, then omit the audit_trail parameter because the audit records will automatically be written to the unified audit trail.
- Be aware that sensitive data, such as credit card information, can be recorded in clear text.
- The audit_trail parameter, if used, specifies both where the fine-grained audit trail will be written and whether it is to include the query's SQL Text and SQL Bind variable information (typically in columns named LSQLTEXT and LSQLBIND):
  - If audit_trail includes XML, then fine-grained audit records are written to XML-format operating system files stored in the directory specified by an AUDIT_FILE_DEST statement in SQL. (The default AUDIT_FILE_DEST is $ORACLE_BASE/admin/$DB_UNIQUE_NAME/adump on Unix-based systems, and $ORACLE_BASE\admin\$DB_UNIQUE_NAME\adump on Windows systems.)
  - If audit_trail includes DB instead, then the audit records are written to the SYS.FGA_LOG$ table in the database. However, for read-only databases, Oracle Database writes the fine-grained audit records to XML files, regardless of the audit_trail settings.
  - If audit_trail includes EXTENDED, then the query's SQL Text and SQL Bind variable information are included in the audit trail.
  - For example:
    * Setting audit_trail to DBMS_FGA.DB sends the audit trail to the SYS.FGA_LOG$ table in the database and omits SQL Text and SQL Bind.
    * Setting audit_trail to DBMS_FGA.DB + DBMS_FGA.EXTENDED sends the audit trail to the SYS.FGA_LOG$ table in the database and includes SQL Text and SQL Bind.
    * Setting audit_trail to DBMS_FGA.XML writes the audit trail in XML files sent to the operating system and omits SQL Text and SQL Bind.
    * Setting audit_trail to DBMS_FGA.XML + DBMS_FGA.EXTENDED writes the audit trail in XML files sent to the operating system and includes SQL Text and SQL Bind.

  The audit_trail parameter appears in the ALL_AUDIT_POLICIES view.
- You can change the operating system destination using the following command:

  ```
  ALTER SYSTEM SET AUDIT_FILE_DEST =  New Directory DEFERRED
  ```

- On many platforms, XML audit files are named *process_name_processId*.xml, for example, ora_2111.xml. Alternatively,l on Windows, the XML audit files are named *process_name_ThreadId*.xml (or *process_name_ProcessId*.xml if the process is not running as a thread).
- The audit_column_opts parameter establishes whether a statement is audited
  - when the query references *any* column specified in the audit_column parameter (audit_column_opts = DBMS_FGA.ANY_COLUMNS), or
  - only when *all* such columns are referenced (audit_column_opts = DBMS_FGA.ALL_COLUMNS).

  The default is DBMS_FGA.ANY_COLUMNS.

  The ALL_AUDIT_POLICIES view also shows audit_column_opts.
- When audit_column_opts is set to DBMS_FGA.ALL_COLUMNS, a SQL statement is audited only when all the columns mentioned in audit_column have been explicitly referenced in the statement. And these columns must be referenced in the same SQL-statement or in the sub-select.

  All these columns must refer to a single table/view or alias.

  If a SQL statement selects the columns from different table aliases, the statement will not be audited.
- Every XML audit record contains the elements AUDIT_TYPE and EXTENDED_TIMESTAMP, with the latter printed in UTC zone (with no timezone information). Values retrieved using V$XML_AUDIT_TRAIL view are converted to session timezone and printed.
- For SQL_TEXT and SQL_BIND element values (CLOB type columns), the dynamic view shows only the first 4000 characters. The underlying XML file may have more than 4000 characters for such SQL_TEXT and SQL_BIND values.
- For large numbers of XML audit files, querying V$XML_AUDIT_TRAIL is faster when they are loaded into a database table using SQL*Loader or a similar tool. XML audit files are larger than the equivalent written to OS files when AUDIT_TRAIL=OS.
- Error handling is the same as when AUDIT_TRAIL=OS. If any error occurs in writing an audit record to disk, including the directory identified by AUDIT_FILE_DEST being full, the auditing operation fails. An alert message is logged.
- The policy event handler module will be executed with the module owner's privilege.
- Do not create recursive fine-grained audit handlers. For example, suppose you create a handler that executes an INSERT statement on the HR.EMPLOYEES table. The policy that is associated with this handler is for INSERT statements (as set by the statement_types parameter). When the policy is used, the handler executes recursively until the system has run out of memory. This can raise the error ORA-1000: maximum open cursors exceeded or ORA-00036: maximum number of recursive SQL levels (50) exceeded. See also *Oracle Database Security Guide* with regard to Creating a Fine-Grained Audit Policy.
- The values for the audit_trail parameter (XML and XML+EXTENDED) cause fine-grained auditing records to be written to operating system files in XML format. A dynamic view, V$XML_AUDIT_TRAIL, makes such audit records from XML files available to DBAs through SQL query, providing enhanced usability.

Querying this view causes all XML files (all files with an `.xml` extension) in the `AUDIT_FILE_DEST` directory to be parsed and presented in relational table format.

Audit records stored in operating system files can be more secure than database-stored audit records because access can require file permissions that DBAs do not have. Operating system storage for audit records also offers higher availability, since such records remain available even if the database is temporarily inaccessible.

The `DBA_COMMON_AUDIT_TRAIL` view includes the contents of the `V$XML_AUDIT_TRAIL` dynamic view for standard and fine-grained audit records.

Note that the `V$XML_AUDIT_TRAIL` view is populated only if unified auditing is not enabled. If you have enabled unified auditing, then you can query the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL` data dictionary view for the audit trail records.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide* for an example of creating an email alert handler for a fine-grained audit policy

Examples

```
DBMS_FGA.ADD_POLICY (
   object_schema      =>  'scott',
   object_name        =>  'emp',
   policy_name        =>  'mypolicy1',
   audit_condition    =>  'sal < 100',
   audit_column       =>  'comm,sal',
   handler_schema     =>   NULL,
   handler_module     =>   NULL,
   enable             =>   TRUE,
   statement_types    =>  'INSERT, UPDATE',
   audit_column_opts  =>   DBMS_FGA.ANY_COLUMNS,
   policy_owner       =>  'sec_admin);
```

DISABLE_POLICY Procedure

This procedure disables an audit policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FGA.DISABLE_POLICY(
   object_schema  IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   policy_name    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 67–3 DISABLE_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema of the object to be audited. If NULL, the current log-on user schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of the object to be audited
policy_name	Unique name of the policy

The default value for object_schema is NULL. (If NULL, the current log-on user schema is assumed.)

Examples

```
DBMS_FGA.DISABLE_POLICY (
object_schema   =>  'scott',
object_name     =>  'emp',
policy_name     =>  'mypolicy1');
```

DROP_POLICY Procedure

This procedure drops an audit policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FGA.DROP_POLICY(
   object_schema  IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   policy_name    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 67–4 DROP_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema of the object to be audited. If NULL, the current log-on user schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of the object to be audited
policy_name	Unique name of the policy

Usage Notes

The DBMS_FGA procedures cause current DML transactions, if any, to commit before the operation unless they are inside a DDL event trigger. With DDL transactions, the DBMS_FGA procedures are part of the DDL transaction. The default value for object_schema is NULL. (If NULL, the current log-on user schema is assumed.)

> **Note:** Oracle Database automatically drops the audit policy if you remove the object specified in the object_name parameter of the DBMS_FGA.ADD_POLICY procedure, or if you drop the user who created the audit policy.

Examples

```
DBMS_FGA.DROP_POLICY (
object_schema   =>  'scott',
object_name     =>  'emp',
policy_name     =>  'mypolicy1');
```

ENABLE_POLICY Procedure

This procedure enables an audit policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FGA.ENABLE_POLICY(
   object_schema  IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   policy_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   enable         IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 67–5 ENABLE_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema of the object to be audited. If NULL, the current log-on user schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of the object to be audited
policy_name	Unique name of the policy
enable	Defaults to TRUE to enable the policy

Examples

```
DBMS_FGA.ENABLE_POLICY (
object_schema    =>  'scott',
object_name      =>  'emp',
policy_name      =>  'mypolicy1',
enable           =>   TRUE);
```

68

DBMS_FILE_GROUP

The DBMS_FILE_GROUP package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides administrative interfaces for managing file groups, file group versions, and files. A file group repository is a collection of all of the file groups in a database and can contain multiple versions of a particular file group. You can use this package to create and manage file group repositories.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_FILE_GROUP

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_FILE_GROUP` package.

Overview

The following terms pertain to the DBMS_FILE_GROUP package:

File

A **file** is a reference to a file stored on hard disk. A file is composed of a file name, a directory object, and a file type. The directory object references the directory in which the file is stored on hard disk. For example, a file might have the following components:

- The file name is expdat.dmp.
- The directory object that contains the file is db_files.
- The file type is DBMS_FILE_GROUP.EXPORT_DUMP_FILE.

Version

A **version** is a collection of related files. For example, a version might consist of a set of data files and a Data Pump export dump file generated by a Data Pump transportable tablespace export. Only one Data Pump export dump file is allowed in a version.

File Group

A **file group** is a collection of versions. A file group can logically group a set of versions. For example, a file group named financial_quarters can keep track of quarterly financial data by logically grouping versions of files related to a tablespace set. The tablespaces containing the data can be exported at the end of each quarter and versioned under names such as Q1FY04, Q2FY04, and so on.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

Constants

The DBMS_FILE_GROUP package defines several enumerated constants for specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name. For example, DBMS_FILE_GROUP.EXPORT_DUMP_FILE.

Table 68–1 lists the parameters and enumerated constants.

Table 68–1 DBMS_FILE_GROUP Parameters with Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Option	Type	Description
file_type new_file_type	■ DATAFILE ■ EXPORT_DUMP_FILE ■ DATAPUMP_LOG_FILE	VARCHAR2(30)	DATAFILE is a datafile for a database. This constant can be specified as 'DATAFILE'. EXPORT_DUMP_FILE is a Data Pump export dump file. This constant can be specified as 'DUMPSET'. DATAPUMP_LOG_FILE is a Data Pump export log file. This constant can be specified as 'DATAPUMPLOG'.
max_versions retention_days	■ INFINITE	NUMBER	INFINITE specifies no limit. The max_versions or retention_days can increase without reaching a limit.
privilege	System privilege specified in the GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE procedure: ■ READ_ANY_FILE_GROUP ■ MANAGE_ANY_FILE_GROUP ■ MANAGE_FILE_GROUP Object privilege specified in the GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE procedure: ■ READ_ON_FILE_GROUP ■ MANAGE_ON_FILE_GROUP	BINARY_INTEGER	READ_ANY_FILE_GROUP grants the privilege to view information about any file group in any schema in the data dictionary. MANAGE_ANY_FILE_GROUP grants the privilege to create, manage, and drop any file group in any schema. MANAGE_FILE_GROUP grants the privilege to create, manage, and drop file groups in the user's schema. READ_ON_FILE_GROUP grants the privilege to view information about a specific file group in the data dictionary. MANAGE_ON_FILE_GROUP grants the privilege to manage a specific file group in a schema other than the user's schema.

Examples

Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration includes an example of a business that sells books and music over the internet. The business runs weekly reports on the sales data in the `inst1.example.com` database and stores these reports in two HTML files on a computer file system. The `book_sales.htm` file contains the report for book sales, and the `music_sales.htm` file contains the report for music sales.

The business wants to store these weekly reports in a file group repository at the `inst2.example.com` remote database. Every week, the two reports are generated on the `inst1.example.com` database, transferred to the computer system running the `inst2.example.com` database, and added to the repository as a file group version. The file group repository stores all of the file group versions that contain the reports for each week.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Summary of DBMS_FILE_GROUP Subprograms

Table 68–2 DBMS_FILE_GROUP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_FILE Procedure on page 68-8	Adds a file to a version of a file group
ALTER_FILE Procedure on page 68-10	Alters a file in a version of a file group
ALTER_FILE_GROUP Procedure on page 68-12	Alters a file group
ALTER_VERSION Procedure on page 68-14	Alters a version of a file group
CREATE_FILE_GROUP Procedure on page 68-16	Creates a file group
CREATE_VERSION Procedure on page 68-18	Creates a version of a file group
DROP_FILE_GROUP Procedure on page 68-19	Drops a file group
DROP_VERSION Procedure on page 68-20	Drops a version of a file group
GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 68-21	Grants object privileges on a file group to a user
GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 68-22	Grants system privileges for file group operations to a user
PURGE_FILE_GROUP Procedure on page 68-23	Purges a file group using the file group's retention policy
REMOVE_FILE Procedure on page 68-24	Removes a file from a version of a file group
REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 68-25	Revokes object privileges on a file group from a user
REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 68-26	Revokes system privileges for file group operations from a user

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ADD_FILE Procedure

This procedure adds a file to a version of a file group.

See Also: An example that uses this procedure for a file group repository in *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.ADD_FILE(
  file_group_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  file_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
  file_type        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  file_directory   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  version_name     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  comments         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 68–3 ADD_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`file_group_name`	The name of the file group that contains the version, specified as *`[schema_name.]file_group_name`*. For example, if the schema is `hq_dba` and the file group name is `sales_tbs`, then specify `hq_dba.sales_tbs`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`file_name`	The name of the file being added to the version. Each file name in a version must be unique.

`file_type`	The file type. The following are reserved file types:
	■ If the file is a datafile, then enter the following:
	`'DATAFILE'`
	■ If the file is a Data Pump export dump file, then enter the following:
	`'DUMPSET'`
	Data Pump metadata is populated when a Data Pump export dump file is imported.
	■ If the file is a Data Pump export log file, then enter the following:
	`'DATAPUMPLOG'`
	If the file type is not one of the reserved file types, then either enter a text description of the file type, or specify `NULL` to omit a file type description.
	See "Constants" on page 68-5 for more information about the reserved file types.

`file_directory`	The name of the directory object that corresponds to the directory containing the file. If `NULL`, then the procedure uses the default directory object for the version. If `NULL` and no default directory object exists for the version, then the procedure uses the default directory object for the file group. If `NULL` and no default directory object exists for the version or file group, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 68–3 (Cont.) ADD_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
version_name	The name of the version to which the file is added. If a positive integer is specified as a VARCHAR2 value, then the integer is interpreted as a version number. For example, if '1' is specified, then the file is added to version 1 of the file group. If NULL, then the procedure uses the version with the latest creation time for the file group.
comments	Comments about the file being added

Usage Notes

To run this procedure with either DBMS_FILE_GROUP.EXPORT_DUMP_FILE or 'DUMPSET' specified for the file_type parameter, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have the appropriate privileges to import the Data Pump export dump file
- Have READ privilege on the directory object that contains the Data Pump export dump file

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for more information about Data Pump privileges

ALTER_FILE Procedure

This procedure alters a file in a version of a file group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.ALTER_FILE(
  file_group_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
  file_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
  version_name        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  new_file_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  new_file_directory  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  new_file_type       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_file_type    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N',
  new_comments        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_comments     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N');
```

Parameters

Table 68–4 ALTER_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group that contains the version, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
file_name	The name of the file being altered in the version
version_name	The name of the version that contains the file being altered. If a positive integer is specified as a VARCHAR2 value, then the integer is interpreted as a version number. For example, if '1' is specified, then the file in version 1 of the file group is altered. If NULL, then the procedure uses the version with the latest creation time for the file group.
new_file_name	The new name of the file if the file name is being changed. Each file name in a version must be unique. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the file name. **Note:** When a non-NULL new file name is specified, this procedure changes the metadata for the file name in the data dictionary, but it does not change the file name on the hard disk.
new_file_directory	The new name of the directory object that corresponds to the directory containing the file, if the directory object is being changed. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the directory object name. **Note:** When a non-NULL new file directory is specified, this procedure changes the metadata for the file directory in the data dictionary, but it does not change the file directory on the hard disk.

Table 68–4 (Cont.) ALTER_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_file_type	The file type. The following are reserved file types: ■ If the file is a datafile, then enter the following: 'DATAFILE' ■ If the file is a Data Pump export dump file, then enter the following: 'DUMPSET' ■ If the file is a Data Pump export log file, then enter the following: 'DATAPUMPLOG' If the file type is not one of the reserved file types, then enter a text description of the file type. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the file type. **See Also:** "Constants" on page 68-5 for more information about the reserved file types.
remove_file_type	If Y, then the procedure removes the file type. If Y and the new_file_type parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not remove the file type.
new_comments	New comments about the file being altered. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing comments with the specified comments. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the existing comments.
remove_comments	If Y, then the procedure removes the comments for the file. If Y and the new_comments parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not change the existing comments.

Usage Notes

If the file type is changed to DBMS_FILE_GROUP.EXPORT_DUMP_FILE or 'DUMPSET', then Data Pump metadata for the file is populated. If the file type is changed from DBMS_FILE_GROUP.EXPORT_DUMP_FILE or 'DUMPSET', then Data Pump metadata for the file is purged.

To run this procedure with DBMS_FILE_GROUP.EXPORT_DUMP_FILE or 'DUMPSET' specified for the new_file_type parameter, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have the appropriate privileges to import the Data Pump export dump file
- Have READ privilege on the directory object that contains the Data Pump export dump file

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for more information about Data Pump privileges

ALTER_FILE_GROUP Procedure

This procedure alters a file group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.ALTER_FILE_GROUP(
  file_group_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
  keep_files                IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  min_versions              IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
  max_versions              IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
  retention_days            IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
  new_default_directory     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_default_directory  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N',
  new_comments              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_comments           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N');
```

Parameters

Table 68–5 ALTER_FILE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group being altered, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
keep_files	If Y, then the files in the file group are retained on hard disk if the file group or a version of the file group is dropped or purged. If N, then the files in the file group are deleted from hard disk if the file group or a version of the file group is dropped or purged. If NULL, then this parameter is not changed. **Note:** If the file group is dropped because of a DROP USER CASCADE statement, then the setting of this parameter determines whether the files are dropped from the hard disk.
min_versions	The minimum number of versions to retain. The specified value must be greater than or equal to 1. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the min_versions setting for the file group.
max_versions	The maximum number of versions to retain. The specified value must be greater than or equal to the value specified for min_versions. When the number of versions exceeds the specified max_versions, the oldest version is purged. Specify DBMS_FILE_GROUP.INFINITE for no limit to the number of versions. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the max_versions setting for the file group.

Table 68–5 (Cont.) ALTER_FILE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
retention_days	The maximum number of days to retain a version. The specified value must be greater than or equal to 0 (zero). When the age of a version exceeds the specified retention_days and there are more versions than the number specified in min_versions, the version is purged. The age of a version is calculated by subtracting the creation time from the current time. A decimal value can specify a fraction of a day. For example, 1.25 specifies one day and six hours. Specify DBMS_FILE_GROUP.INFINITE for no limit to the number of days a version can exist. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the retention_days setting for the file group.
new_default_directory	The default directory object used when files are added to a file group if no directory is specified when the files are added, and no default directory object is specified for the version. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the default directory.
remove_default_directory	If Y, then the procedure removes the default directory for the file group. If Y and the new_default_directory parameter is set to a non-NULL value, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not remove the default directory for the file group.
new_comments	Comments about the file group. If non-NULL, then the new comments replace the existing comments for the file group. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the existing comments.
remove_comments	If Y, then the comments for the file group are removed. If Y and the new_comments parameter is set to a non-NULL value, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not change the comments for the file group.

Usage Notes

If min_versions is set to 1, then the only version of the file group can be purged when a new version is added. If the addition of the new version is not complete when the existing version is purged, then there can be a period of time when no version of the file group is available. Therefore, set min_versions to at least 2 if a version of the file group must be available at all times.

ALTER_VERSION Procedure

This procedure alters a version of a file group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.ALTER_VERSION(
  file_group_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
  version_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  new_version_name          IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_version_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N',
  new_default_directory     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_default_directory  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N',
  new_comments              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_comments           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'N');
```

Parameters

Table 68–6 ALTER_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group that contains the version, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
version_name	The name of the version being altered. If a positive integer is specified as a VARCHAR2 value, then the integer is interpreted as a version number. For example, if '1' is specified, then version 1 of the file group is altered. If '*' is specified, then the procedure alters all versions, and the new_version_name parameter must be NULL. If NULL, then the procedure uses the version with the latest creation time for the file group.
new_version_name	The new name of the version. Do not specify a schema. The specified version name cannot be a positive integer or an asterisk ('*'). If NULL, then the procedure does not change the version name.
remove_version_name	If Y, then the procedure removes the version name. If the version name is removed, then the version number must be used to manage the version. If Y and the new_version_name parameter is set to a non-NULL value, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not remove the version name.
new_default_directory	The default directory object used when files are added to a version if no directory is specified when the files are added. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the default directory.
remove_default_directory	If Y, then the procedure removes the default directory. If Y and the new_default_directory parameter is set to a non-NULL value, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not remove the default directory.

Table 68–6 (Cont.) ALTER_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_comments	Comments about the version. If non-NULL, then the new comments replace the existing comments for the version. If NULL, then the procedure does not change the comments.
remove_comments	If Y, then the procedure removes the comments for the version. If Y and the new_comments parameter is set to a non-NULL value, then the procedure raises an error. If N, then the procedure does not remove the comments for the version.

CREATE_FILE_GROUP Procedure

This procedure creates a file group.

> **See Also:** An example that uses this procedure for a file group repository in *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.CREATE_FILE_GROUP(
  file_group_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
  keep_files         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Y',
  min_versions       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 2,
  max_versions       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT DBMS_FILE_GROUP.INFINITE,
  retention_days     IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT DBMS_FILE_GROUP.INFINITE,
  default_directory  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  comments           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 68–7 CREATE_FILE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
keep_files	If Y, then the files in the file group are retained on hard disk if the file group or a version of the file group is dropped or purged. If N, then the files in the file group are deleted from hard disk if the file group or a version of the file group is dropped or purged. **Note:** If the file group is dropped because of a DROP USER CASCADE statement, then the setting of this parameter determines whether the files are dropped from the hard disk.
min_versions	The minimum number of versions to retain. The specified value must be greater than or equal to 1.
max_versions	The maximum number of versions to retain. The specified value must be greater than or equal to the value specified for min_versions. When the number of versions exceeds the specified max_versions, the oldest version is purged. Specify DBMS_FILE_GROUP.INFINITE for no limit to the number of versions.
retention_days	The maximum number of days to retain a version. The specified value must be greater than or equal to 0 (zero). When the age of a version exceeds the specified retention_days and there are more versions than the number specified in min_versions, the version is purged. The age of a version is calculated by subtracting the creation time from the current time. A decimal value can specify a fraction of a day. For example, 1.25 specifies one day and six hours. Specify DBMS_FILE_GROUP.INFINITE for no limit to the number of days a version can exist.
default_directory	The default directory object used when files are added to a file group if no directory is specified when the files are added, and no default directory object is specified for the version.

Table 68–7 (Cont.) CREATE_FILE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
comments	Comments about the file group being created.

Usage Notes

If min_versions is set to 1, then the only version of the file group can be purged when a new version is added. If the addition of the new version is not complete when the existing version is purged, then there can be a period of time when no version of the file group is available. Therefore, set min_versions to at least 2 if a version of the file group must be available at all times.

CREATE_VERSION Procedure

This procedure creates a version of a file group.

This procedure automatically runs the PURGE_FILE_GROUP procedure. Therefore, versions can be purged based on the file group's retention policy.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of the procedure contains the OUT parameter version_out, and the other does not.

See Also:

- PURGE_FILE_GROUP Procedure on page 68-23
- An example that uses this procedure for a file group repository in *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.CREATE_VERSION(
  file_group_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
  version_name       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  default_directory  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  comments           IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_FILE_GROUP.CREATE_VERSION(
  file_group_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
  version_name       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  default_directory  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  comments           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  version_out        OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 68–8 CREATE_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group to which the new version is added, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
version_name	The name of the version being created. Do not specify a schema. The specified version name cannot be a positive integer because, when a version is created, a version number is generated automatically. The specified version name cannot be an asterisk ('*').
default_directory	The default directory object used when files are added to a version if no directory is specified when the files are added.
comments	Comments about the version being created
version_out	If the version_name parameter is set to a non-NULL value, then this parameter contains the specified version name. If the version_name parameter is set to NULL, then this parameter contains the generated version number.

DROP_FILE_GROUP Procedure

This procedure drops a file group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.DROP_FILE_GROUP(
  file_group_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  keep_files       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 68–9 DROP_FILE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group being dropped, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
keep_files	If Y, then the procedure retains the files in the file group on hard disk. If N, then the procedure deletes the files in the file group from hard disk. If NULL, then the procedure uses the default keep files property of the file group.

Usage Notes

If this procedure deletes files on hard disk, then the user who runs the procedure must have WRITE privilege on the directory object that contains the files.

DROP_VERSION Procedure

This procedure drops a version of a file group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.DROP_VERSION(
  file_group_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  version_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  keep_files       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 68–10 DROP_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group that contains the version, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
version_name	The name of the version being dropped. If a positive integer is specified as a VARCHAR2 value, then the integer is interpreted as a version number. For example, if '1' is specified, then version 1 of the file group is dropped. If NULL, then the procedure uses the version with the oldest creation time for the file group. If '*', then the procedure drops all versions.
keep_files	If Y, then the procedure retains the files in the version on hard disk. If N, then the procedure deletes the files in the version from hard disk. If NULL, then the procedure uses the default keep files property of the file group.

Usage Notes

If this procedure deletes files on hard disk, then the user who runs the procedure must have WRITE privilege on the directory object that contains the files.

GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grants object privileges on a file group to a user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE(
  object_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
  privilege     IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
  grantee       IN  VARCHAR2,
  grant_option  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 68–11 GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_name	The name of the file group on which the privilege is granted, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
privilege	The constant that specifies the privilege. See "Constants" on page 68-5 for valid privileges.
grantee	The name of the user or role for which the privilege is granted. The specified user cannot be the owner of the object.
grant_option	If TRUE, then the specified user granted the specified privilege can grant this privilege to others. If FALSE, then the specified user granted the specified privilege cannot grant this privilege to others.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the object on which the privilege is granted
- Have the same privilege as the privilege being granted with the grant option

GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grants system privileges for file group operations to a user.

> **Note:** When you grant a privilege on "ANY" object (for example, ALTER_ANY_RULE), and the initialization parameter O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY is set to FALSE, you give the user access to that type of object in all schemas, except the SYS schema. By default, the initialization parameter O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY is set to FALSE.
>
> If you want to grant access to an object in the SYS schema, then you can grant object privileges explicitly on the object. Alternatively, you can set the O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY initialization parameter to TRUE. Then privileges granted on "ANY" object allows access to any schema, including SYS. Set the O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY initialization parameter with caution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE(
  privilege     IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
  grantee       IN  VARCHAR2,
  grant_option  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 68–12 GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The constant that specifies the privilege. See "Constants" on page 68-5 for valid privileges.
grantee	The name of the user or role for which the privilege is granted. The user who runs the procedure cannot be specified.
grant_option	If TRUE, then the specified user granted the specified privilege can grant this privilege to others. If FALSE, then the specified user granted the specified privilege cannot grant this privilege to others.

PURGE_FILE_GROUP Procedure

This procedure purges a file group using the file group's retention policy.

A file group's retention policy is determined by its settings for the `max_versions`, `min_versions`, and `retention_days` parameters. The following versions of a file group are removed when a file group is purged:

- All versions greater than the `max_versions` setting for the file group when versions are ordered in descending order by creation time. Therefore, the older versions are purged before the newer versions.
- All versions older than the `retention_days` setting for the file group unless purging a version would cause the number of versions to drop below the `min_versions` setting for the file group.

A job named `SYS.FGR$AUTOPURGE_JOB` automatically purges all file groups in a database periodically according to the job's schedule. You can adjust this job's schedule using the `DBMS_SCHEDULER` package. Alternatively, you can create a job that runs the `PURGE_FILE_GROUP` procedure periodically.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.PURGE_FILE_GROUP(
  file_group_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 68–13 PURGE_FILE_GROUP Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`file_group_name`	The name of the file group, specified as *`[schema_name.]file_group_name`*. For example, if the schema is `hq_dba` and the file group name is `sales_tbs`, then specify `hq_dba.sales_tbs`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If `NULL` and this procedure is run by `SYS` user, then the procedure purges all file groups.

Usage Notes

If this procedure deletes files on hard disk, then the user who runs the procedure must have `WRITE` privilege on the directory object that contains the files. Files are deleted when a version is purged and the `keep_files` parameter is set to `N` for the version's file group.

REMOVE_FILE Procedure

This procedure removes a file from a version of a file group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.REMOVE_FILE(
  file_group_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  file_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
  version_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  keep_file        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 68–14 REMOVE_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_group_name	The name of the file group that contains the version, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales_tbs, then specify hq_dba.sales_tbs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
file_name	The name of the file being removed from the version
version_name	The name of the version from which the file is removed. If a positive integer is specified as a VARCHAR2 value, then the integer is interpreted as a version number. For example, if '1' is specified, then the file is removed from version 1 of the file group. If NULL, then the procedure uses the version with the latest creation time for the file group. If '*', then the procedure removes the file from all versions.
keep_file	If Y, then the procedure retains the file on hard disk. If N, then the procedure deletes the file from hard disk. If NULL, then the procedure uses the default keep files property of the file group.

Usage Notes

If this procedure deletes files on hard disk, then the user who runs the procedure must have WRITE privilege on the directory object that contains the files.

REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes object privileges on a file group from a user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE(
  object_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  privilege    IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
  revokee      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 68–15 REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_name`	The name of the file group on which the privilege is revoked, specified as *`[schema_name.]file_group_name`*. For example, if the schema is `hq_dba` and the file group name is `sales_tbs`, then specify `hq_dba.sales_tbs`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`privilege`	The constant that specifies the privilege. See "Constants" on page 68-5 for valid privileges.
`revokee`	The name of the user or role from which the privilege is revoked. The user who owns the object cannot be specified.

REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes system privileges for file group operations from a user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_GROUP.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE(
  privilege  IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
  revokee    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 68–16 REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`privilege`	The constant that specifies the privilege. See "Constants" on page 68-5 for valid privileges.
`revokee`	The name of the user or role from which the privilege is revoked. The user who runs the procedure cannot be specified.

69

DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER

The DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package provides procedures to copy a binary file within a database or to transfer a binary file between databases.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for instructions about using file transfer
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for applications of file transfer.

This chapter contains the following topic:

Using DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER

Overview

The DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package provides procedures to copy a binary file within a database or to transfer a binary file between databases. The destination database converts each block when it receives a file from a platform with different endianness. Datafiles can be imported after they are moved to the destination database as part of a transportable operation without RMAN conversion. Both GET and PUT operations will converted the file across platform difference at the destination. However, COPY is a local operation and therefore no conversion is required.

Security Model

The DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package must be created under SYS (CONNECT INTERNAL). Operations provided by this package are performed under the current calling user, not the package owner (SYS).

To use this interface the following users must have the following privileges:

- The current user at the local database must have READ privilege on the directory object specified in the source_directory_object parameter.
- The connected user at the destination database must have WRITE privilege to the directory object specified in the destination_directory_object parameter.

Operating Notes

Caution: DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER supports online backup. You should therefore be careful in copying or transferring a file that is being modified by the database because this can result in an inconsistent file, and require recovery. To guarantee consistency, bring files offline when the database is in use.

If you want to use DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER for performing backups, note that you are implementing self-managed backups, and should therefore put the files in hot backup mode.

Summary of DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER Subprograms

Table 69–1 DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
COPY_FILE Procedure on page 69-7	Reads a file from a source directory and creates a copy of it in a destination directory. The source and destination directories can both be in a local file system, or both be in an Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group, or between local file system and ASM with copying in either direction.
GET_FILE Procedure on page 69-9	Contacts a remote database to read a remote file and then creates a copy of the file in the local file system or ASM
PUT_FILE Procedure on page 69-11	Reads a local file or ASM and contacts a remote database to create a copy of the file in the remote file system

COPY_FILE Procedure

This procedure reads a file from a source directory and creates a copy of it in a destination directory. The source and destination directories can both be in a local file system, or both be in an Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group, or between local file system and ASM with copying in either direction.

You can copy any type of file to and from a local file system. However, you can copy only database files (such as datafiles, tempfiles, controlfiles, and so on) to and from an ASM disk group.

The destination file is not closed until the procedure completes successfully.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.COPY_FILE(
   source_directory_object       IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_file_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object  IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_file_name         IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 69–2 COPY_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_directory_object	The directory object that designates the source directory. The directory object must already exist. (You create directory objects with the CREATE DIRECTORY command).
source_file_name	The name of the file to copy. This file must exist in the source directory.
destination_directory_object	The directory object that designates the destination directory. The directory object must already exist. If the destination is ASM, the directory object must designate either a disk group name (for example, +diskgroup1) or a directory created for alias names. In the case of a directory, the full path to the directory must be specified (for example: +diskgroup1/dbs/control).
destination_file_name	The name to assign to the file in the destination directory. A file with the same name must not exist in the destination directory. If the destination is ASM: ■ The file is given a fully qualified ASM filename and created in the appropriate directory (depending on the database name and file type) ■ The file type tag assigned to the file is COPY_FILE ■ The value of the destination_file_name argument becomes the file's alias name in the designated destination directory The file name can be followed by an ASM template name in parentheses. The file is then given the attributes specified by the template.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure successfully, the current user must have the following privileges:

- `READ` privilege on the directory object specified in the `source_directory_object` parameter
- `WRITE` privilege on directory object specified in the `destination_directory_object` parameter

This procedure converts directory object parameters to uppercase unless they are surrounded by double quotation marks, but this procedure does not convert file names to uppercase.

Also, the copied file must meet the following requirements:

- The size of the copied file must be a multiple of 512 bytes.
- The size of the copied file must be less than or equal to two terabytes.

Transferring the file is not transactional. To monitor the progress of a long file copy, query the `V$SESSION_LONGOPS` dynamic performance view.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* for instructions about using file transfer

Examples

```
SQL> create directory DGROUP as '+diskgroup1/dbs/backup';

Directory created.

SQL>  BEGIN
   2    DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.COPY_FILE('SOURCEDIR','t_xdbtmp.f', 'DGROUP',
                                     't_xdbtmp.f');
   3  END;
   4  /

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> EXIT
$ASMCMD
ASMCMD> ls
DISKGROUP1/
ASMCMD> cd diskgroup1/dbs/backup
ASMCMD> ls
t_xdbtmp.f => +DISKGROUP1/ORCL/TEMPFILE/COPY_FILE.267.546546525
```

GET_FILE Procedure

This procedure contacts a remote database to read a remote file and then creates a copy of the file in the local file system or ASM. The file that is copied is the source file, and the new file that results from the copy is the destination file. The destination file is not closed until the procedure completes successfully.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.GET_FILE
   source_directory_object      IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_file_name             IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_file_name        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 69–3 GET_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_directory_object	The directory object from which the file is copied at the source site. This directory object must exist at the source site.
source_file_name	The name of the file that is copied in the remote file system. This file must exist in the remote file system in the directory associated with the source directory object.
source_database	The name of a database link to the remote database where the file is located.
destination_directory_object	The directory object into which the file is placed at the destination site. This directory object must exist in the local file system.
destination_file_name	The name of the file copied to the local file system. A file with the same name must not exist in the destination directory in the local file system.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure successfully, the following users must have the following privileges:

- The connected user at the source database must have read privilege on the directory object specified in the source_directory_object parameter.
- The current user at the local database must have write privilege on the directory object specified in the destination_directory_object parameter.

This procedure converts directory object parameters to uppercase unless they are surrounded by double quotation marks, but this procedure does not convert file names to uppercase.

Also, the copied file must meet the following requirements:

- The size of the copied file must be a multiple of 512 bytes.
- The size of the copied file must be less than or equal to two terabytes.

Transferring the file is not transactional. To monitor the progress of a long file transfer, query the V$SESSION_LONGOPS dynamic performance view.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY df AS '+datafile' ;
GRANT WRITE ON DIRECTORY df TO "user";
CREATE DIRECTORY DSK_FILES AS ''^t_work^'';
GRANT WRITE ON DIRECTORY dsk_files TO "user";

-- asumes that dbs2 link has been created and we are connected to the instance.
-- dbs2 could be a loopback or point to another instance.

BEGIN
-- asm file to an os file
-- get an asm file from dbs1.asm/a1 to dbs2.^t_work^/oa5.dat
  DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.GET_FILE ( 'df' , 'a1' , 'dbs1', 'dsk_files' , 'oa5.dat' );

-- os file to an os file
-- get an os file from dbs1.^t_work^/a2.dat to dbs2.^t_work^/a2back.dat
  DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.GET_FILE ( 'dsk_files' , 'a2.dat' , 'dbs1', 'dsk_files' ,
'a2back.dat' );

END ;
/
```

PUT_FILE Procedure

This procedure reads a local file or ASM and contacts a remote database to create a copy of the file in the remote file system. The file that is copied is the source file, and the new file that results from the copy is the destination file. The destination file is not closed until the procedure completes successfully.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.PUT_FILE(
   source_directory_object       IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_file_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object  IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_file_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_database          IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 69–4 PUT_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_directory_object	The directory object from which the file is copied at the local source site. This directory object must exist at the source site.
source_file_name	The name of the file that is copied from the local file system. This file must exist in the local file system in the directory associated with the source directory object.
destination_directory_object	The directory object into which the file is placed at the destination site. This directory object must exist in the remote file system.
destination_file_name	The name of the file placed in the remote file system. A file with the same name must not exist in the destination directory in the remote file system.
destination_database	The name of a database link to the remote database to which the file is copied.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure successfully, the following users must have the following privileges:

- The current user at the local database must have read privilege on the directory object specified in the source_directory_object parameter.
- The connected user at the destination database must have write privilege to the directory object specified in the destination_directory_object parameter.

This procedure converts directory object parameters to uppercase unless they are surrounded by double quotation marks, but this procedure does not convert file names to uppercase.

Also, the copied file must meet the following requirements:

- The size of the copied file must be a multiple of 512 bytes.
- The size of the copied file must be less than or equal to two terabytes.

Transferring the file is not transactional. To monitor the progress of a long file transfer, query the V$SESSION_LONGOPS dynamic performance view.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY df AS '+datafile' ;
GRANT WRITE ON DIRECTORY df TO "user";
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY ft1 AS '+datafile/ft1' ;
GRANT READ,WRITE ON DIRECTORY ft1 TO "user";
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY ft1_1 AS '+datafile/ft1/ft1_1' ;

CONNECT user;
Enter password: password

-- - put a1.dat to a4.dat (using dbs2 dblink)
-- - level 2 sub dir to parent dir
-- - user has read privs on ft1_1 at dbs1 and write on df in dbs2
BEGIN
 DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER.PUT_FILE ( 'ft1_1' , 'a2.dat' , 'df' , 'a4.dat' ,
                               'dbs2' ) ;
END ;
```

70

DBMS_FLASHBACK

Using DBMS_FLASHBACK, you can flash back to a version of the database at a specified time or a specified system change number (SCN).

> **See Also:** For detailed information about DBMS_FLASHBACK:
>
> - *Oracle Database Development Guide*
> - *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_FLASHBACK

Overview

DBMS_FLASHBACK provides an interface for the user to view the database at a particular time in the past, with the additional capacity provided by transaction back out features that allow for selective removal of the effects of individual transactions. This is different from a flashback database which moves the database back in time.

When DBMS_FLASHBACK is enabled, the user session uses the Flashback version of the database, and applications can execute against the Flashback version of the database.

You may want to use DBMS_FLASHBACK for the following reasons:

- Self-service repair: If you accidentally delete rows from a table, you can recover the deleted rows.
- Packaged applications such as email and voicemail: You can use Flashback to restore deleted email by re-inserting the deleted message into the current message box.
- Decision support system (DSS) and online analytical processing (OLAP) applications: You can perform data analysis or data modeling to track seasonal demand.

Security Model

To use this package, you must have the `EXECUTE` privilege on it.

Types

The DBMS_FLASHBACK package uses these types:

Table 70–1 DBMS_FLASHBACK

Type	Description
TXNAME_ARRAY	Creates a VARRAY for holding Transaction Names or Identifiers (XIDs)

Exceptions

Table 70–2 DBMS_FLASHBACK Error Messages

Error	Description
ORA-08180	Time specified is too old
ORA-08181	Invalid system change number specified
ORA-08182	User cannot begin read-only or serializable transactions in Flashback mode
ORA-08183	User cannot enable Flashback within an uncommitted transaction
ORA-08184	User cannot enable Flashback within another Flashback session
ORA-08185	SYS cannot enable Flashback mode

Operational Notes

DBMS_FLASHBACK is automatically turned off when the session ends, either by disconnection or by starting another connection.

PL/SQL cursors opened in Flashback mode return rows as of the flashback time or SCN. Different concurrent sessions (connections) in the database can perform Flashback to different wall-clock times or SCNs. DML and DDL operations and distributed operations are not allowed while a session is running in Flashback mode. You can use PL/SQL cursors opened before disabling Flashback to perform DML.

Under Automatic Undo Management (AUM) mode, you can use retention control to control how far back in time to go for the version of the database you need. If you need to perform a Flashback over a 24-hour period, the DBA must set the undo_retention parameter to 24 hours. This way, the system retains enough undo information to regenerate the older versions of the data.

You can set the RETENTION GUARANTEE clause for the undo tablespace to ensure that unexpired undo is not discarded. UNDO_RETENTION is not in itself a guarantee because, if the system is under space pressure, unexpired undo may be overwritten with freshly generated undo. In such cases, RETENTION GUARANTEE prevents this. For more information, see the *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

In a Flashback-enabled session, SYSDATE is not affected; it continues to provide the current time.

DBMS_FLASHBACK can be used within logon triggers to enable Flashback without changing the application code.

Examples

The following example illustrates how Flashback can be used when the deletion of a senior employee triggers the deletion of all the personnel reporting to him. Using the Flashback feature, you can recover and re-insert the missing employees.

```
DROP TABLE employee;
DROP TABLE keep_scn;

REM -- Keep_scn is a temporary table to store scns that we are interested in

CREATE TABLE keep_scn (scn number);
SET ECHO ON
CREATE TABLE employee (
   employee_no   number(5) PRIMARY KEY,
   employee_name varchar2(20),
   employee_mgr  number(5)
      CONSTRAINT mgr_fkey REFERENCES EMPLOYEE ON DELETE CASCADE,
   salary        number,
   hiredate      date
);

REM -- Populate the company with employees
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (1, 'John Doe', null, 1000000, '5-jul-81');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (10, 'Joe Johnson', 1, 500000, '12-aug-84');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (20, 'Susie Tiger', 10, 250000, '13-dec-90');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (100, 'Scott Tiger', 20, 200000, '3-feb-86');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (200, 'Charles Smith', 100, 150000, '22-mar-88');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (210, 'Jane Johnson', 100, 100000, '11-apr-87');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (220, 'Nancy Doe', 100, 100000, '18-sep-93');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (300, 'Gary Smith', 210, 75000, '4-nov-96');
INSERT INTO employee VALUES (310, 'Bob Smith', 210, 65000, '3-may-95');
COMMIT;

REM -- Show the entire org
SELECT lpad(' ', 2*(level-1)) || employee_name Name
FROM employee
CONNECT BY PRIOR employee_no = employee_mgr
START WITH employee_no = 1
ORDER BY LEVEL;

REM -- Sleep for a short time (approximately 10 to 20  seconds) to avoid
REM -- querying close to table creation

EXECUTE DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP(10);

REM -- Store this snapshot for later access through Flashback
DECLARE
I NUMBER;
BEGIN
I := DBMS_FLASHBACK.GET_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER;
INSERT INTO keep_scn VALUES (I);
COMMIT;
END;
/

REM -- Scott decides to retire but the transaction is done incorrectly
DELETE FROM EMPLOYEE WHERE employee_name = 'Scott Tiger';
COMMIT;
```

```
REM -- notice that all of scott's employees are gone
SELECT lpad(' ', 2*(level-1)) || employee_name Name
FROM EMPLOYEE
CONNECT BY PRIOR employee_no = employee_mgr
START WITH employee_no = 1
ORDER BY LEVEL;

REM -- Flashback to see Scott's organization
DECLARE
   restore_scn number;
BEGIN
   SELECT  scn INTO restore_scn FROM keep_scn;
   DBMS_FLASHBACK.ENABLE_AT_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER (restore_scn);
END;
/

REM -- Show Scott's org.
SELECT lpad(' ', 2*(level-1)) || employee_name Name
FROM employee
CONNECT BY PRIOR employee_no = employee_mgr
START WITH employee_no =
   (SELECT employee_no FROM employee WHERE employee_name = 'Scott Tiger')
ORDER BY LEVEL;

REM -- Restore scott's organization.
DECLARE
   scotts_emp NUMBER;
   scotts_mgr NUMBER;
   CURSOR c1 IS
      SELECT employee_no, employee_name, employee_mgr, salary, hiredate
      FROM employee
      CONNECT BY PRIOR employee_no = employee_mgr
      START WITH employee_no =
         (SELECT employee_no FROM employee WHERE employee_name = 'Scott Tiger');
   c1_rec c1 % ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
   SELECT employee_no, employee_mgr INTO scotts_emp, scotts_mgr FROM employee
   WHERE employee_name = 'Scott Tiger';
   /* Open c1 in flashback mode */
   OPEN c1;
   /* Disable Flashback */
   DBMS_FLASHBACK.DISABLE;
 LOOP
   FETCH c1 INTO c1_rec;
   EXIT WHEN c1%NOTFOUND;
   /*
     Note that all the DML operations inside the loop are performed
     with Flashback disabled
   */
   IF (c1_rec.employee_mgr = scotts_emp) then
      INSERT INTO employee VALUES (c1_rec.employee_no,
         c1_rec.employee_name,
         scotts_mgr,
         c1_rec.salary,
         c1_rec.hiredate);
   ELSE
   IF (c1_rec.employee_no != scotts_emp) THEN
   INSERT INTO employee VALUES (c1_rec.employee_no,
         c1_rec.employee_name,
```

```
         c1_rec.employee_mgr,
         c1_rec.salary,
         c1_rec.hiredate);
      END IF;
    END IF;
 END LOOP;
END;
/

REM -- Show the restored organization.
select lpad(' ', 2*(level-1)) || employee_name Name
FROM employee
CONNECT BY PRIOR employee_no = employee_mgr
START WITH employee_no = 1
ORDER BY LEVEL;
```

Summary of DBMS_FLASHBACK Subprograms

Table 70–3 DBMS_FLASHBACK Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DISABLE Procedure on page 70-12	Disables the Flashback mode for the entire session
ENABLE_AT_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER Procedure on page 70-13	Enables Flashback for the entire session. Takes an SCN as an Oracle number and sets the session snapshot to the specified number. Inside the Flashback mode, all queries return data consistent as of the specified wall-clock time or SCN
ENABLE_AT_TIME Procedure on page 70-14	Enables Flashback for the entire session. The snapshot time is set to the SCN that most closely matches the time specified in `query_time`
GET_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER Function on page 70-15	Returns the current SCN as an Oracle number. You can use the SCN to store specific snapshots
TRANSACTION_BACKOUT Procedures on page 70-16	Provides the mechanism to back out a transaction

DISABLE Procedure

This procedure disables the Flashback mode for the entire session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK.DISABLE;
```

Examples

The following example queries the salary of an employee, Joe, on August 30, 2000:

```
EXECUTE dbms_flashback.enable_at_time('30-AUG-2000');
SELECT salary FROM emp where name = 'Joe'
EXECUTE dbms_flashback.disable;
```

ENABLE_AT_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER Procedure

This procedure takes an SCN as an input parameter and sets the session snapshot to the specified number. In the Flashback mode, all queries return data consistent as of the specified wall-clock time or SCN. It enables Flashback for the entire session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK.ENABLE_AT_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER (
   query_scn IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 70–4 ENABLE_AT_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
query_scn	The system change number (SCN), a version number for the database that is incremented on every transaction commit.

ENABLE_AT_TIME Procedure

This procedure enables Flashback for the entire session. The snapshot time is set to the SCN that most closely matches the time specified in query_time.It enables Flashback for the entire session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK.ENABLE_AT_TIME (
   query_time   IN TIMESTAMP);
```

Parameters

Table 70–5 ENABLE_AT_TIME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
query_time	This is an input parameter of type TIMESTAMP. A time stamp can be specified in the following ways: ■ Using the TIMESTAMP constructor EXECUTE DBMS_FLASHBACK.ENABLE_AT_TIME(TIMESTAMP '2001-01-09 12:31:00'). Use the Globalization Support (NLS) format and supply a string. The format depends on the Globalization Support settings. ■ Using the TO_TIMESTAMP function: EXECUTE DBMS_FLASHBACK.ENABLE_AT_TIME(TO_TIMESTAMP('12-02-2001 14:35:00', 'DD-MM-YYYY HH24:MI:SS')) You provide the format you want to use. This example shows the TO_TIMESTAMP function for February 12, 2001, 2:35 PM. ■ If the time is omitted from query time, it defaults to the beginning of the day, that is, 12:00 A.M. ■ Note that if the query time contains a time zone, the time zone information is truncated.

GET_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER Function

This function returns the current SCN as an Oracle number datatype. You can obtain the current change number and store it for later use. This helps you retain specific snapshots.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK.GET_SYSTEM_CHANGE_NUMBER
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

TRANSACTION_BACKOUT Procedures

This procedure provides a mechanism to back out a set of transactions. The user can call these procedures with either transaction names or transaction identifiers (XIDS).

The procedure analyzes the transactional dependencies, perform DMLs and generates an extensive report on the operation performed by the subprogram. This procedure does not commit the DMLs performed as part of transaction back out. However it holds all the required locks on rows and tables in the right form, so that no other dependencies can enter the system. To make the changes permanent you must explicitly commit the transaction.

A report is generated in the system tables DBA_FLASHBACK_TRANSACTION_STATE and DBA_FLASHBACK_TRANSACTION_REPORT.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK.TRANSACTION_BACKOUT
   numtxns            NUMBER,
   xids               XID_ARRAY,
   options            NUMBER default NOCASCADE,
   timeHint           TIMESTAMP default MINTIME);

DBMS_FLASHBACK.TRANSACTION_BACKOUT
   numtxns            NUMBER,
   xids               XID_ARRAY,
   options            NUMBER default NOCASCADE,
   scnHint            TIMESTAMP default 0   );

DBMS_FLASHBACK.TRANSACTION_BACKOUT
   numtxns           NUMBER,
   txnnames          TXNAME_ARRAY,
   options           NUMBER default NOCASCADE,
   timehint          TIMESTAMP MINTIME );

DBMS_FLASHBACK.TRANSACTION_BACKOUT
   numtxns           NUMBER,
   txnNames         TXNAME_ARRAY,
   options          NUMBER default NOCASCADE,
   scnHint          NUMBER 0);
```

Parameters

Table 70–6 TRANSACTION_BACKOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
numtxns	Number of transactions passed as input
xids	List of transaction IDs in the form of an array
txnnames	List of transaction names in the form of an array

Table 70–6 (Cont.) TRANSACTION_BACKOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Back out dependent transactions: ■ NOCASCADE - No dependency is expected. If a dependency is found, this raises an error, with the first dependent transaction provided in the report. ■ NOCASCADE_FORCE - The user forcibly backs out the given transactions without considering the dependent transactions. The RDBMS executes the UNDO SQL for the given transactions in reverse order of their commit times. If no constraints break, and the result is satisfactory, the user can either COMMIT the changes or else ROLL BACK. ■ NONCONFLICT_ONLY - This option lets the user back out the changes to the nonconflicting rows of the given transactions. Note that a transaction dependency can happen due to a row conflict through either WAW or primary/unique key constraints. If the user chooses to back out only the nonconflicting rows, this does not cause any problem with database consistency, although transaction atomicity is lost. As this is a recovery operation, the user can correct the data. ■ CASCADE - This completely removes the given transactions including their dependents in a post order fashion (reverse order of commit times).
timehint	Time hint on the start of the transaction
scnhint	SCN hint on the start of the transaction

Usage Notes

Note: For information about restrictions in using TRANSACTION_BACKOUT, see "Using Flashback Transaction" in the *Oracle Database Development Guide*.

- If transaction name is used, a time hint must be provided. The time hint should be a time before the start of all the given transactions to back out.
- If the SCN hint is provided, it must be before the start of the earliest transaction in the specified input set, or this raises an error and terminates. If it is not provided and the transaction has committed within undo retention, the database system is able to determine the start time.

71

DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE

The `DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE` package contains procedures for performing various tasks such as:

- Disassociation and reassociation of a Flashback Data Archive (FDA) enabled table from/with its underlying FDA
- Tamper-proofing the tables of an application
- Importing of user history

> **Caution:** Importing user-generated history can lead to inaccurate, or unreliable results. This procedure should only be used after consulting with Oracle Support.

- Enabling and disabling of session-level support for valid-time

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide* for more information about "Using Flashback Data Archive (Oracle Temporal)"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE

Overview

Flashback Data Archive (FDA) provides strict protection on the internal history tables that it creates and maintains for users.

The read-only semantics prohibit users, including a DBA, from doing updates, deletes, and inserts on the Flashback Data Archive internal history tables. Users are also prevented from issuing any DDL statements on these tables. This strict security enforcement helps meet the requirements of applications in regulatory / compliance environments. Flashback Data Archive supports most common DDL statements, including those that alter the table definition or incur data movement. However, some DDL statements are not supported on Flashback Data Archive-enabled tables. Since most application schemas are modified during application software upgrades, the ability to perform DDL operations on tracked tables is critical.

To support schema evolution during application upgrades and other table maintenance tasks that require use of DDL statements not supported by Flashback Data Archive, the `DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE` package provides a set of simple-to-use PL/SQL procedures:

- To disassociate a Flashback Data Archive enabled base table from the underlying FDA
- To reassociate a temporarily disassociated base table with its underlying FDA

After a user has disassociated the base table from its FDA, it's possible to issue any DDL statements on the base table or the history tables in the FDA. Having finished with the schema changes, the user can then reassociate the base table with its FDA so that Flashback Data Archive protection is in operation and automatic tracking and archiving is resumed.

Security Model

Users need the `FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE_ADMINISTER` privilege to import user-generated history, to set context level, and to tamper-proof tables. After a table is disassociated, users can perform DDL and DML statements on the table if they have the necessary privileges. Enabling and disabling session-level Valid Time Temporal flashback needs no additional privileges.

Caution: Oracle cannot endorse compliance history of a table after the table is disassociated. Disassociating a table should only be done after consulting with Oracle Support.

Constants

The DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE package uses the constants shown in Table 71–1.

Table 71–1 DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
NODROP	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Do not drop temporary history table
NOCOMMIT	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Do not commit transaction
NODELETE	BINARY_INTEGER	4	Do not delete data in history table

Summary of DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE Subprograms

Table 71–2 DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_TABLE_TO_ APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-7	Takes an application name and adds a table to the application as a security table
CREATE_TEMP_HISTORY_ TABLE Procedure on page 71-8	Creates a table called `TEMP_HISTORY` with the correct definition in schema
DISABLE_APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-9	Takes an application name and marks a table in it as a security table
DISABLE_ASOF_VALID_ TIME Procedure on page 71-10	Disables session level valid-time flashback
DISASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure on page 71-11	Disassociates the given table from the flashback data archive
DROP_APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-12	Takes an application name and removes it from the list of applications
ENABLE_APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-13	Takes an application name and enables Flashback Data Archive on all the security tables for this application
ENABLE_AT_VALID_TIME Procedure on page 71-14	Enables session level valid time flashback
EXTEND_MAPPINGS Procedure on page 71-15	Extends time mappings to times in the past
GET_SYS_CONTEXT Function on page 71-16	Gets the context previously selected by the SET_CONTEXT_ LEVEL Procedure
IMPORT_HISTORY Procedure on page 71-17	Imports history from a table called `TEMP_HISTORY` in the given schema
LOCK_DOWN_ APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-18	Takes an application name and makes all the security tables read-only. The group called `SYSTEM` cannot be locked
PURGE_CONTEXT Procedure on page 71-19	Purges the context to be saved selected by the SET_CONTEXT_ LEVEL Procedure
REASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure on page 71-20	Reassociates the given table with the flashback data archive
REGISTER_APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-21	Takes an application name and optionally a Flashback Data Archive, and registers an application for database hardening
REMOVE_TABLE_FROM_ APPLICATION Procedure on page 71-22	Takes an application name and marks a table in it as no longer being a security table
SET_CONTEXT_LEVEL Procedure on page 71-23	Defines how much of the user context is to be saved

ADD_TABLE_TO_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and adds a table to the application as a security table. If the application is enabled for Flashback Data Archive, then this table will also be enabled for Flashback Data Archive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.ADD_TABLE_TO_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2,
   table_name                 IN   VARCHAR2,
   schema_name                IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 71–3 ADD_TABLE_TO_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
application_name	Name of the application for which a table has been added as a security table
table_name	Name of the table to add as a security table for the given application
schema_name	Name of the schema containing the desired table. If no schema name is specified, the current schema is used.

CREATE_TEMP_HISTORY_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a table called TEMP_HISTORY with the correct definition in schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.CREATE_TEMP_HISTORY_TABLE (
   owner_name1      IN   VARCHAR2,
   table_name1      IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–4 CREATE_TEMP_HISTORY_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name1	Schema of the Flashback Data Archive-enabled table
table_name1	Name of the Flashback Data Archive-enabled table

DISABLE_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and disables Flashback Data Archive on all of its security tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.DISABLE_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–5 DISABLE_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
application_name	Name of the application whose security tables will be disabled for Flashback Data Archive

DISABLE_ASOF_VALID_TIME Procedure

This procedure disables session level valid-time flashback.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.DISABLE_ASOF_VALID_TIME;
```

DISASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure

This procedure disassociates the given table from the flashback data archive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.DISASSOCIATE_FBA (
   owner_name     IN    VARCHAR2,
   table_name     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–6 DISASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name	Schema of the Flashback Data Archive enabled base table
table_name	Name of the Flashback Data Archive enabled base table

Exceptions

Table 71–7 DISASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure Exceptions

Parameter	Description
ORA-55602	User table is not enabled for Flashback Data Archive
ORA-55634	Cannot acquire the lock on the table for disassociation

DROP_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and removes it from the list of applications. As part of this procedure, Flashback Data Archive will be disabled on all security-enabled tables and all history data will be lost. The group called `SYSTEM` cannot be dropped.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.DROP_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–8 DROP_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`application_name`	Name of the application for which a table has been added as a security table

ENABLE_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and enables Flashback Data Archive on all the security tables for this application. Once an application is enabled, every change to an FDA enabled table will be tracked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.ENABLE_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–9 ENABLE_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
application_name	Name of the application for which to enable Flashback Data Archive on all its security tables

ENABLE_AT_VALID_TIME Procedure

This procedure enables session level valid time flashback.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.ENABLE_AT_VALID_TIME (
   level          IN    VARCHAR2,
   query_time     IN    TIMESTAMP DEFAULT SYSTIMESTAMP);
```

Parameters

Table 71–10 ENABLE_AT_VALID_TIME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`level`	Options: ■ `All` - Sets the visibility of temporal data to the full table, which is the default temporal table visibility ■ `CURRENT` - Sets the visibility of temporal data to currently valid data within the valid time period at the session level ■ `ASOF` - Sets the visibility of temporal data to data valid as of the given time as defined by the timestamp
`query_time`	Used only if level is `ASOF`. Data which is valid at this `query_time` will only be shown.

EXTEND_MAPPINGS Procedure

This procedure extends time mappings to times in the past.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.EXTEND_MAPPINGS;
```

GET_SYS_CONTEXT Function

This function gets the context previously selected by the SET_CONTEXT_LEVEL Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.GET_SYS_CONTEXT (
   xid            IN   RAW,
   namespace      IN   VARCHAR2,
   parameter      IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 71–11 GET_SYS_CONTEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xid`	Transaction identifier is an opaque handle to a transaction obtained from the versions query
`namespace`	Namespace
`parameter`	If undefined, the subprogram returns `NULL`

IMPORT_HISTORY Procedure

This procedure is called after invoking the CREATE_TEMP_HISTORY_TABLE Procedure procedure, and after the TEMP_HISTORY table is populated with user-generated history data.

> **Caution:** Importing user-generated history can lead to inaccurate, or unreliable results. This procedure should only be used after consulting with Oracle Support.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.IMPORT_HISTORY (
   owner_name1          IN   VARCHAR2,
   table_name1          IN   VARCHAR2
   temp_history_name    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TEMP_HISTORY',
   options              IN   BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 71–12 IMPORT_HISTORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name1	Schema of the Flashback Data Archive-enabled table
table_name1	Name of the Flashback Data Archive-enabled table
temp_history_name	Optional temporary history table from which we import history data
options	One (or a combination) of constants (NODROP, NOCOMMIT, and NODELETE) to specify if we want to drop, commit changes of, or truncate the temporary history table

Usage Notes

The database function TIMESTAMP_TO_SCN can be used to convert times to SCN when populating the temporary history table.

LOCK_DOWN_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and makes all the security tables read-only. The group called `SYSTEM` cannot be locked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.LOCK_DOWN_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–13 LOCK_DOWN_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`application_name`	Name of the application for which a table has been added as a security table

PURGE_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure purges the context to be saved selected by the SET_CONTEXT_LEVEL Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.PURGE_CONTEXT;
```

REASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure

This procedure reassociates the given table with the flashback data archive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.REASSOCIATE_FBA (
   owner_name      VARCHAR2,
   table_name      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–14 REASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name	Schema of the Flashback Data Archive enabled base table
table_name	Name of the Flashback Data Archive enabled base table

Exceptions

Table 71–15 REASSOCIATE_FBA Procedure Exceptions

Parameter	Description
ORA-55602	User table is not enabled for Flashback Data Archive
ORA-55636	Table definition validation failed

Usage Notes

- The procedure will signal an error if the base table and the history table do not have identical data definitions. For example, when columns are added or table is split, the resulting base table and history table need to have the same schema.
- The FDA internal history table schema has some row versions metadata columns. The procedure will signal an error if any metadata column is dropped by users.

REGISTER_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and optionally a Flashback Data Archive, and registers an application for database hardening. When database hardening is enabled, then all the security tables for that application are enabled for Flashback Data Archive using the given Flashback Data Archive. If no Flashback Data Archive is specified, the default Flashback Data Archive is used.

> **See Also:** Using Flashback Data Archive in *Oracle Database Development Guide* regarding database hardening

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.REGISTER_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2,
   flashback_archive_name     IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 71–16 REGISTER_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`application_name`	Name of the application which is being registered. The application `SYSTEM` is already registered when the package is created and is populated with list of tables needed for database hardening.
`flashback_archive_name`	Name of the Flashback Data Archive in which the historical data for the security tables for given application is stored. If no Flashback Data Archive is specified, the default Flashback Data Archive is used.

REMOVE_TABLE_FROM_APPLICATION Procedure

This procedure takes an application name and marks a table in it as no longer being a security table. If the application is already enabled for Flashback Data Archive, Flashback Data Archive will be disabled for this table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.REMOVE_TABLE_TO_APPLICATION (
   application_name           IN   VARCHAR2,
   table_name                 IN   VARCHAR2,
   schema_name                IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 71–17 REMOVE_TABLE_FROM_APPLICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
application_name	Name of the application for which a table is being removed from the list of security tables
table_name	Name of the table to mark as being no longer a security table for the given application
schema_name	Name of the schema containing the desired table. If no schema name is specified, the current schema is used.

SET_CONTEXT_LEVEL Procedure

This procedure defines how much of the user context is to be saved.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FLASHBACK_ARCHIVE.SET_CONTEXT_LEVEL (
   level          VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 71–18 SET_CONTEXT_LEVEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`level`	Depending on how much of the user context needs to be saved: ■ `ALL` - the entire `SYS_CONTEXT` ■ `TYPICAL` - the user ID, global user ID and the hostname ■ `NONE` - nothing

72

DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH

The DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH package provides subprograms for granting privileges to and revoking privileges from GoldenGate administrators.

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Using DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH
  - Overview
  - Security Model
- Summary of DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH Subprograms

See Also: GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6 in the DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH package

Using DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH` package.

Overview

This package provides subprograms for granting privileges to GoldenGate administrators and revoking privileges from GoldenGate administrators. A GoldenGate administrator manages an integrated GoldenGate and XStream Out configuration.

GoldenGate administrators can be used in a multitenant container database (CDB). A CDB is an Oracle database that includes zero, one, or many user-created pluggable databases (PDBs).

See Also:

- GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6 in the DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH package
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
- *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information about CDBs and PDBs

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, connect as an administrative user who can create users, grant privileges, and create tablespaces when using this package.

Summary of DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH Subprograms

Table 72–1 DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 72-6	Either grants the privileges needed by a user to be a GoldenGate administrator directly, or generates a script that grants these privileges
REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 72-10	Either revokes GoldenGate administrator privileges from a user directly, or generates a script that revokes these privileges

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grants the privileges needed by a user to be a GoldenGate administrator.

See Also: GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6 in the DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH package

Syntax

```
DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE(
   grantee                     IN  VARCHAR2,
   privilege_type              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   grant_select_privileges     IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   do_grants                   IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   file_name                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   directory_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL
   grant_optional_privileges   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameters

Table 72–2 GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user to whom privileges are granted
privilege_type	Specify one of the following values: ■ CAPTURE Specifying CAPTURE grants the minimum privileges required by the user to administer Oracle GoldenGate integrated extract. ■ APPLY Specifying APPLY grants the minimum privileges required by the user to administer Oracle GoldenGate integrated replicat. ■ * Specifying * grants the minimum privileges required by the user to administer Oracle GoldenGate integrated extract and Oracle GoldenGate integrated replicat.
grant_select_privileges	If TRUE, then the procedure grants a set of privileges, including SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE, to the user. This setting is recommended for GoldenGate administrators. If FALSE, then the procedure does not grant the set of privileges to the user. SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE enables the user to select from the data dictionary.

Table 72–2 (Cont.) GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
do_grants	If TRUE, then the procedure grants the privileges to the specified grantee directly, and adds the grantee to the DBA_GOLDENGATE_PRIVILEGES data dictionary view. If the user already has an entry in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not make another entry, and no error is raised. If TRUE and any of the grant statements fails, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not grant the privileges to the specified grantee directly, and does not add the grantee to the DBA_GOLDENGATE_PRIVILEGES data dictionary view. You specify FALSE when the procedure is generating a file that you will run later. If you specify FALSE and either the file_name or directory_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure raises an error. Note: It is recommended that do_grants be set to TRUE because many APIs check for the presence of a user in the DBA_GOLDENGATE_PRIVILEGES view, which will not be populated if do_grants is set to FALSE.
file_name	The name of the file generated by the procedure. The file contains all of the statements that grant the privileges. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory name, then the grant statements are appended to the existing file. If NULL, then the procedure does not generate a file.
directory_name	The directory into which the generated file is placed. The specified directory must be a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. If you specify a directory, then the user who invokes the procedure must have the WRITE privilege on the directory object. If the file_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the procedure does not generate a file. If NULL and the file_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
grant_optional_privileges	A comma-separated list of optional privileges to grant to the grantee. You can specify the following roles and privileges: ■ XDBADMIN ■ DV_XSTREAM_ADMIN ■ DV_GOLDENGATE_ADMIN ■ EXEMPT_ACCESS_POLICY ■ EXEMPT_REDACTION_POLICY
container	If CURRENT, then grants privileges to the grantee only in the container where the procedure is invoked. CURRENT can be specified while connected to the root or to a PDB. If ALL, then grants privileges to the grantee in all containers in the CDB and all PDBs created after the procedure is invoked. To specify ALL, the procedure must be invoked in the root by a common user. If a container name, then grants privileges to the grantee only in the specified container. To specify root, use CDB$ROOT while connected to the root. To specify a PDB, the procedure must be invoked in the root. **Note:** This parameter only applies to CDBs.

Usage Notes

The user who runs the procedure must be an administrative user who can grant privileges to other users.

Specifically, the procedure grants the following privileges to the specified user:

- The `RESTRICTED SESSION` system privilege
- `EXECUTE` on the following packages:
  - `DBMS_APPLY_ADM`
  - `DBMS_AQ`
  - `DBMS_AQADM`
  - `DBMS_AQIN`
  - `DBMS_AQELM`
  - `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM`
  - `DBMS_FLASHBACK`
  - `DBMS_LOCK`
  - `DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM`
  - `DBMS_RULE_ADM`
  - `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM`
  - `DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM`
  - `DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM`
  - `DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING`
  - `DBMS_TRANSFORM`
  - `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM`
- Privileges to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from any queue
- Privileges to manage any queue
- Privileges to create, alter, and execute any of the following types of objects in the user's own schema and in other schemas:
  - Evaluation contexts
  - Rule sets
  - Rules

  In addition, the grantee can grant these privileges to other users.
- `SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE`
- `SELECT` or `READ` privilege on data dictionary views related to GoldenGate and Oracle Streams
- The ability to allow a remote GoldenGate administrator to perform administrative actions through a database link by connecting to the grantee

  This ability is enabled by running the `GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS` procedure in this package.

Note: This procedure grants only the privileges necessary to configure and administer a GoldenGate environment. You can grant additional privileges to the grantee if necessary.

See Also: GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6 in the DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH package

REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes GoldenGate administrator privileges from a user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_GOLDENGATE_AUTH.REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE(
   grantee                     IN  VARCHAR2,
   privilege_type              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   revoke_select_privileges    IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   do_revokes                  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   file_name                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   directory_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL
   revoke_optional_privileges  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameters

Table 72–3 REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`grantee`	The user from whom privileges are revoked
`privilege_type`	Specify one of the following values: ■ `CAPTURE` Specifying `CAPTURE` revokes the minimum privileges required by the user to administer Oracle GoldenGate integrated extract. ■ `APPLY` Specifying `APPLY` revokes the minimum privileges required by the user to administer Oracle GoldenGate integrated replicat. ■ `*` Specifying `*` revokes the minimum privileges required by the user to administer Oracle GoldenGate integrated extract and Oracle GoldenGate integrated replicat.
`revoke_select_privileges`	If `TRUE`, then the procedure revokes `SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE` from the user. If `FALSE`, then the procedure does not revoke `SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE` to the user. `SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE` enables the user to select from the data dictionary.

Table 72–3 (Cont.) REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
do_revokes	If TRUE, then the procedure revokes the privileges from the specified user directly, and removes the user from the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. If the user does not have a record in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not remove a record from the view, and no error is raised. If TRUE and any of the revoke statements fails, then the procedure raises an error. A revoke statement fails if the user is not granted the privilege that is being revoked. If FALSE, then the procedure does not revoke the privileges from the specified user directly, and does not remove the user from the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. You specify FALSE when the procedure is generating a file that you will run later. If you specify FALSE and either the file_name or directory_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure does not raise an error.
file_name	The name of the file generated by this procedure. The file contains all of the statements that revoke the privileges. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory name, then the revoke statements are appended to the existing file. If NULL, then the procedure does not generate a file.
directory_name	The directory into which the generated file is placed. The specified directory must be a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. If you specify a directory, then the user who invokes the procedure must have the WRITE privilege on the directory object. If the file_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the procedure does not generate a file. If NULL and the file_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
revoke_optional_privileges	A comma-separated list of optional privileges to revoke from the grantee, such as the DV_XSTREAM_ADMIN and DV_GOLDENGATE_ADMIN privileges
container	If CURRENT, then revokes privileges from the grantee only in the container where the procedure is invoked. CURRENT can be specified while connected to the root or to a PDB. If ALL, then revokes privileges from the grantee in all containers in the CDB. To specify ALL, the procedure must be invoked in the root. If a container name, then revokes privileges from the grantee only in the specified container. To specify root, use CDB$ROOT while connected to the root. To specify a PDB, the procedure must be invoked in the root. **Note:** This parameter only applies to CDBs.

Usage Notes

The user who runs this procedure must be an administrative user who can revoke privileges from other users. Specifically, this procedure revokes the privileges granted by running the GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure in this package.

> **See Also:** "GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure" on page 72-6

73

DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET

The DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET package enables frequent itemset counting. The two functions are identical except in the input cursor format difference.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Summary of DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET Subprograms

Table 73–1 DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FI_HORIZONTAL Function on page 73-3	Counts all frequent itemsets given a cursor for input data which is in 'HORIZONTAL' row format, support threshold, minimum itemset length, maximum itemset length, items to be included, items to be excluded
FI_TRANSACTIONAL Function on page 73-5	Counts all frequent itemsets given a cursor for input data which is in 'TRANSACTIONAL' row format, support threshold, minimum itemset length, maximum itemset length, items to be included, items to be excluded

FI_HORIZONTAL Function

The purpose of this table function is to count all frequent itemsets given a cursor for input data which is in 'HORIZONTAL' row format, support threshold, minimum itemset length, maximum itemset length, items to be included, items to be excluded. The result will be a table of rows in form of itemset, support, length, total transactions counted.

In 'HORIZONTAL' row format, each row contains all of the item ids for a single transaction. Since all of the items come together, no transaction id is necessary.

The benefit of this table function is that if an application already has data in horizontal format, the database can skip the step of transforming rows that are in transactional format into horizontal format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_HORIZONTAL(
   tranx_cursor         IN    SYSREFCURSOR,
   support_threshold    IN    NUMBER,
   itemset_length_min   IN    NUMBER,
   itemset_length_max   IN    NUMBER,
   including_items      IN    SYS_REFCURSOR DEFAULT NULL,
   excluding_items      IN    SYS_REFCURSOR DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN TABLE OF ROW (
     itemset [Nested Table of Item Type DERIVED FROM tranx_cursor],
     support        NUMBER,
     length         NUMBER,
     total_tranx    NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 73–2 FI_HORIZONTAL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
tranx_cursor	The cursor parameter that the user will supply when calling the function. There is no limits on the number of returning columns.Each column of cursor represents an item. All columns of the cursor must be of the same datatype. The item id must be number or character type (for example, VARCHAR2(n)).
support_threshold	A fraction number of total transaction count. An itemset is termed "frequent" if [the number of transactions it occurs in] divided by [the total number of transactions] exceed the fraction. The parameter must be a NUMBER.
itemset_length_min	The minimum length for interested frequent itemset. The parameter must be a NUMBER between 1 and 20, inclusive.
itemset_length_max	The maximum length for interested frequent itemset. This parameter must be a NUMBER between 1 and 20, inclusive, and must not be less than itemset_length_min.
including_items	A cursor from which a list of items can be fetched. At least one item from the list must appear in frequent itemsets that are returned. The default is NULL.
excluding_items	A cursor from which a list of items can be fetched. No item from the list can appear in frequent itemsets that are returned.The default is NULL.

Return Values

Table 73–3 FI_HORIZONTAL Return Values

Parameter	Description
support	The number of transactions in which a frequent itemset occurs. This will be returned as a NUMBER.
itemset	A collection of items which is computed as frequent itemset. This will be returned as a nested table of item type which is the item column type of the input cursor.
length	Number of items in a frequent itemset. This will be returned as a NUMBER.
total_tranx	The total transaction count. This will be returned as a NUMBER.

Example

Suppose you have a table horiz_table_in.

```
horiz_table_in(iid1 VARCHAR2(30), iid2 VARCHAR2(30), iid3 VARCHAR2(30), iid4
VARCHAR2(30), iid5 VARCHAR2(30));
```

and the data in horiz_table_in looks as follows:

```
('apple', 'banana', NULL, NULL, NULL)
('apple', 'milk', 'banana', NULL, NULL)
('orange', NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL)
```

Suppose you want to find out what combinations of items is frequent with a given support threshold of 30%, requiring itemset containing at least one of ('apple','banana','orange'), but excluding any of ('milk') in any itemset. You use the following query:

```
CREATE TYPE fi_varchar_nt AS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30);
SELECT CAST(itemset as FI_VARCHAR_NT)itemset, support, length, total_tranx
   FROM table(DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_HORIZONTAL(
                CURSOR(SELECT iid1, iid2, iid3, iid4, iid5
                         FROM horiz_table_in),
                0.3,
                2,
                5,
                CURSOR(SELECT * FROM table(FI_VARCHAR_NT
                                    ('apple','banana','orange'))),
                CURSOR(SELECT * FROM table(FI_VARCHAR_NT('milk')))));
```

FI_TRANSACTIONAL Function

This procedure counts all frequent itemsets given a cursor for input data which is in 'TRANSACTIONAL' row format, support threshold, minimum itemset length, maximum itemset length, items to be included, items to be excluded. The result will be a table of rows in form of itemset, support, length, total number of transactions.

In 'TRANSACTIONAL' row format, each transaction is spread across multiple rows. All the rows of a given transaction have the same transaction id, and each row has a different item id. Combining all of the item ids which share a given transaction id results in a single transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_TRANSACTIONAL (
   tranx_cursor         IN    SYSREFCURSOR,
   support_threshold    IN    NUMBER,
   itemset_length_min   IN    NUMBER,
   itemset_length_max   IN    NUMBER,
   including_items      IN    SYS_REFCURSOR DEFAULT NULL,
   excluding_items      IN    SYS_REFCURSOR DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN TABLE OF ROW (
     itemset [Nested Table of Item Type DERIVED FROM tranx_cursor],
     support        NUMBER,
     length         NUMBER,
     total_tranx    NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 73–4 FI_TRANSACTIONAL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
tranx_cursor	The cursor parameter that the user will supply when calling the function. It should return two columns in its returning row, the first column being the transaction id, the second column being the item id. The item id must be number or character type (for example, VARCHAR2(n)).
support_threshold	A fraction number of total transaction count. An itemset is termed "frequent" if [the number of transactions it occurs in] divided by [the total number of transactions] exceed the fraction. The parameter must be a NUMBER.
itemset_length_min	The minimum length for interested frequent itemset. The parameter must be a NUMBER between 1 and 20, inclusive.
itemset_length_max	The maximum length for interested frequent itemset. This parameter must be a NUMBER between 1 and 20, inclusive, and must not be less than itemset_length_min.
including_items	A cursor from which a list of items can be fetched. At least one item from the list must appear in frequent itemsets that will be returned. The default is NULL.
excluding_items	A cursor from which a list of items can be fetched. No item from the list can appear in frequent itemsets that will returned. The default is NULL.

Return Values

Table 73–5 FI_TRANSACTIONAL Return Values

Parameter	Description
support	The number of transactions in which a frequent itemset occurs. This will be returned as a NUMBER.
itemset	A collection of items which is computed as frequent itemset. This will be returned as a nested table of item type which is the item column type of the input cursor.
length	Number of items in a frequent itemset. This will be returned as a NUMBER.
total_tranx	The total transaction count. This will be returned as a NUMBER, and will be the same for all returned rows, similar to a reporting aggregate.

Usage Notes

Applications must predefine a nested table type of the input item type and cast the output itemset into this predefined nested table type before further processing, such as loading into a table.

Examples

Suppose that the input table tranx_table_in looks as follows:

```
(1, 'apple')
(1, 'banana')
(2, 'apple')
(2, 'milk')
(2, 'banana')
(3, 'orange')
```

and the user is trying to find itemsets that satisfy a support-threshold of 60% and have the itemset-length greater than 1 (namely, (apple, banana)).

The output of this function would contain the following output row:

```
itemset=('apple','banana'), support=2, length=2, total_tranx=3
```

You need to create a nested table of item type before you submit a query to perform the frequent itemset counting. In this example, since item is of VARCHAR2(30), you must create a nested table of VARCHAR2(30):

```
CREATE TYPE fi_varchar_nt AS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30);
SELECT CAST(itemset as FI_VARCHAR_NT) itemset, support, length, total_tranx
   FROM table(DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_TRANSACTIONAL(
                cursor(SELECT tid, iid FROM tranx_table_in),
                0.6,
                2,
                5,
                NULL,
                NULL));
```

Here is another example to illustrate how to include certain items and exclude certain items in the counting.

```
SELECT CAST(itemset as FI_VARCHAR_NT)itemset, support, length, total_tranx
   FROM table(DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_TRANSACTIONAL(
                CURSOR(SELECT tid, iid FROM tranx_table_in),
```

```
              0.6,
              2,
              5,
             CURSOR(SELECT * FROM table(FI_VARCHAR_NT
                                        ('apple','banana','orange'))),
             CURSOR(SELECT * FROM table(FI_VARCHAR_NT('milk'))));
```

Using the including/excluding items parameter, you are able to further optimize the execution by ignoring itemsets that are not expected by application.

You can also use transactional output through collection unnesting:

```
SELECT
  bt.setid, nt.*
FROM
(SELECT cast(Itemset as FI_VARCHAR_NT) itemset, rownum setid
 FROM table(
   DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_TRANSACTIONAL(
     CURSOR(SELECT tid, iid FROM tranx_table_in), 0.6, 2, 5,
     NULL, NULL))) bt,
table(bt.itemset) nt;
```

If you want to use an insert statement to load frequent itemsets into a nested table, it is better to use the `NESTED_TABLE_FAST_INSERT` hint for performance:

```
CREATE TABLE fq_nt (coll FI_VARCHAR_NT) NESTED TABLE coll STORE AS
  coll_nest;
INSERT /*+ NESTED_TABLE_FAST_INSERT */  INTO fq_nt
 SELECT cast(itemset as FI_VARCHAR_NT)
 FROM table(DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_TRANSACTIONAL(
        cursor(SELECT tid, iid FROM tranx_table_in), 0.6, 2, 5,
        NULL, NULL));
```

Note that if you want to use the package inside a PL/SQL cursor, you must cast the return type of the table function:

```
CREATE TYPE fi_res AS OBJECT (
  itemset      FI_VARCHAR_NT,
  support      NUMBER,
  length       NUMBER,
  total_tranx  NUMBER
);
/
CREATE TYPE fi_coll AS TABLE OF fi_res;
/

DECLARE
  cursor freqC is
    SELECT Itemset
    FROM table(
      CAST(DBMS_FREQUENT_ITEMSET.FI_TRANSACTIONAL(
        cursor(SELECT tid, iid FROM tranx_table_in), 0.6, 2, 5,
        NULL, NULL) AS fi_coll));
  coll_nt  FI_VARCHAR_NT;
  num_rows int;
  num_itms int;
BEGIN
  num_rows := 0;
  num_itms := 0;
  OPEN freqC;
  LOOP
```

```
      FETCH freqC INTO coll_nt;
      EXIT WHEN freqC%NOTFOUND;
      num_rows := num_rows + 1;
      num_itms := num_itms + coll_nt.count;
    END LOOP;
  CLOSE freqC;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Totally ' || num_rows || ' rows ' || num_itms || '
items were produced.');
END;
/
```

74

DBMS_HEAT_MAP

The DBMS_HEAT_MAP package provides an interface to externalize heatmaps at various levels of storage including block, extent, segment, object and tablespace. A second set of subprograms externalize the heatmaps materialized by the background for top N tablespaces.

See Also:

- Heat Map in *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide*
- DBMS_ILM
- DBMS_ILM_ADMIN

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_HEAT_MAP

Overview

To implement your ILM strategy, you can use Heat Map in Oracle Database to track data access and modification. You can also use Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) to automate the compression and movement of data between different tiers of storage within the database.

The Heat Map tracks modification times at the block level, and multiple access statistics at the segment level. Objects in the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` tablespaces are not tracked. `DBMS_HEAT_MAP` gives you access to the Heat Map statistics at various levels - block, extent, segment, object, and tablespace.

Security Model

The execution privilege is granted to `PUBLIC`. Procedures in this package run under the caller security. The user must have `ANALYZE` privilege on the object.

Summary of DBMS_HEAT_MAP Subprograms

Table 74–1 DBMS_HEAT_MAP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BLOCK_HEAT_MAP Function on page 74-6	Returns last modification time for each block in a table segment
EXTENT_HEAT_MAP Function on page 74-7	Returns the extent level Heat Map statistics for a table segment
OBJECT_HEAT_MAP Function on page 74-8	Returns the minimum, maximum and average access times for all the segments belonging to the object
SEGMENT_HEAT_MAP Procedure on page 74-9	Returns the heatmap attributes for the given segment
TABLESPACE_HEAT_MAP Function on page 74-11	Returns the minimum, maximum and average access times for all the segments in the tablespace

BLOCK_HEAT_MAP Function

This table function returns the last modification time for each block in a table segment. It returns no information for segment types that are not data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HEAT_MAP.BLOCK_HEAT_MAP (
   owner             IN VARCHAR2,
   segment_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   partition_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   sort_columnid     IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   sort_order        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN hm_bls_row PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 74–2 BLOCK_HEAT_MAP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`owner`	Owner of the segment
`segment_name`	Table name of a non-partitioned table or (sub)partition of partitioned table. Returns no rows when table name is specified for a partitioned table.
`partition_name`	Defaults to `NULL`. For a partitioned table, specify the partition or subpartition segment name.
`sort_columnid`	ID of the column on which to sort the output. Valid values 1..9. Invalid values are ignored.
`sort_order`	Defaults to `NULL`. Possible values: `ASC`, `DESC`

Return Values

Table 74–3 BLOCK_HEAT_MAP Function Return Values (Output Parameters)

Parameter	Description
`owner`	Owner of the segment
`segment_name`	Segment name of the non-partitioned table
`partition_name`	Partition or subpartition name
`tablespace_name`	Tablespace containing the segment
`file_id`	Absolute file number of the block in the segment
`relative_fno`	Relative file number of the block in the segment
`block_id`	Block number of the block
`write time`	Last modification time of the block

EXTENT_HEAT_MAP Function

This table function returns the extent level Heat Map statistics for a table segment. It returns no information for segment types that are not data. Aggregates at extent level, including minimum modification time and maximum modification time, are included.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HEAT_MAP.EXTENT_HEAT_MAP (
   owner             IN VARCHAR2,
   segment_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   partition_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
RETURN hm_els_row PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 74–4 EXTENT_HEAT_MAP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner of the segment
segment_name	Table name of a non-partitioned table or (sub)partition of partitioned table. Returns no rows when table name is specified for a partitioned table.
partition_name	Defaults to NULL. For a partitioned table, specify the partition or subpartition segment name.

Return Values

Table 74–5 EXTENT_HEAT_MAP Function Return Values (Output Parameters)

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner of the segment
segment_name	Segment name of the non-partitioned table
partition_name	Partition or subpartition name
tablespace_name	Tablespace containing the segment
file_id	Absolute file number of the block in the segment
relative_fno	Relative file number of the block in the segment
block_id	Block number of the block
blocks	Number of blocks in the extent
bytes	Number of bytes in the extent
min_writetime	Minimum of last modification time of the block
max_writetime	Maximum of last modification time of the block
avg_writetime	Average of last modification time of the block

OBJECT_HEAT_MAP Function

This table function returns the minimum, maximum and average access times for all the segments belonging to the object. The object must be a table. The table function raises an error if called on object tables other than table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HEAT_MAP.OBJECT_HEAT_MAP (
   object_owner      IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name       IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN hm_object_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 74–6 OBJECT_HEAT_MAP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_owner	Tablespace containing the segment
object_name	Segment header relative file number

Return Values

Table 74–7 OBJECT_HEAT_MAP Function Return Values (Output Parameters)

Parameter	Description
segment_name	Name of the top level segment
partition_name	Name of the partition
tablespace_name	Name of the tablespace
segment_type	Type of segment as in DBA_SEGMENTS.SEGMENT_TYPE
segment_size	Segment size in bytes
min_writetime	Oldest write time for the segment
max_writetime	Latest write time for the segment
avg_writetime	Average write time for the segment
min_readtime	Oldest read time for the segment
max_readtime	Latest read time for the segment
avg_writetime	Average write time for the segment
min_lookuptime	Oldest index lookup time for the segment
max_lookuptime	Latest index lookup time for the segment
avg_lookuptime	Average index lookup time for the segment
min_ftstime	Oldest full table scan time for the segment
max_ftstime	Latest full table scan time for the segment
avg_ftstime	Average full table scan time for the segment

SEGMENT_HEAT_MAP Procedure

This procedure returns the heatmap attributes for the given segment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HEAT_MAP.SEGMENT_HEAT_MAP (
   tablespace_id          IN  NUMBER,
   header_file            IN  NUMBER,
   header_block           IN  NUMBER,
   segment_objd           IN  NUMBER,
   min_writetime          OUT DATE,
   max_writetime          OUT DATE,
   avg_writetime          OUT DATE,
   min_readtime           OUT DATE,
   max_readtime           OUT DATE,
   avg_readtime           OUT DATE,
   min_lookuptime         OUT DATE,
   max_lookuptime         OUT DATE,
   avg_lookuptime         OUT DATE,
   min_ftstime            OUT DATE,
   max_ftstime            OUT DATE,
   avg_ftstime            OUT DATE);
```

Parameters

Table 74–8 SEGMENT_HEAT_MAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_id	Tablespace containing the segment
header_file	Segment header relative file number
header_block	Segment header block number
segment_objd	DATAOBJ of the segment

Return Values

Table 74–9 SEGMENT_HEAT_MAP Procedure Return Values (Output Parameters)

Parameter	Description
min_writetime	Oldest write time for the segment
max_writetime	Latest write time for the segment
avg_writetime	Average write time for the segment
min_readtime	Oldest read time for the segment
max_readtime	Latest read time for the segment
avg_writetime	Average write time for the segment
min_lookuptime	Oldest index lookup time for the segment
max_lookuptime	Latest index lookup time for the segment
avg_lookuptime	Average index lookup time for the segment
min_ftstime	Oldest full table scan time for the segment
max_ftstime	Latest full table scan time for the segment

Table 74–9 (Cont.) SEGMENT_HEAT_MAP Procedure Return Values (Output Parameters)

Parameter	Description
avg_ftstime	Average full table scan time for the segment

TABLESPACE_HEAT_MAP Function

This table function returns the minimum, maximum and average access times for all the segments in the tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HEAT_MAP.TABLESPACE_HEAT_MAP (
    tablespace_name      IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN hm_tablespace_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 74–10 TABLESPACE_HEAT_MAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of the tablespace

Return Values

Table 74–11 TABLESPACE_HEAT_MAP Procedure Return Values (Output Parameters)

Parameter	Description
segment_count	Total number of segments in the tablespace
allocated_bytes	Space used by the segments in the tablespace
min_writetime	Oldest write time for the segment
max_writetime	Latest write time for the segment
avg_writetime	Average write time for the segment
min_readtime	Oldest read time for the segment
max_readtime	Latest read time for the segment
avg_writetime	Average write time for the segment
min_lookuptime	Oldest index lookup time for the segment
max_lookuptime	Latest index lookup time for the segment
avg_lookuptime	Average index lookup time for the segment
min_ftstime	Oldest full table scan time for the segment
max_ftstime	Latest full table scan time for the segment
avg_ftstime	Average full table scan time for the segment

75

DBMS_HM

This package contains constants and procedure declarations for health check management. Health Monitor provides facilities to run a check store and retrieve the reports through `DBMS_HM` package

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about "Health Monitor"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_HM

Security Model

Users must have `EXECUTE` privilege to run the procedures of `DBMS_HM` package.

Summary of DBMS_HM Subprograms

Table 75–1 DBMS_HM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_RUN_REPORT Function on page 75-5	Returns the report for the specified checker run
RUN_CHECK Procedure on page 75-6	Runs the specified checker with the given arguments

GET_RUN_REPORT Function

This function returns the report for the specified checker run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HM.GET_RUN_REPORT (
    run_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
    type           IN  VARCHAR2 := 'TEXT',
    level          IN  VARCHAR2 := 'BASIC',)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 75–2 GET_RUN_REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`run_name`	Name of the check's run
`type`	Report format type. Possible values are `'HTML'`, `'XML'` and `'TEXT'`. Default report type is `'TEXT'`.
`level`	Details of report, possible value are `'BASIC'` and `'DETAIL'`. Caution: Currently only `'BASIC'` level is supported.

RUN_CHECK Procedure

This procedure runs the specified checker with the given arguments. It lets user to specify a name for the run, inputs needed and maximum timeout for the run. The run's report will be maintained persistently in database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HM.RUN_CHECK (
   check_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   run_name       IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   timeout        IN  NUMBER := NULL,
   input_params   IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 75–3 RUN_CHECK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
check_name	Name of the check to be invoked. Check names and their parameters can be accessed from the V$HM_CHECK and V$HM_CHECK_PARAM views. Users can run all checks which are not internal in nature: SELECT name FROM V$HM_CHECK WHERE INTERNAL_CHECK = 'N' retrieves the list of checks that can be run manually by users.
run_name	Name with which external users can uniquely identify this check's run. If NULL value is passed, then HM creates a unique name and associates with this check's run.
timeout	Maximum amount of time (in units of seconds), this checker run is allowed to run. HM will interrupt the run, if it the specified time elapses for the run. If NULL value is passed, HM doesn't impose any timeout limits on the run.
input_params	Input string: which consists of name, value pairs de-limited by a special character ';'. Example ('Data Block Integrity Check' invocation may take following type of input parameters. 'BLC_DF_NUM=1;BLC_BL_NUM=23456' Input parameters BLC_DF_NUM and BLC_BL_NUM have values '1' and '23456' respectively. Every check will have well defined set of inputs associated with it. These Input parameters, their types, default values and descriptions can be obtained using V$HM_CHECK_PARAM view. Example: The following query gets the list of parameters, their default values and descriptions for a 'Data Block Integrity Check' SELECT a.* FROM v$hm_check_param a, v$hm_check b WHERE a.check_id = b.id AND b.name = 'Data Block Integrity Check';

76

DBMS_HPROF

The `DBMS_HPROF` package provides an interface for profiling the execution of PL/SQL applications. It provides services for collecting the hierarchical profiler data, analyzing the raw profiler output and profiling information generation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide* for more information about the "PL/SQL Hierarchical Profiler"

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Summary of DBMS_HPROF Subprograms

Summary of DBMS_HPROF Subprograms

This table list the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 76–1 DBMS_HPROF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ANALYZE Function on page 76-3	Analyzes the raw profiler output and produces hierarchical profiler information in database tables
START_PROFILING Procedure on page 76-5	Starts hierarchical profiler data collection in the user's session
STOP_PROFILING Procedure on page 76-6	Stops profiler data collection in the user's session.s

ANALYZE Function

This function analyzes the raw profiler output and produces hierarchical profiler information in database tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HPROF.ANALYZE (
   location         VARCHAR2,
   filename         VARCHAR2,
   summary_mode     BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   trace            VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   skip             PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   collect          PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   run_comment      VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 76–2 ANALYZE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
location	Name of a directory object. The raw profiler data file is read from the file system directory mapped to this directory object. Output files are also written to this directory.
filename	Name of the raw profiler data file to be analyzed. The file must exist in the directory specified by the location parameter.
summary_mode	By default (that is, when summary_mode is FALSE), the detailed analysis is done.When summary_mode is TRUE, only top-level summary information is generated into the database table.
trace	Analyze only the subtrees rooted at the specified trace entry. By default (when trace is NULL), the analysis/reporting is generated for the entire run. The trace entry must be specified in a special quoted qualified format (including the schema name, module name & function name) as in for example, '"SCOTT"."PKG"."FOO"' or '"".""."__plsql_vm"'. If multiple overloads exist for the specified name, all of them will be analyzed.
skip	Used only when trace is specified.Analyze only the subtrees rooted at the specified trace, but ignore the first skip invocations to trace. The default value for skip is 0.
collect	Used only when trace is specified. Analyze collect number of invocations of traces (starting from skip+1'th invocation). By default only 1 invocation is collected.
run_comment	User-provided comment for this run

Return Values

A unique run identifier for this run of the analyzer. This can then be used to look up the results corresponding to this run from the hierarchical profiler tables.

Usage Notes

- Use the `dbmshptab.sql` script located in the `rdbms/admin` directory to create the hierarchical profiler database tables and other data structures required for persistently storing the results of analyzing the raw profiler data.
- Running `dbmshptab.sql` drops the any previously created hierarchical profiler tables.

Examples

The following snippet installs the hierarchical profiler tables in HR schema.

```
connect HR/HR;
@?/rdbms/admin/dbmshptab.sql
```

START_PROFILING Procedure

This procedure starts hierarchical profiler data collection in the user's session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HPROF.START_PROFILING (
   location    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   filename    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   max_depth   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 76–3 START_PROFILING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
location	Name of a directory object. The file system directory mapped to this directory object is where the raw profiler output is generated.
filename	Output filename for the raw profiler data. The file is created in the directory specified by the location parameter.
max_depth	By default (that is, when max_depth value is NULL) profile information is gathered for all functions irrespective of their call depth. When a non-NULL value is specified for max_depth, the profiler collects data only for functions up to a call depth level of max_depth.

Usage Notes

Even though the profiler does not individually track functions at depth greater than max_depth, the time spent in such functions is charged to the ancestor function at depth max_depth.

STOP_PROFILING Procedure

This procedure stops profiler data collection in the user's session. This subprogram also has the side effect of flushing data collected so far in the session, and it signals the end of a run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HPROF.STOP_PROFILING;
```

77

DBMS_HS_PARALLEL

The DBMS_HS_PARALLEL PL/SQL package enables parallel processing for heterogeneous targets access. This package is designed to improve performance when retrieving data from a large foreign table.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

Using DBMS_HS_PARALLEL

DBMS_HS_PARALLEL is compiled with the authorization ID of CURRENT_USER, which uses invoker's rights. In other words, all procedures in this package are executed with the privileges of the calling user.

Summary of DBMS_HS_PARALLEL Subprograms

Table 77–1 DBMS_HS_PARALLEL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW on page 77-4	Creates (or replaces) a read-only view to be referenced for retrieving the data from a remote table in parallel.
CREATE_TABLE_TEMPLATE on page 77-6	Writes out a `CREATE TABLE` template based on information gathered from the remote table. You can use the information to add any optimal Oracle `CREATE TABLE` clauses.
DROP_VIEW on page 77-7	Drops the view and internal objects created by the `CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW` procedure. If the view has not already been created by the `CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW` procedure, an error message is returned.
LOAD_TABLE on page 77-8	Loads the data from a remote table to a local Oracle table in parallel. If the local Oracle table does not already exist, it is created automatically.

CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW

This procedure creates (or replaces) a read-only view to be referenced for retrieving the data from a remote table in parallel.

Syntax

```
CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW (remote_table, database_link, oracle_view, parallel_degree)
```

Parameters

Table 77–2 CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW Parameter

Parameter	Value	Description
remote_table	IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL	The name of the remote database table. It is specified as [remote_schema_name.]remote_table_name.
database_link	IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL	The remote database link name. The call can only be applied to a heterogeneous services database link.
oracle_view	IN VARCHAR2	The name of the Oracle view. It is specified as [schema_name.]oracle_view_name. The default schema name is the current user. If the oracle_view parameter is not specified, the remote table name will be used as the view name.
parallel_degree	IN NUMBER	The number of parallel processes for the operation is computed based on the range-partition number if applicable, or the number of CPUs. The range of values is 2 to 16.

Usage Notes

- The specified Oracle view is created and future reference of this view utilizes internal database objects for parallel retrieval of remote non-Oracle table data. If the Oracle view already exists, the following Oracle error message is raised:

  ```
  ORA-00955: name is already used by an existing object
  ```

- This view is created as a read-only view. If you attempt to insert and update the view, the following Oracle error message is raised:

  ```
  ORA-01733: virtual column not allowed here
  ```

- If the remote table or the database link does not exist, one of the following Oracle error messages is raised:

  ```
  ORA-00942: table or view does not exist
  or
  ORA-02019: connection description for remote database not found
  ```

- You need the CREATE VIEW, CREATE TABLE, CREATE TYPE, CREATE PACKAGE, and CREATE FUNCTION privileges to execute the CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW procedure.
- If you encounter either of the following Oracle error messages, increase the PROCESSES and SESSIONS parameter in the Oracle initialization parameter file:

```
ORA-12801: error signaled in parallel query server P003
or
ORA-00018: maximum number of session exceeded
```

- Because the CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW procedure creates some internal objects, use the DROP_VIEW procedure to drop the view and the internal objects. The SQL DROP VIEW statement only drops the view and not the internal objects.

CREATE_TABLE_TEMPLATE

This procedure writes out a `CREATE TABLE` template based on information gathered from the remote table. You can use the information to add any optimal Oracle `CREATE TABLE` clauses.

Syntax

```
CREATE_TABLE_TEMPLATE (remote_table, database_link, oracle_table, create_table_
template_string)
```

Parameters

Table 77–3 CREATE_TABLE_TEMPLATE Parameter

Parameter	Value	Description
`remote_table`	`IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL`	The name of the remote database table. It is specified as `[remote_schema_name.]remote_table_name`.
`database_link`	`IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL`	The remote database link name. The call can only be applied to a heterogeneous services database link.
`oracle_table`	`IN VARCHAR2`	The name of the local Oracle table the data will be loaded into. It is specified as `[schema_name.]oracle_table_name`. The default schema name is the current user. If the `oracle_table` parameter is not specified, the remote table name will be used as the local Oracle name.
`create_table_template_string`	`OUT VARCHAR2`	Contains the Oracle `CREATE TABLE` SQL template when the procedure is returned.

DROP_VIEW

This procedure drops the view and internal objects created by the CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW procedure. If the view has not already been created by the CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW procedure, an error message is returned.

Syntax

```
DROP_VIEW (oracle_view)
```

Parameters

Table 77–4 DROP_VIEW Parameter

Parameter	Value	Description
oracle_view	IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL	The name of the Oracle view created by the CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW procedure. If the view has not been created by the CREATE_OR_REPLACE_VIEW procedure, an error is returned.

LOAD_TABLE

This procedure loads the data from a remote table to a local Oracle table in parallel. If the local Oracle table does not already exist, it is created automatically.

Syntax

```
LOAD_TABLE (remote_table, database_link, oracle_table, truncate, parallel_degree,
row_count)
```

Parameters

Table 77–5 LOAD_TABLE Parameters

Parameter	Value	Description
remote_table	IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL	The name of the remote database table. It is specified as [remote_schema_name.]remote_table_name
database_link	IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL	The remote database link name. The call can only be applied to a heterogeneous services database link.
oracle_table	IN VARCHAR2	The name of the local Oracle table the data will be loaded into. It is specified as [schema_name.]oracle_table_name. The default schema name is the current user. If the oracle_table parameter is not specified, the remote table name will be used as the local Oracle name.
truncate	IN BOOLEAN	Determines whether the Oracle table is truncated before the data is loaded. The value is either TRUE or FALSE. The default value is TRUE which means the Oracle table is truncated first. When set to FALSE, the Oracle table will not be truncated before the data is loaded.
parallel_degree	IN NUMBER	The number of parallel processes for the operation is computed based on the range-partition number if applicable, or the number of CPUs. The range of values is 2 to 16.
row_count	OUT NUMBER	Contains the number of rows just added with the load table operation.

Usage Notes

- This procedure only loads the remote table data into Oracle local table. It does not create a key, index, constraints or any other dependencies such as triggers. It is recommended that you create these dependencies after the table data is loaded as performance will improve greatly. You will need to decide whether to create the dependencies before or after the data is loaded based on your knowledge of the remote table data and dependencies.
- If the local table does not exist, the LOAD_TABLE procedure creates a simple (non-partitioned) local table based on the exact column matching of the remote table after which the data is inserted into the local table.

- If the remote table or the database link does not exist, an error message is returned.
- If the local table is incompatible with the remote table, an error message is returned.
- You need the `CREATE TABLE`, `CREATE TYPE`, `CREATE PACKAGE`, and `CREATE FUNCTION` privileges to execute the `LOAD_TABLE` procedure.
- If you encounter either of the following Oracle error messages, increase the `PROCESSES` and `SESSIONS` parameter in Oracle initialization parameter file:

```
ORA-12801: error signaled in parallel query server P003
or
ORA-00018: maximum number of session exceeded
```

- One of the following is required for parallel processing:
  - The remote table is range partitioned.
  - Histogram information for a numeric column is available.
  - There is a numeric index or primary key.
- To drop the local table, use the `DROP TABLE` SQL statement.

78

DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH

The DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH PL/SQL package allows you to send a statement directly to a non-Oracle system without being interpreted by the Oracle server. This can be useful if the non-Oracle system allows operations in statements for which there is no equivalent in Oracle.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- Using DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH
  - Overview
  - Operational Notes
- Summary of DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH Subprograms

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Heterogeneous Connectivity User's Guide* for more information about this package

Using DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH` package.

Overview

You can execute passthrough SQL statements directly at the non-Oracle system using the PL/SQL package `DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH`. Any statement executed with this package is executed in the same transaction as standard SQL statements.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Heterogeneous Connectivity User's Guide* for information about this package

Operational Notes

The DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH package is a virtual package. It conceptually resides at the non-Oracle system. In reality, however, calls to this package are intercepted by Heterogeneous Services and mapped to one or more Heterogeneous Services calls. The driver, in turn, maps these Heterogeneous Services calls to the API of the non-Oracle system. The client application should invoke the procedures in the package through a database link in exactly the same way as it would invoke a non-Oracle system stored procedure. The special processing done by Heterogeneous Services is transparent to the user.

Summary of DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH Subprograms

Table 78–1 DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE Procedure on page 78-6	Binds `IN OUT` bind variables
BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE_ RAW Procedure on page 78-7	Binds `IN OUT` bind variables of datatype `RAW`
BIND_OUT_VARIABLE Procedure on page 78-8	Binds an `OUT` variable with a PL/SQL program variable
BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure on page 78-9	Binds an `OUT` variable of datatype `RAW` with a PL/SQL program variable
BIND_VARIABLE Procedure on page 78-10	Binds an `IN` variable positionally with a PL/SQL program variable
BIND_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure on page 78-11	Binds `IN` variables of type `RAW`
CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure on page 78-12	Closes the cursor and releases associated memory after the SQL statement has been run at the non-Oracle system
EXECUTE_IMMEDIATE Procedure on page 78-13	Runs a (non-`SELECT`) SQL statement immediately, without bind variables
EXECUTE_NON_QUERY Function on page 78-14	Runs a (non-`SELECT`) SQL statement
FETCH_ROW Function on page 78-15	Fetches rows from a query
GET_VALUE Procedure on page 78-16	Retrieves column value from `SELECT` statement, or retrieves `OUT` bind parameters
GET_VALUE_RAW Procedure on page 78-17	Similar to `GET_VALUE`, but for datatype `RAW`
OPEN_CURSOR Function on page 78-18	Opens a cursor for running a passthrough SQL statement at the non-Oracle system
PARSE Procedure on page 78-19	Parses SQL statement at non-Oracle system

BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE Procedure

This procedure binds IN OUT bind variables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE (
   c     IN     BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p     IN     BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v     IN OUT <dty>,
   n     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

<dty> is either DATE, NUMBER, or VARCHAR2.

> **See Also:** For binding IN OUT variables of datatype RAW see BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure on page 78-7.

Parameters

Table 78–2 BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	This value is used for two purposes: - To provide the IN value before the SQL statement is run. - To determine the size of the out value.
n	(Optional) Name of the bind variable. For example, in SELECT * FROM emp WHERE ename=:ename, the position of the bind variable :ename is 1, the name is :ename. This parameter can be used if the non-Oracle system supports "named binds" instead of positional binds. Passing the position is still required.

Exceptions

Table 78–3 BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure

This procedure binds IN OUT bind variables of datatype RAW.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE_RAW (
   c      IN     BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p      IN     BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v      IN OUT RAW,
   n      IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 78–4 BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	This value is used for two purposes: - To provide the IN value before the SQL statement is run. - To determine the size of the out value.
n	(Optional) Name the bind variable. For example, in SELECT * FROM emp WHERE ename=:ename, the position of the bind variable :ename is 1, the name is :ename. This parameter can be used if the non-Oracle system supports "named binds" instead of positional binds. Passing the position is still required.

Exceptions

Table 78–5 BIND_INOUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

BIND_OUT_VARIABLE Procedure

This procedure binds an OUT variable with a PL/SQL program variable.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.BIND_OUT_VARIABLE (
   c      IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p      IN  BINARY_INTEGER NULL,
   v      OUT <dty>,
   n      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

<dty> is either DATE, NUMBER, or VARCHAR2.

> **See Also:** For binding OUT variables of datatype RAW, see BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure on page 78-9.

Parameters

Table 78–6 BIND_OUT_VARIABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	Variable in which the OUT bind variable stores its value. The package remembers only the "size" of the variable. After the SQL statement is run, you can use GET_VALUE to retrieve the value of the OUT parameter. The size of the retrieved value should not exceed the size of the parameter that was passed using BIND_OUT_VARIABLE.
n	(Optional) Name of the bind variable. For example, in SELECT * FROM emp WHERE ename=:ename, the position of the bind variable :ename is 1, the name is :ename. This parameter can be used if the non-Oracle system supports "named binds" instead of positional binds. Passing the position is still required.

Exceptions

Table 78–7 BIND_OUT_VARIABLE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure

This procedure binds an OUT variable of datatype RAW with a PL/SQL program variable.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW (
   c     IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p     IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v     OUT RAW,
   n     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 78–8 BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	Variable in which the OUT bind variable stores its value. The package remembers only the "size" of the variable. After the SQL statement is run, you can use GET_VALUE to retrieve the value of the OUT parameter. The size of the retrieved value should not exceed the size of the parameter that was passed using BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW.
n	(Optional) Name of the bind variable. For example, in SELECT * FROM emp WHERE ename=:ename, the position of the bind variable :ename is 1, the name is :ename. This parameter can be used if the non-Oracle system supports "named binds" instead of positional binds. Passing the position is still required.

Exceptions

Table 78–9 BIND_OUT_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

BIND_VARIABLE Procedure

This procedure binds an IN variable positionally with a PL/SQL program variable.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.BIND_VARIABLE (
   c      IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p      IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v      IN <dty>,
   n      IN VARCHAR2);
```

<dty> is either DATE, NUMBER, or VARCHAR2.

> **See Also:** To bind RAW variables use BIND_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure on page 78-11.

Parameters

Table 78–10 BIND_VARIABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	Value that must be passed to the bind variable name.
n	(Optional) Name of the bind variable. For example, in SELECT * FROM emp WHERE ename=:ename, the position of the bind variable :ename is 1, the name is :ename. This parameter can be used if the non-Oracle system supports "named binds" instead of positional binds. Passing the position is still required.

Exceptions

Table 78–11 BIND_VARIABLE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined: WNDS, RNDS
```

BIND_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure

This procedure binds IN variables of type RAW.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.BIND_VARIABLE_RAW (
   c    IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p    IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v    IN RAW,
   n    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 78–12 BIND_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	Value that must be passed to the bind variable.
n	(Optional) Name of the bind variable. For example, in SELECT * FROM emp WHERE ename=:ename, the position of the bind variable :ename is 1, the name is :ename. This parameter can be used if the non-Oracle system supports "named binds" instead of positional binds. Passing the position is still required.

Exceptions

Table 78–13 BIND_VARIABLE_RAW Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure

This function closes the cursor and releases associated memory after the SQL statement has been run at the non-Oracle system. If the cursor was not open, then the operation is a "no operation".

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.CLOSE_CURSOR (
   c IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 78–14 CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor to be released.

Exceptions

Table 78–15 CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

EXECUTE_IMMEDIATE Procedure

This function runs a SQL statement immediately. Any valid SQL command except SELECT can be run immediately. The statement must not contain any bind variables. The statement is passed in as a VARCHAR2 in the argument. Internally the SQL statement is run using the PASSTHROUGH SQL protocol sequence of OPEN_CURSOR, PARSE, EXECUTE_NON_QUERY, CLOSE_CURSOR.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.EXECUTE_IMMEDIATE (
   s IN VARCHAR2 NOT NULL)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 78–16 EXECUTE_IMMEDIATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
s	VARCHAR2 variable with the statement to be executed immediately.

Return Values

The number of rows affected by the execution of the SQL statement.

Exceptions

Table 78–17 EXECUTE_IMMEDIATE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28551	SQL statement is invalid.
ORA-28554	Max open cursors.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

EXECUTE_NON_QUERY Function

This function runs a SQL statement. The SQL statement cannot be a SELECT statement. A cursor has to be open and the SQL statement has to be parsed before the SQL statement can be run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.EXECUTE_NON_QUERY (
   c IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 78–18 EXECUTE_NON_QUERY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.

Return Values

The number of rows affected by the SQL statement in the non-Oracle system

Exceptions

Table 78–19 EXECUTE_NON_QUERY Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	BIND_VARIABLE procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

FETCH_ROW Function

This function fetches rows from a result set. The result set is defined with a SQL SELECT statement. When there are no more rows to be fetched, the exception NO_DATA_FOUND is raised. Before the rows can be fetched, a cursor has to be opened, and the SQL statement has to be parsed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.FETCH_ROW (
   c   IN BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   f   IN BOOLEAN)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 78–20 FETCH_ROW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
first	(Optional) Reexecutes SELECT statement. Possible values: - TRUE: reexecute SELECT statement. - FALSE: fetch the next row, or if run for the first time, then execute and fetch rows (default).

Return Values

The returns the number of rows fetched. The function returns "0" if the last row was already fetched.

Exceptions

Table 78–21 FETCH_ROW Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS
```

GET_VALUE Procedure

This procedure has two purposes:

- It retrieves the select list items of SELECT statements, after a row has been fetched.
- It retrieves the OUT bind values, after the SQL statement has been run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.GET_VALUE (
   c      IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p     IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v     OUT <dty>);
```

<dty> is either DATE, NUMBER, or VARCHAR2.

> **See Also:** For retrieving values of datatype RAW, see GET_VALUE_RAW Procedure on page 78-17.

Parameters

Table 78–22 GET_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable or select list item in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	Variable in which the OUT bind variable or select list item stores its value.

Exceptions

Table 78–23 GET_VALUE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-1403	Returns NO_DATA_FOUND exception when running the GET_VALUE after the last row was fetched (that is, FETCH_ROW returned "0").
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS
```

GET_VALUE_RAW Procedure

This procedure is similar to GET_VALUE, but for datatype RAW.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.GET_VALUE_RAW (
   c    IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   p    IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   v    OUT RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 78–24 GET_VALUE_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened and parsed, using the routines OPEN_CURSOR and PARSE respectively.
p	Position of the bind variable or select list item in the SQL statement: Starts at 1.
v	Variable in which the OUT bind variable or select list item stores its value.

Exceptions

Table 78–25 GET_VALUE_RAW Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-1403	Returns NO_DATA_FOUND exception when running the GET_VALUE after the last row was fetched (that is, FETCH_ROW returned "0").
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28552	Procedure is not run in right order. (Did you first open the cursor and parse the SQL statement?)
ORA-28553	The position of the bind variable is out of range.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS
```

OPEN_CURSOR Function

This function opens a cursor for running a passthrough SQL statement at the non-Oracle system. This function must be called for any type of SQL statement.

The function returns a cursor, which must be used in subsequent calls. This call allocates memory. To deallocate the associated memory, call the procedure CLOSE_CURSOR.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.OPEN_CURSOR
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Return Values

The cursor to be used on subsequent procedure and function calls.

Exceptions

Table 78–26 OPEN_CURSOR Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28554	Maximum number of open cursor has been exceeded. Increase Heterogeneous Services' OPEN_CURSORS initialization parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

PARSE Procedure

This procedure parses SQL statement at non-Oracle system.

Syntax

```
DBMS_HS_PASSTHROUGH.PARSE (
   c       IN  BINARY_INTEGER NOT NULL,
   stmt    IN  VARCHAR2 NOT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 78–27 PARSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor associated with the passthrough SQL statement. Cursor must be opened using function OPEN_CURSOR.
stmt	Statement to be parsed.

Exceptions

Table 78–28 PARSE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-28550	The cursor passed is invalid.
ORA-28551	SQL statement is illegal.
ORA-28555	A NULL value was passed for a NOT NULL parameter.

Pragmas

```
Purity level defined : WNDS, RNDS
```

79

DBMS_ILM

The `DBMS_ILM` package provides an interface for implementing Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) strategies using Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) policies.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide* for information about managing Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) with this package
- DBMS_ILM_ADMIN
- DBMS_HEAT_MAP

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ILM

Overview

To implement your ILM strategy, you can use Heat Map in Oracle Database to track data access and modification. You can also use Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) to automate the compression and movement of data between different tiers of storage within the database.

The `DBMS_ILM` package supports immediate evaluation or execution of Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) related tasks. The package supports the following two ways for scheduling ADO actions.

- A database user schedules immediate ADO policy execution on a set of objects.
- A database user views the results of evaluation of ADO policies on a set of objects. The user then adds or deletes objects to this set and reviews the results of ADO policy evaluation again. The user repeats this step to determine the set of objects for ADO execution. The user can then perform immediate scheduling of ADO actions on this set of objects

The following procedures support the two usage modes. Before describing the procedures, we introduce the notion of an ADO task as an entity that helps to track a particular evaluation or (an evaluation and execution) of ADO policies. A particular ADO task could be in one of the following states.

- Inactive
- Active
- Completed

Security Model

The DBMS_ILM package runs under invoker's rights.

Constants

The DBMS_ILM package uses the constants shown in Table 79–1, " DBMS_ILM Constants"

Table 79–1 DBMS_ILM Constants

Constant	Value	Type	Description
ILM_ALL_POLICIES	'ALL POLICIES'	VARCHAR2(20)	Selects all ADO policies on an object
ILM_EXECUTION_OFFLINE	1	NUMBER	Specifies that the object may be offline while ADO action is performed
ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE	2	NUMBER	Specifies that the object should be online while ADO action is performed
SCOPE_DATABASE	1	NUMBER	Selects all ADO policies in the database
SCOPE_SCHEMA	2	NUMBER	Selects all ADO policies in the current schema
SCHEDULE_IMMEDIATE	1	NUMBER	Schedules ADO task for immediate execution
ARCHIVE_STATE_ACTIVE	'0'	VARCHAR2(1)	Represents the value of the ORA_ARCHIVE_STATE column of a row-archival enabled table that would make the row active
ARCHIVE_STATE_ARCHIVED	'1'	VARCHAR2(1)	Represents the value of the ORA_ARCHIVE_STATE column of a row-archival enabled table that would make the row inactive

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by the DBMS_ILM package.

Table 79–2 DBMS_ILM Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Description
INVALID_ARGUMENT_VALUE	38327	Invalid argument value
INVALID_ILM_DICTIONARY	38328	Inconsistent dictionary state
INTERNAL_ILM_ERROR	38329	Internal error
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGES	38330	Insufficient privileges

Summary of DBMS_ILM Subprograms

Table 79–3 DBMS_ILM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_TO_ILM Procedure on page 79-8	Adds the object specified through the argument to a particular ADO task and evaluates the ADO policies on this object
ARCHIVESTATENAME Function on page 79-9	Returns the value of the `ORA_ARCHIVE_STATE` column of a row-archival enabled table
EXECUTE_ILM Procedure on page 79-10	Executes an ADO task.
EXECUTE_ILM_TASK Procedure on page 79-11	Executes an ADO task that has been evaluated previously
PREVIEW_ILM Procedure on page 79-12	Evaluates all ADO policies in the scope specified by means of an argument
REMOVE_FROM_ILM Procedure on page 79-13	Removes the object specified through the argument from a particular ADO task
STOP_ILM Procedure on page 79-14	Stops ADO-related jobs created for a particular ADO task

ADD_TO_ILM Procedure

This procedure adds the object specified through the argument to a particular ADO task and evaluates the ADO policies on this object. The procedure can only be executed on an ADO task in an inactive state. The results of the ADO policy evaluation on this object can be viewed using the appropriate views depending on role and access (USER_ILMTASKS or DBA_ILMTASKS, USER_ILMEVALUATIONDETAILS or DBA_ILMEVALUATIONDETAILS, USER_ILMRESULTS or DBA_ILMRESULTS).

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.ADD_TO_ILM (
   task_id           IN    NUMBER,
   owner             IN    VARCHAR2,
   object_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   subobject_name    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 79–4 ADD_TO_ILM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_id	Identifies a particular ADO task
owner	Owner of the object
object_name	Name of the object
subobject_name	Name of the subobject (partition name in the case of partitioned tables)

ARCHIVESTATENAME Function

This function returns the value of the ORA_ARCHIVE_STATE column of a row-archival enabled table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.ARCHIVESTATENAME (
   value      IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 79–5 ARCHIVESTATENAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value	Value for which the archive state name is to be returned

Usage Notes

Returns ARCHIVE_STATE_ACTIVE for 0, ARCHIVE_STATE_ARCHIVED for others

See Also: "Using In-Database Archiving" in *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide*

EXECUTE_ILM Procedure

This procedure executes an ADO task.

There are two overloads to this procedure. The first overload executes an ADO task for a set of objects without having evaluated them previously. The second overload executes ADO policies for a specific object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.EXECUTE_ILM (
   task_id             OUT    NUMBER,
   ilm_scope           IN     NUMBER DEFAULT SCOPE_SCHEMA,
   execution_mode      IN     NUMBER DEFAULT ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE);

DBMS_ILM.EXECUTE_ILM (
   owner               IN     VARCHAR2,
   object_name         IN     VARCHAR2,
   task_id             OUT    NUMBER,
   subobject_name      IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   policy_name         IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ILM_ALL_POLICIES,
   execution_mode      IN     NUMBER DEFAULT ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE);
```

Parameters

Table 79–6 EXECUTE_ILM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_id	Identifies a particular ADO task
ilm_scope	Determines the set of objects considered for ADO execution. The default is to consider only the objects in the schema.
execution_mode	Whether the ADO task be executed online (ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE) or offline (ILM_EXECUTION_OFFLINE)
owner	Owner of the object
object_name	Name of the object
subobject_name	Name of the subobject (partition name in the case of partitioned tables)
policy_name	Name of the ADO policy to be evaluated on the object. The package constant ILM_ALL_POLICIES should be used if all ADO policies on an object should be evaluated.

Usage Notes

- The EXECUTE_ILM procedure can be used by users who want more control of when ADO is performed, and who do not want to wait until the next maintenance window.
- The procedure executes like a DDL in that it auto commits before and after the ADO task and related jobs are created.

EXECUTE_ILM_TASK Procedure

This procedure executes an ADO task that has been evaluated previously and moves it to an active state.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.EXECUTE_ILM_TASK (
   task_id             IN     NUMBER,
   execution_mode      IN     NUMBER DEFAULT ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE);
   execution_schedule  IN     NUMBER DEFAULT SCHEDULE_IMMEDIATE);
```

Parameters

Table 79–7 EXECUTE_ILM_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_id	Identifies a particular ADO task
execution_mode	Whether the ADO task be executed online (ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE) or offline (ILM_EXECUTION_OFFLINE)
execution_schedule	Identifies when the ADO task should be executed.Currently, the only choice available is immediate scheduling of ADO jobs

PREVIEW_ILM Procedure

This procedure evaluates the ADO policies on the objects specified using the ILM_SCOPE argument. It returns a number as task_id which identifies a particular ADO task. This can be used to view the results of the policy evaluation in the appropriate views depending on role and access (USER_ILMTASKS or DBA_ILMTASKS, USER_ILMEVALUATIONDETAILS or DBA_ILMEVALUATIONDETAILS, USER_ILMRESULTS or DBA_ILMRESULTS).

The PREVIEW_ILM procedure leaves the ADO task in an inactive state. Once you have previewed the results, you can add or delete objects to this task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.PREVIEW_ILM (
   task_id           OUT    NUMBER,
  ilm_scope          IN     NUMBER DEFAULT SCOPE_SCHEMA);
```

Parameters

Table 79–8 PREVIEW_ILM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_id	Identifies a particular ADO task
ilm_scope	Identifies the scope of execution. Should be either SCOPE_DATABASE or SCOPE_SCHEMA as described in Constants

REMOVE_FROM_ILM Procedure

This procedure removes the object specified through the argument from a particular ADO task. The procedure can only be executed on an ADO task in an inactive state.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.REMOVE_FROM_ILM (
   task_id           IN    NUMBER,
   owner             IN    VARCHAR2,
   object_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   subobject_name    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 79–9 REMOVE_FROM_ILM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_id	Identifies a particular ADO task
owner	Owner of the object
object_name	Name of the object
subobject_name	Name of the subobject (partition name in the case of partitioned tables)

STOP_ILM Procedure

This procedure stops ADO-related jobs created for a particular ADO task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM.STOP_ILM (
   task_id               IN         NUMBER,
   p_drop_running_jobs   IN         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 79–10 STOP_ILM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_id`	Number that uniquely identifies a particular ADO task
`p_drop_running_jobs`	Determines whether running jobs are dropped

80

DBMS_ILM_ADMIN

The `DBMS_ILM_ADMIN` package provides an interface to customize Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) policy execution. In combination with partitioning and compression, ADO policies can be used to help implement an Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) strategy.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide* for information about managing Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) with this package
- DBMS_ILM
- DBMS_HEAT_MAP

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ILM_ADMIN

Overview

To implement your ILM strategy, you can use Heat Map in Oracle Database to track data access and modification. You can also use Automatic Data Optimization (ADO) to automate the compression and movement of data between different tiers of storage within the database.

Security Model

This package runs under definer's rights. The user requires DBA privileges.

Constants

The DBMS_ILM_ADMIN package uses the constants shown in Table 80–1, " DBMS_ILM_ADM Constants"

Table 80–1 DBMS_ILM_ADM Constants

Constant	Value	Type	Description
EXECUTION_INTERVAL	1	NUMBER	Determines the frequency with which ADO background evaluation occurs. Specified in minutes.
PURGE_INTERVAL	2	NUMBER	Controls the amount of time ADO history should be maintained. Specified in days.
EXECUTION_MODE	4	NUMBER	Controls whether ADO execution is online, offline. The value for this parameter should either be DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.ILM_EXECUTION_OFFLINE or DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE.
JOBLIMIT	5	NUMBER	Controls the upper limit on number of ADO jobs at any time. The maximum number of concurrent ADO jobs is JOBLIMIT*(number of instances)*(number of CPUs per instance).
ENABLED	7	NUMBER	Provides a way to turn background ADO off or on
TBS_PERCENT_USED	8	NUMBER	Decides when a tablespace is considered full. Specified as a percentage of tablespace quota.
TBS_PERCENT_FREE	9	NUMBER	Decides the targeted tablespace storage through ADO actions as a percentage of tablespace quota.
DEG_PARALLEL	10	NUMBER	Decides the degree of parallelism to be used for ADO jobs
POLICY_TIME	11	NUMBER	Decides if ADO policies are treated as though they are specified in seconds rather than days. Can take value ILM_POLICY_IN_SECONDS (treat policy time in seconds) or ILM_POLICY_IN_DAYS (treat policy time in days - default).
HEAT_MAP_SEG_READ	1	NUMBER	Segment read done
HEAT_MAP_SEG_WRITE	2	NUMBER	Segment write done
HEAT_MAP_SEG_SCAN	4	NUMBER	Full table scan done
HEAT_MAP_SEG_LOOKUP	8	NUMBER	Index scan done

Table 80–2 DBMS_ILM_ADM Constants Used as Parameter Values

Constant	Value	Type	Description
ILM_EXECUTION_OFFLINE	1	NUMBER	Specifies that the object may be offline while ADO action is performed.

Table 80–2 (Cont.) DBMS_ILM_ADM Constants Used as Parameter Values

Constant	Value	Type	Description
ILM_EXECUTION_ONLINE	2	NUMBER	Specifies that the object should be online while ADO action is performed
ILM_ENABLED	4	NUMBER	Indicates automatic ADO policy evaluation and execution is enabled
ILM_DISABLED	2	NUMBER	Indicates automatic ADO policy evaluation and execution is disabled
ILM_POLICY_IN_DAYS	0	NUMBER	Indicates policy is specified in days. This is the default.
ILM_POLICY_IN_SECONDS	1	NUMBER	Indicates policy is specified in seconds (rather than days). This could be used to test ADO policy evaluation quickly instead of waiting for the policy duration.

Summary of DBMS_ILM_ADMIN Subprograms

Table 80–3 DBMS_ILM_ADMIN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_ALL Procedure on page 80-8	Deletes all rows except the dummy row
CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_TABLE Procedure on page 80-9	Clears all or some statistics for the heat map table, deleting rows for a given table or segment which match a given pattern, or all such rows
CUSTOMIZE_ILM Procedure on page 80-10	Customizes environment for ILM execution by specifying the values for ILM execution related parameters
DISABLE_ILM Procedure on page 80-11	Turns off all background ILM scheduling
ENABLE_ILM Procedure on page 80-12	Turns on all background ILM scheduling
SET_HEAT_MAP_ALL Procedure on page 80-13	Updates or inserts heat map rows for all tables
SET_HEAT_MAP_START Procedure on page 80-14	Sets the start date for collecting heat map data
SET_HEAT_MAP_TABLE Procedure on page 80-15	Updates or inserts a row for the specified table or segment

CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_ALL Procedure

This procedure deletes all rows in `HEAT_MAP_STAT$` except the dummy row.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_ALL;
```

CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_TABLE Procedure

This procedure clears all or some statistics for the heat map table, deleting rows for a given table or segment which match a given pattern, or all such rows.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_TABLE  (
   owner                   IN  VARCHAR2,
   tablename               IN  VARCHAR2,
   partition               IN  VARCHAR2 default '',
   access_date             IN  DATE DEFAULT NULL,
   segment_access_summary  IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 80–4 CLEAR_HEAT_MAP_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Table owner
tablename	Table name
partition	Name of the subobject, defaults to NULL
access_date	Date for the entry in HEAT_MAP_STAT$ to be removed
segment_access_summary	Summary of segment access constants indicating access operations performed on the segment

CUSTOMIZE_ILM Procedure

This procedure customizes environment for ILM execution by specifying the values for ILM execution related parameters. These values take effect for the next background scheduling.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.CUSTOMIZE_ILM  (
   parameter            IN       NUMBER,
   value                IN       NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 80–5 CUSTOMIZE_ILM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`parameter`	One of the parameter constants defined in `DBMS_ILM_ADMIN` package
`value`	Value of parameter

DISABLE_ILM Procedure

This procedure turns off all background ILM scheduling.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.DISABLE_ILM;
```

ENABLE_ILM Procedure

This procedure turns on all background ILM scheduling.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.ENABLE_ILM;
```

SET_HEAT_MAP_ALL Procedure

This procedure updates or inserts heat map rows for all tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.SET_HEAT_MAP_ALL  (
   access_date            IN DATE,
   segment_access_summary IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 80–6 SET_HEAT_MAP_ALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
access_date	Date for the entry in HEAT_MAP_STAT$ to be added
segment_access_summary	Summary of segment access constants indicating access operations performed on the segment

SET_HEAT_MAP_START Procedure

This procedure sets the start date for collecting heat map data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.SET_HEAT_MAP_START  (
   start_date  IN   DATE);
```

Parameters

Table 80–7 SET_HEAT_MAP_START Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
start_date	Indicates the new date from which all statistics are valid

SET_HEAT_MAP_TABLE Procedure

This procedure updates or inserts a row for the specified table or segment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ILM_ADMIN.SET_HEAT_MAP_TABLE  (
   owner                  IN VARCHAR2,
   tablename              IN VARCHAR2,
   partition              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '',
   access_date            IN DATE DEFAULT NULL,
   segment_access_summary IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 80–8 SET_HEAT_MAP_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Table owner
tablename	Table name
partition	Name of the subobject, defaults to NULL
access_date	Date for the entry in HEAT_MAP_STAT$ to be added
segment_access_summary	Summary of segment access constants indicating access operations performed on the segment

81

DBMS_INMEMORY

The `DBMS_INMEMORY` package provides an interface for in-memory column store functionality.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Summary of DBMS_INMEMORY Subprograms

Summary of DBMS_INMEMORY Subprograms

Table 81–1 DBMS_INMEMORY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
POPULATE Procedure on on page 81-3	Forces population of a given table
REPOPULATE Procedure on on page 81-4	Forces repopulation of a given table

POPULATE Procedure

This procedure forces population of a given table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_INMEMORY.POPULATE (
   schema_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   subobject_name   IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 81–2 POPULATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Name of schema
table_name	Name of table
subobject_name	Partition or subpartition may be specified

REPOPULATE Procedure

This procedure forces repopulation of a given table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_INMEMORY.REPOPULATE (
   schema_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN    VARCHAR2,
   subobject_name   IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   force            IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 81–3 REPOPULATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema_name`	Name of schema
`table_name`	Name of table
`subobject_name`	Partition or subpartition may be specified
`force`	If `TRUE`, then repopulates the entire table.

82

DBMS_IOT

The DBMS_IOT package creates a table into which references to the chained rows for an index-organized table can be placed using the ANALYZE command. DBMS_IOT can also create an exception table into which references to the rows of an index-organized table that violate a constraint can be placed during the enable_constraint operation.

DBMS_IOT is not loaded during database installation. To install DBMS_IOT, run dbmsiotc.sql, available in the ADMIN directory.

This chapter contains the following topics:

> **Note:** With the introduction of logical-rowids for IOTs with Oracle Database Release 8.1, you no longer need to use the procedures contained in this package which is retained for backward compatibility only. It is however required for servers running with Oracle Database Release 8.0.

Summary of DBMS_IOT Subprograms

Table 82–1 DBMS_IOT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BUILD_CHAIN_ROWS_TABLE Procedure on page 82-3	Creates a table into which references to the chained rows for an index-organized table can be placed using the `ANALYZE` command
BUILD_EXCEPTIONS_TABLE Procedure on page 82-4	Creates an exception table into which rows of an index-organized table that violate a constraint can be placed

BUILD_CHAIN_ROWS_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a table into which references to the chained rows for an index-organized table can be placed using the ANALYZE command.

Syntax

```
DBMS_IOT.BUILD_CHAIN_ROWS_TABLE (
   owner               IN VARCHAR2,
   iot_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   chainrow_table_name IN VARCHAR2 default 'IOT_CHAINED_ROWS');
```

Parameters

Table 82–2 BUILD_CHAIN_ROWS_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner of the index-organized table.
iot_name	Index-organized table name.
chainrow_table_name	Intended name for the chained-rows table.

Usage Notes

You should create a separate chained-rows table for each index-organized table to accommodate its primary key.

Examples

```
CREATE TABLE l(a char(16),b char(16), c char(16), d char(240),
PRIMARY KEY(a,b,c)) ORGANIZATION INDEX pctthreshold 10 overflow;
EXECUTE DBMS_IOT.BUILD_CHAIN_ROWS_TABLE('SYS','L','LC');
```

A chained-row table is created with the following columns:

```
Column Name                    Null?    Type
------------------------------ -------- ----
OWNER_NAME                              VARCHAR2(30)
TABLE_NAME                              VARCHAR2(30)
CLUSTER_NAME                            VARCHAR2(30)
PARTITION_NAME                          VARCHAR2(30)
SUBPARTITION_NAME                       VARCHAR2(30)
HEAD_ROWID                              ROWID
TIMESTAMP                               DATE
A                                       CHAR(16)
B                                       CHAR(16)
C                                       CHAR(16)
```

BUILD_EXCEPTIONS_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates an exception table into which rows of an index-organized table that violate a constraint can be placed during the execution of the following SQL statements:

- ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE CONSTRAINT ... EXCEPTIONS INTO
- ALTER TABLE ... ADD CONSTRAINT ... EXCEPTIONS INTO

Syntax

```
DBMS_IOT.BUILD_EXCEPTIONS_TABLE (
   owner                 IN VARCHAR2,
   iot_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   exceptions_table_name IN VARCHAR2 default 'IOT_EXCEPTIONS');
```

Parameters

Table 82–3 BUILD_EXCEPTIONS_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Owner of the index-organized table.
iot_name	Index-organized table name.
exceptions_table_name	Intended name for exception-table.

Usage Notes

You should create a separate exception table for each index-organized table to accommodate its primary key.

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_IOT.BUILD_EXCEPTIONS_TABLE('SYS','L','LE');
```

An exception table for the preceding index-organized table with the following columns:

```
Column Name                    Null?    Type
------------------------------ -------- ----
ROW_ID                                  VARCHAR2(30)
OWNER                                   VARCHAR2(30)
TABLE_NAME                              VARCHAR2(30)
CONSTRAINT                              VARCHAR2(30)
A                                       CHAR(16)
B                                       CHAR(16)
C                                       CHAR(16)
```

83

DBMS_JAVA

The DBMS_JAVA package provides a PL/SQL interface for accessing database functionality from Java.

- Documentation of DBMS_JAVA

Documentation of DBMS_JAVA

For a complete description of this package within the context of DBMS_JAVA, see DBMS_JAVA in the *Oracle Database Java Developer's Guide*.

84

DBMS_JOB

The DBMS_JOB package schedules and manages jobs in the job queue.

> **Note:** The DBMS_JOB package has been superseded by the DBMS_SCHEDULER package. In particular, if you are administering jobs to manage system load, you should consider disabling DBMS_JOB by revoking the package execution privilege for users.
>
> For more information, see Chapter 140, "DBMS_SCHEDULER" and "Moving from DBMS_JOB to DBMS_SCHEDULER" in *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_JOB

Security Model

No specific system privileges are required to use DBMS_JOB. No system privileges are available to manage DBMS_JOB. Jobs cannot be altered or deleted other than jobs owned by the user. This is true for all users including those users granted DBA privileges.

You can execute procedures that are owned by the user or for which the user is explicitly granted EXECUTE. However, procedures for which the user is granted the execute privilege through roles cannot be executed.

Note that, once a job is started and running, there is no easy way to stop the job.

Operational Notes

Working with Oracle Real Application Clusters

DBMS_JOB supports multi-instance execution of jobs. By default jobs can be executed on any instance, but only one single instance will execute the job. In addition, you can force instance binding by binding the job to a particular instance. You implement instance binding by specifying an instance number to the instance affinity parameter. Note, however, that in Oracle Database 10g Release 1 (10.1) instance binding is not recommended. Service affinity is preferred. This concept is implemented in the DBMS_SCHEDULER package.

The following procedures can be used to create, alter or run jobs with instance affinity. Note that not specifying affinity means any instance can run the job.

DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT

To submit a job to the job queue, use the following syntax:

```
DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT(
   job       OUT    BINARY_INTEGER,
   what      IN     VARCHAR2,
   next_date IN     DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE,
   interval  IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'NULL',
   no_parse  IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   instance  IN     BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT ANY_INSTANCE,
   force     IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Use the parameters instance and force to control job and instance affinity. The default value of instance is 0 (zero) to indicate that any instance can execute the job. To run the job on a certain instance, specify the instance value. Oracle displays error ORA-23319 if the instance value is a negative number or NULL.

The force parameter defaults to false. If force is TRUE, any positive integer is acceptable as the job instance. If force is FALSE, the specified instance must be running, or Oracle displays error number ORA-23428.

DBMS_JOB.INSTANCE

To assign a particular instance to execute a job, use the following syntax:

```
DBMS_JOB.INSTANCE(  JOB IN BINARY_INTEGER,
  instance                 IN BINARY_INTEGER,
  force                    IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

The FORCE parameter in this example defaults to FALSE. If the instance value is 0 (zero), job affinity is altered and any available instance can execute the job despite the value of force. If the INSTANCE value is positive and the FORCE parameter is FALSE, job affinity is altered only if the specified instance is running, or Oracle displays error ORA-23428.

If the force parameter is TRUE, any positive integer is acceptable as the job instance and the job affinity is altered. Oracle displays error ORA-23319 if the instance value is negative or NULL.

DBMS_JOB.CHANGE

To alter user-definable parameters associated with a job, use the following syntax:

```
DBMS_JOB.CHANGE(  JOB IN BINARY_INTEGER,
what                  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
next_date             IN DATE DEFAULT NULL,
interval              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
instance              IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
force                 IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE );
```

Two parameters, `instance` and `force`, appear in this example. The default value of `instance` is `null` indicating that job affinity will not change.

The default value of `force` is `FALSE`. Oracle displays error `ORA-23428` if the specified instance is not running and error `ORA-23319` if the `instance` number is negative.

DBMS_JOB.RUN

The `force` parameter for `DBMS_JOB.RUN` defaults to `FALSE`. If `force` is `TRUE`, instance affinity is irrelevant for running jobs in the foreground process. If force is `FALSE`, the job can run in the foreground only in the specified instance. Oracle displays error `ORA-23428` if force is `FALSE` and the connected instance is the incorrect instance.

```
DBMS_JOB.RUN(
   job    IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   force  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Stopping a Job

Note that, once a job is started and running, there is no easy way to stop the job.

Summary of DBMS_JOB Subprograms

Table 84–1 DBMS_JOB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BROKEN Procedure on page 84-7	Disables job execution
CHANGE Procedure on page 84-8	Alters any of the user-definable parameters associated with a job
INSTANCE Procedure on page 84-9	Assigns a job to be run by a instance
INTERVAL Procedure on page 84-10	Alters the interval between executions for a specified job
NEXT_DATE Procedure on page 84-11	Alters the next execution time for a specified job
REMOVE Procedure on page 84-12	Removes specified job from the job queue
RUN Procedure on page 84-13	Forces a specified job to run
SUBMIT Procedure on page 84-14	Submits a new job to the job queue
USER_EXPORT Procedures on page 84-16	Re-creates a given job for export, or re-creates a given job for export with instance affinity
WHAT Procedure on page 84-17	Alters the job description for a specified job

BROKEN Procedure

This procedure sets the broken flag. Broken jobs are never run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.BROKEN (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   broken    IN  BOOLEAN,
   next_date IN  DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE);
```

Parameters

Table 84–2 BROKEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.
broken	Sets the job as broken or not broken. TRUE sets it as broken; FALSE sets it as not broken.
next_date	Next date when the job will be run.

Note: If you set job as broken while it is running, Oracle resets the job's status to normal after the job completes. Therefore, only execute this procedure for jobs that are not running.

Usage Notes

- Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.
- If a job fails 16 times in a row, Oracle automatically sets it as broken and then stops trying to run it.

CHANGE Procedure

This procedure changes any of the fields a user can set in a job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.CHANGE (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   what      IN  VARCHAR2,
   next_date IN  DATE,
   interval  IN  VARCHAR2,
   instance  IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   force     IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 84–3 CHANGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.
what	PL/SQL procedure to run.
next_date	Next date when the job will be run.
interval	Date function; evaluated immediately before the job starts running.
instance	When a job is submitted, specifies which instance can run the job. This defaults to NULL, which indicates that instance affinity is not changed.
force	If this is FALSE, then the specified instance (to which the instance number change) must be running. Otherwise, the routine raises an exception. If this is TRUE, then any positive integer is acceptable as the job instance.

Usage Notes

- Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.
- The parameters instance and force are added for job queue affinity. Job queue affinity gives users the ability to indicate whether a particular instance or any instance can run a submitted job.
- If the parameters what, next_date, or interval are NULL, then leave that value as it is.

Example

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_JOB.CHANGE(14144, null, null, 'sysdate+3');
   COMMIT;
END;
```

INSTANCE Procedure

This procedure changes job instance affinity.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.INSTANCE (
   job        IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   instance   IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   force      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 84–4 INSTANCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.
instance	When a job is submitted, a user can specify which instance can run the job.
force	If this is TRUE, then any positive integer is acceptable as the job instance. If this is FALSE (the default), then the specified instance must be running; otherwise the routine raises an exception.

Usage Notes

Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.

INTERVAL Procedure

This procedure changes how often a job runs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.INTERVAL (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   interval  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 84–5 INTERVAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`job`	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the `JOB` column of the `USER_JOBS` or `DBA_JOBS` view.
`interval`	Date function, evaluated immediately before the job starts running.

Usage Notes

- If the job completes successfully, then this new date is placed in `next_date`. `interval` is evaluated by plugging it into the statement select `interval` into `next_date` from dual;
- The `interval` parameter must evaluate to a time in the future. Legal intervals include:

Interval	Description
`'sysdate + 7'`	Run once a week.
`'next_day(sysdate,''TUESDAY'')'`	Run once every Tuesday.
`'null'`	Run only once.

- If `interval` evaluates to `NULL` and if a job completes successfully, then the job is automatically deleted from the queue.
- Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.

NEXT_DATE Procedure

This procedure changes when an existing job next runs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.NEXT_DATE (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   next_date IN  DATE);
```

Parameters

Table 84–6 NEXT_DATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.
next_date	Date of the next refresh: it is when the job will be automatically run, assuming there are background processes attempting to run it.

Usage Notes

Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.

REMOVE Procedure

This procedure removes an existing job from the job queue. This currently does not stop a running job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.REMOVE (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER );
```

Parameters

Table 84–7 REMOVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.

Usage Notes

Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.

Example

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_JOB.REMOVE(14144);
   COMMIT;
END;
```

RUN Procedure

This procedure runs job JOB now. It runs it even if it is broken.

Running the job recomputes next_date. See data dictionary view USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.RUN (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   force     IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 84–8 RUN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.
force	If this is TRUE, then instance affinity is irrelevant for running jobs in the foreground process. If this is FALSE, then the job can be run in the foreground only in the specified instance.

Example

```
EXECUTE DBMS_JOB.RUN(14144);
```

Caution: This re-initializes the current session's packages.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if force is FALSE, and if the connected instance is the wrong one.

SUBMIT Procedure

This procedure submits a new job. It chooses the job from the sequence `sys.jobseq`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT (
   job       OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   what      IN  VARCHAR2,
   next_date IN  DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE,
   interval  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'null',
   no_parse  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   instance  IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT any_instance,
   force     IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 84–9 SUBMIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`job`	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the `JOB` column of the `USER_JOBS` or `DBA_JOBS` view

`what`	PL/SQL text o the job to be run. This must be a valid PL/SQL statement or block of code. For example, to run a stored procedure `P`, you could pass the string `P;` (with the semi-colon) to this routine. The SQL that you submit in the `what` parameter is wrapped in the following PL/SQL block:
	`DECLARE`
	` job BINARY_INTEGER := :job;`
	` next_date DATE := :mydate;`
	` broken BOOLEAN := FALSE;`
	`BEGIN`
	` WHAT`
	` :mydate := next_date;`
	` IF broken THEN :b := 1; ELSE :b := 0; END IF;`
	`END;`
	Ensure that you include the `;` semi-colon with the statement.

`next_date`	Next date when the job will be run.
`interval`	Date function that calculates the next time to run the job. The default is `NULL`. This must evaluate to a either a future point in time or `NULL`.
`no_parse`	A flag. The default is `FALSE`. If this is set to `FALSE`, then Oracle parses the procedure associated with the job. If this is set to `TRUE`, then Oracle parses the procedure associated with the job the first time that the job is run. For example, if you want to submit a job before you have created the tables associated with the job, then set this to `TRUE`.
`instance`	When a job is submitted, specifies which instance can run the job.
`force`	If this is `TRUE`, then any positive integer is acceptable as the job instance. If this is `FALSE` (the default), then the specified instance must be running; otherwise the routine raises an exception.

Usage Notes

- Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.
- The parameters `instance` and `force` are added for job queue affinity. Job queue affinity gives users the ability to indicate whether a particular instance or any instance can run a submitted job.

Example

This submits a new job to the job queue. The job calls the procedure `DBMS_DDL.ANALYZE_OBJECT` to generate optimizer statistics for the table `DQUON.ACCOUNTS`. The statistics are based on a sample of half the rows of the `ACCOUNTS` table. The job is run every 24 hours:

```
VARIABLE jobno number;
BEGIN
   DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT(:jobno,
      'dbms_ddl.analyze_object(''TABLE'',
      ''DQUON'', ''ACCOUNTS'',
      ''ESTIMATE'', NULL, 50);'
      SYSDATE, 'SYSDATE + 1');
   COMMIT;
END;
/
Statement processed.
print jobno
JOBNO
----------
14144
```

USER_EXPORT Procedures

There are two overloaded procedures. The first produces the text of a call to re-create the given job. The second alters instance affinity (8*i* and after) and preserves the compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.USER_EXPORT (
   job    IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   mycall IN OUT VARCHAR2);

DBMS_JOB.USER_EXPORT (
   job      IN     BINARY_INTEGER,
   mycall   IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   myinst   IN OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 84–10 USER_EXPORT Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`job`	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the `JOB` column of the `USER_JOBS` or `DBA_JOBS` view.
`mycall`	Text of a call to re-create the given job.
`myinst`	Text of a call to alter instance affinity.

WHAT Procedure

This procedure changes what an existing job does, and replaces its environment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_JOB.WHAT (
   job       IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   what      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 84–11 WHAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job	System-assigned ID of the job being run. To find this ID, query the JOB column of the USER_JOBS or DBA_JOBS view.
what	PL/SQL procedure to run.

Usage Notes

- Your job will not be available for processing by the job queue in the background until it is committed.
- Some legal values of what (assuming the routines exist) are:
  - 'myproc(''10-JAN-82'', next_date, broken);'
  - 'scott.emppackage.give_raise(''JENKINS'', 30000.00);'
  - 'dbms_job.remove(job);'

85

DBMS_LDAP

The DBMS_LDAP package lets you access data from LDAP servers.

- Documentation of DBMS_LDAP

Documentation of DBMS_LDAP

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Internet Directory, see `DBMS_LDAP` in the *Oracle Fusion Middleware Application Developer's Guide for Oracle Identity Management*.

86

DBMS_LDAP_UTL

The DBMS_LDAP_UTL package contains the Oracle Extension utility functions.

- Documentation of DBMS_LDAP_UTL

Documentation of DBMS_LDAP_UTL

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Internet Directory, see `DBMS_LDAP_UTL` in the *Oracle Internet Directory Application Developer's Guide.*

87

DBMS_LIBCACHE

The DBMS_LIBCACHE package consists of one subprogram that prepares the library cache on an Oracle instance by extracting SQL and PL/SQL from a remote instance and compiling this SQL locally without execution. The value of compiling the cache of an instance is to prepare the information the application requires to execute in advance of failover or switchover.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LIBCACHE

Overview

Compiling a shared cursor consists of open, parse, and bind operations, plus the type-checking and execution plan functions performed at the first execution. All of these steps are executed in advance by the package `DBMS_LIBCACHE` for `SELECT` statements. The open and parse functions are executed in advance for PL/SQL and DML. For PL/SQL, executing the parse phase has the effect of loading all library cache heaps other than the `MCODE`.

Security Model

To execute DBMS_LIBCACHE you must directly access the same objects as do SQL statements. You can best accomplish this by utilizing the same user id as the original system on the remote system.

When there are multiple schema users, DBMS_LIBCACHE should be called for each.

Alternatively, DBMS_LIBCACHE may be called with the generic user PARSER. However, this user cannot parse the SQL that uses objects with access granted though roles. This is a standard PL/SQL security limitation.

Summary of DBMS_LIBCACHE Subprograms

Table 87–1 DBMS_LIBCACHE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
COMPILE_FROM_REMOTE Procedure on page 87-6	Extracts SQL in batch from the source instance and compiles the SQL at the target instance

COMPILE_FROM_REMOTE Procedure

This procedure extracts SQL in batch from the source instance and compiles the SQL at the target instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LIBCACHE.COMPILE_FROM_REMOTE (
   p_db_link                IN     dbms_libcache$def.db_link%type,
   p_username               IN     VARCHAR2 default null,
   p_threshold_executions   IN     NATURAL  default 3,
   p_threshold_sharable_mem IN     NATURAL  default 1000,
   p_parallel_degree        IN     NATURAL  default 1);
```

Parameters

Table 87–2 COMPILE_FROM_REMOTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_db_link	Database link to the source name (mandatory). The database link pointing to the instance that will be used for extracting the SQL statements. The user must have the role SELECT_ON_CATALOG at the source instance. For improved security, the connection may use a password file or LDAP authentication. The database link is mandatory only for releases with dbms_libcache$def.ACCESS_METHOD = DB_LINK_METHOD
p_instance_name	(Reserved for future use). The name of the instance that will be used for extracting the SQL statements. The instance name must be unique for all instances excluding the local instance. The name is not case sensitive.
p_username	Source username (default is all users). The name of the username that will be used for extracting the SQL statements. The username is an optional parameter that is used to ensure the parsing user id is the same as that on the source instance. For an application where users connect as a single user_id, for example APPS, APPS is the parsing user_id that is recorded in the shared pool. To select only SQL statements parsed by APPS, enter the string 'APPS' in this field. To also select statements executed by batch, repeat the executing the procedure with the schema owner, for example GL. If the username is supplied, it must be valid. The name is not case sensitive.
p_threshold_executions	The lower bound for the number of executions, below which a SQL statement will not be selected for parsing. This parameter is optional. It allows the application to extract and compile statements with executions, for example, greater than 3. The default value is 1. This means SQL statements that have never executed, including invalid SQL statements, will not be extracted.
p_threshold_sharable_mem	The lower bound for the size of the shared memory consumed by the cursors on the source instance. Below this value a SQL statement will not be selected for parsing. This parameter is optional. It allows the application to extract and compile statements with shared memory for example, greater than 10000 bytes.

Table 87–2 (Cont.) COMPILE_FROM_REMOTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_parallel_degree	The number of parallel jobs that execute to complete the parse operation. These tasks are spawned as parallel jobs against a sub-range of the SQL statements selected for parsing. This parameter is reserved for parallel compile jobs which are currently not implemented.

88

DBMS_LOB

The DBMS_LOB package provides subprograms to operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, BFILEs, and temporary LOBs. You can use DBMS_LOB to access and manipulate specific parts of a LOB or complete LOBs.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LOB

Overview

DBMS_LOB can read and modify BLOBs, CLOBs, and NCLOBs; it provides read-only operations for BFILEs. The bulk of the LOB operations are provided by this package.

Security Model

This package must be created under SYS. Operations provided by this package are performed under the current calling user, not under the package owner SYS.

Any DBMS_LOB subprogram called from an anonymous PL/SQL block is executed using the privileges of the current user. Any DBMS_LOB subprogram called from a stored procedure is executed using the privileges of the owner of the stored procedure.

When creating the procedure, users can set the AUTHID to indicate whether they want definer's rights or invoker's rights. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE proc1 AUTHID DEFINER ...
```

or

```
CREATE PROCEDURE proc1 AUTHID CURRENT_USER ...
```

> **See Also:** For more information on AUTHID and privileges, see *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference*

You can provide secure access to BFILEs using the DIRECTORY feature discussed in BFILENAME function in the *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* and the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.

For information about the security model pertaining to temporary LOBs, see Operational Notes.

Constants

The DBMS_LOB package uses the constants shown in following tables:

- Table 88–1, " DBMS_LOB Constants - Basic"
- Table 88–2, " DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Types"
- Table 88–3, " DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Values"
- Table 88–4, " DBMS_LOB Constants - DBFS State Value Types"
- Table 88–5, " DBMS_LOB Constants - DBFS Cache Flags"
- Table 88–6, " DBMS_LOB Constants - Miscellaneous"

Table 88–1 DBMS_LOB Constants - Basic

Constant	Type	Value	Description
CALL	PLS_INTEGER	12	Create the TEMP LOB with call duration
FILE_READONLY	BINARY_INTEGER	0	Open the specified BFILE read-only
LOB_READONLY	BINARY_INTEGER	0	Open the specified LOB read-only
LOB_READWRITE	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Open the specified LOB read-write
LOBMAXSIZE	INTEGER	18446744073709551615	Maximum size of a LOB in bytes
SESSION	PLS_INTEGER	10	Create the TEMP LOB with session duration

Table 88–2 DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Types

Constant	Definition	Value	Description
OPT_COMPRESS	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Set/Get the SECUREFILE compress option value
OPT_DEDUPLICATE	BINARY_INTEGER	4	Set/Get the SECUREFILE Deduplicate option value
OPT_ENCRYPT	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Get the SECUREFILE encrypt option value

Table 88–3 DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Values

Constant	Definition	Value	Description
COMPRESS_OFF	BINARY_INTEGER	0	For SETOPTIONS Procedures, set compress off; for GETOPTIONS Functions, compress is off
COMPRESS_ON	BINARY_INTEGER	1	For SETOPTIONS Procedures, set compress on; for GETOPTIONS Functions, compress is on
DEDUPLICATE_OFF	BINARY_INTEGER	0	For SETOPTIONS Procedures, set deduplicate is off; for GETOPTIONS Functions, deduplicate is off

Table 88–3 (Cont.) DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Values

Constant	Definition	Value	Description
DEDUPLICATE_ON	BINARY_INTEGER	4	For SETOPTIONS Procedures, set deduplicate is on; for GETOPTIONS Functions, deduplicate is on
ENCRYPT_OFF	BINARY_INTEGER	0	For GETOPTIONS Functions, encrypt is off
ENCRYPT_ON	BINARY_INTEGER	2	For GETOPTIONS Functions, encrypt is on

Table 88–4 DBMS_LOB Constants - DBFS State Value Types

Constant	Definition	Value	Description
DBFS_LINK_NEVER	PLS_INTEGER	0	LOB has never been archived
DBFS_LINK_NO	PLS_INTEGER	2	LOB was archived, but as been read back in to the RDBMS
DBFS_LINK_YES	PLS_INTEGER	1	LOB is currently archived

Table 88–5 DBMS_LOB Constants - DBFS Cache Flags

Constant	Definition	Value	Description
DBFS_LINK_CACHE	PLS_INTEGER	1	Put the LOB data to the archive, but keep the data in the RDBMS as a cached version
DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE	PLS_INTEGER	0	Put the LOB data to the archive, and remove the data from the RDBMS.

Table 88–6 DBMS_LOB Constants - Miscellaneous

Constant	Definition	Value	Description
CONTENTTYPE_MAX_SIZE	PLS_INTEGER	128	Maximum number of bytes allowed in the content type string
DBFS_LINK_PATH_MAX_SIZE	PLS_INTEGER	1024	The maximum length of DBFS pathnames

Datatypes

The DBMS_LOB package uses the datatypes shown in Table 88–7.

Table 88–7 Datatypes Used by DBMS_LOB

Type	Description
BLOB	Source or destination binary LOB.
RAW	Source or destination RAW buffer (used with BLOB).
CLOB	Source or destination character LOB (including NCLOB).
VARCHAR2	Source or destination character buffer (used with CLOB and NCLOB).
INTEGER	Specifies the size of a buffer or LOB, the offset into a LOB, or the amount to access.
BFILE	Large, binary object stored outside the database.

The DBMS_LOB package defines no special types.

An NCLOB is a CLOB for holding fixed-width and varying-width, multibyte national character sets.

The clause ANY_CS in the specification of DBMS_LOB subprograms for CLOBs enables the CLOB type to accept a CLOB or NCLOB locator variable as input.

Operational Notes

All DBMS_LOB subprograms work based on LOB locators. For the successful completion of DBMS_LOB subprograms, you must provide an input locator that represents a LOB that already exists in the database tablespaces or external file system. See also Chapter 1 of *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*.

To use LOBs in your database, you must first use SQL data definition language (DDL) to define the tables that contain LOB columns.

- Internal LOBs
- External LOBs
- Temporary LOBs

Internal LOBs

To populate your table with internal LOBs after LOB columns are defined in a table, you use the SQL data manipulation language (DML) to initialize or populate the locators in the LOB columns.

External LOBs

For an external LOB (BFILE) to be represented by a LOB locator, you must:

- Ensure that a DIRECTORY object representing a valid, existing physical directory has been defined, and that physical files (the LOBs you plan to add) exist with read permission for the database. If your operating system uses case-sensitive path names, then be sure you specify the directory in the correct format.
- Pass the DIRECTORY object and the filename of the external LOB you are adding to the BFILENAME function to create a LOB locator for your external LOB.

Once you have completed these tasks, you can insert or update a row containing a LOB column using the specified LOB locator.

After the LOBs are defined and created, you can then SELECT from a LOB locator into a local PL/SQL LOB variable and use this variable as an input parameter to DBMS_LOB for access to the LOB value.

For details on the different ways to do this, you must refer to the section of the *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* that describes "Accessing External LOBs (BFILEs)."

Temporary LOBs

The database supports the definition, creation, deletion, access, and update of temporary LOBs. Your temporary tablespace stores the temporary LOB data. Temporary LOBs are not permanently stored in the database. Their purpose is mainly to perform transformations on LOB data.

For temporary LOBs, you must use the OCI, PL/SQL, or another programmatic interface to create or manipulate them. Temporary LOBs can be either BLOBs, CLOBs, or NCLOBs.

A temporary LOB is empty when it is created. By default, all temporary LOBs are deleted at the end of the session in which they were created. If a process dies unexpectedly or if the database crashes, then temporary LOBs are deleted, and the space for temporary LOBs is freed.

There is also an interface to let you group temporary LOBs together into a logical bucket. The duration represents this logical store for temporary LOBs. Each temporary LOB can have separate storage characteristics, such as CACHE/ NOCACHE. There is a default store for every session into which temporary LOBs are placed if you don't specify a specific duration. Additionally, you are able to perform a free operation on durations, which causes all contents in a duration to be freed.

There is no support for consistent read (CR), undo, backup, parallel processing, or transaction management for temporary LOBs. Because CR and roll backs are not supported for temporary LOBs, you must free the temporary LOB and start over again if you encounter an error.

Because CR, undo, and versions are not generated for temporary LOBs, there is potentially a performance impact if you assign multiple locators to the same temporary LOB. Semantically, each locator should have its own copy of the temporary LOB.

A copy of a temporary LOB is created if the user modifies the temporary LOB while another locator is also pointing to it. The locator on which a modification was performed now points to a new copy of the temporary LOB. Other locators no longer see the same data as the locator through which the modification was made. A deep copy was not incurred by permanent LOBs in these types of situations, because CR snapshots and version pages enable users to see their own versions of the LOB cheaply.

You can gain pseudo-REF semantics by using pointers to locators in OCI and by having multiple pointers to locators point to the same temporary LOB locator, if necessary. In PL/SQL, you must avoid using more than one locator for each temporary LOB. The temporary LOB locator can be passed by reference to other procedures.

Because temporary LOBs are not associated with any table schema, there are no meanings to the terms in-row and out-of-row temporary LOBs. Creation of a temporary LOB instance by a user causes the engine to create and return a locator to the LOB data. The PL/SQL DBMS_LOB package, PRO*C/C++, OCI, and other programmatic interfaces operate on temporary LOBs through these locators just as they do for permanent LOBs.

There is no support for client side temporary LOBs. All temporary LOBs reside in the server.

Temporary LOBs do not support the EMPTY_BLOB or EMPTY_CLOB functions that are supported for permanent LOBs. The EMPTY_BLOB function specifies the fact that the LOB is initialized, but not populated with any data.

A temporary LOB instance can only be destroyed by using OCI or the DBMS_LOB package by using the appropriate FREETEMPORARY or OCIDurationEnd statement.

A temporary LOB instance can be accessed and modified using appropriate OCI and DBMS_LOB statements, just as for regular permanent internal LOBs. To make a temporary LOB permanent, you must explicitly use the OCI or DBMS_LOB COPY command, and copy the temporary LOB into a permanent one.

Security is provided through the LOB locator. Only the user who created the temporary LOB is able to see it. Locators are not expected to be able to pass from one user's session to another. Even if someone did pass a locator from one session to another, they would not access the temporary LOBs from the original session. Temporary LOB lookup is localized to each user's own session. Someone using a locator from somewhere else is only able to access LOBs within his own session that have the same LOB ID. Users should not try to do this, but if they do, they are not able to affect anyone else's data.

The database keeps track of temporary LOBs for each session in a v$ view called V$TEMPORARY_LOBS, which contains information about how many temporary LOBs exist for each session. V$ views are for DBA use. From the session, the database can determine which user owns the temporary LOBs. By using V$TEMPORARY_LOBS in conjunction with DBA_SEGMENTS, a DBA can see how much space is being used by a session for temporary LOBs. These tables can be used by DBAs to monitor and guide any emergency cleanup of temporary space used by temporary LOBs.

The following notes are specific to temporary LOBs:

1. All functions in DBMS_LOB return NULL if any of the input parameters are NULL. All procedures in DBMS_LOB raise an exception if the LOB locator is input as NULL.
2. Operations based on CLOBs do not verify if the character set IDs of the parameters (CLOB parameters, VARCHAR2 buffers and patterns, and so on) match. It is the user's responsibility to ensure this.
3. Data storage resources are controlled by the DBA by creating different temporary tablespaces. DBAs can define separate temporary tablespaces for different users, if necessary.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information on NOCOPY syntax

Rules and Limits

General Rules and Limits

- Oracle Database does not support constraints on columns or attributes whose type is a LOB, with the following exception: `NOT NULL` constraints are supported for a LOB column or attribute.
- The following rules apply in the specification of subprograms in this package:
  - `newlen`, `offset`, and `amount` parameters for subprograms operating on `BLOB`s and `BFILE`s must be specified in terms of *bytes*.
  - `newlen`, `offset`, and `amount` parameters for subprograms operating on `CLOB`s must be specified in terms of *characters*.

  In multi-byte character sets, it is not possible to interpret these offsets correctly. As a result, `SUBSTR` raises the following error: `ORA-22998: CLOB or NCLOB in multibyte character set not supported`.
- A subprogram raises an `INVALID_ARGVAL` exception if the following restrictions are not followed in specifying values for parameters (unless otherwise specified):
  1. Only positive, absolute offsets from the beginning of `LOB` data are permitted: Negative offsets from the tail of the LOB are not permitted.
  2. Only positive, nonzero values are permitted for the parameters that represent size and positional quantities, such as `amount`, `offset`, `newlen`, `nth`, and so on. Negative offsets and ranges observed in SQL string functions and operators are not permitted.
  3. The value of `offset`, `amount`, `newlen`, `nth` must not exceed the value `lobmaxsize` 18446744073709551615 (2^{64}) in any `DBMS_LOB` subprogram.
  4. For `CLOB`s consisting of fixed-width multibyte characters, the maximum value for these parameters must not exceed (`lobmaxsize/character_width_in_bytes`) characters.

     For example, if the `CLOB` consists of 2-byte characters, such as:

     ```
     JA16SJISFIXED
     ```

     Then, the maximum `amount` value should not exceed:

     ```
     18446744073709551615/2 = 9223372036854775807
     ```
- PL/SQL language specifications stipulate an upper limit of 32767 bytes (not characters) for `RAW` and `VARCHAR2` parameters used in `DBMS_LOB` subprograms. For example, if you declare a variable to be:

  ```
  charbuf VARCHAR2(3000)
  ```

  Then, `charbuf` can hold 3000 single byte characters or 1500 2-byte fixed width characters. This has an important consequence for `DBMS_LOB` subprograms for `CLOB`s and `NCLOB`s.

- The %CHARSET clause indicates that the form of the parameter with %CHARSET must match the form of the ANY_CS parameter to which it refers.

  For example, in DBMS_LOB subprograms that take a VARCHAR2 buffer parameter, the form of the VARCHAR2 buffer must match the form of the CLOB parameter. If the input LOB parameter is of type NCLOB, then the buffer must contain NCHAR data. Conversely, if the input LOB parameter is of type CLOB, then the buffer must contain CHAR data.

  For DBMS_LOB subprograms that take two CLOB parameters, both CLOB parameters must have the same form; that is, they must both be NCLOBs, or they must both be CLOBs.

- If the value of amount plus the offset exceeds the maximum LOB size allowed by the database, then access exceptions are raised.

  Under these input conditions, read subprograms, such as READ, COMPARE, INSTR, and SUBSTR, read until End of Lob/File is reached. For example, for a READ operation on a BLOB or BFILE, if the user specifies offset value of 3 GB and an amount value of 2 GB on a LOB that is 4GB in size, then READ returns only 1GB (4GB-3GB) bytes.

- Functions with NULL or invalid input values for parameters return a NULL. Procedures with NULL values for destination LOB parameters raise exceptions.

- Operations involving patterns as parameters, such as COMPARE, INSTR, and SUBSTR do not support regular expressions or special matching characters (such as % in the LIKE operator in SQL) in the pattern parameter or substrings.

- The End Of LOB condition is indicated by the READ procedure using a NO_DATA_FOUND exception. This exception is raised only upon an attempt by the user to read beyond the end of the LOB. The READ buffer for the last read contains 0 bytes.

- For consistent LOB updates, you must lock the row containing the destination LOB before making a call to any of the procedures (mutators) that modify LOB data.

- Unless otherwise stated, the default value for an offset parameter is 1, which indicates the first byte in the BLOB or BFILE data, and the first character in the CLOB or NCLOB value. No default values are specified for the amount parameter — you must input the values explicitly.

- You must lock the row containing the destination internal LOB before calling any subprograms that modify the LOB, such as APPEND, COPY, ERASE, TRIM, or WRITE. These subprograms do not implicitly lock the row containing the LOB.

Rules and Limits Specific to External Files (BFILEs)

- The subprograms COMPARE, INSTR, READ, SUBSTR, FILECLOSE, FILECLOSEALL and LOADFROMFILE operate only on an *opened* BFILE locator; that is, a successful FILEOPEN call must precede a call to any of these subprograms.

- For the functions FILEEXISTS, FILEGETNAME and GETLENGTH, a file's open/close status is unimportant; however, the file must exist physically, and you must have adequate privileges on the DIRECTORY object and the file.

- DBMS_LOB does not support any concurrency control mechanism for BFILE operations.

- In the event of several open files in the session whose closure has not been handled properly, you can use the FILECLOSEALL subprogram to close all files opened in the session and resume file operations from the beginning.

- If you are the creator of a DIRECTORY, or if you have system privileges, then use the CREATE OR REPLACE, DROP, and REVOKE statements in SQL with extreme caution.

  If you, or other grantees of a particular directory object, have several open files in a session, then any of the preceding commands can adversely affect file operations. In the event of such abnormal termination, your only choice is to invoke a program or anonymous block that calls FILECLOSEALL, reopen your files, and restart your file operations.

- All files opened during a user session are implicitly closed at the end of the session. However, Oracle strongly recommends that you close the files after *both* normal and abnormal termination of operations on the BFILE.

  In the event of normal program termination, proper file closure ensures that the number of files that are open simultaneously in the session remains less than SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES.

  In the event of abnormal program termination from a PL/SQL program, it is imperative that you provide an exception handler that ensures closure of all files opened in that PL/SQL program. This is necessary because after an exception occurs, only the exception handler has access to the BFILE variable in its most current state.

  After the exception transfers program control outside the PL/SQL program block, all references to the open BFILEs are lost. The result is a larger open file count which may or may not exceed the SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES value.

  For example, consider a READ operation past the end of the BFILE value, which generates a NO_DATA_FOUND exception:

```
-- This assumes a directory 'DDD' whose path is already known
DECLARE
       fil BFILE:= bfilename('DDD', 'filename.foo');
       pos INTEGER;
       amt BINARY_INTEGER;
       buf RAW(40);
BEGIN
       SELECT ad_graphic INTO fil FROM print_media WHERE product_id = 3106;
       dbms_lob.open(fil, dbms_lob.lob_readonly);
       amt := 40; pos := 1 + dbms_lob.getlength(fil); buf := '';
       dbms_lob.read(fil, amt, pos, buf);
       dbms_output.put_line('Read F1 past EOF: '||
           utl_raw.cast_to_varchar2(buf));
       dbms_lob.close(fil);
END;

ORA-01403: no data found
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_LOB", line 373
ORA-06512: at line 10
```

  After the exception has occurred, the BFILE locator variable file goes out of scope, and no further operations on the file can be done using that variable. Therefore, the solution is to use an exception handler:

```
DECLARE
     fil BFILE;
     pos INTEGER;
     amt BINARY_INTEGER;
     buf RAW(40);
BEGIN
     SELECT ad_graphic INTO fil FROM print_media WHERE product_id = 3106;
     dbms_lob.open(fil, dbms_lob.lob_readonly);
```

```
      amt := 40; pos := 1 + dbms_lob.getlength(fil); buf := '';
      dbms_lob.read(fil, amt, pos, buf);
      dbms_output.put_line('Read F1 past EOF: '||
           utl_raw.cast_to_varchar2(buf));
      dbms_lob.close(fil);
      exception
      WHEN no_data_found
      THEN
        BEGIN
          dbms_output.put_line('End of File reached. Closing file');
          dbms_lob.fileclose(fil);
          -- or dbms_lob.filecloseall if appropriate
        END;
END;
     /

Statement processed.
End of File reached. Closing file
```

In general, you should ensure that files opened in a PL/SQL block using `DBMS_LOB` are closed before normal or abnormal termination of the block.

Maximum LOB Size

The maximum size for LOBs supported by the database is equal to the value of the blocksize of the tablespace the LOB column resides in times the value 2^{32}-1 (4294967295). This allows for a maximum LOB size ranging from 8 terabytes to 128 terabytes.

Maximum Buffer Size

The maximum buffer size, 32767 bytes.

For `BLOBs`, where buffer size is expressed in bytes, the number of bytes cannot exceed 32767.

For `CLOBs` or `NCLOBs`, where buffer size is expressed in characters, the number of characters cannot result in a buffer larger than 32767 bytes. For example, if you are using fixed-width, two-byte characters, then specifying 20000 characters is an error (20000*2 = 40000, which is greater than 32767).

Exceptions

Table 88–8 DBMS_LOB Exceptions

Exception	Code	Description
ACCESS_ERROR	22925	You are trying to write too much data to the LOB: LOB size is limited to 4 gigabytes.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	22279	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled
CONTENTTYPE_TOOLONG	43859	The length of the contenttype string exceeds the defined maximum. Modify the length of the contenttype string and retry the operation.
CONTENTTYPEBUF_WRONG	43862	The length of the contenttype buffer is less than defined constant. Modify the length of the contenttype buffer and retry the operation.
INVALID_ARGVAL	21560	The argument is expecting a non-NULL, valid value but the argument value passed in is NULL, invalid, or out of range.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	22287	The directory used for the current operation is not valid if being accessed for the first time, or if it has been modified by the DBA since the last access.
NO_DATA_FOUND	1403	ENDOFLOB indicator for looping read operations. This is not a hard error.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	22285	The directory leading to the file does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	22286	The user does not have the necessary access privileges on the directory or the file for the operation.
OPEN_TOOMANY	22290	The number of open files has reached the maximum limit.
OPERATION_FAILED	22288	The operation attempted on the file failed.
QUERY_WRITE	14553	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	43856	A non-SECUREFILE LOB type was used in a SECUREFILE only call
SECUREFILE_BADPARAM	43857	An invalid argument was passed to a SECUREFILE subprogram
SECUREFILE_MARKERASED	43861	The mark provided to a FRAGMENT_* operation has been deleted
SECUREFILE_OUTOFBOUNDS	43883	Attempted to perform a FRAGMENT_* operation past the LOB end
UNOPENED_FILE	22289	The file is not open for the required operation to be performed.
VALUE_ERROR	6502	PL/SQL error for invalid values to subprogram's parameters.

Summary of DBMS_LOB Subprograms

Table 88–9 DBMS_LOB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
APPEND Procedures on page 88-19	Appends the contents of the source LOB to the destination LOB
CLOSE Procedure on page 88-21	Closes a previously opened internal or external LOB
COMPARE Functions on page 88-22	Compares two entire `LOBs` or parts of two `LOBs`
CONVERTTOBLOB Procedure on page 88-24	Reads character data from a source `CLOB` or `NCLOB` instance, converts the character data to the specified character, writes the converted data to a destination `BLOB` instance in binary format, and returns the new offsets
CONVERTTOCLOB Procedure on page 88-27	Takes a source `BLOB` instance, converts the binary data in the source instance to character data using the specified character, writes the character data to a destination `CLOB` or `NCLOB` instance, and returns the new offsets
COPY Procedures on page 88-30	Copies all, or part, of the source LOB to the destination LOB
COPY_DBFS_LINK Procedures on page 88-32	Copies the DBFS Link in the source LOB to the destination LOB
COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK on page 88-33	Retrieves the data for the LOB from the DBFS store
CREATETEMPORARY Procedures on page 88-34	Creates a temporary `BLOB` or `CLOB` and its corresponding index in the user's default temporary tablespace
DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATH Functions on page 88-35	Returns a unique file path name for use in creating a DBFS Link
ERASE Procedures on page 88-36	Erases all or part of a LOB
FILECLOSE Procedure on page 88-38	Closes the file
FILECLOSEALL Procedure on page 88-39	Closes all previously opened files
FILEEXISTS Function on page 88-40	Checks if the file exists on the server
FILEGETNAME Procedure on page 88-41	Gets the directory object name and file name
FILEISOPEN Function on page 88-42	Checks if the file was opened using the input `BFILE` locators
FILEOPEN Procedure on page 88-43	Opens a file
FRAGMENT_DELETE Procedure on page 88-44	Deletes the data at the specified offset for the specified length from the LOB
FRAGMENT_INSERT Procedures on page 88-45	Inserts the specified data (limited to 32K) into the LOB at the specified offset

Table 88–9 (Cont.) DBMS_LOB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FRAGMENT_MOVE Procedure on page 88-46	Moves the amount of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) from the specified offset to the new offset specified
FRAGMENT_REPLACE Procedures on page 88-47	Replaces the data at the specified offset with the specified data (not to exceed 32k)
FREETEMPORARY Procedures on page 88-49	Frees the temporary BLOB or CLOB in the default temporary tablespace
GET_DBFS_LINK Functions on page 88-50	Returns the DBFS Link path associated with the specified SecureFile
GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE Procedures on page 88-51	Retrieves the current DBFS Link state of the specified SecureFile
GETCHUNKSIZE Functions on page 88-54	Returns the amount of space used in the LOB chunk to store the LOB value
GETCONTENTTYPE Functions on page 88-52	Returns the content ID string previously set by means of the SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure
GETLENGTH Functions on page 88-56	Gets the length of the LOB value
GETOPTIONS Functions on page 88-57	Obtains settings corresponding to the option_type field for a particular LOB
GET_STORAGE_LIMIT Function on page 88-53	Returns the storage limit for LOBs in your database configuration
INSTR Functions on page 88-58	Returns the matching position of the *nth* occurrence of the pattern in the LOB
ISOPEN Functions on page 88-60	Checks to see if the LOB was already opened using the input locator
ISSECUREFILE Function on page 88-61	Returns TRUE if the LOB locator passed to is for a SecureFiles LOB, otherwise, returns FALSE
ISTEMPORARY Functions on page 88-62	Checks if the locator is pointing to a temporary LOB
LOADBLOBFROMFILE Procedure on page 88-63	Loads BFILE data into an internal BLOB
LOADCLOBFROMFILE Procedure on page 88-65	Loads BFILE data into an internal CLOB
LOADFROMFILE Procedure on page 88-69	Loads BFILE data into an internal LOB
MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK Procedures on page 88-71	Writes the specified SecureFile data to the DBFS store
OPEN Procedures on page 88-72	Opens a LOB (internal, external, or temporary) in the indicated mode
READ Procedures on page 88-74	Reads data from the LOB starting at the specified offset
SET_DBFS_LINK Procedures on page 88-76	Links the specified SecureFile to the specified path name. It does not copy the data to the path
SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure on page 88-77	Sets the content type string for the data in the LOB
SETOPTIONS Procedures on page 88-78	Enables CSCE features on a per-LOB basis, overriding the default LOB column settings

Table 88–9 (Cont.) DBMS_LOB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SUBSTR Functions on page 88-79	Returns part of the LOB value starting at the specified offset
TRIM Procedures on page 88-81	Trims the LOB value to the specified shorter length
WRITE Procedures on page 88-83	Writes data to the LOB from a specified offset
WRITEAPPEND Procedures on page 88-85	Writes a buffer to the end of a LOB

APPEND Procedures

This procedure appends the contents of a source internal LOB to a destination LOB. It appends the complete source LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.APPEND (
   dest_lob IN OUT  NOCOPY BLOB,
   src_lob  IN             BLOB);

DBMS_LOB.APPEND (
   dest_lob IN OUT  NOCOPY CLOB  CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   src_lob  IN             CLOB  CHARACTER SET dest_lob%CHARSET);
```

Parameters

Table 88–10 APPEND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	Locator for the internal LOB to which the data is to be appended.
src_lob	Locator for the internal LOB from which the data is to be read.

Exceptions

Table 88–11 APPEND Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Either the source or the destination LOB is NULL.
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on either LOB

Usage Notes

- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

  If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the OPEN or CLOSE statement.
- If APPEND is called on a LOB that has been archived, it implicitly gets the LOB before the first byte is written
- If APPEND is called on a SecureFiles LOB that is a DBFS Link, an exception is thrown.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

CLOSE Procedure

This procedure closes a previously opened internal or external LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.CLOSE (
   lob_loc    IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB);

DBMS_LOB.CLOSE (
   lob_loc    IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);

DBMS_LOB.CLOSE (
   file_loc   IN OUT NOCOPY BFILE);
```

Parameters

Table 88–12 CLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.

Exceptions

No error is returned if the BFILE exists but is not opened. An error is returned if the LOB is not open.

Usage Notes

CLOSE requires a round-trip to the server for both internal and external LOBs. For internal LOBs, CLOSE triggers other code that relies on the close call, and for external LOBs (BFILEs), CLOSE actually closes the server-side operating system file.

It is not mandatory that you wrap all LOB operations inside the Open/Close interfaces. However, if you open a LOB, you must close it before you commit the transaction; an error is produced if you do not. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

It is an error to commit the transaction before closing all opened LOBs that were opened by the transaction. When the error is returned, the openness of the open LOBs is discarded, but the transaction is successfully committed. Hence, all the changes made to the LOB and non-LOB data in the transaction are committed, but the domain and function-based indexes are not updated. If this happens, you should rebuild the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

COMPARE Functions

This function compares two entire LOBs or parts of two LOBs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.COMPARE (
   lob_1            IN BLOB,
   lob_2            IN BLOB,
   amount           IN INTEGER := DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE,
   offset_1         IN INTEGER := 1,
   offset_2         IN INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.COMPARE (
   lob_1            IN CLOB  CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   lob_2            IN CLOB  CHARACTER SET lob_1%CHARSET,
   amount           IN INTEGER := DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE,
   offset_1         IN INTEGER := 1,
   offset_2         IN INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.COMPARE (
   lob_1            IN BFILE,
   lob_2            IN BFILE,
   amount           IN INTEGER,
   offset_1         IN INTEGER := 1,
   offset_2         IN INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(COMPARE, WNDS, WNPS, RNDS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–13 COMPARE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_1	LOB locator of first target for comparison.
lob_2	LOB locator of second target for comparison.
amount	Number of bytes (for BLOBs) or characters (for CLOBs/NCLOBSs) to compare.
offset_1	Offset in bytes or characters on the first LOB (origin: 1) for the comparison.
offset_2	Offset in bytes or characters on the second LOB (origin: 1) for the comparison.

Return Values

- INTEGER: 0 if the comparison succeeds, nonzero if not.
- NULL, if any of amount, offset_1 or offset_2 is not a valid LOB offset value. A valid offset is within the range of 1 to LOBMAXSIZE inclusive.

Usage Notes

- You can only compare LOBs of the same datatype (LOBs of BLOB type with other BLOBs, and CLOBs with CLOBs, and BFILEs with BFILEs). For BFILEs, the file must be already opened using a successful FILEOPEN operation for this operation to succeed.
- COMPARE returns 0 if the data exactly matches over the range specified by the offset and amount parameters. COMPARE returns -1 if the first CLOB is less than the second, and 1 if it is greater.
- For fixed-width *n*-byte CLOBs, if the input amount for COMPARE is specified to be greater than (DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE/*n*), then COMPARE matches characters in a range of size (DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE/*n*), or Max(length(clob1), length(clob2)), whichever is lesser.
- If COMPARE is called on any LOB that has been archived, it implicitly gets the LOB before the compare begins.
- If COMPARE() is called on a SecureFiles LOB that is a DBFS Link, the linked LOB is streamed from DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown.

Exceptions

Table 88–14 COMPARE Function Exceptions for BFILE operations

Exception	Description
UNOPENED_FILE	File was not opened using the input locator.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.
INVALID_OPERATION	File does not exist, or you do not have access privileges on the file.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on either LOB

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

CONVERTTOBLOB Procedure

This procedure reads character data from a source CLOB or NCLOB instance, converts the character data to the character set you specify, writes the converted data to a destination BLOB instance in binary format, and returns the new offsets. You can use this interface with any combination of persistent or temporary LOB instances as the source or destination.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.CONVERTTOBLOB(
  dest_lob       IN OUT     NOCOPY  BLOB,
  src_clob       IN         CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  amount         IN         INTEGER,
  dest_offset    IN OUT     INTEGER,
  src_offset     IN OUT     INTEGER,
  blob_csid      IN         NUMBER,
  lang_context   IN OUT     INTEGER,
  warning        OUT        INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–15 CONVERTTOBLOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	LOB locator of the destination LOB instance.
src_clob	LOB locator of the source LOB instance.
amount	Number of characters to convert from the source LOB. If you want to copy the entire LOB, pass the constant DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE. If you pass any other value, it must be less than or equal to the size of the LOB.
dest_offset	(IN) Offset in bytes in the destination LOB for the start of the write. Specify a value of 1 to start at the beginning of the LOB. (OUT) The new offset in bytes after the end of the write.
src_offset	(IN) Offset in characters in the source LOB for the start of the read. (OUT) Offset in characters in the source LOB right after the end of the read.
blob_csid	Desired character set ID of the converted data.
lang_context	(IN) Language context, such as shift status, for the current conversion. (OUT) The language context at the time when the current conversion is done. This information is returned so you can use it for subsequent conversions without losing or misinterpreting any source data. For the very first conversion, or if do not care, use the default value of zero.

Table 88–15 (Cont.) CONVERTTOBLOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning	(OUT) Warning message. This parameter indicates when something abnormal happened during the conversion. You are responsible for checking the warning message. Currently, the only possible warning is — inconvertible character. This occurs when the character in the source cannot be properly converted to a character in destination. The default replacement character (for example, '?') is used in place of the inconvertible character. The return value of this error message is defined as the constant warn_inconvertible_char in the DBMS_LOB package.

Usage Notes

Preconditions

Before calling the CONVERTTOBLOB procedure, the following preconditions must be met:

- Both the source and destination LOB instances must exist.
- If the destination LOB is a persistent LOB, the row must be locked. To lock the row, select the LOB using the FOR UPDATE clause of the SELECT statement.

Constants and Defaults

All parameters are required. You must pass a variable for each OUT or IN OUT parameter. You must pass either a variable or a value for each IN parameter.

Table 88–16 gives a summary of typical values for each parameter. The first column lists the parameter, the second column lists the typical value, and the last column describes the result of passing the value. Note that constants are used for some values. These constants are defined in the dbmslob.sql package specification file.

Table 88–16 DBMS_LOB.CONVERTTOBLOB Typical Values

Parameter	Value	Description
amount	LOBMAXSIZE (IN)	convert the entire file
dest_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
src_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
blob_csid	DEFAULT_CSID (IN)	default CSID, use same CSID as source LOB
lang_context	DEFAULT_LANG_CTX (IN)	default language context
warning	NO_WARNING (OUT)	no warning message, success
	WARN_INCONVERTIBLE_CHAR (OUT)	character in source cannot be properly converted

General Notes

- You must specify the desired character set for the destination LOB in the blob_csid parameter. You can pass a zero value for blob_csid. When you do so, the database assumes that the desired character set is the same as the source LOB character set.
- You must specify the offsets for both the source and destination LOBs, and the number of characters to copy from the source LOB. The amount and src_offset

values are in characters and the dest_offset is in bytes. To convert the entire LOB, you can specify LOBMAXSIZE for the amount parameter.

- CONVERTTOBLOB gets the source and/or destination LOBs as necessary prior to conversion and write of the data.

Exceptions

Table 88–17 gives possible exceptions this procedure can throw. The first column lists the exception string and the second column describes the error conditions that can cause the exception.

Table 88–17 CONVERTTOBLOB Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Any of the input parameters are NULL or INVALID.
INVALID_ARGVAL	One or more of the following: - src_offset or dest_offset < 1. - src_offset or dest_offset > LOBMAXSIZE. - amount < 1. - amount > LOBMAXSIZE.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for more information on using LOBs in application development

CONVERTTOCLOB Procedure

This procedure takes a source BLOB instance, converts the binary data in the source instance to character data using the character set you specify, writes the character data to a destination CLOB or NCLOB instance, and returns the new offsets. You can use this interface with any combination of persistent or temporary LOB instances as the source or destination.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.CONVERTTOCLOB(
   dest_lob       IN OUT NOCOPY  CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   src_blob       IN             BLOB,
   amount         IN             INTEGER,
   dest_offset    IN OUT         INTEGER,
   src_offset     IN OUT         INTEGER,
   blob_csid      IN             NUMBER,
   lang_context   IN OUT         INTEGER,
   warning        OUT            INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–18 CONVERTTOCLOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	LOB locator of the destination LOB instance.
src_blob	LOB locator of the source LOB instance.
amount	Number of bytes to convert from the source LOB. If you want to copy the entire BLOB, pass the constant DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE. If you pass any other value, it must be less than or equal to the size of the BLOB.
dest_offset	(IN) Offset in characters in the destination LOB for the start of the write. Specify a value of 1 to start at the beginning of the LOB. (OUT) The new offset in characters after the end of the write. This offset always points to the beginning of the first complete character after the end of the write.
src_offset	(IN) Offset in bytes in the source LOB for the start of the read. (OUT) Offset in bytes in the source LOB right after the end of the read.
blob_csid	The character set ID of the source data
lang_context	(IN) Language context, such as shift status, for the current conversion. (OUT) The language context at the time when the current conversion is done. This information is returned so you can use it for subsequent conversions without losing or misinterpreting any source data. For the very first conversion, or if do not care, use the default value of zero.

Table 88–18 (Cont.) CONVERTTOCLOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning	Warning message. This parameter indicates when something abnormal happened during the conversion. You are responsible for checking the warning message. Currently, the only possible warning is — inconvertible character. This occurs when the character in the source cannot be properly converted to a character in destination. The default replacement character (for example, '?') is used in place of the inconvertible character. The return value of this error message is defined as the constant warn_inconvertible_char in the DBMS_LOB package.

Usage Notes

Preconditions

Before calling the CONVERTTOCLOB procedure, the following preconditions must be met:

- Both the source and destination LOB instances must exist.
- If the destination LOB is a persistent LOB, the row must be locked before calling the CONVERTTOCLOB procedure. To lock the row, select the LOB using the FOR UPDATE clause of the SELECT statement.

Constants and Defaults

All parameters are required. You must pass a variable for each OUT or IN OUT parameter. You must pass either a variable or a value for each IN parameter.

Table 88–19 gives a summary of typical values for each parameter. The first column lists the parameter, the second column lists the typical value, and the last column describes the result of passing the value. Note that constants are used for some values. These constants are defined in the dbmslob.sql package specification file.

Table 88–19 DBMS_LOB.CONVERTTOCLOB Typical Values

Parameter	Value	Description
amount	LOBMAXSIZE (IN)	convert the entire file
dest_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
src_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
csid	DEFAULT_CSID (IN)	default CSID, use destination CSID
lang_context	DEFAULT_LANG_CTX (IN)	default language context
warning	NO_WARNING (OUT)	no warning message, success
	WARN_INCONVERTIBLE_CHAR (OUT)	character in source cannot be properly converted

General Notes

- You must specify the desired character set for the source LOB in the blob_csid parameter. You can pass a zero value for blob_csid. When you do so, the database assumes that the desired character set is the same as the destianation LOB character set.

- You must specify the offsets for both the source and destination LOBs, and the number of characters to copy from the source LOB. The `amount` and `src_offset` values are in bytes and the `dest_offset` is in characters. To convert the entire LOB, you can specify `LOBMAXSIZE` for the `amount` parameter.
- `CONVERTTOCLOB` gets the source and/or destination LOBs as necessary prior to conversion and write of the data.

Exceptions

Table 88–20 CONVERTTOCLOB Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`VALUE_ERROR`	Any of the input parameters are `NULL` or `INVALID`.
`INVALID_ARGVAL`	One or more of the following: - `src_offset` or `dest_offset` < 1. - `src_offset` or `dest_offset` > `LOBMAXSIZE`. - `amount` < 1. - `amount` > `LOBMAXSIZE`.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for more information on using LOBs in application development

COPY Procedures

This procedure copies all, or a part of, a source internal LOB to a destination internal LOB. You can specify the offsets for both the source and destination LOBs, and the number of bytes or characters to copy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.COPY (
  dest_lob    IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
  src_lob     IN            BLOB,
  amount      IN            INTEGER,
  dest_offset IN            INTEGER := 1,
  src_offset  IN            INTEGER := 1);

DBMS_LOB.COPY (
  dest_lob    IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB  CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  src_lob     IN            CLOB  CHARACTER SET dest_lob%CHARSET,
  amount      IN            INTEGER,
  dest_offset IN            INTEGER := 1,
  src_offset  IN            INTEGER := 1);
```

Parameters

Table 88–21 COPY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	LOB locator of the copy target.
src_lob	LOB locator of source for the copy.
amount	Number of bytes (for BLOBs) or characters (for CLOBs) to copy.
dest_offset	Offset in bytes or characters in the destination LOB (origin: 1) for the start of the copy.
src_offset	Offset in bytes or characters in the source LOB (origin: 1) for the start of the copy.

Exceptions

Table 88–22 COPY Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Any of the input parameters are NULL or invalid.
INVALID_ARGVAL	Either: - src_offset or dest_offset < 1 - src_offset or dest_offset > LOBMAXSIZE - amount < 1 - amount > LOBMAXSIZE
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on either LOB

Usage Notes

- If the offset you specify in the destination LOB is beyond the end of the data currently in this LOB, then zero-byte fillers or spaces are inserted in the destination `BLOB` or `CLOB` respectively. If the offset is less than the current length of the destination LOB, then existing data is overwritten.
- It is not an error to specify an amount that exceeds the length of the data in the source LOB. Thus, you can specify a large amount to copy from the source LOB, which copies data from the `src_offset` to the end of the source LOB.
- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.
- If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the `OPEN` or `CLOSE` statement.
- Prior to copy, the source and destination LOBs are retrieved, if they are currently archived. For a complete over-write, the destination LOB is not retrieved.
- If the source LOB is a DBFS Link, the data is streamed from DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown. If the destination LOB is a DBFS Link, an exception is thrown.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

COPY_DBFS_LINK Procedures

This procedure copies the DBFS Link in the source LOB to the destination LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.COPY_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc_dst    IN OUT BLOB,
  lob_loc_src    IN     BLOB,
  flags          IN     PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE);

DBMS_LOB.COPY_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc_dst    IN OUT CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  lob_loc_src    IN     CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  flags          IN     PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE);
```

Parameters

Table 88–23 COPY_DBFS_LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc_dst	LOB to be made to reference the same storage data as lob_loc_src
lob_loc_src	LOB from which to copy the reference
flags	Options to COPY_DBFS_LINK: ■ DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE specifies to only copy the DBFS Link ■ DBFS_LINK_CACHE specifies to copy the DBFS Link and read the data into the database LOB specified by lob_loc_dst so that the data is cached

Exceptions

Table 88–24 COPY_DBFS_LINK Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	Either lob_loc_src or lob_loc_dst is not a SECUREFILE
INVALID_ARGVAL	lob_loc_src LOB has not been archived
ORA-01555	If the source LOB has been retrieved, never archived, or if the LOB has been migrated in and out (modified or not) since the locator was gotten.

COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK

This procedure retrieves the archived SecureFiles LOB data from the DBFS HSM store and to the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc       IN OUT BLOB);

DBMS_LOB.COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc       IN OUT CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–25 COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB to be retrieved from the archive

Usage Note

COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK does not remove the underlying DBFS file.

If the LOB is successfully retrieved, COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK silently returns success.

Exceptions

Table 88–26 COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE
ORA-01555	If the LOB has already been retrieved and has been modified since retrieval, if the LOB has been migrated in and out (modified or not) since the locator was retrieved

CREATETEMPORARY Procedures

This procedure creates a temporary BLOB or CLOB and its corresponding index in your default temporary tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY (
   lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   cache   IN            BOOLEAN,
   dur     IN            PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_LOB.SESSION);

DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY (
   lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   cache   IN            BOOLEAN,
   dur     IN            PLS_INTEGER := 10);
```

Parameters

Table 88–27 CREATETEMPORARY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.
cache	Specifies if LOB should be read into buffer cache or not.
dur	1 of 2 predefined duration values (SESSION or CALL) which specifies a hint as to whether the temporary LOB is cleaned up at the end of the session or call. If dur is omitted, then the session duration is used.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about NOCOPY and passing temporary lobs as parameters

DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATH Functions

This subprogram returns a unique file path name for use in creating a DBFS Link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATH (
  lob_loc       IN BLOB,
  storage_dir   IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_LOB.DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATH (
  lob_loc       IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  storage_dir   IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(dbfs_link_generate_path,
       WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–28 DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB to be retrieved from DBFS
storage_dir	DBFS directory that will be the parent directory of the file

Exceptions

Table 88–29 DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATH Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_WRONGTYPE	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE

Usage Notes

Returns a globally unique file pathname that can be used for archiving. This is guaranteed to be globally unique across all calls to this function for different LOBs and versions of that LOB. It is always the same for the same LOB and version.

ERASE Procedures

This procedure erases an entire internal LOB or part of an internal LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.ERASE (
   lob_loc           IN OUT   NOCOPY   BLOB,
   amount            IN OUT   NOCOPY   INTEGER,
   offset            IN                INTEGER := 1);

DBMS_LOB.ERASE (
   lob_loc           IN OUT   NOCOPY   CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount            IN OUT   NOCOPY   INTEGER,
   offset            IN                INTEGER := 1);
```

Parameters

Table 88–30 ERASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	Locator for the LOB to be erased.For more information, see Operational Notes.
amount	Number of bytes (for BLOBs or BFILES) or characters (for CLOBs or NCLOBs) to be erased.
offset	Absolute offset (origin: 1) from the beginning of the LOB in bytes (for BLOBs) or characters (CLOBs).

Usage Notes

- When data is erased from the middle of a LOB, zero-byte fillers or spaces are written for BLOBs or CLOBs respectively.
- The actual number of bytes or characters erased can differ from the number you specified in the amount parameter if the end of the LOB value is reached before erasing the specified number. The actual number of characters or bytes erased is returned in the amount parameter.
- ERASE gets the LOB if it is archived, unless the erase covers the entire LOB.
- If the LOB to be erased is a DBFS Link, an exception is thrown.

> **Note:** The length of the LOB is not decreased when a section of the LOB is erased. To decrease the length of the LOB value, see the "TRIM Procedures" on page 88-81.

Exceptions

Table 88–31 ERASE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Any input parameter is NULL.

Table 88–31 (Cont.) ERASE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	Either: - amount < 1 or amount > LOBMAXSIZE - offset < 1 or offset > LOBMAXSIZE
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

Usage Notes

It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the OPEN or CLOSE statement.

See Also:

- "TRIM Procedures" on page 88-81
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FILECLOSE Procedure

This procedure closes a BFILE that has already been opened through the input locator.

Note: The database has only read-only access to BFILEs. This means that BFILEs cannot be written through the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSE (
    file_loc IN OUT NOCOPY BFILE);
```

Parameters

Table 88–32 FILECLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_loc	Locator for the BFILE to be closed.

Exceptions

Table 88–33 FILECLOSE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	NULL input value for file_loc.
UNOPENED_FILE	File was not opened with the input locator.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.
INVALID_OPERATION	File does not exist, or you do not have access privileges on the file.

See Also:

- "FILEOPEN Procedure" on page 88-43
- "FILECLOSEALL Procedure" on page 88-39
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FILECLOSEALL Procedure

This procedure closes all BFILEs opened in the session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSEALL;
```

Exceptions

Table 88–34 FILECLOSEALL Procedure Exception

Exception	Description
UNOPENED_FILE	No file has been opened in the session.

See Also:

- "FILEOPEN Procedure" on page 88-43
- "FILECLOSE Procedure" on page 88-38
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FILEEXISTS Function

This function finds out if a specified BFILE locator points to a file that actually exists on the server's file system.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FILEEXISTS (
   file_loc     IN    BFILE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(FILEEXISTS, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–35 FILEEXISTS Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
file_loc	Locator for the BFILE.

Return Values

Table 88–36 FILEEXISTS Function Return Values

Return	Description
0	Physical file does not exist.
1	Physical file exists.

Exceptions

Table 88–37 FILEEXISTS Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.

See Also:

- "FILEISOPEN Function" on page 88-42.
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FILEGETNAME Procedure

This procedure determines the directory object and filename, given a BFILE locator. This function only indicates the directory object name and filename assigned to the locator, not if the physical file or directory actually exists.

The maximum constraint values for the dir_alias buffer is 30, and for the entire path name, it is 2000.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FILEGETNAME (
   file_loc   IN    BFILE,
   dir_alias  OUT   VARCHAR2,
   filename   OUT   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 88–38 FILEGETNAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_loc	Locator for the BFILE
dir_alias	Directory object name
filename	Name of the BFILE

Exceptions

Table 88–39 FILEGETNAME Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Any of the input parameters are NULL or INVALID.
INVALID_ARGVAL	dir_alias or filename are NULL.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FILEISOPEN Function

This function finds out whether a BFILE was opened with the specified FILE locator.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FILEISOPEN (
   file_loc   IN    BFILE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(fileisopen, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–40 FILEISOPEN Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
file_loc	Locator for the BFILE.

Return Values

INTEGER: 0 = file is not open, 1 = file is open

Usage Notes

If the input FILE locator was never passed to the FILEOPEN procedure, then the file is considered not to be opened by this locator. However, a different locator may have this file open. In other words, openness is associated with a specific locator.

Exceptions

Table 88–41 FILEISOPEN Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.

See Also:

- "FILEEXISTS Function" on page 88-40
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FILEOPEN Procedure

This procedure opens a BFILE for read-only access. BFILE data may not be written through the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FILEOPEN (
   file_loc   IN OUT NOCOPY  BFILE,
   open_mode  IN             BINARY_INTEGER := file_readonly);
```

Parameters

Table 88–42 FILEOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_loc	Locator for the BFILE.
open_mode	File access is read-only.

Exceptions

Table 88–43 FILEOPEN Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	file_loc or open_mode is NULL.
INVALID_ARGVAL	open_mode is not equal to FILE_READONLY.
OPEN_TOOMANY	Number of open files in the session exceeds session_max_open_files.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory associated with file_loc does not exist.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.
INVALID_OPERATION	File does not exist, or you do not have access privileges on the file.

See Also:

- "FILECLOSE Procedure" on page 88-38
- "FILECLOSEALL Procedure" on page 88-39
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

FRAGMENT_DELETE Procedure

This procedure deletes the data at the specified offset for the specified length from the LOB without having to rewrite all the data in the LOB following the specified offset.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_DELETE (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   amount      IN            INTEGER,
   offset      IN            INTEGER);

DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_DELETE (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount      IN            INTEGER,
   offset      IN            INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–44 FRAGMENT_DELETE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.
amount	Number of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to be removed from the LOB
offset	Offset into the LOB in bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to begin the deletion

Exceptions

Table 88–45 FRAGMENT_DELETE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	A parameter value was invalid
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform operation during a query
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	A non-SECUREFILE LOB was used in a SECUREFILE LOB only call
SECUREFILE_OUTOFBOUNDS	Attempted to perform a FRAGMENT_* operation past LOB end

FRAGMENT_INSERT Procedures

This procedure inserts the specified data (limited to 32K) into the LOB at the specified offset.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_INSERT (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   amount      IN            INTEGER,
   offset      IN            INTEGER,
   buffer      IN            RAW);

DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_INSERT (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount      IN            INTEGER,
   offset      IN            INTEGER,
   buffer      IN            VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET);
```

Parameters

Table 88–46 FRAGMENT_INSERT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator.For more information, see Operational Notes.
amount	Number of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to be inserted into the LOB
offset	Offset into the LOB in bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to begin the insertion
buffer	Data to insert into the LOB

Exceptions

Table 88–47 FRAGMENT_INSERT Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	A parameter value was invalid
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform operation during a query
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	A non-SECUREFILE LOB was used in a SECUREFILE LOB only call
SECUREFILE_OUTOFBOUNDS	Attempted to perform a FRAGMENT_* operation past LOB end

Usage Notes

FRAGMENT_INSERT gets the LOB, if necessary, before performing operations on the LOB.

FRAGMENT_MOVE Procedure

This procedure moves the amount of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) from the specified offset to the new offset specified.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_MOVE (
   lob_loc       IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   amount        IN            INTEGER,
   src_offset    IN            INTEGER,
   dest_offset   IN            INTEGER);

DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_MOVE (
   lob_loc       IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount        IN            INTEGER,
   src_offset    IN            INTEGER,
   dest_offset   IN            INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–48 FRAGMENT_MOVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.
amount	Number of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to be moved in the LOB
src_offset	Beginning offset into the LOB in bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to put the data
dest_offset	Beginning offset into the LOB in bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to remove the data

Exceptions

Table 88–49 FRAGMENT_MOVE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	A parameter value was invalid
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform operation during a query
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	A non-SECUREFILE LOB was used in a SECUREFILE LOB only call
SECUREFILE_OUTOFBOUNDS	Attempted to perform a FRAGMENT_* operation past LOB end

Usage Notes

- All offsets are pre-move offsets.
- Offsets of more than 1 past the end of the LOB are not permitted.
- FRAGMENT_MOVE gets the LOB, if necessary, before performing operations on the LOB.

FRAGMENT_REPLACE Procedures

This procedure replaces the data at the specified offset with the specified data (not to exceed 32k).

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_REPLACE (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   old_amount  IN            INTEGER,
   new_amount  IN            INTEGER,
   offset      IN            INTEGER,
   buffer      IN            RAW);

DBMS_LOB.FRAGMENT_REPLACE (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,   old_amount  IN
INTEGER,
   new_amount  IN           INTEGER,
   offset      IN           INTEGER,
   buffer      IN           VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET);
```

Parameters

Table 88–50 FRAGMENT_REPLACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.
old_amount	Number of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to be replaced in the LOB
new_amount	Number of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to written to the LOB
offset	Beginning offset into the LOB in bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) to put the data
buffer	Data to insert into the LOB

Exceptions

Table 88–51 FRAGMENT_REPLACE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	A parameter value was invalid
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform operation during a query
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	A non-SECUREFILE LOB was used in a SECUREFILE LOB only call
SECUREFILE_OUTOFBOUNDS	Attempted to perform a FRAGMENT_* operation past LOB end

Usage Notes

- Invoking this procedure is equivalent to deleting the old amount of bytes/characters at offset and then inserting the new amount of bytes/characters at offset.

- FRAGMENT_REPLACE gets the LOB, if necessary, before performing operations on the LOB.

FREETEMPORARY Procedures

This procedure frees the temporary BLOB or CLOB in the default temporary tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY (
   lob_loc  IN OUT  NOCOPY BLOB);

DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY (
   lob_loc  IN OUT  NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–52 FREETEMPORARY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator.For more information, see Operational Notes.

Usage Notes

- When a new temporary LOB is created, and there is currently no temporary LOB in use with the same duration (session, call), a new temporary LOB segment is created. When the temporary LOB is freed, the space it consumed is released to the temporary segment. If there are no other temporary LOBs for the same duration, the temporary segment is also freed.
- After the call to FREETEMPORARY, the LOB locator that was freed is marked as invalid.
- If an invalid LOB locator is assigned to another LOB locator using OCILobLocatorAssign in OCI or through an assignment operation in PL/SQL, then the target of the assignment is also freed and marked as invalid.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

GET_DBFS_LINK Functions

This function returns the DBFS path name for the specified SecureFile LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GET_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc             IN     BLOB,
  storage_path        OUT VARCHAR2(DBFS_LINK_PATH_MAX_SIZE),
  lob_length          OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_LOB.GET_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc             IN     CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  storage_path        OUT VARCHAR2(DBFS_LINK_PATH_MAX_SIZE),
  lob_length          OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–53 GET_DBFS_LINK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB to be retrieved from DBFS
storage_path	Path where the LOB is stored in DBFS
lob_length	LOB length at the time of write to DBFS

Return Values

The Archive ID

Exceptions

Table 88–54 GET_DBFS_LINK Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE
ORA-01555	The LOB has already been retrieved and has been modified since retrieval or the LOB has been migrated in and out (modified or not) since the locator was retrieved

GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE Procedures

This procedure retrieves the current link state of the specified SecureFile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE (
  lob_loc       IN BLOB,
  storage_path  OUT VARCHAR2(DBFS_LINK_PATH_MAX_SIZE),
  state         OUT NUMBER,
  cached        OUT BOOLEAN);

DBMS_LOB.GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE (
  lob_loc       IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  storage_path  OUT VARCHAR2(DBFS_LINK_PATH_MAX_SIZE),
  state         OUT NUMBER,
  cached        OUT BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 88–55 GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB to be retrieved from the archive
storage_path	Path where the LOB is stored in the DBFS HSM store
state	One of DBFS_LINK_NEVER, DBFS_LINK_NO or DBFS_LINK_YES
cached	If the LOB is archived and the data was specified to be cashed on put

Exceptions

Table 88–56 GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE

Usage Notes

- If the LOB has never been archived, state is set to DBMS_LOB.DBFS_LINK_NEVER. If the LOB has been archived, state is set to DBMS_LOB.DBFS_LINK_YES. If the LOB has been previously retrieved from the archive, state is set to DBFS_LINK_NO.
- If the LOB was archived, but the data was left in the RDBMS, cached is set to TRUE. If the data was removed after the link was created, cached is set to FALSE, and NULL if state is DBMS_LOB.DBFS_LINK_NEVER.

GETCONTENTTYPE Functions

This procedure returns the content type string previously set by means of the SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GETCONTENTTYPE (
   lob_loc  IN BLOB)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_LOB.GETCONTENTTYPE (
   lob_loc  IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(getcontenttype, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–57 GETCONTENTTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB whose content type is to be retrieved

Return Values

The returned content type.

If the SecureFiles LOB does not have a contenttype associated with it, GETCONTENTTYPE() returns NULL.

Exceptions

Table 88–58 GETCONTENTTYPE Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE

GET_STORAGE_LIMIT Function

This function returns the LOB storage limit for the specified LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GET_STORAGE_LIMIT (
   lob_loc  IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.GET_STORAGE_LIMIT (
   lob_loc  IN BLOB)
 RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(get_storage_limit, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–59 GET_STORAGE_LIMIT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.

Return Value

The value returned from this function is the maximum allowable size for specified LOB locator. For BLOBs, the return value depends on the block size of the tablespace the LOB resides in and is calculated as (2^{32})-1 (4294967295) times the block size of the tablespace. For CLOBs/NCLOBs, the value returned is the(2^{32})-1 (4294967295) times the block size of the tablespace divided by the character width of the CLOB/NCLOB.

Usage

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for details on LOB storage limits

GETCHUNKSIZE Functions

When creating the table, you can specify the chunking factor, a multiple of tablespace blocks in bytes. This corresponds to the chunk size used by the LOB data layer when accessing or modifying the LOB value. Part of the chunk is used to store system-related information, and the rest stores the LOB value.

This function returns the amount of space used in the LOB chunk to store the LOB value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE (
   lob_loc IN BLOB)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE (
   lob_loc IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(getchunksize, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–60 GETCHUNKSIZE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`lob_loc`	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.

Return Values

The return value is a usable chunk size in bytes.

Usage Notes

- With regard to basic LOB files, performance is improved if you enter read/write requests using a multiple of this chunk size. For writes, there is an added benefit, because LOB chunks are versioned, and if all writes are done on a chunk basis, then no extra or excess versioning is done or duplicated. You could batch up the `WRITE` until you have enough for a chunk, instead of issuing several `WRITE` calls for the same chunk.

  These tactics of performance improvement do not apply to SecureFiles.

- Note that chunk size is independent of LOB type (`BLOB`, `CLOB`, `NCLOB`, Unicode or other character set).

  See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

Exceptions

Table 88–61 GETCHUNKSIZE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

GETLENGTH Functions

This function gets the length of the specified LOB. The length in bytes or characters is returned.

The length returned for a BFILE includes the EOF, if it exists. Any 0-byte or space filler in the LOB caused by previous ERASE or WRITE operations is also included in the length count. The length of an empty internal LOB is 0.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH (
   lob_loc    IN  BLOB)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH (
   lob_loc    IN  CLOB   CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH (
   file_loc    IN  BFILE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(GETLENGTH, WNDS, WNPS, RNDS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–62 GETLENGTH Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
file_loc	The file locator for the LOB whose length is to be returned.

Return Values

The length of the LOB in bytes or characters as an INTEGER. NULL is returned if the input LOB is NULL or if the input lob_loc is NULL. An error is returned in the following cases for BFILEs:

- lob_loc does not have the necessary directory and operating system privileges
- lob_loc cannot be read because of an operating system read error

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

Exceptions

Table 88–63 GETLENGHTH Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

GETOPTIONS Functions

This function obtains compression, deduplication, and encryption settings corresponding to the `option_type` field for a particular LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.GETOPTIONS (
   lob_loc             IN     BLOB,
   option_types        IN     PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.GETOPTIONS (
  lob_loc             IN     CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  option_types        IN     PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 88–64 GETOPTIONS Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
`lob_loc`	Locator for the LOB to be examined. For more information, see Operational Notes.
`option_type`	See DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Types on page 88-5

Return Values

The return values are a combination of `COMPRESS_ON`, `ENCRYPT_ON` and `DEDUPLICATE_ON` (see DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Values on page 88-5) depending on which option types (see DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Types on page 88-5) are passed in.

Exceptions

Table 88–65 GETOPTIONS Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`INVALID_ARGVAL`	A parameter value was invalid
`QUERY_WRITE`	Cannot perform operation during a query
`BUFFERING_ENABLED`	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled
`SECUREFILE_BADLOB`	A non-`SECUREFILE` LOB was used in a `SECUREFILE` LOB only call

Usage Notes

You cannot turn compression or deduplication on or off for a SecureFile column that does not have those features on. The GetOptions Functions and SETOPTIONS Procedures work on individual SecureFiles. You can turn off a feature on a particular SecureFile and turn on a feature that has already been turned off by SetOptions, but you cannot turn on an option that has not been given to the SecureFile when the table was created.

INSTR Functions

This function returns the matching position of the *nth* occurrence of the pattern in the LOB, starting from the offset you specify.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.INSTR (
   lob_loc    IN   BLOB,
   pattern    IN   RAW,
   offset     IN   INTEGER := 1,
   nth        IN   INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.INSTR (
   lob_loc    IN   CLOB      CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   pattern    IN   VARCHAR2  CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET,
   offset     IN   INTEGER := 1,
   nth        IN   INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.INSTR (
   file_loc   IN   BFILE,
   pattern    IN   RAW,
   offset     IN   INTEGER := 1,
   nth        IN   INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(INSTR, WNDS, WNPS, RNDS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–66 INSTR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	Locator for the LOB to be examined. For more information, see Operational Notes.
file_loc	The file locator for the LOB to be examined.
pattern	Pattern to be tested for. The pattern is a group of RAW bytes for BLOBs, and a character string (VARCHAR2) for CLOBs.The maximum size of the pattern is 16383 bytes.
offset	Absolute offset in bytes (BLOBs) or characters (CLOBs) at which the pattern matching is to start. (origin: 1)
nth	Occurrence number, starting at 1.

Return Values

Table 88–67 INSTR Function Return Values

Return	Description
INTEGER	Offset of the start of the matched pattern, in bytes or characters. It returns 0 if the pattern is not found.

Table 88–67 (Cont.) INSTR Function Return Values

Return	Description
NULL	Either: -any one or more of the IN parameters was NULL or INVALID. -offset < 1 or offset > LOBMAXSIZE. -nth < 1. -nth > LOBMAXSIZE.

Usage Notes

The form of the VARCHAR2 buffer (the pattern parameter) must match the form of the CLOB parameter. In other words, if the input LOB parameter is of type NCLOB, then the buffer must contain NCHAR data. Conversely, if the input LOB parameter is of type CLOB, then the buffer must contain CHAR data.

For BFILEs, the file must be already opened using a successful FILEOPEN operation for this operation to succeed.

Operations that accept RAW or VARCHAR2 parameters for pattern matching, such as INSTR, do not support regular expressions or special matching characters (as in the case of SQL LIKE) in the pattern parameter or substrings.

Exceptions

Table 88–68 INSTR Function Exceptions for BFILES

Exception	Description
UNOPENED_FILE	File was not opened using the input locator.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.
INVALID_OPERATION	File does not exist, or you do not have access privileges on the file.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

See Also:

- "SUBSTR Functions" on page 88-79
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

ISOPEN Functions

This function checks to see if the LOB was already opened using the input locator. This subprogram is for internal and external LOBs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.ISOPEN (
   lob_loc IN BLOB)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.ISOPEN (
   lob_loc IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.ISOPEN (
   file_loc IN BFILE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(isopen, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–69 ISOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.
file_loc	File locator.

Return Values

The return value is 1 if the LOB is open, 0 otherwise.

Usage Notes

For BFILES, openness is associated with the locator. If the input locator was never passed to OPEN, the BFILE is not considered to be opened by this locator. However, a different locator may have opened the BFILE. More than one OPEN can be performed on the same BFILE using different locators.

For internal LOBs, openness is associated with the LOB, not with the locator. If locator1 opened the LOB, then locator2 also sees the LOB as open. For internal LOBs, ISOPEN requires a round-trip, because it checks the state on the server to see if the LOB is indeed open.

For external LOBs (BFILEs), ISOPEN also requires a round-trip, because that's where the state is kept.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

ISSECUREFILE Function

This function returns TRUE if the LOB locator passed to it is for a SecureFile LOB. It returns FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB ISSECUREFILE(
    lob_loc    IN      BLOB)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(issecurefile, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–70 ISSECUREFILE Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.

Return Values

This function returns TRUE if the LOB locator passed to it is for a SecureFile LOB. It returns FALSE otherwise.

ISTEMPORARY Functions

This function determines whether a LOB instance is temporary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY (
   lob_loc IN BLOB)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY (
   lob_loc IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(istemporary, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–71 ISTEMPORARY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.

Return Values

The return value is 1 if the LOB is temporary and exists; 0 if the LOB is not temporary or does not exist; NULL if the given locator is NULL.

Usage Notes

When you free a Temporary LOB with FREETEMPORARY, the LOB locator is not set to NULL. Consequently, ISTEMPORARY will return 0 for a locator that has been freed but not explicitly reset to NULL.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

LOADBLOBFROMFILE Procedure

This procedure loads data from BFILE to internal BLOB. This achieves the same outcome as LOADFROMFILE, and returns the new offsets.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE (
   dest_lob    IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   src_bfile   IN            BFILE,
   amount      IN            INTEGER,
   dest_offset IN OUT        INTEGER,
   src_offset  IN OUT        INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–72 LOADBLOBFROMFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	BLOB locator of the target for the load.
src_bfile	BFILE locator of the source for the load.
amount	Number of bytes to load from the BFILE. You can also use DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE to load until the end of the BFILE.
dest_offset	(IN) Offset in bytes in the destination BLOB (origin: 1) for the start of the write. (OUT) New offset in bytes in the destination BLOB right after the end of this write, which is also where the next write should begin.
src_offset	(IN) Offset in bytes in the source BFILE (origin: 1) for the start of the read. (OUT) Offset in bytes in the source BFILE right after the end of this read, which is also where the next read should begin.

Usage Notes

- You can specify the offsets for both the source and destination LOBs, and the number of bytes to copy from the source BFILE. The amount and src_offset, because they refer to the BFILE, are in terms of bytes, and the dest_offset is in bytes for BLOBs.
- If the offset you specify in the destination LOB is beyond the end of the data currently in this LOB, then zero-byte fillers or spaces are inserted in the destination BLOB. If the offset is less than the current length of the destination LOB, then existing data is overwritten.
- There is an error if the input amount plus offset exceeds the length of the data in the BFILE (unless the amount specified is LOBMAXSIZE which you can specify to continue loading until the end of the BFILE is reached).
- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the OPEN/CLOSE operations. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

- If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the OPEN/CLOSE, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the OPEN or CLOSE statement.
- LOADFROMFILE gets the destination LOB prior to the load unless the load covers the entire LOB.

Constants and Defaults

There is no easy way to omit parameters. You must either declare a variable for IN/OUT parameter or provide a default value for the IN parameter. Here is a summary of the constants and the defaults that can be used.

Table 88–73 Suggested Values of the Parameter

Parameter	Default Value	Description
amount	DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE (IN)	Load the entire file
dest_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
src_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning

Constants defined in DBMSLOB.SQL

```
lobmaxsize                      CONSTANT INTEGER        := DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE;
```

Exceptions

Table 88–74 LOADBLOBFROMFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Any of the input parameters are NULL or INVALID.
INVALID_ARGVAL	Either: - src_offset or dest_offset < 1. - src_offset or dest_offset > LOBMAXSIZE. - amount < 1. - amount > LOBMAXSIZE.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the BLOB

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

LOADCLOBFROMFILE Procedure

This procedure loads data from a BFILE to an internal CLOB/NCLOB with necessary character set conversion and returns the new offsets.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE (
   dest_lob       IN OUT NOCOPY   NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   src_bfile      IN              BFILE,
   amount         IN              INTEGER,
   dest_offset    IN OUT          INTEGER,
   src_offset     IN OUT          INTEGER,
   bfile_csid     IN              NUMBER,
   lang_context   IN OUT          INTEGER,
   warning        OUT             INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–75 LOADCLOBFROMFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	CLOB/NCLOB locator of the target for the load.
src_bfile	BFILE locator of the source for the load.
amount	Number of bytes to load from the BFILE. Use DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE of load until the end of the BFILE.
dest_offset	(IN) Offset in characters in the destination CLOB (origin: 1) for the start of the write. (OUT) The new offset in characters right after the end of this load, which is also where the next load should start. It always points to the beginning of the first complete character after the end of load. If the last character is not complete, offset goes back to the beginning of the partial character.
src_offset	(IN) Offset in bytes in the source BFILE (origin: 1) for the start of the read. (OUT) Offset in bytes in the source BFILE right after the end of this read, which is also where the next read should begin.
bfile_csid	Character set id of the source (BFILE) file.
lang_context	(IN) Language context, such as shift status, for the current load. (OUT) The language context at the time when the current load stopped, and what the next load should be using if continuing loading from the same source. This information is returned to the user so that they can use it for the continuous load without losing or misinterpreting any source data. For the very first load or if do not care, simply use the default 0. The details of this language context is hidden from the user. One does not need to know what it is or what's in it in order to make the call

Table 88–75 (Cont.) LOADCLOBFROMFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning	(OUT) Warning message. This indicates something abnormal happened during the loading. It may or may not be caused by the user's mistake. The loading is completed as required, and it's up to the user to check the warning message. Currently, the only possible warning is the inconvertible character. This happens when the character in the source cannot be properly converted to a character in destination, and the default replacement character (for example, '?') is used in place. The message is defined the constant value DBMS_LOB.WARN_INCONVERTIBLE_CHAR.

Usage Notes

You can specify the offsets for both the source and destination LOBs, and the number of bytes to copy from the source BFILE. The amount and src_offset, because they refer to the BFILE, are in terms of bytes, and the dest_offset is in characters for CLOBs.

If the offset you specify in the destination LOB is beyond the end of the data currently in this LOB, then zero-byte fillers or spaces are inserted in the destination CLOB. If the offset is less than the current length of the destination LOB, then existing data is overwritten.

There is an error if the input amount plus offset exceeds the length of the data in the BFILE (unless the amount specified is LOBMAXSIZE which you can specify to continue loading until the end of the BFILE is reached).

Note the following requirements:

- The destination character set is always the same as the database character set in the case of CLOB and national character set in the case of NCLOB.
- csid=0 indicates the default behavior that uses database csid for CLOB and national csid for NCLOB in the place of source csid. Conversion is still necessary if it is of varying width
- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the OPEN/CLOSE operations. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

  If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the OPEN/CLOSE, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the OPEN or CLOSE statement.

The source BFILE can contain data in the Unicode character set. The Unicode standard defines many encoding schemes that provide mappings from Unicode characters to sequences of bytes. Table 88–76, " Supported Unicode Encoding Schemes" lists Unicode encodings schemes supported by this subprogram.

Table 88–76 Supported Unicode Encoding Schemes

Encoding Scheme	Oracle Name	bfile_csid Value
UTF-8	AL32UTF8	873
UTF-16BE	AL16UTF16	2000

Table 88–76 (Cont.) Supported Unicode Encoding Schemes

Encoding Scheme	Oracle Name	bfile_csid Value
UTF-16LE	AL16UTF16LE	2002
CESU-8	UTF8	871
UTF-EBCDIC	UTFE	872
UTF-16	UTF16	1000

All three UTF-16 encoding schemes encode Unicode characters as 2-byte unsigned integers. Integers can be stored in big-endian or in little-endian byte order. The UTF-16BE encoding scheme defines big-endian data. The UTF-16LE scheme defines little-endian data. The UTF-16 scheme requires that the source BFILE contains the Byte Order Mark (BOM) character in the first two bytes to define the byte order. The BOM code is 0xFEFF. If the code is stored as {0xFE,0xFF}, the data is interpreted as big-endian. If it is stored as {0xFF,0xFE}, the data is interpreted as little-endian.

In UTF-8 and in CESU-8 encodings the Byte Order Mark is stored as {0xEF,0xBB, 0xBF}. With any of the Unicode encodings, the corresponding BOM sequence at the beginning of the file is recognized and not loaded into the destination LOB.

Constants

Here is a summary of the constants and the suggested values that can be used.

Table 88–77 Suggested Values of the Parameter

Parameter	Suggested Value	Description
amount	DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE (IN)	Load the entire file
dest_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
src_offset	1 (IN)	start from the beginning
csid	0 (IN)	default csid, use destination csid
lang_context	0 (IN)	default language context
warning	0 (OUT)	no warning message, everything is ok

Constants defined in DBMSLOB.SQL

```
lobmaxsize                  CONSTANT INTEGER       := 18446744073709551615;
warn_inconvertible_char     CONSTANT INTEGER       := 1;
default_csid                CONSTANT INTEGER       := 0;
default_lang_ctx            CONSTANT INTEGER       := 0;
no_warning                  CONSTANT INTEGER       := 0;
```

Exceptions

Table 88–78 LOADCLOBFROMFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Any of the input parameters are NULL or INVALID.

Table 88–78 (Cont.) LOADCLOBFROMFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	Either: - src_offset or dest_offset < 1. - src_offset or dest_offset > LOBMAXSIZE. - amount < 1. - amount > LOBMAXSIZE.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the CLOB

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

LOADFROMFILE Procedure

This procedure copies all, or a part of, a source external LOB (BFILE) to a destination internal LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE (
   dest_lob    IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   src_file    IN            BFILE,
   amount      IN            INTEGER,
   dest_offset IN            INTEGER  := 1,
   src_offset  IN            INTEGER  := 1);
```

Parameters

Table 88–79 LOADFROMFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_lob	LOB locator of the target for the load.
src_file	BFILE locator of the source for the load.
amount	Number of bytes to load from the BFILE.
dest_offset	Offset in bytes or characters in the destination LOB (origin: 1) for the start of the load.
src_offset	Offset in bytes in the source BFILE (origin: 1) for the start of the load.

Usage Notes

You can specify the offsets for both the source and destination LOBs, and the number of bytes to copy from the source BFILE. The amount and src_offset, because they refer to the BFILE, are in terms of bytes, and the dest_offset is either in bytes or characters for BLOBs and CLOBs respectively.

> **Note:** The input BFILE must have been opened prior to using this procedure. No character set conversions are performed implicitly when binary BFILE data is loaded into a CLOB. The BFILE data must already be in the same character set as the CLOB in the database. No error checking is performed to verify this.

If the offset you specify in the destination LOB is beyond the end of the data currently in this LOB, then zero-byte fillers or spaces are inserted in the destination BLOB or CLOB respectively. If the offset is less than the current length of the destination LOB, then existing data is overwritten.

There is an error if the input amount plus offset exceeds the length of the data in the BFILE.

Note: If the character set is varying width, UTF-8 for example, the LOB value is stored in the fixed-width UCS2 format. Therefore, if you are using `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE`, the data in the BFILE should be in the UCS2 character set instead of the UTF-8 character set. However, you should use `sql*loader` instead of `LOADFROMFILE` to load data into a CLOB or NCLOB because `sql*loader` provides the necessary character set conversions.

It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the `OPEN` or `CLOSE` statement.

Exceptions

Table 88–80 LOADFROMFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`VALUE_ERROR`	Any of the input parameters are `NULL` or `INVALID`.
`INVALID_ARGVAL`	Either:
	- `src_offset` or `dest_offset` < 1.
	- `src_offset` or `dest_offset` > `LOBMAXSIZE`.
	- `amount` < 1.
	- `amount` > `LOBMAXSIZE`.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK Procedures

This procedure archives the specified LOB data (from the database) into the DBFS HSM Store.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc       IN OUT BLOB,
  storage_path  IN     VARCHAR2(dbfs_link_path_max_size),
  flags         IN     BINARY INTEGER DEFAULT DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE);

DBMS_LOB.MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc       IN OUT CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  storage_path  IN     VARCHAR2(dbfs_link_path_max_size),
  flags         IN     BINARY INTEGER DEFAULT DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE);
```

Parameters

Table 88–81 MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB to be archived
storage_path	Path where the LOB will be stored
flags	Either DBFS_LINK_CACHE or DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE. If DBFS_LINK_CACHE is specified, the LOB data continues to be stored in the RDBMS as well as being written to the DBFS store. DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE specifies that the LOB data should be deleted from the RDBMS once written to the DBFS.

Exceptions

Table 88–82 MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE

Usage Notes

- If the LOB is already archived, the procedure silently returns as if the put was successful. In that case, if DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE is specified, or flags is defaulted, the LOB data is removed from the RDBMS.
- Calling this procedure multiple times on the same LOB with the same flags has no effect.
- Calling the procedure on a LOB that is already archived causes the LOB to be cached (DBFS_LINK_CACHE) or removed (DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE) according to the flag setting.

OPEN Procedures

This procedure opens a LOB, internal or external, in the indicated mode. Valid modes include read-only, and read/write.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.OPEN (
   lob_loc   IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   open_mode IN            BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_LOB.OPEN (
   lob_loc   IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   open_mode IN            BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_LOB.OPEN (
   file_loc  IN OUT NOCOPY BFILE,
   open_mode IN            BINARY_INTEGER := file_readonly);
```

Parameters

Table 88–83 OPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB locator. For more information, see Operational Notes.
open_mode	Mode in which to open. For BLOB and CLOB types, the mode can be either: LOB_READONLY or LOB_READWRITE. For BFILE types, the mode must be FILE_READONLY.

Usage Notes

Note: If the LOB was opened in read-only mode, and if you try to write to the LOB, then an error is returned. BFILE can only be opened with read-only mode.

OPEN requires a round-trip to the server for both internal and external LOBs. For internal LOBs, OPEN triggers other code that relies on the OPEN call. For external LOBs (BFILEs), OPEN requires a round-trip because the actual operating system file on the server side is being opened.

It is not mandatory that you wrap all LOB operations inside the Open/Close interfaces. However, if you open a LOB, you must close it before you commit the transaction; an error is produced if you do not. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

It is an error to commit the transaction before closing all opened LOBs that were opened by the transaction. When the error is returned, the openness of the open LOBs is discarded, but the transaction is successfully committed. Hence, all the changes made to the LOB and non-LOB data in the transaction are committed, but the domain and function-based indexes are not updated. If this happens, you should rebuild the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

READ Procedures

This procedure reads a piece of a LOB, and returns the specified amount into the `buffer` parameter, starting from an absolute offset from the beginning of the LOB.

The number of bytes or characters actually read is returned in the `amount` parameter. If the input `offset` points past the End of LOB, then `amount` is set to 0, and a `NO_DATA_FOUND` exception is raised.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.READ (
   lob_loc   IN             BLOB,
   amount    IN OUT  NOCOPY INTEGER,
   offset    IN             INTEGER,
   buffer    OUT            RAW);

DBMS_LOB.READ (
   lob_loc   IN             CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount    IN OUT  NOCOPY INTEGER,
   offset    IN             INTEGER,
   buffer    OUT            VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET);

DBMS_LOB.READ (
   file_loc   IN             BFILE,
   amount    IN OUT   NOCOPY INTEGER,
   offset    IN              INTEGER,
   buffer    OUT             RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 88–84 READ Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`lob_loc`	Locator for the LOB to be read. For more information, see Operational Notes.
`file_loc`	The file locator for the LOB to be examined.
`amount`	Number of bytes (for `BLOB`s) or characters (for `CLOB`s) to read, or number that were read.
`offset`	Offset in bytes (for `BLOB`s) or characters (for `CLOB`s) from the start of the LOB (origin: 1).
`buffer`	Output buffer for the read operation.

Exceptions

Table 88–85 lists exceptions that apply to any LOB instance. Table 88–86 lists exceptions that apply only to `BFILE`s.

Table 88–85 READ Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`VALUE_ERROR`	Any of `lob_loc`, `amount`, or `offset` parameters are `NULL`.

Table 88–85 (Cont.) READ Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
INVALID_ARGVAL	Either: - amount < 1 - amount > 32767 bytes (or the character equivalent) - offset < 1 - offset > LOBMAXSIZE - amount is greater, in bytes or characters, than the capacity of buffer.
NO_DATA_FOUND	End of the LOB is reached, and there are no more bytes or characters to read from the LOB: amount has a value of 0.

Table 88–86 READ Procedure Exceptions for BFILEs

Exception	Description
UNOPENED_FILE	File is not opened using the input locator.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.
INVALID_OPERATION	File does not exist, or you do not have access privileges on the file.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

Usage Notes

- The form of the VARCHAR2 buffer must match the form of the CLOB parameter. In other words, if the input LOB parameter is of type NCLOB, then the buffer must contain NCHAR data. Conversely, if the input LOB parameter is of type CLOB, then the buffer must contain CHAR data.
- When calling DBMS_LOB.READ from the client (for example, in a BEGIN/END block from within SQL*Plus), the returned buffer contains data in the client's character set. The database converts the LOB value from the server's character set to the client's character set before it returns the buffer to the user.
- READ gets the LOB, if necessary, before the read.
- If the LOB is a DBFS LINK, data is streamed from DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

SET_DBFS_LINK Procedures

This function links the specified SecureFile to the specified path name. It does not copy the data to the path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.SET_DBFS_LINK (
  lob_loc        IN OUT BLOB,
  archive_id     IN     RAW(1024));

DBMS_LOB.SET_DBFS_LINK(
  lob_loc_dst    IN OUT CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  archive_id     IN     RAW(1024));
```

Parameters

Table 88–87 SET_DBFS_LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB for which to store the reference value
archive_id	Archive ID as returned by calling either of the GET_DBFS_LINK Functions Functions

Exceptions

Table 88–88 SET_DBFS_LINK Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE

SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure

This procedure sets the content type string for the data in the LOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.SETCONTENTTYPE (
   lob_loc      IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   contenttype  IN            VARCHAR2);

DBMS_LOB.SETCONTENTTYPE (
   lob_loc     IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   contenttype IN            VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 88–89 SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	LOB to be assigned the content type
contenttype	String to be assigned

Exceptions

Table 88–90 SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	lob_loc is not a SECUREFILE

Usage Notes

To clear an existing content type associated with a SECUREFILE, invoke SETCONTENTTYPE with contenttype set to empty string.

SETOPTIONS Procedures

This procedure enables/disables compression and deduplication on a per-LOB basis, overriding the default LOB column settings.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS (
   lob_loc             IN     BLOB,
   option_types        IN     PLS_INTEGER,
   options             IN     PLS_INTEGER);

DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS (
  lob_loc              IN     CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  option_types         IN     PLS_INTEGER,
  options              IN     PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–91 SETOPTIONS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	Locator for the LOB to be examined. For more information, see Operational Notes.
option_type	See DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Types on page 88-5
options	See DBMS_LOB Constants - Option Values on page 88-5

Exceptions

Table 88–92 SETOPTIONS Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_BADLOB	Unsupported object type for the operation
INVALID_ARGVAL	A parameter value was invalid
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform operation during a query
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled

Usage Notes

- DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS cannot be used to enable or disable encryption on individual LOBs.
- You cannot turn the compression or deduplication features on or off for a SecureFile column if they were not turned when the table was created.

  The GETOPTIONS Functions and SETOPTIONS Procedures work on individual SecureFiles. You can turn off compression or deduplication on a particular SecureFiles LOB and turn on them on, *if* they have already been turned off by SETOPTIONS.
- This call incurs a round-trip to the server to make the changes persistent.

SUBSTR Functions

This function returns amount bytes or characters of a LOB, starting from an absolute offset from the beginning of the LOB.

For fixed-width n-byte CLOBs, if the input amount for SUBSTR is greater than (32767/n), then SUBSTR returns a character buffer of length (32767/n), or the length of the CLOB, whichever is lesser. For CLOBs in a varying-width character set, n is the maximum byte-width used for characters in the CLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR (
   lob_loc     IN    BLOB,
   amount      IN    INTEGER := 32767,
   offset      IN    INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN RAW;

DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR (
   lob_loc     IN    CLOB   CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount      IN    INTEGER := 32767,
   offset      IN    INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET;

DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR (
   file_loc     IN    BFILE,
   amount      IN    INTEGER := 32767,
   offset      IN    INTEGER := 1)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(SUBSTR, WNDS, WNPS, RNDS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 88–93 SUBSTR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	Locator for the LOB to be read. For more information, see Operational Notes.
file_loc	The file locator for the LOB to be examined.
amount	Number of bytes (for BLOBs) or characters (for CLOBs) to be read.
offset	Offset in bytes (for BLOBs) or characters (for CLOBs) from the start of the LOB (origin: 1).

Return Values

Table 88–94 SUBSTR Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Function overloading that has a BLOB or BFILE in parameter.
VARCHAR2	CLOB version.

Table 88–94 (Cont.) SUBSTR Function Return Values

Return	Description
NULL	Either: - any input parameter is NULL - amount < 1 - amount > 32767 - offset < 1 - offset > LOBMAXSIZE

Exceptions

Table 88–95 SUBSTR Function Exceptions for BFILE operations

Exception	Description
UNOPENED_FILE	File is not opened using the input locator.
NOEXIST_DIRECTORY	Directory does not exist.
NOPRIV_DIRECTORY	You do not have privileges for the directory.
INVALID_DIRECTORY	Directory has been invalidated after the file was opened.
INVALID_OPERATION	File does not exist, or you do not have access privileges on the file.
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

Usage Notes

- The form of the VARCHAR2 buffer must match the form of the CLOB parameter. In other words, if the input LOB parameter is of type NCLOB, then the buffer must contain NCHAR data. Conversely, if the input LOB parameter is of type CLOB, then the buffer must contain CHAR data.
- When calling DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR from the client (for example, in a BEGIN/END block from within SQL*Plus), the returned buffer contains data in the client's character set. The database converts the LOB value from the server's character set to the client's character set before it returns the buffer to the user.
- DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR will return 8191 or more characters based on the characters stored in the LOBs. If all characters are not returned as a consequence of the character byte size exceeding the available buffer, the user should either call DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR with a new offset to read the remaining characters, or call the subprogram on loop until all the data is extracted.
- SUBSTR gets the LOB, if necessary, before read.
- If the LOB is a DBFS Link, the data is streamed from DBFS, if possible, otherwise, an exception is thrown.

See Also:

- "INSTR Functions" on page 88-58
- "READ Procedures" on page 88-74
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

TRIM Procedures

This procedure trims the value of the internal LOB to the length you specify in the newlen parameter. Specify the length in bytes for BLOBs, and specify the length in characters for CLOBs.

> **Note:** The TRIM procedure decreases the length of the LOB to the value specified in the newlen parameter.

If you attempt to TRIM an empty LOB, then nothing occurs, and TRIM returns no error. If the new length that you specify in newlen is greater than the size of the LOB, then an exception is raised.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.TRIM (
   lob_loc         IN OUT  NOCOPY BLOB,
   newlen          IN              INTEGER);

DBMS_LOB.TRIM (
   lob_loc         IN OUT  NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   newlen          IN              INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 88–96 TRIM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lob_loc	Locator for the internal LOB whose length is to be trimmed. For more information, see Operational Notes.
newlen	New, trimmed length of the LOB value in bytes for BLOBs or characters for CLOBs.

Exceptions

Table 88–97 TRIM Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
VALUE_ERROR	lob_loc is NULL.
INVALID_ARGVAL	Either: - new_len < 0 - new_len > LOBMAXSIZE
QUERY_WRITE	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
BUFFERING_ENABLED	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

Usage Notes

- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call.

However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the `LOB` column.

- If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the `OPEN` or `CLOSE` statement.
- `TRIM` gets the LOB, if necessary, before altering the length of the LOB, unless the new length specified is '0'

See Also:

- "ERASE Procedures" on page 88-36
- "WRITEAPPEND Procedures" on page 88-85
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

WRITE Procedures

This procedure writes a specified amount of data into an internal LOB, starting from an absolute offset from the beginning of the LOB. The data is written from the `buffer` parameter.

`WRITE` replaces (overwrites) any data that already exists in the LOB at the offset, for the length you specify.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.WRITE (
   lob_loc  IN OUT NOCOPY  BLOB,
   amount   IN             INTEGER,
   offset   IN             INTEGER,
   buffer   IN             RAW);

DBMS_LOB.WRITE (
   lob_loc  IN OUT  NOCOPY CLOB   CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount   IN             INTEGER,
   offset   IN             INTEGER,
   buffer   IN             VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET);
```

Parameters

Table 88–98 WRITE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`lob_loc`	Locator for the internal LOB to be written to. For more information, see Operational Notes
`amount`	Number of bytes (for `BLOBs`) or characters (for `CLOBs`) to write
`offset`	Offset in bytes (for `BLOBs`) or characters (for `CLOBs`) from the start of the LOB (origin: 1) for the write operation.
`buffer`	Input buffer for the write

Exceptions

Table 88–99 WRITE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`VALUE_ERROR`	Any of `lob_loc`, `amount`, or `offset` parameters are `NULL`, out of range, or `INVALID`.
`INVALID_ARGVAL`	Either: - `amount` < 1 - `amount` > `32767 bytes (or the character equivalent)` - `offset` < 1 - `offset` > `LOBMAXSIZE`
`QUERY_WRITE`	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
`BUFFERING_ENABLED`	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

Table 88–99 (Cont.) WRITE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
SECUREFILE_OUTOFBOUNDS	Attempted to perform a write operation past the end of a LOB having FRAGMENT_* on it

Usage Notes

- There is an error if the input amount is more than the data in the buffer. If the input amount is less than the data in the buffer, then only amount bytes or characters from the buffer is written to the LOB. If the offset you specify is beyond the end of the data currently in the LOB, then zero-byte fillers or spaces are inserted in the BLOB or CLOB respectively.
- The form of the VARCHAR2 buffer must match the form of the CLOB parameter. In other words, if the input LOB parameter is of type NCLOB, then the buffer must contain NCHAR data. Conversely, if the input LOB parameter is of type CLOB, then the buffer must contain CHAR data.
- When calling DBMS_LOB.WRITE from the client (for example, in a BEGIN/END block from within SQL*Plus), the buffer must contain data in the client's character set. The database converts the client-side buffer to the server's character set before it writes the buffer data to the LOB.
- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.
- If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the OPEN or CLOSE statement.
- WRITE gets the LOB, if necessary, before writing the LOB, unless the write is specified to overwrite the entire LOB.

See Also:

- "APPEND Procedures" on page 88-19
- "COPY Procedures" on page 88-30
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

WRITEAPPEND Procedures

This procedure writes a specified amount of data to the end of an internal LOB. The data is written from the `buffer` parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND (
   lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   amount  IN            INTEGER,
   buffer  IN            RAW);

DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND (
   lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   amount  IN            INTEGER,
   buffer  IN            VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET lob_loc%CHARSET);
```

Parameters

Table 88–100 WRITEAPPEND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`lob_loc`	Locator for the internal LOB to be written to. For more information, see Operational Notes
`amount`	Number of bytes (for `BLOB`s) or characters (for `CLOB`s) to write
`buffer`	Input buffer for the write

Usage Notes

There is an error if the input amount is more than the data in the buffer. If the input amount is less than the data in the buffer, then only amount bytes or characters from the buffer are written to the end of the LOB.

Exceptions

Table 88–101 WRITEAPPEND Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`VALUE_ERROR`	Any of `lob_loc`, `amount`, or `offset` parameters are `NULL`, out of range, or `INVALID`.
`INVALID_ARGVAL`	Either: - `amount` < 1 - `amount` > `32767 bytes (or the character equivalent)`
`QUERY_WRITE`	Cannot perform a LOB write inside a query or PDML parallel execution server
`BUFFERING_ENABLED`	Cannot perform operation with LOB buffering enabled if buffering is enabled on the LOB

Usage Notes

- The form of the `VARCHAR2` buffer must match the form of the `CLOB` parameter. In other words, if the input LOB parameter is of type `NCLOB`, then the buffer must

contain NCHAR data. Conversely, if the input LOB parameter is of type CLOB, then the buffer must contain CHAR data.

- When calling DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND from the client (for example, in a BEGIN/END block from within SQL*Plus), the buffer must contain data in the client's character set. The database converts the client-side buffer to the server's character set before it writes the buffer data to the LOB.
- It is not mandatory that you wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close interfaces. If you did not open the LOB before performing the operation, the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column are updated during the call. However, if you opened the LOB before performing the operation, you must close it before you commit the transaction. When an internal LOB is closed, it updates the functional and domain indexes on the LOB column.
- If you do not wrap the LOB operation inside the Open/Close API, the functional and domain indexes are updated each time you write to the LOB. This can adversely affect performance. Therefore, it is recommended that you enclose write operations to the LOB within the OPEN or CLOSE statement.
- WRITEAPPEND gets the LOB, if necessary, before appending to the LOB.

See Also:

- "APPEND Procedures" on page 88-19
- "COPY Procedures" on page 88-30
- "WRITE Procedures" on page 88-83
- *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* for additional details on usage of this procedure

89

DBMS_LOCK

The DBMS_LOCK package provides an interface to Oracle Lock Management services. You can request a lock of a specific mode, give it a unique name recognizable in another procedure in the same or another instance, change the lock mode, and release it.

> **See Also:** For more information, and an example of how to use the DBMS_LOCK package, see "About User Locks" in *Oracle Database Development Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LOCK

Overview

Some uses of user locks:

- Providing exclusive access to a device, such as a terminal
- Providing application-level enforcement of read locks
- Detecting when a lock is released and cleanup after the application
- Synchronizing applications and enforcing sequential processing

Security Model

There might be operating system-specific limits on the maximum number of total locks available. This *must* be considered when using locks or making this package available to other users. Consider granting the `EXECUTE` privilege only to specific users or roles.

A better alternative would be to create a cover package limiting the number of locks used and grant `EXECUTE` privilege to specific users. An example of a cover package is documented in the `DBMS_LOCK.SQL` package specification file. The abbreviations for these locks as they appear in Enterprise Manager monitors are in parentheses.

Constants

The DBMS_LOCK package uses the constants shown in Table 89–1.

Table 89–1 DBMS_LOCK Constants

Name	Alternate Name(s)	Type	Value	OEM Abbreviation	Description
NL_MODE	NuL1	INTEGER	1	-	-
SS_MODE	Sub Shared	INTEGER	2	ULRS	This can be used on an aggregate object to indicate that share locks are being acquired on subparts of the object.
SX_MODE	■ Sub eXclusive ■ Row Exclusive Mode	INTEGER	3	ULRX	This can be used on an aggregate object to indicate that exclusive locks are being acquired on sub-parts of the object.
S_MODE	■ Shared ■ Row Exclusive Mode ■ Intended Exclusive	INTEGER	4	ULRSX	-
SSX_MODE	■ Shared Sub eXclusive ■ Share Row Exclusive Mode	INTEGER	5	-	This indicates that the entire aggregate object has a share lock, but some of the sub-parts may additionally have exclusive locks.
X_MODE	Exclusive	INTEGER	6	ULX	-

These are the various lock modes (nl -> "NuLl", ss -> "Sub Shared", sx -> "Sub eXclusive", s -> "Shared", ssx -> "Shared Sub eXclusive", x -> "eXclusive").

Rules and Limits

When another process holds "held", an attempt to get "get" does the following:

Table 89–2 Lock Compatibility

HELD MODE	GET NL	GET SS	GET SX	GET S	GET SSX	GET X
NL	Success	Success	Success	Success	Success	Success
SS	Success	Success	Success	Success	Success	Fail
SX	Success	Success	Success	Fail	Fail	Fail
S	Success	Success	Fail	Success	Fail	Fail
SSX	Success	Success	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail
X	Success	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail	Fail

```
maxwait  constant integer := 32767;
```

The constant `maxwait` waits forever.

Operational Notes

User locks never conflict with Oracle locks because they are identified with the prefix "UL". You can view these locks using the Enterprise Manager lock monitor screen or the appropriate fixed views. User locks are automatically released when a session terminates.The lock identifier is a number in the range of 0 to 1073741823.

Because a reserved user lock is the same as an Oracle lock, it has all the functionality of an Oracle lock, such as deadlock detection. Be certain that any user locks used in distributed transactions are released upon `COMMIT`, or an undetected deadlock may occur.

`DBMS_LOCK` is most efficient with a limit of a few hundred locks for each session. Oracle strongly recommends that you develop a standard convention for using these locks in order to avoid conflicts among procedures trying to use the same locks. For example, include your company name as part of your lock names.

Summary of DBMS_LOCK Subprograms

Table 89–3 DBMS_LOCK Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALLOCATE_UNIQUE Procedure on page 89-9	Allocates a unique lock ID to a named lock
CONVERT Function on page 89-11	Converts a lock from one mode to another
RELEASE Function on page 89-12	Releases a lock
REQUEST Function on page 89-13	Requests a lock of a specific mode.
SLEEP Procedure on page 89-14	Puts a session to sleep for a specific time

ALLOCATE_UNIQUE Procedure

This procedure allocates a unique lock identifier (in the range of 1073741824 to 1999999999) a specified lock name. Lock identifiers are used to enable applications to coordinate their use of locks. This is provided because it may be easier for applications to coordinate their use of locks based on lock names rather than lock numbers.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOCK.ALLOCATE_UNIQUE (
   lockname         IN  VARCHAR2,
   lockhandle       OUT VARCHAR2,
   expiration_secs  IN  INTEGER   DEFAULT 864000);
```

Parameters

Table 89–4 ALLOCATE_UNIQUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lockname	Name of the lock for which you want to generate a unique ID. Do not use lock names beginning with ORA$; these are reserved for products supplied by Oracle.
lockhandle	Returns the handle to the lock ID generated by ALLOCATE_UNIQUE. You can use this handle in subsequent calls to REQUEST, CONVERT, and RELEASE. A handle is returned instead of the actual lock ID to reduce the chance that a programming error accidentally creates an incorrect, but valid, lock ID. This provides better isolation between different applications that are using this package. LOCKHANDLE can be up to VARCHAR2 (128). All sessions using a lock handle returned by ALLOCATE_UNIQUE with the same lock name are referring to the same lock. Therefore, do not pass lock handles from one session to another.
expiration_specs	Number of seconds to wait after the last ALLOCATE_UNIQUE has been performed on a specified lock, before permitting that lock to be deleted from the DBMS_LOCK_ALLOCATED table. The default waiting period is 10 days. You should not delete locks from this table. Subsequent calls to ALLOCATE_UNIQUE may delete expired locks to recover space.

Usage Notes

If you choose to identify locks by name, you can use ALLOCATE_UNIQUE to generate a unique lock identification number for these named locks.

The first session to call ALLOCATE_UNIQUE with a new lock name causes a unique lock ID to be generated and stored in the dbms_lock_allocated table. Subsequent calls (usually by other sessions) return the lock ID previously generated.

A lock name is associated with the returned lock ID for at least expiration_secs (defaults to 10 days) past the last call to ALLOCATE_UNIQUE with the specified lock name. After this time, the row in the dbms_lock_allocated table for this lock name may be deleted in order to recover space. ALLOCATE_UNIQUE performs a commit.

Note: Named user locks may be less efficient, because Oracle uses SQL to determine the lock associated with a specified name.

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`, `ORU-10003`: Unable to find or insert lock <`lockname`> into catalog `dbms_lock_allocated`.

CONVERT Function

This function converts a lock from one mode to another. CONVERT is an overloaded function that accepts either a user-defined lock identifier, or the lock handle returned by the ALLOCATE_UNIQUE procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOCK.CONVERT(
   id         IN INTEGER ||
   lockhandle IN VARCHAR2,
   lockmode   IN INTEGER,
   timeout    IN NUMBER DEFAULT MAXWAIT)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 89–5 CONVERT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
id or lockhandle	User assigned lock identifier, from 0 to 1073741823, or the lock handle, returned by ALLOCATE_UNIQUE, of the lock mode you want to change
lockmode	New mode that you want to assign to the specified lock. For the available modes and their associated integer identifiers, see Constants on page 89-5.
timeout	Number of seconds to continue trying to change the lock mode. If the lock cannot be converted within this time period, then the call returns a value of 1 (timeout).

Return Values

Table 89–6 CONVERT Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
0	Success
1	Timeout
2	Deadlock
3	Parameter error
4	Don't own lock specified by id or lockhandle
5	Illegal lock handle

RELEASE Function

This function explicitly releases a lock previously acquired using the REQUEST function. Locks are automatically released at the end of a session. RELEASE is an overloaded function that accepts either a user-defined lock identifier, or the lock handle returned by the ALLOCATE_UNIQUE procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOCK.RELEASE (
   id         IN INTEGER)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_LOCK.RELEASE (
   lockhandle IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 89–7 RELEASE Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
id or lockhandle	User assigned lock identifier, from 0 to 1073741823, or the lock handle, returned by ALLOCATE_UNIQUE, of the lock mode you want to change

Return Values

Table 89–8 RELEASE Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
0	Success
3	Parameter error
4	Do not own lock specified by id or lockhandle
5	Illegal lock handle

REQUEST Function

This function requests a lock with a specified mode. REQUEST is an overloaded function that accepts either a user-defined lock identifier, or the lock handle returned by the ALLOCATE_UNIQUE procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOCK.REQUEST(
   id                 IN  INTEGER ||
   lockhandle         IN  VARCHAR2,
   lockmode           IN  INTEGER DEFAULT X_MODE,
   timeout            IN  INTEGER DEFAULT MAXWAIT,
   release_on_commit  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

The current default values, such as X_MODE and MAXWAIT, are defined in the DBMS_LOCK package specification.

Parameters

Table 89–9 REQUEST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
id or lockhandle	User assigned lock identifier, from 0 to 1073741823, or the lock handle, returned by ALLOCATE_UNIQUE, of the lock mode you want to change
lockmode	Mode that you are requesting for the lock. For the available modes and their associated integer identifiers, see Constants on page 89-5.
timeout	Number of seconds to continue trying to grant the lock. If the lock cannot be granted within this time period, then the call returns a value of 1 (timeout).
release_on_commit	Set this parameter to TRUE to release the lock on commit or roll-back. Otherwise, the lock is held until it is explicitly released or until the end of the session.

Return Values

Table 89–10 REQUEST Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
0	Success
1	Timeout
2	Deadlock
3	Parameter error
4	Already own lock specified by id or lockhandle
5	Illegal lock handle

SLEEP Procedure

This procedure suspends the session for a specified period of time.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP (
   seconds  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 89–11 SLEEP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
seconds	Amount of time, in seconds, to suspend the session. The smallest increment can be entered in hundredths of a second; for example, 1.95 is a legal time value.

90

DBMS_LOGMNR

The DBMS_LOGMNR package, one of a set of LogMiner packages, contains the subprograms you use to initialize the LogMiner tool and to begin and end a LogMiner session.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for information regarding LogMiner.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LOGMNR

This section contains the following topics, which relate to using the `DBMS_LOGMNR` package:

Overview

Oracle LogMiner, which is part of Oracle Database, enables you to query online and archived redo log files through a SQL interface. The `DBMS_LOGMNR` package provides the majority of the tools needed to start and stop LogMiner and specify the redo log files of interest.

All changes made to user data or to the database dictionary are recorded in the Oracle redo log files so that database recovery operations can be performed. You can take advantage of the data recorded in the redo log files to accomplish other tasks, such as:

- Pinpointing when a logical corruption to a database, such as errors made at the application level, may have begun
- Determining what actions you would have to take to perform fine-grained recovery at the transaction level.
- Performance tuning and capacity planning through trend analysis.
- Track any data manipulation language (DML) and data definition language (DDL) statements executed on the database, the order in which they were executed, and who executed them.

> **See Also:** Chapter 91, "DBMS_LOGMNR_D" for information on the package subprograms that extract a LogMiner dictionary and re-create LogMiner tables in alternate tablespaces

Security Model

You must have the EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE role to use the DBMS_LOGMNR package.

Constants

The DBMS_LOGMNR package defines several enumerated constants for specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name, for example, DBMS_LOGMNR.NEW.

Table 90–1 describes the constants for the ADD_LOGFILE options flag in the DBMS_LOGMNR package.

Table 90–1 Constants for ADD_LOGFILE Options Flag

Constant	Description
NEW	Implicitly calls the DBMS_LOGMNR.END_LOGMNR procedure to end the current LogMiner session and then creates a new session. The new session starts a new list of redo log files to be analyzed, beginning with the redo log file you specify.
ADDFILE	Adds the specified redo log file to the list of redo log files to be analyzed. Any attempt to add a duplicate file raises an exception (ORA-01289). This is the default if no options flag is specified.

Table 90–2 describes the constants for the START_LOGMNR options flag in the DBMS_LOGMNR package.

Table 90–2 Constants for START_LOGMNR Options Flag

Constant	Description
COMMITTED_DATA_ONLY	If set, DML statements corresponding to committed transactions are returned. DML statements corresponding to a committed transaction are grouped together. Transactions are returned in their commit order. Transactions that are rolled back or in-progress are filtered out, as are internal redo records (those related to index operations, management, and so on). If this option is not set, all rows for all transactions (committed, rolled back, and in-progress) are returned in the order in which they are found in the redo logs (in order of SCN values).
SKIP_CORRUPTION	Directs a select operation on the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view to skip any corruptions in the redo log file being analyzed and continue processing. This option works only when a block in the redo log file (and not the header of the redo log file) is corrupt. You should check the INFO column in the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view to determine the corrupt blocks skipped by LogMiner. When a corruption in the redo log file is skipped, the OPERATION column contains the value CORRUPTED_BLOCKS, and the STATUS column contains the value 1343.
DDL_DICT_TRACKING	If the LogMiner dictionary in use is a flat file or in the redo log files, LogMiner updates its internal dictionary if a DDL event occurs. This ensures that correct SQL_REDO and SQL_UNDO information is maintained for objects that are modified after the LogMiner internal dictionary is built. The database to which LogMiner is connected must be open. This option cannot be used in conjunction with the DICT_FROM_ONLINE_CATALOG option and cannot be used when the LogMiner dictionary being used is one that was extracted to a flat file prior to Oracle9*i*.

Table 90–2 (Cont.) Constants for START_LOGMNR Options Flag

Constant	Description
DICT_FROM_ONLINE_CATALOG	Directs LogMiner to use the current online database dictionary rather than a LogMiner dictionary contained in a flat file or in the redo log files being analyzed. This option cannot be used in conjunction with the DDL_DICT_TRACKING option. The database to which LogMiner is connected must be the same one that generated the redo log files. Expect to see a value of 2 in the STATUS column of the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view if the table definition in the database does not match the table definition in the redo log file.
DICT_FROM_REDO_LOGS	If set, LogMiner expects to find a LogMiner dictionary in the redo log files that were specified. The redo log files are specified with the DBMS_LOGMNR.ADD_LOGFILE procedure or with the DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR procedure with the CONTINUOUS_MINE option.
NO_SQL_DELIMITER	If set, the SQL delimiter (a semicolon) is not placed at the end of reconstructed SQL statements. This is helpful for applications that open a cursor and then execute the reconstructed statements.
NO_ROWID_IN_STMT	If set, the ROWID clause is not included in the reconstructed SQL statements. The redo log file may already contain logically unique identifiers for modified rows if supplemental logging is enabled. When using this option, you must be sure that supplemental logging was enabled in the source database at the appropriate level and that no duplicate rows exist in the tables of interest. LogMiner does not make any guarantee regarding the uniqueness of logical row identifiers.
PRINT_PRETTY_SQL	If set, LogMiner formats the reconstructed SQL statements for ease of reading. These reconstructed SQL statements are not executable.
CONTINUOUS_MINE	Directs LogMiner to automatically add redo log files, as needed, to find the data of interest. You only need to specify the first log to start mining, or just the starting SCN or date to indicate to LogMiner where to begin mining logs. You are not required to specify any redo log files explicitly. LogMiner automatically adds and mines the (archived and online) redo log files for the data of interest. This option requires that LogMiner is connected to the same database instance that is generating the redo log files. It also requires that the database be mounted and that archiving be enabled. Beginning with Oracle Database release 10.1, the CONTINUOUS_MINE options is supported for use in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment.
STRING_LITERALS_IN_STMT	If set, SQL_REDO and SQL_UNDO use literals for numbers and datetime and interval column types.

To specify more than one option, use a plus sign (+) between them. For example:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR(OPTIONS => -
   DBMS_LOGMNR.DDL_DICT_TRACKING + DBMS_LOGMNR.DICT_FROM_REDO_LOGS);
```

Views

The DBMS_LOGMNR package uses the views listed in the section on accessing LogMiner operational information in views in *Oracle Database Utilities*.

Operational Notes

A **LogMiner session** begins with a call to `DBMS_LOGMNR.ADD_LOGFILE` or `DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR` (the former if you plan to specify log files explicitly; the latter if you plan to use continuous mining). The session ends with a call to `DBMS_LOGMNR.END_LOGMNR`. Within a LogMiner session, you can specify the redo log files to be analyzed and the SCN or time range of interest; then you can issue SQL `SELECT` statements against the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view to retrieve the data of interest.

Summary of DBMS_LOGMNR Subprograms

In a multitenant container database (CDB) some subprograms must be called from the root. There may be other differences as well. See the individual subprogram descriptions for details.

Table 90–3 DBMS_LOGMNR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_LOGFILE Procedure on page 90-10	Adds a redo log file to the existing or newly created list of redo log files for LogMiner to process, so that if a new list is created, this marks the beginning of a LogMiner session
COLUMN_PRESENT Function on page 90-12	Call this function for any row returned from the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view to determine if undo or redo column values exist for the column specified by the `column_name` input parameter to this function
END_LOGMNR Procedure on page 90-14	Finishes a LogMiner session
MINE_VALUE Function on page 90-15	Call this function for any row returned from the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view to retrieve the undo or redo column value of the column specified by the `column_name` input parameter to this function
REMOVE_LOGFILE Procedure on page 90-17	Removes a redo log file from the list of redo log files for LogMiner to process
START_LOGMNR Procedure on page 90-18	Initializes the LogMiner utility and starts LogMiner (unless the session was already started with a call to `DBMS_LOGMNR.ADD_LOGFILE`)

ADD_LOGFILE Procedure

This procedure adds a file to an existing or newly created list of log files for LogMiner to process.

In a CDB, the ADD_LOGFILE procedure must be called from the root database. You must have the LOGMINING administrative privilege to use this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR.ADD_LOGFILE (
   LogFileName     IN VARCHAR2,
   options         IN BINARY_INTEGER default ADDFILE );
```

Parameters

Table 90–4 ADD_LOGFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
LogFileName	Specifies the name of the redo log file to add to the list of redo log files to be analyzed during this session.
options	Does one of the following: ■ Starts a new LogMiner session and a new list of redo log files for analysis (DBMS_LOGMNR.NEW) ■ Adds a file to an existing list of redo log files for analysis (DBMS_LOGMNR.ADDFILE) See Table 90–1, " Constants for ADD_LOGFILE Options Flag".

Exceptions

Table 90–5 ADD_LOGFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01284	Specified file cannot be opened.
ORA-01287	Specified file is from a different database incarnation.
ORA-01289	Specified file has already been added to the list. Duplicate redo log files cannot be added.
ORA-01290	Specified file is not in the current list and therefore cannot be removed from the list.
ORA-01324	Specified file cannot be added to the list because there is a DB_ID mismatch.

Usage Notes

- Before querying the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view, you must make a successful call to the DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR procedure (within the current LogMiner session).
- Unless you specify the CONTINUOUS_MINE option, the LogMiner session must be set up with a list of redo log files to be analyzed. Use the ADD_LOGFILE procedure to specify the list of redo log files to analyze.
- If you are not using the CONTINUOUS_MINE option and you want to analyze more than one redo log file, you must call the ADD_LOGFILE procedure separately for

each redo log file. The redo log files do not need to be registered in any particular order.

- Both archived and online redo log files can be mined.
- After you have added the first redo log file to the list, each additional redo log file that you add to the list must be associated with the same database and database RESETLOGS SCN as the first redo log file. (The database RESETLOGS SCN uniquely identifies each execution of an ALTER DATABASE OPEN RESETLOGS statement. When the online redo logs are reset, Oracle creates a new and unique incarnation of the database.)
- To analyze the redo log files from a different database (or a database incarnation with a different database RESETLOGS SCN) than that with which the current list of redo log files is associated, use the END_LOGMNR procedure to end the current LogMiner session, and then build a new list using the ADD_LOGFILE procedure.
- LogMiner matches redo log files by the log sequence number. Thus, two redo log files with different names but with the same log sequence number will return the ORA-01289 exception. For instance, the online counterpart of an archived redo log file has a different name from the archived redo log file, but attempting to register it with LogMiner after registering the archived counterpart will result in the ORA-01289 exception being returned.

COLUMN_PRESENT Function

This function is designed to be used in conjunction with the MINE_VALUE function.

If the MINE_VALUE function returns a NULL value, it can mean either:

- The specified column is not present in the redo or undo portion of the data.
- The specified column is present and has a NULL value.

To distinguish between these two cases, use the COLUMN_PRESENT function, which returns a 1 if the column is present in the redo or undo portion of the data. Otherwise, it returns a 0.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR.COLUMN_PRESENT (
     sql_redo_undo      IN  RAW,
     column_name        IN  VARCHAR2 default '') RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 90–6 COLUMN_PRESENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_redo_undo	Specifies either the REDO_VALUE or the UNDO_VALUE column in the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view from which to extract data values. See the Usage Notes for more information.
column_name	Specifies the fully qualified name (schema.table.column) of the column for which this function will return information. In a CDB, the column name is specified as follows: container_name:schema.table.column

Return Values

Table 90–7 describes the return values for the COLUMN_PRESENT function. The COLUMN_PRESENT function returns 1 if the self-describing record (the first parameter) contains the column specified in the second parameter. This can be used to determine the meaning of NULL values returned by the DBMS_LOGMNR.MINE_VALUE function.

Table 90–7 Return Values for COLUMN_PRESENT Function

Return	Description
0	Specified column is not present in this row of V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS.
1	Column is present in this row of V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS.

Exceptions

Table 90–8 COLUMN_PRESENT Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01323	Currently, a LogMiner dictionary is not associated with the LogMiner session. You must specify a LogMiner dictionary for the LogMiner session.

Table 90–8 (Cont.) COLUMN_PRESENT Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-00904	Value specified for the column_name parameter is not a fully qualified column name.

Usage Notes

- To use the COLUMN_PRESENT function, you must have successfully started LogMiner.
- The COLUMN_PRESENT function must be invoked in the context of a select operation on the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view.
- The COLUMN_PRESENT function does not support LONG, LOB, ADT, or COLLECTION datatypes.
- The value for the sql_redo_undo parameter depends on the operation performed and the data of interest:
  - If an update operation was performed and you want to know what the value was prior to the update operation, specify UNDO_VALUE.
  - If an update operation was performed and you want to know what the value is after the update operation, specify REDO_VALUE.
  - If an insert operation was performed, typically you would specify REDO_VALUE (because the value of a column prior to an insert operation will always be NULL).
  - If a delete operation was performed, typically you would specify UNDO_VALUE (because the value of a column after a delete operation will always be NULL).

END_LOGMNR Procedure

This procedure finishes a LogMiner session. Because this procedure performs cleanup operations that may not otherwise be done, you must use it to properly end a LogMiner session. This procedure is called automatically when you log out of a database session or when you call `DBMS_LOGMNR.ADD_LOGFILE` and specify the `NEW` option.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR.END_LOGMNR;
```

Exceptions

Table 90–9 END_LOGMNR Procedure Exception

Exception	Description
`ORA-01307`	No LogMiner session is currently active. The `END_LOGMNR` procedure was called without adding any log files or before the `START_LOGMNR` procedure was called

MINE_VALUE Function

This function facilitates queries based on a column's data value. This function takes two arguments. The first one specifies whether to mine the redo (REDO_VALUE) or undo (UNDO_VALUE) portion of the data. The second argument is a string that specifies the fully qualified name of the column to be mined. The MINE_VALUE function always returns a string that can be converted back to the original datatype.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR.MINE_VALUE (
     sql_redo_undo      IN  RAW,
     column_name        IN  VARCHAR2 default '') RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 90–10 MINE_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_redo_undo	Specifies either the REDO_VALUE or the UNDO_VALUE column in the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view from which to extract data values. See the Usage Notes for more information.
column_name	Specifies the fully qualified name (schema.table.column) of the column for which this function will return information. In a CDB, the column name is specified as follows: container_name:schema.table.column

Return Values

Table 90–11 Return Values for MINE_VALUE Function

Return	Description
NULL	The column is not contained within the self-describing record, or the column value is NULL. To distinguish between the two different null possibilities, use the DBMS_LOGMNR.COLUMN_PRESENT function.
NON-NULL	The column is contained within the self-describing record; the value is returned in string format.

Exceptions

Table 90–12 MINE_VALUE Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01323	Invalid state. Currently, a LogMiner dictionary is not associated with the LogMiner session. You must specify a LogMiner dictionary for the LogMiner session.
ORA-00904	Invalid identifier. The value specified for the column_name parameter was not a fully qualified column name.

Usage Notes

- To use the MINE_VALUE function, you must have successfully started LogMiner.

- The MINE_VALUE function must be invoked in the context of a select operation from the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view.
- The MINE_VALUE function does not support LONG, LOB, ADT, or COLLECTION datatypes.
- The value for the sql_redo_undo parameter depends on the operation performed and the data of interest:
  - If an update operation was performed and you want to know what the value was prior to the update operation, specify UNDO_VALUE.
  - If an update operation was performed and you want to know what the value is after the update operation, specify REDO_VALUE.
  - If an insert operation was performed, typically you would specify REDO_VALUE (because the value of a column prior to an insert operation will always be null).
  - If a delete operation was performed, typically you would specify UNDO_VALUE (because the value of a column after a delete operation will always be null).
- If the DBMS_LOGMNR.MINE_VALUE function is used to get an NCHAR value that includes characters not found in the database character set, then those characters are returned as the replacement character (for example, an inverted question mark) of the database character set.

REMOVE_LOGFILE Procedure

This procedure removes a redo log file from an existing list of redo log files for LogMiner to process.

In a CDB, the REMOVE_LOGFILE procedure must be called from the root database. You must have the LOGMINING administrative privilege to use this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR.REMOVE_LOGFILE (
   LogFileName     IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 90–13 REMOVE_LOGFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
LogFileName	Specifies the name of the redo log file to be removed from the list of redo log files to be analyzed during this session.

Exceptions

Table 90–14 REMOVE_LOGFILE Procedure Exception

Exception	Description
ORA-01290	Cannot remove unlisted log file

Usage Notes

- Before querying the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view, you must make a successful call to the DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR procedure (within the current LogMiner session).
- You can use this procedure to remove a redo log file from the list of redo log files for LogMiner to process if you know that redo log file does not contain any data of interest.
- Multiple redo log files can be removed by calling this procedure repeatedly.
- The redo log files do not need to be removed in any particular order.
- To start a new list of redo log files for analysis, use the END_LOGMNR procedure to end the current LogMiner session, and then build a new list using the ADD_LOGFILE procedure.
- Even if you remove all redo log files from the list, any subsequent calls you make to the ADD_LOGFILE procedure must match the database ID and RESETLOGS SCN of the removed redo log files. Therefore, to analyze the redo log files from a different database (or a database incarnation with a different database RESETLOGS SCN) than that with which the current list of redo log files is associated, use the END_LOGMNR procedure to end the current LogMiner session, and then build a new list using the ADD_LOGFILE procedure.

START_LOGMNR Procedure

This procedure starts LogMiner by loading the dictionary that LogMiner will use to translate internal schema object identifiers to names.

In a CDB, the START_LOGMNR procedure must be called from the root database. You must have the LOGMINING administrative privilege to use this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR (
   startScn           IN NUMBER default 0,
   endScn             IN NUMBER default 0,
   startTime          IN DATE default '01-jan-1988',
   endTime            IN DATE default '31-dec-2110',
   DictFileName       IN VARCHAR2 default '',
   Options            IN BINARY_INTEGER default 0 );
```

Parameters

Table 90–15 START_LOGMNR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
startScn	Directs LogMiner to return only redo records with an SCN greater than or equal to the startScn specified. This fails if there is no redo log file containing the specified startScn value. (You can query the FILENAME, LOW_SCN, and NEXT_SCN columns in the V$LOGMNR_LOGS view for each redo log file to determine the range of SCN values contained in each redo log file.)
endScn	Directs LogMiner to return only redo records with an SCN less than or equal to the endScn specified. If you specify an endScn value that is beyond the value in any redo log file, then LogMiner uses the greatest endScn value in the redo log file that contains the most recent changes. (You can query the FILENAME, LOW_SCN, and NEXT_SCN columns in the V$LOGMNR_LOGS view for each redo log file to determine the range of SCN values contained in each redo log file.)
startTime	Directs LogMiner to return only redo records with a timestamp greater than or equal to the startTime specified. This fails if there is no redo log file containing the specified startTime value. (You can query the FILENAME, LOW_TIME, and HIGH_TIME columns in the V$LOGMNR_LOGS view for each redo log file to determine the range of time covered in each redo log file.) This parameter is ignored if startScn is specified. See the Usage Notes for additional information.
endTime	Directs LogMiner to return only redo records with a timestamp less than or equal to the endTime specified. If you specify an endTime value that is beyond the value in any redo log file, then LogMiner will use the greatest endTime in the redo log file that contains the most recent changes. You can query the FILENAME, LOW_TIME, and HIGH_TIME columns in the V$LOGMNR_LOGS view for each redo log file to determine the range of time covered in each redo log file.) This parameter is ignored if endScn is specified. See the Usage Notes for additional information.

Table 90–15 (Cont.) START_LOGMNR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
DictFileName	Specifies the flat file that contains the LogMiner dictionary. It is used to reconstruct SQL_REDO and SQL_UNDO columns in V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS, as well as to fully translate SEG_NAME, SEG_OWNER, SEG_TYPE_NAME, TABLE_NAME, and TABLE_SPACE columns. The fully qualified path name for the LogMiner dictionary file must be specified. (This file must have been created previously through the DBMS_LOGMNR_D.BUILD procedure.) You need to specify this parameter only if neither DICT_FROM_REDO_LOGS nor DICT_FROM_ONLINE_CATALOG is specified.
options	See Table 90–2, " Constants for START_LOGMNR Options Flag".

Exceptions

Table 90–16 START_LOGMNR Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01280	Internal error encountered.
ORA-01281	startScn or endScn parameter value is not a valid SCN, or endScn is less than startScn.
ORA-01282	value for the startTime parameter was greater than the value specified for the endTime parameter, or there was no redo log file that was compatible with the date range specified with the startTime and endTime parameters.
ORA-01283	Options parameter specified is invalid.
ORA-01284	LogMiner dictionary file specified in the DictFileName parameter has a full path length greater than 256 characters, or the file cannot be opened.
ORA-01285	Error reading specified file.
ORA-01291	Redo log files that are needed to satisfy the user's requested SCN or time range are missing.
ORA-01292	No log file has been specified for the current LogMiner session.
ORA-01293	Mounted database required for specified LogMiner options.
ORA-01294	Error occurred while processing information in the specified dictionary file, possible corruption.
ORA-01295	Specified LogMiner dictionary does not correspond to the database that produced the log files being analyzed.
ORA-01296	Character set mismatch between specified LogMiner dictionary and log files.
ORA-01297	Redo version mismatch between LogMiner dictionary and log files.
ORA-01299	Specified LogMiner dictionary corresponds to a different database incarnation.
ORA-01300	Writable database required for specified LogMiner options.

Usage Notes

- LogMiner can use a dictionary that you previously extracted to the redo log files or to a flat file, or you can specify that LogMiner use the online catalog if LogMiner is mining data from the source system. See *Oracle Database Utilities* and

Chapter 91, "DBMS_LOGMNR_D" in this manual for more information about the LogMiner dictionary.

- After executing the START_LOGMNR procedure, you can query the following views:
  - V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS - contains history of information in redo log files
  - V$LOGMNR_DICTIONARY - contains current information about the LogMiner dictionary file extracted to a flat file
  - V$LOGMNR_PARAMETERS - contains information about the LogMiner session

  (You can query the V$LOGMNR_LOGS view after a redo log file list has been added to the list of files that LogMiner is to mine.)
- Parameters and options are not persistent across calls to DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR. You must specify all desired parameters and options (including SCN and time ranges) each time you call DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR
- Be aware that specifying redo log files using a timestamp is not precise.
- The CONTINUOUS_MINE option directs LogMiner to automatically add redo log files, as needed, to find the data of interest. You need to specify only the first log to start mining, or just the starting SCN or date to indicate to LogMiner where to begin mining logs. Keep the following in mind when using the CONTINUOUS_MINE option:
  - The database control file will hold information about a limited number of archived redo log files, although the number of entries can be quite large. Query the V$ARCHIVED_LOGS view to determine which redo log file entries will be found by LogMiner.

    Even if an entry is listed in the database control file (and the V$ARCHIVED_LOGS view), the archived redo log file may not be accessible by LogMiner for various reasons. For example, the archived redo log file may have been deleted or moved from its location (maybe because of a backup operation to tape), or the directory where it resides may not be not available.
  - If you specify the CONTINUOUS_MINE option and an ending time or SCN that will occur in the future (or you do not specify an end time or SCN), a query of the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view will not finish until the database has generated redo log files beyond the specified time or SCN. In this scenario, LogMiner will automatically add archived redo log files to the LogMiner redo log file list as they are generated. In addition, in this scenario only, LogMiner may automatically remove redo log files from the list to keep it at 50 processed redo files. This is to save PGA memory as LogMiner automatically adds redo log files to the list. If LogMiner did not perform automated removal, memory could eventually be exhausted.
  - LogMiner can mine online redo logs. However, if the CONTINUOUS_MINE option is not specified, it is possible that the database is writing to the online redo log file at the same time that LogMiner is reading the online redo log file. If a log switch occurs while LogMiner is reading an online redo log file, the database will overwrite what LogMiner is attempting to read. The data that LogMiner returns if the file it is trying to read gets overwritten by the database is unpredictable.
- Keep the following in mind regarding starting and ending times or SCN ranges:
  - If you specify neither a startTime nor a startScn parameter, LogMiner will set the startScn parameter to use the lowest SCN value from the redo log file that contains the oldest changes.

- If you specify both time and SCN values, LogMiner uses the SCN value or values and ignores the time values.
- If you specify starting and ending time or SCN values and they are found in the LogMiner redo log file list, then LogMiner mines the logs indicated by those values.
- If you specify starting and ending times or SCN values that are not in the LogMiner redo log file list, and you specify `DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR` without the `CONTINUOUS_MINE` option, and you specify:
  * `0` for the `startTime` or `startScn` value, then the lowest SCN in the LogMiner redo log file list will be used as the `startScn`
  * A nonzero number for the `startTime` or `startScn` value, then an error is returned
  * `0` or a nonzero number for the `endTime` or `endScn` value, then the highest SCN in the LogMiner redo log file list will be used as the `endScn`
- If you specify starting and ending times or SCN values and they are not found in the LogMiner redo log file list, and you specify `DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR` with the `CONTINUOUS_MINE` option, and you specify:
  * `0` for the `startTime` or `startScn` value, then an error is returned.
  * A `startTime` or `startScn` value that is greater than any value in the database's archived redo log files, then LogMiner starts mining in the online redo log file. LogMiner will continue to process the online redo log file until it finds a change at, or beyond, the requested starting point before it returns rows from the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view.
  * An `endTime` or `endScn` parameter value that indicates a time or SCN in the future, then LogMiner includes the online redo log files when it mines. When you query the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view, rows will be returned from this view as changes are made to the database, and will not stop until LogMiner sees a change beyond the requested ending point.
  * `0` for the `endTime` or `endScn` parameter value, then LogMiner includes the online redo log files when it mines. When you query the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view, rows will be returned from this view as changes are made to the database, and will not stop until you enter CTL+C or you terminate the PL/SQL cursor.

91

DBMS_LOGMNR_D

The DBMS_LOGMNR_D package, one of a set of LogMiner packages, contains two subprograms:

- The BUILD procedure extracts the LogMiner data dictionary to either the redo log files or to a flat file. This information is saved in preparation for future analysis of redo log files using the LogMiner tool.
- The SET_TABLESPACE procedure re-creates all LogMiner tables in an alternate tablespace.

  The **LogMiner data dictionary** consists of the memory data structures and the database tables that are used to store and retrieve information about objects and their versions. It is referred to as the **LogMiner dictionary** throughout the LogMiner documentation.

  See Also: *Oracle Database Utilities* for information regarding LogMiner.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LOGMNR_D

This section contains the following topics, which relate to using the `DBMS_LOGMNR_D` package:

Overview

LogMiner requires a dictionary to translate object IDs into object names when it returns redo data to you. LogMiner gives you three options for supplying the dictionary:

- Using the online catalog
- Extracting a LogMiner dictionary to the redo log files
- Extracting a LogMiner dictionary to a flat file

Use the `BUILD` procedure to extract the LogMiner dictionary to the redo log files or a flat file. If you want to specify the online catalog as the dictionary source, you do so when you start LogMiner with the `DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR` package.

Use the `SET_TABLESPACE` procedure if you want LogMiner tables to use a tablespace other than the default `SYSAUX` tablespace.

> **See Also:** DBMS_LOGMNR for information on the package subprograms used in running a LogMiner session.

Security Model

You must have the EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE role to use the DBMS_LOGMNR_D package.

Summary of DBMS_LOGMNR_D Subprograms

In a multitenant container database (CDB), some subprograms must be called from the root. There may be other differences as well. See the individual subprogram descriptions for details.

Table 91–1 DBMS_LOGMNR_D Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BUILD Procedure on page 91-6	Extracts the LogMiner dictionary to either a flat file or one or more redo log files
SET_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 91-9	Re-creates all LogMiner tables in an alternate tablespace

BUILD Procedure

This procedure extracts the LogMiner data dictionary to either the redo log files or to a flat file.

In a CDB, the `BUILD` procedure must be called from the root database. The LogMiner data dictionary for the entire CDB is extracted to either the redo log files or to a flat file.

You cannot add or remove pluggable databases (PDBs) from a CDB while this procedure is executing.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR_D.BUILD (
     dictionary_filename  IN  VARCHAR2,
     dictionary_location  IN  VARCHAR2,
     options              IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 91–2 BUILD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`dictionary_filename`	Specifies the name of the LogMiner dictionary file.
`dictionary_location`	Specifies the path to the LogMiner dictionary file directory.
`options`	Specifies that the LogMiner dictionary is written to either a flat file (`STORE_IN_FLAT_FILE`) or the redo log files (`STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS`).

Exceptions

Table 91–3 BUILD Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`ora-01302`	Dictionary build options are missing or incorrect. This error is returned under the following conditions: ■ If the value of the `OPTIONS` parameter is not one of the supported values (`STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS`, `STORE_IN_FLAT_FILE`) or is not specified ■ If the `STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS` option is not specified and neither the `dictionary_filename` nor the `dictionary_location` parameter is specified ■ If the `STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS` option is specified and either the `dictionary_filename` or the `dictionary_location` parameter is specified
`ora-01308`	Initialization parameter `UTL_FILE_DIR` is not set.

Table 91–3 (Cont.) BUILD Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ora-01336	Specified dictionary file cannot be opened. This error is returned under the following conditions: ■ The specified value for the dictionary_location does not exist. ■ The UTL_FILE_DIR initialization parameter is not set to have access to the dictionary_location ■ The dictionary file is read-only.

Usage Notes

- To extract the LogMiner dictionary to a flat file, you must supply a filename and location.

  To extract the LogMiner dictionary to the redo log files, specify only the STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS option. The size of the LogMiner dictionary may cause it to be contained in multiple redo log files.

  The combinations of parameters used result in the following behavior:

  – If you do not specify any parameters, an error is returned.

  – If you specify a filename and location, without any options, the LogMiner dictionary is extracted to a flat file with that name.

  – If you specify a filename and location, as well as the STORE_IN_FLAT_FILE option, the LogMiner dictionary is extracted to a flat file with the specified name.

  – If you do not specify a filename and location, but do specify the STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS option, the LogMiner dictionary is extracted to the redo log files.

  – If you specify a filename and location, as well as the STORE_IN_REDO_LOGS option, an error is returned.

  – If you do not specify a filename and location, but do specify the STORE_IN_FLAT_FILE option, an error is returned.

- Ideally, the LogMiner dictionary file will be created after all database dictionary changes have been made and prior to the creation of any redo log files that are to be analyzed. As of Oracle9*i* release 1 (9.0.1), you can use LogMiner to dump the LogMiner dictionary to the redo log files or a flat file, perform DDL operations, and dynamically apply the DDL changes to the LogMiner dictionary.
- Do not run the DBMS_LOGMNR_D.BUILD procedure if there are any ongoing DDL operations.
- The database must be open when you run the DBMS_LOGMNR_D.BUILD procedure.
- When extracting a LogMiner dictionary to a flat file, the procedure queries the dictionary tables of the current database and creates a text-based file containing the contents of the tables. To extract a LogMiner dictionary to a flat file, the following conditions must be met:

  – You must specify a directory for use by the PL/SQL procedure. To do so, set the initialization parameter UTL_FILE_DIR in the initialization parameter file. For example:

  ```
  UTL_FILE_DIR = /oracle/dictionary
  ```

After setting the parameter, you must shut down and restart the database for this parameter to take effect. If you do not set this parameter, the procedure will fail.

– You must ensure that no DDL operations occur while the LogMiner dictionary build is running. Otherwise, the LogMiner dictionary file may not contain a consistent snapshot of the database dictionary.

Be aware that the `DDL_DICT_TRACKING` option to the `DBMS_LOGMNR.START_LOGMNR` procedure is not supported for flat file dictionaries created prior to Oracle9*i*. If you attempt to use the `DDL_DICT_TRACKING` option with a LogMiner database extracted to a flat file prior to Oracle9*i*, the ORA-01330 error (problem loading a required build table) is returned.

- To extract a LogMiner dictionary file to the redo log files, the following conditions must be met:
  - The `DBMS_LOGMNR_D.BUILD` procedure must be run on a system that is running Oracle9*i* or later.
  - Archivelog mode must be enabled in order to generate usable redo log files.
  - The `COMPATIBLE` parameter in the initialization parameter file must be set to 9.2.0 or higher.
  - The database to which LogMiner is attached must be Oracle9*i* or later.

  In addition, supplemental logging (at least the minimum level) should be enabled to ensure that you can take advantage of all the features that LogMiner offers. See *Oracle Database Utilities* for information about using supplemental logging with LogMiner.

Examples

Example 1: Extracting the LogMiner Dictionary to a Flat File

The following example extracts the LogMiner dictionary file to a flat file named `dictionary.ora` in a specified path (`/oracle/database`).

```
SQL> EXECUTE dbms_logmnr_d.build('dictionary.ora', -
     '/oracle/database/', -
     options => dbms_logmnr_d.store_in_flat_file);
```

Example 2: Extracting the LogMiner Dictionary to the Redo Log Files

The following example extracts the LogMiner dictionary to the redo log files.

```
SQL> EXECUTE dbms_logmnr_d.build( -
     options => dbms_logmnr_d.store_in_redo_logs);
```

SET_TABLESPACE Procedure

By default, all LogMiner tables are created to use the SYSAUX tablespace. However, it may be desirable to have LogMiner tables use an alternate tablespace. Use this procedure to move LogMiner tables to an alternate tablespace.

In a CDB, only the LogMiner metadata in the local container is moved to the requested tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGMNR_D.SET_TABLESPACE (
     new_tablespace        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 91–4 SET_TABLESPACE Parameter

Parameter	Description
new_tablespace	A string naming a preexisting tablespace. To move all LogMiner tables to employ this tablespace, supply this parameter.

Usage Notes

- Users upgrading from earlier versions of Oracle Database may find LogMiner tables in the SYSTEM tablespace. Oracle encourages such users to consider using the SET_TABLESPACE procedure to move the tables to the SYSAUX tablespace once they are confident that they will not be downgrading to an earlier version of Oracle Database.
- Users of this routine must supply an existing tablespace.

  See Also: *Oracle Database Concepts* and *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about tablespaces and how to create them

Example: Using the DBMS_LOGMNR_D.SET_TABLESPACE Procedure

The following example shows the creation of an alternate tablespace and execution of the DBMS_LOGMNR_D.SET_TABLESPACE procedure.

```
SQL> CREATE TABLESPACE  logmnrts$ datafile '/usr/oracle/dbs/logmnrts.f'
     SIZE 25 M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON MAXSIZE UNLIMITED;

SQL> EXECUTE dbms_logmnr_d.set_tablespace('logmnrts$');
```

92

DBMS_LOGSTDBY

The DBMS_LOGSTDBY package provides subprograms for configuring and managing the logical standby database environment.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for more information about SQL Apply and logical standby databases

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LOGSTDBY

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_LOGSTDBY` package.

Overview

The DBMS_LOGSTDBY package helps you manage the SQL Apply (logical standby database) environment. The subprograms in the DBMS_LOGSTDBY package help you to accomplish the following main objectives:

- Manage configuration parameters used by SQL Apply.

  For example, controlling how transactions are applied on the logical standby database, how much shared pool is used, and how many processes are used by SQL Apply to mine and apply the changes.
- Ensure an appropriate level of supplemental logging is enabled, and a LogMiner dictionary is built correctly for logical standby database creation.
- Provide a way to skip the application of changes to selected tables or entire schemas in the logical standby database, and specify ways to handle exceptions encountered by SQL Apply.
- Allow controlled access to tables in the logical standby database that may require maintenance.

Security Model

You must have the DBA role to use the DBMS_LOGSTDBY package.

A prototype role, LOGSTDBY_ADMINISTRATOR, is created by default with RESOURCE and EXECUTE privileges on DBMS_LOGSTDBY. If you choose to use this role, consider granting ALTER DATABASE and ALTER SESSION privileges to the role so that the grantee can start and stop SQL Apply and can enable and disable the database guard.

The procedures associated with skipping transactions (SKIP and UNSKIP, SKIP_ERROR and UNSKIP_ERROR, and SKIP_TRANSACTION and UNSKIP_TRANSACTION) all require DBA privileges to execute because their scope may contain wildcard schemas. Oracle recommends that where SKIP procedures are specified, these be owned by a secure account with appropriate privileges on the schemas they act on (for example, SYS).

The procedures associated with EDS-based replication require the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_LOGSTDBY package. They also require the CREATE TABLE and DROP TABLE system privileges to create (and drop) shadow tables in the target schema. If materialized views are used, then the CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW and DROP ANY MATERIALIZED VIEW system privileges are also required.

Constants

The DBMS_LOGSTDBY package defines several enumerated constants for specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name, for example, DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ACTION_SKIP.

Table 92–1 describes the constants for the proc_name parameter in the DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP procedure.

Table 92–1 Constants for SKIP Options Flag

Constant	Description
MAX_EVENTS	Maximum number of events to log in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view. See the DBMS_LOGSTDBY APPLY_SET Procedure on page 92-8.
SKIP_ACTION_APPLY	Used inside the user-defined procedure registered with DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP. Use this constant when setting the value of the SKIP_ACTION parameter with DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT if you want SQL Apply to apply the DDL or PL/SQL statement.
SKIP_ACTION_ERROR	Used inside the user-defined procedure registered with DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP. Use this constant when setting the value of the SKIP_ACTION parameter with DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT if you want SQL Apply to error out.
SKIP_ACTION_REPLACE	Used inside the user-defined procedure registered with DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP. Use this constant when setting the value of the SKIP_ACTION parameter with DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT if you want SQL Apply to apply the replacement DDL. (This constant should not be used while handling an Oracle Supplied PL/SQL procedure call).
SKIP_ACTION_SKIP	Used inside the user-defined procedure registered with DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP. Use this constant when setting the value of the SKIP_ACTION parameter with DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT if you want SQL Apply to skip the associated DDL or Oracle supplied PL/SQL procedure call.

Summary of DBMS_LOGSTDBY Subprograms

In a multitenant container database (CDB), some subprograms must be called from the root. There may be other differences as well. See the individual subprogram descriptions for details.

Table 92–2 DBMS_LOGSTDBY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
APPLY_SET Procedure on page 92-8	Sets the values of various parameters that configure and maintain SQL Apply.
APPLY_UNSET Procedure on page 92-11	Restores the default values of various parameters that configure and maintain SQL Apply.
BUILD Procedure on page 92-12	Ensures supplemental logging is enabled properly and builds the LogMiner dictionary.
EDS_ADD_TABLE on page 92-14	Adds EDS-based replication for the table. It should be invoked on the primary database first and then on the standby database.
EDS_EVOLVE_AUTOMATIC on page 92-16	Enables or disables automatic DDL handling for EDS tables.
EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL on page 92-18	Allows you to evolve EDS tables manually (that is, manually take compensating actions based on DDLs on the base tables with EDS-replication).
EDS_REMOVE_TABLE on page 92-20	Removes EDS-based replication for the specified table. It also drops the shadow table and triggers.
INSTANTIATE_TABLE Procedure on page 92-22	Creates and populates a table in the standby database from a corresponding table in the primary database.
IS_APPLY_SERVER Function on page 92-24	This function returns `TRUE` if it is executed from PL/SQL in the context of a logical standby apply server process. This function is used in conjunction with triggers that have the `fire_once` parameter in the `DBMS_DDL.SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY` subprogram set to `FALSE` (the default is `TRUE`). Such triggers are executed when the relevant target is updated by an apply process. This function can be used within the body of the trigger to ensure that the trigger takes different (or no) actions on the primary or on the standby.
MAP_PRIMARY_SCN Function on page 92-25	Maps an SCN relevant to the primary database to a corresponding SCN at the logical standby database. The mapped SCN is conservative in nature, and can thus be used to flash back the logical standby database to compensate for a flashback database operation performed at the primary database.
PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY Procedure on page 92-26	Used after a failover, this procedure ensures a local logical standby database that was not involved in the failover has not processed more redo than the new primary database and reports the set of archive redo log files that must be replaced to ensure consistency
PURGE_SESSION Procedure on page 92-28	Identifies the archived redo log files that have been applied to the logical standby database and are no longer needed by SQL Apply

Table 92–2 (Cont.) DBMS_LOGSTDBY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REBUILD Procedure on page 92-29	Records relevant metadata (including the LogMiner dictionary) in the redo stream in case a database that has recently changed its role to a primary database following a failover operation fails to do so during the failover process
SET_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 92-30	Moves metadata tables required by SQL Apply to the user-specified tablespace. By default, the metadata tables are created in the `SYSAUX` tablespace.
SKIP Procedure on page 92-31	Specifies rules that control database operations that should not be applied to the logical standby database
SKIP_ERROR Procedure on page 92-40	Specifies rules regarding what action to take upon encountering errors.
SKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure on page 92-44	Specifies transactions that should not be applied on the logical standby database. Be careful in using this procedure, because not applying specific transactions may cause data corruption at the logical standby database.
UNSKIP Procedure on page 92-46	Deletes rules specified by the `SKIP` procedure.
UNSKIP_ERROR Procedure on page 92-48	Deletes rules specified by the `SKIP_ERROR` procedure.
UNSKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure on page 92-50	Deletes rules specified by the `SKIP_TRANSACTION` procedure.

APPLY_SET Procedure

Use this procedure to set values of parameters that configure and manage SQL Apply in a logical standby database environment. All parameters, except for PRESERVE_COMMIT_ORDER, can be changed without having to stop SQL Apply.

In a CDB, the APPLY_SET procedure must be called from the root database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.APPLY_SET (
     inname             IN VARCHAR,
     value              IN VARCHAR);
```

Parameters

Table 92–3 APPLY_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
APPLY_SERVERS	Controls the number of APPLIER processes used to apply changes. The maximum number allowed is 1024, provided the MAX_SERVERS parameter is set to accommodate this.
EVENT_LOG_DEST	Controls where SQL Apply records the occurrence of an interesting event. It takes the following values: ■ DEST_ALL - All events will be recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view and in the alert log. ■ DEST_EVENTS_TABLE - All events that contain information about user data will be recorded only in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view. This is the default value. For example, if SQL Apply receives an ORA-1403 error, the whole event is recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view. Whereas, the alert log records only that SQL Apply stopped because of ORA-1403. No information regarding the user table or offending statement is logged in the alert log. However, if you stop the SQL Apply engine, it gets recorded in both the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view and in the alert log. Note that this parameter affects the behavior of the following parameters: RECORD_APPLIED_DDL, RECORD_SKIP_DDL, RECORD_SKIP_ERRORS, and RECORD_UNSUPPORTED_OPERATIONS. For example, if RECORD_APPLIED_DDL is set to TRUE, but EVENT_LOG_DEST is set to DEST_EVENTS_TABLE, then the applied DDL string will only be recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view.
LOG_AUTO_DEL_RETENTION_TARGET	This parameter setting is only meaningful if LOG_AUTO_DELETE has been set to TRUE. The value you supply for this parameter controls how long (in minutes) a remote archived log that is received from the primary database will be retained at the logical standby database once all redo records contained in the log have been applied at the logical standby database. The default value is 1440 minutes.
LOG_AUTO_DELETE	Automatically deletes foreign archived redo log files as soon as they have been applied on the logical standby database. By default, a foreign archived redo log file is not deleted until 24 hours (the default value of LOG_AUTO_DEL_RETENTION_TARGET parameter) after it has been applied at the logical standby database. Set to TRUE to enable automatic deletion of archived redo log files. Set to FALSE to disable automatic deletion. The default value is TRUE.

Table 92–3 (Cont.) APPLY_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
MAX_EVENTS_RECORDED	Number of recent events that will be visible through the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view. To record all events encountered by SQL Apply, use the DBMS_LOGSTDBY.MAX_EVENTS constant as the number value. The default value is 10,000.
MAX_SERVERS	Number of processes that SQL Apply uses to read and apply redo. The default value is 9. The maximum number allowed is 2048.
MAX_SGA	Number of megabytes from shared pool in System Global Area (SGA) that SQL Apply will use. The default value is 30 megabytes or one quarter of the value set for SHARED_POOL_SIZE, whichever is lower. The maximum size allowed is 4095 megabytes.
PREPARE_SERVERS	Controls the number of PREPARER processes used to prepare changes. The maximum number allowed is 1024, provided the MAX_SERVERS parameter is set to accommodate this.
PRESERVE_COMMIT_ORDER	TRUE: Transactions are applied to the logical standby database in the exact order in which they were committed on the primary database. This is the default parameter setting. FALSE: Transactions containing non-overlapping sets of rows may be committed in a different order than they were committed on the primary database. Regardless of the level chosen, modifications done to the same row are always applied in the same order as they happened on the primary database. See the Usage Notes for details and recommendations. You cannot modify this parameter while SQL Apply is running.
RECORD_APPLIED_DDL	Controls whether DDL statements that have been applied to the logical standby database are recorded in the location specified by the EVENT_LOG_DEST parameter. Specify one of the following values: TRUE: Indicates that DDL statements applied to the logical standby database are recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table and the alert log. FALSE: Indicates that applied DDL statements are not recorded. This is the default parameter setting.
RECORD_SKIP_DDL	Controls whether skipped DDL statements are recorded in the location specified by the EVENT_LOG_DEST parameter. Specify one of the following values: TRUE: Skipped DDL statements are recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table and the alert log. This is the default parameter setting. FALSE: Skipped DDL statements are not recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table and the alert log.
RECORD_SKIP_ERRORS	Controls whether skipped errors (as described by the SKIP_ERROR procedure) are recorded in the location specified by the EVENT_LOG_DEST parameter. Specify one of the following values: TRUE: Skipped errors are recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table and the alert log. This is the default parameter setting. FALSE: Skipped errors are not recorded in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table and the alert log.

Table 92–3 (Cont.) APPLY_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
RECORD_UNSUPPORTED_OPERATIONS	Captures information about transactions running on the primary database that will not be supported by a logical standby database. This procedure records its information as events in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table. Specify one of the following values: TRUE: The information is captured and recorded as events in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table. FALSE: The information is not captured. This is the default.

If a parameter is changed while SQL Apply is running, the change will take effect at some point in the future. In such a case, an informational row is inserted into the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view at the time the parameter change takes effect.

Additionally, if you are modifying a parameter while SQL Apply is running on an Oracle RAC configuration, you must be connected to the same instance where SQL Apply is running.

Exceptions

Table 92–4 APPLY_SET Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested
ORA-16236	Logical Standby metadata operation in progress

Usage Notes

- Use the APPLY_UNSET procedure to restore the default settings of a parameter.
- See *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for help with tuning SQL Apply and for information about setting appropriate values for different parameters.

Examples

To record DDLs in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view and in the alert log, issue the following statement:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.APPLY_SET('RECORD_APPLIED_DDL', TRUE);
```

APPLY_UNSET Procedure

Use the APPLY_UNSET procedure to restore the default values of the parameters that you changed with the APPLY_SET procedure.

In a CDB, the APPLY_UNSET procedure must be called from the root database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.APPLY_UNSET (
     inname          IN VARCHAR);
```

Parameters

The parameter information for the APPLY_UNSET procedure is the same as that described for the APPLY_SET procedure. See Table 92–3 for complete parameter information.

Exceptions

Table 92–5 APPLY_UNSET Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested
ORA-16236	Logical Standby metadata operation in progress

Usage Notes

- Use the APPLY_SET procedure to specify a nondefault value for a parameter.

Examples

If you previously specified that applied DDLs show up in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view and the alert log, you can restore the default behavior of SQL Apply regarding applied DDL statements with the following statement:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.APPLY_UNSET('RECORD_APPLIED_DDL');
```

BUILD Procedure

Use this procedure on the primary database to record relevant metadata (LogMiner dictionary) information in the redo log, which will subsequently be used by SQL Apply. This procedure will enable database-wide primary- and unique-key supplemental logging, if necessary.

In a CDB, the `BUILD` procedure must be called from the root database on the primary. Additionally, you cannot add or remove PDBs from a CDB while this procedure is executing.

Note: In databases created using Oracle Database 11*g* release 2 (11.2) or later, supplemental logging information is automatically propagated to any existing physical standby databases. However, for databases in earlier releases, or if the database was created using an earlier release and then upgraded to 11.2, you must check whether supplemental logging is enabled at the physical standby(s) if it is also enabled at the primary database. If it is not enabled at the physical standby(s), then before performing a switchover or failover, you must enable supplemental logging on all existing physical standby databases. To do so, issue the following SQL command on each physical standby:

```
SQL>  ALTER DATABASE ADD SUPPLEMENTAL LOG DATA (PRIMARY KEY, UNIQUE
INDEX) COLUMNS;
```

If you do not do this, then any logical standby that is also in the same Data Guard configuration will be unusable if a switchover or failover is performed to one of the physical standby databases. If a switchover or failover has already occurred and supplemental logging was not enabled, then you must recreate all logical standby databases.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.BUILD;
```

Usage Notes

- Supplemental log information includes extra information in the redo logs that uniquely identifies a modified row in the logical standby database, and also includes information that helps efficient application of changes to the logical standby database.
- LogMiner dictionary information allows SQL Apply to interpret data in the redo logs.
- `DBMS_LOGSTDBY.BUILD` should be run only once for each logical standby database you want to create. You do not need to use DBMS_LOGSTDBY.BUILD for each Oracle RAC instance.
- `DBMS_LOGSTDBY.BUILD` waits for all transactions (including distributed transactions) that are active at the time of the procedure invocation to complete before returning. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about how to handle in-doubt transactions.

Examples

To build the LogMiner dictionary in the redo stream of the primary database and to record additional information so that a logical standby database can be instantiated, issue the following SQL statement at the primary database

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.BUILD;
```

EDS_ADD_TABLE

This procedure adds EDS-based replication for the table. It should be invoked on the primary database first and then on the standby database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.EDS_ADD_TABLE (
     table_owner        IN VARCHAR2,
     table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
     p_dblink           IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 92–6 EDS_ADD_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_owner	Owner of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database
table_name	Name of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database
p_dblink	A database link to the primary database

Exceptions

Table 92–7 EDS_ADD_TABLE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-942	Table or view does not exist
ORA-16103	SQL Apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16130	Supplemental log information is missing from log stream
ORA-16236	Logical standby metadata operation in progress
ORA-16276	Specified database link does not correspond to primary database
ORA-16278	Specified table has a multi-object skip rule defined
ORA-16279	Specified database link does not have the necessary roles for operation
ORA-16302	Extended datatype support is not supported for specified table
ORA-16303	Specified table already has EDS on this database
ORA-16304	Procedure must first be called at the primary database
ORA-16306	Specified table does not have a primary key

Usage Notes

- When this procedure is invoked on the primary, the definition of the local table is used to compose the shadow table and both the base and shadow table triggers.
- When this procedure is invoked on the standby, a database link to the primary (p_dblink) must be provided so that the definition of the table on the primary can be used to compose the shadow table and its trigger on the standby. After the shadow table and its trigger are composed on the standby, the DBMS_

LOGSTDBY.INSTANTIATE_TABLE procedure is called on the base table, using the provided database link to the primary. The p_dblink parameter is ignored when called on the primary and it defaults to NULL.

- Error checking is done up front. Generally, if the table contains a datatype that this procedure does not support, then an error is raised.

  If the table is already supported by SQL Apply, then an exception is raised. To determine whether a table is a candidate for extended datatype support (EDS), query the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EDS_SUPPORTED view on the primary.
- This procedure must be executed on the primary before it is executed on the standby; otherwise an error is raised.
- For role changes to a logical standby it is essential that EDS be added to both the primary and the standby prior to the role change. If it is added only on the primary, then it must be removed after the role change because the EDS context would then be invalid.
- For rolling upgrades the procedure only needs to be called on the primary.
- This procedure is not replicated to a logical standby and therefore must be executed on both the primary and the standby databases. It is replicated to a physical standby so when it is used for rolling upgrades it should only be called on the primary.
- When this procedure is executed on the standby, it requires that SQL Apply be stopped and the database guard set to either STANDBY or NONE. When the procedure is complete, the table is protected by the database guard.

Examples

To add EDS for the table OE.CUSTOMERS, issue the following commands, first on the primary and then on the standby.

On the primary database, issue the following command:

```
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_add_table('OE','CUSTOMERS');
```

On the standby database, issue the following commands:

```
alter database stop logical standby apply;
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_add_table('OE','CUSTOMERS','dblink-to-primary');
alter database start logical standby apply immediate;
```

EDS_EVOLVE_AUTOMATIC

This procedure either enables or disables automatic DDL handling for EDS tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.EDS_EVOLVE_AUTOMATIC (
     options            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 92–8 EDS_EVOLVE_AUTOMATIC Parameter Descriptions

Parameter	Description
options	Specify `ENABLE` to enable automatic DDL handling for EDS. Specify `DISABLE` to disable automatic DDL handling for EDS.

Exceptions

Table 92–9 EDS_EVOLVE_AUTOMATIC Exception Descriptions

Exception	Description
`ORA-16104`	The specified parameter is not valid
`ORA-16305`	Procedure not supported on a logical standby

Usage Notes

- For transparent handling of DDLs on all EDS-enabled tables, this procedure must be called at the primary database once (with the `ENABLE` option) prior to the first call to `EDS_ADD_TABLE`.
- If an EDS-specific DDL trigger is enabled, it fires after every DDL to determine whether the DDL affects the viability of EDS-replication of any of the tables presently enabled for EDS. If it does, then a separate EVOLVING trigger is generated on the table that ensures no DMLs are allowed on the affected base table until the compensating actions are taken to repair the EDS-specific metadata.
- If the SQL statements `ALTER TABLE` or `CREATE UNIQUE INDEX` are executed on an EDS-maintained table, then an evolve operation is started if automatic evolve has been enabled.
- This procedure can be called on a primary database only and is replicated via SQL Apply to a logical standby database.
- When the procedure is executed on the standby it succeeds regardless of the database guard setting and whether or not apply is running.

Examples

To enable automatic evolution of all EDS- maintained tables, issue the following statement:

```
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_evolve_automatic('ENABLE');
```

After automatic evolve has been enabled, there is no need to issue eds_evolve commands. They will be done automatically for you upon completion of a DDL command issued against an EDS table.

To disable automatic evolution of all EDS- maintained tables, issue the following statement:

```
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_evolve_automatic('DISABLE');
```

EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL

This procedure allows you to evolve EDS tables manually (that is, manually take compensating actions based on DDLs on the base tables with EDS-replication).

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL (
     options            IN VARCHAR2,
     table_owner        IN VARCHAR2,
     table_name         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 92–10 EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL Parameter Descriptions

Parameter	Description
options	Valid options are: ■ START - start an evolve operation, prior to performing the DDL ■ FINISH - finish an evolve operation after performing the DDL ■ CANCEL - cancel a started evolve operation
table_owner	Owner of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database
table_name	Name of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database

Exceptions

Table 92–11 EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL Exception Descriptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16302	Extended datatype support is not supported for specified table
ORA-16305	Procedure not supported on a logical standby
ORA-16306	Specified table does not have a primary key
ORA-16307	Table not prepared for extended datatype support operation

Usage Notes

- To perform a manual evolve operation, you must call EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL before and after any DDL that may affect the base table being replicated with EDS. The following is the prescribed method for evolving manually:

  1. Call EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL with the START option.
  2. Perform the DDL.
  3. Call EDS_EVOLVE_MANUAL with the FINISH option.

  Deviation from this order could lead to data loss. An error is returned if the procedure is called with the FINISH option before it is called with START for the specified table. When the procedure is called with the START option, DML on the table is blocked by an evolve trigger.

- This procedure can only be invoked on a primary database.
- When this procedure is executed on the standby, SQL Apply must be stopped and the database guard set to either `STANDBY` or `NONE`. When the procedure is complete, the table is protected by the database guard.

Examples

To manually evolve an EDS table, issue the following commands on the primary database:

```
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_evolve_manual('START','OE','CUSTOMERS');
alter table oe.customers some_DDL_construct;
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_evolve_manual('FINISH','OE','CUSTOMERS');
```

EDS_REMOVE_TABLE

This procedure removes EDS-based replication for the specified table. It also drops the shadow table and triggers.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.EDS_REMOVE_TABLE (
     table_owner        IN VARCHAR2,
     table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
```

Parameters

Table 92–12 EDS_REMOVE_TABLE Parameter Descriptions

Parameter	Description
table_owner	Owner of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database
table_name	Name of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database

Exceptions

Table 92–13 EDS_REMOVE_TABLE Exception Descriptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation

Usage Notes

- When this procedure is called on the standby, the shadow table and both triggers are dropped locally but not on the primary.

  When this procedure is called on the primary, the shadow table and both triggers are dropped and the procedure is re-executed on the standby by the apply engine. Therefore, the supporting shadow table and triggers are also dropped at the logical standby. Using this approach, a single call made on the primary can remove EDS from the entire configuration for a table.
- In a multi-standby configuration, you can remove support on a single standby by calling this procedure on that standby.
- This procedure takes out an exclusive table lock to ensure isolation in the presence of ongoing user writes on the same table. Thus the procedure will block until existing write-transactions that have outstanding row locks on the table are completed.
- When this procedure is executed on the standby, SQL Apply must be stopped and the database guard set to either `STANDBY` or `NONE`. When the procedure is complete, the table is protected by the database guard.

Examples

To remove EDS for the table `OE.CUSTOMERS`, issue the following command on the primary database:

```
execute dbms_logstdby.eds_remove_table('OE','CUSTOMERS');
```

INSTANTIATE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates and populates a table in the standby database from a corresponding table in the primary database. The table requires the name of the database link (`dblink`) as an input parameter. If the table already exists in the logical standby database, it will be dropped and re-created based on the table definition at the primary database. This procedure only brings over the data associated with the table, and not the associated indexes and constraints.

Use the `INSTANTIATE_TABLE` procedure to:

- Add a table to a standby database.
- Re-create a table in a standby database.

In a CDB, the `INSTANTIATE_TABLE` procedure must be called from within the container in which the table to be instantiated resides. Additionally, the database link that is provided to the primary database must point to the corresponding container on the primary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.INSTANTIATE_TABLE (
     schema_name         IN VARCHAR2,
     table_name          IN VARCHAR2,
     dblink              IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 92–14 INSTANTIATE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema_name`	Name of the schema
`table_name`	Name of the table to be created or re-created in the standby database
`dblink`	Name of the database link account that has privileges to read and lock the table in the primary database, as well as the `SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE` on the primary database

Exceptions

Table 92–15 INSTANTIATE_TABLE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`ORA-16103`	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
`ORA-16236`	Logical Standby metadata operation in progress
`ORA-16276`	Specified database link does not correspond to primary database
`ORA-16277`	Specified table is not supported by logical standby database
`ORA-16278`	Specified table has a multi-object skip rule defined

Usage Notes

- Use this procedure to create and populate a table in a way that keeps the data on the standby database transactionally consistent with the primary database.

- This table will not be synchronized with the rest of the tables being maintained by SQL Apply and SQL Apply will not start to maintain it until SQL Apply encounters redo that occurred after the table was instantiated from the primary. The SCN at which the table was instantiated from the primary database is available in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view.
- The specified table must be a table that is supported by logical standby (that is, it does not appear in the DBA_LOGSTDBY_UNSUPPORTED_TABLES view on the primary database).
- If there are any skip rules that specifically name this table (without any wildcards), those skip rules will be dropped as part of INSTANTIATE_TABLE, so that the table will be properly maintained by SQL Apply in the future. If there are skip rules that indirectly reference this table (match a skip rule with a wildcard in the schema_name or table_name, and have a TABLE, DML, or SCHEMA_DDL statement type), INSTANTIATE_TABLE will fail with an ORA-16278 error. Any multi-object skip rules that pertain to the table must be dropped or changed before re-attempting the INSTANTIATE_TABLE call.

Examples

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.INSTANTIATE_TABLE (-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', TABLE_NAME => 'EMPLOYEES', -
     DBLINK => 'INSTANTIATE_TBL_LINK');
```

IS_APPLY_SERVER Function

This function returns `TRUE` if it is executed from PL/SQL in the context of a logical standby apply server process. This function is used in conjunction with triggers that have the `fire_once` parameter in the `DBMS_DDL.SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY` subprogram set to `FALSE` (the default is `TRUE`). Such triggers are executed when the relevant target is updated by an apply process. This function can be used within the body of the trigger to ensure that the trigger takes different (or no) actions on the primary or on the standby.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information about the `DBMS_DDL.SET_TRIGGER_FIRING_PROPERTY` subprogram.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.IS_APPLY_SERVER
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

None

MAP_PRIMARY_SCN Function

Returns an SCN on the standby that predates the supplied SCN from the primary database by at least 5 minutes. This function can be used to determine a safe SCN to use in a compensating flashback database operation at the logical standby database, following a flashback database operation or a point-in-time recovery operation at the primary database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.MAP_PRIMARY_SCN(primary_scn NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER;
```

Exceptions

Table 92–16 MAP_PRIMARY_SCN Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-20001	Primary SCN is before mapped range
ORA-20002	SCN mapping requires PRESERVE_COMMIT_ORDER to be TRUE

Usage Notes

Use this function to get a conservative SCN at the logical standby database that corresponds to an SCN at the primary database. This function is useful in the context of doing compensating flashback database operations at the logical standby following a flashback database or a point-in-time recovery operation done at the primary database.

PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY Procedure

The PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY procedure must be invoked at a logical standby database following a failover if that standby database was not the target of the failover operation. Such a standby database must process the exact same set of redo logs processed at the new primary database. This routine ensures that the local logical standby database has not processed more redo than the new primary database and reports the set of archive logs that must be replaced to ensure consistency. The set of replacement logs will be reported in the alert.log. These logs must be copied to the logical standby and registered using the ALTER DATABASE REGISTER LOGICAL LOGFILE statement.

In a CDB, the PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY procedure must be called from the root database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY (
           FORMER_STANDBY_TYPE         IN VARCHAR2,
           DBLINK                      IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 92–17 PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
FORMER_STANDBY_TYPE	The type of standby database that was the target of the failover operation to become the new primary database. Valid values are 'PHYSICAL' if the new primary was formerly a physical standby, and 'LOGICAL' if the new primary database was formerly a logical standby database.
DBLINK	The name of a database link to the new primary database

Exceptions

Table 92–18 PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16104	Invalid Logical Standby option.
ORA-16109	Failed to apply log data from previous primary.

Usage Notes

- This routine is intended only for logical standby systems.This routine will fail if the new primary database was formerly a logical standby database and the LogMiner dictionary build has not completed successfully.Log files displayed in the alert log will be referred to as *terminal logs*. Users should keep in mind that file paths are relative to the new primary database and may not resolve locally.Upon manual registration of the terminal logs, users should complete the process by calling either START LOGICAL STANDBY APPLY if the new primary database was formerly a physical standby database or START LOGICAL STANDBY APPLY NEW PRIMARY if the new primary database was formerly a logical standby database.See the alert log for more details regarding the reasons for any exception.

Examples

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.PREPARE_FOR_NEW_PRIMARY (  -
                FORMER_STANDBY_TYPE => 'LOGICAL',    -
                DBLINK => 'dblink_to_newprimary');
```

PURGE_SESSION Procedure

Identifies all archived redo log files that have been applied to the logical standby database and are no longer needed by SQL Apply. Once identified, you can issue operating system commands to delete some or all of the unnecessary archived redo log files.

In a CDB, the PURGE_SESSION procedure must be called from the root database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.PURGE_SESSION;
```

Exceptions

Table 92–19 PURGE_SESSION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01309	Invalid session

Usage Notes

- This procedure does not delete the archived redo log files. You must issue operating system commands to delete unneeded files.
- This procedure updates the DBA_LOGMNR_PURGED_LOG view that displays the archived redo log files that have been applied to the logical standby database.
- In Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2, metadata related to the archived redo log files (and the actual archived redo log files) are purged automatically based on the default setting of the LOG_AUTO_DELETE parameter described in the DBMS_LOGSTDBY.APPLY_SET procedure described on page 92-8.

Example

To identify and remove unnecessary files:

1. Enter the following statement on the logical standby database:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.PURGE_SESSION;
```

2. Query the DBA_LOGMNR_PURGED_LOG view to list the archived redo log files that can be removed:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM DBA_LOGMNR_PURGED_LOG;

FILE_NAME
   -----------------------------------
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_40_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_41_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_42_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_43_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_44_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_45_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_46_509538672.log
   /boston/arc_dest/arc_1_47_509538672.log
```

3. Use operating system-specific commands to delete archived redo log files from the file system.

REBUILD Procedure

This procedure is used if a database that has recently changed its role to a primary database following a failover operation fails to record relevant metadata (including the LogMiner dictionary) in the redo stream required for other logical standby databases.

In a CDB, the `REBUILD` procedure must be called from the root database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.REBUILD;
```

Usage Notes

- LogMiner dictionary information is logged in the redo log files.The standby redo log files (if present) are archived.

Examples

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.REBUILD;
```

SET_TABLESPACE Procedure

Moves metadata tables required by SQL Apply to the user-specified tablespace. By default, the metadata tables are created in the SYSAUX tablespace. SQL Apply cannot be running when you invoke this procedure.

In a CDB, the SET_TABLESPACE procedure must be called from the root database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SET_TABLESPACE(
           NEW_TABLESPACE IN VARCHAR2)
```

Parameters

Table 92–20 SET_TABLE SPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
NEW_TABLESPACE	Name of the new tablespace where metadata tables will reside.

Exceptions

Table 92–21 SET_TABLESPACE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16236	Logical Standby metadata operation in progress

Examples

To move metadata tables to a new tablespace named LOGSTDBY_TBS, issue the following statement:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SET_TABLESPACE (new_tablespace => 'LOGSTDBY_TBS');
```

SKIP Procedure

The SKIP procedure can be used to define rules that will be used by SQL Apply to skip the application of certain changes to the logical standby database. For example, the SKIP procedure can be used to skip changes to a subset of tables in the logical standby database. It can also be used to specify DDL statements that should not be applied at the logical standby database or should be modified before they are applied in the logical standby database. One reason why a DDL statement may need to be modified is to accommodate a different directory structure on the logical standby database.

> **Note:** For information about skipping containers, see "Skipping Containers" on page 92-39.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP (
     stmt                      IN VARCHAR2,
     schema_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     object_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     proc_name                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     use_like                  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
     esc                       IN CHAR1 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 92–22 SKIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stmt	Either a keyword that identifies a set of SQL statements or a specific SQL statement. The use of keywords simplifies configuration since keywords, generally defined by the database object, identify all SQL statements that operate on the specified object. Table 92–23 shows a list of keywords and the equivalent SQL statements, either of which is a valid value for this parameter. The keyword PL/SQL is used for the execution of Oracle-supplied packages which are supported for replication. See *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for information about supported packages.
schema_name	The name of one or more schemas (wildcards are permitted) associated with the SQL statements identified by the stmt parameter. If not applicable, this value must be set to NULL.
object_name	The name of one or more objects (wildcards are permitted) associated with the SQL statements identified by the stmt. If not applicable, this value must be set to NULL.

Table 92–22 (Cont.) SKIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
proc_name	Name of a stored procedure to call when SQL Apply determines that a particular statement matches the filter defined by the stmt, schema_name, and object_name parameters. Specify the procedure in the following format: 'schema.package.procedure' This procedure returns a value that directs SQL Apply to perform one of the following: execute the statement, skip the statement, or execute a replacement statement. The procedures to be invoked in the case of DDL or PL/SQL take no arguments. You can access the various information needed inside the procedure by accessing the context associated with the namespace,LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT. For a full list of parameters that are accessible in the context of the skip procedure, see the DBMS_LOGSTBDY_CONTEXT package. The parameters of interest in the case of DDLs are: STATEMENT, STATEMENT_TYPE, SCHEMA, NAME, CURENT_SCHEMA, XIDUSN, XIDSLT, XIDSQN and SKIP_ACTION. The parameters of interest in the case of PL/SQL are: STATEMENT, PACKAGE_ SCHMEMA, PACKAGE_NAME, PROCEDURE_NAME, CURRENT_SCHEMA, XIDUSN, XIDSLT, XIDSQN, EXIT_STATUS, and SKIP_ACTION.. **Note 1**: The DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ACTION_REPLACE constant is not supported for PL/SQL. **Note 2**: SQL Apply calls the skip handler when the procedure's exit is processed. **Note 3**: The use_like parameter must be set to FALSE for PL/SQL since wildcarding PL/SQL is not supported.

Table 92–22 (Cont.) SKIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
proc_name (cont.)	A sample conditional skip rule on DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY is as follows:

```
create or replace procedure sec.mgr.skip_drop_policy
is
l_stmt  CLOB;
l_pkgown varchar2(30);
l_pkgnam varchar2(30);
l_procnm varchar2(30);
l_cur_schema varchar2(30);
l_xidusn   number;
l_xidslt   number;
l_xidsqn   number;
l_exit_status number;
l_skip_action number;
Begin
-- read all relevant info
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'STATEMENT', value => l_
stmt);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'PACKAGE_SCHEMA', value =>
l_pkgown);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'PACKAGE_NAME', value =>
l_pkgnam);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'PROCEDURE_NAME', value =>
l_procnm);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'CURRENT_SCHEMA', value =>
l_cur_schema);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'XIDUSN', value => l_
xidusn);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'XIDSLT', value => l_
xidslt);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'XIDSQN', value => l_
xidsqn);
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name => 'EXIT_STATUS', value => l_
ext_status);

if 0 == l_ext_status then
Insert Into sec_mgr.logit Values
      ('Success: '||l_pkgown||'.'||l_pkgnm||'.'||l_procnm|| ' by
'||l_current_user);

If l_current_user != 'TESTSCHEMA' Then
      l_skip_action := DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ACTION_APPLY;
    Else
      l_skip_action := DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ACTION_SKIP;
    End If;
  End If;

dbms_logstdby_context.set_context(name=>'SKIP_ACTION',
value => l_skip_action);

End skip_drop_policy;

EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP( -
     stmt => 'PL/SQL', -
     schema_name => 'SYS', -
     object_name => 'DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY', -
     proc_name => 'SEC_MGR.SKIP_DROP_POLICY' -
     use_like=> FALSE);
```

Table 92–22 (Cont.) SKIP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
use_like	Allows pattern matching to isolate the tables that you want to skip on the logical standby database. The use_like parameter matches a portion of one character value to another by searching the first value for the pattern specified by the second, and calculates strings using characters as defined by the input character set. This parameter follows the same rules for pattern matching described in the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.
esc	Identifies an escape character (such as the character "/") that you can use for pattern matching. If the escape character appears in the pattern before the character "%" or "_" then Oracle interprets this character literally in the pattern, rather than as a special pattern matching character. See*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about pattern matching.

Usage Notes

- This procedure requires DBA privileges to execute.
- You cannot associate a stored procedure to be invoked in the context of a DML statement. For example, the following statement returns the ORA-16104: invalid Logical Standby option requested error:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP(-
     stmt => 'DML', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => 'EMPLOYEES', -
     proc_name => 'DML_HANDLER');
```

  Also, if an event matches multiple rules either because of the use of wildcards while specifying the rule or because of a specification of overlapping rules. For example, if you specify a rule for the SCHEMA_DDL event for the HR.EMPLOYEES table, and a rule for the ALTER TABLE event for the HR.EMPLOYEES table, only one of the matching procedures will be invoked (alphabetically, by procedure). In the following code example, consider the following rules:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP( -
     stmt => 'SCHEMA_DDL', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => 'EMPLOYEES', -
     proc_name => 'SCHEMA_DDL_HANDLER');
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP( -
     stmt => 'ALTER TABLE', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => 'EMPLOYEES', -
     proc_name => 'TABLE_ALTER_HANDLER');
```

  On encountering an ALTER TABLE statement, the schema_ddl_handler procedure will be invoked because its name will be at the top of an alphabetically sorted list of procedures that are relevant to the statement.Collisions on a rule set because of a specification containing wildcard entries are resolved in a similar fashion. For example, the rules in the following example will result in the empddl_handler procedure being invoked upon encountering the ALTER TABLE HR.EMPLOYEES ADD COLUMN RATING NUMBER statement:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP(-
     stmt => 'ALTER TABLE', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => 'EMP%', -
     proc_name => 'EMPDDL_HANDLER');
```

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP( -
     stmt => 'ALTER TABLE', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => 'EMPLOYEES', -
     proc_name => 'EMPLOYEE_DDL_HANDLER');
```

- Use the SKIP procedure with caution, particularly when skipping DDL statements. If a CREATE TABLE statement is skipped, for example, you must also specify other DDL statements that refer to that table in the SKIP procedure. Otherwise, the statements will fail and cause an exception. When this happens, SQL Apply stops running.
- Before calling the SKIP procedure, SQL Apply must be halted. Do this by issuing an ALTER DATABASE STOP LOGICAL STANDBY APPLY statement. Once all desired filters have been specified, issue an ALTER DATABASE START LOGICAL STANDBY APPLY IMMEDIATE statement to start SQL Apply using the new filter settings.
- See the UNSKIP procedure on page 92-46 for information about reversing (undoing) the settings of the SKIP procedure.
- For USER statements, the SCHEMA_NAME parameter will be the user and specify '%' for the OBJECT_NAME parameter.
- If the PROC_NAME parameter is supplied, it must already exist in DBA_PROCEDURES and it must execute with DEFINER rights. If the procedure is declared with INVOKER rights, the ORA-1031: insufficient privileges message will be returned.
- If the procedure returns a REPLACEMENT statement, the REPLACEMENT statement will be executed using the SYSTEM and OBJECT privileges of the owner of the procedure.
- The PL/SQL block of a SKIP procedure cannot contain transaction control statements (for example, COMMIT, ROLLBACK, SAVEPOINT, and SET CONSTRAINT) unless the block is declared to be an autonomous transaction.

Skip Statement Options

Table 92–23 lists the supported values for the stmt parameter of the SKIP procedure. The left column of the table lists the keywords that may be used to identify the set of SQL statements to the right of the keyword. In addition, any of the SQL statements listed in the sys.audit_actions table (shown in the right column of Table 92–23) are also valid values. Note that keywords are generally defined by database object.

Table 92–23 Supported Values for the stmt Parameter

Keyword	Associated SQL Statements
There is no keyword for this group of SQL statements.	GRANT REVOKE ANALYZE TABLE ANALYZE INDEX ANALYZE CLUSTER
CLUSTER	AUDIT CLUSTER CREATE CLUSTER DROP CLUSTER TRUNCATE CLUSTER
CONTAINER	See "Skipping Containers" on page 92-39
CONTEXT	CREATE CONTEXT DROP CONTEXT

Table 92–23 (Cont.) Supported Values for the `stmt` Parameter

Keyword	Associated SQL Statements
DATABASE LINK	CREATE DATABASE LINK CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK DROP DATABASE LINK DROP PUBLIC DATABASE LINK
DIMENSION	ALTER DIMENSION CREATE DIMENSION DROP DIMENSION
DIRECTORY[1]	CREATE DIRECTORY DROP DIRECTORY
DML	Includes DML statements on a table (for example: INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE)
INDEX	ALTER INDEX CREATE INDEX DROP INDEX
NON_SCHEMA_DDL	*All DDL that does not pertain to a particular schema* **Note:** SCHEMA_NAME and OBJECT_NAME must be null
PL/SQL[2]	Execute Oracle-supplied package.
PROCEDURE[3]	ALTER FUNCTION ALTER PACKAGE ALTER PACKAGE BODY ALTER PROCEDURE CREATE FUNCTION CREATE LIBRARY CREATE PACKAGE CREATE PACKAGE BODY CREATE PROCEDURE DROP FUNCTION DROP LIBRARY DROP PACKAGE DROP PACKAGE BODY DROP PROCEDURE
PROFILE	ALTER PROFILE CREATE PROFILE DROP PROFILE
ROLE	ALTER ROLE CREATE ROLE DROP ROLE SET ROLE
ROLLBACK STATEMENT	ALTER ROLLBACK SEGMENT CREATE ROLLBACK SEGMENT DROP ROLLBACK SEGMENT
SCHEMA_DDL	*All DDL statements that create, modify, or drop schema objects (for example: tables, indexes, and columns)* **Note:** SCHEMA_NAME and OBJECT_NAME must *not* be null
SEQUENCE	ALTER SEQUENCE CREATE SEQUENCE DROP SEQUENCE

Table 92–23 (Cont.) Supported Values for the `stmt` Parameter

Keyword	Associated SQL Statements
SYNONYM	CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM CREATE SYNONYM DROP PUBLIC SYNONYM DROP SYNONYM
SYSTEM AUDIT	AUDIT *SQL_statements* NOAUDIT *SQL_statements*
TABLE	CREATE TABLE ALTER TABLE DROP TABLE TRUNCATE TABLE
TABLESPACE	CREATE TABLESPACE DROP TABLESPACE ALTER TABLESPACE
TRIGGER	ALTER TRIGGER CREATE TRIGGER DISABLE ALL TRIGGERS DISABLE TRIGGER DROP TRIGGER ENABLE ALL TRIGGERS ENABLE TRIGGER
TYPE	ALTER TYPE ALTER TYPE BODY CREATE TYPE CREATE TYPE BODY DROP TYPE DROP TYPE BODY
USER	ALTER USER CREATE USER DROP USER
VIEW	CREATE VIEW DROP VIEW
VIEW	CREATE VIEW DROP VIEW

[1] All directory objects are owned by SYS, but for the purpose of filtering them with a skip directive the schema should be specified as '%'".

[2] See *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for information about supported packages.

[3] Java schema objects (sources, classes, and resources) are considered the same as procedure for purposes of skipping (ignoring) SQL statements.

Exceptions

Table 92–24 DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01031	Insufficient privileges: ■ Procedure used INVOKER rights ■ Procedure needs DBA privileges
ORA-16103	Logical standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation.
ORA-16104	Invalid logical standby option requested.

Table 92–24 (Cont.) DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-16203	"Unable to interpret SKIP procedure return values." Indicates that a SKIP procedure has either generated an exception or has returned ambiguous values. You can identify the offending procedure by examining the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS view.
ORA-16236	Logical standby metadata operation in progress.

Examples

Example 1 Skipping all DML and DDL changes made to a schema

The following example shows how to specify rules so that SQL Apply will skip both DDL and DML statements made to the HR schema.

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP(STMT => 'SCHEMA_DDL', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => '%', -
     proc_name => null);
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP(STMT => 'DML', -
     schema_name => 'HR', -
     object_name => '%', -
     proc_name => null);
```

Example 2 Creating a procedure to handle different file system organization

For example, if the file system organization in the logical standby database is different than that in the primary database, you can write a SKIP procedure to handle DDL statements with file specifications transparently.The following procedure can handle DDL statements as long as you follow a specific naming convention for the file specification string.

1. Create the SKIP procedure to handle tablespace DDL statements:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE sys.handle_tbs_ddl
IS
l_old_stmt varchar2(4000);
l_stmt_typ varcahr2(40);
l_schema   varchar2(30);
l_name     varchar2(30);
l_xidusn   number;
l_xidslt   number;
l_xidsqn   number;
l_skip_action number;
l_new_stmt varchar2(4000);

-- read all information
dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'STATEMENT',value=>l_old_stmt);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'STATEMENT_TYPE',value=>l_stmt_type);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'OWNER',value=>l_schema);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'NAME',value=>l_name);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'XIDUSN',value=>l_xidusn);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'XIDSLT',value=>l_xidslt);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'XIDSQN',value=>l_xidsqn);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'CONTAINER_NAME',value=>l_conname);

--
-- All primary file specification that contains a directory
```

```
-- /usr/orcl/primary/dbs
-- should go to /usr/orcl/stdby directory specification

  BEGIN
  l_new_stmt := replace (l_old_stmt,
'/usr/orcl/primary/dbs','/usr/orcl/stdby');
l_skip_action := DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ACTION_REPLACE;
  EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    l_skip_action := DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ACTION_ERROR;
    l_new_stmt := NULL;
  END;

  dbms_logstdby_context.set_context(name=>new_statement, value => l_new_stmt);
dbms_logstdby_context.set_context(name=>'SKIP_ACTION', value => l_skip_action);
END handle_tbs_ddl;
```

2. Register the `SKIP` procedure with SQL Apply:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP (stmt => 'TABLESPACE', -
             proc_name => 'SYS.HANDLE_TBS_DDL');
```

Skipping Containers

To skip a container (either a PDB or the root), use the `CONTAINER` keyword. All SQL statements executed on the container, as well as any other actions taken on the container, are skipped.

You can skip a particular PDB within a CDB. For example, the following command skips the PDB named `PDB1`. The command must be executed at the root level:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP(stmt => 'CONTAINER', object_name => 'PDB1');
```

As shown in the following example, you could also skip only the root of the CDB, but not any of the PDBs that exist under the root. The command must be executed at the root level:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP(stmt => 'CONTAINER', object_name => 'CDB$ROOT');
```

Note: To create other skip rules for a container, create the rules from within the container. The container to which the rules will apply is automatically derived from the container in which the rules are created.

SKIP_ERROR Procedure

Upon encountering an error, the logical standby database uses the criteria contained in this procedure to determine a course of action. The default action when a match is found is to skip the error and continue with applying changes. However, if a procedure is supplied, then SKIP_ERROR can take other actions depending on the situation. It can do nothing, which causes SQL Apply to stop, or it can change the error message text and stop SQL Apply, or it can actually skip the error.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR (
     stmt                      IN VARCHAR2,
     schema_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     object_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     proc_name                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     use_like                  IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT NULL,
     esc                       IN CHAR1    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 92–25 SKIP_ERROR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stmt	Either a keyword that identifies a set of SQL statements or a specific SQL statement. The use of keywords simplifies configuration because keywords, generally defined by the database object, identify all SQL statements that operate on the specified object. Table 92–23 shows a list of keywords and the equivalent SQL statements, either of which is a valid value for this parameter.
schema_name	The name of one or more schemas (wildcards are permitted) associated with the SQL statements identified by the stmt parameter. If not applicable, this value must be set to NULL.
object_name	The name of one or more objects (wildcards are permitted) associated with the SQL statements identified by the stmt. If not applicable, this value must be set to NULL.

Table 92–25 (Cont.) SKIP_ERROR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
proc_name	Name of a stored procedure to call when SQL Apply encounters an error and determines a particular statement matches the filter defined by the stmt, schema_name, and object_name parameters. Specify the procedure in the following format: '"schema"."package"."procedure"' This procedure returns an error message that directs SQL Apply to perform one of the following actions: ■ Silently skip the error and continue with SQL Apply ■ Replace the error message that would have been created with a custom one, and stop SQL Apply ■ Do nothing, causing SQL Apply to stop and the original error message to be logged The procedure registered with SQL Apply does not take any parameters. The context associated with LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT can be used to retrieve all relevant information related to the error. See the DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT package for a list of all parameters associated with LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT. The parameters of interest for procedures registered with SKIP_ERROR are CONTAINER_NAME, STATEMENT, STATEMENT_TYPE, SCHEMA, NAME, XIDUSN, XIDSLT, XIDSQN, ERROR and NEW_ERROR.
use_like	Allows pattern matching to isolate the tables that you want to skip on the logical standby database. The use_like parameter matches a portion of one character value to another by searching the first value for the pattern specified by the second, and calculates strings using characters as defined by the input character set. This parameter follows the same rules for pattern matching described in the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.
esc	Identifies an escape character (such as the characters "%" or "_") that you can use for pattern matching. If the escape character appears in the pattern before the character "%" or "_" then Oracle interprets this character literally in the pattern, rather than as a special pattern matching character. See*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about pattern matching.

Usage Notes

- A stored procedure provided to the SKIP_ERROR procedure is called when SQL Apply encounters an error that could shut down the application of redo logs to the standby database.
- Running this stored procedure affects the error being written in the STATUS column of the DBA_LOGSTDBY_EVENTS table. The STATUS_CODE column remains unchanged. If the stored procedure is to have no effect, that is, apply will be stopped, then the NEW_ERROR is written to the events table. To truly have no effect, set NEW_ERROR to ERROR in the procedure.
- If the stored procedure requires that a shutdown be avoided, then you must set NEW_ERROR to NULL.
- This procedure requires DBA privileges to execute.
- For USER statements, the SCHEMA_NAME parameter will be the user and you should specify '%' for the OBJECT_NAME parameter.
- If the PROC_NAME parameter is specified, it must already exist in DBA_PROCEDURES and it must execute with DEFINERS rights. If the procedure is declared with

INVOKERS rights, the ORA-1031: insufficient privileges message will be returned.

- The PL/SQL block of a SKIP_ERROR procedure cannot contain transaction control statements (for example: COMMIT, ROLLBACK, SAVEPOINT, and SET CONSTRAINT) unless the block is declared to be an autonomous transaction using the following syntax:

```
PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION
```

Exceptions

Table 92–26 SKIP_ERROR Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01031	Insufficient privileges: ■ Procedure used INVOKER rights ■ Procedure needs DBA privileges
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested
ORA-16236	Logical Standby metadata operation in progress

Example 1

The following example shows how to specify rules so that SQL Apply will skip any error raised from any GRANT DDL command.

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR('GRANT')
```

Example 2

To skip errors on GRANT statements on SYS or HR schemas, define a procedure handle_error_ddl and register it. In the following example, assume that handle_error_ddl is a free-standing procedure in the SYS schema.

1. Create the error-handler procedure:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE sys.handle_error_ddl
is
l_stmt    VARCHAR2(4000);
l_stmt_type VARCHAR2(40);
l_schema    VARCHAR2(30);
l_name      VARCHAR2(30);
l_xidusn      NUMBER;
l_xidslt      NUMBER;
l_xidsqn      NUMBER;
l_error     VARCHAR2(4000);
l_conname    VARCHAR2(30);
l_newerr   VARCHAR2(4000);

BEGIN
 dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'STATEMENT',value=>l_stmt);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'STATEMENT_TYPE',value=>l_stmt_type);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'SCHEMA',value=>l_schema);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'NAME',value=>l_name);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'XIDUSN',value=>l_xidusn);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'XIDSLT',value=>l_xidslt);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'XIDSQN',value=>l_xidsqn);
```

```
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'ERROR',value=>l_error);
  dbms_logstdby_context.get_context(name=>'CONTAINER_NAME',value=>l_conname);

-- default error to what we already have
l_new_error := l_error;

-- Ignore any GRANT errors on SYS or HR schemas

IF INSTR(UPPER(l_stmt), 'GRANT') > 0
THEN
IF l_schema is NULL
OR (l_schema is NOT NULL AND
(UPPER(l_schema) = 'SYS' OR
UPPER(l_schema) = 'HR')
THEN
l_new_error := NULL;
-- record the fact that we just skipped an error on 'SYS' or 'HR' schemas
-- code not shown here
END IF;
END IF;

dbms_logstdby_context.set_context(name => 'NEW_ERROR', value => l_new_error);

END handle_error_ddl;
/
```

2. Register the error handler with SQL Apply:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR ( -
     statement => 'NON_SCHEMA_DDL', -
     schema_name => NULL, -
     object_name => NULL, -
     proc_name => 'SYS.HANDLE_ERROR_DDL');
```

SKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure

This procedure provides a way to skip (ignore) applying transactions to the logical standby database. You can skip specific transactions by specifying transaction identification information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_TRANSACTION (
     xidusn          IN NUMBER,
     xidslt          IN NUMBER,
     xidsqn          IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 92–27 SKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
XIDUSN NUMBER	Transaction ID undo segment number of the transaction being skipped
XIDSLT NUMBER	Transaction ID slot number of the transaction being skipped
XIDSQN NUMBER	Transaction ID sequence number of the transaction being skipped

Usage Notes

If SQL Apply stops due to a particular transaction (for example, a DDL transaction), you can specify that transaction ID and then continue to apply. You can call this procedure multiple times for as many transactions as you want SQL Apply to ignore.

> **CAUTION: `SKIP_TRANSACTION` is an inherently dangerous operation. Do not invoke this procedure unless you have examined the transaction in question through the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view and have taken compensating actions at the logical standby database. `SKIP_TRANSACTION` is not the appropriate procedure to invoke to skip DML changes to a table.**
>
> **To skip a DML failure, use a `SKIP` procedure, such as `SKIP('DML','MySchema','MyFailed Table')`. Using the `SKIP_TRANSACTION` procedure for DML transactions may skip changes for other tables, thus logically corrupting them.**

- This procedure requires DBA privileges to execute.
- Use the DBA_LOGSTDBY_SKIP_TRANSACTION view to list the transactions that are going to be skipped by SQL Apply.
- Also, see the ALTER DATABASE START LOGICAL STANDBY SKIP FAILED TRANSACTION statement in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.

Exceptions

Table 92–28 SKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01031	Need DBA privileges
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested

Examples

To skip a DDL transaction with (XIDUSN, XIDSLT, XIDSQN) of (1.13.1726) you can register a rule as shown in the following example:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_TRANSACTION (-
     XIDUSN => 1, XIDSLT => 13, XIDSQN => 1726);
```

UNSKIP Procedure

Use the UNSKIP procedure to delete rules specified earlier with the SKIP procedure. The parameters specified in the UNSKIP procedure must match exactly for it to delete an already-specified rule.

The container_name argument is valid only in a CDB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP (
     stmt                    IN VARCHAR2,
     schema_name             IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     object_name             IN VARCHAR2 DEFUALT NULL,
     container_name          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

The parameter information for the UNSKIP procedure is the same as that described for the SKIP procedure. See Table 92–22 on page 92-31 for complete parameter information.

Exceptions

Table 92–29 UNSKIP Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01031	need DBA privileges to execute this procedure
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested

Usage Notes

CAUTION: If DML changes for a table have been skipped and not compensated for, you must follow the call to the UNSKIP procedure with a call to the INSTANTIATE_TABLE procedure to synchronize this table with those maintained by SQL Apply.

- This procedure requires DBA privileges to execute.
- Wildcards passed in the schema_name or the object_name parameter are not expanded. The wildcard character is matched at the character level. Thus, you can delete only one specified rule by invoking the UNSKIP procedure, and you will need a distinct UNSKIP procedure call to delete each rule that was previously specified.

  For example, assume you have specified the following two rules to skip applying DML statements to the HR.EMPLOYEE and HR.EMPTEMP tables:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP (STMT => 'DML',-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', -
     OBJECT_NAME => 'EMPLOYEE', -
     PROC_NAME => null);
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP (STMT => 'DML',-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', -
```

```
     OBJECT_NAME => 'EMPTEMP', -
     PROC_NAME => null);
```

In the following example, the wildcard in the TABLE_NAME parameter cannot be used to delete the rules that were specified:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP (STMT => 'DML',-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', -
     OBJECT_NAME => 'EMP%');
```

In fact, this UNSKIP procedure matches neither of the rules, because the wildcard character in the TABLE_NAME parameter is not expanded. Instead, the wildcard character will be used in an exact match to find the corresponding SKIP rule.

UNSKIP_ERROR Procedure

Use the UNSKIP_ERROR procedure to delete rules specified earlier with the SKIP_ERROR procedure. The parameters specified in the UNSKIP_ERROR procedure must match exactly for the procedure to delete an already-specified rule.

The container_name argument is valid only in a CDB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP_ERROR (
     stmt                      IN VARCHAR2,
     schema_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     object_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
     container_name            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

The parameter information for the UNSKIP_ERROR procedure is the same as that described for the SKIP_ERROR procedure. See Table 92–25 for complete parameter information.

Exceptions

Table 92–30 UNSKIP_ERROR Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01031	Need DBA privileges
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested

Usage Notes

- This procedure requires DBA privileges to execute.
- Wildcards passed in the schema_name or the object_name parameters are not expanded. Instead, the wildcard character is treated as any other character and an exact match is made. Thus, you can delete only one specified rule by invoking the UNSKIP_ERROR procedure, and you need a distinct UNSKIP_ERROR procedure call to delete each rule that you previously specified.

  For example, assume you have specified the following two rules to handle the HR.EMPLOYEE and HR.EMPTEMP tables:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR (STMT => 'DML',-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', -
     OBJECT_NAME => 'EMPLOYEE', -
     PROC_NAME => 'hr_employee_handler');
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR (STMT => 'DML',-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', -
     OBJECT_NAME => 'EMPTEMP', -
     PROC_NAME => 'hr_tempemp_handler');
```

  In this case, the following UNSKIP procedure cannot be used to delete the rules that you have specified:

```
SQL> EXECUTE DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP_ERROR (STMT => 'DML',-
     SCHEMA_NAME => 'HR', -
```

```
      OBJECT_NAME => 'EMP%');
```

In fact, the UNSKIP procedure will match neither of the rules, because the wildcard character in the OBJECT_NAME parameter will not be expanded.

Example

To remove a handler that was previously registered with SQL Apply from getting called on encountering an error, you can issue the following statement:

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP_ERROR ( -
      statement => 'NON_SCHEMA_DDL', -
      schema_name => NULL, -
      object_name => NULL);
```

UNSKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure

Use the UNSKIP_TRANSACTION procedure to delete rules specified earlier with the SKIP_TRANSACTION procedure. The parameters specified in the UNSKIP_TRANSACTION procedure must match exactly for the procedure to delete an already-specified rule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP_TRANSACTION (
     xidusn_p         IN NUMBER,
     xidslt_p         IN NUMBER,
     xidsqn_p         IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 92–31 UNSKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
XIDUSN	Transaction ID undo segment number of the transaction being skipped
XIDSLT	Transaction ID slot number of the transaction being skipped
XIDSQN	Transaction ID sequence number of the transaction being skipped

Exceptions

Table 92–32 UNSKIP_TRANSACTION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-01031	need DBA privileges to execute this procedure
ORA-16103	Logical Standby apply must be stopped to allow this operation
ORA-16104	invalid Logical Standby option requested

Usage Notes

- This procedure requires DBA privileges to execute.
- Query the DBA_LOGSTDBY_SKIP_TRANSACTION view to list the transactions that are going to be skipped by SQL Apply.

Examples

To remove a rule that was originally specified to skip the application of a transaction with (XIDUSN, XIDSLT, XIDSQN) of (1.13.1726) issue the following statement:

```
SQL> DBMS_LOGSTDBY.UNSKIP_TRANSACTION (XIDUSN => 1, XIDSLT => 13, XIDSQN => 1726);
```

93

DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT

As of Oracle Database 12*c* release 1 (12.1), SQL Apply processes have access to a context namespace called `LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT`. You can use the procedures provided in the `DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT` package to set and retrieve various parameters associated with `LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT`. This is useful when writing skip procedures that are registered with SQL Apply using the `DBMS_LOGSTBDY.SKIP` and `DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR` procedures.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for more information about SQL Apply and logical standby databases

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT

Overview

SQL Apply processes have access to a context namespace called LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT. Table 93–1 lists the predefined parameters associated with LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT that you can set and retrieve by using the procedures provided in the DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT package. The ability to set and retrieve the parameters in this way is useful when writing skip procedures that are registered with SQL Apply using the DBMS_LOGSTBDY.SKIP and DBMS_LOGSTDBY.SKIP_ERROR procedures.

Table 93–1 Predefined Parameters of Namespace LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT

Parameter	Description
STATEMENT	First 4000 bytes of the statement that the Apply process is processing.
STATEMENT_TYPE	See Table 92–23 on page 92-35 for a list of various statement types.
PACKAGE_SCHEMA	Schema that owns the PL/SQL package being processed (if applicable).
PACKAGE_NAME	Name of the PL/SQL package being processed (if applicable).
PROCEDURE_NAME	Name of the PL/SQL procedure being processed (if applicable).
CURRENT_SCHEMA	Current schema in effect when the DDL or PL/SQL procedure was executed at the primary.
XIDUSN	XIDUSN of the transaction at the primary database.
XIDSLT	XIDSLT of the transaction at the primary database.
XIDSQN	XIDSQN of the transaction at the primary database.
SCHEMA	Schema that owns the object being processed by SQL Apply (in the case of DML or DDL operations).
NAME	Object name being processed by SQL Apply (in case of DML or DDL operations).
CONTAINER_NAME	Container where the target object or the PL/SQL procedure resides (in the case of a multitenant container database (CDB)).
ERROR	Text of the original error encountered by the SQL Apply process (if applicable).
NEW_ERROR	Text of the new error to be raised by the SQL Apply process (if applicable, See the DBMS_LOGSTDBY SKIP_ERROR Procedure on page 92-40).
NEW_STMT	Text of the replacement statement that SQL Apply must execute (If applicable, See the DBMS_LOGSTDBY SKIP Procedure on page 92-31).
SKIP_ACTION	The skip action to be performed by SQL Apply (See the DBMS_LOGSTDBY SKIP Procedure on page 92-31).

Security Model

The security model for the `DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT` package is the same as for the `DBMS_LOGSTDBY` package.

See Also: DBMS_LOGSTDBY on page 93-1

Summary of DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT Subprograms

Table 93–2 DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT Procedure on page 93-6	Clears all parameters contained within namespace `LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT`.
CLEAR_CONTEXT Procedure on page 93-7	Clears the specific parameter.
GET_CONTEXT Procedure on page 93-8	Retrieves the value for the specified parameter.
SET_CONTEXT Procedure on page 93-9	Sets the named parameter with the specified value.

CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure clears all parameters contained within namespace `LSBY_APPLY_CONTEXT`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT.CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT;
```

Parameters

None

CLEAR_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure clears the specific parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT.CLEAR_CONTEXT (
   name             IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 93–3 CLEAR_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the parameter to be cleared.

GET_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure retrieves the value for the specified parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT.GET_CONTEXT (
   name             IN VARCHAR2,
   value            OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 93–4 GET_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the parameter.
value	The value retrieved for the parameter.

SET_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure sets the named parameter with the specified value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_LOGSTDBY_CONTEXT.SET_CONTEXT (
   name            IN VARCHAR2
   value           IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 93–5 SET_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the parameter to be set.
value	Value to be assigned to the parameter being set.

94

DBMS_METADATA

The DBMS_METADATA package provides a way for you to retrieve metadata from the database dictionary as XML or creation DDL and to submit the XML to re-create the object.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for more information and for examples of using the Metadata API

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_METADATA

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_METADATA` package.

Overview

You can use the DBMS_METADATA package to retrieve metadata and also to submit XML, as described in the following sections.

- Retrieving Metadata
- Submitting XML

Retrieving Metadata

If you are retrieving metadata, you can specify:

- The kind of object to be retrieved. This can be either a particular object type (such as a table, index, or procedure) or a heterogeneous collection of object types that form a logical unit (such as a database export or schema export).
- Optional selection criteria, such as owner or name.
- Parse items (attributes of the returned objects to be parsed and returned separately).
- Optional transformations on the output, implemented by XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformation) scripts. By default the output is represented in XML, but you can specify transformations (into SQL DDL, for example), which are implemented by XSLT stylesheets stored in the database or externally.

DBMS_METADATA provides the following retrieval interfaces:

- For programmatic use: OPEN, SET_FILTER, SET_COUNT, GET_QUERY, SET_PARSE_ITEM, ADD_TRANSFORM, SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM, SET_REMAP_PARAM, FETCH_xxx, and CLOSE retrieve multiple objects.
- For use in SQL queries and for browsing: GET_XML, GET_DDL and GET_SXML return metadata for a single named object. The GET_DEPENDENT_XML, GET_DEPENDENT_DDL, GET_GRANTED_XML, and GET_GRANTED_DDL interfaces return metadata for one or more dependent or granted objects. These procedures do not support heterogeneous object types.

Submitting XML

If you are submitting XML, you specify:

- The type of object
- Optional transform parameters to modify the object (for example, changing the object's owner)
- Parse items (attributes of the submitted objects to be parsed and submitted separately)
- Whether to execute the operation or simply return the generated DDL

DBMS_METADATA provides a programmatic interface for submission of XML. It is comprised of the following procedures: OPENW, ADD_TRANSFORM, SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM, SET_REMAP_PARAM, SET_PARSE_ITEM, CONVERT, PUT, and CLOSE.

Security Model

The DBMS_METADATA package considers a privileged user to be one who is connected as user SYS or who has the SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE role. The object views of the Oracle metadata model implement security as follows:

- Nonprivileged users can see the metadata of only their own objects.
- Nonprivileged users can also retrieve public synonyms, system privileges granted to them, and object privileges granted to them or by them to others. This also includes privileges granted to PUBLIC.
- If callers request objects they are not privileged to retrieve, no exception is raised; the object is simply not retrieved.
- If nonprivileged users are granted some form of access to an object in someone else's schema, they will be able to retrieve the grant specification through the Metadata API, but not the object's actual metadata.
- In stored procedures, functions, and definers-rights packages, roles (such as SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE) are disabled. Therefore, such a PL/SQL program can only fetch metadata for objects in its own schema. If you want to write a PL/SQL program that fetches metadata for objects in a different schema (based on the invoker's possession of SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE), you must make the program invokers-rights.
- For all objects that have passwords, except database links (for example, users and roles), the following rules apply:
  - A user who has the SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE can see all metadata for an object except the passwords for that object.
  - The SYS user, users who have the EXP_FULL_DATABASE role, and users who own an object can see all metadata for that object, including passwords.
- For database links the password is never displayed. For security reasons Oracle restricts visibility of the password value to SYS users who query the link$.passwordx column directly. Instead of the password, DBMS_METADATA returns the following invalid syntax:

  ```
  IDENTIFIED BY VALUES ':1'
  ```

  A user who knows the password of the database link can manually replace the :1 with the password.

Rules and Limits

In an Oracle Shared Server (OSS) environment, the DBMS_METADATA package must disable session migration and connection pooling. This results in any shared server process that is serving a session running the package to effectively become a default, dedicated server for the life of the session. You should ensure that sufficient shared servers are configured when the package is used and that the number of servers is not artificially limited by too small a value for the MAX_SHARED_SERVERS initialization parameter.

Data Structures - Object and Table Types

The DBMS_METADATA package defines, in the SYS schema, the following OBJECT and TABLE types.

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_parsed_item AS OBJECT (
  item            VARCHAR2(30),
  value           VARCHAR2(4000),
  object_row      NUMBER )
/

CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_parsed_item FOR sys.ku$_parsed_item;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_parsed_items IS TABLE OF sys.ku$_parsed_item
/

CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_parsed_items FOR sys.ku$_parsed_items;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_ddl AS OBJECT (
   ddlText        CLOB,
parsedItems sys.ku$_parsed_items )
/

CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_ddl FOR sys.ku$_ddl;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_ddls IS TABLE OF sys.ku$_ddl
/

CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_ddls FOR sys.ku$_ddls;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_multi_ddl AS OBJECT (
   object_row     NUMBER,
   ddls           sys.ku$_ddls )
/

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_multi_ddl FOR sys.ku$_multi_ddl;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_multi_ddls IS TABLE OF sys.ku$_multi_ddl;
/

CREATE OR REPLACE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_multi_ddls FOR
                          sys.ku$_multi_ddls;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_ErrorLine IS OBJECT (
   errorNumber    NUMBER,
   errorText      VARCHAR2(2000) )
/

CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_ErrorLine FOR sys.ku$_ErrorLine;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_ErrorLines IS TABLE OF sys.ku$_ErrorLine
/
CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$ErrorLines FOR sys.ku$_ErrorLines;

CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_SubmitResult AS OBJECT (
   ddl          sys.ku$_ddl,
   errorLines   sys.ku$_ErrorLines );
/
```

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_SubmitResults IS TABLE OF sys.ku$_SubmitResult
/

CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM ku$_SubmitResults FOR sys.ku$_SubmitResults;
```

Note: The maximum size of the VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR2, and RAW datatypes has been increased to 32 KB when the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter is set to 12.0 and the MAX_STRING_SIZE initialization parameter is set to EXTENDED. The DBMS_METADATA package supports this increased size unless the version of the metadata is earlier than 12.1.

Subprogram Groupings

The DBMS_METADATA subprograms are used to retrieve objects from, and submit XML to, a database. Some subprograms are used for both activities, while others are used only for retrieval or only for submission.

- Table 94–1 provides a summary, in alphabetical order, of DBMS_METADATA subprograms used to retrieve multiple objects from a database.
- Table 94–2 provides a summary, in alphabetical order, of DBMS_METADATA subprograms used to submit XML metadata to a database.

Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database

Table 94–1 lists the subprograms used for retrieving multiple objects from the database.

Table 94–1 DBMS_METADATA Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects

Subprogram	Description
ADD_TRANSFORM Function on page 94-12	Specifies a transform that `FETCH_xxx` applies to the XML representation of the retrieved objects
CLOSE Procedure on page 94-16	Invalidates the handle returned by `OPEN` and cleans up the associated state
FETCH_xxx Functions and Procedures on page 94-19	Returns metadata for objects meeting the criteria established by `OPEN`, `SET_FILTER`, `SET_COUNT`, `ADD_TRANSFORM`, and so on
GET_QUERY Function on page 94-26	Returns the text of the queries that are used by `FETCH_xxx`
GET_xxx Functions on page 94-22	Fetches the metadata for a specified object as XML, SXML, or DDL, using only a single call
OPEN Function on page 94-27	Specifies the type of object to be retrieved, the version of its metadata, and the object model
SET_COUNT Procedure on page 94-37	Specifies the maximum number of objects to be retrieved in a single `FETCH_xxx` call
SET_FILTER Procedure on page 94-38	Specifies restrictions on the objects to be retrieved, for example, the object name or schema
SET_PARSE_ITEM Procedure on page 94-49	Enables output parsing by specifying an object attribute to be parsed and returned
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Procedures on page 94-52	Specifies parameters to the XSLT stylesheets identified by `transform_handle`

Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database

Table 94–2 lists the subprograms used for submitting XML to the database.

Table 94–2 DBMS_METADATA Subprograms for Submitting XML

Subprogram	Description
ADD_TRANSFORM Function on page 94-12	Specifies a transform for the XML documents
CLOSE Procedure on page 94-16	Closes the context opened with `OPENW`
CONVERT Functions and Procedures on page 94-17	Converts an XML document to DDL
OPENW Function on page 94-34	Opens a write context
PUT Function on page 94-35	Submits an XML document to the database
SET_PARSE_ITEM Procedure on page 94-49	Specifies an object attribute to be parsed
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Procedures on page 94-52	`SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM` specifies a parameter to a transform `SET_REMAP_PARAM` specifies a remapping for a transform

Summary of All DBMS_METADATA Subprograms

Table 94–3 DBMS_METADATA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_TRANSFORM Function on page 94-12	Specifies a transform that FETCH_xxx applies to the XML representation of the retrieved objects
CLOSE Procedure on page 94-16	Invalidates the handle returned by OPEN and cleans up the associated state
CONVERT Functions and Procedures on page 94-17	Converts an XML document to DDL.
FETCH_xxx Functions and Procedures on page 94-19	Returns metadata for objects meeting the criteria established by OPEN, SET_FILTER, SET_COUNT, ADD_TRANSFORM, and so on
GET_xxx Functions on page 94-22	Fetches the metadata for a specified object as XML, SXML, or DDL, using only a single call
GET_QUERY Function on page 94-26	Returns the text of the queries that are used by FETCH_xxx
OPEN Function on page 94-27	Specifies the type of object to be retrieved, the version of its metadata, and the object model
OPENW Function on page 94-34	Opens a write context
PUT Function on page 94-35	Submits an XML document to the database
SET_COUNT Procedure on page 94-37	Specifies the maximum number of objects to be retrieved in a single FETCH_xxx call
SET_FILTER Procedure on page 94-38	Specifies restrictions on the objects to be retrieved, for example, the object name or schema
SET_PARSE_ITEM Procedure on page 94-49	Enables output parsing by specifying an object attribute to be parsed and returned
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Procedures on page 94-52	Specifies parameters to the XSLT stylesheets identified by transform_handle

ADD_TRANSFORM Function

This function is used for both retrieval and submission:

- When this procedure is used to retrieve objects, it specifies a transform that FETCH_xxx applies to the XML representation of the retrieved objects.
- When used to submit objects, it specifies a transform that CONVERT or PUT applies to the XML representation of the submitted objects. It is possible to add more than one transform.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9
- Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10
- "SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Procedures" on page 94-52 for information about how to modify and customize transform output

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.ADD_TRANSFORM (
   handle       IN NUMBER,
   name         IN VARCHAR2,
   encoding     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_type  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 94–4 ADD_TRANSFORM Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPEN when this transform is used to retrieve objects. Or the handle returned from OPENW when this transform is used in the submission of XML metadata.
name	The name of the transform. If the name contains a period, colon, or forward slash, it is interpreted as the URL of a user-supplied XSLT script. See *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*. Otherwise, name designates a transform implemented by DBMS_METADATA. See Table 94–5 for descriptions of available transforms.
encoding	The name of the Globalization Support character set in which the stylesheet pointed to by name is encoded. This is only valid if name is a URL. If left NULL and the URL is external to the database, UTF-8 encoding is assumed. If left NULL and the URL is internal to the database (that is, it begins with /oradb/), then the encoding is assumed to be the database character set.

Table 94–4 (Cont.) ADD_TRANSFORM Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
object_type	The definition of this parameter depends upon whether you are retrieving objects or submitting XML metadata. 1. When you use ADD_TRANFORM to retrieve objects, the following definition of object_type applies: Designates the object type to which the transform applies. (Note that this is an object type name, not a path name.) By default the transform applies to the object type of the OPEN handle. When the OPEN handle designates a heterogeneous object type, the following behavior can occur: ▪ if object_type is omitted, the transform applies to all object types within the heterogeneous collection ▪ if object_type is specified, the transform only applies to that specific object type within the collection If you omit this parameter you can add the DDL transform to all objects in a heterogeneous collection with a single call. If you supply this parameter, you can add a transform for a specific object type. 2. When you use ADD_TRANSFORM in the submission of XML metadata, this parameter is the object type to which the transform applies. By default, it is the object type of the OPENW handle. Because the OPENW handle cannot designate a heterogeneous object type, the caller would normally leave this parameter NULL in the ADD_TRANSFORM calls.

Table 94–5 Transforms Available on ADD_TRANSFORM Function

Object Type	Transform Name	Input Doc Type	Output Doc Type	Description
All	DDL	XML	DDL	Convert XML to SQL to create the object
All	MODIFY	XML	XML	Modify XML document according to transform parameters
Subset	SXML	XML	SXML	Convert XML to SXML
Subset	MODIFYSXML	SXML	SXML	Modify SXML document according to transform parameters
Subset	SXMLDDL	SXML	DDL	Convert SXML to DDL

Table 94–5 (Cont.) Transforms Available on ADD_TRANSFORM Function

Object Type	Transform Name	Input Doc Type	Output Doc Type	Description
Subset	ALTERXML	SXML difference document	ALTER_XML	Generate ALTER_XML from SXML difference document. (See the DBMS_METADATA_DIFF PL/SQL package for more information about SXML difference format.) The following parameters are valid for the ALTERXML transform: ■ XPATH - The XPATH of the object being altered ■ NAME - Name of the object being altered ■ ALTERABLE - Affirms that the object can be altered. If the object cannot be altered, a NOT_ALTERABLE element is inserted whose value indicates the reason. ■ CLAUSE_TYPE - The type of clause (for example, ADD_COLUMN) ■ COLUMN_ATTRIBUTE - The attribute being modified ■ CONSTRAINT_TYPE - The type of constraint (for example, UNIQUE or PRIMARY)
Subset	ALTERDDL	ALTER_XML	ALTER_DDL	Convert ALTER_XML to ALTER_DDL

Return Values

The opaque handle that is returned is used as input to SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM. Note that this handle is different from the handle returned by OPEN or OPENW; it refers to the transform, not the set of objects to be retrieved.

Usage Notes

- With no transforms added, objects are returned by default as XML documents. You call ADD_TRANSFORM to specify the XSLT stylesheets to be used to transform the returned XML documents.
- You can call ADD_TRANSFORM more than once to apply multiple transforms to XML documents. Transforms are applied in the order in which they were specified, the output of the first transform being used as input to the second, and so on.
- The output of a DDL transform is *not* an XML document. Therefore, no transform should be added after the DDL transform.
- Each transform expects a certain format XML document as input. If the input document is unspecified, metadata XML format is assumed.
- When the ALTERXML transform is used, parse items are returned in a PARSE_LIST element of the ALTER_XML document. Each PARSE_LIST_ITEM element contains an ITEM and a VALUE. For example:

```
<PARSE_LIST>
 <PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
```

```
  <ITEM>XPATH</ITEM>
  <VALUE>/sxml:TABLE/sxml:RELATIONAL_TABLE/sxml:COL_LIST/sxml:COL_LIST_
ITEM[14]</VALUE>
 </PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
 <PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
  <ITEM>NAME</ITEM>
  <VALUE>Z1</VALUE>
 </PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
 <PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
  <ITEM>CLAUSE_TYPE</ITEM>
  <VALUE>ADD_COLUMN</VALUE>
 </PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
 <PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
  <ITEM>COLUMN_ATTRIBUTE</ITEM>
  <VALUE>NOT_NULL</VALUE>
 </PARSE_LIST_ITEM>
</PARSE_LIST>
```

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OPERATION. ADD_TRANSFORM was called after the first call to FETCH_xxx for the OPEN context. After the first call to FETCH_xxx is made, no further calls to ADD_TRANSFORM for the current OPEN context are permitted.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. The arguments are inconsistent. Possible inconsistencies include the following:
  - encoding is specified even though name is not a URL
  - object_type is not part of the collection designated by handle

CLOSE Procedure

This procedure is used for both retrieval and submission. This procedure invalidates the handle returned by `OPEN` (or `OPENW`) and cleans up the associated state.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9
- Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.CLOSE (
   handle  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 94–6 CLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`handle`	The handle returned from `OPEN` (or `OPENW`).

Usage Notes

Note: The following notes apply only to object retrieval

You can prematurely terminate the stream of objects established by `OPEN` or (`OPENW`).

- If a call to `FETCH_xxx` returns `NULL`, indicating no more objects, a call to `CLOSE` is made transparently. In this case, you can still call `CLOSE` on the handle and not get an exception. (The call to `CLOSE` is not required.)
- If you know that only one specific object will be returned, you should explicitly call `CLOSE` after the single `FETCH_xxx` call to free resources held by the handle.

Exceptions

- `INVALID_ARGVAL`. The value for the `handle` parameter is `NULL` or invalid.

CONVERT Functions and Procedures

The CONVERT functions and procedures transform input XML documents. The CONVERT functions return creation DDL. The CONVERT procedures return either XML or DDL, depending on the specified transforms.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10

Syntax

The CONVERT functions are as follows:

```
DBMS_METADATA.CONVERT (
   handle   IN NUMBER,
   document IN sys.XMLType)
 RETURN sys.ku$_multi_ddls;

DBMS_METADATA.CONVERT (
  handle   IN NUMBER,
  document IN CLOB)
 RETURN sys.ku$_multi_ddls;
```

The CONVERT procedures are as follows:

```
DBMS_METADATA.CONVERT (
  handle   IN NUMBER,
  document IN sys.XMLType,
  result   IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB);

DBMS_METADATA.CONVERT (
  handle   IN NUMBER,
  document IN CLOB,
  result   IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 94–7 CONVERT Subprogram Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPENW.
document	The XML document containing object metadata of the type of the OPENW handle.
result	The converted document.

Return Values

Either XML or DDL, depending on the specified transforms.

Usage Notes

You can think of CONVERT as the second half of FETCH_xxx, either FETCH_DDL (for the function variants) or FETCH_CLOB (for the procedure variants). There are two differences:

- FETCH_xxx gets its XML document from the database, but CONVERT gets its XML document from the caller
- FETCH_DDL returns its results in a sys.ku$_ddls nested table, but CONVERT returns a sys.ku$_multi_ddls nested table

The transforms specified with ADD_TRANSFORM are applied in turn, and the result is returned to the caller. For the function variants, the DDL transform must be specified. If parse items were specified, they are returned in the parsedItems column. Parse items are ignored by the procedure variants.

The encoding of the XML document is embedded in its CLOB or XMLType representation. The version of the metadata is embedded in the XML. The generated DDL is valid for the database version specified in OPENW.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INCONSISTENT_OPERATION. No transform was specified. The DDL transform was not specified (function variants only).
- INCOMPATIBLE_DOCUMENT. The version of the XML document is not compatible with this version of the software.

FETCH_xxx Functions and Procedures

These functions and procedures return metadata for objects meeting the criteria established by OPEN, SET_FILTER, SET_COUNT, ADD_TRANSFORM, and so on. See "Usage Notes" on page 94-20 for the variants.

> **See Also:** For more information about related subprograms:
>
> - Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9

Syntax

The FETCH functions are as follows:

```
DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_XML (
   handle  IN NUMBER)
RETURN sys.XMLType;
```

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for a description of XMLType

```
DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_DDL (
   handle  IN NUMBER)
RETURN sys.ku$_ddls;

DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_CLOB (
   handle       IN NUMBER,
   cache_lob    IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   lob_duration IN PLS INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_LOB.SESSION)
RETURN CLOB;
```

The FETCH procedures are as follows:

```
DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_CLOB (
   handle  IN NUMBER,
   doc     IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB);

DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_XML_CLOB (
   handle  IN NUMBER,
   doc     IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB,
   parsed_items OUT sys.ku$_parsed_items,
   object_type_path OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 94–8 FETCH_xxx Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPEN.
cache_lob	TRUE=read LOB into buffer cache
lob_duration	The duration for the temporary LOB created by FETCH_CLOB, either DBMS_LOB.SESSION (the default) or DBMS_LOB.CALL.
doc	The metadata for the objects, or NULL if all objects have been returned.
parsed_items	A nested table containing the items specified by SET_PARSE_ITEM. If SET_PARSE_ITEM was not called, a NULL is returned.

Table 94–8 (Cont.) FETCH_xxx Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
object_type_path	For heterogeneous object types, this is the full path name of the object type for the objects returned by the call to FETCH_XXX. If handle designates a homogeneous object type, a NULL is returned.

Return Values

The metadata for the objects or NULL if all objects have been returned.

Usage Notes

These functions and procedures return metadata for objects meeting the criteria established by the call to OPEN that returned the handle, and subsequent calls to SET_FILTER, SET_COUNT, ADD_TRANSFORM, and so on. Each call to FETCH_xxx returns the number of objects specified by SET_COUNT (or less, if fewer objects remain in the underlying cursor) until all objects have been returned. After the last object is returned, subsequent calls to FETCH_xxx return NULL and cause the stream created by OPEN to be transparently closed.

There are several different FETCH_xxx functions and procedures:

- The FETCH_XML function returns the XML metadata for an object as an XMLType. It assumes that if any transform has been specified, that transform will produce an XML document. In particular, it assumes that the DDL transform has not been specified.
- The FETCH_DDL function returns the DDL (to create the object) in a sys.ku$_ddls nested table. It assumes that the DDL transform has been specified. Each row of the sys.ku$_ddls nested table contains a single DDL statement in the ddlText column; if requested, parsed items for the DDL statement will be returned in the parsedItems column. Multiple DDL statements may be returned under the following circumstances:
  - When you call SET_COUNT to specify a count greater than 1
  - When an object is transformed into multiple DDL statements. For example, A TYPE object that has a DDL transform applied to it can be transformed into both CREATE TYPE and CREATE TYPE BODY statements. A TABLE object can be transformed into a CREATE TABLE, and one or more ALTER TABLE statements
- The FETCH_CLOB function simply returns the object, transformed or not, as a CLOB. By default, the CLOB is read into the buffer cache and has session duration, but these defaults can be overridden with the cache_lob and lob_duration parameters.
- The FETCH_CLOB procedure returns the objects by reference in an IN OUT NOCOPY parameter. This is faster than the function variant, which returns LOBs by value, a practice that involves an expensive LOB copy.
- The FETCH_XML_CLOB procedure returns the XML metadata for the objects as a CLOB in an IN OUT NOCOPY parameter. This helps to avoid LOB copies, which can consume a lot of resources. It also returns a nested table of parse items and the full path name of the object type of the returned objects.
- All LOBs returned by FETCH_xxx are temporary LOBs. You must free the LOB. If the LOB is supplied as an IN OUT NOCOPY parameter, you must also create the LOB.

- If SET_PARSE_ITEM was called, FETCH_DDL and FETCH_XML_CLOB return attributes of the object's metadata (or the DDL statement) in a sys.ku$_parsed_items nested table. For FETCH_XML_CLOB, the nested table is an OUT parameter. For FETCH_DDL, it is a column in the returned sys.ku$_ddls nested table. Each row of the nested table corresponds to an item specified by SET_PARSE_ITEM and contains the following columns:
  - item—the name of the attribute as specified in the name parameter to SET_PARSE_ITEM.
  - value—the attribute value, or NULL if the attribute is not present in the DDL statement.
  - object-row—a positive integer indicating the object to which the parse item applies. If multiple objects are returned by FETCH_xxx, (because SET_COUNT specified a count greater than 1) then object_row=1 for all items for the first object, 2 for the second, and so on.
- The rows of the sys.ku$_parsed_items nested table are ordered by ascending object_row, but otherwise the row order is undetermined. To find a particular parse item within an object row the caller must search the table for a match on item.
- In general there is no guarantee that a requested parse item will be returned. For example, the parse item may not apply to the object type or to the particular line of DDL, or the item's value may be NULL.
- If SET_PARSE_ITEM was not called, NULL is returned as the value of the parsed items nested table.
- It is expected that the same variant of FETCH_xxx will be called for all objects selected by OPEN. That is, programs will not intermix calls to FETCH_XML, FETCH_DDL, FETCH_CLOB, and so on using the same OPEN handle. The effect of calling different variants is undefined; it might do what you expect, but there are no guarantees.
- Every object fetched will be internally consistent with respect to on-going DDL (and the subsequent recursive DML) operations against the dictionary. In some cases, multiple queries may be issued, either because the object type is heterogeneous or for performance reasons (for example, one query for heap tables, one for index-organized tables). Consequently the FETCH_xxx calls may in fact be fetches from different underlying cursors (meaning that read consistency is not guaranteed).

Exceptions

Most exceptions raised during execution of the query are propagated to the caller. Also, the following exceptions may be raised:

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INCONSISTENT_OPERATION. Either FETCH_XML was called when the DDL transform had been specified, or FETCH_DDL was called when the DDL transform had *not* been specified.

GET_xxx Functions

The following GET_xxx functions let you fetch metadata for objects with a single call:

- GET_XML
- GET_DDL
- GET_SXML
- GET_DEPENDENT_XML
- GET_DEPENDENT_DDL
- GET_GRANTED_XML
- GET_GRANTED_DDL

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.GET_XML (
object_type     IN VARCHAR2,
name            IN VARCHAR2,
schema          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA.GET_DDL (
object_type     IN VARCHAR2,
name            IN VARCHAR2,
schema          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DDL')
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA.GET_SXML (
object_type     IN VARCHAR2,
name            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
schema          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SXML')
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA.GET_DEPENDENT_XML (
object_type        IN VARCHAR2,
base_object_name   IN VARCHAR2,
base_object_schema IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
object_count       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 10000)
RETURN CLOB;
```

```
DBMS_METADATA.GET_DEPENDENT_DDL (
object_type         IN VARCHAR2,
base_object_name    IN VARCHAR2,
base_object_schema  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version             IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DDL',
object_count        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 10000)
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA.GET_GRANTED_XML (
object_type     IN VARCHAR2,
grantee         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
object_count    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 10000)
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA.GET_GRANTED_DDL (
object_type     IN VARCHAR2,
grantee         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
version         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
model           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
transform       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DDL',
object_count    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 10000)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 94–9 GET_xxx Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_type	The type of object to be retrieved. This parameter takes the same values as the OPEN object_type parameter, except that it cannot be a heterogeneous object type. The attributes of the object type must be appropriate to the function. That is, for GET_xxx it must be a named object.
name	The object name. It is used internally in a NAME filter. (If the name is longer than 30 characters, it will be used in a LONGNAME filter.) If this parameter is NULL, then no NAME or LONGNAME filter is specified. See Table 94–18 for a list of filters.
schema	The object schema. It is used internally in a SCHEMA filter. The default is the current user.
version	The version of metadata to be extracted. This parameter takes the same values as the OPEN version parameter.
model	The object model to use. This parameter takes the same values as the OPEN model parameter.
transform	The name of a transformation on the output. This parameter takes the same values as the ADD_TRANSFORM name parameter. For GET_XML this must not be DDL.
base_object_name	The base object name. It is used internally in a BASE_OBJECT_NAME filter.
base_object_schema	The base object schema. It is used internally in a BASE_OBJECT_SCHEMA filter. The default is the current user.

Table 94–9 (Cont.) GET_xxx Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee	The grantee. It is used internally in a GRANTEE filter. The default is the current user.
object_count	The maximum number of objects to return. See SET_COUNT Procedure on page 94-37.

Return Values

The metadata for the specified object as XML or DDL.

Usage Notes

- These functions allow you to fetch metadata for objects with a single call. They encapsulate calls to OPEN, SET_FILTER, and so on. The function you use depends on the characteristics of the object type and on whether you want XML, SXML, or DDL.
  - GET_xxx is used to fetch named objects, especially schema objects (tables, views).
  - GET_DEPENDENT_xxx is used to fetch dependent objects (audits, object grants).
  - GET_GRANTED_xxx is used to fetch granted objects (system grants, role grants).
- For some object types you can use more than one function. For example, you can use GET_xxx to fetch an index by name, or GET_DEPENDENT_xxx to fetch the same index by specifying the table on which it is defined.
- GET_xxx only returns a single named object.
- For GET_DEPENDENT_xxx and GET_GRANTED_xxx, an arbitrary number of dependent or granted objects can match the input criteria. You can specify an object count when fetching these objects. (The default count of 10000 should be adequate in most cases.)
- If the DDL transform is specified, session-level transform parameters are inherited.
- If you invoke these functions from SQL*Plus, you should set the PAGESIZE to 0 and set LONG to some large number to get complete, uninterrupted output.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- OBJECT_NOT_FOUND. The specified object was not found in the database.

Examples

Example: Fetch the XML Representation of SCOTT.EMP

To generate complete, uninterrupted output, set the PAGESIZE to 0 and set LONG to some large number, as shown, before executing your query.

```
SET LONG 2000000
SET PAGESIZE 0
SELECT DBMS_METADATA.GET_XML('TABLE','EMP','SCOTT')
FROM DUAL;
```

Example: Fetch the DDL for all Complete Tables in the Current Schema, Filter Out Nested Tables and Overflow Segments

This example fetches the DDL for all "complete" tables in the current schema, filtering out nested tables and overflow segments. The example uses `SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM` (with the handle value = `DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFORM` meaning "for the current session") to specify that storage clauses are not to be returned in the SQL DDL. Afterwards, the example resets the session-level parameters to their defaults.

To generate complete, uninterrupted output, set the `PAGESIZE` to 0 and set `LONG` to some large number, as shown, before executing your query.

```
SET LONG 2000000
SET PAGESIZE 0
EXECUTE DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_
TRANSFORM,'STORAGE',false);
SELECT DBMS_METADATA.GET_DDL('TABLE',u.table_name)
     FROM USER_ALL_TABLES u
     WHERE u.nested='NO'
     AND (u.iot_type is null or u.iot_type='IOT');
EXECUTE DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_
TRANSFORM,'DEFAULT');
```

Example: Fetch the DDL For All Object Grants On HR.EMPLOYEES

```
SELECT DBMS_METADATA.GET_DEPENDENT_DDL('OBJECT_GRANT',
    'EMPLOYEES','HR') FROM DUAL;
```

Example: Fetch the DDL For All System Grants Granted To SCOTT

```
SELECT DBMS_METADATA.GET_GRANTED_DDL('SYSTEM_GRANT','SCOTT')
    FROM DUAL;
```

GET_QUERY Function

This function returns the text of the queries that are used by FETCH_xxx. This function assists in debugging.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.GET_QUERY (
   handle  IN NUMBER)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 94–10 GET_QUERY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPEN. It cannot be the handle for a heterogeneous object type.

Return Values

The text of the queries that will be used by FETCH_xxx.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for the handle parameter.

OPEN Function

This function specifies the type of object to be retrieved, the version of its metadata, and the object model. The return value is an opaque context handle for the set of objects to be used in subsequent calls.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.OPEN (
   object_type  IN VARCHAR2,
   version      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
   model        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE',
   network_link IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 94–11 Open Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_type	The type of object to be retrieved. Table 94–12 lists the valid type names and their meanings. These object types will be supported for the ORACLE model of metadata (see model in this table). The Attributes column in Table 94–12 specifies some object type attributes: ■ Schema objects, such as tables, belong to schemas. ■ Named objects have unique names (if they are schema objects, the name is unique to the schema). ■ Dependent objects, such as indexes, are defined with reference to a base schema object. ■ Granted objects are granted or assigned to a user or role and therefore have a named grantee. ■ Heterogeneous object types denote a collection of related objects of different types. See Table 94–13 for a listing of object types returned for the heterogeneous object type. These attributes are relevant when choosing object selection criteria. See "SET_FILTER Procedure" on page 94-38 for more information.
version	The version of metadata to be extracted. Database objects or attributes that are incompatible with the version will not be extracted. Legal values for this parameter are as follows: COMPATIBLE (default)—the version of the metadata corresponds to the database compatibility level. LATEST—the version of the metadata corresponds to the database version. A specific database version. The value cannot be lower than 9.2.0.

Table 94–11 (Cont.) Open Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
model	Specifies which view to use, because the API can support multiple views on the metadata. Only the ORACLE model is supported.
network_link	The name of a database link to the database whose metadata is to be retrieved. If NULL (the default), metadata is retrieved from the database on which the caller is running

Table 94–12 provides the name, meaning, attributes, and notes for the DBMS_METADATA package object types. In the attributes column, S represents a schema object, N represents a named object, D represents a dependent object, G represents a granted object, and H represents a heterogeneous object.

Table 94–12 DBMS_METADATA: Object Types

Type Name	Meaning	Attributes	Notes
AQ_QUEUE	queues	SND	Dependent on table
AQ_QUEUE_TABLE	additional metadata for queue tables	ND	Dependent on table
AQ_TRANSFORM	transforms	SN	None
ASSOCIATION	associate statistics	D	None
AUDIT	audits of SQL statements	DG	Modeled as dependent, granted object. The base object name is the statement audit option name (for example, ALTER SYSTEM). There is no base object schema. The grantee is the user or proxy whose statements are audited.
AUDIT_OBJ	audits of schema objects	D	None
CLUSTER	clusters	SN	None
COMMENT	comments	D	None
CONSTRAINT	constraints	SND	Does not include: ■ primary key constraint for IOT ■ column NOT NULL constraints ■ certain REF SCOPE and WITH ROWID constraints for tables with REF columns
CONTEXT	application contexts	N	None
DATABASE_EXPORT	all metadata objects in a database	H	Corresponds to a full database export
DB_LINK	database links	SN	Modeled as schema objects because they have owners. For public links, the owner is PUBLIC. For private links, the creator is the owner.
DEFAULT_ROLE	default roles	G	Granted to a user by ALTER USER
DIMENSION	dimensions	SN	None
DIRECTORY	directories	N	None
FGA_POLICY	fine-grained audit policies	D	Not modeled as named object because policy names are not unique.

Table 94–12 (Cont.) DBMS_METADATA: Object Types

Type Name	Meaning	Attributes	Notes
FUNCTION	stored functions	SN	None
INDEX_STATISTICS	precomputed statistics on indexes	D	The base object is the index's table.
INDEX	indexes	SND	None
INDEXTYPE	indextypes	SN	None
JAVA_SOURCE	Java sources	SN	None
JOB	jobs	S	None
LIBRARY	external procedure libraries	SN	None
MATERIALIZED_VIEW	materialized views	SN	None
MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	materialized view logs	D	None
OBJECT_GRANT	object grants	DG	None
OPERATOR	operators	SN	None
PACKAGE	stored packages	SN	By default, both package specification and package body are retrieved. See "SET_FILTER Procedure" on page 94-38.
PACKAGE_SPEC	package specifications	SN	None
PACKAGE_BODY	package bodies	SN	None
PROCEDURE	stored procedures	SN	None
PROFILE	profiles	N	None
PROXY	proxy authentications	G	Granted to a user by ALTER USER
REF_CONSTRAINT	referential constraint	SND	None
REFRESH_GROUP	refresh groups	SN	None
RESOURCE_COST	resource cost info		None
RLS_CONTEXT	driving contexts for enforcement of fine-grained access-control policies	D	Corresponds to the DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY_CONTENT procedure
RLS_GROUP	fine-grained access-control policy groups	D	Corresponds to the DBMS_RLS.CREATE_GROUP procedure
RLS_POLICY	fine-grained access-control policies	D	Corresponds to DBMS_RLS.ADD_GROUPED_POLICY. Not modeled as named objects because policy names are not unique.
RMGR_CONSUMER_GROUP	resource consumer groups	SN	Data Pump does not use these object types. Instead, it exports resource manager objects as procedural objects.
RMGR_INTITIAL_CONSUMER_GROUP	assign initial consumer groups to users	G	None
RMGR_PLAN	resource plans	SN	None
RMGR_PLAN_DIRECTIVE	resource plan directives	D	Dependent on resource plan
ROLE	roles	N	None

Table 94–12 (Cont.) DBMS_METADATA: Object Types

Type Name	Meaning	Attributes	Notes
ROLE_GRANT	role grants	G	None
ROLLBACK_SEGMENT	rollback segments	N	None
SCHEMA_EXPORT	all metadata objects in a schema	H	Corresponds to user-mode export.
SEQUENCE	sequences	SN	None
SYNONYM	synonyms	See notes	Private synonyms are schema objects. Public synonyms are not, but for the purposes of this API, their schema name is PUBLIC. The name of a synonym is considered to be the synonym itself. For example, in CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM FOO FOR BAR, the resultant object is considered to have name FOO and schema PUBLIC.
SYSTEM_GRANT	system privilege grants	G	None
TABLE	tables	SN	None
TABLE_DATA	metadata describing row data for a table, nested table, or partition	SND	For partitions, the object name is the partition name. For nested tables, the object name is the storage table name. The base object is the top-level table to which the table data belongs. For nested tables and partitioning, this is the top-level table (*not* the parent table or partition). For nonpartitioned tables and non-nested tables this is the table itself.
TABLE_EXPORT	metadata for a table and its associated objects	H	Corresponds to table-mode export
TABLE_STATISTICS	precomputed statistics on tables	D	None
TABLESPACE	tablespaces	N	None
TABLESPACE_QUOTA	tablespace quotas	G	Granted with ALTER USER
TRANSPORTABLE_EXPORT	metadata for objects in a transportable tablespace set	H	Corresponds to transportable tablespace export
TRIGGER	triggers	SND	None
TRUSTED_DB_LINK	trusted links	N	None
TYPE	user-defined types	SN	By default, both type and type body are retrieved. See "SET_FILTER Procedure" on page 94-38.
TYPE_SPEC	type specifications	SN	None
TYPE_BODY	type bodies	SN	None
USER	users	N	None
VIEW	views	SN	None
XMLSCHEMA	XML schema	SN	The object's name is its URL (which may be longer than 30 characters). Its schema is the user who registered it.

Table 94–12 (Cont.) DBMS_METADATA: Object Types

Type Name	Meaning	Attributes	Notes
XS_USER	Real Application Security (RAS) user	N	Corresponds to RAS users
XS_ROLE	Real Application Security (RAS) role	N	Corresponds to RAS roles
XS_ROLESET	Real Application Security (RAS) rolesets	N	Corresponds to RAS rolesets
XS_ROLE_GRANT	Real Application Security (RAS) role grants	N	Corresponds to RAS role grants
XS_SECURITY_CLASS	Real Application Security (RAS) security class	SN	Corresponds to RAS security classes
XS_DATA_SECURITY	Real Application Security (RAS) data security policy	SN	Corresponds to RAS data security policies
XS_ACL	Real Application Security (RAS) ACL	SN	Corresponds to RAS access control lists (ACLs) and associated access control entries (ACEs)
XS_ACL_PARAM	Real Application Security (RAS) ACL parameter	N	Corresponds to RAS access control lists (ACL) parameters
XS_NAMESPACE	Real Application Security (RAS) namespace	N	Corresponds to RAS namespaces.

Table 94–13 lists the types of objects returned for the major heterogeneous object types. For SCHEMA_EXPORT, certain object types are only returned if the INCLUDE_USER filter is specified at TRUE. In the table, such object types are marked INCLUDE_USER.

Table 94–13 Object Types Returned for the Heterogeneous Object Type

Object Type	DATABASE_ EXPORT	SCHEMA_ EXPORT	TABLE_ EXPORT	TRANSPORTABLE_ EXPORT
ASSOCIATION	Yes	No	No	No
AUDIT	Yes	No	No	No
AUDIT_OBJ	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CLUSTER	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
COMMENT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CONSTRAINT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CONTEXT	Yes	No	No	No
DB_LINK	Yes	Yes	No	No
DEFAULT_ROLE	Yes	INCLUDE_USER	No	No
DIMENSION	Yes	Yes	No	No
DIRECTORY	Yes	No	No	No
FGA_POLICY	Yes	No	No	Yes
FUNCTION	Yes	Yes	No	No
INDEX_STATISTICS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
INDEXTYPE	Yes	Yes	No	No

Table 94–13 (Cont.) Object Types Returned for the Heterogeneous Object Type

Object Type	DATABASE_ EXPORT	SCHEMA_ EXPORT	TABLE_ EXPORT	TRANSPORTABLE_ EXPORT
JAVA_SOURCE	Yes	Yes	No	No
JOB	Yes	Yes	No	No
LIBRARY	Yes	Yes	No	No
MATERIALIED_VIEW	Yes	Yes	No	No
MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	Yes	Yes	No	No
OBJECT_GRANT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
OPERATOR	Yes	Yes	No	No
PACKAGE	Yes	Yes	No	No
PACKAGE_SPEC	Yes	Yes	No	No
PACKAGE_BODY	Yes	Yes	No	No
PASSWORD_HISTORY	Yes	INCLUDE_USER	No	No
PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION	Yes	No	No	No
PROCEDURE	Yes	Yes	No	No
PROFILE	Yes	No	No	No
PROXY	Yes	No	No	No
REF_CONSTRAINT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
REFRESH_GROUP	Yes	Yes	No	No
RESOURCE_COST	Yes	No	No	No
RLS_CONTEXT	Yes	No	No	Yes
RLS_GROUP	Yes	No	No	Yes
RLS_POLICY	Yes	Table data is retrieved according to policy	Table data is retrieved according to policy	Yes
ROLE	Yes	No	No	No
ROLE_GRANT	Yes	No	No	No
ROLLBACK_SEGMENT	Yes	No	No	No
SEQUENCE	Yes	Yes	No	No
SYNONYM	Yes	Yes	No	No
SYSTEM_GRANT	Yes	INCLUDE_USER	No	No
TABLE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
TABLE_DATA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
TABLE_STATISTICS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
TABLESPACE	Yes	No	No	No
TABLESPACE_QUOTA	Yes	INCLUDE_USER	No	No
TRIGGER	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
TRUSTED_DB_LINK	Yes	No	No	No

Table 94–13 (Cont.) Object Types Returned for the Heterogeneous Object Type

Object Type	DATABASE_ EXPORT	SCHEMA_ EXPORT	TABLE_ EXPORT	TRANSPORTABLE_ EXPORT
TYPE	Yes	Yes	No	Yes, if the types are used by tables in the transportable set
TYPE_SPEC	Yes	Yes	No	Yes, if the types are used by tables in the transportable set
TYPE_BODY	Yes	Yes	No	Yes, if the types are used by tables in the transportable set
USER	Yes	INCLUDE_USER	No	No
VIEW	Yes	Yes	No	No
XMLSCHEMA	Yes	Yes	No	No

Return Values

An opaque handle to the class of objects. This handle is used as input to SET_FILTER, SET_COUNT, ADD_TRANSFORM, GET_QUERY, SET_PARSE_ITEM, FETCH_xxx, and CLOSE.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OBJECT_PARAM. The version or model parameter was not valid for the object_type.

OPENW Function

This function specifies the type of object to be submitted and the object model. The return value is an opaque context handle.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.OPENW
  (object_type  IN VARCHAR2,
  version       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'COMPATIBLE',
  model         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ORACLE')
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 94–14 OPENW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_type	The type of object to be submitted. Valid types names and their meanings are listed in Table 94–12. The type cannot be a heterogeneous object type.
version	The version of DDL to be generated by the CONVERT function. DDL clauses that are incompatible with the version will not be generated. The legal values for this parameter are as follows: ■ COMPATIBLE - This is the default. The version of the DDL corresponds to the database compatibility level. Database compatibility must be set to 9.2.0 or higher. ■ LATEST - The version of the DDL corresponds to the database version. ■ A specific database version. The value cannot be lower than 9.2.0.
model	Specifies which view to use. Only the Oracle proprietary (ORACLE) view is supported by DBMS_METADATA.

Return Values

An opaque handle to write context. This handle is used as input to the ADD_TRANSFORM, CONVERT, PUT, and CLOSE procedures.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OBJECT_PARAM. The model parameter was not valid for the object_type.

PUT Function

This function submits an XML document containing object metadata to the database to create the object.

> **See Also:** For more information about related subprograms:
>
> - Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.PUT (
   handle     IN             NUMBER,
   document   IN             sys.XMLType,
   flags      IN             NUMBER,
   results    IN OUT NOCOPY  sys.ku$_SubmitResults)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_METADATA.PUT (
   handle     IN             NUMBER,
   document   IN             CLOB,
   flags      IN             NUMBER,
   results    IN OUT NOCOPY  sys.ku$_SubmitResults)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 94–15 PUT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPENW.
document	The XML document containing object metadata for the type of the OPENW handle.
flags	Reserved for future use
results	Detailed results of the operation.

Return Values

TRUE if all SQL operations succeeded; FALSE if there were any errors.

Usage Notes

The PUT function converts the XML document to DDL just as CONVERT does (applying the specified transforms in turn) and then submits each resultant DDL statement to the database. As with CONVERT, the DDL transform must be specified. The DDL statements and associated parse items are returned in the sys.ku$_SubmitResults nested table. With each DDL statement is a nested table of error lines containing any errors or exceptions raised by the statement.

The encoding of the XML document is embedded in its CLOB or XMLType representation. The version of the metadata is embedded in the XML. The generated DDL is valid for the database version specified in OPENW.

Exceptions

- `INVALID_ARGVAL`. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- `INCONSISTENT_OPERATION`. The DDL transform was not specified.
- `INCOMPATIBLE_DOCUMENT`. The version of the XML document is not compatible with this version of the software.

SET_COUNT Procedure

This procedure specifies the maximum number of objects to be retrieved in a single FETCH_xxx call. By default, each call to FETCH_xxx returns one object. You can use the SET_COUNT procedure to override this default. If FETCH_xxx is called from a client, specifying a count value greater than 1 can result in fewer server round trips and, therefore, improved performance.

For heterogeneous object types, a single FETCH_xxx operation only returns objects of a single object type.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_COUNT (
   handle           IN NUMBER,
   value            IN NUMBER,
   object_type_path IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 94–16 SET_COUNT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPEN.
value	The maximum number of objects to retrieve.
object_type_path	A path name designating the object types to which the count value applies. By default, the count value applies to the object type of the OPEN handle. When the OPEN handle designates a heterogeneous object type, behavior can be either of the following: ■ if object_type_path is omitted, the count applies to all object types within the heterogeneous collection ■ if object_type_path is specified, the count only applies to the specific node (or set of nodes) within the tree of object types forming the heterogeneous collection

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OPERATION. SET_COUNT was called after the first call to FETCH_xxx for the OPEN context. After the first call to FETCH_xxx is made, no further calls to SET_COUNT for the current OPEN context are permitted.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. object_type parameter is not consistent with handle.

SET_FILTER Procedure

This procedure specifies restrictions on the objects to be retrieved, for example, the object name or schema.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER (
   handle           IN NUMBER,
   name             IN VARCHAR2,
   value            IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type_path IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER (
   handle            IN NUMBER,
   name              IN VARCHAR2,
   value             IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   object_type_path  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER (
   handle            IN NUMBER,
   name              IN VARCHAR2,
   value             IN NUMBER,
   object_type_path  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 94–17 SET_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPEN.
name	The name of the filter. For each filter, Table 94–18 lists the object_type it applies to, its name, its datatype (text or Boolean) and its meaning or effect (including its default value, if any). The Datatype column of Table 94–18 also indicates whether a text filter is an expression filter. An expression filter is the right-hand side of a SQL comparison (that is, a SQL comparison operator (=, !=, and so on.)) and the value compared against. The value must contain parentheses and quotation marks where appropriate. Note that in PL/SQL and SQL*Plus, two single quotes (*not* a double quote) are needed to represent an apostrophe. For example, an example of a NAME_EXPR filter in PL/SQL is as follows: 'IN (''DEPT'',''EMP'')' The filter value is combined with a particular object attribute to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches the objects. In the preceding example, the filter is combined with the attribute corresponding to an object name; objects named 'DEPT' and 'EMP' are selected.
value	The value of the filter. Text, Boolean, and Numeric filters are supported.

Table 94–17 (Cont.) SET_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_type_path	A path name designating the object types to which the filter applies. By default, the filter applies to the object type of the OPEN handle. When the OPEN handle designates a heterogeneous object type, you can use this parameter to specify a filter for a specific node or set of nodes within the tree of object types that form the heterogeneous collection. See Table 94–19 for a listing of some of the values for this parameter.

Table 94–18 describes the object type, name, datatype, and meaning of the filters available with the SET_FILTER procedure.

Table 94–18 SET_FILTER: Filters

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
Named objects	NAME	Text	Objects with this exact name are selected.
Named objects	NAME_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the object attribute corresponding to the object name to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches the objects. By default, all named objects of object_type are selected.
Named objects	EXCLUDE_NAME_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the object name to specify objects that are to be excluded from the set of objects fetched. By default, all named objects of the object type are selected.
TABLE_EXPORT	EXCLUDE_TABLES	Boolean	If TRUE, all paths associated with tables are excluded from the set of objects fetched. If FALSE (the default), all paths associated with tables are fetched.
Schema objects	SCHEMA	Text	Objects in this schema are selected. If the object type is SYNONYM, specify PUBLIC to select public synonyms.
Schema objects	SCHEMA_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the object's schema. The default is determined as follows: - if BASE_OBJECT_SCHEMA is specified, then objects in that schema are selected; - otherwise, objects in the current schema are selected.
PACKAGE, TYPE	SPECIFICATION	Boolean	If TRUE, retrieve the package or type specification. Defaults to TRUE.
PACKAGE, TYPE	BODY	Boolean	If TRUE, retrieve the package or type body. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, CLUSTER, INDEX, TABLE_DATA, TABLE_EXPORT, TRANSPORTABLE_EXPORT	TABLESPACE	Text	Objects in this tablespace (or having a partition in this tablespace) are selected.

Table 94–18 (Cont.) SET_FILTER: Filters

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE, CLUSTER, INDEX,TABLE_DATA, TABLE_EXPORT, TRANSPORTABLE_EXPORT	TABLESPACE_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the object's tablespace (or in the case of a partitioned table or index, the partition's tablespaces). By default, objects in all tablespaces are selected.
TABLE, objects dependent on tables	PRIMARY	Boolean	If TRUE, retrieve primary tables (that is, tables for which the secondary object bit in obj$ is clear. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, objects dependent on tables	SECONDARY	Boolean	If TRUE, retrieve secondary tables (that is, tables for which the secondary object bit in obj$ is set). Defaults to TRUE.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_NAME	Text	Objects are selected that are defined or granted on objects with this name. Specify SCHEMA for triggers on schemas. Specify DATABASE for database triggers. Column-level comments cannot be selected by column name; the base object name must be the name of the table, view, or materialized view containing the column.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_ SCHEMA	Text	Objects are selected that are defined or granted on objects in this schema. If BASE_OBJECT_NAME is specified with a value other than SCHEMA or DATABASE, this defaults to the current schema.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_ NAME_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the name of the base object. Not valid for schema and database triggers.
Dependent Objects	EXCLUDE_BASE_ OBJECT_NAME_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the name of the base object to specify objects that are to be excluded from the set of objects fetched. Not valid for schema and database triggers.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_ SCHEMA_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the schema of the base object.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_TYPE	Text	The object type of the base object.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_ TYPE_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the object type of the base object. By default no filtering is done on object type.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_ TABLESPACE	Text	The tablespace of the base object.
Dependent Objects	BASE_OBJECT_ TABLESPACE_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the tablespaces of the base object. By default, no filtering is done on the tablespace.
INDEX, TRIGGER	SYSTEM_GENERATED	Boolean	If TRUE, select indexes or triggers even if they are system-generated. If FALSE, omit system-generated indexes or triggers. Defaults to TRUE.
Granted Objects	GRANTEE	Text	Objects are selected that are granted to this user or role. Specify PUBLIC for grants to PUBLIC.
Granted Objects	PRIVNAME	Text	The name of the privilege or role to be granted. For TABLESPACE_QUOTA, only UNLIMITED can be specified.

Table 94–18 (Cont.) SET_FILTER: Filters

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
Granted Objects	PRIVNAME_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the privilege or role name. By default, all privileges/roles are returned.
Granted Objects	GRANTEE_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the grantee name.
Granted Objects	EXCLUDE_GRANTEE_ EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the grantee name to specify objects that are to be excluded from the set of objects fetched.
OBJECT_GRANT	GRANTOR	Text	Object grants are selected that are granted by this user.
SYNONYM, JAVA_ SOURCE, XMLSCHEMA	LONGNAME	Text	A name longer than 30 characters. Objects with this exact name are selected. If the object name is 30 characters or less, the NAME filter must be used.
SYNONYM, JAVA_ SOURCE, XMLSCHEMA	LONGNAME_EXPR	Text	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to the object's long name. By default, no filtering is done on the long name of an object.
All objects	CUSTOM_FILTER	Text	The text of a WHERE condition. The condition is appended to the query that fetches the objects. By default, no custom filter is used. The other filters are intended to meet the needs of the majority of users. Use CUSTOM_FILTER when no defined filters exists for your purpose. Of necessity such a filter depends on the detailed structure of the UDTs and views used in the query. Because filters may change from version to version, upward compatibility is not guaranteed.
All objects	EDITION	Text	The edition filter is accepted for any object type, but affects only objects that support editions. The filter is only accepted for local objects (that is, the network_ link parameter is not specified in the OPEN call). The edition name must be a valid edition name. If an edition is not specified, the edition of the active session is used.
SCHEMA_EXPORT	SCHEMA	Text	The schema whose objects are selected.
SCHEMA_EXPORT	SCHEMA_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is either: combined with the attribute corresponding to a schema name to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches schema objects, combined with the attribute corresponding to a base schema name to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches dependent objects. By default the current user's objects are selected.
SCHEMA_EXPORT	INCLUDE_USER	Boolean	If TRUE, retrieve objects containing privileged information about the user. For example, USER, PASSWORD_HISTORY, TABLESPACE_QUOTA. Defaults to FALSE.
TABLE_EXPORT	SCHEMA	Text	Objects (tables and their dependent objects) in this schema are selected.

Table 94–18 (Cont.) SET_FILTER: Filters

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE_EXPORT	SCHEMA_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is either: combined with the attribute corresponding to a schema name to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches the tables, combined with the attribute corresponding to a base schema name to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches the tables' dependent objects. By default the current user's objects are selected.
TABLE_EXPORT	NAME	Text	The table with this exact name is selected along with its dependent objects.
TABLE_EXPORT	NAME_EXPR	Text expression	The filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to a table name in the queries that fetch tables and their dependent objects. By default all tables in the selected schemas are selected, along with their dependent objects.
Heterogeneous objects	BEGIN_WITH	Text	The fully qualified path name of the first object type in the heterogeneous collection to be retrieved. Objects normally fetched prior to this object type will not be retrieved.
Heterogeneous objects	BEGIN_AFTER	Text	The fully qualified path name of an object type after which the heterogeneous retrieval should begin. Objects of this type will not be retrieved, nor will objects normally fetched prior to this object type.
Heterogeneous objects	END_BEFORE	Text	The fully qualified path name of an object type where the heterogeneous retrieval should end. Objects of this type will not be retrieved, nor will objects normally fetched after this object type.
Heterogeneous objects	END_WITH	Text	The fully qualified path name of the last object type in the heterogeneous collection to be retrieved. Objects normally fetched after this object type will not be retrieved.
Heterogeneous objects	INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR, EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR	Text expression	For these two filters, the filter value is combined with the attribute corresponding to an object type path name to produce a WHERE condition in the query that fetches the object types belonging to the heterogeneous collection. Objects of types satisfying this condition are included (INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR) or excluded (EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR) from the set of object types fetched. Path names in the filter value do not have to be fully qualified. See Table 94–19 for valid path names that can be used with these filters. BEGIN_WITH, BEGIN_AFTER, END_BEFORE, END_WITH, INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR, and EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR all restrict the set of object types in the heterogeneous collection. By default, objects of all object types in the heterogeneous collection are retrieved.

Usage Notes

- Each call to SET_FILTER causes a WHERE condition to be added to the underlying query that fetches the set of objects. The WHERE conditions are ANDed together, so you can use multiple SET_FILTER calls to refine the set of objects to be returned. For example to specify that you want the object named EMP in schema SCOTT, do the following:

```
SET_FILTER(handle,'SCHEMA','SCOTT');
SET_FILTER(handle,'NAME','EMP');
```

- You can use the same text expression filter multiple times with different values. All the filter conditions will be applied to the query. For example, to get objects with names between Felix and Oscar, do the following:

```
SET_FILTER(handle,'NAME_EXPR','>=''FELIX''');
SET_FILTER(handle,'NAME_EXPR','<=''OSCAR''');
```

- With SET_FILTER, you can specify the schema of objects to be retrieved, but security considerations may override this specification. If the caller is SYS or has SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE, then any object can be retrieved; otherwise, only the following can be retrieved:
  - Schema objects owned by the current user
  - Public synonyms
  - System privileges granted to the current user or to PUBLIC
  - Grants on objects for which the current user is owner, grantor, or grantee (either explicitly or as PUBLIC).
  - SCHEMA_EXPORT where the name is the current user
  - TABLE_EXPORT where SCHEMA is the current user

  If you request objects that you are not privileged to retrieve, no exception is raised; the object is not retrieved, as if it did not exist.

  In stored procedures, functions, and definers-rights packages, roles (such as SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE) are disabled. Therefore, such a PL/SQL program can only fetch metadata for objects in its own schema. If you want to write a PL/SQL program that fetches metadata for objects in a different schema (based on the invoker's possession of SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE), you must make the program invokers-rights.

- For heterogeneous object types, the BEGIN_WITH and BEGIN_AFTER filters allow restart on an object type boundary. Appropriate filter values are returned by the FETCH_XML_CLOB procedure.

  Filters on heterogeneous objects provide default values for filters on object types within the collection. You can override this default for a particular object type by specifying the appropriate filter for the specific object type path. For example, for SCHEMA_EXPORT the NAME filter specifies the schema to be fetched including all the tables in the schema, but you can further restrict this set of tables by supplying a NAME_EXPR filter explicitly for the TABLE object type path. Table 94–19 lists valid object type path names for the major heterogeneous object types along with an explanation of the scope of each path name. (The same information is available in the following catalog views: DATABASE_EXPORT_OBJECTS, SCHEMA_EXPORT_OBJECTS, and TABLE_EXPORT_OBJECTS.) See Table 94–18 for filters defined for each path name. These path names are valid in the INCLUDE_PATH_EXPR and EXCLUDE_PATH_EXPR filters. Path names marked with an asterisk (*) are *only* valid in those filters; they cannot be used as values of the SET_FILTER object_type_path parameter.

Table 94–19 Object Type Path Names for Heterogeneous Object Types

Heterogeneous Type	Path Name (*=valid only in xxx_PATH_EXPR)	Scope
TABLE_EXPORT	AUDIT_OBJ	Object audits on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	COMMENT	Table and column comments for the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	CONSTRAINT	Constraints (including referential constraints) on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	*GRANT	Object grants on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	INDEX	Indexes (including domain indexes) on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	OBJECT_GRANT	Object grants on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	REF_CONSTRAINT	Referential (foreign key) constraints on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	STATISTICS	Statistics on the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	TABLE_DATA	Row data for the selected tables
TABLE_EXPORT	TRIGGER	Triggers on the selected tables
SCHEMA_EXPORT	ASSOCIATION	Statistics type associations for objects in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	AUDIT_OBJ	Audits on all objects in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	CLUSTER	Clusters in the selected schemas and their indexes
SCHEMA_EXPORT	COMMENT	Comments on all objects in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	CONSTRAINT	Constraints (including referential constraints) on all objects in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	DB_LINK	Private database links in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	DEFAULT_ROLE	Default roles granted to users associated with the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	DIMENSION	Dimensions in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	FUNCTION	Functions in the selected schemas and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	*GRANT	Grants on objects in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	INDEX	Indexes (including domain indexes) on tables and clusters in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	INDEXTYPE	Indextypes in the selected schemas and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	JAVA_SOURCE	Java sources in the selected schemas and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	JOB	Jobs in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	LIBRARY	External procedure libraries in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	MATERIALIZED_VIEW	Materialized views in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	Materialized view logs on tables in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	OBJECT_GRANT	Grants on objects in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	OPERATOR	Operators in the selected schemas and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	PACKAGE	Packages (both specification and body) in the selected schemas, and their dependent grants and audits

Table 94–19 (Cont.) Object Type Path Names for Heterogeneous Object Types

Heterogeneous Type	Path Name (*=valid only in xxx_PATH_EXPR)	Scope
SCHEMA_EXPORT	PACKAGE_BODY	Package bodies in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	PACKAGE_SPEC	Package specifications in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	PASSWORD_HISTORY	The password history for users associated with the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	PROCEDURE	Procedures in the selected schemas and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	REF_CONSTRAINT	Referential (foreign key) constraints on tables in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	REFRESH_GROUP	Refresh groups in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	SEQUENCE	Sequences in the selected schemas and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	STATISTICS	Statistics on tables and indexes in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	SYNONYM	Private synonyms in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TABLE	Tables in the selected schemas and their dependent objects (indexes, constraints, triggers, grants, audits, comments, table data, and so on)
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TABLE_DATA	Row data for tables in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TABLESPACE_QUOTA	Tablespace quota granted to users associated with the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TRIGGER	Triggers on tables in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	XS_SECURITY_CLASS	Real Application Security (RAS) security classes
SCHEMA_EXPORT	XS_DATA_SECURITY	Real Application Security (RAS) data security policies
SCHEMA_EXPORT	XS_ACL	Real Application Security (RAS) access control lists (ACLs)
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TYPE	Types (both specification and body) in the selected schemas, and their dependent grants and audits
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TYPE_BODY	Type bodies in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	TYPE_SPEC	Type specifications in the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	USER	User definitions for users associated with the selected schemas
SCHEMA_EXPORT	VIEW	Views in the selected schemas and their dependent objects (grants, constraints, comments, audits)
DATABASE_EXPORT	ASSOCIATION	Statistics type associations for objects in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	AUDIT	Audits of SQL statements
DATABASE_EXPORT	AUDIT_OBJ	Audits on all objects in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	CLUSTER	Clusters and their indexes
DATABASE_EXPORT	COMMENT	Comments on all objects
DATABASE_EXPORT	CONSTRAINT	Constraints (including referential constraints)
DATABASE_EXPORT	CONTEXT	Application contexts
DATABASE_EXPORT	DB_LINK	Private and public database links
DATABASE_EXPORT	DEFAULT_ROLE	Default roles granted to users in the database

Table 94–19 (Cont.) Object Type Path Names for Heterogeneous Object Types

Heterogeneous Type	Path Name (*=valid only in xxx_PATH_EXPR)	Scope
DATABASE_EXPORT	DIMENSION	Dimensions in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	DIRECTORY	Directory objects in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	FGA_POLICY	Fine-grained audit policies
DATABASE_EXPORT	FUNCTION	Functions
DATABASE_EXPORT	* GRANT	Object and system grants
DATABASE_EXPORT	INDEX	Indexes (including domain indexes) on tables and clusters
DATABASE_EXPORT	INDEXTYPE	Indextypes and their dependent grants and audits
DATABASE_EXPORT	JAVA_SOURCE	Java sources and their dependent grants and audits
DATABASE_EXPORT	JOB	Jobs
DATABASE_EXPORT	LIBRARY	External procedure libraries
DATABASE_EXPORT	MATERIALIZED_VIEW	Materialized views
DATABASE_EXPORT	MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	Materialized view logs
DATABASE_EXPORT	OBJECT_GRANT	All object grants in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	OPERATOR	Operators and their dependent grants and audits
DATABASE_EXPORT	PACKAGE	Packages (both specification and body) and their dependent grants and audits
DATABASE_EXPORT	PACKAGE_BODY	Package bodies
DATABASE_EXPORT	PACKAGE_SPEC	Package specifications
DATABASE_EXPORT	PASSWORD_HISTORY	Password histories for database users
DATABASE_EXPORT	*PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION	The password complexity verification function
DATABASE_EXPORT	PROCEDURE	Procedures and their dependent grants and objects
DATABASE_EXPORT	PROFILE	Profiles
DATABASE_EXPORT	PROXY	Proxy authentications
DATABASE_EXPORT	REF_CONSTRAINT	Referential (foreign key) constraints on tables in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	REFRESH_GROUP	Refresh groups
DATABASE_EXPORT	*RESOURCE_ COST	Resource cost information
DATABASE_EXPORT	RLS_CONTEXT	Fine-grained access-control driving contexts
DATABASE_EXPORT	RLS_GROUP	Fine-grained access-control policy groups
DATABASE_EXPORT	RLS_POLICY	Fine-grained access-control policies
DATABASE_EXPORT	ROLE	Roles
DATABASE_EXPORT	ROLE_GRANT	Role grants to users in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	ROLLBACK_SEGMENT	Rollback segments

Table 94–19 (Cont.) Object Type Path Names for Heterogeneous Object Types

Heterogeneous Type	Path Name (*=valid only in xxx_PATH_EXPR)	Scope
DATABASE_EXPORT	*SCHEMA (named object)	Database schemas including for each schema all related and dependent objects: user definitions and their attributes (default roles, role grants, tablespace quotas, and so on), objects in the schema (tables, view, packages, types, and so on), and their dependent objects (grants, audits, indexes, constraints, and so on). The NAME and NAME_EXPR filters can be used with this object type path name to designate the database schemas to be fetched.
DATABASE_EXPORT	SEQUENCE	Sequences
DATABASE_EXPORT	STATISTICS	Statistics on tables and indexes
DATABASE_EXPORT	SYNONYM	Public and private synonyms
DATABASE_EXPORT	SYSTEM_GRANT	System privilege grants
DATABASE_EXPORT	TABLE	Tables and their dependent objects (indexes, constraints, triggers, grants, audits, comments, table data, and so on)
DATABASE_EXPORT	TABLE_DATA	Row data for all tables
DATABASE_EXPORT	TABLESPACE	Tablespace definitions
DATABASE_EXPORT	TABLESPACE_QUOTA	Tablespace quota granted to users in the database
DATABASE_EXPORT	TRIGGER	Triggers on the database, on schemas, and on schema objects
DATABASE_EXPORT	XS_USER	Real Application Security (RAS) users
DATABASE_EXPORT	XS_ROLE	Real Application Security (RAS) roles
DATABASE_EXPORT	XS_SECURITY_CLASS	Real Application Security (RAS) security classes
DATABASE_EXPORT	XS_DATA_SECURITY	Real Application Security (RAS) data security policies
DATABASE_EXPORT	XS_ACL	Real Application Security (RAS) access control lists (ACLs)
DATABASE_EXPORT	XS_NAMESPACE	Real Application Security (RAS) namespaces
DATABASE_EXPORT	TRUSTED_DB_LINK	Trusted links
DATABASE_EXPORT	TYPE	Types (both specification and body) and their dependent grants and audits
DATABASE_EXPORT	TYPE_BODY	Type bodies
DATABASE_EXPORT	TYPE_SPEC	Type specifications
DATABASE_EXPORT	USER	User definitions
DATABASE_EXPORT	VIEW	Views

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OPERATION. SET_FILTER was called after the first call to FETCH_xxx for the OPEN context. After the first call to FETCH_xxx is made, no further calls to SET_FILTER are permitted.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. The arguments are inconsistent. Possible inconsistencies include the following:
  - filter name not valid for the object type associated with the OPEN context

- filter `name` not valid for the `object_type_path`
- `object_type_path` not part of the collection designated by `handle`
- filter `value` is the wrong datatype

SET_PARSE_ITEM Procedure

This procedure is used for both retrieval and submission. This procedure enables output parsing and specifies an object attribute to be parsed and returned.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9
- Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10

Syntax

The following syntax applies when SET_PARSE_ITEM is used for object retrieval:

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_PARSE_ITEM (
   handle       IN  NUMBER,
   name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_type  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

The following syntax applies when SET_PARSE_ITEM is used for XML submission:

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_PARSE_ITEM (
   handle     IN NUMBER,
   name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 94–20 SET_PARSE_ITEM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPEN (or OPENW).
name	The name of the object attribute to be parsed and returned. See Table 94–21 for the attribute object type, name, and meaning.
object_type	Designates the object type to which the parse item applies (this is an object type name, not a path name). By default, the parse item applies to the object type of the OPEN handle. When the OPEN handle designates a heterogeneous object type, behavior can be either of the following: ■ if object_type is omitted, the parse item applies to all object types within the heterogeneous collection ■ if object_type is specified, the parse item only applies to that specific object type within the collection This parameter only applies when SET_PARSE_ITEM is used for object retrieval.

Table 94–21 describes the object type, name, and meaning of the items available in the SET_PARSE_ITEM procedure.

Table 94–21 SET_PARSE_ITEM: Parse Items

Object Type	Name	Meaning
All objects	VERB	If FETCH_XML_CLOB is called, no value is returned. If FETCH_DDL is called, then for every row in the sys.ku$_ddls nested table returned by FETCH_DDL the verb in the corresponding ddlText is returned. If the ddlText is a SQL DDL statement, then the SQL verb (for example, CREATE, GRANT, AUDIT) is returned. If the ddlText is a procedure call (for example, DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE()) then the package.procedure-name is returned.
All objects	OBJECT_TYPE	If FETCH_XML_CLOB is called, an object type name from Table 94–12 is returned. If FETCH_DDL is called and the ddlText is a SQL DDL statement whose verb is CREATE or ALTER, the object type as used in the DDL statement is returned (for example, TABLE, PACKAGE_BODY, and so on). Otherwise, an object type name from Table 94–12 is returned.
Schema objects	SCHEMA	The object schema is returned. If the object is not a schema object, no value is returned.
Named objects	NAME	The object name is returned. If the object is not a named object, no value is returned.
TABLE, TABLE_DATA, INDEX	TABLESPACE	The name of the object's tablespace or, if the object is a partitioned table, the default tablespace is returned. For a TABLE_DATA object, this is always the tablespace where the rows are stored.
TRIGGER	ENABLE	If the trigger is enabled, ENABLE is returned. If the trigger is disabled, DISABLE is returned.
OBJECT_GRANT, TABLESPACE_QUOTA	GRANTOR	The grantor is returned.
Dependent objects (including domain index secondary tables)	BASE_OBJECT_NAME	The name of the base object is returned. If the object is not a dependent object, no value is returned.
Dependent objects (including domain index secondary tables)	BASE_OBJECT_SCHEMA	The schema of the base object is returned. If the object is not a dependent object, no value is returned.
Dependent objects (including domain index secondary tables)	BASE_OBJECT_TYPE	The object type of the base object is returned. If the object is not a dependent object, no value is returned.
Granted objects	GRANTEE	The grantee is returned. If the object is not a granted object, no value is returned.

Usage Notes

These notes apply when using SET_PARSE_ITEM to retrieve objects.

By default, the FETCH_xxx routines return an object's metadata as XML or creation DDL. By calling SET_PARSE_ITEM you can request that individual attributes of the object be returned as well.

You can call SET_PARSE_ITEM multiple times to ask for multiple items to be parsed and returned. Parsed items are returned in the sys.ku$_parsed_items nested table.

For TABLE_DATA objects, the following parse item return values are of interest:

If Object Is	NAME, SCHEMA	BASE_OBJECT_NAME, BASE_OBJECT_SCHEMA
nonpartitioned table	table name, schema	table name, schema
table partition	partition name, schema	table name, schema
nested table	storage table name, schema	name and schema of top-level table (*not* the parent nested table)

Tables are not usually thought of as dependent objects. However, secondary tables for domain indexes are dependent on the domain indexes. Consequently, the BASE_OBJECT_NAME, BASE_OBJECT_SCHEMA and BASE_OBJECT_TYPE parse items for secondary TABLE objects return the name, schema, and type of the domain index.

See Also:

- "FETCH_xxx Functions and Procedures" on page 94-19
- *Oracle Database Utilities* for information about using the Metadata API

By default, the CONVERT and PUT procedures simply transform an object's XML metadata to DDL. By calling SET_PARSE_ITEM you can request that individual attributes of the object be returned as well.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OPERATION. SET_PARSE_ITEM was called after the first call to FETCH_xxx for the OPEN context. After the first call to FETCH_xxx is made, no further calls to SET_PARSE_ITEM are permitted.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. The attribute name is not valid for the object type associated with the OPEN context.

SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Procedures

These procedures are used for both retrieval and submission. SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM specify parameters to the XSLT stylesheet identified by transform_handle. Use them to modify or customize the output of the transform.

See Also: For more information about related subprograms:

- Subprograms for Retrieving Multiple Objects From the Database on page 94-9
- Subprograms for Submitting XML to the Database on page 94-10

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM (
   transform_handle   IN NUMBER,
   name               IN VARCHAR2,
   value              IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM (
   transform_handle   IN NUMBER,
   name               IN VARCHAR2,
   value              IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   object_type        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM (
   transform_handle   IN NUMBER,
   name               IN VARCHAR2,
   value              IN NUMBER,
   object_type        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_METADATA.SET_REMAP_PARAM (
   transform_handle   IN NUMBER,
   name               IN VARCHAR2,
   old_value          IN VARCHAR2,
   new_value          IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 94–22 describes the parameters for the SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM procedures.

Table 94–22 SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Parameters

Parameters	Description
transform_handle	Either (1) the handle returned from ADD_TRANSFORM, or (2) the enumerated constant SESSION_TRANSFORM that designates the DDL transform for the whole session. Note that the handle returned by OPEN is not a valid transform handle. For SET_REMAP_PARAM, the transform handle must designate the MODIFY transform.

Table 94–22 (Cont.) SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM Parameters

Parameters	Description
name	The name of the transform parameter. For descriptions of the parameters available for each transform on the SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM procedure, see the following: Table 94–23 - DDL transform Table 94–24 - MODIFY transform Table 94–26 - SXML transform Table 94–27 - MODIFYSXML transform Table 94–28 - SXMLDDL transform For descriptions of the parameters available for the MODIFY transform on the SET_REMAP_PARAM procedure, see Table 94–25. For descriptions of the parameters available for the ALTERXML transform, see Table 94–4.
value	The value of the transform. This parameter is valid only for SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM.
old_value	The old value for the remapping. This parameter is valid only for SET_REMAP_PARAM.
new_value	The new value for the remapping. This parameter is valid only for SET_REMAP_PARAM.
object_type	Designates the object type to which the transform or remap parameter applies. By default, it applies to the same object type as the transform. In cases where the transform applies to all object types within a heterogeneous collection, the following apply: ■ If object_type is omitted, the parameter applies to all applicable object types within the heterogeneous collection. ■ If object_type is specified, the parameter only applies to that object type. This allows a caller who has added a transform to a heterogeneous collection to specify different transform parameters for different object types within the collection.

Table 94–23 describes the object type, name, datatype, and meaning of the parameters for the DDL transform in the SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM procedure.

Table 94–23 SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the DDL Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
All objects	PRETTY	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, format the output with indentation and line feeds. Defaults to TRUE.
All objects	SQLTERMINATOR	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, append a SQL terminator (; or /) to each DDL statement. Defaults to FALSE.
TABLE	CONSTRAINTS	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include all non-referential table constraints in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	REF_CONSTRAINTS	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include all referential constraints (foreign keys) in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.

Table 94–23 (Cont.) SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the DDL Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE	CONSTRAINTS_AS_ALTER	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include table constraints as separate ALTER TABLE (and, if necessary, CREATE INDEX) statements. If FALSE, specify table constraints as part of the CREATE TABLE statement. Defaults to FALSE. Requires that CONSTRAINTS be TRUE.
TABLE, TYPE	OID	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include the OID clause in the DDL. If FALSE, omit it. Defaults to FALSE.
TABLE	SIZE_BYTE_KEYWORD	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include the BYTE keyword as part of the size specification of CHAR and VARCHAR2 columns that use byte semantics. If FALSE, omit the keyword. Defaults to FALSE.
TABLE, INDEX	PARTITIONING	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include partitioning clauses in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
INDEX, CONSTRAINT, ROLLBACK_ SEGMENT, CLUSTER, TABLE, TABLESPACE	SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include segment attributes clauses (physical attributes, storage attributes, tablespace, logging) in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
INDEX, CONSTRAINT, ROLLBACK_ SEGMENT, CLUSTER,TABLE	STORAGE	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include storage clauses in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
INDEX, CONSTRAINT, ROLLBACK_ SEGMENT, CLUSTER,TABLE	TABLESPACE	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include tablespace clauses in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TYPE, PACKAGE	SPECIFICATION	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include the type or package specification in the DDL. If FALSE, omit it. Defaults to TRUE.
TYPE, PACKAGE	BODY	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include the type body or package body in the DDL. If FALSE, omit it. Defaults to TRUE.
VIEW	FORCE	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, use the FORCE keyword in the CREATE VIEW statement. If FALSE, do not use the FORCE keyword in the CREATE VIEW statement. Defaults to TRUE.
OUTLINE	INSERT	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include the INSERT statements into the OL$ dictionary tables that will create the outline and its hints. If FALSE, omit a CREATE OUTLINE statement. Defaults to FALSE. Note: This object type is being deprecated.
All objects	DEFAULT	BOOLEAN	Calling SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM with this parameter set to TRUE has the effect of resetting all parameters for the transform to their default values. Setting this FALSE has no effect. There is no default.
All objects	INHERIT	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, inherits session-level parameters. Defaults to FALSE. If an application calls ADD_ TRANSFORM to add the DDL transform, then by default the only transform parameters that apply are those explicitly set for that transform handle. This has no effect if the transform handle is the session transform handle.

Table 94–23 (Cont.) SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the DDL Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
ROLE	REVOKE_FROM	Text	The name of a user from whom the role must be revoked. If this is a non-null string and if the CREATE ROLE statement grants you the role, a REVOKE statement is included in the DDL after the CREATE ROLE statement. Note: When you issue a CREATE ROLE statement, Oracle may grant you the role. You can use this transform parameter to undo the grant. Defaults to null string.
TABLESPACE	REUSE	BOOLEAN	If TRUE, include the REUSE parameter for datafiles in a tablespace to indicate that existing files can be reused. If FALSE, omit the REUSE parameter. Defaults to FALSE.

Table 94–23 (Cont.) SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the DDL Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
CLUSTER, INDEX, ROLLBACK_ SEGMENT, TABLE, TABLESPACE	PCTSPACE	NUMBER	A number representing the percentage by which space allocation for the object type is to be modified. The value is the number of one-hundredths of the current allocation. For example, 100 means 100%. If the object type is TABLESPACE, the following size values are affected: - in file specifications, the value of SIZE - MINIMUM EXTENT - EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL UNIFORM SIZE For other object types, INITIAL and NEXT are affected.
TABLE	LOB_STORAGE	Text	Specifies the storage type to use for LOB segments. The options are as follows: ■ SECUREFILE - LOB storage is returned as SECUREFILE ■ BASICFILE - LOB storage is returned as BASICFILE ■ DEFAULT - The keyword (SECUREFILE or BASICFILE) is omitted in the LOB STORE AS clause. ■ NO_CHANGE - LOB segments are created with the same storage they had in the source database. This is the default. Specifying this transform changes the LOB storage for all tables in the job, including tables that provide storage for materialized views.
TABLE	TABLE_COMPRESSION_CLAUSE	Text	Specifies a table compression clause (for example, COMPRESS BASIC) to use when the table is created. Specify NONE to omit the table compression clause. The table will have the default compression for the tablespace. Specifying this transform changes the compression type for all tables in the job, including tables that provide storage for materialized views. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about table compression options and syntax.

Table 94–24 describes the object type, name, datatype, and meaning of the parameters for the MODIFY transform in the SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM procedure.

Table 94–24 SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the MODIFY Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
All objects	OBJECT_ROW	NUMBER	A number designating the object row for an object. The object in the document that corresponds to this number will be copied to the output document. This parameter is additive. By default, all objects are copied to the output document.

Table 94–25 describes the object type, name, datatype, and meaning of the parameters for the MODIFY transform in the SET_REMAP_PARAM procedure.

Table 94–25 SET_REMAP_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the MODIFY Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
LIBRARY, TABLESPACE, DIRECTORY	REMAP_DATAFILE	Text	Objects in the document will have their filespecs renamed as follows: any filespec matching old_value will be changed to new_value. Filespecs should *not* be enclosed in quotes. This parameter is additive. By default, filespecs are not renamed.

Table 94–25 (Cont.) SET_REMAP_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the MODIFY Transform

Object Type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
Named objects and all objects dependent on named objects	REMAP_NAME	Text	Any named object in the document whose name matches old_value will have its name changed to new_value. Any dependent object whose base object name matches old_value will have its base schema name changed to new_value. This parameter is additive. By default, names are not remapped. (Use REMAP_TABLESPACE to remap the name of a TABLESPACE object.)
Schema Objects, Dependent Objects, Granted Objects, USER	REMAP_SCHEMA	Text	Any schema object in the document whose name matches old_value will have its schema name changed to new_value. Any dependent object whose base object schema name matches old_value will have its base object schema name changed to new_value. Any granted object whose grantee name matches old_value will have its grantee name changed to new_value. Any user whose name matches old_value will have its name changed to new_value. This parameter is additive. By default, schemas are not remapped. NOTE: The mapping may not be 100 percent complete because there are certain schema references that Import is not capable of finding. For example, Import will not find schema references embedded within the body of definitions of triggers, types, views, procedures, and packages.
TABLE, CLUSTER, CONSTRAINT, INDEX, ROLLBACK_ SEGMENT, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW_LOG, TABLESPACE_ QUOTA	REMAP_TABLESPACE	Text	Objects in the document will have their tablespaces renamed as follows: any tablespace name matching old_value will be changed to new_value. This parameter is additive. By default, tablespaces are not remapped.

Table 94–26 SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the SXML Transform

Object type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE, TYPE	OID	Boolean	If TRUE, include the OID clause in the SXML. If FALSE, omit it. Defaults to FALSE.
TABLE, INDEX, CLUSTER, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW_LOG.	STORAGE	Boolean	If TRUE, include storage clauses in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, INDEX, CLUSTER, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW_LOG.	TABLESPACE	Boolean	If TRUE, include tablespace clauses in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	REF_CONSTRAINTS	Boolean	If TRUE, include all referential constraints (foreign keys) in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, INDEX, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW	PHYSICAL_PROPERTIES	Boolean	If TRUE, include segment attributes clauses (physical attributes, storage attributes, tablespace, logging) in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
INDEX, CONSTRAINT, ROLLBACK_ SEGMENT, CLUSTER, TABLE, TABLESPACE	SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES	Boolean	If TRUE, include segment attributes clauses (physical attributes, storage attributes, tablespace, logging) in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, INDEX	PARTITIONING	Boolean	If TRUE, include partitioning clauses in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	CONSTRAINTS	Boolean	If TRUE, include all non-referential table constraints in the SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.

Table 94–27 SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the MODIFYSXML Transform

Object type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE, INDEX, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW_LOG	STORAGE	Boolean	If TRUE, include storage clauses in the output SXML. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, INDEX, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW_LOG	TABLESPACE	Boolean	If TRUE, include tablespace clauses in the output SXML. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	REF_CONSTRAINTS	Boolean	If TRUE, include all referential constraints (foreign keys) in the output SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.

Table 94–27 (Cont.) SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the MODIFYSXML Transform

Object type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE, INDEX, VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	REMAP_NAME	Text	Any NAME element in the document that matches old_value will be changed to new_value. This does not apply to column names. (See REMAP_COLUMN_NAME).
TABLE, INDEX, VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	REMAP_SCHEMA	Text	Any SCHEMA element in the document matching old_value will be changed to new_value.
TABLE, INDEX, VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW	REMAP_COLUMN_NAME	Text	Any column in the document whose name matches old_value will have its name changed to new_value.
TABLE, INDEX, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES	Boolean	If TRUE, include segment attributes clauses (physical attributes, storage attributes, tablespace, logging) in the output SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	CONSTRAINTS	Boolean	If TRUE, include all non-referential table constraints in the output SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.

Table 94–28 SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the SXMLDDL Transform

Object type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE	OID	Boolean	If TRUE, include OIDs in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, INDEX, CLUSTER, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG.	TABLESPACE	Boolean	If TRUE, include tablespace clauses in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE, INDEX, CLUSTER, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG	STORAGE	Boolean	If TRUE, include storage clauses in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. (Ignored if SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES is FALSE.) Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	REF_CONSTRAINTS	Boolean	If TRUE, include all referential constraints (foreign keys) in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
INDEX	PRESERVE_LOCAL	Boolean	If PARTITIONING is FALSE and PRESERVE_LOCAL is TRUE and the index is a locally partitioned index, include the LOCAL keyword in the DDL. Defaults to FALSE.

Table 94–28 (Cont.) SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM: Transform Parameters for the SXMLDDL Transform

Object type	Name	Datatype	Meaning
TABLE, INDEX, CLUSTER, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW, MATERIALIZED_ VIEW_LOG	SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES	Boolean	If TRUE, include segment attributes clauses (physical attributes, storage attributes, tablespace, logging) in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLESPACE	REUSE	Boolean	If TRUE, include the REUSE parameter for datafiles in a tablespace to indicate that existing files can be reused. If FALSE, omit the REUSE parameter. Defaults to FALSE.
TABLE, INDEX	PARTITIONING	Boolean	If TRUE, include partitioning clauses in the DDL. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.
TABLE	CONSTRAINTS	Boolean	If TRUE, include all non-referential table constraints in the output SXML. If FALSE, omit them. Defaults to TRUE.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL. A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.
- INVALID_OPERATION. Either SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM or SET_REMAP_PARAM was called after the first call to FETCH_xxx for the OPEN context. After the first call to FETCH_xxx is made, no further calls to SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM or SET_REMAP_PARAM are permitted.
- INCONSISTENT_ARGS. The arguments are inconsistent. This can mean the following:
  - The transform parameter name is not valid for the object type associated with the OPEN context or for the transform associated with the transform handle.
  - The transform applies to all object types in a heterogeneous collection, but object_type is not part of the collection.

Usage Notes

XSLT allows parameters to be passed to stylesheets. You call SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM or SET_REMAP_PARAM to specify the value of a parameter to be passed to the stylesheet identified by transform_handle.

Normally, if you call SET_TRANSFORM_PARAMETER multiple times for the same parameter name, each call overrides the prior call. For example, the following sequence simply sets the STORAGE transform parameter to TRUE.

```
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(tr_handle,'STORAGE',false);
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(tr_handle,'STORAGE',true);
```

However, some transform parameters are additive which means that all specified parameter values are applied to the document, not just the last one. For example, the OBJECT_ROW parameter to the MODIFY transform is additive. If you specify the following, then both specified rows are copied to the output document.

```
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(tr_handle,'OBJECT_ROW',5);
SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(tr_handle,'OBJECT_ROW',8);
```

The REMAP_TABLESPACE parameter is also additive. If you specify the following, then tablespaces TBS1 and TBS3 are changed to TBS2 and TBS4, respectively.

```
SET_REMAP_PARAM(tr_handle,'REMAP_TABLESPACE','TBS1','TBS2');
SET_REMAP_PARAM(tr_handle,'REMAP_TABLESPACE','TBS3','TBS4');
```

The order in which the transformations are performed is undefined. For example, if you specify the following, the result is undefined.

```
SET_REMAP_PARAM(tr_handle,'REMAP_TABLESPACE','TBS1','TBS2');
SET_REMAP_PARAM(tr_handle,'REMAP_TABLESPACE','TBS2','TBS3');
```

Note: The number of remap parameters that can be specified for a MODIFY transform is limited to ten. That is, you can specify up to ten `REMAP_DATAFILE` parameters, up to ten `REMAP_SCHEMA` parameters and so on. Additional instances are ignored. To work around this, you can perform another `DBMS_METADATA.ADD_TRANSFORM` and specify additional remap parameters.

The `GET_DDL`, `GET_DEPENDENT_DDL`, and `GET_GRANTED_DDL` functions allow the casual browser to extract the creation DDL for an object. So that you can specify transform parameters, this package defines an enumerated constant `SESSION_TRANSFORM` as the handle of the DDL transform at the session level. You can call `SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM` using `DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFORM` as the transform handle to set transform parameters for the whole session. `GET_DDL`, `GET_DEPENDENT_DDL`, and `GET GRANTED_DDL` inherit these parameters when they invoke the DDL transform.

Note: The enumerated constant must be prefixed with the package name `DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFORM`.

95

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF

The DBMS_METADATA_DIFF package contains the interfaces for comparing two metadata documents in SXML format.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for more information and for examples of using the Metadata API

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_METADATA_DIFF

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_METADATA_DIFF` package.

Overview

You can use the interfaces contained in the `DBMS_METADATA_DIFF` package to compare two metadata documents in SXML format. The result of the comparison is an SXML difference document. This document can be converted to other formats using the `DBMS_METADATA` submit interface and the `CONVERT` API.

Security Model

The browsing interface of the DBMS_METADATA_DIFF package actually uses the DBMS_METADATA package to fetch the metadata to be compared. Therefore, the security model used for DBMS_METADATA also applies to DBMS_METADATA_DIFF. (Note, however, that DBMS_METADATA_DIFF does not support all object types.)

> **See Also:** DBMS_METADATA for information about the DBMS_METADATA security model

Browsing APIs for Fetching and Comparing Objects

These functions allow you to compare the metadata for two objects with a single call.

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.COMPARE_SXML(
object_type   IN VARCHAR2,
name1         IN VARCHAR2,
name2         IN VARCHAR2,
schema1       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
schema2       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
network_link1 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
network_link2 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.COMPARE_ALTER(
object_type   IN VARCHAR2,
name1         IN VARCHAR2,
name2         IN VARCHAR2,
schema1       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
schema2       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
network_link1 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
network_link2 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.COMPARE_ALTER_XML(
object_type   IN VARCHAR2,
name1         IN VARCHAR2,
name2         IN VARCHAR2,
schema1       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
schema2       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
network_link1 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
network_link2 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 95–1 COMPARE_xxx Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
object_type	The type of object to be compared. Valid type names are CLUSTER, CONTEXT, DB_LINK, FGA_POLICY, INDEX, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG, QUEUE, QUEUE_TABLE, RLS_CONTEXT, RLS_GROUP, RLS_POLICY, ROLE, SEQUENCE, SYNONYM, TABLE, TABLESPACE, TRIGGER, TYPE, TYPE_SPEC, TYPE_BODY, USER, and VIEW.
name1	The name of the first object in the comparison.
name2	The name of the second object in the comparison.
schema1	The schema of the first object in the comparison. The default is the current user.
schema2	The schema of the second object in the comparison. The default is the value of schema1.

Table 95–1 (Cont.) COMPARE_xxx Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
network_link1	The name of a database link to the database on which the first object resides. If NULL (the default), then the object is assumed to be in the database on which the caller is running.
network_link2	The name of a database link to the database on which the second object resides. The default is the value of network_link1.

Return Values

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.COMPARE_xxx returns the differences between two objects.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL

  A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.

- OBJECT_NOT_FOUND

  The specified object was not found in the database.

Usage Notes

These functions encapsulate calls to both DBMS_METADATA and DBMS_METADATA_DIFF functions and procedures to fetch the metadata for each of the two objects and compare them.

Which function you use depends on the comparison format you want:

- COMPARE_SXML returns an SXML difference document.
- COMPARE_ALTER returns a set of ALTER statements for making the first object like the second object.
- COMPARE_ALTER_XML returns an ALTER_XML document.

Summary of DBMS_METADATA_DIFF Subprograms

The DBMS_METADATA_DIFF subprograms are used to:

- Specify the type of objects to be compared
- Specify the SXML documents to be compared
- Show the differences between the compared documents
- Clean up after the comparison

Table 95–2 provides a summary of DBMS_METADATA_DIFF subprograms.

Table 95–2 DBMS_METADATA_DIFF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
OPENC Function on page 95-8	Specifies the type of objects to be compared
ADD_DOCUMENT Procedure on page 95-9	Specifies an SXML document to be compared
FETCH_CLOB Functions and Procedures on page 95-10	Returns a CLOB showing the differences between the two documents specified by ADD_DOCUMENT
CLOSE Procedure on page 95-11	Invalidates the handle returned by OPENC and cleans up associated state

OPENC Function

This function specifies the type of objects to be compared. The return value is an opaque context handle.

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.OPENC (
object_type  IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 95–3 OPENC Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
object_type	The type of object to be compared. Valid type names are CLUSTER, CONTEXT, DB_LINK, FGA_POLICY, INDEX, MATERIALIZED_VIEW, MATERIALIZED_VIEW_LOG, QUEUE, QUEUE_TABLE, RLS_CONTEXT, RLS_GROUP, RLS_POLICY, ROLE, SEQUENCE, SYNONYM, TABLE, TABLESPACE, TRIGGER, TYPE, TYPE_SPEC, TYPE_BODY, USER, and VIEW.

Return Values

The opaque handle that is returned is used as input to ADD_DOCUMENT, FETCH_xxx and CLOSE.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL

  A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.

ADD_DOCUMENT Procedure

This procedure specifies an SXML document that is to be compared.

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.ADD_DOCUMENT(
handle IN NUMBER, document IN sys.XMLType);

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.ADD_DOCUMENT(
handle IN NUMBER, document IN CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 95–4 CLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPENC
document	A document to be compared. The document must be of the type specified in OPENC.

Usage Notes

Because the comparison interface allows you to compare exactly two SXML documents, a program must call ADD_DOCUMENT exactly twice for each OPENC handle. In the comparison result, the document specified by the first call is document 1, and the document specified by the second call is document 2.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL

  A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.

FETCH_CLOB Functions and Procedures

The FETCH_CLOB functions and procedures return a CLOB showing the differences between the two documents specified by ADD_DOCUMENT.

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.FETCH_CLOB(
handle IN NUMBER)
RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.FETCH_CLOB(
handle IN  NUMBER,
doc    IN  OUT NOCOPY CLOB);

DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.FETCH_CLOB(
handle IN  NUMBER,
doc    IN  OUT NOCOPY CLOB
diffs  OUT BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 95–5 CONVERT Subprogram Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle returned from OPENC.
doc	A CLOB containing the differences between documents 1 and 2.
diffs	TRUE if the documents are different or FALSE if they are identical.

Return Values

The differences between documents 1 and 2.

Exceptions

- INVALID_ARGVAL

  A NULL or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.

CLOSE Procedure

This procedure invalidates the handle returned by `OPENC` and cleans up associated state.

Syntax

```
DBMS_METADATA_DIFF.CLOSE(
handle IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 95–6 FETCH_xxx Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
`handle`	The handle returned from `OPENC`

Exceptions

- `INVALID_ARGVAL`

  A `NULL` or invalid value was supplied for an input parameter. The error message text identifies the parameter.

96

DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL

The DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL package contains various functions and procedures that comprise the following utility subprograms:

- A logging utility that sets and gets Java and PL/SQL logging levels.
- A proxy utility consisting of two procedures used to set and unset the host and port of the proxy server.
- A metadata utility consisting of functions and procedures used for managing metadata.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide* for more information.

This chapter describes each of these utility subprograms and contains the following topics:

The examples in this chapter assume that the user has run the following set of commands before running the contents of each script:

```
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
Connected.
SQL> create user mgduser identified by password;
SQL> grant connect, resource to mgduser;
SQL> connect mgduser
Enter password: mgduserpassword
Connected.
SQL> set serveroutput on;
```

Using DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL

Security Model

You must run the catmgd.sql script to load the DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL package and Identity Code Package schema objects in the MGDSYS schema.

DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL is a MGDSYS-owned package. Any DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL subprogram called from an anonymous PL/SQL block is run using the privileges of the current user.

A user must be granted connect and resource roles to use the DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL package and its subprograms.

EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC for these ADTs: MGD_ID, MGD_ID_COMPONENT, MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY, and for this package DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.

SELECT or READ privilege is granted to PUBLIC for these read-only views: MGD_ID_CATEGORY and MGD_ID_SCHEME and for these metadata views: USER_MGD_ID_CATEGORY and USER_MGD_ID_SCHEME, and for table MGD_ID_XML_VALIDATOR, and for sequence MGD$SEQUENCE_CATEGORY.

INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE privilege is granted to PUBLIC for these metadata views: USER_MGD_ID_CATEGORY and USER_MGD_ID_SCHEME.

Public synonyms, by the same name, are created for these ADTs: MGD_ID, MGD_ID_COMPONENT, MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY and for this package DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL, as well as for these read-only views: MGD_ID_CATEGORY and MGD_ID_SCHEME and for these metadata views: USER_MGD_ID_CATEGORY and USER_MGD_ID_SCHEME, and for table MGD_ID_XML_VALIDATOR.

Constants

DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL uses the constants shown in Table 96–1.

Table 96–1 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL Constants

Name	Value
Installed Category IDs and Names	
EPC_ENCODING_CATEGORY_ID	1
EPC_ENCODING_CATEGORY_NAME	EPC
Logging Levels	
LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF	0
LOGGING_LEVEL_SEVERE	1
LOGGING_LEVEL_WARNING	2
LOGGING_LEVEL_INFO	3
LOGGING_LEVEL_FINE	4
LOGGING_LEVEL_FINER	5
LOGGING_LEVEL_FINEST	6
LOGGING_LEVEL_ALL	7

Exceptions

Table 96–2 lists the DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL exceptions.

Table 96–2 Exceptions Raised by DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL Package

Name	Error Code	Description
TDTJavaException	-55200	During the tag data translation, a Java exception was raised.
TDTCategoryNotFound	-55201	The specified category was not found.
TDTSchemeNotFound	-55202	During the tag data translation, the specified scheme was not found.
TDTLevelNotFound	-55203	During the tag data translation, the specified level was not found.
TDTOptionNotFound	-55204	During the tag data translation, the specified option was not found.
TDTFieldValidationException	-55205	During the tag data translation, the validation operation failed on a field.
TDTUndefinedField	-55206	During the tag data translation, an undefined field was detected.
TDTRuleEvaluationFailed	-55207	During the tag data translation, the rule evaluation operation failed.
TDTTooManyMatchingLevels	-55208	During the tag data translation, too many matching levels were found.

Summary of DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL Subprograms

Table 96–3 describes the utility subprograms in the `DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL` package.

All the values and names passed to the procedures defined in the `DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL` package are case insensitive unless otherwise mentioned. To preserve the case, enclose the values with double quotation marks.

Table 96–3 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_SCHEME Procedure	Adds a tag data translation scheme to an existing category
CREATE_CATEGORY Function	Creates a new category or a new version of a category
EPC_TO_ORACLE_SCHEME Function	Converts the EPCglobal tag data translation (TDT) XML to Oracle tag data translation XML
GET_CATEGORY_ID Function	Returns the category ID given the category name and the category version
GET_COMPONENTS Function	Returns all relevant separated component names separated by semicolon (';') for the specified scheme
GET_ENCODINGS Function	Returns a list of semicolon (';') separated encodings (formats) for the specified scheme
GET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL Function	Returns an integer representing the current Java trace logging level
GET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL Function	Returns an integer representing the current PL/SQL trace logging level
GET_SCHEME_NAMES Function	Returns a list of semicolon (';') separated scheme names for the specified category
GET_TDT_XML Function	Returns the Oracle tag data translation XML for the specified scheme
GET_VALIDATOR Function	Returns the Oracle Database tag data translation schema
REFRESH_CATEGORY Function	Refreshes the metadata information on the Java stack for the specified category
REMOVE_CATEGORY Procedure	Removes a category including all the related TDT XML if the value of `category_version` parameter is NULL
REMOVE_PROXY Procedure	Unsets the host and port of the proxy server
REMOVE_SCHEME Procedure	Removes a tag data translation scheme from a category
SET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL Procedure	Sets the Java logging level
SET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL Procedure	Sets the PL/SQL tracing logging level
SET_PROXY Procedure	Sets the host and port of the proxy server for Internet access
VALIDATE_SCHEME Function	Validates the input tag data translation XML against the Oracle tag data translation schema

ADD_SCHEME Procedure

This procedure adds a tag data translation scheme to an existing category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.ADD_SCHEME (
   category_id IN  VARCHAR2,
   tdt_xml     IN  CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 96–4 ADD_SCHEME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID
tdt_xml	Tag data translation XML

Examples

This example performs the following actions:

1. Creates a category.
2. Adds a contractor scheme and an employee scheme to the MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY category.
3. Validates the MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY scheme.
4. Tests the tag translation of the contractor scheme and the employee scheme.
5. Removes the contractor scheme.
6. Tests the tag translation of the contractor scheme and this returns the expected exception for the removed contractor scheme.
7. Tests the tag translation of the employee scheme and this returns the expected values.
8. Removes the MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY category.

```
--contents of add_scheme2.sql
SET LINESIZE 160
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
---CREATE CATEGORY, ADD_SCHEME, REMOVE_SCHEME, REMOVE_CATEGORY-------
-----------------------------------------------------------------------
DECLARE
  amt          NUMBER;
  buf          VARCHAR2(32767);
  pos          NUMBER;
  tdt_xml      CLOB;
  validate_tdtxml VARCHAR2(1042);
  category_id  VARCHAR2(256);
BEGIN
  -- remove the testing category if already existed
  DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_category('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', '1.0');
  -- Step 1. Create the testing category 'MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', version 1.0.
  category_id := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.CREATE_CATEGORY('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', '1.0', 'Oracle',
'http://www.example.com/mgd/sample');
  -- Step 2. Add contractor scheme to the category.
```

```
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(tdt_xml, true);
  DBMS_LOB.OPEN(tdt_xml, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE);

  buf := '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<TagDataTranslation version="0.04" date="2005-04-18T16:05:00Z"
                    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                    xmlns="oracle.mgd.idcode">
 <scheme name="CONTRACTOR_TAG" optionKey="1" xmlns="">
  <level type="URI" prefixMatch="example.contractor.">
   <option optionKey="1" pattern="example.contractor.([0-9]*).([0-9]*)"
           grammar="''example.contractor.'' contractorID ''.'' divisionID">
    <field seq="1" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="contractorID"/>
    <field seq="2" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="divisionID"/>
   </option>
  </level>
  <level type="BINARY" prefixMatch="11">
   <option optionKey="1" pattern="11([01]{7})([01]{6})"
           grammar="''11'' contractorID divisionID ">
    <field seq="1" characterSet="[01]*" name="contractorID"/>
    <field seq="2" characterSet="[01]*" name="divisionID"/>
   </option>
  </level>
 </scheme>
</TagDataTranslation>';

  amt := length(buf);
  pos := 1;
  DBMS_LOB.WRITE(tdt_xml, amt, pos, buf);
  DBMS_LOB.CLOSE(tdt_xml);

  DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.ADD_SCHEME(category_id, tdt_xml);

  -- Add the employee scheme to the category.
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(tdt_xml, true);
  DBMS_LOB.OPEN(tdt_xml, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE);

  buf := '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<TagDataTranslation version="0.04" date="2005-04-18T16:05:00Z"
                    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                    xmlns="oracle.mgd.idcode">
 <scheme name="EMPLOYEE_TAG" optionKey="1" xmlns="">
  <level type="URI" prefixMatch="example.employee.">
   <option optionKey="1" pattern="example.employee.([0-9]*).([0-9]*)"
           grammar="''example.employee.'' employeeID ''.'' divisionID">
    <field seq="1" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="employeeID"/>
    <field seq="2" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="divisionID"/>
   </option>
  </level>
  <level type="BINARY" prefixMatch="01">
   <option optionKey="1" pattern="01([01]{7})([01]{6})"
           grammar="''01'' employeeID divisionID ">
    <field seq="1" characterSet="[01]*" name="employeeID"/>
    <field seq="2" characterSet="[01]*" name="divisionID"/>
   </option>
  </level>
 </scheme>
</TagDataTranslation>';

  amt := length(buf);
  pos := 1;
```

```
DBMS_LOB.WRITE(tdt_xml, amt, pos, buf);
DBMS_LOB.CLOSE(tdt_xml);
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.ADD_SCHEME(category_id, tdt_xml);

-- Step 3. Validate the scheme.
dbms_output.put_line('Validate the MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY Scheme');
validate_tdtxml := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.validate_scheme(tdt_xml);
dbms_output.put_line(validate_tdtxml);
dbms_output.put_line('Length of scheme xml is: '||DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(tdt_xml));

-- Step 4. Test tag translation of contractor scheme.
dbms_output.put_line(
  mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                   'example.contractor.123.45',
                   NULL, 'BINARY'));

dbms_output.put_line(
  mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                   '111111011101101',
                   NULL, 'URI'));

-- Test tag translation of employee scheme.
dbms_output.put_line(
  mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                   'example.employee.123.45',
                   NULL, 'BINARY'));

dbms_output.put_line(
  mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                   '011111011101101',
                   NULL, 'URI'));

DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.REMOVE_SCHEME(category_id, 'CONTRACTOR_TAG');

-- Step 6. Test tag translation of contractor scheme. Doesn't work any more.
BEGIN
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                     'example.contractor.123.45',
                     NULL, 'BINARY'));

  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                     '111111011101101',
                     NULL, 'URI'));
EXCEPTION
  WHEN others THEN
    dbms_output.put_line('Contractor tag translation failed: '||SQLERRM);
END;

-- Step 7. Test tag translation of employee scheme. Still works.
BEGIN
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                     'example.employee.123.45',
                     NULL, 'BINARY'));
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', NULL,
                     '011111011101101',
                     NULL, 'URI'));
```

```
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN others THEN
      dbms_output.put_line('Employee tag translation failed: '||SQLERRM);
  END;

  -- Step 8. Remove the testing category, which also removes all the associated schemes
  DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_category('MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY', '1.0');
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @add_scheme3.sql
.
.
.
Validate the MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY Scheme
EMPLOYEE_TAG;URI,BINARY;divisionID,employeeID
Length of scheme xml is: 933
111111011101101
example.contractor.123.45
011111011101101
example.employee.123.45
Contractor tag translation failed: ORA-55203: Tag data translation level not found
ORA-06512: at "MGDSYS.DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL", line 54
ORA-06512: at "MGDSYS.MGD_ID", line 242
ORA-29532: Java call terminated by uncaught Java
exception: oracle.mgd.idcode.exceptions.TDTLevelNotFound: Matching level not
found for any configured scheme
011111011101101
example.employee.123.45
.
.
.
```

CREATE_CATEGORY Function

This function creates a new category or a new version of a category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.CREATE_CATEGORY (
   category_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   category_version IN  VARCHAR2,
   agency           IN  VARCHAR2,
   URI              IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 96–5 CREATE_CATEGORY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_name	Name of category
category_version	Category version
agency	Organization that owns the category. For example, EPCglobal owns the category EPC.
URI	URI that provides additional information about the category

Usage Notes

The return value is the category ID.

Examples

See the ADD_SCHEME Procedure for an example of creating the MGD_SAMPLE_CATEGORY category.

EPC_TO_ORACLE_SCHEME Function

This function converts the EPCglobal tag data translation (TDT) XML to Oracle Database tag data translation XML.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.EPC_TO_ORACLE_SCHEME (
   xml_scheme IN CLOB)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 96–6 EPC_TO_ORACLE_SCHEME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xml_scheme	Name of EPC tag scheme to be converted

Usage Notes

The return value is the contents of the CLOB containing the Oracle Datanase tag data translation XML.

Examples

The following example converts standard EPCglobal Tag Data Translation (TDT) files into Oracle Database TDT files:

```
--Contents of MGD_ID_DOC2.sql
----------------------------
-- EPC_TO_ORACLE_SCHEME   --
----------------------------
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');

BEGIN
 DBMS_JAVA.set_output(1000000);
 DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE(1000000);
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_java_logging_level(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.LOGGING_LEVEL_SEVERE);
END;
/

DECLARE
  epcScheme                 CLOB;
  oracleScheme              CLOB;
  amt                       NUMBER;
  buf                       VARCHAR2(32767);
  pos                       NUMBER;
  seq                       BINARY_INTEGER;
  validate_epcscheme        VARCHAR2(256);
  validate_oraclescheme     VARCHAR2(256);
BEGIN

  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(epcScheme, true);
  DBMS_LOB.OPEN(epcScheme, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE);

  buf := '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<epcTagDataTranslation version="0.04" date="2005-04-18T16:05:00Z"
                       epcTDSVersion="1.1r1.27"
```

```
                    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                    xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="EpcTagDataTranslation.xsd">
  <scheme name="GID-96" optionKey="1" tagLength="96">
    <level type="BINARY" prefixMatch="00110101"
           requiredFormattingParameters="taglength">
      <option optionKey="1" pattern="00110101([01]{28})([01]{24})([01]{36})"
              grammar="''00110101'' generalmanager objectclass serial">
        <field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455"
               characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="28" name="generalmanager"/>
        <field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="16777215"
               characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="24" name="objectclass"/>
        <field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="68719476735"
               characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="36" name="serial"/>
      </option>
    </level>
    <level type="TAG_ENCODING" prefixMatch="urn:epc:tag:gid-96"
           requiredFormattingParameters="taglength">
      <option optionKey="1"
              pattern="urn:epc:tag:gid-96:([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)"
              grammar="''urn:epc:tag:gid-96:'' generalmanager ''.'' objectclass ''.'' serial">
        <field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="generalmanager"/>
        <field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="16777215"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="objectclass"/>
        <field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="68719476735"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="serial"/>
      </option>
    </level>
    <level type="PURE_IDENTITY" prefixMatch="urn:epc:id:gid">
      <option optionKey="1"
              pattern="urn:epc:id:gid:([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)"
              grammar="''urn:epc:id:gid:'' generalmanager ''.'' objectclass ''.'' serial">
        <field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="generalmanager"/>
        <field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="16777215"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="objectclass"/>
        <field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="68719476735"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="serial"/>
      </option>
    </level>
    <level type="LEGACY" prefixMatch="generalmanager=">
      <option optionKey="1"
              pattern="generalmanager=([0-9]*);objectclass=([0-9]*);serial=([0-9]*)"
              grammar="''generalmanager=''generalmanager'';objectclass=''objectclass '';serial=''
serial">
        <field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="generalmanager"/>
        <field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="16777215"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="objectclass"/>
        <field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="68719476735"
               characterSet="[0-9]*" name="serial"/>
      </option>
    </level>
  </scheme>
</epcTagDataTranslation>';
  amt := length(buf);
  pos := 1;
  DBMS_LOB.WRITE(epcScheme, amt, pos, buf);
  DBMS_LOB.CLOSE(epcScheme);
    oracleScheme := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.epc_to_oracle_scheme(epcScheme);
```

```
  dbms_output.put_line('Length of oracle scheme xml is: '||DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(oracleScheme));
  dbms_output.put_line(DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(oracleScheme, DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(oracleScheme), 1));
  dbms_output.put_line(' ');
  dbms_output.put_line('Validate the Oracle Scheme');
  validate_oraclescheme := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.validate_scheme(oracleScheme);
  dbms_output.put_line('Validation result: '||validate_oraclescheme);
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @mgd_id_doc2.sql
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Length of oracle scheme xml is: 2475
<?xml version = '1.0' encoding = 'UTF-8'?>
<TagDataTranslation version="0.04"
date="2005-04-18T16:05:00Z" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns="oracle.mgd.idcode"><scheme name="GID-96" optionKey="1" xmlns=""><level
type="BINARY" prefixMatch="00110101" requiredFormattingParameters=""><option
optionKey="1" pattern="00110101([01]{28})([01]{24})([01]{36})"
grammar="'00110101' generalmanager objectclass serial"><field seq="1"
decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455" characterSet="[01]*"
bitLength="28" name="generalmanager"/><field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="16777215" characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="24"
name="objectclass"/><field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="68719476735" characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="36"
name="serial"/></option></level><level type="TAG_ENCODING"
prefixMatch="urn:epc:tag:gid-96" requiredFormattingParameters=""><option
optionKey="1" pattern="urn:epc:tag:gid-96:([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)"
grammar="'urn:epc:tag:gid-96:' generalmanager '.' objectclass '.' serial"><field
seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455" characterSet="[0-9]*"
name="generalmanager"/><field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="16777215" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="objectclass"/><field
seq="3" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="68719476735" characterSet="[0-9]*"
name="serial"/></option></level><level type="PURE_IDENTITY"
prefixMatch="urn:epc:id:gid"><option optionKey="1"
pattern="urn:epc:id:gid:([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)\.([0-9]*)" grammar="'urn:epc:id:gid:'
generalmanager '.' objectclass '.' serial"><field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="268435455" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="generalmanager"/><field
seq="2" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="16777215" characterSet="[0-9]*"
name="objectclass"/><field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="68719476735" characterSet="[0-9]*"
name="serial"/></option></level><level type="LEGACY"
prefixMatch="generalmanager="><option optionKey="1"
pattern="generalmanager=([0-9]*);objectclass=([0-9]*);serial=([0-9]*)"
grammar="'generalmanager='generalmanager';objectclass='objectclass ';serial='
serial"><field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="268435455"
characterSet="[0-9]*" name="generalmanager"/><field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="16777215" characterSet="[0-9]*" name="objectclass"/><field
seq="3" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="68719476735" characterSet="[0-9]*"
name="serial"/></option></level></scheme></TagDataTranslation>
Validate the Oracle Scheme
Validation result:
GID-96;LEGACY,TAG_ENCODING,PURE_IDENTITY,BINARY;objectclass,generalmanager,serial,

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

GET_CATEGORY_ID Function

This function returns the category ID for a given category name and category version.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_CATEGORY_ID (
   category name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   category_version  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 96–7 GET_CATEGORY_ID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_name	Name of category
category_version	Category version

Usage Notes

- If the value of category_version is NULL, then the ID of the latest version of the specified category is returned.
- The return value is the category ID for the specified category name.

Examples

The following example returns a category ID given a category name and its version:

```
-- Contents of get_category1.sql file
SELECT DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL) FROM DUAL;

SQL> @get_category1.sql
.
.
.
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_CATEGORY_
ID('EPC',NULL)-------------------------------------------------------------------------------1
.
.
.
```

GET_COMPONENTS Function

This function returns all relevant separated component names separated by semicolon (;) for the specified scheme.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_COMPONENTS (
   category_id IN VARCHAR2,
   scheme_name IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 96–8 GET_COMPONENTS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID
scheme_name	Name of scheme

Usage Notes

The return value contains the component names separated by a semicolon (;) for the specified scheme.

Examples

The following example gets the components:

```
--Contents of get_components.sql
DECLARE
  id             mgd_id;
  getcomps       VARCHAR2(1000);
  getencodings   VARCHAR2(1000);
  getschemenames VARCHAR2(1000);
BEGIN
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_java_logging_level(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF);
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
 getcomps := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_components(1,'SGTIN-64');
 dbms_output.put_line('Component names are: ' || getcomps);
 getencodings := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_encodings(1,'SGTIN-64');
 dbms_output.put_line('Encodings are: ' || getencodings);
 getschemenames := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_scheme_names(1);
 dbms_output.put_line('Scheme names are: ' || getschemenames);
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @get_components.sql
.
.
.
Component names are:
filter,gtin,companyprefixlength,companyprefix,companyprefixindex,itemref,serial
Encodings are: ONS_HOSTNAME,LEGACY,TAG_ENCODING,PURE_IDENTITY,BINARY
Scheme names are:
GIAI-64,GIAI-96,GID-96,GRAI-64,GRAI-96,SGLN-64,SGLN-96,SGTIN-64,SGTIN-96,SSCC-64
,SSCC-96,USDOD-64,USDOD-96
```

```
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

GET_ENCODINGS Function

This function returns a list of semicolon (;) separated encodings (formats) for the specified scheme.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_ENCODINGS (
   category_id IN VARCHAR2,
   scheme_name IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 96–9 GET_ENCODINGS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID
scheme_name	Name of scheme

Usage Notes

The return value contains the encodings separated by a semicolon (;) for the specified scheme.

Examples

See the GET_COMPONENTS Function for an example.

GET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL Function

This function returns an integer representing the current trace logging level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL
 RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

The return value is the integer value denoting the current Java logging level.

Examples

The following example gets the Java logging level.

```
--Contents of getjavaloggінglevel.sql
DECLARE
     loglevel   NUMBER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_java_logging_level(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF);
  loglevel := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_java_logging_level();
  dbms_output.put_line('Java logging level = ' ||loglevel);
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @getjavaloggінglevel.sql
.
.
.
Java logging level = 0
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

GET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL Function

This function returns an integer representing the current PL/SQL trace logging level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL
 RETURN INTEGER;

PRAGMA restrict_references(get_plsql_logging_level, WNDS);
```

Usage Notes

The return value is the integer value denoting the current PL/SQL logging level.

Examples

The following example gets the PL/SQL logging level.

```
--Contents of getplsqlloggінglevel.sql
DECLARE
     loglevel   NUMBER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_plsql_logging_level(0);
  loglevel := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_plsql_logging_level();
  dbms_output.put_line('PL/SQL logging level = ' ||loglevel);
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @getplsqlloggінglevel.sql
.
.
.
PL/SQL logging level = 0
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

GET_SCHEME_NAMES Function

This function returns a list of semicolon (;) separated scheme names for the specified category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_SCHEME_NAMES (
   category_id IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 96–10 GET_SCHEME_NAMES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID

Usage Notes

The return value contains the scheme names for the specified category ID.

Examples

See the GET_COMPONENTS Function for an example.

GET_TDT_XML Function

This function returns the Oracle Database tag data translation XML for the specified scheme.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_TDT_XML (
   category_id  IN VARCHAR2,
   scheme_name  IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 96–11 GET_TDT_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID
scheme_name	Name of scheme

Usage Notes

The return value contains the Oracle Database tag data translation XML for the specified scheme.

Examples

The following example gets the Oracle Database TDT XML for the specified scheme:

```
--Contents of get_tdtxml.sql
DECLARE
  gettdtxml      CLOB;

BEGIN
  gettdtxml := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_tdt_xml(1,'SGTIN-64');
  dbms_output.put_line('Length of tdt XML is '||DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(gettdtxml));
  dbms_output.put_line(DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(gettdtxml, DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(gettdtxml), 1));
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @get_tdtxml.sql
.
.
.
Length of tdt XML is 22884
<?xml version = '1.0' encoding = "UTF-8"?>
<TagDataTranslation version="0.04"
date="2005-04-18T16:05:00Z" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns="oracle.mgd.idcode"><scheme name="SGTIN-64"
optionKey="companyprefixlength" xmlns="">
    <level type="BINARY"
prefixMatch="10" requiredFormattingParameters="filter">
      <option
optionKey="12" pattern="10([01]{3})([01]{14})([01]{20})([01]{25})" grammar="'10'
filter companyprefixindex itemref serial">
        <field seq="1"
decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="7" characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="3"
```

```
length="1" padChar="0" padDir="LEFT" name="filter"/>
        <field seq="2"
decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="16383" characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="14"
name="companyprefixindex"/>
        <field seq="3" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="9" characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="20" length="1" padChar="0"
padDir="LEFT" name="itemref"/>
        <field seq="4" decimalMinimum="0"
decimalMaximum="33554431" characterSet="[01]*" bitLength="25" name="serial"/>
.
.
.
        <field seq="1" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="9999999" characterSet="[0-9]*"
length="7" padChar="0" padDir="LEFT" name="itemref"/>
        <field seq="2" decimalMinimum="0" decimalMaximum="999999" characterSet="[0-9]*" length="6"
padChar="0" padDir="LEFT" name="companyprefix"/>
      </option>
    </level>

</scheme></TagDataTranslation>
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

GET_VALIDATOR Function

This function returns the Oracle Database tag data translation schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.GET_VALIDATOR
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Usage Notes

The return value contains the Oracle Database tag data translation schema.

Examples

This example returns the Oracle Database TDT schema.

```
--Contents of get_validator.sql
DECLARE
  getvalidator              CLOB;
BEGIN
  getvalidator := DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_validator;
  dbms_output.put_line('Length of validated oracle scheme xml is '||DBMS_
LOB.GETLENGTH(getvalidator));
  dbms_output.put_line(DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(getvalidator, DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(getvalidator), 1));
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;

SQL> @get_validator.sql
.
.
.
Length of validated oracle scheme xml is 5780
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsd:schema
targetNamespace="oracle.mgd.idcode"
xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"

xmlns:tdt="oracle.mgd.idcode" elementFormDefault="unqualified"

attributeFormDefault="unqualified" version="1.0">
  <xsd:annotation>

<xsd:documentation>
      <![CDATA[
<epcglobal:copyright>Copyright ?2004
Epcglobal Inc., All
Rights
Reserved.</epcglobal:copyright>
<epcglobal:disclaimer>EPCglobal Inc., its
members, officers, directors,
employees, or agents shall not be liable for any
injury, loss, damages,
financial or otherwise, arising from, related to, or
caused by the use of this
document. The use of said document shall constitute
your express consent to
the foregoing
```

```
exculpation.</epcglobal:disclaimer>
<epcglobal:specification>Tag Data
Translation (TDT) version
1.0</epcglobal:specification>
]]>

</xsd:documentation>
  </xsd:annotation>
  <xsd:simpleType
name="LevelTypeList">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">

</xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>
  <xsd:simpleType name="TagLengthList"

<xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
    </xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>

<xsd:simpleType name="SchemeNameList">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">

</xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>
  <xsd:simpleType
name="InputFormatList">
    <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">

<xsd:enumeration value="BINARY"/>
      <xsd:enumeration value="STRING"/>

</xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>
  <xsd:simpleType name="ModeList">

<xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
      <xsd:enumeration value="EXTRACT"/>

<xsd:enumeration value="FORMAT"/>
    </xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>

<xsd:simpleType name="CompactionMethodList">
    <xsd:restriction
base="xsd:string">
      <xsd:enumeration value="32-bit"/>
<xsd:enumeration value="16-bit"/>
      <xsd:enumeration value="8-bit"/>

<xsd:enumeration value="7-bit"/>      <xsd:enumeration value="6-bit"/>

<xsd:enumeration value="5-bit"/>
    </xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>

<xsd:simpleType name="PadDirectionList">
    <xsd:restriction
base="xsd:string">
      <xsd:enumeration value="LEFT"/>
```

```
      <xsd:enumeration
value="RIGHT"/>
    </xsd:restriction>
  </xsd:simpleType>
  <xsd:complexType
name="Field">
    <xsd:attribute name="seq" type="xsd:integer" use="required"/>

<xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute
name="bitLength" type="xsd:integer"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="characterSet"
type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="compaction"
type="tdt:CompactionMethodList"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="compression"
type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="padChar" type="xsd:string"/>

<xsd:attribute name="padDir" type="tdt:PadDirectionList"/>
    <xsd:attribute
name="decimalMinimum" type="xsd:long"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="decimalMaximum"
type="xsd:long"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="length" type="xsd:integer"/>

</xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:complexType name="Option">
    <xsd:sequence>

<xsd:element name="field" type="tdt:Field" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>

</xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="optionKey" type="xsd:string"
use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="pattern" type="xsd:string"/>

<xsd:attribute name="grammar" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>

</xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:complexType name="Rule">
    <xsd:attribute
name="type" type="tdt:ModeList" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute
name="inputFormat" type="tdt:InputFormatList"

use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="seq" type="xsd:integer"
use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="newFieldName" type="xsd:string"
use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="characterSet" type="xsd:string"
use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="padChar" type="xsd:string"/>

<xsd:attribute name="padDir" type="tdt:PadDirectionList"/>
    <xsd:attribute
name="decimalMinimum" type="xsd:long"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="decimalMaximum"
type="xsd:long"/>
```

```
    <xsd:attribute name="length" type="xsd:string"/>

<xsd:attribute name="function" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>

<xsd:attribute name="tableURI" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attribute
name="tableParams" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="tableXPath"
type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="tableSQL" type="xsd:string"/>

</xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:complexType name="Level">
    <xsd:sequence>
<xsd:element name="option" type="tdt:Option" minOccurs="1"

maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <xsd:element name="rule" type="tdt:Rule"
minOccurs="0"
                   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
<xsd:attribute name="type" type="tdt:LevelTypeList" use="required"/>
<xsd:attribute name="prefixMatch" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
<xsd:attribute name="requiredParsingParameters" type="xsd:string"/>
<xsd:attribute name="requiredFormattingParameters" type="xsd:string"/>

</xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:complexType name="Scheme">
    <xsd:sequence>
<xsd:element name="level" type="tdt:Level" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="5"/>

</xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute name="name" type="tdt:SchemeNameList"
use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="optionKey" type="xsd:string"
use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="tagLength" type="tdt:TagLengthList"
use="optional"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:complexType
name="TagDataTranslation">
    <xsd:sequence>
      <xsd:element name="scheme"
type="tdt:Scheme" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:attribute
name="version" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
    <xsd:attribute name="date"
type="xsd:dateTime" use="required"/>
  </xsd:complexType>
  <xsd:element
name="TagDataTranslation" type="tdt:TagDataTranslation"/>
</xsd:schema>

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

REFRESH_CATEGORY Function

This function refreshes the metadata information on the Java stack for the specified category. This function must be called before using MGD_ID functions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.REFRESH_CATEGORY (
   category_id  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 96–12 REFRESH_CATEGORY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID

Examples

The following example refreshes the metadata information for the EPC category ID.

```
--Contents of tostring3.sql
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
DECLARE
id          MGD_ID;
BEGIN
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_java_logging_level(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF);
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
 dbms_output.put_line('..Testing to_string');
 DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('test to_string');
   id := mgd_id('EPC', NULL, 'urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970',
'scheme=GID-96');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('mgd_id object as a string');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(id.to_string);
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();

SQL> @tostring3.sql
..Testing to_string
test to_string
mgd_id object as a string
category_id =1;schemes = GID-96;objectclass = 30241;generalmanager =
0037000;scheme = GID-96;1 = 1;serial = 1041970

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

REMOVE_CATEGORY Procedure

This procedure removes a category including all the related TDT XML. This procedure is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definitions.

Syntax

Removes a category based on the specified category ID.

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.REMOVE_CATEGORY (
   category_id  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Removes a category based on the specified category name and category version.

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.REMOVE_CATEGORY (
   category_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   category_version IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 96–13 REMOVE_CATEGORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`category_id`	Category ID
`category_name`	Name of category
`category_version`	Category version

Usage Notes

If the value of `category_version` is NULL, all versions for the specified category will be removed.

Examples

See the ADD_SCHEME Procedure for an example of removing a category.

REMOVE_PROXY Procedure

This procedure unsets the host and port of the proxy server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.REMOVE_PROXY;
```

Examples

See the REFRESH_CATEGORY Function for an example.

REMOVE_SCHEME Procedure

This procedure removes a tag data translation scheme from a category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.REMOVE_SCHEME (
   category_id  IN  VARCHAR2,
   scheme_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 96–14 REMOVE_SCHEME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category ID
scheme_name	Name of scheme

Examples

See the ADD_SCHEME Procedure for an example of removing a scheme.

SET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL Procedure

This procedure sets the Java trace logging level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.SET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL (
   logginglevel IN  INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 96–15 SET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`logginglevel`	Logging level. The Java logging level can be one of the following values in descending order: ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF CONSTANT INTEGER := 0` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_SEVERE CONSTANT INTEGER := 1` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_WARNING CONSTANT INTEGER := 2` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_INFO CONSTANT INTEGER := 3` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_FINE CONSTANT INTEGER := 4` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_FINER CONSTANT INTEGER := 5` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_FINEST CONSTANT INTEGER := 6` ■ `LOGGING_LEVEL_ALL CONSTANT INTEGER := 7`

Examples

See the GET_JAVA_LOGGING_LEVEL Function for an example.

SET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL Procedure

This procedure sets the PL/SQL trace logging level.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.SET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL (
   level IN INTEGER);

PRAGMA restrict_references(set_plsql_logging_level, WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 96–16 SET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
level	Logging level. The PL/SQL logging level can be one of the following values in descending order: ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF CONSTANT INTEGER := 0 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_SEVERE CONSTANT INTEGER := 1 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_WARNING CONSTANT INTEGER := 2 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_INFO CONSTANT INTEGER := 3 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_FINE CONSTANT INTEGER := 4 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_FINER CONSTANT INTEGER := 5 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_FINEST CONSTANT INTEGER := 6 ■ LOGGING_LEVEL_ALL CONSTANT INTEGER := 7

Examples

See the GET_PLSQL_LOGGING_LEVEL Function for an example.

SET_PROXY Procedure

This procedure sets the host and port of the proxy server for Internet access. This procedure must be called if the database server accesses the Internet using a proxy server. Internet access is necessary because some rules need to look up the Object Naming Service (ONS) table to get the company prefix index.

You do not need to call this procedure does if you are only using schemes that do not contain any rules requiring Internet access.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.SET_PROXY (
   proxt_host   IN  VARCHAR2,
   proxy_port   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 96–17 SET_PROXY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
proxy_host	Name of host
proxy_port	Host port number

Examples

See the REFRESH_CATEGORY Function for an example.

VALIDATE_SCHEME Function

This function validates the input tag data translation XML against the Oracle Database tag data translation schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.VALIDATE_SCHEME (
   xml_scheme IN CLOB)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 96–18 VALIDATE_SCHEME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xml_scheme	Scheme to be validated.

Usage Notes

The return value contains the components names for the specified scheme.

Examples

See the ADD_SCHEME Procedure or the EPC_TO_ORACLE_SCHEME Function for an example.

97

DBMS_MGWADM

DBMS_MGWADM defines the Messaging Gateway administrative interface. The package and object types are owned by SYS.

Note: You must run the catmgw.sql script to load the Messaging Gateway packages and types into the database.

See Also: *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* contains information on loading database objects and using DBMS_MGWADM

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_MGWADM

Security Model

A user with administrative privilege can run all procedures in DBMS_MGWADM.

Deprecated Subprograms

Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 11g Release 1having been superseded by improved technology:

- ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure - use instead CREATE_JOB Procedure
- ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure - use instead ALTER_JOB Procedure
- ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure - use instead ALTER_JOB Procedure
- DB_CONNECT_INFO Procedure - use instead ALTER_AGENT Procedures
- DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure - use instead DISABLE_JOB Procedure
- ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure - use instead ENABLE_JOB Procedure
- REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure - use instead REMOVE_JOB Procedure
- RESET_SUBSCRIBER Procedure - use instead RESET_JOB Procedure
- SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure - use instead CREATE_JOB Procedure
- UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure - use instead REMOVE_JOB Procedure

Constants

Table 97–1 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Cleanup Actions

Name	Type	Description
CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Sets the Messaging Gateway agent to a known state so that it can be started
CLEAN_LOG_QUEUES	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Messaging Gateway agent will clean log queues for all configured messaging system links
RESET_SUB_MISSING_LOG_REC	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Messaging Gateway agent recovers a Messaging Gateway subscriber that has failed due to a missing log record
RESET_SUB_MISSING_MESSAGE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Messaging Gateway agent recovers a Messaging Gateway subscriber that has failed due to a missing persistent source message

Table 97–2 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Force Values

Name	Type	Description
FORCE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents a forced action
NO_FORCE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents a normal, nonforced action

Table 97–3 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Logging Levels

Name	Type	Description
BASIC_LOGGING	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	The standard (the least) information written to the log file

Table 97–3 (Cont.) DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Logging Levels

Name	Type	Description
TRACE_DEBUG_LOGGING	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	The greatest information written to the log file
TRACE_HIGH_LOGGING	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	The third level of detail of logging information written to the log file
TRACE_LITE_LOGGING	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	The second level detail of logging information written to the log file

Table 97–4 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Named Property Constants

Name	Type	Description
MGWPROP_PREFIX	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	A constant (MGWPROP$_) for the reserved property name prefix
MGWPROP_REMOVE	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	A constant (MGWPROP$_REMOVE) for the reserved property name used to remove an existing property
MGWPROP_REMOVE_ALL	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	A constant (MGWPROP$_REMOVE_ALL) for the reserved property name used to remove all properties

Table 97–5 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Other Constants

Name	Type	Description
JMS_CONNECTION	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Used to indicate that JMS connections will be used to access JMS destinations in a domain-independent manner that supports a unified messaging model
JMS_QUEUE_CONNECTION	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Used to indicate that JMS queue connections will be used to access JMS destinations
JMS_TOPIC_CONNECTION	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Used to indicate that JMS topic connections will be used to access JMS destinations
NO_CHANGE	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	Indicates that an existing value should be preserved (not changed). This is used for certain APIs where the desire is to change one or more parameters but leave others unchanged.
DEFAULT_AGENT	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	Name of the Messaging Gateway default agent

Table 97–6 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Propagation Types

Name	Type	Description
INBOUND_PROPAGATION	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents the propagation type for non-Oracle to Oracle Database Advanced Queuing propagation. The propagation source is a queue in a foreign (non-Oracle) messaging system and the destination is a local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.
OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents the propagation type for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to non-Oracle propagation. The propagation source is a local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue and the destination is a queue in a foreign (non-Oracle) messaging system.

Table 97–7 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Queue Domain Types

Name	Type	Description
DOMAIN_QUEUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents a queue destination. A JMS queue (point-to-point model) is classified as a queue.
DOMAIN_TOPIC	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents a topic destination. A JMS topic (publish-subscribe model) is classified as a topic.

Table 97–8 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Shutdown Modes

Name	Type	Description
SHUTDOWN_IMMEDIATE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents the immediate shutdown mode
SHUTDOWN_NORMAL	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents the normal shutdown mode

Table 97–9 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—WebSphere MQ Interface Types

Name	Type	Description
MQSERIES_BASE_JAVA_INTERFACE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER	Represents the Base Java interface for the WebSphere MQ messaging system

Table 97–10 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—target_type Argument of SET_OPTION and REMOVE_OPTION Procedures

Name	Type	Description
AGENT_JAVA_PROP	CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER	Used for an agent option used to set a Java System property
MSGLINK_OPTION	CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER	Used for a messaging system link option
JOB_OPTION	CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER	Used for a propagation job option

Table 97–11 DBMS_MGWADM Constants—conntype Argument of CREATE_AGENT and ALTER_AGENT Procedures

Name	Type	Description
JDBC_OCI	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	Used to specify the JDBC OCI driver
JDBC_THIN	CONSTANT VARCHAR2	Used to specify the JDBC Thin driver

Data Structures

The DBMS_MGWADM package defines the following OBJECT types.

Object Types

- SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES Object Type
- SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES Object Type
- SYS.MGW_PROPERTY Object Type
- SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES Object Type

SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES Object Type

This type specifies basic properties for a WebSphere MQ messaging system link.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES IS OBJECT (
   queue_manager       VARCHAR2(64),
   hostname            VARCHAR2(64),
   port                INTEGER,
   channel             VARCHAR2(64),
   interface_type      INTEGER,
   max_connections     INTEGER,
   username            VARCHAR2(64),
   password            VARCHAR2(64),
   inbound_log_queue   VARCHAR2(64),
   outbound_log_queue  VARCHAR2(64),

-- Methods
STATIC FUNCTION construct
RETURN SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES,

STATIC FUNCTION alter_construct
RETURN SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES );
```

Attributes

Table 97–12 SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES Attributes

Attribute	Description
queue_manager	The name of the WebSphere MQ queue manager
hostname	The host on which the WebSphere MQ messaging system resides. If hostname is NULL, then a WebSphere MQ bindings connection is used. If not NULL, then a client connection is used and requires that a port and channel be specified.
port	The port number. This is used only for client connections; that is, when hostname is not NULL.
channel	The channel used when establishing a connection to the queue manager. This is used only for client connections; that is, when hostname is not NULL.
interface_type	The type of messaging interface to use. Values: ■ DBMS_MGWADM.MQSERIES_BASE_JAVA_INTERFACE if the WebSphere MQ Base Java interface should be used. ■ DBMS_MGWADM.JMS_CONNECTION if the link is to be used to access JMS destinations in a unified, domain-independent manner. ■ DBMS_MGWADM.JMS_QUEUE_CONNECTION if the link is to be used for accessing JMS queues ■ DBMS_MGWADM.JMS_TOPIC_CONNECTION if the link is to be used for accessing JMS topics.
max_connections	The maximum number of messaging connections to the WebSphere MQ messaging system
username	The username used for authentication to the WebSphere MQ messaging system

Table 97–12 (Cont.) SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES Attributes

Attribute	Description
password	The password used for authentication to the WebSphere MQ messaging system
inbound_log_queue	The name of the WebSphere MQ queue used for propagation recovery purposes when this messaging link is used for inbound propagation; that is, when queues associated with this link serve as a propagation source: ■ For MQSERIES_BASE_JAVA_INTERFACE, this is the name of a physical WebSphere MQ queue created using WebSphere MQ administration tools. ■ For the JMS_CONNECTION interface and the JMS_QUEUE_CONNECTION interface, this is the name of a physical WebSphere MQ queue created using WebSphere MQ administration tools. ■ For JMS_TOPIC_CONNECTION interface, this specifies the name of a WebSphere MQ JMS topic. The physical WebSphere MQ queue used by subscribers of that topic must be created using WebSphere MQ administration tools. By default, the physical queue used is SYSTEM.JMS.D.SUBSCRIBER.QUEUE.
outbound_log_queue	The name of the WebSphere MQ queue used for propagation recovery purposes when this messaging link is used for outbound propagation; that is, when queues associated with this link serve as a propagation destination: ■ For MQSERIES_BASE_JAVA_INTERFACE, this is the name of a physical WebSphere MQ queue created using WebSphere MQ administration tools. ■ For the JMS_CONNECTION interface and the JMS_QUEUE_CONNECTION interface, this is the name of a physical WebSphere MQ queue created using WebSphere MQ administration tools. ■ For JMS_TOPIC_CONNECTION interface, this specifies the name of a WebSphere MQ JMS topic. The physical WebSphere MQ queue used by subscribers of that topic must be created using WebSphere MQ administration tools. By default, the physical queue used is SYSTEM.JMS.D.SUBSCRIBER.QUEUE.

Methods

Table 97–13 SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES Methods

Method	Description
construct	Constructs a new SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES instance. All attributes are assigned a value of NULL
alter_construct	Constructs a new SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES instance for altering the properties of an existing messaging link. All attributes having a VARCHAR2 datatype are assigned a value of DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE. Attributes of other datatypes are assigned a value of NULL.

SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES Object Type

This type specifies an array of properties.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES AS VARRAY (2000) OF SYS.MGW_PROPERTY;
```

Attributes

Table 97–14 SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES Attributes

Attribute	Description
`name`	Property name
`value`	Property value

Usage Notes

Unless noted otherwise, Messaging Gateway uses named properties as follows:

- Names with the `MGWPROP$_` prefix are reserved. They are used for special purposes and are invalid when used as a normal property name.
- A property name can exist only once in a property list; that is, a list can contain only one value for a given name. The name is case-insensitive.
- In general, a property list is order-independent, and the property names may appear in any order. An alter property list is an exception.
- You can use a new property list to alter an existing property list. Each new property modifies the original list in one of the following ways: adds a new property, modifies a property, removes a property, or removes all properties.

The alter list is processed in order, from the first element to the last element. Thus the order in which the elements appear in the alter list is meaningful, especially when the alter list is used to remove properties from an existing list.

The property name and value are used to determine how that element affects the original list. The following rules apply:

- Add or modify property

  ```
  MGW_PROPERTY.NAME = property_name
  MGW_PROPERTY.VALUE = property_value
  ```

  If a property of the given name already exists, then the current value is replaced with the new value; otherwise the new property is added to the end of the list.

- Remove property

  ```
  MGW_PROPERTY.NAME = 'MGWPROP$_REMOVE'
  MGW_PROPERTY.VALUE = name_of_property_to_remove
  ```

  No action is taken if the property name does not exist in the original list.

- Remove all properties

  ```
  MGW_PROPERTY.NAME = 'MGWPROP$_REMOVE_ALL'
  MGW_PROPERTY.VALUE = not used
  ```

See Also: "The DBMS_MGWADM package defines constants to represent the reserved property names on Table 97–4, " DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Named Property Constants"

SYS.MGW_PROPERTY Object Type

This type specifies a named property which is used to specify optional properties for messaging links, foreign queues, and subscribers.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_PROPERTY IS OBJECT(
   name  VARCHAR2(500),
   value VARCHAR2(4000),

-- Methods
STATIC FUNCTION construct    --- (1)
RETURN SYS.MGW_PROPERTY,

STATIC FUNCTION construct(   --- (2)
   p_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   p_value  IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN SYS.MGW_PROPERTY );
```

Attributes

Table 97–15 SYS.MGW_PROPERTY Attributes

Attribute	Description
`name`	Property name
`value`	Property value

Methods

Table 97–16 SYS.MGW_PROPERTY Methods

Method	Description
`construct --- (1)`	Constructs a new `MGW_PROPERTY` instance. All attributes are assigned a value of `NULL`
`construct --- (2)`	Constructs a new `MGW_PROPERTY` instance initialized using the given parameters

SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES Object Type

A type that specifies basic properties for a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system link. The Messaging Gateway agent creates a TIB/Rendezvous transport of type `TibrvRvdTransport` for each Messaging Gateway link.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES IS OBJECT(
   service   VARCHAR2(128),
   daemon    VARCHAR2(128),
   network   VARCHAR2(256),
   cm_name   VARCHAR2(256),
   cm_ledger VARCHAR2(256),

-- Methods
STATIC FUNCTION construct
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES,

STATIC FUNCTION alter_construct
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES );
```

Attributes

Table 97–17 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES Attributes

Attribute	Description
`service`	The service parameter for the rvd transport
`daemon`	The daemon parameter for the rvd transport
`network`	The network parameter for the rvd transport
`cm_name`	The CM correspondent name. Reserved for future use.
`cm_ledger`	The CM ledger file name. Reserved for future use.

Methods

Table 97–18 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES Methods

Method	Description
`construct`	Constructs a new `SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES` instance. All attributes will be assigned a value of `NULL`.
`alter_construct`	Constructs a new `SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES` instance. This function is useful for altering the properties of an existing messaging link. All attributes having a `VARCHAR2` datatype will be assigned a value of `DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE`. Attributes of other datatypes will be assigned a value of `NULL`.

Summary of DBMS_MGWADM Subprograms

Table 97–19 DBMS_MGWADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 97-18	Adds a subscriber used to consume messages from a source queue for propagation to a destination
ALTER_AGENT Procedures on page 97-22	Alters Messaging Gateway agent parameters
ALTER_JOB Procedure on page 97-24	Alters the properties of a propagation job
ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure for TIB/Rendezvous on page 97-26	Alters the properties of a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system link
ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure for WebSphere MQ on page 97-27	Alters the properties of a WebSphere MQ messaging system link
ALTER_PROPAGATION_ SCHEDULE Procedure on page 97-28	Alters a propagation schedule
ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 97-29	Alters the parameters of a subscriber used to consume messages from a source queue for propagation to a destination
CLEANUP_GATEWAY Procedures on page 97-31	Cleans up Messaging Gateway
CREATE_AGENT Procedure on page 97-34	Creates a Messaging Gateway agent that will be used to process propagation jobs
CREATE_JOB Procedure on page 97-36	Creates a job used to propagate message from a source to a destination
CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedures for TIB/Rendezvous on page 97-40	Creates a messaging system link to a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system
CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedures for WebSphere MQ on page 97-41	Creates a messaging system link to a WebSphere MQ messaging system
DB_CONNECT_INFO Procedure on page 97-42	Configures connection information used by the Messaging Gateway agent for connections to Oracle Database
DISABLE_JOB Procedure on page 97-43	Disables a propagation job
DISABLE_PROPAGATION_ SCHEDULE Procedure on page 97-44	Disables a propagation schedule
ENABLE_JOB Procedure on page 97-45	Enables a propagation job
ENABLE_PROPAGATION_ SCHEDULE Procedure on page 97-46	Enables a propagation schedule
REGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE Procedure on page 97-47	Registers a non-Oracle queue entity in Messaging Gateway

Table 97–19 (Cont.) DBMS_MGWADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REMOVE_AGENT Procedure on page 97-48	Removes a Messaging Gateway agent
REMOVE_JOB Procedure on page 97-49	Removes a propagation job
REMOVE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure on page 97-50	Removes a messaging system link for a non-Oracle messaging system
REMOVE_OPTION Procedure on page 97-51	Removes a Messaging Gateway configuration option
REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 97-53	Removes a subscriber used to consume messages from a source queue for propagation to a destination
RESET_JOB Procedure on page 97-54	Resets the propagation error state for a propagation job
RESET_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 97-55	Resets the propagation error state for a subscriber
SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 97-56	Schedules message propagation from a source to a destination
SET_LOG_LEVEL Procedures on page 97-58	Dynamically alters the Messaging Gateway agent logging level
SET_OPTION Procedure on page 97-59	Sets a Messaging Gateway configuration option
SHUTDOWN Procedures on page 97-61	Shuts down the Messaging Gateway agent
STARTUP Procedures on page 97-62	Starts the Messaging Gateway agent
UNREGISTER_FOREIGN_ QUEUE Procedure on page 97-63	Removes a non-Oracle queue entity in Messaging Gateway
UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 97-64	Removes a propagation schedule

ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure adds a subscriber used to consume messages from a source queue for propagation to a destination.

Note: This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see CREATE_JOB Procedure on page 97-36), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ADD_SUBSCRIBER(
   subscriber_id     IN VARCHAR2,
   propagation_type  IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   queue_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   destination       IN VARCHAR2,
   rule              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   transformation    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   exception_queue   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
   options           IN SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–20 ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
subscriber_id	Specifies a user-defined name that identifies this subscriber
propagation_type	Specifies the type of message propagation. DBMS_MGWADM.OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION is for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to non-Oracle propagation. DBMS_MGWADM.INBOUND_PROPAGATION is for non-Oracle to Oracle Database Advanced Queuing propagation
queue_name	Specifies the source queue to which this subscriber is being added. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
destination	Specifies the destination queue to which messages consumed by this subscriber are propagated. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
rule	Specifies an optional subscription rule used by the subscriber to dequeue messages from the source queue. This is NULL if no rule is needed. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
transformation	Specifies the transformation needed to convert between the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload and an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The type of transformation needed depends on the value specified for propagation_type. If NULL, then the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload type must be supported by Messaging Gateway.

Table 97–20 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
exception_queue	Specifies a queue used for exception message logging purposes. This queue must be on the same messaging system as the propagation source. If NULL, then an exception queue is not used and propagation stops if a problem occurs. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type. The source queue and exception queue cannot be the same queue.
options	Optional subscriber properties. NULL if there are none. Typically these are lesser used configuration properties supported by the messaging system.

Usage Notes

> **See Also:** "Handling Arbitrary Payload Types Using Message Transformations", in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information regarding message conversion and transformation

If the non-Oracle messaging link being accessed for the subscriber uses a JMS interface, then the Messaging Gateway agent will use the Oracle JMS interface to access the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queues. Otherwise the native Oracle Database Advanced Queuing interface will be used. Parameters are interpreted differently when the Messaging Gateway agent uses Oracle JMS for JMS connections.

Transformations are not currently supported if the Oracle JMS interface is used for propagation. The transformation parameter must be NULL.

> **See Also:** For additional information regarding subscriber options
>
> - "WebSphere MQ System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*
> - "TIB/Rendezvous System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*

OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION Subscribers

The parameters for a subscriber used for outbound propagation are interpreted as follows:

- queue_name specifies the local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue that is the propagation source. This must have a syntax of schema.queue.
- destination specifies the foreign queue to which messages are propagated. This must have a syntax of registered_queue@message_link.
- rule specifies an optional Oracle Database Advanced Queuing subscriber rule if the native Oracle Database Advanced Queuing interface is used, or a JMS selector if the Oracle JMS interface is used. If NULL, then no rule or selector is used.
- transformation specifies the transformation used to convert the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload to an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway.

  Messaging Gateway propagation dequeues messages from the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue using the transformation to convert the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload to a known ADT defined by Messaging

Gateway. The message is then enqueued in the foreign messaging system based on the Messaging Gateway ADT.

- `exception_queue` specifies the name of a local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue to which messages are moved if an exception occurs. This must have a syntax of `schema.queue`.

If the native Oracle Database Advanced Queuing interface is used, then a subscriber will be added to the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue when this procedure is called, whether or not Messaging Gateway is running. The local subscriber will be of the form `sys.aq$_agent('MGW_subscriber_id',NULL, NULL)`.

If the Oracle JMS interface is used, then the Messaging Gateway agent will create a JMS durable subscriber with the name of `MGW_subscriber_id`. If the agent is not running when this procedure is called, then the durable subscriber will be created the next time the agent starts.

The exception queue has the following caveats:

- The user is responsible for creating the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue to be used as the exception queue.
- The payload type of the source and exception queue must match.
- The exception queue must be created as a queue type of `DBMS_AQADM.NORMAL_QUEUE` rather than `DBMS_AQADM.EXCEPTION_QUEUE`. Enqueue restrictions prevent Messaging Gateway propagation from using an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue of type `EXCEPTION_QUEUE` as a Messaging Gateway exception queue.

INBOUND_PROPAGATION Subscribers

The parameters for a subscriber used for inbound propagation are interpreted as follows:

- `queue_name` specifies the foreign queue that is the propagation source. This must have a syntax of `registered_queue@message_link`.
- `destination` specifies the local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue to which messages are propagated. This must have a syntax of `schema.queue`.
- `rule` specifies an optional subscriber rule that is valid for the foreign messaging system. This is `NULL` if no rule is needed.
- `transformation` specifies the transformation used to convert an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway to the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload type.

  Messaging Gateway propagation dequeues messages from the foreign messaging system and converts the message body to a known ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The transformation is used to convert the Messaging Gateway ADT to an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload type when the message is enqueued to the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.
- `exception_queue` specifies the name of a foreign queue to which messages are moved if an exception occurs. This must have a syntax of `registered_queue@message_link`.

Whether or not a subscriber is needed depends on the requirements of the non-Oracle messaging system. If a durable subscriber is necessary, then it will be created by the Messaging Gateway agent. If the agent is not running at the time this procedure is called, then the creation of the subscriber on the non-Oracle messaging system will occur when the agent next starts.

The exception queue has the following caveats:

- The exception queue must be a registered non-Oracle queue.
- The source and exception queues must use the same messaging system link.

ALTER_AGENT Procedures

This procedure configures Messaging Gateway agent parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_AGENT (
   max_connections  IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   max_memory       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   max_threads      IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   service          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE );

DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_AGENT (
   agent_name      IN   VARCHAR2,
   username        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   password        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   database        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   conntype        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   max_memory      IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   max_threads     IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   service         IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   initfile        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   comment         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE );
```

Parameters

Table 97–21 ALTER_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
max_connections	The maximum number of messaging connections to Oracle Database used by the Messaging Gateway agent. If it is NULL, then the current value is unchanged. **Caution: This parameter has been deprecated**.
max_memory	The maximum heap size, in MB, used by the Messaging Gateway agent. If it is NULL, then the current value is unchanged.
max_threads	The number of messaging threads that the Messaging Gateway agent creates. If it is NULL, then the current value is unchanged.
service	Specifies the database service that the Oracle Scheduler job class used by this agent will have affinity to. In an Oracle RAC environment, this means that the Messaging Gateway agent will run on only those database instances that are assigned to the service. If NULL, the job class used by this agent will be altered to belong to the default service which is mapped to every instance. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, the current value is unchanged.
agent_name	Identifies the Messaging Gateway agent. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT specifies the default agent.
username	Specifies the username used for connections to the Oracle Database. NULL is not allowed. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged. If a username is specified then a password must also be specified.
password	Specifies the password used for connections to the Oracle Database. NULL is not allowed. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged. A password must be specified if a username is specified.

Table 97–21 (Cont.) ALTER_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
database	Specifies the database connect string used for connections to the Oracle Database. NULL indicates that a local connection should be used. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged.Oracle strongly recommends that a connect string, rather than NULL, be specified. Usually it will be a net service name from tnsnames.ora.
conntype	Specifies the type of connection to the Oracle Database, DBMS_MGWADM.JDBC_OCI or DBMS_MGWADM.JDBC_THIN. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged
initfile	Specifies a Messaging Gateway initialization file used by this agent. NULL indicates that the default initialization file is used. If a value is specified, it should be the full path name of the file. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged.
comment	Optional comments for this agent. NULL if a comment is not desired. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged.

Note: The max_connections parameter included in previous versions of this subprogram has been deprecated and is non-operational

Usage Notes

- Default values for these configuration parameters are set when the Messaging Gateway agent is installed.
- Changes to the max_memory and max_threads parameters take effect the next time the Messaging Gateway agent is active. If the Messaging Gateway agent is currently active, then it must be shut down and restarted for the changes to take effect.
- The service parameter is used to set an Oracle Scheduler job class attribute. The job class is used to create a Scheduler job that starts the Messaging Gateway agent. An Oracle administrator must create the database service. If the value is NULL, the job class will belong to an internal service that is mapped to all instances.
- The max_connections parameter is being deprecated as of the Oracle RDBMS 11g release. The number of messaging connections used by the Messaging Gateway Agent is based on the value of the max_threads parameter.
- The username, password, and database parameters specify connection information used by the Messaging Gateway agent for connections to the Oracle Database. An Oracle administrator should create the user and grant it the role MGW_AGENT_ROLE.

ALTER_JOB Procedure

This procedure alters the properties of a propagation job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_JOB (
   job_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   rule              IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   transformation    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   exception_queue   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   poll_interval     IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   options           IN   SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comments          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE );
```

Parameters

Table 97–22 ALTER_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Identifies the propagation job
rule	Specifies an optional subscription rule used to dequeue messages from the propagation source. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the propagation type. A NULL value indicates that no subscription rule is needed. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged.
transformation	Specifies the transformation needed to convert between the Oracle Streams AQ payload and an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The type of transformation needed depends on the value specified for propagation_type. A NULL value indicates that no transformation is needed. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, the current value is unchanged.
exception_queue	Specifies a queue used for exception message logging purposes. This queue must be on the same messaging system as the propagation source. In cases in which no exception queue is associated with the job, propagation stops if a problem occurs. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the propagation type. A NULL value indicates that no exception queue is used. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, the current value is unchanged.
poll_interval	Specifies the polling interval, in seconds, used by the Messaging Gateway agent when checking for messages in the source queue. If no messages are available the agent will not poll again until the polling interval has passed. Once the agent detects a message it will continue propagating messages as long as any are available. Values: NULL, 0, or value > 0: ■ If zero (default), the current value will not be changed. ■ If NULL, the current value will be reset and the Messaging Gateway default polling interval will be used. The default polling interval is 5 seconds and can be overridden by the Messaging Gateway initialization file.

Table 97–22 (Cont.) ALTER_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Optional job properties. If NULL, no options will be changed. If not NULL, then the properties specified in this list are combined with the current optional properties to form a new set of job options.
comments	An optional comment for this agent, or NULL if one is not desired. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, the current value will not be changed.

Usage Notes

- If the non-Oracle messaging link being accessed for the propagation job uses a JMS interface, then the Messaging Gateway agent will use the Oracle JMS interface to access the Oracle Streams AQ queues. Otherwise the native Oracle Streams AQ interface will be used. Parameters are interpreted differently when the Messaging Gateway agent uses Oracle JMS for JMS connections.
- The subscriber rule cannot be altered when propagating from a JMS source. Instead, the propagation job must be dropped and re-created with the new rule. For JMS, changing the message selector on a durable subscription is equivalent to deleting and re-creating the subscription.
- Transformations are not currently supported if the Oracle JMS interface is used for propagation. The transformation parameter must be DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE (the default value).
- The options parameter specifies a set of properties used to alter the current optional properties. Each property affects the current property list in a particular manner; add a new property, replace an existing property, remove an existing property or remove all properties.

See Also:

- SYS.MGW_PROPERTY Object Type on page 97-14 for more information about the options parameter
- OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION Jobs on page 97-37 for outbound propagation parameter interpretation
- INBOUND_PROPAGATION Jobs on page 97-38 for inbound propagation parameter interpretation

ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure for TIB/Rendezvous

Alters the properties of a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK (
   linkname      IN  VARCHAR2,
   properties    IN  SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES,
   options       IN  SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE );
```

Parameters

Table 97–23 ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure Parameters for TIB/Rendezvous

Parameters	Description
`linkname`	The messaging system link name
`properties`	Basic properties for a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system link. If `NULL`, then no link properties will be changed.
`options`	Optional link properties. If `NULL`, then no options will be changed. If not `NULL`, then the properties specified in this list are combined with the current options properties to form a new set of link options.
`comment`	A user-specified description, or `NULL` if one is not desired. If `DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE`, then the current value will not be changed.

Usage Notes

To retain an existing value for a messaging link property with a `VARCHAR2` datatype, specify `DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE` for that particular property. To preserve an existing value for a property of another datatype, specify `NULL` for that property.

The `options` parameter specifies a set of properties used to alter the current optional properties. Each property affects the current property list in a particular manner: add a new property, replace an existing property, remove an existing property, or remove all properties.

> **See Also:** SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES Object Type on page 97-12

Some properties cannot be modified, and this procedure will fail if an attempt is made to alter such a property. For properties and options that can be changed, a few are dynamic, and Messaging Gateway uses the new values immediately. Others require the Messaging Gateway agent to be shut down and restarted before they take effect.

> **See Also:** "TIB/Rendezvous System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about the messaging system properties and options

ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure for WebSphere MQ

This procedure alters the properties of a WebSphere MQ messaging system link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK (
   linkname   IN  VARCHAR2,
   properties IN  SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES,
   options    IN  SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE);
```

Parameters

Table 97–24 ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure Parameters for WebSphere MQ

Parameters	Description
linkname	The messaging system link name
properties	Basic properties for a WebSphere MQ messaging system link. If it is NULL, then no link properties are changed.
options	Optional link properties. NULL if no options are changed. If not NULL, then the properties specified in this list are combined with the current options properties to form a new set of link options.
comment	An optional description or NULL if not desired. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE is specified, then the current value is not changed.

Usage Notes

To retain an existing value for a messaging link property with a VARCHAR2 datatype, specify DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE for that particular property. To preserve an existing value for a property of another datatype, specify NULL for that property.

The options parameter specifies a set of properties used to alter the current optional properties. Each property affects the current property list in a particular manner: add a new property, replace an existing property, remove an existing property, or remove all properties.

See Also: SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES Object Type on page 97-12

Some properties cannot be modified, and this procedure will fail if an attempt is made to alter such a property. For properties and options that can be changed, a few are dynamic, and Messaging Gateway uses the new values immediately. Others require the Messaging Gateway agent to be shut down and restarted before they take effect.

See Also: "WebSphere MQ System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about the messaging system properties and options

ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure alters a propagation schedule.

> **Note:** This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see ALTER_JOB Procedure on page 97-24), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE (
   schedule_id  IN VARCHAR2,
   duration     IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   next_time    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   latency      IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–25 ALTER_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schedule_id`	Identifies the propagation schedule to be altered
`duration`	Reserved for future use
`next_time`	Reserved for future use
`latency`	Specifies the polling interval, in seconds, used by the Messaging Gateway agent when checking for messages in the source queue. If no messages are available in the source queue, then the agent will not poll again until the polling interval has passed. Once the agent detects a message it will continue propagating messages as long as any are available. Values: `NULL` or value > 0. If `latency` is `NULL`, then the Messaging Gateway agent default polling interval will be used. The default polling interval is 5 seconds, but it can be overridden by the Messaging Gateway initialization file.

Usage Notes

This procedure always overwrites the existing value for each parameter. If a given parameter is not specified, then the existing values are overwritten with the default value.

ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure alters the parameters of a subscriber used to consume messages from a source queue for propagation to a destination.

> **Note:** This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see ALTER_JOB Procedure on page 97-24), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_SUBSCRIBER (
   subscriber_id    IN VARCHAR2,
   rule             IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   transformation   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   exception_queue  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE,
   options          IN SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 97–26 ALTER_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
subscriber_id	Identifies the subscriber to be altered
rule	Specifies an optional subscription rule used by the subscriber to dequeue messages from the source queue. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the subscriber propagation type. A NULL value indicates that no subscription rule is needed. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged.
transformation	Specifies the transformation needed to convert between the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing payload and an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The type of transformation needed depends on the subscriber propagation type. A NULL value indicates that no transformation is needed. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged.
exception_queue	Specifies a queue used for exception message logging. This queue must be on the same messaging system as the propagation source. If no exception queue is associated with the subscriber, then propagation stops if a problem occurs. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the subscriber propagation type. A NULL value indicates that no exception queue is used. If DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE, then the current value is unchanged. The source queue and exception queue cannot be the same queue.
options	Optional subscriber properties. If NULL, then no options will be changed. If not NULL, then the properties specified in this list are combined with the current optional properties to form a new set of subscriber options.

Usage Notes

If the non-Oracle messaging link being accessed for the subscriber uses a JMS interface, then the Messaging Gateway agent will use the Oracle JMS interface to access the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queues. Otherwise the native Oracle Database Advanced Queuing interface will be used. Parameters are interpreted differently when the Messaging Gateway agent uses Oracle JMS for JMS connections.

When propagating from a JMS source, the subscriber rule cannot be altered. Instead, the subscriber must be removed and added with the new rule. For JMS, changing the message selector on a durable subscription is equivalent to deleting and re-creating the subscription.

Transformations are not currently supported if the Oracle JMS interface is used for propagation. The transformation parameter must be `DBMS_MGWADM.NO_CHANGE` (the default value).

The `options` parameter specifies a set of properties used to alter the current optional properties. Each property affects the current property list in a particular manner: add a new property, replace an existing property, remove an existing property, or remove all properties.

See Also:

- SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES Object Type on page 97-12 for more information on the options parameter
- "WebSphere MQ System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about WebSphere MQ subscriber options
- "TIB/Rendezvous System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about TIB/Rendezvous subscriber options
- "OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION Subscribers on page 97-19 for outbound propagation parameter interpretation
- "INBOUND_PROPAGATION Subscribers on page 97-20 for inbound propagation parameter interpretation

CLEANUP_GATEWAY Procedures

This procedure cleans up Messaging Gateway. The procedure performs cleanup or recovery actions that may be needed when Messaging Gateway is left in some abnormal or unexpected condition. The MGW_GATEWAY view lists Messaging Gateway status and configuration information that pertains to the cleanup actions.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.CLEANUP_GATEWAY(
   action       IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   sarg         IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_MGWADM.CLEANUP_GATEWAY(
   agent_name   IN   VARCHAR2,   action       IN   BINARY_INTEGER,   sarg
IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 97–27 CLEANUP_GATEWAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
action	The cleanup action to be performed. Values: ■ DBMS_MGWADM.CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE for Messaging Gateway start up state recovery ■ DBMS_MGWADM.CLEAN_LOG_QUEUES for log queue cleanup ■ DBMS_MGWADM.RESET_SUB_MISSING_LOG_REC for propagation job recovery due to missing log record ■ DBMS_MGWADM.RESET_SUB_MISSING_MESSAGE for propagation job recovery due to missing message
sarg	Optional argument whose meaning depends on the value specified for action. This should be NULL if it is not used for the specified action.
agent_name	Identifies the Messaging Gateway agent. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT specifies the default agent.

Usage Notes

CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE

sarg is not used and must be NULL.

The CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE action recovers Messaging Gateway to a known state when the Messaging Gateway agent has crashed or some other abnormal event occurs, and Messaging Gateway cannot be restarted. This should be done only when the Messaging Gateway agent has been started but appears to have crashed or has been nonresponsive for an extended period of time.

The CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE action may be needed when the MGW_GATEWAY view shows that the AGENT_STATUS value is something other than NOT_STARTED or START_SCHEDULED, and the AGENT_PING value is UNREACHABLE for an extended period of time.

If the AGENT_STATUS value is BROKEN, then the Messaging Gateway agent cannot be started until the problem has been resolved and the CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE action used to reset the agent status. A BROKEN status can indicate that the Messaging Gateway start job detected a Messaging Gateway agent already running. This condition that

should never occur under normal use.

Cleanup tasks include:

- Removing the Scheduler job used to start the external Messaging Gateway agent process.
- Setting certain configuration information to a known state. For example, setting the agent status to `NOT_STARTED`.

Execution of this command fails if:

- The agent status is `NOT_STARTED` or `START_SCHEDULED`.
- No shutdown attempt has been made prior to calling this procedure, except if the agent status is `STARTING`.
- The Messaging Gateway agent is successfully contacted.

  The assumption is that the agent is active, and this procedure fails. If the agent does not respond after several attempts have been made, then the cleanup tasks are performed. This procedure takes at least several seconds and possibly up to one minute. This is expected behavior under conditions where this particular cleanup action is appropriate and necessary.

> **Note:** Terminate any Messaging Gateway agent process that may still be running after a `CLEAN_STARTUP_STATE` action has been successfully performed. This should be done before calling `DBMS_MGWADM.STARTUP` to start Messaging Gateway. The process is usually named `extprocmgwextproc`.

CLEAN_LOG_QUEUES

`sarg` is not used and must be `NULL`.

The Messaging Gateway agent will clean log queues for all configured messaging system links. The agent will temporarily stop all propagation activity and then remove all obsolete and bad log records from the log queues for all links. The procedure will fail if the Messaging Gateway agent is not running.

This cleanup action is automatically performed each time the Messaging Gateway agent is started.

> **Note:** The `CLEAN_LOG_QUEUES` action is performed only on agent startup. If this procedure is called when the agent is running, then the Messaging Gateway agent ignores it.

RESET_SUB_MISSING_LOG_REC

`sarg` specifies a Messaging Gateway job name (or subscriber ID) to be reset. It must not be `NULL`.

The Messaging Gateway agent recovers a Messaging Gateway propagation job that has failed due to a missing log record. The agent will reset the source and destination log records. The procedure will fail if the Messaging Gateway agent is not running.

> **Caution:** If the messages in the source queue had already been propagated to the destination queue, then this action may result in duplicate messages.

RESET_SUB_MISSING_MESSAGE

`sarg` specifies a Messaging Gateway job name (or subscriber ID) to be reset. It must not be `NULL`.

The Messaging Gateway agent recovers a Messaging Gateway propagation job that has failed due to a missing persistent source message. The agent will treat the message as a non-persistent message and continue processing that propagation job. The procedure will fail if the Messaging Gateway agent is not running.

CREATE_AGENT Procedure

This procedure creates a Messaging Gateway agent that will be used to process propagation jobs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_AGENT (
   agent_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   username       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   password       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   database       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   conntype       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.JDBC_OCI,
   max_memory     IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 64,
   max_threads    IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   service        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   initfile       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   comment        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 97–28 CREATE_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
agent_name	A name used to identify the agent
username	Specifies the username used for connections to the Oracle Database
password	Specifies the password used for connections to the Oracle Database. A password must be specified if a username is specified.
database	Specifies the database connect string used for connections to the Oracle Database. NULL indicates that a local connection should be used. A value can be specified only if username is specified. Oracle strong recommends that a connect string, rather than NULL be specified. Usually it will be a net service name from tnsnames.ora.
conntype	Specifies the type of connection to the Oracle Database.Values: DBMS_MGWADM.JDBC_OCI, DBMS_MGWADM.JDBC_THIN
max_memory	Specifies the maximum heap size, in MB, used by the Messaging Gateway agent
max_threads	Specifies the number of messaging threads that the Messaging Gateway agent creates. This determines the number of propagation jobs that the agent can concurrently process.
service	Specifies the database service that the Oracle Scheduler job class used by this agent will have affinity to. In an Oracle RAC environment, this means that the Messaging Gateway agent will only run on those database instances that are assigned to the service. If NULL, then the job class will belong to the default service which is mapped to every instance.
initfile	Specifies a Messaging Gateway initialization file used by this agent. NULL indicates that the default initialization file is used. If a value is specified, it should be the full path name of the file.
comment	An optional comment for this agent. NULL if one is not desired.

Usage Notes

- The Messaging Gateway automatically configures a default agent when Messaging Gateway is installed. The name of the default agent is `DEFAULT_AGENT`. This procedure can be used to create additional agents.
- The `username`, `password`, and `database` parameters specify connection information used by the Messaging Gateway agent for connections to the Oracle Database. An Oracle administrator should create the database user and grant it the role `MGW_AGENT_ROLE`. It is not mandatory that the connection information be specified when this procedure is called but it must be set before the agent can be started.
- The `service` parameter is used to create an Oracle Scheduler job class. The job class is used to create a Scheduler job that starts the Messaging Gateway agent. An Oracle administrator must create the database service. If the value is `NULL`, the job class will belong to an internal service that is mapped to all instances.

CREATE_JOB Procedure

This procedure creates a job used to propagate message from a source to a destination.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name           IN   VARCHAR2,
   propagation_type   IN   PLS_INTEGER,
   source             IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination        IN   VARCHAR2,
   rule               IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   transformation     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   exception_queue    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   poll_interval      IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   options            IN   SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   enabled            IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–29 CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	A user defined name to identify the propagation job
propagation_type	Specifies the type of message propagation. ■ DBMS_MGWADM.OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION for Oracle Streams AQ to non-Oracle propagation. ■ DBMS_MGWADM.INBOUND_PROPAGATION for non-Oracle to Oracle Streams AQ propagation.
source	Specifies the source queue whose messages are to be propagated. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
destination	Specifies the destination queue to which messages are propagated. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
rule	Specifies an optional subscription rule used to dequeue messages from the source queue. This should be NULL if no rule is needed. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
transformation	Specifies the transformation needed to convert between the Oracle Streams AQ payload and an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The type of transformation needed depends on the value specified for propagation_type. If no transformation is specified the Oracle Streams AQ payload type must be supported by Messaging Gateway.
exception_queue	Specifies a queue used for exception message logging purposes. This queue must be on the same messaging system as the propagation source. If NULL, an exception queue will not be used and propagation will stop if a problem occurs. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type. The source queue and exception queue cannot be the same queue.

Table 97–29 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
poll_interval	Specifies the polling interval, in seconds, used by the Messaging Gateway agent when checking for messages in the source queue. If no messages are available the agent will not poll again until the polling interval has passed. Once the agent detects a message it will continue propagating messages as long as any are available. Values: NULL or value > 0. If NULL, then the Messaging Gateway default polling interval will be used. The default polling interval is 5 seconds and can be overridden by the Messaging Gateway initialization file.
options	Optional job properties, NULL if there are none. Typically these are lesser used configuration properties supported by the messaging system.
enabled	Specifies whether this propagation job is enabled after creation. Values: TRUE, FALSE. ■ If TRUE (default), the job will be enabled after it is created. ■ If FALSE, the job will be disabled after it is created. A propagation job must be enabled and the Messaging Gateway agent running before messages can be propagated.
comments	An optional comment for this job. NULL if one is not desired.

Usage Notes

- The job must be enabled and Messaging Gateway agent started in order for messages to be propagated.
- If the non-Oracle messaging link being accessed for the propagation job uses a JMS interface, then the Messaging Gateway agent will use the Oracle JMS interface to access the Oracle Streams AQ queues. Otherwise the native Oracle Streams AQ interface will be used. Parameters are interpreted differently when the Messaging Gateway agent uses Oracle JMS for JMS connections.
- Transformations are not currently supported if the Oracle JMS interface is used for propagation. The transformation parameter must be NULL.

OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION Jobs

The parameters for an outbound propagation job are interpreted as follows:

- source specifies the local Oracle Streams AQ queue that is the propagation source. This must have syntax of schema.queue. This can be either a multiple consumer queue or a single consumer queue.
- destination specifies the non-Oracle queue to which messages are propagated. This must have syntax of registered_queue@message_link.
- rule specifies an optional Oracle Streams AQ subscriber rule if the native Oracle Stream AQ interface is used, or a JMS selector if the Oracle JMS interface is used. If NULL, then no rule or selector is used. This parameter must be NULL if the native Oracle Stream AQ interface is used and the propagation source is a single consumer queue.
- transformation specifies the transformation used to convert the Oracle Streams AQ payload to an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The full transformation name (schema.name) should be used if one is specified.

Messaging Gateway propagation dequeues messages from the Oracle Streams AQ queue using the transformation to convert the Oracle Streams AQ payload to a known ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The message is then enqueued in the non-Oracle messaging system based on the Messaging Gateway ADT.

- `exception_queue` specifies the name of a local Oracle Streams AQ queue to which messages are moved if an exception occurs. The syntax must be `schema.queue`.

  If the native Oracle Streams AQ interface is used and the source is a multiple consumer queue, then a subscriber will be added to the Oracle Streams AQ queue when this procedure is called, whether or not the Messaging Gateway agent is running. The local subscriber will be of the form `sys.aq$_agent('MGW_job_name', NULL, NULL)`.

  If the Oracle JMS interface is used, then the Messaging Gateway agent will create a JMS durable subscriber with the name of `MGW_job_name`. If the agent is not running when this procedure is called, then the durable subscriber will be created the next time the agent starts.

  The exception queue has the following conditions:

  – The user is responsible for creating the Oracle Streams AQ queue to be used as the exception queue.

  – The payload type of the source queue and exception queue must match.

  – The exception queue must be created as a queue type of `DBMS_AQADM.NORMAL_QUEUE`. Enqueue restrictions prevent Messaging Gateway from using an Oracle Streams AQ queue of type `DBMS_AQADM.EXCEPTION_QUEUE` as a Messaging Gateway exception queue.

INBOUND_PROPAGATION Jobs

The parameters for an inbound propagation job are interpreted as follows:

- `source` specifies the non-Oracle queue that is the propagation source. The syntax must be `registered_queue@message_link`.
- `destination` specifies the local Oracle Streams AQ queue to which messages are propagated. The syntax must be `schema.queue`.
- `rule` specifies an optional subscriber rule that is valid for the non-Oracle messaging system. This should be `NULL` if no rule is needed.
- `transformation` specifies the transformation used to convert an ADT defined by Messaging Gateway to the Oracle Streams AQ payload type. The full transformation name (`schema.name`) should be used if one is specified

  Messaging Gateway propagation dequeues messages from the non-Oracle messaging system and converts the message body to a known ADT defined by Messaging Gateway. The transformation is used to convert the Messaging Gateway ADT to an Oracle Streams AQ payload type when the message is enqueued to the Oracle Streams AQ queue.

- `exception_queue` specifies the name of a registered non-Oracle queue to which messages are moved if an exception occurs. The syntax must be `registered_queue@message_link`.

  Whether or not a subscriber is needed for the source queue depends on the requirements of the non-Oracle messaging system. If a durable subscriber is necessary, then the Messaging Gateway agent will create it. If the agent is not running when this procedure is called, then the subscriber will be created on the non-Oracle messaging system the next time the agent starts.

The exception queue has the following conditions:

- The exception queue must be a registered non-Oracle queue.
- The source queue and exception queue must use the same messaging system link.

CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedures for TIB/Rendezvous

Creates a link to a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK (
   linkname     IN  VARCHAR2,
   properties   IN  SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES,
   options      IN  SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );

DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK (
   linkname     IN  VARCHAR2,
   agent_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   properties   IN  SYS.MGW_TIBRV_PROPERTIES,
   options      IN  SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 97–30 CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure Parameters for TIB/Rendezvous

Parameter	Description
`linkname`	A user-defined name to identify this messaging system link
`properties`	Basic properties of a TIB/Rendezvous messaging system link.
`options`	Optional link properties. `NULL` if there are none. These are less frequently used configuration properties supported by the messaging system
`comment`	A user-specified description. `NULL` if one is not desired.
`agent_name`	Specifies the Messaging Gateway agent that will be used to process all propagation jobs associated with this link. `DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT` specifies the default agent.

Usage Notes

The Messaging Gateway default agent will process the propagation jobs associated with this link if an agent name is not specified.

> **See Also:** "TIB/Rendezvous System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about the messaging system properties and options

CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedures for WebSphere MQ

This procedure creates a messaging system link to a WebSphere MQ messaging system.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK(
   linkname    IN VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES,
   options     IN SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK(
   linkname    IN VARCHAR2,
   agent_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   properties  IN SYS.MGW_MQSERIES_PROPERTIES,
   options     IN SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–31 CREATE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure Parameters for WebSphere MQ

Parameter	Description
linkname	A user-defined name to identify the messaging system link
properties	Basic properties of a WebSphere MQ messaging system link
options	Optional link properties. NULL if there are none. These are less frequently used configuration properties supported by the messaging system.
comment	A user-specified description. NULL if one is not desired
agent_name	Specifies the Messaging Gateway agent that will be used to process all propagation jobs associated with this link. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT specifies the default agent.

Usage Notes

The Messaging Gateway default agent will process the propagation jobs associated with this link if an agent name is not specified.

> **See Also:** "WebSphere MQ System Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about the messaging system properties and options

DB_CONNECT_INFO Procedure

This procedure configures connection information used by the Messaging Gateway default agent for connections to Oracle Database.

Note: This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see ALTER_AGENT Procedures on page 97-22), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.DB_CONNECT_INFO (
   username      IN VARCHAR2,
   password      IN VARCHAR2,
   database      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–32 DB_CONNECT_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
username	The username used for connections to Oracle Database. NULL is not allowed
password	The password used for connections to Oracle Database. NULL is not allowed
database	The database connect string used by the Messaging Gateway agent. NULL indicates that a local connection should be used. Oracle strongly recommends that a not NULL value be specified. Usually it will be a net service name from tnsnames.ora.

Usage Notes

The Messaging Gateway agent connects to Oracle Database as the user configured by this procedure. An Oracle administrator should create the user, grant it the role MGW_AGENT_ROLE, and then call this procedure to configure Messaging Gateway. Role MGW_AGENT_ROLE is used to grant this user special privileges needed to access Messaging Gateway configuration information stored in the database, enqueue or dequeue messages to and from Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queues, and perform certain Oracle Database Advanced Queuing administration tasks.

DISABLE_JOB Procedure

This procedure disables a propagation job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.DISABLE_JOB (
   job_name  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–33 DISABLE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Identifies the propagation job

DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure disables a propagation schedule.

Note: This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see DISABLE_JOB Procedure on page 97-43), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE (
   schedule_id  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–34 DISABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_id	Identifies the propagation schedule to be disabled

ENABLE_JOB Procedure

This procedure enables a propagation job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ENABLE_JOB (
   job_name  IN VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 97–35 ENABLE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Identifies the propagation job

ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure enables a propagation schedule.

Note: This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see ENABLE_JOB Procedure on page 97-45), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE (
   schedule_id  IN VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 97–36 ENABLE_PROPAGATION_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_id	Identifies the propagation schedule to be enabled

REGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure registers a non-Oracle queue entity in Messaging Gateway.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.REGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE(
   name            IN VARCHAR2,
   linkname        IN VARCHAR2,
   provider_queue  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   domain          IN INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   options         IN SYS.MGW_PROPERTIES DEFAULT NULL,
   comment         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–37 REGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
name	The registered queue name. This name identifies the foreign queue within Messaging Gateway and need not match the name of the queue in the foreign messaging system.
linkname	The link name for the messaging system on which this queue exists
provider_queue	The message provider (native) queue name. If NULL, then the value provided for the name parameter is used as the provider queue name.
domain	The domain type of the queue. NULL means the domain type is automatically determined based on the messaging system of the queue. DBMS_MGWADM.DOMAIN_QUEUE is for a queue (point-to-point model). DBMS_MGWADM.DOMAIN_TOPIC is for a topic (publish-subscribe model).
options	Optional queue properties
comment	A user-specified description. Can be NULL.

Usage Notes

This procedure does not create the physical queue in the non-Oracle messaging system. The non-Oracle queue must be created using the administration tools for that messaging system.

> **See Also:** For more information when registering queues for the WebSphere MQ messaging system or the TIB/Rendezvous messaging system, specifically "Optional Foreign Queue Configuration Properties" in *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*.

REMOVE_AGENT Procedure

This procedure removes a Messaging Gateway agent.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.REMOVE_AGENT(
   agent_name   IN   VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 97–38 REMOVE_AGENT Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
agent_name	Identifies the Messaging Gateway agent

Usage Notes

All messaging system links associated with this Messaging Gateway agent must be removed and the agent must be stopped before it can be removed. The Messaging Gateway default agent cannot be removed.

REMOVE_JOB Procedure

This procedure removes a propagation job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.REMOVE_JOB(
   job_name   IN   VARCHAR2,   force      IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_
FORCE);
```

Parameters

Table 97–39 REMOVE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
job_name	Identifies the propagation job
force	Specifies whether the procedure should succeed even if Messaging Gateway is not able to perform all cleanup actions pertaining to this propagation job. Values: DBMS_MGWADM.NO_FORCE, DBMS_MGWADM.FORCE ■ NO_FORCE (default) means the job is not removed if Messaging Gateway is unable to clean up successfully ■ FORCE means the job is removed even though all cleanup actions may not be done

Usage Notes

- The Messaging Gateway agent uses various resources of the Oracle Database and the non-Oracle messaging system for its propagation work. These resources need to be released when the job is removed. For example, Messaging Gateway may create a durable subscriber on the source queue that should be removed when the job is removed. Therefore, this procedure should normally be called when the Messaging Gateway agent is running and able to access the non-Oracle messaging system associated with this job.
- For outbound propagation, a local subscriber is removed from the Oracle Streams AQ queue when the propagation source is a multiple consumer queue.

REMOVE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure

This procedure removes a messaging system link for a non-Oracle messaging system.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.REMOVE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK(
   linkname  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–40 REMOVE_MSGSYSTEM_LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
linkname	The messaging system link name

Usage Notes

All registered queues associated with this link must be removed before the messaging system link can be removed. This procedure fails if there is a registered foreign (non-Oracle) queue that references this link.

REMOVE_OPTION Procedure

This procedure removes a Messaging Gateway configuration option. It can be used to remove an agent option, a messaging link option, or a propagation job option.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.REMOVE_OPTION (
   target_type    IN   PLS_INTEGER,
   target_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   option_name    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–41 REMOVE_OPTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
target_type	Specifies the target type of the Messaging Gateway entity: ■ DBMS_MGWADM.AGENT_JAVA_PROP to remove a Java System property for a Messaging Gateway agent ■ DBMS_MGWADM.MSGLINK_OPTION to remove a messaging link option ■ DBMS_MGWADM.JOB_OPTION to remove a propagation job option
target_name	Name or identifier of the target. The value for this parameter depends on the value specified for target_type parameter. This must not be NULL.
option_name	Option name. This must not be NULL.

See Also: Table 97–10, " DBMS_MGWADM Constants—target_type Argument of SET_OPTION and REMOVE_OPTION Procedures" on page 97-7 regarding options for the option_type parameter

Usage Notes

DBMS_MGWADM.AGENT_JAVA_PROP Target

The procedure removes an agent option used to set a Java System property when the Messaging Gateway agent is started. The agent must be restarted for the change to take effect.

The parameters are interpreted as follows:

- target_name specifies the name of the Messaging Gateway agent. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT can be used for the default agent.
- option_name specifies the Java System property
- encrypted can be either TRUE or FALSE

DBMS_MGWADM.MSGLINK_OPTION Target

The procedure removes a single option for a Messaging Gateway messaging system link. This is equivalent to calling DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK and using the options parameter to remove an option.

The parameters are interpreted as follows:

- `target_name` specifies the name of the message system link
- `option_name` specifies the option to set
- `encrypted` must be `FALSE`

DBMS_MGWADM.JOB_OPTION Target

The procedure removes a single option for a Messaging Gateway propagation job. This is equivalent to calling `DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_JOB` and using the options parameter to remove an option.

The parameters are interpreted as follows:

- `target_name` specifies the name of the propagation job
- `option_name` specifies the option to set
- `encrypted` must be `FALSE`

REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure removes a subscriber used to consume messages from a source queue for propagation to a destination.

> **Note:** This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see REMOVE_JOB Procedure on page 97-49), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER (
   subscriber_id  IN VARCHAR2,
   force          IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_FORCE );
```

Parameters

Table 97–42 REMOVE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
subscriber_id	Identifies the subscriber to be removed
force	Specifies whether this procedure should succeed even if Messaging Gateway is not able to perform all cleanup actions pertaining to this subscriber. Values: DBMS_MGWADM.NO_FORCE, DBMS_MGWADM.FORCE ■ NO_FORCE means the subscriber is not removed if Messaging Gateway is unable to clean up successfully (default) ■ FORCE means the subscriber is removed even though all cleanup actions may not be done

Usage Notes

- The Messaging Gateway agent uses various resources of Oracle Database and the non-Oracle messaging system for its propagation work. These resources are typically associated with each subscriber and need to be released when the subscriber is no longer needed. Therefore, this procedure should only be called when the Messaging Gateway agent is running and able to access the non-Oracle messaging system associated with this subscriber.
- For outbound propagation, a local subscriber is removed from the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.

RESET_JOB Procedure

This procedure resets the propagation error state for a propagation job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.RESET_JOB (
   job_name   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–43 RESET_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Identifies the propagation job

Usage Notes

This procedure can be used to reset a propagation job that has been set to a failed state and propagation activities have been stopped. The administrator should correct the problem and then call this procedure to allow the agent to retry the propagation job. The STATUS field of the MGW_JOBS view indicates the job status.

RESET_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure resets the propagation error state for a subscriber.

> **Note:** This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see RESET_JOB Procedure on page 97-54), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.RESET_SUBSCRIBER (
   subscriber_id  IN VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 97–44 RESET_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
subscriber_id	Identifies the subscriber

SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure schedules message propagation from a source to a destination. The schedule must be enabled and Messaging Gateway started in order for messages to be propagated.

Note: This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see CREATE_JOB Procedure on page 97-36), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION (
   schedule_id       IN VARCHAR2,
   propagation_type  IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   source            IN VARCHAR2,
   destination       IN VARCHAR2,
   start_time        IN DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE,
   duration          IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   next_time         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   latency           IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 97–45 SCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_id	Specifies a user-defined name that identifies the schedule
propagation_type	Specifies the type of message propagation. DBMS_MGWADM.OUTBOUND_PROPAGATION is for Oracle Database Advanced Queuing to non-Oracle propagation. DBMS_MGWADM.INBOUND_PROPAGATION is for non-Oracle to Oracle Database Advanced Queuing propagation.
source	Specifies the source queue whose messages are to be propagated. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
destination	Specifies the destination queue to which messages are propagated. The syntax and interpretation of this parameter depend on the value specified for propagation_type.
start_time	Reserved for future use
duration	Reserved for future use
next_time	Reserved for future use
latency	Specifies the polling interval, in seconds, used by the Messaging Gateway agent when checking for messages in the source queue. If no messages are available in the source queue, then the agent will not poll again until the polling interval has passed. Once the agent detects a message it will continue propagating messages as long as any are available. Values: NULL or value > 0. If latency is NULL, then the Messaging Gateway agent default polling interval will be used. The default polling interval is 5 seconds but it can be overridden by the Messaging Gateway initialization file.

Usage Notes

For outbound propagation, parameters are interpreted as follows:

- `source` specifies the local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue from which messages are propagated. This must have a syntax of `schema.queue`.
- `destination` specifies the foreign queue to which messages are propagated. This must have a syntax of `registered_queue@message_link`.

For inbound propagation, parameters are interpreted as follows:

- `source` specifies the foreign queue from which messages are propagated. This must have a syntax of `registered_queue@message_link`.
- `destination` specifies the local Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue to which messages are propagated. This must have a syntax of `schema.queue`.

The schedule is set to an enabled state when it is created.

SET_LOG_LEVEL Procedures

This procedure dynamically alters the Messaging Gateway agent logging level. The Messaging Gateway agent must be running.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.SET_LOG_LEVEL (
   log_level    IN   BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_MGWADM.SET_LOG_LEVEL (
   agent_name   IN   VARCHAR2,
   log_level    IN   BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 97–46 SET_LOG_LEVEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`log_level`	Level at which the Messaging Gateway agent logs information. `DBMS_MGWADM.BASIC_LOGGING` generates the least information while `DBMS_MGWADM.TRACE_DEBUG_LOGGING` generates the most information.
`agent_name`	Identifies the Messaging Gateway agent. `DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT` specifies the default agent.

See Also: Table 97–3, " DBMS_MGWADM Constants—Logging Levels" on page 97-5 for details on the `log_level` parameter

SET_OPTION Procedure

This procedure sets a Messaging Gateway configuration option. It can be used to set an agent option, a messaging link option, or a propagation job option.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.SET_OPTION (
   target_type    IN   PLS_INTEGER,
   target_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   option_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   option_value   IN   VARCHAR2,
   encrypted      IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE );
```

Parameters

Table 97–47 SET_OPTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
target_type	Specifies the target type of the Messaging Gateway entity: ■ DBMS_MGWADM.AGENT_JAVA_PROP to set a Java System property for a Messaging Gateway agent ■ DBMS_MGWADM.MSGLINK_OPTION to set a messaging link option ■ DBMS_MGWADM.JOB_OPTION to set a propagation job option
target_name	Name or identifier of the target. The value for this parameter depends on the value specified for target_type parameter. This must not be NULL.
option_name	Option name. This must not be NULL.
option_value	Option value
encrypted	Indicates whether the value should be stored as encrypted: ■ TRUE if the value should be stored in an encrypted form ■ FALSE if the value should be stored in a cleartext form

See Also: Table 97–10, " DBMS_MGWADM Constants—target_type Argument of SET_OPTION and REMOVE_OPTION Procedures" on page 97-7 regarding options for the option_type parameter

Usage Notes

DBMS_MGWADM.AGENT_JAVA_PROP Target

The procedure will store an agent option used to set a Java System property when the Messaging Gateway agent is started. The agent must be restarted for the change to take effect.

The parameters are interpreted as follows:

- target_name specifies the name of the Messaging Gateway agent. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT can be used for the default agent.
- option_name specifies the Java System property

- encrypted can be either TRUE or FALSE

DBMS_MGWADM.MSGLINK_OPTION Target

The procedure will set or alter a single option for a Messaging Gateway messaging system link. This is equivalent to calling DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_MSGSYSTEM_LINK and using the options parameter to set an option.

The parameters are interpreted as follows:

- target_name specifies the name of the message system link
- option_name specifies the option to set
- encrypted must be FALSE

DBMS_MGWADM.JOB_OPTION Target

The procedure will set or alter a single option for a Messaging Gateway propagation job. This is equivalent to calling DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_JOB and using the options parameter to set an option.

The parameters are interpreted as follows:

- target_name specifies the name of the propagation job
- option_name specifies the option to set
- encrypted must be FALSE

SHUTDOWN Procedures

This procedure shuts down the Messaging Gateway agent. No propagation activity occurs until Messaging Gateway is restarted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.SHUTDOWN (
   sdmode      IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.SHUTDOWN_NORMAL);

DBMS_MGWADM.SHUTDOWN (
   agent_name  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–48 SHUTDOWN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sdmode	The shutdown mode. The only value currently supported is DBMS_MGWADM.SHUTDOWN_NORMAL for normal shutdown. The Messaging Gateway agent may attempt to complete any propagation work currently in progress.
agent_name	Identifies the Messaging Gateway agent. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT specifies the default agent.

Usage Notes

The Messaging Gateway default agent is shut down if no agent name is specified.

STARTUP Procedures

This procedure starts the Messaging Gateway agent. It must be called before any propagation activity can take place.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.STARTUP(
   instance       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   force          IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT DBMS_MGWADM.NO_FORCE);

DBMS_MGWADM.STARTUP(
   agent_name     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–49 STARTUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
instance	Specifies which instance can run the job queue job used to start the Messaging Gateway agent. If this is zero, then the job can be run by any instance. **Caution: This parameter has been deprecated**.
force	If this is DBMS_MGWADM.FORCE, then any positive integer is acceptable as the job instance. If this is DBMS_MGWADM.NO_FORCE (the default), then the specified instance must be running; otherwise the routine raises an exception. **Caution: This parameter has been deprecated**.
agent_name	Identifies the Messaging Gateway agent. DBMS_MGWADM.DEFAULT_AGENT specifies the default agent.

Usage Notes

- The Messaging Gateway default agent will be started if an agent name is not specified.
- The force and instance parameters are no longer used and will be ignored. If the instance affinity parameters were being used to start the default agent on a specific instance, the administrator will need to create a database service and then assign that service to the default agent using the DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_AGENT procedure.
- The Messaging Gateway agent cannot be started until an agent user has been configured by the DBMS_MGWADM.CREATE_AGENT or DBMS_MGWADM.ALTER_AGENT subprograms.

UNREGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure removes a non-Oracle queue entity in Messaging Gateway.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.UNREGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE(
   name         IN VARCHAR2,
   linkname     IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 97–50 UNREGISTER_FOREIGN_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The queue name
linkname	The link name for the messaging system on which the queue exists

Usage Notes

- This procedure does not remove the physical queue in the non-Oracle messaging system.
- All propagation jobs, subscribers and schedules referencing this queue must be removed before it can be unregistered. This procedure fails if a propagation job, subscriber, or propagation schedule references the non-Oracle queue.

UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure removes a propagation schedule.

Note: This subprogram has been deprecated as a result of improved technology (see REMOVE_JOB Procedure on page 97-54), and is retained only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWADM.UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION (
   schedule_id   IN VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 97–51 UNSCHEDULE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_id	Identifies the propagation schedule to be removed

98

DBMS_MGWMSG

DBMS_MGWMSG provides:

- Object types used by the canonical message types to convert message bodies.
- Methods, constants, and subprograms for working with Messaging Gateway message types.

> **See Also:** Chapter 97, "DBMS_MGWADM" which describes the Messaging Gateway administrative interface, DBMS_MGWADM

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_MGWMSG

Security Model

The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC on all types defined in the DBMS_MGWMSG package as well as the canonical types. The DBMS_MGWMSG packages and object types are owned by SYS.

Note: You must run the catmgw.sql script to load the Messaging Gateway packages and object types into the database. Refer to the *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for information on loading database objects and using DBMS_MGWMSG.

Constants

Table 98–1 DBMS_MGWMSG Constants: Value Types and Constants Representing the Type of Value for a SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T Object

Value	Constant
TEXT_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1
RAW_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 2
BOOLEAN_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 3
BYTE_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 4
SHORT_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 5
INTEGER_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 6
LONG_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 7
FLOAT_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 8
DOUBLE_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 9
DATE_VALUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 10

Table 98–2 DBMS_MGWMSG Constants: Boolean Values—Constants Representing a Boolean as a Numeric Value

Value	Constant
BOOLEAN_FALSE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0
BOOLEAN_TRUE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1

Table 98–3 DBMS_MGWMSG Constants: Case Comparisons

Value	Constant
CASE_SENSITIVE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0
CASE_INSENSITIVE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1

Table 98–4 Constants for the TIB/Rendezvous field type

Value	Constant
TIBRVMSG_BOOL	CONSTANT INTEGER := 1
TIBRVMSG_F32	CONSTANT INTEGER := 2
TIBRVMSG_F64	CONSTANT INTEGER := 3
TIBRVMSG_I8	CONSTANT INTEGER := 4
TIBRVMSG_I16	CONSTANT INTEGER := 5
TIBRVMSG_I32	CONSTANT INTEGER := 6
TIBRVMSG_I64	CONSTANT INTEGER := 7
TIBRVMSG_IPADDR32	CONSTANT INTEGER := 8
TIBRVMSG_IPPORT16	CONSTANT INTEGER := 9
TIBRVMSG_DATETIME	CONSTANT INTEGER := 10
TIBRVMSG_F32ARRAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 11

Table 98–4 (Cont.) Constants for the TIB/Rendezvous field type

Value	Constant
TIBRVMSG_F64ARRAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 12
TIBRVMSG_I8ARRAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 13
TIBRVMSG_I16ARRAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 14
TIBRVMSG_I32ARRAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 15
TIBRVMSG_I64ARRAY	CONSTANT INTEGER := 16
TIBRVMSG_OPAQUE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 17
TIBRVMSG_STRING	CONSTANT INTEGER := 18
TIBRVMSG_XML	CONSTANT INTEGER := 19

Types

SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T Type

This type specifies a named value. The `name` attribute, `type` attribute, and one of the `<>_value` attributes are typically not `NULL`.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T IS OBJECT(
   name               VARCHAR2(250),
   type               INTEGER,
   integer_value      INTEGER,
   number_value       NUMBER,
   text_value         VARCHAR2(4000),
   raw_value          RAW(2000),
   date_value         DATE,

-- Methods
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_BOOLEAN (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_BYTE (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_SHORT (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_INTEGER (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_LONG (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
```

```
   value  IN NUMBER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_FLOAT (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN NUMBER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_DOUBLE (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN NUMBER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_TEXT (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN VARCHAR2 )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_RAW (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN RAW )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T,

STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_DATE (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN DATE )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T );
```

Attributes

Table 98–5 SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
`name`	Name associated with the value
`type`	Value type. Refer to the `DBMS_MGWMSG.<>_VALUE` constants in Table 98–1. This indicates which Java datatype and class are associated with the value. It also indicates which attribute stores the value.
`integer_value`	Stores a numeric integer value
`number_value`	Stores a numeric float or large integer value
`text_value`	Stores a text value
`raw_value`	Stores a `RAW` (bytes) value
`date_value`	Stores a date value

SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T Type-Attribute Mapping

Table 98–6 shows the mapping between the value type and the attribute used to store the value.

Table 98–6 SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T Type Attribute Mapping

Type	Value Stored in Attribute
`DBMS_MGWMSG.TEXT_VALUE`	`text_value`
`DBMS_MGWMSG.RAW_VALUE`	`raw_value`

Table 98–6 (Cont.) SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T Type Attribute Mapping

Type	Value Stored in Attribute
DBMS_MGWMSG.BOOLEAN_VALUE	integer_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.BYTE_VALUE	integer_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.SHORT_VALUE	integer_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.INTEGER_VALUE	integer_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.LONG_VALUE	number_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.FLOAT_VALUE	number_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.DOUBLE_VALUE	number_value
DBMS_MGWMSG.DATE_VALUE	date_value

CONSTRUCT Method

This method constructs a new SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T instance. All attributes are assigned a value of NULL.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T;
```

CONSTRUCT_*TYPE* Methods

These methods construct a new SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T instance initialized with the value of a specific type. Each method sets the name and type attributes and one of the <>_value attributes, as shown in the mappings in Table 98–6.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT_<> (
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN datatype )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T;
```

Usage Notes

The construct_boolean method sets the value to either DBMS_MGWMSG.BOOLEAN_TRUE or DBMS_MGWMSG.BOOLEAN_FALSE.

SYS.MGW_NAME_TYPE_ARRAY_T Type

This type specifies an array of name-value pairs. An object of SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T type can have up to 1024 elements.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T
  AS VARRAY (1024) OF SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T;
```

SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T Type

This type specifies a TEXT value. It can store a large value as a CLOB or a smaller value (size <= 4000) as VARCHAR2. Only one of the < >_ value attributes should be set.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T IS OBJECT(
   small_value VARCHAR2(4000),
   large_value CLOB,

-- Methods
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T);
```

Attributes

Table 98–7 SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
small_value	Small TEXT value. Used for values <= 4000.
large_value	Large TEXT value. Used when the value is too large for the small_value attribute.

CONSTRUCT Method

This method constructs a new SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T instance. All attributes are assigned a value of NULL.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T;
```

SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T Type

This type specifies a RAW value. This type can store a large value as a BLOB or a smaller value (size <= 2000) as RAW. You must set no more than one of the < >_value attributes.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T IS OBJECT(
   small_value RAW(2000),
   large_value BLOB,

--Methods
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T);
```

Attributes

Table 98–8 SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
small_value	Small RAW (bytes) value <= 2000
large_value	Large RAW value. Used when the value is too large for the small_value attribute.

CONSTRUCT Method

This method constructs a new SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T instance. All attributes are assigned a value of NULL.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T;
```

SYS.MGW_BASIC_MSG_T Type

This is a canonical type for a basic TEXT or RAW message. Only a single TEXT or RAW value is typically set. An object of this type must not have both TEXT and RAW set to a not NULL value at the same time.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_BASIC_MSG_T IS OBJECT(
   header     SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   text_body  SYS.MGW_TEXT_VALUE_T,
   raw_body   SYS.MGW_RAW_VALUE_T,

--Methods
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_BASIC_MSG_T);
```

Attributes

Table 98–9 SYS.MGW_BASIC_MSG_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
header	Message header information as an array of name-value pairs
text_body	Message body for a TEXT message
raw_body	Message body for a RAW (bytes) message

CONSTRUCT Method

This method constructs a new SYS.MGW_BASIC_MSG_T instance. All attributes are assigned a value of NULL.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT
RETURN SYS.MGW_BASIC_MSG_T;
```

SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T Type

A type that specifies an array of numbers.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T AS VARRAY(1024) OF NUMBER;
```

SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T Type

A type representing a TIB/Rendezvous message field, typically used in a read-only fashion to retrieve field information from a SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T instance.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T IS OBJECT(
   field_name       VARCHAR2(256),
   field_id         INTEGER,
```

```
field_type       INTEGER,
number_value     NUMBER,
number_array_value  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T,
text_value       VARCHAR2(4000),
raw_value        RAW(2000),
date_value       DATE,
clob_value       CLOB,
blob_value       BLOB);
```

Attributes

Table 98–10 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
field_name	Field name. This will be NULL if the field has no name.
field_id	Field identifier. If the field identifier is zero (0), then that field is considered not to have a field identifier. Otherwise the field identifier is a nonzero value that is unique for all fields of that message.
field_type	Field wire format datatype. The DBMS_MGWMSG.TIBRVMSG_<> constants represent valid values for this attribute. The value of this field discriminates which value attribute is used to store the field data.
number_value	Used to store a numeric value
number_array_value	Used to store a numeric array value
text_value	Used to store a small text value
raw_value	Used to store a small raw value
date_value	Used to store a date value
clob_value	Used to store a large text value. This is used when the text data will not fit in text_value, that is, when size is larger than 4000.
blob_value	Used to store a large raw value. This is used when the raw data will not fit in raw_value; that is, when size is larger than 2000.

SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T Type and Attribute Mapping

Table 98–11 describes the mapping in type SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T between the field type and attribute used to store the value.

Table 98–11 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T Type and Attribute Mapping

Field Type (DBMS_ MGWMSG constant)	Value Stored in Attribute
TIBRVMSG_BOOL	number_value
TIBRVMSG_F32	number_value
TIBRVMSG_F64	number_value
TIBRVMSG_I8	number_value
TIBRVMSG_I16	number_value
TIBRVMSG_I32	number_value
TIBRVMSG_I64	number_value
TIBRVMSG_IPADDR32	text_value

Table 98–11 (Cont.) SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T Type and Attribute Mapping

Field Type (DBMS_ MGWMSG constant)	Value Stored in Attribute
TIBRVMSG_IPPORT16	number_value
TIBRVMSG_DATETIME	date_value
TIBRVMSG_F32ARRAY	number_array_value
TIBRVMSG_F64ARRAY	number_array_value
TIBRVMSG_I8ARRAY	number_array_value
TIBRVMSG_I16ARRAY	number_array_value
TIBRVMSG_I32ARRAY	number_array_value
TIBRVMSG_I64ARRAY	number_array_value
TIBRVMSG_OPAQUE	raw_value or blob_value
TIBRVMSG_STRING	text_value or clob_value
TIBRVMSG_XML	raw_value or blob_value

SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T Type

A type representing a TIB/Rendezvous message. You must never directly reference the attributes of this type. Instead use the type methods.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T IS OBJECT(
   send_subject    VARCHAR2(256),
   reply_subject   VARCHAR2(256),
   cm_time_limit   NUMBER,
   cm_sender_name  VARCHAR2(256),
   cm_sequence_num NUMBER,
   fields          SYS.MGW_TIBRV_IFIELDS_T,
   clob_data1      CLOB,
   clob_data2      CLOB,
   clob_data3      CLOB,
   blob_data1      BLOB,
   blob_data2      BLOB,
   blob_data3      BLOB,

STATIC FUNCTION construct
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T,

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_bool (
    name  IN   VARCHAR2,
    id    IN   INTEGER,
    value IN   INTEGER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_f32 (
    name  IN   VARCHAR2,
    id    IN   INTEGER,
    value IN   FLOAT ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_f64 (
    name  IN   VARCHAR2,
    id    IN   INTEGER,
    value IN   DOUBLE ),
```

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i8 (
    name  IN  VARCHAR2,
    id    IN  INTEGER,
    value IN  INTEGER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i16 (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  INTEGER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i32 (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  INTEGER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i64 (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  NUMBER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_ipaddr32 (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  VARCHAR2 ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_ipport16 (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  INTEGER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_datetime (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  DATE ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_f32array (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_f64array (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i8array (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i16array (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i32array (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T ),
```

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE add_i64array (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  SYS.MGW_NUMBER_ARRAY_T ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_string (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  VARCHAR2 ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_string (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  CLOB ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_opaque (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  RAW ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_opaque (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  BLOB ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_xml (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  RAW ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE add_xml (
     name  IN  VARCHAR2,
     id    IN  INTEGER,
     value IN  BLOB ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE set_send_subject (
     value  IN  VARCHAR2 ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE set_reply_subject (
     value  IN  VARCHAR2 ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE set_cm_time_limit (
     value  IN  NUMBER ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE set_cm_sender_name (
     value IN  VARCHAR2 ),

MEMBER PROCEDURE set_cm_sequence_num (
     value IN NUMBER ),

MEMBER FUNCTION get_send_subject
RETURN VARCHAR2,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_reply_subject
RETURN VARCHAR2,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_cm_time_limit
RETURN NUMBER,
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION get_cm_sender_name
RETURN VARCHAR2,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_cm_sequence_num
RETURN NUMBER,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_field_count
RETURN INTEGER,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_field (
     idx    IN INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_field_by_name (
     name   IN  VARCHAR2 )
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T,

MEMBER FUNCTION get_field_by_id (
     id     IN  INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T,

MEMBER FUNCTION find_field_name (
     name   IN  VARCHAR2,
     start_idx IN INTEGER )
RETURN INTEGER,

MEMBER FUNCTION find_field_id (
     id     IN INTEGER,
     start_idx IN INTEGER )
RETURN INTEGER
);
```

Attributes

Table 98–12 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
send_subject	Send subject name
reply_subject	Reply subject name
cm_time_limit	Time limit for a certified message
cm_sender_name	Sender name of a certified message
cm_sequence_num	Sequence number of a certified message
fields	Collection of message fields
clob_data1	Used to store a large text value
clob_data2	Used to store a large text value
clob_data3	Used to store a large text value
blob_data1	Used to store a large raw value
blob_data2	Used to store a large raw value
blob_data3	Used to store a large raw value

Construct Method

Constructs a new SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T instance. All attributes are set to NULL.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION construct
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T;
```

ADD_<> Methods

Adds a new field to the message.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE ADD_<> (
   name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   id    IN  INTEGER,
   value IN  datatype );
```

Parameters

Table 98–13 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T ADD_<> Method Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Field name
id	Field identifier
value	Field data

Table 98–14 shows, for each add method, the field type that will be assigned and valid values for the field data.

Table 98–14 MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T Add Method Field Types

Method Name	Field Type Assigned	Comment
add_bool	TIBRVMSG_BOOL	Valid values: 0 (false), 1 (true)
add_f32	TIBRVMSG_F32	n/a
add_f64	TIBRVMSG_F64	n/a
add_i8	TIBRVMSG_I8	Valid range: -128...127
add_i16	TIBRVMSG_I16	Valid range: -32768...32767
add_i32	TIBRVMSG_I32	Valid range: -2147483648... 2147483647
add_i64	TIBRVMSG_I64	n/a
add_ipaddr32	TIBRVMSG_IPADDR32	n/a
add_ipport16	TIBRVMSG_IPPORT16	n/a
add_datetime	TIBRVMSG_DATETIME	n/a
add_f32array	TIBRVMSG_F32ARRAY	n/a
add_f64array	TIBRVMSG_F64ARRAY	n/a
add_i8array	TIBRVMSG_I8ARRAY	Valid range: -128...127
add_i16array	TIBRVMSG_I16ARRAY	Valid range: -32768...32767
add_i32array	TIBRVMSG_I32ARRAY	Valid range: -2147483648... 2147483647
add_i64array	TIBRVMSG_I64ARRAY	n/a

Table 98–14 (Cont.) MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T Add Method Field Types

Method Name	Field Type Assigned	Comment
add_opaque	TIBRVMSG_OPAQUE	Value stored as RAW if size < 2000; otherwise value stored in BLOB
add_string	TIBRVMSG_STRING	Value stored as VARCHAR2 if size < 4000; otherwise value stored in CLOB
add_xml	TIBRVMSG_XML	Value stored as RAW if size < 2000; otherwise value stored in BLOB

SET_<> Methods

Accessor methods to set an instance attribute to a specific value.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_<> (
  value IN datatype );
```

Parameters

Table 98–15 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T SET_<> Method Parameters

Parameter	Description
value	Value to be assigned

GET_<> Methods

Accessor methods to retrieve the value for an instance attribute.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE GET_<>
RETURN datatype;
```

Parameters

None

Return Values

Returns the attribute value.

GET_FIELD_COUNT Function

Gets the number of message fields.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_field_count
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

None

Return Values

Returns the number of fields, or zero (0) if there are none.

GET_FIELD Function

Retrieves field information for the field having a given field collection index. This method should only be called if the `GET_FIELD_COUNT Function` returns a nonzero value and `idx` must specify a valid collection index; that is, `1<=idx<=get_field_count()`.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_field (
    idx    IN    INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T;
```

Parameters

Table 98–16 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T GET_FIELD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`idx`	Specifies the 1-based field collection index of the field to retrieve

Note: A 1-based index begins at one (1) instead of zero (0).

Return Values

Returns the field information.

GET_FIELD_BY_NAME Function

Retrieves field information for the first field that has a given field name. The name comparison is case-sensitive.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_field_by_name (
   name  IN   VARCHAR2 )
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T;
```

Parameters

Table 98–17 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T GET_FIELD_BY_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Specifies the field name to search for. This can be `NULL` to find the first field that does not have a field name.

Return Values

Returns the field information, or `NULL` if no match was found.

GET_FIELD_BY_ID Function

Retrieves field information for the first field that has a given field identifier.

A field can have either a unique identifier or no identifier. If the field identifier value is zero (0) or `NULL`, then the field is considered to have no identifier. Otherwise, the identifier is a nonzero value that is unique for all the fields of this message.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_field_by_id (
   id   IN  INTEGER )
RETURN SYS.MGW_TIBRV_FIELD_T;
```

Parameters

Table 98–18 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T GET_FIELD_BY_ID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
id	Specifies the field identifier to search for. This can be zero (0) or NULL to find the first field that does not have an identifier.

Return Values

Returns the field information, or NULL if no match was found.

FIND_FIELD_NAME Function

Searches for a field with a given field name, starting from a given index of the field collection. It returns the index of that field. The name comparison is case-sensitive. This function is useful for finding all the fields that have the same name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE find_field_name (
   name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   start_idx IN  INTEGER )
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–19 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T FIND_FIELD_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Specifies the field name to search for. This can be NULL to search for a field that does not have a field name.
start_idx	Specifies the 1-based field collection index from which the search should start.

Return Values

Returns the field index (> 0) if a match was found, or zero (0) if no match was found.

FIND_FIELD_ID Function

Searches for a field with a given field identifier, starting from a given index of the field collection. It returns the index of that field.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE find_field_id (
     id        IN  INTEGER,
     start_idx IN INTEGER )
RETURN    INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–20 SYS.MGW_TIBRV_MSG_T FIND_FIELD_ID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`id`	Specifies the field identifier to search for. This can be zero (0) or `NULL` to find a field that does not have an identifier.
`start_idx`	Specifies the 1-based field collection index from which the search should start.

Return Values

Returns the field index (> 0) if a match was found, or zero (0) if no match was found.

Summary of DBMS_MGWMSG Subprograms

Table 98–21 DBMS_MGWMSG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
LCR_TO_XML Function on page 98-22	Converts a SYS.ANYDATA object encapsulating a row LCR (LCR$_ROW_RECORD) or a DDL LCR (LCR$_DDL_RECORD) to a SYS.XMLTYPE object
NVARRAY_ADD Procedure on page 98-23	Appends a name-value element to the end of a name-value array
NVARRAY_FIND_NAME Function on page 98-24	Searches a name-value array for the element with the name you specify in p_name
NVARRAY_FIND_NAME_TYPE Function on page 98-25	Searches a name-value array for an element with the name and value type you specify
NVARRAY_GET Function on page 98-26	Gets the name-value element of the name you specify in p_name from a name-value array
NVARRAY_GET_BOOLEAN Function on page 98-27	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the BOOLEAN_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_BYTE Function on page 98-28	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the BYTE_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_DATE Function on page 98-29	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the DATE_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_DOUBLE Function on page 98-30	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the DOUBLE_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_FLOAT Function on page 98-31	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the FLOAT_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_INTEGER Function on page 98-32	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the INTEGER_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_LONG Function on page 98-33	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the LONG_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_RAW Function on page 98-34	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the RAW_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_SHORT Function on page 98-35	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the SHORT_VALUE value type
NVARRAY_GET_TEXT Function on page 98-36	Gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the TEXT_VALUE value type
XML_TO_LCR Function on page 98-37	Converts a SYS.XMLTYPE object to a SYS.ANYDATA object encapsulating a row LCR (LCR$_ROW_RECORD) or a DDL LCR (LCR$_DDL_RECORD)

LCR_TO_XML Function

This function converts a SYS.ANYDATA object encapsulating a row LCR (Logical Change Record, in this case a LCR$_ROW_RECORD) or a DDL LCR (LCR$_DDL_RECORD) to a SYS.XMLTYPE object.

See Also: XML_TO_LCR Function on page 98-37

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.LCR_TO_XML (
   p_anydata IN SYS.ANYDATA )
 RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 98–22 LCR_TO_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_anydata	An ANYDATA object to be converted

Return Values

Returns a SYS.XMLTYPE object.

Usage Notes

An exception is raised if the encapsulated type p_anydata is not an LCR.

NVARRAY_ADD Procedure

This procedure appends a name-value element to the end of a name-value array.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_ADD (
   p_array  IN OUT SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_value  IN     SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T );
```

Parameters

Table 98–23 NVARRAY_ADD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	On input, the name-value array instance to modify. If NULL, then a new array is created. On output, the modified name-value array instance.
p_value	The value to add. If NULL, then p_array is not changed.

NVARRAY_FIND_NAME Function

This function searches a name-value array for the element with the name you specify in p_name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_FIND_NAME (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–24 NVARRAY_FIND_NAME Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
p_array	The name-value array to search
p_name	The name to find
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns a positive integer that is the array index of the matching element or zero (0) if the specified name is not found.

NVARRAY_FIND_NAME_TYPE Function

This function searches a name-value array for an element with the name and value type you specify.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_FIND_NAME_TYPE (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_type     IN BINARY_INTEGER
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–25 NVARRAY_FIND_NAME_TYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array to search
p_name	The name to find
p_type	The value type. Refer to the value type constants in Table 98–1 on page 98-4.
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns a positive integer that is the array index of the matching element, zero (0) if the specified name is not found, or negative one (-1) if the specified name is found but a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET Function

This function gets the name-value element of the name you specify in p_name from a name-value array.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_T;
```

Parameters

Table 98–26 NVARRAY_GET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the matching element, or NULL if the specified name is not found.

NVARRAY_GET_BOOLEAN Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the BOOLEAN_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_BOOLEAN (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–27 NVARRAY_GET_BOOLEAN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_BYTE Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the BYTE_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_BYTE (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–28 NVARRAY_GET_BYTE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_DATE Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the DATE_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_DATE (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN DATE;
```

Parameters

Table 98–29 NVARRAY_GET_DATE Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_DOUBLE Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the DOUBLE_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_DOUBLE (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–30 NVARRAY_GET_DOUBLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_FLOAT Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the FLOAT_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_FLOAT (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–31 NVARRAY_GET_FLOAT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_INTEGER Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the INTEGER_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_INTEGER (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–32 NVARRAY_GET_INTEGER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_LONG Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the LONG_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_LONG (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–33 NVARRAY_GET_LONG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_RAW Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the RAW_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_RAW (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 98–34 NVARRAY_GET_RAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_SHORT Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the SHORT_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_SHORT (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 98–35 NVARRAY_GET_SHORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

NVARRAY_GET_TEXT Function

This function gets the value of the name-value array element that you specify in p_name and with the TEXT_VALUE value type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.NVARRAY_GET_TEXT (
   p_array    IN SYS.MGW_NAME_VALUE_ARRAY_T,
   p_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   p_compare  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT CASE_SENSITIVE )
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 98–36 NVARRAY_GET_TEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_array	The name-value array
p_name	The value name
p_compare	Name comparison method. Values are CASE_SENSITIVE and CASE_INSENSITIVE.

Return Values

Returns the value, or NULL if either the specified name is not found or a type mismatch exists.

XML_TO_LCR Function

This function converts a SYS.XMLTYPE object to a SYS.ANYDATA object encapsulating a row LCR (LCR$_ROW_RECORD) or a DDL LCR (LCR$_DDL_RECORD).

See Also: LCR_TO_XML Function on page 98-22

Syntax

```
DBMS_MGWMSG.XML_TO_LCR (
   p_xmldata IN SYS.XMLTYPE )
 RETURN SYS.ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 98–37 XML_TO_LCR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_xmldata	An XMLTYPE object representing an LCR

Return Values

Returns a SYS.ANYDATA object.

Usage Notes

An exception is raised if p_xmldata cannot be converted to an LCR.

99

DBMS_MONITOR

The DBMS_MONITOR package let you use PL/SQL for controlling additional tracing and statistics gathering.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Summary of DBMS_MONITOR Subprograms

Table 99–1 DBMS_MONITOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLIENT_ID_STAT_DISABLE Procedure on page 99-3	Disables statistic gathering previously enabled for a given Client Identifier
CLIENT_ID_STAT_ENABLE Procedure on page 99-4	Enables statistic gathering for a given Client Identifier
CLIENT_ID_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure on page 99-5	Disables the trace previously enabled for a given Client Identifier globally for the database
CLIENT_ID_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure on page 99-6	Enables the trace for a given Client Identifier globally for the database
DATABASE_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure on page 99-7	Disables SQL trace for the whole database or a specific instance
DATABASE_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure on page 99-8	Enables SQL trace for the whole database or a specific instance
SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ DISABLE Procedure on page 99-9	Disables statistic gathering enabled for a given combination of Service Name, `MODULE` and `ACTION`
SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ ENABLE Procedure on page 99-10	Enables statistic gathering for a given combination of Service Name, `MODULE` and `ACTION`
SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ DISABLE Procedure on page 99-12	Disables the trace for `ALL` enabled instances for a or a given combination of Service Name, `MODULE` and `ACTION` name globally
SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ ENABLE Procedure on page 99-13	Enables SQL tracing for a given combination of Service Name, `MODULE` and `ACTION` globally unless an `instance_name` is specified
SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure on page 99-15	Disables the previously enabled trace for a given database session identifier (SID) on the local instance
SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure on page 99-16	Enables the trace for a given database session identifier (SID) on the local instance

CLIENT_ID_STAT_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure will disable statistics accumulation for all instances and remove the accumulated results from V$CLIENT_STATS view enabled by the CLIENT_ID_STAT_ENABLE Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_STAT_DISABLE(
   client_id            IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 99–2 CLIENT_ID_STAT_DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_id	Client Identifier for which statistic aggregation is disabled

Examples

To disable accumulation:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_STAT_DISABLE('janedoe');
```

CLIENT_ID_STAT_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables statistic gathering for a given Client Identifier. Statistics gathering is global for the database and persistent across instance starts and restarts. That is, statistics are enabled for all instances of the same database, including restarts. Statistics are viewable through V$CLIENT_STATS views.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_STAT_ENABLE(
   client_id            IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 99–3 CLIENT_ID_STAT_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_id	Client Identifier for which statistic aggregation is enabled

Examples

To enable statistic accumulation for a client with a given client ID:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_STAT_ENABLE('janedoe');
```

CLIENT_ID_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure will disable tracing enabled by the CLIENT_ID_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_TRACE_DISABLE(
 client_id    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 99–4 CLIENT_ID_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_id	Client Identifier for which SQL tracing is disabled

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_TRACE_DISABLE ('janedoe');
```

CLIENT_ID_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure will enable the trace for a given client identifier globally for the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_TRACE_ENABLE(
 client_id    IN  VARCHAR2,
 waits        IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
 binds        IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
 plan_stat    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–5 CLIENT_ID_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_id	Database Session Identifier for which SQL tracing is enabled
waits	If TRUE, wait information is present in the trace
binds	If TRUE, bind information is present in the trace
plan_stat	Frequency at which we dump row source statistics. Value should be 'NEVER', 'FIRST_EXECUTION' (equivalent to NULL) or 'ALL_EXECUTIONS'.

Usage Notes

- The trace will be written to multiple trace files because more than one Oracle shadow process can work on behalf of a given client identifier.
- The tracing is enabled for all instances and persistent across restarts.

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.CLIENT_ID_TRACE_ENABLE('janedoe', TRUE,
FALSE);
```

DATABASE_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure disables SQL trace for the whole database or a specific instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.DATABASE_TRACE_DISABLE(
   instance_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–6 DATABASE_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
instance_name	Disables tracing for the named instance

DATABASE_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables SQL trace for the whole database or a specific instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.DATABASE_TRACE_ENABLE(
   waits          IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   binds          IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   instance_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   plan_stat      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–7 DATABASE_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
waits	If TRUE, wait information will be present in the trace
binds	If TRUE, bind information will be present in the trace
instance_name	If set, restricts tracing to the named instance
plan_stat	Frequency at which we dump row source statistics. Value should be 'NEVER', 'FIRST_EXECUTION' (equivalent to NULL) or 'ALL_EXECUTIONS'.

SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure will disable statistics accumulation and remove the accumulated results from V$SERV_MOD_ACT_STATS view. Statistics disabling is persistent for the database. That is, service statistics are disabled for instances of the same database (plus dblinks that have been activated as a result of the enable).

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_DISABLE(
   service_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   module_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   action_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ALL_ACTIONS);
```

Parameters

Table 99–8 SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service for which statistic aggregation is disabled
module_name	Name of the MODULE. An additional qualifier for the service. It is a required parameter.
action_name	Name of the ACTION. An additional qualifier for the Service and MODULE name. Omitting the parameter (or supplying ALL_ACTIONS constant) means enabling aggregation for all Actions for a given Service/MODULE combination. In this case, statistics are aggregated on the module level.

Usage Notes

Regarding statistics gathering, when you change the module or action, the change takes effect when the next user call is executed in the session. For example, if a module is set to 'module 1' in a session, and the module is reset to 'module 2' in a user call in the session, then the module remains 'module 1' during this user call. The module is changed to 'module 2' in the next user call in the session.

SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables statistic gathering for a given combination of Service Name, MODULE and ACTION. Calling this procedure enables statistic gathering for a hierarchical combination of Service name, MODULE name, and ACTION name on all instances for the same database. Statistics are accessible by means of the V$SERV_MOD_ACT_STATS view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE(
   service_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   module_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   action_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ALL_ACTIONS);
```

Parameters

Table 99–9 SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service for which statistic aggregation is enabled
module_name	Name of the MODULE. An additional qualifier for the service. It is a required parameter.
action_name	Name of the ACTION. An additional qualifier for the Service and MODULE name. Omitting the parameter (or supplying ALL_ACTIONS constant) means enabling aggregation for all Actions for a given Service/MODULE combination. In this case, statistics are aggregated on the module level.

Usage Notes

Enabling statistic aggregation for the given combination of Service/Module/Action names is slightly complicated by the fact that the Module/Action values can be empty strings which are indistinguishable from NULLs. For this reason, we adopt the following conventions:

A special constant (unlikely to be a real action names) is defined:

```
ALL_ACTIONS constant VARCHAR2 := '###ALL_ACTIONS';
```

Using ALL_ACTIONS for an action specification means that aggregation is enabled for all actions with a given module name, while using NULL (or empty string) means that aggregation is enabled for an action whose name is an empty string.

Regarding statistics gathering, when you change the module or action, the change takes effect when the next user call is executed in the session. For example, if a module is set to 'module 1' in a session, and the module is reset to 'module 2' in a user call in the session, then the module remains 'module 1' during this user call. The module is changed to 'module 2' in the next user call in the session.

Examples

To enable statistic accumulation for a given combination of Service name and MODULE:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE( 'APPS1','PAYROLL');
```

To enable statistic accumulation for a given combination of Service name, MODULE and ACTION:

```
EXECUTE
DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_STAT_ENABLE('APPS1','GLEDGER','DEBIT_ENTRY');
```

If both of the preceding commands are issued, statistics are accumulated as follows:

- For the APPS1 service, because accumulation for each Service Name is the default.
- For all actions in the `PAYROLL` Module.
- For the `DEBIT_ENTRY` Action within the `GLEDGER` Module.

SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure will disable the trace at ALL enabled instances for a given combination of Service Name, MODULE, and ACTION name globally.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_DISABLE(
   service_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   module_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   action_name     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ALL_ACTIONS,
   instance_name   IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–10 SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service for which tracing is disabled.
module_name	Name of the MODULE. An additional qualifier for the service
action_name	Name of the ACTION. An additional qualifier for the Service and MODULE name.
instance_name	If set, this restricts tracing to the named instance_name

Usage Notes

Specifying NULL for the module_name parameter means that statistics will no longer be accumulated for the sessions which do not set the MODULE attribute.

Examples

To enable tracing for a Service named APPS1:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE('APPS1',
            DBMS_MONITOR.ALL_MODULES,  DBMS_MONITOR.ALL_ACTIONS,TRUE,
FALSE,NULL);
```

To disable tracing specified in the previous step:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_DISABLE('APPS1');
```

To enable tracing for a given combination of Service and MODULE (all ACTIONs):

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE('APPS1','PAYROLL',
            DBMS_MONITOR.ALL_ACTIONS,TRUE,FALSE,NULL);
```

To disable tracing specified in the previous step:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_DISABLE('APPS1','PAYROLL');
```

SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure will enable SQL tracing for a given combination of Service Name, MODULE and ACTION globally unless an instance_name is specified.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE(
   service_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   module_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ANY_MODULE,
   action_name     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT ANY_ACTION,
   waits           IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   binds           IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   instance_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   plan_stat       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–11 SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service for which SQL trace is enabled
module_name	Name of the MODULE for which SQL trace is enabled. An optional additional qualifier for the service. If omitted, SQL trace is enabled or all modules and actions in a given service.
action_name	Name of the ACTION for which SQL trace is enabled. An optional additional qualifier for the Service and MODULE name. If omitted, SQL trace is enabled for all actions in a given module.
waits	If TRUE, wait information is present in the trace
binds	If TRUE, bind information is present in the trace
instance_name	If set, this restricts tracing to the named instance_name
plan_stat	Frequency at which we dump row source statistics. Value should be 'NEVER', 'FIRST_EXECUTION' (equivalent to NULL) or 'ALL_EXECUTIONS'.

Usage Notes

- The procedure enables a trace for a given combination of Service, MODULE and ACTION name. The specification is strictly hierarchical: Service Name or Service Name/MODULE, or Service Name, MODULE, and ACTION name must be specified. Omitting a qualifier behaves like a wild-card, so that not specifying an ACTION means all ACTIONs. Using the ALL_ACTIONS constant achieves the same purpose.
- This tracing is useful when an application MODULE and optionally known ACTION is experiencing poor service levels.
- By default, tracing is enabled globally for the database. The instance_name parameter is provided to restrict tracing to named instances that are known, for example, to exhibit poor service levels.
- Tracing information is present in multiple trace files and you must use the trcsess tool to collect it into a single file.
- Specifying NULL for the module_name parameter means that statistics will be accumulated for the sessions which do not set the MODULE attribute.

Examples

To enable tracing for a Service named `APPS1`:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE('APPS1',
            DBMS_MONITOR.ALL_MODULES,  DBMS_MONITOR.ALL_ACTIONS,TRUE,
FALSE,NULL);
```

To enable tracing for a given combination of Service and `MODULE` (all `ACTION`s):

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SERV_MOD_ACT_TRACE_ENABLE('APPS1','PAYROLL',
            DBMS_MONITOR.ALL_ACTIONS,TRUE,FALSE,NULL);
```

SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure will disable the trace for a given database session at the local instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE(
   session_id      IN     BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   serial_num      IN     BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–12 SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
session_id	Database Session Identifier for which SQL trace is disabled
serial_num	Serial number for this session

Usage Notes

If serial_num is NULL but session_id is specified, a session with a given session_id is no longer traced irrespective of its serial number. If both session_id and serial_num are NULL, the current user session is no longer traced. It is illegal to specify NULL session_id and non-NULL serial_num. In addition, the NULL values are default and can be omitted.

Examples

To enable tracing for a client with a given client session ID:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(7,4634, TRUE, FALSE);
```

To disable tracing specified in the previous step:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE(7,4634);;
```

SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables a SQL trace for the given Session ID on the local instance

Syntax

```
DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(
    session_id   IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
    serial_num   IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
    waits        IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
    binds        IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
    plan_stat    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 99–13 SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
session_id	Client Identifier for which SQL trace is enabled. If omitted (or NULL), the user's own session is assumed.
serial_num	Serial number for this session. If omitted (or NULL), only the session ID is used to determine a session.
waits	If TRUE, wait information is present in the trace
binds	If TRUE, bind information is present in the trace
plan_stat	Frequency at which we dump row source statistics. Value should be 'NEVER', 'FIRST_EXECUTION' (equivalent to NULL) or 'ALL_EXECUTIONS'.

Usage Notes

The procedure enables a trace for a given database session, and is still useful for client/server applications. The trace is enabled only on the instance to which the caller is connected, since database sessions do not span instances. This tracing is strictly local to an instance.

If serial_num is NULL but session_id is specified, a session with a given session_id is traced irrespective of its serial number. If both session_id and serial_num are NULL, the current user session is traced. It is illegal to specify NULL session_id and non-NULL serial_num. In addition, the NULL values are default and can be omitted.

Examples

To enable tracing for a client with a given client session ID:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(7,4634, TRUE, FALSE);
```

To disable tracing specified in the previous step:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE(7,4634);
```

Either

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(5);
```

or

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(5, NULL);
```

traces the session with session ID of 5, while either

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE();
```

or

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(NULL, NULL);
```

traces the current user session. Also,

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(NULL, NULL, TRUE, TRUE);
```

traces the current user session including waits and binds. The same can be also expressed using keyword syntax:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_MONITOR.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(binds=>TRUE);
```

100

DBMS_MVIEW

DBMS_MVIEW enables you to understand capabilities for materialized views and potential materialized views, including their rewrite availability. It also enables you to refresh materialized views that are not part of the same refresh group and purge logs.

Note: DBMS_MVIEW is a synonym for DBMS_SNAPSHOT.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Advanced Replication* for more information about using materialized views in a replication environment
- *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information about using materialized views in a data warehousing environment

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_MVIEW

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_MVIEW` package.

Operational Notes

If a query is less than 256 characters long, you can invoke `EXPLAIN_REWRITE` using the `EXECUTE` command from SQL*Plus. Otherwise, the recommended method is to use a PL/SQL `BEGIN..END` block, as shown in the examples in `/rdbms/demo/smxrw.sql`.

Security Model

The DBMS_MVIEW package consists of a number of materialized view-related subprograms, each of which has different functionality and privilege requirements. The privilege model is generally based on the invoker's right. Each package subprogram is executed by first checking the privileges against the invoker. If all the required privileges are met, the subprogram will be executed. Otherwise, an insufficient privileges error will be thrown.

Rules and Limits

The EXPLAIN_REWRITE procedure cannot accept queries longer than 32627 characters. These restrictions also apply when passing the defining query of a materialized view to the EXPLAIN_MVIEW procedure.

Summary of DBMS_MVIEW Subprograms

Table 100–1 DBMS_MVIEW Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BEGIN_TABLE_REORGANIZATION Procedure on page 100-7	Performs a process to preserve materialized view data needed for refresh
END_TABLE_REORGANIZATION Procedure on page 100-8	Ensures that the materialized view data for the master table is valid and that the master table is in the proper state
ESTIMATE_MVIEW_SIZE Procedure on page 100-9	Estimates the size of a materialized view that you might create, in bytes and rows
EXPLAIN_MVIEW Procedure on page 100-10	Explains what is possible with a materialized view or potential materialized view
EXPLAIN_REWRITE Procedure on page 100-11	Explains why a query failed to rewrite or why the optimizer chose to rewrite a query with a particular materialized view or materialized views
I_AM_A_REFRESH Function on page 100-13	Returns the value of the `I_AM_REFRESH` package state
PMARKER Function on page 100-14	Returns a partition marker from a rowid, and is used for Partition Change Tracking (PCT)
PURGE_DIRECT_LOAD_LOG Procedure on page 100-15	Purges rows from the direct loader log after they are no longer needed by any materialized views (used with data warehousing)
PURGE_LOG Procedure on page 100-16	Purges rows from the materialized view log
PURGE_MVIEW_FROM_LOG Procedure on page 100-17	Purges rows from the materialized view log
REFRESH Procedures on page 100-19	Refreshes one or more materialized views that are not members of the same refresh group
REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS Procedure on page 100-21	Refreshes all materialized views that do not reflect changes to their master table or master materialized view
REFRESH_DEPENDENT Procedures on page 100-22	Refreshes all table-based materialized views that depend on a specified master table or master materialized view, or list of master tables or master materialized views
REGISTER_MVIEW Procedure on page 100-24	Enables the administration of individual materialized views
UNREGISTER_MVIEW Procedure on page 100-26	Enables the administration of individual materialized views once invoked at a master site or master materialized view site to unregister a materialized view

BEGIN_TABLE_REORGANIZATION Procedure

This procedure performs a process to preserve materialized view data needed for refresh. It must be called before a master table is reorganized.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.BEGIN_TABLE_REORGANIZATION (
   tabowner     IN   VARCHAR2,
   tabname      IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 100–2 BEGIN_TABLE_REORGANIZATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tabowner	Owner of the table being reorganized
tabname	Name of the table being reorganized

END_TABLE_REORGANIZATION Procedure

This procedure ensures that the materialized view data for the master table is valid and that the master table is in the proper state. It must be called after a master table is reorganized.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.END_TABLE_REORGANIZATION (
   tabowner    IN   VARCHAR2,
   tabname     IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 100–3 END_TABLE_REORGANIZATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tabowner	Owner of the table being reorganized
tabname	Name of the table being reorganized

ESTIMATE_MVIEW_SIZE Procedure

This procedure estimates the size of a materialized view that you might create, in bytes and number of rows.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.ESTIMATE_MVIEW_SIZE (
   stmt_id       IN  VARCHAR2,
   select_clause IN  VARCHAR2,
   num_rows      OUT NUMBER,
   num_bytes     OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 100–4 ESTIMATE_MVIEW_SIZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stmt_id	Arbitrary string used to identify the statement in an EXPLAIN PLAN
select_clause	The SELECT statement to be analyzed
num_rows	Estimated cardinality
num_bytes	Estimated number of bytes

EXPLAIN_MVIEW Procedure

This procedure enables you to learn what is possible with a materialized view or potential materialized view. For example, you can determine if a materialized view is fast refreshable and what types of query rewrite you can perform with a particular materialized view.

Using this procedure is straightforward. You simply call DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_MVIEW, passing in as parameters the schema and materialized view name for an existing materialized view. Alternatively, you can specify the SELECT string or CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW statement for a potential materialized view. The materialized view or potential materialized view is then analyzed and the results are written into either a table called MV_CAPABILITIES_TABLE, which is the default, or to an array called MSG_ARRAY.

The procedure is overloaded:

- The first version is for explaining an existing or potential materialized view with output to MV_CAPABILITIES_TABLE.
- The second version is for explaining an existing or potential materialized view with output to a VARRAY.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_MVIEW (
   mv            IN VARCHAR2,
   statement_id  IN VARCHAR2:= NULL);

DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_MVIEW (
   mv          IN VARCHAR2,
   msg_array   OUT SYS.ExplainMVArrayType);
```

Parameters

Table 100–5 EXPLAIN_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mv	The name of an existing materialized view (optionally qualified with the owner name separated by a ".") or a SELECT statement or a CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW statement for a potential materialized view.
statement_id	A client-supplied unique identifier to associate output rows with specific invocations of EXPLAIN_MVIEW
msg_array	The PL/SQL VARRAY that receives the output. Use this parameter to direct EXPLAIN_MVIEW's output to a PL/SQL VARRAY rather than MV_CAPABILITIES_TABLE.

Usage Notes

You must run the utlxmv.sql script to create MV_CAPABILITIES_TABLE in the current schema prior to calling EXPLAIN_MVIEW except when you direct output to a VARRAY. The script is found in the ADMIN directory.

EXPLAIN_REWRITE Procedure

This procedure enables you to learn why a query failed to rewrite, or, if it rewrites, which materialized views will be used. Using the results from the procedure, you can take the appropriate action needed to make a query rewrite if at all possible. The query specified in the EXPLAIN_REWRITE statement is never actually executed.

A demo file, xrwutl.sql, is available to help format the output from EXPLAIN_REWRITE.

Syntax

You can obtain the output from DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_REWRITE in two ways. The first is to use a table, while the second is to create a VARRAY. The following shows the basic syntax for using an output table:

```
DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_REWRITE (
    query           VARCHAR2,
    mv              VARCHAR2(30),
    statement_id    VARCHAR2(30));
```

You can create an output table called REWRITE_TABLE by executing the utlxrw.sql script.

The query parameter is a text string representing the SQL query. The parameter, mv, is a fully qualified materialized view name in the form of schema.mv. This is an optional parameter. When it is not specified, EXPLAIN_REWRITE returns any relevant messages regarding all the materialized views considered for rewriting the given query. When schema is omitted and only mv is specified, EXPLAIN_REWRITE looks for the materialized view in the current schema.

If you want to direct the output of EXPLAIN_REWRITE to a VARRAY instead of a table, you should call the procedure as follows:

```
DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_REWRITE (
    query           [VARCHAR2 | CLOB],
    mv               VARCHAR2(30),
    output_array     SYS.RewriteArrayType);
```

Note that if the query is less than 256 characters long, EXPLAIN_REWRITE can be easily invoked with the EXECUTE command from SQL*Plus. Otherwise, the recommended method is to use a PL/SQL BEGIN... END block, as shown in the examples in /rdbms/demo/smxrw*.

You can also use EXPLAIN_REWRITE with multiple materialized views, in which case the syntax will be the same as with a single materialized view, except that the materialized views are specified by a comma-delimited string. For example, to find out whether a given set of materialized views mv1, mv2, and mv3 could be used to rewrite the query, query_txt, and, if not, why not, use EXPLAIN_REWRITE as follows:

```
DBMS_MVIEW.EXPLAIN_REWRITE(query_txt, 'mv1, mv2, mv3')
```

See *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information on using the EXPLAIN_REWRITE procedure.

Parameters

Table 100–6 EXPLAIN_REWRITE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
query	SQL SELECT statement to be explained
mv	The fully qualified name of an existing materialized view in the form of SCHEMA.MV. For multiple materialized views, you can provide a comma-delimited list of names.
statement_id	A client-supplied unique identifier to distinguish output messages
msg_array	The PL/SQL VARRAY that receives the output. Use this parameter to direct EXPLAIN_REWRITE's output to a PL/SQL VARRAY.

Usage Notes

To obtain the output into a table, you must run the utlxrw.sql script before calling EXPLAIN_REWRITE. This script creates a table named REWRITE_TABLE in the current schema.

I_AM_A_REFRESH Function

This function returns the value of the `I_AM_REFRESH` package state.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.I_AM_A_REFRESH
   RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Return Values

A return value of `true` indicates that all local replication triggers for materialized views are effectively disabled in this session because each replication trigger first checks this state. A return value of `false` indicates that these triggers are enabled.

PMARKER Function

This function returns a partition marker from a rowid. It is used for Partition Change Tracking (PCT).

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.PMARKER(
   rid IN ROWID)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 100–7 PMARKER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rid	The rowid of a row entry in a master table

PURGE_DIRECT_LOAD_LOG Procedure

This procedure removes entries from the direct loader log after they are no longer needed for any known materialized view. This procedure usually is used in environments using Oracle's data warehousing technology.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_DIRECT_LOAD_LOG();
```

PURGE_LOG Procedure

This procedure purges rows from the materialized view log.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_LOG (
   master        IN   VARCHAR2,
   num           IN   BINARY_INTEGER := 1,
   flag          IN   VARCHAR2       := 'NOP');
```

Parameters

Table 100–8 PURGE_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
master	Name of the master table or master materialized view.

num	Number of least recently refreshed materialized views whose rows you want to remove from materialized view log. For example, the following statement deletes rows needed to refresh the two least recently refreshed materialized views:
	`DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_LOG('master_table', 2);`
	To delete all rows in the materialized view log, indicate a high number of materialized views to disregard, as in this example:
	`DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_LOG('master_table',9999);`
	This statement completely purges the materialized view log that corresponds to `master_table` if fewer than 9999 materialized views are based on `master_table`. A simple materialized view whose rows have been purged from the materialized view log must be completely refreshed the next time it is refreshed.

flag	Specify `delete` to guarantee that rows are deleted from the materialized view log for at least one materialized view. This parameter can override the setting for the parameter `num`. For example, the following statement deletes rows from the materialized view log that has dependency rows in the least recently refreshed materialized view: `DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_LOG('master_table',1,'delete');`

PURGE_MVIEW_FROM_LOG Procedure

This procedure is called on the master site or master materialized view site to delete the rows in materialized view refresh related data dictionary tables maintained at the master for the specified materialized view identified by mview_id or the combination of mviewowner, mviewname, and mviewsite. If the materialized view specified is the oldest materialized view to have refreshed from any of the master tables or master materialized views, then the materialized view log is also purged. This procedure does not unregister the materialized view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_MVIEW_FROM_LOG (
   mview_id       IN   BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_MVIEW.PURGE_MVIEW_FROM_LOG (
   mviewowner     IN   VARCHAR2,
   mviewname      IN   VARCHAR2,
   mviewsite      IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Note: This procedure is overloaded. The parameter mview_id is mutually exclusive with the three remaining parameters: mviewowner, mviewname, and mviewsite.

Parameters

Table 100–9 PURGE_MVIEW_FROM_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mview_id	If you want to execute this procedure based on the identification of the target materialized view, specify the materialized view identification using the mview_id parameter. Query the DBA_BASE_TABLE_MVIEWS view at the materialized view log site for a listing of materialized view IDs. Executing this procedure based on the materialized view identification is useful if the target materialized view is not listed in the list of registered materialized views (DBA_REGISTERED_MVIEWS).
mviewowner	If you do not specify an mview_id, enter the owner of the target materialized view using the mviewowner parameter. Query the DBA_REGISTERED_MVIEWS view at the materialized view log site to view the materialized view owners.
mviewname	If you do not specify an mview_id, enter the name of the target materialized view using the mviewname parameter. Query the DBA_REGISTERED_MVIEWS view at the materialized view log site to view the materialized view names.
mviewsite	If you do not specify an mview_id, enter the site of the target materialized view using the mviewsite parameter. Query the DBA_REGISTERED_MVIEWS view at the materialized view log site to view the materialized view sites.

Usage Notes

If there is an error while purging one of the materialized view logs, the successful purge operations of the previous materialized view logs are not rolled back. This is to

minimize the size of the materialized view logs. In case of an error, this procedure can be invoked again until all the materialized view logs are purged.

REFRESH Procedures

This procedure refreshes a list of materialized views.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH (
   { list                 IN     VARCHAR2,
   | tab                  IN     DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,}
   method                 IN     VARCHAR2       := NULL,
   rollback_seg           IN     VARCHAR2       := NULL,
   push_deferred_rpc      IN     BOOLEAN        := true,
   refresh_after_errors   IN     BOOLEAN        := false,
   purge_option           IN     BINARY_INTEGER := 1,
   parallelism            IN     BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
   heap_size              IN     BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
   atomic_refresh         IN     BOOLEAN        := true,
   nested                 IN     BOOLEAN        := false,
   out_of_place           IN     BOOLEAN        := false);
```

Note: This procedure is overloaded. The `list` and `tab` parameters are mutually exclusive.

Parameters

Table 100–10 REFRESH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`list | tab`	Comma-delimited list of materialized views that you want to refresh. (Synonyms are not supported.) These materialized views can be located in different schemas and have different master tables or master materialized views. However, all of the listed materialized views must be in your local database. Alternatively, you may pass in a PL/SQL index-by table of type `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY`, where each element is the name of a materialized view.

`method`	A string of refresh methods indicating how to refresh the listed materialized views. An `f` indicates fast refresh, `?` indicates force refresh, `C` or `c` indicates complete refresh, and `A` or `a` indicates always refresh. `A` and `C` are equivalent. `P` or `p` refreshes by recomputing the rows in the materialized view affected by changed partitions in the detail tables.
	
	If a materialized view does not have a corresponding refresh method (that is, if more materialized views are specified than refresh methods), then that materialized view is refreshed according to its default refresh method. For example, consider the following `EXECUTE` statement within SQL*Plus:
	
	`DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH`
	`('countries_mv,regions_mv,hr.employees_mv','cf');`
	
	This statement performs a complete refresh of the `countries_mv` materialized view, a fast refresh of the `regions_mv` materialized view, and a default refresh of the `hr.employees` materialized view.

`rollback_seg`	Name of the materialized view site rollback segment to use while refreshing materialized views

Table 100–10 (Cont.) REFRESH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
push_deferred_rpc	Used by updatable materialized views only. Set this parameter to true if you want to push changes from the materialized view to its associated master tables or master materialized views before refreshing the materialized view. Otherwise, these changes may appear to be temporarily lost.
refresh_after_ errors	If this parameter is true, an updatable materialized view continues to refresh even if there are outstanding conflicts logged in the DEFERROR view for the materialized view's master table or master materialized view. If this parameter is true and atomic_refresh is false, this procedure continues to refresh other materialized views if it fails while refreshing a materialized view.
purge_option	If you are using the parallel propagation mechanism (in other words, parallelism is set to 1 or greater), 0 means do not purge, 1 means lazy purge, and 2 means aggressive purge. In most cases, lazy purge is the optimal setting. Set purge to aggressive to trim the queue if multiple master replication groups are pushed to different target sites, and updates to one or more replication groups are infrequent and infrequently pushed. If all replication groups are infrequently updated and pushed, then set this parameter to 0 and occasionally execute PUSH with this parameter set to 2 to reduce the queue.
parallelism	0 specifies serial propagation. *n* > 1 specifies parallel propagation with *n* parallel processes. 1 specifies parallel propagation using only one parallel process.
heap_size	Maximum number of transactions to be examined simultaneously for parallel propagation scheduling. Oracle automatically calculates the default setting for optimal performance. Note**:** Do not set this parameter unless directed to do so by Oracle Support Services.
atomic_refresh	If this parameter is set to true, then the list of materialized views is refreshed in a single transaction. All of the refreshed materialized views are updated to a single point in time. If the refresh fails for any of the materialized views, none of the materialized views are updated. If this parameter is set to false, then each of the materialized views is refreshed non-atomically in separate transactions. As part of complete refresh, if truncate is used (non-atomic refresh), unique index rebuild is executed. INDEX REBUILD automatically computes statistics. Thus, statistics are updated for truncated tables.
nested	If true, then perform nested refresh operations for the specified set of materialized views. Nested refresh operations refresh all the depending materialized views and the specified set of materialized views based on a dependency order to ensure the nested materialized views are truly fresh with respect to the underlying base tables.
out_of_place	If true, then it performs an out-of-place refresh. The default is false. This parameter uses the four methods of refresh (F, P, C, ?). So, for example, if you specify F and out_of_place = true, then an out-of-place fast refresh will be attempted. Similarly, if you specify P and out_of_ place = true, then out-of-place PCT refresh will be attempted.

REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS Procedure

This procedure refreshes all materialized views that have the following properties:

- The materialized view has not been refreshed since the most recent change to a master table or master materialized view on which it depends.
- The materialized view and all of the master tables or master materialized views on which it depends are local.
- The materialized view is in the view DBA_MVIEWS.

This procedure is intended for use with data warehouses.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS (
   number_of_failures     OUT   BINARY_INTEGER,
   method                 IN    VARCHAR2         := NULL,
   rollback_seg           IN    VARCHAR2         := NULL,
   refresh_after_errors   IN    BOOLEAN          := false,
   atomic_refresh         IN    BOOLEAN          := true,
   out_of_place           IN    BOOLEAN          := false);
```

Parameters

Table 100–11 REFRESH_ALL_MVIEWS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
number_of_failures	Returns the number of failures that occurred during processing
method	A single refresh method indicating the type of refresh to perform for each materialized view that is refreshed. F or f indicates fast refresh, ? indicates force refresh, C or c indicates complete refresh, and A or a indicates always refresh. A and C are equivalent. If no method is specified, a materialized view is refreshed according to its default refresh method. P or p refreshes by recomputing the rows in the materialized view affected by changed partitions in the detail tables.
rollback_seg	Name of the materialized view site rollback segment to use while refreshing materialized views
refresh_after_errors	If this parameter is true, an updatable materialized view continues to refresh even if there are outstanding conflicts logged in the DEFERROR view for the materialized view's master table or master materialized view. If this parameter is true and atomic_refresh is false, this procedure continues to refresh other materialized views if it fails while refreshing a materialized view.
atomic_refresh	If this parameter is set to true, then the refreshed materialized views are refreshed in a single transaction. All of the refreshed materialized views are updated to a single point in time. If the refresh fails for any of the materialized views, none of the materialized views are updated. If this parameter is set to false, then each of the materialized views is refreshed non-atomically in separate transactions.
out_of_place	If true, then it performs an out-of-place refresh. The default is false. This parameter uses the four methods of refresh (F, P, C, ?). So, for example, if you specify F and out_of_place = true, then an out-of-place fast refresh will be attempted. Similarly, if you specify P and out_of_place = true, then out-of-place PCT refresh will be attempted.

REFRESH_DEPENDENT Procedures

This procedure refreshes all materialized views that have the following properties:

- The materialized view depends on a master table or master materialized view in the list of specified masters.
- The materialized view has not been refreshed since the most recent change to a master table or master materialized view on which it depends.
- The materialized view and all of the master tables or master materialized views on which it depends are local.
- The materialized view is in the view `DBA_MVIEWS`.

This procedure is intended for use with data warehouses.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH_DEPENDENT (
   number_of_failures     OUT    BINARY_INTEGER,
   { list                 IN     VARCHAR2,
   | tab                  IN     DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,}
   method                 IN     VARCHAR2    := NULL,
   rollback_seg           IN     VARCHAR2    := NULL,
   refresh_after_errors   IN     BOOLEAN     := false,
   atomic_refresh         IN     BOOLEAN     := true,
   nested                 IN     BOOLEAN     := false,
   out_of_place           IN     BOOLEAN     := false);
```

Note: This procedure is overloaded. The `list` and `tab` parameters are mutually exclusive.

Parameters

Table 100–12 REFRESH_DEPENDENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`number_of_failures`	Returns the number of failures that occurred during processing
`list | tab`	Comma-delimited list of master tables or master materialized views on which materialized views can depend. (Synonyms are not supported.) These tables and the materialized views that depend on them can be located in different schemas. However, all of the tables and materialized views must be in your local database. Alternatively, you may pass in a PL/SQL index-by table of type `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY`, where each element is the name of a table.

Table 100–12 (Cont.) REFRESH_DEPENDENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
method	A string of refresh methods indicating how to refresh the dependent materialized views. All of the materialized views that depend on a particular table are refreshed according to the refresh method associated with that table. F or f indicates fast refresh, ? indicates force refresh, C or c indicates complete refresh, and A or a indicates always refresh. A and C are equivalent. P or p refreshes by recomputing the rows in the materialized view affected by changed partitions in the detail tables. If a table does not have a corresponding refresh method (that is, if more tables are specified than refresh methods), then any materialized view that depends on that table is refreshed according to its default refresh method. For example, the following EXECUTE statement within SQL*Plus: `DBMS_MVIEW.REFRESH_DEPENDENT ('employees,deptartments,hr.regions','cf');` performs a complete refresh of the materialized views that depend on the employees table, a fast refresh of the materialized views that depend on the departments table, and a default refresh of the materialized views that depend on the hr.regions table.
rollback_seg	Name of the materialized view site rollback segment to use while refreshing materialized views
refresh_after_errors	If this parameter is true, an updatable materialized view continues to refresh even if there are outstanding conflicts logged in the DEFERROR view for the materialized view's master table or master materialized view. If this parameter is true and atomic_refresh is false, this procedure continues to refresh other materialized views if it fails while refreshing a materialized view.
atomic_refresh	If this parameter is set to true, then the refreshed materialized views are refreshed in a single transaction. All of the refreshed materialized views are updated to a single point in time. If the refresh fails for any of the materialized views, none of the materialized views are updated. If this parameter is set to false, then each of the materialized views is refreshed non-atomically in separate transactions.
nested	If true, then perform nested refresh operations for the specified set of tables. Nested refresh operations refresh all the depending materialized views of the specified set of tables based on a dependency order to ensure the nested materialized views are truly fresh with respect to the underlying base tables.
out_of_place	If true, then it performs an out-of-place refresh. The default is false. This parameter uses the four methods of refresh (F, P, C, ?). So, for example, if you specify F and out_of_place = true, then an out-of-place fast refresh will be attempted. Similarly, if you specify P and out_of_place = true, then out-of-place PCT refresh will be attempted.

REGISTER_MVIEW Procedure

This procedure enables the administration of individual materialized views. It is invoked at a master site or master materialized view site to register a materialized view.

Note that, typically, a materialized view is registered automatically during materialized view creation. You should only run this procedure to manually register a materialized view if the automatic registration failed or if the registration information was deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.REGISTER_MVIEW (
   mviewowner  IN   VARCHAR2,
   mviewname   IN   VARCHAR2,
   mviewsite   IN   VARCHAR2,
   mview_id    IN   DATE | BINARY_INTEGER,
   flag        IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   qry_txt     IN   VARCHAR2,
   rep_type    IN   BINARY_INTEGER := DBMS_MVIEW.REG_UNKNOWN);
```

Parameters

Table 100–13 REGISTER_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mviewowner	Owner of the materialized view.
mviewname	Name of the materialized view.
mviewsite	Name of the materialized view site for a materialized view registering at an Oracle database version 8.x and higher master site or master materialized view site. This name should not contain any double quotes.
mview_id	The identification number of the materialized view. Specify an Oracle database version 8.x and higher materialized view as a BINARY_INTEGER. Specify an Oracle database version 7 materialized view registering at an Oracle database version 8.x and higher master sites or master materialized view sites as a DATE.
flag	A constant that describes the properties of the materialized view being registered. Valid constants that can be assigned include the following: DBMS_MVIEW.REG_ROWID_MVIEW for a rowid materialized view DBMS_MVIEW.REG_PRIMARY_KEY_MVIEW for a primary key materialized view DBMS_MVIEW.REG_OBJECT_ID_MVIEW for an object id materialized view DBMS_MVIEW.REG_FAST_REFRESHABLE_MVIEW for a materialized view that can be fast refreshed DBMS_MVIEW.REG_UPDATABLE_MVIEW for a materialized view that is updatable A materialized view can have more than one of these properties. In this case, use the plus sign (+) to specify more than one property. For example, if a primary key materialized view can be fast refreshed, you can enter the following for this parameter: DBMS_MVIEW.REG_PRIMARY_KEY_MVIEW + DBMS_MVIEW.REG_FAST_REFRESHABLE_MVIEW You can determine the properties of a materialized view by querying the ALL_MVIEWS data dictionary view.
qry_txt	The first 32,000 bytes of the materialized view definition query.

Table 100–13 (Cont.) REGISTER_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rep_type	Version of the materialized view. Valid constants that can be assigned include the following: DBMS_MVIEW.REG_V7_SNAPSHOT if the materialized view is at an Oracle database version 7 site ■ DBMS_MVIEW.REG_V8_SNAPSHOT reg_repapi_snapshot if the materialized view is at an Oracle database version 8.x or higher site DBMS_MVIEW.REG_UNKNOWN (the default) if you do not know whether the materialized view is at an Oracle database version 7 site or an Oracle database version 8.x (or higher) site

Usage Notes

This procedure is invoked at the master site or master materialized view site by a remote materialized view site using a remote procedure call. If REGISTER_MVIEW is called multiple times with the same mviewowner, mviewname, and mviewsite, then the most recent values for mview_id, flag, and qry_txt are stored. If a query exceeds the maximum VARCHAR2 size, then qry_txt contains the first 32000 characters of the query and the remainder is truncated. When invoked manually, the value of mview_id must be looked up in the materialized view data dictionary views by the person who calls the procedure.

UNREGISTER_MVIEW Procedure

This procedure enables the administration of individual materialized views. It is invoked at a master site or master materialized view site to unregister a materialized view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_MVIEW.UNREGISTER_MVIEW (
   mviewowner      IN   VARCHAR2,
   mviewname       IN   VARCHAR2,
   mviewsite       IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 100–14 UNREGISTER_MVIEW Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
mviewowner	Owner of the materialized view
mviewname	Name of the materialized view
mviewsite	Name of the materialized view site

101

DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN

The DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN package provides the interface to administer the network Access Control List (ACL).

> **See Also:** For more information, see "Managing Fine-grained Access to External Network Services" in *Oracle Database Security Guide*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN

Overview

The NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN package provides the interface to administer the network access control lists (ACL). ACLs are used to control access by users to external network services and resources from the database through PL/SQL network utility packages including UTL_TCP, UTL_HTTP, UTL_SMTP andUTL_INADDR.

Deprecated Subprograms

Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only

The following subprograms are deprecated with release Oracle Database 12*c*:

- ADD_PRIVILEGE Procedure
- ASSIGN_ACL Procedure
- ASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure
- CHECK_PRIVILEGE Function
- CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID Function
- CREATE_ACL Procedure
- DELETE_PRIVILEGE Procedure
- DROP_ACL Procedure
- UNASSIGN_ACL Procedure
- UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure

Security Model

The EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN package is granted to the DBA role and to the EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE by default.

Constants

The DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN package uses the constants shown in Table 101–1, " DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN Constants"

Table 101–1 DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
IP_ADDR_MASK	VARCHAR2(80)	'([[:digit:]]+\.){3}[[:digit:]]+'	IP address mask: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
IP_SUBNET_MASK	VARCHAR2(80)	'([[:digit:]]+\.){0,3}*'	IP subnet mask: xxx.xxx...*
HOSTNAME_MASK	VARCHAR2(80)	'[^\.\:\/*]+(\.[^\.\:\/*]+)*'	Hostname mask: ???.???.???...???
DOMAIN_MASK	VARCHAR2(80)	''*(\.[^\.\:\/*]+)*'	Domain mask: *.???.???...???

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by the DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN package.

Table 101–2 DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Description
ACE_ALREADY_EXISTS	24243	ACE already exists
EMPTY_ACL	24246	Empty ACL
ACL_NOT_FOUND	46114	ACL not found
ACL_ALREADY_EXISTS	46212	ACL already exists
INVALID_ACL_PATH	46059	Invalid ACL path
INVALID_HOST	24244	Invalid host
INVALID_PRIVILEGE	24245	Invalid privilege
INVALID_WALLET_PATH	29248	Invalid wallet path
BAD_ARGUMENT	29261	Bad argument
UNRESOLVED_PRINCIPAL	46238	Unresolved principal
PRIVILEGE_NOT_GRANTED	01927	Privilege not granted

Examples

Example1

Grant the `connect` and `resolve` privileges for host `www.us.example.com` to `SCOTT`.

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.APPEND_HOST_ACE(
  host => 'www.us.example.com',
  ace  =>  xs$ace_type(privilege_list => xs$name_list('connect', 'resolve'),
                       principal_name => 'scott',
                       principal_type => xs_acl.ptype_db));
```

Example 2

Revoke the `resolve` privilege for host `www.us.example.com` from `SCOTT`.

```
dbms_network_acl_admin.remove_host_ace(
  host => 'www.us.example.com',
  ace  =>  xs$ace_type(privilege_list => xs$name_list('resolve'),
                       principal_name => 'scott',
                       principal_type => xs_acl.ptype_db));
```

Example 3

Grant the `use_client_certificates` and `use_passwords` privileges for wallet `file:/example/wallets/hr_wallet` to `SCOTT`.

```
dbms_network_acl_admin.append_wallet_ace(
  wallet_path => 'file:/example/wallets/hr_wallet',
  ace         =>  xs$ace_type(privilege_list => xs$name_list('use_client_
certificates', 'use_passwords'),
                              principal_name => 'scott',
                              principal_type => xs_acl.ptype_db));
```

Example 4

Revoke the `use_passwords` privilege for wallet `file:/example/wallets/hr_wallet` from `SCOTT`.

```
dbms_network_acl_admin.remove_wallet_ace(
  wallet_path => 'file:/example/wallets/hr_wallet',
  ace         =>  xs$ace_type(privilege_list => xs$name_list('use_passwords'),
                              principal_name => 'scott',
                              principal_type => xs_acl.ptype_db));
```

Example 5

The `CONTAINS_HOST` in the `DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTLILITY` package determines if a host is contained in a domain. It can be used in conjunction with the `DBA_HOST_ACE` view to determine the users and their privilege assignments to access a network host.

For example, for access to `www.us.example.com`:

```
SELECT HOST, LOWER_PORT, UPPER_PORT,
       ACE_ORDER, PRINCIPAL, PRINCIPAL_TYPE,
       GRANT_TYPE, INVERTED_PRINCIPAL, PRIVILEGE,
       START_DATE, END_DATE
  FROM (SELECT ACES.*,
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.CONTAINS_HOST('www.us.example.com',
                                                      HOST) PRECEDENCE
          FROM DBA_HOST_ACES ACES)
 WHERE PRECEDENCE IS NOT NULL
 ORDER BY PRECEDENCE DESC,
          LOWER_PORT NULLS LAST,
```

```
         UPPER_PORT NULLS LAST,
         ACE_ORDER;

HOST               LOWER_PORT UPPER_PORT ACE_ORDER PRINCIPAL PRINCIPAL_TYPE
GRANT_TYPE INVERTED_PRINCIPAL PRIVILEGE START_DATE END_DATE
------------------ ---------- ---------- --------- --------- ----------------
---------- ------------------ ---------- ---------- --------
www.us.example.com         80         80          1 SCOTT     DATABASE USER
GRANT      NO                 HTTP
www.us.example.com         80         80          2 ADAMS     DATABASE USER
GRANT      NO                 HTTP
*                                                 1 HQ_DBA    DATABASE USER
GRANT      NO                 CONNECT
*                                                 1 HQ_DBA    DATABASE USER
GRANT      NO                 RESOLVE
```

Example 6

For example, for `HQ_DBA`'s own permission to access to `www.us.example.com`:

```
SELECT HOST, LOWER_PORT, UPPER_PORT, PRIVILEGE, STATUS
  FROM (SELECT ACES.*,
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.CONTAINS_HOST('www.us.example.com',
                                                      HOST) PRECEDENCE
         FROM USER_HOST_ACES ACES)
 WHERE PRECEDENCE IS NOT NULL
 ORDER BY PRECEDENCE DESC,
         LOWER_PORT NULLS LAST,
         UPPER_PORT NULLS LAST;


HOST               LOWER_PORT UPPER_PORT PRIVILEGE STATUS
------------------ ---------- ---------- --------- -------
*                                        CONNECT   GRANTED
*                                        RESOLVE   GRANTED
```

Summary of DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN Subprograms

Table 101–3 DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 101-11	[DEPRECATED] Adds a privilege to grant or deny the network access to the user in an access control list (ACL)
APPEND_HOST_ACE Procedure on page 101-13	Appends an access control entry (ACE) to the access control list (ACL) of a network host.
APPEND_HOST_ACL Procedure on page 101-15	Appends access control entries (ACE) of an access control list (ACL) to the ACL of a network host
APPEND_WALLET_ACE Procedure on page 101-17	Appends an access control entry (ACE) to the access control list (ACL) of a wallet
APPEND_WALLET_ACL Procedure on page 101-18	Appends access control entries (ACE) of an access control list (ACL) to the ACL of a wallet
ASSIGN_ACL Procedure on page 101-19	[DEPRECATED] Assigns an access control list (ACL) to a host computer, domain, or IP subnet, and if specified, the TCP port range.
ASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure on page 101-21	[DEPRECATED] Assigns an access control list (ACL) to a wallet
CHECK_PRIVILEGE Function on page 101-22	[DEPRECATED] Checks if a privilege is granted or denied the user in an access control list (ACL)
CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID Function on page 101-23	[DEPRECATED] Checks if a privilege is granted to or denied from the user in an ACL by specifying the object ID of the access control list
CREATE_ACL Procedure on page 101-24	[DEPRECATED] Creates an access control list (ACL) with an initial privilege setting
DELETE_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 101-26	[DEPRECATED] Deletes a privilege in an access control list (ACL)
DROP_ACL Procedure on page 101-27	[DEPRECATED] Drops an access control list (ACL)
REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure on page 101-28	Removes privileges from access control entries (ACE) in the access control list (ACL) of a network host matching the given ACE
REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Procedure on page 101-29	Removes privileges from access control entries (ACE) in the access control list (ACL) of a wallet matching the given ACE
SET_HOST_ACL Procedure on page 101-30	Sets the access control list (ACL) of a network host which controls access to the host from the database
SET_WALLET_ACL Procedure on page 101-31	Sets the access control list (ACL) of a wallet which controls access to the wallet from the database
UNASSIGN_ACL Procedure on page 101-32	[DEPRECATED] Unassigns the access control list (ACL) currently assigned to a network host
UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure on page 101-33	[DEPRECATED] Unassigns the access control list (ACL) currently assigned to a wallet

ADD_PRIVILEGE Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the APPEND_HOST_ACE Procedure and the APPEND_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure adds a privilege to grant or deny the network access to the user. The access control entry (ACE) is created if it does not exist.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ADD_PRIVILEGE (
   acl             IN VARCHAR2,
   principal       IN VARCHAR2,
   is_grant        IN BOOLEAN,
   privilege       IN VARCHAR2,
   position        IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   start_date      IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMESTAMP DEFAULT NULL,
   end_date        IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMESTAMP DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 101–4 ADD_PRIVILEGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
acl	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "/sys/acls"
principal	Principal (database user or role) to whom the privilege is granted or denied. Case sensitive.
is_grant	Privilege is granted or denied.
privilege	Network privilege to be granted or denied
position	Position (1-based) of the ACE. If a non-NULL value is given, the privilege will be added in a new ACE at the given position and there should not be another ACE for the principal with the same is_grant (grant or deny). If a NULL value is given, the privilege will be added to the ACE matching the principal and the is_grant if one exists, or to the end of the ACL if the matching ACE does not exist.
start_date	Start date of the access control entry (ACE). When specified, the ACE will be valid only on and after the specified date. The start_date will be ignored if the privilege is added to an existing ACE.
end_date	End date of the access control entry (ACE). When specified, the ACE expires after the specified date. The end_date must be greater than or equal to the start_date. The end_date will be ignored if the privilege is added to an existing ACE.

Usage Notes

To remove the permission, use the DELETE_PRIVILEGE Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
```

```
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ADD_PRIVILEGE(
        acl         => 'us-example-com-permissions.xml',
        principal   => 'ST_USERS',
        is_grant    =>  TRUE,
        privilege   => 'connect')
END;
```

APPEND_HOST_ACE Procedure

This procedure appends an access control entry (ACE) to the access control list (ACL) of a network host. The ACL controls access to the given host from the database and the ACE specifies the privileges granted to or denied from the specified principal.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.APPEND_HOST_ACE (
   host         IN VARCHAR2,
   lower_port   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   upper_port   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   ace          IN XS$ACE_TYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 101–5 APPEND_HOST_ACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	The host, which can be the name or the IP address of the host. You can use a wildcard to specify a domain or a IP subnet. The host or domain name is case-insensitive.
lower_port	Lower bound of an optional TCP port range
upper_port	Upper bound of an optional TCP port range. If NULL, lower_port is assumed.
ace	The ACE

Usage Notes

- Duplicate privileges in the matching ACE in the host ACL will be skipped.
- To remove the ACE, use the REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure.
- A host's ACL takes precedence over its domains' ACLs. For a given host, say www.us.example.com, the following domains are listed in decreasing precedence:
  - www.us.example.com
  - *.us.example.com
  - *.example.com
  - *.com
  - *
- An IP address' ACL takes precedence over its subnets' ACLs. For a given IP address, say 192.168.0.100, the following subnets are listed in decreasing precedence:
  - 192.168.0.100
  - 192.168.0.*
  - 192.168.*
  - 192.*
  - *

- An ACE with a "resolve" privilege can be appended only to a host's ACL without a port range.
- When ACEs with "connect" privileges are appended to a host's ACLs with and without a port range, the one appended to the host with a port range takes precedence.
- When specifying a TCP port range of a host, it cannot overlap with other existing port ranges of the host.
- If the ACL is shared with another host or wallet, a copy of the ACL will be made before the ACL is modified.

See Also: *Oracle Database Real Application Security Administrator's and Developer's Guide* for more information about the `XS$ACE_TYPE` object type

APPEND_HOST_ACL Procedure

This procedure appends access control entries (ACE) of an access control list (ACL) to the ACL of a network host.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.APPEND_HOST_ACL (
   host         IN VARCHAR2,
   lower_port   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   upper_port   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   acl          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 101–6 APPEND_HOST_ACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`host`	The host, which can be the name or the IP address of the host. You can use a wildcard to specify a domain or a IP subnet. The host or domain name is case-insensitive.
`lower_port`	Lower bound of an optional TCP port range
`upper_port`	Upper bound of an optional TCP port range. If `NULL`, `lower_port` is assumed.
`acl`	The ACL from which to append

Usage Notes

- Duplicate privileges in the matching ACE in the host ACL will be skipped.
- To remove the ACE, use the REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure.
- A host's ACL takes precedence over its domains' ACLs. For a given host, say `www.us.example.com`, the following domains are listed in decreasing precedence:
  - `www.us.example.com`
  - `*.us.example.com`
  - `*.example.com`
  - `*.com`
  - `*`
- An IP address' ACL takes precedence over its subnets' ACLs. For a given IP address, say `192.168.0.100`, the following subnets are listed in decreasing precedence:
  - `192.168.0.100`
  - `192.168.0.*`
  - `192.168.*`
  - `192.*`
  - `*`
- An ACE with a "resolve" privilege can be appended only to a host's ACL without a port range.

- When ACEs with "connect" privileges are appended to a host's ACLs with and without a port range, the one appended to the host with a port range takes precedence.
- When specifying a TCP port range of a host, it cannot overlap with other existing port ranges of the host.- If the ACL is shared with another host or wallet, a copy of the ACL will be made before the ACL is modified.

APPEND_WALLET_ACE Procedure

This procedure appends an access control entry (ACE) to the access control list (ACL) of a wallet. The ACL controls access to the given wallet from the database and the ACE specifies the privileges granted to or denied from the specified principal.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.APPEND_WALLET_ACE (
   wallet_path     IN VARCHAR2,
   ace             IN XS$ACE_TYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 101–7 APPEND_WALLET_ACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`wallet_path`	Directory path of the wallet. The path is case-sensitive of the format `file:`*`directory-path`*.
`ace`	The ACE

Usage Notes

- Duplicate privileges in the matching ACE in the host ACL will be skipped.
- To remove the ACE, use the REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Procedure.
- If the ACL is shared with another host or wallet, a copy of the ACL is made before the ACL is modified.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Real Application Security Administrator's and Developer's Guide* for more information about the `XS$ACE_TYPE` object type

APPEND_WALLET_ACL Procedure

This procedure appends access control entries (ACE) of an access control list (ACL) to the ACL of a wallet.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.APPEND_WALLET_ACL (
   wallet_path    IN VARCHAR2,
   acl            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 101–8 APPEND_WALLET_ACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`wallet_path`	Directory path of the wallet. The path is case-sensitive of the format `file:`*`directory-path`*.
`ace`	The ACL from which to append

Usage Notes

- Duplicate privileges in the matching ACE in the host ACL will be skipped.
- To remove the ACE, use REMOVE_WALLET_ACE.
- If the ACL is shared with another host or wallet, a copy of the ACL is made before the ACL is modified.

ASSIGN_ACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the APPEND_HOST_ACE Procedure and the APPEND_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure assigns an access control list (ACL) to a host computer, domain, or IP subnet, and if specified, the TCP port range.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ASSIGN_ACL (
   acl         IN VARCHAR2,
   host        IN VARCHAR2,
   lower_port  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   upper_port  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 101–9 ASSIGN_ACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "`/sys/acls`".
`host`	Host to which the ACL is to be assigned. The host can be the name or the IP address of the host. A wildcard can be used to specify a domain or a IP subnet. The host or domain name is case-insensitive.
`lower_port`	Lower bound of a TCP port range if not `NULL`
`upper_port`	Upper bound of a TCP port range. If `NULL`, `lower_port` is assumed.

Usage Notes

- Only one ACL can be assigned to any host computer, domain, or IP subnet, and if specified, the TCP port range. When you assign a new access control list to a network target, Oracle Database unassigns the previous access control list that was assigned to the same target. However, Oracle Database does not drop the access control list. You can drop the access control list by using the DROP_ACL Procedure. To remove an access control list assignment, use the UNASSIGN_ACL Procedure.
- The ACL assigned to a domain takes a lower precedence than the other ACLs assigned sub-domains, which take a lower precedence than the ACLs assigned to the individual hosts. So for a given host, for example, "www.us.example.com", the following domains are listed in decreasing precedences:

  - www.us.example.com

  - *.us.example.com

  - *.example.com

  - *.com

  - *

In the same way, the ACL assigned to an subnet takes a lower precedence than the other ACLs assigned smaller subnets, which take a lower precedence than the ACLs assigned to the individual IP addresses. So for a given IP address, for example, "192.168.0.100", the following subnets are listed in decreasing precedences:

- 192.168.0.100

- 192.168.0.*

- 192.168.*

- 192.*

- *

- The port range is applicable only to the "connect" privilege assignments in the ACL. The "resolve" privilege assignments in an ACL have effects only when the ACL is assigned to a host without a port range.

  For the "connect" privilege assignments, an ACL assigned to the host without a port range takes a lower precedence than other ACLs assigned to the same host with a port range.

- When specifying a TCP port range, both `lower_port` and `upper_port` must not be `NULL` and `upper_port` must be greater than or equal to `lower_port`. The port range must not overlap with any other port ranges for the same host assigned already.

- To remove the assignment, use UNASSIGN_ACL Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ASSIGN_ACL(
     acl         => 'us-example-com-permissions.xml',
     host        => '*.us.example.com',
     lower_port  => 80);
END;
```

ASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the APPEND_HOST_ACE Procedure and the APPEND_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure assigns an access control list (ACL) to a wallet.

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.ASSIGN_WALLET_ACL (
   acl          IN  VARCHAR2,
   wallet_path  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 101–10 ASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to `"/sys/acls"`
`wallet_path`	Directory path of the wallet to which the ACL is to be assigned. The path is case-sensitive and of the format `file:`*`directory-path`*.

Usage Notes

To remove the assignment, use the UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CREATE_ACL(
    acl         => 'wallet-acl.xml',
    description => 'Wallet ACL',
    principal   => 'SCOTT',
    is_grant    => TRUE,
    privilege   => 'use-client-certificates');

  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ADD_PRIVILEGE(
    acl         => 'wallet-acl.xml',
    principal   => 'SCOTT',
    is_grant    => TRUE,
    privilege   => 'use-passwords');

  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ASSIGN_WALLET_ACL(
    acl         => 'wallet-acl.xml',
    wallet_path => 'file:/example/wallets/test_wallet');
END;
```

CHECK_PRIVILEGE Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. The procedure remains available in the package only for reasons of backward compatibility.

This function checks if a privilege is granted or denied the user in an ACL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CHECK_PRIVILEGE (
   acl             IN VARCHAR2,
   user            IN VARCHAR2,
   privilege       IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 101–11 CHECK_PRIVILEGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "/sys/acls".
`user`	User to check against. If the user is `NULL`, the invoker is assumed. The username is case-sensitive as in the `USERNAME` column of the `ALL_USERS` view.
`privilege`	Network privilege to check

Return Values

Returns 1 when the privilege is granted; 0 when the privilege is denied; `NULL` when the privilege is neither granted or denied.

Examples

```
SELECT DECODE(
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CHECK_PRIVILEGE(
       'us-example-com-permissions.xml', 'SCOTT', 'resolve'),
  1, 'GRANTED', 0, 'DENIED', NULL) PRIVILEGE
FROM DUAL;
```

CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. The procedure remains available in the package only for reasons of backward compatibility.

This function checks if a privilege is granted to or denied from the user in an ACL by specifying the object ID of the access control list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID (
   aclid           IN RAW,
   user            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
   privilege       IN VARCHAR2,
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 101–12 CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`aclid`	Object ID of the ACL
`user`	User to check against. If the user is `NULL`, the invoker is assumed. The username is case-sensitive as in the `USERNAME` column of the `ALL_USERS` view.
`privilege`	Network privilege to check

Return Values

Returns 1 when the privilege is granted; 0 when the privilege is denied; `NULL` when the privilege is neither granted or denied.

CREATE_ACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the APPEND_HOST_ACE Procedure and the APPEND_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure creates an access control list (ACL) with an initial privilege setting. An ACL must have at least one privilege setting. The ACL has no access control effect unless it is assigned to the network target.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CREATE_ACL (
   acl             IN VARCHAR2,
   description     IN VARCHAR2,
   principal       IN VARCHAR2,
   is_grant        IN BOOLEAN,
   privilege       IN VARCHAR2,
   start_date      IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   end_date        IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE DEFAULT NULL );
```

Parameters

Table 101–13 CREATE_ACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "/sys/acls".
`description`	Description attribute in the ACL
`principal`	Principal (database user or role) to whom the privilege is granted or denied. Case sensitive.
`is_grant`	Privilege is granted or not (denied)
`privilege`	Network privilege to be granted or denied - `'connect | resolve'` (case sensitive). A database user needs the `connect` privilege to an external network host computer if he or she is connecting using the `UTL_TCP`, `UTL_HTTP`, `UTL_SMTP`, and `UTL_MAIL` utility packages. To resolve a host name that was given a host IP address, or the IP address that was given a host name, with the `UTL_INADDR` package, grant the database user the `resolve` privilege.
`start_date`	Start date of the access control entry (ACE). When specified, the ACE is valid only on and after the specified date.
`end_date`	End date of the access control entry (ACE). When specified, the ACE expires after the specified date. The `end_date` must be greater than or equal to the `start_date`.

Usage Notes

To drop the access control list, use the DROP_ACL Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
```

```
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CREATE_ACL(
     acl          => 'us-example-com-permissions.xml',
     description  => 'Network permissions for *.us.example.com',
     principal    => 'SCOTT',
     is_grant     => TRUE,
     privilege    => 'connect');
END;
```

DELETE_PRIVILEGE Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure and the REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure deletes a privilege in an access control list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.DELETE_PRIVILEGE (
   acl           IN VARCHAR2,
   principal     IN VARCHAR2,
   is_grant      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT NULL,
   privilege     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 101–14 DELETE_PRIVILEGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "/sys/acls".
`principal`	Principal (database user or role) for whom all the ACE will be deleted
`is_grant`	Privilege is granted or not (denied). If a `NULL` value is given, the deletion is applicable to both granted or denied privileges.
`privilege`	Network privilege to be deleted. If a `NULL` value is given, the deletion is applicable to all privileges.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.DELETE_PRIVILEGE(
        acl         => 'us-example-com-permissions.xml',
        principal   => 'ST_USERS')
END;
```

DROP_ACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. The procedure remains available in the package only for reasons of backward compatibility.

This procedure drops an access control list (ACL).

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.DROP_ACL (
   acl            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 101–15 DROP_ACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
acl	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "/sys/acls".

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.DROP_ACL(
      acl => 'us-example-com-permissions.xml');
END;
```

REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure

This procedure removes privileges from access control entries (ACE) in the access control list (ACL) of a network host matching the given ACE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.REMOVE_HOST_ACE (
   host               IN VARCHAR2,
   lower_port         IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   upper_port         IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   ace                IN XS$ACE_TYPE,
   remove_empty_acl   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 101–16 REMOVE_HOST_ACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`host`	The host, which can be the name or the IP address of the host. You can use a wildcard to specify a domain or a IP subnet. The host or domain name is case-insensitive.
`lower_port`	Lower bound of an optional TCP port range
`upper_port`	Upper bound of an optional TCP port range. If `NULL`, `lower_port` is assumed.
`ace`	The ACE
`remove_empty_acl`	Whether to remove the ACL when it becomes empty when the ACE is removed

Usage Notes

If the ACL is shared with another host or wallet, a copy of the ACL is made before the ACL is modified.

REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Procedure

This procedure removes privileges from access control entries (ACE) in the access control list (ACL) of a wallet matching the given ACE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.REMOVE_WALLET_ACE (
   wallet_path        IN VARCHAR2,
   ace                IN XS$ACE_TYPE,
   remove_empty_acl   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 101–17 REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`wallet_path`	Directory path of the wallet. The path is case-sensitive of the format `file:`*`directory-path`*.
`ace`	The ACE
`remove_empty_acl`	Whether to remove the ACL when it becomes empty when the ACE is removed

Usage Notes

If the ACL is shared with another host or wallet, a copy of the ACL is made before the ACL is modified.

SET_HOST_ACL Procedure

This procedure sets the access control list (ACL) of a network host which controls access to the host from the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.SET_HOST_ACL (
   host         IN VARCHAR2,
   lower_port   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   upper_port   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   acl          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 101–18 SET_HOST_ACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`host`	The host, which can be the name or the IP address of the host. You can use a wildcard to specify a domain or a IP subnet. The host or domain name is case-insensitive.
`lower_port`	Lower bound of an optional TCP port range
`upper_port`	Upper bound of an optional TCP port range. If `NULL`, `lower_port` is assumed.
`acl`	The ACL. `NULL` to unset the host's ACL.

Usage Notes

A host's ACL is created and set on-demand when an access control entry (ACE) is appended to the host's ACL. Users are discouraged from setting a host's ACL manually.

SET_WALLET_ACL Procedure

This procedure sets the access control list (ACL) of a wallet which controls access to the wallet from the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.SET_WALLET_ACL (
   wallet_path    IN VARCHAR2,
   acl            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 101–19 SET_WALLET_ACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`wallet_path`	Directory path of the wallet. The path is case-sensitive of the format `file:`*`directory-path`*.
`acl`	The ACL. `NULL` to unset the host's ACL.

Usage Notes

A wallet's ACL is created and set on-demand when an access control entry (ACE) is appended to the wallet's ACL. Users are discouraged from setting a wallet's ACL manually.

UNASSIGN_ACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure and the REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure unassigns the access control list (ACL) currently assigned to a network host.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.UNASSIGN_ACL (
   acl         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   host        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   lower_port  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   upper_port  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 101–20 UNASSIGN_ACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to "/sys/acls". If ACL is `NULL`, any ACL assigned to the host is unassigned.
`host`	Host from which the ACL is to be removed. The host can be the name or the IP address of the host. A wildcard can be used to specify a domain or a IP subnet. The host or domain name is case-insensitive. If host is `NULL`, the ACL will be unassigned from any host. If both `host` and `acl` are `NULL`, all ACLs assigned to any hosts are unassigned.
`lower_port`	Lower bound of a TCP port range if not `NULL`
`upper_port`	Upper bound of a TCP port range. If `NULL`, `lower_port` is assumed.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.UNASSIGN_ACL(
     host        => '*.us.example.com',
     lower_port  => 80);
END;
```

UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 12*c*. While the procedure remains available in the package for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the REMOVE_HOST_ACE Procedure and the REMOVE_WALLET_ACE Procedure.

This procedure unassigns the access control list (ACL) currently assigned to a wallet.

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL (
   acl          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_path  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 101–21 UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`acl`	Name of the ACL. Relative path will be relative to `"/sys/acls"`. If `acl` is `NULL`, any ACL assigned to the wallet is unassigned
`wallet_path`	Directory path of the wallet to which the ACL is assigned. The path is case-sensitive and of the format `file:`*`directory-path`*. If both `acl` and `wallet_path` are `NULL`, all ACLs assigned to any wallets are unassigned.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.UNASSIGN_WALLET_ACL(
    acl         => 'wallet-acl.xml',
    wallet_path => 'file:/example/wallets/test_wallet');
END;
```

102

DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY

The `DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY` package provides the utility functions to facilitate the evaluation of access control list (ACL) assignments governing TCP connections to network hosts.

> **See Also:** For more information, see ""Managing Fine-grained Access to External Network Services"" in *Oracle Database Security Guide*

The chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY
  - Security Model
  - Examples
- Summary of DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY Subprograms

Using DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY

Security Model

EXECUTE on the DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY package is granted to PUBLIC.

Examples

The CONTAINS_HOST Function in this package indicates if a domain or subnet contains a given host or IP address. It can be used in conjunction with the CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID Function in the DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN package to determine the privilege assignments affecting a user's permission to access a network host. The return value of the CONTAINS_HOST Function in can also be used to order the ACL assignments by their precedence.

Example 1

For example, for SCOTT's permission to connect to www.hr.example.com:

```
  SELECT host, lower_port, upper_port, acl,
     DECODE(
         DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID(aclid, 'SCOTT', 'connect'),
            1, 'GRANTED', 0, 'DENIED', NULL) privilege
     FROM (SELECT host, acl, aclid, lower_port, upper_port,
               DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.CONTAINS_HOST('www.hr.example.com', host)
                 precedence
          FROM dba_network_acls)
 WHERE precedence > 0
 ORDER BY precedence DESC, lower_port nulls LAST;


   HOST                 LOWER_PORT UPPER_PORT  ACL                 PRIVILEGE
   -------------------- ---------- ---------- -------------------- ---------
   www.hr.example.com           80         80  /sys/acls/www.xml    GRANTED
   www.hr.example.com         3000       3999  /sys/acls/www.xml    GRANTED
   www.hr.example.com                         /sys/acls/www.xml    GRANTED
   *.hr.example.com                           /sys/acls/all.xml
   *.example.com                              /sys/acls/all.xml
```

Example 2

For example, for SCOTT's permission to do domain name resolution for www.hr.example.com:

```
SELECT host, acl,
  DECODE(
    DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CHECK_PRIVILEGE_ACLID(aclid, 'SCOTT', 'resolve'),
      1, 'GRANTED', 0, 'DENIED', null) privilege
  FROM (SELECT host, acl, aclid,
               DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.CONTAINS_HOST('www.hr.example.com', host)
                 precedence
          FROM dba_network_acls
         WHERE lower_port IS NULL AND upper_port IS NULL)
 WHERE precedence > 0
 ORDER BY precedence DESC;

HOST                 ACL                          PRIVILEGE
-------------------- ---------------------------- ---------
www.hr.example.com   /sys/acls/hr-www.xml         GRANTED
*.hr.example.com     /sys/acls/hr-domain.xml
*.example.com        /sys/acls/corp-domain.xml
```

Note that the "resolve" privilege takes effect only in ACLs assigned without any port range (when lower_port and upper_port are NULL). For this reason, the example does not include lower_port and upper_port columns in the query.

Summary of DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY Subprograms

Table 102–1 DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CONTAINS_HOST Function on page 102-6	Determines if the given host is equal to or contained in the given host, domain, or subnet
DOMAIN_LEVEL Function on page 102-7	Returns the domain level of the given host name, domain, or subnet
DOMAINS Function on page 102-8	For a given host, this function returns the domains whose ACL assigned is used to determine if a user has the privilege to access the given host or not.
EQUALS_HOST Function on page 102-9	Determines if the two given hosts, domains, or subnets are equal

CONTAINS_HOST Function

This function determines if the given host is equal to or contained in the given host, domain, or subnet. It handles different representation of the same IP address or subnet. For example, an IPv4-mapped IPv6 address is considered equal to the IPv4-native address it represents. It does not perform domain name resolution when evaluating the host or domain.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.CONTAINS_HOST (
   host      IN    VARCHAR2,
   domain    IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 102–2 CONTAINS_HOST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	Network host
domain	Network host, domain, or subnet

Return Values

Returns a non-NULL value if the given host is equal to or contained in the related host, domain, or subnet:

- If domain is a hostname, returns the level of its domain + 1
- If domain is a domain name, returns the domain level
- If domain is an IP address or subnet, return the number of significant address bits of the IP address or subnet
- If domain is the wildcard "*", returns 0

The non-NULL value returned indicates the precedence of the domain or subnet for ACL assignment. The higher the value, the higher is the precedence. NULL will be returned if the host is not equal to or contained in the given host, domain or subnet.

Examples

```
SELECT host, acl, precedence
  FROM (select host, acl,
               DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.CONTAINS_HOST('192.0.2.3', host)
                 precedence
          FROM dba_network_acls)
 WHERE precedence > 0
 ORDER BY precedence DESC;

HOST                   ACL                          PRECEDENCE
---------------------- ---------------------------- ----------
192.0.2.3              /sys/acls/hr-www.xml                 32
::ffff:192.0.2.0/120   /sys/acls/hr-domain.xml             24
::ffff:192.0.0.0/104   /sys/acls/corp-domain.xml             8
```

DOMAIN_LEVEL Function

This function returns the domain level of the given host name, domain, or subnet.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.DOMAIN_LEVEL (
    host  IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 102–3 DOMAIN_LEVEL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	Network host, domain, or subnet

Return Values

The domain level of the given host, domain, or subnet.

Usage Notes

Note that this function cannot handle IPv6 addresses and subnets, and subnets in CIDR notation.

Examples

```
SELECT host, acl, domain_level
  FROM (select host, acl,
               DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.DOMAIN_LEVEL(host) domain_level
          FROM dba_network_acls)
 order by domain_level desc;

HOST                 ACL                          DOMAIN_LEVEL
-------------------- ---------------------------- ------------
www.hr.example.com   /sys/acls/hr-www.xml                    4
*.hr.example.com     /sys/acls/hr-domain.xml                 3
*.example.com        /sys/acls/corp-domain.xml               2
```

DOMAINS Function

For a given host, this function returns the domains whose ACL assigned determines if a user has the privilege to access the given host or not. When the IP address of the host is given, return the subnets instead.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.DOMAINS (
    host  IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN DOMAIN_TABLE PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 102–4 DOMAINS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	Network host

Return Values

The domains or subnets for the given host.

Usage Notes

Note that this function cannot handle IPv6 addresses. Nor can it generate subnets of arbitrary number of prefix bits for an IPv4 address.

Examples

```
select * from table(dbms_network_acl_utility.domains('www.hr.example.com'));

DOMAINS
--------------------------
www.hr.example.com
*.hr.example.com
*.example.com
*.com
*
```

EQUALS_HOST Function

This function determines if the two given hosts, domains, or subnets are equal. It handles different representation of the same IP address or subnet. For example, an IPv4-mapped IPv6 address is considered equal to the IPv4- native address it represents. It does not perform domain name resolution when comparing the two hosts or domains.

Syntax

```
DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.EQUALS_HOST (
   host1    IN    VARCHAR2,
   host2    IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 102–5 EQUALS_HOST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
host1	Network host, domain, or subnet to compare
host2	Network host, domain, or subnet to compare

Return Values

1 if the two hosts, domains, or subnets are equal. 0 otherwise.

Examples

```
SELECT host, acl
  FROM dba_network_acls
 WHERE DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_UTILITY.EQUALS_HOST('192.0.2.*', host) = 1;

HOST                   ACL
---------------------- ----------------------------
::ffff:192.0.2.0/120   /sys/acls/hr-domain.xml
```

103

DBMS_ODCI

DBMS_ODCI package contains a single user function related to the use of Data Cartridges.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Data Cartridge Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topic:

Summary of DBMS_ODCI Subprograms

Table 103–1 DBMS_ODCI Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ESTIMATE_CPU_UNITS Function on page 103-3	Returns the approximate number of CPU instructions (in thousands) corresponding to a specified time interval (in seconds)

ESTIMATE_CPU_UNITS Function

This function returns the approximate number of CPU instructions (in thousands) corresponding to a specified time interval (in seconds). This information can be used to associate the CPU cost with a user-defined function for the extensible optimizer.

The function takes as input the elapsed time of the user function, measures CPU units by multiplying the elapsed time by the processor speed of the machine, and returns the approximate number of CPU instructions that should be associated with the user function. For a multiprocessor machine, ESTIMATE_CPU_UNITS considers the speed of a single processor.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ODCI.ESTIMATE_CPU_UNITS(
   elapsed_time     NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Parameter	Description
elapsed_time	The elapsed time in seconds that it takes to execute a function.

Usage Notes

When associating CPU cost with a user-defined function, use the full number of CPU units rather than the number of *thousands* of CPU units returned by ESTIMATE_CPU_UNITS; multiply the number returned by ESTIMATE_CPU_UNITS by 1,000.

104

DBMS_OFFLINE_OG

The `DBMS_OFFLINE_OG` package contains the public interface for offline instantiation of master groups.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Documentation of DBMS_OFFLINE_OG

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see DBMS_OFFLINE_OG in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference*.

105

DBMS_OUTLN

The DBMS_OUTLN package, synonymous with OUTLN_PKG, contains the functional interface for subprograms associated with the management of stored outlines.

> **See Also:** For more information about using the DBMS_OUTLN package, see "Using Plan Stability" in *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide*.

Note: Stored outlines will be desupported in a future release in favor of SQL plan management. In Oracle Database 11g Release 1 (11.1), stored outlines continue to function as in past releases. However, Oracle strongly recommends that you use SQL plan management for new applications. SQL plan management creates SQL plan baselines, which offer superior SQL performance and stability compared with stored outlines.If you have existing stored outlines, please consider migrating them to SQL plan baselines by using the LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE Functions or LOAD_PLANS_FROM_SQLSET Function of the DBMS_SPM package. When the migration is complete, you should disable or remove the stored outlines.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_OUTLN

Overview

A stored outline is the stored data that pertains to an execution plan for a given SQL statement. It enables the optimizer to repeatedly re-create execution plans that are equivalent to the plan originally generated along with the outline.The data stored in an outline consists, in part, of a set of hints that are used to achieve plan stability.

Stored outlines will be de-supported in a future release in favor of SQL plan management. As of 11g R1, stored outlines continue to function as in past releases, but Oracle strongly recommends that you use SQL plan management for new applications. SQL plan management creates SQL plan baselines, which offer superior SQL performance and stability compared with stored outlines.If you have existing stored outlines, please consider migrating them to SQL plan baselines by using the LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE Functions or the LOAD_PLANS_FROM_SQLSET Function of the DBMS_SPM package. When the migration is complete, you should disable or remove the stored outlines.

Security Model

DBMS_OUTLN contains management procedures that should be available to appropriate users only. EXECUTE privilege is not extended to the general user community unless the DBA explicitly does so.

PL/SQL functions that are available for outline management purposes can be executed only by users with EXECUTE privilege on the procedure (or package).

Summary of DBMS_OUTLN Subprograms

Table 105–1 DBMS_OUTLN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR_USED Procedure on page 105-6	Clears the outline 'used' flag
CREATE_OUTLINE Procedure on page 105-7	Generates outlines from the shared cursor identified by hash value and child number
DROP_BY_CAT Procedure on page 105-8	Drops outlines that belong to a specified category
DROP_UNUSED Procedure on page 105-9	Drops outlines that have never been applied in the compilation of a SQL statement
EXACT_TEXT_SIGNATURES Procedure on page 105-10	Updates outline signatures to those that compute based on exact text matching
UPDATE_BY_CAT Procedure on page 105-11	Changes the category of outlines in one category to a new category
UPDATE_SIGNATURES Procedure on page 105-12	Updates outline signatures to the current version's signature

CLEAR_USED Procedure

This procedure clears the outline 'used' flag.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.CLEAR_USED (
   name     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 105–2 CLEAR_USED Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the outline.

CREATE_OUTLINE Procedure

This procedure generates an outline by reparsing the SQL statement from the shared cursor identified by hash value and child number.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.CREATE_OUTLINE (
   hash_value    IN NUMBER,
   child_number  IN NUMBER,
   category      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT');
```

Parameters

Table 105–3 CREATE_OUTLINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
hash_value	Hash value identifying the target shared cursor.
child_number	Child number of the target shared cursor.
category	Category in which to create outline (optional).

DROP_BY_CAT Procedure

This procedure drops outlines that belong to a particular category. While outlines are put into the DEFAULT category unless otherwise specified, users have the option of grouping their outlines into groups called categories.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.DROP_BY_CAT (
   cat VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 105–4 DROP_BY_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cat	Category of outlines to drop.

Usage Notes

This procedure purges a category of outlines in a single call.

Examples

This example drops all outlines in the DEFAULT category:

```
DBMS_OUTLN.DROP_BY_CAT('DEFAULT');
```

DROP_UNUSED Procedure

This procedure drops outlines that have never been applied in the compilation of a SQL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.DROP_UNUSED;
```

Usage Notes

You can use `DROP_UNUSED` for outlines generated by an application for one-time use SQL statements created as a result of dynamic SQL. These outlines are never used and take up valuable disk space.

EXACT_TEXT_SIGNATURES Procedure

This procedure updates outline signatures to those that compute based on exact text matching.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.EXACT_TEXT_SIGNATURES;
```

Usage Notes

This procedure is relevant only for downgrading an outline to 8.1.6 or earlier.

UPDATE_BY_CAT Procedure

This procedure changes the category of all outlines in one category to a new category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.UPDATE_BY_CAT (
   oldcat    VARCHAR2 default 'DEFAULT',
   newcat    VARCHAR2 default 'DEFAULT');
```

Parameters

Table 105–5 UPDATE_BY_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
oldcat	The current category of outlines.
newcat	The new category of outlines.

UPDATE_SIGNATURES Procedure

This procedure updates outline signatures to the current version's signature.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTLN.UPDATE_SIGNATURES;
```

Usage Notes

You should execute this procedure if you have imported outlines generated in an earlier release to ensure that the signatures are compatible with the current release's computation algorithm.

106

DBMS_OUTPUT

The DBMS_OUTPUT package enables you to send messages from stored procedures, packages, and triggers. The package is especially useful for displaying PL/SQL debugging information.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_OUTPUT

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_OUTPUT` package.

Overview

The package is typically used for debugging, or for displaying messages and reports to SQL*DBA or SQL*Plus (such as are produced by applying the SQL command `DESCRIBE` to procedures).

The PUT Procedure and PUT_LINE Procedure in this package enable you to place information in a buffer that can be read by another trigger, procedure, or package. In a separate PL/SQL procedure or anonymous block, you can display the buffered information by calling the GET_LINE Procedure and GET_LINES Procedure.

If the package is disabled, all calls to subprograms are ignored. In this way, you can design your application so that subprograms are available only when a client is able to process the information.

Security Model

The `dbmsotpt.sql` script must be run as user `SYS`. This creates the public synonym `DBMS_OUTPUT`, and `EXECUTE` permission on this package is granted to `public`.

Operational Notes

- If you do not call `GET_LINE`, or if you do not display the messages on your screen in SQL*Plus, the buffered messages are ignored.
- SQL*Plus calls `GET_LINES` after issuing a SQL statement or anonymous PL/SQL calls.
- Typing `SET SERVEROUTPUT ON` in SQL*Plus has the effect of invoking

  ```
  DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE (buffer_size => NULL);
  ```

  with no limit on the output.
- You should generally avoid having application code invoke either the DISABLE Procedure or ENABLE Procedure because this could subvert the attempt of an external tool like SQL*Plus to control whether or not to display output.

Note: Messages sent using `DBMS_OUTPUT` are not actually sent until the sending subprogram or trigger completes. There is no mechanism to flush output during the execution of a procedure.

Exceptions

DBMS_OUTPUT subprograms raise the application error ORA-20000, and the output procedures can return the following errors:

Table 106–1 DBMS_OUTPUT Errors

Error	Description
ORU-10027:	Buffer overflow
ORU-10028:	Line length overflow

Rules and Limits

- The maximum line size is 32767 bytes.
- The default buffer size is 20000 bytes. The minimum size is 2000 bytes and the maximum is unlimited.

Examples

Example 1: Using a Trigger to Produce Output

You can use a trigger to print out some output from the debugging process. For example, you could code the trigger to invoke:

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('I got here:'||:new.col||' is the new value');
```

If you have enabled the DBMS_OUTPUT package, then the text produced by this PUT_LINE would be buffered, and you could, after executing the statement (presumably some INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE that caused the trigger to fire), retrieve the line of information. For example:

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINE(:buffer, :status);
END;
```

You could then optionally display the buffer on the screen. You repeat calls to GET_LINE until status comes back as nonzero. For better performance, you should use calls to GET_LINES Procedure which can return an array of lines.

Example 2: Debugging Stored Procedures and Triggers

The DBMS_OUTPUT package is commonly used to debug stored procedures and triggers. This package can also be used to enable you to retrieve information about an object and format this output, as shown in "Example 3: Retrieving Information About an Object" on page 106-9.

This function queries the employee table and returns the total salary for a specified department. The function includes several calls to the PUT_LINE procedure:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dept_salary (dnum NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
   CURSOR emp_cursor IS
      SELECT sal, comm FROM emp WHERE deptno = dnum;
   total_wages    NUMBER(11, 2) := 0;
   counter        NUMBER(10) := 1;
BEGIN

   FOR emp_record IN emp_cursor LOOP
      emp_record.comm := NVL(emp_record.comm, 0);
      total_wages := total_wages + emp_record.sal
         + emp_record.comm;
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Loop number = ' || counter ||
         '; Wages = '|| TO_CHAR(total_wages));    /* Debug line */
      counter := counter + 1; /* Increment debug counter */
   END LOOP;
   /* Debug line */
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Total wages = ' ||
     TO_CHAR(total_wages));
   RETURN total_wages;

END dept_salary;
```

Assume the EMP table contains the following rows:

```
EMPNO          SAL     COMM     DEPT
-----        ------- -------- -------
1002           1500      500      20
1203           1000               30
1289           1000               10
```

```
1347          1000      250      20
```

Assume the user executes the following statements in SQL*Plus:

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
VARIABLE salary NUMBER;
EXECUTE :salary := dept_salary(20);
```

The user would then see the following information displayed in the output pane:

```
Loop number = 1; Wages = 2000
Loop number = 2; Wages = 3250
Total wages = 3250

PL/SQL procedure successfully executed.
```

Example 3: Retrieving Information About an Object

In this example, the user has used the `EXPLAIN PLAN` command to retrieve information about the execution plan for a statement and has stored it in `PLAN_TABLE`. The user has also assigned a statement ID to this statement. The example `EXPLAIN_OUT` procedure retrieves the information from this table and formats the output in a nested manner that more closely depicts the order of steps undergone in processing the SQL statement.

```
 /************************************************************/
/* Create EXPLAIN_OUT procedure. User must pass STATEMENT_ID to */
/* to procedure, to uniquely identify statement.                */
/************************************************************/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE explain_out
   (statement_id IN VARCHAR2) AS

   -- Retrieve information from PLAN_TABLE into cursor EXPLAIN_ROWS.

   CURSOR explain_rows IS
      SELECT level, id, position, operation, options,
         object_name
      FROM plan_table
      WHERE statement_id = explain_out.statement_id
      CONNECT BY PRIOR id = parent_id
         AND statement_id = explain_out.statement_id
      START WITH id = 0
       ORDER BY id;

BEGIN

   -- Loop through information retrieved from PLAN_TABLE:

   FOR line IN explain_rows LOOP

      -- At start of output, include heading with estimated cost.

      IF line.id = 0 THEN
         DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Plan for statement '
            || statement_id
            || ', estimated cost = ' || line.position);
      END IF;

      -- Output formatted information. LEVEL determines indention level.

      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (lpad(' ',2*(line.level-1)) ||
```

```
            line.operation || ' ' || line.options || ' ' ||
            line.object_name);
      END LOOP;

END;
```

See Also: Chapter 251, "UTL_FILE"

Data Structures

The DBMS_OUTPUT package declares 2 collection types for use with the GET_LINES Procedure.

TABLE Types

CHARARR Table Type

OBJECT Types

DBMSOUTPUT_LINESARRAY Object Type

CHARARR Table Type

This package type is to be used with the GET_LINES Procedure to obtain text submitted through the PUT Procedure and PUT_LINE Procedure.

Syntax

```
TYPE CHARARR IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

DBMSOUTPUT_LINESARRAY Object Type

This type, defined outside the package, is to be used with the GET_LINES Procedure to obtain text submitted through the PUT Procedure and PUT_LINE Procedure.

Syntax

```
TYPE DBMSOUTPUT_LINESARRAY IS
     VARRAY(2147483647) OF VARCHAR2(32767);
```

Summary of DBMS_OUTPUT Subprograms

Table 106–2 DBMS_OUTPUT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DISABLE Procedure on page 106-15	Disables message output
ENABLE Procedure on page 106-16	Enables message output
GET_LINE Procedure on page 106-17	Retrieves one line from buffer
GET_LINES Procedure on page 106-18	Retrieves an array of lines from buffer
NEW_LINE Procedure on page 106-19	Terminates a line created with `PUT`
PUT Procedure on page 106-20	Places a partial line in the buffer
PUT_LINE Procedure on page 106-21	Places line in buffer

Note: The PUT Procedure that take a number are obsolete and, while currently supported, are included in this release for legacy reasons only.

DISABLE Procedure

This procedure disables calls to `PUT`, `PUT_LINE`, `NEW_LINE`, `GET_LINE`, and `GET_LINES`, and purges the buffer of any remaining information.

As with the ENABLE Procedure, you do not need to call this procedure if you are using the `SERVEROUTPUT` option of SQL*Plus.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.DISABLE;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(disable,WNDS,RNDS);
```

ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables calls to PUT, PUT_LINE, NEW_LINE, GET_LINE, and GET_LINES. Calls to these procedures are ignored if the DBMS_OUTPUT package is not activated.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE (
   buffer_size IN INTEGER DEFAULT 20000);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(enable,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 106–3 ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
buffer_size	Upper limit, in bytes, the amount of buffered information. Setting buffer_size to NULL specifies that there should be no limit.

Usage Notes

- It is not necessary to call this procedure when you use the SET SERVEROUTPUT option of SQL*Plus.
- If there are multiple calls to ENABLE, then buffer_size is the last of the values specified. The maximum size is 1,000,000, and the minimum is 2,000 when the user specifies buffer_size (NOT NULL).
- NULL is expected to be the usual choice. The default is 20,000 for backwards compatibility with earlier database versions that did not support unlimited buffering.

GET_LINE Procedure

This procedure retrieves a single line of buffered information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINE (
   line    OUT VARCHAR2,
   status  OUT INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 106–4 GET_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
line	Returns a single line of buffered information, excluding a final newline character. You should declare the actual for this parameter as VARCHAR2 (32767) to avoid the risk of "ORA-06502: PL/SQL: numeric or value error: character string buffer too small".
status	If the call completes successfully, then the status returns as 0. If there are no more lines in the buffer, then the status is 1.

Usage Notes

- You can choose to retrieve from the buffer a single line or an array of lines. Call the GET_LINE procedure to retrieve a single line of buffered information. To reduce the number of calls to the server, call the GET_LINES procedure to retrieve an array of lines from the buffer.
- You can choose to automatically display this information if you are using SQL*Plus by using the special SET SERVEROUTPUT ON command.
- After calling GET_LINE or GET_LINES, any lines not retrieved before the next call to PUT, PUT_LINE, or NEW_LINE are discarded to avoid confusing them with the next message.

GET_LINES Procedure

This procedure retrieves an array of lines from the buffer.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINES (
   lines       OUT     CHARARR,
   numlines    IN OUT  INTEGER);

DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINES (
   lines       OUT     DBMSOUTPUT_LINESARRAY,
   numlines    IN OUT INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 106–5 GET_LINES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`lines`	Returns an array of lines of buffered information. The maximum length of each line in the array is 32767 bytes. It is recommended that you use the `VARRAY` overload version in a 3GL host program to execute the procedure from a PL/SQL anonymous block.
`numlines`	Number of lines you want to retrieve from the buffer. After retrieving the specified number of lines, the procedure returns the number of lines actually retrieved. If this number is less than the number of lines requested, then there are no more lines in the buffer.

Usage Notes

- You can choose to retrieve from the buffer a single line or an array of lines. Call the `GET_LINE` procedure to retrieve a single line of buffered information. To reduce the number of calls to the server, call the `GET_LINES` procedure to retrieve an array of lines from the buffer.
- You can choose to automatically display this information if you are using SQL*Plus by using the special `SET SERVEROUTPUT ON` command.
- After calling `GET_LINE` or `GET_LINES`, any lines not retrieved before the next call to `PUT`, `PUT_LINE`, or `NEW_LINE` are discarded to avoid confusing them with the next message.

NEW_LINE Procedure

This procedure puts an end-of-line marker. The GET_LINE Procedure and the GET_LINES Procedure return "lines" as delimited by "newlines". Every call to the PUT_LINE Procedure or NEW_LINE Procedure generates a line that is returned by `GET_LINE(S)`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
```

PUT Procedure

This procedure places a partial line in the buffer.

> **Note:** The PUT procedure that takes a NUMBER is obsolete and, while currently supported, is included in this release for legacy reasons only.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT (
    item IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 106–6 PUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
item	Item to buffer.

Exceptions

Table 106–7 PUT Procedure Exceptions

Error	Description
ORA-20000, ORU-10027:	Buffer overflow, limit of <buf_limit> bytes.
ORA-20000, ORU-10028:	Line length overflow, limit of 32767 bytes for each line.

Usage Notes

- You can build a line of information piece by piece by making multiple calls to PUT, or place an entire line of information into the buffer by calling PUT_LINE.
- When you call PUT_LINE the item you specify is automatically followed by an end-of-line marker. If you make calls to PUT to build a line, then you must add your own end-of-line marker by calling NEW_LINE. GET_LINE and GET_LINES do not return lines that have not been terminated with a newline character.
- If your lines exceed the line limit, you receive an error message.
- Output that you create using PUT or PUT_LINE is buffered. The output cannot be retrieved until the PL/SQL program unit from which it was buffered returns to its caller.

  For example, SQL*Plus does not display DBMS_OUTPUT messages until the PL/SQL program completes. There is no mechanism for flushing the DBMS_OUTPUT buffers within the PL/SQL program.

```
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SQL> BEGIN
  2  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('hello');
  3  DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP (10);
  4  END;
```

PUT_LINE Procedure

This procedure places a line in the buffer.

> **Note:** The PUT_LINE procedure that takes a NUMBER is obsolete and, while currently supported, is included in this release for legacy reasons only.

Syntax

```
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (
   item IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 106–8 PUT_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
item	Item to buffer.

Exceptions

Table 106–9 PUT_LINE Procedure Exceptions

Error	Description
ORA-20000, ORU-10027:	Buffer overflow, limit of <buf_limit> bytes.
ORA-20000, ORU-10028:	Line length overflow, limit of 32767 bytes for each line.

Usage Notes

- You can build a line of information piece by piece by making multiple calls to PUT, or place an entire line of information into the buffer by calling PUT_LINE.
- When you call PUT_LINE the item you specify is automatically followed by an end-of-line marker. If you make calls to PUT to build a line, then you must add your own end-of-line marker by calling NEW_LINE. GET_LINE and GET_LINES do not return lines that have not been terminated with a newline character.
- If your lines exceeds the line limit, you receive an error message.
- Output that you create using PUT or PUT_LINE is buffered. The output cannot be retrieved until the PL/SQL program unit from which it was buffered returns to its caller.

  For example, SQL*Plus does not display DBMS_OUTPUT messages until the PL/SQL program completes. There is no mechanism for flushing the DBMS_OUTPUT buffers within the PL/SQL program. For example:

```
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SQL> BEGIN
   2 DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('hello');
   3 DBMS_LOCK.SLEEP (10);
   4 END;
```

107

DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE

The `DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE` package enables incremental update of table data in parallel.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Development Guide*
- *Oracle Database Reference*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE

Overview

This package lets you incrementally update table data in parallel, in two high-level steps:

1. Group sets of rows in the table into smaller-sized chunks.
2. Run a user-specified statement on these chunks in parallel, and commit when finished processing each chunk.

This package introduces the notion of *parallel execution task*. This task groups the various steps associated with the parallel execution of a PL/SQL block, which is typically updating table data.

All of the package subroutines (except the GENERATE_TASK_NAME Function and the TASK_STATUS Procedure) perform a commit.

Security Model

DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE is a SYS-owned package which is granted to PUBLIC.

Any user can create or operate parallel execution tasks and access the USER view.

Users who have the ADM_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_TASK role can perform administrative routines (qualified by the prefix ADM_) and access the DBA view.

Apart from the administrative routines, all the subprograms refer to tasks owned by the current user.

To execute chunks in parallel, you must have CREATE JOB system privilege.

The CHUNK_BY_SQL, RUN_TASK, and RESUME_TASK subprograms require a query, and are executed using DBMS_SQL. Invokers of the DBMS_SQL interface must ensure that no query contains SQL injection.

Constants

The DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE package uses the constants shown in following tables:

- Table 107–1, " DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Constants - Chunk Status Value"
- Table 107–2, " DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Constants - Task Status Value"

Table 107–1 DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Constants - Chunk Status Value

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ASSIGNED	NUMBER	1	Chunk has been assigned for processing
PROCESSED	NUMBER	2	Chunk has been processed successfully
PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR	NUMBER	3	Chunk has been processed, but an error occurred during processing
UNASSIGNED	NUMBER	0	Chunk is unassigned

Table 107–2 DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Constants - Task Status Value

Constant	Type	Value	Description
CHUNKED	NUMBER	4	Table associated with the task has been chunked, but none of the chunk has been assigned for processing
CHUNKING	NUMBER	2	Table associated with the task is being chunked
CHUNKING_FAILED	NUMBER	3	Chunking failed
CRASHED	NUMBER	8	Only applicable if parallel execution is used, this occurs if a job slave crashes or if the database crashes during EXECUTE, leaving a chunk in ASSIGNED or UNASSIGNED state.
CREATED	NUMBER	1	The task has been created by the CREATE_TASK Procedure
FINISHED	NUMBER	6	All chunks processed without error
FINISHED_WITH_ERROR	NUMBER	7	All chunks processed, but with errors in some cases
PROCESSING	NUMBER	5	Part of the chunk assigned for processing, or which has been processed

Views

The DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE package uses views listed in the *Oracle Database Reference*:

- DBA_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_CHUNKS
- DBA_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_TASKS
- USER_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_CHUNKS
- USER_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_TASKS

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.

Table 107–3 Exceptions Raised by DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE

Exception	Error Code	Description
CHUNK_NOT_FOUND	29499	Specified chunk does not exist
DUPLICATE_TASK_NAME	29497	Same task name has been used by an existing task
INVALID_STATE_FOR_CHUNK	29492	Attempts to chunk a table that is not in CREATED or CHUNKING_FAILED state
INVALID_STATE_FOR_ REDSUME	29495	Attempts to resume execution, but the task is not in FINISHED_WITH_ERROR or CRASHED state
INVALID_STATE_FOR_RUN	29494	Attempts to execute the task that is not in CHUNKED state
INVALID_STATUS	29493	Attempts to set an invalid value to the chunk status
INVALID_TABLE	29491	Attempts to chunk a table by rowid in cases in which the table is not a physical table, or the table is an IOT
MISSING_ROLE	29490	User does not have the necessary ADM_PARALLEL_ EXECUTE role
TASK_NOT_FOUND	29498	Specified task_name does not exist

Examples

The following examples run on the Human Resources (HR) schema of the Oracle Database Sample Schemas. It requires that the HR schema be created with the `JOB SYSTEM` privilege.

Chunk by ROWID

This example shows the most common usage of this package. After calling the RUN_TASK Procedure, it checks for errors and reruns in the case of error.

```
DECLARE
  l_sql_stmt VARCHAR2(1000);
  l_try NUMBER;
  l_status NUMBER;
BEGIN

  -- Create the TASK
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_TASK ('mytask');

  -- Chunk the table by ROWID
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_ROWID('mytask', 'HR', 'EMPLOYEES', true,
100);

  -- Execute the DML in parallel
  l_sql_stmt := 'update EMPLOYEES e
      SET e.salary = e.salary + 10
      WHERE rowid BETWEEN :start_id AND :end_id';
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RUN_TASK('mytask', l_sql_stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE,
                                 parallel_level => 10);

  -- If there is an error, RESUME it for at most 2 times.
  L_try := 0;
  L_status := DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.TASK_STATUS('mytask');
  WHILE(l_try < 2 and L_status != DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.FINISHED)
  LOOP
    L_try := l_try + 1;
    DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RESUME_TASK('mytask');
    L_status := DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.TASK_STATUS('mytask');
  END LOOP;

  -- Done with processing; drop the task
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.DROP_TASK('mytask');

END;
/
```

Chunk by User-Provided SQL

A user can specify a chunk algorithm by using the CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_SQL Procedure. This example shows that rows with the same `manager_id` are grouped together and processed in one chunk.

```
DECLARE
  l_chunk_sql VARCHAR2(1000);
  l_sql_stmt VARCHAR2(1000);
  l_try NUMBER;
  l_status NUMBER;
BEGIN
```

```
  -- Create the TASK
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_TASK ('mytask');

  -- Chunk the table by MANAGER_ID
  l_chunk_sql := 'SELECT distinct manager_id, manager_id FROM employees';
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_SQL('mytask', l_chunk_sql, false);

  -- Execute the DML in parallel
  --   the WHERE clause contain a condition on manager_id, which is the chunk
  --   column. In this case, grouping rows is by manager_id.
  l_sql_stmt := 'update EMPLOYEES e
      SET e.salary = e.salary + 10
      WHERE manager_id between :start_id and :end_id';
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RUN_TASK('mytask', l_sql_stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE,
                                 parallel_level => 10);

  -- If there is error, RESUME it for at most 2 times.
  L_try := 0;
  L_status := DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.TASK_STATUS('mytask');
  WHILE(l_try < 2 and L_status != DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.FINISHED)
  Loop
    L_try := l_try + 1;
    DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RESUME_TASK('mytask');
    L_status := DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.TASK_STATUS('mytask');
  END LOOP;

  -- Done with processing; drop the task
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.DROP_TASK('mytask');

end;
/
```

Executing Chunks in an User-defined Framework

You can execute chunks in a self-defined framework without using the RUN_TASK Procedure. This example shows how to use GET_ROWID_CHUNK Procedure, EXECUTE IMMEDIATE, SET_CHUNK_STATUS Procedure to execute the chunks.

```
DECLARE
  l_sql_stmt varchar2(1000);
  l_try number;
  l_status number;
  l_chunk_id number;
  l_start_rowid rowid;
  l_end_rowid rowid;
  l_any_rows boolean;
  CURSOR c1 IS SELECT chunk_id
               FROM user_parallel_execute_chunks
               WHERE task_name = 'mytask'
                 AND STATUS IN (DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR,
                                DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.ASSIGNED);
BEGIN

  -- Create the Objects, task, and chunk by ROWID
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_TASK ('mytask');
  DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_ROWID('mytask', 'HR', 'EMPLOYEES', true,
100);

  l_sql_stmt := 'update EMPLOYEES e
      SET e.salary = e.salary + 10
      WHERE rowid BETWEEN :start_id AND :end_id';
```

```
-- Execute the DML in his own framework
--
-- Process each chunk and commit.
-- After processing one chunk, repeat this process until
-- all the chunks are processed.
--
<<main_processing>>
LOOP
    --
    -- Get a chunk to process; if there is nothing to process, then exit the
    -- loop;
    --
    DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.GET_ROWID_CHUNK('mytask',
                                                        l_chunk_id,
                                                        l_start_rowid,
                                                        l_end_rowid,
                                                        l_any_rows);
    IF (l_any_rows = false) THEN EXIT; END IF;

    --
    -- The chunk is specified by start_id and end_id.
    -- Bind the start_id and end_id and then execute it
    --
    -- If no error occured, set the chunk status to PROCESSED.
    --
    -- Catch any exception. If an exception occured, store the error num/msg
    -- into the chunk table and then continue to process the next chunk.
    --
    BEGIN
      EXECUTE IMMEDIATE l_sql_stmt using l_start_rowid, l_end_rowid;
      DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.SET_CHUNK_STATUS('mytask',l_chunk_id,
        DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.PROCESSED);
    EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
      DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.SET_CHUNK_STATUS('mytask', l_chunk_id,
        DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR, SQLCODE, SQLERRM);
    END;

    --
    -- Finished processing one chunk; Commit here
    --
    COMMIT;
END LOOP;
```

Summary of DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Subprograms

Table 107–4 DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADM_DROP_CHUNKS Procedure on page 107-12	Drops all chunks of the specified task owned by the specified owner
ADM_DROP_TASK Procedure on page 107-13	Drops the task of the given user and all related chunks
ADM_TASK_STATUS Function on page 107-14	Returns the task status
ADM_STOP_TASK Procedure on page 107-15	Stops the task of the given owner and related job slaves
CREATE_TASK Procedure on page 107-16	Creates a task for the current user
CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_NUMBER_COL Procedure on page 107-17	Chunks the table associated with the given task by the specified column.
CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_ROWID Procedure on page 107-18	Chunks the table associated with the given task by `ROWID`
CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_SQL Procedure on page 107-19	Chunks the table associated with the given task by means of a user-provided `SELECT` statement
DROP_TASK Procedure on page 107-20	Drops the task and all related chunks
DROP_CHUNKS Procedure on page 107-21	Drops the task's chunks
GENERATE_TASK_NAME Function on page 107-22	Returns a unique name for a task
GET_NUMBER_COL_CHUNK Procedure on page 107-23	Picks an unassigned `NUMBER` chunk and changes it to `ASSIGNED`
GET_ROWID_CHUNK Procedure on page 107-24	Picks an unassigned `ROWID` chunk and changes it to `ASSIGNED`
PURGE_PROCESSED_CHUNKS Procedure on page 107-25	Deletes all the processed chunks whose status is `PROCESSED` or `PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR`
RESUME_TASK Procedures on page 107-26	Retries the given the task if the RUN_TASK Procedure finished with an error, or resumes the task if a crash occurred.
RUN_TASK Procedure on page 107-28	Executes the specified SQL statement on the chunks in parallel
SET_CHUNK_STATUS Procedure on page 107-30	Sets the status of the chunk
STOP_TASK Procedure on page 107-31	Stops the task and related job slaves
TASK_STATUS Procedure on page 107-32	Returns the task status

ADM_DROP_CHUNKS Procedure

This procedure drops all chunks of the specified task owned by the specified owner.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.ADM_DROP_CHUNKS (
   task_owner      IN  VARCHAR2,
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–5 ADM_DROP_CHUNKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_owner	Owner of the task
task_name	Name of the task

ADM_DROP_TASK Procedure

This procedure drops the task of the specified user and all related chunks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.ADM_DROP_TASK (
   task_owner      IN  VARCHAR2,
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–6 ADM_DROP_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_owner	Owner of the task
task_name	Name of the task

ADM_TASK_STATUS Function

This function returns the task status.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.ADM_TASK_STATUS  (
   task_owner      IN  VARCHAR2,
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 107–7 ADM_TASK_STATUS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_owner	Owner of the task
task_name	Name of the task

ADM_STOP_TASK Procedure

This procedure stops the task of the specified owner and related job slaves.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.ADM_STOP_TASK (
   task_owner      IN  VARCHAR2,
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–8 ADM_STOP_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_owner	Owner of the task
task_name	Name of the task

CREATE_TASK Procedure

This procedure creates a task for the current user. The pairing of `task_name` and `current_user` must be unique.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_TASK (
   task_name        IN   VARCHAR2,
   comment          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 107–9 CREATE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	Name of the task. The task_name can be any string in which related length must be less than or equal to 128 bytes.
`comment`	Comment field. The comment must be less than 4000 bytes.

CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_NUMBER_COL Procedure

This procedure chunks the table (associated with the specified task) by the specified column. The specified column must be a NUMBER column. This procedure takes the MIN and MAX value of the column, and then divides the range evenly according to chunk_size. The chunks are:

```
START_ID                          END_ID
--------------------------        --------------------------
min_id_val                        min_id_val+1*chunk_size-1
min_id_val+1*chunk_size           min_id_val+2*chunk_size-1
…                                 …
min_id_val+i*chunk_size           max_id_val
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_NUMBER_COL (
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_owner     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_column    IN  VARCHAR2,
   chunk_size      IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 107–10 CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_NUMBER_COL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
table_owner	Owner of the table
table_name	Name of the table
table_column	Name of the NUMBER column
chunk_size	Range of each chunk

CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_ROWID Procedure

This procedure chunks the table (associated with the specified task) by ROWID. num_row and num_block are approximate guidance for the size of each chunk. The table to be chunked must be a physical table with physical ROWID having views and table functions. Index-organized tables are not allowed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_ROWID (
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_owner     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   by_row          IN  BOOLEAN,
   chunk_size      IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 107–11 CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_ROWID Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
table_owner	Owner of the table
table_name	Name of the table
by_row	TRUE if chunk_size refers to the number of rows, otherwise, chunk_size refers to the number of blocks
chunk_size	Approximate number of rows/blocks to process for each commit cycle

CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_SQL Procedure

This procedure chunks the table (associated with the specified task) by means of a user-provided SELECT statement. The SELECT statement that returns the range of each chunk must have two columns: start_id and end_id. If the task is to chunk by ROWID, then the two columns must be of ROWID type. If the task is to chunk the table by NUMBER column, then the two columns must be of NUMBER type. The procedure provides the flexibility to users who want to deploy user-defined chunk algorithms.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_SQL (
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_statement   IN  CLOB,
   by_rowid        IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 107–12 CREATE_CHUNKS_BY_SQL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
sql_statment	SQL that returns the chunk ranges
by_rowid	TRUE if the table is chunked by rowids

DROP_TASK Procedure

This procedure drops the task and all related chunks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.DROP_TASK (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–13 DROP_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task

DROP_CHUNKS Procedure

This procedure drops the task's chunks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.DROP_CHUNKS (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–14 DROP_CHUNKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task

GENERATE_TASK_NAME Function

This function returns a unique name for a task. The name is of the form *prefix*N where N is a number from a sequence. If no prefix is specified, the generated name is, by default, TASK$_1, TASK$_2, TASK$_3, and so on. If 'SCOTT' is specified as the prefix, the name is SCOTT1, SCOTT2, and so on.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.GENERATE_TASK_NAME (
   prefix      IN      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TASK$_')
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 107–15 GENERATE_TASK_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
prefix	The prefix to use when generating the task name

GET_NUMBER_COL_CHUNK Procedure

This procedure picks an unassigned NUMBER chunk and changes it to ASSIGNED. If there are no more chunks to assign, any_rows is set to FALSE. Otherwise, the chunk_id, start, and end_id of the chunk are returned as OUT parameters. The chunk info in DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_CHUNKS$ is updated as follows: STATUS becomes ASSIGNED; START_TIMESTAMP records the current time; END_TIMESTAMP is cleared.

See Also: Views on page 107-6

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.GET_NUMBER_COL_CHUNK (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   chunk_id        OUT NUMBER,
   start_rowid     OUT ROWID,
   end_id          OUT ROWID,
   any_rows        OUT BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 107–16 GET_NUMBER_COL_CHUNK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
chunk_id	Chunk_id of the chunk
start_rowid	Start rowid in the returned range
end_id	End rowid in the returned range
any_rows	Indicating if there could be any rows to process in the range

Usage Notes

If the task is chunked by ROWID, then use get_rowid_range. If the task is chunked by NUMBER column, then use get_number_col_range. If you make the wrong function call, the returning chunk_id and any_rows have valid values but start_id and end_id are NULL.

GET_ROWID_CHUNK Procedure

This procedure picks an unassigned ROWID chunk and changes it to ASSIGNED. If there are no more chunks to assign, any_rows is set to FALSE. Otherwise, the chunk_id, start, and end_id of the chunk are returned as OUT parameters. The chunk info in DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE_CHUNKS$ is updated as follows: STATUS becomes ASSIGNED; START_TIMESTAMP records the current time; END_TIMESTAMP is cleared.

See Also: Views on page 107-6

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.GET_ROWID_CHUNK (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   chunk_id        OUT NUMBER,
   start_rowid     OUT ROWID,
   end_id          OUT ROWID,
   any_rows        OUT BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 107–17 GET_ROWID_CHUNK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
chunk_id	Chunk_id of the chunk
start_rowid	Start rowid in the returned range
end_id	End rowid in the returned range
any_rows	Indicates that the range could include rows to process

Usage Notes

If the task is chunked by ROWID, then use get_rowid_range. If the task is chunked by NUMBER column, then use get_number_col_range. If you make the wrong function call, the returning chunk_id and any_rows will still have valid values but start_id and end_id are NULL.

PURGE_PROCESSED_CHUNKS Procedure

This procedure deletes all the processed chunks whose status is PROCESSED or PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.PURGE_PROCESSED_CHUNKS (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–18 PURGE_PROCESSED_CHUNKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task

RESUME_TASK Procedures

This procedure retries the specified the task if the RUN_TASK Procedure finished with an error, or resumes the task if a crash occurred. You can only invoke this procedure if the task is in a CRASHED or FINISHED_WITH_ERROR state. For a crashed serial execution, the state remains in processing. The FORCE option allows you to resume any task in PROCESSING state. However, it is your responsibility to determine that a crash has occurred. The procedure resumes processing the chunks which have not been processed. Also, chunks which are in PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR or ASSIGNED (due to crash) state are processed because those chunks did not commit. This procedure takes the same argument as the RUN_TASK Procedure. The overload which takes task_name as the only input argument re-uses the arguments provided in the previous invoking of the RUN_TASK Procedure or RESUME_TASK Procedures.

> **See Also:** Table 107–2, " DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE Constants - Task Status Value" on page 107-5

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RESUME_TASK (
   task_name                      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_stmt                       IN  CLOB,
   language_flag                  IN  NUMBER,
   edition                        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_crossedition_trigger     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   fire_apply_trigger             IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   parallel_level                 IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   job_class                      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   force                          IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);

DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RESUME_TASK (
   task_name                      IN  VARCHAR2,
   force                          IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 107–19 RESUME_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
sql_stmt	SQL statement; must have :start_id and :end_id placeholders
language_flag	Determines how Oracle handles the SQL statement. The following options are recognized: ▪ V6 (or 0) specifies version 6 behavior ▪ NATIVE (or 1) specifies normal behavior for the database to which the program is connected ▪ V7 (or 2) specifies Oracle database version 7 behavior
edition	Specifies the edition in which to run the statement. Default is the current edition.
apply_crossedition_trigger	Specifies the unqualified name of a forward crossedition trigger that is to be applied to the specified SQL. The name is resolved using the edition and current_schema setting in which the statement is to be executed. The trigger must be owned by the user who executes the statement.

Table 107–19 (Cont.) RESUME_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
fire_apply_trigger	Indicates whether the specified apply_crossedition_trigger is itself to be executed, or only to used as be a guide in selecting other triggers
parallel_level	Number of parallel jobs; zero if run in serial; NULL uses the default parallelism
job_class	If running in parallel, the jobs all belong to the specified job class
force	If TRUE, do not raise an error if the status is PROCESSING.

Examples

Suppose the chunk table contains the following chunk ranges:

```
START_ID                          END_ID
--------------------------        --------------------------
1                                 10
11                                20
21                                30
```

And the specified SQL statement is:

```
UPDATE employees
      SET salary = salary + 10
      WHERE e.employee_id  BETWEEN :start_id AND :end_id
```

This procedure executes the following statements in parallel:

```
UPDATE employees
      SET salary =.salary + 10  WHERE employee_id BETWEEN 1 and 10;
      COMMIT;

UPDATE employees
      SET salary =.salary + 10  WHERE employee_id between 11 and 20;
      COMMIT;

UPDATE employees
      SET salary =.salary + 10  WHERE employee_id between 21 and 30;
      COMMIT;
```

RUN_TASK Procedure

This procedure executes the specified statement (sql_stmt) on the chunks in parallel. It commits after processing each chunk. The specified statement must have two placeholders called start_id and end_id, respectively, which represent the range of the chunk to be processed. The type of each placeholder must be ROWID where ROWID-based chunking was used, or NUMBER where NUMBER-based chunking was used.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.RUN_TASK (
   task_name                     IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_stmt                      IN  CLOB,
   language_flag                 IN  NUMBER,
   edition                       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_crossedition_trigger    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   fire_apply_trigger            IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   parallel_level                IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   job_class                     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS');
```

Parameters

Table 107–20 RUN_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
sql_stmt	SQL statement; must have :start_id and :end_id placeholders
language_flag	Determines how Oracle handles the SQL statement. The following options are recognized: ■ V6 (or 0) specifies version 6 behavior ■ NATIVE (or 1) specifies normal behavior for the database to which the program is connected ■ V7 (or 2) specifies Oracle database version 7 behavior
edition	Specifies the edition in which to run the statement. Default is the current edition.
apply_crossedition_ trigger	Specifies the unqualified name of a forward crossedition trigger that is to be applied to the specified SQL. The name is resolved using the edition and current_schema setting in which the statement is to be executed. The trigger must be owned by the user executes the statement.
fire_apply_trigger	Indicates whether the specified apply_crossedition_trigger is itself to be executed, or only a guide to be used in selecting other triggers.
parallel_level	Number of parallel jobs; zero if run in serial; NULL uses the default parallelism.
job_class	If running in parallel, the jobs belong to the specified job class

Usage Notes

- The SQL statement is executed as the current user.
- Since this subprogram is subject to reexecution on error, you need to take great care in submitting a statement to RUN_TASK that is not idempotent.

- Chunks can be executed in parallel by DBMS_SCHEDULER job slaves. Therefore, parallel execution requires CREATE JOB system privilege. The job slaves is created under the current user. The default number of job slaves is computed as the product of Oracle parameters cpu_count and parallel_threads_per_cpu. On a Real Application Clusters installation, the number of job slaves is the sum of individual settings on each node in the cluster. This procedure returns only when all the chunks are processed. In parallel cases, this procedure returns only when all the job slaves finished.

Examples

Suppose the chunk table contains the following chunk ranges:

```
START_ID                          END_ID
--------------------------        --------------------------
1                                 10
11                                20
21                                30
```

And the specified SQL statement is:

```
UPDATE employees
      SET salary = salary + 10
      WHERE e.employee_id  BETWEEN :start_id AND :end_id
```

This procedure executes the following statements in parallel:

```
UPDATE employees
      SET salary =.salary + 10  WHERE employee_id BETWEEN 1 and 10;
      COMMIT;

UPDATE employees
      SET salary =.salary + 10  WHERE employee_id between 11 and 20;
      COMMIT;

UPDATE employees
      SET salary =.salary + 10  WHERE employee_id between 21 and 30;
      COMMIT;
```

SET_CHUNK_STATUS Procedure

This procedure sets the status of the chunk. The START_TIMESTAMP and END_TIMESTAMP of the chunk is updated according to the new status:

```
Value of the new Status              Side Effect
---------------------------          ---------------------------
UNASSIGNED                           START_TIMESTAMP and END_TIMESTAMP
                                     will be cleared
ASSIGNED                             START_TIMESTAMP will be the current time
                                     and END_TIMESTAMP will be cleared.
PROCESSED or PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR    The current time will be recorded
                                     in END_TIMESTAMP
```

See Also: Views on page 107-6

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.SET_CHUNK_STATUS (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   chunk_id        OUT NUMBER,
   status          IN  NUMBER,
   err_num         IN  NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   err_msg         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 107–21 SET_CHUNK_STATUS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task
chunk_id	Chunk_id of the chunk
status	Status of the chunk: UNASSIGNED, ASSIGNED, PROCESSED PROCESSED_WITH_ERROR
err_num	Error code returned during the processing of the chunk
err_msg	Error message returned during the processing of the chunk

STOP_TASK Procedure

This procedure stops the task and related job slaves.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.STOP_TASK (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–22 STOP_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task

TASK_STATUS Procedure

This procedure returns the task status.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PARALLEL_EXECUTE.TASK_STATUS (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 107–23 TASK_STATUS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task

108

DBMS_PART

The DBMS_PART package provides an interface for maintenance and management operations on partitioned objects.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Reference* for related views

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PART

Security Model

DBMS_PART is an invoker's rights package, running with the privileges of the user.

Operational Notes

- `DBMS_PART` ignores all the errors that it runs into during the cleanup process.
- To display the message `PL/SQL procedure executed successfully` requires at least one cleanup operation to be successful.

Summary of DBMS_PART Subprograms

Table 108–1 DBMS_PART Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEANUP_GIDX Procedure on page 108-6	Gathers the list of global indexes where optimized asynchronous index maintenance has taken place to clean up entries pointing to data segments that no longer exist
CLEANUP_ONLINE_OP Procedure on page 108-7	Cleans up failed online move operations

CLEANUP_GIDX Procedure

As a consequence of prior partition maintenance operations with asynchronous global index maintenance, global indexes can contain entries pointing to data segments that no longer exist. These stale index rows will not cause any correctness issues or corruptions during any operation on the table or index, whether these are queries, DMLs, DDLs or analyze. This procedure will identify and cleanup these global indexes to ensure efficiency in terms of storage and performance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PART.CLEANUP_GIDX (
   schema_name_in    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   table_name_in     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 108–2 CLEANUP_GIDX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name_in	Non-NULL processes only indexes on tables in the given schema
table_name_in	Non-NULL processes only indexes on the given table in the given schema (schema_name_in must be non-NULL if table_name_in is non-NULL)

CLEANUP_ONLINE_OP Procedure

There are many possible points of failure when performing `ALTER TABLE ... MOVE PARTITION ... ONLINE` operations. This procedure pro-actively cleans up such failed online move operations instead of waiting for the background process (`SMON`) to do so.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PART.CLEANUP_ONLINE_OP (
   schema_name       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   table_name        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   partition_name    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 108–3 CLEANUP_ONLINE_OP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema_name`	Name of schema
`table_name`	Name of schema
`partition_name`	Name of partition

Usage Notes

- If `schema_name`, `table_name` and `partition_name` are specified, this cleans up the failed online move operation for the specified partition.
- If `schema_name` and `table_name` are specified, this cleans up all failed online move operations for all the partitions of the specified table.
- If only `schema_name` is specified, this cleans up all failed online move operations in the schema.
- If no arguments are provided, we cleans up all the failed online move operations in the system.
- All other cases raise `ORA-20000` to inform the user of invalid inputs as arguments.

109

DBMS_PCLXUTIL

The DBMS_PCLXUTIL package provides intra-partition parallelism for creating partition-wise local indexes. DBMS_PCLXUTIL circumvents the limitation that, for local index creation, the degree of parallelism is restricted to the number of partitions as only one parallel execution server process for each partition is used.

> **See Also:** There are several rules concerning partitions and indexes. For more information, see *Oracle Database Concepts* and *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PCLXUTIL

Overview

DBMS_PCLXUTIL uses the DBMS_JOB package to provide a greater degree of parallelism for creating a local index for a partitioned table. This is achieved by asynchronous inter-partition parallelism using the background processes (with DBMS_JOB), in combination with intra-partition parallelism using the parallel execution server.

DBMS_PCLXUTIL works with both range and range-hash composite partitioning.

The DBMS_PCLXUTIL package can be used during the following DBA tasks:

1. Local index creation

   The procedure BUILD_PART_INDEX assumes that the dictionary information for the local index already exists. This can be done by issuing the create index SQL command with the UNUSABLE option.

   ```
   CREATE INDEX <idx_name> on <tab_name>(...) local(...) unusable;
   ```

   This causes the dictionary entries to be created without "building" the index itself, the time consuming part of creating an index. Now, invoking the procedure BUILD_PART_INDEX causes a concurrent build of local indexes with the specified degree of parallelism.

   ```
   EXECUTE dbms_pclxutil.build_part_index(4,4,<tab_name>,<idx_name>,FALSE);
   ```

   For composite partitions, the procedure automatically builds local indexes for all subpartitions of the composite table.

2. Local index maintenance

   By marking desired partitions usable or unusable, the BUILD_PART_INDEX procedure also enables selective rebuilding of local indexes. The force_opt parameter provides a way to override this and build local indexes for all partitions.

   ```
   ALTER INDEX <idx_name> local(...) unusable;
   ```

   Rebuild only the desired (sub)partitions (that are marked unusable):

   ```
   EXECUTE dbms_pclxutil.build_part_index(4,4,<tab_name>,<idx_name>,FALSE);
   ```

   Rebuild all (sub)partitions using force_opt = TRUE:

   ```
   EXECUTE dbms_pclxutil.build_part_index(4,4,<tab_name>,<idx_name>,TRUE);
   ```

   A progress report is produced, and the output appears on screen when the program is ended (because the DBMS_OUTPUT package writes messages to a buffer first, and flushes the buffer to the screen only upon termination of the program).

Security Model

This utility can be run only as table owner, and not as any other user.

Operational Notes

DBMS_PCLXUTIL submits a job for each partition. It is the responsibility of the user/dba to control the number of concurrent jobs by setting the INIT.ORA parameter JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES correctly. There is minimal error checking for correct syntax. Any errors are reported in the job queue process trace files.

Rules and Limits

> **Note:** For range partitioning, the minimum compatibility mode is 8.0; for range-hash composite partitioning, the minimum compatibility mode is 8*i*.

Because DBMS_PCLXUTIL uses the DBMS_JOB package, you must be aware of the following limitations pertaining to DBMS_JOB:

- You must decide appropriate values for the job_queue_processes initialization parameter. Clearly, if the job processes are not started before calling BUILD_PART_INDEX(), then the package will not function properly. The background processes are specified by the following init.ora parameters:

  ```
  job_queue_processes=n   #the number of background processes = n
  ```

- Failure conditions are reported only in the trace files (a DBMS_JOB limitation), making it impossible to give interactive feedback to the user. This package prints a failure message, removes unfinished jobs from the queue, and requests the user to take a look at the j*.trc trace files.

Summary of DBMS_PCLXUTIL Subprograms

Table 109–1 DBMS_PCLXUTIL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BUILD_PART_INDEX Procedure on page 109-8	Provides intra-partition parallelism for creating partition-wise local indexes

BUILD_PART_INDEX Procedure

This procedure provides intra-partition parallelism for creating partition-wise local indexes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PCLXUTIL.BUILD_PART_INDEX (
   jobs_per_batch  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 1,
   procs_per_job   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT 1,
   tab_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   idx_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   force_opt       IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 109–2 BUILD_PART_INDEX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobs_per_batch	The number of concurrent partition-wise "local index builds".
procs_per_job	The number of parallel execution servers to be utilized for each local index build (1 <= procs_per_job <= max_slaves).
tab_name	The name of the partitioned table (an exception is raised if the table does not exist or not partitioned).
idx_name	The name given to the local index (an exception is raised if a local index is not created on the table tab_name).
force_opt	If TRUE, then force rebuild of all partitioned indexes; otherwise, rebuild only the partitions marked 'UNUSABLE'.

Usage Notes

This utility can be run only as table owner, and not as any other user.

Examples

Suppose a table PROJECT is created with two partitions PROJ001 and PROJ002, along with a local index IDX.

A call to the procedure BUILD_PART_INDEX(2,4,'PROJECT','IDX',TRUE) produces the following output:

```
SQLPLUS> EXECUTE dbms_pclxutil.build_part_index(2,4,'PROJECT','IDX',TRUE);
Statement processed.
INFO: Job #21 created for partition PROJ002 with 4 slaves
INFO: Job #22 created for partition PROJ001 with 4 slaves
```

110

DBMS_PDB

The DBMS_PDB package provides an interface to examine and manipulate data about pluggable databases.

See Also: For information on related topics -

- *Oracle Database Security Guide* regarding how to create audit policies in a multitenant environment
- *Oracle Database Reference* for descriptions of all the Pluggable Databases belonging to a given container, see the DBA_PDBS view; for information about Pluggable Databases associated with the current instance, see the V$PDBS view
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about Pluggable Databases
- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for information about configuring protocol ports and DNS mappings
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about creating Pluggable Databases

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PDB

Overview

A multitenant multitenant container database (CDB) is an Oracle database that includes zero, one, or many user-created pluggable databases (PDBs). The `DBMS_PDB` package provides an interface to examine and manipulate data about pluggable databases.

Security Model

Users must have the `EXECUTE` privilege to run the procedures of `DBMS_PDB` package.

Summary of DBMS_PDB Subprograms

Table 110–1 DBMS_PDB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY Function on page 110-6	Uses an XML file describing a pluggable database (PDB) to determine whether it may be plugged into a given multitenant container database (CDB)
DESCRIBE Procedure on page 110-7	Generates an XML file describing the specified pluggable database (PDB)
RECOVER Procedure on page 110-8	Generates an XML file describing a pluggable database by using data files belonging to the pluggable database (PDB)

CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY Function

This function uses an XML file describing a pluggable database (PDB) to determine whether it may be plugged into a given multitenant container database (CDB).

Syntax

```
DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY (
   pdb_descr_file    IN   VARCHAR2,
   pdb_name          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 110–2 CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pdb_descr_file	Path of the XML file that will contain description of a PDB
pdb_name	Name which will be given to the PDB represented by pdb_descr_file when plugged into a given CDB. If not specified, the name will be extracted from pdb_descr_file.

Return Values

TRUE if the PDB described by pdb_descr_file is compatible with the given CDB, FALSE otherwise. If this function returns FALSE, then query the PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS data dictionary view to find information about the errors that are found.

See Also: *Oracle Database Reference* for information about the PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS view

DESCRIBE Procedure

This procedure generates an XML file describing the specified pluggable database (PDB). This file can then be passed to the CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY Function to determine if the PDB described by the XML file may be plugged into a given multitenant container database (CDB).

Syntax

```
DBMS_PDB.DESCRIBE (
   pdb_descr_file    IN   VARCHAR2,
   pdb_name          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 110–3 DESCRIBE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pdb_descr_file	Path of the XML file that will contain description of a PDB
pdb_name	Name of a PDB to be described. A remote database is specified by including @dblink.

Usage Notes

- If pdb_name is omitted, the PDB to which the session is connected will be described.
- If pdb_name is omitted, and the session is connected to the Root, an error will be returned.

RECOVER Procedure

This procedure generates an XML file describing a pluggable database by using data files belonging to the pluggable database. This XML file can then be used to plug the pluggable database into a multitenant container database (CDB) using `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.

This procedure is intended for cases when an XML file describing a pluggable database is corrupted or lost.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PDB.RECOVER (
   pdb_descr_file    IN   VARCHAR2,
   pdb_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   filenames         IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 110–4 RECOVER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`pdb_descr_file`	Path of the XML file that contains description of a pluggable database
`pdb_name`	Name of a pluggable database
`filenames`	Comma-separated list of datafile paths and/or directories containing datafiles for the pluggable database

111

DBMS_PERF

The DBMS_PERF package provides and interface to generate active reports for monitoring database performance

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about "Avoiding SQL Injection in PL/SQL"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PERF

Overview

The DBMS_PERF package provides an interface for generating database performance reports. All subprograms return an active report and these reports can be generated at the system level, session level or at SQL level.

Security Model

The DBMS_PERF package requires the DBA role.

Summary of DBMS_PERF Subprograms

Table 111–1 DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REPORT_PERFHUB Function on page 111-6	Generates a composite active performance report of the entire database system for a specified time period
REPORT_SESSION Function on page 111-8	Generates a performance report for a specific database session where a session is identified by `inst_id`, `sid`, and `serial_num`.
REPORT_SQL Function on page 111-10	Generates an active performance report for a particular SQL statement identified by its `sql_id`.

REPORT_PERFHUB Function

This function generates a composite active performance report of the entire database system for a specified time period.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PERF.REPORT_PERFHUB (
   is_realtime          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   outer_start_time     IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
   outer_end_time       IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
   selected_start_time  IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
   selected_end_time    IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
   inst_id              IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   dbid                 IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   monitor_list_detail  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   workload_sql_detail  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   addm_task_detail     IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   report_reference     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   report_level         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   type                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ACTIVE',
   base_path            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 111–2 REPORT_PERFHUB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
is_realtime	If 1, then real-time. If NULL (default) or 0, then historical mode.
outer_start_time	Start time of outer period shown in the time selector. If NULL (default): ■ If is_realtime=0 (historical), then 24 hours before outer_end_time. ■ If is_realtime=1 (realtime mode), then 1 hour before outer_end_time.
outer_end_time	End time of outer period shown in the time selector. If NULL (default), then latest AWR snapshot. ■ If is_realtime=0 (historical), then the latest AWR snapshot ■ If is_realtime=1 (realtime mode), this is the current time (and any input is ignored)
selected_start_time	Start time period of selection. If NULL (default) ■ If is_realtime=0, then 1 hour before selected_end_time ■ If is_realtime=1, then 5 minutes before selected_end_time
selected_end_time	End time period of selection. If NULL (default) ■ If is_realtime=0, then latest AWR snapshot ■ If is_realtime=1, then current time
inst_id	Instance ID to for which to retrieve data ■ If -1, then current instance ■ If number is specified, then for that instance ■ If NULL (default), then all instances

Table 111–2 (Cont.) REPORT_PERFHUB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbid	DBID to query. ■ If NULL, then current DBID. ■ If is_realtime=1, then DBID must be the local DBID.
monitor_list_detail	Top N in SQL monitor list for which to retrieve SQL monitor details. ■ If NULL (default), then retrieves top 10 ■ If 0, then retrieves no monitor list details
workload_sql_detail	Top N in Workload Top SQL list to retrieve monitor details, ■ If NULL (default), then retrieves top 10 ■ If 0, then retrieves no monitor list details
addm_task_detail	Maximum N latest ADDM tasks to retrieve ■ If NULL (default), retrieves available data but no more than N ■ If 0, then retrieves no ADDM task details
report_reference	Must be NULL when used from SQL*Plus.
report_level	'typical' will get all tabs in performance hub
type	Report type: ■ 'ACTIVE' (default) ■ 'xml' returns XML
base_path	URL path for HTML resources since flex HTML requires access to external files. This is only valid for type='ACTIVE' and is typically not used. Default value will retrieve the required files from OTN.

Usage Notes

- Once a time period is selected, the performance information is collected and presented based on performance subject areas.
- The time period can be real-time or historical.
- When real-time data is selected, more granular data is presented because data points are available every minute.
- When historical data is selected, more detailed data (broken down by different metrics) is presented, but the data points are averaged out to the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) interval (usually an hour).
- Different tabs are available in the Performance Hub, depending on whether is_ real-time is 1 for real time mode or 0 for historical mode.

REPORT_SESSION Function

This function produces a performance report for a specific database session where a session is identified by `inst_id`, `sid`, and`serial_num`. If any of those parameters are missing, then the report is for the current session.

The session-level performance report contains the following tabs:

- Summary - This tab contains key identifiers and attributes of the session along with a summary of its activity data. It also contains a list of SQLs, PLSQL blocks and Database Operations (DBOP) executed by that session that were monitored by Real-time SQL Monitoring.
- Activity - This tab shows activity broken down by wait classes for this session. The data used for this chart is fetched from Active Session History (ASH).
- Metrics - This tab shows charts for certain key metrics for the selected session over time and is only available in historical mode. Some of the metrics shown are CPU usage, PGA usage, IO Throughput and IO Requests.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PERF.REPORT_SESSION (
    inst_id              IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    sid                  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    serial               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    is_realtime          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    outer_start_time     IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
    outer_end_time       IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
    selected_start_time  IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
    selected_end_time    IN DATE     DEFAULT NULL,
    dbid                 IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    monitor_list_detail  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
    report_reference     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    report_level         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    type                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ACTIVE',
    base_path            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 111–3 REPORT_SESSION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`inst_id`	Instance ID to for which to retrieve data. If `NULL` (default), then instance of current session.
`sid`	Session ID for which to retrieve performance. If `NULL`, uses current session.
`serial`	Serial# of session. If `NULL`, then the serial# of the specified `sid` is used provided the session is connected.
`is_realtime`	If 1, then real-time. If `NULL` (default) or `0`, then historical mode.

Table 111–3 (Cont.) REPORT_SESSION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
outer_start_time	Start time of outer period shown in the time selector. If NULL (default): ■ If is_realtime=0 (historical), then 24 hours before outer_end_time. ■ If is_realtime=1 (realtime mode), then 1 hour before outer_end_time.
outer_end_time	End time of outer period shown in the time selector. If NULL (default), then latest AWR snapshot. ■ If is_realtime=0 (historical), then the latest AWR snapshot ■ If is_realtime=1 (realtime mode), this is the current time (and any input is ignored)
selected_start_time	Start time period of selection. If NULL (default) ■ If is_realtime=0, then 1 hour before selected_end_time ■ If is_realtime=1, then 5 minutes before selected_end_time
selected_end_time	End time period of selection. If NULL (default) ■ If is_realtime=0, then latest AWR snapshot ■ If is_realtime=1, then current time
dbid	DBID to query. ■ If NULL, then current DBID. ■ If is_realtime=1, then DBID must be the local DBID.\
monitor_list_detail	Top N in SQL monitor list for which to retrieve SQL monitor details. ■ If NULL (default), then retrieves top 10 ■ If 0, then retrieves no monitor list details
report_reference	Must be NULL when used from SQL*Plus.
report_level	'typical' will get all tabs in the session hub (or session details)
type	Report type: ■ 'ACTIVE' (default) ■ 'xml' returns XML
base_path	URL path for HTML resources since flex HTML requires access to external files

REPORT_SQL Function

This function generates an active performance report for a particular SQL statement identified by its `sql_id`.

The SQL-level performance report contains the following tabs:

- Summary - This tab contains an overview of the SQL statement with key attributes like the SQL text, user name, sessions executing it, and related information. It also contains a Plans tab which shows statistics and activity for each distinct plan for this SQL statement found in memory and in the AWR.
- Activity - This tab shows activity broken down by wait classes for this SQL statement. The data used for this chart is fetched from Active Session History (ASH).
- Execution Statistics - This tab shows statistics and activity for each distinct plan for this statement along with a graphical and tabular representation of the plan.
- Monitored SQL - All executions of this SQL statement that were monitored by Real-time SQL Monitoring are listed in this tab.
- Plan Control - This tab shows information about SQL Profiles and SQL Plan Baselines if they exist for this SQL statement.
- Historical Statistics - This tab is available only in Historical mode. It contains statistics, such as number of executions, number of I/Os, rows processed, and other information produced over time for different execution plans. This information is retrieved from AWR.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PERF.REPORT_SQL (
    sql_id               IN varchar2 default null,
    is_realtime          IN number   default null,
    outer_start_time     IN date     default null,
    outer_end_time       IN date     default null,
    selected_start_time  IN date     default null,
    selected_end_time    IN date     default null,
    inst_id              IN number   default null,
    dbid                 IN number   default null,
    monitor_list_detail  IN number   default null,
    report_reference     IN varchar2 default null,
    report_level         IN varchar2 default null,
    type                 IN varchar2 default 'ACTIVE',
    base_path            IN varchar2 default null);
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 111–4 REPORT_SQL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sql_id`	`SQL_ID` for which to retrieve performance. If `NULL`, gets SQL details for the last executed SQL statement.
`is_realtime`	If 1, then real-time. If `NULL` (default) or `0`, then historical mode.

Table 111–4 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
outer_start_time	Start time of outer period shown in the time selector. If NULL (default): ■ If is_realtime=0 (historical), then 24 hours before outer_end_time. ■ If is_realtime=1 (realtime mode), then 1 hour before outer_end_time.
outer_end_time	End time of outer period shown in the time selector. If NULL (default), then latest AWR snapshot. ■ If is_realtime=0 (historical), then the latest AWR snapshot ■ If is_realtime=1 (realtime mode), this is the current time (and any input is ignored)
selected_start_time	Start time period of selection. If NULL (default) ■ If is_realtime=0, then 1 hour before selected_end_time ■ If is_realtime=1, then 5 minutes before selected_end_time
selected_end_time	End time period of selection. If NULL (default) ■ If is_realtime=0, then latest AWR snapshot ■ If is_realtime=1, then current time
inst_id	Instance ID to for which to retrieve data. If NULL (default), then instance of current session.
dbid	DBID to query. ■ If NULL, then current DBID. ■ If is_realtime=1, then DBID must be the local DBID.\
monitor_list_detail	Top N in SQL monitor list for which to retrieve SQL monitor details. ■ If NULL (default), then retrieves top 10 ■ If 0, then retrieves no monitor list details
report_reference	Must be NULL when used from SQL*Plus.
report_level	'typical' will get all tabs in performance hub
type	Report type: ■ 'ACTIVE' (default) ■ 'xml' returns XML
base_path	URL path for HTML resources since flex HTML requires access to external files

112

DBMS_PIPE

The DBMS_PIPE package lets two or more sessions in the same instance communicate. Oracle pipes are similar in concept to the pipes used in UNIX, but Oracle pipes are not implemented using the operating system pipe mechanisms.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PIPE

Overview

Pipe functionality has several potential applications:

- External service interface: You can communicate with user-written services that are external to the RDBMS. This can be done effectively in a shared server process, so that several instances of the service are executing simultaneously. Additionally, the services are available asynchronously. The requestor of the service does not need to block a waiting reply. The requestor can check (with or without time out) at a later time. The service can be written in any of the 3GL languages that Oracle supports.
- Independent transactions: The pipe can communicate to a separate session which can perform an operation in an independent transaction (such as logging an attempted security violation detected by a trigger).
- Alerters (non-transactional): You can post another process without requiring the waiting process to poll. If an "after-row" or "after-statement" trigger were to alert an application, then the application would treat this alert as an indication that the data probably changed. The application would then read the data to get the current value. Because this is an "after" trigger, the application would want to do a "`SELECT FOR UPDATE`" to make sure it read the correct data.
- Debugging: Triggers and stored procedures can send debugging information to a pipe. Another session can keep reading out of the pipe and display it on the screen or write it to a file.
- Concentrator: This is useful for multiplexing large numbers of users over a fewer number of network connections, or improving performance by concentrating several user-transactions into one DBMS transaction.

Security Model

Security can be achieved by use of `GRANT EXECUTE` on the `DBMS_PIPE` package by creating a pipe using the `private` parameter in the `CREATE_PIPE` function and by writing cover packages that only expose particular features or pipenames to particular users or roles.

Depending upon your security requirements, you may choose to use either Public Pipes or Private Pipes.

Constants

```
maxwait   constant integer := 86400000; /* 1000 days */
```

This is the maximum time to wait attempting to send or receive a message.

Operational Notes

Information sent through Oracle pipes is buffered in the system global area (SGA). All information in pipes is lost when the instance is shut down.

> **Caution: Pipes are independent of transactions. Be careful using pipes when transaction control can be affected.**

The operation of DBMS_PIPE is considered with regard to the following topics:

- Public Pipes
- Writing and Reading Pipes
- Private Pipes

Public Pipes

You may create a public pipe either implicitly or explicitly. For *implicit* public pipes, the pipe is automatically created when it is referenced for the first time, and it disappears when it no longer contains data. Because the pipe descriptor is stored in the SGA, there is some space usage overhead until the empty pipe is aged out of the cache.

You create an *explicit* public pipe by calling the `CREATE_PIPE` function with the `private` flag set to `FALSE`. You must deallocate explicitly-created pipes by calling the `REMOVE_PIPE` function.

The domain of a public pipe is the schema in which it was created, either explicitly or implicitly.

Writing and Reading Pipes

Each public pipe works asynchronously. Any number of schema users can write to a public pipe, as long as they have `EXECUTE` permission on the `DBMS_PIPE` package, and they know the name of the public pipe. However, once buffered information is read by one user, it is emptied from the buffer, and is not available for other readers of the same pipe.

The sending session builds a message using one or more calls to the `PACK_MESSAGE` procedure. This procedure adds the message to the session's local message buffer. The information in this buffer is sent by calling the `SEND_MESSAGE` function, designating the pipe name to be used to send the message. When `SEND_MESSAGE` is called, all messages that have been stacked in the local buffer are sent.

A process that wants to receive a message calls the `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` function, designating the pipe name from which to receive the message. The process then calls the `UNPACK_MESSAGE` procedure to access each of the items in the message.

Private Pipes

You explicitly create a private pipe by calling the `CREATE_PIPE` function. Once created, the private pipe persists in shared memory until you explicitly deallocate it by calling the `REMOVE_PIPE` function. A private pipe is also deallocated when the database instance is shut down.

You cannot create a private pipe if an implicit pipe exists in memory and has the same name as the private pipe you are trying to create. In this case, CREATE_PIPE returns an error.

Access to a private pipe is restricted to:

- Sessions running under the same userid as the creator of the pipe
- Stored subprograms executing in the same userid privilege domain as the pipe creator
- Users connected as SYSDBA

An attempt by any other user to send or receive messages on the pipe, or to remove the pipe, results in an immediate error. Any attempt by another user to create a pipe with the same name also causes an error.

As with public pipes, you must first build your message using calls to PACK_MESSAGE before calling SEND_MESSAGE. Similarly, you must call RECEIVE_MESSAGE to retrieve the message before accessing the items in the message by calling UNPACK_MESSAGE.

Exceptions

DBMS_PIPE package subprograms can return the following errors:

Table 112–1 DBMS_PIPE Errors

Error	Description
ORA-23321:	Pipename may not be null. This can be returned by the CREATE_PIPE function, or any subprogram that takes a pipe name as a parameter.
ORA-23322:	Insufficient privilege to access pipe. This can be returned by any subprogram that references a private pipe in its parameter list.

Examples

Example 1: Debugging - PL/SQL

This example shows the procedure that a PL/SQL program can call to place debugging information in a pipe.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE debug (msg VARCHAR2) AS
    status  NUMBER;
BEGIN
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(LENGTH(msg));
  DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(msg);
  status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('plsql_debug');
  IF status != 0 THEN
    raise_application_error(-20099, 'Debug error');
  END IF;
END debug;
```

Example 2: Debugging - Pro*C

The following Pro*C code receives messages from the PLSQL_DEBUG pipe in the previous example, and displays the messages. If the Pro*C session is run in a separate window, then it can be used to display any messages that are sent to the debug procedure from a PL/SQL program executing in a separate session.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
   VARCHAR username[20];
   int     status;
   int     msg_length;
   char    retval[2000];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;

void sql_error();

main()
{

-- Prepare username:
   strcpy(username.arr, "SCOTT/TIGER");
   username.len = strlen(username.arr);

   EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sql_error();
   EXEC SQL CONNECT :username;

   printf("connected\n");

-- Start an endless loop to look for and print messages on the pipe:
   FOR (;;)
   {
```

```
      EXEC SQL EXECUTE
         DECLARE
            len INTEGER;
            typ INTEGER;
            sta INTEGER;
            chr VARCHAR2(2000);
         BEGIN
            chr := '';
            sta := dbms_pipe.receive_message('plsql_debug');
            IF sta = 0 THEN
               DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(len);
               DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(chr);
            END IF;
            :status := sta;
            :retval := chr;
            IF len IS NOT NULL THEN
               :msg_length := len;
            ELSE
               :msg_length := 2000;
            END IF;
         END;
      END-EXEC;
      IF (status == 0)
         printf("\n%.*s\n", msg_length, retval);
      ELSE
         printf("abnormal status, value is %d\n", status);
   }
}

void sql_error()
{
   char msg[1024];
   int rlen, len;
   len = sizeof(msg);
   sqlglm(msg, &len, &rlen);
   printf("ORACLE ERROR\n");
   printf("%.*s\n", rlen, msg);
   exit(1);
}
```

Example 3: Execute System Commands

This example shows PL/SQL and Pro*C code let a PL/SQL stored procedure (or anonymous block) call PL/SQL procedures to send commands over a pipe to a Pro*C program that is listening for them.

The Pro*C program sleeps and waits for a message to arrive on the named pipe. When a message arrives, the Pro*C program processes it, carrying out the required action, such as executing a UNIX command through the *system*() call or executing a SQL command using embedded SQL.

`DAEMON.SQL` is the source code for the PL/SQL package. This package contains procedures that use the `DBMS_PIPE` package to send and receive message to and from the Pro*C daemon. Note that full handshaking is used. The daemon always sends a message back to the package (except in the case of the `STOP` command). This is valuable, because it allows the PL/SQL procedures to be sure that the Pro*C daemon is running.

You can call the DAEMON packaged procedures from an anonymous PL/SQL block using SQL*Plus or Enterprise Manager. For example:

```
SQLPLUS> variable rv number
SQLPLUS> execute :rv := DAEMON.EXECUTE_SYSTEM('ls -la');
```

On a UNIX system, this causes the Pro*C daemon to execute the command *system*("*ls -la*").

Remember that the daemon needs to be running first. You might want to run it in the background, or in another window beside the SQL*Plus or Enterprise Manager session from which you call it.

The DAEMON.SQL also uses the DBMS_OUTPUT package to display the results. For this example to work, you must have execute privileges on this package.

DAEMON.SQL Example. This is the code for the PL/SQL DAEMON package:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE daemon AS
  FUNCTION execute_sql(command VARCHAR2,
                       timeout NUMBER DEFAULT 10)
    RETURN NUMBER;

  FUNCTION execute_system(command VARCHAR2,
                          timeout NUMBER DEFAULT 10)
    RETURN NUMBER;

  PROCEDURE stop(timeout NUMBER DEFAULT 10);
END daemon;
/
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY daemon AS

  FUNCTION execute_system(command VARCHAR2,
                          timeout NUMBER DEFAULT 10)
  RETURN NUMBER IS

    status       NUMBER;
    result       VARCHAR2(20);
    command_code NUMBER;
    pipe_name    VARCHAR2(30);
  BEGIN
    pipe_name := DBMS_PIPE.UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME;

    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('SYSTEM');
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(pipe_name);
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(command);
    status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('daemon', timeout);
    IF status <> 0 THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20010,
        'Execute_system: Error while sending.  Status = ' ||
         status);
    END IF;

    status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE(pipe_name, timeout);
    IF status <> 0 THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20011,
        'Execute_system: Error while receiving.
         Status = ' || status);
    END IF;

    DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(result);
    IF result <> 'done' THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20012,
        'Execute_system: Done not received.');
```

```
    END IF;

    DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(command_code);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('System command executed.  result = ' ||
                         command_code);
    RETURN command_code;
  END execute_system;

  FUNCTION execute_sql(command VARCHAR2,
                       timeout NUMBER DEFAULT 10)
  RETURN NUMBER IS

    status       NUMBER;
    result       VARCHAR2(20);
    command_code NUMBER;
    pipe_name    VARCHAR2(30);

  BEGIN
    pipe_name := DBMS_PIPE.UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME;

    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('SQL');
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(pipe_name);
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(command);
    status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('daemon', timeout);
    IF status <> 0 THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20020,
        'Execute_sql: Error while sending.  Status = ' || status);
    END IF;

    status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE(pipe_name, timeout);

    IF status <> 0 THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20021,
        'execute_sql: Error while receiving.
         Status = ' || status);
    END IF;

    DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(result);
    IF result <> 'done' THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20022,
        'execute_sql: done not received.');
    END IF;

    DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(command_code);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE
        ('SQL command executed.  sqlcode = ' || command_code);
    RETURN command_code;
  END execute_sql;

  PROCEDURE stop(timeout NUMBER DEFAULT 10) IS
    status NUMBER;
  BEGIN
    DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('STOP');
    status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE('daemon', timeout);
    IF status <> 0 THEN
      RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20030,
        'stop: error while sending.  status = ' || status);
    END IF;
  END stop;
END daemon;
```

daemon.pc Example. This is the code for the Pro*C daemon. You must precompile this using the Pro*C Precompiler, Version 1.5.x or later. You must also specify the USERID and SQLCHECK options, as the example contains embedded PL/SQL code.

> **Note:** To use a VARCHAR output host variable in a PL/SQL block, you must initialize the length component before entering the block.

```
proc iname=daemon userid=scott/tiger sqlcheck=semantics
```

Then C-compile and link in the normal way.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>

EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA;

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
  char *uid = "scott/tiger";
  int status;
  VARCHAR command[20];
  VARCHAR value[2000];
  VARCHAR return_name[30];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

void
connect_error()
{
  char msg_buffer[512];
  int msg_length;
  int buffer_size = 512;

  EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
  sqlglm(msg_buffer, &buffer_size, &msg_length);
  printf("Daemon error while connecting:\n");
  printf("%.*s\n", msg_length, msg_buffer);
  printf("Daemon quitting.\n");
  exit(1);
}

void
sql_error()
{
  char msg_buffer[512];
  int msg_length;
  int buffer_size = 512;

  EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
  sqlglm(msg_buffer, &buffer_size, &msg_length);
  printf("Daemon error while executing:\n");
  printf("%.*s\n", msg_length, msg_buffer);
  printf("Daemon continuing.\n");
}
main()
{
command.len = 20; /*initialize length components*/
value.len = 2000;
return_name.len  = 30;
```

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO connect_error();
EXEC SQL CONNECT :uid;
printf("Daemon connected.\n");

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sql_error();
printf("Daemon waiting...\n");
while (1) {
  EXEC SQL EXECUTE
    BEGIN
      :status := DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE('daemon');
      IF :status = 0 THEN
        DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(:command);
      END IF;
    END;
  END-EXEC;
  IF (status == 0)
  {
    command.arr[command.len] = '\0';
    IF (!strcmp((char *) command.arr, "STOP"))
    {
      printf("Daemon exiting.\n");
      break;
    }

    ELSE IF (!strcmp((char *) command.arr, "SYSTEM"))
    {
      EXEC SQL EXECUTE
        BEGIN
          DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(:return_name);
          DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(:value);
        END;
      END-EXEC;
      value.arr[value.len] = '\0';
      printf("Will execute system command '%s'\n", value.arr);

      status = system(value.arr);
      EXEC SQL EXECUTE
        BEGIN
          DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('done');
          DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(:status);
          :status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE(:return_name);
        END;
      END-EXEC;

      IF (status)
      {
        printf
         ("Daemon error while responding to system command.");
        printf("  status: %d\n", status);
      }
    }
    ELSE IF (!strcmp((char *) command.arr, "SQL")) {
      EXEC SQL EXECUTE
        BEGIN
          DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(:return_name);
          DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE(:value);
        END;
      END-EXEC;
      value.arr[value.len] = '\0';
      printf("Will execute sql command '%s'\n", value.arr);
```

```
      EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
      EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :value;
      status = sqlca.sqlcode;

      EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sql_error();
      EXEC SQL EXECUTE
        BEGIN
          DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE('done');
          DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE(:status);
          :status := DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE(:return_name);
        END;
      END-EXEC;

      IF (status)
      {
        printf("Daemon error while responding to sql command.");
        printf("  status: %d\n", status);
      }
    }
    ELSE
    {
      printf
        ("Daemon error: invalid command '%s' received.\n",
          command.arr);
    }
  }
  ELSE
  {
    printf("Daemon error while waiting for signal.");
    printf("  status = %d\n", status);
  }
}
EXEC SQL COMMIT WORK RELEASE;
exit(0);
```

Example 4: External Service Interface

Put the user-written 3GL code into an OCI or Precompiler program. The program connects to the database and executes PL/SQL code to read its request from the pipe, computes the result, and then executes PL/SQL code to send the result on a pipe back to the requestor.

Below is an example of a stock service request. The recommended sequence for the arguments to pass on the pipe for all service requests is:

```
protocol_version      VARCHAR2        - '1', 10 bytes or less
returnpipe            VARCHAR2        - 30 bytes or less
service               VARCHAR2        - 30 bytes or less
arg1                  VARCHAR2/NUMBER/DATE
   ...
argn                  VARCHAR2/NUMBER/DATE
```

The recommended format for returning the result is:

```
success               VARCHAR2        - 'SUCCESS' if OK,
                                        otherwise error message
arg1                  VARCHAR2/NUMBER/DATE
   ...
argn                  VARCHAR2/NUMBER/DATE
```

The "stock price request server" would do, using OCI or PRO* (in pseudo-code):

```
<loop forever>
  BEGIN dbms_stock_server.get_request(:stocksymbol); END;
  <figure out price based on stocksymbol (probably from some radio
        signal), set error if can't find such a stock>
  BEGIN dbms_stock_server.return_price(:error, :price); END;
```

A client would do:

```
BEGIN :price := stock_request('YOURCOMPANY'); end;
```

The stored procedure, `dbms_stock_server`, which is called by the preceding "stock price request server" is:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE dbms_stock_server IS
  PROCEDURE get_request(symbol OUT VARCHAR2);
  PROCEDURE return_price(errormsg IN VARCHAR2, price IN VARCHAR2);
END;

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY dbms_stock_server IS
  returnpipe    VARCHAR2(30);

  PROCEDURE returnerror(reason VARCHAR2) IS
    s INTEGER;
  BEGIN
    dbms_pipe.pack_message(reason);
    s := dbms_pipe.send_message(returnpipe);
    IF s <> 0 THEN
      raise_application_error(-20000, 'Error:' || to_char(s) ||
        ' sending on pipe');
    END IF;
  END;

  PROCEDURE get_request(symbol OUT VARCHAR2) IS
    protocol_version VARCHAR2(10);
    s                INTEGER;
    service          VARCHAR2(30);
  BEGIN
    s := dbms_pipe.receive_message('stock_service');
    IF s <> 0 THEN
      raise_application_error(-20000, 'Error:' || to_char(s) ||
        'reading pipe');
    END IF;
    dbms_pipe.unpack_message(protocol_version);
    IF protocol_version <> '1' THEN
      raise_application_error(-20000, 'Bad protocol: ' ||
        protocol_version);
    END IF;
    dbms_pipe.unpack_message(returnpipe);
    dbms_pipe.unpack_message(service);
    IF service != 'getprice' THEN
      returnerror('Service ' || service || ' not supported');
    END IF;
    dbms_pipe.unpack_message(symbol);
  END;

  PROCEDURE return_price(errormsg in VARCHAR2, price in VARCHAR2) IS
    s INTEGER;
  BEGIN
    IF errormsg is NULL THEN
```

```
      dbms_pipe.pack_message('SUCCESS');
      dbms_pipe.pack_message(price);
    ELSE
      dbms_pipe.pack_message(errormsg);
    END IF;
    s := dbms_pipe.send_message(returnpipe);
    IF s <> 0 THEN
      raise_application_error(-20000, 'Error:'||to_char(s)||
        ' sending on pipe');
    END IF;
  END;
END;
```

The procedure called by the client is:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION stock_request (symbol VARCHAR2)
    RETURN VARCHAR2 IS
  s        INTEGER;
  price    VARCHAR2(20);
  errormsg VARCHAR2(512);
BEGIN
  dbms_pipe.pack_message('1');  -- protocol version
  dbms_pipe.pack_message(dbms_pipe.unique_session_name); -- return pipe
  dbms_pipe.pack_message('getprice');
  dbms_pipe.pack_message(symbol);
  s := dbms_pipe.send_message('stock_service');
  IF s <> 0 THEN
    raise_application_error(-20000, 'Error:'||to_char(s)||
      ' sending on pipe');
  END IF;
  s := dbms_pipe.receive_message(dbms_pipe.unique_session_name);
  IF s <> 0 THEN
    raise_application_error(-20000, 'Error:'||to_char(s)||
      ' receiving on pipe');
  END IF;
  dbms_pipe.unpack_message(errormsg);
  IF errormsg <> 'SUCCESS' THEN
    raise_application_error(-20000, errormsg);
  END IF;
  dbms_pipe.unpack_message(price);
  RETURN price;
END;
```

You would typically only `GRANT EXECUTE` on `DBMS_STOCK_SERVICE` to the stock service application server, and would only `GRANT EXECUTE` on `stock_request` to those users allowed to use the service.

See Also: Chapter 20, "DBMS_ALERT"

Summary of DBMS_PIPE Subprograms

Table 112–2 DBMS_PIPE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_PIPE Function on page 112-19	Creates a pipe (necessary for private pipes)
NEXT_ITEM_TYPE Function on page 112-21	Returns datatype of next item in buffer
PACK_MESSAGE Procedures on page 112-22	Builds message in local buffer
PURGE Procedure on page 112-24	Purges contents of named pipe
RECEIVE_MESSAGE Function on page 112-25	Copies message from named pipe into local buffer
REMOVE_PIPE Function on page 112-28	Removes the named pipe
RESET_BUFFER Procedure on page 112-27	Purges contents of local buffer
SEND_MESSAGE Function on page 112-29	Sends message on named pipe: This implicitly creates a public pipe if the named pipe does not exist
UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME Function on page 112-31	Returns unique session name
UNPACK_MESSAGE Procedures on page 112-32	Accesses next item in buffer

CREATE_PIPE Function

This function explicitly creates a public or private pipe. If the `private` flag is `TRUE`, then the pipe creator is assigned as the owner of the private pipe.

Explicitly-created pipes can only be removed by calling `REMOVE_PIPE`, or by shutting down the instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.CREATE_PIPE (
   pipename     IN VARCHAR2,
   maxpipesize  IN INTEGER DEFAULT 8192,
   private      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE)
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(create_pipe,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–3 CREATE_PIPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`pipename`	Name of the pipe you are creating. You must use this name when you call `SEND_MESSAGE` and `RECEIVE_MESSAGE`. This name must be unique across the instance. Caution: Do not use pipe names beginning with `ORA$`. These are reserved for use by procedures provided by Oracle. Pipename should not be longer than 128 bytes, and is case insensitive. At this time, the name cannot contain Globalization Support characters.
`maxpipesize`	The maximum size allowed for the pipe, in bytes. The total size of all of the messages on the pipe cannot exceed this amount. The message is blocked if it exceeds this maximum. The default `maxpipesize` is 8192 bytes. The `maxpipesize` for a pipe becomes a part of the characteristics of the pipe and persists for the life of the pipe. Callers of `SEND_MESSAGE` with larger values cause the `maxpipesize` to be increased. Callers with a smaller value use the existing, larger value.
`private`	Uses the default, `TRUE`, to create a private pipe. Public pipes can be implicitly created when you call `SEND_MESSAGE`.

Return Values

Table 112–4 CREATE_PIPE Function Return Values

Return	Description
0	Successful. If the pipe already exists and the user attempting to create it is authorized to use it, then Oracle returns 0, indicating success, and any data already in the pipe remains. If a user connected as SYSDBA/SYSOPER re-creates a pipe, then Oracle returns status 0, but the ownership of the pipe remains unchanged.
ORA-23322	Failure due to naming conflict. If a pipe with the same name exists and was created by a different user, then Oracle signals error ORA-23322, indicating the naming conflict.

Exceptions

Table 112–5 CREATE_PIPE Function Exception

Exception	Description
Null pipe name	Permission error: Pipe with the same name already exists, and you are not allowed to use it.

NEXT_ITEM_TYPE Function

This function determines the datatype of the next item in the local message buffer.

After you have called RECEIVE_MESSAGE to place pipe information in a local buffer, call NEXT_ITEM_TYPE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.NEXT_ITEM_TYPE
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(next_item_type,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Return Values

Table 112–6 NEXT_ITEM_TYPE Function Return Values

Return	Description
0	No more items
6	NUMBER
9	VARCHAR2
11	ROWID
12	DATE
23	RAW

PACK_MESSAGE Procedures

This procedure builds your message in the local message buffer. To send a message, first make one or more calls to PACK_MESSAGE. Then, call SEND_MESSAGE to send the message in the local buffer on the named pipe.

The procedure is overloaded to accept items of type VARCHAR2, NCHAR, NUMBER, DATE., RAW and ROWID items. In addition to the data bytes, each item in the buffer requires one byte to indicate its type, and two bytes to store its length. One additional byte is needed to terminate the message.The overhead for all types other than VARCHAR is 4 bytes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE (
   item  IN  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE (
   item  IN  NCHAR);

DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE (
   item  IN  NUMBER);

DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE (
   item  IN  DATE);

DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE_RAW (
   item  IN  RAW);

DBMS_PIPE.PACK_MESSAGE_ROWID (
   item  IN  ROWID);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(pack_message,WNDS,RNDS);
pragma restrict_references(pack_message_raw,WNDS,RNDS);
pragma restrict_references(pack_message_rowid,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–7 PACK_MESSAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
item	Item to pack into the local message buffer.

Usage Notes

In Oracle database version 8.x, the char-set-id (2 bytes) and the char-set-form (1 byte) are stored with each data item. Therefore, the overhead when using Oracle database version 8.x is 7 bytes.

When you call SEND_MESSAGE to send this message, you must indicate the name of the pipe on which you want to send the message. If this pipe already exists, then you must have sufficient privileges to access this pipe. If the pipe does not already exist, then it is created automatically.

Exceptions

ORA-06558 is raised if the message buffer overflows (currently 4096 bytes). Each item in the buffer takes one byte for the type, two bytes for the length, plus the actual data. There is also one byte needed to terminate the message.

PURGE Procedure

This procedure empties the contents of the named pipe.

An empty implicitly-created pipe is aged out of the shared global area according to the least-recently-used algorithm. Thus, calling PURGE lets you free the memory associated with an implicitly-created pipe.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.PURGE (
   pipename  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(purge,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–8 PURGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pipename	Name of pipe from which to remove all messages. The local buffer may be overwritten with messages as they are discarded. Pipename should not be longer than 128 bytes, and is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

Because PURGE calls RECEIVE_MESSAGE, the local buffer might be overwritten with messages as they are purged from the pipe. Also, you can receive an ORA-23322 (insufficient privileges) error if you attempt to purge a pipe with which you have insufficient access rights.

Exceptions

Permission error if pipe belongs to another user.

RECEIVE_MESSAGE Function

This function copies the message into the local message buffer.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.RECEIVE_MESSAGE (
   pipename     IN VARCHAR2,
   timeout      IN INTEGER      DEFAULT maxwait)
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(receive_message,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–9 RECEIVE_MESSAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pipename	Name of the pipe on which you want to receive a message. Names beginning with ORA$ are reserved for use by Oracle
timeout	Time to wait for a message, in seconds. The default value is the constant MAXWAIT, which is defined as 86400000 (1000 days). A timeout of 0 lets you read without blocking.

Return Values

Table 112–10 RECEIVE_MESSAGE Function Return Values

Return	Description
0	Success
1	Timed out. If the pipe was implicitly-created and is empty, then it is removed.
2	Record in the pipe is too large for the buffer. (This should not happen.)
3	An interrupt occurred.
ORA-23322	User has insufficient privileges to read from the pipe.

Usage Notes

To receive a message from a pipe, first call RECEIVE_MESSAGE. When you receive a message, it is removed from the pipe; hence, a message can only be received once. For implicitly-created pipes, the pipe is removed after the last record is removed from the pipe.

If the pipe that you specify when you call RECEIVE_MESSAGE does not already exist, then Oracle implicitly creates the pipe and waits to receive the message. If the message does not arrive within a designated timeout interval, then the call returns and the pipe is removed.

After receiving the message, you must make one or more calls to UNPACK_MESSAGE to access the individual items in the message. The UNPACK_MESSAGE procedure is

overloaded to unpack items of type DATE, NUMBER, VARCHAR2, and there are two additional procedures to unpack RAW and ROWID items. If you do not know the type of data that you are attempting to unpack, then call NEXT_ITEM_TYPE to determine the type of the next item in the buffer.

Exceptions

Table 112–11 RECEIVE_MESSAGE Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
Null pipe name	Permission error. Insufficient privilege to remove the record from the pipe. The pipe is owned by someone else.

RESET_BUFFER Procedure

This procedure resets the PACK_MESSAGE and UNPACK_MESSAGE positioning indicators to 0.

Because all pipes share a single buffer, you may find it useful to reset the buffer before using a new pipe. This ensures that the first time you attempt to send a message to your pipe, you do not inadvertently send an expired message remaining in the buffer.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.RESET_BUFFER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(reset_buffer,WNDS,RNDS);
```

REMOVE_PIPE Function

This function removes explicitly-created pipes.

Pipes created implicitly by SEND_MESSAGE are automatically removed when empty. However, pipes created explicitly by CREATE_PIPE are removed only by calling REMOVE_PIPE, or by shutting down the instance. All unconsumed records in the pipe are removed before the pipe is deleted.

This is similar to calling PURGE on an implicitly-created pipe.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.REMOVE_PIPE (
   pipename  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(remove_pipe,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–12 REMOVE_PIPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pipename	Name of pipe that you want to remove.

Return Values

Table 112–13 REMOVE_PIPE Function Return Values

Return	Description
0	Success If the pipe does not exist, or if the pipe already exists and the user attempting to remove it is authorized to do so, then Oracle returns 0, indicating success, and any data remaining in the pipe is removed.
ORA-23322	Insufficient privileges. If the pipe exists, but the user is not authorized to access the pipe, then Oracle signals error ORA-23322, indicating insufficient privileges.

Exceptions

Table 112–14 REMOVE_PIPE Function Exception

Exception	Description
Null pipe name	Permission error: Insufficient privilege to remove pipe. The pipe was created and is owned by someone else.

SEND_MESSAGE Function

This function sends a message on the named pipe.

The message is contained in the local message buffer, which was filled with calls to PACK_MESSAGE. You can create a pipe explicitly using CREATE_PIPE, otherwise, it is created implicitly.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.SEND_MESSAGE (
    pipename     IN VARCHAR2,
    timeout      IN INTEGER DEFAULT MAXWAIT,
    maxpipesize  IN INTEGER DEFAULT 8192)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(send_message,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–15 SEND_MESSAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pipename	Name of the pipe on which you want to place the message. If you are using an explicit pipe, then this is the name that you specified when you called CREATE_PIPE. Caution: Do not use pipe names beginning with 'ORA$'. These names are reserved for use by procedures provided by Oracle. Pipename should not be longer than 128 bytes, and is case-insensitive. At this time, the name cannot contain Globalization Support characters.
timeout	Time to wait while attempting to place a message on a pipe, in seconds. The default value is the constant MAXWAIT, which is defined as 86400000 (1000 days).
maxpipesize	Maximum size allowed for the pipe, in bytes. The total size of all the messages on the pipe cannot exceed this amount. The message is blocked if it exceeds this maximum. The default is 8192 bytes. The maxpipesize for a pipe becomes a part of the characteristics of the pipe and persists for the life of the pipe. Callers of SEND_MESSAGE with larger values cause the maxpipesize to be increased. Callers with a smaller value simply use the existing, larger value. Specifying maxpipesize as part of the SEND_MESSAGE procedure eliminates the need for a separate call to open the pipe. If you created the pipe explicitly, then you can use the optional maxpipesize parameter to override the creation pipe size specifications.

Return Values

Table 112–16 SEND_MESSAGE Function Return Values

Return	Description
0	Success. If the pipe already exists and the user attempting to create it is authorized to use it, then Oracle returns 0, indicating success, and any data already in the pipe remains. If a user connected as SYSDBS/SYSOPER re-creates a pipe, then Oracle returns status 0, but the ownership of the pipe remains unchanged.
1	Timed out. This procedure can timeout either because it cannot get a lock on the pipe, or because the pipe remains too full to be used. If the pipe was implicitly-created and is empty, then it is removed.
3	An interrupt occurred. If the pipe was implicitly created and is empty, then it is removed.
ORA-23322	Insufficient privileges. If a pipe with the same name exists and was created by a different user, then Oracle signals error ORA-23322, indicating the naming conflict.

Exceptions

Table 112–17 SEND_MESSAGE Function Exception

Exception	Description
Null pipe name	Permission error. Insufficient privilege to write to the pipe. The pipe is private and owned by someone else.

UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME Function

This function receives a name that is unique among all of the sessions that are currently connected to a database.

Multiple calls to this function from the same session always return the same value. You might find it useful to use this function to supply the `PIPENAME` parameter for your `SEND_MESSAGE` and `RECEIVE_MESSAGE` calls.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.UNIQUE_SESSION_NAME
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(unique_session_name,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS);
```

Return Values

This function returns a unique name. The returned name can be up to 30 bytes.

UNPACK_MESSAGE Procedures

This procedure retrieves items from the buffer.

After you have called RECEIVE_MESSAGE to place pipe information in a local buffer, call UNPACK_MESSAGE.

> **Note:** The UNPACK_MESSAGE procedure is overloaded to return items of type VARCHAR2, NCHAR, NUMBER, or DATE. There are two additional procedures to unpack RAW and ROWID items.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE (
   item  OUT VARCHAR2);

DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE (
   item  OUT NCHAR);

DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE (
   item  OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE (
   item  OUT DATE);

DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE_RAW (
   item  OUT RAW);

DBMS_PIPE.UNPACK_MESSAGE_ROWID (
   item  OUT ROWID);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(unpack_message,WNDS,RNDS);
pragma restrict_references(unpack_message_raw,WNDS,RNDS);
pragma restrict_references(unpack_message_rowid,WNDS,RNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 112–18 UNPACK_MESSAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
item	Argument to receive the next unpacked item from the local message buffer.

Exceptions

ORA-06556 or 06559 are generated if the buffer contains no more items, or if the item is not of the same type as that requested.

113

DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS

Data mining can discover useful information buried in vast amounts of data. However, it is often the case that both the programming interfaces and the data mining expertise required to obtain these results are too complex for use by the wide audiences that can obtain benefits from using Oracle Data Mining.

The `DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS` package addresses both of these complexities by automating the entire data mining process from data preprocessing through model building to scoring new data. This package provides an important tool that makes data mining possible for a broad audience of users, in particular, business analysts.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS` package.

Overview

Data mining, according to a commonly used process model, requires the following steps:

1. Understand the business problem.
2. Understand the data.
3. Prepare the data for mining.
4. Create models using the prepared data.
5. Evaluate the models.
6. Deploy and use the model to score new data.

`DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS` automates parts of step 3 — 5 of this process.

Predictive analytics procedures analyze and prepare the input data, create and test mining models using the input data, and then use the input data for scoring. The results of scoring are returned to the user. The models and supporting objects are not preserved after the operation completes.

Security Model

The DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS package is owned by user SYS and is installed as part of database installation. Execution privilege on the package is granted to public. The routines in the package are run with invokers' rights (run with the privileges of the current user).

The DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS package exposes APIs which are leveraged by the Oracle Data Mining option. Users who wish to invoke procedures in this package require the CREATE MINING MODEL system privilege (as well as the CREATE TABLE and CREATE VIEW system privilege).

Summary of DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS Subprograms

Table 113–1 DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Purpose
EXPLAIN Procedure on page 113-6	Ranks attributes in order of influence in explaining a target column.
PREDICT Procedure on page 113-8	Predicts the value of a target column based on values in the input data.
PROFILE Procedure on page 113-10	Generates rules that identify the records that have the same target value.

EXPLAIN Procedure

The EXPLAIN procedure identifies the attributes that are important in explaining the variation in values of a target column.

The input data must contain some records where the target value is known (not NULL). These records are used by the procedure to train a model that calculates the attribute importance.

> **Note:** EXPLAIN supports DATE and TIMESTAMP datatypes in addition to the numeric, character, and nested datatypes supported by Oracle Data Mining models.
>
> Data requirements for Oracle Data Mining are described in *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide.*

The EXPLAIN procedure creates a result table that lists the attributes in order of their explanatory power. The result table is described in the Usage Notes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS.EXPLAIN (
     data_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
     explain_column_name IN VARCHAR2,
     result_table_name   IN VARCHAR2,
     data_schema_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 113–2 EXPLAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_table_name	Name of input table or view
explain_column_name	Name of the column to be explained
result_table_name	Name of the table where results are saved
data_schema_name	Name of the schema where the input table or view resides and where the result table is created. Default: the current schema.

Usage Notes

The EXPLAIN procedure creates a result table with the columns described in Table 113–3.

Table 113–3 EXPLAIN Procedure Result Table

Column Name	Datatype	Description
ATTRIBUTE_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of a column in the input data; all columns except the explained column are listed in the result table.
EXPLANATORY_VALUE	NUMBER	Value indicating how useful the column is for determining the value of the explained column. Higher values indicate greater explanatory power. Value can range from 0 to 1. An individual column's explanatory value is independent of other columns in the input table. The values are based on how strong each individual column correlates with the explained column. The value is affected by the number of records in the input table, and the relations of the values of the column to the values of the explain column. An explanatory power value of 0 implies there is no useful correlation between the column's values and the explain column's values. An explanatory power of 1 implies perfect correlation; such columns should be eliminated from consideration for PREDICT. In practice, an explanatory power equal to 1 is rarely returned.
RANK	NUMBER	Ranking of explanatory power. Rows with equal values for explanatory_value have the same rank. Rank values are not skipped in the event of ties.

Example

The following example performs an EXPLAIN operation on the SUPPLEMENTARY_DEMOGRAPHICS table of Sales History.

```
--Perform EXPLAIN operation
BEGIN
    DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS.EXPLAIN(
        data_table_name      => 'supplementary_demographics',
        explain_column_name  => 'home_theater_package',
        result_table_name    => 'demographics_explain_result');
END;
/
--Display results
SELECT * FROM demographics_explain_result;

ATTRIBUTE_NAME                          EXPLANATORY_VALUE       RANK
--------------------------------------- ----------------- ----------
Y_BOX_GAMES                                    .524311073          1
YRS_RESIDENCE                                  .495987246          2
HOUSEHOLD_SIZE                                 .146208506          3
AFFINITY_CARD                                    .0598227          4
EDUCATION                                      .018462703          5
OCCUPATION                                     .009721543          6
FLAT_PANEL_MONITOR                              .00013733          7
PRINTER_SUPPLIES                                       0          8
OS_DOC_SET_KANJI                                       0          8
BULK_PACK_DISKETTES                                    0          8
BOOKKEEPING_APPLICATION                                0          8
COMMENTS                                               0          8
CUST_ID                                                0          8
```

The results show that Y_BOX_GAMES, YRS_RESIDENCE, and HOUSEHOLD_SIZE are the best predictors of HOME_THEATER_PACKAGE.

PREDICT Procedure

The PREDICT procedure predicts the values of a target column.

The input data must contain some records where the target value is known (not NULL). These records are used by the procedure to train and test a model that makes the predictions.

> **Note:** PREDICT supports DATE and TIMESTAMP datatypes in addition to the numeric, character, and nested datatypes supported by Oracle Data Mining models.
>
> Data requirements for Oracle Data Mining are described in *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide.*

The PREDICT procedure creates a result table that contains a predicted target value for every record. The result table is described in the Usage Notes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS.PREDICT (
    accuracy                OUT NUMBER,
    data_table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
    case_id_column_name     IN VARCHAR2,
    target_column_name      IN VARCHAR2,
    result_table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    data_schema_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 113–4 PREDICT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
accuracy	Output parameter that returns the predictive confidence, a measure of the accuracy of the predicted values. The predictive confidence for a categorical target is the most common target value; the predictive confidence for a numerical target is the mean.
data_table_name	Name of the input table or view.
case_id_column_name	Name of the column that uniquely identifies each case (record) in the input data.
target_column_name	Name of the column to predict.
result_table_name	Name of the table where results will be saved.
data_schema_name	Name of the schema where the input table or view resides and where the result table is created. Default: the current schema.

Usage Notes

The PREDICT procedure creates a result table with the columns described in Table 113–5.

Table 113–5 PREDICT Procedure Result Table

Column Name	Datatype	Description
Case ID column name	VARCHAR2 or NUMBER	The name of the case ID column in the input data.
PREDICTION	VARCHAR2 or NUMBER	The predicted value of the target column for the given case.
PROBABILITY	NUMBER	For classification (categorical target), the probability of the prediction. For regression problems (numerical target), this column contains NULL.

Note: Make sure that the name of the case ID column is not 'PREDICTION' or 'PROBABILITY'.

Predictions are returned for all cases whether or not they contained target values in the input.

Predicted values for known cases may be interesting in some situations. For example, you could perform deviation analysis to compare predicted values and actual values.

Example

The following example performs a PREDICT operation and displays the first 10 predictions. The results show an accuracy of 79% in predicting whether each customer has an affinity card.

```
--Perform PREDICT operation
DECLARE
    v_accuracy NUMBER(10,9);
BEGIN
    DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS.PREDICT(
        accuracy             => v_accuracy,
        data_table_name      => 'supplementary_demographics',
        case_id_column_name  => 'cust_id',
        target_column_name   => 'affinity_card',
        result_table_name    => 'pa_demographics_predict_result');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Accuracy = ' || v_accuracy);
END;
/

Accuracy = .788696903

--Display results
SELECT * FROM pa_demographics_predict_result WHERE rownum < 10;

   CUST_ID PREDICTION PROBABILITY
---------- ---------- -----------
    101501          1  .834069848
    101502          0  .991269965
    101503          0   .99978311
    101504          1  .971643388
    101505          1  .541754127
    101506          0  .803719133
    101507          0  .999999303
    101508          0  .999999987
    101509          0  .999953074
```

PROFILE Procedure

The PROFILE procedure generates rules that describe the cases (records) from the input data. For example, if a target column CHURN has values 'Yes' and 'No', PROFILE generates a set of rules describing the expected outcomes. Each profile includes a rule, record count, and a score distribution.

The input data must contain some cases where the target value is known (not NULL). These cases are used by the procedure to build a model that calculates the rules.

Note: PROFILE does not support nested types or dates.

Data requirements for Oracle Data Mining are described in *Oracle Data Mining User's Guide.*

The PROFILE procedure creates a result table that specifies rules (profiles) and their corresponding target values. The result table is described in the Usage Notes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS.PROFILE (
     data_table_name           IN VARCHAR2,
     target_column_name        IN VARCHAR2,
     result_table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
     data_schema_name          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 113–6 PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_table_name	Name of the table containing the data to be analyzed.
target_column_name	Name of the target column.
result_table_name	Name of the table where the results will be saved.
data_schema_name	Name of the schema where the input table or view resides and where the result table is created. Default: the current schema.

Usage Notes

The PROFILE procedure creates a result table with the columns described in Table 113–7.

Table 113–7 PROFILE Procedure Result Table

Column Name	Datatype	Description
PROFILE_ID	NUMBER	A unique identifier for this profile (rule).
RECORD_COUNT	NUMBER	The number of records described by the profile.
DESCRIPTION	SYS.XMLTYPE	The profile rule. See "XML Schema for Profile Rules".

XML Schema for Profile Rules

The DESCRIPTION column of the result table contains XML that conforms to the following XSD:

```
<xs:element name="SimpleRule">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:group ref="PREDICATE"/>
      <xs:element ref="ScoreDistribution" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:attribute name="id" type="xs:string" use="optional"/>
    <xs:attribute name="score" type="xs:string" use="required"/>
    <xs:attribute name="recordCount" type="NUMBER" use="optional"/>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
```

Example

This example generates a rule describing customers who are likely to use an affinity card (target value is 1) and a set of rules describing customers who are not likely to use an affinity card (target value is 0). The rules are based on only two predictors: education and occupation.

```
SET serveroutput ON
SET trimspool ON
SET pages 10000
SET long 10000
SET pagesize 10000
SET linesize 150
CREATE VIEW cust_edu_occ_view AS
             SELECT cust_id, education, occupation, affinity_card
             FROM sh.supplementary_demographics;
BEGIN
    DBMS_PREDICTIVE_ANALYTICS.PROFILE(
         DATA_TABLE_NAME    => 'cust_edu_occ_view',
         TARGET_COLUMN_NAME => 'affinity_card',
         RESULT_TABLE_NAME  => 'profile_result');
END;
/
```

This example generates eight rules in the result table `profile_result`. Seven of the rules suggest a target value of 0; one rule suggests a target value of 1. The `score` attribute on a rule identifies the target value.

This `SELECT` statement returns all the rules in the result table.

```
SELECT a.profile_id, a.record_count, a.description.getstringval()
 FROM profile_result a;
```

This `SELECT` statement returns the rules for a target value of 0.

```
SELECT *
  FROM profile_result t
  WHERE extractvalue(t.description, '/SimpleRule/@score') = 0;
```

The eight rules generated by this example are displayed as follows.

```
<SimpleRule id="1" score="0" recordCount="443">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Armed-F" "Exec." "Prof." "Protec."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"< Bach." "Assoc-V" "HS-grad"
      </Array>
```

```
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="297" />
  <ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="146" />
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="2" score="0" recordCount="18">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Armed-F" "Exec." "Prof." "Protec."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"10th" "11th" "12th" "1st-4th" "5th-6th" "7th-8th" "9th" "Presch."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="18" />
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="3" score="0" recordCount="458">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Armed-F" "Exec." "Prof." "Protec."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Assoc-A" "Bach."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="248" />
  <ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="210" />
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="4" score="1" recordCount="276">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Armed-F" "Exec." "Prof." "Protec."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Masters" "PhD" "Profsc"
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="183" />
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="93" />
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="5" score="0" recordCount="307">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Assoc-A" "Bach." "Masters" "PhD" "Profsc"
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Crafts" "Sales" "TechSup" "Transp."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
```

```
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="184" />
  <ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="123" />
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="6" score="0" recordCount="243">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Assoc-A" "Bach." "Masters" "PhD" "Profsc"
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"?" "Cleric." "Farming" "Handler" "House-s" "Machine" "Other"
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="197" />
  <ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="46" />
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="7" score="0" recordCount="2158">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">
        "10th" "11th" "12th" "1st-4th" "5th-6th" "7th-8th" "9th" "< Bach." "Assoc-V" "HS-grad"
        "Presch."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"?" "Cleric." "Crafts" "Farming" "Machine" "Sales" "TechSup" " Transp."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
  <ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="1819"/>
  <ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="339"/>
</SimpleRule>

<SimpleRule id="8" score="0" recordCount="597">
  <CompoundPredicate booleanOperator="and">
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="EDUCATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">
        "10th" "11th" "12th" "1st-4th"  "5th-6th" "7th-8th" "9th" "< Bach." "Assoc-V" "HS-grad"
        "Presch."
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
    <SimpleSetPredicate field="OCCUPATION" booleanOperator="isIn">
      <Array type="string">"Handler" "House-s" "Other"
      </Array>
    </SimpleSetPredicate>
  </CompoundPredicate>
<ScoreDistribution value="0" recordCount="572"/>
<ScoreDistribution value="1" recordCount="25"/>
</SimpleRule>
```

114

DBMS_PREPROCESSOR

The DBMS_PREPROCESSOR package provides an interface to print or retrieve the source text of a PL/SQL unit in its post-processed form.

This package contains the following topics

Using DBMS_PREPROCESSOR

Overview

There are three styles of subprograms.

1. Subprograms that take a schema name, a unit type name, and the unit name.
2. Subprograms that take a `VARCHAR2` string which contains the source text of an arbitrary PL/SQL compilation unit.
3. Subprograms that take a `VARCHAR2` index-by table which contains the segmented source text of an arbitrary PL/SQL compilation unit.

Subprograms of the first style are used to print or retrieve the post-processed source text of a stored PL/SQL unit. The user must have the privileges necessary to view the original source text of this unit. The user must also specify the schema in which the unit is defined, the type of the unit, and the name of the unit. If the schema is null, then the current user schema is used. If the status of the stored unit is `VALID` and the user has the required privilege, then the post-processed source text is guaranteed to be the same as that of the unit the last time it was compiled. Subprograms of the second or third style are used to generate post-processed source text in the current user schema. The source text is passed in as a single `VARCHAR2` string in the second style, or as a `VARCHAR2` index-by table in the third style. The source text can represent an arbitrary PL/SQL compilation unit. A typical usage is to pass the source text of an anonymous block and generate its post-processed source text in the current user schema. The third style can be useful when the source text exceeds the `VARCHAR2` length limit.

Operating Notes

- For subprograms of the first style, the status of the stored PL/SQL unit does not need to be VALID. Likewise, the source text passed in as a VARCHAR2 string or a VARCHAR2 index-by table may contain compile time errors. If errors are found when generating the post-processed source, the error message text will also appear at the end of the post-processed source text. In some cases, the preprocessing can be aborted because of errors. When this happens, the post-processed source text will appear to be incomplete and the associated error message can help to indicate that an error has occurred during preprocessing.
- For subprograms of the second or third style, the source text can represent any arbitrary PL/SQL compilation unit. However, the source text of a valid PL/SQL compilation unit cannot include commonly used prefixes such as CREATE OR REPLACE. In general, the input source should be syntactically prepared in a way as if it were obtained from the ALL_SOURCE view. The following list gives some examples of valid initial syntax for some PL/SQL compilation units.

  ```
  anonymous block   (BEGIN | DECLARE) ...
  package           PACKAGE <name> ...
  package body      PACKAGE BODY <name> ...
  procedure         PROCEDURE <name> ...
  function          FUNCTION <name> ...
  type              TYPE <name> ...
  type body         TYPE BODY <name> ...
  trigger           (BEGIN | DECLARE) ...
  ```

  If the source text represents a named PL/SQL unit that is valid, that unit will not be created after its post-processed source text is generated.
- If the text of a wrapped PL/SQL unit is obtained from the ALL_SOURCE view, the keyword WRAPPED always immediately follows the name of the unit, as in this example:

  ```
  PROCEDURE "some proc" WRAPPED
  a000000
  b2
  ...
  ```

  If such source text is presented to one of the GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Functions or to one of the PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Procedures, the exception DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.WRAPPED_INPUT is raised.

Data Structures

The DBMS_PREPROCESSOR package defines a TABLE type.

Table Types

SOURCE_LINES_T Table Type

SOURCE_LINES_T Table Type

This table type stores lines of post-processed source text. It is used to hold PL/SQL source text both before and after it is processed. It is especially useful in cases in which the amount of text exceeds 32K.

Syntax

```
TYPE source_lines_t IS
    TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_PREPROCESSOR Subprograms

Table 114–1 DBMS_PREPROCESSOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Functions on page 114-8	Returns the post-processed source text
PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Procedures on page 114-10	Prints post-processed source text

GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Functions

This overloaded function returns the post-processed source text. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definition.

Syntax

Returns post-processed source text of a stored PL/SQL unit:

```
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE (
   object_type    IN VARCHAR2,
   schema_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name    IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN source_lines_t;
```

Returns post-processed source text of a compilation unit:

```
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE (
   source        IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN source_lines_t;
```

Returns post-processed source text of an INDEX-BY table containing the source text of the compilation unit:

```
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE (
   source        IN source_lines_t)
  RETURN source_lines_t;
```

Parameters

Table 114–2 GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_type	Must be one of PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, TYPE, TYPE, BODY or TRIGGER. Case sensitive.
schema_name	The schema name. Case insensitive unless a quoted identifier is used. If NULL, use current schema.
object_name	The name of the object.The object_type is always case insensitive. Case insensitive unless a quoted identifier is used.
source	The source text of the compilation unit
source_lines_t	INDEX-BY table containing the source text of the compilation unit. The source text is a concatenation of all the non-NULL INDEX-BY table elements in ascending index order.

Return Values

The function returns an INDEX-BY table containing the lines of the post-processed source text starting from index 1.

Usage Notes

- Newline characters are not removed.
- Each line in the post-processed source text is mapped to a row in the INDEX-BY table.
- In the post-processed source, unselected text will have blank lines.

Exceptions

Table 114–3 GET_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-24234	Insufficient privileges or object does not exist
ORA-24235	Bad value for object type. Should be one of PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, TYPE, TYPE, BODY or TRIGGER.
ORA-24236	The source text is empty
ORA-00931	Missing identifier. The object_name should not be NULL.
ORA-06502	Numeric or value error: ■ Character string buffer too small ■ A line is too long (> 32767 bytes)

PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Procedures

This overloaded procedure calls DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE to let you view post-processed source text. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definition.

Syntax

Prints post-processed source text of a stored PL/SQL unit:

```
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE (
   object_type    IN VARCHAR2,
   schema_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Prints post-processed source text of a compilation unit:

```
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE (
   source        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Prints post-processed source text of an INDEX-BY table containing the source text of the compilation unit:

```
DBMS_PREPROCESSOR.PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE (
   source        IN source_lines_t);
```

Parameters

Table 114–4 PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_type	Must be one of PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, TYPE, TYPE, BODY or TRIGGER. Case sensitive.
schema_name	The schema name. Case insensitive unless a quoted identifier is used. If NULL, use current schema.
object_name	The name of the object.The object_type is always case insensitive. Case insensitive unless a quoted identifier is used.
source	The source text of the compilation unit
source_lines_t	INDEX-BY table containing the source text of the compilation unit. The source text is a concatenation of all the non-NULL INDEX-BY table elements in ascending index order.

Exceptions

Table 114–5 PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-24234	Insufficient privileges or object does not exist
ORA-24235	Bad value for object type. Should be one of PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, TYPE, TYPE, BODY or TRIGGER.
ORA-24236	The source text is empty
ORA-00931	Missing identifier. The object_name should not be NULL.

Table 114–5 (Cont.) PRINT_POST_PROCESSED_SOURCE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-06502	Numeric or value error: ■ Character string buffer too small ■ A line is too long (> 32767 bytes)

Usage Notes

The index-by table may contain holes. NULL elements are ignored when doing the concatenation.

115

DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE

The `DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE` package provides an interface to database privilege analysis.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Vault Administrator's Guide* regarding on how to analyze the use of privilege grants

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE

Overview

Database privilege analysis enables you to create a policy that records the usage of system and object privileges that have been granted to users. You then can determine the privileges that your users are using and not using. From there, you can revoke any unused privileges, thereby reducing the number of excess privilege grants for users.

By analyzing the privileges that users must have to perform specific tasks, privilege analysis policies help you to achieve a least privilege model for your users.

Security Model

The privilege analysis administrator role, `CAPTURE_ADMIN`, is granted `EXECUTE` permission on the `DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE` package by default.

The `CAPTURE_ADMIN` role is granted to the `DBA` role `WITH ADMIN OPTION` during database installation.

Constants

The DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE package uses the constants shown in the following table:

Table 115–1 Values for "type" Parameter of DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE

Constant	Value	Type	Description
G_DATABASE	1	NUMBER	Analyzes all privilege use, except privileges used by the SYS user.
G_ROLE	2	NUMBER	Analyzes privilege use for the specified roles.
G_CONTEXT	3	NUMBER	Analyzes privilege use when the condition parameter evaluates to true.
G_ROLE_AND_CONTEXT	4	NUMBER	Analyzes privilege use for the specified roles when the condition parameter evaluates to true.

Examples

The following examples illustrate using the DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE procedure to create various types of privilege analysis, like database analysis, role analysis, and context-specific analysis. The examples also illustrate combining different conditions in context-specific analysis.

```
--Create a database privilege analysis policy
BEGIN
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE(
        name         => 'all_priv_analysis_pol',
        description  => 'database-wide policy to analyze all privileges',
        type         => DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.G_DATABASE);
END;

--Create a privilege analysis policy to analyze privileges from the role PUBLIC
BEGIN
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE(
       name         => 'pub_analysis_pol',
       description  => 'Policy to record privilege use by PUBLIC',
       type         => DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.G_ROLE,
       roles        => role_name_list('PUBLIC'));
END;

-- Create a policy to analyze privileges from the application module, "Account
-- Payable"
BEGIN
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE(
  name         => 'acc_pay_analysis_pol',
  type         => DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.G_CONTEXT,
  condition    => 'SYS_CONTEXT(''USERENV'', ''MODULE'') = ''Account Payable''');
END;

-- Create a policy that records privileges for session user APPS when running the
-- application module "Account Payable"
BEGIN
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE(
  name         => 'acc_pay_analysis_pol',
  type         => DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.G_CONTEXT,
  condition    => 'SYS_CONTEXT(''USERENV'', ''MODULE'') = ''Account Payable'' AND
                   SYS_CONTEXT(''USERENV'', ''SESSION_USER'') = ''APPS''');
END;
```

Summary of DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE Subprograms

Table 115–2 DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure on page 115-8	Creates a policy that specifies the conditions for analyzing privilege use.
DISABLE_CAPTURE Procedure on page 115-10	Stops the recording of privilege use for a specified privilege analysis policy
DROP_CAPTURE Procedure on page 115-11	Removes a privilege analysis policy together with the data recorded
ENABLE_CAPTURE Procedure on page 115-12	Starts the recording of privilege analysis for a specified privilege analysis policy
GENERATE_RESULT Procedure on page 115-13	Populates the privilege analysis data dictionary views with data

CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure creates a privilege analysis policy that specifies the conditions for analyzing privilege use. It also optionally specifies the roles for which privilege use is to be analyzed, and the conditions under which privilege use is to be analyzed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.CREATE_CAPTURE (
   name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   description     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   type            IN  NUMBER DEFAULT G_DATABASE,
   roles           IN  ROLE_NAME_LIST DEFAULT ROLE_NAME_LIST(),
   condition       IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 115–3 CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Name of the privilege analysis policy. A string of size up to 30 characters.
`description`	Description of the policy (up to 1024 characters)
`type`	Type of the privilege analysis policy. Possible values are: ■ `G_DATABASE`: Captures all privilege use in the database, except privileges used by the `SYS` user. ■ `G_ROLE`: Captures the use of a privilege if the privilege is part of a specified role or list of roles. ■ `G_CONTEXT`: Captures the use of a privilege if the context specified by the `condition` parameter evaluates to true. ■ `G_ROLE_AND_CONTEXT`: Captures the use of a privilege if the privilege is part of the specified list of roles and when the condition specified by the `condition` parameter is true.
`roles`	The roles whose privileges are to be analyzed. Required if the `type` is `G_ROLE` or `G_ROLE_AND_CONTEXT`.
`condition`	PL/SQL boolean expression containing up to 4000 characters. Required if `type` is `G_CONTEXT` or `G_ROLE_AND_CONTEXT`. Note that the boolean expression can only contain `SYS_CONTEXT`, but not other functions.

Usage Notes

- When using role-based analysis for the `CREATE_CAPTURE` procedure, privilege use is analyzed even if the privilege is indirectly granted to the specified role.

  For example, say role R2 contains role R1, and R1 contains privilege P1. If the privilege policy includes only role R2, any use of the P1 privilege is still analyzed, as privilege P1 is an indirect part of role R2.

- When using the `condition` parameter, use the following syntax for the PL/SQL expression:

  ```
  condition::= predicate | (predicate1) AND (predicate2)
  | (predicate1) OR (predicate2)
  ```

Where,

```
predicate::= sys_context(namespace, attribute) relop constant_value |
sys_context(namespace, attribute) between constant_value and
 constant_value | sys_context(namespace, attribute) in {constant_value
(,constant_value)* }
```

Where,

```
relop::= = | < | <= | > | >= | <>
```

- A privilege analysis policy cannot analyze the use of `SYS` user privileges.

DISABLE_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure stops the recording of privilege use for a specified privilege analysis policy. When a policy is disabled, privilege use meeting the policy condition is no longer recorded.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.DISABLE_CAPTURE (
   name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 115–4 DISABLE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the privilege analysis policy to be disabled

Usage Notes

When a privilege analysis policy is first created, it is disabled by default.

DROP_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure removes a privilege analysis policy together with the data recorded. When a policy is removed, all previously recorded privilege use data associated with the policy is deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.DROP_CAPTURE (
   name      IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 115–5 DROP_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the privilege analysis policy to be removed

Usage Notes

You must disable a privilege analysis policy before removing it. An enabled policy cannot be removed.

ENABLE_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure starts the recording of privilege analysis for a specified privilege analysis policy. After a policy is enabled, all privilege use under the policy condition is recorded.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.ENABLE_CAPTURE (
   name      IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 115–6 ENABLE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the privilege analysis policy to be enabled

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply:

- When a privilege analysis policy is first created, it is disabled by default. You must run ENABLE_CAPTURE to enable the privilege analysis policy.
- You can enable only one privilege analysis policy at a time. However, a database-wide privilege analysis of the G_DATABASE type can be enabled together with another non G_DATABASE privilege analysis.

GENERATE_RESULT Procedure

This procedure populates the privilege analysis data dictionary views with data.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Reference* for more information on privilege analysis views.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PRIVILEGE_CAPTURE.GENERATE_RESULT (
   name      IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 115–7 GENERATE_RESULT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the privilege analysis policy for which views are populated

Usage Notes

You must disable a privilege analysis policy before populating the privilege analysis views for the policy. You cannot invoke this subprogram on an enabled privilege analysis policy.

116

DBMS_PROFILER

The DBMS_PROFILER package provides an interface to profile existing PL/SQL applications and identify performance bottlenecks. You can then collect and persistently store the PL/SQL profiler data.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PROFILER

Overview

This package enables the collection of profiler (performance) data for performance improvement or for determining code coverage for PL/SQL applications. Application developers can use code coverage data to focus their incremental testing efforts.

With this interface, you can generate profiling information for all named library units that are executed in a session. The profiler gathers information at the PL/SQL virtual machine level. This information includes the total number of times each line has been executed, the total amount of time that has been spent executing that line, and the minimum and maximum times that have been spent on a particular execution of that line.

> **Note:** It is possible to infer the code coverage figures for PL/SQL units for which data has been collected.

The profiling information is stored in database tables. This enables querying on the data: you can build customizable reports (summary reports, hottest lines, code coverage data, and so on. And you can analyze the data.

The `PROFTAB.SQL` script creates tables with the columns, datatypes, and definitions as shown in Table 116–1, Table 116–2, and Table 116–3.

Table 116–1 Columns in Table PLSQL_PROFILER_RUNS

Column	Datatype	Definition
runid	NUMBER PRIMARY KEY	Unique run identifier from plsql_profiler_runnumber
related_run	NUMBER	Runid of related run (for client/server correlation)
run_owner	VARCHAR2(32),	User who started run
run_date	DATE	Start time of run
run_comment	VARCHAR2(2047)	User provided comment for this run
run_total_time	NUMBER	Elapsed time for this run in nanoseconds
run_system_info	VARCHAR2(2047)	Currently unused
run_comment1	VARCHAR2(2047)	Additional comment
spare1	VARCHAR2(256)	Unused

Table 116–2 Columns in Table PLSQL_PROFILER_UNITS

Column	Datatype	Definition
runid	NUMBER	Primary key, references plsql_profiler_runs,
unit_number	NUMBER	Primary key, internally generated library unit #
unit_type	VARCHAR2(32)	Library unit type
unit_owner	VARCHAR2(32)	Library unit owner name
unit_name	VARCHAR2(32)	Library unit name timestamp on library unit
unit_timestamp	DATE	In the future will be used to detect changes to unit between runs

Table 116–2 (Cont.) Columns in Table PLSQL_PROFILER_UNITS

Column	Datatype	Definition
total_time	NUMBER	Total time spent in this unit in nanoseconds. The profiler does not set this field, but it is provided for the convenience of analysis tools.
spare1	NUMBER	Unused
spare2	NUMBER	Unused

Table 116–3 Columns in Table PLSQL_PROFILER_DATA

Column	Datatype	Definition
runid	NUMBER	Primary key, unique (generated) run identifier
unit_number	NUMBER	Primary key, internally generated library unit number
line#	NUMBER	Primary key, not null, line number in unit
total_occur	NUMBER	Number of times line was executed
total_time	NUMBER	Total time spent executing line in nanoseconds
min_time	NUMBER	Minimum execution time for this line in nanoseconds
max_time	NUMBER	Maximum execution time for this line in nanoseconds
spare1	NUMBER	Unused
spare2	NUMBER	Unused
spare3	NUMBER	Unused
spare4	NUMBER	Unused

With Oracle database version 8.x, a sample textual report writer(profrep.sql) is provided with the PL/SQL demo scripts.

Note that prior to Oracle Database 10*g*, the DBMS_PROFILER package was not automatically loaded when the database was created, and the Oracle-supplied PROFLOAD.SQL script was used to create it. In 10*g* and beyond, the DBMS_PROFILER package is loaded automatically when the database is created, and PROFLOAD.SQL is no longer needed.

Security Model

The profiler only gathers data for units for which a user has `CREATE` privilege; you cannot use the package to profile units for which `EXECUTE ONLY` access has been granted. In general, if a user can debug a unit, the same user can profile it. However, a unit can be profiled whether or not it has been compiled `DEBUG`. Oracle advises that modules that are being profiled should be compiled `DEBUG`, since this provides additional information about the unit in the database.

Note: `DBMS_PROFILER` treats any program unit that is compiled in `NATIVE` mode as if you do not have `CREATE` privilege, that is, you will not get any output.

Operational Notes

Typical Run

Improving application performance is an iterative process. Each iteration involves the following steps:

1. Running the application with one or more benchmark tests with profiler data collection enabled.
2. Analyzing the profiler data and identifying performance problems.
3. Fixing the problems.

The PL/SQL profiler supports this process using the concept of a *"run"*. A run involves running the application through benchmark tests with profiler data collection enabled. You can control the beginning and the ending of a run by calling the `START_PROFILER` and `STOP_PROFILER` functions.

The user must first create database tables in the profiler user's schema to collect the data. The `PROFTAB.SQL` script creates the tables and other data structures required for persistently storing the profiler data.

Note that running `PROFTAB.SQL` drops the current tables. The `PROFTAB.SQL` script is in the `RDBMS/ADMIN` directory. Some PL/SQL operations, such as the first execution of a PL/SQL unit, may involve I/O to catalog tables to load the byte code for the PL/SQL unit being executed. Also, it may take some time executing package initialization code the first time a package procedure or function is called.

To avoid timing this overhead, *"warm up"* the database before collecting profile data. To do this, run the application once without gathering profiler data.

You can allow profiling across all users of a system, for example, to profile all users of a package, independent of who is using it. In such cases, the `SYSADMIN` should use a modified `PROFTAB.SQL` script which:

- Creates the profiler tables and sequence
- Grants `SELECT/INSERT/UPDATE` on those tables and sequence to all users
- Defines public synonyms for the tables and sequence

> **Note:** Do not alter the actual fields of the tables.

A typical run then involves:

- Starting profiler data collection in the run.
- Executing PL/SQL code for which profiler and code coverage data is required.
- Stopping profiler data collection, which writes the collected data for the run into database tables

Note: The collected profiler data is not automatically stored when the user disconnects. You must issue an explicit call to the FLUSH_DATA or the STOP_PROFILER function to store the data at the end of the session. Stopping data collection stores the collected data.

As the application executes, profiler data is collected in memory data structures that last for the duration of the run. You can call the FLUSH_DATA function at intermediate points during the run to get incremental data and to free memory for allocated profiler data structures. Flushing the collected data involves storing collected data in the database tables created earlier.

See Also: "FLUSH_DATA Function and Procedure" on page 116-11.

Interpreting Output

The table plsql_profiler_data contains one row for each line of the source unit for which code was generated. The line# value specifies which source line. If the row exists, and the total_occur value in that row is > 0, some code associated with that line was executed. If the row exists, and total_occur value is 0, no code associated with that line was executed. If the row doesn't exist in the table, no code was generated for that line, and therefore it should not be mentioned in reports

If the source of a single statement is on a single line, any code generated for that statement will be attributed to that line number. (In some cases, such as a simple declaration, or because of optimization, no code will be needed). To get coverage information, units should be compiled with PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL=1.

If a statement spans multiple lines, any code generated for that statement will be attributed to some line in the range, but it is not guaranteed that every line in the range will have code attributed to it. In such a case there will be gaps in the set of line# values. In particular, multi-line SQL-related statements may appear to be on a single line (usually the first). This is because PL/SQL passes the processed text of the cursor to the SQL engine; therefore, as far as PL/SQL is concerned, the entire SQL statement is a single indivisible operation.

When multiple statements are on the same line, the profiler will combine the occurrences for each statement. This may be confusing if a line has embedded control flow. For example, if 'then ...' and 'else ...' are on the same line, it will not be possible to determine whether the 'then' or the 'else' was taken.

In general, profiler and coverage reports are most easily interpreted if each statement is on its own line.

Two Methods of Exception Generation

Each routine in this package has two versions that allow you to determine how errors are reported.

- A function that returns success/failure as a status value and will never raise an exception
- A procedure that returns normally if it succeeds and raises an exception if it fails

In each case, the parameters of the function and procedure are identical. Only the method by which errors are reported differs. If there is an error, there is a correspondence between the error codes that the functions return, and the exceptions that the procedures raise.

To avoid redundancy, the following section only provides details about the functional form.

Exceptions

Table 116–4 DBMS_PROFILER Exceptions

Exception	Description
version_mismatch	Corresponds to error_version.
profiler_error	Corresponds to either "error_param" or "error_io".

A 0 return value from any function denotes successful completion; a nonzero return value denotes an error condition. The possible errors are as follows:

- 'A subprogram was called with an incorrect parameter.'

  ```
  error_param constant binary_integer := 1;
  ```

- 'Data flush operation failed. Check whether the profiler tables have been created, are accessible, and that there is adequate space.'

  ```
  error_io    constant binary_integer := 2;
  ```

- There is a mismatch between package and database implementation. Oracle returns this error if an incorrect version of the DBMS_PROFILER package is installed, and if the version of the profiler package cannot work with this database version. The only recovery is to install the correct version of the package.

  ```
  error_version constant binary_integer := -1;
  ```

Summary of DBMS_PROFILER Subprograms

Table 116–5 DBMS_PROFILER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FLUSH_DATA Function and Procedure on page 116-11	Flushes profiler data collected in the user's session
GET_VERSION Procedure on page 116-12	Gets the version of this API
INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK Function on page 116-13	Verifies that this version of the `DBMS_PROFILER` package can work with the implementation in the database
PAUSE_PROFILER Function and Procedure on page 116-14	Pauses profiler data collection
RESUME_PROFILER Function and Procedure on page 116-15	Resumes profiler data collection
START_PROFILER Functions and Procedures on page 116-16	Starts profiler data collection in the user's session
STOP_PROFILER Function and Procedure on page 116-17	Stops profiler data collection in the user's session

FLUSH_DATA Function and Procedure

This function flushes profiler data collected in the user's session. The data is flushed to database tables, which are expected to preexist.

> **Note:** Use the PROFTAB.SQL script to create the tables and other data structures required for persistently storing the profiler data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.FLUSH_DATA
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_PROFILER.FLUSH_DATA;
```

GET_VERSION Procedure

This procedure gets the version of this API.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.GET_VERSION (
   major  OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   minor  OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 116–6 GET_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
major	Major version of DBMS_PROFILER.
minor	Minor version of DBMS_PROFILER.

INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK Function

This function verifies that this version of the DBMS_PROFILER package can work with the implementation in the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

PAUSE_PROFILER Function and Procedure

This function pauses profiler data collection.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.PAUSE_PROFILER
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_PROFILER.PAUSE_PROFILER;
```

RESUME_PROFILER Function and Procedure

This function resumes profiler data collection.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.RESUME_PROFILER
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_PROFILER.RESUME_PROFILER;
```

START_PROFILER Functions and Procedures

This function starts profiler data collection in the user's session.

There are two overloaded forms of the START_PROFILER function; one returns the run number of the started run, as well as the result of the call. The other does not return the run number. The first form is intended for use with GUI-based tools controlling the profiler.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.START_PROFILER(
   run_comment   IN VARCHAR2 := sysdate,
   run_comment1  IN VARCHAR2 :='',
   run_number    OUT BINARY_INTEGER)
 RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_PROFILER.START_PROFILER(
   run_comment IN VARCHAR2 := sysdate,
   run_comment1 IN VARCHAR2 :='')
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_PROFILER.START_PROFILER(
   run_comment   IN VARCHAR2 := sysdate,
   run_comment1  IN VARCHAR2 :='',
   run_number    OUT BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_PROFILER.START_PROFILER(
   run_comment IN VARCHAR2 := sysdate,
   run_comment1 IN VARCHAR2 :='');
```

Parameters

Table 116–7 START_PROFILER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
run_comment	Each profiler run can be associated with a comment. For example, the comment could provide the name and version of the benchmark test that was used to collect data.
run_number	Stores the number of the run so you can store and later recall the run's data.
run_comment1	Allows you to make interesting comments about the run.

STOP_PROFILER Function and Procedure

This function stops profiler data collection in the user's session.

This function has the side effect of flushing data collected so far in the session, and it signals the end of a run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROFILER.STOP_PROFILER
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_PROFILER.STOP_PROFILER;
```

117

DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM

The DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides administrative interfaces for configuring a propagation from a source queue to a destination queue.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package.

Overview

This package provides interfaces to start, stop, and configure a propagation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and propagations

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

When the `DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM` package is used to manage an Oracle Streams configuration, it requires that the user is granted the privileges of an Oracle Streams administrator.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Summary of DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM Subprograms

Table 117–1 DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 117-6	Adds, alters, or removes a rule set for a propagation
CREATE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 117-8	Creates a propagation and specifies the source queue, destination queue, and rule set for the propagation
DROP_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 117-11	Drops a propagation
START_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 117-13	Starts a propagation
STOP_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 117-14	Stops a propagation

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ALTER_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure adds, alters, or removes a rule set for a propagation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and Chapter 139, "DBMS_RULE_ADM" for more information about rules and rule sets

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM.ALTER_PROPAGATION(
   propagation_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_rule_set           IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   negative_rule_set_name    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_negative_rule_set  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 117–2 ALTER_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation you are altering. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the propagation. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the propagation to propagate messages. If you want to use a positive rule set for the propagation, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the hr schema named prop_rules, enter hr.prop_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL and the remove_rule_set parameter is set to FALSE, then the procedure retains any existing positive rule set. If you specify NULL and the remove_rule_set parameter is set to TRUE, then the procedure removes any existing positive rule set.
remove_rule_set	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the positive rule set for the specified propagation. If you remove a positive rule set for a propagation, and the propagation does not have a negative rule set, then the propagation propagates all messages. If you remove a positive rule set for a propagation, and a negative rule set exists for the propagation, then the propagation propagates all messages in its queue that are not discarded by the negative rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure retains the positive rule set for the specified propagation. If the rule_set_name parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

Table 117–2 (Cont.) ALTER_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
negative_rule_set_name	The name of the negative rule set for the propagation. The negative rule set contains the rules that instruct the propagation to discard messages. If you want to use a negative rule set for the propagation, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name*.]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a negative rule set in the hr schema named neg_rules, enter hr.neg_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL and the remove_negative_rule_set parameter is set to FALSE, then the procedure retains any existing negative rule set. If you specify NULL and the remove_negative_rule_set parameter is set to TRUE, then the procedure removes any existing negative rule set. If you specify both a positive and a negative rule set for a propagation, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.
remove_negative_rule_set	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the negative rule set for the specified propagation. If you remove a negative rule set for a propagation, and the propagation does not have a positive rule set, then the propagation propagates all messages. If you remove a negative rule set for a propagation, and a positive rule set exists for the propagation, then the propagation propagates all messages in its queue that are not discarded by the positive rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure retains the negative rule set for the specified propagation. If the negative_rule_set_name parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

CREATE_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure creates a propagation and specifies the source queue, destination queue, and any rule set for the propagation. A propagation propagates messages in a local source queue to a destination queue. The destination queue might or might not be in the same database as the source queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM.CREATE_PROPAGATION(
   propagation_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_queue               IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue          IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_dblink         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   rule_set_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   negative_rule_set_name     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue             IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL,
   original_propagation_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   auto_merge_threshold       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 117–3 CREATE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation you are creating. A NULL setting is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. **Note:** The propagation_name setting cannot be altered after the propagation is created.
source_queue	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue	The name of the destination queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_dblink	The name of the database link that will be used by the propagation. The database link is from the database that contains the source queue to the database that contains the destination queue. If NULL, then the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.

Table 117–3 (Cont.) CREATE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_set_name	The name of the positive rule set for the propagation. The positive rule set contains the rules that instruct the propagation to propagate messages. If you want to use a positive rule set for the propagation, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a positive rule set in the hr schema named prop_rules, enter hr.prop_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL, and no negative rule set exists for the propagation, then the propagation propagates all messages in its queue. If you specify NULL, and a negative rule set exists for the propagation, then the propagation propagates all messages in its queue that are not discarded by the negative rule set.
negative_rule_set_name	The name of the negative rule set for the propagation. The negative rule set contains the rules that instruct the propagation to discard messages. If you want to use a negative rule set for the propagation, then you must specify an existing rule set in the form [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to specify a negative rule set in the hr schema named neg_rules, enter hr.neg_rules. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. An error is returned if the specified rule set does not exist. You can create a rule set and add rules to it using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package. If you specify NULL, and no positive rule set exists for the propagation, then the propagation propagates all messages in its queue. If you specify NULL, and a positive rule set exists for the propagation, then the propagation propagates all messages in its queue that are not discarded by the positive rule set. If you specify both a positive and a negative rule set for a propagation, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then the propagation is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then the propagation is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Table 117–3 (Cont.) CREATE_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
original_propagation_name	Specify the original propagation name if the propagation being created is part of a split and merge operation initiated by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. The split operation clones the original propagation under a new name. The name of the original propagation is important when the cloned propagation is copied back to the original stream using the MERGE_STREAMS procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. Specify NULL if the propagation being created is not part of a split and merge operation. **See Also:** SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-173 and MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-130
auto_merge_theshold	Specify a positive number if both of the following conditions are met: ▪ The propagation being created is part of a split and merge operation initiated by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package. ▪ The stream will be merged back to the original stream automatically. Specify NULL if either of the following conditions are met: ▪ The propagation being created is not part of a split and merge operation. ▪ The propagation being created is part of a split and merge operation, but the stream being split off will not be merged back to the original stream automatically. **See Also:** SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-173 and MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-130

Usage Notes

This procedure starts propagation and might create a propagation job. If this procedure creates a propagation job, then it establishes a default schedule for the propagation job. Each propagation job is an Oracle Scheduler job. You can adjust the schedule of a propagation job using Oracle Scheduler.

The user who owns the source queue is the user who propagates messages. This user must have the necessary privileges to propagate messages.

See Also:

- Chapter 139, "DBMS_RULE_ADM"
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about propagations, the privileges required to propagate messages, propagation jobs, and propagation schedules

DROP_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure drops a propagation and deletes all messages for the destination queue in the source queue. This procedure also removes the schedule for propagation from the source queue to the destination queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM.DROP_PROPAGATION(
   propagation_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   drop_unused_rule_sets  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 117–4 DROP_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation you are dropping. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
drop_unused_rule_sets	If TRUE, then the procedure drops any rule sets, positive and negative, used by the specified propagation if these rule sets are not used by any other Oracle Streams client, which includes capture processes, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients. If this procedure drops a rule set, then this procedure also drops any rules in the rule set that are not in another rule set. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the rule sets used by the specified propagation, and the rule sets retain their rules.

Usage Notes

When you use this procedure to drop a propagation, information about rules created for the propagation using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package is removed from the data dictionary views for Oracle Streams rules. Information about such a rule is removed even if the rule is not in either rule set for the propagation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about Oracle Streams data dictionary views

The following are the data dictionary views for Oracle Streams rules:

- ALL_STREAMS_GLOBAL_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_GLOBAL_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_MESSAGE_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_MESSAGE_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_SCHEMA_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_SCHEMA_RULES
- ALL_STREAMS_TABLE_RULES
- DBA_STREAMS_TABLE_RULES

Note: When you drop a propagation, the propagation job used by the propagation is dropped automatically, if no other propagations are using the propagation job.

START_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure starts a propagation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM.START_PROPAGATION(
   propagation_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 117–5 START_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation you are starting. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.

Usage Notes

The propagation status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is ENABLED, then the propagation is started upon database instance startup.

STOP_PROPAGATION Procedure

This procedure stops a propagation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM.STOP_PROPAGATION(
   propagation_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   force             IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameter

Table 117–6 STOP_PROPAGATION Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation you are stopping. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
force	If TRUE, then the procedure stops the propagation and clears the statistics for the propagation. If FALSE, then the procedure stops the propagation without clearing the statistics for the propagation.

Usage Notes

The propagation status is persistently recorded. Hence, if the status is DISABLED or ABORTED, then the propagation is not started upon database instance startup.

118

DBMS_QOPATCH

The DBMS_QOPATCH package provides an interface to view the installed database patches.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_QOPATCH

Overview

The DBMS_QOPATCH package provides a PLSQL/SQL interface to view the installed database patches. The interface provides all the patch information available as part of the OPATCH LSINVENTORY -XML command. The package accesses the OUI patch inventory in real time to provide patch and meta-information.

Security Model

The DBMS_QOPATCH package is created as part of SYS schema and SYS is the only user who can execute these subprograms.

Operational Notes

- The package will work only if the database is `OPEN`.
- In an Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) environment, if the subprogram requires to fetch data from other RAC nodes it spawns a job in the other node(s) to get the data. In this case `JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES` needs to be `>0` for the package to fetch the data from other RAC nodes.
- If there is a delay in the job execution, the package returns `ORA-20008` error.

Error Messages

The following table lists the exceptions raised by the DBMS_QOPATCH package.

Table 118–1 DBMS_QOPATCH Error Messages

Error Code	Description
ORA-20001	Latest XML inventory is not loaded into table.
ORA-20002	Directory creation failed.
ORA-20003	Configuration of a job on a node failed.
ORA-20004	Job configuration failed as node is inactive.
ORA-20005	Job is not configured with given node, instance name.
ORA-20006	Number of RAC active instances and opatch jobs configured are not same.
ORA-20007	Job configuration failed as node or instance is not active.
ORA-20008	Timed out - job execution time is more than 120Secs.
ORA-20009	Job execution failed.
ORA-20010	Node is inactive and job cannot be executed.
ORA-20011	Job name is NULL and inventory cannot be loaded.
ORA-20012	JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES is set to zero and the inventory cannot be loaded.
ORA-20013	DBMS_QOPATCH ran mostly in non-install area.
ORA-20014	Database is not opened.
ORA-20015	Database opened as read-only.

Summary of DBMS_QOPATCH Subprograms

Table 118–2 DBMS_QOPATCH Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_OPATCH_BUGS Function on page 118-8	Provides a bugs list for a patch in XML format if the patch number is given. If patch is not given then it lists all the bugs installed in all the patches in XML format.
GET_OPATCH_COUNT Function on page 118-9	Provides the total number of installed patches in XML format
GET_OPATCH_DATA Function on page 118-10	Provides top level patch information for the patch (such as Patch ID, patch creation time) in the XML element
GET_OPATCH_FILES Function on page 118-11	Provides the list of files modified in the given patch number in XML format
GET_OPATCH_INSTALL_INFO Function on page 118-12	Returns the XML element containing the `ORACLE_HOME` details such as patch and inventory location
GET_OPATCH_LIST Function on page 118-13	Provides list of patches installed as an XML element from the XML inventory
GET_OPATCH_LSINVENTORY on page 118-14	Returns whole opatch inventory as XML instance document.
GET_OPATCH_OLAYS Function on page 118-15	Provides overlay patches for a given patch as XML element
GET_OPATCH_PREQS Function on page 118-16	Provides prerequisite patches for a given patch as XML element
GET_OPATCH_XSLT on page 118-17	Returns the style-sheet for the opatch XML inventory presentation
GET_PENDING_ACTIVITY Function on page 118-18	Returns the information related to SQL patches applied on a single instance by querying the binary inventory
GET_SQLPATCH_STATUS Procedure on page 118-19	Displays the SQL patch status by querying from SQL patch registry to produce complete patch level information
IS_PATCH_INSTALLED Function on page 118-20	Provides information (such as patchID, application date, and SQL patch information) on the installed patch as XML node by querying the XML inventory
PATCH_CONFLICT_DETECTION Function on page 118-21	Returns the conflicting patch for a given file, if it conflicts with an existing patch
SET_CURRENT_OPINST Procedure on page 118-22	Sets the node name and instance to get the inventory details specific to it in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) environment

GET_OPATCH_BUGS Function

This function provides a bugs list in a patch if the patch number is given. If a patch number is not given, it lists all the bugs in the specified XML format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_BUGS (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–3 GET_OPATCH_BUGS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

GET_OPATCH_COUNT Function

This function provides the total number of installed patches in XML format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_COUNT (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–4 GET_OPATCH_COUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

GET_OPATCH_DATA Function

This function provides top level patch information for the patch (such as Patch ID, patch creation time) in the XML element.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_DATA (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–5 GET_OPATCH_DATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

GET_OPATCH_FILES Function

This function provides the list of files modified in the given patch number in XML format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_FILES (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–6 GET_OPATCH_FILES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

GET_OPATCH_INSTALL_INFO Function

This function returns the XML element containing the ORACLE_HOME details such as patch and inventory location.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_INSTALL_INFO
 RETURNS XMLTYPE;
```

GET_OPATCH_LIST Function

This function provides list of patches installed as an XML element from the XML inventory.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_LIST
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

GET_OPATCH_LSINVENTORY

This function returns whole opatch inventory as XML instance document.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_LSINVENTORY
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

GET_OPATCH_OLAYS Function

This function provides overlay patches for a given patch as XML element.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_OLAYS (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–7 GET_OPATCH_OLAYS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

GET_OPATCH_PREQS Function

This function provides prerequisite patches for a given patch as XML element.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_PREQS (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–8 GET_OPATCH_PREQS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

GET_OPATCH_XSLT

This function returns the style-sheet for the opatch XML inventory presentation. You can use the return type of this subprogram to perform XMLTRANSFORM and the transformed result has the same appearance as opatch text output.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_OPATCH_XSLT
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

GET_PENDING_ACTIVITY Function

This function returns the information related to SQL patches applied on a single instance by querying the binary inventory. If this is Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) system, it will list the node names where the SQL patch is not applied.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_PENDING_ACTIVITY
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

GET_SQLPATCH_STATUS Procedure

This procedure displays the SQL patch status by querying from SQL patch registry to produce complete patch level information. If the patch number is given, it displays the information specific to the given SQL patch, otherwise information for all SQL patches.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.GET_SQLPATCH_STATUS (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 118–9 GET_SQLPATCH_STATUS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

IS_PATCH_INSTALLED Function

This function provides information (such as patchID, application date, and SQL patch information) on the installed patch as XML node by querying the XML inventory.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.IS_PATCH_INSTALLED (
   patchnum IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–10 IS_PATCH_INSTALLED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
patchnum	Patch number

PATCH_CONFLICT_DETECTION Function

This function returns the conflicting patch for a given file, if it conflicts with an existing patch.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.PATCH_CONFLICT_DETECTION (
   fileName  IN VARCHAR2);
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 118–11 PATCH_CONFLICT_DETECTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
fileName	File name

SET_CURRENT_OPINST Procedure

This procedure sets the node name and instance to get the inventory details specific to it in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) environment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_QOPATCH.SET_CURRENT_OPINST (
   node_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   inst_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 118–12 PATCH_CONFLICT_DETECTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
node_name	Name of node
inst_name	Name of instance

119

DBMS_RANDOM

The DBMS_RANDOM package provides a built-in random number generator. DBMS_RANDOM is not intended for cryptography.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RANDOM

Deprecated Subprograms

> **Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*:

- INITIALIZE Procedure
- RANDOM Function
- TERMINATE Procedure

Security Model

This package should be installed as SYS. By default, the package is initialized with the current user name, current time down to the second, and the current session. Oracle recommends that users who need to execute this package should be given EXECUTE privilege explicitly and should not rely on PUBLIC EXECUTE privilege.

Operational Notes

- DBMS_RANDOM.RANDOM produces integers in [-2^^31, 2^^31).
- DBMS_RANDOM.VALUE produces numbers in [0,1) with 38 digits of precision.

DBMS_RANDOM can be explicitly initialized, but does not need to be initialized before calling the random number generator. It will automatically initialize with the date, user ID, and process ID if no explicit initialization is performed.

If this package is seeded twice with the same seed, then accessed in the same way, it will produce the same results in both cases.

In some cases, such as when testing, you may want the sequence of random numbers to be the same on every run. In that case, you seed the generator with a constant value by calling one of the overloads of DBMS_RANDOM.SEED. To produce different output for every run, simply to omit the call to "Seed" and the system will choose a suitable seed for you.

Summary of DBMS_RANDOM Subprograms

Table 119–1 DBMS_RANDOM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
INITIALIZE Procedure on page 119-7	Initializes the package with a seed value
NORMAL Function on page 119-8	Returns random numbers in a normal distribution
RANDOM Function on page 119-9	Generates a random number
SEED Procedures on page 119-10	Resets the seed
STRING Function on page 119-11	Gets a random string
TERMINATE Procedure on page 119-12	Terminates package
VALUE Functions on page 119-13	Gets a random number, greater than or equal to 0 and less than 1, with 38 digits to the right of the decimal (38-digit precision), while the overloaded function gets a random Oracle number x, where x is greater than or equal to `low` and less than `high`

INITIALIZE Procedure

This procedure initializes the generator.

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated with Release 11gR1 and, although currently supported, it should not be used.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.INITIALIZE (
   val  IN  BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA restrict_references (initialize, WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 119–2 INITIALIZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
val	Seed number used to generate a random number

Usage Notes

This procedure is obsolete as it simply calls the SEED Procedures on page 119-10.

NORMAL Function

This function returns random numbers in a standard normal distribution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.NORMAL
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA restrict_references (normal, WNDS);
```

Return Values

Table 119–3 NORMAL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
number	Returns a random number

RANDOM Function

This procedure generates a random number.

> **Note:** This function is deprecated with Release 11gR1 and, although currently supported, it should not be used.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.RANDOM
   RETURN binary_integer;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA restrict_references (random, WNDS);
```

Return Values

Table 119–4 RANDOM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`binary_integer`	Returns a random integer greater or equal to -power(2,31) and less than power(2,31)

SEED Procedures

This procedure resets the seed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.SEED (
   val  IN  BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_RANDOM.SEED (
   val  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA restrict_references (seed, WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 119–5 SEED Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
val	Seed number or string used to generate a random number

Usage Notes

The seed can be a string up to length 2000.

STRING Function

This function gets a random string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.STRING
   opt  IN  CHAR,
   len  IN  NUMBER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA restrict_references (string, WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 119–6 STRING Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
opt	Specifies what the returning string looks like: ■ 'u', 'U' - returning string in uppercase alpha characters ■ 'l', 'L' - returning string in lowercase alpha characters ■ 'a', 'A' - returning string in mixed case alpha characters ■ 'x', 'X' - returning string in uppercase alpha-numeric characters ■ 'p', 'P' - returning string in any printable characters. Otherwise the returning string is in uppercase alpha characters.
len	Length of the returning string

Return Values

Table 119–7 STRING Function Return Values

Parameter	Description
VARCHAR2	Returns a VARCHAR2

TERMINATE Procedure

When you are finished with the package, call the `TERMINATE` procedure.

Note: This procedure is deprecated with Release 11gR1 and, although currently supported, it should not be used.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.TERMINATE;
```

VALUE Functions

The basic function gets a random number, greater than or equal to 0 and less than 1, with 38 digits to the right of the decimal (38-digit precision). Alternatively, you can get a random Oracle number x, where x is greater than or equal to `low` and less than `high`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RANDOM.VALUE
  RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_RANDOM.VALUE(
  low  IN  NUMBER,
  high IN  NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 119–8 VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`low`	Lowest number in a range from which to generate a random number. The number generated may be equal to `low`
`high`	Highest number below which to generate a random number. The number generated will be less than `high`

Return Values

Table 119–9 VALUE Function Return Values

Parameter	Description
`NUMBER`	Returns an Oracle Number

120

DBMS_RECTIFIER_DIFF

The `DBMS_RECTIFIER_DIFF` package provides an interface used to detect and resolve data inconsistencies between two replicated sites.

- Documentation of DBMS_RECTIFIER_DIFF

Documentation of DBMS_RECTIFIER_DIFF

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see DBMS_RECTIFIER_DIFF in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference*.

121

DBMS_REDACT

The DBMS_REDACT package provides an interface to Oracle Data Redaction, which enables you to mask (redact) data that is returned from queries issued by low-privileged users or an application.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide* regarding using Data Redaction to protect sensitive data

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_REDACT

Overview

Data Redaction provides a way to define masking policies for an application. Oracle Data Redaction provides functionality to mask (redact) data that is returned from user `SELECT` queries. The masking takes place in real time. The Data Redaction policy applies to the querying user, depending on this user's `SYS_CONTEXT` values. This redaction process does not require that the queried data be static or unchanging, or for the entire data set to be redacted at one time in an off-line manner. Oracle Database redacts only the data for the rows specified by the user's query, not the data for the entire column. The redaction takes place immediately before the data is returned to the querying user or application.

Security Model

If the querying user has the `EXEMPT REDACTION POLICY` system privilege, redaction will not be performed. If the user does not have the `EXEMPT REDACTION POLICY` system privilege, the policy expression will be evaluated in the current user's environment. If the policy expression evaluates to `TRUE`, then redaction will be performed, otherwise no redaction will be performed.

You need the `EXECUTE` privilege on the `DBMS_REDACT` package in order to execute its subprograms. Procedures in the interface are executed with privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_REDACT package uses the constants shown in the following tables:

Table 121–1 Values for function_type Parameter of DBMS_REDACT.ADD_POLICY

Constant	Value	Type	Description
NONE	0	BINARY_INTEGER	No redaction
FULL	1	BINARY_INTEGER	Redact to fixed values
PARTIAL	2	BINARY_INTEGER	Partial redaction, redact a portion of the column data
RANDOM	4	BINARY_INTEGER	Random redaction, each query results in a different random value
REGEXP	5	BINARY_INTEGER	Regular expression based redaction

Table 121–2 Values for action Parameter of DBMS_REDACT.ALTER_POLICY

Constant	Value	Type	Description
ADD_COLUMN	1	BINARY_INTEGER	Add a column to the redaction policy
DROP_COLUMN	2	BINARY_INTEGER	Drop a column from the redaction policy
MODIFY_EXPRESSION	3	BINARY_INTEGER	Modify the expression of a redaction policy (the expression evaluates to a BOOLEAN value: if TRUE then redaction is applied, otherwise not)
MODIFY_COLUMN	4	BINARY_INTEGER	Modify a column in the redaction policy to change the redaction function_type or the function_parameters
SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION	5	BINARY_INTEGER	Set a description for the redaction policy
SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION	6	BINARY_INTEGER	Set a description for the redaction performed on the column

Operating Procedures

The following table presents the relationship between the type of redaction function and its parameters, based on the datatype of the column being redacted. Examples of the various format strings are provided, showing how to perform some commonplace redaction for a string datatype (in this case, a Social Security Number (SSN)), a DATE datatype, and various examples of redaction for the number datatype.

Table 121–3 Data Redaction Function Types

function_type	function_parameters	Examples
DBMS_REDACT.NONE		
DBMS_REDACT.FULL		
DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL (for character types)	A comma-separated list, containing the following five fields (with no spaces after the commas delimiting the fields): ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMAT ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO See Table 121–4, " Format Descriptors with Component Field Names and Delimiters".	'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV-VV-VVVV,X,1,5' for masking the first 5 digits of SSN strings like 123-45-6789, adding dashes back to format it, resulting in strings like XXX-XX-6789 'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV VV VVVV,X,1,5' for masking the first 5 digits of SSN strings like 123-45-6789, adding spaces to format it, resulting in strings like XXX XX 6789
	REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT - the input format: V for value to be possibly redacted, F for formatting character to be ignored	The REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT field value VVVFVVFVVVV for matching SSN strings like 123-45-6789
	REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMAT - the output format: V for output of redaction. Any other character will be treated as a formatting character and output literally.	The REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMATfield value VVV-VV-VVVV can be used to redact SSN strings into XXX-XX-6789 (X comes from REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR field).
	REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR - the character used to redact the input	The value X for redacting SSN strings into XXX-XX-6789.
	REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM - specifies which V within the REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT from which to start the redaction (see explanation following the next entry, REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO)	The value 1 for redacting SSN strings starting at the first V of REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT of VVVFVVFVVVV into strings like XXX-XX-6789

Table 121–3 (Cont.) Data Redaction Function Types

function_type	function_parameters	Examples
	REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO - specifies which V within the REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT at which to end the redaction	The value 5 for redacting SSN strings up to and including the fifth V within REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT of VVVFVVFVVVV into strings like XXX-XX-6789. Note how the format character '-' (corresponding to the first F within REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT) is ignored as far as redaction is concerned, so the value here is 5 as opposed to 6.
	The REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM and REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO field values are specified as counts of the number of V characters in the REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT field, up to and including the intended position, starting from the leftmost V. This way, REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM and REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO are independent of the specific formatting of the data. For example, in the common use case of masking an SSN to show only the last four digits, data like 123456789 (with REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT of VVVVVVVVV) and data like 123-45-6789 (with REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT of VVVFVVFVVVV), would both use REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM of 1 and REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO of 5.	
DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL (for number types)	A comma-separated list, containing the following three fields (with no spaces after the commas delimiting the fields): ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO See Table 121–4, " Format Descriptors with Component Field Names and Delimiters".	'9,1,5' for redacting the first 5 digits of an SSN number 123456789 into 999996789; or '0,1,2' for redacting a number 1.23 to 0.03.

Table 121–3 (Cont.) Data Redaction Function Types

function_type	function_parameters	Examples
	REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR - the character used to redact the input, in the range between 0 and 9 REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM - the position, starting from 1, from which to start the redaction. The position does not include the decimal point if it is present. REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO - the position at which to end the redaction	
DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL (for datetime datatypes)	A list, containing the following five fields (concatenated so that there is no space between the fields): ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MONTH ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_DAY ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_YEAR ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_HOUR ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MINUTE ■ REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_SECOND See Table 121–4, " Format Descriptors with Component Field Names and Delimiters".	'm12DYHMS', which changes 01-May-01 01:01:01 to 01-Dec-01 01:01:01.

Table 121–3 (Cont.) Data Redaction Function Types

function_type	function_parameters	Examples
	REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MONTH: 'M' (no masking of month) or 'm#' (mask month to a specific month, if possible), where # (the month specified by its number) is between 1 and 12 REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_DAY: 'D' (no masking of date) or 'd#' (mask day to #, if possible), # between 1 and 31 REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_YEAR: 'Y' (no masking of year) or 'y#' (mask year to #, if possible), # between 1 and 9999 REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_HOUR: 'H' (no masking of hour) or 'h#' (mask hour to #, if possible), # between 0 and 23 REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MINUTE: 'M' (no masking of minute) or 'm#' (mask minute to #, if possible), # between 0 and 59 REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_SECOND: 'S' (no masking of second) or 's#' (mask second to #, if possible), # between 0 and 59	
DBMS_REDACT.RANDOM		

Table 121–4 Format Descriptors with Component Field Names and Delimiters

Datatype	Format Descriptor for Partial redaction
Character	REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT || ',' || REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMAT || ',' || REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR || ',' || REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM || ',' || REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO
Number	REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR || ',' || REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM || ',' || REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO
Datetime	REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MONTH || REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_DAY || REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_YEAR || REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_HOUR || REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MINUTE || REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_SECOND

Summary of DBMS_REDACT Subprograms

Table 121–5 DBMS_REDACT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_POLICY Procedure on page 121-11	Defines a Data Redaction policy for a table or view
ALTER_POLICY Procedure on page 121-16	Alters a Data Redaction policy for a table or view
DISABLE_POLICY Procedure on page 121-22	Disables a Data Redaction policy
DROP_POLICY Procedure on page 121-23	Drops a Data Redaction policy
ENABLE_POLICY Procedure on page 121-24	Enables a Data Redaction policy
UPDATE_FULL_ REDACTION_VALUES Procedure on page 121-25	Modifies the default displayed values for a Data Redaction policy for full redaction

ADD_POLICY Procedure

This procedure defines a Data Redaction policy for a table or view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDACT.ADD_POLICY (
   object_schema               IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_name                 IN    VARCHAR2,
   policy_name                 IN    VARCHAR2,
   column_name                 IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   function_type               IN    BINARY_INTEGER := DBMS_REDACT.FULL,
   function_parameters         IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   expression                  IN    VARCHAR2,
   enable                      IN    BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   regexp_pattern              IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   regexp_replace_string       IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   regexp_position             IN    BINARY_INTEGER := 1,
   regexp_occurrence           IN    BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
   regexp_match_parameter      IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   policy_description          IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   column_description          IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 121–6 ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema owning the table, current user if NULL
object_name	Name of table or view to which to add a Data Redaction policy
policy_name	Name of policy
column_name	[Optional] Name of one column to which the redaction policy applies. If you must redact more than one column, use the ALTER_POLICY Procedure to add the additional columns.
function_type	Type of redaction function to use. Possible values are: - DBMS_REDACT.NONE - DBMS_REDACT.FULL (default) - DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL - DBMS_REDACT.RANDOM - DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP, then the function_parameters parameter must be omitted completely, and the regexp_* parameters must be used to define the Data Redaction policy. See Table 121–1, " Values for function_type Parameter of DBMS_REDACT.ADD_POLICY" for an overview of the meanings of these values, and for some examples of their use.

Table 121–6 (Cont.) ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
function_parameters	Parameters to the redaction function. The possible values depend on the value of the function_type provided. If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP, then the function_parameters parameter must be omitted completely, and the regexp_* parameters must be used to define the Data Redaction policy. - DBMS_REDACT.NONE: Can be omitted entirely and defaults to NULL - DBMS_REDACT.FULL: Can be omitted entirely and defaults to NULL - Masking parameters for partial character masking. For character datatypes, a comma-separated list containing these fields: ■ Input format: 'V' for value to be possibly masked, 'F' for formatting character to be ignored ■ Output format: 'V' for output of masking, any other characters will be treated as formatting characters. ■ Mask character: a character that will be used to replace the actual values. Examples are '*' and 'x'. ■ Starting digit position: specifies the starting (character) position to begin replacing actual values with the masking character. The beginning of the string is position 1. Positions do not include formatting characters. ■ Ending digit position: specifies the ending (character) position to end masking. An example is 'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV-VV-VVVV,X,1,5' for masking the first 5 digits of SSN string 123-45-6789, and adding dashes back to format it like an SSN, resulting in XXX-XX-6789. For number datatypes, a comma-separated list containing these fields: ■ Mask character: this is a character between '0' to '9' that will be used to replace the actual values. ■ Starting digit position: specifies the starting (digit) position to begin replacing actual values with the masking character. The beginning of the string is position 1. Positions do not include the decimal point. ■ Ending digit position: this specifies the ending digit position to end masking. An example is '9,1,5' for masking the first 5 digits of a Social Security number number 123456789, resulting in 999996789.

Table 121–6 (Cont.) ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	For datetime datatypes, the format is a packed string (no spaces or commas) containing the following sequence of fields. Please note that each field can consist of one or more characters, and the field length depends on whether masking is required. The one-character fields are used to specify that no redaction of that component of the datetime value is to take place. The longer fields indicate a specific time or date to use as the redacted value of that component of the datetime value. ■ Month: `'M'` (no masking of month) or `'m#'` (mask month to a specific month, if possible), where `#` (the month specified by its number) is between `1` and `12` ■ Day: `'D'` (no masking of date) or `'d#'` (mask day to `#`, if possible), `#` between `1` and `31` ■ Year: `'Y'` (no masking of year) or `'y#'` (mask year to `#`, if possible), `#` between `1` and `9999` ■ Hour: `'H'` (no masking of hour) or `'h#'` (mask hour to `#`, if possible), `#` between `0` and `23` ■ Minute: `'M'` (no masking of minute) or `'m#'` (mask minute to `#`, if possible), `#` between `0` and `59` ■ Second: `'S'` (no masking of second) or `'s#'` (mask second to `#`, if possible), `#` between `0` and `59` An example is `'m12dyhs'`, which changes `02-May-13 12:30:23` to `01-Dec-01 01:01:01` For partial character and number-masking shortcuts, see *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide*.
`expression`	Boolean expression for the table or view, using either the `SYS_CONTEXT` function or `1=1`. Redaction takes place only if this policy expression evaluates to `TRUE`.
`enable`	Boolean value that determines whether the Data Redaction policy is enabled on creation. The default value is `TRUE`, which means that the policy is automatically enabled upon creation. If the `enable` parameter is set to `FALSE`, the policy takes effect only when it is subsequently enabled by calling the `DBMS_REDACT.ENABLE_POLICY` procedure.
`regexp_pattern`	Regular expression pattern up to 512 bytes. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`. Also, do not specify the `function_parameters` parameter when `function_type` is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information and examples on using regular expression patterns.
`regexp_replace_string`	Replacement string (up to 4000 characters in length) with up to 500 back-references to subexpressions in the form `\n`, where `n` is a number between 1 and 9. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`
`regexp_position`	Integer counting from 1, specifies the position where the search must begin. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`

Table 121–6 (Cont.) ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
regexp_occurrence	▪ Use 0 to replace all occurrences of the match ▪ Use positive integer *n* to replace the *n*-th occurence of the match. Use only if the function_type parameter is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP
regexp_match_parameter	Changes the default matching behavior, possible values are a combination of 'i', 'c', 'n', 'm', 'x' Use only if the function_type parameter is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information and examples on using regular expression match parameters.
policy_description	Description of redaction policy
column_description	Description of the column being redacted

Exceptions

- ORA-28060 - A Data Redaction policy already exists on this column.
- ORA-28061 - This object cannot have a Data Redaction policy defined on it.
- ORA-28062 - The policy expression is too long.
- ORA-28063 - The policy expression is empty.
- ORA-28064 - The type of redaction function is not valid.
- ORA-28066 - Invalid column *column*
- ORA-28069 - A Data Redaction policy already exists on this object.
- ORA-28073 - The column *column_name* has an unsupported datatype.
- ORA-28074 - The field *field_name* of the masking parameters is not valid

  The field can be any of the following:

  – REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMAT
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MONTH
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_DAY
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_YEAR
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_HOUR
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MINUTE
  – REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_SECOND

  See Table 121–3 and Table 121–4 for examples of the field contents and field ordering.

- ORA-28075 - The policy expression has unsupported functions
- ORA-28076 - An attribute was not specified for SYS_SESSION_ROLES
- ORA-28077 - The attribute specified (*attribute*) exceeds the maximum length
- ORA-28078 - A regular expression parameter is missing or invalid
- ORA-28082 - The parameter *parameter* is invalid (where the possible values are function_parameters, column_description , policy_name and policy_ description)
- ORA-28085 - The input and output lengths of the redaction do not match.

Usage Notes

See Operating Procedures for more information regarding function types and function parameters with related examples.

Example

Partial redaction policy:

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDACT.ADD_POLICY(
     object_schema        => 'hr',
     object_name          => 'employees',
     column_name          => 'employee_id',
     policy_name          => 'mask_emp_id_nums',
     function_type        => DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL,
     function_parameters  => '7,1,5',
     expression           => '1=1');
END;
```

Full redaction policy:

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDACT.ADD_POLICY(
     object_schema        => 'hr',
     object_name          => 'employees',
     column_name          => 'employee_id',
     policy_name          => 'mask_emp_ids',
     function_type        => DBMS_REDACT.FULL,
     expression           => 'SYS_CONTEXT(''SYS_SESSION_ROLES'',''CLERK'')
                                                                = ''FALSE''');
END;
```

ALTER_POLICY Procedure

This procedure alters an existing Data Redaction policy for a table or view in one or more of the following ways:

- By changing the policy expression
- By changing the type of redaction for a specified column
- By changing the parameters to the redaction function for a specified column
- By adding a column to the redaction policy (the redaction type and any parameters must be specified).
- By removing a column from the redaction policy

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDACT.ALTER_POLICY (
   object_schema                IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_name                  IN    VARCHAR2,
   policy_name                  IN    VARCHAR2,
   action                       IN    BINARY_INTEGER := DBMS_REDACT.ADD_COLUMN,
   column_name                  IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   function_type                IN    BINARY_INTEGER := DBMS_REDACT.FULL,
   function_parameters          IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   expression                   IN    VARCHAR2,
   regexp_pattern               IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   regexp_replace_string        IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   regexp_position              IN    BINARY_INTEGER := 1,
   regexp_occurrence            IN    BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
   regexp_match_parameter       IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   policy_description           IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   column_description           IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 121–7 ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema owning the table, current user if NULL
object_name	Name of table or view to which to alter a Data Redaction policy
policy_name	Name of policy limited to 30 bytes
action	Action to take. For more information see Table 121–2, " Values for action Parameter of DBMS_REDACT.ALTER_POLICY".
column_name	[Optional] Name of one column to which the redaction policy applies.

Table 121–7 (Cont.) ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
function_type	Type of redaction function to use. Possible values are: - DBMS_REDACT.NONE - DBMS_REDACT.FULL (default) - DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL - DBMS_REDACT.RANDOM - DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP, then the function_parameters parameter must be omitted completely, and the regexp_pattern, regexp_replace_string, regexp_position, regexp_occurrence, and regexp_match_parameter must be used to define the Data Redaction policy. See Table 121–1, " Values for function_type Parameter of DBMS_REDACT.ADD_POLICY" for an overview of the meanings of these values, and for some examples of their use.

Table 121–7 (Cont.) ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
function_parameters	Parameters to the redaction function. The possible values depend on the value of the function_type provided. If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP, then the function_parameters parameter must be omitted completely, and the regexp_pattern, regexp_replace_string, regexp_position, regexp_occurrence, and regexp_match_parameter must be used to define the Data Redaction policy. - If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.NONE, the function_parameters parameter can be omitted entirely and defaults to NULL. - If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.FULL, the function_parameters parameter can be omitted entirely and defaults to NULL. - If the function_type is DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL, the function_parameters parameter represents the masking parameters for partial masking. ■ Input format: 'V' for value to be possibly masked, 'F' for formatting character to be ignored ■ Output format: 'V' for output of masking, any other characters will be treated as formatting characters. ■ Mask character: a character that will be used to replace the actual values. Examples are '*' and 'x'. ■ Starting digit position: specifies the starting (character) position to begin replacing actual values with the masking character. The beginning of the string is position 1. Positions do not include formatting characters. ■ Ending digit position: specifies the ending (character) position to end masking. An example is 'VVVFVVFVVVV,VVV-VV-VVVV,X,1,5' for masking the first 5 digits of SSN string 123-45-6789, and adding dashes back to format it like an SSN, resulting in XXX-XX-6789. For number datatypes, a comma-separated list containing these fields: ■ Mask character: this is a character between '0' to '9' that will be used to replace the actual values. ■ Starting digit position: specifies the starting (digit) position to begin replacing actual values with the masking character. The beginning of the string is position 1. Positions do not include the decimal point. ■ Ending digit position: this specifies the ending digit position to end masking. An example is '9,1,5' for masking the first 5 digits of a Social Security number number 123456789, resulting in 999996789.

Table 121–7 (Cont.) ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	For datetime datatypes, the format is a packed string (no spaces or commas) containing the following sequence of fields. Please note that each field can consist of one or more characters, and the field length depends on whether masking is required. The one-character fields are used to specify that no redaction of that component of the datetime value is to take place. The longer fields indicate a specific time or date to use as the redacted value of that component of the datetime value. ■ Month: `'M'` (no masking of month) or `'m#'` (mask month to a specific month, if possible), where `#` (the month specified by its number) is between `1` and `12` ■ Day: `'D'` (no masking of date) or `'d#'` (mask day to `#`, if possible), `#` between `1` and `31` ■ Year: `'Y'` (no masking of year) or `'y#'` (mask year to `#`, if possible), `#` between `1` and `9999` ■ Hour: `'H'` (no masking of hour) or `'h#'` (mask hour to `#`, if possible), `#` between `0` and `23` ■ Minute: `'M'` (no masking of minute) or `'m#'` (mask minute to `#`, if possible), `#` between `0` and `59` ■ Second: `'S'` (no masking of second) or `'s#'` (mask second to `#`, if possible), `#` between `0` and `59` An example is `'m12DYHMS'`, which changes `01-May-01 01:01:01` to `01-Dec-01 01:01:01` For partial character and number-masking shortcuts, see *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide*.
`expression`	Boolean expression for the table or view, using either the `SYS_CONTEXT` function or `1=1`. Redaction takes place only if this policy expression evaluates to `TRUE`.
`regexp_pattern`	Regular expression pattern up to 512 bytes. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`. Also, do not specify the `function_parameters` parameter when `function_type` is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information and examples on using regular expression patterns
`regexp_replace_string`	Replacement string (up to 4000 characters in length) with up to 500 back-references to subexpressions in the form `\n`, where `n` is a number between 1 and 9. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`
`regexp_position`	Integer counting from 1, specifies the position where the search must begin. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`
`regexp_occurrence`	■ Use 0 to replace all occurrences of the match ■ Use positive integer *n* to replace the *n*-th occurence of the match. Use only if the `function_type` parameter is `DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP`

Table 121–7 (Cont.) ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
regexp_match_parameter	Changes the default matching behavior, possible values are a combination of 'i', 'c', 'n', 'm', 'x' Use only if the function_type parameter is DBMS_REDACT.REGEXP See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information and examples on using regular expression match parameters.
policy_description	Description of redaction policy
column_description	Description of the column being redacted

Exceptions

- ORA-28062 - The policy expression is too long.
- ORA-28063 - The policy expression is empty.
- ORA-28064 - The type of redaction function is not valid.
- ORA-28066 - Invalid column *column*
- ORA-28067 - Missing or invalid column name
- ORA-28068 - The object *object* does not have a Data Redaction policy.
- ORA-28070 - The column *column* does not have a Data Redaction policy.
- ORA-28071 - The action is not valid.
- ORA-28072 - The specified policy name is incorrect.
- ORA-28073 - The column *column_name* has an unsupported datatype.
- ORA-28074 - The field *field_name* of the masking parameters is not valid

  The field can be any of the following:

  - REDACT_PARTIAL_INPUT_FORMAT
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_OUTPUT_FORMAT
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKCHAR
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKFROM
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_MASKTO
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MONTH
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_DAY
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_YEAR
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_HOUR
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_MINUTE
  - REDACT_PARTIAL_DATE_SECOND

  See Table 121–3 and Table 121–4 for examples of the field contents and field ordering.
- ORA-28075 - The policy expression has unsupported functions.
- ORA-28076 - An attribute was not specified for SYS_SESSION_ROLES.

- ORA-28077 - The attribute specified (*attribute*) exceeds the maximum length.
- ORA-28078 - A regular expression parameter is missing or invalid.
- ORA-28082 - The parameter *parameter* is invalid (where the possible values are function_parameters, column_description, policy_name and policy_description)
- ORA-28085 - The input and output lengths of the redaction do not match.

Usage Notes

See Operating Procedures for more information regarding Function Types and Function Parameters with related examples.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDACT.ALTER_POLICY(
     object_schema          => 'hr',
     object_name            => 'employees',
     policy_name            => 'mask_emp_id_nums',
     action                 => DBMS_REDACT.ADD_COLUMN);
END;
```

DISABLE_POLICY Procedure

This procedure disables a Data Redaction policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDACT.DISABLE_POLICY (
   object_schema                IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_name                  IN    VARCHAR2,
   policy_name                  IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 121–8 DISABLE_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_schema`	Schema owning the table or view, current user if `NULL`
`object_name`	Name of table or view for which to disable a Data Redaction policy
`policy_name`	Name of policy to be disabled

Exceptions

- `ORA-28068` - The object *`object`* does not have a Data Redaction policy.
- `ORA-28072` - The specified policy name is incorrect.
- `ORA-28080` - The policy was already disabled.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDACT.DISABLE_POLICY (
     object_schema    => 'hr',
     object_name      => 'employees',
     policy_name      => 'mask_emp_ids');
END;
```

DROP_POLICY Procedure

This procedure drops a Data Redaction policy by removing a masking policy from the table or view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDACT.DROP_POLICY (
   object_schema               IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_name                 IN    VARCHAR2,
   policy_name                 IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 121–9 DROP_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema owning the table or view, current user if NULL
object_name	Name of table or view from which to drop a Data Redaction policy
policy_name	Name of policy to be dropped

Exceptions

- ORA-28068 - The object *object* does not have a Data Redaction policy.
- ORA-28072 - The specified policy name is incorrect.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDACT.DROP_POLICY (
      object_schema    =>  'hr',
      object_name      =>  'employees',
      policy_name      =>  'mask_emp_ids');
END;
```

ENABLE_POLICY Procedure

This procedure re-enables a Data Redaction policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDACT.ENABLE_POLICY (
   object_schema                IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   object_name                  IN    VARCHAR2,
   policy_name                  IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 121–10 ENABLE_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_schema`	Schema owning the table or view, current user if `NULL`
`object_name`	Name of table or view to which to enable a Data Redaction policy
`policy_name`	Name of policy to be enabled

Exceptions

- `ORA-28068` - The object *`object`* does not have a Data Redaction policy.
- `ORA-28071` - The action is not valid.
- `ORA-28072` - The specified policy name is incorrect.
- `ORA-28079` - The policy was already enabled.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDACT.ENABLE_POLICY (
      object_schema    =>  'hr',
      object_name      =>  'employees',
      policy_name      =>  'mask_emp_ids');
END;
```

UPDATE_FULL_REDACTION_VALUES Procedure

This procedure modifies the default displayed values for a Data Redaction policy for full redaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDACT.UPDATE_FULL_REDACTION_VALUES (
   number_val       IN NUMBER                    :=  NULL,
   binfloat_val     IN BINARY_FLOAT              :=  NULL,
   bindouble_val    IN BINARY_DOUBLE             :=  NULL,
   char_val         IN CHAR                      :=  NULL,
   varchar_val      IN VARCHAR2                  :=  NULL,
   nchar_val        IN NCHAR                     :=  NULL,
   nvarchar_val     IN NVARCHAR2                 :=  NULL,
   date_val         IN DATE                      :=  NULL,
   ts_val           IN TIMESTAMP                 :=  NULL,
   tswtz_val        IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE  :=  NULL,
   blob_val         IN BLOB                      :=  NULL,
   clob_val         IN CLOB                      :=  NULL,
   nclob_val        IN NCLOB                    NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 121–11 UPDATE_FULL_REDACTION_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
number_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the NUMBER datatype
binfloat_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the BINARY_FLOAT datatype
bindouble_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the BINARY_DOUBLE datatype
char_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the CHAR datatype
varchar_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the VARCHAR2 datatype
nchar_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the NCHAR datatype
nvarchar_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the NVARCHAR2 datatype
date	Modifies the default value for columns of the DATE datatype
ts_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the TIMESTAMP datatype
tswtz_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE datatype
blob_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the BLOB datatype
clob_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the CLOB datatype
nclob_val	Modifies the default value for columns of the NCLOB datatype

Exceptions

ORA-28082 - The parameter *parameter* is invalid (where the possible values are char_val, nchar_val, varchar_val and nvarchar_val)

122

DBMS_REDEFINITION

The `DBMS_REDEFINITION` package provides an interface to perform an online redefinition of tables.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about online redefinition of tables

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_REDEFINITION

Overview

To achieve online redefinition, incrementally maintainable local materialized views are used. These logs keep track of the changes to the master tables and are used by the materialized views during refresh synchronization.

Security Model

Subprograms in the DBMS_REDEFINTION package are run with invokers' rights (with the privileges of the current user). There are two modes:

- In USER mode, the user who has the CREATE TABLE and CREATE MVIEW privileges may redefine a table residing in his own schema.
- In FULL mode, the user who has the ANY privilege may redefine tables in any schema.

Constants

The DBMS_REDEFINITION package uses the constants shown in Table 122–1, " DBMS_REDEFINITION Constants":

Table 122–1 DBMS_REDEFINITION Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
CONS_CONSTRAINT	PLS_INTEGER	3	Used to specify that dependent object type is a constraint
CONS_INDEX	PLS_INTEGER	2	Used to specify that dependent object type is a index
CONS_MVLOG	PLS_INTEGER	10	Used to (un)register a materialized view log, as a dependent object of the table, through the REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedureand the UNREGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure.
CONS_ORIG_PARAMS	PLS_INTEGER	1	Used to specify that indexes should be cloned with their original storage parameters
CONS_TRIGGER	PLS_INTEGER	4	Used to specify that dependent object type is a trigger
CONS_USE_PK	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Used to indicate that the redefinition should be done using primary keys or pseudo-primary keys (unique keys with all component columns having not-NULL constraints)
CONS_USE_ROWID	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Used to indicate that the redefinition should be done using rowids
CONS_VPD_AUTO	BINARY_INTEGER	2	Used to indicate to copy VPD policies automatically
CONS_VPD_MANUAL	BINARY_INTEGER	4	Used to indicate to copy VPD policies manually
CONS_VPD_NONE	BINARY_INTEGER	1	Used to indicate that there are no VPD policies on the original table

Operational Notes

- CONS_USE_PK and CONS_USE_ROWID are constants used as input to the "options_flag" parameter in both the START_REDEF_TABLE Procedure and CAN_REDEF_TABLE Procedure. CONS_USE_ROWID is used to indicate that the redefinition should be done using rowids while CONS_USE_PK implies that the redefinition should be done using primary keys or pseudo-primary keys (which are unique keys with all component columns having NOT NULL constraints).
- CONS_INDEX, CONS_MVLOG,CONS_TRIGGER and CONS_CONSTRAINT are used to specify the type of the dependent object being (un)registered in REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure and UNREGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure (parameter "dep_type").

  CONS_INDEX ==> dependent object is of type INDEX

  CONS_TRIGGER ==> dependent object is of type TRIGGER

  CONS_CONSTRAINT==> dependent object type is of type CONSTRAINT

  CONS_MVLOG ==> dependent object is of type MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG
- CONS_ORIG_PARAMS as used as input to the "copy_indexes" parameter in COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS Procedure. Using this parameter implies that the indexes on the original table be copied onto the interim table using the same storage parameters as that of the original index.

Rules and Limits

For information about various rules and limits that apply to implementation of this package, see the *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

Summary of DBMS_REDEFINITION Subprograms

Table 122–2 DBMS_REDEFINITION Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ABORT_REDEF_TABLE Procedure on page 122-9	Cleans up errors that occur during the redefinition process and removes all temporary objects created by the reorganization process
CAN_REDEF_TABLE Procedure on page 122-10	Determines if a given table can be redefined online
COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS Procedure on page 122-11	Copies the dependent objects of the original table onto the interim table
FINISH_REDEF_TABLE Procedure on page 122-13	Completes the redefinition process
REDEF_TABLE Procedure on page 122-14	Provides a single push-button interface that integrates several redefinition steps
REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure on page 122-16	Registers a dependent object (index, trigger, constraint or materialized view log) on the table being redefined and the corresponding dependent object on the interim table
START_REDEF_TABLE Procedure on page 122-17	Initiates the redefinition process
SYNC_INTERIM_TABLE Procedure on page 122-19	Keeps the interim table synchronized with the original table
UNREGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure on page 122-20	Unregisters a dependent object (index, trigger, constraint or materialized view log) on the table being redefined and the corresponding dependent object on the interim table

ABORT_REDEF_TABLE Procedure

This procedure cleans up errors that occur during the redefinition process. This procedure can also be used to terminate the redefinition process any time after the START_REDEF_TABLE Procedure has been called and before the FINISH_REDEF_TABLE Procedure is called. This process will remove the temporary objects that are created by the redefinition process such as materialized view logs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.ABORT_REDEF_TABLE (
   uname                  IN  VARCHAR2,
   orig_table             IN  VARCHAR2,
   int_table              IN  VARCHAR2,
   part_name              IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 122–3 ABORT_REDEF_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uname	Schema name of the tables
orig_table	Name of the table to be redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table. Can take a comma-delimited list of interim table names.
part_name	Name of the partition being redefined. If redefining only a single partition of a table, specify the partition name in this parameter. NULL implies the entire table is being redefined. Can take a comma-delimited list of partition names to be redefined.

CAN_REDEF_TABLE Procedure

This procedure determines if a given table can be redefined online. This is the first step of the online redefinition process. If the table is not a candidate for online redefinition, an error message is raised.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.CAN_REDEF_TABLE (
   uname         IN  VARCHAR2,
   tname        IN  VARCHAR2,
   options_flag  IN  PLS_INTEGER := 1,
   part_name     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 122–4 CAN_REDEF_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uname	Schema name of the table
tname	Name of the table to be re-organized
options_flag	Indicates the type of redefinition method to use. ■ If dbms_redefinition.cons_use_pk, the redefinition is done using primary keys or pseudo-primary keys (unique keys with all component columns having NOT NULL constraints). The default method of redefinition is using primary keys. ■ If dbms_redefinition.cons_use_rowid, the redefinition is done using rowids.
part_name	Name of the partition being redefined. If redefining only a single partition of a table, specify the partition name in this parameter. NULL implies the entire table is being redefined.

Exceptions

If the table is not a candidate for online redefinition, an error message is raised.

COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS Procedure

This procedure clones the dependent objects of the table being redefined onto the interim table and registers the dependent objects. This procedure does not clone the already registered dependent objects.

This subprogram is used to clone the dependent objects like grants, triggers, constraints and privileges from the table being redefined to the interim table (which represents the post-redefinition table).

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS(
   uname                    IN  VARCHAR2,
   orig_table               IN  VARCHAR2,
   int_table                IN  VARCHAR2,
   copy_indexes             IN  PLS_INTEGER := 1,
   copy_triggers            IN  BOOLEAN     := TRUE,
   copy_constraints         IN  BOOLEAN     := TRUE,
   copy_privileges          IN  BOOLEAN     := TRUE,
   ignore_errors            IN  BOOLEAN     := FALSE,
   num_errors               OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   copy_statistics          IN  BOOLEAN     := FALSE,
   copy_mvlog               IN  BOOLEAN     := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 122–5 COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uname	Schema name of the tables
orig_table	Name of the table being redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table
copy_indexes	Flag indicating whether to copy the indexes ■ 0 - do not copy any index ■ dbms_redefinition.cons_orig_params – copy the indexes using the physical parameters of the source indexes
copy_triggers	TRUE = clone triggers, FALSE = do nothing
copy_constraints	TRUE = clone constraints, FALSE = do nothing. If compatibility setting is 10.2 or higher, then clone CHECK and NOT NULL constraints
copy_privileges	TRUE = clone privileges, FALSE = do nothing
ignore_errors	TRUE = if an error occurs while cloning a particular dependent object, then skip that object and continue cloning other dependent objects. FALSE = that the cloning process should stop upon encountering an error.
num_errors	Number of errors that occurred while cloning dependent objects
copy_statistics	TRUE = copy statistics, FALSE = do nothing
copy_mvlog	TRUE = copy materialized view log, FALSE = do nothing

Usage Notes

- The user must check the column `num_errors` before proceeding to ensure that no errors occurred during the cloning of the objects.
- In case of an error, the user should fix the cause of the error and call the COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS Procedure again to clone the dependent object. Alternatively the user can manually clone the dependent object and then register the manually cloned dependent object using the REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure.
- All cloned referential constraints involving the interim tables will be created disabled (they will be automatically enabled after the redefinition) and all triggers on interim tables will not fire till the redefinition is completed. After the redefinition is complete, the cloned objects will be renamed to the corresponding pre-redefinition names of the objects (from which they were cloned from).
- It is the user's responsibility that the cloned dependent objects are unaffected by the redefinition. All the triggers will be cloned and it is the user's responsibility that the cloned triggers are unaffected by the redefinition.

FINISH_REDEF_TABLE Procedure

This procedure completes the redefinition process. Before this step, you can create new indexes, triggers, grants, and constraints on the interim table. The referential constraints involving the interim table must be disabled. After completing this step, the original table is redefined with the attributes and data of the interim table. The original table is locked briefly during this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.FINISH_REDEF_TABLE (
   uname                   IN   VARCHAR2,
   orig_table              IN   VARCHAR2,
   int_table               IN   VARCHAR2,
   part_name               IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   dml_lock_timeout        IN   PLS_INTEGER := NULL,
   continue_after_errors   IN   BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 122–6 FINISH_REDEF_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
uname	Schema name of the tables
orig_table	Name of the table to be redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table. Can take a comma-delimited list of interim table names.
part_name	Name of the partition being redefined. If redefining only a single partition of a table, specify the partition name in this parameter. NULL implies the entire table is being redefined. Can take a comma-delimited list of partition names to be redefined.
dml_lock_timeout	Specifies the number of seconds the procedure waits for its required locks before failing. The permissible range of values for timeout is 0 to 1,000,000. The default is NULL (wait mode).
continue_after_errors	When redefining multiple partitions allows operation execution to continue on the next partition (applies only to batched partition redefinition)

Examples

Wait up to 600 seconds for required locks on SH.SALES:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_REDEFINITION.FINISH_REDEF_TABLE (
  'SH', 'SALES', 'INT_SALES', 600);
```

REDEF_TABLE Procedure

This procedure provides a single interface that integrates several redefinition steps including the CAN_REDEF_TABLE Procedure, the START_REDEF_TABLE Procedure, the COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS Procedure and the FINISH_REDEF_TABLE Procedure. This procedure can change data storage properties including tablespaces (for table, partition, subpartition, index, LOB column), compress type (for table, partition, subpartition, index, LOB column) and STORE_AS clause for the LOB column.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.REDEF_TABLE (
   uname                        IN  VARCHAR2,
   tname                        IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_compression_type       IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   table_part_tablespace        IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   index_key_compression_type   IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   index_tablespace             IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   lob_compression_type         IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   lob_tablespace               IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   lob_store_as                 IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 122–7 REDEF_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uname	Schema name of the table
tname	Name of the table to be redefined
table_compression_type	Text string of the table compression clause. NULL means there is no change.
table_part_tablespace	Tablespace name for the entire table or partitions. NULL means there is no change.
index_key_compression_type	Text string of the compression clause for all indexes on the table. NULL means there is no change.
index_tablespace	Tablespace name for all indexes on the table. NULL means there is no change.
lob_compression_type	Text string of the compression clause for all LOBs in the entire table. NULL means there is no change.
lob_tablespace	Tablespace name for all LOBs in the table. NULL means there is no change.
lob_storage_as	Specifies LOB store as 'SECUREFILE' or 'BASICFILE'. NULL means there is no change.

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_REDEFINITION.REDEF_TABLE(
     uname                        => 'TABOWNER2',
     tname                        => 'EMP2',
     table_compression_type       => 'ROW STORE COMPRESS ADVANCED',
     table_part_tablespace        => 'NEWTBS',
     index_key_compression_type   => 'COMPRESS 1',
     index_tablespace             => 'NEWIDXTBS',
```

```
      lob_compression_type         => 'COMPRESS HIGH',
      lob_tablespace               => 'SLOBTBS',
      lob_store_as                 => 'SECUREFILE');
END;
```

See Also: *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* regarding "Performing Online Redefinition with the `REDEF_TABLE` Procedure"

REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure registers a dependent object (index, trigger, constraint or materialized view log) on the table being redefined and the corresponding dependent object on the interim table.

This can be used to have the same object on each table but with different attributes. For example: for an index, the storage and tablespace attributes could be different but the columns indexed remain the same

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT(
   uname                  IN    VARCHAR2,
   orig_table             IN    VARCHAR2,
   int_table              IN    VARCHAR2,
   dep_type               IN    PLS_INTEGER,
   dep_owner              IN    VARCHAR2,
   dep_orig_name          IN    VARCHAR2,
   dep_int_name           IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 122–8 REGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
uname	Schema name of the tables
orig_table	Name of the table to be redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table
dep_type	Type of the dependent object (see Constants on page 122-5 and Operational Notes on page 122-6)
dep_owner	Owner of the dependent object
dep_orig_name	Name of the original dependent object
dep_int_name	Name of the interim dependent object

Usage Notes

- Attempting to register an already registered object will raise an error.
- Registering a dependent object will automatically remove that object from DBA_REDEFINITION_ERRORS if an entry exists for that object.

START_REDEF_TABLE Procedure

Prior to calling this procedure, you must manually create an empty interim table (in the same schema as the table to be redefined) with the desired attributes of the post-redefinition table, and then call this procedure to initiate the redefinition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.START_REDEF_TABLE (
   uname                   IN  VARCHAR2,
   orig_table              IN  VARCHAR2,
   int_table               IN  VARCHAR2,
   col_mapping             IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   options_flag            IN  BINARY_INTEGER := 1,
   orderby_cols            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   part_name               IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   continue_after_errors   IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE
   copy_vpd_opt            IN  BINARY_INTEGER := CONS_VPD_NONE);
```

Parameters

Table 122–9 START_REDEF_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uname	Schema name of the tables
orig_table	Name of the table to be redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table. Can take a comma-delimited list of interim table names.
col_mapping	Mapping information from the columns in the original table to the columns in the interim table. (This is similar to the column list on the SELECT clause of a query.) If NULL, all the columns in the original table are selected and have the same name after redefinition.
options_flag	Indicates the type of redefinition method to use: ■ If dbms_redefinition.cons_use_pk, the redefinition is done using primary keys or pseudo-primary keys (unique keys with all component columns having NOT NULL constraints). The default method of redefinition is using primary keys. ■ If dbms_redefinition.cons_use_rowid, the redefinition is done using rowids.
orderby_cols	This optional parameter accepts the list of columns (along with the optional keyword(s) ascending/descending) with which to order by the rows during the initial instantiation of the interim table (the order by is only done for the initial instantiation and not for subsequent synchronizations)
part_name	Name of the partition being redefined. If redefining only a single partition of a table, specify the partition name in this parameter. NULL implies the entire table is being redefined. Can take a comma-delimited list of partition names to be redefined.
continue_after_errors	When redefining multiple partitions allows operation execution to continue on the next partition (applies only to batched partition redefinition)
copy_vpd_opt	Specifies how VPD policies are handled in online redefinition

Examples

Start redefinition of three partitions (sal03q1,sal03q2,sal03q3) in table 'STEVE.salestable' using three interim tables of int_salestable1, int_salestable2 and int_salestable3, respectively. The operation will continue on sal03q3 even if it fails on sal03q1.

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.START_REDEF_TABLE(
   uname                 => 'STEVE',
   orig_table            => 'salestable',
   int_table             => 'int_salestable1, int_salestable2, int_salestable3',
   col_mapping           => NULL,
   options_flag          => DBMS_REDEFINITION.CONS_USE_ROWID,
   part_name             => 'sal03q1,sal03q2,sal03q3',
   continue_after_errors => TRUE);
```

Specify to copy VPD policies automatically:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_REDEFINITION.START_REDEF_TABLE (
  uname                  => 'SCOTT',
  orig_table             => 'T',
  int_table              => 'INT_T',
  copy_vpd_opt           => DBMS_REDEFINITION.CONS_VPD_AUTO);
```

SYNC_INTERIM_TABLE Procedure

This procedure keeps the interim table synchronized with the original table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.SYNC_INTERIM_TABLE (
   uname                  IN  VARCHAR2,
   orig_table             IN  VARCHAR2,
   int_table              IN  VARCHAR2,
   part_name              IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   continue_after_errors  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 122–10 SYNC_INTERIM_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uname	Schema name of the table
orig_table	Name of the table to be redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table. Can take a comma-delimited list of interim table names.
part_name	Name of the partition being redefined. If redefining only a single partition of a table, specify the partition name in this parameter. NULL implies the entire table is being redefined. Can take a comma-delimited list of partition names to be redefined.
continue_after_errors	When redefining multiple partitions allows operation execution to continue on the next partition (applies only to batched partition redefinition)

Usage Notes

- This step is useful in minimizing the amount of synchronization needed to be done by the FINISH_REDEF_TABLE Procedure before completing the online redefinition.
- This procedure can be called between long running operations (such as CREATE INDEX) on the interim table to sync it up with the data in the original table and speed up subsequent operations.

UNREGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure unregisters a dependent object (index, trigger, constraint or materialized view log) on the table being redefined and the corresponding dependent object on the interim table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.UNREGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT(
   uname             IN VARCHAR2,
   orig_table        IN VARCHAR2,
   int_table         IN VARCHAR2,
   dep_type          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   dep_owner         IN VARCHAR2,
   dep_orig_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   dep_int_name      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 122–11 UNREGISTER_DEPENDENT_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
uname	Schema name of the tables
orig_table	Name of the table to be redefined
int_table	Name of the interim table
dep_type	Type of the dependent object
dep_owner	Owner of the dependent object
dep_orig_name	Name of the original dependent object
dep_int_name	Name of the interim dependent object

123

DBMS_REFRESH

The DBMS_REFRESH package enables you to create groups of materialized views that can be refreshed together to a transactionally consistent point in time.

- Documentation of DBMS_REFRESH

Documentation of DBMS_REFRESH

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_REFRESH` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference.*

124

DBMS_REPAIR

The DBMS_REPAIR package contains data corruption repair procedures that enable you to detect and repair corrupt blocks in tables and indexes. You can address corruptions where possible and continue to use objects while you attempt to rebuild or repair them.

> **See Also:** For detailed information about using the DBMS_REPAIR package, see *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide.*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_REPAIR

Overview

Note: The DBMS_REPAIR package is intended for use by database administrators only. It is not intended for use by application developers.

Security Model

The package is owned by `SYS`. Execution privilege is not granted to other users.

Constants

The DBMS_REPAIR package defines several enumerated constants that should be used for specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name. For example, DBMS_REPAIR.TABLE_OBJECT.

Table 124–1 lists the parameters and the enumerated constants.

Table 124–1 DBMS_REPAIR Parameters with Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Option	Type	Description
object_type	■ TABLE_OBJECT ■ INDEX_OBJECT ■ CLUSTER_OBJECT	BINARY_INTEGER	-
action	■ CREATE_ACTION ■ DROP_ACTION ■ PURGE_ACTION	BINARY_INTEGER	-
table_type	■ REPAIR_TABLE ■ ORPHAN_TABLE	BINARY_INTEGER	-
flags	■ SKIP_FLAG ■ NOSKIP_FLAG	BINARY_INTEGER	-
object_id	■ ALL_INDEX_ID := 0	BINARY_INTEGER	Clean up all objects that qualify
wait_for_lock	■ LOCK_WAIT := 1 ■ LOCK_NOWAIT := 0	BINARY_INTEGER	Specifies whether to try getting DML locks on underlying table [[sub]partition] object

Note: The default table_name will be REPAIR_TABLE when table_type is REPAIR_TABLE, and will be ORPHAN_KEY_TABLE when table_type is ORPHAN_TABLE.

Operating Notes

The procedure to create the ORPHAN_KEYS_TABLE is similar to the one used to create the REPAIR_TABLE.

```
CONNECT / AS SYSDBA;
EXEC DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES('ORPHAN_KEYS_TABLE', DBMS_REPAIR.ORPHAN_TABLE,
                              DBMS_REPAIR.CREATE_ACTION);
EXEC DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES('REPAIR_TABLE', DBMS_REPAIR.REPAIR_TABLE,
                              DBMS_REPAIR.CREATE_ACTION);
DESCRIBE ORPHAN_KEYS_TABLE;
DESCRIBE REPAIR_TABLE;
SELECT * FROM ORPHAN_KEYS_TABLE;
SELECT * FROM REPAIR_TABLE;
```

The DBA would create the repair and orphan keys tables once. Subsequent executions of the CHECK_OBJECT Procedure would add rows into the appropriate table indicating the types of errors found.

The name of the repair and orphan keys tables can be chosen by the user, with the following restriction: the name of the repair table must begin with the 'REPAIR_' prefix, and the name of the orphan keys table must begin with the 'ORPHAN_' prefix. The following code is also legal:

```
CONNECT / AS SYSDBA;
EXEC DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES('ORPHAN_FOOBAR', DBMS_REPAIR.ORPHAN_TABLE,
                              DBMS_REPAIR.CREATE_ACTION);
EXEC DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES('REPAIR_ABCD', DBMS_REPAIR.REPAIR_TABLE,
                              DBMS_REPAIR.CREATE_ACTION);
DESCRIBE ORPHAN_FOOBAR;
DESCRIBE REPAIR_ABCD;
SELECT * FROM ORPHAN_FOOBAR;
SELECT * FROM REPAIR_ABCD;
```

When invoking the CHECK_OBJECT Procedure the name of the repair and orphan keys tables that were created should be specified correctly, especially if the default values were not used in the ADMIN_TABLES Procedure or CREATE_ACTION.

Other actions in the ADMIN_TABLES Procedure can be used to purge/delete the REPAIR_TABLE and the ORPHAN_KEYS_TABLE.

Exceptions

Table 124–2 DBMS_REPAIR Exceptions

Exception	Description	Action
942	Reported by DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES during a DROP_ACTION when the specified table doesn't exist.	-
955	Reported by DBMS_REPAIR. CREATE_ACTION when the specified table already exists.	-
24120	An invalid parameter was passed to the specified DBMS_REPAIR procedure.	Specify a valid parameter value or use the parameter's default.
24122	An incorrect block range was specified.	Specify correct values for the BLOCK_START and BLOCK_END parameters.
24123	An attempt was made to use the specified feature, but the feature is not yet implemented.	Do not attempt to use the feature.
24124	An invalid ACTION parameter was specified.	Specify CREATE_ACTION, PURGE_ACTION or DROP_ACTION for the ACTION parameter.
24125	An attempt was made to fix corrupt blocks on an object that has been dropped or truncated since DBMS_REPAIR.CHECK_OBJECT was run.	Use DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES to purge the repair table and run DBMS_REPAIR.CHECK_OBJECT to determine whether there are any corrupt blocks to be fixed.
24127	TABLESPACE parameter specified with an ACTION other than CREATE_ACTION.	Do not specify TABLESPACE when performing actions other than CREATE_ACTION.
24128	A partition name was specified for an object that is not partitioned.	Specify a partition name only if the object is partitioned.
24129	An attempt was made to pass a table name parameter without the specified prefix.	Pass a valid table name parameter.
24130	An attempt was made to specify a repair or orphan table that does not exist.	Specify a valid table name parameter.
24131	An attempt was made to specify a repair or orphan table that does not have a correct definition.	Specify a table name that refers to a properly created table.
24132	An attempt was made to specify a table name is greater than 30 characters long.	Specify a valid table name parameter.

Examples

```
/* Fix the bitmap status for all the blocks in table mytab in schema sys */

EXECUTE DBMS_REPAIR.SEGMENT_FIX_STATUS('SYS', 'MYTAB');

/* Mark block number 45, filenumber 1 for table mytab in sys schema as FULL.*/

EXECUTE DBMS_REPAIR.SEGMENT_FIX_STATUS('SYS', 'MYTAB', TABLE_OBJECT,1, 45, 1);
```

Summary of DBMS_REPAIR Subprograms

Table 124–3 DBMS_REPAIR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADMIN_TABLES Procedure on page 124-10	Provides administrative functions for the DBMS_REPAIR package repair and orphan key tables, including create, purge, and drop functions
CHECK_OBJECT Procedure on page 124-11	Detects and reports corruptions in a table or index
DUMP_ORPHAN_KEYS Procedure on page 124-13	Reports on index entries that point to rows in corrupt data blocks
FIX_CORRUPT_BLOCKS Procedure on page 124-14	Marks blocks software corrupt that have been previously detected as corrupt by CHECK_OBJECT
ONLINE_INDEX_CLEAN Function on page 124-15	Performs a manual cleanup of failed or interrupted online index builds or rebuilds
REBUILD_FREELISTS Procedure on page 124-16	Rebuilds an object's freelists
SEGMENT_FIX_STATUS Procedure on page 124-17	Fixes the corrupted state of a bitmap entry
SKIP_CORRUPT_BLOCKS Procedure on page 124-18	Sets whether to ignore blocks marked corrupt during table and index scans or to report ORA-1578 when blocks marked corrupt are encountered

ADMIN_TABLES Procedure

This procedure provides administrative functions for the DBMS_REPAIR package repair and orphan key tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.ADMIN_TABLES (
   table_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   table_type  IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   action      IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   tablespace  IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 124–4 ADMIN_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of the table to be processed. Defaults to ORPHAN_KEY_TABLE or REPAIR_TABLE based on the specified table_type. When specified, the table name must have the appropriate prefix: ORPHAN_ or REPAIR_.
table_type	Type of table; must be either ORPHAN_TABLE or REPAIR_TABLE. See "Constants" on page 124-5.
action	Indicates what administrative action to perform. Must be either CREATE_ACTION, PURGE_ACTION, or DROP_ACTION. If the table already exists, and if CREATE_ACTION is specified, then an error is returned. PURGE_ACTION indicates to delete all rows in the table that are associated with non-existent objects. If the table does not exist, and if DROP_ACTION is specified, then an error is returned. When CREATE_ACTION and DROP_ACTION are specified, an associated view named DBA_<table_name> is created and dropped respectively. The view is defined so that rows associated with non-existent objects are eliminated. Created in the SYS schema. See "Constants" on page 124-5.
tablespace	Indicates the tablespace to use when creating a table. By default, the SYS default tablespace is used. An error is returned if the tablespace is specified and if the action is not CREATE_ACTION.

CHECK_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure checks the specified objects and populates the repair table with information about corruptions and repair directives.

Validation consists of block checking all blocks in the object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.CHECK_OBJECT (
   schema_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   partition_name    IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   object_type       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT TABLE_OBJECT,
   repair_table_name IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT 'REPAIR_TABLE',
   flags             IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   relative_fno      IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   block_start       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   block_end         IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   corrupt_count     OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 124–5 CHECK_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema name of the object to be checked.
object_name	Name of the table or index to be checked.
partition_name	Partition or subpartition name to be checked. If this is a partitioned object, and if partition_name is not specified, then all partitions and subpartitions are checked. If this is a partitioned object, and if the specified partition contains subpartitions, then all subpartitions are checked.
object_type	Type of the object to be processed. This must be either TABLE_OBJECT (default) or INDEX_OBJECT. See "Constants" on page 124-5.
repair_table_name	Name of the repair table to be populated. The table must exist in the SYS schema. Use the ADMIN_TABLES Procedure to create a repair table. The default name is REPAIR_TABLE.
flags	Reserved for future use.
relative_fno	Relative file number: Used when specifying a block range.
block_start	First block to process if specifying a block range. May be specified only if the object is a single table, partition, or subpartition.
block_end	Last block to process if specifying a block range. May be specified only if the object is a single table, partition, or subpartition. If only one of block_start or block_end is specified, then the other defaults to the first or last block in the file respectively.
corrupt_count	Number of corruptions reported.

Usage Notes

You may optionally specify a DBA range, partition name, or subpartition name when you want to check a portion of an object.

DUMP_ORPHAN_KEYS Procedure

This procedure reports on index entries that point to rows in corrupt data blocks. For each such index entry encountered, a row is inserted into the specified orphan table.

If the repair table is specified, then any corrupt blocks associated with the base table are handled in addition to all data blocks that are marked software corrupt. Otherwise, only blocks that are marked corrupt are handled.

This information may be useful for rebuilding lost rows in the table and for diagnostic purposes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.DUMP_ORPHAN_KEYS (
   schema_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   partition_name    IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   object_type       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT INDEX_OBJECT,
   repair_table_name IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT 'REPAIR_TABLE',
   orphan_table_name IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT 'ORPHAN_KEYS_TABLE',
   flags             IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   key_count         OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 124–6 DUMP_ORPHAN_KEYS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema name.
object_name	Object name.
partition_name	Partition or subpartition name to be processed. If this is a partitioned object, and if partition_name is not specified, then all partitions and subpartitions are processed. If this is a partitioned object, and if the specified partition contains subpartitions, then all subpartitions are processed.
object_type	Type of the object to be processed. The default is INDEX_OBJECT See "Constants" on page 124-5.
repair_table_name	Name of the repair table that has information regarding corrupt blocks in the base table. The specified table must exist in the SYS schema. The ADMIN_TABLES Procedure is used to create the table.
orphan_table_name	Name of the orphan key table to populate with information regarding each index entry that refers to a row in a corrupt data block. The specified table must exist in the SYS schema. The ADMIN_TABLES Procedure is used to create the table.
flags	Reserved for future use.
key_count	Number of index entries processed.

FIX_CORRUPT_BLOCKS Procedure

This procedure fixes the corrupt blocks in specified objects based on information in the repair table that was previously generated by the CHECK_OBJECT Procedure.

Prior to effecting any change to a block, the block is checked to ensure the block is still corrupt. Corrupt blocks are repaired by marking the block software corrupt. When a repair is effected, the associated row in the repair table is updated with a fix timestamp.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.FIX_CORRUPT_BLOCKS (
   schema_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   partition_name    IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   object_type       IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT TABLE_OBJECT,
   repair_table_name IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT 'REPAIR_TABLE',
   flags             IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   fix_count         OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 124–7 FIX_CORRUPT_BLOCKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema name.
object_name	Name of the object with corrupt blocks to be fixed.
partition_name	Partition or subpartition name to be processed. If this is a partitioned object, and if partition_name is not specified, then all partitions and subpartitions are processed. If this is a partitioned object, and if the specified partition contains subpartitions, then all subpartitions are processed.
object_type	Type of the object to be processed. This must be either TABLE_OBJECT (default) or INDEX_OBJECT. See "Constants" on page 124-5.
repair_table_name	Name of the repair table with the repair directives. Must exist in the SYS schema.
flags	Reserved for future use.
fix_count	Number of blocks fixed.

ONLINE_INDEX_CLEAN Function

This function performs a manual cleanup of failed or interrupted online index builds or rebuilds. This action is also performed periodically by SMON, regardless of user-initiated cleanup.

This function returns `TRUE` if all indexes specified were cleaned up and `FALSE` if one or more indexes could not be cleaned up.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.ONLINE_INDEX_CLEAN (
   object_id      IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT ALL_INDEX_ID,
   wait_for_lock  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT LOCK_WAIT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 124–8 ONLINE_INDEX_CLEAN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_id`	Object id of index to be cleaned up. The default cleans up all object ids that qualify.
`wait_for_lock`	This parameter specifies whether to try getting DML locks on underlying table [[sub]partition] object. The default retries up to an internal retry limit, after which the lock get will give up. If `LOCK_NOWAIT` is specified, then the lock get does not retry.

REBUILD_FREELISTS Procedure

This procedure rebuilds the freelists for the specified object. All free blocks are placed on the master freelist. All other freelists are zeroed.

If the object has multiple freelist groups, then the free blocks are distributed among all freelists, allocating to the different groups in round-robin fashion.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.REBUILD_FREELISTS (
   schema_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   partition_name IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_type    IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT TABLE_OBJECT);
```

Parameters

Table 124–9 REBUILD_FREELISTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema name.
object_name	Name of the object whose freelists are to be rebuilt.
partition_name	Partition or subpartition name whose freelists are to be rebuilt. If this is a partitioned object, and partition_name is not specified, then all partitions and subpartitions are processed. If this is a partitioned object, and the specified partition contains subpartitions, then all subpartitions are processed.
object_type	Type of the object to be processed. This must be either TABLE_OBJECT (default) or INDEX_OBJECT. See"Constants" on page 124-5.

SEGMENT_FIX_STATUS Procedure

With this procedure you can fix the corrupted state of a bitmap entry. The procedure either recalculates the state based on the current contents of the corresponding block or sets the state to a specific value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.SEGMENT_FIX_STATUS (
   segment_owner   IN VARCHAR2,
   segment_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   segment_type    IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT TABLE_OBJECT,
   file_number     IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   block_number    IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   status_value    IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   partition_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,);
```

Parameters

Table 124–10 SEGMENT_FIX_STATUS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_owner	Schema name of the segment.
segment_name	Segment name.
partition_name	Optional. Name of an individual partition. NULL for nonpartitioned objects. Default is NULL.
segment_type	Optional Type of the segment (for example, TABLE_OBJECT or INDEX_OBJECT). Default is NULL.
file_number	(optional) The tablespace-relative file number of the data block whose status has to be fixed. If omitted, all the blocks in the segment will be checked for state correctness and fixed.
block_number	(optional) The file-relative block number of the data block whose status has to be fixed. If omitted, all the blocks in the segment will be checked for state correctness and fixed.
status_value	(optional) The value to which the block status described by the file_number and block_number will be set. If omitted, the status will be set based on the current state of the block. This is almost always the case, but if there is a bug in the calculation algorithm, the value can be set manually. Status values: ■ 1 = block is full ■ 2 = block is 0-25% free ■ 3 = block is 25-50% free ■ 4 = block is 50-75% free ■ 5 = block is 75-100% free The status for bitmap blocks, segment headers, and extent map blocks cannot be altered. The status for blocks in a fixed hash area cannot be altered. For index blocks, there are only two possible states: 1 = block is full and 3 = block has free space.

SKIP_CORRUPT_BLOCKS Procedure

This procedure enables or disables the skipping of corrupt blocks during index and table scans of the specified object.

When the object is a table, skip applies to the table and its indexes. When the object is a cluster, it applies to all of the tables in the cluster, and their respective indexes.

> **Note:** When Oracle performs an index range scan on a corrupt index after DBMS_REPAIR.SKIP_CORRUPT_BLOCKS has been set for the base table, corrupt branch blocks and root blocks are not skipped. Only corrupt non-root leaf blocks are skipped.

Syntax

```
DBMS_REPAIR.SKIP_CORRUPT_BLOCKS (
   schema_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   object_type  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT TABLE_OBJECT,
   flags        IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT SKIP_FLAG);
```

Parameters

Table 124–11 SKIP_CORRUPT_BLOCKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema name of the object to be processed.
object_name	Name of the object.
object_type	Type of the object to be processed. This must be either TABLE_OBJECT (default) or CLUSTER_OBJECT. See "Constants" on page 124-5.
flags	If SKIP_FLAG is specified, then it turns on the skip of software corrupt blocks for the object during index and table scans. If NOSKIP_FLAG is specified, then scans that encounter software corrupt blocks return an ORA-1578. See"Constants" on page 124-5.

125

DBMS_REPCAT

The DBMS_REPCAT package provides routines to administer and update the replication catalog and environment.

- Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT

Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_REPCAT` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference.*

126

DBMS_REPCAT_ADMIN

The `DBMS_REPCAT_ADMIN` package enables you to create users with the privileges needed by the symmetric replication facility.

Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT_ADMIN

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_REPCAT_ADMIN` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference*.

127

DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE

The `DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE` package instantiates deployment templates.

- Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE

Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_REPCAT_INSTANTIATE` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference*.

128

DBMS_REPCAT_RGT

The DBMS_REPCAT_RGT package controls the maintenance and definition of refresh group templates.

- Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT_RGT

Documentation of DBMS_REPCAT_RGT

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_REPCAT_RGT` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference*.

129

DBMS_REPUTIL

The DBMS_REPUTIL package contains subprograms to generate shadow tables, triggers, and packages for table replication, as well as subprograms to generate wrappers for replication of standalone procedure invocations and packaged procedure invocations. This package is referenced only by the generated code.

Documentation of DBMS_REPUTIL

For a complete description of this package within the context of Replication, see `DBMS_REPUTIL` in the *Oracle Database Advanced Replication Management API Reference.*

130

DBMS_RESCONFIG

The DBMS_RESCONFIG package provides an interface to operate on the resource configuration list, and to retrieve listener information for a resource.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for more information about "Resource Configuration".

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RESCONFIG

Overview

The DBMS_RESCONFIG package contains functions and procedures to manage the resource configuration lists of individual resources and the repository.

Summary of DBMS_RESCONFIG Subprograms

This table list the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 130–1 DBMS_RESCONFIG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADDREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Procedure on page 130-5	Inserts the resource configuration specified by absolute path at the given position of the repository's configuration list
ADDRESCONFIG Procedure on page 130-6	Inserts the resource configuration specified by the absolute path at the given position in the target resource's configuration list
APPENDRESCONFIG Procedure on page 130-7	Appends the resource configuration specified by rcpath to the target resource's configuration list if it is not already included in the list
DELETEREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Procedure on page 130-8	Removes the configuration at the given position in the repository's configuration list.
DELETERESCONFIG Procedures on page 130-9	Removes the configuration at the given position in the target resource's configuration list. I
GETLISTENERS Function on page 130-10	Returns the list of listeners applicable for a given resource
GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Function on page 130-11	Returns the resource configuration at the specified position of the repository's configuration list
GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIGPATHS Function on page 130-12	Returns a list of resource configuration paths defined for the repository
GETRESCONFIG Function on page 130-13	Returns the resource configuration at the specified position of the target resource's configuration list
GETRESCONFIGPATHS Function on page 130-14	Returns a list of resource configuration paths defined in the target resource's configuration list
PATCHREPOSITORYRESCONFIGLIST Procedure on page 130-15	Removes invalid references from the repository resource configuration list, and makes the repository available

ADDREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Procedure

This procedure inserts the resource configuration specified by absolute path of the resource configuration at the specified position of the repository's configuration list. It shifts the element currently at that position (if any) and any subsequent elements to the right.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.ADDREPOSITORYRESCONFIG(
   rcpath     IN   VARCHAR2,
   pos        IN   PLS_INTEGER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 130–2 ADDREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rcpath	Absolute path of the resource configuration to be inserted. An exception is raised if rcpath already exists in the target's configuration list.
pos	Index at which the new configuration is to be inserted. If this parameter is not specified then the new configuration is appended to the end of the list. An exception is raised if the index is out of range (pos < 0 or pos > the size of the target resource's configuration list).

Usage Notes

- An error is raised if the document referenced by rcpath is not based on XDBResConfig.xsd schema.
- Users must have XDBADMIN role and READ privilege on the resource configuration to be inserted; otherwise, an error is returned.

ADDRESCONFIG Procedure

This procedure inserts the resource configuration specified by the absolute path of the resource configuration at the given position in the target resource's configuration list. It shifts the element currently at that position (if any) and any subsequent elements to the right.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.ADDRESCONFIG(
   respath    IN   VARCHAR2,
   rcpath     IN   VARCHAR2,
   pos        IN   PLS_INTEGER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 130–3 ADDRESCONFIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
respath	Absolute path of the target resource
rcpath	Absolute path of the resource configuration to be inserted. An exception is raised if rcpath already exists in the target's configuration list.
pos	Index at which the new configuration is to be inserted. If this parameter is not specified then the new configuration is appended to the end of the list. An exception is raised if the index is out of range (pos < 0 or pos > the size of the target resource's configuration list).

Usage Notes

- An error is raised if the document referenced by rcpath is not based on XDBResConfig.xsd schema.
- Users must have WRITE-CONFIG privilege on the target resource and read privilege on the resource configuration to be inserted; otherwise, an error is returned.

APPENDRESCONFIG Procedure

This procedure appends the resource configuration specified by rcpath to the target resource's configuration list if it is not already included in the list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.ADDRESCONFIG(
   respath       IN   VARCHAR2,
   rcpath        IN   VARCHAR2,
   appendOption  IN   PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 130–4 ADDRESCONFIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
respath	Absolute path of the target resource
rcpath	Absolute path of the resource configuration to be appended at the end of the target's configuration list. If rcpath already exists in the list then nothing is appended.
appendOption	Either APPEND_RESOURCE or APPEND_RECURSIVE. If APPEND_RESOURCE is specified then only the target resource is affected. If APPEND_RECURSIVE is specified then the target resource and all its descendents will be affected.

Usage Notes

- An error is raised if the document referenced by rcpath is not based on XDBResConfig.xsd schema.
- Users must have WRITE-CONFIG privilege on all affected resources and required read privilege on the resource configuration to be inserted; otherwise, an error is returned.

DELETEREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Procedure

This procedure removes the configuration at the given position in the repository's configuration list. It shifts any subsequent elements to the left.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.DELETEREPOSITORYRESCONFIG(
   pos           IN   PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 130–5 DELETEREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pos	The index of the configuration to be removed. An exception is raised if the index is out of range (pos < 0 or pos >= the size of the target resource's configuration list).

Usage Notes

- Users must have XDBADMIN role to execute this.
- This statement is treated as if it is a DDL statement. This means the system will implicitly commit before and after this statement.

DELETERESCONFIG Procedures

This procedure removes the configuration at the given position in the target resource's configuration list. It shifts any subsequent elements to the left. Users can use the overloaded for recursive deletion.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.DELETERESCONFIG(
   respath       IN   VARCHAR2,
   pos           IN   PLS_INTEGER);

DBMS_RESCONFIG.DELETERESCONFIG(
   respath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   rcpath         IN  VARCHAR2,
   deleteOption   IN  PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 130–6 DELETERESCONFIG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`respath`	Absolute path of the target resource
`pos`	The index of the configuration to be removed. An exception is raised if the index is out of range (`pos` < 0 or `pos` >= the size of the target resource's configuration list).
`rcpath`	Absolute path of the resource configuration to be deleted if found in list.
`deleteOption`	Either `DELETE_RESOURCE` or `DELETE_RECURSIVE`. If `DELETE_RESOURCE` is specified then only the configuration list of the target resource is affected. If `DELETE_RECURSIVE` is specified then the configuration list of the target resource and all its descendents will be affected.

Usage Notes

Users must have `WRITE-CONFIG` privilege on the target resource to execute this.

GETLISTENERS Function

This function returns the list of listeners applicable for a given resource.

The value returned by this function is an XML document containing the `<event-listeners>` element of the `XDBResconfig.xsd` schema. It contains all the listeners applicable to the target resource, including repository-level listeners. From the returned XML document users can use the `EXTRACT` operator to retrieve the listeners defined for a specific event.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.GETLISTENERS(
   path    IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 130–7 GETLISTENERS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Absolute path of the target resource

Usage Notes

Users must have the required access privilege on all resource configurations referenced by the repository and the target resource; otherwise, an error is returned.

GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Function

This function returns the resource configuration at the specified position of the repository's configuration list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIG(
   pos    IN   PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 130–8 GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pos	Index of element to return. An exception is raised if the index is out of range (pos < 0 or pos >= the size of the repository's configuration list).

Usage Notes

Users must have the required read privilege on the requested resource configuration; otherwise, an error is returned.

GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIGPATHS Function

This function returns a list of resource configuration paths defined for the repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.GETREPOSITORYRESCONFIGPATHS
 RETURN XDB$STRING_LIST_T;
```

Usage Notes

Users must be able to access all the referenced resource configurations; otherwise, an error is returned.

GETRESCONFIG Function

This function returns the resource configuration at the specified position of the target resource's configuration list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.GETRESCONFIG(
   respath IN VARCHAR2,
   pos IN PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 130–9 GETRESCONFIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
respath	Absolute path of the target resource
pos	Index of element to return. An exception is raised if the index is out of range (pos < 0 or pos >= the size of the target resource's configuration list).

Usage Notes

Users must have the required read privilege on the requested resource configuration; otherwise, an error is returned.

GETRESCONFIGPATHS Function

This function returns a list of resource configuration paths defined in the target resource's configuration list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.GETRESCONFIGPATHS(
   respath IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN XDB$STRING_LIST_T;
```

Parameters

Table 130–10 GETRESCONFIGPATHS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
respath	Absolute path of the target resource

Usage Notes

Users must be able to access all the referenced resource configurations; otherwise, an error is returned.

PATCHREPOSITORYRESCONFIGLIST Procedure

Under normal circumstances, deletion of a resource configuration resource cannot be performed if it is part of the repository resource configuration list. If, for some reason, the deletion of a resource configuration resource that is part of the repository resource configuration list succeeds, then any repository operation results in a 'dangling reference' error. This procedure removes invalid references from the repository resource configuration list, and makes the repository available. This procedure must be run as `SYS`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESCONFIG.PATCHREPOSITORYRESCONFIGLIST;
```

131

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER

The DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package maintains plans, consumer groups, and plan directives. It also provides semantics so that you may group together changes to the plan schema.

> **See Also:** For more information on using the Database Resource Manager, see *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide.*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER

Deprecated Subprograms

Note: Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*:

- SET_INITIAL_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

Security Model

The invoker must have the `ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER` system privilege to execute these procedures. The procedures to grant and revoke this privilege are in the package Chapter 132, "DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS".

Constants

The DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package uses the constants shown in Table 131–1, " DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Constants"

Table 131–1 DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
CLIENT_ID	VARCHAR2(30)	CLIENT_ID	Client identifier of the session
CLIENT_MACHINE	VARCHAR2(30)	CLIENT_MACHINE	Name of the computer from which the client is making the connection
CLIENT_OS_USER	VARCHAR2(30)	CLIENT_OS_USER	Operating system user name of the client that is logging in
CLIENT_PROGRAM	VARCHAR2(30)	CLIENT_PROGRAM	Name of the client program used to log in to the server
MODULE_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)	MODULE_NAME	Module name in the currently running application as set by the SET_MODULE Procedure in the DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO package, or the equivalent OCI attribute setting
MODULE_NAME_ACTION	VARCHAR2(30)	MODULE_NAME_ACTION	A combination of the current module and the action being performed as set by either of the following procedures in the DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO package, or their equivalent OCI attribute setting: ■ SET_MODULE Procedure ■ SET_ACTION Procedure The attribute is specified as the module name followed by a period (.), followed by the action name (*module_name.action_name*).
ORACLE_FUNCTION	VARCHAR2(30)	ORACLE_FUNCTION	Function the session is currently executing. Valid functions are the BACKUP, COPY, and DATALOAD. BACKUP is set for sessions that are doing backup operations using RMAN. COPY is set for sessions that are doing image copies using RMAN. DATALOAD is set for sessions that are loading data using Oracle Data Pump.
ORACLE_USER	VARCHAR2(30)	ORACLE_USER	Oracle Database user name
SERVICE_MODULE	VARCHAR2(30)	SERVICE_MODULE	Combination of service and module names in this form: *service_name.module_name*
SERVICE_MODULE_ACTION	VARCHAR2(30)	SERVICE_MODULE_ACTION	Combination of service name, module name, and action name, in this form: *service_name.module_name.action_name*

Table 131–1 (Cont.) DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
SERVICE_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)	SERVICE_NAME	Service name used by the client to establish a connection

Summary of DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Subprograms

Table 131–2 DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BEGIN_SQL_BLOCK Procedure on page 131-9	Indicates the start of a block of SQL statements to be treated as a group by resource manager
CALIBRATE_IO Procedure on page 131-10	Calibrates the I/O capabilities of storage
CLEAR_PENDING_AREA Procedure on page 131-13	Clears the work area for the resource manager
CREATE_CATEGORY Procedure on page 131-14	Creates a new resource consumer group category
CREATE_CDB_PLAN Procedure on page 131-15	Creates entries which define resource consumer groups
CREATE_CDB_PLAN_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-16	Creates the plan directives of the consolidation resource plan
CREATE_CONSUMER_ GROUP Procedure on page 131-17	Creates entries which define resource consumer groups
CREATE_PENDING_AREA Procedure on page 131-18	Creates a work area for changes to resource manager objects
CREATE_PLAN Procedure on page 131-20	Creates entries which define resource plans
CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-22	Creates resource plan directives
CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN Procedure on page 131-27	Creates a single-level resource plan containing up to eight consumer groups in one step
DELETE_CATEGORY Procedure on page 131-29	Deletes an existing resource consumer group category
DELETE_CDB_PLAN Procedure on page 131-30	Deletes the consolidation resource plan
DELETE_CDB_PLAN_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-31	Deletes the plan directives of the consolidation resource plan
DELETE_CONSUMER_ GROUP Procedure on page 131-32	Deletes entries which define resource consumer groups
DELETE_PLAN Procedure on page 131-33	Deletes the specified plan as well as all the plan directives it refers to
DELETE_PLAN_CASCADE Procedure on page 131-34	Deletes the specified plan as well as all its descendants (plan directives, subplans, consumer groups)
DELETE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-35	Deletes resource plan directives
END_SQL_BLOCK Procedure on page 131-36	Indicates the end of a block of SQL statements that should be treated as a group by resource manager
SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_ MAPPING Procedure on page 131-37	Adds, deletes, or modifies entries for the login and run-time attribute mappings

Table 131–2 (Cont.) DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING_PRI Procedure on page 131-38	Creates the session attribute mapping priority list
SET_INITIAL_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure on page 131-39	Assigns the initial resource consumer group for a user (Caution: Deprecated Subprogram)
SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA Procedure on page 131-40	Submits pending changes for the resource manager
SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_SESS Procedure on page 131-41	Changes the resource consumer group of a specific session
SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_USER Procedure on page 131-42	Changes the resource consumer group for all sessions with a given user name
SWITCH_PLAN Procedure on page 131-43	Sets the current resource manager plan
UPDATE_CATEGORY Procedure on page 131-44	Updates an existing resource consumer group category
UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-45	Updates the plan directives with regard to automated maintenance tasks
UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-46	Updates the default values for a consolidation plan
UPDATE_CDB_PLAN Procedure on page 131-47	Updates the consolidation resource plan
UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-48	Updates the consolidation resource plan
UPDATE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure on page 131-49	Updates entries which define resource consumer groups
UPDATE_PLAN Procedure on page 131-50	Updates entries which define resource plans
UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 131-51	Updates resource plan directives
VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA Procedure on page 131-55	Validates pending changes for the resource manager

BEGIN_SQL_BLOCK Procedure

This procedure, to be used with parallel statement queuing, indicates the start of a block of SQL statements that should be treated as a group by resource manager.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.BEGIN_SQL_BLOCK;
```

Usage Notes

For more information, see "Parallel Statement Queuing" and "Managing Parallel Statement Queuing with Resource Manager" in *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide*.

CALIBRATE_IO Procedure

This procedure calibrates the I/O capabilities of storage. Calibration status is available from the V$IO_CALIBRATION_STATUS view and results for a successful calibration run are located in DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CALIBRATE_IO (
   num_physical_disks      IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   max_latency             IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 20,
   max_iops                OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   max_mbps                OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   actual_latency          OUT PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 131–3 CALIBRATE_IO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
num_physical_disks	Approximate number of physical disks in the database storage. This parameter is used to determine the initial I/O load for the calibration run.
max_latency	Maximum tolerable latency in milliseconds for database-block-sized IO requests
max_iops	Maximum number of I/O requests per second that can be sustained. The I/O requests are randomly-distributed, database-block-sized reads.
max_mbps	Maximum throughput of I/O that can be sustained, expressed in megabytes per second. The I/O requests are randomly-distributed, 1 megabyte reads.
actual_latency	Average latency of database-block-sized I/O requests at max_iops rate, expressed in milliseconds

Usage Notes

- Only users with the SYSDBA privilege can run this procedure. Qualified users must also turn on timed_statistics, and ensure asynch_io is enabled for datafiles. This can be achieved by setting filesystemio_options to either ASYNCH or SETALL. One can also query the asynch_io status by means of the following SQL statement:

```
col name format a50
SELECT name, asynch_io FROM v$datafile f,v$iostat_file i
  WHERE f.file#        = i.file_no
  AND   filetype_name  = 'Data File'
 /
```

- Only one calibration can be run at a time. If another calibration is initiated at the same time, it will fail.
- For an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database, the workload is simultaneously generated from all instances.
- In a multitenant container database (CDB), calibration can only be run from the root container.

- Calibration is extremely disruptive to the database performance. It is strongly recommended to run calibration only when database users can tolerate severe deterioration to database performance.
- For optimal calibration results, no other database workloads should be running.

See Also: *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about calibration

Examples

Example of using I/O Calibration procedure

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
  lat  INTEGER;
  iops INTEGER;
  mbps INTEGER;
BEGIN
-- DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CALIBRATE_IO (<DISKS>, <MAX_LATENCY>, iops, mbps, lat);
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CALIBRATE_IO (2, 10, iops, mbps, lat);

  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('max_iops = ' || iops);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('latency  = ' || lat);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('max_mbps = ' || mbps);
end;
/
```

View for I/O calibration results

```
SQL> desc V$IO_CALIBRATION_STATUS
  Name                                      Null?    Type
  ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
  STATUS                                             VARCHAR2(13)
  CALIBRATION_TIME                                   TIMESTAMP(3)

SQL> desc gv$io_calibration_status
  Name                                      Null?    Type
  ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
  INST_ID                                            NUMBER
  STATUS                                             VARCHAR2(13)
  CALIBRATION_TIME                                   TIMESTAMP(3)

Column explanation:
-------------------
STATUS:
  IN PROGRESS   : Calibration in Progress (Results from previous calibration
                  run displayed, if available)
  READY         : Results ready and available from earlier run
  NOT AVAILABLE : Calibration results not available.

CALIBRATION_TIME: End time of the last calibration run
```

DBA table that stores I/O Calibration results

```
SQL> desc DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE
  Name                                      Null?    Type
  ----------------------------------------- -------- ----------------------------
  START_TIME                                         TIMESTAMP(6)
  END_TIME                                           TIMESTAMP(6)
  MAX_IOPS                                           NUMBER
```

```
  MAX_MBPS                                          NUMBER
  MAX_PMBPS                                         NUMBER
  LATENCY                                           NUMBER
  NUM_PHYSICAL_DISKS                                NUMBER

comment on table DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE is
'Results of the most recent I/O calibration'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.START_TIME is
'start time of the most recent I/O calibration'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.END_TIME is
'end time of the most recent I/O calibration'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.MAX_IOPS is
'maximum number of data-block read requests that can be sustained per second'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.MAX_MBPS is
'maximum megabytes per second of maximum-sized read requests that can be
sustained'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.MAX_PMBPS is
'maximum megabytes per second of large I/O requests that
can be sustained by a single process'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.LATENCY is
'latency for data-block read requests'
/
comment on column DBA_RSRC_IO_CALIBRATE.NUM_PHYSICAL_DISKS is
'number of physical disks in the storage subsystem (as specified by user)'
/
```

CLEAR_PENDING_AREA Procedure

This procedure clears pending changes for the resource manager.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CLEAR_PENDING_AREA;
```

CREATE_CATEGORY Procedure

This procedure creates a new consumer group category. The primary purpose of this attribute is to support Exadata I/O Resource Manager category plans. The view DBA_RSRC_CATEGORIES defines the currently defined categories. The ADMINISTRATIVE, INTERACTIVE, BATCH, MAINTENANCE, and OTHER categories are available.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CATEGORY (
   category    IN    VARCHAR2,
   comment     IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL));
```

Parameters

Table 131–4 CREATE_CATEGORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
category	Name of consumer group category
comment	User comment

CREATE_CDB_PLAN Procedure

This procedure creates the consolidation resource plan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN (
   plan                    IN    VARCHAR2(32),
   comment                 IN    VARCHAR2(2000) DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–5 CREATE_CDB_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the consolidation plan
comment	User comment

Usage Notes

This procedure can be run only from the root container.

CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates the plan directives of the consolidation resource plan. Plan directives specify the resource allocation policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                    IN    VARCHAR2,
   pluggable_database      IN    VARCHAR2,
   comment                 IN    VARCHAR2 (2000) DEFAULT '',
   shares                  IN    NUMBER          DEFAULT NULL,
   utilization_limit       IN    NUMBER          DEFAULT NULL,
   parallel_server_limit   IN    NUMBER          DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–6 CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`plan`	Name of the consolidation plan
`pluggable_database`	Name of the pluggable database
`comment`	User comment
`shares`	Specifies the share of resource allocation for the pluggable database. CPU Resource Manager is enabled by specifying shares for each PDB. The `shares` parameter is also used for Parallel Statement Queuing. If no share is specified, the default is obtained from the default directive, specified through UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE Procedure.
`utilization_limit`	Specifies the maximum percentage of CPU that the pluggable database can utilize.
`parallel_server_limit`	Specifies the maximum percentage of `parallel_servers_target` parallel servers that the pluggable database can use.

Usage Notes

- The default value for `shares`, `utilization_limit`, and `parallel_server_limit` is `NULL`. When a user specifies `NULL`, or does not specify a value, this indicates that the default value should be used.
- This procedure can be run only from the root container.

CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

This procedure creates entries which define resource consumer groups.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP (
   consumer_group  IN VARCHAR2,
   comment         IN VARCHAR2,
   cpu_mth         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_mth        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ROUND-ROBIN',
   category        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'OTHER');
```

Parameters

Table 131–7 CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
consumer_group	Name of the consumer group
comment	User comment
cpu_mth	Name of CPU resource allocation method (deprecated)
mgmt_mth	Name of CPU resource allocation method
category	Describes the category of the consumer group. The primary purpose of this attribute is to support Exadata I/O Resource Manager category plans. The view DBA_RSRC_CATEGORIES defines the currently defined categories. Categories can be modified, using the CREATE_CATEGORY Procedure, UPDATE_CATEGORY Procedure, and DELETE_CATEGORY Procedure.

CREATE_PENDING_AREA Procedure

This procedure makes changes to resource manager objects.

All changes to the plan schema must be done within a pending area. The pending area can be thought of as a "scratch" area for plan schema changes. The administrator creates this pending area, makes changes as necessary, possibly validates these changes, and only when the submit is completed do these changes become active.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA;
```

Usage Notes

You may, at any time while the pending area is active, view the current plan schema with your changes by selecting from the appropriate user views.

At any time, you may clear the pending area if you want to stop the current changes. You may also call the `VALIDATE` procedure to confirm whether the changes you have made are valid. You do not have to perform your changes in a given order to maintain a consistent group of entries. These checks are also implicitly done when the pending area is submitted.

> **Note:** Oracle allows "orphan" consumer groups (in other words, consumer groups that have no plan directives that refer to them). This is in anticipation that an administrator may want to create a consumer group that is not currently being used, but will be used in the future.

The following rules must be adhered to, and they are checked whenever the validate or submit procedures are executed:

- No plan schema may contain any loops.
- All plans and consumer groups referred to by plan directives must exist.
- All plans must have plan directives that refer to either plans or consumer groups.
- All percentages in any given level must not add up to greater than 100 for the emphasis resource allocation method.
- No plan may be deleted that is currently being used as a top plan by an active instance.
- The plan directive parameter, `parallel_degree_limit_p1`, may only appear in plan directives that refer to consumer groups (that is, not at subplans).
- There cannot be more than 28 plan directives coming from any given plan (that is, no plan can have more than 28 children).
- There cannot be more than 28 consumer groups in any active plan schema.
- Plans and consumer groups use the same namespace; therefore, no plan can have the same name as any consumer group.
- There must be a plan directive for `OTHER_GROUPS` somewhere in any active plan schema.This ensures that a session not covered by the currently active plan is allocated resources as specified by the `OTHER_GROUPS` directive.

If any of the preceding rules are broken when checked by the `VALIDATE` or `SUBMIT` procedures, then an informative error message is returned. You may then make changes to fix one or more problems and reissue the validate or submit procedures.

CREATE_PLAN Procedure

This procedure creates entries which define resource plans.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN (
   plan                       IN   VARCHAR2,
   comment                    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cpu_mth                    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   active_sess_pool_mth       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ACTIVE_SESS_POOL_ABSOLUTE',
   parallel_degree_limit_mth  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT
                                      'PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_ABSOLUTE',
   queueing_mth               IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'FIFO_TIMEOUT',
   mgmt_mth                   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'EMPHASIS',
   sub_plan                   IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   max_iops                   IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   max_mbps                   IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–8 CREATE_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the resource plan
comment	User comment
cpu_mth	Allocation method for CPU resources (deprecated)
active_sess_pool_mth	Active session pool resource allocation method. Limits the number of active sessions. All other sessions are inactive and wait in a queue to be activated. ACTIVE_SESS_POOL_ABSOLUTE is the default and only method available.
parallel_degree_limit_mth	Resource allocation method for specifying a limit on the degree of parallelism of any operation. PARALLEL_DEGREE_LIMIT_ABSOLUTE is the default and only method available.
queueing_mth	Queuing resource allocation method. Controls order in which queued inactive sessions will execute. FIFO_TIMEOUT is the default and only method available
mgmt_mth	Resource allocation method for specifying how much resources (for example, CPU or I/O) each consumer group or sub-plan gets ■ EMPHASIS - for multilevel plans that use percentages to specify how I/O resources are distributed among consumer groups ■ RATIO - for single-level plans that use ratios to specify how I/O resources are distributed
sub_plan	If TRUE, indicates that this plan is only intended for use as a sub-plan. Sub-plans are not required to have an OTHER_GROUPS directive. Default is FALSE.
max_iops	Nonoperative
max_mbps	Nonoperative

Usage Notes

If you want to use any default resource allocation method, then you do not need to specify it when creating or updating a plan.

CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates resource plan directives.

> **Note:** The parameters `max_utilization_limit` and `parallel_target_percentage` are deprecated with Oracle Database 11g Release 1 (11.1.0.1), and are replaced by `utilization_limit` and `parallel_server_limit`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                      IN VARCHAR2,
   group_or_subplan          IN VARCHAR2,
   comment                   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cpu_p1                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p2                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p3                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p4                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p5                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p6                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p7                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   cpu_p8                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   active_sess_pool_p1       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   queueing_p1               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   parallel_degree_limit_p1  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_group              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_time               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_estimate           IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   max_est_exec_time         IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   undo_pool                 IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   max_idle_time                IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   max_idle_blocker_time        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_time_in_call          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   mgmt_p1                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p2                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p3                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p4                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p5                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p6                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p7                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   mgmt_p8                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_io_megabytes          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_io_reqs               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_for_call              IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT NULL,
   max_utilization_limit        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,  -- deprecated
   parallel_target_percentage   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,  -- deprecated
   parallel_queue_timeout       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   parallel_server_limit        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   utilization_limit            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_io_logical            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_elapsed_time          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   shares                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   parallel_stmt_critical       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–9 CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the resource plan
group_or_subplan	Name of the consumer group or subplan
comment	Comment for the plan directive
cpu_p1	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p1 instead
cpu_p2	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p2 instead)
cpu_p3	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p3 instead)
cpu_p4	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p4 instead)
cpu_p5	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p5 instead)
cpu_p6	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p6 instead)
cpu_p7	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p7 instead)
cpu_p8	-- deprecated: use mgmt_p8 instead)
active_sess_pool_p1	Specifies maximum number of sessions that can currently have an active call
queueing_p1	Specified time (in seconds) after which a call in the inactive session queue (waiting for execution) will time out. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
parallel_degree_limit_p1	Specifies a limit on the degree of parallelism for any operation. Default is NULL, which means unlimited. If the value is 0, then all operations will be serial.
switch_group	Specifies consumer group to switch to, once a switch condition is met. If the group name is CANCEL_SQL, then the current call is canceled when the switch condition is met. If the group name is KILL_SESSION, then the session is killed when the switch condition is met. If the group name is LOG_ONLY, then no action is taken other than recording this event via SQL monitor.Default is NULL.
switch_time	Specifies time on CPU (not elapsed time that a session can execute before an action is taken. Default is NULL, which means unlimited. As with other switch directives, if switch_for_call is TRUE, the number of logical IOs is accumulated from the start of a call. Otherwise, the number of logical IOs is accumulated for the length of the session.
switch_estimate	If TRUE, tells Oracle to use its execution time estimate to automatically switch the consumer group of an operation before beginning its execution. Default is FALSE.
max_est_exec_time	Specifies the maximum execution time (in CPU seconds) allowed for a session. If the optimizer estimates that an operation will take longer than MAX_EST_EXEC_TIME, the operation is not started and ORA-07455 is issued. If the optimizer does not provide an estimate, this directive has no effect. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
undo_pool	Limits the size in kilobytes of the undo records corresponding to uncommitted transactions by this consumer group
max_idle_time	Indicates the maximum session idle time. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.

Table 131–9 (Cont.) CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
max_idle_blocker_time	Maximum amount of time in seconds that a session can be idle while blocking another session's acquisition of a resource
switch_time_in_call	Deprecated. If this parameter is specified, switch_time is set to switch_time_in_call (in seconds) and switch_for_call is effectively set to TRUE. It is better to use switch_time and switch_for_call.
mgmt_p1	Resource allocation value for level 1 (replaces cpu_p1): ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the first level ■ RATIO - specifies the weight of resource usage
mgmt_p2	Resource allocation value for level 2 (replaces cpu_p2) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the second level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
mgmt_p3	Resource allocation value for level 3 (replaces cpu_p3) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the third level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
mgmt_p4	Resource allocation value for level 4 (replaces cpu_p4) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the fourth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
mgmt_p5	Resource allocation value for level 5 (replaces cpu_p5) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the fifth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
mgmt_p6	Resource allocation value for level 6 (replaces cpu_p6) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the sixth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
mgmt_p7	Resource allocation value for level 7 (replaces cpu_p7) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the seventh level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
mgmt_p8	Resource allocation value for level 8 (replaces cpu_p8) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the eighth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
switch_io_megabytes	Specifies the amount of I/O (in MB) that a session can issue before an action is taken. Default is NULL, which means unlimited. As with other switch directives, if switch_for_call is TRUE, the number of logical IOs is accumulated from the start of a call. Otherwise, the number of logical IOs is accumulated for the length of the session.

Table 131–9 (Cont.) CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
switch_io_reqs	Specifies the number of I/O requests that a session can issue before an action is taken. Default is NULL, which means unlimited. As with other switch directives, if switch_for_call is TRUE, the number of logical IOs is accumulated from the start of a call. Otherwise, the number of logical IOs is accumulated for the length of the session.
switch_for_call	Specifies that if an action is taken because of the switch_time, switch_io_megabytes, switch_io_reqs, switch_io_logical or switch_elapsed_time parameters, the consumer group is restored to its original consumer group at the end of the top call. Default is FALSE, which means that the original consumer group is not restored at the end of the top call.
max_utilization_limit	-- deprecated: use utilization_limit instead
parallel_target_ percentage	-- deprecated: use parallel_sever_limit instead
parallel_queue_timeout	Specifies the time (in seconds) that a query may remain in its Consumer Group's parallel statement queue before it is removed and terminated with an error (ORA- 07454).
parallel_sever_limit	Parallel server limit. Setting this overwrites the limit for parallel server set by utilization_limit.
utilization_limit	Resource limit. Currently it includes CPU and I/O for Exadata and parallel servers. For CPU, this limits the CPU utilization for the consumer group. For Exadata I/O, this limits the disk utilization for the consumer group. For parallel servers, this limits the parallel servers used as a percentage of parallel_ servers_target.
switch_io_logical	Number of logical IOs that will trigger the action specified by switch_group. As with other switch directives, if switch_for_ call is TRUE, the number of logical IOs is accumulated from the start of a call. Otherwise, the number of logical IOs is accumulated for the length of the session.
switch_elapsed_time	Elapsed time that will trigger the action specified by switch_ group. As with other switch directives, if switch_for_call is TRUE, the elapsed time is accumulated from the start of a call. Otherwise, the elapsed time is accumulated for the length of the session.
shares	Specifies the share of resource allocation for the consumer group. CPU Resource Manager is enabled by specifying shares for each consumer group. The shares parameter is also used for Parallel Statement Queuing. If CPU Resource Manager is enabled, then the default value is 1.
parallel_stmt_critical	If set to BYPASS_QUEUE, parallel statements from this consumer group are not queued. Default is NULL, which means that parallel statements are eligible for queuing.

Usage Notes

- All parameters default to NULL.
- For max_idle_time and max_idle_blocker_time, PMON will check these limits once a minute. If it finds a session that has exceeded one of the limits, it will forcibly kill the session and clean up all its state.
- The parameter switch_for_call is mostly useful for three-tier applications where the mid-tier server is implementing session pooling. By using switch_for_call,

the resource usage of one client will not affect a future client that happens to be executed on the same session.

CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN Procedure

This procedure creates a single-level resource plan containing up to eight consumer groups in one step. You do not need to create a pending area manually before creating a resource plan, or use the CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP and CREATE_RESOURCE_PLAN_DIRECTIVES procedures separately.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN (
   simple_plan      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   consumer_group1  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group1_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group2  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group2_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group3  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group3_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group4  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group4_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group5  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group5_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group6  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group6_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group7  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group7_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   consumer_group8  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   group8_cpu       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,   -- deprecated
   group1_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group2_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group3_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group4_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group5_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group6_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group7_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   group8_percent   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–10 CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
simple_plan	Name of the resource plan
consumer_group1	Name of the consumer group
group1_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
consumer_group2	Name of the consumer group
group2_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
consumer_group3	Name of the consumer group
group3_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
consumer_group4	Name of the consumer group
group4_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
consumer_group5	Name of the consumer group
group5_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)

Table 131–10 (Cont.) CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
consumer_group6	Name of the consumer group
group6_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
consumer_group7	Name of the consumer group
group7_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
consumer_group8	OTHER_GROUPS - all sessions that aren't mapped to a consumer group.
group8_cpu	Percentage for group (deprecated)
group1_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group2_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group3_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group4_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group5_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group6_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group7_percent	Percentage of resources allocated for this consumer group
group8_percent	Percentage of resources allocated to other groups

DELETE_CATEGORY Procedure

This procedure deletes an existing resource consumer group category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CATEGORY (
   category        IN    VARCHAR2,
   new_comment     IN    VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–11 DELETE_CATEGORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
category	Name of consumer group category

DELETE_CDB_PLAN Procedure

This procedure deletes the consolidation resource plan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CDB_PLAN (
   plan                    IN    VARCHAR2(32)   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–12 DELETE_CDB_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the consolidation plan

Usage Notes

This procedure can be run only from the root container.

DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure deletes the plan directives of the consolidation resource plan. Once the plan directive is deleted, the pluggable database will get the default resource allocation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                    IN    VARCHAR2(32)   DEFAULT NULL,
   puggable_database       IN    VARCHAR2(32)   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–13 DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`plan`	Name of the consolidation plan
`pluggable_database`	Name of the pluggable database in which the plan directive is to be deleted

Usage Notes

This procedure can be run only from the root container.

DELETE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

This procedure deletes entries which define resource consumer groups.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CONSUMER_GROUP (
   consumer_group IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–14 DELETE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
consumer_group	Name of the consumer group to be deleted

DELETE_PLAN Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified plan as well as all the plan directives to which it refers.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_PLAN (
   plan IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–15 DELETE_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the resource plan to delete

DELETE_PLAN_CASCADE Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified plan and all of its descendants (plan directives, subplans, consumer groups). Mandatory objects and directives are not deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_PLAN_CASCADE (
   plan IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–16 DELETE_PLAN_CASCADE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
plan	Name of the plan

Usage Notes

If DELETE_PLAN_CASCADE encounters any error, then it rolls back the operation, and nothing is deleted.

DELETE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure deletes resource plan directives.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   plan              IN VARCHAR2,
   group_or_subplan  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–17 DELETE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the resource plan
group_or_subplan	Name of the group or subplan

END_SQL_BLOCK Procedure

This procedure, to be used with parallel statement queuing, indicates the end of a block of SQL statements that should be treated as a group by resource manager.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.END_SQL_BLOCK;
```

Usage Notes

For more information, see "Parallel Statement Queuing" and "Managing Parallel Statement Queuing with Resource Manager" in *Oracle Database VLDB and Partitioning Guide*.

SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING Procedure

This procedure adds, deletes, or modifies entries that map sessions to consumer groups, based on the session's login and runtime attributes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING(
   attribute        IN VARCHAR2,
   value            IN VARCHAR2,
   consumer_group   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–18 SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
attribute	Mapping attribute to add or modify. It can be one of the Constants listed.
value	Attribute value to match. This includes both absolute mapping and regular expressions.
consumer_group	Name of the mapped consumer group, or NULL to delete a mapping

Usage Notes

- If no mapping exists for the given attribute and value, a mapping to the given consumer group will be created. If a mapping already exists for the given attribute and value, the mapped consumer group will be updated to the one given. If the consumer_group argument is NULL, then any mapping from the given attribute and value will be deleted.
- The subprogram supports simple regex expressions for the value parameter. It implements the same semantics as the SQL 'LIKE' operator. Specifically, it uses '%' as amulticharacter wildcard and '_' as a single character wildcard. The '\' character can be used to escape the wildcards. Note that wildcards can only be used if the attribute is one of the following:
  - CLIENT_OS_USER
  - CLIENT_PROGRAM
  - CLIENT_MACHINE
  - MODULE_NAME
  - MODULE_NAME_ACTION
  - SERVICE_MODULE
  - SERVICE_MODULE_ACTION
- Consumer group mapping comparisons for DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CLIENT_PROGRAM are performed by stripping the @ sign and following characters from V$SESSION.PROGRAM before comparing it to the CLIENT_PROGRAM value supplied.

SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING_PRI Procedure

Multiple attributes of a session can be used to map the session to a consumer group. This procedure prioritizes the attribute mappings.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING_PRI(
   explicit               IN NUMBER,
   oracle_user            IN NUMBER,
   service_name           IN NUMBER,
   client_os_user         IN NUMBER,
   client_program         IN NUMBER,
   client_machine         IN NUMBER,
   module_name            IN NUMBER,
   module_name_action     IN NUMBER,
   service_module         IN NUMBER,
   service_module_action  IN NUMBER,
   client_id              IN NUMBER DEFAULT 11);
```

Parameters

Table 131–19 SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING_PRI Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
explicit	Priority of the explicit mapping
oracle_user	Priority of the Oracle user name mapping
service_name	Priority of the client service name mapping
client_os_user	Priority of the client operating system user name mapping
client_program	Priority of the client program mapping
client_machine	Priority of the client machine mapping
module_name	Priority of the application module name mapping
module_name_action	Priority of the application module name and action mapping
service_module	Priority of the service name and application module name mapping
module_name_action	Priority of the service name, application module name, and application action mapping
client_id	Client identifier

Usage Notes

- This procedure requires that you include the pseudo-attribute `explicit` as an argument. It must be set to 1. It indicates that explicit consumer group switches have the highest priority. You explicitly switch consumer groups with these package procedures:
  - `DBMS_SESSION.SWITCH_CURRENT_CONSUMER_GROUP`
  - `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_SESS`
  - `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_USER`
- Each priority value must be a unique integer from 1 to 11. Together, they establish an ordering where 1 is the highest priority and 11 is the lowest.

SET_INITIAL_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 11gR1. While the procedure remains available in the package, Initial Consumer Group is set by the session-to-consumer group mapping rules.

The initial consumer group of a user is the consumer group to which any session created by that user initially belongs. This procedure sets the initial resource consumer group for a user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SET_INITIAL_CONSUMER_GROUP (
   user             IN   VARCHAR2,
   consumer_group   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–20 SET_INITIAL_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
user	Name of the user
consumer_group	User's initial consumer group

Usage Notes

- The ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER or the ALTER USER system privilege are required to be able to execute this procedure. The user, or PUBLIC, must be directly granted switch privilege to a consumer group before it can be set to be the user's initial consumer group. Switch privilege for the initial consumer group cannot come from a role granted to that user.

  > **Note:** These semantics are similar to those for ALTER USER DEFAULT ROLE.

- If the initial consumer group for a user has never been set, then the user's initial consumer group is automatically the consumer group: DEFAULT_CONSUMER_GROUP.
- DEFAULT_CONSUMER_GROUP has switch privileges granted to PUBLIC; therefore, all users are automatically granted switch privilege for this consumer group. Upon deletion of a consumer group, all users having the deleted group as their initial consumer group now have DEFAULT_CONSUMER_GROUP as their initial consumer group. All currently active sessions belonging to a deleted consumer group are switched to DEFAULT_CONSUMER_GROUP.

SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA Procedure

This procedure submits pending changes for the resource manager. It clears the pending area after validating and committing the changes (if valid).

Note: A call to `SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA` may fail even if `VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA` succeeds. This may happen if a plan being deleted is loaded by an instance after a call to `VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA`, but before a call to `SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA;
```

SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_SESS Procedure

This procedure changes the resource consumer group of a specific session. It also changes the consumer group of any (parallel execution servers that are related to the top user session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_SESS (
   session_id      IN NUMBER,
   session_serial  IN NUMBER,
   consumer_group  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–21 SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_SESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
session_id	SID column from the view V$SESSION
session_serial	SERIAL# column from view V$SESSION.
consumer_group	Name of the consumer group to which to switch

SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_USER Procedure

This procedure changes the resource consumer group for all sessions with a given user ID. It also changes the consumer group of any parallel execution servers that are related to the top user session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_USER (
   user            IN VARCHAR2,
   consumer_group  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 131–22 SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_USER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
user	Name of the user
consumer_group	Name of the consumer group to which to switch

Usage Notes

- The SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_SESS Procedure and the SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP_FOR_USER procedures let you raise or lower the allocation of CPU resources of certain sessions or users. This provides a functionality similar to the nice command on UNIX.
- These procedures cause the session to be moved into the newly specified consumer group immediately.

SWITCH_PLAN Procedure

This procedure sets the current resource manager plan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SWITCH_PLAN(
   plan_name                     IN   VARCHAR2,
   sid                           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '*',
   allow_scheduler_plan_switches IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 131–23 SWITCH_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan_name	Name of the plan to which to switch. Passing in an empty string ('') for the plan_name, disables the resource manager
sid	The sid parameter is relevant only in an Oracle Real Application Clusters environment. This parameter lets you change the plan for a particular instance. Specify the sid of the instance where you want to change the plan. Or specify '*' if you want Oracle to change the plan for all instances.
allow_scheduler_plan_ switches	FALSE - disables automated plan switches by the job scheduler at window boundaries. To reenable automated plan switches, switch_plan must be called again by the administrator with allow_scheduler_plan_switches set to TRUE. By default automated plan switches by the job scheduler are enabled.

UPDATE_CATEGORY Procedure

This procedure updates an existing resource consumer group category.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CATEGORY (
   category        IN    VARCHAR2,
   new_comment     IN    VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–24 UPDATE_CATEGORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
category	Name of consumer group category
new_comment	User comment

UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure updates the plan directives with regard to automated maintenance tasks in the root container. By default, all maintenance tasks occur directly in the PDBs themselves.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                         IN    VARCHAR2,
   new_comment                  IN    VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   new_shares                   IN    NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL,
   new_utilization_limit        IN    NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_server_limit    IN    NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–25 UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the consolidation plan
new_comment	New user comment
new_shares	Specifies the new share of resource allocation for the root container's automated maintenance tasks
new_utilization_limit	Specifies the new maximum percentage of CPU that automated maintenance tasks in the root container can utilize
new_parallel_server_limit	Specifies the new maximum percentage of parallel_servers_target parallel servers that automated maintenance tasks in the root container are allowed to use

Usage Notes

- By default for automated maintenance tasks, the values are
  - shares: -1
  - utilization_limit: 90
  - parallel_server_limit: 100
- The shares = -1 means that the automated maintenance tasks get an allocation of 20% of the system. If the user specifies the sharesb it behaves the same properties as the other CDB plan directive functions. If the user does not change the shares or later changes it back to -1, autotask will get 20% of the system.
- This procedure can be run only from the root container.

UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure updates the plan directives of the consolidation resource plan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                        IN    VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   new_comment                 IN    VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   new_shares                  IN    NUMBER      DEFAULT NULL,
   new_utilization_limit       IN    NUMBER      DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_server_limit   IN    NUMBER      DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–26 UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the consolidation plan
new_commnent	New user comment
new_shares	Specifies the share of resource allocation for the pluggable database. CPU Resource Manager is enabled by specifying shares for each PDB. The new_shares parameter is also used for Parallel Statement Queuing.
new_utilization_limit	Specifies the maximum percentage of CPU that the pluggable database can utilize.
new_parallel_server_limit	Specifies the maximum percentage of parallel_servers_target parallel servers that the pluggable database can use.

Usage Notes

- By default, the default values are
  - new_shares: 1
  - utilization_limit: 100
  - parallel_server_limit: 100
- Note that the default values are NULL. This has the same meaning as in UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure. If the user does not specify a value, the value will not be modified.
- This procedure can be run only from the root container.

UPDATE_CDB_PLAN Procedure

This procedure updates the consolidation resource plan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_PLAN (
   plan                          IN    VARCHAR2(32),
   new_comment                   IN    VARCHAR2(2000)   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–27 UPDATE_CDB_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the consolidation plan
new_comment	User comment

Usage Notes

This procedure can be run only from the root container.

UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure updates the plan directives of the consolidation resource plan.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                        IN    VARCHAR2 (30),
   puggable_database           IN    VARCHAR2 (30)
   new_comment                 IN    VARCHAR2 (200)       DEFAULT NULL,
   new_shares                  IN    NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL,
   new_utilization_limit       IN    NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_server_limit   IN    NUMBER         DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–28 UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the consolidation plan
pluggable_database	Name of the pluggable database
new_comment	New user comment
new_shares	Specifies the share of resource allocation for the pluggable database. CPU Resource Manager is enabled by specifying shares for each PDB. The shares parameter is also used for Parallel Statement Queuing. If no share is specified, the default is obtained from the default directive, specified through the UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE Procedure.
new_utilization_limit	Specifies the new maximum percentage of CPU that the pluggable database can utilize.
new_parallel_server_limit	Specifies the new maximum percentage of parallel_servers_target parallel servers that the pluggable database can use.

Usage Notes

- The default value for the new_* parameters is NULL which indicates that the existing value is left unchanged. If the user does not specify one of the arguments when calling this function, the value is not modified.
- This procedure can be run only from the root container.

UPDATE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

This procedure updates entries which define resource consumer groups.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CONSUMER_GROUP (
   consumer_group  IN VARCHAR2,
   new_comment     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_cpu_mth     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_mth    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_category    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–29 UPDATE_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
consumer_group	Name of consumer group
new_comment	New user comment
new_cpu_mth	Name of new method for CPU resource allocation (deprecated)
new_mgmt_mth	Name of new method for CPU resource allocation
new_category	New consumer group category

Usage Notes

If the parameters to the UPDATE_CONSUMER_GROUP procedure are not specified, then they remain unchanged in the data dictionary.

UPDATE_PLAN Procedure

This procedure updates entries which define resource plans.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_PLAN (
   plan                                IN VARCHAR2,
   new_comment                         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_cpu_mth                         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_active_sess_pool_mth            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_degree_limit_mth       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_queueing_mth                    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_mth                        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_sub_plan                        IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 131–30 UPDATE_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of resource plan
new_comment	New user comment
new_cpu_mth	Name of new allocation method for CPU resources (deprecated)
new_active_sess_pool_mth	Name of new method for maximum active sessions
new_parallel_degree_limit_mth	Name of new method for degree of parallelism
new_queueing_mth	Specifies type of queuing policy to use with active session pool feature
new_mgmt_mth	Resource allocation method for specifying how much resources (for example, CPU or I/O) each consumer group or sub-plan gets ▪ EMPHASIS - for multilevel plans that use percentages to specify how I/O resources are distributed among consumer groups. ▪ RATIO - for single-level plans that use ratios to specify how I/O resources are distributed.
new_sub_plan	New setting for whether the plan is only intended for use as a sub-plan

Usage Notes

- If the parameters to UPDATE_PLAN Procedure are not specified, then they remain unchanged in the data dictionary.
- If you want to use any default resource allocation method, then you do not need to specify it when creating or updating a plan.

UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure updates resource plan directives.

> **Note:** The parameters `new_max_utilization_limit` and `new_parallel_target_percentage` are deprecated with Oracle Database 11g Release 1 (12.1.0.1), and are replaced by `new_utilization_limit` and `new_parallel_server_limit`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   plan                             IN VARCHAR2,
   group_or_subplan                 IN VARCHAR2,
   new_comment                      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_cpu_p1                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p2                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p3                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p4                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p5                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p6                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p7                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_cpu_p8                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_active_sess_pool_p1          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_queueing_p1                  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_degree_limit_p1     IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_group                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_time                  IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_estimate              IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   new_max_est_exec_time            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_undo_pool                    IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_max_idle_time                IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_max_idle_blocker_time        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   switch_time_in_call              IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL, -- deprecated
   new_mgmt_p1                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p2                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p3                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p4                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p5                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p6                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p7                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_mgmt_p8                      IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_io_megabytes          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_io_reqs               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_for_call              IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT NULL,
   new_max_utilization_limit        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_target_percentage   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new parallel_queue_timeout       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_server_limit        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_utilization_limit            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_io_logical            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_switch_elapsed_time          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_shares                       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   new_parallel_stmt_critical       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 131–31 UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan	Name of the resource plan
group_or_subplan	Name of the consumer group or subplan
new_comment	Comment for the plan directive
new_cpu_p1	Deprecated - use new_mgmt_p1 instead
new_cpu_p2	Deprecated - use new_mgmt_p2 instead
new_cpu_p3	Deprecated - use new_mgmt_p3 instead
new_cpu_p4	Deprecated- use new_mgmt_p4 instead
new_cpu_p5	Deprecated - use new_mgmt_p5 instead
new_cpu_p6	Deprecated- use new_mgmt_p6 instead
new_cpu_p7	Deprecated- use new_mgmt_p7 instead
new_cpu_p8	Deprecated- use new_mgmt_p8 instead
new_active_sess_pool_p1	Specifies maximum number of concurrently active sessions for a consumer group. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_queueing_p1	Specified time (in seconds) after which a job in the inactive session queue (waiting for execution) will time out. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_parallel_degree_limit_p1	Specifies a limit on the degree of parallelism for any operation. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_switch_group	Specifies consumer group to which this session is switched if other switch criteria are met. Default is NULL. If the group name is 'CANCEL_SQL', the current call will be canceled when other switch criteria are met. If the group name is 'KILL_SESSION', the session will be killed when other switch criteria are met.
new_switch_time	Specifies time (in CPU seconds) that a session can execute before an action is taken. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_switch_estimate	If TRUE, tells Oracle to use its execution time estimate to automatically switch the consumer group of an operation before beginning its execution. Default is FALSE.
new_max_est_exec_time	Specifies the maximum execution time (in CPU seconds) allowed for a session. If the optimizer estimates that an operation will take longer than MAX_EST_EXEC_TIME, the operation is not started and ORA-07455 is issued. If the optimizer does not provide an estimate, this directive has no effect. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_undo_pool	Limits the size in kilobytes of the undo records corresponding to uncommitted transactions by this consumer group
new_max_idle_time	Indicates the maximum session idle time. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_max_idle_blocker_time	Maximum amount of time in seconds that a session can be idle while blocking another session's acquisition of a resource
new_switch_time_in_call	Deprecated. If this parameter is specified, new_switch_time will be effectively set to new_switch_time_in_call and new_switch_for_call will be effectively set to TRUE.

Table 131–31 (Cont.) UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_mgmt_p1	Resource allocation value for level 1 (replaces new_cpu_p1): ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the first level ■ RATIO - specifies the weight of resource usage
new_mgmt_p2	Resource allocation value for level 2 (replaces new_cpu_p2) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the second level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_mgmt_p3	Resource allocation value for level 3 (replaces new_cpu_p3) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the third level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_mgmt_p4	Resource allocation value for level 4 (replaces new_cpu_p4) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the fourth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_mgmt_p5	Resource allocation value for level 5 (replaces new_cpu_p5) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the fifth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_mgmt_p6	Resource allocation value for level 6 (replaces new_cpu_p6) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the sixth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_mgmt_p7	Resource allocation value for level 7 (replaces new_cpu_p7) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the seventh level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_mgmt_p8	Resource allocation value for level 8 (replaces new_cpu_p8) ■ EMPHASIS - specifies the resource percentage at the eighth level ■ RATIO - non-applicable
new_switch_io_megabytes	Specifies the amount of I/O (in MB) that a session can issue before an action is taken. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_switch_io_reqs	Specifies the number of I/O requests that a session can issue before an action is taken. Default is NULL, which means unlimited.
new_switch_for_call	Specifies that if an action is taken because of the new_switch_time, new_switch_io_megabytes, or new_switch_io_reqs parameters, the consumer group is restored to its original consumer group at the end of the top call. Default is FALSE, which means that the original consumer group is not restored at the end of the top call.
new_max_utilization_limit	Deprecated - use new_utilization_limit instead

Table 131–31 (Cont.) UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_parallel_target_percentage	Deprecated - use new_parallel_server_limit instead
new_parallel_queue_timeout	Specifies the time (in seconds) that a query may remain in its Consumer Group's parallel statement queue before it is removed and terminated with an error (ORA- 07454).
new_parallel_server_limit	Parallel server limit. Setting this overwrites the limit for parallel server set by utilization_limit.
new_utilization_limit	Resource limit. For CPU, this limits the CPU utilization for the consumer group. For parallel servers, this limits the parallel servers used as a percentage of parallel_servers_target.
new_switch_elapsed_time	Elapsed time that will trigger the action specified by switch_group. As with other switch directives, if new_switch_for_call is TRUE, the elapsed time is accumulated from the start of a call. Otherwise, the elapsed time is accumulated for the length of the session.
new_shares	Specifies the share of resource allocation for the pluggable database. CPU Resource Manager is enabled by specifying shares for each PDB. The shares parameter is also used for Parallel Statement Queuing. If CPU Resource Manager is enabled, then the default value is 1.
new_parallel_stmt_critical	If set to BYPASS_QUEUE, parallel statements from this consumer group are not queued. Default is NULL, which means that parallel statements are eligible for queuing.

Usage Notes

- If the parameters for UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE are left unspecified, then they remain unchanged in the data dictionary.
- For new_max_idle_time and new_max_idle_blocker_time, PMON will check these limits once a minute. If it finds a session that has exceeded one of the limits, it will forcibly kill the session and clean up all its state.
- The parameter new_switch_time_in_call is mostly useful for three-tier applications where the mid-tier server is implementing session pooling. By turning on new_switch_time_in_call, the resource usage of one client will not affect the consumer group of a future client that happens to be executed on the same session.
- To clear (zero or nullify) any numeric parameter in a resource plan directive, set it to -1 using the UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure.

VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA Procedure

This procedure validates pending changes for the resource manager.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA;
```

132

DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS

The `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS` package maintains privileges associated with the Resource Manager.

> **See Also:** For more information on using the Database Resource Manager, see *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide.*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Summary of DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS Subprograms

Table 132–1 DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GRANT_SWITCH_ CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure on page 132-3	Grants the privilege to switch to resource consumer groups
GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 132-4	Performs a grant of a system privilege
REVOKE_SWITCH_ CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure on page 132-5	Revokes the privilege to switch to resource consumer groups.
REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 132-6	Performs a revoke of a system privilege

GRANT_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

This procedure grants the privilege to switch to a resource consumer group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.GRANT_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP (
   grantee_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   consumer_group IN VARCHAR2,
   grant_option   IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 132–2 GRANT_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee_name	Name of the user or role to whom privilege is to be granted.
consumer_group	Name of consumer group.
grant_option	TRUE if grantee should be allowed to grant access, FALSE otherwise.

Usage Notes

If you grant permission to switch to a particular consumer group to a user, then that user can immediately switch their current consumer group to the new consumer group.

If you grant permission to switch to a particular consumer group to a role, then any users who have been granted that role and have enabled that role can immediately switch their current consumer group to the new consumer group.

If you grant permission to switch to a particular consumer group to PUBLIC, then any user can switch to that consumer group.

If the grant_option parameter is TRUE, then users granted switch privilege for the consumer group may also grant switch privileges for that consumer group to others.

In order to set the initial consumer group of a user, you must grant the switch privilege for that group to the user.

See Also: Chapter 131, "DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER"

Examples

```
BEGIN
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.GRANT_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP (
 'scott', 'mail_maintenance_group', true);
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.set_consumer_group_mapping(
  dbms_resource_manager.oracle_user, 'scott','mail_maintenance_group');
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
END;
/
```

GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure performs a grant of a system privilege to a user or role.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE (
   grantee_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   privilege_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER',
   admin_option    IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 132–3 GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee_name	Name of the user or role to whom privilege is to be granted.
privilege_name	Name of the privilege to be granted.
admin_option	TRUE if the grant is with admin_option, FALSE otherwise.

Usage Notes

Currently, Oracle provides only one system privilege for the Resource Manager: ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER. Database administrators have this system privilege with the ADMIN option. The grantee and the revokee can either be a user or a role. Users that have been granted the system privilege with the ADMIN option can also grant this privilege to others.

Examples

The following call grants this privilege to a user called scott without the ADMIN option:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE (
 grantee_name => 'scott',
 privilege_name => 'ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER',
 admin_option => FALSE);
END;
/
```

REVOKE_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

This procedure revokes the privilege to switch to a resource consumer group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.REVOKE_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP (
   revokee_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   consumer_group IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 132–4 REVOKE_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
revokee_name	Name of user/role from which to revoke access.
consumer_group	Name of consumer group.

Usage Notes

If you revoke a user's switch privilege for a particular consumer group, then any subsequent attempts by that user to switch to that consumer group will fail.

If you revoke the initial consumer group from a user, then that user will automatically be part of the DEFAULT_CONSUMER_GROUP consumer group when logging in.

If you revoke the switch privilege for a consumer group from a role, then any users who only had switch privilege for the consumer group through that role will not be able to switch to that consumer group.

If you revoke the switch privilege for a consumer group from PUBLIC, then any users who could previously only use the consumer group through PUBLIC will not be able to switch to that consumer group.

Examples

The following example revokes the privileges to switch to mail_maintenance_group from Scott:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.REVOKE_SWITCH_CONSUMER_GROUP (
 'scott', 'mail_maintenance_group');
END;
/
```

REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure performs a revoke of a system privilege from a user or role.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE (
   revokee_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   privilege_name IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER');
```

Parameters

Table 132–5 REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
revokee_name	Name of the user or role from whom privilege is to be revoked.
privilege_name	Name of the privilege to be revoked.

Examples

The following call revokes the ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER from user scott:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER_PRIVS.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE ('scott');
END;
/
```

133

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE

The DBMS_RESULT_CACHE package provides an interface to allow the DBA to administer that part of the shared pool that is used by the SQL result cache and the PL/SQL function result cache. Both these caches use the same infrastructure. Therefore, for example, DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.BYPASS determines whether both caches are bypassed or both caches are used, and DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.FLUSH flushes both all the cached results for SQL queries and all the cached results for PL/SQL functions.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about "Using the Cross-Session PL/SQL Function Result Cache"
- *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about "Result Cache Concepts"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RESULT_CACHE

Security Model

Only database administrators should be granted the `EXECUTE` privilege for this package.

Constants

Table 133–1 DBMS_RESULT_CACHE Constants

Constant	Definition
STATUS_BYPS	CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'BYPASS';
STATUS_CORR	CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'CORRUPT';
STATUS_DISA	CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'DISABLED';
STATUS_ENAB	CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'ENABLED';
STATUS_SYNC	CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'SYNC';

Summary of DBMS_RESULT_CACHE Subprograms

Table 133–2 DBMS_RESULT_CACHE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BYPASS Procedure on page 133-6	Sets the bypass mode for the Result Cache
FLUSH Function & Procedure on page 133-8	Attempts to remove all the objects from the Result Cache, and depending on the arguments retains or releases the memory and retains or clears the statistics
INVALIDATE Functions & Procedures on page 133-9	Invalidates all the result-set objects that dependent upon the specified dependency object
INVALIDATE_OBJECT Functions & Procedures on page 133-10	Invalidates the specified result-set object(s)
MEMORY_REPORT Procedure on page 133-11	Produces the memory usage report for the Result Cache
STATUS Function on page 133-12	Checks the status of the Result Cache

BYPASS Procedure

This procedure sets the bypass mode for the Result Cache:

- When bypass mode is turned on, it implies that cached results are no longer used and that no new results are saved in the cache.
- When bypass mode is turned off, the cache resumes normal operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.BYPASS (
   bypass_mode    IN   BOOLEAN,
   session        IN   BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 133–3 BYPASS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bypass_mode	■ TRUE => Result Cache usage is bypassed ■ FALSE => Result Cache usage is turned on
session	■ TRUE => Applies to current session ■ FALSE (default) => Applies to all sessions

Usage Notes

This operation is database instance specific.

Examples

This operation can be used when there is a need to hot patch PL/SQL code in a running system. If a code-patch is applied to a PL/SQL module on which a result cached function directly or transitively depends, then the cached results associated with the result cache function are not automatically flushed (if the instance is not restarted/bounced). This must be manually achieved.

To ensure correctness during the patching process follow these steps:

1. Place the result cache in bypass mode, and flush existing result.

   ```
   BEGIN
      DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.BYPASS(TRUE);
      DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.FLUSH;
   END;
   /
   ```

   This step must be performed on each instance if in a Oracle Real Application Clusters environment.

2. Apply the PL/SQL code patches.
3. Resume use of the result cache, by turning off the cache bypass mode.

   ```
   BEGIN
      DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.BYPASS(FALSE);
   END;
   /
   ```

This step must be performed on each instance if in a Oracle Real Application Clusters environment.

FLUSH Function & Procedure

This function and procedure attempts to remove all the objects from the Result Cache, and depending on the arguments retains or releases the memory and retains or clears the statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.FLUSH (
   retainMem  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   retainSta  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.FLUSH (
   retainMem  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   retainSta  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 133–4 FLUSH Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
retainMem	■ TRUE => retains the free memory in the cache ■ FALSE (default) => releases the free memory to the system
retainSta	■ TRUE => retains the existing cache statistics ■ FALSE (default) => clears the existing cache statistics

Return Values

TRUE if successful in removing all the objects.

INVALIDATE Functions & Procedures

This function and procedure invalidates all the result-set objects that dependent upon the specified dependency object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE (
   owner        IN  VARCHAR2,
   name         IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE (
   owner       IN  VARCHAR2,
   name        IN  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE (
  object_id    IN BINARY_INTEGER)
 RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE (
   object_id    IN BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 133–5 INVALIDATE Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Schema name
name	Object name
object_id	Dictionary object number

Return Values

The number of objects invalidated.

INVALIDATE_OBJECT Functions & Procedures

This function and procedure invalidates the specified result-set object(s).

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE_OBJECT (
   id          IN  BINARY_INTEGER)
 RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE_OBJECT (
   id          IN  BINARY_INTEGER);

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE_OBJECT (
  cache_id     IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.INVALIDATE_OBJECT (
   cache_id   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 133–6 INVALIDATE_OBJECT Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
id	Address of the cache object in the Result Cache
cache_id	Cache-id

Return Values

The number of objects invalidated.

MEMORY_REPORT Procedure

This procedure produces the memory usage report for the Result Cache.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.MEMORY_REPORT (
   detailed   IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 133–7 MEMORY_REPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
detailed	■ TRUE => produces a more detailed report ■ FALSE (default) => produces the standard report

Usage Notes

Invoking this procedure from SQL*Plus requires that the serveroutput be turned on.

STATUS Function

This function checks the status of the Result Cache.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.STATUS
   RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

One of the following values:

- `STATUS_DISA` - Cache is not available
- `STATUS_ENAB` - Cache is available
- `STATUS_BYPS`: Cache has been made temporarilyunavailable.
- `STATUS_SYNC` - Cache is available, but synchronizing with Oracle RAC nodes

134

DBMS_RESUMABLE

With the DBMS_RESUMABLE package, you can suspend large operations that run out of space or reach space limits after executing for a long time, fix the problem, and make the statement resume execution. In this way you can write applications without worrying about running into space-related errors.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RESUMABLE

Operational Notes

When you suspend a statement, you should log the suspension in the alert log. You should also register a procedure to be executed when the statement is suspended. Using a view, you can monitor the progress of the statement and indicate whether the statement is currently executing or suspended.

Suspending a statement automatically results in suspending the transaction. Thus all transactional resources are held during a statement suspend and resume. When the error condition disappears, the suspended statement automatically resumes execution. A resumable space allocation can be suspended and resumed multiple times during execution.

A suspension timeout interval is associated with resumable space allocations. A resumable space allocation that is suspended for the timeout interval (the default is two hours) wakes up and returns an exception to the user. A suspended statement may be forced to throw an exception using the `DBMS_RESUMABLE.ABORT()` procedure.

Summary of DBMS_RESUMABLE Subprograms

Table 134–1 DBMS_RESUMABLE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ABORT Procedure on page 134-5	Aborts a suspended resumable space allocation
GET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Function on page 134-6	Returns the current timeout value of the resumable space allocations for a session with `session_id`
GET_TIMEOUT Function on page 134-7	Returns the current timeout value of resumable space allocations for the current session
SET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 134-8	Sets the timeout of resumable space allocations for a session with `session_id`
SET_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 134-9	Sets the timeout of resumable space allocations for the current session
SPACE_ERROR_INFO Function on page 134-10	Looks for space-related errors in the error stack, otherwise returning `FALSE`

ABORT Procedure

This procedure aborts a suspended resumable space allocation. The parameter `session_id` is the session ID in which the statement is executed. For a parallel DML/DDL, `session_id` is any session ID that participates in the parallel DML/DDL. This operation is guaranteed to succeed. The procedure can be called either inside or outside of the `AFTER SUSPEND` trigger.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESUMABLE.ABORT (
   session_id  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 134–2 ABORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`session_id`	The session identifier of the resumable space allocation.

Usage Notes

To call an `ABORT` procedure, you must be the owner of the session with `session_id`, have `ALTER SYSTEM` privileges, or be a DBA.

GET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Function

This function returns the current timeout value of resumable space allocations for a session with `session_id`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESUMABLE.GET_SESSION_TIMEOUT (
   session_id  IN NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 134–3 GET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`session_id`	The session identifier of the resumable space allocation.

Return Values

Table 134–4 GET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
`NUMBER`	The current timeout value of resumable space allocations for a session with `session_id`. The timeout is returned in seconds.

Usage Notes

If `session_id` does not exist, the `GET_SESSION_TIMEOUT` function returns -1.

GET_TIMEOUT Function

This function returns the current timeout value of resumable space allocations for the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESUMABLE.GET_TIMEOUT
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Return Values

Table 134–5 GET_TIMEOUT Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
NUMBER	The current timeout value of resumable space allocations for the current session. The returned value is in seconds.

Usage Notes

If the current session is not resumable enabled, the GET_TIMEOUT function returns -1.

SET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Procedure

This procedure sets the timeout of resumable space allocations for a session with `session_id`. The new timeout setting applies to the session immediately. If `session_id` does not exist, no operation occurs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESUMABLE.SET_SESSION_TIMEOUT (
   session_id  IN NUMBER,
   timeout     IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 134–6 SET_SESSION_TIMEOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`session_id`	The session identifier of the resumable space allocation.
`timeout`	The timeout of the resumable space allocation.

SET_TIMEOUT Procedure

This procedure sets the timeout of resumable space allocations for the current session. The new timeout setting applies to the session immediately.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESUMABLE.SET_TIMEOUT (
   timeout  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 134–7 SET_TIMEOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
timeout	The timeout of the resumable space allocation.

SPACE_ERROR_INFO Function

This function looks for space-related errors in the error stack. If it cannot find a space related error, it will return `FALSE`. Otherwise, `TRUE` is returned and information about the particular object that causes the space error is returned.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RESUMABLE.SPACE_ERROR_INFO
   error_type        OUT VARCHAR2,
   object_type       OUT VARCHAR2,
   object_owner      OUT VARCHAR2,
   table_space_name  OUT VARCHAR2,
   object_name       OUT VARCHAR2,
   sub_object_name   OUT VARCHAR2)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 134–8 SPACE_ERROR_INFO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`error_type`	The space error type. It will be one of the following: ■ `NO MORE SPACE` ■ `MAX EXTENTS REACHED` ■ `SPACE QUOTA EXCEEDED`
`object_type`	The object type. It will be one of the following: ■ TABLE ■ INDEX ■ CLUSTER ■ TABLE SPACE ■ ROLLBACK SEGMENT ■ UNDO SEGMENT ■ LOB SEGMENT ■ TEMP SEGMENT ■ INDEX PARTITION ■ TABLE PARTITION ■ LOB PARTITION ■ TABLE SUBPARTITION ■ INDEX SUBPARTITION ■ LOB SUBPARTITION The type can also be `NULL` if it does not apply.
`object_owner`	The owner of the object. `NULL` if it cannot be determined.
`table_space_name`	The table space where the object resides. `NULL` if it cannot be determined.
`object_name`	The name of rollback segment, temp segment, table, index, or cluster.
`sub_object_name`	The partition name or sub-partition name of `LOB, TABLE,` or `INDEX. NULL` if it cannot be determined.

135

DBMS_RLS

The DBMS_RLS package contains the fine-grained access control administrative interface, which is used to implement Virtual Private Database (VPD). DBMS_RLS is available with the Enterprise Edition only.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Security Guide* for usage information on DBMS_RLS.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RLS

Overview

The functionality to support fine-grained access control is based on dynamic predicates, where security rules are not embedded in views, but are acquired at the statement parse time, when the base table or view is referenced in a DML statement.

A dynamic predicate for a table, view, or synonym is generated by a PL/SQL function, which is associated with a security policy through a PL/SQL interface. For example:

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY (
   'hr', 'employees', 'emp_policy', 'hr', 'emp_sec', 'select', 'user_ctx',
'time');
```

Whenever the EMPLOYEES table, under the HR schema, is referenced in a query or subquery (SELECT), the server calls the EMP_SEC function (under the HR schema). This function returns a predicate specific to the current user for the EMP_POLICY policy. The policy function may generate the predicates based on the session environment variables available during the function call. These variables usually appear in the form of application contexts. The policy can specify any combination of security-relevant columns and of these statement types: INDEX, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE.

The server then produces a transient view with the text:

```
SELECT * FROM hr.employees WHERE P1
```

Here, P1 (for example, where SAL > 10000, or even a subquery) is the predicate returned from the EMP_SEC function. The server treats the EMPLOYEES table as a view and does the view expansion just like the ordinary view, except that the view text is taken from the transient view instead of the data dictionary.

If the predicate contains subqueries, then the owner (definer) of the policy function is used to resolve objects within the subqueries and checks security for those objects. In other words, users who have access privilege to the policy-protected objects do not need to know anything about the policy. They do not need to be granted object privileges for any underlying security policy. Furthermore, the users do not require EXECUTE privilege on the policy function, because the server makes the call with the function definer's right.

> **Note:** The transient view can preserve the updatability of the parent object because it is derived from a single table or view with predicate only; that is, no JOIN, ORDER BY, GROUP BY, and so on.

DBMS_RLS also provides the interface to drop or enable security policies. For example, you can drop or enable the EMP_POLICY with the following PL/SQL statements:

```
DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY('hr', 'employees', 'emp_policy');
DBMS_RLS.ENABLE_POLICY('hr', 'employees', 'emp_policy', TRUE);
```

Security Model

A security check is performed when the transient view is created with a subquery. The schema owning the policy function, which generates the dynamic predicate, is the transient view's definer for security check and object lookup.

Constants

The DBMS_RLS package uses the constants shown in

Table 135–1 DBMS_RLS Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ADD_ATTRIBUTE_ ASSOCIATION	BINARY_ INTEGER	1	Used with DBMS_RLS.ALTER_POLICY and DBMS_RLS_ALTER_GROUPED_ POLICY: adds the specified namespace and attribute to the policy or grouped policy
REMOVE_ATTRIBUTE_ ASSOCIATION	BINARY_ INTEGER	2	Used with DBMS_RLS.ALTER_POLICY and DBMS_RLS.ALTER_GROUPED_ POLICY: removes the specified namespace and attribute to the policy or grouped policy.

Operational Notes

The DBMS_RLS procedures cause current DML transactions, if any, to commit before the operation. However, the procedures do not cause a commit first if they are inside a DDL event trigger. With DDL transactions, the DBMS_RLS procedures are part of the DDL transaction.

For example, you may create a trigger for CREATE TABLE. Inside the trigger, you may add a column through ALTER TABLE, and you can add a policy through DBMS_RLS. All these operations are in the same transaction as CREATE TABLE, even though each one is a DDL statement. The CREATE TABLE succeeds only if the trigger is completed successfully.

Views of current cursors and corresponding predicates are available from V$VPD_POLICIES.

A synonym can reference only a view or a table.

Rules and Limits

Using long identifiers is supported for VPD. The maximum length for arguments such as `object_schema`, `object_name`, and `policy_name`, which apply to objects (table names, policy names, and subprogram names) and views is 128 bytes.

Summary of DBMS_RLS Subprograms

Table 135–2 DBMS_RLS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure on page 135-9	Adds a policy associated with a policy group
ADD_POLICY Procedure on page 135-11	Adds a fine-grained access control policy to a table, view, or synonym
ADD_POLICY_CONTEXT Procedure on page 135-16	Adds the context for the active application
ALTER_POLICY Procedure on page 135-17	Associates an application context attribute with VPD policies
ALTER_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure on page 135-19	Adds application context related changes
CREATE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure on page 135-21	Creates a policy group
DELETE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure on page 135-22	Deletes a policy group
DISABLE_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure on page 135-23	Disables a row-level group security policy
DROP_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure on page 135-24	Drops a policy associated with a policy group
DROP_POLICY Procedure on page 135-25	Drops a fine-grained access control policy from a table, view, or synonym
DROP_POLICY_CONTEXT Procedure on page 135-26	Drops a driving context from the object so that it will have one less driving context
ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure on page 135-27	Enables or disables a row-level group security policy
ENABLE_POLICY Procedure on page 135-28	Enables or disables a fine-grained access control policy
REFRESH_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure on page 135-29	Reparses the SQL statements associated with a refreshed policy
REFRESH_POLICY Procedure on page 135-30	Causes all the cached statements associated with the policy to be reparsed

ADD_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure

This procedure adds a policy associated with a policy group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_GROUPED_POLICY(
   object_schema            IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   object_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   policy_group             IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT 'SYS_DEFAULT',
   policy_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   function_schema          IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   policy_function          IN  VARCHAR2,
   statement_types          IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   update_check             IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
   enable                   IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT TRUE,
   static_policy            IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
   policy_type              IN  BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
   long_predicate           IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
   sec_relevant_cols        IN  VARCHAR2,
   sec_relevant_cols_opt    IN  BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
   namespace                IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   attribute                IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 135–3 ADD_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. The default is NULL, which means that the current user schema is used as the object_schema.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added
policy_group	Name of the policy group to which the policy belongs
policy_name	Name of the policy; must be unique for the same table or view
function_schema	Schema owning the policy function. The default is NULL, which means that the current user schema is used as the function_schema.
policy_function	Name of the function that generates a predicate for the policy. If the function is defined within a package, the name of the package must be present.
statement_types	Statement types to which the policy applies. It can be any combination of INDEX, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. The default is to apply to all of these types except INDEX.
update_check	For INSERT and UPDATE statements only, setting update_check to TRUE causes the server to check the policy against the value after INSERT or UPDATE. The check applies only to the security relevant columns that are included in the policy definition. In other words, the INSERT or UPDATE operation will fail only if the security relevant column that is defined in the policy is added or updated in the INSERT or UPDATE statement.
enable	Indicates if the policy is enable when it is added. The default is TRUE.

Table 135–3 (Cont.) ADD_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
static_policy	Default is FALSE. If it is set to TRUE, the server assumes that the policy function for the static policy produces the same predicate string for anyone accessing the object, except for SYS or the privilege user who has the EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY privilege.
policy_type	Default is NULL, which means policy_type is decided by the value of static_policy. The available policy types are listed in Table 135–5. Specifying any of these policy types overrides the value of static_policy.
long_predicate	Default is FALSE, which means the policy function can return a predicate with a length of up to 4000 bytes. TRUE means the predicate text string length can be up to 32K bytes.Policies existing prior to the availability of this parameter retain a 32K limit.
sec_relevant_cols	Enables column-level Virtual Private Database (VPD), which enforces security policies when a column containing sensitive information is referenced in a query. Applies to tables and views, but not to synonyms. Specify a list of comma- or space-separated valid column names of the policy-protected object. The policy is enforced only if a specified column is referenced (or, for an abstract datatype column, its attributes are referenced) in the user SQL statement or its underlying view definition. Default is all the user-defined columns for the object.
namespace	Name which determines the application context namespace
attribute	Attribute which determines the application context attribute name

Usage Notes

- This procedure adds a policy to the specified table, view, or synonym and associates the policy with the specified policy group.
- The policy group must have been created by using the CREATE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure on page 135-21.
- The policy name must be unique within a policy group for a specific object.
- Policies from the default policy group, SYS_DEFAULT, are always executed regardless of the active policy group; however, fine-grained access control policies do not apply to users with EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY system privilege.
- If no object_schema is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.
- If no function_schema is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.

ADD_POLICY Procedure

This procedure adds a fine-grained access control policy to a table, view, or synonym.

The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out. However, this does not cause a commit first if it is inside a DDL event trigger.

See Also: Operational Notes on page 135-6

A COMMIT is also performed at the end of the operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY (
   object_schema            IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   object_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   policy_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   function_schema          IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   policy_function          IN  VARCHAR2,
   statement_types          IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   update_check             IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
   enable                   IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT TRUE,
   static_policy            IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
   policy_type              IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   long_predicate           IN  BOOLEAN        DEFAULT FALSE,
   sec_relevant_cols        IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   sec_relevant_cols_opt    IN  BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   namespace                IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL,
   attribute                IN  VARCHAR2       DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 135–4 ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. If no object_schema is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added.
policy_name	Name of policy to be added. It must be unique for the same table or view.
function_schema	Schema of the policy function (current default schema, if NULL). If no function_schema is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.
policy_function	Name of a function which generates a predicate for the policy. If the function is defined within a package, then the name of the package must be present.
statement_types	Statement types to which the policy applies. It can be any combination of INDEX, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. The default is to apply to all of these types except INDEX.

Table 135–4 (Cont.) ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
update_check	Optional argument for INSERT or UPDATE statement types. The default is FALSE. Setting update_check to TRUE causes the server to also check the policy against the value after insert or update. The check applies only to the security relevant columns that are included in the policy definition. In other words, the INSERT or UPDATE operation will fail only if the security relevant column that is defined in the policy is added or updated in the INSERT or UPDATE statement.
enable	Indicates if the policy is enabled when it is added. The default is TRUE.
static_policy	The default is FALSE. If it is set to TRUE, the server assumes that the policy function for the static policy produces the same predicate string for anyone accessing the object, except for SYS or the privileged user who has the EXEMPT ACCESS POLICY privilege.
policy_type	Default is NULL, which means policy_type is decided by the value of static_policy. The available policy types are listed in Table 135–5. Specifying any of these policy types overrides the value of static_policy.
long_predicate	Default is FALSE, which means the policy function can return a predicate with a length of up to 4000 bytes. TRUE means the predicate text string length can be up to 32K bytes.Policies existing prior to the availability of this parameter retain a 32K limit.
sec_relevant_cols	Enables column-level Virtual Private Database (VPD), which enforces security policies when a column containing sensitive information is referenced in a query. Applies to tables and views, but not to synonyms. Specify a list of comma- or space-separated valid column names of the policy-protected object. The policy is enforced only if a specified column is referenced (or, for an abstract datatype column, its attributes are referenced) in the user SQL statement or its underlying view definition. Default is all the user-defined columns for the object.
sec_relevant_cols_opt	Use with sec_relevant_cols to display all rows for column-level VPD filtered queries (SELECT only), but where sensitive columns appear as NULL. Default is set to NULL, which allows the filtering defined with sec_relevant_cols to take effect. Set to dbms_rls.ALL_ROWS to display all rows, but with sensitive column values, which are filtered by sec_relevant_cols, displayed as NULL. See "Usage Notes" on page 135-13 for restrictions and additional information about this option.
namespace	Name which determines the application context namespace
attribute	Attribute which determines the application context attribute name

Table 135–5 DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY Policy Types

Policy Type	Description
STATIC	Predicate is assumed to be the same regardless of the runtime environment. Static policy functions are executed once and then cached in SGA. Statements accessing the same object do not reexecute the policy function. However, each execution of the same cursor could produce a different row set even for the same predicate because the predicate may filter the data differently based on attributes such as SYS_CONTEXT or SYSDATE. Applies to only one object.
SHARED_STATIC	Same as STATIC except that the server first looks for a cached predicate generated by the same policy function of the same policy type. Shared across multiple objects.
CONTEXT_SENSITIVE	Server re-evaluates the policy function at statement execution time if it detects context changes since the last use of the cursor. For session pooling where multiple clients share a database session, the middle tier must reset context during client switches. Note that the server does not cache the value returned by the function for this policy type; it always executes the policy function on statement parsing. Applies to only one object.
SHARED_CONTEXT_SENSITIVE	Same as CONTEXT_SENSITIVE except that the server first looks for a cached predicate generated by the same policy function of the same policy type within the same database session. If the predicate is found in the session memory, the policy function is not reexecuted and the cached value is valid until session private application context changes occur. Shared across multiple objects.
DYNAMIC	The default policy type. Server assumes the predicate may be affected by any system or session environment at any time, and so always reexecutes the policy function upon each statement parsing and execution. Applies to only one object.

Usage Notes

- SYS is free of any security policy.
- If no object_schema is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.
- If no function_schema is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.
- The policy functions are called by the server. Following is the interface for the function:

```
FUNCTION policy_function (object_schema IN VARCHAR2, object_name VARCHAR2)
    RETURN VARCHAR2
--- object_schema is the schema owning the table or view.
--- object_name is the name of table, view, or synonym to which the policy
applies.
```

- The policy functions must have the purity level of WNDS (write no database state).

  See Also: The *Oracle Database Development Guide* has more details about the RESTRICT_REFERENCES pragma.

- Predicates generated from different VPD policies for the same object have the combined effect of a conjunction (ANDed) of all the predicates.
- The security check and object lookup are performed against the owner of the policy function for objects in the subqueries of the dynamic predicates.
- If the function returns a zero length predicate, then it is interpreted as no restriction being applied to the current user for the policy.
- When a table alias is required (for example, parent object is a type table) in the predicate, the name of the table or view itself must be used as the name of the alias. The server constructs the transient view as something like

```
"select c1, c2, ... from tab tab where <predicate>"
```

- Validity of the function is checked at runtime for ease of installation and other dependency issues during import and export.
- Column-level VPD column masking behavior (specified with `sec_relevant_cols_opt => dbms_rls.ALL_ROWS`) is fundamentally different from all other VPD policies, which return only a subset of rows. Instead the column masking behavior returns all rows specified by the user's query, but the sensitive column values display as `NULL`. The restrictions for this option are as follows:
  - Only applies to `SELECT` statements
  - Unlike regular VPD predicates, the masking condition that is generated by the policy function must be a simple boolean expression.
  - If your application performs calculations, or does not expect `NULL` values, then you should use the default behavior of column-level VPD, which is specified with the `sec_relevant_cols` parameter.
  - If you use `UPDATE AS SELECT` with this option, then only the values in the columns you are allowed to see will be updated.
  - This option may prevent some rows from displaying. For example:

    ```
    SELECT * FROM employees
    WHERE salary = 10
    ```

    This query may not return rows if the `salary` column returns a `NULL` value because the column masking option has been set.
- When you add a VPD policy to a synonym, it causes all the dependent objects of the synonym, including policy functions that reference the synonym, to be marked `INVALID`.
- The maximum number of policies that can be created for a single object is 255.

Examples

As the first of two examples, the following creates a policy that applies to the `hr.employee` table. This is a column-level VPD policy that will be enforced only if a `SELECT` or an `INDEX` statement refers to the `salary`, `birthdate`, or `SSN` columns of the table explicitly, or implicitly through a view. It is also a `CONTEXT_SENSITIVE` policy, so the server will invoke the policy function `hr.hrfun` at parse time. The namespace and attribute application context parameters restrict the policy evaluation only when the application context values change. During execution, it will only invoke the function if there has been any session private context change since the last use of the statement cursor. The predicate generated by the policy function must not exceed 4000 bytes, the default length limit, since the `long_predicate` parameter is omitted from the call.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY(
      object_schema      => 'hr',
      object_name        => 'employee',
      policy_name        => 'hr_policy',
      function_schema    => 'hr',
      policy_function    => 'hrfun',
      statement_types    => 'select,index',
      policy_type        => DBMS_RLS.CONTEXT_SENSITIVE,
      sec_relevant_cols  => 'salary,birthdate,ssn',
      namespace          => 'empno_ctx',
      attribute          => 'emp_id');
END;
```

As the second example, the following command creates another policy that applies to the same object for hosting, so users can access only data based on their subscriber ID. Since it is defined as a SHARED_STATIC policy type, the server will first try to find the predicate in the SGA cache. The server will only invoke the policy function, subfun, if that search fails.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY(
      object_schema      => 'hr',
      object_name        => 'employee',
      policy_name        => 'hosting_policy',
      function_schema    => 'hr',
      policy_function    => 'subfun',
      policy_type        => dbms_rls.SHARED_STATIC);
END;
```

ADD_POLICY_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure adds the context for the active application.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY_CONTEXT (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   namespace       IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–6 ADD_POLICY_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_schema`	The schema containing the table, view, or synonym.
`object_name`	The name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added.
`namespace`	Name which determines the application context namespace
`attribute`	Attribute which determines the application context attribute name

Usage Notes

Note the following:

- This procedure indicates the application context that drives the enforcement of policies; this is the context that determines which application is running.
- If no `object_schema` is specified, the current user's schema is assumed.
- The driving context can be session or global.
- At execution time, the server retrieves the name of the active policy group from the value of this context.
- There must be at least one driving context defined for each object that has fine-grained access control policies; otherwise, all policies for the object will be executed.
- Adding multiple context to the same object will cause policies from multiple policy groups to be enforced.
- If the driving context is `NULL`, policies from all policy groups are used.
- If the driving context is a policy group with policies, all enabled policies from that policy group will be applied, along with all policies from the `SYS_DEFAULT` policy group.
- To add a policy to table `hr.employees` in group `access_control_group`, the following command is issued:

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_GROUPED_POLICY('hr','employees','access_control_
group','policy1','SYS', 'HR.ACCESS');
```

ALTER_POLICY Procedure

This procedure associates an application context attribute with VPD policies.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ALTER_POLICY (
   object_schema    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   alter_option     IN NUMBER,
   namespace        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   attribute        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 135–7 ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. Default is NULL, which means that the current user schema is used as the object_schema.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added
policy_name	Name of the policy, unique for the same table or view
alter_option	Used to determine whether the application context is being added or removed from VPD policy
namespace	Name which determines the application context namespace
attribute	Attribute which determines the application context attribute name

Usage Notes

Note the following:

- This procedure will associate an application context namespace and application context attribute to context sensitive and shared context sensitive policies only. Specifying application context namespace and application context attribute for DYNAMIC, STATIC or SHARED_STATIC policies will result in an error. If namespace is specified, attribute should also be specified for the procedure call.
- Invocations of ALTER_POLICY which modify a shared context sensitive VPD policy have an effect on all shared context sensitive VPD policies that have the same VPD policy function.
- The driving context can be session or global.
- At execution time, the server retrieves the name of the active policy group from the value of this context.
- There must be at least one driving context defined for each object that has fine-grained access control policies; otherwise, all policies for the object will be executed.
- Adding multiple context to the same object will cause policies from multiple policy groups to be enforced.
- If the driving context is NULL, policies from all policy groups are used.

- If the driving context is a policy group with policies, all enabled policies from that policy group will be applied, along with all policies from the `SYS_DEFAULT` policy group.
- To add a policy to table `hr.employees` in group `access_control_group`, the following command is issued:

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_GROUPED_POLICY(
   'hr','employees','access_control_group','policy1','SYS', 'HR.ACCESS');
```

ALTER_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure

This procedure adds application context related changes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ALTER_GROUPED_POLICY (
   object_schema    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_group     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT SYS_DEFAULT,
   policy_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   alter_option     IN NUMBER,
   namespace        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   attribute        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 135–8 ALTER_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. Default is NULL, which means that the current user schema is used as the object_schema.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added
policy_group	Name of the policy group to which this policy belongs; must be unique for the same table or view
policy_name	Name of the policy, unique for the same table or view
alter_option	Used to determine whether the application context is being added or removed from VPD policy
namespace	Names which determines the application context namespace
attribute	Attribute determines the application context attribute name

Usage Notes

Note the following:

- This procedure will associate an application context namespace and application context attribute to context sensitive and shared context sensitive policies only. Specifying application context namespace and application context attribute for DYNAMIC, STATIC or SHARED_STATIC policies will result in an error. If namespace is specified, attribute should also be specified for the procedure call.
- Invocations of ALTER_GROUPED_POLICY which modify a shared context sensitive VPD policy have an effect on all shared context sensitive VPD policies that have the same VPD policy function.
- The driving context can be session or global.
- At execution time, the server retrieves the name of the active policy group from the value of this context.
- There must be at least one driving context defined for each object that has fine-grained access control policies; otherwise, all policies for the object will be executed.

- Adding multiple context to the same object will cause policies from multiple policy groups to be enforced.
- If the driving context is `NULL`, policies from all policy groups are used.
- If the driving context is a policy group with policies, all enabled policies from that policy group will be applied, along with all policies from the `SYS_DEFAULT` policy group.
- To add a policy to table `hr.employees` in group `access_control_group`, the following command is issued:

```
DBMS_RLS.ADD_GROUPED_POLICY (
   'hr','employees','access_control_group','policy1','SYS', 'HR.ACCESS');
```

CREATE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure

This procedure creates a policy group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.CREATE_POLICY_GROUP (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_group    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–9 CREATE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added.
policy_group	Name of the policy group that the policy belongs to.

Usage Notes

The group must be unique for each table or view.

DELETE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure

This procedure deletes a policy group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.DELETE_POLICY_GROUP (
  object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
  object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
  policy_group    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–10 DELETE_POLICY_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is added.
policy_group	Name of the policy group that the policy belongs to.

Usage Notes

Note the following:

- This procedure deletes a policy group for the specified table, view, or synonym.
- No policy can be in the policy group.

DISABLE_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure

This procedure disables a row-level group security policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.DISABLE_GROUPED_POLICY (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   group_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_name     IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–11 ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym with which the policy is associated
group_name	Name of the group of the policy
policy_name	Name of the policy to be enabled or disabled

Usage Notes

- The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out.
- A commit is performed at the end of the operation.
- A policy is disabled when this procedure is executed or when the ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY procedure is executed with "enable" set to FALSE.

DROP_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure

This procedure drops a policy associated with a policy group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.DROP_GROUPED_POLICY (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_group    IN VARCHAR2 'SYS_DEFAULT',
   policy_name     IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–12 DROP_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is dropped
policy_group	Name of the policy group to which the policy belongs
policy_name	Name of the policy

DROP_POLICY Procedure

This procedure drops a fine-grained access control policy from a table, view, or synonym.

The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out. However, this does not cause a commit first if it is inside a DDL event trigger.

See Also: Operational Notes on page 135-6

A COMMIT is also performed at the end of the operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_name     IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–13 DROP_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_schema`	Schema containing the table, view or synonym. If no `object_schema` is specified, or `NULL` is provided, then the current user's schema is assumed.
`object_name`	Name of the table, view, or synonym for which the policy is dropped
`policy_name`	Name of policy to be dropped from table, view, or synonym

Usage Notes

- When you drop a VPD policy from a synonym, it causes all the dependent objects of the synonym, including policy functions that reference the synonym, to be marked `INVALID`.

DROP_POLICY_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure drops a driving context from the object so that it will have one less driving context.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY_CONTEXT (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   namespace       IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute       IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 135–14 DROP_POLICY_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. If no object_schema is specified, or NULL is provided, then the current user's schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym to which the policy is dropped
namespace	Namespace of the driving context
attribute	Attribute of the driving context

ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure

This procedure enables or disables a row-level group security policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   group_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   enable          IN BOOLEAN TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 135–15 ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. If no object_schema is specified, or NULL is provided, then the current user's schema is assumed
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym with which the policy is associated
group_name	Name of the group of the policy
policy_name	Name of the policy to be enabled or disabled
enable	TRUE enables the policy; FALSE disables the policy

Usage Notes

- The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out.
- A commit is performed at the end of the operation.
- A policy is enabled when it is created.

ENABLE_POLICY Procedure

This procedure enables or disables a fine-grained access control policy. A policy is enabled when it is created.

The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out. However, this does not cause a commit first if it is inside a DDL event trigger.

See Also: Operational Notes on page 135-6

A `COMMIT` is also performed at the end of the operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.ENABLE_POLICY (
   object_schema IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   enable        IN BOOLEAN TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 135–16 ENABLE_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_schema`	Schema containing table, view, or synonym. If no `object_schema` is specified, or `NULL` is provided, then the current user's schema is assumed.
`object_name`	Name of table, view, or synonym with which the policy is associated
`policy_name`	Name of policy to be enabled or disabled
`enable`	`TRUE` to enable the policy, `FALSE` to disable the policy

REFRESH_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure

This procedure reparses the SQL statements associated with a refreshed policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.REFRESH_GROUPED_POLICY (
   object_schema   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   group_name      IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   policy_name     IN VARCHAR2 NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 135–17 REFRESH_GROUPED_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. If no object_schema is specified, or NULL is provided, then the current user's schema is assumed.
object_name	Name of the table, view, or synonym with which the policy is associated
group_name	Name of the group of the policy
policy_name	Name of the policy

Usage Notes

- This procedure causes all the cached statements associated with the policy to be reparsed. This guarantees that the latest change to the policy has immediate effect after the procedure is executed.
- The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out.
- A commit is performed at the end of the operation.
- The procedure returns an error if it tries to refresh a disabled policy.
- The procedure removes the cached results of context and shared sensitive VPD policies.

REFRESH_POLICY Procedure

This procedure causes all the cached statements associated with the policy to be reparsed. This guarantees that the latest change to this policy will have immediate effect after the procedure is executed.

The procedure causes the current transaction, if any, to commit before the operation is carried out. However, this does not cause a commit first if it is inside a DDL event trigger.

See Also: Operational Notes on page 135-6

A `COMMIT` is also performed at the end of the operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RLS.REFRESH_POLICY (
   object_schema IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   object_name   IN VARCHAR2 NULL,
   policy_name   IN VARCHAR2 NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 135–18 REFRESH_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`object_schema`	Schema containing the table, view, or synonym. If no `object_schema` is specified, or `NULL` is provided, then the current user's schema is assumed.
`object_name`	Name of table, view, or synonym with which the policy is associated.
`policy_name`	Name of policy to be refreshed.

Usage Notes

- The procedure returns an error if it tries to refresh a disabled policy.
- The procedure removes the cached results of context and shared sensitive VPD policies.

136

DBMS_ROLLING

The `DBMS_ROLLING` PL/SQL package is used to implement the Rolling Upgrade Using Active Data Guard feature, which streamlines the process of upgrading Oracle Database software in a Data Guard configuration in a rolling fashion. The Rolling Upgrade Using Active Data Guard feature requires a license for the Oracle Active Data Guard option, and can be used for database version upgrades starting with the first patchset of Oracle Database 12*c*.

Additionally, you can use this feature immediately for other database maintenance tasks. The database where maintenance is performed must be operating at a minimum of Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1). Such maintenance tasks include:

- Adding partitioning to non-partitioned tables
- Changing BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs
- Changing `XMLType` stored as `CLOB` to `XMLtype` stored as binary XML
- Altering tables to be OLTP-compressed

See Also:

- *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* for information about using `DBMS_ROLLING` to perform a rolling upgrade

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ROLLING

Overview

The DBMS_ROLLING PL/SQL package provides procedures that you can use to perform any change throughout a Data Guard configuration in a rolling fashion, including a rolling upgrade of the Oracle Database software. Although the focus of this document is rolling upgrade operations, the content is applicable to the deployment of any rolling changes.

All the procedures are executed at the current primary database, which eliminates the potential confusion of moving between remote databases to perform various operations related to the rolling upgrade. If necessary, all the procedures can be called again to resume the rolling upgrade after an error or interruption. (The upgrade script must still be run at the standby.)

The package also provides a procedure that allows you to return a Data Guard configuration back to its original, pre-upgrade state in the event users wish to abandon the rolling upgrade.

The actual execution of a rolling upgrade has been reduced to three steps (excluding the upgrade of the Oracle Database software itself and the on-disk setup of the new Oracle Database software). The number of steps remains the same regardless of the size of the Data Guard configuration.

Conceptually, for the purposes of the DBMS_ROLLING package, you divide your Data Guard configuration into two groups: the leading group and the trailing group. The databases in the leading group undergo the upgrade operation (or any other change that you are deploying) first. The databases in the trailing group undergo the upgrade of the Oracle Database software (or any other change that you are deploying) only after the switchover operation. This insulates them from the upgrade and gives you time to evaluate the effect of the change in the leading group databases.

Each group has a master database: the future primary database as specified in the DBMS_ROLLING.INIT_PLAN procedure is the master of the leading group, called Leading Group Master (LGM), while the original primary database is the master of the trailing group called Trailing Group Master (TGM). You can configure databases to protect the LGM and the TGM. Standbys designated to protect the LGM are referred to as Leading Group Standbys (LGS). Standbys designated to protect the TGM are referred to as Trailing Group Standbys (TGS). These terms are used throughout this documentation.

Security Model

The DBMS_ROLLING package is available to users who have been granted the DBA role.

Summary of DBMS_ROLLING Subprograms

Table 136–1 DBMS_ROLLING Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
INIT_PLAN Procedure on page 136-6	Initializes a rolling operation plan with system-generated default values.
DESTROY_PLAN Procedure on page 136-7	Destroys any existing rolling operation plan, its parameters, and all resources associated with the rolling operation.
BUILD_PLAN Procedure on page 136-8	Validates plan parameters and creates or modifies a rolling operation plan.
SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 136-9	Modifies a rolling operation parameter.
START_PLAN Procedure on page 136-12	Starts the rolling operation.
SWITCHOVER Procedure on page 136-13	Performs a switchover between the current primary database and the transient logical standby database.
FINISH_PLAN Procedure on page 136-14	Finalizes the rolling operation.
ROLLBACK_PLAN Procedure on page 136-15	Completely rolls back the rolling operation.

INIT_PLAN Procedure

This procedure initializes a rolling operation plan with system-generated default values.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.INIT_PLAN (
   future_primary   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 136–2 INIT_PLAN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
future_primary	DB_UNIQUE_NAME of the future primary (also known as the Leading Group Master (LGM))

Exceptions

- ORA-45400: operation not permitted on current database
- ORA-45401: upgrade plan is already active
- ORA-45402: LOG_ARCHIVE_CONFIG must contain the DG_CONFIG attribute
- ORA-45403: database %s must be specified in DG_CONFIG
- ORA-45411: operation requires additional arguments
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- A plan must be prepared before any parameters can be customized.

DESTROY_PLAN Procedure

This procedure destroys any existing upgrade plan, its parameters, and all resources associated with a rolling operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.DESTROY_PLAN ();
```

Parameters

This procedure has no parameters.

Exceptions

- ORA-45422: operation requires existing plan
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- When a rolling operation is complete, this procedure can be called to completely purge all states related to a rolling operation.

BUILD_PLAN Procedure

This procedure validates plan parameters and creates or modifies a rolling operation plan. A successfully constructed plan is required in order to perform a rolling operation. This procedure must return successfully before the START_PLAN procedure can be called to start the rolling operation. Parameter changes made after a plan has been created may require calling the BUILD_PLAN procedure to modify the existing plan. The DBA_ROLLING_EVENTS view will indicate if any invocation of the SET_PARAMETER procedure requires a plan rebuild. Failure to rebuild the plan will result in an ORA-45416 error when attempting to resume the rolling operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.BUILD_PLAN ();
```

Parameters

This procedure has no parameters.

Exceptions

- ORA-45400: operation not permitted on current database
- ORA-45403: database %s must be specified in the DG_CONFIG
- ORA-45414: could not connect to a remote database
- ORA-45419: DB_UNIQUE_NAME parameter must be specified
- ORA-45433: failover was detected on an unsupported database
- ORA-45434: multiple failovers of the same type detected
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- This procedure connects to databases specified as plan parameters. These instances must be mounted or open, and must be reachable via the network.

SET_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure modifies a rolling operation parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.SET_PARAMETER (
   scope    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   name     IN NUMBER,
   value    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 136–3 SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
scope	Parameter scope. It can either be NULL for global parameters, or the DB_UNIQUE_NAME of a specific database for local parameters.
name	The DBMS_ROLLING constant for a given parameter.
value	New value for the parameter or NULL to revert to a default value.

Exceptions

- ORA-45400: operation not permitted on current database
- ORA-45408: parameter name is unknown
- ORA-45409: parameter value is invalid or out of bounds
- ORA-45410: parameter may not be modified
- ORA-45411: operation requires additional arguments
- ORA-45412: parameter scope argument is unknown
- ORA-45413: parameter has no default value
- ORA-45414: could not connect to a remote database
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- Changes to a parameter value may require a call to the DBMS_ROLLING.BUILD_PLAN procedure to modify the existing plan. Users should check the DBA_ROLLING_EVENTS view after setting a parameter to determine if a rebuild is necessary.
- Table 136–4 lists all the available parameters and their descriptions. The parameter names and values described in the table are all of type VARCHAR2.
- The MINVAL and MAXVAL columns in the DBA_ROLLING_PARAMETERS view identify the valid range of values for a parameter. The view does not contain any parameters until the DBMS_ROLLING.INIT_PLAN procedure has been successfully invoked.

Table 136–4 Valid Values for DBMS_ROLLING.SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Global?	Description	Default
ACTIVE_SESSIONS_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce ACTIVE_SESSIONS_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if ACTIVE_SESSIONS_WAIT is set to 1.	3600
ACTIVE_SESSIONS_WAIT	Yes	Whether the switchover operation will wait for active sessions to finish. If set to 1, the SWITCHOVER procedure waits for active sessions to compete. If set to 0, the SWITCHOVER procedure kills active sessions to expedite the switchover.	0
BACKUP_CONTROLFILE	Yes	File name of the backup control file that is created during a rolling upgrade.	rolling_change_backup.f
DICTIONARY_LOAD_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce DICTIONARY_LOAD_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if DICTIONARY_LOAD_WAIT is set to 1.	3600
DICTIONARY_LOAD_WAIT	Yes	Whether the instantiation of the transient logical standby will include a wait for the complete loading of the data dictionary snapshot in redo. If set to 1, then the START_PLAN procedure will not return until the dictionary has been completely loaded. If set to 0, then the START_PLAN procedure will only verify that the loading of the dictionary has started.	0
DICTIONARY_PLS_WAIT_INIT	Yes	The time in seconds to wait in between attempts to quiesce PL/SQL activity in order to write the data dictionary to redo.	300
DICTIONARY_PLS_WAIT_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to attempt to quiesce PL/SQL activity in order to write the data dictionary to redo.	3600
EVENT_RECORDS	Yes	The maximum number of records to permit in DBA_ROLLING_EVENTS	10000
FAILOVER	Yes	Automatically attempt to adjust the upgrade plan as a result of a failover event. This parameter resets its value to 0 upon completion of a subsequent call to BUILD_PLAN.	0
GRP_PREFIX		Execution of procedures in DBMS_ROLLING results in a number of Guaranteed Restore Points (GRP) taken in various databases participating in the Data Guard configuration. All such GRPs have the same prefix in their names. You can use this parameter to override the default prefix.	DBMSRU
IGNORE_BUILD_WARNINGS	Yes	Ignore warnings which would otherwise raise exceptions during execution of the BUILD_PLAN procedure.	1
IGNORE_LAST_ERROR	Yes	Ignore last encountered error upon startup of next rolling operation. This parameter resets its value to 0 upon invocation of a procedure call which resumes the rolling upgrade.	0
LAD_ENABLED_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum time in seconds to wait for a recently enabled log archive destination to reach a VALID state.	600
LOG_LEVEL	Yes	Logging level for the DBS_ROLLING PL/SQL package. A value of INFO results in the logging of errors and relevant non-fatal warnings. A value of FULL results in the logging of all events.	INFO
MEMBER	No	The upgrade group in which the specified database is a member. A value of LEADING indicates that the standby is a member of the leading upgrade group. As such, it is a standby of the Leading Group Master (LGM). The LGM is the database which is converted into the transient logical standby, and which becomes the new primary after the switchover. A value of TRAILING indicates that the standby is a member of the trailing upgrade group. As such, it is a standby of the Trailing Group Master (TGM). The TGM is the original primary database.	LEADING
READY_LGM_LAG_TIME	Yes	The apply lag time in seconds associated with the READY_LGM_LAG_WAIT parameter.	600
READY_LGM_LAG_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce READY_LGM_LAG_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if READY_LGM_LAG_WAIT is set to 1.	60

Table 136–4 (Cont.) Valid Values for DBMS_ROLLING.SET_PARAMETER Procedure

Parameter Name	Global?	Description	Default
READY_LGM_LAG_WAIT	Yes	Whether the START_PLAN procedure will wait for the apply lag on the leading group master to fall below READY_LGM_LAG_TIME seconds before returning control back to the user. If set to 1, the wait is performed. If set to 0, the wait is not performed.	0
SWITCH_LGM_LAG_TIME	Yes	The apply lag time in seconds associated with the SWITCH_LGM_LAG_WAIT parameter.	600
SWITCH_LGM_LAG_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce SWITCH_LGM_LAG_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if SWITCH_LGM_LAG_WAIT is set to 1.	60
SWITCH_LGM_LAG_WAIT	Yes	Whether the SWITCHOVER procedure will wait for the apply lag on the leading group master to fall below SWITCH_LGM_LAG_TIME seconds before initiating the switchover. If set to 1, the wait is performed. If set to 0, the wait is not performed.	1
SWITCH_LGS_LAG_TIME	Yes	The apply lag time in seconds associated with the SWITCH_LGS_LAG_WAIT parameter.	60
SWITCH_LGS_LAG_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce SWITCH_LGS_LAG_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if SWITCH_LGS_LAG_WAIT is set to 1.	60
SWITCH_LGS_LAG_WAIT	Yes	Whether the SWITCHOVER procedure will wait for the apply lag on the leading group standbys to fall below SWITCH_LGS_LAG_TIME seconds before initiating the switchover. If set to 1, the wait is performed. If set to 0, the wait is not performed.	0
UPDATED_LGS_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce UPDATED_LGS_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if UPDATED_LGS_WAIT is set to 1.	10800
UPDATED_LGS_WAIT	Yes	Whether the SWITCHOVER procedure will wait for the leading group standbys to complete recovery of all upgrade redo before initiating the switchover. If set to 1, the wait is performed. If set to 0, the wait is not performed	1
UPDATED_TGS_TIMEOUT	Yes	The maximum amount of time in seconds to enforce UPDATED_TGS_WAIT before halting the rolling upgrade. This parameter is only valid if UPDATED_TGS_WAIT is set to 1.	10800
UPDATED_TGS_WAIT	Yes	Whether the FINISH_PLAN procedure will wait for the trailing group standbys to complete recovery of all upgrade redo before returning control to the user. If set to 1, the wait is performed. If set to 0, the wait is not performed.	1

START_PLAN Procedure

This procedure starts the rolling operation. This procedure must be executed on the primary database to formally start the rolling operation. When the START_PLAN procedure is complete, the LGM (identified with the future_primary parameter in the INIT_PLAN procedure) will be converted into a fully configured transient logical standby database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.START_PLAN ();
```

Parameters

This procedure has no parameters.

Exceptions

- ORA-45400: operation not permitted on current database
- ORA-45414: could not connect to a remote database
- ORA-45415: instruction execution failure
- ORA-45416: operation cannot start until plan rebuild
- ORA-45417: operation not permitted since current phase was not %s
- ORA-45422: operation requires existing plan
- ORA-45426: managed recovery process was not running
- ORA-45427: logical standby Redo Apply process was not running
- ORA-45428: database was not in expected database role
- ORA-45435: managed recovery process was running
- ORA-45436: logical standby Redo Apply process was running
- ORA-45438: database is not in mounted mode
- ORA-45439: database is not in open read/write mode
- ORA-45486: database update progress is inconsistent
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- A rolling operation plan must have previously been generated through the BUILD_PLAN procedure.

SWITCHOVER Procedure

This procedure performs a switchover between the current primary database (also known as the TGM) and the transient logical standby database (also known as the LGM). At the successful completion of the procedure, the LGM assumes the primary role for the Data Guard configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.SWITCHOVER ();
```

Parameters

This procedure has no parameters.

Exceptions

- ORA-45400: operation not permitted on current database
- ORA-45414: could not connect to a remote database
- ORA-45415: instruction execution failure
- ORA-45416: operation cannot start until plan rebuild
- ORA-45417: operation not permitted since current phase was not %s
- ORA-45422: operation requires existing plan
- ORA-45426: managed recovery process was not running
- ORA-45427: logical standby Redo Apply process was not running
- ORA-45428: database was not in expected database role
- ORA-45435: managed recovery process was running
- ORA-45436: logical standby Redo Apply process was running
- ORA-45438: database is not in mounted mode
- ORA-45439: database is not in open read/write mode
- ORA-45486: database update progress is inconsistent
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- This procedure can only be called after you have manually upgraded the transient logical standby and opened it on the higher Oracle Database version.

FINISH_PLAN Procedure

This procedure finalizes the rolling operation. It configures the former primary (also known as the TGM) as a physical standby, and configures remaining physical standbys to recover the upgrade redo from the future primary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.FINISH_PLAN ();
```

Parameters

This procedure has no parameters.

Exceptions

- ORA-45400: operation not permitted on current database
- ORA-45414: could not connect to a remote database
- ORA-45415: instruction execution failure
- ORA-45416: operation cannot start until plan rebuild
- ORA-45417: operation not permitted since current phase was not %s
- ORA-45422: operation requires existing plan
- ORA-45426: managed recovery process was not running
- ORA-45427: logical standby Redo Apply process was not running
- ORA-45428: database was not in expected database role
- ORA-45435: managed recovery process was running
- ORA-45436: logical standby Redo Apply process was running
- ORA-45438: database is not in mounted mode
- ORA-45439: database is not in open read/write mode
- ORA-45486: database update progress is inconsistent
- ORA-65040: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- This procedure can only be called after you have remounted the former primary and remaining physical standbys on the higher Oracle Database version.

ROLLBACK_PLAN Procedure

This procedure rolls back the configuration-wide rolling operation. Once completed, all of the databases in the leading group become physical standbys of the original primary database. This procedure can only be called if the configuration has not yet gone through a switchover operation since the `START_PLAN` procedure was invoked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROLLING.ROLLBACK_PLAN;
```

Parameters

This procedure has no parameters.

Exceptions

- `ORA-45400`: operation not permitted on current database
- `ORA-45414`: could not connect to a remote database
- `ORA-45415`: instruction execution failure
- `ORA-45441`: no databases eligible for rollback
- `ORA-45442`: rollback is not permitted after a role change
- `ORA-65040`: operation not allowed from within a pluggable database

Usage Notes

- You must manually restart media recovery on the lower Oracle Database version if the upgrade of the transient logical standby has already been performed.

137

DBMS_ROWID

The DBMS_ROWID package lets you create ROWIDs and obtain information about ROWIDs from PL/SQL programs and SQL statements. You can find the data block number, the object number, and other ROWID components without writing code to interpret the base-64 character external ROWID. DBMS_ROWID is intended for upgrading from Oracle database version 7 to Oracle database version 8.X.

> **Note:** DBMS_ROWID is not to be used with universal ROWIDs (UROWIDs).

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_ROWID

Security Model

This package runs with the privileges of calling user, rather than the package owner SYS.

Types

Extension and Restriction Types

The types are as follows:

- RESTRICTED—restricted ROWID
- EXTENDED—extended ROWID

For example:

```
rowid_type_restricted constant integer := 0;
rowid_type_extended   constant integer := 1;
```

Note: Extended ROWIDs are only used in Oracle database version 8.X*i* and higher.

Verification Types

Table 137–1 Verification Types

Result	Description
VALID	Valid ROWID
INVALID	Invalid ROWID

For example:

```
rowid_is_valid   constant integer := 0;
rowid_is_invalid constant integer := 1;
```

Object Types

Table 137–2 Object Types

Result	Description
UNDEFINED	Object Number not defined (for restricted ROWIDs)

For example:

```
rowid_object_undefined constant integer := 0;
```

Conversion Types

Table 137–3 Conversion Types

Result	Description
INTERNAL	Convert to/from column of ROWID type
EXTERNAL	Convert to/from string format

For example:

```
rowid_convert_internal constant integer := 0;
rowid_convert_external constant integer := 1;
```

Exceptions

Table 137–4 Exceptions

Exception	Description
ROWID_INVALID	Invalid rowid format
ROWID_BAD_BLOCK	Block is beyond end of file

For example:

```
ROWID_INVALID exception;
   pragma exception_init(ROWID_INVALID, -1410);

ROWID_BAD_BLOCK exception;
   pragma exception_init(ROWID_BAD_BLOCK, -28516);
```

Operational Notes

- Some of the functions in this package take a single parameter, such as a ROWID. This can be a character or a PL/SLQ ROWID, either restricted or extended, as required.
- You can call the DBMS_ROWID functions and procedures from PL/SQL code, and you can also use the functions in SQL statements.

> **Note:** ROWID_INFO is a procedure. It can only be used in PL/SQL code.

- You can use functions from the DBMS_ROWID package just like built-in SQL functions; in other words, you can use them wherever you can use an expression. In this example, the ROWID_BLOCK_NUMBER function is used to return just the block number of a single row in the EMP table:

```
SELECT DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_BLOCK_NUMBER(rowid)
   FROM emp
   WHERE ename = 'KING';
```

- If Oracle returns the error "ORA:452, 0, 'Subprogram '%s' violates its associated pragma' for pragma restrict_references, it could mean the violation is due to:
  - A problem with the current procedure or function
  - Calling a procedure or function without a pragma or due to calling one with a less restrictive pragma
  - Calling a package procedure or function that touches the initialization code in a package or that sets the default values

Examples

This example returns the ROWID for a row in the EMP table, extracts the data object number from the ROWID, using the ROWID_OBJECT function in the DBMS_ROWID package, then displays the object number:

```
DECLARE
  object_no   INTEGER;
  row_id      ROWID;
  ...
BEGIN
  SELECT ROWID INTO row_id FROM emp
    WHERE empno = 7499;
  object_no := DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_OBJECT(row_id);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The obj. # is '|| object_no);
  ...
```

Summary of DBMS_ROWID Subprograms

Table 137–5 DBMS_ROWID Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ROWID_BLOCK_NUMBER Function on page 137-10	Returns the block number of a `ROWID`
ROWID_CREATE Function on page 137-11	Creates a `ROWID`, for testing only
ROWID_INFO Procedure on page 137-12	Returns the type and components of a `ROWID`
ROWID_OBJECT Function on page 137-13	Returns the object number of the extended `ROWID`
ROWID_RELATIVE_FNO Function on page 137-14	Returns the file number of a `ROWID`
ROWID_ROW_NUMBER Function on page 137-15	Returns the row number
ROWID_TO_ABSOLUTE_FNO Function on page 137-16	Returns the absolute file number associated with the `ROWID` for a row in a specific table
ROWID_TO_EXTENDED Function on page 137-17	Converts a `ROWID` from restricted format to extended
ROWID_TO_RESTRICTED Function on page 137-19	Converts an extended `ROWID` to restricted format
ROWID_TYPE Function on page 137-20	Returns the `ROWID` type: 0 is restricted, 1 is extended
ROWID_VERIFY Function on page 137-21	Checks if a `ROWID` can be correctly extended by the `ROWID_TO_EXTENDED` function

ROWID_BLOCK_NUMBER Function

This function returns the database block number for the input ROWID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_BLOCK_NUMBER (
   row_id      IN   ROWID,
   ts_type_in  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SMALLFILE')
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_block_number,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–6 ROWID_BLOCK_NUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_id	ROWID to be interpreted
ts_type_in	The type of the tablespace (bigfile/smallfile) to which the row belongs

Examples

The example SQL statement selects the block number from a ROWID and inserts it into another table:

```
INSERT INTO T2 (SELECT dbms_rowid.rowid_block_number(ROWID, 'BIGFILE')
   FROM some_table
   WHERE key_value = 42);
```

ROWID_CREATE Function

This function lets you create a ROWID, given the component parts as parameters.

This is useful for testing ROWID operations, because only the Oracle Server can create a valid ROWID that points to data in a database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_CREATE (
   rowid_type    IN NUMBER,
   object_number IN NUMBER,
   relative_fno  IN NUMBER,
   block_number  IN NUMBER,
   row_number    IN NUMBER)
  RETURN ROWID;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_create,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–7 ROWID_CREATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rowid_type	Type (restricted or extended) Set the rowid_type parameter to 0 for a restricted ROWID. Set it to 1 to create an extended ROWID. If you specify rowid_type as 0, then the required object_number parameter is ignored, and ROWID_CREATE returns a restricted ROWID.
object_number	Data object number (rowid_object_undefined for restricted)
relative_fno	Relative file number
block_number	Block number in this file
row_number	Returns row number in this block

Examples

Create a dummy extended ROWID:

```
my_rowid := DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_CREATE(1, 9999, 12, 1000, 13);
```

Find out what the rowid_object function returns:

```
obj_number := DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_OBJECT(my_rowid);
```

The variable obj_number now contains 9999.

ROWID_INFO Procedure

This procedure returns information about a ROWID, including its type (restricted or extended), and the components of the ROWID. This is a procedure, and it cannot be used in a SQL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_INFO (
   rowid_in         IN   ROWID,
   rowid_type       OUT  NUMBER,
   object_number    OUT  NUMBER,
   relative_fno     OUT  NUMBER,
   block_number     OUT  NUMBER,
   row_number       OUT  NUMBER);
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_info,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–8 ROWID_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rowid_in	ROWID to be interpreted. This determines if the ROWID is a restricted (0) or extended (1) ROWID.
rowid_type	Returns type (restricted/extended)
object_number	Returns data object number (rowid_object_undefined for restricted)
relative_fno	Returns relative file number
block_number	Returns block number in this file
row_number	Returns row number in this block

See Also: "ROWID_TYPE Function" on page 137-20

Examples

This example reads back the values for the ROWID that you created in the ROWID_CREATE:

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_INFO (
   my_rowid, rid_type, obj_num, file_num, block_num, row_num, 'BIGFILE');
```

ROWID_OBJECT Function

This function returns the data object number for an extended ROWID. The function returns zero if the input ROWID is a restricted ROWID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_OBJECT (
   rowid_id IN ROWID)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_object,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–9 ROWID_OBJECT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_id	ROWID to be interpreted

> **Note:** The ROWID_OBJECT_UNDEFINED constant is returned for restricted ROWIDs.

Examples

```
SELECT dbms_rowid.rowid_object(ROWID)
   FROM emp
   WHERE empno = 7499;
```

ROWID_RELATIVE_FNO Function

This function returns the relative file number of the ROWID specified as the IN parameter. (The file number is relative to the tablespace.)

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_RELATIVE_FNO (
   rowid_id      IN   ROWID,
   ts_type_in    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SMALLFILE')
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_relative_fno,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–10 ROWID_RELATIVE_FNO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_id	ROWID to be interpreted
ts_type_in	Type of the tablespace (bigfile/smallfile) to which the row belongs

Examples

The example PL/SQL code fragment returns the relative file number:

```
DECLARE
   file_number    INTEGER;
   rowid_val      ROWID;
BEGIN
   SELECT ROWID INTO rowid_val
     FROM dept
     WHERE loc = 'Boston';
   file_number :=
     dbms_rowid.rowid_relative_fno(rowid_val, 'SMALLFILE');
    ...
```

ROWID_ROW_NUMBER Function

This function extracts the row number from the ROWID IN parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_ROW_NUMBER (
   row_id IN ROWID)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_row_number,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–11 ROWID_ROW_NUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_id	ROWID to be interpreted.

Examples

Select a row number:

```
SELECT dbms_rowid.rowid_row_number(ROWID)
   FROM emp
   WHERE ename = 'ALLEN';
```

ROWID_TO_ABSOLUTE_FNO Function

This function extracts the absolute file number from a ROWID, where the file number is absolute for a row in a given schema and table. The schema name and the name of the schema object (such as a table name) are provided as IN parameters for this function.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_TO_ABSOLUTE_FNO (
   row_id      IN ROWID,
   schema_name IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_to_absolute_fno,WNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–12 ROWID_TO_ABSOLUTE_FNO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_id	ROWID to be interpreted
schema_name	Name of the schema which contains the table
object_name	Table name

Examples

```
DECLARE
   abs_fno        INTEGER;
   rowid_val      CHAR(18);
   object_name    VARCHAR2(20) := 'EMP';
BEGIN
    SELECT ROWID INTO rowid_val
     FROM emp
     WHERE empno = 9999;
     abs_fno := dbms_rowid.rowid_to_absolute_fno(
     rowid_val, 'SCOTT', object_name);
```

Note: For partitioned objects, the name must be a table name, not a partition or a sub/partition name.

ROWID_TO_EXTENDED Function

This function translates a restricted ROWID that addresses a row in a schema and table that you specify to the extended ROWID format. Later, it may be removed from this package into a different place.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_TO_EXTENDED (
   old_rowid       IN ROWID,
   schema_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   conversion_type IN INTEGER)
  RETURN ROWID;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_to_extended,WNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–13 ROWID_TO_EXTENDED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
old_rowid	ROWID to be converted
schema_name	Name of the schema which contains the table (optional)
object_name	Table name (optional).
conversion_type	The following constants are defined: ROWID_CONVERT_INTERNAL (:=0) ROWID_CONVERT_EXTERNAL (:=1)

Return Values

ROWID_TO_EXTENDED returns the ROWID in the extended character format. If the input ROWID is NULL, then the function returns NULL. If a zero-valued ROWID is supplied (00000000.0000.0000), then a zero-valued restricted ROWID is returned.

Examples

Assume that there is a table called RIDS in the schema SCOTT, and that the table contains a column ROWID_COL that holds ROWIDs (restricted), and a column TABLE_COL that point to other tables in the SCOTT schema. You can convert the ROWIDs to extended format with the statement:

```
UPDATE SCOTT.RIDS
   SET rowid_col =
   dbms_rowid.rowid_to_extended (
      rowid_col, 'SCOTT", TABLE_COL, 0);
```

Usage Notes

- If the schema and object names are provided as IN parameters, then this function verifies SELECT authority on the table named, and converts the restricted ROWID provided to an extended ROWID, using the data object number of the table. That ROWID_TO_EXTENDED returns a value, however, does not guarantee that the

converted ROWID actually references a valid row in the table, either at the time that the function is called, or when the extended ROWID is actually used.

- If the schema and object name are not provided (are passed as NULL), then this function attempts to fetch the page specified by the restricted ROWID provided. It treats the file number stored in this ROWID as the absolute file number. This can cause problems if the file has been dropped, and its number has been reused prior to the migration. If the fetched page belongs to a valid table, then the data object number of this table is used in converting to an extended ROWID value. This is very inefficient, and Oracle recommends doing this only as a last resort, when the target table is not known. The user must still know the correct table name at the time of using the converted value.
- If an extended ROWID value is supplied, the data object number in the input extended ROWID is verified against the data object number computed from the table name parameter. If the two numbers do not match, the INVALID_ROWID exception is raised. If they do match, the input ROWID is returned.
- ROWID_TO_EXTENDED cannot be used with partition tables.

See Also: The ROWID_VERIFY Function has a method to determine if a given ROWID can be converted to the extended format.

ROWID_TO_RESTRICTED Function

This function converts an extended ROWID into restricted ROWID format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_TO_RESTRICTED (
   old_rowid       IN ROWID,
   conversion_type IN INTEGER)
  RETURN ROWID;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_to_restricted,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–14 ROWID_TO_RESTRICTED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
old_rowid	ROWID to be converted
conversion_type	The following constants are defined: ROWID_CONVERT_INTERNAL (:=0) ROWID_CONVERT_EXTERNAL (:=1)

ROWID_TYPE Function

This function returns 0 if the ROWID is a restricted ROWID, and 1 if it is extended.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_TYPE (
   rowid_id IN ROWID)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_type,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–15 ROWID_TYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_id	ROWID to be interpreted

Examples

```
IF DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_TYPE(my_rowid) = 1 THEN
   my_obj_num := DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_OBJECT(my_rowid);
```

ROWID_VERIFY Function

This function verifies the ROWID. It returns 0 if the input restricted ROWID can be converted to extended format, given the input schema name and table name, and it returns 1 if the conversion is not possible.

> **Note:** You can use this function in a WHERE clause of a SQL statement, as shown in the example.

Syntax

```
DBMS_ROWID.ROWID_VERIFY (
   rowid_in        IN ROWID,
   schema_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   conversion_type IN INTEGER
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
   pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(rowid_verify,WNDS,WNPS,RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 137–16 ROWID_VERIFY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rowid_in	ROWID to be verified
schema_name	Name of the schema which contains the table
object_name	Table name
conversion_type	The following constants are defined: ROWID_CONVERT_INTERNAL (:=0) ROWID_CONVERT_EXTERNAL (:=1)

Examples

Considering the schema in the example for the ROWID_TO_EXTENDED function, you can use the following statement to find bad ROWIDs prior to conversion. This enables you to fix them beforehand.

```
SELECT ROWID, rowid_col
   FROM SCOTT.RIDS
   WHERE dbms_rowid.rowid_verify(rowid_col, NULL, NULL, 0) =1;
```

See Also: Chapter 260, "UTL_RAW", Chapter 262, "UTL_REF"

138

DBMS_RULE

The DBMS_RULE package contains subprograms that enable the evaluation of a rule set for a specified event.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RULE

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_RULE` package.

Overview

This package contains subprograms that enable the evaluation of a rule set for a specified event.

See Also:

- Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the `DBMS_RULE` package
- Chapter 139, "DBMS_RULE_ADM" and *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about this package and rules

Security Model

`PUBLIC` is granted `EXECUTE` privilege on this package.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide* for more information about user group `PUBLIC`

Summary of DBMS_RULE Subprograms

Table 138–1 DBMS_RULE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLOSE_ITERATOR Procedure on page 138-6	Closes an open iterator
EVALUATE Procedure on page 138-7	Evaluates the rules in the specified rule set that use the evaluation context specified
EVALUATE_EXPRESSION Procedure on page 138-11	Evaluates an expression under the logged in user in a session
GET_NEXT_HIT Function on page 138-12	Returns the next rule that evaluated to `TRUE` from a true rules iterator, or returns the next rule that evaluated to `MAYBE` from a maybe rules iterator; returns `NULL` if there are no more rules that evaluated to `TRUE` or `MAYBE`.
IS_FAST Procedure on page 138-13	Returns `TRUE` if the expression can be evaluated fast. An expression can be evaluated fast if the engine does not need to run any internal SQL and does not need to go to PL/SQL layer in case there are any PL/SQL functions referred.

CLOSE_ITERATOR Procedure

This procedure closes an open iterator.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE.CLOSE_ITERATOR(
   iterator  IN  BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameter

Table 138–2 CLOSE_ITERATOR Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
iterator	Iterator to be closed

Usage Notes

This procedure requires an open iterator that was returned by an earlier call to DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE in the same session. The user who runs this procedure does not require any privileges on the rule set being evaluated.

Closing an iterator frees resources, such as memory, associated with the iterator. Therefore, Oracle recommends that you close an iterator when it is no longer needed.

See Also: EVALUATE Procedure on page 138-7

EVALUATE Procedure

This procedure evaluates the rules in the specified rule set that use the evaluation context specified for a specified event.

This procedure is overloaded. The `true_rules` and `maybe_rules` parameters are mutually exclusive with the `true_rules_iterator` and `maybe_rules_iterator` parameters. In addition, the procedure with the `true_rules` and `maybe_rules` parameters includes the `stop_on_first_hit` parameter, but the other procedure does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE(
   rule_set_name          IN     VARCHAR2,
   evaluation_context     IN     VARCHAR2,
   event_context          IN     SYS.RE$NV_LIST               DEFAULT NULL,
   table_values           IN     SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST      DEFAULT NULL,
   column_values          IN     SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST     DEFAULT NULL,
   variable_values        IN     SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST   DEFAULT NULL,
   attribute_values       IN     SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
   result_cache           IN     BOOLEAN                      DEFAULT FALSE,
   stop_on_first_hit      IN     BOOLEAN                      DEFAULT FALSE,
   simple_rules_only      IN     BOOLEAN                      DEFAULT FALSE,
   true_rules             OUT    SYS.RE$RULE_HIT_LIST,
   maybe_rules            OUT    SYS.RE$RULE_HIT_LIST);

DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE(
   rule_set_name          IN     VARCHAR2,
   evaluation_context     IN     VARCHAR2,
   event_context          IN     SYS.RE$NV_LIST               DEFAULT NULL,
   table_values           IN     SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST      DEFAULT NULL,
   column_values          IN     SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST     DEFAULT NULL,
   variable_values        IN     SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST   DEFAULT NULL,
   attribute_values       IN     SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
   simple_rules_only      IN     BOOLEAN                      DEFAULT FALSE,
   true_rules_iterator    OUT    BINARY_INTEGER,
   maybe_rules_iterator   OUT    BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 138–3 EVALUATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_set_name`	Name of the rule set in the form `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_set_name`*. For example, to evaluate all of the rules in a rule set named `hr_rules` in the `hr` schema, enter `hr.hr_rules` for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the schema of the current user is used.
`evaluation_context`	An evaluation context name in the form `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`evaluation_context_name`*. If the schema is not specified, then the name of the current user is used. Only rules that use the specified evaluation context are evaluated.
`event_context`	A list of name-value pairs that identify events that cause evaluation

Table 138–3 (Cont.) EVALUATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_values	Contains the data for table rows using the table aliases specified when the evaluation context was created. Each table alias in the list must be unique.
column_values	Contains the partial data for table rows. It must not contain column values for tables, whose values are already specified in table_values.
variable_values	A list containing the data for variables. The only way for an explicit variable value to be known is to specify its value in this list. If an implicit variable value is not specified in the list, then the function used to obtain the value of the implicit variable is invoked. If an implicit variable value is specified in the list, then this value is used and the function is not invoked.
attribute_values	Contains the partial data for variables. It must not contain attribute values for variables whose values are already specified in variable_values.
stop_on_first_hit	If TRUE, then the rules engine stops evaluation as soon as it finds a TRUE rule. If TRUE and there are no TRUE rules, then the rules engine stops evaluation as soon as it finds a rule that may evaluate to TRUE given more data. If FALSE, then the rules engine continues to evaluate rules even after it finds a TRUE rule.
simple_rules_only	If TRUE, then only those rules that are simple enough to be evaluated fast (without issuing SQL) are considered for evaluation. If FALSE, then evaluates all rules.
true_rules	Receives the output of the EVALUATE procedure into a varray of RE$RULE_HIT_LIST type. If no rules evaluate to TRUE, then true_rules is empty. If at least one rule evaluates to TRUE and stop_on_first_hit is TRUE, then true_rules contains one rule that evaluates to TRUE. If stop_on_first_hit is FALSE, then true_rules contains all rules that evaluate to TRUE.
maybe_rules	If all rules can be evaluated completely, without requiring any additional data, then maybe_rules is empty. If stop_on_first_hit is TRUE, then if there is at least one rule that may evaluate to TRUE given more data, and no rules evaluate to TRUE, then maybe_rules contains one rule that may evaluate to TRUE. If stop_on_first_hit is FALSE, then maybe_rules contains all rules that may evaluate to TRUE given more data.
true_rules_iterator	Contains the iterator for accessing rules that are TRUE
maybe_rules_iterator	Contains the iterator for accessing rules that may be TRUE given additional data or the ability to issue SQL
result_cache	If TRUE, Result Cache will be created. If evalate procedure is called with either true_rules_iterator or maybe_rules_iterator, then result_cache is not enabled.

Usage Notes

> **Note:** Rules in the rule set that use an evaluation context different from the one specified are not considered for evaluation.

The rules in the rule set are evaluated using the data specified for `table_values`, `column_values`, `variable_values`, and `attribute_values`. These values must refer to tables and variables in the specified evaluation context. Otherwise, an error is raised.

The caller may specify, using `stop_on_first_hit`, if evaluation must stop as soon as the first `TRUE` rule or the first `MAYBE` rule (if there are no `TRUE` rules) is found.

The caller may also specify, using `simple_rules_only`, if only rules that are simple enough to be evaluated fast (which means without SQL) should be considered for evaluation. This makes evaluation faster, but causes rules that cannot be evaluated without SQL to be returned as `MAYBE` rules.

Partial evaluation is supported. The `EVALUATE` procedure can be called with data for only some of the tables, columns, variables, or attributes. In such a case, rules that cannot be evaluated because of a lack of data are returned as `MAYBE` rules, unless they can be determined to be `TRUE` or `FALSE` based on the values of one or more simple expressions within the rule. For example, given a value of `1` for attribute `"a.b"` of variable `"x"`, a rule with the following rule condition can be returned as `TRUE`, without a value for table `"tab"`:

```
(:x.a.b = 1) or (tab.c > 10)
```

The results of an evaluation are the following:

- `TRUE` rules, which is the list of rules that evaluate to `TRUE` based on the given data. These rules are returned either in the `OUT` parameter `true_rules`, which returns all of the rules that evaluate to `TRUE`, or in the `OUT` parameter `true_rules_iterator`, which returns each rule that evaluates to `TRUE` one at a time.
- `MAYBE` rules, which is the list of rules that could not be evaluated for one of the following reasons:
  - The rule refers to data that was unavailable. For example, a variable attribute `"x.a.b"` is specified, but no value is specified for the variable `"x"`, the attribute `"a"`, or the attribute `"a.b"`.
  - The rule is not simple enough to be evaluated fast (without SQL) and `simple_rules_only` is specified as `TRUE`, or partial data is available.

  Maybe rules are returned either in the `OUT` parameter `maybe_rules`, which returns all of the rules that evaluate to `MAYBE`, or in the `OUT` parameter `maybe_rules_iterator`, which returns each rule that evaluates to `MAYBE` one at a time.

The caller may specify whether the procedure returns all of the rules that evaluate to `TRUE` and `MAYBE` for the event or an iterator for rules that evaluate to `TRUE` and `MAYBE`. A true rules iterator enables the client to fetch each rule that evaluates to `TRUE` one at a time, and a maybe rules iterator enables the client to fetch each rule that evaluates to `MAYBE` one at a time.

If you use an iterator, then you use the `GET_NEXT_HIT` function in the `DBMS_RULE` package to retrieve the next rule that evaluates to `TRUE` or `MAYBE` from an iterator. Oracle recommends that you close an iterator if it is no longer needed to free resources, such as memory, used by the iterator. An iterator can be closed in the following ways:

- The CLOSE_ITERATOR procedure in the DBMS_RULE package is run with the iterator specified.
- The iterator returns NULL because no more rules evaluate to TRUE or MAYBE.
- The session in which the iterator is running ends.

To run the DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have EXECUTE_ON_RULE_SET privilege on the rule set
- Have EXECUTE_ANY_RULE_SET system privilege
- Be the rule set owner

Note: The rules engine does not invoke any actions. An action context can be returned with each returned rule, but the client of the rules engine must invoke any necessary actions.

See Also:

- Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the DBMS_RULE package
- GET_NEXT_HIT Function on page 138-12
- CLOSE_ITERATOR Procedure on page 138-6

EVALUATE_EXPRESSION Procedure

This procedure allows user to evaluate an expression under the logged in user in a session.

Any re-execute of the same expression with same table alias and variable type will result in reusing the same compiled context. With fixed compile cache size, its possible of aging....

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE_EXPRESSION(
   rule_expression         IN         VARCHAR2,
   table_aliases           IN         SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST:= NULL,
   variable_types          IN         SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST:= NULL,
   table_values            IN         SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST:= NULL,
   column_values           IN         SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST:=NULL,
   variable_values         IN         SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST:=NULL,
   attribute_values        IN         SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST:=NULL,
   cache                   IN         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   result_val              OUT        BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 138–4 EVALUATE_EXPRESSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_expression	Contains an expression string.
table_alias	Contains alias of tables referred in the expression string.
variable_types	Contains type definitions of variables used in expression.
table_values	Contains ROWID of table row for expression evaluation.
column_values	Contains values of columns referred in the expression.
variable_values	Contains values of variables referred in the expression.
attribute_values	Contains values of attributes referred in the expression.
cache	If TRUE, Result Cache will be created.
result_val	Result of the evaluation.

GET_NEXT_HIT Function

This function returns the next rule that evaluated to TRUE from a true rules iterator, or returns the next rule that evaluated to MAYBE from a maybe rules iterator. The function returns NULL if there are no more rules that evaluated to TRUE or MAYBE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE.GET_NEXT_HIT(
   iterator  IN  BINARY_INTEGER)
 RETURN SYS.RE$RULE_HIT;
```

Parameter

Table 138–5 GET_NEXT_HIT Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
iterator	The iterator from which the rule that evaluated to TRUE or MAYBE is retrieved

Usage Notes

This procedure requires an open iterator that was returned by an earlier call to DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE in the same session. The user who runs this procedure does not require any privileges on the rule set being evaluated.

When an iterator returns NULL, it is closed automatically. If an open iterator is no longer needed, then use the CLOSE_ITERATOR procedure in the DBMS_RULE package to close it.

Note: This function raises an error if the rule set being evaluated was modified after the call to the DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE procedure that returned the iterator. Modifications to a rule set include added rules to the rule set, changing existing rules in the rule set, dropping rules from the rule set, and dropping the rule set.

See Also:

- Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the DBMS_RULE package
- EVALUATE Procedure on page 138-7
- CLOSE_ITERATOR Procedure on page 138-6

IS_FAST Procedure

Given an expression, of either rule or Independent Expression, this procedure will return `TRUE` if the expression can be evaluated as fast. An expression can be evaluated as fast if the engine does not need to run any internal SQL and does not need to go to PL/SQL layer in case there are any PL/SQL functions referred.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE.IS_FAST(
   expression            IN       VARCHAR2,
   table_aliases         IN       SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST:= NULL,
   variable_types        IN       SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST:= NULL,
   result_val            OUT      BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter

Table 138–6 IS_FAST Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`expression`	Expression to check
`table_aliases`	Alias of tables referred in the above expression string
`variable_types`	Type definitions of variables used in expression
`result_val`	If the expression can be evaluated as fast

139

DBMS_RULE_ADM

The DBMS_RULE_ADM package provides the subprograms for creating and managing rules, rule sets, and rule evaluation contexts.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_RULE_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package.

Overview

This package provides the subprograms for creating and managing rules, rule sets, and rule evaluation contexts.

See Also:

- Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package
- Chapter 138, "DBMS_RULE" and *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about this package and rules

Security Model

`PUBLIC` is granted `EXECUTE` privilege on this package.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide* for more information about user group `PUBLIC`

Summary of DBMS_RULE_ADM Subprograms

Table 139–1 DBMS_RULE_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_RULE Procedure on page 139-6	Adds the specified rule to the specified rule set
ALTER_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure on page 139-8	Alters a rule evaluation context
ALTER_RULE Procedure on page 139-11	Changes one or more aspects of the specified rule
CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure on page 139-13	Creates a rule evaluation context
CREATE_RULE Procedure on page 139-15	Creates a rule with the specified name
CREATE_RULE_SET Procedure on page 139-17	Creates a rule set with the specified name
DROP_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure on page 139-18	Drops the rule evaluation context with the specified name
DROP_RULE Procedure on page 139-19	Drops the rule with the specified name
DROP_RULE_SET Procedure on page 139-20	Drops the rule set with the specified name
GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 139-21	Grants the specified object privilege on the specified object to the specified user or role
GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 139-23	Grants the specified system privilege to the specified user or role
REMOVE_RULE Procedure on page 139-25	Removes the specified rule from the specified rule set
REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 139-27	Revokes the specified object privilege on the specified object from the specified user or role
REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 139-28	Revokes the specified system privilege from the specified user or role

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ADD_RULE Procedure

This procedure adds the specified rule to the specified rule set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.ADD_RULE(
   rule_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   evaluation_context  IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   rule_comment        IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 139–2 ADD_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule you are adding to the rule set, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. For example, to add a rule named all_a in the hr schema, enter hr.all_a for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
rule_set_name	The name of the rule set to which you are adding the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to add the rule to a rule set named apply_rules in the hr schema, enter hr.apply_rules for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
evaluation_context	An evaluation context name in the form [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. Only specify an evaluation context if the rule itself does not have an evaluation context and you do not want to use the rule set's evaluation context for the rule.
rule_comment	Optional description, which can contain the reason for adding the rule to the rule set

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have ALTER_ON_RULE_SET privilege on the rule set
- Have ALTER_ANY_RULE_SET system privilege
- Be the owner of the rule set

Also, the rule set owner must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have EXECUTE_ON_RULE privilege on the rule
- Have EXECUTE_ANY_RULE system privilege
- Be the rule owner

If the rule has no evaluation context and no evaluation context is specified when you run this procedure, then the rule uses the evaluation context associated with the rule set. In such a case, the rule owner must have the necessary privileges on all the base objects accessed by the rule using the evaluation context.

If an evaluation context is specified, then the rule set owner must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have EXECUTE_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT privilege on the evaluation context
- Have EXECUTE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege, and the owner of the evaluation context must not be SYS
- Be the evaluation context owner

Also, the rule owner must have the necessary privileges on all the base objects accessed by the rule using the evaluation context.

ALTER_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure alters a rule evaluation context. A rule evaluation context defines external data that can be referenced in rule conditions. The external data can either exist as variables or as table data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_EVALUATION_CONTEXT(
  evaluation_context_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
  table_aliases                IN  SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST    DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_table_aliases         IN  BOOLEAN                    DEFAULT FALSE,
  variable_types               IN  SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_variable_types        IN  BOOLEAN                    DEFAULT FALSE,
  evaluation_function          IN  VARCHAR2                   DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_evaluation_function   IN  BOOLEAN                    DEFAULT FALSE,
  evaluation_context_comment   IN  VARCHAR2                   DEFAULT NULL,
  remove_eval_context_comment  IN  BOOLEAN                    DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–3 ALTER_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
evaluation_context_name	The name of the evaluation context you are altering, specified as [*schema_name*.]*evaluation_context_name*. For example, to alter an evaluation context named dept_eval_context in the hr schema, enter hr.dept_eval_context for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_aliases	If NULL and remove_table_aliases is FALSE, then the procedure retains the existing table aliases. If NULL and remove_table_aliases is TRUE, then the procedure removes the existing table aliases. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing table aliases for the evaluation context with the specified table aliases. Table aliases specify the tables in an evaluation context. The table aliases can be used to reference tables in rule conditions.
remove_table_aliases	If TRUE and table_aliases is NULL, then the procedure removes the existing table aliases for the evaluation context. If TRUE and table_aliases is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not remove table aliases.
variable_types	If NULL and remove_variable_types is FALSE, then the procedure retains the variable types. If NULL and remove_variable_types is TRUE, then the procedure removes the existing variable types. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing variable types for the evaluation context with the specified variable types.

Table 139–3 (Cont.) ALTER_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
remove_variable_types	If TRUE and variable_types is NULL, then the procedure removes the existing variable types for the evaluation context. If TRUE and variable_types is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not remove the variable types.
evaluation_function	If NULL and remove_evaluation_function is FALSE, then the procedure retains the existing evaluation function. If NULL and remove_evaluation_function is TRUE, then the procedure removes the existing evaluation function. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing evaluation function for the evaluation context with the specified evaluation function. An evaluation function is an optional function that will be called to evaluate rules that use the evaluation context. It must have the same form as the DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE procedure. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. See CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure on page 139-13for more information about evaluation functions.
remove_evaluation_function	If TRUE and evaluation_function is NULL, then the procedure removes the existing evaluation function for the evaluation context. If TRUE and evaluation_function is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not remove the evaluation function.
evaluation_context_comment	If NULL and remove_eval_context_comment is FALSE, then the procedure retains the existing evaluation context comment. If NULL and remove_evaluation_function is TRUE, then the procedure removes the existing evaluation context comment. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing comment for the evaluation context with the specified comment. An evaluation context comment is an optional description of the rule evaluation context.
remove_eval_context_comment	If TRUE and evaluation_context_comment is NULL, then the procedure removes the existing comment for the evaluation context. If TRUE and evaluation_context_comment is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not remove the evaluation context comment.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the evaluation context being altered
- Have ALL_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT or ALTER_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT object privilege on an evaluation context owned by another user
- Have ALTER_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege

See Also: Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package

ALTER_RULE Procedure

This procedure changes one or more aspects of the specified rule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_RULE(
   rule_name                 IN  VARCHAR2,
   condition                 IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   evaluation_context        IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_evaluation_context IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
   action_context            IN  SYS.RE$NV_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_action_context     IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
   rule_comment              IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   remove_rule_comment       IN  BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–4 ALTER_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule you are altering, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. For example, to alter a rule named all_a in the hr schema, enter hr.all_a for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
condition	The condition to be associated with the rule. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing condition of the rule with the specified condition.
evaluation_context	An evaluation context name in the form [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If non-NULL, then the procedure replaces the existing evaluation context of the rule with the specified evaluation context.
remove_evaluation_context	If TRUE, then the procedure sets the evaluation context for the rule to NULL, which effectively removes the evaluation context from the rule. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any evaluation context for the specified rule. If the evaluation_context parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.
action_context	If non-NULL, then the procedure changes the action context associated with the rule. A rule action context is information associated with a rule that is interpreted by the client of the rules engine when the rule is evaluated.
remove_action_context	If TRUE, then the procedure sets the action context for the rule to NULL, which effectively removes the action context from the rule. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any action context for the specified rule. If the action_context parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

Table 139–4 (Cont.) ALTER_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_comment	If non-NULL, then the existing comment of the rule is replaced by the specified comment.
remove_rule_comment	If TRUE, then the procedure sets the comment for the rule to NULL, which effectively removes the comment from the rule. If FALSE, then the procedure retains any comment for the specified rule. If the rule_comment parameter is non-NULL, then this parameter should be set to FALSE.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have ALTER_ON_RULE privilege on the rule
- Have ALTER_ANY_RULE system privilege
- Be the owner of the rule being altered

If an evaluation context is specified, then the rule owner must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have EXECUTE_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT privilege on the evaluation context
- Have EXECUTE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege, and the owner of the evaluation context must not be SYS
- Be the evaluation context owner

Also, the rule owner must have the necessary privileges on all the base objects accessed by the rule using the evaluation context.

> **See Also:** Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the DBMS_RULE_ADM package

CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure creates a rule evaluation context. A rule evaluation context defines external data that can be referenced in rule conditions. The external data can either exist as variables or as table data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT(
  evaluation_context_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
  table_aliases                IN  SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST    DEFAULT NULL,
  variable_types               IN  SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
  evaluation_function          IN  VARCHAR2                   DEFAULT NULL,
  evaluation_context_comment   IN  VARCHAR2                   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 139–5 CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
evaluation_context_name	The name of the evaluation context you are creating, specified as [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*.
	For example, to create an evaluation context named dept_eval_context in the hr schema, enter hr.dept_eval_context for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_aliases	Table aliases that specify the tables in an evaluation context. The table aliases can be used to reference tables in rule conditions.
variable_types	A list of variables for the evaluation context
evaluation_function	An optional function that will be called to evaluate rules using the evaluation context. It must have the same form as the DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE procedure. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
	See "Usage Notes" for more information about the evaluation function.
evaluation_context_comment	An optional description of the rule evaluation context.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the evaluation context being created and have CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT_OBJ system privilege
- Have CREATE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege

> **See Also:** Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the DBMS_RULE_ADM package

The evaluation function must have the following signature:

```
FUNCTION evaluation_function_name(
  rule_set_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
  evaluation_context  IN   VARCHAR2,
```

```
  event_context       IN   SYS.RE$NV_LIST               DEFAULT NULL,
  table_values        IN   SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST      DEFAULT NULL,
  column_values       IN   SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST     DEFAULT NULL,
  variable_values     IN   SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST   DEFAULT NULL,
  attribute_values    IN   SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
  stop_on_first_hit   IN   BOOLEAN                      DEFAULT FALSE,
  simple_rules_only   IN   BOOLEAN                      DEFAULT FALSE,
  true_rules          OUT  SYS.RE$RULE_HIT_LIST,
  maybe_rules         OUT  SYS.RE$RULE_HIT_LIST);
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Note: Each parameter is required and must have the specified datatype. However, you can change the names of the parameters.

The return value of the function must be one of the following:

- `DBMS_RULE_ADM.EVALUATION_SUCCESS`: The user specified evaluation function completed the rule set evaluation successfully. The rules engine returns the results of the evaluation obtained by the evaluation function to the rules engine client using the `DBMS_RULE.EVALUATE` procedure.
- `DBMS_RULE_ADM.EVALUATION_CONTINUE`: The rules engine evaluates the rule set as if there were no evaluation function. The evaluation function is not used, and any results returned by the evaluation function are ignored.
- `DBMS_RULE_ADM.EVALUATION_FAILURE`: The user specified evaluation function failed. Rule set evaluation stops, and an error is raised.

CREATE_RULE Procedure

This procedure creates a rule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_RULE(
   rule_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   condition           IN  VARCHAR2,
   evaluation_context  IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
   action_context      IN  SYS.RE$NV_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
   rule_comment        IN  VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 139–6 CREATE_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule you are creating, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. For example, to create a rule named all_a in the hr schema, enter hr.all_a for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
condition	The condition to be associated with the rule. A condition evaluates to TRUE or FALSE and can be any condition allowed in the WHERE clause of a SELECT statement. For example, the following is a valid rule condition: `department_id = 30` Ensure that the proper case is used for text in rule conditions. **Note:** Do not include the word "WHERE" in the condition.
evaluation_context	An optional evaluation context name in the form [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*, which is associated with the rule. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If evaluation_context is not specified, then the rule inherits the evaluation context from its rule set.
action_context	The action context associated with the rule. A rule action context is information associated with a rule that is interpreted by the client of the rules engine when the rule is evaluated.
rule_comment	An optional description of the rule

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the rule being created and have the CREATE_RULE_OBJ system privilege
- Have CREATE_ANY_RULE system privilege

If an evaluation context is specified, then the rule owner must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have EXECUTE_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT privilege on the evaluation context
- Have EXECUTE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege, and the owner of the evaluation context must not be SYS.

- Be the evaluation context owner

Also, the rule owner must have the necessary privileges on all the base objects accessed by the rule using the evaluation context.

> **See Also:** Chapter 283, "Rule TYPEs" for more information about the types used with the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package

CREATE_RULE_SET Procedure

This procedure creates a rule set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_RULE_SET(
   rule_set_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   evaluation_context  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   rule_set_comment    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 139–7 CREATE_RULE_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_set_name	The name of the rule set you are creating, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to create a rule set named apply_rules in the hr schema, enter hr.apply_rules for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
evaluation_context	An optional evaluation context name in the form [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*, which applies to all rules in the rule set that are not associated with an evaluation context explicitly. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
rule_set_comment	An optional description of the rule set

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the rule set being created and have CREATE_RULE_SET_OBJ system privilege
- Have CREATE_ANY_RULE_SET system privilege

If an evaluation context is specified, then the rule set owner must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have EXECUTE_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT privilege on the evaluation context
- Have EXECUTE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege, and the owner of the evaluation context must not be SYS
- Be the evaluation context owner

DROP_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure drops a rule evaluation context.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_EVALUATION_CONTEXT(
   evaluation_context_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   force                    IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–8 DROP_EVALUATION_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
evaluation_context_name	The name of the evaluation context you are dropping, specified as [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*. For example, to drop an evaluation context named dept_eval_context in the hr schema, enter hr.dept_eval_context for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
force	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the rule evaluation context from all rules and rule sets that use it. If FALSE and no rules or rule sets use the rule evaluation context, then the procedure drops the rule evaluation context. If FALSE and one or more rules or rule sets use the rule evaluation context, then the procedure raises an exception. **Caution:** Setting force to TRUE can result in rules and rule sets that do not have an evaluation context. If neither a rule nor the rule set it is in has an evaluation context, and no evaluation context was specified for the rule by the ADD_RULE procedure, then the rule cannot be evaluated.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the evaluation context
- Have DROP_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT system privilege

DROP_RULE Procedure

This procedure drops a rule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE(
   rule_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   force      IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–9 DROP_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule you are dropping, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. For example, to drop a rule named all_a in the hr schema, enter hr.all_a for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
force	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the rule from all rule sets that contain it. If FALSE and no rule sets contain the rule, then the procedure drops the rule. If FALSE and one or more rule sets contain the rule, then the procedure raises an exception.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the rule
- Have DROP_ANY_RULE system privilege

Note:

- To remove a rule from a rule set without dropping the rule from the database, use the REMOVE_RULE procedure.
- The rule evaluation context associated with the rule, if any, is not dropped when you run this procedure.

DROP_RULE_SET Procedure

This procedure drops a rule set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE_SET(
   rule_set_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   delete_rules   IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–10 DROP_RULE_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_set_name	The name of the rule set you are dropping, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to drop a rule set named apply_rules in the hr schema, enter hr.apply_rules for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
delete_rules	If TRUE, then the procedure drops any rules that are in the rule set. If any of the rules in the rule set are also in another rule set, then these rules are not dropped. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the rules in the rule set.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have DROP_ANY_RULE_SET system privilege
- Be the owner of the rule set

> **Note:** The rule evaluation context associated with the rule set, if any, is not dropped when you run this procedure.

GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grants the specified object privilege on the specified object to the specified user or role. If a user owns the object, then the user automatically is granted all privileges on the object, with grant option.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE(
   privilege     IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   object_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   grantee       IN  VARCHAR2,
   grant_option  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–11 GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The name of the object privilege to grant to the grantee on the object. See "Usage Notes" on page 139-21 for the available object privileges.
object_name	The name of the object for which you are granting the privilege to the grantee, specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, to grant the privilege on a rule set named apply_rules in the hr schema, enter hr.apply_rules for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The object must be an existing rule, rule set, or evaluation context.
grantee	The name of the user or role for which the privilege is granted. The specified user cannot be the owner of the object.
grant_option	If TRUE, then the specified user or users granted the specified privilege can grant this privilege to others. If FALSE, then the specified user or users granted the specified privilege cannot grant this privilege to others.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Be the owner of the object on which the privilege is granted
- Have the same privilege as the privilege being granted with the grant option

In addition, if the object is a rule set, then the user must have EXECUTE privilege on all the rules in the rule set with grant option or must own the rules in the rule set.

Table 139–12 lists the object privileges.

Table 139–12 Object Privileges for Evaluation Contexts, Rules, and Rule Sets

Privilege	Description
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALL_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Alter and execute a particular evaluation context in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALL_ON_RULE	Alter and execute a particular rule in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALL_ON_RULE_SET	Alter and execute a particular rule set in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Alter a particular evaluation context in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ON_RULE	Alter a particular rule in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ON_RULE_SET	Alter a particular rule set in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.EXECUTE_ON_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Execute a particular evaluation context in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.EXECUTE_ON_RULE	Execute a particular rule in another user's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.EXECUTE_ON_RULE_SET	Execute a particular rule set in another user's schema

Examples

For example, to grant the HR user the privilege to alter a rule named hr_dml in the strmadmin schema, enter the following:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_RULE_ADM.GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE(
    privilege    => SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ON_RULE,
    object_name  => 'strmadmin.hr_dml',
    grantee      => 'hr',
    grant_option => FALSE);
END;
/
```

GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure grant the specified system privilege to the specified user or role.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE(
   privilege     IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   grantee       IN  VARCHAR2,
   grant_option  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–13 GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The name of the system privilege to grant to the grantee.
grantee	The name of the user or role for which the privilege is granted
grant_option	If TRUE, then the specified user or users granted the specified privilege can grant the system privilege to others. If FALSE, then the specified user or users granted the specified privilege cannot grant the system privilege to others.

Usage Notes

Table 139–14 lists the system privileges.

Table 139–14 System Privileges for Evaluation Contexts, Rules, and Rule Sets

Privilege	Description
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Alter any evaluation context owned by any user
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ANY_RULE	Alter any rule owned by any user
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.ALTER_ANY_RULE_SET	Alter any rule set owned by any user
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Create a new evaluation context in any schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT_OBJ	Create a new evaluation context in the grantee's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_ANY_RULE	Create a new rule in any schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_RULE_OBJ	Create a new rule in the grantee's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_ANY_RULE_SET	Create a new rule set in any schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_RULE_SET_OBJ	Create a new rule set in the grantee's schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Drop any evaluation context in any schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_ANY_RULE	Drop any rule in any schema
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_ANY_RULE_SET	Drop any rule set in any schema

Table 139–14 (Cont.) System Privileges for Evaluation Contexts, Rules, and Rule Sets

Privilege	Description
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.EXECUTE_ANY_EVALUATION_CONTEXT	Execute any evaluation context owned by any user
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.EXECUTE_ANY_RULE	Execute any rule owned by any user
SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.EXECUTE_ANY_RULE_SET	Execute any rule set owned by any user

For example, to grant the strmadmin user the privilege to create a rule set in any schema, enter the following:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_RULE_ADM.GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE(
    privilege    => SYS.DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_ANY_RULE_SET,
    grantee      => 'strmadmin',
    grant_option => FALSE);
END;
/
```

Note: When you grant a privilege on "ANY" object (for example, ALTER_ANY_RULE), and the initialization parameter O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY is set to FALSE, you give the user access to that type of object in all schemas except the SYS schema. By default, the initialization parameter O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY is set to FALSE.

If you want to grant access to an object in the SYS schema, then you can grant object privileges explicitly on the object. Alternatively, you can set the O7_DICTIONARY_ACCESSIBILITY initialization parameter to TRUE. Then privileges granted on "ANY" object allows access to any schema, including SYS.

REMOVE_RULE Procedure

This procedure removes the specified rule from the specified rule set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.REMOVE_RULE(
   rule_name                IN  VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   evaluation_context       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   all_evaluation_contexts  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 139–15 REMOVE_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule you are removing from the rule set, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. For example, to remove a rule named all_a in the hr schema, enter hr.all_a for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
rule_set_name	The name of the rule set from which you are removing the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_set_name*. For example, to remove the rule from a rule set named apply_rules in the hr schema, enter hr.apply_rules for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
evaluation_context_name	The name of the evaluation context associated with the rule you are removing, specified as [*schema_name.*]*evaluation_context_name*. For example, to specify an evaluation context named dept_eval_context in the hr schema, enter hr.dept_eval_context for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If an evaluation context was specified for the rule you are removing when you added the rule to the rule set using the ADD_RULE procedure, then specify the same evaluation context. If you added the same rule more than once with different evaluation contexts, then specify the rule with the evaluation context you want to remove. If you specify an evaluation context that is not associated with the rule, then the procedure raises an error. Specify NULL if you did not specify an evaluation context when you added the rule to the rule set. If you specify NULL and there are one or more evaluation contexts associated with the rule, then the procedure raises an error.
all_evaluation_contexts	If TRUE, then the procedure removes the rule from the rule set with all of its associated evaluation contexts. If FALSE, then the procedure only removes the rule with the specified evaluation context. This parameter is relevant only if the same rule is added more than once to the rule set with different evaluation contexts.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet at least one of the following requirements:

- Have `ALTER_ON_RULE_SET` privilege on the rule set
- Have `ALTER_ANY_RULE_SET` system privilege
- Be the owner of the rule set

Note: This procedure does not drop a rule from the database. To drop a rule from the database, use the `DROP_RULE` procedure.

REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes the specified object privilege on the specified object from the specified user or role.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE(
   privilege    IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   object_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   revokee      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 139–16 REVOKE_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`privilege`	The name of the object privilege on the object to revoke from the revokee. See GRANT_OBJECT_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 139-21 for a list of the object privileges.
`object_name`	The name of the object for which you are revoking the privilege from the revokee, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, to revoke an object privilege on a rule set named `apply_rules` in the `hr` schema, enter `hr.apply_rules` for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The object must be an existing rule, rule set, or evaluation context.
`revokee`	The name of the user or role from which the privilege is revoked. The user who owns the object cannot be specified.

REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure revokes the specified system privilege from the specified user or role.

Syntax

```
DBMS_RULE_ADM.REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE(
   privilege  IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   revokee    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 139–17 REVOKE_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
privilege	The name of the system privilege to revoke from the revokee. See GRANT_SYSTEM_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 139-23 for a list of the system privileges.
revokee	The name of the user or role from which the privilege is revoked

140

DBMS_SCHEDULER

The DBMS_SCHEDULER package provides a collection of scheduling functions and procedures that can be called from any PL/SQL program.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information regarding how to use DBMS_SCHEDULER

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SCHEDULER

This section contains:

Deprecated Subprograms

Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1):

- CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure
- DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure

Security Model

The DBMS_SCHEDULER package ignores privileges granted on scheduler objects, such as jobs or chains, through roles. Object privileges must be granted directly to the user.

Rules and Limits

The following rules apply when using the DBMS_SCHEDULER package:

- Only SYS can perform actions on objects in the SYS schema.
- Several of the procedures accept comma-delimited lists of object names. If you provide a list of names, then the Scheduler stops executing the list at the first object that returns an error. Therefore, the Scheduler does not perform the tasks needed for the remaining objects on the list.

  For example, consider the statement DBMS_SCHEDULER.STOP_JOB ('job1, job2, job3, sys.jobclass1, sys.jobclass2, sys.jobclass3');

  If job3 cannot be stopped, then the jobs that follow it, jobclass1, jobclass2, and jobclass3 cannot be stopped. The jobs that preceded job3, job1 and job2, are stopped.
- Performing an action on an object that does not exist returns a PL/SQL exception stating that the object does not exist.

Operational Notes

The Scheduler uses a rich **calendaring syntax** to enable you to define repeating schedules, such as "every Tuesday and Friday at 4:00 p.m." or "the second Wednesday of every month." This calendaring syntax is used in calendaring expressions in the `repeat_interval` argument of a number of package subprograms. Evaluating a calendaring expression results in a set of discrete timestamps.

See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for examples of the calendaring syntax.

Calendaring Syntax

This section starts with the calendaring syntax. It is followed by descriptions of various parts of the syntax.

In the calendaring syntax, * means 0 or more.

```
repeat_interval = regular_schedule | combined_schedule

regular_schedule = frequency_clause
[";" interval_clause] [";" bymonth_clause] [";" byweekno_clause]
[";" byyearday_clause] [";" bydate_clause] [";" bymonthday_clause]
[";" byday_clause] [";" byhour_clause] [";" byminute_clause]
[";" bysecond_clause] [";" bysetpos_clause] [";" include_clause]
[";" exclude_clause] [";" intersect_clause][";" periods_clause]
[";" byperiod_clause]


frequency_clause = "FREQ" "=" ( predefined_frequency | user_defined_frequency )
predefined_frequency = "YEARLY" | "MONTHLY" | "WEEKLY" | "DAILY" |
   "HOURLY" | "MINUTELY" | "SECONDLY"
user_defined_frequency = named_schedule

interval_clause = "INTERVAL" "=" intervalnum
   intervalnum = 1 through 99
bymonth_clause = "BYMONTH" "=" monthlist
   monthlist = month ( "," month)*
   month = numeric_month | char_month
   numeric_month = 1 | 2 | 3 ...  12
   char_month = "JAN" | "FEB" | "MAR" | "APR" | "MAY" | "JUN" |
   "JUL" | "AUG" | "SEP" | "OCT" | "NOV" | "DEC"
byweekno_clause = "BYWEEKNO" "=" weeknumber_list
   weeknumber_list = weeknumber ( "," weeknumber)*
   weeknumber = [minus] weekno
   weekno = 1 through 53
byyearday_clause = "BYYEARDAY" "=" yearday_list
   yearday_list = yearday ( "," yearday)*
   yearday = [minus] yeardaynum
   yeardaynum = 1 through 366
bydate_clause = "BYDATE" "=" date_list
   date_list = date ( "," date)*
   date = [YYYY]MMDD [ offset | span ]
bymonthday_clause = "BYMONTHDAY" "=" monthday_list
   monthday_list = monthday ( "," monthday)*
   monthday = [minus] monthdaynum
   monthdaynum = 1 through 31
byday_clause = "BYDAY" "=" byday_list
   byday_list = byday ( "," byday)*
```

```
   byday = [weekdaynum] day
   weekdaynum = [minus] daynum
   daynum = 1 through 53 /* if frequency is yearly */
   daynum = 1 through 5  /* if frequency is monthly */
   day = "MON" | "TUE" | "WED" | "THU" | "FRI" | "SAT" | "SUN"
BYTIME clause:  BYTIME=[hour_minute_second_list|minute_second_list]
   hour_minute_second_list: hh24mmss, .., hh24mmss
   minute_second_list: mmss, .. mmss
byhour_clause = "BYHOUR" "=" hour_list
   hour_list = hour ( "," hour)*
   hour = 0 through 23
byminute_clause = "BYMINUTE" "=" minute_list
   minute_list = minute ( "," minute)*
   minute = 0 through 59
bysecond_clause = "BYSECOND" "=" second_list
   second_list = second ( "," second)*
   second = 0 through 59
bysetpos_clause = "BYSETPOS" "=" setpos_list
   setpos_list = setpos ("," setpos)*
   setpos = [minus] setpos_num
   setpos_num = 1 through 9999

include_clause = "INCLUDE" "=" schedule_list
exclude_clause = "EXCLUDE" "=" schedule_list
intersect_clause = "INTERSECT" "=" schedule_list
schedule_list = schedule_clause ("," schedule_clause)*
schedule_clause = named_schedule [ offset ]
named_schedule = [schema "."] schedule
periods_clause = "PERIODS" "=" periodnum
byperiod_clause = "BYPERIOD" "=" period_list
period_list = periodnum ("," periodnum)*
periodnum = 1 through 100

offset = ("+" | "-") ["OFFSET:"] duration_val
span = ("+" | "-" | "^") "SPAN:" duration_val
duration_val = dur-weeks | dur_days
dur_weeks = numofweeks "W"
dur_days = numofdays "D"
numofweeks = 1 through 53
numofdays = 1 through 376
minus = "-"

combined_schedule = schedule_list
```

Table 140–1 Values for repeat_interval

Name	Description
FREQ	This specifies the type of recurrence. It must be specified. The possible predefined frequency values are YEARLY, MONTHLY, WEEKLY, DAILY, HOURLY, MINUTELY, and SECONDLY. Alternatively, specifies an existing schedule to use as a user-defined frequency.
INTERVAL	This specifies a positive integer representing how often the recurrence repeats. The default is 1, which means every second for secondly, every day for daily, and so on. The maximum value is 99.
BYMONTH	This specifies which month or months you want the job to execute in. You can use numbers such as 1 for January and 3 for March, as well as three-letter abbreviations such as FEB for February and JUL for July.

Table 140–1 (Cont.) Values for repeat_interval

Name	Description
BYWEEKNO	This specifies the week of the year as a number. It follows ISO-8601, which defines the week as starting with Monday and ending with Sunday; and the first week of a year as the first week, which is mostly within the Gregorian year. The first week is equivalent to the following two variants: the week that contains the first Thursday of the Gregorian year; and the week containing January 4th. The ISO-8601 week numbers are integers from 1 to 52 or 53; parts of week 1 may be in the previous calendar year; parts of week 52 may be in the following calendar year; and if a year has a week 53, parts of it must be in the following calendar year. As an example, in the year 1998, the ISO week 1 began on Monday December 29th, 1997; and the last ISO week (week 53) ended on Sunday January 3rd, 1999. So December 29th, 1997, is in the ISO week 1998-01, and January 1st, 1999, is in the ISO week 1998-53. byweekno is only valid for YEARLY. Examples of invalid specifications are "FREQ=YEARLY; BYWEEKNO=1; BYMONTH=12" and "FREQ=YEARLY;BYWEEKNO=53;BYMONTH=1".
BYYEARDAY	This specifies the day of the year as a number. Valid values are 1 to 366. An example is 69, which is March 10 (31 for January, 28 for February, and 10 for March). 69 evaluates to March 10 for non-leap years and March 9 in leap years. -2 will always evaluate to December 30th independent of whether it is a leap year.
BYDATE	This specifies a list of dates, where each date is of the form [YYYY]MMDD. A list of consecutive dates can be generated by using the SPAN modifier, and a date can be adjusted with the OFFSET modifier. An example of a simple BYDATE clause follows: BYDATE=0115,0315,0615,0915,1215,20060115 The following SPAN example is equivalent to BYDATE=0110,0111,0112,0113,0114, which is a span of 5 days starting at 1/10: BYDATE=0110+SPAN:5D The plus sign in front of the SPAN keyword indicates a span starting at the supplied date. The minus sign indicates a span ending at the supplied date, and the "^" sign indicates a span of *n* days or weeks centered around the supplied date. If *n* is an even number, it is adjusted up to the next odd number. Offsets adjust the supplied date by adding or subtracting *n* days or weeks. BYDATE=0205-OFFSET:2W is equivalent to BYDATE=0205-14D (the OFFSET: keyword is optional), which is also equivalent to BYDATE=0122.
BYMONTHDAY	This specifies the day of the month as a number. Valid values are 1 to 31. An example is 10, which means the 10th day of the selected month. You can use the minus sign (-) to count backward from the last day, so, for example, BYMONTHDAY=-1 means the last day of the month and BYMONTHDAY=-2 means the next to last day of the month.
BYDAY	This specifies the day of the week from Monday to Sunday in the form MON, TUE, and so on. Using numbers, you can specify the 26th Friday of the year, if using a YEARLY frequency, or the 4th THU of the month, using a MONTHLY frequency. Using the minus sign, you can say the second to last Friday of the month. For example, -1 FRI is the last Friday of the month.
BYHOUR	This specifies the hour on which the job is to run. Valid values are 0 to 23. As an example, 10 means 10 a.m.
BYMINUTE	This specifies the minute on which the job is to run. Valid values are 0 to 59. As an example, 45 means 45 minutes past the chosen hour.

Table 140–1 (Cont.) Values for repeat_interval

Name	Description
BYSECOND	This specifies the second on which the job is to run. Valid values are 0 to 59. As an example, 30 means 30 seconds past the chosen minute.
BYSETPOS	This selects one or more items, by position, in the list of timestamps that result after the whole calendaring expression is evaluated. It is useful for requirements such as running a job on the last workday of the month. Rather than attempting to express this with the other BY clauses, you can code the calendaring expression to evaluate to a list of every workday of the month, and then add the BYSETPOS clause to select only the last item of that list. Assuming that workdays are Monday through Friday, the syntax would then be: FREQ=MONTHLY; BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI; BYSETPOS=-1 Valid values are 1 through 9999. A negative number selects an item from the end of the list (-1 is the last item, -2 is the next to last item, and so on) and a positive number selects from the front of the list. The BYSETPOS clause is always evaluated last. BYSETPOS is only supported with the MONTHLY and YEARLY frequencies. The BYSETPOS clause is applied to the list of timestamps once per frequency period. For example, when the frequency is defined as MONTHLY, the Scheduler determines all valid timestamps for the month, orders that list, and then applies the BYSETPOS clause. The Scheduler then moves on to the next month and repeats the procedure. Assuming a start date of Jun 10, 2004, the example evaluates to: Jun 30, Jul 30, Aug 31, Sep 30, Oct 29, and so on.
INCLUDE	This includes one or more named schedules in the calendaring expression. That is, the set of timestamps defined by each included named schedule is added to the results of the calendaring expression. If an identical timestamp is contributed by both an included schedule and the calendaring expression, it is included in the resulting set of timestamps only once. The named schedules must have been defined with the CREATE_SCHEDULE procedure. This clause only works on a full day and therefore cannot be used with BYHOUR, BYMIN, and BYSECOND.
EXCLUDE	This excludes one or more named schedules from the calendaring expression. That is, the set of timestamps defined by each excluded named schedule is removed from the results of the calendaring expression. The named schedules must have been defined with the CREATE_SCHEDULE procedure. This clause only works on a full day and therefore cannot be used with BYHOUR, BYMIN, and BYSECOND.

Table 140–1 (Cont.) Values for repeat_interval

Name	Description
INTERSECT	This specifies an intersection between the calendaring expression results and the set of timestamps defined by one or more named schedules. Only the timestamps that appear both in the calendaring expression and in one of the named schedules are included in the resulting set of timestamps. For example, assume that the named schedule last_sat indicates the last Saturday in every month, and that for the year 2005, the only months where the last day of the month is also a Saturday are April and December. Assume also that the named schedule end_qtr indicates the last day of each quarter in 2005: 3/31/2005, 6/30/2005, 9/30/2005, 12/31/2005 These calendaring expressions result in the dates that follow: 3/31/2005, 4/30/2005, 6/30/2005, 9/30/2005, 12/31/2005 FREQ=MONTHLY; BYMONTHDAY=-1; INTERSECT=last_sat,end_qtr In this example, the terms FREQ=MONTHLY; BYMONTHDAY=-1 indicate the last day of each month. This clause only works on a full day and therefore cannot be used with BYHOUR, BYMIN, and BYSECOND.
PERIODS	This identifies the number of periods that together form one cycle of a user-defined frequency. It is used in the repeat_interval expression of the schedule that defines the user-defined frequency. It is mandatory when the repeat_interval expression in the main schedule contains a BYPERIOD clause. The following example defines the quarters of a fiscal year. FREQ=YEARLY;BYDATE=0301,0601,0901,1201;PERIODS=4
BYPERIOD	This selects periods from a user-defined frequency. For example, if a main schedule names a user-defined frequency schedule that defines the fiscal quarters shown in the previous example, the clause BYPERIOD=2,4 in the main schedule selects the 2nd and 4th fiscal quarters.

Combining Schedules There are two ways to combine schedules:

- Using a combined schedule expression, which is a list of individual schedules

  For example, to create a schedule for all company holidays, you provide a list of individual schedules, where each schedule in the list defines a single holiday. The Scheduler evaluates each individual schedule, and then returns a union of the timestamps returned by each individual schedule.

- Embedding other schedules into the main schedule using include, exclude, and intersect clauses

  With this method, the embedded schedules inherit certain attributes from the main schedule.

  – Timestamps generated by the INCLUDE clause that fall into periods that are skipped by the main schedule are ignored. This is the case when the main schedule skips periods due to the INTERVAL clause, the BYPERIOD clause, or the BYMONTH clause for freq=monthly.

  – Days that are added by the INCLUDE clause follow the hourly/minutely/secondly execution pattern of the main schedule.

  – When the INCLUDE clause is present, no date-specific defaults are retrieved from the start date (but time-specific defaults can be). (See "Start Dates and Repeat Intervals", later in this section.) For example, a repeat_interval of

FREQ=MONTHLY;INCLUDE=HOLIDAY executes only on holidays and not on the month/day defaults retrieved from the start date.

The following is an example:

```
BEGIN
dbms_scheduler.create_schedule('embed_sched', repeat_interval =>
  'FREQ=YEARLY;BYDATE=0130,0220,0725');
dbms_scheduler.create_schedule('main_sched', repeat_interval =>
  'FREQ=MONTHLY;INTERVAL=2;BYMONTHDAY=15;BYHOUR=9,17;INCLUDE=embed_sched');
END;
/
```

In this example, the dates 1/30, 2/20, and 7/25 are added to the main schedule. However, the Scheduler does not include dates that fall in months that are skipped by the INTERVAL clause. If the start date of the main schedule is 1/1/2005, then 2/20 is not added. On the dates that are added, the embedded schedule follows the execution pattern of the main schedule: jobs are executed at 9:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. on 1/30 and 7/25. If the embedded schedule does not itself have a start date, it inherits the start date from the main schedule.

User-Defined Frequencies Instead of using predefined frequencies like DAILY, WEEKLY, MONTHLY, and so on, you can create your own frequencies by creating a schedule that returns the start date of each period. For example, the following repeat_interval expression is used in a schedule named fiscal_year that defines the start of each quarter in a fiscal year:

```
FREQ=YEARLY;BYDATE=0301,0601,0901,1201;PERIODS=4
```

To return the last Wednesday of every quarter, you create a schedule (the "main schedule") that uses the fiscal_year schedule as a user-defined frequency:

```
FREQ=fiscal_year;BYDAY=-1WED
```

Periods in a user-defined frequency do not have to be equal in length. In the main schedule, the BYSETPOS clause and numbered weekdays are recalculated based on the size of each period. To select dates in specific periods, you must use the BYPERIOD clause in the main schedule. To enable this, the schedule that is used as the user-defined frequency must include a PERIODS clause, and it must set its start date appropriately. The first date returned by this schedule is used as the starting point of period 1.

As another example, assuming work days are Monday through Friday, to get the last work day of the 2nd and 4th quarters of the fiscal year, the repeat_interval clause in the main schedule is the following:

```
FREQ=fiscal_year;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI;BYPERIOD=2,4;BYSETPOS=-1
```

Start Dates and Repeat Intervals The Scheduler retrieves the date and time from the job or schedule start date and incorporates them as defaults into the repeat_interval. For example, if the specified frequency is yearly and there is no BYMONTH or BYMONTHDAY clause in the repeat interval, then the month and day that the job runs on are retrieved from the start date. Similarly, if frequency is monthly but there is no BYMONTHDAY clause in the repeat interval, then the day of the month that the job runs on is retrieved from the start date. If present, BYHOUR, BYMINUTE, and BYSECOND defaults are also retrieved from the start date, and used if those clauses are not specified. Note that if the INCLUDE, EXCLUDE, or INTERSECT clauses are present, no date-related defaults are retrieved from the start date, but time-related defaults are.The following are some examples:

```
start_date:      4/15/05 9:00:00
```

```
repeat_interval: freq=yearly
```

is expanded internally to:

```
freq=yearly;bymonth=4;bymonthday=15;byhour=9;byminute=0;bysecond=0
```

The preceding schedule executes on 04/15/05 9:00:00, 04/15/06 9:00:00, 04/15/07 9:00:00, and so on.

For the next example, assume that schedule `S1` has a `repeat_interval` of `FREQ=YEARLY;BYDATE=0701`.

```
start_date:      01/20/05 9:00:00
repeat_interval: freq=yearly;include=S1
```

is expanded internally to:

```
freq=yearly;byhour=9;byminute=0;bysecond=0;include=S1
```

Because an `INCLUDE` clause is present, date-related information is not retrieved from the start date. However, time-specific information is, so the preceding schedule executes on 07/01/05 9:00:00, 07/01/06 9:00:00, 07/01/08 9:00:00, and so on.

General Rules When using a calendaring expression, consider the following rules:

- For a regular schedule (as opposed to a combined schedule), the calendar string must start with the frequency clause. All other clauses are optional and can be put in any order.
- All clauses are separated by a semicolon, and each clause can be present at most once, with the exception of the `include`, `exclude`, and `intersect` clauses.
- Spaces are allowed between syntax elements and the strings are case-insensitive.
- The list of values for a specific `BY` clause do not need to be ordered.
- When not enough `BY` clauses are present to determine what the next date is, this information is retrieved from the start date. For example, `"FREQ=YEARLY"` with a start date of 02/15/2003 becomes `"FREQ=YEARLY;BYMONTH=FEB; BYMONTHDAY=15"`, which means every year on the 15th of February.

  `"FREQ=YEARLY;BYMONTH=JAN,JUL"` with start date 01/21/2003 becomes `"FREQ=YEARLY;BYMONTH=JAN,JUL;BYMONTHDAY=21"`, which means every year on January 21 and July 21.
- The `byweekno` clause is only allowed if the frequency is `YEARLY`. It cannot be used with other frequencies. When it is present, it will return all days in that week number. If you want to limit it to specific days within the week, you have to add a `BYDAY` clause. For example, `"FREQ=YEARLY;BYWEEKNO=2"` with a start date of 01/01/2003 will return:

  ```
  01/06/2003, 01/07/2003, 01/08/2003, 01/09/2003, 01/10/2003, 01/11/2003,
  01/12/2003, 01/05/2004, 01/06/2004, 01/07/2004, .... and so on.
  ```

  Note that when the `byweekno` clause is used, it is possible that the dates returned are from a year other than the current year. For example, if returning dates for the year 2004 and the calendar string is `"FREQ=YEARLY;BYWEEKNO=1,53"` for the specified week numbers in 2004, it will return the dates:

  ```
  12/29/03, 12/30/03, 12/31/03, 01/01/04, 01/02/04, 01/03/04, 01/04/04, 12/27/04,
  12/28/04, 12/29/04, 12/30/04, 12/31/04, 01/01/05, 01/02/05
  ```

- For those BY clauses that do not have a consistent range of values, you can count backward by putting a "-" in front of the numeric value. For example, specifying BYMONTHDAY=31 will not give you the last day of every month, because not every month has 31 days. Instead, BYMONTHDAY=-1 will give you the last day of the month.

  This is not supported for BY clauses that are fixed in size. In other words, BYMONTH, BYHOUR, BYMINUTE, and BYSECOND are not supported.

- The basic values for the BYDAY clause are the days of the week. When the frequency is YEARLY, or MONTHLY, you are allowed to specify a positive or negative number in front of each day of the week. In the case of YEARLY, BYDAY=40MON, indicates the 40th Monday of the year. In the case of MONTHLY, BYDAY=-2SAT, indicates the second to last Saturday of the month.

  Note that positive or negative numbers in front of the weekdays are not supported for other frequencies and that in the case of yearly, the number ranges from -53 ... -1, 1 ... 53, whereas for the monthly frequency it is limited to -5 ... -1, 1... 5.

  If no number is present in front of the weekday it specifies, every occurrence of that weekday in the specified frequency.

- The first day of the week is Monday.

- Repeating jobs with frequencies smaller than daily follow their frequencies exactly across daylight savings adjustments. For example, suppose that a job is scheduled to repeat every 3 hours, the clock is moved forward from 1:00 a.m. to 2:00 a.m., and the last time the job ran was midnight. Its next scheduled time will be 4:00 a.m. Thus, the 3 hour period between subsequent job runs is retained. The same applies when the clock is moved back. This behavior is not the case for repeating jobs that have frequencies of daily or larger. For example, if a repeating job is supposed to be executed on a daily basis at midnight, it will continue to run at midnight if the clock is moved forward or backward. When the execution time of such a daily (or larger frequency) job happens to fall inside a window where the clock is moved forward, the job executes at the end of the window.

- The calendaring syntax does not allow you to specify a time zone. Instead the Scheduler retrieves the time zone from the start_date argument. If jobs must follow daylight savings adjustments, then you must specify a region name for the time zone of the start_date. For example specifying the start_date time zone as 'US/Eastern' in New York ensures that daylight saving adjustments are automatically applied. If instead, the time zone of the start_date is set to an absolute offset, such as '-5:00', then daylight savings adjustments are not followed and your job execution is off by an hour for half the year.

- When start_date is NULL, the Scheduler determines the time zone for the repeat interval as follows:

  1. It checks whether or not the session time zone is a region name. The session time zone can be set by either:

     – Issuing an ALTER SESSION statement, for example:

     ```
     SQL> ALTER SESSION SET time_zone = 'Asia/Shanghai';
     ```

     – Setting the ORA_SDTZ environment variable.

  2. If the session time zone is an absolute offset instead of a region name, the Scheduler uses the value of the DEFAULT_TIMEZONE Scheduler attribute. For more information, see the SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure.

3. If the DEFAULT_TIMEZONE attribute is NULL, the Scheduler uses the time zone of systimestamp when the job or window is enabled.

BYSETPOS Clause Rules The following are rules for the BYSETPOS clause.

- The BYSETPOS clause is the last clause to be evaluated. It is processed after all other BY clauses and the INCLUDE, EXCLUDE and INTERSECT clauses have been evaluated.
- The INTERVAL clause does not change the size of the period to which the BYSETPOS clause is applied. For example, when the frequency is set to monthly and interval is set to 3, the list of timestamps to which BYSETPOS is applied is generated from a month, not a quarter. The only impact of the INTERVAL clause is to cause months to be skipped. However, you can still select the second to last workday of the quarter like this:

  ```
  FREQ=MONTHLY;INTERVAL=3;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI;BYSETPOS=-2
  ```

  provided that you set the start date in the right month. This example returns the next to last workday of a month, and repeats once a quarter.
- To get consistent results, the set to which BYSETPOS is applied is determined from the beginning of the frequency period independently of when the evaluation occurs. Whether the Scheduler evaluates

  ```
  FREQ=MONTHLY;BYDAY=MON,TUE,FRI;BYSETPOS=1,3
  ```

  on 01/01/2004 or 01/15/2004, in both cases the expression evaluates to Friday 01/02/2004, and Tuesday 01/06/2004. The only difference is that when the expression is evaluated on 01/15/2004, the Scheduler determines that there are no matches in January because the timestamps found are in the past, and it moves on to the matches in the next month, February.

BYDATE Clause Rules The following are rules for the BYDATE clause.

- If dates in the BYDATE clause do not have their optional year component, the job runs on those dates every year.
- The job execution times on the included dates are derived from the BY clauses in the calendaring expression. For example, if repeat_interval is defined as

  ```
  freq=daily;byhour=8,13,18;byminute=0;bysecond=0;bydate=0502,0922
  ```

  then the execution times on 05/02 and 09/22 are 8:00 a.m., 1:00 p.m., and 6:00 p.m.

EXCLUDE Clause Rules Excluded dates without a time component are 24 hour periods. All timestamps that fall on an excluded date are removed. In the following example, jan_fifteen is a named schedule that resolves to the single date of 01/15:

```
freq=monthly;bymonthday=15,30;byhour=8,13,18;byminute=0;bysecond=0;
     exclude=jan_fifteenth
```

In this case, all three instances of the job are removed for 01/15.

OFFSET Rules You can adjust the dates of individual named schedules by adding positive offsets to them. For example, to execute JOB2 exactly 15 days after every occurrence of JOB1, add +OFFSET:15D to the schedule of JOB1, as follows:

```
BEGIN
dbms_scheduler.create_schedule('job2_schedule', repeat_interval =>
  'job1_schedule+OFFSET:15D');
END;
```

```
/
```

Note that negative offsets to named schedules are not supported.

Example 140–1 Putting It All Together

This example demonstrates the use of user-defined frequencies, spans, offsets, and the `BYSETPOS` and `INCLUDE` clauses. (Note that the `OFFSET:` keyword is optional in an offset clause.)

Many companies in the retail industry share the same fiscal year. The fiscal year starts on the Sunday closest to February 1st, and subsequent quarters start exactly 13 weeks later. The fiscal year schedule for the retail industry can be defined as the following:

```
begin
 dbms_scheduler.create_schedule('year_start', repeat_interval=>
       'FREQ=YEARLY;BYDATE=0201^SPAN:1W;BYDAY=SUN');
 dbms_scheduler.create_schedule('retail_fiscal_year',
        to_timestamp_tz('15-JAN-2005 12:00:00','DD-MON-YYYY HH24:MI:SS'),
         'year_start,year_start+13w,year_start+26w,year_start+39w;periods=4');
end;
/
```

The following schedule can be used to execute a job on the 5th day off in the 2nd and the 4th quarters of the retail industry. This assumes that Saturday and Sunday are off days as well as the days in the existing `holiday` schedule.

```
begin
 dbms_scheduler.create_schedule('fifth_day_off', repeat_interval=>
  'FREQ=retail_fiscal_year;BYDAY=SAT,SUN;INCLUDE=holiday;
    BYPERIOD=2,4;BYSETPOS=5');
end;
/
```

Data Structures

The DBMS_SCHEDULER package defines OBJECT types and TABLE types.

OBJECT Types

- JOBARG Object Type
- JOB_DEFINITION Object Type
- JOBATTR Object Type
- SCHEDULER$_STEP_TYPE Object Type
- SCHEDULER$_EVENT_INFO Object Type
- SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT Object Type
- SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_REQUEST Object Type

TABLE Types

- JOBARG_ARRAY Table Type
- JOB_DEFINITION_ARRAY Table Type
- JOBATTR_ARRAY Table Type
- SCHEDULER$_STEP_TYPE_LIST Table Type

JOBARG Object Type

This type is used by the JOB and JOBATTR object types. It represents a job argument in a batch of job arguments.

Syntax

```
TYPE jobarg IS OBJECT (
   arg_position         NUMBER,
   arg_text_value       VARCHAR2(4000),
   arg_anydata_value    ANYDATA,
   arg_operation        VARCHAR2(5));
```

Attributes

Table 140–2 JOBARG Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
arg_position	Position of the argument
arg_text_value	Value of the argument if the type is VARCHAR2
arg_anydata_value	Value of the argument if the type is AnyData
arg_operation	Type of the operation: ■ SET ■ RESET

JOBARG Constructor Function

This constructor function constructs a job argument. It is overloaded to construct job arguments with different types of values.

Syntax

Constructs a job argument with a text value.

```
constructor function jobarg (
   arg_position        IN POSITIVEN,
   arg_value           IN VARCHAR2)
   RETURN SELF AS RESULT;
```

Constructs a job argument with an AnyData value.

```
constructor function jobarg (
   arg_position        IN POSITIVEN,
   arg_value           IN ANYDATA)
   RETURN SELF AS RESULT;
```

Constructs a job argument with a NULL value.

```
constructor function jobarg (
   arg_position        IN POSITIVEN,
   arg_reset           IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
   RETURN SELF AS RESULT;
```

Parameters

Table 140–3 JOBARG Constructor Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
arg_position	Position of the argument
arg_value	Value of the argument
arg_reset	If arg_reset is TRUE, then the argument at that position is reset. Setting arg_reset to FALSE (which is the default) will create an argument with a NULL value.

JOBARG_ARRAY Table Type

Syntax

```
TYPE jobarg_array IS TABLE OF jobarg;
```

JOB_DEFINITION Object Type

This type is used by the CREATE_JOBS procedure and represents a job in a batch of jobs.

Syntax

```
TYPE job_definition IS OBJECT (
  job_name                       VARCHAR2(100),
  job_class                      VARCHAR2(32),
  job_style                      VARCHAR2(11),
  program_name                   VARCHAR2(100),
  job_action                     VARCHAR2(4000),
  job_type                       VARCHAR2(20),
  schedule_name                  VARCHAR2(65),
  repeat_interval                VARCHAR2(4000),
  schedule_limit                 INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
  start_date                     TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  end_date                       TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  event_condition                VARCHAR2(4000),
  queue_spec                     VARCHAR2(100),
  number_of_arguments            NUMBER,
  arguments                      SYS.JOBARG_ARRAY,
  job_priority                   NUMBER,
  job_weight                     NUMBER,
  max_run_duration               INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
  max_runs                       NUMBER,
  max_failures                   NUMBER,
  logging_level                  NUMBER,
  restartable                    VARCHAR2(5),
  stop_on_window_close           VARCHAR2(5),
  raise_events                   NUMBER,
  comments                       VARCHAR2(240),
  auto_drop                      VARCHAR2(5),
  enabled                        VARCHAR2(5),
  follow_default_timezone        VARCHAR2(5),
  parallel_instances             VARCHAR2(5),
  aq_job                         VARCHAR2(5),
  instance_id                    NUMBER,
  credential_name                VARCHAR2(65),
  destination                    VARCHAR2(4000),
  database_role                  VARCHAR2(20),
  allow_runs_in_restricted_mode  VARCHAR2(5);
  restart_on_recovery            BOOLEAN;
  restart_on_failure             BOOLEAN;)
```

Object Attributes

Table 140–4 provides brief descriptions of the attributes of the JOB_DEFINITION object type. For more complete information about these attributes, see the "CREATE_JOB Procedure" on page 140-55 and the "SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure" on page 140-127.

Table 140–4 JOB_DEFINITION Object Types

Attribute	Description
job_name	Name of the job
job_class	Name of the job class

Table 140–4 (Cont.) JOB_DEFINITION Object Types

Attribute	Description
job_style	Style of the job: ■ REGULAR ■ LIGHTWEIGHT
program_name	Name of the program that the job runs
job_action	Inline action of the job. This is either the code for an anonymous PL/SQL block or the name of a stored procedure, external executable, or chain.
job_type	Job action type ('PLSQL_BLOCK', 'STORED_PROCEDURE', 'EXECUTABLE', 'CHAIN', 'EXTERNAL_SCRIPT', 'SQL_SCRIPT', and 'BACKUP_SCRIPT')
schedule_name	Name of the schedule that specifies when the job has to execute
repeat_interval	Inline time-based schedule
schedule_limit	Maximum delay time between scheduled and actual job start before a job run is canceled
start_date	Start date and time of the job
end_date	End date and time of the job
event_condition	Event condition for event-based jobs
queue_spec	File watcher name or queue specification for event-based jobs
number_of_arguments	Number of job arguments
arguments	Array of job arguments
job priority	Job priority
job_weight	*** Deprecated in Oracle Database 11*g*R2. Do not change the value of this attribute from the default, which is 1. Weight of the job for parallel execution.
max_run_duration	Maximum run duration of the job
max_runs	Maximum number of runs before the job is marked as completed
max_failures	Maximum number of failures tolerated before the job is marked as broken
logging_level	Job logging level
restartable	Indicates whether the job is restartable (TRUE) or not (FALSE)
stop_on_window_close	Indicates whether the job is stopped when the window that it runs in ends (TRUE) or not (FALSE). Equivalent to the stop_on_window_close job attribute described in the SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure.
raise_events	State changes that raise events
comments	Comments on the job
auto_drop	If TRUE (the default), indicates that the job should be dropped once completed
enabled	Indicates whether the job should be enabled immediately after creating it (TRUE) or not (FALSE)
follow_default_timezone	If TRUE and if the job start_date is null, then when the default_timezone scheduler attribute is changed, the Scheduler recomputes the next run date and time for this job so that it is in accordance with the new time zone.

Table 140–4 (Cont.) JOB_DEFINITION Object Types

Attribute	Description
parallel_instances	For event-based jobs only. If TRUE, on the arrival of the specified event, the Scheduler creates a new lightweight job to handle that event, so multiple instances of the same event-based job can run in parallel. If FALSE, then an event is discarded if it is raised while the job that handles it is already running,
aq_job	For internal use only
instance_id	The instance ID of the instance that the job must run on
credential_name	The credential to use for a single destination or the default credential for a group of destinations
destination	The name of a single external destination or database destination, or a group name of type external destination or database destination
database_role	In an Oracle Data Guard environment, the database role ('PRIMARY' or 'LOGICAL STANDBY') for which the job runs
allow_runs_in_ restricted_mode	If TRUE, the job is permitted to run when the database is in restricted mode, provided that the job owner is permitted to log in during this mode
restart_on_recovery	If set to TRUE for a job and the job is stopped by a database shutdown, then the job is restarted when the database is recovered. If set to FALSE, and the job is stopped by a database shutdown, then the job is marked as stopped when the database is recovered.
restart_on_failure	If set to TRUE for a job and the job fails due to an application error, then the job is retried using the normal Scheduler retry mechanism (after 1 second, after 10 seconds, after 100 seconds, and so on, up to a maximum of 6 times). If all 6 retries fail (after about 30 hours), then the job is marked FAILED. If set to FALSE (the default), a failed job is immediately marked FAILED.

JOB_DEFINITION Constructor Function

This constructor function constructs a job_definition object.

Syntax

```
constructor function job_definition (
    job_name                IN     VARCHAR2,
    job_style               IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'REGULAR',
    program_name            IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    job_action              IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    job_type                IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    schedule_name           IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    repeat_interval         IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    event_condition         IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    queue_spec              IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    start_date              IN     TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
    end_date                IN     TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
    number_of_arguments     IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
    arguments               IN     SYS.JOBARG_ARRAY DEFAULT NULL,
    job_class               IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
```

```
schedule_limit          IN     INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND DEFAULT NULL,
job_priority            IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
job_weight              IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
max_run_duration        IN     INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND DEFAULT NULL,
max_runs                IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
max_failures            IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
logging_level           IN     NATURALN DEFAULT 64,
restartable             IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
stop_on_window_close    IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
raise_events            IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
comments                IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
auto_drop               IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
enabled                 IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
follow_default_timezone IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
parallel_instances      IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
aq_job                  IN     BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
instance_id             IN     NATURAL DEFAULT NULL,
credential_name         IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
destination             IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
database_role           IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
allow_runs_in_restricted_mode IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
RETURN SELF AS RESULT;
```

JOB_DEFINITION_ARRAY Table Type

Syntax

```
TYPE job_definition_array IS TABLE OF job_definition;
```

JOBATTR Object Type

This type is used by the SET_JOB_ATTRIBUTES procedure and represents a job attribute in a batch of job attributes.

Syntax

```
TYPE jobattr IS OBJECT (
   job_name             VARCHAR2(100),
   attr_name            VARCHAR2(30),
   char_value           VARCHAR2(4000),
   char_value2          VARCHAR2(4000),
   args_value           JOBARG_ARRAY,
   num_value            NUMBER,
   timestamp_value      TIMESTAMP(6) WITH TIME ZONE,
   interval_value       INTERVAL DAY(2) TO SECOND(6));
```

Attributes

Table 140–5 JOBATTR Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
job_name	Name of the job
attr_name	Name of the attribute
char_value	Value of the argument if the type is VARCHAR2
char_value2	Second VARCHAR2 attribute value
args_value	Value of the argument if the type is a JOBARG array
num_value	Value of the argument if the type is NUMBER
timestamp_value	Value of the argument if the type is TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
interval_value	Value of the argument if the type is INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND

JOBATTR Constructor Function

This constructor function constructs a job attribute. It is overloaded to create attribute values of the following types: VARCHAR2, NUMBER, TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE, INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND, and an array of JOBARG types.

Syntax

```
constructor function jobattr (
   job_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_value           IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_value2          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
   RETURN SELF AS RESULT;

constructor function jobattr (
   job_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_value           IN [NUMBER, BOOLEAN,
                            TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
                            INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND, JOBARG_ARRAY])
   RETURN SELF AS RESULT;
```

```
constructor function jobattr (
   job_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   attr_name           IN VARCHAR2)
   RETURN SELF AS RESULT;
```

Parameters

Table 140–6 JOBATTR Constructor Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Name of the job
attr_name	Name of the argument
attr_value	Value of the argument
attr_value2	Most attributes have only one value associated with them, but some can have two. The attr_value2 argument is for this optional second value.

JOBATTR_ARRAY Table Type

Syntax

```
TYPE jobattr_array IS TABLE OF jobattr;
```

SCHEDULER$_STEP_TYPE Object Type

This type is used by RUN_CHAIN to return a list of chain steps with an initial state.

Syntax

```
TYPE scheduler$_step_type IS OBJECT (
   step_name  VARCHAR2(32),
   step_type  VARCHAR2(32));
```

Attributes

Table 140–7 SCHEDULER$_STEP_TYPE Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
step_name	Name of the step
step_type	State of the step

SCHEDULER$_STEP_TYPE_LIST Table Type

Syntax

```
TYPE scheduler$_step_type_list IS TABLE OF scheduler$_step_type;
```

SCHEDULER$_EVENT_INFO Object Type

This the datatype of the Scheduler event queue `SYS.SCHEDULER$_EVENT_QUEUE`, from which your application consumes job state events raised by the Scheduler. It is a secure queue owned by `SYS`.

Syntax

```
TYPE SCHEDULER$_EVENT_INFO IS OBJECT (
  event_type         VARCHAR2(4000),
  object_owner       VARCHAR2(4000),
  object_name        VARCHAR2(4000),
  event_timestamp    TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  error_code         NUMBER,
  error_msg          VARCHAR2(4000),
  event_status       NUMBER,
  log_id             NUMBER,
  run_count          NUMBER,
  failure_count      NUMBER,
  retry_count        NUMBER,
  spare1             NUMBER,
  spare2             NUMBER,
  spare3             VARCHAR2(4000),
  spare4             VARCHAR2(4000),
  spare5             TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  spare6             TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  spare7             RAW(2000),
  spare8             RAW(2000));
```

Attributes

Table 140–8 SCHEDULER_EVENT_INFO Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
`event_type`	One of "`JOB_STARTED`", "`JOB_SUCCEEDED`", "`JOB_FAILED`", "`JOB_BROKEN`", "`JOB_COMPLETED`", "`JOB_STOPPED`", "`JOB_SCH_LIM_REACHED`", "`JOB_DISABLED`", "`JOB_CHAIN_STALLED`", "`JOB_OVER_MAX_DUR`". For descriptions of these event types, see Table 140–78, " Event Types Raised by the Scheduler" on page 140-135.
`object_owner`	Owner of the job that raised the event
`object_name`	Name of the job that raised the event
`event_timestamp`	Time at which the event occurred
`error_code`	Applicable only when an error is thrown during job execution. Contains the top-level error code.
`error_msg`	Applicable only when an error is thrown during job execution. Contains the entire error stack.

Table 140–8 (Cont.) SCHEDULER_EVENT_INFO Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
event_status	Adds further qualification to the event type. If event_type is "JOB_STARTED," status 1 indicates that it is a normal start, and status 2 indicates that it is a retry. If event_type is "JOB_FAILED," status 4 indicates that it was a failure due to an error that was thrown during job execution, and status 8 indicates that it was an abnormal termination of some kind. If event_type is "JOB_STOPPED," status 16 indicates that it was a normal stop, and status 32 indicates that it was a stop with the FORCE option set to TRUE.
log_id	Points to the ID in the scheduler job log from which additional information can be obtained. Note that there need not always be a log entry corresponding to an event. In such cases, log_id is NULL.
run_count	Run count for the job when the event was raised.
failure_count	Failure count for the job when the event was raised.
retry_count	Retry count for the job when the event was raised.
spare1 – spare8	Not currently in use.

SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT Object Type

This is the datatype of a file arrival event message. You access the event message as a parameter of an event-based job (or a parameter of a program referenced by an event-based job). The message contains information needed to locate and process a file that arrived on a local or remote system.

Syntax

```
TYPE scheduler_filewatcher_result IS OBJECT (
  destination         VARCHAR2(4000),
  directory_path      VARCHAR2(4000),
  actual_file_name    VARCHAR2(4000),
  file_size           NUMBER,
  file_timestamp      TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
  ts_ms_from_epoch    NUMBER,
  matching_requests   SYS.SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_REQ_LIST);
```

Attributes

Table 140–9 SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
`destination`	Destination at which the file was found, expressed as a host name or IP address.
`directory_path`	Absolute path of directory in which the file was found.
`actual_file_name`	Actual name of the file that was found. If the file name specified in the file watcher did not contain wildcards, then this is the same as the name specified in the file watcher.
`file_size`	Size of the file that was found, in bytes.
`file_timestamp`	Timestamp assigned to the file when the file watcher considered the file found, based on the minimum file size and steady state duration attributes.
`ts_ms_from_epoch`	For internal use only.
`matching_requests`	List of matching requests. This is a `TABLE` of type objects `SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_REQUEST`. Each matching request corresponds to a file watcher whose `destination`, `directory_path`, and `file_name` attributes matched the arrived file. See "SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_REQUEST Object Type" on page 140-29.

SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_REQUEST Object Type

This type is returned in the `matching_requests` attribute of the SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT Object Type. Its attributes are similar to the attributes of a file watcher.

Syntax

```
TYPE scheduler_filewatcher_request IS OBJECT (
  owner                 VARCHAR2(4000),
  name                  VARCHAR2(4000),
  requested_path_name   VARCHAR2(4000),
  requested_file_name   VARCHAR2(4000),
  credential_owner      VARCHAR2(4000),
  credential_name       VARCHAR2(4000),
  min_file_size         NUMBER,
  steady_state_dur      NUMBER);
```

Attributes

Table 140–10 SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
`owner`	Owner of the matched file watcher.
`name`	Name of the matched file watcher.
`requested_path_name`	Value of the `directory_path` attribute of the matched file watcher.
`requested_file_name`	Value of the `file_name` attribute of the matched file watcher.
`credential_owner`	Owner of the credential referenced by the matched file watcher.
`credential_name`	Name of the credential referenced by the matched file watcher.
`min_file_size`	Value of the `min_file_size` attribute of the matched file watcher.
`steady_state_dur`	Value of the `steady_state_duration` attribute of the matched file watcher.

Summary of DBMS_SCHEDULER Subprograms

Table 140–11 DBMS_SCHEDULER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 140-34	Adds a user as a subscriber to the Scheduler event queue `SYS.SCHEDULER$_EVENT_QUEUE`
ADD_GROUP_MEMBER Procedure on page 140-35	Adds one or more members to an existing group
ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure on page 140-36	Adds e-mail notifications for a job for a list of recipients and a list of job state events
ALTER_CHAIN Procedure on page 140-38	Alters specified steps of a chain
ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure on page 140-41	Alters specified steps of a running chain
CLOSE_WINDOW Procedure on page 140-43	Closes an open window prematurely
COPY_JOB Procedure on page 140-44	Copies an existing job
CREATE_CHAIN Procedure on page 140-45	Creates a chain, which is a named series of programs that are linked together for a combined objective
CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 140-46	Creates a credential
CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure on page 140-48	Creates a database destination for use with remote database jobs
CREATE_EVENT_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 140-49	Creates an event schedule, which is a schedule that starts a job based on the detection of an event
CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Procedure on page 140-51	Creates a file watcher, which is a Scheduler object that defines the location, name, and other properties of a file whose arrival on a system causes the Scheduler to start a job
CREATE_GROUP Procedure on page 140-53	Creates a group
CREATE_JOB Procedure on page 140-55	Creates a single job
CREATE_JOB_CLASS Procedure on page 140-64	Creates a job class, which provides a way to group jobs for resource allocation and prioritization
CREATE_JOBS Procedure on page 140-66	Creates multiple jobs
CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure on page 140-67	Creates a program
CREATE_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 140-71	Creates a schedule
CREATE_WINDOW Procedure on page 140-72	Creates a window, which provides a way to automatically activate different resource plans at different times
DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT Procedure on page 140-74	Defines a program argument whose value is of a complex type and must be passed encapsulated in an `AnyData` object
DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP Procedure on page 140-75	Adds or replaces a chain step and associates it with an event schedule or inline event. See also: `DEFINE_CHAIN_STEP`.

Table 140–11 (Cont.) DBMS_SCHEDULER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE Procedure on page 140-76	Adds a rule to an existing chain
DEFINE_CHAIN_STEP Procedure on page 140-79	Defines a chain step, which can be a program or another (nested) chain. See also: `DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP`.
DEFINE_METADATA_ARGUMENT Procedure on page 140-80	Defines a special metadata argument for the program. You can retrieve specific metadata through this argument.
DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure on page 140-82	Defines a program argument whose value can be passed as a string literal to the program
DISABLE Procedure on page 140-84	Disables a program, job, chain, window, database destination, external destination, file watcher, group, or incompatibilty
DROP_AGENT_DESTINATION Procedure on page 140-87	Drops one or more external destinations. Use only when the preferred method of dropping external destinations—unregistering the Scheduler agent with the database—fails.
DROP_CHAIN Procedure on page 140-88	Drops an existing chain
DROP_CHAIN_RULE Procedure on page 140-89	Removes a rule from an existing chain
DROP_CHAIN_STEP Procedure on page 140-90	Drops a chain step
DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure on page 140-91	Drops a credential
DROP_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure on page 140-92	Drops one or more database destinations
DROP_FILE_WATCHER Procedure on page 140-93	Drops one or more file watchers
DROP_GROUP Procedure on page 140-94	Drops one or more groups
DROP_JOB Procedure on page 140-95	Drops a job or all jobs in a job class
DROP_JOB_CLASS Procedure on page 140-96	Drops a job class
DROP_PROGRAM Procedure	Drops a program
DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure on page 140-98	Drops a program argument
DROP_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 140-99	Drops a schedule
DROP_WINDOW Procedure on page 140-100	Drops a window
ENABLE Procedure on page 140-101	Enables a program, job, chain, window, database destination, external destination, file watcher, or group
END_DETACHED_JOB_RUN Procedure on page 140-103	Ends a running detached job
EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING Procedure on page 140-104	Evaluates the calendar string and tells you what the next execution date of a job or window will be

Table 140–11 (Cont.) DBMS_SCHEDULER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure on page 140-106	Forces reevaluation of the rules of a running chain to trigger any rules for conditions that have been satisfied
GENERATE_JOB_NAME Function on page 140-107	Generates a unique name for a job. This enables you to identify jobs by adding a prefix, so, for example, Sally's jobs would be named `sally1`, `sally2`, and so on
GET_AGENT_INFO Function on page 140-108	Returns job information specific to an agent, such as how many are running and so on, depending on the attribute selected
GET_AGENT_VERSION Function on page 140-109	Returns the version string of a Scheduler agent that is registered with the database and is currently running
GET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 140-110	Retrieves the value of an attribute of an object
GET_FILE Procedure on page 140-111	Retrieves a file from a host
GET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 140-113	Retrieves the value of a Scheduler attribute
OPEN_WINDOW Procedure on page 140-114	Opens a window prematurely. The window is opened immediately for the duration
PURGE_LOG Procedure on page 140-116	Purges specific rows from the job and window logs
PUT_FILE Procedure on page 140-117	Saves a file to one or more hosts
REMOVE_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure on page 140-118	Unsubscribes a user from the Scheduler event queue `SYS.SCHEDULER$_EVENT_QUEUE`
REMOVE_GROUP_MEMBER Procedure on page 140-119	Removes one or more members from a group
REMOVE_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure on page 140-120	Removes e-mail notifications for a job
RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure on page 140-121	Resets the current value assigned to an argument defined with the associated program
RUN_CHAIN Procedure on page 140-122	Immediately runs a chain by creating a run-once job
RUN_JOB Procedure on page 140-124	Runs a job immediately
SET_AGENT_REGISTRATION_PASS Procedure on page 140-126	Sets the agent registration password for a database
SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 140-127	Changes an attribute of a job, schedule, or other Scheduler object
SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL Procedure on page 140-142	Changes an attribute of an object to `NULL`
SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure on page 140-143	Sets the value of a job argument encapsulated in an `AnyData` object
SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure on page 140-144	Sets the value of a job argument
SET_JOB_ATTRIBUTES Procedure on page 140-146	Sets the value of a job attribute

Table 140–11 (Cont.) DBMS_SCHEDULER Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SET_RESOURCE_CONSTRAINT Procedure on page 140-147	Specifies the resources used by jobs
SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 140-148	Sets the value of a Scheduler attribute
STOP_JOB Procedure on page 140-150	Stops a currently running job or all jobs in a job class

ADD_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure adds a user as a subscriber to the Scheduler event queue SYS.SCHEDULER$_EVENT_QUEUE, and grants the user permission to dequeue from this queue using the designated agent.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ADD_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER (
   subscriber_name         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–12 ADD_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
subscriber_name	Name of the Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing (AQ) agent to be used to subscribe to the Scheduler event queue. If NULL, an agent is created and assigned the user name of the calling user.

Usage Notes

The subscription is rule-based. The rule permits the user to see only events raised by jobs that the user owns, and filters out all other messages. If an AQ agent with the same name already exists, an error is raised.

ADD_GROUP_MEMBER Procedure

This procedure adds one or more members to an existing group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ADD_GROUP_MEMBER (
   group_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   member                   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–13 ADD_GROUP_MEMBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_name	The name of the group.
member	A comma-separated list of members to add to the group. Members must match the group type. A group of the same type can be a member. The Scheduler immediately expands the included group name into its list of members. An error is returned if any of the members do not exist. A member that is already in the group is skipped, and no error is generated. The keyword LOCAL can be included as a member for database destination or external destination groups. See the "CREATE_GROUP Procedure" on page 53 for information about this keyword.

Usage Notes

The following users may add members to a group:

- The group owner
- A user that has been granted the ALTER object privilege on the group
- A user with the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege

You must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege to add a member to a group of type WINDOW.

See Also: "CREATE_GROUP Procedure" on page 140-53

ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure

This procedure adds e-mail notifications for a job. E-mails are then sent to the specified list of recipients whenever any of the specified job state events is raised.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION (
    job_name             IN VARCHAR2,
    recipients           IN VARCHAR2,
    sender               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    subject              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFAULT_NOTIFICATION_SUBJECT,
    body                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFAULT_NOTIFICATION_BODY,
    events               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'JOB_FAILED,JOB_BROKEN,JOB_SCH_LIM_REACHED,
                            JOB_CHAIN_STALLED,JOB_OVER_MAX_DUR',
    filter_condition     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–14 ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Name of the job that e-mail notifications are added for. Cannot be NULL.
recipients	Comma-separated list of e-mail addresses to send notifications to. E-mail notifications for all listed events are sent to all recipients. Cannot be NULL.
sender	e-mail address to use as the sender address (the From: address) in the e-mail header. If NULL or omitted, the e-mail address specified in the Scheduler attribute email_sender is used. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information on this Scheduler attribute.
subject	The subject to use in the e-mail header. Table 140–15 describes the variables that you can include within this parameter. The Scheduler assigns values to these variables before sending the notification. If subject is omitted, the default subject is used. The default subject is the following text, where text enclosed in the '%' character represents a variable: 'Oracle Scheduler Job Notification - %job_owner%.%job_name%.%job_subname% %event_type%'
body	The body of the e-mail message. Table 140–15 describes the variables that you can include within this parameter. The Scheduler assigns values to these variables before sending the notification. If body is omitted, the default body is used. The default body is the following text, where text enclosed in the '%' character represents a variable: 'Job: %job_owner%.%job_name%.%job_subname% Event: %event_type% Date: %event_timestamp% Log id: %log_id% Job class: %job_class_name% Run count: %run_count% Failure count: %failure_count% Retry count: %retry_count% Error code: %error_code% Error message: %error_message%'

Table 140–14 (Cont.) ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
events	Comma-separate list of job state events to send e-mail notifications for. Cannot be NULL. A notification is sent to all recipients if any of the listed events is raised. Table 140–78 on page 140-135 lists the valid events for this parameter. If events is omitted, notifications are sent for the following default events: JOB_FAILED,JOB_BROKEN,JOB_SCH_LIM_REACHED,JOB_CHAIN_STALLED,JOB_OVER_MAX_DUR
filter_condition	Used to filter events to send e-mail notifications for. If NULL, all occurrences of the specified events cause e-mail notifications to be sent. filter_condition must be a boolean SQL WHERE clause that may refer to the :event bind variable. This bind variable is automatically bound to an object of type SCHEDULER$_EVENT_INFO that represents the raised event. For example, to send an e-mail notification only when the error number in an event is 600 or 700, use the following filter_condition: :event.error_code=600 or :event.error_code=700 See "SCHEDULER$_EVENT_INFO Object Type" on page 140-26.

Table 140–15 lists the variables that you can use in the subject and body arguments.

Table 140–15 Variables Used in the SUBJECT and BODY Parameters

Variable	Comment
%job_owner%	Schema in which job was created
%job_name%	Name of the job that e-mail notifications are added for
%job_subname%	Present for event-based jobs with the parallel_instances attribute set and for chain steps
%event_type%	Valid values are listed in Table 140–78 on page 140-135
%event_timestamp%	Time at which the event occurred
%log_id%	Refers to the LOG_ID column in views *_SCHEDULER_JOB_LOG and *_SCHEDULER_JOB_RUN_DETAILS
%error_code%	Number of the error code.
%error_message%	The text of the error message
%run_count%	Run count for the job when the event was raised
%failure_count%	Failure count for the job when the event was raised
%retry_count%	Retry count for the job when the event was raised

Usage Notes

You can call ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION once for each different set of notifications that you want to configure for a particular job. For example, you may want to send notifications for the JOB_FAILED, JOB_BROKEN, JOB_SCH_LIM_REACHED, and JOB_CHAIN_STALLED events to the principle DBA and all senior DBAs, but send a notification for the JOB_OVER_MAX_DUR event only to the principle DBA.

This procedure succeeds only if the Scheduler attribute email_server is set to a valid SMTP server. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information.

To call this procedure, you must be the job owner or have the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege or have the ALTER object privilege on the job.

ALTER_CHAIN Procedure

This procedure alters an attribute of the specified steps of a chain. This affects all future runs of the specified steps, both in the currently running chain job and in future runs of the same chain job or other chain jobs that point to the chain.

Syntax

Alters the value of a boolean attribute of one or more steps:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ALTER_CHAIN (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute               IN VARCHAR2,
   value                   IN BOOLEAN);
```

Alters the value of a character attribute of one or more steps:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ALTER_CHAIN (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute               IN VARCHAR2,
   char_value              IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–16 ALTER_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
chain_name	The name of the chain to alter
step_name	The name of the step or a comma-separated list of steps to alter. This cannot be NULL.

Table 140–16 (Cont.) ALTER_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute	The attribute of the steps to change. Must be one of the following: ■ 'PAUSE' If set to TRUE for a step, after the step has run, its state changes to PAUSED (and the completed attribute remains FALSE). If PAUSE is reset to FALSE for a paused chain step (using ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN), the state is set to its completion state (SUCCEEDED, FAILED, or STOPPED) and the completed attribute is set to TRUE. Setting PAUSE has no effect on steps that have already run. This allows execution of a chain to be suspended after the execution of certain steps. ■ 'PAUSED_BEFORE' If set to TRUE for a step and if any of the rule conditions that start the step are true, then its state changes to PAUSED and the step does not run. If PAUSE_BEFORE is reset to FALSE for a chain step that has paused before starting (using ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN), then the step starts running if any of the rule conditions that start the step are true. Setting PAUSE_BEFORE has no effect on steps that are running or have already run. This allows execution of a chain to be suspended before the execution of certain steps. ■ 'SKIP' If set to TRUE for a step, when the step condition is met, instead of being run, the step is treated as if it has immediately succeeded. Setting SKIP to TRUE has no effect for a step that is running, scheduled to run after a delay, or has already run. If SKIP is set TRUE for a step that PAUSE is also set for, when the step condition is met, the step immediately changes to state PAUSED. ■ 'RESTART_ON_FAILURE' If set to TRUE for a step and the step fails due to an application error, then the step is retried using the normal Scheduler retry mechanism (after 1 second, after 10 seconds, after 100 seconds, and so on, up to a maximum of 6 times). If all 6 retries fail (after about 30 hours), then the chain step is marked FAILED. If set to FALSE (the default), a failed chain step is immediately marked FAILED. ■ 'RESTART_ON_RECOVERY' If set to TRUE for a step and the step is stopped by a database shutdown, then the step is restarted when the database is recovered. If set to FALSE, and the step is stopped by a database shutdown, then the step is marked as stopped when the database is recovered and the chain continues. ■ 'DESTINATION_NAME' The name of an existing database destination or external destination. You can view external destination names in the view ALL_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL_DESTS, and database destination names in the views *_SCHEDULER_DB_DESTS. You cannot specify a destination group for this attribute. This parameter is NULL by default. ■ 'CREDENTIAL_NAME' The credential to use when running this step. NULL by default.
value	The value to set for the attribute (for a boolean attribute).

Table 140–16 (Cont.) ALTER_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
char_value	The value to set for the attribute (for a character attribute).

Usage Notes

Altering a chain requires ALTER privileges on the chain either by being the owner of the chain, or by having the ALTER object privilege on the chain or by having the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege.

ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure

This procedure alters an attribute of the specified steps of a chain. This affects only steps of the instance of the chain for the specified running chain job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute               IN VARCHAR2,
   value                   IN {BOOLEAN|VARCHAR2});
```

Parameters

Table 140–17 ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the job that is running the chain
step_name	The name of the step or a comma-separated list of steps to alter. If this is set to NULL and attribute is PAUSE or SKIP, then all steps of the running chain are altered.
attribute	The attribute of the steps to change. Valid values are: ■ 'PAUSE' If the PAUSE attribute is set TRUE for a step, then after the step runs, its state changes to PAUSED (and the completed attribute remains false). If PAUSE is reset to FALSE for a paused chain step (using ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN), the state is set to completion (SUCCEEDED, FAILED, or STOPPED) and the completed attribute is set to TRUE. Setting PAUSE has no effect on steps that have already run. This allows execution of a chain to be suspended after the execution of certain steps. If step_name is set to NULL, PAUSE is set to TRUE for all steps of this running chain. ■ 'PAUSE_BEFORE' If set to TRUE for a step that has not yet run and if any of the rule conditions that start the step are true, then its state changes to PAUSED and the step does not run. If PAUSE_BEFORE is reset to FALSE for a chain step that has paused before starting, then the step starts running if any of the rule conditions that start the step are true. Setting PAUSE_BEFORE has no effect on steps that are running or have already run. This allows execution of a chain to be suspended before the execution of certain steps. If step_name is set to NULL, then PAUSE_BEFORE is set to the specified value for all steps of this running chain.

Table 140–17 (Cont.) ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute CONTINUED	■ 'SKIP' If the SKIP attribute is set to TRUE for a step, when the step condition is met, instead of being run, the step is treated as if it has immediately succeeded. Setting SKIP to TRUE has no effect for a step that is running, scheduled to run after a delay, or has already run. If step_name is set to NULL, SKIP is set TRUE for all steps of this running chain. If SKIP is set TRUE for a step that PAUSE is also set for, when the step condition is met the step immediately changes to state PAUSED. ■ 'RESTART_ON_FAILURE' If set to TRUE for a step and the step fails due to an application error, then the step is retried using the normal Scheduler retry mechanism (after 1 second, after 10 seconds, after 100 seconds, and so on, up to a maximum of 6 times). If all 6 retries fail (after about 30 hours), then the chain step is marked FAILED. If set to FALSE (the default), a failed chain step is immediately marked FAILED. ■ 'RESTART_ON_RECOVERY' If the RESTART_ON_RECOVERY attribute is set to TRUE for a step, then if the step is stopped by a database shutdown, it is restarted when the database is recovered. If set to FALSE, then if the step is stopped by a database shutdown, the step is marked as stopped when the database is recovered and the chain continues. ■ 'STATE' This changes the state of the steps. The state can only be changed if the step is not running. The state can only be changed to one of the following: 'NOT_STARTED', 'SUCCEEDED', 'FAILED *error_code*' If the state is being changed to FAILED, an error code must be included (this must be a positive integer).
value	The value to set for the attribute. Valid values are: TRUE, FALSE, 'NOT_STARTED', 'SUCCEEDED', or 'FAILED *error_code*'

Usage Notes

Altering a running chain requires you to have alter privileges on the job that is running (either as the owner, or as a user with ALTER privileges on the job or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege).

CLOSE_WINDOW Procedure

This procedure closes an open window prematurely. A closed window means that it is no longer in effect. When a window is closed, the Scheduler switches the resource plan to the one that is in effect outside the window, or in the case of overlapping windows, to another window.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CLOSE_WINDOW (
   window_name             IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–18 CLOSE_WINDOW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
window_name	The name of the window

Usage Notes

If you try to close a window that does not exist or is not open, an error is generated.

A job that is running does not stop when the window it is running in closes, unless the attribute stop_on_window_close is set to TRUE for the job. However, the resources allocated to the job can change if the resource plan changes.

When a running job has a group of type WINDOW as its schedule, the job is not stopped when its window is closed if another window in the same window group becomes active. This is the case even if the job has the attribute stop_on_window_close set to TRUE.

Closing a window requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

COPY_JOB Procedure

This procedure copies all attributes of an existing job to a new job. The new job is created disabled, while the state of the existing job is unaltered.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.COPY_JOB (
   old_job                IN VARCHAR2,
   new_job                IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–19 COPY_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
old_job	The name of the existing job
new_job	The name of the new job

Usage Notes

To copy a job, you must have privileges to create a job in the schema of the new job (the CREATE JOB system privilege if it is in your own schema, otherwise, the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege). If the old job is not in the your own schema, then you must also have ALTER privileges on the old job or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege.

CREATE_CHAIN Procedure

This procedure creates a new chain. The chain name can be optionally qualified with a schema name (for example, `myschema.myname`).

A chain is always created as disabled and must be enabled with the ENABLE Procedure before it can be used.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_CHAIN (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   rule_set_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   evaluation_interval     IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND DEFAULT NULL,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–20 CREATE_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`chain_name`	The name to assign to the new chain, which can optionally be qualified with a schema. This must be unique in the SQL namespace, therefore, there cannot already be a table or other object with this name and schema.
`rule_set_name`	In the normal case, no rule set should be passed in. The Scheduler automatically creates a rule set and associated empty evaluation context. You then use `DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE` to add rules and `DROP_CHAIN_RULE` to remove them. Advanced users can create a rule set that describes their chain dependencies and pass it in here. This allows greater flexibility in defining rules. For example, conditions can refer to external variables, and tables can be exposed through the evaluation context. If you pass in a rule set, you must ensure that it is in the format of a chain rule set. (For example, all steps must be listed as variables in the evaluation context). If no rule set is passed in, the rule set created is of the form `SCHED_RULESET${N}` and the evaluation context created is of the form `SCHED_EVCTX${N}` See *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information on rules and rule sets.
`evaluation_interval`	If this is `NULL`, reevaluation of the rules of a running chain are performed only when the job starts and when a step completes. A non-`NULL` value causes rule evaluations to also occur periodically at the specified interval. Because evaluation may be CPU-intensive, this should be conservatively set to the highest possible value or left at `NULL` if possible. `evaluation_interval` cannot be less than a minute or greater than a day.
`comments`	An optional comment describing the purpose of the chain

Usage Notes

To create a chain in your own schema, you must have the `CREATE JOB` system privilege. To create a chain in a different schema you must have the `CREATE ANY JOB` system privilege. If you do not provide a `rule_set_name`, a rule set and evaluation context is created in the schema that the chain is being created in, so you must have the privileges required to create these objects. See the `DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_RULE_SET` and `DBMS_RULE_ADM.CREATE_EVALUATION_CONTEXT` procedures for more information.

CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1). While the procedure remains available in this package, for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the alternative enhanced functionality provided in the DBMS_CREDENTIAL package, specifically the CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure.

This procedure creates a stored username/password pair. Credentials are assigned to jobs so that they can authenticate with a local or remote host operating system or a remote Oracle database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   username                IN VARCHAR2,
   password                IN VARCHAR2,
   database_role           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   windows_domain          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–21 CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
credential_name	The name to assign to the credential. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. It cannot be set to NULL. It is converted to uppercase unless enclosed in double quotation marks.
username	The user name for logging into to the host operating system or remote Oracle database. This cannot be set to NULL and is case-sensitive. It cannot contain double quotes or spaces. Maximum length is 64.
password	The password for the user name. This cannot be set to NULL and is case sensitive. The password is stored obfuscated and is not displayed in the Scheduler dictionary views. Maximum length is 128.
database_role	The value of the database_role attribute is used as the system privilege for logging into a remote database to run a remote database job. Valid values are: SYSDBA and SYSOPER
windows_domain	For a Windows remote executable target, this is the domain that the specified user belongs to. The domain is converted to uppercase automatically. Maximum length is 64.
comments	A text string that can be used to describe the credential. Scheduler does not use this parameter. Maximum length is 240.

Usage Notes

Credentials reside in a particular schema and can be created by any user with the `CREATE JOB` system privilege. To create a credential in a schema other than your own, you must have the `CREATE ANY JOB` privilege.

CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure

This procedure creates a database destination. A database destination represents an Oracle database on which remote database jobs run.

The host that the remote database resides on must have a running Scheduler agent that is registered with the database that this procedure is called from.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION (
   destination_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   agent                   IN VARCHAR2,
   tns_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–22 CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_name	The name to assign to the database destination. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. Cannot be NULL. It is converted to uppercase unless enclosed in double quotation marks.
agent	The external destination name of the Scheduler agent to connect. Equivalent to an agent name. The external destination must already exist. The external destination representing an agent is created automatically on a database instance when the agent registers with that instance. An agent's name is specified in its agent configuration file. If it is not specified, it defaults to the first part (before the first period) of the name of the host it resides on.
tns_name	An Oracle Net connect identifier that is resolved to the Oracle database instance being connected to. The exact syntax depends on the Oracle Net configuration.The connect identifier can be a complete Oracle Net connect descriptor (network address and database service name) or a *net service name*, which is an alias for a connect descriptor. The alias must be resolved in the tnsnames.ora file on the local computer. The maximum size for tns_name is 2000 characters. If tns_name is NULL, the agent connects to the default Oracle database on its host. You specify the default database by assigning values to the ORACLE_HOME and ORACLE_SID parameters in the agent configuration file, schagent.conf, located in the agent home directory. See *Oracle Database Net Services Administrator's Guide* for more information on connect identifiers.
comments	A text string that describes the database destination. Scheduler does not use this argument.

Usage Notes

Database destinations reside in a particular schema and can be created by any user with the CREATE JOB system privilege. To create a database destination in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

CREATE_EVENT_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure creates an event schedule, which is used to start a job when a particular event is raised.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_EVENT_SCHEDULE (
   schedule_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   start_date              IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   event_condition         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_spec              IN VARCHAR2,
   end_date                IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–23 CREATE_EVENT_SCHEDULE Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_name	The name to assign to the schedule. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. For example, a schedule cannot have the same name as a table in a schema. If no name is specified, then an error occurs.
start_date	This attribute specifies the date and time that this schedule becomes valid. Occurrences of the event before this date and time are ignored in the context of this schedule.
event_condition	This is a conditional expression based on the columns of the event source queue table. The expression must have the syntax of an Advanced Queuing rule. Accordingly, you can include user data properties in the expression, provided that the message payload is an object type, and that you prefix object attributes in the expression with tab.user_data. For more information on rules, see the DBMS_AQADM.ADD_SUBSCRIBER procedure.
queue_spec	This argument specifies either a file watcher name or the queue into which events that start this particular job are enqueued (the **source queue**). If the source queue is a secure queue, the queue_spec argument is a string containing a pair of values of the form *queue_name*, *agent name*. For non-secure queues, only the queue name need be provided. If a fully qualified queue name is not provided, the queue is assumed to be in the job owner's schema. In the case of secure queues, the agent name provided should belong to a valid agent that is currently subscribed to the queue.
end_date	The date and time after which jobs do not run and windows do not open. An event schedule that has no end_date is valid forever. end_date must be after the start_date. If it is not, then an error is generated when the schedule is created.
comments	This attribute specifies an optional comment about the schedule. By default, this attribute is NULL.

Usage Notes

You must have the CREATE JOB privilege to create a schedule in your own schema or the CREATE ANY JOB privilege to create a schedule in someone else's schema by specifying schema.schedule_name. Once a schedule has been created, it can be used by

other users. The schedule is created with access to `PUBLIC`. Therefore, there is no need to explicitly grant access to the schedule.

See Also: "CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Procedure" on page 140-51

CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Procedure

This procedure creates a file watcher, which is a Scheduler object that defines the location, name, and other properties of a file whose arrival on a system causes the Scheduler to start a job. After you create a file watcher, you reference it in an event-based job or event schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_FILE_WATCHER (
   file_watcher_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   directory_path               IN VARCHAR2,
   file_name                    IN VARCHAR2,
   credential_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   min_file_size                IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   steady_state_duration        IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND DEFAULT NULL,
   comments                     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   enabled                      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–24 CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_watcher_name	The name to assign to the file watcher. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. For example, a file watcher cannot have the same name as a table in a schema. This can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. Cannot be NULL.
directory_path	Directory in which the file is expected to arrive. The single wildcard '?' at the beginning of the path denotes the Oracle home path. For example, '?/rdbms/log' denotes the rdbms/log subdirectory of the Oracle home directory.
file_name	Name of the file to look for. Two wildcards are permitted anywhere in the file name: '?' denotes any single character, and '*' denotes zero or more characters. This attribute cannot be NULL.
credential_name	Name of a valid credential object. The file watcher uses the credential to authenticate itself with the host operating system to access the watched-for file. The file watcher owner must have EXECUTE privileges on the credential. Cannot be NULL.
destination	Name of an external destination. You create an external destination by registering a remote Scheduler agent with the database. See the view ALL_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL_DESTS for valid external destination names. If this parameter is NULL, the file watcher is created on the local host.
min_file_size	Minimum size in bytes that the file must be before the file watcher considers the file found. Default is 0.
steady_state_ duration	Minimum time interval that the file must remain unchanged before the file watcher considers the file found. Cannot exceed one hour. If NULL, an internal value is used. The minimum value is 10 seconds. Oracle recommends similar steady_state_duration values for all file watchers for efficient file watcher job operation. Also, the repeat interval of the file watcher schedule must be equal or greater than the steady_state_duration value.

Table 140–24 (Cont.) CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Parameters

Parameter	Description
comments	Optional comment.
enabled	If TRUE (the default), the file watcher is enabled.

Usage Notes

You must have the CREATE JOB system privilege to create a file watcher in your own schema. You require the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege to create a file watcher in a schema different from your own (except the SYS schema, which is disallowed).

CREATE_GROUP Procedure

This procedure creates a group. Groups contain members, which you can specify when you create the group or at a later time. There are three types of groups: window groups, database destination groups, and external destination groups.

You can use a group name in other DBMS_SCHEDULER package procedures to specify a list of objects. For example, to specify multiple destinations for a remote database job, you provide a group name for the DESTINATION_NAME parameter of the job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_GROUP (
   group_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   group_type           IN VARCHAR2,
   member               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   comments             IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–25 CREATE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_name	The name to assign to the group. It can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. It cannot be NULL. It is converted to uppercase unless enclosed in double quotation marks.
group_type	The type of members in the group. All members must be of the same type. Possible types are: ■ 'DB_DEST' Database destination: Members are database destinations, for running remote database jobs. ■ 'EXTERNAL_DEST External destination: Members are external destinations, for running remote external jobs. ■ 'WINDOW' Members are Scheduler windows. You must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege to create a group of this type. Members in database destination and external destination groups have the following format: [[*schema.*]*credential*@][*schema.*]*destination* where: ■ *credential* is the name of an existing credential. ■ *destination* is the name of an existing database destination or external destination. The credential portion of a destination member is optional. If omitted, the job using this destination member uses its default credential. Members in window groups are window names. Because all Scheduler windows reside in the SYS schema, you do not specify a schema name for windows.

Table 140–25 (Cont.) CREATE_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
member	Optional comma-separated list of group members. The default is NULL. If NULL, use the ADD_GROUP_MEMBER procedure to add members. You can also use ADD_GROUP_MEMBER to add additional members at a later time. The keyword LOCAL can be used as a member in database destination groups and external destination groups. ■ In database destination groups, LOCAL represents the source database on which the job is created. It cannot be preceded with a credential. ■ In external destination groups, LOCAL represents the host on which the source database resides. It can be optionally preceded with a credential name. If no credential is provided, jobs that use this group as their destination must have a default credential.
comments	A text string that describes the group. Scheduler does not use this argument.

Usage Notes

Groups reside in a particular schema and can be created by any user with the CREATE JOB system privilege. To create a group in a schema other than your own, you must have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege. The group name must be unique among all Scheduler objects.

You can grant the SELECT or READ privilege on a group so that other users can reference the group when creating jobs or schedules. To enable other users to modify a group, you can grant the ALTER privilege on the group.

Each group member must be unique within the group. For destination groups, the credential/destination name pairs must be unique within the group. An error is generated if any of the group members do not exist. For destination groups, both the credential and destination portions of a member must exist.

Another group of the same type can be a group member. The Scheduler immediately expands the included group name into its list of members.

Groups are created enabled, but you can disable them.

Example

The following PL/SQL block creates a group named production_dest1, whose members are database destinations for a collection of production databases.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_GROUP(
    GROUP_NAME    => 'production_dest1',
    GROUP_TYPE    => 'DB_DEST',
    MEMBER        => 'LOCAL, oracle_cred@prodhost1, prodhost2',
    COMMENTS      => 'All sector1 production machines');
END;
```

CREATE_JOB Procedure

This procedure creates a single job (regular or lightweight). If you create the job as enabled by setting the `enabled` attribute to `TRUE`, the Scheduler automatically runs the job according to its schedule. If you create the job disabled, the job does not run until you enable it with the SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure.

The procedure is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the syntax declaration.

Syntax

Creates a job in a single call without using an existing program or schedule:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   job_type             IN VARCHAR2,
   job_action           IN VARCHAR2,
   number_of_arguments  IN PLS_INTEGER              DEFAULT 0,
   start_date           IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   repeat_interval      IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL,
   end_date             IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   job_class            IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   enabled              IN BOOLEAN                  DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_drop            IN BOOLEAN                  DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments             IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL,
   credential_name      IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_name     IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Creates a job using a named schedule object and a named program object:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   program_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   schedule_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   job_class              IN VARCHAR2              DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   enabled                IN BOOLEAN               DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_drop              IN BOOLEAN               DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments               IN VARCHAR2              DEFAULT NULL,
   job_style              IN VARCHAR2              DEFAULT 'REGULAR',
   credential_name        IN VARCHAR2              DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_name       IN VARCHAR2              DEFAULT NULL);
```

Creates a job using a named program object and an inlined schedule:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   program_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   start_date           IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   repeat_interval      IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL,
   end_date             IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   job_class            IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   enabled              IN BOOLEAN                  DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_drop            IN BOOLEAN                  DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments             IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL,
   job_style            IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT 'REGULAR',
   credential_name      IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_name     IN VARCHAR2                 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Creates a job using a named schedule object and an inlined program:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   schedule_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   job_type                IN VARCHAR2,
   job_action              IN VARCHAR2,
   number_of_arguments     IN PLS_INTEGER       DEFAULT 0,
   job_class               IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   enabled                 IN BOOLEAN           DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_drop               IN BOOLEAN           DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   credential_name         IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_name        IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL);
```

Creates a job using an inlined program and an event:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   job_type                IN VARCHAR2,
   job_action              IN VARCHAR2,
   number_of_arguments     IN PLS_INTEGER       DEFAULT 0,
   start_date              IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   event_condition         IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_spec              IN VARCHAR2,
   end_date                IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   job_class               IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   enabled                 IN BOOLEAN           DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_drop               IN BOOLEAN           DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   credential_name         IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_name        IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL);
```

Creates a job using a named program object and an event:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   program_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   start_date              IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   event_condition         IN VARCHAR2,
   queue_spec              IN VARCHAR2,
   end_date                IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   job_class               IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT 'DEFAULT_JOB_CLASS',
   enabled                 IN BOOLEAN           DEFAULT FALSE,
   auto_drop               IN BOOLEAN           DEFAULT TRUE,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   job_style               IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT 'REGULAR',
   credential_name         IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_name        IN VARCHAR2          DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–26 CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name to assign to the job. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. For example, a job cannot have the same name as a table in a schema. If the job being created will reside in another schema, it must be qualified with the schema name. If job_name is not specified, an error is generated. If you want to have a name generated by the Scheduler, you can use the GENERATE_JOB_NAME procedure to generate a name and then use the output in the CREATE_JOB procedure. The GENERATE_JOB_NAME procedure generates a number from a sequence, which is the job name. You can prefix the number with a string. The job name will then be the string with the number from the sequence appended to it. See "GENERATE_JOB_NAME Function" on page 140-107 for more information.
job_type	This attribute specifies the type of job that you are creating. If it is not specified, an error is generated. See job_action in the next row for related information. The supported values are: ■ 'PLSQL_BLOCK' This specifies that the job is an anonymous PL/SQL block. Job or program arguments are not supported when the job or program type is PLSQL_BLOCK. In this case, the number of arguments must be 0. ■ 'STORED_PROCEDURE' This specifies that the job is a PL/SQL or Java stored procedure, or an external C subprogram. Only procedures, not functions with return values, are supported. ■ 'EXECUTABLE' This specifies that the job is going to be run outside the database using an external executable. External jobs are anything that can be executed from the command line of the operating system. Anydata arguments are not supported with a job or program type of EXECUTABLE. The job owner must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege before the job can be enabled or run. ■ 'CHAIN' This specifies that the job is a chain. Arguments are not supported for a chain, so number_of_arguments must be 0. ■ 'EXTERNAL_SCRIPT' This specifies that the job is an external script that uses the command shell of the computer running the job. For Windows this is cmd.exe and for UNIX based systems the sh shell, unless a different interpreter is specified by prefixing the first line of the script with #!.

Table 140–26 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	■ 'SQL_SCRIPT' This specifies that the job is a SQL*Plus script. The job must point to a credential that contains a valid operating system username and password. The SQL*Plus script is run by the SQL*Plus executable. The job may point to a connect credential that contains a database credential. If so, this credential is used to connect to the database before running the SQL*Plus script. Note that if you choose to use connect credential, you must use set_attribute to specify the Connect_Credential_Name attribute. If you do not have connect credential, you must include an explicit SQL*Plus connect statement providing a valid database userid / password. The job owner must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege. ■ 'BACKUP_SCRIPT' This specifies that the job is an RMAN backup script. The script runs a connect statement that uses either a password or OS authentication before it executes any target commands. The job points to a credential that contains a valid operating system username and password. The RMAN session runs under this operating system user. The Scheduler uses the RMAN executable from the current Oracle home to run the script and throws an error if this is missing. The job owner must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege.

Table 140–26 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_action	This attribute specifies the action of the job. If job_action is not specified for an inline program, then an error is generated when creating the job. The following actions are possible: ■ For a PL/SQL block: The action is to execute PL/SQL code. These blocks must end with a semicolon. For example, my_proc(); or BEGIN my_proc(); END; or DECLARE arg pls_integer:= 10; BEGIN my_proc2(arg); END;. Note that the Scheduler wraps job_action in its own block and passes the following to PL/SQL for execution: DECLARE ... BEGIN job_action END; This is done to declare some internal Scheduler variables. You can include any Scheduler metadata attribute except event_message in your PL/SQL code. You use the attribute name as you use any other PL/SQL identifier, and the Scheduler assigns it a value. See Table 140–37 on page 140-80 for details on available metadata attributes. ■ For a stored procedure: The action is the name of the stored procedure. You have to specify the schema if the procedure resides in another schema than the job. If case sensitivity is needed, enclose the schema name and the store procedure name in double quotes. For example, job_action_action=>'"*Schema*"."*Procedure*"'. PL/SQL procedures with INOUT or OUT arguments are not supported as job_action when the job or program type is STORED_PROCEDURE. ■ For an executable: The action is the name of the external executable, including the full path name, but excluding any command-line arguments. If the action starts with a single question mark ('?'), the question mark is replaced by the path to the Oracle home directory for a local job or to the Scheduler agent home for a remote job. If the action contains an at-sign ('@') and the job is local, the at-sign is replaced with the SID of the current Oracle instance. NOTE: Shell script syntax is not supported, only syntax for the name of and path to an executable is supported. ■ For a chain: The action is the name of a Scheduler chain object. You must specify the schema of the chain if it resides in a different schema than the job.

Table 140–26 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	■ For an external script: The job_action must be either the path to an operating system script or an inline operating system script. If the job_action is a path to a script, then the script must reside on every computer that the job runs on. The job_action may contain calls to SQL*Plus or RMAN executables directly, without having to specify its full path, given that they are stored on their default location for every computer that runs the job. The job can only have arguments that are strings or that can be cast to strings. These arguments are passed positionally when the script is called. The job must point to a credential that contains a valid operating system username and password. ■ For a SQL script: The job_action must be either the path to a SQL*Plus script or an inline SQL*Plus script. If the job_action is a path to a script, then the script must reside on every computer that the job runs on. The job can only have arguments that are strings or that can be cast to strings. These arguments are passed positionally when the script is called. If the arguments are named, they are also bound to named variables in the SQL*Plus session. ■ For a backup script: The job_action is either the path to a RMAN script or an inline RMAN script. If the program_action is a path to a script, then the script must reside on every computer that the program runs on. The job can only have arguments that are strings or that can be cast to strings. These arguments are passed positionally when the script is called.
number_of_arguments	This attribute specifies the number of arguments that the job expects. The range is 0-255, with the default being 0.
program_name	The name of the program associated with this job. If the program is of type EXECUTABLE, the job owner must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege before the job can be enabled or run.
start_date	This attribute specifies the first date and time on which this job is scheduled to start. If start_date and repeat_interval are left null, then the job is scheduled to run as soon as the job is enabled. For repeating jobs that use a calendaring expression to specify the repeat interval, start_date is used as a reference date. The first time the job runs is the first match of the calendaring expression that is on or after the current date and time. The Scheduler cannot guarantee that a job executes on an exact time because the system may be overloaded and thus resources unavailable.
event_condition	This is a conditional expression based on the columns of the event source queue table. The expression must have the syntax of an Advanced Queuing rule. Accordingly, you can include user data properties in the expression provided that the message payload is an object type, and that you prefix object attributes in the expression with tab.user_data. For more information on rules, see the DBMS_AQADM.ADD_SUBSCRIBER procedure.

Table 140–26 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_spec	This argument specifies either of the following: ■ The source queue where events that start this particular job are enqueued. If it is secure, then the queue_spec argument is a pair of values of the form *queue_name, agent name*. If it is not secure, then only the queue name need be provided. If a fully qualified queue name is not provided, the queue is assumed to be in the job owner's schema. In the case of secure queues, the agent name provided should belong to a valid agent that is currently subscribed to the queue. ■ A file watcher name. For more information on this option, see *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.
repeat_ interval	This attribute specifies how often the job repeats. You can specify the repeat interval by using calendaring or PL/SQL expressions. The expression specified is evaluated to determine the next time the job should run. If repeat_interval is not specified, the job runs only once at the specified start date. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for further information.
schedule_ name	The name of the schedule, window, or window group associated with this job.
job_class	The class this job is associated with.
end_date	This attribute specifies the date and time after which the job expires and is no longer run. After the end_date, if auto_drop is TRUE, the job is dropped. If auto_drop is FALSE, the job is disabled and the STATE of the job is set to COMPLETED. If no value for end_date is specified, the job repeats forever unless max_ runs or max_failures is set, in which case the job stops when either value is reached. The value for end_date must be after the value for start_date. If it is not, an error is generated when the job is enabled.
comments	This attribute specifies a comment about the job. By default, this attribute is NULL.
job_style	Style of the job being created. This argument can have one of the following values: ■ 'REGULAR' creates a regular job. This is the default. ■ 'LIGHTWEIGHT' creates a lightweight job. This value is permitted only when the job references a program object. Use lightweight jobs when you have many short-duration jobs that run frequently. Under certain circumstances, using lightweight jobs can deliver a small performance gain.
credential_ name	The default credential to use with the job. Applicable only to remote database jobs, remote external jobs, local external jobs, script jobs, and event-based jobs that process file arrival events. The credential must exist. For local database jobs, it must be NULL. For local external jobs only, if this attribute is NULL (the default), then a preferred (default) credential is selected. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about preferred credentials for local external jobs. See also: "CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure" on page 39-7

Table 140–26 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_name	The database destination or external destination for the job. Use for remote database jobs and remote external jobs only. Must be NULL for jobs running on the local database or for local external jobs (executables). This attribute can be a single destination name or the name of a group of type 'EXTERNAL_DEST' or 'DB_DEST'. The single destination or group must already exist. The following applies to this attribute: ■ If it is a database destination, it must have been created by the CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure. ■ If it is an external destination, it must have been implicitly created by registering a remote Scheduler agent with the local database. ■ If it is a group, each member of the group must exist, and the job must run on all destinations named in the group. See "CREATE_GROUP Procedure" on page 140-53. destination_name cannot reference a destination group when: ■ The job type is 'CHAIN' ■ The job style is 'LIGHTWEIGHT' If the credential_name argument of CREATE_JOB is NULL, each destination must be preceded by a credential, in the following format: *credential.destination* The credential must already exist. If the credential_name argument is provided, then it serves as the default credential for every destination that is not preceded by a credential. You can query the views *_SCHEDULER_DB_DESTS and ALL_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL DESTS for existing destinations and *_SCHEDULER_GROUP_MEMBERS for existing groups and their members. *** destination job attribute is deprecated in Oracle Database 11*g*R2 and superseded by destination_name.
enabled	This attribute specifies whether the job is created enabled or not. The possible settings are TRUE or FALSE. By default, this attribute is set to FALSE and, therefore, the job is created as disabled. A disabled job means that the metadata about the job has been captured, and the job exists as a database object. However, the Scheduler ignores the job and the job coordinator does not pick it for processing. In order for the job coordinator to process the job, the job must be enabled. You can enable a job by setting this argument to TRUE or by using the ENABLE procedure.
auto_drop	This flag, if TRUE, causes a job to be automatically dropped after it has completed or has been automatically disabled. A job is considered completed if: ■ Its end date (or the end date of the job schedule) has passed. ■ It has run max_runs number of times. max_runs must be set with SET_ATTRIBUTE. ■ It is not a repeating job and has run once. A job is disabled when it has failed max_failures times. max_failures is also set with SET_ATTRIBUTE. If this flag is set to FALSE, the jobs are not dropped and their metadata is kept until the job is explicitly dropped with the DROP_JOB procedure. By default, jobs are created with auto_drop set to TRUE.

Usage Notes

Jobs are created as disabled by default. You must explicitly enable them so that they will become active and scheduled. Before enabling a job, ensure that all program arguments, if any, are defined, either by defining default values in the program object or by supplying values with the job.

The JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES initialization parameter specifies the maximum number of processes that can be created for the execution of jobs. Beginning with Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2, JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES applies to DBMS_SCHEDULER jobs. Setting this parameter to 0 disables DBMS_SCHEDULER jobs.

To create a job in your own schema, you need to have the CREATE JOB privilege. A user with the CREATE ANY JOB privilege can create a job in any schema. If the job being created will reside in another schema, the job name must be qualified with the schema name. For a job of type EXECUTABLE (or for a job that points to a program of type EXECUTABLE), the job owner must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege before the job can be enabled or run.

Associating a job with a particular class or program requires EXECUTE privileges for that class or program.

Not all possible job attributes can be set with CREATE_JOB. Some must be set after the job is created. For example, job arguments must be set with the SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure or the SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure. Other job attributes, such as job_priority and max_runs, are set with the SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure.

To create multiple jobs efficiently, use the CREATE_JOBS procedure.

Note: The Scheduler runs event-based jobs for each occurrence of an event that matches the event condition of the job. However, events that occur while the job is already running are ignored; the event gets consumed, but does not trigger another run of the job.

CREATE_JOB_CLASS Procedure

This procedure creates a job class. Job classes are created in the SYS schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOB_CLASS (
   job_class_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   resource_consumer_group   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   service                   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   logging_level             IN PLS_INTEGER
                                DEFAULT DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_RUNS,
   log_history               IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   comments                  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–27 CREATE_JOB_CLASS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_class_name	The name to assign to the job class. Job classes can only be created in the SYS schema. This attribute specifies the name of the job class and uniquely identifies the job class. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. For example, a job class cannot have the same name as a table in a schema.
resource_ consumer_group	This attribute specifies the resource consumer group that his class is associated with. A resource consumer group is a set of synchronous or asynchronous sessions that are grouped together based on their processing needs. A job class has a many-to-one relationship with a resource consumer group. The resource consumer group that the job class associates with determines the resources that are allocated to the job class. If a resource consumer group is dropped, job classes associated with it are then associated with the default resource consumer group. If no resource consumer group is specified, job classes are associated with the default resource consumer group. If the specified resource consumer group does not exist when creating the job class, an error occurs.
service	This attribute specifies the database service that the jobs in this class have affinity to. In an Oracle RAC environment, this means that the jobs in this class only run on those database instances that are assigned to the specific service. Note that a service can be mapped to a resource consumer group, so you can also control resources allocated to jobs by specifying a service. See DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING for details. If both the resource_consumer_group and service attributes are specified, and if the service is mapped to a resource consumer group, the resource_ consumer_group attribute takes precedence. If no service is specified, the job class belongs to the default service, which means it has no service affinity and any one of the database instances within the cluster might run the job. If the service that a job class belongs to is dropped, the job class will then belong to the default service. If the specified service does not exist when creating the job class, then an error occurs.

Table 140–27 (Cont.) CREATE_JOB_CLASS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
logging_level	This attribute specifies how much information is logged. The possible options are: ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_OFF No logging is performed for any jobs in this class. ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_RUNS The Scheduler writes detailed information to the job log for all runs of each job in this class. This is the default. ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_FAILED_RUNS The Scheduler logs only jobs that failed in this class. ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_FULL In addition to recording every run of a job, the Scheduler records all operations performed on all jobs in this class. Every time a job is created, enabled, disabled, altered (with SET_ATTRIBUTE), stopped, and so, an entry is recorded in the log.
log_history	This attribute controls the number of days that job log entries for jobs in this class are retained. It helps prevent the job log from growing indiscriminately. The range of valid values is 0 through1000000. If set to 0, no history is kept. If NULL (the default), retention days are set by the log_history Scheduler attribute (set with SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE).
comments	This attribute is for an optional comment about the job class. By default, this attribute is NULL.

Usage Notes

For users to create jobs that belong to a job class, the job owner must have EXECUTE privileges on the job class. Therefore, after the job class has been created, EXECUTE privileges must be granted on the job class so that users create jobs belonging to that class. You can also grant the EXECUTE privilege to a role.

Creating a job class requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER system privilege.

CREATE_JOBS Procedure

This procedure creates multiple jobs (regular and lightweight) and sets the values of their arguments in a single call.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_JOBS (
   jobdef_array      IN SYS.JOB_DEFINITION_ARRAY,
   commit_semantics  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR');
```

Parameters

Table 140–28 CREATE_JOBS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobdef_array	The array of job definitions. See "Data Structures" on page 140-16 for a description of the JOB_DEFINITION_ARRAY and JOB_DEFINITION datatypes.
commit_semantics	The commit semantics. The following types are supported: ■ STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR returns on the first error. Previous successfully created jobs are committed to disk. This is the default. ■ TRANSACTIONAL returns on the first error and everything that happened before that error is rolled back. ■ ABSORB_ERRORS tries to absorb any errors and attempts to create the rest of the jobs on the list. It commits all successfully created jobs. If errors occur, you can query the view SCHEDULER_BATCH_ERRORS for details.

Usage Notes

This procedure creates many jobs in the context of a single transaction. To realize the desired performance gains, the jobs being created must be grouped in batches of sufficient size. Calling CREATE_JOBS with a small array size may not be much faster than calling CREATE_JOB once for each job.

You cannot use this procedure to create multiple-destination jobs. That is, the destination attribute of the job_definition object cannot reference a destination group.

Examples

See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure

This procedure creates a program.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_PROGRAM (
   program_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   program_type             IN VARCHAR2,
   program_action           IN VARCHAR2,
   number_of_arguments      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   enabled                  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   comments                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–29 CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_name	The name to assign to the program. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. For example, a program cannot have the same name as a table in a schema. If no name is specified, then an error occurs.

Table 140–29 (Cont.) CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_type	This attribute specifies the type of program you are creating. If it is not specified then you get an error. These are the supported values for program_type: ■ 'PLSQL_BLOCK' This specifies that the program is a PL/SQL block. Job or program arguments are not supported when the job or program type is PLSQL_BLOCK. In this case, the number of arguments must be 0. ■ 'STORED_PROCEDURE' This specifies that the program is a PL/SQL or Java stored procedure, or an external C subprogram. Only procedures, not functions with return values, are supported. PL/SQL procedures with INOUT or OUT arguments are not supported. ■ 'EXECUTABLE' This specifies that the job is going to be run outside the database using an external executable. External programs imply anything that can be executed from the operating system command line. AnyData arguments are not supported with job or program type EXECUTABLE. ■ 'EXTERNAL_SCRIPT' This specifies that the job is an external script that uses the command shell of the computer running the job. For Windows this is cmd.exe and for UNIX based systems the sh shell, unless a different interpreter is specified by prefixing the first line of the script with #!. ■ 'SQL_SCRIPT' This specifies that the program is a SQL*Plus script. A job using this program must point to a credential that contains a valid operating system username and password. The SQL*Plus script is run by SQL*Plus executable. The job using this program may point to a connect credential that contains a database credential. If so, this credential is used to connect to the database before running the SQL*Plus script. Note that if you choose to use connect credential, you must use set_attribute to specify the Connect_Credential_Name attribute. If you do not have connect credential, you must include an explicit SQL*Plus connect statement providing a valid database userid / password. ■ 'BACKUP_SCRIPT' This specifies that the program is an RMAN backup script. The script runs a connect statement that uses either a password or OS authentication before it executes any target commands. The Scheduler uses the RMAN executable from the current Oracle home to run the script and throws an error if this is missing.

Table 140–29 (Cont.) CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_action	This attribute specifies the action of the program. If program_action is not specified, an error is generated. The following actions are possible: ■ For a PL/SQL block, the action is to execute PL/SQL code. These blocks must end with a semicolon. For example, my_proc(); or BEGIN my_proc(); END; or DECLARE arg pls_integer:= 10; BEGIN my_proc2(arg); END;. Note that the Scheduler wraps job_action in its own block and passes the following to PL/SQL for execution: DECLARE ... BEGIN job_action END; This is done to declare some internal Scheduler variables. You can include any Scheduler metadata attribute except event_message in your PL/SQL code. You use the attribute name as you use any other PL/SQL identifier, and the Scheduler assigns it a value. See Table 140–37 on page 140-80 for details on available metadata attributes. If it is an anonymous block, special Scheduler metadata may be accessed using the following variable names: job_name, job_owner, job_start, window_start, window_end. For more information, see the "DEFINE_METADATA_ARGUMENT Procedure" on page 140-80. ■ For a stored procedure, the action is the name of the stored procedure. You have to specify the schema if the procedure resides in a schema other than the job. If case sensitivity is needed, enclose the schema name and the store procedure name in double quotes. For example, program_action=>'"*Schema*"."*Procedure*"'. ■ For an executable, the action is the name of the external executable, including the full path name, but excluding any command-line arguments. If the action starts with a single question mark ('?'), the question mark is replaced by the path to the Oracle home directory for a local job or to the Scheduler agent home for a remote job. If the action contains an at sign ('@') and the job is local, the at sign is replaced with the SID of the current Oracle instance.

Table 140–29 (Cont.) CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	■ For an external script, the action must be either the path to an operating system script or an inline operating system script. If the `program_action` is a path to a script, then the script must reside on every computer that the program runs on. The `program_action` may contain calls to SQL*Plus or RMAN executables directly, without having to specify its full path, given that they are stored on their default location for every computer that runs the job. The job can only have arguments that are strings or that can be cast to strings. These arguments are passed positionally when the script is called. The program points to a credential that contains a valid operating system username and password. ■ For a SQL script, the action must be either the path to a SQL*Plus script or an inline SQL*Plus script. If the `program_action` is a path to a script, then the script must reside on every computer that the program runs on. The job can only have arguments that are strings or that can be cast to strings. These arguments are passed positionally when the script is called. If the arguments are named, they are also bound to named variables in the SQL*Plus session. ■ For a backup script, the action must be either the path to a RMAN script or an inline RMAN script. If the `program_action` is a path to a script, then the script must reside on every computer that the program runs on. The job can only have arguments that are strings or that can be cast to strings. These arguments are passed positionally when the script is called.
`number_of_arguments`	This attribute specifies the number of arguments the program takes. If this parameter is not specified, then the default is 0. A program can have a maximum of 255 arguments. If the `program_type` is `PLSQL_BLOCK`, then this parameter is ignored.
`enabled`	This flag specifies whether the program should be created as enabled or not. If the flag is set to `TRUE`, then validity checks are made and the program is created as `ENABLED` if all the checks be successful. By default, this flag is set to `FALSE`, meaning not created enabled. You can also call the `ENABLE` procedure to enable the program before it can be used.
`comments`	A comment about the program. By default, this attribute is `NULL`.

Usage Notes

To create a program in their own schema, users need the `CREATE JOB` privilege. A user with the `CREATE ANY JOB` privilege can create a program in any schema. A program is created in a disabled state by default (unless the enabled parameter is set to `TRUE`). It cannot be executed by a job until it is enabled.

To use your programs, other users must have `EXECUTE` privileges, therefore once a program has been created, you have to grant `EXECUTE` privileges on it.

> **See Also:** "DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure" on page 140-82

CREATE_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure creates a schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_SCHEDULE (
   schedule_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   start_date             IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   repeat_interval        IN VARCHAR2,
   end_date               IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   comments               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–30 CREATE_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_name	The name to assign to the schedule. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. For example, a schedule cannot have the same name as a table in a schema. If no name is specified, then an error occurs.
start_date	This attribute specifies the first date and time on which this schedule becomes valid. For a repeating schedule, the value for start_date is a reference date. In this case, the start of the schedule is not the start_date; it depends on the repeat interval specified. start_date is used to determine the first instance of the schedule. If start_date is specified in the past and no value for repeat_interval is specified, the schedule is invalid. For a repeating job or window, start_date can be derived from the repeat_interval if it is not specified. If start_date is null, then the date that the job or window is enabled is used. start_date and repeat_interval cannot both be null.
repeat_interval	This attribute specifies how often the schedule repeats. It is expressed using calendaring syntax. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for further information. PL/SQL expressions are not allowed as repeat intervals for named schedules.
end_date	The date and time after which jobs will not run and windows will not open. A non-repeating schedule that has no end_date is valid forever. end_date has to be after the start_date. If this is not the case, then an error is generated when the schedule is created.
comments	This attribute specifies an optional comment about the schedule. By default, this attribute is NULL.

Usage Notes

This procedure requires the CREATE JOB privilege to create a schedule in your own schema or the CREATE ANY JOB privilege to create a schedule in someone else's schema by specifying schema.schedule_name. Once a schedule has been created, it can be used by other users. The schedule is created with access to PUBLIC. Therefore, there is no need to explicitly grant access to the schedule.

CREATE_WINDOW Procedure

This procedure creates a recurring time window and associates it with a resource plan. You can then use the window to schedule jobs that run under the associated resource plan. Windows are created in the SYS schema.

The procedure is overloaded.

Syntax

Creates a window using a named schedule object:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_WINDOW (
   window_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   resource_plan           IN VARCHAR2,
   schedule_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   duration                IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
   window_priority         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LOW',
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Creates a window using an inlined schedule:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.CREATE_WINDOW (
   window_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   resource_plan           IN VARCHAR2,
   start_date              IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   repeat_interval         IN VARCHAR2,
   end_date                IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   duration                IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
   window_priority         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'LOW',
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–31 CREATE_WINDOW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
window_name	The name to assign to the window. The name must be unique in the SQL namespace. All windows are in the SYS schema, so the preface 'SYS' is optional.
resource_plan	This attribute specifies the resource plan that automatically activates when the window opens. When the window closes, the system switches to the appropriate resource plan, which is usually the plan that was in effect before the window opened, but can also be the plan of a different window. Only one resource plan can be associated with a window. It may be NULL or the empty string (""). When it is NULL, the resource plan in effect when the window opens stays in effect for the duration of the window. When it is the empty string, the resource manager is disabled for the duration of the window. If the window is open and the resource plan is dropped, then the resource allocation for the duration of the window is not affected.

Table 140–31 (Cont.) CREATE_WINDOW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
start_date	This attribute specifies the first date and time on which this window is scheduled to open. If the value for start_date specified is in the past or is not specified, the window opens as soon as it is created. For repeating windows that use a calendaring expression to specify the repeat interval, the value for start_date is a reference date. The first time the window opens depends on the repeat interval specified and the value for start_date.
duration	This attribute specifies how long the window stays open. For example, 'interval '5' hour' for five hours. There is no default value for this attribute. Therefore, if no value is specified when the window is created, an error occurs. The duration is of type interval day to seconds and ranges from one minute to 99 days.
schedule_name	This attribute specifies the name of the schedule associated with the window.
repeat_interval	This attribute specifies how often the window repeats. It is expressed using the Scheduler calendaring syntax. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for more information. A PL/SQL expression cannot be used to specify the repeat interval for a window. The expression specified is evaluated to determine the next time the window opens. If no repeat_interval is specified, the window opens only once at the specified start date.
end_date	This attribute specifies the date and time after which the window no longer opens. When the value for end_date is reached, the window is disabled. In the *_SCHEDULER_WINDOWS views, the enabled flag of the window is set to FALSE. A non-repeating window that has no value for end_date opens only once for the duration of the window. For a repeating window, if no end_date is specified, then the window keeps repeating forever. The end_date must be after the start_date. If it is not, then an error is generated when the window is created.
window_priority	This attribute is only relevant when two windows overlap. Because only one window can be in effect at one time, the window priority determines which window opens. The two possible values for this attribute are 'HIGH' and 'LOW'. A high priority window has precedence over a low priority window, therefore, the low priority window does not open if it overlaps a high priority window. By default, windows are created with priority 'LOW'.
comments	This attribute specifies an optional comment about the window. By default, this attribute is NULL.

Usage Notes

Creating a window requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

Scheduler windows are the principal mechanism used to automatically switch resource plans according to a schedule. You can also manually activate a resource plan by using the ALTER SYSTEM SET RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN statement or the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SWITCH_PLAN package procedure. Note that either of these manual methods can also disable resource plan switching by Scheduler windows. For more information, see *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* and "SWITCH_PLAN Procedure" on page 131-43.

DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT Procedure

This procedure defines a name or default value for a program argument that is of a complex type and must be encapsulated within an ANYDATA object. A job that references the program can override the default value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT (
   program_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER,
   argument_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   argument_type           IN VARCHAR2,
   default_value           IN SYS.ANYDATA,
   out_argument            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–32 DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_name	The name of the program to be altered. A program with this name must exist.
argument_position	The position of the argument as it is passed to the executable. Argument numbers go from one to the number_of_arguments specified for the program. This must be unique, so it can replace any argument already defined at this position.
argument_name	The name to assign to the argument. It is optional, but must be unique for the program if it is specified. If you assign a name, the name can then be used by other package procedures, including the SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure.
argument_type	The datatype of the argument being defined. This is not verified or used by the Scheduler. It is only used by the user of the program when deciding what value to assign to the argument.
default_value	The default value to be assigned to the argument encapsulated within an AnyData object. This is optional.
out_argument	This parameter is reserved for future use. It must be set to FALSE.

Usage Notes

All program arguments from one to the number_of_arguments value must be defined before a program can be enabled. If a default value for an argument is not defined with this procedure, a value must be defined in the job.

Defining a program argument requires that you be the owner of the program or have ALTER privileges on that program. You can also define a program argument if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

See Also:

- "DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure" on page 140-82
- "SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure" on page 140-143

DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP Procedure

This procedure adds or replaces a chain step and associates it with an event schedule or an inline event. Once started in a running chain, this step does not complete until the specified event has occurred. Every step in a chain must be defined before the chain can be enabled and used. Defining a step gives it a name and specifies what happens during the step. If a step already exists with this name, the new step replaces the old one.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   event_schedule_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   timeout                 IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   event_condition         IN VARCHAR2,
   queue_spec              IN VARCHAR2,
   timeout                 IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–33 DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
chain_name	The name of the chain that the step is in
step_name	The name of the step
event_schedule_name	The name of the event schedule that the step waits for
timeout	This parameter is reserved for future use
event_condition	See the CREATE_EVENT_SCHEDULE Procedure
queue_spec	See the CREATE_EVENT_SCHEDULE Procedure

Usage Notes

Defining a chain step requires ALTER privileges on the chain either as the owner of the chain, or as a user with the ALTER object privilege on the chain or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege.

You can base a chain step on a file watcher as well. To do this, provide the file watcher name directly in the queue_spec parameter, or use a file watcher schedule for the event_schedule_name parameter.

See Also: "DEFINE_CHAIN_STEP Procedure" on page 140-79

DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE Procedure

This procedure adds a new rule to an existing chain, specified as a condition-action pair. The condition is expressed using either SQL or the Scheduler chain condition syntax and indicates the prerequisites for the action to occur. The action is a result of the condition being met.

An actual rule object is created to store the rule in the schema where the chain resides. If a rule name is given, this name is used for the rule object. If an existing rule name in the schema of the chain is given, the existing rule is altered. (A schema different than the schema of the chain cannot be specified). If no rule name is given, one is generated in the form `SCHED_RULE${N}`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   condition               IN VARCHAR2,
   action                  IN VARCHAR2,
   rule_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   comments                IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–34 DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`chain_name`	The name of the chain to alter
`condition`	A boolean expression which must evaluate to `TRUE` for the action to be performed. Every chain must have a rule that evaluates to `TRUE` to start the chain. For this purpose, you can use a rule that has `'TRUE'` as its condition if you are using Scheduler chain condition syntax, or `'1=1'` as its condition if you are using SQL syntax. ▪ Scheduler Chain Condition Syntax See "Scheduler Chain Condition Syntax" on page 140-77 for details ▪ SQL `WHERE` Clause Syntax Conditions expressed with SQL must use the syntax of a `SELECT` statement `WHERE` clause. You can refer to chain step attributes by using the chain step name as a bind variable. The bind variable syntax is `:step_name.attribute`. (*step_name* refers to a typed object.) Possible attributes are: `completed`, `state`, `start_date`, `end_date`, `error_code`, and `duration`. Possible values for the `state` attribute include: `'NOT_STARTED'`, `'SCHEDULED'`, `'RUNNING'`, `'PAUSED'`, `'STALLED'`, `'SUCCEEDED'`, `'FAILED'`, and `'STOPPED'`. If a step is in the state `'SUCCEEDED'`, `'FAILED'`, or `'STOPPED'`, its `completed` attribute is set to `'TRUE'`, otherwise `completed` is `'FALSE'`.

Table 140–34 (Cont.) DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
action	The action to be performed when the rule evaluates to TRUE. The action must consist of at least one keyword with an optional value and an optional delay clause. Possible actions include: ■ [AFTER *delay_interval*] START *step_1*[,*step_2* ...] ■ STOP *step_1*[,*step_2* ...] ■ END [{*end_value*|*step_name.error_code*}] At the beginning of the START action, a delay clause can specify a delay interval before performing the action. *delay_interval* is a formatted datetime interval of the form HH:MM:SS. The END action ends the chain with an error code equal to either the supplied end_value or the error code that step_name completes with. The default error code is 0, indicating a successful chain run.
rule_name	The name of the rule being created. If no rule_name is given, one is generated in the form SCHED_RULE$_{N}.
comments	An optional comment describing the rule. This is stored in the rule object created.

Scheduler Chain Condition Syntax

The Scheduler chain condition syntax provides an easy way to construct a condition using the states and error codes of steps in the current chain.

Chain Condition Syntax

The following are the available constructs for Scheduler chain condition syntax, which are all boolean expressions:

```
TRUE
FALSE
stepname [NOT] SUCCEEDED
stepname [NOT] FAILED
stepname [NOT] STOPPED
stepname [NOT] COMPLETED
stepname ERROR_CODE IN (integer, integer, integer ...)
stepname ERROR_CODE NOT IN (integer, integer, integer ...)
stepname ERROR_CODE = integer
stepname ERROR_CODE != integer
stepname ERROR_CODE <> integer
stepname ERROR_CODE > integer
stepname ERROR_CODE >= integer
stepname ERROR_CODE < integer
stepname ERROR_CODE <= integer
```

These boolean operators are available to create more complex conditions:

```
expression AND expression
expression OR expression
NOT (expression)
```

integer can be positive or negative. Parentheses may be used for clarity or to enforce ordering. You must use parentheses with the NOT operator.

PL/SQL code that runs as part of a step can set the value of ERROR_CODE for that step with the RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR statement.

Usage Notes

Defining a chain rule requires ALTER privileges on the chain (either as the owner, or as a user with ALTER privileges on the chain or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege).

You must define at least one rule that starts the chain and at least one that ends it. See the section "Adding Rules to a Chain" in *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information.

Examples

The following are examples of using rule conditions and rule actions.

Rule Conditions Using Scheduler Chain Condition Syntax

```
'step1 completed'
-- satisfied when step step1 has completed. (step1 completed is also TRUE when any
-- of the following are TRUE: step1 succeeded, step1 failed, step1 stopped.)

'step1 succeeded and step2 succeeded'
-- satisfied when steps step1 and step2 have both succeeded

'step1 error_code > 100'
-- satisfied when step step1 has failed with an error_code greater than 100

'step1 error_code IN (1, 3, 5, 7)'
-- satisfied when step step1 has failed with an error_code of 1, 3, 5, or 7
```

Rule Conditions Using SQL Syntax

```
':step1.completed = ''TRUE'' AND :step1.end_date >SYSDATE-1/24'
--satisfied when step step1 completed less than an hour ago

':step1.duration > interval ''5'' minute'
-- satisfied when step step1 has completed and took longer than 5 minutes to
complete
```

Rule Actions

```
'AFTER 01:00:00 START step1, step2'
--After an hour start steps step1 and step2

'STOP step1'
--Stop step step1

END step4.error_code'
--End the chain with the error code that step step4 finished with. If step4 has
not completed, the chain will be ended unsuccessfully with error code 27435.

'END' or 'END 0'
--End the chain successfully (with error_code 0)

'END 100'
--End the chain unsuccessfully with error code 100.
```

DEFINE_CHAIN_STEP Procedure

This procedure adds or replaces a chain step and associates it with a program or a nested chain. When the chain step is started, the specified program or chain is run. If a step already exists with the name supplied in the `chain_name` argument, the new step replaces the old one.

The chain owner must have `EXECUTE` privileges on the program or chain associated with the step. Only one program or chain can run during a step.

You cannot set all possible step attributes with this procedure. Use the `ALTER_CHAIN` procedure to set additional chain step attributes, such as `credential_name` and `destination_name`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_CHAIN_STEP (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   program_name            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–35 DEFINE_CHAIN_STEP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`chain_name`	The name of the chain to alter.
`step_name`	The name of the step being defined. If a step already exists with this name, the new step replaces the old one.
`program_name`	The name of a program or chain to run during this step. The chain owner must have `EXECUTE` privileges on this program or chain.

Usage Notes

Defining a chain step requires `ALTER` privileges on the chain (either as the owner, or a user with `ALTER` privileges on the chain or the `CREATE ANY JOB` system privilege).

See Also:

- "ALTER_CHAIN Procedure" on page 140-38
- "DEFINE_CHAIN_EVENT_STEP Procedure" on page 140-75

DEFINE_METADATA_ARGUMENT Procedure

This procedure defines a special metadata argument for the program. The Scheduler can pass Scheduler metadata through this argument to your stored procedure or other executable. You cannot set values for jobs using this argument.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DEFINE_METADATA_ARGUMENT (
  program_name            IN VARCHAR2,
  metadata_attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
  argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER,
  argument_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–36 DEFINE_METADATA_ARGUMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_name	The name of the program to be altered
metadata_attribute	The metadata to be passed. Valid metadata attributes are: 'job_name', 'job_subname', 'job_owner', 'job_start', 'window_start', 'window_end', and 'event_message'. Table 140–37 describes these attributes in detail.
argument_position	The position of the argument as it is passed to the executable. The position cannot be greater than the number_of_arguments specified for the program. It must be unique, so it replaces any argument already defined at this position.
argument_name	The name to assign to the argument. It is optional, but must be unique for the program if it is specified. If you assign a name, the name can then be used by other package procedures.

Table 140–37 Metadata Attributes

Metadata Attribute	Datatype	Description
job_name	VARCHAR2	Name of the currently running job
job_subname	VARCHAR2	Subname of the currently running job. The name + subname form a unique identifier for a job that is running a chain step. NULL if the job is not part of a chain.
job_owner	VARCHAR2	Owner of the currently running job
job_scheduled_start	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	When the currently running job was scheduled to start
job_start	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	When the currently running job started

Table 140–37 (Cont.) Metadata Attributes

Metadata Attribute	Datatype	Description
window_start	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	If the job was started by a window, the time that the window opened
window_end	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	If the job was started by a window, the time that the window is scheduled to close
event_message	(See Description)	For an event-based job, the message content of the event that started the job. The datatype of this attribute depends on the queue used for the event. It has the same type as the USER_DATA column of the queue table. In the case of a file arrival event, event_message is of type SYS.SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT. See "SCHEDULER_FILEWATCHER_RESULT Object Type" on page 28.

Usage Notes

Defining a program argument requires that you be the owner of the program or have ALTER privileges on that program. You can also define a program argument if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

All metadata attributes except event_message can be used in PL/SQL blocks that you enter into the job_action or program_action attributes of jobs or programs, respectively. You use the attribute name as you use any other PL/SQL identifier, and the Scheduler assigns it a value.

DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure

This procedure defines a name or default value for a program argument. If no default value is defined for a program argument, the job that references the program must supply an argument value. (The job can also override a default value.)

This procedure is overloaded.

Syntax

Defines a program argument without a default value:

```
PROCEDURE define_program_argument(
   program_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER,
   argument_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   argument_type           IN VARCHAR2,
   out_argument            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Defines a program argument with a default value:

```
PROCEDURE define_program_argument(
   program_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER,
   argument_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   argument_type           IN VARCHAR2,
   default_value           IN VARCHAR2,
   out_argument            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–38 DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_name	The name of the program to be altered. A program with this name must exist.
argument_ position	The position of the argument as it is passed to the executable. Argument numbers go from one to the number_of_arguments specified for the program. This must be unique so it replaces any argument already defined at this position.
argument_name	The name to assign to the argument. It is optional, but must be unique for the program if specified. If you assign a name, the name can then be used by other package procedures, including the SET_JOB_ ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure.
argument_type	The datatype of the argument being defined. This is not verified or used by the Scheduler. The program user uses argument_type when deciding what value to assign to the argument. Any valid SQL datatype is allowed.
default_value	The default value to be assigned to the argument if none is specified by the job.
out_argument	This parameter is reserved for future use. It must be set to FALSE.

Usage Notes

All program arguments from 1 to the number_of_arguments value must be defined before a program can be enabled. If a default value for an argument is not defined with this procedure, a value must be defined in the job.

Defining a program argument requires that you be the owner of the program or have ALTER privileges on that program. You can also define a program argument if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT only supports arguments of SQL type. Therefore, argument values that are not of SQL type, such as booleans, are not supported as program or job arguments.

See Also:

- "DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT Procedure" on page 140-74
- "SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure" on page 140-144

DISABLE Procedure

This procedure disables a program, job, chain, window, database destination, external destination, file watcher, or group. When an object is disabled, its `enabled` attribute is set to `FALSE`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DISABLE (
   name              IN VARCHAR2,
   force             IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   commit_semantics  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR');
```

Parameters

Table 140–39 DISABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	The name of the object being disabled. Can be a comma-delimited list. If a job class name is specified, then all the jobs in the job class are disabled. The job class is not disabled. If a group name is specified, then the group is disabled, but the enabled state of the group members is unaffected.
`force`	If `TRUE`, objects are disabled even if other objects depend on them. See the usage notes for more information.
`commit_semantics`	The commit semantics. The following types are supported: ■ `STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR`: The procedure returns on the first error and the previous disable operations that were successful are committed to disk. This is the default. ■ `TRANSACTIONAL`: The procedure returns on the first error and everything that happened before that error is rolled back. This type is only supported when disabling a job or a list of jobs. In addition, this type is not supported when `force` is set to `TRUE`. ■ `ABSORB_ERRORS`: The procedure tries to absorb any errors and disable the rest of the jobs and commits all the disable operations that were successful. If errors occur, you can query the view `SCHEDULER_BATCH_ERRORS` for details. This type is only supported when disabling a job or a list of jobs.

Usage Notes

Windows must be preceded by `SYS`.

Disabling an object that is already disabled does not generate an error.

The purpose of the `force` option is to point out dependencies. No dependent objects are altered.

To run `DISABLE` for a window or a group of type `WINDOW`, you must have the `MANAGE SCHEDULER` privilege.

You can use DISABLE with any schema except the SYS schema.

Jobs

Disabling a job means that, although the metadata of the job is there, it should not run and the job coordinator will not pick up these jobs for processing. When a job is disabled, its state in the job queue is changed to disabled.

If force is set to FALSE and the job is currently running, an error is returned.

If force is set to TRUE, the job is disabled, but the currently running instance is allowed to finish.

For jobs with multiple destinations, you cannot disable a child job at a specific destination. Instead, you can disable the destination.

Programs

When a program is disabled, the status is changed to disabled. A disabled program implies that, although the metadata is still there, jobs that point to this program cannot run.

If force is set to FALSE, the program must not be referenced by any job, otherwise an error will occur.

If force is set to TRUE, those jobs that point to the program will not be disabled, however, they will fail at runtime because their program will not be valid.

Running jobs that point to the program are not affected by the DISABLE call and are allowed to continue

No arguments that pertain to the program are affected when the program is disabled.

File Watchers

If force is set to FALSE, the file watcher must not be referenced by any job, otherwise an error will occur. If you force disabling a file watcher, jobs that depend on it become disabled.

Windows

This means that the window will not open, however, the metadata of the window is still there, so it can be reenabled.

If force is set to FALSE, the window must not be open or referenced by any job otherwise an error occurs.

If force is set to TRUE, disabling a window that is open will succeed but the window will not be closed. It will prevent the window from opening in the future until it is reenabled.

When the window is disabled, those jobs that have the window as their schedule will not be disabled.

Window Groups

When a group of type WINDOW is disabled, jobs (other than a running job) that have the window group as their schedule will not run when the member windows open. However, a job that has one of the window group members as its schedule still runs.

The metadata of the window group is still there, so it can be reenabled. Note that the members of the window group will still open.

If force is set to FALSE, the window group must not have any members that are open or referenced by any job, otherwise an error will occur.

If `force` is set to `TRUE`:

- The window group is disabled and the open window will be not closed or disabled. It will be allowed to continue to its end.
- The window group is disabled but those jobs that have the window group as their schedule will not be disabled.

Job Chains

When a chain is disabled, the metadata for the chain is still there, but jobs that point to it will not be able to be run. This allows changes to the chain to be made safely without the risk of having an incompletely specified chain run.If `force` is set to `FALSE`, the chain must not be referenced by any job, otherwise an error will occur.If `force` is set to `TRUE`, those jobs that point to the chain will not be disabled, however, they will fail at runtime.Running jobs that point to this chain are not affected by the `DISABLE` call and are allowed to complete.

Database Destinations

When you disable a database destination:

- The destination is skipped when a multiple destination job runs.
- If all destinations are disabled for a job, the Scheduler generates an error when it attempts to run the job.
- The `REFS_ENABLED` column in `*_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS` is set to `FALSE` for all jobs that reference the database destination.

External Destinations

When you disable an external destination:

- Dependent database destinations remain enabled, but the Scheduler generates an error when it attempts to run a job with a database destination that depends on the external destination.
- The `REFS_ENABLED` column in `*_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS` is set to `FALSE` for all external jobs that reference the external destination and for all database jobs with a database destination that depends on the external destination.

Groups

If you disable an external destination group or database destination group, the Scheduler generates an error when it attempts to run a job that names the group as its destination.

DROP_AGENT_DESTINATION Procedure

This procedure drops one or more external destinations, also known as agent destinations. It should be used only when the preferred method of dropping an external destination, using the `schagent` utility to unregister a Scheduler agent with a database, is unavailable due to failures.

This procedure can be called only by the `SYS` user or a user with the `MANAGE SCHEDULER` privilege.

> **Note:** External destinations are created on a source database only implicitly by registering an agent with the database. There is no user-callable `CREATE_AGENT_DESTINATION` procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_AGENT_DESTINATION (
   destination_name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–40 DROP_AGENT_DESTINATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`destination_name`	A comma-separated list of external destinations to drop. Because user `SYS` owns all external destinations, do not prefix them with a schema name. The procedure stops processing if it encounters an external destination that does not exist. All external destinations processed before the error are dropped. Cannot be `NULL`.

Usage Notes

When an external destination is dropped:

- All database destinations that refer to the external destination are disabled and their `agent` attribute is set to `NULL`.
- Members of external destination groups that refer to the destination are removed from the group.
- All job instances in the `*_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS` views that refer to the external destination are also dropped.
- Jobs running against the destination are stopped.

DROP_CHAIN Procedure

This procedure drops an existing chain.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_CHAIN (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–41 DROP_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
chain_name	The name of the chain to drop. Can also be a comma-delimited list of chains.
force	If force is set to FALSE, the chain must not be referenced by any job, otherwise an error will occur. If force is set to TRUE, all jobs pointing to the chain are disabled before the chain is dropped.Running jobs that point to this chain are stopped before the chain is dropped.

Usage Notes

Dropping a chain requires alter privileges on the chain (either as the owner, or a user with ALTER privileges on the chain or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege).

All steps associated with the chain are dropped. If no rule set was specified when the chain was created, then the automatically created rule set and evaluation context associated with the chain are also dropped, so the user must have the privileges required to do this. See the DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE_SET and DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_EVALUATION_CONTEXT procedures for more information.

If force is FALSE, no jobs may be using this chain. If force is TRUE, any jobs that use this chain are disabled before the chain is dropped (and any of these jobs that are running will be stopped).

DROP_CHAIN_RULE Procedure

This procedure removes a rule from an existing chain. The rule object corresponding to this rule will also be dropped. The chain will not be disabled. If dropping this rule makes the chain invalid, the user should first disable the chain to ensure that it does not run.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_CHAIN_RULE (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   rule_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–42 DROP_CHAIN_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
chain_name	The name of the chain to alter
rule_name	The name of the rule to drop
force	If force is set to TRUE, the drop operation proceeds even if the chain is currently running. The running chain is not stopped or interrupted. If force is set to FALSE and the chain is running, an error is generated.

Usage Notes

Dropping a chain rule requires alter privileges on the chain (either as the owner or as a user with ALTER privileges on the chain or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege).

Dropping a chain rule also drops the underlying rule database object so you must have the privileges to drop this rule object. See the DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE procedure for more information.

DROP_CHAIN_STEP Procedure

This procedure drops a chain step. If this chain step is still used in the chain rules, the chain will be disabled.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_CHAIN_STEP (
   chain_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   step_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–43 DROP_CHAIN_STEP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
chain_name	The name of the chain to alter
step_name	The name of the step being dropped. Can be a comma-separated list.
force	If force is set to TRUE, this succeeds even if this chain is currently running. The running chain will not be stopped or interrupted.If force is set to FALSE and this chain is currently running, an error is thrown.

Usage Notes

Dropping a chain step requires ALTER privileges on the chain (either as the owner or as a user with ALTER privileges on the chain or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege).

DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1 (12.1). While the procedure remains available in this package, for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the alternative enhanced functionality provided in the DBMS_CREDENTIAL package, specifically the DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure.

This procedure drops a credential.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_CREDENTIAL (
   credential_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–44 DROP_CREDENTIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`credential_name`	The name of the credential being dropped. This can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. This cannot be set to `NULL`.
`force`	If set to `FALSE`, the credential must not be referenced by any job, or an error will occur. If set to `TRUE`, the credential is dropped whether or not there are jobs referencing it. Jobs that reference the credential will continue to point to a nonexistent credential and throw an error at runtime.

Usage Notes

Only the owner of a credential or a user with the `CREATE ANY JOB` system privilege may drop the credential.

Running jobs that point to the credential are not affected by this procedure and are allowed to continue.

See Also: "CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure" on page 39-7

DROP_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure

This procedure drops one or more database destinations.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_DATABASE_DESTINATION (
   destination_name        IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–45 DROP_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_name	The name of the destination to drop. Can be a comma-separated list of database destinations to drop. Each database destination can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. The procedure stops processing if it encounters a database destination that does not exist. All database destinations processed before the error are dropped. Cannot be NULL.

Usage Notes

Only the owner or a user with the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege may drop the database destination.

When a database destination is dropped:

- All job instances that refer to the destination in the *_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS views are also dropped.
- Jobs running against the destination are stopped.
- Members of database destination groups that refer to the destination are removed from the group.

See Also: CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure on page 140-48

DROP_FILE_WATCHER Procedure

This procedure drops one or more file watchers.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_FILE_WATCHER (
   file_watcher_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–46 DROP_FILE_WATCHER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file_watcher_name	The file watcher to drop. Can be a comma-separated list of file watchers. Each file watcher name can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. Cannot be NULL.
force	If set to FALSE, the file watcher must not be referenced by any job, or an error occurs. If set to TRUE, the file watcher is dropped whether or not there are jobs referencing it. In this case, jobs that reference the dropped file watcher are disabled.

Usage Notes

Only the owner of a file watcher or a user with the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege may drop the file watcher.

Running jobs that point to the file watcher are not affected by this procedure and are allowed to continue.

See Also: "CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Procedure" on page 140-51

DROP_GROUP Procedure

This procedure drops one or more groups.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_GROUP (
   group_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   force            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–47 DROP_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_name	A group to drop. Can be a comma-separated list of group names. Each group name can optionally be prefixed with a schema name. The procedure stops processing if it encounters a group that does not exist. All groups processed before the error are dropped. Cannot be NULL.
force	If FALSE, the group must not be referenced by any job, otherwise an error occurs. If TRUE, the group is dropped whether or not there are jobs referencing it. In this case, all jobs referencing the group are disabled and all job instances that reference the group are removed from the *_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS views.

Usage Notes

Only the owner or a user with the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege may drop a group. You must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege to drop a group of type WINDOW.

See Also: "CREATE_FILE_WATCHER Procedure" on page 140-51

DROP_JOB Procedure

This procedure drops one or more jobs or all jobs in one or more job classes. Dropping a job also drops all argument values set for that job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_JOB (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   defer                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   commit_semantics        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR');
```

Parameters

Table 140–48 DROP_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of a job or job class. Can be a comma-delimited list. For a job class, the SYS schema should be specified. If the name of a job class is specified, the jobs that belong to that job class are dropped, but the job class itself is not dropped.
force	If force is set to TRUE, the Scheduler first attempts to stop the running job instances (by issuing the STOP_JOB call with the force flag set to false), and then drops the jobs.
defer	If defer is set to TRUE, the Scheduler allows the running jobs to complete and then drops the jobs.
commit_semantics	The commit semantics. The following types are supported: ■ STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR returns on the first error and previous successful drop operations are committed to disk. This is the default. ■ TRANSACTIONAL returns on the first error. Everything that happened before that error is rolled back. This type is not supported when force is set to TRUE. ■ ABSORB_ERRORS tries to absorb any errors and drop the rest of the jobs, and commits all the successful drops. If errors occur, you can query the view SCHEDULER_BATCH_ERRORS for details. Only STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR is permitted when job classes are included in the job_name list.

Usage Notes

If both force and defer are set to FALSE and a job is running at the time of the call, the attempt to drop that job fails. The entire call to DROP_JOB may then fail, depending on the setting of commit_semantics.

Setting both force and defer to TRUE results in an error.

Dropping a job requires ALTER privileges on the job either as the owner of the job or as a user with the ALTER object privilege on the job or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege.

DROP_JOB_CLASS Procedure

This procedure drops a job class. Dropping a job class means that all the metadata about the job class is removed from the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_JOB_CLASS (
   job_class_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–49 DROP_JOB_CLASS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_class_name	The name of the job class. Can be a comma-delimited list.
force	If force is set to FALSE, a class being dropped must not be referenced by any jobs, otherwise an error occurs. If force is set to TRUE, jobs belonging to the class are disabled and their class is set to the default class. Only if this is successful is the class dropped. Running jobs that belong to the job class are not affected.

Usage Notes

Dropping a job class requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER system privilege.

DROP_PROGRAM Procedure

This procedure drops a program. Any arguments that pertain to the program are also dropped when the program is dropped.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_PROGRAM (
   program_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–50 DROP_PROGRAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_name	The name of the program to be dropped. Can be a comma-delimited list.
force	If force is set to FALSE, the program must not be referenced by any job, otherwise an error occurs. If force is set to TRUE, all jobs referencing the program are disabled before the program is dropped. Running jobs that point to the program are not affected by the DROP_PROGRAM call and are allowed to continue.

Usage Notes

Dropping a program requires that you be the owner of the program or have ALTER privileges on that program. You can also drop a program if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure

This procedure drops a program argument. An argument can be specified by either name (if one has been given) or position.

The procedure is overloaded.

Syntax

Drops a program argument by position:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT (
   program_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position        IN PLS_INTEGER);
```

Drops a program argument by name:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT (
   program_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_name            IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–51 DROP_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
program_name	The name of the program to be altered. A program with this name must exist.
argument_name	The name of the argument being dropped
argument_position	The position of the argument to be dropped

Usage Notes

Dropping a program argument requires that you be the owner of the program or have ALTER privileges on that program. You can also drop a program argument if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

DROP_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure drops a schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_SCHEDULE (
   schedule_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   force            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–52 DROP_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_name	The name of the schedule. Can be a comma-delimited list.
force	If force is set to FALSE, the schedule must not be referenced by any job or window, otherwise an error will occur. If force is set to TRUE, any jobs or windows that use this schedule are disabled before the schedule is dropped Running jobs and open windows that point to the schedule are not affected.

Usage Notes

You must be the owner of the schedule being dropped or have ALTER privileges for the schedule or the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

DROP_WINDOW Procedure

This procedure drops a window. All metadata about the window is removed from the database. The window is removed from any groups that reference it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_WINDOW (
   window_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–53 DROP_WINDOW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
window_name	The name of the window. Can be a comma-delimited list.
force	If force is set to FALSE, the window must be not be open or referenced by any job, otherwise an error occurs. If force is set to TRUE, the window is dropped and those jobs that have the window as their schedule are disabled. However, jobs that have a window group, of which the dropped window is a member, as their schedule, are not disabled. If the window is open then, the Scheduler attempts to first close the window and then drop it. When the window is closed, normal close window rules apply. Running jobs that have the window as their schedule is allowed to continue, unless the stop_on_window_close flag is set to TRUE for the job. If this is the case, the job is stopped when the window is dropped.

Usage Notes

Dropping a window requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables a program, job, chain, window, database destination, external destination, file watcher, or group. When an object is enabled, its `enabled` attribute is set to `TRUE`. By default, jobs, chains, and programs are created disabled and database destinations, external destinations, file watchers, windows, and groups are created enabled.

If a job was disabled and you enable it, the Scheduler begins to automatically run the job according to its schedule. Enabling a disabled job also resets the job `RUN_COUNT`, `FAILURE_COUNT` and `RETRY_COUNT` columns in the `*_SCHEDULER_JOBS` data dictionary views.

Validity checks are performed before enabling an object. If the check fails, the object is not enabled, and an appropriate error is returned. This procedure does not return an error if the object was already enabled.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.ENABLE (
   name              IN VARCHAR2,
   commit_semantics  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR');
```

Parameters

Table 140–54 ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	The name of the Scheduler object being enabled. Can be a comma-delimited list of names. If a job class name is specified, then all the jobs in the job class are enabled. If a group name is specified, then the group is enabled, but the enabled state of the group members is unaffected.
`commit_semantics`	The commit semantics. The following types are supported: ■ `STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR` - The procedure returns on the first error and previous successful enable operations are committed to disk. This is the default. ■ `TRANSACTIONAL` - The procedure returns on the first error and everything that happened before that error is rolled back. This type is only supported when enabling a job or a list of jobs. ■ `ABSORB_ERRORS` - The procedure tries to absorb any errors and enable the rest of the jobs. It commits all the enable operations that were successful. If errors occur, you can query the view `SCHEDULER_BATCH_ERRORS` for details. This type is only supported when enabling a job or a list of jobs.

Usage Notes

Window names must be preceded by `SYS`.

To run `ENABLE` for a window or group of type `WINDOW`, you must have the `MANAGE SCHEDULER` privilege. For a job of type `EXECUTABLE` (or for a job that points to a program of type `EXECUTABLE`), the job owner must have the `CREATE EXTERNAL JOB` system privilege before the job can be enabled or run.

To enable a file watcher, the file watcher owner must have the `EXECUTE` privilege on the designated credential.

You can use `ENABLE` with any schema except the `SYS` schema.

END_DETACHED_JOB_RUN Procedure

This procedure ends a detached job run. A detached job points to a detached program, which is a program with the `detached` attribute set to `TRUE`. A detached job run does not end until this procedure or the STOP_JOB Procedure is called.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.END_DETACHED_JOB_RUN (
   job_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   error_number      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0,
   additional_info   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–55 END_DETACHED_JOB_RUN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`job_name`	The name of the job to end. Must be a detached job that is running.
`error_number`	If zero, then the job run is logged as succeeded. If -1013, then the job run is logged as stopped. If non-zero, then the job run is logged as failed with this error number.
`additional_info`	This text is stored in the `additional_info` column of the `*_scheduler_job_run_details` views for this job run.

Usage Notes

This procedure requires that you either own the job or have `ALTER` privileges on it. You can also end any detached job run if you have the `CREATE ANY JOB` privilege.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about detached jobs.

EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING Procedure

You can define repeat intervals of jobs, windows or schedules using the Scheduler calendaring syntax. This procedure evaluates the calendar expression and tells you the next execution date and time of a job or window. This is very useful for testing the correct definition of the calendar string without actually scheduling the job or window.

This procedure can also get multiple steps of the repeat interval by passing the `next_run_date` returned by one invocation as the `return_date_after` argument of the next invocation.

See the calendaring syntax described in "Operational Notes" on page 140-6.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING (
   calendar_string    IN  VARCHAR2,
   start_date         IN  TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   return_date_after  IN  TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   next_run_date      OUT TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–56 EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`calendar_string`	The calendar expression to be evaluated. The string must be in the calendaring syntax described in "Operational Notes" on page 140-6.
`start_date`	The date and time after which the repeat interval becomes valid. It can also be used to fill in specific items that are missing from the calendar string. Can optionally be `NULL`.
`return_date_after`	The return_date_after argument helps the Scheduler determine which one of all possible matches (all valid execution dates) to return from those determined by the `start_date` and the calendar string. When a `NULL` value is passed for this argument, the Scheduler automatically fills in `systimestamp` as its value.
`next_run_date`	The first timestamp that matches the calendar string and start date that occur after the value passed in for the `return_date_after` argument.

Examples

The following code fragment can be used to determine the next five dates a job will run given a specific calendar string.

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON;
ALTER SESSION set NLS_DATE_FORMAT = 'DD-MON-YYYY HH24:MI:SS';
Session altered.

DECLARE
start_date        TIMESTAMP;
return_date_after TIMESTAMP;
next_run_date     TIMESTAMP;
BEGIN
start_date :=
  to_timestamp_tz('01-JAN-2003 10:00:00','DD-MON-YYYY HH24:MI:SS');
return_date_after := start_date;
FOR i IN 1..5 LOOP
```

```
  DBMS_SCHEDULER.EVALUATE_CALENDAR_STRING(
    'FREQ=DAILY;BYHOUR=9;BYMINUTE=30;BYDAY=MON,TUE,WED,THU,FRI',
    start_date, return_date_after, next_run_date);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('next_run_date: ' || next_run_date);
return_date_after := next_run_date;
END LOOP;
END;
/

next_run_date: 02-JAN-03 09.30.00.000000 AM
next_run_date: 03-JAN-03 09.30.00.000000 AM
next_run_date: 06-JAN-03 09.30.00.000000 AM
next_run_date: 07-JAN-03 09.30.00.000000 AM
next_run_date: 08-JAN-03 09.30.00.000000 AM

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Usage Notes

No specific Scheduler privileges are required.

EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure

This procedure forces reevaluation of the rules of a running chain to trigger any rules for which the conditions have been satisfied. The job passed as an argument must point to a chain and must be running. If the job is not running, an error is thrown. (RUN_JOB can be used to start the job.)

If any of the steps of the chain are themselves running chains, another EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN is performed on each of the nested running chains.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN (
   job_name              IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–57 EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the running job (pointing to a chain) to reevaluate the rules for

Usage Notes

Running EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN on a job requires alter privileges on the job (either as the owner, or as a user with ALTER privileges on the job or the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege).

Note: The Scheduler automatically evaluates a chain:

- At the start of the chain job
- When a chain step completes
- When an event occurs that is associated with an event step in the chain

For most chains, this is sufficient. EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN should be used only under the following circumstances:

- After manual intervention of a running chain with the ALTER_RUNNING_CHAIN procedure
- When chain rules use SQL syntax and the rule conditions contain elements that are not under the control of the Scheduler.

In these cases, EVALUATE_RUNNING_CHAIN may not be needed if you set the evaluation_interval attribute when you created the chain.

GENERATE_JOB_NAME Function

This function returns a unique name for a job. The name will be of the form `{prefix}N` where `N` is a number from a sequence. If no prefix is specified, the generated name will, by default, be `JOB$_1`, `JOB$_2`, `JOB$_3`, and so on. If `'SCOTT'` is specified as the prefix, the name will be `SCOTT1`, `SCOTT2`, and so on.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.GENERATE_JOB_NAME (
   prefix        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'JOB$_') RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 140–58 GENERATE_JOB_NAME Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
`prefix`	The prefix to use when generating the job name

Usage Notes

If the prefix is explicitly set to `NULL`, the name is just the sequence number. In order to successfully use such numeric names, they must be surrounded by double quotes throughout the `DBMS_SCHEDULER` calls. A prefix cannot be longer than 18 characters and cannot end with a digit.

Note that, even though the `GENERATE_JOB_NAME` function never returns the same job name twice, there is a small chance that the returned name matches an already existing database object.

No specific Scheduler privileges are required to use this function.

GET_AGENT_INFO Function

This function can return job information specific to an agent, such as how many are running and so on, depending on the attribute selected.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_AGENT_INFO (
   agent_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute         IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 140–59 GET_AGENT_INFO Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
agent_name	The name of an external destination where the agent is running
attribute	Possible Attributes values ■ VERSION:. Returns the agent version number. Requires the CREATE JOB system privilege. ■ UPTIME: Returns the time the agent has been up and running. Requires the CREATE JOB system privilege. ■ NUMBER_OF_RUNNING_JOBS: Returns the number of jobs that the agent is currently running. Requires the CREATE JOB system privilege. ■ TOTAL_JOBS_RUN: Returns the number of jobs run by the agent since it was started. Requires the CREATE JOB system privilege. ■ RUNNING_JOBS: Returns a comma-separated list of the names of the jobs running currently. Requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER system privilege. ■ ALL: Returns all the information the previous options return. It requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER system privilege.

Usage Notes

This function returns the same information as the schagent utility status option. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

GET_AGENT_VERSION Function

This function returns the version string of a Scheduler agent that is registered with the database and is currently running. GET_AGENT_VERSION throws an error if the agent is not registered with the database or if the agent is not currently running.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_AGENT_VERSION (
   agent_host        IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 140–60 GET_AGENT_VERSION Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
agent_host	Either the hostname and port on which the agent is running in the form hostname:port or the name of the agent as shown in the destination_name column of the ALL_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL_DESTS view which lists all Scheduler agents registered with the database.

Usage Notes

This function requires the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege.

GET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure retrieves the value of an attribute of a Scheduler object. It is overloaded to retrieve values of various types.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_ATTRIBUTE (
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   value          OUT {VARCHAR2|PLS_INTEGER|BOOLEAN|DATE|TIMESTAMP|
                       TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE|TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE|
                       INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND});

DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_ATTRIBUTE (
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   value          OUT VARCHAR2,
   value2         OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–61 GET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name of the object
attribute	The attribute being retrieved. See the SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 140-127 for tables of attribute values.
value	The existing value of the attribute
value2	The value2 argument is for an optional second value. Most attributes have only one value associated with them, but some can have two.

Usage Notes

To run GET_ATTRIBUTE for a job class, you must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege or have EXECUTE privileges on the class. For a schedule, window, or group, no privileges are necessary. Otherwise, you must be the owner of the object or have ALTER or EXECUTE privileges on that object or have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

See the SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 140-127 for tables of attribute values that you can retrieve for the various Scheduler object types.

GET_FILE Procedure

This procedure retrieves a file from the operating system file system of a specified host. The file is copied to a destination, or its contents are returned in a procedure output parameter.

You can also use this procedure to retrieve the standard output or error text for a run of an external job that has an associated credential.

This procedures differs from the equivalent UTL_FILE procedure in that it uses a credential and can retrieve files from remote hosts that have only a Scheduler agent (and not an Oracle database) installed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_FILE (
   source_file                  IN VARCHAR2,
   source_host                  IN VARCHAR2,
   credential_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   file_contents                IN OUT NOCOPY {BLOB|CLOB});

DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_FILE (
   source_file                  IN VARCHAR2,
   source_host                  IN VARCHAR2,
   credential_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_file_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_permissions      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–62 GET_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_file	Fully qualified path name of the file to retrieve from the operating system. The file name is case-sensitive and is not converted to uppercase. If the file name starts with a question mark ('?'), the question mark is replaced by the path to the Oracle home if getting a file from the local host, or to the Scheduler agent home if getting a file from a remote host. If the format of this parameter is *external_log_id*_stdout, then the stdout from the designated external job run is returned. If the format of this parameter is *external_log_id*_stderr, the error text from the designated external job run is returned. You obtain the value of *external_log_id* from the ADDITIONAL_INFO column of the *_SCHEDULER_JOB_RUN_DETAILS views. This column contains a set of name/value pairs in an indeterminate order, so you must parse this column for the external_log_id name/value pair, and then append either "_stdout" or "_stderr" to its value. The external job must have an associated credential. The credential_name parameter of GET_FILE must name the same credential that is used by the job, and the source_host parameter must be the same as the destination attribute of the job.

Table 140–62 (Cont.) GET_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_host	If the file is to be retrieved from a remote host, then this parameter must be a valid an external destination name. (An external destination is created when you register a remote Scheduler agent with the database. You can view external destination names in the views *_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL_DESTS.) If source_host is NULL or set to 'localhost', then the file is retrieved from the file system of the local host. To determine the port number of a Scheduler agent, view the schagent.conf file, which is located in the Scheduler agent home directory on the remote host.
credential_name	The name of the credential to use for accessing the file system.
file_contents	The variable into which the file contents is read.
destination_file_name	The file to which the file contents is written.
destination_directory_object	The directory object that specifies the path to the destination file, when destination_file_name is used. The caller must have the necessary privileges on the directory object.
destination_permissions	Reserved for future use

Usage Notes

The caller must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege and have EXECUTE privileges on the credential.

GET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure retrieves the value of a Scheduler attribute.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.GET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE (
   attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   value          OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–63 GET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute	The name of the attribute
value	The existing value of the attribute

Usage Notes

To run GET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE, you must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

Table 140–64 lists the Scheduler attributes that you can retrieve. For more detail on these attributes, see Table 140–94 on page 140-149 and the section "Configuring the Scheduler" in *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

Table 140–64 Scheduler Attributes Retrievable with GET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE

Scheduler Attribute	Description
current_open_window	Name of the currently open window
default_timezone	Default time zone used by the Scheduler for repeat intervals and windows
email_sender	The default e-mail address of the sender for job state e-mail notifications
email_server	The SMTP server address that the Scheduler uses to send e-mail notifications for job state events. E-mail notifications cannot be sent if this attribute is NULL.
event_expiry_time	Time in seconds before an event generated by the Scheduler and enqueued onto the Scheduler event queue expires. May be NULL.
log_history	Retention period in days for job and window logs. The range of valid values is 0 through 1000000.
max_job_slave_processes	This Scheduler attribute is not used.

OPEN_WINDOW Procedure

This procedure manually opens a window, unrelated to its schedule. The window opens and the resource plan associated with it takes effect immediately, for the duration specified or for the normal duration of the window, if no duration is given. Only an enabled window can be manually opened.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.OPEN_WINDOW (
   window_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   duration                IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
   force                   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–65 OPEN_WINDOW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
window_name	The name of the window
duration	The duration of the window. It is of type interval day to second. If it is NULL, then the window opens for the regular duration as specified in the window metadata.
force	If force is set to FALSE, then opening an already open window generates an error. If force is set to TRUE: You can open a window that is already open. The window stays open for the duration specified in the call, from the time the OPEN_WINDOW command was issued. For example: window1 was created with a duration of four hours. It has how been open for two hours. If, at this point, you reopen window1 using the OPEN_WINDOW call and do not specify a duration, then window1 stays open for four hours because it was created with that duration. If you specified a duration of 30 minutes, the window will close in 30 minutes. The Scheduler automatically closes any window that is open at that time, even if it has a higher priority. For the duration of this manually opened window, the Scheduler does not open any other scheduled windows even if they have a higher priority.

Usage Notes

Opening a window manually has no impact on regular scheduled runs of the window. The next open time of the window is not updated and is determined by the regular scheduled opening.

When a window that was manually opened closes, the rules about overlapping windows are applied to determine which other window should be opened at that time if any at all.

If there are jobs running when the window opens, the resources allocated to them might change if there is a switch in resource plan.

If a window fails to switch resource plans because the designated resource plan no longer exists or because resource plan switching by windows is disabled (for example, by using the ALTER SYSTEM statement with the force option), the failure to switch resource plans is recorded in the window log.

Opening a window requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

PURGE_LOG Procedure

By default, the Scheduler automatically purges all rows in the job log and window log that are older than 30 days. The PURGE_LOG procedure is used to purge additional rows from the job and window log.

Rows in the job log table pertaining to the steps of a chain are purged only when the entry for the main chain job is purged (either manually or automatically).

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.PURGE_LOG (
   log_history             IN PLS_INTEGER  DEFAULT 0,
   which_log               IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'JOB_AND_WINDOW_LOG',
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2     DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–66 PURGE_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
log_history	This specifies how much history (in days) to keep. The valid range is 0 - 1000000. If set to 0, no history is kept.
which_log	This specifies the log type. Valid values are: job_log, window_log, and job_and_window_log.
job_name	This specifies which job-specific entries must be purged from the jog log. This can be a comma-delimited list of job names and job classes. Whenever job_name has a value other than NULL, the which_log argument implicitly includes the job log.

Usage Notes

This procedure requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

Examples

The following completely purges all rows from both the job log and the window log:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.PURGE_LOG();
```

The following purges all rows from the window log that are older than 5 days:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.PURGE_LOG(5, 'window_log');
```

The following purges all rows from the window log that are older than 1 day and all rows from the job log that are related to jobs in jobclass1 and older than 1 day:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.PURGE_LOG(1, 'job_and_window_log', 'sys.jobclass1');
```

PUT_FILE Procedure

This procedure saves a file to the operating system file system of a specified remote host or of the local computer. It differs from the equivalent UTL_FILE procedure in that it uses a credential and can save files to a remote host that has only a Scheduler agent (and not an Oracle Database) installed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.PUT_FILE (
   destination_file         IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_host         IN VARCHAR2,
   credential_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   file_contents            IN {BLOB|CLOB},
   destination_permissions  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_SCHEDULER.PUT_FILE (
   destination_file         IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_host         IN VARCHAR2,
   credential_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   source_file_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   source_directory_object  IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_permissions  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–67 PUT_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_file	Fully qualified path name of the file to save to the operating system file system. The file name is case-sensitive. If the file name starts with a question mark ('?'), the question mark is replaced by the path to the Oracle home if saving to the local host, or to the Scheduler agent home if saving to a remote host.
destination_host	If NULL or set to 'localhost', the file is saved to the file system of the local computer. To save to a remote host, this parameter must be a valid external destination name. (An external destination is created when you register a remote Scheduler agent with the database. You can view external destination names in the views *_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL_DESTS.)
credential_name	The name of the credential to use for accessing the destination file system.
file_contents	The variable from which the file contents is read.
source_file_name	The file from which the file contents is written
source_directory_object	The directory object that specifies the path to the source file, when source_file_name is used. The caller must have the necessary privileges on the directory object.
destination_permissions	Reserved for future use

Usage Notes

The caller must have the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB system privilege and have EXECUTE privileges on the credential.

REMOVE_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure

This procedure unsubscribes a user from the Scheduler event queue SYS.SCHEDULER$_EVENT_QUEUE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.REMOVE_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER (
   subscriber_name         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–68 REMOVE_EVENT_QUEUE_SUBSCRIBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
subscriber_name	Name of the Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing (AQ) agent to remove the subscription from. If NULL, the user name of the calling user is used.

Usage Notes

After the agent is unsubscribed, it is deleted. If the agent does not exist or is not currently subscribed to the Scheduler event queue, an error is raised.

REMOVE_GROUP_MEMBER Procedure

This procedure removes one or more members from an existing group.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.REMOVE_GROUP_MEMBER (
   group_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   member                   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–69 REMOVE_GROUP_MEMBER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_name	The name of the group.
member_name	The name of the member to remove from group. Comma-separated list of members to remove. An error is returned if any of the members is not part of the group. A group of the same type can be named as a member. The Scheduler immediately expands the included group name into its list of members. If the member is a destination, any job instances that run on this destination are removed from the *_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS views.

Usage Notes

The following users may remove members from a group:

- The group owner
- A user that has been granted the ALTER object privilege on the group
- A user with the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege

You must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege to remove a member from a group of type WINDOW.

See Also: "CREATE_GROUP Procedure" on page 140-53

REMOVE_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure

This procedure removes e-mail notifications for a job. You can remove all e-mail notifications or remove notifications only for specified recipients or specified events.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.REMOVE_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION (
    job_name             IN VARCHAR2,
    recipients           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    events               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–70 ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Name of the job to remove e-mail notifications for. Cannot be NULL.
recipients	E-mail address to remove e-mail notification for. Comma-separated list of e-mail addresses.
events	Job state event to remove e-mail notification for. Comma-separate list of job state events.

Usage Notes

When you specify multiple recipients and multiple events, the notification for each specified event is removed for each specified recipient. The procedure ignores any recipients or events that are specified but that were not previously added.

If recipients is NULL, e-mail notifications for the specified events are removed for all existing recipients. If events is NULL, notifications for all events are removed for the specified recipients. If both recipients and events are NULL, all e-mail notifications are removed for the job.

For example, if recipients is 'jsmith@example.com,rjones@example.com' and events is 'JOB_FAILED,JOB_BROKEN', then notifications for both the JOB_FAILED and JOB_BROKEN events are removed for both jsmith and rjones. If recipients is NULL, then notifications for both the JOB_FAILED and JOB_BROKEN events are removed for jsmith, rjones, and any other previously defined recipients for these events.

To call this procedure, you must be the job owner or a user with the CREATE ANY JOB system privilege or ALTER object privilege on the job.

See Also: "ADD_JOB_EMAIL_NOTIFICATION Procedure" on page 140-36

RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure

This procedure resets (clears) the value previously set to an argument for a job.

RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE is overloaded.

Syntax

Clears a previously set job argument value by argument position:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER);
```

Clears a previously set job argument value by argument name:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_name           IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–71 RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the job being altered
argument_position	The position of the program argument being reset
argument_name	The name of the program argument being reset

Usage Notes

If the corresponding program argument has no default value, the job is disabled. Resetting a program argument of a job belonging to another user requires ALTER privileges on that job. Arguments can be specified by position or by name.

RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE requires that you be the owner of the job or have ALTER privileges on that job. You can also reset a job argument value if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

RESET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE only supports arguments of SQL type. Therefore, argument values that are not of SQL type, such as booleans, are not supported as program or job arguments.

RUN_CHAIN Procedure

This procedure immediately runs a chain or part of a chain by creating a run-once job with the job name given. If no `job_name` is given, one is generated of the form `RUN_CHAIN$_chainnameN`, where *chainname* is the first 8 characters of the chain name and *N* is an integer.If a list of start steps is given, only those steps are started when the chain begins running. Steps not in the list that would normally have started are skipped and paused (so that they or the steps after them do not run). If `start_steps` is `NULL`, then the chain starts normally—that is, it performs an initial evaluation to see which steps to start running).

If a list of initial step states is given, the newly created chain job sets every listed step to the state specified for that step before evaluating the chain rules to see which steps to start. (Steps in the list are not started.)

Syntax

Runs a chain, with a list of start steps.

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.RUN_CHAIN (
   chain_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   start_steps               IN VARCHAR2,
   job_name                  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Runs a chain, with a list of initial step states.

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.RUN_CHAIN (
   chain_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   step_state_list          IN SYS.SCHEDULER$_STEP_TYPE_LIST,
   job_name                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–72 RUN_CHAIN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`chain_name`	The name of the chain to run
`job_name`	The name of the job to create to run the chain
`start_steps`	Comma-separated list of the steps to start when the chain starts running
`step_state_list`	List of chain steps with an initial state (`SUCCEEDED` or `FAILED`) to set for each.
	Set the attributes of `sys.scheduler$_step_type` as follows:
	`step_name` The name of the step`step_type` '`SUCCEEDED`' or '`FAILED` *`error_number`*'
	where *error_number* is a positive or negative integer.

Usage Notes

Running a chain requires `CREATE JOB` if the job is being created in the user's schema, or `CREATE ANY JOB` otherwise. In addition, the owner of the job being created needs execute privileges on the chain (as the owner of the chain, or as a user with the `EXECUTE` privilege on the chain or the `EXECUTE ANY PROGRAM` system privilege).

Examples

The following example illustrates how to start a chain in the middle by providing the initial state of some chain steps.

```
declare
  initial_step_states sys.scheduler$_step_type_list;
begin
  initial_step_states := sys.scheduler$_step_type_list(
    sys.scheduler$_step_type('step1', 'SUCCEEDED'),
    sys.scheduler$_step_type('step2', 'FAILED 27486'),
    sys.scheduler$_step_type('step3', 'SUCCEEDED'),
    sys.scheduler$_step_type('step5', 'SUCCEEDED'));
  dbms_scheduler.run_chain('my_chain', initial_step_states);
end;
/
```

RUN_JOB Procedure

This procedure runs a job immediately.

If a job is enabled, the Scheduler runs it automatically. It is not necessary to call RUN_JOB to run a job according to its schedule. Use RUN_JOB to run a job outside of its normal schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.RUN_JOB (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   use_current_session     IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 140–73 RUN_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	A job name or a comma-separate list of entries, where each is the name of an existing job, optionally preceded by a schema name and dot separator. If you specify a multiple-destination job, the job runs on all destinations. In this case, the use_current_session argument must be FALSE.
use_current_session	This specifies whether or not the job run should occur in the same session that the procedure was invoked from. The job always runs as the job owner, in the job owner's schema, unless it has credential specified, then the job runs using the user named in the credential. When use_current_session is set to TRUE: ■ You can test a job and see any possible errors on the command line. ■ state, run_count, last_start_date, last_run_duration, and failure_count of *_scheduler_jobs are not updated. ■ RUN_JOB can be run in parallel with a regularly scheduled job run. When use_current_session is set to FALSE: ■ You need to check the job log to find error information. ■ All relevant fields in *_scheduler_jobs are updated. ■ RUN_JOB fails if a regularly scheduled job is running. For jobs that have a specified destination or destination group, or point to chains or programs with the detached attribute set to TRUE, use_current_session must be FALSE.

Usage Notes

Jobs do not have to be enabled. If a job is disabled, the following validity checks are performed before running it:

- The job points to a valid job class.
- The job owner has EXECUTE privileges on the job class.
- If a program or chain is referenced, the program/chain exists.

- If a program or chain is referenced, the job owner has privileges to execute the program/chain.
- All argument values have been set (or have defaults).
- The job owner has the CREATE EXTERNAL JOB privilege if this is an external job.

A TRUE value for use_current_session is not permitted for the following types of jobs:

- Jobs that specify a destination or destination group in the destination_name attribute
- Jobs that point to chains (chain jobs)
- Jobs that make use of detached programs (detached jobs).

When use_current_session is TRUE, the call to RUN_JOB blocks until the job completes. Any errors that occur during the execution of the job are returned as errors to the RUN_JOB procedure.

Using RUN_JOB with use_current_session=TRUE does not update the job state and the job will not appear in *_SCHEDULER_RUNNING_JOBS views.

When use_current_session is FALSE, RUN_JOB returns immediately and the job is picked up by the job coordinator and passed on to a job slave for execution. The Scheduler views and logs must be queried for the outcome of the job.

Multiple user sessions can use RUN_JOB in their sessions simultaneously when use_current_session is set to TRUE.

RUN_JOB requires that you own the job or have ALTER privileges on that job. You can also run a job if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

Example

The following is an example of using RUN_JOB.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SCHEDULER.RUN_JOB(
    JOB_NAME            => 'EODJOB, DSS.ETLJOB',
    USE_CURRENT_SESSION => FALSE);
END;
```

SET_AGENT_REGISTRATION_PASS Procedure

This procedure sets the agent registration password for a database. A Scheduler agent must register with the database before the database can submit jobs to the agent. The agent must provide this password when registering.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_AGENT_REGISTRATION_PASS (
   registration_password   IN VARCHAR2,
   expiration_date         IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   max_uses                IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–74 SET_AGENT_REGISTRATION_PASS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
registration_password	This is the password that remote agents must specify in order to successfully register with the database. If this is NULL, then no agents will be able to register with the database.
expiration_date	If this is set to a non-NULL value, then the registration_password is not valid after this date. After this date, no agents can register with the database. This cannot be set to a date in the past.
max_uses	This is the maximum number of successful registrations that can be performed with this password. After the number of successful registrations has been performed with this password, then no agents can register with the database. This cannot be set to 0 or a negative value. If this is set to NULL, then there will be no limit on the number of successful registrations.

Usage Notes

To prevent abuse, this password can be set to expire after a given date or a maximum number of successful registrations. This procedure will overwrite any password already set. This requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER system privilege.

By default, max_uses is set to NULL, which means that there is no limit to the number of successful registrations.

Oracle recommends that an agent registration password be reset after every agent registration or every known set of agent registrations. Furthermore, Oracle recommends that this password be set to NULL if no new agents are being registered.

SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure modifies an attribute of a Scheduler object. It is overloaded to accept values of various types. To set an attribute to NULL, use the SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL procedure. The attributes that can be set depend on the object being altered. All object attributes can be changed, except the object name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_ATTRIBUTE (
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN {BOOLEAN|DATE|TIMESTAMP|
                      TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE|TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE|
                      INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND});

DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_ATTRIBUTE (
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN VARCHAR2,
   value2         IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 140–75 SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name of the object.
attribute	See Table 140–77 through Table 140–87.
value	The new value being set for the attribute. This cannot be NULL. To set an attribute value to NULL, use the SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL procedure.
value2	The value2 argument is for an optional second value. Most attributes have only one value associated with them, but some can have two.

Table 140–76 is a directory of Scheduler object types and tables of attributes for the object types.

These object types can be viewed with Scheduler Data Dictionary Views, listed in *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

Table 140–76 Attribute Tables for Scheduler Object Types

Scheduler Object Type	Table of Attributes
Job	Table 140–77 on page 140-129
Program	Table 140–79 on page 140-136
Schedule	Table 140–80 on page 140-136
File Watcher	Table 140–81 on page 140-136
Job Class	Table 140–82 on page 140-137
Window	Table 140–83 on page 140-138
Chain	Table 140–84 on page 140-138
Database Destination	Table 140–85 on page 140-139

Table 140–76 (Cont.) Attribute Tables for Scheduler Object Types

Scheduler Object Type	Table of Attributes
External Destination	Table 140–86 on page 140-140
Group	Table 140–87 on page 140-140
Credential	Table 140–88 on page 140-140

Usage Notes

If an object is altered and it was in the enabled state, the Scheduler first disables it, then makes the change and reenables it. If any errors are encountered during the enable process, the object is not reenabled and an error is generated.

If an object is altered and it was in the disabled state, it remains disabled after it is altered.

To run `SET_ATTRIBUTE` for a window, a group of type `WINDOW`, or job class, you must have the `MANAGE SCHEDULER` privilege. Otherwise, you must be the owner of the object being altered or have `ALTER` privileges on that object or have the `CREATE ANY JOB` privilege.

Job

If there is a running instance of the job when the `SET_ATTRIBUTE` call is made, it is not affected by the call. The change is only affects future runs of the job.

If any of the schedule attributes of a job are altered while the job is running, the time of the next job run is scheduled using the new schedule attributes. Schedule attributes of a job include `schedule_name`, `start_date`, `end_date`, and `repeat_interval`.

If any of the program attributes of a job are altered while the job is running, the new program attributes take effect the next time the job runs. Program attributes of a job include `program_name`, `job_action`, `job_type`, and `number_of_arguments`.

If any job argument values are altered while the job is running, the new values take effect the next time the job runs.

Granting the `ALTER` privilege on a job lets a user alter all attributes of that job except its program attributes (`program_name`, `job_type`, `job_action`, `program_action`, and `number_of_arguments`) and does not allow a user to use a PL/SQL expression to specify the schedule for a job.

Oracle recommends that you not alter a job that was automatically created for you by the database. Jobs that were created by the database have the column `SYSTEM` set to `TRUE` in job views.

Program

If any currently running jobs use the program that was altered, they continue to run with the program definition prior to the alter. The job runs with the new program definition the next time the job executes.

Schedule

If a schedule is altered, the change does not affect running jobs and open windows that use this schedule. The change only goes into effect the next time the jobs runs or the window opens.

File Watcher

If a file watcher is altered, any currently running event-based jobs started by the file arrival event are not affected. On the local system, the new file watcher attributes take effect the next time that the file watcher checks for the arrival of the file (every ten minutes by default). On remote systems, there may be an additional delay before the new file watcher attributes take effect.

Job Class

With the exception of the default job class, all job classes can be altered. To alter a job class, you must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

When a job class is altered, running jobs that belong to the class are not affected. The change only takes effect for jobs that have not started running yet.

Window

When a window is altered, it does not affect an active window. The changes only take effect the next time the window opens.

If there is no current resource plan, when a window with a designated resource plan opens, the Resource Manager activates with that plan.

Job Attribute Values

Table 140–77 lists attribute values for jobs.

> **Note:** See the CREATE_JOB procedure and the CREATE_JOBS procedure for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–77 Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
allow_runs_in_restricted_mode	If TRUE, the job is permitted to run when the database is in restricted mode, provided that the job owner is permitted to log in during this mode. FALSE by default.
auto_drop	This attribute, if TRUE, causes a job to be automatically dropped after it completes or is automatically disabled. A job is considered completed if: ■ Its end date (or the end date of the schedule) has passed. ■ It has run max_runs number of times. max_runs must be set with SET_ATTRIBUTE. ■ It is not a repeating job and has run once. A job is automatically disabled when it has failed max_failures times. max_failures is also set with SET_ATTRIBUTE. If this attribute is set to FALSE, the jobs are not dropped and their metadata is kept until the job is explicitly dropped with the DROP_JOB procedure. By default, jobs are created with auto_drop set to TRUE.
comments	An optional comment.
connect_credential_name	This attribute may be set to point to a database credential. For a SQL*Plus or backup script job, the credential connects to the database before running the script. For other job types, it is ignored. The job owner must have execute privileges on the credential, otherwise the job fails. Using a connect_credential_name is recommended since it allows the password to be stored securely in a credential in the database rather than in plain view in the job, program action, or script.

Table 140–77 (Cont.) Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
credential_name	This attribute specifies the name of the credential object (credential) to use for a remote database job, a remote external job, a local external job, or an event-based job that processes a file arrival event. For local external jobs only, if this attribute is NULL (the default), then a preferred (default) credential is selected. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about preferred credentials for local external jobs. See also: "CREATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure" on page 39-7
database_role	This attribute applies when the database participates in an Oracle Data Guard environment. If this attribute is set to 'PRIMARY', the job runs only when the database is in the role of the primary database. If set to 'LOGICAL STANDBY', the job runs only when the database is in the role of a logical standby. The default is 'PRIMARY' when the database is the primary database, and 'LOGICAL STANDBY' when the database is a logical standby. Note: If you want a job to run for all database roles on a particular host, you must create two copies of the job on that host: one with a database_role of 'PRIMARY', and the other with a database_role of 'LOGICAL STANDBY'.
destination	***** Deprecated in Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2. Use `destination_name` instead**. This attribute specifies a host on which to run a remote external job. It must be set to the host name or IP address of the destination host. It can optionally be followed by a port number, in the following format: *hostname*:*port* This attribute is set to NULL by default.
destination_name	The database destination or external destination for the job. Use for remote database jobs and remote external jobs only. For jobs running on the local database or for local external jobs (executables), must be NULL. See Table 140–26 on page 140-57 for details about this attribute.
end_date	Specifies the date and time after which the job expires and is no longer run. After the end_date, if is TRUE, the job is dropped. If auto_drop is FALSE, the job is disabled and the STATE of the job is set to COMPLETED. If no value for end_date is specified, the job repeats forever unless max_runs or max_failures is set, in which case the job stops when either value is reached. The value for end_date must be after the value for start_date. If it is not, an error is generated when the job is enabled.
event_spec	This attribute takes two values: the value argument specifies the event condition and the value2 argument specifies the queue specification. For more details, see the descriptions for the event_condition and queue_spec arguments in the "CREATE_JOB Procedure" on page 140-55.

Table 140–77 (Cont.) Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
follow_default_timezone	If TRUE and if the job start_date is null, then when the default_timezone scheduler attribute is changed, the Scheduler recomputes the next run date and time for this job so that it is in accordance with the new time zone. For example, if the job was set to run at 02:00 in the previous time zone, it will run at 02:00 in the new time zone. If the job start_date is not null, then the time zone for the run date and time for the job is always specified by the time zone of the start_date. If FALSE, the next start date and time for the job is not recomputed when the default_timezone scheduler attribute is changed. In this case, if the old time zone is three hours earlier than the new time zone, then a job scheduled to run at 02:00 in the old time zone runs at 05:00 in the new time zone. Summer and winter transitions do not change the default time zone name.
instance_id	Valid only in an Oracle Real Application Clusters environment. Indicates the instance on which the job is to be run.
instance_stickiness	This attribute should only be used for a database running in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment. By default, it is set to TRUE. If you set instance_stickiness to TRUE, jobs start running on the instance with the lightest load and the Scheduler thereafter attempts to run on the instance that it last ran on. If that instance is either down or so overloaded that it does not start new jobs for a significant period of time, another instance runs the job. If the interval between runs is large, instance_stickiness is ignored and the job is handled as if it were a non-sticky job. If instance_stickiness is set to FALSE, each instance of the job runs on the first instance available. For environments other than Oracle RAC, this attribute is not useful because there is only one instance.
job_action	The action that the job performs, depending on the job_type attribute. For example, if job_type is 'STORED_PROCEDURE', job_action contains the name of the stored procedure.
job_class	The class this job is associated with.
job_priority	This attribute specifies the priority of this job relative to other jobs in the same class as this job. If multiple jobs within a class are scheduled to be executed at the same time, the job priority determines the order in which jobs from that class are picked up for execution by the job coordinator. It can be a value from 1 through 5, with 1 being the first to be picked up for job execution. If no job priority is specified when creating a job, the default priority of 3 is assigned to it.
job_type	The type of this job.Valid values are: 'PLSQL_BLOCK', 'STORED_PROCEDURE', 'EXECUTABLE', CHAIN', 'EXTERNAL_SCRIPT', 'SQL_SCRIPT', and 'BACKUP_SCRIPT'. If this is set, program_name must be NULL.
job_weight	*** Deprecated in Oracle Database 11*g*R2. Do not change the value of this attribute from the default, which is 1. Weight of the job for parallel execution.

Table 140–77 (Cont.) Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
logging_level	This attribute specifies how much information is logged. The possible options are: DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_OFF (The default) No logging is performed for this job. However, the logging level of the job class takes precedence and job logging may occur. DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_FAILED_RUNS The Scheduler logs only jobs that failed, with the reason for failure. If the job class has a higher logging level, then the higher logging level takes precedence. DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_RUNS The Scheduler writes detailed information to the job log for all runs of each job in this class. If the job class has a higher logging level, then the higher logging level takes precedence. DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_FULL In addition to recording every run of a job, the Scheduler records all operations performed on the job, including create, enable, disable, alter (with SET_ATTRIBUTE), stop, and so on.
max_failures	This attribute specifies the number of times a job can fail on consecutive scheduled runs before it is automatically disabled. Once a job is disabled, it is no longer executed and its STATE is set to BROKEN in the *_SCHEDULER_JOB views. max_failures can be an integer between 1 to 1,000,000. By default, it is set to NULL, which indicates that new instances of the job are started regardless of how many previous instances have failed.
max_run_duration	This attribute specifies the maximum amount of time that the job should be allowed to run. Its datatype is INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND. If this attribute is set to a non-zero and non-NULL value, and job duration exceeds this value, the Scheduler raises an event of type JOB_OVER_MAX_DUR. It is then up to your event handler to decide whether or not to allow the job to continue.
max_runs	This attribute specifies the maximum number of consecutive scheduled runs of the job. Once max_runs is reached, the job is disabled and its state is changed to COMPLETED. max_runs can be an integer between 1 and 1,000,000. By default, it is set to NULL, which means that it repeats forever or until end_date or max_failures is reached.
number_of_arguments	The number of arguments if the program is inlined. If this is set, program_name should be NULL.

Table 140–77 (Cont.) Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
parallel_instances	This is a boolean attribute that can be set only for event-based jobs. If FALSE (the default), then if an event is raised and the event-based job that processes that event is already running, the new event is ignored. If TRUE, then an instance of the job is started for every instance of the event, and each job instance is a lightweight job so multiple instances of the same event-based job can run in parallel. Each lightweight job takes its attributes (such as action, maximum run duration, and so on) from the definition of the event-based job (its *parent job*). After the lightweight job completes, it is dropped. There is no explicit limit to the number of lightweight jobs that can run simultaneously to process multiple instances of the event. However, limitations may be imposed by available system resources. The lightweight jobs are not visible in any of the *_SCHEDULER_JOBS views. However, they are visible in the *_SCHEDULER_RUNNING_JOBS views. The name of each lightweight job is the same as that of the parent job, and a subname is automatically generated to distinguish each lightweight job from its parent and from its siblings.
program_name	The name of a program object to use with this job. If this is set, job_action, job_type and number_of_arguments should be NULL.
raise_events	This attribute tells the Scheduler at what stages of the job execution to raise events. It is a bit vector in which zero or more of the following bits can be set. Each bit has a package constant corresponding to it. ■ job_started CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 1 ■ job_succeeded CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 2 ■ job_failed CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=4 ■ job_broken CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=8 ■ job_completed CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=16 ■ job_stopped CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=32 ■ job_sch_lim_reached CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=64 ■ job_disabled CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=128 ■ job_chain_stalled CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER :=256 ■ job_all_events CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 511 ■ job_run_completed CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := job_succeeded + job_failed + job_stopped Table 140–78 describes these event types in detail.
repeat_interval	Either a PL/SQL function returning the next date and time on which to run, or calendaring syntax expression. If this is set, schedule_name should be NULL. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for more information.

Table 140–77 (Cont.) Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
restartable	This attribute specifies whether or not a job can be restarted in case of failure. By default, jobs are not restartable and this attribute is set to FALSE. Setting this to TRUE means that if a job fails while running, it is restarted from the beginning point of the job. In the case of a chain job, if this attribute is TRUE, the chain is restarted from the beginning after an application failure. If this attribute is FALSE, or if there has been a database failure, the chain is restarted at the last running step. The restart_on_recovery attribute of that step then determines if the step is restarted or marked as stopped. (If marked as stopped, the chain evaluates rules and continues.) Note that setting this attribute to TRUE might lead to data inconsistencies in some situations, for example, if data is committed within a job. Retries on errors are not counted as regular runs. The run count or failure count is not incremented until the job succeeds or has failed all its six retries. The restartable attribute is used by the Scheduler to determine whether to retry the job not only on regular application errors, but after a database malfunction as well. The Scheduler retries the job a maximum of six times. The first time, it waits for one second and multiplies this wait time with a factor of 10 each time thereafter. Both the run count and failure count are incremented by 1 if the job has failed all its six retries. If the job immediately succeeds, or it succeeds on one of its retries, run count is incremented by 1. The Scheduler stops retrying a job when: ■ One of the retries succeeds. ■ All of its six retries have failed. ■ The next retry would occur after the next regularly scheduled run of the job. The Scheduler no longer retries the job if the next scheduled retry is past the next regularly scheduled run for repeating jobs.
schedule_limit	In heavily loaded systems, jobs are not always started at their scheduled time. This attribute enables you to have the Scheduler not start a job at all if the delay in starting the job is larger than the interval specified. It can be a value of 1 minute to 99 days. For example, if a job was supposed to start at noon and the schedule limit is set to 60 minutes, the job will not be run if it has not started to run by 1:00 p.m. If schedule_limit is not specified, the job is executed at some later date as soon as there are resources available to run it. By default, this attribute is set to null, which indicates that the job can be run at any time after its scheduled time. A scheduled job run that is skipped because of this attribute does not count against the number of runs and failures of the job. An entry in the job log reflects the skipped run.
schedule_name	The name of a schedule, window, or group of type WINDOW to use as the schedule for this job. If this is set, end_date, start_date and repeat_interval should all be NULL.
start_date	The original date and time on which this job started or is scheduled to start. If this is set, schedule_name should be NULL.

Table 140–77 (Cont.) Job Attribute Values

Name	Description
stop_on_window_close	This attribute only applies if the schedule of a job is a window or a window group. Setting this attribute to TRUE implies that the job should stop once the associated window is closed. The job is stopped using the stop_job procedure with force set to FALSE. By default, stop_on_window_close is set to FALSE. Therefore, if you do not set this attribute, the job continues after the window closes. Note that, although the job is allowed to continue, its resource allocation will probably change because closing a window generally also implies a change in resource plans.
store_output	This is a boolean attribute. If set to TRUE, then for job runs that are logged, all job output and error messages are stored in the *_JOB_RUN_DETAILS views. If set to FALSE, then the output and messages are not stored. For new jobs, this is set, by default, to TRUE.

The following event types are valid values for the raise_events attribute in Table 140–77, " Job Attribute Values".

Table 140–78 Event Types Raised by the Scheduler

Event Type	Description
job_all_events	Not an event, but a constant that provides an easy way for you to enable all events
job_broken	The job has been disabled and has changed to the BROKEN state because it exceeded the number of failures defined by the max_failures job attribute
job_chain_stalled	A job running a chain is in the CHAIN_STALLED state. A running chain becomes stalled if there are no steps running or scheduled to run and the chain evaluation_interval is set to NULL. No progress is made in the chain unless there is manual intervention.
job_completed	The job completed because it reached its max_runs or end_date
job_disabled	The job was disabled by the Scheduler or by a call to SET_ATTRIBUTE
job_failed	The job failed, either due to an error or an abnormal termination.
job_over_max_dur	The job exceeded the maximum run duration specified by its max_run_duration attribute. (Note: you do not need to enable this event with the raise_events job attribute; it is always enabled.)
job_run_completed	A job run either failed, succeeded, or was stopped
job_sch_lim_reached	The schedule limit of the job was reached. The job was not started because the delay in starting the job exceeded the value of the schedule_limit job attribute.
job_started	The job started
job_stopped	The job was stopped by a call to STOP_JOB
job_succeeded	The job completed successfully

Program Attribute Values

Table 140–79 lists program attribute values.

Note: See the "CREATE_PROGRAM Procedure" on page 140-67 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–79 Program Attribute Values

Name	Description
comments	An optional comment. This can describe what the program does or give usage details.
detached	If TRUE, the program is a detached program. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about detached jobs and detached programs.
number_of_arguments	The number of arguments required by the stored procedure or other executable that the program invokes
program_action	The action that the program performs, indicated by the program_type attribute. For example, if program_type is 'STORED_PROCEDURE', program_action contains the name of the stored procedure.
program_type	The type of program. This must be one of these supported program types: 'PLSQL_BLOCK', 'STORED_PROCEDURE', and 'EXECUTABLE'.

Schedule Attribute Values

Table 140–80 lists schedule attribute values.

Note: See "CREATE_SCHEDULE Procedure" on page 140-71 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–80 Schedule Attribute Values

Name	Description
comments	An optional comment.
end_date	The cutoff date and time after which the schedule does not specify any dates.
event_spec	This attribute takes two values: the value argument should contain the event condition and the value2 argument should contain the queue specification. For more details, see the descriptions for the event_condition and queue_spec arguments to the "CREATE_JOB Procedure" on page 140-55.
repeat_interval	An attribute specifying how often the schedule should repeat, using the calendaring syntax. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for more information.
start_date	The start or reference date and time used by the calendaring syntax.

File Watcher Attribute Values

Table 140–81 lists file watcher attribute values.

Table 140–81 File Watcher Attribute Values

Parameter	Description
destination	Remote host name or IP address where the file is expected to arrive. If NULL, destination is the local host.
directory_path	Directory in which the file is expected to arrive. The single wildcard '?' at the beginning of the path denotes the Oracle home path. For example, '?/rdbms/log' denotes the rdbms/log subdirectory of the Oracle home directory.

Table 140–81 (Cont.) File Watcher Attribute Values

Parameter	Description
file_name	Name of the file being looked for. Two wildcards are permitted anywhere in the file name: '?' denotes any single character, and '*' denotes zero or more characters. This attribute cannot be NULL.
credential_name	Name of a valid credential object. The file watcher uses the credential to authenticate itself with the host operating system to access the watched-for file. The file watcher owner must have the EXECUTE privilege on the credential. Cannot be NULL.
min_file_size	Minimum file size in bytes before the file watcher considers the file found. Default is 0.
steady_state_ duration	Minimum time interval that the file must remain unchanged before the file watcher considers the file found. If NULL, an internal value is used. The lower limit for this attribute is 10 seconds.
comments	Optional comment.

Job Class Attribute Values

Table 140–82 lists job class attribute values.

> **Note:** See the "CREATE_JOB_CLASS Procedure" on page 140-64 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–82 Job Class Attribute Values

Name	Description
comments	An optional comment about the class.
log_history	This attribute controls the number of days that job log entries for jobs in this class are retained. It helps prevent the job log from growing indiscriminately. The range of valid values is 0 through 1000000. If set to 0, no history is kept. If NULL, retention days are set by the log_history Scheduler attribute (set with SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE).
logging_level	This attribute specifies how much information is logged. The valid values are: ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_OFF No logging is performed for any jobs in this class. ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_FAILED_RUNS The Scheduler logs only jobs in the class that failed, with the reason for failure. ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_RUNS The Scheduler writes detailed information to the job log for all runs of each job in this class. This is the default. ■ DBMS_SCHEDULER.LOGGING_FULL The Scheduler records all operations performed on all jobs in this class, in addition to recording every run of a job. Every time a job is created, enabled, disabled, altered (with SET_ATTRIBUTE), stopped, and so on, an entry is recorded in the log.
resource_ consumer_group	The resource consumer group that a class is associated with. All jobs in the class run under this resource consumer group. See *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for a description of resource consumer groups and the Database Resource Manager.

Table 140–82 (Cont.) Job Class Attribute Values

Name	Description
service	The database service that the jobs in the job class have affinity to. If both the resource_consumer_group and service attributes are set for a job class, and if the service is mapped to a resource consumer group, the resource_consumer_group attribute takes precedence.

Window Attribute Values

Table 140–83 lists window attribute values.

> **Note:** See the "CREATE_WINDOW Procedure" on page 140-72 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–83 Window Attribute Values

Name	Description
comments	An optional comment about the window.
duration	The duration of the window.
end_date	The date after which the window no longer opens. If this is set, schedule_name must be NULL.
repeat_interval	An attribute specifying how often the schedule should repeat, using the calendaring syntax. PL/SQL date functions are not allowed. If this is set, schedule_name must be NULL. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for more information.
resource_plan	The resource plan to be associated with a window. When the window opens, the system switches to this resource plan. When the window closes, the original resource plan is restored. If a resource plan has been made active with the force option, no resource plan switch occurs. Only one resource plan can be associated with a window. It may be NULL or the empty string (""). When it is NULL, the resource plan that is in effect when the window opens stays in effect for the duration of the window. When it is the empty string, the resource manager is disabled for the duration of the window.
schedule_name	The name of a schedule to use with this window. If this is set, start_date, end_date, and repeat_interval must all be NULL.
start_date	The next date and time on which this window is scheduled to open. If this is set, schedule_name must be NULL.
window_priority	The priority of the window. Must be either 'LOW' (default) or 'HIGH'.

Chain Attribute Values

Table 140–84 lists chain attribute values.

> **Note:** See the "CREATE_CHAIN Procedure" on page 140-45 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–84 Chain Attribute Values

Name	Description
comments	An optional comment describing the purpose of the chain.

Table 140–84 (Cont.) Chain Attribute Values

Name	Description
evaluation_interval	If not NULL, provides an additional evaluation of the chain at this interval, as well as at normal evaluation times (when the job starts, when a step completes, or when an event that is associated with an event step arrives) This attribute should only to be used when chain rules use SQL syntax and the rule conditions contain elements that are not under the control of the Scheduler, because the extra interval is CPU intensive. For most chains, the normal evaluation times are sufficient.
rule_set_name	In the normal case, no rule set should be passed in. The Scheduler automatically creates a rule set and associated empty evaluation context. You then use DEFINE_CHAIN_RULE to add rules and DROP_CHAIN_RULE to remove them. Advanced users can create a rule set that describes their chain dependencies and pass it in here. This allows greater flexibility in defining rules. For example, conditions can refer to external variables, and tables can be exposed through the evaluation context. If you pass in a rule set, you must ensure that it is in the format of a chain rule set. (For example, all steps must be listed as variables in the evaluation context). If no rule set is passed in, the rule set created is of the form SCHED_RULESET${N} and the evaluation context created is of the form SCHED_EVCTX${N} See *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information on rules and rule sets.

Database Destination Attribute Values

Table 140–85 lists database destination attribute values.

> **Note:** See the "CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION Procedure" on page 140-48 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–85 Database Destination Attribute Values

Name	Description
agent	The name of the external destination (also known as agent destination) that is used to connect to the remote database. You can obtain valid external destination names from the view ALL_SCHEDULER_EXTERNAL_DESTS.
connect_info	The TNS connect descriptor that identifies the remote database to connect to, or the net service name (alias) in tnsnames.ora that resolves to the connect descriptor. Note: This corresponds to the tns_name argument of CREATE_DATABASE_DESTINATION.
enabled	If TRUE, the database destination is enabled.
comments	An optional comment about the database destination.

External Destination Attribute Values

Table 140–86 lists external destination attribute values.

> **Note:** External destinations are created only implicitly by registering a remote Scheduler agent with the local database.

Table 140–86 External Destination Attribute Values

Name	Description
hostname	(GET_ATTRIBUTE only) The fully qualified host name (including domain) or IP address of the computer on which the Scheduler agent resides.
port	(GET_ATTRIBUTE only) The TCP port number on which the agent listens.
ip_address	(GET_ATTRIBUTE only) The IP address of the host on which the agent resides.
enabled	If TRUE, the external destination is enabled.
comments	An optional comment about the external destination.

Group Attribute Values

Table 140–87 lists group attribute values.

Note: See the "CREATE_GROUP Procedure" on page 140-53 for more complete descriptions of the attributes in this table.

Table 140–87 Group Attribute Values

Name	Description
group_type	(GET_ATTRIBUTE only) The group type (either WINDOW, DB_DEST, or EXTERNAL_DEST).
member_name	Comma-separated list of members. Replaces the existing list of members. To add one or more members to the existing list, use ADD_GROUP_MEMBER. Note: this attribute corresponds to the member argument of CREATE_GROUP.
enabled	If TRUE, the group is enabled.
comments	An optional comment about the group.
number_of_members	(GET_ATTRIBUTE only) The number of members in the group.

Credential Attribute Values

Table 140–88 lists credential attribute values.

Note: Credential attribute values for the SET_ATTRIBUTE and GET_ATTRIBUTE procedures are deprecated with Oracle Database Release 12*c* Release 1 (12.1). While these attribute values remain available in this package, for reasons of backward compatibility, Oracle recommends using the alternative enhanced functionality provided in the DBMS_CREDENTIAL package, specifically the attribute parameter in the UPDATE_CREDENTIAL Procedure.

Table 140–88 Credential Attribute Values

Name	Description
username	The user name for logging into to the host operating system or remote Oracle database. Maximum length is 64.

Table 140–88 (Cont.) Credential Attribute Values

Name	Description
password	The password for the user name. Maximum length is 128.
comments	A description of the credential. Maximum length is 240.
windows_domain	For a Windows remote executable target, this is the domain that the specified user belongs to. Maximum length is 64.
database_role	The value of the database_role attribute is used as the system privilege for logging into a remote database to run a remote database job. Valid values are: SYSDBA and SYSOPER.

SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL Procedure

This procedure sets an attribute of an object to NULL. The attributes that can be set depend on the object being altered. If the object is enabled, it is disabled before being altered and reenabled afterward. If the object cannot be reenabled, an error is generated and the object is left in a disabled state.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL (
   name              IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–89 SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name of the object
attribute	The attribute being changed

Usage Notes

To run SET_ATTRIBUTE_NULL for a window, group of type WINDOW, or job class, you must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege. Otherwise, you must be the owner of the object being altered or have ALTER privileges on that object or have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure

This procedure sets the value for an argument of the associated program for a job, encapsulated in an AnyData object. It overrides any default value set for the program argument. NULL is a valid assignment for a program argument. The argument can be specified by position or by name. You can specify by name only when:

- The job points to a saved program object
- The argument was assigned a name with the DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT Procedure

Scheduler does no type checking of the argument at any time.

SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE is overloaded.

Syntax

Sets a program argument by its position.

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER,
   argument_value          IN SYS.ANYDATA);
```

Sets a program argument by its name.

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_value          IN SYS.ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 140–90 SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the job to be altered
argument_name	The name of the program argument being set
argument_position	The position of the program argument being set
argument_value	The new value to be assigned to the program argument, encapsulated in an AnyData object

Usage Notes

SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE requires that you own the job or have ALTER privileges on that job. You can also set a job argument value if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE does not apply to lightweight jobs because lightweight jobs cannot take AnyData arguments.

See Also:

- "SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure" on page 140-144
- "DEFINE_ANYDATA_ARGUMENT Procedure" on page 140-74

SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure

This procedure sets the value of an argument for a job.

It overrides any default value set for the corresponding program or stored procedure argument. The argument can be specified by position or by name. You can specify by name only when:

- The job points to a saved program object
- The argument was assigned a name with the DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure or the DEFINE_METADATA_ARGUMENT Procedure

Scheduler does no type checking of the argument at any time.

SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE is overloaded.

Syntax

Sets an argument value by position:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_position       IN PLS_INTEGER,
   argument_value          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Sets an argument value by name:

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE (
   job_name                IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   argument_value          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–91 SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the job to be altered
argument_name	The name of the program argument being set
argument_position	The position of the program argument being set
argument_value	The new value to be set for the program argument. To set a non-VARCHAR value, use the SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE procedure.

Usage Notes

SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE requires that you be the owner of the job or have ALTER privileges on that job. You can also set a job argument value if you have the CREATE ANY JOB privilege.

SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE only supports arguments of SQL type. Therefore, argument values that are not of SQL type, such as booleans, are not supported as program or job arguments.

SET_JOB_ARGUMENT_VALUE can be used to set arguments of lightweight jobs but only if the argument is of type VARCHAR2.

See Also:

- "SET_JOB_ANYDATA_VALUE Procedure" on page 140-143
- "DEFINE_PROGRAM_ARGUMENT Procedure" on page 140-82

SET_JOB_ATTRIBUTES Procedure

This procedure changes an attribute of a job.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_JOB_ATTRIBUTES (
   jobattr_array     IN JOBATTR_ARRAY,
   commit_semantics  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR');
```

Parameters

Table 140–92 SET_JOB_ATTRIBUTES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobattr_array	The array of job attribute changes.
commit_semantics	The commit semantics. The following types are supported: ■ STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR returns on the first error and commits previous successful attribute changes to disk. This is the default. ■ TRANSACTIONAL returns on the first error and rolls back everything that happened before that error. ■ ABSORB_ERRORS tries to absorb any errors and complete the rest of the job attribute changes on the list. It commits all the successful changes. If errors occur, you can query the view SCHEDULER_BATCH_ERRORS for details.

Usage Notes

Calling SET_ATTRIBUTE on an enabled job disables the job, changes the attribute value, and reenables the job. SET_JOB_ATTRIBUTES changes the attribute values in the context of a single transaction.

SET_RESOURCE_CONSTRAINT Procedure

This procedure allows users to specify the resources used by jobs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_RESOURCE_CONSTRAINT (
   object_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   resource_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   units             IN NUMBER DEFAULT 1);
```

Parameters

Table 140–93 SET_RESOURCE_CONSTRAINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_name	The name of a program or a job, or a comma separated list of these objects.
resource_name	The name of the resource.
units	The number of units of this resource that the job or program uses.

Usages Notes

If units is set to 0, then the program or job does not use this resource anymore and the resulting constraint is deleted. Setting units to 0 on a resource with no previous constraint results in an error.

When multiple constraints are defined on the same resource, the object types must match. When one or more existing constraints for a resource are based on jobs and a new constraint is added for the same resource that is based on a program (or vice versa) an error will be raised.

SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure sets the value of a Scheduler attribute. This takes effect immediately but the resulting changes may not be seen immediately, depending on the attribute affected.

Table 140–94 provides short attribute descriptions for the SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE procedure. For complete descriptions, see section "Setting Scheduler Preferences" in *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE (
   attribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 140–94 SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute	The name of the Scheduler attribute. Possible values are: ■ 'default_timezone': Repeating jobs and windows that use the calendaring syntax retrieve the time zone from this attribute when start_date is not specified. See "Calendaring Syntax" on page 140-6 for more information. ■ 'email_server': The SMTP server address that the Scheduler uses to send e-mail notifications for job state events. E-mail notifications cannot be sent if this attribute is NULL. ■ 'email_sender': The default e-mail address of the sender of job state e-mail notifications. ■ 'email_server_credential': The schema and name of an existing credential object that SYS has execute object privileges on. Default is NULL. The username and password stored in this credential are used to authenticate with the e-mail server when sending e-mail notifications. ■ 'email_server_encryption': This attribute indicates whether or not encryption is enabled for this email server connection, and if so, at what point encryption starts, and with which protocol. Values are: – NONE: the default, indicating no encryption used – SSL_TLS: indicating that either SSL or TLS are used, from the beginning of the connection – STARTTLS: indicating that the connection starts unencrypted, but the command STARTTLS is sent to the e-mail server and starts encryption ■ 'event_expiry_time': The time, in seconds, before a job state event generated by the Scheduler expires from the Scheduler event queue. If NULL, job state events expire after 24 hours. ■ 'log_history': The number of days that log entries for both the job log and the window log are retained. Default is 30 and the range of valid values is 0 through 1000000. ■ 'max_job_slave_processes': This Scheduler attribute is not used.
value	The new value of the attribute

Usage Notes

To run SET_SCHEDULER_ATTRIBUTE, you must have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

See Also: *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more detailed descriptions of Scheduler attributes

STOP_JOB Procedure

This procedure stops currently running jobs or all jobs in a job class. After stopping the job, the state of a one-time job is set to STOPPED, whereas the state of a repeating job is set to SCHEDULED or COMPLETED, depending on whether the next run of the job is scheduled.

If a job pointing to a chain is stopped, all running steps of the running chain are stopped.

If a job has multiple destinations, the database attempts to stop the job at all destinations.

For external jobs, STOP_JOB stops only the external process that was directly started by the job action. It does not stop child processes of external jobs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SCHEDULER.STOP_JOB (
   job_name         IN VARCHAR2
   force            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE
   commit_semantics IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR');
```

Parameters

Table 140–95 STOP_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	Name of a job to stop. Can be a comma-separate list of jobs, where each entry can be one of the following: ■ Job name: the name of an existing job, optionally preceded by a schema name and dot separator. ■ Job destination ID: a number, obtained from the JOB_DEST_ID column of the *_SCHEDULER_JOB_DESTS views, that represents the unique combination of a job, a credential, and a destination. ■ Job class: the name of a job class. Must be preceded by the SYS schema name and a dot separator. If you specify a job class, all jobs that belong to that job class are stopped. If you specify a job that was created with a destination group as its destination_name attribute, all job instances on all destinations are stopped.
force	If force is set to FALSE, the Scheduler tries to gracefully stop the job using an interrupt mechanism. This method gives control back to the slave process, which can update the status of the job in the job queue to stopped. If this fails, an error is returned. If force is set to TRUE, the Scheduler immediately terminates the job slave. Oracle recommends that STOP_JOB with force set to TRUE be used only after a STOP_JOB with force set to FALSE has failed. Use of the force option requires the MANAGE SCHEDULER system privilege.

Table 140–95 (Cont.) STOP_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
commit_semantics	The commit semantics. The following two types are supported: ■ STOP_ON_FIRST_ERROR: The procedure returns on the first error and commits previous successful stop operations to disk. This is the default. ■ ABSORB_ERRORS: The procedure tries to absorb any errors, stops the rest of the jobs, and commits all the successful stop operations. This type is available only if no job classes are specified in the job_name list. If errors occur, you can query the view SCHEDULER_BATCH_ERRORS for details.

Usage Notes

STOP_JOB without the force option requires that you be the owner of the job or have ALTER privileges on that job. You can also stop a job if you have the CREATE ANY JOB or MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

STOP_JOB with the force option requires that you have the MANAGE SCHEDULER privilege.

Example

The following is an example of using STOP_JOB.

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SCHEDULER.STOP_JOB('DSS.ETLJOB, 984, 1223, SYS.ETL_JOBCLASS');
END;
```

141

DBMS_SERVER_ALERT

The DBMS_SERVER_ALERT package enables you to configure the Oracle Database server to issue an alert when a threshold for a specified server metric has been violated. You can configure both warning and critical thresholds for a large number of predefined metrics.

If a warning threshold is reached, the server generates a severity level 5 alert. If a critical threshold is reached, the server generates a severity level 1 alert.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SERVER_ALERT

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_SERVER_ALERT` package. The following topics define constants used in package procedures.

- Security Model
- Object Types
- Relational Operators
- Supported Metrics

Security Model

The user needs DBA or IMP_FULL_DATABASE roles to use the DBMS_SERVER_ALERT package.

Object Types

You qualify the metric by an individual object for the following object types.

Table 141–1 Object Types Defined as Constants

Constant	Description
OBJECT_TYPE_SYSTEM	Metrics collected on the system level for each instance.
OBJECT_TYPE_FILE	Metrics collected on the file level. These are used for AVG_FILE_READ_TIME and AVG_FILE_WRITE_TIME metrics.
OBJECT_TYPE_SERVICE	Metrics collected on the service level. Currently ELAPSED_TIME_PER_CALL and CPU_TIME_PER_CALL are collected.
OBJECT_TYPE_TABLESPACE	Metrics collected on the tablespace level. **Note**: Dictionary managed tablespaces are not supported.
OBJECT_TYPE_EVENT_CLASS	Metrics collected on wait event class level. Currently supported metrics are AVG_USERS_WAITING and DB_TIME_WAITING.
OBJECT_TYPE_SESSION	Metrics collected on the session level. Currently only BLOCKED_USERS is collected. The threshold can only be set at the instance level, which means that no object name should be specified when setting the threshold for this type of metric.
OBJECT_TYPE_WRCLIENT	Refers to a group of metrics (WCR_. . .) used during replay to monitor the replay clients' performance

Relational Operators

You can specify a relational comparison operator to determine whether or not a given metric's value violates the threshold setting. The server supports the following operators.

Table 141–2 Relational Operators Defined as Constants

Constant	Description
OPERATOR_CONTAINS	A metric value matching an entry in a list of threshold values is considered a violation.
OPERATOR_DO_NOT_CHECK	The metric value is not compared to the threshold value, and no alerts are generated. Use this operator to disable alerts for a metric.
OPERATOR_EQ	A metric value equal to the threshold value is considered a violation.
OPERATOR_GE	A metric value greater than or equal to the threshold value is considered a violation.
OPERATOR_GT	A metric value greater than the threshold value is considered a violation.
OPERATOR_LE	A metric value less than or equal to the threshold value is considered a violation.
OPERATOR_LT	A metric value less than the threshold value is considered a violation.
OPERATOR_NE	A metric value not equal to the threshold value is considered a violation.

Supported Metrics

The following metrics are supported. All internal metric names are supplied as package constants.

Table 141–3 List of Supported Metrics

Metric Name (Internal)	Metric Name (External)	Units
AVG_FILE_READ_TIME	Average File Read Time	Microseconds
AVG_FILE_WRITE_TIME	Average File Write Time	Microseconds
AVG_USERS_WAITING	Average Number of Users Waiting on a Class of Wait Events	Count of sessions
BLOCKED_USERS	Number of Users blocked by some Session	Number of Users
BRANCH_NODE_SPLITS_SEC	Branch Node Splits (for each second)	Splits for each Second
BRANCH_NODE_SPLITS_TXN	Branch Node Splits (for each transaction)	Splits for each Transaction
BUFFER_CACHE_HIT	Buffer Cache Hit (%)	% of cache accesses
CLUSTER_MSG_WAIT_SCT	Cluster Messaging Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
CLUSTER_MSG_WAIT_TIME	Cluster Messaging Wait (by time)	Microseconds
CONSISTENT_CHANGES_SEC	Consistent Changes (for each second)	Changes for each Second
CONSISTENT_CHANGES_TXN	Consistent Changes (for each transaction)	Changes for each Transaction
CONSISTENT_GETS_SEC	Consistent Gets (for each second)	Gets for each Second
CONSISTENT_GETS_TXN	Consistent Gets (for each transaction)	Gets for each Transaction
CONTENTION_WAIT_SCT	Internal Contention Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
CONTENTION_WAIT_TIME	Internal Contention Wait (by time)	Microseconds
CPU_TIME_PER_CALL	CPU time for each user call for each service	Microseconds for each call
CR_BLOCKS_CREATED_SEC	CR Blocks Created (for each second)	Blocks for each Second
CR_BLOCKS_CREATED_TXN	CR Blocks Created (for each transaction)	Blocks for each Transaction
CR_RECORDS_APPLIED_SEC	CR Undo Records Applied (for each second)	Records for each Second
CR_RECORDS_APPLIED_TXN	CR Undo Records Applied (for each transaction)	Records for each Transaction
CURSOR_CACHE_HIT	Cursor Cache Hit (%)	% of soft parses
DATABASE_WAIT_TIME	Database Wait Time (%)	% of all database time
DATABASE_CPU_TIME	Database CPU Time (%)	% of all database time
DATA_DICT_HIT	Data Dictionary Hit (%)	% of dictionary accesses
DATA_DICT_MISS	Data Dictionary Miss (%)	% of dictionary accesses

Table 141–3 (Cont.) List of Supported Metrics

Metric Name (Internal)	Metric Name (External)	Units
DB_BLKGETS_SEC	DB Block Gets (for each second)	Gets for each Second
DB_BLKGETS_TXN	DB Block Gets (for each transaction)	Gets for each Transaction
DB_TIME_WAITING	Percent of Database Time Spent Waiting on a Class of Wait Events	% of Database Time
DBR_IO_LIMIT_WAIT_SCT	Resource Mgr I/O Limit Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
DBR_IO_LIMIT_WAIT_TIME	Resource Mgr I/O Limit Wait (by time)	Microseconds
DBR_CPU_LIMIT_WAIT_SCT	Resource Mgr CPU Limit Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
DBR_CPU_LIMIT_WAIT_TIME	Resource Mgr CPU Limit Wait (by time)	Microseconds
DBR_USR_LIMIT_WAIT_SCT	Resource Mgr User Limit Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
DBR_USR_LIMIT_WAIT_TIME	Resource Mgr User Limit Wait (by time)	Microseconds
DBWR_CKPT_SEC	DBWR Checkpoints (for each second)	Checkpoints for each Second
DISK_IO	Disk I/O	Milliseconds
DISK_IO_WAIT_SCT	Disk I/O Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
DISK_SORT_SEC	Sorts to Disk (for each second)	Sorts for each Second
DISK_SORT_TXN	Sorts to Disk (for each transaction)	Sorts for each Transaction
ELAPSED_TIME_PER_CALL	Elapsed time for each user call for each service	Microseconds for each call
ENQUEUE_DEADLOCKS_SEC	Enqueue Deadlocks (for each second)	Deadlocks for each Second
ENQUEUE_DEADLOCKS_TXN	Enqueue Deadlocks (for each transaction)	Deadlocks for each Transaction
ENQUEUE_REQUESTS_SEC	Enqueue Requests (for each second)	Requests for each Second
ENQUEUE_REQUESTS_TXN	Enqueue Requests (for each transaction)	Requests for each Transaction
ENQUEUE_TIMEOUTS_SEC	Enqueue Timeouts (for each second)	Timeouts for each Second
ENQUEUE_TIMEOUTS_TXN	Enqueue Timeouts (for each transaction)	Timeouts for each Transaction
ENQUEUE_WAITS_SEC	Enqueue Waits (for each second)	Waits for each Second
ENQUEUE_WAITS_TXN	Enqueue Waits (for each transaction)	Waits for each Transaction
EXECUTE_WITHOUT_PARSE	Executes Performed Without Parsing	% of all executes
FULL_INDEX_SCANS_SEC	Fast Full Index Scans (for each second)	Scans for each Second
FULL_INDEX_SCANS_TXN	Fast Full Index Scans (for each transaction)	Scans for each Transaction

Table 141–3 (Cont.) List of Supported Metrics

Metric Name (Internal)	Metric Name (External)	Units
GC_AVG_CR_GET_TIME	Global Cache CR Request	Milliseconds
GC_AVG_CUR_GET_TIME	Global Cache Current Request	Milliseconds
GC_BLOCKS_CORRUPT	Global Cache Blocks Corrupt	Blocks
GC_BLOCKS_LOST	Global Cache Blocks Lost	Blocks
HARD_PARSES_SEC	Hard Parses (for each second)	Parses for each Second
HARD_PARSES_TXN	Hard Parses (for each transaction)	Parses for each Transaction
LEAF_NODE_SPLITS_SEC	Leaf Node Splits (for each second)	Splits for each Second
LEAF_NODE_SPLITS_TXN	Leaf Node Splits (for each transaction)	Splits for each Transaction
LIBRARY_CACHE_HIT	Library Cache Hit (%)	% of cache accesses
LIBRARY_CACHE_MISS	Library Cache Miss (%)	% of cache accesses
LOG_SWITCH_SEC	Background Checkpoints (for each second)	Checkpoints for each Second
LOGONS_CURRENT	Current Number of Logons	Number of Logons
LOGONS_SEC	Cumulative Logons (for each second)	Logons for each Second
LOGONS_TXN	Cumulative Logons (for each transaction)	Logons for each Transaction
LONG_TABLE_SCANS_SEC	Scans on Long Tables (for each second)	Scans for each Second
LONG_TABLE_SCANS_TXN	Scans on Long Tables (for each transaction)	Scans for each Transaction
OPEN_CURSORS_SEC	Cumulative Open Cursors (for each second)	Cursors for each Second
MEMORY_SORTS_PCT	Sorts in Memory (%)	% of sorts
NETWORK_BYTES_SEC	Network Bytes, for each second	Bytes for each Second
NETWORK_MSG_WAIT_SCT	Network Message Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
NETWORK_MSG_WAIT_TIME	Network Message Wait (by time)	Microseconds
OPEN_CURSORS_CURRENT	Current Number of Cursors	Number of Cursors
OPEN_CURSORS_TXN	Cumulative Open Cursors (for each transaction)	Cursors for each Transaction
OS_SCHED_CPU_WAIT_SCT	Operating System Scheduler CPU Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
OS_SCHED_CPU__WAIT_TIME	Operating System Scheduler CPU Wait (by time)	Microseconds
OS_SERVICE_WAIT_SCT	Operating System Service Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
OS_SERVICE_WAIT_TIME	Operating System Service Wait (by time)	Microseconds
OTHER_WAIT_SCT	Other Waits (by session count)	Count of sessions
OTHER_WAIT_TIME	Other Waits (by time)	Microseconds

Table 141–3 (Cont.) List of Supported Metrics

Metric Name (Internal)	Metric Name (External)	Units
PARSE_FAILURES_SEC	Parse Failures (for each second)	Parses for each Second
PARSE_FAILURES_TXN	Parse Failures (for each transaction)	Parses for each Transaction
PGA_CACHE_HIT	PGA Cache Hit (%)	% bytes processed in PGA
PHYS_DESGN_WAIT_SCT	Physical Design Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
PHYS_DESGN_WAIT_TIME	Physical Design Wait (by time)	Microseconds
PHYSICAL_READS_SEC	Physical Reads (for each second)	Reads for each Second
PHYSICAL_READS_TXN	Physical Reads (for each transaction)	Reads for each Transaction
PHYSICAL_WRITES_SEC	Physical Writes (for each second)	Writes for each Second
PHYSICAL_WRITES_TXN	Physical Writes (for each transaction)	Writes for each Transaction
PHYSICAL_READS_DIR_SEC	Direct Physical Reads (for each second)	Reads for each Second
PHYSICAL_READS_DIR_TXN	Direct Physical Reads (for each transaction)	Reads for each Transaction
PHYSICAL_WRITES_DIR_SEC	Direct Physical Writes (for each second)	Writes for each Second
PHYSICAL_WRITES_DIR_TXN	Direct Physical Writes (for each transaction)	Writes for each Transaction
PHYSICAL_READS_LOB_SEC	Direct LOB Physical Reads (for each second)	Reads for each Second
PHYSICAL_READS_LOB_TXN	Direct LOB Physical Reads (for each transaction)	Reads for each Transaction
PHYSICAL_WRITES_LOB_SEC	Direct LOB Physical Writes (for each second)	Writes for each Second
PHYSICAL_WRITES_LOB_TXN	Direct LOB Physical Writes (for each transaction)	Writes for each Transaction
PROCESS_LIMIT_PCT	Process Limit Usage (%)	% of maximum value
PSERVICE_WAIT_SCT	Process Service Wait (by session count)	Count of sessions
PSERVICE_WAIT_TIME	Process Service Wait (by time)	Microseconds
PX_DOWNGRADED_SEC	Downgraded Parallel Operations (for each second)	Operations for each Second
PX_DOWNGRADED_25_SEC	Downgraded to 25% and more (for each second)	Operations for each Second
PX_DOWNGRADED_50_SEC	Downgraded to 50% and more (for each second)	Operations for each Second
PX_DOWNGRADED_75_SEC	Downgraded to 75% and more (for each second)	Operations for each Second
PX_DOWNGRADED_SER_SEC	Downgraded to serial (for each second)	Operations for each Second
RB_RECORDS_APPLIED_SEC	Rollback Undo Records Applied (for each second)	Records for each Second

Table 141–3 (Cont.) List of Supported Metrics

Metric Name (Internal)	Metric Name (External)	Units
RB_RECORDS_APPLIED_TXN	Rollback Undo Records Applied (for each transaction)	Records for each Transaction
REDO_ALLOCATION_HIT	Redo Log Allocation Hit	% of redo allocations
REDO_GENERATED_SEC	Redo Generated (for each second)	Redo Bytes for each Second
REDO_GENERATED_TXN	Redo Generated (for each transaction)	Redo Bytes for each Transaction
REDO_WRITES_SEC	Redo Writes (for each second)	Writes for each Second
REDO_WRITES_TXN	Redo Writes (for each transaction)	Writes for each Transaction
RECURSIVE_CALLS_SEC	Recursive Calls (for each second)	Calls for each Second
RECURSIVE_CALLS_TXN	Recursive Calls (for each transaction)	Calls for each Transaction
RESPONSE_TXN	Response (for each transaction)	Seconds for each Transaction
ROWS_PER_SORT	Rows Processed for each Sort	Rows for each Sort
SESS_LOGICAL_READS_SEC	Session Logical Reads (for each second)	Reads for each Second
SESS_LOGICAL_READS_TXN	Session Logical Reads (for each transaction)	Reads for each Transaction
SESSION_CPU_SEC	Database CPU (for each second)	Microseconds for each Second
SESSION_CPU_TXN	Database CPU (for each transaction)	Microseconds for each Transaction
SESSION_LIMIT_PCT	Session Limit Usage (%)	% of maximum value
SHARED_POOL_FREE_PCT	Shared Pool Free(%)	% of shared pool
SOFT_PARSE_PCT	Soft Parse (%)	% of all parses
SQL_SRV_RESPONSE_TIME	Service Response (for each execution)	Seconds
TABLESPACE_PCT_FULL	Tablespace space usage	% full
TABLESPACE_BYT_FREE	Tablespace bytes space usage	Kilobytes free
TOTAL_TABLE_SCANS_SEC	Total Table Scans (for each second)	Scans for each Second
TOTAL_TABLE_SCANS_TXN	Total Table Scans (for each transaction)	Scans for each Transaction
TOTAL_INDEX_SCANS_SEC	Total Index Scans (for each second)	Scans for each Second
TOTAL_INDEX_SCANS_TXN	Total Index Scans (for each transaction)	Scans for each Transaction
TOTAL_PARSES_SEC	Total Parses (for each second)	Parses for each Second
TOTAL_PARSES_TXN	Total Parses (for each transaction)	Parses for each Transaction
TRANSACTION_RATE	Number of Transactions (for each second)	Transactions for each Second
TXN_COMMITTED_PCT	Transactions Committed (%)	% of all transactions
USER_COMMITS_SEC	User Commits (for each second)	Commits for each Second
USER_COMMITS_TXN	User Commits (for each transaction)	Commits for each Transaction
USER_ROLLBACKS_SEC	User Rollbacks (for each second)	Rollbacks for each Second

Table 141–3 (Cont.) List of Supported Metrics

Metric Name (Internal)	Metric Name (External)	Units
USER_ROLLBACKS_TXN	User Rollbacks (for each transaction)	Rollbacks for each Transaction
USER_CALLS_SEC	User Calls (for each second)	Calls for each Second
USER_CALLS_TXN	User Calls (for each transaction)	Calls for each Transaction
USER_CALLS_PCT	User Calls (%)	% of all calls
USER_LIMIT_PCT	User Limit Usage (%)	% of maximum value
WCR_AVG_IO_LAT	Average IO response time (for a WRC client)	Milliseconds
WCR_PCPU	Percentage of replay threads on CPU (for a WRC client)	% of total replay threads
WCR_PIO	Percentage of replay threads doing IOs (for a WRC client)	% of total replay threads

Summary of DBMS_SERVER_ALERT Subprograms

Table 141–4 DBMS_SERVER_ALERT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
EXPAND_MESSAGE Function on page 141-13	Expands alert messages
GET_THRESHOLD Procedure on page 141-14	Gets the current threshold settings for a specified metric
SET_THRESHOLD Procedure on page 141-15	Sets the warning and critical thresholds for a specified metric

EXPAND_MESSAGE Function

This function expands alert messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.EXPAND_MESSAGE(
   user_language            IN   VARCHAR2,
   message_id               IN   NUMBER,
   argument_1               IN   VARCHAR2,
   argument_2               IN   VARCHAR2,
   argument_3               IN   VARCHAR2,
   argument_4               IN   VARCHAR2,
   argument_5               IN   VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 141–5 EXPAND_MESSAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
user_language	The language of the current session.
message_id	Id of the alert message
argument_1	The first argument in the alert message.
argument_2	The second argument in the alert message.
argument_3	The third argument in the alert message.
argument_4	The fourth argument in the alert message.
argument_5	The fifth argument in the alert message.

GET_THRESHOLD Procedure

This procedure gets the current threshold settings for the specified metric.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.GET_THRESHOLD(
   metrics_id               IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   warning_operator         OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
   warning_value            OUT  VARCHAR2,
   critical_operator        OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
   critical_value           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   observation_period       OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
   consecutive_occurrences  OUT  BINARY_INTEGER,
   instance_name            IN   VARCHAR2,
   object_type              IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   object_name              IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 141–6 GET_THRESHOLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
metrics_id	The internal name of the metric. See "Supported Metrics" on page 141-6.
warning_operator	The operator for the compa3ring the actual value with the warning threshold.
warning_value	The warning threshold value.
critical_operator	The operator for the comparing the actual value with the critical threshold.
critical_value	The critical threshold value.
observation_period	The period at which the metric values are computed and verified against the threshold setting.
consecutive_occurrences	The number of observation periods the metric value should violate the threshold value before the alert is issued.
instance_name	The name of the instance for which the threshold is set. This is NULL for database-wide alerts. In cases in which this parameter is not NULL, this should be set to one of the INSTANCE_NAME values found in the GV$INSTANCE View.
object_type	Either OBJECT_TYPE_SYSTEM or OBJECT_TYPE_SERVICE.
object_name	The name of the object.

Usage Notes

Note that this subprogram does not check if the value of the instance_name parameter is meaningful or valid.

SET_THRESHOLD Procedure

This procedure sets the warning and critical thresholds for a specified metric.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVER_ALERT.SET_THRESHOLD(
   metrics_id               IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   warning_operator         IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   warning_value            IN   VARCHAR2,
   critical_operator        IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   critical_value           IN   VARCHAR2,
   observation_period       IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   consecutive_occurrences  IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   instance_name            IN   VARCHAR2,
   object_type              IN   BINARY_INTEGER,
   object_name              IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 141–7 SET_THRESHOLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
metrics_id	The internal name of the metric. See "Supported Metrics" on page 141-6.
warning_operator	The operator for the comparing the actual value with the warning threshold (such as OPERATOR_GE). See "Relational Operators" on page 141-5.
warning_value	The warning threshold value. This is NULL if no warning threshold is set. A list of values may be specified for OPERATOR_CONTAINS.
critical_operator	The operator for the comparing the actual value with the critical threshold. See "Relational Operators" on page 141-5.
critical_value	The critical threshold value. This is NULL if not set. A list of values may be specified for OPERATOR_CONTAINS.
observation_period	The period at which the metric values are computed and verified against the threshold setting. The valid range is 1 to 60 minutes.
consecutive_occurrences	The number of observation periods the metric value should violate the threshold value before the alert is issued.
instance_name	The name of the instance for which the threshold is set. This is NULL for database-wide alerts.
object_type	See "Object Types" on page 141-4.
object_name	The name of the object. This is NULL for SYSTEM.

Usage Notes

Note that this subprogram does not check if the value of the instance_name parameter is meaningful or valid. Passing a name that does not identify a valid instance will result in a threshold that is not used by any by any instance although the threshold setting will be visible in the DBA_THRESHOLDS view. The exception is the lower-case string 'database_wide' which is semantically equivalent to passing NULL for the instance name, the latter being the preferred usage.

142

DBMS_SERVICE

The DBMS_SERVICE package lets you create, delete, activate, and deactivate services for a single instance.

The chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_SERVICE
  - Overview
  - Security Model
  - Constants
  - Operating Procedures
  - Exceptions
- Summary of DBMS_SERVICE Subprograms

> **See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide* for administering services in Oracle Real Application Clusters.

Using DBMS_SERVICE

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_SERVICE` package.

Overview

DBMS_SERVICE supports the workload management of high availability, quality of service, job scheduling, and other planned operations in the RDBMS for the purposes of workload measurement, management, prioritization, and XA and distributed transaction management.

Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) can manage service names across instances as administered through SRVCTL. The DBMS_SERVICE package allows the creation, deletion, starting, and stopping of services in a single instance. Additionally, it provides the ability to disconnect all sessions that connect to an instance with a service name.

> **See Also:** For more information about Oracle Real Application Clusters, *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide*.

Security Model

Privileges

The client using this package must have the `ALTER SYSTEM` execution privilege and the `V$SESSION` table read privilege.

Schemas

This package must be installed under `SYS` schema.

Roles

The `EXECUTE` privilege of the package is granted to the `DBA` role only.

Constants

The DBMS_SERVICE package uses the constants shown in following tables:

- Constants used in calling arguments are described in Table 142–1, " Constants Used in Calling Arguments"
- Constants used in connection balancing goal arguments are described in Table 142–2, " Constants Used in Connection Balancing Goal Arguments"
- Constants used in TAF failover attribute arguments are described in Table 142–3, " Constants Used in High Availability Attribute Arguments for FAN, Application Continuity, Transaction Guard and TAF"

Table 142–1 Constants Used in Calling Arguments

Name	Type	Value	Description
GOAL_NONE	NUMBER	0	Disables Load Balancing Advisory
GOAL_SERVICE_TIME	NUMBER	1	Load Balancing Advisory is based on elapsed time for work done in the service plus available bandwidth to the service
GOAL_THROUGHPUT	NUMBER	2	Load Balancing Advisory is based on the rate that work is completed in the service plus available bandwidth to the service

Table 142–2 Constants Used in Connection Balancing Goal Arguments

Name	Type	Value	Description
CLB_GOAL_SHORT	NUMBER	1	Connection load balancing uses Load Balancing Advisory, when Load Balancing Advisory is enabled (either goal_service_time or goal_throughput). When GOAL=NONE (no load balancing advisory), connection load balancing uses an abridged advice based on CPU utilization.
CLB_GOAL_LONG	NUMBER	2	Balances the number of connections for each instance using session count for each service. This setting is recommended for applications with long connections such as forms. This setting can be used with Load Balancing Advisory when the connection pool is sized to accommodate gravitation within the pool itself (without adding or removing connections). The latter is the most efficient design.

Table 142–3 Constants Used in High Availability Attribute Arguments for FAN, Application Continuity, Transaction Guard and TAF

Name	Type	Value	Description
FAILOVER_METHOD_NONE	VARCHAR2	0	Server side TAF is not enabled for this service
FAILOVER_METHOD_BASIC	VARCHAR2	1	Server side TAF method is BASIC. BASIC is the only value currently supported. This means that a new connection is established at failure time.
FAILOVER_TYPE_NONE	VARCHAR		Server side TAF type is NONE

Table 142–3 (Cont.) Constants Used in High Availability Attribute Arguments for FAN, Application Continuity, Transaction Guard and TAF

Name	Type	Value	Description
FAILOVER_TYPE_ SESSION	VARCHAR		Server side TAF failover type is SESSION. At failure time, if the failover type is SESSION, TAF reconnects to a surviving node and re-establish a vanilla database session. Customizations (for example, ALTER SESSION) must be re-executed in a failover callback.
FAILOVER_TYPE_ SELECT	VARCHAR		Server side TAF failover type is SELECT
FAILOVER_RETRIES	NUMBER		Number of connection attempts when failover occurs. Specifies the number of times for Application Continuity and TAF to attempt the reconnect and re-authenticate pair. The value must be an integer greater than 0. The default in Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1) for Application Continuity is 30.
FAILOVER_DELAY	NUMBER		Number of seconds delay between each connection attempt. This is the delay that Application Continuity and TAF waits if a reconnect and re-authentication fails. The value must be an integer greater than 0. The default in Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1)is 10s when using Application Continuity. Using FAILOVER_DELAY the failover can be delayed until the service is next available. This can work well in conjunction with a planned outage that may make a service temporarily unavailable (such as for several minutes).
DYNAMIC	NUMBER		For Application Continuity, this parameter specifies whether the session state that is not transactional is changed by the application during request execution. A value of DYNAMIC is recommended for all applications. If you are in any doubt, or the application can be customized, you must use DYNAMIC.

Usage Notes

- If a TAF callback has been registered, then the failover retries and failover delay are ignored. If an error occurs, TAF continues to re-attempt the connect and authentication as long as the callback returns a value of OCI_FO_RETRY. Any delay must be coded into the callback logic
- Server side TAF settings override client-side counterparts that might be configured in TNS connect descriptors. If TAF is not configured on the client side, then at a minimum, the failover type must be set to enable TAF. If the failover type is set on the server side, then the failover method defaults to BASIC. Delay and retries are optional and may be specified independently.

Operating Procedures

- You cannot use the following procedures with Oracle Real Applications Clusterware, Oracle Restart and Oracle Global Data Services:
  - CREATE_SERVICE Procedure
  - DELETE_SERVICE Procedure
  - MODIFY_SERVICE Procedure
  - START_SERVICE Procedure
  - STOP_SERVICE Procedure
- With Oracle Database 12*c* Release 1, you are advised to use the parameter interface in all service -related subprorgrams.
- If you wish to use `DBMS_SERVICE` on a pluggable database (PDB) in a single instance, you must connect to that PDB first.

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by DBMS_SERVICE package.

Table 142–4 DBMS_SERVICE Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Description
NULL_SERVICE_NAME	44301	Service name argument was found to be NULL
NULL_NETWORK_NAME	44302	Network name argument was found to be NULL
SERVICE_EXISTS	44303	Service name already exists
SERVICE_DOES_NOT_EXIST	44304	Specified service does not exist
SERVICE_IN_USE	44305	Specified service was running
SERVICE_NAME_TOO_LONG	44306	Service name was too long
NETWORK_PREFIX_TOO_LONG	44307	Network name, excluding the domain, was too long
NOT_INITIALIZED	44308	Services layer was not yet initialized
GENERAL_FAILURE	44309	An unknown failure
MAX_SERVICES_EXCEEDED	44310	Maximum number of services has been reached
SERVICE_NOT_RUNNING	44311	Specified service was not running
DATABASE_CLOSED	44312	Database was closed
INVALID_INSTANCE	44313	Instance name argument was not valid
NETWORK_EXISTS	44314	Network name already exists
NULL_ATTRIBUTES	44315	All attributes specified were NULL
INVALID_ARGUMENT	44316	Invalid argument supplied
DATABASE_READONLY	44317	Database is open read-only
MAX_SN_LENGTH	44318	Total length of all running service network names exceeded the maximum allowable length
ERR_AQ_SERVICE	44319	Cannot delete AQ service
ERR_GLB_SERVICE	44320	Cannot delete global service
ERR_INVALID_PDB_NAME	44771	Invalid name for a pluggable database
ERR_CRS_API	44772	Cluster ready services (CRS) operation failed
ERR_PDB_CLOSED	44773	Cannot perform requested service operation
ERR_PDB_INVALID	44774	Pluggable database attribute cannot be changed
ERR_PDB_NAME	44775	Pluggable database service cannot be created

Table 142–4 (Cont.) DBMS_SERVICE Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Description
ERR_PDB_EXP	44776	Pluggable database service cannot be deleted
ERR_PDB_FAIL	44777	Pluggable database service cannot be started

Summary of DBMS_SERVICE Subprograms

Table 142–5 DBMS_SERVICE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_SERVICE Procedure on page 142-11	Creates service
DELETE_SERVICE Procedure on page 142-15	Deletes service
DISCONNECT_SESSION Procedure on page 142-16	Disconnects sessions running under this service
MODIFY_SERVICE Procedure on page 142-17	Modifies service
START_SERVICE Procedure on page 142-21	Activates service
STOP_SERVICE Procedure on page 142-22	Stops service

CREATE_SERVICE Procedure

This procedure creates a service name in the data dictionary. Services are also created in the data dictionary implicitly when you set the service in the `service_name` parameter or by means of the `ALTER SYSTEM SET SERVICE_NAMES` command.

> **Note:** You cannot use the second version of subprogram if your services are managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart or Oracle Global Data Services. The version with the parameter array interface applies to databases that are not managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart or Oracle Global Data Services. New attributes are only available using the parameter interface.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVICE.CREATE_SERVICE(
   service_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   network_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter_array            IN svc_parameter_array);
```

This overload is maintained for backward compatibility:

```
DBMS_SERVICE.CREATE_SERVICE(
   service_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   network_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   goal                       IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   dtp                        IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT NULL,
   aq_ha_notifications        IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_method            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_type              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_retries           IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_delay             IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   clb_goal                   IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   edition                    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 142–6 CREATE_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`service_name`	Name of the service, limited to 64 characters in the Data Dictionary
`network_name`	Network name of the service as used in SQLNet connect descriptors for client connections. This is limited to the NET `service_names` character set (see *Oracle Database Net Services Reference*).

Table 142–6 (Cont.) CREATE_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter_array	Associative array with name-value pairs of the service attributes. Supported names: ■ goal ■ dtp ■ aq_ha_notifications ■ failover_method ■ failover_type ■ failover_retries ■ failover_delay ■ clb_goal ■ edition ■ commit_outcome ■ retention_timeout ■ replay_initiation_timeout ■ session_state_consistency ■ sql_translation_profile
goal	Workload management goal directive for the service. Valid values: ■ DBMS_SERVICE.GOAL_SERVICE_TIME ■ DBMS_SERVICE.GOAL_THROUGHPUT ■ DBMS_SERVICE.GOAL_NONE
dtp	Declares the service to be for X/Open Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP) or any distributed transaction (especially XA)
aq_ha_notifications	Determines whether Fast Application Notification (FAN) is enabled for OCI/OCCI/ODP. In Oracle Database12*c*, FAN uses Oracle Notification Services (ONS). This parameter is still used to enable FAN. FAN is recommended for all High Availability systems, and is on by default for Application Continuity
failover_method	Failover TYPE for the service for Application Continuity and TAF. If the failover_type is set to TRANSACTION on the service, this automatically sets COMMIT_OUTCOME to TRUE. JDBC Replay Driver uses the FAILOVER_TYPE service attribute setting of TRANSACTION for TRANSACTION failover. OCI uses the older settings of SELECT and SESSION. The server only accepts FAILOVER_METHOD = BASIC with the TRANSACTION setting.
failover_type	Failover TYPE for the service for Application Continuity and TAF.
failover_retries	Number of connection retries for Application Continuity and TAF. Using the failover_retries and failover_delay parameters, the failover can be delayed until the service is next available. This parameter is for connecting. It does not control the number of failovers, which is 3 for each incident for Application Continuity.
failover_delay	Delay in seconds between connection retries for Application Continuity and TAF. The default is 10 seconds for Application Continuity. Do not use a 0-second delay if the service needs time to failover and register. Long delays are good for planned outages and to failover to Data Guard. Short delays work well with RAC when the service is already available.

Table 142–6 (Cont.) CREATE_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
edition	If this argument has a non-NULL value, this provides the initial session edition for subsequent database connections using this service that do not specify an edition. If no value is specified, this argument has no effect. During service creation or modification, no validation is performed on this parameter. At connection time, if the connecting user does not have USE privilege on the edition, or the edition does not exist, this raises the error ORA-38802 (edition does not exist).
commit_outcome	Determines whether transaction COMMIT outcome is accessible after the COMMIT has executed. While the database guarantees that COMMIT is durable, this ensures that the outcome of the COMMIT is durable. Applications use the feature to probe the status of the commit last executed after an outage, and is available to applications to determine an outcome. Note: ■ Invoking the GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure of the DBMS_APP_CONT package requires that the commit_outcome attribute be set. ■ commit_outcome has no effect on active Data Guard and read-only databases. ■ commit_outcome is only allowed on the database service and on user-defined database services
retention_timeout	Used in conjunction with commit_outcome, it determines the amount of time (in seconds) that the COMMIT_OUTCOME is retained. Default is 24 hours (86400). Maximum value is 30 days (2592000).
replay_initiation_timeout	For Application Continuity, replay_initiation_timeout is the difference between the time of original execution of first operation of a request, and the time that the replay is ready to start after a successful reconnect. Replay initiation time is measured from the time that the request was originally submitted until the time that replay has connected and is ready to replay. When replay is expected, keep this value high. Default is 900 seconds.
session_state_consistency	Describes how nontransactional is changed during a request (values are DYNAMIC or STATIC). This parameter is considered only if failover_type is set to TRANSACTION for Application Continuity. Examples of session state are NLS settings, optimizer preferences, event settings, PL/SQL global variables, temporary tables, advanced queues, LOBs, and result cache. If these values change after the request starts, set to DYNAMIC (default). Almost all applications should use DYNAMIC mode. If you are unsure, use DYNAMIC mode.
sql_translation_name	Name of SQL translation unit
clb_goal	Method used for Connection Load Balancing (see Table 142–2, " Constants Used in Connection Balancing Goal Arguments")

Examples

```
DBMS_SERVICE.CREATE_SERVICE('ernie.example.com','ernie.example.com');

DECLARE
   params dbms_service.svc_parameter_array;
   BEGIN
      params('FAILOVER_TYPE')            :='TRANSACTION';
```

```
   params('REPLAY_INITIATION_TIMEOUT'):=1800;
   params('RETENTION_TIMEOUT')        :=86400;
   params('FAILOVER_DELAY')           :=10;
   params('FAILOVER_RETRIES')         :=30;
   params('commit_outcome')           :='true';
   params('aq_ha_notifications')      :='true';
   DBMS_SERVICE.MODIFY_SERVICE('GOLD',params);
END;
```

DELETE_SERVICE Procedure

This procedure deletes a service from the data dictionary.

> **Note:** You cannot use this subprogram if your services are managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart, or Oracle Global Data Services.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVICE.DELETE_SERVICE(
   service_name   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 142–7 DELETE_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service, limited to 64 characters in the Data Dictionary

Examples

```
DBMS_SERVICE.DELETE_SERVICE('ernie.example.com');
```

DISCONNECT_SESSION Procedure

This procedure disconnects sessions with the named service at the current instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVICE.DISCONNECT_SESSION(
   service_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   disconnect_option    IN NUMBER DEFAULT POST_TRANSACTION);
```

Parameters

Table 142–8 DISCONNECT_SESSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service, limited to 64 characters in the Data Dictionary
disconnect_option	The options, package constants, are expressed as NUMBER: ■ POST_TRANSACTION = 0: session disconnects after the current transaction commits or rolls back ■ IMMEDIATE = 1: session disconnects immediately ■ NOREPLAY = 2: session disconnects immediately and be flagged to not be replayed by application continuity, that is IMMEDIATE and NOREPLAY together **Note**: IMMEDIATE or POST_TRANSACTION and NOREPLAY is automatically translated as 1 or 0 or 2 respectively. However, passing a string literal (quoted using either the ' or " characters, such as "IMMEDIATE" or 'POST_TRANSACTION' or 'NOREPLAY') raises an error.

Usage Notes

- This procedure can be used in the context of a single instance as well as with Oracle Real Application Clusters.
- This subprogram does not return until all corresponding sessions are disconnected. Therefore, use the DBMS_JOB package or put the SQL session in background if the caller does not want to wait for all corresponding sessions to be disconnected.

Examples

This disconnects sessions with service_name 'ernie.example.com'.

```
DBMS_SERVICE.DISCONNECT_SESSION('ernie.example.com');
```

If a service is using application continuity, and you do not want the sessions replayed but simply terminated, use the following:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SERVICE.DISCONNECT_SESSION('service name', DBMS_SERVICE.NOREPLAY);
```

MODIFY_SERVICE Procedure

This procedure modifies an existing service.

> **Note:** You cannot use the second version of subprogram if your services are managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart, or Oracle Global Data Services. The version with the parameter array interface applies to databases that are not managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart or Oracle Global Data Services. New attributes are only available using the parameter interface.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVICE.MODIFY_SERVICE(
   service_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter_array            IN svc_parameter_array);
```

This overload is maintained for backward compatibility:

```
DBMS_SERVICE.MODIFY_SERVICE(
   service_name               IN VARCHAR2,
   goal                       IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   dtp                        IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT NULL,
   aq_ha_notifications        IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_method            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_type              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_retries           IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   failover_delay             IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   clb_goal                   IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   edition                    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   modify_edition             IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE;
```

Parameters

Table 142–9 MODIFY_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service, limited to 64 characters in the Data Dictionary

Table 142–9 (Cont.) MODIFY_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter_array	Associative array with name/value pairs of the service attributes. Supported names: ■ goal ■ dtp ■ aq_ha_notifications ■ failover_method ■ failover_type ■ failover_retries ■ failover_delay ■ edition ■ commit_outcome ■ retention_timeout ■ replay_initiation_timeout ■ session_state_consistency ■ sql_translation_name
goal	Workload management goal directive for the service. Valid values: ■ DBMS_SERVICE.GOAL_SERVICE_TIME ■ DBMS_SERVICE.GOAL_THROUGHPUT ■ DBMS_SERVICE.GOAL_NONE
dtp	Declares the service to be for X/Open Distributed Transaction Processing (DTP) or any distributed transaction (especially XA)
aq_ha_notifications	Determines whether Fast Application Notification (FAN) is enabled for OCI/OCCI/ODP. In Oracle Database12*c*, FAN uses Oracle Notification Services (ONS). This parameter is still used to enable FAN. FAN is recommended for all High Availability systems, and is on by default for Application Continuity
failover_method	Failover TYPE for the service for Application Continuity and TAF. If the failover_type is set to TRANSACTION on the service, this automatically sets COMMIT_OUTCOME to TRUE. JDBC Replay Driver uses the FAILOVER_TYPE service attribute setting of TRANSACTION for TRANSACTION failover. OCI uses the older settings of SELECT and SESSION. The server only accepts FAILOVER_METHOD = BASIC with the TRANSACTION setting.
failover_type	Failover TYPE for the service for Application Continuity and TAF.
failover_retries	Number of connection retries for Application Continuity and TAF. Using the failover_retries and failover_delay parameters, the failover can be delayed until the service is next available. This parameter is for connecting. It does not control the number of failovers, which is 3 for each incident for Application Continuity.
failover_delay	Delay in seconds between connection retries for Application Continuity and TAF. The default is 10 seconds for Application Continuity. Do not use a 0-second delay if the service needs time to failover and register. Long delays are good for planned outages and to failover to Data Guard. Short delays work well with RAC when the service is already available.

Table 142–9 (Cont.) MODIFY_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
edition	If this argument has a non-NULL value, this provides the initial session edition for subsequent database connections using this service that do not specify an edition. If no value is specified, this argument has no effect. During service creation or modification, no validation is performed on this parameter. At connection time, if the connecting user does not have USE privilege on the edition, or the edition does not exist, this raises the error ORA-38802 (edition does not exist).
commit_outcome	Determines whether transaction COMMIT outcome is accessible after the COMMIT has executed. While the database guarantees that COMMIT is durable, this ensures that the outcome of the COMMIT is durable.Applications use the feature to probe the status of the commit last executed after an outage, and is available to applications to determine an outcome. Note: ■ Invoking the GET_LTXID_OUTCOME Procedure of the DBMS_APP_CONT package requires that the commit_outcome attribute be set. ■ commit_outcome has no effect on active Data Guard and read-only databases. ■ commit_outcome is allowed only on user-defined database services
retention_timeout	Used in conjunction with commit_outcome, it determines the amount of time (in seconds) that the COMMIT_OUTCOME is retained. Default is 24 hours (86400). Maximum value is 30 days (2592000).
replay_initiation_timeout	For Application Continuity, replay_initiation_timeout is the difference between the time of original execution of first operation of a request, and the time that the replay is ready to start after a successful reconnect. Replay initiation time is measured from the time that the request was originally submitted until the time that replay has connected and is ready to replay. When replay is expected, keep this value high. Default is 900 seconds.
session_state_consistency	Describes how nontransactional is changed during a request (values are DYNAMIC or STATIC). This parameter is considered only if failover_type is set to TRANSACTION for Application Continuity. Examples of session state are NLS settings, optimizer preferences, event settings, PL/SQL global variables, temporary tables, advanced queues, LOBs, and result cache. If these values change after the request starts, set to DYNAMIC (default). Almost all applications should use DYNAMIC mode. If you are unsure, use DYNAMIC mode.
sql_translation_name	Name of SQL translation unit
modify_edition	If TRUE, the edition service attribute is updated to use the edition argument value. If FALSE or NULL, the edition attribute is not updated.
clb_goal	Method used for Connection Load Balancing (see Table 142–2, " Constants Used in Connection Balancing Goal Arguments")

Usage Notes

- If you are using Clustered Managed Services with Oracle Clusterware, or using Oracle Restart with your single instance database, you must modify services using

the `srvctl` command rather than `DBMS_SERVICE`. When the service is started by Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart, the service is modified in the database to match the resource defined to either Oracle Clusterware or Oracle Restart. Any changes made with `DBMS_SERVICE` are lost unless they are also made with the corresponding `srvctl` command. Starting with 11.2.0.2, service attribute modifications take effect immediately when the service is started or modified by `srvctl`.

- Although users can modify the edition attribute while the service is up and running, it may not be safe to do so. Users must proceed with caution because this causes new connections to be connected at the new edition, while the existing connection is not affected. This can cause mid-tier operations to connect to the wrong edition.

START_SERVICE Procedure

This procedure starts a service. In Oracle RAC, implementing this option acts on the instance specified.

> **Note:** You cannot use this subprogram if your services are managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart or Oracle Global Data Services.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVICE.START_SERVICE(
   service_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   instance_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 142–10 START_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service limited to 64 characters in the Data Dictionary
instance_name	Name of the instance where the service must be activated (optional). NULL results in starting of the service on the local instance. In single instance, this can only be the current instance or NULL. Specify DBMS_SERVICE.ALL_INSTANCES to start the service on all configured instances.

Examples

```
DBMS_SERVICE.START_SERVICE('ernie.example.com');
```

STOP_SERVICE Procedure

This procedure stops a service.

> **Note:** You cannot use this subprogram if your services are managed by Oracle Clusterware, Oracle Restart or Oracle Global Data Services.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SERVICE.STOP_SERVICE(
   service_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   instance_name  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 142–11 STOP_SERVICE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
service_name	Name of the service limited to 64 characters in the Data Dictionary
instance_name	Name of the instance where the service must be stopped (optional). NULL results in stopping of the service locally. In single instance, this can only be the current instance or NULL. The default in Oracle RAC and exclusive case is NULL. Specify DBMS_SERVICE.ALL_INSTANCES to stop the service on all configured instances.

Examples

```
DBMS_SERVICE.STOP_SERVICE('ernie.example.com');
```

143

DBMS_SESSION

This package provides access to SQL `ALTER SESSION` and `SET ROLE` statements, and other session information, from PL/SQL. You can use `DBMS_SESSION` to set preferences and security levels.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SESSION

Security Model

This package runs with the privileges of the calling user, rather than the package owner `SYS`.

Operational Notes

You should not attempt to turn `close_cached_open_cursors` on or off.

Data Structures

The DBMS_SESSION package defines TABLE types.

Table Types

- INTEGER_ARRAY Table Type
- LNAME_ARRAY Table Type

INTEGER_ARRAY Table Type

A table type of `BINARY_INTEGER`.

Syntax

```
TYPE integer_array IS TABLE OF BINARY_INTEGER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

LNAME_ARRAY Table Type

A table type of VARCHAR2.

Syntax

```
TYPE lname_array IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(4000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_SESSION Subprograms

Table 143–1 DBMS_SESSION Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT Procedure on page 143-9	Clears all context information
CLEAR_CONTEXT Procedure on page 143-10	Clears the context
CLEAR_IDENTIFIER Procedure on page 143-11	Clears the identifier
CLOSE_DATABASE_LINK Procedure on page 143-12	Closes database link
FREE_UNUSED_USER_MEMORY Procedure on page 143-13	Lets you reclaim unused memory after performing operations requiring large amounts of memory
GET_PACKAGE_MEMORY_ UTILIZATION Procedure on page 143-15	Describes static package memory usage
IS_ROLE_ENABLED Function on page 143-16	Determines if the named role is enabled for the session.
IS_SESSION_ALIVE Function on page 143-17	Determines if the specified session is active
LIST_CONTEXT Procedures on page 143-18	Returns a list of active namespace and context for the current session
MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE Procedure on page 143-19	Used to perform various actions (as specified by the `action_flags` parameter) on the session state of all PL/SQL program units active in the session
SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure on page 143-23	Resets the session-level SQL trace for the session from which it was called.
SESSION _TRACE_ENABLE Procedure on page 143-24	Enables session-level SQL trace for the invoking session
RESET_PACKAGE Procedure on page 143-25	De-instantiates all packages in the session
SET_CONTEXT Procedure on page 143-27	Sets or resets the value of a context attribute
SET_EDITION_DEFERRED Procedure on page 143-29	Requests a switch to the specified edition
SET_IDENTIFIER Procedure on page 143-30	Sets the identifier
SET_NLS Procedure on page 143-31	Sets Globalization Support (NLS)
SET_ROLE Procedure on page 143-32	Sets role
SET_SQL_TRACE Procedure on page 143-33	Turns tracing on or off
SWITCH_CURRENT_ CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure on page 143-34	Facilitates changing the current resource consumer group of a user's current session
UNIQUE_SESSION_ID Function on page 143-36	Returns an identifier that is unique for all sessions currently connected to this database

CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT Procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT
   namespace         VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–2 CLEAR_ALL_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
namespace	The namespace where the application context information is to be cleared. Required.

Usage Notes

- This procedure must be invoked directly or indirectly by the trusted package.
- Any changes in context value are reflected immediately and subsequent calls to access the value through SYS_CONTEXT return the most recent value.

CLEAR_CONTEXT Procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.CLEAR_CONTEXT
   namespace         VARCHAR2,
   client_identifier VARCHAR2
   attribute         VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–3 CLEAR_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
namespace	Namespace in which the application context is to be cleared. Required. For a session-local context, namespace must be specified. If namespace is defined as Session Local Context, then client_identifier is optional since it is only associated with a globally accessed context. For a globally accessed context, namespace must be specified. NULL is a valid value for client_identifier because a session with no identifier set can see a context that looks like the (namespace, attribute, value, username, null) set using SET_CONTEXT.
client_identifier	Applies to a global context and is optional for other types of contexts; 64-byte maximum
attribute	Specific attribute in the namespace to be cleared. Optional. the default is NULL. If you specify attribute as NULL, then (namespace, attribute, value) for that namespace are cleared from the session. If attribute is not specified, then all context information that has the namespace and client_identifier arguments is cleared.

Usage Notes

- This procedure must be invoked directly or indirectly by the trusted package.
- Any changes in context value are reflected immediately and subsequent calls to access the value through SYS_CONTEXT return the most recent value.

CLEAR_IDENTIFIER Procedure

This procedure removes the `set_client_id` in the session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.CLEAR_IDENTIFIER;
```

Usage Notes

This procedure is executable by public.

CLOSE_DATABASE_LINK Procedure

This procedure closes an open database link. It is equivalent to the following SQL statement:

```
ALTER SESSION CLOSE DATABASE LINK <name>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.CLOSE_DATABASE_LINK (
   dblink VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–4 CLOSE_DATABASE_LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dblink	Name of the database link to close

FREE_UNUSED_USER_MEMORY Procedure

This procedure reclaims unused memory after performing operations requiring large amounts of memory (more than 100K).

Examples of operations that use large amounts of memory include:

- Large sorting where entire `sort_area_size` is used and `sort_area_size` is hundreds of KB.
- Compiling large PL/SQL packages, procedures, or functions.
- Storing hundreds of KB of data within PL/SQL indexed tables.

You can monitor user memory by tracking the statistics "session UGA memory" and "session PGA memory" in the `v$sesstat` or `v$statname` fixed views. Monitoring these statistics also shows how much memory this procedure has freed.

> **Note:** This procedure should only be used in cases where memory is at a premium. It should be used infrequently and judiciously.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.FREE_UNUSED_USER_MEMORY;
```

Return Values

The behavior of this procedure depends upon the configuration of the server operating on behalf of the client:

- **Dedicated server**: This returns unused PGA memory and session memory to the operating system. Session memory is allocated from the PGA in this configuration.
- **Shared server**: This returns unused session memory to the `shared_pool`. Session memory is allocated from the `shared_pool` in this configuration.

Usage Notes

In order to free memory using this procedure, the memory must not be in use.

After an operation allocates memory, only the same type of operation can reuse the allocated memory. For example, after memory is allocated for sort, even if the sort is complete and the memory is no longer in use, only another sort can reuse the sort-allocated memory. For both sort and compilation, after the operation is complete, the memory is no longer in use, and the user can call this procedure to free the unused memory.

An indexed table implicitly allocates memory to store values assigned to the indexed table's elements. Thus, the more elements in an indexed table, the more memory the RDBMS allocates to the indexed table. As long as there are elements within the indexed table, the memory associated with an indexed table is in use.

The scope of indexed tables determines how long their memory is in use. Indexed tables declared globally are indexed tables declared in packages or package bodies. They allocate memory from session memory. For an indexed table declared globally, the memory remains in use for the lifetime of a user's login (lifetime of a user's session), and is freed after the user disconnects from ORACLE.

Indexed tables declared locally are indexed tables declared within functions, procedures, or anonymous blocks. These indexed tables allocate memory from PGA

memory. For an indexed table declared locally, the memory remains in use for as long as the user is still running the procedure, function, or anonymous block in which the indexed table is declared.After the procedure, function, or anonymous block is finished running, the memory is then available for other locally declared indexed tables to use (in other words, the memory is no longer in use).

Assigning an uninitialized, "empty" indexed table to an existing index table is a method to explicitly re-initialize the indexed table and the memory associated with the indexed table. After this operation, the memory associated with the indexed table is no longer in use, making it available to be freed by calling this procedure. This method is particularly useful on indexed tables declared globally which can grow during the lifetime of a user's session, as long as the user no longer needs the contents of the indexed table.

The memory rules associated with an indexed table's scope still apply; this method and this procedure, however, allow users to intervene and to explicitly free the memory associated with an indexed table.

Examples

The following PL/SQL illustrates the method and the use of procedure `FREE_UNUSED_USER_MEMORY`.

```
CREATE PACKAGE foobar
   type number_idx_tbl is table of number indexed by binary_integer;

   store1_table  number_idx_tbl;     --  PL/SQL indexed table
   store2_table  number_idx_tbl;     --  PL/SQL indexed table
   store3_table  number_idx_tbl;     --  PL/SQL indexed table
   ...
END;            --  end of foobar

DECLARE
   ...
   empty_table   number_idx_tbl;     --  uninitialized ("empty") version
BEGIN
   FOR i in 1..1000000 loop
     store1_table(i) := i;           --  load data
   END LOOP;
   ...
   store1_table := empty_table;      --  "truncate" the indexed table
   ...
   -
   dbms_session.free_unused_user_memory;  -- give memory back to system

   store1_table(1) := 100;           --  index tables still declared;
   store2_table(2) := 200;           --  but truncated.
   ...
END;
```

GET_PACKAGE_MEMORY_UTILIZATION Procedure

This procedure describes static package memory usage.

The output collections describe memory usage in each instantiated package. Each package is described by its owner name, package name, used memory amount, and unused allocated memory amount. The amount of unused memory is greater than zero because of memory fragmentation and also because once used free memory chunks initially go to a free list owned by the package memory heap. They are released back to the parent heap only when the FREE_UNUSED_USER_MEMORY Procedure is invoked.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.GET_PACKAGE_MEMORY_UTILIZATION (
   owner_names     OUT NOCOPY LNAME_ARRAY,
   unit_names      OUT NOCOPY LNAME_ARRAY,
   unit_types      OUT NOCOPY INTEGER_ARRAY,
   used_amounts    OUT NOCOPY INTEGER_ARRAY,
   free_amounts    OUT NOCOPY INTEGER_ARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 143–5 GET_PACKAGE_MEMORY_UTILIZATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name	Owner of package
unit_name	Name of package
unit_types	Value of the type# columns of the dictionary table obj$
used_amounts	Amount of allocated memory specified in bytes
free_amounts	Amount of available memory specified in bytes

IS_ROLE_ENABLED Function

This function determines if the named role is enabled for this session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.IS_ROLE_ENABLED (
   rolename    VARCHAR2)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 143–6 IS_ROLE_ENABLED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rolename	Name of the role.\

Return Values

Table 143–7 IS_ROLE_ENABLED Function Return Values

Return	Description
is_role_enabled	TRUE or FALSE, depending on whether the role is enabled

IS_SESSION_ALIVE Function

This function determines if the specified session is active.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.IS_SESSION_ALIVE (
   uniqueid VARCHAR2)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 143–8 IS_SESSION_ALIVE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
uniqueid	Unique ID of the session: This is the same one as returned by UNIQUE_SESSION_ID.

Return Values

Table 143–9 IS_SESSION_ALIVE Function Return Values

Return	Description
is_session_alive	TRUE or FALSE, depending on whether the session is active

LIST_CONTEXT Procedures

This procedure returns a list of active namespaces and contexts for the current session.

Syntax

```
TYPE AppCtxRecTyp IS RECORD (
   namespace VARCHAR2(30),
   attribute VARCHAR2(30),
   value     VARCHAR2(256));

TYPE AppCtxTabTyp IS TABLE OF AppCtxRecTyp INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;

DBMS_SESSION.LIST_CONTEXT (
   list OUT AppCtxTabTyp,
   size OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 143–10 LIST_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
list	Buffer to store a list of application context set in the current session

Return Values

Table 143–11 LIST_CONTEXT Procedure Return Values

Return	Description
list	A list of (namespace, attribute, values) set in current session
size	Returns the number of entries in the buffer returned

Usage Notes

The context information in the list appears as a series of <namespace> <attribute> <value>. Because list is a table type variable, its size is dynamically adjusted to the size of returned list.

MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE Procedure

This procedure is used to perform various actions (as specified by the action_flags parameter) on the session state of all PL/SQL program units active in the session. This takes effect after the PL/SQL call that made the current invocation finishes running. The procedure uses the DBMS_SESSION constants listed in Table 143–13.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE(
   action_flags IN PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 143–12 MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
action_flags	Bit flags that determine the action taken on PL/SQL program units: DBMS_SESSION.FREE_ALL_RESOURCES (or 1)—frees all memory associated with each of the previously run PL/SQL programs from the session. Clears the current values of any package globals and closes cached cursors. On subsequent use, the PL/SQL program units are reinstantiated and package globals are reinitialized. Invoking MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE with the DBMS_SESSION.FREE_ALL_RESOURCES parameter provides functionality identical to the DBMS_SESSION.RESET_PACKAGE() interface. DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE (or 2)—reinitializes packages without actually being freed and recreated from scratch. Instead the package memory is reused. In terms of program semantics, the DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE flag is similar to the DBMS_SESSION.FREE_ALL_RESOURCES flag in that both have the effect of reinitializing all packages. However, DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE should exhibit better performance than the DBMS_SESSION.FREE_ALL_RESOURCES option because: ▪ Packages are reinitialized without actually being freed and recreated from scratch. Instead the package memory gets reused. ▪ Any open cursors are closed, semantically speaking. However, the cursor resource is not actually freed. It is simply returned to the PL/SQL cursor cache. The cursor cache is not flushed. Hence, cursors corresponding to frequently accessed static SQL in PL/SQL remains cached in the PL/SQL cursor cache and the application does not incur the overhead of opening, parsing, and closing a new cursor for those statements on subsequent use. ▪ The session memory for PL/SQL modules without global state (such as types, stored-procedures) are not freed and recreated.

Usage Notes

See the parameter descriptions in Table 143–14 for the differences between the flags and why DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE exhibits better performance than DBMS_SESSION.FREE_ALL_RESOURCES.

Table 143–13 Action_flags Constants for MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE

Constant	Description
FREE_ALL_RESOURCES	PLS_INTEGER:= 1
REINITIALIZE	PLS_INTEGER:= 2

- Reinitialization refers to the process of resetting all package variables to their initial values and running the initialization block (if any) in the package bodies. Consider the package:

```
package P is
  n number;
  m number := P2.foo;
  d date := SYSDATE;
  cursor c is select * from emp;
  procedure bar;
end P;
/
package body P is
  v   varchar2(20) := 'hello';
  procedure bar is
  begin
    ...
  end;
  procedure init_pkg is
  begin
    ....
  end;
begin
  -- initialization block
  init_pkg;
  ...
  ...
end P;
/
```

For the package P, reinitialization involves:

- Setting P.n to NULL
- Invoking function P2.foo and setting P.m to the value returned from P2.foo
- Setting P.d to the return value of SYSDATE built-in
- Closing cursor P.c if it was previously opened
- Setting P.v to 'hello'
- Running the initialization block in the package body
- The reinitialization for a package is done only if the package is actually referenced subsequently. Furthermore, the packages are reinitialized in the order in which they are referenced subsequently.
- When using FREE_ALL_RESOURCES or REINITIALIZE, make sure that resetting package variable values does not affect the application.

- Because DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE does not actually cause all the package state to be freed, in some situations, the application could use significantly more session memory than if the FREE_ALL_RESOURCES flag or the RESET_PACKAGE procedure had been used. For instance, after performing DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE(DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE), if the application does not refer to many of the packages that were previously referenced, then the session memory for those packages remains until the end of the session (or until DBMS_SESSION.RESET_PACKAGE is called).
- Because the client-side PL/SQL code cannot reference remote package variables or constants, you must explicitly use the values of the constants. For example, DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE(DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE) does not compile on the client because it uses the constant DBMS_SESSION.REINITIALIZE.

  Instead, use DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE(2) on the client, because the argument is explicitly provided.

Examples

This example illustrates the use of DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE. Consider a package P with some global state (a cursor c and a number cnt). When the package is first initialized, the package variable cnt is 0 and the cursor c is CLOSED. Then, in the session, change the value of cnt to 111 and also execute an OPEN operation on the cursor. If you call print_status to display the state of the package, you see that cnt is 111 and that the cursor is OPEN. Next, call DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE. If you print the status of the package P again using print_status, you see that cnt is 0 again and the cursor is CLOSED. If the call to DBMS_SESSION.MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE had not been made, then the second print_status would have printed 111 and OPEN.

```
create or replace package P is
  cnt    number := 0;
  cursor c is select * from emp;
  procedure print_status;
end P;
/
show errors;

create or replace package body P is
  procedure print_status is
  begin
    dbms_output.put_line('P.cnt = ' || cnt);
    if c%ISOPEN then
      dbms_output.put_line('P.c is OPEN');
    else
      dbms_output.put_line('P.c is CLOSED');
    end if;
  end;
end P;
/
show errors;

SQL> set serveroutput on;
SQL> begin
  2   P.cnt := 111;
  3   open p.c;
  4   P.print_status;
  5  end;
  6  /
P.cnt = 111
P.c is OPEN
```

```
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> begin
  2   dbms_session.modify_package_state(dbms_session.reinitialize);
  3  end;
  4  /

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> set serveroutput on;
SQL>
SQL> begin
  2   P.print_status;
  3  end;
  4  /
P.cnt = 0
P.c is CLOSED

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE Procedure

This procedure resets the session-level SQL trace for the session from which it was called. Client ID and service/module/action traces are not affected.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SESSION_TRACE_DISABLE;
```

SESSION _TRACE_ENABLE Procedure

This procedure enables session-level SQL trace for the invoking session. Invoking this procedure results in SQL tracing of every SQL statement issued by the session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE(
   waits     IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   binds     IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   plan_stat IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 143–14 SESSION_TRACE_ENABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
waits	Specifies if wait information is to be traced
binds	Specifies if bind information is to be traced
plan_stat	Frequency at which we dump row source statistics. Value should be 'NEVER', 'FIRST_EXECUTION' (equivalent to NULL) or 'ALL_EXECUTIONS'.

RESET_PACKAGE Procedure

This procedure de-instantiates all packages in this session. It frees the package state.

> **Note:** See "SESSION _TRACE_ENABLE Procedure" on page 143-24. The MODIFY_PACKAGE_STATE interface, introduced in Oracle9i, provides an equivalent of the RESET_PACKAGE capability. It is an efficient, lighter-weight variant for reinitializing the state of all PL/SQL packages in the session.

Memory used for caching the execution state is associated with all PL/SQL functions, procedures, and packages that were run in a session.

For packages, this collection of memory holds the current values of package variables and controls the cache of cursors opened by the respective PL/SQL programs. A call to `RESET_PACKAGE` frees the memory associated with each of the previously run PL/SQL programs from the session, and, consequently, clears the current values of any package globals and closes any cached cursors.

`RESET_PACKAGE` can also be used to reliably restart a failed program in a session. If a program containing package variables fails, then it is hard to determine which variables need to be reinitialized. `RESET_PACKAGE` guarantees that all package variables are reset to their initial values.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.RESET_PACKAGE;
```

Usage Notes

Because the amount of memory consumed by all executed PL/SQL can become large, you might use `RESET_PACKAGE` to trim down the session memory footprint at certain points in your database application. However, make sure that resetting package variable values does not affect the application. Also, remember that later execution of programs that have lost their cached memory and cursors will perform slower, because they need to re-create the freed memory and cursors.

`RESET_PACKAGE` does not free the memory, cursors, and package variables immediately when called.

> **Note:** `RESET_PACKAGE` only frees the memory, cursors, and package variables after the PL/SQL call that made the invocation finishes running.

For example, PL/SQL procedure `P1` calls PL/SQL procedure `P2`, and `P2` calls `RESET_PACKAGE`. The `RESET_PACKAGE` effects do not occur until procedure `P1` finishes execution (the PL/SQL call ends).

Examples

This SQL*Plus script runs a large program with many PL/SQL program units that may or may not use global variables, but it doesn't need them beyond this execution:

```
EXCECUTE large_plsql_program1;
```

To free up PL/SQL cached session memory:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SESSION.RESET_PACKAGE;
```

To run another large program:

```
EXECUTE large_plsql_program2;
```

SET_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure sets the context, of which there are four types: session local, globally initialized, externally initialized, and globally accessed.

Of its five parameters, only the first three are required; the final two parameters are optional, used only in globally accessed contexts. Further parameter information appears in the parameter table and the usage notes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SET_CONTEXT (
   namespace VARCHAR2,
   attribute VARCHAR2,
   value     VARCHAR2,
   username  VARCHAR2,
   client_id VARCHAR2 );
```

Parameters

Table 143–15 SET_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
namespace	Namespace of the application context to be set, limited to 30 bytes
attribute	Attribute of the application context to be set, limited to 30 bytes
value	Value of the application context to be set, limited to 4 kilobytes.
username	Database username attribute of the application context. Default: NULL
client_id	Application-specific client_id attribute of the application context (64-byte maximum). Default: NULL

Usage Notes

- The first three parameters are required for all types of context.
- The username parameter must be a valid SQL identifier.
- The client_id parameter must be a string of at most 64 bytes. It is case-sensitive and must match the argument provided for set_identifier.
- If the namespace parameter is a global context namespace, then the username parameter is matched against the current database user name in the session, and the client_id parameter is matched against the current client_id in the session. If these parameters are not set, NULL is assumed, enabling any user to see the context values.
- This procedure must be invoked directly or indirectly by the trusted package.
- The caller of SET_CONTEXT must be in the calling stack of a procedure that has been associated to the context namespace through a CREATE CONTEXT statement. The checking of the calling stack does not cross a DBMS boundary.
- No limit applies to the number of attributes that can be set in a namespace. An attribute retains its value during the user's session unless it is reset by the user.

- If the value of the parameter in the namespace has been set, `SET_CONTEXT` overwrites this value.
- Any changes in context value are reflected immediately and subsequent calls to access the value through `SYS_CONTEXT` return the most recent value.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide* for more information about

- "Setting the username and client ID"
- "Example: Creating a Global Application Context that Uses a Client Session ID"

SET_EDITION_DEFERRED Procedure

This procedure requests a switch to the specified edition. The switch takes effect at the end of the current client call.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SET_EDITION_DEFERRED (
   edition    IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–16 SET_EDITION_DEFERRED Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
edition	Name of the edition to which to switch. The contents of the string are processed as a SQL identifier; double quotation marks must surround the remainder of the string if special characters or lower case characters are present in the edition's actual name and, if double quotation marks are not used, the contents are set in uppercase. The caller must have USE privilege on the named edition.

SET_IDENTIFIER Procedure

This procedure sets the client ID in the session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SET_IDENTIFIER (
   client_id VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–17 SET_IDENTIFIER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
client_id	Case-sensitive application-specific identifier of the current database session

Usage Notes

- SET_IDENTIFIER sets the session's client id to the given value. This value can be used to identify sessions in v$session by means of v$session.client_identifier. It can also be used to identify sessions by means of sys_context('USERENV','CLIENT_IDENTIFIER').
- This procedure is executable by PUBLIC.

SET_NLS Procedure

This procedure sets up your Globalization Support (NLS). It is equivalent to the following SQL statement:

```
ALTER SESSION SET <nls_parameter> = <value>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SET_NLS (
   param VARCHAR2,
   value VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–18 SET_NLS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`param`	Globalization Support parameter. The parameter name must begin with 'NLS'.
`value`	Parameter value. If the parameter is a text literal, then it needs embedded single-quotes. For example, "`set_nls ('nls_date_format','"DD-MON-YY"')`".

SET_ROLE Procedure

This procedure enables and disables roles. It is equivalent to the `SET ROLE` SQL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SET_ROLE (
   role_cmd VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 143–19 SET_ROLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`role_cmd`	Text is appended to "set role" and then run as SQL

Usage Notes

Note that the procedure creates a new transaction if it is not invoked from within an existing transaction.

SET_SQL_TRACE Procedure

This procedure turns tracing on or off. It is equivalent to the following SQL statement:

```
ALTER SESSION SET SQL_TRACE ...
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.SET_SQL_TRACE (
   sql_trace boolean);
```

Parameters

Table 143–20 SET_SQL_TRACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_trace	TRUE turns tracing on, FALSE turns tracing off

SWITCH_CURRENT_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure

This procedure changes the current resource consumer group of a user's current session.

This lets you switch to a consumer group if you have the switch privilege for that particular group. If the caller is another procedure, then this enables the user to switch to a consumer group for which the owner of that procedure has switch privilege.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.switch_current_consumer_group (
   new_consumer_group     IN  VARCHAR2,
   old_consumer_group     OUT VARCHAR2,
   initial_group_on_error IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 143–21 SWITCH_CURRENT_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_consumer_group	Name of consumer group to which you want to switch
old_consumer_group	Name of the consumer group from which you just switched out
initial_group_on_error	If TRUE, then sets the current consumer group of the caller to his/her initial consumer group in the event of an error

Return Values

This procedure outputs the old consumer group of the user in the parameter old_consumer_group.

Note: You can switch back to the old consumer group later using the value returned in old_consumer_group.

Exceptions

Table 143–22 SWITCH_CURRENT_CONSUMER_GROUP Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
29368	Non-existent consumer group
1031	Insufficient privileges
29396	Cannot switch to OTHER_GROUPS consumer group

Usage Notes

The owner of a procedure must have privileges on the group from which a user was switched (old_consumer_group) in order to switch them back. There is one exception: The procedure can always switch the user back to his/her initial consumer group (skipping the privilege check).

By setting initial_group_on_error to TRUE, SWITCH_CURRENT_CONSUMER_GROUP puts the current session into the default group, if it can't put it into the group designated by

new_consumer_group. The error associated with the attempt to move a session into new_consumer_group is raised, even though the current consumer group has been changed to the initial consumer group.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE high_priority_task is
   old_group varchar2(30);
   prev_group varchar2(30);
   curr_user varchar2(30);
BEGIN
  -- switch invoker to privileged consumer group. If we fail to do so, an
  -- error is thrown, but the consumer group does not change
  -- because 'initial_group_on_error' is set to FALSE

  dbms_session.switch_current_consumer_group('tkrogrp1', old_group, FALSE);
  -- set up exception handler (in the event of an error, we do not want to
  -- return to caller while leaving the session still in the privileged
  -- group)

  BEGIN
    -- perform some operations while under privileged group

  EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
     -- It is possible that the procedure owner does not have privileges
     -- on old_group. 'initial_group_on_error' is set to TRUE to make sure
     -- that the user is moved out of the privileged group in such a
     -- situation

     dbms_session.switch_current_consumer_group(old_group,prev_group,TRUE);
     RAISE;
    END;

  -- we've succeeded. Now switch to old_group, or if cannot do so, switch
  -- to caller's initial consumer group

  dbms_session.switch_current_consumer_group(old_group,prev_group,TRUE);
END high_priority_task;
/
```

UNIQUE_SESSION_ID Function

This function returns an identifier that is unique for all sessions currently connected to this database. Multiple calls to this function during the same session always return the same result.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SESSION.UNIQUE_SESSION_ID
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(unique_session_id,WNDS,RNDS,WNPS);
```

Return Values

Table 143–23 UNIQUE_SESSION_ID Function Return Values

Return	Description
unique_session_id	Returns up to 24 bytes

144

DBMS_SHARED_POOL

The DBMS_SHARED_POOL package provides access to the shared pool, which is the shared memory area where cursors and PL/SQL objects are stored. DBMS_SHARED_POOL enables you to display the sizes of objects in the shared pool, and mark them for keeping or not-keeping in order to reduce memory fragmentation.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SHARED_POOL

Overview

The procedures provided here may be useful when loading large PL/SQL objects. When large PL/SQL objects are loaded, users response time is affected because of the large number of smaller objects that need to be aged out from the shared pool to make room (due to memory fragmentation). In some cases, there may be insufficient memory to load the large objects.

DBMS_SHARED_POOL is also useful for frequently executed triggers. You may want to keep compiled triggers on frequently used tables in the shared pool.

Additionally, DBMS_SHARED_POOL supports sequences. Sequence numbers are lost when a sequence is aged out of the shared pool. DBMS_SHARED_POOL is useful for keeping sequences in the shared pool and thus preventing the loss of sequence numbers.

Operational Notes

To create DBMS_SHARED_POOL, run the DBMSPOOL.SQL script. The PRVTPOOL.PLB script is automatically executed after DBMSPOOL.SQL runs. These scripts are *not* run by as part of standard database creation.

Summary of DBMS_SHARED_POOL Subprograms

Table 144–1 DBMS_SHARED_POOL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ABORTED_REQUEST_THRESHOLD Procedure on page 144-6	Sets the aborted request threshold for the shared pool
KEEP Procedure on page 144-7	Keeps an object in the shared pool
MARKHOT Procedure on page 144-9	Marks a library cache object as a hot object
PURGE Procedure on page 144-10	Purges the named object or specified heap(s) of the object
SIZES Procedure on page 144-12	Shows objects in the shared pool that are larger than the specified size
UNKEEP Procedure on page 144-13	Unkeeps the named object
UNMARKHOT Procedure on page 144-14	Unmarks a library cache object as a hot object

ABORTED_REQUEST_THRESHOLD Procedure

This procedure sets the aborted request threshold for the shared pool.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.ABORTED_REQUEST_THRESHOLD (
   threshold_size NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 144–2 ABORTED_REQUEST_THRESHOLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
threshold_size	Size, in bytes, of a request which does not try to free unpinned (not "unkeep-ed") memory within the shared pool. The range of threshold_size is 5000 to ~2 GB inclusive.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if the threshold is not in the valid range.

Usage Notes

Usually, if a request cannot be satisfied on the free list, then the RDBMS tries to reclaim memory by freeing objects from the LRU list and checking periodically to see if the request can be fulfilled. After finishing this step, the RDBMS has performed a near equivalent of an 'ALTER SYSTEM FLUSH SHARED_POOL'.

Because this impacts all users on the system, this procedure "localizes" the impact to the process failing to find a piece of shared pool memory of size greater than thresh_hold size. This user gets the 'out of memory' error without attempting to search the LRU list.

KEEP Procedure

This procedure keeps an object in the shared pool. Once an object has been kept in the shared pool, it is not subject to aging out of the pool. This may be useful for frequently used large objects. When large objects are brought into the shared pool, several objects may need to be aged out to create a contiguous area large enough.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.KEEP (
   name VARCHAR2,
   flag CHAR      DEFAULT 'P');
```

Parameters

Table 144–3 KEEP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the object to keep. The value for this identifier is the concatenation of the address and hash_value columns from the v$sqlarea view. This is displayed by the SIZES procedure. Currently, TABLE and VIEW objects may not be kept.
flag	(Optional) If this is not specified, then the package assumes that the first parameter is the name of a package/procedure/function and resolves the name. Set to 'P' or 'p' to fully specify that the input is the name of a package/procedure/function. Set to 'T' or 't' to specify that the input is the name of a type. Set to 'R' or 'r' to specify that the input is the name of a trigger. Set to 'Q' or 'q' to specify that the input is the name of a sequence. In case the first argument is a cursor address and hash-value, the parameter should be set to any character except 'P' or 'p' or 'Q' or 'q' or 'R' or 'r' or 'T' or 't'.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found.

Usage Notes

There are two kinds of objects:

- PL/SQL objects, triggers, sequences, and types which are specified by name
- SQL cursor objects which are specified by a two-part number (indicating a location in the shared pool).

For example:

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.KEEP('scott.hispackage')
```

This keeps package HISPACKAGE, owned by SCOTT. The names for PL/SQL objects follow SQL rules for naming objects (for example, delimited identifiers and multibyte

names are allowed). A cursor can be kept by `DBMS_SHARED_POOL.KEEP('0034CDFF, 20348871','C'), 0034CDFF` being the `ADDRESS` and `20348871` the `HASH_VALUE`. Note that the complete hexadecimal address must be in the first 8 characters.

MARKHOT Procedure

This procedure marks a library cache object as a hot object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.MARKHOT (
   schema         VARCHAR2,
   objname        VARCHAR2,
   namespace      NUMBER DEFAULT 1,   global         BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);

DBMS_SHARED_POOL.MARKHOT (
   hash           VARCHAR2,
   namespace      NUMBER DEFAULT 1,
   global         BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 144–4 MARKHOT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	User name or the schema to which the object belongs
objname	Name of the object
namespace	Number indicating the library cache namespace in which the object is to be searched. Views, such as USER_OBJECTS and DBA_OBJECTS, reflect the namespace as a number column, as do most dictionary tables such as OBJ$.
global	If TRUE (default), mark the object hot on all Oracle RAC instances
hash	16-byte hash value for the object

Exceptions

ORA-06502: An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found due to incorrect input

ORA-04043: An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found (bad namespace, or hash input)

Usage Notes

If a package or type's specification is marked hot or unhot, then the corresponding package or type body will be implicitly marked as hot or unhot.

PURGE Procedure

This procedure purges the named object or specified heap(s) of the object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.PURGE (
   name         VARCHAR2,
   flag         CHAR DEFAULT 'P',
   heaps        NUMBER DEFAULT 1);

DBMS_SHARED_POOL.PURGE (
   schema       VARCHAR2,
   objname      VARCHAR2,
   namespace    NUMBER,
   heaps        NUMBER);

DBMS_SHARED_POOL.PURGE (
   hash         VARCHAR2,
   namespace    NUMBER,
   heaps        NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 144–5 PURGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the object to purge. The value for this identifier is the concatenation of the address and hash_value columns from the v$sqlarea view. This is displayed by the SIZES procedure. Currently, TABLE and VIEW objects may not be purged.
flag	(Optional) If this is not specified, then the package assumes that the first parameter is the name of a package/procedure/function and resolves the name. Set to 'P' or 'p' to fully specify that the input is the name of a package/procedure/function. Set to 'T' or 't' to specify that the input is the name of a type. Set to 'R' or 'r' to specify that the input is the name of a trigger. Set to 'Q' or 'q' to specify that the input is the name of a sequence. In case the first argument is a cursor address and hash-value, the parameter should be set to any character except 'P' or 'p' or 'Q' or 'q' or 'R' or 'r' or 'T' or 't'.
heaps	Heaps to be purged. For example, if heap 0 and heap 6 are to be purged: 1<<0 | 1<<6 => hex 0x41 => decimal 65, so specify heaps =>65.Default is 1, that is, heap 0 which means the whole object would be purged
schema	User name or the schema to which the object belongs
objname	Name of the object to purge
namespace	Parameter is a number indicating the library cache namespace in which the object is to be searched

Table 144–5 (Cont.) PURGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
hash	16-byte hash value for the object

Exceptions

ORA-6570: An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found

ORA-6570: An object cannot be purged it marked as permanently kept

Usage Notes

All objects supported by the KEEP Procedure are supported for PURGE.

SIZES Procedure

This procedure shows objects in the `shared_pool` that are larger than the specified size. The name of the object is also given, which can be used as an argument to either the `KEEP` or `UNKEEP` calls.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.SIZES (
   minsize NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 144–6 SIZES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`minsize`	Size, in kilobytes, over which an object must be occupying in the shared pool, in order for it to be displayed.

Usage Notes

Issue the SQLDBA or SQLPLUS `'SET SERVEROUTPUT ON SIZE XXXXX'` command prior to using this procedure so that the results are displayed.

UNKEEP Procedure

This procedure unkeeps the named object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.UNKEEP (
   name VARCHAR2,
   flag CHAR     DEFAULT 'P');
```

Caution: This procedure may not be supported in the future if automatic mechanisms are implemented to make this unnecessary.

Parameters

Table 144–7 UNKEEP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the object to unkeep. See description of the name object for the KEEP procedure.
flag	See description of the flag parameter for the KEEP procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-06502: An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found

UNMARKHOT Procedure

This procedure unmarks a library cache object as a hot object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SHARED_POOL.UNMARKHOT (
   schema         VARCHAR2,
   objname        VARCHAR2,
   namespace      NUMBER DEFAULT 1,   global         BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);

DBMS_SHARED_POOL.UNMARKHOT (
   hash          VARCHAR2,
   namespace     NUMBER DEFAULT 1,
   global        BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 144–8 UNMARKHOT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	User name or the schema to which the object belongs
objname	Name of the object
namespace	Number indicating the library cache namespace in which the object is to be searched
global	If TRUE (default), unmark the object hot on all Oracle RAC instances
hash	16-byte hash value for the object

Exceptions

ORA-06502: An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found due to incorrect input

ORA-04043: An exception is raised if the named object cannot be found (bad namespace, or hash input, or non-existent object)

Usage Notes

If a package or type's specification is marked hot or unhot, then the corresponding package or type body will be implicitly marked as hot or unhot.

145

DBMS_SPACE

The DBMS_SPACE package enables you to analyze segment growth and space requirements.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SPACE

- Security Model
-

Security Model

This package runs with SYS privileges. The execution privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package run under the caller security. The user must have ANALYZE privilege on the object.

Data Structures

The DBMS_SPACE package defines an OBJECT type, a RECORD type, and a TABLE type.

OBJECT Types

CREATE_TABLE_COST_COLINFO Object Type

RECORD Types

ASA_RECO_ROW Record Type

TABLE Types

ASA_RECO_ROW_TB Table Type

CREATE_TABLE_COST_COLINFO Object Type

This type describes the datatype and size of a column in the table.

Syntax

```
TYPE create_table_cost_colinfo IS OBJECT(
    col_type    VARCHAR(200),
    col_size    NUMBER)
```

Attributes

Table 145–1 CQ_NOTIFICATION$_DESCRIPTOR Object Type

Attribute	Description
col_type	Column type
col_size	Column size

ASA_RECO_ROW Record Type

This type contains the column type of individual columns returned by the ASA_RECOMMENDATIONS Function.

Syntax

```
TYPE asa_reco_row IS RECORD (
   tablespace_name       VARCHAR2(30),
   segment_owner         VARCHAR2(30),
   segment_name          VARCHAR2(30),   segment_type          VARCHAR2(18),
   partition_name        VARCHAR2(30),
   allocated_space       NUMBER,
   used_space            NUMBER,
   reclaimable_space     NUMBER,
   chain_rowexcess       NUMBER,
   recommendations       VARCHAR2(1000),
   c1                    VARCHAR2(1000),
   c2                    VARCHAR2(1000),
   c3                    VARCHAR2(1000),
   task_id               NUMBER,
   mesg_id               NUMBER);
```

Attributes

Table 145–2 ASA_RECO_ROW Attributes

Field	Description
tablespace_name	Name of the tablespace containing the object
segment_owner	Name of the schema
segment_name	Name of the object
segment_type	Type of the segment 'TABLE','INDEX' and so on
partition_name	Name of the partition
allocated_space	Space allocated to the segment
used_space	Space actually used by the segment
reclaimable_space	Reclaimable free space in the segment
chain_rowexcess	Percentage of excess chain row pieces that can be eliminated
recommendations	Recommendation or finding for this segment
c1	Command associated with the recommendation
c2	Command associated with the recommendation
c3	Command associated with the recommendation
task_id	Advisor Task that processed this segment
mesg_id	Message ID corresponding to the recommendation

ASA_RECO_ROW_TB Table Type

Syntax

```
TYPE asa_reco_row_tb IS TABLE OF asa_reco_row;
```

Summary of DBMS_SPACE Subprograms

Table 145–3 DBMS_SPACE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ASA_RECOMMENDATIONS Function on page 145-9	Returns recommendations/findings of segment advisor run automatically by the system or manually invoked by the user
CREATE_INDEX_COST Procedure on page 145-10	Determines the cost of creating an index on an existing table
CREATE_TABLE_COST Procedures on page 145-11	Determines the size of the table given various attributes
FREE_BLOCKS Procedure on page 145-13	Returns information about free blocks in an object (table, index, or cluster)
ISDATAFILEDROPPABLE_ NAME Procedure on page 145-15	Checks whether a datafile is droppable
OBJECT_DEPENDENT_ SEGMENTS Function on page 145-16	Returns the list of segments that are associated with the object
OBJECT_GROWTH_TREND Function on page 145-18	A table function where each row describes the space usage of the object at a specific point in time
SPACE_USAGE Procedures on page 145-20	Returns information about free blocks in an auto segment space managed segment
UNUSED_SPACE Procedure on page 145-23	Returns information about unused space in an object (table, index, or cluster)

ASA_RECOMMENDATIONS Function

This function returns recommendations using the stored results of the auto segment advisor. This function returns results from the latest run on any given object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.ASA_RECOMMENDATIONS (
   all_runs        IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT := TRUE,
   show_manual     IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT := TRUE,
   show_findings   IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT := FALSE)
 RETURN ASA_RECO_ROW_TB PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 145–4 ASA_RECOMMENDATIONS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
all_runs	If TRUE, returns recommendations/findings for all runs of auto segment advisor. If FALSE, returns the results of the LATEST run only. LATEST does not make sense for manual invocation of segment advisor. This is applicable only for auto advisor.
show_manual	If TRUE, we show the results of manual invocations only. The auto advisor results are excluded. If FALSE, results of manual invocation of segment advisor are not returned.
show_findings	Show only the findings instead of the recommendations

CREATE_INDEX_COST Procedure

This procedure determines the cost of creating an index on an existing table. The input is the DDL statement that will be used to create the index. The procedure will output the storage required to create the index.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.CREATE_INDEX_COST (
   ddl             IN    VARCHAR2,
   used_bytes      OUT   NUMBER,
   alloc_bytes     OUT   NUMBER,
   plan_table      IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(create_index_cost,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 145–5 CREATE_INDEX_COST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ddl	The create index DDL statement
used_bytes	The number of bytes representing the actual index data
alloc_bytes	Size of the index when created in the tablespace
plan_table	Which plan table to use, default NULL

Usage Notes

- The table on which the index is created must already exist.
- The computation of the index size depends on statistics gathered on the segment.
- It is imperative that the table must have been analyzed recently.
- In the absence of correct statistics, the results may be inaccurate, although the procedure will not raise any errors.

CREATE_TABLE_COST Procedures

This procedure is used in capacity planning to determine the size of the table given various attributes. The size of the object can vary widely based on the tablespace storage attributes, tablespace block size, and so on. There are two overloads of this procedure.

- The first version takes the column information of the table as argument and outputs the table size.
- The second version takes the average row size of the table as argument and outputs the table size.

This procedure can be used on tablespace of dictionary managed and locally managed extent management as well as manual and auto segment space management.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.CREATE_TABLE_COST (
   tablespace_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   avg_row_size       IN NUMBER,
   row_count          IN NUMBER,
   pct_free           IN NUMBER,
   used_bytes         OUT NUMBER,
   alloc_bytes        OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_SPACE.CREATE_TABLE_COST (
   tablespace_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   colinfos           IN CREATE_TABLE_COST_COLUMNS,
   row_count          IN NUMBER,
   pct_free           IN NUMBER,
   used_bytes         OUT NUMBER,
   alloc_bytes        OUT NUMBER);

CREATE TYPE create_table_cost_colinfo IS OBJECT (
   COL_TYPE   VARCHAR(200),
   COL_SIZE   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 145–6 CREATE_TABLE_COST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	The tablespace in which the object will be created. The default is SYSTEM tablespace.
avg_row_size	The anticipated average row size in the table
colinfos	The description of the columns
row_count	The anticipated number of rows in the table
pct_free	The percentage of free space in each block for future expansion of existing rows due to updates
used_bytes	The space used by user data
alloc_bytes	The size of the object taking into account the tablespace extent characteristics

Usage Notes

- The `used_bytes` represent the actual bytes used by the data. This includes the overhead due to the block metadata, pctfree etc.
- The `alloc_bytes` represent the size of the table when it is created in the tablespace. This takes into account, the size of the extents in the tablespace and tablespace extent management properties.

Examples

```
-- review the parameters
SELECT argument_name, data_type, type_owner, type_name
FROM all_arguments
WHERE object_name = 'CREATE_TABLE_COST'
AND overload = 2

-- examine the input parameter type
SELECT text
FROM dba_source
WHERE name = 'CREATE_TABLE_COST_COLUMNS';

-- drill down further into the input parameter type
SELECT text
FROM dba_source
WHERE name = 'create_table_cost_colinfo';

set serveroutput on

DECLARE
 ub NUMBER;
 ab NUMBER;
 cl sys.create_table_cost_columns;
BEGIN
  cl := sys.create_table_cost_columns( sys.create_table_cost_colinfo('NUMBER',10),
        sys.create_table_cost_colinfo('VARCHAR2',30),
        sys.create_table_cost_colinfo('VARCHAR2',30),
        sys.create_table_cost_colinfo('DATE',NULL));

  DBMS_SPACE.CREATE_TABLE_COST('SYSTEM',cl,100000,0,ub,ab);

  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Used Bytes: ' || TO_CHAR(ub));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Alloc Bytes: ' || TO_CHAR(ab));
END;
/
```

FREE_BLOCKS Procedure

This procedure returns information about free blocks in an object (table, index, or cluster). See SPACE_USAGE Procedures for returning free block information in an auto segment space managed segment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.FREE_BLOCKS (
   segment_owner     IN  VARCHAR2,
   segment_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   segment_type      IN  VARCHAR2,
   freelist_group_id IN  NUMBER,
   free_blks         OUT NUMBER,
   scan_limit        IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   partition_name    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(free_blocks,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 145–7 FREE_BLOCKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
segment_owner	Schema name of the segment to be analyzed
segment_name	Segment name of the segment to be analyzed
segment_type	Type of the segment to be analyzed (TABLE, INDEX, or CLUSTER): ■ TABLE ■ TABLE PARTITION ■ TABLE SUBPARTITION ■ INDEX ■ INDEX PARTITION ■ INDEX SUBPARTITION ■ CLUSTER ■ LOB ■ LOB PARTITION ■ LOB SUBPARTITION
freelist_group_id	Freelist group (instance) whose free list size is to be computed
free_blks	Returns count of free blocks for the specified group
scan_limit	Maximum number of free list blocks to read (optional). Use a scan limit of X you are interested only in the question, "Do I have X blocks on the free list?"
partition_name	Partition name of the segment to be analyzed. This is only used for partitioned tables. The name of subpartition should be used when partitioning is composite.

Examples

The following uses the `CLUS` cluster in `SCOTT` schema with 4 freelist groups. It returns the number of blocks in freelist group 3 in `CLUS`.

```
DBMS_SPACE.FREE_BLOCKS('SCOTT', 'CLUS', 'CLUSTER', 3, :free_blocks);
```

Note: An error is raised if `scan_limit` is not a positive number.

ISDATAFILEDROPPABLE_NAME Procedure

This procedure checks whether a datafile is droppable. This procedure may be called before actually dropping the file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.ISDATAFILEDROPPABLE_NAME (
   filename     IN     VARCHAR2,
   value        OUT    NUMBER);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(free_blocks,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 145–8 ISDATAFILEDROPPABLE_NAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`filename`	Name of the file
`value`	Values: `0` if the file is not droppable, `1` if the file is droppable.

Examples

```
DECLARE   fname    VARCHAR2(100);   retval   NUMBER;BEGIN   SELECT file_name
INTO fname   FROM dba_data_files   WHERE file_name like '%empty%';DBMS_
SPACE.ISDATAFILEDROPPABLE_NAME(fname, retval);DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval);END;/
```

OBJECT_DEPENDENT_SEGMENTS Function

This table function, given an object, returns the list of segments that are associated with the object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.OBJECT_DEPENDENT_SEGMENTS(
   objowner     IN     VARCHAR2,
   objname      IN     VARCHAR2,
   partname     IN     VARCHAR2,
   objtype      IN     NUMBER)
  RETURN dependent_segments_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 145–9 OBJECT_DEPENDENT_SEGMENTS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
objowner	The schema containing the object
objname	The name of the object
partname	The name of the partition
objtype	Type of the object: ■ OBJECT_TYPE_TABLE constant positive := 1; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_NESTED_TABLE constant positive := 2; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_INDEX constant positive := 3; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_CLUSTER constant positive := 4; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_TABLE_PARTITION constant positive := 7; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_INDEX_PARTITION constant positive := 8; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_TABLE_SUBPARTITION constant positive := 9; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_INDEX_SUBPARTITION constant positive := 10; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_MV constant positive := 13; ■ OBJECT_TYPE_MVLOG constant positive := 14;

Return Values

The content of one row of a dependent_segments_table:

```
TYPE object_dependent_segment IS RECORD (
   segment_owner      VARCHAR2(100),
   segment_name       VARCHAR2(100),
   segment_type       VARCHAR2(100),
   tablespace_name    VARCHAR2(100),
   partition_name     VARCHAR2(100),
   lob_column_name    VARCHAR2(100));
```

Table 145–10 OBJECT_DEPENDENT_SEGMENT Type Parameters

Parameter	Description
segment_owner	The schema containing the segment
segment_name	The name of the segment
segment_type	The type of the segment, such as table, index or LOB
tablespace_name	The name of the tablespace
partition_name	The name of the partition, if any
lob_column_name	The name of the LOB column, if any

OBJECT_GROWTH_TREND Function

This is a table function. The output will be in the form of one or more rows where each row describes the space usage of the object at a specific point in time. Either the space usage totals will be retrieved from Automatic Workload Repository Facilities (AWRF), or the current space usage will be computed and combined with space usage deltas retrieved from AWRF.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.OBJECT_GROWTH_TREND (
   object_owner           IN    VARCHAR2,
   object_name            IN    VARCHAR2,
   object_type            IN    VARCHAR2,
   partition_name         IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time             IN    TIMESTAMP DEFAULT NULL,
   end_time               IN    TIMESTAMP DEFAULT NULL,
   interval               IN    DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED DEFAULT NULL,
   skip_interpolated      IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'FALSE',
   timeout_seconds        IN    NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   single_datapoint_flag  IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TRUE')
 RETURN object_growth_trend_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 145–11 OBJECT_GROWTH_TREND Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_owner	The schema containing the object
object_name	The name of the object
object_type	The type of the object
partition_name	The name of the partition
start_time	Statistics generated after this time will be used in generating the growth trend
end_time	Statistics generated until this time will be used in generating the growth trend
interval	The interval at which to sample
skip_interpolated	Whether interpolation of missing values should be skipped
timeout_seconds	The time-out value for the function in seconds
single_data_point_flag	Whether in the absence of statistics the segment should be sampled

Return Values

The object_growth_trend_row and object_growth_trend_table are used by the OBJECT_GROWTH_TREND table function to describe its output.

```
TYPE object_growth_trend_row IS RECORD(
   timepoint      TIMESTAMP,
   space_usage    NUMBER,
   space_alloc    NUMBER,
   quality        VARCHAR(20));
```

Table 145–12 OBJECT_GROWTH_TREND_ROW Type Parameters

Parameter	Description
timepoint	The time at which the statistic was recorded
space_usage	The space used by data
space_alloc	The size of the segment including overhead and unused space
quality	The quality of result: "GOOD", "INTERPOLATED", "PROJECTION"

```
TYPE object_growth_trend_table IS TABLE OF object_growth_trend_row;
```

SPACE_USAGE Procedures

The first form of the procedure shows the space usage of data blocks under the segment High Water Mark. You can calculate usage for LOBs, LOB PARTITIONS and LOB SUBPARTITIONS. This procedure can only be used on tablespaces that are created with auto segment space management. The bitmap blocks, segment header, and extent map blocks are not accounted for by this procedure. Note that this overload cannot be used on SECUREFILE LOBs.

The second form of the procedure returns information about SECUREFILE LOB space usage. It will return the amount of space in blocks being used by all the SECUREFILE LOBs in the LOB segment. The procedure displays the space actively used by the LOB column, freed space that has retention expired, and freed space that has retention unexpired. Note that this overload can be used only on SECUREFILE LOBs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.SPACE_USAGE(
   segment_owner           IN  VARCHAR2,
   segment_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   segment_type            IN  VARCHAR2,
   unformatted_blocks      OUT NUMBER,
   unformatted_bytes       OUT NUMBER,
   fs1_blocks              OUT NUMBER,
   fs1_bytes               OUT NUMBER,
   fs2_blocks              OUT NUMBER,
   fs2_bytes               OUT NUMBER,
   fs3_blocks              OUT NUMBER,
   fs3_bytes               OUT NUMBER,
   fs4_blocks              OUT NUMBER,
   fs4_bytes               OUT NUMBER,
   full_blocks             OUT NUMBER,
   full_bytes              OUT NUMBER,
   partition_name          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_SPACE.SPACE_USAGE(
   segment_owner           IN    VARCHAR2,
   segment_name            IN    VARCHAR2,
   segment_type            IN    VARCHAR2,
   segment_size_blocks     OUT   NUMBER,
   segment_size_bytes      OUT   NUMBER,
   used_blocks             OUT   NUMBER,
   used_bytes              OUT   NUMBER,
   expired_blocks          OUT   NUMBER,
   expired_bytes           OUT   NUMBER,
   unexpired_blocks        OUT   NUMBER,
   unexpired_bytes         OUT   NUMBER,
   partition_name          IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 145–13 SPACE_USAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
segment_owner	Schema name of the segment to be analyzed
segment_name	Name of the segment to be analyzed

Table 145–13 (Cont.) SPACE_USAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
partition_name	Partition name of the segment to be analyzed
segment_type	Type of the segment to be analyzed (TABLE, INDEX, or CLUSTER): ■ TABLE ■ TABLE PARTITION ■ TABLE SUBPARTITION ■ INDEX ■ INDEX PARTITION ■ INDEX SUBPARTITION ■ CLUSTER ■ LOB ■ LOB PARTITION ■ LOB SUBPARTITION
unformatted_blocks	Total number of blocks unformatted
unformatted bytes	Total number of bytes unformatted
fs1_blocks	Number of blocks having at least 0 to 25% free space
fs1_bytes	Number of bytes having at least 0 to 25% free space
fs2_blocks	Number of blocks having at least 25 to 50% free space
fs2_bytes	Number of bytes having at least 25 to 50% free space
fs3_blocks	Number of blocks having at least 50 to 75% free space
fs3_bytes	Number of bytes having at least 50 to 75% free space
fs4_blocks	Number of blocks having at least 75 to 100% free space
fs4_bytes	Number of bytes having at least 75 to 100% free space
ful1_blocks	Total number of blocks full in the segment
full_bytes	Total number of bytes full in the segment
segment_size_blocks	Number of blocks allocated to the segment
segment_size_bytes	Number of bytes allocated to the segment
used_blocks	Number blocks allocated to the LOB that contains active data
used_bytes	Number bytes allocated to the LOB that contains active data
expired_blocks	Number of expired blocks used by the LOB to keep version data
expired_bytes	Number of expired bytes used by the LOB to keep version data
unexpired_blocks	Number of unexpired blocks used by the LOB to keep version data
unexpired_bytes	Number of unexpired bytes used by the LOB to keep version data
partition_name	Name of the partition (NULL if not a partition)

Examples

```
variable unf number;
variable unfb number;
variable fs1 number;
```

```
variable fs1b number;
variable fs2 number;
variable fs2b number;
variable fs3 number;
variable fs3b number;
variable fs4 number;
variable fs4b number;
variable full number;
variable fullb number;

begin
dbms_space.space_usage('U1','T',
                       'TABLE',
                       :unf, :unfb,
                       :fs1, :fs1b,
                       :fs2, :fs2b,
                       :fs3, :fs3b,
                       :fs4, :fs4b,
                       :full, :fullb);
end;
/
print unf ;
print unfb ;
print fs4 ;
print fs4b;
print fs3 ;
print fs3b;
print fs2 ;
print fs2b;
print fs1 ;
print fs1b;
print full;
print fullb;
```

UNUSED_SPACE Procedure

This procedure returns information about unused space in an object (table, index, or cluster).

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE.UNUSED_SPACE (
   segment_owner              IN  VARCHAR2,
   segment_name               IN  VARCHAR2,
   segment_type               IN  VARCHAR2,
   total_blocks               OUT NUMBER,
   total_bytes                OUT NUMBER,
   unused_blocks              OUT NUMBER,
   unused_bytes               OUT NUMBER,
   last_used_extent_file_id   OUT NUMBER,
   last_used_extent_block_id  OUT NUMBER,
   last_used_block            OUT NUMBER,
   partition_name             IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 145–14 UNUSED_SPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
segment_owner	Schema name of the segment to be analyzed
segment_name	Segment name of the segment to be analyzed
segment_type	Type of the segment to be analyzed (TABLE, INDEX, or CLUSTER): ■ TABLE ■ TABLE PARTITION ■ TABLE SUBPARTITION ■ INDEX ■ INDEX PARTITION ■ INDEX SUBPARTITION ■ CLUSTER ■ LOB ■ LOB PARTITION ■ LOB SUBPARTITION
total_blocks	Returns total number of blocks in the segment
total_bytes	Returns total number of blocks in the segment, in bytes
unused_blocks	Returns number of blocks which are not used
unused_bytes	Returns, in bytes, number of blocks which are not used
last_used_extent_file_id	Returns the file ID of the last extent which contains data
last_used_extent_block_id	Returns the starting block ID of the last extent which contains data
last_used_block	Returns the last block within this extent which contains data

Table 145–14 (Cont.) UNUSED_SPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
partition_name	Partition name of the segment to be analyzed. This is only used for partitioned tables; the name of subpartition should be used when partitioning is compose.

Examples

The following declares the necessary bind variables and executes.

```
DBMS_SPACE.UNUSED_SPACE('SCOTT', 'EMP', 'TABLE', :total_blocks,
   :total_bytes,:unused_blocks, :unused_bytes, :lastextf,
   :last_extb, :lastusedblock);
```

146

DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN

The DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN package provides functionality for locally managed tablespaces.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for an example and description of using DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN` package.

Security Model

This package runs with SYS privileges; therefore, any user who has privilege to execute the package can manipulate the bitmaps.

Constants

Table 146–1 DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
SEGMENT_VERIFY_EXTENTS	POSITIVE	1	Verifies that the space owned by segment is appropriately reflected in the bitmap as used
SEGMENT_VERIFY_EXTENTS_GLOBAL	POSITIVE	2	Verifies that the space owned by segment is appropriately reflected in the bitmap as used and that no other segment claims any of this space to be used by it
SEGMENT_MARK_CORRUPT	POSITIVE	3	Marks a temporary segment as corrupt whereby facilitating its elimination from the dictionary (without space reclamation)
SEGMENT_MARK_VALID	POSITIVE	4	Marks a corrupt temporary segment as valid. It is useful when the corruption in the segment extent map or elsewhere has been resolved and the segment can be dropped normally.
SEGMENT_DUMP_EXTENT_MAP	POSITIVE	5	Dumps the extent map for a given segment
TABLESPACE_VERIFY_BITMAP	POSITIVE	6	Verifies the bitmap of the tablespace with extent maps of the segments in that tablespace to make sure everything is consistent
TABLESPACE_EXTENT_MAKE_FREE	POSITIVE	7	Marks the block range (extent) as free in the bitmaps
TABLESPACE_EXTENT_MAKE_USED	POSITIVE	8	Marks the block range (extent) as used in the bitmaps
SEGMENT_VERIFY_BASIC	POSITIVE	9	Performs the basic metadata checks
SEGMENT_VERIFY_DEEP	POSITIVE	10	Performs deep verification
SEGMENT_VERIFY_SPECIFIC	POSITIVE	11	Performs a specific check for the segment
HWM_CHECK	POSITIVE	12	Checks high water mark (HWM)
BMB_CHECK	POSITIVE	13	Checks integrity among L1, L2 and L3 BMBs (Bit Map Blocks)
SEG_DICT_CHECK	POSITIVE	14	Checks consistency of segment header with corresponding SEG entry
EXTENT_TS_BITMAP_CHECK	POSITIVE	15	Checks whether the tablespace bitmaps corresponding to the extent map are marked used
DB_BACKPOINTER_CHECK	POSITIVE	16	Checks whether the L1 BMBs, L2 BMBs, L3 BMBs and data blocks point to the same parent segment
EXTENT_SEGMENT_BITMAP_CHECK	POSITIVE	17	Checks whether the bitmap blocks are consistent with the extent map

Table 146–1 (Cont.) DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
BITMAPS_CHECK	POSITIVE	18	Checks from the datablocks that the bitmap states representing the blocks are consistent
TS_VERIFY_BITMAPS	POSITIVE	19	Checks whether the tablespace bitmaps are consistent with the extents belonging to that tablespace
TS_VERIFY_DEEP	POSITIVE	20	Performs TS_VERIFY_BITMAPS and TS_VERIFY_SEGMENTS with DEEP option
TS_VERIFY_SEGMENTS	POSITIVE	21	Performs ASSM_SEGMENT_VERIFY on all segments in the tablespace, taking either the BASIC or the DEEP option
SEGMENTS_DUMP_BITMAP_SUMMARY	POSITIVE	27	Dumps only bitmap block summaries

Operational Notes

Before migrating the SYSTEM tablespace, the following conditions must be met. These conditions are enforced by the TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_TO_LOCAL procedure, except for the cold backup.

- The database must have a default temporary tablespace that is not SYSTEM.
- Dictionary-managed tablespaces cannot have any rollback segments.
- A locally managed tablespace must have at least one online rollback segment. If you are using automatic undo management, then an undo tablespace must be online.
- All tablespaces—except the tablespace containing the rollback segment or the undo tablespace—must be read-only.
- You must have a cold backup of the database.
- The system must be in restricted mode.

Summary of DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN Subprograms

Table 146–2 DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ASSM_SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure on page 146-8	Verifies segments created in ASSM (Automatic Segment-Space Management) tablespaces
ASSM_TABLESPACE_VERIFY Procedure on page 146-10	Verifies ASSM tablespaces
DROP_EMPTY_SEGMENTS Procedure on page 146-11	Drops segments from empty tables or table fragments and dependent objects
MATERIALIZE_DEFERRED_ SEGMENTS Procedure on page 146-12	Materializes segments for tables and table fragments with deferred segment creation and their dependent objects
SEGMENT_CORRUPT Procedure on page 146-13	Marks the segment corrupt or valid so that appropriate error recovery can be done
SEGMENT_DROP_CORRUPT Procedure on page 146-14	Drops a segment currently marked corrupt (without reclaiming space)
SEGMENT_DUMP Procedure on page 146-15	Dumps the segment header and extent maps of a given segment
SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure on page 146-16	Verifies the consistency of the extent map of the segment
TABLESPACE_FIX_BITMAPS Procedure on page 146-17	Marks the appropriate block range (extent) as free or used in bitmap
TABLESPACE_FIX_SEGMENT_ STATES Procedure on page 146-18	Fixes the state of the segments in a tablespace in which migration was aborted
TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_ FROM_LOCAL Procedure on page 146-19	Migrates a locally managed tablespace to dictionary-managed tablespace
TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_TO_ LOCAL Procedure on page 146-20	Migrates a tablespace from dictionary-managed format to locally managed format
TABLESPACE_REBUILD_ BITMAPS Procedure on page 146-22	Rebuilds the appropriate bitmaps
TABLESPACE_REBUILD_ QUOTAS Procedure on page 146-23	Rebuilds quotas for given tablespace
TABLESPACE_RELOCATE_ BITMAPS Procedure on page 146-24	Relocates the bitmaps to the destination specified
TABLESPACE_VERIFY Procedure on page 146-25	Verifies that the bitmaps and extent maps for the segments in the tablespace are synchronized

ASSM_SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure

Given a segment definition, the procedure verifies the basic consistency of the space metadata blocks as well as consistency between space metadata and segment data blocks. This procedure verifies segments created in Automatic Segment Space Management (ASSM) tablespaces.

There is however a difference between basic verification and deep verification:

- Basic verification involves consistency checks of space metadata, such as integrity among level 1, level 2, level 3 bitmap blocks, consistency of segment extent map and level 1 bitmap ranges.
- Deep verification involves consistency checks between datablocks and space metadata blocks such as whether the datablocks point correctly to the parent level 1 bitmap blocks, and whether the freeness states in the datablocks are consistent with the freeness states of bits in level 1 bitmap blocks corresponding to the datablocks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.ASSM_SEGMENT_VERIFY (
   segment_owner   IN VARCHAR2,
   segment_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   segment_type    IN VARCHAR2,
   partition_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   verify_option   IN POSITIVE  DEFAULT SEGMENT_VERIFY_BASIC,
   attrib          IN POSITIVE  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 146–3 ASSM_SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
segment_owner	Schema that owns the segment
segment_name	Name of the segment to be verified
segment_type	Segment namespace is one of TABLE, TABLE PARTITION, TABLE SUBPARTITION, INDEX, INDEX PARTITION, INDEX SUBPARTITION, LOB, LOB PARTITION, LOB SUBPARTITION, CLUSTER
partition_name	Name of the partition or subpartition
verify_option	One of the following options: ■ SEGMENT_VERIFY_BASIC := 9. Performs the basic metadata checks (Default) ■ SEGMENT_VERIFY_DEEP := 10. Performs deep verification ■ SEGMENT_VERIFY_SPECIFIC := 11. Performs a specific check for the segment

Table 146–3 (Cont.) ASSM_SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
attrib	When option SEGMENT_VERIFY_SPECIFIC is specified as option, attrib can be one of the following: ■ HWM_CHECK := 12. Checks whether high water mark information is accurate ■ BMB_CHECK := 13. Checks whether space bitmap blocks have correct backpointers to the segment header ■ SEG_DICT_CHECK := 14. Checks whether dictionary information for segment is accurate ■ EXTENT_TS_BITMAP_CHECK := 15. Checks whether extent maps are consistent with file level bitmaps ■ DB_BACKPOINTER_CHECK := 16. Checks whether datablocks have correct backpointers to the space metadata blocks ■ EXTENT_SEGMENT_BITMAP_CHECK := 17. Checks whether extent map in the segment matches the bitmaps in the segment ■ BITMAPS_CHECK := 18. Checks whether space bitmap blocks are accurate

Usage Notes

- Using this procedure requires SYSDBA privileges.
- You can determine the relative file # and header block # (header_relative_file and header_block parameters) by querying DBA_SEGMENTS.
- This procedure outputs a dump file named sid_ora_*process_ID*.trc to the location specified in the USER_DUMP_DEST initialization parameter.

ASSM_TABLESPACE_VERIFY Procedure

This procedures verifies all the segments created in an ASSM tablespace. The verification for each segment performs basic consistency checks of the space metadata blocks as well as consistency checks between space metadata and segment data blocks.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.ASSM_TABLESPACE_VERIFY (
   tablespace_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   ts_option         IN POSITIVE,
   segment_option    IN POSITIVE DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 146–4 ASSM_TABLESPACE_VERIFY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of the tablespace to verify. The tablespace must be an ASSM tablespace.
ts_option	■ TS_VERIFY_BITMAPS := 19. The bitmaps are verified against the extents. This detects bits that are marked used or free wrongly and detects multiple allocation of extents. The file metadata is validated against file$ and control file. ■ TS_VERIFY_DEEP := 20. This option is used to verify the file bitmaps as well perform checks on all the segments. ■ TS_VERIFY_SEGMENTS := 21. This option is used to invoke SEGMENT_VERIFY on all the segments in the tablespace. Optionally you can write a script that queries all the segments in the tablespace and invoke SEGMENT_VERIFY.
segment_option	When TS_VERIFY_SEGMENTS is specified, segment_option can be one of the following: ■ SEGMENT_VERIFY_BASIC := 9 ■ SEGMENT_VERIFY_DEEP := 10 The value of segment_option is NULL when TS_VERIFY_DEEP or TS_VERIFY_BITMAPS is specified.

Usage Notes

- Using this procedure requires SYSDBA privileges.
- This procedure outputs a dump file named sid_ora_*process_ID*.trc to the location specified in the USER_DUMP_DEST initialization parameter.

DROP_EMPTY_SEGMENTS Procedure

This procedures drops segments from empty tables or table fragments and dependent objects.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.DROP_EMPTY_SEGMENTS (
   schema_name       IN     VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   table_name        IN     VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   partition_name    IN     VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 146–5 DROP_EMPTY_SEGMENTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Name of schema
table_name	Name of table
partition_name	Name of partition

Usage Notes

Given a schema name, this procedure scans all tables in the schema. For each table, if the table or any of its fragments are found to be empty, and the table satisfies certain criteria (restrictions being the same as those described in "Restrictions on Deferred Segment Creation"), then the empty table fragment and associated index segments are dropped along with the corresponding LOB data and index segments. A subsequent insert creates segments with the same properties.

Optionally:

- No schema_name is specified, in which case tables belonging to all schemas are scanned
- Both schema_name and table_name are specified to perform the operation on a specified table
- All three arguments are supplied, restricting the operation to the partition and its dependent objects

MATERIALIZE_DEFERRED_SEGMENTS Procedure

This procedure materializes segments for tables and table fragments with deferred segment creation and their dependent objects.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.MATERIALIZE_DEFERRED_SEGMENTS (
   schema_name       IN     VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   table_name        IN     VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   partition_name    IN     VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 146–6 MATERIALIZE_DEFERRED_SEGMENTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Name of schema
table_name	Name of table
partition_name	Name of partition

Usage Notes

Given a schema name, this procedure scans all tables in the schema. For each table, if the deferred or delayed segment property is set for the table or any of its fragments, then a new segment is created for those fragments and their dependent objects.

Optionally:

- No schema_name is specified, in which case tables belonging to all schemas are scanned
- Both schema_name and table_name are specified to perform the operation on a specified table
- All three arguments are supplied, restricting the operation to the partition and its dependent objects

SEGMENT_CORRUPT Procedure

This procedure marks the segment corrupt or valid so that appropriate error recovery can be done. It cannot be used on the SYSTEM tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_CORRUPT (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   header_relative_file    IN    POSITIVE,
   header_block            IN    POSITIVE,
   corrupt_option          IN    POSITIVE  DEFAULT SEGMENT_MARK_CORRUPT);
```

Parameters

Table 146–7 SEGMENT_CORRUPT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace in which segment resides
header_relative_file	Relative file number of segment header
header_block	Block number of segment header
corrupt_option	SEGMENT_MARK_CORRUPT (default) or SEGMENT_MARK_VALID

Usage Noes

You can determine the relative file number and block number (header_relative_file and header_block parameter) of the segment header block by querying DBA_SEGMENTS.

Examples

The following example marks the segment as corrupt:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_CORRUPT('USERS', 4, 33, DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_
MARK_CORRUPT);
```

Alternately, the next example marks a corrupt segment valid:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_CORRUPT('USERS', 4, 33, DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_
MARK_VALID);
```

SEGMENT_DROP_CORRUPT Procedure

This procedure drops a segment currently marked corrupt (without reclaiming space). For this to work, the segment must be marked *temporary*. To mark a corrupt segment as temporary, issue a `DROP` command on the segment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_DROP_CORRUPT (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   header_relative_file    IN    POSITIVE,
   header_block            IN    POSITIVE);
```

Parameters

Table 146–8 SEGMENT_DROP_CORRUPT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tablespace_name`	Name of tablespace in which segment resides
`header_relative_file`	Relative file number of segment header
`header_block`	Block number of segment header

Usage Notes

- The space for the segment is not released, and it must be fixed by using the TABLESPACE_FIX_BITMAPS Procedure or the TABLESPACE_REBUILD_BITMAPS Procedure.
- The procedure cannot be used on the `SYSTEM` tablespace.
- You can determine the relative file number and block number (`header_relative_file` and `header_block` parameter) of the segment header block by querying `DBA_SEGMENTS`.

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_DROP_CORRUPT('USERS', 4, 33);
```

SEGMENT_DUMP Procedure

This procedure dumps the segment header and bitmap blocks of a specific segment to the location specified in the USER_DUMP_DEST initialization parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_DUMP (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   header_relative_file    IN    POSITIVE,
   header_block            IN    POSITIVE,
   dump_option             IN    POSITIVE  DEFAULT SEGMENT_DUMP_EXTENT_MAP);
```

Parameters

Table 146–9 SEGMENT_DUMP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace in which segment resides
header_relative_file	Relative file number of segment header
header_block	Block number of segment header
dump_option	One of the following options: ■ SEGMENT_DUMP_EXTENT_MAP ■ SEGMENT_DUMP_BITMAP_SUMMARY

Usage Notes

- You can produce a slightly abbreviated dump, which includes the segment header and bitmap block summaries, without percent-free states of each block if you pass SEGMENT_DUMP_BITMAP_SUMMARY as the dump_option parameter.
- You can determine the relative file number and block number (header_relative_file and header_block parameter) of the segment header block by querying DBA_SEGMENTS.HEADER_FILE. If HEADER_FILE is greater than 1023 then use DBA_DATA_FILES.RELATIVE_FNO.

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_DUMP('USERS', 4, 33);
```

SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure

This procedure checks the consistency of the segment extent map with the tablespace file bitmaps.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_VERIFY (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   header_relative_file    IN    POSITIVE,
   header_block            IN    POSITIVE,
   verify_option           IN    POSITIVE  DEFAULT SEGMENT_VERIFY_EXTENTS);
```

Parameters

Table 146–10 SEGMENT_VERIFY Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace in which segment resides
header_relative_file	Relative file number of segment header
header_block	Block number of segment header
verify_option	What kind of check to do: SEGMENT_VERIFY_EXTENTS or SEGMENT_VERIFY_EXTENTS_GLOBAL

Usage Notes

- Anomalies are output as block range, bitmap-block, bitmap-block-range, anomaly-information, in the trace file for all block ranges found to have incorrect space representation. The kinds of problems which would be reported are free space not considered free, used space considered free, and the same space considered used by multiple segments.
- You can determine the relative file number and block number (header_relative_file and header_block parameter) of the segment header block by querying DBA_SEGMENTS.

Examples

The following example verifies that the segment with segment header at relative file number 4, block number 33, has its extent maps and bitmaps synchronized.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_VERIFY('USERS', 4, 33, DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.SEGMENT_
VERIFY_EXTENTS);
```

TABLESPACE_FIX_BITMAPS Procedure

This procedure marks the appropriate block range (extent) as free or used in bitmap. It cannot be used on the SYSTEM tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_FIX_BITMAPS (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   dbarange_relative_file  IN    POSITIVE,
   dbarange_begin_block    IN    POSITIVE,
   dbarange_end_block      IN    POSITIVE,
   fix_option              IN    POSITIVE);
```

Parameters

Table 146–11 TABLESPACE_FIX_BITMAPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace
dbarange_relative_file	Relative file number of block range (extent)
dbarange_begin_block	Block number of beginning of extent
dbarange_end_block	Block number (inclusive) of end of extent
fix_option	One of the following options: ■ TABLESPACE_EXTENT_MAKE_FREE ■ TABLESPACE_EXTENT_MAKE_USED

Examples

The following example marks bits for 51 blocks for relative file number 4, beginning at block number 33 and ending at 83, as USED in bitmaps.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_FIX_BITMAPS('USERS', 4, 33, 83, DBMS_SPACE_
ADMIN.EXTENT_MAKE_USED);
```

Alternatively, specifying an option of TABLESPACE_EXTENT_MAKE_FREE marks the bits free in bitmaps. The BEGIN and END blocks must be in extent boundary and be extent multiple; otherwise, an error is raised.

TABLESPACE_FIX_SEGMENT_STATES Procedure

This procedure fixes the state of the segments in a tablespace in which migration was aborted. During tablespace migration to or from local, the segments are put in a transient state. If migration is aborted, then the segment states are corrected by SMON when event 10906 is set. A database with segments in such a transient state cannot be downgraded. The procedure can be used to fix the state of such segments.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_FIX_SEGMENT_STATES (
   tablespace_name     IN    VARCHAR);
```

Parameters

Table 146–12 TABLESPACE_FIX_SEGMENT_STATES Procedure Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
tablespace_name	Name of the tablespace whose segments must be fixed

Usage Notes

The tablespace must be kept online and read/write when this procedure is called.

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_FIX_SEGMENT_STATES('TS1')
```

TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_FROM_LOCAL Procedure

This procedure migrates a locally managed tablespace to a dictionary-managed tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_FROM_LOCAL (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 146–13 TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_FROM_LOCAL Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace

Usage Notes

The tablespace must be kept online and read/write during migration. Migration of temporary tablespaces and migration of SYSTEM tablespaces are not supported.

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_FROM_LOCAL('USERS');
```

TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_TO_LOCAL Procedure

This procedure migrates the tablespace from a dictionary-managed format to a locally managed format. Tablespaces migrated to locally managed format are user managed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_TO_LOCAL (
   tablespace_name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   unit_size           IN     POSITIVE DEFAULT NULL,
   rfno                IN     POSITIVE DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 146–14 TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_TO_LOCAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
tablespace_name	Name of the tablespace to be migrated
unit_size	Bitmap unit size (which is the size of the smallest possible chunk of space that can be allocated) in the tablespace specified in number of blocks
rfno	Relative File Number of the file where the bitmap blocks are placed

Usage Notes

- Before you migrate the SYSTEM tablespace, migrate any dictionary-managed tablespaces that you want to use in read/write mode to locally managed. After the SYSTEM tablespace is migrated, you cannot change dictionary-managed tablespaces to read/write.

  See Also: *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*

- The tablespace must be kept online and read/write during migration. Note that temporary tablespaces cannot be migrated.
- Allocation Unit may be specified optionally. The default is calculated by the system based on the highest common divisor of all extents (used or free) for the tablespace. This number is further trimmed based on the MINIMUM EXTENT for the tablespace (5 if MINIMUM EXTENT is not specified). Thus, the calculated value will not be larger than the MINIMUM EXTENT for the tablespace. The last free extent in every file is ignored for GCD calculation. If you specify the unit size, then it must be a factor of the unit_size calculated by the system; otherwise an error message is returned.
- The Relative File Number parameter is used to place the bitmaps in a desired file. If space is not found in the file, then an error is issued. The data file specified must be part of the tablespace being migrated. If the dataflow is not specified, then the system chooses a dataflow in which to place the initial bitmap blocks. If space is not found for the initial bitmaps, then an error is raised.

Examples

To migrate a tablespace 'TS1' in 2KB blocksize with minimum extent size 1MB:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_MIGRATE_TO_LOCAL('TS1', 512, 2);
```

The bitmaps are placed in file with relative file number 2.

TABLESPACE_REBUILD_BITMAPS Procedure

This procedure rebuilds the appropriate bitmaps. If no bitmap block is specified, then it rebuilds all bitmaps for the given tablespace.

The procedure cannot be used on the SYSTEM tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_REBUILD_BITMAPS (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   bitmap_relative_file    IN    POSITIVE   DEFAULT NULL,
   bitmap_block            IN    POSITIVE   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 146–15 TABLESPACE_REBUILD_BITMAPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace
bitmap_relative_file	Relative file number of bitmap block to rebuild
bitmap_block	Block number of bitmap block to rebuild

Usage Notes

Only full rebuild is supported.

Examples

The following example rebuilds bitmaps for all the files in the USERS tablespace.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_REBUILD_BITMAPS('USERS');
```

TABLESPACE_REBUILD_QUOTAS Procedure

This procedure rebuilds quotas for the given tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_REBUILD_QUOTAS (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 146–16 TABLESPACE_REBUILD_QUOTAS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_REBUILD_QUOTAS('USERS');
```

TABLESPACE_RELOCATE_BITMAPS Procedure

This procedure relocates the bitmaps to the destination specified.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_RELOCATE_BITMAPS (
   tablespace_name    IN      VARCHAR2,
   filno              IN      POSITIVE,
   blkno              IN      POSITIVE);
```

Parameters

Table 146–17 TABLESPACE_RELOCATE_BITMAPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace
filno	Relative File Number of the destination file
blkno	Block Number of the destination range

Usage Notes

- Migration of a tablespace from dictionary-managed to locally managed format could result in the creation of SPACE HEADER segment that contains the bitmap blocks. The SPACE HEADER segment is treated as user data. If you explicitly resize a file at or below the space header segment, then an error is issued. Use the TABLESPACE_RELOCATE_BITMAPS command to move the control information to a different destination and then resize the file.
- This procedure cannot be used on the SYSTEM tablespace.
- The tablespace must be kept online and read/write during relocation of bitmaps. This can be done only on migrated locally managed tablespaces.

Examples

```
EXECUTE  DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_RELOCATE_BITMAPS('TS1', 3, 4);
```

Moves the bitmaps to file 3, block 4.

> **Note:** The source and the destination addresses must not overlap. The destination block number is rounded down to the unit boundary. If there is user data in that location, then an error is raised.

TABLESPACE_VERIFY Procedure

This procedure verifies that the bitmaps and extent maps for the segments in the tablespace are synchronized.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_VERIFY (
   tablespace_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   verify_option           IN    POSITIVE DEFAULT TABLESPACE_VERIFY_BITMAP);
```

Parameters

Table 146–18 TABLESPACE_VERIFY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace
verify_option	One option is supported: TABLESPACE_VERIFY_BITMAP

Examples

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SPACE_ADMIN.TABLESPACE_VERIFY('USERS');
```

147

DBMS_SPD

The `DBMS_SPD` package provides subprograms for managing SQL plan directives (SPD).

See Also:

- Chapter 155, "DBMS_STATS"
- *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* regarding SQL plan directives

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SPD

Overview

This package provides subprograms for managing SQL plan directives (SPD). SPD are objects generated automatically by Oracle. For example, if Oracle detects that the single table cardinality estimated made by the optimizer is different from the actual number of rows returned when accessing the table, it will automatically create a directive to perform dynamic statistics for the table. When any SQL statement referencing the table is compiled, the optimizer will perform dynamic statistics for the table to get a more accurate estimate.

Security Model

DBMS_SPD is an invoker-rights package. The invoker requires ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege for executing most of the subprograms in this package. Also, the subprograms commit the current transaction (if any), perform the operation, and then commit it again.

Views

The DBA view `DBA_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVES` shows all the directives created in the system and the view `DBA_SQL_PLAN_DIR_OBJECTS` displays the objects that are included in the directives.

Summary of DBMS_SPD Subprograms

Table 147–1 DBMS_SPD Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_SQL_PLAN_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 147-7	Changes different attributes of a SQL plan directive
CREATE_STGTAB_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 147-8	Creates a staging table into which to pack (export) SQL plan directives.
DROP_SQL_PLAN_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 147-9	Drops a SQL plan directive
FLUSH_SQL_PLAN_ DIRECTIVE Procedure on page 147-10	Allows for manual flushing of the SQL plan directives that are automatically recorded in SGA memory while executing SQL statements.
GET_PREFS Function on page 147-11	Gets the values for preferences for SQL plan directives
PACK_STGTAB_ DIRECTIVE Function on page 147-12	Packs (exports) SQL plan directives into a staging table.
SET_PREFS Procedure on page 147-14	Allows the setting of different preferences for SQL plan directives
UNPACK_STGTAB_ DIRECTIVE Function on page 147-15	Unpacks (imports) SQL plan directives from a staging table.

ALTER_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure changes different attributes of a SQL plan directive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.ALTER_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   directive_id        IN     NUMBER,
   attribute_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 147–2 ALTER_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
directive_id	SQL plan directive ID
attribute_name	■ ENABLED ■ AUTO_DROP
attribute_value	Possible values: ■ ENABLED: - If YES directive is enabled and may be used - If NO directive is not enabled and will not be used ■ AUTO_DROP: - If YES directive will be dropped automatically if not used for SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS. This is the default behavior. - If NO directive will not be dropped automatically

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.
- ORA-13158 OBJECT_DOES_NOT_EXIST: The specified object does not exist.

Usage Notes

The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SPD.ALTER_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (12345, 'STATE', 'PERMANENT');
END;
```

CREATE_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure creates a staging table into which to pack (export) SQL plan directives.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.CREATE_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE (
   table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   table_owner        IN VARCHAR2  := USER,
   tablespace_name    IN VARCHAR2  := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 147–3 CREATE_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of staging table
table_owner	Name of schema owner of staging table. Default is current schema.
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace. Default NULL means create staging table in the default tablespace:

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.
- ORA-44001 INVALID_SCHEMA: The input schema does not exist.
- ORA-13159 TABLE_ALREADY_EXISTS: The specified table already exists.
- ORA-29304 TABLESPACE_MISSING: The specified tablespace does not exist.

Usage Notes

The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.

DROP_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure drops a SQL plan directive.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.DROP_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (
   directive_id        IN     NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 147–4 DROP_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
directive_id	SQL plan directive ID

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.
- ORA-13158 OBJECT_DOES_NOT_EXIST: The specified object does not exist.

Usage Notes

The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SPD.DROP_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE (12345);
END;
```

FLUSH_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE Procedure

This procedure allows for manual flushing of the SQL plan directives that are automatically recorded in SGA memory while executing SQL statements. The information recorded in the SGA is periodically flushed by an Oracle background process. This procedure provides a way to flush the information manually.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.FLUSH_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE;
```

Exceptions

`ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE`: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.

Usage Notes

The `ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT` privilege is required to execute this procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SPD.FLUSH_SQL_PLAN_DIRECTIVE;
END;
```

GET_PREFS Function

This function returns the value for the specified preferences for SQL plan directives.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.GET_PREFS (
   pname     IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 147–5 GET_PREFS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Preference name. The procedure supports the preference SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS.

Return Values

Preference value

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.

Usage Notes

- The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.
- SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS - SQL plan directives are purged if not used for more than the value set for this preference.

Examples

```
SELECT DBMS_SPD.GET_PREFS('SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS') FROM DUAL;
```

PACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE Function

This function packs (exports) SQL plan directives into a staging table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.PACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE (
   table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   table_owner        IN VARCHAR2  := USER
   directive_id       IN NUMBER    := NULL,
   obj_list           IN OBJECTTAB := NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER
```

Parameters

Table 147–6 PACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of staging table
table_owner	Name of schema owner of staging table. Default is current schema.
directive_id	SQL plan directive ID. Default NULL means all directives in the system.
obj_list	Used to filter the directives to be packed based on the objects used in directives. If obj_list is not NULL, a directive is packed only if all the objects in the directive exist in obj_list.

Return Values

Number of SQL plan directives packed.

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.
- ORA-44001 INVALID_SCHEMA: The input schema does not exist.
- ORA-29304 INVALID_STGTAB: The specified staging table is invalid or does not exist.
- ORA-13158 OBJECT_DOES_NOT_EXIST: The specified object does not exist.

Usage Notes

The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.

Examples

```
-- Pack all directives in the system
SELECT DBMS_SPD.PACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE('mydirtab') FROM DUAL;

SET SERVEROUTPUT ON;
-- Pack directives relevant to objects in SH schema
DECLARE
```

```
  my_list  DBMS_SPD.OBJECTTAB := DBMS_SPD.ObjectTab();
  dir_cnt  NUMBER;
BEGIN
  my_list.extend(1);
  my_list(1).owner := 'SH';           -- schema name
  my_list(1).object_name := NULL;     -- all tables in SH
  my_list(1).object_type := 'TABLE';  -- type of object

  dir_cnt :=
    DBMS_SPD.PACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE('mydirtab', obj_list => my_list);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('dir_cnt = ' || dir_cnt);
END;

-- Pack directives relevant to tables SALES and CUSTOMERS in SH schema
DECLARE
  my_list  DBMS_SPD.OBJECTTAB := DBMS_SPD.ObjectTab();
  dir_cnt  NUMBER;
BEGIN
  my_list.extend(2);

  -- SALES table
  my_list(1).owner := 'SH';
  my_list(1).object_name := 'SALES';
  my_list(1).object_type := 'TABLE';

  -- CUSTOMERS table
  my_list(2).owner := 'SH';
  my_list(2).object_name := 'CUSTOMERS';
  my_list(2).object_type := 'TABLE';

  dir_cnt :=
    DBMS_SPD.PACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE('mydirtab', obj_list => my_list);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('dir_cnt = ' || dir_cnt);
END;
```

SET_PREFS Procedure

This procedure allows the setting of different preferences for SQL plan directives.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.SET_PREFS (
   pname     IN   VARCHAR2,
   pvalue    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 147–7 SET_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Preference name. The procedure supports the preference SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS.
pvalue	Preference value. ■ SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS: SQL plan directives are purged if not used for more than the value set for this preference. Default is 53 (SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS_DEFAULT) weeks, which means a directive is purged if it has been left unused for little over a year. It can be set to any value greater than or equal to 0. Also value NULL can be passed to set the preference to default.

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.

Usage Notes

- The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.
- SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS - SQL plan directives are purged if not used for more than the value set for this preference.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SPD.SET_PREFS('SPD_RETENTION_WEEKS', '4');
END;
```

UNPACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE Function

This procedure unpacks (imports) SQL plan directives from a staging table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPD.UNPACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE (
   table_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   table_owner        IN VARCHAR2  := USER,
   directive_id       IN NUMBER    := NULL,
   obj_list           IN OBJECTTAB := NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER
```

Parameters

Table 147–8 UNPACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of staging table
table_owner	Name of schema owner of staging table. Default is current schema.
directive_id	SQL plan directive ID. Default NULL means all directives in the system.
obj_list	Used to filter the directives to be unpacked based on the objects used in directives. If obj_list is not NULL, a directive is unpacked only if all the objects in the directive exist in obj_list.

Return Values

Number of SQL plan directives unpacked.

Exceptions

- ORA-38171 INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE: The user does not have proper privilege to perform the operation.
- ORA-28104 INVALID_INPUT: The input value is not valid.
- ORA-44001 INVALID_SCHEMA: The input schema does not exist.
- ORA-29304 INVALID_STGTAB: The specified staging table is invalid or does not exist.
- ORA-13158 OBJECT_DOES_NOT_EXIST: The specified object does not exist.

Usage Notes

The ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is required to execute this procedure.

Examples

```
-- Unack all directives in the staging table
SELECT DBMS_SPD.UNPACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE('mydirtab') FROM DUAL;

SET SERVEROUTPUT ON;
-- Unpack directives relevant to objects in SH schema
```

```
DECLARE
  my_list  DBMS_SPD.OBJECTTAB := DBMS_SPD.ObjectTab();
  dir_cnt  number;
BEGIN
  my_list.extend(1);
  my_list(1).owner := 'SH';           -- schema name
  my_list(1).object_name := null;     -- all tables in SH
  my_list(1).object_type := 'TABLE';  -- type of object

  dir_cnt :=
    DBMS_SPD.UNPACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE('mydirtab', obj_list => my_list);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('dir_cnt = ' || dir_cnt);
END;

-- Unpack directives relevant to tables SALES and CUSTOMERS in SH schema
DECLARE
  my_list  DBMS_SPD.OBJECTTAB := DBMS_SPD.ObjectTab();
  dir_cnt  NUMBER;
begin
  my_list.extend(2);

  -- SALES table
  my_list(1).owner := 'SH';
  my_list(1).object_name := 'SALES';
  my_list(1).object_type := 'TABLE';

  -- CUSTOMERS table
  my_list(2).owner := 'SH';
  my_list(2).object_name := 'CUSTOMERS';
  my_list(2).object_type := 'TABLE';

  dir_cnt :=
    DBMS_SPD.UNPACK_STGTAB_DIRECTIVE('mydirtab', obj_list => my_list);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('dir_cnt = ' || dir_cnt);
END;
```

148

DBMS_SPM

The `DBMS_SPM` package supports the SQL plan management feature by providing an interface for the DBA or other user to perform controlled manipulation of plan history and SQL plan baselines maintained for various SQL statements.

> **See Also:** For more information about "Using SQL Plan Management" in the *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SPM

Overview

The DBMS_SPM package allows the user to manage SQL execution plans using SQL plan management. SQL plan management prevents performance regressions resulting from sudden changes to the execution plan of a SQL statement by recording and evaluating the execution plans of SQL statements over time, and builds SQL plan baselines composed of a set of existing plans known to be efficient. The SQL plan baselines are then used to preserve performance of corresponding SQL statements, regardless of changes occurring in the system. Common usage scenarios where SQL plan management can improve or preserve SQL performance include:

- A database upgrade that installs a new optimizer version usually results in plan changes for a small percentage of SQL statements, with most of the plan changes resulting in either no performance change or improvement. However, certain plan changes may cause performance regressions. The use of SQL plan baselines significantly minimizes potential performance regressions resulting from a database upgrade.
- Ongoing system and data changes can impact plans for some SQL statements, potentially causing performance regressions. The use of SQL plan baselines helps to minimize performance regressions and stabilize SQL performance.
- Deployment of new application modules means introducing new SQL statements into the system. The application software may use appropriate SQL execution plans developed under a standard test configuration for the new SQL statements. If the system production configuration differs significantly from the test configuration, SQL plan baselines can be evolved over time to produce better performance.

Security Model

The package is owned by SYS. The EXECUTE package privilege is required to execute its procedures. Any user granted the ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege is able to execute the DBMS_SPM package.

Constants

The DBMS_SPM package uses the constants shown in Table 148–1, " DBMS_SPM Constants". These constants are defined as standard input for the time_limit parameter of the EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function.

Table 148–1 DBMS_SPM Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
AUTO_LIMIT	INTEGER	2147483647	Oracle determines the appropriate time spent by the EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function.
NO_LIMIT	INTEGER	2147483647 -1	There is no limit to the time spent by the EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function.

Examples

Detailed examples are located under the following topics:

- Migrating Stored Outlines to SQL Plan Baselines
- Migrating Outlines to Utilize SQL Plan Management Features
- Migrating Outlines to Preserve Stored Outline Behavior
- Performing Follow-Up Tasks After Stored Outline Migration

Data Structures

The DBMS_SPM package defines a TABLE type.

Table Types

- NAMELIST Table Type

NAMELIST Table Type

This type allows for a list of names as an input parameter.

Syntax

```
TYPE  name_list  IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30);
```

Summary of DBMS_SPM Subprograms

This table list the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 148–2 DBMS_SPM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ACCEPT_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure on page 148-11	Accepts a plan based on the recommendation of an evolve task
ALTER_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function on page 148-12	Changes an attribute of a single plan or all plans associated with a SQL statement using the attribute name/value format
CANCEL_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure on page 148-14	Cancels a currently executing evolve task
CONFIGURE Procedure on page 148-15	Sets configuration options for SQL management base, in parameter/value format
CREATE_EVOLVE_TASK Function on page 148-16	Creates an advisor task and sets its parameters
CREATE_STGTAB_BASELINE Procedure on page 148-17	Creates a staging table that used for transporting SQL plan baselines from one system to another
DROP_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure on page 148-18	Drops an evolved task
DROP_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function on page 148-19	Drops a single plan, or all plans associated with a SQL statement
EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function on page 148-20	Evolves SQL plan baselines associated with one or more SQL statements
EXECUTE_EVOLVE_TASK Function on page 148-22	Executes a previously created evolve task
IMPLEMENT_EVOLVE_TASK Function on page 148-23	Implements a plan based on the recommendation of an evolve task
INTERRUPT_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure on page 148-24	Interrupts a currently executing evolve task
LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE Functions on page 148-25	Loads one or more plans present in the cursor cache for a SQL statement
LOAD_PLANS_FROM_SQLSET Function on page 148-27	Loads plans stored in a SQL tuning set (STS) into SQL plan baselines
MIGRATE_STORED_OUTLINE Functions on page 148-28	Migrates existing stored outlines to SQL plan baselines
PACK_STGTAB_BASELINE Function on page 148-30	Packs (exports) SQL plan baselines from SQL management base into a staging table

Table 148–2 (Cont.) DBMS_SPM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
RESET_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure on page 148-31	Resets an evolve task to its initial state
RESUME_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure on page 148-32	Resumes a previously interrupted task
REPORT_AUTO_ EVOLVE_TASK Function on page 148-33	Displays the results of an execution of an automatic evolve task.
REPORT_EVOLVE_TASK Function on page 148-34	Displays the results of an evolved task
SET_EVOLVE_TASK_ PARAMETER Procedure on page 148-30	Sets a parameter of an evolve task
UNPACK_STGTAB_ BASELINE Function on page 148-36	Unpacks (imports) SQL plan baselines from a staging table into SQL management base

ACCEPT_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure

The procedure accepts a plan based on the recommendation of an evolve task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.ACCEPT_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_id        IN  NUMBER    := NULL,
   task_owner       IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN   := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 148–3 ACCEPT_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to implement
object_id	Identifier of the advisor framework object that represents a single plan. If NULL, the report is generated for all objects.
task_owner	Owner of the evolve task. Defaults to the current schema owner.
force	Accept the plan even if the advisor did not recommend such an action. The default is FALSE requiring acceptance of the plan only if the plan is verified and shows sufficient improvement in benefit.

ALTER_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function

This function changes an attribute of a single plan or all plans associated with a SQL statement using the attribute name/value format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.ALTER_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE (
   sql_handle        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   plan_name         IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   attribute_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value   IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–4 ALTER_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_handle	SQL statement handle. It identifies plans associated with a SQL statement for an attribute change. If NULL then plan_name must be specified.
plan_name	Plan name. It identifies a specific plan. Default NULL means set the attribute for all plans associated with a SQL statement identified by sql_handle. If NULL then sql_handle must be specified.
attribute_name	Name of plan attribute to set (see table below).
attribute_value	Value of plan attribute to use (see table below)

Table 148–5 Names & Values for ALTER_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function Parameters

Name	Description	Possible Values
enabled	'YES' means the plan is available for use by the optimizer. It may or may not be used depending on accepted status.	'YES' or 'NO'
fixed	'YES' means the SQL plan baseline is not evolved over time. A fixed plan takes precedence over a non-fixed plan.	'YES' or 'NO'
autopurge	'YES' means the plan is purged if it is not used for a time period. 'NO' means it is never purged.	'YES' or 'NO'
plan_name	Name of the plan	String of up to 30 characters
description	Plan description.	String of up to 500 bytes

Return Values

The number of plans altered.

Usage Notes

When a single plan is specified, one of various statuses, or plan name, or description can be altered. When all plans for a SQL statement are specified, one of various statuses, or description can be altered. This function can be called numerous times, each time setting a different plan attribute of same plan(s) or different plan(s).

CANCEL_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure

The procedure cancels a currently executing evolve task. All intermediate results are removed from the task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.CANCEL_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 148–6 CANCEL_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to cancel

CONFIGURE Procedure

This procedure sets configuration options for SQL management base, in parameter/value format. This function can be called numerous times, each time setting a different configuration option.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.CONFIGURE (
   parameter_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter_value   IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 148–7 CONFIGURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter_name	Name of parameter to set (see table below)
parameter_value	Value of parameter to use (see table below)

Table 148–8 Names & Values for CONFIGURE Procedure Parameters

Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
space_budget_percent	Maximum percent of SYSAUX space that can be used for SQL management base	1,2, …, 50	10
plan_retention_weeks	Number of weeks to retain unused plans before they are purged	5,6, …, 523	53

Usage Notes

- The default space budget for SQL management base is no more than ten percent of the size of SYSAUX tablespace. The space budget can be set to a maximum of 50%. The default unused plan retention period is one year and one week, which means a plan will be automatically purged if it has not been used for more than a year. The retention period can be set to a maximum of 523 weeks (i.e. a little over 10 years).
- When the space occupied by SQL management base exceeds the defined space budget limit, a weekly database alert is generated.

CREATE_EVOLVE_TASK Function

The function has two overloads, both of which create an advisor task and sets its parameters. This version which takes a SQL handle creates an evolve task in order to evolve one or more plans for a given SQL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.CREATE_EVOLVE_TASK (
   sql_handle    IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   plan_name     IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   time_limit    IN  NUMBER    := DBMS_SPM.AUTO_LIMIT,
   task_name     IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   description   IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_SPM.CREATE_EVOLVE_TASK (
   plan_list     IN  DBMS_SPM.NAME_LIST,
   time_limit    IN  NUMBER    := DBMS_SPM.AUTO_LIMIT,
   task_name     IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   description   IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 148–9 CREATE_EVOLVE_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_handle	Handle of a SQL statement. The default NULL considers all SQL statements with non-accepted plans.
plan_list	List of plan names. The plans may belong to different SQL statements.
plan_name	Plan identifier. The default NULL considers all non-accepted plans of the specified SQL handle or all SQL statements if the SQL handle is NULL.
time_limit	Time limit in number of minutes. The time limit is global and it is used in the following manner. The time limit for first non-accepted plan is equal to the input value. The time limit for the second non-accepted plan is equal to (input value - time spent in first plan verification) and so on. The default DBMS_SPM.AUTO_LIMIT means let the system choose an appropriate time limit based on the number of plan verifications required to be done. The value DBMS_SPM.NO_LIMIT means no time limit.
task_name	Evolve task name
description	Description of the task (maximum 256 characters)

Return Values

SQL evolve task unique name

CREATE_STGTAB_BASELINE Procedure

This procedure creates a staging table used for transporting SQL plan baselines from one system to another.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.CREATE_STGTAB_BASELINE (
   table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   table_owner       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   tablespace_name   IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 148–10 CREATE_STGTAB_BASELINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of staging table to create for the purpose of packing and unpacking SQL plan baselines
table_owner	Name of owner of the staging table. Default NULL means current schema is the table owner.
tablespace_name	Name of tablespace. Default NULL means create staging table in the default tablespace.

Usage Notes

The creation of staging table is the first step. To migrate SQL plan baselines from one system to another, the user/DBA has to perform a series of steps as follows:

1. Create a staging table in the source system
2. Select SQL plan baselines in the source system and pack them into the staging table
3. Export staging table into a flat file using Oracle EXP utility or Data Pump
4. Transfer flat file to the target system
5. Import staging table from the flat file using Oracle IMP utility or Data Pump
6. Select SQL plan baselines from the staging table and unpack them into the target system

DROP_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure

The procedure drops an evolved task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.DROP_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 148–11 DROP_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to drop

DROP_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function

This function drops a single plan, or all plans associated with a SQL statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.DROP_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE (
   sql_handle     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   plan_name      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–12 DROP_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_handle	SQL statement handle. It identifies plans associated with a SQL statement that are to be dropped. If NULL then plan_name must be specified.
plan_name	Plan name. It identifies a specific plan. Default NULL means to drop all plans associated with the SQL statement identified by sql_handle.

Return Values

The number of plans dropped

EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function

This function evolves SQL plan baselines associated with one or more SQL statements. A SQL plan baseline is evolved when one or more of its non-accepted plans is changed to an accepted plan or plans. If interrogated by the user (parameter `verify` = 'YES'), the execution performance of each non-accepted plan is compared against the performance of a plan chosen from the associated SQL plan baseline. If the non-accepted plan performance is found to be better than SQL plan baseline performance, the non-accepted plan is changed to an accepted plan provided such action is permitted by the user (parameter `commit` = 'YES').

The second form of the function employs a plan list format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE (
   sql_handle   IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   plan_name    IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   time_limit   IN INTEGER  := DBMS_SPM.AUTO_LIMIT,
   verify       IN VARCHAR2 := 'YES',
   commit       IN VARCHAR2 := 'YES')
  RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_SPM.EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE (
   plan_list    IN DBMS_SPM.NAME_LIST,
   time_limit   IN INTEGER  := DBMS_SPM.AUTO_LIMIT,
   verify       IN VARCHAR2 := 'YES',
   commit       IN VARCHAR2 := 'YES')
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 148–13 EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sql_handle`	SQL statement identifier. Unless `plan_name` is specified, `NULL` means to consider all statements with non-accepted plans in their SQL plan baselines.
`plan_name`	Plan identifier. Default `NULL` means to consider all non-accepted plans in the SQL plan baseline of either the identified SQL statement or all SQL statements if `sql_handle` is `NULL`.
`plan_list`	A list of plan names. Each plan in the list can belong to same or different SQL statement.
`time_limit`	Time limit in number of minutes. This applies only if `verify` = 'YES'. The time limit is global and it is used as follows: The time limit for first non-accepted plan verification is set equal to the input value; the time limit for second non-accepted plan verification is set equal to (input value - time spent in first plan verification); and so on. ■ `DBMS_SPM.AUTO_LIMIT` (Default) lets the system choose an appropriate time limit based on the number of plan verifications required to be done. ■ `DBMS_SPM.NO_LIMIT` means there is no time limit. ■ A positive integer value represents a user specified time limit.

Table 148–13 (Cont.) EVOLVE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
verify	Specifies whether to execute the plans and compare the performance before changing non-accepted plans into accepted plans. A performance verification involves executing a non-accepted plan and a plan chosen from corresponding SQL plan baseline and comparing their performance statistics. If non-accepted plan shows performance improvement, it is changed to an accepted plan. ■ 'YES' (Default) - verifies that a non-accepted plan gives better performance before changing it to an accepted plan ■ 'NO' - directs not to execute plans but only to change non-accepted plans into accepted plans
commit	Specifies whether to update the ACCEPTED status of non-accepted plans from 'NO' to 'YES'. ■ 'YES' (Default) - perform updates of qualifying non-accepted plans and generate a report that shows the updates and the result of performance verification when verify = 'YES'. ■ 'NO' - generate a report without any updates. Note that commit = 'NO' together with verify = 'NO' represents a no-op.

Return Values

A CLOB containing a formatted text report showing non-accepted plans in sequence, each with a possible change of its ACCEPTED status, and if verify = 'YES' the result of their performance verification.

Usage Notes

Invoking this subprogram requires the ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege.

EXECUTE_EVOLVE_TASK Function

The function executes a previously created evolve task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.EXECUTE_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   execution_name   IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   execution_desc   IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL);
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 148–14 EXECUTE_EVOLVE_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Evolve task name
execution_name	Name to qualify and identify an execution. If not specified, it is generated by the advisor and returned by the function.
execution_desc	Description of the execution (maximum 256 characters)

Return Values

Name of the new execution

IMPLEMENT_EVOLVE_TASK Function

The function implements all the actions recommended by an evolve task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.IMPLEMENT_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   task_owner      IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   execution_name  IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   force           IN BOOLEAN    := FALSE)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–15 IMPLEMENT_EVOLVE_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to report
task_owner	Owner of the evolve task. Defaults to the current schema owner.
execution_name	Name to qualify and identify an execution. If NULL, the action will be taken for the last task execution.
force	Accept all plans even if the advisor did not recommend such an action. The default is FALSE requiring acceptance of the plan only if the plan is verified and shows sufficient improvement in benefit.

Return Values

The number of plans accepted

INTERRUPT_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure

The procedure interrupts a currently executing evolve task. The task ends its operations as at a normal exit and the user can access the intermediate results. The task can be resumed later.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.INTERRUPT_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 148–16 INTERRUPT_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to interrupt

LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE Functions

This function loads one or more plans present in the cursor cache for a SQL statement, or a set of SQL statements. It has four overloads: using SQL statement text, using SQL handle, using SQL ID, or using `attribute_name` and `attribute_value` pair.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE (
   sql_id            IN  VARCHAR2,
   plan_hash_value   IN  NUMBER   := NULL,
   sql_text          IN  CLOB,
   fixed             IN  VARCHAR2 := 'NO',
   enabled           IN  VARCHAR2 := 'YES')
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

DBMS_SPM.LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE (
   sql_id            IN  VARCHAR2,
   plan_hash_value   IN  NUMBER   := NULL,
   sql_handle        IN  VARCHAR2,
   fixed             IN  VARCHAR2 := 'NO',
   enabled           IN  VARCHAR2 := 'YES')
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

DBMS_SPM.LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE (
   sql_id            IN  VARCHAR2,
   plan_hash_value   IN  NUMBER   := NULL,
   fixed             IN  VARCHAR2 := 'NO',
   enabled           IN  VARCHAR2 := 'YES')
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

DBMS_SPM.LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE (
   attribute_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value  IN VARCHAR2,
   fixed            IN VARCHAR2 := 'NO',
   enabled          IN VARCHAR2 := 'YES')
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–17 LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sql_id`	SQL statement identifier. Identifies a SQL statement in the cursor cache. Note: In the third overload the text of identified SQL statement is extracted from cursor cache and is used to identify the SQL plan baseline into which the plan(s) are loaded. If the SQL plan baseline doesn't exist it is created.
`plan_hash_value`	Plan identifier. Default `NULL` means capture all plans present in the cursor cache for the SQL statement identified by `SQL_ID`.
`sql_text`	SQL text to use in identifying the SQL plan baseline into which the plans are loaded. If the SQL plan baseline does not exist, it is created. The use of text is crucial when the user tunes a SQL statement by adding hints to its text and then wants to load the resulting plan(s) into the SQL plan baseline of the original SQL statement.

Table 148–17 (Cont.) LOAD_PLANS_FROM_CURSOR_CACHE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_handle	SQL handle to use in identifying the SQL plan baseline into which the plans are loaded. The sql_handle must denote an existing SQL plan baseline. The use of handle is crucial when the user tunes a SQL statement by adding hints to its text and then wants to load the resulting plan(s) into the SQL plan baseline of the original SQL statement.
fixed	Default 'NO' means the loaded plans are used as non-fixed plans. Value 'YES' means the loaded plans are used as fixed plans and the SQL plan baseline will not be evolved over time.
attribute_name	One of possible attribute names: ■ SQL_TEXT'' ■ 'PARSING_SCHEMA_NAME' ■ 'MODULE' ■ 'ACTION'
attribute_value	Attribute value is used as a search pattern of LIKE predicate if attribute name is 'SQL_TEXT'. Otherwise, it is used as an equality search value. (for example, for specifying attribute_name => 'SQL_TEXT', and attribute_value => '% HR-123 %' means applying SQL_TEXT LIKE '% HR-123 %' as a selection filter. Similarly, specifying attribute_name => 'MODULE', and attribute_value => 'HR' means applying 'MODULE = 'HR' as a plan selection filter). The attribute value is upper-cased except when it is enclosed in double quotes or attribute name is 'SQL_TEXT'.
enabled	Default 'YES' means the loaded plans are enabled for use by the optimizer

Return Values

Number of plans loaded

Usage Notes

Invoking this subprogram requires the ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege.

LOAD_PLANS_FROM_SQLSET Function

This function loads plans stored in a SQL tuning set (STS) into SQL plan baselines. The plans loaded from STS are not verified for performance but added as accepted plans to existing or new SQL plan baselines. This function can be used to seed SQL management base with new SQL plan baselines.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.LOAD_PLANS_FROM_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sqlset_owner     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   basic_filter     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   fixed            IN  VARCHAR2 := 'NO',
   enabled          IN  VARCHAR2 := 'YES'
   commit_rows      IN  NUMBER   := 1000)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–18 LOAD_PLANS_FROM_SQLSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	Name of the STS from where the plans are loaded into SQL plan baselines
sqlset_owner	Owner of STS. NULL means current schema is the owner.
basic_filter	A filter applied to the STS to select only qualifying plans to be loaded. The filter can take the form of any WHERE clause predicate that can specified against the view DBA_SQLSET_STATEMENTS. For example basic_filter => 'sql_text like ''select /*LOAD_STS*/%''' or basic_filter => 'sql_id=''b62q7nc33gzwx'''.
fixed	Default 'NO' means the loaded plans are used as non-fixed plans. Value 'YES' means the loaded plans are used as fixed plans and the SQL plan baseline will not be evolved over time.
enabled	Default 'YES' means the loaded plans are enabled for use by the optimizer
commit_rows	Number of SQL plans to load before doing a periodic commit. This helps to shorten the undo log.

Return Values

The number of plans loaded

Usage Notes

- To load plans from a remote system, first load the plans into an STS on the remote system, export/import the STS from remote to local system, and then use this function.
- To load plans from Automatic Workload Repository (AWR), first load the plans stored in AWR snapshots into an STS, and then use this procedure.
- The user can also capture plans resident in the cursor cache for one or more SQL statements into an STS, and then use this procedure.

MIGRATE_STORED_OUTLINE Functions

This function migrates stored outlines for one or more SQL statements to plan baselines in the SQL management base (SMB). Users can specify which stored outline(s) to be migrated based on outline name, SQL text, or outline category, or migrate all stored outlines in the system to SQL plan baselines.

This second overload of the function migrates stored outlines for one or more SQL statements to plan baselines in the SQL management base (SMB) given one or more outline names.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.MIGRATE_STORED_OUTLINE (
   attribute_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value    IN  CLOB,
   fixed              IN  VARCHAR2 := 'NO')
 RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_SPM.MIGRATE_STORED_OUTLINE (
   outln_list         IN  DBMS_SPM.NAME_LIST,
   fixed              IN  VARCHAR2 := 'NO')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 148–19 MIGRATE_STORED_OUTLINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute_name	Specifies the type of parameter used in attribute_value to identify the migrated stored outlines. It is case insensitive. Possible values: ■ outline_name ■ sql_text ■ category ■ all
attribute_value	Based on attribute_name, this can be: ■ Name of stored outline to be migrated ■ SQL text of stored outlines to be migrated ■ Category of stored outlines to be migrated ■ NULL if attribute_name is all
fixed	NO (default) or YES. Specifies the "fixed" status of the plans generated during migration. By default, plans are generated as "non-fixed" plans.
outln_list	List of outline names to be migrated

Return Values

A CLOB containing a formatted report to describe the statistics during the migration, including:

- Number of stored outlines successfully migrated

- Number of stored outlines (and also the corresponding outline names) failed to be migrated and the reasons for the failure

Usage Note

- When the user specifies an outline name, the function migrates stored outlines to plan baseline based on given outline name, which uniquely identifies a single stored outline to be migrated.
- When the user specifies SQL text, the function migrates all stored outlines created for a given SQL statement. A single SQL statement can have multiple stored outlines created for it under different category names. One plan baseline plan is created for each stored outline. The new plan baselines have category names set to `DEFAULT`. The module name of a plan baseline is set to be the same as the stored outline.
- When the user specifies a category name, the function migrates all stored outlines with the given category name. Only one stored outline exists per category per SQL statement. One plan baseline is created for each stored outline.
- When user specifies to migrate `all`, the function migrates all stored outlines in the system to plan baselines. One plan baseline is created for each stored outline.

PACK_STGTAB_BASELINE Function

This function packs (exports) SQL plan baselines from SQL management base into a staging table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.PACK_STGTAB_BASELINE (
   table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   table_owner      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sql_handle       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   plan_name        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sql_text         IN CLOB     := NULL,
   creator          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,   origin           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   enabled          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   accepted         IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   fixed            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   module           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   action           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–20 PACK_STGTAB_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of staging table into which SQL plan baselines are packed (case insensitive unless double quoted)
table_owner	Name of staging table owner.Default NULL means current schema is the table owner
sql_handle	SQL handle (case sensitive)
plan_name	Plan name (case sensitive, % wildcards accepted)
sql_text	SQL text string (case sensitive, % wildcards accepted)
creator	Creator of SQL plan baseline (case insensitive unless double quoted)
origin	Origin of SQL plan baseline, should be 'MANUAL-LOAD', 'AUTO-CAPTURE', 'MANUAL_SQLTUNE' or 'AUTO-SQLTUNE' (case insensitive)
enabled	Must be 'YES' or 'NO' (case insensitive)
accepted	Must be 'YES' or 'NO' (case insensitive)
fixed	Must be 'YES' or 'NO' (case insensitive)
module	Module (case sensitive)
action	Action (case sensitive)

Return Values

Number of SQL plan baselines packed

RESET_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure

The procedure resets an evolve task to its initial state. All intermediate results will be removed from the task. Call this procedure on a task that is not currently executing.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.RESET_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 148–21 RESET_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to reset

RESUME_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure

The procedure resumes a previously interrupted task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.RESUME_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 148–22 RESUME_EVOLVE_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to resume

REPORT_AUTO_EVOLVE_TASK Function

The procedure displays the results of an execution of an automatic evolve task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.REPORT_AUTO_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   type            IN  VARCHAR2  := TYPE_TEXT,
   level           IN  VARCHAR2  := LEVEL_TYPICAL,
   section         IN  VARCHAR2  := SECTION_ALL,
   object_id       IN  NUMBER    := NULL,
   execution_name  IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 148–23 REPORT_AUTO_EVOLVE_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
type	Type of the report. Possible values are TEXT, HTML, XML
level	Format of the report. Possible values are BASIC, TYPICAL, ALL.
section	Particular section in the report. Possible values are: SUMMARY, FINDINGS, PLANS, INFORMATION, ERRORS, ALL.
object_id	Identifier of the advisor framework object that represents a single plan. If NULL, the report is generated for all objects.
execution_name	Name to qualify and identify an execution. If NULL, the report is generated for the last task execution.

Return Values

The report

REPORT_EVOLVE_TASK Function

The procedure displays the results of an evolved task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.REPORT_EVOLVE_TASK  (
   task_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   type            IN  VARCHAR2  := TYPE_TEXT,
   level           IN  VARCHAR2  := LEVEL_TYPICAL,
   section         IN  VARCHAR2  := SECTION_ALL,
   object_id       IN  NUMBER    := NULL,
   task_owner      IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   execution_name  IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 148–24 REPORT_EVOLVE_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of task to report
type	Type of the report. Possible values are TEXT, HTML, XML
level	Format of the report. Possible values are BASIC, TYPICAL, ALL.
section	Particular section in the report. Possible values are: SUMMARY, FINDINGS, PLANS, INFORMATION, ERRORS, ALL.
object_id	Identifier of the advisor framework object that represents a single plan. If NULL, the report is generated for all objects.
task_owner	Owner of the evolve task. Defaults to the current schema owner.
execution_name	Name to qualify and identify an execution. If NULL, the report is generated for the last task execution.

Return Values

The report

SET_EVOLVE_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure

The procedure sets a parameter of an evolve task, either a NUMBER or VARCHAR2.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.SET_EVOLVE_TASK_PARAMETER  (
   task_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   parameter     IN  VARCHAR2,
   value         IN  NUMBER);

DBMS_SPM.SET_EVOLVE_TASK_PARAMETER  (
   task_name     IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   parameter     IN  VARCHAR2,
   value         IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 148–25 SET_EVOLVE_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Evolve task name
parameter	Name of the parameter to set
value	New value of the parameter

UNPACK_STGTAB_BASELINE Function

This function unpacks (imports) SQL plan baselines from a staging table into SQL management base.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SPM.UNPACK_STGTAB_BASELINE (
   table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   table_owner      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sql_handle       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   plan_name        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sql_text         IN CLOB     := NULL,
   creator          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,   origin           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   enabled          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   accepted         IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   fixed            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   module           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   action           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 148–26 UNPACK_STGTAB_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of staging table from which SQL plan baselines are unpacked (case insensitive unless double quoted)
table_owner	Name of staging table owner.Default NULL means current schema is the table owner
sql_handle	SQL handle (case sensitive)
plan_name	Plan name (case sensitive,% wildcards accepted)
sql_text	SQL text string (case sensitive, % wildcards accepted)
creator	Creator of SQL plan baseline (case insensitive unless double quoted)
origin	Origin of SQL plan baseline, should be 'MANUAL-LOAD', 'AUTO-CAPTURE','MANUAL_SQLTUNE' or 'AUTO-SQLTUNE' (case insensitive)
enabled	Must be 'YES' or 'NO' (case insensitive)
accepted	Must be 'YES' or 'NO' (case insensitive)
fixed	Must be 'YES' or 'NO' (case insensitive)
module	Module (case sensitive)
action	Action (case sensitive)

Return Values

Number of plans unpacked

149

DBMS_SQL

The DBMS_SQL package provides an interface to use dynamic SQL to parse any data manipulation language (DML) or data definition language (DDL) statement using PL/SQL. For example, you can enter a DROP TABLE statement from within a stored procedure by using the PARSE Procedures supplied with the DBMS_SQL package.

> **See Also:** For more information on native dynamic SQL, see *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference.*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SQL

Overview

Oracle lets you write stored procedures and anonymous PL/SQL blocks that use dynamic SQL. Dynamic SQL statements are not embedded in your source program; rather, they are stored in character strings that are input to, or built by, the program at runtime. This enables you to create more general-purpose procedures. For example, dynamic SQL lets you create a procedure that operates on a table whose name is not known until runtime.

Native Dynamic SQL is an alternative to `DBMS_SQL` that lets you place dynamic SQL statements directly into PL/SQL blocks. In most situations, Native Dynamic SQL is easier to use and performs better than `DBMS_SQL`. However, Native Dynamic SQL itself has certain limitations:

- There is no support for so-called Method 4 (for dynamic SQL statements with an unknown number of inputs or outputs)
- There are some tasks that can only be performed using `DBMS_SQL`. For tasks that require `DBMS_SQL`, see *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference*.

The ability to use dynamic SQL from within stored procedures generally follows the model of the Oracle Call Interface (OCI).

See Also: *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*

PL/SQL differs somewhat from other common programming languages, such as C. For example, addresses (also called pointers) are not user-visible in PL/SQL. As a result, there are some differences between the Oracle Call Interface and the `DBMS_SQL` package. These differences include the following:

- The OCI binds by address and the `DBMS_SQL` package binds by value.
- With `DBMS_SQL` you must call `VARIABLE_VALUE` to retrieve the value of an `OUT` parameter for an anonymous block, and you must call `COLUMN_VALUE` after fetching rows to retrieve the values of the columns in the rows into your program.
- The current release of the `DBMS_SQL` package does not provide `CANCEL` cursor procedures.
- Indicator variables are not required, because `NULL`s are fully supported as values of a PL/SQL variable.

Security Model

DBMS_SQL is a SYS-owned package compiled with AUTHID CURRENT_USER. Any DBMS_SQL subprogram called from an anonymous PL/SQL block runs with the privileges of the current user.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about using Invoker Rights or Definer Rights

Preventing Malicious or Accidental Access of Open Cursor Numbers

An error, ORA-29471, is raised when any DBMS_SQL subprogram is called with a cursor number that does not denote an open cursor. When the error is raised, an alert is issued to the alert log and DBMS_SQL becomes inoperable for the life of the session.

If the actual value for the cursor number in a call to the IS_OPEN Function denotes a cursor currently open in the session, the return value is TRUE. If the actual value is NULL, then the return value is FALSE. Otherwise, this raises an ORA-29471 error.

Preventing Inappropriate Use of a Cursor

Cursors are protected from security breaches that subvert known existing cursors.

Checks are made when binding and executing. Optionally, checks may be performed for every single DBMS_SQL subprogram call. The check is:

- The current_user is the same on calling the subprogram as it was on calling the most recent parse.
- The enabled roles on calling the subprogram must be identical to the enabled roles on calling the most recent parse.
- The container is the same on calling the subprogram as it was on calling the most recent parse.

Consistent with the use of definer's rights subprograms, roles do not apply.

If either check fails, then an ORA-29470 error is raised.

The mechanism for defining when checks are performed is a new overload for the OPEN_CURSOR subprogram, which takes a formal parameter, security_level, with allowed values NULL, 1 and 2.

- When security_level = 1 (or is NULL), the checks are made only when binding and executing.
- When security_level = 2, the checks are always made.

Upgrade Considerations

This security regime is stricter than those in the previous releases. As a consequence, users of DBMS_SQL may encounter runtime errors on upgrade.

Constants

The constants described in Table 149–1 are used with the `language_flag` parameter of the PARSE Procedures.

Table 149–1 DBMS_SQL Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
`V6`	`INTEGER`	`0`	Specifies Oracle database version 6 behavior
`NATIVE`	`INTEGER`	`1`	Specifies normal behavior for the database to which the program is connected
`V7`	`INTEGER`	2	Specifies Oracle database version 7 behavior
`FOREIGN_SYNTAX`	`INTEGER`	4	Passed as the `language_flag` argument to the PARSE Procedures to specify that the SQL statement to be parsed needs to be translated first by the SQL translation profile set in the database session. An error is raised if a profile is not set.

Exceptions

```
inconsistent_type EXCEPTION;
  pragma exception_init(inconsistent_type, -6562);
```

This exception is raised by the COLUMN_VALUE Procedure or the VARIABLE_VALUE Procedures when the type of the given `OUT` parameter (for where to put the requested value) is different from the type of the value.

Operational Notes

Execution Flow

1. OPEN_CURSOR
2. PARSE
3. BIND_VARIABLE or BIND_ARRAY
4. DEFINE_COLUMN, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG, or DEFINE_ARRAY
5. EXECUTE
6. FETCH_ROWS or EXECUTE_AND_FETCH
7. VARIABLE_VALUE, COLUMN_VALUE, or COLUMN_VALUE_LONG
8. CLOSE_CURSOR

OPEN_CURSOR

To process a SQL statement, you must have an open cursor. When you call the OPEN_CURSOR Functions, you receive a cursor `ID` number for the data structure representing a valid cursor maintained by Oracle. These cursors are distinct from cursors defined at the precompiler, OCI, or PL/SQL level, and are used only by the `DBMS_SQL` package.

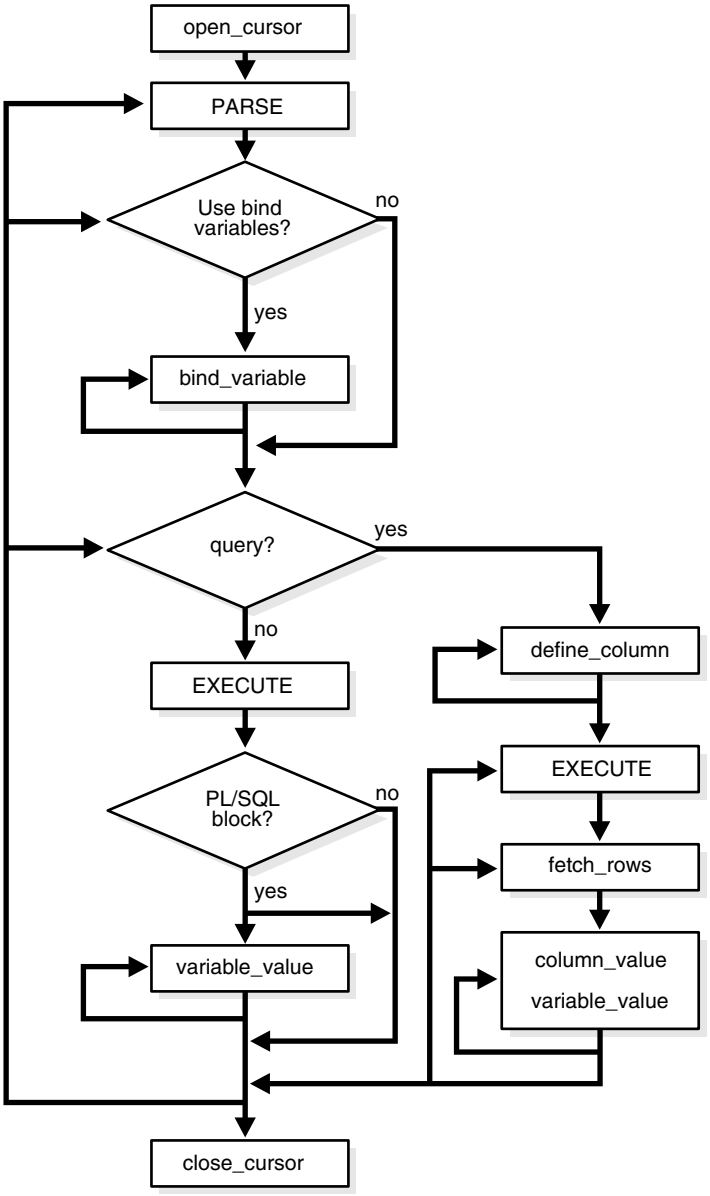
PARSE

Every SQL statement must be parsed by calling the PARSE Procedures. Parsing the statement checks the statement's syntax and associates it with the cursor in your program.

You can parse any DML or DDL statement. DDL statements are run on the parse, which performs the implied commit.

The execution flow of `DBMS_SQL` is shown in Figure 149–1.

Figure 149–1 DBMS_SQL Execution Flow



BIND_VARIABLE or BIND_ARRAY

Many DML statements require that data in your program be input to Oracle. When you define a SQL statement that contains input data to be supplied at runtime, you must use placeholders in the SQL statement to mark where data must be supplied.

For each placeholder in the SQL statement, you must call one of the BIND_ARRAY Procedures on page 149-50 or the BIND_VARIABLE Procedures on page 149-53, to supply the value of a variable in your program (or the values of an array) to the placeholder. When the SQL statement is subsequently run, Oracle uses the data that your program has placed in the output and input, or bind, variables.

`DBMS_SQL` can run a DML statement multiple times — each time with a different bind variable. The `BIND_ARRAY` procedure lets you bind a collection of scalars, each value of which is used as an input variable once for each `EXECUTE`. This is similar to the array interface supported by the OCI.

Note that the datatype of the values bound to placeholders cannot be PL/SQL-only datatypes.

DEFINE_COLUMN, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG, or DEFINE_ARRAY

The columns of the row being selected in a SELECT statement are identified by their relative positions as they appear in the select list, from left to right. For a query, you must call one of the define procedures (DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure, or DEFINE_ARRAY Procedure) to specify the variables that are to receive the SELECT values, much the way an INTO clause does for a static query.

Use the DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG procedure to define LONG columns, in the same way that DEFINE_COLUMN is used to define non-LONG columns. You must call DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG before using the COLUMN_VALUE_LONG Procedure to fetch from the LONG column.

Use the DEFINE_ARRAY procedure to define a PL/SQL collection into which you want to fetch rows in a single SELECT statement. DEFINE_ARRAY provides an interface to fetch multiple rows at one fetch. You must call DEFINE_ARRAY before using the COLUMN_VALUE procedure to fetch the rows.

EXECUTE

Call the EXECUTE Function to run your SQL statement.

FETCH_ROWS or EXECUTE_AND_FETCH

The FETCH_ROWS Function retrieves the rows that satisfy the query. Each successive fetch retrieves another set of rows, until the fetch is unable to retrieve any more rows. Instead of calling EXECUTE Function and then FETCH_ROWS, you may find it more efficient to call EXECUTE_AND_FETCH Function if you are calling EXECUTE for a single execution.

VARIABLE_VALUE, COLUMN_VALUE, or COLUMN_VALUE_LONG

For queries, call the COLUMN_VALUE Procedure to determine the value of a column retrieved by the FETCH_ROWS Function. For anonymous blocks containing calls to PL/SQL procedures or DML statements with returning clause, call the VARIABLE_VALUE Procedures to retrieve the values assigned to the output variables when statements were run.

To fetch only part of a LONG database column (which can be up to two gigabytes in size), use the DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure. You can specify the offset (in bytes) into the column value, and the number of bytes to fetch.

CLOSE_CURSOR

When you no longer need a cursor for a session, close the cursor by calling the CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure. If you are using an Oracle Open Gateway, then you may need to close cursors at other times as well. Consult your *Oracle Open Gateway* documentation for additional information.

If you neglect to close a cursor, then the memory used by that cursor remains allocated even though it is no longer needed.

Processing Queries

If you are using dynamic SQL to process a query, then you must perform the following steps:

1. Specify the variables that are to receive the values returned by the `SELECT` statement by calling the DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures, the DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure, or the DEFINE_ARRAY Procedure.
2. Run your `SELECT` statement by calling the EXECUTE Function.
3. Call the FETCH_ROWS Function (or `EXECUTE_AND_FETCH`) to retrieve the rows that satisfied your query.
4. Call COLUMN_VALUE Procedure or COLUMN_VALUE_LONG Procedure to determine the value of a column retrieved by the FETCH_ROWS Function for your query. If you used anonymous blocks containing calls to PL/SQL procedures, then you must call the VARIABLE_VALUE Procedures to retrieve the values assigned to the output variables of these procedures.

Processing Updates, Inserts, and Deletes

If you are using dynamic SQL to process an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`, then you must perform the following steps:

1. Run your `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statement by calling the EXECUTE Function.
2. If statements have the `returning` clause, then you must call the VARIABLE_VALUE Procedures to retrieve the values assigned to the output variables.

Locating Errors

The `DBMS_SQL` package has additional functions for obtaining information about the last referenced cursor in the session. The values returned by these functions are meaningful only immediately after a SQL statement is run. In addition, some error-locating functions are meaningful only after certain `DBMS_SQL` calls. For example, you call the LAST_ERROR_POSITION Function immediately after calling one of the PARSE Procedures.

Examples

This section provides example procedures that use the DBMS_SQL package.

Example 1

This example does not need dynamic SQL because the text of the statement is known at compile time, but it illustrates the basic concept underlying the package.

The DEMO procedure deletes all of the employees from the EMP table whose salaries are greater than the salary that you specify when you run DEMO.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE demo(salary IN NUMBER) AS
    cursor_name INTEGER;
    rows_processed INTEGER;
BEGIN
    cursor_name := dbms_sql.open_cursor;
    DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor_name, 'DELETE FROM emp WHERE sal > :x',
                   DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
    DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(cursor_name, ':x', salary);
    rows_processed := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(cursor_name);
    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(cursor_name);
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(cursor_name);
END;
```

Example 2

The following sample procedure is passed a SQL statement, which it then parses and runs:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE exec(STRING IN varchar2) AS
    cursor_name INTEGER;
    ret INTEGER;
BEGIN
   cursor_name := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
```

DDL statements are run by the parse call, which performs the implied commit.

```
   DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor_name, string, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
   ret := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(cursor_name);
   DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(cursor_name);
END;
```

Creating such a procedure enables you to perform the following operations:

- The SQL statement can be dynamically generated at runtime by the calling program.
- The SQL statement can be a DDL statement or a DML without binds.

For example, after creating this procedure, you could make the following call:

```
exec('create table acct(c1 integer)');
```

You could even call this procedure remotely, as shown in the following example. This lets you perform remote DDL.

```
exec@hq.com('CREATE TABLE acct(c1 INTEGER)');
```

Example 3

The following sample procedure is passed the names of a source and a destination table, and copies the rows from the source table to the destination table. This sample procedure assumes that both the source and destination tables have the following columns:

```
id        of type NUMBER
name      of type VARCHAR2(30)
birthdate of type DATE
```

This procedure does not need the use of dynamic SQL; however, it illustrates the concepts of this package.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE copy (
     source      IN VARCHAR2,
     destination IN VARCHAR2) IS
     id_var             NUMBER;
     name_var           VARCHAR2(30);
     birthdate_var      DATE;
     source_cursor      INTEGER;
     destination_cursor INTEGER;
     ignore             INTEGER;
  BEGIN

  -- Prepare a cursor to select from the source table:
     source_cursor := dbms_sql.open_cursor;
     DBMS_SQL.PARSE(source_cursor,
         'SELECT id, name, birthdate FROM ' || source,
          DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
     DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(source_cursor, 1, id_var);
     DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(source_cursor, 2, name_var, 30);
     DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(source_cursor, 3, birthdate_var);
     ignore := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(source_cursor);

  -- Prepare a cursor to insert into the destination table:
     destination_cursor := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
     DBMS_SQL.PARSE(destination_cursor,
                 'INSERT INTO ' || destination ||
                 ' VALUES (:id_bind, :name_bind, :birthdate_bind)',
                  DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);

  -- Fetch a row from the source table and insert it into the destination table:
     LOOP
       IF DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(source_cursor)>0 THEN
         -- get column values of the row
         DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(source_cursor, 1, id_var);
         DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(source_cursor, 2, name_var);
         DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(source_cursor, 3, birthdate_var);

  -- Bind the row into the cursor that inserts into the destination table. You
  -- could alter this example to require the use of dynamic SQL by inserting an
  -- if condition before the bind.
       DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(destination_cursor, ':id_bind', id_var);
       DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(destination_cursor, ':name_bind', name_var);
       DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(destination_cursor, ':birthdate_bind',
                                                              birthdate_var);
       ignore := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(destination_cursor);
     ELSE

  -- No more rows to copy:
```

```
      EXIT;
    END IF;
  END LOOP;

  -- Commit and close all cursors:
    COMMIT;
    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(source_cursor);
    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(destination_cursor);
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
      IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(source_cursor) THEN
        DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(source_cursor);
      END IF;
      IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(destination_cursor) THEN
        DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(destination_cursor);
      END IF;
      RAISE;
  END;
/
```

Examples 3, 4, and 5: Bulk DML

This series of examples shows how to use bulk array binds (table items) in the SQL DML statements `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE`.

Here is an example of a bulk `INSERT` statement that demonstrates adding seven new employees to the `emp` table:

```
DECLARE
  stmt VARCHAR2(200);
  empno_array      DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  empname_array    DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2_TABLE;
  jobs_array       DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2_TABLE;
  mgr_array        DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  hiredate_array   DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2_TABLE;
  sal_array        DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  comm_array       DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  deptno_array     DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  c                NUMBER;
  dummy            NUMBER;
BEGIN
  empno_array(1):= 9001;
  empno_array(2):= 9002;
  empno_array(3):= 9003;
  empno_array(4):= 9004;
  empno_array(5):= 9005;
  empno_array(6):= 9006;
  empno_array(7):= 9007;

  empname_array(1) := 'Dopey';
  empname_array(2) := 'Grumpy';
  empname_array(3) := 'Doc';
  empname_array(4) := 'Happy';
  empname_array(5) := 'Bashful';
  empname_array(6) := 'Sneezy';
  empname_array(7) := 'Sleepy';

  jobs_array(1) := 'Miner';
  jobs_array(2) := 'Miner';
  jobs_array(3) := 'Miner';
  jobs_array(4) := 'Miner';
```

```
jobs_array(5) := 'Miner';
jobs_array(6) := 'Miner';
jobs_array(7) := 'Miner';

mgr_array(1) := 9003;
mgr_array(2) := 9003;
mgr_array(3) := 9003;
mgr_array(4) := 9003;
mgr_array(5) := 9003;
mgr_array(6) := 9003;
mgr_array(7) := 9003;

hiredate_array(1) := '06-DEC-2006';
hiredate_array(2) := '06-DEC-2006';
hiredate_array(3) := '06-DEC-2006';
hiredate_array(4) := '06-DEC-2006';
hiredate_array(5) := '06-DEC-2006';
hiredate_array(6) := '06-DEC-2006';
hiredate_array(7) := '06-DEC-2006';

sal_array(1):= 1000;
sal_array(2):= 1000;
sal_array(3):= 1000;
sal_array(4):= 1000;
sal_array(5):= 1000;
sal_array(6):= 1000;
sal_array(7):= 1000;

comm_array(1):= 0;
comm_array(2):= 0;
comm_array(3):= 0;
comm_array(4):= 0;
comm_array(5):= 0;
comm_array(6):= 0;
comm_array(7):= 0;

deptno_array(1):= 11;
deptno_array(2):= 11;
deptno_array(3):= 11;
deptno_array(4):= 11;
deptno_array(5):= 11;
deptno_array(6):= 11;
deptno_array(7):= 11;

stmt := 'INSERT INTO emp VALUES(
   :num_array, :name_array, :jobs_array, :mgr_array, :hiredate_array,
   :sal_array, :comm_array, :deptno_array)';
c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':num_array', empno_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':name_array', empname_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':jobs_array', jobs_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':mgr_array', mgr_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':hiredate_array', hiredate_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':sal_array', sal_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':comm_array', comm_array);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':deptno_array', deptno_array);

dummy := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
```

```
  EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(c) THEN
      DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
    END IF;
    RAISE;
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;
```

Here is an example of a bulk `UPDATE` statement that demonstrates updating salaries for four existing employees in the `emp` table:

```
DECLARE
  stmt VARCHAR2(200);
  empno_array     DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  salary_array    DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  c               NUMBER;
  dummy           NUMBER;
BEGIN

  empno_array(1):= 7369;
  empno_array(2):= 7876;
  empno_array(3):= 7900;
  empno_array(4):= 7934;

  salary_array(1) := 10000;
  salary_array(2) := 10000;
  salary_array(3) := 10000;
  salary_array(4) := 10000;

  stmt := 'update emp set sal = :salary_array
    WHERE empno = :num_array';
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':num_array', empno_array);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':salary_array', salary_array);
  dummy := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

  EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(c) THEN
      DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
    END IF;
    RAISE;
END;
/
```

In a `DELETE` statement, for example, you could bind an array in the `WHERE` clause and have the statement be run for each element in the array:

```
DECLARE
  stmt VARCHAR2(200);
  dept_no_array DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  c NUMBER;
  dummy NUMBER;
begin
  dept_no_array(1) := 10; dept_no_array(2) := 20;
  dept_no_array(3) := 30; dept_no_array(4) := 40;
  dept_no_array(5) := 30; dept_no_array(6) := 40;
  stmt := 'delete from emp where deptno = :dept_array';
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
```

```
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, ':dept_array', dept_no_array, 1, 4);
  dummy := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

  EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(c) THEN
      DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
    END IF;
    RAISE;
END;
/
```

In the preceding example, only elements 1 through 4 are used as specified by the BIND_ARRAY call. Each element of the array potentially deletes a large number of employees from the database.

Examples 6 and 7: Defining an Array

The following examples show how to use the DEFINE_ARRAY procedure:

```
declare
  c       NUMBER;
  d       NUMBER;
  n_tab   DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  indx    NUMBER := -10;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  dBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'select n from t order by 1', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);

  DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 1, n_tab, 10, indx);

  d := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  loop
    d := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(c);

    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 1, n_tab);

    EXIT WHEN d != 10;
  END LOOP;

  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

  EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(c) THEN
      DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
    END IF;
    RAISE;
END;
/
```

Each time the preceding example calls FETCH_ROWS Function, it fetches 10 rows that are kept in DBMS_SQL buffers. When the COLUMN_VALUE Procedure is called, those rows move into the PL/SQL table specified (in this case n_tab), at positions -10 to -1, as specified in the DEFINE statements. When the second batch is fetched in the loop, the rows go to positions 0 to 9; and so on.

A current index into each array is maintained automatically. This index is initialized to "indx" at EXECUTE time and is updated every time COLUMN_VALUE is called. If you reexecute at any point, then the current index for each DEFINE is reinitialized to "indx".

In this way the entire result of the query is fetched into the table. When FETCH_ROWS cannot fetch 10 rows, it returns the number of rows actually fetched (if no rows could be fetched, then it returns zero) and exits the loop.

Here is another example of using the DEFINE_ARRAY procedure:

Consider a table MULTI_TAB defined as:

```
CREATE TABLE multi_tab (num NUMBER,
                        dat1 DATE,
                        var VARCHAR2(24),
                        dat2 DATE)
```

To select everything from this table and move it into four PL/SQL tables, you could use the following simple program:

```
DECLARE
  c       NUMBER;
  d       NUMBER;
  n_tab  DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE;
  d_tab1 DBMS_SQL.DATE_TABLE;
  v_tab  DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2_TABLE;
  d_tab2 DBMS_SQL.DATE_TABLE;
  indx NUMBER := 10;
BEGIN

  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'select * from multi_tab order by 1', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);

  DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 1, n_tab,  5, indx);
  DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 2, d_tab1, 5, indx);
  DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 3, v_tab,  5, indx);
  DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 4, d_tab2, 5, indx);

  d := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);

  LOOP
    d := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(c);

    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 1, n_tab);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 2, d_tab1);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 3, v_tab);
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 4, d_tab2);

    EXIT WHEN d != 5;
  END LOOP;

  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

/*
```

The four tables can be used for anything. One usage might be to use BIND_ARRAY to move the rows to another table by using a statement such as 'INSERT into SOME_T values (:a, :b, :c, :d);

```
*/

EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    IF DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN(c) THEN
      DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
    END IF;
    RAISE;
```

```
END;
/
```

Example 8: Describe Columns

This code can be used as a substitute to the SQL*Plus `DESCRIBE` call by using a `SELECT *` query on the table that you want to describe.

```
DECLARE
  c           NUMBER;
  d           NUMBER;
  col_cnt     INTEGER;
  f           BOOLEAN;
  rec_tab     DBMS_SQL.DESC_TAB;
  col_num    NUMBER;
  PROCEDURE print_rec(rec in DBMS_SQL.DESC_REC) IS
  BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_type            =    '
                         || rec.col_type);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_maxlen          =    '
                         || rec.col_max_len);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_name            =    '
                         || rec.col_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_name_len        =    '
                         || rec.col_name_len);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_schema_name     =    '
                         || rec.col_schema_name);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_schema_name_len =    '
                         || rec.col_schema_name_len);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_precision       =    '
                         || rec.col_precision);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('col_scale           =    '
                         || rec.col_scale);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('col_null_ok         =    ');
    IF (rec.col_null_ok) THEN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('true');
    ELSE
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('false');
    END IF;
  END;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;

  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'SELECT * FROM scott.bonus', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);

  d := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);

  DBMS_SQL.DESCRIBE_COLUMNS(c, col_cnt, rec_tab);

/*
 * Following loop could simply be for j in 1..col_cnt loop.
 * Here we are simply illustrating some of the PL/SQL table
 * features.
 */
  col_num := rec_tab.first;
  IF (col_num IS NOT NULL) THEN
    LOOP
      print_rec(rec_tab(col_num));
      col_num := rec_tab.next(col_num);
      EXIT WHEN (col_num IS NULL);
```

```
    END LOOP;
  END IF;

  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

Example 9: RETURNING clause

With this clause, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements can return values of expressions in bind variables.

If a single row is inserted, updated, or deleted, then use DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE to bind these outbinds. To get the values in these bind variables, call DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE

> **Note:** This process is similar to DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE, which must be called after running a PL/SQL block with an outbind inside DBMS_SQL.

i) Single-row insert

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE single_Row_insert
     (c1 NUMBER, c2 NUMBER, r OUT NUMBER) is
c NUMBER;
n NUMBER;
begin
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'INSERT INTO tab VALUES (:bnd1, :bnd2) ' ||
                    'RETURNING c1*c2 INTO :bnd3', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd1', c1);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd2', c2);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd3', r);
  n := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd3', r); -- get value of outbind variable
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

ii) Single-row update

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE single_Row_update
     (c1 NUMBER, c2 NUMBER, r out NUMBER) IS
c NUMBER;
n NUMBER;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'UPDATE tab SET c1 = :bnd1, c2 = :bnd2 ' ||
                    'WHERE rownum < 2 ' ||
                    'RETURNING c1*c2 INTO :bnd3', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd1', c1);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd2', c2);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd3', r);
  n := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd3', r);-- get value of outbind variable
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

iii) Single-row delete

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE single_Row_Delete
     (c1 NUMBER, r OUT NUMBER) is
c NUMBER;
n number;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'DELETE FROM tab WHERE ROWNUM = :bnd1 ' ||
                'RETURNING c1*c2 INTO :bnd2', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd1', c1);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd2', r);
  n := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd2', r);-- get value of outbind variable
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

iv) Multiple-row insert

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE multi_Row_insert
     (c1 DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE, c2 DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE,
      r OUT DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE) is
c NUMBER;
n NUMBER;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'insert into tab VALUES (:bnd1, :bnd2) ' ||
                   'RETURNING c1*c2 INTO :bnd3', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd1', c1);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd2', c2);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd3', r);
  n := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd3', r);-- get value of outbind variable
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

v) Multiple-row update.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE multi_Row_update
     (c1 NUMBER, c2 NUMBER, r OUT DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE) IS
c NUMBER;
n NUMBER;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'UPDATE tab SET c1 = :bnd1 WHERE c2 = :bnd2 ' ||
                   'RETURNING c1*c2 INTO :bnd3', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd1', c1);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'bnd2', c2);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd3', r);
  n := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd3', r);-- get value of outbind variable
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

Note: bnd1 and bnd2 can be arrays too. The value of the expression for all the rows updated will be in bnd3. There is no way to determine which rows were updated for each value of bnd1 and bnd2.

vi) Multiple-row delete

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE multi_row_delete
     (c1 DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE,
      r OUT DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE) is
c NUMBER;
n NUMBER;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'DELETE FROM tab WHERE c1 = :bnd1' ||
                    'RETURNING c1*c2 INTO :bnd2', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd1', c1);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd2', r);
  n := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd2', r);-- get value of outbind variable
  DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);
END;
/
```

vii) outbind in bulk PL/SQL

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE foo (n NUMBER, square OUT NUMBER) IS
BEGIN square := n * n; END;/

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE bulk_plsql
   (n DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE, square OUT DBMS_SQL.NUMBER_TABLE) IS
c NUMBER;
r NUMBER;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, 'BEGIN foo(:bnd1, :bnd2); END;', DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd1', n);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY(c, 'bnd2', square);
  r := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'bnd2', square);
END;
/
```

Note: `DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY` of `number_Table` internally binds a number. The number of times statement is run depends on the number of elements in an inbind array.

Example 10: Binds and Defines of User-defined Types in DBMS_SQL

```
CREATE TYPE dnames_var IS VARRAY(7) OF VARCHAR2(30)
/

CREATE TABLE depts (region VARCHAR2(25), dept_names dnames_var)
/

INSERT INTO depts VALUES('Europe', dnames_var('Shipping','Sales','Finance'))
/
INSERT INTO depts VALUES('Americas', dnames_var('Sales','Finance','Shipping'))
/
INSERT INTO depts
     VALUES('Asia', dnames_var('Finance','Payroll','Shipping','Sales'))
/

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE update_depts(new_dnames dnames_var, region VARCHAR2)
IS
```

```
   some_dnames dnames_var;
   c      NUMBER;
   r      NUMBER;
   sql_stmt VARCHAR2(32767) :=
    'UPDATE depts SET dept_names = :b1 WHERE region = :b2 RETURNING dept_names
INTO :b3';

BEGIN

   c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;

   DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, sql_stmt, dbms_sql.native);

   DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'b1', new_dnames);
   DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'b2', region);
   DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'b3', some_dnames);

   r := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);

   -- Get value of outbind variable
   DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE(c, 'b3', some_dnames);

   DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

   -- select dept_names
   sql_stmt := 'SELECT dept_names FROM depts WHERE region = :b1';

   c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
   DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, sql_stmt, dbms_sql.native);

   DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(c, 1, some_dnames);
   DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'b1', region);

   r := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE_AND_FETCH(c);

   DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 1, some_dnames);

   DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

    -- loop through some_dnames collections
    FOR i IN some_dnames.FIRST .. some_dnames.LAST  LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Dept. Name = ' || some_dnames(i) || ' Updated!');
    END LOOP;
END;
/

DECLARE
  new_dnames dnames_var;
BEGIN
  new_dnames := dnames_var('Benefits', 'Advertising', 'Contracting',
                           'Executive', 'Marketing');
  update_depts(new_dnames, 'Asia');
END;
/
```

Data Structures

The DBMS_SQL package defines the following RECORD types and TABLE types.

RECORD Types

- DESC_REC Record Type
- DESC_REC2 Record Type
- DESC_REC3 Record Type

TABLE Types

- BFILE_TABLE Table Type
- BINARY_DOUBLE_TABLE Table Type
- BINARY_FLOAT_TABLE Table Type
- BLOB_TABLE Table Type
- CLOB_TABLE Table Type
- DATE_TABLE Table Type
- DESC_TAB Table Type
- DESC_TAB2 Table Type
- DESC_TAB3 Table Type
- INTERVAL_DAY_TO_SECOND_TABLE Table Type
- INTERVAL_YEAR_TO_MONTH_TABLE Table Type
- NUMBER_TABLE Table Type
- TIME_TABLE Table Type
- TIME_WITH_TIME_ZONE_TABLE Table Type
- TIMESTAMP_TABLE Table Type
- TIMESTAMP_WITH_LTZ_TABLE Table Type
- TIMESTAMP_WITH_TIME_ZONE_TABLE Table Type
- UROWID_TABLE Table Type
- VARCHAR2_TABLE Table Type
- VARCHAR2A Table Type
- VARCHAR2S Table Type

DESC_REC Record Type

Note: This type has been deprecated in favor of the DESC_REC2 Record Type.

This record type holds the describe information for a single column in a dynamic query. It is the element type of the DESC_TAB table type and the DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure.

Syntax

```
TYPE desc_rec IS RECORD (
      col_type            BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_max_len         BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_name            VARCHAR2(32)   := '',
      col_name_len        BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_schema_name     VARCHAR2(32)   := '',
      col_schema_name_len BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_precision       BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_scale           BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_charsetid       BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_charsetform     BINARY_INTEGER := 0,
      col_null_ok         BOOLEAN        := TRUE);
TYPE desc_tab IS TABLE OF desc_rec INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Fields

Table 149–2 DESC_REC Fields

Field	Description
col_type	Type of column
col_max_len	Maximum column length
col_name	Name of column
col_name_len	Length of column name
col_schema_name	Column schema name
col_schema_name_len	Length of column schema name
col_precision	Precision of column
col_scale	Scale of column
col_charsetid	Column character set id
col_charsetform	Column character set form
col_null_ok	NULL column flag; TRUE, if NULL possible

DESC_REC2 Record Type

DESC_REC2 is the element type of the DESC_TAB2 table type and the DESCRIBE_COLUMNS2 Procedure.

This record type is identical to DESC_REC except for the col_name field, which has been expanded to the maximum possible size for VARCHAR2. It is therefore preferred to DESC_REC because column name values can be greater than 32 characters. DESC_REC is deprecated as a result.

Syntax

```
TYPE desc_rec2 IS RECORD (
   col_type            binary_integer := 0,
   col_max_len         binary_integer := 0,
   col_name            varchar2(32767) := '',
   col_name_len        binary_integer := 0,
   col_schema_name     varchar2(32)   := '',
   col_schema_name_len binary_integer := 0,
   col_precision       binary_integer := 0,
   col_scale           binary_integer := 0,
   col_charsetid       binary_integer := 0,
   col_charsetform     binary_integer := 0,
   col_null_ok         boolean        := TRUE);
```

Fields

Table 149–3 DESC_REC2 Fields

Field	Description
col_type	Type of column
col_max_len	Maximum column length
col_name	Name of column
col_name_len	Length of column name
col_schema_name	Column schema name
col_schema_name_len	Length of column schema name
col_precision	Precision of column
col_scale	Scale of column
col_charsetid	Column character set id
col_charsetform	Column character set form
col_null_ok	NULL column flag; TRUE, if NULL possible

DESC_REC3 Record Type

DESC_REC3 is the element type of the DESC_TAB3 table type and the DESCRIBE_COLUMNS3 Procedure.

DESC_REC3 is identical to DESC_REC2 except for two additional fields to hold the type name (type_name) and type name len (type_name_len) of a column in a dynamic query. These two fields hold the type name and type name length when the column is a user-defined type (a collection or object type). The col_type_name and col_type_name_len fields are only populated when the col_type field's value is 109, the Oracle type number for user-defined types.

Syntax

```
TYPE desc_rec3 IS RECORD (
   col_type               binary_integer := 0,
   col_max_len            binary_integer := 0,
   col_name               varchar2(32767) := '',
   col_name_len           binary_integer := 0,
   col_schema_name        varchar2(32) := '',
   col_schema_name_len    binary_integer := 0,
   col_precision          binary_integer := 0,
   col_scale              binary_integer := 0,
   col_charsetid          binary_integer := 0,
   col_charsetform        binary_integer := 0,
   col_null_ok            boolean := TRUE,
   col_type_name          varchar2(32767)   := '',
   col_type_name_len      binary_integer := 0);
```

Fields

Table 149–4 DESC_REC3 Fields

Field	Description
col_type	Type of column
col_max_len	Maximum column length
col_name	Name of column
col_name_len	Length of column name
col_schema_name	Column schema name
col_schema_name_len	Length of column schema name
col_precision	Precision of column
col_scale	Scale of column
col_charsetid	Column character set ID
col_charsetform	Column character set form
col_null_ok	NULL column flag; TRUE, if NULL possible
col_type_name	User-define type column type name, this field is valid when col_type is 109
col_type_name_len	Length of user-define type column type name, this field is valid when col_type is 109

BFILE_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `BFILE`.

Syntax

```
TYPE bfile_table IS TABLE OF BFILE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

BINARY_DOUBLE_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `BINARY_DOUBLE`.

Syntax

```
TYPE binary_double_table IS TABLE OF BINARY_DOUBLE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

BINARY_FLOAT_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `BINARY_FLOAT`.

Syntax

```
TYPE binary_float_table IS TABLE OF BINARY_FLOAT INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

BLOB_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `BLOB`.

Syntax

```
TYPE blob_table IS TABLE OF BLOB INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

CLOB_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `CLOB`.

Syntax

```
TYPE clob_table IS TABLE OF CLOB INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

DATE_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `DATE`.

Syntax

```
type date_table IS TABLE OF DATE INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

DESC_TAB Table Type

This is a table of DESC_REC Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE desc_tab IS TABLE OF desc_rec INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

DESC_TAB2 Table Type

This is a table of DESC_REC2 Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE desc_tab2 IS TABLE OF desc_rec2 INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

DESC_TAB3 Table Type

This is a table of DESC_REC3 Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE desc_tab3 IS TABLE OF desc_rec3 INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

INTERVAL_DAY_TO_SECOND_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED.

Syntax

```
TYPE interval_day_to_second_Table IS TABLE OF
   DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED INDEX BY binary_integer;
```

INTERVAL_YEAR_TO_MONTH_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of YMINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED.

Syntax

```
TYPE interval_year_to_month_table IS TABLE OF YMINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

NUMBER_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `NUMBER`.

Syntax

```
TYPE number_table IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

TIME_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of TIME_UNCONSTRAINED.

Syntax

```
TYPE time_table IS TABLE OF TIME_UNCONSTRAINED INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

TIME_WITH_TIME_ZONE_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `TIME_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED`.

Syntax

```
TYPE time_with_time_zone_table IS TABLE OF TIME_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;;
```

TIMESTAMP_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `TIMESTAMP_UNCONSTRAINED`.

Syntax

```
TYPE timestamp_table IS TABLE OF TIMESTAMP_UNCONSTRAINED INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

TIMESTAMP_WITH_LTZ_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of TIMESTAMP_LTZ_UNCONSTRAINED

Syntax

```
TYPE timestamp_with_ltz_table IS TABLE OF
    TIMESTAMP_LTZ_UNCONSTRAINED INDEX BY binary_integer;
```

TIMESTAMP_WITH_TIME_ZONE_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `TIMESTAMP_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED`.

Syntax

```
TYPE timestamp_with_time_zone_Table IS TABLE OF
    TIMESTAMP_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED INDEX BY binary_integer;
```

UROWID_TABLE Table Type

This is a table of `UROWID`.

Syntax

```
TYPE urowid_table IS TABLE OF UROWID INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

VARCHAR2_TABLE Table Type

This is table of `VARCHAR2(2000)`.

Syntax

```
TYPE varchar2_table IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(2000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

VARCHAR2A Table Type

This is table of `VARCHAR2(32767)`.

Syntax

```
TYPE varchar2a IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

VARCHAR2S Table Type

This is table of `VARCHAR2(256)`.

> **Note:** This type has been superseded by the VARCHAR2A Table Type. Although it is currently retained for backward compatibility of legacy code, it is in the process of deprecation and will be de-supported in a future release.

Syntax

```
TYPE varchar2s IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(256) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_SQL Subprograms

Table 149–5 DBMS_SQL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BIND_ARRAY Procedures on page 149-50	Binds a given value to a given collection
BIND_VARIABLE Procedures on page 149-53	Binds a given value to a given variable
CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure on page 149-55	Closes given cursor and frees memory
COLUMN_VALUE Procedure on page 149-56	Returns value of the cursor element for a given position in a cursor
COLUMN_VALUE_LONG Procedure on page 149-59	Returns a selected part of a `LONG` column, that has been defined using `DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG`
DEFINE_ARRAY Procedure on page 149-60	Defines a collection to be selected from the given cursor, used only with `SELECT` statements
DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures on page 149-63	Defines a column to be selected from the given cursor, used only with `SELECT` statements
DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure on page 149-65	Defines a column of type `CHAR` to be selected from the given cursor, used only with `SELECT` statements
DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure on page 149-66	Defines a `LONG` column to be selected from the given cursor, used only with `SELECT` statements
DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW Procedure on page 149-67	Defines a column of type `RAW` to be selected from the given cursor, used only with `SELECT` statements
DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID Procedure on page 149-68	Defines a column of type `ROWID` to be selected from the given cursor, used only with `SELECT` statements
DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure on page 149-69	Describes the columns for a cursor opened and parsed through `DBMS_SQL`
DESCRIBE_COLUMNS2 Procedure on page 149-70	Describes describes the specified column, an alternative to DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure
DESCRIBE_COLUMNS3 Procedure on page 149-71	Describes describes the specified column, an alternative to DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure
EXECUTE Function on page 149-73	Executes a given cursor
EXECUTE_AND_FETCH Function on page 149-74	Executes a given cursor and fetch rows
FETCH_ROWS Function on page 149-75	Fetches a row from a given cursor
GET_NEXT_RESULT Procedures on page 149-76	Gets the statement of the next result returned to the caller of the recursive statement or, if this caller sets itself as the client for the recursive statement, the next result returned to this caller as client
IS_OPEN Function on page 149-78	Returns `TRUE` if given cursor is open
LAST_ERROR_POSITION Function on page 149-79	Returns byte offset in the SQL statement text where the error occurred
LAST_ROW_COUNT Function on page 149-80	Returns cumulative count of the number of rows fetched

Table 149–5 (Cont.) DBMS_SQL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
LAST_ROW_ID Function on page 149-81	Returns ROWID of last row processed
LAST_SQL_FUNCTION_CODE Function on page 149-82	Returns SQL function code for statement
OPEN_CURSOR Functions on page 149-83	Returns cursor ID number of new cursor
PARSE Procedures on page 149-85	Parses given statement
RETURN_RESULT Procedures on page 149-89	Returns the result of an executed statement to the client application
TO_CURSOR_NUMBER Function on page 149-85	Takes an OPENed strongly or weakly-typed ref cursor and transforms it into a DBMS_SQL cursor number
TO_REFCURSOR Function on page 149-93	Takes an OPENed, PARSEd, and EXECUTEd cursor and transforms/migrates it into a PL/SQL manageable REF CURSOR (a weakly-typed cursor) that can be consumed by PL/SQL native dynamic SQL switched to use native dynamic SQL
VARIABLE_VALUE Procedures on page 149-95	Returns value of named variable for given cursor

BIND_ARRAY Procedures

This procedure binds a given value or set of values to a given variable in a cursor, based on the name of the variable in the statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.BIND_ARRAY (
   c                   IN INTEGER,
   name                IN VARCHAR2,
   <table_variable>    IN <datatype>
 [,index1              IN INTEGER,
   index2              IN INTEGER)] );
```

Where the <table_variable> and its corresponding <datatype> can be any one of the following matching pairs:

```
<clob_tab>     Clob_Table
<bflt_tab>     Binary_Float_Table
<bdbl_tab>     Binary_Double_Table
<blob_tab>     Blob_Table
<bfile_tab>    Bfile_Table
<date_tab>     Date_Table
<num_tab>      Number_Table
<urowid_tab>   Urowid_Table
<vchr2_tab>    Varchar2_Table
<tm_tab>       Time_Table
<ttz_tab>      Time_With_Time_Zone_Table
<tms_tab>      Timestamp_Table
<tstz_tab>     Timestamp_With_ltz_Table;
<tstz_tab>     Timestamp_With_Time_Zone_Table
<ids_tab>      Interval_Day_To_Second_Table
<iym_tab>      Interval_Year_To_Month_Table
```

Notice that the BIND_ARRAY procedure is overloaded to accept different Datatype.

Parameters

Table 149–6 BIND_ARRAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor to which you want to bind a value.
name	Name of the collection in the statement.
table_variable	Local variable that has been declared as <datatype>.
index1	Index for the table element that marks the lower bound of the range.
index2	Index for the table element that marks the upper bound of the range.

Usage Notes

The length of the bind variable name must be <=30 bytes.

For binding a range, the table must contain the elements that specify the range — tab(index1) and tab(index2) — but the range does not have to be dense. Index1 must be less than or equal to index2. All elements between tab(index1) and tab(index2) are used in the bind.

If you do not specify indexes in the bind call, and two different binds in a statement specify tables that contain a different number of elements, then the number of elements actually used is the minimum number between all tables. This is also the case if you specify indexes — the minimum range is selected between the two indexes for all tables.

Not all bind variables in a query have to be array binds. Some can be regular binds and the same value are used for each element of the collections in expression evaluations (and so forth).

> **See Also:** "Examples 3, 4, and 5: Bulk DML" on page 149-13 for examples of how to bind collections.

Bulk Array Binds

Bulk selects, inserts, updates, and deletes can enhance the performance of applications by bundling many calls into one. The DBMS_SQL package lets you work on collections of data using the PL/SQL table type.

Table items are unbounded homogeneous collections. In persistent storage, they are like other relational tables and have no intrinsic ordering. But when a table item is brought into the workspace (either by querying or by navigational access of persistent data), or when it is created as the value of a PL/SQL variable or parameter, its elements are given subscripts that can be used with array-style syntax to get and set the values of elements.

The subscripts of these elements need not be dense, and can be any number including negative numbers. For example, a table item can contain elements at locations -10, 2, and 7 only.

When a table item is moved from transient workspace to persistent storage, the subscripts are not stored; the table item is unordered in persistent storage.

At bind time the table is copied out from the PL/SQL buffers into local DBMS_SQL buffers (the same as for all scalar types) and then the table is manipulated from the local DBMS_SQL buffers. Therefore, if you change the table after the bind call, then that change does not affect the way the execute acts.

Types for Scalar and LOB Collections

You can declare a local variable as one of the following table-item types, which are defined as public types in DBMS_SQL.

```
TYPE binary_double_table
                    IS TABLE OF BINARY_DOUBLE  INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE binary_float_table
                    IS TABLE OF BINARY_FLOAT   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE bfile_table    IS TABLE OF BFILE          INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE blob_table     IS TABLE OF BLOB           INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE clob_table     IS TABLE OF CLOB           INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE date_table     IS TABLE OF DATE           INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE interval_day_to_second_Table
                    IS TABLE OF dsinterval_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE interval_year_to_MONTH_Table
                    IS TABLE OF yminterval_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE number_table   IS TABLE OF NUMBER         INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE time_table     IS TABLE OF time_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE time_with_time_zone_table
```

```
                    IS TABLE OF time_tz_unconstrained
                                                INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE timestamp_table
                    IS TABLE OF timestamp_unconstrained
                                                INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE timestamp_with_ltz_Table
                    IS TABLE OF timestamp_ltz_unconstrained
                                                INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE timestamp_with_time_zone_Table
                    IS TABLE OF timestamp_tz_unconstrained
                                                INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE urowid_table   IS TABLE OF UROWID          INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE varchar2_table IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(2000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

BIND_VARIABLE Procedures

This procedures binds a given value or set of values to a given variable in a cursor, based on the name of the variable in the statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN <datatype>);
```

Where <datatype> can be any one of the following types:

```
BINARY_DOUBLE
BINARY_FLOAT
BFILE
BLOB
CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
DATE
DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
NUMBER
TIME_UNCONSTRAINED
TIME_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_LTZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_UNCONSTRAINED
UROWID
VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
YMINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
user-defined object types
collections (VARRAYs and nested tables)
REFs
Opaque types
```

Notice that `BIND_VARIABLE` is overloaded to accept different Datatype.

The following syntax is also supported for `BIND_VARIABLE`. The square brackets [] indicate an optional parameter for the `BIND_VARIABLE` function.

```
DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS [,out_value_size IN INTEGER]);
```

To bind `CHAR`, `RAW`, and `ROWID` data, you can use the following variations on the syntax:

```
DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE_CHAR (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN CHAR CHARACTER SET ANY_CS [,out_value_size IN INTEGER]);

DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE_RAW (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
   value          IN RAW [,out_value_size IN INTEGER]);

DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE_ROWID (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   name           IN VARCHAR2,
```

```
   value          IN ROWID);
```

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(bind_variable,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–7 BIND_VARIABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor to which you want to bind a value.
name	Name of the variable in the statement.
value	Value that you want to bind to the variable in the cursor. For IN and IN/OUT variables, the value has the same type as the type of the value being passed in for this parameter.
out_value_size	Maximum expected OUT value size, in bytes, for the VARCHAR2, RAW, CHAR OUT or IN/OUT variable. If no size is given, then the length of the current value is used. This parameter must be specified if the value parameter is not initialized.

Usage Notes

If the variable is an IN or IN/OUT variable or an IN collection, then the given bind value must be valid for the variable or array type. Bind values for OUT variables are ignored.

The bind variables or collections of a SQL statement are identified by their names. When binding a value to a bind variable or bind array, the string identifying it in the statement must contain a leading colon, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT emp_name FROM emp WHERE SAL > :X;
```

For this example, the corresponding bind call would look similar to

```
BIND_VARIABLE(cursor_name, ':X', 3500);

or

BIND_VARIABLE (cursor_name, 'X', 3500);
```

The length of the bind variable name must be <=30 bytes.

See Also: "Examples 3, 4, and 5: Bulk DML" on page 149-13 for examples of how to bind collections.

CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure

This procedure closes a given cursor.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR (
   c    IN OUT INTEGER);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(close_cursor,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–8 CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Mode	Description
c	IN	ID number of the cursor that you want to close.
c	OUT	Cursor is set to null. After you call CLOSE_CURSOR, the memory allocated to the cursor is released and you can no longer fetch from that cursor.

COLUMN_VALUE Procedure

This procedure returns the value of the cursor element for a given position in a given cursor. This procedure is used to access the data fetched by calling FETCH_ROWS.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE (
   c                IN  INTEGER,
   position         IN  INTEGER,
   value            OUT <datatype>
 [,column_error     OUT NUMBER]
 [,actual_length    OUT INTEGER]);
```

Where square brackets [ ] indicate optional parameters and <datatype> can be any one of the following types:

```
BINARY_DOUBLE
BINARY_FLOAT
BFILE
BLOB
CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
DATE
DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
NUMBER
TIME_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIME_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_LTZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_UNCONSTRAINED
UROWID
VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
YMINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
user-defined object types
collections (VARRAYs and nested tables)
REFs
Opaque types
```

For variables containing CHAR, RAW, and ROWID data, you can use the following variations on the syntax:

```
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE_CHAR (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   position        IN  INTEGER,
   value           OUT CHAR CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
 [,column_error    OUT NUMBER]
 [,actual_length   OUT INTEGER]);

DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE_RAW (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   position        IN  INTEGER,
   value           OUT RAW
 [,column_error    OUT NUMBER]
 [,actual_length   OUT INTEGER]);

DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE_ROWID (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   position        IN  INTEGER,
   value           OUT ROWID
 [,column_error    OUT NUMBER]
```

```
 [,actual_length   OUT INTEGER]);
```

The following syntax enables the COLUMN_VALUE procedure to accommodate bulk operations:

```
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(
   c                IN             INTEGER,
   position         IN             INTEGER,
   <param_name>     IN OUT NOCOPY  <table_type>);
```

Where the <param_name> and its corresponding <table_type> can be any one of these matching pairs:

```
bdbl_tab     Binary_Double_Table
bflt_tab     Binary_Float_Table
bf_tab       Bfile_Table
bl_tab       Blob_Table
cl_tab       Clob_Table
d_tab        Date_Table
ids_tab      Interval_Day_To_Second_Table
iym_tab      Interval_Year_To_Month_Table
n_tab        Number_Table
tm_tab       Time_Table
ttz_tab      Time_With_Time_Zone_Table
tms_tab      Timestamp_Table
tstz_tab     Timestamp_With_ltz_Table;
tstz_tab     Timestamp_With_Time_Zone_Table
ur_tab       Urowid_Table
c_tab        Varchar2_Table
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(column_value,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–9 COLUMN_VALUE Procedure Parameters (Single Row)

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor from which you are fetching the values.
position	Relative position of the column in the cursor. The first column in a statement has position 1.
value	Returns the value at the specified column. Oracle raises exception ORA-06562, inconsistent_type, if the type of this output parameter differs from the actual type of the value, as defined by the call to DEFINE_COLUMN.
column_error	Returns any error code for the specified column value.
actual_length	The actual length, before any truncation, of the value in the specified column.

Table 149–10 COLUMN_VALUE Procedure Parameters (Bulk)

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor from which you are fetching the values.

Table 149–10 (Cont.) COLUMN_VALUE Procedure Parameters (Bulk)

Parameter	Description
position	Relative position of the column in the cursor. The first column in a statement has position 1.
<param_name>	Local variable that has been declared <table_type>. <param_name> is an IN OUT NOCOPY parameter for bulk operations. For bulk operations, the subprogram appends the new elements at the appropriate (implicitly maintained) index. For instance if on utilizing the DEFINE_ARRAY Procedure a batch size (the cnt parameter) of 10 rows was specified and a start index (lower_bound) of 1 was specified, then the first call to this subprogram after calling the FETCH_ROWS Function will populate elements at index 1..10, and the next call will populate elements 11..20, and so on.

Exceptions

INCONSISTENT_TYPE (ORA-06562) is raised if the type of the given OUT parameter value is different from the actual type of the value. This type was the given type when the column was defined by calling procedure DEFINE_COLUMN.

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

COLUMN_VALUE_LONG Procedure

This procedure gets part of the value of a long column.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE_LONG (
   c            IN  INTEGER,
   position     IN  INTEGER,
   length       IN  INTEGER,
   offset       IN  INTEGER,
   value        OUT VARCHAR2,
   value_length OUT INTEGER);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(column_value_long,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–11 COLUMN_VALUE_LONG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor ID number of the cursor from which to get the value.
position	Position of the column of which to get the value.
length	Number of bytes of the long value to fetch.
offset	Offset into the long field for start of fetch.
value	Value of the column as a VARCHAR2.
value_length	Number of bytes actually returned in value.

DEFINE_ARRAY Procedure

This procedure defines the collection for column into which you want to fetch rows (with a FETCH_ROWS call). This procedure lets you do batch fetching of rows from a single SELECT statement. A single fetch call brings over a number of rows into the PL/SQL aggregate object.

When you fetch the rows, they are copied into DBMS_SQL buffers until you run a COLUMN_VALUE call, at which time the rows are copied into the table that was passed as an argument to the COLUMN_VALUE call.

Scalar and LOB Types for Collections

You can declare a local variable as one of the following table-item types, and then fetch any number of rows into it using DBMS_SQL. (These are the same types as you can specify for the BIND_ARRAY procedure.)

```
TYPE binary_double_table
                    IS TABLE OF BINARY_DOUBLE  INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE binary_float_table
                    IS TABLE OF BINARY_FLOAT   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE bfile_table    IS TABLE OF BFILE          INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE blob_table     IS TABLE OF BLOB           INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE clob_table     IS TABLE OF CLOB           INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE date_table     IS TABLE OF DATE           INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE interval_day_to_second_Table
                    IS TABLE OF dsinterval_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE interval_year_to_MONTH_Table
                    IS TABLE OF yminterval_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE number_table   IS TABLE OF NUMBER         INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE time_table     IS TABLE OF time_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE time_with_time_zone_table
                    IS TABLE OF time_tz_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE timestamp_table
                    IS TABLE OF timestamp_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE timestamp_with_ltz_Table
                    IS TABLE OF timestamp_ltz_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE timestamp_with_time_zone_Table
                    IS TABLE OF timestamp_tz_unconstrained
                                               INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE urowid_table   IS TABLE OF UROWID         INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE varchar2_table IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(2000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY (
   c           IN INTEGER,
   position    IN INTEGER,
   <table_variable>    IN <datatype>
   cnt         IN INTEGER,
   lower_bnd   IN INTEGER);
```

Where <table_variable> and its corresponding <datatype> can be any one of the following matching pairs, DEFINE_ARRAY being overloaded to accept different datatypes:

```
<clob_tab>     Clob_Table
<bflt_tab>     Binary_Float_Table
<bdbl_tab>     Binary_Double_Table
<blob_tab>     Blob_Table
<bfile_tab>    Bfile_Table
<date_tab>     Date_Table
<num_tab>      Number_Table
<urowid_tab>   Urowid_Table
<vchr2_tab>    Varchar2_Table
<tm_tab>       Time_Table
<ttz_tab>      Time_With_Time_Zone_Table
<tms_tab>      Timestamp_Table
<tstz_tab>     Timestamp_With_ltz_Table;
<tstz_tab>     Timestamp_With_Time_Zone_Table
<ids_tab>      Interval_Day_To_Second_Table
<iym_tab>      Interval_Year_To_Month_Table
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(define_array,RNDS,WNDS);
```

The subsequent FETCH_ROWS call fetch "count" rows. When the COLUMN_VALUE call is made, these rows are placed in positions lower_bnd, lower_bnd+1, lower_bnd+2, and so on. While there are still rows coming, the user keeps issuing FETCH_ROWS/COLUMN_VALUE calls. The rows keep accumulating in the table specified as an argument in the COLUMN_VALUE call.

Parameters

Table 149–12 DEFINE_ARRAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor to which you want to bind an array.
position	Relative position of the column in the array being defined. The first column in a statement has position 1.
table_variable	Local variable that has been declared as <datatype>.
cnt	Number of rows that must be fetched.
lower_bnd	Results are copied into the collection, starting at this lower bound index.

Usage Notes

The count (cnt) must be an integer greater than zero; otherwise an exception is raised. The lower_bnd can be positive, negative, or zero. A query on which a DEFINE_ARRAY call was issued cannot contain array binds.

Examples

```
PROCEDURE BULK_PLSQL(deptid NUMBER)
    TYPE namelist IS TABLE OF employees.last_name%TYPE;
    TYPE sallist IS TABLE OF employees.salary%TYPE;
    names    namelist;
```

```
    sals     sallist;
    c        NUMBER;
    r        NUMBER;
    sql_stmt VARCHAR2(32767) :=
        'SELECT last_name, salary FROM employees WHERE department_id = :b1';

BEGIN
    c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
    DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c, sql_stmt, dbms_sql.native);

    DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(c, 'b1', deptid);

    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 1, names, 5);
    DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_ARRAY(c, 2, sals, 5);

    r := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);

    LOOP
      r := DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(c);
      DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 1, names);
      DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(c, 2, sals);
      EXIT WHEN r != 5;
    END LOOP;

    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c);

    -- loop through the names and sals collections
    FOR i IN names.FIRST .. names.LAST  LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Name = ' || names(i) || ', salary = ' || sals(i));
    END LOOP;
END;
/
```

See Also: "Examples 6 and 7: Defining an Array" on page 149-16 for examples of how to define collections.

DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures

This procedure defines a column to be selected from the given cursor. This procedure is only used with SELECT cursors.

The column being defined is identified by its relative position in the SELECT list of the statement in the given cursor. The type of the COLUMN value determines the type of the column being defined.

See also the DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure, DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW Procedure and DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   position       IN INTEGER,
   column         IN <datatype>);
```

Where <datatype> can be any one of the following types:

```
BINARY_DOUBLE
BINARY_FLOAT
BFILE
BLOB
CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
DATE
DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
NUMBER
TIME_UNCONSTRAINED
TIME_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_LTZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_UNCONSTRAINED
UROWID
YMINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
user-defined object types
collections (VARRAYs and nested tables)
REFs
Opaque types
```

Note that DEFINE_COLUMN is overloaded to accept different datatypes.

The following syntax is also supported for the DEFINE_COLUMN procedure:

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   position       IN INTEGER,
   column         IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   column_size    IN INTEGER);
```

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(define_column,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–13 DEFINE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the row being defined to be selected
position	Relative position of the column in the row being defined.The first column in a statement has position 1.
column	Value of the column being defined. The type of this value determines the type for the column being defined.
column_size	Maximum expected size of the column value in bytes for columns of type VARCHAR2, and RAW.

Usage Notes

When using character length semantics the maximum number of bytes that can be returned for a column value of type VARCHAR2 is calculated as: column_size * maximum character byte size for the current character set. For example, specifying the column_size as 10 means that a maximum of 30 (10*3) bytes can be returned when using character length semantics with a UTF8 character set regardless of the number of characters this represents.

DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure

This procedure defines a column with CHAR data to be selected from the given cursor. This procedure is only used with SELECT cursors.

The column being defined is identified by its relative position in the SELECT list of the statement in the given cursor. The type of the COLUMN value determines the type of the column being defined.

See also the DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure, DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW Procedure and DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR (
   c             IN INTEGER,
   position      IN INTEGER,
   column        IN CHAR CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   column_size   IN INTEGER);
```

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(define_column,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–14 DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the row being defined to be selected
position	Relative position of the column in the row being defined.The first column in a statement has position 1.
column	Value of the column being defined. The type of this value determines the type for the column being defined.
column_size	Maximum expected size of the column value in characters for columns of type CHAR.

DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure

This procedure defines a LONG column for a SELECT cursor. The column being defined is identified by its relative position in the SELECT list of the statement for the given cursor. The type of the COLUMN value determines the type of the column being defined.

See also the DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures, DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure, DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW Procedure and DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG (
   c               IN INTEGER,
   position        IN INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 149–15 DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the row being defined to be selected.
position	Relative position of the column in the row being defined. The first column in a statement has position 1.

DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW Procedure

This procedure defines a column of type RAW to be selected from the given cursor. This procedure is only used with SELECT cursors.

The column being defined is identified by its relative position in the SELECT list of the statement in the given cursor. The type of the COLUMN value determines the type of the column being defined.

See also the DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures, DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure and DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW (
   c              IN INTEGER,
   position       IN INTEGER,
   column         IN RAW,
   column_size    IN INTEGER);
```

See Also: *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(define_column,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–16 DEFINE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the row being defined to be selected
position	Relative position of the column in the row being defined.The first column in a statement has position 1.
column	Value of the column being defined. The type of this value determines the type for the column being defined.
column_size	Maximum expected size of the column value in bytes for columns of and RAW

DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID Procedure

This procedure defines a column of type `ROWID` to be selected from the given cursor. This procedure is only used with `SELECT` cursors.

The column being defined is identified by its relative position in the `SELECT` list of the statement in the given cursor. The type of the `COLUMN` value determines the type of the column being defined.

See also the DEFINE_COLUMN Procedures, DEFINE_COLUMN_CHAR Procedure, DEFINE_COLUMN_LONG Procedure and DEFINE_COLUMN_RAW Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN_ROWID (
   c               IN INTEGER,
   position        IN INTEGER,
   column          IN ROWID);
```

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide*

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(define_column,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–17 DEFINE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	ID number of the cursor for the row being defined to be selected
`position`	Relative position of the column in the row being defined.The first column in a statement has position 1.
`column`	Value of the column being defined. The type of this value determines the type for the column being defined.

DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure

This procedure describes the columns for a cursor opened and parsed through DBMS_SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DESCRIBE_COLUMNS (
   c              IN  INTEGER,
   col_cnt        OUT INTEGER,
   desc_t         OUT DESC_TAB);
```

Parameters

Table 149–18 DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the columns being described
col_cnt	Number of columns in the select list of the query
desc_t	Describe table to fill in with the description of each of the columns of the query

See Also: "Example 8: Describe Columns" on page 149-18 illustrates how to use DESCRIBE_COLUMNS.

DESCRIBE_COLUMNS2 Procedure

This procedure describes the specified column. This is an alternative to DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DESCRIBE_COLUMNS2 (
   c              IN  INTEGER,
   col_cnt        OUT INTEGER,
   desc_t         OUT DESC_TAB2);
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(describe_columns2,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–19 DESCRIBE_COLUMNS2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the columns being described.
col_cnt	Number of columns in the select list of the query.
desc_t	Describe table to fill in with the description of each of the columns of the query. This table is indexed from one to the number of elements in the select list of the query.

DESCRIBE_COLUMNS3 Procedure

This procedure describes the specified column. This is an alternative to DESCRIBE_COLUMNS Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.DESCRIBE_COLUMNS3 (
   c              IN  INTEGER,
   col_cnt        OUT INTEGER,
   desc_t         OUT DESC_TAB3);
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES(describe_columns3,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–20 DESCRIBE_COLUMNS3 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor for the columns being described.
col_cnt	Number of columns in the select list of the query.
desc_t	Describe table to fill in with the description of each of the columns of the query. This table is indexed from one to the number of elements in the select list of the query.

Usage Notes

The cursor passed in by the cursor ID has to be OPENed and PARSEd, otherwise an "invalid cursor id" error is raised.

Examples

```
CREATE TYPE PROJECT_T AS OBJECT
      ( projname          VARCHAR2(20),
        mgr               VARCHAR2(20))
/

CREATE TABLE projecttab(deptno NUMBER, project HR.PROJECT_T)
/

DECLARE
  curid      NUMBER;
  desctab    DBMS_SQL.DESC_TAB3;
  colcnt     NUMBER;
  sql_stmt   VARCHAR2(200) := 'select * from projecttab';
BEGIN

    curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;

    DBMS_SQL.PARSE(curid, sql_stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);

    DBMS_SQL.DESCRIBE_COLUMNS3(curid, colcnt, desctab);

    FOR i IN 1 .. colcnt LOOP
      IF desctab(i).col_type = 109 THEN
```

```
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(desctab(i).col_name || ' is user-defined type: ');
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(desctab(i).col_schema_name || '.' ||
                             desctab(i).col_type_name);
      END IF;
    END LOOP;

    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
/

Output:

PROJECT is user-defined type: HR.PROJECT_T
```

EXECUTE Function

This function executes a given cursor. This function accepts the ID number of the cursor and returns the number of rows processed. The return value is only valid for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements; for other types of statements, including DDL, the return value is undefined and must be ignored.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE (
   c   IN INTEGER)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 149–21 EXECUTE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor ID number of the cursor to execute.

Return Values

Returns number of rows processed

Usage Notes

The DBMS_SQL cursor that is returned by the TO_CURSOR_NUMBER Function performs in the same way as a DBMS_SQL cursor that has already been executed. Consequently, calling EXECUTE for this cursor will cause an error.

EXECUTE_AND_FETCH Function

This function executes the given cursor and fetches rows. This function provides the same functionality as calling EXECUTE and then calling FETCH_ROWS. Calling EXECUTE_AND_FETCH instead, however, may reduce the number of network round-trips when used against a remote database.

The EXECUTE_AND_FETCH function returns the number of rows actually fetched.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE_AND_FETCH (
   c               IN INTEGER,
   exact           IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(execute_and_fetch,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–22 EXECUTE_AND_FETCH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor to execute and fetch.
exact	Set to TRUE to raise an exception if the number of rows actually matching the query differs from one. Note: Oracle does not support the exact fetch TRUE option with LONG columns. Even if an exception is raised, the rows are still fetched and available.

Return Values

Returns designated rows

FETCH_ROWS Function

This function fetches a row from a given cursor. You can call FETCH_ROWS repeatedly as long as there are rows remaining to be fetched. These rows are retrieved into a buffer, and must be read by calling COLUMN_VALUE, for each column, after each call to FETCH_ROWS.

The FETCH_ROWS function accepts the ID number of the cursor to fetch, and returns the number of rows actually fetched.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS (
   c              IN INTEGER)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(fetch_rows,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–23 FETCH_ROWS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number.

Return Values

Returns a row from a given cursor

GET_NEXT_RESULT Procedures

This procedure gets the statement of the next result returned to the caller of the recursive statement or, if this caller sets itself as the client for the recursive statement, the next result returned to this caller as client. The statements are returned in same order as they are returned by the RETURN_RESULT Procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.GET_NEXT_RESULT(
   c            IN          INTEGER,
   rc           OUT         SYS_REFCURSOR);

DBMS_SQL.GET_NEXT_RESULT(
   c            IN          INTEGER,
   rc           OUT         INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 149–24 GET_NEXT_RESULT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Recursive statement cursor
rc	Cursor or ref cursor of the statement of the next returned result

Exceptions

`ORA-01403 no_data_found`: This is raised when there is no further returned statement result.

Usage Notes

- After the cursor of a statement result is retrieved, the caller must close the cursor properly when it is no longer needed.
- The cursors for all unretrieved returned statements will be closed after the cursor of the recursive statement is closed.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  c  INTEGER;
  rc SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
  c := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR(treat_as_client_for_results => TRUE);
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(c                  => c,
                 statement          => 'begin proc; end;');
  DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c);
  LOOP
    BEGIN
      DBMS_SQL.GET_NEXT_RESULT(c, rc);
    EXCEPTIONS
      WHEN no_data_found THEN
        EXIT;
    END;
    LOOP
      FETCH rc INTO ...
```

```
      ...
    END LOOP;
  END LOOP;
END;
```

IS_OPEN Function

This function checks to see if the given cursor is currently open.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN (
   c               IN INTEGER)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(is_open,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–25 IS_OPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	Cursor ID number of the cursor to check.

Return Values

Returns TRUE for any cursor number that has been opened but not closed, and FALSE for a NULL cursor number. Note that the CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure Procedure NULLs out the cursor variable passed to it.

Exceptions

ORA-29471 DBMS_SQL access denied: This is raised if an invalid cursor ID number is detected. Once a session has encountered and reported this error, every subsequent DBMS_SQL call in the same session will raise this error, meaning that DBMS_SQL is non-operational for this session.

LAST_ERROR_POSITION Function

This function returns the byte offset in the SQL statement text where the error occurred. The first character in the SQL statement is at position 0.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.LAST_ERROR_POSITION
   RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(last_error_position,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Return Values

Returns the byte offset in the SQL statement text where the error occurred

Usage Notes

Call this function after a `PARSE` call, before any other `DBMS_SQL` procedures or functions are called.

LAST_ROW_COUNT Function

This function returns the cumulative count of the number of rows fetched.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.LAST_ROW_COUNT
   RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(last_row_count,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Return Values

Returns the cumulative count of the number of rows fetched

Usage Notes

Call this function after a `FETCH_ROWS` or an `EXECUTE_AND_FETCH` call. If called after an `EXECUTE` call, then the value returned is zero.

LAST_ROW_ID Function

This function returns the ROWID of the last row processed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.LAST_ROW_ID
   RETURN ROWID;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(last_row_id,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Return Values

Returns the ROWID of the last row processed

Usage Notes

Call this function after a FETCH_ROWS or an EXECUTE_AND_FETCH call.

LAST_SQL_FUNCTION_CODE Function

This function returns the SQL function code for the statement. These codes are listed in the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide.*

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.LAST_SQL_FUNCTION_CODE
   RETURN INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(last_sql_function_code,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Return Values

Returns the SQL function code for the statement

Usage Notes

You must call this function immediately after the SQL statement is run; otherwise, the return value is undefined.

OPEN_CURSOR Functions

This function opens a new cursor. The security_level parameter allows for application of fine-grained control to the security of the opened cursor.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR (
   treat_as_client_for_results    IN     BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE)
  RETURN INTEGER;

DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR (
   security_level                 IN     INTEGER,
   treat_as_client_for_results    IN     BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 149–26 OPEN_CURSOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
security_level	Specifies the level of security protection to enforce on the opened cursor. Valid security level values are 0, 1, and 2. When a NULL argument value is provided to this overload, as well as for cursors opened using the overload of open_cursor without the security_level parameter, the default security level value 1 will be enforced on the opened cursor. ■ Level 0 - allows all DBMS_SQL operations on the cursor without any security checks. The cursor may be fetched from, and even re-bound and re-executed, by code running with a different effective userid or roles than those in effect at the time the cursor was parsed. This level of security is off by default. ■ Level 1 - requires that the referenced container, effective userid, and roles of the caller to DBMS_SQL for bind and execute operations on this cursor must be the same as those of the caller of the most recent parse operation on this cursor. ■ Level 2 - requires that the referenced container, effective userid, and roles of the caller to DBMS_SQL for all bind, execute, define, describe, and fetch operations on this cursor must be the same as those of the caller of the most recent parse operation on this cursor.
treat_as_client_for results	Allows the caller of the recursive statement to set itself as the client to receive the statement results returned from the recursive statement to client. The statement results returned may be retrieved by the GET_NEXT_RESULT Procedures.

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(open_cursor,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Return Values

Returns the cursor ID number of the new cursor

Usage Notes

- When you no longer need this cursor, you must close it explicitly by calling the CLOSE_CURSOR Procedure.
- You can use cursors to run the same SQL statement repeatedly or to run a new SQL statement. When a cursor is reused, the contents of the corresponding cursor data area are reset when the new SQL statement is parsed. It is never necessary to close and reopen a cursor before reusing it.

PARSE Procedures

This procedure parses the given statement in the given cursor. All statements are parsed immediately. In addition, DDL statements are run immediately when parsed.

There are four versions of the PARSE procedure:

- Taking a VARCHAR2 statement as an argument
- Two versions that take a segmented string, one taking VARCHAR2A, a table of varchar2d(32767), and another, taking VARCHAR2S, a table of varchar2(256), as argument. Both overloads concatenate elements of a PL/SQL table statement and parse the resulting string. You can use these procedures to parse a statement that is longer than the limit for a single VARCHAR2 variable by splitting up the statement.
- Taking a CLOB statement as an argument. You can use the CLOB overload version of the parse procedure to parse a SQL statement larger than 32K bytes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.PARSE (
   c                           IN   INTEGER,
   statement                   IN   VARCHAR2,
   language_flag               IN   INTEGER,
   edition                     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_crossedition_trigger  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   fire_apply_trigger          IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   schema                      IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_SQL.PARSE (
   c                           IN   INTEGER,
   statement                   IN   CLOB,
   language_flag               IN   INTEGER,
   edition                     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_crossedition_trigger  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   fire_apply_trigger          IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   schema                      IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_SQL.PARSE (
   c                           IN   INTEGER,
   statement                   IN   VARCHAR2A,
   lb                          IN   INTEGER,
   ub                          IN   INTEGER,
   lfflg                       IN   BOOLEAN,
   language_flag               IN   INTEGER,
   edition                     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_crossedition_trigger  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   fire_apply_trigger          IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   schema                      IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_SQL.PARSE (
   c                           IN   INTEGER,
   statement                   IN   VARCHAR2s,
   lb                          IN   INTEGER,
   ub                          IN   INTEGER,
   lfflg                       IN   BOOLEAN,
   language_flag               IN   INTEGER,
```

```
edition                     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
apply_crossedition_trigger  IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
fire_apply_trigger          IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
schema                      IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
container                   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 149–27 PARSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor in which to parse the statement.
statement	SQL statement to be parsed. SQL statements larger than 32K that may be stored in CLOBs. Unlike a PL/SQL statement, your SQL statement must not include a final semicolon. For example: DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor1, 'BEGIN proc; END;', 2); DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor1, 'INSERT INTO tab VALUES(1)', 2);
lb	Lower bound for elements in the statement
ub	Upper bound for elements in the statement
lfflg	If TRUE, then insert a linefeed after each element on concatenation.
language_flag	**Note:** This parameter is non-operative with Oracle Database 12*c*. The parameter is provided for backwards compatibility only.
edition	Specifies the edition in which to run the statement under the following conditions: ■ If NULL and container is NULL, the statement will be run in the current edition. ■ If a valid container is specified, passing NULL indicates the statement is to run in the target container's default edition. ■ Given the user and the edition with which the statement is to be executed, the user must have USE privilege on the edition. The following general conditions apply. The contents of the string are processed as a SQL identifier; double quotation marks must surround the remainder of the string if special characters or lowercase characters are present in the edition's actual name, and if double quotation marks are not used the contents will be uppercased.

Table 149–27 (Cont.) PARSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_ crossedition_ trigger	Specifies the unqualified name of a forward crossedition trigger that is to be applied to the specified SQL. The name is resolved using the edition and current_schema setting in which the statement is to be executed. The trigger must be owned by the user that will execute the statement.If a non-NULL value is specified, the specified crossedition trigger will be executed assuming fire_apply_trigger is TRUE, the trigger is enabled, the trigger is defined on the table which is the target of the statement, the type of the statement matches the trigger's dml_event_clause, any effective WHEN and UPDATE OF restrictions are satisfied, and so on. Other forward crossedition triggers may also be executed, selected using the "crossedition trigger DML rules" applied as if the specified trigger was doing a further DML to the table that is the target of the statement. Non-crossedition triggers and reverse crossedition triggers will not be executed.The contents of the string are processed as a SQL identifier; double quotation marks must surround the remainder of the string if special characters or lowercase characters are present in the trigger's actual name, and if double quotation marks are not used, the contents will be uppercased.
fire_apply_trigger	Indicates whether the specified apply_crossedition_trigger is itself to be executed, or must only be a guide used in selecting other triggers. This is typically set FALSE when the statement is a replacement for the actions the apply_crossedition_trigger would itself perform. If FALSE, the specified trigger is not executed, but other triggers are still selected for firing as if the specified trigger was doing a DML to the table that is the target of the statement. The apply_crossedition_trigger and fire_apply_trigger parameters are ignored if the statement is not a DML.
schema	Specifies the schema in which to resolve unqualified object names. If NULL, the current schema is the effective user's schema.
container	Name of the target container in which the cursor is to run. If NULL or unspecified, the name of the target container is that of the calling container and no container switch is performed. If a valid container name is specified, the current user must be a common user with SET CONTAINER privilege to switch to the target container. If a container switch completes, the effective user will have its default roles.

Usage Notes

- Using DBMS_SQL to dynamically run DDL statements can cause the program to stop responding. For example, a call to a procedure in a package results in the package being locked until the execution returns to the user side. Any operation that results in a conflicting lock, such as dynamically trying to drop the package before the first lock is released, stops the program from running.
- Because client-side code cannot reference remote package variables or constants, you must explicitly use the values of the constants.

  For example, the following code does *not* compile on the client:

  ```
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cur_hdl, stmt_str, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE); -- uses constant DBMS_
  SQL.NATIVE
  ```

  The following code works on the client, because the argument is explicitly provided:

  ```
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cur_hdl, stmt_str, 1); -- compiles on the client
  ```

- The VARCHAR2S type is currently supported for backward compatibility of legacy code. However, you are advised to use VARCHAR2A both for its superior capability and because VARCHAR2S will be deprecated in a future release.
- To parse SQL statements larger than 32 KB, the new CLOB overload version of the PARSE procedure can be used instead of the VARCHAR2A overload.
- If the container parameter value is the same as the calling container, a container switch will not occur. However, the default roles of the current user will be in effect.

Exceptions

If you create a type, procedure, function, or package using DBMS_SQL that has compilation warnings, an ORA-24344 exception is raised, and the PL/SQL unit is still created.

RETURN_RESULT Procedures

This procedure returns the result of an executed statement to the client application.

The result can be retrieved later by the client. Alternatively, it can return the statement result to and be retrieved later by the immediate caller that executes a recursive statement in which this statement result will be returned.

The caller can be:

- A PL/SQL stored procedure executing the recursive statement using DBMS_SQL
- A Java stored procedure using JDBC
- A .NET stored procedure using ADO.NET
- An external procedure using the Oracle Call Interface (OCI)

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.RETURN_RESULT(
   rc           IN OUT      SYS_REFCURSOR,
   to_client    IN          BOOLEAN           DEFAULT TRUE);

DBMS_SQL.RETURN_RESULT(
   rc           IN OUT      INTEGER,
   to_client    IN          BOOLEAN           DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 149–28 RETURN_RESULT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rc	Statement cursor or ref cursor
to_client	Returns (or does not return) the statement result to the client. If not, it is returned to the immediate caller.

Usage Notes

- Currently only a SQL query can be returned, and the return of statement results over remote procedure calls is not supported.
- Once the statement is returned, it is no longer accessible except by the client or the immediate caller to which it is returned.
- Statement results cannot be returned when the statement being executed by the client or any intermediate recursive statement is a SQL query and an error is raised.
- A ref cursor being returned can be strongly or weakly-typed.
- A query being returned can be partially fetched.
- Because EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement provides no interface to retrieve the statement results returned from its recursive statement, the cursors of the statement results returned to the caller of the EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement will be closed when the statement completes. To retrieve the returned statement results from a recursive statement in PL/SQL, use DBMS_SQL to execute the recursive statement.

Examples

```
CREATE PROCEDURE proc AS
  rc1 sys_refcursor;
  rc2 sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN rc1 FOR SELECT * FROM t1;
  DBMS_SQL.RETURN_RESULT(rc1);
  OPEN rc2 FOR SELECT * FROM t2;
  DBMS_SQL.RETURN_RESULT(rc2);
END;
/
```

TO_CURSOR_NUMBER Function

This function takes an OPENed strongly or weakly-typed ref cursor and transforms it into a DBMS_SQL cursor number.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.TO_CURSOR_NUMBER(
   rc IN OUT SYS_REFCURSOR)
  RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 149–29 TO_CURSOR_NUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
rc	REF CURSOR to be transformed into a cursor number

Return Values

Returns a DBMS_SQL manageable cursor number transformed from a REF CURSOR

Usage Notes

- The REF CURSOR passed in has to be OPENed, otherwise an error is raised.
- Once the REF CURSOR is transformed into a DBMS_SQL cursor number, the REF CURSOR is no longer accessible by any native dynamic SQL operations.
- The DBMS_SQL cursor that is returned by this subprogram performs in the same way as a DBMS_SQL cursor that has already been executed.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE DO_QUERY(sql_stmt VARCHAR2) IS
  TYPE CurType IS REF CURSOR;
  src_cur         CurType;
  curid           NUMBER;
  desctab         DBMS_SQL.DESC_TAB;
  colcnt          NUMBER;
  namevar         VARCHAR2(50);
  numvar          NUMBER;
  datevar         DATE;
  empno           NUMBER := 100;
BEGIN


    -- sql_stmt := 'select ..... from employees where employee_id = :b1';
    OPEN src_cur FOR sql_stmt USING empno;

    -- Switch from native dynamic SQL to DBMS_SQL
    curid := DBMS_SQL.TO_CURSOR_NUMBER (src_cur);

    DBMS_SQL.DESCRIBE_COLUMNS(curid, colcnt, desctab);

    -- Define columns
    FOR i IN 1 .. colcnt LOOP
        IF desctab(i).col_type = 2 THEN
```

```
           DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid, i, numvar);
        ELSIF desctab(i).col_type = 12 THEN
            DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid, i, datevar);
.......
         ELSE
           DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(curid, i, namevar, 25);
         END IF;
    END LOOP;

  -- Fetch Rows
    WHILE DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(curid) > 0 LOOP
        FOR i IN 1 .. colcnt LOOP
          IF (desctab(i).col_type = 1) THEN
            DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid, i, namevar);
         ELSIF (desctab(i).col_type = 2) THEN
            DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid, i, numvar);
          ELSIF (desctab(i).col_type = 12) THEN
            DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(curid, i, datevar);
....
          END IF;
        END LOOP;
    END LOOP;

    DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(curid);
END;
/
```

TO_REFCURSOR Function

This function takes an OPENed, PARSEd, and EXECUTEd cursor and transforms/migrates it into a PL/SQL manageable REF CURSOR (a weakly-typed cursor) that can be consumed by PL/SQL native dynamic SQL switched to use native dynamic SQL. This subprogram is only used with SELECT cursors.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.TO_REFCURSOR(
   cursor_number IN OUT INTEGER)
  RETURN SYS_REFCURSOR;
```

Parameters

Table 149–30 TO_REFCURSOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cursor_number	Cursor number of the cursor to be transformed into REF CURSOR

Return Values

Returns a PL/SQL REF CURSOR transformed from a DBMS_SQL cursor number

Usage Notes

- The cursor passed in by the cursor_number has to be OPENed, PARSEd, and EXECUTEd; otherwise an error is raised.
- Once the cursor_number is transformed into a REF CURSOR, the cursor_number is no longer accessible by any DBMS_SQL operations.
- After a cursor_number is transformed into a REF CURSOR, using DBMS_SQL.IS_OPEN to check to see if the cursor_number is still open results in an error.
- If the cursor number was last parsed with a valid container parameter, it cannot be converted to a REF CURSOR.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE DO_QUERY(mgr_id NUMBER) IS
  TYPE CurType IS REF CURSOR;
  src_cur         CurType;
  curid           NUMBER;
  sql_stmt        VARCHAR2(200);
  ret             INTEGER;
  empnos          DBMS_SQL.Number_Table;
  depts           DBMS_SQL.Number_Table;
BEGIN

  -- DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR
  curid := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;

  sql_stmt :=    'SELECT EMPLOYEE_ID, DEPARTMENT_ID from employees where MANAGER_
ID = :b1';

  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(curid, sql_stmt, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE);
  DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(curid, 'b1', mgr_id);
```

```
  ret := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(curid);

  -- Switch from DBMS_SQL to native dynamic SQL
  src_cur := DBMS_SQL.TO_REFCURSOR(curid);

  -- Fetch with native dynamic SQL
  FETCH src_cur BULK COLLECT INTO empnos, depts;

  IF empnos.COUNT > 0 THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('EMPNO DEPTNO');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- ------');
    -- Loop through the empnos and depts collections
    FOR i IN 1 .. empnos.COUNT LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(empnos(i) || '   ' || depts(i));
    END LOOP;
  END IF;
   -- Close cursor
  CLOSE src_cur;
END;
/
```

VARIABLE_VALUE Procedures

This procedure returns the value of the named variable for a given cursor. It is used to return the values of bind variables inside PL/SQL blocks or DML statements with `returning` clause.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   value           OUT NOCOPY <datatype>);
```

Where <datatype> can be any one of the following types:

```
BINARY_DOUBLE
BINARY_FLOAT
BFILE
BLOB
CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
DATE
DSINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
NUMBER
TIME_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIME_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_LTZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_TZ_UNCONSTRAINED
TIMESTAMP_UNCONSTRAINED
UROWID
VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
YMINTERVAL_UNCONSTRAINED
user-defined object types
collections (VARRAYs and nested tables)
REFs
Opaque types
```

For variables containing `CHAR`, `RAW`, and `ROWID` data, you can use the following variations on the syntax:

```
DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE_CHAR (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   value           OUT CHAR CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);

DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE_RAW (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   value           OUT RAW);

DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE_ROWID (
   c               IN  INTEGER,
   name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   value           OUT ROWID);
```

The following syntax enables the `VARIABLE_VALUE` procedure to accommodate bulk operations:

```
DBMS_SQL.VARIABLE_VALUE (
   c                 IN   INTEGER,
   name              IN   VARCHAR2,
```

```
   value             OUT NOCOPY <table_type>);
```

For bulk operations, <table_type> can be:

```
Binary_Double_Table
Binary_Float_Table
Bfile_Table
Blob_Table
Clob_Table
Date_Table
Interval_Day_To_Second_Table
Interval_Year_To_Month_Table
Number_Table
Time_Table
Time_With_Time_Zone_Table
Timestamp_Table
Timestamp_With_ltz_Table;
Timestamp_With_Time_Zone_Table
Urowid_Table
Varchar2_Table
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(variable_value,RNDS,WNDS);
```

Parameters

Table 149–31 VARIABLE_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	ID number of the cursor from which to get the values.
name	Name of the variable for which you are retrieving the value.
value	■ Single row option: Returns the value of the variable for the specified position. Oracle raises the exception ORA-06562, inconsistent_type, if the type of this output parameter differs from the actual type of the value, as defined by the call to BIND_VARIABLE. ■ Array option: Local variable that has been declared <table_type>. For bulk operations, value is an OUT NOCOPY parameter.

150

DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR

The DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR package provides an interface for creating, configuring, and using SQL translation profiles.

> **See Also:** SQL Translation Framework Architecture and Overview in*Oracle Database Migration Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR

Security Model

- DBMSL_SQL_TRANSLATOR is a invoker's rights package.
- When translating a SQL statement or error, the translator package procedure will be invoked with the same current user and current schema as those in which the SQL statement being parsed. The owner of the translator package must be granted the TRANSLATE SQL user privilege on the current user.
- Additionally, the current user must be granted the EXECUTE privilege on the translator package.

Constants

The DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR package uses the constants shown in Table 150–1, " DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR Constants"

Table 150–1 DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR Constants

Constant	Value	Type	Description
ATTR_EDITIONABLE	'EDITIONABLE'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that specifies whether the SQL translation profile becomes an editioned or noneditioned object if editioning is later enabled for the schema object type SQL translation profile in the owner's schema (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_FOREIGN_SQL_SYNTAX	'FOREIGN_SQL_SYNTAX'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that indicates if the profile is for translation of foreign SQL syntax (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_LOG_TRANSLATION_ERROR	'TRANSLATION_ERROR'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that controls if the profile should log translation error in the database alert log (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_RAISE_TRANSLATION_ERROR	'TRANSLATION_ERROR'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that controls if the profile should raise translation error if a SQL statement or error fails to be translated (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_TRANSLATE_NEW_SQL	'TRANSLATE_NEW_SQL'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that controls if the profile should translate new SQL statements and errors (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_TRACE_TRANSLATION	'TRACE_TRANSLATION'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that controls tracing (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_TRANSLATOR	'TRANSLATOR'	VARCHAR2(30)	Name of the SQL translation profile attribute that specifies the translator package (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_VALUE_TRUE	'TRUE'	VARCHAR2(30)	Value to set a SQL translation profile attribute to true (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)
ATTR_VALUE_FALSE	'FALSE'	VARCHAR2(30)	Value to set a SQL translation profile attribute to false (see Operational Notes on page 150-5)

Operational Notes

The subprograms that modify a profile have DDL transaction semantics and when invoked will commit any open transaction in the session.

ATTR_EDITIONABLE Constant

Editionable is true by default.

ATTR_FOREIGN_SQL_SYNTAX Constant

Foreign SQL syntax is true by default.

ATTR_LOG_TRANSLATION_ERROR Constant

- If log translation is enabled in a SQL translation profile, an alert log is written to the database alert log if no custom translation is found for a SQL statement or error. This allows the user to catch any error in the custom translation in a profile.
- Log translation error is false by default.

ATTR_RAISE_TRANSLATION_ERROR Constant

Raise translation error is false by default.

ATTR_TRANSLATE_NEW_SQL Constant

- The name of the SQL translation profile attribute that controls if the profile should translate new SQL statements and errors. If so, the translator package, if registered, will translate a new SQL statement or error not already translated in custom translations, and also register the new translation as custom translation. If not, any new SQL statement or error encountered will result in a translation error
- Translate new SQL statements and errors is true by default.

ATTR_TRACE_TRANSLATION Constant

- If tracing is enabled in a SQL translation profile, any SQL statement or error translated by the profile in a database session and its translation is written to the database session's trace file.
- Tracing is disabled by default.

ATTR_TRANSLATOR Constant

- The translator package must be a PL/SQL package with the following three procedures. The TRANSLATE_SQL Procedure and the TRANSLATE_ERROR Procedure are called to translate SQL statements and errors. The names of the parameters of the translate procedures must be followed.

```
PROCEDURE TRANSLATE_SQL(
   sql_text        IN  CLOB,
   translated_text OUT CLOB);

PROCEDURE TRANSLATE_ERROR(
   error_code          IN  BINARY_INTEGER,
   translated_code     OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   translated_sqlstate OUT VARCHAR2);

Parameters:
  profile_name        - profile name
  sql_text            - SQL statement to be translated
```

```
translated_text     - translated SQL statement
error_code          - Oracle error code
translated_code     - translated error code
translated_sqlstate - translated SQLSTATE
```

- When `NULL` is returned in `translated_text`, `translated_code`, or `translated_sqlstate`, it means that no translation is required and the original SQL statement, error code, or `SQLSTATE` is used instead.
- The name of the translator package follows the naming rules for database packages of the form `[schema.]package_name`. When the schema and package names are used, they are set to uppercase by default unless surrounded by double quotation marks. For example, setting a translator package, `translator => 'dbms_tsql_translator'` is the same as `translator => 'Dbms_Tsql_Translator'` and `translator => 'DBMS_TSQL_TRANSLATOR'`, but not the same as `translator => '"dbms_tsql_translator"'`. The default schema name is the profile owner.
- The translator attribute is not set by default.

ATTR_VALUE_TRUE Constant

The value to set a SQL translation profile attribute to true.

ATTR_VALUE_FALSE Constant

The value to set a SQL translation profile attribute to false.

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by the DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR package.

Table 150–2 Exceptions Raised by DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR

Exception	Error Code	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	29261	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	1031	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	24252	Profile does not exist
NO_SUCH_USER	1918	Profile owner does not exist
NO_TRANSLATION_FOUND	24253	No translation of the SQL statement or error code found
PROFILE_EXISTS	955	Profile already exists

Examples

Basic SQL Translation

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.CREATE_PROFILE(
    profile_name     => ' tsql_application');
  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.SET_ATTRIBUTE(
    profile_name     =>  'tsql_application',
    attribute_name   =>  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.ATTR_TRANSLATOR,
    attribute_value  =>  'migration_repo.sybase_tsql_translator');
END;
```

Summary of DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR Subprograms

Table 150–3 DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_PROFILE Procedure on page 150-10	Creates a SQL translation profile
DEREGISTER_SQL_ TRANSLATION Procedure on page 150-11	Deregisters the custom translation of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile
DEREGISTER_ERROR_ TRANSLATION Procedure on page 150-12	Deregisters the translation of an Oracle error code and `SQLSTATE` in a SQL translation profile
DROP_PROFILE Procedure on page 150-13	Drops a SQL translation profile and its contents
ENABLE_ERROR_ TRANSLATION Procedure on page 150-14	Enables or disables a custom translation of an Oracle error code in a SQL translation profile
ENABLE_SQL_ TRANSLATION Procedure on page 150-15	Enables or disables a custom translation of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile
EXPORT_PROFILE Procedure on page 150-16	Exports the content of a SQL translation profile
IMPORT_PROFILE Procedure on page 150-18	Imports the content of a SQL translation profile
REGISTER_ERROR_ TRANSLATION Procedure on page 150-19	Registers a custom translation of an Oracle error code and `SQLSTATE` in a SQL translation profile
REGISTER_SQL_ TRANSLATION Procedure on page 150-21	Registers a custom translation of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile
SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 150-23	Sets an attribute of a SQL translation profile
SQL_HASH Function on page 150-24	Computes the hash value of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile
SQL_ID Function on page 150-25	Computes the SQL identifier of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile
TRANSLATE_ERROR Procedure on page 150-26	Translates an Oracle error code and an ANSI `SQLSTATE` using a SQL translation profile
TRANSLATE_SQL Procedure on page 150-27	Translates a SQL statement using a SQL translation profile

CREATE_PROFILE Procedure

This procedure creates a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.CREATE_PROFILE (
   profile_name    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 150–4 CREATE_PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile

Exceptions

Table 150–5 CREATE_PROFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
PROFILE_EXISTS	Profile already exists

Usage Notes

- A SQL translation profile is a database schema object that resides in SQL translation profile namespace. Its name follows the naming rules for database objects of the form `[schema.]name`. When the schema and profile names are used in the `DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR` package, they are uppercased unless surrounded by double quotation marks. For example, the translation profile `profile_name => 'tsql_application'` is the same as `profile_name => 'Tsql_Application'` and `profile_name => 'TSQL_APPLICATION'`, but not the same as `profile_name => '"tsql_application"'`.
- A SQL translation profile is an editionable object type.
- A SQL translation profile cannot be created as a common object in a multitenant container database (CDB).
- To destroy a SQL translation profile, use the DROP_PROFILE Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.CREATE_PROFILE(profile_name => 'tsql_application');
END;
```

DEREGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure

This procedure deregisters the custom translation of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.DEREGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION (
   profile_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_text          IN  CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 150–6 DEREGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
sql_text	SQL statement

Exceptions

Table 150–7 DEREGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
PROFILE_EXISTS	Profile already exists

Examples

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.DEREGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION(
      profile_name => 'tsql_application',
      sql_text     => 'select top 5 * from emp');
END;
```

DEREGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure

This procedure deregisters the translation of an Oracle error code and SQLSTATE in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.DEREGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION (
   profile_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   error_code            IN   PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 150–8 DEREGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
error_code	Oracle error code

Exceptions

Table 150–9 DEREGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Examples

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.DEREGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION(
      profile_name    => 'tsql_application',
      error_code      => 1);
END;
```

DROP_PROFILE Procedure

This procedure drops a SQL translation profile and its contents.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.DROP_PROFILE (
   profile_name     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 150–10 DROP_PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile

Exceptions

Table 150–11 DROP_PROFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Examples

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.DROP_PROFILE(
      profile_name    =>  'tsql_application');
END;
```

ENABLE_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure

This procedure enables or disables a custom translation of an Oracle error code in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.ENABLE_ERROR_TRANSLATION (
   profile_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_text          IN CLOB,
   enable            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 150–12 ENABLE_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
sql_text	SQL statement
enable	Enable or disable the translation

Exceptions

Table 150–13 ENABLE_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.ENABLE_ERROR_TRANSLATION(
      profile_name => 'tsql_application',
      sql_text     => 'SELECT TOP 5 * FROM emp'
      enable       => TRUE);
END;
```

ENABLE_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure

This procedure enables or disables a custom translation of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.ENABLE_SQL_TRANSLATION (
   profile_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   sql_text          IN    CLOB,
   enable            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 150–14 ENABLE_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
sql_text	SQL statement
enable	Enable or disable the translation

Exceptions

Table 150–15 ENABLE_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Examples

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.ENABLE_SQL_TRANSLATION(
      profile_name => 'tsql_application',
      sql_text     => 'select top 5 * from emp',
      enable       => TRUE);
END;
```

EXPORT_PROFILE Procedure

This procedure exports the content of a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.EXPORT_PROFILE (
   profile_name     IN          VARCHAR2,
   content          OUT NOCOPY  CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 150–16 EXPORT_PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
content	Content of profile

Exceptions

Table 150–17 EXPORT_PROFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Usage Notes

- The content of the SQL translation profile is exported in XML format as follows. Note that the profile name will not be exported.

```
SQLTranslationProfile Translator="translator package name"
                      ForeignSQLSyntax="TRUE|FALSE"
                      TranslateNewSQL="TRUE|FALSE"
                      RaiseTranslationError="TRUE|FALSE"
                      LogTranslationError="TRUE|FALSE"
                      TraceTranslation="TRUE|FALSE"
                      Editionable="TRUE|FALSE">
  <SQLTranslations>
    <SQLTranslation Enabled="TRUE|FALSE">
      <SQLText>original SQL text</SQLText>
      <TranslatedText>translated SQL text</TranslatedText>
    </SQLTranslation>
    ...
  </SQLTranslations>
  <ErrorTranslations>
    <ErrorTranslation Enabled="TRUE|FALSE">
      <ErrorCode>Oracle error code</ErrorCode>
      <TranslatedCode>translated error code</TranslatedCode>
      <TranslatedSQLSTATE>translated SQLSTATE</TranslatedSQLSTATE>
    </ErrorTranslation>
    ...
  </ErrorTranslations>
```

```
</SQLTranslationProfile>
```

- To import the content to a SQL translation profile, use the IMPORT_PROFILE Procedure.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  content CLOB;
BEGIN
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.EXPORT_PROFILE(
      profile_name    =>  'tsql_application',
      content         =>  content);
END;
```

IMPORT_PROFILE Procedure

This procedure imports the content of a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.IMPORT_PROFILE (
   profile_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   content            IN   CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 150–18 IMPORT_PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
content	Content of profile

Exceptions

Table 150–19 IMPORT_PROFILE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist

Usage Notes

- The content of the SQL translation profile must be in XML format as used by the EXPORT_PROFILE Procedure. All elements and attributes are optional.
- If the profile does not exist, it is created. If it exists, the content overrides any existing attribute, translator package, SQL or error translation registration.
- To export the content to a SQL translation profile, use the EXPORT_PROFILE Procedure.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  content CLOB;
BEGIN
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.IMPORT_PROFILE(
      profile_name    =>  'tsql_application',
      content         =>  content);
END;
```

REGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure

This procedure registers a custom translation of an Oracle error code and SQLSTATE in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.REGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION (
   profile_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   error_code            IN   PLS_INTEGER,
   translated_code       IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   translated_sqlstate   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   enable                IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 150–20 REGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
error_code	Oracle error code
translated_code	Translated error code
translated_sqlstate	Translated SQLSTATE
enable	Enable or disable the translation

Exceptions

Table 150–21 REGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Usage Notes

- When the Oracle Database translates an Oracle error code using a translation profile, it searches for the registered custom translation first, and only invokes the translator package if no match is found.
- When a translation is registered in a profile, it may be disabled. Oracle Database does not search for disabled translations.
- The old translation of the error code and SQLSTATE, if present, is replaced with the new translation.
- To deregister a translation, use the DEREGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
      DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.REGISTER_ERROR_TRANSLATION(
```

```
      profile_name    => 'tsql_application',
      error_code      => 1,
      translated_code => 2601);
END;
```

REGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure

This procedure registers a custom translation of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.REGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION (
   profile_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   sql_text          IN CLOB,
   translated_text   IN CLOB DEFAULT NULL,
   enable            IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 150–22 REGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
sql_text	SQL statement
translated_text	Translated SQL statement
enable	Enable or disable the translation

Exceptions

Table 150–23 REGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Usage Notes

- When the Oracle Database translates a statement using a translation profile, it searches for the registered custom translation first, and only invokes the translator package if no match is found.
- When a translation is registered in a profile, it may be disabled. Oracle Database does not search for disabled translations.
- When `translated_text` is `NULL`, no translation is required and the original statement is used.
- The old translation of the SQL statement, if present, is replaced with the new translation.
- To deregister a translation, use the DEREGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION Procedure.

Examples

```
BEGIN
```

```
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.REGISTER_SQL_TRANSLATION(
      profile_name    => 'tsql_application',
      sql_text        => 'select top 5 * from emp',
      translated_text => 'SELECT * FROM emp WHERE rownum <= :SYS_N_001');
END;
```

SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure

This procedure sets an attribute of a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.SET_ATTRIBUTE (
   profile_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value   IN  VARCHAR2;)
```

Parameters

Table 150–24 SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	Name of profile
attribute_name	Name of attribute
attribute_value	Value of attribute

Exceptions

Table 150–25 SET_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Usage Notes

See Constants on page 150-4

SQL_HASH Function

This procedure computes the hash value of a SQL statement in the session's SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.SQL_HASH (
   sql_text         IN    CLOB)
RETURN NUMBER DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 150–26 SQL_HASH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_text	SQL statement

Return Values

Returns hash value of the SQL statement in the SQL translation profile

Exceptions

Table 150–27 SQL_HASH Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface

Examples

```
DECLARE
  sqltext CLOB;
  txltext CLOB;
  sqlhash NUMBER;
BEGIN
  sqltext  :=  'SELECT TOP 1 * FROM emp';
  sqlhash  :=  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.SQL_HASH (sqltext);
  SELECT translated_text INTO txltext
    FROM user_sql_translations
    WHERE sql_hash = sqlhash
    AND DBMS_LOB.COMPARE (sql_text, sqltext) = 0;
END;
```

SQL_ID Function

This procedure computes the SQL identifier of a SQL statement in a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.SQL_ID (
   sql_text         IN    CLOB)
RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 150–28 SQL_ID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_text	SQL statement

Return Values

Returns the SQL ID of the SQL statement in the SQL translation profile

Exceptions

Table 150–29 SQL_ID Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface

Examples

```
DECLARE
  sqltext CLOB;
  sqlid   VARCHAR2(13);
BEGIN
  sqltext :=  'SELECT TOP 1 * FROM emp';
  sqlid   :=  DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.SQL_ID (sqltext);
END;
```

TRANSLATE_ERROR Procedure

This procedure translates an Oracle error code and an ANSI SQLSTATE using the session's SQL translation profile

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.TRANSLATE_ERROR (
   error_code           IN           PLS_INTEGER,
   translated_code      OUT          PLS_INTEGER,
   translated_sqlstate  OUT NOCOPY   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 150–30 TRANSLATE_ERROR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_code	Oracle error code
translated_code	Translated error code
translated_sqlstate	Translated SQLSTATE

Exceptions

Table 150–31 TRANSLATE_ERROR Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist
NO_TRANSLATION_FOUND	No translation of the SQL statement or error code is found

Examples

```
DECLARE
  translated_code      BINARY_INTEGER;
  translated_sqlstate  VARCHAR2(5);
BEGIN
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.TRANSLATE_ERROR(
      error_code           => 1,
      translated_code      => translated_code,
      translated_sqlstate  => translated_sqlstate);
END;
```

TRANSLATE_SQL Procedure

This procedure translates a SQL statement using a SQL translation profile.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.TRANSLATE_SQL (
   sql_text          IN           CLOB,
   translated_text   OUT  NOCOPY  CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 150–32 TRANSLATE_SQL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_text	SQL statement
translated_text	Translated SQL statement

Exceptions

Table 150–33 TRANSLATE_SQL Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument is passed to the PL/SQL interface
INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE	User has insufficient privilege for the operation
NO_SUCH_USER	Profile owner does not exist
NO_SUCH_PROFILE	Profile does not exist

Examples

```
ALTER SESSION SET SQL_TRANSLATION_PROFILE =  tsql_application;

DECLARE
  translated_text CLOB;
BEGIN
    DBMS_SQL_TRANSLATOR.TRANSLATE_SQL(
      sql_text         => 'select top 5 * from emp',
      translated_text  => translated_text);
END;
```

151

DBMS_SQL_MONITOR

The DBMS_SQL_MONITOR package provides information about Real-time SQL Monitoring and Real-time Database Operation Monitoring.

See Also: DBMS_SQLTUNE

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SQL_MONITOR

Overview

The DBMS_SQL_MONITOR package provides information about Real-time SQL Monitoring and Real-time Database Operation Monitoring. These features provide automatic monitoring of SQL statements, PL/SQL blocks, or composite database operations that are considered expensive. A simple database operation is a single SQL statement or PL/SQL procedure or function. A composite database operation is activity between two defined points in time in a database session. The monitored data is collected in V$SQL_MONITOR and V$SQL_PLAN_MONITOR.

The following subprograms begin and end monitoring of a composite database operation:

- BEGIN_OPERATION Function
- END_OPERATION Procedure

The following subprograms report on monitoring data collected in V$SQL_MONITOR and V$SQL_PLAN_MONITOR:

- REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function
- REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Function

Security Model

This package is available to PUBLIC and executes with invoker's rights privileges.

The reporting functions require privileges to select data from the catalog as provided by the role SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE.

Constants

The DBMS_SQL_MONITOR package uses the constants shown in Table 151–1, " DBMS_SQL_MONITOR Constants".

Table 151–1 DBMS_SQL_MONITOR Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
FORCE_TRACKING	VARCHAR2(30)	'Y'	Force track the composite database operation when the operation starts
NO_FORCE_TRACKING	VARCHAR2(30)	'N'	Do not force track the composite database operation when the operation starts. It is only tracked when it has consumed 5 seconds of CPU or I/O time.

Summary of DBMS_SQL_MONITOR Subprograms

Table 151–2 DBMS_SQL_MONITOR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BEGIN_OPERATION Function on page 151-7	Starts a composite database operation in the current session
END_OPERATION Procedure on page 151-8	Ends the monitoring operation in the current session
REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function on page 151-9	Builds a detailed report for a specific database operation that has been monitored by Oracle
REPORT_SQL_ MONITOR_LIST Function on page 151-14	Builds a report for all or a subset of database operations that have been monitored by Oracle

BEGIN_OPERATION Function

This function starts a composite database operation in the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_MONITOR.BEGIN_OPERATION (
   dbop_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   dbop_eid        IN NUMBER   := NULL,
   forced_tracking IN VARCHAR2 := NO_FORCE_TRACKING,
   attribute_list  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 151–3 BEGIN_OPERATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbop_name	Name for the composite database operation
dbop_eid	Unique identifier for the current execution of the composite database operation
forced_tracking	Values: (see defined Constants): ■ FORCE_TRACKING - forces the composite database operation to be tracked when the operation starts. You can also use the string variable 'Y'. ■ NO_FORCE_TRACKING - the operation will be tracked only when it has consumed at least 5 seconds of CPU or I/O time. You can also use the string variable 'N'.
attribute_list	List of user-created attributes. It is a comma-separated list of name-value pairs (for example, 'table_name=emp, operation=load')

Return Values

Composite database operation unique execution ID

END_OPERATION Procedure

This function ends a composite database operation in the current session. If the specified composite database operation does not exist, this procedure has no effect.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_MONITOR.END_OPERATION  (
   dbop_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   dbop_eid        IN NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 151–4 END_OPERATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbop_name	Name of a composite database operation
dbop_eid	Unique identifier for the current execution of the composite database operation

REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function

This function builds a detailed report with monitoring information for a simple or a composite database operation. For each operation, it gives key information and associated global statistics. Use this function to get detailed monitoring information for a simple or a composite database operation.

The target database operation for this report can be:

- The last database operation monitored by Oracle (default, no parameter)
- The last database operation executed in the specified session and monitored by Oracle. The session is identified by its session ID and optionally its serial number (`-1` is current session).
- The last execution of a specific database operation identified by its `sql_id`
- A specific execution of a database operation identified by the combination `sql_id`, `sql_exec_start`, nd `sql_exec_id`
- The last execution of a specific composite database operation identified by `dbop_name`
- The specific execution of a composite database operation identified by the combination `dbop_name`, `dbop_exec_id`

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_MONITOR.REPORT_SQL_MONITOR (
   sql_id                    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   dbop_name                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   dbop_exec_id              IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_id                IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_serial            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   sql_exec_start            IN DATE     DEFAULT  NULL,
   sql_exec_id               IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   inst_id                   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   start_time_filter         IN DATE     DEFAULT  NULL,
   end_time_filter           IN DATE     DEFAULT  NULL,
   instance_id_filter        IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   parallel_filter           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   plan_line_filter          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   event_detail              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  'YES',
   bucket_max_count          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  128,
   bucket_interval           IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   base_path                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   last_refresh_time         IN DATE     DEFAULT  NULL,
   report_level              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   type                      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TEXT',
   sql_plan_hash_value       IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   con_name                  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 151–5 REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	SQL_ID of the simple database operation for which monitoring information should be displayed. Use NULL (default) to display monitoring information for the last simple database operation monitored by Oracle.
dbop_name	DBOP_NAME for which monitoring information of the composite database operation is displayed
dbop_exec_id	Execution ID for the composite database operation for which monitoring information is displayed
session_id	Targets only the subset of statements executed and monitored on behalf of the specified session. Default is NULL. Use -1 or USERENV('SID') for the current session.
session_serial	In addition to session_id, you can specify the session serial number to ensure the desired session incarnation is targeted. This is ignored when session_id is NULL.
sql_exec_start	Time at which execution of the monitored SQL was started. Only applicable when sql_id is specified. Used to display monitoring information for a particular execution of sql_id When NULL (default), the last execution of sql_id is shown.
sql_exec_id	A numeric ID generated internally by SQL monitor to identify different executions of the same SQL statement. Thus each execution will have the same sql_id but a different sql_exec_id. Only applicable when sql_id is specified and is used to display monitoring information for a particular execution of sql_id. When NULL (default), the last execution of sql_id is shown.
inst_id	Looks only at queries started on the specified instance. Use -1 to target the current instance. The default, NULL will target all instances.
start_time_filter	If not NULL, the report shows activity from V$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY started after this date. If NULL, the reported activity starts once the targeted database operation has started.
end_time_filter	If not NULL, the report shows activity from V$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY started before this date. If NULL, the reported activity ends when the targeted database operation has ended or SYSDATE if the operation is still executing.
instance_id_filter	Only looks at activity for the specified instance. Use NULL (the default) to target all instances. Only relevant if the query runs in parallel.
parallel_filter	Parallel filter applies only to parallel execution and allows you to select only a subset of the processes involved in the parallel execution. The string parallel_filter can be: ■ NULL - target all parallel execution servers as wells as the query coordinator ■ ['qc'][servers(<svr_grp>[,] <svr_set>[,] <srv_num>)] where any NULL value is interpreted as ALL
plan_line_filter	Selects activity and execution statistics for the specified line number in the plan of a SQL
event_detail	When set to NO, the activity is aggregated by wait_class only. Use YES (default) to aggregate by wait_class, event_name.

Table 151–5 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bucket_max_count	Specifies the maximum number of buckets to create in the report
bucket_interval	Represents the exact time interval, in seconds, of all histogram buckets. If specified, bucket_max_count is ignored.
base_path	URL path for flex HTML resources since flex HTML format requires access to external files (java scripts and the flash swf file).
last_refresh_time	If not NULL (default), the time when the report was last retrieved (SYSDATE attribute of the report tag). Use this option when you want to display the report of an running query and when that report is refreshed on a regular basis. This optimizes the size of the report since only the new changed information will be returned. In particular, the following will be optimized: ■ SQL text will not be returned when this option is specified ■ Activity histogram will start at the bucket that intersects that time. The entire content of the bucket is returned, even if last_refresh_time is after the start of that bucket

Table 151–5 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
report_level	Level of detail for the report. Of the following, only one can be specified: ■ NONE: Minimum possible ■ BASIC: This is equivalent to sql_ text-plan-xplan-sessions-instance-activity_ histogram-plan_histogram-metrics where the token "-" implies that report section will not be included in the report. ■ TYPICAL: Everything but plan_histogram ■ ALL: Everything In addition, individual report sections can also be enabled or disabled by using a ±*section_name*. Several sections are defined: ■ XPLAN: Shows explain plan. ON by default. ■ PLAN: Shows plan monitoring statistics. ON by default. ■ SESSIONS: Show session details. Applies only to parallel queries. ON by default. ■ INSTANCE: Shows instance details. Applies only to parallel and cross instance queries. ON by default. ■ PARALLEL: An umbrella parameter for specifying sessions as well as instance details ■ ACTIVITY: Shows activity summary at global level, plan line level and session ■ INSTANCE LEVEL: (If applicable). ON by default. ■ BINDS: Shows bind information when available. ON by default. ■ METRICS: Shows metric data (such as CPU and IOs) over time. ON by default ■ ACTIVITY_HISTOGRAM: Shows a histogram of the overall query activity. ON by default. ■ PLAN_HISTOGRAM: Shows activity histogram at plan line level. OFF by default. ■ OTHER: Other information. ON by default. In addition, SQL text can be specified at different levels: ■ -SQL_TEXT: No SQL text in report ■ +SQL_TEXT: Alright with partial SQL text, that is, up to the first 2000 chars as stored in GV$SQL_MONITOR ■ SQL_FULLTEXT: No full SQL text, that is, +sql_text ■ +SQL_FULLTEXT: Show full SQL text (default)
type	Report type: ■ TEXT: text report (default) ■ HTML: simple HTML report ■ ACTIVE: database active report. Some information (explain plan, activity_histogram, metrics and plan_histogram) is only shown when this type is selected ■ XML: raw data for the report
sql_plan_hash_value	Targets only those with the specified plan hash value. Default is NULL.

Table 151–5 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
con_name	Container name

Return Values

SQL monitor report, an XML document

Usage Notes

The user invoking this function needs to have privilege to access the following fixed views:

- GV$SQL_MONITOR
- GV$SQL_PLAN_MONITOR
- GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY
- GV$SESSION_LONGOPS
- GV$SQL if SQL full text is requested and its length is > 2K

REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Function

This function builds a report for all or a subset of database operations that have been monitored by Oracle. For each database operation, it gives key information and associated global statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQL_MONITOR.REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST (
   sql_id                    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   dbop_name                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   monitor_type              IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  MONITOR_TYPE_ALL,
   session_id                IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_serial            IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   inst_id                   IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   active_since_date         IN DATE     DEFAULT  NULL,
   active_since_sec          IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   last_refresh_time         IN DATE     DEFAULT  NULL,
   report_level              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   auto_refresh              IN NUMBER   DEFAULT  NULL,
   base_path                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL,
   type                      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TEXT',
   con_name                  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  NULL)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 151–6 REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	SQL_ID of the simple database operation for which monitoring information should be displayed. Use NULL (default) to display monitoring information for the last operation monitored by Oracle.
dbop_name	DBOP_NAME for which monitoring information of the composite database operation is displayed
monitor_type	Monitor type: ■ MONITOR_TYPE_SQL returns only simple database operations ■ MONITOR_TYPE_DBOP returns composite database operations ■ MONITOR_TYPE_ALL returns all types
session_id	Targets only the subset of database operations executed and monitored on behalf of the specified session. Default is NULL. Use -1 or USERENV('SID') for the current session.
session_serial	In addition to session_id, you can specify the session serial number to ensure the desired session incarnation is targeted. This is ignored when session_id is NULL.
inst_id	Looks only at monitored database operations originating from the specified instance. Use -1 to target the instance where the report executed. To target all instances, use NULL (default).
active_since_date	If not NULL (default), returns monitored database operations that have been active since the specified time. This includes all operations that are executing, as well as all operations that have completed their execution after the specified start time.

Table 151–6 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
active_since_sec	If not NULL (default), returns monitored database operations that have been active since the specified time. This includes all operations that are executing, as well as all operations that have completed their execution after the specified date and time. In this case, the start time is specified relative to the current SYSDATE minus a specified number of seconds. For example, use 3600 to limit the report to all operations that have been active in the past 1 hour.
last_refresh_time	If not NULL (default), the time when the list report was last retrieved. This optimizes the case where an application shows the list and refreshes the report on a regular basis (such as once every 5 seconds). In this case, the report will show details about the execution of monitored queries that have been active since the specified last_refresh_time. For other queries, the report returns the execution key (sql_id, sql_exec_start, and sql_exec_id). Also, for queries that have their first refresh time after the specified date, only the SQL execution key and statistics are returned.
report_level	Level of detail for the report. The level can be BASIC (SQL text up to 200 character), TYPICAL (which include full SQL text assuming that cursor has not aged out, in which case the SQL text is included up to 2000 characters), or ALL which is the same as TYPICAL.
auto_refresh	Specifies the duration in seconds after which report data will be automatically refreshed while the monitored SQL or database operation is still executing. This applies to active report types.
base_path	URL path for flex HTML resources since flex HTML format requires access to external files (java scripts and the flash swf file).
type	Report type: ■ TEXT: text report (default) ■ HTML: simple HTML report ■ ACTIVE: database active report. Some information (explain plan, activity_histogram, metrics, and plan_histogram) is only shown when this type is selected. ■ XML: raw data for the report
con_name	Container name

Return Values

An XML document with the list of the database operations monitored

Usage Notes

- Use the REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function to get detailed monitoring information for a single database operation.
- The user invoking this function needs to have the privilege to access the fixed views GV$SQL_MONITOR and GV$SQL.

152

DBMS_SQLDIAG

The DBMS_SQLDIAG package provides an interface to the SQL Diagnosability functionality.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about "Managing Diagnostic Data"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SQLDIAG

Overview

In the rare case that a SQL statement fails with a critical error, you can run the SQL Repair Advisor to try to repair the failed statement.This section covers the following topics:

About the SQL Repair Advisor

You run the SQL Repair Advisor after a SQL statement fails with a critical error. The advisor analyzes the statement and in many cases recommends a patch to repair the statement. If you implement the recommendation, the applied SQL patch circumvents the failure by causing the query optimizer to choose an alternate execution plan for future executions.

Running the SQL Repair Advisor

You run the SQL Repair Advisor by creating and executing a diagnostic task using the `CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK` and `EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK` respectively. The SQL Repair Advisor first reproduces the critical error and then tries to produce a workaround in the form of SQL patch.

1. **Identify the problem SQL statement**

   Consider the SQL statement that gives a critical error:

   ```
   DELETE FROM t t1 WHERE t1.a = 'a' AND ROWID <> (SELECT MAX(ROWID) FROM t t2
   WHERE t1.a= t2.a AND t1.b = t2.b AND t1.d=t2.d)
   ```

   You use the SQL Repair advisor to repair this critical error.

2. **Create a diagnosis task**

   Invoke `DBMS_SQLDIAG. CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK`. You can specify an optional task name, an optional time limit for the advisor task, and problem type. In the example below, we specify the SQL text, the task name as '`error_task`' and a problem type as '`DBMS_SQLDIAG.PROBLEM_TYPE_COMPILATION_ERROR`'.

   ```
   DECLARE
       rep_out         CLOB;
       t_id            VARCHAR2(50);
     BEGIN
       t_id := DBMS_SQLDIAG.CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK(
         sql_text => 'DELETE FROM t t1 WHERE t1.a = ''a'' AND ROWID <> (SELECT
   MAX(ROWID) FROM t t2 WHERE t1.a= t2.a AND t1.b = t2.b AND t1.d=t2.d)',
         task_name => 'error_task',
         problem_type =>DBMS_SQLDIAG.PROBLEM_TYPE_COMPILATION_ERROR);
   ```

3. **Execute the diagnosis task**

   To execute the workaround generation and analysis phase of the SQL Repair Advisor, you call `DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK` with the task ID returned by the `CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK`. After a short delay, the SQL Repair Advisor returns. As part of its execution, the SQL Repair Advisor keeps a record of its findings which can be accessed through the reporting facilities of SQL Repair Advisor.

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (t_id);
```

4. **Report the diagnosis task**

   The analysis of the diagnosis task is accessed through dbms_sqldiag.report_diagnosis_task. If the SQL Repair Advisor was able to find a workaround, it recommends a SQL Patch. A SQL Patch is similar to a SQL profile but unlike the SQL Profile, it is used to workaround compilation or execution errors.

```
rep_out := DBMS_SQLDIAG.REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (t_id, DBMS_SQLDIAG.TYPE_TEXT);

  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Report : ' ||  rep_out);

  END;
  /
```

5. **Applying the patch**

   If a patch recommendation is present in the report, you can run the `ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH` command to accept the patch by invoking `DBMS_SQLDIAG.ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH`. This procedure takes the `task_name` as an argument.

```
EXECUTE DBMS_SQLDIAG.ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH(task_name => 'error_task', task_owner =>
'SYS', replace => TRUE);
```

6. **Test the patch**

   Now that you have accepted the patch, you can rerun the SQL statement. This time, it will not give you the critical error. If you run 'explain plan' for this statement, you will see that a SQL patch was used to generate the plan.

```
DELETE FROM t t1 WHERE t1.a = 'a' AND ROWID <> (select max(rowid) FROM t t2
WHERE t1.a= t2.a AND t1.b = t2.b AND t1.d=t2.d);
```

Removing a SQL Patch

In a situation where you obtained an official patch from Oracle to fix an error, or upgraded to the next patchset or release of Oracle which included the fix for the error, you call `DBMS_SQLDIAG.DROP_SQL_PATCH` with the patch name to drop the SQL patch. The patch name can be obtained from the explain plan section or by querying the view `DBA_SQL_PATCHES`.

Constants

The DBMS_SQLDIAG package uses the constants shown in the following tables:

- Table 152–1, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - SQLDIAG Advisor Name" describes the name of SQL repair advisor as seen by the advisor framework
- Table 152–2, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - SQLDIAG Advisor Task Scope Parameter Values" describes SQLDIAG advisor task scope parameter values
- Table 152–3, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - SQLDIAG Advisor time_limit Constants" describes SQLDIAG advisor `time_limit` constants
- Table 152–4, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Type (possible values) Constants" describes possible formats for a report
- Table 152–5, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Level (possible values) Constants" describes possible levels of detail in the report
- Table 152–6, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Section (possible values) Constants" describes possible report sections (comma delimited)
- Table 152–7, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Problem Type Constants" describes possible values for the `problem_type` parameter of the CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Functions
- Table 152–8, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Findings Filter Constants" describes possible values for the `_sql_findings_mode` parameter

Table 152–1 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - SQLDIAG Advisor Name

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ADV_SQL_DIAG_NAME	VARCHAR2(18)	'SQL Repair Advisor'	Name of SQL repair advisor as seen by the advisor framework

Table 152–2 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - SQLDIAG Advisor Task Scope Parameter Values

Constant	Type	Value	Description
SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE	VARCHAR2(13)	'COMPREHENSIVE'	Detailed analysis of the problem which may take more time to execute
SCOPE_LIMITED	VARCHAR2(7)	'LIMITED'	Brief analysis of the problem

Table 152–3 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - SQLDIAG Advisor time_limit Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT	NUMBER	1800	Default time limit for analysis of the problem

Table 152–4 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Type (possible values) Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
TYPE_HTML	VARCHAR2(4)	'HTML'	Report from the REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function in HTML form
TYPE_TEXT	VARCHAR2(4)	'TEXT'	Report from the REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function in text form
TYPE_XML	VARCHAR2(3)	'XML'	Report from the REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function in XML form

Table 152–5 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Level (possible values) Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
LEVEL_ALL	VARCHAR2(3)	'ALL'	Complete report including annotations about statements skipped over
LEVEL_BASIC	VARCHAR2(5)	'BASIC'	Shows information about every statement analyzed, including recommendations not implemented
LEVEL_TYPICAL	VARCHAR2(7)	'TYPICAL'	Simple report shows only information about the actions taken by the advisor.

Table 152–6 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Section (possible values) Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
SECTION_ALL	VARCHAR2(3)	'ALL'	All statements
SECTION_ERRORS	VARCHAR2(6)	'ERRORS'	Statements with errors
SECTION_FINDINGS	VARCHAR2(8)	'FINDINGS'	Tuning findings
SECTION_INFORMATION	VARCHAR2(11)	'INFORMATION'	General information
SECTION_PLANS	VARCHAR2(5)	'PLANS'	Explain plans
SECTION_SUMMARY	VARCHAR2(7)	'SUMMARY'	Summary information

Table 152–7 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Problem Type Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROBLEM_TYPE_PERFORMANCE	NUMBER	1	User suspects this is a performance problem

Table 152–7 (Cont.) DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Problem Type Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
PROBLEM_TYPE_WRONG_RESULTS	NUMBER	2	User suspects the query is giving inconsistent results
PROBLEM_TYPE_COMPILATION_ERROR	NUMBER	3	User sees a crash in compilation
PROBLEM_TYPE_EXECUTION_ERROR	NUMBER	4	User sees a crash in execution
PROBLEM_TYPE_ALT_PLAN_GEN	NUMBER	5	User to explore all alternative plans

Table 152–8 DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Findings Filter Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_ALL	NUMBER	1	Show all possible findings
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_VALIDATION	NUMBER	2	Show status of validation rules over structures
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_FEATURES	NUMBER	3	Show only features used by the query
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_FILTER_PLANS	NUMBER	4	Show the alternative plans generated by the advisor
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_CR_DIFF	NUMBER	5	Show difference between two plans
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_MASK_VARIANT	NUMBER	6	Mask info for testing
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_OBJ_FEATURES	NUMBER	7	Show features usage history
SQLDIAG_FINDINGS_BASIC_INFO	NUMBER	8	Show the alternative plans generated by the advisor

Examples

Patch Pack / Unpack

Patches can be exported out of one system and imported into another by means of a staging table, provided by subprograms in this package. Like with SQL diagnosis sets, the operation of inserting into the staging table is called a "pack", and the operation of creating patches from staging table data is termed the "unpack".

DBAs should perform a pack/unpack as follows:

1. Create a staging table owned by user 'SH' through a call to CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPATCH:

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLDIAG.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPATCH(
    table_name          =>  'STAGING_TABLE',
    schema_name         =>  'SH');
```

2. Call PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH one or more times to write SQL patch data into the staging table. In this case, copy data for all SQL patches in the DEFAULT category into a staging table owned by the current schema owner:

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLDIAG.PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH(
    staging_table_name  =>  'STAGING_TABLE');
```

3. In this case, only a single SQL patch SP_FIND_EMPLOYEE is copied into a staging table owned by the current schema owner:

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLDIAG.PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH(
    patch_name          =>  'SP_FIND_EMPLOYEE',
    staging_table_name  =>  'STAGING_TABLE');
```

   The staging table can then be moved to another system using either datapump, import/export commands or through a databaselink.

4. Call UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH to create SQL patches on the new system from the patch data in the staging table. In this case, change the name in the data for the SP_FIND_EMPLOYEE patch stored in the staging table to 'SP_FIND_EMP_PROD':

```
exec dbms_sqldiag.remap_stgtab_sqlpatch(
   old_patch_name      =>  'SP_FIND_EMPLOYEE',
   new_patch_name      =>  'SP_FIND_EMP_PROD',
```

Summary of DBMS_SQLDIAG Subprograms

Table 152–9 DBMS_SQLDIAG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH Function & Procedure on page 152-11	Accepts a recommended SQL patch as recommended by the specified SQL diagnosis task
ALTER_SQL_PATCH Procedure on page 152-13	Alters specific attributes of an existing SQL patch object
CANCEL_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure on page 152-14	Cancels a diagnostic task
CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Functions on page 152-15	Creates a diagnostic task in order to diagnose a single SQL statement
CREATE_STGTAB_ SQLPATCH Procedure on page 152-17	Creates the staging table used for transporting SQL patches from one system to another
DROP_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure on page 152-18	Drops a diagnostic task
DROP_SQL_PATCH Procedure on page 152-19	Drops the named SQL patch from the database
EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure on page 152-20	Executes a diagnostic task
EXPLAIN_SQL_TESTCASE Function on page 152-21	Explains a SQL test case
EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures on page 152-22	Exports a SQL test case to a directory
EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_ DIR_BY_INC Function on page 152-27	Generates a SQL Test Case corresponding to the incident ID passed as an argument.
EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_ DIR_BY_TXT Function on page 152-29	Generates a SQL Test Case corresponding to the SQL passed as an argument
GET_FIX_CONTROL Function on page 152-31	Returns the value of fix control for a given bug number
GET_SQL Function on page 152-32	Imports a SQL test case
IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures on page 152-33	Imports a SQL test case into a schema
INCIDENTID_2_SQL Procedure on page 152-36	Initializes a `sql_setrow` from an incident ID
INTERRUPT_DIAGNOSIS_ TASK Procedure on page 152-37	Interrupts a diagnostic task
LOAD_SQLSET_FROM_TCB Function on page 152-38	Loads a `SQLSET` from Test Case Builder (TCB) file
PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure on page 152-39	SQL patches into the staging table created by the CREATE_ STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure
REPLAY_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure on page 152-40	Reports on a diagnostic task

Table 152–9 (Cont.) DBMS_SQLDIAG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function on page 152-42	Reports on a diagnostic task
RESET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure on page 152-43	Resets a diagnostic task
RESUME_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure on page 152-44	Resumes a diagnostic task
SET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK_ PARAMETER Procedure on page 152-45	Sets a diagnosis task parameter
UNPACK_STGTAB_ SQLPATCH Procedure on page 152-46	Unpacks from the staging table populated by a call to the PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure, using the patch data stored in the staging table to create patches on this system

ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH Function & Procedure

This procedure accepts a recommended SQL patch as recommended by the specified SQL diagnosis task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH (
   task_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_id      IN  NUMBER := NULL,
   name           IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description    IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   category       IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   task_owner     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   replace        IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   force_match    IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_SQLDIAG.ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH (
   task_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_id      IN  NUMBER := NULL,
   name           IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description    IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   category       IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   task_owner     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   replace        IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   force_match    IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 152–10 ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of the SQL diagnosis task
object_id	Identifier of the advisor framework object representing the SQL statement associated to the diagnosis task
name	Name of the patch. It cannot contain double quotation marks. The name is case sensitive. If not specified, the system will generate a unique name for the SQL patch.
description	User specified string describing the purpose of this SQL patch. Maximum size of description is 500.
category	Category name which must match the value of the SQLDIAGNOSE_CATEGORY parameter in a session for the session to use this patch. It defaults to the value DEFAULT. This is also the default of the SQLDIAGNOSE_CATEGORY parameter. The category must be a valid Oracle identifier. The category name specified is always converted to upper case. The combination of the normalized SQL text and category name create a unique key for a patch. An accept will fail if this combination is duplicated.
task_owner	Owner of the diagnosis task. This is an optional parameter that has to be specified to accept a SQL Patch associated to a diagnosis task owned by another user. The current user is the default value.

Table 152–10 (Cont.) ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replace	If the patch already exists, it will be replaced if this argument is TRUE. It is an error to pass a name that is already being used for another signature/category pair, even with replace set to TRUE.
force_match	If TRUE this causes SQL Patches to target all SQL statements which have the same text after normalizing all literal values into bind variables. (Note that if a combination of literal values and bind values is used in a SQL statement, no bind transformation occurs.) This is analogous to the matching algorithm used by the FORCE option of the CURSOR_SHARING parameter. If FALSE, literals are not transformed. This is analogous to the matching algorithm used by the EXACT option of the CURSOR_SHARING parameter.

Return Values

Name of the SQL patch

Usage Notes

Requires CREATE ANY SQL PROFILE privilege

ALTER_SQL_PATCH Procedure

This procedure alters specific attributes of an existing SQL patch object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.ALTER_SQL_PATCH (
   name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   value           IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–11 ALTER_SQL_PATCH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of SQL patch to alter.
attribute_name	Name of SQL patch to alter. Possible values: ■ STATUS -> can be set to ENABLED or DISABLED ■ NAME -> can be reset to a valid name (must be a valid Oracle identifier and must be unique). ■ DESCRIPTION -> can be set to any string of size no more than 500 ■ CATEGORY -> can be reset to a valid category name (must be valid Oracle identifier and must be unique when combined with normalized SQL text) This parameter is mandatory and is case sensitive.
value	New value of the attribute. See attribute_name for valid attribute values. This parameter is mandatory.

Usage Notes

Requires ALTER ANY SQL PATCH privilege

CANCEL_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure cancels a diagnostic task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.CANCEL_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–12 CANCEL_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task

CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Functions

This function creates a diagnostic task in order to diagnose a single SQL statement. It returns a SQL diagnosis task unique name

Syntax

Prepares the diagnosis of a single statement given its text:

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    sql_text           IN   CLOB,
    bind_list          IN   sql_binds := NULL,
    user_name          IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    scope              IN   VARCHAR2  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
    time_limit         IN   NUMBER    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
    task_name          IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    description        IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    problem_type       IN   NUMBER    := PROBLEM_TYPE_PERFORMANCE)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Prepares the diagnosis of a single statement from the Cursor Cache given its identifier:

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    sql_id             IN   VARCHAR2,
    plan_hash_value    IN   NUMBER    := NULL,
    scope              IN   VARCHAR2  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
    time_limit         IN   NUMBER    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
    task_name          IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    description        IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    problem_type       IN   NUMBER    := PROBLEM_TYPE_PERFORMANCE)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Prepares the diagnosis of a Sqlset:

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    sqlset_name       IN VARCHAR2,
    basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    object_filter     IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    rank1             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    rank2             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    rank3             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    result_percentage IN NUMBER   :=  NULL,
    result_limit      IN NUMBER   :=  NULL,
    scope             IN VARCHAR2 :=  SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
    time_limit        IN NUMBER   :=  TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
    task_name         IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    description       IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    plan_filter       IN VARCHAR2 :=  'MAX_ELAPSED_TIME',
    sqlset_owner      IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
    problem_type      IN NUMBER   :=  PROBLEM_TYPE_PERFORMANCE)  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 152–13 CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_text	Text of a SQL statement
bind_list	Set of bind values

Table 152–13 (Cont.) CREATE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
user_name	Username for who the statement/sqlset will be diagnosed
scope	Diagnosis scope (limited/comprehensive)
time_limit	Maximum duration in seconds for the diagnosis session
task_name	Optional diagnosis task name
description	Maximum of 256 SQL diagnosis session description
problem_type	Determines the goal of the task. Possible values are: ■ PROBLEM_TYPE_WRONG_RESULTS ■ PROBLEM_TYPE_COMPILATION_ERROR ■ PROBLEM_TYPE_EXECUTION_ERROR
sql_id	Identifier of the statement
plan_hash_value	Hash value of the SQL execution plan
sqlset_name	Sqlset name
basic_filter	SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set (STS)
object_filter	Object filter
rank(i)	Order-by clause on the selected SQL
result_percentage	Percentage on the sum of a ranking measure
result_limit	Top L(imit) SQL from (filtered/ranked) SQL
plan_filter	Plan filter. It is applicable in case there are multiple plans (plan_hash_value). This filter allows selecting one plan (plan_hash_value) only. Possible values are: ■ LAST_GENERATED: plan with most recent timestamp ■ FIRST_GENERATED: opposite to LAST_GENERATED ■ LAST_LOADED: plan with most recent first_load_time stat info ■ FIRST_LOADED: opposite to LAST_LOADED ■ MAX_ELAPSED_TIME: plan with maximum elapsed time ■ MAX_BUFFER_GETS: plan with maximum buffer gets ■ MAX_DISK_READS: plan with maximum disk reads ■ MAX_DIRECT_WRITES: plan with maximum direct writes ■ MAX_OPTIMIZER_COST: plan with maximum optimum cost
sqlset_owner	Owner of the sqlset, or null for current schema owner

CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure

This procedure creates the staging table used for transporting SQL patches from one system to another.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPATCH (
   table_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   schema_name      IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   tablespace_name  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 152–14 CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	(Mandatory) Name of the table to create (case-sensitive)
schema_name	Schema to create the table in, or NULL for current schema (case-sensitive)
tablespace_name	Tablespace to store the staging table within, or NULL for current user's default tablespace (case-sensitive)

DROP_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure drops a diagnostic task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.DROP_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–15 DROP_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task

DROP_SQL_PATCH Procedure

This procedure drops the named SQL patch from the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.DROP_SQL_PATCH (
   name     IN  VARCHAR2,   ignore   IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 152–16 DROP_SQL_PATCH Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of patch to be dropped. The name is case sensitive.
ignore	Ignore errors due to object not existing.

Usage Notes

Requires DROP ANY SQL PATCH privilege

EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure executes a diagnostic task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–17 EXECUTE_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task

EXPLAIN_SQL_TESTCASE Function

This procedure explains a SQL test case.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXPLAIN_SQL_TESTCASE (
    sqlTestCase        IN   CLOB)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 152–18 EXPLAIN_SQL_TESTCASE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlTestCase	XML document describing the SQL test case

EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures

This procedure exports a SQL test case to a directory.

Syntax

This variant has to be provided with the SQL information.

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE (
    directory                IN              VARCHAR2,
    sql_text                 IN              CLOB,
    user_name                IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    bind_list                IN              sql_binds :=  NULL,
    exportEnvironment        IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportMetadata           IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportData               IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    exportPkgbody            IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    samplingPercent          IN              NUMBER    :=  100,
    ctrlOptions              IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    timeLimit                IN              NUMBER    :=  0,
    testcase_name            IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    testcase                 IN OUT NOCOPY   CLOB,
    preserveSchemaMapping    IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    version                  IN              VARCHAR2  :=  'COMPATIBLE');
```

This variant extracts the SQL information from an incident file.

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE (
    directory                IN              VARCHAR2,
    incident_id              IN              VARCHAR2,
    exportEnvironment        IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportMetadata           IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportData               IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    exportPkgbody            IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    samplingPercent          IN              NUMBER    :=  100,
    ctrlOptions              IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    timeLimit                IN              NUMBER    :=
                                                DBMS_SQLDIAG.TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
    testcase_name            IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    testcase                 IN OUT NOCOPY   CLOB,
    preserveSchemaMapping    IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE);
```

This variant allow the SQL Test case to be generated from a cursor present in the cursor cache. Use `V$SQL` to get the SQL identifier and the SQL hash value.

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE (
    directory                IN              VARCHAR2,
    sql_id                   IN              VARCHAR2,
    plan_hash_value          IN              NUMBER    := NULL,
    exportEnvironment        IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportMetadata           IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportData               IN              BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    exportPkgbody            IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    samplingPercent          IN              NUMBER    :=  100,
    ctrlOptions              IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    timeLimit                IN              NUMBER    :=
                                                DBMS_SQLDIAG.TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
    testcase_name            IN              VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    testcase                 IN OUT NOCOPY   CLOB,
    preserveSchemaMapping    IN              BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 152–19 EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
directory	Directory to store the various generated files
sql_text	Text of the SQL statement to export
incident_id	Incident ID containing the offending SQL
sql_id	Identifier of the statement in the cursor cache
username	Name of the user schema to use to parse the SQL, defaults to SYS
bind_list	List of bind values associated to the statement
exportEnvironment	TRUE if the compilation environment should be exported
exportMetadata	TRUE if the definition of the objects referenced in the SQL should be exported
exportData	TRUE if the data of the objects referenced in the SQL should be exported
exportPkgbody	TRUE if the body of the packages referenced in the SQL are exported
samplingPercent	If is TRUE, specify the sampling percentage to use to create the dump file

Table 152–19 (Cont.) EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ctrlOptions`	Opaque control parameters. For example, to execute three times, set `ctrlOptions` with the following string: `'<parameter name="mexec_count">3</parameter>'`. ▪ `capture` - `BASIC` (default) or `WITH_RUNTIME_INFO`. This parameter defines the mode of TCB capture. `BASIC`: runs as Oracle Release 11*g* TCB and captures all the information that is captured in that release as well as AWR reports, SQL monitor reports and parameter information. `WITH_RUNTIME_INFO`: TCB captures runtime information for the SQL, such as dynamic sampling data, list of binds, Dynamic Plan info, along with information captured under `BASIC` mode. Note this must be the same value as used in the IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures, and that if the user gives incorrect an parameter value, then the TCB runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ▪ `replay` - `EXPLAIN` (default), `OUTLINE`, `EXECUTION` or `OUTLINE EXECUTION`. This parameter defines TCB replay functionality. `EXPLAIN`: Replay explains the statement without using outlines `OUTLINE`: Replay uses outlines mode and explains the statement using outlines `EXECUTION`: Replay executes the statement without using outlines `OUTLINE EXECUTION`: Replay executes the statement using outlines Note that if the user gives an incorrect parameter value, then the `replay` runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ▪ `name=mexec_count` - Value is any positive number (`N`). This parameter tells TCB to execute the statement for `N` time and capture runtime info at end of each execution. ▪ `name=stat_history_since` - Value is date. The object statistics history is exported using this parameter. Statistics history after date specified will be exported.
`timeLimit`	How much time should we spend exporting the SQL test case
`testcaseName`	An optional name for the SQL test case. This is used to prefix all the generated scripts
`testcase`	Resulting testcase
`preserveSchemaMapping`	`TRUE` if the schema (or schemas) are not re-mapped from the original environment to the test environment

Table 152–19 (Cont.) EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
version	Version of database objects to be extracted. This option is only valid for EXPORT. Database objects or attributes incompatible with the version will not be extracted. ■ COMPATIBLE - (default) the version of the metadata corresponds to the database compatibility level and the compatibility release level for feature (as given in the V$COMPATIBILITY view). Database compatibility must be set to 9.2 or higher. ■ LATEST - the version of the metadata that specifies the current database version. ■ A specific database version. For example, if '10.0.0', this cannot be lower than Oracle Database Release 10.0.0.

Usage Notes

- A SQL test case generates a set of files needed to help reproduce a SQL failure on a different machine. It contains:
  - a dump file containing schemas objects and statistics (.dmp)
  - the explain plan for the statements (in advanced mode)
  - diagnostic information gathered on the offending statement
  - an import script to execute to reload the objects
  - a SQL script to replay system statistics of the source
  - a table of contents file describing the SQL test case
  - metadata. (xxxxmain.xml)
  - a README.txt file that explain the usage of the TCB
  - the outlines used by the statement (ol.xml)
  - a list of parameters set in the exporting db/env (prmimp.sql)
  - a SQL monitor report, if any (smrpt.html)
  - an AWR report, if any (awrrpt.html)
  - a list of binds used in this statement (bndlst.xml)
- You should not run Test Case Builder (TCB) under user SYS. Instead, use another user who can be granted the DBA role.
- The default setting for TCB is that data is not exported. However, in some cases data is required, such as to diagnose an outcome with a result that is not optimal. To export data, call EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE with exportData=>TRUE and the data will be imported by default, unless turned OFF by importData=>FALSE.
- TCB includes PL/SQL package spec by default, but not the PL/SQL package body. However, you may need to have the package body as well, for example, to invoke the PL/SQL functions, or because you have a Virtual Private Database (VPD) function defined in a package. To export a PL/SQL package body, call EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE with exportPkgbody=>TRUE. To import a PL/SQL package body, call IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures with importPkgbody=>TRUE.
- To export objects statistics history, the database compatibility should be set to 12.0 or higher.

- This procedure does not export data and statistics on a Global Temporary Table (GTT).

Examples

The user can specify multiple parameters in the ctrlOptions encapsulated either b y using the `<parameters>` parent tag or without the parent tag.

Using the <parameters> Tag

```
<parameters>
<parameter name="capture"> with_runtime_info
</parameter>
<parameter name="mexec_count"> 1
</parameter></parameters>
```

Without the <parameters> Tag

```
<parameter name="capture"> with_runtime_info
</parameter>
<parameter name="mexec_count"> 1
</parameter>'
```

EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_INC Function

This function generates a SQL Test Case corresponding to the incident ID passed as an argument. It creates a set of scripts and dump file in the directory passed as an argument.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_INC (
    incident_id        IN   NUMBER,
    directory          IN   VARCHAR2,
    exportEnvironment  IN   VARCHAR2 := 'TRUE',
    exportMetadata     IN   VARCHAR2 := 'TRUE',
    exportData         IN   VARCHAR2 := 'FALSE',
    samplingPercent    IN   VARCHAR2 := '100',
    ctrlOptions        IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 152–20 EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_INC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`incident_id`	Incident ID containing the offending SQL. For more information about Incidents, see *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide*.
`directory`	Directory path to the generated files
`exportEnvironment`	`TRUE` if the compilation environment should be exported
`exportMetadata`	`TRUE` if the definition of the objects referenced in the SQL should be exported
`exportData`	`TRUE` if the data of the objects referenced in the SQL should be exported
`samplingPercent`	If is `TRUE`, specify the sampling percentage to use to create the dump file

Table 152–20 (Cont.) EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_INC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctrlOptions	Opaque control parameters. For example, to execute three times, set ctrlOptions with the following string: '<parameter name="mexec_count">3</parameter>'. ■ capture - BASIC (default) or WITH_RUNTIME_INFO. This parameter defines the mode of TCB capture. BASIC: runs as Oracle Release 11*g* TCB and captures all the information that is captured in that release as well as AWR reports, SQL monitor reports and parameter information. WITH_RUNTIME_INFO: TCB captures runtime information for the SQL, such as dynamic sampling data, list of binds, Dynamic Plan info, along with information captured under BASIC mode. Note that if the user gives incorrect an parameter value, then the TCB runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ■ replay - EXPLAIN (default), OUTLINE, EXECUTION or OUTLINE EXECUTION. This parameter defines TCB replay functionality. EXPLAIN: Replay explains the statement without using outlines OUTLINE: Replay uses outlines mode and explains the statement using outlines EXECUTION: Replay executes the statement without using outlines OUTLINE EXECUTION: Replay executes the statement using outlines Note that if the user gives an incorrect parameter value, then the replay runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ■ name=mexec_count - Value is any positive number (N). This parameter tells TCB to execute the statement for N time and capture runtime info at end of each execution. ■ name=stat_history_since - Value is date. The object statistics history is exported using this parameter. Statistics history after date specified will be exported.

EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_TXT Function

This function generates a SQL Test Case corresponding to the SQL passed as an argument. It creates a set of scripts and dump files in the directory passed as an argument.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_TXT (
    incident_id        IN   NUMBER,
    directory          IN   VARCHAR2,
    sql_text           IN   CLOB,
    user_name          IN   VARCHAR2 := 'SYS',
    exportEnvironment  IN   VARCHAR2 := 'TRUE',
    exportMetadata     IN   VARCHAR2 := 'TRUE',
    exportData         IN   VARCHAR2 := 'FALSE',
    samplingPercent    IN   VARCHAR2 := '100',
    ctrlOptions        IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 152–21 EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_TXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
incident_id	Incident ID containing the offending SQL
directory	Directory to store the various generated files
sql_text	Text of the SQL statement to explain
username	Name of the user schema to use to parse the SQL, defaults to SYS
exportEnvironment	TRUE if the compilation environment should be exported
exportMetadata	TRUE if the definition of the objects referenced in the SQL should be exported
exportData	TRUE if the data of the objects referenced in the SQL should be exported
samplingPercent	If is TRUE, specify the sampling percentage to use to create the dump file

Table 152–21 (Cont.) EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE_DIR_BY_TXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctrlOptions	Opaque control parameters. For example, to execute three times, set ctrlOptions with the following string: '<parameter name="mexec_count">3</parameter>'. ■ capture - BASIC (default) or WITH_RUNTIME_INFO. This parameter defines the mode of TCB capture. BASIC: runs as Oracle Release 11*g* TCB and captures all the information that is captured in that release as well as AWR reports, SQL monitor reports and parameter information. WITH_RUNTIME_INFO: TCB captures runtime information for the SQL, such as dynamic sampling data, list of binds, Dynamic Plan info, along with information captured under BASIC mode. Note that if the user gives incorrect an parameter value, then the TCB runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ■ replay - EXPLAIN (default), OUTLINE, EXECUTION or OUTLINE EXECUTION. This parameter defines TCB replay functionality. EXPLAIN: Replay explains the statement without using outlines OUTLINE: Replay uses outlines mode and explains the statement using outlines EXECUTION: Replay executes the statement without using outlines OUTLINE EXECUTION: Replay executes the statement using outlines Note that if the user gives an incorrect parameter value, then the replay runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ■ name=mexec_count - Value is any positive number (N). This parameter tells TCB to execute the statement for N time and capture runtime info at end of each execution. ■ name=stat_history_since - Value is date. The object statistics history is exported using this parameter. Statistics history after date specified will be exported.

GET_FIX_CONTROL Function

This function returns the value of fix control for a given bug number.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.GET_FIX_CONTROL (
    bug_number   IN    NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 152–22 GET_FIX_CONTROL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
bug_number	Bug number

GET_SQL Function

This function loads a `sql_setrow` from the trace file associated to an the given incident ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.GET_SQL (
    incident_id  IN     VARCHAR2)
  RETURN SQLSET_ROW;
```

Parameters

Table 152–23 GET_SQL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`incident_id`	Identifier of the incident

IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures

This procedure imports a SQL test case into a schema.

Syntax

This variant requires a source directory and SQL Testcase metadata object (in XML format).

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE (
    directory                IN   VARCHAR2,
    sqlTestCase              IN   CLOB,
    importEnvironment        IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    importMetadata           IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    importData               IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    importPkgbody            IN   BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    importDiagnosis          IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    ignoreStorage            IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    ctrlOptions              IN   VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    preserveSchemaMapping    IN   BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE);
```

This variant requires a source directory name of SQL Testcase metadata file.

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE (
    directory                IN   VARCHAR2,
    filename                 IN   VARCHAR2,
    importEnvironment        IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    importMetadata           IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    importData               IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    importPkgbody            IN   BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE,
    importDiagnosis          IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    ignoreStorage            IN   BOOLEAN   :=  TRUE,
    ctrlOptions              IN   VARCHAR2  :=  NULL,
    preserveSchemaMapping    IN   BOOLEAN   :=  FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 152–24 IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
directory	Directory containing test case files
filename	Name of a file containing an XML document describing the SQL test case
importEnvironment	TRUE if the compilation environment should be imported
importMetadata	TRUE if the definition of the objects referenced in the SQL should be imported
importData	TRUE if the data of the objects referenced in the SQL should be imported
importPkgbody	TRUE if the body of the packages referenced in the SQL are imported
importDiagnosis	TRUE if the diagnostic information associated to the task should be imported
ignoreStorage	TRUE if the storage attributes should be ignored

Table 152–24 (Cont.) IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctrlOptions	Opaque control parameters, of which only capture is valid for this subprogam. ▪ capture - BASIC (default) or WITH_RUNTIME_INFO. This parameter defines the mode of TCB capture. BASIC: runs as Oracle Release 11*g* TCB and captures all the information that is captured in that release as well as AWR reports, SQL monitor reports and parameter information. WITH_RUNTIME_INFO: TCB captures runtime information for the SQL, such as dynamic sampling data, list of binds, Dynamic Plan info, along with information captured under BASIC mode. Note that if the user gives incorrect an parameter value, then the TCB runs in default mode and no error is thrown.
preserveSchemaMapping	TRUE if the schema (or schemas) are not re-mapped from the original environment to the test environment (schema mapping in the target database will be identical to the source database). Note that when an import is run with preservesSchemaMapping set to TRUE, if the objects in the schemas exists then the import will overwrite the existing objects.

Usage Notes

- A SQL test case generates a set of files needed to help reproduce a SQL failure on a different machine. It contains:
  - a dump file containing schemas objects and statistics (.dmp)
  - the explain plan for the statements (in advanced mode)
  - diagnostic information gathered on the offending statement
  - an import script to execute to reload the objects
  - a SQL script to replay system statistics of the source
  - a table of contents file describing the SQL test case
  - metadata. (xxxxmain.xml)
  - a README.txt file that explain the usage of the TCB
  - the outlines used by the statement (ol.xml)
  - a list of parameters set in the exporting db/env (prmimp.sql)
  - a SQL monitor report, if any (smrpt.html)
  - an AWR report, if any (awrrpt.html)
  - a list of binds used in this statement (bndlst.xml)
- You should not run Test Case Builder (TCB) under user SYS. Instead, use another user who can be granted the SYSDBA privilege
- The default setting for TCB is that data is not exported. However, in some cases data is required, such as to diagnose an outcome with a result that is not optimal. To export data, call EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures with exportData=>TRUE and the data will be imported by default, unless turned OFF by importData=>FALSE.

- TCB includes PL/SQL package spec by default, but not the PL/SQL package body. However, you may need to have the package body as well, for example, to invoke the PL/SQL functions, or because you have a Virtual Private Database (VPD) function defined in a package. To export a PL/SQL package body, call EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures with `exportPkgbody=>TRUE`. To import a PL/SQL package body, call `IMPORT_SQL_TESTCASE` Procedures with `importPkgbody=>TRUE`.
- The `capture` value used when invoking the EXPORT_SQL_TESTCASE Procedures must be used when calling this procedure.

INCIDENTID_2_SQL Procedure

This procedure initializes a `sql_setrow` from an incident ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.INCIDENTID_2_SQL (
    incident_id   IN     VARCHAR2,
    sql_stmt      OUT    SQLSET_ROW,
    problem_type  OUT    NUMBER,
    err_code      OUT    BINARY_INTEGER,
    err_mesg      OUT    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–25 INCIDENTID_2_SQL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`incident_id`	Identifier of the incident
`sql_stmt`	Resulting SQL
`problem_type`	Tentative type of SQL problem (currently among `PROBLEM_TYPE_COMPILATION_ERROR` and `PROBLEM_TYPE_EXECUTION_ERROR`)
`err_code`	Error code if any otherwise it is set to `NULL`
`err_msg`	Error message if any otherwise it is set to `NULL`

INTERRUPT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure interrupts a diagnostic task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.INTERRUPT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–26 INTERRUPT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task

LOAD_SQLSET_FROM_TCB Function

This function loads a SQLSET from a Test Case Builder file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.LOAD_SQLSET_FROM_TCB (
    directory        IN     VARCHAR2,
    filename         IN     VARCHAR2,
    sqlset_name      IN     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 152–27 LOAD_SQLSET_FROM_TCB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
directory	Name of directory
filename	Name of file
sqlset_name	Name of SQLSET

PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure

This procedure packs SQL patches into the staging table created by a call to the CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.UPPACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH (
   patch_name            IN  VARCHAR2 := '%',
   patch_category        IN  VARCHAR2 := 'DEFAULT',
   staging_table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 152–28 UPPACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
patch_name	Name of patch to pack (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
patch_category	Category to which to pack patches (% wildcards acceptable, case-insensitive)
staging_table_name	(Mandatory) Name of the table to use (case-sensitive)
staging_schema_owner	Schema where the table resides, or NULL for current schema (case-sensitive)

Usage Notes

- Requires: ADMINISTER SQL PLAN MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege and INSERT privilege on the staging table
- By default, we move all SQL patches in category DEFAULT. See the Examples on page 152-8 for details. Note that the subprogram issues a COMMIT after packing each SQL patch, so if an error is raised in mid-execution, some patches may be in the staging table.

REPLAY_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure

This procedure automates the reproduction of the SQL Test Case.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.REPLAY_SQL_TESTCASE (
   directory       IN  VARCHAR2,
   filename        IN  VARCHAR2,
   ctrlOptions     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   format          IN   VARCHAR2  := 'TEXT');

DBMS_SQLDIAG.REPLAY_SQL_TESTCASE (
   directory       IN   VARCHAR2,
   sqlTestCase     IN   CLOB,
   ctrlOptions     IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   format          IN   VARCHAR2  := 'TEXT');
```

Parameters

Table 152–29 REPLAY_SQL_TESTCASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`directory`	Directory containing test case files
`filename`	Name of a file containing an XML document describing the SQL test case
`ctrlOptions`	Opaque control parameters. For example, to execute three times, set `ctrlOptions` with the following string: `'<parameter name="mexec_count">3</parameter>'`. ■ `replay` - `EXPLAIN` (default), `OUTLINE`, `EXECUTION` or `OUTLINE EXECUTION`. This parameter defines TCB replay functionality. `EXPLAIN`: Replay explains the statement without using outlines `OUTLINE`: Replay uses outlines mode and explains the statement using outlines `EXECUTION`: Replay executes the statement without using outlines `OUTLINE EXECUTION`: Replay executes the statement using outlines Note that if the user gives an incorrect parameter value, then the `replay` runs in default mode and no error is thrown. ■ `name=mexec_count` - Value is any positive number (`N`). This parameter tells TCB to execute the statement for `N` time and capture runtime info at end of each execution.
`sqlTestCase`	SQL test case
`format`	Format of the replay report. Possible formats are: `TEXT`, `XML` and `HTML`..

Examples

```
TCB Replay Mode: Execute
 SELECT /* tcbdynpl_1 */ /*+ gather_plan_statistics */ * FROM (SELECT * FROM emp
where emp.sal > 100) emp, dept WHERE emp.deptno = dept.deptno And emp.sal > 1000
```

```
/* tcbdynpl_1 */

Explain Plan
 Plan Hash Value  : 2219294842

-------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation                     | Name           | Rows |
-------------------------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT              |                |   13 |
| * 1 |   HASH JOIN                   |                |   13 |
|   2 |    NESTED LOOPS               |                |      |
|   3 |     NESTED LOOPS              |                |   13 |
|   4 |      STATISTICS COLLECTOR     |                |      |
|   5 |       TABLE ACCESS FULL       | DEPT           |    4 |
| * 6 |      INDEX RANGE SCAN         | EMP_IDX_DEPTNO |      |
| * 7 |     TABLE ACCESS BY INDEX ROWID | EMP          |    3 |
| * 8 |    TABLE ACCESS FULL          | EMP            |   13 |
-------------------------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------
* 1 - access("EMP"."DEPTNO"="DEPT"."DEPTNO")
* 6 - access("EMP"."DEPTNO"="DEPT"."DEPTNO")
* 7 - filter("EMP"."SAL">1000)
* 8 - filter("EMP"."SAL">1000)

Runtime Plan
 Plan Hash Value  : 2219294842

-----------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation           | Name | E-Card | A-Card |
-----------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT    |      |        |      0 |
| * 1 |   HASH JOIN         |      |     13 |      0 |
|   2 |    TABLE ACCESS FULL | DEPT |      4 |      0 |
| * 3 |    TABLE ACCESS FULL | EMP  |     13 |      0 |
-----------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------
* 1 - access("EMP"."DEPTNO"="DEPT"."DEPTNO")
* 3 - filter("EMP"."SAL">1000)

REPLAY Note:
-----------
- Replay used dynamic sampling
- Replay forced Dynamic plan
```

REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function

This function reports on a diagnostic task. It returns a CLOB containing the desired report.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname           IN   VARCHAR2,
    type               IN   VARCHAR2  := TYPE_TEXT,
    level              IN   VARCHAR2  := LEVEL_TYPICAL,
    section            IN   VARCHAR2  := SECTION_ALL,
    object_id          IN   NUMBER    := NULL,
    result_limit       IN   NUMBER    := NULL,
    owner_name         IN   VARCHAR2  := NULL)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 152–30 REPORT_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task to report
type	Type of the report. Possible values are: TEXT, HTML, XML (see Table 152–4, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Type (possible values) Constants").
level	Format of the recommendations. Possible values are TYPICAL, BASIC, ALL (Table 152–5, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Level (possible values) Constants").
section	Particular section in the report. Possible values are: SUMMARY, FINDINGS, PLAN, INFORMATION, ERROR, ALL (Table 152–6, " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Report Section (possible values) Constants").
object_id	Identifier of the advisor framework object that represents a given statement in a SQL Tuning Set (STS).
result_limit	Number of statements in a STS for which the report is generated
owner_name	Name of the task execution to use. If NULL, the report will be generated for the last task execution.

RESET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure resets a diagnostic task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.RESET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–31 RESET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task

RESUME_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure resumes a diagnostic path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.RESUME_DIAGNOSIS_TASK (
    taskname        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 152–32 RESUME_DIAGNOSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Name of task

SET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure is called to update the value of a SQL diagnosis parameter of type VARCHAR2. The task must be set to its initial state before calling this procedure. The diagnosis parameters that can be set by this procedure are:

- MODE: diag scope (comprehensive, limited)
- _SQLDIAG_FINDING_MODE: findings in the report (see " DBMS_SQLDIAG Constants - Findings Filter Constants" on page 152-7 for possible values)

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.SET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK_PARAMETER (
    taskname           IN   VARCHAR2,
    parameter          IN   VARCHAR2,    value             IN   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 152–33 SET_DIAGNOSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
taskname	Identifier of the task to execute
parameter	Name of the parameter to set
value	New value of the specified parameter

UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure

This procedure unpacks from the staging table populated by a call to the PACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure. It uses the patch data stored in the staging table to create patches on this system. Users can opt to replace existing patches with patch data when they exist already. In this case, note that it is only possible to replace patches referring to the same statement if the names are the same (see the ACCEPT_SQL_PATCH Function & Procedure).

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLDIAG.UPPACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH (
   patch_name            IN  VARCHAR2 := '%',
   patch_category        IN  VARCHAR2 := '%',
   replace               IN  BOOLEAN,
   staging_table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 152–34 UPPACK_STGTAB_SQLPATCH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
patch_name	Name of patch to unpack (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
patch_category	Category from which to unpack patches (% wildcards acceptable, case-insensitive)
replace	Replace patches if they already exist. Note that patches cannot be replaced if there is one in the staging table with the same name as an active patch on different SQL. The subprogram raises an error if there an attempt to create a patch that already exists.
staging_table_name	(Mandatory) Name of the table to use (case-sensitive)
staging_schema_owner	Schema where the table resides, or NULL for current schema (case-sensitive)

Usage Notes

- Requires: ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege and SELECT or READ privilege on the staging table
- By default, all SQL patches in the staging table are moved. The function commits after successfully loading each patch. If it fails in creating an individual patch, it raises an error and does not proceed to those remaining in the staging table.

153

DBMS_SQLPA

The DBMS_SQLPA package provides the interface to implement the SQL Performance Analyzer.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SQLPA

Overview

The DBMS_SQLPA package provides a capacity to help users predict the impact of system environment changes on the performance of a SQL workload. The interface lets users build and then compare two different versions of the workload performance, analyze the differences between the two versions, and unmask the SQL statements that might be impacted by the changes.

The package provides a task-oriented interface to implement the SQL Performance Analyzer. For example

1. You use the CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK Functions to create an analysis task for a single statement or a group of SQL statements.s
2. The EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure executes a previously created analysis task.
3. The REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function displays the results of an analysis task.

Security Model

This package is available to PUBLIC and performs its own security checking. All analysis task interfaces (XXX_ANALYSIS_TASK) require privilege ADVISOR.

Summary of DBMS_SQLPA Subprograms

Table 153–1 DBMS_SQLPA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CANCEL_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure on page 153-6	Cancels the currently executing task analysis of one or more SQL statements
CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK Functions on page 153-7	Creates an advisor task to process and analyze one or more SQL statements
DROP_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure on page 153-10	Drops a SQL analysis task
EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure on page 153-11	Executes a previously created analysis task
INTERRUPT_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure on page 153-14	Interrupts the currently executing analysis task
REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function on page 153-15	Displays the results of an analysis task
RESET_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure on page 153-17	Resets the currently executing analysis task to its initial state
RESUME_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure on page 153-18	Resumes a previously interrupted analysis task that was created to process a SQL tuning set.
SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures on page 153-19	Sets the SQL analysis task parameter value
SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_ PARAMETER Procedures on page 153-22	Sets the SQL analysis task parameter default value

CANCEL_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure cancels the currently executing analysis task. All intermediate result data is removed from the task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.CANCEL_ANALYSIS_TASK(
 task_name         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 153–2 CANCEL_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task to cancel

Examples

Canceling a task when there is a need to stop it executing and it is not required to view any already-completed results:

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.CANCEL_ANALYSIS_TASK(:my_task);
```

CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK Functions

These functions create an advisor task to process and analyze one or more SQL statements. You can use different forms of this function to:

- Create an analysis task for a single statement given its text.
- Create an analysis task for a single statement from the cursor cache given its identifier.
- Create an analysis task for a single statement from the workload repository given a range of snapshot identifiers.
- Create an analysis task for a SQL tuning set.

In all cases, the function creates an advisor task and sets its parameters.

Syntax

SQL text format. This form of the function is called to prepare the analysis of a single statement given its text.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
  sql_text          IN CLOB,
  bind_list         IN sql_binds := NULL,
  parsing_schema    IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SQL ID format. This form of the function is called to prepare the analysis of a single statement from the cursor cache given its identifier.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
  sql_id            IN VARCHAR2,
  plan_hash_value   IN NUMBER    := NULL,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Workload Repository format. This form of the function is called to prepare the analysis of a single statement from the workload repository given a range of snapshot identifiers.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
  begin_snap        IN NUMBER,
  end_snap          IN NUMBER,
  sql_id            IN VARCHAR2,
  plan_hash_value   IN NUMBER    := NULL,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SQLSET format. This form of the function is called to prepare the analysis of a SQL tuning set.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
  sqlset_name        IN VARCHAR2,
  basic_filter       IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  order_by           IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  top_sql            IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  task_name          IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
```

```
  description       IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL
  sqlset_owner      IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 153–3 CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_text	Text of a SQL statement
bind_list	A set of bind values
parsing_schema	Name of the schema where the statement can be compiled
task_name	Optional analysis task name
description	Description of the SQL analysis task to a maximum of 256 characters
sql_id	Identifier of a SQL statement
plan_hash_value	Hash value of the SQL execution plan
begin_snap	Begin snapshot identifier
end_snap	End snapshot identifier
sqlset_name	SQL tuning set name
basic_filter	SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set
order_by	Order-by clause on the selected SQL
top_sql	Top N SQL after filtering and ranking
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set, or NULL for the current schema owner

Return Values

A SQL analysis task name that is unique by user (two different users can give the same name to their advisor tasks).

Examples

```
variable stmt_task VARCHAR2(64);
variable sts_task  VARCHAR2(64);

-- Sql text format
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
     sql_text => 'select quantity_sold from sales s, times t where s.time_id =
t.time_id and s.time_id = TO_DATE(''24-NOV-00'')');

-- Sql id format (cursor cache)
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
    sql_id       => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24');

-- Workload repository format
exec :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
    begin_snap  => 1,
    end_snap    => 2,
    sql_id      => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24');

-- Sql tuning set format (first we need to load an STS, then analyze it)
```

```
EXEC :sts_task := DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK( -
  sqlset_name    =>   'my_workload', -
  order_by       =>   'BUFFER_GETS', -
  description    =>   'process workload ordered by buffer gets');
```

DROP_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure drops a SQL analysis task.The task and all its result data are deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.DROP_ANALYSIS_TASK(
 task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 153–4 DROP_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the analysis task to drop

EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure

This function and procedure executes a previously created analysis task, the function version returning the new execution name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   execution_type    IN VARCHAR2               := 'test execute',
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList   := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   execution_type    IN VARCHAR2               := 'test execute',
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList   := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 153–5 EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of the task to execute
execution_type	Type of the action to perform by the function. If NULL it will default to the value of the DEFAULT_EXECUTION_TYPE parameter. Possible values are: ■ [TEST] EXECUTE - test-execute every SQL statement and collect its execution plans and execution statistics. The resulting plans and statistics will be stored in the advisor framework. This is default. ■ EXPLAIN PLAN - generate explain plan for every statement in the SQL workload. This is similar to the EXPLAIN PLAN command. The resulting plans will be stored in the advisor framework in association with the task. ■ COMPARE [PERFORMANCE] - analyze and compare two versions of SQL performance data. The performance data is generated by test-executing or generating explain plan of the SQL statements. Use this option when two executions of type EXPLAIN_PLAN or TEST_EXECUTE already exist in the task ■ CONVERT SQLSET - used to read the statistics captured in a SQL Tuning Set and model them as a task execution. This can be used when you wish to avoid executing the SQL statements because valid data for the experiment already exists in the SQL Tuning Set.
execution_name	A name to qualify and identify an execution. If not specified, it will be generated by the advisor and returned by function.
execution_params	List of parameters (name, value) for the specified execution. The execution parameters have effect only on the execution for which they are specified. They will override the values for the parameters stored in the task (set through the SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_PARAMETER Procedures).

Table 153–5 (Cont.) EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
execution_desc	A 256-length string describing the execution

Usage Notes

SQL performance analyzer task can be executed multiples times without having to reset it. For example, when a task is created to perform a change impact analysis on a SQL workload, the created task has to be executed before making any change in the system environment to build a version of the workload that will be used as a reference for performance analysis. Once the change has been made, a second execution is required to build the post-change version of the workload. Finally, the task has to be executed a third time to let the advisor analyze and compare the performance of the workload in both versions.

Examples

1. Create a task with a purpose of change impact analysis

```
EXEC :tname := DBMS_SQLPA.CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
    sqlset_name     => 'my_sts');
```

2. Make baseline or the before change execution

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
    task_name       => :tname,
    execution_type  => 'test execute',
    execution_name  => 'before_change');
```

3. Make change

```
...
```

4. Make the after change version of the workload performance

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name          => :tname, -
   execution_type     => 'test execute',
   execution_name     => 'after_change')
```

5. Compare the two versions of the workload

By default we always compare the results of the two last executions. The SQL Performance Analyzer uses the `elapsed_time` as a default metric for comparison. Here we are changing it to `buffer_gets` instead.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER(
   :tname,'comparison_metric', 'buffer_gets');
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name         => :tname, -
   execution_type    => 'compare performance', -
   execution_name    => 'after_change');
```

Use the following call if you would like to explicitly specify the two executions to compare as well as the comparison metric to use.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name        => :tname, -
   execution_type   => 'compare performance',
   execution_params => dbms_advisor.arglist(
```

```
'execution_name1',
'before_change',
'execution_name2',
'after_change',
'comparison_metric',
'buffer_gets'));
```

INTERRUPT_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure interrupts the currently executing analysis task. All intermediate result data will not be removed from the task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.INTERRUPT_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 153–6 INTERRUPT_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of the analysis task to interrupt

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.INTERRUPT_ANALYSIS_TASK(:my_task);
```

REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function

This procedure displays the results of an analysis task.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK(
   task_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   type            IN   VARCHAR2   := 'TEXT',
   level           IN   VARCHAR2   := 'TYPICAL',
   section         IN   VARCHAR2   := 'SUMMARY',
   object_id       IN   NUMBER     := NULL,
   top_sql         IN   NUMBER     := 100,
   execution_name  IN   VARCHAR2   := NULL,
   task_owner      IN   VARCHAR2   := NULL,
   order_by        IN   VARCHAR2   := NULL)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 153–7 REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task to report
type	Type of the report to produce. Possible values are TEXT (default), HTML, XML and ACTIVE (see Usage Notes).
level	Level of detail in the report: ■ ALL - details of all SQL ■ BASIC - currently the same as typical ■ CHANGED - only SQL with changed performance ■ CHANGED_PLANS - only SQL with plan changes ■ ERRORS - SQL with errors only ■ IMPROVED - only improved SQL ■ REGRESSED - only regressed SQL ■ TIMEOUT - only SQL which timed-out during execution ■ TYPICAL (default) - show information about every statement analyzed, including changing and errors ■ UNCHANGED - only SQL with unchanged performance ■ UNCHANGED_PLANS - only SQL with unchanged plans ■ UNSUPPORTED - only SQL not supported by SPAs
section	Optionally limit the report to a single section (ALL for all sections): ■ SUMMARY (default) - workload summary only ■ ALL - summary and details on SQL
object_id	Identifier of the advisor framework object that represents a given SQL in a tuning set (STS)
top_sql	Number of SQL statements in a STS for which the report is generated
execution_name	Name of the task execution to use. If NULL, the report will be generated for the last task execution.

Table 153–7 (Cont.) REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_owner	Owner of the relevant analysis task. Defaults to the current schema owner.
order_by	How to sort SQL statements in the report (summary and body). Possible values: ■ CHANGE_DIFF - sort SQL statements by change difference in SQL performance in terms of the comparison Metric ■ NULL (default) - order SQL statement by impact on workload ■ SQL_IMPACT - order SQL statement by change impact on SQL ■ WORKLOAD_IMPACT - same as NULL ■ METRIC_DELTA - same as CHANGE_DIFF

Return Values

A CLOB containing the desired report.

Usage Notes

ACTIVE reports have a rich, interactive user interface similar to Enterprise Manager while not requiring any EM installation. The report file built is in HTML format so it can be interpreted by most modern browsers. The code powering the active report is downloaded transparently by the web browser when the report is first viewed, hence viewing it requires outside connectivity.

Examples

```
-- Get the whole report for the single statement case.
SELECT DBMS_SQLPA.REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK(:stmt_task) from dual;

-- Show me the summary for the sts case.
SELECT DBMS_SQLPA.REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK(:sts_task, 'TEXT', 'TYPICAL', 'SUMMARY')
FROM DUAL;

-- Show me the findings for the statement I'm interested in.
SELECT DBMS_SQLPA.REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK(:sts_task, 'TEXT', 'TYPICAL', 'ALL', 5)
from dual;
```

RESET_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure is called on an analysis task that is not currently executing to prepare it for re-execution. All intermediate result data will be deleted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.RESET_ANALYSIS_TASK(
 task_name         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 153–8 RESET_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of the analysis task to reset

Examples

```
-- reset and re-execute a task
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.RESET_ANALYSIS_TASK(:sts_task);

-- re-execute the task
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK(:sts_task);
```

RESUME_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure

This procedure resumes a previously interrupted or FAILED (with a fatal error) task execution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLPA.RESUME_ANALYSIS_TASK(
 task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
 basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 153–9 RESUME_ANALYSIS_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of the analysis task to resume
basic_filter	A SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set. Note that this filter will be applied in conjunction with the basic filter (parameter basic_filter) that was specified when calling the CREATE_ANALYSIS_TASK Functions.

Usage Notes

Resuming a single SQL analysis task (a task that was created to analyze a single SQL statement as compared to a SQL Tuning Set) is not supported.

Examples

```
-- Interrupt the task
EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.INTERRUPT_ANALYSIS_TASK(:conc_task);

-- Once a task is interrupted, we can elect to reset it, resume it, or check
-- out its results and then decide.  For this example we will just resume.

EXEC DBMS_SQLPA.RESUME_ANALYSIS_TASK(:conc_task);
```

SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures

This procedure sets the SQL analysis task parameter value.

Syntax

This form of the procedure updates the value of a SQL analysis parameter of type VARCHAR2.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER(
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
  parameter         IN VARCHAR2,
  value             IN VARCHAR2);
```

This form of the procedure updates the value of a SQL analysis parameter of type NUMBER.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER(
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
  parameter         IN VARCHAR2,
  value             IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 153–10 SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Identifier of the task to execute
parameter	Name of the parameter to set. The possible analysis parameters that can be set by this procedure are: ■ APPLY_CAPTURED_COMPILENV: indicates whether the advisor could use the compilation environment captured with the SQL statements. The default is 0 (that is, NO). ■ BASIC_FILTER: basic filter for SQL tuning set ■ CELL_SIMULATION_ENABLED: for more details, see the helper script tcellsim.sql in the ADMIN directory. ■ COMPARISON_METRIC: specify an expression of execution statistics to use in performance comparison (Example: buffer_gets, cpu_time + buffer_gets * 10) ■ DATABASE_LINK: can be set to the global name of a PUBLIC database link. When it is set, SQL Performance Analyzer will use the database link for all TEST EXECUTE and EXPLAIN PLAN operations by sending the SQL statements to the remote database to be processed remotely. The analysis results will still be stored on the local database. ■ DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the task is deleted ■ DEFAULT_EXECUTION_TYPE: the task will default to this type of execution when none is specified by the EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure.

Table 153–10 (Cont.) SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`parameter` (contd.)	■ `DISABLE_MULTI_EXEC`: SQL statements are executed multiple times and runtime statistics are then averaged. Set this parameter to `'TRUE'` to disable this capability. In this case, each SQL in the SQL tuning set is executed only once. ■ `EXECUTION_DAYS_TO_EXPIRE`: number of days until the tasks's executions will be deleted (without deleting the task) ■ `EXECUTE_FULLDML`: `TRUE` to execute DML statement fully, including acquiring row locks and modifying rows; `FALSE` (default) to execute only the query part of the DML without modifying data. When `TRUE`, SQL Performance Analyzer will issue a rollback following DML execution to prevent persistent changes from being made by the DML. ■ `EXECUTION_NAME1`: name of the first task execution to analyze ■ `EXECUTION_NAME2`: name of the second task execution to analyze ■ `LOCAL_TIME_LIMIT`: per-statement time out (seconds) ■ `METRIC_DELTA_THRESHOLD`: threshold of the difference between the SQL performance metric before and after the change. The default value is zero. ■ `PLAN_FILTER`: plan filter for SQL tuning set (see `SELECT_SQLSET` for possible values) ■ `PLAN_LINES_COMPARISON`: - `ALWAYS` --line by line comparison of plans in all scenarios. - `AUTO` -Line by Line comparison of plans only if `phv2` is not available and `phv1` is different - `NONE` (default) - line by line comparison of plans only if `phv` is unknown ■ `RANK_MEASURE1`: first ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ `RANK_MEASURE2`: second possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ `RANK_MEASURE3`: third possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ `RESUME_FILTER`: a extra filter for SQL tuning sets besides `BASIC_FILTER` ■ `SQL_IMPACT_THRESHOLD`: threshold of a change impact on a SQL statement. Same as the previous parameter, but at the level of the SQL statement. ■ `SQL_LIMIT`: maximum number of SQL statements to process ■ `SQL_PERCENTAGE`: percentage filter of SQL tuning set statements ■ `SQLSET_NAME`: name of the SQL tuning set to associate to the specified task or task execution. This parameter is mainly using in comparing two SQL tuning sets using SPA. ■ `SQLSET_OWNER`: owner of the SQL tuning set specified using task parameter `SQLSET_NAME`. ■ `TIME_LIMIT`: global time out (seconds)

Table 153–10 (Cont.) SET_ANALYSIS_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`parameter` (contd.)	▪ `WORKLOAD_IMPACT_THRESHOLD`: threshold of a SQL statement impact on a workload. Statements which workload change impact is below the absolute value of this threshold will be ignored and not considered for improvement or regression. ▪ `CON_DBID_MAPPING`: provide a mapping of multitenant container database (CDB) IDs. When it is set, SQL Performance Analyzer uses the new CDB ID when it finds a match for the old CDB ID and executes the SQL in that container.
`value`	New value of the specified parameter

SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_PARAMETER Procedures

This procedure sets the SQL analysis task parameter default value.

Syntax

This form of the procedure updates the default value of an analyzer parameter of type VARCHAR2.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_PARAMETER(
   parameter    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value        IN  VARCHAR2);
```

This form of the procedure updates the default value of an analyzer parameter of type NUMBER.

```
DBMS_SQLPA.SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_PARAMETER(
   parameter    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value        IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 153–11 SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter	Name of the parameter to set. The possible analysis parameters that can be set by this procedure are: ■ APPLY_CAPTURED_COMPILENV: indicates whether the advisor could use the compilation environment captured with the SQL statements. The default is 0 (that is, NO). ■ BASIC_FILTER: basic filter for SQL tuning set ■ COMPARISON_METRIC: specify an expression of execution statistics to use in performance comparison (Example: buffer_gets, cpu_time + buffer_gets * 10) ■ DATABASE_LINK: can be set to the global name of a PUBLIC database link. When it is set, SQL Performance Analyzer will use the database link for all TEST EXECUTE and EXPLAIN PLAN operations by sending the SQL statements to the remote database to be processed remotely. The analysis results will still be stored on the local database. ■ DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the task is deleted ■ DEFAULT_EXECUTION_TYPE: the task will default to this type of execution when none is specified by the EXECUTE_ANALYSIS_TASK Function & Procedure. ■ EXECUTE_FULLDML: TRUE to execute DML statement fully, including acquiring row locks and modifying rows; FALSE (default) to execute only the query part of the DML without modifying data. When TRUE, SQL Performance Analyzer will issue a rollback following DML execution to prevent persistent changes from being made by the DML. ■ EXECUTION_DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the tasks's executions will be deleted (without deleting the task) ■ EXECUTION_NAME1: name of the first task execution to analyze ■ EXECUTION_NAME2: name of the second task execution to analyze ■ LOCAL_TIME_LIMIT: per-statement time out (seconds)

Table 153–11 (Cont.) SET_ANALYSIS_DEFAULT_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter (contd.)	■ PLAN_FILTER: plan filter for SQL tuning set (see SELECT_SQLSET for possible values) ■ RANK_MEASURE1: first ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RANK_MEASURE2: second possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RANK_MEASURE3: third possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RESUME_FILTER: a extra filter for SQL tuning sets besides BASIC_FILTER ■ SQL_IMPACT_THRESHOLD: threshold of a change impact on a SQL statement. Same as the previous parameter, but at the level of the SQL statement. ■ SQL_LIMIT: maximum number of SQL statements to process ■ SQL_PERCENTAGE: percentage filter of SQL tuning set statements ■ TIME_LIMIT: global time out (seconds) ■ WORKLOAD_IMPACT_THRESHOLD: threshold of a SQL statement impact on a workload. Statements which workload change impact is below the absolute value of this threshold will be ignored and not considered for improvement or regression.
value	New value of the specified parameter

154

DBMS_SQLTUNE

The DBMS_SQLTUNE package is the interface for tuning SQL on demand. The related package DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE package provides the interface for SQL Tuning Advisor run as an automated task.

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SQLTUNE

Overview

The DBMS_SQLTUNE package provides a number of interrelated areas of functionality:

- SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms
- SQL Profile Subprograms
- SQL Tuning Set Subprograms

SQL Tuning Advisor

SQL Tuning Advisor is one of a suite of advisors, a set of expert systems that identifies and helps resolve database performance problems. Specifically, SQL Tuning Advisor automates tuning of problematic SQL statements. It takes one or more SQL statements as input and gives precise advice on how to tune the statements. The advisor provides the advice in the form of SQL actions for tuning the SQL along with their expected performance benefit.

The group of SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms provide a task-oriented interface that enables you to access the advisor. You can call the following subprograms in the order given to use some of SQL Tuning Advisor's features:

1. CREATE_TUNING_TASK Functions creates a tuning task for tuning one or more SQL statements.
2. The EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function and Procedure executes a previously created tuning task.
3. The REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function displays the results of a tuning task.
4. You use the SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK Function to create a SQL*PLUS script which can then be executed to implement a set of Advisor recommendations

SQL Profile Subprograms

SQL Tuning Advisor may recommend the creation of a SQL profile to improve the performance of a statement. SQL profiles consist of auxiliary statistics specific to the statement. The query optimizer makes estimates about cardinality, selectivity, and cost that can sometimes be off by a significant amount, resulting in poor execution plans. The SQL profile addresses this problem by collecting additional information using sampling and partial execution techniques to adjust these estimates.

The group of SQL Profile Subprograms provides a mechanism for delivering statistics to the optimizer that targets one particular SQL statement, and helps the optimizer make good decisions for that statement by giving it the most accurate statistical information possible. For example:

- You can use the ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE Procedure and Function to accept a SQL profile recommended by SQL Tuning Advisor.
- You can alter the STATUS, NAME, DESCRIPTION, and CATEGORY attributes of an existing SQL profile with the ALTER_SQL_PROFILE Procedure.
- You can drop a SQL profile with the DROP_SQL_PROFILE Procedure.

SQL Tuning Sets

SQL Tuning Advisor input can be a single SQL statement or a set of statements. When tuning multiple statements in one advisor task, you give the input in the form of a SQL tuning set (STS). A SQL tuning set is a database object that stores SQL statements along with their execution context in a system-provided schema. SQL tuning sets

provide an infrastructure for dealing with SQL workloads and simplify tuning of a large number of SQL statements.

SQL tuning sets store SQL statements along with

- The execution context, such as the parsing schema name and bind values
- Execution statistics such as average elapsed time and execution count
- Execution plans - which are the sequence of operations Oracle performs to run SQL statements
- Row source statistics such as the number of rows processed for each operation executed within the plan

SQL tuning sets can be created by filtering or ranking SQL statements from several sources:

- The shared SQL area using the SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE Function
- Top SQL statements from the Automatic Workload Repository using the SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Function
- Other SQL tuning sets using the SELECT_SQLSET Function
- SQL Performance Analyzer task comparison results using the SELECT_SQLPA_TASK Function
- SQL Trace files using the SELECT_SQL_TRACE Function
- A user-defined workload

The complete group of SQL Tuning Set Subprograms facilitates this functionality. As examples:

- The CREATE_SQLSET Procedure and Function creates a SQL tuning set object in the database.
- The LOAD_SQLSET Procedure populates the SQL tuning set with a set of selected SQL.
- The CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET Procedure collects SQL statements from the shared SQL area over a specified time interval, attempting to build a realistic picture of database workload.

Import/Export SQL Tuning Sets and SQL Profiles

Use `DBMS_SQLTUNE` subprograms to move SQL profiles and SQL tuning sets from one system to another using a common programmatic model. In both cases, you create a staging table on the source database and populate this staging table with the relevant data. You then move that staging table to the destination system following the method of your choice (such as Oracle Data Pump, or a database link), where it is used to reconstitute the objects in their original form. The following steps are implemented by means of subprograms included in this package:

1. To create the staging table on the source system, call the CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure or the CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure.
2. To populate the staging table with information from the source system, call the PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure or PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure.
3. Move the staging table to the destination system.
4. To re-create the object on the new system, call the UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure or the UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure.

See Also: *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information about programmatic flow

Automatic Tuning Task Functions

The automated system task `SYS_AUTO_SQL_TUNING_TASK` is created by the database as part of the catalog scripts. This task automatically chooses a set of high-load SQL from AWR and runs SQL Tuning Advisor on this SQL. The automated task performs the same comprehensive analysis as any other SQL Tuning task.

You can obtain a report on the activity of the Automatic SQL Tuning task through the `DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK` API. See the `DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE` package for the list of subprograms that you can use to manage the automated SQL tuning task.

See Also: Using DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE

Real-Time SQL Monitoring

Real-time SQL Monitoring enables DBAs or performance analysts to monitor the execution of long-running SQL statements while they are executing. Both cursor statistics (such as CPU times and IO times) and execution plan statistics (such as number of output rows, memory and temp space used) are updated in almost real time during statement execution. The `V$SQL_MONITOR` and `V$SQL_PLAN_MONITOR` views expose these statistics. In addition, `DBMS_SQLTUNE` provides the `REPORT_SQL_MONITOR` and `REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST` functions to report monitoring information.

Note: `DBMS_SQL_MONITOR` also contains the `REPORT_SQL_MONITOR` and `REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST` functions.

Security Model

This package is available to PUBLIC and performs its own security checking:

- As SQL Tuning Advisor relies on the advisor framework, all tuning task interfaces (XXX_TUNING_TASK) require privilege ADVISOR.
- SQL tuning set subprograms (XXX_SQLSET) require either the ADMINISTER SQL TUNING SET or the ADMINISTER ANY SQL TUNING SET privilege. Users having the ADMINISTER SQL TUNING SET privilege can only create and modify a SQL tuning set they own, while the ADMINISTER ANY SQL TUNING SET privilege allows them to operate upon all SQL tuning sets, even those owned by other users. For example, using the CREATE_SQLSET Procedure and Function you can create a SQL tuning set to be owned by another user. In this case, the user need not necessarily have the ADMINISTER SQL TUNING SET privilege to operate upon her tuning set.
- Previously, three different privileges were needed to invoke subprograms concerned with SQL profiles:
  - CREATE ANY SQL PROFILE
  - ALTER ANY SQL PROFILE
  - DROP ANY SQL PROFILE

  These have now been deprecated in favor of ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT

Data Structures

The DBMS_SQLTUNE package defines the following OBJECT type

Object Types

- SQLSET_ROW Object Type

SQLSET_ROW Object Type

The SQLSET_ROW object models the content of a SQL tuning set for the user. Logically, a SQL tuning set is a collection of SQLSET_ROWs where each SQLSET_ROW contains a single SQL statement along with its execution context, statistics, binds, and plan. The SELECT_XXX subprograms each model a data source as a collection of SQLSET_ROWs, unique by (sql_id, plan_hash_value). Similarly, the LOAD_SQLSET procedure takes as input a cursor whose row type is SQLSET_ROW, treating each SQLSET_ROW in isolation according to the policies requested by the user.

Several subprograms in the DBMS_SQLTUNE package accept basic filters on the content of a SQL tuning set or data source. These filters are expressed in terms of the attributes within the SQLSET_ROW as defined.

Syntax

```
CREATE TYPE sqlset_row AS object (
  sql_id                   VARCHAR(13),
  force_matching_signature NUMBER,
  sql_text                 CLOB,
  object_list              sql_objects,
  bind_data                RAW(2000),
  parsing_schema_name      VARCHAR2(30),
  module                   VARCHAR2(48),
  action                   VARCHAR2(32),
  elapsed_time             NUMBER,
  cpu_time                 NUMBER,
  buffer_gets              NUMBER,
  disk_reads               NUMBER,
  direct_writes            NUMBER,
  rows_processed           NUMBER,
  fetches                  NUMBER,
  executions               NUMBER,
  end_of_fetch_count       NUMBER,
  optimizer_cost           NUMBER,
  optimizer_env            RAW(2000),
  priority                 NUMBER,
  command_type             NUMBER,
  first_load_time          VARCHAR2(19),
  stat_period              NUMBER,
  active_stat_period       NUMBER,
  other                    CLOB,
  plan_hash_value          NUMBER,
  sql_plan                 sql_plan_table_type,
  bind_list                sql_binds)
```

Attributes

Table 154–1 SQLSET_ROW Attributes

Attribute	Description
sql_id	Unique SQL ID
forcing_matching_signature	Signature with literals, case, and whitespace removed
sql_text	Full text for the statement
object_list	Currently not implemented

Table 154–1 (Cont.) SQLSET_ROW Attributes

Attribute	Description
bind_data	Bind data as captured for this SQL. Note that you cannot stipulate an argument for this parameter and also for bind_list - they are mutually exclusive.
parsing_schema_name	Schema where the SQL is parsed
module	Last application module for the SQL
action	Last application action for the SQL
elapsed_time	Sum total elapsed time for this SQL statement
cpu_time	Sum total CPU time for this SQL statement
buffer_gets	Sum total number of buffer gets
disk_reads	Sum total number of disk reads
direct_writes	Sum total number of direct writes
rows_processed	Sum total number of rows processed by this SQL
fetches	Sum total number of fetches
executions	Total executions of this SQL
end_of_fetch_count	Number of times the statement was fully executed with all of its rows fetched
optimizer_cost	Optimizer cost for this SQL
optimizer_env	Optimizer environment for this SQL statement
priority	User-defined priority (1,2,3)
command_type	Statement type, such as INSERT or SELECT.
first_load_time	Load time of parent cursor
stat_period	Period of time (seconds) when the statistics of this SQL statement were collected
active_stat_period	Effective period of time (in seconds) during which the SQL statement was active
other	Other column for user defined attributes
plan_hash_value	Plan hash value of the plan
sql_plan	Explain plan
bind_list	List of user specified binds for SQL This is used for user-specified workloads. Note that you cannot stipulate an argument for this parameter and also for bind_data - they are mutually exclusive.

Subprogram Groups

`DBMS_SQLTUNE` subprograms are grouped by function:

- SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms
- SQL Profile Subprograms
- SQL Tuning Set Subprograms
- SQL Performance Reporting Subprograms

SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface to manage SQL tuning tasks.

Table 154–2 SQL Tuning Task Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
"CANCEL_TUNING_TASK Procedure" on page 154-27	Cancels the currently executing tuning task
"CREATE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure" on page 154-30	Creates a SQL plan baseline for an existing plan
"CREATE_TUNING_TASK Functions" on page 154-35	Creates a tuning of a single statement or SQL tuning set for either SQL Tuning Advisor
"DROP_TUNING_TASK Procedure" on page 154-43	Drops a SQL tuning task
"EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function and Procedure" on page 154-44	Executes a previously created tuning task
"IMPLEMENT_TUNING_TASK Function" on page 154-45	Implements a set of SQL profile recommendations made by SQL Tuning Advisor
"INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK Procedure" on page 154-46	Interrupts the currently executing tuning task
"REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function" on page 154-58	Displays a report from the automatic tuning task, reporting on a range of executions
"REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function" on page 154-70	Displays the results of a tuning task
"RESET_TUNING_TASK Procedure" on page 154-72	Resets the currently executing tuning task to its initial state
"RESUME_TUNING_TASK Procedure" on page 154-73	Resumes a previously interrupted task that was created to process a SQL tuning set
"SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK Function" on page 154-74	Creates a tuning task and schedules its execution as a scheduler job
"SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK Function" on page 154-76	Creates a SQL*PLUS script which can then be executed to implement a set of SQL Tuning Advisor recommendations
"SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures" on page 154-90	Updates the value of a SQL tuning parameter of type `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER`

The Summary of DBMS_SQLTUNE Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

SQL Profile Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface to manage SQL profiles.

Table 154–3 SQL Profile Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ACCEPT_ALL_SQL_PROFILES Procedure on page 154-19	Accepts all SQL profiles recommended by a specific execution of a tuning task
ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE Procedure and Function on page 154-21	Creates a SQL profile for the specified tuning task
ALTER_SQL_PROFILE Procedure on page 154-25	Alters specific attributes of an existing SQL profile object
CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-32	Creates the staging table used for copying SQL profiles from one system to another
DROP_SQL_PROFILE Procedure on page 154-41	Drops the named SQL profile from the database
PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-51	Moves profile data out of the `SYS` schema into the staging table
REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-54	Changes the profile data values kept in the staging table prior to performing an unpack operation
SQLTEXT_TO_SIGNATURE Function on page 154-92	Returns a SQL text's signature
UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-93	Uses the profile data stored in the staging table to create profiles on this system

The Summary of DBMS_SQLTUNE Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

SQL Tuning Set Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface to manage SQL tuning sets.

Table 154–4 SQL Tuning Set Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_SQLSET_REFERENCE Function on page 154-24	Adds a new reference to an existing SQL tuning set to indicate its use by a client
CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-28	Over a specified time interval incrementally captures a workload from the shared SQL area into a SQL tuning set
CREATE_SQLSET Procedure and Function on page 154-31	Creates a SQL tuning set object in the database
CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-33	Creates a staging table through which SQL Tuning Sets are imported and exported
DELETE_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-40	Deletes a set of SQL statements from a SQL tuning set
DROP_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-42	Drops a SQL tuning set if it is not active
LOAD_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-47	Populates the SQL tuning set with a set of selected SQL
PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-52	Copies tuning sets out of the `SYS` schema into the staging table
REMOVE_SQLSET_REFERENCE Procedure on page 154-57	Deactivates a SQL tuning set to indicate it is no longer used by the client
SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE Function on page 154-78	Collects SQL statements from the shared SQL area
SELECT_SQL_TRACE Function on page 154-82	Reads the content of one or more trace files and returns the SQL statements it finds in the format of `sqlset_row`
SELECT_SQLPA_TASK Function on page 154-84	Collects SQL statements from a SQL performance analyzer comparison task
SELECT_SQLSET Function on page 154-86	Collects SQL statements from an existing SQL tuning set
SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Function on page 154-88	Collects SQL statements from the workload repository
UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-94	Copies one or more SQL tuning sets from the staging table
UPDATE_SQLSET Procedures on page 154-96	Updates whether selected string fields for a SQL statement in a SQL tuning set or the set numerical attributes of a SQL in a SQL tuning set

The Summary of DBMS_SQLTUNE Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

Real-Time SQL Monitoring Subprograms

This subprogram group provides function to report on monitoring data collected in `V$SQL_MONITOR` and `V$SQL_PLAN_MONITOR`.

Table 154–5 Real-Time SQL Monitoring Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function on page 154-63	Reports on Real-Time SQL Monitoring
REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Function on page 154-68	Builds a report for all or a sub-set of statements monitored by Oracle

SQL Performance Reporting Subprograms

This subprogram group provides detailed reports on SQL performance using statistics from the shared SQL area and automatic workload repository (AWR).

Table 154–6 SQL Performance Reporting Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REPORT_SQL_DETAIL Function on page 154-60	Reports on a specific SQLID

Summary of DBMS_SQLTUNE Subprograms

Table 154–7 DBMS_SQLTUNE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
ACCEPT_ALL_SQL_PROFILES Procedure on page 154-19	Accepts all SQL profiles recommended by a particular execution of a particular tuning task	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE Procedure and Function on page 154-21	Creates a SQL profile for the specified tuning task	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
ADD_SQLSET_REFERENCE Function on page 154-24	Adds a new reference to an existing SQL tuning set to indicate its use by a client	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
ALTER_SQL_PROFILE Procedure on page 154-25	Alters specific attributes of an existing SQL profile object	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
CANCEL_TUNING_TASK Procedure on page 154-27	Cancels the currently executing tuning task	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-28	Over a specified time interval incrementally captures a workload from the shared SQL area into a SQL tuning set	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
CREATE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure on page 154-30	Creates a SQL plan baseline for an existing plan	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
CREATE_SQLSET Procedure and Function on page 154-31	Creates a SQL tuning set object in the database	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-32	Creates the staging table used for copying SQL profiles from one system to another	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-33	Creates a staging table through which SQL tuning sets are imported and exported	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
CREATE_TUNING_TASK Functions on page 154-35	Creates a tuning of a single statement or SQL tuning set for either SQL Tuning Advisor	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
DELETE_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-40	Deletes a set of SQL statements from a SQL tuning set	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
DROP_SQL_PROFILE Procedure on page 154-41	Drops the named SQL profile from the database	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
DROP_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-42	Drops a SQL tuning set if it is not active	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13

Table 154–7 (Cont.) DBMS_SQLTUNE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
DROP_TUNING_TASK Procedure on page 154-43	Drops a SQL tuning task	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function and Procedure on page 154-44	Executes a previously created tuning task	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
IMPLEMENT_TUNING_TASK Function on page 154-45	implements a set of SQL profile recommendations made by SQL Tuning Advisor	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK Procedure on page 154-46	Interrupts the currently executing tuning task	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
LOAD_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-47	Populates the SQL tuning set with a set of selected SQL	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-51	Moves profile data out of the `SYS` schema into the staging table	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-52	Moves tuning sets out of the `SYS` schema into the staging table	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-54	Changes the profile data values kept in the staging table prior to performing an unpack operation	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-55	Changes the tuning set names and owners in the staging table so that they can be unpacked with different values than they had on the host system	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
REMOVE_SQLSET_ REFERENCE Procedure on page 154-57	Deactivates a SQL tuning set to indicate it is no longer used by the client	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_ TASK Function on page 154-58	Displays a report from the automatic tuning task, reporting on a range of subtasks	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
REPORT_SQL_DETAIL Function on page 154-60	Reports on a specific SQLID	SQL Performance Reporting Subprograms on page 154-15
REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function on page 154-70	Displays the results of a tuning task	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
RESET_TUNING_TASK Procedure on page 154-72	Resets the currently executing tuning task to its initial state	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
RESUME_TUNING_TASK Procedure on page 154-73	Resumes a previously interrupted task that was created to process a SQL tuning set	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11

Table 154–7 (Cont.) DBMS_SQLTUNE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK Function on page 154-74	Creates a SQL tuning task and schedule its execution as a scheduler job	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK Function on page 154-76	Creates a SQL*PLUS script which can then be executed to implement a set of SQL Tuning Advisor recommendations	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE Function on page 154-78	Collects SQL statements from the shared SQL area	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
SELECT_SQL_TRACE Function on page 154-82	Reads the content of one or more trace files and returns the SQL statements it finds in the format of `sqlset_row`	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
SELECT_SQLSET Function on page 154-86	Collects SQL statements from an existing SQL tuning set	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
SELECT_WORKLOAD_ REPOSITORY Function on page 154-88	Collects SQL statements from the workload repository	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
SET_TUNING_TASK_ PARAMETER Procedures on page 154-90	Updates the value of a SQL tuning parameter of type `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER`	SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11
SQLTEXT_TO_SIGNATURE Function on page 154-92	Returns a SQL text's signature	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure on page 154-93	Uses the profile data stored in the staging table to create profiles on this system	SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12
UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure on page 154-94	Moves one or more SQL tuning sets from the staging table	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13
UPDATE_SQLSET Procedures on page 154-96	Updates selected fields for a SQL statement in a SQL tuning set	SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13

ACCEPT_ALL_SQL_PROFILES Procedure

This procedure accepts all SQL profiles recommended by a specific execution of a tuning task, and sets the attributes of the SQL profiles according to the parameter values passed by the user.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_ALL_SQL_PROFILES (
   task_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   category        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   replace         IN BOOLEAN  := FALSE,
   force_match     IN BOOLEAN  := FALSE,
   profile_type    IN VARCHAR2 := REGULAR_PROFILE,
   autotune_period IN NUMBER   := NULL,
   execution_name  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   task_owner      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–8 ACCEPT_ALL_SQL_PROFILES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The (mandatory) name of the SQL tuning task
category	This is the category name which must match the value of the SQLTUNE_CATEGORY parameter in a session for the session to use this SQL profile. It defaults to the value "DEFAULT". This is also the default of the SQLTUNE_CATEGORY parameter. The category must be a valid Oracle identifier. The category name specified is always converted to upper case. The combination of the normalized SQL text and category name creates a unique key for a SQL profile. An ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE fails if this combination is duplicated.
replace	If the profile already exists, it is replaced if this argument is TRUE. It is an error to pass a name that is already being used for another signature/category pair, even with replace set to TRUE.
force_match	If TRUE this causes SQL profiles to target all SQL statements which have the same text after normalizing all literal values into bind variables. (Note that if a combination of literal values and bind values is used in a SQL statement, no bind transformation occurs.) This is analogous to the matching algorithm used by the FORCE option of the cursor_sharing parameter. If FALSE, literals are not transformed. This is analogous to the matching algorithm used by the EXACT option of the cursor_sharing parameter.

Table 154–8 (Cont.) ACCEPT_ALL_SQL_PROFILES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_type	Options: ■ REGULAR_PROFILE - profile without a change to parallel execution (Default, equivalent to NULL). Note that if the SQL statement currently has a parallel execution plan, the regular profile will cause the optimizer to choose a different, but still parallel, execution plan. ■ PX_PROFILE - regular profile with a change to parallel execution
autotune_period	The time period for the automatic SQL tuning. This setting applies only to the automatic SQL Tuning Advisor task. Possible values are as follows: ■ null or negative value (default) - all or full. The result includes all task executions. ■ 0 - result of the current or most recent task execution. ■ 1 - result for the most recent 24-hour period. ■ 7 - result for the most recent 7-day period. The procedure interprets any other value as the time of the most recent task execution minus the value of this argument.
execution_name	Name of the task execution to use. If null, then the procedure generates the report for the most recent task execution.
task_owner	Owner of the tuning task. This is an optional parameter that must be specified to accept a SQL profile associated to a tuning task owned by another user. The current user is the default value.
description	A user specified string describing the purpose of the SQL profile. The description is truncated if longer than 256 characters. The maximum size is 500 characters.

Usage Notes

The CREATE ANY SQL PROFILE privilege is required.

ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE Procedure and Function

This procedure creates a SQL profile recommended by SQL Tuning Advisor. The SQL text is normalized for matching purposes though it is stored in the data dictionary in de-normalized form for readability. SQL text is provided through a reference to the SQL Tuning task. If the referenced SQL statement doesn't exist, an error is reported.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE (
   task_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_id    IN  NUMBER   := NULL,
   name         IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   category     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
   task_owner   IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   replace      IN BOOLEAN   := FALSE,
   force_match  IN BOOLEAN   := FALSE,
   profile_type IN VARCHAR2  := REGULAR_PROFILE);

DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE (
   task_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_id    IN  NUMBER   := NULL,
   name         IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   category     IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL;
   task_owner   IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   replace      IN BOOLEAN   := FALSE,
   force_match  IN BOOLEAN   := FALSE,
   profile_type IN VARCHAR2  := REGULAR_PROFILE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 154–9 ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE Procedure and Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The (mandatory) name of the SQL tuning task
object_id	The identifier of the advisor framework object representing the SQL statement associated with the tuning task
name	The name of the SQL profile. It cannot contain double quotation marks. The name is case sensitive. If not specified, the system generates a unique name for the SQL profile.
description	A user specified string describing the purpose of the SQL profile. The description is truncated if longer than 256 characters. The maximum size is 500 characters.

Table 154–9 (Cont.) ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE Procedure and Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category	This is the category name which must match the value of the SQLTUNE_CATEGORY parameter in a session for the session to use this SQL profile. It defaults to the value "DEFAULT". This is also the default of the SQLTUNE_CATEGORY parameter. The category must be a valid Oracle identifier. The category name specified is always converted to upper case. The combination of the normalized SQL text and category name creates a unique key for a SQL profile. An ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE fails if this combination is duplicated.
task_owner	Owner of the tuning task. This is an optional parameter that has to be specified to accept a SQL profile associated to a tuning task owned by another user. The current user is the default value.
replace	If the profile already exists, it is replaced if this argument is TRUE. It is an error to pass a name that is already being used for another signature/category pair, even with replace set to TRUE.
force_match	If TRUE this causes SQL profiles to target all SQL statements which have the same text after normalizing all literal values into bind variables. (Note that if a combination of literal values and bind values is used in a SQL statement, no bind transformation occurs.) This is analogous to the matching algorithm used by the FORCE option of the cursor_sharing parameter. If FALSE, literals are not transformed. This is analogous to the matching algorithm used by the EXACT option of the cursor_sharing parameter.
profile_type	Options: ■ REGULAR_PROFILE - profile without a change to parallel execution (Default, equivalent to NULL). Note that if the SQL statement currently has a parallel execution plan, the regular profile will cause the optimizer to choose a different, but still parallel, execution plan. ■ PX_PROFILE - regular profile with a change to parallel execution

Return Values

The name of the SQL profile.

Usage Notes

The CREATE ANY SQL PROFILE privilege is required.

Examples

You use both the procedure and the function versions of the subprogram in the same way except you must specify a return value to invoke the function. Here we give examples of the procedure only.

In this example, you tune a single SQL statement form the workload repository and you create the SQL profile recommended by SQL Tuning Advisor.

```
variable stmt_task VARCHAR2(64);
variable sts_task VARCHAR2(64);

-- create a tuning task tune the statement
```

```
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK(
   begin_snap  => 1, -
   end_snap    => 2, -
   sql_id      => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24');

-- execute the resulting task
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK(:stmt_task);

EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE(:stmt_task);
```

Note that you do not have to specify the ID (that is, `object_id`) for the advisor framework object created by SQL Tuning Advisor to represent the tuned SQL statement.

You might also want to accept the recommended SQL profile in a different category, (for example, `TEST`), so that it is not used by default.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE (
   task_name  =>  :stmt_task, -
   category   =>  'TEST');
```

You can use command `ALTER SESSION SET SQLTUNE_CATEGORY = 'TEST'` to see how this profile behaves.

The following call creates a SQL profile that targets any SQL statement with the same `force_matching_signature` as the tuned statement.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE (task_name   =>  :stmt_task, -
                                      force_match =>  TRUE);
```

In the following example, you tune a SQL tuning set, and you create a SQL profile for only one of the SQL statements in the SQL tuning set. The SQL statement is represented by an advisor framework object with ID equal to '5'. Please notice that you must pass an object id to the `ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE` procedure because there are potentially many SQL profiles for the tuning task. This object id is given along with the report.

```
EXEC :sts_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK ( -
  sqlset_name   => 'my_workload',  -
  rank1         => 'ELAPSED_TIME', -
  time_limit    => 3600,           -
  description   => 'my workload ordered by elapsed time');

-- execute the resulting task
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK(:sts_task);

 -- create the profile for the sql statement corresponding to object_id = 5.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ACCEPT_SQL_PROFILE (
   task_name  =>  :sts_task, -
   object_id  =>  5);
```

ADD_SQLSET_REFERENCE Function

This procedure adds a new reference to an existing SQL tuning set to indicate its use by a client.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.ADD_SQLSET_REFERENCE (
   sqlset_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   description  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 154–10 ADD_SQLSET_REFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
description	The description of the usage of SQL tuning set. The description is truncated if longer than 256 characters.

Return Values

The identifier of the added reference.

Examples

You can add reference to a SQL tuning set. This prevents the tuning set from being modified while it is being used. References are automatically added when you invoke SQL Tuning Advisor on the SQL tuning set, so you should use this function for custom purposes only.The function returns a reference ID that is used to remove it later. You use the REMOVE_SQLSET_REFERENCE Procedure to delete references to a SQL tuning set.

```
variable rid number;
EXEC :rid := DBMS_SQLTUNE.ADD_SQLSET_REFERENCE( -
                                sqlset_name => 'my_workload', -
                                description => 'my sts reference');
```

You can use the views USER/DBA_SQLSET_REFERENCES to find all references on a given SQL tuning set.

ALTER_SQL_PROFILE Procedure

This procedure alters specific attributes of an existing SQL profile object. The following attributes can be altered (using these attribute names):

- "STATUS" can be set to "ENABLED" or "DISABLED"
- "NAME" can be reset to a valid name which must be a valid Oracle identifier and must be unique.
- "DESCRIPTION" can be set to any string of size no more than 500 characters
- "CATEGORY" can be reset to a valid category name which must be a valid Oracle identifier and must be unique when combined with normalized SQL text)

See Also: SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.ALTER_SQL_PROFILE (
   name                IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   value               IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 154–11 ALTER_SQL_PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The (mandatory) name of the existing SQL profile to alter
attribute_name	The (mandatory) attribute name to alter (case insensitive) using valid attribute names
value	The (mandatory) new value of the attribute using valid attribute values

Usage Notes

Requires the ALTER ANY SQL PROFILE privilege.

Examples

```
-- Disable a profile, so it is not be used by any sessions.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ALTER_SQL_PROFILE ( name            =>  :pname,   -
                                      attribute_name  =>  'STATUS', -
                                      value           =>  'DISABLED');

-- Enable it back:
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ALTER_SQL_PROFILE ( name            =>   :pname,   -
                                      attribute_name  =>   'STATUS', -
                                      value           =>   'ENABLED');

-- Change the category of the profile so it is used only by sessions
-- with category set to TEST.
-- Use ALTER SESSION SET SQLTUNE_CATEGORY = 'TEST' to see how this profile
-- behaves.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ALTER_SQL_PROFILE ( name            =>  :pname,   -
                                      attribute_name  =>  'CATEGORY', -
```

```
                                        value           =>  'TEST');

-- Change it back:
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.ALTER_SQL_PROFILE ( name            =>  :pname,   -
                                      attribute_name  =>  'CATEGORY', -
                                      value           =>  'DEFAULT');
```

CANCEL_TUNING_TASK Procedure

This procedure cancels the currently executing tuning task. All intermediate result data is deleted.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CANCEL_TUNING_TASK (
 task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 154–12 CANCEL_TUNING_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the task to cancel

Examples

You cancel a task when you need to stop it executing and do not require to view any already-completed results.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CANCEL_TUNING_TASK(:my_task);
```

CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET Procedure

Over a specified time interval this procedure incrementally captures a workload from the shared SQL area into a SQL tuning set. The procedure captures a workload from the shared SQL area into a SQL tuning set, polling the cache multiple times over a time period and updating the workload data stored there. It can execute over as long a period as required to capture an entire system workload.

See Also: SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET (
    sqlset_name         IN VARCHAR2,
    time_limit          IN POSITIVE := 1800,
    repeat_interval     IN POSITIVE := 300,
    capture_option      IN VARCHAR2 := 'MERGE',
    capture_mode        IN NUMBER   := MODE_REPLACE_OLD_STATS,
    basic_filter        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    sqlset_owner        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    recursive_sql       IN VARCHAR2 := HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–13 CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
time_limit	The total amount of time, in seconds, to execute
repeat_interval	The amount of time, in seconds, to pause between sampling
capture_option	During capture, either insert new statements, update existing statements, or both. 'INSERT', 'UPDATE', or 'MERGE' just like load_option in load_sqlset
capture_mode	Capture mode (UPDATE and MERGE capture options). Possible values: ■ MODE_REPLACE_OLD_STATS - Replace statistics when the number of executions seen is greater than that stored in the SQL tuning set ■ MODE_ACCUMULATE_STATS - Add new values to current values for SQL we already store. Note that this mode detects if a statement has been aged out, so the final value for a statistics is the sum of the statistics of all cursors that statement existed under.
basic_filter	Filter to apply to shared SQL area on each sampling (see SELECT_XXX subprograms). If basic_filter is not set by the caller, the subprogram captures only statements of the type CREATE TABLE, INSERT, SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, and MERGE.
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set or NULL for current schema owner
recursive_sql	Filter that includes recursive SQL in the SQL tuning set (HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL) or excludes it (NO_RECURSIVE_SQL).

Examples

In this example capture takes place over a 30-second period, polling the cache once every five seconds. This captures all statements run during that period but not before or after. If the same statement appears a second time, the process replaces the stored statement with the new occurrence.

Note that in production systems the time limit and repeat interval would be set much higher. You should tune the `time_limit` and `repeat_interval` parameters based on the workload time and shared SQL area turnover properties of your system.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET( -
                                        sqlset_name     => 'my_workload', -
                                        time_limit      =>  30, -
                                        repeat_interval =>  5);
```

In the following call you accumulate execution statistics as you go. This option produces an accurate picture of the cumulative activity of each cursor, even across age-outs, but it is more expensive than the previous example.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET( -
                          sqlset_name     => 'my_workload', -
                          time_limit      => 30, -
                          repeat_interval => 5, -
                          capture_mode    => dbms_sqltune.MODE_ACCUMULATE_STATS);
```

This call performs a very inexpensive capture where you only insert new statements and do not update their statistics once they have been inserted into the SQL tuning set

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CAPTURE_CURSOR_CACHE_SQLSET( -
                                    sqlset_name     => 'my_workload', -
                                    time_limit      => 30, -
                                    repeat_interval => 5, -
                                    capture_option  => 'INSERT');
```

CREATE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure

This procedure creates a SQL plan baseline for an execution plan. It can be used in the context of an Alternative Plan Finding made by SQL Tuning Advisor.

See Also: SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE (
   task_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   object_id            IN NUMBER := NULL,
   plan_hash_value      IN NUMBER,
   owner_name           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–14 CREATE_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the task for which to get a script
object_id	Object ID to which the SQL corresponds
plan_hash_value	Plan to create plan baseline
owner_name	Owner of the relevant tuning task. Defaults to the current schema owner.

CREATE_SQLSET Procedure and Function

The procedure creates a SQL tuning set object in the database.

The function causes the system to generate a name for the SQL tuning set.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   description  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL
   sqlset_owner IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);

DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   description  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sqlset_owner IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 154–15 CREATE_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
description	The description of the SQL tuning set
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set, or NULL for the current schema owner

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_SQLSET(-
  sqlset_name => 'my_workload', -
  description => 'complete application workload');
```

CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure

This procedure creates the staging table used for copying SQL profiles from one system to another.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF (
   table_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   schema_name           IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   tablespace_name       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–16 CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table to create (case-insensitive unless double quoted). Required.
schema_name	The schema to create the table in, or NULL for current schema (case-insensitive unless double quoted)
tablespace_name	The tablespace to store the staging table within, or NULL for current user's default tablespace (case-insensitive unless double quoted)

Usage Notes

- Call this procedure once before issuing a call to the PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure.
- This procedure can be called multiple times if you would like to have different SQL profiles in different staging tables.
- Note that this is a DDL operation, so it does not occur within a transaction.

Examples

Create a staging table to store profile data that can be moved to another system.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLPROF (table_name  => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');
```

CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure creates a staging table through which SQL tuning sets are imported and exported

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET (
   table_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   schema_name          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   tablespace_name      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   db_version           IN NUMBER   := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–17 CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Name of the table to create (case-sensitive)
schema_name	Schema in which to create the table in, or NULL for current schema (case-sensitive)
tablespace_name	Tablespace in which to store the staging table, or NULL for current user's default tablespace (case-sensitive)
db_version	Database (DB) version determining the format of the staging table. User can also create an older DB version staging table to export STS to an older DB version. One of the following values: ■ NULL (default) — current DB version ■ STS_STGTAB_10_2_VERSION — 10.2 DB version ■ STS_STGTAB_11_1_VERSION — 11.1 DB version ■ STS_STGTAB_11_2_VERSION — 11.2 DB version

Usage Notes

- Call this procedure once before issuing a call to the PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure.
- This procedure can be called multiple times if you would like to have different tuning sets in different staging tables.
- Note that this is a DDL operation, so it does not occur within a transaction.
- Users issuing the call must have permission to CREATE TABLE in the schema provided and the relevant tablespace.
- Please note that the staging table contains nested table columns and indexes, so it should not be renamed.

Examples

Create a staging table for packing and eventually exporting a SQL tuning sets

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET(table_name => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

Create a staging table to pack a SQL tuning set in Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 (10.2) format

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   table_name => 'STGTAB_SQLSET',
   db_version => DBMS_SQLTUNE.STS_STGTAB_10_2_VERSION)
```

Create a staging table to pack a SQL tuning set in Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1) format

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   table_name => 'STGTAB_SQLSET',
   db_version => DBMS_SQLTUNE.STS_STGTAB_11_1_VERSION)
```

CREATE_TUNING_TASK Functions

You can use different forms of this function to:

- Create a tuning task for a single statement given its text.
- Create a tuning task for a single statement from the shared SQL area given its identifier.
- Create a tuning task for a single statement from the workload repository given a range of snapshot identifiers.
- Create a tuning task for a SQL tuning set.
- Create tuning task for a SQL Performance Analyzer

In all cases, the function mainly creates an advisor task and sets its parameters.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

SQL text format:

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK (
  sql_text          IN CLOB,
  bind_list         IN sql_binds := NULL,
  user_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  scope             IN VARCHAR2  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
  time_limit        IN NUMBER    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  con_name          IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SQL ID format:

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK (
  sql_id            IN VARCHAR2,
  plan_hash_value   IN NUMBER    := NULL,
  scope             IN VARCHAR2  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
  time_limit        IN NUMBER    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  con_name          IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

AWR format:

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK (
  begin_snap        IN NUMBER,
  end_snap          IN NUMBER,
  sql_id            IN VARCHAR2,
  plan_hash_value   IN NUMBER    := NULL,
  scope             IN VARCHAR2  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
  time_limit        IN NUMBER    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  con_name          IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SQL tuning set format:

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK (
  sqlset_name       IN VARCHAR2,
  basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  object_filter     IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  rank1             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  rank2             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  rank3             IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  result_percentage IN NUMBER   :=  NULL,
  result_limit      IN NUMBER   :=  NULL,
  scope             IN VARCHAR2 :=  SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
  time_limit        IN NUMBER   :=  TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
  description       IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL
  plan_filter       IN VARCHAR2 :=  'MAX_ELAPSED_TIME',
  sqlset_owner      IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SQL Performance Analyzer format:

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK (
   spa_task_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   spa_task_owner    IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   spa_compare_exec  IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   time_limit        IN NUMBER   :=  TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   description       IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 154–18 CREATE_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_text	Text of a SQL statement
begin_snap	Begin snapshot identifier
end_snap	End snapshot identifier
sql_id	Identifier of a SQL statement
bind_list	An ordered list of bind values in ANYDATA type
plan_hash_value	Hash value of the SQL execution plan
sqlset_name	SQL tuning set name
basic_filter	SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set
object_filter	Object filter
rank(i)	Order-by clause on the selected SQL
result_percentage	Percentage on the sum of a ranking measure
result_limit	Top L(imit) SQL from the (filtered/ranked) SQL
user_name	User name for whom the statement is to be tuned
scope	Tuning scope (limited/comprehensive)
time_limit	The maximum duration in seconds for the tuning session
task_name	Optional tuning task name

Table 154–18 (Cont.) CREATE_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
description	Description of the SQL tuning session to a maximum of 256 characters.
plan_filter	Plan filter. It is applicable when multiple plans (plan_hash_value) are associated with the same statement. This filter allows for selecting one plan (plan_hash_value) only. Possible values are: ■ LAST_GENERATED: plan with the most recent timestamp ■ FIRST_GENERATED: plan with the earliest timestamp, the opposite to LAST_GENERATED ■ LAST_LOADED: plan with the most recent first_load_time statistics information ■ FIRST_LOADED: plan with the earliest first_load_time statistics information, the opposite to LAST_LOADED ■ MAX_ELAPSED_TIME: plan with the maximum elapsed time ■ MAX_BUFFER_GETS: plan with the maximum buffer gets ■ MAX_DISK_READS: plan with the maximum disk reads ■ MAX_DIRECT_WRITES: plan with the maximum direct writes ■ MAX_OPTIMIZER_COST: plan with the maximum optimizer cost
sqlset_owner	Owner of the SQL tuning set, or NULL for the current schema owner
spa_task_name	Name of the SQL Performance Analyzer task whose regressions are to be tuned
spa_task_owner	Owner of specified SQL Performance Analyzer task or NULL for current user
spa_compare_exec	Execution name of Compare Performance trial of SQL Performance Analyzer task. If NULL, we use the most recent execution of the given SQL Performance Analyzer task, of type COMPARE PERFORMANCE.

Table 154–18 (Cont.) CREATE_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
con_name	Specifies the container for the tuning task. The semantics depend on the function format: ■ For the SQL text format, this parameter specifies the container in which SQL Tuning Advisor tunes the SQL statement. If null (default), then SQL Tuning Advisor uses the current container. ■ For the SQL ID format, this parameter specifies the container from which the database fetches the SQL statement for tuning. SQL Tuning Advisor tunes the statement in this container. If null, then the database uses the current PDB for tuning, fetches the statement from the cursor cache of all valid containers executing the SQL statement, and tunes the most expensive statement in its container. ■ For the AWR format, this parameter specifies the container from whose AWR data the database fetches the SQL statement for tuning. SQL Tuning Advisor tunes the statement in this container. If null, then the database uses the current PDB for tuning, fetches the statement from the AWR of all valid containers that have this SQL statement, and tunes the most expensive statement in its container. The following statements are true of all function formats: ■ In a non-CDB, this parameter is ignored. ■ In a PDB, this parameter must be null or match the container name of the PDB. Otherwise, an error occurs. ■ In a CDB root, this parameter must be null or match the container name of a container in this CDB. Otherwise, an error occurs.

Return Values

A SQL tuning task name that is unique by user (two different users can give the same name to their advisor tasks).

Usage Notes

With regard to the form of this subprogram that takes a SQL tuning set, filters provided to this function are evaluated as part of a SQL run by the current user. As such, they are executed with that user's security privileges and can contain any constructs and subqueries that user can access, but no more.

Examples

```
VARIABLE stmt_task VARCHAR2(64);
VARIABLE sts_task  VARCHAR2(64);
VARIABLE spa_tune_task VARCHAR2(64);
```

Create Tuning Task with SQL Text Format

```
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK( -
  sql_text => 'select quantity_sold from sales s, times t where s.time_id =
t.time_id and s.time_id = TO_DATE(''24-NOV-00'')');
```

Create Tuning Task with SQL ID Format

```
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK(sql_id => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24');
```

```
-- tune in limited scope
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK(sql_id => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24', -
   scope => 'LIMITED');

-- only give 10 minutes for tuning statement
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK(sql_id => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24', -
   time_limit => 600);
```

Create Tuning Task with AWR Snapshot Format

```
EXEC :stmt_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK(begin_snap => 1, -
   end_snap => 2, sql_id => 'ay1m3ssvtrh24');
```

Create Tuning Task with SQL Tuning Set Format

```
-- First we need to load an STS, then tune it
-- Tune our statements in order by buffer gets, time limit of one hour
-- the default ranking measure is elapsed time.
EXEC :sts_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK( -
  sqlset_name  => 'my_workload', -
  rank1        => 'BUFFER_GETS', -
  time_limit   => 3600, -
  description  => 'tune my workload ordered by buffer gets');
```

Create Tuning Task with SPA Task Format

```
-- Tune the SQLs that were reported as having regressed from the compare
-- performance execution of the SPA task named task_123
EXEC :spa_tune_task := DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_TUNING_TASK(
   spa_task_name     => 'task_123',
   spa_task_owner    => 'SCOTT',
   spa_compare_exec  => 'exec1');
```

DELETE_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure deletes a set of SQL statements from a SQL tuning set.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.DELETE_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   basic_filter  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   sqlset_owner  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–19 DELETE_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
basic_filter	SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set. This basic filter is used as a where clause on the SQL tuning set content to select a desired subset of SQL from the Tuning Set.
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set, or NULL for current schema owner

Examples

```
-- Delete all statements in a sql tuning set.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.DELETE_SQLSET(sqlset_name   => 'my_workload');

-- Delete all statements in a sql tuning set which ran for less than a second
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.DELETE_SQLSET(sqlset_name   => 'my_workload', -
                                basic_filter  => 'elapsed_time < 1000000');
```

DROP_SQL_PROFILE Procedure

This procedure drops the named SQL profile from the database.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.DROP_SQL_PROFILE (
   name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   ignore        IN  BOOLEAN  := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 154–20 DROP_SQL_PROFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The (mandatory) name of SQL profile to be dropped. The name is case sensitive.
ignore	Ignores errors due to object not existing

Usage Notes

Requires the "DROP ANY SQL PROFILE" privilege.

Examples

```
-- Drop the profile:
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.DROP_SQL_PROFILE(:pname);
```

DROP_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure drops a SQL tuning set if it is not active.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.DROP_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   sqlset_owner  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–21 DROP_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set, or NULL for current schema owner

Usage Notes

You cannot drop a SQL tuning set when it is referenced by one or more clients.

Examples

```
-- Drop the sqlset.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.DROP_SQLSET ('my_workload');
```

DROP_TUNING_TASK Procedure

This procedure drops a SQL tuning task. The task and all its result data are deleted.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.DROP_TUNING_TASK (
 task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 154–22 DROP_TUNING_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the tuning task to drop

EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function and Procedure

This function and procedure executes a previously created tuning task. Both the function and the procedure run in the context of a new task execution. The difference is that the function version returns that new execution name.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK (
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList   := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK (
   task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
   execution_name    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL,
   execution_params  IN dbms_advisor.argList   := NULL,
   execution_desc    IN VARCHAR2               := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–23 EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the tuning task to execute
execution_name	A name to qualify and identify an execution. If not specified, it is generated by the advisor and returned by function.
execution_params	List of parameters (name, value) for the specified execution. The execution parameters have effect only on the execution for which they are specified. They override the values for the parameters stored in the task (set through the SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures).
execution_desc	A 256-length string describing the execution

Usage Notes

A tuning task can be executed multiples times without having to reset it.

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK(:stmt_task);
```

IMPLEMENT_TUNING_TASK Function

This function implements a set of SQL profile recommendations made by SQL Tuning Advisor. Call this subprogram is equivalent to calling the SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK Function and then running the script.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.IMPLEMENT_TUNING_TASK (
    task_name      IN VARCHAR2,
    rec_type       IN VARCHAR2 := REC_TYPE_SQL_PROFILES,
    owner_name     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    execution_name IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–24 IMPLEMENT_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	Name of the tuning task for which to implement recommendations
`rec_type`	Filter the types of recommendations to implement. Only `'PROFILES'` is supported.
`owner_name`	Owner of the relevant tuning task or `NULL` for the current user.
`execution_name`	name of the task execution to use. If `NULL`, recommendations from the last task execution are implemented.

INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK Procedure

This procedure interrupts the currently executing tuning task. The task ends its operations as it would at normal exit so that the user can access the intermediate results.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK (
 task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 154–25 INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the tuning task to interrupt

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK(:my_task);
```

LOAD_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure populates the SQL tuning set with a set of selected SQL. You can call the procedure multiple times to add new SQL statements or replace attributes of existing statements.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.LOAD_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   populate_cursor   IN  sqlset_cursor,
   load_option       IN VARCHAR2 := 'INSERT',
   update_option     IN VARCHAR2 := 'REPLACE',
   update_condition  IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   update_attributes IN VARCHAR2 :=  NULL,
   ignore_null       IN BOOLEAN  :=  TRUE,
   commit_rows       IN POSITIVE :=  NULL,
   sqlset_owner      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–26 LOAD_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name to populate
populate_cursor	The cursor reference from which to populate
load_option	Specifies how the statements are loaded into the SQL tuning set. The possible values are: ■ INSERT (default) - add only new statements ■ UPDATE - update existing the SQL statements and ignores any new statements ■ MERGE - this is a combination of the two other options. This option inserts new statements and updates the information of the existing ones.
update_option	Specifies how the existing statements are updated. This parameter is considered only if load_option is specified with 'UPDATE'/'MERGE' as an option. The possible values are: ■ REPLACE (default) - update the statement using the new statistics, bind list, object list, and so on. ■ ACCUMULATE - when possible combine attributes (for example, statistics like elapsed_time, and so on) otherwise just replace the old values (for example, module, action, and so on) by the new provided ones. The SQL statement attributes that can be accumulated are: elapsed_time, buffer_gets, direct_writes, disk_reads, row_processed, fetches, executions, end_of_fetch_count, stat_period and active_stat_period.

Table 154–26 (Cont.) LOAD_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
update_condition	Specifies a where clause to execute the update operation. The update is performed only if the specified condition is true. The condition can refer to either the data source or destination. The condition must use the following prefixes to refer to attributes from the source or the destination: ■ OLD - to refer to statement attributes from the SQL tuning set (destination) ■ NEW - to refer to statements attributes from the input statements (source)
update_attributes	Specifies the list of a SQL statement attributes to update during a merge or update operation.The possible values are: ■ NULL (default) - the content of the input cursor except the execution context. On other terms, it is equivalent to ALL without execution context like module, action, and so on. ■ BASIC - statistics and binds only ■ TYPICAL - BASIC + SQL plans (without row source statistics) and without object reference list ■ ALL - all attributes including the execution context attributes like module, action, and so on. ■ List of comma separated attribute names to update - EXECUTION_CONTEXT, EXECUTION_STATISTICS, BIND_LIST, OBJECT_LIST, SQL_PLAN, SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS (similar to SQL_PLAN + row source statistics)
ignore_null	If TRUE do not update an attribute if the new value is NULL. That is, do not override with NULL values unless intentional.
commit_rows	If a value is provided, the load commits after each set of that many statements is inserted. If NULL is provided, the load commits only once, at the end of the operation. Providing a value for this argument allows you to monitor the progress of a SQL tuning set load operation in the DBA_/USER_SQLSET views. The STATEMENT_COUNT value increases as new SQL statements are loaded.
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set, or the current schema owner or NULL for current owner

Exceptions

- This procedure returns an error when sqlset_name is invalid, or a corresponding SQL tuning set does not exist, or the populate_cursor is incorrect and cannot be executed.
- Exceptions are also raised when invalid filters are provided. Filters can be invalid either because they don't parse (for example, they refer to attributes not in sqlset_row), or because they violate the user's privileges.

Usage Notes

Rows in the input populate_cursor must be of type SQLSET_ROW.

Examples

In this example, you create and populate a SQL tuning set with all shared SQL area statements with an elapsed time of 5 seconds or more excluding statements that belong to SYS schema (to simulate an application user workload). You select all

attributes of the SQL statements and load them in the tuning set using the default mode, which loads only new statements, since the SQL tuning set is empty.

```
-- create the tuning set
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_SQLSET('my_workload');
-- populate the tuning set from the shared SQL area
DECLARE
 cur DBMS_SQLTUNE.SQLSET_CURSOR;
BEGIN
 OPEN cur FOR
   SELECT VALUE(P)
     FROM table(
       DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE(
         'parsing_schema_name <> ''SYS'' AND elapsed_time > 5000000',
          NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, 1, NULL,
         'ALL')) P;

DBMS_SQLTUNE.LOAD_SQLSET(sqlset_name => 'my_workload',
                         populate_cursor => cur);

END;
/
```

Suppose now you wish to augment this information with what is stored in the workload repository (AWR). You populate the tuning set with `'ACCUMULATE'` as your `update_option` because it is assumed the cursors currently in the cache had aged out since the snapshot was taken.

You omit the `elapsed_time` filter because it is assumed that any statement captured in AWR is important, but still you throw away the `SYS`-parsed cursors to avoid recursive SQL.

```
DECLARE
  cur DBMS_SQLTUNE.SQLSET_CURSOR;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
      FROM table(
        DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY(1,2,
                                                'parsing_schema_name <> ''SYS''',
                                                NULL, NULL,NULL,NULL,
                                                1,
                                                NULL,
                                                'ALL')) P;

  DBMS_SQLTUNE.LOAD_SQLSET(sqlset_name => 'my_workload',
                           populate_cursor => cur,
                           Using DBMS_SQLTUNE
                           load_option => 'MERGE',
                           update_option => 'ACCUMULATE');
END;
```

The following example is a simple load that only inserts new statements from the workload repository, skipping existing ones (in the SQL tuning set). Note that `'INSERT'` is the default value for the `load_option` argument of the `LOAD_SQLSET` procedure.

```
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
```

```
  SELECT VALUE(P)
  FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY(1,2)) P;

  DBMS_SQLTUNE.LOAD_SQLSET(sqlset_name => 'my_workload',
populate_cursor => cur);
END;
/
```

The next example demonstrates a load with `UPDATE` option. This updates statements that already exist in the SQL tuning set but does not add new ones. By default, old statistics are replaced by their new values.

```
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE) P;

  DBMS_SQLTUNE.LOAD_SQLSET(sqlset_name => 'my_workload',
                           populate_cursor => cur,
                           load_option => 'UPDATE');
END;
/
```

PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure

This procedure copies profile data from the SYS. schema into the staging table.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF (
   profile_name          IN VARCHAR2 := '%',
   profile_category      IN VARCHAR2 := 'DEFAULT',
   staging_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–27 PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	The name of the profile to pack (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
profile_category	The category to pack profiles from (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
staging_table_name	The name of the table to use (case-insensitive unless double quoted). Required.
staging_schema_owner	The schema where the table resides, or NULL for current schema (case-insensitive unless double quoted)

Usage Notes

- This procedures requires ADMINISTER SQL MANAGEMENT OBJECT privilege and INSERT privilege on the staging table.
- Note that this function issues a COMMIT after packing each SQL profile, so if an error is raised mid-execution, clear the staging table by deleting its rows.

Examples

Put only those profiles in the DEFAULT category into the staging table. This corresponds to all profiles used by default on this system.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF (staging_table_name => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');
```

This is another example where you put all profiles into the staging table. Note this moves profiles that are not currently being used by default but are in other categories, such as for testing purposes.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF (profile_category => '%', -
                                       staging_table_name => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');
```

PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure copies one or more SQL tuning sets from their location in the SYS schema to a staging table created by the CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   sqlset_owner         IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   staging_table_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   db_version           IN NUMBER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–28 PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The name of the SQL tuning set to pack (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
sqlset_owner	The category from which to pack SQL tuning sets (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
staging_table_name	The name of the table to use (case-sensitive)
staging_schema_owner	The schema where the table resides, or NULL for current schema (case-sensitive)
db_version	Database (DB) version determining the format of the staging table. User can also create an older DB version staging table to export STS to an older DB version. One of the following values: ■ NULL (default) — current DB version ■ STS_STGTAB_10_2_VERSION — 10.2 DB version ■ STS_STGTAB_11_1_VERSION — 11.1 DB version ■ STS_STGTAB_11_2_VERSION — 11.2 DB version

Usage Notes

- This procedure can be called several times to move more than one SQL tuning set. Users can then move the populated staging table to another system using any method, such as a database link or Oracle Data Pump. Users can then call the UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure create the SQL tuning set on the other system.
- Note that this function issues a COMMIT after packing each SQL tuning set, so if an error is raised mid-execution, clear the staging table by deleting its rows.

Examples

Put all SQL tuning sets on the system in the staging table

```
-- to create a staging table, see the CREATE_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure

EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(sqlset_name        => '%', -
```

```
                                        sqlset_owner       => '%', -
                                        staging_table_name => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

Put only those SQL tuning sets owned by the current user in the staging table

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   sqlset_name          => '%',
   staging_table_name   => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

Pack a specific SQL tuning set

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   sqlset_name          => 'my_workload', -
   staging_table_name   => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

Pack a second SQL tuning set

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   sqlset_name          => 'workload_subset', -
   staging_table_name   => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

Pack the STS my_workload to a staging table STGTAB_SQLSET created for Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 (10.2)

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   sqlset_name          => 'workload_subset',
   staging_table_name   => 'STGTAB_SQLSET',
   db_version           => DBMS_SQLTUNE.STS_STGTAB_10_2_VERSION);
```

Pack the STS my_workload to a staging table STGTAB_SQLSET created for Oracle Database 11*g* Release 1 (11.1)

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(
   sqlset_name          => 'workload_subset',
   staging_table_name   => 'STGTAB_SQLSET',
   db_version           => DBMS_SQLTUNE.STS_STGTAB_11_1_VERSION);
```

REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure

This procedure allows DBAs to change the profile data values kept in the staging table prior to performing an unpack operation. The procedure can be used to change the category of a profile.It can be used to change the name of a profile if one already exists on the system with the same name.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF (
  old_profile_name      IN VARCHAR2,
  new_profile_name      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  new_profile_category  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  staging_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
  staging_schema_owner  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–29 REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
old_profile_name	The name of the profile to target for a remap operation (case-sensitive)
new_profile_name	The new name of the profile, or NULL to remain the same (case-sensitive)
new_profile_category	The new category for the profile, or NULL to remain the same (case-sensitive)
staging_table_name	The name of the table on which to perform the remap operation (case-sensitive). Required.
staging_schema_owner	The schema where the table resides, or NULL for current schema (case-sensitive)

Usage Notes

Using this procedure requires the UPDATE privilege on the staging table.

Examples

Change the name of a profile before we unpack, to avoid conflicts

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF(old_profile_name    => :pname,          -
                                       new_profile_name    => 'IMP' || :pname, -
                                       staging_table_name  => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');
```

Change the SQL profile in the staging table to be 'TEST' category before we import it. This way users can test the profile on the new system before it is active.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMAP_STGTAB_SQLPROF(old_profile_name     => :pname,       -
                                       new_profile_category => 'TEST',       -
                                       staging_table_name   => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');
```

REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure changes the tuning set names and owners in the staging table so that they can be unpacked with different values than they had on the host system.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET (
   old_sqlset_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   old_sqlset_owner       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   new_sqlset_name        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   new_sqlset_owner       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   staging_table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner   IN VARCHAR2 := NULL
   old_con_dbid           IN NUMBER   := NULL,
   new_con_dbid           IN NUMBER   := NULL);
);
```

Parameters

Table 154–30 REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
old_sqlset_name	The name of the tuning set to target for a remap operation. Wildcards are not supported.
old_sqlset_owner	The new name of the tuning set owner to target for a remap operation. NULL for current schema owner
new_sqlset_name	The new name for the tuning set, or NULL to keep the same tuning set name.
new_sqlset_owner	The new owner for the tuning set, or NULL to remain the same owner name.
staging_table_name	The name of the table on which to perform the remap operation (case-sensitive).
staging_schema_owner	The name of staging table owner, or NULL for current schema owner (case-sensitive).
old_con_dbid	The old container DBID to be remapped to a new container DBID. Specify NULL to use the same container DBID. You must provide both old_con_dbid and new_con_dbid for the remap to succeed.
new_con_dbid	The new container DBID to replace with the old container DBID. Specify NULL to use the same container DBID. You must provide both old_con_dbid and new_con_dbid for the remap to succeed.

Usage Notes

You can call this procedure multiple times to remap more than one tuning set name or owner. Note that this procedure only handles one tuning set per call.

Examples

```
-- Change the name of an STS in the staging table before we unpack it.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET(old_sqlset_name    => 'my_workload', -
                                      old_sqlset_owner   => 'SH', -
                                      new_sqlset_name    => 'imp_workload', -
                                      staging_table_name => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');

-- Change the owner of an STS in the staging table before we unpack it.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET(old_sqlset_name    => 'imp_workload', -
                                      old_sqlset_owner   => 'SH', -
                                      new_sqlset_owner   => 'SYS', -
                                      staging_table_name => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

REMOVE_SQLSET_REFERENCE Procedure

This procedure deactivates a SQL tuning set to indicate it is no longer used by the client.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMOVE_SQLSET_REFERENCE (
   sqlset_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   reference_id  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 154–31 REMOVE_SQLSET_REFERENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
reference_id	The identifier of the reference to remove

Examples

You can remove references on a given SQL tuning set when you finish using it and want to make it writable again.

```
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.REMOVE_SQLSET_REFERENCE( -
                                 sqlset_name   => 'my_workload', -
                                 reference_id  => :rid);
```

Use views USER/DBA_SQLSET_REFERENCES to find all references on a given SQL tuning set.

REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function

This function displays a report from the automatic tuning task. This function reports on a range of task executions, whereas the REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function reports on a single execution. Note that this function is deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2) in favor of `DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK`.

See Also:

- SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group
- REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function on page 30-7

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK(
    begin_exec      IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    end_exec        IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
    type            IN VARCHAR2  := TYPE_TEXT,
    level           IN VARCHAR2  := LEVEL_TYPICAL,
    section         IN VARCHAR2  := SECTION_ALL,
    object_id       IN NUMBER    := NULL,
    result_limit    IN NUMBER    := NULL)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 154–32 REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`begin_exec`	Name of execution from which to begin the report. `NULL` retrieves a report on the most recent run
`end_exec`	Name of execution at which to end the report. `NULL` retrieves a report on the most recent run.
`type`	Type of the report to produce. Possible values are `TYPE_TEXT` which produces a text report
`level`	Level of detail in the report: ▪ `LEVEL_BASIC`: simple version of the report. Just show info about the actions taken by the advisor. ▪ `LEVEL_TYPICAL`: show information about every statement analyzed, including requests not implemented. ▪ `LEVEL_ALL`: highly detailed report level, also provides annotations about statements skipped over.
`section`	Optionally limit the report to a single section (`ALL` for all sections): ▪ `SECTION_SUMMARY` - summary information ▪ `SECTION_FINDINGS` - tuning findings ▪ `SECTION_PLAN` - explain plans ▪ `SECTION_INFORMATION` - general information ▪ `SECTION_ERROR` - statements with errors ▪ `SECTION_ALL` - all statements

Table 154–32 (Cont.) REPORT_AUTO_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_id	Advisor framework object id that represents a single statement to restrict reporting to. NULL for all statements. Only valid for reports that target a single execution.
result_limit	Maximum number of SQL statements to show in the report

Return Values

A CLOB containing the desired report.

REPORT_SQL_DETAIL Function

This function builds a report for a specific SQLID. For each SQLID it gives various statistics and details as obtained from the V$ views and AWR.

> **See Also:** SQL Performance Reporting Subprograms on page 154-15 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_SQL_DETAIL (
   sql_id                   IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   sql_plan_hash_value      IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time               IN  DATE       DEFAULT NULL,
   duration                 IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   inst_id                  IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   dbid                     IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   event_detail             IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'YES',
   bucket_max_count         IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT 128,
   bucket_interval          IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   top_n                    IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT 10,
   report_level             IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   type                     IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'ACTIVE')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 154–33 REPORT_SQL_DETAIL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	SQLID for which monitoring information should be displayed. If NULL (the default), display statistics for the SQLID of the last SQL statement executed in the current session.
sql_plan_hash_value	Displays SQL statistics and details for a specific plan_hash_value. If NULL (default), displays statistics and details for all plans of the SQL_ID.
start_time	If specified, shows SQL activity (from GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY) starting at this time. On Oracle RAC, the minimum start_time is the earliest sample_time of the in-memory ASH buffers across all instances. If NULL (default), one hour before the current time.
duration	Duration of activity in seconds for the report. If NULL (default) uses a value of 1 hour.
inst_id	Target instance to get SQL details from. If NULL, uses data from all instances. If 0 or -1, uses current instance.
dbid	DBID from which to get SQL details. If NULL, uses current DBID.
event_detail	When set to 'NO', the activity is aggregated by wait_class only. Use 'YES' (the default) to aggregate by (wait_class, event_name).
bucket_max_count	If specified, this should be the maximum number of histogram buckets created in the report. If not specified, a value of 128 is used.

Table 154–33 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_DETAIL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
bucket_interval	If specified, this represents the exact time interval in seconds, of all histogram buckets. If specified, bucket_max_count is ignored.
top_n	Controls the number of entries to display per dimension in the top dimensions section. If not specified, a default value of 10 is used.
report_level	Level of detail for the report, either 'BASIC', 'TYPICAL' or 'ALL'. Default assumes 'TYPICAL'. Their meanings are explained below. In addition, individual report sections can also be enabled or disabled by using a +/- *section_name*. Several sections are defined: ■ 'TOP'- Show top values for the ASH dimensions for a SQL statement; ON by default ■ 'SPM'- Show existing plan baselines for a SQL statement; OFF by default ■ 'MISMATCH'- Show reasons for creating new child cursors (sharing criteria violations); OFF by default. ■ 'STATS'- Show SQL execution statistics per plan from GV$SQLAREA_PLAN_HASH; ON by default ■ 'ACTIVITY' - Show top activity from ASH for each plan of a SQL statement; ON by default ■ 'ACTIVITY_ALL' - Show top activity from ASH for each line of the plan for a SQL statement; OFF by default ■ 'HISTOGRAM' - Show activity histogram for each plan of a SQL statement (plan time line histogram); ON by default ■ 'SESSIONS' - Show activity for top sessions for each plan of a SQL statement; OFF by default ■ 'MONITOR' - Show show one monitored SQL execution per execution plan; ON by default ■ 'XPLAN' - Show execution plans; ON by default ■ 'BINDS' - show captured bind data; ON by default In addition, SQL text can be specified at different levels: ■ -SQL_TEXT - No SQL text in report ■ +SQL_TEXT - OK with partial SQL text up to the first 2000 chars as stored in GV$SQL_MONITOR ■ -SQL_FULLTEXT - No full SQL text (+SQL_TEXT) ■ +SQL_FULLTEXT - Show full SQL text (default value) The meanings of the three top-level report levels are: ■ NONE - minimum possible ■ BASIC - SQL_TEXT+STATS+ACTIVITY+HISTOGRAM ■ TYPICAL - SQL_ FULLTEXT+TOP+STATS+ACTIVITY+HISTOGRAM+XPLAN+MONITOR ■ ALL - everything Only one of these 4 levels can be specified and, if it is, it has to be at the start of the REPORT_LEVEL string
type	Report format: 'ACTIVE' by default. Can also be 'XML' (see Usage Notes).

Return Values

A CLOB containing the desired report.

Usage Notes

- ACTIVE reports have a rich, interactive user interface similar to Enterprise Manager while not requiring any EM installation. The report file built is in HTML format, so it can be interpreted by most modern browsers. The code powering the active report is downloaded transparently by the web browser when the report is first viewed, hence viewing it requires outside connectivity.
- The invoker needs the SELECT or READ privilege on the following views:
  - V$SESSION
  - DBA_ADVISOR_FINDINGS
  - V$DATABASE
  - GV$ASH_INFO
  - GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY
  - GV$SQLAREA_PLAN_HASH
  - GV$SQL
  - DBA_HIST_SNAPSHOT
  - DBA_HIST_WR_CONTROL
  - DBA_HIST_ACTIVE_SESS_HISTORY
  - DBA_HIST_SQLSTAT
  - DBA_HIST_SQL_BIND_METADATA
  - DBA_HIST_SQLTEXT
  - DBA_SQL_PLAN_BASELINES
  - DBA_SQL_PROFILES
  - DBA_ADVISOR_TASKS
  - DBA_SERVICES
  - DBA_USERS
  - DBA_OBJECTS
  - DBA_PROCEDURES
- The invoker needs the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_XPLAN package.

REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function

This function builds a report (text, simple HTML, active HTML, XML) for the monitoring information collected on behalf of the targeted statement execution.

> **See Also:** Real-Time SQL Monitoring on page 154-5 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_SQL_MONITOR(
   sql_id                    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   dbop_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   dbop_exec_id              IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_id                IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_serial            IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   sql_exec_start            IN DATE      DEFAULT  NULL,
   sql_exec_id               IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   inst_id                   IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   start_time_filter         IN DATE      DEFAULT  NULL,
   end_time_filter           IN DATE      DEFAULT  NULL,
   instance_id_filter        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   parallel_filter           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   plan_line_filter          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   event_detail              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  'YES',
   bucket_max_count          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  128,
   bucket_interval           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   base_path                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   last_refresh_time         IN DATE      DEFAULT  NULL,
   report_level              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   type                      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TEXT',
   sql_plan_hash_value       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 154–34 REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	SQL_ID for which monitoring information should be displayed. Use NULL (the default) to report on the last statement monitored by Oracle.
dbop_name	DBOP_NAME for which monitoring information of the composite database operation is displayed.
dbop_exec_id	Execution ID for the composite database operation for which monitoring information is displayed.
session_id	If not NULL, this parameters targets only the sub-set of statements executed by the specified session. Default is NULL. Use USERENV('SID') for current session.
session_serial	In addition to the session_id parameter, one can also specify its session serial to ensure that the desired session incarnation is targeted. This parameter is ignored when session_id is NULL.

Table 154–34 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_exec_start	This parameter, along with sql_exec_id, is only applicable when sql_id is also specified. Jointly, they can be used to display monitoring information associated to any execution of the statement identified by sql_id, assuming that this statement was monitored. When NULL (the default), the last monitored execution of SQL sql_id is shown.
sql_exec_id	This parameter, along with sql_exec_start, is only applicable when sql_id is also specified. Jointly, they can be used to display monitoring information associated to any execution of the statement identified by sql_id, assuming that this statement was monitored. When NULL (the default), the last monitored execution of SQL sql_id is shown.
inst_id	Only considers statements started on the specified instance. Use -1 to target the login instance. NULL (default) targets all instances.
start_time_filter	If not NULL, the report considers only the activity (from GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY) recorded after the specified date. If NULL, the reported activity starts when the execution of the targeted SQL statement has started.
end_time_filter	If not NULL, the report shows only the activity (from GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY) collected before the date end_time_filter. If NULL, the reported activity ends when the targeted SQL statement execution has ended or is the current time if the statement is still executing.
instance_id_filter	Only applies when the execution runs parallel across multiple Oracle Real Application Cluster (Oracle RAC) instances. This parameter allows to only report the activity of the specified instance. Use a NULL value (the default) to include the activity on all instances where the parallel query was executed.
parallel_filter	Applies only to parallel execution and allows reporting the activity of only a subset of the processes involved in the parallel execution (Query Coordinator and/or Parallel eXecution servers). The value of this parameter can be: ■ NULL to target all processes ■ [qc][servers(<svr_grp>[,] <svr_set>[,] <srv_num>)]: 'qc' stands for query coordinator and servers() stipulate which PX servers to consider. The following examples show how to target a subset of the parallel processes: ■ qc: targets only the query coordinator ■ servers(1): targets all parallel execution servers in group number 1. Note that statement running parallel have one main server group (group number 1) plus one additional group for each nested sub-query running parallel. ■ servers(,2): targets all parallel execution servers from any group but only running in set 1 of each group (each group has at most two set of parallel execution servers) ■ servers(1,1): consider only group 1, set 1 ■ servers(1,2,4): consider only group 1, set 2, server number 4. This reports for a single parallel server process ■ qc servers(1,2,4): same as above by also including the query coordinator

Table 154–34 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
event_detail	When value is 'YES' (the default), reported activity from GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY is aggregated by (wait_class, event_name). Use 'NO' to only aggregate by wait_class.
bucket_max_count	If specified, this should be the maximum number of histogram buckets created in the report
bucket_interval	If specified, this represents the exact time interval in seconds, of all histogram buckets. If specified, bucket_max_count is ignored.
base_path	URL path for flex HTML resources since flex HTML format is required to access external files (java scripts and the flash SWF file itself)
last_refresh_time	If not NULL (default is NULL), the time when the report was last retrieved (see SYSDATE attribute of the report tag). Use this option to display the report of a running query, and when the report is refreshed on a regular basis. This optimizes the size of the report since only the new or changed information is returned. In particular, the following are optimized: ■ SQL text is not returned when this option is specified ■ activity histogram starts at the bucket that intersect at that time. The entire content of the bucket is returned, even if last_refresh_time is after the start of that bucket

Table 154–34 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
report_level	Level of detail for the report, either 'NONE', 'BASIC', 'TYPICAL' or 'ALL'. Default assumes 'TYPICAL'. Their meanings are explained below. In addition, individual report sections can also be enabled or disabled by using a +/- *section_name*. Several sections are defined: ■ 'XPLAN'- Show explain plan; ON by default ■ 'PLAN'- Show plan monitoring statistics; ON by default ■ 'SESSIONS'- Show session details. Applies only to parallel queries; ON by default ■ 'INSTANCE'- Show instance details. Applies only to parallel and cross instance; ON by default ■ 'PARALLEL'- An umbrella parameter for specifying sessions+instance details ■ 'ACTIVITY' - Show activity summary at global level, plan line level and session or instance level (if applicable); ON by default ■ 'BINDS' - Show bind information when available; ON by default ■ 'METRICS' - Show metric data (CPU, I/Os, ...) over time; ON by default ■ 'ACTIVITY_HISTOGRAM' - Show an histogram of the overall query activity; ON by default ■ 'PLAN_HISTOGRAM' - Show activity histogram at plan line level; OFF by default ■ 'OTHER' - Other info; ON by default In addition, SQL text can be specified at different levels: ■ SQL_TEXT - No SQL text in report ■ +SQL_TEXT - OK with partial SQL text up to the first 2000 chars as stored in GV$SQL_MONITOR ■ -SQL_FULLTEXT - No full SQL text (+SQL_TEXT) ■ +SQL_FULLTEXT - Show full SQL text (default value)
report_level (contd.)	The meanings of the three top-level report levels are: ■ NONE - minimum possible ■ +BASIC - SQL_ TEXT-PLAN-XPLAN-SESSIONS-INSTANCE-ACTIVITY_ HISTOGRAM-PLAN_HISTOGRAM-METRICS ■ TYPICAL - everything but PLAN_HISTOGRAM ■ ALL - everything Only one of these 4 levels can be specified and, if it is, it has to be at the start of the REPORT_LEVEL string
type	Report format, 'TEXT' by default. Can be 'TEXT', 'HTML', 'XML' or 'ACTIVE' (see Usage Notes).
sql_plan_hash_value	Target only those SQL executions with the specified plan_ hash_value. Default is NULL.

Return Values

A CLOB containing the desired report.

Usage Notes

- The target SQL statement for this report can be:
  - The last SQL monitored by Oracle (this is the default behavior, so there is no need to specify any parameter). The last SQL executed by a specific session and monitored by Oracle. The session is identified by its session id and optionally it serial number. For example, use `session_id => USERENV ('SID')` for the current session or `session_id=>20`, `session_serial=>103` for session ID 20, serial number 103.The last execution of a specific statement identified by its `sql_id`.A specific execution of a SQL statement identified by its execution key (`sql_id`, `sql_exec_start` and `sql_exec_id`).
- This report produces performance data exposed by several fixed views, listed below. For this reason, the invoker of the report function must have privilege to select data from these fixed views (such as the `SELECT_CATALOG` role).
  - `GV$SQL_MONITOR`
  - `GV$SQL_PLAN_MONITOR`
  - `GV$SQL_PLAN`
  - `GV$ACTIVE_SESSION_HISTORY`
  - `GV$SESSION_LONGOPS`
  - `GV$SQL`
- The `bucket_max_count` and `bucket_interval` parameters control the activity histogram. By default, the maximum number of buckets is set to 128 and the RDBMS derives the `bucket_interval` based on this. The `bucket_interval` (value is in seconds) is computed such that it is the smallest possible power of 2 value (starting at 1s) without exceeding the maximum number of buckets. For example, if the query has executed for 600s, the RDBMS selects a `bucket_interval` of 8s (a power of two) given that 600/8 = 74 which is less than 128 buckets maximum. Smaller than 8s would be 4s which would lead to more buckets than the 128 maximum. If `bucket_interval` is specified, then the RDBMS uses that value instead of deriving it from `bucket_max_count`.
- `ACTIVE` reports have a rich, interactive user interface similar to Enterprise Manager while not requiring any EM installation. The report file built is in HTML format, so it can be interpreted by most modern browsers. The code powering the active report is downloaded transparently by the web browser when the report is first viewed, hence viewing it requires outside connectivity.

  See Also: *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information about SQL real-time monitoring.

REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Function

This function builds a report for all or a sub-set of statements monitored by Oracle. For each statement, the subprogram gives key information and associated global statistics.

Use the REPORT_SQL_MONITOR Function to get detail monitoring information for a single SQL statement.

See Also: Real-Time SQL Monitoring on page 154-5 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST(
   sql_id                    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_id                IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   session_serial            IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   inst_id                   IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   active_since_date         IN DATE      DEFAULT  NULL,
   active_since_sec          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   last_refresh_time         IN DATE      DEFAULT  NULL,
   report_level              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  'TYPICAL',
   auto_refresh              IN NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL,
   base_path                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   type                      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 154–35 REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	SQL_ID for which monitoring information should be displayed. Use NULL (the default) to report on the last statement monitored by Oracle.
session_id	If not NULL, this parameters targets only the sub-set of statements executed by the specified session. Default is NULL. Use -1 or USERENV('SID') for current session.
session_serial	In addition to the session_id parameter, you can also specify its session serial to ensure that the desired session incarnation is targeted. This parameter is ignored when session_id is NULL.
inst_id	Only considers statements started on the specified instance. Use -1 to target the login instance. NULL (default) targets all instances.
active_since_date	If not NULL (default), returns only monitored statements active since the specified time. This includes all statements that are still executing along with all statements that have completed their execution after the specified date and time.
active_since_sec	Same as active_since_date but with the date specified relative to the current SYSDATE minus a specified number of seconds. For example, use 3600 to apply a limit of 1 hour.

Table 154–35 (Cont.) REPORT_SQL_MONITOR_LIST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
last_refresh_time	If not NULL (default), the date and time when the list report was last retrieved. This optimizes the case where an application shows the list and refreshes the report on a regular basis (such as once every 5 seconds). In this case, the report shows detail about the execution of monitored queries that active since the specified last_refresh_time. For other queries, the report returns the execution key (sql_id, sql_exec_start, sql_exec_id). For queries with a first refresh time after the specified date, the function returns only the SQL execution key and statistics.
report_level	Level of detail for the report. The level is one of the following: ■ BASIC - SQL text up to 200 characters ■ TYPICAL - include full SQL text assuming that cursor has not aged out, in which case the SQL text is included up to 2000 characters ■ ALL - currently the same as TYPICAL
auto_refresh	Currently non-operational, reserved for future use.
base_path	URL path for flex HTML resources because flex HTML format is required to access external files (java scripts and the flash SWF file itself).
type	Report format: TEXT (default), HTML, or XML.

Return Values

A report (XML, text, HTML) for the list of SQL statements that have been monitored.

Usage Notes

The user tuning this function needs to have privilege to access the following fixed views: GV$SQL_MONITOR and GV$SQL

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information about SQL real-time monitoring.

REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function

This procedure displays the results of a tuning task.

> **See Also:** SQL Performance Reporting Subprograms on page 154-15 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_TUNING_TASK(
   task_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   type            IN   VARCHAR2   := 'TEXT',
   level           IN   VARCHAR2   := 'TYPICAL',
   section         IN   VARCHAR2   := ALL,
   object_id       IN   NUMBER     := NULL,
   result_limit    IN   NUMBER     := NULL,
   owner_name      IN    VARCHAR2  := NULL,
   execution_name  IN  VARCHAR2    := NULL)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 154–36 REPORT_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the tuning task to report.
type	Type of the report to produce. Possible values are TEXT which produces a text report.
level	Level of detail in the report: ■ BASIC: simple version of the report. Just show info about the actions taken by the advisor. ■ TYPICAL: show information about every statement analyzed, including requests not implemented. ■ ALL: highly detailed report level, also provides annotations about statements skipped over.
section	Optionally limit the report to a single section (ALL for all sections): ■ SUMMARY - summary information ■ FINDINGS - tuning findings ■ PLAN - explain plans ■ INFORMATION - general information ■ ERROR - statements with errors ■ ALL - all statements
object_id	Advisor framework object id that represents a single statement to restrict reporting to. NULL for all statements. Only valid for reports that target a single execution.
result_limit	Maximum number of SQL statements to show in the report.
owner_name	Owner of the relevant tuning task. Defaults to the current schema owner.
execution_name	Name of the task execution to use. If NULL, the report is generated for the last task execution.

Return Values

A CLOB containing the desired report.

Examples

```
-- Display the report for a single statement.
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_TUNING_TASK(:stmt_task)
FROM   DUAL;

-- Display the summary for a SQL tuning set.
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_TUNING_TASK(:sts_task, 'TEXT', 'TYPICAL', 'SUMMARY')
FROM   DUAL;

-- Display the findings for a specific statement.
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.REPORT_TUNING_TASK(:sts_task, 'TEXT', 'TYPICAL','FINDINGS', 5)
FROM   DUAL;
```

RESET_TUNING_TASK Procedure

This procedure is called on a tuning task that is not currently executing to prepare it for re-execution.

See Also: SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.RESET_TUNING_TASK(
 task_name          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 154–37 RESET_TUNING_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the tuning task to reset

Examples

```
-- reset and re-execute a task
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.RESET_TUNING_TASK(:sts_task);

-- re-execute the task
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK(:sts_task);
```

RESUME_TUNING_TASK Procedure

This procedure resumes a previously interrupted task that was created to process a SQL tuning set.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.RESUME_TUNING_TASK(
 task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
 basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–38 RESUME_TUNING_TASK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	The name of the tuning task to resume.
basic_filter	A SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set. Note that this filter is applied in conjunction with the basic filter (i.e., parameter basic_filter) when calling CREATE_TUNING_TASK Functions.

Usage Notes

Resuming a single SQL tuning task (a task that was created to tune a single SQL statement as compared to a SQL tuning set) is not supported.

Examples

```
-- Interrupt the task
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.INTERRUPT_TUNING_TASK(:conc_task);

-- Once a task is interrupted, we can elect to reset it, resume it, or check
-- out its results and then decide.  For this example we will just resume.

EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.RESUME_TUNING_TASK(:conc_task);
```

SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK Function

This function creates a tuning task for a single SQL statement and schedules a DBMS_SCHEDULER job to execute the tuning task. One form of the function finds the information about the statement to be tuned in the shared SQL area, whereas the other finds the information in AWR.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

Shared SQL Area Format

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK(
  sql_id          IN VARCHAR2,
  plan_hash_value IN NUMBER                    := NULL,
  start_date      IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE  := NULL,
  scope           IN VARCHAR2                  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
  time_limit      IN NUMBER                    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
  task_name       IN VARCHAR2                  := NULL,
  description     IN VARCHAR2                  := NULL,
  con_name        IN VARCHAR2                  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

AWR Format

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK(
  begin_snap      IN NUMBER,
  end_snap        IN NUMBER,
  sql_id          IN VARCHAR2,
  plan_hash_value IN NUMBER                    := NULL,
  start_date      IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE  := NULL,
  scope           IN VARCHAR2                  := SCOPE_COMPREHENSIVE,
  time_limit      IN NUMBER                    := TIME_LIMIT_DEFAULT,
  task_name       IN VARCHAR2                  := NULL,
  description     IN VARCHAR2                  := NULL,
  con_name        IN VARCHAR2                  := NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 154–39 SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
begin_snap	The beginning snapshot identifier. The range is exclusive, which means that SQL statements in this snapshot ID are not included.
end_snap	The end snapshot identifier. The range is inclusive, which means that SQL statements in this snapshot ID are included.
sql_id	The SQL ID of the statement to be tuned.
plan_hash_value	The plan hash value of the statement to be tuned. For example, the tuning job fetches captured binds for this SQL plan.
start_date	The date on which the schedule becomes valid. If null, then SQL Tuning Advisor immediately executes the task.
scope	The scope of the tuning job: limited, or comprehensive.

Table 154–39 (Cont.) SCHEDULE_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
time_limit	The maximum duration in seconds for the SQL tuning session.
task_name	Optional SQL tuning task name.
description	Description of the SQL tuning session. The description can contain a maximum of 256 characters.
con_name	The container from which SQL Tuning Advisor accesses the SQL statement information.

Return Values

A SQL tuning task name that is unique for each user. Multiple users can assign the same name to their advisor tasks.

Usage Notes

- The task is scheduled once only.
- The name of the scheduler job is created as follows: `sqltune_job_`*`taskid`*`_`*`orahash`*`(`*`systimestamp`*`)`.
- The caller must possess the `CREATE JOB` privilege for the job.

SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK Function

This function creates a SQL*PLUS script which can then be executed to implement a set of Advisor recommendations.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Advisor Subprograms on page 154-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK(
  task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
  rec_type          IN VARCHAR2  := REC_TYPE_ALL,
  object_id         IN NUMBER    := NULL,
  result_limit      IN NUMNBER   := NULL,
  owner_name        IN VARCHAR2  := NULL,
  execution_name    IN VARCHAR2  := NULL)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 154–40 SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the tuning task for which to apply a script
rec_type	Filter the script by types of recommendations to include. Any subset of the following separated by commas: or 'ALL: ''PROFILES'' ''STATISTICS'' ''INDEXES''. For example, a script with profiles and statistics: 'PROFILES,STATISTICS'
object_id	Optionally filters by a single object ID
result_limit	Optionally shows commands for only top *n* SQL (ordered by object_id and ignored if an object_id is also specified)
owner_name	Owner of the relevant tuning task. Defaults to the current schema owner
excution_name	Name of the task execution to use. If NULL, the script is generated for the last task execution.

Return Values

Returns a script in the form of a CLOB.

Usage Notes

- Once the script is returned, it should then by checked by the DBA and executed.
- Wrap with a call to DBMS_ADVISOR.CREATE_FILE to put it into a file.

Examples

```
SET LINESIZE 140

-- Get a script for all actions recommended by the task.
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK(:stmt_task) FROM DUAL;

-- Get a script of just the sql profiles we should create.
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK(:stmt_task, 'PROFILES') FROM DUAL;
```

```
-- get a script of just stale / missing stats
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK(:stmt_task, 'STATISTICS') FROM DUAL;

-- Get a script with recommendations about just one SQL statement when we have
-- tuned an entire STS.
SELECT DBMS_SQLTUNE.SCRIPT_TUNING_TASK(:sts_task, 'ALL', 5) FROM DUAL;
```

SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE Function

This function collects SQL statements from the shared SQL area.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE (
  basic_filter         IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  object_filter        IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure1     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure2     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure3     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  result_percentage    IN   NUMBER   := 1,
  result_limit         IN   NUMBER   := NULL,
  attribute_list       IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  recursive_sql        IN   VARCHAR2 := HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL)
 RETURN sys.sqlset PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 154–41 SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
basic_filter	The SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the shared SQL area defined on attributes of the SQLSET_ROW. If basic_filter is not set by the caller, the subprogram captures only statements of the type CREATE TABLE, INSERT, SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE, and MERGE.
object_filter	Currently not supported.
ranking_measure(n)	An order-by clause on the selected SQL.
result_percentage	A filter which picks the top N% according to the ranking measure given. Note that this applies only if one ranking measure is given.
result_limit	The top L(imit) SQL from the (filtered) source ranked by the ranking measure
attribute_list	List of SQL statement attributes to return in the result. The possible values are: ■ TYPICAL - BASIC + SQL plan (without row source statistics) and without object reference list (default) ■ BASIC - all attributes (such as execution statistics and binds) are returned except the plans. The execution context is always part of the result. ■ ALL - return all attributes ■ Comma separated list of attribute names this allows to return only a subset of SQL attributes: EXECUTION_STATISTICS, BIND_LIST, OBJECT_LIST, SQL_PLAN,SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS: similar to SQL_PLAN + row source statistics
recursive_sql	Filter that includes recursive SQL in the SQL tuning set (HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL) or excludes it (NO_RECURSIVE_SQL).

Return Values

This function returns a one SQLSET_ROW per SQL_ID or PLAN_HASH_VALUE pair found in each data source.

Usage Notes

- Filters provided to this function are evaluated as part of a SQL run by the current user. As such, they are executed with that user's security privileges and can contain any constructs and subqueries that user can access, but no more.
- Users need privileges on the shared SQL area views.

Examples

```
-- Get sql ids and sql text for statements with 500 buffer gets.
SELECT sql_id, sql_text
FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE('buffer_gets > 500'))
ORDER BY sql_id;

-- Get all the information we have about a particular statement.
SELECT *
FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE('sql_id = ''4rm4183czbs7j'''));

-- Notice that some statements can have multiple plans.  The output of the
-- SELECT_XXX table functions is unique by (sql_id, plan_hash_value).  This is
-- because a data source can store multiple plans per sql statement.
SELECT sql_id, plan_hash_value
FROM table(dbms_sqltune.select_cursor_cache('sql_id = ''ay1m3ssvtrh24'''))
ORDER BY sql_id, plan_hash_value;

-- PL/SQL examples: load_sqlset is called after opening a cursor, along the
-- lines given below

-- Select all statements in the shared SQL area.
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT value(P)
    FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset).

  CLOSE cur;
END;/


-- Look for statements not parsed by SYS.
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur for
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(
     DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE('parsing_schema_name <> ''SYS''')) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset).

  CLOSE cur;
end;/
```

```
-- All statements from a particular module/action.
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(
      DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE(
         'module = ''MY_APPLICATION'' and action = ''MY_ACTION''')) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
END;/


-- all statements that ran for at least five seconds
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE('elapsed_time > 5000000')) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
end;/


-- select all statements that pass a simple buffer_gets threshold and
-- are coming from an APPS user
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(
      DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE(
        'buffer_gets > 100 and parsing_schema_name = ''APPS'''))P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
end;/


-- select all statements exceeding 5 seconds in elapsed time, but also
-- select the plans (by default we only select execution stats and binds
-- for performance reasons - in this case the SQL_PLAN attribute of sqlset_row
-- is NULL)
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(dbms_sqltune.select_cursor_cache(
      'elapsed_time > 5000000', NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, 1, NULL,
```

```
      'EXECUTION_STATISTICS, SQL_BINDS, SQL_PLAN')) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
END;/


-- Select the top 100 statements in the shared SQL area ordering by elapsed_time.
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE(NULL,
                                                NULL,
                                                'ELAPSED_TIME', NULL, NULL,
                                                1,
                                                100)) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
end;/


-- Select the set of statements which cumulatively account for 90% of the
-- buffer gets in the shared SQL area.  This means that the buffer gets of all
-- of these statements added up is approximately 90% of the sum of all
-- statements currently in the cache.
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE(P)
    FROM table(DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_CURSOR_CACHE(NULL,
                                                NULL,
                                                'BUFFER_GETS', NULL, NULL,
                                                .9)) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset).

  CLOSE cur;
END;
/
```

SELECT_SQL_TRACE Function

This table function reads the content of one or more trace files and returns the SQL statements it finds in the format of `sqlset_row`.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_SQL_TRACE (
  directory              IN VARCHAR2,
  file_name              IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  mapping_table_name     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  mapping_table_owner    IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,,
  select_mode            IN POSITIVE := SINGLE_EXECUTION,
  options                IN BINARY_INTEGER := LIMITED_COMMAND_TYPE,
  pattern_start          IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  pattern_end            IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  result_limit           IN POSITIVE := NULL)
 RETURN sys.sqlset PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 154–42 SELECT_SQL_TRACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`directory`	The directory object containing the trace file(s). This field is mandatory.
`file_name`	All or part of name of the trace file(s) to process. If `NULL` then the current or most recent file in the specified location or path is used. `'%'` wildcards are supported for matching trace file names.
`mapping_table_name`	The mapping table name. Note that the mapping table name is case insensitive. If the mapping table name is `NULL`, the mappings in the current database is used.
`mapping_table_owner`	the mapping table owner. If it is `NULL`, the current user is used.
`select_mode`	the mode for selecting SQL from the trace. By default, it is `SINGLE_EXECUTION`. ■ `SINGLE_EXECUTION` - return one execution of a SQL.(default). ■ `ALL_EXECUTIONS` - return all executions.
`options`	The options. By default, it is `LIMITED_COMMAND_TYPE` which can be specified to include SQL statements from all Oracle command types. ■ `LIMITED_COMMAND_TYPE` - returns the SQL statements with the command types `CREATE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `UPSERT`. It is the default. ■ `ALL_COMMAND_TYPE` - returns the SQL statements with all command types.
`pattern_start`	Opening delimiting pattern of the trace file section(s) to consider. CURRENTLY INOPERABLE.
`pattern_end`	closing delimiting pattern of the trace file section(s) to process. CURRENTLY INOPERABLE.

Table 154–42 (Cont.) SELECT_SQL_TRACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
result_limit	Top SQL from the (filtered) source. Default to MAXSB4 if NULL.

Return Values

This function returns a SQLSET_ROW object.

Examples

The following code shows how to enable SQL trace for a few SQL statements and load the results into a SQL tuning set:

```
-- turn on the SQL trace in the capture database
ALTER SESSION SET EVENTS '10046 TRACE NAME CONTEXT FOREVER, LEVEL 4'

-- run sql statements
SELECT 1 FROM DUAL;
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM dba_tables WHERE table_name = :mytab;

ALTER SESSION SET EVENTS '10046 TRACE NAME CONTEXT OFF';

-- create mapping table from the capture database
CREATE TABLE mapping AS
SELECT object_id id, owner, substr(object_name, 1, 30) name
   FROM dba_objects
   WHERE object_type NOT IN ('CONSUMER GROUP', 'EVALUATION CONTEXT',
                             'FUNCTION', 'INDEXTYPE', 'JAVA CLASS',
                             'JAVA DATA', 'JAVA RESOURCE', 'LIBRARY',
                             'LOB', 'OPERATOR', 'PACKAGE',
                             'PACKAGE BODY', 'PROCEDURE', 'QUEUE',
                             'RESOURCE PLAN', 'TRIGGER', 'TYPE',
                             'TYPE BODY')
UNION ALL
SELECT user_id id, username owner, NULL name
   FROM dba_users;

-- create the directory object where the SQL traces are stored
CREATE DIRECTORY SQL_TRACE_DIR as '/home/foo/trace';

-- create the STS
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.CREATE_SQLSET('my_sts', 'test purpose');

-- load the SQL statements into STS from SQL TRACE
DECLARE
   cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
   OPEN cur FOR
   SELECT value(p)
     FROM TABLE(
        DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_SQL_TRACE(
           directory=>'SQL_TRACE_DIR',
           file_name=>'%trc',
           mapping_table_name=>'mapping')) p;
   DBMS_SQLTUNE.LOAD_SQLSET('my_sts', cur);
   CLOSE cur;
END;
/
```

SELECT_SQLPA_TASK Function

This function collects SQL statements from a SQL Performance Analyzer comparison task.

See Also:

- SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group
- *Oracle Database Testing Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_SQLPA_TASK(
    task_name         IN VARCHAR2,
    task_owner        IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    execution_name    IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    level_filter      IN VARCHAR2 := 'REGRESSED',
    basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    object_filter     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    attribute_list    IN VARCHAR2 := 'TYPICAL')
  RETURN sys.sqlset PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 154–43 SELECT_SQLPA_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
task_name	Name of the SQL Performance Analyzer task
task_owner	Owner of the SQL Performance Analyzer task. If NULL, then assume the current user.
execution_name	Name of the SQL Performance Analyzer task execution (type COMPARE PERFORMANCE) from which the provided filters will be applied. If NULL, then assume the most recent COMPARE PERFORMANCE execution.
level_filter	Filter to specify which subset of SQL statements to include. Same format as DBMS_SQLPA.REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK.LEVEL, with some possible strings removed. ■ IMPROVED includes only improved SQL. ■ REGRESSED includes only regressed SQL (default). ■ CHANGED includes only SQL with changed performance. ■ UNCHANGED includes only SQL with unchanged performance. ■ CHANGED_PLANS includes only SQL with plan changes. ■ UNCHANGED_PLANS includes only SQL with unchanged plans. ■ ERRORS includes only SQL with errors only. ■ MISSING_SQL includes only missing SQL statements (across STS). ■ NEW_SQL includes only new SQL statements (across STS).
basic filter	SQL predicate to filter the SQL in addition to the level filters.
object_filter	Currently not supported.

Table 154–43 (Cont.) SELECT_SQLPA_TASK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
attribute_list	List of SQL statement attributes to return in the result. The possible values are: ■ TYPICAL - BASIC + SQL plan (without row source statistics) and without object reference list (default) ■ BASIC - all attributes (such as execution statistics and binds) are returned except the plans. The execution context is always part of the result. ■ ALL - return all attributes ■ Comma-separated list of attribute names this allows to return only a subset of SQL attributes: EXECUTION_STATISTICS, SQL_BINDS, SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS (similar to SQL_PLAN + row source statistics).

Return Values

This function returns a SQL tuning set object.

Usage Notes

For example, you can use this function to create a SQL tuning set containing the subset of SQL statements that regressed during a SQL Performance Analyzer (SPA) experiment. You can also specify other arbitrary filters.

SELECT_SQLSET Function

This function reads SQLSET contents.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_SQLSET (
  sqlset_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
  basic_filter         IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  object_filter        IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure1     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure2     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure3     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  result_percentage    IN   NUMBER   := 1,
  result_limit         IN   NUMBER   := NULL)
  attribute_list       IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  plan_filter          IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  sqlset_owner         IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  recursive_sql        IN   VARCHAR2 := HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL)
 RETURN sys.sqlset PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 154–44 SELECT_SQLSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
basic_filter	The SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the SQL tuning set defined on attributes of the SQLSET_ROW
object_filter	Currently not supported.
ranking_measure(n)	An order-by clause on the selected SQL
result_percentage	A filter which picks the top N% according to the ranking measure given. Note that this applies only if one ranking measure is given.
result_limit	The top L(imit) SQL from the (filtered) source ranked by the ranking measure
attribute_list	List of SQL statement attributes to return in the result. The possible values are: ■ TYPICAL - BASIC + SQL plan (without row source statistics) and without object reference list (default) ■ BASIC - all attributes (such as execution statistics and binds) are returned except the plans. The execution context is always part of the result. ■ ALL - return all attributes ■ Comma-separated list of attribute names this allows to return only a subset of SQL attributes: EXECUTION_STATISTICS, SQL_BINDS, SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS (similar to SQL_PLAN + row source statistics).
plan_filter	The plan filter

Table 154–44 (Cont.) SELECT_SQLSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_owner	The owner of the SQL tuning set, or NULL for the current schema owner
recursive_sql	Filter that includes recursive SQL in the SQL tuning set (HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL) or excludes it (NO_RECURSIVE_SQL).

Return Values

This function returns a one SQLSET_ROW per SQL_ID or PLAN_HASH_VALUE pair found in each data source.

Usage Notes

Filters provided to this function are evaluated as part of a SQL run by the current user. As such, they are executed with that user's security privileges and can contain any constructs and subqueries that user can access, but no more.

Examples

```
-- select from a sql tuning set
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE (P)
    FROM table(dbms_sqltune.select_sqlset('my_workload')) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
END;
/
```

SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Function

This function collects SQL statements from the workload repository. The overloaded forms let you:

- Collect SQL statements from all snapshots between `begin_snap` and `end_snap`.
- Collect SQL statements from a workload repository baseline.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY (
  begin_snap        IN NUMBER,
  end_snap          IN NUMBER,
  basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  object_filter     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure1  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure2  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure3  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  result_percentage IN NUMBER   := 1,
  result_limit      IN NUMBER   := NULL,
  attribute_list    IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  recursive_sql     IN VARCHAR2 := HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL)
 RETURN sys.sqlset PIPELINED;

DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_WORKLOAD REPOSITORY (
  baseline_name     IN VARCHAR2,
  basic_filter      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  object_filter     IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure1  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure2  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  ranking_measure3  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  result_percentage IN NUMBER   := 1,
  result_limit      IN NUMBER   := NULL,
  attribute_list    IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
  recursive_sql     IN VARCHAR2 := HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL)
 RETURN sys.sqlset PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 154–45 SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`begin_snap`	Begin snapshot (non-inclusive).
`end_snap`	End snapshot (inclusive).
`baseline_name`	The name of the baseline period.
`basic_filter`	The SQL predicate to filter the SQL from the workload repository defined on attributes of the `SQLSET_ROW`. If `basic_filter` is not set by the caller, the subprogram captures only statements of the type `CREATE TABLE`, `INSERT`, `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `MERGE`.
`object_filter`	Currently not supported.
`ranking_measure(n)`	An order-by clause on the selected SQL.

Table 154–45 (Cont.) SELECT_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
result_percentage	A filter which picks the top N% according to the ranking measure given. Note that this applies only if one ranking measure is given.
result_limit	The top L(imit) SQL from the (filtered) source ranked by the ranking measure.
attribute_list	List of SQL statement attributes to return in the result. The possible values are: ■ TYPICAL - BASIC + SQL plan (without row source statistics) and without object reference list (default) ■ BASIC - all attributes (such as execution statistics and binds) are returned except the plans. The execution context is always part of the result. ■ ALL - return all attributes ■ Comma-separated list of attribute names this allows to return only a subset of SQL attributes: EXECUTION_STATISTICS, SQL_BINDS, SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS (similar to SQL_PLAN + row source statistics).
recursive_sql	Filter that includes recursive SQL in the SQL tuning set (HAS_RECURSIVE_SQL) or excludes it (NO_RECURSIVE_SQL).

Return Values

This function returns a one SQLSET_ROW per SQL_ID or PLAN_HASH_VALUE pair found in each data source.

Usage Notes

Filters provided to this function are evaluated as part of a SQL run by the current user. As such, they are executed with that user's security privileges and can contain any constructs and subqueries that user can access, but no more.

Examples

```
-- select statements from snapshots 1-2
DECLARE
  cur sys_refcursor;
BEGIN
  OPEN cur FOR
    SELECT VALUE (P)
    FROM table(dbms_sqltune.select_workload_repository(1,2)) P;

  -- Process each statement (or pass cursor to load_sqlset)

  CLOSE cur;
END;
/
```

SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures

This procedure updates the value of a SQL tuning parameter of type `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER`.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER (
   task_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   parameter    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value        IN  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_SQLTUNE.SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER (
   task_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   parameter    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value        IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 154–46 SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`task_name`	Identifier of the task to execute

Table 154–46 (Cont.) SET_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter	Name of the parameter to set. The possible tuning parameters that can be set by this procedure using the parameter in the form VARCHAR2: ■ APPLY_CAPTURED_COMPILENV: indicates whether the advisor could use the compilation environment captured with the SQL statements. The default is 0 (that is, NO). ■ BASIC_FILTER: basic filter for SQL tuning set ■ DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the task is deleted ■ DEFAULT_EXECUTION_TYPE: the task defaults to this type of execution when none is specified by the EXECUTE_TUNING_TASK Function and Procedure ■ EXECUTION_DAYS_TO_EXPIRE: number of days until the tasks's executions is deleted (without deleting the task) ■ LOCAL_TIME_LIMIT: per-statement time out (seconds) ■ MODE: tuning scope (comprehensive, limited) ■ OBJECT_FILTER: object filter for SQL tuning set ■ PLAN_FILTER: plan filter for SQL tuning set (see SELECT_SQLSET for possible values) ■ RANK_MEASURE1: first ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RANK_MEASURE2: second possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RANK_MEASURE3: third possible ranking measure for SQL tuning set ■ RESUME_FILTER: a extra filter for SQL tuning sets besides BASIC_FILTER ■ SQL_LIMIT: maximum number of SQL statements to tune ■ SQL_PERCENTAGE: percentage filter of SQL tuning set statements ■ TEST_EXECUTE: FULL/AUTO/OFF. * FULL - test-execute for as much time as necessary, up to the local time limit for the SQL (or the global task time limit if no SQL time limit is set) * AUTO - test-execute for an automatically-chosen time proportional to the tuning time * OFF - do not test-execute ■ TIME_LIMIT: global time out (seconds) ■ USERNAME: username under which the statement is parsed
value	New value of the specified parameter

Usage Notes

When setting automatic tuning task parameters, use the SET_AUTO_TUNING_TASK_PARAMETER Procedures in the DBMS_AUTO_SQLTUNE package.

SQLTEXT_TO_SIGNATURE Function

This function returns a SQL text's signature. The signature can be used to identify SQL text in `dba_sql_profiles`.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.SQLTEXT_TO_SIGNATURE (
  sql_text    IN CLOB,  force_match IN BOOLEAN  := FALSE)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 154–47 SQLTEXT_TO_SIGNATURE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sql_text`	SQL text whose signature is required. Required.
`force_match`	If `TRUE`, this returns a signature that supports SQL matching with literal values transformed into bind variables. If `FALSE`, returns the signature based on the text with literals not transformed

Return Values

This function returns the signature of the specified SQL text.

UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure

This procedure copies profile data stored in the staging table to create profiles on the system.

> **See Also:** SQL Profile Subprograms on page 154-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF (
   profile_name          IN VARCHAR2 := '%',
   profile_category      IN VARCHAR2 := 'DEFAULT',
   replace               IN BOOLEAN,
   staging_table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner  IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–48 UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
profile_name	The name of the profile to unpack (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
profile_category	The category from which to unpack profiles (% wildcards acceptable, case-sensitive)
replace	The option to replace profiles if they already exist. Note that profiles cannot be replaced if one in the staging table has the same name as an active profile in a different SQL statement.If FALSE, this function raises errors if you try to create a profile that already exists
staging_table_name	The name of the table on which to perform the remap operation (case-insensitive unless double quoted). Required.
staging_schema_owner	The schema where the table resides, or NULL for current schema (case-insensitive unless double quoted)

Usage Notes

Using this procedure requires the CREATE ANY SQL PROFILE privilege and the SELECT privilege on staging table.

Examples

```
-- Unpack all profiles stored in a staging table
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF(replace            => FALSE, -
                                        staging_table_name => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');

-- If there is a failure during the unpack operation, users can find the profile
-- we failed on and perform a remap_stgtab_sqlprof operation targeting it.  Then
-- they can resume the unpack operation by setting replace to TRUE so that
-- the profiles that were already created are replaced
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLPROF(replace            => TRUE, -
                                        staging_table_name => 'PROFILE_STGTAB');
```

UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure

This procedure copies one or more SQL tuning sets from their location in the staging table into the SQL tuning sets schema, making them proper SQL tuning sets.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name          IN VARCHAR2 := '%',
   sqlset_owner         IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   replace              IN BOOLEAN,
   staging_table_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   staging_schema_owner IN VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–49 UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The name of the tuning set to unpack (not NULL). Wildcard characters ('%') are supported to unpack multiple tuning sets in a single call. For example, just specify '%' to unpack all tuning sets from the staging table.
sqlset_owner	The name of tuning set owner, or NULL for current schema owner. Wildcards supported.
replace	Replaces tuning set if they already exist.If FALSE, raises errors if you try to create a tuning set that already exists
staging_table_name	The name of the staging table, moved after a call to the PACK_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure (case-sensitive)
staging_schema_owner	The name of staging table owner, or NULL for current schema owner (case-sensitive)

Usage Notes

- Users can drop the staging table after this procedure completes successfully.
- The unpack procedure commits after successfully loading each SQL tuning set. If it fails with one tuning set, no part of that tuning set will have been unpacked, but those which the subprogram had already apprehended continue to exist.
- When failures occur due to SQL tuning set name or owner conflicts, users should use the REMAP_STGTAB_SQLSET Procedure to patch the staging table, and then call this procedure again to unpack those tuning sets that remain.

Examples

```
 -- unpack all STS in the staging table
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(sqlset_name         => '%', -
                                       sqlset_owner        => '%', -
                                       replace             => FALSE, -
                                       staging_table_name  => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');

-- errors can arise during STS unpack when a STS in the staging table has the
-- same name/owner as STS on the system.  In this case, users should call
```

```
-- remap_stgtab_sqlset to patch the staging table and with which to call unpack
-- Replace set to TRUE.
EXEC DBMS_SQLTUNE.UNPACK_STGTAB_SQLSET(sqlset_name         => '%', -
                                       sqlset_owner        => '%', -
                                       replace             => TRUE, -
                                       staging_table_name  => 'STGTAB_SQLSET');
```

UPDATE_SQLSET Procedures

This procedure updates selected fields for SQL statement in a SQL tuning set.

> **See Also:** SQL Tuning Set Subprograms on page 154-13 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_SQLTUNE.UPDATE_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_id           IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL);

DBMS_SQLTUNE.UPDATE_SQLSET (
   sqlset_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_id           IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value IN NUMBER := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 154–50 UPDATE_SQLSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	The SQL tuning set name
sql_id	The identifier of the statement to update
attribute_name	The name of the attribute to modify
attribute_value	The new value of the attribute

155

DBMS_STATS

With the DBMS_STATS package you can view and modify optimizer statistics gathered for database objects.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STATS

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_STATS` package.

Overview

The Oracle RDBMS allows you to collect statistics of many different kinds as an aid to improving performance. This package is concerned with optimizer statistics only. Given that Oracle sets automatic statistics collection of this kind on by default, this package is intended for only specialized cases.

The statistics of interest to be viewed or modified can reside in the dictionary or in a table created in the user's schema for this purpose. You can also collect and manage user-defined statistics for tables and domain indexes using this package.

For example, if the `DELETE_COLUMN_STATS` procedure is invoked on a column for which an association is defined, user-defined statistics for that column are deleted in addition to deletion of the standard statistics.

Only statistics stored in the dictionary have an impact on the cost-based optimizer. You can also use `DBMS_STATS` to gather statistics in parallel

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more information about "Managing Optimizer Statistics".

Deprecated Subprograms

> **Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprogram is deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c* and later:

- `GENERATE_STATS`

  This procdure is replaced by the `GATHER_INDEX_STAT` procedure.

  See Also: "GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure" on page 155-80

Types

Types for the minimum and maximum values and histogram endpoints include:

```
TYPE numarray  IS VARRAY(2050) OF NUMBER;
TYPE datearray IS VARRAY(2050) OF DATE;
TYPE chararray IS VARRAY(2050) OF VARCHAR2(4000);
TYPE rawarray  IS VARRAY(2050) OF RAW(2000);
TYPE fltarray  IS VARRAY(2050) OF BINARY_FLOAT;
TYPE dblarray  IS VARRAY(2050) OF BINARY_DOUBLE;
```

Types for listing stale tables include:

```
TYPE ObjectElem IS RECORD (
  ownname     VARCHAR2(30),     -- owner
  objtype     VARCHAR2(6),      -- 'TABLE' or 'INDEX'
  objname     VARCHAR2(30),     -- table/index
  partname    VARCHAR2(30),     -- partition
  subpartname VARCHAR2(30));    -- subpartition
type ObjectTab is TABLE of ObjectElem;
```

Type for displaying statistics difference report:

```
TYPE DiffRepElem IS RECORD (
 report     CLOB,              -- stats difference report
 maxdiffpct number);           -- max stats difference (percentage)
type DiffRepTab is table of DiffRepElem;
```

Constants

The DBMS_STATS package uses the constants shown in Table 155–1:

Table 155–1 DBMS_STATS Constants

Name	Type	Description
ADD_GLOBAL_PREFS	NUMBER	Copies global preferences
AUTO_CASCADE	BOOLEAN	Lets Oracle decide whether to collect statistics for indexes or not
AUTO_DEGREE	NUMBER	Lets Oracle select the degree of parallelism based on size of the object, number of CPUs and initialization parameters
AUTO_INVALIDATE	BOOLEAN	Lets Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors
AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE	NUMBER	Indicates that auto-sample size algorithms should be used
PURGE_ALL	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	A flag that can be passed to the PURGE_STATS Procedure and unconditionally deletes all the history statistics. The deletion uses TRUNCATE statements on the various dictionary statistics tables holding the history of statistics.
RECLAIM_SYNOPSIS	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	A constant used for reclaiming synopsis table space.

Operational Notes

The DBMS_STATS subprograms perform the following general operations:

- Gathering Optimizer Statistics
- Setting or Getting Statistics
- Deleting Statistics
- Transferring Statistics
- Locking or Unlocking Statistics
- Restoring and Purging Statistics History
- User-Defined Statistics
- Pending Statistics
- Comparing Statistics
- Extended Statistics

Most of the DBMS_STATS procedures include the three parameters statown, stattab, and statid. These parameters allow you to store statistics in your own tables (outside of the dictionary), which does not affect the optimizer. Therefore, you can maintain and experiment with *sets* of statistics.

The stattab parameter specifies the name of a table in which to hold statistics, and it is assumed that it resides in the same schema as the object for which statistics are collected (unless the statown parameter is specified). You can create multiple tables with different stattab identifiers to hold separate sets of statistics.

Additionally, you can maintain different sets of statistics within a single stattab by using the statid parameter, which avoids cluttering the user's schema.

For the SET and GET procedures, if stattab is not provided (that is, NULL), then the operation works directly on the dictionary statistics; therefore, you do not need to create these statistics tables if they only plan to modify the dictionary directly. However, if stattab is not NULL, then the SET or GET operation works on the specified user statistics table, and not the dictionary.

You can change the default values of some of the parameters of DBMS_STATS procedures using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Most of the procedures in this package commit the current transaction, perform the operation, and then commit again.

Most of the procedures have a parameter, force which allows you to override any lock on statistics.Whenever statistics in dictionary are modified, old versions of statistics are saved automatically for future restoring.

Gathering Optimizer Statistics

Use the following subprograms to gather certain classes of optimizer statistics, with possible performance improvements over the ANALYZE command:

GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedures
GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure
GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure
GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure
GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedures

GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure

The GATHER_* procedures also collect user-defined statistics for columns and domain indexes.

The statown, stattab, and statid parameters instruct the package to back up current statistics in the specified table before gathering new statistics.

Oracle also provides the following procedure for generating statistics for derived objects when you have sufficient statistics on related objects:

GENERATE_STATS Procedure

Setting or Getting Statistics

Use the following subprograms to store and retrieve individual column-related, index-related, and table-related statistics:

PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedures
PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_NVARCHAR Procedure
PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ROWID Procedure

SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure
SET_INDEX_STATS Procedures
SET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
SET_TABLE_STATS Procedure

GET_COLUMN_STATS Procedures
GET_INDEX_STATS Procedures
GET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
GET_TABLE_STATS Procedure

In the special versions of the SET_*_STATS procedures for setting user-defined statistics, the following, if provided, are stored in the dictionary or user statistics table:

- User-defined statistics
- Owner of statistics type
- Name of statistics type

The user-defined statistics and the corresponding statistics type are inserted into the USTATS$ dictionary table. You can specify user-defined statistics without specifying the statistics type name.

The special versions of the GET_*_STATS procedures return user-defined statistics and the statistics type owner and name as OUT arguments corresponding to the schema object specified. If user-defined statistics are not collected, NULL values are returned.

Deleting Statistics

The DELETE_* procedures delete both user-defined statistics and the standard statistics for the given schema object.

DELETE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure
DELETE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure
DELETE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure
DELETE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure
DELETE_INDEX_STATS Procedure
DELETE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

DELETE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
DELETE_TABLE_STATS Procedure

Note that DELETE_TABLE_STATS, DELETE_DICTIONARY_STATS, DELETE_DATABASE_STATS and DELETE_SCHEMA_STATS have a parameter stat_category which specifies which statistics to delete. The parameter accepts multiple values separated by comma. The supported values are 'OBJECT_STATS' (table statistics, column statistics and index statistics) and 'SYNOPSES' (auxiliary statistics created when statistics are incrementally maintained). The default is 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES'.

Transferring Statistics

Use the following procedures for creating and dropping the user statistics table.

CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure
DROP_STAT_TABLE Procedure

Use the following procedures to transfer statistics

- from the dictionary to a user statistics table (EXPORT_*)
- from a user statistics table to the dictionary (IMPORT_*)

EXPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
EXPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure

IMPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
IMPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure

Note: Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Locking or Unlocking Statistics

Use the following procedures to lock and unlock statistics on objects.

LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure
LOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure
LOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure

UNLOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure
UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure
UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure

The LOCK_* procedures either freeze the current set of the statistics or to keep the statistics untouched.When statistics on a table are locked, all the statistics depending on the table, including table statistics, column statistics, histograms and statistics on all dependent indexes, are considered to be locked.

Restoring and Purging Statistics History

Use the following procedures to restore statistics as of a specified timestamp. This is useful in case newly collected statistics leads to some sub-optimal execution plans and the administrator wants to revert to the previous set of statistics.

RESET_GLOBAL_PREF_DEFAULTS Procedure
RESTORE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure
RESTORE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure
RESTORE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure
RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure
RESTORE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure
RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure

Whenever statistics in dictionary are modified, old versions of statistics are saved automatically for future restoring. The old statistics are purged automatically at regular intervals based on the statistics history retention setting and the time of recent statistics gathering performed in the system. Retention is configurable using the ALTER_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Procedure.

The other DBMS_STATS procedures related to restoring statistics are:

- PURGE_STATS Procedure: This procedure lets you manually purge old versions beyond a time stamp.
- GET_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Function: This function gets the current statistics history retention value.
- GET_STATS_HISTORY_AVAILABILITY Function: This function gets the oldest time stamp where statistics history is available. Users cannot restore statistics to a time stamp older than the oldest time stamp.

RESTORE_* operations are not supported for user defined statistics.

User-Defined Statistics

The DBMS_STATS package supports operations on user-defined statistics. When a domain index or column is associated with a statistics type (using the associate statement), operations on the index or column manipulate user-defined statistics. For example, gathering statistics for a domain index (for which an association with a statistics type exists) using the GET_INDEX_STATS Procedures invokes the user-defined statistics collection method of the associated statistics type. Similarly, delete, transfer, import, and export operations manipulate user-defined statistics.

SET_* and GET_* operations for user-defined statistics are also supported using a special version of the SET and GET interfaces for columns and indexes.

EXPORT_*, IMPORT_* and RESTORE_* operations are not supported for user defined statistics.

Pending Statistics

The package gathers statistics and stores it in the dictionary by default. User's can store these statistics in the system's private area instead of the dictionary by turning the PUBLISH option to FALSE using the SET*PREFS procedures. The default value for

PUBLISH is TRUE.The statistics stored in private area are not used by Cost Based Optimizer unless parameter optimizer_use_pending_statistics is set to TRUE. The default value of this parameter is FALSE and this boolean parameter can be set at the session/system level. Users can verify the impact of the new statistics on query plans by using the pending statistics on a session.

Pending statistics provide a mechanism to verify the impact of the new statistics on query plans before making them available for general use. There are two scenarios to verify the query plans:

- Export the pending statistics (use the EXPORT_PENDING_STATS Procedure) to a test system, then run the query workload and check the performance or plans.
- Set optimizer_use_pending_statistics to TRUE in a session on the system where pending statistics have been gathered, run the workload, and check the performance or plans.

Once the performance or query plans have been verified, the pending statistics can be published (run the PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS Procedure) if the performance is acceptable or delete (run the DELETE_PENDING_STATS Procedure) if not.

Pending statistics can be published, exported, or deleted. The following procedures are provided to manage pending statistics:

- DELETE_PENDING_STATS Procedure
- EXPORT_PENDING_STATS Procedure
- PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS Procedure

Comparing Statistics

The DIFF_TABLE_STATS_* statistics can be used to compare statistics for a table from two different sources. The statistics can be from:

- two different user statistics tables
- a single user statistics table containing two sets of statistics that can be identified using statids
- a user statistics table and dictionary history
- pending statistics

The functions also compare the statistics of the dependent objects (indexes, columns, partitions). They displays statistics of the object(s) from both sources if the difference between those statistics exceeds a certain threshold. The threshold can be specified as an argument to the function, with a default of 10%. The statistics corresponding to the first source (stattab1 or time1) will be used as basis for computing the differential percentage.

Extended Statistics

This package allows you to collect statistics for column groups and expressions. The statistics collected for column groups and expressions are called "extended statistics".

Statistics on column groups are used by optimizer for accounting correlation between columns. For example, if a query has predicates c1=1 and c2=1 and if there are statistics on column group (c1, c2), the optimizer will use this statistics for estimating the combined selectivity of the predicates.The expression statistics are used by optimizer for estimating selectivity of predicates on those expressions. The extended statistics are similar to column statistics and the procedures that take columns names will accept extended statistics names in place of column names.

Related subprograms:

- CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS Function
- DROP_EXTENDED_STATS Procedure
- SHOW_EXTENDED_STATS_NAME Function

Deprecated Subprograms

The following subprograms are obsolete with Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2):

- GET_PARAM Function

  Instead, use GET_PREFS Function
- SET_PARAM Procedure

  Instead, use SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure
- RESET_PARAM_DEFAULTS Procedure

  Instead use RESET_GLOBAL_PREF_DEFAULTS Procedure

Data Structures

The DBMS_STATS package defines a RECORD type.

RECORD Types

- STAT_REC Record Type

STAT_REC Record Type

This record type is provided for users in case they want to set column statistics manually. Its fields allow specifying column min/max values, as well as a histogram for a column.

Syntax

```
TYPE STATREC IS RECORD (
  epc    NUMBER,
  minval RAW(2000),
  maxval RAW(2000),
  bkvals NUMARRAY,
  novals NUMARRAY,
  chvals CHARARRAY,
  eavals RAWARRAY,
  rpcnts NUMARRAY,
  eavs   NUMBER);
```

Fields

Table 155–2 STAT_REC Attributes

Field	Description
epc	Number of buckets in histogram
minval	Minimum value
maxval	Maximum value
bkvals	Array of bucket numbers
novals	Array of normalized end point values
chvals	Array of dumped end point values
eavals	Array of end point actual values
rpcnts	Array of end point value frequencies
eavs	A number indicating whether actual end point values are needed in the histogram. If using the PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedures, this field will be automatically filled.

Summary of DBMS_STATS Subprograms

Table 155–3 DBMS_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Procedure on page 155-22	Changes the statistics history retention value
CONVERT_RAW_VALUE Procedures on page 155-23	Converts the internal representation of a minimum value, maximum value, or histogram endpoint actual value into a datatype-specific value
CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_NVARCHAR Procedure on page 155-24	Converts the internal representation of a minimum value, maximum value, or histogram endpoint actual value into a datatype-specific value
CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_ROWID Procedure on page 155-25	Converts the internal representation of a minimum value, maximum value, or histogram endpoint actual value into a datatype-specific value
COPY_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-26	Copies the statistics of the source [sub] partition to the destination [sub] partition after scaling
CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS Function on page 155-28	Creates a virtual column for a user specified column group or an expression in a table
CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure on page 155-30	Creates a table with name `stattab` in `ownname`'s schema which is capable of holding statistics
DELETE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure on page 155-31	Deletes column-related statistics
DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-33	Deletes the statistics preferences of all the tables
DELETE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure on page 155-35	Deletes statistics for the entire database
DELETE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure on page 155-36	Deletes statistics for all dictionary schemas ('`SYS`', '`SYSTEM`' and RDBMS component schemas)
DELETE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure on page 155-35	Deletes statistics of all fixed tables
DELETE_INDEX_STATS Procedure on page 155-39	Deletes index-related statistics
DELETE_PENDING_STATS Procedure on page 155-41	Deletes the private statistics that have been collected but have not been published
DELETE_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure on page 155-42	Deletes the processing rate of a given statistics source. If the source is not specified, it deletes the statistics of all the sources
DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure on page 155-43	Deletes the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name
DELETE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure on page 155-45	Deletes schema-related statistics
DELETE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-46	Deletes system statistics
DELETE_TABLE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-47	Deletes statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema
DELETE_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-49	Deletes table-related statistics

Table 155–3 (Cont.) DBMS_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_HISTORY Function on page 155-51	Compares statistics for a table from two timestamps in past and compare the statistics as of that timestamps
DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_PENDING Function on page 155-52	Compares pending statistics and statistics as of a timestamp or statistics from dictionary
DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_STATTAB Function on page 155-53	Compares statistics for a table from two different sources
DROP_EXTENDED_STATS Procedure on page 155-55	Drops the statistics entry that is created for the user specified extension
DROP_STAT_TABLE Procedure on page 155-56	Drops a user statistics table created by `CREATE_STAT_TABLE`
EXPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure on page 155-57	Retrieves statistics for a particular column and stores them in the user statistics table identified by `stattab`
EXPORT_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-58	Exports the statistics preferences of all the tables
EXPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure on page 155-59	Retrieves statistics for all objects in the database and stores them in the user statistics table identified by `statown.stattab`
EXPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure on page 155-60	Retrieves statistics for all dictionary schemas ('`SYS`', '`SYSTEM`' and RDBMS component schemas) and stores them in the user statistics table identified by `stattab`
EXPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure on page 155-61	Retrieves statistics for fixed tables and stores them in the user statistics table identified by `stattab`
EXPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure on page 155-62	Retrieves statistics for a particular index and stores them in the user statistics table identified by `stattab`
EXPORT_PENDING_STATS Procedure on page 155-63	Exports the statistics gathered and stored as pending
EXPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure on page 155-64	Exports the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name
EXPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure on page 155-65	Retrieves statistics for all objects in the schema identified by `ownname` and stores them in the user statistics table identified by `stattab`
EXPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-66	Retrieves system statistics and stores them in the user statistics table
EXPORT_TABLE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-67	Exports statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema into the specified statistics table
EXPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-68	Retrieves statistics for a particular table and stores them in the user statistics table
FLUSH_DATABASE_MONITORING_INFO Procedure on page 155-70	Flushes in-memory monitoring information for all the tables to the dictionary
GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedures on page 155-71	Gathers statistics for all objects in the database
GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure on page 155-71	Gathers statistics for dictionary schemas '`SYS`', '`SYSTEM`' and schemas of RDBMS components
GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure on page 155-79	Gathers statistics of fixed objects

Table 155–3 (Cont.) DBMS_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on page 155-80	Gathers index statistics
GATHER_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure on page 155-82	Starts the job of gathering the processing rates which end after `interval` defined in minutes
GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedures on page 155-83	Gathers statistics for all objects in a schema
GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-87	Gathers system statistics
GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-89	Gathers table and column (and index) statistics
GENERATE_STATS Procedure on page 155-93	Generates object statistics from previously collected statistics of related objects
GET_COLUMN_STATS Procedures on page 155-94	Gets all column-related information
GET_INDEX_STATS Procedures on page 155-96	Gets all index-related information
GET_PARAM Function on page 155-99	Gets the default value of parameters of `DBMS_STATS` procedures [see Deprecated Subprograms on page 155-13]
GET_PREFS Function on page 155-100	Gets the default value of the specified preference
GET_STATS_HISTORY_ AVAILABILITY Function on page 155-105	Gets the oldest timestamp where statistics history is available
GET_STATS_HISTORY_ RETENTION Function on page 155-106	Returns the current statistics history retention value
GET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-107	Gets system statistics from `stattab`, or from the dictionary if `stattab` is `NULL`
GET_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-109	Gets all table-related information
IMPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure on page 155-111	Retrieves statistics for a particular column from the user statistics table identified by `stattab` and stores them in the dictionary
IMPORT_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-113	Imports the statistics preferences of all the tables
IMPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure on page 155-114	Retrieves statistics for all objects in the database from the user statistics table and stores them in the dictionary
IMPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure on page 155-116	Retrieves statistics for all dictionary schemas ('`SYS`', '`SYSTEM`' and RDBMS component schemas) from the user statistics table and stores them in the dictionary
IMPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_ STATS Procedure on page 155-118	Retrieves statistics for fixed tables from the user statistics table identified by `stattab` and stores them in the dictionary
IMPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure on page 155-119	Retrieves statistics for a particular index from the user statistics table identified by `stattab` and stores them in the dictionary

Table 155–3 (Cont.) DBMS_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
IMPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure on page 155-121	Imports the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name
IMPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure on page 155-122	Retrieves statistics for all objects in the schema identified by `ownname` from the user statistics table and stores them in the dictionary
IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-124	Retrieves system statistics from the user statistics table and stores them in the dictionary
IMPORT_TABLE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-125	Sets the statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema
IMPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-126	Retrieves statistics for a particular table from the user statistics table identified by `stattab` and stores them in the dictionary
LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure on page 155-128	Locks statistics for a partition
LOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure on page 155-129	Locks the statistics of all tables of a schema
LOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-130	Locks the statistics on the table
MERGE_COL_USAGE Procedure on page 155-131	Merges column usage information from a source database, by means of a `dblink`, into the local database
PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedures on page 155-132	Converts user-specified minimum, maximum, and histogram endpoint datatype-specific values into Oracle's internal representation for future storage using the SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure
PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ NVARCHAR Procedure on page 155-135	Converts user-specified minimum, maximum, and histogram endpoint datatype-specific values into Oracle's internal representation for future storage using the SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure
PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ ROWID Procedure on page 155-137	Converts user-specified minimum, maximum, and histogram endpoint datatype-specific values into Oracle's internal representation for future storage using the SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure
PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS Procedure on page 155-139	Publishes the statistics gathered and stored as pending
PURGE_STATS Procedure on page 155-140	Purges old versions of statistics saved in the dictionary
REMAP_STAT_TABLE Procedure on page 155-141	Remaps the names of objects in the user statistics table
REPORT_COL_USAGE Function on page 155-142	Reports the recorded column (group) usage information
REPORT_GATHER_AUTO_ STATS Function on page 155-143	Runs the auto statistics gathering job in reporting mode
REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_ STATS Functions on page 155-146	Runs the GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedures in reporting mode.
REPORT_GATHER_ DICTIONARY_STATS Functions on page 155-152	Runs the GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure in reporting mode
REPORT_GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_ STATS Function on page 155-158	Runs the GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure in reporting mode

Table 155–3 (Cont.) DBMS_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_ STATS Functions on page 155-161	Runs the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedures in reporting mode
REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_ STATS Function on page 155-167	Runs the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure in reporting mode
REPORT_SINGLE_STATS_ OPERATION Function on page 155-172	Generates a report for the provided operation optionally in a particular pluggable database (PDB) in a multitenant environment
REPORT_STATS_OPERATIONS Function on page 155-175	Generates a report of all statistics operations that take place between two timestamps which may or may not have been provided
RESET_GLOBAL_PREF_ DEFAULTS Procedure on page 155-177	Resets the default values of all parameters to Oracle recommended values
RESET_PARAM_DEFAULTS Procedure on page 155-178	Resets global preferences to default values [see Deprecated Subprograms on page 155-13]
RESTORE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure on page 155-180	Restores statistics of all dictionary tables (tables of 'SYS', 'SYSTEM' and RDBMS component schemas) as of a specified timestamp
RESTORE_FIXED_OBJECTS_ STATS Procedure on page 155-181	Restores statistics of all fixed tables as of a specified timestamp
RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure on page 155-182	Restores statistics of all tables of a schema as of a specified timestamp
RESTORE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-183	Restores statistics of all tables of a schema as of a specified timestamp
RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-184	Restores statistics of a table as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp), as well as statistics of associated indexes and columns
SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure on page 155-185	Iterates over the SQL statements in the specified SQL tuning set, compiles them and seeds column usage information for the columns that appear in these statements
SET_COLUMN_STATS Procedures on page 155-186	Sets column-related information
SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-188	Sets the statistics preferences of all the tables
SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure on page 155-185	Sets the global statistics preferences
SET_INDEX_STATS Procedures on page 155-196	Sets index-related information
SET_PARAM Procedure on page 155-199	Sets default values for parameters of DBMS_STATS procedures [see Deprecated Subprograms on page 155-13]
SET_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure on page 155-201	Sets the value of rate of processing for a given operation
SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure on page 155-202	Sets the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name
SET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure on page 155-207	Sets system statistics

Table 155–3 (Cont.) DBMS_STATS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure on page 155-209	Sets the statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema
SET_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-213	Sets table-related information
SHOW_EXTENDED_STATS_ NAME Function on page 155-215	Returns the name of the virtual column that is created for the user-specified extension
TRANSFER_STATS Procedure on page 155-216	Transfers statistics for specified table(s) from a remote database specified by `dblink` to the local database
UNLOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure on page 155-217	Unlocks the statistics for a partition
UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure on page 155-218	Unlocks the statistics on all the tables in schema
UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure on page 155-219	Unlocks the statistics on the table
UPGRADE_STAT_TABLE Procedure on page 155-220	Upgrades user statistics on an older table

ALTER_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Procedure

This procedure changes the statistics history retention value. Statistics history retention is used by both the automatic purge and PURGE_STATS Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.ALTER_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION (
   retention       IN     NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 155–4 ALTER_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
retention	The retention time in days. The statistics history will be retained for at least these many number of days.The valid range is [1,365000]. Also you can use the following values for special purposes: ■ -1: Statistics history is never purged by automatic purge ■ 0: Old statistics are never saved. The automatic purge will delete all statistics history ■ NULL: Change statistics history retention to default value

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

CONVERT_RAW_VALUE Procedures

This procedure converts the internal representation of a minimum value, maximum value, or histogram endpoint actual value into a datatype-specific value. The `minval`, `maxval`, and `eavals` fields of the `StatRec` structure as filled in by `GET_COLUMN_STATS` or `PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES` are appropriate values for input.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT BINARY_FLOAT);

DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT BINARY_DOUBLE);

DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT DATE);

DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–5 CONVERT_RAW_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rawval`	Raw representation of a column minimum, maximum, histogram end point actual value
`resval`	Converted, type-specific value

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_NVARCHAR Procedure

This procedure converts the internal representation of a a minimum value, maximum value, or histogram end point actual value. The `minval`, `maxval` and `eavals` fields of the `StatRec` structure as filled in by `GET_COLUMN_STATS` or `PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES` are appropriate values for input.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_NVARCHAR (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT NVARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–6 CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_NVARCHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rawval`	The raw representation of a column minimum or maximum datatype-specific output parameters
`resval`	The converted, type-specific value

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_ROWID Procedure

This procedure converts the internal representation of a a minimum value, maximum value, or histogram end point actual value. The `minval`, `maxval` and `eavals` fields of the `StatRec` structure as filled in by `GET_COLUMN_STATS` or `PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES` are appropriate values for input.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_ROWID (
   rawval     RAW,
   resval OUT ROWID);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(convert_raw_value_rowid, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 155–7 CONVERT_RAW_VALUE_ROWID Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rawval`	The raw representation of a column minimum or maximum datatype-specific output parameters
`resval`	The converted, type-specific value

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

COPY_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure copies the statistics of the source [sub] partition to the destination [sub] partition. It also copies statistics of all dependent object such as columns and local indexes. If the statistics for source are not available then nothing is copied. It can optionally scale the statistics (such as the number of `blks`, or number of rows) based on the given `scale_factor`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.COPY_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   srcpartname      VARCHAR2,
   dstpartname      VARCHAR2,
   scale_factor     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 1,
   flags            NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–8 COPY_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ownname`	Schema of the table of source and destination [sub] partitions
`tabname`	Table name of source and destination [sub] partitions
`srcpartname`	Source [sub] partition
`dtspartname`	Destination [sub] partition
`scale_factor`	Scale factor to scale `nblks`, `nrows` etc. in `dstpartname`
`flags`	For internal Oracle use (should be left as `NULL`)
`force`	When value of this argument is `TRUE` copy statistics even if the destination [sub]partition is locked

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Invalid [sub]partition name

`ORA-20001`: Bad input value

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY` privilege. For objects owned by `SYS`, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY` privilege or the `SYSDBA` privilege.

This procedure updates the minimum and maximum values of destination partition for the first partitioning column as follows:

- If the partitioning type is `HASH` the minimum and maximum values of the destination partition are same as that of the source partition.
- If the partitioning type is `LIST` then
  - If the destination partition is a `NOT DEFAULT` partition then

        * The minimum value of the destination partition is set to the minimum value of the value list that describes the destination partition
        * The maximum value of the destination partition is set to the maximum value of the value list that describes the destination partition.
    - Alternatively, if the destination partition is a `DEFAULT` partition, then
        * The minimum value of the destination partition is set to the minimum value of the source partition
        * The maximum value of the destination partition is set to the maximum value of the source partition
- If the partitioning type is `RANGE` then
    - The minimum value of the destination partition is set to the high bound of previous partition unless the destination partition is the first partition. For the first partition, the minimum value is set to the high bound of the destination partition.
    - The maximum value of the destination partition is set to the high bound of the destination partition unless the high bound of the destination partition is `MAXVALUE`, in which case the maximum value of the destination partition is set to the high bound of the previous partition.
    - If the source partition column's minimum value is equal to its maximum value, and both are equal to the source partition's lower bound, and it has a single distinct value, then the destination partition column's minimum and maximum values are both set to the destination partition's lower bound. This is done for all partitioning columns.

      If the above condition does not apply, second and subsequent partitioning columns are updated as follows. The destination partition column's maximum value is set to the greater of the destination partition upper bound and the source partition column's maximum value, with one exception. If the destination partition is `D` and its preceding partition is `D-1` and the key column to be adjusted is `Cn`, the maximum value for `Cn` is set to the upper bound of `D` (ignoring the maximum value of the source partition column) provided that the upper bounds of the previous key column `Cn-1` are the same in partitions `D` and `D-1`.
- If the minimum and maximum values are different for a column after modifications, and if the number of distinct values is less than 1, the number of distinct values is updated as 2.
- This procedure does not copy statistics of the underlying subpartitions if the source/destination is a partition of a composite partitioned table.

CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS Function

This function creates a column statistics entry in the system for a user specified column group or an expression in a table. Statistics for this extension will be gathered when user or auto statistics gathering job gathers statistics for the table. We call statistics for such an extension, "extended statistics". This function returns the name of this newly created entry for the extension.

This second form creates statistics extension based on the column group usage recorded by the SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure. This function returns a report of extensions created.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    VARCHAR2,
   extension  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_STATS.CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    VARCHAR2,
   extension  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–9 CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name of a table
tabname	Name of the table
extension	Can be either a column group or an expression. Suppose the specified table has two column c1, c2. An example column group can be "(c1, c2)" and an example expression can be "(c1 + c2)".

Return Values

This function returns the name of this newly created entry for the extension.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges / creating extension is not supported

ORA-20001: Error when processing extension

ORA-20007: Extension already exists

ORA-20008: Reached the upper limit on number of extensions

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

There are nine restrictions on the extension:

- The extension cannot contain a virtual column.
- Extensions cannot be created on tables owned by `SYS`.
- Extensions cannot be created on cluster tables, index organized tables, temporary tables or external tables.
- The total number of extensions in a table cannot be greater than a maximum of (20, 10% of number of non-virtual columns in the table).
- The number of columns in a column group must be in the range [2, 32].
- A column can not appear more than once in a column group.
- A column group can not contain expressions.
- An expression must contain at least one column.
- An expression can not contain a subquery.
- The `COMPATIBLE` parameter needs to be 11.0.0.0.0 or greater

CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates a table with name `stattab` in `ownname`'s schema which is capable of holding statistics. The columns and types that compose this table are not relevant as it should be accessed solely through the procedures in this package.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.CREATE_STAT_TABLE (
   ownname             VARCHAR2,
   stattab             VARCHAR2,
   tblspace            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   global_temporary    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–10 CREATE_STAT_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ownname`	Name of the schema
`stattab`	Name of the table to create. This value should be passed as the `stattab` parameter to other procedures when the user does not want to modify the dictionary statistics directly.
`tblspace`	Tablespace in which to create the statistics tables. If none is specified, then they are created in the user's default tablespace.
`global_temporary`	Whether or not the table should be created as a global temporary table

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Table already exists or insufficient privileges

`ORA-20001`: Tablespace does not exist

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need whichever privileges are required for creating a table in the specified schema.

DELETE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes column-related statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname         VARCHAR2,
   tabname         VARCHAR2,
   colname         VARCHAR2,
   partname        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cascade_parts   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                  get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force           BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   col_stat_type   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL');
```

Parameters

Table 155–11 DELETE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs
colname	Name of the column or extension
partname	Name of the table partition for which to delete the statistics. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global column statistics are deleted.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to delete the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are deleted directly from the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL).
cascade_parts	If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then setting this to true causes the deletion of statistics for this column for all underlying partitions as well.
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	When value of this argument is TRUE, deletes column statistics even if locked

Table 155–11 (Cont.) DELETE_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
col_stat_type	Type of column statistics to be deleted.This argument takes the following values: ■ HISTOGRAM - delete column histogram only ■ ALL - delete base column statistics and histogram

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to delete the statistics preferences of all the tables, excluding the tables owned by Oracle. These tables can by included by passing TRUE for the add_sys parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS (
    pname            IN   VARCHAR2,
    add_sys          IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–12 DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Preference name. The existing value for following preferences can be deleted and default preference values will be used: ■ CASCADE ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ GRANULARITY ■ PUBLISH ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS
.	CASCADE - The value determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics
.	DEGREE - The value determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - The value determines the percentage of rows to estimate.
.	METHOD_OPT - The value controls column statistics collection and histogram creation. When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed.
.	NO_INVALIDATE - The value controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered.
.	GRANULARITY - The value determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned)

Table 155–12 (Cont.) DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed.
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan.
	INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE.
	INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale.
.	STALE_PERCENT - This value determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered.
	GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This controls whether the statistics gathered for a global temporary table should be stored as shared statistics or session statistics.
	TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor.
	OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. T
add_sys	Determines whether SYS tables will be included.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or Illegal input values

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.
- All pname arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS('CASCADE', FALSE);
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_DATABASE_PREFS('ESTIMATE_PERCENT',TRUE);
```

See Also: *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide* for more complex examples of how to use this subprogram.

DELETE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes statistics for all the tables in a database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_DATABASE_STATS (
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                       get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   stat_category    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_DEL_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–13 DELETE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to delete the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are deleted directly in the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	When the value of this argument is TRUE, deletes statistics of tables in a database even if they are locked
stat_category	Statistics to delete. It accepts multiple values separated by comma: ▪ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics ▪ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics The default is 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES'

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.

DELETE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes statistics for all dictionary schemas ('SYS', 'SYSTEM' and RDBMS component schemas).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   stattab        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                 get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   stattype       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL',
   force          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   stat_category  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_DEL_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–14 DELETE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to delete the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are deleted directly in the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure
stattype	Statistics type
force	When the value of this argument is TRUE, deletes statistics of tables in a database even if they are locked
stat_category	Statistics to delete. It accepts multiple values separated by comma: ▪ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics ▪ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics The default is 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES'

Usage Notes

You must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege to execute this procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

DELETE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes statistics of all fixed tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS (
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                     get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–15 DELETE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	The user statistics table identifier describing from where to delete the current statistics. If stattab is NULL, the statistics will be deleted directly in the dictionary.
statid	The (optional) identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab. This only applies if stattab is not NULL.
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure
force	Ignores the statistics lock on objects and deletes the statistics if set to TRUE

Usage Notes

You must have the SYSDBA or ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY system privilege to execute this procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

DELETE_INDEX_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes index-related statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   indname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cascade_parts    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                     get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   stattype         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL',
   force            BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
   stat_category    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_DEL_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–16 DELETE_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
indname	Name of the index
partname	Name of the index partition for which to delete the statistics. If the index is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then index statistics are deleted at the global level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to delete the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are deleted directly from the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
cascade_parts	If the index is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then setting this to TRUE causes the deletion of statistics for this index for all underlying partitions as well
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattype	Statistics type
force	When value of this argument is TRUE, deletes index statistics even if locked

Table 155–16 (Cont.) DELETE_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stat_category	Statistics to delete. It accepts multiple values separated by comma: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics The default is 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES'

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

DELETE_PENDING_STATS Procedure

This procedure is used to delete the pending statistics that have been collected but have not been published.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_PENDING_STATS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT USER,
    tabname    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–17 DELETE_PENDING_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- If the parameter tabname is NULL delete applies to all tables of the specified schema.
- The default owner/schema is the user who runs the procedure.
- To run this procedure, you need to have the same privilege for gathering statistics on the tables that will be touched by this procedure.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_PENDING_STATS('SH', 'SALES');
```

DELETE_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure

This procedure deletes the processing rate of a given statistics source. If the source is not specified, it deletes the statistics of all the sources.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_PROCESSING_RATE (
   stat_source      IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–18 DELETE_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stat_source	Source of processing rates: ■ 'MANUAL': values set by the user manually using the SET_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure ■ 'CALIBRATION' : values collected by the calibration GATHER_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure run explicitly by the user ■ 'FEEDBACK': values obtained by time feedback

Usage Notes

You require the OPTIMIZER_PROCESSING_RATE role to run this procedure since AUTO DOP uses processing rates to determine the optimal degree of parallelism for a SQL statement.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input value

DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to delete the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS (
    ownname    IN   VARCHAR2,
    pname      IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–19 DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
pname	Preference name. The existing value for following preferences can be deleted and default preference values will be used: ■ CASCADE ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ GRANULARITY ■ PUBLISH ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS
.	CASCADE - The value determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics
.	DEGREE - The value determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - The value determines the percentage of rows to estimate.
.	METHOD_OPT - The value controls column statistics collection and histogram creation. When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed.
.	NO_INVALIDATE - The value controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered.
.	GRANULARITY - The value determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned)

Table 155–19 (Cont.) DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed.
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan.
	INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE.
	INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale.
.	STALE_PERCENT - This value determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered.
	GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This controls whether the statistics gathered for a global temporary table should be stored as shared statistics or session statistics.
	TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor.
	OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. T

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges / Schema "<schema>" does not exist

ORA-20001: Invalid or Illegal input values

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner, or have the SYSDBA privilege, or have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH', 'CASCADE');
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH', 'ESTIMATE_PERCENT');
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH', 'DEGREE');
```

DELETE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes statistics for an entire schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–20 DELETE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to delete the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are deleted directly in the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	When value of this argument is TRUE, deletes statistics of tables in a schema even if locked

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

DELETE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes workload statistics (collected using the 'INTERVAL' or 'START' and 'STOP' options) and resets the default to noworkload statistics (collected using 'NOWORKLOAD' option) if stattab is not specified. If stattab is specified, the subprogram deletes all system statistics with the associated statid from the stattab.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_SYSTEM_STATS (
   stattab       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–21 DELETE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	Identifier of the user statistics table where the statistics will be saved
statid	Optional identifier associated with the statistics saved in the stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table; may need to be upgraded

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS role.

DELETE_TABLE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to delete the statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_TABLE_PREFS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    tabname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    pname      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–22 DELETE_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name
pname	Preference name. The existing value for following preferences can be deleted and default preference values will be used: ■ AUTOSTATS_TARGET ■ CASCADE ■ CONCURRENT ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ GRANULARITY ■ PUBLISH ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS AUTOSTATS_TARGET - This preference is applicable only for auto statistics collection. The value of this parameter controls the objects considered for statistics collection.
.	CASCADE - The value determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics CONCURRENT - This preference determines whether statistics will be gathered concurrently on multiple objects, or serially, one object at a time.
.	DEGREE - The value determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - The value determines the percentage of rows to estimate.

Table 155–22 (Cont.) DELETE_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	METHOD_OPT - The value controls column statistics collection and histogram creation. When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed.
.	NO_INVALIDATE - The value controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered.
.	GRANULARITY - The value determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned)
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed.
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan.
	INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE.
	INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale.
.	STALE_PERCENT - This value determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered.
	GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This controls whether the statistics gathered for a global temporary table should be stored as shared statistics or session statistics.
	TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor.
	OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. T

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or Illegal input values

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner of the table, be granted ANALYZE privilege on the table, or ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES', 'CASCADE');
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES', 'DEGREE');
```

DELETE_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure deletes table-related statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DELETE_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cascade_parts    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   cascade_columns  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   cascade_indexes  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                     get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–23 DELETE_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs
partname	Name of the table [sub]partition from which to get the statistics. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then the statistics are retrieved from the global table level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are retrieved directly from the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
cascade_parts	If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then setting this to TRUE causes the deletion of statistics for this table for all underlying partitions as well
cascade_columns	Indicates that DELETE_COLUMN_STATS should be called for all underlying columns (passing the cascade_parts parameter)
cascade_indexes	Indicates that DELETE_INDEX_STATS should be called for all underlying indexes (passing the cascade_parts parameter)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	When value of this argument is TRUE, deletes table statistics even if locked

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_HISTORY Function

This function can be used to compare statistics for a table from two timestamps in past and compare the statistics as of that timestamps.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_HISTORY(
      ownname        IN  VARCHAR2,
      tabname        IN  VARCHAR2,
      time1          IN  TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
      time2          IN  TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
      pctthreshold   IN  NUMBER  DEFAULT 10)
   RETURN DiffRepTab pipelined;
```

Parameters

Table 155–24 DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_HISTORY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner of the table. Specify NULL for current schema.
tabname	Table for which statistics are to be compared
time1	First timestamp 1
time2	Second timestamp 2
pctthreshold	The function reports difference in statistics only if it exceeds this limit. The default value is 10.

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- If the second timestamp is NULL, the function compares the current statistics in dictionary with the statistics as of the other timestamp.

DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_PENDING Function

This function compares pending statistics and statistics as of a timestamp or statistics from dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_PENDING(
      ownname        IN  VARCHAR2,
      tabname        IN  VARCHAR2,
      timestamp      IN  TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
      pctthreshold   IN  NUMBER  DEFAULT 10)
   RETURN DiffRepTab pipelined;
```

Parameters

Table 155–25 DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_PENDING Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner of the table. Specify NULL for current schema.
tabname	Table for which statistics are to be compared
timestamp	Time stamp to get statistics from the history
pctthreshold	The function reports difference in statistics only if it exceeds this limit. The default value is 10.

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- If the second timestamp is NULL, the function compares the current statistics in dictionary with the statistics as of the other timestamp.

DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_STATTAB Function

This function can be used to compare statistics for a table from two different sources. The statistics can be drawn from

- two different user statistics tables
- a single user statistics table containing 2 sets of statistics that can be identified using `statids`
- a user statistics table and dictionary

The function also compares the statistics of the dependent objects (indexes, columns, partitions) as well. It displays statistics of the object(s) from both sources if the difference between those statistics exceeds a certain threshold (%). The threshold can be specified as an argument to the function. The statistics corresponding to the first source (`stattab1` or `time1`) will be used as basis for computing the difference percentage.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_STATTAB(
      ownname         IN  VARCHAR2,
      tabname         IN  VARCHAR2,
      stattab1        IN  VARCHAR2,
      stattab2        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      pctthreshold    IN  NUMBER  DEFAULT 10,
      statid1         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      statid2         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      stattab1own     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
      stattab2own     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
   RETURN DiffRepTab pipelined;
```

Parameters

Table 155–26 DIFF_TABLE_STATS_IN_STATTAB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ownname`	Owner of the table. Specify `NULL` for current schema.
`tabname`	Table for which statistics are to be compared
`stattab1`	User statistics table 1
`stattab2`	User statistics table 2. If `NULL`, statistics in `stattab1` is compared with current statistics in dictionary. This is the default. Specify same table as `stattab1` to compare two sets within the statistics table (see `statid` below).
`pctthreshold`	The function reports difference in statistics only if it exceeds this limit. The default value is 10.
`stadid1`	(optional) Identifies statistics set within `stattab1`.
`stadid2`	(optional) Identifies statistics set within `stattab2`
`stattab1own`	Schema containing `stattab1` (if other than `ownname`)
`stattab2own`	Schema containing `stattab2` (if other than `ownname`)

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY` privilege. For objects owned by `SYS`, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY` privilege or the `SYSDBA` privilege.

DROP_EXTENDED_STATS Procedure

This function drops the statistics entry that is created for the user specified extension. This cancels the effects of the CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS Function.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DROP_EXTENDED_STATS (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    VARCHAR2,
   extension  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–27 DROP_EXTENDED_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name of a table
tabname	Name of the table
extension	Can be either a column group or an expression. Suppose the specified table has two column c1, c2. An example column group can be "(c1, c2)" and an example expression can be "(c1 + c2)".

Exceptions

- ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges or extension does not exist
- ORA-20001: Error when processing extension

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- If no extended statistics set is created for the extension, this function throws an error.

DROP_STAT_TABLE Procedure

This procedure drops a user statistics table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.DROP_STAT_TABLE (
   ownname VARCHAR2,
   stattab VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–28 DROP_STAT_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
stattab	User statistics table identifier

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Table does not exists or insufficient privileges.

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the privileges for dropping the specified table.

EXPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for a particular column and stores them in the user statistics table identified by stattab.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname  VARCHAR2,
   tabname  VARCHAR2,
   colname  VARCHAR2,
   partname VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab  VARCHAR2,
   statid   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–29 EXPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs
colname	Name of the column or extension
partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition column statistics are exported.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

EXPORT_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to export the statistics preferences of all the tables, excluding the tables owned by Oracle. These tables can by included by passing TRUE for the add_sys parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_DATABASE_PREFS (
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
    add_sys    IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–30 EXPORT_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	Statistics table name to where statistics should be exported
statid	(Optional) Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if other than ownname)
add_sys	Value TRUE will include the Oracle-owned tables

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role, or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_DATABASE_PREFS('STATTAB', statown=>'SH');
```

EXPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for all objects in the database and stores them in the user statistics tables identified by `statown.stattab`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_DATABASE_STATS (
   stattab         VARCHAR2,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stat_category   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–31 EXPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`stattab`	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
`statid`	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within `stattab`
`statown`	Schema containing `stattab` (if different from current schema)
`stat_category`	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ `OBJECT_STATS` - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ `SYNOPSES` - information to support incremental statistics If `'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES'` is specified, table statistics, column statistics, index statistics and synopses are deleted.

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY` privilege. For objects owned by `SYS`, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY` privilege or the `SYSDBA` privilege.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

EXPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for all dictionary schemas ('SYS', 'SYSTEM' and RDBMS component schemas) and stores them in the user statistics table identified by stattab.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   stattab         VARCHAR2,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stat_category   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–32 EXPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics If 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES' is specified, table statistics, column statistics, index statistics and synopses are deleted.

Usage Notes

- You must have the SYSDBA or ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege to execute this procedure.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

EXPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for fixed tables and stores them in the user statistics table identified by stattab.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS (
   stattab  VARCHAR2,
   statid   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–33 EXPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

Usage Notes

- To invoke this subprogram you need to be connected as SYS or have the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

EXPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for a particular index and stores them in the user statistics table identified by stattab.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname  VARCHAR2,
   indname  VARCHAR2,
   partname VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab  VARCHAR2,
   statid   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–34 EXPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
indname	Name of the index
partname	Name of the index partition. If the index is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition index statistics are exported.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

EXPORT_PENDING_STATS Procedure

This procedure is used to export the statistics gathered and stored as pending.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_PENDING_STATS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT USER,
    tabname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER);
```

Parameters

Table 155–35 EXPORT_PENDING_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name
stattab	Statistics table name to where to export the statistics
statid	(Optional) Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if other than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- If the parameter tabname is NULL then export applies to all tables of the specified schema.
- The default owner/schema is the user who runs the procedure.
- To run this procedure, you need to have the same privilege for gathering statistics on the tables that will be touched by this procedure.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_PENDING_STATS(NULL, NULL, 'MY_STAT_TABLE');
```

EXPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to export the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–36 EXPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
stattab	Statistics table name to where to export the statistics
statid	(Optional) Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner, or have the SYSDBA privilege, or have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH', 'STAT');
```

EXPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for all objects in the schema identified by ownname and stores them in the user statistics tables identified by stattab.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname         VARCHAR2,
   stattab         VARCHAR2,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stat_category   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–37 EXPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics If 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES' is specified, table statistics, column statistics, index statistics and synopses are deleted.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

EXPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves system statistics and stores them in the user statistics table, identified by `stattab`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_SYSTEM_STATS (
   stattab       VARCHAR2,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–38 EXPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`stattab`	Identifier of the user statistics table that describes where the statistics will be stored
`statid`	Optional identifier associated with the statistics stored from the `stattab`
`statown`	Schema containing `stattab` (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

`ORA-20002`: Bad user statistics table; may need to be upgraded

`ORA-20003`: Unable to export system statistics

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the `GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS` role.

Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

EXPORT_TABLE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to export the statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema into the specified statistics table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_TABLE_PREFS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    tabname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–39 EXPORT_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name
stattab	Statistics table name where to export the statistics
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if other than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner of the table, or have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES', 'STAT');
```

EXPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for a particular table and stores them in the user statistics table. Cascade results in all index statistics associated with the specified table being exported as well.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.EXPORT_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname         VARCHAR2,
   tabname         VARCHAR2,
   partname        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab         VARCHAR2,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cascade         BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stat_category   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–40 EXPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table
partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are exported.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
cascade	If true, then column and index statistics for this table are also exported
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics If 'OBJECT_STATS, SYNOPSES' is specified, table statistics, column statistics, index statistics and synopses are deleted.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

FLUSH_DATABASE_MONITORING_INFO Procedure

This procedure flushes in-memory monitoring information for all tables in the dictionary. Corresponding entries in the *_TAB_MODIFICATIONS, *_TAB_STATISTICS and *_IND_STATISTICS views are updated immediately, without waiting for the Oracle database to flush them periodically. This procedure is useful when you need up-to-date information in those views. Because the GATHER_*_STATS procedures internally flush monitoring information, it is not necessary to run this procedure before gathering the statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.FLUSH_DATABASE_MONITORING_INFO;
```

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

The ANALYZE_ANY system privilege is required to run this procedure.

GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedures

This procedure gathers statistics for all objects in the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_DATABASE_STATS (
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   options          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   objlist          OUT      ObjectTab,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   gather_sys       BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list ObjectTab DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STATS.GATHER_DATABASE_STATS (
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   options          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   gather_sys       BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list ObjectTab DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–41 GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute): The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Table 155–41 (Cont.) GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
block_sample	Whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk, then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when doing an estimate statistics.
method_opt	When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only 'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed.: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms. - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–41 (Cont.) GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics
cascade	Gather statistics on the indexes as well. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the indexes in the database in addition to gathering table and column statistics. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics to be collected or not. This is the default. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics. The statistics table is assumed to reside in the same schema as the object being analyzed, so there must be one such table in each schema to use this option.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab.

Table 155–41 (Cont.) GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Further specification of which objects to gather statistics for: GATHER: (Default) Gathers statistics on all objects in the schema. GATHER AUTO: Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics, and determines how to gather those statistics. When GATHER AUTO is specified, the only additional valid parameters are stattab, statid, objlist and statown; all other parameter settings are ignored. Returns a list of processed objects. GATHER STALE: Gathers statistics on stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. Also, return a list of objects found to be stale. GATHER EMPTY: Gathers statistics on objects which currently have no statistics. Return a list of objects found to have no statistics. LIST AUTO: Returns a list of objects to be processed with GATHER AUTO LIST STALE: Returns a list of stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views LIST EMPTY: Returns a list of objects which currently have no statistics
objlist	List of objects found to be stale or empty
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
gather_sys	Gathers statistics on the objects owned by the 'SYS' user
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
obj_filter_list	A list of object filters. When provided, GATHER_DATABASE_STATS will gather statistics only on objects which satisfy at least one object filter in the list as needed. In a single object filter, we can specify the constraints on the object attributes. The attribute values specified in the object filter are case- insensitive unless double-quoted. Wildcard is allowed in the attribute values. Suppose non-NULL values s1, s2, ... are specified for attributes a1, a2, ... in one object filter. An object o is said to satisfy this object filter if (o.a1 like s1) and (o.a2 like s2) and ... is true. See Applying an Object Filter List.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.

GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers statistics for dictionary schemas 'SYS', 'SYSTEM' and schemas of RDBMS components.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   comp_id          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   options          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER AUTO',
   objlist    OUT   ObjectTab,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                     get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list ObjectTab DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STATS.GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   comp_id           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent  NUMBER DEFAULT
                        to_estimate_percent_type(GET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample      BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree            NUMBER DEFAULT to_degree_type(GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade           BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_cascade_type(GET_PARAM('CASCADE')),
   stattab           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   options           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER AUTO',
   statown           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate     BOOLEAN DEFAULT
                             to_no_invalidate_type(get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list   ObjectTab DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–42 GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
comp_id	Component id of the schema to analyze (NULL will result in analyzing schemas of all RDBMS components).Please refer to comp_id column of DBA_REGISTRY view. The procedure always gather statistics on 'SYS' and 'SYSTEM' schemas regardless of this argument.

Table 155–42 (Cont.) GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute). The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
block_sample	Determines whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when performing estimate statistics.
method_opt	Accepts: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms. - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–42 (Cont.) GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - gathers subpartition-level statistics
cascade	Gathers statistics on indexes also.Index statistics gathering will not be parallelized. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the indexes in the schema in addition to gathering table and column statistics. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics to be collected or not. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	The (optional) identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
options	Further specification of objects for which to gather statistics: ■ 'GATHER' - Gathers statistics on all objects in the schema ■ 'GATHER AUTO' - (Default) Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics and determines how to gather those statistics. When 'GATHER AUTO' is specified, the only additional valid parameters are comp_id, stattab, statid and statown; all other parameter settings will be ignored. Also, returns a list of objects processed. ■ 'GATHER STALE' - Gathers statistics on stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. Also, returns a list of objects found to be stale. ■ 'GATHER EMPTY' - Gathers statistics on objects which currently have no statistics. Also, returns a list of objects found to have no statistics. ■ 'LIST AUTO' - Returns list of objects to be processed with 'GATHER AUTO' ■ 'LIST STALE' - Returns list of stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views ■ 'LIST EMPTY' - Returns list of objects which currently have no statistics

Table 155–42 (Cont.) GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
objlist	The list of objects found to be stale or empty
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
obj_filter_list	A list of object filters. When provided, this will gather statistics only on objects which satisfy at least one object filter in the list as needed. In a single object filter, we can specify the constraints on the object attributes. The attribute values specified in the object filter are case- insensitive unless double-quoted. Wildcard is allowed in the attribute values. Suppose non-NULL values s1, s2, ... are specified for attributes a1, a2, ... in one object filter. An object o is said to satisfy this object filter if (o.a1 like s1) and (o.a2 like s2) and ... is true. See Applying an Object Filter List.

Usage Notes

You must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege to execute this procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Index does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers statistics for all fixed objects (dynamic performance tables).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS (
   stattab        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                     get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')));
```

Parameters

Table 155–43 GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab (optional)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Usage Notes

You must have the SYSDBA or ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY system privilege to execute this procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers index statistics. It attempts to parallelize as much of the work as possible. Restrictions are described in the individual parameters. This operation will not parallelize with certain types of indexes, including cluster indexes, domain indexes, and bitmap join indexes. The `granularity` and `no_invalidate` arguments are not relevant to these types of indexes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   indname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (GET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type
                                          (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–44 GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ownname`	Schema of index to analyze
`indname`	Name of index
`partname`	Name of partition
`estimate_percent`	Percentage of rows to estimate (`NULL` means compute). The valid range is `[0.000001,100]`. Use the constant `DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE` to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
`stattab`	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
`statid`	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within `stattab`
`statown`	Schema containing `stattab` (if different than `ownname`)

Table 155–44 (Cont.) GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics.
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Gather statistics on object even if it is locked

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Index does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

GATHER_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure

This procedure starts the job of gathering the processing rates which end after an `interval` defined in minutes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_PROCESSING_RATE (
   gathering_mode      IN    VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'START',
   interval            IN    NUMBER    DEFAULT  NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–45 GATHER_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`gathering_mode`	Mode: `'START'` or `'END'`. The mode is based on the Active Session History (ASH) data when invoked with `'START'` option. It stops gathering when invoked with `'END'` option. When invoked with `'START'`, 'interval' option can be specified optionally. If `interval` is not specified, its default value is set to 60 minutes.
`interval`	Time interval (number of minutes) for which the processing must be gathered

Usage Notes

- You require the `OPTIMIZER_PROCESSING_RATE` role to run this procedure.
- `AUTO DOP` uses processing rates to determine the optimal degree of parallelism for a SQL statement.

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

`ORA-20001`: Invalid or illegal input value

GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedures

This procedure gathers statistics for all objects in a schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   options          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   objlist          OUT      ObjectTab,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
  force             BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  obj_filter_list  ObjectTab DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   options          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE'),
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   obj_filter_list  ObjectTab DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–46 GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema to analyze (NULL means current schema)
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute): The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Table 155–46 (Cont.) GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
block_sample	Whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk, then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when doing an estimate statistics.
method_opt	Accepts: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–46 (Cont.) GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics.
cascade	Gather statistics on the indexes as well. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the indexes in the schema in addition to gathering table and column statistics. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics to be collected or not. This is the default. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
options	Further specification of which objects to gather statistics for: GATHER: (Default) Gathers statistics on all objects in the schema. GATHER AUTO: Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics, and determines how to gather those statistics. When GATHER AUTO is specified, the only additional valid parameters are ownname, stattab, statid, objlist and statown; all other parameter settings are ignored. Returns a list of processed objects. GATHER STALE: Gathers statistics on stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. Also, return a list of objects found to be stale. GATHER EMPTY: Gathers statistics on objects which currently have no statistics. also, return a list of objects found to have no statistics. LIST AUTO: Returns a list of objects to be processed with GATHER AUTO. LIST STALE: Returns list of stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. LIST EMPTY: Returns list of objects which currently have no statistics.
objlist	List of objects found to be stale or empty

Table 155–46 (Cont.) GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Gather statistics on objects even if they are locked
obj_filter_list	A list of object filters. When provided, GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS will gather statistics only on objects which satisfy at least one object filter in the list as needed. In a single object filter, we can specify the constraints on the object attributes. The attribute values specified in the object filter are case- insensitive unless double-quoted. Wildcard is allowed in the attribute values. Suppose non-NULL values s1, s2, ... are specified for attributes a1, a2, ... in one object filter. An object o is said to satisfy this object filter if (o.a1 like s1) and (o.a2 like s2) and ... is true. See Applying an Object Filter List.

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

When you use a specific value for the sampling percentage, DBMS_STATS honors it except for when:

- The result is less than 2500 rows (too small a sample) and
- The specified percentage is more than the certain percentage.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Schema does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

Examples

Applying an Object Filter List

The following example specifies that any table with a "T" prefix in the SAMPLE schema and any table in the SYS schema, if stale, will have statistics gathered upon it.

```
DECLARE
   filter_lst  DBMS_STATS.OBJECTTAB := DBMS_STATS.OBJECTTAB();
BEGIN
   filter_lst.extend(2);
   filter_lst(1).ownname := 'SH';
   filter_lst(1).objname := 'SALES';
   filter_lst(2).ownname := 'SH';
   filter_lst(2).objname := 'COSTS';
   DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS(ownname=>'SH',obj_filter_list=>filter_lst);
 END;
```

GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers system statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS (
   gathering_mode   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'NOWORKLOAD',
   interval         INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–47 GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
gathering_mode	Mode values are: NOWORKLOAD: Will capture characteristics of the I/O system. Gathering may take a few minutes and depends on the size of the database. During this period Oracle will estimate the average read seek time and transfer speed for the I/O system. This mode is suitable for the all workloads. Oracle recommends to run GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS ('NOWORKLOAD') after creation of the database and tablespaces. To fine tune system statistics for the workload use 'START' and 'STOP' or 'INTERVAL' options. If you gather both 'NOWORKLOAD' and workload specific (statistics collected using 'INTERVAL' or 'START' and 'STOP'), the workload statistics will be used by optimizer. Collected components: cpuspeednw, ioseektim, iotfrspeed. INTERVAL: Captures system activity during a specified interval. This works in combination with the interval parameter. You should provide an interval value in minutes, after which system statistics are created or updated in the dictionary or stattab. You can use GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS (gathering_mode=>'STOP') to stop gathering earlier than scheduled. Collected components: maxthr, slavethr, cpuspeed, sreadtim, mreadtim, mbrc. START | STOP: Captures system activity during specified start and stop times and refreshes the dictionary or stattab with statistics for the elapsed period. Interval value is ignored. Collected components: maxthr, slavethr, cpuspeed, sreadtim, mreadtim, mbrc. EXADATA: In this mode the gathered system statistics take into account the unique capabilities provided by using EXADATA such as large IO size and high IO throughput. The multi-block read count and IO throughput statistics are set along with the CPU speed.
interval	Time, in minutes, to gather statistics. This parameter applies only when gathering_mode='INTERVAL'
stattab	Identifier of the user statistics table where the statistics will be saved
statid	Optional identifier associated with the statistics saved in the stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid input value

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table; may need to be upgraded

ORA-20003: Unable to gather system statistics

ORA-20004: Error in the INTERVAL mode: system parameter job_queue_processes must be >0

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS role.

Examples

Assume that you want to perform database application processing OLTP transactions during the day and run reports at night.

To collect daytime system statistics, gather statistics for 720 minutes. Store the statistics in the MYSTATS table.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS (
      interval => 720,
      stattab  => 'mystats',
      statid   => 'OLTP');
END;
```

To collect nighttime system statistics, gather statistics for 720 minutes. Store the statistics in the MYSTATS table.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS (
      interval => 720,
      stattab  => 'mystats',
      statid   => 'OLAP');
END;
```

Update the dictionary with the gathered statistics.

```
VARIABLE   jobno   number;
BEGIN
   DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT (:jobno, 'DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS
   (''mystats'',''OLTP'');'
   sysdate, 'sysdate + 1');
   COMMIT;
END;

BEGIN
   DBMS_JOB.SUBMIT (:jobno, 'DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS
   (''mystats'',''OLAP'');'
   sysdate + 0.5, 'sysdate + 1');
   COMMIT;
END;
```

GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure gathers table and column (and index) statistics. It attempts to parallelize as much of the work as possible, but there are some restrictions as described in the individual parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                          (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT  to_no_invalidate_type (
                                            get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   stattype         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DATA',
   force            BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   context          DBMS_STATS.CCONTEXT DEFAULT NULL, -- non operative
   options          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GATHER');
```

Parameters

Table 155–48 GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema of table to analyze
tabname	Name of table
partname	Name of partition
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute) The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
block_sample	Whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk, then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when doing an estimate statistics.

Table 155–48 (Cont.) GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
method_opt	METHOD_OPT - When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only 'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed. Other than that, method_opt accepts either of the following options, or both in combination: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] ■ FOR COLUMNS [column_clause] [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} column_clause is defined as column_clause := column_name | extension name | extension - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. - column_name : Name of a column - extension : can be either a column group in the format of (column_name, Colume_name [, ...]) or an expression The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–48 (Cont.) GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'APPROX_GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - similar to 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' but in this case the global statistics are aggregated from partition level statistics. This option will aggregate all statistics except the number of distinct values for columns and number of distinct keys of indexes. The existing histograms of the columns at the table level are also aggregated.The aggregation will use only partitions with statistics, so to get accurate global statistics, users should make sure to have statistics for all partitions. Global statistics are gathered if partname is NULL or if the aggregation cannot be performed (for example, if statistics for one of the partitions is missing). 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics.
cascade	Gathers statistics on the indexes for this table. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the table's indexes. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics are to be collected or not. This is the default. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattype	Statistics type. The only value allowed is DATA.
force	Gather statistics of table even if it is locked
context	[Non-operative]

Table 155–48 (Cont.) GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Further specification of which objects to gather statistics: ■ GATHER - gathers statistics on all objects in the schema ■ GATHER AUTO - gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics.

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

Index statistics collection can be parellelized except for cluster, domain and join indexes.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Table does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

Examples

An extension can be either a column group (see Example 1) or an expression (see Example 2).

Example 1

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_TABLE_STATS(
    'SH', 'SALES', method_opt => 'FOR COLUMNS (empno, deptno)');
```

Example 2

```
DBMS_STATS.GATHER_TABLE_STATS(
    'SH', 'SALES', method_opt => 'FOR COLUMNS (sal+comm)');
```

GENERATE_STATS Procedure

> **Note:** This subprogram has been deprecated and replaced by improved technology. It is maintained only for purposes of backward compatibility. As an alternative, use the GATHER_INDEX_STAT procedure. See "GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure" on page 155-80.

This procedure generates object statistics from previously collected statistics of related objects. The currently supported objects are b-tree and bitmap indexes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GENERATE_STATS (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   objname    VARCHAR2,
   organized  NUMBER DEFAULT 7,
   force      BOOLEAN default FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–49 GENERATE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema of object
objname	Name of object
organized	Amount of ordering associated between the index and its underlying table. A heavily organized index would have consecutive index keys referring to consecutive rows on disk for the table (the same block). A heavily disorganized index would have consecutive keys referencing different table blocks on disk. This parameter is only used for b-tree indexes. The number can be in the range of 0-10, with 0 representing a completely organized index and 10 a completely disorganized one.
force	If TRUE, generates statistics for the target object even if it is locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

For fully populated schemas, the gather procedures should be used instead when more accurate statistics are desired.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Unsupported object type of object does not exist

ORA-20001: Invalid option or invalid statistics

GET_COLUMN_STATS Procedures

These procedures gets all column-related information. In the form of this procedure that deals with user-defined statistics, the statistics type returned is the type stored, in addition to the user-defined statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname     VARCHAR2,
   tabname     VARCHAR2,
   colname     VARCHAR2,
   partname    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   distcnt OUT NUMBER,
   density OUT NUMBER,
   nullcnt OUT NUMBER,
   srec    OUT StatRec,
   avgclen OUT NUMBER,
   statown     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Use the following for user-defined statistics:

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   colname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   ext_stats   OUT  RAW,
   stattypown  OUT  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattypname OUT  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–50 GET_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs
colname	Name of the column or extension
partname	Name of the table partition from which to get the statistics. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, statistics are retrieved from the global table level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics. If stattab is NULL, statistics are retrieved directly from the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
ext_stats	The user-defined statistics
stattypown	Schema of the statistics type

Table 155–50 (Cont.) GET_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattypname	Name of the statistics type
distcnt	Number of distinct values
density	Column density
nullcnt	Number of NULLs
srec	Structure holding internal representation of column minimum, maximum, and histogram values
avgclen	Average length of the column (in bytes)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges or no statistics have been stored for requested object

Usage Notes

Before invoking this procedure, ensure that the table exists.

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

GET_INDEX_STATS Procedures

These procedures get all index-related information. In the form of this procedure that deals with user-defined statistics, the statistics type returned is the type stored, in addition to the user-defined statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname        VARCHAR2,
   indname        VARCHAR2,
   partname       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   numrows    OUT NUMBER,
   numlblks   OUT NUMBER,
   numdist    OUT NUMBER,
   avglblk    OUT NUMBER,
   avgdblk    OUT NUMBER,
   clstfct    OUT NUMBER,
   indlevel   OUT NUMBER,
   statown        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cachedblk  OUT NUMBER,
   cachehit   OUT NUMBER);

DBMS_STATS.GET_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname        VARCHAR2,
   indname        VARCHAR2,
   partname       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   numrows    OUT NUMBER,
   numlblks   OUT NUMBER,
   numdist    OUT NUMBER,
   avglblk    OUT NUMBER,
   avgdblk    OUT NUMBER,
   clstfct    OUT NUMBER,
   indlevel   OUT NUMBER,
   statown        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   guessq     OUT NUMBER,
   cachedblk  OUT NUMBER,
   cachehit   OUT NUMBER);
```

Use the following for user-defined statistics:

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   indname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   ext_stats   OUT  RAW,
   stattypown  OUT  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattypname OUT  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cachedblk        OUT NUMBER,
   cachehit         OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 155–51 GET_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
indname	Name of the index
partname	Name of the index partition for which to get the statistics. If the index is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then the statistics are retrieved for the global index level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are retrieved directly from the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
ext_stats	User-defined statistics
stattypown	Schema of the statistics type
stattypname	Name of the statistics type
numrows	Number of rows in the index (partition)
numlblks	Number of leaf blocks in the index (partition)
numdist	Number of distinct keys in the index (partition)
avglblk	Average integral number of leaf blocks in which each distinct key appears for this index (partition)
avgdblk	Average integral number of data blocks in the table pointed to by a distinct key for this index (partition)
clstfct	Clustering factor for the index (partition)
indlevel	Height of the index (partition)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
guessq	Guess quality for the index (partition)
cachedblk	The average number of blocks in the buffer cache for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)
cachehit	The average cache hit ratio for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges or no statistics have been stored for requested object

Usage Notes

- Before invoking this procedure, ensure that the table exists.

  To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

- The Optimizer uses the cached data to estimate number of cached blocks for index or statistics table access. The total cost of the operation will be combined from the I/O cost of reading not cached blocks from disk, the CPU cost of getting cached blocks from the buffer cache, and the CPU cost of processing the data.

- Oracle maintains `cachedblk` and `cachehit` at all times but uses correspondent caching statistics for optimization as part of the table and index statistics only when the user calls `DBMS_STATS.GATHER_[TABLE/INDEX/SCHEMA/DATABASE]_STATS` procedure for auto mode or `DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS` for manual mode. In order to prevent the user from utilizing inaccurate and unreliable data, the optimizer will compute a 'confidence factor' for each `cachehit` and a `cachedblk` for each object. If the 'confidence factor' for the value meets confidence criteria, this value will be used, otherwise the defaults will be used.
- The automatic maintenance algorithm for object caching statistics assumes that there is only one major workload for the system and adjusts statistics to this workload, ignoring other "minor" workloads. If this is not the case, you must use manual mode for maintaining object caching statistics.
- The object caching statistics maintenance algorithm for auto mode prevents you from using statistics in the following situations
  - When not enough data has been analyzed, such as when an object has been recently create
  - When the system does not have one major workload resulting in averages not corresponding to real values.

GET_PARAM Function

> **Note:** This subprogram has been replaced by improved technology and is maintained only for purposes of backward compatibility. In this case, use the GET_PREFS Function.
>
> See also Deprecated Subprograms on page 155-13.

This function returns the default value of parameters of DBMS_STATS procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_PARAM (
   pname      IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 155–52 GET_PARAM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Parameter name

Exceptions

ORA-20001: Invalid input values

GET_PREFS Function

This function returns the default value of the specified preference.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_PREFS (
   pname     IN   VARCHAR2,
   ownname   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   tabname   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 155–53 GET_PREFS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Preference name. The existing value for following preferences can be deleted and default preference values will be used: ■ AUTOSTATS_TARGET ■ CASCADE ■ CONCURRENT ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ GRANULARITY ■ PUBLISH ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS AUTOSTATS_TARGET - This preference is applicable only for auto statistics collection. The value of this parameter controls the objects considered for statistics collection. It takes the following values: ■ 'ALL' - Statistics collected for all objects in system ■ 'ORACLE' - Statistics collected for all Oracle owned objects ■ 'AUTO' - Oracle decides on which objects to collect statistics
.	CASCADE - The value determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics

Table 155–53 (Cont.) GET_PREFS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
	CONCURRENT - This preference determines whether statistics will be gathered concurrently on multiple objects, or serially, one object at a time: ■ 'MANUAL' - Concurrency will be turned on only for manual statistics gathering. ■ 'AUTOMATIC': Concurrency will be turned on only for the automatic statistics gathering. ■ 'ALL': Concurrency will be turned on for both manual and automatic statistics gathering. ■ 'OFF': Concurrency will be turned off for both manual and automatic statistics See Usage Notes below.
.	DEGREE - The value determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - The value determines the percentage of rows to estimate. The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.
method_opt	When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only 'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed.: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms. - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
.	NO_INVALIDATE - The value controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered. Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default.

Table 155–53 (Cont.) GET_PREFS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	GRANULARITY - The value determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned) 'ALL' - gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - gathers subpartition-level statistics
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed. Prior to Oracle Database 11*g*, Release 1 (11.1), once a statistic gathering job completed the new statistics were automatically published into the dictionary tables. The user now has the ability to gather statistics but not publish them immediately. This allows the DBA to test the new statistics before publishing them.
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan. With partitioned tables it is very common to load new data into a new partition. As new partitions are added and data loaded, the global table statistics need to be kept up to date. Oracle will update the global table statistics by scanning only the partitions that have been changed instead of the entire table if the following conditions hold: ■ the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ the PUBLISH value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ the user specifies AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE for ESTIMATE_PERCENT and AUTO for GRANULARITY when gathering statistics on the table. If the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table was set to FALSE (default value), a full table scan is used to maintain the global statistics which is a much more resource intensive and time-consuming operation for large tables.

Table 155–53 (Cont.) GET_PREFS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
	INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE It takes two values: ■ TABLE - table level synopses are gathered. This is used when you want to exchange this table with a partition. You can run GATHER_TABLE_STATS on this table with INCREMENTAL to TRUE and INCREMENTAL_LEVEL to TABLE before the exchange. The result is that table level synopses are gathered on this table (currently Oracle supports only table level synopses on non-predestined tables). Once the exchange occurs, the partition will have synopses which come from the table level synopses of the table before exchange. This preference value can be only used in the SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. It is not allowed in the SET_GLOBAL/DATABASE/SCHEMA_PREFS procedures. ■ PARTITION - partition level synopses are gathered. This is the default value. If PARTITION is set on a non partitioned table, no synopses are gathered. INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale. It takes an enumeration of values which may be multiple, such as 'USE_STALE_PERCENT', 'USE_LOCKED_STATS'. ■ USE_STALE_PERCENT - a partition/subpartition is not considered as stale if DML changes are less than the STALE_PERCENT preference value ■ USE_LOCKED_STATS - locked partitions/subpartitions statistics are not considered as stale, regardless of DML changes ■ NULL - this is the default value, meaning a partition or subpartition is considered as stale as long as it has any DML changes. When the default value is used, statistics gathered in incremental mode are guaranteed to be the same as the statistics gathered in non incremental mode. When a non default value is used, the statistics gathered in incremental mode might be less accurate than those gathered in non-incremental mode
.	STALE_PERCENT - This value determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered. The valid domain for stale_percent is non-negative numbers. The default value is 10, meaning a table having more than 10% of changes is considered as stale. GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This controls whether the statistics gathered for a global temporary table should be stored as shared statistics or session statistics. It takes two values: ■ SHARED - All sessions see the same set of statistics ■ SESSION - Statistics gathered by the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on a global temporary table are session specific, and hence are only going to be used by the queries issued in the same session as the statistics gathering process. Session-specific statistics are deleted when a session is ended. TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor.

Table 155–53 (Cont.) GET_PREFS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Further specification of which objects to gather statistics: ■ GATHER - gathers statistics on all objects in the schema ■ GATHER AUTO - gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics.
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name

Exceptions

- ORA-20000: Unable to gather statistics concurrently: Resource Manager is not enabled.
- ORA-20001: Invalid input values

Usage Notes

- No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure, however note the following with regard to CONCURRENT preference.
- The CONCURRENT preference determines whether the statistics of tables or (sub)partitions of tables to be gathered concurrently when user issues GATHER_*_STATS procedures. DBMS_STATS has the ability to collect statistics for a single object (table, (sub)partition) in parallel based on the value of degree parameter. However the parallelism is limited to one object. The CONCURRENT preference extends the scope of parallelization to multiple database objects by enabling users to concurrently gather statistics for multiple tables in a schema or database and multiple (sub)partitions within a table. Note that this is primarily intended for multi CPU systems and it may not be suitable for small databases on single CPU machines.

  To gather statistics concurrently,

  – -The user must have DBA role or have the following privileges in addition to privileges that are required for gathering statistics: CREATE JOB, MANAGE SCHEDULER, MANAGE ANY QUEUE.

  – Resource Manager should be enabled.

  – The setting for the job_queue_processes parameter must be at least 4.
- If the ownname and tabname are provided and a preference has been entered for the table, the function returns the preference as specified for the table. In all other cases it returns the global preference if it has been specified, otherwise the default value is returned.

GET_STATS_HISTORY_AVAILABILITY Function

This function returns oldest timestamp where statistics history is available.Users cannot restore statistics to a timestamp older than this one.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_STATS_HISTORY_AVAILABILITY
 RETURN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE;
```

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

GET_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Function

This function returns the current statistics history retention value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

GET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure gets system statistics from `stattab`, or from the dictionary if `stattab` is `NULL`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_SYSTEM_STATS (
   status    OUT  VARCHAR2,
   dstart    OUT  DATE,
   dstop     OUT  DATE,
   pname     IN   VARCHAR2,
   pvalue    OUT  NUMBER,
   stattab   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–54 GET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`status`	Output is one of the following: ■ `COMPLETED:` ■ `AUTOGATHERING:` ■ `MANUALGATHERING:` ■ `BADSTATS:`
`dstart`	Date when statistics gathering started. If `status` = `MANUALGATHERING`, the start date is returned.
`dstop`	Date when statistics gathering stopped. ■ If `status` = `COMPLETE`, the finish date is returned. ■ If `status` = `AUTOGATHERING`, the future finish date is returned. ■ If `status` = `BADSTATS`, the must-finished-by date is returned.

Table 155–54 (Cont.) GET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	The parameter name to get, which can have one of the following values: ■ iotfrspeed - I/O transfer speed in bytes for each millisecond ■ ioseektim - seek time + latency time + operating system overhead time, in milliseconds ■ sreadtim - average time to read single block (random read), in milliseconds ■ mreadtim - average time to read an mbrc block at once (sequential read), in milliseconds ■ cpuspeed - average number of CPU cycles for each second, in millions, captured for the workload (statistics collected using 'INTERVAL' or 'START' and 'STOP' options) ■ cpuspeednw - average number of CPU cycles for each second, in millions, captured for the no-workload (statistics collected using 'NOWORKLOAD' option. ■ mbrc - average multiblock read count for sequential read, in blocks ■ maxthr - maximum I/O system throughput, in bytes/second ■ slavethr - average slave I/O throughput, in bytes/second
pvalue	Parameter value to get
stattab	Identifier of the user statistics table where the statistics will be obtained. If stattab is NULL, the statistics will be obtained from the dictionary.
statid	Optional identifier associated with the statistics saved in the stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table; may need to be upgraded

ORA-20003: Unable to gather system statistics

ORA-20004: Parameter does not exist

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS role.

GET_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure gets all table-related information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.GET_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   numrows      OUT NUMBER,
   numblks      OUT NUMBER,
   avgrlen      OUT NUMBER,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cachedblk    OUT NUMBER,
   cachehit     OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 155–55 GET_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs
partname	Name of the table partition from which to get the statistics. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then the statistics are retrieved from the global table level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are retrieved directly from the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
numrows	Number of rows in the table (partition)
numblks	Number of blocks the table (partition) occupies
avgrlen	Average row length for the table (partition)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
cachedblk	The average number of blocks in the buffer cache for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)
cachehit	The average cache hit ratio for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)

Usage Notes

- Before invoking this procedure, ensure that the table exists.

  To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

- The Optimizer uses the cached data to estimate number of cached blocks for index or statistics table access. The total cost of the operation will be combined from the

I/O cost of reading not cached blocks from disk, the CPU cost of getting cached blocks from the buffer cache, and the CPU cost of processing the data.

- Oracle maintains `cachedblk` and `cachehit` at all times but uses correspondent caching statistics for optimization as part of the table and index statistics only when the user calls `DBMS_STATS.GATHER_[TABLE/INDEX/SCHEMA/DATABASE]_STATS` procedure for auto mode or `DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS` for manual mode. In order to prevent the user from utilizing inaccurate and unreliable data, the optimizer will compute a 'confidence factor' for each `cachehit` and a `cachedblk` for each object. If the 'confidence factor' for the value meets confidence criteria, this value will be used, otherwise the defaults will be used.
- The automatic maintenance algorithm for object caching statistics assumes that there is only one major workload for the system and adjusts statistics to this workload, ignoring other "minor" workloads. If this is not the case, you must use manual mode for maintaining object caching statistics.
- The object caching statistics maintenance algorithm for auto mode prevents you from using statistics in the following situations
  - When not enough data has been analyzed, such as when an object has been recently create
  - When the system does not have one major workload resulting in averages not corresponding to real values.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges or no statistics have been stored for requested object

IMPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for a particular column from the user statistics table identified by stattab and stores them in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   tabname       VARCHAR2,
   colname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–56 IMPORT_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs
colname	Name of the column or extension
partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition column statistics are imported.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab (optional)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	If set to TRUE, imports statistics even if statistics are locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

Usage Notes

Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

IMPORT_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to import the statistics preferences of all the tables, excluding the tables owned by Oracle. These tables can by included by passing TRUE for the add_sys parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_DATABASE_PREFS (
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
    add_sys    IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–57 IMPORT_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	Statistics table name where to import the statistics
statid	Optional identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
add_sys	Value TRUE will include the Oracle-owned tables

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges.

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role, or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_DATABASE_PREFS('STATTAB', statown=>'SH');
```

IMPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for all objects in the database from the user statistics table(s) and stores them in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_DATABASE_STATS (
   stattab         VARCHAR2,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate   BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                   get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force           BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   stat_category   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–58 IMPORT_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Overrides statistics locked at the object (table) level: ■ TRUE - Ignores the statistics lock and imports the statistics ■ FALSE - The statistics will be imported only if they are not locked
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.

- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

IMPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for all dictionary schemas ('SYS', 'SYSTEM' and RDBMS component schemas) from the user statistics table and stores them in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   stattab         VARCHAR2,
   statid          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate   BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                 get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force           BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   stat_category   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–59 IMPORT_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	The (optional) identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Overrides statistics lock at the object (table) level: ■ TRUE - Ignores the statistics lock and imports the statistics. ■ FALSE - The statistics will be imported only if there is no lock.
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics

Usage Notes

- You must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege to execute this procedure.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

IMPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for fixed tables from the user statistics table(s) and stores them in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS (
   stattab       VARCHAR2,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                  get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–60 IMPORT_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Overrides statistics lock: ■ TRUE - Ignores the statistics lock and imports the statistics ■ FALSE - The statistics will be imported only if there is no lock

Usage Notes

- You must have the SYSDBA or ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY system privilege to execute this procedure.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

IMPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for a particular index from the user statistics table identified by stattab and stores them in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   indname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–61 IMPORT_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
indname	Name of the index
partname	Name of the index partition. If the index is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition index statistics are imported.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Imports statistics even if index statistics are locked

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY` privilege. For objects owned by `SYS`, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY` privilege or the `SYSDBA` privilege.

Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

IMPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to import the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–62 IMPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
stattab	Statistics table name from where to import the statistics
statid	(Optional) Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if other than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner, or have the SYSDBA privilege, or have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH', 'STAT');
```

IMPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for all objects in the schema identified by ownname from the user statistics table and stores them in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   stattab          VARCHAR2,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN DEFAULTto_no_invalidate_type(
                                 get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   stat_category    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–63 IMPORT_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Overrides statistics locked at the object (table) level: ■ TRUE - Ignores the statistics lock and imports the statistics. ■ FALSE - Statistics will be imported only if there is no lock.
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY` privilege. For objects owned by `SYS`, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the `ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY` privilege or the `SYSDBA` privilege.

Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves system statistics from the user statistics table, identified by `stattab`, and stores the statistics in the dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS (
   stattab       VARCHAR2,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–64 IMPORT_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`stattab`	Identifier of the user statistics table where the statistics will be retrieved
`statid`	Optional identifier associated with the statistics retrieved from the `stattab`
`statown`	Schema containing `stattab` (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

`ORA-20001`: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

`ORA-20002`: Bad user statistics table; may need to be upgraded

`ORA-20003`: Unable to import system statistics

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the `GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS` role.

Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

IMPORT_TABLE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to set the statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_TABLE_PREFS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    tabname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    stattab    IN  VARCHAR2,
    statid     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
    statown    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–65 IMPORT_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name
stattab	Statistics table name from where to import the statistics
statid	(Optional) Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if other than ownname)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner of the table, or have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes.
- Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES', 'STAT');
```

IMPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure retrieves statistics for a particular table from the user statistics table identified by stattab and stores them in the dictionary. Cascade results in all index statistics associated with the specified table being imported as well.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab          VARCHAR2,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   stat_category    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT DEFAULT_STAT_CATEGORY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–66 IMPORT_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table
partname	Name of the table partition. If the table is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then global and partition table statistics are imported.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing from where to retrieve the statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
cascade	If true, column and index statistics for this table are also imported
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure
force	Imports statistics even if table statistics are locked
stat_category	Specifies what statistics to import, accepting multiple values separated by a comma. Values supported: ■ OBJECT_STATS - table statistics, column statistics and index statistics (Default) ■ SYNOPSES - information to support incremental statistics

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values in the user statistics table

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

Oracle does not support export or import of statistics across databases of different character sets.

LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure

This procedure enables the user to lock statistics for a partition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.LOCK_PARTITION_STATS (
    ownname    VARCHAR2,
    tabname    VARCHAR2,
    partname   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–67 LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema to lock
tabname	Name of the table
partname	[Sub]Partition name

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

LOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure locks the statistics of all tables of a schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.LOCK_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–68 LOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema to lock

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- When statistics on a table are locked, all the statistics depending on the table, including table statistics, column statistics, histograms and statistics on all dependent indexes, are considered to be locked.
- The SET_*, DELETE_*, IMPORT_*, GATHER_* procedures that modify statistics in the dictionary of an individual table, index or column will raise an error if statistics of the object is locked.
- Procedures that operates on multiple objects (such as GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS) will skip modifying the statistics of an object if it is locked. Many procedures have force argument to override the lock.
- This procedure either freezes the current set of the statistics or keeps the statistics empty (uncollected) to use dynamic statistics.
- The locked or unlocked state is not exported along with the table statistics when using EXPORT_*_STATS procedures.
- Neither the UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure nor the UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure is designed to unlock statistics of corresponding partitions. When you invoke the LOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure, it sets the statistics lock bit at the table level. In that case, you cannot gather statistics on dependent objects such as partitions and indexes. By the same token, if table statistics are locked, the dependents are locked and you do not need to explicitly invoke the LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure.

LOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure locks the statistics on the table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.LOCK_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–69 LOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- When statistics on a table are locked, all the statistics depending on the table, including table statistics, column statistics, histograms and statistics on all dependent indexes, are considered to be locked.
- The SET_*, DELETE_*, IMPORT_*, GATHER_* procedures that modify statistics in the dictionary of an individual table, index or column will raise an error if statistics of the object is locked.
- Procedures that operates on multiple objects (such as GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS) will skip modifying the statistics of an object if it is locked. Many procedures have force argument to override the lock.
- This procedure either freezes the current set of the statistics or keeps the statistics empty (uncollected) to use dynamic statistics.
- The locked or unlocked state is not exported along with the table statistics when using EXPORT_*_STATS procedures.
- Neither the UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure nor the UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure is designed to unlock statistics of corresponding partitions. When you invoke the LOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure, it sets the statistics lock bit at the table level. In that case, you cannot gather statistics on dependent objects such as partitions and indexes. By the same token, if table statistics are locked, the dependents are locked and you do not need to explicitly invoke the LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure.

MERGE_COL_USAGE Procedure

This procedure merges column usage information from a source database by means of a dblink into the local database. If column usage information already exists for a given table or column MERGE_COL_USAGE will combine both the local and the remote information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.MERGE_COL_USAGE (
   dblink    IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–70 MERGE_COL_USAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dblink	Name of dblink

Usage Notes

User must be SYS to execute this procedure. addition the user specified during the creation of the dblink is expected to have privileges to select from tables in the SYS schema.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Parameter dblink cannot be NULL

ORA-20002: Unable to create a TEMP table

PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedures

These procedures convert user-specified minimum, maximum, and histogram endpoint actual values into Oracle's internal representation for future storage using SET_COLUMN_STATS.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES (
   srec     IN OUT StatRec,
   charvals        CHARARRAY);

DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES (
   srec      IN OUT StatRec,
   datevals         DATEARRAY);

DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES (
   srec     IN OUT StatRec,
   dblvals         DBLARRAY);

DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES (
   srec     IN OUT StatRec,
   fltvals         FLTARRAY);

DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES (
   srec     IN OUT StatRec,
   numvals         NUMARRAY);

DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES (
   srec     IN OUT StatRec,
   rawvals         RAWARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 155–71 PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec.epc	Number of values specified in charvals, datevals, dblvals, fltvals, numvals, or rawvals. This value must be between 2 and 2050, inclusive, and it should be set to 2 for procedures which do not allow histogram information (nvarchar and rowid). The first corresponding array entry should hold the minimum value for the column, and the last entry should hold the maximum. If there are more than two entries, then all the others hold the remaining height-balanced or frequency histogram endpoint values (with in-between values ordered from next-smallest to next-largest). This value may be adjusted to account for compression, so the returned value should be left as is for a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
srec.bkvals	If you want a frequency or hybrid histogram, this array contains the number of occurrences of each distinct value specified in charvals, datevals, dblvals, fltvals, numvals, or rawvals. Otherwise, it is merely an output parameter, and it must be set to NULL when this procedure is called.

Table 155–71 (Cont.) PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec.rpcnts	If you want a hybrid histogram, this array contains the total frequency of values that are less than or equal to each distinct value specified in charvals, datevals, numvals, or rawvals. Otherwise, it is merely an output argument and must be set to NULL when this procedure is called. As an example, for a given array numvals with numvals(i)=4, rpcnts(i)=13 means that there are 13 rows in the column which are less than or equal to 4. Note: ▪ Whenever srec.rpcnts is populated, srec.bkvals must be populated as described above. ▪ Whenever bkvals and/or rpcnts are populated, there should not be any duplicates in charvals, datevals, numvals, or rawvals.

Datatype-specific input parameters (use one) are shown in Table 155–72.

Table 155–72 Datatype-Specific Input Parameters

Type	Description
charvals	The array of values when the column type is character-based. Up to the first 64 bytes of each string should be provided. Arrays must have between 2 and 2050 entries, inclusive. If the datatype is fixed CHAR, the strings must be space-padded to 15 characters for correct normalization.
datevals	Array of values when the column type is date-based
dblvals	Array of values when the column type is double-based
fltvals	Array of values when the column type is float-based
numvals	Array of values when the column type is numeric-based
rawvals	Array of values when the column type is RAW. Up to the first 64 bytes of each value should be provided.
nvmin, nvmax	Minimum and maximum values when the column type is national character set based. No histogram information can be provided for a column of this type. If the datatype is fixed CHAR, the strings must be space-padded to 15 characters for correct normalization.
rwmin, rwmax	Minimum and maximum values when the column type is rowid. No histogram information is provided for a column of this type.

Output Parameters

Table 155–73 PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedure Output Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec.minval	Internal representation of the minimum suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.maxval	Internal representation of the maximum suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.bkvals	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS

Table 155–73 (Cont.) PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES Procedure Output Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec.novals	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.eavals	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.rpcnts	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS

Exceptions

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent input values

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_NVARCHAR Procedure

This procedure converts user-specified minimum, maximum, and histogram endpoint actual values into Oracle's internal representation for future storage using the SET_COLUMN_STATS Procedures.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_NVARCHAR (
   srec     IN OUT StatRec,
   nvmin           NVARCHAR2,
   nvmax           NVARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–74 PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_NVARCHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec.epc	Number of values specified in charvals, datevals, dblvals, fltvals, numvals, or rawvals. This value must be between 2 and 2050, inclusive, and it should be set to 2 for procedures which do not allow histogram information (nvarchar and rowid). The first corresponding array entry should hold the minimum value for the column, and the last entry should hold the maximum. If there are more than two entries, then all the others hold the remaining height-balanced or frequency histogram endpoint values (with in-between values ordered from next-smallest to next-largest). This value may be adjusted to account for compression, so the returned value should be left as is for a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
srec.bkvals	If you want a frequency or hybrid histogram, then this array contains the number of occurrences of each distinct value specified in charvals, datevals, dblvals, fltvals, numvals, or rawvals. Otherwise, it is merely an output parameter, and it must be set to NULL when this procedure is called.
srec.rpcnts	If you want a hybrid histogram, this array contains the total frequency of values that are less than or equal to each distinct value specified in charvals, datevals, numvals, or rawvals. Otherwise, it is merely an output argument and must be set to NULL when this procedure is called. As an example, for a given array numvals with numvals(i)=4, rpcnts(i)=13 means that there are 13 rows in the column which are less than or equal to 4. Note: ▪ Whenever srec.rpcnts is populated, srec.bkvals must be populated as described above. ▪ Whenever bkvals and/or rpcnts are populated, there should not be any duplicates in charvals, datevals, numvals, or rawvals.

Datatype-specific input parameters (use one) are shown in Table 155–72.

Table 155–75 PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_NVARCHAR Datatype-Specific Input Parameters

Type	Description
nvmin, nvmax	The minimum and maximum values when the column type is national character set based. No histogram information can be provided for a column of this type. If the datatype is fixed CHAR, the strings must be space-padded to 15 characters for correct normalization.

Output Parameters

Table 155–76 PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_NVARCHAR Procedure Output Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec.minval	Internal representation of the minimum suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.maxval	Internal representation of the maximum suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.bkvals	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
srec.novals	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.eavals	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
srec.rpcnts	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS

Exceptions

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent input values

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ROWID Procedure

This procedure converts user-specified minimum, maximum, and histogram endpoint datatype-specific values into Oracle's internal representation for future storage using SET_COLUMN_STATS.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ROWID (
   srec  IN OUT StatRec,
   rwmin        ROWID,
   rwmax        ROWID);
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(prepare_column_values_rowid, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 155–77 PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ROWID Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srec	Values (IN): ■ epc ■ bkvals ■ rpcnts Values (OUT): ■ minval ■ maxval ■ bkvals ■ novals ■ eavals ■ rpcnts epc (IN) - Number of values specified in charvals, datevals, dblvals, fltvals, numvals, or rawvals. This value must be between 2 and 2050, inclusive, and it should be set to 2 for procedures which do not allow histogram information (nvarchar and rowid). The first corresponding array entry should hold the minimum value for the column, and the last entry should hold the maximum. If there are more than two entries, then all the others hold the remaining height-balanced or frequency histogram endpoint values (with in-between values ordered from next-smallest to next-largest). This value may be adjusted to account for compression, so the returned value should be left as is for a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS. bkvals (IN) - If you want a frequency or hybrid histogram, this array contains the number of occurrences of each distinct value specified in charvals, datevals, dblvals, fltvals, numvals, or rawvals. Otherwise, it is merely an output parameter, and it must be set to NULL when this procedure is called.

Table 155–77 (Cont.) PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES_ROWID Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	rpcnts (IN) -
	If you want a hybrid histogram, this array contains the total frequency of values that are less than or equal to each distinct value specified in charvals, datevals, numvals, or rawvals. Otherwise, it is merely an output argument and must be set to NULL when this procedure is called.
	As an example, for a given array numvals with numvals(i)=4, rpcnts(i)=13 means that there are 13 rows in the column which are less than or equal to 4.
	Note: ■ Whenever srec.rpcnts is populated, srec.bkvals must be populated as described above. ■ Whenever bkvals and/or rpcnts are populated, there should not be any duplicates in charvals, datevals, numvals, or rawvals.
	minval (OUT) -
	Internal representation of the minimum suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
	maxval (OUT) -
	Internal representation of the maximum suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
	bkvals (OUT) -
	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
	novals (OUT) -
	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS.
	eavals (OUT) -
	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS
	rpcnts (OUT) -
	Array suitable for use in a call to SET_COLUMN_STATS

Datatype-specific input parameters (use one) are shown in Table 155–72.

Table 155–78 Datatype-Specific Input Parameters

Type	Description
rwmin, rwmax	Minimum and maximum values when the column type is rowid. No histogram information is provided for a column of this type.

Usage Notes

No special privilege or role is needed to invoke this procedure.

PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS Procedure

This procedure is used to publish the statistics gathered and stored as pending.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS (
    ownname          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
    tabname          IN  VARCHAR2,
    no_invalidate    BOOLEAN DEFAULT
       to_no_invalidate_type(get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
    force      IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–79 PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name
no_invalidate	Do not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	If TRUE, will override the lock

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

- If the parameter tabname is NULL then publish applies to all tables of the specified schema.
- The default owner/schema is the user who runs the procedure.
- To run this procedure, you need to have the same privilege for gathering statistics on the tables that will be touched by this procedure.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.PUBLISH_PENDING_STATS ('SH', null);
```

PURGE_STATS Procedure

This procedure purges old versions of statistics saved in the dictionary. To run this procedure, you must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.PURGE_STATS(
    before_timestamp       TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–80 PURGE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
before_timestamp	Versions of statistics saved before this timestamp are purged. If NULL, it uses the purging policy used by automatic purge. The automatic purge deletes all history older than the older of (current time - statistics history retention) and (time of recent analyze in the system - 1). The statistics history retention value can be changed using ALTER_STATS_HISTORY_RETENTION Procedure.The default is 31 days.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege and the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege.

REMAP_STAT_TABLE Procedure

This procedure remaps the names of objects in the user statistics table. It allows you to import the statistics to objects with same definition but with different names.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REMAP_STAT_TABLE (
   ownname    IN    VARCHAR2,
   stattab    IN    VARCHAR2,
   src_own    IN    VARCHAR2,
   src_tab    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tgt_own    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tgt_tab    IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–81 REMAP_STAT_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner of the statistics table. NULL means the current schema.
stattab	User statistics table identifier
src_own	Owner of the table to be renamed. This argument cannot be NULL.
src_tab	Name of the table to be renamed. If NULL, all tables are owned by src_own.
tgt_own	New name of the owner of the table. The owner name is also updated for the dependent objects such as columns and indexes. Note that an index of src_tab not owned by src_own is not renamed.This argument cannot be NULL.
tgt_tab	New name of the table. This argument is valid only if src_tab is not NULL.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid input

Examples

The following statement remaps all objects of sh to shsave in user statistics table sh.ustat:

```
DBMS_STATS.REMAP_STAT_TABLE ('sh', 'ustat', 'sh', NULL, 'shsave', NULL);
```

The following statement can be used to import statistics into objects of shsave once the preceding remap procedure is completed:

```
DBMS_STATS.IMPORT_SCHEMA_STATS ('shsave', 'ustat', statown => 'sh');
```

The following statement remaps sh.customers to shsave.customers_sav:

```
DBMS_STATS.REMAP_STAT_TABLE ('sh', 'ustat', 'sh', 'customers','shsave',
'customers_sav');
```

REPORT_COL_USAGE Function

This function reports the recorded column (group) usage information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_COL_USAGE (
   ownname    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    IN    VARCHAR2)
RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–82 REPORT_COL_USAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name. If NULL it reports column usage information for tables in all schemas in the database.
tabname	Table name. If NULL it reports column usage information for all tables of ownname.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA administrative privilege or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.

REPORT_GATHER_AUTO_STATS Function

This function runs the auto statistics gathering job in reporting mode. That is, statistics are not actually collected, but all the objects that will be affected when auto statistics gathering is invoked are reported.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_AUTO_STATS (
   detail_level      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format            VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–83 REPORT_GATHER_AUTO_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`detail_level`	Detail level for the content of the report ■ `BASIC`: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ `TYPICAL`: In addition to the information provided at level `BASIC`, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ `ALL`: In addition to the information provided at level `TYPICAL`, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - reason for including the object in the target list - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (`CONCURRENT` preference is turned on).

Table 155–83 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_AUTO_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)

Usage Notes

Only user SYS can run the REPORT_GATHER_AUTO_STATS function.

REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Functions

This function runs the GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Procedures in reporting mode. That is, statistics are not actually collected, but all the objects that will be affected when GATHER_DATABASE_STATS is invoked are reported. The input set of parameters are exactly the same as in GATHER_DATABASE_STATS with two extra parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS (
   estimate_percent     IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type (
                                             GET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample         IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt           IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree               IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_DEGREE_TYPE(
                                             GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity          IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade              IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT to_cascade_type (
                                             GET_PARAM('CASCADE')),
   stattab              IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   statid               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   options              IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   objlist              OUT   ObjectTab,
   statown              IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   gather_sys           IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   no_invalidate        IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE (
                                             GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list      IN    ObjectTab  DEFAULT NULL,
   detail_level         IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS (
   estimate_percent     IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type (
                                             GET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample         IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt           IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree               IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_DEGREE_TYPE(
                                             GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity          IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade              IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT to_cascade_type (
                                             GET_PARAM('CASCADE')),
   stattab              IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   statid               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   options              IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   statown              IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   gather_sys           IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   no_invalidate        IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE (
                                             GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list      IN    ObjectTab  DEFAULT NULL,
   detail_level         IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–84 REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute): The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
block_sample	Whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk, then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when doing an estimate statistics.
method_opt	Accepts: ▪ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms. - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–84 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics
cascade	Gather statistics on the indexes as well. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the indexes in the database in addition to gathering table and column statistics. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics to be collected or not. This is the default. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics. The statistics table is assumed to reside in the same schema as the object being analyzed, so there must be one such table in each schema to use this option.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab.

Table 155–84 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Further specification of which objects to gather statistics for: GATHER: Gathers statistics on all objects in the schema. GATHER AUTO: Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics, and determines how to gather those statistics. When GATHER AUTO is specified, the only additional valid parameters are stattab, statid, objlist and statown; all other parameter settings are ignored. Returns a list of processed objects. GATHER STALE: Gathers statistics on stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. Also, return a list of objects found to be stale. GATHER EMPTY: Gathers statistics on objects which currently have no statistics. Return a list of objects found to have no statistics. LIST AUTO: Returns a list of objects to be processed with GATHER AUTO LIST STALE: Returns a list of stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views LIST EMPTY: Returns a list of objects which currently have no statistics
objlist	List of objects found to be stale or empty
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
gather_sys	Gathers statistics on the objects owned by the 'SYS' user
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
obj_filter_list	A list of object filters. When provided, GATHER_DATABASE_STATS will gather statistics only on objects which satisfy at least one object filter in the list as needed. In a single object filter, we can specify the constraints on the object attributes. The attribute values specified in the object filter are case- insensitive unless double-quoted. Wildcard is allowed in the attribute values. Suppose non-NULL values s1, s2, ... are specified for attributes a1, a2, ... in one object filter. An object o is said to satisfy this object filter if (o.a1 like s1) and (o.a2 like s2) and ... is true. See Applying an Object Filter List.

Table 155–84 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`detail_level`	Detail level for the content of the report ■ `BASIC`: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ `TYPICAL`: In addition to the information provided at level `BASIC`, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ `ALL`: In addition to the information provided at level `TYPICAL`, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (`CONCURRENT` preference is turned on).

Table 155–84 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DATABASE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)

Return Values

A CLOB object that contains the report

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.

REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Functions

This function runs the GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure in reporting mode. That is, statistics are not actually collected, but all objects affected when GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS is invoked are reported. The input set of parameters are exactly the same as in GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS with two extra parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   comp_id               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent      IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_ESTIMATE_PERCENT_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample          IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt            IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree                IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_DEGREE_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity           IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade               IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_CASCADE_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('CASCADE')),
   stattab               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   statid                IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   options               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'GATHER AUTO',
   objlist               OUT   ObjectTab,
   statown               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate         IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   obj_filter_list       IN    ObjectTab  DEFAULT NULL,
   detail_level          IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format                IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS (
   comp_id               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent      IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_ESTIMATE_PERCENT_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample          IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt            IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree                IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_DEGREE_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity           IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade               IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_CASCADE_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('CASCADE')),
   stattab               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   statid                IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   options               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'GATHER AUTO',
   statown               IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate         IN    BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE
                                             (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   detail_level          IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format                IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–85 REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
comp_id	Component id of the schema to analyze (NULL will result in analyzing schemas of all RDBMS components).Please refer to comp_id column of DBA_REGISTRY view. The procedure always gather statistics on 'SYS' and 'SYSTEM' schemas regardless of this argument.
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute). The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
block_sample	Determines whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when performing estimate statistics.
method_opt	Accepts: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms. - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–85 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - gathers subpartition-level statistics
cascade	Gathers statistics on indexes also.Index statistics gathering will not be parallelized. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the indexes in the schema in addition to gathering table and column statistics. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics to be collected or not. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	The (optional) identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab
options	Further specification of objects for which to gather statistics: ■ 'GATHER' - Gathers statistics on all objects in the schema ■ 'GATHER AUTO' - Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics and determines how to gather those statistics. When 'GATHER AUTO' is specified, the only additional valid parameters are comp_id, stattab, statid and statown; all other parameter settings will be ignored. Also, returns a list of objects processed. ■ 'GATHER STALE' - Gathers statistics on stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. Also, returns a list of objects found to be stale. ■ 'GATHER EMPTY' - Gathers statistics on objects which currently have no statistics. Also, returns a list of objects found to have no statistics. ■ 'LIST AUTO' - Returns list of objects to be processed with 'GATHER AUTO' ■ 'LIST STALE' - Returns list of stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views ■ 'LIST EMPTY' - Returns list of objects which currently have no statistics

Table 155–85 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
objlist	The list of objects found to be stale or empty
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
obj_filter_list	A list of object filters. When provided, this will gather statistics only on objects which satisfy at least one object filter in the list as needed. In a single object filter, we can specify the constraints on the object attributes. The attribute values specified in the object filter are case- insensitive unless double-quoted. Wildcard is allowed in the attribute values. Suppose non-NULL values s1, s2, ... are specified for attributes a1, a2, ... in one object filter. An object o is said to satisfy this object filter if (o.a1 like s1) and (o.a2 like s2) and ... is true.

Table 155–85 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
detail_level	Detail level for the content of the report ■ BASIC: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ TYPICAL: In addition to the information provided at level BASIC, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ ALL: In addition to the information provided at level TYPICAL, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (CONCURRENT preference is turned on).

Table 155–85 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_DICTIONARY_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)

Return Values

A CLOB object that contains the report

Usage Notes

You must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege to execute this procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Index does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

REPORT_GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS Function

This function runs the GATHER_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure in reporting mode. That is, statistics are not actually collected, but all the objects that will be affected when GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS is invoked are reported. The input set of parameters are exactly the same as in GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS with two extra parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS (
   stattab          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE (
                                    GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   detail_level     IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–86 REPORT_GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	Identifier to associate with these statistics within stattab (optional)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Table 155–86 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
detail_level	Detail level for the content of the report ■ BASIC: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ TYPICAL: In addition to the information provided at level BASIC, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ ALL: In addition to the information provided at level TYPICAL, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (CONCURRENT preference is turned on).

Table 155–86 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_FIXED_OBJ_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)

Return Values

A CLOB object that contains the report

Usage Notes

You must have the SYSDBA or ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY system privilege to execute this procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table, may need to upgrade it

REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Functions

This function runs the GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Procedures in reporting mode. That is, statistics are not actually collected, but all the objects that will be affected when GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS is invoked are reported. The input set of parameters are exactly the same as in GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS with two extra parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname           IN   VARCHAR2,
   estimate_percent  IN   NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_ESTIMATE_PERCENT_TYPE (
                                        GET_PARAM ('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample      IN   BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt        IN   VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM ('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree            IN   NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_DEGREE_TYPE (
                                        GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity       IN   VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade           IN   BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_CASCADE_TYPE (
                                        GET_PARAM ('CASCADE')),
   stattab           IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   statid            IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   options           IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   objlist           OUT  ObjectTab,
   statown           IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate     IN   BOOLEAN     DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE (
                                         GET_PARAM ('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force             IN   BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   obj_filter_list   IN   ObjectTab   DEFAULT NULL,
   detail_level      IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format            IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;

DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname           IN   VARCHAR2,
   estimate_percent  IN   NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_ESTIMATE_PERCENT_TYPE (
                                        GET_PARAM ('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample      IN   BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt        IN   VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM ('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree            IN   NUMBER     DEFAULT TO_DEGREE_TYPE (
                                        GET_PARAM('DEGREE')),
   granularity       IN   VARCHAR2   DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade           IN   BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TO_CASCADE_TYPE (
                                        GET_PARAM ('CASCADE')),
   stattab           IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   statid            IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   options           IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT 'GATHER',
   statown           IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate     IN   BOOLEAN     DEFAULT TO_NO_INVALIDATE_TYPE (
                                         GET_PARAM ('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force             IN   BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE,
   obj_filter_list   IN   ObjectTab   DEFAULT NULL,
   detail_level      IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format            IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–87 REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema to analyze (NULL means current schema)
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute): The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
block_sample	Whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk, then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when doing an estimate statistics.
method_opt	Accepts: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–87 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics.
cascade	Gather statistics on the indexes as well. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the indexes in the schema in addition to gathering table and column statistics. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics to be collected or not. This is the default. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
options	Further specification of which objects to gather statistics for: GATHER: Gathers statistics on all objects in the schema. GATHER AUTO: Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle implicitly determines which objects need new statistics, and determines how to gather those statistics. When GATHER AUTO is specified, the only additional valid parameters are ownname, stattab, statid, objlist and statown; all other parameter settings are ignored. Returns a list of processed objects. GATHER STALE: Gathers statistics on stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. Also, return a list of objects found to be stale. GATHER EMPTY: Gathers statistics on objects which currently have no statistics. also, return a list of objects found to have no statistics. LIST AUTO: Returns a list of objects to be processed with GATHER AUTO. LIST STALE: Returns list of stale objects as determined by looking at the *_tab_modifications views. LIST EMPTY: Returns list of objects which currently have no statistics.
objlist	List of objects found to be stale or empty

Table 155–87 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Gather statistics on objects even if they are locked
obj_filter_list	A list of object filters. When provided, GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS will gather statistics only on objects which satisfy at least one object filter in the list as needed. In a single object filter, we can specify the constraints on the object attributes. The attribute values specified in the object filter are case- insensitive unless double-quoted. Wildcard is allowed in the attribute values. Suppose non-NULL values s1, s2, ... are specified for attributes a1, a2, ... in one object filter. An object o is said to satisfy this object filter if (o.a1 like s1) and (o.a2 like s2) and ... is true. See Applying an Object Filter List.

Table 155–87 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
detail_level	Detail level for the content of the report ■ BASIC: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ TYPICAL: In addition to the information provided at level BASIC, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ ALL: In addition to the information provided at level TYPICAL, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (CONCURRENT preference is turned on).

Table 155–87 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

When you use a specific value for the sampling percentage, DBMS_STATS honors it except for when:

- The result is less than 2500 rows (too small a sample) and
- The specified percentage is more than the certain percentage.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Schema does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Bad input value

Examples

Applying an Object Filter List

The following example specifies that any table with a "T" prefix in the SAMPLE schema and any table in the SYS schema, if stale, will have statistics gathered upon it.

```
DECLARE
  filter_lst  DBMS_STATS.OBJECTTAB := DBMS_STATS.OBJECTTAB();
BEGIN
  filter_lst.extend(2);
  filter_lst(1).ownname := 'SAMPLE';
  filter_lst(1).objname := 'T%';
  filter_lst(2).ownname := 'SYS';
  DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS(NULL, obj_filter_list => filter_lst,
                                 options => 'GATHER STALE');
END;
```

REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS Function

This procedure runs the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure in reporting mode. That is, statistics are not actually collected, but all the objects that will be affected when GATHER_TABLE_STATS is invoked are reported.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname          VARCHAR2,
   tabname          VARCHAR2,
   partname         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent NUMBER   DEFAULT to_estimate_percent_type
                                        (get_param('ESTIMATE_PERCENT')),
   block_sample     BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   method_opt       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT get_param('METHOD_OPT'),
   degree           NUMBER   DEFAULT to_degree_type(get_param('DEGREE')),
   granularity      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT GET_PARAM('GRANULARITY'),
   cascade          BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_cascade_type(get_param('CASCADE')),
   stattab          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid           VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown          VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate    BOOLEAN  DEFAULT  to_no_invalidate_type (
                                      get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   stattype         VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'DATA',
   force            BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE)
   detail_level     VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',   format          VARCHAR2
DEFAULT 'TEXT')
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–88 REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema of table to analyze
tabname	Name of table
partname	Name of partition
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate (NULL means compute) The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
block_sample	Whether or not to use random block sampling instead of random row sampling. Random block sampling is more efficient, but if the data is not randomly distributed on disk, then the sample values may be somewhat correlated. Only pertinent when doing an estimate statistics.

Table 155–88 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
method_opt	Accepts either of the following options, or both in combination: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] ■ FOR COLUMNS [column_clause] [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} column_clause is defined as column_clause := column_name | extension name | extension - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. - column_name : Name of a column - extension : can be either a column group in the format of (column_name, Colume_name [, ...]) or an expression The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
degree	Degree of parallelism. The default for degree is NULL. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. NULL means use the table default value specified by the DEGREE clause in the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE to specify the default value based on the initialization parameters. The AUTO_DEGREE value determines the degree of parallelism automatically. This is between 1 (serial execution) and DEFAULT_DEGREE (the system default value based on number of CPUs and initialization parameters) according to the size of the object. When using DEGREE=>NULL, DEGREE=>n, or DEGREE=>DBMS_STATS.DEFAULT_DEGREE, the current implementation of DBMS_STATS may use serial execution if the size of the object does not warrant parallel execution.

Table 155–88 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
granularity	Granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'APPROX_GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - similar to 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' but in this case the global statistics are aggregated from partition level statistics. This option will aggregate all statistics except the number of distinct values for columns and number of distinct keys of indexes. The existing histograms of the columns at the table level are also aggregated.The aggregation will use only partitions with statistics, so to get accurate global statistics, users should make sure to have statistics for all partitions. Global statistics are gathered if partname is NULL or if the aggregation cannot be performed (for example, if statistics for one of the partitions is missing). 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics.
cascade	Gathers statistics on the indexes for this table. Using this option is equivalent to running the GATHER_INDEX_STATS Procedure on each of the table's indexes. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE to have Oracle determine whether index statistics are to be collected or not. This is the default. The default value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to save the current statistics
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
stattype	Statistics type. The only value allowed is DATA.
force	Gather statistics of table even if it is locked

Table 155–88 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
detail_level	Detail level for the content of the report ■ BASIC: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ TYPICAL: In addition to the information provided at level BASIC, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ ALL: In addition to the information provided at level TYPICAL, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (CONCURRENT preference is turned on).

Table 155–88 (Cont.) REPORT_GATHER_TABLE_STATS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)

Return Values

A CLOB object that contains the report

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

REPORT_SINGLE_STATS_OPERATION Function

This function generates a report for the provided operation optionally in a particular pluggable database (PDB) in a multitenant environment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_SINGLE_STATS_OPERATIONS (
   opid              NUMBER,
   detail_level      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format            VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'TEXT'
   container_id      NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–89 REPORT_SINGLE_STATS_OPERATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
opid	Operation ID

Table 155–89 (Cont.) REPORT_SINGLE_STATS_OPERATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
detail_level	Detail level for the content of the report ■ BASIC: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ TYPICAL: In addition to the information provided at level BASIC, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed-out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) With regard to target objects: - owner and name of each target object - target object type (such as: table, index) - start time - end time - completion status ■ ALL: In addition to the information provided at level TYPICAL, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name - session ID - parameter values - error message if the operation failed With regard to target objects: - job name - batching details - estimated cost - rank in the target list - columns for which histograms were collected - list of collected extended statistics (if any) - reason for including the object in the target list (applies to only automatic statistics gathering operation tasks) - additional error details if the task has failed. Note that several fields (such as job name, estimated task cost) in the report are populated only when an operation is executed concurrently (CONCURRENT preference is turned on).

Table 155–89 (Cont.) REPORT_SINGLE_STATS_OPERATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)
container_id	ID of the pluggable database (PDB) on which this operation was performed. Note that in a multitenant environment, operation ID does not uniquely identify an operation. That is, different operations from distinct PDBs may have the same operation ID. Hence, in a multitenant environment, if a PDB ID is not provided, then the report may contain multiple operations. In a typical (non-CDB) database environment, operation ID is unique to each operation.

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege and the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege.

REPORT_STATS_OPERATIONS Function

This function generates a report of all statistics operations that take place between two timestamps which may or may not have been provided. It allows the scope of the report to be narrowed down so that report will include only auto statistics gathering runs. Furthermore, in a multitenant environment, users may optionally provide a set of pluggable database (PDB) IDs so that only statistics operations from the specified pluggable databases will be reported.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.REPORT_STATS_OPERATIONS (
   detail_level       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   format             VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TEXT',
   latestN            NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   since              TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULL,
   until              TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE DEFAULT NULl,
   auto_only          BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   container_ids      DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY DEFAULT DBMS_STATS.NULL_NUMTAB)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 155–90 REPORT_STATS_OPERATIONS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
detail_level	Detail level for the content of the report ■ BASIC: The report includes - operation ID - operation name - operation target object - start time - end time - completion status (such as: succeeded, failed) ■ TYPICAL: In addition to the information provided at level BASIC, the report includes individual target objects for which statistics are gathered in this operation. Specifically, with regard to operation related details: - total number of target objects - total number of successfully completed objects - total number of failed objects - total number of timed -out objects (applies to only auto statistics gathering) ■ ALL: In addition to the information provided at level TYPICAL, the report includes further information on each target object. Specifically, with regard to operation-related details: - job name (if the operation was run in a job) - session ID - parameter values - additional error details if the operation has failed

Table 155–90 (Cont.) REPORT_STATS_OPERATIONS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Report format: ■ XML ■ HTML ■ TEXT (Default)
latestN	Restricts the report to contain only the latest N operations that took place between the provided time points (since and until). The default value is NULL, meaning that all qualifying operations will be reported.
since	The report will include only statistics operations that started after this timestamp.
until	The report will include only statistics operations that before after this timestamp.
auto_only	When TRUE, the report will contain only auto statistics gathering job runs.
container_ids	A multitenant environment contains one or more pluggable databases (PDBs). container_ids represents a set of PDB IDs so that only statistics operations from the specified PDBs are reported (applies to only multitenant environments).

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege and the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege.

Examples

Note that the type for container_ids input parameter is DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY which is an associative PL/SQL array collection. Although associative array type allows for more flexible harvals table-like organization of entries, this function treats container_ids as a regular table collection with the first ID located at index 1 and the last id located at index container_ids.count without any empty array slot left between any two IDs. An example for 3 container ids is provided.

```
DECLARE
    conid_tab  DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY;
    report clob;
BEGIN
    conid_tab(1) := 124;
    conid_tab(2) := 63;
    conid_tab(3) := 98;
    report := DBMS_STATS.REPORT_STATS_OPERATIONS (container_ids => conid_tab);
END;
```

RESET_GLOBAL_PREF_DEFAULTS Procedure

This procedures sets global preference, such as CASCADE, ESTIMATE_PERCENT and GRANULARITY, to default values. This reverses the global preferences set by the SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESET_GLOBAL_PREF_DEFAULTS;
```

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege and the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege.

RESET_PARAM_DEFAULTS Procedure

Note: This subprogram has been replaced by improved technology and is maintained only for purposes of backward compatibility. In this case, use the RESET_GLOBAL_PREF_DEFAULTS Procedure.

See also Deprecated Subprograms on page 155-13.

This procedure resets the default values of all parameters to Oracle recommended values.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESET_PARAM_DEFAULTS;
```

RESTORE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics of all tables of the database as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESTORE_DATABSE_STATS(
   as_of_timestamp        TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   force                  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   no_invalidate          BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type
                                              (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')));
```

Parameters

Table 155–91 RESTORE_DATABASE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
as_of_timestamp	The timestamp to which to restore statistics
force	Restores statistics even if their statistics are locked
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

ORA-20006: Unable to restore statistics, statistics history not available

RESTORE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics of all dictionary tables (tables of 'SYS', 'SYSTEM' and RDBMS component schemas) as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESTORE_DICTIONARY_STATS(
   as_of_timestamp        TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   force                  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   no_invalidate          BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type
                                                 (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')));
```

Parameters

Table 155–92 RESTORE_DICTIONARY_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
as_of_timestamp	Timestamp to which to restore statistics
force	Restores statistics even if their statistics are locked
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you must have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

ORA-20006: Unable to restore statistics, statistics history not available

RESTORE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics of all fixed tables as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESTORE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS(
   as_of_timestamp        TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   force                  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   no_invalidate          BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type
                                              (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')));
```

Parameters

Table 155–93 RESTORE_FIXED_OBJECTS_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
as_of_timestamp	The timestamp to which to restore statistics
force	Restores statistics even if their statistics are locked
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you must have the SYSDBA or ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY system privilege.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

ORA-20006: Unable to restore statistics, statistics history not available

RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics of all tables of a schema as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS(
   ownname                VARCHAR2,
   as_of_timestamp        TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   force                  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   no_invalidate          BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type
                                              (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')));
```

Parameters

Table 155–94 RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Schema of the tables for which the statistics are to be restored
as_of_timestamp	The timestamp to which to restore statistics
force	Restores statistics even if their statistics are locked
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

ORA-20006: Unable to restore statistics, statistics history not available

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

RESTORE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores system statistics as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp).

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESTORE_SCHEMA_STATS(
   as_of_timestamp        TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–95 RESTORE_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
as_of_timestamp	The timestamp to which to restore statistics

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

ORA-20006: Unable to restore statistics, statistics history not available

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS role.

RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure restores statistics of a table as of a specified timestamp (as_of_timestamp). The procedure will restore statistics of associated indexes and columns as well. If the table statistics were locked at the specified timestamp the procedure will lock the statistics. The procedure will not restore user defined statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.RESTORE_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname                  VARCHAR2,
   tabname                  VARCHAR2,
   as_of_timestamp          TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   restore_cluster_index    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   force                    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   no_invalidate            BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type
                                          (GET_PARAM('NO_INVALIDATE')));
```

Parameters

Table 155–96 RESTORE_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	The schema of the table for which the statistics are to be restored
tabname	The table name
as_of_timestamp	The timestamp to which to restore statistics
restore_cluster_index	If the table is part of a cluster, restore statistics of the cluster index if set to TRUE
force	Restores statistics even if the table statistics are locked. If the table statistics were not locked at the specified timestamp, it unlocks the statistics.
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent values

ORA-20006: Unable to restore statistics, statistics history not available

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure

This procedure seeds column usage information from a statements in the specified SQL tuning set. It iterates over the SQL statements in the specified SQL tuning set, compiles them and seeds column usage information for the columns that appear in these statements. You can monitor the workload on the system for given amount of time and seed the and seed the column usage information based on the columns that appear in statements executed during the monitoring window.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SEED_COL_USAGE (
   sqlset_name     IN    VARCHAR2,
   owner_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   time_limit      IN    POSITIVE DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–97 SEED_COL_USAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	Name of the SQL tuning set
owner_name	Owner of the SQL tuning set
time_limit	Time limit (in seconds)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege and the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege.

This procedure also records group of columns. Extensions for the recorded group of columns can be created using the CREATE_EXTENDED_STATS Function procedure. If sqlset_name and owner_name are NULL, it records the column (group) usage information for the statements executed in the system in next time_limit seconds.

Examples

The following example turns on monitoring for 5 minutes or 300 seconds.

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_STATS.SEED_COL_USAGE (null,null,300);
END;
```

SET_COLUMN_STATS Procedures

This procedure sets column-related information. In the version of this procedure that deals with user-defined statistics, the statistics type specified is the type to store in the dictionary, in addition to the actual user-defined statistics. If this statistics type is NULL, the statistics type associated with the index or column is stored.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   tabname       VARCHAR2,
   colname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   distcnt       NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   density       NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   nullcnt       NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   srec          StatRec DEFAULT NULL,
   avgclen       NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   flags         NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                 get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Use the following for user-defined statistics:

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_COLUMN_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   tabname       VARCHAR2,
   colname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   ext_stats     RAW,
   stattypown    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattypname   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                 get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   force         BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–98 SET_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema.
tabname	Name of the table to which this column belongs.
colname	Name of the column or extension
partname	Name of the table partition in which to store the statistics. If the table is partitioned and partname is NULL, then the statistics are stored at the global table level.

Table 155–98 (Cont.) SET_COLUMN_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are stored directly in the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
ext_stats	User-defined statistics
stattypown	Schema of the statistics type
stattypname	Name of the statistics type
distcnt	Number of distinct values
density	Column density. If this value is NULL and if distcnt is not NULL, then density is derived from distcnt.
nullcnt	Number of NULLs
srec	StatRec structure filled in by a call to PREPARE_COLUMN_VALUES or GET_COLUMN_STATS
avgclen	Average length for the column (in bytes)
flags	For internal Oracle use (should be left as NULL)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
force	Sets the values even if statistics of the column are locked

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or inconsistent input values

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to set the statistics preferences of all the tables, excluding the tables owned by Oracle. These tables can by included by passing TRUE for the add_sys parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_DATABASE_PREFS (
    pname            IN   VARCHAR2,
    pvalue           IN   VARCHAR2,
    add_sys          IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–99 SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Preference name. The existing value for following preferences can be deleted and default preference values will be used: ■ CASCADE ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ GRANULARITY ■ PUBLISH ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS
.	CASCADE - The value determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics
.	DEGREE - The value determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - The value determines the percentage of rows to estimate. The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.

Table 155–99 (Cont.) SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
method_opt	When setting preference on global, schema, database or dictionary level, only 'FOR ALL' syntax is allowed.: ▪ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer : Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms. - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns. - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns. The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.The value can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
.	NO_INVALIDATE - The value controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered. Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default.
.	GRANULARITY - The value determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned) 'ALL' - gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - gathers subpartition-level statistics
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed. Prior to Oracle Database 11*g*, Release 1 (11.1), once a statistic gathering job completed the new statistics were automatically published into the dictionary tables. The user now has the ability to gather statistics but not publish them immediately. This allows the DBA to test the new statistics before publishing them.

Table 155–99 (Cont.) SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan. With partitioned tables it is very common to load new data into a new partition. As new partitions are added and data loaded, the global table statistics need to be kept up to date. Oracle will update the global table statistics by scanning only the partitions that have been changed instead of the entire table if the following conditions hold: ■ the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ the PUBLISH value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ the user specifies AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE for ESTIMATE_PERCENT and AUTO for GRANULARITY when gathering statistics on the table. If the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table was set to FALSE (default value), a full table scan is used to maintain the global statistics which is a much more resource intensive and time-consuming operation for large tables. INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE It takes two values: ■ TABLE - table level synopses are gathered. This is used when you want to exchange this table with a partition. You can run GATHER_TABLE_STATS on this table with INCREMENTAL to TRUE and INCREMENTAL_LEVEL to TABLE before the exchange. The result is that table level synopses are gathered on this table (currently Oracle supports only table level synopses on non-predestined tables). Once the exchange occurs, the partition will have synopses which come from the table level synopses of the table before exchange. This preference value can be only used in the SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. It is not allowed in the SET_GLOBAL/DATABASE/SCHEMA_PREFS procedures. ■ PARTITION - partition level synopses are gathered. This is the default value. If PARTITION is set on a non partitioned table, no synopses are gathered. INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale. It takes an enumeration of values which may be multiple, such as 'USE_STALE_PERCENT', 'USE_LOCKED_STATS'. ■ USE_STALE_PERCENT - a partition/subpartition is not considered as stale if DML changes are less than the STALE_PERCENT preference value ■ USE_LOCKED_STATS - locked partitions/subpartitions statistics are not considered as stale, regardless of DML changes ■ NULL - this is the default value, meaning a partition or subpartition is considered as stale as long as it has any DML changes. When the default value is used, statistics gathered in incremental mode are guaranteed to be the same as the statistics gathered in non incremental mode. When a non default value is used, the statistics gathered in incremental mode might be less accurate than those gathered in non-incremental mode

Table 155–99 (Cont.) SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	STALE_PERCENT - This value determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered. The valid domain for stale_percent is non-negative numbers. The default value is 10, meaning a table having more than 10% of changes is considered as stale. GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This controls whether the statistics gathered for a global temporary table should be stored as shared statistics or session statistics. It takes two values: ▪ SHARED - All sessions see the same set of statistics ▪ SESSION - Statistics gathered by the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on a global temporary table are session specific, and hence are only going to be used by the queries issued in the same session as the statistics gathering process. Session-specific statistics are deleted when a session is ended. TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor. OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. The preference takes two values: ▪ GATHER (default) - Gathers statistics for all objects in the table ▪ GATHER AUTO - Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle recommends setting GATHER AUTO on tables that undergo bulk loads during which statistics have been gathered. Note that this is is only applicable to tables that do not have INCREMENTAL turned on. The GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on these tables with GATHER AUTO options will skip regathering the already fresh statistics.
pvalue	Preference value. If NULL is specified, it will set the Oracle default value.s
add_sys	Value TRUE will include the Oracle-owned tables

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input values

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA role or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.
- Both arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_DATABASE_PREFS('CASCADE', 'DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE');
DBMS_STATS.SET_DATABASE_PREFS('ESTIMATE_PERCENT','9');
DBMS_STATS.SET_DATABASE_PREFS('DEGREE','99');
```

SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to set the global statistics preferences.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_GLOBAL_PREFS (
    pname     IN   VARCHAR2,
    pvalue    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–100 SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Preference name. The default value for the following preferences can be set: ■ AUTOSTATS_TARGET ■ CASCADE ■ CONCURRENT ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ GRANULARITY ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ PUBLISH ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS AUTOSTATS_TARGET - This preference is applicable only for auto statistics collection. The value of this parameter controls the objects considered for statistics collection. It takes the following values: ■ 'ALL' - Statistics collected for all objects in system ■ 'ORACLE' - Statistics collected for all Oracle owned objects ■ 'AUTO' - Oracle decides on which objects to collect statistics
.	CASCADE - Determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics

Table 155–100 (Cont.) SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	CONCURRENT - This preference determines whether statistics will be gathered concurrently on multiple objects, or serially, one object at a time: ■ 'MANUAL' - Concurrency will be turned on only for manual statistics gathering. ■ 'AUTOMATIC': Concurrency will be turned on only for the automatic statistics gathering. ■ 'ALL': Concurrency will be turned on for both manual and automatic statistics gathering. ■ 'OFF': Concurrency will be turned off for both manual and automatic statistics
.	DEGREE - Determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - Determines the percentage of rows to estimate. The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default. GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This preference takes two values: SHARED or SESSION (default). ■ SHARED - All sessions see the same set of statistics ■ SESSION - Statistics gathered by the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on a global temporary table are session specific, and hence are only going to be used by the queries issued in the same session as the statistics gathering process. Session-specific statistics are deleted when a session is ended.
.	GRANULARITY - Determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - gathers subpartition-level statistics.

Table 155–100 (Cont.) SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan. With partitioned tables it is very common to load new data into a new partition. As new partitions are added and data loaded, the global table statistics need to be kept up to date. Oracle will update the global table statistics by scanning only the partitions that have been changed instead of the entire table if the following conditions hold: ■ INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE ■ PUBLISH value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ User specifies AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE for ESTIMATE_PERCENT and AUTO for GRANULARITY when gathering statistics on the table If the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table was set to FALSE (default value), a full table scan is used to maintain the global statistics which is a much more resource intensive and time-consuming operation for large tables.
.	METHOD_OPT - The value controls column statistics collection and histogram creation. It accepts either of the following options, or both in combination: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer: Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns - column_name : name of a column - extension : can be either a column group in the format of (column_name, colume_name [, ...]) or an expression The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.
.	NO_INVALIDATE - Controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered. Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default.
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed. Prior to Oracle Database 11*g*, Release 1 (11.1), once a statistic gathering job completed the new statistics were automatically published into the dictionary tables. The user now has the ability to gather statistics but not publish them immediately. This allows the DBA to test the new statistics before publishing them.

Table 155–100 (Cont.) SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	STALE_PERCENT - Determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered. The valid domain for stale_percent is non-negative numbers.The default value is 10%. Note that if you set stale_percent to zero the AUTO STATS gathering job will gather statistics for this table every time a row in the table is modified. TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor. OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. The preference takes two values: ■ GATHER (default) - Gathers statistics for all objects in the table ■ GATHER AUTO - Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle recommends setting GATHER AUTO on tables that undergo bulk loads during which statistics have been gathered. Note that this is is only applicable to tables that do not have INCREMENTAL turned on. The GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on these tables with GATHER AUTO options will skip regathering the already fresh statistics.
pvalue	Preference value. If NULL is specified, it will set the Oracle default value.s

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input values

Usage Notes

- This setting is honored only of there is no preference specified for the table to be analyzed.
- To run this procedure, you need to have the SYSDBA or both ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- Both arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_GLOBAL_PREFS('ESTIMATE_PERCENT','9');
DBMS_STATS.SET_GLOBAL_PREFS('DEGREE','99');
```

SET_INDEX_STATS Procedures

These procedures set index-related information. In the version of this procedure that deals with user-defined statistics, the statistics type specified is the type to store in the dictionary, in addition to the actual user-defined statistics. If this statistics type is NULL, the statistics type associated with the index or column is stored.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   indname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   statid        VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   numrows       NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   numlblks      NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   numdist       NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   avglblk       NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   avgdblk       NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   clstfct       NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   indlevel      NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   flags         NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN   DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   guessq        NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   cachedblk     NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   cachehit      NUMBER    DEFUALT NULL,
   force         BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Use the following for user-defined statistics:

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_INDEX_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   indname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   statid        VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   ext_stats     RAW,
   stattypown    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattypname   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type(
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   cachedblk     NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   cachehit      NUMBER    DEFUALT NULL,
   force         BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–101 SET_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
indname	Name of the index

Table 155–101 (Cont.) SET_INDEX_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
partname	Name of the index partition in which to store the statistics. If the index is partitioned and if partname is NULL, then the statistics are stored at the global index level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are stored directly in the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
ext_stats	User-defined statistics
stattypown	Schema of the statistics type
stattypname	Name of the statistics type
numrows	Number of rows in the index (partition)
numlblks	Number of leaf blocks in the index (partition)
numdist	Number of distinct keys in the index (partition)
avglblk	Average integral number of leaf blocks in which each distinct key appears for this index (partition). If not provided, then this value is derived from numlblks and numdist.
avgdblk	Average integral number of data blocks in the table pointed to by a distinct key for this index (partition). If not provided, then this value is derived from clstfct and numdist.
clstfct	See clustering_factor column of the all_indexes view for a description
indlevel	Height of the index (partition)
flags	For internal Oracle use (should be left as NULL)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
guessq	Guess quality. See the pct_direct_access column of the all_indexes view for a description.
cachedblk	The average number of blocks in the buffer cache for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)
cachehit	The average cache hit ratio for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)
force	Sets the values even if statistics of the index are locked

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

- The Optimizer uses the cached data to estimate number of cached blocks for index or statistics table access. The total cost of the operation will be combined from the I/O cost of reading not cached blocks from disk, the CPU cost of getting cached blocks from the buffer cache, and the CPU cost of processing the data.
- Oracle maintains `cachedblk` and `cachehit` at all times but uses correspondent caching statistics for optimization as part of the table and index statistics only when the user calls `DBMS_STATS.GATHER_[TABLE/INDEX/SCHEMA/DATABASE]_STATS` procedure for auto mode or `DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS` for manual mode. In order to prevent the user from utilizing inaccurate and unreliable data, the optimizer will compute a 'confidence factor' for each `cachehit` and a `cachedblk` for each object. If the 'confidence factor' for the value meets confidence criteria, this value will be used, otherwise the defaults will be used.
- The automatic maintenance algorithm for object caching statistics assumes that there is only one major workload for the system and adjusts statistics to this workload, ignoring other "minor" workloads. If this is not the case, you must use manual mode for maintaining object caching statistics.
- The object caching statistics maintenance algorithm for auto mode prevents you from using statistics in the following situations
  - When not enough data has been analyzed, such as when an object has been recently create
  - When the system does not have one major workload resulting in averages not corresponding to real values.

Exceptions

`ORA-20000`: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

`ORA-20001`: Invalid input value

`ORA-20005`: Object statistics are locked

SET_PARAM Procedure

> **Note:** This subprogram has been replaced by improved technology and is maintained only for purposes of backward compatibility. In this case, use the SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure.
>
> See also Deprecated Subprograms on page 155-13.

This procedure sets default values for parameters of DBMS_STATS procedures. You can use the GET_PARAM Function to get the current default value of a parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_PARAM (
   pname      IN    VARCHAR2,
   pval       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–102 SET_PARAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	The parameter name The default value for following parameters can be set. ■ CASCADE - The default value for CASCADE set by SET_PARAM is not used by export/import procedures.It is used only by gather procedures. ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ GRANULARITY ■ AUTOSTATS_TARGET - This parameter is applicable only for auto statistics collection. The value of this parameter controls the objects considered for statistics collection (see pval)
pval	The parameter value. If NULL is specified, it will set the default value determined by Oracle. When pname is AUTOSTATS_TARGET, the following are valid values: ■ 'ALL' - Statistics are collected for all objects in the system ■ 'ORACLE' - Statistics are collected for all Oracle owned objects ■ 'AUTO' - Oracle decides for which objects to collect statistics

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you must have the SYSDBA or both the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY and ANALYZE ANY system privileges.
- Note that both arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and the values need to be enclosed in quotes even when they represent numbers.

- Note also the difference between NULL and 'NULL':
  - When NULL is unquoted, this sets the parameter to the value Oracle recommends.
  - In the case of the quoted 'NULL', this sets the value of the parameter to NULL.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input value

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_PARAM('CASCADE','DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE');
DBMS_STATS.SET_PARAM('ESTIMATE_PERCENT','5');
DBMS_STATS.SET_PARAM('DEGREE','NULL');
```

SET_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure

This procedure sets the value of rate of processing for a given operation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_PROCESSING_RATE (
   opname      IN    VARCHAR2,
   procrate    IN    NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 155–103 SET_PROCESSING_RATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
opname	Name of the operation
procrate	Processing rate. Valid values are as follows: ALL, CPU, CPU_ACCESS, CPU_AGGR, CPU_BYTES_PER_SEC, CPU_FILTER, CPU_GBY, CPU_HASH_JOIN, CPU_JOIN, CPU_NL_JOIN, CPU_RANDOM_ACCESS, CPU_SEQUENTIAL_ACCESS, CPU_SM_JOIN, CPU_SORT, IO, IO_ACCESS, IO_BYTES_PER_SEC, IO_RANDOM_ACCESS, IO_SEQUENTIAL_ACCESS, HASH, AGGR, MEMCMP, MEMCPY

Usage Notes

- You require the OPTIMIZER_PROCESSING_RATE role to run this procedure.
- AUTO DOP uses processing rates to determine the optimal degree of parallelism for a SQL statement.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input value

SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to set the statistics preferences of all the tables owned by the specified owner name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_SCHEMA_PREFS (
    ownname    IN   VARCHAR2,
    pname      IN   VARCHAR2,
    pvalue     IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–104 SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
pname	Preference name. The default value for the following preferences can be set: ■ CASCADE ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS ■ GRANULARITY ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ PUBLISH ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS
.	CASCADE - Determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics
.	DEGREE - Determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - Determines the percentage of rows to estimate. The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default.

Table 155–104 (Cont.) SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This preference takes two values: SHARED or SESSION (default). ■ SHARED - All sessions see the same set of statistics ■ SESSION - Statistics gathered by the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on a global temporary table are session specific, and hence are only going to be used by the queries issued in the same session as the statistics gathering process. Session-specific statistics are deleted when a session is ended.
.	GRANULARITY - Determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - gathers subpartition-level statistics.
.	INCREMENTAL - This value determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan. With partitioned tables it is very common to load new data into a new partition. As new partitions are added and data loaded, the global table statistics need to be kept up to date. Oracle will update the global table statistics by scanning only the partitions that have been changed instead of the entire table if the following conditions hold: ■ INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE ■ PUBLISH value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ User specifies AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE for ESTIMATE_PERCENT and AUTO for GRANULARITY when gathering statistics on the table If the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table was set to FALSE (default value), a full table scan is used to maintain the global statistics which is a much more resource intensive and time-consuming operation for large tables.

Table 155–104 (Cont.) SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE It takes two values: ■ TABLE - table level synopses are gathered. This is used when you want to exchange this table with a partition. You can run GATHER_TABLE_STATS on this table with INCREMENTAL to TRUE and INCREMENTAL_LEVEL to TABLE before the exchange. The result is that table level synopses are gathered on this table (currently Oracle supports only table level synopses on non-predestined tables). Once the exchange occurs, the partition will have synopses which come from the table level synopses of the table before exchange. This preference value can be only used in the SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. It is not allowed in the SET_GLOBAL/DATABASE/SCHEMA_PREFS procedures. ■ PARTITION - partition level synopses are gathered. This is the default value. If PARTITION is set on a non partitioned table, no synopses are gathered. INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale. It takes an enumeration of values which may be multiple, such as 'USE_STALE_PERCENT', 'USE_LOCKED_STATS'. ■ USE_STALE_PERCENT - a partition/subpartition is not considered as stale if DML changes are less than the STALE_PERCENT preference value ■ USE_LOCKED_STATS - locked partitions/subpartitions statistics are not considered as stale, regardless of DML changes ■ NULL - this is the default value, meaning a partition or subpartition is considered as stale as long as it has any DML changes. When the default value is used, statistics gathered in incremental mode are guaranteed to be the same as the statistics gathered in non incremental mode. When a non default value is used, the statistics gathered in incremental mode might be less accurate than those gathered in non-incremental mode
.	METHOD_OPT - The value controls column statistics collection and histogram creation. It accepts either of the following options, or both in combination: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer: Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns - column_name : name of a column - extension : can be either a column group in the format of (column_name, colume_name [, ...]) or an expression The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.

Table 155–104 (Cont.) SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	NO_INVALIDATE - Controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered. Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default.
.	PUBLISH - This value determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed. Prior to Oracle Database 11*g*, Release 1 (11.1), once a statistic gathering job completed the new statistics were automatically published into the dictionary tables. The user now has the ability to gather statistics but not publish them immediately. This allows the DBA to test the new statistics before publishing them.
.	STALE_PERCENT - Determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered. The valid domain for stale_percent is non-negative numbers.The default value is 10%. Note that if you set stale_percent to zero the AUTO STATS gathering job will gather statistics for this table every time a row in the table is modified. TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS - The average number of blocks cached in the buffer cache for any table we can assume when gathering the index clustering factor. OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. The preference takes two values: ■ GATHER (default) - Gathers statistics for all objects in the table ■ GATHER AUTO - Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle recommends setting GATHER AUTO on tables that undergo bulk loads during which statistics have been gathered. Note that this is only applicable to tables that do not have INCREMENTAL turned on. The GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on these tables with GATHER AUTO options will skip regathering the already fresh statistics.
pvalue	Preference value. If NULL is specified, it will set the Oracle default value.s

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input value

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner, or have the SYSDBA privilege, or have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- Both arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH','CASCADE', 'DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE');
DBMS_STATS.SET_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH' 'ESTIMATE_PERCENT','9');
DBMS_STATS.SET_SCHEMA_PREFS('SH', 'DEGREE','99');
```

SET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure

This procedure sets systems statistics.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_SYSTEM_STATS (
   pname          VARCHAR2,
   pvalue         NUMBER,
   stattab   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid    IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statown   IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–105 SET_SYSTEM_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	The parameter name to get, which can have one of the following values: ■ iotfrspeed—I/O transfer speed in bytes for each millisecond ■ ioseektim - Seek time + latency time + operating system overhead time, in milliseconds ■ sreadtim - Average time to read single block (random read), in milliseconds ■ mreadtim - Average time to read an mbrc block at once (sequential read), in milliseconds ■ cpuspeed - Average number of CPU cycles for each second, in millions, captured for the workload (statistics collected using 'INTERVAL' or 'START' and 'STOP' options) ■ cpuspeednw - Average number of CPU cycles for each second, in millions, captured for the no-workload (statistics collected using 'NOWORKLOAD' option. ■ mbrc - Average multiblock read count for sequential read, in blocks ■ maxthr - Maximum I/O system throughput, in bytes/second ■ slavethr - Average slave I/O throughput, in bytes/second
pvalue	Parameter value to get
stattab	Identifier of the user statistics table where the statistics will be obtained. If stattab is null, the statistics will be obtained from the dictionary.
statid	Optional identifier associated with the statistics saved in the stattab
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different from current schema)

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid input value

ORA-20002: Bad user statistics table; may need to be upgraded

ORA-20003: Unable to set system statistics

ORA-20004: Parameter does not exist

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, you need the GATHER_SYSTEM_STATISTICS role.

SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure

This procedure is used to set the statistics preferences of the specified table in the specified schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_TABLE_PREFS (
    ownname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    tabname    IN  VARCHAR2,
    pname      IN  VARCHAR2,
    pvalue     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–106 SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name
tabname	Table name
pname	Preference name. The default value for following preferences can be set: ■ CASCADE ■ DEGREE ■ ESTIMATE_PERCENT ■ GRANULARITY ■ INCREMENTAL ■ INCREMENTAL_LEVEL ■ INCREMENTAL_STALENESS ■ METHOD_OPT ■ NO_INVALIDATE ■ PUBLISH ■ STALE_PERCENT ■ TABLE_CACHED_BLOCKS ■ OPTIONS
.	CASCADE - Determines whether or not index statistics are collected as part of gathering table statistics. CONCURRENT - This preference determines whether statistics will be gathered concurrently on multiple objects, or serially, one object at a time: ■ 'MANUAL' - Concurrency will be turned on only for manual statistics gathering. ■ 'AUTOMATIC': Concurrency will be turned on only for the automatic statistics gathering. ■ 'ALL': Concurrency will be turned on for both manual and automatic statistics gathering. ■ 'OFF': Concurrency will be turned off for both manual and automatic statistics
.	DEGREE - Determines degree of parallelism used for gathering statistics.

Table 155–106 (Cont.) SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	ESTIMATE_PERCENT - Determines the percentage of rows to estimate. The valid range is [0.000001,100]. Use the constant DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE to have Oracle determine the appropriate sample size for good statistics. This is the default. GLOBAL_TEMP_TABLE_STATS - This controls whether the statistics gathered for a global temporary table should be stored as shared statistics or session statistics. It takes two values: ■ SHARED - All sessions see the same set of statistics ■ SESSION - Statistics gathered by the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on a global temporary table are session specific, and hence are only going to be used by the queries issued in the same session as the statistics gathering process. Session-specific statistics are deleted when a session is ended.
.	GRANULARITY - Determines granularity of statistics to collect (only pertinent if the table is partitioned). 'ALL' - Gathers all (subpartition, partition, and global) statistics 'AUTO'- Determines the granularity based on the partitioning type. This is the default value. 'DEFAULT' - Gathers global and partition-level statistics. This option is obsolete, and while currently supported, it is included in the documentation for legacy reasons only. You should use the 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' for this functionality. Note that the default value is now 'AUTO'. 'GLOBAL' - Gathers global statistics 'GLOBAL AND PARTITION' - Gathers the global and partition level statistics. No subpartition level statistics are gathered even if it is a composite partitioned object. 'PARTITION '- Gathers partition-level statistics 'SUBPARTITION' - Gathers subpartition-level statistics.
.	INCREMENTAL - Determines whether or not the global statistics of a partitioned table will be maintained without doing a full table scan. With partitioned tables it is very common to load new data into a new partition. As new partitions are added and data loaded, the global table statistics need to be kept up to date. Oracle will update the global table statistics by scanning only the partitions that have been changed instead of the entire table if the following conditions hold: ■ INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ PUBLISH value for the partitioned table is set to TRUE; ■ User specifies AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE for ESTIMATE_PERCENT and AUTO for GRANULARITY when gathering statistics on the table. If the INCREMENTAL value for the partitioned table was set to FALSE (default value), a full table scan is used to maintain the global statistics which is a much more resource intensive and time-consuming operation for large tables.

Table 155–106 (Cont.) SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
	INCREMENTAL_LEVEL - This value controls what synopses to collect when INCREMENTAL preference is set to TRUE It takes two values: ■ TABLE - table level synopses are gathered. This is used when you want to exchange this table with a partition. You can run GATHER_TABLE_STATS on this table with INCREMENTAL to TRUE and INCREMENTAL_LEVEL to TABLE before the exchange. The result is that table level synopses are gathered on this table (currently Oracle supports only table level synopses on non-predestined tables). Once the exchange occurs, the partition will have synopses which come from the table level synopses of the table before exchange. This preference value can be only used in the SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure. It is not allowed in the SET_GLOBAL/DATABASE/SCHEMA_PREFS procedures. ■ PARTITION - partition level synopses are gathered. This is the default value. If PARTITION is set on a non partitioned table, no synopses are gathered. INCREMENTAL_STALENESS - This value controls how we decide a partition or subpartition as stale. It takes an enumeration of values which may be multiple, such as 'USE_STALE_PERCENT', 'USE_LOCKED_STATS'. ■ USE_STALE_PERCENT - a partition/subpartition is not considered as stale if DML changes are less than the STALE_PERCENT preference value ■ USE_LOCKED_STATS - locked partitions/subpartitions statistics are not considered as stale, regardless of DML changes ■ NULL - this is the default value, meaning a partition or subpartition is considered as stale as long as it has any DML changes. When the default value is used, statistics gathered in incremental mode are guaranteed to be the same as the statistics gathered in non incremental mode. When a non default value is used, the statistics gathered in incremental mode might be less accurate than those gathered in non-incremental mode
.	METHOD_OPT - The value controls column statistics collection and histogram creation. It accepts either of the following options, or both in combination: ■ FOR ALL [INDEXED | HIDDEN] COLUMNS [size_clause] size_clause is defined as size_clause := SIZE {integer | REPEAT | AUTO | SKEWONLY} - integer: Number of histogram buckets. Must be in the range [1,2048]. - REPEAT : Collects histograms only on the columns that already have histograms - AUTO : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on data distribution and the workload of the columns - SKEWONLY : Oracle determines the columns on which to collect histograms based on the data distribution of the columns - column_name : name of a column - extension : can be either a column group in the format of (column_name, colume_name [, ...]) or an expression The default is FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO.

Table 155–106 (Cont.) SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
.	NO_INVALIDATE - The value controls the invalidation of dependent cursors of the tables for which statistics are being gathered. Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default.
.	PUBLISH - Determines whether or not newly gathered statistics will be published once the gather job has completed. Prior to Oracle Database 11*g*, Release 1 (11.1), once a statistic gathering job completed the new statistics were automatically published into the dictionary tables. The user now has the ability to gather statistics but not publish them immediately. This allows the DBA to test the new statistics before publishing them.
.	STALE_PERCENT - Determines the percentage of rows in a table that have to change before the statistics on that table are deemed stale and should be regathered. The valid domain for stale_percent is non-negative numbers. The default value is 10%.
	OPTIONS - Determines the options parameter used in the GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure. The preference takes two values: ▪ GATHER (default) - Gathers statistics for all objects in the table ▪ GATHER AUTO - Gathers all necessary statistics automatically. Oracle recommends setting GATHER AUTO on tables that undergo bulk loads during which statistics have been gathered. Note that this is only applicable to tables that do not have INCREMENTAL turned on. The GATHER_TABLE_STATS Procedure on these tables with GATHER AUTO options will skip regathering the already fresh statistics.
pvalue	Preference value. If NULL is specified, it will set the Oracle default value.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid or illegal input values

Usage Notes

- To run this procedure, you need to connect as owner of the table or should have the ANALYZE ANY system privilege.
- All arguments are of type VARCHAR2 and values are enclosed in quotes, even when they represent numbers.

Examples

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES', 'CASCADE', 'DBMS_STATS.AUTO_CASCADE');
DBMS_STATS.SET_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES','ESTIMATE_PERCENT','9');
DBMS_STATS.SET_TABLE_PREFS('SH', 'SALES', 'DEGREE','99');
```

SET_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure sets table-related information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SET_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname       VARCHAR2,
   tabname       VARCHAR2,
   partname      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   stattab       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   statid        VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   numrows       NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   numblks       NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   avgrlen       NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   flags         NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   statown       VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   no_invalidate BOOLEAN  DEFAULT to_no_invalidate_type (
                                    get_param('NO_INVALIDATE')),
   cachedblk     NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   cachehit      NUMBER    DEFUALT NULL,
   force         BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 155–107 SET_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table
partname	Name of the table partition in which to store the statistics. If the table is partitioned and partname is NULL, then the statistics are stored at the global table level.
stattab	User statistics table identifier describing where to store the statistics. If stattab is NULL, then the statistics are stored directly in the dictionary.
statid	Identifier (optional) to associate with these statistics within stattab (Only pertinent if stattab is not NULL)
numrows	Number of rows in the table (partition)
numblks	Number of blocks the table (partition) occupies
avgrlen	Average row length for the table (partition)
flags	For internal Oracle use (should be left as NULL)
statown	Schema containing stattab (if different than ownname)
no_invalidate	Does not invalidate the dependent cursors if set to TRUE. The procedure invalidates the dependent cursors immediately if set to FALSE. Use DBMS_STATS.AUTO_INVALIDATE. to have Oracle decide when to invalidate dependent cursors. This is the default. The default can be changed using the SET_DATABASE_PREFS Procedure, SET_GLOBAL_PREFS Procedure, SET_SCHEMA_PREFS Procedure and SET_TABLE_PREFS Procedure.
cachedblk	The average number of blocks in the buffer cache for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)

Table 155–107 (Cont.) SET_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cachehit	The average cache hit ratio for the segment (index/table/index partition/table partition)
force	Sets the values even if statistics of the table are locked

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- The Optimizer uses the cached data to estimate number of cached blocks for index or statistics table access. The total cost of the operation will be combined from the I/O cost of reading not cached blocks from disk, the CPU cost of getting cached blocks from the buffer cache, and the CPU cost of processing the data.
- Oracle maintains cachedblk and cachehit at all times but uses correspondent caching statistics for optimization as part of the table and index statistics only when the user calls DBMS_STATS.GATHER_[TABLE/INDEX/SCHEMA/DATABASE]_STATS procedure for auto mode or DBMS_STATS.GATHER_SYSTEM_STATS for manual mode. In order to prevent the user from utilizing inaccurate and unreliable data, the optimizer will compute a 'confidence factor' for each cachehit and a cachedblk for each object. If the 'confidence factor' for the value meets confidence criteria, this value will be used, otherwise the defaults will be used.
- The automatic maintenance algorithm for object caching statistics assumes that there is only one major workload for the system and adjusts statistics to this workload, ignoring other "minor" workloads. If this is not the case, you must use manual mode for maintaining object caching statistics.
- The object caching statistics maintenance algorithm for auto mode prevents you from using statistics in the following situations
  - When not enough data has been analyzed, such as when an object has been recently create
  - When the system does not have one major workload resulting in averages not corresponding to real values.

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Invalid input value

ORA-20005: Object statistics are locked

SHOW_EXTENDED_STATS_NAME Function

This function returns the name of the statistics entry that is created for the user-specified extension. It raises an error if no extension has been created.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.SHOW_EXTENDED_STATS_NAME (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    VARCHAR2,
   extension  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 155–108 SHOW_EXTENDED_STATS_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name of a table
tabname	Name of the table
extension	Can be either a column group or an expression. Suppose the specified table has two column c1, c2. An example column group can be "(c1, c2)" and an example expression can be "(c1 + c2)".

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Object does not exist or insufficient privileges

ORA-20001: Error when processing extension

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

TRANSFER_STATS Procedure

This procedure transfers statistics for specified table(s) from a remote database specified by dblink to the local database. The statistics at the source database are retained. It likewise transfers statistics-related structures such as synopses and DML monitoring information.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.TRANSFER_STATS (
   ownname     IN     VARCHAR2,
   tabname     IN     VARCHAR2,
   dblink      IN     VARCHAR2,
   options     IN     NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 155–109 TRANSFER_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Owner name of a table. If NULL all schemas in the database. If NULL, the procedure will transfer global preferences as well.
tabname	Name of the table. If NULL, all tables in OWNNAME.
dblink	Database link name
options	By default the procedure does not transfer the global preferences. Specifying ADD_GLOBAL_PREFS copies global preferences.

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

UNLOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure

This procedure enables the user to unlock statistics for a partition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.UNLOCK_PARTITION_STATS (
    ownname    VARCHAR2,
    tabname    VARCHAR2,
    partname   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–110 UNLOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema to unlock
tabname	Name of the table
partname	[Sub]Partition name

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.

UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure

This procedure unlocks the statistics on all the tables in schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS (
   ownname     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–111 UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- When statistics on a table is locked, all the statistics depending on the table, including table statistics, column statistics, histograms and statistics on all dependent indexes, are considered to be locked.
- The SET_*, DELETE_*, IMPORT_*, GATHER_* procedures that modify statistics in the dictionary of an individual table, index or column will raise an error if statistics of the object is locked.
- Procedures that operates on multiple objects (such as GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS) will skip modifying the statistics of an object if it is locked. Many procedures have force argument to override the lock.
- Neither the UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure nor the UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure is designed to unlock statistics of corresponding partitions. When you invoke theLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure, it sets the statistics lock bit at the table level. In that case, you cannot gather statistics on dependent objects such as partitions and indexes. By the same token, if table statistics are locked, the dependents are locked and you do not need to explicitly invoke the LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure.

UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure

This procedure unlocks the statistics on the table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   tabname    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–112 UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
tabname	Name of the table

Usage Notes

- To invoke this procedure you must be owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY privilege. For objects owned by SYS, you need to be either the owner of the table, or you need the ANALYZE ANY DICTIONARY privilege or the SYSDBA privilege.
- When statistics on a table is locked, all the statistics depending on the table, including table statistics, column statistics, histograms and statistics on all dependent indexes, are considered to be locked.
- The SET_*, DELETE_*, IMPORT_*, GATHER_* procedures that modify statistics in the dictionary of an individual table, index or column will raise an error if statistics of the object is locked.
- Procedures that operates on multiple objects (such as GATHER_SCHEMA_STATS) will skip modifying the statistics of an object if it is locked. Many procedures have force argument to override the lock.
- Neither the UNLOCK_SCHEMA_STATS Procedure nor the UNLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure is designed to unlock statistics of corresponding partitions. When you invoke theLOCK_TABLE_STATS Procedure, it sets the statistics lock bit at the table level. In that case, you cannot gather statistics on dependent objects such as partitions and indexes. By the same token, if table statistics are locked, the dependents are locked and you do not need to explicitly invoke the LOCK_PARTITION_STATS Procedure.

UPGRADE_STAT_TABLE Procedure

This procedure upgrades a user statistics table from an older version.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STATS.UPGRADE_STAT_TABLE (
   ownname    VARCHAR2,
   stattab    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 155–113 UPGRADE_STAT_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownname	Name of the schema
stattab	Name of the table

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Unable to upgrade table

Usage Notes

To invoke this procedure you need the privileges to drop and create a table.

156

DBMS_STAT_FUNCS

The DBMS_STAT_FUNCS package provides statistical functions.

This chapter contains the following topic:

Summary of DBMS_STAT_FUNCS Subprograms

Table 156–1 DBMS_STAT_FUNCS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
EXPONENTIAL_DIST_FIT Procedure on page 156-3	Tests how well a sample of values fits an exponential distribution
NORMAL_DIST_FIT Procedure on page 156-4	Tests how well a sample of values fits a normal distribution
POISSON_DIST_FIT Procedure on page 156-5	Tests how well a sample of values fits a Poisson distribution
SUMMARY Procedure on page 156-6	Summarizes a numerical column of a table
UNIFORM_DIST_FIT Procedure on page 156-7	Tests how well a sample of values fits a uniform distribution
WEIBULL_DIST_FIT Procedure on page 156-8	Tests how well a sample of values fits a Weibull distribution

EXPONENTIAL_DIST_FIT Procedure

This procedure tests how well a sample of values fits an exponential distribution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS.EXPONENTIAL_DIST_FIT (
   ownername    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tablename    IN    VARCHAR2,
   columnname   IN    VARCHAR2,
   test_type    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV',
   lambda       IN    NUMBER,
   mu           IN    NUMBER,
   sig          OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 156–2 EXPONENTIAL_DIST_FIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownername	The schema where the table resides.
tablename	The table where the column resides.
columnname	The column of the table against which to run the test.
test_type	The type of test to use: 'CHI_SQUARED', 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV' or 'ANDERSON_DARLING'.
lambda	The scale parameter.
mu	The location parameter.
sig	The goodness of fit value, based on test type. A small value indicates a significant difference between the sample and the exponential distribution. A number close to 1 indicates a close match.

NORMAL_DIST_FIT Procedure

This procedure tests how well a sample of values fits a normal distribution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS.NORMAL_DIST_FIT (
   ownername    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tablename    IN    VARCHAR2,
   columnname   IN    VARCHAR2,
   test_type    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'SHAPIRO_WILKS',
   mean         IN    NUMBER,
   stdev        IN    NUMBER,
   sig          OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 156–3 NORMAL_DIST_FIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownername	The schema where the table resides.
tablename	The table where the column resides.
columnname	The column of the table against which to run the test.
test_type	The type of test to use: 'CHI_SQUARED', 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV', 'ANDERSON_DARLING' or 'SHAPIRO_WILKS'.
mean	The mean of the distribution against which to compare.
stdev	The standard deviation of the distribution against which to compare.
sig	The goodness of fit value, based on test type. A small value indicates a significant difference between the sample and the normal distribution. A number close to 1 indicates a close match.

POISSON_DIST_FIT Procedure

This procedure tests how well a sample of values fits a Poisson distribution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS.POISSON_DIST_FIT (
   ownername    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tablename    IN    VARCHAR2,
   columnname   IN    VARCHAR2,
   test_type    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV',
   lambda       IN    NUMBER,
   sig          OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 156–4 POISSON_DIST_FIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownername	The schema where the table resides.
tablename	The table where the column resides.
columnname	The column of the table against which to run the test.
test_type	The type of test to use: 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV' or 'ANDERSON_DARLING'.
lambda	The lambda parameter is the shape parameter.
sig	The goodness of fit value, based on test type. A small value indicates a significant difference between the sample and the Poisson distribution. A number close to 1 indicates a close match.

SUMMARY Procedure

This procedure summarizes the numerical column specified in the `columnname` of `tablename`. The summary is returned as a Summary Type. Note that most of the output of `SUMMARY` can be obtained with currently available SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS.SUMMARY (
   ownername    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tablename    IN    VARCHAR2,
   columnname   IN    VARCHAR2,
   sigma_value  IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 3,
   s           OUT    SummaryType);
```

Parameters

Table 156–5 SUMMARY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ownername`	The schema where the table resides.
`tablename`	The table where the column resides.
`columnname`	The column of the table to be summarized.
`sigma_value`	The number of sigmas for the set of extreme values, defaults to 3.
`s`	The Record containing summary information about given column.

Definition of SummaryType

```
TYPE n_arr IS VARRAY(5) of NUMBER;
TYPE num_table IS TABLE of NUMBER;
TYPE summaryType IS RECORD (
   count             NUMBER,
   min               NUMBER,
   max               NUMBER,
   range             NUMBER,
   mean              NUMBER,
   cmode             num_table,
   variance          NUMBER,
   stddev            NUMBER,
   quantile_5        NUMBER,
   quantile_25       NUMBER,
   median            NUMBER,
   quantile_75       NUMBER,
   quantile_95       NUMBER,
   plus_x_sigma      NUMBER,
   minus_x_sigma     NUMBER,
   extreme_values    num_table,
   top_5_values      n_arr,
   bottom_5_values   n_arr);
```

UNIFORM_DIST_FIT Procedure

This procedure tests well a sample of values fits a uniform distribution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS.UNIFORM_DIST_FIT (
   ownername    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tablename    IN    VARCHAR2,
   columnname   IN    VARCHAR2,
   var_type     IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'CONTINUOUS',
   test_type    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV',
   paramA       IN    NUMBER,
   paramB       IN    NUMBER,
   sig          OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 156–6 UNIFORM_DIST_FIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownername	The schema where the table resides.
tablename	The table where the column resides.
columnname	The column of the table against which to run the test.
var_type	The type of distribution: 'CONTINUOUS' (the default) or 'DISCRETE'
test_type	The type of test to use: 'CHI_SQUARED', 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV' or 'ANDERSON_DARLING'.
paramA	Parameter A estimated from the sample (the location parameter).
paramB	Parameter B estimated from the sample (the scale parameter).
sig	The goodness of fit value, based on test type. A small value indicates a significant difference between the sample and the uniform distribution. A number close to 1 indicates a close match.

WEIBULL_DIST_FIT Procedure

This procedure tests how well a sample of values fits a Weibull distribution.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STAT_FUNCS.WEIBULL_DIST_FIT (
   ownername    IN    VARCHAR2,
   tablename    IN    VARCHAR2,
   columnname   IN    VARCHAR2,
   test_type    IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV',
   alpha        IN    NUMBER,
   mu           IN    NUMBER,
   beta         IN    NUMBER,
   sig          OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 156–7 WEIBULL_DIST_FIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ownername	The schema where the table resides.
tablename	The table where the column resides.
columnname	The column of the table against which to run the test.
test_type	The type of test to use: 'CHI_SQUARED', 'KOLMOGOROV_SMIRNOV' or 'ANDERSON_DARLING'.
alpha	The scale parameter.
mu	The location parameter.
beta	The slope/shape parameter.
sig	The goodness of fit value, based on test type. A small value indicates a significant difference between the sample and the Weibull distribution. A number close to 1 indicates a close match.

157

DBMS_STORAGE_MAP

With the DBMS_STORAGE_MAP package, you can communicate with the Oracle background process FMON to invoke mapping operations that populate mapping views. FMON communicates with operating and storage system vendor-supplied mapping libraries.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STORAGE_MAP

Overview

The following terminology and descriptions will help you understand the DBMS_STORAGE_MAP API:

- Mapping libraries

  Mapping libraries help you map the components of I/O processing stack elements. Examples of I/O processing components include files, logical volumes, and storage array I/O targets. The mapping libraries are identified in filemap.ora.

- Mapping files

  A mapping file is a mapping structure that describes a file. It provides a set of attributes, including file size, number of extents that the file is composed of, and file type.

- Mapping elements and sub-elements

  A mapping element is the abstract mapping structure that describes a storage component within the I/O stack. Examples of elements include mirrors, stripes, partitions, raid5, concatenated elements, and disks—structures that are the mapping building blocks. A mapping sub-element describes the link between an element and the next elements in the I/O mapping stack

- Mapping file extents

  A mapping file extent describes a contiguous chunk of blocks residing on one element. This includes the device offset, the extent size, the file offset, the type (data or parity), and the name of the element where the extent resides. In the case of a raw device or volume, the file is composed of only one file extent component. A mapping file extent is different from Oracle extents.

  See Also:

  - *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information
  - *Oracle Database Reference* for V$MAP views, including V$MAP_FILE, V$MAP_ELEMENT, V$MAP_SUBELEMENT, V$MAP_FILE_EXTENT

Operational Notes

For `MAP_ELEMENT`, `MAP_FILE`, and `MAP_ALL`: Invoking these functions when mapping information already exists will refresh the mapping if configuration IDs are supported. If configuration IDs are not supported, then invoking these functions again will rebuild the mapping.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for a discussion of the configuration ID, an attribute of the element or file that is changed.

Summary of DBMS_STORAGE_MAP Subprograms

Table 157–1 DBMS_STORAGE_MAP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DROP_ALL Function on page 157-6	Drops all mapping information in the shared memory of the instance
DROP_ELEMENT Function on page 157-7	Drops the mapping information for the element defined by `elemname`
DROP_FILE Function on page 157-8	Drops the file mapping information defined by `filename`
LOCK_MAP Procedure on page 157-9	Locks the mapping information in the shared memory of the instance
MAP_ALL Function on page 157-10	Builds the entire mapping information for all types of Oracle files (except archive logs), including all directed acyclic graph (DAG) elements
MAP_ELEMENT Function on page 157-11	Builds mapping information for the element identified by `elemname`
MAP_FILE Function on page 157-12	Builds mapping information for the file identified by `filename`
MAP_OBJECT Function on page 157-13	Builds the mapping information for the Oracle object identified by the object name, owner, and type
RESTORE Function on page 157-14	Loads the entire mapping information from the data dictionary into the shared memory of the instance
SAVE Function on page 157-15	Saves information needed to regenerate the entire mapping into the data dictionary
UNLOCK_MAP Procedure on page 157-16	Unlocks the mapping information in the shared memory of the instance.

DROP_ALL Function

This function drops all mapping information in the shared memory of the instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.DROP_ALL(
      dictionary_update IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 157–2 DROP_ALL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dictionary_update	If TRUE, mapping information in the data dictionary is updated to reflect the changes. The default value is TRUE; dictionary_update is an overloaded argument.

DROP_ELEMENT Function

This function drops the mapping information for the element defined by `elemname`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.DROP_ELEMENT(
   elemname          IN VARCHAR2,
   cascade           IN BOOLEAN,
   dictionary_update IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 157–3 DROP_ELEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`elemname`	The element for which mapping information is dropped.
`cascade`	If `TRUE`, then `DROP_ELEMENT` is invoked recursively on all elements of the DAG defined by `elemname`, if possible.
`dictionary_update`	If `TRUE`, mapping information in the data dictionary is updated to reflect the changes. The default value is `TRUE`; `dictionary_update` is an overloaded argument.

DROP_FILE Function

This function drops the file mapping information defined by `filename`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.DROP_FILE(
   filename          IN VARCHAR2,
   cascade           IN BOOLEAN,
   dictionary_update IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 157–4 DROP_FILE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`filename`	The file for which file mapping information is dropped.
`cascade`	If `TRUE`, then the mapping DAGs for the elements where the file resides are also dropped, if possible.
`dictionary_update`	If `TRUE`, mapping information in the data dictionary is updated to reflect the changes. The default value is `TRUE`; `dictionary_update` is an overloaded argument.

LOCK_MAP Procedure

This procedure locks the mapping information in the shared memory of the instance. This is useful when you need a consistent snapshot of the V$MAP tables. Without locking the mapping information, V$MAP_ELEMENT and V$MAP_SUBELEMENT, for example, may be inconsistent.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.LOCK_MAP;
```

MAP_ALL Function

This function builds the entire mapping information for all types of Oracle files (except archive logs), including all directed acyclic graph (DAG) elements. It obtains the latest mapping information because it explicitly synchronizes all mapping libraries.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.MAP_ALL(
   max_num_fileext   IN NUMBER DEFAULT 100,
   dictionary_update IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 157–5 MAP_ALL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
max_num_fileext	Defines the maximum number of file extents to be mapped. This limits the amount of memory used when mapping file extents. The default value is 100; max_num_fileextent is an overloaded argument.
dictionary_update	If TRUE, mapping information in the data dictionary is updated to reflect the changes. The default value is TRUE; dictionary_update is an overloaded argument.

Usage Notes

You must explicitly call MAP_ALL in a cold startup scenario.

MAP_ELEMENT Function

This function builds mapping information for the element identified by `elemname`. It may not obtain the latest mapping information if the element being mapped, or any one of the elements within its I/O stack (if `cascade` is `TRUE`), is owned by a library that must be explicitly synchronized.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.MAP_ELEMENT(
   elemname          IN VARCHAR2,
   cascade           IN BOOLEAN,
   dictionary_update IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 157–6 MAP_ELEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`elemname`	The element for which mapping information is built.
`cascade`	If `TRUE`, all elements within the elemname I/O stack DAG are mapped.
`dictionary_update`	If `TRUE`, mapping information in the data dictionary is updated to reflect the changes. The default value is `TRUE`; `dictionary_update` is an overloaded argument.

MAP_FILE Function

This function builds mapping information for the file identified by `filename`. Use this function if the mapping of one particular file has changed. The Oracle database server does not have to rebuild the entire mapping.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.MAP_FILE(
   filename           IN VARCHAR2,
   filetype           IN VARCHAR2,
   cascade            IN BOOLEAN,
   max_num_fileextent IN NUMBER DEFAULT 100,
   dictionary_update  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 157–7 MAP_FILE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`filename`	The file for which mapping information is built.
`filetype`	Defines the type of the file to be mapped. It can be `"DATAFILE"`, `"SPFILE"`, `"TEMPFILE"`, `"CONTROLFILE"`, `"LOGFILE"`, or `"ARCHIVEFILE"`.
`cascade`	Should be `TRUE` only if a storage reconfiguration occurred. For all other instances, such as file resizing (either through an `ALTER SYSTEM` command or DML operations on extended files), `cascade` can be set to `FALSE` because the mapping changes are limited to the file extents only. If `TRUE`, mapping DAGs are also built for the elements where the file resides.
`max_num_fileextent`	Defines the maximum number of file extents to be mapped. This limits the amount of memory used when mapping file extents. The default value is `100`; `max_num_fileextent` is an overloaded argument.
`dictionary_update`	If `TRUE`, mapping information in the data dictionary is updated to reflect the changes. The default value is `TRUE`; `dictionary_update` is an overloaded argument.

Usage Notes

This function may not obtain the latest mapping information if the file being mapped, or any one of the elements within its I/O stack (if `cascade` is `TRUE`), is owned by a library that must be explicitly synchronized.

MAP_OBJECT Function

This function builds the mapping information for the Oracle object identified by the object name, owner, and type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.MAP_OBJECT(
   objname  IN  VARCHAR2,
   owner    IN  VARCHAR2,
   objtype  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 157–8 MAP_OBJECT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
objname	The name of the object.
owner	The owner of the object.
objtype	The type of the object.

RESTORE Function

This function loads the entire mapping information from the data dictionary into the shared memory of the instance. You can invoke `RESTORE` only after a `SAVE` operation. You must explicitly call `RESTORE` in a warm startup scenario.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.RESTORE;
```

SAVE Function

This function saves information needed to regenerate the entire mapping into the data dictionary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.SAVE;
```

UNLOCK_MAP Procedure

This procedure unlocks the mapping information in the shared memory of the instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STORAGE_MAP.UNLOCK_MAP;
```

158

DBMS_STREAMS

The DBMS_STREAMS package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides subprograms to convert ANYDATA objects into logical change record (LCR) objects, to return information about Oracle Streams attributes and Oracle Streams clients, and to annotate redo entries generated by a session with a binary tag. This tag affects the behavior of a capture process, a propagation, or an apply process whose rules include specifications for these binary tags in redo entries or LCRs.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STREAMS

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_STREAMS` package.

Overview

This package provides subprograms to convert ANYDATA objects into logical change record (LCR) objects, to return information about Oracle Streams attributes and Oracle Streams clients, and to annotate redo entries generated by a session with a binary tag. This tag affects the behavior of a capture process, a propagation, or an apply process whose rules include specifications for these binary tags in redo entries or LCRs.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and Oracle Streams

Security Model

`PUBLIC` is granted `EXECUTE` privilege on this package.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide* for more information about user group `PUBLIC`

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS Subprograms

Table 158–1 DBMS_STREAMS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
COMPATIBLE_12_1 Function on page 158-6	Returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_12_1` constant
COMPATIBLE_11_2 Function on page 158-7	Returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_2` constant
COMPATIBLE_11_1 Function on page 158-8	Returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_1` constant
COMPATIBLE_10_2 Function on page 158-9	Returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_2` constant
COMPATIBLE_10_1 Function on page 158-10	Returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_1` constant
COMPATIBLE_9_2 Function on page 158-11	Returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_9_2` constant
CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_DDL Function on page 158-12	Converts a `ANYDATA` object to a `SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD` object
CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_ROW Function on page 158-13	Converts a `ANYDATA` object to a `SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD` object
CONVERT_LCR_TO_XML Function on page 158-14	Converts a logical change record (LCR) encapsulated in a `ANYDATA` object into an XML object that conforms to the XML schema for LCRs
CONVERT_XML_TO_LCR Function on page 158-15	Converts an XML object that conforms to the XML schema for LCRs into a logical change record (LCR) encapsulated in a `ANYDATA` object
GET_INFORMATION Function on page 158-16	Returns information about various Oracle Streams attributes
GET_STREAMS_NAME Function on page 158-17	Returns the name of the invoker
GET_STREAMS_TYPE Function on page 158-18	Returns the type of the invoker
GET_TAG Function on page 158-19	Gets the binary tag for all redo entries generated by the current session
MAX_COMPATIBLE Function on page 158-20	Returns an integer that is greater than the highest possible compatibility constant for the current release of Oracle Database
SET_TAG Procedure on page 158-21	Sets the binary tag for all redo entries subsequently generated by the current session

Note: The subprograms in this package do not commit.

COMPATIBLE_12_1 Function

This function returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_12_1` constant.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_12_1
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the `GET_COMPATIBLE` member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The constant value returned by this function corresponds to 12.1.0 compatibility in a database. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter

COMPATIBLE_11_2 Function

This function returns the DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_2 constant.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_2
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the GET_COMPATIBLE member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The constant value returned by this function corresponds to 11.2.0 compatibility in a database. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter

COMPATIBLE_11_1 Function

This function returns the DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_1 constant.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_1
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the GET_COMPATIBLE member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The constant value returned by this function corresponds to 11.1.0 compatibility in a database. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter

COMPATIBLE_10_2 Function

This function returns the DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_2 constant.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_2
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the GET_COMPATIBLE member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The constant value returned by this function corresponds to 10.2.0 compatibility in a database. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter

COMPATIBLE_10_1 Function

This function returns the `DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_1` constant.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_1
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the `GET_COMPATIBLE` member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The constant value returned by this function corresponds to 10.1.0 compatibility in a database. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter

COMPATIBLE_9_2 Function

This function returns the DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_9_2 constant.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_9_2
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the GET_COMPATIBLE member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The constant value returned by this function corresponds to 9.2.0 compatibility in a database. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter

CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_DDL Function

This function converts a ANYDATA object into a SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_DDL(
   source  IN  ANYDATA)
RETURN SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD;
```

Parameters

Table 158–2 CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_DDL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
source	The ANYDATA object to be converted. If this object is not a DDL logical change record (DDL LCR), then the function raises an exception.

Usage Notes

You can use this function in a transformation created by the CREATE_TRANSFORMATION procedure in the DBMS_TRANSFORM package. Use the transformation you create when you add a subscriber for propagation of DDL LCRs from a ANYDATA queue to a SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD typed queue.

See Also: *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*

CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_ROW Function

This function converts a ANYDATA object into a SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_ROW(
   source  IN  ANYDATA)
RETURN SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD;
```

Parameters

Table 158–3 CONVERT_ANYDATA_TO_LCR_ROW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
source	The ANYDATA object to be converted. If this object is not a row logical change record (row LCR), then the function raises an exception.

Usage Notes

You can use this function in a transformation created by the CREATE_TRANSFORMATION procedure in the DBMS_TRANSFORM package. Use the transformation you create when you add a subscriber for propagation of row LCRs from a ANYDATA queue to a SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD typed queue.

See Also: *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide*

CONVERT_LCR_TO_XML Function

This function converts a logical change record (LCR) encapsulated in a ANYDATA object into an XML object that conforms to the XML schema for LCRs. The LCR can be a row LCR or a DDL LCR.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the XML schema for LCRs

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.CONVERT_LCR_TO_XML(
   anylcr  IN  ANYDATA)
RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 158–4 CONVERT_LCR_TO_XML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
anylcr	The ANYDATA encapsulated LCR to be converted. If this object is not a ANYDATA encapsulated LCR, then the function raises an exception.

CONVERT_XML_TO_LCR Function

This function converts an XML object that conforms to the XML schema for logical change records (LCRs) into an LCR encapsulated in a `ANYDATA` object. The LCR can be a row or DDL LCR.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the XML schema for LCRs

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.CONVERT_XML_TO_LCR(
   xmldat  IN  SYS.XMLTYPE)
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 158–5 CONVERT_XML_TO_LCR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmldat`	The XML LCR object to be converted. If this object does not conform to XML schema for LCRs, then the function raises an exception.

GET_INFORMATION Function

This function returns information about various Oracle Streams attributes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.GET_INFORMATION(
   name  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 158–6 GET_INFORMATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The type of information you want to retrieve. Currently, the following names are available: ■ SENDER: Returns the name of the sender for the current logical change record (LCR) from its AQ message properties. This function is called inside a procedure DML handler, a DDL handler, an error handler, or a message handler. Returns NULL if called outside of an apply handler. The return value is to be interpreted as a VARCHAR2. ■ CONSTRAINT_NAME: Returns the name of the constraint that was violated for an LCR that raised an error. This function is called inside a procedure DML handler or error handler for an apply process. Returns NULL if called outside of a procedure DML handler or error handler. The return value is to be interpreted as a VARCHAR2.

GET_STREAMS_NAME Function

This function gets the Oracle Streams name of the invoker if the invoker is one of the following Oracle Streams types:

- CAPTURE
- APPLY
- ERROR_EXECUTION

If the invoker is not one of these types, then this function returns a NULL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.GET_STREAMS_NAME
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function in rule conditions, rule-based transformations, apply handlers, and error handlers. For example, if you use one error handler for multiple apply processes, then you can use the GET_STREAMS_NAME function to determine the name of the apply process that raised the error.

GET_STREAMS_TYPE Function

This function gets the Oracle Streams type of the invoker and returns one of the following types:

- CAPTURE
- APPLY
- ERROR_EXECUTION

If the invoker is not one of these types, then this function returns a NULL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.GET_STREAMS_TYPE
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Usage Notes

This function can be used in rule conditions, rule-based transformations, apply handlers, and error handlers. For example, you can use the GET_STREAMS_TYPE function to instruct a procedure DML handler to operate differently if it is processing messages from the error queue (ERROR_EXECUTION type) instead of the apply process's queue (APPLY type).

GET_TAG Function

This function gets the binary tag for all redo entries generated by the current session.

Note:

- To execute this function, a user must be granted either EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE or EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package.
- Instead of using the DBMS_STREAMS.GET_TAG function, Oracle recommends that you use the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG function. See GET_TAG Function on page 159-86.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.GET_TAG
RETURN RAW;
```

Examples

The following example illustrates how to display the current logical change record (LCR) tag as output:

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
   raw_tag RAW(2000);
BEGIN
   raw_tag := DBMS_STREAMS.GET_TAG();
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Tag Value = ' || RAWTOHEX(raw_tag));
END;
/
```

You can also display the value by querying the DUAL view:

```
SELECT DBMS_STREAMS.GET_TAG FROM DUAL;
```

MAX_COMPATIBLE Function

This function returns an integer that is greater than the highest possible compatibility constant for the current release of Oracle Database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.MAX_COMPATIBLE
RETURN INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

You can use this function with the `GET_COMPATIBLE` member function for logical change records (LCRs) to specify behavior based on compatibility.

The `MAX_COMPATIBLE` function always returns the maximum compatibility for the release of Oracle Database on which it is run. Therefore, when you use this function in rule conditions, the rule conditions do not need to be changed when you upgrade to a later release of Oracle Database.

See Also:

- GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about creating rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter

SET_TAG Procedure

This procedure sets the binary tag for all redo entries subsequently generated by the current session. Each redo entry generated by DML or DDL statements in the current session has this tag. This procedure affects only the current session.

Note:

- To execute this procedure, a user must be granted either EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE or EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package.
- Instead of using the DBMS_STREAMS.SET_TAG procedure, Oracle recommends that you use the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_TAG procedure. See SET_TAG Procedure on page 159-170.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS.SET_TAG(
   tag  IN  RAW  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 158–7 SET_TAG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tag	The binary tag for all subsequent redo entries generated by the current session. A raw value is a sequence of bytes, and a byte is a sequence of bits. By default, the tag for a session is NULL. The size limit for a tag value is 2000 bytes.

Usage Notes

To set the tag to the hexadecimal value of '17' in the current session, run the following procedure:

```
EXEC DBMS_STREAMS.SET_TAG(tag => HEXTORAW('17'));
```

The following are considerations for the SET_TAG procedure:

- This procedure is not transactional. That is, the effects of SET_TAG cannot be rolled back.
- If the SET_TAG procedure is run to set a non-NULL session tag before a data dictionary build has been performed on the database, then the redo entries for a transaction that started before the dictionary build might not include the specified tag value for the session. Therefore, perform a data dictionary build before using the SET_TAG procedure in a session. A data dictionary build happens when the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure is run. The BUILD procedure can be run automatically when a capture process is created.

See Also: BUILD Procedure on page 34-18

159

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides subprograms for configuring Oracle Streams environments. This package also includes subprograms for adding and removing simple rules for capture, propagation, apply, and dequeue at the table, schema, and database level. This package also includes subprograms for configuring and managing XStream outbound servers and inbound servers.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STREAMS_ADM

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package.

Overview

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides subprograms for configuring an Oracle Streams environment. This package also includes subprograms for adding and removing simple rules for capture, propagation, apply, and dequeue at the table, schema, and database level. These rules support logical change records (LCRs), which include row LCRs and data definition language (DDL) LCRs. This package also contains subprograms for creating message rules for specific message types. This package also contains subprograms for creating queues, and for managing Oracle Streams metadata, such as data dictionary information.

If you require more sophisticated rules, then refer to Chapter 138, "DBMS_RULE" package.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*, *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and Oracle Streams
- Chapter 138, "DBMS_RULE"

Deprecated Subprograms

Note: Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 and later:

- `MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE`

  This procedure is replaced by the `MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS` procedure.

  See Also: MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure on page 159-111

- `MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES`

  This procedure is replaced by the `MAINTAIN_TTS` procedure.

  See Also: MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure on page 159-126

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

A user is associated with each Oracle Streams client. The following sections describe these users:

- Oracle Streams Administrator
- Capture User
- Propagation User
- Apply User for an Oracle Streams Apply Process
- Apply User for an XStream Inbound Server
- Messaging Client User

> **Note:** The user must be granted additional privileges to perform some administrative tasks using the subprograms in this package, such as creating a synchronous capture. If additional privileges are required for a subprogram, then the privileges are documented in the section that describes the subprogram.

Oracle Streams Administrator

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, configure an Oracle Streams administrator and connect as the Oracle Streams administrator when using this package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Capture User

The following procedures can create a capture process:

- ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure
- ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

The following procedures can create a synchronous capture:

- ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure
- ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

If one of these procedures creates a capture process or a synchronous capture, then it configures the current user as the capture user. The capture user is the user in whose security domain a capture process or synchronous capture captures changes that

satisfy its rule set(s) and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for these rules. This user must have the necessary privileges to capture changes. The procedure grants the capture user `ENQUEUE` privilege on the queue used by the capture process or synchronous capture and configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue.

> **See Also:** CREATE_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-19 and CREATE_SYNC_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-29 for information about the privileges required to capture changes (refer to the `capture_user` parameter)

Propagation User

The following procedures can create a propagation:

- ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure
- ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure
- ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure
- ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

When a propagation is created, a propagation job also might be created. If a propagation job is created when one of these procedures is run, then the user who runs the procedure owns the propagation job. Each propagation job is an Oracle Scheduler job. You can adjust the schedule of a propagation job using Oracle Scheduler.

Note:

- The source queue owner performs the propagation, but the propagation job is owned by the user who creates it. These two users might or might not be the same.
- For a propagation to work properly, the owner of the source queue must have the necessary privileges to propagate messages.

See Also:

- CREATE_PROPAGATION Procedure on page 117-8 for more information about the required privileges
- "Propagation Rules for LCRs" on page 159-11 for information about when a propagation job is created

Apply User for an Oracle Streams Apply Process

The following procedures can create an apply process:

- ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure
- ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure
- ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure
- ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

If one of these procedures creates an apply process, then it configures the current user as the apply user. For an apply process, the apply user is the user in whose security domain an apply process dequeues messages that satisfy its rule sets.

An apply user applies messages directly to database objects, runs custom rule-based transformations configured for apply process rules, and runs apply handlers configured for the apply process. This user must have the necessary privileges to apply changes. The procedure grants the apply user `DEQUEUE` privilege on the queue used by the apply process and configures the user as a secure queue user of the queue.

> **See Also:** CREATE_APPLY Procedure on page 23-18 for information about the privileges required to apply changes (refer to the `apply_user` parameter)

Apply User for an XStream Inbound Server

The following procedures can create an XStream inbound server:

- ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure
- ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

> **Note:**
>
> - Oracle recommends using procedures in the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package to create or add rules to an XStream inbound server. See Chapter 204, "DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM".
> - These procedures cannot create an outbound server.

If the `streams_name` parameter is set to `NULL` and no relevant apply process, inbound server, or outbound server exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name.

The apply process remains an apply process if it receives captured logical change records (LCRs) from a capture process. The apply process can become an inbound server if an XStream client application attaches to it before it receives captured LCRs from a capture process. After the initial contact, an apply process cannot be changed into an inbound server, and an inbound server cannot be changed into an apply process.

If one of these procedures creates an inbound server, then it configures the current user as the apply user. The apply user is the user in whose security domain an XStream client application attaches to an Oracle database.

An apply user applies changes directly to database objects, runs custom rule-based transformations configured for inbound server rules, and runs apply handlers configured for the inbound server. This user must have the necessary privileges to apply changes. The procedure grants the apply user `DEQUEUE` privilege on the queue used by the inbound server and configures the user as a secure queue user.

Each inbound server must have a unique name. The name cannot be used by an apply process, outbound server, or messaging client in the same database, and the name cannot be used by another inbound server in the same database.

If a relevant apply process, inbound server, or outbound server exists, then the procedure does not create an inbound server. Instead, the procedure uses the relevant

apply process, inbound server, or outbound server. If the `streams_name` parameter specifies an existing apply process, inbound server, or outbound server, then the specified client is used.

When `streams_name` parameter is `NULL` and the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply`, the relevant apply process, inbound server, or outbound server is identified in one of the following ways:

- If one existing apply process or outbound server has the source database specified in the `source_database` parameter and uses the queue specified in the `queue_name` parameter, then the procedure uses this apply process or outbound server.
- If the `source_database` parameter is set to `NULL` and one existing apply process, inbound server, or outbound server is using the queue specified in the `queue_name` parameter, then the procedure uses this apply process, inbound server, or outbound server.

If the `streams_name` parameter is set to `NULL` and multiple relevant apply processes, inbound servers, or outbound servers exist, then the procedure raises an error.

Note: Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

Messaging Client User

The following procedures can create a messaging client:

- ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure
- ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure
- ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure
- ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure
- ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

If one of these procedures creates a messaging client, then the user who runs this procedure is granted the privileges to dequeue from the queue using the messaging client. The procedure configures this user as a secure queue user of the queue, and only this user can use the messaging client.

Operational Notes

Several procedures in this package create rules for Oracle Streams clients and XStream clients, and several procedures configure an Oracle Streams environment. The following sections provide information about using these procedures:

- Procedures That Create Rules for Oracle Streams Clients and XStream Clients
- Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment

Procedures That Create Rules for Oracle Streams Clients and XStream Clients

Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients. XStream clients include XStream outbound servers and inbound servers. Some of the procedures in the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package add rules to the rule sets of Oracle Streams clients and XStream clients. The rules can pertain to changes in the redo log, to data manipulation language (DML) changes made to a table, to logical change records (LCRs), or to user messages.

An LCR represents either a row change that results from a DML operation or a data definition language (DDL) change. An LCR that represents a row change is a row LCR, and an LCR that represents a DDL change is a DDL LCR. LCRs can either represent changes that were captured by a capture process or a synchronous capture, or they can represent changes created by a user or application. A user message is a custom message that is based on a user-defined type and created by users or applications.

A capture process, propagation, apply process, messaging client, outbound server, or inbound server can have both positive and negative rule sets. A synchronous capture can have only a positive rule set.

For all of the procedures except the ones that create subset rules, and for all clients except for synchronous captures, you use the `inclusion_rule` parameter to specify the type of rule set (either positive or negative) for the created rules. If the client does not have a rule set of the specified type, then a rule set is created automatically, and the rules are added to the rule set. Other rules in an existing rule set for the client are not affected. Additional rules can be added to a rule set using either the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package or the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package. If an client has both a positive and a negative rule set, then the negative rule set is always evaluated first.

The following sections describe each type of rule in detail:

- Capture Process Rules for Changes in the Redo Log
- Synchronous Capture Rules for DML Changes to Tables
- Propagation Rules for LCRs
- Propagation Rules for User Messages
- Apply Process Rules for LCRs
- Apply Process Rules for User Messages
- Messaging Client Rules for LCRs
- Messaging Client Rules for User Messages
- XStream Outbound Server Rules for LCRs
- XStream Inbound Server Rules for LCRs

Note: Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about how rules are used in Oracle Streams

Capture Process Rules for Changes in the Redo Log

The following procedures add rules to a rule set of a capture process when you specify `capture` for the `streams_type` parameter:

- The `ADD_GLOBAL_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for all changes made to a source database. See ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure on page 159-34.
- The `ADD_SCHEMA_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for changes made to a specified schema. See ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure on page 159-50.
- The `ADD_SUBSET_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for DML changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table. See ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure on page 159-59.
- The `ADD_TABLE_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for changes made to a specified table. See ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure on page 159-70.

If one of these procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for a capture process, then the capture process captures row changes resulting from DML changes, or DDL changes, or both from a source database and enqueues these changes into the specified queue. If one of these procedures adds rules to the negative rule set for a capture process, then the capture process discards row changes, or DDL changes, or both from a source database.

A capture process can capture changes locally at a source database or remotely at a downstream database. Therefore, for capture process rules, you should execute the procedure either at the source database or at a downstream database.

If the capture process is a local capture process, or if the capture process is a downstream capture process that uses a database link to the source database, then these procedures automatically prepare the appropriate database objects for instantiation:

- `ADD_GLOBAL_RULES` invokes the `PREPARE_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package at the source database.
- `ADD_SCHEMA_RULES` invokes the `PREPARE_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package at the source database.
- `ADD_SUBSET_RULES` and `ADD_TABLE_RULES` invoke the `PREPARE_TABLE_INSTANTIATION` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package at the source database.

These procedures also enable supplemental logging for the primary key, unique key, foreign key, and bitmap index columns in the tables prepared for instantiation. The primary key columns are unconditionally logged. The unique key, foreign key, and bitmap index columns are conditionally logged.

If the capture process is a downstream capture process that does not use a database link to the source database, then you must prepare the appropriate objects for

instantiation and specify the necessary supplemental logging manually at the source database.

If one of these procedures is executed at a downstream database, then you specify the source database using the source_database parameter, and the specified capture process must exist. The procedure cannot create a capture process if it is run at a downstream database. You can create a capture process at a downstream database using the CREATE_CAPTURE procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package.

> **See Also:** Chapter , "Summary of DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM Subprograms" on page 34-5 for more information about the CREATE_CAPTURE procedure and the procedures that prepare database objects for instantiation

Synchronous Capture Rules for DML Changes to Tables

The following procedures add rules to the rule set of a synchronous capture when you specify sync_capture for the streams_type parameter:

- The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for DML changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table. See ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure on page 159-59.
- The ADD_TABLE_RULES procedure adds a rule whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for DML changes made to a specified table. See ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure on page 159-70.

If one of these procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for a synchronous capture, then the synchronous capture captures row changes resulting from DML changes to the table at the source database and enqueues these changes into the specified queue. A synchronous capture cannot have a negative rule set.

A synchronous capture captures changes locally at the database where it is configured. This database is the source database for changes captured by the synchronous capture. Therefore, for synchronous capture rules, you should execute the procedure at the source database.

These procedures automatically prepare the appropriate tables for instantiation by invoking the PREPARE_SYNC_INSTANTIATION function in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package at the source database.

Note:

- A synchronous capture ignores rules in its rule set that were created by a procedure other than ADD_SUBSET_RULES or ADD_TABLE_RULES.
- When the ADD_TABLE_RULES or the ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure adds rules to a synchronous capture rule set, the procedure must obtain an exclusive lock on the specified table. If there are outstanding transactions on the specified table, then the procedure waits until it can obtain a lock.

Propagation Rules for LCRs

The following procedures add propagation rules for LCRs to a rule set of a propagation:

- The ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for all LCRs in a source queue. See ADD_GLOBAL_

PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 159-30.

- The ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for LCRs in a source queue containing changes made to a specified schema. See ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 159-46.
- The ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for row LCRs in a source queue containing the results of DML changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table. See "ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure" on page 159-55.
- The ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for LCRs in a source queue containing changes made to a specified table. See "ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure" on page 159-65.

If one of these procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for the propagation, then the rules specify that the propagation propagates LCRs in a source queue to a destination queue. If one of these procedures adds rules to the negative rule set for the propagation, then the rules specify that the propagation discards LCRs in a source queue. When you create rules with one of these procedures, and you specify a value for the source_databse parameter, then the rules include conditions for the specified source database.

Propagation Rules for User Messages

The ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE procedure adds a message rule to a rule set of a propagation. If this procedure adds a rule to the positive rule set for the propagation, then the rule specifies that the propagation propagates the user messages of a specific message type that evaluate to TRUE for the rule condition from a source queue to a destination queue. If this procedure adds a rule to the negative rule set for the propagation, then the rule specifies that the propagation discards the user messages in a source queue of a specific message type that evaluate to TRUE for the rule condition. This procedure generates a rule name for the rule.

> **See Also:** "ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure" on page 159-39

Apply Process Rules for LCRs

The following procedures add rules to a rule set of an apply process when you specify apply for the streams_type parameter and an apply process for the streams_name parameter:

- The ADD_GLOBAL_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for all LCRs in the apply process's queue. See "ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure" on page 159-34.
- The ADD_SCHEMA_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for LCRs in the apply process's queue containing changes made to a specified schema. See "ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure" on page 159-50.
- The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for row LCRs in the apply process's queue containing the results of DML changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table. See "ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure" on page 159-59.
- The ADD_TABLE_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for LCRs in the apply process's queue containing changes made to a specified table. See "ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure" on page 159-70.

If one of these procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for the apply process, then the rules specify that the apply process applies LCRs in its queue. If one of these procedures adds rules to the negative rule set for the apply process, then the rules specify that the apply process discards LCRs in its queue. For apply process rules, you should execute these procedures at the destination database.

Changes applied by an apply process created by one of these procedures generate tags in the redo log at the destination database with a value of `'00'` (double zero). You can use the `ALTER_APPLY` procedure in the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package to alter the tag value after the apply process is created, if necessary.

An apply process can apply captured LCRs from only one source database. If one of these procedures creates an apply process, then specify the source database for the apply process using the `source_database` parameter. If the `source_database` parameter is `NULL`, and one of these procedures creates an apply process, then the source database name of the first LCR received by the apply process is used for the source database.

The rules in the apply process rule sets determine which messages are dequeued by the apply process. When you create rules with one of these procedures, and you specify a value for the `source_database` parameter, then the rules include conditions for the specified source database. If the apply process dequeues an LCR with a source database that is different from the source database for the apply process, then an error is raised. In addition, when adding rules to an existing apply process, the database specified in the `source_database` parameter cannot be different from the source database for the apply process. You can determine the source database for an apply process by querying the `DBA_APPLY_PROGRESS` data dictionary view.

An apply process created by one of these procedures can apply messages only at the local database and can apply only captured messages. To create an apply process that applies messages at a remote database or an apply process that applies user messages, use the `CREATE_APPLY` procedure in the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package.

You can also use the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM.CREATE_APPLY` procedure to specify nondefault values for the `apply_captured`, `apply_user`, `apply_database_link`, and `apply_tag` parameters when you run that procedure. You can use one of the procedures in the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package to add rules to a rule set used by the apply process after you create it.

See Also:

- "ALTER_APPLY Procedure" on page 23-10
- "CREATE_APPLY Procedure" on page 23-18

Apply Process Rules for User Messages

The `ADD_MESSAGE_RULE` procedure adds a message rule to a rule set of an apply process when you specify `apply` for the `streams_type` parameter. For an apply process rule, you should execute this procedure at the destination database.

If this procedure adds a rule to the positive rule set for an apply process, then the apply process dequeues user messages of a specific message type that satisfy the apply process rule and sends these messages to its message handler. If no message handler is specified for the apply process, then use the `ALTER_APPLY` procedure in the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package to set the message handler. If this procedure adds a rule to the negative rule set for an apply process, then the apply process discards user messages of a specific message type that satisfy the apply process rule.

See Also:

- ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure on page 159-43
- ALTER_APPLY Procedure on page 23-10

Messaging Client Rules for LCRs

The following procedures add rules to a rule set of a messaging client when you specify `dequeue` for the `streams_type` parameter:

- The `ADD_GLOBAL_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for all LCRs in the messaging client's queue. See "ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure" on page 159-34.
- The `ADD_SCHEMA_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for LCRs in the messaging client's queue containing changes made to a specified schema. See "ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure" on page 159-50.
- The `ADD_SUBSET_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for row LCRs in the messaging client's queue containing the results of DML changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table. See "ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure" on page 159-59.
- The `ADD_TABLE_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` for LCRs in the messaging client's queue containing changes made to a specified table. See "ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure" on page 159-70.

If one of these procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for a messaging client, then the messaging client can dequeue persistent row LCRs, or DDL LCRs, or both that originated at the source database that matches the `source_database` parameter. If one of these procedures adds rules to the negative rule set for a messaging client, then the messaging client discards persistent row LCRs, or DDL LCRs, or both that originated at the source database that matches the `source_database` parameter. You should execute these procedures at the database where you want to dequeue the messages with the messaging client.

Messaging Client Rules for User Messages

The `ADD_MESSAGE_RULE` procedure adds a message rule to a rule set of a messaging client when you specify `dequeue` for the `streams_type` parameter. You should execute this procedure at the database that will dequeue messages.

If this procedure adds a rule to the positive rule set for a messaging client, then the messaging client dequeues user messages of a specific message type that satisfy the message rule. If this procedure adds a rule to the negative rule set for a messaging client, then the messaging client discards user messages of a specific message type that satisfy the message rule.

See Also: "ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure" on page 159-43

XStream Outbound Server Rules for LCRs

When you specify `apply` for the `streams_type` parameter and an XStream outbound server for the `streams_name` parameter, the following procedures add rules to a rule set of the specified outbound server:

- The `ADD_GLOBAL_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule conditions evaluate to `TRUE` for all LCRs.
- The `ADD_SCHEMA_RULES` procedure adds rules whose rule conditions evaluate to `TRUE` for LCRs that contain changes made to a specified schema.

- The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule conditions evaluate to TRUE for row LCRs that contain the results of DML changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table.
- The ADD_TABLE_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule conditions evaluate to TRUE for LCRs that contain changes made to a specified table.

These rules are evaluated against LCRs in the outbound server's queue.

If one of the preceding procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for the outbound server, then the rules specify that the outbound server sends LCRs in its queue to the XStream client application. If one of these procedures adds rules to the negative rule set for the outbound server, then the rules specify that the outbound server discards LCRs in its queue. For outbound server rules, execute these procedures at the database to which the XStream client application attaches.

An outbound server can process captured LCRs from only one source database. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If one of these procedures adds rules to the rule set of an outbound server, then specify the source database for the outbound server using the source_database parameter.

The rules in the outbound server's rule sets determine which LCRs are dequeued by the outbound server. When you create rules with one of these procedures, and you specify a value for the source_database parameter, then the rules include conditions for the specified source database. If the outbound server dequeues an LCR with a source database that is different from the source database for the outbound server, then an error is raised. In addition, when adding rules to an existing outbound server, the database specified in the source_database parameter cannot be different from the source database for the outbound server. You can determine the source database for an outbound server by querying the DBA_XSTREAM_OUTBOUND data dictionary view.

Note: These procedures cannot create an XStream outbound server. You can use one of the procedures in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package to add rules to a rule set used by the outbound server after you create it.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for information about creating an outbound server

XStream Inbound Server Rules for LCRs

When you specify apply for the streams_type parameter and an XStream inbound server for the streams_name parameter, the following procedures add rules to a rule set of the specified inbound server:

- The ADD_GLOBAL_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule conditions evaluate to TRUE for all LCRs sent to the inbound server.
- The ADD_SCHEMA_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule conditions evaluate to TRUE for LCRs sent to the inbound server that contain changes made to a specified schema.
- The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for row LCRs sent to the inbound server that contain the results of data definition language (DML) changes made to a subset of rows in a specified table.
- The ADD_TABLE_RULES procedure adds rules whose rule condition evaluates to TRUE for LCRs sent to the inbound server that contain changes made to a specified table.

If one of the preceding procedures adds rules to the positive rule set for the inbound server, then the rules specify that the inbound server applies LCRs sent to it by the XStream client application. If one of these procedures adds rules to the negative rule set for the inbound server, then the rules specify that the inbound server discards LCRs sent to it by the XStream client application. For inbound server rules, execute these procedures at the database to which the XStream client application attaches. If an inbound server has no rule sets, then it applies all of the LCRs sent to it by the XStream client application.

Changes applied by an inbound server created by one of these procedures generate tags in the redo log at the destination database with a value of `'00'` (double zero). You can use the `ALTER_APPLY` procedure in the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package to alter the tag value after the inbound server is created, if necessary.

The rules in the XStream inbound server rule sets determine which LCRs are either applied or discarded after the LCRs are received from the XStream client application. An inbound server can only process LCRs sent from an XStream client application.

When one of these procedures creates rules for an inbound server, the procedure ignores the `source_database` parameter.

Note: If the name specified in the `streams_name` parameter does not exist, then these procedures always create an apply process. The apply process remains an apply process if it receives captured LCRs from a capture process. The apply process can become an inbound server if an XStream client application attaches to it before it receives LCRs from a capture process. After the initial contact, an apply process cannot be changed into an inbound server, and an inbound server cannot be changed into an apply process.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for information about creating an inbound server

Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment

The following procedures in this package configure an environment that is maintained by Oracle Streams:

- MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that records in a change table the data manipulation language (DML) changes made to a source table. Optionally, this procedure can also configure one-way replication of the table from the source database to the destination database.
- MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes at the database level between two databases.
- MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified schemas between two databases.
- MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure clones a simple tablespace from a source database at a destination database and configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified tablespace between these two databases.
- MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified tables between two databases.

- MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure clones a set of tablespaces from a source database at a destination database and configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified tablespaces between these two databases.
- PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure

The PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures must be used together to complete the Oracle Streams replication configuration. Typically, the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures are used to perform database maintenance operations with little or no down time. See *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information.

The following sections contain information about using these procedures:

- Automatic Platform Conversion
- Actions Performed by These Procedures
- Configuration Progress and Recoverability
- Requirements for Running These Procedures
- Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about using these procedures

Automatic Platform Conversion

If the source and destination databases run on different platforms, then these procedures, or the scripts generated by these procedures, convert transferred datafiles to the appropriate platform automatically.

Actions Performed by These Procedures

To view all of the actions performed by one of these procedures in detail, use the procedure to generate a script, and view the script in a text editor.

Configuration Progress and Recoverability

When one of these procedures is run with the perform_actions parameter set to TRUE, metadata about its configuration actions is recorded in the following data dictionary views: DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT, DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS, DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS, and DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS. If the procedure stops because it encounters an error, then you can use the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure to complete the configuration after you correct the conditions that caused the error.

> **Note:** When one of these procedures is run with the perform_actions parameter set to FALSE, these views are not populated. Also, the views are not populated when a script generated by one of these procedures is run.

> **See Also:** "RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure" on page 159-147

Requirements for Running These Procedures

Meet the following requirements when you use one of these procedures:

- Run the procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that will contain the capture process that captures changes made to the source database. If the capture database is the same as the source database, then a local capture process is configured. If the capture database is different from the source database, then a downstream capture process is configured. See *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about the capture database.
- The user who runs the procedure must be able to use a database link from the source database to the destination database. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the destination database.
- If the procedure configures downstream capture, then the corresponding user at the capture database must be able to use a database link to access the source database. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the source database.
- If the procedure configures downstream capture, and the capture database is different from the destination database, then the corresponding user at the capture database must be able to use a database link to access the destination database. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the destination database.
- Both databases must be open during configuration. If the procedure is generating a script only, then the database specified in the `destination_database` parameter does not need to be open when you run the procedure, but both databases must be open when you run the generated script.
- Grant the user who runs the procedure the `DBA` role. This user must have the necessary privileges to complete the following actions:
  - Create `ANYDATA` queues, capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.
  - Specify supplemental logging
  - Run subprograms in the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` and `DBMS_AQADM` packages.
  - Access the database specified in the `destination_database` parameter through a database link. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the destination database.

  Typically, the `DBA` role can be revoked from the user, if necessary, after the configuration is complete.
- The procedure, or the scripts generated by these procedure, must be run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later database.
- If the `perform_actions` parameter is set to `TRUE` in the procedure to configure the Oracle Streams environment directly, then all of the databases configured by the procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later databases.
- If the `perform_actions` parameter is set to `FALSE` in the procedure, and the environment is configured with a generated script, then the databases configured by the script must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 or later databases. If the script configures an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 database, then the script must be modified so that it does not configure features that are available only in Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later, such as queue-to-queue propagation.
- Each specified directory object must be created using the SQL statement `CREATE DIRECTORY`, and the user who invokes the procedure must have `READ` and `WRITE` privilege on each one.
- For procedures that include the `bi_directional` parameter, if the `bi_directional` parameter is set to `TRUE`, or if the source database is not the capture database, then

the source_database parameter must specify a database that contains the database objects to be shared. The database specified in the destination_database parameter might or might not contain these database objects. If the destination database does not contain the shared database objects, then the procedure instantiates the database objects at the destination database (excluding the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures).

- For procedures that include the bi_directional parameter, if the bi_directional parameter is set to TRUE or if a network instantiation will be performed, then the corresponding user at the destination database must be able to use a database link to access the source database. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the source database.

To ensure that the user who runs these procedures has the necessary privileges, you should configure an Oracle Streams administrator at each database, and each database link should be should be created in the Oracle Streams administrator's schema.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures

Table 159–1 describes the common parameters for the procedures in this package that configure an Oracle Streams environment. Some of the procedures do not include all of the parameters in Table 159–1.

Table 159–1 Common Parameters for Configuration Procedures

Parameter	Description
perform_actions	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to configure the environment directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to configure the environment directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to configure the environment. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to configure the environment directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure performs the actions to configure the environment directly and does not generate a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 159–1 (Cont.) Common Parameters for Configuration Procedures

Parameter	Description
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.
capture_name	The name of each capture process configured to capture changes. Do not specify an owner. If the bi_directional parameter is set to TRUE, then each capture process created by this procedure has the specified name. If the specified name matches the name of an existing capture process, then the procedure uses the existing capture process and adds the rules for capturing changes to the database to the positive capture process rule set. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each capture process it creates. **Note:** The capture process name cannot be altered after the capture process is created.
capture_queue_table	The name of the queue table for each queue used by a capture process, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the system generates a name for the queue table of each queue used by a capture process, and the current user is the owner of each queue table.
capture_queue_name	The name of each queue used by a capture process, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the queue table owner is the default. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each queue used by a capture process.
capture_queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the source database. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.

Table 159–1 (Cont.) Common Parameters for Configuration Procedures

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of each propagation configured to propagate changes. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing propagation, then the procedure uses the existing propagation and adds the rules for propagating changes to the positive propagation rule set. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each propagation it creates. **Note:** The propagation name cannot be altered after the propagation is created.
apply_name	The name of each apply process configured to apply changes. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing apply process, then the procedure uses the existing apply process and adds the rules for applying changes to the positive apply process rule set. The specified name must not match the name of an existing messaging client at the destination database. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each apply process it creates. When set to NULL, no apply process that applies changes from the source database can exist on the destination database. If an apply process that applies changes from the source database exists at the destination database, then specify a non-NULL value for this parameter. **Note:** The apply process name cannot be altered after the apply process is created.
apply_queue_table	The name of the queue table for each queue used by an apply process, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the system generates a name for the queue table of each queue used by an apply process, and the current user is the owner of each queue table.
apply_queue_name	The name of each queue used by an apply process, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the queue table owner is the default. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each queue used by an apply process.
apply_queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the destination database. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.

Table 159–1 (Cont.) Common Parameters for Configuration Procedures

Parameter	Description
bi_directional	Specify TRUE to configure bi-directional replication between the database specified in source_database and the database specified in destination_database. Both databases are configured as source and destination databases, a capture and apply process is configured to capture changes to both databases, and propagations are configured to propagate these changes. If TRUE, then a database link from the destination database to the source database with the same global name as the source database must exist. Specify FALSE to configure one way replication from the database specified in source_database and the database specified in destination_database. A capture process is configured at the current database and an apply process is configured at the destination database. A propagation is configured if necessary. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about when propagations are configured
include_ddl	Specify TRUE to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment that maintains both DML and DDL changes. Specify FALSE to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment that maintains DML changes only. When this parameter is set to FALSE, DDL changes, such as ALTER TABLE, are not replicated.

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS_ADM Subprograms

Table 159–2 DBMS_STREAMS_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_COLUMN Procedure on page 159-27	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which adds a column to a row logical change record (row LCR) that satisfies the specified rule
ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 159-30	Either adds global rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds global rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure on page 159-34	Adds global rules to either the positive or negative rule set of a capture process, apply process, or messaging client, and creates the specified capture process, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist
ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure on page 159-39	Either adds a message rule to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds a message rule to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure on page 159-43	Adds a message rule to either the positive or negative rule set of an apply process or messaging client, and creates the specified apply process or messaging client if it does not exist
ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 159-46	Either adds schema rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds schema rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure on page 159-50	Adds schema rules to either the positive or negative rule set of a capture process, apply process, or messaging client, and creates the specified capture process, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist
ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 159-55	Adds subset rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure on page 159-59	Adds subset rules to the positive rule set of a capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client, and creates the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist
ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 159-65	Either adds table rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds table rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure on page 159-70	Adds table rules to the rule set of a capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client, and creates the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist

Table 159–2 (Cont.) DBMS_STREAMS_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure on page 159-76	Removes an Oracle Streams replication configuration that was set up by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures in this package
DELETE_COLUMN Procedure on page 159-80	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which deletes a column from a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Function on page 159-83	Returns the tracking label for the current session
GET_SCN_MAPPING Procedure on page 159-84	Gets information about the system change number (SCN) values to use for Oracle Streams capture and apply processes in an Oracle Streams replication environment
GET_TAG Function on page 159-86	Gets the binary tag for all redo entries generated by the current session
KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure on page 159-87	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which keeps a list of columns in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure on page 159-90	Configures an Oracle Streams environment that records in a change table the data manipulation language (DML) changes made to a source table. Optionally, this procedure can also configure one-way replication of the table from the source database to the destination database
MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure on page 159-97	Configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes at the database level between two databases
MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure on page 159-101	Configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified schemas between two databases
MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 159-106	Clones a simple tablespace from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain this tablespace at both databases. This procedure is deprecated.
MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure on page 159-111	Clones a simple tablespace from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain this tablespace at both databases
MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure on page 159-114	Configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified tables between two databases
MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 159-119	Clones a set of tablespaces from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain these tablespaces at both databases. This procedure is deprecated.
MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure on page 159-126	Clones a set of tablespaces from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain these tablespaces at both databases
MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-130	Merges a stream flowing from one capture process with a stream flowing from another capture process

Table 159–2 (Cont.) DBMS_STREAMS_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure on page 159-133	Determines whether the original capture process and the cloned capture are within the specified merge threshold and, if they are, runs the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge the two streams
POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure on page 159-136	Performs the actions required after instantiation to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment
PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure on page 159-141	Performs the actions required before instantiation to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment
PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG Procedure on page 159-146	Removes all Oracle Streams data dictionary information at the local database for the specified object
RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure on page 159-147	Provides options for an Oracle Streams replication configuration operation that stopped because it encountered an error. This procedure either rolls forward the operation, rolls back the operation, or purges all of the metadata about the operation.
REMOVE_QUEUE Procedure on page 159-149	Removes the specified ANYDATA queue
REMOVE_RULE Procedure on page 159-150	Removes the specified rule or all rules from the rule set associated with the specified capture process, synchronous capture, propagation, apply process, or messaging client.
REMOVE_STREAMS_CONFIGURATION Procedure on page 159-152	Removes the Oracle Streams configuration at the local database
RENAME_COLUMN Procedure on page 159-154	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a column in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
RENAME_SCHEMA Procedure on page 159-157	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a schema in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
RENAME_TABLE Procedure on page 159-159	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a table in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION Procedure on page 159-161	Sets a notification for messages that can be dequeued by a specified Oracle Streams messaging client from a specified queue
SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure on page 159-165	Sets the tracking label for logical change records (LCRs) produced by the current session
SET_RULE_TRANSFORM_FUNCTION Procedure on page 159-166	Sets or removes the transformation function name for a rule-based transformation
SET_TAG Procedure on page 159-170	Sets the binary tag for all redo entries subsequently generated by the current session
SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure on page 159-171	Creates a queue table and a queue for use with the capture, propagate, and apply functionality of Oracle Streams
SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-173	Splits one stream flowing from a capture process off from all of the other streams flowing from the capture process

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ADD_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which adds a column to a row logical change record (row LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.

This procedure is overloaded. The `column_value` and `column_function` parameters are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- `ADD_COLUMN` transformations cannot add columns of the following data types: `BLOB`, `CLOB`, `NCLOB`, `BFILE`, `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, `ROWID`, user-defined types (including object types, `REF`s, varrays, nested tables), and Oracle-supplied types (including any types, XML types, spatial types, and media types).
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. These row LCRs can be captured by a capture process, captured by a synchronous capture, or constructed and enqueued by an application. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_COLUMN(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_value  IN  ANYDATA,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'NEW',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER       DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'ADD');

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_COLUMN(
   rule_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_function  IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type       IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'NEW',
   step_number      IN  NUMBER       DEFAULT 0,
   operation        IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–3 ADD_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name*.]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_name	The name of the table to which the column is added in the row LCR, specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
column_name	The name of the column added to each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
column_value	The value of the added column. Specify the appropriate ANYDATA function for the column datatype and the column value. For example, if the datatype of the column being added is NUMBER and the value is NULL, then specify the ANYDATA.ConvertNumber(NULL) function. This parameter cannot be specified if the column_function parameter is specified.
column_function	Either the 'SYSDATE' or the 'SYSTIMESTAMP' SQL function. The 'SYSDATE' SQL function places the current date and time set for the operating system on which the database resides. The datatype of the returned value is DATE, and the format returned depends on the value of the NLS_DATE_FORMAT initialization parameter. The 'SYSTIMESTAMP' SQL function returns the system date, including fractional seconds and time zone, of the system on which the database resides. The return type is TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE. The function executes when the rule evaluates to TRUE. This parameter cannot be specified if the column_value parameter is specified.
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to add the column to the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to add the column to the old values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the add column declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the ADD_COLUMN procedures when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations for the specified rule.

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified column_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name and column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedure either adds global rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds global rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–4 ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`streams_name`	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If `NULL` and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If `NULL` and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.

Table 159–4 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a logical change record (LCR) has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then whether an LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag for the LCR. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if an LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then an LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 159–4 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the changes originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the global rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure the procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Table 159–4 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. The procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the database name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the database name plus the sequence number is too long, then the database name is truncated. A propagation uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9 and "Propagation Rules for LCRs" on page 159-11 for more information about the rules created by this procedure
- "Propagation User" on page 159-6

Examples

The following is an example of a global rule condition created for DML changes:

```
(:dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of Oracle Streams clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to an entire database. See "Capture Process Rules for Changes in the Redo Log" on page 159-10 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, this procedure adds apply process rules for applying all logical change records (LCRs) in a queue. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Apply Process Rules for LCRs" on page 159-12 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `dequeue`, this procedure adds messaging client rules for dequeuing all persistent LCRs from a queue. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Messaging Client Rules for LCRs" on page 159-14 for more information about these rules.

This procedure creates the specified capture process, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Caution: If you add global rules to the positive rule set for a capture process, then make sure you add rules to the negative capture process rule set to exclude database objects that are not support by Oracle Streams. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.

Note: Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_RULES(
   streams_type        IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr  IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database     IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition       IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_RULES(
   streams_type        IN   VARCHAR2,
```

```
  streams_name        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
  include_dml         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
  include_ddl         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
  include_tagged_lcr  IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
  source_database     IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  inclusion_rule      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
  and_condition       IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–5 ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_type	The type of Oracle Streams client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify apply for an apply process. ■ Specify dequeue for a messaging client.
streams_name	The name of the capture process, apply process, or messaging client. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture or dequeue, and if one relevant capture process or messaging client for the queue exists, then the relevant Oracle Streams client is used. If no relevant Oracle Streams client exists for the queue, then an Oracle Streams client is created automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple Oracle Streams clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process and messaging client must have a unique name.
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process rules, this is the queue into which a capture process enqueues LCRs. For apply process rules, this is the queue from which an apply process dequeues messages. For messaging client rules, this is the queue from which a messaging client dequeues messages.

Table 159–5 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is always considered for capture, and an LCR is always considered for apply, regardless of whether the redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then whether a redo entry or LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if a redo entry or LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is considered for capture, and an LCR is considered for apply, only when the redo entry or LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then a redo entry or LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured messages, then the apply process can apply messages from only one capture process at one source database. For messaging client rules, specify NULL if you do not want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. Specify a source database if you want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. The source database is part of the information in an LCR, and user-constructed LCRs might or might not have this information. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.

Table 159–5 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the Oracle Streams client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the Oracle Streams client. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the global rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Usage Notes

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the database name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the database name plus the sequence number is too long, then the database name is truncated. A capture process, apply process, or messaging client uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9
- "Security Model" on page 159-5

Examples

The following is an example of a global rule condition created for DML changes:

```
(:dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure

This procedure adds a message rule to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds a message rule to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains the `OUT` parameter `rule_name`, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE(
   message_type             IN   VARCHAR2,
   rule_condition           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name        IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name   IN   VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule           IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   rule_name                OUT  VARCHAR2,
   queue_to_queue           IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE(
   message_type             IN   VARCHAR2,
   rule_condition           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name        IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name   IN   VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule           IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   queue_to_queue           IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–6 ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`message_type`	The type of the message. The type can be an Oracle built-in type, such as `VARCHAR2` or `NUMBER`, or it can be a user-defined type. If the type is not an Oracle built-in type, then it is specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`type_name`*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For example, to specify `VARCHAR2`, enter `VARCHAR2(`*`n`*`)`, where *`n`* is the size specification. To specify a type named `usr_msg` in the `strmadmin` schema, enter `strmadmin.usr_msg` for this parameter. The following data types require a size specification: `VARCHAR2`, `NVARCHAR2`, and `RAW`. **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about data types
`rule_condition`	The rule condition for this message type. The rule variable name specified in the rule condition must be the following: `:msg` **See Also:** "Examples" on page 159-41

Table 159–6 (Cont.) ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_name	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If NULL and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If NULL and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rule to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rule to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
rule_name	Contains the rule name

Table 159–6 (Cont.) ADD_MESSAGE_PROPAGATION_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ▪ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ▪ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ▪ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

When you use this procedure to create a rule set for a message rule, the new rule set does not have an evaluation context. If no evaluation context exists for the specified message type, then this procedure creates a new evaluation context and associates it with the new rule. The evaluation context also has a system-generated name. If you create new rules that use an existing message type, then the new rules use the existing evaluation context for the message type.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9 and "Propagation Rules for User Messages" on page 159-12 for more information about the rules created by this procedure
- "Propagation User" on page 159-6

Examples

Suppose the message type is VARCHAR2(128). Given this type, the following rule condition can be specified:

```
':msg = ''HQ'''
```

This rule condition evaluates to TRUE if a user message of type VARCHAR2(128) has HQ for its value.

Suppose the message type is usr_msg, and that this type has the following attributes: source_dbname, owner, name, and message. Given this type, the following rule condition can be specified:

```
':msg.source_dbname = ''DBS1.NET'' AND ' || ':msg.owner = ''HR'' AND  ' ||
':msg.name = ''EMPLOYEES'''
```

This rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` if a user message of type `usr_msg` has `DBS1.NET` for its `source_dbname` attribute, `HR` for its `owner` attribute, and `EMPLOYEES` for its `name` attribute.

Note: The quotation marks in the preceding examples are all single quotation marks.

ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure

This procedure adds a message rule to a rule set of one of the following types of Oracle Streams clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply`, this procedure adds an apply process rule for dequeuing user messages of a specific message type from a queue. See "Apply Process Rules for User Messages" on page 159-13 for more information about such rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `dequeue`, this procedure adds a messaging client rule for dequeuing user messages of a specific message type from a queue. See "Messaging Client Rules for User Messages" on page 159-14 for more information about such rules.

This procedure also creates the specified Oracle Streams client if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains the `OUT` parameter `rule_name`, and the other does not.

> **Note:** Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_MESSAGE_RULE(
   message_type    IN   VARCHAR2,
   rule_condition  IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type    IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name    IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name      IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   inclusion_rule  IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_MESSAGE_RULE(
   message_type    IN   VARCHAR2,
   rule_condition  IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type    IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name    IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name      IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   inclusion_rule  IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–7 ADD_MESSAGE_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
message_type	The type of the message. The type can be an Oracle built-in type, such as VARCHAR2 or NUMBER, or it can be a user-defined type. If the type is not an Oracle built-in type, then it is specified as [*schema_name*.]*type_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For example, to specify VARCHAR2, enter VARCHAR2(*n*), where *n* is the size specification. To specify a type named usr_msg in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.usr_msg for this parameter. The following data types require a size specification: VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR2, and RAW. **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about data types
rule_condition	The rule condition for this message type. The rule variable name specified in the rule condition must be the following: :msg **See Also:** "Examples" on page 159-45
streams_type	The type of message consumer, either apply for apply process or dequeue for messaging client
streams_name	The name of the Oracle Streams apply process or messaging client. If the specified streams_type is apply, then specify the name of the apply process. Do not specify an owner. If the specified apply process does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically with a system-generated name. If the specified streams_type is dequeue, then specify the messaging client. For example, if the user strmadmin is the messaging client, then specify strmadmin. If NULL and a relevant apply process or messaging client for the queue exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process or messaging client. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes or messaging clients for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL and no Oracle Streams client of the specified streams_type exists for the queue, then the procedure creates an apply process or messaging client automatically with a system-generated name. An apply process and a messaging client cannot have the same name.
queue_name	The name of the local queue from which messages will be dequeued, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rule to the positive rule set for the apply process or messaging client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rule to the negative rule set for the apply process or messaging client. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
rule_name	Contains the rule name

Usage Notes

If an apply process rule is added, then this procedure creates the apply process if it does not exist. An apply process created by this procedure can apply only user messages, and dequeued messages are sent to the message handler for the apply process. If a messaging client rule is added, then this procedure creates a messaging client if it does not exist.

When you use this procedure to create a rule set for a message rule, the new rule set does not have an evaluation context. If no evaluation context exists for the specified message type, then this procedure creates a new evaluation context and associates it with the new rule. The evaluation context also has a system-generated name. If you create new rules that use an existing message type, then the new rules use the existing evaluation context for the message type.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9
- "Security Model" on page 159-5
- ALTER_APPLY Procedure on page 23-10 for more information about setting a message handler for an apply process

Examples

Suppose the message type is `VARCHAR2(128)`. Given this type, the following rule condition can be specified:

```
':msg = ''HQ'''
```

This rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` if a user message of type `VARCHAR2(128)` has `HQ` for its value.

Suppose the message type is `usr_msg`, and that this type has the following attributes: `source_dbname`, `owner`, `name`, and `message`. Given this type, the following rule condition can be specified:

```
':msg.source_dbname = ''DBS1.NET'' AND ' || ':msg.owner = ''HR'' AND  ' ||
':msg.name = ''EMPLOYEES'''
```

This rule condition evaluates to `TRUE` if a user message of type `usr_msg` has `DBS1.NET` for its `source_dbname` attribute, `HR` for its `owner` attribute, and `EMPLOYEES` for its `name` attribute.

Note: The quotation marks in the preceding examples are all single quotation marks.

ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedure either adds schema rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds schema rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   schema_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   schema_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–8 ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema_name`	The name of the schema. For example, `hr`.
`streams_name`	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If `NULL` and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If `NULL` and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.

Table 159–8 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a logical change record (LCR) has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then whether an LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag for the LCR. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if an LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then an LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 159–8 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the change originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the schema rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Table 159–8 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the schema name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the schema name plus the sequence number is too long, then the schema name is truncated. A propagation uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9 and "Propagation Rules for LCRs" on page 159-11 for more information about the rules created by this procedure
- "Propagation User" on page 159-6

Examples

The following is an example of a schema rule condition created for DML changes:

```
((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR') and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y'
and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure

This procedures adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of Oracle Streams clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to a specified schema. See "Capture Process Rules for Changes in the Redo Log" on page 159-10 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, this procedure adds apply process rules for applying logical change records (LCRs) in a queue that contain changes to a specified schema. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Apply Process Rules for LCRs" on page 159-12 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `dequeue`, this procedure adds messaging client rules for dequeuing persistent LCRs from a queue that contain changes to a specified schema. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Messaging Client Rules for LCRs" on page 159-14 for more information about these rules.

This procedure creates the specified capture process, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Caution: If you add schema rules to the positive rule set for a capture process, then make sure you add rules to the negative capture process rule set to exclude database objects in the schema that are not support by Oracle Streams. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.

Note: Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_RULES(
   schema_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type         IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr   IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database      IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name        OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name        OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule       IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_RULES(
   schema_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type         IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr   IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database      IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule       IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–9 ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	The name of the schema. For example, hr. You can specify a schema that does not yet exist, because Oracle Streams does not validate the existence of the schema.
streams_type	The type of Oracle Streams client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify apply for an apply process. ■ Specify dequeue for a messaging client.
streams_name	The name of the capture process, apply process, or messaging client. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture or dequeue, and if one relevant capture process or messaging client for the queue exists, then the relevant Oracle Streams client is used. If no relevant Oracle Streams client exists for the queue, then an Oracle Streams client is created automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple Oracle Streams clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process and messaging client must have a unique name.

Table 159–9 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process rules, this is the queue into which a capture process enqueues LCRs. For apply process rules, this is the queue from which an apply process dequeues messages. For messaging client rules, this is the queue from which a messaging client dequeues messages.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is always considered for capture, and an LCR is always considered for apply, regardless of whether the redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then whether a redo entry or LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if a redo entry or LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is considered for capture, and an LCR is considered for apply, only when the redo entry or LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then a redo entry or LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 159–9 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured messages, then the apply process can apply messages from only one capture process at one source database. For messaging client rules, specify NULL if you do not want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. Specify a source database if you want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. The source database is part of the information in an LCR, and user-constructed LCRs might or might not have this information. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the Oracle Streams client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the Oracle Streams client. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.

Table 159–9 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the schema rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Usage Notes

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the schema name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the schema name plus the sequence number is too long, then the schema name is truncated. A capture process, apply process, or messaging client uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9
- "Security Model" on page 159-5

Examples

The following is an example of a schema rule condition created for DML changes:

```
((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR') and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y'
and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedures adds propagation rules that propagate the logical change records (LCRs) related to a subset of the rows in the specified table in a source queue to a destination queue, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains three `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name                IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name              IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name         IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_tagged_lcr        IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   insert_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   update_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   delete_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   queue_to_queue            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name                IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name              IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name         IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_tagged_lcr        IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–10 ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	The name of the table specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified table must exist in the same database as the propagation. Also, the specified table cannot have any LOB, `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, or `XMLType` columns currently or in the future.
`dml_condition`	The subset condition. Specify this condition similar to the way you specify conditions in a `WHERE` clause in SQL. For example, to specify rows in the `hr.employees` table where the `salary` is greater than `4000` and the `job_id` is `SA_MAN`, enter the following as the condition: `' salary > 4000 and job_id = ''SA_MAN'' '` **Note:** The quotation marks in the preceding example are all single quotation marks.

Table 159–10 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_name	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If NULL and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If NULL and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. This setting is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If FALSE, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. A setting of FALSE is often specified in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the change originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.

Table 159–10 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
insert_rule_name	Contains the system-generated INSERT rule name. This rule handles inserts and updates that must be converted into inserts.
update_rule_name	Contains the system-generated UPDATE rule name. This rule handles updates that remain updates.
delete_rule_name	Contains the system-generated DELETE rule name. This rule handles deletes and updates that must be converted into deletes
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

Running this procedure generates three rules for the specified propagation: one for INSERT statements, one for UPDATE statements, and one for DELETE statements. For INSERT and DELETE statements, only row LCRs that satisfy the condition specified for the dml_condition parameter are propagated. For UPDATE statements, the following variations are possible:

- If both the new and old values in a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the row LCR is propagated without any changes.
- If neither the new or old values in a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the row LCR is not propagated.
- If the old values for a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the new values do not, then the update row LCR is converted into a delete row LCR.
- If the new values for a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the old values do not, then the update row LCR is converted to an insert row LCR.

When an update is converted into an insert or a delete, it is called row migration.

A propagation uses the rules for filtering. If the propagation does not have a positive rule set, then the procedure creates a positive rule set automatically, and the rules for propagating changes to the table are added to the positive rule set. A subset rule can be added to positive rule set only, not to a negative rule set. Other rules in an existing positive rule set for the propagation are not affected. Additional rules can be added using either the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package or the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package.

Rules for `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` statements are created automatically when you run this procedure, and these rules are given a system-generated rule name. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. The `ADD_SUBSET_RULES` procedure is overloaded, and the system-generated rule names for `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` statements are returned.

When you create propagation subset rules for a table, you should create an unconditional supplemental log group at the source database with all the columns in the table. Supplemental logging is required if an update must be converted to an insert. The propagation rule must have all the column values to be able to perform this conversion correctly.

Attention: Subset rules should only reside in positive rule sets. You should not add subset rules to negative rule sets. Doing so might have unpredictable results because row migration would not be performed on LCRs that are not discarded by the negative rule set.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9 and "Propagation Rules for LCRs" on page 159-11 for more information about the rules created by this procedure
- "Propagation User" on page 159-6

Examples

The following is an example of a rule condition created for filtering a row LCR containing an update operation when the `dml_condition` is `region_id = 2`, the `table_name` is `hr.regions`, and the `source_database` is `dbs1.net`:

```
:dml.get_object_owner()='HR' AND :dml.get_object_name()='REGIONS'
AND :dml.is_null_tag()='Y' AND :dml.get_source_database_name()='DBS1.NET'
AND :dml.get_command_type()='UPDATE'
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
```

ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of Oracle Streams clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to a subset of rows in a specified table. See "Capture Process Rules for Changes in the Redo Log" on page 159-10 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `sync_capture`, this procedure adds rules for capturing changes to a subset of rows in a specified table. See "Synchronous Capture Rules for DML Changes to Tables" on page 159-11 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, this procedure adds apply process rules for applying logical change records (LCRs) in a queue that contain changes to a subset of rows in a specified table. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Apply Process Rules for LCRs" on page 159-12 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `dequeue`, this procedure adds messaging client rules for dequeuing persistent LCRs from a queue that contain changes to a subset of rows in a specified table. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Messaging Client Rules for LCRs" on page 159-14 for more information about these rules.

This procedure creates the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains three `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Note:

- Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages.
- The invoking user must be granted the `DBA` role to create a synchronous capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_RULES(
   table_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition       IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'apply',
   streams_name        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_tagged_lcr  IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   insert_rule_name    OUT  VARCHAR2,
   update_rule_name    OUT  VARCHAR2,
   delete_rule_name    OUT  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_RULES(
   table_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition       IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'apply',
```

```
   streams_name        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_tagged_lcr  IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–11 ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified table must exist in the same database as the capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client. Also, the specified table cannot have any LOB, LONG, LONG RAW, or XMLType columns currently or in the future.
dml_condition	The subset condition. Specify this condition similar to the way you specify conditions in a WHERE clause in SQL. For example, to specify rows in the hr.employees table where the salary is greater than 4000 and the job_id is SA_MAN, enter the following as the condition: ' salary > 4000 and job_id = ''SA_MAN'' ' **Note:** The quotation marks in the preceding example are all single quotation marks.
streams_type	The type of Oracle Streams client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify sync_capture for a synchronous capture. ■ Specify apply for an apply process. ■ Specify dequeue for a messaging client.

Table 159–11 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_name	The name of the capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture, sync_capture, or dequeue, and if one relevant capture process, synchronous capture, or messaging client for the queue exists, then the procedure uses the relevant Oracle Streams client. If no relevant Oracle Streams client exists for the queue, then the procedure creates an Oracle Streams client automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple Oracle Streams clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process and messaging client must have a unique name.
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process or synchronous capture rules, this is the queue into which a capture process or synchronous capture enqueues LCRs. For apply process rules, this is the queue from which an apply process dequeues messages. For messaging client rules, this is the queue from which a messaging client dequeues messages.

Table 159–11 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the Oracle Streams client performs its action regardless of the tag: ■ A redo entry is always considered for capture by a capture process, regardless of whether the redo entry has a non-NULL tag. ■ A change is always considered for capture by a synchronous capture, regardless of whether the session that makes the change has a non-NULL tag. ■ An LCR is always considered for apply by an apply process or dequeue by a messaging client, regardless of whether redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If FALSE, then an Oracle Streams client performs its action only when the tag is NULL: ■ A redo entry is considered for capture by a capture process only when the redo entry contains a NULL tag. ■ A change is considered for capture by a synchronous capture only when the session that makes the change has a NULL tag. ■ An LCR is considered for apply by an apply process or dequeue by a messaging client only if the LCR contains a NULL tag. A setting of FALSE is often specified in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For synchronous capture rules, specify the name of the local database. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured messages, then the apply process can apply messages from only one capture process at one source database. For messaging client rules, specify NULL if you do not want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. Specify a source database if you want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. The source database is part of the information in an LCR, and user-constructed LCRs might or might not have this information. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
insert_rule_name	Contains the system-generated INSERT rule name. This rule handles inserts and updates that must be converted into inserts.

Table 159–11 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
update_rule_name	Contains the system-generated UPDATE rule name. This rule handles updates that remain updates.
delete_rule_name	Contains the system-generated DELETE rule name. This rule handles deletes and updates that must be converted into deletes

Usage Notes

Running this procedure generates three rules for the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client: one for INSERT statements, one for UPDATE statements, and one for DELETE statements. For INSERT and DELETE statements, only DML changes that satisfy the condition specified for the dml_condition parameter are captured, applied, or dequeued. For UPDATE statements, the following variations are possible:

- If both the new and old values in a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the DML change is captured, applied, or dequeued without any changes.
- If neither the new or old values in a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the DML change is not captured, applied, or dequeued.
- If the old values for a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the new values do not, then the DML change is converted into a delete.
- If the new values for a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the old values do not, then the DML change is converted to an insert.

When an update is converted into an insert or a delete, it is called row migration.

A capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client uses the rules for filtering. If the Oracle Streams client does not have a positive rule set, then this procedure creates a positive rule set automatically, and adds the rules for the table to the positive rule set. A subset rule can be added to positive rule set only, not to a negative rule set. Other rules in an existing rule set for the process are not affected. Additional rules can be added using either the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package.

Rules for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements are created automatically when you run this procedure, and these rules are given a system-generated rule name. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure is overloaded, and the system-generated rule names for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements are returned.

Attention: Subset rules should only reside in positive rule sets. You should not add subset rules to negative rule sets. Doing so might have unpredictable results because row migration would not be performed on LCRs that are not discarded by the negative rule set.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9
- "Security Model" on page 159-5

Examples

The following is an example of a rule condition created for filtering DML changes containing an update operation when the `dml_condition` is `region_id = 2`, the `table_name` is `hr.regions`, and the `source_database` is `dbs1.net`:

```
:dml.get_object_owner()='HR' AND :dml.get_object_name()='REGIONS'
AND :dml.is_null_tag()='Y' AND :dml.get_source_database_name()='DBS1.NET'
AND :dml.get_command_type()='UPDATE'
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
```

ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedures adds table rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds table rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name              IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name              IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–12 ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	The name of the table specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`table_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`streams_name`	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If `NULL` and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If `NULL` and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.

Table 159–12 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted. The generated rule evaluates to TRUE for any DDL change that operates on the table or on an object that is part of the table, such as an index or trigger on the table. The rule evaluates to FALSE for any DDL change that either does not refer to the table or refers to the table in a subordinate way. For example, the rule evaluates to FALSE for changes that create synonyms or views based on the table. The rule also evaluates to FALSE for a change to a PL/SQL subprogram that refers to the table.

Table 159–12 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a logical change record (LCR) has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then whether an LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag for the LCR. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if an LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then an LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the change originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.

Table 159–12 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the table rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The

sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. A propagation uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9 and "Propagation Rules for LCRs" on page 159-11 for more information about the rules created by this procedure
- "Security Model" on page 159-5

Examples

The following is an example of a table rule condition created for filtering DML statements:

```
(((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR' and :dml.get_object_name() = 'LOCATIONS'))
and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of Oracle Streams clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to a specified table. See "Capture Process Rules for Changes in the Redo Log" on page 159-10 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `sync_capture`, this procedure adds rules for capturing changes to a specified table. See "Synchronous Capture Rules for DML Changes to Tables" on page 159-11 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, this procedure adds apply process rules for applying logical change records (LCRs) in a queue that contain changes to a specified table. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Apply Process Rules for LCRs" on page 159-12 for more information about these rules.
- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `dequeue`, this procedure adds messaging client rules for dequeuing persistent LCRs from a queue that contain changes to a specified table. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database. See "Messaging Client Rules for LCRs" on page 159-14 for more information about these rules.

This procedure creates the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Note:

- Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages.
- The invoking user must be granted the `DBA` role to create a synchronous capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_TABLE_RULES(
   table_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type        IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml         IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl         IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr  IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition       IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ADD_TABLE_RULES(
   table_name          IN   VARCHAR2,
```

```
  streams_type        IN   VARCHAR2,
  streams_name        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  queue_name          IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
  include_dml         IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
  include_ddl         IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
  include_tagged_lcr  IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
  source_database     IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  inclusion_rule      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
  and_condition       IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–13 ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. You can specify a table that does not yet exist, because Oracle Streams does not validate the existence of the table.
streams_type	The type of Oracle Streams client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify sync_capture for a synchronous capture. ■ Specify apply for an apply process. ■ Specify dequeue for a messaging client.
streams_name	The name of the capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture, sync_capture, or dequeue, and if one relevant capture process, synchronous capture, or messaging client for the queue exists, then the procedure uses the relevant Oracle Streams client. If no relevant Oracle Streams client exists for the queue, then the procedure creates an Oracle Streams client automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple Oracle Streams clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process and messaging client must have a unique name.

Table 159–13 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process or synchronous capture rules, this is the queue into which a capture process or synchronous capture enqueues LCRs. For apply process rules, this is the queue from which an apply process dequeues messages. For messaging client rules, this is the queue from which a messaging client dequeues messages.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DML rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DDL rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted. The generated rule evaluates to TRUE for any DDL change that operates on the table or on an object that is part of the table, such as an index or trigger on the table. The rule evaluates to FALSE for any DDL change that either does not refer to the table or refers to the table in a subordinate way. For example, the rule evaluates to FALSE for changes that create synonyms or views based on the table. The rule also evaluates to FALSE for a change to a PL/SQL subprogram that refers to the table.

Table 159–13 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a redo entry, session, or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the Oracle Streams client, then the Oracle Streams client performs its action regardless of the tag: ■ A redo entry is always considered for capture by a capture process, regardless of whether the redo entry has a non-NULL tag. ■ A change is always considered for capture by a synchronous capture, regardless of whether the session that makes the change has a non-NULL tag. ■ An LCR is always considered for apply by an apply process or dequeue by a messaging client, regardless of whether redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the Oracle Streams client, then whether a database change is discarded does not depend on the tag. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if a redo entry, session, or LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for an Oracle Streams client, then the Oracle Streams client performs its action only when the tag is NULL: ■ A redo entry is considered for capture by a capture process only when the redo entry contains a NULL tag. ■ A change is considered for capture by a synchronous capture only when the session that makes the change has a NULL tag. ■ An LCR is considered for apply by an apply process or dequeue by a messaging client only if the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the Oracle Streams client, then a database change can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. A setting of FALSE is often specified in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 159–13 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For synchronous capture rules, specify the name of the local database. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured messages, then the apply process can apply messages from only one capture process at one source database. For messaging client rules, specify NULL if you do not want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. Specify a source database if you want the rules created by this procedure to have a condition for the source database. The source database is part of the information in an LCR, and user-constructed LCRs might or might not have this information. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the Oracle Streams client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the Oracle Streams client. A synchronous capture cannot have a negative rule set. Specifying FALSE for a synchronous capture raises an error. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.

Table 159–13 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the table rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Usage Notes

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. A capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, or messaging client uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 159-9
- "Security Model" on page 159-5

Examples

The following is an example of a table rule condition created for DML changes:

```
(((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR' and :dml.get_object_name() = 'LOCATIONS'))
and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure

This procedure removes an Oracle Streams replication configuration that was set up by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures in this package. This procedure either remove the configuration directly, or it can generate a script that removes the configuration.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

Attention: When the CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure is run, the parameter values must match the parameter values specified when the corresponding PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures were run, except for the values of the following parameters: perform_actions, script_name, and script_directory_object.

See Also:

- "PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure" on page 159-141
- "POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure" on page 159-136
- "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP(
   maintain_mode           IN VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_names        IN DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.TABLESPACE_SET,
   source_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database    IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions         IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_table     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_name      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_user      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_table       IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_name        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_user        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional          IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   change_global_name      IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–14 CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
maintain_mode	Specify one of the following: ■ GLOBAL to clean up the Oracle Streams configuration that maintained the entire database in both the source and destination databases ■ TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES to cleanup the Oracle Streams configuration that maintained a set of tablespaces at both the source and destination database
tablespace_names	If maintain_mode is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then specify the local tablespace set to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespaces in the tablespace set must exist at the source database, but these tablespaces must not exist at the destination database. A directory object must exist for each directory that contains the datafiles for the tablespace set. The user who invokes this procedure must have READ privilege on these directory objects. If maintain_mode is set to GLOBAL, then specify an empty tablespace set. Regardless of the maintain_mode setting, an error is raised if the tablespace_names parameter is not set or is set to NULL. **See Also:** TABLESPACE_SET Table Type on page 164-9
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. A database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
perform_actions	If TRUE, then this procedure performs the necessary actions to clean up the Oracle Streams configuration directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to clean up the Oracle Streams configuration directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object

Table 159–14 (Cont.) CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to clean up the Oracle Streams configuration. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the statements are appended to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then this procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to clean up the Oracle Streams configuration directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then this procedure directly performs the actions to clean up the Oracle Streams configuration without generating a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and this procedure does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.
capture_name	The name of the capture processes configured to capture changes in the Oracle Streams configuration. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the capture processes with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
capture_queue_table	The name of the queue table for each queue used by a capture process, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the capture queue tables with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
capture_queue_name	The name of each queue used by a capture process, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the queue table owner is the default. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the capture queues with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
capture_queue_user	The name of the user who has ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the source database. This user is a secure queue user of the queue.

Table 159–14 (Cont.) CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagations configured to propagate changes in the Oracle Streams configuration. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the propagations with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
apply_name	The name of the apply processes configured to apply changes in the Oracle Streams configuration. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the apply processes with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
apply_queue_table	The name of the queue table for each queue used by an apply process, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the apply queue tables with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
apply_queue_name	The name of each queue used by an apply process, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the queue table owner is the default. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue. If NULL, then the procedure automatically identifies the apply queues with system-generated names created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures.
apply_queue_user	The name of the user who has ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the destination database. This user is a secure queue user of the queue.
bi_directional	Specify TRUE if the Oracle Streams replication configuration is bi-directional between the database specified in source_database and the database specified in destination_database. Specify FALSE if the Oracle Streams replication configuration is one way replication from the current database to the database specified in destination_database.
change_global_name	If TRUE, then the procedure changes the global name of the database specified in destination_database to match the global name of the current database. If FALSE, then the procedure does not change the global name of the database specified in destination_database.

DELETE_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which deletes a column from a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.

Note:

- The `DELETE_COLUMN` procedure supports the same data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes.
- The `DELETE_COLUMN` procedure is useful when you want to delete a relatively small number of columns in a row LCR. To delete most of the columns in a row LCR and keep a relatively small number of columns, consider using the `KEEP_COLUMNS` procedure in this package.
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. These row LCRs can be captured by a capture process, captured by a synchronous capture, or constructed and enqueued by an application. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations and about the data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes
- "KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure" on page 159-87

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.DELETE_COLUMN(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT '*',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–15 DELETE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_name`*. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `employees12`, enter `hr.employees12`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

Table 159–15 (Cont.) DELETE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table from which the column is deleted in the row LCR, specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
column_name	The name of the column deleted from each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to delete the column from the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to delete the column from the old values in the row LCR. Specify '*' to delete the column from both the old and new values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-81 for more information about this parameter.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the delete column declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the DELETE_COLUMN procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified column_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name and column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Function

Returns the tracking label for the current session.

See Also: SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure on page 159-165

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_SCN_MAPPING Procedure

This procedure gets information about the system change number (SCN) values to use for Oracle Streams capture and apply processes in an Oracle Streams replication environment. This information can be used for the following purposes:

- To recover transactions after point-in-time recovery is performed on a source database in a multiple source Oracle Streams environment
- To run flashback queries for the corresponding SCN at a source database and destination database in an Oracle Streams single source replication environment

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about point-in-time recovery and flashback queries in an Oracle Streams replication environment

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_SCN_MAPPING(
   apply_name             IN  VARCHAR2,
   src_pit_scn            IN  NUMBER,
   dest_instantiation_scn OUT NUMBER,
   dest_start_scn         OUT NUMBER,
   dest_skip_txn_ids      OUT DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_ARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 159–16 GET_SCN_MAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_name	Name of the apply process which applies logical change records (LCRs) from the source database. The procedure raises an error if the specified apply process does not exist.
src_pit_scn	The SCN at the source database. For point-in-time recovery, specify the point-in-time recovery SCN at the source database. If the specified SCN is greater than the source commit SCN of the last applied transaction, then NULL is returned for both dest_start_scn and dest_instantiation_scn. In this case, no values can be returned for these parameters because the corresponding transaction has not been applied at the destination database yet.
dest_instantiation_scn	The SCN at the destination database that corresponds to the specified src_pit_scn at the source database. For point-in-time recovery, use this value for the instantiation SCNs at the source database during recovery.
dest_start_scn	For point in time recovery, the SCN to use for the start_scn parameter for the recovery capture process.

Table 159–16 (Cont.) GET_SCN_MAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dest_skip_txn_ids	Transaction IDs of transactions that were skipped at the dest_instantiation_scn because the apply process was applying nondependent transactions out of order. For point in time recovery, these transaction IDs should be ignored by the recovery apply process. This parameter is relevant only if the commit_serialization for the apply process that applied these transactions was set to DEPENDENT_TRANSACTIONS, and the transactions were applied out of order.

GET_TAG Function

This function gets the binary tag for all redo entries generated by the current session.

See Also:

- "SET_TAG Procedure" on page 159-170
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG
RETURN RAW;
```

Examples

The following example illustrates how to display the current logical change record (LCR) tag as output:

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
   raw_tag RAW(2000);
BEGIN
   raw_tag := DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG();
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Tag Value = ' || RAWTOHEX(raw_tag));
END;
/
```

You can also display the value by querying the `DUAL` view:

```
SELECT DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG FROM DUAL;
```

KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which keeps a list of columns in a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule. The transformation deletes columns that are not in the list from the row LCR.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.

This procedure is overloaded. The `column_list` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the `column_table` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY`. These parameters enable you to enter the list of columns in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- The `KEEP_COLUMNS` procedure supports the same data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes.
- The `KEEP_COLUMNS` procedure is useful when you want to keep a relatively small number of columns in a row LCR. To keep most of the columns in a row LCR and delete a relatively small number of columns, consider using the `DELETE_COLUMN` procedure in this package.
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. These row LCRs can be captured by a capture process, captured by a synchronous capture, or constructed and enqueued by an application. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations and about the data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes
- "DELETE_COLUMN Procedure" on page 159-80

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.KEEP_COLUMNS(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_list   IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '*',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ADD');

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.KEEP_COLUMNS(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_table  IN  DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '*',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–17 KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name*.]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_name	The name of the table for which the columns are kept in the row LCR, specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
column_list	The names of the columns kept for each row LCR that satisfies the rule. Specify a comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. The transformation removes columns that are not in the list from the row LCR. If this parameter is set to NULL, and the column_table parameter is also set to NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
column_table	The names of the columns kept for each row LCR that satisfies the rule. Specify a PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a column. The first schema should be in position 1. The last position must be NULL. The transformation removes columns that are not in the table from the row LCR. If this parameter is set to NULL, and the column_list parameter is also set to NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to keep the columns in the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to keep the columns in the old values in the row LCR. Specify '*' to keep the columns in both the old and new values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-88 for more information about this parameter.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the keep columns declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_list, column_table, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the KEEP_COLUMNS procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	column_list/column_table	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.

table_name	column_list/column_table	step_number	Result
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified column_list/column_table and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified table_name and step_number fo the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified column_list/column_table for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified table_name and column_ list/column_table for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified table_name for the specified rul
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified table_name, column_ list/column_table, and step_number for the specified rule.

MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure

This procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that uses change handlers to record in a change table the data manipulation language (DML) changes made to a source table. Optionally, this procedure can also configure one-way replication of the table from the source database to the destination database. This procedure can either configure the environment directly, or it can generate a script that configures the environment.

A change handler is a special type of statement DML handler that tracks table changes and was created by either this `MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE` procedure or the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM.SET_CHANGE_HANDLER` procedure. Information about change handlers is stored in the `ALL_APPLY_CHANGE_HANDLERS` and `DBA_APPLY_CHANGE_HANDLERS` views.

The change table can reside in the same database as the source table or in a different database.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

Note: The environment configured by this procedure does not record or replicate data definition language (DDL) changes made to the source table.

See Also: "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE(
   change_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   source_table_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   column_type_list         IN VARCHAR2,
   extra_column_list        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'command_type, value_type',
   capture_values           IN VARCHAR2,
   options_string           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_name              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   perform_actions          IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   capture_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name         IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_database          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_database     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   keep_change_columns_only IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   execute_lcr              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–18 MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
change_table_name	The table that records changes to the source table. This table is maintained by Oracle Streams after configuration. Specify the table as [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. For example, hr.jobs_change_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If the specified table exists at the database specified in the destination_database parameter, then the procedure raises an error.
source_table_name	The table at the source database for which changes are recorded. Specify the table as [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. For example, hr.jobs. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
column_type_list	A list of the columns in the source table for which changes are recorded. Specify a comma-delimited list of each column and its datatype. For example, specify the following for the hr.jobs table: job_id VARCHAR2(10), job_title VARCHAR2(35), min_salary NUMBER(6), max_salary NUMBER(6) The procedure automatically places columns with names that match the source database columns into an unconditional supplemental log group. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 159–18 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
extra_column_list	A comma-delimited list of metadata attributes to include in the change table. The column name for a metadata attribute is in the format of attribute name followed by a $ symbol. For example, the source_database_name attribute is stored in the source_database_name$ column in the change table. The following metadata attributes can be included: ■ value_type ■ source_database_name ■ command_type ■ object_owner ■ object_name ■ tag ■ transaction_id ■ scn ■ commit_scn ■ compatible ■ instance_number ■ message_number ■ row_text ■ row_id ■ serial# ■ session# ■ source_time ■ thread# ■ tx_name ■ username All of these metadata attributes, except for value_type and message_number, are row LCR attributes that can be stored in row LCRs. For information about LCR attributes, see *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*. The value_type$ column in the change table contains either OLD or NEW, depending on whether the column value is the original column value or the new column value, respectively. The message_number$ column in the change table contains the identification number of each row LCR within a transaction. The message number increases incrementally for each row LCR within a transaction and shows the order of the row LCRs within a transaction. The procedure automatically configures the source database to place information about extra attributes, such as serial#, into the redo log so that the information can be captured and recorded.

Table 159–18 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_values	Specify which values to capture when update operations are performed on the source table: ■ old - To capture the original values for an updated column in the source table ■ new - To capture the new values for an updated column in the source table ■ * - To capture both the original and the new values for an updated column in the source table If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** For insert operations, only new column values can be captured. For delete operations, only old column values can be captured.
options_string	String of options passed to the CREATE TABLE statement that creates the change table. The string is appended to the generated CREATE TABLE statement after the closing parenthesis that defines the columns of the table. The string must be syntactically correct.
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to configure the environment. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to configure the replication environment directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure performs the actions to configure the replication environment directly and does not generate a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.
perform_actions	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to configure the environment directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to configure the environment directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object

Table 159–18 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_name	The name of each capture process configured to capture changes. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing capture process, then the procedure uses the existing capture process and adds the rules for capturing changes to the database to the positive capture process rule set. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each capture process it creates. **Note:** The capture process name cannot be altered after the capture process is created.
propagation_name	The name of the propagation configured to propagate changes from the source database to the destination database. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing propagation, then the procedure uses the existing propagation and adds the rules for propagating changes to the positive propagation rule set. If NULL, then the system generates a name for the propagation. If non-NULL and the source_database and destination_database are set to the same value, then this procedure raises an error. When the capture process and apply process are in the same database, they can use the same queue, and a propagation is not needed. **Note:** The propagation name cannot be altered after the propagation is created.
apply_name	The name of each apply process configured to apply changes. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing apply process, then the procedure uses the existing apply process and adds the rules for applying changes to the positive apply process rule set. The specified name must not match the name of an existing messaging client at the destination database. If NULL, then the system generates a name for the apply process. When set to NULL, no apply process that applies changes from the source database can exist on the destination database. If an apply process that applies changes from the source database exists at the destination database, then specify a non-NULL value for this parameter. **Note:** The apply process name cannot be altered after the apply process is created.
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.

Table 159–18 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.
keep_change_columns_only	If TRUE, then this procedure adds a declarative rule-based transformation which keeps the list of columns specified in the column_type_list parameter. The columns that are not specified in the column_type_list parameter are removed from each row LCR captured by the capture process. If FALSE, then this procedure does not create a declarative rule-based transformation, and all of the columns in the row LCRs are kept. Specify FALSE when information about columns that are not included in the column_type_list parameter is needed at the destination database. For example, if the execute_lcr parameter is set to TRUE and the configuration will replicate all of the columns in a source table, but the column_type_list parameter includes a subset of these columns, then the keep_change_columns_only parameter should be set to FALSE. **Note:** When this parameter is set to TRUE, a declarative rule-based transformation is always created, even if the column_type_list includes all of the columns in the source table.
execute_lcr	If TRUE, then this procedure creates a change handler that executes each row LCR at the destination database. If FALSE, then the row LCRs are not executed at the destination database.

Usage Notes

The following are usage notes for this procedure:

Types of Oracle Streams Environments Configured by the Procedure

This procedure can configure the following types of Oracle Streams environments:

- **Local capture and apply on one database:** Specify the same global name for the source_database and the destination_database parameter.
- **Local capture and remote apply:** Specify the global name of the local database for the source_database parameter and a remote database for the destination_database parameter.
- **Downstream capture and local apply:** Specify a remote database for the source_database parameter and the local database for the destination_database parameter.
- **Downstream capture and remote apply:** Specify a remote database for the source_database parameter and a remote database for the destination_database parameter.

Optional One-Way Replication With This Procedure

To configure one-way replication of the table, in addition to recording changes to the table, set the `execute_lcr` parameter to `TRUE`. The apply process executes each row LCR and applies the change in the row LCR to the replica table at the destination database. In this case, ensure that the source table is instantiated at the destination database before running the procedure. Specifically, the source table must be prepared for instantiation, the instantiation SCN must be set for the replica table at the destination database, and, usually, the source table replica table should be consistent.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Statement DML Handlers, the Change Table, and Row LCR Execution

This procedure configures one or more statement DML handlers that perform the following actions:

- Record changes in the change table using the information in row LCRs.
- Execute row LCRs if the `execute_lcr` parameter is set to `TRUE`.

The procedure ensures that the row LCRs contain the required attributes to record the changes specified in the `capture_type_list`, `extra_column_list`, and `capture_values` parameters. The procedure adds the statement DML handlers to the apply process specified in the `apply_name` parameter.

See Also: Chapter 162, "DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM"

MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure

This procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes at the database level between two databases. This procedure can either configure the environment directly, or it can generate a script that configures the environment.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

Note:

- This procedure automatically excludes database objects that are not supported by Oracle Streams from the replication environment by adding rules to the negative rule set of each capture and apply process. Query the DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.
- If the bi_directional parameter is set to TRUE, then do not allow data manipulation language (DML) or data definition language (DDL) changes to the destination database while the MAINTAIN_GLOBAL procedure, or the script generated by the procedure, is running. This restriction does not apply to the source database.
- A capture process never captures changes in the SYS, SYSTEM, or CTXSYS schemas. This procedure does not configure replication for these schemas.

See Also: "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_GLOBAL(
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dump_file_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_table          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_table            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_user             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_ddl                  IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   instantiation                IN INTEGER   DEFAULT
```

```
                                                    DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters

Table 159–19 MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file is placed. This file remains in this directory after the procedure completes. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. In this case, specify NULL for the source_directory_object parameter. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file is transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. In these cases, specify NULL for the destination_directory_object parameter. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.

Table 159–19 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
dump_file_name	The name of the Data Pump export dump file. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory for the source_directory_object or destination_directory_object parameter, then the procedure raises an error. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL, then the export dump file name is generated by the system. In this case, the export dump file name is expat*nn*.dmp, where *nn* is a sequence number. The sequence number is increased to produce an export dump file with a unique name in the source directory.
log_file	The name of the Data Pump export log file. This log file is placed in the same directory as the Data Pump export dump file. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL, then the log file name is the same name as the export dump file name with an extension of .clg.

Table 159–19 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
instantiation	Specify whether to perform instantiation and, if instantiation is performed, the type of instantiation: DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL performs a full Data Pump export at the source database and a Data Pump import of the export dump file at the destination database. The instantiation SCN is set for the shared database objects during import. If the instantiation parameter is set to this value, then the user who runs this procedure must have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package. DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL_NETWORK performs a full network Data Pump import. A network import means that Data Pump performs the import without using an export dump file. The instantiation SCN is set for the shared database objects during import. If the instantiation parameter is set to this value, then a database link from the destination database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE does not perform an instantiation. This setting is valid only if the perform_actions parameter is set to FALSE, and the procedure generates a configuration script. In this case, the configuration script does not perform an instantiation and does not set the instantiation SCN for each shared database object. Instead, you must perform the instantiation and ensure that instantiation SCN values are set properly. If you use the RMAN DUPLICATE or CONVERT DATABASE command for database instantiation, then the destination database cannot be the capture database. If this parameter is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_FULL_NETWORK, then the database objects being instantiated must exist at the source database. If an instantiated database object does not exist at the destination database, then it is imported at the destination database, including its supplemental logging specifications from the source database and its supporting database objects, such as indexes and triggers. However, if the database object exists at the destination database before instantiation, then it is not imported at the destination database. Therefore, the supplemental logging specifications from the source database are not specified for the database object at the destination database, and the supporting database objects are not imported.

MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure

This procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified schemas between two databases. This procedure can either configure the environment directly, or it can generate a script that configures the environment.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

This procedure is overloaded. One `schema_names` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the other `schema_names` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY`. These parameters enable you to enter the list of schemas in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- This procedure automatically excludes database objects that are not supported by Oracle Streams in the schemas from the replication environment by adding rules to the negative rule set of each capture and apply process. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.
- If the `bi_directional` parameter is set to `TRUE`, then do not allow data manipulation language (DML) or data definition language (DDL) changes to the shared database objects at the destination database while the `MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS` procedure, or the script generated by the procedure, is running. This restriction does not apply to the source database.

See Also: "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS(
   schema_names                 IN VARCHAR2,
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dump_file_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_table          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_table            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_user             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
```

```
   include_ddl                 IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   instantiation               IN INTEGER   DEFAULT
                                            DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS(
   schema_names                IN DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   source_directory_object     IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database             IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database        IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions             IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dump_file_name              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name                IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_table         IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_name          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_user          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_table           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_name            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_user            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_ddl                 IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   instantiation               IN INTEGER   DEFAULT
                                            DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters that are not in Table 159–20

Table 159–20 MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_names	The schemas to be configured for replication and maintained by Oracle Streams after configuration. The schemas can be specified in the following ways: ■ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2 ■ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a schema. The first schema should be in position 1. The last position must be NULL. This procedure raises an error in any of the following cases: ■ When a specified schema does not exist at the source database ■ When the schema_names parameter is set to NULL

Table 159–20 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file is placed. This file remains in this directory after the procedure completes. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. In this case, specify NULL for the source_directory_object parameter. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file is transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. In this case, specify NULL for the destination_directory_object parameter. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.

Table 159–20 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
dump_file_name	The name of the Data Pump export dump file. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory for the source_directory_object or destination_directory_object parameter, then the procedure raises an error. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA, then the export dump file name is generated by the system. In this case, the export dump file name is expat*nn*.dmp, where *nn* is a sequence number. The sequence number is increased to produce an export dump file with a unique name in the source directory.
capture_queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the source database. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.
log_file	The name of the Data Pump export log file. This log file is placed in the same directory as the Data Pump export dump file. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA, then the log file name is the same name as the export dump file name with an extension of .clg.

Table 159–20 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
instantiation	Specify whether to perform instantiation and, if instantiation is performed, the type of instantiation: DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA performs a full Data Pump export at the source database and a Data Pump import of the export dump file at the destination database. The instantiation SCN is set for the shared database objects during import. If the instantiation parameter is set to this value, then the user who runs this procedure must have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package. DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA_NETWORK performs a full network Data Pump import. A network import means that Data Pump performs the import without using an export dump file. The instantiation SCN is set for the shared database objects during import. If the instantiation parameter is set to this value, then a database link from the destination database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE does not perform an instantiation. This setting is valid only if the perform_actions parameter is set to FALSE, and the procedure generates a configuration script. In this case, the configuration script does not perform an instantiation and does not set the instantiation SCN for each shared database object. Instead, you must perform the instantiation and ensure that instantiation SCN values are set properly. If this parameter is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_SCHEMA_NETWORK, then the database objects being instantiated must exist at the source database, and the tablespaces that contain the schemas must exist at the destination database. If an instantiated database object does not exist at the destination database, then it is imported at the destination database, including its supplemental logging specifications from the source database and its supporting database objects, such as indexes and triggers. However, if the database object exists at the destination database before instantiation, then it is not imported at the destination database. Therefore, the supplemental logging specifications from the source database are not specified for the database object at the destination database, and the supporting database objects are not imported.

MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure clones a simple tablespace from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain this tablespace at both databases. This procedure can either perform these actions directly, or it can generate a script that performs these actions. Run this procedure at the source database.

Note: This procedure is deprecated. It is replaced by the `MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS` procedure.

See Also:

- "Deprecated Subprograms" on page 159-4
- MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure on page 159-111

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE(
   tablespace_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   setup_streams                IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–21 MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tablespace_name`	The local simple tablespace to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespace must exist at the source database, but it must not exist at the destination database. A directory object must exist for the directory that contains the datafile for the tablespace. The user who invokes this procedure must have `READ` privilege on this directory object. The directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`source_directory_object`	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafile for the cloned tablespace are placed. These files remain in this directory after the procedure completes. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.

Table 159–21 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafile for the cloned tablespace are transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. A database link from the source database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
setup_streams	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to maintain the tablespace directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to maintain the tablespace directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the setup_streams parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to maintain the specified tablespace. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the setup_streams parameter is TRUE, then this procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to maintain the specified tablespace directly. If NULL and the setup_streams parameter is TRUE, then this procedure does not generate a script and performs the actions to maintain the specified tablespace directly. If NULL and the setup_streams parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.

Table 159–21 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bi_directional	Specify TRUE to configure bi-directional replication between the current database and the database specified in destination_database. Both databases are configured as source and destination databases, a capture and apply process is configured at both databases, and propagations are configured between the databases to propagate messages. Specify FALSE to configure one way replication from the current database to the database specified in destination_database. A capture process is configured at the current database, a propagation is configured to propagate messages from the current database to the destination database, and an apply process is configured at the destination database.

Usage Notes

The specified tablespace must be a simple tablespace. A simple tablespace is a single, self-contained tablespace that uses only one datafile. A self-contained tablespace has no references from the tablespace pointing outside of the tablespace. For example, if an index in the tablespace is for a table in a different tablespace, then the tablespace is not self-contained. This procedure cannot be used for a non simple tablespace or a set of tablespaces.

DDL Changes Not Maintained

This procedure does not configure the Oracle Streams environment to maintain DDL changes to the tablespace nor to the database objects in the tablespace. For example, the Oracle Streams environment is not configured to replicate ALTER TABLESPACE statements on the tablespace, nor is it configured to replicate ALTER TABLE statements on tables in the tablespace. You can configure the Oracle Streams environment to maintain DDL changes manually or modify generated scripts to achieve this.

Additional Documentation for this Procedure

The following documentation applies to the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure:

- Automatic Platform Conversion on page 159-17
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Requirements for Running this Procedure

Meet the following requirements when run the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure:

- Run the procedure at the source database.
- Both databases must be open during configuration. If the procedure is generating a script only, then the database specified in the destination_database parameter does not need to be open when you run the procedure, but both databases must be open when you run the generated script.
- Grant the user who runs this procedure the DBA role. This user must have the necessary privileges to complete the following actions:
  - Create ANYDATA queues, capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.
  - Specify supplemental logging

  - Run subprograms in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM and DBMS_AQADM packages.
  - Access the database specified in the destination_database parameter through a database link. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the destination database.
  - Run subprograms in the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM package
  - The necessary privileges to run the CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM package at the source database. See CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-18 for the list of required privileges.
  - The necessary privileges to run the ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM package at the destination database. See ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-11 for the list of required privileges.

  To ensure that the user who runs this procedure has the necessary privileges, you should configure an Oracle Streams administrator at each database, and each database link should be should be created in the Oracle Streams administrator's schema.

  Typically, the DBA role can be revoked from the user, if necessary, after the configuration is complete.

- If the bi_directional parameter is set to TRUE, then the corresponding user at the destination database must be able to use a database link to access the source database. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the source database.
- Each specified directory object must be created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY, and the user who invokes this procedure must have READ and WRITE privilege on each one.
- The databases configured by this procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later databases when this procedure is run under the following conditions:
  - The procedure is run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later database.
  - The setup_streams parameter is set to TRUE to configure the Oracle Streams replication environment directly.
- The databases configured by this procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 or later databases when this procedure is run under the following conditions:
  - The procedure is run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later database.
  - The setup_streams parameter is set to FALSE in this procedure, and the replication environment is configured with a generated script.

  If the script configures an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 database, then the script must be modified so that it does not configure features that are available only in Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later, such as queue-to-queue propagation.
- If the procedure is run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 database, then the databases configured by the procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 or later databases.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Default Values for Parameters Excluded From the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure uses the default values for the parameters in the MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES procedure that do not exist in the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure. For example, this procedure creates a capture process at the source database named capture, because that is the default value for the capture_name parameter in the MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES procedure.

> **See Also:** MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 159-119

Configuration Progress and Recoverability

When this procedure is run with the setup_streams parameter set to TRUE, metadata about its configuration actions is recorded in the following data dictionary views: DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT, DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS, DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS, and DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS. If the procedure stops because it encounters an error, then you can use the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure to complete the configuration after you correct the conditions that caused the error.

Note: When this procedure is run with the setup_streams parameter set to FALSE, these views are not populated. Also, the views are not populated when a script generated by this procedure is run.

> **See Also:** "RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure" on page 159-147

MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure

This procedure clones a simple tablespace from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain this tablespace at both databases. This procedure can either perform these actions directly, or it can generate a script that performs these actions.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

Note:

- This procedure automatically excludes database objects that are not supported by Oracle Streams in the tablespace from the replication environment by adding rules to the negative rule set of each capture and apply process. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.
- This procedure replaces the deprecated `MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE` procedure.

See Also: "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS(
   tablespace_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters that are not in Table 159–22

Table 159–22 MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	The local simple tablespace to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespace must exist at the source database, but it must not exist at the destination database. A directory object must exist for the directory that contains the datafile for the tablespace. The user who invokes this procedure must have READ privilege on this directory object. The directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
source_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafile for the cloned tablespace are placed. These files remain in this directory after the procedure completes. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafile for the cloned tablespace are transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.

Table 159–22 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Usage Notes

The specified tablespace must be a simple tablespace. A simple tablespace is a single, self-contained tablespace that uses only one datafile. A self-contained tablespace has no references from the tablespace pointing outside of the tablespace. For example, if an index in the tablespace is for a table in a different tablespace, then the tablespace is not self-contained. This procedure cannot be used for a non simple tablespace or a set of tablespaces.

DDL Changes Not Maintained

This procedure does not configure the Oracle Streams environment to maintain DDL changes to the tablespace nor to the database objects in the tablespace. For example, the Oracle Streams environment is not configured to replicate ALTER TABLESPACE statements on the tablespace, nor is it configured to replicate ALTER TABLE statements on tables in the tablespace. You can configure the Oracle Streams environment to maintain DDL changes manually or modify generated scripts to achieve this.

Additional Privileges Required by the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure

In addition to the required privileges described in "Requirements for Running These Procedures" on page 159-17, the user who runs the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS procedure must have the necessary privileges to complete the following actions:

- Run subprograms in the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM package
- The necessary privileges to run the CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM package at the source database. See CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-18 for the list of required privileges.
- The necessary privileges to run the ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM package at the destination database. See ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-11 for the list of required privileges.

Default Values for Parameters Excluded From the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure

This procedure uses the default values for the parameters in the MAINTAIN_TTS procedure that do not exist in the MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS procedure. For example, this procedure automatically generates the capture process name, because NULL is the default value for the capture_name parameter in the MAINTAIN_TTS procedure, and the procedure generates the capture process name when NULL is specified for capture_name.

See Also: MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure on page 159-126

MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure

This procedure configures an Oracle Streams environment that replicates changes to specified tables between two databases. This procedure can either configure the environment directly, or it can generate a script that configures the environment.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

This procedure is overloaded. One `table_names` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the other `table_names` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY`. These parameters enable you to enter the list of tables in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note: If the `bi_directional` parameter is set to `TRUE`, then do not allow data manipulation language (DML) or data definition language (DDL) changes to the shared database objects at the destination database while the `MAINTAIN_TABLES` procedure, or the script generated by the procedure, is running. This restriction does not apply to the source database.

See Also: "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_TABLES(
   table_names                  IN VARCHAR2,
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dump_file_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_table          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_table            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_user             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_ddl                  IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   instantiation                IN INTEGER   DEFAULT
                                          DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE);

DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_TABLES(
   table_names                  IN DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
```

```
perform_actions              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
dump_file_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
capture_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
capture_queue_table          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
capture_queue_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
capture_queue_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
propagation_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
apply_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
apply_queue_table            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
apply_queue_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
apply_queue_user             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
log_file                     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
include_ddl                  IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
instantiation                IN INTEGER   DEFAULT
                                          DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters that are not in Table 159–23

Table 159–23 MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_names	The tables to be configured for replication and maintained by Oracle Streams after configuration. The tables can be specified in the following ways: ■ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2 ■ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a table. The first table should be in position 1. The last position must be NULL. Each table should be specified as [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. This procedure raises an error in any of the following cases: ■ When a specified table does not exist at the source database ■ When the table_names parameter is set to NULL

Table 159–23 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file is placed. This file remain in this directory after the procedure completes. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. In this case, specify NULL for the source_directory_object parameter. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file is transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. In this case, specify NULL for the destination_directory_object parameter. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.

Table 159–23 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
dump_file_name	The name of the Data Pump export dump file. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory for the source_directory_object or destination_directory_object parameter, then the procedure raises an error. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE, then the export dump file name is generated by the system. In this case, the export dump file name is expat*nn*.dmp, where *nn* is a sequence number. The sequence number is increased to produce an export dump file with a unique name in the source directory.
capture_queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the source database. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.
log_file	The name of the Data Pump export log file. This log file is placed in the same directory as the Data Pump export dump file. This parameter is ignored if instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE_NETWORK or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE. If NULL and instantiation is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE, then the log file name is the same name as the export dump file name with an extension of .clg.

Table 159–23 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
instantiation	Specify whether to perform instantiation and, if instantiation is performed, the type of instantiation: DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE performs a full Data Pump export at the source database and a Data Pump import of the export dump file at the destination database. If the instantiation parameter is set to this value, then the user who runs this procedure must have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package. DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE_NETWORK performs a full network Data Pump import. A network import means that Data Pump performs the import without using an export dump file. If the instantiation parameter is set to this value, then a database link from the destination database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_NONE does not perform an instantiation. This setting is valid only if the perform_actions parameter is set to FALSE, and the procedure generates a configuration script. In this case, the configuration script does not perform an instantiation and does not set the instantiation SCN for each shared database object. Instead, you must perform the instantiation and ensure that instantiation SCN values are set properly. If this parameter is set to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.INSTANTIATION_TABLE_NETWORK, then the tables being instantiated must exist at the source database, and the tablespaces that contain the tables must exist at the destination database. If an instantiated database object does not exist at the destination database, then it is imported at the destination database, including its supplemental logging specifications from the source database and its supporting database objects, such as indexes and triggers. However, if the database object exists at the destination database before instantiation, then it is not imported at the destination database. Therefore, the supplemental logging specifications from the source database are not specified for the database object at the destination database, and the supporting database objects are not imported. Also, if an instantiated table does not exist at the destination database, then this procedure sets the instantiation SCN for the table. However, if an instantiated table exist at the destination database before instantiation, then this procedure does not set the instantiation SCN for the table. In this case, you must set the instantiation SCN for the table manually after the procedure completes.

MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure

This procedure clones a set of tablespaces from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain these tablespaces at both databases. This procedure can either perform these actions directly, or it can generate a script that performs these actions. Run this procedure at the source database.

Note: This procedure is deprecated. It is replaced by the `MAINTAIN_TTS` procedure.

See Also:

- "Deprecated Subprograms" on page 159-4
- MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure on page 159-126

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES(
   tablespace_names              IN DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.TABLESPACE_SET,
   source_directory_object       IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database          IN VARCHAR2,
   setup_streams                 IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object       IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dump_file_name                IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_table            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue_table',
   source_queue_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   source_queue_user             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   destination_queue_table       IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue_table',
   destination_queue_name        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   destination_queue_user        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'capture',
   propagation_name              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name                    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional                IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_ddl                   IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–24 MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_names	The local tablespace set to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespaces in the tablespace set must exist at the source database, but these tablespaces must not exist at the destination database. A directory object must exist for each directory that contains the datafiles for the tablespace set. The user who invokes this procedure must have READ privilege on these directory objects. The directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **See Also:** TABLESPACE_SET Table Type on page 164-9
source_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafiles that comprise the cloned tablespace set are placed. These files remain in this directory after the procedure completes. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafiles that comprise the cloned tablespace set are transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. A database link from the source database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 159–24 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
setup_streams	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to maintain the tablespaces directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to maintain the tablespaces directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the setup_streams parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to maintain the specified tablespace set. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the setup_streams parameter is TRUE, then this procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to maintain the specified tablespace directly. If NULL and the setup_streams parameter is TRUE, then this procedure does not generate a script and performs the actions to maintain the specified tablespace set directly. If NULL and the setup_streams parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
dump_file_name	The name of the Data Pump export dump file that contains the specified tablespace set. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory for the source_directory_object or destination_directory_object parameter, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, then the export dump file name is generated by the system. In this case, the export dump file name is expat*nn*.dmp, where *nn* is a sequence number. The sequence number is increased to produce an export dump file with a unique name in the source directory.
source_queue_table	The name of the queue table for the queue at the source database, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

Table 159–24 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the queue at the source database that will function as the ANYDATA queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the queue table owner is the default. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue.
source_queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the source database. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.
destination_queue_table	The name of the queue table for the queue at the destination database, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the queue at the destination database that will function as the ANYDATA queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the queue table owner is the default. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue.
destination_queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue at the destination database. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.
capture_name	The name of each capture process configured to capture changes to the database objects in the tablespace set. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing capture process, then the procedure uses the existing capture process and adds the rules for capturing changes to the database objects in the tablespace set to the positive capture process rule set. **Note:** The capture process name cannot be altered after the capture process is created.

Table 159–24 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of each propagation configured to propagate changes to the database objects in the tablespace set. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing propagation, then the procedure uses the existing propagation and adds the rules for propagating changes to the database objects in the tablespace set to the positive propagation rule set. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each propagation it creates. **Note:** The propagation name cannot be altered after the propagation is created.
apply_name	The name of each apply process configured to apply changes to the database objects in the tablespace set. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing apply process, then the procedure uses the existing apply process and adds the rules for applying changes to the database objects in the tablespace set to the positive apply process rule set. The specified name must not match the name of an existing messaging client at the destination database. If NULL, then the system generates a name for each apply process it creates. **Note:** The apply process name cannot be altered after the apply process is created.
log_file	The name of the Data Pump export log file. This log file is placed in the same directory as the Data Pump export dump file. If NULL, then the log file name is the same name as the export dump file name with an extension of .clg.
bi_directional	Specify TRUE to configure bi-directional replication between the current database and the database specified in destination_database. Both databases are configured as source and destination databases, a capture and apply process is configured at both databases, and propagations are configured between the databases to propagate messages. Specify FALSE to configure one way replication from the current database to the database specified in destination_database. A capture process is configured at the current database, a propagation is configured to propagate messages from the current database to the destination database, and an apply process is configured at the destination database.
include_ddl	Specify TRUE to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment that maintains both DML and DDL changes. Specify FALSE to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment that maintains DML changes only. When this parameter is set to FALSE, DDL changes, such as ALTER TABLE, will not be replicated.

Usage Notes

The specified set of tablespaces must be self-contained. In this context "self-contained" means that there are no references from inside the set of tablespaces pointing outside of the set of tablespaces. For example, if a partitioned table is partially contained in the set of tablespaces, then the set of tablespaces is not self-contained.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about self-contained tablespace sets

Additional Documentation for this Procedure

The following documentation applies to the `MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES` procedure:

- Automatic Platform Conversion on page 159-17
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Requirements for Running this Procedure

Meet the following requirements when run the `MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES` procedure:

- Run the procedure at the source database.
- Both databases must be open during configuration. If the procedure is generating a script only, then the database specified in the `destination_database` parameter does not need to be open when you run the procedure, but both databases must be open when you run the generated script.
- The user who runs this procedure should be granted the `DBA` role. This user must have the necessary privileges to complete the following actions:
  - Create `ANYDATA` queues, capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.
  - Specify supplemental logging
  - Run subprograms in the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` and `DBMS_AQADM` packages.
  - Access the database specified in the `destination_database` parameter through a database link. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the destination database.
  - Run subprograms in the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM` package
  - The necessary privileges to run the `CLONE_TABLESPACES` procedure in the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM` package at the source database. See CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-20 for the list of required privileges.
  - The necessary privileges to run the `ATTACH_TABLESPACES` procedure in the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM` package at the destination database. See ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-13 for the list of required privileges.

  To ensure that the user who runs this procedure has the necessary privileges, you should configure an Oracle Streams administrator at each database, and each database link should be should be created in the Oracle Streams administrator's schema.
- If the `bi_directional` parameter is set to `TRUE`, then the corresponding user at the destination database must be able to use a database link to access the source database. This database link should have the same name as the global name of the source database.

- Each specified directory object must be created using the SQL statement `CREATE DIRECTORY`, and the user who invokes this procedure must have `READ` and `WRITE` privilege on each one.
- The databases configured by this procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later databases when this procedure is run under the following conditions:
  - The procedure is run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later database.
  - The `setup_streams` parameter is set to `TRUE` to configure the Oracle Streams replication environment directly.
- The databases configured by this procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 or later databases when this procedure is run under the following conditions:
  - The procedure is run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later database.
  - The `setup_streams` parameter is set to `FALSE` in this procedure, and the replication environment is configured with a generated script.

  If the script configures an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 database, then the script must be modified so that it does not configure features that are available only in Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later, such as queue-to-queue propagation.
- If the procedure is run at an Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 database, then the databases configured by the procedure must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 1 or later databases.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Configuration Progress and Recoverability

When this procedure is run with the `setup_streams` parameter set to `TRUE`, metadata about its configuration actions is recorded in the following data dictionary views: `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT`, `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS`, `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS`, and `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS`. If the procedure stops because it encounters an error, then you can use the `RECOVER_OPERATION` procedure to complete the configuration after you correct the conditions that caused the error.

Note: When this procedure is run with the `setup_streams` parameter set to `FALSE`, these views are not populated. Also, the views are not populated when a script generated by this procedure is run.

See Also: "RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure" on page 159-147

MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure

This procedure clones a set of tablespaces from a source database at a destination database and uses Oracle Streams to maintain these tablespaces at both databases. This procedure can either perform these actions directly, or it can generate a script that performs these actions.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

Note:

- This procedure automatically excludes database objects that are not supported by Oracle Streams in the tablespaces from the replication environment by adding rules to the negative rule set of each capture and apply process. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.
- This procedure replaces the deprecated `MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES` procedure.

See Also: "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MAINTAIN_TTS(
   tablespace_names             IN DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.TABLESPACE_SET,
   source_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_directory_object IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database              IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   perform_actions              IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name                  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dump_file_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name                 IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_table          IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_queue_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   propagation_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_table            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_name             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   apply_queue_user             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   bi_directional               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_ddl                  IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters that are not in Table 159–25

Table 159–25 MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_names	The local tablespace set to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespaces in the tablespace set must exist at the source database, but these tablespaces must not exist at the destination database. A directory object must exist for each directory that contains the datafiles for the tablespace set. The user who invokes this procedure must have READ privilege on these directory objects. The directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **See Also:** TABLESPACE_SET Table Type on page 164-9
source_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the source database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafiles that comprise the cloned tablespace set are placed. These files remain in this directory after the procedure completes. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.
destination_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the computer system running the destination database into which the generated Data Pump export dump file and the datafiles that comprise the cloned tablespace set are transferred. If the source database and destination database run on the same computer system, then the source and destination directories must be different. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle ASM disk group.

Table 159–25 (Cont.) MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
dump_file_name	The name of the Data Pump export dump file that contains the specified tablespace set. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory for the source_directory_object or destination_directory_object parameter, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, then the export dump file name is generated by the system. In this case, the export dump file name is expat*nn*.dmp, where *nn* is a sequence number. The sequence number is increased to produce an export dump file with a unique name in the source directory.
log_file	The name of the Data Pump export log file. This log file is placed in the same directory as the Data Pump export dump file. If NULL, then the log file name is the same name as the export dump file name with an extension of .clg.

Usage Notes

The specified set of tablespaces must be self-contained. In this context "self-contained" means that there are no references from inside the set of tablespaces pointing outside of the set of tablespaces. For example, if a partitioned table is partially contained in the set of tablespaces, then the set of tablespaces is not self-contained.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about self-contained tablespace sets

Additional Privileges Required by the MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure

In addition to the required privileges described in "Requirements for Running These Procedures" on page 159-17, the user who runs the MAINTAIN_TTS procedure must have the necessary privileges to complete the following actions:

- Run subprograms in the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM` package
- The necessary privileges to run the `CLONE_TABLESPACES` procedure in the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM` package at the source database. See CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-20 for the list of required privileges.
- The necessary privileges to run the `ATTACH_TABLESPACES` procedure in the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACES_ADM` package at the destination database. See ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-13 for the list of required privileges.

MERGE_STREAMS Procedure

This procedure merges a stream that is flowing from one capture process with a stream that is flowing from another capture process.

Typically, this procedure is used to merge two streams that were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure in this package. The SPLIT_STREAMS procedure clones components of the original stream when it splits the streams. Therefore, the information in this section uses the following terminology:

- The stream before it was split off has the original queue, original capture process, and original propagation.
- The stream that was split off by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure has a cloned queue, cloned capture process, and cloned propagation.

This procedure is called by the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure. The MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure determines whether the streams are within a user-specified merge threshold so that the streams can be merged safely. If the streams are not within the merge threshold, then the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure does nothing. Typically, it is best to run the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure instead of running the MERGE_STREAMS procedure directly.

However, you can choose to run the MERGE_STREAMS procedure directly when the following conditions are met:

- The problem at the destination of the split stream has been corrected, and the destination queue can accept changes.
- The cloned capture process used by the split stream is started and is capturing changes.
- The apply process at the destination database is applying the changes captured by the cloned capture process.
- The CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME in the GV$STREAMS_CAPTURE view of the cloned capture process has caught up to, or nearly caught up to, the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the original capture process. The cloned capture process might never completely catch up to the original capture process. Therefore, you can merge the split stream when the cloned capture process has nearly caught up to the original capture process.

The MERGE_STREAMS procedure performs the following actions:

1. Stops the cloned capture process.
2. Stops the original capture process.
3. Copies the cloned propagation back to the original propagation. The propagation has the same name as the original propagation after it is copied back.
4. Starts the original capture process from the lower SCN value of these two SCN values:
   - The acknowledged SCN of the cloned propagation.
   - The lowest acknowledged SCN of the other propagations that propagate changes captured by the original capture process.

   When the original capture process is started, it might recapture changes that it already captured, or it might capture changes that were already captured by the cloned capture process. In either case, the relevant apply processes will discard any duplicate changes they receive.

5. Drops the cloned propagation.
6. Drops the cloned capture process.
7. Drops the cloned queue.

See Also:

- MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure on page 159-133
- SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-173

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MERGE_STREAMS(
   cloned_propagation_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   propagation_name         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name               IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   perform_actions          IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–26 MERGE_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cloned_propagation_name	The name of the cloned propagation used by the stream that was split off from the original stream using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. The name of the cloned propagation also identifies the cloned queue and capture process used by the cloned propagation. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
propagation_name	The name of the propagation that is merged back to the original stream. If NULL, then the name of the original propagation in the original stream is used. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value to use a name that is different from the original propagation name or if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-132 for more information. If a non-NULL value is specified, then an error is raised under either of the following conditions: ■ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter does not exist. ■ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter exists but is not used by a capture process.

Table 159–26 (Cont.) MERGE_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the queue that is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. If NULL, then the existing, original queue is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify the name of the existing queue used by the capture process that will capture changes in the merged stream. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-132 for more information.
perform_actions	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to merge the streams directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to merge the streams directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to merge the streams. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to split the stream directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure performs the actions to merge the streams directly and does not generate a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.

Usage Notes

You can use the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge two streams that were not split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Merging streams in this way can save resources and improve performance when a single database is running two or more capture processes.

The DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE view contains information about split and merge operations.

MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure

This procedure determines whether the original capture process and the cloned capture process are within the specified merge threshold. If they are within the merge threshold, then this procedure runs the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge the two streams.

Typically, this procedure is used to merge two streams that were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure in this package. The SPLIT_STREAMS procedure clones components of the original stream when it splits the streams. Therefore, the information in this section uses the following terminology:

- The stream before it was split off has the original queue, original capture process, and original propagation.
- The stream that was split off by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure has a cloned queue, cloned capture process, and cloned propagation.

If the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to a positive number in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams, then a merge job runs the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure automatically according to its schedule. The schedule name is specified for the schedule_name parameter, and the merge job name is specified for the merge_job_name parameter when the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure is run automatically. The merge job and its schedule were created by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure.

If the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to NULL or 0 (zero) in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams, then you can run the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure manually. In this case, it is not run automatically.

See Also:

- MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-130
- SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 159-173
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for instructions on using the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.MERGE_STREAMS_JOB(
   cloned_propagation_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   propagation_name               IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name                     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   merge_threshold                IN NUMBER,
   schedule_name                  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   merge_job_name                 IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–27 MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cloned_propagation_name	The name of the cloned propagation used by the stream that was split off from the original stream using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. The name of the cloned propagation also identifies the cloned queue and capture process used by the cloned propagation. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.

Table 159–27 (Cont.) MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation that is merged back to the original stream. If NULL, then the name of the original propagation in the original stream is used. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value to use a name that is different from the original propagation name or if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-134 for more information. If a non-NULL value is specified, then an error is raised under either of the following conditions: ▪ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter does not exist. ▪ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter exists but is not used by a capture process.
queue_name	The name of the queue that is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. If NULL, then the existing, original queue is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify the name of the existing queue used by the capture process that will capture changes in the merged stream. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-134 for more information.
merge_threshold	The merge threshold in seconds. The value of the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME column for each capture process in the GV$STREAMS_CAPTURE dynamic performance view determines whether the streams are merged. Specifically, if the difference, in seconds, between the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process and the original capture process is less than or equal to the value specified for this parameter, then this procedure runs the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge the streams. If the difference is greater than the value specified by this parameter, then this procedure does nothing.
schedule_name	The name of the schedule for the merge job. If NULL, then no schedule name is specified. Typically, you set this parameter to NULL when the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to NULL or 0 (zero) in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams. Specify NULL if you run this procedure manually.
merge_job_name	The name of the job that merges the streams. If NULL, then no merge job name is specified. Typically, you set this parameter to NULL when the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to NULL or 0 (zero) in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams. Specify NULL if you run this procedure manually.

Usage Notes

You can use the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure to merge two streams that were not split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Merging streams in this way can save

resources and improve performance when a single database is running two or more capture processes.

After the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure completes, you can query the DBA_CAPTURE and DBA_PROPAGATION views to determine whether the streams were merged. If the streams were merged, then the cloned capture process and cloned propagation do not appear in these views.

If the streams were merged and the schedule_name and merge_job_name parameters were non-NULL, then the specified schedule and merge job are deleted automatically.

The DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE view contains information about split and merge operations.

POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure

This procedure performs the actions required after instantiation to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

To complete the Oracle Streams replication configuration, follow these steps:

1. Run the `PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure at the source database.
2. Perform any necessary instantiation actions.
3. Run the `POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure at the source database.

Typically, the Oracle Streams replication environment configured using these steps serves one of the following purposes:

- Replicates changes to shared database objects to keep the database objects synchronized at different databases.
- Replicates changes to database objects during a database maintenance operation, such migrating a database to a different platform. In this case, use the `CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure to remove the replication environment after the maintenance operation is complete.

Attention: When the `POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure is run, the parameter values must match the parameter values specified when the corresponding `PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure was run, except for the values of the following parameters: `perform_actions`, `script_name`, `script_directory_object`, and `start_processes`.

Note: A capture process never captures changes in the `SYS`, `SYSTEM`, or `CTXSYS` schemas. This procedure does not configure replication for these schemas.

See Also:

- "PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure" on page 159-141
- "CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure" on page 159-76
- "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about setting up an Oracle Streams replication environment
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about completing database maintenance operations

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP(
   maintain_mode           IN VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_names        IN DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.TABLESPACE_SET,
```

```
  source_database         IN VARCHAR2,
  destination_database    IN VARCHAR2,
  perform_actions         IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT TRUE,
  script_name             IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  script_directory_object IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_name            IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_queue_table     IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_queue_name      IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_queue_user      IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  propagation_name        IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_name              IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_queue_table       IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_queue_name        IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_queue_user        IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  bi_directional          IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
  include_ddl             IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
  start_processes         IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
  instantiation_scn       IN NUMBER          DEFAULT NULL,
  exclude_schemas         IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  exclude_flags           IN BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters that are not in Table 159–28

Table 159–28 POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
maintain_mode	Specify one of the following: ■ GLOBAL to maintain the entire database by configuring replication between the local database and the database specified in the destination_database parameter ■ TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES to maintain a set of tablespaces by configuring replication between the local database and the database specified in the destination_database parameter
tablespace_names	If maintain_mode is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then specify the local tablespace set to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespaces in the tablespace set must exist at the source database, but these tablespaces must not exist at the destination database. Also, a directory object must exist for each directory that contains the datafiles for the tablespace set. The user who invokes this procedure must have READ privilege on these directory objects. If maintain_mode is set to GLOBAL, then specify an empty tablespace set. Regardless of the maintain_mode setting, an error is raised if the tablespace_names parameter is not set or is set to NULL. **See Also:** TABLESPACE_SET Table Type on page 164-9

Table 159–28 (Cont.) POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
start_processes	If TRUE, then the procedure starts each capture process and apply process. Any disabled capture or apply process created by the PRE_INSTANTITAION_SETUP procedure also is started. If FALSE, then the procedure does not start any capture processes or apply processes.
instantiation_scn	Specify the instantiation SCN for the database objects at the destination database if the instantiation SCN was not set during instantiation. The instantiation SCN is not set automatically during RMAN instantiations, but the correct instantiation SCN value should be determined during an RMAN instantiation. See the *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information. Specify NULL if the instantiation SCN was set for the database objects at the destination database during instantiation. The instantiation SCN can be set during export/import instantiations.
exclude_schemas	A comma-delimited list of schemas to exclude from the Oracle Streams configuration. Schema rules are added to the negative rule sets of each capture process to exclude these schemas. Specify an asterisk (*) to exclude all of the schemas in the database. If NULL, then the procedure does not exclude any schemas in the database. This parameter is valid only if the MAINTAIN_MODE parameter is set to GLOBAL. If the MAINTAIN_MODE parameter is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then the procedure ignores this parameter.
exclude_flags	Specify what is excluded from the replication configuration in the schemas specified by the exclude_schemas parameter. This parameter works the same way in the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP and POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedures. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-143 for the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure for more information.

Usage Notes

The following sections contain usage notes for this procedure.

Self-Contained Tablespace Sets

If the maintain_mode parameter is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then the specified set of tablespaces must be self-contained. In this context "self-contained" means that there are no references from inside the set of tablespaces pointing outside of the set of tablespaces. For example, if a partitioned table is partially contained in the set of tablespaces, then the set of tablespaces is not self-contained.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about self-contained tablespace sets

Destination Database Renamed During RMAN Database Instantiation

If the maintain_mode parameter is set to GLOBAL, then database instantiation is required before running the POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure. If the RMAN DUPLICATE or RMAN CONVERT DATABASE command is used for database instantiation, then the global name of the destination database can be renamed to the global name of the source database during instantiation. In this case, before you run the POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure, complete the following steps:

1. Rename the global name of the destination database back to the name specified in the destination_database parameter.
2. At the destination database, drop and re-create any loopback database links that existed on the source and were cloned on the destination database. For example, suppose the source database dbs1.net has a database link that refers to itself. Suppose the destination database is dbs2.net. At the destination database, drop and re-create this database link as a loopback database link that refers to itself (dbs2.net).
3. At the destination database, drop any database links that were cloned from the source database and are from the source database to the destination database. For example, if the source database is dbs1.net and the destination database is dbs2.net, then drop any database links on the destination database that are from dbs1.net to dbs2.net.
4. Create a database link from the destination database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database. The database link must be accessible to the Oracle Streams administrator at the destination database.

   This database link is required because the POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure runs the SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN procedure in the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package at the destination database, and the SET_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION_SCN procedure requires the database link. The instantiation SCN is set to the value specified in the instantiation_scn parameter of the POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure.

> **Note:** When the RMAN DUPLICATE or CONVERT DATABASE command is used for database instantiation, the destination database cannot be the capture database.

Oracle Streams Components Removed From the Destination Database

If the maintain_mode parameter is set to GLOBAL, then database instantiation is required before running the POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure. During database

instantiation, Oracle Streams components created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure, such as Oracle Streams clients and queues, can be copied from the source database to the destination database. The POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure removes the Stream components created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure from the destination database.

In some cases, rule sets and rules created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure might not be removed from the destination database. The POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure does not associate these rule sets and rules with any Stream clients in the destination database. Optionally, you can remove these rule sets and rules from the destination database after the POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure, or the script generated by the procedure, completes.

Note: The POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure only removes Oracle Streams components that were created by the PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP procedure. It does not remove Oracle Streams components that were created in a different way.

PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure

This procedure performs the actions required before instantiation to configure an Oracle Streams replication environment.

Run this procedure at the capture database. The capture database is the database that captures changes made to the source database.

To complete the Oracle Streams replication configuration, follow these steps:

1. Run the `PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure at the database that will be the source database in the Stream replication environment.
2. Perform any necessary instantiation actions.
3. Run the `POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure at the source database.

Typically, the Oracle Streams replication environment configured using these steps serves one of the following purposes:

- Replicates changes to shared database objects to keep the database objects synchronized at different databases.
- Replicates changes to database objects during a database maintenance operation, such migrating a database to a different platform. In this case, use the `CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP` procedure to remove the replication environment after the maintenance operation is complete.

Note:

- A capture process never captures changes in the `SYS`, `SYSTEM`, or `CTXSYS` schemas. This procedure does not configure replication for these schemas.
- When the RMAN `DUPLICATE` or `CONVERT DATABASE` command is used for database instantiation, the destination database cannot be the capture database.

See Also:

- "POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure" on page 159-136
- "CLEANUP_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure" on page 159-76
- "Procedures That Configure an Oracle Streams Environment" on page 159-16 for more information about this procedure
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about setting up an Oracle Streams replication environment
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about completing database maintenance operations

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP(
   maintain_mode           IN VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_names        IN DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.TABLESPACE_SET,
   source_database         IN VARCHAR2,
   destination_database    IN VARCHAR2,
```

```
  perform_actions         IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT TRUE,
  script_name             IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  script_directory_object IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_name            IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_queue_table     IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_queue_name      IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  capture_queue_user      IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  propagation_name        IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_name              IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_queue_table       IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_queue_name        IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  apply_queue_user        IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  bi_directional          IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
  include_ddl             IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
  start_processes         IN BOOLEAN         DEFAULT FALSE,
  exclude_schemas         IN VARCHAR2        DEFAULT NULL,
  exclude_flags           IN BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

See Also: "Common Parameters for the Configuration Procedures" on page 159-19 for descriptions of the procedure parameters that are not in Table 159–29

Table 159–29 PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
maintain_mode	Specify one of the following: ■ GLOBAL to maintain the entire database by configuring replication between the local database and the database specified in the destination_database parameter ■ TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES to maintain a set of tablespaces by configuring replication between the local database and the database specified in the destination_database parameter
tablespace_names	If maintain_mode is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then specify the local tablespace set to be cloned at the destination database and maintained by Oracle Streams. The tablespaces in the tablespace set must exist at the source database, but these tablespaces must not exist at the destination database. Also, a directory object must exist for each directory that contains the datafiles for the tablespace set. The user who invokes this procedure must have READ privilege on these directory objects. If maintain_mode is set to GLOBAL, then specify an empty tablespace set. Regardless of the maintain_mode setting, an error is raised if the tablespace_names parameter is not set or is set to NULL. **See Also:** TABLESPACE_SET Table Type on page 164-9

Table 159–29 (Cont.) PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If the specified global name is the same as the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a local capture process for the source database. If the specified global name is different from the global name of the local database, then the procedure configures a downstream capture process at the local database. In this case, a database link from the local database to the source database with the same name as the global name of the source database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure uses the global name of the local database.
destination_database	The global name of the destination database. If the local database is not the destination database, then a database link from the local database to the destination database with the same name as the global name of the destination database must exist and must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
capture_queue_table	The name of the queue table for each queue used by a capture process, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, then the system generates a name for the queue table of each queue used by a capture process, and the current user is the owner of each queue table.
start_processes	If TRUE, then the procedure starts each capture process and apply process. If FALSE, then the procedure does not start any capture processes or apply processes.
exclude_schemas	A comma-delimited list of schemas to exclude from the Oracle Streams configuration. Schema rules are added to the negative rule sets of each capture process to exclude these schemas. Specify an asterisk (*) to exclude all of the schemas in the database. If NULL, then the procedure does not exclude any schemas in the database. This parameter is valid only if the MAINTAIN_MODE parameter is set to GLOBAL. If the MAINTAIN_MODE parameter is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then the procedure ignores this parameter.
exclude_flags	Specify what to exclude from the replication configuration in the schemas specified by the exclude_schemas parameter. See "Usage Notes" on page 159-143 for more information.

Usage Notes

The following sections contain usage notes for this procedure.

Self-Contained Tablespace Sets

If the maintain_mode parameter is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then the specified set of tablespaces must be self-contained. In this context "self-contained" means that there are no references from inside the set of tablespaces pointing outside of the set of tablespaces. For example, if a partitioned table is partially contained in the set of tablespaces, then the set of tablespaces is not self-contained.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about self-contained tablespace sets

The exclude_flags Parameter

Specify one of the following values:

- DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_FULL to exclude changes to the schemas and all of the database objects in the schemas
- DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_UNSUPPORTED to exclude changes to the database objects that are not supported by Oracle Streams in the schemas

If both of these values are specified, then the procedure raises an error.

In addition to DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_FULL or DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_UNSUPPORTED, specify one or both of the following values:

- DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_DML to exclude data manipulation language (DML) changes made to the excluded database objects
- DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_FULL to exclude data definition language (DDL) changes made to the excluded database objects

Use the plus sign (+) to specify more than one of these values. For example, to maintain DML changes to the tables in a schemas specified by the exclude_schemas parameter but exclude DDL changes to these schemas and the database objects in these schemas, specify the following for this parameter:

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_FULL +
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_DDL
```

To exclude DML and DDL changes made to unsupported database objects in the schemas specified by the exclude_schemas parameter, specify the following for this parameter:

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_UNSUPPORTED +
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_DML +
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.EXCLUDE_FLAGS_DDL
```

Rules for the excluded database objects are added to the negative rule set of each capture process. Therefore, changes to the excluded database objects will not be captured and replicated.

This parameter is valid only if the maintain_mode parameter is set to GLOBAL and the exclude_schemas parameter is set to a non-NULL value. If the maintain_mode parameter is set to GLOBAL and the exclude_schemas parameter is set to a NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter. If the maintain_mode parameter is set to TRANSPORTABLE TABLESPACES, then this the procedure ignores this parameter and excludes any database objects in the specified tablespace set that are not supported by Oracle Streams from the Oracle Streams configuration automatically.

Also, if schemas are specified in the exclude_schemas parameter, but the exclude_flags parameter is set to NULL, then the procedure does not add any rules to the

negative rule set of any capture process, and the procedure includes the schemas specified in the `exclude_schemas` parameter in the replication environment.

PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG Procedure

This procedure removes all Oracle Streams data dictionary information at the local database for the specified object. You can use this procedure to remove Oracle Streams metadata that is not needed currently and will not be needed in the future.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG(
   source_database     IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_object_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_object_type  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 159–30 PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database containing the object. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
source_object_name	The name of the object specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
source_object_type	Type of the object. Currently, TABLE is the only possible object type.

Usage Notes

The global name of the source database containing the object must be specified for the source_database parameter. If the current database is not the source database for the object, then the procedure removes data dictionary information about the object from the current database, not the source database.

For example, suppose changes to the hr.employees table at the dbs1.net source database are being applied to the hr.employees table at the dbs2.net destination database. Also, suppose hr.employees at dbs2.net is not a source at all. In this case, specifying dbs2.net as the source_database for this table results in an error. However, specifying dbs1.net as the source_database for this table while running the PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG procedure at the dbs2.net database removes data dictionary information about the table at dbs2.net.

Do not run this procedure at a database if either of the following conditions are true:

- Logical change records (LCRs) captured by the capture process for the object are or might be applied locally without reinstantiating the object.
- LCRs captured by the capture process for the object are or might be forwarded by the database without reinstantiating the object.

> **Note:** These conditions do not apply to LCRs that were not created by the capture process. That is, these conditions do not apply to user-created LCRs.

RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure

This procedure provides options for operations that stopped because they encountered an errors. These operations include split and merge operations, Oracle Streams replication configuration operations, and Oracle Streams change table configuration operations. This procedure either rolls forward the operation, rolls back the operation, or purges all of the metadata about the operation.

This procedure only can perform these actions for the following operations:

- Split and merge operations using:
  - The `split_threshold` and `merge_threshold` capture process parameters set to non-`NULL` values to enable automatic split and merge
  - SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure
  - MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure
- Change table configuration operations performed by the MAINTAIN_CHANGE_TABLE Procedure
- Replication configuration operations performed by the following procedures:
  - MAINTAIN_GLOBAL Procedure
  - MAINTAIN_SCHEMAS Procedure
  - MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure
  - MAINTAIN_SIMPLE_TTS Procedure
  - MAINTAIN_TABLES Procedure
  - MAINTAIN_TABLESPACES Procedure
  - MAINTAIN_TTS Procedure
  - PRE_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure
  - POST_INSTANTIATION_SETUP Procedure

Information about the operation is stored in the following data dictionary views when the operation is in process:

- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT`
- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS`
- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS`
- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS`

For split and merge operations, the data dictionary views are populated at the database that contains the capture process. For the configuration operations, the data dictionary views are populated at the database where the replication configuration procedure was run.

When the operation completes successfully, metadata about the operation is moved from the `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT` view to the `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_HIST` view. The other views, `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS`, `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS`, and `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS`, retain information about the operation until it is purged automatically after 30 days.

When one of these operations encounters an error and stops, metadata about the operation remains in these views. In this case, you can either roll forward, roll back, or

purge the metadata about the operation using the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure. If you choose to roll forward the operation, then correct conditions that caused the errors reported in DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS before proceeding.

For split and merge operations, run the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure at the database that contains the capture process. For the configuration operations, run the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure at the database where the replication configuration procedure was run.

Note:

- Regarding the configuration operations, the procedure must configure the environment directly (perform_actions => TRUE), not by generating a script, for information about the operation to be stored in the recoverable views and for the operation to be managed by the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure.
- To run the RECOVER_OPERATION procedure, both databases must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later databases.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.RECOVER_OPERATION(
   script_id       IN  RAW,
   operation_mode  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'FORWARD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–31 RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
script_id	The operation id of the operation that is being rolled forward, rolled back, or purged. Query the SCRIPT_ID column of the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT data dictionary view to determine the operation id.
operation_mode	If FORWARD, then the procedure rolls forward the operation. Specify FORWARD to try to complete the operation. If ROLLBACK, then the procedure rolls back all of the actions performed in the operation. If the rollback is successful, then this option also moves the metadata about the operation from the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT view to the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_HIST view. The other views retain information about the operation for 30 days. If PURGE, then the procedure moves the metadata about the operation from the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT view to the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_HIST view without rolling the operation back. The other views retain information about the operation for 30 days.

REMOVE_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure removes the specified ANYDATA queue.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Waits until all current enqueue and dequeue transactions commit.
2. Stops the queue, which means that no further enqueues into the queue or dequeues from the queue are allowed.
3. Drops the queue.
4. If the drop_unused_queue_table parameter is set to TRUE, then drops the queue table if it is empty and no other queues are using it.
5. If the cascade parameter is set to TRUE, then drops all of the Oracle Streams clients that are using the queue.

Note: The specified queue must be a ANYDATA queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.REMOVE_QUEUE(
   queue_name                IN  VARCHAR2,
   cascade                   IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   drop_unused_queue_table   IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–32 REMOVE_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the queue to remove, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
cascade	If TRUE, then the procedure drops any Oracle Streams clients that use the queue. If FALSE, then the procedure raises an error if there are any Oracle Streams clients that use the queue. Before you run this procedure with the cascade parameter set to FALSE, make sure no Oracle Streams clients are using the queue currently.
drop_unused_queue_table	If TRUE and the queue table for the queue is empty, then the procedure drops the queue table. The queue table is not dropped if it contains any messages or if it is used by another queue. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the queue table.

REMOVE_RULE Procedure

This procedure removes the specified rule or all rules from the rule set associated with the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, propagation, or messaging client.

If this procedure results in an empty positive rule set for a messaging client, then the procedure drops the messaging client automatically.

> **Note:** If a rule was automatically created by the system, and you want to drop the rule, then you should use this procedure to remove the rule instead of the `DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE` procedure. If you use the `DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE` procedure, then some metadata about the rule might remain.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.REMOVE_RULE(
   rule_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   streams_type      IN  VARCHAR2,
   streams_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   drop_unused_rule  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   inclusion_rule    IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 159–33 REMOVE_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule to remove, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_name`*. If `NULL`, then the procedure removes all rules from the specified capture process, synchronous capture, apply process, propagation, or messaging client rule set. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `prop_rule1`, enter `hr.prop_rule1`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`streams_type`	The type of Oracle Streams client: ■ Specify `capture` for a capture process. ■ Specify `sync_capture` for a synchronous capture. ■ Specify `propagation` for a propagation. ■ Specify `apply` for an apply process. ■ Specify `dequeue` for a messaging client.
`streams_name`	The name of the Oracle Streams client, which can be a capture process, synchronous capture, propagation, apply process, or messaging client. Do not specify an owner. If the specified Oracle Streams client does not exist, but there is metadata in the data dictionary that associates the rule with this client, then the procedure removes the metadata. If the specified Oracle Streams client does not exist, and there is no metadata in the data dictionary that associates the rule with this client, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 159–33 (Cont.) REMOVE_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
drop_unused_rule	If TRUE and the rule is not in any rule set, then the procedure drops the rule from the database. If TRUE and the rule exists in any rule set, then the procedure does not drop the rule from the database. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the rule from the database.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure removes the rule from the positive rule set for the Oracle Streams client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure removes the rule from the negative rule set for the Oracle Streams client.

REMOVE_STREAMS_CONFIGURATION Procedure

This procedure removes the Oracle Streams configuration at the local database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.REMOVE_STREAMS_CONFIGURATION;
```

Usage Notes

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions at the local database:

- Drops all capture processes
- If any tables have been prepared for instantiation, then aborts preparation for instantiation for the table using the `ABORT_TABLE_INSTANTIATION` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package
- If any schemas have been prepared for instantiation, then aborts preparation for instantiation for the schema using the `ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package
- If the database has been prepared for instantiation, then aborts preparation for instantiation for the database using the `ABORT_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package
- Drops propagations that were created using either the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package or the `DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM` package. Before a propagation is dropped, its propagation job is disabled. Does not drop propagations that were created using the `DBMS_AQADM` package.
- Disables all propagation jobs used by propagations
- Drops all apply processes. If there are apply errors in the error queue for an apply process, then this procedure deletes these apply errors before it drops the apply process.
- Removes specifications for DDL handlers used by apply processes, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes specifications for message handlers used by apply processes, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes specifications for precommit handlers used by apply processes, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes the instantiation SCN and ignore SCN for each apply object and schema and for the entire database
- Removes messaging clients
- Unsets message notification specifications that were set using the `SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION` procedure in the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package
- Removes specifications for procedure DML handlers and error handlers, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes update conflict handlers
- Removes specifications for substitute key columns for apply tables
- Drops rule sets and rules that were created using the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM` package.

- Drops unused rule sets that were used by capture processes, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients, and removes the rules in these rule sets. These rules and rule sets are removed regardless of whether they were created using the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package.

This procedure stops capture processes and apply processes before it drops them.

This procedure does not drop rule sets or rules if they meet both of the following conditions:

- The rule sets or rules were created using the DBMS_RULE_ADM package.
- The rule sets or rules were not used by a capture process, propagation, apply process, or messaging client.

Attention: Running this procedure is dangerous. You should run this procedure only if you are sure you want to remove the entire Oracle Streams configuration at a database.

Note:

- Running this procedure repeatedly does not cause errors. If the procedure fails to complete, then you can run it again.
- This procedure commits multiple times.

See Also:

- STOP_CAPTURE Procedure on page 34-58 in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package
- STOP_APPLY Procedure on page 23-87 in the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package
- REMOVE_RULE Procedure on page 159-150 in the DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package

RENAME_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a column in a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to TRUE, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.

Note:

- The RENAME_COLUMN procedure supports the same data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes.
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. These row LCRs can be captured by a capture process, captured by a synchronous capture, or constructed and enqueued by an application. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations and about the data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.RENAME_COLUMN(
   rule_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   from_column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_column_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   step_number       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   operation         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–34 RENAME_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_name	The name of the table in which the column is renamed in the row LCR, specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
from_column_name	The name of the column to be renamed in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
to_column_name	The new name of the column in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.

Table 159–34 (Cont.) RENAME_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to rename the column in the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to rename the column in the old values in the row LCR. Specify '*' to rename the column in both the old and new values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the rename column declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the RENAME_COLUMN procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	from_column_name	to_column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified to_column_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name and column_name for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.

table_name	from_column_name	to_column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

RENAME_SCHEMA Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a schema in a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to TRUE, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.

Note: Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. These row LCRs can be captured by a capture process, captured by a synchronous capture, or constructed and enqueued by an application. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.RENAME_SCHEMA(
   rule_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   from_schema_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_schema_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   step_number        IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   operation          IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–35 RENAME_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
from_schema_name	The name of the schema to be renamed in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
to_schema_name	The new name of the schema in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the rename schema declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified from_schema_name, to_schema_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls

specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the RENAME_SCHEMA procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

from_schema_name	to_schema_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified to_schema_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified to_schema_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name and to_schema_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name, to_schema_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

RENAME_TABLE Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a table in a row logical change record (row LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to TRUE, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an Oracle Streams client. Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.

Note: Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. These row LCRs can be captured by a capture process, captured by a synchronous capture, or constructed and enqueued by an application. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.RENAME_TABLE(
   rule_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   from_table_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   step_number      IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   operation        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 159–36 RENAME_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
from_table_name	The name of the table to be renamed in each row LCR that satisfies the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
to_table_name	The new name of the table in each row LCR that satisfies the rule, specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, humres.staff. The transformation can rename the table only, the schema only, or the table and the schema. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the rename table declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified from_table_name, to_table_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the RENAME_TABLE procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

from_table_name	to_table_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified to_table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified to_table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name and to_table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name, to_table_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION Procedure

This procedure sets a notification for messages that can be dequeued by a specified Oracle Streams messaging client from a specified queue. A notification is sent when a message is enqueued into the specified queue and the specified messaging client can dequeue the message because the message satisfies its rule sets.

Note:

- Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages.
- The DBMS_AQ package can also configure notifications. The DBMS_AQ package provides some notification features that are not available in DBMS_STREAMS_ADM package, such as buffered message notifications and notification grouping by time.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION(
   streams_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   notification_action   IN  VARCHAR2,
   notification_type     IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'PROCEDURE',
   notification_context  IN  ANYDATA      DEFAULT NULL,
   include_notification  IN  BOOLEAN      DEFAULT TRUE,
   queue_name            IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'streams_queue');
```

Parameters

Table 159–37 SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_name	The name of the Oracle Streams messaging client. Do not specify an owner. For example, if the user strmadmin is the messaging client, then specify strmadmin.

Table 159–37 (Cont.) SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
notification_action	The action to be performed on message notification. Specify one of the following: ■ For URL notifications, specify a URL without the prefix http://. For example, to specify the URL http://www.company.com:8080, enter the following: www.company.com:8080 ■ For email notifications, specify an email address. For example, to specify an the email address xyz@company.com, enter the following: xyz@company.com ■ For PL/SQL procedure notifications, specify an existing user-defined PL/SQL procedure in the form [*schema_name*.]*procedure_name*. If the *schema_name* is not specified, then the user who invokes the SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION procedure is the default. The procedure must be a PLSQLCALLBACK data structure. For example, to specify a procedure named notify_orders in the oe schema, enter the following: oe.notify_orders **See Also:** Examples on page 159-164 for more information about message notification procedures
notification_type	The type of notification. Specify one of the following: ■ HTTP if you specified a URL for notification_action ■ MAIL if you specified an email address for notification_action ■ PROCEDURE if you specified a user-defined procedure for notification_action The type must match the specification for the notification_action parameter.
notification_context	The context of the notification. The context must be specified using RAW datatype information. For example, to specify the hexidecimal equivalent of 'FF', enter the following: ANYDATA.ConvertRaw(HEXTORAW('FF')) The notification context is passed the PL/SQL procedure in procedure notifications and is not relevant for mail or HTTP notifications.
include_notification	If TRUE, then the procedure adds this notification for the specified streams_name and queue_name. That is, specifying TRUE turns on the notification for the streams_name and queue_name. If FALSE, then the procedure removes this notification for the specified streams_name and queue_name. That is, specifying FALSE turns off the notification for the streams_name and queue_name. If you specify FALSE, then this procedure ignores any specified values for the notification_action or notification_context parameters.

Table 159–37 (Cont.) SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of a local ANYDATA queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue. The specified queue must be a ANYDATA queue. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

Usage Notes

You can specify one of the following types of notifications:

- An email address to which message notifications are sent. When a relevant message is enqueued into the queue, an email with the message properties is mailed to the specified email address.
- A PL/SQL procedure to be invoked on a notification. When a relevant message is enqueued into the queue, the specified PL/SQL procedure is invoked with the message properties. This PL/SQL procedure can dequeue the message.
- An HTTP URL to which the notification is posted. When a relevant message is enqueued into the queue, a notification with the message properties is posted to the specified URL specified.

A client does not need to be connected to the database to receive a notification.

If you register for email notifications, then you should use the DBMS_AQELM package to set the host name and port name for the SMTP server that will be used by the database to send email notifications. If required, then you should set the send-from email address, which is set by the database as the sent from field. You need a Java-enabled database to use this feature.

If you register for HTTP notifications, you might want to use the DBMS_AQELM package to set the host name and port number for the proxy server and a list of no-proxy domains that will be used by the database to post HTTP notifications.

Each notification is an AQXmlNotification, which includes of the following:

- notification_options, which includes the following:
  - destination - The destination queue from which the message was dequeued
  - consumer_name - The name of the messaging client that dequeued the message
- message_set - The set of message properties

See Also:

- The documentation for the DBMS_AQELM package for more information on email notifications and HTTP notifications
- *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* and *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for more information about message notifications and XML
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about how rules are used in Oracle Streams

Examples

If you use a message notification procedure, then this PL/SQL procedure must have the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE procedure_name(
  context  IN  ANYDATA,
  reginfo  IN  SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO,
  descr    IN  SYS.AQ$_DESCRIPTOR);
```

Here, *procedure_name* stands for the name of the procedure. The procedure is a `PLSQLCALLBACK` data structure that specifies the user-defined PL/SQL procedure to be invoked on message notification.

The following is a simple example of a notification procedure that dequeues a message of type `oe.user_msg` using the message identifier and consumer name sent by the notification. To complete the example, first create the type:

```
CREATE TYPE oe.user_msg AS OBJECT(
  object_name    VARCHAR2(30),
  object_owner   VARCHAR2(30),
  message        VARCHAR2(50));
/
```

Next, create the procedure:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE oe.notification_dequeue(
  context  ANYDATA,
  reginfo  SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO,
  descr    SYS.AQ$_DESCRIPTOR)
AS
  dequeue_options     DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T;
  message_properties  DBMS_AQ.MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T;
  message_handle      RAW(16);
  message             ANYDATA;
  oe_message          oe.user_msg;
  rc                  PLS_INTEGER;
BEGIN
  -- Get the message identifier and consumer name from the descriptor
  dequeue_options.msgid := descr.msg_id;
  dequeue_options.consumer_name := descr.consumer_name;
  -- Dequeue the message
  DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE(
    queue_name         => descr.queue_name,
    dequeue_options    => dequeue_options,
    message_properties => message_properties,
    payload            => message,
    msgid              => message_handle);
  rc := message.getobject(oe_message);
  COMMIT;
END;
/
```

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information about `PLSQLCALLBACK` data structures

SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure

Sets the tracking label for logical change records (LCRs) produced by the current session. This procedure affects only the current session. Any LCRs produced by the current session are tracked, including captured LCRs and persistent LCRs.

Note: The tracking label set by this procedure does not track non-LCR messages.

See Also: GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Function on page 159-83

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING(
   tracking_label IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Streams_tracking',
   actions        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ACTION_MEMORY);
```

Parameters

Table 159–38 SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tracking_label	The label used to track the LCRs produced by the session. Set this parameter to NULL to stop message tracking in the current session. The size limit for a label is 4,000 bytes.
actions	When DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ACTION_MEMORY is specified, the LCRs are tracked in memory, and the V$STREAMS_MESSAGE_TRACKING dynamic performance view is populated with information about the LCRs. Currently, DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.ACTION_MEMORY is the only valid setting for this parameter. The value specified for this parameter is an enumerated constant. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name.

SET_RULE_TRANSFORM_FUNCTION Procedure

This procedure sets or removes the transformation function name for a custom rule-based transformation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_RULE_TRANSFORM_FUNCTION(
   rule_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   transform_function  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 159–39 SET_RULE_TRANSFORM_FUNCTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule whose rule-based transformation function you are setting or removing, specified as [*schema_name.*]*rule_name*. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named prop_rule1, enter hr.prop_rule1. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
transform_function	Either the name of the transformation function to be used in the rule-based transformation for the rule or NULL. If you specify a transformation function name, then specify an existing function in one of the following forms: ■ [*schema_name.*]*function_name* ■ [*schema_name.*]*package_name.function_name* If the function is in a package, then you must specify the *package_name*. For example, to specify a function in the transform_pkg package in the hr schema named executive_to_management, enter hr.transform_pkg.executive_to_management. An error is returned if the specified procedure does not exist. If the *schema_name* is not specified, then the user who invokes the rule-based transformation function is the default. If you specify NULL, then the SET_RULE_TRANSFORM_FUNCTION procedure removes the current custom rule-based transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

The following sections contain usage notes for this procedure:

- Transformation Function Signature
- Rule Action Context
- User Who Calls the Transformation Function
- Function Verification

Transformation Function Signature

A custom rule-based transformation function always operates on one message, but it can return one message or many messages. A custom rule-based transformation function that returns one message is a one-to-one transformation function. A one-to-one transformation function must have the following signature:

```
FUNCTION user_function (
```

```
   parameter_name   IN  ANYDATA)
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Here, *user_function* stands for the name of the function and *parameter_name* stands for the name of the parameter passed to the function. The parameter passed to the function is an ANYDATA encapsulation of a message, and the function must return an ANYDATA encapsulation of a message.

A custom rule-based transformation function that can return multiple messages is a one-to-many transformation function. A one-to-many transformation function must have the following signature:

```
FUNCTION user_function (
   parameter_name  IN  ANYDATA)
RETURN STREAMS$_ANYDATA_ARRAY;
```

Here, *user_function* stands for the name of the function and *parameter_name* stands for the name of the parameter passed to the function. The parameter passed to the function is an ANYDATA encapsulation of a message, and the function must return an array that contains zero or more ANYDATA encapsulations of a message. If the array contains zero ANYDATA encapsulations of a message, then the original message is discarded.

The STREAMS$_ANYDATA_ARRAY type is an Oracle-supplied type that has the following definition:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE SYS.STREAMS$_ANYDATA_ARRAY
   AS VARRAY(2147483647) of ANYDATA
/
```

The following restrictions apply to custom rule-based transformations that use one-to-many functions:

- Rules that are associated with one-to-many functions are supported for Oracle Streams capture processes only. These rules must not be added to rule sets used by other Oracle Streams clients, including propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients.
- One-to-many functions only can operate on row logical change records (row LCRs). They cannot operate on DDL LCRs.
- Row LCRs returned by a one-to-many function cannot contain piecewise LOB, LONG, or LONG RAW operations.
- The one-to-many function must return row LCRs in the correct order. The order of row LCRs in the array (starting from index 1) is the order that the row LCRs will be executed in the transaction.

When an apply process dequeues row LCRs that are the result of a transformation by a one-to-many function, the apply process uses the instantiation SCN of the LCR passed to the one-to-many function for all of row LCRs.

Note:

- An error is raised if a one-to-one or one-to-many transformation function returns `NULL`.
- Only one custom rule-based transformation can be specified for a particular rule. You cannot specify both a one-to-one and a one-to-many transformation function for the same rule.
- For any LCR constructed and returned by a custom rule-based transformation, the `source_database_name`, `transaction_id`, and `scn` parameter values must match the values in the original LCR. Oracle automatically specifies the values in the original LCR for these parameters, even if an attempt is made to construct LCRs with different values.

Rule Action Context

This procedure modifies the specified rule's action context to specify the transformation. A rule's action context is optional information associated with a rule that is interpreted by the client of the rules engine after the rule evaluates to `TRUE` for a message. The client of the rules engine can be a user-created application or an internal feature of Oracle, such as Oracle Streams. The Oracle Streams clients include capture processes, synchronous captures, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients. The information in an action context is an object of type `SYS.RE$NV_LIST`, which consists of a list of name-value pairs.

A custom rule-based transformation in Oracle Streams always consists of the following name-value pair in an action context:

- If the function is a one-to-one transformation function, then the name is `STREAMS$_TRANSFORM_FUNCTION`. If the function is a one-to-many transformation function, then the name is `STREAMS$_ARRAY_TRANS_FUNCTION`.
- The value is a `ANYDATA` instance containing a PL/SQL function name specified as a `VARCHAR2`. This function performs the transformation.

User Who Calls the Transformation Function

The user that calls the transformation function must have `EXECUTE` privilege on the function. The following list describes which user calls the transformation function:

- If a transformation is specified for a rule used by a capture process, then the user who calls the transformation function is the capture user for the capture process.
- If a transformation is specified for a rule used by a synchronous capture, then the user who calls the transformation function is the capture user for the synchronous capture.
- If a transformation is specified for a rule used by a propagation, then the user who calls the transformation function is the owner of the source queue for the propagation.
- If a transformation is specified on a rule used by an apply process, then the user who calls the transformation function is the apply user for the apply process.
- If a transformation is specified on a rule used by a messaging client, then the user who calls the transformation function is the user who invokes the messaging client.

Function Verification

This procedure does not verify that the specified transformation function exists. If the function does not exist, then an error is raised when an Oracle Streams client tries to invoke the transformation function.

SET_TAG Procedure

This procedure sets the binary tag for all redo entries subsequently generated by the current session. Each redo entry generated by DML or DDL statements in the current session will have this tag. This procedure affects only the current session.

See Also:

- "GET_TAG Function" on page 159-86
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_TAG(
   tag  IN RAW  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–40 SET_TAG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tag	The binary tag for all subsequent redo entries generated by the current session. A raw value is a sequence of bytes, and a byte is a sequence of bits. By default, the tag for a session is NULL. The size limit for a tag value is 2000 bytes.

Usage Notes

To set the tag to the hexadecimal value of '17' in the current session, run the following procedure:

```
EXEC DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_TAG(tag => HEXTORAW('17'));
```

The following are considerations for the SET_TAG procedure:

- This procedure is not transactional. That is, the effects of SET_TAG cannot be rolled back.
- If the SET_TAG procedure is run to set a non-NULL session tag before a data dictionary build has been performed on the database, then the redo entries for a transaction that started before the dictionary build might not include the specified tag value for the session. Therefore, perform a data dictionary build before using the SET_TAG procedure in a session. A data dictionary build happens when the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure is run. The BUILD procedure can be run automatically when a capture process is created.

See Also: BUILD Procedure on page 34-18

SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure creates a queue table and a ANYDATA queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_UP_QUEUE(
   queue_table     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue_table',
   storage_clause  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   queue_user      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 159–41 SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_table	The name of the queue table specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the queue table owner is not specified, then the procedure specifies the user who runs this procedure automatically as the queue table owner. Queue table names can be a maximum of 24 bytes.
storage_clause	The storage clause for queue table The storage parameter is included in the CREATE TABLE statement when the queue table is created. You can specify any valid table storage clause. If a tablespace is not specified here, then the procedure creates the queue table and all its related objects in the default user tablespace of the user who runs this procedure. If a tablespace is specified here, then the procedure creates the queue table and all its related objects in the tablespace specified in the storage clause. If NULL, then the procedure uses the storage characteristics of the tablespace in which the queue table is created. **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about storage clauses
queue_name	The name of the queue that will function as the ANYDATA queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the procedure uses the queue table owner. The owner of the queue table must also be the owner of the queue. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue. If the schema is not specified for this parameter, and the queue table owner is not specified in queue_table, then the current user is the default. Queue names can be a maximum of 24 bytes.

Table 159–41 (Cont.) SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.
comment	The comment for the queue

Usage Notes

Set up includes the following actions:

- If the specified queue table does not exist, then this procedure runs the CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE procedure in the DBMS_AQADM package to create the queue table with the specified storage clause. If this procedure creates the queue table, then it creates a multiple consumer ANYDATA queue that is both a secure queue and a transactional queue.

  Also, if the database is Oracle Database 10*g* release 2 or later, the sort_list setting in CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE is set to commit_time. If the database is a release before Oracle Database 10*g* release 2, the sort_list setting in CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE is set to enq_time.
- If the specified queue table exists, then the queue uses the properties of the existing queue table.
- If the specified queue name does not exist, then this procedure runs the CREATE_QUEUE procedure in the DBMS_AQADM package to create the queue.
- This procedure starts the queue.
- If a queue user is specified, then this procedure configures this user as a secure queue user of the queue and grants ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges on the queue to the specified queue user.

  To configure the queue user as a secure queue user, this procedure creates an Advanced Queuing agent with the same name as the user name, if one does not exist. If an agent with this name exists and is associated with the queue user only, then it is used. SET_UP_QUEUE then runs the ENABLE_DB_ACCESS procedure in the DBMS_AQADM package, specifying the agent and the user.

Note:

- To enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from a queue, a queue user must have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING package or the DBMS_AQ package. The SET_UP_QUEUE procedure does not grant this privilege.
- If the agent that SET_UP_QUEUE tries to create exists and is associated with a user other than the user specified by queue_user, then the procedure raises an error. In this case, rename or remove the existing agent, and retry SET_UP_QUEUE.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about secure queue users

SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure

This procedure splits one stream flowing from a capture process off from all of the other streams flowing from the capture process.

This procedure is intended for an Oracle Streams replication environment in which a capture process captures changes that are propagated to two or more destination databases. When one destination of a propagation stops accepting the captured changes, the changes remain in the capture process's queue. The queue can grow and begin to spill messages to the hard disk, degrading the performance of the Oracle Streams environment. A destination might stop accepting changes for several reasons. For example, the destination database might be down.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Creates a new queue at the database running the capture process. The new queue is called the cloned queue because it is a clone of the queue used by the original stream. The new queue will be used by the new, cloned capture process, and it will be the source queue for the new, cloned propagation.
2. Creates a new propagation that propagates messages from the source queue created in Step 1 to the existing destination queue. The new propagation is called the cloned propagation because it is a clone of the propagation used by the original stream. The cloned propagation uses the same rule set as the original propagation.
3. Stops the capture process.
4. Queries the acknowledge SCN for the original propagation. The acknowledged SCN is the last SCN acknowledged by the apply process that applies the changes sent by the propagation.
5. Creates a new capture process. The new capture process is called the cloned capture process because it is a clone of the capture process used by the original stream. The procedure sets the start SCN for the cloned capture process to the value of the acknowledged SCN queried in Step 4. The cloned capture process uses the same rule set as the original capture process.
6. Drops the original propagation.
7. Starts the original capture process with the start SCN set to the acknowledged SCN queried in Step 4.
8. If the `auto_merge_threshold` parameter is set to a positive number, then creates an Oracle Scheduler job to run the `MERGE_STREAMS_JOB` procedure at set intervals according to its schedule. When the two streams are within the specified merge threshold, the `MERGE_STREAMS_JOB` procedure runs the `MERGE_STREAMS` procedure to merge the streams automatically.

After the `SPLIT_STREAMS` procedure has finished running, the cloned capture process is disabled. When the problem at the destination database is solved, and the destination queue can accept changes, you should start the cloned capture process using the `START_CAPTURE` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package.

The `DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE` view contains the name of each cloned component and information about the split and merge operation.

Note: If the original capture process is a downstream capture process, then you must configure the cloned capture process to read the redo log from the source database before you start the cloned capture process.

See Also:

- "MERGE_STREAMS Procedure" on page 159-130
- "MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure" on page 159-133
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for instructions on using the `SPLIT_STREAMS` procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SPLIT_STREAMS(
   propagation_name         IN      VARCHAR2,
   cloned_propagation_name  IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   cloned_queue_name        IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   cloned_capture_name      IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   perform_actions          IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name              IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object  IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   auto_merge_threshold     IN      NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   schedule_name            IN OUT  VARCHAR2,
   merge_job_name           IN OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 159–42 SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`propagation_name`	The name of the propagation that cannot send messages to its destination queue. The specified propagation is the propagation for the stream that is being split off from the other streams. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
`cloned_propagation_name`	The name of the new propagation created by this procedure for the stream that is split off. If `NULL`, then the system generates a propagation name.
`cloned_queue_name`	The name of the new queue created by this procedure for the stream that is split off. If `NULL`, then the system generates a queue name.
`cloned_capture_name`	The name of the new capture process created by this procedure for the stream that is split off. If `NULL`, then the system generates a capture process name.

Table 159–42 (Cont.) SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
perform_actions	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to split the stream directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to split the stream directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to split the stream. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to split the stream directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure performs the actions to split the stream directly and does not generate a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.

Table 159–42 (Cont.) SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
auto_merge_threshold	If a positive number is specified, then the stream that was split off is automatically merged back into all of the other streams flowing from the capture process by an Oracle Scheduler job. The job runs the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure at set intervals according to its schedule. The value of the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME column for each capture process in the GV$STREAMS_CAPTURE dynamic performance view determines when the streams are merged. Specifically, if the difference, in seconds, between CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process and the original capture process is less than or equal to the value specified for the auto_merge_threshold parameter, then the two streams are merged automatically. The cloned capture process must be started before the split stream can be merged back with the original stream. If NULL or 0 (zero) is specified, then the split stream is not merged back with the original stream automatically. To merge the split stream with the original stream, run the MERGE_STREAM procedure manually when the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process catches up to, or nearly catches up to, the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the original capture process. The CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME records the time when a captured change was recorded in the redo log.
schedule_name	The Oracle Scheduler schedule name, specified as [*schema_name*.]*schedule_name*. For example, strmadmin.merge_schedule. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the schedule is used by the job that will automatically merge the streams at the appropriate time. You can specify a schedule name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the schedule more easily. If NULL and auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the system generates a schedule name. If auto_merge_threshold is NULL or 0 (zero), then this parameter must be NULL. If this procedure creates a schedule, the schedule starts when the procedure completes. You can modify the schedule to control how often the merge job is run. If an existing schedule name is specified, an error is raised.
merge_job_name	The Oracle Scheduler job name, specified as [*schema_name*.]*merge_job_name*. For example, strmadmin.merge_job. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the job will automatically merge the streams at the appropriate time. Specify a merge job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If NULL and auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the system generates a job name. If auto_merge_threshold is NULL or 0 (zero), then this parameter must be NULL. If an existing job name is specified, an error is raised.

See Also: *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about Oracle Scheduler

160

DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides an interface to gather information about an Oracle Streams environment and advise database administrators based on the information gathered. This package is part of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor.

This chapter contains the following topics:

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for instructions about using this package

Using DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM` package.

Overview

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package enables you to gather and analyze information about an Oracle Streams environment. You can use this information in the following ways:

- To populate data dictionary views with an Oracle Streams topology that contains information about the Oracle Streams components at one or more databases
- To examine the Oracle Streams components at one or more databases in your environment and the ways in which information flows through streams that include these components
- To analyze the performance of the Oracle Streams components in your environment
- To detect performance problems with Oracle Streams components and correct these problems

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for instructions about using this package

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, configure an Oracle Streams administrator and connect as the Oracle Streams administrator when using this package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Constants

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package defines several enumerated constants for specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name. For example, DBMS_DBMS_ADVISOR_ADM.CAPTURE_TYPE.

Table 160–1 DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM Parameters With Enumerated Constants

Parameter	Option	Type	Description
component_type	■ CAPTURE_TYPE ■ PROPAGATION_SENDER_TYPE ■ PROPAGATION_RECEIVER_TYPE ■ APPLY_TYPE ■ QUEUE_TYPE	NUMBER	CAPTURE_TYPE indicates that the Oracle Streams component is a capture process. The constant number for this option is 1. PROPAGATION_SENDER_TYPE indicates that the Oracle Streams component is a propagation sender. The constant number for this option is 2. PROPAGATION_RECEIVER_TYPE indicates that the Oracle Streams component is a propagation receiver. The constant number for this option is 3. APPLY_TYPE indicates that the Oracle Streams component is an apply process. The constant number for this option is 4. QUEUE_TYPE indicates that the Oracle Streams component is a queue. The constant number for this option is 5.

Views

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package uses the following views:

- DBA_STREAMS_TP_COMPONENT contains information about each Oracle Streams component at each database.
- DBA_STREAMS_TP_COMPONENT_LINK contains information about how messages flow between Oracle Streams components.
- DBA_STREAMS_TP_COMPONENT_STAT contains temporary performance statistics about each Oracle Streams component.
- DBA_STREAMS_TP_DATABASE contains information about each database that contains Oracle Streams components.
- DBA_STREAMS_TP_PATH_BOTTLENECK contains temporary information about Oracle Streams components that might be slowing down the flow of a stream.
- DBA_STREAMS_TP_PATH_STAT contains temporary performance statistics about each stream path that exists in the Oracle Streams topology.

The topology information is stored permanently in the following data dictionary views: DBA_STREAMS_TP_DATABASE, DBA_STREAMS_TP_COMPONENT, and DBA_STREAMS_TP_COMPONENT_LINK.

However, the following views contain temporary information: DBA_STREAMS_TP_COMPONENT_STAT, DBA_STREAMS_TP_PATH_BOTTLENECK, and DBA_STREAMS_TP_PATH_STAT. Some of the data in these views is retained only for the user session that runs the ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMANCE procedure. When this user session ends, this temporary information is purged.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Reference*
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for sample queries that use these views

Operational Notes

This section contains the following operational notes for the DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package:

- Oracle Streams Components Analyzed by the DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM Package
- General Steps for Running the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor and Analyzing the Information

Oracle Streams Components Analyzed by the DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM Package

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM analyzes the following Oracle Streams components at the specified databases:

- Capture processes
- Propagations
- Apply processes
- Queues

The DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package does not analyze the following Oracle Streams components:

- Synchronous captures
- Messaging clients

General Steps for Running the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor and Analyzing the Information

To use the DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM package, complete the following general steps:

1. Identify the database that you will use to gather the information.

   An administrative user at this database must meet the following requirements:

   - The user must have access to a database link to each database that contains Oracle Streams components.
   - The user must have been granted privileges using the DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure, and each database link must connect to a user at the remote database that has been granted privileges using the DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure.

   In an Oracle Streams environment, the Oracle Streams administrator uses this package.

   If no database in your environment meets these requirements, then choose a database, configure the necessary database links, and grant the necessary privileges to the users before proceeding.
2. Connect as the administrative user to the database you identified in Step 1, and remain connected to the session while you complete the remaining steps.
3. Run the ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMACE procedure.
4. Optionally, allow messages to flow in the environment for some time.
5. Optionally, rerun the ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMACE procedure one or more times.
6. Query the data dictionary views listed in "Views" on page 160-6 to analyze the Oracle Streams environment.

7. If you want to update the information in the data dictionary views or if you add new Oracle Streams components to any database in the environment, repeat Steps 2-6.

Note: When you exit the user session, the rate, bandwidth, event, and flow control statistics are purged from the data dictionary views.

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM Subprograms

Table 160–2 DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMANCE Procedure on page 160-10	Gathers information about the Oracle Streams components at one or more databases in your environment and analyzes Oracle Streams performance based on the information gathered

ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMANCE Procedure

This procedure gathers information about the Oracle Streams components at one or more databases in your environment and analyzes Oracle Streams performance based on the information gathered.

The performance analyses includes:

- Calculating bottleneck components for each separate stream
- Calculating the throughput of each Oracle Streams component
- Calculating the latency of each Oracle Streams component
- Calculating the top wait event of each Oracle Streams component
- Calculating the message rate of each stream
- Calculating the transaction rate of each stream

The procedure places the gathered information in data dictionary views.

Note: The parameters in this procedure must all be either non-`NULL` or `NULL`.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for instructions on using this procedure
- "Views" on page 160-6

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM.ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMANCE(
   component_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   component_db    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   component_type  IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 160–3 ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMANCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`component_name`	The name of the Oracle Streams component to analyze. For example, to analyze a capture process named `capture01`, then specify `capture01`. If `NULL`, then all of the Oracle Streams components are analyzed, and the other two parameters must also be `NULL`.
`component_db`	The global name of the database that contains the component specified in the `component_name` parameter. For example, if the `db.net` database contains the component, then specify `db.net`. If `NULL`, then all of the Oracle Streams components are analyzed, and the other two parameters must also be `NULL`.

Table 160–3 (Cont.) ANALYZE_CURRENT_PERFORMANCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
component_type	The type of the component specified in the component_name parameter. If the component_name parameter is non-NULL, then specify one of the following: ■ DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM.CAPTURE_TYPE ■ DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM.PROPAGATION_SENDER_TYPE ■ DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM.PROPAGATION_RECEIVER_TYPE ■ DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM.APPLY_TYPE ■ DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM.QUEUE_TYPE See "Constants" on page 160-5 for information about these constants. If NULL, then all of the Oracle Streams components are analyzed, and the other two parameters must also be NULL.

161

DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH

The DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides subprograms for granting privileges to Oracle Streams administrators and revoking privileges from Oracle Streams administrators.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH` package.

Overview

This package provides subprograms for granting privileges to Oracle Streams administrators and revoking privileges from Oracle Streams administrators.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and Oracle Streams administrators

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, connect as an administrative user who can create users, grant privileges, and create tablespaces when using this package.

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH Subprograms

Table 161–1 DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 161-6	Either grants the privileges needed by a user to be an Oracle Streams administrator directly, or generates a script that you can use to grant these privileges
GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure on page 161-9	Enables a remote Oracle Streams administrator to perform administrative actions at the local database by connecting to the grantee using a database link
REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 161-10	Either revokes Oracle Streams administrator privileges from a user directly, or generates a script that you can use to revoke these privileges
REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure on page 161-12	Disables a remote Oracle Streams administrator from performing administrative actions by connecting to the grantee using a database link

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure either grants the privileges needed by a user to be an Oracle Streams administrator directly, or generates a script that you can use to grant these privileges.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE(
   grantee           IN  VARCHAR2,
   grant_privileges  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   file_name         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   directory_name    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 161–2 GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user to whom privileges are granted
grant_privileges	If TRUE, then the procedure grants the privileges to the specified grantee directly, and adds the grantee to the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view with YES for both the LOCAL_PRIVILEGES column and the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column. If the user has an entry in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not make another entry, and no error is raised. If TRUE and any of the grant statements fail, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not grant the privileges to the specified grantee directly, and does not add the grantee to the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. You specify FALSE when the procedure is generating a file that you will edit and then run. If you specify FALSE and either the file_name or directory_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
file_name	The name of the file generated by the procedure. The file contains all of the statements that grant the privileges. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory name, then the grant statements are appended to the existing file. If NULL, then the procedure does not generate a file.
directory_name	The directory into which the generated file is placed. The specified directory must be a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. If you specify a directory, then the user who invokes the procedure must have WRITE privilege on the directory object. If the file_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the procedure does not generate a file. If NULL and the file_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Usage Notes

The user who runs the procedure must be an administrative user who can grant privileges to other users.

Specifically, the procedure grants the following privileges to the specified user:

- The RESTRICTED SESSION system privilege

- EXECUTE on the following packages:
  - DBMS_APPLY_ADM
  - DBMS_AQ
  - DBMS_AQADM
  - DBMS_AQIN
  - DBMS_AQELM
  - DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM
  - DBMS_FLASHBACK
  - DBMS_LOCK
  - DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM
  - DBMS_RULE_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING
  - DBMS_TRANSFORM
- Privileges to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from any queue
- Privileges to manage any queue
- Privileges to create, alter, and execute any of the following types of objects in the user's own schema and in other schemas:
  - Evaluation contexts
  - Rule sets
  - Rules

  In addition, the grantee can grant these privileges to other users.
- SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE
- SELECT or READ privilege on data dictionary views related to Oracle Streams
- The ability to allow a remote Oracle Streams administrator to perform administrative actions through a database link by connecting to the grantee. This ability is enabled by running the GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS procedure in this package.

Note:

- To view all of the statements run by the procedure in detail, you can use the procedure to generate a script and then view the script in a text editor.
- This procedure does not grant any roles to the grantee.
- This procedure grants only the privileges necessary to configure and administer an Oracle Streams environment. You can grant more privileges to the grantee if necessary.

See Also:

- GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure on page 161-9
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure

This procedure enables a remote Oracle Streams administrator to perform administrative actions at the local database by connecting to the grantee using a database link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS(
   grantee  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 161–3 GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user who allows remote access. The procedure adds the grantee to the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view with YES for the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column. If the user has an entry in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not make another entry. Instead, it updates the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column to YES.

Usage Notes

Typically, you run the procedure and specify a grantee at a local source database if a downstream capture process captures changes originating at the local source database. The Oracle Streams administrator at a downstream capture database administers the source database using this connection. You can also run the procedure at a database running an apply process so that a remote Oracle Streams administrator can set instantiation SCNs at the local database.

Note: The GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure runs this procedure.

See Also: GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 161-6

REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure either revokes Oracle Streams administrator privileges from a user directly, or generates a script that you can use to revoke these privileges.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE(
   grantee            IN  VARCHAR2,
   revoke_privileges  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   file_name          IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   directory_name     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 161–4 REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user from whom privileges are revoked
revoke_privileges	If TRUE, then the procedure revokes the privileges from the specified user directly, and removes the user from the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. If the user does not have a record in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not remove a record from the view, and no error is raised. If TRUE and any of the revoke statements fail, then the procedure raises an error. A revoke statement will fail if the user is not granted the privilege that is being revoked. If FALSE, then the procedure does not revoke the privileges to the specified user directly, and does not remove the user from the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. You specify FALSE when the procedure is generating a file that you will edit and then run. If you specify FALSE and either the file_name or directory_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure does not raise an error.
file_name	The name of the file generated by this procedure. The file contains all of the statements that revoke the privileges. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory name, then the revoke statements are appended to the existing file. If NULL, then the procedure does not generate a file.
directory_name	The directory into which the generated file is placed. The specified directory must be a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. If you specify a directory, then the user who invokes the procedure must have WRITE privilege on the directory object. If the file_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the procedure does not generate a file. If NULL and the file_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Usage Notes

The user who runs this procedure must be an administrative user who can revoke privileges from other users. Specifically, this procedure revokes the privileges granted by running the GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure in this package.

Note: To view all of the statements run by this procedure in detail, you can use the procedure to generate a script and then view the script in a text editor.

See Also: GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 161-6

REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure

This procedure disables a remote Oracle Streams administrator from performing administrative actions by connecting to the grantee using a database link.

Note: The REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure runs this procedure.

See Also: REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 161-10

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS(
   grantee  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 161–5 REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user for whom access from a remote Oracle Streams administrator is disabled. If a row for the grantee exists in the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view, then the procedure updates the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column for the grantee to NO. If, after this update, both the LOCAL_PRIVILEGES column and the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column are NO for the grantee, then the procedure removes the grantee from the view. If no row for the grantee exists in the DBA_STREAMS_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view, then the procedure does not update the view and does not raise an error.

162

DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM

The DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides interfaces to manage statement DML handlers.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM

This section contains topics that relate to using the `DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM` package.

Overview

A statement DML handler runs one or more data manipulation language (DML) statements on row logical change records (row LCRs) that are dequeued by an apply process. A single statement DML handler can include multiple statements, and you control the execution order of the statements.

Statement DML handlers are similar to procedure DML handlers for apply processes. Both statement DML handlers and procedure DML handlers provide custom processing of row changes that are encapsulated in row LCRs. Statement DML handlers and procedure DML handlers both run when an apply process dequeues a row LCR. However, statement DML handlers have the following advantages over procedure DML handlers:

- Statement DML handlers typically perform better than procedure DML handlers because statement DML handlers do not require PL/SQL processing.
- The syntax for statement DML handlers is same as DML syntax. Statement DML handlers do not require PL/SQL programming. Procedure DML handlers require PL/SQL programming.
- Statement DML handlers do not require the manipulation of `ANYDATA` values to access the information in row LCRs. Typically, procedure DML handlers must manipulate `ANYDATA` values.
- A statement DML handler can coexist with an error handler for same operation on the same database object. In contrast, you cannot specify both a procedure DML handler and an error handler for the same operation on the same database object.

Note: You can specify multiple statement DML handlers for the same operation on the database object. In this case, the statement DML handlers can execute in any order, and each statement DML handler receives a copy of the original row LCR that was dequeued by the apply process.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, configure an Oracle Streams administrator and connect as the Oracle Streams administrator when using this package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Views

The DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM package uses the views listed in the *Oracle Database Reference*.

- DBA_APPLY_DML_HANDLERS
- DBA_STREAMS_STMTS
- DBA_STREAMS_STMT_HANDLERS

Operational Notes

The following sections contain operational notes about the DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM package:

- Statement Execution Order
- Supported SQL Statements
- Supported Row LCR Column Attributes
- Supported Row LCR Attributes
- Supported Row LCR Extra Attributes
- Supported Row LCR Method

Statement Execution Order

Each statement in a statement DML handler has a unique execution sequence number. When a statement DML handler is invoked, it executes its statements in order from the statement with the lowest execution sequence number to the statement with the highest execution sequence number.

Supported SQL Statements

You can use statement DML handlers for any valid DML operation on a row logical change record (row LCR). For example, a statement DML handler can audit the DML changes made to a table.

The following SQL statements are supported in statement DML handlers:

- INSERT
- UPDATE
- DELETE
- MERGE

In addition, define variables are not supported in the SQL statements in a statement DML handler.

However, the SQL statements in a statement DML handler can include calls to member subprograms for the row LCR type (LCR$_ROW_RECORD), such as ADD_COLUMN, DELETE_COLUMN, KEEP_COLUMNS, and RENAME_COLUMN.

Note: A statement DML handler cannot modify the value of a column in a row LCR.

See Also: "LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type" on page 275-15

Supported Row LCR Column Attributes

Statements in statement DML handlers can contain the row LCR column attributes described in Table 162–1.

Table 162–1 Row LCR Column Attributes

Attribute	Description
new	Returns the new column value in a row LCR. If the new value does not exist, then this attribute returns the old value.
new_exists	Returns TRUE if a new column value exists in a row LCR. Returns FALSE is a new column value does not exist in a row LCR.
new_only	Returns the new column value in a row LCR. If the new value does not exist, then this attribute returns NULL and does not return the old column value.
old	Returns the old column value in a row LCR.
old_exists	Returns TRUE if an old column value exists in a row LCR. Returns FALSE is an old column value does not exist in a row LCR.

Specify these attributes in the following way in a statement:

```
:attribute.column_name
```

For example, to specify the new_only attribute for the salary column, enter the following in a statement:

```
:new_only.salary
```

Supported Row LCR Attributes

Statements in statement DML handlers can contain the row LCR attributes described in Table 162–2.

Table 162–2 Row LCR Attributes

Attribute	Description
command_type	Returns the type of DML statement that produced the change, either INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. DBMS_LOB piecewise LOB operations are not supported by statement DML handlers.
commit_scn	Returns the commit system change number (SCN) of the transaction to which the LCR belongs.
compatible	Returns the minimal database compatibility required to support the LCR.
instance_number	Returns the instance number of the database instance that made the change that is encapsulated in the LCR. Typically, the instance number is relevant in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) configuration.
object_owner	Returns the schema name that contains the table with the changed row.
object_name	Returns the name of the table that contains the changed row.
scn	Returns the SCN at the time when the change was made.
source_database_name	Returns the name of the source database where the row change occurred.
source_time	Returns the time when the change in an LCR captured by a capture process was generated in the redo log of the source database, or the time when a persistent LCR was created.
tag	Returns a raw tag that can be used to track the LCR.

Table 162–2 (Cont.) Row LCR Attributes

Attribute	Description
transaction_id	Returns the identifier of the transaction in which the DML statement was run.

Specify these attributes in the following way in a statement:

```
:attribute_name
```

For example, to specify the source_database_name attribute for a row LCR, enter the following in a statement:

```
:source_database_name
```

Supported Row LCR Extra Attributes

Statements in statement DML handlers can contain the row LCR extra attributes described in Table 162–3.

Table 162–3 Row LCR Extra Attributes

Attribute	Description
row_id	Returns the rowid of the row changed in a row LCR.
serial#	Returns the serial number of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR.
session#	Returns the identifier of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR.
thread#	Returns the thread number of the instance in which the change captured in the LCR was performed. Typically, the thread number is relevant only in an Oracle RAC configuration.
tx_name	Returns the name of the transaction that includes the LCR.
username	Returns the name of the current user who performed the change captured in the LCR.

Specify these attributes in the following way in a statement:

```
:extra_attribute.attribute_name
```

For example, to specify the row_id extra attribute for a row LCR, enter the following in a statement:

```
:extra_attribute.row_id
```

Supported Row LCR Method

A statement in a statement DML handler can include a call to the EXECUTE member procedure for row LCRs. The EXECUTE member procedure executes the row LCR under the security domain of the current user.

A statement that runs the EXECUTE member procedure can be placed anywhere in the execution sequence order of the statement DML handler. It is not necessary to execute a row LCR unless the goal is to apply the changes in the row LCR to a table in addition to performing any other SQL statements in the statement DML handler.

When you call the EXECUTE member procedure in a statement, the conflict_ resolution parameter controls whether any conflict resolution defined for the table

using the SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER procedure in the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package is used to resolve conflicts resulting from the execution of the LCR:

```
:lcr.execute TRUE|FALSE
```

A TRUE argument indicates that conflict resolution is used. A FALSE argument indicates that conflict resolution is not used.

For example, to use conflict resolution, enter the following in a statement:

```
:lcr.execute TRUE
```

An error is raised if this parameter is not specified or is set to NULL.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM Subprograms

Table 162–4 DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_STMT_TO_HANDLER Procedure on page 162-11	Adds a statement to a statement DML handler
CREATE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure on page 162-12	Creates a statement DML handler
DROP_STMT_HANDLER Procedure on page 162-13	Drops a statement DML handler
REMOVE_STMT_FROM_HANDLER Procedure on page 162-14	Removes a statement from a statement DML handler

Note: The subprograms in this package do not commit.

ADD_STMT_TO_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure adds a statement to a statement DML handler.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM.ADD_STMT_TO_HANDLER(
   handler_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   statement          IN CLOB,
   execution_sequence IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 162–5 ADD_STMT_TO_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler_name	The name of the statement DML handler.
statement	The text of the SQL statement to add to the statement DML handler. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
execution_sequence	The position of the statement in the statement DML handler at which a SQL statement is to be set to execute. Statements are executed in order from the lowest execution sequence number to the highest execution sequence number. You can specify a positive or negative integer or decimal, or you can specify 0 (zero). If you specify an execution sequence number that is used by an existing statement in the statement DML handler, then the statement in the statement parameter replaces the existing statement. If NULL, then the statement is added to the statement DML handler with an execution sequence number that is larger than the execution sequence number for any statement in the statement DML handler.

CREATE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure creates a statement DML handler.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM.CREATE_STMT_HANDLER(
   handler_name IN VARCHAR2,
   comment      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 162–6 CREATE_STMT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler_name	The name of the statement DML handler.
comment	A comment for the statement DML handler. If NULL, then no comment is recorded for the statement DML handler.

DROP_STMT_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure drops a statement DML handler.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM.DROP_STMT_HANDLER(
   handler_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 162–7 DROP_STMT_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler_name	The name of the statement DML handler.

REMOVE_STMT_FROM_HANDLER Procedure

This procedure removes a statement from a statement DML handler.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM.REMOVE_STMT_FROM_HANDLER(
   handler_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   execution_sequence IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 162–8 REMOVE_STMT_FROM_HANDLER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler_name	The name of the statement DML handler.
execution_sequence	The position of the statement to remove. You can specify a positive or negative integer or decimal, or you can specify 0 (zero). If NULL, the procedure removes the last statement in the statement DML handler. If the specified execution sequence number does not exist for the statement DML handler, then the procedure raises an error.

163

DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING

The DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides interfaces to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from a ANYDATA queue.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package.

Overview

This package provides interfaces to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from a ANYDATA queue.

Note: Currently, messaging clients cannot dequeue buffered messages. In addition, the DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING package cannot be used to enqueue messages into or dequeue messages from a buffered queue. However, you can use the DBMS_AQ package to enqueue and dequeue buffered messages.

See Also: *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about queues, messaging, and the DBMS_AQ package

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, configure an Oracle Streams administrator and connect as the Oracle Streams administrator when using this package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING Subprograms

Table 163–1 DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DEQUEUE Procedure on page 163-6	Uses the specified Oracle Streams messaging client to dequeue a message from the specified queue
ENQUEUE Procedure on page 163-8	The current user enqueues a message into the specified queue

Note: The subprograms in this package do not commit.

DEQUEUE Procedure

This procedure uses the specified Oracle Streams messaging client to dequeue a message from the specified queue.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains the `msgid OUT` parameter, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING.DEQUEUE(
   queue_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   payload       OUT  ANYDATA,
   dequeue_mode  IN   VARCHAR2        DEFAULT 'REMOVE',
   navigation    IN   VARCHAR2        DEFAULT 'NEXT MESSAGE',
   wait          IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT FOREVER,
   msgid         OUT  RAW);

DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING.DEQUEUE(
   queue_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   payload       OUT  ANYDATA,
   dequeue_mode  IN   VARCHAR2        DEFAULT 'REMOVE',
   navigation    IN   VARCHAR2        DEFAULT 'NEXT MESSAGE',
   wait          IN   BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT FOREVER);
```

Parameters

Table 163–2 DEQUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_name`	The name of the local queue from which messages will be dequeued, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`queue_name`*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be a secure queue of `ANYDATA` type. For example, to specify a queue named `streams_queue` in the `strmadmin` schema, enter `strmadmin.streams_queue` for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`streams_name`	The name of the Oracle Streams messaging client. For example, if the user `strmadmin` is the messaging client, then specify `strmadmin`. If `NULL` and a relevant messaging client for the queue exists, then the procedure uses the relevant messaging client. If `NULL` and multiple relevant messaging clients for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error.
`payload`	The payload that is dequeued
`dequeue_mode`	Specify one of the following settings: `REMOVE`: Read the message and delete it. This setting is the default. The message can be retained in the queue table based on the retention properties. `LOCKED`: Read and obtain a write lock on the message. The lock lasts for the duration of the transaction. This setting is equivalent to a select for update statement. `BROWSE`: Read the message without acquiring any lock on the message. This specification is equivalent to a select statement.

Table 163–2 (Cont.) DEQUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
navigation	The position of the message that will be retrieved. First, the position is determined. Second, the search criterion is applied. Finally, the message is retrieved. Specify one of the following settings: NEXT MESSAGE: Retrieve the next message that is available and matches the search criteria. If the previous message belongs to a message group, then retrieve the next available message that matches the search criteria and belongs to the message group. This setting is the default. NEXT TRANSACTION: Skip the remainder of the current message group (if any) and retrieve the first message of the next message group. This setting can only be used if message grouping is enabled for the current queue. FIRST MESSAGE: Retrieves the first message which is available and matches the search criteria. This setting resets the position to the beginning of the queue. **Note:** Each message group contains the messages in a single transaction. **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more information about dequeue options
wait	Either FOREVER or NO_WAIT If FOREVER, then the dequeue call is blocked without a time out until a message is available in the queue. If NO_WAIT, then a wait time of zero seconds is used. In this case, the dequeue will return immediately even if there are no messages in the queue.
msgid	The message identifier of the message that is dequeued

Exceptions

Table 163–3 DEQUEUE Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ENDOFCURTRANS	Dequeue has reached the end of the messages in the current transaction. Specify this exception in the following way: SYS.DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING.ENDOFCURTRANS Every dequeue procedure should include an exception handler that handles this exception.
NOMOREMSGS	There are no more messages in the queue for the dequeue operation. Specify this exception in the following way: SYS.DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING.NOMOREMSGS A dequeue procedure that specifies NO_WAIT for the wait parameter should include an exception handler that handles this exception.

ENQUEUE Procedure

This procedure enables the current user to enqueue a message into the specified queue.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains the `msgid OUT` parameter, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING.ENQUEUE(
   queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   payload     IN   ANYDATA,
   msgid       OUT  RAW);

DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING.ENQUEUE(
   queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   payload     IN   ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 163–4 ENQUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`queue_name`	The name of the local queue into which messages will be enqueued, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`queue_name`*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be a secure queue of `ANYDATA` type. For example, to specify a queue named `streams_queue` in the `strmadmin` schema, enter `strmadmin.streams_queue` for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`payload`	The payload that is enqueued
`msgid`	The message identifier of the message that is enqueued

Usage Notes

To successfully enqueue messages into a queue, the current user must be mapped to a unique Advanced Queuing agent with the same name as the current user. You can run the `DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.SET_UP_QUEUE` procedure and specify a user as the queue user to grant the necessary privileges to the user to perform enqueues. The Advanced Queuing agent is created automatically when you run `SET_UP_QUEUE` and specify a queue user.

See Also: SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure on page 159-171

164

DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM

The DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides administrative interfaces for copying tablespaces between databases and moving tablespaces from one database to another. This package uses transportable tablespaces, Data Pump, the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package, and the DBMS_FILE_GROUP package.

This chapter contains the following topics:

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* and *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about this package and Oracle Streams

Using DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM` package.

Overview

Either a simple tablespace or a self-contained tablespace set must be specified in each procedure in this package.

A **self-contained tablespace** has no references from the tablespace pointing outside of the tablespace. For example, if an index in the tablespace is for a table in a different tablespace, then the tablespace is not self-contained. A **simple tablespace** is a self-contained tablespace that uses only one datafile.

A simple tablespace must be specified in the following procedures:

- ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure
- CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure
- DETACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure
- PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

A **self-contained tablespace set** has no references from inside the set of tablespaces pointing outside of the set of tablespaces. For example, if a partitioned table is partially contained in the set of tablespaces, then the set of tablespaces is not self-contained.

A self-contained tablespace set must be specified in the following procedures:

- ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure
- CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure
- DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure
- PULL_TABLESPACES Procedure

To determine whether a set of tablespaces is self-contained, use the `TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK` procedure in the Oracle supplied package `DBMS_TTS`.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about self-contained tablespaces and tablespace sets

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

Data Structures

The DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package defines RECORD types and TABLE types.

RECORD Types

- FILE Record Type

TABLE Types

- DIRECTORY_OBJECT_SET Table Type
- FILE_SET Table Type
- TABLESPACE_SET Table Type

DIRECTORY_OBJECT_SET Table Type

Contains the names of one or more directory objects. Each name must be a directory object created using the SQL statement `CREATE DIRECTORY`.

Syntax

```
TYPE DIRECTORY_OBJECT_SET IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32)
  INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

FILE Record Type

Contains the directory object associated with a directory and the name of the file in the directory.

Syntax

```
TYPE FILE IS RECORD(
   directory_object VARCHAR2(32),
   file_name        VARCHAR2(4000));
```

Fields

Table 164–1 FILE Fields

Field	Description
`directory_object`	The name of a directory object. You must specify the name of a directory object created using the SQL statement `CREATE DIRECTORY`.
`file_name`	The name of the file in the corresponding directory associated with the directory object

FILE_SET Table Type

Contains one or more files.

Syntax

```
TYPE FILE_SET IS TABLE OF FILE
   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

TABLESPACE_SET Table Type

Contains the names of one or more tablespaces.

Syntax

```
TYPE TABLESPACE_SET IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32)
   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM Subprograms

Table 164–2 DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-11	Uses Data Pump to import a simple tablespace previously exported using the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package or Data Pump export
ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-13	Uses Data Pump to import a self-contained tablespace set previously exported using the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package, Data Pump export, or the Recovery Manager (RMAN) TRANSPORT TABLESPACE command
CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-18	Clones a simple tablespace. The tablespace can later be attached to a database.
CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-20	Clones a set of self-contained tablespaces. The tablespaces can later be attached to a database.
DETACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-24	Detaches a simple tablespace. The tablespace can later be attached to a database.
DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-26	Detaches a set of self-contained tablespaces. The tablespaces can later be attached to a database.
PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-30	Copies a simple tablespace from a remote database and attaches it to the current database
PULL_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-32	Copies a set of self-contained tablespaces from a remote database and attaches the tablespaces to the current database

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure uses Data Pump to import a simple tablespace previously exported using the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package, Data Pump export, or the Recovery Manager (RMAN) TRANSPORT TABLESPACE command.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE(
   directory_object      IN  VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_file_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   converted_file_name   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   datafile_platform     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   tablespace_name       OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 164–3 ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
directory_object	The directory that contains the Data Pump dump file and the datafile for the tablespace. You must specify the name of a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. The name of the Data Pump export dump file must be the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with a .dmp extension. If the converted_file_name is non-NULL, specify the dump file produced by the export database, not the file name after conversion. The Data Pump import log file is written to this directory. The name of the log file is the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with an .alg extension. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
tablespace_file_name	The name of the datafile for the tablespace being imported. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
converted_file_name	If the datafile_platform parameter is non-NULL and is different from the platform of the local import database, then specify a file name for the converted datafile. The datafile is converted to the platform of the local import database and copied to the new file name. The existing datafile is not modified nor deleted. If non-NULL and the datafile_platform parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter. If non-NULL and the datafile_platform parameter specifies the same platform as the local import database, then the procedure ignores this parameter. If NULL and the datafile_platform parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 164–3 (Cont.) ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
datafile_platform	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the export database and the current import database. Specify the platform for the export database if the platform is different for the export database and the import database. You can determine the platform of a database by querying the PLATFORM_NAME column in the V$DATABASE dynamic performance view. The V$TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM dynamic performance view lists all platforms that support cross-platform transportable tablespaces.
tablespace_name	Contains the name of the attached tablespace. The attached tablespace is read-only. Use an ALTER TABLESPACE statement to make the tablespace read/write if necessary.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have IMP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have READ and WRITE privilege on the directory object that contains the Data Pump export dump file and the datafiles for the tablespaces in the set, specified by the directory_object parameter

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories cannot be used with this procedure.

See Also: Overview on page 164-3

ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure

This procedure uses Data Pump to import a self-contained tablespace set previously exported using the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package, Data Pump export, or the Recovery Manager (RMAN) TRANSPORT TABLESPACE command.

This procedure is overloaded and consists of the following versions:

- One version of the procedure uses a Data Pump job name in the datapump_job_name parameter. This job performs the Data Pump import to complete the attach operation. In addition, if the platform at the export database is different than the local database platform, then this procedure optionally can create datafiles for the tablespace set that can be used with the local platform.
- The other version of the procedure uses a file group that can consist of multiple versions of the tablespace set in a tablespace repository. A tablespace repository is a collection of tablespace sets in a file group repository. When this version of the procedure is run, a Data Pump import is performed. This version of the procedure uses the files in a file group version and can copy the export dump file, export log file, and the datafiles that comprise the tablespace set into the specified directories. The file group and version are specified using the file_group_name and version_name parameters, respectively. This version of the procedure does not require a datafiles platform specification if the platform at the export database is different than the local database platform. Instead, the tablespace set is migrated automatically to the correct platform when it is attached.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.ATTACH_TABLESPACES(
   datapump_job_name          IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   dump_file                  IN     FILE,
   tablespace_files           IN     FILE_SET,
   converted_files            IN     FILE_SET,
   datafiles_platform         IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                   IN     FILE      DEFAULT NULL,
   tablespace_names           OUT    TABLESPACE_SET);

DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.ATTACH_TABLESPACES(
   file_group_name            IN   VARCHAR2,
   version_name               IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   datafiles_directory_object IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   logfile_directory_object   IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   repository_db_link         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   tablespace_names           OUT  TABLESPACE_SET);
```

Parameters

Table 164–4 ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_pump_job_name	The Data Pump job name. Specify a Data Pump job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If NULL, then the system generates a Data Pump job name.

Table 164–4 (Cont.) ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dump_file	The file name of the Data Pump dump file to import. If NULL or if a file attribute is NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
tablespace_files	The file set that contains the datafiles for the tablespace set being imported. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
converted_files	If the datafiles_platform parameter is non-NULL and is different from the platform for the local import database, then specify a file set with the names of the converted datafiles. The datafiles are converted to the platform of the local import database and copied to the new file names. In this case, the number of files in the specified file set must match the number of files in the file set specified for the tablespace_files parameter. The existing datafiles are not modified nor deleted. If non-NULL and the datafiles_platform parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter. If non-NULL and the datafiles_platform parameter specifies the same platform as the local import database, then the procedure ignores this parameter. If NULL and the datafiles_platform parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
datafiles_platform	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the export database and the current import database. Specify the platform for the export database if the platform is different for the export database and the import database. You can determine the platform of a database by querying the PLATFORM_NAME column in the V$DATABASE dynamic performance view. The V$TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM dynamic performance view lists all platforms that support cross-platform transportable tablespaces.
log_file	Specify the log file name for the Data Pump import. If NULL or if at least one file parameter is NULL, then the system generates a log file name with the extension .alg and places it in the Data Pump export dump file directory. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file.
file_group_name	The name of the file group, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales, then specify hq_dba.sales. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
version_name	The name of the file group version to attach. If NULL, then the procedure uses the version with the latest creation time for the file group.

Table 164–4 (Cont.) ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
datafiles_directory_object	The directory object into which the datafiles and Data Pump export dump file are copied. The files are copied from the tablespace repository directories to this directory. If non-NULL, the attached tablespaces use the files in specified directory. However, the file group version specified in the version_name parameter consists of the files in the original directory, not in the directory specified by this datafiles_directory_object parameter. If NULL, then the procedure does not copy the datafiles and dump file.
logfile_directory_object	The directory object into which the Data Pump import log file is placed. The system generates a log file name with the extension .alg. If NULL, then the procedure places the import log file in the same directory as the dump file.
repository_db_link	If the file group is in a different database, then specify the name of the database link to the database that contains the file group. The database link must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If this parameter is non-NULL, then meet the following requirements: ▪ Each directory object that contains files in the version being attached must exist on both databases. ▪ The corresponding directory objects must have the same names on both databases. If NULL, then the procedure does not use a database link, and the procedure uses the file group in the local database.
tablespace_names	Contains the names of the attached tablespaces. The attached tablespaces are read-only. Use ALTER TABLESPACE statements to make the tablespaces read/write if necessary.

Usage Notes

The following sections contain usage notes for this procedure:

- User Requirements
- Procedures Used to Clone or Detach a Tablespace Set
- When the Attach Database Is Different Than the Clone or Detach Database
- Automatic Storage Management Directories

See Also:

- Overview on page 164-3
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

User Requirements

To run either version of this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have IMP_FULL_DATABASE role

- Have READ and WRITE privilege on the directory objects that contain the Data Pump export dump file and the datafiles for the tablespaces in the set, specified by the dump_file and tablespace_files parameters, or by the datafiles_directory_object parameter
- Have WRITE privilege on the directory object that will hold the Data Pump import log file, specified by the log_file parameter or logfile_directory_object parameter if it is non-NULL

If the Data Pump job version of the procedure is run, then the user must have WRITE privilege on the directory objects that will hold the converted datafiles for the tablespaces in the set if platform conversion is necessary. These directory objects are specified by the converted_files parameter if it is non-NULL.

If the file group version of the procedure is run, then the user must have the necessary privileges to manage the file group.

Procedures Used to Clone or Detach a Tablespace Set

After a tablespace set is cloned or detached using the CLONE_TABLESPACES or DETACH_TABLESPACES procedure, respectively, the tablespace set can be attached to a database using the ATTACH_TABLESPACES procedure. If the Data Pump job version of the CLONE_TABLESPACES or DETACH_TABLESPACES procedure was used, then use the Data Pump job version of the ATTACH_TABLESPACES procedure. If the file group version of the CLONE_TABLESPACES or DETACH_TABLESPACES procedure was used, then use the file group version of the ATTACH_TABLESPACES procedure.

See Also:

- CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-20
- DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-26

When the Attach Database Is Different Than the Clone or Detach Database

You can attach a tablespace set to a different database than the database from which the tablespace set was cloned or detached. The two databases might or might not share a file system. If the two databases do not share a file system, then you must transfer the dump file and datafiles to the remote system using the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package, FTP, or some other method. You can attach the tablespace set in one of the following ways depending on the version of the ATTACH_TABLESPACES procedure you use:

- If you use the Data Pump job version of the procedure, then specify the relevant files on the file system. The directory object names can be different in the databases.
- If you use the file group version of the procedure, then you can use the repository_db_link parameter to specify the database where tablespace repository resides. The directory objects for the files must exist and must match in the databases.

See Also:

- CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-20
- DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-26
- Chapter 68, "DBMS_FILE_GROUP" for more information about file groups

Automatic Storage Management Directories

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories can be specified for the directory objects that store datafiles and export dump files, but ASM directories cannot be specified for directory objects that store log files.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for information about specifying ASM directories for directory objects

CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure clones a simple tablespace. The specified tablespace must be online.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Makes the specified tablespace read-only if it is not read-only
2. Uses Data Pump to export the metadata for the tablespace and places the dump file in the specified directory
3. Places the datafile for the specified tablespace in the specified directory
4. If this procedure made the tablespace read-only, then makes the tablespace read/write

In addition, this procedure optionally can create a datafile for the tablespace that can be used with a platform that is different than the local database platform.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE(
   tablespace_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   directory_object     IN  VARCHAR2,
   destination_platform IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   tablespace_file_name OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 164–5 CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_name	The tablespace to be cloned. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
directory_object	The directory where the Data Pump export dump file, the Data Pump export log file, and the datafile for the tablespace are placed. You must specify the name of a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. The name of the Data Pump export dump file is the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with a .dmp extension. If a file exists with the same name as the dump file in the directory, then the procedure raises an error. The name of the log file is the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with a .clg extension. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
destination_platform	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the current export database and the intended import database. Specify the platform for the intended import database if the platform is different for the export database and the import database. You can determine the platform of a database by querying the PLATFORM_NAME column in the V$DATABASE dynamic performance view. The V$TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM dynamic performance view lists all platforms that support cross-platform transportable tablespaces.

Table 164–5 (Cont.) CLONE_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_file_name	Contains the name of the cloned tablespace datafile. This datafile is placed in the directory specified by the parameter directory_object.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have EXP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have access to at least one data dictionary view that contains information about the tablespaces. These views include DBA_TABLESPACES and USER_TABLESPACES.
- Have MANAGE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE on a tablespace if the tablespace must be made read-only
- Have READ privilege on the directory object for the directory that contains the datafile for the tablespace. The name of this tablespace is specified by the tablespace_name parameter. If a directory object does not exist for this directory, then create the directory object and grant the necessary privileges before you run this procedure.
- Have READ and WRITE privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export dump file, specified by the directory_object parameter
- If the file group version of the procedure is run, then the user must have the necessary privileges to manage file group.

After cloning a tablespace using this procedure, you can add the tablespace to a different database using the ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure. If the database is a remote database and you want to use the ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure, then you can transfer the dump file and datafile to the remote system using the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package, FTP, or some other method.

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories cannot be used with this procedure.

See Also:

- Overview on page 164-3
- ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-11 and PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-30

CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure

This procedure clones a set of self-contained tablespaces. All of the tablespaces in the specified tablespace set must be online.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Makes any read/write tablespace in the specified tablespace set read-only
2. Uses Data Pump to export the metadata for the tablespaces in the tablespace set and places the dump file in the specified directory
3. Places the datafiles that comprise the specified tablespace set in the specified directory
4. If this procedure made a tablespace read-only, then makes the tablespace read/write

This procedure is overloaded and consists of the following versions:

- One version of the procedure uses a Data Pump job name in the `datapump_job_name` parameter. This job performs the Data Pump export. This version of the procedure completes the clone operation by placing the export dump file, export log file, and the datafiles that comprise the tablespace set in the specified directories, but the files are not added to a file group version. In addition, this version of the procedure optionally can create datafiles for the tablespace set that can be used with a platform that is different than the local database platform.
- The other version of the procedure uses a file group that can consist of multiple versions of the tablespace set in a tablespace repository. A tablespace repository is a collection of tablespace sets in a file group repository. When this version of the procedure is run, a Data Pump export is performed, and this version of the procedure completes the clone operation by placing the export dump file, export log file, and the datafiles that comprise the tablespace set in the appropriate file group version. The file group and version are specified using the `file_group_name` and `version_name` parameters, respectively. This version of the procedure does not require a destination platform specification if the destination platform is different. Instead, the tablespace set is migrated automatically to the correct platform when it is attached at the destination database using the file group version of the `ATTACH_TABLESPACES` procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.CLONE_TABLESPACES(
   datapump_job_name            IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_names             IN     TABLESPACE_SET,
   dump_file                    IN     FILE,
   tablespace_directory_objects IN     DIRECTORY_OBJECT_SET,
   destination_platform         IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file                     IN     FILE      DEFAULT NULL,
   tablespace_files             OUT    FILE_SET);

DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.CLONE_TABLESPACES(
   tablespace_names             IN  TABLESPACE_SET,
   tablespace_directory_object  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file_directory_object    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   file_group_name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   version_name                 IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   repository_db_link           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 164–6 CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_pump_job_name	The Data Pump job name. Specify a Data Pump job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If NULL, then the system generates a Data Pump job name.
tablespace_names	The tablespace set to be cloned. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
dump_file	The file name of the Data Pump dump file that is exported. If NULL or if a file attribute is NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If the specified file exists, then the procedure raises an error.
tablespace_directory_objects	The set of directory objects into which the datafiles for the tablespaces are copied. If multiple directory objects are in the set, then the procedure copies a datafile to each directory object in the set in sequence. In this case, if the end of the directory object set is reached, then datafile copying starts again with the first directory object in the set. If NULL, then the procedure copies datafiles for the tablespace set to the dump file directory.
destination_platform	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the current export database and the intended import database. Specify the platform for the intended import database if the platform is different for the export database and the import database. You can determine the platform of a database by querying the PLATFORM_NAME column in the V$DATABASE dynamic performance view. The V$TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM dynamic performance view lists all platforms that support cross-platform transportable tablespaces.
log_file	Specify the log file name for the Data Pump export. If NULL or if at least one file parameter is NULL, then the system generates a log file name with the extension .clg and places it in the dump file directory. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file.

Table 164–6 (Cont.) CLONE_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_directory_object	The directory object into which the data files are copied and Data Pump export dump file is placed. The system generates a dump file name with the extension .dmp. If NULL, then the procedure copies the datafiles to and places the dump file in the default directory object for the version. If the version does not have a default directory object, then the procedure uses the default directory object for the file group. If NULL and no default directory object exists for the version or file group, then the procedure raises an error.
log_file_directory_object	The directory object into which the Data Pump export log file is placed. The system generates a log file name with the extension .clg. If NULL, then the procedure uses the directory object specified in tablespace_directory_object.
file_group_name	The name of the file group, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales, then specify hq_dba.sales. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the specified file group does not exist, then the procedure creates it.
version_name	The name of the version into which the cloned tablespace set is placed. The specified version name cannot be a positive integer. If the specified version does not exist, then the procedure creates it. If the specified version exists, then the procedure adds the tablespace set to the version. Only one Data Pump export dump file can exist in a version. If NULL, then the procedure creates a new version, and the version number can be used to manage the version.
repository_db_link	If the file group is in a remote database, then specify the name of the database link to the database that contains the file group. The database link must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If this parameter is non-NULL, then the directory object specified in tablespace_directory_object must exist on the local database and on the remote database. If tablespace_directory_object is NULL, then the default directory object must exist on both databases. The directory object must have the same name on each database and must correspond to the same directory on a shared file system. If NULL, then the procedure does not use a database link, and the procedure uses the file group in the local database.
tablespace_files	Contains the datafiles for the cloned tablespace set. These datafiles are placed in the directories specified by the directory objects in the parameter tablespace_directory_objects.

Usage Notes

To run either version of this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have EXP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have access to at least one data dictionary view that contains information about the tablespaces. These views include DBA_TABLESPACES and USER_TABLESPACES.
- Have MANAGE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE on a tablespace if the tablespace must be made read-only
- Have READ privilege on the directory objects for the directories that contain the datafiles for the tablespace set. The names of these tablespaces are specified by the tablespace_names parameter. If a directory object does not exist for one or more of these directories, then create the directory objects and grant the necessary privileges before you run this procedure.
- Have READ and WRITE privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export dump file, specified by the dump_file parameter or the tablespace_directory_object parameter
- Have WRITE privilege on the directory objects that will contain the copied datafiles for the tablespaces in the set, specified by the tablespace_directory_objects parameter if non-NULL or the tablespace_directory_object parameter
- Have WRITE privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export log file, specified by the log_file parameter if non-NULL or the log_file_directory_object parameter if non-NULL

If the file group version of the procedure is run, then the user must have the necessary privileges to manage the file group.

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories can be specified for the directory objects that store datafiles and export dump files, but ASM directories cannot be specified for directory objects that store log files.

After cloning a tablespace set using this procedure, you can attach the tablespaces to a different database using the ATTACH_TABLESPACES procedure.

See Also:

- Overview on page 164-3
- ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-13
- Chapter 68, "DBMS_FILE_GROUP" for more information about file groups
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

DETACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure detaches a simple tablespace. The specified tablespace must be online.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Makes the specified tablespace read-only if it is not read-only
2. Uses Data Pump to export the metadata for the tablespace and places the dump file in the directory that contains the tablespace datafile
3. Drops the tablespace and its contents from the database

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.DETACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE(
   tablespace_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   directory_object      OUT VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_file_name  OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 164–7 DETACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_pump_job_name	The Data Pump job name. Specify a Data Pump job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If NULL, then the system generates a Data Pump job name.
directory_object	Contains the directory where the Data Pump export dump file and the Data Pump export log file are placed. The procedure uses the directory of the datafile for the tablespace. Therefore, make sure a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY exists for this directory. The name of the Data Pump export dump file is the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with a .dmp extension. If a file exists with the same name as the dump file in the directory, then the procedure raises an error. The name of the log file is the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with a .dlg extension. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file.
tablespace_file_name	Contains the name of the detached tablespace datafile.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have EXP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have access to at least one data dictionary view that contains information about the tablespaces. These views include DBA_TABLESPACES and USER_TABLESPACES.
- Have DROP TABLESPACE privilege
- Have MANAGE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE on a tablespace if the tablespace must be made read-only
- Have READ and WRITE privilege on the directory object for the directory that contains the tablespace datafile. The name of this tablespace is specified by the tablespace_name parameter. If a directory object does not exist for this directory,

then create the directory object and grant the necessary privileges before you run this procedure. This directory also will contain the Data Pump export dump file generated by this procedure.

After detaching a tablespace using this procedure, you can add the tablespace to a different database using the ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure. If the database is a remote database and you want to use the ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure, then you can transfer the dump file and datafile to the remote system using the DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER package, FTP, or some other method. You can use the two OUT parameters in this procedure to accomplish the attach or pull operation.

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories cannot be used with this procedure.

Note: Do not use the DETACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE procedure on a tablespace if the tablespace is using the Oracle-managed files feature. If you do, then the datafile for the tablespace is dropped automatically when the tablespace is dropped.

See Also:

- Overview on page 164-3
- ATTACH_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-11 and PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 164-30
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about the Oracle-managed files feature

DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure

This procedure detaches a set of self-contained tablespaces. All of the tablespaces in the specified tablespace set must be online and any table partitions must not span tablespaces in the tablespace set.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Makes any read/write tablespace in the specified tablespace set read-only
2. Uses Data Pump to export the metadata for the tablespace set and places the dump file in the specified directory
3. Drops the tablespaces in the specified tablespace set and their contents from the database

This procedure does not move or copy the datafiles that comprise the specified tablespace set.

This procedure is overloaded and consists of the following versions:

- One version of the procedure uses a Data Pump job name in the `datapump_job_name` parameter. This job performs the Data Pump export. This version of the procedure completes the detach operation by placing the export dump file and export log file in the specified directories, but the files are not added to a file group version.
- The other version of the procedure uses a file group that can consist of multiple versions of the tablespace set in a tablespace repository. A tablespace repository is a collection of tablespace sets in a file group repository. When this version of the procedure is run, a Data Pump export is performed, and this version of the procedure completes the detach operation by placing the export dump file and export log file in the appropriate file group version. The datafiles that comprise the tablespace set are not moved or copied, but they are referenced in the version that is detached. The file group and version are specified using the `file_group_name` and `version_name` parameters, respectively. Also, if the destination platform is different, then the tablespace set is migrated automatically to the correct platform when it is attached at the destination database using the file group version of the `ATTACH_TABLESPACES` procedure.

> **Note:** Do not use the `DETACH_TABLESPACES` procedure if any of the tablespaces in the tablespace set are using the Oracle-managed files feature. If you do, then the datafiles for these tablespaces are dropped automatically when the tablespaces are dropped.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.DETACH_TABLESPACES(
   datapump_job_name         IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_names          IN     TABLESPACE_SET,
   dump_file                 IN     FILE,
   log_file                  IN     FILE  DEFAULT NULL,
   tablespace_files          OUT    FILE_SET);

DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.DETACH_TABLESPACES(
   tablespace_names          IN TABLESPACE_SET,
   export_directory_object   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   log_file_directory_object IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   file_group_name           IN VARCHAR2,
```

```
   version_name              IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   repository_db_link        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 164–8 DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
data_pump_job_name	The Data Pump job name. Specify a Data Pump job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If NULL, then the system generates a Data Pump job name.
tablespace_names	The tablespace set to be detached. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
dump_file	The file name of the Data Pump dump file that is exported. If NULL or if a file attribute is NULL, then the procedure raises an error. If the specified file exists, then the procedure raises an error.
log_file	Specify the log file name for the Data Pump export. If NULL or if at least one file parameter is NULL, then the system generates a log file name with the extension .dlg and places it in the dump file directory. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file.
tablespace_files	Contains the names of the datafiles for the detached tablespace set.
export_directory_object	The directory object into which the Data Pump export dump file is placed. The system generates a dump file name with the extension .dmp. If NULL, then procedure places the dump file in the default directory object for the version. If the version does not have a default directory object, then the procedure uses the default directory object for the file group. If NULL and no default directory object exists for the version or file group, then the procedure raises an error.
log_file_directory_object	The directory object into which the Data Pump export log file is placed. The system generates a log file name with the extension .dlg. If NULL, then the procedure places the export log file in the same directory as the export dump file.
file_group_name	The name of the file group, specified as *[schema_name.]file_group_name*. For example, if the schema is hq_dba and the file group name is sales, then specify hq_dba.sales. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the specified file group does not exist, then the procedure creates it.

Table 164–8 (Cont.) DETACH_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
version_name	The name of the version into which the detached tablespace set is placed. The specified version name cannot be a positive integer. If the specified version does not exist, then the procedure creates it. If the specified version exists, then procedure adds the tablespace set to the version. Only one Data Pump export dump file can exist in a version. If NULL, then the procedure creates a new version, and the version number can be used to manage the version.
repository_db_link	If the file group is in a remote database, then specify the name of the database link to the database that contains the file group. The database link must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If this parameter is non-NULL, then the directory object specified in export_directory_object must exist on the local database and on the remote database. If export_directory_object is NULL, then the default directory object must exist on both databases. The directory object must have the same name on each database and must correspond to the same directory on a shared file system. If NULL, then the procedure does not use a database link, and the procedure uses the file group in the local database.

Usage Notes

To run this either version of this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements:

- Have EXP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have access to at least one data dictionary view that contains information about the tablespaces. These views include DBA_TABLESPACES and USER_TABLESPACES.
- Have DROP TABLESPACE privilege
- Have MANAGE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE on a tablespace if the tablespace must be made read-only
- Have READ privilege on the directory objects for the directories that contain the datafiles for the tablespace set. The names of these tablespaces are specified by the tablespace_names parameter. If a directory object does not exist for one or more of these directories, then create the directory objects and grant the necessary privileges before you run this procedure.
- Have READ and WRITE privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export dump file, specified by the dump_file parameter or the export_directory_object parameter
- Have WRITE privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export the log file, specified by the log_file parameter if non-NULL or by the log_file_directory_object parameter if non-NULL

If the file group version of the procedure is run, then the user must have the necessary privileges to manage the file group.

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories can be specified for the directory objects that store datafiles and export dump files, but ASM directories cannot be specified for directory objects that store log files.

After detaching a tablespace set using this procedure, you can attach the tablespaces to a different database using the `ATTACH_TABLESPACES` procedure.

See Also:

- Overview on page 164-3
- ATTACH_TABLESPACES Procedure on page 164-13
- Chapter 68, "DBMS_FILE_GROUP" for more information about file groups
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for more information about the Oracle-managed files feature

PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure copies a simple tablespace from a remote database and attaches it to the current database. The specified tablespace at the remote database must be online.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Makes the specified tablespace read-only at the remote database if it is not read-only
2. Uses Data Pump to export the metadata for the tablespace
3. Uses a database link and the `DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER` package to transfer the datafile for the tablespace and the log file for the Data Pump export to the current database
4. Places the datafile for the specified tablespace and the log file for the Data Pump export in the specified directory at the local database
5. If this procedure made the tablespace read-only, then makes the tablespace read/write
6. Uses Data Pump to import the metadata for the tablespace in the local database

In addition, this procedure optionally can create a datafile for the tablespace that can be used with the local platform, if the platform at the remote database is different than the local database platform.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE(
   tablespace_name          IN VARCHAR2,
   database_link            IN VARCHAR2,
   directory_object         IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   conversion_extension     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   convert_directory_object IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 164–9 PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tablespace_name`	The tablespace to be pulled. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`database_link`	The name of the database link to the database that contains the tablespace to pull. The database link must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.
`directory_object`	The directory object to which the datafile for the tablespace is copied on the local database. You must specify the name of a directory object created using the SQL statement `CREATE DIRECTORY`. The Data Pump import log file is written to this directory. The name of the log file is the same as the data file name for the tablespace, except with a `.plg` extension. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 164–9 (Cont.) PULL_SIMPLE_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
conversion_extension	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the remote export database and the current import database. If the platform is different for the export database and the import database, then specify an extension for the tablespace datafile that is different than the extension for the tablespace datafile at the remote database. In this case, the procedure transfers the datafile to the import database and converts it to be compatible with the current import database platform automatically. After conversion is complete, the original datafile is deleted at the import database.
convert_directory_object	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the remote export database and the current import database. If the platform is different for the export database and the import database, then specify a directory object in the local export database. The procedure uses the directory object for platform conversion before it transfers the files to the remote database. You must specify the name of a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements on the remote database:

- Have the EXP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package
- Have access to at least one data dictionary view that contains information about the tablespaces. These views include DBA_TABLESPACES and USER_TABLESPACES.
- Have MANAGE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE privilege on a tablespace if the tablespace must be made read-only
- Have READ privilege on the directory object for the directory that contains the datafile for the tablespace. The name of this tablespace is specified by the tablespace_name parameter. If a directory object does not exist for this directory, then create the directory object and grant the necessary privileges before you run this procedure.

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements on the local database:

- Have the roles IMP_FULL_DATABASE and EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE
- Have WRITE privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export the log file, specified by the log_file parameter if non-NULL
- Have WRITE privilege on the directory object that will hold the datafile for the tablespace, specified by the directory_object parameter

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories cannot be used with this procedure.

See Also: Overview on page 164-3

PULL_TABLESPACES Procedure

This procedure copies a set of self-contained tablespaces from a remote database and attaches the tablespaces to the current database. All of the tablespaces in the specified tablespace set at the remote database must be online.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Makes any read/write tablespace in the specified tablespace set at the remote database read-only
2. Uses Data Pump to export the metadata for the tablespaces in the tablespace set
3. Uses a database link and the `DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER` package to transfer the datafiles for the tablespace set and the log file for the Data Pump export to the current database
4. Places the datafiles that comprise the specified tablespace set in the specified directories at the local database
5. Places the log file for the Data Pump export in the specified directory at the local database
6. If this procedure made a tablespace read-only, then makes the tablespace read/write
7. Uses Data Pump to import the metadata for the tablespaces in the tablespace set at the local database

In addition, this procedure optionally can create datafiles for the tablespace set that can be used with the local platform, if the platform at the remote database is different than the local database platform.

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM.PULL_TABLESPACES(
   datapump_job_name            IN OUT VARCHAR2,
   database_link                IN     VARCHAR2,
   tablespace_names             IN     TABLESPACE_SET,
   tablespace_directory_objects IN     DIRECTORY_OBJECT_SET,
   log_file                     IN     FILE,
   conversion_extension         IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   convert_directory_object     IN     VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 164–10 PULL_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`data_pump_job_name`	The Data Pump job name. Specify a Data Pump job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If `NULL`, then the system generates a Data Pump job name.
`database_link`	The name of the database link to the database that contains the tablespace set to pull. The database link must be accessible to the user who runs the procedure. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error.

Table 164–10 (Cont.) PULL_TABLESPACES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tablespace_names	The tablespace set to be pulled. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
tablespace_directory_objects	The set of directory objects to which the datafiles for the tablespaces are copied. If multiple directory objects are in the set, then the procedure copies a datafile to each directory object in the set in sequence. In this case, if the end of the directory object set is reached, then datafile copying starts again with the first directory object in the set. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
log_file	Specify the log file name for the Data Pump export. If NULL or if at least one file parameter is NULL, then the system generates a log file name with the extension .plg and places it in one of the data file directories. If a file exists with the same name as the log file in the directory, then the procedure overwrites the file.
conversion_extension	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the remote export database and the current import database. If the platform is different for the export database and the import database, then specify an extension for the tablespace datafiles that is different than the extension for the tablespace datafiles at the remote database. In this case, the procedure transfers the datafiles to the import database and converts them to be compatible with the current import database platform automatically. After conversion is complete, the original datafiles are deleted at the import database.
convert_directory_object	Specify NULL if the platform is the same for the remote export database and the current import database. If the platform is different for the export database and the import database, then specify a directory object in the local export database. The procedure uses the directory object for platform conversion before it transfers the files to the remote database. You must specify the name of a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY.

Usage Notes

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements on the remote database:

- Have the EXP_FULL_DATABASE role
- Have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_STREAMS_TABLESPACE_ADM package
- Have access to at least one data dictionary view that contains information about the tablespaces. These views include DBA_TABLESPACES and USER_TABLESPACES.
- Have MANAGE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE privilege on a tablespace if the tablespace must be made read-only
- Have READ privilege on the directory objects for the directories that contain the datafiles for the tablespace set. The names of these tablespaces are specified by the tablespace_names parameter. If a directory object does not exist for one or more of

these directories, then create the directory objects and grant the necessary privileges before you run this procedure.

To run this procedure, a user must meet the following requirements on the local database:

- Have the roles `IMP_FULL_DATABASE` and `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE`
- Have `WRITE` privilege on the directory object that will contain the Data Pump export the log file, specified by the `log_file` parameter if non-`NULL`
- Have `WRITE` privilege on the directory objects that will hold the datafiles for the tablespaces in the set, specified by the `tablespace_directory_objects` parameter

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) directories can be specified for the directory objects that store datafiles and export dump files, but ASM directories cannot be specified for directory objects that store log files.

See Also: Overview on page 164-3

165

DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH

The DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH package provides an interface to perform a synchronous refresh of materialized views.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information on using DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH

Overview

Synchronous refresh is a refresh method introduced in Oracle Database Release 12*c*, which enables you to keep a set of tables and the materialized views defined on them to be always in sync.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information about using synchronous refresh

Security Model

The execute privilege for this package is granted to PUBLIC, so all users can execute the procedures in this package to perform synchronous refresh on objects owned by them. The database administrator can perform synchronous refresh operations on all tables and materialized views in the database.

In general, if a user without the DBA privilege wants to use synchronous refresh on another user's table, he must complete privileges to read from and write to that table, that it, the user must have the SELECT or READ, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE privileges on that table or materialized view. A couple of exceptions are:

- PURGE_REFRESH_STATS and ALTER_REFRESH_STATS_RETENTION Functions

  These two functions implement the purge policy and can be used to change the default retention period. These functions can be only be executed by the database administrator.

- The CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE Function

  This is an advisory function which examines the eligibility for sync refresh of all the materialized views associated with a specified table. Hence, this function requires the SELECT or READ privilege on all materialized views associated with the specified table.

Summary of DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH Subprograms

Table 165–1 DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ABORT_REFRESH Procedure on page 165-6	Aborts a refresh.
ALTER_REFRESH_STATS_RETENTION Procedure on page 165-7	Alters the refresh history retention value, specified in days.
CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE Procedure on page 165-8	Advises on whether a table and its dependent materialized views are eligible for synchronous refresh.
EXECUTE_REFRESH Procedure on page 165-10	Executes synchronous refresh on the synchronous refresh groups.
GET_ALL_GROUP_IDS Function on page 165-10	Returns the group IDs of all the synchronous refresh groups in the database.
GET_GROUP_ID Function on page 165-12	Returns the group ID of a table or materialized view.
GET_GROUP_ID_LIST Function on page 165-12	Returns the group IDs of the tables in a given list of objects (tables or materialized views).
PREPARE_REFRESH Procedure on page 165-14	Prepares the sync refresh groups for refresh.
PREPARE_STAGING_LOG Procedure on page 165-16	Validates and collects statistics on the data in the staging log.
PURGE_REFRESH_STATS Procedure on page 165-18	Purges the refresh history of sync refreshes that took place within a time specified by a timestamp parameter.
REGISTER_MVIEWS on page 165-19	Registers materialized views for synchronous refresh.
REGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION Procedure on page 165-20	Registers a partition maintenance operation on a partition of a base table.
UNREGISTER_MVIEWS on page 165-21	Unregisters materialized views from synchronous refresh.
UNREGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION Procedure on page 165-22	Unregisters a partition maintenance operation on a partition of a base table.

ABORT_REFRESH Procedure

This procedure undoes all the changes made by PREPARE_REFRESH or EXECUTE_REFRESH for the specified sync refresh groups. It helps you to recover to a state where the tables and materialized views are usable and consistent in case they encounter unexpected errors.

This procedure is overloaded.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.ABORT_REFRESH (
   group_id      IN NUMBER);

DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.ABORT_REFRESH (
   group_id_list IN DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 165–2 ABORT_REFRESH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_id	The group ID of a sync refresh group.
group_id_list	An array of group IDs of the sync refresh groups to be aborted for sync refresh.

Usage Notes

If called after PREPARE_REFRESH, this procedure drops the outside tables created by it and unlocks the tables and materialized views in the sync refresh group.

If called after EXECUTE_REFRESH fails, this procedure restores the state of tables to before EXECUTE_REFRESH by undoing any partition exchanges which successfully finished.

This procedure releases the locks placed on the tables in the sync refresh group which were placed on them by the PREPARE_REFRESH procedure. See "PREPARE_REFRESH Procedure" on page 165-14 for a description of these locks.

ABORT_REFRESH will work only if a PREPARE_REFRESH or EXECUTE_REFRESH statement has failed. It cannot be used after successful runs of those commands, and throws an error in such cases.

ALTER_REFRESH_STATS_RETENTION Procedure

This procedure alters the refresh history retention value, specified in days. It is intended for use in conjunction with PURGE_REFRESH_HISTORY. It also requires the SYSDBA privilege in addition to the privilege to execute it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.ALTER_REFRESH_STATS_RETENTION (
   retention   IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 165–3 ALTER_REFRESH_STATS_RETENTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
retention	The retention time in days. The refresh history will be retained for at least these many number of days. The valid range is 1 to 365,000. You can use the following values for special purposes: ■ -1 - Refresh history is never purged by PREPARE_REFRESH. ■ 0 - Old refresh history is never saved. PREPARE_REFRESH will delete all refresh history. ■ NULL - Change refresh history retention to default value.

CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE Procedure

This procedure advises on whether a table and its dependent materialized views are eligible for sync refresh. It provides an explanation of its analysis. If not eligible, you can examine the reasons and take appropriate action if possible.

This procedure lists all of the table's dependent materialized views and whether they qualify for sync refresh. Note that a materialized view may qualify for sync refresh even though the base table may not.

The eligibility rules for materialized views for synchronous refresh are discussed in detail in *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide.*

You can invoke CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE in two ways. The first is to use a table, while the second is to create a VARRAY.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE (
    schema_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
    statement_id   IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE (
    schema_name    IN VARCHAR2,
    table_name     IN VARCHAR2,
    output_array   IN OUT Sys.CanSyncRefTypeArray);
```

Note that only one of statement_id or output_array need be provided to CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE.

Parameters

Table 165–4 CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	The name of the schema of the base table.
table_name	The name of the base table.
statement_id	A string (VARCHAR2(30)) to identify the rows pertaining to an invocation of CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE when the output is directed to a table named SYNCREF_TABLE in the user's schema.
output_array	The output array into which CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE records the information on the eligibility of the base table and its dependent materialized views for synchronous refresh.

Using SYNCREF_TABLE

The output of CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE can be directed to a table named SYNCREF_TABLE. The user is responsible for creating the SYNCREF_TABLE; it can be dropped when it is no longer needed. Its structure is as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE SYNCREF_TABLE (
   statement_id    VARCHAR2(30),
   schema_name     VARCHAR2(30),
   table_name      VARCHAR2(30),
   mv_schema_name  VARCHAR2(30),
   mv_name         VARCHAR2(30),
```

```
   eligible        VARCHAR2(1),
   seq_num         NUMBER,
   msg_number      NUMBER,
   message         VARCHAR2(4000));
```

Using a VARRAY

You can save the output of CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE in a PL/SQL VARRAY. The elements of this array are of type CanSyncRefMessage, which is predefined in the SYS schema, as shown in the following:

```
TYPE CanSyncRefMessage IS OBJECT (
   schema_name     VARCHAR2(30),
   table_name      VARCHAR2(30),
   mv_schema_name  VARCHAR2(30),
   mv_name         VARCHAR2(30),
   eligible        VARCHAR2(1),
   seq_num         NUMBER,
   msg_number      NUMBER,
   message         VARCHAR2(4000));
```

The array type CanSyncRefArrayType, which is a varray of CanSyncRefMessage objects, is predefined in the SYS schema as follows:

```
TYPE CanSyncRefArrayType AS VARRAY(256) OF CanSyncRefMessage;
```

Each CanSyncRefMessage record provides a message concerning the eligibility of the base table or a dependent materialized view for synchronous refresh. The semantics of the fields is the same as that of the corresponding fields in the SYNCREF_TABLE. However, the SYNCREF_TABLE has a statement_id field which is absent in CanSyncRefMessage because no statement_id is supplied (because it is not required) when CAN_SYNCREF_TABLE is called with a VARRAY parameter.

EXECUTE_REFRESH Procedure

This procedure executes sync refresh on the sync refresh groups prepared by DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.PREPARE_REFRESH. These groups are identified by their group IDs. Note this procedure will only perform the refresh on those materialized views that have been registered for synch refresh; any other materialized views will become stale once this procedure completes.

For more information on how to monitor the status of the two synchronous refresh operations, PREPARE_REFRESH and EXECUTE_REFRESH and how to troubleshoot errors that might occur using the information in the catalog views, refer to "Trouble-Shooting Synchronous Refresh Operations" in *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide.*

This procedure is overloaded.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.EXECUTE_REFRESH (
   group_id   IN NUMBER);

DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.EXECUTE_REFRESH (
   group_id_list  IN DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY);
```

Parameters

Table 165–5 EXECUTE_REFRESH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_id	The group ID of a sync refresh group.
group_id_list	An array of group IDs of the sync refresh groups to be executed for sync refresh.

Usage Notes

This procedure also releases the locks placed on the tables in the sync refresh group that were placed on them by the PREPARE_REFRESH procedure. See "PREPARE_REFRESH Procedure" on page 165-14 for a description of these locks and *Oracle Database Reference* for information regarding the status of the refresh operation after DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.EXECUTE_REFRESH.

GET_ALL_GROUP_IDS Function

This function returns the group IDs of all the sync refresh groups in the database.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.GET_ALL_GROUP_IDS
           RETURN DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 165–6 GET_ALL_GROUP_IDS Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
get_all_group_ids	Returns the group IDs of all the sync refresh groups in the database.

GET_GROUP_ID Function

This function returns the group ID of a materialized view. The group ID identifies the sync refresh group the table belongs to. A sync refresh group is a group of related tables and their dependent materialized views which must be all refreshed together jointly to ensure consistency and correctness.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.GET_GROUP_ID (
   object_name_list   IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 165–7 GET_GROUP_ID Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
object_name_list	The name of the materialized view. The name can be schema-qualified.

GET_GROUP_ID_LIST Function

This function returns the group IDs of the tables in a given list of objects (materialized views).

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.GET_GROUP_ID_LIST (
   object_name_list   IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 165–8 GET_GROUP_ID_LIST Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
object_name_list	A comma-separated list of object names (materialized views). Each name can be schema-qualified.

PREPARE_REFRESH Procedure

This procedure prepares for refresh the sync refresh groups identified by the group ID in the input. A sync refresh group consists of a set of related tables and all materialized views dependent on those base tables. Note this procedure will only prepare for refresh those dependent materialized views that have been registered for synchronous refresh.

For more information on how to monitor the status of the two synchronous refresh operations, PREPARE_REFRESH and EXECUTE_REFRESH and how to troubleshoot errors that might occur using the information in the catalog views, refer to "Trouble-Shooting Synchronous Refresh Operations" in *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide.*

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.PREPARE_REFRESH (
   group_id   IN NUMBER)
RETURN DBMS_UTILITY.NUMBER_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 165–9 PREPARE_REFRESH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
group_id	The group ID of the sync refresh group to be prepared for sync refresh.

Usage Notes

This procedure plans the three phases of the sync refresh operation and executes the steps associated with the prepare phase itself. These steps include identifying the partitions of the fact tables and materialized views that have been changed, and computing their new values as a result of the changes. The new values of the partitions are stored in tables called outside tables that are exchanged into their corresponding partitions at the time of the EXECUTE_REFRESH.

Before running this procedure, the user must run PREPARE_STAGING_LOG on all tables in the group. This is required even for staging logs that do not have changes in them. The user must also register any partition operations on the tables in the group using the REGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION.

One of the side effects of this procedure is that the tables being prepared are locked in this sense: the staging logs of the tables will be locked to prevent any DMLs from occurring and the registration of partition operations will be disabled. These locks will be in effect until you issue an EXECUTE_REFRESH statement. Alternatively, you can issue an ABORT_REFRESH operation to release these locks. Another side effect of this procedure is that it purges from the catalog records of earlier sync refresh operations; if they are older than the retention period, they are purged.

The degree of parallelism of the prepare refresh job is inherited from the session parameters which you can control with an ALTER SESSION statement.

The group ID of a table can be found using GET_GROUP_ID(table_name). The group IDs of a list of tables can be found with GET_GROUP_ID_LIST(table_name_list). The group IDs of all the lists of tables can be retrieved with GET_ALL_GROUP_IDS.

By default, synchronous refresh does not maintain global indexes belonging to the tables and materialized views in the sync refresh group. If you wish to do so, you can

set event 31904, level 64 before executing PREPARE_REFRESH. This will cause the partition exchange DDL statements generated by PREPARE_REFRESH to have the UPDATE INDEXES clause appended to them, and when they are executed by EXECUTE_REFRESH, the global indexes will be maintained.

PREPARE_STAGING_LOG Procedure

This procedure collects statistics on the data in the staging log of the base table and validates the data in the log. It can be run in several different modes ranging from the enforced mode in which strict checking of the data is done to trusted mode in which no checking is done. You should run this procedure after loading the staging log and before running `PREPARE_REFRESH`.

In the enforced mode, which is the default, this procedure will fill in the missing values of the columns of the rows being deleted or updated. An error is thrown if any violations of the staging-log rules are found. You can query the view `USER_SR_STLOG_EXCEPTIONS` to get details on the exceptions.

The notion of the staging log key is described in *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide.*

In the enforced mode, this procedure processes each delete/update row in the staging log as follows:

- It verifies the existence of the row in the base table using the key.
- For the rows being deleted (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'D'`), it verifies a row with this key exists in the base table; if non-null non-key values are supplied in the staging log, it verifies the values match the corresponding columns in the base table; else an exception is logged in the exceptions table. If the values of any of the non-key columns are missing, it fills in those values from the row in the base table.
- For the rows being updated (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'UO'` or `'UN'`), it verifies a row with this key exists in the base table. In the old values row (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'UO'`), it makes the same check and does the same processing as with rows being deleted. In the new values row (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'UN'`), it checks that at least the value of one the columns differs from its old value; else an exception is logged.
- In the new values row (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'UN'`), a null value in a column is interpreted as having the same value as the old value of the column except if the old value is non-null and the new value is null in which case, the new value of the column is interpreted as being null. This requires that the user must provide the old value of columns which are being updated to `NULL`.

In the default enforced mode, this procedure verifies that each key is specified for at most once for a delete or update operation. This means that the user, when doing the change consolidation, must consolidate delete-insert of the same row into an update operation with rows `'UO'` and `'UN`;' multiple updates must be consolidated into a single update; and null changes such as an insert-update-delete of the same row must not appear in the staging log.

The checking done in the enforced mode can be time-consuming. If you are confident in the integrity of the data, you can choose a lower level of checking. You can choose to:

- trust all the insert rows (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'I'`) by choosing the `psl_mode` of `DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.INSERT_TRUSTED`
- trust all the delete rows (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'D'`) by choosing the `psl_mode` of `DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.DELETE_TRUSTED`
- trust all the update rows (`DMLTYPE$$` is `'UO'` or `'UN'`) by choosing the `psl_mode` of `DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.UPDATE_TRUSTED`
- trust all three types of DMLs by choosing the `psl_mode` of `DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.TRUSTED`.

In addition, you can specify the psl_mode as a bitmask of the flags described above. For example, DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.INSERT_TRUSTED + DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH_DELETE_TRUSTED will treat inserts and deletes to be trusted but not updates.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.PREPARE_STAGING_LOG (
   schema_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   base_table_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   psl_mode         IN NUMBER DEFAULT
   DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.ENFORCED);
```

Parameters

Table 165–10 PREPARE_STAGING_LOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	The name of the schema of the base table.
base_table_name	The name of the base table.
psl_mode	The mode in which staging log preparation should be done. The possible values are: ■ DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.ENFORCED (the default) ■ DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.INSERT_TRUSTED ■ DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.DELETE_TRUSTED ■ DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.UPDATE_TRUSTED ■ DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.TRUSTED

PURGE_REFRESH_STATS Procedure

This procedure purges the refresh history of sync refreshes that took place before the value specified by the BEFORE_TIMESTAMP parameter. This procedure requires the SYSDBA privilege in addition to the privilege to execute it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.PURGE_REFRESH_STATS (
   before_timestamp IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE);
```

Parameters

Table 165–11 PURGE_REFRESH_STATS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
before_timestamp	Records of sync refreshes saved before this timestamp are purged. If NULL, it uses the purging policy used by automatic purge. The automatic purge deletes all history older than (current time - refresh - history retention). The refresh history retention value can be changed using ALTER_REFRESH_STATS_RETENTION. The default is 31 days.

REGISTER_MVIEWS

This procedure registers a list of materialized views for synchronous refresh. It checks each materialized view in the list for eligibility and places it in the sync refresh group it belongs to. A sync refresh group is a set of related tables and materialized views defined on top of them. Two tables are considered related if there is a referential constraint between them.

The eligibility rules of materialized views for synchronous refresh are described in detail in *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide.* The principal requirements are that the materialized view must be partitioned and its partition key must be derivable from the partition key of its fact table. The materialized view definition must specify the `USING TRUSTED CONSTRAINTS` clause because sync refresh trusts the foreign key and primary key relationships to perform various refresh optimizations. The materialized view's refresh policy must be specified as `ON DEMAND`.

You have an option to register only some of the materialized views associated with a table, and leave some unregistered. Oracle Corporation does not recommend this, and in such a case, the user has to maintain the unregistered ones using the PCT or complete refresh methods.

A staging table must have been created for each base table of each materialized view in the materialized view list (`mv_list`), or else an error is thrown.

If any of the materialized views are not eligible for sync refresh, an error is thrown and the registration of all materialized views in the materialized view list fails.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.REGISTER_MVIEWS (
   mv_list   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 165–12 REGISTER_MVIEWS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`mv_list`	A comma-delimited list of materialized views to register. These names are optionally schema-qualified.

REGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION Procedure

This procedure registers a partition-maintenance operation (PMOP) on a partition of a base table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.REGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION (
   partition_op                IN VARCHAR2,
   schema_name                 IN VARCHAR2,
   base_table_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   partition_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   outside_partn_table_schema  IN VARCHAR2,
   outside_partn_table_name    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 165–13 REGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
partition_op	The name of the partition operation (DROP, EXCHANGE, or TRUNCATE).
schema_name	The name of the schema of the base table.
base_table_name	The name of the base table.
partition_name	The name of the partition to be changed; either exchanged with the outside partition table or dropped or truncated.
outside_partn_table_ schema	The name of the schema of the outside partition table (required for EXCHANGE only).
outside_partn_table_name	The name of the outside partition table (required for EXCHANGE only).

Usage Notes

The three kinds of change operations that may be specified on partitions are DROP, TRUNCATE, and EXCHANGE.

If DROP is specified, then the partition will be dropped from the base table at the time of EXECUTE_REFRESH. If TRUNCATE is specified, then the data from the partition will be deleted but the partition itself will not be dropped. These operations provide a more efficient way of specifying the deletes of all the rows in a partition than specifying them individually in the staging log.

If EXCHANGE is specified, then the contents of the outside table is exchanged with contents of the specified partition of EXECUTE_REFRESH. This provides an alternative method to the user of providing the changes to the base tables instead of populating the staging log.

UNREGISTER_MVIEWS

This procedure unregisters a list of materialized views from synchronous refresh. Once a materialized view is unregistered, it can be maintained by the user with any of the traditional refresh methods, such as complete or PCT, refresh.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.UNREGISTER_MVIEWS (
   mv_list   IN VARCHAR20;
```

Parameter

Table 165–14 UNREGISTER_MVIEWS Parameter

Parameter	Description
mv_list	A comma-delimited list of materialized views to unregister. These names are optionally schema-qualified.

UNREGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION Procedure

This procedure unregisters a partition-maintenance operation (PMOP) that had been previously registered with REGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION on a base table. The three kinds of change operations that can be specified on partitions are DROP, TRUNCATE, and EXCHANGE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_SYNC_REFRESH.UNREGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION (
   partition_op     IN VARCHAR2,
   schema_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   base_table_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   partition_name   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 165–15 UNREGISTER_PARTITION_OPERATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
partition_op	The name of the partition operation (DROP, EXCHANGE, or TRUNCATE).
schema_name	The name of the schema of the base table.
base_table_name	The name of the base table.
partition_name	The name of the partition to be changed; either exchanged with the outside partition table or dropped or truncated.

166

DBMS_TDB

The DBMS_TDB package reports whether a database can be transported between platforms using the RMAN CONVERT DATABASE command. The package verifies that databases on the current host platform are of the same endian format as the destination platform, and that the state of the current database does not prevent transport of the database.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* regarding database transport using CONVERT DATABASE

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_TDB

This section contains topics which relate to using `DBMS_TDB`.

Overview

In many cases, Oracle supports transporting databases between platforms which have the same endian format. However, even when the endian formats are the same, a database must undergo a conversion process to move from one platform to another. There are also preconditions required for the process of transporting a database, such as having the database to be transported open read-only.

The `DBMS_TDB` package serves two purposes:

- Confirming that Oracle supports transporting a database from a given source platform to a given target platform
- Determining whether a database to be transported has been properly prepared for transport, and if not, identifying the condition that prevents database transport

The actual conversion is performed using the Recovery Manager `CONVERT DATABASE` command. For a complete discussion of the requirements for transporting a database, the process of converting a database for transport across platforms, and examples of the use of the `DBMS_TDB` subprograms in the conversion process, see *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide*.

Security Model

Use of this package requires the `DBA` privilege.

Constants

The DBMS_TDB package defines several enumerated constants that should be used for specifying parameter values. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name, for example, DBMS_TDB.SKIP_NONE.

The DBMS_TDB package uses the constants shown in Table 166–1.

Table 166–1 DBMS_TDB Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
SKIP_NONE	NUMBER	0	Check all files when checking whether a database is ready for transport.
SKIP_OFFLINE	NUMBER	2	Skip files in offline tablespaces when checking whether a database is ready for transport.
SKIP_READONLY	NUMBER	3	Skip files in read-only tablespaces when checking whether a database is ready for transport.

Views

The DBMS_TDB package uses the following view listed in *Oracle Database Reference*:

- V$DB_TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM, which specifies which combinations of source and target platforms support database transport

Operational Notes

- The subprograms in this package are useful both in determining whether the desired cross-platform database conversion is possible, and in checking whether the database is ready for conversion. See *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for details on the different uses of these subprograms are used in the conversion process.
- The subprograms in this package return simple `TRUE` or `FALSE` results to indicate whether database transport is possible. Use the subprograms with `SERVEROUTPUT ON` for informative messages about why transport is not possible.

Summary of DBMS_TDB Subprograms

Table 166–2 DBMS_TDB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CHECK_DB Function on page 166-9	Checks whether a database can be transported to a target platform
CHECK_EXTERNAL Function on page 166-9	Checks whether a database has external tables, directory or BFILEs

CHECK_DB Function

This function checks whether a database can be transported to a target platform. It tests whether transport is supported at all for a given source and destination platform, and whether the database is currently in the correct state for transport.

You can specify whether to skip checking parts of the database that are read-only or offline, if you do not plan to transport them.

The function is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TDB.CHECK_DB (
     target_platform_name   IN VARCHAR2,
     skip_option            IN  NUMBER)
   RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_TDB.CHECK_DB (
     target_platform_name   IN VARCHAR2)
   RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_TDB.CHECK_DB
   RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 166–3 CHECK_DB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
target_platform_name	The name of the destination platform, as it appears in V$DB_TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM.
skip_option	Specifies which, if any, parts of the database to skip when checking whether the database can be transported. Supported values are listed in Table 166–1, " DBMS_TDB Constants" on page 166-5.

Return Values

If the database cannot be transported to the target platform or is not ready to be transported, returns FALSE. If the database is ready for transport, returns TRUE.

Usage Notes

- If SERVEROUTPUT is ON, then the output will contain the reasons why the database cannot be transported and how to fix the problems. For details on possible reasons and fixes, see Table 166–4, " Reasons for CHECK_DB Function to Return FALSE" on page 166-9.

Table 166–4 Reasons for CHECK_DB Function to Return FALSE

Cause	Action
Unrecognized target platform name.	Check V$DB_TRANSPORTABLE_PLATFORM for recognized platform names.

Table 166–4 (Cont.) Reasons for CHECK_DB Function to Return FALSE

Cause	Action
Target platform has a different endian format.	Conversion is not supported.
Database is not open read-only.	Open database read-only and retry.
There are active or in-doubt transactions in the database.	Open the database read-write. After the active transactions are rolled back, open the database read-only and retry the operation. This situation can occur if users flash back the database and open it read only. The active transactions will be rolled back when the database is opened read-write.
Deferred transaction rollback needs to be done.	Open the database read-write and bring online the necessary tablespaces. Once the deferred transaction rollback is complete, open the database read-only and retry the operation.
Database compatibility version is below 10.0.0.	Change the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter to 10.0.0 or higher, open the database read-only, and retry the operation.
Some tablespaces have not been open read-write with compatibility version is 10.0.0 or higher.	Change the `COMPATIBLE` initialization parameter to 10.0.0 or higher, then open the affected tablespaces read-write. Shut down the database, open it read-only, and retry the operation.

Examples

This example illustrates the use of `CHECK_DB` with a database that is open read-write:

```
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SQL> DECLARE
       db_ready BOOLEAN;
     BEGIN
       db_ready := DBMS_TDB.CHECK_DB('Microsoft Windows IA (32-bit)');
     END;
     /

Database is not open READ ONLY. Please open database READ ONLY and retry.

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

CHECK_EXTERNAL Function

This function determines whether a database has external tables, directories, or BFILEs.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TDB.CHECK_EXTERNAL
   RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Return Values

If the database has external tables, directories, or BFILEs, return `TRUE`. Otherwise, return `FALSE`.

Usage Notes

- If `SERVEROUTPUT` is `ON`, then the function will output the names of the external tables, directories, and BFILEs in the database.
- The database must be open read-write.

Examples

This example illustrates the use of `CHECK_EXTERNAL` with a database that has several external tables, directories, and BFILEs:

```
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SQL> DECLARE
        external BOOLEAN;
     BEGIN
       external := DBMS_TDB.CHECK_EXTERNAL;
     END;
     /
The following external tables exist in the database:
SH.SALES_TRANSACTIONS_EXT
The following directories exist in the database:
SYS.MEDIA_DIR, SYS.DATA_FILE_DIR, SYS.LOG_FILE_DIR, SYS.DATA_PUMP_DIR
The following BFILEs exist in the database:
PM.PRINT_MEDIA

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

167

DBMS_TRACE

The DBMS_TRACE package contains the interface to trace PL/SQL functions, procedures, and exceptions.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_TRACE

Overview

DBMS_TRACE provides subprograms to start and stop PL/SQL tracing in a session. Oracle collects the trace data as the program executes and writes it to database tables.

A typical session involves:

- Starting PL/SQL tracing in session (DBMS_TRACE.SET_PLSQL_TRACE).
- Running an application to be traced.
- Stopping PL/SQL tracing in session (DBMS_TRACE.CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE).

Security Model

This package must be created under `SYS`.

Constants

The DBMS_TRACE package uses the constants shown in Table 167–1, " DBMS_TRACE Event Constants":

Table 167–1 DBMS_TRACE Event Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
TRACE_ALL_CALLS	INTEGER	1	Traces calls or returns
TRACE_ENABLED_CALLS	INTEGER	2	
TRACE_ALL_EXCEPTIONS	INTEGER	4	Traces exceptions
TRACE_ENABLED_EXCEPTIONS	INTEGER	8	Traces exceptions and handlers
TRACE_LIMIT	INTEGER	16	Save only the last few records. This allows tracing up to a problem area, without filling the database up with masses of irrelevant information. If event 10940 is set, the limit is 1023*(the value of event 10940). This can be overridden by the use of "TRACE_LIMIT" flag.
TRACE_ALL_SQL	INTEGER	32	Traces SQL statements
TRACE_ENABLED_SQL	INTEGER	64	Traces SQL statements at PL/SQL level. This does not invoke SQL Trace
TRACE_ALL_LINES	INTEGER	128	Traces each line
TRACE_ENABLED_LINES	INTEGER	256	
TRACE_PAUSE	INTEGER	4096	Pauses tracing
TRACE_RESUME	INTEGER	8192	Resume tracing
TRACE_STOP	INTEGER	16384	Stops tracing
NO_TRACE_ADMINISTRATIVE	INTEGER	32768	Prevents tracing of 'administrative events such as ■ PL/SQL Trace Tool started ■ Trace flags changed ■ PL/SQL Virtual Machine started ■ PL/SQL Virtual Machine stopped
NO_TRACE_HANDLED_EXCEPTIONS	INTEGER	65536	Prevents tracing of handled exceptions

Table 167–2 DBMS_TRACE Version Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
TRACE_MINOR_VERSION	INTEGER	0	
TRACE_MAJOR_VERSION	INTEGER	1	

Oracle recommends using the symbolic form for all these constants.

Restrictions

You cannot use PL/SQL tracing in a shared server environment.

Operational Notes

Controlling Data Volume

Profiling large applications may produce a large volume of data. You can control the volume of data collected by *enabling* specific program units for trace data collection.

You can enable a program unit by compiling it debug. This can be done in one of two ways:

```
alter session set plsql_debug=true;
create or replace ... /* create the library units - debug information will be
generated */
```

or:

```
/* recompile specific library unit with debug option */
alter [PROCEDURE | FUNCTION | PACKAGE BODY]  <libunit-name> compile debug;
```

Note: You cannot use the second method for anonymous blocks.

You can limit the amount of storage used in the database by retaining only the most recent 8,192 records (approximately) by including `TRACE_LIMIT` in the `TRACE_LEVEL` parameter of the `SET_PLSQL_TRACE` procedure.

Creating Database Tables to Collect DBMS_TRACE Output

You must create database tables into which the `DBMS_TRACE` package writes output. Otherwise, the data is not collected. To create these tables, run the script `TRACETAB.SQL`. The tables this script creates are owned by SYS.

Collecting Trace Data

The PL/SQL features you can trace are described in the script `DBMSPBT.SQL`. Some of the key tracing features are:

- Tracing Calls
- Tracing Exceptions
- Tracing SQL
- Tracing Lines

Additional features of DBMS_TRACE also allow pausing and resuming trace, and limiting the output.

Tracing Calls

Two levels of call tracing are available:

- Level 1: Trace all calls. This corresponds to the constant `TRACE_ALL_CALLS`.

- Level 2: Trace calls to enabled program units only. This corresponds to the constant TRACE_ENABLED_CALLS.

Enabling cannot be detected for remote procedure calls (RPCs); hence, RPCs are only traced with level 1.

Tracing Exceptions

Two levels of exception tracing are available:

- Level 1: Trace all exceptions. This corresponds to TRACE_ALL_EXCEPTIONS.
- Level 2: Trace exceptions raised in enabled program units only. This corresponds to TRACE_ENABLED_EXCEPTIONS.

Tracing SQL

Two levels of SQL tracing are available:

- Level 1: Trace all SQL. This corresponds to the constant TRACE_ALL_SQL.
- Level 2: Trace SQL in enabled program units only. This corresponds to the constant TRACE_ENABLED_SQL.

Tracing Lines

Two levels of line tracing are available:

- Level 1: Trace all lines. This corresponds to the constant TRACE_ALL_LINES.
- Level 2: Trace lines in enabled program units only. This corresponds to the constant TRACE_ENABLED_LINES.

When tracing lines, Oracle adds a record to the database each time the line number changes. This includes line number changes due to procedure calls and returns.

Note: For all types of tracing, level 1 overrides level 2. For example, if both level 1 and level 2 are enabled, then level 1 takes precedence.

Collected Data

If tracing is requested only for enabled program units, and if the current program unit is not enabled, then no trace data is written.

When tracing calls, both the call and return are traced. The check for whether tracing is "enabled" passes if either the called routine or the calling routine is "enabled".

Call tracing will always output the program unit type, program unit name, and line number for both the caller and the callee. It will output the caller's stack depth. If the caller is enabled, the caller's name will also be output. If the callee is enabled, the callee's name will also be output.

Exception tracing writes out the line number. Raising the exception shows information on whether the exception is user-defined or pre-defined. It also shows the exception number in the case of pre-defined exceptions. Both the place where the exceptions are raised and their handler is traced. The check for tracing being "enabled" is done independently for the place where the exception is raised and the place where the exception is handled. Enabling NO_TRACE_HANDLED_EXCEPTIONS limits data collection to unhandled exceptions

All calls to DBMS_TRACE.SET_PLSQL_TRACE and DBMS_TRACE.CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE place a special trace record in the database. Therefore, it is always possible to determine when trace settings were changed.

Trace Control

As well as determining which items are collected, you can pause and resume the trace process. No information is gathered between the time that tracing is paused and the time that it is resumed. The constants TRACE_PAUSE and TRACE_RESUME are used to accomplish this. Trace records are generated to indicate that the trace was paused/resumed.

It is also possible to retain only the last 8,192 trace events of a run by using the constant TRACE_LIMIT. This allows tracing to be turned on without filling up the database. When tracing stops, the last 8,192 records are saved. The limit is approximate, since it is not checked on every trace record. At least the requested number of trace records will be generated; up to 1,000 additional records may be generated. At least the requested number of trace records will be generated; up to 1,000 additional records may be generated. The 8,192 record limit can be changed. Setting event 10940 to level *n* changes the record limit to 1024 * *n*.

Enabling NO_TRACE_ADMINISTRATIVE prevents the generation of such administrative event records as PL/SQL Trace Tool started, Trace flags changed, PL/SQL Virtual Machine started, and PL/SQL Virtual Machine stopped.

Summary of DBMS_TRACE Subprograms

Table 167–3 DBMS_TRACE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE Procedure on page 167-11	Stops trace data dumping in session
GET_PLSQL_TRACE_LEVEL Function on page 167-12	Gets the trace level
PLSQL_TRACE_VERSION Procedure on page 167-13	Gets the version number of the trace package
SET_PLSQL_TRACE Procedure on page 167-14	Starts tracing in the current session

CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE Procedure

This procedure disables trace data collection.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRACE.CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE;
```

GET_PLSQL_TRACE_LEVEL Function

This procedure returns the current trace level as the sum of one or more of the constants as listed in Table 167–1, " DBMS_TRACE Event Constants".

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRACE.GET_PLSQL_TRACE_LEVEL
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

PLSQL_TRACE_VERSION Procedure

This procedure gets the version number of the trace package. It returns the major and minor version number of the DBMS_TRACE package.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRACE.PLSQL_TRACE_VERSION (
   major OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   minor OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 167–4 PLSQL_TRACE_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
major	Major version number of DBMS_TRACE.
minor	Minor version number of DBMS_TRACE.

SET_PLSQL_TRACE Procedure

This procedure enables PL/SQL trace data collection.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRACE.SET_PLSQL_TRACE (
   trace_level INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 167–5 SET_PLSQL_TRACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`trace_level`	You must supply one or more of the constants as listed in Table 167–1, " DBMS_TRACE Event Constants". By summing the constants, you can enable tracing of multiple PL/SQL language features simultaneously. The control constants "`TRACE_PAUSE`", "`TRACE_RESUME`" and "`TRACE_STOP`" should not be used in combination with other constants. Also see "Collecting Trace Data" on page 167-7 for more information.

168

DBMS_TRANSACTION

The DBMS_TRANSACTION package provides access to SQL transaction statements from stored procedures.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_TRANSACTION

Security Model

This package runs with the privileges of calling user, rather than the package owner SYS.

Summary of DBMS_TRANSACTION Subprograms

Table 168–1 DBMS_TRANSACTION Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADVISE_COMMIT Procedure on page 168-5	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `ALTER SESSION ADVISE COMMIT`
ADVISE_NOTHING Procedure on page 168-6	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `ALTER SESSION ADVISE NOTHING`
ADVISE_ROLLBACK Procedure on page 168-7	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `ALTER SESSION ADVISE ROLLBACK`
COMMIT Procedure on page 168-8	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `COMMIT`
COMMIT_COMMENT Procedure on page 168-9	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `COMMIT COMMENT <text>`
COMMIT_FORCE Procedure on page 168-10	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `COMMIT FORCE <text>, <number>"`
LOCAL_TRANSACTION_ID Function on page 168-11	Returns the local (to instance) unique identifier for the current transaction
PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY Procedure on page 168-12	Enables removal of incomplete transactions from the local site when the remote database is destroyed or re-created before recovery completes
PURGE_MIXED Procedure on page 168-14	Deletes information about a given mixed outcome transaction
READ_ONLY Procedure on page 168-15	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `SET TRANSACTION READ ONLY`
READ_WRITE Procedure on page 168-16	equivalent to the SQL statement: `SET TRANSACTION READ WRITE`
ROLLBACK Procedure on page 168-17	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `ROLLBACK`
ROLLBACK_FORCE Procedure on page 168-18	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `ROLLBACK FORCE <text>`
ROLLBACK_SAVEPOINT Procedure on page 168-19	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>`
SAVEPOINT Procedure on page 168-20	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>`
STEP_ID Function on page 168-21	Returns local (to local transaction) unique positive integer that orders the DML operations of a transaction
USE_ROLLBACK_SEGMENT Procedure on page 168-22	Equivalent to the SQL statement: `SET TRANSACTION USE ROLLBACK SEGMENT <rb_seg_name>`

ADVISE_COMMIT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
ALTER SESSION ADVISE COMMIT
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.ADVISE_COMMIT;
```

ADVISE_NOTHING Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
ALTER SESSION ADVISE NOTHING
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.ADVISE_NOTHING;
```

ADVISE_ROLLBACK Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
ALTER SESSION ADVISE ROLLBACK
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.ADVISE_ROLLBACK;
```

COMMIT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
COMMIT
```

This procedure is included for completeness, the functionality being already implemented as part of PL/SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.COMMIT;
```

COMMIT_COMMENT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
COMMIT COMMENT <text>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.COMMIT_COMMENT (
   cmnt VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–2 COMMIT_COMMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cmnt	Comment to associate with this commit.

COMMIT_FORCE Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
COMMIT FORCE <text>, <number>"
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.COMMIT_FORCE (
   xid VARCHAR2,
   scn VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 168–3 COMMIT_FORCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	Local or global transaction ID.
scn	System change number.

LOCAL_TRANSACTION_ID Function

This function returns the local (to instance) unique identifier for the current transaction. It returns null if there is no current transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.LOCAL_TRANSACTION_ID (
   create_transaction BOOLEAN := FALSE)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 168–4 LOCAL_TRANSACTION_ID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
create_transaction	If true, then start a transaction if one is not currently active.

PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY Procedure

When a failure occurs during commit processing, automatic recovery consistently resolves the results at all sites involved in the transaction. However, if the remote database is destroyed or re-created before recovery completes, then the entries used to control recovery in DBA_2PC_PENDING and associated tables are never removed, and recovery will periodically retry. Procedure PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY enables removal of such transactions from the local site.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY (
   xid VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–5 PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	Must be set to the value of the LOCAL_TRAN_ID column in the DBA_2PC_PENDING table.

Usage Notes

WARNING: PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY should *only* be used when the other database is lost or has been re-created. Any other use may leave the other database in an unrecoverable or inconsistent state.

Before automatic recovery runs, the transaction may show up in DBA_2PC_PENDING as state "collecting", "committed", or "prepared". If the DBA has forced an in-doubt transaction to have a particular result by using "commit force" or "rollback force", then states "forced commit" or "forced rollback" may also appear. Automatic recovery normally deletes entries in any of these states. The only exception is when recovery finds a forced transaction which is in a state inconsistent with other sites in the transaction; in this case, the entry is left in the table and the MIXED column has the value 'yes'.

However, under certain conditions, it may not be possible for automatic recovery to run. For example, a remote database may have been permanently lost. Even if it is re-created, it gets a new database ID, so that recovery cannot identify it (a possible symptom is ORA-02062). In this case, the DBA may use the procedure PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY to clean up the entries in any state other than "prepared". The DBA does not need to be in any particular hurry to resolve these entries, because they are not holding any database resources.

The following table indicates what the various states indicate about the transaction and what the DBA actions should be:

Table 168–6 PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY Procedure States

State of Column	State of Global Transaction	State of Local Transaction	Normal DBA Action	Alternative DBA Action
Collecting	Rolled back	Rolled back	None	PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY (See Note 1)
Committed	Committed	Committed	None	PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY (See Note 1)
Prepared	Unknown	Prepared	None	FORCE COMMIT or ROLLBACK
Forced commit	Unknown	Committed	None	PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY (See Note 1)
Forced rollback	Unknown	Rolled back	None	PURGE_LOST_DB_ENTRY (See Note 1)
Forced commit (mixed)	Mixed	Committed	(See Note 2)	
Forced rollback (mixed)	Mixed	Rolled back	(See Note 2)	

NOTE 1: Use only if significant reconfiguration has occurred so that automatic recovery cannot resolve the transaction. Examples are total loss of the remote database, reconfiguration in software resulting in loss of two-phase commit capability, or loss of information from an external transaction coordinator such as a TP monitor.

NOTE 2: Examine and take any manual action to remove inconsistencies; then use the procedure PURGE_MIXED.

PURGE_MIXED Procedure

When in-doubt transactions are forced to commit or rollback (instead of letting automatic recovery resolve their outcomes), there is a possibility that a transaction can have a mixed outcome: Some sites commit, and others rollback. Such inconsistency cannot be resolved automatically by Oracle; however, Oracle flags entries in `DBA_2PC_PENDING` by setting the `MIXED` column to a value of 'yes'.

Oracle never automatically deletes information about a mixed outcome transaction. When the application or DBA is certain that all inconsistencies that might have arisen as a result of the mixed transaction have been resolved, this procedure can be used to delete the information about a given mixed outcome transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.PURGE_MIXED (
   xid VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–7 PURGE_MIXED Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xid`	Must be set to the value of the `LOCAL_TRAN_ID` column in the `DBA_2PC_PENDING` table.

READ_ONLY Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
SET TRANSACTION READ ONLY
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.READ_ONLY;
```

READ_WRITE Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
SET TRANSACTION READ WRITE
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.READ_WRITE;
```

ROLLBACK Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
ROLLBACK
```

This procedure is included for completeness, the functionality being already implemented as part of PL/SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.ROLLBACK;
```

ROLLBACK_FORCE Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
ROLLBACK FORCE <text>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.ROLLBACK_FORCE (
   xid VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–8 ROLLBACK_FORCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	Local or global transaction ID.

ROLLBACK_SAVEPOINT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>
```

This procedure is included for completeness, the functionality being already implemented as part of PL/SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.ROLLBACK_SAVEPOINT (
   savept VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–9 ROLLBACK_SAVEPOINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
savept	Savepoint identifier.

SAVEPOINT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>
```

This procedure is included for completeness, the feature being already implemented as part of PL/SQL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.SAVEPOINT (
   savept VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–10 SAVEPOINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
savept	Savepoint identifier.

STEP_ID Function

This function returns local (to local transaction) unique positive integer that orders the DML operations of a transaction.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.STEP_ID
   RETURN NUMBER;
```

USE_ROLLBACK_SEGMENT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to the SQL statement:

```
SET TRANSACTION USE ROLLBACK SEGMENT <rb_seg_name>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSACTION.USE_ROLLBACK_SEGMENT (
   rb_name VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 168–11 USE_ROLLBACK_SEGMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rb_name	Name of rollback segment to use.

169

DBMS_TRANSFORM

The DBMS_TRANSFORM package provides an interface to the message format transformation features of Oracle Advanced Queuing.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for more on message format transformations.

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Summary of DBMS_TRANSFORM Subprograms

Summary of DBMS_TRANSFORM Subprograms

Table 169–1 DBMS_TRANSFORM Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
CREATE_ TRANSFORMATION Procedure on page 169-3	Creates a transformation that maps an object of the source type to an object of the destination type
DROP_ TRANSFORMATION Procedure on page 169-5	Drops the given transformation
MODIFY_ TRANSFORMATION Procedure on page 169-6	Modifies an existing transformation

CREATE_TRANSFORMATION Procedure

This procedure creates a transformation that maps an object of the source type to an object of the target type. The transformation expression can be a SQL expression or a PL/SQL function. It must return an object of the target type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSFORM.CREATE_TRANSFORMATION (
    schema               VARCHAR2(30),
    name                 VARCHAR2(30),
    from_schema          VARCHAR2(30),
    from_type            VARCHAR2(30),
    to_schema            VARCHAR2(30),
    to_type              VARCHAR2(30),
    transformation       VARCHAR2(4000));
```

Parameters

Table 169–2 CREATE_TRANSFORMATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	Specifies the schema of the transformation.
name	Specifies the name of the transformation.
from_schema	Specifies the schema of the source type.
from_type	Specifies the source type.
to_schema	Specifies the target type schema.
to_type	Specifies the target type.
transformation	Specifies the transformation expression, returning an object of the target type. The expression must be a function returning an object of the target type or a constructor expression for the target type. You can choose not to specify a transformation expression and instead specify transformations for attributes of the target type using MODIFY_TRANSFORMATION.

Usage Notes

- The transformation expression must be a SQL expression or a PL/SQL function returning the type of the specified attribute of the target type.
- To create, modify or drop transformations, a user must be granted execute privileges on DBMS_TRANSFORM. The user must also have execute privileges on the user defined types that are the source and destination types of the transformation. In addition, the user must also have execute privileges on any PLSQL function being used in the transformation function.
- The transformation cannot write database state (perform DML) or commit or rollback the current transaction.
- The transformation must be a SQL function with source type as input type, returning an object of the target type. It could also be a SQL expression of target type, referring to a source type. All references to the source type must be of the form *source.user_data*.

- Both source and target types must be non-scalar database types. A null transformation expression maps to a null target object.

For using the transformation at enqueue and dequeue time, the login user invoking the operation must have execute privileges on the PLSQL functions used by the transformation. For propagation, the owning schema of the queue must have these privileges.

DROP_TRANSFORMATION Procedure

This procedure drops the given transformation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSFORM.DROP_TRANSFORMATION (
schema VARCHAR2(30),
    name        VARCHAR2(30));
```

Parameters

Table 169–3 DROP_TRANSFORMATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	Specifies the schema of the transformation.
name	Specifies the name of the transformation.

MODIFY_TRANSFORMATION Procedure

This procedure modifies the transformation expression for the given transformation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TRANSFORM.MODIFY_TRANSFORMATION (
   schema             VARCHAR2(30),
   name               VARCHAR2(30),
   attribute_number   INTEGER,
   transformation     VARCHAR2(4000));
```

Parameters

Table 169–4 MODIFY_TRANSFORMATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	Specifies the schema of the transformation.
name	Specifies the name of the transformation.
attribute_number	The attribute of the target type for which the new transformation expression is being specified. When specifying the new transformation as a single expression of the target type, specify a value of 0.
transformation	The transformation expression must be a SQL expression or a PL/SQL function returning the type of the specified attribute of the target type. If the attribute_number is 0, then the expression must be a PL/SQL function returning an object of the target type or a constructor expression for the target type.

Usage Notes

- If the new transformation is a single expression of the target type, it may be specified with an attribute_number of 0. The new transformation may also be specified for each attribute of the target type.
- You can use this procedure to define the transformation as a separate expression for each attribute of the target type. For large transformations, this representation may be more readable and allow the application of fine grain control over the transformation. If the transformation expression was left unspecified for some of the attributes of the target type, they are evaluated to null when the transformation is applied.

170

DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE

The DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE package provides an interface to import and manage sensitive columns and sensitive column types in the database, and is used in conjunction with the DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT package with regard to transparent sensitive data protection (TSDP) policies. DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE is available with the Enterprise Edition only.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE

Overview

The DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE package lets you manage sensitive columns and sensitive types in the Oracle database. The identified sensitive columns are classified based on the sensitive types. By Using the DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT package to create a policy that protects data for a given class based on a column type rather than the data itself, you can then manage security for these types in a uniform fashion and modify the settings to accommodate changing compliance regulations.

You also can export the policies to other databases, when you perform a full export using Data Pump. You cannot export the policy itself, but an export of the database will include the TSDP policies.

Security Model

All procedures are executed with invoker's rights. The `DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE` package is owned by `SYS`. The `EXECUTE` privilege on this package should be granted as appropriate. Typically, an application database administrator should be granted the `EXECUTE` privilege for this package, while the DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT package would be governed by a security administrator.

Summary of DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE Subprograms

Table 170–1 DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure on page 170-6	Adds a column to the sensitive column list
ADD_SENSITIVE_TYPE Procedure on page 170-8	Creates and adds a sensitive column type to the list of sensitive column types in the database
ALTER_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure on page 170-7	Alters the sensitive type and/or the comment of a column in the sensitive column list.
DROP_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure on page 170-9	Removes columns from the sensitive column list
DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE Procedure on page 170-10	Drops a sensitive column type from the list sensitive column types in the database
DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE_SOURCE Procedure on page 170-11	Drops sensitive column types corresponding to a source from the list sensitive column types in the database
IMPORT_DISCOVERY_RESULT Procedure on page 170-12	Imports sensitive columns from an external source. This can be an Application Data Model (ADM) from an Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control instance
IMPORT_SENSITIVE_TYPES Procedure on page 170-13	Imports a list of sensitive column types from a source
REMOVE_DISCOVERY_RESULT Procedure on page 170-14	Removes sensitive columns corresponding to an Application Data Model (ADM) from an Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control instance.

ADD_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure adds a column to the sensitive column list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.ADD_SENSITIVE_COLUMN (
   schema_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name         IN VARCAHR2,
   column_name        IN VARCAHR2,
   sensitive_type     IN VARCAHR2,
   user_comment       IN VARCAHR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 170–2 ADD_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema to which the column belongs
table_name	Table containing the column
column_name	Sensitive column name
sensitive_type	Identifier of the sensitive column type
user_comment	User comment regarding the sensitive column

Examples

Add a column SAL in SCOTT.EMP:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.ADD_SENSITIVE_COLUMN (
  schema_name        => 'SCOTT',
  table_name         => 'EMP',
  column_name        => 'SAL',
  sensitive_type     => 'SALARY_TYPE',
  user_comment       => 'Salary column');
```

ALTER_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure alters the Sensitive Type and/or the Comment of a Column in the sensitive column list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.ALTER_SENSITIVE_COLUMN (
   schema_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name         IN VARCAHR2,
   column_name        IN VARCAHR2,
   sensitive_type     IN VARCAHR2,
   user_comment       IN VARCAHR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 170–3 ALTER_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema to which the column belongs
table_name	Table containing the column
column_name	Sensitive column name
sensitive_type	Identifier of the sensitive column type
user_comment	User comment regarding the sensitive column

Examples

Alter the column SAL in SCOTT.EMP that is listed in the sensitive column list:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.ALTER_SENSITIVE_COLUMN (
   schema_name        => 'SCOTT',
   table_name         => 'EMP',
   column_name        => 'SAL',
   sensitive_type     => 'FINANCE_Type',
   user_comment       => 'Finance Type. Earlier categorized as Salary Type');
```

ADD_SENSITIVE_TYPE Procedure

This procedure creates and adds a sensitive column type to the list sensitive column types in the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.ADD_SENSITIVE_TYPE (
   sensitive_type     IN  VARCHAR2,
   user_comment       IN  VARCAHR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 170–4 ADD_SENSITIVE_TYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sensitive_type	Name of the sensitive column type
user_comment	User comment regarding the sensitive column

Examples

Add a sensitive column type called SALARY_TYPE that is intended to be associated with columns containing salary data:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.ADD_SENSITIVE_TYPE (
  sensitive_type     => 'SALARY_TYPE',
  user_comment       => 'Salary data');
```

DROP_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure removes columns from the sensitive column list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.DROP_SENSITIVE_COLUMN (
   schema_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   table_name         IN VARCAHR2 DEFAULT '%',
   column_name        IN VARCAHR2 DEFAULT '%');
```

Parameters

Table 170–5 DROP_SENSITIVE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema to which the column belongs
table_name	Table containing the column
column_name	Sensitive column name

Examples

Remove column SAL in SCOTT.EMP from the sensitive column list:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.DROP_SENSITIVE_COLUMN (
  schema_name        => 'SCOTT',
  table_name         => 'EMP',
  column_name        => 'SAL');
```

DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE Procedure

This procedure drops a sensitive column type from the list sensitive column types in the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE (
   sensitive_type     IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 170–6 DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sensitive_type	Name of the sensitive column type to be dropped

Examples

To drop SALARY_TYPE:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE (
  sensitive_type     => 'SALARY_TYPE');
```

DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE_SOURCE Procedure

This procedure drops sensitive column types corresponding to a source from the list sensitive column types in the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE_SOURCE (
   source      IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 170–7 DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source	Name of the source

Examples

To drop all sensitive column types corresponding to an Application Data Model (ADM) from an Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control instance, ADM_DEMO:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.DROP_SENSITIVE_TYPE_SOURCE (
   source      =>  'ADM_DEMO');
```

IMPORT_DISCOVERY_RESULT Procedure

This procedure can be used to import sensitive columns, along with the associated sensitive types, from an external source. The external source can be an Application Data Model (ADM) instance from Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.IMPORT_DISCOVERY_RESULT (
  discovery_result         IN  CLOB,
  discovery_source         IN  VARCHAR2,
  force                    IN  FORCE DEFAULT FALSE);

DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.IMPORT_DISCOVERY_RESULT (
  discovery_result         IN  XMLTYPE,
  discovery_source         IN  VARCHAR2,
  force                    IN  FORCE DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 170–8 IMPORT_DISCOVERY_RESULT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
discovery_result	List of sensitive columns, along with the optional list of (the definitions of) the sensitive column types in XML format (possibly as a CLOB).
discovery_source	Source of the import. The discovery_sourcename identifies the list of imported sensitive columns. In case of ADM, this should be the ADM name.
force	Specifies if the discovery result should be imported or not when the discovery result contains columns sensitive columns that are already identified as sensitive by another source. ■ FALSE (default) - the discovery result will not be imported in case of conflicting columns. None of the columns and the sensitive types are imported. ■ TRUE - the discovery result is imported and the attributes of the conflicting columns is set based on the incoming discovery result

Examples

Import the list of sensitive columns of ADM instance, ADM_Demo:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.IMPORT_DISCOVERY_RESULT (
  discovery_results        =>  xml_adm_result,
  discovery_source         => 'ADM_Demo');
```

IMPORT_SENSITIVE_TYPES Procedure

This procedure imports a list of sensitive column types from a source.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.IMPORT_SENSITIVE_TYPES (
  sensitive_types        IN CLOB,
  source                 IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.IMPORT_SENSITIVE_TYPES (
  sensitive_types        IN XMLTYPE,
  source                 IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 170–9 IMPORT_SENSITIVE_TYPES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sensitive_types	List of sensitive column types in XML Format (possibly as a CLOB)
source	Source of the import. The source identifies the list of imported sensitive column types. In case of Application Data Model (ADM) from an Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control instance, this should be the ADM name.

Examples

Import the list of sensitive column types of ADM instance, ADM_Demo:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.IMPORT_SENSITIVE_TYPES (
  sensitive_types        =>  xml_adm_result,
  source                 => 'ADM_Demo');
```

REMOVE_DISCOVERY_RESULT Procedure

This procedure removes sensitive columns corresponding to an Application Data Model (ADM) from an Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.REMOVE_DISCOVERY_RESULT (
  discovery_source     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 170–10 REMOVE_DISCOVERY_RESULT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`discovery_source`	Source of the import. In case of ADM, this should be the ADM name, the results of which is to be removed.

Examples

Remove the sensitive columns corresponding to ADM instance, `ADM_Demo`:

```
DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE.REMOVE_DISCOVERY_RESULT (
  discovery_source    => 'ADM_Demo');
```

171

DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT

The DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT package provides an interface to configure transparent sensitive data protection (TSDP) policies in conjunction with the DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE package. DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT is available with the Enterprise Edition only.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT
  - Overview
  - Security Model
  - Constants
- Data Structures
- Summary of DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT Subprograms

Using DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT

Overview

Use the `DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT` package to create transparent sensitive data protection policies, configure protection by associating the policies with sensitive types, and to enable and disable the configured protection. Sensitive types can be added using the DBMS_TSDP_MANAGE package.

Security Model

All procedures are executed with invoker's rights. Typically, a security administrator should have the `EXECUTE` privilege for this package.

Constants

The DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT package uses the constants shown in Table 171–1, " DBMS_TDSP_PROTECT Constants - Compression Types":

Table 171–1 DBMS_TDSP_PROTECT Constants - Compression Types

Constant	Type	Value	Description
TSDP_PARAM_MAX	INTEGER	4000	Maximum length of the parameter value that can be specified in FEATURE_OPTIONS

Data Structures

The DBMS_COMPRESSION package defines the following TABLE type.

Table Types

- FEATURE_OPTIONS Table Type
- POLICY_CONDITION Table Type

FEATURE_OPTIONS Table Type

The following type is an associative array of `VARCHAR2(TSDP_PARAM_MAX)` that is indexed by `VARCHAR2(M_IDEN)`.

Syntax

```
TYPE FEATURE_OPTIONS IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(TSDP_PARAM_MAX)
INDEX BY VARCHAR2(M_IDEN);
```

POLICY_CONDITION Table Type

The following type is an associative array of `VARCHAR2(TSDP_PARAM_MAX)` that is indexed by `PLS_INTEGER`.

Syntax

```
TYPE POLICY_CONDITION IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(TSDP_PARAM_MAX)
INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT Subprograms

Table 171–2 DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_POLICY Procedure on page 171-10	Creates a TSDP policy
ALTER_POLICY Procedure on page 171-12	Alters a TDSP policy
ASSOCIATE_POLICY Procedure on page 171-14	Associates or disassociates a TSDP policy with a sensitive column type
DISABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN Procedure on page 171-15	Disables protection for columns
DISABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE Procedure on page 171-16	Disables protection based on the source of truth for the sensitive columns
DISABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE Procedure on page 171-17	Disables protection for a sensitive column type
DROP_POLICY Procedure on page 171-18	Removes a TDSP policy
ENABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN Procedure on page 171-20	Enables protection for columns
ENABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE Procedure on page 171-21	Enables protection based on the source of truth for the sensitive columns
ENABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE Procedure on page 171-22	Enables protection for a sensitive column type

ADD_POLICY Procedure

This procedure creates a TDSP policy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ADD_POLICY (
   policy_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   security_feature         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   policy_enable_options    IN FEATURE_OPTIONS,
   policy_apply_condition   IN POLICY_CONDITION DEFAULT TSDP$null_condition);
```

Parameters

Table 171–3 ADD_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`policy_name`	Name of the policy being created. The maximum length for this identifier is `M_IDEN`. This follows the Oracle naming convention.
`security_feature`	Oracle security feature with which the policy is associated. Allowed values: ■ `DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.REDACT`
`policy_enable_options`	Initialized with the parameter-value pairs corresponding to the security feature
`policy_apply_condition`	Initialized with the property-value pairs that must be satisfied in order to apply the corresponding `policy_enable_options`. This is an associative array with Property as the key (`PLS_INTEGER`). Example: `example_policy_condition(`*`Property`*`)= `*`property_value`*. Permissible values for Property: ■ `DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.DATATYPE` ■ `DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.LENGTH` ■ `DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.PARENT_SCHEMA` ■ `DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.PARENT_TABLE`

Usage Notes

To create the TDSP policy, you must include the procedure in an anonymous block that defines the type of security feature that will use the policy and conditions to test when the policy is enabled. For more information, see *Oracle Database Security Guide*.

Examples

Create a policy `PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY`:

```
DECLARE
  redact_feature_options DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.FEATURE_OPTIONS;
  policy_conditions DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.POLICY_CONDITIONS;
BEGIN
  redact_feature_options ('expression') :=
   'SYS_CONTEXT(''USERENV'',''SESSION_USER'')      =''APPUSER''';
  redact_feature_options ('function_type')        := 'DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL';
  redact_feature_options ('function_parameters')  := 'STR, VVVVVVVVV,VVVVVVVVV, *,
1, 6';
```

```
  policy_conditions(DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DATATYPE)   := 'VARCHAR2';
 DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ADD_POLICY
  ('PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY',  DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.REDACT, redact_feature_options,
policy_conditions);
END;
```

ALTER_POLICY Procedure

This procedure alters an existing TDSP policy

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ALTER_POLICY (
   policy_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_enable_options    IN FEATURE_OPTIONS,
   policy_apply_condition   IN POLICY_CONDITION default TSDP$null_condition);
```

Parameters

Table 171–4 ALTER_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
policy_name	Name of the policy to alter
policy_enable_options	Initialized with the parameter-value pairs corresponding to the security feature
policy_apply_condition	Initialized with the property-value pairs that must be satisfied in order to apply the corresponding policy_enable_options. This is an associative array with Property as the key (PLS_INTEGER). Example: example_policy_condition(*Property*)= *property_value*. Permissible values for Property: ■ DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.DATATYPE ■ DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.LENGTH ■ DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.PARENT_SCHEMA ■ DBMS_TSDP_PROPERTY.PARENT_TABLE

Usage Notes

- If the policy_apply_condition matches an existing condition for the policy, then the corresponding enable options are updated with policy_enable_options.
- If the policy_apply_condition does not match any existing condition for the policy, the combination of policy_enable_options and policy_apply_condition is added to the policy.

Examples

Add a new combination of policy_apply_condition and policy_enable_options to an existing policy PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY:

```
DECLARE
  redact_feature_options DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.FEATURE_OPTIONS;
  policy_conditions DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.POLICY_CONDITIONS;
BEGIN
   redact_feature_options ('expression') :=
       'SYS_CONTEXT(''USERENV'',''SESSION_USER'')=''APPUSER''';
   redact_feature_options ('function_type') := 'DBMS_REDACT.PARTIAL';
   redact_feature_options ('function_parameters') := 'STR, VVVVVVVVV,VVVVVVVVV, *,
        1, 6';
   policy_conditions (DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DATATYPE) := 'VARCHAR2';
   DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ALTER_POLICY ('PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY',  redact_feature_options,
policy_conditions);
```

```
END;
```

ASSOCIATE_POLICY Procedure

This procedure associates or disassociates a TSDP policy with a sensitive column type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ASSOCIATE_POLICY (
   policy_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   sensitive_type     IN  VARCHAR2,
   associate          IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 171–5 ASSOCIATE_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
policy_name	Name of the TDSP policy
sensitive_type	Name of the sensitive column type:
associate	Associate or Disassociate. TRUE implies Associate

Usage Notes

Both the policy and the sensitive column type should exist in the database.

Examples

Associate PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY with SSN_TYPE:

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ASSOCIATE_POLICY ('PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY', 'SSN_TYPE');
```

DISABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure disables protection for columns.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DISABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN (
   schema_name        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   table_name         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   column_name        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   policy_name        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 171–6 DISABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Name of the schema containing the column
table_name	Table containing the column
column_name	Column name
policy_name	Optional policy name. If given, only this policy is disabled.

Examples

Disable TSDP policies associated with the corresponding sensitive column types for columns that reside in schema with name like %PAYROLL%, table name like EMP%, and column name like SAL%:

```
EXEC DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DISABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN ('%PAYROLL%', 'EMP%', 'SAL%');
```

DISABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE Procedure

This procedure disables protection based on the source of truth for the sensitive columns.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DISABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE (
   discovery_sourcename      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 171–7 DISABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`discovery_sourcename`	Name of the discovery source. This could be the Application Data Model (ADM) name or the database user.

Examples

Disable protection for all columns corresponding to `ADM_Demo`:

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DISABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE ('ADM_Demo');
```

DISABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE Procedure

This procedure disables protection for a sensitive column type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DISABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE (
   sensitive_type         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 171–8 DISABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sensitive_type	Name of the sensitive column type

Examples

Disable protection for all columns identified by `SSN_TYPE`:

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DISABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE ('SSN_TYPE');
```

DROP_POLICY Procedure

This procedure removes a TDSP policy or one of its condition-enable_options combinations.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DROP_POLICY (
   policy_name              IN VARCHAR2,
   policy_apply_condition   IN POLICY_CONDITION default TSDP$null_condition);

DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DROP_POLICY (
   policy_name              IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 171–9 DROP_POLICY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
policy_name	Name of the policy to drop
policy_apply_condition	To be initialized with the relevant condition

Usage Notes

- The combination of policy_condition and policy_enable_options can be dropped from a TSDP policy by giving the policy_apply_condition parameter. The default condition-default options combination can also be dropped (if it exists for the policy) by passing an empty associative array of type DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.POLICY_CONDITION.
- If the condition-enable_options combination that is being dropped is the last condition-enable_options combination for the policy, the policy itself is dropped.
- A policy can be completely dropped by using the overloaded of the procedure that takes only policy_name.
- A policy or one of its conditions can be dropped only if the policy is not associated with any sensitive column type. This also means that a policy that is being dropped is not enabled on any column (object).

Examples

Dropping the condition-enable_options combination based on a specific condition:

```
DECLARE
   policy_conditions DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.POLICY_CONDITIONS;
BEGIN
   policy_conditions (DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DATATYPE) := 'VARCHAR2';
   DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DROP_POLICY ('PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY', policy_conditions);
END;
```

The default condition-enable_options combination can be dropped by passing an empty associative array of type DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.POLICY_CONDITIONS for the policy_apply_condition parameter:

```
DECLARE
   policy_conditions DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.POLICY_CONDITIONS;
BEGIN
```

```
  DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DROP_POLICY ('redact_partial_cc', policy_conditions);
END;
```

Dropping a TSDP policy:

```
BEGIN
   DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.DROP_POLICY(
   policy_name => 'PARTIAL_MASK_POLICY');
END;
```

ENABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure enables protection for columns.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ENABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN (
   schema_name        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   table_name         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   column_name        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '%',
   policy_name        IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 171–10 ENABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Name of the schema containing the column
table_name	Table containing the column
column_name	Column name
policy_name	Optional policy name. If given, only this policy is enabled.

Usage Notes

- Only a TSDP Policy that is associated with the sensitive column type of the sensitive column can be enabled using this Procedure.
- LIKE condition is used for schema_name, table_name and column_name. AND semantics is followed.

Examples

Enable TSDP policies associated with the corresponding sensitive column types for columns that reside in schema with name like %PAYROLL%, table name like EMP%, and column name like SAL%:

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ENABLE_PROTECTION_COLUMN ('%PAYROLL%', 'EMP%', 'SAL%');
```

ENABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE Procedure

This procedure enables protection based on the source of truth for the sensitive columns.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ENABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE (
   discovery_sourcename      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 171–11 ENABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
discovery_sourcename	Name of the discovery source. This could be the Application Data Model (ADM) name or the database user.

Examples

Enable protection for all columns corresponding to ADM_Demo:

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ENABLE_PROTECTION_SOURCE ('ADM_Demo');
```

ENABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE Procedure

This procedure enables protection for a sensitive column type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ENABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE (
   sensitive_type         IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 171–12 ENABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sensitive_type	Name of the sensitive column type

Examples

Enable protection for all columns identified by SSN_TYPE:

```
DBMS_TSDP_PROTECT.ENABLE_PROTECTION_TYPE ('SSN_TYPE');
```

172

DBMS_TTS

The DBMS_TTS package checks if the transportable set is self-contained. All violations are inserted into a temporary table that can be selected from the view `TRANSPORT_SET_VIOLATIONS`.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*
- *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_TTS

Security Model

Only users having the `execute_catalog_role` can execute this procedure. This role is initially only assigned to user SYS.

Exceptions

```
ts_not_found  EXCEPTION;
PRAGMA exception_init(ts_not_found, -29304);
ts_not_found_num NUMBER := -29304;

invalid_ts_list  EXCEPTION;
PRAGMA exception_init(invalid_ts_list, -29346);
invalid_ts_list_num NUMBER := -29346;

sys_or_tmp_ts     EXCEPTION;
PRAGMA exception_init(sys_or_tmp_ts, -29351);
sys_or_tmp_ts_num NUMBER := -29351;
```

Operational Notes

With respect to transportable tablespaces, disabled and enabled referential integrity constraints are handled differently:

- A disabled referential integrity constraint does not violate the transportability rules and is dropped during the import phase.
- An enabled referential integrity constraint violates the transportability rules if it references a table in a tablespace outside the transportable set.

Summary of DBMS_TTS Subprograms

These two procedures are designed to be called by database administrators.

Table 172–1 DBMS_TTS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DOWNGRADE Procedure on page 172-7	Downgrades transportable tablespace-related data
TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK Procedure on page 172-8	Checks if a set of tablespaces (to be transported) is self-contained

DOWNGRADE Procedure

This procedure downgrades transportable tablespace related data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TTS.DOWNGRADE;
```

TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK Procedure

This procedure checks if a set of tablespaces (to be transported) is self-contained. After calling this procedure, the user may select from a view to see a list of violations, if there are any.

Syntax

```
DBMS_TTS.TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK (
   ts_list          IN CLOB,
   incl_constraints IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   full_check       IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 172–2 TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ts_list	List of one or more tablespaces, separated by comma.
incl_constraints	TRUE if you want to count in referential integrity constraints when examining if the set of tablespaces is self-contained. (The incl_constraints parameter is a default so that TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK will work if it is called with only the ts_list argument.)
full_check	Indicates whether a full or partial dependency check is required. If TRUE, treats all IN and OUT pointers (dependencies) and captures them as violations if they are not self-contained in the transportable set. The parameter should be set to TRUE for TSPITR or if a strict version of transportable is desired. By default the parameter is set to FALSE. It will only consider OUT pointers as violations.

Examples

If the view does not return any rows, then the set of tablespaces is self-contained. For example,

```
SQLPLUS> EXECUTE DBMS_TTS.TRANSPORT_SET_CHECK('foo,bar', TRUE);
SQLPLUS> SELECT * FROM TRANSPORT_SET_VIOLATIONS;
```

173

DBMS_TYPES

The DBMS_TYPES package consists of constants, which represent the built-in and user-defined types.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_TYPES
  - Constants
  - Exceptions

Using DBMS_TYPES

- Constants
- Exceptions

Constants

The following table lists the constants in the DBMS_TYPES package.

Table 173–1 DBMS_TYPES Constants

Constant	Description
NO_DATA	Is only relevant if PieceWise is called, for a collection or any dataset. Denotes the end of collection/any dataset when all the elements have been accessed
SUCCESS	The operation succeeded
TYPECODE_BDOUBLE	A NUMBER type
TYPECODE_BFILE	A BFILE type
TYPECODE_BFLOAT	A NUMBER type
TYPECODE_BLOB	A BLOB type
TYPECODE_CFILE	A CFILE type
TYPECODE_CHAR	A CHAR type
TYPECODE_CLOB	A CLOB type
TYPECODE_DATE	A DATE type
TYPECODE_INTERVAL_DS	An INTERVAL_DS type
TYPECODE_INTERVAL_YM	A INTERVAL_YM type
TYPECODE_MLSLABEL	An MLSLABEL type
TYPECODE_NAMEDCOLLECTION	A named collection (VARRAY/nested table) type
TYPECODE_NCHAR	A NCHAR type
TYPECODE_NCLOB	A NCLOB type
TYPECODE_NUMBER	A NUMBER type
TYPECODE_NVARCHAR2	A NVARCHAR2 type
TYPECODE_OBJECT	An OBJECT type
TYPECODE_OPAQUE	An OPAQUE type
TYPECODE_RAW	A RAW type
TYPECODE_REF	A REF type
TYPECODE_TABLE	A nested table collection type
TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP	A TIMESTAMP type
TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP_LTZ	A TIMESTAMP_LTZ type
TYPECODE_TIMESTAMP_TZ	A TIMESTAMP_TZ type
TYPECODE_UROWID	A UROWID type
TYPECODE_VARCHAR2	A VARCHAR2 type
TYPECODE_VARCHAR	A VARCHAR type
TYPECODE_VARRAY	A VARRAY collection type

Exceptions

- INVALID_PARAMETERS
- INCORRECT_USAGE
- TYPE_MISMATCH

174

DBMS_UTILITY

The DBMS_UTILITY package provides various utility subprograms.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_UTILITY

Security Model

DBMS_UTILITY runs with the privileges of the calling user for the NAME_RESOLVE Procedure and the COMPILE_SCHEMA Procedure. This is necessary so that the SQL works correctly.

The package does not run as SYS. The privileges are checked using DBMS_DDL.

Constants

The DBMS_UTILITY package uses the constants shown in Table 174–1, " DBMS_UTILITY Constants".

Table 174–1 DBMS_UTILITY Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
INV_ERROR_ON_ RESTRICTIONS	PLS_INTEGER	1	This constant is the only legal value for the p_option_flags parameter of the INVALIDATE subprogram

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by DBMS_UTILITY.

Table 174–2 Exceptions Raised by DBMS_UTILITY

Exception	Error Code	Description
INV_NOT_EXIST_OR_NO_PRIV	-24237	Raised by the INVALIDATE subprogram when the object_id argument is NULL or invalid, or when the caller does not have CREATE privileges on the object being invalidated
INV_MALFORMED_SETTINGS	-24238	Raised by the INVALIDATE subprogram if a compiler setting is specified more than once in the p_plsql_object_settings parameter
INV_RESTRICTED_OBJECT	-24239	Raised by the INVALIDATE subprogram when different combinations of conditions pertaining to the p_object_id parameter are contravened

Data Structures

The DBMS_UTILITY package defines a single RECORD type and TABLE types.

Record Types

- INSTANCE_RECORD Record Type

Table Types

- DBLINK_ARRAY TABLE Type
- INDEX_TABLE_TYPE Table Type
- INSTANCE_TABLE Table Type
- LNAME_ARRAY Table Type
- NAME_ARRAY Table Type
- NUMBER_ARRAY Table Type
- UNCL_ARRAY Table Type

INSTANCE_RECORD Record Type

This type describes a list of active instance number-name pairs.

Syntax

```
TYPE INSTANCE_RECORD IS RECORD (
     inst_number   NUMBER,
     inst_name     VARCHAR2(60));
```

Fields

Table 174–3 INSTANCE_RECORD Record Type Fields

Field	Description
inst_number	Active instance number
inst_name	Instance name

DBLINK_ARRAY TABLE Type

This type stores a list of database links.

Syntax

```
TYPE DBLINK_ARRAY IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(128) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

INDEX_TABLE_TYPE Table Type

This type describes the order in which generated objects are returned to a user.

Syntax

```
TYPE INDEX_TABLE_TYPE IS TABLE OF BINARY_INTEGER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

INSTANCE_TABLE Table Type

This type describes a table of INSTANCE_RECORD Record Type.

Syntax

```
TYPE INSTANCE_TABLE IS TABLE OF INSTANCE_RECORD INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

The starting index of `INSTANCE_TABLE` Is 1; `INSTANCE_TABLE` Is Dense.

LNAME_ARRAY Table Type

This type stores lists of `LONG NAME` including fully qualified attribute names.

Syntax

```
TYPE LNAME_ARRAY IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(4000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

NAME_ARRAY Table Type

This type stores lists of `NAME`.

Syntax

```
TYPE NAME_ARRAY IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

NUMBER_ARRAY Table Type

This type describes the order in which generated objects are returned to users.

Syntax

```
TYPE NUMBER_ARRAY IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

UNCL_ARRAY Table Type

This type stores lists of "user"."name"."column"@link

Syntax

```
TYPE UNCL_ARRAY IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(227) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of DBMS_UTILITY Subprograms

Table 174–4 DBMS_UTILITY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ACTIVE_INSTANCES Procedure on page 174-17	Returns the active instance
ANALYZE_DATABASE Procedure on page 174-18	Analyzes all the tables, clusters and indexes in a database
ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT Procedure on page 174-19	Analyzes the given tables and indexes
ANALYZE_SCHEMA Procedure on page 174-20	Analyzes all the tables, clusters and indexes in a schema
CANONICALIZE Procedure on page 174-21	Canonicalizes a given string
COMMA_TO_TABLE Procedures on page 174-22	Converts a comma-delimited list of names into a PL/SQL table of names
COMPILE_SCHEMA Procedure on page 174-23	Compiles all procedures, functions, packages, views and triggers in the specified schema
CREATE_ALTER_TYPE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure on page 174-24	Creates an error table to be used in the `EXCEPTION` clause of the `ALTER TYPE` statement
CURRENT_INSTANCE Function on page 174-25	Returns the current connected instance number
DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_BLOCK Function on page 174-26	Gets the block number part of a data block address
DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_FILE Function on page 174-27	Gets the file number part of a data block address
DB_VERSION Procedure on page 174-28	Returns version information for the database
EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT Procedure on page 174-29	Executes the DDL statement in `parse_string`
EXPAND_SQL_TEXT Procedure on page 174-30	Recursively replaces any view references in the input SQL query with the corresponding view subquery
FORMAT_CALL_STACK Function on page 174-31	Formats the current call stack
FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE Function on page 174-32	Formats the backtrace from the point of the current error to the exception handler where the error has been caught
FORMAT_ERROR_STACK Function on page 174-35	Formats the current error stack
GET_CPU_TIME Function on page 174-36	Returns the current CPU time in 100th's of a second
GET_DEPENDENCY Procedure on page 174-37	Shows the dependencies on the object passed in.
GET_ENDIANNESS Function on page 174-37	Gets the endianness of the database platform
GET_HASH_VALUE Function on page 174-39	Computes a hash value for the given string

Table 174–4 (Cont.) DBMS_UTILITY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_PARAMETER_VALUE Function on page 174-40	Gets the value of specified init.ora parameter
GET_SQL_HASH Function on page 174-42	Computes a hash value for the given string using MD5 algorithm
GET_TIME Function on page 174-43	Returns the current time in 100th's of a second
GET_TZ_TRANSITIONS Procedure on page 174-44	Returns timezeone transitions by `regionid` from the `timezone.dat` file
INVALIDATE Procedure on page 174-45	Invalidates a database object and (optionally) modifies its PL/SQL compiler parameter settings
IS_BIT_SET Function on page 174-48	Checks the bit setting for the given bit in the given `RAW` value
IS_CLUSTER_DATABASE Function on page 174-49	Determines if the database is running in cluster database mode
MAKE_DATA_BLOCK_ ADDRESS Function on page 174-50	Creates a data block address given a file number and a block number
NAME_RESOLVE Procedure on page 174-51	Resolves the given name
NAME_TOKENIZE Procedure on page 174-53	Calls the parser to parse the given name
OLD_CURRENT_SCHEMA Function on page 174-54	Returns the session value from `SYS_CONTEXT ('USERENV', 'CURRENT_SCHEMA')`
OLD_CURRENT_USER Function on page 174-55	Returns the session value from `SYS_CONTEXT ('USERENV', 'CURRENT_USER')`
PORT_STRING Function on page 174-56	Returns a string that uniquely identifies the version of Oracle and the operating system
SQLID_TO_SQLHASH Function on page 174-57	Converts a SQL ID into a hash value
TABLE_TO_COMMA Procedures on page 174-58	Converts a PL/SQL table of names into a comma-delimited list of names
VALIDATE Procedure on page 174-59	Makes invalid database objects valid
WAIT_ON_PENDING_DML Function on page 174-61	Waits until all transactions (other than the caller's own) that have locks on the listed tables and began prior to the specified SCN have either committed or been rolled back

ACTIVE_INSTANCES Procedure

This procedure returns the active instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.ACTIVE_INSTANCES (
   instance_table   OUT INSTANCE_TABLE,
   instance_count   OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 174–5 ACTIVE_INSTANCES Procedure Parameters

Procedure	Description
instance_table	Contains a list of the active instance numbers and names. When no instance is up, the list is empty.
instance_count	Number of active instances

ANALYZE_DATABASE Procedure

This procedure analyzes all the tables, clusters and indexes in a database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.ANALYZE_DATABASE (
   method             IN  VARCHAR2,
   estimate_rows      IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent   IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   method_opt         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 174–6 ANALYZE_DATABASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
method	One of ESTIMATE, COMPUTE or DELETE. If ESTIMATE then either estimate_rows or estimate_percent must be nonzero.
estimate_rows	Number of rows to estimate
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate. If estimate_rows is specified ignore this parameter.
method_opt	Method options of the following format: [FOR TABLE] [FOR ALL [INDEXED] COLUMNS] [SIZE n] [FOR ALL INDEXES]

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges for some object in this database

ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure is equivalent to SQL:

```
"ANALYZE TABLE|INDEX [<schema>.]<object_name> PARTITION <pname> [<command_type>]
[<command_opt>] [<sample_clause>]
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT (
   schema        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   object_type   IN CHAR     DEFAULT 'T',
   command_type  IN CHAR     DEFAULT 'E',
   command_opt   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   sample_clause IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'sample 5 percent ');
```

Parameters

Table 174–7 ANALYZE_PART_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	Schema of the object_name
object_name	Name of object to be analyzed, must be partitioned
object_type	Type of object, must be T (table) or I (index)
command_type	Must be V (validate structure)
command_opt	Other options for the command type. For C, E it can be FOR table, FOR all LOCAL indexes, FOR all columns or combination of some of the 'for' options of analyze statistics (table). For V, it can be CASCADE when object_type is T.
sample_clause	Sample clause to use when command_type is 'E'

Usage Notes

For each partition of the object, run in parallel using job queues.

ANALYZE_SCHEMA Procedure

This procedure analyzes all the tables, clusters and indexes in a schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.ANALYZE_SCHEMA (
   schema             IN  VARCHAR2,
   method             IN  VARCHAR2,
   estimate_rows      IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   estimate_percent   IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   method_opt         IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 174–8 ANALYZE_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	Name of the schema
method	One of ESTIMATE, COMPUTE or DELETE. If ESTIMATE then either estimate_rows or estimate_percent must be nonzero.
estimate_rows	Number of rows to estimate
estimate_percent	Percentage of rows to estimate. If estimate_rows is specified ignore this parameter.
method_opt	Method options of the following format: [FOR TABLE] [FOR ALL [INDEXED] COLUMNS] [SIZE n] [FOR ALL INDEXES]

Exceptions

ORA-20000: Insufficient privileges for some object in this schema

CANONICALIZE Procedure

This procedure canonicalizes the given string. The procedure handles a single reserved or key word (such as 'table'), and strips off white spaces for a single identifier so that ' table ' becomes TABLE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.CANONICALIZE(
   name           IN    VARCHAR2,
   canon_name     OUT   VARCHAR2,
   canon_len      IN    BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 174–9 CANONICALIZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	String to be canonicalized
canon_name	Canonicalized string
canon_len	Length of the string (in bytes) to canonicalize

Return Values

Returns the first canon_len bytes in canon_name.

Usage Notes

- If name is NULL, canon_name becomes NULL.
- If name is not a dotted name, and if name begins and ends with a double quote, remove both quotes. Alternatively, convert to upper case with NLS_UPPER. Note that this case does not include a name with special characters, such as a space, but is not doubly quoted.
- If name is a dotted name (such as a."b".c), for each component in the dotted name in the case in which the component begins and ends with a double quote, no transformation will be performed on this component. Alternatively, convert to upper case with NLS_UPPER and apply begin and end double quotes to the capitalized form of this component. In such a case, each canonicalized component will be concatenated together in the input position, separated by ".".
- Any other character after a[.b]* will be ignored.
- The procedure does not handle cases like 'A B.'

Examples

- a becomes A
- "a" becomes a
- "a".b becomes "a"."B"
- "a".b,c.f becomes "a"."B" with",c.f" ignored.

COMMA_TO_TABLE Procedures

These procedures converts a comma-delimited list of names into a PL/SQL table of names. The second version supports fully-qualified attribute names.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.COMMA_TO_TABLE (
   list   IN  VARCHAR2,
   tablen OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   tab    OUT uncl_array);

DBMS_UTILITY.COMMA_TO_TABLE (
   list   IN  VARCHAR2,
   tablen OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   tab    OUT lname_array);
```

Parameters

Table 174–10 COMMA_TO_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`list`	Comma separated list of list of 'names', where a name should have the following format for the first overloading: `a [. b [. c ]][ @ d ]` and the following format for the second overloading: `a [. b]*` where `a`, `b`, `c`, `d` are simple identifiers (quoted or unquoted).
`tablen`	Number of tables in the PL/SQL table
`tab`	PL/SQL table which contains list of names

Return Values

A PL/SQL table is returned, with values `1..n` and `n+1` is `null`.

Usage Notes

- The `list` must be a non-empty comma-delimited list: Anything other than a comma-delimited list is rejected. Commas inside double quotes do not count.
- Entries in the comma-delimited list cannot include multibyte characters.
- The values in `tab` are copied from the original list, with no transformations.
- The procedure fails if the string between separators is longer than 30 bytes.

COMPILE_SCHEMA Procedure

This procedure compiles all procedures, functions, packages, views and triggers in the specified schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.COMPILE_SCHEMA (
   schema          IN VARCHAR2,
   compile_all     IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   reuse_settings  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 174–11 COMPILE_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema	Name of the schema
compile_all	If TRUE, will compile everything within the schema regardless of whether it is VALID
	If FALSE, will compile only INVALID objects
reuse_settings	Indicates whether the session settings in the objects should be reused, or whether the current session settings should be adopted instead

Exceptions

Table 174–12 COMPILE_SCHEMA Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-20000	Insufficient privileges for some object in this schema
ORA-20001	Cannot recompile SYS objects
ORA-20002	Maximum iterations exceeded. Some objects may not have been recompiled.

Usage Notes

- Note that this subprogram is a wrapper for theRECOMP_SERIAL Procedure included with the UTL_RECOMP package.
- After calling this procedure, you should select from view ALL_OBJECTS for items with status of INVALID to see if all objects were successfully compiled.
- To see the errors associated with INVALID objects, you may use the Enterprise Manager command:

  ```
  SHOW ERRORS <type> <schema>.<name>
  ```

CREATE_ALTER_TYPE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure

This procedure creates an error table to be used in the `EXCEPTION` clause of the `ALTER TYPE` statement.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.CREATE_ALTER_TYPE_ERROR_TABLE(
   schema_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 174–13 CREATE_ALTER_TYPE_ERROR_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema_name`	Name of the schema
`table_name`	Name of the table created

Exceptions

An error is returned if the table already exists.

CURRENT_INSTANCE Function

This function returns the current connected instance number. It returns `NULL` when connected instance is down.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.CURRENT_INSTANCE
   RETURN NUMBER;
```

DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_BLOCK Function

This function gets the block number part of a data block address.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_BLOCK (
   dba NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–14 DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_BLOCK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dba	Data block address

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(data_block_address_block, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Return Values

Block offset of the block.

Usage Notes

This function should not be used with datablocks which belong to bigfile tablespaces.

DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_FILE Function

This function gets the file number part of a data block address.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_FILE (
   dba NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–15 DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS_FILE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dba	Data block address

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references (data_block_address_file, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Return Values

File that contains the block.

Usage Notes

This function should not be used with datablocks which belong to bigfile tablespaces.

DB_VERSION Procedure

This procedure returns version information for the database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.DB_VERSION (
   version       OUT VARCHAR2,
   compatibility OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 174–16 DB_VERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`version`	A string which represents the internal software version of the database (for example, 7.1.0.0.0). The length of this string is variable and is determined by the database version.
`compatibility`	The compatibility setting of the database determined by the "compatible" `init.ora` parameter. If the parameter is not specified in the `init.ora` file, then `NULL` is returned.

EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT Procedure

This procedure executes the DDL statement in `parse_string`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT (
   parse_string IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 174–17 EXEC_DDL_STATEMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`parse_string`	DDL statement to be executed

EXPAND_SQL_TEXT Procedure

This procedure recursively replaces any view references in the input SQL query with the corresponding view subquery.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.EXPAND_SQL_TEXT (
   input_sql_text     IN           CLOB,
   output_sql_text    OUT NOCOPY   CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 174–18 EXPAND_SQL_TEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
input_sql_text	Input SQL query text
output_sql_text	View-expanded query text

Exceptions

Table 174–19 EXPAND_SQL_TEXT Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-00942	Current user does not have select privileges on all the views and tables recursively referenced in the input_sql_text
ORA-24251	input_sql_text is not a SELECT statement
ORA-00900	Input is not valid
ORA-29477	Input LOB size exceeds maximum size of 4GB -1

Usage Notes

The expanded and merged SQL statement text is copied to output_sql_text on successful completion. The resulting query text only contains references to underlying tables and is semantically equivalent with some caveats:

- If there are invoker rights functions called from any of the views, they may be called as a different user in the resulting query text if the view owner is different from the user who will eventually compile/run the expanded SQL text.
- The VPD policy expands differently if there is a function supplied to generate the dynamic WHERE clause. This function would return differently, for example, if the userid caused the expansion to be different.
- If there are references to remote objects, results are undetermined.

FORMAT_CALL_STACK Function

This function formats the current call stack. This can be used on any stored procedure or trigger to access the call stack. This can be useful for debugging.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_CALL_STACK
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(format_call_stack,WNDS);
```

Return Values

This returns the call stack, up to 2000 bytes.

FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE Function

This function displays the call stack at the point where an exception was raised, even if the subprogram is called from an exception handler in an outer scope. The output is similar to the output of the SQLERRM function, but not subject to the same size limitation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The backtrace string. A NULL string is returned if no error is currently being handled.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE Log_Errors ( i_buff in varchar2 ) IS
  g_start_pos integer := 1;
  g_end_pos  integer;

  FUNCTION Output_One_Line RETURN BOOLEAN IS
  BEGIN
    g_end_pos := Instr ( i_buff, Chr(10), g_start_pos );

    CASE g_end_pos > 0
      WHEN true THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ( Substr ( i_buff, g_start_pos,
g_end_pos-g_start_pos ) );
        g_start_pos := g_end_pos+1;
        RETURN TRUE;

      WHEN FALSE THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ( Substr ( i_buff, g_start_pos,
(Length(i_buff)-g_start_pos)+1 ) );
        RETURN FALSE;
    END CASE;
  END Output_One_Line;

BEGIN
  WHILE Output_One_Line() LOOP NULL;
  END LOOP;
END Log_Errors;
/

Set Doc Off
Set Feedback off
Set Echo Off

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P0 IS
  e_01476 EXCEPTION; pragma exception_init ( e_01476, -1476 );
BEGIN
  RAISE e_01476;
END P0;
/
Show Errors

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P1 IS
```

```
BEGIN
  P0();
END P1;
/
SHOW ERRORS

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P2 IS
BEGIN
  P1();
END P2;
/
SHOW ERRORS

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P3 IS
BEGIN
  P2();
END P3;
/
SHOW ERRORS

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P4 IS
  BEGIN P3(); END P4;
/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P5 IS
  BEGIN P4(); END P5;
/
SHOW ERRORS

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE Top_Naive IS
BEGIN
  P5();
END Top_Naive;
/
SHOW ERRORS

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE Top_With_Logging IS
  -- NOTE: SqlErrm in principle gives the same info as Format_Error_Stack.
  -- But SqlErrm is subject to some length limits,
  -- while Format_Error_Stack is not.
BEGIN
  P5();
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    Log_Errors ( 'Error_Stack...' || Chr(10) ||
      DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_ERROR_STACK() );
    Log_Errors ( 'Error_Backtrace...' || Chr(10) ||
      DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE() );
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ( '----------' );
END Top_With_Logging;
/
SHOW ERRORS

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Set ServerOutput On
call Top_Naive()
  /*
  ERROR at line 1:
  ORA-01476: divisor is equal to zero
  ORA-06512: at "U.P0", line 4
```

```
  ORA-06512: at "U.P1", line 3
  ORA-06512: at "U.P2", line 3
  ORA-06512: at "U.P3", line 3
  ORA-06512: at "U.P4", line 2
  ORA-06512: at "U.P5", line 2
  ORA-06512: at "U.TOP_NAIVE", line 3
  */
  ;

Set ServerOutput On
call Top_With_Logging()
  /*
  Error_Stack...
  ORA-01476: divisor is equal to zero
  Error_Backtrace...
  ORA-06512: at "U.P0", line 4
  ORA-06512: at "U.P1", line 3
  ORA-06512: at "U.P2", line 3
  ORA-06512: at "U.P3", line 3
  ORA-06512: at "U.P4", line 2
  ORA-06512: at "U.P5", line 2
  ORA-06512: at "U.TOP_WITH_LOGGING", line 6
  ----------
  */
  ;

/*
  ORA-06512:
  Cause:
    Backtrace message as the stack is
    unwound by unhandled exceptions.
  Action:
    Fix the problem causing the exception
    or write an exception handler for this condition.
    Or you may need to contact your application administrator
    or database administrator.
*/
```

FORMAT_ERROR_STACK Function

This function formats the current error stack. This can be used in exception handlers to look at the full error stack.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_ERROR_STACK
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

This returns the error stack, up to 2000 bytes.

GET_CPU_TIME Function

This function returns a measure of current CPU processing time in hundredths of a second. The difference between the times returned from two calls measures the CPU processing time (not the total elapsed time) between those two points.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_CPU_TIME
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Return Values

Time is the number of 100th's of a second from some arbitrary epoch.

Usage Notes

The amount of work performed is calculated by measuring the difference between a start point and end point for a particular operation.

GET_DEPENDENCY Procedure

This procedure shows the dependencies on the object passed in.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_DEPENDENCY
 type      IN     VARCHAR2,
 schema    IN     VARCHAR2,
 name      IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 174–20 GET_DEPENDENCY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
type	Type of the object, for example if the object is a table give the type as 'TABLE'
schema	Schema name of the object
name	Name of the object

Usage Notes

This procedure uses the DBMS_OUTPUTpackage to display results, and so you must declare SET SERVEROUTPUT ON if you wish to view dependencies. Alternatively, any application that checks the DBMS_OUTPUT output buffers can invoke this subprogram and then retrieve the output by means of DBMS_OUTPUT subprograms such as GET_LINES.

GET_ENDIANNESS Function

This function gets the endianness of the database platform.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_ENDIANNESS
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Return Values

A `NUMBER` value indicating the endianness of the database platform: 1 for big-endian or 2 for little-endian.

GET_HASH_VALUE Function

This function computes a hash value for the given string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_HASH_VALUE (
   name      VARCHAR2,
   base      NUMBER,
   hash_size NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–21 GET_HASH_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	String to be hashed.
base	Base value for the returned hash value at which to start
hash_size	Desired size of the hash table

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(get_hash_value, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Return Values

A hash value based on the input string. For example, to get a hash value on a string where the hash value should be between 1000 and 3047, use 1000 as the base value and 2048 as the hash_size value. Using a power of 2 for the hash_size parameter works best.

GET_PARAMETER_VALUE Function

This function gets the value of specified `init.ora` parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_PARAMETER_VALUE (
   parnam     IN        VARCHAR2,
   intval     IN OUT    BINARY_INTEGER,
   strval     IN OUT    VARCHAR2,
   listno     IN        BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–22 GET_PARAMETER_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`parnam`	Parameter name
`intval`	Value of an integer parameter or the value length of a string parameter
`strval`	Value of a string parameter
`listno`	List item number. If retrieving parameter values for a parameter that can be specified multiple times to accumulate values, use this parameter to get each individual parameter.

Return Values

Parameter type:

- 0 if parameter is an `INTEGER/BOOLEAN` parameter
- 1 if parameter is a string/file parameter

Usage Notes

- To execute the this function, you must have the `SELECT` privilege on the V$PARAMETER dynamic view.
- When using `DBMS_UTILITY.GET_PARAMETER_VALUE`, only the first parameter setting of `/dir1` is returned when `init.ora` is set as follows:

  ```
  utl_file_dir = /dir1
  utl_file_dir = /dir2
  ```

  However, the full comma-delimited string is returned if you are using:

  ```
  utl_file_dir = /dir1, /dir2
  ```

Examples

```
DECLARE
  parnam VARCHAR2(256);
  intval BINARY_INTEGER;
  strval VARCHAR2(256);
  partyp BINARY_INTEGER;
BEGIN
  partyp := dbms_utility.get_parameter_value('max_dump_file_size',
```

```
                                                intval, strval);
  dbms_output.put('parameter value is: ');
  IF partyp = 1 THEN
    dbms_output.put_line(strval);
  ELSE
    dbms_output.put_line(intval);
  END IF;
  IF partyp = 1 THEN
    dbms_output.put('parameter value length is: ');
    dbms_output.put_line(intval);
  END IF;
  dbms_output.put('parameter type is: ');
  IF partyp = 1 THEN
    dbms_output.put_line('string');
  ELSE
    dbms_output.put_line('integer');
  END IF;
END;
```

GET_SQL_HASH Function

This function computes a hash value for the given string using MD5 algorithm.

Syntax

```
Dbms_utility.get_sql_hash (
   name          IN   VARCHAR2,
   hash          OUT  RAW,
   pre10ihash    OUT  NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

Pragma Restrict_references(`Get_sql_hash`, `Wnds`, `Rnds`, `Wnps`, `Rnps`);

Parameters

Table 174–23 GET_SQL_HASH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	String to be hashed
`hash`	Optional field to store all 16 bytes of returned hash value
`pre10ihash`	Optional field to store the pre 10i database version hash value

Return Values

A hash value (last 4 bytes) based on the input string. the MD5 hash algorithm computes a 16 byte hash value, but we only return the last 4 bytes so that we can return an actual number. one could use an optional raw parameter to get all 16 bytes and to store the pre 10*i* hash value of 4 bytes in the pre10*i* hash optional parameter.

GET_TIME Function

This function determines the current time in 100th's of a second. This subprogram is primarily used for determining elapsed time. The subprogram is called twice – at the beginning and end of some process – and then the first (earlier) number is subtracted from the second (later) number to determine the time elapsed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Return Values

Time is the number of 100th's of a second from the point in time at which the subprogram is invoked.

Usage Notes

Numbers are returned in the range -2147483648 to 2147483647 depending on platform and machine, and your application must take the sign of the number into account in determining the interval. For instance, in the case of two negative numbers, application logic must allow that the first (earlier) number will be larger than the second (later) number which is closer to zero. By the same token, your application should also allow that the first (earlier) number be negative and the second (later) number be positive.

GET_TZ_TRANSITIONS Procedure

This procedure returns time zone transitions by `regionid` from the `timezone.dat` file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TZ_TRANSITIONS
   regionid      IN     NUMBER,
   transitions   OUT    MAXRAW);
```

Parameters

Table 174–24 GET_TZ_TRANSITIONS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`regionid`	Number corresponding to the region
`transitions`	Raw bytes from the `timezone.dat` file

Exceptions

Table 174–25 GET_TZ_TRANSITIONS Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`ORA-6502: PL/SQL: NUMERIC OR VALUE ERROR`	For an invalid `regionid`

INVALIDATE Procedure

This procedure invalidates a database object and (optionally) modifies its PL/SQL compiler parameter settings. It also invalidates any objects that (directly or indirectly) depend on the object being invalidated.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.INVALIDATE (
   p_object_id              NUMBER,
   p_plsql_object_settings  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   p_option_flags           PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 174–26 INVALIDATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_object_id	ID number of object to be invalidated. This is the same as the value of the OBJECT_ID column from ALL_OBJECTS. If the object_id argument is NULL or invalid then the exception inv_not_exist_or_no_priv is raised. The caller of this procedure must have create privileges on the object being invalidated else the inv_not_exist_or_no_priv exception is raised.
p_plsql_object_settings	Optional parameter that ignored if the object specified by p_object_id is not a PL/SQL object. If no value is specified for this parameter then the PL/SQL compiler settings are left unchanged, that is, equivalent to REUSE SETTINGS. If a value is provided, it must specify the values of the PL/SQL compiler settings separated by one or more spaces. Each setting can be specified only once else inv_malformed_settings exception will be raised. The setting values are changed only for the object specified by p_object_id and do not affect dependent objects that may be invalidated. The setting names and values are case insensitive. If a setting is omitted and REUSE SETTINGS is specified, then if a value was specified for the compiler setting in an earlier compilation of this library unit, Oracle Database uses that earlier value. If a setting is omitted and REUSE SETTINGS was not specified or no value has been specified for the parameter in an earlier compilation, then the database will obtain the value for that setting from the session environment.
p_option_flags	Optional parameter defaults to zero (no flags). Option flags supported by invalidate. ■ inv_error_on_restrictions (see Constants on page 174-4): The subprogram imposes various restrictions on the objects that can be invalidated. For example, the object specified by p_object_id cannot be a table. By default, invalidate quietly returns on these conditions (and does not raise an exception). If the caller sets this flag, the exception inv_restricted_object is raised.

Exceptions

Table 174–27 INVALIDATE Exceptions

Exception	Description
INV_NOT_EXIST_OR_NO_PRIV	Raised when the object_id argument is NULL or invalid, or when the caller does not have CREATE privileges on the object being invalidated
INV_MALFORMED_SETTINGS	Raised if a compiler setting is specified more than once in the p_plsql_object_settings parameter
INV_RESTRICTED_OBJECT	Raised when different combinations of conditions pertaining to the p_object_id parameter are contravened

Usage Notes

The object type (object_type column from ALL_OBJECTS) of the object specified by p_object_id must be a PROCEDURE, FUNCTION, PACKAGE, PACKAGE BODY, TRIGGER, TYPE, TYPE BODY, LIBRARY, VIEW, OPERATOR, SYNONYM, or JAVA CLASS. If the object is not one of these types and the flag inv_error_on_restrictions is specified in p_option_flags then the exception inv_restricted_object is raised, else no action is taken.

If the object specified by p_object_id is the package specification of STANDARD, DBMS_STANDARD, or specification or body of DBMS_UTILITY and the flag inv_error_on_restrictions is specified in p_option_flags then the exception inv_restricted_object is raised, else no action is taken.

If the object specified by p_object_id is an object type specification and there exist tables which depend on the type and the flag inv_error_on_restrictions is specified in p_option_flags then the exception inv_restricted_object is raised, else no action is taken.

Examples

Example 1

```
DBMS_UTILITY.INVALIDATE (1232, 'PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 2 REUSE SETTINGS');
```

Assume that the object_id 1232 refers to the procedure remove_emp in the HR schema. Then the above call will mark the remove_emp procedure invalid and change it's PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL compiler setting to 2. The values of other compiler settings will remain unchanged since REUSE SETTINGS is specified.

Objects that depend on hr.remove_emp will also get marked invalid. Their compiler parameters will not be changed.

Example 2

```
DBMS_UTILITY.INVALIDATE (40775, 'plsql_code_type = native');
```

Assume that the object_id 40775 refers to the type body leaf_category_typ in the OE schema. Then the above call will mark the type body invalid and change its PLSQL_CODE_TYPE compiler setting to NATIVE. The values of other compiler settings will be picked up from the current session environment since REUSE SETTINGS has not been specified.

Since no objects can depend on bodies, there are no cascaded invalidations.

Example 3

```
DBMS_UTILITY.INVALIDATE (40796);
```

Assume that the `object_id` 40796 refers to the view `oc_orders` in the `OE` schema. Then the above call will mark the `oc_orders` view invalid.

Objects that depend on `oe.oc_orders` will also get marked invalid.

IS_BIT_SET Function

This function checks the bit setting for the given bit in the given RAW value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.IS_BIT_SET (
   r     IN    RAW,   n     IN    NUMBER)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–28 IS_BET_SET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW source
n	Bit in r to check

Return Values

This function returns 1 if bit n in raw r is set, zero otherwise. Bits are numbered high to low with the lowest bit being bit number 1.

IS_CLUSTER_DATABASE Function

This function finds out if this database is running in cluster database mode.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.IS_CLUSTER_DATABASE
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Return Values

This function returns `TRUE` if this instance was started in cluster database mode; `FALSE` otherwise.

MAKE_DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS Function

This function creates a data block address given a file number and a block number. A data block address is the internal structure used to identify a block in the database. This function is useful when accessing certain fixed tables that contain data block addresses.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.MAKE_DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS (
   file  NUMBER,
   block NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–29 MAKE_DATA_BLOCK_ADDRESS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`file`	File that contains the block
`block`	Offset of the block within the file in terms of block increments

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references (make_data_block_address, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Return Values

Data block address.

NAME_RESOLVE Procedure

This procedure resolves the given name, including synonym translation and authorization checking as necessary.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_RESOLVE (
   name          IN  VARCHAR2,
   context       IN  NUMBER,
   schema        OUT VARCHAR2,
   part1         OUT VARCHAR2,
   part2         OUT VARCHAR2,
   dblink        OUT VARCHAR2,
   part1_type    OUT NUMBER,
   object_number OUT NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 174–30 NAME_RESOLVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the object. This can be of the form [[a.]b.]c[@d], where a, b, c are SQL identifier and d is a dblink. No syntax checking is performed on the dblink. If a dblink is specified, or if the name resolves to something with a dblink, then object is not resolved, but the schema, part1, part2 and dblink OUT parameters are filled in. a, b and c may be delimited identifiers, and may contain Globalization Support (NLS) characters (single and multibyte).
context	Must be an integer between 0 and 9. ■ 0 - table ■ 1 - PL/SQL (for 2 part names) ■ 2 - sequences ■ 3 - trigger ■ 4 - Java Source ■ 5 - Java resource ■ 6 - Java class ■ 7 - type ■ 8 - Java shared data ■ 9 - index
schema	Schema of the object: c. If no schema is specified in name, then the schema is determined by resolving the name.
part1	First part of the name. The type of this name is specified part1_type (synonym or package).
part2	If this is non-NULL, then this is a subprogram name. If part1 is non-NULL, then the subprogram is within the package indicated by part1. If part1 is NULL, then the subprogram is a top-level subprogram.

Table 174–30 (Cont.) NAME_RESOLVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dblink	If this is non-NULL, then a database link was either specified as part of name or name was a synonym which resolved to something with a database link. In this case, if further name translation is desired, then you must call the DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_RESOLVE procedure on this remote node.
part1_type	Type of part1 is: ■ 5 - synonym ■ 7 - procedure (top level) ■ 8 - function (top level) ■ 9 - package
object_number	Object identifier

Exceptions

All errors are handled by raising exceptions. A wide variety of exceptions are possible, based on the various syntax error that are possible when specifying object names.

NAME_TOKENIZE Procedure

This procedure calls the parser to parse the given name as

a [. b [. c]][@ dblink]

It strips double quotes, or converts to uppercase if there are no quotes. It ignores comments of all sorts, and does no semantic analysis. Missing values are left as `NULL`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.NAME_TOKENIZE (
   name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   a       OUT VARCHAR2,
   b       OUT VARCHAR2,
   c       OUT VARCHAR2,
   dblink  OUT VARCHAR2,
   nextpos OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 174–31 NAME_RESOLVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Input name, consisting of SQL identifiers (for example, scott.foo@dblink)
`a`	Output for the first token of the name
`b`	Output for the second token of the name (if applicable)
`c`	Output for the third token of the name (if applicable)
`dblink`	Output for the `dblink` of the name
`nextpos`	Next position after parsing the input name

OLD_CURRENT_SCHEMA Function

This function returns the session value from `sys_context ('userenv', 'current_schema')`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.OLD_CURRENT_SCHEMA
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

OLD_CURRENT_USER Function

This function returns the session value from `sys_context` ('`userenv`', '`current_user`').

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.OLD_CURRENT_USER
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

PORT_STRING Function

This function returns a string that identifies the operating system and the `TWO TASK PROTOCOL` version of the database. For example, "`VAX/VMX-7.1.0.0`"

The maximum length is port-specific.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.PORT_STRING
   RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(port_string, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

SQLID_TO_SQLHASH Function

This function converts a SQL ID into a hash value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.SQLID_TO_SQLHASH (
   sql_id    IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 174–32 SQLID_TO_SQLHASH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	SQL ID of a SQL statement. Must be VARCHAR2(13).

TABLE_TO_COMMA Procedures

This procedure converts a PL/SQL table of names into a comma-delimited list of names. This takes a PL/SQL table, `1..n`, terminated with `n+1 null`. The second version supports fully-qualified attribute names.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.TABLE_TO_COMMA (
   tab    IN  UNCL_ARRAY,
   tablen OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   list   OUT VARCHAR2);

DBMS_UTILITY.TABLE_TO_COMMA (
   tab    IN  lname_array,
   tablen OUT BINARY_INTEGER,
   list   OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 174–33 TABLE_TO_COMMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tab`	PL/SQL table which contains list of table names
`tablen`	Number of tables in the PL/SQL table
`list`	Comma separated list of tables

Return Values

A comma-delimited list and the number of elements found in the table.

VALIDATE Procedure

This procedure makes invalid database objects valid.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.VALIDATE(
    object_id       NUMBER);

DBMS_UTILITY.VALIDATE(
   owner          VARCHAR2,
   objname        VARCHAR2,
   namespace      NUMBER,   edition_name   := SYS_CONTEXT ('USERENV', 'CURRENT_
EDITION'));
```

Parameters

Table 174–34 VALIDATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	Name of the user who owns the object. Same as the OWNER field in ALL_OBJECTS.
objname	Name of the object to be validated. Same as the OBJECT_NAME field in ALL_OBJECTS.
namespace	Namespace of the object. Same as the namespace field in obj$. Equivalent numeric values are as follows: ■ 1 = TABLE/PROCEDURE/TYPE ■ 2 = BODY ■ 3 = TRIGGER ■ 4 = INDEX ■ 5 = CLUSTER ■ 8 = LOB ■ 9 = DIRECTORY ■ 10 = QUEUE ■ 11 = REPLICATION OBJECT GROUP ■ 12 = REPLICATION PROPAGATOR ■ 13 = JAVA SOURCE ■ 14 = JAVA RESOURCE ■ 58 = (Data Mining) MODEL
edition_name	[Note: Currently not operable. Reserved for future use]

Usage Notes

- No errors are raised if the object does not exist or is already valid or is an object that cannot be validated.
- If the object being validated is not actual in the specified edition, the subprogram automatically switches into the edition in which the object is actual prior to validation. That is, a call to VALIDATE will not actualize the object in the specified edition.

- The INVALIDATE Procedure invalidates a database object and optionally changes its PL/SQL compiler parameter settings. The object to be invalidated is specified by its `object_id`. The subprogram automatically switches to the edition in which the object is actual prior to invalidation. That is, a call to `INVALIDATE` will not actualize the object in the current edition.

WAIT_ON_PENDING_DML Function

This function waits until all transactions (other than the caller's own) that have locks on the listed tables and began prior to the specified `scn` have either committed or been rolled back.

Syntax

```
DBMS_UTILITY.WAIT_ON_PENDING_DML (
    tables     IN       VARCHAR2,
    timeout    IN       BINARY_INTEGER,
    scn        IN OUT   NUMBER)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 174–35 WAIT_ON_PENDING_DML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`tables`	Comma-separated list of one or more table names. The list must be valid for COMMA_TO_TABLE Procedures, and each item valid to the NAME_RESOLVE Procedure. Neither column specifiers nor DBLINK (database link) specifiers are allowed in the names, and each name must resolve to an existing table in the local database.
`timeout`	Maximum number of seconds to wait, totalled across all tables/transactions. A `NULL` or negative value will cause a very long wait.
`scn`	SCN prior to which transactions must have begun to be considered relevant to this request. If the value is `NULL` or not recognized as a meaningful scn on input, the most current SCN across all instances will be used and will be set into the passed argument as an output. If a meaningful value is passed in, its value will be preserved in the output.

Return Values

`TRUE` if all relevant transactions have committed or been rolled back, `FALSE` if the timeout occurred prior to all relevant transactions committing or being rolled back

175

DBMS_WARNING

The DBMS_WARNING package provides a way to manipulate the behavior of PL/SQL warning messages, in particular by reading and changing the setting of the PLSQL_WARNINGS initialization parameter to control what kinds of warnings are suppressed, displayed, or treated as errors. This package provides the interface to query, modify and delete current system or session settings.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_WARNING

- Security Model

Security Model

Note that for all the following interfaces, if value of the scope parameter is `SYSTEM`, then the user must have `ALTER SYSTEM` privilege.

Summary of DBMS_WARNING Subprograms

Table 175–1 DBMS_WARNING Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_WARNING_SETTING_CAT Procedure on page 175-5	Modifies the current `session` or `system` warning settings of the `warning_category` previously supplied
ADD_WARNING_SETTING_NUM Procedure on page 175-6	Modifies the current `session` or `system` warning settings of the or `warning_number` previously supplied
GET_CATEGORY Function on page 175-7	Returns the category name, given the message number
GET_WARNING_SETTING_CAT Function on page 175-8	Returns the specific warning category in the session
GET_WARNING_SETTING_NUM Function on page 175-9	Returns the specific warning number in the session
GET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING Function on page 175-10	Returns the entire warning string for the current session
SET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING Procedure on page 175-11	Replaces previous settings with the new value

ADD_WARNING_SETTING_CAT Procedure

You can modify the current session's or system's warning settings with the value supplied. The value will be added to the existing parameter setting if the value for the warning_category or warning_value has not been set, or override the existing value. The effect of calling this function is same as adding the qualifier (ENABLE/DISABLE/ERROR) on the category specified to the end of the current session or system setting.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.ADD_WARNING_SETTING_CAT (
   warning_category    IN    VARCHAR2,
   warning_value       IN    VARCHAR2,
   scope               IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 175–2 ADD_WARNING_SETTING_CAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning_category	Name of the category. Allowed values are ALL, INFORMATIONAL, SEVERE and PERFORMANCE.
warning_value	Value for the category. Allowed values are ENABLE, DISABLE, and ERROR.
scope	Specifies if the changes are being performed in the session context or the system context. Allowed values are SESSION or SYSTEM.

ADD_WARNING_SETTING_NUM Procedure

You can modify the current `session` or `system` warning settings with the value supplied. If the value was already set, you will override the existing value. The effect of calling this function is same as adding the qualifier (`ENABLE` / `DISABLE`/ `ERROR`) on the category specified to the end of the current session or system setting.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.ADD_WARNING_SETTING_NUM (
   warning_number      IN    NUMBER,
   warning_value       IN    VARCHAR2,
   scope               IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 175–3 ADD_WARNING_SETTING_NUM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`warning_number`	The warning number. Allowed values are all valid warning numbers.
`warning_value`	Value for the category. Allowed values are `ENABLE`, `DISABLE`, and `ERROR`.
`scope`	Specifies if the changes are being performed in the session context or the system context. Allowed values are `SESSION` or `SYSTEM`.

GET_CATEGORY Function

This function returns the category name, given the message number.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.GET_CATEGORY (
   warning_number  IN   pls_integer)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 175–4 GET_CATEGORY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning_number	The warning message number.

GET_WARNING_SETTING_CAT Function

This function returns the specific warning category setting for the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.GET_WARNING_SETTING_CAT (
   warning_category    IN    VARCHAR2)
RETURN warning_value;
```

Parameters

Table 175–5 GET_WARNING_SETTING_CAT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning_category	Name of the category. Allowed values are all valid category names (ALL, INFORMATIONAL, SEVERE and PERFORMANCE).

GET_WARNING_SETTING_NUM Function

This function returns the specific warning number setting for the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.GET_WARNING_SETTING_NUM (
   warning_number      IN    NUMBER)
RETURN warning_value;
```

Parameters

Table 175–6 GET_WARNING_SETTING_NUM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
warning_number	Warning number. Allowed values are all valid warning numbers.

GET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING Function

This function returns the entire warning string for the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.GET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Usage Notes

Use this function when you do not have `SELECT` or `READ` privilege on `v$parameter` or `v$paramater2` fixed tables, or if you want to parse the warning string yourself and then modify and set the new value using `SET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING`.

SET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING Procedure

This procedure replaces previous settings with the new value. The warning string may contain mix of category and warning numbers using the same syntax as used on the right hand side of '=' when issuing an `ALTER SESSION` or `SYSTEM SET PLSQL_WARNINGS` command. This will have same effect as `ALTER SESSION` OR `ALTER SYSTEM` command.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WARNING.SET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING (
   warning_value   IN   VARCHAR2,
   scope           IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 175–7 SET_WARNING_SETTING_STRING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`warning_value`	The new string that will constitute the new value.
`scope`	This will specify if the changes are being done in the session context, or system context. Allowed values are `SESSION` or `SYSTEM`.

176

DBMS_WM

The DBMS_WM package provides an interface to Oracle Database Workspace Manager (often referred to as Workspace Manager).

Documentation of DBMS_WM

For a complete description of this package, see `DBMS_WM` in *Oracle Database Workspace Manager Developer's Guide.*

177

DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE

The DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE package configures the Workload Capture system and produce the workload capture data. Replay of this capture is implemented by way of the DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Testing Guide* for more information about Database Replay

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE
  - Overview
  - Security ModelSummary of DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE Subprograms
-

Using DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE

Overview

Since the capture infrastructure is instance wide (and also within an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC)), only one workload capture is being produced at any point in time. Thus capture interfaces do not need a state object passed in as a parameter since there is one single state at any point in time. This means that all subprograms cannot be methods of an object but are package wide PL/SQL subprograms.

Security Model

The following code describes the minimal set of privileges required to:

- Create directory objects
- Operate the interface provided by the `DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE` and `DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY` packages
- Act as a replay client user (wrc `someuser/somepassword` or wrc `USER=someuser PASSWORD=somepassword`)

```
DROP USER rom1 CASCADE;
CREATE USER rom1 IDENTIFIED BY rom1;

GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE TO rom1;
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY TO rom1;

GRANT CREATE SESSION TO rom1;
GRANT CREATE ANY DIRECTORY TO rom1;
GRANT SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO rom1;
GRANT BECOME USER TO rom1;
```

Appropriate OS permissions are required to access and manipulate files and directories on both the capture and replay system. This means that the Oracle process(es) and the OS user performing the capture or replay must be able to access and manipulate at least one common directory accessible from the host where the instance is running. Additionally, the OS user performing the replay should be able to execute wrc on hosts that are used for the replay clients and be able to access the file system appropriately to copy the capture to the replay clients' hosts if required.

Summary of DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE Subprograms

This table list the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 177–1 DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_FILTER Procedures on page 177-6	Adds a specified filter
DELETE_CAPTURE_INFO Procedure on page 177-8	Deletes the rows in the `DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES` and `DBA_WORKLOAD_FILTERS` views that corresponds to the given workload capture ID
DELETE_FILTER Procedure on page 177-9	Deletes a specified filter
EXPORT_AWR Procedure on page 177-10	Exports the AWR snapshots associated with a given capture ID
FINISH_CAPTURE Procedure on page 177-11	Finalizes the workload capture by signaling all connected sessions to stop capture, and stops future requests to the database from being captured
GET_CAPTURE_INFO Function on page 177-12	Retrieves all the information regarding a workload capture present in the stipulated directory, imports the information into the `DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES` and `DBA_WORKLOAD_FILTERS` views, and returns the appropriate `DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.ID`
IMPORT_AWR Function on page 177-13	Imports the AWR snapshots associated with a given capture ID
REPORT Function on page 177-14	Returns a report on the workload capture under consideration using one or more different sources
START_CAPTURE Procedure	Initiates workload capture on all instances

ADD_FILTER Procedures

This procedure adds a filter to capture a subset of the workload.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER (
   fname           IN   VARCHAR2 NOT NULL,
   fattribute      IN   VARCHAR2 NOT NULL,
   fvalue          IN   VARCHAR2 NOT NULL);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER (
   fname           IN   VARCHAR2 NOT NULL,
   fattribute      IN   VARCHAR2 NOT NULL,
   fvalue          IN   NUMBER NOT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 177–2 ADD_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
fname	Name for the filter to be added. Can be used to delete the filter later if it is not required. (Mandatory)
fattribute	Specifies the attribute on which the filter needs to be applied (Mandatory). The possible values are: ■ INSTANCE_NUMBER - type NUMBER ■ USER - type STRING ■ MODULE - type STRING ■ ACTION - type STRING ■ PROGRAM - type STRING ■ SERVICE - type STRING ■ PDB_NAME - type STRING
fvalue	Specifies the value to which the given attribute should be equal to for the filter to be considered active. Wildcards like '%' are acceptable for all attributes that are of type STRING. This means that the filter for a NUMBER attribute is parsed as "attribute = value", with the filter for a STRING attribute parsed as "attribute like value" (Mandatory).

Usage Notes

- The workload capture filters work in either the DEFAULT INCLUSION or the DEFAULT EXCLUSION mode as determined by the default_action input to the START_CAPTURE Procedure.
- ADD_FILTER adds a new filter that affects the next workload capture, and whether the filters are considered as INCLUSION filters or EXCLUSION filters depends on the value of the default_action input to START_CAPTURE Procedure.
- Filters once specified are valid only for the next workload capture. If the same set of filters need to be used for subsequent capture, they need to be specified each time before the START_CAPTURE Procedure is executed.
- All the filters are listed in the DBA_WORKLOAD_FILTERS view.

- You can capture the workload for a particular PDB by specifying a filter of PDB type.

Examples

- By default, a capture works in an `INCLUSION` mode, which records everything except for those requests that satisfy conditions of specified filters. For example, if you want to exclude all requests from `SCOTT`, you can add the following filter before starting a capture.

```
EXEC DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER ('filter user1', 'USER', 'SCOTT');
```

- Multiple filters are evaluated according to the logical disjunction operator `OR`. Therefore, if you want to record workload for both `SCOTT` and `JOHN`, you add an additional filter:

```
EXEC DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER ('filter user2', 'USER', 'JOHN');
```

- In a CDB, you exclude the workload of a particular PDB by the filter:

```
EXEC DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER ('filter pdb workload', 'PDB_NAME',
'CDB1_PDB1');
```

- To use DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO to identify workload that is issued to the database:

```
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE('ORDER_ENTRY', NULL);
-- run some SQL here
DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_ACTION('ORDER_ENTRY_LOG');
-- run logging SQL
```

- If having captured workload, you want to exclude the logging SQL from the captured, specify a filter for capture:

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER('filter logging operations', 'ACTION', 'ORDER_
ENTRY_LOG');
```

- To filter out the full order entry transaction, define a filter:

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.ADD_FILTER('filter order entry', 'MODULE', 'ORDER_
ENTRY');
```

DELETE_CAPTURE_INFO Procedure

This procedure deletes the rows in the DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES and DBA_WORKLOAD_FILTERS views that corresponds to the given workload capture ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.DELETE_CAPTURE_INFO
   capture_id     IN   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 177–3 DELETE_CAPTURE_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_id	ID of the workload capture that needs to be deleted. Corresponds to DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.ID. (Mandatory)

Usage Notes

Passing the ID of a capture that is in progress will first automatically stop that capture.

DELETE_FILTER Procedure

This procedure deletes a specified filter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.DELETE_FILTER (
   filter_name           IN   VARCHAR2(40) NOT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 177–4 DELETE_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
filter_name	Filter to be deleted

Usage Notes

The DELETE_FILTER Procedure only affects filters that have not been used by any previous capture. Consequently, filters can be deleted only if they have been added using the ADD_FILTER Procedures after any capture has been completed. Filters that have been added using ADD_FILTER before a START_CAPTURE and FINISH_CAPTURE cannot be deleted anymore using this subprogram.

EXPORT_AWR Procedure

This procedure exports the AWR snapshots associated with a given capture ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.EXPORT_AWR (
   capture_id     IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 177–5 EXPORT_AWR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_id	ID of the capture whose AWR snapshots are to be exported. (Mandatory)

Usage Notes

This procedure works only if the corresponding workload capture was performed in the current database (meaning that the corresponding row in DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES was not created by calling the GET_CAPTURE_INFO Function) and the AWR snapshots that correspond to the original capture time period are still available.

FINISH_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure signals all connected sessions to stop the workload capture and stops future requests to the database from being captured.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.FINISH_CAPTURE
   timeout     IN   NUMBER  DEFAULT 30
   reason       IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 177–6 FINISH_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
timeout	Specifies in seconds for how long the procedure should wait before it times out. Pass 0 if you want to cancel the current workload capture and not wait for any sessions to flush it's capture buffers. Default value: 30 seconds
reason	Specifies a reason for calling the procedure. The reason appears in the column ERROR_MESSAGE of the view DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.

Usage Notes

- By default, FINISH_CAPTURE waits for 30 seconds to receive a successful acknowledgement from all sessions in the database cluster before timing out.
- All sessions that either were in the middle of executing a user request or received a new user request, while FINISH_CAPTURE was waiting for acknowledgements, flush their buffers and send back their acknowledgement to FINISH_CAPTURE.
- If a database session remains idle (waiting for the next user request) throughout the duration of FINISH_CAPTURE, the session might have unflushed capture buffers and does not send it's acknowledgement to FINISH_CAPTURE.

  To avoid this, do not have sessions that remain idle (waiting for the next user request) while invoking FINISH_CAPTURE. Either close the database session(s) before running FINISH_CAPTURE or send new database requests to those sessions during FINISH_CAPTURE.

GET_CAPTURE_INFO Function

This procedure retrieves all information regarding a workload capture present in the stipulated directory, imports the information into the DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES and DBA_WORKLOAD_FILTERS views, and returns the appropriate DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.ID

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.GET_CAPTURE_INFO
   dir      IN   VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 177–7 GET_CAPTURE_INFO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dir	Name of the DIRECTORY object (case sensitive) where all the workload capture files are located (Mandatory)

Usage Notes

If an appropriate row describing the capture in the stipulated directory already exists in DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES, the GET_CAPTURE_INFO Function simply returns that row's DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.ID. If no existing row matches the capture present in the stipulated directory a new row is inserted to DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES and that row's ID is returned.

IMPORT_AWR Function

This procedure imports the AWR snapshots associated with a given capture ID provided those AWR snapshots were exported earlier from the original capture system using the EXPORT_AWR Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.IMPORT_AWR (
   capture_id       IN   NUMBER,
   staging_schema   IN   VARCHAR2,
   force_cleanup    IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 177–8 IMPORT_AWR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_id	ID of the capture whose AWR snapshots should be imported. (Mandatory)
staging_schema	Name of a valid schema in the current database which can be used as a staging area while importing the AWR snapshots from the capture directory to the SYS AWR schema.The SYS schema is not a valid input. (Mandatory, Case sensitive).

force_cleanup	Values:
	■ TRUE - any AWR data present in the given staging_schema are removed before the actual import operation. All tables with names that match any of the tables in AWR are dropped before the actual import. This typically is equivalent to dropping all tables returned by the following SQL:
	`SELECT table_name FROM dba_tables`
	`WHERE owner = staging_schema`
	`AND table_name like 'WR_$%';`
	Use this option only if you are sure that there are no important data in any such tables in the staging_schema.
	■ FALSE - (default) no tables dropped from the staging_schema prior to the import operation

Return Values

Returns the new randomly generated database ID that was used to import the AWR snapshots. The same value can be found in the AWR_DBID column in the DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES view.

Usage Notes

IMPORT_AWR fails if the staging_schema provided as input contains any tables with the same name as any of the AWR tables, such as WRM$_SNAPSHOT or WRH$_PARAMETER. Please drop any such tables in the staging_schema before invoking IMPORT_AWR.

REPORT Function

This function generates a report on the stipulated workload capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.REPORT (
   capture_id      IN   NUMBER,
   format          IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 177–9 REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_id	ID of the workload capture whose capture report is required. (Mandatory) This relates to the directory that contains the workload capture on which the Report needs to be generated. Should be a valid DIRECTORY object that points to a valid directory in the host system that contains a workload capture.
format	Specifies the report format. Valid values are DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_TEXT and DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_HTML.(Mandatory)

Return Values

The report body in the desired format returned as a CLOB.

Table 177–10 Constants Used by Report Function

Constant	Type	Value	Description
TYPE_HTML	VARCHAR2(4)	'HTML'	Generates the HTML version of the report
TYPE_TEXT	VARCHAR2(4)	'TEXT'	Used as input to the format argument to generate the text version of the report

START_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure initiates workload capture on all instances.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.START_CAPTURE (
   name              IN  VARCHAR2,
   dir               IN  VARCHAR2,
   duration          IN  NUMBER   DEFAULT NULL,
   default_action    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'INCLUDE',
   auto_unrestrict   IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   capture_sts       IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   sts_cap_interval  IN  NUMBER   DEFAULT 300);
```

Parameters

Table 177–11 START_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Name of the workload capture. Allows the workload capture to be given a label, such as "Thanksgiving weekend" or "Christmas peak workload" for future reference. The workload capture's name is preserved along with the captured workload actions. (Mandatory)
dir	Name of the DIRECTORY object (case sensitive) where all the workload capture files are stored. Should contain enough space to hold all the workload capture files. (Mandatory)
duration	Optional input to specify the duration (in seconds) for which the workload needs to be captured. DEFAULT is NULL which means that workload capture continues until the user executes DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.FINISH_CAPTURE.
default_action	Can be either INCLUDE or EXCLUDE. Determines whether, by default, every user request should be captured or not. Also determines whether the workload filters specified should be considered as INCLUSION filters or EXCLUSION filters. ■ If INCLUDE, by default all user requests to the database are captured, except for the part of the workload defined by the filters. In this case, all the filters specified using the ADD_FILTER Procedures are treated as EXCLUSION filters, determining the workload that is not captured. (DEFAULT, and so all the filters specified are assumed to be EXCLUSION filters.) ■ If EXCLUDE, by default no user request to the database is captured, except for the part of the workload defined by the filters. In this case, all the filters specified using the ADD_FILTER Procedures are treated as INCLUSION filters, determining the workload that is captured.
auto_unrestrict	Can be either TRUE or FALSE. ■ If TRUE, all instances started up in RESTRICTED mode using STARTUP RESTRICT are automatically unrestricted upon a successful START_CAPTURE. (DEFAULT) ■ If FALSE, no database instance is automatically unrestricted.

Table 177–11 (Cont.) START_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_sts	If this parameter is TRUE, a SQL tuning set capture is also started in parallel with workload capture. The resulting SQL tuning set can be exported using the EXPORT_AWR Procedure along with the AWR data. Currently, parallel STS capture is not supported in an Oracle RAC environment, so this parameter has no effect if used in that context. Capture filters defined using the DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY interface do not apply to the SQL tuning set capture. The calling user must have the appropriate privileges ('ADMINISTER SQL TUNING SET'). If starting SQL set capture fails, workload capture is stopped. The reason is stored in DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.ERROR_MESSAGE. The default value is FALSE.
sts_cap_interval	Specifies the capture interval of the SQL set capture from the cursor cache in seconds. The default value is 300.

Usage Notes

- All user requests sent to database after a successful invocation of START_CAPTURE are recorded in the given dir directory for the given duration provided that one was specified. If no duration was specified, the capture lasts indefinitely until the FINISH_CAPTURE Procedure is executed.
- A workload capture once started continues to record user requests across database instance shutdowns and startups for the specified duration, or until FINISH_CAPTURE is executed, whichever occurs first.
- One can use workload filters (as described with regard to the ADD_FILTER Procedures) to capture only a subset of the user requests sent to the database. By default, when no workload filters are defined, all user requests are captured.
- Workload that is initiated from Oracle Database background processes (such as SMON, PMON, MMON) and Oracle Database Scheduler Jobs (as detailed in the DBMS_SCHEDULER package) is not captured, no matter how the workload filters are defined. These activities should happen automatically on an appropriately configured replay system.
- By default, all database instances that were started up in RESTRICTED mode using STARTUP RESTRICT are UNRESTRICTED upon a successful invocation of START_CAPTURE Use FALSE for the auto_unrestrict input parameter, if you do not want this behavior.
- It is important to have a well-defined starting point for the workload so that the replay system can be restored to that point before initiating a replay of the captured workload. To have a well-defined starting point for the workload capture, it is preferable not to have any active user sessions when START_CAPTURE is executed. If ongoing sessions have ongoing transactions, those transactions are not replayed properly in subsequent database replays, since only that part of the transaction whose calls were executed after START_CAPTURE are replayed.

178

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY

The DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY package provides an interface to replay a workload capture.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Testing Guide* for more information about database replay

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY
  - Overview
  - Security Model
- Summary of DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY Subprograms

Using DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY

Overview

The DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY package provides an interface to replay a workload capture that was originally created by way of the DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE package. Typically, the DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE package is used in the production system to capture a production workload, and the DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY package is subsequently used in a test system to replay the captured production workload for testing purposes.

Security Model

The following code describes the minimum set of privileges required to

- Create directory objects
- Operate the interface provided by the `DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE` and `DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY` packages
- Act as a replay client user (wrc `someuser/somepassword` or wrc `USER=someuser PASSWORD=somepassword`)

```
DROP USER rom1 CASCADE;
CREATE USER rom1 IDENTIFIED BY rom1;

GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE TO rom1;
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY TO rom1;

GRANT CREATE SESSION TO rom1;
GRANT CREATE ANY DIRECTORY TO rom1;
GRANT SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO rom1;
GRANT BECOME USER TO rom1;
```

Appropriate OS permissions are required to access and manipulate files and directories on both the capture and replay system. The Oracle process(es) and the OS user performing the capture or replay must be able to access and manipulate at least one common directory accessible from the host where the instance is running.

The replay client is a multithreaded program (an executable named `wrc` located in the `$ORACLE_HOME/bin` directory) where each thread submits a workload from a captured session. The OS user performing the replay must be able to execute `wrc` on hosts that are used for the replay clients and be able to access the file system appropriately to be able to copy the capture to the replay clients' hosts if required.

Summary of DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY Subprograms

This table lists the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 178–1 DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_CAPTURE Function on page 178-7	Adds the given capture to the current schedule
ADD_FILTER Procedure on page 178-8	Adds a filter to replay only a subset of the captured workload
ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function on page 178-9	Adds a schedule order between two captures
BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 178-10	Initiates the creation of a reusable replay schedule
CALIBRATE Function on page 178-11	Operates on a processed workload capture directory to estimate the number of hosts and workload replay clients needed to faithfully replay the given workload
CANCEL_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-12	Cancels the workload replay in progress
COMPARE_PERIOD_REPORT Procedure on page 178-13	Generates a report comparing a replay to its capture or to another replay of the same capture
COMPARE_SQLSET_REPORT Function on page 178-14	Generates a report comparing a sqlset captured during replay to one captured during workload capture or to one captured during another replay of the same capture
CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure on page 178-15	Uses the replay filters added to create a set of filters to use against the replay in `replay_dir`
DELETE_FILTER Procedure on page 178-16	Deletes the named filter
DELETE_REPLAY_INFO Procedure on page 178-17	Deletes the rows in `DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS` that corresponds to the given workload replay ID
END_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure on page 178-18	Wraps up the creation of the current schedule
EXPORT_AWR Procedure on page 178-19	Exports the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) snapshots associated with a given replay ID
GENERATE_CAPTURE_SUBSET Procedure on page 178-20	Creates a new capture from an existing workload capture
GET_DIVERGING_STATEMENT Function on page 178-21	Exports the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) snapshots associated with a given replay ID
GET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Function on page 178-22	Returns the current replay directory set by the SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure.
GET_REPLAY_INFO Function on page 178-23	Retrieves information about the workload capture and the history of all the workload replay attempts from the related directory
GET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 178-24	Retrieves the replay timeout setting
IMPORT_AWR Function on page 178-25	Imports the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) snapshots associated with a given replay ID
INITIALIZE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-26	Puts the database state in `INIT` for a multiple-capture replay

Table 178–1 (Cont.) DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-27	Initializes replay, and loads specific data produced during processing into the database
IS_REPLAY_PAUSED Function on page 178-28	Reports whether the replay is currently paused
PAUSE_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-29	Pauses the in-progress workload replay
POPULATE_DIVERGENCE Procedure on page 178-29	Precomputes the divergence information for the given call, stream, or the whole replay so that the GET_DIVERGING_STATEMENT Function returns as quickly as possible for the precomputed calls
PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-31	Puts the database in a special "Prepare" mode
PREPARE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-35	Puts the database in a special "Prepare" mode for a multiple-capture replay
PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure on page 178-37	Processes the workload capture found in `capture_dir` in place
REMAP_CONNECTION Procedure on page 178-38	Remaps the captured connection to a new one so that the user sessions can connect to the database in a desired way during workload replay
REMOVE_CAPTURE Procedure on page 178-39	Removes the given capture from the current schedule
REMOVE_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Procedure on page 178-40	Removes an existing schedule order from the current replay schedule
REPORT Function on page 178-41	Generates a report on the given workload replay
RESUME_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-42	Resumes a paused workload replay
REUSE_REPLAY_FILTER_SET Procedure on page 178-43	Reuses filters in the specified filter set as if each were added using the ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function
SET_ADVANCED_PARAMETER Procedure on page 178-44	Sets an advanced parameter for replay besides the ones used with the PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure
SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure on page 178-45	Sets a directory that contains multiple workload captures as the current replay directory
SET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 178-46	Sets the replay timeout setting
SET_USER_MAPPING Procedure on page 178-47	Sets a new schema or user name to be used during replay instead of the captured user
START_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-48	Starts the replay of a multiple-capture capture
START_REPLAY Procedure on page 178-49	Starts the workload replay
USE_FILTER_SET Procedure on page 178-50	Uses the given filter set that has been created by calling the CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure to filter the current replay

ADD_CAPTURE Function

This function adds the given capture to the current schedule. The directory has to be a valid capture processed in the current database's version. It returns a unique ID that identifies this capture within this schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.ADD_CAPTURE (
   capture_dir_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   start_delay_seconds   IN    NUMBER  DEFAULT 0,
   stop_replay           IN    BOOLEAN FALSE,
   take_begin_snapshot   IN    BOOLEAN TRUE,
   take_end_snapshot     IN    BOOLEAN TRUE,
   query_only            IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.ADD_CAPTURE (
   capture_dir_name      IN    VARCHAR2,
   start_delay_seconds   IN    NUMBER  DEFAULT 0,
   stop_replay           IN    BOOLEAN FALSE,
   take_begin_snapshot   IN    BOOLEAN TRUE,
   take_end_snapshot     IN    BOOLEAN TRUE,
   query_only            IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'N')
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 178–2 ADD_CAPTURE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_dir_name	Name of the OS directory containing the capture under the replay top-level directory
start_delay_seconds	Delay time in seconds before the replay of this capture starts
stop_replay	Stop the replay after it finishes
take_begin_snapshot	Take an AWR snapshot when the replay of this capture starts
take_end_snapshot	Take an AWR snapshot when the replay of this capture finishes
query_only	Replay only the read-only queries of this workload capture

Usage Notes

The SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure must have already been called.

ADD_FILTER Procedure

This procedure adds a filter to replay only a subset of the captured workload.

The procedure adds a new filter that is used in the next replay filter set created using the CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure. This filter will be considered an "INCLUSION" or "EXCLUSION" filter depending on the argument passed to CREATE_FILTER_SET when creating the filter set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.ADD_FILTER (
   fname           IN VARCHAR2,
   fattribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   fvalue          IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.ADD_FILTER (
   fname           IN VARCHAR2,
   fattribute      IN VARCHAR2,
   fvalue          IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 178–3 ADD_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
fname	(Mandatory) Name of the filter. Can be used to delete the filter later if it is not required.
fattribute	(Mandatory) Specifies the attribute on which the filter is defined as one of the following values of type STRING : ■ USER ■ MODULE ■ ACTION ■ PROGRAM ■ SERVICE ■ CONNECTION_STRING
fvalue	(Mandatory) Specifies the value to which the given 'attribute' must be equal to for the filter to be considered active. Wildcards such as '%' are acceptable for all attributes that are of type STRING. Currently all the listed values of fattribute are of type STRING. INSTANCE_NUMBER is a NUMBER attribute. It is currently only supported for capture.

ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function

This function adds a schedule order between two captures. Together, `schedule_capture_id` and waitfor_capture_id form a schedule ordering that previously added by the ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function. The order is that replay of capture indicated by `schedule_capture_id` will not start unless the replay of capture indicated by `waiting_for_capture_id` finishes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING (
   schedule_capture_id     IN VARCHAR2,
   waitfor_capture_id      IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 178–4 ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schedule_capture_id`	Points to a capture that has been added to the current replay schedule. According to the new schedule ordering added by this subprogram, its replay will not start until the replay of another capture specified by `waitfor_capture_id` runs to completion.
`waitfor_capture_id`	Points to a capture that has been added to the current replay schedule. According to the new schedule ordering added by this subprogram, the replay of capture specified by `schedule_capture_id` will not start until the replay of this capture runs to completion.

Return Values

Returns a non-zero error code if the constraint cannot be added

Usage Notes

The two captures must have already been added to the replay schedule.

BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure initiates the creation of a reusable replay schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE  (
   replay_dir_obj      IN     VARCHAR2,
   schedule_name       IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–5 BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_dir_obj`	Directory object that points to the replay directory that contains all the capture directories involved in the schedule
`schedule_name`	Name of the schedule to be replayed

Usage Notes

- Only one schedule can be in creation mode at a time. Calling the subprogram again before `end_replay_schedule` will raise an error.
- Prerequisites:
  - The workload capture was already processed using the PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure in the same database version.
  - The user must have copied the capture directory appropriately.
  - The database is not in replay mode.
  - The SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure has already been called.

CALIBRATE Function

This function operates on a processed workload capture directory to estimate the number of hosts and workload replay clients needed to faithfully replay the given workload. This function returns the results as an XML CLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.CALIBRATE (
   capture_dir          IN VARCHAR2,
   process_per_cpu      IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 4,
   threads_per_process  IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 50)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 178–6 CALIBRATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_dir	Name of the directory object that points to the (case sensitive) OS directory that contains processed capture data
process_per_cpu	Maximum number of processes allowed for each CPU (default is 4)
threads_per_process	Maximum number of threads allowed for each process (default is 50)

Return Values

Returns a CLOB formatted as XML that contains:

- Information about the capture
- Current database version
- Input parameters to this function
- Number of CPUs and replay clients needed to replay the given workload
- Information about the sessions captured (total number and maximum concurrency)

Usage Notes

- Prerequisite: The input workload capture was already processed using the PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure in the same database version.
- This procedure will return the same results as the workload replay client in calibrate mode, which can be run as follows.

```
$ wrc mode=calibrate replaydir=
```

CANCEL_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure cancels workload replay in progress. All the external replay clients (WRC) will automatically be notified to stop issuing the captured workload and exit.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.CANCEL_REPLAY (
   error_msg    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 178–7 CANCEL_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_msg	An optional reason for cancelling the replay can be passed which is recorded into DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS.ERROR_MESSAGE.

Usage Notes

Prerequisite: A call to the INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure, or PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure, or START_REPLAY Procedure was already issued.

COMPARE_PERIOD_REPORT Procedure

This procedure generates a report comparing a replay to its capture or to another replay of the same capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.COMPARE_PERIOD_REPORT (
   replay_id1   IN   NUMBER,
   replay_id2   IN   NUMBER,
   format       IN   VARCHAR2,
   result       OUT  CLOB );
```

Parameters

Table 178–8 COMPARE_PERIOD_REPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_id1	First ID of the workload replay whose report is requested
replay_id2	Second ID of the workload replay whose report is requested. If this is NULL, then the comparison is done with the capture.
format	Specifies the report format. Valid values are DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_HTML and DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_XML.
result	Output of the report (CLOB)

COMPARE_SQLSET_REPORT Function

This procedure generates a report comparing a sqlset captured during replay to one captured during workload capture or to one captured during another replay of the same capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.COMPARE_SQLSET_REPORT (
   replay_id1    IN NUMBER,
   replay_id2    IN NUMBER,
   format        IN VARCHAR2,
   r_level       IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL',
   r_sections    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ALL',
   result        OUT CLOB )
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 178–9 COMPARE_SQLSET_REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_id1`	First ID of the workload replay after a change
`replay_id2`	Second ID of the workload replay before a change. If this is `NULL`, then the comparison is done with the capture.
`format`	Specifies the report format. Valid values are `DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_HTML`, `DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_XML` and `DBMS_WORKLOAD_CAPTURE.TYPE_TEXT`.
`r_level`	See `level` parameter in the REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function in the DBMS_SQLPA package
`r_sections`	See `section` parameter in the REPORT_ANALYSIS_TASK Function in the DBMS_SQLPA package
`result`	Output of the report (`CLOB`)

CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure

This procedure creates a new filter set for the replays at `replay_dir`. It includes all the replay filters that have already been added by the ADD_FILTER Procedure. After the procedure has completed and replay initiated, the newly-created filter set can be used to filter the replay in `replay_dir` by calling the USE_FILTER_SET Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.CREATE_FILTER_SET(
   replay_dir       IN  VARCHAR2,
   filter_set       IN  VARCHAR2,
   default_action   IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'INCLUDE');
```

Parameters

Table 178–10 CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_dir`	Object directory of the replay to be filtered
`filter_set`	Name of the filter set to create (to use in USE_FILTER_SET Procedure)
`default_action`	Can be either `INCLUDE` or `EXCLUDE`. Determines whether, by default, every captured call must be replayed or not. Also determines whether the workload filters specified must be considered as `INCLUSION` filters or `EXCLUSION` filters.) If it is `INCLUDE`, then by default all captured calls are replayed, except for the part of the workload defined by the filters. In this case, all the filters that were specified using the ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function are treated as `EXCLUSION` filters, and will determine the workload that will not be replayed. If it is `EXCLUDE`, then by default no captured call to the database is replayed, except for the part of the workload defined by the filters. In this case, all the filters that were specified using he ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function are treated as `INCLUSION` filters, and will determine the workload that is replayed. Default: `INCLUDE` and all the filters specified are assumed to be `EXCLUSION` filters

Usage Notes

This operation must be invoked when no replay is initialized, prepared, or in progress.

DELETE_FILTER Procedure

This procedure deletes the named filter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.DELETE_FILTER(
   fname    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–11 DELETE_FILTER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
fname	(Mandatory) Name of the filter that must be deleted

DELETE_REPLAY_INFO Procedure

This procedure deletes the rows in DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS that correspond to the given workload replay ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.DELETE_REPLAY_INFO (
   replay_id    IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 178–12 DELETE_REPLAY_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_id	(Mandatory) ID of the workload replay that must be deleted. Corresponds to DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS.ID

END_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure

This procedure wraps up the creation of the current schedule. The schedule is now saved and associated with the replay directory and can be used for a replay.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.END_REPLAY_SCHEDULE;
```

Usage Notes

The BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure must have already been called.

EXPORT_AWR Procedure

This procedure exports the AWR snapshots associated with a stipulated replay ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.EXPORT_AWR (
   replay_id    IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 178–13 EXPORT_AWR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_id	(Mandatory) ID of the replay whose AWR snapshots are to be exported

Usage Notes

- At the end of each replay, the corresponding AWR snapshots are automatically exported. Consequently, there is no need to do this manually after a workload replay is complete, unless the automatic EXPORT_AWR invocation failed.
- This procedure will work only if the corresponding workload replay was performed in the current database (meaning that the corresponding row in DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS was not created by calling the GET_REPLAY_INFO Function) and the AWR snapshots that correspond to that replay time period are still available.

GENERATE_CAPTURE_SUBSET Procedure

This procedure creates a new capture from an existing workload capture.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.GENERATE_CAPTURE_SUBSET (
   input_capture_dir          IN   VARCHAR2,
   output_capture_dir         IN   VARCHAR2,
   new_capture_name           IN   VARCHAR2,
   begin_time                 IN   NUMBER,
   begin_include_incomplete   IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   end_time                   IN   NUMBER,
   end_include_incomplete     IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   parallel_level             IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 178–14 GENERATE_CAPTURE_SUBSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
input_capture_dir	(Mandatory) Name of the directory object that points to an existing workload capture
output_capture_dir	(Mandatory) Name of the directory object that points to the new capture
new_capture_name	(Mandatory) Name of new capture
begin_time	Start of the time range - time offset in seconds from the start of a workload capture
begin_include_incomplete	Column to include incomplete calls caused by begin_time
end_time	End of the time range - time offset in seconds from the start of a workload capture. If end_time is zero or end_time is less or equal than begin_time, the time range is invalid. The new capture will use the whole duration of the input capture.
end_include_incomplete	Column to include incomplete calls caused by end_time
parallel_level	Number of Oracle processes used to process the input captures in a parallel fashion. The NULL default value will auto-compute the parallelism level based on number of CPUs, whereas a value of 1 will enforce serial execution.

GET_DIVERGING_STATEMENT Function

This function retrieves information about a diverging call, including the statement text, the SQL ID, and the binds. If the replay of a recorded user call has data or error divergence, it is a diverging call.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.GET_DIVERGING_STATEMENT (
   replay_id    IN NUMBER,
   stream_id    IN NUMBER,
   call_counter IN NUMBER)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 178–15 GET_DIVERGING_STATEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_id`	ID of the replay in which that call diverged
`stream_id`	Stream ID of the diverging call
`call_counter`	Call counter of the diverging call

Usage Notes

- Returns a `CLOB` formatted as XML that contains:
  - SQL ID
  - SQL Text
  - Bind information: position, name and value
- This function will silently invoke the POPULATE_DIVERGENCE Procedure to read the information from the capture files. Therefore, if divergence has not been populated, then the first call to this function for a particular diverging call might take longer, especially in very large captures.

GET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Function

This function returns the current replay directory set by the SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure. It returns `NULL` if no replay directory has been set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.GET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY
   RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_REPLAY_INFO Function

This function retrieves information about the workload capture and the history of all the workload replay attempts from the stipulated directory.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.GET_REPLAY_INFO (
   dir    IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 178–16 GET_REPLAY_INFO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dir	(Mandatory) Name of the workload replay directory object (case sensitive).

Return Values

The procedure returns the CAPTURE_ID, which can be associated with both DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES.ID and DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS.CAPTURE_ID to access the imported information.

Usage Notes

- The procedure first imports a row into DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES which will contain information about the capture. It then imports a row for every replay attempt retrieved from the given replay directory into DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS.
- The procedure will not insert new rows to DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES and DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS if these views already contain rows describing the capture and replay history present in the given directory.

GET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT Procedure

This procedure gets the replay timeout setting.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.GET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT (
   enabled       OUT  BOOLEAN,
   min_delay     OUT  NUMBER,
   max_delay     OUT  NUMBER,
   delay_factor  OUT  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 178–17 GET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enabled	TRUE if the timeout action is enabled, FALSE otherwise.
min_delay	Lower bound of call delay in minutes. The replay action is activated only when the delay is equal to or more than min_delay.
max_delay	Upper bound of call delay in minutes. The timeout action throws ORA-15569 when the delay is more than max_delay.
delay_factor	Factor for the call delay that is between min_delay and max_delay. The timeout action throws ORA-15569 when the current replay elapsed time is more than the product of capture elapsed time and delay_factor.

Usage Notes

This procedure can be called anytime during replay.

IMPORT_AWR Function

This procedure imports the AWR snapshots from a given replay.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.IMPORT_AWR (
   replay_id       IN   NUMBER,
   staging_schema  IN   VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 178–18 IMPORT_AWR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_id	(Mandatory) ID of the replay whose AWR snapshots must be imported
staging_schema	(Mandatory) Name of a valid schema in the current database which can be used as a staging area while importing the AWR snapshots from the replay directory to the SYS AWR schema. The SYS schema is not a valid input.

Return Values

Returns the new randomly generated database ID that was used to import the AWR snapshots. The same value can be found in the AWR_DBID column in the DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS view.

Usage Notes

- This procedure will work provided those AWR snapshots were exported earlier from the original replay system using the EXPORT_AWR Procedure.
- IMPORT_AWR will fail if the staging_schema provided as input contains any tables with the same name as any of the AWR tables, such as WRM$_SNAPSHOT or WRH$_PARAMETER. Drop any such tables in the staging_schema before invoking IMPORT_AWR.

INITIALIZE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure puts the database state in `INIT` for a multiple-capture replay. It uses the `replay_dir` which has already been defined by the SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure, pointing to a directory that contains all the capture directories involved in the schedule. It reads data about schedule `schedule_name` from the directory, and loads required connection data into the replay system.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.INITIALIZE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY (
   replay_name         IN    VARCHAR2,
   schedule_name       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–19 INITIALIZE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_name`	(Mandatory) Name of the workload replay. Every replay of a processed workload capture can be given a name.
`schedule_name`	Name of the schedule to be replayed. It must have been created through the BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure for the replay directory `replay_dir`.

Usage Notes

Prerequisites:

- Workload capture was already processed using the PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure in the same database version.
- Database state has been logically restored to what it was at the beginning of the original workload capture.
- The SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure has been called.

INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure puts the database state in INIT for REPLAY mode, and loads data into the replay system that is required before preparing for the replay (by executing the PAUSE_REPLAY Procedure).

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.INITIALIZE_REPLAY (
   replay_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   replay_dir      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–20 INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_name	(Mandatory) Name of the workload replay. Every replay of a processed workload capture can be given a name.
replay_dir	Name of the directory object that points to the OS directory (case sensitive) that contains processed capture data

Usage Notes

- Prerequisites:
  - Workload capture was already processed using the PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure in the same database version.
  - Database state has been logically restored to what it was at the beginning of the original workload capture.
- The subprogram loads data into the replay system that is required before preparing for the replay by calling the PAUSE_REPLAY Procedure.

  For instance, during capture the user may record the connection string each session used to connect to the server. The INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure loads this data and allows the user to re-map the recorded connection string to new connection strings or service points.

  Elaborating on the example described in the PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure, the user could invoke the following:

  ```
  DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.INITIALIZE_REPLAY('replay foo #1', 'rec_dir');
  ```

  This command will load up the connection map and by default will set all replay time connection strings to be equal to NULL. A NULL replay time connection string means that the workload replay clients (WRCs) will connect to the default host as determined by the replay client's runtime environment settings. The user can change a particular connection string to a new one (or a new service point) for replay by using the REMAP_CONNECTION Procedure.

IS_REPLAY_PAUSED Function

This function reports whether the replay is currently paused.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.IS_REPLAY_PAUSED
   RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Return Values

Returns `TRUE` if the PAUSE_REPLAY Procedure has been called successfully and the RESUME_REPLAY Procedure has not been called yet.

Usage Notes

A call to the START_REPLAY Procedure must have already been issued as a prerequisite.

PAUSE_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure pauses the in-progress workload replay. All subsequent user calls from the replay clients will be stalled until either a call to the RESUME_REPLAY Procedure is issued or the replay is cancelled.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PAUSE_REPLAY;
```

Usage Notes

- Prerequisite: A call to the START_REPLAY Procedure must have already been issued.
- User calls that were already in-progress when this procedure was invoked are allowed to run to completion. Only subsequent user calls, when issued, are paused.

POPULATE_DIVERGENCE Procedure

This procedure precomputes the divergence information for the given call, stream, or the whole replay so that the GET_DIVERGING_STATEMENT Function returns as quickly as possible for the precomputed calls.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.POPULATE_DIVERGENCE (
   replay_id    IN   NUMBER,
   stream_id    IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   call_counter IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 178–21 POPULATE_DIVERGENCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_id	ID of the replay
stream_id	Stream ID of the diverging call. If NULL is provided, then divergence information is precomputed for all diverging calls in the given replay.
call_counter	Call counter of the diverging call. If NULL is provided, then divergence information is precomputed for all diverging calls in the given stream.

PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure puts the database state in `PREPARE FOR REPLAY` mode.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PREPARE_REPLAY (
   synchronization           IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   connect_time_scale        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_scale          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_auto_correct   IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   scale_up_multiplier       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
   capture_sts               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   sts_cap_interval          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 300);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PREPARE_REPLAY (
   synchronization           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'OBJECT_ID',
   connect_time_scale        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_scale          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_auto_correct   IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   scale_up_multiplier       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 1,
   capture_sts               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   sts_cap_interval          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 300);
```

Parameters

Table 178–22 PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`synchronization`	Turns synchronization `ON` or `OFF` during workload replay. ■ `OFF` - Workload replay runs asynchronously. ■ `SCN` - The `COMMIT` order observed during the original workload capture is preserved during replay. Every action that is replayed is executed only after all of its dependent `COMMIT`s (all `COMMIT`s that were issued before the given action in the original workload capture) have finished execution. ■ `OBJECT_ID` - This is the default, and uses a more advanced synchronization scheme. Every action that is replayed is executed only after the relevant `COMMIT`s have finished executing. The relevant `COMMIT`s are the ones that were issued before the given action in the original workload capture and that had modified at least one of the database objects the given action is referencing (either implicitly or explicitly). This `OBJECT_ID` scheme has the same logical property of making sure that any action will see the same data it saw during capture, but will allow more concurrency during replays for the actions that do not touch the same objects/tables. For legacy reasons, there is a boolean version of this procedure: ■ `TRUE` means `'OBJECT_ID'` ■ `FALSE` means `'OFF'`

Table 178–22 (Cont.) PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
connect_time_scale	Scales the time elapsed between the instant the workload capture was started and the session connects with the given value. The input is interpreted as a % value. Can potentially be used to increase or decrease the number of concurrent users during the workload replay. DEFAULT VALUE is 100. See "Application of the connect_time_scale Parameter" on page 178-33.
think_time_scale	Scales the time elapsed between two successive user calls from the same session. The input is interpreted as a % value. Can potentially be used to increase or decrease the number of concurrent users during the workload replay. DEFAULT VALUE is 100. See "Application of the think_time_scale Parameter" on page 178-33.
think_time_auto_correct	Auto corrects the think time between calls appropriately when a user call takes longer to complete during replay than during the original capture. DEFAULT is TRUE which is to reduce think time if replay goes slower than capture. See "Application of the think_time_auto_correct Parameter" on page 178-33
scale_up_multiplier	Defines the number of times the query workload is scaled up during replay. Each captured session is replayed concurrently as many times as the value of the scale_up_multiplier. However, only one of the sessions in each set of identical replay sessions executes both queries and updates. The remaining sessions only execute queries.
capture_sts	If this parameter is TRUE, then a SQL tuning set capture is also started in parallel with workload replay. The resulting SQL tuning set can be exported using the EXPORT_AWR Procedure along with the AWR data. Currently, parallel SQL tuning set (STS) capture is not supported in an Oracle RAC environment. So, this parameter has no effect in that context. The calling user must have the appropriate privileges ('ADMINISTER SQL TUNING SET'). The default value is FALSE.
sts_cap_interval	Specifies the capture interval of the SQL set capture from the cursor cache in seconds. The default value is 300.

Usage Notes

- Prerequisites:
  - The database has been initialized for replay using the INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure.
  - Any capture time connection strings that require remapping have been already done using the REMAP_CONNECTION Procedure.
- One or more external replay clients (WRC) can be started once the PREPARE_REPLAY procedure has been executed.
- With regard to scale_up_multiplier:
  - One replay session (base session) of each set of identical sessions will replay every call from the capture as usual.
  - The remaining sessions (scale-up sessions) will only replay calls that are read-only. Thus, DDL, DML, and PL/SQL calls that modified the database is skipped. SELECT FOR UPDATE statements are also skipped.
  - Read-only calls from the scale-up are synchronized appropriately and obey the timings defined by think_time_scale, connect_time_scale, and think_

time_auto_correct. Also, the queries are made to wait for the appropriate commits.

- No replay data or error divergence records are generated for the scale-up sessions.
- All base or scale-up sessions that replay the same capture file will connect from the same workload replay client.

Examples

Application of the connect_time_scale Parameter

If the following was observed during the original workload capture:

```
12:00 : Capture was started
12:10 : First session connect  (10m after)
12:30 : Second session connect (30m after)
12:42 : Third session connect  (42m after)
```

If the connect_time_scale is 50, then the session connects will happen as follows:

```
12:00 : Replay was started with 50% connect time scale
12:05 : First session connect  ( 5m after)
12:15 : Second session connect (15m after)
12:21 : Third session connect  (21m after)
```

If the connect_time_scale is 200, then the session connects will happen as follows:

```
12:00 : Replay was started with 200% connect time scale
12:20 : First session connect  (20m after)
13:00 : Second session connect (60m after)
13:24 : Third session connect  (84m after)
```

Application of the think_time_scale Parameter

If the following was observed during the original workload capture:

```
12:00 : User SCOTT connects
12:10 : First user call issued (10m after completion of prevcall)
12:14 : First user call completes in 4mins
12:30 : Second user call issued (16m after completion of prevcall)
12:40 : Second user call completes in 10m
12:42 : Third user call issued ( 2m after completion of prevcall)
12:50 : Third user call completes in 8m
```

If the think_time_scale is 50 during the workload replay, then the user calls will look something like below:

```
12:00 : User SCOTT connects
12:05 : First user call issued 5 mins (50% of 10m) after the completion of
        previous call
12:10 : First user call completes in 5m (takes a minute longer)
12:18 : Second user call issued 8 mins (50% of 16m) after the completion of prev
        call
12:25 : Second user call completes in 7m (takes 3 minutes less)
12:26 : Third user call issued 1 min  (50% of 2m) after the completion of prev
        call
12:35 : Third user call completes in 9m (takes a minute longer)
```

Application of the think_time_auto_correct Parameter

If the following was observed during the original workload capture:

```
12:00 : User SCOTT connects
12:10 : First user call issued (10m after completion of prevcall)
12:14 : First user call completes in 4m
12:30 : Second user call issued (16m after completion of prevcall)
12:40 : Second user call completes in 10m
12:42 : Third user call issued ( 2m after completion of prevcall)
12:50 : Third user call completes in 8m
```

If the think_time_scale is 100 and the think_time_auto_correct is TRUE during the workload replay, then the user calls will look something like below:

```
12:00 : User SCOTT connects
12:10 : First user call issued 10 mins after the completion of prev call
12:15 : First user call completes in 5m (takes 1 minute longer)
12:30 : Second user call issued 15 mins (16m minus the extra time of 1m the prev
        call took) after the completion of prev call
12:44 : Second user call completes in 14m (takes 4 minutes longer)
12:44 : Third user call issued immediately (2m minus the extra time of 4m the prev
        call took) after the completion of prev call
12:52 : Third user call completes in 8m
```

PREPARE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure

Similar to the PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure, this procedure puts the database in a special "Prepare" mode for a multiple-capture replay. The difference is that this subprogram should be used only for consolidated replays.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PREPARE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY (
   synchronization           IN BOOLEAN,
   connect_time_scale        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_scale          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_auto_correct   IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   capture_sts               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   sts_cap_interval          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 300);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PREPARE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY (
   synchronization           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'OBJECT_ID',,
   connect_time_scale        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_scale          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 100,
   think_time_auto_correct   IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   capture_sts               IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   sts_cap_interval          IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 300);
```

Parameters

Table 178–23 PREPARE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
synchronization	Turns synchronization ON or OFF during workload replay. When synchronization is ON, the COMMIT order observed during the original workload capture is preserved during replay. Every action that is replayed is executed ONLY AFTER all of its dependent COMMITs (all COMMITs that were issued before the given action in the original workload capture) have finished execution. DEFAULT is TRUE which preserves commit order. When synchronization is OBJECT_ID, a more advanced synchronization scheme is used. Every action that is replayed is executed only after the relevant COMMITs have finished executing. The relevant COMMITs are the ones that were issued before the given action in the original workload capture and that had modified at least one of the database objects the given action is referencing (either implicitly or explicitly). This OBJECT_ID scheme has the same logical property of making sure that any action will see the same data it saw during capture, but will allow more concurrency during replays for the actions that do not touch the same objects/tables. DEFAULT VALUE: SCN, preserve commit order. For legacy reasons, there is a boolean version of this procedure: ■ TRUE means 'SCN' ■ FALSE means 'OFF'
connect_time_scale	Scales the time elapsed between the instant the workload capture was started and the session connects with the given value. The input is interpreted as a % value. Can potentially be used to increase or decrease the number of concurrent users during the workload replay. DEFAULT VALUE is 100. See "Application of the connect_time_scale Parameter" on page 178-33.

Table 178–23 (Cont.) PREPARE_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
think_time_scale	Scales the time elapsed between two successive user calls from the same session. The input is interpreted as a % value. Can potentially be used to increase or decrease the number of concurrent users during the workload replay. DEFAULT VALUE is 100. See "Application of the think_time_auto_correct Parameter" on page 178-33
think_time_auto_correct	Auto corrects the think time between calls appropriately when user calls takes longer to complete during replay than during the original capture. DEFAULT is TRUE which is to reduce think time if replay goes slower than capture. See "Application of the think_time_auto_correct Parameter" on page 178-33
capture_sts	If this parameter is TRUE, then a SQL tuning set capture is also started in parallel with workload replay. The resulting SQL tuning set can be exported using the EXPORT_AWR Procedure along with the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) data. Currently, parallel SQL tuning set (STS) capture is not supported in an Oracle RAC environment. So, this parameter has no effect in that context. The calling user must have the appropriate privileges ('ADMINISTER SQL TUNING SET'). The default value is FALSE.
sts_cap_interval	Specifies the capture interval of the SQL set capture from the cursor cache in seconds. The default value is 300.

Usage Notes

A consolidated replay replays multiple captures in one replay. Each capture records different system change number (SCN) values. For this reason SCN-based sync is not supported for consolidated replays. Consolidated replays only support non-sync mode and the Object-ID based synchronization, and SCN-based synchronization is currently not supported.

PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure processes the workload capture found in `capture_dir` in place.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PROCESS_CAPTURE (
   capture_dir            IN   VARCHAR2,
   parallel_level         IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 178–24 PROCESS_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`catpure_dir`	(Mandatory) Name of the workload capture directory object (case sensitive). The directory object must point to a valid OS directory that has the appropriate permissions. New files are added to this directory.
`parallel_level`	Number of Oracle processes used to process the capture in parallel. The `NULL` default value will auto-compute the parallelism level, whereas a value of 1 will enforce serial execution.

Usage Notes

- This subprogram analyzes the workload capture found in the `capture_dir` and creates new workload replay specific metadata files that are required to replay the given workload capture. It only creates new files and does not modify any files that were originally created during the workload capture. Therefore, this procedure can be run multiple times on the same capture directory, such as when the procedure encounters unexpected errors or is cancelled by the user.
- Once this procedure runs successfully, the capture_dir can be used as input to the INITIALIZE_REPLAY Procedure in order to replay the captured workload present in `capture_dir`.
- Before a workload capture can be replayed in a particular database version, the capture must be processed using `PROCESS_CAPTURE` in the same database version. Once created, a processed workload capture can be used to replay the captured workload multiple times in the same database version.

  For example, suppose workload "foo" was captured in `rec_dir` in Oracle database version 10.2.0.5. In order to replay the workload "foo" in version 11.1.0.1 the workload must be processed in version 11.1.0.1. The following procedure must be executed in an 11.1.0.1 database in order to process the capture directory `rec_dir`:

  ```
  DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.PROCESS_CAPTURE('rec_dir');
  ```

  Now, `rec_dir` contains a valid 11.1.0.1 processed workload capture that can be used to replay the workload "foo" in 11.1.0.1 databases as many times as required.

REMAP_CONNECTION Procedure

This procedure remaps the captured connection to a new one so that the user sessions can connect to the database in a desired way during workload replay.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.REMAP_CONNECTION (
   connection_id         IN  NUMBER,
   replay_connection     IN  VARCHAR2);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.REMAP_CONNECTION (
   capture_number        IN  VARCHAR2,
   connection_id         IN  NUMBER,
   replay_connection     IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–25 REMAP_CONNECTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_number	Pointing to a capture of the current replay schedule
connection_id	ID of the connection to be remapped. Corresponds to DBA_WORKLOAD_CONNECTION_MAP.CONN_ID.
replay_connection	New connection string to be used during replay

Usage Notes

- Prior to calling REMAP_CONNECTION all replay connection strings are set to NULL by default. If a replay_connection is NULL, then the replay sessions will connect as determined by the replay client's runtime environment. For example, if the environment variable TNS_ADMIN is defined and the user does not call the REMAP_CONNECTION Procedure, then the wrc executable will connect to the server specified in the tnsnames.ora file pointed to by TNS_ADMIN.
- A valid replay_connection must specify a connect identifier or a service point. See the *Oracle Database Net Services Reference* for ways to specify connect identifiers (such as net service names, database service names, and net service aliases) and naming methods that can be used to resolve a connect identifier to a connect descriptor.
- An error is returned if no row matches the given connection_id.
- Use the DBA_WORKLOAD_CONNECTION_MAP view to review all the connection strings that are used by the subsequent workload replay, and also to examine connection string remappings used for previous workload replays.

REMOVE_CAPTURE Procedure

This procedure removes the given capture from the current schedule.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.REMOVE_CAPTURE (
   schedule_capture_number    IN     NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 178–26 REMOVE_CAPTURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_capture_number	Unique ID that identifies this capture within this schedule

REMOVE_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Procedure

This procedure removes an existing schedule order from the current replay schedule. Together, `schedule_capture_id` and `waitfor_capture_id` form a schedule ordering that previously added by the ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function (`schedule_capture_id`, `waitfor_capture_id`). The order is that replay of capture indicated by `schedule_capture_id` will not start unless the replay of capture indicated by `waiting_for_capture_id` finishes.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.REMOVE_SCHEDULE_ORDERING (
   schedule_capture_id     IN         NUMBER,
   waitfor_capture_id      IN         NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 178–27 REMOVE_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schedule_capture_id`	Points to a capture that has been added to the current replay schedule (see procedure description).
`waitfor_capture_id`	Points to a capture that has been added to the current replay schedule.

Usage Notes

Prerequisites:

- The BEGIN_REPLAY_SCHEDULE Procedure must have been called.
- The replay schedule order should have already been added using the ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function.

REPORT Function

This function generates a report on the stipulated workload replay.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.REPORT (
   replay_id          IN NUMBER,
   format             IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 178–28 REPORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`replay_id`	(Mandatory) Specifies the ID of the workload replay whose report is requested.
`format`	(Mandatory) Specifies the report format. Valid values: ■ HTML - Generates the HTML version of the report ■ XML - Generates the XML version of the report ■ TEXT - Generates the text version of the report

Return Values

The report body in the desired format returned as a `CLOB`

RESUME_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure resumes a paused workload replay.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.RESUME_REPLAY;
```

Usage Notes

Prerequisite: A call to the PAUSE_REPLAY Procedure must have already been issued.

REUSE_REPLAY_FILTER_SET Procedure

This procedure reuses filters in the specified filter set as if each were added using the ADD_SCHEDULE_ORDERING Function. Each call adds one filter set, which is a collection of individual filters on various attributes. Also, a new filter rule can be added, and an existing filter can be deleted before invoking the CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure to create a new filter set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.REUSE_REPLAY_FILTER_SET(
   replay_dir  IN VARCHAR2,
   filter_set  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–29 REUSE_REPLAY_FILTER_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_dir	Capture ID of the existing filter set with which it is associated
filter_set	Name of the filter set to be reused

SET_ADVANCED_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure sets an advanced parameter for replay besides the ones used with the PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure. The advanced parameters control aspects of the replay that are more specialized. The advanced parameters are reset to their default values after the replay has finished.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_ADVANCED_PARAMETER(
   pname    IN   VARCHAR2,
   pvalue   IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_ADVANCED_PARAMETER(
   pname    IN   VARCHAR2,
   pvalue   IN   NUMBER);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_ADVANCED_PARAMETER(
   pname    IN   VARCHAR2,
   pvalue   IN   BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 178–30 SET_ADVANCED_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pname	Name of the parameter (case insensitive)
pvalue	Value of the parameter

Usage Notes

The current parameters and values that can be used are:

```
'DO_NO_WAIT_COMMITS': (default: FALSE)
```

This parameter controls whether the COMMITs issued by replay sessions is NOWAIT. The default value for this parameter is FALSE. In this case all the COMMITs are issued with the mode they were captured (wait, no-wait, batch, no-batch). If the parameter is set to TRUE, then all COMMITs are issued in no-wait mode. This is useful in cases where the replay is becoming noticeably slow because of a high volume of concurrent COMMITs. Setting the parameter to TRUE will significantly decrease the waits on the 'log file sync' event during the replay with respect to capture.

SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure

This procedure sets a directory that contains multiple workload captures as the current replay directory.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY (
   replay_dir    IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–31 SET_REPLAY_DIRECTORY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
replay_dir	Name of the OS directory containing the captures for a workload consolidation

SET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT Procedure

This procedure sets the replay timeout setting. The purpose is to abort user calls that might make the replay much slower or even cause a replay hang.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT (
   enabled       OUT  BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   min_delay     OUT  NUMBER DEFAULT 10,
   max_delay     OUT  NUMBER DEFAULT 120,
   delay_factor  OUT  NUMBER DEFAULT 8);
```

Parameters

Table 178–32 SET_REPLAY_TIMEOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enabled	TRUE to enable the timeout action, and FALSE to disable.
min_delay	Lower bound of call delay in minutes. The replay action is activated only when the delay is equal to or more than min_delay. Default = 10.
max_delay	Upper bound of call delay in minutes. The timeout action throws ORA-15569 when the delay is more than max_delay. Default = 120.
delay_factor	Factor for the call delay that is between min_delay and max_delay. The timeout action throws ORA-15569 when the current replay elapsed time is more than the product of capture elapsed time and delay_factor. Default = 8.

Usage Notes

- This procedure can be called anytime during replay.
- Call delay is defined as the difference between replay and capture if replay elapsed time is longer than call elapsed time.
- Once a replay timeout action is enabled, a user call will exit with ORA-15569 if it has been delayed more than the condition specified by the replay action. The call and its error are reported as error divergence.
- Replay timeout operates as follows:
  - The timeout action has no effect if it is not enabled.
  - If the call delay in minutes is less than a lower bound specified by parameter min_delay, then the timeout action is non-operational.
  - If the delay in minutes is more than a upper bound specified by parameter max_delay, the timeout action will abort the user call and throw ORA-15569.
  - For delay that is between the lower bound and upper bound, the user call will abort with ORA-15569 only when the current replay elapsed time is more than the product of capture elapsed time and parameter delay_factor.

SET_USER_MAPPING Procedure

This procedure sets a new schema or user name to be used during replay instead of the captured user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_USER_MAPPING (
   schedule_cap_id      IN NUMBER,
   capture_user         IN VARCHAR2,
   replay_user          IN VARCHAR2);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.SET_USER_MAPPING (
   capture_user         IN VARCHAR2,
   replay_user          IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–33 SET_USER_MAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schedule_cap_id	ID of the a capture in the schedule
capture_user	User name during the time of the workload capture
replay_user	User name to which captured user is remapped during replay.

Usage Notes

- A schedule_cap_id of NULL is used for regular non-consolidate replay.
- The replay must be initialized but not prepared in order to use this subprogram.
- If replay_user is set to NULL, then the mapping is disabled.
- After multiple calls with the same capture_user, the last call always takes effect.
- To list all the mappings that will be in effect during the subsequent replay execute the following:

  ```
  SELECT * FROM DBA_WORKLOAD_ACTIVE_USER_MAP
  ```

- The overloaded version without the schedule_cap_id calls the one with the schedule_cap_id argument by passing in NULL.
- Mappings are stored in a table made public through the view DBA_WORKLOAD_USER_MAP. To remove old mappings execute

  ```
  DELETE * FROM DBA_WORKLOAD_USER_MAP
  ```

START_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure starts the replay of a multiple-capture capture. It should be used only for consolidated replays.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.START_CONSOLIDATED_REPLAY;
```

Usage Notes

Prerequisites:

- The call to the PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure was already issued.
- A sufficient number of external replay clients (WRC) that can faithfully replay the captured workload already started. The status of such external replay clients can be monitored using `V$WORKLOAD_REPLAY_CLIENTS`.

START_REPLAY Procedure

This procedure starts the workload replay. All the external replay clients (WRC) that are currently connected to the replay database will automatically be notified, and those replay clients (WRC) will begin issuing the captured workload. It should only be used for consolidated replays.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.START_REPLAY;
```

Usage Notes

- Prerequisites:
  - The call to the PREPARE_REPLAY Procedure was already issued.
  - A sufficient number of external replay clients (WRC) that can faithfully replay the captured workload already started. The status of such external replay clients can be monitored using `V$WORKLOAD_REPLAY_CLIENTS`.
- Use the WRC's `CALIBRATE` mode to determine the number of replay clients that might be required to faithfully replay the captured workload. For example:

  ```
  $ wrc mode=calibrate replaydir=.
  ```

USE_FILTER_SET Procedure

This procedure applies a filter set to a capture in the current replay schedule. The filter set must have been created by calling the CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.USE_FILTER_SET(
   capture_number   IN    VARCHAR2,
   filter_set       IN    VARCHAR2);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPLAY.USE_FILTER_SET(
   filter_set       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 178–34 USE_FILTER_SET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_number	Pointing to a capture of the current replay schedule
filter_set	Name of the filter set

Usage Notes

The filter set must have been created by calling the CREATE_FILTER_SET Procedure.

179

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY

The `DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY` package lets you manage the Workload Repository, performing operations such as managing snapshots and baselines.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide* for more information about the "Automatic Workload Repository"

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY

This section contains topics which relate to using the DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY package.

Examples

This example shows how to generate an AWR text report with the DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY package for database identifier 1557521192, instance id 1, snapshot ids 5390 and 5391 and with default options.

```
-- make sure to set line size appropriately
-- set linesize 152
SELECT output FROM TABLE(
   DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_REPORT_TEXT(
     1557521192,  1, 5390, 5392) ) ;
```

You can call the DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY packaged functions directly as in the example, but Oracle recommends you use the corresponding supplied SQL script (awrrpt.sql in this case) for the packaged function, which prompts the user for required information.

Data Structures

The DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY package defines an object and associated table types.

OBJECT Types

- AWR_BASELINE_METRIC_TYPE Object Type

TABLE Types

- AWR_BASELINE_METRIC_TYPE_TABLE Table Type
- AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE Table Type

AWR_BASELINE_METRIC_TYPE Object Type

This type shows the values of the metrics corresponding to a baseline.

Syntax

```
TYPE breakpoint_info AS OBJECT (
   baseline_name      VARCHAR2(64),
   dbid               NUMBER NOT NULL,
   instance_number    NUMBER NOT NULL,
   beg_time           DATE NOT NULL,
   end_time           DATE NOT NULL,
   metric_id          NUMBER NOT NULL,
   metric_name        VARCHAR2(64) NOT NULL,
   metric_unit        VARCHAR2(64) NOT NULL,
   num_interval       NUMBER NOT NULL,
   interval_size      NUMBER NOT NULL,
   average            NUMBER NOT NULL,
   minimum            NUMBER NOT NULL,
   maximum            NUMBER NOT NULL);
```

Fields

Table 179–1 RUNTIME_INFO Fields

Field	Description
baseline_name	Name of the Baseline
dbid	Database ID for the snapshot
instance_number	Instance number for the snapshot
beg_time	Begin time of the interval
end_time	End time of the interval
metric_id	Metric ID
metric_name	Metric name
metric_unit	Unit of measurement
num_interval	Number of intervals observed
interval_size	Interval size (in hundredths of a second)
average	Average over the period
minimum	Minimum value observed
maximum	Maximum value observed

AWR_BASELINE_METRIC_TYPE_TABLE Table Type

This type is used by the SELECT_BASELINE_METRIC Function.

Syntax

```
CREATE TYPE awr_baseline_metric_type_table AS TABLE OF awr_baseline_metric_type;
```

AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE Table Type

This type provides an alternative to a comma-separated list.

Syntax

```
CREATE TYPE awrrpt_instance_list_type AS TABLE OF NUMBER;
```

Summary of DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Subprograms

Table 179–2 DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_COLORED_SQL Procedure on page 179-10	Adds a colored SQL ID
ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_ HTML Function on page 179-11	Displays a global or Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) ASH Spot report in HTML format.
ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Function on page 179-14	Displays a global or Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) ASH Spot report in Text format.
ASH_REPORT_HTML Function on page 179-17	Displays the ASH report in HTML
ASH_REPORT_TEXT Function on page 179-20	Displays the ASH report in text
AWR_DIFF_REPORT_HTML Function on page 179-23	Displays the AWR Diff-Diff report in HTML
AWR_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT Function on page 179-24	Displays the AWR Diff-Diff report in text
AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_ HTML Functions on page 179-25	Displays the Global AWR Compare Periods Report in HTML
AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_ TEXT Functions on page 179-26	Displays the Global AWR Compare Periods Report in text
AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_ HTML Functions on page 179-27	Displays the Global AWR report in HTML
AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Functions on page 179-28	Displays the Global AWR report in text
AWR_REPORT_HTML Function on page 179-29	Displays the AWR report in HTML
AWR_REPORT_TEXT Function on page 179-30	Displays the AWR report in text
AWR_SET_REPORT_ THRESHOLDS Procedure on page 179-31	Configures specified report thresholds, including the number of rows in the report
AWR_SQL_REPORT_HTML Function on page 179-32	Displays the AWR SQL Report in HTML format
AWR_SQL_REPORT_TEXT Function on page 179-33	Displays the AWR SQL Report in text format
CREATE_BASELINE Functions & Procedures on page 179-34	Creates a single baseline
CREATE_BASELINE_ TEMPLATE Procedures on page 179-34	Creates a baseline template
CREATE_SNAPSHOT Function and Procedure on page 179-38	Creates a manual snapshot immediately
DROP_BASELINE Procedure on page 179-39	Drops a previously-defined baseline
DROP_BASELINE_TEMPLATE Procedure on page 179-40	Removes a baseline template that is no longer needed

Table 179–2 (Cont.) DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DROP_SNAPSHOT_RANGE Procedure on page 179-41	Drops a range of snapshots
MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_ SETTINGS Procedures on page 179-42	Modifies the snapshot settings
MODIFY_BASELINE_ WINDOW_SIZE Procedure on page 179-44	Modifies the window size for the Default Moving Window Baseline
PURGE_SQL_DETAILS Procedure on page 179-45	Purges SQL details, specifically rows from `WRH$_SQLTEXT` and `WRH$_SQL_PLAN` that do not have corresponding rows (DBID, SQL_ID) in `WRH$_SQLSTAT`.
REMOVE_COLORED_SQL Procedure on page 179-46	Removes a colored SQL ID
RENAME_BASELINE Procedure on page 179-47	Renames a baseline
SELECT_BASELINE_METRIC Function on page 179-48	Shows the values of the metrics corresponding to a baseline
UPDATE_OBJECT_INFO Procedure on page 179-49	Updates rows of `WRH$_SEG_STAT_OBJ` table that represent objects in the local database

ADD_COLORED_SQL Procedure

This procedure adds a colored SQL ID. If an SQL ID is colored, it will be captured in every snapshot, independent of its level of activities (so that it does not have to be a `TOP SQL`). Capture occurs if the SQL is found in the cursor cache at snapshot time.To uncolor the SQL, invoke the REMOVE_COLORED_SQL Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.ADD_COLORED_SQL(
   sql_id          IN VARCHAR2,
   dbid            IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–3 ADD_COLORED_SQL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sql_id`	13-character external SQL ID
`dbid`	Optional DBID, defaults to Local `DBID`

ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML Function

This table function displays a global or Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) ASH Spot report in HTML format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML(
   l_dbid          IN NUMBER,
   l_inst_num      IN VARCHAR2((1023),
   l_btime         IN DATE,
   l_etime         IN DATE,
   l_options       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_slot_width    IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_sid           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_sql_id        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_wait_class    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_service_hash  IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_module        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_action        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_client_id     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_plsql_entry   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_data_src      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_container     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–4 ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	List of instances (such as '1,2,3'), or NULL to report on all instances in the database
l_btime	The 'begin time'
l_etime	The 'end time'
l_options	Report level (currently not used)
l_slot_width	Specifies (in seconds) how wide the slots used in the "Top Activity" section of the report should be. This argument is optional, and if it is not specified the time interval between l_btime and l_etime is appropriately split into not more than 10 slots.
l_sid	Session ID (see Usage Notes)
l_sql_id	SQL ID (see Usage Notes)
l_wait_class	Wait class name (see Usage Notes)
l_service_hash	Service name hash (see Usage Notes)
l_module	Module name (see Usage Notes)
l_action	Action name (see Usage Notes)
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (see Usage Notes)
l_plsql_entry	PL/SQL entry point (see Usage Notes)
l_data_src	Ignored since the report works off of data on disk only

Table 179–4 (Cont.) ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_container	Name of the container for which report activity is limited. Valid values other than NULL (default) should be taken from container names in V$CONTAINERS. Behavior is as follows: ■ If NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on all containers. When connected to a PDB the report is on only that PDB. ■ If not NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on activity from the specified container. When connected to a PDB the report is the same as NULL value for l_container regarding the connected PDB. Note: If while connected to a PDB you request information from another PDB this produces an empty report.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(1500).

Usage Notes

- You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the ashrpti.sql script which prompts users for the required information.
- The unspecified optional arguments are used to generate an ASH Reports that specify 'report targets' such as a SQL statement, or a session, or a particular Service/Module combination. These arguments are specified to restrict the ASH rows that would be used to generate the report. For example, to generate an ASH report on a particular SQL statement, such as SQL_ID 'abcdefghij123 ' pass that sql_id value to the l_sql_id argument:

  ```
  l_sql_id =>  'abcdefghij123'
  ```

  Any combination of those optional arguments can be passed in, and only rows in ASH that satisfy all of those 'report targets' will be used. If multiple 'report targets' are specified, AND conditional logic is used to connect them. For example, to generate an ASH report on MODULE "PAYROLL" and ACTION "PROCESS", use the following predicate:

  ```
  l_module =>  'PAYROLL', l_action =>  'PROCESS'
  ```

  Valid SQL wildcards can be used in all the arguments that are of type VARCHAR2.

Table 179–5 ASH_REPORT_HTML: Wildcards Allowed (or Not) in Arguments

Argument Name	Comment	Wildcard Allowed
l_sid	Session ID (for example, V$SESSION.SID)	No
l_sql_id	SQL ID (for example, V$SQL.SQL_ID)	Yes
l_wait_class	Wait class name (for example, V$EVENT_NAME.WAIT_CLASS)	Yes
l_service_hash	Service name hash (for example, V$ACTIVE_SERVICES.NAME_HASH)	No
l_module	Module name (for example, V$SESSION.MODULE)	Yes
l_action	Action name (for example, V$SESSION.ACTION)	Yes

Table 179–5 (Cont.) ASH_REPORT_HTML: Wildcards Allowed (or Not) in Arguments

Argument Name	Comment	Wildcard Allowed
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (for example, V$SESSION.CLIENT_IDENTIFIER)	Yes
l_data_src	Wildcards are not allowed for l_data_src as it is of numeric datatype	No

ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Function

This table function Displays a global or Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) ASH Spot report in Text format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT(
   l_dbid          IN VARCHAR2(1023),
   l_inst_num      IN NUMBER,
   l_btime         IN DATE,
   l_etime         IN DATE,
   l_options       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_slot_width    IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_sid           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_sql_id        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_wait_class    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_service_hash  IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_module        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_action        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_client_id     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_plsql_entry   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_data_src      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_container     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN awrrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–6 ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	List of instances (such as '1,2,3'), or NULL to report on all instances in the database
l_btime	The 'begin time'
l_etime	The 'end time'
l_options	Report level (currently not used)
l_slot_width	Specifies (in seconds) how wide the slots used in the "Top Activity" section of the report should be. This argument is optional, and if it is not specified the time interval between l_btime and l_etime is appropriately split into not more than 10 slots.
l_sid	Session ID (see Usage Notes)
l_sql_id	SQL ID (see Usage Notes)
l_wait_class	Wait class name (see Usage Notes)
l_service_hash	Service name hash (see Usage Notes)
l_module	Module name (see Usage Notes)
l_action	Action name (see Usage Notes)
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (see Usage Notes)
l_plsql_entry	PL/SQL entry point (see Usage Notes)
l_data_src	Ignored since the report works off of data on disk only

Table 179–6 (Cont.) ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_container	Name of the container for which report activity is limited. Valid values other than NULL (default) should be taken from container names in V$CONTAINERS. Behavior is as follows: ■ If NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on all containers. When connected to a PDB the report is on only that PDB. ■ If not NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on activity from the specified container. When connected to a PDB the report is the same as NULL value for l_container regarding the connected PDB. Note: If while connected to a PDB you request information from another PDB this produces an empty report.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(320).

Usage Notes

- You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the ashrpti.sql script which prompts users for the required information.
- The unspecified optional arguments are used to generate an ASH Reports that specify 'report targets' such as a SQL statement, or a session, or a particular Service/Module combination. These arguments are specified to restrict the ASH rows that would be used to generate the report. For example, to generate an ASH report on a particular SQL statement, such as SQL_ID 'abcdefghij123 ' pass that SQL_ID value to the l_sql_id argument:

```
l_sql_id =>  'abcdefghij123'
```

Table 179–7 ASH_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT: Wildcards Allowed (or Not) in Arguments

Argument Name	Comment	Wildcard Allowed
l_sid	Session ID (for example, V$SESSION.SID)	No
l_sql_id	SQL ID (for example, V$SQL.SQL_ID)	Yes
l_wait_class	Wait class name (for example, V$EVENT_NAME.WAIT_CLASS)	Yes
l_service_hash	Service name hash (for example, V$ACTIVE_SERVICES.NAME_HASH)	No
l_module	Module name (for example, V$SESSION.MODULE)	Yes
l_action	Action name (for example, V$SESSION.ACTION)	Yes
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (for example, V$SESSION.CLIENT_IDENTIFIER)	Yes
l_plsql_entry	PL/SQL entry point (for example, "SYS.DBMS_LOB.*")	Yes
l_data_src	Wildcards are not allowed for l_data_src as it is of numeric datatype	No

- Any combination of those optional arguments can be passed in, and only rows in ASH that satisfy all of those 'report targets' will be used. If multiple 'report targets' are specified, AND conditional logic is used to connect them. For example, to generate an ASH report on MODULE "PAYROLL" and ACTION "PROCESS", use the following predicate:

  ```
  l_module =>  'PAYROLL', l_action =>  'PROCESS'
  ```

  Valid SQL wildcards can be used in all the arguments that are of type VARCHAR2.

ASH_REPORT_HTML Function

This table function displays the ASH Spot report in HTML.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.ASH_REPORT_HTML(
   l_dbid          IN NUMBER,
   l_inst_num      IN NUMBER,
   l_btime         IN DATE,
   l_etime         IN DATE,
   l_options       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_slot_width    IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_sid           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_sql_id        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_wait_class    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_service_hash  IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_module        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_action        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_client_id     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_plsql_entry   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_data_src      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_container     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–8 ASH_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	Instance number
l_btime	The 'begin time'
l_etime	The 'end time'
l_options	Report level (currently not used)
l_slot_width	Specifies (in seconds) how wide the slots used in the "Top Activity" section of the report should be. This argument is optional, and if it is not specified the time interval between l_btime and l_etime is appropriately split into not more than 10 slots.
l_sid	Session ID (see Usage Notes)
l_sql_id	SQL ID (see Usage Notes)
l_wait_class	Wait class name (see Usage Notes)
l_service_hash	Service name hash (see Usage Notes)
l_module	Module name (see Usage Notes)
l_action	Action name (see Usage Notes)
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (see Usage Notes)
l_plsql_entry	PL/SQL entry point (see Usage Notes)

Table 179–8 (Cont.) ASH_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_data_src	Can be used to specify a data source (see Usage Notes) ■ 1 => memory (V$ACTIVE_SESION_HISTORY) ■ 2 => disk (DBA_HIST_ACTIVE_SESS_HISTORY) ■ 0 => both. This is the default value. Here, the begin and end time parameters are used to get the samples from the appropriate data source, which can be memory, disk, or both.
l_container	Name of the container for which report activity is limited. Valid values other than NULL (default) should be taken from container names in V$CONTAINERS. Behavior is as follows: ■ If NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on all containers. When connected to a PDB the report is on only that PDB. ■ If not NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on activity from the specified container. When connected to a PDB the report is the same as NULL value for l_container regarding the connected PDB. Note: If while connected to a PDB you request information from another PDB this produces an empty report.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(500).

Usage Notes

- You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the ashrpti.sql script which prompts users for the required information.
- By default, the report uses the begin and end time parameters (l_btime and l_etime, respectively) to find all rows in that time range either from memory, or disk, or both. However, using l_data_src, one can explicitly specify one of those data sources. For example, to generate an ASH report on all rows between l_btime and l_time found in memory, use

  ```
  l_data_src =>  1
  ```

  Similarly, to generate a report on samples found only on disk, use

  ```
  l_data_src => 2
  ```

- The unspecified optional arguments are used to generate an ASH Reports that specify 'report targets' such as a SQL statement, or a session, or a particular Service/Module combination. These arguments are specified to restrict the ASH rows that would be used to generate the report. For example, to generate an ASH report on a particular SQL statement, such as SQL_ID 'abcdefghij123 ' pass that sql_id value to the l_sql_id argument:

  ```
  l_sql_id =>  'abcdefghij123'
  ```

  Any combination of those optional arguments can be passed in, and only rows in ASH that satisfy all of those 'report targets' will be used. If multiple 'report targets' are specified, AND conditional logic is used to connect them. For example, to generate an ASH report on MODULE "PAYROLL" and ACTION "PROCESS", use the following predicate:

```
l_module =>  'PAYROLL', l_action =>  'PROCESS'
```

Valid SQL wildcards can be used in all the arguments that are of type VARCHAR2.

Table 179–9 ASH_REPORT_HTML: Wildcards Allowed (or Not) in Arguments

Argument Name	Comment	Wildcard Allowed
l_sid	Session ID (for example, V$SESSION.SID)	No
l_sql_id	SQL ID (for example, V$SQL.SQL_ID)	Yes
l_wait_class	Wait class name (for example, V$EVENT_NAME.WAIT_CLASS)	Yes
l_service_hash	Service name hash (for example, V$ACTIVE_SERVICES.NAME_HASH)	No
l_module	Module name (for example, V$SESSION.MODULE)	Yes
l_action	Action name (for example, V$SESSION.ACTION)	Yes
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (for example, V$SESSION.CLIENT_IDENTIFIER)	Yes

ASH_REPORT_TEXT Function

This table function displays the ASH Spot report in text.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.ASH_REPORT_TEXT(
   l_dbid          IN NUMBER,
   l_inst_num      IN NUMBER,
   l_btime         IN DATE,
   l_etime         IN DATE,
   l_options       IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_slot_width    IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_sid           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_sql_id        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_wait_class    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_service_hash  IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   l_module        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_action        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_client_id     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_plsql_entry   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   l_data_src      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   l_container     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN awrrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–10 ASH_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	Instance number
l_btime	The 'begin time'
l_etime	The 'end time'
l_options	Report level (currently not used)
l_slot_width	Specifies (in seconds) how wide the slots used in the "Top Activity" section of the report should be. This argument is optional, and if it is not specified the time interval between l_btime and l_etime is appropriately split into not more than 10 slots.
l_sid	Session ID (see Usage Notes)
l_sql_id	SQL ID (see Usage Notes)
l_wait_class	Wait class name (see Usage Notes)
l_service_hash	Service name hash (see Usage Notes)
l_module	Module name (see Usage Notes)
l_action	Action name (see Usage Notes)
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (see Usage Notes)
l_plsql_entry	PL/SQL entry point (see Usage Notes)

Table 179–10 (Cont.) ASH_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_data_src	Can be used to specify a data source (see Usage Notes) ■ 1 => memory (V$ACTIVE_SESION_HISTORY) ■ 2 => disk (DBA_HIST_ACTIVE_SESS_HISTORY) ■ 0 => both. This is the default value. Here, the begin and end time parameters are used to get the samples from the appropriate data source, which can be memory, disk, or both.
l_container	Name of the container for which report activity is limited. Valid values other than NULL (default) should be taken from container names in V$CONTAINERS. Behavior is as follows: ■ If NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on all containers. When connected to a PDB the report is on only that PDB. ■ If not NULL: When connected to a root container the report is on activity from the specified container. When connected to a PDB the report is the same as NULL value for l_container regarding the connected PDB. Note: If while connected to a PDB you request information from another PDB this produces an empty report.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(80).

Usage Notes

- You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the ashrpti.sql script which prompts users for the required information.
- By default, the report uses the begin and end time parameters (l_btime and l_etime, respectively) to find all rows in that time range either from memory, or disk, or both. However, using l_data_src, one can explicitly specify one of those data sources. For example, to generate an ASH report on all rows between l_btime and l_time found in memory, use

  ```
  l_data_src =>  1
  ```

  Similarly, to generate a report on samples found only on disk, use

  ```
  l_data_src => 2
  ```

- The unspecified optional arguments are used to generate an ASH Reports that specify 'report targets' such as a SQL statement, or a session, or a particular Service/Module combination. These arguments are specified to restrict the ASH rows that would be used to generate the report. For example, to generate an ASH report on a particular SQL statement, such as SQL_ID 'abcdefghij123 ' pass that SQL_ID value to the l_sql_id argument:

  ```
  l_sql_id =>  'abcdefghij123'
  ```

Table 179–11 ASH_REPORT_TEXT: Wildcards Allowed (or Not) in Arguments

Argument Name	Comment	Wildcard Allowed
l_sid	Session ID (for example, V$SESSION.SID)	No

Table 179–11 (Cont.) ASH_REPORT_TEXT: Wildcards Allowed (or Not) in Arguments

Argument Name	Comment	Wildcard Allowed
l_sql_id	SQL ID (for example, V$SQL.SQL_ID)	Yes
l_wait_class	Wait class name (for example, V$EVENT_NAME.WAIT_CLASS)	Yes
l_service_hash	Service name hash (for example, V$ACTIVE_SERVICES.NAME_HASH)	No
l_module	Module name (for example, V$SESSION.MODULE)	Yes
l_action	Action name (for example, V$SESSION.ACTION)	Yes
l_client_id	Client ID for end-to-end backtracing (for example, V$SESSION.CLIENT_IDENTIFIER)	Yes
l_plsql_entry	PL/SQL entry point (for example, "SYS.DBMS_LOB.*")	Yes
l_data_src	Wildcards are not allowed for l_data_src as it is of numeric datatype	No

- Any combination of those optional arguments can be passed in, and only rows in ASH that satisfy all of those 'report targets' will be used. If multiple 'report targets' are specified, AND conditional logic is used to connect them. For example, to generate an ASH report on MODULE "PAYROLL" and ACTION "PROCESS", use the following predicate:

  ```
  l_module =>  'PAYROLL', l_action =>  'PROCESS'
  ```

  Valid SQL wildcards can be used in all the arguments that are of type VARCHAR2.

AWR_DIFF_REPORT_HTML Function

This table function displays the AWR Compare Periods report in HTML.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_DIFF_REPORT_HTML(
   dbid1     IN NUMBER,
   inst_num1 IN NUMBER,
   bid1      IN NUMBER,
   eid1      IN NUMBER,
   dbid2     IN NUMBER,
   inst_num2 IN NUMBER,
   bid2      IN NUMBER,
   eid2      IN NUMBER)
  RETURN awrdrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–12 AWR_DIFF_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbid1	1st database identifier
inst_num1	1st instance number
bid1	1st 'Begin Snapshot' ID
eid1	1st 'End Snapshot' ID
dbid2	2nd database identifier
inst_num2	2nd instance number
bid2	2nd 'Begin Snapshot' ID
eid2	2nd 'End Snapshot' ID

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(500).

Usage Notes

You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the awrddrpt.sql script which prompts users for the required information.

AWR_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT Function

This table function displays the AWR Compare Periods report in text.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT(
   dbid1     IN NUMBER,
   inst_num1 IN NUMBER,
   bid1      IN NUMBER,
   eid1      IN NUMBER,
   dbid2     IN NUMBER,
   inst_num2 IN NUMBER,
   bid2      IN NUMBER,
   eid2      IN NUMBER)
  RETURN awrdrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–13 AWR_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbid1	1st database identifier
inst_num1	1st instance number
bid1	1st 'Begin Snapshot' ID
eid1	1st 'End Snapshot' ID
dbid2	2nd database identifier
inst_num2	2nd instance number
bid2	2nd 'Begin Snapshot' ID
eid2	2nd 'End Snapshot' ID

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(500).

Usage Notes

You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the awrddrpt.sql script which prompts users for the required information.

AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_HTML Functions

This table function displays Global AWR Compare Periods Report in HTML format.

The first overload accepts comma-separated lists of instance numbers for `inst_num1` and `inst_num2`. No leading zeroes are allowed and there is a limit of 1023 characters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_HTML (
   dbid1        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num1    IN    AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE,
   bid1         IN    NUMBER,
   eid1         IN    NUMBER,
   dbid2        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num2    IN    AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE,
   bid2         IN    NUMBER,
   eid2         IN    NUMBER)
  RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_HTML (
   dbid1        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num1    IN    VARCHAR2,
   bid1         IN    NUMBER,
   eid1         IN    NUMBER,
   dbid2        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num2    IN    VARCHAR2,
   bid2         IN    NUMBER,
   eid2         IN    NUMBER)
  RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–14 AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_HTML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbid1	1st database identifier
inst_num1	1st list of instance numbers. If set to NULL, all instances for which begin and end snapshots are available, and which have not been restarted between snapshots, will be included in the report.
bid1	1st Begin Snap ID
eid1	1st End Snapshot ID
dbid2	2nd database identifier
inst_num2	2nd list of instance numbers to be included in report. If set to NULL, all instances for which begin and end snapshots are available, and which have not been restarted between snapshots, will be included in the report.
bid2	2nd Begin Snap ID
eid2	2nd End Snapshot ID

Return Values

The output will be one column of `VARCHAR2(1500)`.

AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT Functions

This table function displays Global AWR Compare Periods Report in text format.

The first overload accepts comma-separated lists of instance numbers for `inst_num1` and `inst_num2`. No leading zeroes are allowed and there is a limit of 1023 characters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT (
   dbid1        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num1    IN    AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE,
   bid1         IN    NUMBER,
   eid1         IN    NUMBER,
   dbid2        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num2    IN    AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE,
   bid2         IN    NUMBER,
   eid2         IN    NUMBER)
  RETURN awrdrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT (
   dbid1        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num1    IN    VARCHAR2,
   bid1         IN    NUMBER,
   eid1         IN    NUMBER,
   dbid2        IN    NUMBER,
   inst_num2    IN    VARCHAR2,
   bid2         IN    NUMBER,
   eid2         IN    NUMBER)
  RETURN awrdrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–15 AWR_GLOBAL_DIFF_REPORT_TEXT Functions Parameters

Parameter	Description
dbid1	1st database identifier
inst_num1	1st list of instance numbers. If set to NULL, all instances for which begin and end snapshots are available, and which have not been restarted between snapshots, will be included in the report.
bid1	1st Begin Snap ID
eid1	1st End Snapshot ID
dbid2	2nd database identifier
inst_num2	2nd list of instance numbers to be included in report. If set to NULL, all instances for which begin and end snapshots are available, and which have not been restarted between snapshots, will be included in the report.
bid2	2nd Begin Snap ID
eid2	2nd End Snapshot ID

Return Values

The output will be one column of `VARCHAR2(320)`.

AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML Functions

This table function displays the Global AWR report in HTML.

The first overload accepts a comma-separated list of instance numbers. No leading zeroes are allowed and there is a limit of 1023 characters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML (
   l_dbid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num    IN    AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE,   l_bid         IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid         IN    NUMBER,
   l_options     IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
  RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML (
   l_dbid       IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num   IN    VARCHAR2,   l_bid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_options    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
  RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–16 AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_HTML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	List of instance numbers to be included in report. If set to NULL, all instances for which begin and end snapshots are available, and which have not been restarted between snapshots, will be included in the report.
l_bid	Begin Snap ID
l_eid	End Snapshot ID
l_options	Report level (currently not used)

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(1500).

AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Functions

This table function displays the Global AWR report in text.

The first overload accepts a comma-separated list of instance numbers. No leading zeroes are allowed and there is a limit of 1023 characters

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT(
   l_dbid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num    IN    AWRRPT_INSTANCE_LIST_TYPE,
   l_bid         IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid         IN    NUMBER,
   l_options     IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
  RETURN awrdrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT(
   l_dbid       IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num   IN    VARCHAR2,
   l_bid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_options    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
  RETURN awrdrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–17 AWR_GLOBAL_REPORT_TEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	List of instance numbers to be included in report. If set to NULL, all instances for which begin and end snapshots are available, and which have not been restarted between snapshots, will be included in the report.
l_bid	Begin Snap ID
l_eid	End Snapshot ID
l_options	A flag to specify to control the output of the report. Currently, not used.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(320).

AWR_REPORT_HTML Function

This table function displays the AWR report in HTML.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_REPORT_HTML(
   l_dbid       IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num   IN    NUMBER,
   l_bid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_options    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
 RETURN awrrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–18 AWR_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	Instance number
l_bid	The 'Begin Snapshot' ID
l_eid	The 'End Snapshot' ID
l_options	A flag to specify to control the output of the report. Currently, Oracle supports one value: ■ l_options - 8. Displays the ADDM specific portions of the report. These sections include the Buffer Pool Advice, Shared Pool Advice, and PGA Target Advice.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(1500).

Usage Notes

You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the awrrpt.sql script which prompts users for the required information.

AWR_REPORT_TEXT Function

This table function displays the AWR report in text.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_REPORT_TEXT(
   l_dbid       IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num   IN    NUMBER,
   l_bid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_options    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
 RETURN awrrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–19 AWR_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
`l_dbid`	Database identifier
`l_insT_num`	Instance number
`l_bid`	The `'Begin Snapshot' ID`
`l_eid`	The `'End Snapshot' ID`
`l_options`	A flag to specify to control the output of the report. Currently, Oracle supports one value: ▪ `l_options - 8`. Displays the ADDM specific portions of the report. These sections include the Buffer Pool Advice, Shared Pool Advice, and PGA Target Advice.

Return Values

The output will be one column of `VARCHAR2(80)`.

Usage Notes

You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the `awrrpt.sql` script which prompts users for the required information.

AWR_SET_REPORT_THRESHOLDS Procedure

This procedure configure specified report thresholds, including the number of rows in the report.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_SET_REPORT_THRESHOLDS(
   top_n_events         IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   top_n_files          IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   top_n_segments       IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   top_n_services       IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   top_n_sql            IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   top_n_sql_max        IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   top_sql_pct          IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   shmem_threshold      IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   versions_threshold   IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–20 AWR_SET_REPORT_THRESHOLDS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
top_n_events	Number of most significant wait events to be included
top_n_files	Number of most active files to be included
top_n_segments	Number of most active segments to be included
top_n_services	Number of most active services to be included
top_n_sql	Number of most significant SQL statements to be included
top_n_sql_max	Number of SQL statements to be included if their activity is greater than that specified by top_sql_pct
top_sql_pct	Significance threshold for SQL statements between top_n_sql and top_n_sql_max
shmem_threshold	Shared memory low threshold
versions_threshold	Plan version count low threshold

User Notes

- The effect of each setting depends on the type of report being generated as well as on the underlying AWR data. Not all settings are meaningful for each report type. Invalid settings (such as negative numbers) are ignored.
- Settings are effective only in the context of the session that executes the AWR_SET_REPORT_THRESHOLDS procedure. For example, to get a report that lists top 12 segments as compared to the default, one can invoke as follows:

  ```
  DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_SET_REPORT_THRESHOLDS (top_n_segments=>12);
  ```

AWR_SQL_REPORT_HTML Function

This table function displays the AWR SQL Report in HTML format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_SQL_REPORT_HTML(
   l_dbid       IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num   IN    NUMBER,
   l_bid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_sqlid      IN    VARCHAR2,
   l_options    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
 RETURN awrrpt_html_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–21 AWR_SQL_REPORT_HTML Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	Instance number
l_bid	The 'Begin Snapshot' ID
l_eid	The 'End Snapshot' ID
l_sqlid	SQL ID of statement to be analyzed
l_options	A flag to specify to control the output of the report. Currently, not used.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(500).

Usage Notes

You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the awrsqrpt.sql script which prompts users for the required information.

AWR_SQL_REPORT_TEXT Function

This table function displays the AWR SQL Report in text format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.AWR_SQL_REPORT_TEXT(
   l_dbid       IN    NUMBER,
   l_inst_num   IN    NUMBER,
   l_bid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_eid        IN    NUMBER,
   l_sqlid      IN    VARCHAR2,
   l_options    IN    NUMBER DEFAULT 0)
 RETURN awrrpt_text_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–22 AWR_SQL_REPORT_TEXT Parameters

Parameter	Description
l_dbid	Database identifier
l_inst_num	Instance number
l_bid	The 'Begin Snapshot' ID
l_eid	The 'End Snapshot' ID
l_sqlid	SQL ID of statement to be analyzed
l_options	Flag to specify to control the output of the report. Currently, not used.

Return Values

The output will be one column of VARCHAR2(120).

Usage Notes

You can call the function directly but Oracle recommends you use the awrsqrpt.sql script which prompts users for the required information.

CREATE_BASELINE Functions & Procedures

This function and procedure creates a baseline.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE(
   start_snap_id    IN  NUMBER,
   end_snap_id      IN  NUMBER,
   baseline_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   dbid             IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   expiration       IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE(
   start_snap_id    IN  NUMBER,
   end_snap_id      IN  NUMBER,
   baseline_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   dbid             IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   expiration       IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN NUMBER;

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE(
   start_time       IN  DATE,
   end_time         IN  DATE,
   baseline_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   dbid             IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   expiration       IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE(
   start_time       IN  DATE,
   end_time         IN  DATE,
   baseline_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   dbid             IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   expiration       IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 179–23 CREATE_BASELINE Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
start_snap_id	Start snapshot sequence number for the baseline'
end_snap_id	End snapshot sequence number for the baseline
start_time	Start time for the baseline'
end_time	End time for the baseline
baseline_name	Name of baseline.
dbid	Database Identifier for baseline. If NULL, this takes the database identifier for the local database. Defaults to NULL.
expiration	Expiration in number of days for the baseline. If NULL, then expiration is infinite, meaning do not drop baseline ever. Defaults to NULL.

Exceptions

- An error will be returned if this baseline name already exists in the system.

- The snapshot range that is specified for this interface must be an existing pair of snapshots in the database. An error will be returned if the inputted snapshots do not exist in the system.

Examples

This example creates a baseline (named 'oltp_peakload_bl') between snapshots 105 and 107 for the local database:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE (start_snap_id => 105,
end_snap_id => 107,
baseline_name => 'oltp_peakload_bl');
```

If you query the DBA_HIST_BASELINE view after the CREATE BASELINE action, you will see the newly created baseline in the Workload Repository.

CREATE_BASELINE_TEMPLATE Procedures

This procedure specifies a template for how they would like baselines to be created for future time periods.

Syntax

Specifies a template for generating a baseline for a single time period in the future.

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE_TEMPLATE(
   start_time              IN DATE,
   end_time                IN DATE,
   baseline_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   template_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   expiration              IN NUMBER,
   dbid                    IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Specifies a template for creating and dropping baseline based on repeating time periods:

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_BASELINE_TEMPLATE(
   day_of_week             IN VARCHAR2,
   hour_in_day             IN NUMBER,
   duration                IN NUMBER,
   start_time              IN DATE,
   end_time                IN DATE,
   baseline_name_prefix    IN VARCHAR2,
   template_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   expiration              IN NUMBER,
   dbid                    IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–24 CREATE_BASELINE_TEMPLATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
start_time	Start Time for the baseline to be created'
end_time	End Time for the baseline to be created
baseline_name	Name of baseline to be created
template_name	Name for the template
expiration	Expiration in number of days for the baseline. If NULL, then expiration is infinite, meaning do not drop baseline ever. Defaults to NULL
dbid	Database Identifier for baseline. If NULL, this takes the database identifier for the local database. Defaults to NULL.
day_of_week	Day of week that the baseline should repeat on. Specify one of the following values: SUNDAY, MONDAY, TUESDAY, WEDNESDAY, THURSDAY, FRIDAY, SATURDAY.
hour_in_day	Value of 0-23 to specify the Hour in the Day the baseline should start
duration	Duration (in number of hours) after hour in the day that the baseline should last

Table 179–24 (Cont.) CREATE_BASELINE_TEMPLATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
baseline_name_prefix	Name for baseline prefix. When creating the baseline, the name of the baseline will be the prefix appended with the date information.

CREATE_SNAPSHOT Function and Procedure

This function and procedure create snapshots. In the case of the function, the snapshot ID is returned.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_SNAPSHOT(
   flush_level IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL');

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_SNAPSHOT(
   flush_level IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'TYPICAL')
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 179–25 CREATE_SNAPSHOT Parameters

Parameter	Description
flush_level	Flush level for the snapshot is either 'TYPICAL' or 'ALL'

Examples

This example creates a manual snapshot at the TYPICAL level:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.CREATE_SNAPSHOT();
```

If you query the DBA_HIST_SNAPSHOT view after the CREATE_SNAPSHOT action, you will see one more snapshot ID added to the Workload Repository.

DROP_BASELINE Procedure

This procedure drops a previously-defined baseline.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.DROP_BASELINE(
   baseline_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   cascade        IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   dbid           IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–26 DROP_BASELINE Parameters

Parameter	Description
baseline_name	Name of baseline to drop from the system
cascade	If TRUE, the pair of snapshots associated with the baseline will also be dropped. Otherwise, only the baseline is removed.
dbid	Database Identifier for baseline. If NULL, this takes the database identifier for the local database. Defaults to NULL.

Examples

This example drops the baseline 'oltp_peakload_bl' without dropping the underlying snapshots:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.DROP_BASELINE (
       baseline_name => 'oltp_peakload_bl');
```

If you query the DBA_HIST_BASELINE view after the DROP_BASELINE action, you will see the specified baseline definition is removed. You can query the DBA_HIST_SNAPSHOT view to find that the underlying snapshots are left intact.

DROP_BASELINE_TEMPLATE Procedure

This procedure removes a template that is no longer needed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.DROP_BASELINE_TEMPLATE(
   template_name           IN VARCHAR2,   dbid                    IN NUMBER
DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–27 DROP_BASELINE_TEMPLATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`template_name`	Name of the template to remove
`dbid`	Database Identifier for baseline. If `NULL`, this takes the database identifier for the local database. Defaults to `NULL`.

DROP_SNAPSHOT_RANGE Procedure

This procedure drops a range of snapshots.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.DROP_SNAPSHOT_RANGE(
   low_snap_id    IN  NUMBER,
   high_snap_id   IN  NUMBER
   dbid           IN  NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–28 DROP_SNAPSHOT_RANGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
low_snap_id	Low snapshot id of snapshots to drop.
high_snap_id	High snapshot id of snapshots to drop.
dbid	Database id (default to local DBID.

Examples

This example drops the range of snapshots between snapshot id 102 to 105 for the local database:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.DROP_SNAPSHOT_RANGE(102, 105);
```

If you query the dba_hist_snapshot view after the Drop Snapshot action, you will see that snapshots 102 to 105 are removed from the Workload Repository.

MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS Procedures

This procedure controls three aspects of snapshot generation.

- The INTERVAL setting affects how often snapshots are automatically captured.
- The RETENTION setting affects how long snapshots are retained in the Workload Repository.
- The number of SQL captured for each Top criteria. If the user manually specifies a value for Top N SQL, the AWR SQL collection will use the user-specified number for both automatic and manual snapshots.

There are two overloads. The first takes a NUMBER and the second takes a VARCHAR2 for the topnsql argument. The differences are described under the Parameters description.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS(
   retention   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   interval    IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   topnsql     IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   dbid        IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS(
   retention   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   interval    IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   topnsql     IN  VARCHAR2,
   dbid        IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–29 MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
retention	New retention time (in minutes). The specified value must be in the range of MIN_RETENTION (1 day) to MAX_RETENTION (100 years). If ZERO is specified, snapshots will be retained forever. A large system-defined value will be used as the retention setting. If NULL is specified, the old value for retention is preserved. NOTE: The retention setting must be greater than or equal to the window size of the 'SYSTEM_MOVING_WINDOW' baseline. If the retention needs to be less than the window size, the MODIFY_BASELINE_WINDOW_SIZE Procedure can be used to adjust the window size.
interval	New interval setting between each snapshot, in units of minutes. The specified value must be in the range MIN_INTERVAL (10 minutes) to MAX_INTERVAL (1 year). If ZERO is specified, automatic and manual snapshots will be disabled. A large system-defined value will be used as the retention setting. If NULL is specified, the current value is preserved.

Table 179–29 (Cont.) MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
topnsql	■ If NUMBER: Top N SQL size. The number of Top SQL to flush for each SQL criteria (Elapsed Time, CPU Time, Parse Calls, Shareable Memory, Version Count). The value for this setting will not be affected by the statistics/flush level and will override the system default behavior for the AWR SQL collection. The setting will have a minimum value of 30 and a maximum value of 50,000. Specifying NULL will keep the current setting. ■ If VARCHAR2: Users are allowed to specify the following values: (DEFAULT, MAXIMUM, N), where N is the number of Top SQL to flush for each SQL criteria. Specifying DEFAULT will revert the system back to the default behavior of Top 30 for statistics level TYPICAL and Top 100 for statistics level ALL. Specifying MAXIMUM will cause the system to capture the complete set of SQL in the cursor cache. Specifying the number N is equivalent to setting the Top N SQL with the NUMBER type. Specifying NULL for this argument will keep the current setting.
dbid	Database identifier in AWR for which to modify the snapshot settings. If NULL is specified, the local dbid will be used. Defaults to NULL.

Examples

This example changes the interval setting to one hour and the retention setting to two weeks for the local database:

```
EXECUTE DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS(
  interval  =>  60,
  retention =>  20160);
```

If you query the DBA_HIST_WR_CONTROL table after this procedure is executed, you will see the changes to these settings.

MODIFY_BASELINE_WINDOW_SIZE Procedure

This procedure modifies the window size for the Default Moving Window Baseline.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.MODIFY_BASELINE_WINDOW_SIZE(
   window_size     IN   NUMBER,
   dbid            IN   NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–30 MODIFY_BASELINE_WINDOW_SIZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
window_size	New Window size for the default Moving Window Baseline, in number of days.
dbid	Database ID (default to local DBID)

Usage Notes

The window size must be less than or equal to the AWR retention setting. If the window size needs to be greater than the retention setting, the MODIFY_SNAPSHOT_SETTINGS Procedures can be used to adjust the retention setting. A moving window can be set to a maximum of 13 weeks.

PURGE_SQL_DETAILS Procedure

This procedure purges SQL details, specifically rows from WRH$_SQLTEXT, WRH$_SQL_PLAN, and WRH$_SQL_BIND_METADATA that do not have corresponding rows (DBID, SQL_ID) in WRH$_SQLSTAT.

The subprogram calls for the DBID for which to run the purge. If the DBID is not specified, the database DBID is used. You can constrain runtime by specifying the maximum number of rows to purge per table. If no maximum is specified, the subprograms tries to purge all applicable rows.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.PURGE_SQL_DETAILS(
   numrows IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   dbid    IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–31 PURGE_SQL_DETAILS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
numrows	Number of rows
dbid	Database ID (default to local DBID)

REMOVE_COLORED_SQL Procedure

This procedure removes a colored SQL ID. After a SQL is uncolored, it will no longer be captured in a snapshot automatically, unless it makes the TOP list.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.REMOVE_COLORED_SQL(
   sql_id          IN VARCHAR2,
   dbid            IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–32 REMOVE_COLORED_SQL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	13-character external SQL ID
dbid	Optional dbid, defaults to Local DBID

RENAME_BASELINE Procedure

This procedure renames a baseline.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.RENAME_BASELINE(
   old_baseline_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   new_baseline_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   dbid                  IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 179–33 RENAME_BASELINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
old_baseline_name	Old baseline name
new_baseline_name	New baseline name
dbid	Database ID (default to local DBID)

SELECT_BASELINE_METRIC Function

This table function shows the values of the metrics corresponding to a baseline. The table function will return an object of the AWR_BASELINE_METRIC_TYPE Object Type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.SELECT_BASELINE_METRIC(
   baseline_name     IN VARCHAR2,
   dbid              IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   instance_num      IN NUMBER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN awr_metric_type_table PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 179–34 SELECT_BASELINE_METRIC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
baseline_name	Name of the baseline for which we would like to view metrics
dbid	Database Identifier for baseline. If NULL, then use the database identifier for the local database. Defaults to NULL.
instance_num	Instance for which number the user wants to see statistics. If NULL, show statistics for the local instance. Defaults to NULL.

UPDATE_OBJECT_INFO Procedure

This procedure updates rows of WRH$_SEG_STAT_OBJ table that represent objects in the local database. It attempts to determine the current names for all object belonging to the local database, except those with 'MISSING' and/or 'TRANSIENT' values in the name columns. The amount of work performed at each invocation of this routine may be controlled by setting the input parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_WORKLOAD_REPOSITORY.UPDATE_OBJECT_INFO(
   maxrows   IN  NUMBER  DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 179–35 UPDATE_OBJECT_INFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
maxrows	Maximum number of rows to be updated. Default= 0, meaning there is no limit.

180

DBMS_XA

The DBMS_XA package contains the XA/Open interface for applications to call XA interface in PL/SQL. Using this package, application developers can switch or share transactions across SQL*Plus sessions or processes using PL/SQL.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for more information about "Developing Applications with Oracle XA"

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XA

Overview

These subprograms allow a PL/SQL application to define a global transaction branch ID (`XID`) and associate or disassociate the current session with the transaction branch.

Subsequently, these transaction branches may be prepared and committed by following the two-phase commit protocol. A single-phase commit protocol is also supported if only one resource manager is involved.

Interfaces are also provided for a PL/SQL application to set the timeout values for any new global transaction branches that may start with the current session.

Security Model

This package is created under SYS. Operations provided by this package are performed under the current calling user, not under the package owner SYS.Any DBMS_XA subprogram called from an anonymous PL/SQL block is executed using the privileges of the current user. Any DBMS_XA subprogram called from a stored procedure is executed using the privileges of the owner of the stored procedure.

SELECT or READ privilege on SYS.DBA_PENDING_TRANSACTIONS is required for users who need to execute XA_RECOVER subprogram.

FORCE ANY TRANSACTION privilege is required for users who need to manipulate XA transactions created by other users.

Constants

The DBMS_XA package uses the constants shown in Table 180–1 for use in the flag field of the XA_START Function and the XA_END Function.

Table 180–1 DBMS_XA Constants for Flag Field of XA_START & XA_END Functions

Name	Type	Value	Description
TMNOFLAGS	PLS_INTEGER	00000000	Indicates no flag value is selected.
TMSUCCESS	PLS_INTEGER	UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER ('04000000')	Dissociates caller from transaction branch
TMJOIN	PLS_INTEGER	UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER ('00200000')	Caller is joining existing transaction branch.
TMSUSPEND	PLS_INTEGER	UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER ('02000000')	Caller is suspending, not ending, association
TMRESUME	PLS_INTEGER	UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER ('08000000')	Caller is resuming association with suspended transaction branch.

The DBMS_XA package uses the constants shown in Table 180–2 for Possible Return Values

Table 180–2 DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values

Name	Type	Value	Description
XA_RBBASE	PLS_INTEGER	100	Inclusive lower bound of the rollback codes
XA_RBROLLBACK	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE	Rollback was caused by an unspecified reason
XA_RBCOMMFAIL	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+1	Rollback was caused by a communication failure
XA_RBDEADLOCK	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+2	Deadlock was detected
XA_RBINTEGRITY	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+3	Condition that violates the integrity of the resources was detected
XA_RBOTHER	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+4	Resource manager rolled back the transaction for an unlisted reason
XA_RBPROTO	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+5	Protocol error occurred in the resource manager
XA_RBTIMEOUT	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+6	transaction branch took long
XA_RBTRANSIENT	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBBASE+7	May retry the transaction branch
XA_RBEND	PLS_INTEGER	XA_RBTRANSIENT	Inclusive upper bound of the rollback codes
XA_NOMIGRATE	PLS_INTEGER	9	Transaction branch may have been heuristically completed

Table 180–2 (Cont.) DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values

Name	Type	Value	Description
XA_HEURHAZ	PLS_INTEGER	8	Transaction branch may have been heuristically completed
XA_HEURCOM	PLS_INTEGER	7	Transaction branch has been heuristically committed
XA_HEURRB	PLS_INTEGER	6	Transaction branch has been heuristically rolled back
XA_HEURMIX	PLS_INTEGER	5	Some of the transaction branches have been heuristically committed, others rolled back
XA_RETRY	PLS_INTEGER	4	Routine returned with no effect and may be re-issued
XA_RDONLY	PLS_INTEGER	3	Transaction was read-only and has been committed
XA_OK	PLS_INTEGER	0	Normal execution
XAER_ASYNC	PLS_INTEGER	-2	Asynchronous operation already outstanding
XAER_RMERR	PLS_INTEGER	-3	Resource manager error occurred in the transaction branch
XAER_NOTA	PLS_INTEGER	-4	XID is not valid
XAER_INVAL	PLS_INTEGER	-5	Invalid arguments were given
XAER_PROTO	PLS_INTEGER	-6	Routine invoked in an improper context
XAER_RMFAIL	PLS_INTEGER	-7	Resource manager unavailable
XAER_DUPID	PLS_INTEGER	-8	XID already exists
XAER_OUTSIDE	PLS_INTEGER	-9	Resource manager doing work outside global transaction

Operational Notes

In compliance with the XA specification of the X/Open CAE Standard for Distributed Transaction Processing, XA_PREPARE/COMMIT/ ROLLBACK/FORGET may not be called when the transaction is still associated with the current session. Only after XA_END has been called so that there is not any transaction associated with the current session, the application may call XA_PREPARE/COMMIT/ ROLLBACK/FORGET.

XAER_PROTO error is returned from XA_PREPARE/COMMIT/ROLLBACK/FORGET if a transaction is being associated with the current session.

Prior to calling any of the package subprograms, a connection/session must have already been established to the Oracle database server backend, or a resource manager. Resource manager identifiers are not supported. If multiple resource managers are involved, multiple connections/sessions must be pre-established to each resource manager before calling any the package subprograms. If multiple connections/sessions are established during the course of global transaction processing, the caller must ensure that all of those connections/sessions associated with a specific global transaction branch identifier (XID) are established to the same resource manager.

Data Structures

The DBMS_XA package uses the following OBJECT type and associated TABLE type.

OBJECT Types

- DBMS_XA_XID Object Type

TABLE Types

- DBMS_XA_XID_ARRAY Table Type

DBMS_XA_XID Object Type

The PL/SQL XA interface allows the PL/SQL application to define a global transaction branch id (XID) and associate/disassociate the current session with the transaction branch. XID is defined as a PL/SQL object type.

> **See Also:** For more information, see "Distributed Transaction Processing: The XA Specification" in the public XA Standard.

Syntax

```
TYPE DBMS_XA_XID IS OBJECT(
  formatid      NUMBER,
  gtrid         RAW(64),
  bqual         RAW(64),
  constructor function DBMS_XA_XID(
       gtrid     IN   NUMBER)
    RETURN SELF AS RESULT,
  constructor function DBMS_XA_XID (
       gtrid     IN   RAW,
       bqual     IN   RAW)
    RETURN SELF AS RESULT,
  constructor function DBMS_XA_XID(
       formatid  IN   NUMBER,
       gtrid     IN   RAW,
       bqual     IN   RAW DEFAULT HEXTORAW('00000000000000000000000000000001'))
    RETURN SELF AS RESULT)
```

Attributes

Table 180–3 DBMS_XA_XID Object Type

Attribute	Description
formatid	Format identifier, a number identifying different transaction managers (TM)
gtrid	Global transaction identifier uniquely identifying a global transaction, of which the maximum size is 64 bytes
bqual	Branch qualifier, of which the maximum size is 64 bytes

DBMS_XA_XID_ARRAY Table Type

This type is used to define an array of `xid` that represent a list of global transaction branches.

Syntax

```
TYPE DBMS_XA_XID_ARRAY as TABLE of DBMS_XA_XID
```

Summary of DBMS_XA Subprograms

Table 180–4 DBMS_Xa Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DIST_TXN_SYNC Procedure on page 180-12	Used in recovery of synchronization when utilizing Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC)
XA_COMMIT Function on page 180-13	Commits the global transaction specified by `xid`
XA_END Function on page 180-14	Disassociates the current session from the transaction branch specified by `xid`
XA_FORGET Function on page 180-15	Informs the resource manager to forget about a heuristically committed or rolled back transaction branch.
XA_GETLASTOER Function on page 180-16	Obtains the last Oracle error code, in case of failure of previous XA calls.
XA_PREPARE Function on page 180-17	Prepares the transaction branch specified in `xid` for committing the transaction subsequently if possible
XA_RECOVER Function on page 180-18	Obtains a list of prepared or heuristically completed transaction branches from a resource manager
XA_ROLLBACK Function on page 180-19	Informs the resource manager to roll back work done on behalf of a transaction branch
XA_SETTIMEOUT Function on page 180-20	Sets the transaction timeout in seconds for the current session
XA_START Function on page 180-21	Associates the current session with the transaction branch specified by `xid`

DIST_TXN_SYNC Procedure

This procedure can be used to synchronize in-doubt transactions when one of the Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) instances fails.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.DIST_TXN_SYNC;
```

XA_COMMIT Function

This function commits the global transaction specified by xid.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_COMMIT (
   xid       IN  DBMS_XA_XID,
   onePhase  IN  BOOLEAN)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–5 XA_COMMIT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	See DBMS_XA_XID Object Type on page 180-9
onePhase	If TRUE, apply single phase commit

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values". Possible return values indicating error are: XAER_RMERR, XAER_RMFAIL, XAER_NOTA, XAER_INVAL, or XAER_PROTO. Other possible return values include: XA_OK, XA_RB*, XA_HEURHAZ, XA_HEURCOM, XA_HEURRB, and XA_HEURMIX.

Usage Notes

- An application must not call COMMIT, but instead must call XA_COMMIT to commit the global transaction specified by xid. If a user needs to commit a transaction branch that is created by other users, FORCE ANY TRANSACTION must be granted to the user.
- If onePhase is TRUE, the resource manager should use a one-phase commit protocol to commit the work done on behalf of xid. Otherwise, only if all branches of the global transaction have been prepared successfully and the preceding XA_PREPARE call has returned XA_OK, should XA_COMMIT be called.
- The application must make a separate XA_COMMIT call for each of the transaction branches of the global transaction for which XA_PREPARE has returned XA_OK.
- If the resource manager did not commit the transaction and the parameter onePhase is set to TRUE, the resource manager may return one of the XA_RB* code. Upon return, the resource manager has rolled back the branch's work and has released all held resources.

XA_END Function

This function disassociates the current session from the transaction branch specified by xid

A transaction manager calls XA_END when a thread of control finishes, or needs to suspend work on, a transaction branch. This occurs when the application completes a portion of its work, either partially or in its entirety (for example, before blocking on some event in order to let other threads of control work on the branch). When XA_END successfully returns, the calling thread of control is no longer actively associated with the branch but the branch still exists

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_END (
   xid   IN  DBMS_XA_XID,
   flag  IN  PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–6 XA_END Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	See DBMS_XA_XID Object Type on page 180-9
flag	See Table 180–1, " DBMS_XA Constants for Flag Field of XA_START & XA_END Functions".

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values". Possible return values in error are XAER_RMERR, XAER_RMFAILED, XAER_NOTA, XAER_INVAL, XAER_PROTO, or XA_RB*.

Usage Notes

- TMSUCCESS or TMSUSPEND may be specified in flag, and the transaction branch is disassociated with the current session in detached state if the return value is XA_OK. TMFAIL is not supported. XA_END may be called with either TMSUCCESS or TMSUSPEND to disassociate the transaction branch identified by xid from the current session.
- XA_OK is returned if XA_END succeeds. An application must check the return value and handle error cases. Only when XA_OK is returned, the application should proceed for other normal operations.
- Executing a ROLLBACK statement without calling XA_END first will rollback the changes made by the current transaction. However, the transaction context is still associated with the current session until XA_END is called.
- Executing a COMMIT statement without calling XA_END first will result in ORA-02089: COMMIT is not allowed in a subordinate session.
- Executing a COMMIT or a ROLLBACK statement after XA_END has no effect on the transaction identified by xid, since this transaction is no longer associated with the current session. To commit the transaction ID or the XA_ROLLBACK Function to commit/rollback the transaction specified by the xid.

XA_FORGET Function

This function informs the resource manager to forget about a heuristically committed or rolled back transaction branch.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_FORGET (
   xid       IN  DBMS_XA_XID)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–7 XA_FORGET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	See DBMS_XA_XID Object Type on page 180-9

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values". Possible return values are XA_OK, XAER_RMERR, XAER_RMFAIL, XAER_NOTA, XAER_INVAL, or XAER_PROTO.

XA_GETLASTOER Function

This function obtains the last Oracle error code, in case of failure of previous XA calls.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_GETLASTOER
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Return Values

The return value carries the last Oracle error code.

XA_PREPARE Function

This function prepares the transaction branch specified in `xid` for committing the transaction subsequently if possible.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_PREPARE (
   xid   IN  DBMS_XA_XID)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–8 XA_PREPARE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xid`	See DBMS_XA_XID Object Type on page 180-9

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values". Possible return codes include: `XA_OK`, `XA_RDONLY`, `XA_RB*`, `XAER_RMERR`, `XAER_RMFAIL`, `XAER_NOTA`, `XAER_INVAL`, or `XAER_PROTO`.

Usage Notes

- If a user needs to prepare a transaction branch that is created by other users, `FORCE ANY TRANSACTION` must be granted to the user.
- An application must keep track of all the branches of one global transaction, and prepare each transaction branch. Only if all branches of the global transaction have been prepared successfully and `XA_PREPARE` has returned `XA_OK`, the application may proceed to call `XA_COMMIT`.

XA_RECOVER Function

This function obtains a list of prepared or heuristically completed transaction branches from a resource manager.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_RECOVER
 RETURN DBMS_XA_XID_ARRAY;
```

Return Values

See DBMS_XA_XID_ARRAY Table Type

Usage Notes

- The flags `TMSTARTSCAN`, `TMENDSCAN`, `TMNOFLAGS` are not supported.
- The privilege `SELECT ON DBA_PENDING_TRANSACTIONS` must be granted to the user who needs to call `XA_RECOVER`.

XA_ROLLBACK Function

This function informs the resource manager to roll back work done on behalf of a transaction branch.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_ROLLBACK (
   xid       IN  DBMS_XA_XID)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–9 XA_ROLLBACK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	See DBMS_XA_XID Object Type on page 180-9

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values". Possible return values are: XA_OK, XA_RB*, XA_HEURHAZ, XA_HEURCOM, XA_HEURRB, or XA_HEURMIX.

Usage Notes

If a user needs to rollback a transaction branch that created by other users, the privilege FORCE ANY TRANSACTION must be granted to the user.

XA_SETTIMEOUT Function

This function sets the transaction timeout in seconds for the current session.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_SETTIMEOUT (
   seconds  IN  PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–10 XA_SETTIMEOUT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
seconds	The timeout value indicates the maximum time in seconds that a transaction branch may be disassociated from the session before the system automatically aborts the transaction. The default value is 60 seconds.

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values". Possible return values are XA_OK, XAER_RMERR, XAER_RMFAIL, or XAER_INVAL.

Usage Notes

Only if return value is XA_OK, is the timeout value successfully set.

XA_START Function

This function associates the current session with a transaction branch specified by the xid.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XA.XA_START (
   xid   IN  DBMS_XA_XID,    flag  IN  PLS_INTEGER)  RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 180–11 XA_START Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xid	See DBMS_XA_XID Object Type on page 180-9
flag	See Table 180–1, " DBMS_XA Constants for Flag Field of XA_START & XA_END Functions".

Return Values

See Table 180–2, " DBMS_XA Constants for Possible Return Values"

Usage Notes

- If TMJOIN or TMRESUME is specified in flag, the start is for joining an existing transaction branch identified by the xid. TMJOIN flag should be used when the transaction is detached with TMSUCCESS flag. TMRESUME should be used when the transaction branch is detached with TMSUSPEND flag. XA_START may be called with either flag to join an existing transaction branch.
- If TMNOFLAGS is specified in flag, and neither TMJOIN nor TMRESUME is specified, a new transaction branch is to be started. If the transaction branch specified in xid already exists, XA_START returns an XAER_DUPID error code.
- Possible return values in error include: XAER_RMERR, XAER_RMFAIL, XAER_DUPID, XAER_OUTSIDE, XAER_NOTA, XAER_INVAL, and XAER_PROTO.
- XA_OK is returned if XA_START succeeds. An application must check the return value and handle error cases. Only when XA_OK is returned, the PL/SQL application should proceed for other normal operations.Transaction stacking is not supported. If there is an active transaction associated with the current session, may not be called to start or join another transaction. XAER_PROTO will be returned if XA_START is called with an active global transaction branch associated with the session. XAER_OUTSIDE will be returned if XA_START is called with a local transaction associated with the current session.

181

DBMS_XDB

Note: The DBMS_XDB package subprograms and constants are deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c*. While all features continue to be supported for backward compatibility, Oracle recommends that you use the alternative procedures provided in each case. For more information, see Deprecated Subprograms on page 181-4 and Constants on page 181-8.

The DBMS_XDB package supports the following features:

- Resource Management subprograms which complement Resource Views
- The Access Control List (ACL)-based Security Mechanism
- Configuration Session Management
- Creation of the XDB username

See Also:

- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database New Features Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDB

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_XDB` package.

Overview

The DBMS_XDB package supports the following features:

- The Resource Management functionality providesLINK Procedures, EXISTSRESOURCE Function, LOCKRESOURCE Function, GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure, UNLOCKRESOURCE Function, CREATERESOURCE Functions, RENAMERESOURCE Procedure, DELETERESOURCE Procedure, GETRESOID Function, CREATEOIDPATH Function, and CREATEFOLDER Function subprograms which complement Resource Views.
- The Access Control List (ACL)-based Security Mechanism can be used with in-hierarchy ACLs stored by the database or in-memory ACLs that may be stored outside the database. Some of these methods can be used for both Oracle resources and arbitrary database objects. Use CHECKPRIVILEGES Function, GETACLDOCUMENT Function, and CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function for Oracle Resources. ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function provides access to Oracle's ACL-based Security mechanism without storing objects in the Hierarchy.
- Configuration Session Management is supported by CFG_REFRESH Procedure, CFG_GET Function and CFG_UPDATE Procedure. methods.
- The XDB username is created during XDB installation. This user owns a set of default tables and packages. GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function and the DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.MOVEXDB_TABLESPACE Procedure enable movement of schemas to a specified tablespace, and support the default SYSAUX tablespace introduction

Deprecated Subprograms

> **Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only and may be terminated in future releases.

All subprograms in the `DBMS_XDB` package are deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c* and substituted by the alternative subprograms with the same names in either the `DBMS_XDB_CONFIG` package or the `DBMS_XDB_REPOS` package as listed in the table.

Table 181–1 DBMS_XDB Deprecated Subprograms and their Altenatives

DBMS_XDB (Deprecated)	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-12		ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-8
ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 181-13	ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 183-8	
ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 181-14	ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 183-9	
ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 181-15	ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 183-10	
ADDSERVLET Procedure on page 181-16	ADDSERVLET Procedure on page 183-11	
ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 181-17	ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 183-12	
ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 181-18	ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 183-13	
ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 181-19	ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 183-14	
APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 181-20		APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 185-9
CFG_GET Function on page 181-21	CFG_GET Function on page 183-15	
CFG_REFRESH Procedure on page 181-22	CFG_REFRESH Procedure on page 183-16	
CFG_UPDATE Procedure on page 181-23	CFG_UPDATE Procedure on page 183-17	
CHANGEOWNER Procedure on page 181-24		CHANGEOWNER Procedure on page 185-10
CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-25		CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-11
CHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-26		CHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-12
CREATEFOLDER Function on page 181-27		CREATEFOLDER Function on page 185-13
CREATEOIDPATH Function on page 181-28		CREATEOIDPATH Function on page 185-14

Table 181–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB Deprecated Subprograms and their Altenatives

DBMS_XDB (Deprecated)	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
CREATERESOURCE Functions on page 181-29		CREATERESOURCE Functions on page 185-15
DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 181-31	DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 183-18	
DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 181-32	DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 183-19	
DELETERESOURCE Procedure on page 181-33		DELETERESOURCE Procedure on page 185-17
DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 181-34		DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 185-18
DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 181-35	DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 183-20	
DELETESERVLET Procedure on page 181-36	DELETESERVLET Procedure on page 183-21	
DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 181-37	DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 183-22	
DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 181-38	DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 183-23	
DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 181-39	DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 183-24	
ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 181-40	ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 183-25	
EXISTSRESOURCE Function on page 181-41		EXISTSRESOURCE Function on page 185-19
GETACLDOCUMENT Function on page 181-42		GETACLDOCUMENT Function on page 185-20
GETCONTENTBLOB Function on page 181-43		GETCONTENTBLOB Function on page 185-21
GETCONTENTCLOB Function on page 181-44		GETCONTENTCLOB Function on page 185-22
GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function on page 181-45		GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function on page 185-23
GETCONTENTXMLREF Function on page 181-46		GETCONTENTXMLREF Function on page 185-24
GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function on page 181-47		GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function on page 185-25
GETFTPPORT Function on page 181-48	GETFTPPORT Function on page 183-26	
GETHTTPPORT Function on page 181-49	GETHTTPPORT Function on page 183-27	
GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 181-51	GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 183-30	
GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure on page 181-52		GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure on page 185-26

Table 181–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB Deprecated Subprograms and their Altenatives

DBMS_XDB (Deprecated)	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
GETRESOID Function on page 181-54		GETRESOID Function on page 185-28
GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function on page 181-55		GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function on page 185-29
HASBLOBCONTENT Function on page 181-56		HASBLOBCONTENT Function on page 185-30
HASCHARCONTENT Function on page 181-57		HASCHARCONTENT Function on page 185-31
HASXMLCONTENT Function on page 181-58		HASXMLCONTENT Function on page 185-32
HASXMLREFERENCE Function on page 181-59		HASXMLREFERENCE Function on page 185-33
ISFOLDER Function on page 181-60		ISFOLDER Function on page 185-34
LINK Procedures on page 181-61		LINK Procedures on page 185-35
LOCKRESOURCE Function on page 181-62		LOCKRESOURCE Function on page 185-36
PROCESSLINKS Procedure on page 181-63		PROCESSLINKS Procedure on page 185-37
PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 181-64		PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 185-38
RENAMERESOURCE Procedure on page 181-65		RENAMERESOURCE Procedure on page 185-39
SETACL Procedure on page 181-66		SETACL Procedure on page 185-40
SETFTPPORT Procedure on page 181-67	SETFTPPORT Procedure on page 183-31	
SETHTTPPORT Procedure on page 181-68	SETHTTPPORT Procedure on page 183-32	
SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 181-69	SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 183-35	
SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure on page 181-70	SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure on page 183-36	
SPLITPATH Procedure on page 181-71		SPLITPATH Procedure on page 185-41
TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure on page 181-72		TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure on page 185-42
UNLOCKRESOURCE Function on page 181-73		UNLOCKRESOURCE Function on page 185-43
UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 181-74		UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 185-44

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user. Subprograms that operate on the XDB Configuration will succeed only if the current user is SYS or XDB, or the current user has the XDBADMIN or DBA role.

Constants

All constants as described in Table 181–2, " DBMS_XDB Constants"are deprecated in Oracle Release 12*c* in that they are relocated to either the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package or the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package. The specifics of transference in each case are detailed in the **Relocated** column.

Oracle recommends that you do not use constants in their DBMS_XDB context in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only and may be terminated in future releases.

Table 181–2 DBMS_XDB Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description	Relocated
DELETE_RESOURCE	NUMBER	1	Deletes a resource; fails if the resource has children.	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
DELETE_RECURSIVE	NUMBER	2	Deletes a resource and its children, if any.	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
DELETE_FORCE	NUMBER	3	Deletes the resource, even if the object it contains is invalid.	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
DELETE_RECURSIVE_FORCE	NUMBER	4	Deletes a resource and its children, if any, even if the object it contains is invalid.	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
DELETE_RES_METADATA_CASCADE	NUMBER	1	Deletes the corresponding row in the metadata table	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
DELETE_RES_METADATA_NOCASCADE	NUMBER	2	Does not delete the row in the metadata table	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
DEFAULT_LOCK_TIMEOUT CONSTANT	PLS_INTEGER	(60*60)	Default time (in seconds) after which lock will expire	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
LINK_TYPE_HARD	NUMBER	1	Type of link to be created (default)	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
LINK_TYPE_WEAK	NUMBER	2	Type of link to be created	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
LINK_TYPE_SYMBOLIC	NUMBER	3	Type of link to be created	DBMS_XDB_REPOS
ON_DENY_NEXT_CUSTOM	NUMBER	1	If access denied, the next custom authorization is tried	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG
ON_DENY_BASIC	NUMBER	2	If access denied, basic authentication is used	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG
XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP	NUMBER	1	Defining listener for first HTTP port	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG
XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP2	NUMBER	2	Defining listener for second HTTP port	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG
XDB_PROTOCOL_TCP	NUMBER	1	Defining listener for HTTP protocol	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG
XDB_PROTOCOL_TCPS	NUMBER	2	Defining listener for HTTPS protocol	DBMS_XDB_CONFIG

Summary of DBMS_XDB Subprograms

Table 181–3 DBMS_XDB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-12	Checks access privileges granted to the current user by specified ACL document on a resource whose owner is specified by the 'owner' parameter.
ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 181-13	Adds to `xdb$config` a mapping of the URL pattern to an expiration date. This will control the Expire headers for URLs matching the pattern.
ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 181-14	Adds a mime mapping to the XDB configuration
ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 181-15	Adds a schema location mapping to the XDB configuration
ADDSERVLET Procedure on page 181-16	Adds a servlet to XDB configuration
ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 181-17	Adds a servlet mapping to XDB configuration
ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 181-18	Adds a security role `REF` to a specified servlet in the XDB configuration
ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 181-19	Adds adds an XML extension to the XDB configuration
APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 181-20	Takes in user-defined metadata either as a `REF` to `XMLTYPE` or an `XMLTYPE` and adds it to the desired resource
CFG_GET Function on page 181-21	Retrieves the session's configuration information
CFG_REFRESH Procedure on page 181-22	Refreshes the session's configuration information to the latest configuration
CFG_UPDATE Procedure on page 181-23	Updates the configuration information
CHANGEOWNER Procedure on page 181-24	Changes the owner of the resource/s to the specified owner.
CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-25	Adds a specified ACE to a specified resource's ACL
CHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-26	Checks access privileges granted to the current user on the specified resource
CREATEFOLDER Function on page 181-27	Creates a new folder resource in the hierarchy
CREATEOIDPATH Function on page 181-28	Creates a virtual path to the resource based on object ID
CREATERESOURCE Functions on page 181-29	Creates a new resource
DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 181-31	Deletes from `xdb$config` all mappings of the URL pattern to an expiration date
DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 181-32	Deletes the mime mapping from the XDB configuration
DELETERESOURCE Procedure on page 181-33	Deletes a resource from the hierarchy

Table 181–3 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 181-34	Deletes metadata from a resource (can be used for schema-based or nonschema-based metadata)
DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 181-35	Deletes the schema location mapping for the specified schema URL from the XDB configuration.
DELETESERVLET Procedure on page 181-36	Deletes a servlet from XDB configuration
DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 181-37	Deletes the servlet mapping for the specified servlet name from the XDB configuration
DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 181-38	Deletes the specified role from a servlet in the XDB configuration
DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 181-39	Deletes the specified XML extension from the XDB configuration
ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 181-40	Enables digest authentication
EXISTSRESOURCE Function on page 181-41	Determines if a resource is the hierarchy, based on its absolute path
GETACLDOCUMENT Function on page 181-42	Retrieves ACL document that protects resource given its path name
GETCONTENTBLOB Function on page 181-43	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a BLOB
GETCONTENTCLOB Function on page 181-44	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a CLOB
GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function on page 181-45	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a string
GETCONTENTXMLREF Function on page 181-46	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a a `REF` to an `XMLTYPE`
GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function on page 181-47	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as an `XMLTYPE`
GETFTPPORT Function on page 181-48	Gets the value of the current FTP port
GETHTTPPORT Function on page 181-49	Gets the value of the current HTTP port
GETHTTPREQUESTHEADER Function on page 181-50	Gets the values of the passed header
GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 181-51	Retrieves the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server
GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure on page 181-52	Returns that resource's lock token for the current user given a path to a resource
GETPRIVILEGES Function on page 181-53	Gets all privileges granted to the current user on a specified resource
GETRESOID Function on page 181-54	Returns the object ID of the resource from its absolute path
GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function on page 181-55	Returns the current tablespace of the XDB (user)
HASBLOBCONTENT Function on page 181-56	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has BLOB content

Table 181–3 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
HASCHARCONTENT Function on page 181-57	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has character content
HASXMLCONTENT Function on page 181-58	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has XML content
HASXMLREFERENCE Function on page 181-59	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has `REF` to XML content
ISFOLDER Function on page 181-60	Returns `TRUE` if the resource is a folder or container
LINK Procedures on page 181-61	Creates a link to an existing resource
LOCKRESOURCE Function on page 181-62	Gets a WebDAV-style lock on that resource given a path to that resource
PROCESSLINKS Procedure on page 181-63	Processes document links in the specified resource
PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 181-64	Deletes all user metadata from a resource
RENAMERESOURCE Procedure on page 181-65	Renames the XDB resource
SETACL Procedure on page 181-66	Sets the ACL on a specified resource
SETFTPPORT Procedure on page 181-67	Sets the FTP port to a new value
SETHTTPPORT Procedure on page 181-68	Sets the HTTP port to a new value
SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 181-69	Sets the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server
SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure on page 181-70	Restricts all listener end points of the XML DB HTTP server to listen either only on the localhost interface or on both localhost and non-localhost interfaces
SPLITPATH Procedure on page 181-71	Splits the path into a parentpath and childpath
TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure on page 181-72	Changes the modification time of the resource to the current time
UNLOCKRESOURCE Function on page 181-73	Unlocks the resource given a lock token and resource path
UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 181-74	Updates metadata for a resource

ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function.

This function checks access privileges granted to the current user by specified ACL document by the OWNER of the resource. Returns positive integer if all privileges are granted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES(
   acl_path  IN  VARCHAR2,
   owner     IN  VARCHAR2,
   privs     IN  xmltype)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 181–4 ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
acl_path	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for ACL document
owner	Resource owner name; the pseudo user "DAV:owner" is replaced by this user during ACL privilege resolution
privs	An XMLType instance of the privilege element specifying the requested set of access privileges. See description for CHECKPRIVILEGES Function.

ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure adds to `xdb$config` a mapping of the URL pattern to an expiration date. This will control the Expire headers for URLs matching the pattern.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING (
     pattern    IN    VARCHAR2,
     expire     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–5 ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`pattern`	URL pattern (only * accepted as wildcards)

`expire`	Expiration directive, follows the `ExpireDefault` in Apache's `mod_expires`:
	`base [plus] (num type)*`
	`-- base: now | modification`
	`-- type: year|years|month|months|week|weeks|day|days|minute|minutess|second|seconds`

Examples

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING ('/public/test1/*', 'now plus 4 weeks');
DBMS_XDB.ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING (
             '/public/test2/*', 'modification plus 1 day 30 seconds');
```

ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure adds the following mime mapping to XDB configuration:

```
<mime-mapping>
<extension>extension</extension>
<mime-type>mimetype</mime-type>
</mime-mapping>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDMIMEMAPPING(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2,
     mimetype     IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–6 ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`extension`	Extension for which a mime type is being added
`mimetype`	Mime type

ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure adds the following schema location mapping to the XDB configuration:

```
<schemaLocation-mapping>
     <namespace>namespace</namespace>
     <element>element</element>
      <schemaURL>schemaURL</schemaURL>
</schemaLocation-mapping>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING(
     namespace    IN   VARCHAR2,
     element      IN   VARCHAR2,
     schemaURL    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–7 ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
namespace	Namespace
element	Element
schemaURL	Schema URL

ADDSERVLET Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDSERVLET Procedure.

This procedure adds the following servlet to XDB configuration:

```
<servlet>
     <servlet-name>name</servlet-name>
<servlet-language>language</servlet-language>
     <display-name>dispname</display-name>
     <description>descript</description>
     <servlet-class>class</servlet-class>
     <servlet-schema>schema</servlet-schema>
</servlet>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDSERVLET(
     name       IN   VARCHAR2,
    language    IN   VARCHAR2,
    dispname    IN   VARCHAR2,
    icon        IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    descript    IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    class       IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    jspfile     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    plsql       IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 181–8 ADDSERVLET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Servlet name
`language`	Must be one of "C", "Java", "PL/SQL"
`dispname`	Display name
`icon`	Icon
`descript`	Description
`class`	The `class` / `jspfile` / `plsql` function corresponding to this servlet. The first non-`NULL` argument amongst these three is chosen, and the others are treated as `NULL`.
`jspfile`	The `class` / `jspfile` / `plsql` function corresponding to this servlet. The first non-`NULL` argument amongst these three is chosen, and the others are treated as `NULL`.
`plsql`	The `class` / `jspfile` / `plsql` function corresponding to this servlet. The first non-`NULL` argument amongst these three is chosen, and the others are treated as `NULL`.
`schema`	Schema

ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure adds the following servlet mapping to XDB configuration:

```
<servlet-mapping>     <servlet-pattern>pattern</servlet-pattern>
<servlet-name>name</servlet-name></servlet-mapping>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDSERVLETMAPPING(
     pattern   IN   VARCHAR2,     name      IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–9 ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pattern	Sservlet pattern
name	Servlet name

ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure.

This procedure adds the following security role `REF` to a specified servlet in XDB configuration:

```
<security-role-ref>
     <role-name>rolename</role-name>
     <role-link>rolelink</role-link>
     <description>descript</description>
</security-role-ref>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDSERVLETSECROLE(
     servname    IN   VARCHAR2,     rolename    IN   VARCHAR2,     rolelink    IN
VARCHAR2,     descript    IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 181–10 ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`servname`	Sservlet name
`rolename`	Role name
`rolelink`	Role link
`descript`	Description

ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure.

This procedure adds the following XML extension to the XDB configuration under `<xml-extensions>`:

```
<extension>extension</extension>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ADDXMLEXTENSION(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–11 ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
extension	XML extension to be added

APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure.

This procedure takes in user-defined metadata either as a `REF` to `XMLTYPE` or an `XMLTYPE` and adds it to the desired resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA (
 abspath   IN  VARCHAR2,
 metadata  IN  XMLTYPE);

DBMS_XDB.APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA (
 abspath   IN  VARCHAR2,
 metadata  IN  REF SYS.XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 181–12 APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource
`metadata`	Metadata can be schema based or nonschema-based. Schema-based metadata is stored in its own table.

Usage Notes

- In the case in which a `REF` is passed in, the procedure stores the `REF` in the resource, and the metadata is stored in a separate table. In this case you are responsible for populating the `RESID` column for the metadata table. Note that the`REF` passed in must be unique. In other words, there must not be a`REF` with the same value in the resource metadata, as this would violate uniqueness of properties. An error is thrown if users attempt to add a `REF` that already exists.
- In the case where the XMLTYPE is passed in, the data is parsed to determine if it is schema-based or not and stored accordingly.

CFG_GET Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the CFG_GET Function.

This function retrieves the session's configuration information as an `XMLType` instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CFG_GET
 RETURN SYS.XMLType;
```

CFG_REFRESH Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the CFG_REFRESH Procedure.

This procedure refreshes the session's configuration information to the latest configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CFG_REFRESH;
```

CFG_UPDATE Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the CFG_UPDATE Procedure.

This procedure updates the configuration information and commits the change.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CFG_UPDATE(
   xdbconfig   IN  SYS.XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 181–13 CFG_UPDATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xdbconfig	The new configuration data

CHANGEOWNER Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the CHANGEOWNER Procedure.

This procedure changes the owner of the resource/s to the specified owner.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CHANGEOWNER(
     abspath    IN   VARCHAR2,
     owner      IN   VARCHAR2,
     recurse    IN   BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 181–14 CHANGEOWNER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource
`owner`	New owner for the resource
`recurse`	If `TRUE`, recursively change owner of all resources in the folder tree

CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function.

This function adds a specified ACE to a specified resource's ACL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CHANGEPRIVILEGES(
   res_path   IN    VARCHAR2,
   ace        IN    xmltype)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 181–15 CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res_path	Path name of the resource for which privileges need to be changed
ace	An XMLType instance of the <ace> element which specifies the <principal>, the operation <grant> and the list of privileges

Return Values

A positive integer if the ACL was successfully modified.

Usage Notes

If no ACE with the same principal and the same operation (grant/deny) already exists in the ACL, the new ACE is added at the end of the ACL.

CHECKPRIVILEGES Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the CHECKPRIVILEGES Function.

This function checks access privileges granted to the current user on the specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CHECKPRIVILEGES(
   res_path   IN  VARCHAR2,
   privs      IN  xmltype)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 181–16 CHECKPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res_path`	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for resource
`privs`	An `XMLType` instance of the privilege element specifying the requested set of access privileges

Return Values

A positive integer if all requested privileges granted.

CREATEFOLDER Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the CREATEFOLDER Function.

This function creates a new folder resource in the hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATEFOLDER(
   path   IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–17 CREATEFOLDER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path name for the new folder

Return Values

`TRUE` if operation successful; `FALSE`, otherwise.

Usage Notes

The given path name's parent folder must already exist in the hierarchy: if `'/folder1/folder2'` is passed as the path parameter, then `'/folder1'` must already exist.

CREATEOIDPATH Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the CREATEOIDPATH Function.

This function creates a virtual path to the resource based on object ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATEOIDPATH(
   oid    IN   RAW)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 181–18 CREATEOIDPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
oid	Object ID of the resource

CREATERESOURCE Functions

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the CREATERESOURCE Functions.

The functions create a new resource. The description of the overload options precede each version of the syntax

Syntax

Given a REF to an existing XMLType row, creates a resource whose contents point to that row. That row should not already exist inside another resource:

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATERESOURCE(
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     datarow        IN  REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
     createfolders  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a resource with a specified BLOB as its contents, and specifies character set of the source BLOB:

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATERESOURCE(
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  BLOB,
     csid           IN  NUMBER :=0,
     createfolders  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a resource with a specified BFILE as its contents, and specifies character set of the source BFILE:

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATERESOURCE (
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  BFILE,
     csid           IN  NUMBER :=0,
     createfolders  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a resource with a specified CLOB as its contents:

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATERESOURCE (
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  CLOB,
     createfolders  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Given a string, inserts a new resource into the hierarchy with the string as the contents:

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATERESOURCE (
   abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   data           IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemaurl      IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   elem           IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Given an XMLTYPE and a schema URL, inserts a new resource into the hierarchy with the XMLTYPE as the contents:

```
DBMS_XDB.CREATERESOURCE (
   abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   data           IN  SYS.XMLTYPE,
   schemaurl      IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   elem           IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–19 CREATERESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource to create. The path name's parent folder must already exist in the hierarchy. In other words, if /foo/bar.txt is passed in, then folder /foo must already exist.
data	String buffer containing new resource's contents. The data is parsed to check if it contains a schema-based XML document, and the contents are stored as schema-based in the schema's default table. Otherwise, it is saved as binary data.
datarow	REF to an XMLType row to be used as the contents
csid	Character set id of the document. Must be a valid Oracle ID; otherwise returns an error. If CSID is not specified, or if a zero CSID is specified, then the character set id of the document is determined as follows: ▪ From the abspath extension, determine the resource's MIME type. ▪ If the MIME type is */xml, then the encoding is detected based on Appendix F of the W3C XML 1.0 Reference at http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/REC-xml-20001006; ▪ Otherwise, it is defaulted to the database character set.
createfolders	If TRUE, create the parent folders if they do not exist
schemaurl	For XML data, schema URL data conforms to (default NULL)
elem	Element name (default NULL)

Return Values

TRUE if operation successful; FALSE, otherwise.

DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure deletes from `xdb$config` all mappings of the URL pattern to an expiration date.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING(
     pattern  IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–20 DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`pattern`	URL pattern (only * accepted as wildcards)

DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the CFG_GET Function.

This procedure deletes the mime mapping for a specified extension from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETEMIMEMAPPING(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–21 DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`extension`	Extension for which a mime type is to be deleted

DELETERESOURCE Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the DELETERESOURCE Procedure.

This procedure deletes a resource from the hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETERESOURCE(
   path          IN      VARCHAR2,
   delete_option IN      PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 181–22 DELETERESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Path name of the resource to delete
delete_option	The option that controls how a a resource is deleted; defined in Table 181–2 on page 181-8: ■ DELETE_RESOURCE ■ DELETE_RECURSIVE ■ DELETE_FORCE ■ DELETE_RECURSIVE_FORCE

DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures.

This procedure takes in a resource by absolute path and removes either the schema-based metadata identified by the REF, or the metadata identified by the namespace and name combination, which can be either schema-based or non-schema based. It also takes an additional (optional) parameter that specifies how to delete it. This parameter is only relevant for schema-based resource metadata that needs to be deleted. For non-schema based metadata, this parameter is ignored.

Syntax

Can be used only for schema-based metadata:

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETERESOURCEMETADATA (
   abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   metadata       IN  REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
   delete_option  IN  pls_integer := dbms_xdb.DELETE_RESOURCE_METADATA_CASCADE);
```

Can be used for schema-based or nonschema-based metadata:

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETERESOURCEMETADATA (
   abspath        IN VARCHAR2,
   metadatans     IN VARCHAR2,
   metadataname   IN VARCHAR2,
   delete_option  IN pls_integer := dbms_xdb.DELETE_RESOURCE_METADATA_CASCADE);
```

Parameters

Table 181–23 DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource
`metadata`	`REF` to the piece of metadata (schema based) to be deleted
`mettadatans`	Namespace of the metadata fragment to be removed
`mettadataname`	Local name of the metadata fragment to be removed
`delete_option`	Only applicable for schema-based metadata, this can be one of the following: ▪ `DELETE_RES_METADATA_CASCADE` - deletes the corresponding row in the metadata table ▪ `DELETE_RES_METADATA_NOCASCADE` - does not delete the row in the metadata table

DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure deletes the schema location mapping for a specified schema URL from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING(
     schemaURL    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–24 DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schemaURL	Schema URL

DELETESERVLET Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the DELETESERVLET Procedure.

This procedure deletes a servlet from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETESERVLET(
     name         IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–25 DELETESERVLET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Servlet name

DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure.

This procedure deletes the servlet mapping for a specified servlet name from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETESERVLETMAPPING(
     name       IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–26 DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Servlet name

DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure.

This procedure deletes the specified role from a servlet in the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETESERVLETSECROLE(
     servname    IN   VARCHAR2,     rolename    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–27 DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
servname	Servlet name
rolename	Name of the role to be deleted

DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure.

This procedure deletes the specified XML extension from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.DELETEXMLEXTENSION(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–28 DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
extension	XML extension to be deleted

ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure.

This procedure enabling digest authentication. It will list digest as the first authentication mechanism to be used by the XML DB HTTP server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION;
```

EXISTSRESOURCE Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the EXISTSRESOURCE Function.

This function indicates if a resource is in the hierarchy. Matches resource by a string that represents its absolute path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.EXISTSRESOURCE(
   abspath    IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–29 EXISTSRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Path name of the resource whose ACL document is required

Return Values

TRUE if the resource is found.

GETACLDOCUMENT Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETACLDOCUMENT Function.

This function retrieves ACL document that protects resource given its path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETACLDOCUMENT(
   abspath  IN  VARCHAR2)
  RETURN sys.xmltype;
```

Parameters

Table 181–30 GETACLDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Path name of the resource whose ACL document is required

Return Values

The `XMLType` for ACL document.

GETCONTENTBLOB Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETCONTENTBLOB Function.

This function retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a BLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETCONTENTBLOB(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
     csid       OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
     locksrc    IN     BOOLEAN := FALSE)
  RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 181–31 GETCONTENTBLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource
csid	If TRUE, lock and return the source LOB. If FALSE, return a temp LOB copy.
locksrc	Contents of the resource as a BLOB

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a BLOB.

GETCONTENTCLOB Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETCONTENTCLOB Function.

This function gets the contents of a resource returned as a `CLOB`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETCONTENTCLOB(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 181–32 GETCONTENTCLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a CLOB.

GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function.

This function gets the contents of a resource returned as a string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETCONTENTVARCHAR2(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 181–33 GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a string.

GETCONTENTXMLREF Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETCONTENTXMLREF Function.

This function retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a a `REF` to an `XMLTYPE`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETCONTENTXMLREF(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 181–34 GETCONTENTXMLREF Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a `REF` to an `XMLTYPE`.

GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function.

This function retrieves the contents of a resource returned as an `XMLTYPE`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETCONTENTXMLTYPE(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 181–35 GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as an XMLTYPE.

GETFTPPORT Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the GETFTPPORT Function.

This procedure gets the value of the current FTP port.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETFTPPORT
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

GETHTTPPORT Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the GETHTTPPORT Function.

This procedure gets the value of the current HTTP port.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETHTTPPORT
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

GETHTTPREQUESTHEADER Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*.

This function, if called during an HTTP request serviced by XDB, returns the values of the passed header. It is used by routines that implement custom authentication.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETHTTPREQUESTHEADER(
    header_name    IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 181–36 GETHTTPREQUESTHEADER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`header_name`	Passed header

Return Values

Returns `NULL` in case the header is not present in the request, or for `AUTHENTICATION`, for security reasons.

GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure.

This procedure retrieves the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server. The parameters of both HTTP and HTTP2 end points can be retrieved by invoking this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETLISTENERENDPOINT (
   endpoint  IN   NUMBER,
   host      OUT  VARCHAR2,    port      OUT  NUMBER,
   protocol  OUT  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 181–37 GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`endpoint`	End point to be retrieved. Its value can be `XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP` or `XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP2`.
`host`	Interface on which the listener end point listens
`port`	Port on which the listener end point listens
`protocol`	Transport protocol accepted by the listener end point

GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure.

Given a path to a resource, this procedure returns that resource's lock token for the current user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETLOCKTOKEN(
   path          IN      VARCHAR2,
   locktoken     OUT     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–38 GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path name to the resource
`locktoken`	Logged-in user's lock token for the resource

Usage Notes

The user must have `READPROPERTIES` privilege on the resource.

GETPRIVILEGES Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETPRIVILEGES Function.

This function gets all privileges granted to the current user on a specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETPRIVILEGES(
   res_path    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN sys.xmltype;
```

Parameters

Table 181–39 GETPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res_path	Absolute path in the hierarchy of the resource

Return Values

An XMLType instance of <privilege> element, which contains the list of all leaf privileges granted on this resource to the current user.

GETRESOID Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETRESOID Function.

Returns the object ID of the resource from its absolute path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETRESOID(
   abspath IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 181–40 GETRESOID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

NULL if the resource is not present.

GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function.

This function returns the current tablespace of the XDB (user).

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.GETXDB_TABLESPACE
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

HASBLOBCONTENT Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the HASBLOBCONTENT Function.

This function returns TRUE if the resource has BLOB content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.HASBLOBCONTENT
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–41 HASBLOBCONTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

TRUE if the resource has BOB content.

HASCHARCONTENT Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the HASCHARCONTENT Function.

This function returns `TRUE` if the resource has character content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.HASCHARCONTENT
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–42 HASCHARCONTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath_path`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

`TRUE` if the resource has character content.

HASXMLCONTENT Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the HASXMLCONTENT Function.

This function returns `TRUE` if the resource has XML content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.HASXMLCONTENT
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–43 HASXMLCONTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath_path`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

`TRUE` if the resource has XML content.

HASXMLREFERENCE Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the HASXMLREFERENCE Function.

This function returns `TRUE` if the resource has a `REF` to XML content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.HASXMLREFERENCE
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–44 HASXMLREFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath_path`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

`TRUE` resource has a `REF` to XML content.

ISFOLDER Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the ISFOLDER Function.

This function returns `TRUE` if the resource is a folder or container.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.ISFOLDER
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–45 DBMS_XDB.ISFOLDER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath_path`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

`TRUE` if the resource is a folder or container.

LINK Procedures

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the LINK Procedures.

This procedure creates from a specified folder to a specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.LINK(
   srcpath      IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkfolder   IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkname     IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_XDB.LINK(
   srcpath      IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkfolder   IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkname     IN   VARCHAR2,
   linktype     IN   PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_HARD);
```

Parameters

Table 181–46 LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srcpath	Path name of the resource to which a link is created
linkfolder	Folder in which the new link is placed
linkname	Name of the new link
linktype	Type of link to be created: ■ DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_HARD (default) ■ DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_WEAK ■ DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_SYMBOLIC

LOCKRESOURCE Function

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the LOCKRESOURCE Function.

Given a path to a resource, this function gets a WebDAV-style lock on that resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.LOCKRESOURCE(
   path      IN  VARCHAR2,
   depthzero IN  BOOLEAN,
   shared    IN  boolean)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–47 LOCKRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path name of the resource to lock.
`depthzero`	Currently not supported
`shared`	Passing `TRUE` obtains a shared write lock

Return Values

`TRUE` if successful.

Usage Notes

The user must have `UPDATE` privileges on the resource.

PROCESSLINKS Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the PROCESSLINKS Procedure.

This procedure processes document links in the specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.PURGERESOURCEMETADATA(
 abspath  IN  VARCHAR2,
 recurse  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 181–48 PROCESSLINKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource. If the path is a folder, use the recurse flag.
recurse	Used only if abspath specifies a folder. If TRUE, process links of all resources in the folder hierarchy rooted at the specified resource. If FALSE, process links of all documents in this folder only.

PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure.

This procedure deletes all user metadata from a resource. Schema-based metadata is removed in cascade mode, rows being deleted from the corresponding metadata tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.PURGERESOURCEMETADATA(
 abspath  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–49 PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource

RENAMERESOURCE Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the RENAMERESOURCE Procedure.

This procedure renames the XDB resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.RENAMERESOURCE(
   srcpath    IN  VARCHAR2,
   destfolder IN  CARCHAR2,
   newname    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–50 RENAMERESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srcpath	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for the source resource destination folder
destfolder	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for the destination folder
newname	Name of the child in the destination folder

SETACL Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the SETACL Procedure.

This procedure sets the ACL on a specified resource to be the ACL specified by path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.SETACL(
   res_path   IN  VARCHAR2,
   acl_path   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–51 SETACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res_path	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for resource
acl_path	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for ACL

Usage Notes

The user must have <write-acl> privileges on the resource.

SETFTPPORT Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the SETFTPPORT Procedure.

This procedure sets the FTP port to a new value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.SETFTPPORT(
   new_port  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 181–52 SETFTPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_port	Value to which the FTP port is set

SETHTTPPORT Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the SETHTTPPORT Procedure.

This procedure sets the HTTP port to a new value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.SETHTTPPORT(
   new_port  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 181–53 SETHTTPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_port	Value to which the HTTP port is set

SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure.

This procedure sets the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server. Both HTTP and HTTP2 end points can be set by invoking this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.SETLISTENERENDPOINT (
   endpoint  IN  NUMBER,
   host      IN  VARCHAR2,    port      IN  NUMBER,
   protocol  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 181–54 SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
endpoint	End point to be set. Its value can be XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP or XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP2.
host	Interface on which the listener end point is to listen. Its value can be 'LOCALHOST,' NULL, or a hostname. If its value is 'LOCALHOST' the listener end point is permitted to only listen on the localhost interface. If its value is NULL or hostname, the listener end point is permitted to listen on both localhost and non-localhost interfaces.
port	Port on which the listener end point is to listen
protocol	Transport protocol that the listener end point is to accept. Its value can be XDB_PROTOCOL_TCP or XDB_PROTOCOL_TCPS

SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package - the SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure.

This procedure restricts all listener end points of the XML DB HTTP server to listen either only on the localhost interface (when `l_access` is set to `TRUE`) or to listen on both localhost and non-localhost interfaces (when `l_access` is set to `FALSE`).

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS (
   l_access    BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 181–55 SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`l_access`.	`TRUE` or `FALSE`.

SPLITPATH Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the SPLITPATH Procedure.

This procedure splits the path into a parentpath and childpath.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.SPLITPATH(
      abspath     IN  VARCHAR2,
      parentpath  OUT VARCHAR2,
     childpath    OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–56 SPLITPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path to be split
parentpath	Parentpath
childpath	Childpath

TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure.

This procedure changes the modification time of the resource to the current time.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.TOUCHRESOURCE
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 181–57 DBMS_XDB.TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

UNLOCKRESOURCE Function

> **Note:** This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the UNLOCKRESOURCE Function.

This function unlocks the resource given a lock token and a path to the resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB.UNLOCKRESOURCE(
   path     IN  VARCHAR2,
   deltoken IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 181–58 UNLOCKRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path name to the resource
`deltoken`	Lock token to be removed

Return Values

`TRUE` if operation successful.

Usage Notes

The user must have `UPDATE` privileges on the resource.

UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Release 12*c*. This functionality is replaced by a subprogram of the same name in the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package - the UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures.

This procedure updates metadata for a resource. The procedure takes in a resource identified by absolute path and the metadata in it to replace identified by its `REF`. It replaces that piece of metadata with user-defined metadata which is either in the form of a `REF` to `XMLTYPE` or an `XMLTYPE`.

Syntax

Can be used to update schema-based metadata only. The new metadata must be schema-based:

```
DBMS_XDB.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath  IN VARCHAR2,
   oldmetadata    IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
   newmetadata    IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE)
```

Can be used to update schema-based metadata only. The new metadata must be schema-based or nonschema-based:

```
DBMS_XDB.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath        IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldmetadata    IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
   newmetadata    IN   XMLTYPE);
```

Can be used for both schema-based and nonschema-based metadata:

```
DBMS_XDB.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath        IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldns          IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldname IN VARCHAR,
   newmetadata IN XMLTYPE);
```

Can be used for both schema-based or nonschema-based metadata. New metadata must be schema-based:

```
DBMS_XDB.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath       IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldns         IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldname       IN   VARCHAR,
   newmetadata   IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 181–59 UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource
`oldmetadata`	`REF` to the old of metadata
`newmetadata`	`REF` to the new, replacement metadata (can be either schema-based or nonschema-based depending on the overload)

Table 181–59 (Cont.) UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
oldns	Namespace identifying old metadata
oldname	Local name identifying old metadata

Usage Notes

In the case of REF, it stores the REF in the resource and the metadata is stored in a separate table. Uniqueness of REFs is enforced. In the case where the XMLTYPE is passed in, data is parsed to determine if it is schema-based or not and is stored accordingly.

182

DBMS_XDB_ADMIN

The DBMS_XDB_ADMIN package provides an interface to manage the Oracle XML DB repository.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for information about Oracle XML DB Repository

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDB_ADMIN

Deprecated Subprograms

> **Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only and may be terminated in future releases.

The following subprograms are deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*:

- CREATEREPOSITORYXMLINDEX Procedure
- DROPREPOSITORYXMLINDEX Procedure
- XMLINDEXADDPATH Procedure
- XMLINDEXREMOVEPATH Procedure

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB_ADMIN package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to SYS or XDB or DBA. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XDB_ADMIN Subprograms

This table lists the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 182–1 DBMS_XDB_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATENONCEKEY Procedure on page 182-6	Generates a nonce value for use in digest authentication
CREATEREPOSITORYXMLINDEX Procedure on page 182-7	[Deprecated] Creates an XMLIndex on the XML DB repository
DROPREPOSITORYXMLINDEX Procedure on page 182-8	[Deprecated] Drops the XMLIndex on the XML DB repository
INSTALLDEFAULTWALLET Procedure on page 182-9	Installs the default XDB wallet in the default XDB wallet directory
MOVEXDB_TABLESPACE Procedure on page 182-10	Moves the XDB (user) to the specified tablespace
REBUILDHIERARCHICALINDEX Procedure on page 182-11	Rebuilds the hierarchical index after import or export operations
XMLINDEXADDPATH Procedure on page 182-12	[Deprecated] Takes a path in XML DB repository as an input and index all the resources under this given path
XMLINDEXREMOVEPATH Procedure on page 182-13	[Deprecated] Removes the index for the given path

CREATENONCEKEY Procedure

This procedure generates a nonce value for use in digest authentication.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.CREATENONCEKEY;
```

CREATEREPOSITORYXMLINDEX Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure creates an XMLIndex on the XML DB repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.CREATEREPOSITORYXMLINDEX;
```

DROPREPOSITORYXMLINDEX Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated in Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure drops the XMLIndex on the XML DB repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.DROPREPOSITORYXMLINDEX;
```

INSTALLDEFAULTWALLET Procedure

This procedure installs the default XDB wallet in the default XDB wallet directory. The directory name where the XDB wallet is stored is prefixed either by `ORACLE_BASE` when it is defined, or `ORACLE_HOME`. It is then followed by `/admin/`*`db_name`*`/xdb_wallet` where *db_name* is the unique database name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.INSTALLDEFAULTWALLET;
```

Usage Notes

Only `SYS` can install or replace the default wallet.

MOVEXDB_TABLESPACE Procedure

This procedure moves the XDB (user) to the specified tablespace.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.MOVEXDB_TABLESPACE(
   new_tablespace   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 182–2 MOVEXDB_TABLESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_tablespace	Name of the tablespace to where the XDB is moved

Usage Notes

- This operation waits for all concurrent XDB sessions to exit.
- If MOVEXDB_TABLESPACE fails, the user should restart the database before issuing any further command.Failure to do so will result into unexpected behavior from the database.
- The XDB repository by default resides in the SYSAUX tablespace. Using this procedure it can be moved to another tablespace. As a best practice we recommend to create a dedicated tablespace for the XDB repository only and not share it with other objects (such as tables). The tablespace containing the XDB repository should never be set to READ ONLY because this might affect various XML operations being executed.

REBUILDHIERARCHICALINDEX Procedure

This procedure rebuilds the hierarchical index after import or export operations. This is necessary because data cannot be exported from index tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.REBUILDHIERARCHICALINDEX;
```

XMLINDEXADDPATH Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure adds to the repository xmlindex the resource identified by path (when `recurse` is `FALSE`) or adds to the repository xmlindex the sub-tree of resources rooted at path (when `recurse` is `TRUE`). The default value for `recurse` is `TRUE`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.XMLINDEXADDPATH(
   path         IN  VARCHAR2,
   recurse      IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 182–3 XMLINDEXADDPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path to a resource
`recurse`	`TRUE` or `FALSE`

XMLINDEXREMOVEPATH Procedure

Note: This procedure is deprecated with Oracle Database 11*g*.

This procedure removes from the repository xmlindex the resource identified by path (when `recurse` is `FALSE`) or removes from the repository xmlindex the sub-tree of resources rooted at path (when `recurse` is `TRUE`). The default value for `recurse` is `TRUE`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_ADMIN.XMLINDEXREMOVEPATH(
   path              IN  VARCHAR2,
   isrecursive       IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 182–4 XMLINDEXREMOVEPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path to a resource
`recurse`	`TRUE` or `FALSE`

183

DBMS_XDB_CONFIG

The DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package provides an interface for configuring Oracle XML DB and its repository.

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using DBMS_XDB_CONFIG
  - Overview
  - Security Model
  - Constants
- Summary of DBMS_XDB_CONFIG Subprograms

Using DBMS_XDB_CONFIG

Overview

PL/SQL package `DBMS_XDB_CONFIG` is the Oracle XML DB resource application program interface (API) for PL/SQL for DBAs to configure their system. This API provides functions and procedures to access and manage Oracle XML DB Repository resources using PL/SQL. It includes methods for managing resource security and Oracle XML DB configuration.

Oracle XML DB Repository is modeled on XML, and provides a database file system for any data. The repository maps path names (or URLs) onto database objects of XMLType and provides management facilities for these objects.

PL/SQL package DBMS_XDB_CONFIG is an API that you can use to manage all of the following:

- Oracle XML DB resources
- Oracle XML DB security based on access control lists (ACLs). An ACL is a list of access control entries (ACEs) that determines which principals (users and roles) have access to which resources.
- Oracle XML DB configuration

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_XDB_CONFIG package uses the constants shown in Table 183–1, " DBMS_XDB_CONFIG Constants".

Table 183–1 DBMS_XDB_CONFIG Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP	NUMBER	1	Defining listener for first HTTP port
XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP2	NUMBER	2	Defining listener for second HTTP port
XDB_PROTOCOL_TCP	NUMBER	1	Defining listener for HTTP protocol
XDB_PROTOCOL_TCPS	NUMBER	2	Defining listener for HTTPS protocol

Summary of DBMS_XDB_CONFIG Subprograms

Table 183–2 DBMS_XDB_CONFIG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 183-8	Adds to `XDB$CONFIG` a mapping of the URL pattern to an expiration date. This will control the Expire headers for URLs matching the pattern.
ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 183-9	Adds a mime mapping to XDB configuration
ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 183-10	Adds a schema location mapping to the XDB configuration
ADDSERVLET Procedure on page 183-11	Adds a servlet to XDB configuration
ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 183-12	Adds a servlet mapping to XDB configuration
ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 183-13	Adds a security role `REF` to a specified servlet in XDB configuration
ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 183-14	Adds adds the following XML extension to the XDB configuration under `<xml-extensions>`: <extension>extension</extension>
CFG_GET Function on page 183-15	Retrieves the session's configuration information as an `XMLType` instance
CFG_REFRESH Procedure on page 183-16	Refreshes the session's configuration information to the latest configuration
CFG_UPDATE Procedure on page 183-17	Updates the configuration information and commits the change.
DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure on page 183-18	Deletes from `XDB$CONFIG` all mappings of the URL pattern to an expiration date
DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure on page 183-19	Deletes the mime mapping for a specified extension from the XDB configuration
DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure on page 183-20	Deletes the schema location mapping for a specified schema URL from the XDB configuration
DELETESERVLET Procedure on page 183-21	Deletes a servlet from the XDB configuration
DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure on page 183-22	Deletes the servlet mapping for a specified servlet name from the XDB configuration
DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure on page 183-23	Deletes the specified role from a servlet in the XDB configuration
DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure on page 183-24	Deletes the specified XML extension from the XDB configuration
ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 183-25	Enables enables digest authentication
GETFTPPORT Function on page 183-26	Gets the value of the current FTP port
GETHTTPPORT Function on page 183-27	Gets the value of the current HTTP port

Table 183–2 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB_CONFIG Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETHTTPCONFIGREALM Function on page 183-28	Gets the realm name
GETHTTPSPORT Function on page 183-29	Gets the value of the current HTTPS port
GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 183-30	Gets the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server
SETFTPPORT Procedure on page 183-31	Sets the FTP port to a new value
SETHTTPPORT Procedure on page 183-32	Sets the HTTP port to a new value
SETHTTPCONFIGREALM Procedure on page 183-33	Sets the realm to a new value
SETHTTPSPORT Procedure on page 183-34	Sets the HTTPS port to a new value
SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure on page 183-35	Sets the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server
SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure on page 183-36	Restricts all listener end points of the XML DB HTTP server to listen either only on the localhost interface (when `l_access` is set to `TRUE`) or to listen on both localhost and non-localhost interfaces (when `l_access` is set to `FALSE`)
USEDPORT Procedure on page 183-37	Obtains the port numbers used by other pluggable databases in the same consolidation database

ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure

This procedure adds to XDB$CONFIG a mapping of the URL pattern to an expiration date. This will control the Expire headers for URLs matching the pattern.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING (
     pattern    IN    VARCHAR2,
     expire     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–3 ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pattern	URL pattern (only * accepted as wildcards)
expire	Expiration directive, follows the ExpireDefault in Apache's mod_expires: base [plus] (num type)* -- base: now | modification -- type: year|years|month|months|week|weeks|day|days| minute|minutess|second|seconds

Examples

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING ('/public/test1/*', 'now plus 4 weeks');
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.ADDHTTPEXPIREMAPPING (
             '/public/test2/*', 'modification plus 1 day 30 seconds');
```

ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure

This procedure adds the following mime mapping to XDB configuration:

```
<mime-mapping>
<extension>extension</extension>
<mime-type>mimetype</mime-type>
</mime-mapping>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ADDMIMEMAPPING(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2,
     mimetype     IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–4 ADDMIMEMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`extension`	Extension for which a mime type is being added
`mimetype`	Mime type

ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure

This procedure adds the following schema location mapping to the XDB configuration:

```
<schemaLocation-mapping>
     <namespace>namespace</namespace>
     <element>element</element>
      <schemaURL>schemaURL</schemaURL>
</schemaLocation-mapping>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING(
     namespace    IN   VARCHAR2,
     element      IN   VARCHAR2,
     schemaURL    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–5 ADDSCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`namespace`	Namespace
`element`	Element
`schemaURL`	Schema URL

ADDSERVLET Procedure

This procedure adds the following servlet to XDB configuration:

```
<servlet>
     <servlet-name>name</servlet-name>
<servlet-language>language</servlet-language>
     <display-name>dispname</display-name>
     <description>descript</description>
     <servlet-class>class</servlet-class>
     <servlet-schema>schema</servlet-schema>
</servlet>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ADDSERVLET(
     name       IN   VARCHAR2,
    language    IN   VARCHAR2,
    dispname    IN   VARCHAR2,
    icon        IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    descript    IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    class       IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    jspfile     IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    plsql       IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 183–6 ADDSERVLET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Servlet name
`language`	Must be one of "C", "Java", "PL/SQL"
`dispname`	Display name
`icon`	Icon
`descript`	Description
`class`	The `class` / `jspfile` / `plsql` function corresponding to this servlet. The first non-`NULL` argument amongst these three is chosen, and the others are treated as `NULL`.
`jspfile`	The `class` / `jspfile` / `plsql` function corresponding to this servlet. The first non-`NULL` argument amongst these three is chosen, and the others are treated as `NULL`.
`plsql`	The `class` / `jspfile` / `plsql` function corresponding to this servlet. The first non-`NULL` argument amongst these three is chosen, and the others are treated as `NULL`.
`schema`	Schema

ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure

This procedure adds the following servlet mapping to XDB configuration:

```
<servlet-mapping>     <servlet-pattern>pattern</servlet-pattern>
<servlet-name>name</servlet-name></servlet-mapping>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ADDSERVLETMAPPING(
     pattern   IN   VARCHAR2,     name      IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–7 ADDSERVLETMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pattern	Sservlet pattern
name	Servlet name

ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure

This procedure adds the following security role `REF` to a specified servlet in XDB configuration:

```
<security-role-ref>
     <role-name>rolename</role-name>
     <role-link>rolelink</role-link>
     <description>descript</description>
</security-role-ref>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ADDSERVLETSECROLE(
     servname    IN   VARCHAR2,     rolename    IN   VARCHAR2,     rolelink    IN
VARCHAR2,     descript    IN   VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 183–8 ADDSERVLETSECROLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`servname`	Sservlet name
`rolename`	Role name
`rolelink`	Role link
`descript`	Description

ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure

This procedure adds the following XML extension to the XDB configuration under `<xml-extensions>`:

```
<extension>extension</extension>
```

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ADDXMLEXTENSION(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–9 ADDXMLEXTENSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`extension`	XML extension to be added

CFG_GET Function

This function retrieves the session's configuration information as an `XMLType` instance.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.CFG_GET
 RETURN SYS.XMLType;
```

CFG_REFRESH Procedure

This procedure refreshes the session's configuration information to the latest configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.CFG_REFRESH;
```

CFG_UPDATE Procedure

This procedure updates the configuration information and commits the change.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.CFG_UPDATE(
   xdbconfig   IN  SYS.XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 183–10 CFG_UPDATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xdbconfig	The new configuration data

DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure

This procedure deletes from XDB$CONFIG all mappings of the URL pattern to an expiration date.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING(
     pattern  IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–11 DELETEHTTPEXPIREMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pattern	URL pattern (only * accepted as wildcards)

DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure

This procedure deletes the mime mapping for a specified extension from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.DELETEMIMEMAPPING(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–12 DELETEMIMEMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
extension	Extension for which a mime type is to be deleted

DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure

This procedure deletes the schema location mapping for a specified schema URL from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING(
     schemaURL     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–13 DELETESCHEMALOCMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schemaURL	Schema URL

DELETESERVLET Procedure

This procedure deletes a servlet from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.DELETESERVLET(
     name         IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–14 DELETESERVLET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Servlet name

DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure

This procedure deletes the servlet mapping for a specified servlet name from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.DELETESERVLETMAPPING(
     name       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–15 DELETESERVLETMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Servlet name

DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified role from a servlet in the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.DELETESERVLETSECROLE(
     servname    IN   VARCHAR2,     rolename    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–16 DELETESERVLETSECROLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
servname	Servlet name
rolename	Name of the role to be deleted

DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure

This procedure deletes the specified XML extension from the XDB configuration.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.DELETEXMLEXTENSION(
     extension    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–17 DELETEXMLEXTENSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
extension	XML extension to be deleted

ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION Procedure

This procedure enables digest authentication. It will list digest as the first authentication mechanism to be used by the XML DB HTTP server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.ENABLEDIGESTAUTHENTICATION;
```

GETFTPPORT Function

This procedure gets the value of the current FTP port.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.GETFTPPORT
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

GETHTTPPORT Function

This function gets the value of the current HTTP port.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.GETHTTPPORT
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

GETHTTPCONFIGREALM Function

This function gets the realm name. Definition of a realm is referenced in IETF's RFC2617.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.GETHTTPCONFIGREALM
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GETHTTPSPORT Function

This procedure gets the value of the current HTTPS port.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.GETHTTPPORT
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Usage Notes

Returns `NULL` if no port has been configured

GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure

This procedure retrieves the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server. The parameters of both HTTP and HTTP2 end points can be retrieved by invoking this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.GETLISTENERENDPOINT (
   endpoint  IN   NUMBER,
   host      OUT  VARCHAR2,    port      OUT  NUMBER,
   protocol  OUT  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 183–18 GETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
endpoint	End point to be retrieved. Its value can be XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP or XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP2.
host	Interface on which the listener end point listens
port	Port on which the listener end point listens
protocol	Transport protocol accepted by the listener end point

SETFTPPORT Procedure

This procedure sets the FTP port to a new value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETFTPPORT(
   new_port  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 183–19 SETFTPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_port	Value to which the FTP port is set

SETHTTPPORT Procedure

This procedure sets the HTTP port to a new value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETHTTPPORT(
   new_port  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 183–20 SETHTTPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_port	Value to which the HTTP port is set

SETHTTPCONFIGREALM Procedure

This procedure modifies the realm value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETHTTPCONFIGREALM(
   realm IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 183–21 SETHTTPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
realm	Realm as defined in IETF's RFC2617

SETHTTPSPORT Procedure

This procedure sets the HTTP port to a new value.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETHTTPSPORT(
   new_port  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 183–22 SETHTTPSPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
new_port	Value to which the HTTPS port is set

SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure

This procedure sets the parameters of a listener end point corresponding to the XML DB HTTP server. Both HTTP and HTTP2 end points can be set by invoking this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETLISTENERENDPOINT (
   endpoint  IN  NUMBER,
   host      IN  VARCHAR2,    port      IN  NUMBER,
   protocol  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 183–23 SETLISTENERENDPOINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
endpoint	End point to be set. Its value can be XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP or XDB_ENDPOINT_HTTP2.
host	Interface on which the listener end point is to listen. Its value can be 'LOCALHOST,' NULL, or a hostname. If its value is 'LOCALHOST' the listener end point is permitted to only listen on the localhost interface. If its value is NULL or hostname, the listener end point is permitted to listen on both localhost and non-localhost interfaces.
port	Port on which the listener end point is to listen
protocol	Transport protocol that the listener end point is to accept. Its value can be XDB_PROTOCOL_TCP or XDB_PROTOCOL_TCPS

SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure

This procedure restricts all listener end points of the XML DB HTTP server to listen either only on the localhost interface (when `l_access` is set to `TRUE`) or to listen on both localhost and non-localhost interfaces (when `l_access` is set to `FALSE`).

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS (
   l_access   BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 183–24 SETLISTENERLOCALACCESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`l_access`.	`TRUE` or `FALSE`.

USEDPORT Procedure

This procedure obtains the port numbers used by other pluggable databases in the same consolidation database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.USEDPORT;
```

184

DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS

The DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS package provides an interface to commonly used constants. Users should use constants instead of dynamic strings to avoid typographical errors.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS Subprograms

Table 184–1 DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
ENCODING_DEFAULT Function on page 184-7	Returns `'AL32UTF8'`
ENCODING_ISOLATIN1 Function on page 184-8	Returns `'WE8ISO8859P1'`
ENCODING_UTF8 Function on page 184-9	Returns `'AL32UTF8'`
ENCODING_WIN1252 Function on page 184-10	Returns `'WE8MSWIN1252'`
NAMESPACE_ACL Function on page 184-11	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd'`
NAMESPACE_METADATA Function on page 184-12	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdbuserMetaData'`
NAMESPACE_ORACLE Function on page 184-13	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com'`
NAMESPACE_ORACLE_XDB Function on page 184-14	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`
NAMESPACE_RESOURCE Function on page 184-15	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResource.xsd'`
NAMESPACE_RESOURCE_EVENT Function on page 184-16	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/resourceEvent'`
NAMESPACE_RESOURCE_CONFIG Function on page 184-17	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/XDBResConfig.xsd'`
NAMESPACE_XDBSCHEMA Function on page 184-18	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd'`
NAMESPACE_XMLDIFF Function on page 184-19	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/xdiff.xsd'`
NAMESPACE_XMLINSTANCE Function on page 184-19	Returns `'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance'`
NAMESPACE_XMLSCHEMA Function on page 184-21	Returns `'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema'`

Table 184–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
NSPREFIX_ACL_ACL Function on page 184-22	Returns `'xmlns:acl= 'http://xmlns.oracle.com/acs.xsd'`
NSPREFIX_RESCONFIG_RC Function on page 184-23	Returns `'xmlns:rc="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResConfig.xsd"'`
NSPREFIX_RESOURCE_R Function on page 184-24	Returns `'xmlns:r="http://xmlns.oracle.com/XDBResource.xsd"'`
NSPREFIX_XDB_XDB Function on page 184-25	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`
NSPREFIX_XMLINSTANCE_XSI Function on page 184-26	Returns `'xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"'`
NSPREFIX_XMLDIFF_XD Function on page 184-27	Returns `'xmlns:xd="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/xdiff.xsd"'`
NSPREFIX_XMLSCHEMA_XSD Function on page 184-28	Returns `'xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"'`
SCHEMAURL_ACL Function on page 184-29	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd'`
SCHEMAELEM_RES_ACL Function on page 184-30	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd#acl'`
SCHEMAELEM_RESCONTENT_BINARY Function on page 184-31	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd#binary'`
SCHEMAELEM_RESCONTENT_TEXT Function on page 184-32	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd#text'`
SCHEMAURL_RESOURCE Function on page 184-33	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResource.xsd'`
SCHEMAURL_XDBSCHEMA Function on page 184-34	Returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd'`
XDBSCHEMA_PREFIXES Function on page 184-35	Returns `'xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xdb="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`
XSD_ATTRIBUTE Function on page 184-36	Returns `'attribute'`
XSD_COMPLEX_TYPE Function on page 184-37	Returns `'complexType'`

Table 184–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS Package Subprograms

Subprograms	Description
XSD_ELEMENT Function on page 184-38	Returns `'element'`
XSD_GROUP Function on page 184-39	Returns `'group'`

ENCODING_DEFAULT Function

This function returns `'AL32UTF8'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.ENCODING_DEFAULT
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'AL32UTF8'`

ENCODING_ISOLATIN1 Function

This function returns `'WE8ISO8859P1'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.ENCODING_ISOLATIN1
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'WE8ISO8859P1'`

ENCODING_UTF8 Function

This function returns `'AL32UTF8'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.ENCODING_UTF8
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'AL32UTF8'`

ENCODING_WIN1252 Function

This function returns `'WE8MSWIN1252'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.ENCODING_WIN1252
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'WE8MSWIN1252'`

NAMESPACE_ACL Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_ACL
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd'`

NAMESPACE_METADATA Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdbuserMetaData'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_METADATA
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdbuserMetaData'`

NAMESPACE_ORACLE Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_ORACLE
  RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com'`

NAMESPACE_ORACLE_XDB Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_ORACLE_XDB
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`

NAMESPACE_RESOURCE Function

This function returns `'/XDBResource.xsd'`

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_RESOURCE
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResource.xsd`

NAMESPACE_RESOURCE_EVENT Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/resourceEvent'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_RESOURCE_EVENT
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/resourceEvent'`

NAMESPACE_RESOURCE_CONFIG Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/XDBResConfig.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_RESOURCE_CONFIG
  RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/XDBResConfig.xsd'`

NAMESPACE_XDBSCHEMA Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_XDBSCHEMA
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd'`

NAMESPACE_XMLDIFF Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/xdiff.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_XMLDIFF
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/xdiff.xsd'`

NAMESPACE_XMLINSTANCE Function

This function returns `'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NAMESPACE_XMLINSTANCE
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance'`

NAMESPACE_XMLSCHEMA Function

This function returns `'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS. NAMESPACE_XMLSCHEMA
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema'`

NSPREFIX_ACL_ACL Function

This function returns `'xmlns:acl= 'http://xmlns.oracle.com/acs.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_ACL_ACL
  RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'xmlns:acl= 'http://xmlns.oracle.com/acs.xsd'`

NSPREFIX_RESCONFIG_RC Function

This function returns
''xmlns:rc="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResConfig.xsd"'.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_RESCONFIG_RC
  RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

Returns ''xmlns:rc="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResConfig.xsd"'

NSPREFIX_RESOURCE_R Function

This function returns `'xmlns:r="http://xmlns.oracle.com/XDBResource.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_RESOURCE_R
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'xmlns:r="http://xmlns.oracle.com/XDBResource.xsd'`

NSPREFIX_XDB_XDB Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_XDB_XDB
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`

NSPREFIX_XMLINSTANCE_XSI Function

This function returns `'xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_XMLINSTANCE_XSI
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"'`

NSPREFIX_XMLDIFF_XD Function

This function returns `'xmlns:xd="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/xdiff.xsd"'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_XMLDIFF_XD
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'xmlns:xd="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/xdiff.xsd"'`

NSPREFIX_XMLSCHEMA_XSD Function

This function returns `'xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.NSPREFIX_XMLSCHEMA_XSD
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"'`

SCHEMAURL_ACL Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.SCHEMAURL_ACL
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd'`

SCHEMAELEM_RES_ACL Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd#acl'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.SCHEMAELEM_RES_ACL
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/acl.xsd#acl'`

SCHEMAELEM_RESCONTENT_BINARY Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd#binary'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.SCHEMAELEM_RESCONTENT_BINARY
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd#binary'`

SCHEMAELEM_RESCONTENT_TEXT Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd#text'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.SCHEMAELEM_RESCONTENT_TEXT
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd#text'`

SCHEMAURL_RESOURCE Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResource.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.SCHEMAURL_RESOURCE
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBResource.xsd'`

SCHEMAURL_XDBSCHEMA Function

This function returns `'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.SCHEMAURL_XDBSCHEMA
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/XDBSchema.xsd'`

XDBSCHEMA_PREFIXES Function

This function returns `'xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xdb="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.XDBSCHEMA_PREFIXES
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

```
'xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns:xdb="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb'
```

XSD_ATTRIBUTE Function

This function returns `'attribute'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.XSD_ATTRIBUTE
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'attribute'`

XSD_COMPLEX_TYPE Function

This function returns `'complexType'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.XSD_COMPLEX_TYPE
  RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'complexType'`

XSD_ELEMENT Function

This function returns `'element'`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS. XSD_ELEMENT
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'element'`

XSD_GROUP Function

This function returns `'group'`

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_CONSTANTS.XSD_GROUP
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Return Value

`'group'`

185

DBMS_XDB_REPOS

The DBMS_XDB_REPOS package provides an interface to operate on the Oracle XML database Repository.

> **See Also:** Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide for more information regarding:
>
> - Using and managing repository resources
> - ACL-based security management (controlling access to repository resources)
> - Managing XLink and XInclude links
> - Loading documents into the repository
> - Creating, deleting, and managing resource metadata

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDB_REPOS

Overview

The DBMS_XDB_REPOS package lets you operate on the Oracle XML DB Repository to create, modify and delete resources, including managing security based on access control lists (ACLs). The interface provides both query and DML functions. Using a combination of PL/SQL packages - DBMS_XDB_REPOS, DBMS_XDBZ, and DBMS_XDB_VERSION - you can create, delete, and rename documents and folders, move a file or folder within the folder hierarchy, set and change the access permissions on a file or folder, and initiate and manage versioning.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB_REPOS package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user. Subprograms that operate on the XDB Configuration will succeed only if the current user is SYS or XDB, or the current user has the XDBADMIN or DBA role.

Constants

The DBMS_XDB_REPOS package uses the constants shown in Table 185–1, " DBMS_XDB_REPOS Constants".

Table 185–1 DBMS_XDB_REPOS Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
DELETE_RESOURCE	NUMBER	1	Deletes a resource; fails if the resource has children.
DELETE_RECURSIVE	NUMBER	2	Deletes a resource and its children, if any.
DELETE_FORCE	NUMBER	3	Deletes the resource, even if the object it contains is invalid
DELETE_RECURSIVE_FORCE	NUMBER	4	Deletes a resource and its children, if any, even if the object it contains is invalid
DELETE_RES_METADATA_CASCADE	NUMBER	1	Deletes the row in the metadata
DELETE_RES_METADATA_NOCASCADE	NUMBER	2	Does not delete the row
DEFAULT_LOCK_TIMEOUT	PLS_INTEGER	(60*60)	Timeout value (in seconds) of the webdav lock
LINK_TYPE_HARD	NUMBER	1	Hard link of a folder to a resource
LINK_TYPE_WEAK	NUMBER	2	Weak link of a folder to a resource
LINK_TYPE_SYMBOLIC	NUMBER	3	Symbolic link of a folder to a resource

Summary of DBMS_XDB_REPOS Subprograms

Table 185–2 DBMS_XDB_REPOS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-8	Checks access privileges granted to the current user by specified ACL document on a resource whose owner is specified by the 'owner' parameter.
APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 185-9	Takes in user-defined metadata either as a `REF` to `XMLTYPE` or an `XMLTYPE` and adds it to the desired resource
CHANGEOWNER Procedure on page 185-10	Changes the owner of the resource/s to the specified owner.
CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-11	Adds a specified ACE to a specified resource's ACL
CHECKPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-12	Checks access privileges granted to the current user on the specified resource
CREATEFOLDER Function on page 185-13	Creates a new folder resource in the hierarchy
CREATEOIDPATH Function on page 185-14	Creates a virtual path to the resource based on object ID
CREATERESOURCE Functions on page 185-15	Creates a new resource
DELETERESOURCE Procedure on page 185-17	Deletes a resource from the hierarchy
DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 185-18	Deletes metadata from a resource (can be used for schema-based or nonschema-based metadata)
EXISTSRESOURCE Function on page 185-19	Determines if a resource is the hierarchy, based on its absolute path
GETACLDOCUMENT Function on page 185-20	Retrieves ACL document that protects resource given its path name
GETCONTENTBLOB Function on page 185-21	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a BLOB
GETCONTENTCLOB Function on page 185-22	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a CLOB
GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function on page 185-23	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a string
GETCONTENTXMLREF Function on page 185-24	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a a `REF` to an `XMLTYPE`
GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function on page 185-25	Retrieves the contents of a resource returned as an `XMLTYPE`
GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure on page 185-26	Returns that resource's lock token for the current user given a path to a resource
GETPRIVILEGES Function on page 185-27	Gets all privileges granted to the current user on a specified resource
GETRESOID Function on page 185-28	Returns the object ID of the resource from its absolute path
GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function on page 185-29	Returns the current tablespace of the XDB (user)

Table 185–2 (Cont.) DBMS_XDB_REPOS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
HASBLOBCONTENT Function on page 185-30	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has BLOB content
HASCHARCONTENT Function on page 185-31	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has character content
HASXMLCONTENT Function on page 185-32	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has XML content
HASXMLREFERENCE Function on page 185-33	Returns `TRUE` if the resource has `REF` to XML content
ISFOLDER Function on page 185-34	Returns `TRUE` if the resource is a folder or container
LINK Procedures on page 185-35	Creates a link to an existing resource
LOCKRESOURCE Function on page 185-36	Gets a WebDAV-style lock on that resource given a path to that resource
PROCESSLINKS Procedure on page 185-37	Processes document links in the specified resource
PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure on page 185-38	Deletes all user metadata from a resource
RENAMERESOURCE Procedure on page 185-39	Renames the XDB resource
SETACL Procedure on page 185-40	Sets the ACL on a specified resource
SPLITPATH Procedure on page 185-41	Splits the path into a parentpath and childpath
TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure on page 185-42	Changes the modification time of the resource to the current time
UNLOCKRESOURCE Function on page 185-43	Unlocks the resource given a lock token and resource path
UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures on page 185-44	Updates metadata for a resource

ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function

This function checks access privileges granted to the current user by specified ACL document by the OWNER of the resource. Returns positive integer if all privileges are granted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES(
   acl_path  IN  VARCHAR2,
   owner     IN  VARCHAR2,
   privs     IN  xmltype)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 185–3 ACLCHECKPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
acl_path	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for ACL document
owner	Resource owner name; the pseudo user "DAV:owner" is replaced by this user during ACL privilege resolution
privs	An XMLType instance of the privilege element specifying the requested set of access privileges. See description for CHECKPRIVILEGES Function.

APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure

This procedure takes in user-defined metadata either as a REF to XMLTYPE or an XMLTYPE and adds it to the desired resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA (
 abspath   IN  VARCHAR2,
 metadata  IN  XMLTYPE);

DBMS_XDB_REPOS.APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA (
 abspath   IN  VARCHAR2,
 metadata  IN  REF SYS.XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 185–4 APPENDRESOURCEMETADATA Procedure

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource
metadata	Metadata can be schema based or nonschema-based. Schema-based metadata is stored in its own table.

Usage Notes

- In the case in which a REF is passed in, the procedure stores the REF in the resource, and the metadata is stored in a separate table. In this case you are responsible for populating the RESID column for the metadata table. Note that theREF passed in must be unique. In other words, there must not be aREF with the same value in the resource metadata, as this would violate uniqueness of properties. An error is thrown if users attempt to add a REF that already exists.
- In the case where the XMLTYPE is passed in, the data is parsed to determine if it is schema-based or not and stored accordingly.

CHANGEOWNER Procedure

This procedure changes the owner of the resource/s to the specified owner.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CHANGEOWNER(
     abspath    IN   VARCHAR2,
     owner      IN   VARCHAR2,
     recurse    IN   BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 185–5 CHANGEOWNER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource
`owner`	New owner for the resource
`recurse`	If `TRUE`, recursively change owner of all resources in the folder tree

CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function

This function adds a specified ACE to a specified resource's ACL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CHANGEPRIVILEGES(
   res_path   IN    VARCHAR2,
   ace        IN    xmltype)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 185–6 CHANGEPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res_path	Path name of the resource for which privileges need to be changed
ace	An XMLType instance of the <ace> element which specifies the <principal>, the operation <grant> and the list of privileges

Return Values

A positive integer if the ACL was successfully modified.

Usage Notes

If no ACE with the same principal and the same operation (grant/deny) already exists in the ACL, the new ACE is added at the end of the ACL.

CHECKPRIVILEGES Function

This function checks access privileges granted to the current user on the specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CHECKPRIVILEGES(
   res_path   IN  VARCHAR2,
   privs      IN  xmltype)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 185–7 CHECKPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res_path`	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for resource
`privs`	An `XMLType` instance of the privilege element specifying the requested set of access privileges

Return Values

A positive integer if all requested privileges granted.

CREATEFOLDER Function

This function creates a new folder resource in the hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATEFOLDER(
   path   IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–8 CREATEFOLDER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Path name for the new folder

Return Values

TRUE if operation successful; FALSE, otherwise.

Usage Notes

The given path name's parent folder must already exist in the hierarchy: if '/folder1/folder2' is passed as the path parameter, then '/folder1' must already exist.

CREATEOIDPATH Function

This function creates a virtual path to the resource based on object ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATEOIDPATH(
   oid    IN   RAW)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 185–9 CREATEOIDPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
oid	Object ID of the resource

CREATERESOURCE Functions

The functions create a new resource. The description of the overload options precede each version of the syntax

Syntax

Creates a new resource with a specified string as its contents:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE(
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a new resource with a specified XMLType data as its contents:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE(
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  SYS.XMLTYPE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Given a REF to an existing XMLType row, creates a resource whose contents point to that row. That row should not already exist inside another resource:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE(
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     datarow        IN  REF SYS.XMLTYPE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a resource with a specified BLOB as its contents, and specifies character set of the source BLOB:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE(
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  BLOB,
     csid           IN  NUMBER :=0)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a resource with a specified BFILE as its contents, and specifies character set of the source BFILE:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE (
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  BFILE,
     csid           IN  NUMBER :=0)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Creates a resource with a specified CLOB as its contents:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE (
     abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
     data           IN  CLOB)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Given a string, inserts a new resource into the hierarchy with the string as the contents:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE (
   abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   data           IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemaurl      IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   elem           IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
```

```
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Given an XMLTYPE and a schema URL, inserts a new resource into the hierarchy with the XMLTYPE as the contents:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.CREATERESOURCE (
   abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   data           IN  SYS.XMLTYPE,
   schemaurl      IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   elem           IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–10 CREATERESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource to create. The path name's parent folder must already exist in the hierarchy. In other words, if /foo/bar.txt is passed in, then folder /foo must already exist.
data	String buffer containing new resource's contents. The data is parsed to check if it contains a schema-based XML document, and the contents are stored as schema-based in the schema's default table. Otherwise, it is saved as binary data.
datarow	REF to an XMLType row to be used as the contents
csid	Character set id of the document. Must be a valid Oracle ID; otherwise returns an error. If CSID is not specified, or if a zero CSID is specified, then the character set id of the document is determined as follows: ■ From the abspath extension, determine the resource's MIME type. ■ If the MIME type is */xml, then the encoding is detected based on Appendix F of the W3C XML 1.0 Reference at http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/REC-xml-20001006; ■ Otherwise, it is defaulted to the database character set.
schemaurl	For XML data, schema URL data conforms to (default NULL)
elem	Element name (default NULL)

Return Values

TRUE if operation successful; FALSE, otherwise.

DELETERESOURCE Procedure

This procedure deletes a resource from the hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.DELETERESOURCE(
   path          IN      VARCHAR2,
   delete_option IN      PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 185–11 DELETERESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Path name of the resource to delete
delete_option	The option that controls how a a resource is deleted: ■ DELETE_RESOURCE ■ DELETE_RECURSIVE ■ DELETE_FORCE ■ DELETE_RECURSIVE_FORCE

DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures

This procedure takes in a resource by absolute path and removes either the schema-based metadata identified by the REF, or the metadata identified by the namespace and name combination, which can be either schema-based or non-schema based. It also takes an additional (optional) parameter that specifies how to delete it. This parameter is only relevant for schema-based resource metadata that needs to be deleted. For non-schema based metadata, this parameter is ignored.

Syntax

Can be used only for schema-based metadata:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.DELETERESOURCEMETADATA (
   abspath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   metadata       IN  REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
   delete_option  IN  pls_integer := DBMS_XDB_REPOS.DELETE_RESOURCE_METADATA_
CASCADE);
```

Can be used for schema-based or nonschema-based metadata:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.DELETERESOURCEMETADATA (
   abspath        IN VARCHAR2,
   metadatans     IN VARCHAR2,
   metadataname   IN VARCHAR2,
   delete_option  IN pls_integer := DBMS_XDB_REPOS.DELETE_RESOURCE_METADATA_
CASCADE);
```

Parameters

Table 185–12 DELETERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource
`metadata`	`REF` to the piece of metadata (schema based) to be deleted
`mettadatans`	Namespace of the metadata fragment to be removed
`mettadataname`	Local name of the metadata fragment to be removed
`delete_option`	Only applicable for schema-based metadata, this can be one of the following: ■ `DELETE_RES_METADATA_CASCADE` - deletes the corresponding row in the metadata table ■ `DELETE_RES_METADATA_NOCASCADE` - does not delete the row in the metadata table

EXISTSRESOURCE Function

This function indicates if a resource is in the hierarchy. Matches resource by a string that represents its absolute path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.EXISTSRESOURCE(
   abspath    IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–13 EXISTSRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Path name of the resource whose ACL document is required

Return Values

TRUE if the resource is found.

GETACLDOCUMENT Function

This function retrieves ACL document that protects resource given its path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETACLDOCUMENT(
   abspath  IN  VARCHAR2)
  RETURN sys.xmltype;
```

Parameters

Table 185–14 GETACLDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Path name of the resource whose ACL document is required

Return Values

The XMLType for ACL document.

GETCONTENTBLOB Function

This function retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a BLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETCONTENTBLOB(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
     csid       OUT    PLS_INTEGER,
     locksrc    IN     BOOLEAN := FALSE)
  RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 185–15 GETCONTENTBLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource
csid	If TRUE, lock and return the source LOB. If FALSE, return a temp LOB copy.
locksrc	Contents of the resource as a BLOB

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a BLOB.

GETCONTENTCLOB Function

This function gets the contents of a resource returned as a `CLOB`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETCONTENTCLOB(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 185–16 GETCONTENTCLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a CLOB.

GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function

This function gets the contents of a resource returned as a string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETCONTENTVARCHAR2(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 185–17 GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a string.

GETCONTENTXMLREF Function

This function retrieves the contents of a resource returned as a a `REF` to an `XMLTYPE`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETCONTENTXMLREF(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 185–18 GETCONTENTXMLREF Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as a `REF` to an `XMLTYPE`.

GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function

This function retrieves the contents of a resource returned as an XMLTYPE.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETCONTENTXMLTYPE(
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2,
  RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 185–19 GETCONTENTXMLTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

The contents of the resource as an XMLTYPE.

GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure

Given a path to a resource, this procedure returns that resource's lock token for the current user.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETLOCKTOKEN(
   path          IN      VARCHAR2,
   locktoken     OUT     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 185–20 GETLOCKTOKEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path name to the resource
`locktoken`	Logged-in user's lock token for the resource

Usage Notes

The user must have `READPROPERTIES` privilege on the resource.

GETPRIVILEGES Function

This function gets all privileges granted to the current user on a specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETPRIVILEGES(
   res_path    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN sys.xmltype;
```

Parameters

Table 185–21 GETPRIVILEGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res_path	Absolute path in the hierarchy of the resource

Return Values

An XMLType instance of <privilege> element, which contains the list of all leaf privileges granted on this resource to the current user.

GETRESOID Function

Returns the object ID of the resource from its absolute path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETRESOID(
   abspath IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 185–22 GETRESOID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

NULL if the resource is not present.

GETXDB_TABLESPACE Function

This function returns the current tablespace of the XDB (user).

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.GETXDB_TABLESPACE
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

HASBLOBCONTENT Function

This function returns TRUE if the resource has BLOB content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.HASBLOBCONTENT
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–23 HASBLOBCONTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

TRUE if the resource has BOB content.

HASCHARCONTENT Function

This function returns TRUE if the resource has character content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.HASCHARCONTENT
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–24 HASCHARCONTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

TRUE if the resource has character content.

HASXMLCONTENT Function

This function returns TRUE if the resource has XML content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.HASXMLCONTENT
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–25 HASXMLCONTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

TRUE if the resource has XML content.

HASXMLREFERENCE Function

This function returns TRUE if the resource has a REF to XML content.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.HASXMLREFERENCE
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–26 HASXMLREFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

TRUE resource has a REF to XML content.

ISFOLDER Function

This function returns TRUE if the resource is a folder or container.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.ISFOLDER
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–27 ISFOLDER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

Return Values

TRUE if the resource is a folder or container.

LINK Procedures

This procedure creates from a specified folder to a specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.LINK(
   srcpath      IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkfolder   IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkname     IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_XDB_REPOS.LINK(
   srcpath      IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkfolder   IN   VARCHAR2,
   linkname     IN   VARCHAR2,
   linktype     IN   PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XDB_REPOS.LINK_TYPE_HARD);
```

Parameters

Table 185–28 LINK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srcpath	Path name of the resource to which a link is created
linkfolder	Folder in which the new link is placed
linkname	Name of the new link
linktype	Type of link to be created: ■ DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_HARD (default) ■ DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_WEAK ■ DBMS_XDB.LINK_TYPE_SYMBOLIC

LOCKRESOURCE Function

Given a path to a resource, this function gets a WebDAV-style lock on that resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.LOCKRESOURCE(
   path      IN  VARCHAR2,
   depthzero IN  BOOLEAN,
   shared    IN  boolean)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–29 LOCKRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path name of the resource to lock.
`depthzero`	Currently not supported
`shared`	Passing `TRUE` obtains a shared write lock

Return Values

`TRUE` if successful.

Usage Notes

The user must have `UPDATE` privileges on the resource.

PROCESSLINKS Procedure

This procedure processes document links in the specified resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.PURGERESOURCEMETADATA(
 abspath  IN  VARCHAR2,
 recurse  IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 185–30 PROCESSLINKS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`abspath`	Absolute path of the resource. If the path is a folder, use the `recurse` flag.
`recurse`	Used only if `abspath` specifies a folder. If `TRUE`, process links of all resources in the folder hierarchy rooted at the specified resource. If `FALSE`, process links of all documents in this folder only.

PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure

This procedure deletes all user metadata from a resource. Schema-based metadata is removed in cascade mode, rows being deleted from the corresponding metadata tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.PURGERESOURCEMETADATA(
 abspath  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 185–31 PURGERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource

RENAMERESOURCE Procedure

This procedure renames the XDB resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.RENAMERESOURCE(
   srcpath    IN  VARCHAR2,
   destfolder IN  CARCHAR2,
   newname    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 185–32 RENAMERESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
srcpath	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for the source resource destination folder
destfolder	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for the destination folder
newname	Name of the child in the destination folder

SETACL Procedure

This procedure sets the ACL on a specified resource to be the ACL specified by path.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.SETACL(
   res_path   IN  VARCHAR2,
   acl_path   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 185–33 SETACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res_path	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for resource
acl_path	Absolute path in the Hierarchy for ACL

Usage Notes

The user must have <write-acl> privileges on the resource.

SPLITPATH Procedure

This procedure splits the path into a parentpath and childpath.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.SPLITPATH(
      abspath     IN  VARCHAR2,
      parentpath  OUT VARCHAR2,
     childpath    OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 185–34 SPLITPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path to be split
parentpath	Parentpath
childpath	Childpath

TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure

This procedure changes the modification time of the resource to the current time.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.TOUCHRESOURCE
     abspath    IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 185–35 TOUCHRESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath_path	Absolute path of the resource

UNLOCKRESOURCE Function

This function unlocks the resource given a lock token and a path to the resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.UNLOCKRESOURCE(
   path     IN  VARCHAR2,
   deltoken IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 185–36 UNLOCKRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Path name to the resource
deltoken	Lock token to be removed

Return Values

TRUE if operation successful.

Usage Notes

The user must have UPDATE privileges on the resource.

UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedures

This procedure updates metadata for a resource. The procedure takes in a resource identified by absolute path and the metadata in it to replace identified by its REF. It replaces that piece of metadata with user-defined metadata which is either in the form of a REF to XMLTYPE or an XMLTYPE.

Syntax

Can be used to update schema-based metadata only. The new metadata must be schema-based:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath  IN VARCHAR2,
   oldmetadata    IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
   newmetadata    IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE)
```

Can be used to update schema-based metadata only. The new metadata must be schema-based or nonschema-based:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath        IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldmetadata    IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE,
   newmetadata    IN   XMLTYPE);
```

Can be used for both schema-based and nonschema-based metadata:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath        IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldns          IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldname IN VARCHAR,
   newmetadata IN XMLTYPE);
```

Can be used for both schema-based or nonschema-based metadata. New metadata must be schema-based:

```
DBMS_XDB_REPOS.UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA(
   abspath       IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldns         IN   VARCHAR2,
   oldname       IN   VARCHAR,
   newmetadata   IN   REF SYS.XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 185–37 UPDATERESOURCEMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
abspath	Absolute path of the resource
oldmetadata	REF to the old of metadata
newmetadata	REF to the new, replacement metadata (can be either schema-based or nonschema-based depending on the overload)
oldns	Namespace identifying old metadata
oldname	Local name identifying old metadata

Usage Notes

In the case of REF, it stores the REF in the resource and the metadata is stored in a separate table. Uniqueness of REFs is enforced. In the case where the XMLTYPE is passed in, data is parsed to determine if it is schema-based or not and is stored accordingly.

186

DBMS_XDB_VERSION

Oracle XML DB versioning interfaces are found in the `DBMS_XBD_VERSION` package. Functions and procedures of `DBMS_XDB_VERSION` help to create a VCR and manage the versions in the version history.

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Using DBMS_XDB_VERSION
  - Security Model
- Summary of DBMS_XDB_VERSION Subprograms

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Using DBMS_XDB_VERSION

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB_VERSION package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XDB_VERSION Subprograms

Table 186–1 DBMS_XDB_VERSION Package Subprograms

Method	Description
CHECKIN Function on page 186-5	Checks in a checked-out VCR and returns the resource id of the newly-created version
CHECKOUT Procedure on page 186-6	Checks out a VCR before updating or deleting it
GETCONTENTSBLOBBYRESID Function on page 186-7	Obtain contents as a `BLOB`
GETCONTENTSCLOBBYRESID Function on page 186-8	Obtain contents as a `CLOB`
GETCONTENTSXMLBYRESID Function on page 186-9	Obtain contents as an `XMLType`
GETPREDECESSORS Function on page 186-10	Retrieves the list of predecessors by path name
GETPREDSBYRESID Function on page 186-11	Retrieves the list of predecessors by resource id
GETRESOURCEBYRESID Function on page 186-12	Obtains the resource as an `XMLType`, given the resource object ID
GETSUCCESSORS Function on page 186-13	Retrieves the list of successors by path name
GETSUCCSBYRESID Function on page 186-14	Retrieves the list of successors by resource id
MAKEVERSIONED Function on page 186-15	Turns a regular resource whose path name is given into a version-controlled resource
UNCHECKOUT Function on page 186-16	Checks in a checked-out resource, returns the resource id of the version before the resource is checked out

CHECKIN Function

This function checks in a checked-out VCR and returns the resource id of the newly-created version.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.CHECKIN(
   pathname VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DBMS_XDB.resid_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–2 CHECKIN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pathname	The path name of the checked-out resource.

Usage Notes

This is not an auto-commit SQL operation. CHECKIN Function doesn't have to take the same path name that was passed to CHECKOUT Procedure operation. However, the CHECKIN Function path name and the CHECKOUT Procedure path name must be of the same resource for the operations to function correctly. If the resource has been renamed, the new name must be used to CHECKIN Function because the old name is either invalid or is currently bound with a different resource. Exception is raised if the path name does not exist. If the path name has been changed, the new path name must be used to CHECKIN Function the resource.

CHECKOUT Procedure

This procedure checks out a VCR before updating or deleting it.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.Checkout(
   pathname    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 186–3 CHECKOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
pathname	The path name of the VCR to be checked out.

Usage Notes

This is not an auto-commit SQL operation. Two users of the same workspace cannot CHECKOUT Procedure the same VCR at the same time. If this happens, one user must rollback. As a result, it is good practice to commit the CHECKOUT Procedure operation before updating a resource and avoid loss of the update if the transaction is rolled back. An exception is raised if the given resource is not a VCR, if the VCR is already checked out, if the resource doesn't exist.

GETCONTENTSBLOBBYRESID Function

This function obtain contents as a BLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETCONTENTSBLOBYRESID(
   resid      DBMS_XDB.resid_type)
 RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 186–4 GETCONTENTSBLOBYRESID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
resid	The resource id.

GETCONTENTSCLOBBYRESID Function

This function obtains contents as a CLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETCONTENTSCLOBYRESID(
   resid     DBMS_XDB.resid_type)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 186–5 GETCONTENTSCLOBYRESID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
resid	The resource id.

GETCONTENTSXMLBYRESID Function

This function obtains contents as an XMLType.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETCONTENTSXMLBYRESID(
   resid      DBMS_XDB.resid_type)
 RETURN XMLType;
```

Parameters

Table 186–6 GETCONTENTSXMLBYRESID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
resid	The resource id.

Return Values

If the contents are not valid XML, returns NULL.

GETPREDECESSORS Function

This function retrieves the list of predecessors by the path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETPREDECESSORS(
   pathname       VARCHAR2)
 RETURN resid_list_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–7 GETPREDECESSORS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pathname	The path name of the resource.

Return Values

An exception is raised if pathname is illegal.

GETPREDSBYRESID Function

This function retrieves the list of predecessors by resource id.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETPREDSBYRESID(
   resid      resid_type)
 RETURN resid_list_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–8 GETPREDSBYRESID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
resid	The resource id.

Usage Notes

Getting predecessors by RESID is more efficient than by pathname.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if the RESID is illegal.

GETRESOURCEBYRESID Function

This function obtains the resource as an `XMLType`, given the resource object ID. Because the system does not create a path name for versions, this function is useful for retrieving the resource using its resource id.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETRESOURCEBYRESID(
   resid      resid_type)
 RETURN XMLType;
```

Parameters

Table 186–9 GETRESOURCEBYRESID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`resid`	The resource id.

GETSUCCESSORS Function

Given a version resource or a VCR, this function retrieves the list of the successors of the resource by the path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETSUCCESSORS(
   pathname VARCHAR2)
 RETURN resid_list_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–10 GETSUCCESSORS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pathname	The path name of the resource.

Usage Notes

Getting successors by RESID is more efficient than by pathname.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if the pathname is illegal.

GETSUCCSBYRESID Function

This function retrieves the list of the successors of the resource by resource id using version resource or VCR.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.GETSUCCSBYRESID(
   resid    resid_type)
  RETURN resid_list_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–11 GETSUCCSBYRESID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
resid	The resource id.

Usage Notes

Getting successors by RESID is more efficient than by pathname.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if the pathname is illegal.

MAKEVERSIONED Function

This function turns a regular resource whose path name is given into a version-controlled resource. This new resource is then put under version control. All other path names continue to refer to the original resource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.MAKEVERSIONED(
   pathname   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DBMS_XDB.resid_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–12 MAKEVERSIONED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pathname	The path name of the resource to be put under version control.

Return Values

This function returns the resource ID of the first version, or root, of the VCR.

Usage Notes

If two or more path names are bound with the same resource, a copy of the resource is created, and the given path name is bound with the newly-created copy.

This is not an auto-commit SQL operation. An exception is raised if the resource doesn't exist.

- This call is legal for VCR, and neither exception nor warning is raised.
- This call is illegal for folder, version history, version resource, and ACL.
- No support for Schema-based resources is provided.

UNCHECKOUT Function

This function checks-in a checked-out resource and returns the resource id of the version before the resource is checked out.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDB_VERSION.UNCHECKOUT(
   pathname     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DBMS_XDB.resid_type;
```

Parameters

Table 186–13 UNCHECKOUT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pathname	The path name of the checked-out resource.

Usage Notes

This is not an auto-commit SQL operation. The UNCHECKOUT Function does not have to take the same path name that was passed to the operation by the CHECKOUT Procedure. However, the UNCHECKOUT Function path name and the CHECKOUT Procedure path name must be of the same resource for the operations to function correctly. If the resource has been renamed, the new name must be used to UNCHECKOUT Function, because the old name is either invalid or is currently bound with a different resource. If the path name has been changed, the new path name must be used to UNCHECKOUT Function the resource.

Exceptions

An exception is raised if the path name doesn't exist.

187

DBMS_XDBRESOURCE

The DBMS_XDBRESOURCE package provides the interface to operate on the resource's metadata and contents.

> **See Also:** Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide for examples of "Using DBMS_XDBRESOURCE"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDBRESOURCE

Overview

The DBMS_XDBRESOURCE package provides routines to get and set the resource's metadata and contents. To take advantage of the DOM traversal facility, provided in DBMS_XMLDOM package, an XDBResource instance could be converted to a DOMDocument type by using DBMS_XDBRESOURCE.MAKEDOCUMENT routine.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDBRESOURCE package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XDBRESOURCE Subprograms

Table 187–1 DBMS_XDBRESOURCE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FREERESOURCE Procedure on page 187-8	Frees any memory associated with an XDBResource
GETACL Function on page 187-9	Given an XDBResource, returns its ACL as string
GETACLDOCFROMRES Function on page 187-10	Returns the ACL Document for the given resource as `XMLType`
GETAUTHOR Function on page 187-11	Given an XDBResource, returns its author
GETCHARACTERSET Function on page 187-12	Given an XDBResource, returns its character set
GETCOMMENT Function on page 187-13	Given an XDBResource, returns its comment
GETCONTENTBLOB Function on page 187-14	Returns the contents of the resource as a `BLOB`
GETCONTENTCLOB Function on page 187-15	Returns the contents of the resource as a `CLOB`
GETCONTENTREF Function on page 187-16	Returns the contents of the resource as an `XMLTypeRef`
GETCONTENTTYPE Function on page 187-17	Given an XDBResource, returns its content-type
GETCONTENTXML Function on page 187-18	Returns the contents of the resource as XML
GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function on page 187-19	Returns the contents of the resource as a string
GETCREATIONDATE Function on page 187-20	Given an XDBResource, returns its creation date
GETCREATOR Function on page 187-21	Given an XDBResource, returns its creator
GETCUSTOMMETADATA Function on page 187-22	Returns the requested custom metadata given the xpath and namespace to the metadata
GETDISPLAYNAME Function on page 187-23	Given an XDBResource, returns its display name
GETLANGUAGE Function on page 187-24	Given an XDBResource, returns its language
GETLASTMODIFIER Function on page 187-25	Given an XDBResource, returns its last modifier
GETMODIFICATIONDATE Function on page 187-26	Given an XDBResource, returns its modification date
GETOWNER Function on page 187-27	Given an XDBResource, returns its owner.
GETREFCOUNT Function on page 187-28	Given an XDBResource, returns its reference count
GETVERSIONID Function on page 187-29	Given an XDBResource, returns its version ID.
HASACLCHANGED Function on page 187-30	Returns `TRUE` if the ACL of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise
HASAUTHORCHANGED Function on page 187-31	Returns `TRUE` if the ACL of the given resource has changed `FALSE` otherwise

Table 187–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XDBRESOURCE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
HASCHANGED Function on page 187-32	Returns TRUE if the element or attribute represented by the given XPath has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCHARACTERSETCHANGED Function on page 187-33	Returns TRUE if the character set of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCOMMENTCHANGED Function on page 187-34	Returns TRUE if the comment of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCONTENTCHANGED Function on page 187-35	Returns TRUE if the contents of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCONTENTTYPECHANGED Function on page 187-36	Returns TRUE if the content-type of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCREATIONDATECHANGED Function on page 187-37	Returns TRUE if the creation date of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCREATORCHANGED Function on page 187-38	Returns TRUE if the creator of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASCUSTOMMETADATACHANGED Function on page 187-39	Returns TRUE if custom-metadata for this XPath has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASDISPLAYNAMECHANGED Function on page 187-40	Returns TRUE if the display name of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASLANGUAGECHANGED Function on page 187-41	Returns TRUE if the language of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASLASTMODIFIERCHANGED Function on page 187-42	Returns TRUE if the last modifier of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASMODIFICATIONDATECHANGED Function on page 187-43	Returns TRUE if the modification date of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASOWNERCHANGED Function on page 187-44	Returns TRUE if the owner of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASREFCOUNTCHANGED Function on page 187-45	Returns TRUE if the reference count of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
HASVERSIONIDCHANGED Function on page 187-46	Returns TRUE if the version ID of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise
ISFOLDER Function on page 187-47	Returns TRUE if the given resource is a folder, FALSE otherwise
ISNULL Function on page 187-48	Returns TRUE if input resource is NULL, FALSE otherwise
MAKEDOCUMENT Function on page 187-49	Converts the XDBResource to a DOMDocument which can be operated on using the XMLDOM interface
SAVE Procedure on page 187-50	Updates the resource with any modifications
SETACL Procedure on page 187-51	Sets the ACL of the given XDBResource to the path specified
SETAUTHOR Procedure on page 187-52	Sets the author of the given XDBResource to the specified string
SETCHARACTERSET Procedure on page 187-53	Sets the character set of the given XDBResource to a specified character set
SETCOMMENT Procedure on page 187-54	Sets a comment associated with the given XDBResource

Table 187–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XDBRESOURCE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SETCONTENT Procedures on page 187-55	Replaces the contents of the given resource with the given `CLOB`
SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure on page 187-56	Sets the content-type of the given XDBResource
SETCUSTOMMETADATA Procedure on page 187-57	Sets the custom metadata specified by the XPath and namespace to new data
SETDISPLAYNAME Procedure on page 187-58	Sets the display name of the given XDBResource
SETLANGUAGE Procedure on page 187-59	Sets the language of the given XDBResource
SETOWNER Procedure on page 187-60	Sets the owner of the given XDBResource

FREERESOURCE Procedure

This procedure frees any memory associated with an XDBResource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.FREERESOURCE (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–2 FREERESOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource to free

GETACL Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its ACL as string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETACL (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–3 GETACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETACLDOCFROMRES Function

This function returns the ACL Document for the given resource as `XMLType`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETACLDOCFROMRES (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 187–4 GETACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

GETAUTHOR Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its author.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETAUTHOR (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–5 GETAUTHOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCHARACTERSET Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its characterset.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCHARACTERSET (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–6 GETCHARACTERSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCOMMENT Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its comment.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCOMMENT (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–7 GETCOMMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCONTENTBLOB Function

This function returns the contents of the resource as a BLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCONTENTBLOB (
   res    IN     XDBResource,
   csid   OUT    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 187–8 GETCONTENTBLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
csid	Character set ID of the BLOB returned

GETCONTENTCLOB Function

This function returns the contents of the resource as a CLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCONTENTCLOB (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 187–9 GETCONTENTCLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCONTENTREF Function

This function returns the contents of the resource as an `XMLTypeRef`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCONTENTREF (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–10 GETCONTENTREF Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

GETCONTENTTYPE Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its content-type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCONTENTTYPE (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–11 GETCONTENTTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCONTENTXML Function

This function returns the contents of the resource as an `XMLTypeRef`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCONTENTXML (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN XMLType;
```

Parameters

Table 187–12 GETCONTENTXML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function

This function returns the contents of the resource as a string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–13 GETCONTENTVARCHAR2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCREATIONDATE Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its creation date.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCREATIONDATE (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN TIMESTAMP;
```

Parameters

Table 187–14 GETCREATIONDATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCREATOR Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its creator.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCREATOR (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–15 GETCREATOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETCUSTOMMETADATA Function

This function returns the requested custom metadata given the xpath and namespace to the metadata.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETCUSTOMMETADATA (
   res        IN    XDBResource,
   xpath      IN    VARCHAR2,    namespace  IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN XMLType;
```

Parameters

Table 187–16 GETCUSTOMMETADATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
xpath	XPath for custom metadata
namespace	Namespace

Usage Notes

The first component of the XPath expression must be "Resource".

GETDISPLAYNAME Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its display name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETDISPLAYNAME (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–17 GETDISPLAYNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETLANGUAGE Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its language.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETLANGUAGE (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–18 GETLANGUAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETLASTMODIFIER Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its last modifier.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETLASTMODIFIER (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–19 GETLASTMODIFIER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETMODIFICATIONDATE Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its modification date.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETMODIFICATIONDATE (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN TIMESTAMP;
```

Parameters

Table 187–20 GETMODIFICATIONDATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETOWNER Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its owner.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETOWNER (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 187–21 GETOWNER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETREFCOUNT Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its reference count.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETREFCOUNT (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 187–22 GETREFCOUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

GETVERSIONID Function

Given an XDBResource, this function returns its version ID.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.GETVERSIONID (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 187–23 GETVERSIONID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASACLCHANGED Function

This function returns `TRUE` if the ACL of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASACLCHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–24 GETACL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

HASAUTHORCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the author of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASAUTHORCHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–25 HASAUTHORCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCHANGED Function

Given an XPath, this function determines whether the element or attribute represented by the XPath has changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCHANGED (
   res          IN    XDBResource,
   xpath        IN    VARCHAR2,
   namespace    IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–26 HASCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
xpath	XPath to check
bnamespace	Namespace to use

HASCHARACTERSETCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the character set of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCHARACTERSETCHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–27 HASCHARACTERSETCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCOMMENTCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the comment of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCOMMENTCHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–28 HASCOMMENTCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCONTENTCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the contents of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCONTENTCHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–29 HASCONTENTCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCONTENTTYPECHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the content-type of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCONTENTTYPECHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–30 HASCONTENTTYPECHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCREATIONDATECHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the creation date of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCREATIONDATECHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–31 HASCREATIONDATECHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCREATORCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the creator of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCREATORCHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–32 HASCREATORCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASCUSTOMMETADATACHANGED Function

This function checks whether the custom-metadata for a given resource has changed.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASCUSTOMMETADATACHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–33 HASCUSTOMMETADATACHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASDISPLAYNAMECHANGED Function

This function returns `TRUE` if the display name of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASDISPLAYNAMECHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–34 HASDISPLAYNAMECHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

HASLANGUAGECHANGED Function

This function returns `TRUE` if the language of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASLANGUAGECHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–35 HASLANGUAGECHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

HASLASTMODIFIERCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the last modifier of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASLASTMODIFIERCHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–36 HASLASTMODIFIERCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASMODIFICATIONDATECHANGED Function

This function returns `TRUE` if the modification date of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASMODIFICATIONDATECHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–37 HASMODIFICATIONDATECHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

HASOWNERCHANGED Function

This function returns `TRUE` if the owner of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASOWNERCHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–38 HASOWNERCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

HASREFCOUNTCHANGED Function

This function returns TRUE if the reference count of the given resource has changed, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASREFCOUNTCHANGED (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–39 HASREFCOUNTCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

HASVERSIONIDCHANGED Function

This function returns `TRUE` if the version ID of the given resource has changed, `FALSE` otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.HASVERSIONIDCHANGED (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–40 HASVERSIONIDCHANGED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	XDBResource

ISFOLDER Function

This function returns TRUE if the given resource is a folder, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.ISFOLDER (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–41 ISFOLDER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

ISNULL Function

This function returns `TRUE` if input resource is `NULL`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.ISNULL (
   res   IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 187–42 ISNULL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`res`	Input resource

MAKEDOCUMENT Function

This function converts the XDBResource to a DOMDocument which can be operated on using the XMLDOM interface.

See Also: The DBMS_XMLDOM package

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.MAKEDOCUMENT (
   res    IN    XDBResource)
 RETURN DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMDocument;
```

Parameters

Table 187–43 MAKEDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

SAVE Procedure

This procedures updates the resource with any modifications.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SAVE (
   res   IN    XDBResource);
```

Parameters

Table 187–44 SAVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource

SETACL Procedure

This procedure sets the ACL of the given XDBResource to the path specified.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETACL (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   ACLPath  IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–45 SETACL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
ACLPath	Absolute path of the new ACL

SETAUTHOR Procedure

This procedure sets the author of the given XDBResource to the specified string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETAUTHOR (
   res     IN OUT  XDBResource,
   author  IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–46 SETAUTHOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
author	Author

SETCHARACTERSET Procedure

This procedure sets the character set of the given XDBResource to a specified character set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCHARACTERSET (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   charSet  IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–47 SETCHARACTERSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
charset	New character set

SETCOMMENT Procedure

This procedure sets a comment associated with the given XDBResource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCOMMENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   comment  IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–48 SETCOMMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
comment	New comment

SETCONTENT Procedures

This procedure replaces the contents of the given resource with the given datatype.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   data     IN      BFILE,
   csid     IN      NUMBER);

DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   data     IN      BLOB,
   csid     IN      PLS_INTEGER);

DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   data     IN      CLOB);

DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   data     IN      REF SYS.XMLType,
   sticky   IN      BOOLEAN := TRUE);

DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   data     IN      VARCHAR2);

DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENT (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   data     IN      SYS.XMLType);
```

Parameters

Table 187–49 SETCONTENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
data	Data input as BFILE, BLOB, CLOB, string, XMLType
csid	Character set ID of the BFILE, BLOB
sticky	If TRUE creates a sticky REF, otherwise non-sticky

SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure

This procedure sets the content-type of the given XDBResource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCONTENTTYPE (
   res         IN OUT  XDBResource,
   conttype    IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–50 SETCONTENTTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
conttype	New content-type

SETCUSTOMMETADATA Procedure

This procedure sets the custom metadata specified by the xpath and namespace to new data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETCUSTOMMETADATA (
   res          IN OUT  XDBResource,
   xpath        IN      VARCHAR2,
   namespace    IN      VARCHAR2,
   newMetadata  IN      XMLType);
```

Parameters

Table 187–51 SETCUSTOMMETADATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
xpath	XPath to change
namespace	Namespace to use
newMetadata	New data that should replace the metadata at the given XPath

Usage Notes

The first component of the XPath expression must be "Resource".

SETDISPLAYNAME Procedure

This procedure sets the display name of the given XDBResource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETDISPLAYNAME (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   name     IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–52 SETDISPLAYNAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
name	New display name

SETLANGUAGE Procedure

This procedure sets the language of the given XDBResource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETLANGUAGE (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   ACLPath  IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–53 SETLANGUAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
ACLPath	New path

SETOWNER Procedure

This procedure sets the owner of the given XDBResource.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBRESEROUCE.SETOWNER (
   res      IN OUT  XDBResource,
   owner    IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 187–54 SETOWNER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
res	XDBResource
owner	New owner

Usage Notes

The user must have the XDBADMIN privilege to call this subprogram.

188

DBMS_XDBT

The DBMS_XDBT package provides a convenient mechanism for administrators to set up a CONTEXT index on the Oracle XML DB hierarchy. The package contains procedures to create default preferences, create the index and set up automatic synchronization of the CONTEXT index

The DBMS_XDBT package also contains a set of package variables that describe the configuration settings for the index. These are intended to cover the basic customizations that installations may require, but is by no means a complete set.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDBT

Overview

The DBMS_XDBT package can be used in the following fashion:

- Customize the package to set up the appropriate configuration.
- Use the DROPPREFERENCES Procedure to drop any existing index preferences
- Create new index preferences using the CREATEPREFERENCES Procedure procedure
- Create the CONTEXT index using the CREATEINDEX Procedure procedure
- Set up automatic synchronization of the index using the CONFIGUREAUTOSYNC Procedure

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDBT package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to SYS or XDB. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Operational Notes

The DBMS_XDBT package can be customized by using a PL/SQL procedure or an anonymous block to set the relevant package variables, configuration settings, and then execute the procedures. A more general approach would be to introduce the appropriate customizations by modifying this package in place, or as a copy. The system must be configured to use job queues, and the jobs can be viewed through the USER_JOBS catalog views. This section describes the configuration settings, or package variables, available to customize the DBMS_XDBT package.

Table 188–1 General Indexing Settings for Customizing DBMS_XDBT

Parameter	Default Value	Description
IndexName	XDB$CI	Name of the CONTEXT index.
IndexTablespace	XDB$RESINFO	Tablespace used by tables and indexes comprising the CONTEXT index.
IndexMemory	128M	Memory used by index creation and SYNC; less than or equal to the MAX_INDEX_MEMORY system parameter (see the CTX_ADMIN package).
LogFile	'XdbCtxLog'	The log file used for ROWID during indexing. The LOG_DIRECTORY system parameter must be set already. NULL turn s off ROWID logging.

Table 188–2 Filtering Settings for Customizing DBMS_XDBT

Parameter	Default Value	Description
SkipFilter_Types	image/%, audio/%, video/%, model/%	List of mime types that should not be indexed.
NullFilter_Types	text/plain, text/html, text/xml	List of mime types that do not need to use the INSO filter. Use this for text-based documents.
FilterPref	XDB$CI_FILTER	Name of the filter preference.

Table 188–3 Stoplist Settings for Customizing DBMS_XDBT

Parameter	Default Value	Description
StoplistPref	XDB$CI_STOPLIST	Name of the stoplist.
StopWords	0..9; 'a'..'z'; 'A'..'Z'	List of stopwords, in excess of CTXSYS.DEFAULT_STOPLIST.

Table 188–4 Sectioning and Section Group Settings for Customizing DBMS_XDBT

Parameter	Default Value	Description
SectionGroup	HTML_SECTION_GROUP	Default sectioner. Use PATH_SECTION_GROUP or AUTO_SECTION_GROUP if repository contains mainly XML documents.
SectiongroupPref	XDB$CI_SECTIONGROUP	Name of the section group.

Table 188–5 Other Index Preference Settings for Customizing DBMS_XDBT

Parameter	Default Value	Description
DatastorePref	XDB$CI_DATASTORE	Name of the datastore preference
StoragePref	XDB$CI_STORAGE	Name of the storage preference.
WordlistPref	XDB$CI_WORDLIST	Name of the wordlist preference.
DefaultLexerPref	XDB$CI_DEFAULT_LEXER	Name of the default lexer preference.

Table 188–6 SYNC (CONTEXT Synchronization) Settings for Customizing DBMS_XDBT

Parameter	Default Value	Description
AutoSyncPolicy	SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT	Indicates when the index should be SYNCed. One of SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT, SYNC_BY_TIME, or SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT_AND_TIME.
MaxPendingCount	2	Maximum number of documents in the CTX_USER_PENDING queue before an index SYNC is triggered. Only if the AutoSyncPolicy is SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT or SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT_AND_TIME.
CheckPendingCountInterval	10 minutes	How often, in minutes, the pending queue should be checked. Only if the AutoSyncPolicy is SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT or SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT_AND_TIME.
SyncInterval	60 minutes	Indicates how often, in minutes, the index should be SYNCed. Only if the AutoSyncPolicy is SYNC_BY_TIME or SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT_AND_TIME

Summary of DBMS_XDBT Subprograms

Table 188–7 DBMS_XDBT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CONFIGUREAUTOSYNC Procedure on page 188-8	Configures the CONTEXT index for automatic maintenance, SYNC
CREATEDATASTOREPREF Procedure on page 188-9	Creates a USER datastore preference for the CONTEXT index
CREATEFILTERPREF Procedure on page 188-10	Creates a filter preference for the CONTEXT index
CREATEINDEX Procedure on page 188-11	Creates the CONTEXT index on the XML DB hierarchy
CREATELEXERPREF Procedure on page 188-12	Creates a lexer preference for the CONTEXT index
CREATEPREFERENCES Procedure on page 188-13	Creates preferences required for the CONTEXT index on the XML DB hierarchy
CREATESECTIONGROUPPREF Procedure on page 188-14	Creates a storage preference for the CONTEXT index
CREATESTOPLISTPREF Procedure on page 188-15	Creates a section group for the CONTEXT index
CREATESTORAGEPREF Procedure on page 188-16	Creates a wordlist preference for the CONTEXT index
CREATEWORLDLISTPREF Procedure on page 188-17	Creates a stoplist for the CONTEXT index
DROPPREFERENCES Procedure on page 188-18	Drops any existing preferences

CONFIGUREAUTOSYNC Procedure

This procedure sets up jobs for automatic SYNCs of the CONTEXT index.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CONFIGUREAUTOSYNC;
```

Usage Notes

- The system must be configured for job queues for automatic synchronization. The jobs can be viewed using the USER_JOBS catalog views
- The configuration parameter AutoSyncPolicy can be set to choose an appropriate synchronization policy.

The synchronization can be based on one of the following:

Sync Basis	Description
SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT	The SYNC is triggered when the number of documents in the pending queue is greater than a threshold (See the MaxPendingCount configuration setting on page 188-6). The pending queue is polled at regular intervals (See the CheckPendingCountInterval configuration parameter on page 188-6) to determine if the number of documents exceeds the threshold.
SYNC_BY_TIME	The SYNC is triggered at regular intervals. (See the SyncInterval configuration parameter on page 188-6).
SYNC_BY_PENDING_COUNT_AND_TIME	A combination of both of the preceding options.

CREATEDATASTOREPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a user datastore preference for the CONTEXT index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATEDATASTOREPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the datastore preference can be modified; see the DatastorePref configuration setting.
- The default USER datastore procedure also filters the incoming document. The DBMS_XDBT package provides a set of configuration settings that control the filtering process.
- The SkipFilter_Types array contains a list of regular expressions. Documents with a mime type that matches one of these expressions are not indexed. Some of the properties of the document metadata, such as author, remain unindexed.
  - The NullFilter_Types array contains a list of regular expressions. Documents with a mime type that matches one of these expressions are not filtered; however, they are still indexed. This is intended to be used for documents that are text-based, such as HTML, XML and plain-text.
  - All other documents use the INSO filter through the IFILTER API.

CREATEFILTERPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a `NULL` filter preference for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATEFILTERPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the filter preference can be modified; see `FilterPref` configuration setting.
- The `USER` datastore procedure filters the incoming document; see CREATEDATASTOREPREF Procedurefor more details.

CREATEINDEX Procedure

This procedure creates the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATEINDEX;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the index can be changed; see the `IndexName` configuration setting.
- Set the `LogFile` configuration parameter to enable `ROWID` logging during index creation.
- Set the `IndexMemory` configuration parameter to determine the amount of memory that index creation, and later SYNCs, will use.

CREATELEXERPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a BASIC `lexer` preference for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATELEXERPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the `lexer` preference can be modified; see `LexerPref` configuration setting. No other configuration settings are provided.
- `MultiLexer` preferences are not supported.
- Base letter translation is turned on by default.

CREATEPREFERENCES Procedure

This procedure creates a set of default preferences based on the configuration settings.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATEPREFERENCES;
```

CREATESECTIONGROUPPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a section group for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATESECTIONGROUPPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the section group can be changed; see the `SectiongroupPref` configuration setting.
- The HTML sectioner is used by default. No zone sections are created by default. If the vast majority of documents are XML, consider using the `AUTO_SECTION_GROUP` or the `PATH_SECTION_GROUP`; see the `SectionGroup` configuration setting.

CREATESTOPLISTPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a stoplist for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATESTOPLISTPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the stoplist can be modified; see the `StoplistPref` configuration setting.
- Numbers are not indexed.
- The `StopWords` array is a configurable list of stopwords. These are meant to be stopwords in addition to the set of stopwords in `CTXSYS.DEFAULT_STOPLIST`.

CREATESTORAGEPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a `BASIC_STORAGE` preference for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATESTORAGEPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the storage preference can be modified; see the `StoragePref` configuration setting.
- A tablespace can be specified for the tables and indexes comprising the `CONTEXT` index; see the `IndexTablespace` configuration setting.
- Prefix and Substring indexing are not turned on by default.
- The `I_INDEX_CLAUSE` uses key compression.

CREATEWORLDLISTPREF Procedure

This procedure creates a word list preference for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.CREATEWORDLISTPREF;
```

Usage Notes

- The name of the word list preference can be modified; see the `WordlistPref` configuration setting. No other configuration settings are provided.
- `FUZZY_MATCH` and `STEMMER` attributes are set to `AUTO` (auto-language detection)

DROPPREFERENCES Procedure

This procedure drops any previously created preferences for the `CONTEXT` index on the XML DB hierarchy.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBT.DROPPREFERENCES;
```

189

DBMS_XDBZ

The DBMS_XDBZ package controls the Oracle XML DB repository security, which is based on Access Control Lists (ACLs).

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XDBZ

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_XDBZ` package.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDBZ package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_XDBZ package uses the constants shown in following tables.

Table 189–1 DBMS_XDBZ Constants - Name Format

Constant	Type	Value	Description
NAME_FORMAT_SHORT	PLS_INTEGER	1	DB user name or LDAP nickname
NAME_FORMAT_DISTINGUISHED	PLS_INTEGER	2	LDAP distinguished name

Table 189–2 DBMS_XDBZ Constants - Enable Option

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ENABLE_CONTENTS	PLS_INTEGER	1	Enables hierarchy for contents and is used by users when calling the ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure
ENABLE_RESMETADATA	PLS_INTEGER	2	Enables hierarchy for resource metadata, that is, this table will store schema based custom metadata for resources

Table 189–3 DBMS_XDBZ Constants - Enable Option Exercised

Constant	Type	Value	Description
IS_ENABLED_CONTENTS	PLS_INTEGER	1	If hierarchy was enabled for contents, that is, the ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure was called with hierarchy_type as ENABLE_CONTENTS
IS_ENABLED_RESMETADATA	PLS_INTEGER	2	If hierarchy was enabled for resource metadata, that is, the ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure was called with hierarchy_type as ENABLE_RESMETADATA

Summary of DBMS_XDBZ Subprograms

Table 189–4 DBMS_XDBZ Package Subprograms

Method	Description
DISABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure on page 189-7	Disables repository support for the specified `XMLTYPE` table or view
ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure on page 189-8	Enables repository support for the specified `XMLType` table or view
GET_ACLOID Function on page 189-9	Retrieves the ACL Object ID for the specified resource
GET_USERID Function on page 189-10	Retrieves the user ID for the specified user
IS_HIERARCHY_ENABLED Function on page 189-11	Determines if repository support for the specified `XMLType` table or view is enabled
PURGELDAPCACHE Function on page 189-12	Purges the LDAP nickname cache

CREATENONCEKEY Procedure

This procedure generates a nonce value for use in digest authentication.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.CREATENONCEKEY;
```

DISABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure

This procedure disables repository support for a particular XMLType table or view.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.DISABLE_HIERARCHY(
   object_schema IN VARCHAR2,
   object_name   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 189–5 DISABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema name of the XMLType table or view
object_name	Name of the XMLType table or view

ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure

This procedure enables repository support for a particular XMLType table or view. This allows the use of a uniform ACL-based security model across all documents in the repository.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for more information about

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.ENABLE_HIERARCHY(
   object_schema   IN   VARCHAR2,
   object_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   hierarchy_type  IN   PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XDBZ.ENABLE_CONTENTS);
```

Parameters

Table 189–6 ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema name of the XMLType table or view
object_name	Name of the XMLType table or view
hierarchy_type	How to enable the hierarchy. ■ ENABLE_CONTENTS - enable hierarchy for contents, that is, this table will store contents of resources in the repository ■ ENABLE_RESMETADATA - enable hierarchy for resource metadata, that is, this table will store schema based custom metadata for resources If this subprogram is called on a table, another call will have no effect. Note that you cannot enable hierarchy for both contents and resource metadata.

GET_ACLOID Function

This function retrieves the ACL Object ID for the specified resource, if the repository path is known.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.GET_ACLOID(
   aclpath   IN   VARCHAR2,
   acloid    OUT  RAW)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 189–7 GET_ACLOID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
aclpath	ACL resource path for the repository
acloid	Returned Object ID

Return Values

Returns TRUE if successful.

GET_USERID Function

This function retrieves the user ID for the specified user name. The local database is searched first, and if found, the `USERID` is returned in 4-byte database format. Otherwise, the LDAP directory is searched, if available, and if found, the `USERID` is returned in 4-byte database format.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.GET_USERID(
   username IN  VARCHAR2,
   userid   OUT RAW,
   format   IN  BINARY_INTEGER := NAME_FORMAT_SHORT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 189–8 GET_USERID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`username`	Name of the database or LDAP user.
`userid`	Return parameter for the matching user id.
`format`	Format of the specified user name; valid options are: ■ `DBMS_XDBZ.NAME_FORMAT_SHORT` (default) -- DB user name or LDAP nickname ■ `DBMS_XDBZ.NAME_FORMAT_DISTINGUISHIED` -- LDAP distinguished name.

Return Values

Returns `TRUE` if successful.

IS_HIERARCHY_ENABLED Function

This function determines if repository support for the specified XMLType table or view is enabled.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.IS_HIERARCHY_ENABLED(
   object_schema    IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   hierarchy_type   IN  PLS_INTEGER := IS_ENABLED_CONTENTS)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 189–9 IS_HIERARCHY_ENABLED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
object_schema	Schema name of the XMLType table or view
object_name	Name of the XMLType table or view
hierarchy_type	Type of hierarchy to check for: ■ IS_ENABLED_CONTENTS - if hierarchy was enabled for contents, that is, the ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure was called with hierarchy_type as ENABLE_CONTENTS ■ IS_ENABLED_RESMETADATA - if hierarchy was enabled for resource metadata, that is, the ENABLE_HIERARCHY Procedure was called with hierarchy_type as ENABLE_RESMETADATA

Return Values

Returns TRUE if the given XMLTYPE table or view has the XDB Hierarchy enabled with the specified type.

PURGELDAPCACHE Function

This function purges the LDAP nickname cache. Returns `TRUE` if successful.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XDBZ.PURGELDAPCACHE
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

190

DBMS_XEVENT

The DBMS_XEVENTpackage provides event-related types and supporting subprograms.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for more information about "Oracle XML DB Repository Events"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XEVENT

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XEVENT package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_XEVENT package uses the constants shown in Table 190–1:

Table 190–1 DBMS_XEVENT Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
RENDER_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	1	
PRE_CREATE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	2	
POST_CREATE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	3	
PRE_DELETE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	4	
POST_DELETE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	5	
PRE_UPDATE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	6	
POST_UPDATE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	7	
PRE_LOCK_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	8	
POST_LOCK_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	9	
PRE_UNLOCK_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	10	
POST_UNLOCK_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	11	
PRE_LINKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	12	
POST_LINKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	13	
PRE_LINKTO_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	14	
POST_LINKTO_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	15	
PRE_UNLINKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	16	
POST_UNLINKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	17	
PRE_UNLINKFROM_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	18	
POST_UNLINKFROM_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	19	
PRE_CHECKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	20	
POST_CHECKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	21	
PRE_CHECKOUT_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	22	
POST_CHECKOUT_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	23	
PRE_UNCHECKOUT_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	24	
POST_UNCHECKOUT_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	25	
PRE_VERSIONCONTROL_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	26	
POST_VERSIONCONTROL_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	27	
PRE_OPEN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	28	
POST_OPEN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	29	
PRE_INCONSISTENT_UPDATE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	30	
POST_INCONSISTENT_UPDATE_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	21	
POST_CHECKIN_EVENT	PLS_INTEGER	21	

Subprogram Groups

XDBEvent Type Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface for use in conjunction with the XDBEvent type.

Table 190–2 XDBEvent Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETCURRENTUSER Function on page 190-18	Returns the name of the user executing the operation that triggers the event
GETEVENT Function on page 190-19	Returns a value identifying the triggering event
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`

The Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface for use in conjunction with the XDBRepositoryEvent type.

Table 190–3 XDBRepositoryEvent Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETAPPLICATIONDATA Function on page 190-16	Returns the `<applicationData>` element extracted from the resource configuration that defines the invoking handler
GETHANDLERLIST Function on page 190-21	Returns an `XDBHandlerList` object containing the list of handlers that will be executed after the currently executing handler
GETINTERFACE Function on page 190-22	Returns the top-level interface used to initiate the operation that triggered the event
GETLINK Function on page 190-24	Returns an `XDBLink` object for the target resource
GETLOCK Function on page 190-26	Returns the lock object corresponding to the current operation
GETOLDRESOURCE Function on page 190-30	Returns the original `XDBResource` object before the operation was executed
GETOPENACCESSMODE Function on page 190-31	Returns the access mode for the open operation
GETOPENDENYMODE Function on page 190-32	Returns the deny mode for the open operation
GETOUTPUTSTREAM Function on page 190-33	Returns the output BLOB in which the handler can write the rendered data
GETPARAMETER Function on page 190-34	Returns the value of a request or session-specific parameter
GETPARENT Function on page 190-35	Returns the resource object corresponding to a parent folder of the target resource
GETPATH Function on page 190-39	Returns the `XDBPath` object representing the path of the resource for which the event was fired
GETRESOURCE Function on page 190-40	Returns an `XDBResource` object that provides methods to access and modify the contents and metadata of the target resource
GETUPDATEBYTECOUNT Function on page 190-43	If the current operation is a byte-range write, returns the byte count
GETUPDATEBYTEOFFSET Function on page 190-44	If the current operation is a byte-range write, function returns the byte offset at which the range begins
GETXDBEVENT Function on page 190-45	Converts an `XDBRepositoryEvent` object to an `XDBEvent` type
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`
SETRENDERPATH Procedure on page 190-49	Specifies the path of the resource that contains the rendered contents
SETRENDERSTREAM Procedure on page 190-50	sets the `BLOB` from which the rendered contents can be read

The Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface for use in conjunction with the XDBHandlerList type.

Table 190–4 XDBHandlerList Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLEAR Procedure on page 190-15	Clears the handler list
GETFIRST Function on page 190-20	Returns the first handler in the list
GETNAME Function on page 190-28	Returns the next handler in the list
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`
REMOVE Procedure on page 190-48	Removes the specified handler from the handler list

The Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

XDBHandler Type Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface for use in conjunction with the XDBHandler type.

Table 190–5 XDBHandler Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETLANGUAGE Function on page 190-23	Returns the implementation language of the handler
GETSCHEMA Function on page 190-41	Returns the schema of the handler's source
GETSOURCE Function on page 190-42	Returns the name of the Java class, PL/SQL package or object type implementing the handler
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`

The Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

XDBPath Type Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface for use in conjunction with the XDBPath type.

Table 190–6 XDBPath Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETNAME Function on page 190-28	Returns the string representation of the path
GETPARENTPATH Function on page 190-38	Returns the parent's path
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`

The Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

XDBLink Type Subprograms

This subprogram group provides an interface for use in conjunction with the XDBLink type.

Table 190–7 XDBLink Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GETCHILDOID Function on page 190-17	Returns the OID of the resource to which the link is pointing
GETPARENTNAME Function on page 190-36	Returns the link's parent folder's name
GETPARENTOID Function on page 190-37	Returns the link's parent folder's OID
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`

The Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms contains a complete listing of all subprograms in the package.

Summary of DBMS_XEVENT Subprograms

Table 190–8 DBMS_XEVENT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
CLEAR Procedure on page 190-15	Clears the handler list	XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-8
GETAPPLICATIONDATA Function on page 190-16	Returns the `<applicationData>` element extracted from the resource configuration that defines the invoking handler	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7
GETCHILDOID Function on page 190-17	Returns the OID of the resource to which the link is pointing	XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11
GETCURRENTUSER Function on page 190-18	Returns the name of the user executing the operation that triggers the event	XDBEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETEVENT Function on page 190-19	Returns a value identifying the triggering event	XDBEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETFIRST Function on page 190-20	Returns the first handler in the list	XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-8
GETHANDLERLIST Function on page 190-21	Returns an `XDBHandlerList` object containing the list of handlers that will be executed after the currently executing handler	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7
GETINTERFACE Function on page 190-22	Returns the top-level interface used to initiate the operation that triggered the event	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7
GETLANGUAGE Function on page 190-23	Returns the implementation language of the handler	XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9
GETLINK Function on page 190-24	Returns an `XDBLink` object for the target resource	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7
GETLOCK Function on page 190-26	Returns the lock object corresponding to the current operation	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETNAME Function on page 190-28	Returns the string representation of the path	XDBPath Type Subprograms on page 190-10
GETNAME Function on page 190-28	Returns the next handler in the list	XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-8
GETOLDRESOURCE Function on page 190-30	Returns the original `XDBResource` object before the operation was executed	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETOPENACCESSMODE Function on page 190-31	Returns the access mode for the open operation	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6

Table 190–8 (Cont.) DBMS_XEVENT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
GETOPENDENYMODE Function on page 190-32	Returns the deny mode for the open operation	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETOUTPUTSTREAM Function on page 190-33	Returns the output BLOB in which the handler can write the rendered data	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETPARAMETER Function on page 190-34	Returns the value of a request or session-specific parameter	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETPARENT Function on page 190-35	Returns the resource object corresponding to a parent folder of the target resource	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETPARENTNAME Function on page 190-36	Returns the link's parent folder's name	XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11
GETPARENTOID Function on page 190-37	Returns the link's parent folder's OID	XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11
GETPARENTNAME Function on page 190-36	Returns the parent's path	XDBPath Type Subprograms on page 190-10
GETPATH Function on page 190-39	Returns the `XDBPath` object representing the path of the resource for which the event was fired	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETRESOURCE Function on page 190-40	Returns an `XDBResource` object that provides methods to access and modify the contents and metadata of the target resource	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETSCHEMA Function on page 190-41	Returns the schema of the handler's source	XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9
GETSOURCE Function on page 190-42	Returns the name of the Java class, PL/SQL package or object type implementing the handler	XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9
GETUPDATEBYTECOUNT Function on page 190-43	If the current operation is a byte-range write, returns the byte count	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETUPDATEBYTEOFFSET Function on page 190-44	If the current operation is a byte-range write, function returns the byte offset at which the range begins	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
GETXDBEVENT Function on page 190-45	Converts an `XDBRepositoryEvent` object to an `XDBEvent` type	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6

Table 190–8 (Cont.) DBMS_XEVENT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
ISNULL Functions on page 190-46	Returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`	XDBEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6 XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-8 XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9 XDBPath Type Subprograms on page 190-10
REMOVE Procedure on page 190-48	Removes the specified handler from the handler list	XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-8
SETRENDERPATH Procedure on page 190-49	Specifies the path of the resource that contains the rendered contents	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6
SETRENDERSTREAM Procedure on page 190-50	sets the `BLOB` from which the rendered contents can be read	XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6

CLEAR Procedure

this procedure clears the handler list.

> **See Also:** XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.CLEAR (
    hl       IN OUT   XDBHandlerList);
```

Parameters

Table 190–9 CLEAR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
hl	Handler list

GETAPPLICATIONDATA Function

This function returns the <applicationData> element extracted from the resource configuration that defines the invoking handler.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETAPPLICATIONDATA (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XMLType;
```

Parameters

Table 190–10 GETAPPLICATIONDATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETCHILDOID Function

This function returns the OID of the resource to which the link is pointing.

> **See Also:** XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETCHILDOID (
    link   IN   XDBLink)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 190–11 GETCHILDOID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
link	Link

GETCURRENTUSER Function

This function returns the name of the user executing the operation that triggers the event.

> **See Also:** XDBEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETCURRENTUSER (
    ev   IN   XDBEvent)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–12 GETCURRENTUSER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBEvent type

GETEVENT Function

This function returns the name of the user executing the operation that triggers the event.

> **See Also:** XDBEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETEVENT (
    ev   IN   XDBEvent)
  RETURN XDBEventID;
```

Parameters

Table 190–13 GETEVENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBEvent type

GETFIRST Function

This function returns the first handler in the list.

> **See Also:** XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETFIRST (
    hl   IN   XDBHandlerList)
  RETURN XDBHandler;
```

Parameters

Table 190–14 GETFIRST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
hl	Handler list

GETHANDLERLIST Function

This function returns an `XDBHandlerList` object containing the list of handlers that will be executed after the currently executing handler. The current handler can then filter out some of the subsequent handlers if necessary, subject to security checks. An insufficient privilege exception is raised if the executing user does not have the required access privilege to any of the resource configuration associating with a handler in the list.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETHANDLERLIST (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBHandlerList;
```

Parameters

Table 190–15 GETHANDLERLIST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETINTERFACE Function

This function returns the top-level interface used to initiate the operation that triggered the event. This could be HTTP, FTP or SQL.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETINTERFACE (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–16 GETINTERFACE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETLANGUAGE Function

This function returns the implementation language of the handler.

> **See Also:** XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETLANGUAGE (
    handler   IN   XDBHandler)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–17 GETLANGUAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler	Handler

GETLINK Function

This function returns an `XDBLink` object for the target resource. For a link* or unlink* event, this will be the link involved in the operation. For other events, an error is returned. Using this object the handler can access link properties, such as, `ParentName`, `ParentOID`, `ChildOID` and `LinkName`.

See Also: XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETLINK (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBLink;
```

Parameters

Table 190–18 GETLINK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETLINKNAME Function

This function returns the name of the link.

> **See Also:** XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETLINKNAME (
    link   IN   XDBLink)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–19 GETLINKNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
link	Link

GETLOCK Function

This function returns the lock object corresponding to the current operation.I t is only valid for lock and unlock events.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETLOCK  (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBLock;
```

Parameters

Table 190–20 GETLOCK Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETLANGUAGE Function

This function returns the implementation language of the handler.

> **See Also:** XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETLANGUAGE (
    handler   IN   XDBHandler)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–21 GETLANGUAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler	Handler

GETNAME Function

This function returns the string representation of the path.

> **See Also:** XDBPath Type Subprograms on page 190-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETNAME (
    path   IN   XDBPath)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–22 GETNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Path

GETNEXT Function

This function returns the next handler in the list.

> **See Also:** XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETNEXT (
    hl   IN   XDBHandlerList)
  RETURN XDBHandler;
```

Parameters

Table 190–23 GETNEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
hl	Handler list

GETOLDRESOURCE Function

This function returns the original `XDBResource` object before the operation was executed. This method applies only to update event. For other events, an error is returned. This is a read-only object, and consequently none of the modifier methods will work on this object.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETOLDRESOURCE (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBResource;
```

Parameters

Table 190–24 GETOLDRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ev`	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETOPENACCESSMODE Function

This function returns the access mode for the open operation.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETOPENACCESSMODE (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 190–25 GETOPENACCESSMODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

Return Values

- `XDBRepositoryEvent.OPEN_ACCESS_READ` (value 1)
- `XDBRepositoryEvent.OPEN_ACCESS_WRITE` (value 2)
- `XDBRepositoryEvent.OPEN_ACCESS_READ_WRITE` (value 3)

GETOPENDENYMODE Function

This function returns the deny mode for the open operation. It is only valid for the open event.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETOPENDENYMODE (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 190–26 GETOPENDENYMODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

Return Values

- XDBRepositoryEvent.OPEN_DENY_NONE (value 0)
- XDBRepositoryEvent.OPEN_DENY_READ (value 1)
- XDBRepositoryEvent.OPEN_DENY_READ_WRITE (value 2)

GETOUTPUTSTREAM Function

This function returns the output BLOB in which the handler can write the rendered data. It is only valid for the render event.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETOUTPUTSTREAM (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN BLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 190–27 GETOUTPUTSTREAM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETPARAMETER Function

This function returns the value of a request or session-specific parameter. The definition of the `key` parameter can be found in RFC 2616 (HTTP/1.1). They will be mapped to equivalent SQL session parameters (if any).

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETPARAMETER (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent,
    key  IN   VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–28 GETPARAMETER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type
key	Supported parameters: ■ ACCEPT ■ ACCEPT-LANGUAGE ■ ACCEPT-CHARSET ■ ACCEPT_ENCODING

GETPARENT Function

This function returns the resource object corresponding to a parent folder of the target resource. Note that this could be any folder that contains a link to the target resource. This is a read-only object, and consequently none of the modifier methods will work on this object. For a link* or unlink* event, this method returns the link's parent folder.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETPARENT (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBResource;
```

Parameters

Table 190–29 GETPARENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETPARENTNAME Function

This function returns the link's parent folder's name.

> **See Also:** XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETPARENTNAME (
    link   IN   XDBLink)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–30 GETPARENTNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
link	Link

GETPARENTOID Function

This function returns the link's parent folder's OID.

> **See Also:** XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETPARENTOID (
    link   IN   XDBLink)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 190–31 GETPARENTOID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
link	Link

GETPARENTPATH Function

This function returns the parent's path. The level indicates the number of levels up the hierarchy. This value must be greater than zero. Level 1 means the immediate parent. If level exceeds the height of the tree then a `NULL` is returned.

> **See Also:** XDBPath Type Subprograms on page 190-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETPARENTPATH (
    path   IN   XDBPath,
   level   IN   INTEGER)
  RETURN XDBPath;
```

Parameters

Table 190–32 GETPARENTPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`path`	Path
`level`	Number of levels up the hierarchy

GETPATH Function

This function returns the `XDBPath` object representing the path of the resource for which the event was fired. From this object, functions are provided to get the different path segments.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETPATH (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBPath;
```

Parameters

Table 190–33 GETPATH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETRESOURCE Function

This function returns an `XDBResource` object that provides methods to access and modify the contents and metadata of the target resource. This object reflects any changes made by previous handlers to the resource.

The modifier methods will work only in the pre-create and pre-update event handlers. For a link* or unlink* event, this method returns the resource that the link is pointing to. For a create event, this method returns the resource that is being created.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETRESOURCE (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBResource;
```

Parameters

Table 190–34 GETRESOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETSCHEMA Function

This function returns the schema of the handler's source.

> **See Also:** XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETSCHEMA (
    handler   IN   XDBHandler)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–35 GETSCHEMA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler	Handler

GETSOURCE Function

This function returns the name of the Java class, PL/SQL package or object type implementing the handler.

> **See Also:** XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETSOURCE (
    handler   IN   XDBHandler)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 190–36 GETSOURCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handler	Handler

GETUPDATEBYTECOUNT Function

If the current operation is a byte-range write, the function returns the byte count. It is only valid for the inconsistent-update event.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETUPDATEBYTECOUNT (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 190–37 GETUPDATEBYTECOUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETUPDATEBYTEOFFSET Function

If the current operation is a byte-range write, function returns the byte offset at which the range begins. It is only valid for the inconsistent-update event.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETUPDATEBYTEOFFSET (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 190–38 GETUPDATEBYTEOFFSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

GETXDBEVENT Function

This function converts an `XDBRepositoryEvent` object to an `XDBEvent` type.

> **See Also:** XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.GETXDBETEVENT (
    ev   IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN XDBEvent;
```

Parameters

Table 190–39 GETXDBEVENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	Event of XDBRepositoryEvent type

ISNULL Functions

This function returns `TRUE` if input argument is `NULL`.

See Also:

- XDBEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-6 for other subprograms in this group
- XDBRepositoryEvent Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group
- XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-8 for other subprograms in this group
- XDBHandler Type Subprograms on page 190-9 for other subprograms in this group
- XDBPath Type Subprograms on page 190-10 for other subprograms in this group
- XDBLink Type Subprograms on page 190-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.ISNULL (
    ev          IN   XDBEvent)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_XEVENT.ISNULL (
    ev          IN   XDBRepositoryEvent)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_XEVENT.ISNULL (
    hl          IN   XDBHandlerList)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_XEVENT.ISNULL (
    handler     IN   XDBHandler)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_XEVENT.ISNULL (
    path        IN   XDBPath)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;

DBMS_XEVENT.ISNULL (
    link        IN   XDBLink)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 190–40 ISNULL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ev`	Event of specified type
`hl`	Handler list
`handler`	Handler

Table 190–40 (Cont.) ISNULL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	Path

REMOVE Procedure

This procedure removes the specified handler from the handler list.

> **See Also:** XDBHandlerList Type Subprograms on page 190-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.REMOVE (
    hl       IN OUT   XDBHandlerList,
    handler  IN       XDBHandler);
```

Parameters

Table 190–41 REMOVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
hl	Handler list
handler	Handler

SETRENDERPATH Procedure

This procedure specifies the path of the resource that contains the rendered contents. This should not be called after the stream returned by GETOUTPUTSTREAM Function is written to or after the SETRENDERSTREAM Procedure is called; doing so will result in an error. This is only valid for the render event.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.SETRENDERPATH (
    ev     IN   XDBRepositoryEvent,
    path   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 190–42 SETRENDERPATH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	XDB Repository Event object
path	Path of the resource containing the rendered contents

SETRENDERSTREAM Procedure

This procedure sets the BLOB from which the rendered contents can be read. This should not be called after the stream returned by GETOUTPUTSTREAM is written to or after SETRENDERPATH is called; doing so will result in an error. This is only valid for the render event.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XEVENT.SETRENDERSTREAM (
    ev    IN   XDBRepositoryEvent,
    istr  IN   BLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 190–43 SETRENDERSTREAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ev	XDBRepositoryEvent object
istr	Input stream from which to get the rendered contents

191

DBMS_XMLDOM

The DBMS_XMLDOM package is used to access XMLType objects, and implements the Document Object Model (DOM), an application programming interface for HTML and XML documents.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLDOM

Overview

The Document Object Model (DOM) is an application programming interface (API) for HTML and XML documents. It defines the logical structure of documents, and the manner in which they are accessed and manipulated. In the DOM specification, the term "document" is used in the broad sense. XML is being increasingly used to represent many different kinds of information that may be stored in diverse systems. This information has been traditionally be seen as "data"; nevertheless, XML presents this data as documents, and the `DBMS_XMLDOM` package allows you access to both schema-based and non schema-based documents.

Note:

- Before database startup, the read-from and write-to directories in the `init.ORA` file must be specified; for example: `UTL_FILE_DIR=/mypath/insidemypath`.
- Read-from and write-to files must be on the server file system.

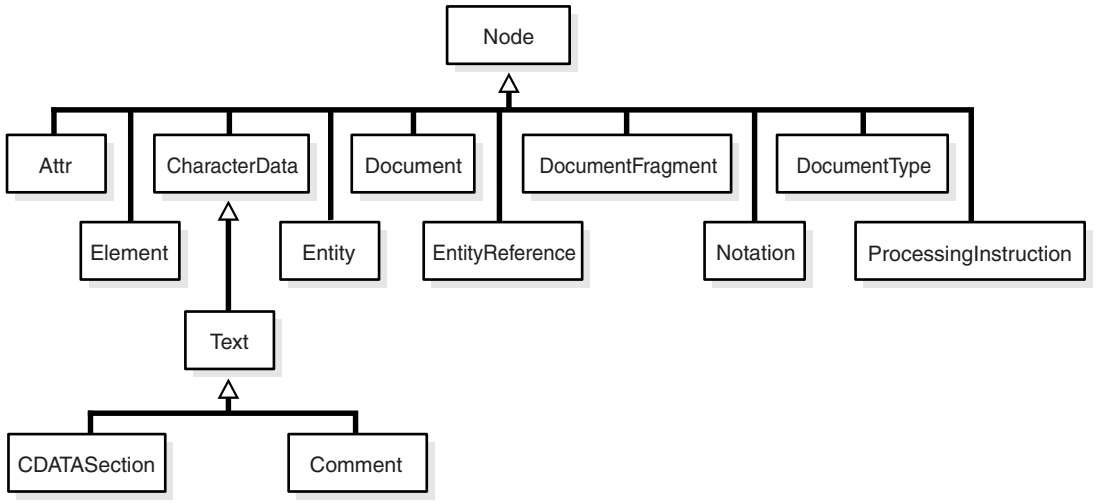
With DOM, anything found in an HTML or XML document can be accessed, changed, deleted, or added using the Document Object Model, with a few exceptions. In particular, the DOM interfaces for the XML internal and external subsets have not yet been specified.

One important objective of the W3C DOM specification is to provide a standard programming interface that can be used in a wide variety of environments, programming languages, and applications. Because the DOM standard is object-oriented while PL/SQL is essentially a procedural language, some changes had to be made:

- Various DOM interfaces such as `Node`, `Element`, and others have equivalent PL/SQL types `DOMNode`, `DOMElement`, respectively.
- Various `DOMException` codes such as `WRONG_DOCUMENT_ERR`, `HIERARCHY_REQUEST_ERR`, and others, have similarly named PL/SQL exceptions.
- Various DOM Node type codes such as `ELEMENT_NODE`, `ATTRIBUTE_NODE`, and others, have similarly named PL/SQL constants.
- Subprograms defined on a DOM type become functions or procedures that accept it as a parameter. For example, to perform APPENDCHILD Function on a `DOMNode n`, the APPENDCHILD FunctionPL/SQL function on page 191-42 is provided.
- To perform `setAttribute` on a `DOMElement elem`SETATTRIBUTE Procedures, use PL/SQL procedure on page 191-142.

DOM defines an inheritance hierarchy. For example, `Document`, `Element`, and `Attr` are defined to be subtypes of `Node` (see Figure 191–1). Thus, a method defined in the `Node` interface should be available in these as well. Since such inheritance is not supported in PL/SQL, it is implemented through direct invocation of the `MAKENODE` function. Calling `MAKENODE` on various DOM types converts these types into a `DOMNode`. The appropriate functions or procedures that accept `DOMNodes` can then be called to operate on these types. If, subsequently, type specific functionality is desired, the `DOMNode` can be converted back into the original type by the `make`*`XXX`* functions, where `DOM`*`XXX`* is the desired DOM type.

Figure 191–1 Inheritance Diagram for DOM Types



The implementation of this interface follows the REC-DOM-Level-1-19981001.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLDOM package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

Defined constants of DBMS_XMLDOM are listed in Table 191–1.

Table 191–1 Defined Constants for DBMS_XMLDOM

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ELEMENT_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	1	The Node is an Element.
ATTRIBUTE_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	2	The Node is an Attribute.
TEXT_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	3	The Node is a Text node.
CDATA_SECTION_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	4	The Node is a CDataSection.
ENTITY_REFERENCE_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	5	The Node is an Entity Reference.
ENTITY_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	6	The Node is an Entity.
PROCESSING_INSTRUCTION_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	7	The Node is a Processing Instruction.
COMMENT_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	8	The Node is a Comment.
DOCUMENT_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	9	The Node is a Document.
DOCUMENT_TYPE_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	10	The Node is a Document Type Definition.
DOCUMENT_FRAGMENT_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	11	The Node is a Document fragment.
NOTATION_NODE	PLS_INTEGER	12	The Node is a Notation.

Types

The following types for DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMTYPE are defined in Table 191–2:

Table 191–2 XDB_XMLDOM Types

Type	Description
DOMATTR	Implements the DOM Attribute interface.
DOMCDATASECTION	Implements the DOM CDataSection interface.
DOMCHARACTERDATA	Implements the DOM Character Data interface.
DOMCOMMENT	Implements the DOM Comment interface.
DOMDOCUMENT	Implements the DOM Document interface.
DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT	Implements the DOM DocumentFragment interface.
DOMDOCUMENTTYPE	Implements the DOM Document Type interface.
DOMELEMENT	Implements the DOM Element interface.
DOMENTITY	Implements the DOM Entity interface.
DOMENTITYREFERENCE	Implements the DOM EntityReference interface.
DOMIMPLEMENTATION	Implements the DOM Implementation interface.
DOMNAMEDNODEMAP	Implements the DOM Named Node Map interface.
DOMNODE	Implements the DOM Node interface.
DOMNODELIST	Implements the DOM NodeList interface.
DOMNOTATION	Implements the DOM Notation interface.
DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION	Implements the DOM Processing instruction interface.
DOMTEXT	Implements the DOM Text interface.

Exceptions

The exceptions listed in Table 191–3 are defined for DBMS_XMLDOM:

Table 191–3 Exceptions for DBMS_XMLDOM

Exception	Description
DOMSTRING_SIZE_ERR	If the specified range of text does not fit into a DOMString.
HIERARCHY_REQUEST_ERR	If any node is inserted somewhere it doesn't belong.
INDEX_SIZE_ERR	If index or size is negative, or greater than the allowed value.
INUSE_ATTRIBUTE_ERR	If an attempt is made to add an attribute that is already in use elsewhere.
INVALID_CHARACTER_ERR	If an invalid or illegal character is specified, such as in a name. See production 2 in the XML specification for the definition of a legal character, and production 5 for the definition of a legal name character.
NO_DATA_ALLOWED_ERROR	If data is specified for a node that does not support data.
NOT_FOUND_ERR	If an attempt is made to reference a node in a context where it does not exist.
NO_MODIFICATION_ALLOWED_ERR	If an attempt is made to modify an object where modifications are not allowed.
NOT_SUPPORTED_ERR	If the implementation does not support the requested type of object or operation.
WRONG_DOCUMENT_ERR	If a node is used in a different document than the one that created it (that doesn't support it).

Subprogram Groups

DBMS_XMLDOM subprograms are divided into groups according to W3C Interfaces.

DOMNode Subprograms

Table 191–4 Summary of DOMNode Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Subprogram	Description
ADOPTNODE Function on page 191-41	Adopts a node from another document
APPENDCHILD Function on page 191-42	Appends a new child to the node
CLONENODE Function on page 191-44	Clones the node
FREENODE Procedure on page 191-60	Frees all resources associated with the node
GETATTRIBUTES Function on page 191-64	Retrieves the attributes of the node
GETCHILDNODES Function on page 191-66	Retrieves the children of the node
GETEXPANDEDNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-73	Retrieves the expanded name of the node
GETFIRSTCHILD Function on page 191-74	Retrieves the first child of the node
GETLASTCHILD Function on page 191-76	Retrieves the last child of the node
GETLOCALNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-78	Retrieves the local part of the qualified name
GETNAMESPACE Procedure and Functions on page 191-81	Retrieves the node's namespace URI
GETNEXTSIBLING Function on page 191-82	Retrieves the next sibling of the node
GETNODENAME Function on page 191-84	Retrieves the Name of the Node
GETNODETYPE Function on page 191-83	Retrieves the Type of the node
GETNODEVALUE Function on page 191-85	Retrieves the Value of the Node
GETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-86	Retrieves Node Value as binary stream
GETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-87	Retrieves Node Value as character stream
GETOWNERDOCUMENT Function on page 191-91	Retrieves the owner document of the node
GETPARENTNODE Function on page 191-93	Retrieves the parent of this node
GETPREFIX Function on page 191-94	Retrieves the namespace prefix
GETPREVIOUSSIBLING Function on page 191-95	Retrieves the previous sibling of the node
GETSCHEMANODE Function on page 191-98	Retrieves the associated schema URI
HASATTRIBUTES Function on page 191-107	Tests if the node has attributes
HASCHILDNODES Function on page 191-108	Tests if the node has child nodes
IMPORTNODE Function on page 191-110	Imports a node from another document
INSERTBEFORE Function on page 191-111	Inserts a child before the reference child
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the node is `NULL`
MAKEATTR Function on page 191-117	Casts the node to an Attribute
MAKECDATASECTION Function on page 191-118	Casts the node to a CData Section
MAKECHARACTERDATA Function on page 191-119	Casts the node to Character Data

Table 191–4 (Cont.) Summary of DOMNode Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Subprogram	Description
MAKECOMMENT Function on page 191-120	Casts the node to a Comment
MAKEDOCUMENT Function on page 191-121	Casts the node to a DOM Document
MAKEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function on page 191-122	Casts the node to a DOM Document Fragment
MAKEDOCUMENTTYPE Function on page 191-123	Casts the node to a DOM Document Type
MAKEELEMENT Function on page 191-124	Casts the node to a DOM Element
MAKEENTITY Function on page 191-125	Casts the node to a DOM Entity
MAKEENTITYREFERENCE Function on page 191-126	Casts the node to a DOM Entity Reference
MAKENOTATION Function on page 191-130	Casts the node to a DOM Notation
MAKEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function on page 191-131	Casts the node to a DOM Processing Instruction
MAKETEXT Function on page 191-132	Casts the node to a DOM Text
REMOVECHILD Function on page 191-137	Removes a specified child from a node
REPLACECHILD Function on page 191-139	Replaces the old child with a new child
SETNODEVALUE Procedure on page 191-148	Sets the Value of the node
SETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-149	Sets the Node Value as binary stream
SETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-150	Sets the Node Value as a character stream
SETPREFIX Procedure on page 191-151	Sets the namespace prefix
USEBINARYSTREAM Function on page 191-157	Establishes that the stream is valid
WRITETOBUFFER Procedures on page 191-158	Writes the contents of the node to a buffer
WRITETOCLOB Procedures on page 191-159	Writes the contents of the node to a `CLOB`
WRITETOFILE Procedures on page 191-160	Writes the contents of the node to a file

DOMAttr Subprograms

Table 191–5 Summary of DOMAttr Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
GETEXPANDEDNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-73	Retrieves the expanded name of the attribute
GETLOCALNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-78	Retrieves the local name of the attribute
GETNAME Functions on page 191-79	Retrieves the name of the attribute
GETNAMESPACE Procedure and Functions on page 191-81	Retrieves the NS URI of the attribute
GETOWNERELEMENT Function on page 191-92	Retrieves the Element node, parent of the attribute
GETQUALIFIEDNAME Functions on page 191-97	Retrieves the Qualified Name of the attribute
GETSPECIFIED Function on page 191-99	Tests if attribute was specified in the element
GETVALUE Function on page 191-103	Retrieves the value of the attribute
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the Attribute node is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the Attribute to a node
SETVALUE Procedure on page 191-153	Sets the value of the attribute

DOMCDataSection Subprograms

Table 191–6 Summary of DOMCdata Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the `CDataSection` is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the `CDatasection` to a node

DOMCharacterData Subprograms

Table 191–7 Summary of DOMCharacterData Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
APPENDDATA Procedure on page 191-43	Appends the specified data to the node data
DELETEDATA Procedure on page 191-54	Deletes the data from the specified offSets
GETDATA Functions on page 191-68	Retrieves the data of the node
GETLENGTH Functions on page 191-77	Retrieves the length of the data
INSERTDATA Procedure on page 191-112	Inserts the data in the node at the specified offSets
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the CharacterData is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the CharacterData to a node
REPLACEDATA Procedure on page 191-140	Changes a range of characters in the node
SETDATA Procedures on page 191-145	Sets the data to the node
SUBSTRINGDATA Function on page 191-156	Retrieves the substring of the data

DOMComment Subprograms

Table 191–8 Summary of DOMComment Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the comment is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the Comment to a node

DOMDocument Subprograms

Table 191–9 Summary of DOMDocument Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
CREATEATTRIBUTE Functions on page 191-45	Creates an Attribute
CREATECDATASECTION Function on page 191-46	Creates a `CDataSection` node
CREATECOMMENT Function on page 191-47	Creates a Comment node
CREATEDOCUMENT Function on page 191-48	Creates a new Document
CREATEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function on page 191-49	Creates a new Document Fragment
CREATEELEMENT Functions on page 191-50	Creates a new Element
CREATEENTITYREFERENCE Function on page 191-51	Creates an Entity reference
CREATEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function on page 191-52	Creates a Processing Instruction
CREATETEXTNODE Function on page 191-53	Creates a Text node
FREEDOCFRAG Procedure on page 191-57	Frees the document fragment
FREEDOCUMENT Procedure on page 191-58	Frees the document
GETCHARSET Function on page 191-65	Retrieves the characterset of the `DOM` document
GETDOCTYPE Function on page 191-69	Retrieves the DTD of the document
GETDOCUMENTELEMENT Function on page 191-70	Retrieves the root element of the document
GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME Functions on page 191-71	Retrieves ▪ the elements in the DOMNODELIST by tag name ▪ elements in the subtree of a DOMNODELIST by tagname
GETIMPLEMENTATION Function on page 191-75	Retrieves the DOM implementation
GETSTANDALONE Function on page 191-100	Retrieves the standalone property of the document
GETVERSION Function on page 191-104	Retrieves the version of the document
GETXMLTYPE Function on page 191-105	Retrieves the `XMLType` associated with the DOM Document
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the document is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the document to a node
NEWDOMDOCUMENT Functions on page 191-133	Creates a new document
SETCHARSET Procedure on page 191-144	Sets the characterset of the `DOM` document
SETDOCTYPE Procedure on page 191-146	Sets the DTD of the document
SETSTANDALONE Procedure on page 191-152	Sets the standalone property of the document

Table 191–9 (Cont.) Summary of DOMDocument Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
SETVERSION Procedure on page 191-154	Sets the version of the document
WRITETOBUFFER Procedures on page 191-158	Writes the document to a buffer
WRITETOCLOB Procedures on page 191-159	Writes the document to a `CLOB`
WRITETOFILE Procedures on page 191-160	Writes the document to a file

DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms

Table 191–10 Summary of DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
FREEDOCFRAG Procedure on page 191-57	Frees the specified document fragment
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the DocumentFragment is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the Document Fragment to a node
WRITETOBUFFER Procedures on page 191-158	Writes the contents of a document fragment into a buffer

DOMDocumentType Subprograms

Table 191–11 Summary of DOMDocumentType Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
FINDENTITY Function on page 191-55	Finds the specified entity in the document type
FINDNOTATION Function on page 191-56	Finds the specified notation in the document type
GETENTITIES Function on page 191-72	Retrieves the nodemap of entities in the Document type
GETNAME Functions on page 191-79	Retrieves the name of the Document type
GETNOTATIONS Function on page 191-89	Retrieves the nodemap of the notations in the Document type
GETPUBLICID Functions on page 191-96	Retrieves the public ID of the document type
GETSYSTEMID Functions on page 191-101	Retrieves the system ID of the document type
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the Document Type is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the document type to a node

DOMElement Subprograms

Table 191–12 Summary of DOMElement Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
FREEELEMENT Procedure on page 191-59	Frees memory allocated to a DOMElement handle
GETATTRIBUTE Functions on page 191-62	Retrieves the attribute node by name
GETATTRIBUTENODE Functions on page 191-63	Retrieves the attribute node by name
GETCHILDRENBYTAGNAME Functions on page 191-67	Retrieves children of the element by tag name
GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME Functions on page 191-71	Retrieves ▪ the elements in the DOMNODELIST by tag name ▪ elements in the subtree of a DOMNODELIST by tagname
GETEXPANDEDNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-73	Retrieves the expanded name of the element
GETLOCALNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-78	Retrieves the local name of the element
GETNAMESPACE Procedure and Functions on page 191-81	Retrieves the NS URI of the element
GETQUALIFIEDNAME Functions on page 191-97	Retrieves the qualified name of the element
GETTAGNAME Function on page 191-102	Retrieves the Tag name of the element
HASATTRIBUTE Functions on page 191-106	Tests if an attribute exists
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the Element is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the Element to a node
NORMALIZE Procedure on page 191-134	Normalizes the text children of the element
REMOVEATTRIBUTE Procedures on page 191-135	Removes the attribute specified by the name
REMOVEATTRIBUTENODE Function on page 191-136	Removes the attribute node in the element
RESOLVENAMESPACEPREFIX Function on page 191-141	Resolve the prefix to a namespace URI
SETATTRIBUTE Procedures on page 191-142	Sets the attribute specified by the name
SETATTRIBUTENODE Functions on page 191-143	Sets the attribute node in the element

DOMEntity Subprograms

Table 191–13 Summary of DOMEntity Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
GETNOTATIONNAME Function on page 191-88	Retrieves the notation name of the entity
GETPUBLICID Functions on page 191-96	Retrieves the public Id of the entity
GETSYSTEMID Functions on page 191-101	Retrieves the system Id of the entity
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the Entity is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the Entity to a node

DOMEntityReference Subprograms

Table 191–14 Summary of DOMEntityReference Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the `DOMEntityReference` is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the `DOMEntityReference` to `NULL`

DOMImplementation Subprograms

Table 191–15 Summary of DOMImplementation Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the `DOMImplementation` node is `NULL`
HASFEATURE Function on page 191-109	Tests if the `DOMImplementation` implements a feature

DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms

Table 191–16 Summary of DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
GETLENGTH Functions on page 191-77	Retrieves the number of items in the map
GETNAMEDITEM Function on page 191-80	Retrieves the item specified by the name
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the `NamedNodeMap` is `NULL`
ITEM Functions on page 191-116	Retrieves the item given the index in the map
REMOVENAMEDITEM Function on page 191-138	Removes the item specified by name
SETNAMEDITEM Function on page 191-147	Sets the item in the map specified by the name

DOMNodeList Subprograms

Table 191–17 Summary of DOMNodeList Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
FREENODELIST Procedure on page 191-61	Frees all resources associated with a nodelist
GETLENGTH Functions on page 191-77	Retrieves the number of items in the list
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the `NodeList` is `NULL`
ITEM Functions on page 191-116	Retrieves the item given the index in the list

DOMNotation Subprograms

Table 191–18 Summary of DOMNotation Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
GETPUBLICID Functions on page 191-96	Retrieves the public Id of the notation
GETSYSTEMID Functions on page 191-101	Retrieves the system Id of the notation
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the Notation is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the notation to a node

DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms

Table 191–19 Summary of DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
GETDATA Functions on page 191-68	Retrieves the data of the processing instruction
GETTARGET Function on page 191-90	Retrieves the target of the processing instruction
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the Processing Instruction is `NULL`
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the Processing Instruction to a node
SETDATA Procedures on page 191-145	Sets the data of the processing instruction

DOMText Subprograms

Table 191–20 Summary of DOMText Subprograms; DBMS_XMLDOM

Method	Description
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests if the text is NULL
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts the text to a node
SPLITTEXT Function on page 191-155	Splits the contents of the text node into 2 text nodes

Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Subprograms

Table 191–21 Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
ADOPTNODE Function on page 191-41	Adopts a node from another document	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
APPENDCHILD Function on page 191-42	Appends a new child to the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
APPENDDATA Procedure on page 191-43	Appends the specified data to the node data	DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15
CLONENODE Function on page 191-44	Clones the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
CREATEATTRIBUTE Functions on page 191-45	Creates an Attribute	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATECDATASECTION Function on page 191-46	Creates a `CDataSection` node	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATECOMMENT Function on page 191-47	Creates a Comment node	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATEDOCUMENT Function on page 191-48	Creates a new Document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function on page 191-49	Creates a new Document Fragment	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATEELEMENT Functions on page 191-50	Creates a new Element	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATEENTITYREFERENCE Function on page 191-51	Creates an Entity reference	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function on page 191-52	Creates a Processing Instruction	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
CREATETEXTNODE Function on page 191-53	Creates a Text node	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
DELETEDATA Procedure on page 191-54	Deletes the data from the specified offSets	DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15
FINDENTITY Function on page 191-55	Finds the specified entity in the document type	DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20
FINDNOTATION Function on page 191-56	Finds the specified notation in the document type	DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
FREEDOCFRAG Procedure on page 191-57	Frees the document fragment	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17 and DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19
FREEDOCUMENT Procedure on page 191-58	Frees the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
FREEELEMENT Procedure on page 191-59	Frees memory allocated to a DOMElement handle	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
FREENODE Procedure on page 191-60	Frees all resources associated with the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
FREENODELIST Procedure on page 191-61	Frees all resources associated with a nodelist	DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26
GETATTRIBUTE Functions on page 191-62	Retrieves the attribute node by name	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETATTRIBUTENODE Functions on page 191-63	Retrieves the attribute node by name	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETATTRIBUTES Function on page 191-64	Retrieves the attributes of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETCHARSET Function on page 191-65	Retrieves the characterset of the `DOM` document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
GETCHILDNODES Function on page 191-66	Retrieves the children of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETCHILDRENBYTAGNAME Functions on page 191-67	Retrieves children of the element by tag name	DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15
GETDATA Functions on page 191-68	Retrieves ▪ the data of the node ▪ the data of the processing instruction	▪ DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15 ▪ DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28
GETDOCTYPE Function on page 191-69	Retrieves the DTD of the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
GETDOCUMENTELEMENT Function on page 191-70	Retrieves the root element of the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME Functions on page 191-71	Retrieves ■ the elements in the DOMNODELIST by tag name ■ elements in the subtree of a DOMNODELIST by tagname	■ DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17 ■ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETENTITIES Function on page 191-72	Retrieves the nodemap of entities in the Document type	DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20
GETEXPANDEDNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-73	Retrieves ■ the expanded name of the node ■ the expanded name of the attribute ■ the expanded name of the element	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ■ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETFIRSTCHILD Function on page 191-74	Retrieves the first child of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETIMPLEMENTATION Function on page 191-75	Retrieves the DOM implementation	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
GETLASTCHILD Function on page 191-76	Retrieves the last child of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETLENGTH Functions on page 191-77	Retrieves ■ the length of the data ■ the number of items in the map ■ the number of items in the list	■ DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15 ■ DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25 ■ DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26
GETLOCALNAME Procedure and Functions on page 191-78	Retrieves ■ the local part of the qualified name ■ the local name of the attribute ■ the local name of the element	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ■ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETNAME Functions on page 191-79	Retrieves ■ the name of the attribute ■ the name of the Document type	■ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ■ DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
GETNAMEDITEM Function on page 191-80	Retrieves ■ an item specified by name ■ and namespace URI on page 191-25)	■ DOMNamedNodeMap ubprograms on page 191-25 ■ DOMNamedNodeMap ubprograms
GETNAMESPACE Procedure and Functions on page 191-81	Retrieves ■ the node's namespace URI ■ the NS URI of the attribute ■ the NS URI of the element	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ■ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETNEXTSIBLING Function on page 191-82	Retrieves the next sibling of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETNODENAME Function on page 191-84	Retrieves the Name of the Node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETNODETYPE Function on page 191-83	Retrieves the Type of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETNODEVALUE Function on page 191-85	Retrieves the Value of the Node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETNODEVALUEASBINARY STREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-86	Retrieves the Node Value as binary stream	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETNODEVALUEASCHARA CTERSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-87	Retrieves the Node Value as character stream	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETNOTATIONNAME Function on page 191-88	Retrieves the notation name of the entity	DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22
GETNOTATIONS Function on page 191-89	Retrieves the nodemap of the notations in the Document type	DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20
GETTARGET Function on page 191-90	Retrieves the target of the processing instruction	DOMProcessingInstructio n Subprograms on page 191-28
GETOWNERDOCUMENT Function on page 191-91	Retrieves the owner document of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETOWNERELEMENT Function on page 191-92	Retrieves the Element node, parent of the attribute	DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13
GETPARENTNODE Function on page 191-93	Retrieves the parent of this node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETPREFIX Function on page 191-94	Retrieves the namespace prefix)	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETPREVIOUSSIBLING Function on page 191-95	Retrieves the previous sibling of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
GETPUBLICID Functions on page 191-96	Retrieves ▪ the public ID of the document type ▪ the public Id of the entity ▪ the public Id of the notation	▪ DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20 ▪ DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22 ▪ DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27
GETQUALIFIEDNAME Functions on page 191-97	Retrieves ▪ the Qualified Name of the attribute ▪ the qualified name of the element	▪ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ▪ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETSCHEMANODE Function on page 191-98	Retrieves the associated schema URI	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
GETSPECIFIED Function on page 191-99	Tests if attribute was specified in the element.	DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13
GETSTANDALONE Function on page 191-100	Retrieves the standalone property of the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
GETSYSTEMID Functions on page 191-101	Retrieves ▪ the system ID of the document type ▪ the system Id of the entity ▪ the system Id of the notation	▪ DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20 ▪ DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22 ▪ DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27
GETTAGNAME Function on page 191-102	Retrieves the Tag name of the element	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
GETVALUE Function on page 191-103	Retrieves the value of the attribute	DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13
GETVERSION Function on page 191-104	Retrieves the version of the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17)
GETXMLTYPE Function on page 191-105	Retrieves the `XMLType` associated with the DOM Document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
HASATTRIBUTES Function on page 191-107	Tests if the node has attributes	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
HASATTRIBUTE Functions on page 191-106	Tests if an attribute exists	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
HASCHILDNODES Function on page 191-108	Tests if the node has child nodes	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
HASFEATURE Function on page 191-109	Tests if the `DOMImplementation` implements a feature	DOMImplementation Subprograms on page 191-24
IMPORTNODE Function on page 191-110	Imports a node from another document	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
INSERTBEFORE Function on page 191-111	Inserts a child before the reference child	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
INSERTDATA Procedure on page 191-112	Inserts the data in the node at the specified offSets	DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
ISNULL Functions on page 191-113	Tests ■ if the node is NULL ■ if the Attribute node is NULL ■ if the CDataSection is NULL ■ if the CharacterData is NULL ■ if the comment is NULL ■ if the document is NULL ■ if the DocumentFragment is NULL ■ if the Document Type is NULL ■ if the Element is NULL ■ if the Entity is NULL ■ if the DOMEntityReference is NULL ■ if the DOMImplementation node is NULL ■ if the NamedNodeMap is NULL ■ if the NodeList is NULL ■ if the Notation is NULL ■ if the Processing Instruction is NULL ■ if the text is NULL	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ■ DOMCDataSection Subprograms on page 191-14 ■ DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15 ■ DOMComment Subprograms on page 191-16 ■ DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17 ■ DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19 ■ DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20 ■ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21 ■ DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22 ■ DOMEntityReference Subprograms on page 191-23 ■ DOMImplementation Subprograms on page 191-24 ■ DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25 ■ DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26 ■ DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27 ■ DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28 ■ DOMText Subprograms on page 191-29

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
ITEM Functions on page 191-116	Retrieves ▪ the item given the index in the map ▪ the item given the index in the `NodeList`	▪ DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25 ▪ DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26
MAKEATTR Function on page 191-117	Casts the node to an Attribute	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKECDATASECTION Function on page 191-118	Casts the node to a CData Section	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKECHARACTERDATA Function on page 191-119	Casts the node to Character Data	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKECOMMENT Function on page 191-120	Casts the node to a Comment	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKEDOCUMENT Function on page 191-121	Casts the node to a DOM Document	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function on page 191-122	Casts the node to a DOM Document Fragment	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11)
MAKEDOCUMENTTYPE Function on page 191-123	Casts the node to a DOM Document Type	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKEELEMENT Function on page 191-124	Casts the node to a DOM ElemenT	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKEENTITY Function on page 191-125	Casts the node to a DOM Entity	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKEENTITYREFERENCE Function on page 191-126	Casts the node to a DOM Entity Reference	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
MAKENODE Functions on page 191-127	Casts ■ the Attribute to a node ■ the `CDatasection` to a node ■ the CharacterData to a node ■ the Comment to a node ■ the document to a node ■ the Document Fragment to a node ■ the document type to a node ■ the Element to a node ■ the Entity to a node ■ ■ the `DOMEntityReference` to `NULL` ■ the notation to a node ■ the Processing Instruction to a node ■ the text to a node	■ DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13 ■ DOMCDataSection Subprograms on page 191-14 ■ DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15 ■ DOMComment Subprograms on page 191-16 ■ DOMDocument Subprograms on page 17 ■ DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19 ■ DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20 ■ DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21 ■ DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22 ■ DOMEntityReference Subprograms on page 191-23 ■ DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27 ■ DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28 ■ DOMText Subprograms on page 191-29
MAKENOTATION Function on page 191-130	Casts the node to a DOM Notation	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function on page 191-131	Casts the node to a DOM Processing Instruction	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
MAKETEXT Function on page 191-132	Casts the node to a DOM Text	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
NEWDOMDOCUMENT Functions on page 191-133	Creates a new document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
NORMALIZE Procedure on page 191-134	Normalizes the text children of the element	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
REMOVEATTRIBUTE Procedures on page 191-135	Removes the attribute specified by the name	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
REMOVEATTRIBUTENODE Function on page 191-136	Removes the attribute node in the element	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
REMOVECHILD Function on page 191-137	Removes a specified child from a node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
REMOVENAMEDITEM Function on page 191-138	Removes the item specified by name	DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25
REPLACECHILD Function on page 191-139	Replaces the old child with a new child	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
REPLACEDATA Procedure on page 191-140	Changes a range of characters in the node	DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15
RESOLVENAMESPACEPREFIX Function on page 191-141	Resolve the prefix to a namespace URI	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
SETATTRIBUTE Procedures on page 191-142	Sets the attribute specified by the name	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
SETATTRIBUTENODE Functions on page 191-143	Sets the attribute node in the element	DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21
SETCHARSET Procedure on page 191-144	Sets the characterset of the `DOM` document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
SETDATA Procedures on page 191-145	Sets ■ the data to the node ■ the data of the processing instruction	■ DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15 ■ DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28
SETDOCTYPE Procedure on page 191-146	Sets the DTD of the document.	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
SETNAMEDITEM Function on page 191-147	Sets the item in the map specified by the name	DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25
SETNODEVALUE Procedure on page 191-148	Sets the Value of the node	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
SETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-149	Sets the Node Value as a binary stream	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
SETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure on page 191-150	Sets the Node Value as a character stream	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
SETPREFIX Procedure on page 191-151	Sets the namespace prefix	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Table 191–21 (Cont.) Summary of DBMS_XMLDOM Package Subprogram

Subprogram	Description	Group
SETSTANDALONE Procedure on page 191-152	Sets the standalone property of the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
SETVALUE Procedure on page 191-153	Sets the value of the attribute	DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13
SETVERSION Procedure on page 191-154	Sets the version of the document	DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
SPLITTEXT Function on page 191-155	Splits the contents of the text node into 2 text nodes	DOMText Subprograms on page 191-29
SUBSTRINGDATA Function on page 191-156	Retrieves the substring of the data	DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15
USEBINARYSTREAM Function on page 191-157	Strabismus that the stream is valid for use	DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11
WRITETOBUFFER Procedures on page 191-158	Writes ■ the contents of the node to a buffer ■ the document to a buffer ■ the contents of a document fragment into a buffer	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17 ■ DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19
WRITETOCLOB Procedures on page 191-159	Writes ■ the contents of the node to a `CLOB` ■ the document to a `CLOB`	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17
WRITETOFILE Procedures on page 191-160	Writes ■ the contents of the node to a file ■ the document to a file	■ DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 ■ DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

ADOPTNODE Function

This function adopts a node from another document, and returns this new node.

> **See Also:** DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ADOPTNODE(
   doc             IN   DOMDocument,
   importedNode    IN   DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–22 ADOPTNODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	Document that is adopting the node
importedNode	Node to adopt

Usage Notes

Note that the ADOPTNODE Function removes the node from the source document while the IMPORTNODE Function clones the node in the source document.

APPENDCHILD Function

This function adds the node `newchild` to the end of the list of children of this node, and returns the newly added node. If the `newchild` is already in the tree, it is first removed.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.APPENDCHILD(
   n          IN    DOMNode,
   newchild   IN    DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–23 APPENDCHILD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	`DOMNode`
`newchild`	The child to be appended to the list of children of node `n`

APPENDDATA Procedure

This procedure appends the string to the end of the character data of the node. Upon success, data provides access to the concatenation of data and the specified string argument.

See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.APPENDDATA(
   cd      IN    DOMCHARACTERDATA,
   arg     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–24 APPENDDATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA
arg	The data to append to the existing data

CLONENODE Function

This function returns a duplicate of this node, and serves as a generic copy constructor for nodes. The duplicate node has no parent, its parent node is NULL.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CLONENODE(
   n        IN    DOMNODE,
   deep     IN    BOOLEAN)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–25 CLONENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
deep	Determines if children are to be cloned

Usage Notes

- Cloning an Element copies all attributes and their values, including those generated by the XML processor to represent defaulted attributes, but this method does not copy any text it contains unless it is a deep clone, since the text is contained in a child Text node.
- Cloning an Attribute directly, as opposed to be cloned as part of an Element cloning operation, returns a specified attribute (specified is TRUE).
- Cloning any other type of node simply returns a copy of this node.

CREATEATTRIBUTE Functions

This function creates a DOMATTR node.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

Creates a DOMATTR with the specified name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEATTRIBUTE(
   doc      IN    DOMDOCUMENT,
   name     IN    VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Creates a DOMATTR with the specified name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEATTRIBUTE(
   doc      IN    DOMDOCUMENT,
   qname     IN    VARCHAR2,
   ns       IN     VARCHAR2)
RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Parameters

Table 191–26 CREATEATTRIBUTE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
qname	New attribute qualified name
ns	Namespace

CREATECDATASECTION Function

This function creates a DOMCDATASECTION node.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATECDATASECTION(
   doc      IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   data     IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMCDATASECTION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–27 CREATECDATASECTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
data	Content of the DOMCDATASECTION node

CREATECOMMENT Function

This function creates a DOMCOMMENT node.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATECOMMENT(
   doc      IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   data     IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMCOMMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–28 CREATECOMMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
data	Content of the DOMComment node

CREATEDOCUMENT Function

This function creates a DOMDOCUMENT with specified namespace URI, root element name, DTD.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEDOCUMENT(
   namespaceURI       IN     VARCHAR2,
   qualifiedName      IN     VARCHAR2,
   doctype            IN     DOMTYPE := NULL)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–29 CREATEDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
namespaceURI	Namespace URI
qualifiedName	Root element name
doctype	Document type

CREATEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function

This function creates a DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT(
   doc       IN      DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–30 CREATEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDocument

CREATEELEMENT Functions

This function creates a DOMELEMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

Creates a DOMElement with specified name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEELEMENT(
   doc         IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   tagName     IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMELEMENT;
```

Creates a DOMElement with specified name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEELEMENT(
   doc         IN     DOMDOCUMENT,
   tagName     IN     VARCHAR2,
   ns          IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMELEMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–31 CREATEELEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
tagName	Tagname for new DOMELEMENT
ns	Namespace

CREATEENTITYREFERENCE Function

This function creates a DOMENTITYREFERENCE node.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEENTITYREFERENCE(
   doc         IN     DOMDOCUMENT,
   name        IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMENTITYREFERENCE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–32 CREATEENTITYREFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
name	New entity reference name

CREATEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function

This function creates a DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION node.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION(
   doc       IN      DOMDocument,
   target    IN      VARCHAR2,
   data      IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–33 CREATEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
target	Target of the new processing instruction
data	Content data of the new processing instruction

CREATETEXTNODE Function

This function creates a DOMTEXT node.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.CREATETEXTNODE(
   doc      IN     DOMDocument,
   data     IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMTEXT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–34 CREATETEXTNODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
data	Content of the DOMText node

DELETEDATA Procedure

This procedure removes a range of characters from the node. Upon success, data and length reflect the change.

See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.DELETEDATA(
   cd         IN     DOMCHARACTERDATA,
   offset     IN     NUMBER,
   cnt        IN     NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 191–35 DELETEDATA PROCEDURE Parameters

Parameter	Description
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA
offset	The offset from which to delete the data
cnt	The number of characters (starting from offset) to delete

FINDENTITY Function

This function finds an entity in the specified DTD, and returns that entity if found.

See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FINDENTITY(
   dt      IN     DOMDOCUMENTTYPE,
   name    IN     VARCHAR2,
   par     IN     BOOLEAN)
 RETURN  DOMENTITY;
```

Parameters

Table 191–36 FINDENTITY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dt	The DTD
name	Entity to find
par	Flag to indicate type of entity; TRUE for parameter entity and FALSE for normal entity

FINDNOTATION Function

This function finds the notation in the specified DTD, and returns it, if found.

See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FINDNOTATION(
   dt         IN     DOMDocumentType,
   name       IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNOTATION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–37 FINDNOTATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dt	The DTD
name	The notation to find

FREEDOCFRAG Procedure

This procedure frees the specified document fragment.

> **See Also:** DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17 and DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FREEDOCFRAG(
   df     IN     DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT);
```

Parameters

Table 191–38 FREEDOCFRAG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
df	DOM document fragment

FREEDOCUMENT Procedure

This procedure frees DOMDOCUMENT object.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FREEDOCUMENT(
   doc      IN      DOMDOCUMENT);
```

Parameters

Table 191–39 FREEDOCUMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

FREEELEMENT Procedure

This procedure frees memory allocated to a DOMElement handle.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FREENODE(
   elem      IN     DOMELEMENT);
```

Parameters

Table 191–40 FREENODE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	Of type DOMELEMENT

FREENODE Procedure

This procedure frees all resources associated with a DOMNODE.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FREENODE(
   n       IN      DOMNODE);
```

Parameters

Table 191–41 FREENODE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

FREENODELIST Procedure

This procedure frees all resources associated with a nodelist.

See Also: DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.FREENODE(
   nl     IN     DOMNodeList);
```

Parameters

Table 191–42 FREENODE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
nl	Of type DOMNODELIST

GETATTRIBUTE Functions

This function returns the value of an attribute of an DOMELEMENT by name.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Returns the value of a DOMELEMENT's attribute by name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETATTRIBUTE(
   elem       IN      DOMELEMENT,
   name       IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the value of a DOMELEMENT's attribute by name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETATTRIBUTE(
   elem      IN     DOMELEMENT,
   name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   ns        IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–43 GETATTRIBUTE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
name	Attribute name
ns	Namespace

GETATTRIBUTENODE Functions

This function returns an attribute node from the DOMELEMENT by name. The function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Returns an attribute node from the DOMELEMENT by name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETATTRIBUTENODE(
   elem      IN     DOMElement,
   name      IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Returns an attribute node from the DOMELEMENT by name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETATTRIBUTENODE(
   elem      IN     DOMElement,
   name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   ns        IN     VARCHAR2)
RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Parameters

Table 191–44 GETATTRIBUTENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
name	Attribute name; * matches any attribute
ns	Namespace

GETATTRIBUTES Function

This function retrieves a NAMEDNODEMAP containing the attributes of this node (if it is an Element) or NULL otherwise.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETATTRIBUTES(
   n       IN      DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMNAMEDNODEMAP;
```

Parameters

Table 191–45 GETATTRIBUTES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETCHARSET Function

This function retrieves the characterset of the DOM document.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETCHARSET(
   doc IN    DOMDocument)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–46 GETCHARSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOM document

Usage Notes

For a newly parsed document, we return the database characterset. Once the SETCHARSET Procedure is called with a non-NULL value for charset, that charset is returned.

GETCHILDNODES Function

This function retrieves a DOMNODELIST that contains all children of this node. If there are no children, this is a DOMNODELIST containing no nodes.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETCHILDNODES(
   n       IN     DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMNodeList;
```

Parameters

Table 191–47 GETCHILDNODES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETCHILDRENBYTAGNAME Functions

This function returns the children of the DOMELEMENT.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Returns children of the DOMELEMENT given the tag name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETCHILDRENBYTAGNAME(
   elem      IN      DOMElement,
   name      IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNODELIST;
```

Returns children of the DOMELEMENT given the tag name and namespace:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETCHILDRENBYTAGNAME(
   elem      IN      DOMElement,
   name      IN      VARCHAR2,
   ns        IN      VARCHAR2)
RETURN DOMNODELIST;
```

Parameters

Table 191–48 GETCHILDRENBYTAGNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	DOMELEMENT
name	Tag name
ns	Namespace

GETDATA Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Gets the character data of the node that implements this interface (See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETDATA(
   cd      IN    DOMCHARACTERDATA)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the content data of the `DOMProcessingInstruction` (See Also: DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETDATA(
   pi      IN    DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–49 GETDATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`cd`	`DOMCHARACTERDATA`
`pi`	The `DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION`

GETDOCTYPE Function

This function returns the DTD associated to the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETDOCTYPE(
   doc       IN      DOMDOCUMENT)
RETURN DOMDOCUMENTTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–50 GETDOCTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

GETDOCUMENTELEMENT Function

This function returns the root element of the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETDOCUMENTELEMENT(
   doc       IN       DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN DOMELEMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–51 GETDOCUMENTELEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Returns a DOMNODELIST of all the elements with a specified tagname (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME(
   doc          IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   tagname      IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNODELIST;
```

Returns the element children of the DOMELEMENT given the tag name (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT,
   name       IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNODELIST;
```

Returns the element children of the DOMELEMENT given the tag name and namespace (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT,
   name       IN     VARCHAR2,
   ns         IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNODELIST;
```

Parameters

Table 191–52 GETELEMENTSBYTAGNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
tagname	Name of the tag to match on
elem	The DOMELEMENT
name	Tag name; using a wildcard(*) would match any tag
ns	Namespace

GETENTITIES Function

This function retrieves a DOMNAMEDNODEMAP containing the general entities, both external and internal, declared in the DTD.

See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETENTITIES(
   dt       IN     DOMDocumentType)
 RETURN DOMNAMEDNODEMAP;
```

Parameters

Table 191–53 GETENTITIES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dt	DOMDOCUMENTTYPE

GETEXPANDEDNAME Procedure and Functions

This subprogram is overloaded as a procedure and two functions. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Retrieves the expanded name of the `Node` if is in an `Element` or `Attribute` type; otherwise, returns `NULL` (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11)

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETEXPANDEDNAME(
   n       IN      DOMNODE
   data    OUT     VARCHAR);
```

Returns the expanded name of the `DOMAttr` (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETEXPANDEDNAME(
   a       IN     DOMAttr)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the expanded name of the `DOMElement` (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETEXPANDEDNAME(
   elem      IN    DOMELEMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–54 GETEXPANDEDNAME Procedure and Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
data	Returned expanded name of the `Node`
a	DOMATTR
elem	DOMELEMENT

GETFIRSTCHILD Function

This function retrieves the first child of this node. If there is no such node, this returns NULL.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETFIRSTCHILD(
   n       IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–55 GETFIRSTCHILD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETIMPLEMENTATION Function

This function returns the DOMIMPLEMENTATION object that handles this DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETIMPLEMENTATION(
   doc      IN     DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN DOMIMPLEMENTATION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–56 GETIMPLEMENTATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

GETLASTCHILD Function

This function retrieves the last child of this node. If there is no such node, this returns NULL.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLASTCHILD(
   n      IN    DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–57 GETLASTCHILD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETLENGTH Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Gets the number of characters in the data. This may have the value zero, because CharacterData nodes may be empty (See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLENGTH(
   cd      IN      DOMCHARACTERDATA)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Gets the number of nodes in this map. The range of valid child node indexes is `0` to `length-1`, inclusive (See Also: DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLENGTH(
   nnm       IN      DOMNAMEDNODEMAP)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Gets the number of nodes in the list. The range of valid child node indexes is `0` to `length-1`, inclusive (See Also: DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLENGTH(
   nl      IN     DOMNODELIST)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 191–58 GETLENGTH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA
nnm	DOMNAMEDNODEMAP
nl	DOMNODELIST

GETLOCALNAME Procedure and Functions

This function is overloaded as a procedure and two functions. The specific forms of functionality are described alongside the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Retrieves the local part of the node's qualified name (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLOCALNAME(
   n        IN     DOMNODE,
   data     OUT    VARCHAR2);
```

Returns the local name of the `DOMAttr` (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLOCALNAME(
   a        IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the local name of the `DOMElement` (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21)

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETLOCALNAME(
   elem        IN     DOMELEMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–59 GETLOCALNAME Procedure and Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNode
data	Returned local name.
a	DOMAttr.
elem	DOMElement.

GETNAME Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described alongside the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Returns the name of this attribute (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAME(
   a        IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Retrieves the name of DTD, or the name immediately following the `DOCTYPE` keyword (See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAME(
   dt       IN     DOMDOCUMENTTYPE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–60 GETNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	DOMATTR
dt	DOMDOCUMENTTYPE

GETNAMEDITEM Function

This function retrieves a node specified by name.

See Also: DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25

Syntax

Retrieves a node specified by name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAMEDITEM(
   nnm    IN  DOMNAMEDNODEMAP,
   name   IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Retrieves a node specified by name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAMEDITEM(
   nnm    IN  DOMNAMEDNODEMAP,
   name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   ns     IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–61 GETNAMEDITEM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
nnm	DOMNAMEDNODEMAP
name	Name of the item to be retrieved
ns	Namespace

GETNAMESPACE Procedure and Functions

This subprogram is overloaded as a procedure and two functions. The specific forms of functionality are described alongside the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Retrieves the namespace URI associated with the node (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAMESPACE(
   n       IN     DOMNODE,
   data    OUT    VARCHAR2);
```

Retrieves the namespace of the DOMATTR (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAMESPACE(
   a       IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Retrieves the namespace of the DOMELEMENT (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNAMESPACE(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–62 GETNAMESPACE Procedure and Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
data	Returned namespace URI
a	DOMATTR
elem	DOMELEMENT

GETNEXTSIBLING Function

This function retrieves the node immediately following this node. If there is no such node, this returns `NULL`.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNEXTSIBLING(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Parameters

Table 191–63 GETNEXTSIBLING Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETNODETYPE Function

This function retrieves a code representing the type of the underlying object.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODETYPE(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 191–64 GETNODETYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETNODENAME Function

This function gets the name of the node depending on its type.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODENAME(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–65 GETNODENAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETNODEVALUE Function

This function gets the value of this node, depending on its type.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODEVALUE(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;*
```

Parameters

Table 191–66 GETNODEVALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure

The operation of these subprograms is described with each syntax implementation.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

This function returns an instance of the PL/SQL `XMLBinaryInputStream`. The node datatype must be `RAW` or `BLOB` – if not an exception is raised.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM (
   n      IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN SYS.UTL_BINARYINPUTSTREAM;
```

Using this procedure, the application passes an implementation of `SYS.UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM` into which XDB writes the contents of the node. The datatype of the node must be `RAW` or `CLOB` – if not an exception is raised.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM (
   n        in   DOMNODE,
   value    in   SYS.UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM);
```

Parameters

Table 191–67 GETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
value	BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM

GETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure

The operation of these subprograms is described with each syntax implementation.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

This function returns an instance of the PL/SQL `XMLCharacterInputStream`. If the node data is character it is converted to the current session character set. If the node data is not character data, it is first converted to character data.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM  (
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN SYS.UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM;
```

Using this procedure, the node data is converted, as necessary, to the session character set and then "pushed" into the `SYS.UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM`.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM  (
   n        IN   DOMNODE,
   value    IN   SYS.UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM);
```

Parameters

Table 191–68 GETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
value	CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM

GETNOTATIONNAME Function

This function returns the notation name of the DOMENTITY.

See Also: DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNOTATIONNAME(
   ent        IN     DOMENTITY)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–69 GETNOTATIONNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ent	DOMENTITY

GETNOTATIONS Function

This function retrieves a DOMNAMEDNODEMAP containing the notations declared in the DTD.

See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETNOTATIONS(
   dt        IN     DOMDOCUMENTTYPE)
 RETURN DOMNAMEDNODEMAP;
```

Parameters

Table 191–70 GETNOTATIONS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dt	DOMDOCUMENTTYPE

GETTARGET Function

This function returns the target of the DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION.

See Also: DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETTARGET(
   pi       IN     DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–71 GETTARGET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pi	DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION

GETOWNERDOCUMENT Function

This function retrieves the Document object associated with this node. This is also the Document object used to create new nodes. When this node is a Document or a Document Type that is not used with any Document yet, this is NULL.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETOWNERDOCUMENT(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–72 GETOWNERDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETOWNERELEMENT Function

This function retrieves the Element node to which the specified Attribute is attached.

See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETOWNERELEMENT(
   a        IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN DOMElement;
```

Parameters

Table 191–73 GETOWNERELEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	Attribute

GETPARENTNODE Function

This function retrieves the parent of this node. All nodes, except `Attr`, `Document`, `DocumentFragment`, `Entity`, and `Notation` may have a parent. However, if a node has just been created and not yet added to the tree, or if it has been removed from the tree, this is `NULL`.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETPARENTNODE(
   n       IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–74 GETPARENTNODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETPREFIX Function

This function retrieves the namespace prefix of the node.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETPREFIX(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–75 GETPREFIX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETPREVIOUSSIBLING Function

This function retrieves the node immediately preceding this node. If there is no such node, this returns `NULL`.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETPREVIOUSSIBLING(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–76 GETPREVIOUSSIBLING Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETPUBLICID Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Returns the public identifier of the specified DTD (See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETPUBLICID(
   dt       IN     DOMDOCUMENTTYPE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the public identifier of the DOMENTITY (See Also: DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETPUBLICID(
   ent      IN     DOMENTITY)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the public identifier of the DOMNOTATION (See Also: DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETPUBLICID(
   n        IN     DOMNOTATION)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–77 GETPUBLICID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dt	The DTD
ent	DOMENTITY
n	DOMNOTATION

GETQUALIFIEDNAME Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Returns the qualified name of the `DOMATTR` (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETQUALIFIEDNAME(
   a         IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the qualified name of the `DOMElement` (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETQUALIFIEDNAME(
   elem      IN     DOMELEMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–78 GETQUALIFIEDNAME Functions Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	DOMATTR
elem	DOMELEMENT

GETSCHEMANODE Function

This function retrieves the schema URI associated with the node.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETSCHEMANODE(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–79 GETSCHEMANODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

GETSPECIFIED Function

If this attribute was explicitly specified, a value in the original document, this is true; otherwise, it is false.

See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETSPECIFIED(
   a        IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 191–80 GETSPECIFIED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	DOMATTR

GETSTANDALONE Function

This function returns the standalone property associated with the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETSTANDALONE(
   doc        IN     DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–81 GETSTANDALONE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT.

GETSYSTEMID Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Returns the system id of the specified DTD (See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETSYSTEMID(
   dt        IN     DOMDOCUMENTTYPE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the system identifier of the DOMENTITY (See Also: DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETSYSTEMID(
   ent       IN     DOMENTITY)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Returns the system identifier of the DOMNOTATION (See Also: DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETSYSTEMID(
   n         IN     DOMNOTATION)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–82 GETSYSTEMID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dt	The DTD.
ent	DOMEntity.
n	DOMNotation.

GETTAGNAME Function

This function returns the name of the DOMELEMENT.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETTAGNAME(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–83 GETTAGNAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT

GETVALUE Function

This function retrieves the value of the attribute.

See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETVALUE(
   a        IN      DOMATTR)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–84 GETVALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	DOMATTR

GETVERSION Function

This function returns the version of the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETVERSION(
   doc        IN     DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–85 GETVERSION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

GETXMLTYPE Function

This function returns the `XMLType` associated with the `DOMDOCUMENT`.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.GETXMLTYPE(
   doc        IN      DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–86 GETXMLTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

HASATTRIBUTE Functions

Verifies whether an attribute has been defined for DOMELEMENT, or has a default value.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Verifies whether an attribute with the specified name has been defined for DOMElement:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.HASATTRIBUTE(
   elem     IN  DOMELEMENT,
   name     IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Verifies whether an attribute with specified name and namespace URI has been defined for DOMELEMENT; namespace enabled:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.HASATTRIBUTE(
   elem     IN  DOMELEMENT,
   name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   ns       IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–87 HASATTRIBUTE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
name	Attribute name; * matches any attribute
ns	Namespace

HASATTRIBUTES Function

This function returns whether this node has any attributes.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.HASATTRIBUTES(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 191–88 HASATTRIBUTES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

HASCHILDNODES Function

This function determines whether this node has any children.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.HASCHILDNODES(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 191–89 HASCHILDNODES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

HASFEATURE Function

This function tests if the DOMIMPLEMENTATION implements a specific feature.

See Also: DOMImplementation Subprograms on page 191-24

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.HASFEATURE(
   di       IN     DOMIMPLEMENTATION,
   feature  IN     VARCHAR2,
   version  IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 191–90 HASFEATURE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
di	DOMIMPLEMENTATION
feature	The feature to check for
version	The version of the DOM to check in

IMPORTNODE Function

This function imports a node from an external document and returns this new node.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.IMPORTNODE(
   doc             IN  DOMDOCUMENT,
   importedNode    IN  DOMNODE,
   deep            IN  BOOLEAN)
  RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–91 IMPORTNODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	Document from which the node is imported
importedNode	Node to import
deep	Setting for recursive import. ■ If this value is TRUE, the entire subtree of the node will be imported with the node. ■ If this value is FALSE, only the node itself will be imported.

Usage Notes

Note that the ADOPTNODE Function removes the node from the source document while the IMPORTNODE Function clones the node in the source document.

INSERTBEFORE Function

This function inserts the node `newchild` before the existing child node `refchild`. If `refchild` is `NULL`, insert `newchild` at the end of the list of children.

If `newchild` is a `DOCUMENTFRAGMENT` object, all of its children are inserted, in the same order, before `refchild`. If the `newchild` is already in the tree, it is first removed.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.INSERTBEFORE(
   n          IN     DOMNODE,
   newchild   IN     DOMNODE,
   refchild   IN     DOMNODE)
  RETURN DOMNode;
```

Parameters

Table 191–92 INSERTBEFORE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	`DOMNODE`
`newChild`	The child to be inserted in the `DOMNODE`
`refChild`	The reference node before which the `newchild` is to be inserted

INSERTDATA Procedure

This procedure inserts a string at the specified character offset.

See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.INSERTDATA(
   cd       IN     DOMCHARACTERDATA,
   offset   IN     NUMBER,
   arg      IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–93 INSERTDATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`cd`	`DOMCHARACTERDATA`
`offset`	The offset at which to insert the data
`arg`	The value to be inserted

ISNULL Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Checks if the specified DOMNODE is NULL. Returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
  n         IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMATTR is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   a        IN     DOMATTR)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMCDATASECTION is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMCDataSection Subprograms on page 191-14):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   cds      IN     DOMCDATASECTION)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMCHARACTERDATA is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   cd       IN     DOMCHARACTERDATA)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMCOMMENT is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMComment Subprograms on page 191-16):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   com       IN     DOMCOMMENT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMDOCUMENT is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   doc       IN     DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   df       IN     DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMDOCUMENTTYPE is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   dt       IN     DOMDOCUMENTTYPE)
```

```
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMELEMENT is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   elem     IN     DOMELEMENT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMENTITY is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   ent       IN     DOMENTITY)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMENTITYREFERENCE is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMEntityReference Subprograms on page 191-23):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   EREF       IN     DOMENTITYREFERENCE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMIMPLEMENTATION is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL (See Also: DOMImplementation Subprograms on page 191-24):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   di       IN     DOMIMPLEMENTATION)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMNAMEDNODEMAP is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   nnm       IN     DOMNAMEDNODEMAP)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMNODELIST is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   nl       IN     DOMNODELIST)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMNOTATION is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   n       IN     DOMNOTATION)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
   pi       IN     DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Checks that the specified DOMTEXT is NULL; returns TRUE if it is NULL, FALSE otherwise (See Also: DOMText Subprograms on page 191-29):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ISNULL(
```

```
   t       IN     DOMTEXT)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 191–94 ISNULL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to check
a	DOMATTR to check
cds	DOMCDATASECTION to check
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA to check
com	DOMCOMMENT to check
doc	DOMDOCUMENT to check
dF	DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT to check
dt	DOMDOCUMENTTYPE to check
elem	DOMELEMENT to check
ent	DOMENTITY to check
eref	DOMENTITYREFERENCE to check
di	DOMIMPLEMENTATION to check
nnm	DOMNAMENODEMAP to check
nl	DOMNODELIST to check
n	DOMNOTATION to check
pi	DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION to check
t	DOMTEXT to check

ITEM Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Returns the item in the map which corresponds to the `INDEX` parameter. If `INDEX` is greater than or equal to the number of nodes in this map, this returns `NULL` (See Also: DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ITEM(
   nnm       IN     DOMNAMEDNODEMAP,
   index     IN     NUMBER)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Returns the item in the collection which corresponds to the `INDEX` parameter. If index is greater than or equal to the number of nodes in the list, this returns `NULL` (See Also: DOMNodeList Subprograms on page 191-26):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.ITEM(
   nl        IN     DOMNODELIST,
   index     IN     NUMBER)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–95 ITEM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`nnm`	`DOMNAMEDNODEMAP`
`index`	The index in the node map at which the item is to be retrieved
`nl`	`DOMNODELIST`
`index`	The index in the `NodeList` used to retrieve the item

MAKEATTR Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMATTR, and returns the DOMATTR.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEATTR(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Parameters

Table 191–96 MAKEATTR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKECDATASECTION Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMCDATASECTION.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKECDATASECTION(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMCDATASECTION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–97 MAKECDATASECTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKECHARACTERDATA Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMCHARACTERDATA, and returns the DOMCHARACTERDATA.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKECHARACTERDATA(
   n        IN     DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMCharacterData;
```

Parameters

Table 191–98 MAKECHARACTERDATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKECOMMENT Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMCOMMENT, and returns the DOMCOMMENT.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKECOMMENT(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMCOMMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–99 MAKECOMMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKEDOCUMENT Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMDOCUMENT, and returns the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEDOCUMENT(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMDocument;
```

Parameters

Table 191–100 MAKEDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT, and returns the DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–101 MAKEDOCUMENTFRAGMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKEDOCUMENTTYPE Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMDOCUMENTTYPE and returns the DOMDOCUMENTTYPE.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEDOCUMENTTYPE(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–102 MAKEDOCUMENTTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast.

MAKEELEMENT Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMELEMENT, and returns the DOMELEMENT.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEELEMENT(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMELEMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–103 MAKEELEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKEENTITY Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMENTITY, and returns the DOMENTITY.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEENTITY(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMENTITY;
```

Parameters

Table 191–104 MAKEENTITY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKEENTITYREFERENCE Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMENTITYREFERENCE, and returns the DOMENTITYREFERENCE.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEENTITYREFERENCE(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMENTITYREFERENCE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–105 MAKEENTITYREFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKENODE Functions

This function is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Casts specified DOMATTR to a DOMNODE, and returns the DOMNODE (See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   a         IN      DOMATTR)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the DOMCDATASECTION to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMCDataSection Subprograms on page 191-14):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   cds       IN      DOMCDATASECTION)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the specified DOMCHARACTERDATA as a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   cd        IN      DOMCHARACTERDATA)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the specified DOMCOMMENT to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMComment Subprograms on page 191-16):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   com       IN      DOMCOMMENT)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the DOMDOCUMENT to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   doc       IN      DOMDOCUMENT)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the specified DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   df        IN      DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Casts the specified DOMDOCUMENTTYPE to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMDocumentType Subprograms on page 191-20):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   dt        IN      DOMDOCUMENTTYPE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the specified DOMELEMENT to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   elem        IN      DOMELEMENT)
```

```
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts specified DOMENTITY to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMEntity Subprograms on page 191-22):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   ent       IN     DOMENTITY)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the DOMENTITYREFERENCE to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMEntityReference Subprograms on page 191-23):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   eref       IN     DOMENTITYREFERENCE)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the DOMNOTATION to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMNotation Subprograms on page 191-27):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   n       IN     DOMNOTATION)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION to a DOMNODE, and returns the DOMNODE (See Also: DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-28):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   pi       IN     DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Casts the DOMTEXT to a DOMNODE, and returns that DOMNODE (See Also: DOMText Subprograms on page 191-29):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENODE(
   t       IN     DOMTEXT)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–106 MAKENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	DOMATTR to cast
cds	DOMCDATASECTION to cast
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA to cast
com	DOMCOMMENT to cast
doc	DOMDOCUMENT to cast
df	DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT to cast
dt	DOMDOCUMENTTYPE to cast
elem	DOMELEMENT to cast
ent	DOMENTITY to cast
eref	DOMENTITYREFERENCE to cast
n	DOMNOTATION to cast
pi	DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION to cast

Table 191–106 (Cont.) MAKENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
t	DOMTEXT to cast

MAKENOTATION Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMNOTATION, and returns the DOMNOTATION.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKENOTATION(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNOTATION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–107 MAKENOTATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION, and returns the Domprocessinginstruction.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION(
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION;
```

Parameters

Table 191–108 MAKEPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

MAKETEXT Function

This function casts a specified DOMNODE to a DOMTEXT, and returns the DOMTEXT.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.MAKETEXT(
   n        IN      DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMTEXT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–109 MAKETEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE to cast

NEWDOMDOCUMENT Functions

This function returns a new DOMDOCUMENT instance.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

Returns a new DOMDOCUMENT instance:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.NEWDOMDOCUMENT
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENT;
```

Returns a new DOMDOCUMENT instance created from the specified XMLType object:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.NEWDOMDOCUMENT(
   xmldoc    IN SYS.XMLTYPE)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENT;
```

Returns a new DOMDOCUMENT instance created from the specified CLOB:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.NEWDOMDOCUMENT(
   cl       IN    CLOB)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENT;
```

Parameters

Table 191–110 NEWDOMDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmldoc	XMLType source for the DOMDOCUMENT
cl	CLOB source for the DOMDOCUMENT

NORMALIZE Procedure

This procedure normalizes the text children of the DOMELEMENT.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.NORMALIZE(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT);
```

Parameters

Table 191–111 NORMALIZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT

REMOVEATTRIBUTE Procedures

This procedure removes an attribute from the DOMELEMENT by name.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Removes the value of a DOMELEMENT's attribute by name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REMOVEATTRIBUTE(
   elem     IN    DOMELEMENT,
   name     IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Removes the value of a DOMELEMENT's attribute by name and namespace URI.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REMOVEATTRIBUTE(
   elem     IN    DOMELEMENT,
   name     IN    VARCHAR2,
   ns       IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–112 REMOVEATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
name	Attribute name
ns	Namespace

REMOVEATTRIBUTENODE Function

This function removes the specified attribute node from the DOMELEMENT. The method returns the removed node.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REMOVEATTRIBUTENODE(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT,
   oldAttr    IN     DOMATTR)
  RETURN DOMAttr;
```

Parameters

Table 191–113 REMOVEATTRIBUTENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT.
oldAttr	The old DOMATTR.

REMOVECHILD Function

This function removes the child node indicated by `oldchild` from the list of children, and returns it.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REMOVECHILD(
   n          IN     DOMNode,
   oldchild   IN     DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 191–114 REMOVECHILD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	`DOMNODE`
`oldCHild`	The child of the node `n` to be removed

REMOVENAMEDITEM Function

This function removes from the map a node specified by name, and returns this node. When this map contains the attributes attached to an element, if the removed attribute is known to have a default value, an attribute immediately appears containing the default value as well as the corresponding namespace URI, local name, and prefix when applicable.

See Also: DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25

Syntax

Removes a node specified by name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REMOVENAMEDITEM(
   nnm      IN     DOMNamedNodeMap,
   name     IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Removes a node specified by name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REMOVENAMEDITEM(
   nnm      IN     DOMNamedNodeMap,
   name     IN     VARCHAR2,
   ns       IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Parameters

Table 191–115 REMOVENAMEDITEM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
nnm	DOMNamedNodeMap
name	The name of the item to be removed from the map
ns	Namespace

REPLACECHILD Function

This function replaces the child node `oldchild` with `newchild` in the list of children, and returns the `oldchild` node. If `newchild` is a `DocumentFragment` object, `oldchild` is replaced by all of the `DocumentFragment` children, which are inserted in the same order. If the `newchild` is already in the tree, it is first removed.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REPLACECHILD(
   n           IN     DOMNode,
   newchild    IN     DOMNode,
   oldchild    IN     DOMNode)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Parameters

Table 191–116 REPLACECHILD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	`DOMNode`
`newchild`	The new child which is to replace the old child
`oldchild`	The child of the node n which is to be replaced

REPLACEDATA Procedure

This procedure changes a range of characters in the node. Upon success, data and length reflect the change.

See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.REPLACEDATA(
   cd         IN     DOMCHARACTERDATA,
   offset     IN     NUMBER,
   cnt        IN     NUMBER,
   arg        IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–117 REPLACEDATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA
offset	The offset at which to replace
cnt	The number of characters to replace
arg	The value to replace with

RESOLVENAMESPACEPREFIX Function

This function resolves the specified namespace prefix, and returns the resolved namespace.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.RESOLVENAMESPACEPREFIX(
   elem       IN     DOMELEMENT,
   prefix     IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–118 RESOLVENAMESPACEPREFIX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
prefix	Namespace prefix

SETATTRIBUTE Procedures

Sets the value of a DOMELEMENT's attribute by name.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Sets the value of a DOMELEMENT's attribute by name:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETATTRIBUTE(
   elem       IN  DOMELEMENT,
   name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   newvalue   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Sets the value of a DOMElement's attribute by name and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETATTRIBUTE(
   elem       IN  DOMELEMENT,
   name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   newvalue   IN  VARCHAR2,
   ns         IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–119 SETATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
name	Attribute name
newvalue	Attribute value
ns	Namespace

SETATTRIBUTENODE Functions

Adds a new attribute node to the DOMELEMENT.

See Also: DOMElement Subprograms on page 191-21

Syntax

Adds a new attribute node to the DOMELEMENT:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETATTRIBUTENODE(
   elem      IN  DOMELEMENT,
   newAttr   IN  DOMATTR)
 RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Adds a new attribute node to the DOMElement; namespace enabled:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETATTRIBUTENODE(
   elem      IN  DOMELEMENT,
   newAttr   IN  DOMATTR,
   ns        IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMATTR;
```

Parameters

Table 191–120 SETATTRIBUTENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
elem	The DOMELEMENT
newAttr	The new DOMATTR
ns	The namespace

SETCHARSET Procedure

This function sets the characterset of the DOM document.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETCHARSET(
   doc      IN    DOMDocument,
   charset  IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–121 SETCHARSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOM document
charset	Characterset

Usage Notes

This is used for WRITETOFILE Procedures if not explicitly specified at that time.

SETDATA Procedures

This procedure is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Sets the character data of the node that implements this interface (See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETDATA(
   cd       IN     DOMCHARACTERDATA,
   data     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Sets the content data of the DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION (See Also: DOMProcessingInstruction Subprograms on page 191-15):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETDATA(
   pi       IN     DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION,
   data     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–122 SETDATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA
data	The data to which the node is set
pi	DOMPROCESSINGINSTRUCTION
data	New processing instruction content data

SETDOCTYPE Procedure

Given a DOM document, this procedure creates a new DTD with the specified name, system id and public id and sets it in the document. This DTD can later be retrieved using the GETDOCTYPE Function.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETDOCTYPE(
  doc      IN   DOMDocument,
  name     IN   VARCHAR2,
  sysid    IN   VARCHAR2,
  pubid    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–123 SETDOCTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	The document whose DTD has to be set
name	The name that the doctype needs to be initialized with
sysid	The system ID that the doctype needs to be initialized with
pubid	The public ID that the doctype needs to be initialized with

SETNAMEDITEM Function

This function adds a node using its NodeName attribute. If a node with that name is already present in this map, it is replaced by the new one. The old node is returned on replacement; if no replacement is made, NULL is returned.

As the NodeName attribute is used to derive the name under which the node must be stored, multiple nodes of certain types, those that have a "special" string value, cannot be stored because the names would clash. This is seen as preferable to allowing nodes to be aliased.

See Also: DOMNamedNodeMap Subprograms on page 191-25

Syntax

Adds a node using its NodeName attribute:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNAMEDITEM(
   nnm      IN     DOMNAMEDNODEMAP,
   arg      IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Adds a node using its NodeName attribute and namespace URI:

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNAMEDITEM(
   nnm      IN     DOMNAMEDNODEMAP,
   arg       IN    DOMNODE,
   ns       IN     VARCHAR2)
 RETURN DOMNode;
```

Parameters

Table 191–124 SETNAMEDITEM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
nnm	DOMNAMEDNODEMAP
arg	The Node to be added using its NodeName attribute
ns	Namespace

SETNODEVALUE Procedure

This procedure sets the value of this node, depending on its type. When it is defined to be `NULL`, setting it has no effect.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNODEVALUE(
   n         IN     DOMNODE,
   nodeValue IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–125 SETNODEVALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	`DOMNode`
`nodeValue`	The value to which node is set

SETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure

The operation of these subprograms is described with each syntax implementation.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

This function returns an instance of the PL/SQL `XMLBINARYOUTPUTSTREAM` into which the caller can write the node value. The datatype of the node must be `RAW` or `BLOB` – if not, an exception is raised.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM (
   n      IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN SYS.UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM;
```

Using this procedure, the application passes in an implementation of `sys.utl_BinaryInputStream` from which XDB reads data to populate the node. The datatype of the node must be `RAW` or BLOB – if not an exception is raised.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM (
   n        in   DOMNODE,
   value    in   SYS.UTL_BINARYINPUTSTREAM);
```

Parameters

Table 191–126 SETNODEVALUEASBINARYSTREAM Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
value	BINARYINPUTSTREAM

SETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure

The operation of these subprograms is described with each syntax implementation.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

This function returns an instance of the PL/SQL `XMLCHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM` type into which the caller can write the node value. The datatype of the node can be any valid XDB datatype. If the type is not character or `CLOB`, the character data written to the stream is converted to the node datatype. If the datatype of the node is character or `CLOB`, then the character data written to the stream is converted from PL/SQL session character set to the character set of the node.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM  (
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN SYS.UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM;
```

Using this procedure, the application passes in an implementation of `SYS.UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM` from which XDB reads to populate the node. The datatype of the node may be any valid type supported by XDB. If a non-character datatype, the character data read from the stream is converted to the datatype of the node. If the datatype of the node is either character or `CLOB`, then no conversion occurs and the character set of the node becomes the character set of the PL/SQL session.

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM  (
   n        IN   DOMNODE,
   value    IN   SYS.UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM);
```

Parameters

Table 191–127 SETNODEVALUEASCHARACTERSTREAM Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	`DOMNODE`
value	`CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM`

SETPREFIX Procedure

This procedure sets the namespace prefix for this node to the specified value.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETPREFIX(
   n       IN     DOMNODE,
   prefix  IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–128 SETPREFIX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
prefix	The value for the namespace prefix of the node

SETSTANDALONE Procedure

This procedure sets the standalone property of the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETSTANDALONE(
   doc          IN     DOMDOCUMENT,
   newvalue     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–129 SETSTANDALONE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
newvalue	Value of the standalone property of the document

SETVALUE Procedure

This procedure sets the value of the attribute.

See Also: DOMAttr Subprograms on page 191-13

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETVALUE(
   a       IN     DOMATTR,
   value   IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–130 SETVALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	DOMATTR
value	The value to which to set the attribute

SETVERSION Procedure

This procedure sets the version of the DOMDOCUMENT.

See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SETVERSION(
   doc         IN     DOMDOCUMENT,
   version     IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–131 SETVERSION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
version	The version of the document

SPLITTEXT Function

This function breaks this DOMTEXT node into two DOMTEXT nodes at the specified offset.

See Also: DOMText Subprograms on page 191-29

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SPLITTEXT(
   t        IN     DOMTEXT,
   offset   IN     NUMBER)
 RETURN DOMText;
```

Parameters

Table 191–132 SPLITTEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
t	DOMTEXT
offset	Offset at which to split

SUBSTRINGDATA Function

This function extracts a range of data from the node.

See Also: DOMCharacterData Subprograms on page 191-15

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.SUBSTRINGDATA(
   cd        IN     DOMCHARACTERDATA,
   offset    IN     NUMBER,
   cnt       IN     NUMBER)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 191–133 SUBSTRINGDATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cd	DOMCHARACTERDATA
offset	The starting offset of the data from which to get the data
cnt	The number of characters (from the offset) of the data to get

USEBINARYSTREAM Function

This function returns TRUE if the datatype of the node is RAW or BLOB so that the node value may be read or written using an UTL_BINARYINPUTSTREAM or UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM. If a value of FALSE is returned, the node value may only be accessed through an UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM or UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM.

See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.USEBINARYSTREAM   (
   n        IN     DOMNODE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 191–134 USEBINARYSTREAM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE

WRITETOBUFFER Procedures

This procedure is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Writes XML node to specified buffer using the database character set (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOBUFFER(
   n        IN      DOMNODE,
   buffer   IN OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Writes XML document to a specified buffer using database character set (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOBUFFER(
   doc       IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   buffer    IN OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Writes the contents of the specified document fragment into a buffer using the database character set (See Also: DOMDocumentFragment Subprograms on page 191-19):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOBUFFER(
   df        IN      DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT,
   buffer    IN OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–135 WRITETOBUFFER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
buffer	Buffer to which to write
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
df	DOM document fragment

WRITETOCLOB Procedures

This procedure is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Writes XML node to specified CLOB using the database character set (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms on page 191-11):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOCLOB(
   n       IN      DOMNODE,
   cl      IN OUT  CLOB);
```

Writes XML document to a specified CLOB using database character set (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms on page 191-17):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOCLOB(
   doc     IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   cl      IN OUT  CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 191–136 WRITETOCLOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
cl	CLOB to which to write
doc	DOMDOCUMENT

WRITETOFILE Procedures

This procedure is overloaded. The specific forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Writes XML node to specified file using the database character set (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOFILE(
   n          IN      DOMNODE,
   fileName   IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Writes XML node to specified file using the specified character set, which is passed in as a separate parameter (See Also: DOMNode Subprograms):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOFILE(
   n          IN      DOMNODE,
   fileName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   charset    IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Writes an XML document to a specified file using database character set (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOFILE(
   doc        IN   DOMDOCUMENT,
   filename   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Writes an XML document to a specified file using specified character set (See Also: DOMDocument Subprograms):

```
DBMS_XMLDOM.WRITETOFILE(
   doc        IN   DOMDOCUMENT,
   fileName   IN   VARCHAR2,
   charset    IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 191–137 WRITETOFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	DOMNODE
fileName	File to which to write. The filename should be in standard directory to filename format, for example /root/folder1/filename (on windows, use \ instead of /).
charset	specified character set
doc	DOMDOCUMENT
charset	Character set

192

DBMS_XMLGEN

The DBMS_XMLGEN package converts the results of a SQL query to a canonical XML format. The package takes an arbitrary SQL query as input, converts it to XML format, and returns the result as a CLOB. This package is similar to the DBMS_XMLQUERY package, except that it is written in C and compiled into the kernel. This package can only be run on the database.

This chapter contains the following topic:

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*, for more information on XML support and on examples of using DBMS_XMLGEN

Using DBMS_XMLGEN

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLGEN package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XMLGEN Subprograms

Table 192–1 Summary of DBMS_XMLGEN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CLOSECONTEXT Procedure on page 192-5	Closes the context and releases all resources
CONVERT Functions on page 192-6	Converts the XML into the escaped or unescaped XML equivalent
GETNUMROWSPROCESSED Function on page 192-7	Gets the number of SQL rows that were processed in the last call to GETXML Functions
GETXML Functions on page 192-8	Gets the XML document
GETXMLTYPE Functions on page 192-9	Gets the XML document and returns it as `XMLType`
NEWCONTEXT Functions on page 192-10	Creates a new context handle
NEWCONTEXTFROMHIERARCHY Function on page 192-11	Obtains a handle to use in the GETXML Functions and other functions to get a hierarchical XML with recursive elements from the result
RESTARTQUERY Procedure on page 192-12	Restarts the query to start fetching from the beginning
SETCONVERTSPECIALCHARS Procedure on page 192-13	Sets whether special characters such as `$`, which are non-XML characters, should be converted or not to their escaped representation
SETMAXROWS Procedure on page 192-14	Sets the maximum number of rows to be fetched each time
SETNULLHANDLING Procedure on page 192-15	Sets `NULL` handling options
SETROWSETTAG Procedure on page 192-16	Sets the name of the element enclosing the entire result
SETROWTAG Procedure on page 192-17	Sets the name of the element enclosing each row of the result
SETSKIPROWS Procedure on page 192-18	Sets the number of rows to skip every time before generating the XML.
USEITEMTAGSFORCOLL Procedure on page 192-19	Forces the use of the collection column name appended with the tag `_ITEM` for collection elements
USENULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR Procedure on page 192-20	Specifies whether to use an XML attribute to indicate `NULL`ness, or to do it by omitting the inclusion of the particular entity in the XML document.

CLOSECONTEXT Procedure

This procedure closes a given context and releases all resources associated with it, including the SQL cursor and bind and define buffers. After this call, the handle cannot be used for a subsequent function call.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.CLOSECONTEXT (
   ctx  IN ctxHandle);
```

Parameters

Table 192–2 CLOSECONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle to close.

CONVERT Functions

This function converts the XML data into the escaped or unescapes XML equivalent, and returns XML CLOB data in encoded or decoded format. There are several version of the function.

Syntax

Uses XMLDATA in string form (VARCHAR2):

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.CONVERT (
   xmlData IN VARCHAR2,
   flag    IN NUMBER := ENTITY_ENCODE)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Uses XMLDATA in CLOB form:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.CONVERT (
   xmlData IN CLOB,
   flag    IN NUMBER := ENTITY_ENCODE)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 192–3 CONVERT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlData	The XML CLOB data to be encoded or decoded.
flag	The flag setting; ENTITY_ENCODE (default) for encode, and ENTITY_DECODE for decode.

Usage Notes

This function escapes the XML data if the ENTITY_ENCODE is specified. For example, the escaped form of the character < is <. Unescaping is the reverse transformation.

GETNUMROWSPROCESSED Function

This function retrieves the number of SQL rows processed when generating the XML using the GETXML Functions call. This count does not include the number of rows skipped before generating the XML. Note that GETXML Functions always generates an XML document, even if there are no rows present.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.GETNUMROWSPROCESSED (
   ctx      IN    ctxHandle)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 192–4 GETNUMROWSPROCESSED Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle obtained from the NEWCONTEXT Functions call on page 192-10.

Usage Notes

This function is used to determine the terminating condition if calling GETXML Functions in a loop.

GETXML Functions

This function gets the XML document. The function is overloaded.

Syntax

Gets the XML document by fetching the maximum number of rows specified. It appends the XML document to the CLOB passed in. Use this version of GETXML Functions to avoid any extra CLOB copies and to reuse the same CLOB for subsequent calls. Because of the CLOB reuse, this GETXML Functionscall is potentially more efficient:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.GETXML (
   ctx          IN ctxHandle,
   tmpclob      IN OUT NCOPY CLOB,
   dtdOrSchema  IN number := NONE)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Generates the XML document and returns it as a temporary CLOB. The temporary CLOB obtained from this function must be freed using the DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY call:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.GETXML (
   ctx          IN ctxHandle,
   dtdOrSchema  IN number := NONE)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Converts the results from the SQL query string to XML format, and returns the XML as a temporary CLOB, which must be subsequently freed using the DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY call:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.GETXML (
   sqlQuery     IN VARCHAR2,
   dtdOrSchema  IN number := NONE)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 192–5 GETXML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle obtained from the newContext call.
tmpclob	The CLOB to which the XML document is appended.
sqlQuery	The SQL query string.
dtdOrSchema	Generate a DTD or a schema? Only NONE is supported.

Usage Notes

When the rows indicated by the SETSKIPROWS Procedure call are skipped, the maximum number of rows as specified by the SETMAXROWS Procedure call (or the entire result if not specified) is fetched and converted to XML. Use the GETNUMROWSPROCESSED Function to check if any rows were retrieved.

GETXMLTYPE Functions

This function gets the XML document and returns it as an XMLTYPE. XMLTYPE operations can be performed on the results.This function is overloaded.

Syntax

Generates the XML document and returns it as a sys.XMLType:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.GETXMLTYPE (
   ctx           IN ctxhandle,
   dtdOrSchema   IN number := NONE)
 RETURN sys.XMLType;
```

Converts the results from the SQL query string to XML format, and returns the XML as a sys.XMLType:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.GETXMLTYPE (
   sqlQuery     IN VARCHAR2,
   dtdOrSchema  IN number := NONE)
 RETURN sys.XMLType
```

Parameters

Table 192–6 GETXMLTYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle obtained from the newContext call.
sqlQuery	The SQL query string.
dtdOrSchema	Generate a DTD or a schema? Only NONE is supported.

NEWCONTEXT Functions

This function generates and returns a new context handle. This context handle is used in GETXML Functions and other functions to get XML back from the result. There are several version of the function.

Syntax

Generates a new context handle from a query:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.NEWCONTEXT (
      query     IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN ctxHandle;
```

Generates a new context handle from a query string in the form of a PL/SQL ref cursor:

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.NEWCONTEXT (
   queryString  IN SYS_REFCURSOR)
 RETURN ctxHandle;
```

Parameters

Table 192–7 NEWCONTEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`query`	The query, in the form of a `VARCHAR`, the result of which must be converted to XML.
`queryString`	The query string in the form of a PL/SQL ref cursor, the result of which must be converted to XML.

NEWCONTEXTFROMHIERARCHY Function

This function obtains a handle to use in the GETXML Functions and other functions to get a hierarchical XML with recursive elements from the result.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.NEWCONTEXTFROMHIERARCHY (
   queryString IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN ctxHandle;
```

Parameters

Table 192–8 NEWCONTEXTFROMHIERARCHY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
queryString	The query string, the result of which must be converted to XML. The query is a hierarchical query typically formed using a CONNECT BY clause, and the result must have the same property as the result set generated by a CONNECT BY query. The result set must have only two columns, the level number and an XML value. The level number is used to determine the hierarchical position of the XML value within the result XML document.

RESTARTQUERY Procedure

This procedure restarts the query and generates the XML from the first row. It can be used to start executing the query again, without having to create a new context.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.RESTARTQUERY (
ctx  IN ctxHandle);
```

Parameters

Table 192–9 RESTARTQUERY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle corresponding to the current query.

SETCONVERTSPECIALCHARS Procedure

This procedure sets whether or not special characters in the XML data must be converted into their escaped XML equivalent. For example, the < sign is converted to `<`. The default is to perform conversions. This function improves performance of XML processing when the input data cannot contain any special characters such as <, >, `"`, `'`, which must be escaped. It is expensive to scan the character data to replace the special characters, particularly if it involves a lot of data.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.SETCONVERTSPECIALCHARS (
ctx   IN ctxHandle,
conv  IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 192–10 SETCONVERTSPECIALCHARS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ctx`	The context handle obtained from one of the NEWCONTEXT Functions call on page 192-10.
`conv`	`TRUE` indicates that conversion is needed.

SETMAXROWS Procedure

This procedure sets the maximum number of rows to fetch from the SQL query result for every invocation of the GETXML Functions call. It is used when generating paginated results. For example, when generating a page of XML or HTML data, restrict the number of rows converted to XML or HTML by setting the `maxrows` parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.SETMAXROWS (
ctx      IN ctxHandle,
maxRows  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 192–11 SETMAXROWS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ctx`	The context handle corresponding to the query executed.
`maxRows`	The maximum number of rows to get for each call to GETXML Functions

SETNULLHANDLING Procedure

This procedure sets NULL handling options, handled through the flag parameter setting.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.SETNULLHANDLING(
ctx  IN ctx,
flag IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 192–12 SETNULLHANDLING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle corresponding to the query executed.
flag	The NULL handling option set. ■ DROP_NULLS CONSTANT NUMBER:= 0; (Default) Leaves out the tag for NULL elements. ■ NULL_ATTR CONSTANT NUMBER:= 1; Sets xsi:nil="true". ■ EMPTY_TAG CONSTANT NUMBER:= 2; Sets, for example, <foo/>.

SETROWSETTAG Procedure

This procedure sets the name of the root element of the document. The default name is `ROWSET`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.SETROWSETTAG (
ctx            IN ctxHandle,
rowSetTagName  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 192–13 SETROWSETTAG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle obtained from the NEWCONTEXT Functions call on page 192-10.
rowSetTagName	The name of the document element. Passing `NULL` indicates that you do not want the `ROWSET` element present.

Usage Notes

The user can set the `rowSetTag` to `NULL` to suppress the printing of this element. However, an error is produced if both the row and the rowset are `NULL` and there is more than one column or row in the output. This is because the generated XML would not have a top-level enclosing tag, and so would be invalid.

SETROWTAG Procedure

This procedure sets the name of the element separating all the rows. The default name is `ROW`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.SETROWTAG (
ctx         IN ctxHandle,
rowTagName  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 192–14 SETROWTAG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ctx`	The context handle obtained from the NEWCONTEXT Functions call on page 192-10.
`rowTagName`	The name of the `ROW` element. Passing `NULL` indicates that you do not want the `ROW` element present.

Usage Notes

The user can set the name of the element to `NULL` to suppress the `ROW` element itself. However, an error is produced if both the row and the rowset are `NULL` and there is more than one column or row in the output. This is because the generated XML would not have a top-level enclosing tag, and so would be invalid.

SETSKIPROWS Procedure

This procedure skips a given number of rows before generating the XML output for every call to the GETXML Functions. It is used when generating paginated results for stateless Web pages using this utility. For example, when generating the first page of XML or HTML data, set `skiprows` to zero. For the next set, set the `skiprows` to the number of rows obtained in the first case. See GETNUMROWSPROCESSED Function on page 192-7.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.SETSKIPROWS (
ctx       IN ctxHandle,
skipRows  IN NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 192–15 SETSKIPROWS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ctx`	The context handle corresponding to the query executed.
`skipRows`	The number of rows to skip for each call to `getXML`.

USEITEMTAGSFORCOLL Procedure

This procedure overrides the default name of the collection elements. The default name for collection elements is the type name itself.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.USEITEMTAGSFORCOLL (
   ctx  IN ctxHandle);
```

Parameters

Table 192–16 USEITEMTAGSFORCOLL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	The context handle.

Usage Notes

Using this procedure, you can override the default to use the name of the column with the _ITEM tag appended to it. If there is a collection of NUMBER, the default tag name for the collection elements is NUMBER.

USENULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR Procedure

This procedure specifies whether to use an XML attribute to indicate NULLness, or to do it by omitting the inclusion of the particular entity in the XML document. It is used as a shortcut for the SETNULLHANDLING Procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLGEN.USENULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR(
ctx       IN   ctxType,
attrind   IN   BOOLEAN := TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 192–17 USENULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctx	Context handle.
attrind	Use attribute to indicate NULL?

193

DBMS_XMLINDEX

The DBMS_XMLINDEX package provides an interface to implement asychronous indexing.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for more information about "XMLIndex"

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLINDEX

Overview

Asynchronous Index Maintenance

The basic XMLIndex is maintained on every DML operation. However, given the computing costs, in many cases the availability of stale result is adequate. In such situations, it is desirable to defer index updates to a convenient time, for example to a time when the load on the database is low. Thus a mechanism for asynchronous index maintenance is provided.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLINDEX package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XMLINDEX Subprograms

This table list the package subprograms in alphabetical order.

Table 193–1 DBMS_XMLINDEX Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CREATEDATEINDEX Procedure on page 193-6	Creates a secondary index for date values in the `VALUE` column of a `PATH TABLE` which is the storage table of an `XMLIndex`
CREATENUMBERINDEX Procedure on page 193-7	Creates a secondary index for number values in the `VALUE` column of a `PATH TABLE` which is the storage table of an `XMLIndex`
DROPPARAMETER Procedure on page 193-8	Drops the `XMLIndex` parameter string that is associated with a given parameter identifier.
MODIFYPARAMETER Procedure on page 193-9	Modifies the `XMLIndex` parameter string that is associated with a given parameter name
PROCESS_PENDING Procedure on page 193-10	Processes pending rows for a `NONBLOCKING ALTER INDEX OPERATION` on an `XMLIndex`
REGISTERPARAMETER Procedure on page 193-11	Registers a parameter string and `XMLIndex` parameter string pair in XDB
SYNCINDEX Procedure on page 193-12	Synchronizes the index manually

CREATEDATEINDEX Procedure

This procedure creates a secondary index for date values in the VALUE column of a PATH TABLE which is the storage table of an XMLIndex. The second form of the procedure allows for the date_index_clause to be set to an empty string.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.CREATEDATEINDEX  (
   xml_index_schema   IN   VARCHAR2,
   xml_index_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   date_index_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   xmltypename        IN   VARCHAR2,
   date_index_clause  IN   VARCHAR2);

DBMS_XMLINDEX.CREATEDATEINDEX  (
   xml_index_schema   IN   VARCHAR2
   xml_index_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   date_index_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   xmltypename        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 193–2 CREATEDATEINDEX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xml_index_schema	Name of the owner of the XMLIndex
xml_index_name	Name of the XMLIndex
date_index_name	Name of the secondary index to be created for date values in the VALUE column of the PATH TABLE of XMLIndex named xml_index_name and owned by xml_index_schema
xmltypename	The type to which values in the VALUE column of the path table are to be cast. Acceptable values are the following strings: DATETIME, TIME, DATE, GDAY, GMONTH, GYEAR, GYEARMONTH, GMONTHDAY.
date_index_clause	Storage clause to be applied to the date index during its creation. This is a string argument appended to the CREATE INDEX statement for creating the date index

CREATENUMBERINDEX Procedure

This procedure creates a secondary index for number values in the VALUE column of a PATH TABLE which is the storage table of an XMLIndex.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.CREATENUMBERINDEX (
   xml_index_schema   IN   VARCHAR2,
   xml_index_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   num_index_name     IN   VARCHAR2,
   num_index_clause   IN   VARCHAR2,
   xmltypename        IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 193–3 CREATENUMBERINDEX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xml_index_schema	Name of the owner of the XMLIndex
xml_index_name	Name of the XMLIndex
num_index_name	Name of the secondary index to be created for number values in the VALUE column of the PATH TABLE of XMLIndex named xml_index_name and owned by xml_index_schema
num_index_clause	Storage clause to be applied to the number index during its creation. This is a string argument appended to the CREATE INDEX statement for creating the number index.
xmltypename	The type to which values in the VALUE column of the path table are to be cast. Acceptable values are the following strings: FLOAT, DOUBLE, DECIMAL, INTEGER, NONPOSITIVEINTEGER, NEGATIVEINTEGER, LONG, INT, SHORT, BYTE, NONNEGATIVEINTEGER, UNSIGNEDLONG, UNSIGNEDINT, UNSIGNEDSHORT, UNSIGNEDBYTE, POSITIVEINTEGER.

DROPPARAMETER Procedure

This procedure drops the `XMLIndex` parameter string that is associated with a given parameter identifier.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.DROPPARAMETER (
   name         IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 193–4 DROPPARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	Identifier for parameter string

Examples

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.DROPPARAMETER (
   'myIndexParam');
```

MODIFYPARAMETER Procedure

This procedure modifies the XMLIndex parameter string that is associated with a given parameter identifier.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.MODIFYPARAMETER (
   name        IN      VARCHAR2,
   parameter   IN      CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 193–5 MODIFYPARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Identifier for parameter string
parameter	XMLIndex parameter clause that can appear in a CREATE INDEX or an ALTER INDEX statement

Examples

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.MODIFYPARAMETER (
   'myIndexParam',
   'PATH TABLE po_ptab
    PATH ID INDEX po_pidx
    ORDER KEY INDEX po_oidx
    VALUE INDEX po_vidx');
```

PROCESS_PENDING Procedure

This procedure processes executes DMLs required to complete a NONBLOCKING ALTER INDEX ADD_GROUP/ADD_COLUMN operation on an XMLIndex.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.PROCESS_PENDING (
   xml_index_schema    IN     VARCHAR2,
   xml_index_name      IN     VARCHAR2,
   pending_row_count   OUT    BINARY_INTEGER,
   error_row_count     OUT    BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 193–6 PROCESS_PENDING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xml_index_schema	Name of the owner of the XMLIndex
xml_index_name	Name of the XMLIndex to be altered using NONBLOCKING ALTER INDEX OPERATION
pending_row_count	Number of pending rows to be processed
error_row_count	Number of rows for which indexing may have failed because of an error

Usage Notes

- This procedure will iteratively attempt to index all necessary rows in small batches while skipping rows that are locked and rows for which index maintenance fails with an error. Therefore, it may have to be executed multiple times for an XMLIndex until all pending rows are processed. Once all pending rows are processed, user can complete the NONBLOCKING ALTER INDEX OPERATION.
- If it is not possible process all the pending rows after multiple trials, the user will have to manually triage the locking or error issues by examining unprocessed rows in SYS_AIXSXI_######_PENDINGTAB and errors in SYS_AIXSXI_#####_ ERRORTAB.. Keeping track of rows and the errors is useful in triaging issues.

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_XMLINDEX.PROCESS_PENDING(
   'SCOTT', 'PO_XMLINDEX_IX', out_param1, out_param2);
```

REGISTERPARAMETER Procedure

This procedure registers a parameter identifier and XMLIndex parameter string pair in XDB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.REGISTERPARAMETER (
   name        IN      VARCHAR2,
   parameter   IN      CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 193–7 REGISTERPARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	Identifier for parameter string
parameter	XMLIndex parameter clause that can appear in a CREATE INDEX or an ALTER INDEX statement

Examples

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.REGISTERPARAMETER (
   'myIndexParam',
   'PATH TABLE po_ptab
    PATH ID INDEX po_pidx
    ORDER KEY INDEX po_oidx
    VALUE INDEX po_vidx
    PATHS(NAMESPACE MAPPING(xmlns:p="http://www.example.com/IPO"))
    GROUP MASTERGROUP XMLTABLE PO_TAB
    (''/p:PurchaseOrder''
        COLUMNS
           REFERENCE VARCHAR2(30) PATH ''p:Reference'',
           REQUESTOR VARCHAR2(30) PATH ''p:Requestor'' )
    GROUP ITEMGROUP XMLTABLE ITEMGROUP_TAB
    (''/p:PurchaseOrder/p:LineItems/p:LineItem''
        COLUMNS
           LINENUMBER NUMBER(38) PATH ''@p:ItemNumber'',
           QUANTITY NUMBER(38) PATH ''@p:Quantity'',
           DESCRIPTION VARCHAR2(256) PATH ''p:Description'''));
```

SYNCINDEX Procedure

This function synchronizes an asynchronously maintained XMLIndex. It applies to the XMLIndex changes that are logged in the pending table, and brings the path table up-to-date with the base XMLTYPE column.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLINDEX.SYNCINDEX (
   xml_index_schema      IN VARCHAR2,
   xml_index_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   partition_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   reindex               IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 193–8 SYNCINDEX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xml_index_schema	Name of the owner of the XMLIndex
xml_schema_name	Name of the XMLIndex
partition_name	[Currently not supported]
reindex	Default is FALSE. If set to TRUE, this drops the secondary indexes and recreates them later so that they can be bulk-loaded.

Examples

```
EXEC DBMS_XMLINDEX.SYNCINDEX('USER1', 'SS_TAB_XMLI', REINDEX=>TRUE);
```

194

DBMS_XMLPARSER

Using DBMS_XMLPARSER, you can access the contents and structure of XML documents. XML describes a class of data XML document objects. It partially describes the behavior of computer programs which process them. By construction, XML documents are conforming SGML documents.

XML documents are made up of storage units called entities, which contain either parsed or unparsed data. Parsed data is made up of characters, some of which form character data, and some of which form markup. Markup encodes a description of the document's storage layout and logical structure. XML provides a mechanism to impose constraints on the storage layout and logical structure.

A software module called an XML processor is used to read XML documents and provide access to their content and structure. It is assumed that an XML processor is doing its work on behalf of another module, called the application. This PL/SQL implementation of the XML processor (or parser) follows the W3C XML specification REC-xml-19980210 and includes the required behavior of an XML processor in terms of how it must read XML data and the information it must provide to the application.

The default behavior for this PL/SQL XML parser is to build a parse tree that can be accessed by DOM APIs, validate it if a DTD is found (otherwise, it is non-validating), and record errors if an error log is specified. If parsing fails, an application error is raised.

This chapter contains the following topics:

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Using DBMS_XMLPARSER

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XDB_XMLPARSER package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XMLPARSER Subprograms

Table 194–1 DBMS_XMLPARSER Package Subprograms

Method	Description
FREEPARSER on page 194-5	Frees a parser object.
GETDOCTYPE on page 194-6	Gets parsed DTD.
GETDOCUMENT on page 194-7	Gets DOM document.
GETRELEASEVERSION on page 194-7	Returns the release version of Oracle XML Parser for PL/SQL.
GETVALIDATIONMODE on page 194-9	Returns validation mode.
NEWPARSER on page 194-10	Returns a new parser instance
PARSE on page 194-11	Parses XML stored in the given url/file.
PARSEBUFFER on page 194-12	Parses XML stored in the given buffer
PARSECLOB on page 194-12	Parses XML stored in the given clob
PARSEDTD on page 194-14	Parses DTD stored in the given url/file
PARSEDTDBUFFER on page 194-15	Parses DTD stored in the given buffer
PARSEDTDCLOB on page 194-16	Parses DTD stored in the given clob
SETBASEDIR on page 194-17	Sets base directory used to resolve relative URLs.
SETDOCTYPE on page 194-18	Sets DTD.
SETERRORLOG on page 194-19	Sets errors to be sent to the specified file
SETPRESERVEWHITESPACE on page 194-20	Sets white space preserve mode
SETVALIDATIONMODE on page 194-21	Sets validation mode.
SHOWWARNINGS on page 194-22	Turns warnings on or off.

FREEPARSER

Frees a parser object.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE freeParser(
    p Parser);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.

GETDOCTYPE

Returns the parsed DTD; this function must be called only after a DTD is parsed.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION getDoctype(
p Parser)
RETURN DOMDocumentType;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.

GETDOCUMENT

Returns the document node of a DOM tree document built by the parser; this function must be called only after a document is parsed.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION GETDOCUMENT(
p Parser)
RETURN DOMDocument;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.

GETRELEASEVERSION

Returns the release version of the Oracle XML parser for PL/SQL.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION getReleaseVersion
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GETVALIDATIONMODE

Retrieves validation mode; TRUE for validating, FALSE otherwise.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION GETVALIDATIONMODE(
p Parser)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.

NEWPARSER

Returns a new parser instance. This function must be called before the default behavior of Parser can be changed and if other parse methods need to be used.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION newParser
RETURN Parser;
```

PARSE

Parses XML stored in the given URL or file. An application error is raised if parsing fails. There are several versions of this method.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION parse(`
`  url VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN DOMDocument;`
	Returns the built DOM Document. This is meant to be used when the default parser behavior is acceptable and just a url/file needs to be parsed.

`PROCEDURE parse(`
`  p Parser,`
`  url VARCHAR2);`
	Any changes to the default parser behavior should be effected before calling this procedure.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`url`	`(IN)`	Complete path of the url/file to be parsed.
`p`	`(IN)`	Parser instance.

PARSEBUFFER

Parses XML stored in the given buffer. Any changes to the default parser behavior should be effected before calling this procedure. An application error is raised if parsing fails.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE PARSEBUFFER(
p   Parser,
doc VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
doc	(IN)	XML document buffer to parse.

PARSECLOB

Parses XML stored in the given clob. Any changes to the default parser behavior should be effected before calling this procedure. An application error is raised if parsing fails.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE PARSECLOB(
p   Parser,
doc CLOB);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
doc	(IN)	XML document buffer to parse.

PARSEDTD

Parses the DTD stored in the given URL or file. Any changes to the default parser behavior should be effected before calling this procedure. An application error is raised if parsing fails.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE PARSEDTD(
p     Parser,
url   VARCHAR2,
root  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
url	(IN)	Complete path of the URL or file to be parsed.
root	(IN)	Name of the root element.

PARSEDTDBUFFER

Parses the DTD stored in the given buffer. Any changes to the default parser behavior should be effected before calling this procedure. An application error is raised if parsing fails.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE PARSEDTDBUFFER(
p    Parser,
dtd  VARCHAR2,
root VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
dtd	(IN)	DTD buffer to parse.
root	(IN)	Name of the root element.

PARSEDTDCLOB

Parses the DTD stored in the given clob. Any changes to the default parser behavior should be effected before calling this procedure. An application error is raised if parsing fails.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE PARSEDTDCLOB(
p    Parser,
dtd  CLOB,
root VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
dtd	(IN)	DTD Clob to parse.
root	(IN)	Name of the root element.

SETBASEDIR

Sets base directory used to resolve relative URLs. An application error is raised if parsing fails.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setBaseDir(
p   Parser,
dir VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
dir	(IN)	Directory used as a base directory.

SETDOCTYPE

Sets a DTD to be used by the parser for validation. This call should be made before the document is parsed.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setDoctype(
p   Parser,
dtd DOMDocumentType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
dtd	(IN)	DTD to set.

SETERRORLOG

Sets errors to be sent to the specified file.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setErrorLog(
p        Parser,
fileName VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
fileName	(IN)	Complete path of the file to use as the error log.

SETPRESERVEWHITESPACE

Sets whitespace preserving mode.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setPreserveWhitespace(
p   Parser,
yes BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
yes	(IN)	Mode to set: TRUE - preserve, FALSE - don't preserve.

SETVALIDATIONMODE

Sets validation mode.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setValidationMode(
p   Parser,
yes BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
yes	(IN)	Mode to set: TRUE - validate, FALSE - don't validate.

SHOWWARNINGS

Turns warnings on or off.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE showWarnings(
p   Parser,
yes BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
p	(IN)	Parser instance.
yes	(IN)	Mode to set: TRUE - show warnings, FALSE - don't show warnings.

195

DBMS_XMLQUERY

DBMS_XMLQUERY provides database-to-XMLType functionality. Whenever possible, use DBMS_XMLGEN, a built-in package in C, instead of DBMS_XMLQUERY.

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLQUERY

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLQUERY package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

Table 195–1 Constants of DBMS_XMLQUERY

Constant	Description
DB_ENCODING	Used to signal that the DB character encoding is to be used.
DEFAULT_ROWSETTAG	The tag name for the element enclosing the XML generated from the result set (that is, for most cases the root node tag name) -- ROWSET.
DEFAULT_ERRORTAG	The default tag to enclose raised errors -- ERROR.
DEFAULT_ROWIDATTR	The default name for the cardinality attribute of XML elements corresponding to db.records -- NUM
DEFAULT_ROWTAG	The default tag name for the element corresponding to db.records -- ROW
DEFAULT_DATE_FORMAT	Default date mask --'MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss'
ALL_ROWS	Indicates that all rows are needed in the output.
NONE	Used to specifies that the output should not contain any XML metadata (for example, no DTD).
DTD	Used to specify that the generation of the DTD is desired.
SCHEMA	Used to specify that the generation of the XML Schema is desired.
LOWER_CASE	Use lower case tag names.
UPPER_CASE	Use upper case tag names.

Types

Table 195–2 Types of DBMS_XMLQUERY

Type	Description
`ctxType`	The type of the query context handle. This is the return type of NEWCONTEXT

Summary of DBMS_XMLQUERY Subprograms

Table 195–3 DBMS_XMLQUERY Package Subprograms

Method	Description
CLOSECONTEXT on page 195-8	Closes or deallocates a particular query context.
GETDTD on page 195-9	Generates the DTD.
GETEXCEPTIONCONTENT on page 195-10	Returns the thrown exception's error code and error message.
GETNUMROWSPROCESSED on page 195-11	Returns the number of rows processed for the query.
GETVERSION on page 195-12	Prints the version of the XSU in use.
GETXML on page 195-13	Generates the XML document.
NEWCONTEXT on page 195-14	Creates a query context and it returns the context handle.
PROPAGATEORIGINALEXCEPTION on page 195-15	Tells the XSU that if an exception is raised, and is being thrown, the XSU should throw the very exception raised; rather then, wrapping it with an `OracleXMLSQLException`.
REMOVEXSLTPARAM on page 195-16	Removes a particular top-level stylesheet parameter.
SETBINDVALUE on page 195-17	Sets a value for a particular bind name.
SETCOLLIDATTRNAME on page 195-18	Sets the name of the id attribute of the collection element's separator tag.
SETDATAHEADER on page 195-18	Sets the XML data header.
SETDATEFORMAT on page 195-20	Sets the format of the generated dates in the XML document.
SETENCODINGTAG on page 195-21	Sets the encoding processing instruction in the XML document.
SETERRORTAG on page 195-22	Sets the tag to be used to enclose the XML error documents.
SETMAXROWS on page 195-23	Sets the maximum number of rows to be converted to XML.
SETMETAHEADER on page 195-24	Sets the XML meta header.
SETRAISEEXCEPTION on page 195-25	Tells the XSU to throw the raised exceptions.
SETRAISENOROWSEXCEPTION on page 195-26	Tells the XSU to throw or not to throw an `OracleXMLNoRowsException` in the case when for one reason or another, the XML document generated is empty.
SETROWIDATTRNAME on page 195-27	Sets the name of the id attribute of the row enclosing tag.
SETROWIDATTRVALUE on page 195-28	Specifies the scalar column whose value is to be assigned to the id attribute of the row enclosing tag.
SETROWSETTAG on page 195-29	Sets the tag to be used to enclose the XML dataset.
SETROWTAG on page 195-30	Sets the tag to be used to enclose the XML element.
SETSKIPROWS on page 195-31	Sets the number of rows to skip.

Table 195–3 (Cont.) DBMS_XMLQUERY Package Subprograms

Method	Description
SETSQLTOXMLNAMEESCAPING on page 195-32	This turns on or off escaping of XML tags in the case that the SQL object name, which is mapped to a XML identifier, is not a valid XML identifier.
SETSTYLESHEETHEADER on page 195-33	Sets the stylesheet header.
SETTAGCASE on page 195-34	Specified the case of the generated XML tags.
SETXSLT on page 195-35	Registers a stylesheet to be applied to generated XML.
SETXSLTPARAM on page 195-36	Sets the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter.
USENULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR on page 195-37	Specifies weather to use an XML attribute to indicate `NULL`ness.
USETYPEFORCOLLELEMTAG on page 195-38	Tells the XSU to use the collection element's type name as the collection element tag name.

CLOSECONTEXT

Closes or deallocates a particular query context

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE CLOSECONTEXT(
ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

GETDTD

Generates and returns the DTD based on the SQL query used to initialize the context. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION GETDTD(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  withVer IN BOOLEAN := false)`
`RETURN CLOB;`
	Function that generates the DTD based on the SQL query used to initialize the context.

`PROCEDURE GETDTD(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN CLOB,`
`  withVer IN BOOLEAN := false);`
	Procedure that generates the DTD based on the SQL query used to initialize the context; specifies the output `CLOB` for XML document result.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`withVer`	`(IN)`	Generate the version information? `TRUE` for yes.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	`CLOB` into which to write the generated XML document.

GETEXCEPTIONCONTENT

Returns the thrown exception's SQL error code and error message through the procedure's `OUT` parameters. This procedure is a work around the JVM functionality that obscures the original exception by its own exception, rendering PL/SQL unable to access the original exception content.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE GETEXCEPTIONCONTENT(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
errNo OUT NUMBER,
errMsg OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`errNo`	`(OUT)`	Error number.
`errMsg`	`(OUT)`	Error message.

GETNUMROWSPROCESSED

Return the number of rows processed for the query.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION GETNUMROWSPROCESSED(
ctxHdl IN ctxType)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

GETVERSION

Prints the version of the XSU in use.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE GETVERSION();
```

GETXML

Creates the new context, executes the query, gets the XML back and closes the context. This is a convenience function. The context doesn't have to be explicitly opened or closed. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION GETXML(`
`sqlQuery IN VARCHAR2,`
`metaType IN NUMBER := NONE)`
`RETURN CLOB;`
	This function uses a SQL query in string form.

`FUNCTION GETXML(`
`sqlQuery IN CLOB,`
`metaType IN NUMBER := NONE)`
`RETURN CLOB;`
	This function uses a SQL query in `CLOB` form.

`FUNCTION GETXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`metaType IN NUMBER := NONE)`
`RETURN CLOB;`
	This function generates the XML document based on a SQL query used to initialize the context.

`PROCEDURE GETXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN CLOB,`
`metaType IN NUMBER := NONE);`
	This procedure generates the XML document based on the SQL query used to initialize the context.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`metaType`	`(IN)`	XML metadatatype (`NONE`, `DTD`, or `SCHEMA`).
`sqlQuery`	`(IN)`	SQL query.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	`CLOB` into which to write the generated XML document.

NEWCONTEXT

Creates a query context and it returns the context handle. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`FUNCTION NEWCONTEXT( sqlQuery IN VARCHAR2) RETURN ctxType;`	Creates a query context from a string.
`FUNCTION NEWCONTEXT( sqlQuery IN CLOB) RETURN ctxType;`	Creates a query context from a `CLOB`.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`sqlQuery`	`(IN)`	SQL query, the results of which to convert to XML.

PROPAGATEORIGINALEXCEPTION

Specifies whether to throw every original exception raised or to wrap it in an `OracleXMLSQLException`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE PROPAGATEORIGINALEXCEPTION(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
flag IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`flag`	`(IN)`	`TRUE` if want to propagate original exception, `FALSE` to wrap in `OracleXMLException`.

REMOVEXSLTPARAM

Removes the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter. If no stylesheet is registered, this method is not operational.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE REMOVEXSLTPARAM(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
name	(IN)	Name of the top level stylesheet parameter.

SETBINDVALUE

Sets a value for a particular bind name.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETBINDVALUE(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
bindName IN VARCHAR2,
bindValue IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
bindName	(IN)	Bind name.
bindValue	(IN)	Bind value.

SETCOLLIDATTRNAME

Sets the name of the id attribute of the collection element's separator tag. Passing `NULL` or an empty string for the tag causes the row id attribute to be omitted.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETCOLLIDATTRNAME(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
attrName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`attrName`	`(IN)`	Attribute name.

SETDATAHEADER

Sets the XML data header. The data header is an XML entity that is appended at the beginning of the query-generated XML entity, the `rowset`. The two entities are enclosed by the `docTag` argument. The last data header specified is used. Passing in `NULL` for the `header` parameter unsets the data header.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETDATAHEADER(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
header IN CLOB := null,
tag IN VARCHAR2 := null);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`header`	`(IN)`	Header.
`tag`	`(IN)`	Tag used to enclose the data header and the rowset.

SETDATEFORMAT

Sets the format of the generated dates in the XML document. The syntax of the date format pattern, the date mask, should conform to the requirements of the `java.text.SimpleDateFormat` class. Setting the mask to `NULL` or an empty string sets the default mask -- `DEFAULT_DATE_FORMAT`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETDATEFORMAT(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
mask IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`mask`	`(IN)`	The date mask.

SETENCODINGTAG

Sets the encoding processing instruction in the XML document.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETENCODINGTAG(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
enc IN VARCHAR2 := DB_ENCODING);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
enc	(IN)	The encoding to use.

SETERRORTAG

Sets the tag to be used to enclose the XML error documents.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETERRORTAG(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
tag IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
tag	(IN)	Tag name.

SETMAXROWS

Sets the maximum number of rows to be converted to XML. By default, there is no set maximum.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETMAXROWS (
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
rows IN NUMBER);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
rows	(IN)	Maximum number of rows to generate.

SETMETAHEADER

Sets the XML meta header. When set, the header is inserted at the beginning of the metadata part (DTD or XMLSchema) of each XML document generated by this object. The last meta header specified is used. Passing in `NULL` for the `header` parameter unsets the meta header.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETMETAHEADER(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
header IN CLOB := null);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`Header`	`(IN)`	Header.

SETRAISEEXCEPTION

Specifies whether to throw raised exceptions. If this call isn't made or if `FALSE` is passed to the `flag` argument, the XSU catches the SQL exceptions and generates an XML document from the exception message.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETRAISEEXCEPTION(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
flag IN BOOLEAN:=true);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`flag`	`(IN)`	Throw raised exceptions? `TRUE` for yes, otherwise `FALSE`.

SETRAISENOROWSEXCEPTION

Specifies whether to throw an `OracleXMLNoRowsException` when the generated XML document is empty. By default, the exception is not thrown.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETRAISENOROWSEXCEPTION(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
flag IN BOOLEAN:=false);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`flag`	`(IN)`	Throws an `OracleXMLNoRowsException` if set to `TRUE`.

SETROWIDATTRNAME

Sets the name of the id attribute of the row enclosing tag. Passing `NULL` or an empty string for the tag causes the row id attribute to be omitted.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETROWIDATTRNAME(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
attrName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`attrName`	`(IN)`	Attribute name.

SETROWIDATTRVALUE

Specifies the scalar column whose value is to be assigned to the id attribute of the row enclosing tag. Passing `NULL` or an empty string for the `colName` assigns the row count value (0, 1, 2 and so on) to the row id attribute.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETROWIDATTRVALUE(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
colName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`colName`	`(IN)`	Column whose value is to be assigned to the row id attribute.

SETROWSETTAG

Sets the tag to be used to enclose the XML dataset.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETROWSETTAG(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
tag IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
tag	(IN)	Tag name.

SETROWTAG

Sets the tag to be used to enclose the XML element corresponding to a `db.record`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETROWTAG(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
tag IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`tag`	`(IN)`	Tag name.

SETSKIPROWS

Sets the number of rows to skip. By default, 0 rows are skipped.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETSKIPROWS(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
rows IN NUMBER);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
rows	(IN)	Maximum number of rows to skip.

SETSQLTOXMLNAMEESCAPING

This turns on or off escaping of XML tags in the case that the SQL object name, which is mapped to a XML identifier, is not a valid XML identifier.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETSQLTOXMLNAMEESCAPING(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
flag IN BOOLEAN := true);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
flag	(IN)	Turn on escaping? TRUE for yes, otherwise FALSE.

SETSTYLESHEETHEADER

Sets the stylesheet header (the stylesheet processing instructions) in the generated XML document. Passing `NULL` for the `uri` argument will unset the stylesheet header and the stylesheet type.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETSTYLESHEETHEADER(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
uri IN VARCHAR2,
type IN VARCHAR2 := 'text/xsl');
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`uri`	`(IN)`	Stylesheet URI.
`type`	`(IN)`	Stylesheet type; defaults to "`text/xsl`".

SETTAGCASE

Specifies the case of the generated XML tags.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETTAGCASE(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
tCase IN NUMBER);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
tCase	(IN)	The tag's case: ■ 0 for as are ■ 1 for lower case ■ 2 for upper case

SETXSLT

Registers a stylesheet to be applied to generated XML. If a stylesheet was already registered, it is replaced by the new one. The options are described in the following table. Passing `NULL` for the `uri` argument or an empty string for the `stylesheet` argument will unset the stylesheet header and type.

Syntax	Description
`PROCEDURE SETXSLT( ctxHdl IN ctxType, uri IN VARCHAR2, ref IN VARCHAR2 := null);`	To un-register the stylesheet pass in a null for the uri.
`PROCEDURE SETXSLT( ctxHdl IN ctxType, stylesheet CLOB, ref IN VARCHAR2 := null);`	To un-register the stylesheet pass in a null or an empty string for the stylesheet.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`uri`	`(IN)`	Stylesheet URI.
`stylesheet`	`(IN)`	Stylesheet.
`ref`	`(IN)`	URL to include, imported and external entities.

SETXSLTPARAM

Sets the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter. The parameter value is expected to be a valid XPath expression; the string literal values would therefore have to be quoted explicitly. If no stylesheet is registered, this method is not operational.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETXSLTPARAM(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
name IN VARCHAR2,
value IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
name	(IN)	Name of the top level stylesheet parameter.
value	(IN)	Value to be assigned to the stylesheet parameter.

USENULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR

Specifies whether to use an XML attribute to indicate NULLness, or to do this by omitting the particular entity in the XML document.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE SETNULLATTRIBUTEINDICATOR(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
flag IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
flag	(IN)	Sets attribute to NULL if TRUE, omits from XML document if FALSE.

USETYPEFORCOLLELEMTAG

Specifies whether to use the collection element's type name as its element tag name. By default, the tag name for elements of a collection is the collection's tag name followed by `_item`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE USETYPEFORCOLLELEMTAG(
ctxHdl IN ctxType,
flag IN BOOLEAN := true);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`flag`	`(IN)`	Turn on use of the type name?

196

DBMS_XMLSAVE

DBMS_XMLSAVE provides XML to database-type functionality.

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLSAVE

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLSAVE package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

Table 196–1 Constants of DBMS_XMLSAVE

Constant	Description
DEFAULT_ROWTAG	The default tag name for the element corresponding to database records -- ROW
DEFAULT_DATE_FORMAT	Default date mask:'MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss'
MATCH_CASE	Used to specify that when mapping XML elements to database entities; the XSU should be case sensitive.
IGNORE_CASE	Used to specify that when mapping XML elements to database. entities the XSU should be case insensitive.

Types

Table 196–2 Types of DBMS_XMLSAVE

Type	Description
`ctxType`	The type of the query context handle. The type of the query context handle. This the return type of NEWCONTEXT.

Summary of DBMS_XMLSAVE Subprograms

Table 196–3 DBMS_XMLSAVE Package Subprograms

Method	Description
CLEARKEYCOLUMNLIST on page 196-7	Clears the key column list.
CLEARUPDATECOLUMNLIST on page 196-8	Clears the update column list.
CLOSECONTEXT on page 196-9	It closes/deallocates a particular save context.
DELETEXML on page 196-10	Deletes records specified by data from the XML document, from the table specified at the context creation time.
GETEXCEPTIONCONTENT on page 196-11	Returns the thrown exception's error code and error message.
INSERTXML on page 196-12	Inserts the XML document into the table specified at the context creation time.
NEWCONTEXT on page 196-13	Creates a save context, and returns the context handle.
PROPAGATEORIGINALEXCEPTION on page 196-14	Tells the XSU that if an exception is raised, and is being thrown, the XSU should throw the very exception raised; rather then, wrapping it with an `OracleXMLSQLException`.
REMOVEXSLTPARAM on page 196-15	Removes the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter
SETBATCHSIZE on page 196-16	Changes the batch size used during DML operations.
SETCOMMITBATCH on page 196-18	Sets the commit batch size.
SETDATEFORMAT on page 196-18	Sets the format of the generated dates in the XML document.
SETIGNORECASE on page 196-19	The XSU does mapping of XML elements to database.
SETKEYCOLUMN on page 196-20	This methods adds a column to the key column list.
SETPRESERVEWHITESPACE on page 196-21	Tells the XSU whether to preserve whitespace or not.
SETROWTAG on page 196-22	Names the tag used in the XML document to enclose the XML elements corresponding to database.
SETSQLTOXMLNAMEESCAPING on page 196-23	This turns on or off escaping of XML tags in the case that the SQL object name, which is mapped to a XML identifier, is not a valid XML identifier.
SETUPDATECOLUMN on page 196-24	Adds a column to the update column list.
SETXSLT on page 196-25	Registers a XSL transform to be applied to the XML to be saved.
SETXSLTPARAM on page 196-26	Sets the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter.
UPDATEXML on page 196-27	Updates the table given the XML document.

CLEARKEYCOLUMNLIST

Clears the key column list.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE clearKeyColumnList(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

CLEARUPDATECOLUMNLIST

Clears the update column list.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE clearUpdateColumnList(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

CLOSECONTEXT

Closes/deallocates a particular save context.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE closeContext(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

DELETEXML

Deletes records specified by data from the XML document from the table specified at the context creation time, and returns the number of rows deleted. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION deleteXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxPType,`
`  xDoc IN VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Uses a `VARCHAR2` type for the `xDoc` parameter.

`FUNCTION deleteXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN CLOB)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Uses a `CLOB` type for the `xDoc` parameter.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	String containing the XML document.

GETEXCEPTIONCONTENT

Through its arguments, this method returns the thrown exception's error code and error message, SQL error code. This is to get around the fact that the JVM throws an exception on top of whatever exception was raised; thus, rendering PL/SQL unable to access the original exception.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE getExceptionContent(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   errNo OUT NUMBER,
   errMsg OUT VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
errNo	(IN)	Error number.
errMsg	(IN)	Error message.

INSERTXML

Inserts the XML document into the table specified at the context creation time, and returns the number of rows inserted. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION insertXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `VARCHAR2`.

`FUNCTION insertXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN CLOB)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `CLOB`.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	String containing the XML document.

NEWCONTEXT

Creates a save context, and returns the context handle.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION newContext(
   targetTable IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN ctxType;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
targetTable	(IN)	The target table into which to load the XML document.

PROPAGATEORIGINALEXCEPTION

Tells the XSU that if an exception is raised, and is being thrown, the XSU should throw the very exception raised; rather then, wrapping it with an `OracleXMLSQLException`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE propagateOriginalException(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   flag IN BOOLEAN);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`flag`	`(IN)`	Propagate the original exception? 0=`FALSE`, 1=`TRUE`.

REMOVEXSLTPARAM

Removes the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE removeXSLTParam(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
name	(IN)	Parameter name.

SETBATCHSIZE

Changes the batch size used during DML operations. When performing inserts, updates or deletes, it is better to batch the operations so that they get executed in one shot rather than as separate statements. The flip side is that more memory is needed to buffer all the bind values. Note that when batching is used, a commit occurs only after a batch is executed. So if one of the statement inside a batch fails, the whole batch is rolled back. This is a small price to pay considering the performance gain; nevertheless, if this behavior is unacceptable, then set the batch size to 1.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setBatchSize(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   batchSize IN NUMBER);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
batchSize	(IN)	Batch size.

SETCOMMITBATCH

Sets the commit batch size. The commit batch size refers to the number or records inserted after which a commit should follow. If `batchSize` is less than `1` or the session is in "auto-commit" mode, using the XSU does not make any explicit commits. By default, `commitBatch` is `0`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setCommitBatch(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   batchSize IN NUMBER);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`batchSize`	`(IN)`	Commit batch size.

SETDATEFORMAT

Sets the format of the generated dates in the XML document. The syntax of the date format pattern, the date mask, should conform to the requirements of the class `java.text.SimpleDateFormat`. Setting the mask to `<code>null</code>` or an empty string unsets the date mask.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setDateFormat(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   mask IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`mask`	`(IN)`	Syntax of the date format pattern.

SETIGNORECASE

The XSU does mapping of XML elements to db columns/attributes based on the element names (XML tags). This function tells the XSU to do this match case insensitive.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setIgnoreCase(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   flag IN NUMBER);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
flag	(IN)	Ignore tag case in the XML doc? 0=FALSE, 1=TRUE.

SETKEYCOLUMN

This method adds a column to the "key column list". The value for the column cannot be NULL. In case of update or delete, the columns in the key column list make up the WHERE clause of the statement. The key columns list must be specified before updates can complete; this is optional for delete operations.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setKeyColumn(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   colName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
colName	(IN)	Column to be added to the key column list; cannot be NULL.

SETPRESERVEWHITESPACE

Tells the XSU whether or not to preserve whitespace.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setPreserveWhitespace(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   flag IN BOOLEAN := true);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
flag	(IN)	Should XSU preserve whitespace?

SETROWTAG

Names the tag used in the XML document to enclose the XML elements corresponding to db. records.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setRowTag(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   tag IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
tag	(IN)	Tag name.

SETSQLTOXMLNAMEESCAPING

Turns on or off escaping of XML tags in the case that the SQL object name, which is mapped to a XML identifier, is not a valid XML identifier.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setSQLToXMLNameEscaping(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   flag IN BOOLEAN := true);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
flag	(IN)	Turn on escaping?

SETUPDATECOLUMN

Adds a column to the update column list. In case of insert, the default is to insert values to all the columns in the table; on the other hand, in case of updates, the default is to only update the columns corresponding to the tags present in the ROW element of the XML document. When the update column list is specified, the columns making up this list alone will get updated or inserted into.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setUpdateColumn(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   colName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
colName	(IN)	Column to be added to the update column list.

SETXSLT

Registers an XSL transform to be applied to the XML to be saved. If a stylesheet was already registered, it gets replaced by the new one. To un-register the stylesheet, pass in null for the URI. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`PROCEDURE setXSLT(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`uri IN VARCHAR2,`
`ref IN VARCHAR2 := null);`
	Passes in the stylesheet through a URI.

`PROCEDURE setXSLT(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`stylesheet IN CLOB,`
`ref IN VARCHAR2 := null);`
	Passes in the stylesheet through a `CLOB`.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`uri`	`(IN)`	URI to the stylesheet to register.
`ref`	`(IN)`	URL for include, import, and external entities.
`stylesheet`	`(IN)`	`CLOB` containing the stylesheet to register.

SETXSLTPARAM

Sets the value of a top-level stylesheet parameter. The parameter is expected to be a valid XPath expression; literal values would therefore have to be explicitly quoted.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setXSLTParam(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   name IN VARCHAR2,
   value IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
name	(IN)	Parameter name.
value	(IN)	Parameter value as an XPath expression

UPDATEXML

Updates the table specified at the context creation time with data from the XML document, and returns the number of rows updated. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION updateXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `VARCHAR2`.

`FUNCTION updateXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN CLOB)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `CLOB`.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	String containing the XML document.

197

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA package provides procedures to manage XML schemas. It is created by script dbmsxsch.sql during Oracle database installation.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLSCHEMA

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_XMLSCHEMA` package.

Overview

This package provides subprograms to

- Register an XML schema
- Delete a previously registered XML schema
- Re-compile a previously registered XML schema
- Generate an XML schema
- Evolves an XML schema

Deprecated Subprograms

Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated subprograms in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only

The following subprograms are deprecated with release Oracle Database 12*c*:

- GENERATESCHEMA Function
- GENERATESCHEMAS Function

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLSCHEMA package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Constants

The DBMS_XMLSCHEMA package uses the constants shown in following tables.

- DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Delete Option
- DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Enable Hierarchy
- DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Register CSID

Table 197–1 DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Delete Option

Constant	Type	Value	Description
DELETE_RESTRICT	NUMBER	1	Deletion of an XML schema fails if there are any tables or XML schemas that depend on it
DELETE_INVALIDATE	NUMBER	2	Deletion of an XML schema does not fail if there are tables or XML schemas that depend on it. All dependent tables and schemas are invalidated.
DELETE_CASCADE	NUMBER	3	Deletion of an XML schema also drops all SQL types and default tables associated with it. SQL types are dropped only if gentypes argument was set to TRUE during registration of the XML schema. However, deletion of the XML schema fails if there are any instance documents conforming to the schema or any dependent XML schemas.
DELETE_CASCADE_FORCE	NUMBER	4	This option is similar to DELETE_CASCADE except that it does not check for any stored instance documents conforming to the schema or any dependent XML schemas. Also, it ignores any errors.

Table 197–2 DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Enable Hierarchy

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ENABLE_HIERARCHY_NONE	PLS_INTEGER	1	The ENABLE_HIERARCHY procedure of the DBMS_XDBZ package will not be called on any tables created while registering that schema
ENABLE_HIERARCHY_CONTENTS	PLS_INTEGER	2	The ENABLE_HIERARCHY procedure of the DBMS_XDBZ package will be called for all tables created during schema registration with hierarchy_type as DBMS_XDBZ.ENABLE_CONTENTS

Table 197–2 (Cont.) DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Enable Hierarchy

Constant	Type	Value	Description
ENABLE_HIERARCHY_RESMETADATA	PLS_INTEGER	3	The ENABLE_HIERARCHY procedure of the DBMS_XDBZ package will be called on all tables created during schema registration with hierarchy_type as DBMS_XDBZ.ENABLE_RESMETADATA. Users should pass in DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_RESMETADATA for schemas they intend to use as resource metadata tables.

Table 197–3 DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Constants - Register CSID

Constant	Type	Value	Description
REGISTER_NODOCID	NUMBER	1	If a schema is registered for metadata use (using the value ENABLE_HIER_RESMETADATA for parameter enablehierarchy during registration), a column named DOCID is added to all tables created during schema registration. This constant can be used in the options argument of REGISTERSCHEMA to prevent the creation of this column if the user wishes to optimize on storage
REGISTER_CSID_NULL	NUMBER	-1	If user wishes to not specify the character set of the input schema document when invoking REGISTERSCHEMA, this value can be used for the csid parameter

Views

The DBMS_XMLSCHEMA package uses the views shown in Table 197–4. The columns of these views are described in detail in the *Oracle Database Reference.*

Table 197–4 Summary of Views used by DBMS_XMLSCHEMA

Schema	Description
USER_XML_SCHEMAS	All registered XML Schemas owned by the user
ALL_XML_SCHEMAS	All registered XML Schemas usable by the current user
DBA_XML_SCHEMAS	All registered XML Schemas in the database
DBA_XML_TABLES	All XMLType tables in the system
USER_XML_TABLES	All XMLType tables owned by the current user
ALL_XML_TABLES	All XMLType tables usable by the current user
DBA_XML_TAB_COLS	All XMLType table columns in the system
USER_XML_TAB_COLS	All XMLType table columns in tables owned by the current user
ALL_XML_TAB_COLS	All XMLType table columns in tables usable by the current user
DBA_XML_VIEWS	All XMLType views in the system
USER_XML_VIEWS	All XMlType views owned by the current user
ALL_XML_VIEWS	All XMLType views usable by the current user
DBA_XML_VIEW_COLS	All XMLType view columns in the system
USER_XML_VIEW_COLS	All XMLType view columns in views owned by the current user
ALL_XML_VIEW_COLS	All XMLType view columns in views usable by the current user

Operational Notes

Guidelines for Using In-Place XML Schema Evolution

Before you perform an in-place XML-schema evolution, you should follow these preparatory steps:

1. Back up all existing data (instance documents) for the XML schema that will be evolved.
2. Perform a dry run using trace only, that is, without actually evolving the XML schema or updating any instance documents, to produce a trace of the update operations that would be performed during evolution. To do this, set the flag parameter value to only `INPLACE_TRACE`. Do not also use `INPLACE_EVOLVE`. After performing the dry run, examine the trace file, verifying that the listed DDL operations are in fact those that you intend.

Summary of DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Subprograms

Table 197–5 DBMS_XMLSCHEMA Package Subprograms

Method	Description
COMPILESCHEMA Procedure on page 197-11	Used to re-compile an already registered XML schema. This is useful for bringing a schema in an invalid state to a valid state.
COPYEVOLVE Procedure on page 197-12	Evolves registered schemas so that existing XML instances remain valid
DELETESCHEMA Procedure on page 197-14	Removes the schema from the database
GENERATESCHEMA Function on page 197-15	Generates an XML schema from an oracle type name
GENERATESCHEMAS Function on page 197-16	Generates several XML schemas from an oracle type name
INPLACEEVOLVE Procedure on page 197-17	Evolves registered schemas by propagating schema changes to object types and tables
PURGESCHEMA Procedure on page 197-19	Removes the XML schema
REGISTERSCHEMA Procedures on page 197-20	Registers the specified schema for use by Oracle. This schema can then be used to store documents conforming to this.
REGISTERURI Procedure on page 197-24	Registers an XML schema specified by a URI name

COMPILESCHEMA Procedure

This procedure can be used to re-compile an already registered XML schema. This is useful for bringing a schema in an invalid state to a valid state. Can result in a `ORA-31001` exception: invalid resource handle or path name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.COMPILESCHEMA(
   schemaurl IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 197–6 COMPILESCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schemaurl`	URL identifying the schema

COPYEVOLVE Procedure

This procedure evolves registered schemas so that existing XML instances remain valid.

This procedure is accomplished in according to the following basic scenario (alternative actions are controlled by the procedure's parameters):

- copies data in schema based `XMLType` tables to temporary table storage
- drops old tables
- deletes old schemas
- registers new schemas
- creates new `XMLType` tables
- Populates new tables with data in temporary storage; auxiliary structures (constraints, triggers, indexes, and others) are not preserved
- drops temporary tables

See Also:

- "Schema Evolution" chapter of the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for examples on how to evolve existing schemas
- *Oracle Database Error Messages* for information on exceptions specific to schema evolution, ORA-30142 through ORA-30946.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.COPYEVOLVE(
   schemaurls       IN  XDB$STRUBG_LIST_T,
   newschemas       IN  XMLSequenceType,
   transforms       IN  XMLSequenceType :=NULL,
   preserveolddocs  IN  BOOLEAN :=FALSE,
   maptablename     IN  VARCHAR2 :=NULL,
   generatetables   IN  BOOLEAN :=TRUE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN :=FALSE,
   schemaowners     IN  XDB$STRING_LIST_T :=NULL
   parallelDegree   IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Parameters

Table 197–7 COPYEVOLVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schemaurls`	`VARRAY` of URLs of all schemas to be evolved. Should include the dependent schemas. Unless the `FORCE` parameter is `TRUE`, URLs should be in the order of dependency.
`newschemas`	`VARRAY` of new schema documents. Should be specified in same order as the corresponding URLs.
`transforms`	`VARRAY` of transforming XSL documents to be applied to schema-based documents. Should be specified in same order as the corresponding URLs. Optional if no transformations are required.

Table 197–7 (Cont.) COPYEVOLVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
preserveolddocs	Default is FALSE, and temporary tables with old data are dropped. If TRUE, these table are still available after schema evolution is complete.
maptabname	Specifies the name of the table mapping permanent to temporary tables during the evolution process. Valid columns are: ■ SCHEMA_URL - VARCHAR2(700) - URL of schema to which this table conforms ■ SCHEMA_OWNER -VARCHAR2(30) - Owner of the schema ■ ELEMENT_NAME - VARCHAR2(256)- Element to which this table conforms ■ TAB_NAME - VARCHAR2(65) - Qualified table name: *<owner_name>.<table_name>* ■ COL_NAME - VARCHAR2(4000) - Name of the column (NULL for XMLType tables) ■ TEMP_TABNAME - VARCHAR2(30) - Name of temporary tables which holds data for this table.
generatetables	Default is TRUE, and new tables will be generated. If FALSE: ■ new tables will not be generated after registration of new schemas ■ preserveolddocs must be TRUE ■ maptablename must be non-NULL
force	Default is FALSE. If TRUE, ignores errors generated during schema evolution. Used when there are circular dependencies among schemas to ensure that all schemas are stored despite possible errors in registration.
schemaowners	VARRAY of names of schema owners. Should be specified in same order as the corresponding URLs. Default is NULL, assuming that all schemas are owned by the current user.
paralleldegree	Specifies the degree of parallelism to be used in a PARALLEL hint during the data copy stage of the evolution. If this is 0 (default), the PARALLEL hint will not be given in the data copy statements.
options	Currently, the only supported option is COPYEVOLVE_BINARY_XML which lets you register the new schemas for binary XML and create the new tables/columns with binary XML as the storage type.

Usage Notes

You should back up all schemas and documents prior to invocation because COPYEVOLVE Procedure deletes all conforming documents prior to implementing the schema evolution.

DELETESCHEMA Procedure

This procedure deletes the XML Schema specified by the URL.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.DELETESCHEMA(
   schemaurl      IN  VARCHAR2,
   delete_option  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DELETE_RESTRICT);
```

> **See Also:** "XMLSCHEMA Storage and Query: Basic" chapter of the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Parameters

Table 197–8 DELETESCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schemaurl`	URL identifying the schema to be deleted
`delete_option`	Delete options: ■ `DELETE_RESTRICT` - Schema deletion fails if there are any tables or schemas that depend on this schema ■ `DELETE_INVALIDATE` - Schema deletion does not fail if there are any dependencies. Instead, it simply invalidates all dependent objects. ■ `DELETE_CASCADE` - Schema deletion will also drop all default SQL types and default tables. However the deletion fails if there are any stored instances conforming to this schema. ■ `DELETE_CASCADE_FORCE` - Similar to `DELETE_CASCADE` except that it does not check for any stored instances conforming to this schema. Also, it ignores any errors.

Exceptions

Table 197–9 DELETESCHEMA Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
`ORA-31001`	Invalid resource handle or path name

GENERATESCHEMA Function

Note: This subprogram is deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function generates XML schema(s) from an Oracle type name. It inlines all in one schema (`XMLType`).

See Also: "XMLSCHEMA Storage and Query: Advanced" chapter of the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.GENERATESCHEMA(
   schemaname    IN  VARCHAR2,
   typename      IN  VARCHAR2,
   elementname   IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   recurse       IN  BOOLEAN  := TRUE,
   annotate      IN  BOOLEAN  := TRUE,
   embedcoll     IN  BOOLEAN  := TRUE)
RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 197–10 GENERATESCHEMA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schemaname`	Name of the database schema containing the type
`typename`	Name of the Oracle type
`elementname`	The name of the top level element in the XML Schema. Defaults to `typename`.
`recurse`	Whether or not to also generate schema for all types referred to by the type specified
`annotate`	Whether or not to put the SQL annotations in the XML Schema
`embedcoll`	Determines whether the collections should be embedded in the type which refers to them, or create a `complextype`. Cannot be `FALSE` if annotations are turned on

Exceptions

Table 197–11 GENERATESCHEMA Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
`ORA-31001`	Invalid resource handle or path name

GENERATESCHEMAS Function

Note: This subprogram is deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function generates XML schema(s) from an Oracle type name. It returns a collection of XMLTypes, one XML Schema document for each database schema.

See Also: "XMLSCHEMA Storage and Query: Advanced" chapter of the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.GENERATESCHEMAS(
   schemaname   IN  VARCHAR2,
   typename     IN  VARCHAR2,
   elementname  IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   schemaurl    IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   annotate     IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   embedcoll    IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE )
 RETURN SYS.XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 197–12 GENERATESCHEMAS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
schemaname	Name of the database schema containing the type
typename	Name of the Oracle type
elementname	The name of the top level element in the XML Schema defaults to typeName
schemaurl	Specifies base URL where schemas will be stored, needed by top level schema for import statement
annotate	Whether or not to put the SQL annotations in the XML Schema
embedcoll	Determines whether the collections be embedded in the type which refers to them, or create a complextype. Cannot be FALSE if annotations are turned on

Exceptions

Table 197–13 GENERATESCHEMAS Function Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-31001	Invalid resource handle or path name

INPLACEEVOLVE Procedure

This procedure evolves registered schemas by propagating schema changes to object types and tables.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.INPLACEEVOLVE(
   schemaURL     IN   VARCHAR2,
   diffXML       IN   XMLType,
   flags         IN   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 197–14 INPLACEEVOLVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schemaurl	URL of the schema to evolve
diffXML	Changes to be applied to the schema. This is an XML document conforming to the XDIFF schema and specifies what changes need to be applied and the locations in the schema document where the changes are to be applied.
flags	The following bits may be set in this parameter to control the behavior of this procedure: ■ INPLACE_EVOLVE (value 1, meaning that bit 1 is on) – Perform in-place XML schema evolution: construct a new XML schema and validate it (against the XML schema for XML schemas); construct the DDL statements needed to evolve the instance-document disk structures, execute the DDL statements, and replace the old XML schema with the new. ■ INPLACE_TRACE (value 2, meaning that bit 2 is on) – Perform all steps necessary for in-place evolution, except executing the DDL statements and overwriting the old XML schema with the new, then write both the DDL statements and the new XML schema to a trace file. That is, each of the bits constructs the new XML schema, validates it, and determines the steps needed to evolve the disk structures underlying the instance documents. In addition: ■ Bit INPLACE_EVOLVE carries out those evolution steps and replaces the old XML schema with the new. ■ Bit INPLACE_TRACE saves the evolution steps and the new XML schema in a trace file (it does not carry out the evolution steps)

Exceptions

The procedure raises exceptions in the following cases:

- An error will be raised for invalid XPATH expressions and for XDIFF documents that do not conform to the xdiff schema.
- Path expressions that are syntactically correct but result in an invalid node in the schema document will result in an error.
- If the schema change makes the schema an ill-formed XML document or an invalid XML schema, this will raise an error.

- Any errors resulting from `CREATE TYPE`, `ALTER TYPE` and like commands will generate error messages.

Usage Notes

- Users are required to backup all their data before attempting in-place evolution, as there is no rollback with this operation.
- A user must register their new XML schema with the database using the REGISTERSCHEMA Procedures and the REGISTERURI Procedure at a schema URL that is different from that of the one to be evolved. If the new schema registers successfully and is usable, only then should the user attempt to evolve the existing schema to the new schema by means of this subprogram. If the registration of the new schema is successful, then the user must delete this schema (and all its dependent objects) before attempting to evolve the schema at the old schema URL.

PURGESCHEMA Procedure

This procedure removes the XML schema.

> **See Also:** "XMLSCHEMA Storage and Query: Advanced" chapter of the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.PURGESCHEMA(
   schemaid   IN  RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 197–15 PURGESCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schemaid	ID of the schema to be purged

Usage Notes

- The schema should have been originally registered for binary encoding and should have been deleted in the HIDE mode.
- Once a schema has been deleted in HIDE mode, it continues to exist in the XML DB dictionary and is used for decoding already encoded documents. The user invokes this interface when there are no stored instances encoded with this schema.
- Once the schema is purged, any space used by that schema will be reclaimed and documents encoded using the schema will raise an error if an attempt is made to decode them.
- The Schema ID can be obtained from the catalog views.

REGISTERSCHEMA Procedures

This procedure registers the specified schema for use by the database. The procedure is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definition.

Note: As of Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2) the `genbean` parameter is deprecated. Oracle recommends that you do not use this parameter in new applications. Support for this feature is for backward compatibility only.

See Also: "XMLSCHEMA Storage and Query: Basic" chapter of the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Syntax

Registers a schema specified as a `VARCHAR2`:

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
    schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
    schemadoc        IN  VARCHAR2,
    local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
    gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
    genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
    gentables        IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
    force            IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
    owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
    enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
    options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as a `BFILE`. The contents of the schema document must be in the database character set:

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadoc        IN  BFILE,
   local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as a `BFILE` and identifies the character set id of the schema document:

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadoc        IN  BFILE,
   local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentables        IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := '',
   csid             IN  NUMBER,
   enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
```

```
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as a BLOB. The contents of the schema document must be in the database character set:

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadoc        IN  BLOB,
   local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genTypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genBean          IN  BOOLEAN := FASLE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as a BLOB and identifies the character set id of the schema document:

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadoc        IN  BLOB,
   local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentables        IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := '',
   csid             IN  NUMBER,
   enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as a CLOB

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadoc        IN  CLOB,
   local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as an XMLTYPE.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadoc        IN  SYS.XMLTYPE,
   local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   force            IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Registers the schema specified as a BLOB. The contents of the schema document must be in the database character set:

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERSCHEMA(
   schemaurl        IN  VARCHAR2,
```

```
schemadoc        IN  SYS.URIType,
local            IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
gentypes         IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
genbean          IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
force            IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
owner            IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
enablehierarchy  IN  PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_CONTENTS,
options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Parameters

Table 197–16 REGSITERSCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schemaurl	URL that uniquely identifies the schema document. This value is used to derive the path name of the schema document within the database hierarchy. Can be used inside schemalocation attribute of XML Schema import element.
schemadoc	A valid XML schema document
local	Is this a local or global schema? ■ By default, all schemas are registered as local schemas, under /sys/schemas/<username>/... ■ If a schema is registered as global, it is added under /sys/schemas/PUBLIC/... You need write privileges on the directory to be able to register a schema as global.
gentypes	Determines whether the schema compiler generates object types. By default, TRUE. If you use binary XML, you must be set gentypes to FALSE.
genbean	Determines whether the schema compiler generates Java beans. By default, FALSE. Oracle recommends that this parameter always be set to FALSE.
gentables	Determines whether the schema compiler generates default tables. By default, TRUE
force	If this parameter is set to TRUE, the schema registration will not raise errors. Instead, it creates an invalid XML schema object in case of any errors. By default, the value of this parameter is FALSE.
owner	This parameter specifies the name of the database user owning the XML schema object. By default, the user registering the schema owns the XML schema object. This parameter can be used to register a XML schema to be owned by a different database user.
csid	Identifies the character set of the input schema document. If this value is 0, the schema document's encoding is determined by the current rule for "text/xml" MIME type.

Table 197–16 (Cont.) REGSITERSCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enablehierarchy	■ ENABLE_HIERARCHY_NONE - enable hierarchy will not be called on any tables created while registering that schema ■ ENABLE_HIERARCHY_CONTENTS - enable hierarchy will be called for all tables created during schema registration with hierarchy_type as DBMS_XDBZ.ENABLE_CONTENTS. This is the default. ■ ENABLE_HIERARCHY_RESMETADATA - enable hierarchy will be called on all tables created during schema registration with hierarchy_type as DBMS_XDBZ.ENABLE_RESMETADATA. Users should pass in DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.ENABLE_RESMETADATA for schemas they intend to use as resource metadata tables.
options	Additional options to specify how the schema should be registered. The various options are represented as bits of an integer and the options parameter should be constructed by doing a BITOR of the desired bits. Possible bits: ■ REGISTER_NODOCID - this will suppress the creation of the DOCID column for out of line tables. This is a storage optimization which might be desirable when we do not need to join back to the document table (for example if we do not care about rewriting certain queries that could be rewritten by making use of the DOCID column) ■ REGISTER_BINARYXML - Register the schema for Binary XML ■ REGISTER_NT_AS_IOT - Store nested tables created during schema registration as index organized tables. The default is to store nested tables as heap tables

REGISTERURI Procedure

This procedure registers an XML Schema specified by a URI name.

> **Note:** As of Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2) the `genbean` parameter is deprecated. Oracle recommends that you do not use this parameter in new applications. Support for this feature is for backward compatibility only.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA.REGISTERURI(
   schemaurl      IN  VARCHAR2,
   schemadocuri   IN  VARCHAR2,
   local          IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   gentypes       IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   genbean        IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   gentables      IN  BOOLEAN := TRUE,
   force          IN  BOOLEAN := FALSE,
   owner          IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   options          IN  PLS_INTEGER := 0);
```

Parameters

Table 197–17 REGISTERURI Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schemaurl`	Uniquely identifies the schema document. Can be used inside `schemaLocation` attribute of XML Schema import element.
`schemadocuri`	Pathname (URI) corresponding to the physical location of the schema document. The URI path could be based on HTTP, FTP, DB or Oracle XML DB protocols. This function constructs a `URIType` instance using the `urifactory`, and invokes the REGISTERSCHEMA Procedures.
`local`	Determines whether this is a local or global schema. By default, all schemas are registered as local schemas, under `/sys/schemas/ <username>/...` If a schema is registered as global, it is added under `/sys/schemas/PUBLIC/...` The user needs write privileges on the directory to register a global schema.
`gentypes`	Determines whether the compiler generate object types. By default, `TRUE`.
`genbean`	Determines whether the compiler generate Java beans. By default, `FALSE`.
`gentables`	Determines whether the compiler generate default tables. `TRUE` by default.
`force`	`TRUE`: schema registration will not raise errors. Instead, it creates an invalid XML schema object in case of any errors. By default, the value of this parameter is `FALSE`.
`owner`	This parameter specifies the name of the database user owning the XML schema object. By default, the user registering the schema owns the XML schema object. This parameter can be used to register a XML schema to be owned by a different database user.

Table 197–17 (Cont.) REGISTERURI Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Additional options to specify how the schema should be registered. The various options are represented as bits of an integer and the options parameter should be constructed by doing a BITOR of the desired bits. Possible bits: ■ REGISTER_NODOCID - this will suppress the creation of the DOCID column for out of line tables. This is a storage optimization which might be desirable when we do not need to join back to the document table (for example if we do not care about rewriting certain queries that could be rewritten by making use of the DOCID column)

198

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE

The DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE package provides an interface to manage and configure the structured storage model, mainly through the use of pre-registration schema annotations.

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE

Overview

The DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE package contains procedures to manage and configure the structured storage model, mainly through the use of pre-registration schema annotations. Schema annotations influence the way the XML data is stored. For example, the default table annotation assigns a user-provided name to an XML element instead of allowing the database to generate a system name. Consequently, query plans are more readable and it is easier to create constraints on that table.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE Subprograms

Table 198–1 DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADDXDBNAMESPACE Procedure on page 198-7	Adds the XDB namespace required for XDB annotation
DISABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION Procedure on page 198-8	Prevents the creation of a table for the top-level element by adding a default table attribute with an empty value to the element
DISABLEMAINTAINDOM Procedure on page 198-9	Sets the DOM fidelity attribute to `FALSE`
ENABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION Procedure on page 198-10	Enables the creation of `ALL` top level tables by removing the empty default table name annotation
ENABLEMAINTAINDOM Procedure on page 198-11	Sets the DOM fidelity attribute to `TRUE`
GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS Function on page 198-12	Creates a document containing the differences between the annotated XML schema and the original XML schema
GETSIDXDEFFROMVIEW Function on page 198-13	Takes a XMLTABLE view definition on a xmltype column or table and it returns a `CLOB` which can be used as parameter to create a structured xmlindex that backs up the XMLTABLE view as relational table
PRINTWARNINGS Procedure on page 198-14	Lets a user raise or suppress a warning if an annotation maps to zero nodes in the XML schema
REMOVEANYSTORAGE Procedure on page 198-15	Removes the setting of the SQL type from the `ANY` child of the complex type with the given name
REMOVEDEFAULTTABLE Procedure on page 198-16	Removes any default table attribute given for the element. After calling this procedure, the system generates table names
REMOVEMAINTAINDOM Procedure on page 198-17	Removes all annotations used to maintain DOM from the given schema
REMOVEOUTOFLINEProcedure on page 198-18	Removes any existing `SQLInline` attributes to prevent out-of-line storage
REMOVESQLCOLLTYPE Procedure on page 198-19	Removes a SQL collection type.
REMOVESQLNAME Procedure on page 198-20	Removes a `SQLNAME` from a global element
REMOVESQLTYPE Procedure on page 198-21	Removes a SQL type
REMOVESQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure on page 198-22	Removes the SQL type mapping for the given schema type.
REMOVETABLEPROPS Procedure on page 198-23	Removes the table storage properties from the `CREATE TABLE` statement
REMOVETIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure on page 198-24	Removes he setting of the `TimeStampWithTimeZone` datatype from all `dateTime` typed elements in the XML schema
SETANYSTORAGE Procedure on page 198-25	Assigns a SQL datatype to the `ANY` child of the complex type with the given name
SETDEFAULTTABLE Procedure on page 198-26	Sets the name of the table for the specified global element

Table 198–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SETOUTOFLINE Procedure on page 198-27	Sets the `SQLInline` attribute to `FALSE`
SETSCHEMAANNOTATATIONS Procedure on page 198-29	Takes the annotated differences resulting from a call to `DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS` and patches them into the provided XML schema
SETSQLCOLLTYPE Procedure on page 198-30	Assigns a SQL type name for a collection
SETSQLNAME Procedure on page 198-31	Assigns a name to the SQL attribute that corresponds to an element defined in the XML schema
SETSQLTYPE Procedure on page 198-32	Assigns a SQL type to a global object
SETSQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure on page 198-34	Defines a mapping of schema type and SQL type
SETTABLEPROPS Procedure on page 198-35	Specifies properties in the `TABLE` storage clause that is appended to the default `CREATE TABLE` statement
SETTIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure on page 198-36	Sets the `TIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE` datatype to all `dateTime` typed elements in the XML schema

ADDXDBNAMESPACE Procedure

This procedure adds the XDB namespace required for XDB annotation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.ADDXDBNAMESPACE (
   xmlschema      IN OUT XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–2 ADDXDBNAMESPACE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmschema	Gets an XML Schema as XMLTYPE, performs the annotation and returns it

Usage Notes

This procedure is called implicitly by any other procedure that adds a schema annotation. Since there is no reason to add an XDB namespace without other annotations, this procedure is most likely called by other annotations procedures and not by the user directly.

DISABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION Procedure

This procedure prevents the creation of a table for the top-level element by adding a default table attribute with an empty value to the element. The first overload applies to a specified top-level element and the second applies to all top-level elements. The procedure always overwrites. This is equivalent to using the schema annotation `xdb:defaultTable=""` for the top-level element or elements.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.DISABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION (
   xmlschema         IN OUT XMLType,
   globalElementName IN VARCHAR2);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.DISABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION (
   xmlschema         IN OUT XMLType);
```

Parameters

Table 198–3 DISABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	XML schema to be annotated
`globalElementName`	Name of the global element in the schema

Example

The `purchaseOrder` element will have an annotation similar to `xdb:defaultTable=""`.

```
DECLARE
   xml_schema   XMLTYPE;
BEGIN
   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;
   DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.DISABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION(xml_schema,
                                          'purchaseOrder');
   UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;
END;
/
```

DISABLEMAINTAINDOM Procedure

This procedure sets the DOM fidelity attribute to FALSE.

There are two overloads. The first sets DOM fidelity attribute to FALSE for all complex types, and the second sets it to FALSE for the named complex type. This is equivalent to adding xdb:maintainDOM="false" on all or specified complex types respectively.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.DISABLEMAINTAINDOM (
   xmlschema       IN OUT XMLType,
   overwrite       IN BOOLEAN default TRUE);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.DISABLEMAINTAINDOM (
   xmlschema       IN OUT XMLType,
   complexTypeName IN VARCHAR2,
   overwrite       IN BOOLEAN default TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–4 DISABLEMAINTAINDOM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	The XML schema to be annotated
complexTypeName	The name of the complex type
overwrite	A boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE

ENABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION Procedure

This procedure enables the creation of ALL top level tables by removing the empty default table name annotation.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.ENABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION (
   xmlschema            IN OUT  XMLTYPE);

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.ENABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION (
   xmlschema            IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   globalElementName    IN      VARCHAR2););
```

Parameters

Table 198–5 ENABLEDEFAULTTABLECREATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	The XML schema to be annotated
`gloablElementName`	Name of the global element in the schema

Usage Notes

This procedure does not affect elements that have a default table name.

ENABLEMAINTAINDOM Procedure

This procedure sets the DOM fidelity attribute to TRUE.

There are two overloads. The first sets DOM fidelity attribute to TRUE for all complex types, and the second sets it to TRUE for the named complex type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.ENABLEMAINTAINDOM (
   xmlschema       IN OUT XMLType,
   overwrite       IN BOOLEAN default TRUE);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.ENABLEMAINTAINDOM (
   xmlschema        IN OUT XMLType,
   complexTypeName  IN VARCHAR2,
   overwrite        IN BOOLEAN default TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–6 ENABLEMAINTAINDOM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	The XML schema to be annotated
complexTypeName	The name of the complex type
overwrite	A boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE

GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS Function

This function creates a document containing the differences between the annotated XML schema and the original XML schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS (
   xmlschema IN xmlType)
  RETURN XMLType;
```

Parameters

Table 198–7 GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	The original XML schema

Return Values

This function returns the document `annotations.xml` as an `XMLType`.

Usage Notes

This function saves all annotations in one document, named `annotations`, and returns it. With this document, you can apply all annotations to a non-annotated schema, using `DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS`.

`DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS` is not available on Oracle Database release 10.2 (only Oracle Database release 11.*x*).

See Also: SETSCHEMAANNOTATATIONS Procedure on page 29

Example

For an example of `DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS`, see the example in SETSCHEMAANNOTATATIONS Procedure on page 29.

GETSIDXDEFFROMVIEW Function

This function takes a XMLTABLE view definition on a xmltype column or table and it returns a CLOB which can be used as parameter to create a structured xmlindex that backs up the XMLTABLE view as relational table.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSIDXDEFFROMVIEW (
   viewName   IN xmlType)
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 198–8 GETSIDXDEFFROMVIEW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
viewName	The original XML schema

Return Values

This function returns a CLOB which can be used as parameter to create a structured xmlindex that backs up the XMLTABLE view as relational table.

PRINTWARNINGS Procedure

This procedure lets a user raise or suppress a warning if an annotation maps to zero nodes in the XML schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.PRINTWARNINGS (
   value       IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–9 PRINTWARNINGS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
val	For the NO MATCHING ELEMENTS FOUND error message to be raised val must be set to TRUE. In cases in which user wishes to suppress this warning, set to FALSE.

Usage Notes

If an annotation maps to more than one node in the XML schema, this raise the error ANNOTATION MAPS TO MULTIPLE ELEMENTS. In this case no annotation is performed, and the user must correct the parameters to the procedure call to refer to a unique node in the XML schema.

REMOVEANYSTORAGE Procedure

This procedure removes the setting of the SQL type from the ANY child of the complex type with the given name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEANYSTORAGE (
   xmlschema       IN OUT XMLType,
   complexTypeName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–10 REMOVEANYSTORAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	The XML schema to be annotated.
complexTypeName	The name of the complex type.

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses the SETANYSTORAGE Procedure.

REMOVEDEFAULTTABLE Procedure

This procedure removes any default table attribute given for the element. After calling this procedure, the system generates table names. This procedure always overwrites.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEDEFAULTTABLE (
   xmlschema          IN OUT XMLTYPE,
   globalElementName  IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–11 REMOVEDEFAULTTABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	XML schema to be annotated
`globalElementName`	Name of the global element in the schema

Example

Annotations can be verified anytime using `"select out from annotation_tab"`.

```
--The purchaseOrder element will have no annotation for defaultTable.
DECLARE
   xml_schema XMLTYPE;
BEGIN
   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;
   DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEDEFAULTTABLE(xml_schema,
                                              'purchaseOrder');
   UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;
END;
/
```

REMOVEMAINTAINDOM Procedure

This procedure removes all annotations used to maintain DOM from the given schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEMAINTAINDOM (
   xmlschema    IN OUT XMLType);
```

Parameters

Table 198–12 REMOVEMAINTAINDOM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	The XML schema to be annotated

REMOVEOUTOFLINE Procedure

This procedure removes any existing `SQLInline` attributes to prevent out-of-line storage. There are three overloads.

Syntax

Removes the `SQLInline` attribute for the named element.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEOUTOFLINE (
   xmlschema           IN OUT  XMLType,
   elementName         IN      VARCHAR2,
   elementType         IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite           IN      BOOLEAN default TRUE);
```

Removes the `SQLInline` attribute for the object specified by its global object and local element names.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEOUTOFLINE (
   xmlschema           IN OUT  XMLType,
   globalObject        IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName    IN      VARCHAR2,
   localElementName    IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Removes the `SQLInline` attribute for the referenced global element.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVEOUTOFLINE (
   xmlschema         IN OUT  XMLType,
   reference         IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–13 REMOVEMAKEOUTOFLINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	The XML schema to be annotated
`elementName`	The element name
`elementType`	The element type
`globalObject`	The global object (global complex type or global element)
`globalObjectName`	The name of the global object
`localElementName`	The name of a local element that descends from the global element
`reference`	A reference to a global element
`overwrite`	A boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is `TRUE`.

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses SETOUTOFLINE Procedure.

REMOVESQLCOLLTYPE Procedure

This procedure removes a SQL collection type. The first overload removes the SQL collection type corresponding to the named element and the second overload removes the type from the XML element inside the complex type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVESQLCOLLTYPE (
   xmlschema   IN OUT XMLType,
   elementName IN VARCHAR2);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVESQLCOLLTYPE (
   xmlschema        IN OUT XMLType,
   globalObject     IN VARCHAR2,
   globalName       IN VARCHAR2,
   localElementName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–14 REMOVESQLCOLLTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	The XML schema to be annotated
`elementName`	The element name
`globalObject`	The global object (global complex type or global element)
`globalName`	The name of the global object
`localElementName`	The name of a local element that descends from the global element

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses the SETSQLCOLLTYPE Procedure.

REMOVESQLNAME Procedure

This procedure removes a SQLNAME from a global element.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVESQLNAME (
   xmlschema          IN OUT  XMLType,
   globalObject       IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   localObject        IN      VARCHAR2,
   localObjectName    IN      VARCHAR2,
   sqlName            IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–15 REMOVESQLNAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
globalObject	Global object (global complex type or global element)
globalObjectName	Name of the global object
localObject	Object descended from the global object
localObjectName	Name of the local object
sqlName	Name of the SQL attribute that corresponds to the element defined in the XML schema
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

Example

The shipTo element will have an annotation similar to xdb:SQLName="SHIPTO_SQLNAME".

```
DECLARE
   xml_schema   XMLTYPE;
BEGIN
   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;
   DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLNAME (xml_schema,
                                       'element', 'purchaseOrder',
                                       'element', 'shipTo',
                                       'SHIPTO_SQLNAME');
   UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;
END;
/
```

REMOVESQLTYPE Procedure

This procedure removes a SQL type. The first overload removes a SQL type from a global element and the second overload removes the type from a global element inside the complex type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVESQLTYPE (
   xmlschema in out XMLType,
   globalElementName   IN      VARCHAR2);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVESQLTYPE (
   xmlschema           IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   globalObject        IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName    IN      VARCHAR2,
   localObject         IN      VARCHAR2,
   localObjectName     IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–16 REMOVESQLTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated.
globalObject	Global object (global complex type or global element)
globalElementName	Name of the global element.
globalObjectName	Name of the global object
localObject	Object descended from the global object
localObjectName	Name of the local object

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses the SETSQLTYPE Procedure.

REMOVESQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure

This procedure removes the SQL type mapping for the given schema type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVESQLTYPEMAPPING (
   xmlschema        IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   schemaTypeName   IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–17 REMOVESQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
schemaTypeName	Name of the schema type

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses the SETSQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure.

REMOVETABLEPROPS Procedure

This procedure removes the table storage properties from the `CREATE TABLE` statement. This procedure is overloaded. Each overload has different parameter requirements as indicated.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVETABLEPROPS (
   xmlschema            IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   globalElementName    IN      VARCHAR2);

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVETABLEPROPS (
   xmlschema            IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   globalObject         IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName     IN      VARCHAR2,
   localElementName     IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–18 REMOVETABLEPROPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	XML schema to be annotated
`globalElementName`	Name of the global element in the schema
`globalObject`	Global object (global complex type or global element)
`globalObjectName`	Name of the global object
`localElementName`	Name of a local element that descends from the global element

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses the SETTABLEPROPS Procedure.

REMOVETIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure

This procedure removes the setting of the `TimeStampWithTimeZone` datatype from all `dateTime` typed elements in the XML schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVETIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE (
   xmlschema          IN OUT  XMLTYPE);

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.REMOVETIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE (
   xmlschema         IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   schemaTypeName    IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–19 REMOVETIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	XML schema to be annotated
`schemaTypeName`	Name of the schema type

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses the SETTIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure.

SETANYSTORAGE Procedure

This procedure assigns a SQL datatype to the ANY child of the complex type with the given name.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETANYSTORAGE )
   xmlschema       IN OUT  XMLType,
   complexTypeName IN      VARCHAR2,
   sqlTypeName     IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite       IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–20 SETANYSTORAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
complexTypeName	Name of the complex type
sqlTypeName	Name of the SQL type
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

Example

The xsd:any child of complex type Items is assigned an annotation similar to xdb:SQLType="VARCHAR".

```
DECLARE   xml_schema  XMLTYPE;BEGIN   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_
tab;  DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.setAnyStorage (xml_schema,
'Items',                                          'VARCHAR');   UPDATE annotation_
tab SET out = xml_schema;END;
/
```

SETDEFAULTTABLE Procedure

This procedure sets the name of the table for the specified global element. This is equivalent to using the schema annotation `xdb:defaultTable="<default_table_name>"` for the top-level element.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETDEFAULTTABLE (
   xmlschema           IN  OUT  XMLTYPE,
   globalElementName   IN       VARCHAR2,
   tableName           IN       VARCHAR2,
   overwrite           IN       BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–21 SETDEFAULTTABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	XML schema to be annotated
`globalElementName`	Name of the global element in the schema
`tableName`	Name being assigned to the table
`overwrite`	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is `TRUE`.

SETOUTOFLINE Procedure

This procedure sets the SQLInline attribute to FALSE, that is, it sets xdb:SQLInLine=FALSE.

This forces XDB to store the corresponding elements in the XML document out-of-line as rows in a separate XMLType table. XDB stores references to each row of the XMLType table in a link table that is maintained by the main table

This procedure can improve performance in some situations if the out-of-line table acts as the driver for the query. Storing elements in an out-of-line table also reduces the numbers of columns in the base table, thus avoiding '1000 column limit' errors during XML schema registration, when some elements have complex types with many elements.

Also See: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

There are three overloads.

Syntax

Sets the SQLInline attribute to FALSE, forcing out-of-line storage for the named element.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETOUTOFLINE (
   xmlschema          IN OUT  XMLType,
   elementName        IN      VARCHAR2,
   elementType        IN      VARCHAR2,
   defaultTableName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Sets the SQLInline attribute to FALSE, forcing out-of-line storage for the element specified by its local and global name.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETOUTOFLINE (
   xmlschema          IN OUT  XMLType,
   globalObject       IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   localElementName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   defaultTableName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Sets the SQLInline attribute to FALSE to force out-of-line storage and sets the default table name for all references to a particular global element.

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETOUTOFLINE (
   xmlschema         IN OUT  XMLType,
   reference         IN      VARCHAR2,
   defaultTableName  IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite         IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–22 SETOUTOFLINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	The XML schema to be annotated.
elementName	The element name

Table 198–22 (Cont.) SETOUTOFLINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
elementType	The element type
defaultTableName	The name of the default table.
globalObject	The global object (global complex type or global element)
globalObjectName	The name of the global object
localElementName	The name of a local element that descends from the global element.
reference	A reference to a global element
overwrite	A boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

Usage Notes

After XML schema registration and before loading XML instance data, use DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.SCOPEXMLREFERENCES() to make these references scope to the out-of-line table only. This ensures better query performance later on.

Example

The following example illustrates the third overloaded method. The element comment will have an annotation similar to xdb:defaultTable="CMMNT_DEFAULT_TABLE"

```
DECLARE
   xml_schema xmltype;
BEGIN
SELECT OUT INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETOUTOFLINE (xml_schema,
                                      'ipo:comment',
                                      'CMMNT_DEFAULT_TABLE');
UPDATE annotation_tab SET OUT = xml_schema;
END;
/
```

SETSCHEMAANNOTATATIONS Procedure

This procedure takes the annotated differences resulting from a call to DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS and patches them into the provided XML schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS (
   xmlschema     IN OUT xmlType,
   annotations   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 198–23 SETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	An XML schema to be patched.
annotations	The differences document produced by calling DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS on the original XML schema and an annotated XML schema.

Usage Notes

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSCHEMAANNOTATATIONS is not available on Oracle Database release 10.2 (only Oracle Database release 11.*x*).

See Also: GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS Function

Example

The following example illustrates DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS shown here and GETSCHEMAANNOTATIONS Function.

```
-- test getannotations and apply them
declare
 xml_schema xmltype;
 xml_schema2 xmltype;
 annotations xmltype;
begin
   select out into xml_schema from annotation_tab;

   -- get the annotations from the schema
   annotations := DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.getSchemaAnnotations (xml_schema);

   -- apply the annotations to the schema
   select inp into xml_schema2 from annotation_tab;

   DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.setSchemaAnnotations(xml_schema2, annotations);

   update annotation_tab t set t.out = xml_schema2;
end;
/
```

SETSQLCOLLTYPE Procedure

This procedure assigns a SQL type name for a collection. A collection is a global or local element with `maxOccurs>1`. Using this procedure, XDB creates `SQLType`s with the user-defined names provided.

There are two overloads. The first sets the name of the SQL collection type corresponding to an XML element and the second to an XML element inside the specified complex type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLCOLLTYPE (
   xmlschema          IN OUT   XMLTYPE,
   elementName        IN       VARCHAR2,
   sqlCollType        IN       VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN       BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLCOLLTYPE (
   xmlschema          IN OUT XMLType,
   globalObject       IN VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName   IN VARCHAR2,
   localElementName   IN VARCHAR2,
   sqlCollType        IN VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN BOOLEAN default TRUE );
```

Parameters

Table 198–24 SETSQLCOLLTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmlschema`	The XML schema to be annotated
`elementName`	The element name
`sqlCollType`	The SQL collection type
`globalObject`	The global object (global complex type or global element)
`globalObjectName`	The name of the global object
`localElementName`	The name of a local element that descends from the global element
`overwrite`	A boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is `TRUE`.

Example

The `item` element will have an annotation similar to `xdb:SQLCollType="ITEM_SQL_COL_TYPE"`.

```
declare
   xml_schema xmltype;
begin
   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;
   DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.setSQLCollType (xml_schema,
                                           'item',
                                           'ITEM_SQL_COL_TYPE',TRUE);
   UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;
end;
```

SETSQLNAME Procedure

This procedure assigns a name to the SQL attribute that corresponds to an element defined in the XML schema.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLNAME (
   xmlschema          IN OUT  XMLType,
   globalObject       IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName   IN      VARCHAR2,
   localObject        IN      VARCHAR2,
   localObjectName    IN      VARCHAR2,
   sqlName            IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–25 SETSQLNAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
globalObject	Global object (global complex type or global element)
globalObjectName	Name of the global object
localObject	Object descended from the global object
localObjectName	Name of the local object
sqlName	Name of the SQL attribute that corresponds to the element defined in the XML schema
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

Example

The shipTo element will have an annotation similar to xdb:SQLName="SHIPTO_SQLNAME".

```
DECLARE
   xml_schema   XMLTYPE;
BEGIN
   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;
   DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLNAME (xml_schema,
                                       'element', 'purchaseOrder',
                                       'element', 'shipTo',
                                       'SHIPTO_SQLNAME');
   UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;
END;
/
```

SETSQLTYPE Procedure

This procedure assigns a SQL type to a global object.

There are two overloads. The first overload assigns a SQL Type to a global object, such as a global element or global complex type and the second to a local object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLTYPE (
   xmlschema            IN OUT   XMLTYPE,
   globalElementName    IN       VARCHAR2,
   sqlType              IN       VARCHAR2,
   overwrite            IN       BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);


DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLTYPE (
   xmlschema           IN OUT   XMLTYPE,
   globalObject        IN       VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName    IN       VARCHAR2,
   localObject         IN       VARCHAR2,
   localObjectName     IN       VARCHAR2,
   sqlType             IN       VARCHAR2,
   overwrite           IN       BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–26 SETSQLTYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
globalObject	Global object (global complex type or global element)
globalObjectName	Name of the global object
globalElementName	Name of the global element
localObject	Object descended from the global object
localObjectName	Name of the local object
sqlType	SQL type assigned to the named global element
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

Example

The purchaseOrder element will have an annotation similar to xdb:SQLType="PO_SQLTYPE" and the shipTo element has one similar to xdb:SQLType="VARCHAR".

```
DECLARE
   xml_schema  xmltype;
BEGIN
  SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_tab;
  DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.setSQLType (xml_schema,
                                      'purchaseOrder',
                                      'PO_SQLTYPE');
  UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;
END;
/
```

```
DECLARE   xml_schema   xmltype;BEGIN  SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_
tab;  DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.setSQLType (xml_schema,
'element','purchaseOrder',                                          'element'
,'shipTo',                                          'VARCHAR');  UPDATE annotation_
tab SET out = xml_schema;END;
/
```

SETSQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure

This procedure defines a mapping of schema type and SQL type.

If you use this procedure, you do not need to call the SETSQLTYPE procedure on all instances of the schema type; instead the procedure traverses the schema and assigns the SQL type automatically.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETSQLTYPEMAPPING (
   xmlschema          IN OUT   XMLType,
   schemaTypeName     IN       VARCHAR2,
   sqlTypeName        IN       VARCHAR2,
   overwrite          IN       BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–27 SETSQLTYPEMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
schemaTypeName	Schema type
sqlTypeName	Name of the SQL type
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE

Example

The attribute orderDate will have an annotation similar to xdb:SQLType="DATE".

```
declare   xml_schema xmltype;beginSELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_
tab;DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.setSQLTypeMapping (xml_schema,
'date',                                          'DATE');UPDATE annotation_tab SET
out = xml_schema;end;
/
```

SETTABLEPROPS Procedure

This procedure specifies properties in the TABLE storage clause that is appended to the default CREATE TABLE statement. There are two overloads with different parameter requirements, as indicated:

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETTABLEPROPS (
   xmlschema            IN OUT  XMLType,
   globalElementName    IN      VARCHAR2,
   tableProps           IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite            IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);

DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETTABLEPROPS (
   xmlschema            IN OUT  XMLTYPE,
   globalObject         IN      VARCHAR2,
   globalObjectName     IN      VARCHAR2,
   localElementName     IN      VARCHAR2,
   tableProps           IN      VARCHAR2,
   overwrite            IN      BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–28 SETTABLEPROPS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
globalElementName	Name of the global element in the schema
tableProps	Table properties
globalObject	Global object (global complex type or global element)
globalObjectName	Name of the global object
localElementName	Name of a local element that descends from the global element
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

Example

The purchaseOrder element will have an annotation similar to xdb:tableProps="CACHE".

```
DECLARE   xml_schema XMLTYPE;BEGIN   SELECT out INTO xml_schema FROM annotation_
tab;  DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETTABLEPROPS(xml_schema,
'purchaseOrder' ,'CACHE');   UPDATE annotation_tab SET out = xml_schema;END;
/
```

SETTIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure

This procedure sets the TIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE datatype to all dateTime typed elements in the XML schema. This is equivalent to adding xdb:SQLType="TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE" to all dateTime objects.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSCHEMA_ANNOTATE.SETTIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE (
   xmlschema      IN OUT   XMLTYPE,
   overwrite      IN       BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 198–29 SETTIMESTAMPWITHTIMEZONE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
xmlschema	XML schema to be annotated
overwrite	Boolean that indicates whether or not the procedure overwrites element attributes. The default is TRUE.

199

DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE

The DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE package provides an interface to manage and modify XML storage after schema registration has been completed.

> **See Also:** *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE

Overview

DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE contains procedures to manage and modify XML storage after schema registration has been completed. Use subprograms from this package to improve the performance of bulk load operations. You can disable indexes and constraints before doing a bulk load process and to enable them afterwards.

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE Subprograms

Table 199–1 DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure on page 199-6	Disables the indexes and constraints for `XMLType` tables and `XMLType` columns
ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure on page 199-9	Rebuilds all indexes and enables the constraints on an `XMLType` table including its child tables and out-of-line tables
EXCHANGEPOSTPROC Procedure on page 199-10	Enable constraints after exchange partition
EXCHANGEPREPROC Procedure on page 199-11	Disable constraints before exchange partition
INDEXXMLREFERENCES Procedure on page 199-12	Creates unique indexes on the `REF` columns of the given XML type table or the XML type column of a given table
RENAMECOLLECTIONTABLE Procedure on page 199-13	Renames a collection table to the given table name
SCOPEXMLREFERENCES Procedure on page 199-15	Scopes all XML references. Scoped `REF` types require less storage space and allow more efficient access than unscoped `REF` types
XPATH2TABCOLMAPPING Function on page 199-16	Maps a path expression (in XPath notation or DOT notations) to the corresponding table name and column name

DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure

This procedure disables the indexes and constraints for XMLType tables and XMLType columns.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS (
   owner_name    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   clear         IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 199–2 DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name	Owner's name
table_name	Name of the XMLType table that the procedure is being performed on
column_name	XMLType column name
clear	Boolean that when set to TRUE clears all stored index and constraint data for the table before the procedure executes. The default is FALSE, which does not clear them.

Usage Notes

Passing XMLTYPE tables

For XMLType tables, you must pass the XMLType table name on which the bulk load operation is to be performed. For XMLType columns, you must pass the relational table name and the corresponding XMLType column name.

Using clear to Enable and Disable Indexes and Constraints

Note: If the DISABLEINDEXESANDCONTRAINTS procedure is called with clear set to TRUE, it removes any index or constraint information about the XMLTYPE table or column memorized during earlier executions of the procedure.

Therefore, you must ensure that all disabled indexes and constraints are re-enabled on the table or column before you call the DISABLEINDEXESANDCONTRAINTS procedure with clear set to TRUE.

Ideally, it is recommended that you set clear set to TRUE for the first execution. For any subsequent executions (due to errors while disabling or enabling indexes) clear should be set to FALSE, the default value. Once you have successfully re-enabled all the indexes and constraints following the bulk load operation, you can call this procedure again with clear set to TRUE for the next bulk load operation.

Example

The following example illustrates the use of clear in the DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS procedure and the ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure.

First, add a not-NULL constraint on comment element of the PURCHASEORDER_TAB table:

```
ALTER TABLE PURCHASEORDER_TAB ADD CONSTRAINT c1 check
("XMLDATA"."comment" IS NOT NULL);
```

Then, disable all the indexes and constraints by passing the clear as TRUE, by calling the DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS procedure:

```
BEGIN
     XDB.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS
                                ( USER,'PURCHASEORDER_TAB',NULL,TRUE );
END;
/
```

Next, perform a bulk load operation (such as datapump import) which violates constraint c1 in the ALTER table statement. This does not raise an error because the constraint is disabled:

```
host impdp orexample/orexample directory=dir dumpfile=dmp.txt
   tables=OREXAMPLE.PURCHASEORDER_TAB content = DATA_ONLY;
```

NOTE: To view the disabled constraints and indexes use:

```
SELECT constraint_name,table_name,status FROM all_constraints
  WHERE owner = user;
```

Finally, try to enable the constraint using the ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS procedure. It raises an error because c1, the not null constraint, is violated by the bulk load operation:

```
BEGIN
     XDB.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS
                                        ( USER,'PURCHASEORDER_TAB');
END;
/
```

To disable all the indexes and constraints, again use DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS, but set clear= FALSE (because the ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS failed to complete successfully). Note: clear = FALSE by default, so we do not need to pass it explicitly in the next call.

```
BEGIN
     xdb.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS
                                ( USER,'PURCHASEORDER_TAB');
END;
/
```

Then, delete the incorrect rows entered into the table

```
DELETE FROM purchaseorder_tab p
     WHERE p.xmldata."comment" IS NULL;
```

Re-enable the indexes and constraints using ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS, which completes successfully.

```
BEGIN
     xdb.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS
```

```
                                                    ( USER,'PURCHASEORDER_TAB');
END;
/
```

ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure

This procedure rebuilds all indexes and enables the constraints on an XMLType table including its child tables and out-of-line tables. When column_name is passed, it does the same for this XMLType column.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS (
   owner_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name   IN VARCHAR2,
   column_name  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 199–3 ENABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_user	Owner's name
table_name	Name of the table that the indexes and constraints are being removed from
column_name	Column name

Usage Notes

This procedure reverses DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure.

Example

See DISABLEINDEXESANDCONSTRAINTS Procedure

EXCHANGEPOSTPROC Procedure

This procedure enable constraints after exchange partition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.EXCHANGEPOSTPROC (
   owner_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 199–4 EXCHANGEPOSTPROC Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`owner_user`	Owner's name
`table_name`	Name of the table that the indexes and constraints are being removed from

EXCHANGEPREPROC Procedure

This procedure disable constraints before exchange partition.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.EXCHANGEPREPROC (
   owner_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name   IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 199–5 EXCHANGEPREPROC Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_user	Owner's name
table_name	Name of the table that the indexes and constraints are being removed from

INDEXXMLREFERENCES Procedure

This procedure creates unique indexes on the REF columns of the given XML type table or the XML type column of a given table.

If the procedure creates multiple REF columns, it appends _1, _2, and so on to their names.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.INDEXXMLREFERENCES (
   owner_name    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 199–6 INDEXXMLREFERENCES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_name	The owner's name
table_name	The table being indexed
column_name	A column name. Not needed for XML type tables.
index_name	The name of the newly created index

Usage Notes

This procedure is only used if the REFs are scoped. See SCOPEXMLREFERENCES Procedure.

Indexed REFs lead to better performance when joins between the base table and a child table occur in the query plan.

- If the base table has a higher selectivity than the child table, there is no need to index the REFs.
- If the selectivity of the child table is higher than that of the base table and if no indexes are present, then the join of one row in the child table with the base table leads to a full table scan of the base table.

INDEXXMLREFERENCES does not index REFs recursively in child tables of a table it is called on. To do this, Oracle recommends calling the procedure from within a loop over the XML_OUT_OF_LINE_TABLES or XML_NESTED_TABLES view. This creates the index names from the current value of a column in the view.

Note: This procedure is limited to the structured storage model.

RENAMECOLLECTIONTABLE Procedure

This procedure renames a collection table to the given table name.

An XPath expression specifies the collection table, starting from the `XMLtype` base table or an `XMLType` column of the base table.

This procedure provides the only way to derive a collection table name from the corresponding collection type name because there is no direct schema annotation for the purpose.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.RENAMECOLLECTIONTABLE (
   owner_name             IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name             IN VARCHAR2,
   column_name            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   xpath                  IN VARCHAR2,
   collection_table_name  IN VARCHAR2
   namespaces             IN VARCHAR2 default NULL);  // For release 11.2 only
```

Parameters

Table 199–7 RENAMECOLLECTIONTABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`owner_name`	The name of the owner
table_name	The name of a base table that can be used as the starting point for specifying the collection table
`column_name`	An `XMLType` column that can be the starting point for specifying the collection table
`xpath`	The XPath expression that specifies the collection table
`collection_table_name`	The name of the collection table
`namespaces`	For Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2) and higher. The namespaces used in XPath.

Usage Notes

Call this procedure after registering the XML schema.

The table name serves as a prefix to the index names.

Oracle recommends using this function because it makes query execution plans more readable.

Report errors that occur while this procedure runs to the user that called the procedure.

> **Note:** This procedure is limited to the structured storage model.

For Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2) and higher, only, this function accepts XPath notation as well as DOT notation. If XPath notation is used, a `namespaces` parameter may also be required.

Example

The collection table name will be `EMP_TAB_NAMELIST`. You can verify this using `SELECT * FROM user_nested_tables`.

Using DOT Notation:

```
call  XDB.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.RENAMECOLLECTIONTABLE (
           USER,
           'EMP_TAB',
           NULL,
           '"XMLDATA"."EMPLOYEE"."NAME"',
          ''EMP_TAB_NAMELIST);
```

Using XPath Notation:

XPath notation is available with Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2) and higher.

```
call  XDB.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.RENAMECOLLECTIONTABLE (
              USER,
              'EMP_TAB',
              NULL,
              '/e:Employee/Name',
              'EMP_TAB_NAMELIST',
              '''http://www.oracle.com/emp.xsd'' as "e"');
```

SCOPEXMLREFERENCES Procedure

This procedure scopes all XML references. Scoped `REF` types require less storage space and allow more efficient access than unscoped `REF` types.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.SCOPEXMLREFERENCES;
```

Usage Notes

- If you have used SETOUTOFLINE Procedure in the DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE package to avoid raising `'1000 column limit'` errors during XML schema registration, you should also use SCOPEXMLREFERENCES Procedure.
- Using `SCOPEXMLREFERENCES` after XML schema registration and before loading XML instance data, makes these reference scoped to the out-of-line table only.

> **Note:** This procedure is limited to the structured storage model.

XPATH2TABCOLMAPPING Function

This function maps a path expression (in XPath notation or DOT notations) to the corresponding table name and column name. This is necessary in cases in which the user wants to create an index on this table, or to add a constraint, or to rename a table to make query execution plans more readable.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.XPATH2TABCOLMAPPING (
   owner_name   IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT USER,
   table_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   xpath        IN  VARCHAR2,
   namespaces   IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 199–8 XPATH2TABCOLMAPPING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner_user	Owner's name
table_name	Name of the base table
column_name	Optional name of the XML type column if table_name is not an XMLtype table. If table_name refers to XMLType table then column_name should be NULL.
xpath	Path expression in DOT notation or XPath notation (see examples below)
namespaces	Optional namespace definitions for path expression

Examples

XPath2TablColMapping evaluated on XMLType table with Xpath Notation, namespaces provided

```
SELECT XDB.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.XPATH2TABCOLMAPPING (
   USER, 'XML_TAB', '', '//n1:item/n1:location',''''xdbXmark'' as "n1"'')
FROM DUAL;
```

This produces a result, for example:

```
<Result>
<Mapping TableName="SYS_NT12345" ColumnName="location"/>
</Result>
```

This allows us to define an index or constraint on table SYS_NT12345 and column location.

XPath2TablColMapping evaluated on table not of XMLType but with XMLType column by means of DOT notation

```
SELECT XDB.DBMS_XMLSTORAGE_MANAGE.XPATH2TABCOLMAPPING (
   USER,'PurchaseOrderTab','XMLCOL','xmldata.LineItems.LineItem', '')
FROM DUAL;
```

200

DBMS_XMLSTORE

DBMS_XMLSTORE provides the ability to store XML data in relational tables.

See Also: *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following sections:

Using DBMS_XMLSTORE

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLSTORE package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Types

Table 200–1 Types of DBMS_XMLSTORE

Type	Description
`ctxType`	The type of the query context handle. This is the return type of NEWCONTEXT.

Summary of DBMS_XMLSTORE Subprograms

Table 200–2 DBMS_XMLSTORE Package Subprograms

Method	Description
CLEARKEYCOLUMNLIST on page 200-6	Clears the key column list.
CLEARUPDATECOLUMN LIST on page 200-7	Clears the update column list.
CLOSECONTEXT on page 200-8	It closes/deallocates a particular save context.
DELETEXML on page 200-9	Deletes records specified by data from the XML document, from the table specified at the context creation time.
INSERTXML on page 200-10	Inserts the XML document into the table specified at the context creation time.
NEWCONTEXT on page 200-11	Creates a save context, and returns the context handle.
SETKEYCOLUMN on page 200-12	This method adds a column to the key column list.
SETROWTAG on page 200-13	Names the tag used in the XML document., to enclose the XML elements corresponding to the database.
SETUPDATECOLUMN on page 200-14	Adds a column to the "update column list".
UPDATEXML on page 200-15	Updates the table given the XML document.

CLEARKEYCOLUMNLIST

Clears the key column list.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE clearKeyColumnList(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

CLEARUPDATECOLUMNLIST

Clears the update column list.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE clearUpdateColumnList(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

CLOSECONTEXT

Closes/deallocates a particular save context.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE closeContext(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.

DELETEXML

Deletes records specified by data from the XML document from the table specified at the context creation time, and returns the number of rows deleted.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION deleteXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxPType,`
`  xDoc IN VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Uses a `VARCHAR2` type for the `xDoc` parameter.

`FUNCTION deleteXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN CLOB)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Uses a `CLOB` type for the `xDoc` parameter.

`FUNCTION deleteXML(`
`  ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`  xDoc IN XMLType)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Uses an `XMLType` type for the `xDoc` parameter.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	String containing the XML document.

INSERTXML

Inserts the XML document into the table specified at the context creation time, and returns the number of rows inserted.

Note that if a user passes an XML file for insertXML to DBMS_XMLSTORE which contains extra elements (ones that do not match up to any columns in the table), Oracle will try to insert into those columns unless SETUPDATECOLUMN is used. The use of setUpdateColumn is optional only if the elements in the XML file match up to the columns in the table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION insertXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the xDoc parameter as a VARCHAR2.

`FUNCTION insertXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN CLOB)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the xDoc parameter as a CLOB.

`FUNCTION insertXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN XMLType)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the xDoc parameter as an XMLType.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
xDoc	(IN)	String containing the XML document.

NEWCONTEXT

Creates a save context, and returns the context handle.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION newContext(
   targetTable IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN ctxType;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
targetTable	(IN)	The target table into which to load the XML document.

SETKEYCOLUMN

This method adds a column to the "key column list". The value for the column cannot be NULL. In case of update or delete, the columns in the key column list make up the WHERE clause of the statement. The key columns list must be specified before updates can complete; this is optional for delete operations

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setKeyColumn(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   colName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
colName	(IN)	Column to be added to the key column list; cannot be NULL.

SETROWTAG

Names the tag used in the XML document, to enclose the XML elements corresponding to database records.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setRowTag(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   tag IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
ctxHdl	(IN)	Context handle.
tag	(IN)	Tag name.

SETUPDATECOLUMN

Adds a column to the update column list. In case of insert, the default is to insert values to all the columns in the table; on the other hand, in case of updates, the default is to only update the columns corresponding to the tags present in the `ROW` element of the XML document. When the update column list is specified, the columns making up this list alone will get updated or inserted into.

Note that if a user passes an XML file for INSERTXML to `DBMS_XMLSTORE` which contains extra elements (ones that do not match up to any columns in the table), Oracle will try to insert into those columns unless setUpdateColumn is used. The use of setUpdateColumn is optional only if the elements in the XML file match up to the columns in the table.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE setUpdateColumn(
   ctxHdl IN ctxType,
   colName IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`colName`	`(IN)`	Column to be added to the update column list.

UPDATEXML

Updates the table specified at the context creation time with data from the XML document, and returns the number of rows updated. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`FUNCTION updateXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `VARCHAR2`.

`FUNCTION updateXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN CLOB)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `CLOB`.

`FUNCTION updateXML(`
`ctxHdl IN ctxType,`
`xDoc IN XMLType)`
`RETURN NUMBER;`
	Passes in the `xDoc` parameter as a `XMLType`.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`ctxHdl`	`(IN)`	Context handle.
`xDoc`	`(IN)`	String containing the XML document.

201

DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS

Note: The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated with Oracle Database 12*c*.

The `DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS` package provides an interface to perform translations so that strings can be searched or displayed in various languages.

See Also: For more information, see the *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

This chapter contains the following sections:

Using DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS Subprograms

Table 201–1 DBMS_XMLSTORE Package Subprograms

Method	Description
DISABLETRANSLATION Procedure on page 201-5	Disables translations in the current session so that query or retrieval will take place on the base document ignoring session language values
ENABLETRANSLATION Procedure on page 201-6	Enables translations in the current session
EXTRACTXLIFF Function & Procedure on page 201-7	Extracts the translations in `XLIFF` format from either an `XMLTYPE` or a resource in the XDB Repository
GETBASEDOCUMENT Function on page 201-10	Returns the base document with all the translations
MERGEXLIFF Functions on page 201-12	Merges the translations in `XLIFF` format into either an `XMLTYPE` or a resource in the XDB Repository
SETSOURCELANG Function on page 201-15	Sets the source language to a particular language at the specified XPATH
TRANSLATEXML Function on page 201-17	Returns the document in the specified language
UPDATETRANSLATION Function on page 201-5	Updates the translation in a particular language at the specified `XPATH`

DISABLETRANSLATION Procedure

> **Note:** The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This procedure disables translations in the current session so that query or retrieval will take place on the base document ignoring session language values.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.DISABLETRANSLATION;
```

ENABLETRANSLATION Procedure

Note: The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This procedure enables translations in the current session. This is the default behavior.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.ENABLETRANSLATION;
```

EXTRACTXLIFF Function & Procedure

> **Note:** The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function and procedure extracts the translations in XLIFF format from either an XMLTYPE or a resource in the XDB Repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.EXTRACTXLIFF(
   doc       IN  XMLTYPE,
   xpath     IN  VARCHAR2,
   namespace IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;

DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.EXTRACTXLIFF(
   abspath   IN  XMLTYPE,
   xpath     IN  VARCHAR2,
   namespace IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 201–2 EXTRACTXLIFF Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	XMLTYPE from which the XLIFF is to be extracted
xpath	XPATH at which specifies the location of the element that needs to be translated. If no XPATH is specified, the entire document is processed.
namespace	Namespace
abspath	Absolute path of the resource from which the XLIFF is to be extracted

Return Values

The translations in the XLIFF format

Examples

Extracting the Translation from an XMLTYPE

Let doc =

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
```

```
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="es">
        Security Class Example - ES
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

Let the xpath = `'/securityClass/title'`. The output of `EXTRACTXLIFF` will be as follows:

```
<xliff version='1.1'>
  <file original='' source-language='en' datatype='xml'>
    <body>
      <trans-unit id='/securityClass/title'>
        <source>Security Class Example</source>
        <alt-trans>
          <target xml:lang='fr'>Security Class Example - FR</target>
          <target xml:lang='es'>Security Class Example - ES</target>
        </alt-trans>
      </trans-unit>
    </body>
  </file>
</xliff>
```

Extracting the Translation from a Resource

Let the resource `'/public/security.xml'` =

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="es">
        Security Class Example - ES
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
    <privlist>
    <privilege name="privilege1"/>
    <aggregatePrivilege name="iStorePOApprover">
        <title>
            iStore Purchase Order Approver
        </title>
        <privilegeRef name="is:privilege1"/>
        <privilegeRef name="oa:submitPO"/>
        <privilegeRef name="oa:privilege3"/>
    </aggregatePrivilege>
    <privilege name="privilege2">
        <title xml:lang="en">
            secondary privilege
        </title>
```

```
        <title xml:lang="fr" xdb:srclang="true">
            secondary privilege - FR
        </title>
        <columnRef schema="APPS" table="PurchaseOrder" column="POId"/>
        <columnRef schema="APPS" table="PurchaseOrder" column="Amount"/>
    </privilege>
    </privlist>
</securityClass>
```

And let XPATH = '', then the extracted XLIFF is

```
<xliff version='1.1'>
  <file original='/public/security.xml' source-language='en' datatype='xml'>
    <body>
      <trans-unit id='/securityClass/title'>
        <source>Security Class Example</source>
        <alt-trans>
          <target xml:lang='fr'>Security Class Example - FR</target>
          <target xml:lang='es'>Security Class Example - ES</target>
        </alt-trans>
      </trans-unit>
    </body>
  </file>
  <file original='/public/security.xml' source-language='fr' datatype='xml'>
    <body>
      <trans-unit id='/securityClass/privilege[@name="privilege2"/title'>
        <source>secondary privilege - FR</source>
        <alt-trans>
          <target xml:lang='en'>secondary privilege</target>
        </alt-trans>
      </trans-unit>
    </body>
  </file>
</xliff>
```

GETBASEDOCUMENT Function

Note: The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function returns the base document with all the translations.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.GETBASEDOCUMENT(
   doc    IN  XMLTYPE)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 201–3 GETBASEDOCUMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	Input XMLTYPE

Return Values

The XMLTYPE which contains the base document with all the translations

Examples

For example, for doc =

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

For the above document, this subprogram will return:

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
```

```
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

MERGEXLIFF Functions

> **Note:** The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function merges the translations in XLIFF format into either an XMLTYPE or a resource in the XDB Repository.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.MERGEXLIFF(
   doc       IN  XMLTYPE,
   xliff     IN  XMLTYPE)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;

DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.MERGEXLIFF(
   xliff     IN  XMLTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 201–4 MERGEXLIFF Function & Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	XMLTYPE from which the XLIFF is to be merged
xliff	Translations in the XLIFF format

Return Values

The result of merging 'xliff' into 'doc' at 'xpath'

Examples

Merge Translations into an XMLTYPE

Consider the following input XMLTYPE:

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="es">
        Security Class Example - ES
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
    <privlist>
    <privilege name="privilege1"/>
```

```
    <aggregatePrivilege name="iStorePOApprover">
        <title>
            iStore Purchase Order Approver
        </title>
        <privilegeRef name="is:privilege1"/>
        <privilegeRef name="oa:submitPO"/>
        <privilegeRef name="oa:privilege3"/>
    </aggregatePrivilege>
    <privilege name="privilege2">
        <title xml:lang="en">
            secondary privilege
        </title>
        <title xml:lang="fr" xdb:srclang="true">
            secondary privilege - FR
        </title>
        <columnRef schema="APPS" table="PurchaseOrder" column="POId"/>
        <columnRef schema="APPS" table="PurchaseOrder" column="Amount"/>
    </privilege>
    </privlist>
</securityClass>
```

Let the input `XLIFF` be as follows:

```
<xliff version='1.1'>
  <file original='/public/security.xml' source-language='en' datatype='xml'>
    <body>
      <trans-unit id='/securityClass/title'>
        <source>Security Class Example Modified</source>
        <alt-trans>
          <target xml:lang='fr'>Security Class Example Mod - FR</target>
          <target xml:lang='es'>Security Class Example Mod - ES</target>
        </alt-trans>
      </trans-unit>
      <trans-unit id='/securityClass/privilege[@name="privilege2"/title'>
        <source>secondary privilege modified</source>
        <alt-trans>
          <target xml:lang='fr'>secondary privilege mod - FR</target>
        </alt-trans>
      </trans-unit>
    </body>
</xliff>
```

The output of merge will be as follows:

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example Modified
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="es">
        Security Class Example Mod - ES
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example Mod - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
```

```
    <privlist>
    <privilege name="privilege1"/>
    <aggregatePrivilege name="iStorePOApprover">
        <title>
            iStore Purchase Order Approver
        </title>
        <privilegeRef name="is:privilege1"/>
        <privilegeRef name="oa:submitPO"/>
        <privilegeRef name="oa:privilege3"/>
    </aggregatePrivilege>
    <privilege name="privilege2">
        <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
            secondary privilege modified
        </title>
        <title xml:lang="fr">
            secondary privilege mod - FR
        </title>
        <columnRef schema="APPS" table="PurchaseOrder" column="POId"/>
        <columnRef schema="APPS" table="PurchaseOrder" column="Amount"/>
    </privilege>
    </privlist>
</securityClass>
```

Merge XLIFF Translations into a Resource

If the input document in the above example were to be stored in the repository at `'/public/security.xml'`, then merging the above `XLIFF` will have the same effect.

SETSOURCELANG Function

> **Note:** The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function sets the source language to a particular language at the specified XPATH.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.SETSOURCELANG (
   doc       IN  XMLTYPE,
   xpath     IN  VARCHAR2,
   lang      IN  VARCHAR2,
   namespace IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 201–5 SETSOURCELANG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	XMLTYPE for which the source language is to be set
xpath	XPATH at which the source language is to be set
lang	Source language
namespace	Namespace

Return Values

The updated document

Examples

For example, if doc =

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

the statement

```
setSourceLang ( doc, '/securityClass/title', 'fr' )
```

produces

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

TRANSLATEXML Function

> **Note:** The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function returns the document in the specified language.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.TRANSLATEXML(
   doc    IN  XMLTYPE,
   lang   IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 201–6 TRANSLATEXML Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	Input XMLTYPE
lang	Language

Return Values

The XMLTYPE which contains the document in the specified language

Examples

For example, for doc =

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Security Class Example - FR
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

TRANSLATEXML (doc, 'fr') will return:

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
```

```
            Security Class Example - FR
        </title>
        <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
    </securityClass>
```

UPDATETRANSLATION Function

> **Note:** The DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS package is deprecated in its entirety with Oracle Database 12*c*.

This function updates the translation in a particular language at the specified XPATH.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XMLTRANSLATIONS.UPDATETRANSLATION(
   doc       IN  XMLTYPE,
   xpath     IN  VARCHAR2,
   lang      IN  VARCHAR2,
   value     IN  VARCHAR2,
   namespace IN  VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN XMLTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 201–7 UPDATETRANSLATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
doc	XMLTYPE for which the translation is to be updated
xpath	XPATH at which the translation is to be updated
lang	Language for which the translation is to be updated
value	New translation
namespace	Namespace

Return Values

The updated document

Examples

For example,

```
updateTranslation ( doc, '/securityClass/title/text()', 'fr', 'Oracle' );
```

produces

```
<securityClass xmlns="http://xmlns.oracle.com/xdb/security.xsd"
               xmlns:is="xmlns.oracle.com/iStore"
               xmlns:oa="xmlns.oracle.com/OracleApps"
               targetNamespace="xmlns.oracle.com/example">
    <name>
        securityClassExample
    </name>
    <title xml:lang="en" xdb:srclang="true">
        Security Class Example
    </title>
    <title xml:lang="fr">
        Oracle
    </title>
    <inherits-from>is:iStorePurchaseOrder</inherits-from>
</securityClass>
```

202

DBMS_XPLAN

The DBMS_XPLAN package provides an easy way to display the output of the EXPLAIN PLAN command in several, predefined formats. You can also use the DBMS_XPLAN package to display the plan of a statement stored in the Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) or stored in a SQL tuning set. It further provides a way to display the SQL execution plan and SQL execution runtime statistics for cached SQL cursors based on the information stored in the V$SQL_PLAN and V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL fixed views. Finally, it displays plans from a SQL plan baseline.

See Also:

- For more information on the EXPLAIN PLAN command, the AWR, and SQL tuning set, see *Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide*.
- For more information on the V$SQL_PLAN and V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS fixed views, see *Oracle Database Reference.*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DBMS_XPLAN

Overview

The DBMS_XPLAN package supplies five table functions:

- DISPLAY - to format and display the contents of a plan table.
- DISPLAY_AWR - to format and display the contents of the execution plan of a stored SQL statement in the AWR.
- DISPLAY_CURSOR - to format and display the contents of the execution plan of any loaded cursor.
- DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE - to display one or more execution plans for the SQL statement identified by SQL handle
- DISPLAY_SQLSET - to format and display the contents of the execution plan of statements stored in a SQL tuning set.

Security Model

This package runs with the privileges of the calling user, not the package owner (SYS). The table function DISPLAY_CURSOR requires SELECT or READ privileges on the following fixed views: VSQL_PLAN, VSESSION and V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL.

Using the DISPLAY_AWR Function requires the user to have SELECT or READ privileges on DBA_HIST_SQL_PLAN, DBA_HIST_SQLTEXT, and V$DATABASE.

Using the DISPLAY_SQLSET Functionrequires the user to have the SELECT or READ privilege on ALL_SQLSET_STATEMENTS and ALL_SQLSET_PLANS.

Using DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function requires the user to have the SELECT or READ privilege on DBA_SQL_PLAN_BASELINES as well as the privileges to execute the SQL statement for which the user is trying to get the plan.

All these privileges are automatically granted as part of the SELECT_CATALOG role.

Examples

Displaying a Plan Table Using DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY

Execute an explain plan command on a SELECT statement:

```
EXPLAIN PLAN FOR
SELECT * FROM emp e, dept d
   WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
   AND e.ename='benoit';
```

Display the plan using the DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY table function

```
SET LINESIZE 130
SET PAGESIZE 0
SELECT * FROM table(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY);
```

This query produces the following output:

```
Plan hash value: 3693697075
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation          | Name | Rows  | Bytes | Cost (%CPU)| Time     |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT   |      |     1 |    57 |     6  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|*  1 |  HASH JOIN         |      |     1 |    57 |     6  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|*  2 |   TABLE ACCESS FULL| EMP  |     1 |    37 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|   3 |   TABLE ACCESS FULL| DEPT |     4 |    80 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------------------
   1 - access("E"."DEPTNO"="D"."DEPTNO")
   2 - filter("E"."ENAME"='benoit')

15 rows selected.
```

Displaying a Cursor Execution Plan Using DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR

By default, the table function DISPLAY_CURSOR formats the execution plan for the last SQL statement executed by the session. For example:

```
SELECT ename  FROM  emp e, dept d
   WHERE   e.deptno = d.deptno
   AND   e.empno=7369;

ENAME
----------
SMITH
```

To display the execution plan of the last executed statement for that session:

```
SET PAGESIZE 0
SELECT * FROM table(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR);
```

This query produces the following output:

```
Plan hash value: 3693697075, SQL hash value: 2096952573, child number: 0
-------------------------------------------------------------------
SELECT ename FROM emp e, dept d WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
AND e.empno=7369

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation          | Name | Rows  | Bytes | Cost (%CPU)| Time     |
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT   |      |       |       |            |          |
|*  1 |  HASH JOIN         |      |     1 |    16 |     6  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|*  2 |   TABLE ACCESS FULL| EMP  |     1 |    13 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|   3 |   TABLE ACCESS FULL| DEPT |     4 |    12 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------------------
   1 - access("E"."DEPTNO"="D"."DEPTNO")
   2 - filter("E"."EMPNO"=7369)

21 rows selected.
```

You can also use the table function `DISPLAY_CURSOR` to display the execution plan for any loaded cursor stored in the cursor cache. In that case, you must supply a reference to the child cursor to the table function. This includes the SQL ID of the statement and optionally the child number.

Run a query with a distinctive comment:

```
SELECT /* TOTO */ ename, dname
FROM dept d join emp e USING (deptno);
```

Get `sql_id` and `child_number` for the preceding statement:

```
SELECT sql_id, child_number
FROM v$sql
WHERE sql_text LIKE '%TOTO%';

SQL_ID         CHILD_NUMBER
----------     ----------------------------
gwp663cqh5qbf   0
```

Display the execution plan for the cursor:

```
SELECT * FROM table(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR('gwp663cqh5qbf',0));

Plan hash value: 3693697075, SQL ID: gwp663cqh5qbf, child number: 0
-------------------------------------------------------
SELECT /* TOTO */ ename, dname
FROM dept d JOIN emp e USING (deptno);

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id  | Operation           | Name | Rows  | Bytes | Cost (%CPU)| Time     |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
|   0 | SELECT STATEMENT    |      |       |       |     7 (100)|          |
|   1 |  SORT GROUP BY      |      |     4 |    64 |     7  (43)| 00:00:01 |
|*  2 |   HASH JOIN         |      |    14 |   224 |     6  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|   3 |    TABLE ACCESS FULL| DEPT |     4 |    44 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
|   4 |    TABLE ACCESS FULL| EMP  |    14 |    70 |     3  (34)| 00:00:01 |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------------------
   2 - access("E"."DEPTNO"="D"."DEPTNO")
```

Instead of issuing two queries, one to the get the sql_id and child_number pair and one to display the plan, you can combine these in a single query:

Display the execution plan of all cursors matching the string 'TOTO':

```
SELECT t.*
FROM v$sql s, table(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR(s.sql_id, s.child_number)) t WHERE
sql_text LIKE '%TOTO%';
```

Displaying a Plan Table with Parallel Information

By default, only relevant information is reported by the display and `display_cursor` table functions. In Displaying a Plan Table Using DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY on page 202-5, the query does not execute in parallel. Hence, information related to the parallelization of the plan is not reported. As shown in the following example, parallel information is reported only if the query executes in parallel.

```
ALTER TABLE emp PARALLEL;
EXPLAIN PLAN for
SELECT * FROM emp e, dept d
   WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
   AND e.ename    ='hermann'
   ORDER BY e.empno;
```

Display the plan using the `DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY` table function

```
SET LINESIZE 130
SET PAGESIZE 0
SELECT * FROM table(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY);
Plan hash value: 3693697345
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Id | Operation          | Name    | Rows | Bytes | Cost (%CPU)| Time     | TQ    |INOUT |PQ Distrib   |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| 0  | SELECT STATEMENT   |         | 1    | 117   | 6 (50)     | 00:00:01 |       |      |             |
| 1  | PX COORDINATOR     |         |      |       |            |          |       |      |             |
| 2  | PX SEND QC (ORDER) |:TQ10003 | 1    | 117   | 6 (50)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,03 | P->S | QC (ORDER)  |
| 3  | SORT ORDER BY      |         | 1    | 117   | 6 (50)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,03 | PCWP |             |
| 4  | PX RECEIVE         |         | 1    | 117   | 5 (40)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,03 | PCWP |             |
| 5  | PX SEND RANGE      |:TQ10002 | 1    | 117   | 5 (40)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,02 | P->P | RANGE       |
|* 6 | HASH JOIN          |         | 1    | 117   | 5 (40)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,02 | PCWP |             |
| 7  | PX RECEIVE         |         | 1    | 87    | 2 (50)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,02 | PCWP |             |
| 8  | PX SEND HASH       |:TQ10001 | 1    | 87    | 2 (50)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,01 | P->P | HASH        |
| 9  | PX BLOCK ITERATOR  |         | 1    | 87    | 2 (50)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,01 | PCWC |             |
|* 10| TABLE ACCESS FULL  | EMP     | 1    | 87    | 2 (50)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,01 | PCWP |             |
| 11 | BUFFER SORT        |         |      |       |            |          | Q1,02 | PCWC |             |
| 12 | PX RECEIVE         |         | 4    | 120   | 3 (34)     | 00:00:01 | Q1,02 | PCWP |             |
| 13 | PX SEND HASH       |:TQ10000 | 4    | 120   | 3 (34)     | 00:00:01 |       | S->P | HASH        |
| 14 | TABLE ACCESS FULL  | DEPT    | 4    | 120   | 3 (34)     | 00:00:01 |       |      |             |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
---------------------------------------------------
6 - access("E"."DEPTNO"="D"."DEPTNO")
10 - filter("E"."ENAME"='hermann')
---------------------------------------------------
```

When the query is parallel, information related to parallelism is reported: table queue number (`TQ` column), table queue type (`INOUT`) and table queue distribution method (`PQ Distrib`).

By default, if several plans in the plan table match the `statement_id` parameter passed to the display table function (default value is `NULL`), only the plan corresponding to the last `EXPLAIN PLAN` command is displayed. Hence, there is no need to purge the plan table after each `EXPLAIN PLAN`. However, you should purge the plan table regularly to ensure good performance in the execution of the `DISPLAY` table function. If no plan table is created, Oracle uses a global temporary table to store any plan information for

individual users and preserves its content throughout the lifespan of a session. Note that you cannot truncate the content of a global temporary table.

For ease of use, you can define a view on top of the display table function and then use that view to display the output of the `EXPLAIN PLAN` command:

Using a View to Display Last Explain Plan

```
# define plan view
CREATE VIEW PLAN AS SELECT * FROM TABLE(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY);

# display the output of the last explain plan command
SELECT * FROM PLAN;
```

Summary of DBMS_XPLAN Subprograms

Table 202–1 DBMS_XPLAN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DIFF_PLAN Function on page 202-10	Compares plans
DISPLAY Function on page 202-11	Displays the contents of the plan table
DISPLAY_AWR Function on page 202-14	Displays the contents of an execution plan stored in the AWR
DISPLAY_CURSOR Function on page 202-17	Displays the execution plan of any cursor in the cursor cache
DISPLAY_PLAN Function on page 202-21	Displays the contents of the plan table in a variety of formats with `CLOB` output type
DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function on page 202-24	Displays one or more execution plans for the specified SQL handle of a SQL plan baseline
DISPLAY_SQLSET Function on page 202-26	Displays the execution plan of a given statement stored in a SQL tuning set

DIFF_PLAN Function

This function compares plans.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DIFF_PLAN(
   plan1    IN   SPC_SRC,
   plan2    IN   SPC_SRC)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 202–2 DIFF_PLAN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
plan_1	First plan
plan_2	Second plan

DISPLAY Function

This table function displays the contents of the plan table.

In addition, you can use this table function to display any plan (with or without statistics) stored in a table as long as the columns of this table are named the same as columns of the plan table (or V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL if statistics are included). You can apply a predicate on the specified table to select rows of the plan to display.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY(
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'PLAN_TABLE',
   statement_id  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   format        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  'TYPICAL',
   filter_preds  IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 202–3 DISPLAY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Specifies the table name where the plan is stored. This parameter defaults to PLAN_TABLE, which is the default plan table for the EXPLAIN PLAN command. If NULL is specified it also defaults to PLAN_TABLE.
statement_id	Specifies the statement_id of the plan to be displayed. This parameter defaults to NULL, which is the default when the EXPLAIN PLAN command is executed without a set statement_id clause.If no statement_id is specified, the function shows you the plan of the most recent explained statement.

Table 202–3 (Cont.) DISPLAY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Controls the level of details for the plan. It accepts four values: ■ BASIC: Displays the minimum information in the plan—the operation ID, the operation name and its option. ■ TYPICAL: This is the default. Displays the most relevant information in the plan (operation id, name and option, #rows, #bytes and optimizer cost). Pruning, parallel and predicate information are only displayed when applicable. Excludes only PROJECTION, ALIAS and REMOTE SQL information (see below). ■ SERIAL: Like TYPICAL except that the parallel information is not displayed, even if the plan executes in parallel. ■ ALL: Maximum user level. Includes information displayed with the TYPICAL level with additional information (PROJECTION, ALIAS and information about REMOTE SQL if the operation is distributed). For finer control on the display output, the following keywords can be added to the above three standard format options to customize their default behavior. Each keyword either represents a logical group of plan table columns (such as PARTITION) or logical additions to the base plan table output (such as PREDICATE). Format keywords must be separated by either a comma or a space: ■ ROWS - if relevant, shows the number of rows estimated by the optimizer ■ BYTES - if relevant, shows the number of bytes estimated by the optimizer ■ COST - if relevant, shows optimizer cost information ■ PARTITION - if relevant, shows partition pruning information ■ PARALLEL - if relevant, shows PX information (distribution method and table queue information) ■ PREDICATE - if relevant, shows the predicate section ■ PROJECTION -if relevant, shows the projection section ■ ALIAS - if relevant, shows the "Query Block Name / Object Alias" section ■ REMOTE - if relevant, shows the information for distributed query (for example, remote from serial distribution and remote SQL) ■ NOTE - if relevant, shows the note section of the explain plan Format keywords can be prefixed by the sign '-' to exclude the specified information. For example, '-PROJECTION' excludes projection information. If the target plan table (see table_name parameter) also stores plan statistics columns (for example, it is a table used to capture the content of the fixed view V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL), additional format keywords can be used to specify which class of statistics to display when using the DISPLAY Function. These additional format keywords are IOSTATS, MEMSTATS, ALLSTATS and LAST (see the DISPLAY_CURSOR Function or the DISPLAY_SQLSET Function for a full description of these four keywords).

Table 202–3 (Cont.) DISPLAY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
filter_preds	SQL filter predicate(s) to restrict the set of rows selected from the table where the plan is stored. When value is NULL (the default), the plan displayed corresponds to the last executed explain plan. For example: filter_preds=>'plan_id = 10' Can reference any column of the table where the plan is stored and can contain any SQL construct (for example, sub-query, function calls (see **WARNING** under Usage Notes)

Usage Notes

Here are some ways you might use variations on the format parameter:

- Use 'ALL -PROJECTION -NOTE' to display everything except the projection and note sections.
- Use 'TYPICAL PROJECTION' to display using the typical format with the additional projection section (which is normally excluded under the typical format). Since typical is default, using simply 'PROJECTION' is equivalent.
- Use '-BYTES -COST -PREDICATE' to display using the typical format but excluding optimizer cost and byte estimates as well as the predicate section.
- Use 'BASIC ROWS' to display basic information with the additional number of rows estimated by the optimizer.

WARNING: Application developers should expose the filter_preds parameter to end-users only after careful consideration because this could expose the application to SQL injection. Indeed, filter_preds can potentially reference any table or execute any server function for which the database user invoking the table function has privileges.

Examples

To display the result of the last EXPLAIN PLAN command stored in the plan table:

```
SELECT * FROM table (DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY);
```

To display from other than the default plan table, "my_plan_table":

```
SELECT * FROM table (DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY('my_plan_table'));
```

To display the minimum plan information:

```
SELECT * FROM table (DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY('plan_table', null, 'basic'));
```

To display the plan for a statement identified by 'foo', such as statement_id='foo':

```
SELECT * FROM table (DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY('plan_table', 'foo'));
```

DISPLAY_AWR Function

This table function displays the contents of an execution plan stored in the AWR.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_AWR(
   sql_id            IN      VARCHAR2,
   plan_hash_value   IN      NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   db_id             IN      NUMBER DEFAULT NULL,
   format            IN      VARCHAR2 DEFAULT TYPICAL);
```

Parameters

Table 202–4 DISPLAY_AWR Table Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	Specifies the SQL_ID of the SQL statement. You can retrieve the appropriate value for the SQL statement of interest by querying the column SQL_ID in DBA_HIST_SQLTEXT.
plan_hash_value	Specifies the PLAN_HASH_VALUE of a SQL statement. This parameter is optional. If omitted, the table function returns all stored execution plans for a given SQL_ID.
db_id	Specifies the database_id for which the plan of the SQL statement, identified by SQL_ID should be displayed. If not supplied, the database_id of the local database is used, as shown in V$DATABASE.
format	Controls the level of details for the plan. It accepts four values: ■ BASIC: Displays the minimum information in the plan—the operation ID, the operation name and its option. ■ TYPICAL: This is the default. Displays the most relevant information in the plan (operation id, name and option, #rows, #bytes and optimizer cost). Pruning, parallel and predicate information are only displayed when applicable. Excludes only PROJECTION, ALIAS and REMOTE SQL information (see below). ■ SERIAL: Like TYPICAL except that the parallel information is not displayed, even if the plan executes in parallel. ■ ALL: Maximum user level. Includes information displayed with the TYPICAL level with additional information (PROJECTION, ALIAS and information about REMOTE SQL if the operation is distributed).

Table 202–4 (Cont.) DISPLAY_AWR Table Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
	For finer control on the display output, the following keywords can be added to the above three standard format options to customize their default behavior. Each keyword either represents a logical group of plan table columns (such as PARTITION) or logical additions to the base plan table output (such as PREDICATE). Format keywords must be separated by either a comma or a space: ■ ROWS - if relevant, shows the number of rows estimated by the optimizer ■ BYTES - if relevant, shows the number of bytes estimated by the optimizer ■ COST - if relevant, shows optimizer cost information ■ PARTITION - if relevant, shows partition pruning information ■ PARALLEL - if relevant, shows PX information (distribution method and table queue information) ■ PREDICATE - if relevant, shows the predicate section ■ PROJECTION -if relevant, shows the projection section ■ ALIAS - if relevant, shows the "Query Block Name / Object Alias" section ■ REMOTE - if relevant, shows the information for distributed query (for example, remote from serial distribution and remote SQL) ■ NOTE - if relevant, shows the note section of the explain plan Format keywords can be prefixed by the sign '-' to exclude the specified information. For example, '-PROJECTION' excludes projection information.

Usage Notes

- To use the DISPLAY_AWR functionality, the calling user must have SELECT or READ privilege on DBA_HIST_SQL_PLAN, DBA_HIST_SQLTEXT, and V$DATABASE, otherwise it shows an appropriate error message.
- Here are some ways you might use variations on the format parameter:
  - Use 'ALL -PROJECTION -NOTE' to display everything except the projection and note sections.
  - Use 'TYPICAL PROJECTION' to display using the typical format with the additional projection section (which is normally excluded under the typical format). Since typical is default, using simply 'PROJECTION' is equivalent.
  - Use '-BYTES -COST -PREDICATE' to display using the typical format but excluding optimizer cost and byte estimates as well as the predicate section.
  - Use 'BASIC ROWS' to display basic information with the additional number of rows estimated by the optimizer.

Examples

To display the different execution plans associated with the SQL ID 'atfwcg8anrykp':

```
SELECT * FROM table(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_AWR('atfwcg8anrykp'));
```

To display all execution plans of all stored SQL statements containing the string 'TOTO':

```
SELECT tf.* FROM DBA_HIST_SQLTEXT ht, table
```

```
   (DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_AWR(ht.sql_id,null, null,  'ALL' )) tf
WHERE ht.sql_text like '%TOTO%';
```

DISPLAY_CURSOR Function

This table function displays the explain plan of any cursor loaded in the cursor cache. In addition to the explain plan, various plan statistics (such as. I/O, memory and timing) can be reported (based on the V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL VIEWS).

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR(
   sql_id            IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  NULL,
   cursor_child_no   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT  0,
   format            IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT  'TYPICAL');
```

Parameters

Table 202–5 DISPLAY_CURSOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sql_id	Specifies the SQL_ID of the SQL statement in the cursor cache. You can retrieve the appropriate value by querying the column SQL_ID in V$SQL or V$SQLAREA. Alternatively, you could choose the column PREV_SQL_ID for a specific session out of V$SESSION. This parameter defaults to NULL in which case the plan of the last cursor executed by the session is displayed.
cursor_child_no	Child number of the cursor to display. If not supplied, the execution plan of all cursors matching the supplied sql_id parameter are displayed. The child_number can be specified only if sql_id is specified.

Table 202–5 (Cont.) DISPLAY_CURSOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Controls the level of details for the plan. It accepts five values: ■ BASIC: Displays the minimum information in the plan—the operation ID, the operation name and its option. ■ TYPICAL: This is the default. Displays the most relevant information in the plan (operation id, name and option, #rows, #bytes and optimizer cost). Pruning, parallel and predicate information are only displayed when applicable. Excludes only PROJECTION, ALIAS and REMOTE SQL information (see below). ■ SERIAL: Like TYPICAL except that the parallel information is not displayed, even if the plan executes in parallel. ■ ALL: Maximum user level. Includes information displayed with the TYPICAL level with additional information (PROJECTION, ALIAS and information about REMOTE SQL if the operation is distributed). ■ ADAPTIVE: - Displays the final plan, or the current plan if the execution has not completed. This section includes notes about runtime optimizations that affect the plan, such as switching from a Nested Loops join to a Hash join. - Plan lineage. This section shows the plans that were run previously due to automatic reoptimization. It also shows the default plan, if the plan changed due to dynamic plans. - Recommended plan. In reporting mode, the plan is chosen based on execution statistics displayed. Note that displaying the recommended plan for automatic reoptimization requires re-compiling the query with the optimizer adjustments collected in the child cursor. Displaying the recommended plan for a dynamic plan does not require this. - Dynamic plans. This summarizes the portions of the plan that differ from the default plan chosen by the optimizer. For finer control on the display output, the following keywords can be added to the above three standard format options to customize their default behavior. Each keyword either represents a logical group of plan table columns (such as PARTITION) or logical additions to the base plan table output (such as PREDICATE).

Table 202–5 (Cont.) DISPLAY_CURSOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
	Format keywords must be separated by either a comma or a space: ■ ROWS - if relevant, shows the number of rows estimated by the optimizer ■ BYTES - if relevant, shows the number of bytes estimated by the optimizer ■ COST - if relevant, shows optimizer cost information ■ PARTITION - if relevant, shows partition pruning information ■ PARALLEL - if relevant, shows PX information (distribution method and table queue information) ■ PREDICATE - if relevant, shows the predicate section ■ PROJECTION -if relevant, shows the projection section ■ ALIAS - if relevant, shows the "Query Block Name / Object Alias" section ■ REMOTE - if relevant, shows the information for distributed query (for example, remote from serial distribution and remote SQL) ■ NOTE - if relevant, shows the note section of the explain plan ■ IOSTATS - assuming that basic plan statistics are collected when SQL statements are executed (either by using the gather_plan_statistics hint or by setting the parameter statistics_level to ALL), this format shows IO statistics for ALL (or only for the LAST as shown below) executions of the cursor. ■ MEMSTATS - Assuming that PGA memory management is enabled (that is, pga_aggregate_target parameter is set to a non 0 value), this format allows to display memory management statistics (for example, execution mode of the operator, how much memory was used, number of bytes spilled to disk, and so on). These statistics only apply to memory intensive operations like hash-joins, sort or some bitmap operators. ■ ALLSTATS - A shortcut for 'IOSTATS MEMSTATS' ■ LAST - By default, plan statistics are shown for all executions of the cursor. The keyword LAST can be specified to see only the statistics for the last execution. The following two formats are deprecated but supported for backward compatibility: ■ RUNSTATS_TOT - Same as IOSTATS, that is, displays IO statistics for all executions of the specified cursor. ■ RUNSTATS_LAST - Same as IOSTATS LAST, that is, displays the runtime statistics for the last execution of the cursor Format keywords can be prefixed by the sign '-' to exclude the specified information. For example, '-PROJECTION' excludes projection information.

Usage Notes

- To use the DISPLAY_CURSOR functionality, the calling user must have SELECT or READ privilege on the fixed views V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL, V$SQL and V$SQL_PLAN, otherwise it shows an appropriate error message.
- Here are some ways you might use variations on the format parameter:

- Use 'ALL -PROJECTION -NOTE' to display everything except the projection and note sections.
- Use 'TYPICAL PROJECTION' to display using the typical format with the additional projection section (which is normally excluded under the typical format). Since typical is default, using simply 'PROJECTION' is equivalent.
- Use '-BYTES -COST -PREDICATE' to display using the typical format but excluding optimizer cost and byte estimates as well as the predicate section.
- Use 'BASIC ROWS' to display basic information with the additional number of rows estimated by the optimizer.

Examples

To display the execution plan of the last SQL statement executed by the current session:

```
SELECT * FROM table (
   DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR);
```

To display the execution plan of all children associated with the SQL ID 'atfwcg8anrykp':

```
SELECT * FROM table (
   DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR('atfwcg8anrykp'));
```

To display runtime statistics for the cursor included in the preceding statement:

```
SELECT * FROM table (
   DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_CURSOR('atfwcg8anrykp', NULL, 'ALLSTATS LAST');
```

DISPLAY_PLAN Function

This table function displays the contents of the plan table in a variety of formats with CLOB output type.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_PLAN (
   table_name       IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'PLAN_TABLE',
   statement_id     IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   format           IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TYPICAL',
   filter_preds     IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   type             IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'TEXT')
  RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 202–6 DISPLAY_PLAN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	Specifies the table name where the plan is stored. This parameter defaults to PLAN_TABLE, which is the default plan table for the EXPLAIN PLAN command. If NULL is specified it also defaults to PLAN_TABLE.
statement_id	Specifies the statement_id of the plan to be displayed. This parameter defaults to NULL, which is the default when the EXPLAIN PLAN command is executed without a set statement_id clause.If no statement_id is specified, the function shows you the plan of the most recent explained statement.
filter_preds	SQL filter predicate(s) to restrict the set of rows selected from the table where the plan is stored. When value is NULL (the default), the plan displayed corresponds to the last executed explain plan. For example: filter_preds=>'plan_id = 10' Can reference any column of the table where the plan is stored and can contain any SQL construct (for example, sub-query, function calls (see **WARNING** under Usage Notes)

Table 202–6 (Cont.) DISPLAY_PLAN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Controls the level of details for the plan. It accepts five values: ■ BASIC: Displays the minimum information in the plan—the operation ID, the operation name and its option. ■ TYPICAL: This is the default. Displays the most relevant information in the plan (operation id, name and option, #rows, #bytes and optimizer cost). Pruning, parallel and predicate information are only displayed when applicable. Excludes only PROJECTION, ALIAS and REMOTE SQL information (see below). ■ SERIAL: Like TYPICAL except that the parallel information is not displayed, even if the plan executes in parallel. ■ ALL: Maximum user level. Includes information displayed with the TYPICAL level with additional information (PROJECTION, ALIAS and information about REMOTE SQL if the operation is distributed). ■ ADAPTIVE: Displays the default plan, and for each dynamic subplan (if stipulated): - A list of the rowsources from the original which may be replaced, and the rowsources to replace them - If outline display is specified in the format argument, the hints for each option in the dynamic subplan are displayed For finer control on the display output, the following keywords can be added to the above three standard format options to customize their default behavior. Each keyword either represents a logical group of plan table columns (such as PARTITION) or logical additions to the base plan table output (such as PREDICATE). Format keywords must be separated by either a comma or a space: ■ ROWS - if relevant, shows the number of rows estimated by the optimizer ■ BYTES - if relevant, shows the number of bytes estimated by the optimizer ■ COST - if relevant, shows optimizer cost information ■ PARTITION - if relevant, shows partition pruning information ■ PARALLEL - if relevant, shows PX information (distribution method and table queue information) ■ PREDICATE - if relevant, shows the predicate section ■ PROJECTION -if relevant, shows the projection section ■ ALIAS - if relevant, shows the "Query Block Name / Object Alias" section ■ REMOTE - if relevant, shows the information for distributed query (for example, remote from serial distribution and remote SQL) ■ NOTE - if relevant, shows the note section of the explain plan Format keywords can be prefixed by the sign '-' to exclude the specified information. For example, '-PROJECTION' excludes projection information.

Table 202–6 (Cont.) DISPLAY_PLAN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
	If the target plan table (see `table_name` parameter) also stores plan statistics columns (for example, it is a table used to capture the content of the fixed view `V$SQL_PLAN_STATISTICS_ALL`), additional format keywords can be used to specify which class of statistics to display when using the DISPLAY Function. These additional format keywords are `IOSTATS`, `MEMSTATS`, `ALLSTATS` and `LAST` (see the DISPLAY_CURSOR Function or the DISPLAY_SQLSET Function for a full description of these four keywords).
`type`	Output type, one of: `'TEXT'`, `'ACTIVE'`, `'HTML'`, or `'XML'` (see Usage Notes regarding type ACTIVE).'

Return Values

Returns the requested report as `CLOB`

Usage Notes

Active reports have a rich, interactive user interface akin to that found in Enterprise Manager while not requiring any EM installation. The report file built is in HTML format, so it can be interpreted by most modern browsers. The code powering the active report is downloaded transparently by the web browser when the report is first viewed, hence viewing it requires outside connectivity.

WARNING: Application developers should expose the `filter_preds` parameter to end-users only after careful consideration because this could expose the application to SQL injection. Indeed, `filter_preds` can potentially reference any table or execute any server function for which the database user invoking the table function has privileges.

DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function

This table function displays one or more execution plans for the specified SQL handle of a SQL plan baseline.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE (
   sql_handle      IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   plan_name       IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
   format          IN VARCHAR2 := 'TYPICAL')
 RETURN dbms_xplan_type_table;
```

Parameters

Table 202–7 DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`sql_handle`	SQL statement handle. It identifies a SQL statement whose plan(s) are to be displayed.
`plan_name`	Plan name. It identifies a specific plan. Default NULL means all plans associated with identified SQL statement are explained and displayed.
`format`	Format string determines what information stored in the plan displayed. One of three format values ('BASIC', 'TYPICAL', 'ALL') can be used, each representing a common use case.

Return Values

A PL/SQL type table

Usage Notes

This procedure uses plan information stored in the plan baseline to explain and display the plans.It is possible that the `plan_id` stored in the SQL management base may not match with the `plan_id` of the generated plan. A mismatch between stored `plan_id` and generated `plan_id` means that it is a non-reproducible plan. Such a plan is deemed invalid and is bypassed by the optimizer during SQL compilation.

Examples

Display all plans of a SQL statement identified by the SQL handle 'SYS_SQL_ b1d49f6074ab95af' using TYPICAL format

```
SET LINESIZE 150
SET PAGESIZE 2000
SELECT t.*
  FROM TABLE(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE(
                'SYS_SQL_b1d49f6074ab95af')) t;
```

Display all plans of one or more SQL statements containing the string 'HR2' using BASIC format

```
SET LINESIZE 150
SET PAGESIZE 2000
SELECT t.*
   FROM (SELECT DISTINCT sql_handle FROM dba_sql_plan_baselines
```

```
 WHERE sql_text like '%HR2%') pb,
TABLE(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQL_PLAN_BASELINE(pb.sql_handle, NULL,
                                           'BASIC')) t;
```

DISPLAY_SQLSET Function

This table function displays the execution plan of a given statement stored in a SQL tuning set.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQLSET(
   sqlset_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   sql_id           IN  VARCHAR2,
   plan_hash_value  IN NUMBER := NULL,
   format           IN  VARCHAR2  := 'TYPICAL',
   sqlset_owner     IN  VARCHAR2  := NULL)
  RETURN DBMS_XPLAN_TYPE_TABLE PIPELINED;
```

Parameters

Table 202–8 DISPLAY_SQLSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
sqlset_name	Name of the SQL Tuning Set
sql_id	Specifies the sql_id value for a SQL statement having its plan stored in the SQL tuning set. You can find all stored SQL statements by querying table function DBMS_SQLTUNE.SELECT_SQLSET
plan_hash_value	Optional parameter. Identifies a specific stored execution plan for a SQL statement. If suppressed, all stored execution plans are shown.
format	Controls the level of details for the plan. It accepts four values: ■ BASIC: Displays the minimum information in the plan—the operation ID, the operation name and its option. ■ TYPICAL: This is the default. Displays the most relevant information in the plan (operation id, name and option, #rows, #bytes and optimizer cost). Pruning, parallel and predicate information are only displayed when applicable. Excludes only PROJECTION, ALIAS and REMOTE SQL information (see below). ■ SERIAL: Like TYPICAL except that the parallel information is not displayed, even if the plan executes in parallel. ■ ALL: Maximum user level. Includes information displayed with the TYPICAL level with additional information (PROJECTION, ALIAS and information about REMOTE SQL if the operation is distributed).

Table 202–8 (Cont.) DISPLAY_SQLSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
	For finer control on the display output, the following keywords can be added to the above three standard format options to customize their default behavior. Each keyword either represents a logical group of plan table columns (such as `PARTITION`) or logical additions to the base plan table output (such as `PREDICATE`). Format keywords must be separated by either a comma or a space: ■ `ROWS` - if relevant, shows the number of rows estimated by the optimizer ■ `BYTES` - if relevant, shows the number of bytes estimated by the optimizer ■ `COST` - if relevant, shows optimizer cost information ■ `PARTITION` - if relevant, shows partition pruning information ■ `PARALLEL` - if relevant, shows PX information (distribution method and table queue information) ■ `PREDICATE` - if relevant, shows the predicate section ■ `PROJECTION` -if relevant, shows the projection section ■ `ALIAS` - if relevant, shows the "Query Block Name / Object Alias" section ■ `REMOTE` - if relevant, shows the information for distributed query (for example, remote from serial distribution and remote SQL) ■ `NOTE` - if relevant, shows the note section of the explain plan ■ `IOSTATS` - assuming that basic plan statistics are collected when SQL statements are executed (either by using the `gather_plan_statistics` hint or by setting the parameter statistics_level to ALL), this format shows IO statistics for `ALL` (or only for the `LAST` as shown below) executions of the cursor. ■ `MEMSTATS` - Assuming that PGA memory management is enabled (that is, `pga_aggregate_target` parameter is set to a non 0 value), this format allows to display memory management statistics (for example, execution mode of the operator, how much memory was used, number of bytes spilled to disk, and so on). These statistics only apply to memory intensive operations like hash-joins, sort or some bitmap operators. ■ `ALLSTATS` - A shortcut for `'IOSTATS MEMSTATS'` ■ `LAST` - By default, plan statistics are shown for all executions of the cursor. The keyword `LAST` can be specified to see only the statistics for the last execution. The following two formats are deprecated but supported for backward compatibility: ■ `RUNSTATS_TOT` - Same as `IOSTATS`, that is, displays IO statistics for all executions of the specified cursor. ■ `RUNSTATS_LAST` - Same as `IOSTATS LAST`, that is, displays the runtime statistics for the last execution of the cursor Format keywords can be prefixed by the sign '-' to exclude the specified information. For example, `'-PROJECTION'` excludes projection information.
`sqlset_owner`	The owner of the SQL tuning set. The default is the current user.

Usage Notes

Here are some ways you might use variations on the `format` parameter:

- Use '`ALL -PROJECTION -NOTE`' to display everything except the projection and note sections.
- Use '`TYPICAL PROJECTION`' to display using the typical format with the additional projection section (which is normally excluded under the typical format). Since typical is default, using simply '`PROJECTION`' is equivalent.
- Use '`-BYTES -COST -PREDICATE`' to display using the typical format but excluding optimizer cost and byte estimates as well as the predicate section.
- Use '`BASIC ROWS`' to display basic information with the additional number of rows estimated by the optimizer.

Examples

To display the execution plan for the SQL statement associated with SQL ID '`gwp663cqh5qbf`' and `PLAN HASH 3693697075` in the SQL Tuning Set called '`OLTP_optimization_0405`":

```
SELECT * FROM table (
   DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQLSET(
       'OLTP_optimization_0405','gwp663cqh5qbf', 3693697075));
```

To display all execution plans of the SQL ID '`atfwcg8anrykp`' stored in the SQL tuning set:

```
SELECT * FROM table (
   DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQLSET(
      'OLTP_optimization_0405','gwp663cqh5qbf'));
```

To display runtime statistics for the SQL statement included in the preceding statement:

```
SELECT * FROM table (
   DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY_SQLSET(
      'OLTP_optimization_0405', 'gwp663cqh5qbf', NULL, 'ALLSTATS LAST');
```

203

DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR

The DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR package provides an interface to manage the contents and structure of XML documents.

This chapter contains the following topics:

See Also:

- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Using DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR` package.

Overview

The DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR package provides an interface to manage the contents and structure of XML documents.

Standards

This PL/SQL implementation of the XSL processor follows the W3C XSLT working draft rev WD-xslt-19990813 and includes the required behavior of an XSL processor in terms of how it must read XSLT stylesheets and the transformation it must effect.

Concepts

The Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformation (XSLT) describes rules for transforming a source tree into a result tree. A transformation expressed in XSLT is called a stylesheet. The transformation specified is achieved by associating patterns with templates defined in the stylesheet. A template is instantiated to create part of the result tree.

Implementation

The following is the default behavior for this PL/SQL XSL Processor:

- A result tree which can be accessed by DOM programmatic interface
- Errors are not recorded unless an error log is specified; however, an application error will be raised if parsing fails

Security Model

Owned by XDB, the DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR package must be created by SYS or XDB. The EXECUTE privilege is granted to PUBLIC. Subprograms in this package are executed using the privileges of the current user.

Summary of DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR Subprograms

Table 203–1 DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR Package Subprograms

Method	Description
CLOB2FILE Procedure on page 203-6	Writes content of a CLOB into a file
FREEPROCESSOR Procedure on page 203-7	Frees a processor object
FREESTYLESHEET Procedure on page 203-8	Frees a stylesheet object
NEWPROCESSOR Function on page 203-8	Returns a new processor instance
NEWSTYLESHEET Functions on page 203-10	Creates a new stylesheet from input and reference URLs
PROCESSXSL Functions and Procedures on page 203-11	Transforms an input XML document
READ2CLOB Function on page 203-13	Reads content of the file into a CLOB
REMOVEPARAM Procedure on page 203-14	Removes a top-level stylesheet parameter
RESETPARAMS Procedure on page 203-15	Resets the top-level stylesheet parameters
SELECTNODES Function on page 203-16	Selects nodes from a DOM tree that match a pattern
SELECTSINGLENODE Function on page 203-17	Selects the first node from the tree that matches a pattern
SETERRORLOG Procedure on page 203-18	Sets errors to be sent to the specified file
SETPARAM Procedure on page 203-19	Sets a top-level parameter in the stylesheet
SHOWWARNINGS Procedure on page 203-20	Turns warnings on or off
TRANSFORMNODE Function on page 203-21	Transforms a node in a DOM tree using a stylesheet
VALUEOF Function and Procedure on page 203-22	Gets the value of the first node that matches a pattern

CLOB2FILE Procedure

This procedure writes content of a CLOB into a file.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.CLOB2FILE(
  cl          IN  CLOB;
  flocation   IN  VARCHAR2,
  fname       IN  VARCHAR2,
  csid        IN  NUMBER:=0);
```

Parameters

Table 203–2 CLOB2FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
CLOB	File directory
flocation	File directory
fname	File name
csid	Character set id of the file ■ Must be a valid Oracle id; otherwise returns an error ■ If 0, content of the output file will be in the database character set

FREEPROCESSOR Procedure

This procedure Frees a `Processor` object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.FREEPROCESSOR(
  p  IN  Processor);
```

Parameters

Table 203–3 FREEPROCESSOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p	Processor

FREESTYLESHEET Procedure

This procedure frees a `Stylesheet` object.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.FREESTYLESHEET(
  ss  IN  Stylesheet);
```

Parameters

Table 203–4 FREESTYLESHEET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ss	Stylesheet

NEWPROCESSOR Function

This function returns a new `Processor` instance. The function must be called before the default behavior of `Processor` can be changed and if other processor methods need to be used.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.NEWPROCESSOR
 RETURN Processor;
```

NEWSTYLESHEET Functions

This function creates and returns a new `Stylesheet` instance. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax

Creates and returns a new stylesheet instance using the given `DOMDOCUMENT` and reference URLs:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.NEWSTYLESHEET(
   xmldoc  IN   DOMDOCUMENT,
   ref     IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN Stylesheet;
```

Creates and returns a new `Stylesheet` instance using the given input and reference URLs:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.NEWSTYLESHEET(
   inp    IN   VARCHAR2,
   ref    IN   VARCHAR2)
 RETURN Stylesheet;
```

Parameters

Table 203–5 NEWSTYLESHEET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`xmldoc`	`DOMDocument` to use for construction
`inp`	Input URL to use for construction
`ref`	Reference URL

PROCESSXSL Functions and Procedures

This function transforms input XMLDocument. Any changes to the default processor behavior should be effected before calling this procedure. An application error is raised if processing fails.

Syntax

Transforms input XMLDocument using given DOMDocument and stylesheet, and returns the resultant document fragment:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p      IN   Processor,
   ss     IN   Stylesheet,
   xmldoc IN   DOMDOCUMENT),
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT;
```

Transforms input XMLDocument using given document as URL and the Stylesheet, and returns the resultant document fragment:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p     IN   Processor,
   ss    IN   Stylesheet,
   url   IN   VARCHAR2,
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT;
```

Transforms input XMLDocument using given document as CLOB and the Stylesheet, and returns the resultant document fragment:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p     IN   Processor,
   ss    IN  Stylesheet,
   clb   IN  CLOB)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT;
```

Transforms input XMLDocument using given DOMDOCUMENT and the stylesheet, and writes the output to the specified file:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.(
   p           IN    Processor,
   ss          IN    Stylesheet,
   xmldoc      IN    DOMDOCUMENT,
   dir         IN    VARCHAR2,
   fileName    IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Transforms input XMLDocument using given URL and the stylesheet, and writes the output to the specified file in a specified directory:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p          IN    Processor,
   ss         IN    Stylesheet,
   url        IN    VARCHAR2,
   dir        IN    VARCHAR2,
   fileName   IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Transforms input XMLDocument using given DOMDOCUMENT and the stylesheet, and writes the output to a CLOB:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p          IN      Processor,
```

```
   ss          IN      Stylesheet,
   xmldoc      IN      DOMDOCUMENT,
   cl          IN OUT  CLOB);
```

Transforms input `XMLDocument` using given `DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT` and the stylesheet, and returns the resultant document fragment:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p          IN    Processor,
   ss         IN    Stylesheet,
   xmldf      IN    DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT)
 RETURN DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT;
```

Transforms input `XMLDocumentFragment` using given `DOMDocumentFragment` and the stylesheet, and writes the output to the specified file in a specified directory:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p          IN    Processor,
   ss         IN    Stylesheet,
   xmldf      IN    DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT,
   dir        IN    VARCHAR2,
   filename   IN    VARCHAR2);
```

Transforms input `XMLDocumentFragment` using given `DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT` and the stylesheet, and writes the output to a buffer:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p           IN       Processor,
   ss          IN       Stylesheet,
   xmldf       IN       DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT,
   buf         IN OUT   VARCHAR2);
```

Transforms input `XMLDocumentFragment` using given `DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT` and the stylesheet, and writes the output to a `CLOB`:

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.PROCESSXSL(
   p           IN      Processor,
   ss          IN      Stylesheet,
   xmldf       IN      DOMDOCUMENTFRAGMENT,
   cl          IN OUT  CLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 203–6 PROCESSXSL Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`p`	`Processor` instance
`ss`	`Stylesheet` instance
`xmldoc`	XML document being transformed
`url`	URL for the information being transformed
`clb`	`CLOB` containing information to be transformed
`dir`	Directory where processing output file is saved
`filename`	Processing output file
`cl`	`CLOB` to which the processing output is saved
`xmldf`	`XMLDocumentFragment` being transformed

READ2CLOB Function

This function reads content of a file into a CLOB.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.READ2CLOB(
   flocation     IN   VARCHAR2,
   fname         IN   VARCHAR2,
   csid          IN   NUMBER:=0)
 RETURN CLOB;
```

Parameters

Table 203–7 READ2CLOB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
flocation	File directory
fname	File name
csid	Character set id of the file ■ Must be a valid Oracle id; otherwise returns an error ■ If 0, input file is assumed to be in the database character set

REMOVEPARAM Procedure

This procedure removes a top level stylesheet parameter.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.REMOVEPARAM(
   ss     IN  Stylesheet,
   name   IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 203–8 REMOVEPARAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ss`	`Stylesheet` instance
`name`	Name of the parameter

RESETPARAMS Procedure

This procedure resets the top-level stylesheet parameters.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.RESETPARAMS(
   ss  IN   Stylesheet);
```

Parameters

Table 203–9 RESETPARAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ss	`Stylesheet` instance

SELECTNODES Function

This function selects nodes which match the supplied path expression from a DOM tree, and returns the result of the selection.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.SELECTNODES(
   n           IN   DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMNODE,
   pattern     IN   VARCHAR2,
   namespace   IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMNODELIST;
```

Parameters

Table 203–10 SELECTNODES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	Root `DOMNode` of the tree
`pattern`	Pattern to use
`namespace`	Namespace declared

SELECTSINGLENODE Function

This function selects the first node from the tree that match the supplied path expression, and returns that node.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.SELECTSINGLENODE(
   n           IN   DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMNODE,
   pattern     IN   VARCHAR2,
   namespace   IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMNODE;
```

Parameters

Table 203–11 SELECTSINGLENODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Root DOMNode of the tree
pattern	Pattern to use
namespace	Namespace declared

SETERRORLOG Procedure

This procedure sets errors to be sent to the specified file.

> **Note:** This subprogram has been deprecated, and is included only for reasons of backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.SETERRORLOG(
   p         IN   Processor,
   fileName  IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 203–12 SETERRORLOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`p`	`Processor` instance
`fileName`	Complete path of the file to use as the error log

SETPARAM Procedure

This procedure sets a top level parameter in the stylesheet. The parameter value must be a valid `XPath` expression. Literal string values must be quoted.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.SETPARAM(
   ss      IN   Stylesheet,
   name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   value   IN   VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 203–13 SETPARAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ss`	`Stylesheet` instance
`name`	Name of the parameter
`value`	Value of the parameter

SHOWWARNINGS Procedure

This procedure turns warnings on (TRUE) or off (FALSE).

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.SHOWWARNINGS(
   p     IN   Processor,
   yes   IN   BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 203–14 SHOWWARNINGS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p	Processor instance
yes	Mode to set: TRUE to show warnings, FALSE otherwise

TRANSFORMNODE Function

This function transforms a node in a DOM tree using the given stylesheet, and returns the result of the transformation as a `DOMDocumentFragment`.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.TRANSFORMNODE(
   n    IN  DOMNODE,
   ss   IN  Stylesheet)
 RETURN DOMDocumentFragment;
```

Parameters

Table 203–15 TRANSFORMNODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	`DOMNode` to transform
`ss`	Stylesheet to use

VALUEOF Function and Procedure

This subprogram retrieves the value of the first node from the tree that matches the given pattern. You can use either a function or a procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.VALUEOF(
  n           IN    DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMNODE,
  pattern     IN    VARCHAR2,
  namespace   IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;

DBMS_XSLPROCESSOR.VALUEOF(
  n           IN    DBMS_XMLDOM.DOMNODE,
  pattern     IN    VARCHAR2,
  val         OUT   VARCHAR2,
  namespace   IN    VARCHAR2 := NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 203–16 VALUEOF Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Node whose value is being retrieved
pattern	Pattern to use
val	Retrieved value
namespace	Namespace to use

204

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM

This `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package provides interfaces for streaming database changes between an Oracle database and other systems. XStream enables applications to stream out or stream in database changes.

This chapter contains the following topic:

See Also:

- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
- *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database XStream Java API Reference*

Using DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package.

Overview

The package provides interfaces for configuring outbound servers that stream database changes from an Oracle database to other systems. The package also provides interfaces for configuring inbound servers that stream database changes from other systems to an Oracle database. In both cases, the database changes are encapsulated in logical change records (LCRs). Also, the other systems can be Oracle systems or a non-Oracle systems, such as non-Oracle databases or file systems.

XStream outbound servers can stream out LCRs from an Oracle database programmatically using C or Java. After receiving the LCRs, the other system can process them in any customized way. For example, the other system can save the contents of the LCRs to a file, send the LCRs to an Oracle database through an XStream inbound server, or generate SQL statements and execute them on any Oracle or non-Oracle databases.

XStream inbound servers accept LCRs from another system and either apply them to an Oracle database or process them in a customized way using apply handlers.

XStream can be used in a multitenant container database (CDB). A CDB is an Oracle database that includes zero, one, or many user-created pluggable databases (PDBs).

See Also:

- *Oracle Database XStream Guide, Chapter 4, "XStream Out"*
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
- *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information about CDBs and PDBs

Security Model

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, configure an XStream administrator and connect as the XStream administrator when using this package.

An administrator must be granted the `DBA` role when the administrator is performing any of the following actions:

- Running the `ADD_OUTBOUND` procedure while connected as a user that is different from the configured connect user for an outbound server
- Running the `ALTER_OUTBOUND` procedure to change the capture user for a capture process or the connect user for an outbound server
- Running the `CREATE_OUTBOUND` procedure, because this procedure creates a capture process
- Running the `ALTER_INBOUND` procedure to change the apply user for an inbound server
- Running the `ADD_INBOUND` procedure while connected as a user that is different from the configured apply user for an inbound server

When the administrator does not need to perform the preceding tasks, the `DBA` role is not required.

See Also:

- GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*, *Chapter 4, "XStream Out and Security"* for more information about XStream and security.

Operational Notes

Some subprograms in the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package can manage XStream outbound servers, and some subprograms in the DBMS_APPLY_ADM package can manage XStream inbound servers.

> **See Also:** Chapter 23, "DBMS_APPLY_ADM" for details about which subprograms can manage outbound servers and inbound servers

Summary of DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM Subprograms

Table 204–1 DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_COLUMN Procedure on page 204-9	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which adds a column to a row logical change record (row LCR) that satisfies the specified rule
ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 204-12	Either adds global rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds global rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure on page 204-16	Adds global rules to either the positive or negative rule set of a capture process or apply process, and creates the specified capture process or apply process if it does not exist
ADD_OUTBOUND Procedure on page 204-21	Creates an XStream outbound server that dequeues LCRs from the specified queue
ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 204-26	Either adds schema rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds schema rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure on page 204-30	Adds rules to a rule set of XStream clients.
ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure on page 204-35	Adds subset rules to an outbound server configuration
ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 204-38	Adds subset rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure on page 204-42	Adds subset rules to the positive rule set of a capture process or apply process, and creates the specified capture process or apply process if it does not exist
ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure on page 204-47	Either adds table rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds table rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist
ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure on page 204-52	This procedure adds rules to a rule set of an XStream client.
ALTER_INBOUND Procedure on page 204-58	Modifies an XStream inbound server
ALTER_OUTBOUND Procedure on page 204-59	Modifies an XStream outbound server
CREATE_INBOUND Procedure on page 204-64	Creates an XStream inbound server and its queue
CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure on page 204-66	Creates an XStream outbound server, queue, and capture process to enable XStream client applications to stream out Oracle database changes encapsulated in LCRs

Table 204–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DELETE_COLUMN Procedure on page 204-71	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which deletes a column from a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
DROP_INBOUND Procedure on page 204-73	Removes an inbound server configuration
DROP_OUTBOUND Procedure on page 204-74	Removes an outbound server configuration
ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_ STREAMS Procedure on page 204-75	Enables XStream performance optimizations for Oracle Streams components
GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Function on page 204-77	Returns the tracking label for the current session
GET_TAG Function on page 204-78	Gets the binary tag for all redo entries generated by the current session
IS_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Function on page 204-79	Returns `TRUE` if XStream performance optimizations are enabled for Oracle Streams components, or returns `FALSE` if XStream performance optimizations are disabled for Oracle Streams components
KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which keeps a list of columns in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 204-83	Merges a stream flowing from one capture process with a stream flowing from another capture process
MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure on page 204-86	Determines whether the original capture process and the cloned capture are within the specified merge threshold and, if they are, runs the `MERGE_STREAMS` procedure to merge the two streams
PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG Procedure on page 204-89	Removes all Oracle Streams data dictionary information at the local database for the specified object
RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure on page 204-91	Provides options for a split and merge operation that stopped because it encountered an error. This procedure either rolls forward the operation, rolls back the operation, or purges all of the metadata about the operation.
REMOVE_QUEUE Procedure on page 204-93	Removes the specified `ANYDATA` queue
REMOVE_RULE Procedure on page 204-94	Removes the specified rule or all rules from the rule set associated with the specified capture process, apply process, or propagation.
REMOVE_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure on page 204-95	Removes subset rules from an outbound server configuration
REMOVE_XSTREAM_ CONFIGURATION Procedure on page 204-96	Removes the XStream configuration at the local database
RENAME_COLUMN Procedure on page 204-98	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a column in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule

Table 204–1 (Cont.) DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
RENAME_SCHEMA Procedure on page 204-101	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a schema in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
RENAME_TABLE Procedure on page 204-103	Either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a table in a row LCR that satisfies the specified rule
SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure on page 204-105	Sets the tracking label for logical change records (LCRs) produced by the current session
SET_PARAMETER Procedure on page 204-106	Sets a parameter for an outbound server, an inbound server, or an outbound server's capture process
SET_TAG Procedure on page 204-108	Sets the binary tag for all redo entries subsequently generated by the current session
SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure on page 204-109	Creates a queue table and a queue for use with the capture, propagate, and apply functionality of XStream
SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 204-111	Splits one stream flowing from a capture process off from all of the other streams flowing from the capture process
START_OUTBOUND Procedure on page 204-116	Starts an XStream outbound server
STOP_OUTBOUND Procedure on page 204-117	Stops an XStream outbound server

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

ADD_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which adds a column to a row logical change record (row LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an XStream client. XStream clients include capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.

This procedure is overloaded. The `column_value` and `column_function` parameters are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- `ADD_COLUMN` transformations cannot add columns of the following data types: `BLOB`, `CLOB`, `NCLOB`, `BFILE`, `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, `ROWID`, user-defined types (including object types, `REF`s, varrays, nested tables), and Oracle-supplied types (including any types, XML types, spatial types, and media types).
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL rule is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_COLUMN(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_value  IN  ANYDATA,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'NEW',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER       DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'ADD');

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_COLUMN(
   rule_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_function  IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type       IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'NEW',
   step_number      IN  NUMBER       DEFAULT 0,
   operation        IN  VARCHAR2     DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–2 ADD_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name*.]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_name	The name of the table to which the column is added in the row LCR, specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
column_name	The name of the column added to each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
column_value	The value of the added column. Specify the appropriate ANYDATA function for the column datatype and the column value. For example, if the datatype of the column being added is NUMBER and the value is NULL, then specify the ANYDATA.ConvertNumber(NULL) function. This parameter cannot be specified if the column_function parameter is specified.
column_function	Either the 'SYSDATE' or the 'SYSTIMESTAMP' SQL function. The 'SYSDATE' SQL function places the current date and time set for the operating system on which the database resides. The datatype of the returned value is DATE, and the format returned depends on the value of the NLS_DATE_FORMAT initialization parameter. The 'SYSTIMESTAMP' SQL function returns the system date, including fractional seconds and time zone, of the system on which the database resides. The return type is TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE. The function executes when the rule evaluates to TRUE. This parameter cannot be specified if the column_value parameter is specified.
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to add the column to the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to add the column to the old values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the add column declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the ADD_COLUMN procedures when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations for the specified rule.

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified column_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name and column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all add column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedure either adds global rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds global rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–3 ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`streams_name`	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If `NULL` and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If `NULL` and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.

Table 204–3 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a logical change record (LCR) has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then whether an LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag for the LCR. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if an LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then an LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 204–3 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the changes originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the global rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure the procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Table 204–3 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. The procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the database name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the database name plus the sequence number is too long, then the database name is truncated. A propagation uses the rules for filtering.

Examples

The following is an example of a global rule condition created for DML changes:

```
(:dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of XStream clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to an entire database.

  This procedure creates the specified capture process if it does not exist.

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, outbound server, or inbound server, this procedure adds apply rules for applying all logical change records (LCRs) it receives. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database.

  This procedure creates an apply process if no apply process, outbound server, or inbound server exists with the specified `streams_name`. This procedure can add rules to an outbound server or inbound server, but it cannot create an outbound server or inbound server.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Caution: If you add global rules to the positive rule set for a capture process, then make sure you add rules to the negative capture process rule set to exclude database objects that are not support by Oracle Streams. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_RULES(
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_root_name       IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_GLOBAL_RULES(
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
```

```
   source_root_name       IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–4 ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_type	The type of XStream client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify apply for an apply process.
streams_name	The name of the capture process or apply process. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture, and if one relevant capture process for the queue exists, then the relevant XStream client is used. If no relevant XStream client exists for the queue, then an XStream client is created automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple XStream clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process must have a unique name.
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process rules, this is the queue into which a capture process enqueues LCRs. For outbound server rules, this is the queue from which the outbound server dequeues LCRs. For inbound server rules, this is the queue into which an inbound server enqueues error transactions.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.

Table 204–4 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is always considered for capture, and an LCR is always considered for apply, regardless of whether the redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then whether a redo entry or LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if a redo entry or LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is considered for capture, and an LCR is considered for apply, only when the redo entry or LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then a redo entry or LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured LCRs, then the apply process can apply LCRs from only one capture process at one source database. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.

Table 204–4 (Cont.) ADD_GLOBAL_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the XStream client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the XStream client. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the global rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. For example, mycdb.example.com. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the root in the local CDB is used. If you are configuring downstream capture, then this parameter must be a non-NULL value, and it must specify the global name of the root in the remote source CDB. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the database name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the database name plus the

sequence number is too long, then the database name is truncated. A capture process or apply process uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 204-5
- "Security Model" on page 204-4

Examples

The following is an example of a global rule condition created for DML changes:

```
(:dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_OUTBOUND Procedure

This procedure creates an XStream outbound server that dequeues LCRs from the specified queue. The outbound server streams out the LCRs to an XStream client application.

This procedure creates neither a capture process nor a queue. To create an outbound server, a capture process, and a queue with one procedure call, use the CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure.

To create the capture process individually, use one of the following packages:

- DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM
- DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM

To create a queue individually, use the SET_UP_QUEUE procedure in the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package.

This procedure is overloaded. One table_names parameter is type VARCHAR2 and the other table_names parameter is type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY. Also, one schema_names parameter is type VARCHAR2 and the other schema_names parameter is type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY. These parameters enable you to enter the lists of tables and schemas in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- A client application can create multiple sessions. Each session can attach to only one outbound server, and each outbound server can serve only one session at a time. However, different client application sessions can connect to different outbound servers. See *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* and *Oracle Database XStream Java API Reference* for information about attaching to an outbound server.
- This procedure enables the outbound server that it creates.
- Starting with Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2.0.2), the capture_name, start_scn, and start_time parameters are included in this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_OUTBOUND(
   server_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   queue_name             IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_database        IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   table_names            IN  DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   schema_names           IN  DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   connect_user           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   comment                IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   start_scn              IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time             IN  TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL,
   include_dml            IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_OUTBOUND(
```

```
   server_name            IN  VARCHAR2,
   queue_name             IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_database        IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   table_names            IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_names           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   connect_user           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   comment                IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name           IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   start_scn              IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time             IN  TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL,
   include_dml            IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–5 ADD_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
server_name	The name of the outbound server being created. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. The specified name must not match the name of an existing outbound server, inbound server, apply process, or messaging client. **Note:** The server_name setting cannot exceed 30 bytes, and it cannot be altered after the outbound server is created.
queue_name	The name of the local queue from which the outbound server dequeues LCRs, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named xstream_queue in the xstrmadmin schema, enter xstrmadmin.xstream_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If NULL, the procedure raises an error.
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.

Table 204–5 (Cont.) ADD_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_names	The tables for which data manipulation language (DML) and data definition language (DDL) changes are streamed out to the XStream client application. The tables can be specified in the following ways: ▪ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ▪ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a table. Specify the first table in position 1. The last position must be NULL. Each table should be specified as [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. For example, you can specify hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-24 for more information about this parameter
schema_names	The schemas for which DML and DDL changes are streamed out to the XStream client application. The schemas can be specified in the following ways: ▪ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ▪ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a schema. Specify the first schema in position 1. The last position must be NULL. **Note:** This procedure does not concatenate the schema_names parameter with the table_names parameter. To specify tables, enter fully qualified table names in the table_names parameter (*schema_name.table_name*). **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-24 for more information about this parameter
connect_user	The user who can attach to the specified outbound server to retrieve the LCR stream. The client application must attach to the outbound server as the specified connect user. See "CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure" on page 204-66 for information about the privileges required by a connect user. If NULL, then the current user is the default.
comment	An optional comment associated with the outbound server.
capture_name	The name of the capture process configured to capture changes for the outbound server. Do not specify an owner. If the specified name matches the name of an existing capture process for another outbound server, then the procedure uses the existing capture process and adds the rules for capturing changes to the database to the positive capture process rule set. If the specified name matches the name of an existing capture process for an apply process, then an error is raised. If the specified name does not match the name of an existing capture process, then an error is raised. If NULL, then the outbound server is created without a capture process.
start_scn	A valid system change number (SCN) for the database from which the capture process starts capturing changes. If the capture_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored. If NULL and the capture_name parameter is non-NULL, then the start SCN of the capture process is not changed. An error is returned if an invalid SCN is specified. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive.

Table 204–5 (Cont.) ADD_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
start_time	A valid time from which the capture process starts capturing changes. If the capture_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored. If NULL and the capture_name parameter is non-NULL, then the start SCN of the capture process is not changed. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. For example, mycdb.example.com. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the root in the local CDB is used. If you are configuring downstream capture, then this parameter must be a non-NULL value, and it must specify the global name of the root in the remote source CDB. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

The following list describes the behavior of the outbound server for various combinations of the table_names and schema_names parameters:

- If both the table_names and schema_names parameters are NULL or empty, then the outbound server streams all DML and DDL changes to the client application.

  This procedure is overloaded. The table_names and schema_names parameters are defaulted to NULL. Do not specify NULL for both table_names and schema_names in the same call; otherwise, error PLS-00307 is returned.

- If both the table_names and schema_names parameters are specified, then the outbound server streams DML and DDL changes for the specified tables and schemas.
- If the table_names parameter is specified and the schema_names parameter is NULL or empty, then the outbound server streams DML and DDL changes for the specified tables.
- If the table_names parameter is NULL or empty and the schema_names parameter is specified, then the outbound server streams DML and DDL changes for the specified schemas.

For the procedure that uses the DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY type for the table_names and schema_names parameters, both parameters must be specified. To specify only tables, the schema_names parameter must be specified and empty. To specify only schemas, the table_names parameter must be specified and empty.

Note: An empty array includes one `NULL` entry.

ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedure either adds schema rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds schema rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   schema_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   schema_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–6 ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema_name`	The name of the schema. For example, `hr`.
`streams_name`	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If `NULL` and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If `NULL` and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.

Table 204–6 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a logical change record (LCR) has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then whether an LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag for the LCR. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if an LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then an LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 204–6 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the change originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the schema rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"

Table 204–6 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the schema name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the schema name plus the sequence number is too long, then the schema name is truncated. A propagation uses the rules for filtering.

Examples

The following is an example of a schema rule condition created for DML changes:

```
((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR') and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y'
and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure

This procedures adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of XStream clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to a specified schema.

  This procedure creates the specified capture process if it does not exist.

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, outbound server, or inbound server, this procedure adds apply rules for applying logical change records (LCRs) that contain changes to a specified schema. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database.

  This procedure creates an apply process if no apply process, outbound server, or inbound server exists with the specified `streams_name`. This procedure can add rules to an outbound server or inbound server, but it cannot create an outbound server or inbound server.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Caution: If you add schema rules to the positive rule set for a capture process, then make sure you add rules to the negative capture process rule set to exclude database objects in the schema that are not support by Oracle Streams. Query the `DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED` data dictionary view to determine which database objects are not supported by Oracle Streams. If unsupported database objects are not excluded, then capture errors will result.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_RULES(
   schema_name            IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SCHEMA_RULES(
   schema_name            IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
```

```
  source_database        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  inclusion_rule         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
  and_condition          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
  source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–7 ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	The name of the schema. For example, hr. You can specify a schema that does not yet exist, because Oracle Streams does not validate the existence of the schema.
streams_type	The type of XStream client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify apply for an apply process.
streams_name	The name of the capture process or apply process. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture, and if one relevant capture process for the queue exists, then the relevant XStream client is used. If no relevant XStream client exists for the queue, then an XStream client is created automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple XStream clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process must have a unique name.
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process rules, this is the queue into which a capture process enqueues LCRs. For outbound server rules, this is the queue from which the outbound server dequeues LCRs. For inbound server rules, this is the queue into which an inbound server enqueues error transactions.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.

Table 204–7 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is always considered for capture, and an LCR is always considered for apply, regardless of whether the redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then whether a redo entry or LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if a redo entry or LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the process, then a redo entry is considered for capture, and an LCR is considered for apply, only when the redo entry or LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the process, then a redo entry or LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured LCRs, then the apply process can apply LCRs from only one capture process at one source database. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.

Table 204–7 (Cont.) ADD_SCHEMA_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the XStream client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the XStream client. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the schema rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. For example, mycdb.example.com. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the root in the local CDB is used. If you are configuring downstream capture, then this parameter must be a non-NULL value, and it must specify the global name of the root in the remote source CDB. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on `include_dml` and `include_ddl` parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the schema name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the schema name plus the sequence number is too long, then the schema name is truncated. A capture process or apply process uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 204-5
- "Security Model" on page 204-4

Examples

The following is an example of a schema rule condition created for DML changes:

```
((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR') and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y'
and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds subset rules to an outbound server configuration. Subset rules instruct the outbound server to stream out a subset of the changes to the specified tables. Outbound servers can stream out a subset of both rows and columns.

This procedure is overloaded. One `column_list` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the other `column_list` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY`. These parameters enable you to enter the list of columns in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note: This procedure does not add rules to the outbound server's capture process.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES(
   server_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   condition        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   column_list      IN DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY,
   keep             IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   source_database  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES(
   server_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   table_name       IN VARCHAR2,
   condition        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   column_list      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   keep             IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   source_database  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–8 ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`server_name`	The name of the outbound server to which rules are being added. Specify an existing outbound server. Do not specify an owner.
`table_name`	The name of the table specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, you can specify `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the outbound server configuration uses a local capture process, then the table must exist at the local source database. If the outbound server configuration uses a downstream capture process, then the table must exist at both the source database and at the downstream capture database. The specified table cannot have any LOB, `LONG`, or `LONG RAW` columns currently or in the future.

Table 204–8 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
condition	The subset condition. Specify this condition similar to the way you specify conditions in a WHERE clause in SQL. For example, to specify rows in the hr.employees table where the salary is greater than 4000 and the job_id is SA_MAN, enter the following as the condition: ' salary > 4000 and job_id = ''SA_MAN'' ' If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The quotation marks in the preceding example are all single quotation marks.
column_list	The list of columns either to include in the outbound server configuration or to exclude from the outbound server configuration. Whether the columns are included or excluded depends on the setting for the keep parameter. The columns can be specified in the following ways: ▪ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ▪ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a column. Specify the first column in position 1. The last position must be NULL. To include or exclude all of the columns in a table, specify each column in the table in the list or array. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
keep	If TRUE, then the columns specified in the column_list parameter are kept as part of the outbound server configuration. Therefore, changes to these columns that satisfy the condition in the condition parameter are streamed to the outbound server's client application. If FALSE, then the columns specified in the column_list parameter are excluded from the outbound server configuration. Therefore, changes to these columns are not streamed to the outbound server's client application. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-36
source_database	The global name of the container where the specified table_names and schema_names are located. If non-NULL, then a condition is added to the outbound server's rules to filter the LCRs based on the global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically.

Usage Notes

When the keep parameter is set to TRUE, this procedure creates a keep columns declarative rule-based transformation for the columns listed in column_list.

When the keep parameter is set to FALSE, this procedure creates a delete column declarative rule-based transformation for each column listed in column_list.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for information about declarative rule-based transformations

ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedures adds propagation rules that propagate the logical change records (LCRs) related to a subset of the rows in the specified table in a source queue to a destination queue, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains three `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name                IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name              IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name         IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_tagged_lcr        IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   insert_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   update_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   delete_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   queue_to_queue            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name                IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name              IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name         IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name    IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_tagged_lcr        IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–9 ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	The name of the table specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified table must exist in the same database as the propagation. Also, the specified table cannot have any LOB, `LONG`, `LONG RAW`, or `XMLType` columns currently or in the future.
`dml_condition`	The subset condition. Specify this condition similar to the way you specify conditions in a `WHERE` clause in SQL. For example, to specify rows in the `hr.employees` table where the `salary` is greater than `4000` and the `job_id` is `SA_MAN`, enter the following as the condition: `' salary > 4000 and job_id = ''SA_MAN'' '` **Note:** The quotation marks in the preceding example are all single quotation marks.

Table 204–9 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_name	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If NULL and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If NULL and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. This setting is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If FALSE, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. A setting of FALSE is often specified in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the change originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.

Table 204–9 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
insert_rule_name	Contains the system-generated INSERT rule name. This rule handles inserts and updates that must be converted into inserts.
update_rule_name	Contains the system-generated UPDATE rule name. This rule handles updates that remain updates.
delete_rule_name	Contains the system-generated DELETE rule name. This rule handles deletes and updates that must be converted into deletes
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

Running this procedure generates three rules for the specified propagation: one for INSERT statements, one for UPDATE statements, and one for DELETE statements. For INSERT and DELETE statements, only row LCRs that satisfy the condition specified for the dml_condition parameter are propagated. For UPDATE statements, the following variations are possible:

- If both the new and old values in a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the row LCR is propagated without any changes.
- If neither the new or old values in a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the row LCR is not propagated.
- If the old values for a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the new values do not, then the update row LCR is converted into a delete row LCR.
- If the new values for a row LCR satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the old values do not, then the update row LCR is converted to an insert row LCR.

When an update is converted into an insert or a delete, it is called row migration.

A propagation uses the rules for filtering. If the propagation does not have a positive rule set, then the procedure creates a positive rule set automatically, and the rules for propagating changes to the table are added to the positive rule set. A subset rule can be added to positive rule set only, not to a negative rule set. Other rules in an existing positive rule set for the propagation are not affected. Additional rules can be added using either the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package.

Rules for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements are created automatically when you run this procedure, and these rules are given a system-generated rule name. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure is overloaded, and the system-generated rule names for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements are returned.

When you create propagation subset rules for a table, you should create an unconditional supplemental log group at the source database with all the columns in the table. Supplemental logging is required if an update must be converted to an insert. The propagation rule must have all the column values to be able to perform this conversion correctly.

Attention: Subset rules should only reside in positive rule sets. You should not add subset rules to negative rule sets. Doing so might have unpredictable results because row migration would not be performed on LCRs that are not discarded by the negative rule set.

Examples

The following is an example of a rule condition created for filtering a row LCR containing an update operation when the dml_condition is region_id = 2, the table_name is hr.regions, and the source_database is dbs1.net:

```
:dml.get_object_owner()='HR' AND :dml.get_object_name()='REGIONS'
AND :dml.is_null_tag()='Y' AND :dml.get_source_database_name()='DBS1.NET'
AND :dml.get_command_type()='UPDATE'
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
```

ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of XStream clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to a subset of rows in a specified table.

  This procedure creates the specified capture process if it does not exist.

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, outbound server, or inbound server, this procedure adds apply rules for applying logical change records (LCRs) that contain changes to a subset of rows in a specified table. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database.

  This procedure creates an apply process if no apply process, outbound server, or inbound server exists with the specified `streams_name`. This procedure can add rules to an outbound server or inbound server, but it cannot create an outbound server or inbound server.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains three `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_RULES(
   table_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition          IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'apply',
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   insert_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   update_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   delete_rule_name       OUT  VARCHAR2,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_SUBSET_RULES(
   table_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   dml_condition          IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'apply',
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–10 ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The specified table must exist in the same database as the capture process or apply process. Also, the specified table cannot have any LOB, LONG, LONG RAW, or XMLType columns currently or in the future.
dml_condition	The subset condition. Specify this condition similar to the way you specify conditions in a WHERE clause in SQL. For example, to specify rows in the hr.employees table where the salary is greater than 4000 and the job_id is SA_MAN, enter the following as the condition: ' salary > 4000 and job_id = ''SA_MAN'' ' **Note:** The quotation marks in the preceding example are all single quotation marks.
streams_type	The type of XStream client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify apply for an apply process.
streams_name	The name of the capture process or apply process. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture, and if one relevant capture process for the queue exists, then the procedure uses the relevant XStream client. If no relevant XStream client exists for the queue, then the procedure creates an XStream client automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple XStream clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process must have a unique name.

Table 204–10 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process rules, this is the queue into which a capture process enqueues LCRs. For outbound server rules, this is the queue from which the outbound server dequeues LCRs. For inbound server rules, this is the queue into which an inbound server enqueues error transactions.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the XStream client performs its action regardless of the tag: ■ A redo entry is always considered for capture by a capture process, regardless of whether the redo entry has a non-NULL tag. ■ An LCR is always considered for apply by an apply process, regardless of whether redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If FALSE, then an XStream client performs its action only when the tag is NULL: ■ A redo entry is considered for capture by a capture process only when the redo entry contains a NULL tag. ■ An LCR is considered for apply by an apply process only if the LCR contains a NULL tag. A setting of FALSE is often specified in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured LCRs, then the apply process can apply LCRs from only one capture process at one source database. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
insert_rule_name	Contains the system-generated INSERT rule name. This rule handles inserts and updates that must be converted into inserts.

Table 204–10 (Cont.) ADD_SUBSET_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
update_rule_name	Contains the system-generated UPDATE rule name. This rule handles updates that remain updates.
delete_rule_name	Contains the system-generated DELETE rule name. This rule handles deletes and updates that must be converted into deletes
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. For example, mycdb.example.com. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the root in the local CDB is used. If you are configuring downstream capture, then this parameter must be a non-NULL value, and it must specify the global name of the root in the remote source CDB. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

Running this procedure generates three rules for the specified capture process or apply process: one for INSERT statements, one for UPDATE statements, and one for DELETE statements. For INSERT and DELETE statements, only DML changes that satisfy the condition specified for the dml_condition parameter are captured or applied. For UPDATE statements, the following variations are possible:

- If both the new and old values in a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the DML change is captured or applied without any changes.
- If neither the new or old values in a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, then the DML change is not captured or applied.
- If the old values for a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the new values do not, then the DML change is converted into a delete.
- If the new values for a DML change satisfy the specified dml_condition, but the old values do not, then the DML change is converted to an insert.

When an update is converted into an insert or a delete, it is called row migration.

A capture process or apply process uses the rules for filtering. If the XStream client does not have a positive rule set, then this procedure creates a positive rule set automatically, and adds the rules for the table to the positive rule set. A subset rule can be added to positive rule set only, not to a negative rule set. Other rules in an existing rule set for the process are not affected. Additional rules can be added using either the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package or the DBMS_RULE_ADM package.

Rules for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements are created automatically when you run this procedure, and these rules are given a system-generated rule name. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the

table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. The ADD_SUBSET_RULES procedure is overloaded, and the system-generated rule names for INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements are returned.

Attention: Subset rules should only reside in positive rule sets. You should not add subset rules to negative rule sets. Doing so might have unpredictable results because row migration would not be performed on LCRs that are not discarded by the negative rule set.

Examples

The following is an example of a rule condition created for filtering DML changes containing an update operation when the dml_condition is region_id = 2, the table_name is hr.regions, and the source_database is dbs1.net:

```
:dml.get_object_owner()='HR' AND :dml.get_object_name()='REGIONS'
AND :dml.is_null_tag()='Y' AND :dml.get_source_database_name()='DBS1.NET'
AND :dml.get_command_type()='UPDATE'
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"') IS NOT NULL)
AND (:dml.get_value('OLD','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
AND (:dml.get_value('NEW','"REGION_ID"').AccessNumber()=2)
```

ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure

This procedures adds table rules to the positive rule set for a propagation, or adds table rules to the negative rule set for a propagation, and creates the specified propagation if it does not exist.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name              IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name           OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES(
   table_name              IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name            IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_queue_name       IN   VARCHAR2,
   destination_queue_name  IN   VARCHAR2,
   include_dml             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr      IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database         IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_to_queue          IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–11 ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`table_name`	The name of the table specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`table_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`streams_name`	The name of the propagation. Do not specify an owner. If the specified propagation does not exist, then the procedure creates it automatically. If `NULL` and a propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure uses this propagation. If `NULL` and no propagation exists for the same source queue and destination queue (including database link), then the procedure creates a propagation automatically with a system-generated name.

Table 204–11 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_queue_name	The name of the source queue, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the source queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a source queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
destination_queue_name	The name of the destination queue, including a database link, specified as [*schema_name*.]*queue_name*[*@dblink_name*], if the destination queue is in a remote database. The queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a destination queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema and use a database link named dbs2.net, enter strmadmin.streams_queue@dbs2.net for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the database link is omitted, then the procedure uses the global name of the current database, and the source queue and destination queue must be in the same database. **Note:** Connection qualifiers are not allowed.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted. The generated rule evaluates to TRUE for any DDL change that operates on the table or on an object that is part of the table, such as an index or trigger on the table. The rule evaluates to FALSE for any DDL change that either does not refer to the table or refers to the table in a subordinate way. For example, the rule evaluates to FALSE for changes that create synonyms or views based on the table. The rule also evaluates to FALSE for a change to a PL/SQL subprogram that refers to the table.

Table 204–11 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a logical change record (LCR) has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is always considered for propagation, regardless of whether it has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then whether an LCR is discarded does not depend on the tag for the LCR. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if an LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the propagation, then an LCR is considered for propagation only when the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the propagation, then an LCR can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the change originated. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically. Oracle recommends that you specify a source database for propagation rules.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the propagation. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the propagation. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.

Table 204–11 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_PROPAGATION_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the table rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"
queue_to_queue	If TRUE or NULL, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue to queue propagation. A queue-to-queue propagation always has its own propagation job and uses a service for automatic failover when the destination queue is a buffered queue in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database. If FALSE, then a new propagation created by this procedure is a queue-to-dblink propagation. A queue-to-dblink propagation can share a propagation job with other propagations that use the same database link and does not support automatic failover in an Oracle RAC environment. This procedure cannot change the queue to queue property of an exiting propagation. If the specified propagation exists, then the procedure behaves in the following way for each setting: ■ If TRUE and the specified propagation is not a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If FALSE and the specified propagation is a queue to queue propagation, then the procedure raises an error. ■ If NULL, then the procedure does not change the queue to queue property of the propagation. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about queue-to-queue propagations

Usage Notes

This procedure configures propagation using the current user. Only one propagation is allowed between a particular source queue and destination queue.

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The

sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. A propagation uses the rules for filtering.

Examples

The following is an example of a table rule condition created for filtering DML statements:

```
(((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR' and :dml.get_object_name() = 'LOCATIONS'))
and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure

This procedure adds rules to a rule set of one of the following types of XStream clients:

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `capture`, this procedure adds capture process rules for capturing changes to a specified table.

  This procedure creates the specified capture process if it does not exist.

- When the `streams_type` parameter is set to `apply` and the `streams_name` parameter specifies the name of an apply process, outbound server, or inbound server, this procedure adds apply rules for applying logical change records (LCRs) that contain changes to a specified table. The rules can specify that the LCRs must be from a particular source database.

  This procedure creates an apply process if no apply process, outbound server, or inbound server exists with the specified `streams_name`. This procedure can add rules to an outbound server or inbound server, but it cannot create an outbound server or inbound server.

This procedure is overloaded. One version of this procedure contains two `OUT` parameters, and the other does not.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_TABLE_RULES(
   table_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   dml_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_rule_name          OUT  VARCHAR2,
   inclusion_rule         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_TABLE_RULES(
   table_name             IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_type           IN   VARCHAR2,
   streams_name           IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name             IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   include_dml            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   include_tagged_lcr     IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database        IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule         IN   BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   and_condition          IN   VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–12 ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
table_name	The name of the table specified as [*schema_name.*]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. You can specify a table that does not yet exist, because Oracle Streams does not validate the existence of the table.
streams_type	The type of XStream client: ■ Specify capture for a capture process. ■ Specify apply for an apply process.
streams_name	The name of the capture process or apply process. Do not specify an owner. If NULL, if streams_type is capture, and if one relevant capture process for the queue exists, then the procedure uses the relevant XStream client. If no relevant XStream client exists for the queue, then the procedure creates an XStream client automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple XStream clients of the specified streams_type for the queue exist, then the procedure raises an error. If NULL, if streams_type is apply, and if one relevant apply process exists, then the procedure uses the relevant apply process. The relevant apply process is identified in one of the following ways: ■ If one existing apply process has the source database specified in source_database and uses the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. ■ If source_database is NULL and one existing apply process is using the queue specified in queue_name, then the procedure uses this apply process. If NULL and no relevant apply process exists, then the procedure creates an apply process automatically with a system-generated name. If NULL and multiple relevant apply processes exist, then the procedure raises an error. Each apply process must have a unique name.
queue_name	The name of the local queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. The current database must contain the queue, and the queue must be ANYDATA type. For example, to specify a queue named streams_queue in the strmadmin schema, enter strmadmin.streams_queue for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. For capture process rules, this is the queue into which a capture process enqueues LCRs. For outbound server rules, this is the queue from which the outbound server dequeues LCRs. For inbound server rules, this is the queue into which an inbound server enqueues error transactions.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DML rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.

Table 204–12 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DDL rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted. The generated rule evaluates to TRUE for any DDL change that operates on the table or on an object that is part of the table, such as an index or trigger on the table. The rule evaluates to FALSE for any DDL change that either does not refer to the table or refers to the table in a subordinate way. For example, the rule evaluates to FALSE for changes that create synonyms or views based on the table. The rule also evaluates to FALSE for a change to a PL/SQL subprogram that refers to the table.
include_tagged_lcr	If TRUE, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding Oracle Streams tags to the generated rules. Therefore, these rules can evaluate to TRUE regardless of whether a redo entry, session, or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for the XStream client, then the XStream client performs its action regardless of the tag: ■ A redo entry is always considered for capture by a capture process, regardless of whether the redo entry has a non-NULL tag. ■ An LCR is always considered for apply by an apply process, regardless of whether redo entry or LCR has a non-NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to TRUE is appropriate for a full (for example, standby) copy of a database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the XStream client, then whether a database change is discarded does not depend on the tag. If FALSE, then the procedure adds a condition to each generated rule that causes the rule to evaluate to TRUE only if a redo entry, session, or LCR has a NULL Oracle Streams tag. If the rules are added to the positive rule set for an XStream client, then the XStream client performs its action only when the tag is NULL: ■ A redo entry is considered for capture by a capture process only when the redo entry contains a NULL tag. ■ An LCR is considered for apply by an apply process only if the LCR contains a NULL tag. If the rules are added to a positive rule set, then setting this parameter to FALSE might be appropriate in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. If the rules are added to the negative rule set for the XStream client, then a database change can be discarded only if it has a NULL tag. A setting of FALSE is often specified in update-anywhere configurations to avoid sending a change back to its source database. Usually, specify TRUE for this parameter if the inclusion_rule parameter is set to FALSE. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Table 204–12 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	The global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. For capture process rules, specify NULL or the global name of the local database if you are creating a capture process locally at the source database. If you are adding rules to a downstream capture process rule set at a downstream database, then specify the source database of the changes that will be captured. For apply process rules, specify the source database of the changes that will be applied by the apply process. The source database is the database where the changes originated. If an apply process applies captured LCRs, then the apply process can apply LCRs from only one capture process at one source database. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
dml_rule_name	If include_dml is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DML rule name. If include_dml is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
ddl_rule_name	If include_ddl is TRUE, then this parameter contains the DDL rule name. If include_ddl is FALSE, then this parameter contains a NULL.
inclusion_rule	If inclusion_rule is TRUE, then the procedure adds the rules to the positive rule set for the XStream client. If inclusion_rule is FALSE, then the procedure adds the rules to the negative rule set for the XStream client. In either case, the system creates the rule set if it does not exist.

Table 204–12 (Cont.) ADD_TABLE_RULES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
and_condition	If non-NULL, appends the specified condition to the system-generated rule condition using an AND clause in the following way: (*system_condition*) AND (*and_condition*) The variable in the specified condition must be :lcr. For example, to specify that the table rules generated by the procedure evaluate to TRUE only if the Oracle Streams tag is the hexadecimal equivalent of '02', specify the following condition: :lcr.get_tag() = HEXTORAW(''02'') The :lcr in the specified condition is converted to :dml or :ddl, depending on the rule that is being generated. If you are specifying an LCR member subprogram that is dependent on the LCR type (row or DDL), then make sure this procedure only generates the appropriate rule. Specifically, if you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for row LCRs, then specify TRUE for the include_dml parameter and FALSE for the include_ddl parameter. If you specify an LCR member subprogram that is valid only for DDL LCRs, then specify FALSE for the include_dml parameter and TRUE for the include_ddl parameter. **See Also:** Chapter 275, "Logical Change Record TYPEs"
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. For example, mycdb.example.com. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the root in the local CDB is used. If you are configuring downstream capture, then this parameter must be a non-NULL value, and it must specify the global name of the root in the remote source CDB. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

This procedure creates DML and DDL rules automatically based on include_dml and include_ddl parameter values, respectively. Each rule has a system-generated rule name that consists of the table name with a sequence number appended to it. The sequence number is used to avoid naming conflicts. If the table name plus the sequence number is too long, then the table name is truncated. A capture process or apply process uses the rules for filtering.

See Also:

- "Operational Notes" on page 204-5
- "Security Model" on page 204-4

Examples

The following is an example of a table rule condition created for DML changes:

```
(((:dml.get_object_owner() = 'HR' and :dml.get_object_name() = 'LOCATIONS'))
and :dml.is_null_tag() = 'Y' and :dml.get_source_database_name() = 'DBS1.NET' )
```

ALTER_INBOUND Procedure

This procedure modifies an XStream inbound server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ALTER_INBOUND(
   server_name IN VARCHAR2,
   apply_user  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–13 ALTER_INBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
server_name	The name of the inbound server being altered. Specify an existing inbound server. Do not specify an owner.
apply_user	The user who applies all DML and DDL changes that satisfy the inbound server rule sets, who runs user-defined apply handlers, and who runs custom rule-based transformations configured for inbound server rules. The client application must attach to the inbound server as the apply user. Specify a user to change the apply user. In this case, the user who invokes the ALTER_INBOUND procedure must be granted the DBA role. Only the SYS user can set the apply_user to SYS. If NULL, then the apply user is not changed. See "CREATE_INBOUND Procedure" on page 204-64 for information about the required privileges for an apply user.
comment	An optional comment associated with the inbound server. If non-NULL, then the specified comment replaces the existing comment. If NULL, then the existing comment is not changed.

ALTER_OUTBOUND Procedure

This procedure modifies an XStream outbound server configuration.

This procedure always alters the specified outbound server. This procedure can also alter the outbound server's capture process when either of the following conditions is met:

- The capture process was created by the CREATE_OUTBOUND procedure in this package.
- The queue used by the capture process was created by the CREATE_OUTBOUND procedure.

To check whether this procedure can alter the outbound server's capture process, query the CAPTURE_NAME column in the ALL_XSTREAM_OUTBOUND view. When the name of the capture process appears in the CAPTURE_NAME column of this view, the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure can manage the capture process's rules or change the capture user for the capture process. When the CAPTURE_NAME column of this view is NULL, the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure cannot manage the capture process.

This procedure is overloaded. One table_names parameter is type VARCHAR2 and the other table_names parameter is type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY. Also, one schema_names parameter is type VARCHAR2 and the other schema_names parameter is type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY. These parameters enable you to enter the list of tables and schemas in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note: Starting with Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2.0.2), the start_scn and start_time parameters are included in this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ALTER_OUTBOUND(
   server_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   table_names           IN DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   schema_names          IN DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   add                   IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   capture_user          IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   connect_user          IN VARCHR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   comment               IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule        IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   start_scn             IN NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time            IN TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL,
   include_dml           IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl           IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database       IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ALTER_OUTBOUND(
   server_name           IN VARCHAR2,
   table_names           IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_names          IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   add                   IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   capture_user          IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   connect_user          IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   comment               IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   inclusion_rule        IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   start_scn             IN NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL,
   start_time            IN TIMESTAMP  DEFAULT NULL,
```

```
   include_dml           IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl           IN BOOLEAN    DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database       IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name IN VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–14 ALTER_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
server_name	The name of the outbound server being altered. Specify an existing outbound server. Do not specify an owner.
table_names	The tables that are either added to or removed from the XStream Out configuration. Whether the tables are added or removed depends on the setting for the add parameter. The tables can be specified in the following ways: ■ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ■ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a table. Specify the first table in position 1. The last position must be NULL. Each table should be specified as [*schema_name.*]*table_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-63 for more information about this parameter
schema_names	The schemas that are either added to or removed from the XStream Out configuration. Whether the schemas are added or removed depends on the setting for the add parameter. The schemas can be specified in the following ways: ■ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ■ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a schema. Specify the first schema in position 1. The last position must be NULL. **Note:** This procedure does not concatenate the schema_names parameter with the table_names parameter. To specify tables, enter fully qualified table names in the table_names parameter (*schema_name.table_name*). **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-63 for more information about this parameter
add	If TRUE, then the procedure adds to the XStream Out configuration the tables specified in the table_names parameter and the schemas specified in the schema_names parameter. If FALSE, then the procedure removes from the XStream Out configuration the tables specified in the table_names parameter and the schemas specified in the schema_names parameter.

Table 204–14 (Cont.) ALTER_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
capture_user	The user in whose security domain a capture process captures changes that satisfy its rule sets and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for capture process rules. Specify a user to change the capture user. In this case, the user who invokes the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure must be granted the DBA role. Only the SYS user can set the capture_user to SYS. If NULL, then the capture user is not changed. If you change the capture user, then this procedure grants the new capture user enqueue privilege on the queue used by the capture process and configures the user as a secure queue user. Ensure that the capture user is granted the other required privileges. See "CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure" on page 204-66 for information about the privileges required by a capture user. The capture process is stopped and restarted automatically when you change the value of this parameter. **Note:** If the capture user for a capture process is dropped using DROP USER . . . CASCADE, then the capture process is also dropped automatically.
connect_user	The user who can attach to the specified outbound server to retrieve the change stream. The XStream client application must attach to the outbound server as the specified connect user. Specify a user to change the connect user. In this case, the user who invokes the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure must be granted the DBA role. Only the SYS user can set the connect_user to SYS. If NULL, then the connect user is not changed. If you change the connect user, then this procedure grants the new connect user dequeue privileges on the queue used by the outbound server and configures the user as a secure queue user. Ensure that the connect user is granted the other required privileges. See "CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure" on page 204-66 for information about the privileges required by a connect user.
comment	An optional comment associated with the outbound server. If non-NULL, then the specified comment replaces the existing comment. If NULL, then the existing comment is not changed.

Table 204–14 (Cont.) ALTER_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
inclusion_rule	If TRUE and the add parameter is set to TRUE, then the procedure adds rules for the tables specified in the table_names parameter and the schemas specified in the schema_names parameter to the positive rule sets in the XStream Out configuration. When rules for tables and schemas are in positive rule sets, the XStream Out configuration streams DML and DDL changes to the tables and schemas out to the client application. If TRUE and the add parameter is set to FALSE, then the procedure removes rules for the tables specified in the table_names parameter and the schemas specified in the schema_names parameter from the positive rule sets in the XStream Out configuration. If FALSE and the add parameter is set to TRUE, then the procedure adds rules for the tables specified in the table_names parameter and the schemas specified in the schema_names parameter to the negative rule sets in the XStream Out configuration. When rules for tables and schemas are in negative rule sets, the XStream Out configuration does not stream changes to the tables and schemas out to the client application. If FALSE and the add parameter is set to FALSE, then the procedure removes rules for the tables specified in the table_names parameter and the schemas specified in the schema_names parameter from the negative rule sets in the XStream Out configuration.
start_scn	A valid SCN for the database from which the capture process starts capturing changes. To be valid, the SCN value must be greater than or equal to the first SCN for the capture process. If a valid SCN is specified, then the capture process captures changes from the specified SCN when it is restarted. An error is returned if an invalid SCN is specified. If NULL and the start_time parameter is NULL, then the start SCN is not changed. If NULL and the start_time parameter is non-NULL, then the start SCN is changed to match the specified start time. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive. **Note:** If the capture process is enabled, then the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure automatically stops and restarts the capture process when the start_scn parameter is non-NULL. If the capture process is disabled, then the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure automatically starts the capture process when the start_scn parameter is non-NULL.
start_time	A valid time from which the capture process starts capturing changes. To be valid, the time must correspond to an SCN value that is greater than or equal to the first SCN for the capture process. If a valid time is specified, then the capture process captures changes from the specified time when it is restarted. An error is returned if an invalid time is specified. If NULL and the start_scn parameter is NULL, then the start time is not changed. If NULL and the start_scn parameter is non-NULL, then the start time is changed to match the specified start SCN. The start_scn and start_time parameters are mutually exclusive. **Note:** If the capture process is enabled, then the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure automatically stops and restarts the capture process when the start_time parameter is non-NULL. If the capture process is disabled, then the ALTER_OUTBOUND procedure automatically starts the capture process when the start_time parameter is non-NULL.

Table 204–14 (Cont.) ALTER_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DML rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DDL rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.
source_database	The global name of the container where the specified table_names and schema_names are located. If source_database is non-NULL, then a condition is added to the outbound server's rules to filter the LCRs based on the global name of the source database.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

The following list describes the behavior of the outbound server for various combinations of the table_names and schema_names parameters:

- If both the table_names and schema_names parameters are NULL or empty, then no rules are changed for the XStream Out configuration.

  This procedure is overloaded. The table_names and schema_names parameters are defaulted to NULL. Do not specify NULL for both table_names and schema_names in the same call; otherwise, error PLS-00307 is returned.

- If both the table_names and schema_names parameters are specified, then the rules for the tables and schemas are added to or removed from the XStream Out configuration, depending on the setting of the add parameter.

- If the table_names parameter is specified and the schema_names parameter is NULL or empty, then the rules for the tables are added to or removed from the XStream Out configuration, depending on the setting of the add parameter. The existing rules for schemas are not changed for the XStream Out configuration.

- If the table_names parameter is NULL or empty and the schema_names parameter is specified, then the rules for the schemas are added to or removed from the XStream Out configuration, depending on the setting of the add parameter. The existing rules for tables are not changed for the XStream Out configuration.

For the procedure that uses the DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY type for the table_names and schema_names parameters, both parameters must be specified. To specify only tables, the schema_names parameter must be specified and empty. To specify only schemas, the table_names parameter must be specified and empty.

Note: An empty array includes one NULL entry.

CREATE_INBOUND Procedure

This procedure creates an XStream inbound server and its queue.

> **Note:** A client application can create multiple sessions. Each session can attach to only one inbound server, and each inbound server can serve only one session at a time. However, different client application sessions can connect to different inbound servers. See *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* and *Oracle Database XStream Java API Reference* for information about attaching to an inbound server.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.CREATE_INBOUND(
   server_name IN VARCHAR2,
   queue_name  IN VARCHAR2,
   apply_user  IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment     IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–15 CREATE_INBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`server_name`	The name of the inbound server being created. A `NULL` specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. The specified name must not match the name of an existing outbound server, inbound server, apply process, or messaging client. **Note:** The `server_name` setting cannot exceed 30 bytes, and it cannot be altered after the inbound server is created.
`queue_name`	The name of the local queue used by the inbound server, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`queue_name`*. If the specified queue exists, then it is used. If the specified queue does not exist, then the procedure creates it. For example, to specify a queue named `xstream_queue` in the `xstrmadmin` schema, enter `xstrmadmin.xstream_queue` for this parameter. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **Note:** An inbound server's queue is used only to store error transactions.

Table 204–15 (Cont.) CREATE_INBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
apply_user	The apply user. If NULL, then the current user is the default. The client application must attach to the inbound server as the apply user. The apply user is the user in whose security domain an inbound server evaluates whether LCRs satisfy its rule sets, applies DML and DDL changes directly to database objects, runs custom rule-based transformations configured for inbound server rules, and runs apply handlers configured for the inbound server. This user must have the necessary privileges to perform these actions. This procedure grants the apply user dequeue privileges on the queue used by the inbound server and configures the user as a secure queue user. In addition to the privileges granted by this procedure, you must grant the following privileges to the apply user: ■ The necessary privileges to perform DML and DDL changes on the apply objects ■ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the inbound server ■ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set ■ EXECUTE privilege on all apply handler procedures You can grant these privileges directly to the apply user, or you can grant them through roles. In addition, the apply user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle supplied packages, that are invoked in subprograms run by the inbound server. These privileges must be granted directly to the apply user. They cannot be granted through roles. **Note:** If the apply user for an inbound server is dropped using DROP USER . . . CASCADE, then the inbound server is also dropped automatically.
comment	An optional comment associated with the inbound server.

Usage Notes

By default, an inbound server does not use rules or rule sets. Therefore, an inbound server applies all of the LCRs sent to it by an XStream client application. However, to filter the LCRs sent to an inbound server, you can add rules and rule sets to an inbound server using the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM and DBMS_RULE_ADM packages.

In a CDB, you can execute the CREATE_INBOUND procedure from either the root or a PDB. The inbound server is restricted to receiving LCRs from one source database and only applying the changes to its local container. If the inbound server is at the root level, then the apply user must be a common user.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide*

CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure

This procedure creates an XStream outbound server, queue, and capture process to enable client applications to stream out Oracle database changes.

This procedure is overloaded. One `table_names` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the other `table_names` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY`. Also, one `schema_names` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the other `schema_names` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY`. These parameters enable you to enter the list of tables and schemas in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- A client application can create multiple sessions. Each session can attach to only one outbound server, and each outbound server can serve only one session at a time. However, different client application sessions can connect to different outbound servers. See "OCIXStreamOutAttach()" in the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* and *Oracle Database XStream Java API Reference* for information about attaching to an outbound server.
- If the `capture_name` parameter is `NULL`, then this procedure automatically generates a name for the capture process that it creates.
- This procedure automatically generates a name for the queue that it creates.
- This procedure enables both the capture process and outbound server that it creates.
- Starting with Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2.0.2), the `capture_name` parameter is included in this procedure.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.CREATE_OUTBOUND(
   server_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   table_names            IN DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   schema_names           IN DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY,
   capture_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   connect_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment                IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   include_dml            IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl            IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_root_name       IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name  IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.CREATE_OUTBOUND(
   server_name            IN VARCHAR2,
   source_database        IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   table_names            IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   schema_names           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   connect_user           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment                IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   capture_name           IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
```

```
   include_dml             IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   include_ddl             IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_root_name        IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   source_container_name   IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–16 CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
server_name	The name of the outbound server being created. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner. The specified name must not match the name of an existing outbound server, inbound server, apply process, or messaging client. **Note:** The server_name setting cannot exceed 30 bytes, and it cannot be altered after the outbound server is created.
source_database	The global name of the source database. The source database is where the changes to be captured originated. If non-NULL, then a condition is added to the outbound server's rules to filter the LCRs based on the global name of the source database. If NULL, then the procedure does not add a condition regarding the source database to the generated rules. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. In a non-CDB, if non-NULL and the specified name is different from the global name of the current database, then downstream capture is assumed. In this case, configure the transmission of redo data from the source database to the downstream database before running the CREATE_OUTBOUND procedure. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for instructions. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically.
table_names	The tables for which DML and DDL changes are streamed out to the XStream client application. The tables can be specified in the following ways: ■ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ■ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a table. Specify the first table in position 1. The last position must be NULL. Each table should be specified as [*schema_name*.]*table_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-70 for more information about this parameter

Table 204–16 (Cont.) CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_names	The schemas for which DML and DDL changes are streamed out to the XStream client application. The schemas can be specified in the following ways: ▪ Comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. ▪ A PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a schema. Specify the first schema in position 1. The last position must be NULL. **Note:** This procedure does not concatenate the schema_names parameter with the table_names parameter. To specify tables, enter fully qualified table names in the table_names parameter (*schema_name.table_name*). **See Also:** "Usage Notes" on page 204-70 for more information about this parameter
capture_user	The user in whose security domain a capture process captures changes that satisfy its rule sets and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for capture process rules. If NULL, then the current user is the default. This procedure grants the capture user enqueue privilege on the queue used by the capture process and configures the user as a secure queue user. In addition, ensure that the capture user has the following privileges: ▪ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the capture process ▪ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the positive rule set You can grant these privileges directly to the apply user, or you can grant them through roles. In addition, the capture user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle supplied packages, that are invoked in rule-based transformations run by the capture process. These privileges must be granted directly to the capture user. They cannot be granted through roles. Only a user who is granted the DBA role can set a capture user. Only the SYS user can set the capture_user to SYS. A capture user does not require privileges on a database object to capture changes made to it. The capture process can pass these changes to a custom rule-based transformation function. Therefore, ensure that you consider security implications when you configure a capture process.

Table 204–16 (Cont.) CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
connect_user	The user who can attach to the specified outbound server to retrieve the change stream. The client application must attach to the outbound server as the specified connect user. If NULL, then the current user is the default. The connect user is the user in whose security domain an outbound server evaluates LCRs against its rule sets and runs custom rule-based transformations configured for outbound server rules. This user must have the necessary privileges to perform these actions. This procedure grants the connect user dequeue privileges on the queue used by the outbound server and configures the user as a secure queue user. In addition to the privileges granted by this procedure, grant the following privileges to the connect user: ■ EXECUTE privilege on the rule sets used by the outbound server ■ EXECUTE privilege on all rule-based transformation functions used in the rule set You can grant these privileges directly to the connect user, or you can grant them through roles. In addition, the connect user must be granted EXECUTE privilege on all packages, including Oracle supplied packages, that are invoked in subprograms run by the outbound server. These privileges must be granted directly to the apply user. They cannot be granted through roles.
comment	An optional comment associated with the outbound server.
capture_name	The name of the capture process configured to capture changes for the outbound server. Do not specify an owner. The capture process must not exist. If the specified name matches the name of an existing capture process, then an error is raised. If the name does not match the name of an existing capture process, then the procedure creates a new capture process with the specified name. If NULL, then the system creates a new capture process with a system-generated name. **Note:** The capture process name cannot be altered after the capture process is created.
include_dml	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DML rule for DML changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DML rule. NULL is not permitted.
include_ddl	If TRUE, then the procedure creates a DDL rule for DDL changes. If FALSE, then the procedure does not create a DDL rule. NULL is not permitted.

Table 204–16 (Cont.) CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_root_name	The global name of the root in the source CDB. For example, mycdb.example.com. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the root in the local CDB is used. If you are configuring downstream capture, then this parameter must be a non-NULL value, and it must specify the global name of the root in the remote source CDB. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.
source_container_name	The short name of the source container. The container can be the root or a PDB. For example, CDB$ROOT or hrpdb. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about setting this parameter in a CDB. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

The following list describes the behavior of the outbound server for various combinations of the table_names and schema_names parameters:

- If both the table_names and schema_names parameters are NULL or empty, then the outbound server streams all DML and DDL changes to the client application.

  This procedure is overloaded. The table_names and schema_names parameters are defaulted to NULL. Do not specify NULL for both table_names and schema_names in the same call; otherwise, error PLS-00307 is returned.

- If both the table_names and schema_names parameters are specified, then the outbound server streams DML and DDL changes for the specified tables and schemas.
- If the table_names parameter is specified and the schema_names parameter is NULL or empty, then the outbound server streams DML and DDL changes for the specified tables.
- If the table_names parameter is NULL or empty and the schema_names parameter is specified, then the outbound server streams DML and DDL changes for the specified schema.

For the procedure that uses the DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY type for the table_names and schema_names parameters, both parameters must be specified. To specify only tables, the schema_names parameter must be specified and empty. To specify only schemas, the table_names parameter must be specified and empty.

Note: An empty array includes one NULL entry.

DELETE_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which deletes a column from a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an XStream client. XStream clients include capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.

Note:

- The `DELETE_COLUMN` procedure supports the same data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes.
- The `DELETE_COLUMN` procedure is useful when you want to delete a relatively small number of columns in a row LCR. To delete most of the columns in a row LCR and keep a relatively small number of columns, consider using the `KEEP_COLUMNS` procedure in this package.
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL rule is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations and about the data types supported by capture processes
- KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure on page 204-80

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.DELETE_COLUMN(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT '*',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER     DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–17 DELETE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_name`*. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `employees12`, enter `hr.employees12`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`table_name`	The name of the table from which the column is deleted in the row LCR, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.

Table 204–17 (Cont.) DELETE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
column_name	The name of the column deleted from each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to delete the column from the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to delete the column from the old values in the row LCR. Specify '*' to delete the column from both the old and new values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the delete column declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the DELETE_COLUMN procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified column_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name and column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all delete column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

DROP_INBOUND Procedure

This procedure removes an inbound server configuration.

This procedure always removes the specified inbound server. This procedure also removes the queue for the inbound server if all of the following conditions are met:

- One call to the `CREATE_INBOUND` procedure created the queue.
- The inbound server is the only subscriber to the queue.

See Also: "CREATE_INBOUND Procedure" on page 204-64

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.DROP_INBOUND(
   server_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 204–18 DROP_INBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`server_name`	The name of the inbound server being removed. Specify an existing inbound server. Do not specify an owner.

DROP_OUTBOUND Procedure

This procedure removes an outbound server configuration.

This procedure always drops the specified outbound server. This procedure also drops the queue used by the outbound server if both of the following conditions are met:

- The queue was created by the `CREATE_OUTBOUND` procedure in this package.
- The outbound server is the only subscriber to the queue.

If either one of the preceding conditions is not met, then the `DROP_OUTBOUND` procedure only drops the outbound server. It does not drop the queue.

This procedure also drops the capture process for the outbound server if both of the following conditions are met:

- The procedure can drop the outbound server's queue.
- The capture process was created by the `CREATE_OUTBOUND` procedure.

If the procedure can drop the queue but cannot manage the capture process, then it drops the queue without dropping the capture process.

See Also:

- "ADD_OUTBOUND Procedure" on page 204-21
- "CREATE_OUTBOUND Procedure" on page 204-66

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.DROP_OUTBOUND(
   server_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 204–19 DROP_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`server_name`	The name of the outbound server being removed. Specify an existing outbound server. Do not specify an owner.

ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure

This procedure enables XStream optimizations and performance optimizations for Oracle Streams components.

This procedure is intended for users of Oracle Streams who want to enable XStream optimizations and optimizations. For example, you can enable the optimizations for an Oracle Streams replication configuration that uses capture processes and apply processes to replicate changes between Oracle databases.

These capabilities and optimizations are enabled automatically for XStream components, such as outbound servers, inbound servers, and capture processes that send changes to outbound servers. It is not necessary to run this procedure for XStream components.

When XStream optimizations are enabled, Oracle Streams components can stream ID key LCRs and sequence LCRs. The XStream performance optimizations improve efficiency in various areas, including:

- LCR processing
- Handling large transactions
- DML execution during apply
- Dependency computation and scheduling
- Capture process parallelism

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS(
   enable IN BOOLEAN  TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 204–20 ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enable	If TRUE, then enable XStream performance optimizations for Oracle Streams components. If FALSE, then disable XStream performance optimizations for Oracle Streams components.

Usage Notes

The following usage notes apply to this procedure:

- When you run this procedure, all capture processes and apply processes are restarted.
- After you run this procedure, the PURPOSE column in the following views displays XStream Streams:
  - ALL_APPLY
  - DBA_APPLY
  - ALL_CAPTURE
  - DBA_CAPTURE

- A license for the Oracle GoldenGate product is required to enable XStream performance optimizations for Oracle Streams components.

See Also:

- IS_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Function on page 204-79
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide, Chapter 1, Prerequisites for XStream"*

GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Function

Returns the tracking label for the current session.

See Also: SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure on page 204-105

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_MESSAGE_TRACKING
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_TAG Function

This function gets the binary tag for all redo entries generated by the current session.

See Also:

- "SET_TAG Procedure" on page 204-108
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG
RETURN RAW;
```

Examples

The following example illustrates how to display the current logical change record (LCR) tag as output:

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
   raw_tag RAW(2000);
BEGIN
   raw_tag := DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG();
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Tag Value = ' || RAWTOHEX(raw_tag));
END;
/
```

You can also display the value by querying the `DUAL` view:

```
SELECT DBMS_STREAMS_ADM.GET_TAG FROM DUAL;
```

IS_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Function

This function returns `TRUE` if XStream performance optimizations are enabled for Oracle Streams components, or this function returns `FALSE` if XStream performance optimizations are disabled for Oracle Streams components.

See Also: "ENABLE_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-75

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.IS_GG_XSTREAM_FOR_STREAMS
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which keeps a list of columns in a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule. The transformation deletes columns that are not in the list from the row LCR.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an XStream client. XStream clients include capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.

This procedure is overloaded. The `column_list` parameter is type `VARCHAR2` and the `column_table` parameter is type `DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY`. These parameters enable you to enter the list of columns in different ways and are mutually exclusive.

Note:

- The `KEEP_COLUMNS` procedure supports the same data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes.
- The `KEEP_COLUMNS` procedure is useful when you want to keep a relatively small number of columns in a row LCR. To keep most of the columns in a row LCR and delete a relatively small number of columns, consider using the `DELETE_COLUMN` procedure in this package.
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL rule is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations and about the data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes
- DELETE_COLUMN Procedure on page 204-71

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.KEEP_COLUMNS(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_list   IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '*',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ADD');

DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.KEEP_COLUMNS(
   rule_name     IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_table  IN  DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY,
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '*',
   step_number   IN  NUMBER DEFAULT 0,
   operation     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–21 KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rule_name	The name of the rule, specified as [*schema_name*.]*rule_name*. If NULL, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the hr schema named employees12, enter hr.employees12. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
table_name	The name of the table for which the columns are kept in the row LCR, specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
column_list	The names of the columns kept for each row LCR that satisfies the rule. Specify a comma-delimited list of type VARCHAR2. The transformation removes columns that are not in the list from the row LCR. If this parameter is set to NULL, and the column_table parameter is also set to NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
column_table	The names of the columns kept for each row LCR that satisfies the rule. Specify a PL/SQL associative array of type DBMS_UTILITY.LNAME_ARRAY, where each element is the name of a column. The first schema should be in position 1. The last position must be NULL. The transformation removes columns that are not in the table from the row LCR. If this parameter is set to NULL, and the column_list parameter is also set to NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to keep the columns in the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to keep the columns in the old values in the row LCR. Specify '*' to keep the columns in both the old and new values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the keep columns declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_list, column_table, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the KEEP_COLUMNS procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	column_list/column_table	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations wi the specified step_number for the specified ru

table_name	column_list/column_table	step_number	Result
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified column_list/column_table and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified column_list/column_table for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified table_name and column_list/column_table for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all keep columns transformations with the specified table_name, column_list/column_table, and step_number for the specified rule.

MERGE_STREAMS Procedure

This procedure merges a stream that is flowing from one capture process with a stream that is flowing from another capture process.

Typically, this procedure is used to merge two streams that were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure in this package. The SPLIT_STREAMS procedure clones components of the original stream when it splits the streams. Therefore, the information in this section uses the following terminology:

- The stream before it was split off has the original queue, original capture process, and original propagation.
- The stream that was split off by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure has a cloned queue, cloned capture process, and cloned propagation.

This procedure is called by the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure. The MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure determines whether the streams are within a user-specified merge threshold so that the streams can be merged safely. If the streams are not within the merge threshold, then the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure does nothing. Typically, it is best to run the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure instead of running the MERGE_STREAMS procedure directly.

However, you can choose to run the MERGE_STREAMS procedure directly when the following conditions are met:

- The problem at the destination of the split stream has been corrected, and the destination queue can accept changes.
- The cloned capture process used by the split stream is started and is capturing changes.
- The apply process at the destination database is applying the changes captured by the cloned capture process.
- The CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME in the GV$STREAMS_CAPTURE view of the cloned capture process has caught up to, or nearly caught up to, the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the original capture process. The cloned capture process might never completely catch up to the original capture process. Therefore, you can merge the split stream when the cloned capture process has nearly caught up to the original capture process.

The MERGE_STREAMS procedure performs the following actions:

1. Stops the cloned capture process.
2. Stops the original capture process.
3. Copies the cloned propagation back to the original propagation. The propagation has the same name as the original propagation after it is copied back.
4. Starts the original capture process from the lower SCN value of these two SCN values:
   - The acknowledged SCN of the cloned propagation.
   - The lowest acknowledged SCN of the other propagations that propagate changes captured by the original capture process.

   When the original capture process is started, it might recapture changes that it already captured, or it might capture changes that were already captured by the cloned capture process. In either case, the relevant apply processes will discard any duplicate changes they receive.

5. Drops the cloned propagation.
6. Drops the cloned capture process.
7. Drops the cloned queue.

See Also:

- MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 204-83
- SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 204-111

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.MERGE_STREAMS(
   cloned_propagation_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   propagation_name         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name               IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   perform_actions          IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–22 MERGE_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cloned_propagation_name	The name of the cloned propagation used by the stream that was split off from the original stream using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. The name of the cloned propagation also identifies the cloned queue and capture process used by the cloned propagation. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
propagation_name	The name of the propagation that is merged back to the original stream. If NULL, then the name of the original propagation in the original stream is used. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value to use a name that is different from the original propagation name or if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. If a non-NULL value is specified, then an error is raised under either of the following conditions: ■ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter does not exist. ■ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter exists but is not used by a capture process.
queue_name	The name of the queue that is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. If NULL, then the existing, original queue is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify the name of the existing queue used by the capture process that will capture changes in the merged stream.

Table 204–22 (Cont.) MERGE_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
perform_actions	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to merge the streams directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to merge the streams directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to merge the streams. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to split the stream directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure performs the actions to merge the streams directly and does not generate a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.

Usage Notes

You can use the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge two streams that were not split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Merging streams in this way can save resources and improve performance when a single database is running two or more capture processes.

The DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE view contains information about split and merge operations.

MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure

This procedure determines whether the original capture process and the cloned capture process are within the specified merge threshold. If they are within the merge threshold, then this procedure runs the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge the two streams.

Typically, this procedure is used to merge two streams that were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure in this package. The SPLIT_STREAMS procedure clones components of the original stream when it splits the streams. Therefore, the information in this section uses the following terminology:

- The stream before it was split off has the original queue, original capture process, and original propagation.
- The stream that was split off by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure has a cloned queue, cloned capture process, and cloned propagation.

If the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to a positive number in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams, then a merge job runs the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure automatically according to its schedule. The schedule name is specified for the schedule_name parameter, and the merge job name is specified for the merge_job_name parameter when the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure is run automatically. The merge job and its schedule were created by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure.

If the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to NULL or 0 (zero) in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams, then you can run the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure manually. In this case, it is not run automatically.

See Also:

- MERGE_STREAMS Procedure on page 204-83
- SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure on page 204-111
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for instructions on using the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.MERGE_STREAMS_JOB(
   cloned_propagation_name IN VARCHAR2,
   propagation_name        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   merge_threshold         IN NUMBER,
   schedule_name           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   merge_job_name          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–23 MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cloned_propagation_name	The name of the cloned propagation used by the stream that was split off from the original stream using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. The name of the cloned propagation also identifies the cloned queue and capture process used by the cloned propagation. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.

Table 204–23 (Cont.) MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
propagation_name	The name of the propagation that is merged back to the original stream. If NULL, then the name of the original propagation in the original stream is used. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value to use a name that is different from the original propagation name or if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. If a non-NULL value is specified, then an error is raised under either of the following conditions: ▪ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter does not exist. ▪ The queue specified in the queue_name parameter exists but is not used by a capture process.
queue_name	The name of the queue that is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. If NULL, then the existing, original queue is the source queue for the propagation that is merged back. Specify NULL only if the streams were split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify a non-NULL value if you are merging two streams that were not split by the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Specify the name of the existing queue used by the capture process that will capture changes in the merged stream.
merge_threshold	The merge threshold in seconds. The value of the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME column for each capture process in the GV$STREAMS_CAPTURE dynamic performance view determines whether the streams are merged. Specifically, if the difference, in seconds, between the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process and the original capture process is less than or equal to the value specified for this parameter, then this procedure runs the MERGE_STREAMS procedure to merge the streams. If the difference is greater than the value specified by this parameter, then this procedure does nothing.
schedule_name	The name of the schedule for the merge job. If NULL, then no schedule name is specified. Typically, you set this parameter to NULL when the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to NULL or 0 (zero) in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams. Specify NULL if you run this procedure manually.
merge_job_name	The name of the job that merges the streams. If NULL, then no merge job name is specified. Typically, you set this parameter to NULL when the auto_merge_threshold parameter was set to NULL or 0 (zero) in the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure that split the streams. Specify NULL if you run this procedure manually.

Usage Notes

You can use the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure to merge two streams that were not split using the SPLIT_STREAMS procedure. Merging streams in this way can save

resources and improve performance when a single database is running two or more capture processes.

After the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure completes, you can query the DBA_CAPTURE and DBA_PROPAGATION views to determine whether the streams were merged. If the streams were merged, then the cloned capture process and cloned propagation do not appear in these views.

If the streams were merged and the schedule_name and merge_job_name parameters were non-NULL, then the specified schedule and merge job are deleted automatically.

The DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE view contains information about split and merge operations.

PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG Procedure

This procedure removes all Oracle Streams data dictionary information at the local database for the specified object. You can use this procedure to remove Oracle Streams metadata that is not needed currently and will not be needed in the future.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG(
   source_database     IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_object_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_object_type  IN  VARCHAR2,
   source_root_name    IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 204–24 PURGE_SOURCE_CATALOG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	In a non-CDB, specify the global name of the source database containing the database object. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container containing the database object. The container can be the root or a PDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .NET, then the procedure specifies DBS1.NET automatically.
source_object_name	The name of the object specified as [*schema_name*.]*object_name*. For example, hr.employees. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
source_object_type	Type of the object. Currently, TABLE is the only possible object type.
source_root_name	The global name of the source root containing the object in a CDB. The source root is where the changes being captured originated in a CDB. If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends it to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. If the source_root_name parameter is NULL, then the global name of the local root is the default. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

The global name of the source database containing the object must be specified for the source_database parameter. If the current database is not the source database for the object, then the procedure removes data dictionary information about the object from the current database, not the source database.

For example, suppose changes to the hr.employees table at the dbs1.net source database are being applied to the hr.employees table at the dbs2.net destination database. Also, suppose hr.employees at dbs2.net is not a source at all. In this case, specifying dbs2.net as the source_database for this table results in an error. However, specifying dbs1.net as the source_database for this table while running the PURGE_

SOURCE_CATALOG procedure at the dbs2.net database removes data dictionary information about the table at dbs2.net.

Do not run this procedure at a database if either of the following conditions is true:

- Logical change records (LCRs) captured by the capture process for the object are or might be applied locally without reinstantiating the object.
- LCRs captured by the capture process for the object are or might be forwarded by the database without reinstantiating the object.

Note: These conditions do not apply to LCRs that were not created by the capture process. That is, these conditions do not apply to user-created LCRs.

RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure

This procedure provides options for split and merge operations that stopped because they encountered an errors. This procedure either rolls forward the operation, rolls back the operation, or purges all of the metadata about the operation. Split and merge operations might be run in an XStream Out environment in which multiple outbound servers use the same capture process.

This procedure only can perform these actions for split and merge operations using the `split_threshold` and `merge_threshold` capture process parameters set to non-`NULL` values to enable automatic split and merge.

Information about the operation is stored in the following data dictionary views when the operation is in process:

- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT`
- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS`
- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS`
- `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS`

The data dictionary views are populated at the database that contains the capture process.

When the operation completes successfully, metadata about the operation is moved from the `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT` view to the `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_HIST` view. The other views, `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_PARAMS`, `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_BLOCKS`, and `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS`, retain information about the operation until it is purged automatically after 30 days.

When one of these operations encounters an error and stops, metadata about the operation remains in these views. In this case, you can either roll forward, roll back, or purge the metadata about the operation using the `RECOVER_OPERATION` procedure. If you choose to roll forward the operation, then correct conditions that caused the errors reported in `DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_ERRORS` before proceeding.

Run the `RECOVER_OPERATION` procedure at the database that contains the capture process.

Note: To run the `RECOVER_OPERATION` procedure, both databases must be Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 or later databases.

See Also:

- "SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-111
- "MERGE_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-83
- "MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure" on page 204-86
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.RECOVER_OPERATION(
   script_id       IN  RAW,
   operation_mode  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'FORWARD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–25 RECOVER_OPERATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
script_id	The operation id of the operation that is being rolled forward, rolled back, or purged. Query the SCRIPT_ID column of the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT data dictionary view to determine the operation id.
operation_mode	If FORWARD, then the procedure rolls forward the operation. Specify FORWARD to try to complete the operation. If ROLLBACK, then the procedure rolls back all of the actions performed in the operation. If the rollback is successful, then this option also moves the metadata about the operation from the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT view to the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_HIST view. The other views retain information about the operation for 30 days. If PURGE, then the procedure moves the metadata about the operation from the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT view to the DBA_RECOVERABLE_SCRIPT_HIST view without rolling the operation back. The other views retain information about the operation for 30 days.

REMOVE_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure removes the specified ANYDATA queue.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Waits until all current enqueue and dequeue transactions commit.
2. Stops the queue, which means that no further enqueues into the queue or dequeues from the queue are allowed.
3. Drops the queue.
4. If the drop_unused_queue_table parameter is set to TRUE, then drops the queue table if it is empty and no other queues are using it.
5. If the cascade parameter is set to TRUE, then drops all of the XStream clients that are using the queue.

> **Note:** The specified queue must be a ANYDATA queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.REMOVE_QUEUE(
   queue_name                IN  VARCHAR2,
   cascade                   IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE,
   drop_unused_queue_table   IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 204–26 REMOVE_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_name	The name of the queue to remove, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
cascade	If TRUE, then the procedure drops any XStream clients that use the queue. If FALSE, then the procedure raises an error if there are any XStream clients that use the queue. Before you run this procedure with the cascade parameter set to FALSE, make sure no XStream clients are using the queue currently.
drop_unused_queue_table	If TRUE and the queue table for the queue is empty, then the procedure drops the queue table. The queue table is not dropped if it contains any messages or if it is used by another queue. If FALSE, then the procedure does not drop the queue table.

REMOVE_RULE Procedure

This procedure removes the specified rule or all rules from the rule set associated with the specified capture process, apply process, or propagation.

> **Note:** If a rule was automatically created by the system, and you want to drop the rule, then you should use this procedure to remove the rule instead of the `DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE` procedure. If you use the `DBMS_RULE_ADM.DROP_RULE` procedure, then some metadata about the rule might remain.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.REMOVE_RULE(
   rule_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   streams_type      IN  VARCHAR2,
   streams_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   drop_unused_rule  IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
   inclusion_rule    IN  BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 204–27 REMOVE_RULE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule to remove, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_name`*. If `NULL`, then the procedure removes all rules from the specified capture process, apply process, or propagation rule set. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `prop_rule1`, enter `hr.prop_rule1`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`streams_type`	The type of XStream client: ■ Specify `capture` for a capture process. ■ Specify `propagation` for a propagation. ■ Specify `apply` for an apply process.
`streams_name`	The name of the XStream client, which can be a capture process, propagation, or apply process. Do not specify an owner. If the specified XStream client does not exist, but there is metadata in the data dictionary that associates the rule with this client, then the procedure removes the metadata. If the specified XStream client does not exist, and there is no metadata in the data dictionary that associates the rule with this client, then the procedure raises an error.
`drop_unused_rule`	If `TRUE` and the rule is not in any rule set, then the procedure drops the rule from the database. If `TRUE` and the rule exists in any rule set, then the procedure does not drop the rule from the database. If `FALSE`, then the procedure does not drop the rule from the database.
`inclusion_rule`	If `inclusion_rule` is `TRUE`, then the procedure removes the rule from the positive rule set for the XStream client. If `inclusion_rule` is `FALSE`, then the procedure removes the rule from the negative rule set for the XStream client.

REMOVE_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure

This procedure removes subset rules from an outbound server configuration.

The names of the specified insert, update, and delete rules must match those generated by the ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES procedure. To view the rule names for subset rules, run the following query:

```
SELECT RULE_OWNER, SUBSETTING_OPERATION, RULE_NAME
   FROM ALL_XSTREAM_RULES
   WHERE SUBSETTING_OPERATION IS NOT NULL;
```

Note:

- This procedure removes the declarative rule-based transformation associated with each rule it removes.
- This procedure does not remove rules from the outbound server's capture process.

See Also: "ADD_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES Procedure" on page 204-35

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.REMOVE_SUBSET_OUTBOUND_RULES(
   server_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   insert_rule_name IN VARCHAR2,
   update_rule_name IN VARCHAR2,
   delete_rule_name IN VARCHAR2);
```

REMOVE_XSTREAM_CONFIGURATION Procedure

This procedure removes the XStream configuration at the local database.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.REMOVE_XSTREAM_CONFIGURATION(
   container IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–28 REMOVE_XSTREAM_CONFIGURATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
container	If CURRENT, then the XStream configuration is removed from the current container. CURRENT can be specified while connected to the root or to a PDB in a CDB. If ALL, then the XStream configuration is removed from all of the containers in the CDB. To specify ALL, the procedure must be invoked in the root. If a container name, then the XStream configuration is removed from the specified container. To specify root, use CDB$ROOT while connected to the root. To specify a PDB, the procedure must be invoked in the root. **Note:** This parameter only applies to a CDB.

Usage Notes

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions at the local database:

- Drops all capture processes
- If any tables have been prepared for instantiation, then aborts preparation for instantiation for the table using the ABORT_TABLE_INSTANTIATION procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package
- If any schemas have been prepared for instantiation, then aborts preparation for instantiation for the schema using the ABORT_SCHEMA_INSTANTIATION procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package
- If the database has been prepared for instantiation, then aborts preparation for instantiation for the database using the ABORT_GLOBAL_INSTANTIATION procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package
- Drops propagations that were created using either the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package or the DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM package. Before a propagation is dropped, its propagation job is disabled. Does not drop propagations that were created using the DBMS_AQADM package.
- Disables all propagation jobs used by propagations
- Drops all apply processes. If there are apply errors in the error queue for an apply process, then this procedure deletes these apply errors before it drops the apply process.
- Removes specifications for DDL handlers used by apply processes, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes specifications for message handlers used by apply processes, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers

- Removes specifications for precommit handlers used by apply processes, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes the instantiation SCN and ignore SCN for each apply object and schema and for the entire database
- Removes messaging clients
- Unsets message notification specifications that were set using the `SET_MESSAGE_NOTIFICATION` procedure in the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package
- Removes specifications for procedure DML handlers and error handlers, but does not delete the PL/SQL procedures used by these handlers
- Removes update conflict handlers
- Removes specifications for substitute key columns for apply tables
- Drops rule sets and rules that were created using the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package.
- Drops unused rule sets that were used by capture processes, propagations, apply processes, and messaging clients, and removes the rules in these rule sets. These rules and rule sets are removed regardless of whether they were created using the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package or the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package.

This procedure stops capture processes and apply processes before it drops them.

This procedure does not drop rule sets or rules if they meet both of the following conditions:

- The rule sets or rules were created using the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package.
- The rule sets or rules were not used by a capture process, propagation, apply process, or messaging client.

Attention: Running this procedure is dangerous. You should run this procedure only if you are sure you want to remove the entire XStream configuration at a database. If an Oracle Streams configuration exists at the database, then this procedure also removes the entire Oracle Streams configuration.

Note:

- Running this procedure repeatedly does not cause errors. If the procedure fails to complete, then you can run it again.
- This procedure commits multiple times.

RENAME_COLUMN Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a column in a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an XStream client. XStream clients include capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.

Note:

- The `RENAME_COLUMN` procedure supports the same data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes.
- Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL rule is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations and about the data types supported by Oracle Streams capture processes

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.RENAME_COLUMN(
   rule_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   table_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   from_column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_column_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   step_number       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   operation         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–29 RENAME_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_name`*. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `employees12`, enter `hr.employees12`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`table_name`	The name of the table in which the column is renamed in the row LCR, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`object_name`*. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`from_column_name`	The name of the column to be renamed in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
`to_column_name`	The new name of the column in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.

Table 204–29 (Cont.) RENAME_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	Specify 'NEW' to rename the column in the new values in the row LCR. Specify 'OLD' to rename the column in the old values in the row LCR. Specify '*' to rename the column in both the old and new values in the row LCR.
step_number	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about transformation ordering
operation	Specify 'ADD' to add the transformation to the rule. Specify 'REMOVE' to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the rename column declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the RENAME_COLUMN procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

table_name	from_column_name	to_column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified to_column_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified column_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name and column_name for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name for the specified rule.

table_name	from_column_name	to_column_name	step_number	Result
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename column transformations with the specified table_name, column_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

RENAME_SCHEMA Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a schema in a row logical change record (LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an XStream client. XStream clients include capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.

> **Note:** Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL rule is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.RENAME_SCHEMA(
   rule_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
   from_schema_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_schema_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   step_number       IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   operation         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–30 RENAME_SCHEMA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule, specified as `[`*`schema_name`*`.]`*`rule_name`*. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `employees12`, enter `hr.employees12`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`from_schema_name`	The name of the schema to be renamed in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
`to_schema_name`	The new name of the schema in each row LCR that satisfies the rule.
`step_number`	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about transformation ordering
`operation`	Specify `'ADD'` to add the transformation to the rule. Specify `'REMOVE'` to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When `'REMOVE'` is specified for the `operation` parameter, all of the rename schema declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified `from_schema_name`, `to_schema_name`, and `step_number` parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the `RENAME_SCHEMA` procedure when one or more of these parameters is `NULL`:

from_schema_name	to_schema_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified to_schema_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified to_schema_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name and to_schema_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename schema transformations with the specified from_schema_name, to_schema_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

RENAME_TABLE Procedure

This procedure either adds or removes a declarative rule-based transformation which renames a table in a row logical change record (row LCR) that satisfies the specified rule.

For the transformation to be performed when the specified rule evaluates to `TRUE`, the rule must be in the positive rule set of an XStream client. XStream clients include capture processes, propagations, and apply processes.

Note: Declarative transformations can transform row LCRs only. Therefore, a DML rule must be specified when you run this procedure. If a DDL rule is specified, then the procedure raises an error.

See Also: *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about declarative rule-based transformations

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.RENAME_TABLE(
   rule_name        IN  VARCHAR2,
   from_table_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_table_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   step_number      IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT 0,
   operation        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'ADD');
```

Parameters

Table 204–31 RENAME_TABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rule_name`	The name of the rule, specified as `[schema_name.]rule_name`. If `NULL`, then the procedure raises an error. For example, to specify a rule in the `hr` schema named `employees12`, enter `hr.employees12`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`from_table_name`	The name of the table to be renamed in each row LCR that satisfies the rule, specified as `[schema_name.]object_name`. For example, `hr.employees`. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`to_table_name`	The new name of the table in each row LCR that satisfies the rule, specified as `[schema_name.]object_name`. For example, `humres.staff`. The transformation can rename the table only, the schema only, or the table and the schema. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default.
`step_number`	The order of execution of the transformation. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide* for more information about transformation ordering
`operation`	Specify `'ADD'` to add the transformation to the rule. Specify `'REMOVE'` to remove the transformation from the rule.

Usage Notes

When 'REMOVE' is specified for the operation parameter, all of the rename table declarative rule-based transformations for the specified rule are removed that match the specified from_table_name, to_table_name, and step_number parameters. Nulls specified for these parameters act as wildcards. The following table lists the behavior of the RENAME_TABLE procedure when one or more of these parameters is NULL:

from_table_name	to_table_name	step_number	Result
NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations for the specified rule.
NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified to_table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name and step_number for the specified rule.
NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified to_table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name and to_table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	NULL	NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name for the specified rule.
non-NULL	non-NULL	non-NULL	Remove all rename table transformations with the specified from_table_name, to_table_name, and step_number for the specified rule.

SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure

Sets the tracking label for logical change records (LCRs) produced by the current session. This procedure affects only the current session. Any LCRs produced by the current session are tracked, including captured LCRs and persistent LCRs.

Note: The tracking label set by this procedure does not track non-LCR messages.

See Also: KAWGET_MESSAGE_TRACKING

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING(
   tracking_label IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Streams_tracking',
   actions        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ACTION_MEMORY);
```

Parameters

Table 204–32 SET_MESSAGE_TRACKING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tracking_label	The label used to track the LCRs produced by the session. Set this parameter to NULL to stop message tracking in the current session. The size limit for a label is 4,000 bytes.
actions	When DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ACTION_MEMORY is specified, the LCRs are tracked in memory, and the V$STREAMS_MESSAGE_TRACKING dynamic performance view is populated with information about the LCRs. Currently, DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ACTION_MEMORY is the only valid setting for this parameter. The value specified for this parameter is an enumerated constant. Enumerated constants must be prefixed with the package name.

SET_PARAMETER Procedure

This procedure sets a parameter for an outbound server, an inbound server, or an outbound server's capture process.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SET_PARAMETER(
   streams_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   streams_type    IN  VARCHAR2,
   parameter       IN  VARCHAR2,
   value           IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   no_wait         IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   source_database IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–33 SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
streams_type	The type of XStream client: ▪ Specify capture for a capture process. ▪ Specify apply for an outbound server or inbound server.
streams_name	The name of the capture process, outbound server, or inbound server. Do not specify an owner.
parameter	The name of the parameter you are setting. See "Capture Process Parameters" on page 34-42 for information about capture process parameters. See "Apply Component Parameters" on page 23-56 for information about outbound server and inbound server parameters.
value	The value to which the parameter is set. If NULL, then the parameter is set to its default value.
no_wait	If TRUE, then the parameter is set immediately. If FALSE, then the parameter is set after synchronizing with the running capture process, inbound server, or outbound server. When you modify multiple parameters for the same process consecutively, setting this parameter to TRUE speeds up each call. However, if the process is currently running, you must set this parameter to FALSE in the last to the procedure to ensure that the process uses the modified parameter values. If the no_wait parameter is set to TRUE for the last call to the procedure, the running process might not detect the parameter changes.

Table 204–33 (Cont.) SET_PARAMETER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
source_database	If CURRENT, then the parameter is set only in the container where the procedure is invoked. CURRENT can be specified while connected to the root or to a PDB. If ALL, then the parameter is set in all containers in the CDB and all PDBs created after the procedure is invoked. To specify ALL, the procedure must be invoked in the root. If a container name, then the parameter is set in the specified container. To specify root, use CDB$ROOT while connected to the root. To specify a PDB, the procedure must be invoked in the root. **Note:** This parameter only applies to CDBs. Also, a non-null value can be specified only for the following parameters: ■ include_objects capture parameter ■ excludetag capture or apply parameter ■ excludetrans capture or apply parameter ■ excludeuser capture or apply parameter ■ excludeuserid capture or apply parameter ■ getreplicates capture or apply parameter ■ getapplops capture or apply parameter

SET_TAG Procedure

This procedure sets the binary tag for all redo entries subsequently generated by the current session. Each redo entry generated by DML or DDL statements in the current session will have this tag. This procedure affects only the current session.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SET_TAG(
   tag  IN RAW  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–34 SET_TAG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
tag	The binary tag for all subsequent redo entries generated by the current session. A raw value is a sequence of bytes, and a byte is a sequence of bits. By default, the tag for a session is NULL. The size limit for a tag value is 2000 bytes.

Usage Notes

To set the tag to the hexadecimal value of '17' in the current session, run the following procedure:

```
EXEC DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SET_TAG(tag => HEXTORAW('17'));
```

The following are considerations for the SET_TAG procedure:

- This procedure is not transactional. That is, the effects of SET_TAG cannot be rolled back.
- If the SET_TAG procedure is run to set a non-NULL session tag before a data dictionary build has been performed on the database, then the redo entries for a transaction that started before the dictionary build might not include the specified tag value for the session. Therefore, perform a data dictionary build before using the SET_TAG procedure in a session. A data dictionary build happens when the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure is run. The BUILD procedure can be run automatically when a capture process is created.

> **See Also:** BUILD Procedure on page 34-18

SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure

This procedure creates a queue table and a ANYDATA queue.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SET_UP_QUEUE(
   queue_table     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue_table',
   storage_clause  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   queue_name      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'streams_queue',
   queue_user      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   comment         IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 204–35 SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_table	The name of the queue table specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_table_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue_table. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If the queue table owner is not specified, then the procedure specifies the user who runs this procedure automatically as the queue table owner. Queue table names can be a maximum of 24 bytes.
storage_clause	The storage clause for queue table The storage parameter is included in the CREATE TABLE statement when the queue table is created. You can specify any valid table storage clause. If a tablespace is not specified here, then the procedure creates the queue table and all its related objects in the default user tablespace of the user who runs this procedure. If a tablespace is specified here, then the procedure creates the queue table and all its related objects in the tablespace specified in the storage clause. If NULL, then the procedure uses the storage characteristics of the tablespace in which the queue table is created. **See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about storage clauses
queue_name	The name of the queue that will function as the ANYDATA queue, specified as [*schema_name.*]*queue_name*. For example, strmadmin.streams_queue. If the schema is not specified, then the procedure uses the queue table owner. The owner of the queue table must also be the owner of the queue. The queue owner automatically has privileges to perform all queue operations on the queue. If the schema is not specified for this parameter, and the queue table owner is not specified in queue_table, then the current user is the default. Queue names can be a maximum of 24 bytes.

Table 204–35 (Cont.) SET_UP_QUEUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
queue_user	The name of the user who requires ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges for the queue. This user also is configured as a secure queue user of the queue. The queue user cannot grant these privileges to other users because they are not granted with the GRANT option. If NULL, then the procedure does not grant any privileges. You can also grant queue privileges to the appropriate users using the DBMS_AQADM package.
comment	The comment for the queue

Usage Notes

Set up includes the following actions:

- If the specified queue table does not exist, then this procedure runs the CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE procedure in the DBMS_AQADM package to create the queue table with the specified storage clause. If this procedure creates the queue table, then it creates a multiple consumer ANYDATA queue that is both a secure queue and a transactional queue.

  Also, if the database is Oracle Database 10*g* release 2 or later, the sort_list setting in CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE is set to commit_time. If the database is a release before Oracle Database 10*g* release 2, the sort_list setting in CREATE_QUEUE_TABLE is set to enq_time.
- If the specified queue table exists, then the queue uses the properties of the existing queue table.
- If the specified queue name does not exist, then this procedure runs the CREATE_QUEUE procedure in the DBMS_AQADM package to create the queue.
- This procedure starts the queue.
- If a queue user is specified, then this procedure configures this user as a secure queue user of the queue and grants ENQUEUE and DEQUEUE privileges on the queue to the specified queue user.

  To configure the queue user as a secure queue user, this procedure creates an Advanced Queuing agent with the same name as the user name, if one does not exist. If an agent with this name exists and is associated with the queue user only, then it is used. SET_UP_QUEUE then runs the ENABLE_DB_ACCESS procedure in the DBMS_AQADM package, specifying the agent and the user.

Note: If the agent that SET_UP_QUEUE tries to create exists and is associated with a user other than the user specified by queue_user, then the procedure raises an error. In this case, rename or remove the existing agent, and retry SET_UP_QUEUE.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about secure queue users

SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure

This procedure splits one stream flowing from a capture process off from all of the other streams flowing from the capture process.

This procedure is intended for an Oracle Streams replication environment in which a capture process captures changes that are propagated to two or more destination databases. When one destination of a propagation stops accepting the captured changes, the changes remain in the capture process's queue. The queue can grow and begin to spill LCRs to the hard disk, degrading the performance of the Oracle Streams environment. A destination might stop accepting changes for several reasons. For example, the destination database might be down.

Specifically, this procedure performs the following actions:

1. Creates a new queue at the database running the capture process. The new queue is called the cloned queue because it is a clone of the queue used by the original stream. The new queue will be used by the new, cloned capture process, and it will be the source queue for the new, cloned propagation.
2. Creates a new propagation that propagates LCRs from the source queue created in Step 1 to the existing destination queue. The new propagation is called the cloned propagation because it is a clone of the propagation used by the original stream. The cloned propagation uses the same rule set as the original propagation.
3. Stops the capture process.
4. Queries the acknowledge SCN for the original propagation. The acknowledged SCN is the last SCN acknowledged by the apply process that applies the changes sent by the propagation.
5. Creates a new capture process. The new capture process is called the cloned capture process because it is a clone of the capture process used by the original stream. The procedure sets the start SCN for the cloned capture process to the value of the acknowledged SCN queried in Step 4. The cloned capture process uses the same rule set as the original capture process.
6. Drops the original propagation.
7. Starts the original capture process with the start SCN set to the acknowledged SCN queried in Step 4.
8. If the `auto_merge_threshold` parameter is set to a positive number, then creates an Oracle Scheduler job to run the `MERGE_STREAMS_JOB` procedure at set intervals according to its schedule. When the two streams are within the specified merge threshold, the `MERGE_STREAMS_JOB` procedure runs the `MERGE_STREAMS` procedure to merge the streams automatically.

After the `SPLIT_STREAMS` procedure has finished running, the cloned capture process is disabled. When the problem at the destination database is solved, and the destination queue can accept changes, you should start the cloned capture process using the `START_CAPTURE` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package.

The `DBA_STREAMS_SPLIT_MERGE` view contains the name of each cloned component and information about the split and merge operation.

Note: If the original capture process is a downstream capture process, then you must configure the cloned capture process to read the redo log from the source database before you start the cloned capture process.

See Also:

- "MERGE_STREAMS Procedure" on page 204-83
- "MERGE_STREAMS_JOB Procedure" on page 159-133
- *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for instructions on using the `SPLIT_STREAMS` procedure

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SPLIT_STREAMS(
   propagation_name         IN      VARCHAR2,
   cloned_propagation_name  IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   cloned_queue_name        IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   cloned_capture_name      IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   perform_actions          IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   script_name              IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   script_directory_object  IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   auto_merge_threshold     IN      NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   schedule_name            IN OUT  VARCHAR2,
   merge_job_name           IN OUT  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 204–36 SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`propagation_name`	The name of the propagation that cannot send LCRs to its destination queue. The specified propagation is the propagation for the stream that is being split off from the other streams. You must specify an existing propagation name. Do not specify an owner.
`cloned_propagation_name`	The name of the new propagation created by this procedure for the stream that is split off. If `NULL`, then the system generates a propagation name.
`cloned_queue_name`	The name of the new queue created by this procedure for the stream that is split off. If `NULL`, then the system generates a queue name.
`cloned_capture_name`	The name of the new capture process created by this procedure for the stream that is split off. If `NULL`, then the system generates a capture process name.

Table 204–36 (Cont.) SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
perform_actions	If TRUE, then the procedure performs the necessary actions to split the stream directly. If FALSE, then the procedure does not perform the necessary actions to split the stream directly. Specify FALSE when this procedure is generating a script that you can edit and then run. The procedure raises an error if you specify FALSE and either of the following parameters is NULL: ■ script_name ■ script_directory_object
script_name	If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then specify the name of the script generated by this procedure. The script contains all of the statements used to split the stream. If a file with the specified script name exists in the specified directory for the script_directory_object parameter, then the procedure appends the statements to the existing file. If non-NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure generates the specified script and performs the actions to split the stream directly. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is TRUE, then the procedure performs the actions to split the stream directly and does not generate a script. If NULL and the perform_actions parameter is FALSE, then the procedure raises an error.
script_directory_object	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated script is placed. If the script_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure ignores this parameter and does not generate a script. If NULL and the script_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error. **Note:** The specified directory object cannot point to an Oracle Automatic Storage Management (ASM) disk group.

Table 204–36 (Cont.) SPLIT_STREAMS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
auto_merge_threshold	If a positive number is specified, then the stream that was split off is automatically merged back into all of the other streams flowing from the capture process by an Oracle Scheduler job. The job runs the MERGE_STREAMS_JOB procedure at set intervals according to its schedule. The value of the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME column for each capture process in the GV$STREAMS_CAPTURE dynamic performance view determines when the streams are merged. Specifically, if the difference, in seconds, between CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process and the original capture process is less than or equal to the value specified for the auto_merge_threshold parameter, then the two streams are merged automatically. The cloned capture process must be started before the split stream can be merged back with the original stream. If NULL or 0 (zero) is specified, then the split stream is not merged back with the original stream automatically. To merge the split stream with the original stream, run the MERGE_STREAM procedure manually when the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the cloned capture process catches up to, or nearly catches up to, the CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME of the original capture process. The CAPTURE_MESSAGE_CREATE_TIME records the time when a captured change was recorded in the redo log.
schedule_name	The Oracle Scheduler schedule name, specified as [*schema_name*.]*schedule_name*. For example, strmadmin.merge_schedule. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the schedule is used by the job that will automatically merge the streams at the appropriate time. You can specify a schedule name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the schedule more easily. If NULL and auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the system generates a schedule name. If auto_merge_threshold is NULL or 0 (zero), then this parameter must be NULL. If this procedure creates a schedule, the schedule starts when the procedure completes. You can modify the schedule to control how often the merge job is run. If an existing schedule name is specified, an error is raised.
merge_job_name	The Oracle Scheduler job name, specified as [*schema_name*.]*merge_job_name*. For example, strmadmin.merge_job. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. If auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the job will automatically merge the streams at the appropriate time. Specify a merge job name to adhere to naming conventions or to track the job more easily. If NULL and auto_merge_threshold is a non-NULL positive number, then the system generates a job name. If auto_merge_threshold is NULL or 0 (zero), then this parameter must be NULL. If an existing job name is specified, an error is raised.

See Also: *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about Oracle Scheduler

START_OUTBOUND Procedure

This procedure starts an XStream outbound server. The outbound server streams out the LCRs to an XStream client application.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.START_OUTBOUND(
   server_name      IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 204–37 START_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
server_name	The name of the outbound server being started. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner.

STOP_OUTBOUND Procedure

This procedure stops an XStream outbound server. The outbound server streams out the LCRs to an XStream client application.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.STOP_OUTBOUND(
   server_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   force        IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 204–38 STOP_OUTBOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
server_name	The name of the outbound server being stopped. A NULL specification is not allowed. Do not specify an owner.
force	If TRUE, then the procedure stops the outbound server and its capture process as soon as possible. If FALSE, then the procedure stops the outbound server after ensuring that there are no gaps in the set of applied transactions. The behavior of the apply component depends on the setting specified for the force parameter and the setting specified for the commit_serialization apply component parameter.

205

DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH

The `DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH` package provides subprograms for granting privileges to and revoking privileges from XStream administrators.

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Using DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH
  - Overview
  - Security Model
- Summary of DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH Subprograms

See Also: GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6

Using DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH

This section contains topics which relate to using the `DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH` package.

Overview

This package provides subprograms for granting privileges to XStream administrators and revoking privileges from XStream administrators.

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, connect as an administrative user who can create users, grant privileges, and create tablespaces when using this package.

Summary of DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH Subprograms

Table 205–1 DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-6	Either grants the privileges needed by a user to be an XStream administrator directly, or generates a script that grants these privileges
GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure on page 205-10	Enables a remote XStream administrator to perform administrative actions at the local database by connecting to the grantee using a database link
REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure on page 205-11	Either revokes XStream administrator privileges from a user directly, or generates a script that revokes these privileges
REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure on page 205-14	Disables a remote XStream administrator from performing administrative actions by connecting to the grantee using a database link

Note: All subprograms commit unless specified otherwise.

GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure either grants the privileges needed by a user to be an XStream administrator directly, or generates a script that grants these privileges.

See Also: "GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure" on page 205-6

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE(
   grantee                     IN  VARCHAR2,
   privilege_type              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   grant_select_privileges     IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   do_grants                   IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   file_name                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   directory_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL
   grant_optional_privileges   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameters

Table 205–2 GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user to whom privileges are granted
privilege_type	Specify one of the following values: ■ CAPTURE Specifying CAPTURE grants the minimum privileges required by the user to administer capture processes. ■ APPLY Specifying APPLY grants the minimum privileges required by the user to administer outbound servers, inbound servers, and apply processes. ■ * Specifying * grants the minimum privileges required by the user to administer capture processes, outbound servers, inbound servers, and apply processes.
grant_select_privileges	If TRUE, then the procedure grants a set of privileges, including SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE, to the user. If FALSE, then the procedure does not grant the set of privileges to the user. SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE enables the user to select from the data dictionary. Set this parameter to TRUE for the XStream trusted user model. Set this parameter to FALSE for the XStream untrusted user model.

Table 205–2 (Cont.) GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
do_grants	If TRUE, then the procedure grants the privileges to the specified grantee directly, and adds the grantee to the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view with YES for both the LOCAL_PRIVILEGES column and the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column. If the user already has an entry in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not make another entry, and no error is raised. If TRUE and any of the grant statements fails, then the procedure raises an error. If FALSE, then the procedure does not grant the privileges to the specified grantee directly, and does not add the grantee to the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. You specify FALSE when the procedure is generating a file that you will run later. If you specify FALSE and either the file_name or directory_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
file_name	The name of the file generated by the procedure. The file contains all of the statements that grant the privileges. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory name, then the grant statements are appended to the existing file. If NULL, then the procedure does not generate a file.
directory_name	The directory into which the generated file is placed. The specified directory must be a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. If you specify a directory, then the user who invokes the procedure must have the WRITE privilege on the directory object. If the file_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the procedure does not generate a file. If NULL and the file_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
grant_optional_privileges	A comma-separated list of optional privileges to grant to the grantee, such as the DV_XSTREAM_ADMIN and DV_GOLDENGATE_ADMIN privileges
container	If CURRENT, then grants privileges to the grantee only in the container where the procedure is invoked. CURRENT can be specified while connected to the root or to a PDB. If ALL, then grants privileges to the grantee in all containers in the CDB and all PDBs created after the procedure is invoked. To specify ALL, the procedure must be invoked in the root. If a container name, then grants privileges to the grantee only in the specified container. To specify root, use CDB$ROOT while connected to the root. To specify a PDB, the procedure must be invoked in the root. **Note:** This parameter only applies to CDBs.

Usage Notes

The user who runs the procedure must be an administrative user who can grant privileges to other users.

Specifically, the procedure grants the following privileges to the specified user:

- The RESTRICTED SESSION system privilege
- EXECUTE on the following packages:
  - DBMS_APPLY_ADM
  - DBMS_AQ

  - DBMS_AQADM
  - DBMS_AQIN
  - DBMS_AQELM
  - DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM
  - DBMS_FLASHBACK
  - DBMS_LOCK
  - DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM
  - DBMS_RULE_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_ADVISOR_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_HANDLER_ADM
  - DBMS_STREAMS_MESSAGING
  - DBMS_TRANSFORM
  - DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM
- Privileges to enqueue messages into and dequeue messages from any queue
- Privileges to manage any queue
- Privileges to create, alter, and execute any of the following types of objects in the user's own schema and in other schemas:
  - Evaluation contexts
  - Rule sets
  - Rules

  In addition, the grantee can grant these privileges to other users.
- SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE
- SELECT or READ privilege on data dictionary views related to XStream and Oracle Streams
- The ability to allow a remote XStream administrator to perform administrative actions through a database link by connecting to the grantee

  This ability is enabled by running the GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS procedure in this package.

Note:

- To view all of the statements run by the procedure in detail, you can use the procedure to generate a script and then view the script in a text editor.
- This procedure grants only the privileges necessary to configure and administer an XStream environment. You can grant additional privileges to the grantee if necessary.

See Also:

- "GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure" on page 205-10
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the `CREATE DIRECTORY` SQL statement

GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure

This procedure enables a remote XStream administrator to perform administrative actions at the local database by connecting to the grantee using a database link.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH.GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS(
   grantee  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 205–3 GRANT_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user who allows remote access. The procedure adds the grantee to the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view with YES for the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column. If the user already has an entry in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not make another entry. Instead, it updates the ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE column to YES.

Usage Notes

Typically, you run the procedure and specify a grantee at a local source database if a downstream capture process captures changes originating at the local source database. The XStream administrator at a downstream capture database administers the source database using this connection.

Note: The GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure in this package runs this procedure.

See Also: "GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure" on page 205-6

REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure

This procedure either revokes XStream administrator privileges from a user directly, or generates a script that revokes these privileges.

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH.REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE(
   grantee                     IN  VARCHAR2,
   privilege_type              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*',
   revoke_select_privileges    IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   do_revokes                  IN  BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   file_name                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   directory_name              IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL
   revoke_optional_privileges  IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   container                   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'CURRENT');
```

Parameters

Table 205–4 REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
grantee	The user from whom privileges are revoked
privilege_type	Specify one of the following values: ■ CAPTURE Specifying CAPTURE revokes the minimum privileges required by the user to administer capture processes. ■ APPLY Specifying APPLY revokes the minimum privileges required by the user to administer outbound servers, inbound servers, and apply processes. ■ * Specifying * revokes the minimum privileges required by the user to administer capture processes, outbound servers, inbound servers, and apply processes.
revoke_select_ privileges	If TRUE, then the procedure revokes a set of privileges, including SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE, to the user. If FALSE, then the procedure does not revoke the set of privileges to the user. SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE enables the user to select from the data dictionary.

Table 205–4 (Cont.) REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
do_revokes	If TRUE, then the procedure revokes the privileges from the specified user directly, and removes the user from the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. If the user does not have a record in this data dictionary view, then the procedure does not remove a record from the view, and no error is raised. If TRUE and any of the revoke statements fails, then the procedure raises an error. A revoke statement fails if the user is not granted the privilege that is being revoked. If FALSE, then the procedure does not revoke the privileges from the specified user directly, and does not remove the user from the DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR data dictionary view. You specify FALSE when the procedure is generating a file that you will run later. If you specify FALSE and either the file_name or directory_name parameter is NULL, then the procedure does not raise an error.
file_name	The name of the file generated by this procedure. The file contains all of the statements that revoke the privileges. If a file with the specified file name exists in the specified directory name, then the revoke statements are appended to the existing file. If NULL, then the procedure does not generate a file.
directory_name	The directory into which the generated file is placed. The specified directory must be a directory object created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY. If you specify a directory, then the user who invokes the procedure must have the WRITE privilege on the directory object. If the file_name parameter is NULL, then this parameter is ignored, and the procedure does not generate a file. If NULL and the file_name parameter is non-NULL, then the procedure raises an error.
revoke_optional_privileges	A comma-separated list of optional privileges to revoke from the grantee, such as the DV_XSTREAM_ADMIN and DV_GOLDENGATE_ADMIN privileges
container	If CURRENT, then revokes privileges from the grantee only in the container where the procedure is invoked. CURRENT can be specified while connected to the root or to a PDB. If ALL, then revokes privileges from the grantee in all containers in the CDB. To specify ALL, the procedure must be invoked in the root. If a container name, then revokes privileges from the grantee only in the specified container. To specify root, use CDB$ROOT while connected to the root. To specify a PDB, the procedure must be invoked in the root. **Note:** This parameter only applies to CDBs.

Usage Notes

The user who runs this procedure must be an administrative user who can revoke privileges from other users. Specifically, this procedure revokes the privileges granted by running the GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure in this package.

> **Note:** To view all of the statements run by this procedure in detail, you can use the procedure to generate a script and then view the script in a text editor.

See Also:

- "GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure" on page 205-6
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the `CREATE DIRECTORY` SQL statement

REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure

This procedure disables a remote XStream administrator from performing administrative actions by connecting to the grantee using a database link.

Note: The `REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE` procedure in this package runs this procedure.

See Also: "REVOKE_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE Procedure" on page 205-11

Syntax

```
DBMS_XSTREAM_AUTH.REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS(
   grantee  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 205–5 REVOKE_REMOTE_ADMIN_ACCESS Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`grantee`	The user for whom access from a remote XStream administrator is disabled. If a row for the grantee exists in the `DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR` data dictionary view, then the procedure updates the `ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE` column for the grantee to `NO`. If, after this update, both the `LOCAL_PRIVILEGES` column and the `ACCESS_FROM_REMOTE` column are `NO` for the grantee, then the procedure removes the grantee from the view. If no row for the grantee exists in the `DBA_XSTREAM_ADMINISTRATOR` data dictionary view, then the procedure does not update the view and does not raise an error.

206

DEBUG_EXTPROC

The DEBUG_EXTPROC package enables you to start up the extproc agent within a session. This utility package can help you debug external procedures.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using DEBUG_EXTPROC

Security Model

Your Oracle account must have `EXECUTE` privileges on the package and `CREATE LIBRARY` privileges.

Operational Notes

To install the package, run the script DBGEXTP.SQL.

- Install/load this package in the Oracle USER where you want to debug the 'extproc' process.
- Ensure that you have execute privileges on package DEBUG_EXTPROC

```
SELECT SUBSTR(OBJECT_NAME, 1, 20)
FROM USER_OBJECTS
WHERE OBJECT_NAME = 'DEBUG_EXTPROC';
```

- You can install this package as any other user, as long as you have EXECUTE privileges on the package.

> **Note:** These notes assumes that you built your shared library with debug symbols to aid in the debugging process. Please check the C compiler manual pages for the appropriate C compiler switches to build the shared library with debug symbols.

Having installed the package, proceed accordingly:

- Start a new Oracle session through SQL*Plus or OCI program by connecting to ORACLE.
- Execute procedure DEBUG_EXTPROC.STARTUP_EXTPROC_AGENT to startup the extproc agent in this session; for example, execute DEBUG_EXTPROC.STARTUP_EXTPROC_AGENT; Do not exit this session, because that terminates the extproc agent.
- Determine the PID of the extproc agent that was started up for this session.
- Using a debugger (for example, gdb, dbx, or the native system debugger), load the extproc executable and attach to the running process.
- Set a breakpoint on function 'pextproc' and let the debugger continue with its execution.
- Now execute your external procedure in the same session where you first executed DEBUG_EXTPROC.STARTUP_EXTPROC_AGENT
- Your debugger should now break in function 'pextproc'. At this point in time, the shared library referenced by your PL/SQL external function would have been loaded and the function resolved. Now set a breakpoint in your C function and let the debugger continue its execution.

Because PL/SQL loads the shared library at runtime, the debugger you use may or may not automatically be able to track the new symbols from the shared library. You may have to issue some debugger command to load the symbols (for example, 'share' in gdb)

- The debugger should now break in your C function. Its assumed that you had built the shared library with debugging symbols.
- Now proceed with your debugging.

Rules and Limits

Note: `DEBUG_EXTPROC` works only on platforms with debuggers that can attach to a running process.

Summary of DEBUG_EXTPROC Subprograms

Table 206–1 DEBUG_EXTPROC Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
STARTUP_EXTPROC_AGENT Procedure on page 206-7	Starts up the extproc agent process in the session

STARTUP_EXTPROC_AGENT Procedure

This procedure starts up the extproc agent process in the session.This enables you to get the PID of the executing process. This PID is needed to be able to attach to the running process using a debugger.

Syntax

```
DEBUG_EXTPROC.STARTUP_EXTPROC_AGENT;
```

207

HTF

The HTF (hypertext functions) and HTP (hypertext procedures) packages generate HTML tags. For example, the HTF.ANCHOR function generates the HTML anchor tag, <A>.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using HTF

Deprecated Subprograms

> **Note:** Oracle recommends that you do not use deprecated procedures in new applications. Support for deprecated features is for backward compatibility only.

The following subprogram is deprecated with Oracle Database 10*g*:

- ESCAPE_URL Function

Operational Notes

For every HTF function that generates one or more HTML tags, there is a corresponding HTP procedure with identical parameters with the following exception:

- The PRINTS Procedure and the PS Procedure do not have HTF function equivalents. Use the ESCAPE_SC Function or the ESCAPE_URL Function if you need a string conversion function. Note that while there is a ESCAPE_SC Procedure that performs the same operation as the PRINTS Procedure and the PS Procedure, there is no procedural equivalent for the ESCAPE_URL Function.
- The FORMAT_CELL Function does not have an HTP equivalent. The function formats column values inside an HTML table using TABLEDATA Function which does have an HTP equivalent in the TABLEDATA Procedure. The advantage of this using the FORMAT_CELL Function is that it allows for better control over the HTML tables.

The function versions do not directly generate output in your Web page. Instead, they pass their output as return values to the statements that invoked them. Use these functions when you need to nest calls. To print the output of HTF functions, call the functions from within the HTF.`PRINT` function. It then prints its parameters to the generated Web page.

Rules and Limits

If you use values of the LONG datatype in functions such as `HTF.PRINT`, `HTF.PRN`, `HTF.PA` or `OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT`, only the first 32 K of the `LONG` data is used. The `LONG` data is bound to a `VARCHAR2` datatype in the function.

Examples

The following commands generate a simple HTML document:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE hello AS
BEGIN
   HTP.P (HTF.HTMLOPEN); -- generates <HTML>
   HTP.P (HTF.HEADOPEN); -- generates <HEAD>
   HTP.P (HTF.TITLE('Hello')); -- generates <TITLE>Hello</TITLE>
   HTP.P (HTF.HEADCLOSE); -- generates </HEAD>
   HTP.P (HTF.BODYOPEN); -- generates <BODY>
   HTP.P (HTF.HEADER(1, 'Hello')); -- generates <H1>Hello</H1>
   HTP.P (HTF.BODYCLOSE); -- generates </BODY>
   HTP.P (HTF.HTMLCLOSE); -- generates </HTML>
END;
```

Summary of Tags

HTML, HEAD, and BODY Tags

HTMLOPEN Function, HTMLCLOSE Function - generate <HTML> and </HTML>

HEADOPEN Function, HEADCLOSE Function - generate <HEAD> and </HEAD>

BODYOPEN Function, BODYCLOSE Function - generate <BODY> and </BODY>

Comment Tag

COMMENT Function - generates <!-- and -->

http://www.w3.org.BASE Function - generates <BASE>

LINKREL Function - generates <LINK> with the REL attribute

LINKREV Function - generates <LINK> with the REV attribute

TITLE Function - generates <TITLE>

META Function - generates <META>

SCRIPT Function - generates <SCRIPT>

STYLE Function - generates <STYLE>

ISINDEX Function - generates <ISINDEX>

Applet Tags

APPLETOPEN Function, APPLETCLOSE Function - generate <APPLET> and </APPLET>

PARAM Function - generates <PARAM>

List Tags

OLISTOPEN Function, OLISTCLOSE Function - generate <OL> and </OL>

ULISTOPEN Function, ULISTCLOSE Function - generate <UL> and </UL>

DLISTOPEN Function, DLISTCLOSE Function- generate <DL> and </DL>

DLISTTERM Function - generates <DT>

DLISTDEF Function - generates <DD>

DIRLISTOPEN Function, DIRLISTCLOSE Function - generate <DIR> and </DIR>

LISTHEADER Function - generates <LH>

LISTINGOPEN Function, LISTINGCLOSE Function - generate <LISTING> and </LISTING>

MENULISTOPEN Function - generate <MENU> and </MENU>

LISTITEM Function - generates <LI>

Form Tags

FORMOPEN Function, FORMCLOSE Function - generate <FORM> and </FORM>

FORMCHECKBOX Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="CHECKBOX">

FORMHIDDEN Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="HIDDEN">

FORMIMAGE Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="IMAGE">

FORMPASSWORD Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="PASSWORD">

FORMRADIO Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="RADIO">

FORMSELECTOPEN Function, FORMSELECTCLOSE Function - generate <SELECT> and </SELECT>

FORMSELECTOPTION Function - generates <OPTION>

FORMTEXT Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="TEXT">

FORMTEXTAREA Function - generate <TEXTAREA>

FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Function, FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Function - generate <TEXTAREA> and </TEXTAREA>

FORMRESET Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="RESET">

FORMSUBMIT Function - generates <INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT">

Table Tags

TABLEOPEN Function, TABLECLOSE Function - generate <TABLE> and </TABLE>

TABLECAPTION Function - generates <CAPTION>

TABLEROWOPEN Function, TABLEROWCLOSE Function - generate <TR> and </TR>

TABLEHEADER Function - generates <TH>

TABLEDATA Function - generates <TD>

IMG, HR, and A Tags

HR Function, LINE Function - generate <HR>

IMG Function, IMG2 Function - generate <IMG>

ANCHOR Function, ANCHOR2 Function - generate <A>

MAPOPEN Function, MAPCLOSE Function - generate <MAP> and </MAP>

Paragraph Formatting Tags

HEADER Function - generates heading tags (<H1> to <H6>)

PARA Function, PARAGRAPH Function - generate <P>

PRN Functions, PRINT Functions - generate any text that is passed in

PRN Functions, S Function - generate any text that is passed in; special characters in HTML are escaped

PREOPEN Function, PRECLOSE Function - generate <PRE> and </PRE>

BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Function, BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Function - generate <BLOCKQUOTE> and </BLOCKQUOTE>

DIV Function - generates <DIV>

NL Function, BR Function - generate

NOBR Function - generates <NOBR>

WBR Function - generates <WBR>

PLAINTEXT Function - generates <PLAINTEXT>

ADDRESS Function - generates <ADDRESS>

MAILTO Function - generates <A> with the MAILTO attribute

AREA Function - generates <AREA>

BGSOUND Function - generates <BGSOUND>

Character Formatting Tags

BASEFONT Function - generates <BASEFONT>

BIG Function - generates <BIG>

BOLD Function - generates <B>

CENTER Function - generates <CENTER> and </CENTER>

CENTEROPEN Function, CENTERCLOSE Function - generate <CENTER> and </CENTER>

CITE Function - generates <CITE>

CODE Function - generates <CODE>

DFN Function - generates <DFN>

EM Function, EMPHASIS Function - generate <EM>

FONTOPEN Function, FONTCLOSE Function - generate <FONT> and </FONT>

ITALIC Function - generates <I>

KBD Function, KEYBOARD Function - generate <KBD> and </KBD>

S Function - generates <S>

SAMPLE Function - generates <SAMP>

SMALL Function - generates <SMALL>

STRIKE Function - generates <STRIKE>

STRONG Function - generates <STRONG>

SUB Function - generates <SUB>

SUP Function - generates <SUP>

TELETYPE Function - generates <TT>

UNDERLINE Function - generates <U>

VARIABLE Function - generates <VAR>

Frame Tags

FRAME Function - generates <FRAME>

FRAMESETOPEN Function, FRAMESETCLOSE Function - generate <FRAMESET> and </FRAMESET>

NOFRAMESOPEN Function, NOFRAMESCLOSE Function - generate <NOFRAMES> and </NOFRAMES>

Summary of HTF Subprograms

Table 207–1 HTF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADDRESS Function on page 207-16	Generates the <ADDRESS> and </ADDRESS> tags which specify the address, author and signature of a document
ANCHOR Function on page 207-17	Generates the <A> and </A> tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link
ANCHOR2 Function on page 207-18	Generates the <A> and </A> tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link
APPLETCLOSE Function on page 207-19	Closes the applet invocation with the </APPLET> tag
APPLETOPEN Function on page 207-20	Generates the <APPLET> tag which begins the invocation of a Java applet
AREA Function on page 207-21	Generates the <AREA> tag, which defines a client-side image map
BASE Function on page 207-22	Generates the <BASE> tag which records the URL of the document
BASEFONT Function on page 207-23	Generates the <BASEFONT> tag which specifies the base font size for a Web page
BGSOUND Function on page 207-24	Generates the <BGSOUND> tag which includes audio for a Web page
BIG Function on page 207-25	Generates the <BIG> and </BIG> tags which direct the browser to render the text in a bigger font
BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Function on page 207-26	Generates the </BLOCKQUOTE> tag which mark the end of a section of quoted text
BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Function on page 207-27	Generates the <BLOCKQUOTE> tag, which marks the beginning of a section of quoted text
BODYCLOSE Function on page 207-28	Generates the </BODY> tag which marks the end of a body section of an HTML document
BODYOPEN Function on page 207-29	Generates the <BODY> tag which marks the beginning of the body section of an HTML document
BOLD Function on page 207-30	Generates the <B> and </B> tags which direct the browser to display the text in boldface
BR Function on page 207-31	Generates the tag which begins a new line of text
CENTER Function on page 207-32	Generates the <CENTER> and </CENTER> tags which center a section of text within a Web page
CENTERCLOSE Function on page 207-33	Generates the </CENTER> tag which marks the end of a section of text to center
CENTEROPEN Function on page 207-34	Generates the <CENTER> tag which mark the beginning of a section of text to center
CITE Function on page 207-35	Generates the <CITE> and </CITE> tags which direct the browser to render the text as a citation
CODE Function on page 207-36	Generates the <CODE> and </CODE> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font or however "code" is defined stylistically

Table 207–1 (Cont.) HTF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
COMMENT Function on page 207-37	Generates the comment tags <!-- ctext -->
DFN Function on page 207-38	Generates the <DFN> and </DFN> tags which direct the browser to mark the text as italics or however "definition" is defined stylistically
DIRLISTCLOSE Function on page 207-39	Generates the </DIR> tag which ends a directory list section
DIRLISTOPEN Function on page 207-40	Generates the <DIR> which starts a directory list section
DIV Function on page 207-41	Generates the <DIV> tag which creates document divisions
DLISTCLOSE Function on page 207-42	Generates the </DL> tag which ends a definition list
DLISTDEF Function on page 207-43	Generates the <DD> tag, which inserts definitions of terms
DLISTOPEN Function on page 207-44	Generates the <DL> tag which starts a definition list
DLISTTERM Function on page 207-45	Generates the <DT> tag which defines a term in a definition list <DL>
EM Function on page 207-46	Generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized
EMPHASIS Function on page 207-47	Generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized
ESCAPE_SC Function on page 207-48	Replaces characters that have special meaning in HTML with their escape sequences
ESCAPE_URL Function on page 207-49	Replaces characters that have special meaning in HTML and HTTP with their escape sequences
FONTCLOSE Function on page 207-51	Generates the </FONT> tag which marks the end of a section of text with the specified font characteristics
FONTOPEN Function on page 207-51	Generates the <FONT> which marks the beginning of section of text with the specified font characteristics
FORMAT_CELL Function on page 207-52	formats column values inside an HTML table using the TABLEDATA Function
FORMCHECKBOX Function on page 207-53	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="checkbox" which inserts a checkbox element in a form
FORMCLOSE Function on page 207-54	Generates the </FORM> tag which marks the end of a form section in an HTML document
FORMFILE Function on page 207-55	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="file" which inserts a file form element, and is used for file uploading for a given page
FORMHIDDEN Function on page 207-56	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="hidden"which inserts a hidden form element
FORMIMAGE Function on page 207-57	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="image" which creates an image field that the user clicks to submit the form immediately
FORMOPEN Function on page 207-58	Generates the <FORM> tag which marks the beginning of a form section in an HTML document

Table 207–1 (Cont.) HTF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FORMPASSWORD Function on page 207-59	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="password" which creates a single-line text entry field
FORMRADIO Function on page 207-60	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="radio", which creates a radio button on the HTML form
FORMRESET Function on page 207-61	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="reset" which creates a button that, when selected, resets the form fields to their initial values
FORMSELECTCLOSE Function on page 207-62	Generates the </SELECT> tag which marks the end of a Select form element
FORMSELECTOPEN Function on page 207-63	Generates the </SELECT> tag which marks the beginning of a Select form element
FORMSELECTOPTION Function on page 207-64	Generates the <OPTION> tag which represents one choice in a Select element
FORMSUBMIT Function on page 207-65	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="submit" which creates a button that, when clicked, submits the form
FORMTEXT Function on page 207-66	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="text", which creates a field for a single line of text
FORMTEXTAREA Function on page 207-67	Generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area
FORMTEXTAREA2 Function on page 207-68	Generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area with the ability to specify a wrap style
FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Function on page 207-69	Generates the </TEXTAREA> tag which ends a text area form element
FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Function on page 207-70	Generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element
FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Function on page 207-71	Generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element with the ability to specify a wrap style
FRAME Function on page 207-72	Generates the <FRAME> tag which defines the characteristics of a frame created by a <FRAMESET> tag
FRAMESETCLOSE Function on page 207-73	Generates the </FRAMESET> tag which ends a frameset section
FRAMESETOPEN Function on page 207-74	Generates the </FRAMESET> tag which begins a frameset section
HEADCLOSE Function on page 207-75	Generates the </HEAD> tag which marks the end of an HTML document head section
HEADER Function on page 207-76	Generates opening heading tags (<H1> to <H6>) and their corresponding closing tags (</H1> to </H6>)
HEADOPEN Function on page 207-77	Generates the <HEAD> tag which marks the beginning of the HTML document head section
HR Function on page 207-78	Generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document
HTMLCLOSE Function on page 207-80	Generates the </HTML> tag which marks the end of an HTML document
HTMLOPEN Function on page 207-80	Generates the <HTML> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML document

Table 207–1 (Cont.) HTF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
IMG Function on page 207-81	Generates the <IMG> tag which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page
IMG2 Function on page 207-82	Generates the <IMG> tag which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page with the option of specifying values for the USEMAP attribute
ISINDEX Function on page 207-83	Creates a single entry field with a prompting text, such as "*enter value*," then sends that value to the URL of the page or program
ITALIC Function on page 207-84	Generates the <I> and </I> tags which direct the browser to render the text in italics
KBD Function on page 207-85	Generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font
KEYBOARD Function on page 207-86	Generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags, which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font
LINE Function on page 207-87	Generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document
LINKREL Function on page 207-88	Generates the <LINK> tag with the REL attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the anchor to the target
LINKREV Function on page 207-89	Generates the <LINK> tag with the REV attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the target to the anchor
LISTHEADER Function on page 207-90	Generates the <LH> and </LH> tags which print an HTML tag at the beginning of the list
LISTINGCLOSE Function on page 207-91	Generates the </LISTING> tags which marks the end of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page
LISTINGOPEN Function on page 207-92	Generates the <LISTING> tag which marks the beginning of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page
LISTITEM Function on page 207-93	Generates the <LI> tag, which indicates a list item
MAILTO Function on page 207-94	Generates the <A> tag with the HREF set to 'mailto' prepended to the mail address argument
MAPCLOSE Function on page 207-95	Generates the </MAP> tag which marks the end of a set of regions in a client-side image map
MAPOPEN Function on page 207-96	Generates the <MAP> tag which mark the beginning of a set of regions in a client-side image map
MENULISTCLOSE Function on page 207-97	Generates the </MENU> tag which ends a list that presents one line for each item
MENULISTOPEN Function on page 207-98	Generates the <MENU> tag which begins a list that presents one line for each item
META Function on page 207-99	Generates the <META> tag, which embeds meta-information about the document and also specifies values for HTTP headers
NL Function on page 207-87	Generates the tag which begins a new line of text
NOBR Function on page 207-101	Generates the <NOBR> and </NOBR> tags which turn off line-breaking in a section of text
NOFRAMESCLOSE Function on page 207-102	Generates the </NOFRAMES> tag which marks the end of a no-frames section

Table 207–1 (Cont.) HTF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
NOFRAMESOPEN Function on page 207-103	Generates the <NOFRAMES> tag which mark the beginning of a no-frames section
OLISTCLOSE Function on page 207-104	Generates the </OL> tag which defines the end of an ordered list
OLISTOPEN Function on page 207-105	Generates the <OL> tag which marks the beginning of an ordered list
PARA Function on page 207-106	Generates the <P> tag which indicates that the text that comes after the tag is to be formatted as a paragraph
PARAGRAPH Function on page 207-107	Adds attributes to the <P> tag
PARAM Function on page 207-108	Generates the <PARAM> tag which specifies parameter values for Java applets
PLAINTEXT Function on page 207-109	Generates the <PLAINTEXT> and </PLAINTEXT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in fixed-width type
PRECLOSE Function on page 207-110	Generates the </PRE> tag which marks the end of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page
PREOPEN Function on page 207-111	Generates the <PRE> tag which marks the beginning of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page
PRINT Functions on page 207-112	Generates the specified parameter as a string terminated with the \n newline character
PRN Functions on page 207-113	Generates the specified parameter as a string
S Function on page 207-114	Generates the <S> and </S> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type
SAMPLE Function on page 207-115	Generates the <SAMP> and </SAMP> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in monospace font or however "sample" is defined stylistically
SCRIPT Function on page 207-116	Generates the <SCRIPT> and </SCRIPT> tags which contain a script written in languages such as JavaScript and VBscript
SMALL Function on page 207-117	Generates the <SMALL> and </SMALL> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround using a small font
STRIKE Function on page 207-118	Generates the <STRIKE> and </STRIKE> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type
STRONG Function on page 207-119	Generates the <STRONG> and </STRONG> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in bold or however "strong" is defined stylistically
STYLE Function on page 207-120	Generates the <STYLE> and </STYLE> tags which include a style sheet in a Web page
SUB Function on page 207-121	Generates the _{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as subscript
SUP Function on page 207-122	Generates the ^{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as superscript
TABLECAPTION Function on page 207-123	Generates the <CAPTION> and </CAPTION> tags which place a caption in an HTML table
TABLECLOSE Function on page 207-124	Generates the </TABLE> tag which marks the end of an HTML table

Table 207–1 (Cont.) HTF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
TABLEDATA Function on page 207-125	Generates the <TD> and </TD> tags which insert data into a cell of an HTML table
TABLEHEADER Function on page 207-126	Generates the <TH> and </TH> tags which insert a header cell in an HTML table.
TABLEOPEN Function on page 207-127	Generates the <TABLE> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML table
TABLEROWCLOSE Function on page 207-128	Generates the </TR> tag which marks the end of a new row in an HTML table
TABLEROWOPEN Function on page 207-129	Generates the <TR> tag which marks the beginning of a new row in an HTML table
TELETYPE Function on page 207-130	Generates the <TT> and </TT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in a fixed width typewriter font, for example, the courier font
TITLE Function on page 207-131	Generates the <TITLE> and </TITLE> tags which specify the text to display in the titlebar of the browser window
ULISTCLOSE Function on page 207-132	Generates the </UL> tag which marks the end of an unordered list
ULISTOPEN Function on page 207-133	Generates the <UL> tag which marks the beginning of an unordered list
UNDERLINE Function on page 207-134	Generates the <U> and </U> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround with an underline
VARIABLE Function on page 207-135	Generates the <VAR> and </VAR> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in italics or however "variable" is defined stylistically.
WBR Function on page 207-136	Generates the <WBR> tag, which inserts a soft line break within a section of NOBR text

ADDRESS Function

This function generates the <ADDRESS> and </ADDRESS> tags which specify the address, author and signature of a document.

Syntax

```
HTF.ADDRESS (
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–2 ADDRESS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The string that goes between the <ADDRESS> and </ADDRESS> tags.
cnowrap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is included in the tag
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag

Examples

This function generates

```
<ADDRESS CLEAR="cclear" NOWRAP cattributes>cvalue</ADDRESS>
```

ANCHOR Function

This function and the ANCHOR2 Function functions generate the <A> and </A> HTML tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link. The difference between these subprograms is that the ANCHOR2 Function provides a target and therefore can be used for a frame.

Syntax

```
HTF.ANCHOR (
   curl            IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctext           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–3 ANCHOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The value for the HREF attribute.
ctext	The string that goes between the <A> and </A> tags.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<A HREF="curl" NAME="cname" cattributes>ctext</A>
```

Usage Notes

This tag accepts several attributes, but either HREF or NAME is required. HREF specifies to where to link. NAME allows this tag to be a target of a hypertext link.

ANCHOR2 Function

This function and the ANCHOR Function generate the <A> and </A> HTML tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link. The difference between these subprograms is that this functions provides a target and therefore can be used for a frame.

Syntax

```
HTF.ANCHOR2 (
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ctarget        in       varchar2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–4 ANCHOR2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The value for the HREF attribute.
ctext	The string that goes between the <A> and </A> tags.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag

Examples

This function generates

```
<A HREF="curl" NAME="cname" TARGET = "ctarget" cattributes>ctext</A>
```

APPLETCLOSE Function

This function closes the applet invocation with the </APPLET> tag. You must first invoke the a Java applet using APPLETOPEN Function on page 207-20

Syntax

```
HTF.APPLETCLOSE
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

APPLETOPEN Function

This function generates the <APPLET> tag which begins the invocation of a Java applet. You close the applet invocation with APPLETCLOSE Function on page 207-19 which generates the </APPLET> tag.

Syntax

```
HTF.APPLETOPEN (
   ccode          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cheight        IN       NUMBER,
   cwidth         IN       NUMBER,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–5 APPLETOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccode	The the value for the CODE attribute which specifies the name of the applet class.
cheight	The value for the HEIGHT attribute.
cwidth	The value for the WIDTH attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<APPLET CODE=ccode HEIGHT=cheight WIDTH=cwidth cattributes>
```

so that, for example,

```
HTF.appletopen('testclass.class', 100, 200, 'CODEBASE="/ows-applets"')
```

generates

```
<APPLET CODE="testclass.class" height=100 width=200 CODEBASE="/ows-applets">
```

Usage Notes

- Specify parameters to the Java applet using the PARAM Function function on page 207-108.
- Use the cattributes parameter to specify the CODEBASE attribute since the PL/SQL cartridge does not know where to find the class files. The CODEBASE attribute specifies the virtual path containing the class files.

AREA Function

This function generates the <AREA> tag, which defines a client-side image map. The <AREA> tag defines areas within the image and destinations for the areas.

Syntax

```
HTF.AREA (
   ccoords        IN       VARCHAR2
   cshape         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   chref          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnohref        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ctarget        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–6 AREA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccords	The the value for the COORDS attribute.
cshape	The value for the SHAPE attribute.
chref	The value for the HREF attribute.
cnohref	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOHREF attribute is added to the tag.
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<AREA COORDS="ccoords" SHAPE="cshape" HREF="chref" NOHREF TARGET="ctarget"
cattributes>
```

BASE Function

This function generates the <BASE> tag which records the URL of the document.

Syntax

```
HTF.BASE (
   ctarget        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–7 BASE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute which establishes a window name to which all links in this document are targeted.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BASE HREF="<current URL>" TARGET="ctarget" cattributes>
```

BASEFONT Function

This function generates the <BASEFONT> tag which specifies the base font size for a Web page.

Syntax

```
HTF.BASEFONT (
   nsize    IN    INTEGER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–8 BASEFONT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
nsize	The value for the SIZE attribute.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BASEFONT SIZE="nsize">
```

BGSOUND Function

This function generates the <BGSOUND> tag which includes audio for a Web page.

Syntax

```
HTF.BGSOUND (
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cloop          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–9 BGSOUND Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute.
cloop	The value for the LOOP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BGSOUND SRC="csrc" LOOP="cloop" cattributes>
```

BIG Function

This function generates the <BIG> and </BIG> tags which direct the browser to render the text in a bigger font.

Syntax

```
HTF.BIG (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–10 BIG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The the text that goes between the tags.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BIG cattributes>ctext</BIG>
```

BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Function

This function generates the </BLOCKQUOTE> tag which mark the end of a section of quoted text. You mark the beginning of a section of text by means of the BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.BLOCKQUOTECLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</BLOCKQUOTE>
```

BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Function

This function generates the <BLOCKQUOTE> tag, which marks the beginning of a section of quoted text. You mark the end of a section of text by means of the BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.BLOCKQUOTEOPEN (
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–11 BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cnowrap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BLOCKQUOTE CLEAR="cclear" NOWRAP cattributes>
```

BODYCLOSE Function

This function generates the </BODY> tag which marks the end of a body section of an HTML document.You mark the beginning of a body section by means of the BODYOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.BODYCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</BODY>
```

BODYOPEN Function

This function generates the <BODY> tag which marks the beginning of the body section of an HTML document. You mark the end of a body section by means of the BODYCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.BODYOPEN (
   cbackground    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–12 BODYOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cbackground	The value for the BACKGROUND attribute which specifies a graphic file to use for the background of the document.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BODY background="cbackground" cattributes>
```

so that

```
HTF.BODYOPEN('/img/background.gif')
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

generates:

```
<BODY background="/img/background.gif">
```

BOLD Function

This function generates the <B> and </B> tags which direct the browser to display the text in boldface.

Syntax

```
HTF.BOLD (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–13 BOLD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text that goes between the tags.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<B cattributes>ctext</B>
```

BR Function

This function generates the <BR> tag which begins a new line of text. It performs the same operation as the NL Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.BR(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–14 BR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BR CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

CENTER Function

This function generates the <CENTER> and </CENTER> tags which center a section of text within a Web page.

Syntax

```
HTF.CENTER (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–15 CENTER Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text that goes between the tags.

Examples

This function generates

```
<CENTER>ctext</CENTER>
```

CENTERCLOSE Function

This function generates the </CENTER> tag which marks the end of a section of text to center. You mark the beginning of a of a section of text to center by means of the CENTEROPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.CENTERCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</CENTER>
```

CENTEROPEN Function

This function generates the <CENTER> tag which mark the beginning of a section of text to center.You mark the beginning of a of a section of text to center by means of the CENTERCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.CENTEROPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<CENTER>
```

CITE Function

This function generates the <CITE> and </CITE> tags which direct the browser to render the text as a citation.

Syntax

```
HTF.CITE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–16 CITE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render as citation.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<CITE cattributes>ctext</CITE>
```

CODE Function

This function generates the <CODE> and </CODE> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font or however "code" is defined stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTF.CODE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–17 CODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render as code.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag

Examples

This function generates

```
<CODE cattributes>ctext</CODE>
```

COMMENT Function

This function generates the comment tags.

Syntax

```
HTF.COMMENT (
   ctext           IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–18 COMMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The comment.

Examples

This function generates

```
<!-- ctext -->
```

DFN Function

This function generates the <DFN> and </DFN> tags which direct the browser to mark the text in italics or however "definition" is described stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTF.DFN (
   ctext           IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–19 DFN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in italics.

Examples

This function generates

```
<DFN>ctext</DFN>
```

DIRLISTCLOSE Function

This function generates the </DIR> tag which ends a directory list section. You start a directory list section with the DIRLISTOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.DIRLISTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Usage Notes

A directory list presents a list of items that contains up to 20 characters. Items in this list are typically arranged in columns, 24 characters wide. Insert the <LI> tag directly or invoke the LISTITEM Function so that the <LI> tag appears directly after the </DIR> tag to define the items as a list.

Examples

This function generates

```
</DIR>
```

DIRLISTOPEN Function

This function generates the <DIR> which starts a directory list section. You end a directory list section with the DIRLISTCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.DIRLISTOPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Usage Notes

A directory list presents a list of items that contains up to 20 characters. Items in this list are typically arranged in columns, 24 characters wide. Insert the <LI> tag directly or invoke the LISTITEM Function so that the <LI> tag appears directly after the </DIR> tag to define the items as a list.

Examples

This function generates

```
<DIR>
```

DIV Function

This function generates the <DIV> tag which creates document divisions.

Syntax

```
HTF.DIV (
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–20 DIV Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<DIV ALIGN="calign" cattributes>
```

DLISTCLOSE Function

This function generates the </DL> tag which ends a definition list. You start a definition list by means of the DLISTOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.DLISTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Usage Notes

A definition list looks like a glossary: it contains terms and definitions. Terms are inserted using the DLISTTERM Function and definitions are inserted using the DLISTDEF Function.

Examples

This function generates

```
</DL>
```

DLISTDEF Function

This function generates the <DD> tag, which inserts definitions of terms. Use this tag for a definition list <DL>. Terms are tagged <DT> and definitions are tagged <DD>.

Syntax

```
HTF.DLISTDEF (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–21 DLISTDEF Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The definition of the term.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<DD CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>ctext
```

DLISTOPEN Function

This function generates the <DL> tag which starts a definition list. You end a definition list by means of the DLISTCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.DLISTOPEN (
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–22 DLISTOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Usage Notes

A definition list looks like a glossary: it contains terms and definitions. Terms are inserted using the DLISTTERM Function and definitions are inserted using the DLISTDEF Function.

Examples

This function generates

```
<DL CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

DLISTTERM Function

This function generates the <DT> tag which defines a term in a definition list <DL>.

Syntax

```
HTF.DLISTTERM (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–23 DLISTTERM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The term.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<DT CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>ctext
```

EM Function

This function generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized. It performs the same task as the EMPHASIS Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.EM(
     ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
     cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–24 EM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to emphasize.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<EM cattributes>ctext</EM>
```

EMPHASIS Function

This function generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized. It performs the same task as the EM Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.EMPHASIS(
     ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
     cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–25 EMPHASIS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to emphasize.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<EM cattributes>ctext</EM>
```

ESCAPE_SC Function

This function replaces characters that have special meaning in HTML with their escape sequences. The following characters are converted:

- `&` to `&`
- `"` to `&quot:`
- `<` to `<`
- `>` to `>`

This function performs the same operation as HTP. PRINTS Procedure and HTP. PS Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTF.ESCAPE_SC(
     ctext           IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 207–26 ESCAPE_SC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ctext`	The text string to convert.

ESCAPE_URL Function

> **Note:** This procedure, deprecated in Release 10*g*, and provided here only for reasons of backward compatibility, does not comply with the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Request for Comments (RFC) standards of URL encoding. If you need to encode URLs, it is recommended you use the ESCAPE Functionin the UTL_URL package.

This function replaces characters that have special meaning in HTML and HTTP with their escape sequences. The following characters are converted:

- `&` to `&`
- `"` to `&quot:`
- `<` to `<`
- `>` to `>`
- `%` to `&25`

Syntax

```
HTF.ESCAPE_URL(
     p_url          IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 207–27 ESCAPE_URL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_url	The string to convert.

FONTCLOSE Function

This function generates the</FONT> tag which marks the end of a section of text with the specified font characteristics. You mark the beginning of the section text by means of the FONTOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FONTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

</FONT>

FONTOPEN Function

This function generates the <FONT> which marks the beginning of section of text with the specified font characteristics. You mark the end of the section text by means of the FONTCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FONTOPEN(
   ccolor          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cface           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csize           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–28 FONTOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccolor	The value for the COLOR attribute.
cface	The value for the FACE attribute
csize	The value for the SIZE attribute
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<FONT COLOR="ccolor" FACE="cface" SIZE="csize" cattributes>
```

FORMAT_CELL Function

This function formats column values inside an HTML table using the TABLEDATA Function. It allows for better control over the HTML tables.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMAT_CELL(
   columnValue          IN       VARCHAR2
   format_numbers       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–29 FORMAT_CELL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`columnValue`	The value that needs to be formatted in an HTML table.
`format_numbers`	The format that numeric data is displayed in. If the value of this parameter is not `NULL`, the number fields are right-justified and rounded to two decimal places.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TD >columnValue</TD>
```

FORMCHECKBOX Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="checkbox" which inserts a checkbox element in a form. A checkbox element is a button that the user toggles on or off.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMCHECKBOX(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'ON',
   cchecked       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–30 FORMCHECKBOX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cchecked	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the CHECKED attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="checkbox" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" CHECKED cattributes>
```

FORMCLOSE Function

This function generates the </FORM> tag which marks the end of a form section in an HTML document.You mark the beginning of the form section by means of the FORMOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</FORM>
```

FORMFILE Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="file" which inserts a file form element. This is used for file uploading for a given page.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMFILE(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   caccept        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–31 FORMFILE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
caccept	A comma-delimited list of MIME types for upload.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="file" NAME="cname" ACCEPT="caccept" cattributes>
```

FORMHIDDEN Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="hidden", which inserts a hidden form element. This element is not seen by the user. It submits additional values to the script.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMHIDDEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–32 FORMHIDDEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMIMAGE Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="image" which creates an image field that the user clicks to submit the form immediately. The coordinates of the selected point are measured in pixels, and returned (along with other contents of the form) in two name/value pairs. The x coordinate is submitted under the name of the field with .x appended, and the y coordinate with .y appended. Any VALUE attribute is ignored.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMIMAGE(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–33 FORMIMAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute that specifies the image file.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="image" NAME="cname" SRC="csrc" ALIGN="calign" cattributes>
```

FORMOPEN Function

This function generates the <FORM> tag which marks the beginning of a form section in an HTML document. You mark the end of the form section by means of the FORMCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMOPEN(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cmethod        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'POST',
   ctarget        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cenctype       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–34 FORMOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The URL of the Web Request Broker or CGI script where the contents of the form is sent. This parameter is required.
cmethod	The value for the METHOD attribute. The value can be "GET" or "POST".
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute.
cenctype	The value for the ENCTYPE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<FORM ACTION="curl" METHOD="cmethod" TARGET="ctarget" ENCTYPE="cenctype"
cattributes>
```

FORMPASSWORD Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="password" which creates a single-line text entry field. When the user enters text in the field, each character is represented by one asterisk. This is used for entering passwords.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMPASSWORD(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   csize          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cmaxlength     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–35 FORMPASSWORD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
csize	The value for the SIZE attribute.
cmaxlength	The value for the MAXLENGTH attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="password" NAME="cname" SIZE="csize" MAXLENGTH="cmaxlength"
VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMRADIO Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="radio", which creates a radio button on the HTML form. Within a set of radio buttons, the user selects only one. Each radio button in the same set has the same name, but different values. The selected radio button generates a name/value pair.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMRADIO(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2,
   cchecked       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–36 FORMRADIO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cchecked	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the CHECKED attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" CHECKED cattributes>
```

FORMRESET Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="reset" which creates a button that, when selected, resets the form fields to their initial values.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMRESET(
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'Reset',
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–37 FORMRESET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="reset" VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMSELECTCLOSE Function

This function generates the `</SELECT>` tag which marks the end of a Select form element. A Select form element is a listbox where the user selects one or more values. You mark the beginning of Select form element by means of the FORMSELECTOPEN Function.The values are inserted using FORMSELECTOPTION Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMSELECTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</SELECT>
```

as shown under Examples of the FORMSELECTOPEN Function.

FORMSELECTOPEN Function

This function generates the <SELECT> tags which begins a Select form element. A Select form element is a listbox where the user selects one or more values. You mark the end of Select form element by means of the FORMSELECTCLOSE Function.The values are inserted using FORMSELECTOPTION Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMSELECTOPEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cprompt        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   nsize          IN       INTEGER    DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–38 FORMSELECTOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cprompt	The string preceding the list box.
nsize	The value for the SIZE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
cprompt <SELECT NAME="cname" SIZE="nsize" cattributes>
</SELECT>
```

so that

```
HTF.FORMSELECTOPEN('greatest_player';
    'Pick the greatest player:');
HTF.FORMSELECTOPTION('Messier');
HTF.FORMSELECTOPTION('Howe');
HTF.FORMSELECTOPTION('Gretzky');.
HTF.FORMSELECTCLOSE;
```

generates

```
Pick the greatest player:
<SELECT NAME="greatest_player">
<OPTION>Messier
<OPTION>Howe
<OPTION>Gretzky
</SELECT>
```

FORMSELECTOPTION Function

This function generates the <OPTION> tag which represents one choice in a Select element.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMSELECTOPTION(
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2,
   cselected      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–39 FORMSELECTOPTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The text for the option.
cvalue	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the SELECTED attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<OPTION SELECTED cattributes>cvalue
```

as shown under Examples of the FORMSELECTOPEN Function.

FORMSUBMIT Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="submit" which creates a button that, when clicked, submits the form. If the button has a NAME attribute, the button contributes a name/value pair to the submitted data.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMSUBMIT(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'Submit',
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–40 FORMSUBMIT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMTEXT Function

This function generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="text", which creates a field for a single line of text.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMTEXT(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   csize          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cmaxlength     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–41 FORMTEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
csize	The value for the SIZE attribute.
cmaxlength	The value for the MAXLENGTH attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="cname" SIZE="csize" MAXLENGTH="cmaxlength" VALUE="cvalue"
cattributes>
```

FORMTEXTAREA Function

This function generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area. This field enables entering several lines of text. The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREA2 Function which in addition has the cwrap parameter that lets you specify a wrap style.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMTEXTAREA(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–42 FORMTEXTAREA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign"
cattributes></TEXTAREA>
```

FORMTEXTAREA2 Function

This function generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area. This field enables entering several lines of text.The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREA Function except that in that case you cannot specify a wrap style.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMTEXTAREA2(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–43 FORMTEXTAREA2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign" WRAP="cwrap"
cattributes></TEXTAREA>
```

FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Function

This function generates the </TEXTAREA> tag which ends a text area form element. You open a text area element by means of eitherFORMTEXTAREAOPEN Function or FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMTEXTAREACLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</TEXTAREA>
```

FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Function

This function generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element. The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Function which in addition has the cwrap parameter that lets you specify a wrap style. You mark the end of a text area form element by means of the FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMTEXTAREAOPEN(
   cname           IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows           IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns        IN       INTEGER,
   calign          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–44 FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign" cattributes>
```

FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Function

This function generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element. The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Function except that in that case you cannot specify a wrap style. You mark the end of a text area form element by means of the FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–45 FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign" WRAP = "cwrap"
cattributes>
```

FRAME Function

This function generates the <FRAME> tag which begins the characteristics of a frame created by a <FRAMESET> tag.

Syntax

```
HTF.FRAME(
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cmarginwidth   IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cmarginheight  IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cscrolling     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnoresize      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–46 FRAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
csrc	The URL to display in the frame.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cmarginwidth	The value for the MARGINWIDTH attribute.
cscrolling	The value for the SCROLLING attribute.
cnoresize	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NORESIZE attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<FRAME SRC="csrc" NAME="cname" MARGINWIDTH="cmarginwidth"
MARGINHEIGHT="cmarginheight" SCROLLING="cscrolling" NORESIZE cattributes>
```

FRAMESETCLOSE Function

This function generates the </FRAMESET> tag which ends a frameset section. You mark the beginning of a frameset section by means of the FRAMESETOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FRAMESETCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</FRAMESET>
```

FRAMESETOPEN Function

This function generates the <FRAMESET> tag which define a frameset section. You mark the end of a frameset section by means of the FRAMESETCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.FRAMESETOPEN(
   crows          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccols          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–47 FRAMESETOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
crows	The value for the ROWS attribute.
ccols	The value for the COLS attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<FRAMESET ROWS="crows" COLS="ccols" cattributes>
```

HEADCLOSE Function

This function generates the </HEAD> tag which marks the end of an HTML document head section. You mark the beginning of an HTML document head section by means of the HEADOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.HEADCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</HEAD>
```

HEADER Function

This function generates opening heading tags (<H1> to <H6>) and their corresponding closing tags (</H1> to </H6>).

Syntax

```
HTF.HEADER(
   nsize          IN       INTEGER,
   cheader        IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–48 HEADER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
nsize	The the heading level. This is an integer between 1 and 6.
cheader	The text to display in the heading.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cnowrap	The value for the NOWRAP attribute.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

```
HTF.header (1,'Overview')
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

produces:

```
<H1>Overview</H1>
```

HEADOPEN Function

This function generates the <HEAD> tag which marks the beginning of the HTML document head section. You mark the end of an HTML document head section by means of the HEADCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.HEADOPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<HEAD>
```

HR Function

This function generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document.This subprogram performs the same operation as the LINE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.HR(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–49 HR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute which specifies a custom image as the source of the line.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<HR CLEAR="cclear" SRC="csrc" cattributes>
```

HTMLCLOSE Function

This function generates the `</HTML>` tag which marks the end of an HTML document. You use the HTMLOPEN Function to mark the beginning of an HTML document.

Syntax

```
HTF.HTMLCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</HTML>
```

HTMLOPEN Function

This function generates the <HTML> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML document. You use the HTMLCLOSE Function to mark the end of the an HTML document.

Syntax

```
HTF.HTMLOPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<HTML>
```

IMG Function

This function generates the <IMG> tag which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page. The IMG2 Function performs the same operation but additionally uses the cusemap parameter.

Syntax

```
HTF.IMG(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calt           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cismap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–50 IMG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The value for the SRC attribute.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
calt	The value for the ALT attribute which specifies alternative text to display if the browser does not support images.
cismap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the ISMAP attribute is added to the tag. The attribute indicates that the image is an imagemap.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<IMG SRC="curl" ALIGN="calign" ALT="calt" ISMAP cattributes>
```

IMG2 Function

This function generates the <IMG> tag, which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page. The IMG Function performs the same operation but does not use the `cusemap` parameter.

Syntax

```
HTF.IMG2(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calt           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cismap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cusemap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–51 IMG2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`curl`	The value for the SRC attribute.
`calign`	The value for the `ALIGN` attribute.
`calt`	The value for the `ALT` attribute which specifies alternative text to display if the browser does not support images.
`cismap`	If the value for this parameter is not `NULL`, the `ISMAP` attribute is added to the tag. The attribute indicates that the image is an imagemap.
`cusemap`	The value for the `USEMAP` attribute which specifies a client-side image map.
`cattributes`	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<IMG SRC="curl" ALIGN="calign" ALT="calt" ISMAP USEMAP="cusemap" cattributes>
```

ISINDEX Function

This function creates a single entry field with a prompting text, such as "*enter value,*" then sends that value to the URL of the page or program.

Syntax

```
HTF.ISINDEX(
   cprompt        IN       VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–52 ISINDEX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cprompt	The value for the PROMPT attribute.
curl	The value for the HREF attribute.

Examples

This function generates

```
<ISINDEX PROMPT="cprompt" HREF="curl">
```

ITALIC Function

This function generates the <I> and </I> tags which direct the browser to render the text in italics.

Syntax

```
HTF.ITALIC(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–53 ITALIC Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in italics.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<I cattributes>ctext</I>
```

KBD Function

This function generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font. This subprogram performs the same operation as the KEYBOARD Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.KBD(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–54 KBD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in monospace.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<KBD cattributes>ctext</KBD>
```

KEYBOARD Function

This function generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags, which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font. This subprogram performs the same operation as the KBD Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.KEYBOARD(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–55 KEYBOARD Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in monospace.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<KBD cattributes>ctext</KBD>
```

LINE Function

This function generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document. This subprogram performs the same operation as the HR Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.LINE(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–56 LINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute which specifies a custom image as the source of the line.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<HR CLEAR="cclear" SRC="csrc" cattributes>
```

LINKREL Function

This function generates the <LINK> tag with the REL attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the anchor to the target. This is only used when the HREF attribute is present. This is the opposite of LINKREV Function. This tag indicates a relationship between documents but does not create a link. To create a link, use the ANCHOR Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.LINKREL(
   crel           IN       VARCHAR2,
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctitle         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–57 LINKREL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
crel	The value for the REL attribute.
curl	The value for the URL attribute.
ctitle	The value for the TITLE attribute.

Examples

This function generates

```
<LINK REL="crel" HREF="curl" TITLE="ctitle">
```

LINKREV Function

This function generates the <LINK> tag with the REV attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the target to the anchor. This is the opposite of the LINKREL Function. This tag indicates a relationship between documents, but does not create a link. To create a link, use the ANCHOR Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.LINKREV(
   crev           IN       VARCHAR2,
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctitle         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–58 LINKREV Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
crev	The value for the REV attribute.
curl	The value for the URL attribute.
ctitle	The value for the TITLE attribute.

Examples

This function generates

```
<LINK REV="crev" HREF="curl" TITLE="ctitle">
```

LISTHEADER Function

This function generates the <LH> and </LH> tags which print an HTML tag at the beginning of the list.

Syntax

```
HTF.LISTHEADER(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–59 LISTHEADER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to place between <LH> and </LH>.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<LH cattributes>ctext</LH>
```

LISTINGCLOSE Function

This function generates the </LISTING> tags which marks the end of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page. To mark the beginning of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page, use the LISTINGOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.LISTINGCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</LISTING>
```

LISTINGOPEN Function

This function generates the <LISTING> tag which marks the beginning of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page. To mark the end of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page, use the LISTINGCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.LISTINGOPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<LISTING>
```

LISTITEM Function

This function generates the <LI> tag, which indicates a list item.

Syntax

```
HTF.LISTITEM(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdingbat       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–60 LISTITEM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text for the list item.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cdingbat	The value for the DINGBAT attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<LI CLEAR="cclear" DINGBAT="cdingbat" SRC="csrc" cattributes>ctext
```

MAILTO Function

This function generates the <A> tag with the HREF set to 'mailto' prepended to the mail address argument.

Syntax

```
HTF.MAILTO(
   caddress       IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–61 MAILTO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
caddress	The email address of the recipient.
ctext	The clickable portion of the link.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<A HREF="mailto:caddress" NAME="cname" cattributes>ctext</A>
```

so that

```
HTF.mailto('pres@white_house.gov','Send Email to the President');
```

generates:

```
<A HREF="mailto:pres@white_house.gov">Send Email to the President</A>
```

MAPCLOSE Function

This function generates the </MAP> tag which marks the end of a set of regions in a client-side image map. To mark the beginning of a set of regions in a client-side image map, use the MAPOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.MAPCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</MAP>
```

MAPOPEN Function

This function generates the <MAP> tag which mark the beginning of a set of regions in a client-side image map. To mark the end of a set of regions in a client-side image map, use the MAPCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.MAPOPEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–62 MAPOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<MAP NAME="cname" cattributes>
```

MENULISTCLOSE Function

This function generates the </MENU> tag which ends a list that presents one line for each item. To begin a list of this kind, use the MENULISTOPEN Function. The items in the list appear more compact than an unordered list. The LISTITEM Function defines the list items in a menu list.

Syntax

```
HTF.MENULISTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</MENU>
```

MENULISTOPEN Function

This function generates the <MENU> tag which begins a list that presents one line for each item. To end a list of this kind, use the MENULISTCLOSE Function.The items in the list appear more compact than an unordered list. The LISTITEM Function defines the list items in a menu list.

Syntax

```
HTF.MENULISTOPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<MENU>
```

META Function

This function generates the <META> tag, which embeds meta-information about the document and also specifies values for HTTP headers. For example, you can specify the expiration date, keywords, and author name.

Syntax

```
HTF.META(
   chttp_equiv    IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   ccontent       IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–63 META Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
chttp_equiv	The value for the CHTTP_EQUIV attribute.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
ccontent	The value for the CONTENT attribute.

Examples

This function generates

```
<META HTTP-EQUIV="chttp_equiv" NAME ="cname" CONTENT="ccontent">
```

so that

```
HTF.meta ('Refresh', NULL, 120);
```

generates

```
<META HTTP-EQUIV="Refresh" CONTENT=120>
```

On some Web browsers, this causes the current URL to be reloaded automatically every 120 seconds.

NL Function

This function generates the <BR> tag which begins a new line of text. It performs the same operation as the BR Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.NL(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–64 NL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<BR CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

NOBR Function

This function generates the <NOBR> and </NOBR> tags which turn off line-breaking in a section of text.

Syntax

```
HTF.NOBR(
ctext        IN        VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–65 NOBR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text that is to be rendered on one line.

Examples

This function generates

```
<NOBR>ctext</NOBR>
```

NOFRAMESCLOSE Function

This function generates the </NOFRAMES> tag which marks the end of a no-frames section. To mark the beginning of a no-frames section, use the FRAMESETOPEN Function. See also FRAME Function, FRAMESETOPEN Function and FRAMESETCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.NOFRAMESCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</NOFRAMES>
```

NOFRAMESOPEN Function

This function generates the <NOFRAMES> tag which mark the beginning of a no-frames section. To mark the end of a no-frames section, use the FRAMESETCLOSE Function. See also FRAME Function, FRAMESETOPEN Function and FRAMESETCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.NOFRAMESOPEN
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<NOFRAMES>
```

OLISTCLOSE Function

This function generates the </OL> tag which defines the end of an ordered list. An ordered list presents a list of numbered items. To mark the beginning of a list of this kind, use the OLISTOPEN Function. Numbered items are added using LISTITEM Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.OLISTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</OL>
```

OLISTOPEN Function

This function generates the <OL> tag which marks the beginning of an ordered list. An ordered list presents a list of numbered items. To mark the end of a list of this kind, use the OLISTCLOSE Function. Numbered items are added using LISTITEM Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.OLISTOPEN(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–66 OLISTOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<OL CLEAR="cclear" WRAP="cwrap" cattributes>
```

PARA Function

This function generates the <P> tag which indicates that the text that comes after the tag is to be formatted as a paragraph. You can add attributes to the tag by means of the PARAGRAPH Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.PARA
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<P>
```

PARAGRAPH Function

You can use this function to add attributes to the <P> tag created by the PARA Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.PARAGRAPH(
   calign          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–67 PARAGRAPH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cnowrap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<P ALIGN="calign" NOWRAP CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

PARAM Function

This function generates the <PARAM> tag which specifies parameter values for Java applets. The values can reference HTML variables. To invoke a Java applet from a Web page, use APPLETOPEN Function to begin the invocation. Use one PARAM Function for each desired name-value pair, and use APPLETCLOSE Function to end the applet invocation.

Syntax

```
HTF.PARAM(
   cname           IN       VARCHAR2
   cvalue          IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–68 PARAM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.

Examples

This function generates

```
<PARAM NAME=cname VALUE="cvalue">
```

PLAINTEXT Function

This function generates the <PLAINTEXT> and </PLAINTEXT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in fixed-width type.

Syntax

```
HTF.PLAINTEXT(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–69 PLAINTEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in fixed-width font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<PLAINTEXT cattributes>ctext</PLAINTEXT>
```

PRECLOSE Function

This function generates the </PRE> tag which marks the end of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page. To mark the beginning of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page, use the PREOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.PRECLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</PRE>
```

PREOPEN Function

This function generates the <PRE> tag which marks the beginning of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page. To mark the end of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page, use the PRECLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.PREOPEN(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwidth          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–70 PREOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cwidth	The value for the WIDTH attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<PRE CLEAR="cclear" WIDTH="cwidth" cattributes>
```

PRINT Functions

These functions generate the specified parameter as a string terminated with the \n newline character. The PRN Functions performs the same operation but does not terminate with a newline character.

Syntax

```
HTF.PRINT (
   cbuf      IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;

HTF.PRINT (
   dbuf      IN       DATE)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;

HTF.PRINT (
   nbuf      IN       NUMBER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–71 PRINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cbuf	The string to generate terminated by a newline.
dbuf	The string to generate terminated by a newline.
nbuf	The string to generate terminated by a newline.

Usage Notes

- The \n character is not the same as <BR>. The \n character formats the HTML source but it does not affect how the browser renders the HTML source. Use <BR> to control how the browser renders the HTML source.
- These functions do not have function equivalents.

PRN Functions

These functions generate the specified parameter as a string. Unlike the PRINT Functions the string is not terminated with the \n newline character.

Syntax

```
HTF.PRN (
   cbuf       IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;

HTF.PRN (
   dbuf       IN       DATE)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;

HTF.PRN (
   nbuf       IN       NUMBER)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–72 PRN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cbuf	The string to generate (not terminated by a newline).
dbuf	The string to generate (not terminated by a newline).
nbuf	The string to generate (not terminated by a newline).

Usage Notes

These functions do not have function equivalents.

S Function

This function generates the <S> and </S> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type. This performs the same operation as STRIKE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.S (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–73 S Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in strikethrough type.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<S cattributes>ctext</S>
```

SAMPLE Function

This function generates the <SAMP> and </SAMP> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in monospace font or however "sample" is defined stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTF.SAMPLE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–74 SAMPLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in monospace font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<SAMP cattributes>ctext</SAMP>
```

SCRIPT Function

This function generates the <SCRIPT> and </SCRIPT> tags which contain a script written in languages such as JavaScript and VBscript.

Syntax

```
HTF.SCRIPT (
   cscript        IN       VARCHAR2,
   clanguage      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–75 SCRIPT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cscript	The text of the script. This is the text that makes up the script itself, not the name of a file containing the script.
clanguage	The language in which the script is written. If this parameter is omitted, the user's browser determines the scripting language.

Examples

This function generates

```
<SCRIPT LANGUAGE=clanguage>cscript</SCRIPT>
```

so that

```
HTF.script ('Erupting_Volcano', 'Javascript');
```

generates

```
<SCRIPT LANGUAGE=Javascript>"script text here"</SCRIPT>
```

This causes the browser to run the script enclosed in the tags.

SMALL Function

This function generates the <SMALL> and </SMALL> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround using a small font.

Syntax

```
HTF.SMALL (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–76 SMALL Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in small font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<SMALL cattributes>ctext</SMALL>
```

STRIKE Function

This function generates the <STRIKE> and </STRIKE> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type. This performs the same operation as S Function.

Syntax

```
STRIKE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–77 STRIKE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in strikethrough type.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<STRIKE cattributes>ctext</STRIKE>
```

STRONG Function

This function generates the <STRONG> and </STRONG> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in bold or however "strong" is defined.

Syntax

```
HTF.STRONG(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–78 STRONG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be emphasized.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<STRONG cattributes>ctext</STRONG>
```

STYLE Function

This function generates the <STYLE> and </STYLE> tags which include a style sheet in a Web page. You can get more information about style sheets at http://www.w3.org. This feature is not compatible with browsers that support only HTML versions 2.0 or earlier. Such browsers will ignore this tag.

Syntax

```
HTF.STYLE(
   cstyle          IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–79 STYLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cstyle	The the style information to include.

Examples

This function generates

```
<STYLE>cstyle</STYLE>
```

SUB Function

This function generates the _{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as subscript.

Syntax

```
HTF.SUB(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         in       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–80 SUB Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in subscript.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<SUB ALIGN="calign" cattributes>ctext</SUB>
```

SUP Function

This function generates the ^{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as superscript.

Syntax

```
HTF.SUP(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         in       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–81 SUP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in superscript.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<SUP ALIGN="calign" cattributes>ctext</SUP>
```

TABLECAPTION Function

This function generates the <CAPTION> and </CAPTION> tags which place a caption in an HTML table.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLECAPTION(
   ccaption       IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         in       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–82 TABLECAPTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text for the caption.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<CAPTION ALIGN="calign" cattributes>ccaption</CAPTION>
```

TABLECLOSE Function

This function generates the </TABLE> tag which marks the end of an HTML table. To define the beginning of an HTML table, use the TABLEOPEN Function on page 207-127.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLECLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</TABLE>
```

TABLEDATA Function

This function generates the <TD> and </TD> tags which insert data into a cell of an HTML table.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLEDATA(
   cvalue          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdp             IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   crowspan        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccolspan        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–83 TABLEDATA Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The data for the cell in the table.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cdp	The value for the DP attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
ccolspan	The value for the COLSPAN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TD ALIGN="calign" DP="cdp" ROWSPAN="crowspan" COLSPAN="ccolspan" NOWRAP
cattributes>cvalue</TD>
```

TABLEHEADER Function

This function generates the <TH> and </TH> tags which insert a header cell in an HTML table. The <TH> tag is similar to the <TD> tag except that the text in this case the rows are usually rendered in bold type.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLEHEADER(
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdp            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   crowspan       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccolspan       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–84 TABLEHEADER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The data for the cell in the table.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cdp	The value for the DP attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
crispen	The value for the ROWSPAN attribute.
ccolspan	The value for the COLSPAN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TH ALIGN="calign" DP="cdp" ROWSPAN="crowspan" COLSPAN="ccolspan" NOWRAP
cattributes>cvalue</TH>
```

TABLEOPEN Function

This function generates the <TABLE> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML table. To define the end of an HTML table, use the TABLECLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLEOPEN(
   cborder        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–85 TABLEOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
border	The value for the BORDER attribute.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TABLE "cborder" NOWRAP ALIGN="calign" CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

TABLEROWCLOSE Function

This function generates the </TR> tag which marks the end of a new row in an HTML table. To mark the beginning of a new row, use the TABLEROWOPEN Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLEROWCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</TABLE>
```

TABLEROWOPEN Function

This function generates the <TR> tag which marks the beginning of a new row in an HTML table. To mark the end of a new row, use the TABLEROWCLOSE Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.TABLEROWOPEN(
   calign          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdp             IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–86 TABLEROWOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cvalign	The value for the VALIGN attribute.
cdp	The value for the DP attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<<TR ALIGN="calign" VALIGN="cvalign" DP="cdp" NOWRAP cattributes>
```

TELETYPE Function

This function generates the <TT> and </TT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in a fixed width typewriter font, for example, the courier font.

Syntax

```
HTF.TELETYPE(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–87 TELETYPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in a fixed width typewriter font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TT cattributes>ctext</TT>
```

TITLE Function

This function generates the <TITLE> and </TITLE> tags which specify the text to display in the titlebar of the browser window.

Syntax

```
HTF.TITLE(
   ctitle          IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–88 TITLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctitle	The text to display in the titlebar of the browser window.

Examples

This function generates

```
<TITLE>ctitle</TITLE>
```

ULISTCLOSE Function

This function generates the </UL> tag which marks the end of an unordered list. An unordered list presents items with bullets. To mark the beginning of an unordered list, use the ULISTOPEN Function. Add list items with LISTITEM Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.ULISTCLOSE
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
</UL>
```

ULISTOPEN Function

This function generates the <UL> tag which marks the beginning of an unordered list. An unordered list presents items with bullets. To mark the end of an unordered list, use the ULISTCLOSE Function. Add list items with LISTITEM Function.

Syntax

```
HTF.ULISTOPEN(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdingbat        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–89 ULISTOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cdingbat	The value for the DINGBAT attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<UL CLEAR="cclear" WRAP="cwrap" DINGBAT="cdingbat" SRC="csrc" cattributes>
```

UNDERLINE Function

This function generates the <U> and </U> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround with an underline.

Syntax

```
HTF.UNDERLINE(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–90 UNDERLINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render with an underline.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<U cattributes>ctext</U>
```

VARIABLE Function

This function generates the <VAR> and </VAR> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in italics or however "variable" is defined stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTF.VARIABLE(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 207–91 VARIABLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in italics.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This function generates

```
<VAR cattributes>ctext</VAR>
```

WBR Function

This function generates the <WBR> tag, which inserts a soft line break within a section of NOBR text.

Syntax

```
HTF.WBR
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

This function generates

```
<WBR>
```

208

HTP

The HTP (hypertext procedures) and HTF (hypertext functions) packages generate HTML tags. For example, the HTP.ANCHOR procedure generates the HTML anchor tag, <A>.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using HTP

Operational Notes

For every HTP procedure that generates one or more HTML tags, there is a corresponding HTF function with identical parameters with the following exception:

- The PRINTS Procedure and the PS Procedure do not have HTF function equivalents. Use the ESCAPE_SC Function or the ESCAPE_URL Function if you need a string conversion function. Note that while there is a ESCAPE_SC Procedure that performs the same operation as the PRINTS Procedure and the PS Procedure, there is no procedural equivalent for the ESCAPE_URL Function.
- The FORMAT_CELL Function does not have an HTP equivalent. The function formats column values inside an HTML table using TABLEDATA Function which does have an HTP equivalent in the TABLEDATA Procedure. The advantage of this using the FORMAT_CELL Function is that it allows for better control over the HTML tables.

The function versions do not directly generate output in your Web page. Instead, they pass their output as return values to the statements that invoked them. Use these functions when you need to nest calls. To print the output of HTF functions, call the functions from within the HTP.`PRINT` procedure. It then prints its parameters to the generated Web page.

Rules and Limits

If you use values of the LONG datatype in procedures such as HTP.PRINT, HTP.PRN, HTP.PRINTS, HTP.PA or OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT, only the first 32 K of the LONG data is used. The LONG data is bound to a VARCHAR2 datatype in the procedure.

Examples

The following commands generate a simple HTML document:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE hello AS
BEGIN
    HTP.HTMLOPEN;           -- generates <HTML>
    HTP.HEADOPEN;           -- generates <HEAD>
    HTP.TITLE('Hello');     -- generates <TITLE>Hello</TITLE>
    HTP.HEADCLOSE;          -- generates </HEAD>
    HTP.BODYOPEN;           -- generates <BODY>
    HTP.HEADER(1, 'Hello'); -- generates <H1>Hello</H1>
    HTP.BODYCLOSE;          -- generates </BODY>
    HTP.HTMLCLOSE;          -- generates </HTML>
END;
```

Summary of Tags

HTML, HEAD, and BODY Tags

HTMLOPEN Procedure, HTMLCLOSE Procedure - generate <HTML> and </HTML>

HEADOPEN Procedure, HEADCLOSE Procedure - generate <HEAD> and </HEAD>

BODYOPEN Procedure, BODYCLOSE Procedure - generate <BODY> and </BODY>

Comment Tag

COMMENT Procedure - generates <!-- and -->

Tags in the <HEAD> Area

BASE Procedure - generates <BASE>

LINKREL Procedure - generates <LINK> with the REL attribute

LINKREV Procedure - generates <LINK> with the REV attribute

TITLE Procedure - generates <TITLE>

META Procedure - generates <META>

SCRIPT Procedure - generates <SCRIPT>

STYLE Procedure - generates <STYLE>

ISINDEX Procedure - generates <ISINDEX>

Applet Tags

APPLETOPEN Procedure, APPLETCLOSE Procedure - generate <APPLET> and </APPLET>

PARAM Procedure - generates <PARAM>

List Tags

OLISTOPEN Procedure, OLISTCLOSE Procedure - generate <OL> and </OL>

ULISTOPEN Procedure, ULISTCLOSE Procedure - generate <UL> and </UL>

DLISTOPEN Procedure, DLISTCLOSE Procedure- generate <DL> and </DL>

DLISTTERM Procedure - generates <DT>

DLISTDEF Procedure - generates <DD>

DIRLISTOPEN Procedure, DIRLISTCLOSE Procedure - generate <DIR> and </DIR>

LISTHEADER Procedure - generates <LH>

LISTINGOPEN Procedure, LISTINGCLOSE Procedure - generate <LISTING> and </LISTING>

MENULISTOPEN Procedure - generate <MENU> and </MENU>

LISTITEM Procedure - generates <LI>

Form Tags

FORMOPEN Procedure, FORMCLOSE Procedure - generate <FORM> and </FORM>

FORMCHECKBOX Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="CHECKBOX">

FORMHIDDEN Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="HIDDEN">

FORMIMAGE Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="IMAGE">

FORMPASSWORD Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="PASSWORD">

FORMRADIO Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="RADIO">

FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure, FORMSELECTCLOSE Procedure - generate <SELECT> and </SELECT>

FORMSELECTOPTION Procedure - generates <OPTION>

FORMTEXT Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="TEXT">

FORMTEXTAREA Procedure - generate <TEXTAREA>

FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Procedure, FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Procedure - generate <TEXTAREA> and </TEXTAREA>

FORMRESET Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="RESET">

FORMSUBMIT Procedure - generates <INPUT TYPE="SUBMIT">

Table Tags

TABLEOPEN Procedure, TABLECLOSE Procedure - generate <TABLE> and </TABLE>

TABLECAPTION Procedure - generates <CAPTION>

TABLEROWOPEN Procedure, TABLEROWCLOSE Procedure - generate <TR> and </TR>

TABLEHEADER Procedure - generates <TH>

TABLEDATA Procedure - generates <TD>

IMG, HR, and A Tags

HR Procedure, LINE Procedure - generate <HR>

IMG Procedure, IMG2 Procedure - generate <IMG>

ANCHOR Procedure, ANCHOR2 Procedure - generate <A>

MAPOPEN Procedure, MAPCLOSE Procedure - generate <MAP> and </MAP>

Paragraph Formatting Tags

HEADER Procedure - generates heading tags (<H1> to <H6>)

PARA Procedure, PARAGRAPH Procedure - generate <P>

PRN Procedures, PRINT Procedures - generate any text that is passed in

PRINTS Procedure, PS Procedure - generate any text that is passed in; special characters in HTML are escaped

PREOPEN Procedure, PRECLOSE Procedure - generate <PRE> and </PRE>

BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Procedure, BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Procedure - generate <BLOCKQUOTE> and </BLOCKQUOTE>

DIV Procedure - generates <DIV>

NL Procedure, BR Procedure - generate

NOBR Procedure - generates <NOBR>

WBR Procedure - generates <WBR>

PLAINTEXT Procedure - generates <PLAINTEXT>

ADDRESS Procedure - generates <ADDRESS>

MAILTO Procedure - generates <A> with the MAILTO attribute

AREA Procedure - generates <AREA>

BGSOUND Procedure - generates <BGSOUND>

Character Formatting Tags

BASEFONT Procedure - generates <BASEFONT>

BIG Procedure - generates <BIG>

BOLD Procedure - generates <B>

CENTER Procedure - generates <CENTER> and </CENTER>

CENTEROPEN Procedure, CENTERCLOSE Procedure - generate <CENTER> and </CENTER>

CITE Procedure - generates <CITE>

CODE Procedure - generates <CODE>

DFN Procedure - generates <DFN>

EM Procedure, EMPHASIS Procedure - generate <EM>

FONTOPEN Procedure, FONTCLOSE Procedure - generate <FONT> and </FONT>

ITALIC Procedure - generates <I>

KBD Procedure, KEYBOARD Procedure - generate <KBD> and </KBD>

S Procedure - generates <S>

SAMPLE Procedure - generates <SAMP>

SMALL Procedure - generates <SMALL>

STRIKE Procedure - generates <STRIKE>

STRONG Procedure - generates <STRONG>

SUB Procedure - generates <SUB>

SUP Procedure - generates <SUP>

TELETYPE Procedure - generates <TT>

UNDERLINE Procedure - generates <U>

VARIABLE Procedure - generates <VAR>

Frame Tags

FRAME Procedure - generates <FRAME>

FRAMESETOPEN Procedure, FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure - generate <FRAMESET> and </FRAMESET>

NOFRAMESOPEN Procedure, NOFRAMESCLOSE Procedure - generate <NOFRAMES> and </NOFRAMES>

Summary of HTP Subprograms

Table 208–1 HTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADDRESS Procedure on page 208-15	Generates the <ADDRESS> and </ADDRESS> tags which specify the address, author and signature of a document
ANCHOR Procedure on page 208-16	Generates the <A> and </A> tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link
ANCHOR2 Procedure on page 208-17	Generates the <A> and </A> tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link
APPLETCLOSE Procedure on page 208-18	Closes the applet invocation with the </APPLET> tag
APPLETOPEN Procedure on page 208-19	Generates the <APPLET> tag which begins the invocation of a Java applet
AREA Procedure on page 208-20	Generates the <AREA> tag, which defines a client-side image map
BASE Procedure on page 208-21	Generates the <BASE> tag which records the URL of the document
BASEFONT Procedure on page 208-22	Generates the <BASEFONT> tag which specifies the base font size for a Web page
BGSOUND Procedure on page 208-23	Generates the <BGSOUND> tag which includes audio for a Web page
BIG Procedure on page 208-24	Generates the <BIG> and </BIG> tags which direct the browser to render the text in a bigger font
BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Procedure on page 208-25	Generates the </BLOCKQUOTE> tag which mark the end of a section of quoted text
BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Procedure on page 208-26	Generates the <BLOCKQUOTE> tag, which marks the beginning of a section of quoted text
BODYCLOSE Procedure on page 208-27	Generates the </BODY> tag which marks the end of a body section of an HTML document
BODYOPEN Procedure on page 208-28	Generates the <BODY> tag which marks the beginning of the body section of an HTML document
BOLD Procedure on page 208-29	Generates the <B> and </B> tags which direct the browser to display the text in boldface
BR Procedure on page 208-30	Generates the tag which begins a new line of text
CENTER Procedure on page 208-31	Generates the <CENTER> and </CENTER> tags which center a section of text within a Web page
CENTERCLOSE Procedure on page 208-32	Generates the </CENTER> tag which marks the end of a section of text to center
CENTEROPEN Procedure on page 208-33	Generates the <CENTER> tag which mark the beginning of a section of text to center
CITE Procedure on page 208-34	Generates the <CITE> and </CITE> tags which direct the browser to render the text as a citation
CODE Procedure on page 208-35	Generates the <CODE> and </CODE> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font or however "code" is defined stylistically

Table 208–1 (Cont.) HTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
COMMENT Procedure on page 208-36	Generates procedure generates the comment tags <!-- ctext -->
DFN Procedure on page 208-37	Generates the <DFN> and </DFN> tags which direct the browser to mark the text as italics or however "definition" is defined stylistically
DIRLISTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-38	Generates the </DIR> tag which ends a directory list section
DIRLISTOPEN Procedure on page 208-39	Generates the <DIR> which starts a directory list section
DIV Procedure on page 208-40	Generates the <DIV> tag which creates document divisions
DLISTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-41	Generates the </DL> tag which ends a definition list
DLISTDEF Procedure on page 208-42	Generates the <DD> tag, which inserts definitions of terms
DLISTOPEN Procedure on page 208-43	Generates the <DL> tag which starts a definition list
DLISTTERM Procedure on page 208-44	Generates the <DT> tag which defines a term in a definition list <DL>
EM Procedure on page 208-45	Generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized
EMPHASIS Procedure on page 208-46	Generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized
ESCAPE_SC Procedure on page 208-47	Replaces characters that have special meaning in HTML with their escape sequences
FONTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-48	Generates the </FONT> tag which marks the end of a section of text with the specified font characteristics
FONTOPEN Procedure on page 208-49	Generates the <FONT> which marks the beginning of section of text with the specified font characteristics
FORMCHECKBOX Procedure on page 208-50	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="checkbox" which inserts a checkbox element in a form
FORMCLOSE Procedure on page 208-51	Generates the </FORM> tag which marks the end of a form section in an HTML document
FORMOPEN Procedure on page 208-52	Generates the <FORM> tag which marks the beginning of a form section in an HTML document
FORMFILE Procedure on page 208-53	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="file" which inserts a file form element, and is used for file uploading for a given page
FORMHIDDEN Procedure on page 208-54	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="hidden"which inserts a hidden form element
FORMIMAGE Procedure on page 208-55	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="image" which creates an image field that the user clicks to submit the form immediately
FORMPASSWORD Procedure on page 208-56	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="password" which creates a single-line text entry field
FORMRADIO Procedure on page 208-57	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="radio", which creates a radio button on the HTML form

Table 208–1 (Cont.) HTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FORMRESET Procedure on page 208-58	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="reset" which creates a button that, when selected, resets the form fields to their initial values
FORMSELECTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-59	Generates the </SELECT> tag which marks the end of a Select form element
FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure on page 208-60	Generates the </SELECT> tag which marks the beginning of a Select form element
FORMSELECTOPTION Procedure on page 208-61	Generates the <OPTION> tag which represents one choice in a Select element
FORMSUBMIT Procedure on page 208-62	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="submit" which creates a button that, when clicked, submits the form
FORMTEXT Procedure on page 208-63	Generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="text", which creates a field for a single line of text
FORMTEXTAREA Procedure on page 208-64	Generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area
FORMTEXTAREA2 Procedure on page 208-65	Generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area with the ability to specify a wrap style
FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Procedure on page 208-66	Generates the </TEXTAREA> tag which ends a text area form element
FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Procedure on page 208-67	Generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element
FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Procedure on page 208-68	Generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element with the ability to specify a wrap style
FRAME Procedure on page 208-69	Generates the <FRAME> tag which begins the characteristics of a frame created by a <FRAMESET> tag
FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure on page 208-70	Generates the </FRAMESET> tag which ends a frameset section
FRAMESETOPEN Procedure on page 208-71	Generates the </FRAMESET> tag which begins a frameset section
HEADCLOSE Procedure on page 208-72	Generates the </HEAD> tag which marks the end of an HTML document head section
HEADER Procedure on page 208-73	Generates opening heading tags (<H1> to <H6>) and their corresponding closing tags (</H1> to </H6>)
HEADOPEN Procedure on page 208-74	Generates the <HEAD> tag which marks the beginning of the HTML document head section
HR Procedure on page 208-75	Generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document
HTMLCLOSE Procedure on page 208-76	Generates the </HTML> tag which marks the end of an HTML document
HTMLOPEN Procedure on page 208-77	Generates the <HTML> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML document
IMG Procedure on page 208-78	Generates the <IMG> tag which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page
IMG2 Procedure on page 208-79	Generates the <IMG> tag which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page with the option of specifying values for the USEMAP attribute

Table 208–1 (Cont.) HTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ISINDEX Procedure on page 208-80	Creates a single entry field with a prompting text, such as "*enter value*," then sends that value to the URL of the page or program
ITALIC Procedure on page 208-81	Generates the <I> and </I> tags which direct the browser to render the text in italics
KBD Procedure on page 208-82	Generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font
KEYBOARD Procedure on page 208-83	Generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags, which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font
LINE Procedure on page 208-84	Generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document
LINKREL Procedure on page 208-85	Generates the <LINK> tag with the REL attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the anchor to the target
LINKREV Procedure on page 208-86	Generates the <LINK> tag with the REV attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the target to the anchor
LISTHEADER Procedure on page 208-87	Generates the <LH> and </LH> tags which print an HTML tag at the beginning of the list
LISTINGCLOSE Procedure on page 208-88	Generates the </LISTING> tags which marks the end of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page
LISTINGOPEN Procedure on page 208-89	Generates the <LISTING> tag which marks the beginning of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page
LISTITEM Procedure on page 208-90	Generates the <LI> tag, which indicates a list item
MAILTO Procedure on page 208-91	Generates the <A> tag with the HREF set to 'mailto' prepended to the mail address argument
MAPCLOSE Procedure on page 208-92	Generates the </MAP> tag which marks the end of a set of regions in a client-side image map
MAPOPEN Procedure on page 208-93	Generates the <MAP> tag which mark the beginning of a set of regions in a client-side image map
MENULISTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-94	Generates the </MENU> tag which ends a list that presents one line for each item
MENULISTOPEN Procedure on page 208-95	Generates the <MENU> tag which begins a list that presents one line for each item
META Procedure on page 208-96	Generates the <META> tag, which embeds meta-information about the document and also specifies values for HTTP headers
NL Procedure on page 208-97	Generates the tag which begins a new line of text
NOBR Procedure on page 208-98	Generates the <NOBR> and </NOBR> tags which turn off line-breaking in a section of text
NOFRAMESCLOSE Procedure on page 208-99	Generates the </NOFRAMES> tag which marks the end of a no-frames section
NOFRAMESOPEN Procedure on page 208-100	Generates the <NOFRAMES> tag which mark the beginning of a no-frames section
OLISTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-101	Generates the </OL> tag which defines the end of an ordered list

Table 208–1 (Cont.) HTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
OLISTOPEN Procedure on page 208-102	Generates the <OL> tag which marks the beginning of an ordered list
PARA Procedure on page 208-103	Generates the <P> tag which indicates that the text that comes after the tag is to be formatted as a paragraph
PARAGRAPH Procedure on page 208-104	Adds attributes to the <P> tag
PARAM Procedure on page 208-105	Generates the <PARAM> tag which specifies parameter values for Java applets
PLAINTEXT Procedure on page 208-106	Generates the <PLAINTEXT> and </PLAINTEXT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in fixed-width type
PRECLOSE Procedure on page 208-107	Generates the </PRE> tag which marks the end of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page
PREOPEN Procedure on page 208-108	Generates the <PRE> tag which marks the beginning of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page
PRINT Procedures on page 208-109	Generates the specified parameter as a string terminated with the \n newline character
PRINTS Procedure on page 208-110	Generates a string and replaces the following characters with the corresponding escape sequence
PRN Procedures on page 208-111	Generates the specified parameter as a string
PS Procedure on page 208-112	Generates a string and replaces the following characters with the corresponding escape sequence.
S Procedure on page 208-113	Generates the <S> and </S> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type
SAMPLE Procedure on page 208-114	Generates the <SAMP> and </SAMP> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in monospace font or however "sample" is defined stylistically
SCRIPT Procedure on page 208-115	Generates the <SCRIPT> and </SCRIPT> tags which contain a script written in languages such as JavaScript and VBscript
SMALL Procedure on page 208-116	Generates the <SMALL> and </SMALL> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround using a small font
STRIKE Procedure on page 208-117	Generates the <STRIKE> and </STRIKE> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type
STRONG Procedure on page 208-118	Generates the <STRONG> and </STRONG> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in bold or however "strong" is defined stylistically
STYLE Procedure on page 208-119	Generates the <STYLE> and </STYLE> tags which include a style sheet in a Web page
SUB Procedure on page 208-120	Generates the _{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as subscript
SUP Procedure on page 208-121	Generates the ^{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as superscript
TABLECAPTION Procedure on page 208-122	Generates the <CAPTION> and </CAPTION> tags which place a caption in an HTML table
TABLECLOSE Procedure on page 208-123	Generates the </TABLE> tag which marks the end of an HTML table

Table 208–1 (Cont.) HTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
TABLEDATA Procedure on page 208-124	Generates the <TD> and </TD> tags which insert data into a cell of an HTML table
TABLEHEADER Procedure on page 208-125	Generates the <TH> and </TH> tags which insert a header cell in an HTML table.
TABLEOPEN Procedure on page 208-126	Generates the <TABLE> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML table
TABLEROWCLOSE Procedure on page 208-127	Generates the </TR> tag which marks the end of a new row in an HTML table
TABLEROWOPEN Procedure on page 208-128	Generates the <TR> tag which marks the beginning of a new row in an HTML table
TELETYPE Procedure on page 208-129	Generates the <TT> and </TT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in a fixed width typewriter font, for example, the courier font
TITLE Procedure on page 208-130	Generates the <TITLE> and </TITLE> tags which specify the text to display in the titlebar of the browser window
ULISTCLOSE Procedure on page 208-131	Generates the </UL> tag which marks the end of an unordered list
ULISTOPEN Procedure on page 208-132	Generates the <UL> tag which marks the beginning of an unordered list
UNDERLINE Procedure on page 208-133	Generates the <U> and </U> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround with an underline
VARIABLE Procedure on page 208-134	Generates the <VAR> and </VAR> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in italics or however "variable" is defined stylistically.
WBR Procedure on page 208-135	Generates the <WBR> tag, which inserts a soft line break within a section of NOBR text

ADDRESS Procedure

This procedure generates the <ADDRESS> and </ADDRESS> tags which specify the address, author and signature of a document.

Syntax

```
HTP.ADDRESS (
   cvalue          IN       VARCHAR2
   cnowrap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–2 ADDRESS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The string that goes between the <ADDRESS> and </ADDRESS> tags.
cnowrap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is included in the tag
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag

Examples

This procedure generates

<ADDRESS CLEAR="*cclear*" NOWRAP *cattributes*>*cvalue*</ADDRESS>

ANCHOR Procedure

This procedure and the ANCHOR2 Procedure procedures generate the <A> and </A> HTML tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link. The difference between these subprograms is that the ANCHOR2 Procedure provides a target and therefore can be used for a frame.

Syntax

```
HTP.ANCHOR (
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–3 ANCHOR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The value for the HREF attribute.
ctext	The string that goes between the <A> and </A> tags.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<A HREF="curl" NAME="cname" cattributes>ctext</A>
```

Usage Notes

This tag accepts several attributes, but either HREF or NAME is required. HREF specifies to where to link. NAME allows this tag to be a target of a hypertext link.

ANCHOR2 Procedure

This procedure and the ANCHOR Procedure generate the <A> and </A> HTML tags which specify the source or destination of a hypertext link. The difference between these subprograms is that this procedures provides a target and therefore can be used for a frame.

Syntax

```
HTP.ANCHOR2 (
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ctarget        in       varchar2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–4 ANCHOR2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The value for the HREF attribute.
ctext	The string that goes between the <A> and </A> tags.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<A HREF="curl" NAME="cname" TARGET = "ctarget" cattributes>ctext</A>
```

APPLETCLOSE Procedure

This procedure closes the applet invocation with the `</APPLET>` tag. You must first invoke the a Java applet using APPLETOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.APPLETCLOSE;
```

APPLETOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <APPLET> tag which begins the invocation of a Java applet. You close the applet invocation with APPLETCLOSE Procedure which generates the </APPLET> tag.

Syntax

```
HTP.APPLETOPEN (
   ccode          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cheight        IN       NUMBER,
   cwidth         IN       NUMBER,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–5 APPLETOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccode	The the value for the CODE attribute which specifies the name of the applet class.
cheight	The value for the HEIGHT attribute.
cwidth	The value for the WIDTH attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<APPLET CODE=ccode HEIGHT=cheight WIDTH=cwidth cattributes>
```

so that, for example,

```
HTP.appletopen('testclass.class', 100, 200, 'CODEBASE="/ows-applets"')
```

generates

```
<APPLET CODE="testclass.class" height=100 width=200 CODEBASE="/ows-applets">
```

Usage Notes

- Specify parameters to the Java applet using the PARAM Procedure.
- Use the cattributes parameter to specify the CODEBASE attribute since the PL/SQL cartridge does not know where to find the class files. The CODEBASE attribute specifies the virtual path containing the class files.

AREA Procedure

This procedure generates the <AREA> tag, which defines a client-side image map. The <AREA> tag defines areas within the image and destinations for the areas.

Syntax

```
HTP.AREA (
   ccoords        IN       VARCHAR2
   cshape         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   chref          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnohref        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ctarget        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–6 AREA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccords	The the value for the COORDS attribute.
cshape	The value for the SHAPE attribute.
chref	The value for the HREF attribute.
cnohref	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOHREF attribute is added to the tag.
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<AREA COORDS="ccoords" SHAPE="cshape" HREF="chref" NOHREF TARGET="ctarget"
cattributes>
```

BASE Procedure

This procedure generates the <BASE> tag which records the URL of the document.

Syntax

```
HTP.BASE (
   ctarget        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–7 BASE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute which establishes a window name to which all links in this document are targeted.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BASE HREF="<current URL>" TARGET="ctarget" cattributes>
```

BASEFONT Procedure

This procedure generates the <BASEFONT> tag which specifies the base font size for a Web page.

Syntax

```
HTP.BASEFONT (
   nsize    IN    INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 208–8 BASEFONT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
nsize	The value for the SIZE attribute.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BASEFONT SIZE="nsize">
```

BGSOUND Procedure

This procedure generates the <BGSOUND> tag which includes audio for a Web page.

Syntax

```
HTP.BGSOUND (
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cloop          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–9 BGSOUND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute.
cloop	The value for the LOOP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<BGSOUND SRC="*csrc*" LOOP="*cloop*" *cattributes*>

BIG Procedure

This procedure generates the <BIG> and </BIG> tags which direct the browser to render the text in a bigger font.

Syntax

```
HTP.BIG (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–10 BIG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The the text that goes between the tags.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BIG cattributes>ctext</BIG>
```

BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the `</BLOCKQUOTE>` tag which mark the end of a section of quoted text. You mark the beginning of a section of text by means of the BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.BLOCKQUOTECLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</BLOCKQUOTE>
```

BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <BLOCKQUOTE> tag, which marks the beginning of a section of quoted text. You mark the end of a section of text by means of the BLOCKQUOTECLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.BLOCKQUOTEOPEN (
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–11 BLOCKQUOTEOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cnowrap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BLOCKQUOTE CLEAR="cclear" NOWRAP cattributes>
```

BODYCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </BODY> tag which marks the end of a body section of an HTML document.You mark the beginning of a body section by means of the BODYOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.BODYCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</BODY>
```

BODYOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <BODY> tag which marks the beginning of the body section of an HTML document. You mark the end of a body section by means of the BODYCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.BODYOPEN (
   cbackground    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–12 BODYOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cbackground	The value for the BACKGROUND attribute which specifies a graphic file to use for the background of the document.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BODY background="cbackground" cattributes>
```

so that

```
HTP.BODYOPEN('/img/background.gif');
```

generates:

```
<BODY background="/img/background.gif">
```

BOLD Procedure

This procedure generates the <B> and </B> tags which direct the browser to display the text in boldface.

Syntax

```
HTP.BOLD (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–13 BOLD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text that goes between the tags.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<B *cattributes*>*ctext*</B>

BR Procedure

This procedure generates the <BR> tag which begins a new line of text. It performs the same operation as the NL Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.BR(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–14 BR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BR CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

CENTER Procedure

This procedure generates the <CENTER> and </CENTER> tags which center a section of text within a Web page.

Syntax

```
HTP.CENTER (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–15 CENTER Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text that goes between the tags.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<CENTER>ctext</CENTER>
```

CENTERCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </CENTER> tag which marks the end of a section of text to center. You mark the beginning of a of a section of text to center by means of the CENTEROPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.CENTERCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</CENTER>
```

CENTEROPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <CENTER> tag which mark the beginning of a section of text to center.You mark the beginning of a of a section of text to center by means of the CENTERCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.CENTEROPEN;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<CENTER>
```

CITE Procedure

This procedure generates the <CITE> and </CITE> tags which direct the browser to render the text as a citation.

Syntax

```
HTP.CITE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–16 CITE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render as citation.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<CITE cattributes>ctext</CITE>
```

CODE Procedure

This procedure generates the <CODE> and </CODE> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font or however "code" is defined stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTP.CODE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–17 CODE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render as code.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag

Examples

This procedure generates

<CODE *cattributes*>*ctext*</CODE>

COMMENT Procedure

This procedure generates the comment tags.

Syntax

```
HTP.COMMENT (
   ctext           IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–18 COMMENT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The comment.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<!-- ctext -->
```

DFN Procedure

This procedure generates the <DFN> and </DFN> tags which direct the browser to mark the text in italics or however "definition" is described stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTP.DFN (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–19 DFN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in italics.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<DFN>ctext</DFN>
```

DIRLISTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </DIR> tag which ends a directory list section. You start a directory list section with the DIRLISTOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.DIRLISTCLOSE;
```

Usage Notes

A directory list presents a list of items that contains up to 20 characters. Items in this list are typically arranged in columns, 24 characters wide. Insert the <LI> tag directly or invoke the LISTITEM Procedure so that the <LI> tag appears directly after the </DIR> tag to define the items as a list.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</DIR>
```

DIRLISTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <DIR> which starts a directory list section. You end a directory list section with the DIRLISTCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.DIRLISTOPEN;
```

Usage Notes

A directory list presents a list of items that contains up to 20 characters. Items in this list are typically arranged in columns, 24 characters wide. Insert the <LI> tag directly or invoke the LISTITEM Procedure so that the <LI> tag appears directly after the </DIR> tag to define the items as a list.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<DIR>
```

DIV Procedure

This procedure generates the <DIV> tag which creates document divisions.

Syntax

```
HTP.DIV (
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–20 DIV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<DIV ALIGN="calign" cattributes>
```

DLISTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </DL> tag which ends a definition list. You start a definition list by means of the DLISTOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.DLISTCLOSE;
```

Usage Notes

A definition list looks like a glossary: it contains terms and definitions. Terms are inserted using the DLISTTERM Procedure and definitions are inserted using the DLISTDEF Procedure.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</DL>
```

DLISTDEF Procedure

This procedure generates the <DD> tag, which inserts definitions of terms. Use this tag for a definition list <DL>. Terms are tagged <DT> and definitions are tagged <DD>.

Syntax

```
HTP.DLISTDEF (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–21 DLISTDEF Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The definition of the term.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<DD CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>ctext
```

DLISTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <DL> tag which starts a definition list. You end a definition list by means of the DLISTCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.DLISTOPEN (
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–22 DLISTOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Usage Notes

A definition list looks like a glossary: it contains terms and definitions. Terms are inserted using the DLISTTERM Procedure and definitions are inserted using the DLISTDEF Procedure.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<DL CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

DLISTTERM Procedure

This procedure generates the <DT> tag which defines a term in a definition list <DL>.

Syntax

```
HTP.DLISTTERM (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–23 DLISTTERM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The term.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<DT CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>ctext
```

EM Procedure

This procedure generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized. It performs the same task as the EMPHASIS Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.EM(
     ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
     cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–24 EM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to emphasize.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<EM cattributes>ctext</EM>
```

EMPHASIS Procedure

This procedure generates the <EM> and </EM> tags, which define text to be emphasized. It performs the same task as the EM Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.EMPHASIS(
     ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
     cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–25 EMPHASIS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to emphasize.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<EM cattributes>ctext</EM>
```

ESCAPE_SC Procedure

This procedure replaces characters that have special meaning in HTML with their escape sequences. The following characters are converted:

- `&` to `&`
- `"` to `&quot:`
- `<` to `<`
- `>` to `>`

This procedure performs the same operation as PRINTS Procedures and PS Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.ESCAPE_SC(
     ctext          IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–26 ESCAPE_SC Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text string to convert.

FONTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the</FONT> tag which marks the end of a section of text with the specified font characteristics. You mark the beginning of the section text by means of the FONTOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FONTCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</FONT>
```

FONTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <FONT> which marks the beginning of section of text with the specified font characteristics. You mark the end of the section text by means of the FONTCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FONTOPEN(
   ccolor          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cface           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csize           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–27 FONTOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccolor	The value for the COLOR attribute.
cface	The value for the FACE attribute
csize	The value for the SIZE attribute
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<FONT COLOR="ccolor" FACE="cface" SIZE="csize" cattributes>
```

FORMCHECKBOX Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="checkbox" which inserts a checkbox element in a form. A checkbox element is a button that the user toggles on or off.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMCHECKBOX(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'ON',
   cchecked       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–28 FORMCHECKBOX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cchecked	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the CHECKED attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="checkbox" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" CHECKED cattributes>
```

FORMCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </FORM> tag which marks the end of a form section in an HTML document.You mark the beginning of the form section by means of the FORMOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</FORM>
```

FORMOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <FORM> tag which marks the beginning of a form section in an HTML document. You mark the end of the form section by means of the FORMCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMOPEN(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cmethod        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'POST',
   ctarget        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cenctype       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–29 FORMOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The URL of the WRB or CGI script where the contents of the form is sent. This parameter is required.
cmethod	The value for the METHOD attribute. The value can be "GET" or "POST".
ctarget	The value for the TARGET attribute.
cenctype	The value for the ENCTYPE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<FORM ACTION="curl" METHOD="cmethod" TARGET="ctarget" ENCTYPE="cenctype"
cattributes>
```

FORMFILE Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="file" which inserts a file form element. This is used for file uploading for a given page.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMFILE(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   caccept        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–30 FORMFILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
caccept	A comma-delimited list of MIME types for upload.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="file" NAME="cname" ACCEPT="caccept" cattributes>
```

FORMHIDDEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="hidden", which inserts a hidden form element. This element is not seen by the user. It submits additional values to the script.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMHIDDEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–31 FORMHIDDEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="hidden" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMIMAGE Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="image" which creates an image field that the user clicks to submit the form immediately. The coordinates of the selected point are measured in pixels, and returned (along with other contents of the form) in two name/value pairs. The x coordinate is submitted under the name of the field with .x appended, and the y coordinate with .y appended. Any VALUE attribute is ignored.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMIMAGE(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–32 FORMIMAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute that specifies the image file.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="image" NAME="cname" SRC="csrc" ALIGN="calign" cattributes>
```

FORMPASSWORD Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="password" which creates a single-line text entry field. When the user enters text in the field, each character is represented by one asterisk. This is used for entering passwords.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMPASSWORD(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   csize          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cmaxlength     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–33 FORMPASSWORD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
csize	The value for the SIZE attribute.
cmaxlength	The value for the MAXLENGTH attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="password" NAME="cname" SIZE="csize" MAXLENGTH="cmaxlength"
VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMRADIO Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="radio", which creates a radio button on the HTML form. Within a set of radio buttons, the user selects only one. Each radio button in the same set has the same name, but different values. The selected radio button generates a name/value pair.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMRADIO(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2,
   cchecked       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–34 FORMRADIO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cchecked	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the CHECKED attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="radio" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" CHECKED cattributes>
```

FORMRESET Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="reset" which creates a button that, when selected, resets the form fields to their initial values.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMRESET(
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'Reset',
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–35 FORMRESET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="reset" VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMSELECTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </SELECT> tag which marks the end of a Select form element. A Select form element is a listbox where the user selects one or more values. You mark the beginning of Select form element by means of the FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure.The values are inserted using FORMSELECTOPTION Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMSELECTCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</SELECT>
```

as shown under Examples of the FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure.

FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <SELECT> tags which creates a Select form element. A Select form element is a listbox where the user selects one or more values. You mark the end of Select form element by means of the FORMSELECTCLOSE Procedure.The values are inserted using FORMSELECTOPTION Procedure.

Syntax

```
FORMSELECTOPEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cprompt        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   nsize          IN       INTEGER    DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–36 FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cprompt	The string preceding the list box.
nsize	The value for the SIZE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
cprompt <SELECT NAME="cname" SIZE="nsize" cattributes>
</SELECT>
```

so that

```
HTP.FORMSELECTOPEN('greatest_player';
    'Pick the greatest player:');
HTP.FORMSELECTOPTION('Messier');
HTP.FORMSELECTOPTION('Howe');
HTP.FORMSELECTOPTION('Gretzky');.
HTP.FORMSELECTCLOSE;
```

generates

```
Pick the greatest player:
<SELECT NAME="greatest_player">
<OPTION>Messier
<OPTION>Howe
<OPTION>Gretzky
</SELECT>
```

FORMSELECTOPTION Procedure

This procedure generates the <OPTION> tag which represents one choice in a Select element.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMSELECTOPTION(
   cvalue          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cselected       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–37 FORMSELECTOPTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The text for the option.
cvalue	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the SELECTED attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<OPTION SELECTED cattributes>cvalue
```

as shown under Examples of the FORMSELECTOPEN Procedure.

FORMSUBMIT Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="submit" which creates a button that, when clicked, submits the form. If the button has a NAME attribute, the button contributes a name/value pair to the submitted data.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMSUBMIT(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalue        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'Submit',
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–38 FORMSUBMIT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="submit" NAME="cname" VALUE="cvalue" cattributes>
```

FORMTEXT Procedure

This procedure generates the <INPUT> tag with TYPE="text", which creates a field for a single line of text.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMTEXT(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   csize          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cmaxlength     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–39 FORMTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
csize	The value for the SIZE attribute.
cmaxlength	The value for the MAXLENGTH attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<INPUT TYPE="text" NAME="cname" SIZE="csize" MAXLENGTH="cmaxlength" VALUE="cvalue"
cattributes>
```

FORMTEXTAREA Procedure

This procedure generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area. This field enables entering several lines of text. The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREA2 Procedure which in addition has the cwrap parameter that lets you specify a wrap style.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMTEXTAREA(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign      , IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–40 FORMTEXTAREA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign"
cattributes></TEXTAREA>
```

FORMTEXTAREA2 Procedure

This procedure generates the <TEXTAREA> tag, which creates a text field that has no predefined text in the text area. This field enables entering several lines of text.The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREA Procedure except that in that case you cannot specify a wrap style.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMTEXTAREA2(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–41 FORMTEXTAREA2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign" WRAP="cwrap"
cattributes></TEXTAREA>
```

FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </TEXTAREA> tag which ends a text area form element. You open a text area element by means of eitherFORMTEXTAREAOPEN Procedure or FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMTEXTAREACLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</TEXTAREA>
```

FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element. The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Procedure which in addition has the cwrap parameter that lets you specify a wrap style. You mark the end of a text area form element by means of the FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMTEXTAREAOPEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–42 FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign" cattributes>
```

FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Procedure

This procedure generates the <TEXTAREA> which marks the beginning of a text area form element. The same operation is performed by the FORMTEXTAREAOPEN Procedure except that in that case you cannot specify a wrap style. You mark the end of a text area form element by means of the FORMTEXTAREACLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   nrows          IN       INTEGER,
   ncolumns       IN       INTEGER,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–43 FORMTEXTAREAOPEN2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
nrows	The value for the ROWS attribute.This is an integer.
ncolumns	The value for the COLS attribute.This is an integer.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TEXTAREA NAME="cname" ROWS="nrows" COLS="ncolumns" ALIGN="calign" WRAP = "cwrap"
cattributes>
```

FRAME Procedure

This procedure generates the <FRAME> tag which begins the characteristics of a frame created by a <FRAMESET> tag.

Syntax

```
HTP.FRAME(
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cmarginwidth   IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cmarginheight  IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cscrolling     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnoresize      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–44 FRAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
csrc	The URL to display in the frame.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cmarginwidth	The value for the MARGINWIDTH attribute.
cscrolling	The value for the SCROLLING attribute.
cnoresize	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NORESIZE attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<FRAME SRC="csrc" NAME="cname" MARGINWIDTH="cmarginwidth"
MARGINHEIGHT="cmarginheight" SCROLLING="cscrolling" NORESIZE cattributes>
```

FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </FRAMESET> tag which ends a frameset section. You mark the beginning of a frameset section by means of the FRAMESETOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FRAMESETCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</FRAMESET>
```

FRAMESETOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <FRAMESET> tag which define a frameset section. You mark the end of a frameset section by means of the FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.FRAMESETOPEN(
   crows          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccols          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–45 FRAMESETOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
crows	The value for the ROWS attribute.
ccols	The value for the COLS attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<FRAMESET ROWS="crows" COLS="ccols" cattributes>
```

HEADCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </HEAD> tag which marks the end of an HTML document head section. You mark the beginning of an HTML document head section by means of the HEADOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.HEADCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</HEAD>
```

HEADER Procedure

This procedure generates opening heading tags (<H1> to <H6>) and their corresponding closing tags (</H1> to </H6>).

Syntax

```
HTP.HEADER(
   nsize          IN       INTEGER,
   cheader        IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–46 HEADER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
nsize	The the heading level. This is an integer between 1 and 6.
cheader	The text to display in the heading.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cnowrap	The value for the NOWRAP attribute.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

```
HTP.header (1,'Overview');
```

produces:

```
<H1>Overview</H1>
```

HEADOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <HEAD> tag which marks the beginning of the HTML document head section. You mark the end of an HTML document head section by means of the HEADCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.HEADOPEN;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<HEAD>
```

HR Procedure

This procedure generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document.This subprogram performs the same operation as the LINE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.HR(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–47 HR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute which specifies a custom image as the source of the line.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<HR CLEAR="cclear" SRC="csrc" cattributes>
```

HTMLCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </HTML> tag which marks the end of an HTML document. You use the HTMLOPEN Procedure to mark the beginning of an HTML document.

Syntax

```
HTP.HTMLCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</HTML>
```

HTMLOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <HTML> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML document. You use the HTMLCLOSE Procedure to mark the end of the an HTML document.

Syntax

```
HTP.HTMLOPEN;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<HTML>
```

IMG Procedure

This procedure generates the <IMG> tag which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page. The IMG2 Procedure performs the same operation but additionally uses the cusemap parameter.

Syntax

```
HTP.IMG(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calt           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cismap         IN       VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–48 IMG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The value for the SRC attribute.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
calt	The value for the ALT attribute which specifies alternative text to display if the browser does not support images.
cismap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the ISMAP attribute is added to the tag. The attribute indicates that the image is an imagemap.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<IMG SRC="curl" ALIGN="calign" ALT="calt" ISMAP cattributes>
```

IMG2 Procedure

This procedure generates the <IMG> tag, which directs the browser to load an image onto the HTML page. The IMG Procedure performs the same operation but does not use the `cusemap` parameter.

Syntax

```
HTP.IMG2(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calt           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cismap         IN       VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   cusemap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–49 IMG2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`curl`	The value for the SRC attribute.
`calign`	The value for the `ALIGN` attribute.
`calt`	The value for the `ALT` attribute which specifies alternative text to display if the browser does not support images.
`cismap`	If the value for this parameter is not `NULL`, the `ISMAP` attribute is added to the tag. The attribute indicates that the image is an imagemap.
`cusemap`	The value for the `USEMAP` attribute which specifies a client-side image map.
`cattributes`	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<IMG SRC="curl" ALIGN="calign" ALT="calt" ISMAP USEMAP="cusemap" cattributes>
```

ISINDEX Procedure

This procedure creates a single entry field with a prompting text, such as "*enter value,*" then sends that value to the URL of the page or program.

Syntax

```
HTP.ISINDEX(
   cprompt        IN       VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–50 ISINDEX Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cprompt	The value for the PROMPT attribute.
curl	The value for the HREF attribute.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<ISINDEX PROMPT="cprompt" HREF="curl">
```

ITALIC Procedure

This procedure generates the <I> and </I> tags which direct the browser to render the text in italics.

Syntax

```
HTP.ITALIC(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–51 ITALIC Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in italics.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<I cattributes>ctext</I>
```

KBD Procedure

This procedure generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font. This subprogram performs the same operation as the KEYBOARD Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.KBD(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–52 KBD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in monospace.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<KBD *cattributes*>*ctext*</KBD>

KEYBOARD Procedure

This procedure generates the <KBD> and </KBD> tags, which direct the browser to render the text in monospace font. This subprogram performs the same operation as the KBD Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.KEYBOARD(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–53 KEYBOARD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in monospace.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<KBD *cattributes*>*ctext*</KBD>

LINE Procedure

This procedure generates the <HR> tag, which generates a line in the HTML document. This subprogram performs the same operation as the HR Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.LINE(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–54 LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute which specifies a custom image as the source of the line.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<HR CLEAR="cclear" SRC="csrc" cattributes>
```

LINKREL Procedure

This procedure generates the <LINK> tag with the REL attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the anchor to the target. This is only used when the HREF attribute is present. This is the opposite of LINKREV Procedure. This tag indicates a relationship between documents but does not create a link. To create a link, use the ANCHOR Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.LINKREL(
   crel           IN       VARCHAR2,
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctitle         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–55 LINKREL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
crel	The value for the REL attribute.
curl	The value for the URL attribute.
ctitle	The value for the TITLE attribute.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<LINK REL="crel" HREF="curl" TITLE="ctitle">
```

LINKREV Procedure

This procedure generates the <LINK> tag with the REV attribute which delineates the relationship described by the hypertext link from the target to the anchor. This is the opposite of the LINKREL Procedure. This tag indicates a relationship between documents, but does not create a link. To create a link, use the ANCHOR Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.LINKREV(
   crev           IN       VARCHAR2,
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctitle         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–56 LINKREV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
crel	The value for the REV attribute.
curl	The value for the URL attribute.
ctitle	The value for the TITLE attribute.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<LINK REV="crev" HREF="curl" TITLE="ctitle">
```

LISTHEADER Procedure

This procedure generates the <LH> and </LH> tags which print an HTML tag at the beginning of the list.

Syntax

```
HTP.LISTHEADER(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–57 LISTHEADER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to place between <LH> and </LH>.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<LH *cattributes*>*ctext*</LH>

LISTINGCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the `</LISTING>` tags which marks the end of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page. To mark the beginning of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page, use the LISTINGOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.LISTINGCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</LISTING>
```

LISTINGOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <LISTING> tag which marks the beginning of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page. To mark the end of a section of fixed-width text in the body of an HTML page, use the LISTINGCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.LISTINGOPEN;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<LISTING>
```

LISTITEM Procedure

This procedure generates the <LI> tag, which indicates a list item.

Syntax

```
HTP.LISTITEM(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdingbat       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–58 LISTITEM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text for the list item.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cdingbat	The value for the DINGBAT attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<LI CLEAR="cclear" DINGBAT="cdingbat" SRC="csrc" cattributes>ctext
```

MAILTO Procedure

This procedure generates the <A> tag with the HREF set to 'mailto' prepended to the mail address argument.

Syntax

```
HTP.MAILTO(
   caddress       IN       VARCHAR2,
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–59 MAILTO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
caddress	The email address of the recipient.
ctext	The clickable portion of the link.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<A HREF="mailto:caddress" NAME="cname" cattributes>ctext</A>
```

so that

```
HTP.mailto('pres@white_house.gov','Send Email to the President');
```

generates:

```
<A HREF="mailto:pres@white_house.gov">Send Email to the President</A>
```

MAPCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </MAP> tag which marks the end of a set of regions in a client-side image map. To mark the beginning of a set of regions in a client-side image map, use the MAPOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.MAPCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</MAP>
```

MAPOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <MAP> tag which mark the beginning of a set of regions in a client-side image map. To mark the end of a set of regions in a client-side image map, use the MAPCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.MAPOPEN(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–60 MAPOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<MAP NAME="cname" cattributes>
```

MENULISTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </MENU> tag which ends a list that presents one line for each item. To begin a list of this kind, use the MENULISTOPEN Procedure. The items in the list appear more compact than an unordered list. The LISTITEM Procedure defines the list items in a menu list.

Syntax

```
HTP.MENULISTCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</MENU>
```

MENULISTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <MENU> tag which begins a list that presents one line for each item. To end a list of this kind, use the MENULISTCLOSE Procedure.The items in the list appear more compact than an unordered list. The LISTITEM Procedure defines the list items in a menu list.

Syntax

```
HTP.MENULISTOPEN;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<MENU>
```

META Procedure

This procedure generates the <META> tag, which embeds meta-information about the document and also specifies values for HTTP headers. For example, you can specify the expiration date, keywords, and author name.

Syntax

```
HTP.META(
   chttp_equiv    IN       VARCHAR2,
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2,
   ccontent       IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–61 META Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
chttp_equiv	The value for the CHTTP_EQUIV attribute.
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
ccontent	The value for the CONTENT attribute.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<META HTTP-EQUIV="chttp_equiv" NAME ="cname" CONTENT="ccontent">
```

so that

```
HTP.meta ('Refresh', NULL, 120);
```

generates

```
<META HTTP-EQUIV="Refresh" CONTENT=120>
```

On some Web browsers, this causes the current URL to be reloaded automatically every 120 seconds.

NL Procedure

This procedure generates the <BR> tag which begins a new line of text. It performs the same operation as the BR Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.NL(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–62 NL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<BR CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

NOBR Procedure

This procedure generates the <NOBR> and </NOBR> tags which turn off line-breaking in a section of text.

Syntax

```
HTP.NOBR(
ctext         IN        VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–63 NOBR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text that is to be rendered on one line.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<NOBR>ctext</NOBR>
```

NOFRAMESCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </NOFRAMES> tag which marks the end of a no-frames section. To mark the beginning of a no-frames section, use the FRAMESETOPEN Procedure. See also FRAME Procedure, FRAMESETOPEN Procedure and FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.NOFRAMESCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</NOFRAMES>
```

NOFRAMESOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <NOFRAMES> tag which mark the beginning of a no-frames section. To mark the end of a no-frames section, use the FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure. See also FRAME Procedure, FRAMESETOPEN Procedure and FRAMESETCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.NOFRAMESOPEN;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<NOFRAMES>
```

OLISTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </OL> tag which defines the end of an ordered list. An ordered list presents a list of numbered items. To mark the beginning of a list of this kind, use the OLISTOPEN Procedure. Numbered items are added using LISTITEM Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.OLISTCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</OL>
```

OLISTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <OL> tag which marks the beginning of an ordered list. An ordered list presents a list of numbered items. To mark the end of a list of this kind, use the OLISTCLOSE Procedure. Numbered items are added using LISTITEM Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.OLISTOPEN(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–64 OLISTOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<OL CLEAR="cclear" WRAP="cwrap" cattributes>
```

PARA Procedure

This procedure generates the <P> tag which indicates that the text that comes after the tag is to be formatted as a paragraph. You can add attributes to the tag by means of the PARAGRAPH Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.PARA;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<P>
```

PARAGRAPH Procedure

You can use this procedure to add attributes to the <P> tag created by the PARA Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.PARAGRAPH(
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–65 PARAGRAPH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cnowrap	If the value for this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<P ALIGN="calign" NOWRAP CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

PARAM Procedure

This procedure generates the <PARAM> tag which specifies parameter values for Java applets. The values can reference HTML variables. To invoke a Java applet from a Web page, use APPLETOPEN Procedure to begin the invocation. Use one PARAM Procedure for each desired name-value pair, and use APPLETCLOSE Procedure to end the applet invocation.

Syntax

```
HTP.PARAM(
   cname          IN       VARCHAR2
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–66 PARAM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The value for the NAME attribute.
cvalue	The value for the VALUE attribute.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<PARAM NAME=cname VALUE="cvalue">
```

PLAINTEXT Procedure

This procedure generates the <PLAINTEXT> and </PLAINTEXT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in fixed-width type.

Syntax

```
HTP.PLAINTEXT(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–67 PLAINTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in fixed-width font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<PLAINTEXT cattributes>ctext</PLAINTEXT>
```

PRECLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </PRE> tag which marks the end of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page. To mark the beginning of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page, use the PREOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.PRECLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</PRE>
```

PREOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <PRE> tag which marks the beginning of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page. To mark the end of a section of preformatted text in the body of the HTML page, use the PRECLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.PREOPEN(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwidth          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–68 PREOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cwidth	The value for the WIDTH attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<PRE CLEAR="cclear" WIDTH="cwidth" cattributes>
```

PRINT Procedures

These procedures generate the specified parameter as a string terminated with the \n newline character. The PRN Procedures performs the same operation but does not terminate with a newline character.

Syntax

```
HTP.PRINT (
   cbuf      IN       VARCHAR2);

HTP.PRINT (
   dbuf      IN       DATE);

HTP.PRINT (
   nbuf      IN       NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 208–69 PRINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cbuf	The string to generate terminated by a newline.
dbuf	The string to generate terminated by a newline.
nbuf	The string to generate terminated by a newline.

Usage Notes

- The \n character is not the same as <BR>. The \n character formats the HTML source but it does not affect how the browser renders the HTML source. Use <BR> to control how the browser renders the HTML source.
- These procedures do not have function equivalents.

PRINTS Procedure

This procedure generates a string and replaces the following characters with the corresponding escape sequence.

- < to <
- > to >
- " to "
- & to &

If not replaced, the special characters are interpreted as HTML control characters and produce garbled output. This procedure an the PS Procedure perform the same operation as the PRN Procedures but with character substitution.

Syntax

```
HTP.PRINTS (
   ctext      IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–70 PRINTS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The string where to perform character substitution.

Usage Notes

This procedure does not have an HTF function equivalent (see Operational Notes on page 208-3 for the HTF implementation).

PRN Procedures

These procedures generate the specified parameter as a string. Unlike the PRINT Procedures the string is not terminated with the \n newline character.

Syntax

```
HTP.PRN (
   cbuf       IN       VARCHAR2);

HTP.PRN (
   dbuf       IN       DATE);

HTP.PRN (
   nbuf       IN       NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 208–71 PRN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cbuf	The string to generate (not terminated by a newline).
dbuf	The string to generate (not terminated by a newline).
nbuf	The string to generate (not terminated by a newline).

Usage Notes

These procedures do not have function equivalents.

PS Procedure

This procedure generates a string and replaces the following characters with the corresponding escape sequence.

- < to <
- > to >
- " to "
- & to &

If not replaced, the special characters are interpreted as HTML control characters and produce garbled output. This procedure and the PRINTS Procedure perform the same operation as the PRN Procedures but with character substitution.

Syntax

```
HTP.PS (
   ctext      IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–72 PS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The string where to perform character substitution.

Usage Notes

This procedure does not have an HTF function equivalent (see Operational Notes on page 208-3 for the HTF implementation).

S Procedure

This procedure generates the <S> and </S> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type. This performs the same operation as STRIKE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.S (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–73 S Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in strikethrough type.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<S cattributes>ctext</S>
```

SAMPLE Procedure

This procedure generates the <SAMP> and </SAMP> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in monospace font or however "sample" is defined stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTP.SAMPLE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–74 SAMPLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in monospace font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<SAMP cattributes>ctext</SAMP>
```

SCRIPT Procedure

This procedure generates the <SCRIPT> and </SCRIPT> tags which contain a script written in languages such as JavaScript and VBscript.

Syntax

```
HTP.SCRIPT (
   cscript        IN       VARCHAR2,
   clanguage      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–75 SCRIPT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cscript	The text of the script. This is the text that makes up the script itself, not the name of a file containing the script.
clanguage	The language in which the script is written. If this parameter is omitted, the user's browser determines the scripting language.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<SCRIPT LANGUAGE=clanguage>cscript</SCRIPT>
```

so that

```
HTP.script ('Erupting_Volcano', 'Javascript');
```

generates

```
<SCRIPT LANGUAGE=Javascript>"script text here"</SCRIPT>
```

This causes the browser to run the script enclosed in the tags.

SMALL Procedure

This procedure generates the <SMALL> and </SMALL> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround using a small font.

Syntax

```
HTP.SMALL (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–76 SMALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in small font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<SMALL *cattributes*>*ctext*</SMALL>

STRIKE Procedure

This procedure generates the <STRIKE> and </STRIKE> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in strikethrough type. This performs the same operation as S Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.STRIKE (
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–77 STRIKE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be rendered in strikethrough type.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<STRIKE *cattributes*>*ctext*</STRIKE>

STRONG Procedure

This procedure generates the <STRONG> and </STRONG> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in bold or however "strong" is defined.

Syntax

```
HTP.STRONG(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–78 STRONG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to be emphasized.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<STRONG *cattributes*>*ctext*</STRONG>

STYLE Procedure

This procedure generates the <STYLE> and </STYLE> tags which include a style sheet in a Web page. You can get more information about style sheets at http://www.w3.org. This feature is not compatible with browsers that support only HTML versions 2.0 or earlier. Such browsers will ignore this tag.

Syntax

```
HTP.STYLE(
   cstyle          IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–79 STYLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cstyle	The the style information to include.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<STYLE>cstyle</STYLE>
```

SUB Procedure

This procedure generates the _{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as subscript.

Syntax

```
HTP.SUB(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         in       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–80 SUB Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in subscript.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<SUB ALIGN="calign" cattributes>ctext</SUB>
```

SUP Procedure

This procedure generates the ^{and} tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround as superscript.

Syntax

```
HTP.SUP(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         in       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–81 SUP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in superscript.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<SUP ALIGN="calign" cattributes>ctext</SUP>
```

TABLECAPTION Procedure

This procedure generates the <CAPTION> and </CAPTION> tags which place a caption in an HTML table.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLECAPTION(
   ccaption       IN       VARCHAR2,
   calign         in       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–82 TABLECAPTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text for the caption.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<CAPTION ALIGN="calign" cattributes>ccaption</CAPTION>
```

TABLECLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </TABLE> tag which marks the end of an HTML table. To define the beginning of an HTML table, use the TABLEOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLECLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</TABLE>
```

TABLEDATA Procedure

This procedure generates the <TD> and </TD> tags which insert data into a cell of an HTML table.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLEDATA(
   cvalue         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdp            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   crowspan       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccolspan       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–83 TABLEDATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The data for the cell in the table.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cdp	The value for the DP attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
ccolspan	The value for the COLSPAN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TD ALIGN="calign" DP="cdp" ROWSPAN="crowspan" COLSPAN="ccolspan" NOWRAP
cattributes>cvalue</TD>
```

TABLEHEADER Procedure

This procedure generates the <TH> and </TH> tags which insert a header cell in an HTML table. The <TH> tag is similar to the <TD> tag except that the text in this case the rows are usually rendered in bold type.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLEHEADER(
   cvalue          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   calign          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdp             IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   crowspan        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccolspan        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–84 TABLEHEADER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cvalue	The data for the cell in the table.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cdp	The value for the DP attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
crispen	The value for the ROWSPAN attribute.
ccolspan	The value for the COLSPAN attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TH ALIGN="calign" DP="cdp" ROWSPAN="crowspan" COLSPAN="ccolspan" NOWRAP
cattributes>cvalue</TH>
```

TABLEOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <TABLE> tag which marks the beginning of an HTML table. To define the end of an HTML table, use the TABLECLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLEOPEN(
   cborder        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cclear         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–85 TABLEOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
border	The value for the BORDER attribute.
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TABLE "cborder" NOWRAP ALIGN="calign" CLEAR="cclear" cattributes>
```

TABLEROWCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </TR> tag which marks the end of a new row in an HTML table. To mark the beginning of a new row, use the TABLEROWOPEN Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLEROWCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</TABLE>
```

TABLEROWOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <TR> tag which marks the beginning of a new row in an HTML table. To mark the end of a new row, use the TABLEROWCLOSE Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.TABLEROWOPEN(
   calign         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cvalign        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdp            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cnowrap        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–86 TABLEROWOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
calign	The value for the ALIGN attribute.
cvalign	The value for the VALIGN attribute.
cdp	The value for the DP attribute.
cnowrap	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, the NOWRAP attribute is added to the tag.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<<TR ALIGN="calign" VALIGN="cvalign" DP="cdp" NOWRAP cattributes>
```

TELETYPE Procedure

This procedure generates the <TT> and </TT> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in a fixed width typewriter font, for example, the courier font.

Syntax

```
HTP.TELETYPE(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–87 TELETYPE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in a fixed width typewriter font.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

<TT *cattributes*>*ctext*</TT>

TITLE Procedure

This procedure generates the <TITLE> and </TITLE> tags which specify the text to display in the titlebar of the browser window.

Syntax

```
HTP.TITLE(
   ctitle          IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 208–88 TITLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctitle	The text to display in the titlebar of the browser window.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<TITLE>ctitle</TITLE>
```

ULISTCLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates the </UL> tag which marks the end of an unordered list. An unordered list presents items with bullets. To mark the beginning of an unordered list, use the ULISTOPEN Procedure. Add list items with LISTITEM Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.ULISTCLOSE;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
</TABLE>
```

ULISTOPEN Procedure

This procedure generates the <UL> tag which marks the beginning of an unordered list. An unordered list presents items with bullets. To mark the end of an unordered list, use the ULISTCLOSE Procedure. Add list items with LISTITEM Procedure.

Syntax

```
HTP.ULISTOPEN(
   cclear          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cwrap           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cdingbat        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   csrc            IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   cattributes     IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–89 ULISTOPEN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cclear	The value for the CLEAR attribute.
cwrap	The value for the WRAP attribute.
cdingbat	The value for the DINGBAT attribute.
csrc	The value for the SRC attribute.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<UL CLEAR="cclear" WRAP="cwrap" DINGBAT="cdingbat" SRC="csrc" cattributes>
```

UNDERLINE Procedure

This procedure generates the <U> and </U> tags, which direct the browser to render the text they surround with an underline.

Syntax

```
HTP.UNDERLINE(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–90 UNDERLINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render with an underline.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<U cattributes>ctext</U>
```

VARIABLE Procedure

This procedure generates the <VAR> and </VAR> tags which direct the browser to render the text they surround in italics or however "variable" is defined stylistically.

Syntax

```
HTP.VARIABLE(
   ctext          IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 208–91 VARIABLE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctext	The text to render in italics.
cattributes	The other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<VAR cattributes>ctext</VAR>
```

WBR Procedure

This procedure generates the <WBR> tag, which inserts a soft line break within a section of NOBR text.

Syntax

```
HTP.WBR;
```

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<WBR>
```

209

ORD_DICOM

This Oracle Multimedia package supports the management and manipulation of Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) content stored in BLOBs or BFILEs rather than in an ORDDicom object type. See *Oracle Multimedia DICOM Developer's Guide* for a complete description of the ORDDicom object type.

The DICOM standard is the dominant standard for radiology imaging and communication, to which all major manufacturers of radiological devices must conform. Oracle Multimedia DICOM provides native support for DICOM format medical images and other content, such as single-frame and multiframe images, waveforms, slices of 3-D volumes, video segments, and structured reports.

The Oracle Multimedia `ORD_DICOM` package provides functions and procedures in the DICOM relational interface to extract standard and private DICOM metadata from DICOM content into customizable XML documents, to perform image processing operations such as format conversion and thumbnail image generation, and to create new DICOM content. This Oracle Multimedia package also provides functions and procedures to check DICOM content for conformance based on a set of user-specified conformance rules, and to make DICOM content anonymous based on user-defined rules that specify the set of attributes to be made anonymous and the actions to be taken to make those attributes anonymous.

The Oracle Multimedia `ORD_DICOM` package also provides functions and procedures in the DICOM data model utility interface to operate on the DICOM data model repository. See *Oracle Multimedia DICOM Developer's Guide* for a complete description of the DICOM data model utility interface.

Documentation of ORD_DICOM

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORD_DICOM` in the *Oracle Multimedia DICOM Developer's Guide*.

210

ORD_DICOM_ADMIN

This Oracle Multimedia package is used by Oracle Multimedia Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) administrators to maintain the Oracle Multimedia DICOM data model repository.

The DICOM data model repository is a collection of documents. An initial set of documents is loaded during installation. After installation, DICOM administrators can use the procedures and functions provided in the data model repository API of the Oracle Multimedia `ORD_DICOM_ADMIN` package to obtain document content as well as to insert, edit, and delete documents in the data model repository.

Documentation of ORD_DICOM_ADMIN

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORD_DICOM_ADMIN` in the *Oracle Multimedia DICOM Developer's Guide*.

211

OWA_CACHE

The `OWA_CACHE` package provides an interface that enables the `PL/SQL Gateway` cache to improve the performance of PL/SQL Web applications.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_CACHE

- Constants

Constants

- `system_level CONSTANT VARCHAR(6) := 'SYSTEM';`
- `user_level CONSTANT VARCHAR(4) := 'USER';`

Summary of OWA_CACHE Subprograms

Table 211–1 OWA_CACHE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DISABLE Procedure on page 211-5	Disables the cache for this particular request
GET_ETAG Function on page 211-6	Returns the tag associated with the cached content (used in the Validation technique model only)
GET_LEVEL Function on page 211-7	Returns the caching level (used in the Validation technique model only)
SET_CACHE Procedure on page 211-8	Sets up the cache headers for validation model cache type
SET_EXPIRES Procedure on page 211-9	Sets up the cache headers for expires model cache type
SET_NOT_MODIFIED Procedure on page 211-10	Sets up the headers for a not modified cache hit (used in the Validation technique model only)
SET_SURROGATE_CONTROL Procedure on page 211-11	Sets up the headers for a surrogate-control header for Web cache

DISABLE Procedure

This procedure disables the cache for this particular request.

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.DISABLE;
```

GET_ETAG Function

This function returns the tag associated with the cached content. It is used in the Validation technique only.

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.GET_ETAG
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The tag for cache hit, otherwise `NULL`.

GET_LEVEL Function

This returns the caching level. It is used in the Validation technique model only.

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.GET_LEVEL
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The caching level string ('USER' or 'SYSTEM') for cache hit, otherwise NULL.

SET_CACHE Procedure

This sets up the cache headers for validation model cache type.

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.SET_CACHE(
   p_etag        IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_level       IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 211–2 SET_CACHE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_etag	The etag associated with this content
p_level	The caching level ('USER' or 'SYSTEM').

Exceptions

VALUE_ERROR is thrown if

- p_etag is greater than 55
- p_level is not 'USER' or 'SYSTEM'

SET_EXPIRES Procedure

This procedure sets up the cache headers for expires model cache type.

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.SET_EXPIRES(
   p_expires      IN       NUMBER,
   p_level        IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 211–3 SET_EXPIRES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_expires	The number of minutes this content is valid.
p_level	The caching level ('USER' or 'SYSTEM').

Exceptions

VALUE_ERROR is thrown if

- p_expires is negative or zero
- p_level is not 'USER' or 'SYSTEM'
- p_expires is > 525600 (1 year)

SET_NOT_MODIFIED Procedure

This procedure sets up the headers for a not-modified cache hit. It is used in the Validation technique only.

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.SET_NOT_MODIFIED;
```

Exceptions

`VALUE_ERROR` is thrown if If the `etag` was not passed in

SET_SURROGATE_CONTROL Procedure

This procedure sets the headers for a surrogate-control header for Web cache

Syntax

```
OWA_CACHE.SET_SURROGATE_CONTROL(
   p_value        IN       VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 211–4 SET_SURROGATE_CONTROL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_value	The value to be passed as the Surrogate-Control header.

Exceptions

VALUE_ERROR is thrown if If p_value is greater than 55 in length.

212

OWA_COOKIE

The OWA_COOKIE package provides an interface for sending and retrieving HTTP cookies from the client's browser.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_COOKIE

Overview

Cookies are opaque strings sent to the browser to maintain state between HTTP calls. State can be maintained throughout the client's sessions, or longer if an expiration date is included. The system date is calculated with reference to the information specified in the OWA_CUSTOM package.

Types

This datatype contains cookie name-value pairs. Since the HTTP standard allows cookie names to be overloaded (that is, multiple values can be associated with the same cookie name), there is a PL/SQL `RECORD` holding all values associated with a given cookie name.

```
TYPE vc_arr IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(4000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER.

TYPE COOKIE IS RECORD (
   name           VARCHAR2(4000),
   vals           vc_arr,
   num_vals       INTEGER);
```

Rules and Limits

All HTTP headers must be in English and the ASCII character set. If the headers are generated from the database, verify they are created in the English language.

Summary of OWA_COOKIE Subprograms

Table 212–1 OWA_COOKIE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET Function on page 212-7	Gets the value of the specified cookie
GET_ALL Procedure on page 212-8	Gets all cookie name-value pairs
REMOVE Procedure on page 212-9	Removes the specified cookie
SEND procedure on page 212-10	Generates a "Set-Cookie" line in the HTTP header

GET Function

This function returns the values associated with the specified cookie. The values are returned in a OWA_COOKIE.COOKIE DATA TYPE.

Syntax

```
OWA_COOKIE.GET(
    name            IN       VARCHAR2)
  RETURN COOKIE;
```

Parameters

Table 212–2 GET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name of the cookie.

Return Values

OWA_COOKIE.COOKIE DATA TYPE.

GET_ALL Procedure

This procedure returns all cookie names and their values from the client's browser. The values appear in the order in which they were sent from the browser.

Syntax

```
OWA_COOKIE.GET_ALL(
   names          OUT      vc_arr,
   vals           OUT      vc_arr,
   num_vals       OUT      INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 212–3 GET_ALL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
names	The names of the cookies.
vals	The values of the cookies.
num_vals	The number of cookie-value pairs.

REMOVE Procedure

This procedure forces a cookie to expire immediately by setting the "expires" field of a Set-Cookie line in the HTTP header to "01-Jan-1990". This procedure must be called within the context of an HTTP header.

Syntax

```
OWA_COOKIE.REMOVE(
   name           IN       VARCHAR2,
   val            IN       VARCHAR2,
   path           IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 212–4 REMOVE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	The name of the cookie to expire.
`val`	The value of the cookie.
`path`	[Currently unused]

SEND procedure

This procedure generates a Set-Cookie line, which transmits a cookie to the client. This procedure must occur in the context of an HTTP header.

Syntax

```
OWA_COOKIE.SEND(
   name           in       varchar2,
   value          in       varchar2,
   expires        in       date       DEFAULT NULL,
   path           in       varchar2   DEFAULT NULL,
   domain         in       varchar2   DEFAULT NULL,
   secure         in       varchar2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 212–5 SEND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`name`	The name of the cookie.
`value`	The value of the cookie.
`expires`	The date at which the cookie will expire
`path`	The value for the path field.
`domain`	The value for the domain field.
`secure`	If the value of this parameter is not `NULL`, the "secure" field is added to the line.

213

OWA_CUSTOM

The OWA_CUSTOM package provides a Global PLSQL Agent Authorization callback function. It is used when PLSQL Agent's authorization scheme is set to GLOBAL or CUSTOM when there is no overriding OWA_CUSTOM package.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_CUSTOM

- Constants

Constants

- `dbms_server_timezone CONSTANT VARCHAR2(3) := 'PST';`
- `dbms_server_gmtdiff CONSTANT NUMBER := NULL;`

Summary of OWA_CUSTOM Subprograms

Table 213–1 OWA_CUSTOM Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
AUTHORIZE Function on page 213-5	Provides a Global PLSQL Agent Authorization callback function

AUTHORIZE Function

This function is used when PLSQL Agent's authorization scheme is set to `GLOBAL` or `CUSTOM` when there is no overriding `OWA_CUSTOM` package.

Syntax

```
OWA_CUSTOM.AUTHORIZE
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

214

OWA_IMAGE

The `OWA_IMAGE` package provides an interface to access the coordinates where a user clicked on an image.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_IMAGE

Overview

Use this package when you have any image map whose destination links invoke the PL/SQL Gateway.

Types

This datatype (`point`) contain the `X` and `Y` values of a coordinate, and so provides the coordinates of a user's click on an imagemap. It is defined as:

```
TYPE POINT IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER
```

Variables

This package variable (`null_point`) of `TYPE POINT` is used to default point parameters. Both the X and the Y fields of this variable are `NULL`.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE process_image
    (my_img in OWA_IMAGE.POINT)
    AS
    x integer := OWA_IMAGE.GET_X(my_img);
    y integer := OWA_IMAGE.GET_Y(my_img);
BEGIN
    /* process the coordinate */
END
```

Summary of OWA_IMAGE Subprograms

Table 214–1 OWA_IMAGE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_X Function on page 214-8	Gets the X value of a point type
GET_Y Function on page 214-9	Gets the Y value of a point type

GET_X Function

This function returns the X coordinate of the point where the user clicked on an image map.

Syntax

```
OWA_IMAGE.GET_X(
   p         IN        point)
 RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 214–2 GET_X Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p	The point where the user clicked.

Return Values

The X coordinate as an integer.

GET_Y Function

This function returns the Y coordinate of the point where the user clicked on an image map.

Syntax

```
OWA_IMAGE.GET_Y(
   p        IN        point)
 RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 214–3 GET_Y Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p	The point where the user clicked.

Return Values

The Y coordinate as an integer.

215

OWA_OPT_LOCK

The OWA_OPT_LOCK package contains subprograms that impose optimistic locking strategies so as to prevent lost updates.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_OPT_LOCK

Overview

The OWA_OPT_LOCK package contains subprograms that impose optimistic locking strategies, so as to prevent lost updates.

It checks if the row that the user is interested in updating has been changed by someone else in the meantime.

The PL/SQL Gateway cannot use conventional database locking schemes because HTTP is a stateless protocol. The `OWA_OPT_LOCK` package gives you two ways of dealing with the lost update problem:

- The hidden fields method stores the previous values in hidden fields in the HTML page. When the user requests an update, the PL/SQL Gateway checks these values against the current state of the database. The update operation is performed only if the values match. To use this method, call the owa_opt_lock.store_values procedure.
- The checksum method stores a checksum rather than the values themselves. To use this method, call the owa_opt_lock.checksum function.

These methods are optimistic. They do not prevent other users from performing updates, but they do reject the current update if an intervening update has occurred.

Types

This datatype is a PL/SQL table intended to hold ROWIDs.

```
TYPE VCARRAY IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(2000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER
```

Note that this is different from the `OWA_TEXT.VC_ARR DATA TYPE`.

Summary of OWA_OPT_LOCK Subprograms

Table 215–1 OWA_OPT_LOCK Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
CHECKSUM Functions on page 215-6	Returns the checksum value
GET_ROWID Function on page 215-7	Returns the ROWID value
STORE_VALUES Procedure on page 215-8	Stores unmodified values in hidden fields for later verification
VERIFY_VALUES Function on page 215-9	Verifies the stored values against modified values

CHECKSUM Functions

This function returns a `checksum` value for a specified string, or for a row in a table. For a row in a table, the function calculates the `checksum` value based on the values of the columns in the row. This function comes in two versions.

The first version returns a `checksum` based on the specified string. This is a "pure" 32-bit `checksum` executed by the database and based on the Internet 1 protocol.

The second version returns a `checksum` based on the values of a row in a table. This is a "impure" 32-bit checksum based on the Internet 1 protocol.

Syntax

```
OWA_OPT_LOCK.CHECKSUM(
   p_buff        IN       VARCHAR2)
 RETURN NUMBER;

OWA_OPT_LOCK.CHECKSUM(
   p_owner       IN      VARCHAR2,
   p_tname       IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_rowid       IN       ROWID)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 215–2 CHECKSUM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`p_buff`	The nstring where you want to calculate the `checksum`.
`p_owner`	The owner of the table.
`p_tname`	The table name.
`p_rowid`	The row in `p_tname` where you want to calculate the `checksum` value. Use the GET_ROWID Function to convert `VCARRAY` values to proper rowids.

GET_ROWID Function

This function returns the ROWID datatype from the specified OWA_OPT_LOCK.VCARRAY DATA TYPE.

Syntax

```
OWA_OPT_LOCK.GET_ROWID(
   p_old_values      IN      vcarray)
 RETURN ROWID;
```

Parameters

Table 215–3 GET_ROWID Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_old_values	This parameter is usually passed in from an HTML form.

STORE_VALUES Procedure

This procedure stores the column values of the row that you want to update later. The values are stored in hidden HTML form elements.

Syntax

```
OWA_OPT_LOCK.STORE_VALUES(
   p_owner        IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_tname        IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_rowid        IN       ROWID);
```

Parameters

Table 215–4 STORE_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_owner	The owner of the table.
p_tname	The name of the table.
p_rowid	The row where you want to store values.

Usage Notes

Before updating the row, compare these values with the current row values to ensure that the values in the row have not been changed. If the values have changed, you can warn the users and let them decide if the update should take place.

The procedure generates series of hidden form elements:

- One hidden form element is created for the table owner. The name of the element is "*old*_p_tname", where p_tname is the name of the table. The value of the element is the owner name.
- One hidden form element is created for the table name. The name of the element is "*old*_p_tname", where p_tname is the name of the table. The value of the element is the table name.
- One element is created for each column in the row. The name of the element is "*old*_p_tname", where p_tname is the name of the table. The value of the element is the column value.

See also the VERIFY_VALUES Function.

VERIFY_VALUES Function

This function verifies whether values in the specified row have been updated since the last query. Use this function with the STORE_VALUES Procedure.

Syntax

```
OWA_OPT_LOCK.VERIFY_VALUES(
   p_old_values IN vcarray)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 215–5 VERIFY_VALUES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_old_values	A PL/SQL table containing the following information: ■ p_old_values(1) specifies the owner of the table. ■ p_old_values(2) specifies the table. ■ p_old_values(3) specifies the rowid of the row to verify. The remaining indexes contain values for the columns in the table. Typically, this parameter is passed in from the HTML form, where you have previously called the STORE_VALUES Procedure to store the row values on hidden form elements.

Return Values

TRUE if no other update has been performed, otherwise FALSE.

216

OWA_PATTERN

The OWA_PATTERN package provides an interface to locate text patterns within strings and replace the matched string with another string.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_PATTERN

Types

You can use a pattern as both an input and output parameter. Thus, you can pass the same regular expression to `OWA_PATTERN` function calls, and it only has to be parsed once.

- `OWA_PATTERN.PATTERN`

Operational Notes

The OWA_PATTERN subprograms are overloaded. Specifically, there are six versions of `MATCH`, and four each of `AMATCH` and `CHANGE`. The subprograms use the following parameters:

- `line` - This is the target to be examined for a match. It can be more than one line of text or a owa_text.multi_line datatype.
- `pat` - This is the pattern that the subprograms attempt to locate in line. The pattern can contain regular expressions. In the owa_pattern.change function and procedure, this parameter is called `from_str`.
- `flags` - This specifies whether the search is case-sensitive or if substitutions are done globally.

Use regular expressions with the subprograms in this package. You Specify a regular expression by creating the string you want to match interspersed with various wildcard tokens and quantifiers.

- Wildcards
- Quantifiers
- Flags

Wildcards

Wildcard tokens match something other than themselves:

Table 216–1 Wildcard tokens recognized by OWA_PATTERN package

Token	Description
^	Matches newline or the beginning of the target
$	Matches newline or the end of the target
\n	Matches newline
.	Matches any character except newline
\t	Matches tab
\d	Matches digits [0-9]
\D	Matches non-digits [not 0-9]
\w	Matches word characters (0-9, a-z, A-Z, or _)
\W	Matches non-word characters (not 0-9, a-z, A-Z, or _)
\s	Matches whitespace characters (blank, tab, or newline).
\S	Matches non-whitespace characters (not blank, tab, or newline)
\b	Matches "word" boundaries (between \w and \W)
\x<HEX>	Matches the value in the current character set of the two hexadecimal digits
\<OCT>	Matches the value in the current character set of the two or three octal digits
\	Followed by any character not covered by another case matches that character
&	Applies only to `CHANGE`. This causes the string that matched the regular expression to be included in the string that replaces it. This differs from the other tokens in that it specifies how a target is changed rather than how it is matched. This is explained further under CHANGE Functions and Procedures.

Quantifiers

Any tokens except & can have their meaning extended by any of the following quantifiers. You can also apply these quantifiers to literals:

Table 216–2 Quantifiers

Quantifier	Description
?	0 or 1 occurrence(s)
*	0 or more occurrences
+	1 or more occurrence(s)
{n}	Exactly *n* occurrences
(n,}	At least *n* occurrences
{n,m}	At least *n*, but not more than *m*, occurrences

Flags

In addition to targets and regular expressions, the OWA_PATTERN functions and procedures use flags to affect how they are interpreted.

Table 216–3 Flags

Flag	Description
i	This indicates a case-insensitive search.
g	This applies only to CHANGE. It indicates a global replace. That is, all portions of the target that match the regular expression are replaced.

Summary of OWA_PATTERN Subprograms

Table 216–4 OWA_PATTERN Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
AMATCH Function on page 216-7	Determines if a string contains the specified pattern. It lets you specify where in the string the match has to occur
CHANGE Functions and Procedures on page 216-9	Replaces a pattern within a string. If you call it as a function it returns the number of times the regular expression was found and replaced
GETPAT Procedure on page 216-11	Generates a pattern datatype from a `VARCHAR2` type
MATCH Function on page 216-12	Determines if a string contains the specified pattern

AMATCH Function

This function specifies if a pattern occurs in a particular location in a string. There are four versions to this function:

- The first and second versions of the function do not save the matched tokens (these are saved in the `backrefs` parameters in the third and fourth versions). The difference between the first and second versions is the `pat` parameter, which can be a `VARCHAR2` or a pattern datatype.
- The third and fourth versions of the function save the matched tokens in the `backrefs` parameter. The difference between the third and fourth versions is the `pat` parameter, which can be a VARCHAR2 or a pattern datatype.

> **Note:** If multiple overlapping strings match the regular expression, this function takes the longest match.

Syntax

```
OWA_PATTERN.AMATCH(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2,
   from_loc       IN       INTEGER,
   pat            IN       VARCHAR2,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;

OWA_PATTERN.AMATCH(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2,
   from_loc       IN       INTEGER,
   pat            IN OUT   PATTERN,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;

OWA_PATTERN.AMATCH(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2
   from_loc       IN       INTEGER
   pat            in       varchar2
   backrefs       OUT      owa_text.vc_arr
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;

OWA_PATTERN.AMATCH(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2
   from_loc       IN       INTEGER
   pat            IN OUT   PATTERN
   backrefs       OUT      owa_text.vc_arr
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 216–5 AMATCH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`line`	The text to search in.

Table 216–5 (Cont.) AMATCH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
from_loc	The location (in number of characters) in `line` where the search is to begin.
`pat`	The string to match. It can contain regular expressions. This can be either a `VARCHAR2` or a pattern. If it is a pattern, the output value of this parameter is the pattern matched.
backrefs	The text that is matched. Each token that is matched is placed in a cell in the `OWA_TEXT.VC_ARR DATA TYPE` PL/SQL table.
flags	Whether or not the search is case-sensitive. If the value of this parameter is "i", the search is case-insensitive. Otherwise the search is case-sensitive.

Return Values

The index of the character after the end of the match, counting from the beginning of `line`. If there was no match, the function returns `0`.

CHANGE Functions and Procedures

This function or procedure searches and replaces a string or `multi_line` datatype. If multiple overlapping strings match the regular expression, this subprogram takes the longest match.

Syntax

```
OWA_PATTERN.CHANGE(
   line           IN OUT    VARCHAR2,
   from_str       IN        VARCHAR2,
   to_str         IN        VARCHAR2,
   flags          IN        VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;

OWA_PATTERN.CHANGE(
   line           IN OUT   VARCHAR2,
   from_str       IN       VARCHAR2,
   to_str         IN       VARCHAR2,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

owa_pattern.change(
   mline          IN OUT   owa_text.multi_line,
   from_str       IN       VARCHAR2,
   to_str         IN       VARCHAR2,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;

OWA_PATTERN.CHANGE(
   mline          IN OUT   owa_text.multi_line,
   from_str       IN       VARCHAR2,
   to_str         IN       VARCHAR2,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 216–6 CHANGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`line`	The text to search in. The output value of this parameter is the altered string.
mline	The text to search in. This is a `owa_text.multi_line datatype`. The output value of this parameter is the altered string.
`from_str`	The regular expression to replace.
to_str	The substitution pattern.
flags	Whether or not the search is case-sensitive, and whether or not changes are to be made globally. If "`i`" is specified, the search is case-insensitive. If "`g`" is specified, changes are made to all matches. Otherwise, the function stops after the first substitution is made.

Return Values

As a function, it returns the number of substitutions made. If the flag "g" is not used, this number can only be 0 or 1 and only the first match is replaced. The flag "g" specifies to replace all matches with the regular expression.

Examples

```
OWA_PATTERN.CHANGE('Cats in pajamas', 'C.+in', '& red ')
```

The regular expression matches the substring "`Cats in`". It then replaces this string with "& red". The ampersand character "`&`" indicates "`Cats in`" because that is what matched the regular expression. Thus, this procedure replaces the string "`Cats in pajamas`" with "`Cats in red`" If you call this as a function instead of a procedure, the value returned is 1, indicating that a single substitution has been made.

Example 2:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE test_pattern as theline VARCHAR2(256);
num_found     INTEGER;
   BEGIN
       theline := 'what is the goal?';
       num_found := OWA_PATTERN.CHANGE(theline, 'goal', 'idea', 'g');
       HTP.PRINT(num_found); -- num_found is 1
       HTP.PRINT(theline); -- theline is 'what is the idea?'
   END;
/
SHOW ERRORS
```

GETPAT Procedure

This procedure converts a VARCHAR2 string into an `OWA_PATTERN.PATTERN DATA TYPE`.

Syntax

```
OWA_PATTERN.GETPAT(
   arg      IN          VARCHAR2,
   pat      IN OUT      pattern);
```

Parameters

Table 216–7 GETPAT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`arg`	The string to convert.
pat	the `OWA_PATTERN.PATTERN DATA TYPE` initialized with `arg`.

MATCH Function

This function determines if a string contains the specified pattern. The pattern can contain regular expressions. If multiple overlapping strings can match the regular expression, this function takes the longest match.

Syntax

```
owa_pattern.match(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2,
   pat            IN       VARCHAR2,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;

owa_pattern.match(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2,
   pat            IN OUT   PATTERN,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;

owa_pattern.match(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2,
   pat            IN       VARCHAR2,
   backrefs       OUT      owa_text.vc_arr,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;

OWA_PATTERN.MATCH(
   line           IN       VARCHAR2,
   pat            IN OUT   PATTERN,
   backrefs       OUT      owa_text.vc_arr,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;

owa_pattern.match(
   mline          IN       owa_text.multi_line,
   pat            IN       VARCHAR2,
   rlist          OUT      owa_text.row_list,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;

OWA_PATTERN.MATCH(
   mline          IN       owa_text.multi_line,
   pat            IN OUT   pattern,
   rlist          OUT      owa_text.row_list,
   flags          IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 216–8 MATCH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`line`	The line to search in.
`mline`	The text to search in. This is a `owa_text.multi_line` `datatype`..

Table 216–8 (Cont.) MATCH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
pat	The pattern to match. This is either a VARCHAR2 or a OWA_PATTERN.PATTERN DATA TYPE. It is a pattern, the output value of this parameter is the pattern matched.
backrefs	The text that is matched. Each token that is matched is placed in a cell in the OWA_TEXT.VC_ARR DATA TYPE PL/SQL table. This parameter is a row_list that holds each string in the target that was matched by a sequence of tokens in the regular expression.
rlist	An output parameter containing a list of matches.
flags	Whether or not the search is case-sensitive. If the value of this parameter is "i", the search is case-insensitive. Otherwise the search is case-sensitive.

Return Values

TRUE if a match was found, FALSE otherwise.

Examples

KAZOO is the target where it is searching for the zoo.* regular expression. The period indicates any character other than newline, and the asterisk matches 0 or more of the preceding characters. In this case, it matches any character other than the newline.

Therefore, this regular expression specifies that a matching target consists of zoo, followed by any set of characters neither ending in nor including a newline (which does not match the period). The i flag indicates to ignore case in the search. In this case, the function returns TRUE, which indicates that a match had been found.

```
boolean foundMatch;
foundMatch := owa_pattern.match('KAZOO', 'zoo.*', 'i');
```

The following example searches for the string "goal" followed by any number of characters in sometext. If found,

```
sometext  VARCHAR2(256);
pat       VARCHAR2(256);

sometext    := 'what is the goal?'
pat         := 'goal.*';
IF OWA_PATTERN.MATCH(sometext, pat)
   THEN
      HTP.PRINT('Match found');
   ELSE
     HTP.PRINT('Match not found');
END IF;
```

Operational Notes

- The regular expression in this function can be either a VARCHAR2 or an OWA_PATTERN.PATTERN DATA TYPE. Create AN OWA_PATTERN.PATTERN DATA TYPE from a string using the OWA_PATTERN.GETPAT procedure.
- Create a MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE from a long string using the OWA_TEXT.STREAM2MULTI procedure. If a multi_line is used, the rlist parameter specifies a list of chunks where matches were found.

- If the line is a string and not a `multi_line`, you can add an optional output parameter called `backrefs`. This parameter is a `row_list` that holds each string in the target that was matched by a sequence of tokens in the regular expression.

217

OWA_SEC

The OWA_SEC package provides an interface for custom authentication.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_SEC

Operational Notes

Parameters that have default values are optional.

Summary of OWA_SEC Subprograms

Table 217–1 OWA_SEC Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_CLIENT_HOSTNAME Function on page 217-5	Returns the client's hostname
GET_CLIENT_IP Function on page 217-6	Returns the client's IP address
GET_PASSWORD Function on page 217-7	Returns the password that the user entered
GET_USER_ID Function on page 217-8	Returns the username that the user entered
SET_AUTHORIZATION Procedure on page 217-9	Enables the PL/SQL application to use custom authentication
SET_PROTECTION_REALM Procedure on page 217-10	Defines the realm that the page is in

GET_CLIENT_HOSTNAME Function

This function returns the hostname of the client.

Syntax

```
OWA_SEC.GET_CLIENT_HOSTNAME
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The hostname.

GET_CLIENT_IP Function

This function returns the IP address of the client.

Syntax

```
OWA_SEC.GET_CLIENT_IP
  RETURN OWA_UTIL.IP_ADDRESS;
```

Return Values

The IP address. The `owa_util.ip_address datatype` is a PL/SQL table where the first four elements contain the four numbers of the IP address. For example, if the IP address is `123.45.67.89` and the variable `ipaddr` is of the owa_util.ip_address datatype, the variable would contain the following values:

```
ipaddr(1) = 123
ipaddr(2) = 45
ipaddr(3) = 67
ipaddr(4) = 89
```

GET_PASSWORD Function

This function returns the password that the user used to log in.

Syntax

```
OWA_SEC.GET_PASSWORD
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The password.

Usage Notes

For security reasons, this function returns a true value only when custom authentication is used. If you call this function when you are not using custom authentication, the function returns an undefined value. Thus, the database passwords are not exposed.

GET_USER_ID Function

This function returns the username that the user used to log in.

Syntax

```
OWA_SEC.GET_USER_ID
  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The username.

SET_AUTHORIZATION Procedure

This procedure, called in the initialization portion of the OWA_CUSTOM package, sets the authorization scheme for the PL/SQL Gateway. This implements your `authorize` function, which authorizes the user before his requested procedure is run. The placement of the `authorize` function depends on the scheme you select.

Syntax

```
OWA_SEC.SET_AUTHORIZATION(
    scheme          IN       INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 217–2 SET_AUTHORIZATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description

`scheme`	The authorization scheme. It is one of the following schemes for `SET_AUTHORIZATION`:
	■ `OWA_SEC.NO_CHECK` - Specifies that the PL/SQL application is not to do any custom authentication. This is the default.
	■ `OWA_SEC.GLOBAL` - Defines an authorize function that is called for all users and all procedures. This is the `OWA_CUSTOM`.AUTHORIZE Function in the "`sys`" schema.
	■ `OWA_SEC.PER_PACKAGE` - Define an `authorize` function that is called when procedures in a package or anonymous procedures are called. If the procedures are in a package, the package.`AUTHORIZE` function in the user's schema is called to authorize the user. If the procedures are not in a package, then the anonymous `authorize` function in the user's schema is called.
	■ `OWA_SEC.CUSTOM` - Implements different authorize functions for each user. The function `OWA_CUSTOM`.AUTHORIZE Function in the user's schema is called to authorize the user. If the user's schema does not contain an `OWA_CUSTOM`.AUTHORIZE Function, the PL/SQL Gateway looks for it in the "sys" schema.
	The custom `authorize` function has the following signature:
	`FUNCTION AUTHORIZE`
	`  RETURN BOOLEAN;`
	If the function returns `TRUE`, authentication succeeded. If it returns `FALSE`, authentication failed. If the `authorize` function is not defined, the Gateway returns an error and fails.

SET_PROTECTION_REALM Procedure

This procedure sets the realm of the page that is returned to the user. The user enters a username and login that already exist in the realm.

Syntax

```
OWA_SEC.SET_PROTECTION_REALM(
   realm      IN      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 217–3 SET_PROTECTION_REALM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
realm	The realm where the page belongs. This string is displayed to the user.

218

OWA_TEXT

The OWA_TEXT package contains subprograms used by OWA_PATTERN for manipulating strings. They are externalized so you can use them directly.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_TEXT

- Types

Types

MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE

This datatype is a PL/SQL record that holds large amounts of text. The rows field, of type OWA_TEXT.VC_ARR DATA TYPE, contains the text data in the record.

```
TYPE multi_line IS RECORD (
   rows           vc_arr,
   num_rows       INTEGER,
   partial_row    BOOLEAN);
```

ROW_LIST DATA TYPE

This is the datatype for holding data to be processed.

```
TYPE row_list IS RECORD (
   rows           int_arr,
   num_rows       INTEGER);

int_arr IS DEFINED AS:

TYPE int_arr IS TABLE OF INTEGER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

VC_ARR DATA TYPE

This is a component of the MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE and is used for holding large amounts of text.

```
TYPE vc_arr IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(32767) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of OWA_TEXT Subprograms

Table 218–1 OWA_TEXT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD2MULTI Procedure on page 218-5	Adds text to an existing `multi_line` type
NEW_ROW_LIST Function and Procedure on page 218-6	Creates a new `row_list`
PRINT_MULTI Procedure on page 218-7	Prints out the contents of a `multi_list`
PRINT_ROW_LIST Procedure on page 218-8	Prints out the contents of a `row_list`
STREAM2MULTI Procedure on page 218-9	Converts a varchar2 to a `multi_line` type

ADD2MULTI Procedure

This procedure adds content to an existing MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE.

Syntax

```
OWA_TEXT.ADD2MULTI(
   stream          IN       VARCHAR2,
   mline           IN OUT   multi_line,
  continue      IN      BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 218–2 ADD2MULTI Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`stream`	The text to add.
`mline`	The `OWA_TEXT.MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE`. The output of this parameter contains *stream*.
`continue`	If `TRUE`, the procedure appends *stream* within the previous final row (assuming it is less than 32K). If `FALSE`, the procedure places *stream* in a new row.

NEW_ROW_LIST Function and Procedure

This function or procedure creates a new OWA_TEXT.ROW_LIST DATA TYPE. The function version uses no parameters and returns a new empty row_list. The procedure version creates the row_list datatype as an output parameter.

Syntax

```
OWA_TEXT.NEW_ROW_LIST
  RETURN ROW_LIST;

OWA_TEXT.NEW_ROW_LIST(
  rlist    OUT     row_list);
```

Parameters

Table 218–3 NEW_ROW_LIST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
rlist	This is an output parameter containing the new row_list datatype

Return Values

The function version returns the new row_list datatype.

PRINT_MULTI Procedure

This procedure uses the PRINT Procedures or the PRN Procedures to print the "rows" field of the OWA_TEXT.MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE.

Syntax

```
OWA_TEXT.PRINT_MULTI(
   mline       IN       multi_line);
```

Parameters

Table 218–4 PRINT_MULTI Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
mline	The multi_line datatype to print.

Return Values

The contents of the multi_line.

PRINT_ROW_LIST Procedure

This procedure uses the PRINT Procedures or the PRN Procedures to print the "rows" field of the `OWA_TEXT.ROW_LIST DATA TYPE`.

Syntax

```
OWA_TEXT.PRINT_ROW_LIST(
   rlist       IN       multi_line);
```

Parameters

Table 218–5 PRINT_ROW_LIST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`rlist`	The row_list datatype to print.

Return Values

The contents of the `row_list`.

STREAM2MULTI Procedure

This procedure converts a string to a `multi_line` datatype.

Syntax

```
OWA_TEXT.STREAM2MULTI(
   stream          IN       VARCHAR2
   mline           OUT      multi_line);
```

Parameters

Table 218–6 STREAM2MULTI Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`stream`	The string to convert.
`mline`	The stream in `OWA_TEXT.MULTI_LINE DATA TYPE` format

219

OWA_UTIL

The `OWA_UTIL` package contains utility subprograms for performing operations such as getting the value of CGI environment variables, printing the data that is returned to the client, and printing the results of a query in an HTML table.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using OWA_UTIL

Overview

The OWA_UTIL package contains three types of utility subprograms.

- Dynamic SQL Utilities enable you to produce pages with dynamically generated SQL code.
- HTML utilities enable you to retrieve the values of CGI environment variables and perform URL redirects.
- Date utilities enable correct date-handling. Date values are simple strings in HTML, but are treated as a datatype by the Oracle database.

Types

DATETYPE Datatype

The TODATE Function converts an item of this type to the type `DATE`, which is understood and properly handled as data by the database. The procedure CHOOSE_DATE Procedure enables the user to select the desired date.

```
TYPE dateType IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(10) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

IDENT_ARR Datatype

This datatype is used for an array.

```
TYPE ident_arr IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

IP_ADDRESS Datatype

This datatype is used by the GET_CLIENT_IP Function in the "OWA_SEC" package on on page 217-1.

```
TYPE ip_address IS TABLE OF INTEGER INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Summary of OWA_UTIL Subprograms

Table 219–1 OWA_UTIL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BIND_VARIABLES Function on page 219-6	Prepares a SQL query and binds variables to it
CALENDARPRINT Procedures on page 219-7	Prints a calendar
CELLSPRINT Procedures on page 219-8	Prints the contents of a query in an HTML table
CHOOSE_DATE Procedure on page 219-10	Generates HTML form elements that allow the user to select a date
GET_CGI_ENV Function on page 219-11	Returns the value of the specified CGI environment variable
GET_OWA_SERVICE_PATH Function on page 219-12	Returns the full virtual path for the PL/SQL Gateway
GET_PROCEDURE Function on page 219-13	Returns the name of the procedure that is invoked by the PL/SQL Gateway
HTTP_HEADER_CLOSE Procedure on page 219-14	Closes the HTTP header
LISTPRINT Procedure on page 219-15	Generates a HTML form element that contains data from a query
MIME_HEADER Procedure on page 219-16	Generates the Content-type line in the HTTP header
PRINT_CGI_ENV Procedure on page 219-17	Generates a list of all CGI environment variables and their values
REDIRECT_URL Procedure on page 219-18	Generates the Location line in the HTTP header
SHOWPAGE Procedure on page 219-19	Prints a page generated by the HTP and HTF packages in SQL*Plus
SHOWSOURCE Procedure on page 219-20	Prints the source for the specified subprogram
SIGNATURE procedure on page 219-21	Prints a line that says that the page is generated by the PL/SQL Agent
STATUS_LINE Procedure on page 219-22	Generates the Status line in the HTTP header
TABLEPRINT Function on page 219-23	Prints the data from a table in the database as an HTML table
TODATE Function on page 219-26	Converts dateType data to the standard PL/SQL date type
WHO_CALLED_ME Procedure on page 219-27	Returns information on the caller of the procedure.

BIND_VARIABLES Function

This function prepares a SQL query by binding variables to it, and stores the output in an opened cursor. Use this function as a parameter to a procedure sending a dynamically generated query. Specify up to 25 bind variables.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.BIND_VARIABLES(
   theQuery       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv1Name        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv1Value       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv2Name        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv2Value       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv3Name        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv3Value       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
        ...
   bv25Name       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bv25Value      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 219–2 BIND_VARIABLES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
theQuery	The SQL query statement which must be a SELECT statement
bv1Name	The name of the variable
bv1Value	The value of the variable

Return Values

An integer identifying the opened cursor.

CALENDARPRINT Procedures

These procedures creates a calendar in HTML with a visible border. Each date in the calendar can contain any number of hypertext links.

This procedure has 2 versions.

- Version 1 uses a hard-coded query stored in a varchar2 string.
- Version 2 uses a dynamic query prepared with the BIND_VARIABLES Function.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.CALENDARPRINT(
   p_query        IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_mf_only      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'N');

OWA_UTIL.CALENDARPRINT(
   p_cursor       IN       INTEGER,
   p_mf_only      IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'N');
```

Parameters

Table 219–3 CALENDARPRINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_query	A PL/SQL query.
p_cursor	A PL/SQL cursor containing the same format as p_query.
p_mf_only	If "N" (the default), the generated calendar includes Sunday through Saturday. Otherwise, it includes Monday through Friday only.

Usage Notes

Design your query as follows:

- The first column is a DATE. This correlates the information produced by the query with the calendar output generated by the procedure.
- The query output must be sorted on this column using ORDER BY.
- The second column contains the text, if any, that you want printed for that date.
- The third column contains the destination for generated links. Each item in the second column becomes a hypertext link to the destination given in this column. If this column is omitted, the items in the second column are simple text, not links.

CELLSPRINT Procedures

This procedure generates an HTML table from the output of a SQL query. SQL atomic data items are mapped to HTML cells and SQL rows to HTML rows. You must write the code to begin and end the HTML table. There are nine versions of this procedure:

- The first version passes the results of a query into an index table. Perform the query and CELLSPRINT does the formatting. To have more control in generating an HTML table from the output of an SQL query, use the FORMAT_CELL Function in the "HTF" package on page 207-1.
- The second and third versions display rows (up to the specified maximum) returned by the query or cursor.
- The fourth and fifth versions exclude a specified number of rows from the HTML table. Use the fourth and fifth versions to scroll through result sets by saving the last row seen in a hidden form element.
- The sixth through ninth versions are the same as the first four versions, except that they return a row count output parameter.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_colCnt          IN    INTEGER,
   p_resultTbl       IN    vc_arr,
  p_format_numbers IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theQuery        IN    VARCHAR2,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theCursor       IN    INTEGER,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  iN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theQuery        IN    VARCHAR2,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   p_skip_rec        IN    NUMBER      DEFAULT 0,
   p_more_data       OUT   BOOLEAN);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theCursor       IN    INTEGER,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   p_skip_rec        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 0,
   p_more_data       OUT   BOOLEAN);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theQuery        IN    VARCHAR2,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   p_reccnt          OUT   NUMBER);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
```

```
   p_theCursor       IN    INTEGER,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   p_reccnt          OUT   NUMBER);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theQuery        IN    VARCHAR2,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   p_skip_rec        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 0,
   p_more_data       OUT   BOOLEAN
   p_reccnt          OUT   NUMBER);

OWA_UTIL.CELLSPRINT(
   p_theCursor       IN    INTEGER,
   p_max_rows        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 100,
   p_format_numbers  IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   p_skip_rec        IN    NUMBER     DEFAULT 0,
   p_more_data       OUT   BOOLEAN,
   p_reccnt          OUT   NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 219–4 CELLSPRINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_query	A PL/SQL query.
p_colCnt	The number of columns in the table.
p_theQuery	A SQL SELECT statement.
p_theCursor	A cursor ID. This can be the return value from the BIND_VARIABLES Function.
p_max_rows	The maximum number of rows to print.
p_format_numbers	If the value of this parameter is not NULL, number fields are right justified and rounded to two decimal places.
p_skip_rec	The number of rows to exclude from the HTML table.
p_more_data	TRUE if there are more rows in the query or cursor, FALSE otherwise.
p_reccnt	The number of rows that have been returned by the query. This value does not include skipped rows (if any).
p_resultTbl	The index table which will contain the result of the query. Each entry in the query will correspond to one column value.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
<tr><td>QueryResultItem</td><td>QueryResultItem</td></tr>...
```

CHOOSE_DATE Procedure

This procedure generates three HTML form elements that allow the user to select the day, the month, and the year.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.CHOOSE_DATE(
   p_name         IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_date         IN       DATE       DEFAULT SYSDATE);
```

Parameters

Table 219–5 CHOOSE_DATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_name	The name of the form elements.
p_date	The initial date that is selected when the HTML page is displayed.

Usage Notes

- The parameter in the procedure that receives the data from these elements must be a GET_CGI_ENV Function.
- Use the TODATE Function to convert the GET_CGI_ENV Function value to the standard Oracle DATE datatype.

Examples

```
<SELECT NAME="p_name" SIZE="1">
<OPTION value="01">1
     ...
<OPTION value="31">31
</SELECT>
-
<SELECT NAME="p_name" SIZE="1">
<OPTION value="01">JAN
     ...
<OPTION value="12">DEC
</SELECT>
-
<SELECT NAME="p_name" SIZE="1">
<OPTION value="1992">1992
     ...
<OPTION value="2002">2002
</SELECT>
```

GET_CGI_ENV Function

This function returns the value of the specified CGI environment variable.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.GET_CGI_ENV(
   param_name       IN      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 219–6 GET_CGI_ENV Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
param_name	The name of the CGI environment variable. It is case-insensitive.

Return Values

The value of the specified CGI environment variable. If the variable is not defined, the function returns NULL.

GET_OWA_SERVICE_PATH Function

This function returns the full virtual path of the PL/SQL Gateway that is handling the request.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.GET_OWA_SERVICE_PATH
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

A virtual path of the PL/SQL Gateway that is handling the request.

GET_PROCEDURE Function

This function returns the name of the procedure that is being invoked by the PL/SQL Gateway.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.GET_PROCEDURE
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Return Values

The name of a procedure, including the package name if the procedure is defined in a package.

HTTP_HEADER_CLOSE Procedure

This procedure generates a newline character to close the HTTP header.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.HTTP_HEADER_CLOSE;
```

Return Values

A newline character, which closes the HTTP header.

Usage Notes

- Use this procedure if you have not closed the header by using the `bclose_header` parameter in calls such as MIME_HEADER Procedure, REDIRECT_URL Procedure, or STATUS_LINE Procedure
- The HTTP header must be closed before any `HTP.PRINT` or `HTP.PRN` calls.

LISTPRINT Procedure

This procedure generates an HTML selection list form element from the output of a SQL query. There are two versions of this procedure.

- The first version contains a hard-coded SQL query.
- The second version uses a dynamic query prepared with the BIND_VARIABLES Function.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.LISTPRINT(
   p_theQuery     IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_cname        IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_nsize        IN       NUMBER,
   p_multiple     IN       BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);

OWA_UTIL.LISTPRINT(
   p_theCursor    IN    INTEGER,
   p_cname        IN       VARCHAR2,
   p_nsize        IN       NUMBER,
   p_multiple     IN       BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 219–7 LISTPRINT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_theQuery	The SQL query.
p_theCursor	The cursor ID. This can be the return value from the BIND_VARIABLES Function.
p_cname	The name of the HTML form element.
p_nsize	The size of the form element (this controls how many items the user can see without scrolling).
p_multiple	Whether multiple selection is permitted.

Usage Notes

The columns in the output of the query are handled in the following manner:

- The first column specifies the values that are sent back. These values are for the VALUE attribute of the OPTION tag.
- The second column specifies the values that the user sees.
- The third column specifies whether or not the row is marked as SELECTED in the OPTION tag. If the value is not NULL, the row is selected.

Examples

```
<SELECT NAME="p_cname" SIZE="p_nsize">
<OPTION SELECTED value='value_from_the_first_column'>value_from_the_second_column
<OPTION SELECTED value='value_from_the_first_column'>value_from_the_second_column
     ...
</SELECT>
```

MIME_HEADER Procedure

This procedure changes the default MIME header that the script returns. This procedure must come before any HTP.PRINT or HTP.PRN calls to direct the script not to use the default MIME header.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.MIME_HEADER(
   ccontent_type    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT 'text/html',
   bclose_header    IN       BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE,
   ccharset         IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 219–8 MIME_HEADER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ccontent_type	The MIME type to generate
bclose_header	Whether or not to close the HTTP header. If TRUE, two newlines are sent, which closes the HTTP header. Otherwise, one newline is sent, and the HTTP header remains open.
ccharset	The character set to use.The character set only makes sense if the MIME type is of type 'text'. Therefore, the character set is only tagged on to the Content-Type header only if the MIME type passed in is of type 'text'. Any other MIME type, such as 'image', will not have any character set tagged on.

Examples

```
Content-type: <ccontent_type>; charset=<ccharset>
```

so that

```
owa_util.mime_header('text/plain', false, 'ISO-8859-4')
```

generates

```
Content-type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-4\n
```

PRINT_CGI_ENV Procedure

This procedure generates all the CGI environment variables and their values made available by the PL/SQL Gateway to the stored procedure.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.PRINT_CGI_ENV;
```

Examples

This procedure generates a list in the following format:

```
cgi_env_var_name = value\n
```

REDIRECT_URL Procedure

This procedure specifies that the application server is to visit the specified URL. The URL may specify either a Web page to return or a program to execute.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.REDIRECT_URL(
   curl           IN       VARCHAR2
   bclose_header  IN       BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 219–9 REDIRECT_URL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
curl	The URL to visit.
bclose_header	Whether or not to close the HTTP header. If TRUE, two newlines are sent, which closes the HTTP header. Otherwise, one newline is sent, and the HTTP header remains open.

Usage Notes

This procedure must come before any HTP procedure or HTF function call.

Examples

This procedure generates

```
Location: <curl>\n\n
```

SHOWPAGE Procedure

This procedure prints out the HTML output of a procedure in SQL*Plus. The procedure must use the HTP or HTF packages to generate the HTML page, and this procedure must be issued after the HTP or HTF page-generating subprogram has been called and before any other HTP or HTF subprograms are directly or indirectly called.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.SHOWPAGE;
```

Usage Notes

- This method is useful for generating pages filled with static data.
- This procedure uses the DBMS_OUTPUT package and is limited to 32767 characters for each line and an overall buffer size of 1,000,000 bytes.

Examples

The output of htp procedure is displayed in SQL*Plus, SQL*DBA, or Oracle Server Manager. For example:

```
SQL> set serveroutput on
SQL> spool gretzky.html
SQL> execute hockey.pass("Gretzky")
SQL> execute owa_util.showpage
SQL> exit
```

This would generate an HTML page that could be accessed from Web browsers.

SHOWSOURCE Procedure

This procedure prints the source of the specified procedure, function, or package. If a procedure or function which belongs to a package is specified, then the entire package is displayed.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.SHOWSOURCE (
   cname      IN     VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 219–10 SHOWSOURCE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The function or procedure whose source you want to show.

SIGNATURE procedure

This procedure generates an HTML line followed by a signature line on the HTML document. If a parameter is specified, the procedure also generates a hypertext link to view the PL/SQL source for that procedure. The link calls the SHOWSOURCE Procedure.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.SIGNATURE;

OWA_UTIL.SIGNATURE (
   cname        IN        VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 219–11 SIGNATURE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cname	The function or procedure whose source you want to show.

Examples

Without a parameter, the procedure generates a line that looks like the following:

```
This page was produced by the PL/SQL Agent on August 9, 2001 09:30.
```

With a parameter, the procedure generates a signature line in the HTML document that looks like the following:

```
This page was produced by the PL/SQL Agent on 8/09/01 09:30
View PL/SQL Source
```

STATUS_LINE Procedure

This procedure sends a standard HTTP status code to the client. This procedure must come before any `htp.print` or `htp.prn` calls so that the status code is returned as part of the header, rather than as "content data".

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.STATUS_LINE(
   nstatus        IN       INTEGER,
   creason        IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   bclose_header  IN       BOOLEAN    DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 219–12 STATUS_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`nstatus`	The status code.
`creason`	The string for the status code.
`bclose_header`	Whether or not to close the HTTP header. If `TRUE`, two newlines are sent, which closes the HTTP header. Otherwise, one newline is sent, and the HTTP header remains open.

Examples

This procedure generates

`Status: <`*`nstatus`*`> <`*`creason`*`>\n\n`

TABLEPRINT Function

This function generates either preformatted tables or HTML tables (depending on the capabilities of the user's browser) from database tables.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.TABLEPRINT(
   ctable         IN       VARCHAR2,
   cattributes    IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ntable_type    IN       INTEGER    DEFAULT HTML_TABLE,
   ccolumns       IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT '*',
   cclauses       IN    VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   ccol_aliases   IN       VARCHAR2   DEFAULT NULL,
   nrow_min       IN       NUMBER     DEFAULT 0,
   nrow_max       IN       NUMBER     DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 219–13 TABLEPRINT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ctable	The database table.
cattributes	Other attributes to be included as-is in the tag.
ntable_type	How to generate the table. Specify HTML_TABLE to generate the table using <TABLE> tags or PRE_TABLE to generate the table using the <PRE> tags. These are constants: ■ HTML_TABLE CONSTANT INTEGER := 1; ■ PRE_TABLE CONSTANT INTEGER := 2;
ccolumns	A comma-delimited list of columns from ctable to include in the generated table.
cclauses	WHERE or ORDER BY clauses, which specify which rows to retrieve from the database table, and how to order them.
ccol_aliases	A comma-delimited list of headings for the generated table.
nrow_min	The first row, of those retrieved, to display.
nrow_max	The last row, of those retrieved, to display.

Return Values

Returns TRUE if there are more rows beyond the nrow_max requested, FALSE otherwise.

Usage Notes

- RAW columns are supported, but LONG RAW columns are not. References to LONG RAW columns will print the result 'Not Printable'.
- Note that in this function, cattributes is the second rather than the last parameter.

Examples

For browsers that do not support HTML tables, create the following procedure:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE showemps IS
  ignore_more BOOLEAN;
BEGIN
  ignore_more := OWA_UTIL.TABLEPRINT('emp', 'BORDER', OWA_UTIL.PRE_TABLE);
END;
```

Requesting a URL such as

```
http://myhost:7777/pls/hr/showemps
```

returns to the following to the client:

```
<PRE>
---------------------------------------------------------------------
| EMPNO |ENAME |JOB      |MGR   |HIREDATE   | SAL | COMM | DEPTNO |
---------------------------------------------------------------------
| 7369| SMITH  | CLERK   | 7902 | 17-DEC-80 | 800 |      | 20 |
| 7499| ALLEN  | SALESMAN| 7698 | 20-FEB-81 | 1600 | 300 | 30 |
| 7521| WARD   | SALESMAN| 7698 | 22-FEB-81 | 1250 | 500 | 30 |
| 7566| JONES  | MANAGER | 7839 | 02-APR-81 | 2975 |     | 20 |
| 7654| MARTIN | SALESMAN| 7698 | 28-SEP-81 | 1250 | 1400| 30 |
| 7698| BLAKE  | MANAGER | 7839 | 01-MAY-81 | 2850 |     | 30 |
| 7782| CLARK  | MANAGER | 7839 | 09-JUN-81 | 2450 |     | 10 |
| 7788| SCOTT  | ANALYST | 7566 | 09-DEC-82 | 3000 |     | 20 |
| 7839| KING   | PRESIDENT |    | 17-NOV-81 | 5000 |     | 10 |
| 7844| TURNER | SALESMAN| 7698 | 08-SEP-81 | 1500 | 0   | 30 |
| 7876| ADAMS  | CLERK   | 7788 | 12-JAN-83 | 1100 |     | 20 |
| 7900| JAMES  | CLERK   | 7698 | 03-DEC-81 | 950  |     | 30 |
| 7902| FORD   | ANALYST | 7566 | 03-DEC-81 | 3000 |     | 20 |
| 7934| MILLER | CLERK   | 7782 | 23-JAN-82 | 1300 |     | 10 |
---------------------------------------------------------------------
</PRE>
```

To view the employees in department 10, and only their employee ids, names, and salaries, create the following procedure:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE showemps_10 IS
 ignore_more BOOLEAN;
begin
 ignore_more := OWA_UTIL.TABLEPRINT
    ('EMP', 'BORDER', OWA_UTIL.PRE_TABLE,
     'empno, ename, sal', 'WHERE deptno=10 ORDER BY empno',
     'Employee Number, Name, Salary');
END;
```

A request for a URL like

```
http://myhost:7777/pls/hr/showemps_10
```

would return the following to the client:

```
<PRE>
-------------------------------------
| Employee Number |Name    | Salary |
-------------------------------------
| 7782            | CLARK  | 2450   |
| 7839            | KING   | 5000   |
| 7934            | MILLER | 1300   |
-------------------------------------
</PRE>
```

For browsers that support HTML tables, to view the department table in an HTML table, create the following procedure:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE showdept IS
 ignore_more BOOLEAN;
BEGIN
 ignore_more := oWA_UTIL.TABLEPRINT('dept', 'BORDER');
END;
```

A request for a URL like

```
http://myhost:7777/pls/hr/showdept
```

would return the following to the client:

```
<TABLE BORDER>
<TR>
<TH>DEPTNO</TH>
<TH>DNAME</TH>
<TH>LOC</TH>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">10</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">ACCOUNTING</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">NEW YORK</TD>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">20</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">RESEARCH</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">DALLAS</TD>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">30</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">SALES</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">CHICAGO</TD>
</TR>
<TR>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">40</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">OPERATIONS</TD>
<TD ALIGN="LEFT">BOSTON</TD>
</TR>
</TABLE>
```

A Web browser would format this to look like the following table:

DEPTNO	DNAME	LOC
10	ACCOUNTING	NEW YORK
20	RESEARCH	DALLAS
30	SALES	CHICAGO

TODATE Function

This function converts the DATETYPE Datatype to the standard Oracle DATE type.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.TODATE(
   p_dateArray      IN     dateType)
 RETURN DATE;
```

Parameters

Table 219–14 TODATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
p_dateArray	The value to convert.

WHO_CALLED_ME Procedure

This procedure returns information (in the form of output parameters) about the PL/SQL code unit that invoked it.

Syntax

```
OWA_UTIL.WHO_CALLED_ME(
   owner          OUT      VARCHAR2,
   name           OUT      VARCHAR2,
   lineno         OUT      NUMBER,
   caller_t       OUT      VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 219–15 WHO_CALLED_ME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
owner	The owner of the program unit.
name	The name of the program unit. This is the name of the package, if the calling program unit is wrapped in a package, or the name of the procedure or function if the calling program unit is a standalone procedure or function. If the calling program unit is part of an anonymous block, this is NULL.
lineno	The line number within the program unit where the call was made.
caller_t	The type of program unit that made the call. The possibilities are: package body, anonymous block, procedure, and function. Procedure and function are only for standalone procedures and functions.

220

SDO_CS

The SDO_CS package contains functions and procedures for working with coordinate systems. You can perform explicit coordinate transformations on a single geometry or an entire layer of geometries (that is, all geometries in a specified column in a table).

Documentation of SDO_CS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_CS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

221

SDO_CSW_PROCESS

The SDO_CSW_PROCESS package contains subprograms for various processing operations related to support for Catalog Services for the Web (CSW).

Documentation of SDO_CSW_PROCESS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_CSW_PROCESS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

222

SDO_GCDR

The SDO_GCDR package contains the Oracle Spatial geocoding subprograms, which let you geocode unformatted postal addresses.

Documentation of SDO_GCDR

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see SDO_GCDR in *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

223

SDO_GEOM

The SDO_GEOM package contains the geometry functions, which can be grouped into the following categories (with examples of each):

- Relationship (True/False) between two objects: RELATE, WITHIN_DISTANCE
- Validation: VALIDATE_GEOMETRY_WITH_CONTEXT, VALIDATE_LAYER_WITH_CONTEXT
- Single-object operations: SDO_ARC_DENSIFY, SDO_AREA, SDO_BUFFER, SDO_CENTROID, SDO_CONVEXHULL, SDO_LENGTH, SDO_MBR, SDO_POINTONSURFACE
- Two-object operations: SDO_DISTANCE, SDO_DIFFERENCE, SDO_INTERSECTION, SDO_UNION, SDO_XOR

This chapter contains the following topic:

Documentation of SDO_GEOM

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_GEOM` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide.*

224

SDO_GEOR

The SDO_GEOR package contains functions and procedures for the Oracle Spatial GeoRaster feature, which lets you store, index, query, analyze, and deliver raster image data and its associated spatial vector geometry data and metadata.

Documentation of SDO_GEOR

For complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_GEOR` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph GeoRaster Developer's Guide*.

225

SDO_GEOR_ADMIN

The SDO_GEOR_ADMIN package contains subprograms for administrative operations related to GeoRaster.

Documentation of SDO_GEOR_ADMIN

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_GEOR_ADMIN` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph GeoRaster Developer's Guide.*

226

SDO_GEOR_AGGR

The SDO_GEOR_AGGR package provides an interface to the SDO_GEOR_AGGR package for performing aggregate operations on GeoRaster objects.

Documentation of SDO_GEOR_AGGR

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_GEOR_AGGR` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph GeoRaster Developer's Guide.*

227

SDO_GEOR_RA

The SDO_GEOR_RA package provides an interface to the SDO_GEOR_RA package for performing raster algebra and analytic operations related to GeoRaster.

- Documentation of SDO_GEOR_RA

Documentation of SDO_GEOR_RA

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_GEOR_RA` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph GeoRaster Developer's Guide*.

228

SDO_GEOR_UTL

The SDO_GEOR_UTL package contains utility functions and procedures for the Oracle Spatial GeoRaster feature, including those related to using triggers with GeoRaster data.

Documentation of SDO_GEOR_UTL

For complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_GEOR_UTL` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph GeoRaster Developer's Guide*.

229

SDO_LRS

The SDO_LRS package contains functions that create, modify, query, and convert linear referencing elements.

Documentation of SDO_LRS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_LRS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide.*

230

SDO_MIGRATE

The SDO_MIGRATE package lets you upgrade geometry tables from previous releases of Oracle Spatial.

- Documentation of SDO_MIGRATE

Documentation of SDO_MIGRATE

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_MIGRATE` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

231

SDO_NET

The SDO_NET package contains functions and procedures for working with data modeled as nodes and links in a network.

- Documentation of SDO_NET

Documentation of SDO_NET

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_NET` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Topology Data Model and Network Data Model Graph Developer's Guide.*

232

SDO_OLS

The SDO_OLS package contains subprograms for Spatial OpenLS support.

- Documentation of SDO_OLS

Documentation of SDO_OLS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_OLS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide.*

233

SDO_PC_PKG

The SDO_PC_PKG package contains subprograms to support the use of point clouds in Spatial.

- Documentation of SDO_PC_PKG

Documentation of SDO_PC_PKG

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_PC_PKG` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

234

SDO_SAM

The SDO_SAM package contains functions and procedures for spatial analysis and data mining.

Documentation of SDO_SAM

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_SAM` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide.*

235

SDO_TIN_PKG

The SDO_TIN_PKG package contains subprograms to support the use of triangulated irregular networks (TINs) in Spatial.

Documentation of SDO_TIN_PKG

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_TIN_PKG` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

236

SDO_TOPO

The SDO_TOPO package contains subprograms for creating and managing Oracle Spatial topologies.

Documentation of SDO_TOPO

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_TOPO` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Topology Data Model and Network Data Model Graph Developer's Guide.*

237

SDO_TOPO_MAP

The SDO_TOPO_MAP package contains subprograms for editing Oracle Spatial topologies using a cache (TopoMap object).

Documentation of SDO_TOPO_MAP

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_TOPO_MAP` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Topology Data Model and Network Data Model Graph Developer's Guide.*

238

SDO_TUNE

The SDO_TUNE package contains Spatial tuning functions and procedures.

- Documentation of SDO_TUNE

Documentation of SDO_TUNE

For complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_TUNE` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide.*

239

SDO_UTIL

The SDO_UTIL package contains the utility functions and procedures for Oracle Spatial.

- Documentation of SDO_UTIL

Documentation of SDO_UTIL

For complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_UTIL` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide.*

240

SDO_WFS_LOCK

The SDO_WFS_LOCK package contains subprograms for WFS support for registering and unregistering feature tables. Registering a feature table enables the table for WFS transaction locking; unregistering a feature table disables the table for WFS transaction locking.

Documentation of SDO_WFS_LOCK

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_WFS_LOCK` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

241

SDO_WFS_PROCESS

The SDO_WFS_PROCESS package contains subprograms for various processing operations related to support for Web Feature Services.

Documentation of SDO_WFS_PROCESS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Spatial, see `SDO_WFS_PROCESS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph Developer's Guide*.

242

SEM_APIS

The `SEM_APIS` package contains subprograms for working with the Resource Description Framework (RDF) and Web Ontology Language (OWL) in an Oracle database.

Documentation of SEM_APIS

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Database semantic technology support, see `SEM_APIS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph RDF Semantic Graph Developer's Guide*.

243

SEM_OLS

The SEM_OLS package provides an interface to the SEM_OLS package for providing triple-level security to RDF data, using Oracle Label Security (OLS).

Documentation of SEM_OLS

For a complete description of this package, see `SEM_OLS` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph RDF Semantic Graph Developer's Guide*.

244

SEM_PERF

The `SEM_PERF` package contains subprograms for examining and enhancing the performance of the Resource Description Framework (RDF) and Web Ontology Language (OWL) support in an Oracle database.

Documentation of SEM_PERF

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Database semantic technology support, see `SEM_PERF` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph RDF Semantic Graph Developer's Guide*.

245

SEM_RDFCTX

The SEM_RDFCTX package contains subprograms for managing extractor policies and semantic indexes created for documents.

- Documentation of SEM_RDFCTX

Documentation of SEM_RDFCTX

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Database semantic technology support, see `SEM_RDFCTX` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph RDF Semantic Graph Developer's Guide*.

246

SEM_RDFSA

The SEM_RDFSA package contains subprograms for providing fine-grained access control to RDF data, using either a virtual private database (VPD) or Oracle Label Security (OLS).

Documentation of SEM_RDFSA

For a complete description of this package within the context of Oracle Database semantic technology support, see `SEM_RDFSA` in the *Oracle Spatial and Graph RDF Semantic Graph Developer's Guide*.

247

UTL_CALL_STACK

The `UTL_CALL_STACK` package provides an interface to provide information about currently executing subprograms. Functions return subprogram names, unit names, owner names, edition names, and line numbers for given dynamic depths. Other functions return error stack information.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* regarding Conditional Compilation
- *Oracle Database Development Guide* regarding Using PL/Scope and Using the PL/SQL Hierarchical Profiler

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_CALL_STACK

Overview

The UTL_CALL_STACK package provides an interface for PL/SQL programmers to obtain information about currently executing programs including the subprogram name from dynamic and lexical stacks and the depths of those stacks. Individual functions return subprogram names, unit names, owner names, edition names, and line numbers for given dynamic depths. More functions return error stack information. Such information can be used to create more revealing error logs and application execution traces.

Dynamic Depth

The dynamic depth of an executing instance of a PL/SQL subprogram is defined recursively.

- The dynamic depth of the currently executing subprogram instance is one.
- Otherwise, the dynamic depth of the subprogram instance is one more than the dynamic depth of the subprogram it invoked.
- If there is a SQL, Java, or other non-PL/SQL context that invoked or was invoked by an executing subprogram, it occupies a level on the call stack as if it were a subprogram.

In the case of a call stack in which A calls B, which calls C, which calls D, which calls E, which calls F, which calls E, this stack can be written as a line with the dynamic depths underneath:

```
A B C D E F E
7 6 5 4 3 2 1
```

Lexical Depth

The lexical depth of a PL/SQL subprogram is defined recursively.

- The lexical depth of a unit, an anonymous block, trigger, or ADT is one (1).
- The lexical depth of a subprogram defined within another object is one plus the lexical depth of that object.

Blocks do not affect lexical depth.

Error Depth

The error depth is the number of errors on the error stack.

For example, consider the following anonymous block.

```
BEGIN
  BEGIN
    ... (1)
    raise zero_divide;
  EXCEPTION
    when others then
      raise no_data_found;
  END;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN others THEN
    ... (2)
END;
```

The error depth at (1) is zero and at (2) is two.

Backtrace

The backtrace is a trace from where the exception was thrown to where the backtrace was examined.

Consider a call stack in which A calls B which calls C and C raises an exception. If the backtrace was examined in C, the backtrace would have one unit, C, and the backtrace depth would be one. If it was examined in A, it would have three units, A, B and C, and backtrace depth would be three.

The depth of a backtrace is zero in the absence of an exception.

Security Model

EXECUTE on UTL_CALL_STACK is granted to PUBLIC.

The UTL_CALL_STACK package does not show wrapped program units. For example, consider a call stack in which program unit A calls B, which calls C, and in turn calls UTL_CALL_STACK to determine the subprogram list. If program unit B is wrapped, then the subprogram list onlys shows program unit C.

Operational Notes

Compiler optimizations can change lexical, dynamic and backtrace depth.

`UTL_CALL_STACK` is not supported past RPC boundaries. For example, if A calls remote procedure B, B will not be able to obtain information about A using `UTL_CALL_STACK`.

Lexical unit information is available through the PL/SQL conditional compilation feature and is therefore not exposed through `UTL_CALL_STACK`.

Exceptions

The following table lists the exceptions raised by UTL_CALL_STACK.

Table 247–1 Exceptions Raised by UTL_CALL_STACK

Exception	Error Code	Description
BAD_DEPTH_INDICATOR	64610	This exception is raised when a provided depth is out of bounds. Dynamic and lexical depth are positive integer values. Error and backtrace depths are non-negative integer values and are zero only in the absence of an exception.

Data Structures

The `UTL_CALL_STACK` package defines a `VARRAY` type, `UNIT_QUALIFIED_NAME`.

VARRAY Type

- UNIT_QUALIFIED_NAME

UNIT_QUALIFIED_NAME

```
TYPE UNIT_QUALIFIED_NAME IS VARRAY(256) OF VARCHAR2(32767);
```

This data structure is a varray whose individual elements are, in order, the unit name, any lexical parents of the subprogram, and the subprogram name.

Example

Consider the following contrived PL/SQL procedure:

```
PROCEDURE topLevel IS
  FUNCTION localFunction(...) RETURNS VARCHAR2 IS
    FUNCTION innerFunction(...) RETURNS VARCHAR2 IS
      BEGIN
        DECLARE
          localVar PLS_INTEGER;
        BEGIN
          ... (1)
        END;
      END;
  BEGIN
    ...
  END;
```

The unit qualified name at (1) would be

```
["topLevel", "localFunction", "innerFunction"]
```

If the unit were an anonymous block, the unit name would be `"__anonymous_block"`

Summary of UTL_CALL_STACK Subprograms

Table 247–2 UTL_CALL_STACK Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BACKTRACE_DEPTH Function on page 247-11	Returns the number of backtrace items in the backtrace
BACKTRACE_LINE Function on page 247-12	Returns the line number of the unit at the specified backtrace depth
BACKTRACE_UNIT Function on page 247-13	Returns the name of the unit at the specified backtrace depth
CURRENT_EDITION Function on page 247-14	Returns the current edition name of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth
CONCATENATE_ SUBPROGRAM Function on page 247-15	Returns a concatenated form of a unit-qualified name
DYNAMIC_DEPTH Function on page 247-16	Returns the number of subprograms on the call stack
ERROR_DEPTH Function on page 247-17	Returns the number of errors on the error stack
ERROR_MSG Function on page 247-18	Returns the error message of the error at the specified error depth
ERROR_NUMBER Function on page 247-19	Returns the error number of the error at the specified error depth
LEXICAL_DEPTH Function on page 247-20	Returns the lexical nesting level of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth
OWNER Function on page 247-21	Returns the owner name of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth
UNIT_LINE Function on page 247-22	Returns the line number of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth
SUBPROGRAM Function on page 247-23	Returns the unit-qualified name of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth

BACKTRACE_DEPTH Function

This function returns the number of backtrace items in the backtrace.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.BACKTRACE_DEPTH
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Return Values

The number of backtrace items in the backtrace, zero in the absence of an exception.

BACKTRACE_LINE Function

This function returns the line number of the unit at the specified backtrace depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.BACKTRACE_LINE (
   backtrace_depth   IN   PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 247–3 BACKTRACE_LINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
backtrace_depth	Depth in backtrace

Return Values

The line number of the unit at the specified backtrace depth

BACKTRACE_UNIT Function

This function returns the name of the unit at the specified backtrace depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.BACKTRACE_UNIT (
   backtrace_depth   IN   PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 247–4 BACKTRACE_UNIT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
backtrace_depth	Depth in backtrace

Return Values

The name of the unit at the specified backtrace depth

CURRENT_EDITION Function

This function returns the current edition name of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.CURRENT_EDITION (
   dynamic_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 247–5 CURRENT_EDITION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dynamic_depth	Depth in the error stack

Return Values

The current edition name of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth

CONCATENATE_SUBPROGRAM Function

This function returns a concatenated form of a unit-qualified name.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.CONCATENATE_SUBPROGRAM (
   qualified_name    IN    UNIT_QUALIFIED_NAME)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 247–6 CONCATENATE_SUBPROGRAM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
qualified_name	A unit-qualified name

Return Values

A string of the form UNIT.SUBPROGRAM.LOCAL_SUBPROGRAM

DYNAMIC_DEPTH Function

This function returns the number of subprograms on the call stack.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.DYNAMIC_DEPTH
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Return Values

The number of subprograms on the call stack

ERROR_DEPTH Function

This function returns the number of errors on the error stack.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.ERROR_DEPTH
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Return Values

The number of errors on the error stack

ERROR_MSG Function

This function returns the error message of the error at the specified error depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.ERROR_MSG (
   error_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 247–7 ERROR_MSG Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_depth	Depth in the error stack

Return Values

The error message of the error at the specified error depth.

ERROR_NUMBER Function

This function returns the error number of the error at the specified error depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.ERROR_NUMBER (
   error_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 247–8 ERROR_NUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
error_depth	Depth in the call stack

Return Values

The error number of the error at the specified error depth

LEXICAL_DEPTH Function

This function returns the lexical nesting level of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.LEXICAL_DEPTH (
   dynamic_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 247–9 LEXICAL_DEPTH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dynamic_depth	Depth in the call stack

Return Values

The lexical nesting level of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth

OWNER Function

This function returns the owner name of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.OWNER (
   dynamic_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 247–10 OWNER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dynamic_depth	Depth in the call stack

Return Values

The owner name of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth

UNIT_LINE Function

This function returns the line number of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.UNIT_LINE (
   dynamic_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 247–11 UNIT_LINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dynamic_depth	Depth in the call stack

Return Values

The line number of the unit of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth

SUBPROGRAM Function

This function returns the unit-qualified name of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth.

Syntax

```
UTL_CALL_STACK.SUBPROGRAM (
   dynamic_depth    IN    PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN UNIT_QUALIFIED_NAME;
```

Parameters

Table 247–12 SUBPROGRAM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
dynamic_depth	Depth in the call stack

Return Values

Returns the unit-qualified name of the subprogram at the specified dynamic depth

248

UTL_COLL

The UTL_COLL package lets PL/SQL programs use collection locators to query and update.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Summary of UTL_COLL Subprograms

Table 248–1 UTL_COLL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
IS_LOCATOR Function on page 248-3	Determines whether a collection item is actually a locator or not

IS_LOCATOR Function

This function determines whether a collection item is actually a locator or not.

Syntax

```
UTL_COLL.IS_LOCATOR (
   coln IN STANDARD)
  RETURNS BOOLEAN;
```

Pragmas

Asserts `WNDS`, `WNPS` and `RNPS` pragmas

Parameters

Table 248–2 IS_LOCATOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`coln`	Nested table or varray item.

Return Values

Table 248–3 IS_LOCATOR Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
`1`	Collection item is indeed a locator.
`0`	Collection item is not a locator.

Examples

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE list_t as TABLE OF VARCHAR2(20);
/

CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE phone_book_t AS OBJECT (
  pno  number,
  ph   list_t );
/

CREATE TABLE phone_book OF phone_book_t
      NESTED TABLE ph STORE AS nt_ph;
CREATE TABLE phone_book1 OF phone_book_t
      NESTED TABLE ph STORE AS nt_ph_1 RETURN LOCATOR;

INSERT INTO phone_book VALUES(1, list_t('650-633-5707','650-323-0953'));
INSERT INTO phone_book1 VALUES(1, list_t('415-555-1212'));

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE chk_coll IS
  plist list_t;
  plist1 list_t;
BEGIN
  SELECT ph INTO plist FROM phone_book WHERE pno=1;

  SELECT ph INTO plist1 FROM phone_book1 WHERE pno=1;

  IF (UTL_COLL.IS_LOCATOR(plist)) THEN
```

```
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('plist is a locator');
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('plist is not a locator');
  END IF;

  IF (UTL_COLL.IS_LOCATOR(plist1)) THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('plist1 is a locator');
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('plist1 is not a locator');
  END IF;

END chk_coll;

SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
EXECUTE chk_coll;
```

249

UTL_COMPRESS

The `UTL_COMPRESS` package provides a set of data compression utilities.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_COMPRESS

Constants

Define max number of handles for piecewise operations:

```
UTLCOMP_MAX_HANDLE   CONSTANT  PLS_INTEGER := 5;
```

Exceptions

Table 249–1 UTL_COMPRESS Exceptions

Exception	Description
BUFFER_TOO_SMALL	The compressed representation is too big.
DATA_ERROR	The input or output data stream was found to be an invalid format.
INVALID_ARGUMENT	One of the arguments was an invalid type or value.
INVALID_HANDLE	Invalid handle for piecewise compress or uncompress.
STREAM_ERROR	An error occurred during compression or uncompression of the data stream

Operational Notes

- It is the caller's responsibility to free the temporary LOB returned by the LZ* functions with DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY call.
- A BFILE passed into LZ_COMPRESS* or lZ_UNCOMPRESS* has to be opened by DBMS_LOB.FILEOPEN.
- Under special circumstances (especially if the input has already been compressed) the output produced by one of the UTL_COMPRESS subprograms may be the same size, or even slightly larger than, the input.
- The output of the UTL_COMPRESS compressed data is compatible with gzip(with -n option)/gunzip on a single file.

Summary of UTL_COMPRESS Subprograms

Table 249–2 UTL_COMPRESS Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ISOPEN Function on page 249-7	Checks to see if the handle to a piecewise (un)compress context is open or closed
LZ_COMPRESS Functions and Procedures on page 249-8	Compresses data using Lempel-Ziv compression algorithm
LZ_COMPRESS_ADD Procedure on page 249-10	Adds a piece of compressed data
LZ_COMPRESS_CLOSE on page 249-11	Closes and finishes piecewise compress operation
LZ_COMPRESS_OPEN on page 249-12	Initializes a piecewise context that maintains the compress state and data
LZ_UNCOMPRESS Functions and Procedures on page 249-13	Accepts compressed input, verifies it to be a valid and uncompresses it
LZ_UNCOMPRESS_EXTRACT Procedure on page 249-14	Extracts a piece of uncompressed data
LZ_UNCOMPRESS_OPEN Function on page 249-15	Initializes a piecewise context that maintains the uncompress state and data
LZ_UNCOMPRESS_CLOSE Procedure on page 249-16	Closes and finishes the piecewise uncompress

ISOPEN Function

This function checks to see if the handle to a piecewise (un)compress context is open or closed.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.ISOPEN(
   handle in binary_integer)
 RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 249–3 ISOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle to a piecewise uncompress context.

Return Values

TRUE if the given piecewise handle is opened, otherwise FALSE.

Examples

```
IF (UTL_COMPRESS.ISOPEN(myhandle) = TRUE) then
   UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS_CLOSE(myhandle, lob_1);
END IF;
```

Alternatively:

```
IF (UTL_COMPRESS.ISOPEN(myhandle) = TRUE) THEN
   UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS_CLOSE(myhandle);
END IF;
```

LZ_COMPRESS Functions and Procedures

These functions and procedures compress data using Lempel-Ziv compression algorithm.

Syntax

This function accept a RAW as input, compress it and return the compressed RAW result and metadata:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS (
   src       IN           RAW,
   quality   IN           BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 6)
 RETURN RAW;
```

This function accept a BLOB as input, compress it and returns a temporary BLOB for the compressed data:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS (
  src       IN           BLOB,
  quality   IN           BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 6)
 RETURN BLOB;
```

This procedure returns the compressed data into the existing BLOB(dst) which is trimmed to the compressed data size:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS (
  src      IN            BLOB,
  dst      IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
  quality  IN            BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 6);
```

This function returns a temporary BLOB for the compressed data:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS (
   src     IN            BFILE,
   quality IN            BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 6)
 RETURN BLOB;
```

This procedure will return the compressed data into the existing BLOB(dst) which is trimmed to the compressed data size:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS (
   src     IN            BFILE,
   dst     IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   quality IN            BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 6);
```

Parameters

Table 249–4 LZ_COMPRESS Function and Procedures Parameters

Parameter	Description
src	Data (RAW, BLOB or BFILE) to be compressed.
dst	Destination for compressed data
quality	An integer in the range 1 to 9, 1=fast compression, 9=best compression, default=6

Usage Notes

- `quality` is an optional compression tuning value. It allows the `UTL_COMPRESS` user to choose between speed and compression quality, meaning the percentage of reduction in size. A faster compression speed will result in less compression of the data. A slower compression speed will result in more compression of the data. Valid values are [1..9], with 1=fastest and 9=slowest. The default 'quality' value is 6.

LZ_COMPRESS_ADD Procedure

This procedure adds a piece of compressed data.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS_ADD (
   handle IN             BINARY_INTEGER,
   dst    IN OUT NOCOPY  BLOB,
   src    IN             RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 249–5 LZ_COMPRESS_ADD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle to a piecewise compress context.
dst	The opened LOB from LZ_COMPRESS_OPEN to store compressed data.
src	The input data to be compressed.

Exceptions

- invalid_handle - out of range invalid or unopened handle.
- invalid_argument - NULL handle, src, dst, or invalid dst.

LZ_COMPRESS_CLOSE

This procedure closes and finishes piecewise compress operation.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS_CLOSE (
   handle IN             BINARY_INTEGER,
   dst    IN OUT NOCOPY  BLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 249–6 LZ_COMPRESS_CLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle to a piecewise compress context.
dst	The opened LOB from LZ_COMPRESS_OPEN to store compressed data.

Exceptions

- invalid_handle - out of range invalid or uninitialized handle.
- invalid_argument - NULL handle, dst, or invalid dst.

LZ_COMPRESS_OPEN

This function initializes a piecewise context that maintains the compress state and data.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_COMPRESS_OPEN (
   dst       IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
   quality   IN            BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 6)
 RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 249–7 LZ_COMPRESS_OPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`dst`	User supplied LOB to store compressed data.
`quality`	Speed versus efficiency of resulting compressed output. ■ Valid values are the range 1..9, with a default value of 6. ■ 1=fastest compression, 9=slowest compression and best compressed file size.

Return Values

A handle to an initialized piecewise compress context.

Exceptions

- `invalid_handle` - invalid handle, too many open handles.
- `invalid_argument` - `NULL dst` or invalid quality specified.

Usage Notes

Close the opened handle with `LZ_COMPRESS_CLOSE`

- once the piecewise compress is completed
- in the event of an exception in the middle of process

because lack of doing so will cause these handles to leak.

LZ_UNCOMPRESS Functions and Procedures

This procedure accepts as input a RAW, BLOB or BFILE compressed string, verifies it to be a valid compressed value, uncompresses it using Lempel-Ziv compression algorithm, and returns the uncompressed RAW or BLOB result.

Syntax

This function returns uncompressed data as RAW:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS(
   src  IN  RAW)
  RETURN RAW;
```

This function returns uncompressed data as a temporary BLOB:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS(
   src  IN  BLOB)
  RETURN BLOB;
```

This procedure returns the uncompressed data into the existing BLOB(dst), which will be trimmed to the uncompressed data size:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS(
   src  IN  BLOB,
   dst  IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB);
```

This function returns a temporary BLOB for the uncompressed data:

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS(
   src  IN BFILE)
 RETURN BLOB;
```

This procedure returns the uncompressed data into the existing BLOB(dst). The original dst data will be overwritten.

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS(
   src  IN  BFILE,
   dst  IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB);
```

Parameters

Table 249–8 LZ_UNCOMPRESS Function and Procedures Parameters

Parameter	Description
src	Compressed data.
dst	Destination for uncompressed data.

LZ_UNCOMPRESS_EXTRACT Procedure

This procedure extracts a piece of uncompressed data.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS_EXTRACT(
   handle  IN          BINARY_INTEGER,
   dst     OUT NOCOPY  RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 249–9 LZ_UNCOMPRESS_EXTRACT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`handle`	The handle to a piecewise uncompress context.
`dst`	The uncompressed data.

Exceptions

- `no_data_found` - finished uncompress.
- `invalid_handle` - out of range invalid or uninitialized handle.
- `invalid_argument` - NULL handle.

LZ_UNCOMPRESS_OPEN Function

This function initializes a piecewise context that maintains the uncompress state and data.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS_OPEN(
   src  IN  BLOB)
  RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 249–10 LZ_UNCOMPRESS_OPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
src	The input data to be uncompressed.

Return Values

A handle to an initialized piecewise compress context.

Exceptions

- invalid_handle - invalid handle, too many open handles.
- invalid_argument - NULL src.

Usage Notes

Close the opened handle with LZ_UNCOMPRESS_CLOSE

- once the piecewise uncompress is completed
- in the event of an exception in the middle of process

because lack of doing so will cause these handles to leak.

LZ_UNCOMPRESS_CLOSE Procedure

This procedure closes and finishes the piecewise uncompress.

Syntax

```
UTL_COMPRESS.LZ_UNCOMPRESS_CLOSE(
   handle  IN   BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 249–11 LZ_UNCOMPRESS_CLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
handle	The handle to a piecewise uncompress context.

Exceptions

- invalid_handle - out of range invalid or uninitialized handle.
- invalid_argument - NULL handle.

250

UTL_ENCODE

The UTL_ENCODE package provides functions that encode RAW data into a standard encoded format so that the data can be transported between hosts. You can use UTL_ENCODE functions to encode the body of email text. The package also contains the decode counterpart functions of the encode functions. The functions follow published standards for encoding to accommodate non-Oracle utilities on the sending or receiving ends.

This chapter contains the following topic:

Summary of UTL_ENCODE Subprograms

Table 250–1 UTL_ENCODE Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BASE64_DECODE Function on page 250-3	Reads the base 64-encoded `RAW` input string and decodes it to its original `RAW` value
BASE64_ENCODE Function on page 250-4	Encodes the binary representation of the `RAW` value into base 64 elements and returns it in the form of a `RAW` string
MIMEHEADER_DECODE Function on page 250-5	Decodes a string from mime header format
MIMEHEADER_ENCODE Function on page 250-6	Encodes a string into mime header format
QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ DECODE Function on page 250-7	Reads the `varchar2` quoted printable format input string and decodes it to the corresponding `RAW` string
QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ ENCODE Function on page 250-8	Reads the `RAW` input string and encodes it to the corresponding quoted printable format string
TEXT_DECODE Function on page 250-9	Decodes a character set sensitive text string
TEXT_ENCODE Function on page 250-10	Encodes a character set sensitive text string
UUDECODE Function on page 250-11	Reads the `RAW` uuencode format input string and decodes it to the corresponding `RAW` string
UUENCODE Function on page 250-12	Reads the `RAW` input string and encodes it to the corresponding uuencode format string

BASE64_DECODE Function

This function reads the base 64-encoded `RAW` input string and decodes it to its original `RAW` value.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_DECODE (
   r  IN RAW)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(base64_decode, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 250–2 BASE64_DECODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	The RAW string containing base 64-encoded data. There are no defaults or optional parameters.

Return Values

Table 250–3 BASE64_DECODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
`RAW`	Contains the decoded string

BASE64_ENCODE Function

This function encodes the binary representation of the RAW value into base 64 elements and returns it in the form of a RAW string.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.BASE64_ENCODE (
   r  IN RAW)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(base64_encode, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 250–4 BASE64_ENCODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The RAW value to be encoded. There are no defaults or optional parameters.

Return Values

Table 250–5 BASE64_ENCODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Contains the encoded base 64 elements

MIMEHEADER_DECODE Function

This function accepts as input an "encoded word" of the form:

```
=?<charset>?<encoding>?<encoded text>?=
=?ISO-8859-1?Q?Here is some encoded text?=
```

The <encoded text> is encapsulated in mime header tags which give the MIMEHEADER_DECODE function information about how to decode the string. The mime header metadata tags are stripped from the input string and the <encoded text> is converted to the base database character set as follows:

- If this is a UTF16 platform, convert the encoded text from UTF16 to ASCII
- If this is an EBCDIC platform, convert the encoded text from EBCDIC to ASCII
- If this is an ASCII or UTF8 platform, no conversion needed

The string is decoded using either quoted-printable or base64 decoding, as specified by the <encoding> metadata tag in the encoded word. The resulting converted and decoded text is returned to the caller as a VARCHAR2 string.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.MIMEHEADER_DECODE (
   buf    IN   VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
  RETURN data VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET buf%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 250–6 MIMEHEADER_DECODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
buf	The encoded text data with mime header format tags.

Return Values

Table 250–7 MIMEHEADER_DECODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
data	The encoded text data with mime header format tags

Examples

```
v2:=utl_encode.mimeheader_decode('=?ISO-8859-1?Q?Here is some encoded text?=');
```

MIMEHEADER_ENCODE Function

This function returns as an output an "encoded word" of the form:

```
=?<charset>?<encoding>?<encoded text>?=
=?ISO-8859-1?Q?Here is some text?=
```

The buf input parameter is the text to be encoded and becomes the <encoded text>.

The <encoding> value is either "Q" or "B" for quoted-printable encode or base64 encoding respectively. The ENCODING input parameter accepts as valid values UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE or UTL_ENCODE.BASE64 or NULL. If NULL, quoted-printable encoding is selected as a default value.

The <charset> value is specified as the input parameter encode_charset. If NULL, the database character set is selected as a default value.

The mimeheader encoding process includes conversion of the buf input string to the character set specified by the encode_charset parameter. The converted string is encoded to either quoted-printable or base64 encoded format. The mime header tags are appended and prepended.

Finally, the string is converted to the base character set of the database:

- If this is a UTF16 platform, convert the encoded text to UTF16
- If this is an EBCDIC platform, convert the encoded text to EBCDIC
- If this is an ASCII or UTF8 platform, no conversion needed.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.MIMEHEADER_ENCODE (
   buf            IN  VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   encode_charset IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   encoding       IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN string VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET buf%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 250–8 MIMEHEADER_ENCODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
buf	The text data.
encode_charset	The target character set.
encoding	The encoding format. Valid values are UTL_ENCODE.BASE64, UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE and NULL

Return Values

Table 250–9 MIMEHEADER_ENCODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
string	A VARCHAR2 encoded string with mime header format tags.

QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE Function

This function reads the varchar2 quoted printable format input string and decodes it to the corresponding RAW string.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE (
   r  IN RAW)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(quoted_printable_decode, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 250–10 QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
r	The RAW string containing a quoted printable data string. There are no defaults or optional parameters.

Return Values

Table 250–11 QUOTED_PRINTABLE_DECODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	The decoded string

QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE Function

This function reads the RAW input string and encodes it to the corresponding quoted printable format string.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE (
   r  IN RAW)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(quoted_printable_encode, WNDS, RNDS,WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 250–12 QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The RAW string. There are no defaults or optional parameters.

Return Values

Table 250–13 QUOTED_PRINTABLE_ENCODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Contains the quoted printable string

TEXT_DECODE Function

This function converts the input text to the target character set as specified by the encode_charset parameter, if not NULL. The encoded text is converted to the base character set of database, as follows:

- If this is a UTF16 platform, convert the encoded text from UTF16 to ASCII
- If this is an EBCDIC platform, convert the encoded text from EBCDIC to ASCII
- If this is an ASCII or UTF8 platform, no conversion needed

You can decode from either quoted-printable or base64 format, with regard to each encoding parameter. If NULL, quoted-printable is selected as a default decoding format. If encode_charset is not NULL, you convert the string from the specified character set to the database character set. The resulting decoded and converted text string is returned to the caller.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_DECODE(
   buf            IN  VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   encode_charset IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   encoding       IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN string VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET buf%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 250–14 TEXT_DECODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
buf	The encoded text data.
encode_charset	The source character set.
encoding	The encoding format. Valid values are UTL_ENCODE.BASE64, UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE and NULL.

Return Values

Table 250–15 TEXT_DECODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
string	A VARCHAR2 decoded text string.

Examples

```
v2:=UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_DECODE(
     'Here is some text',
      WE8ISO8859P1,
      UTL_ENCODE.BASE64);
```

TEXT_ENCODE Function

This function converts the input text to the target character set as specified by the `encode_charset` parameter, if not `NULL`. The text is encoded to either base64 or quoted-printable format, as specified by the `encoding` parameter. Quoted-printable is selected as a default if ENCODING is NULL.

The encoded text is converted to the base character set of the database:

- If this is a UTF16 platform, convert the encoded text to UTF16
- If this is an EBCDIC platform, convert the encoded text to EBCDIC
- If this is an ASCII or UTF8 platform, no conversion needed

The resulting encoded and converted text string is returned to the caller.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.TEXT_ENCODE (
   buf            IN  VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   encode_charset IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   encoding       IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN string VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET buf%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 250–16 TEXT_ENCODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`buf`	The text data.
`encode_charset`	The target character set.
`encoding`	The encoding format. Valid values are `UTL_ENCODE.BASE64`, `UTL_ENCODE.QUOTED_PRINTABLE` and `NULL`

Return Values

Table 250–17 TEXT_ENCODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
`string`	A `VARCHAR2` encoded string with mime header format tags.

Examples

```
v2:=utl_encode.text_encode(
   'Here is some text',
   'WE8ISO8859P1',
    UTL_ENCODE.BASE64);
```

UUDECODE Function

This function reads the RAW uuencode format input string and decodes it to the corresponding RAW string. See "UUENCODE Function" on page 250-12 for discussion of the cumulative nature of UUENCODE and UUDECODE for data streams.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.UUDECODE (
   r  IN RAW)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(uudecode, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 250–18 UUDECODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The RAW string containing the uuencoded data string. There are no defaults or optional parameters.

Return Values

Table 250–19 UUDECODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	The decoded RAW string

UUENCODE Function

This function reads the RAW input string and encodes it to the corresponding uuencode format string. The output of this function is cumulative, in that it can be used to encode large data streams, by splitting the data stream into acceptably sized RAW values, encoded, and concatenated into a single encoded string.

Syntax

```
UTL_ENCODE.UUENCODE (
   r          IN RAW,
   type       IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   filename   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   permission IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL) RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma RESTRICT_REFERENCES(uuencode, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 250–20 UUENCODE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW string
type	Optional number parameter containing the type of uuencoded output. Options: complete—a defined PL/SQL constant with a value of 1. (default) header_piece ...middle_piece ...end_piece
filename	Optional varchar2 parameter containing the uuencode filename; the default is uuencode.txt
permission	Optional varchar2 parameter containing the permission mode; the default is 0 (a text string zero).

Return Values

Table 250–21 UUENCODE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Contains the uuencode format string

251

UTL_FILE

With the `UTL_FILE` package, PL/SQL programs can read and write operating system text files. `UTL_FILE` provides a restricted version of operating system stream file I/O.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_FILE

Security Model

The set of files and directories that are accessible to the user through UTL_FILE is controlled by a number of factors and database parameters. Foremost of these is the set of directory objects that have been granted to the user. The nature of directory objects is discussed in the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*.

Assuming the user has both READ and WRITE access to the directory object USER_DIR, the user can open a file located in the operating system directory described by USER_DIR, but not in subdirectories or parent directories of this directory.

Lastly, the client (text I/O) and server implementations are subject to operating system file permission checking.

UTL_FILE provides file access both on the client side and on the server side. When run on the server, UTL_FILE provides access to all operating system files that are accessible from the server. On the client side, as in the case for Forms applications, UTL_FILE provides access to operating system files that are accessible from the client.

In the past, accessible directories for the UTL_FILE functions were specified in the initialization file using the UTL_FILE_DIR parameter. However, UTL_FILE_DIR access is no longer recommended. Oracle recommends that you instead use the directory object feature, which replaces UTL_FILE_DIR. Directory objects offer more flexibility and granular control to the UTL_FILE application administrator, can be maintained dynamically (that is, without shutting down the database), and are consistent with other Oracle tools. CREATE ANY DIRECTORY privilege is granted only to SYS and SYSTEM by default.

Note: Use the CREATE DIRECTORY feature instead of UTL_FILE_DIR for directory access verification.

Note that neither hard nor symbolic links are supported.

On UNIX systems, the owner of a file created by the FOPEN function is the owner of the shadow process running the instance. Normally, this owner is ORACLE. Files created using FOPEN are always writable and readable using the UTL_FILE subprograms. However, non-privileged operating system users who need to read these files outside of PL/SQL may need access from a system administrator.

Caution: The privileges needed to access files in a directory object are operating system specific. UTL_FILE directory object privileges give you read and write access to all files within the specified directory.

Operational Notes

The file location and file name parameters are supplied to the FOPEN function as separate strings, so that the file location can be checked against the list of accessible directories as specified by the ALL_DIRECTORIES view of accessible directory objects. Together, the file location and name must represent a legal filename on the system, and the directory must be accessible. A subdirectory of an accessible directory is not necessarily also accessible; it too must be specified using a complete path name matching an ALL_DIRECTORIES object.

UTL_FILE implicitly interprets line terminators on read requests, thereby affecting the number of bytes returned on a GET_LINE call. For example, the len parameter of UTL_FILE.GET_LINE specifies the requested number of bytes of character data. The number of bytes actually returned to the user will be the lesser of:

- The GET_LINE len parameter, or
- The number of bytes until the next line terminator character, or
- The max_linesize parameter specified by UTL_FILE.FOPEN

The FOPEN max_linesize parameter must be a number in the range 1 and 32767. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The GET_LINE len parameter must be a number in the range 1 and 32767. If unspecified, Oracle supplies the default value of max_linesize. If max_linesize and len are defined to be different values, then the lesser value takes precedence.

UTL_FILE.GET_RAW ignores line terminators.

UTL_FILE expects that files opened by UTL_FILE.FOPEN in text mode are encoded in the database character set. It expects that files opened by UTL_FILE.FOPEN_NCHAR in text mode are encoded in the UTF8 character set. If an opened file is not encoded in the expected character set, the result of an attempt to read the file is indeterminate. When data encoded in one character set is read and Globalization Support is told (such as by means of NLS_LANG) that it is encoded in another character set, the result is indeterminate. If NLS_LANG is set, it should therefore be the same as the database character set.

Rules and Limits

Operating system-specific parameters, such as C-shell environment variables under UNIX, cannot be used in the file location or file name parameters.

UTL_FILE I/O capabilities are similar to standard operating system stream file I/O (OPEN, GET, PUT, CLOSE) capabilities, but with some limitations. For example, you call the FOPEN function to return a file handle, which you use in subsequent calls to GET_LINE or PUT to perform stream I/O to a file. When file I/O is done, you call FCLOSE to complete any output and free resources associated with the file.

Note: The UTL_FILE package is similar to the client-side TEXT_IO package currently provided by Oracle Procedure Builder. Restrictions for a server implementation require some API differences between UTL_FILE and TEXT_IO. In PL/SQL file I/O, errors are returned using PL/SQL exceptions.

Exceptions

Table 251–1 UTL_FILE Package Exceptions

Exception Name	Description
INVALID_PATH	File location is invalid.
INVALID_MODE	The open_mode parameter in FOPEN is invalid.
INVALID_FILEHANDLE	File handle is invalid.
INVALID_OPERATION	File could not be opened or operated on as requested.
READ_ERROR	Destination buffer too small, or operating system error occurred during the read operation
WRITE_ERROR	Operating system error occurred during the write operation.
INTERNAL_ERROR	Unspecified PL/SQL error
CHARSETMISMATCH	A file is opened using FOPEN_NCHAR, but later I/O operations use nonchar functions such as PUTF or GET_LINE.
FILE_OPEN	The requested operation failed because the file is open.
INVALID_MAXLINESIZE	The MAX_LINESIZE value for FOPEN() is invalid; it should be within the range 1 to 32767.
INVALID_FILENAME	The filename parameter is invalid.
ACCESS_DENIED	Permission to access to the file location is denied.
INVALID_OFFSET	Causes of the INVALID_OFFSET exception: ■ ABSOLUTE_OFFSET = NULL and RELATIVE_OFFSET = NULL, or ■ ABSOLUTE_OFFSET < 0, or ■ Either offset caused a seek past the end of the file
DELETE_FAILED	The requested file delete operation failed.
RENAME_FAILED	The requested file rename operation failed.

Procedures in UTL_FILE can also raise predefined PL/SQL exceptions such as NO_DATA_FOUND or VALUE_ERROR.

Examples

Example 1

Note: The examples are UNIX-specific.

Given the following:

```
SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY log_dir AS '/appl/gl/log';
SQL> GRANT READ ON DIRECTORY log_dir TO DBA;
SQL> GRANT WRITE ON DIRECTORY log_dir TO DBA;

SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY USER_DIR AS '/appl/gl/user'';
SQL> GRANT READ ON DIRECTORY USER_DIR TO PUBLIC;
SQL> GRANT WRITE ON DIRECTORY USER_DIR TO PUBLIC;
```

The following file locations and filenames are valid and accessible as follows:

File Location	Filename	READ and WRITE
/appl/gl/log	L12345.log	Users with DBA privilege
/appl/gl/user	u12345.tmp	All users

The following file locations and filenames are invalid:

File Location	Filename	Invalid Because
/appl/gl/log/backup	L12345.log	# subdirectories are not accessible
/APPL/gl/log	L12345.log	# directory strings must follow case sensitivity rules as required by the O/S
/appl/gl/log	backup/L1234.log	# filenames may not include portions of directory paths
/user/tmp	L12345.log	# no corresponding CREATE DIRECTORY command has been issued

Example 2

```
DECLARE
  V1 VARCHAR2(32767);
  F1 UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
BEGIN
  -- In this example MAX_LINESIZE is less than GET_LINE's length request
  -- so the number of bytes returned will be 256 or less if a line terminator is
seen.
  F1 := UTL_FILE.FOPEN('USER_DIR','u12345.tmp','R',256);
  UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(F1,V1,32767);
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(F1);

  -- In this example, FOPEN's MAX_LINESIZE is NULL and defaults to 1024,
  -- so the number of bytes returned will be 1024 or less if a line terminator is
seen.
  F1 := UTL_FILE.FOPEN('USER_DIR','u12345.tmp','R');
  UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(F1,V1,32767);
```

```
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(F1);

  -- In this example, GET_LINE doesn't specify a number of bytes, so it defaults
to
  -- the same value as FOPEN's MAX_LINESIZE which is NULL in this case and
defaults to 1024.
  -- So the number of bytes returned will be 1024 or less if a line terminator is
seen.
  F1 := UTL_FILE.FOPEN('USER_DIR','u12345.tmp','R');
  UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(F1,V1);
  UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(F1);
END;
```

Data Structures

The UTL_FILE package defines a RECORD type.

Record Types

- FILETYPE Record Type

FILETYPE Record Type

The contents of FILE_TYPE are private to the UTL_FILE package. You should not reference or change components of this record.

```
TYPE file_type IS RECORD (
   id          BINARY_INTEGER,
   datatype    BINARY_INTEGER,
   byte_mode   BOOLEAN);
```

Fields

Table 251–2 FILE_TYPE Fields

Field	Description
id	A numeric value indicating the internal file handle number
datatype	Indicates whether the file is a CHAR file, Nchar file or other (binary)
byte_mode	Indicates whether the file was open as a binary file, or as a text file

Caution: Oracle does not guarantee the persistence of FILE_TYPE values between database sessions or within a single session. Attempts to clone file handles or use dummy file handles may have inderterminate outcomes.

Summary of UTL_FILE Subprograms

Table 251–3 UTL_FILE Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
FCLOSE Procedure on page 251-13	Closes a file
FCLOSE_ALL Procedure on page 251-14	Closes all open file handles
FCOPY Procedure on page 251-15	Copies a contiguous portion of a file to a newly created file
FFLUSH Procedure on page 251-16	Physically writes all pending output to a file
FGETATTR Procedure on page 251-17	Reads and returns the attributes of a disk file
FGETPOS Function on page 251-18	Returns the current relative offset position within a file, in bytes
FOPEN Function on page 251-19	Opens a file for input or output
FOPEN_NCHAR Function on page 251-21	Opens a file in Unicode for input or output
FREMOVE Procedure on page 251-22	Deletes a disk file, assuming that you have sufficient privileges
FRENAME Procedure on page 251-23	Renames an existing file to a new name, similar to the UNIX `mv` function
FSEEK Procedure on page 251-24	Adjusts the file pointer forward or backward within the file by the number of bytes specified
GET_LINE Procedure on page 251-25	Reads text from an open file
GET_LINE_NCHAR Procedure on page 251-26	Reads text in Unicode from an open file
GET_RAW Procedure on page 251-27	Reads a `RAW` string value from a file and adjusts the file pointer ahead by the number of bytes read
IS_OPEN Function on page 251-28	Determines if a file handle refers to an open file
NEW_LINE Procedure on page 251-29	Writes one or more operating system-specific line terminators to a file
PUT Procedure on page 251-30	Writes a string to a file
PUT_LINE Procedure on page 251-31	Writes a line to a file, and so appends an operating system-specific line terminator
PUT_LINE_NCHAR Procedure on page 251-32	Writes a Unicode line to a file
PUT_NCHAR Procedure on page 251-33	Writes a Unicode string to a file
PUTF Procedure on page 251-34	A `PUT` procedure with formatting

Table 251–3 (Cont.) UTL_FILE Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
PUTF_NCHAR Procedure on page 251-36	A `PUT_NCHAR` procedure with formatting, and writes a Unicode string to a file, with formatting
PUT_RAW Procedure on page 251-37	Accepts as input a `RAW` data value and writes the value to the output buffer

FCLOSE Procedure

This procedure closes an open file identified by a file handle.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FCLOSE (
   file IN OUT FILE_TYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 251–4 FCLOSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN or FOPEN_NCHAR call

Usage Notes

If there is buffered data yet to be written when FCLOSE runs, then you may receive a WRITE_ERROR exception when closing a file.

Exceptions

```
WRITE_ERROR
INVALID_FILEHANDLE
```

FCLOSE_ALL Procedure

This procedure closes all open file handles for the session. This should be used as an emergency cleanup procedure, for example, when a PL/SQL program exits on an exception.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FCLOSE_ALL;
```

Usage Notes

Note: `FCLOSE_ALL` does not alter the state of the open file handles held by the user. This means that an `IS_OPEN` test on a file handle after an `FCLOSE_ALL` call still returns `TRUE`, even though the file has been closed. No further read or write operations can be performed on a file that was open before an `FCLOSE_ALL`.

Exceptions

`WRITE_ERROR`

FCOPY Procedure

This procedure copies a contiguous portion of a file to a newly created file. By default, the whole file is copied if the `start_line` and `end_line` parameters are omitted. The source file is opened in read mode. The destination file is opened in write mode. A starting and ending line number can optionally be specified to select a portion from the center of the source file for copying.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FCOPY (
   src_location    IN VARCHAR2,
   src_filename    IN VARCHAR2,
   dest_location   IN VARCHAR2,
   dest_filename   IN VARCHAR2,
   start_line      IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   end_line        IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 251–5 FCOPY Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
`src_location`	Directory location of the source file, a `DIRECTORY_NAME` from the `ALL_DIRECTORIES` view (case sensitive)
`src_filename`	Source file to be copied
`dest_location`	Destination directory where the destination file is created
`dest_filename`	Destination file created from the source file
`start_line`	Line number at which to begin copying. The default is `1` for the first line
`end_line`	Line number at which to stop copying. The default is `NULL`, signifying end of file

Exceptions

`INVALID_FILENAME`

`INVALID_PATH`

`INVALID_OPERATION`

`INVALID_OFFSET`

`READ_ERROR`

`WRITE_ERROR`

FFLUSH Procedure

FFLUSH physically writes pending data to the file identified by the file handle. Normally, data being written to a file is buffered. The FFLUSH procedure forces the buffered data to be written to the file. The data must be terminated with a newline character.

Flushing is useful when the file must be read while still open. For example, debugging messages can be flushed to the file so that they can be read immediately.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FFLUSH (
   file  IN FILE_TYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 251–6 FFLUSH Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN or FOPEN_NCHAR call

Exceptions

INVALID_FILENAME

INVALID_MAXLINESIZE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

FGETATTR Procedure

This procedure reads and returns the attributes of a disk file.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FGETATTR(
   location     IN VARCHAR2,
   filename     IN VARCHAR2,
   fexists      OUT BOOLEAN,
   file_length  OUT NUMBER,
   block_size   OUT BINARY_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 251–7 FGETATTR Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
location	Directory location of the source file, a DIRECTORY_NAME from the ALL_DIRECTORIES view (case sensitive)
filename	Name of the file to be examined
fexists	A BOOLEAN for whether or not the file exists
file_length	Length of the file in bytes. NULL if file does not exist.
block_size	File system block size in bytes. NULL if the file does not exist.

Exceptions

INVALID_PATH

INVALID_FILENAME

INVALID_OPERATION

READ_ERROR

ACCESS_DENIED

FGETPOS Function

This function returns the current relative offset position within a file, in bytes.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FGETPOS (
   file IN FILE_TYPE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 251–8 FGETPOS Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Directory location of the source file

Return Values

FGETPOS returns the relative offset position for an open file, in bytes. It raises an exception if the file is not open. It returns 0 for the beginning of the file.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

READ_ERROR

Usage Notes

If file is opened for byte mode operations, then the INVALID OPERATION exception is raised.

FOPEN Function

This function opens a file. You can specify the maximum line size and have a maximum of 50 files open simultaneously. See also FOPEN_NCHAR Function on page 251-21.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FOPEN (
   location     IN VARCHAR2,
   filename     IN VARCHAR2,
   open_mode    IN VARCHAR2,
   max_linesize IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 1024)
  RETURN FILE_TYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 251–9 FOPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
location	Directory location of file. This string is a directory object name and must be specified in upper case. Read privileges must be granted on this directory object for the UTL_FILE user to run FOPEN.
filename	File name, including extension (file type), without directory path. If a directory path is given as a part of the filename, it is ignored by FOPEN. On Unix, the filename cannot end with /.
open_mode	Specifies how the file is opened. Modes include: ■ r -- read text ■ w -- write text ■ a -- append text ■ rb -- read byte mode ■ wb -- write byte mode ■ ab -- append byte mode If you try to open a file specifying 'a' or 'ab' for open_mode but the file does not exist, the file is created in write mode.
max_linesize	Maximum number of characters for each line, including the newline character, for this file (minimum value 1, maximum value 32767). If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024.

Return Values

FOPEN returns a file handle, which must be passed to all subsequent procedures that operate on that file. The specific contents of the file handle are private to the UTL_FILE package, and individual components should not be referenced or changed by the UTL_FILE user.

Table 251–10 FOPEN Function Return Values

Return	Description
FILE_TYPE	Handle to open file

Exceptions

`INVALID_MAXILINESIZE`

`INVALID_MODE`

`INVALID_OPERATION`

`INVALID_PATH`

`INVALID_FILENAME`

Usage Notes

The file location and file name parameters must be supplied to the `FOPEN` function as quoted strings so that the file location can be checked against the list of accessible directories as specified by the `ALL_DIRECTORIES` view of accessible directory objects.

FOPEN_NCHAR Function

This function opens a file in national character set mode for input or output, with the maximum line size specified. You can have a maximum of 50 files open simultaneously. With this function, you can read or write a text file in Unicode instead of in the database character set.

Even though the contents of an NVARCHAR2 buffer may be AL16UTF16 or UTF8 (depending on the national character set of the database), the contents of the file are always read and written in UTF8. UTL_FILE converts between UTF8 and AL16UTF16 as necessary.

See also FOPEN Function on page 251-19.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FOPEN_NCHAR (
   location     IN VARCHAR2,
   filename     IN VARCHAR2,
   open_mode    IN VARCHAR2,
   max_linesize IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 1024)
RETURN FILE_TYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 251–11 FOPEN_NCHAR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
location	Directory location of file
filename	File name (including extension)
open_mode	Open mode (r,w,a,rb,wb,ab)
max_linesize	Maximum number of characters for each line, including the newline character, for this file (minimum value 1, maximum value 32767)

Return Values

FOPEN_NCHAR returns a file handle, which must be passed to all subsequent procedures that operate on that file. The specific contents of the file handle are private to the UTL_FILE package, and individual components should not be referenced or changed by the UTL_FILE user.

Table 251–12 FOPEN_NCHAR Function Return Values

Return	Description
FILE_TYPE	Handle to open file

Exceptions

INVALID_MAXILINESIZE

INVALID_MODE

INVALID_OPERATION

INVALID_PATH

FREMOVE Procedure

This procedure deletes a disk file, assuming that you have sufficient privileges.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FREMOVE (
   location IN VARCHAR2,
   filename IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 251–13 FREMOVE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
location	Directory location of the file, a DIRECTORY_NAME from ALL_DIRECTORIES (case sensitive)
filename	Name of the file to be deleted

Exceptions

ACCESS_DENIED

DELETE_FAILED

INVALID_FILENAME

INVALID_OPERATION

INVALID_PATH

Usage Notes

The FREMOVE procedure does not verify privileges before deleting a file. The O/S verifies file and directory permissions. An exception is returned on failure.

FRENAME Procedure

This procedure renames an existing file to a new name, similar to the UNIX `mv` function.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FRENAME (
   src_location     IN   VARCHAR2,
   src_filename     IN   VARCHAR2,
   dest_location    IN   VARCHAR2,
   dest_filename    IN   VARCHAR2,
   overwrite        IN   BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 251–14 FRENAME Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
`src_location`	Directory location of the source file, a `DIRECTORY_NAME` from the `ALL_DIRECTORIES` view (case sensitive)
`src_filename`	Source file to be renamed
`dest_location`	Destination directory of the destination file, a `DIRECTORY_NAME` from the `ALL_DIRECTORIES` view (case sensitive)
`dest_filename`	New name of the file
`overwrite`	Default is `FALSE`. Permission on both the source and destination directories must be granted. You can use the `overwrite` parameter to specify whether or not to overwrite a file if one exists in the destination directory. The default is `FALSE` for no overwrite.

Exceptions

`ACCESS_DENIED`

`INVALID_FILENAME`

`INVALID_PATH`

`RENAME_FAILED`

FSEEK Procedure

This procedure adjusts the file pointer forward or backward within the file by the number of bytes specified.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.FSEEK (
   file             IN OUT  UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE,
   absolute_offset  IN      PL_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   relative_offset  IN      PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 251–15 FSEEK Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	File handle
absolute_offset	Absolute location to which to seek; default = NULL
relative_offset	Number of bytes to seek forward or backward; positive = forward, negative integer = backward, zero = current position, default = NULL

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OFFSET

INVALID_OPERATION

READ_ERROR

Usage Notes

- Using FSEEK, you can read previous lines in the file without first closing and reopening the file. You must know the number of bytes by which you want to navigate.
- If relative_offset, the procedure seeks forward. If relative_offset > 0, or backward, if relative_offset < 0, the procedure seeks through the file by the number of relative_offset bytes specified.
- If the beginning of the file is reached before the number of bytes specified, then the file pointer is placed at the beginning of the file. If the end of the file is reached before the number of bytes specified, then an INVALID_OFFSET error is raised.
- If absolute_offset, the procedure seeks to an absolute location specified in bytes.
- If file is opened for byte mode operations, then the INVALID OPERATION exception is raised.

GET_LINE Procedure

This procedure reads text from the open file identified by the file handle and places the text in the output buffer parameter. Text is read up to, but not including, the line terminator, or up to the end of the `len` parameter. It cannot exceed the `max_linesize` specified in `FOPEN`.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.GET_LINE (
   file        IN  FILE_TYPE,
   buffer      OUT VARCHAR2,
   len         IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 251–16 GET_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
`file`	Active file handle returned by an `FOPEN` call. The file must be open for reading (mode `r`); otherwise an `INVALID_OPERATION` exception is raised.
`buffer`	Data buffer to receive the line read from the file
`len`	The number of bytes read from the file. Default is `NULL`. If `NULL`, Oracle supplies the value of `max_linesize`.

Exceptions

`INVALID_FILEHANDLE`

`INVALID_OPERATION`

`NO_DATA_FOUND`

`READ_ERROR`

Usage Notes

If the line does not fit in the buffer, a `READ_ERROR` exception is raised. If no text was read due to end of file, the `NO_DATA_FOUND` exception is raised. If the file is opened for byte mode operations, the `INVALID_OPERATION` exception is raised.

Because the line terminator character is not read into the buffer, reading blank lines returns empty strings.

The maximum size of the `buffer` parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in `FOPEN`.If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. See also "GET_LINE_NCHAR Procedure" on page 251-26.

GET_LINE_NCHAR Procedure

This procedure reads text from the open file identified by the file handle and places the text in the output buffer parameter. With this function, you can read a text file in Unicode instead of in the database character set.

The file must be opened in national character set mode, and must be encoded in the UTF8 character set. The expected buffer datatype is NVARCHAR2. If a variable of another datatype, such as NCHAR, NCLOB, or VARCHAR2 is specified, PL/SQL will perform standard implicit conversion from NVARCHAR2 after the text is read.

See also GET_LINE Procedure on page 251-25

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.GET_LINE_NCHAR (
   file        IN  FILE_TYPE,
   buffer      OUT NVARCHAR2,
   len         IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 251–17 GET_LINE_NCHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN_NCHAR call. The file must be open for reading (mode r). If the file is opened by FOPEN instead of FOPEN_NCHAR, a CHARSETMISMATCH exception is raised.
buffer	Data buffer to receive the line read from the file
len	The number of bytes read from the file. Default is NULL. If NULL, Oracle supplies the value of max_linesize.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

NO_DATA_FOUND

READ_ERROR

GET_RAW Procedure

This procedure reads a RAW string value from a file and adjusts the file pointer ahead by the number of bytes read. UTL_FILE.GET_RAW ignores line terminators.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.GET_RAW (
   file       IN            UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE,
   buffer     OUT NOCOPY    RAW,
   len        IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 251–18 GET_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	File handle
buffer	RAW data
len	The number of bytes read from the file. Default is NULL. If NULL, len is assumed to be the maximum length of RAW.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

LENGTH_MISMATCH

NO_DATA_FOUND

READ_ERROR

Usage Notes

The subprogram will raise No_Data_Found when it attempts to read past the end of the file. Your application should allow for this by catching the exception in its processing loop.

```
PROCEDURE Sys.p (n IN VARCHAR2) IS
      h     UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE := UTL_FILE.FOPEN('D', n, 'r', 32767);
      Buf   RAW(32767);
      Amnt  CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 32767;
    BEGIN
      LOOP
        BEGIN
          Utl_File.Get_Raw(h, Buf, Amnt);
          -- Do something with this chunk
        EXCEPTION WHEN No_Data_Found THEN EXIT; END;
      END LOOP;
      UTL_FILE.FCLOSE (h);
    END;
```

IS_OPEN Function

This function tests a file handle to see if it identifies an open file. IS_OPEN reports only whether a file handle represents a file that has been opened, but not yet closed. It does not guarantee that there will be no operating system errors when you attempt to use the file handle.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.IS_OPEN (
   file  IN FILE_TYPE)
  RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 251–19 IS_OPEN Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN or FOPEN_NCHAR call

Return Values

TRUE or FALSE

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

NEW_LINE Procedure

This procedure writes one or more line terminators to the file identified by the input file handle. This procedure is separate from PUT because the line terminator is a platform-specific character or sequence of characters.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.NEW_LINE (
   file     IN FILE_TYPE,
   lines    IN BINARY_INTEGER := 1);
```

Parameters

Table 251–20 NEW_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN or FOPEN_NCHAR call
lines	Number of line terminators to be written to the file

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

PUT Procedure

PUT writes the text string stored in the buffer parameter to the open file identified by the file handle. The file must be open for write operations. No line terminator is appended by PUT; use NEW_LINE to terminate the line or use PUT_LINE to write a complete line with a line terminator. See also "PUT_NCHAR Procedure" on page 251-33.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUT (
   file      IN FILE_TYPE,
   buffer    IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 251–21 PUT Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN_NCHAR call. The file must be open for writing.
buffer	Buffer that contains the text to be written to the file. User must have opened the file using mode w or mode a; otherwise, an INVALID_OPERATION exception is raised.

Usage Notes

The maximum size of the buffer parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in FOPEN. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The sum of all sequential PUT calls cannot exceed 32767 without intermediate buffer flushes.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

PUT_LINE Procedure

This procedure writes the text string stored in the buffer parameter to the open file identified by the file handle. The file must be open for write operations. PUT_LINE terminates the line with the platform-specific line terminator character or characters.

See also "PUT_LINE_NCHAR Procedure" on page 251-32.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUT_LINE (
   file      IN FILE_TYPE,
   buffer    IN VARCHAR2,
   autoflush IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 251–22 PUT_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN call
buffer	Text buffer that contains the lines to be written to the file
autoflush	Flushes the buffer to disk after the WRITE

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

Usage Notes

- The maximum size of the buffer parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in FOPEN. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The sum of all sequential PUT calls cannot exceed 32767 without intermediate buffer flushes.
- If file is opened for byte mode operations, then the INVALID OPERATION exception is raised.

PUT_LINE_NCHAR Procedure

This procedure writes the text string stored in the buffer parameter to the open file identified by the file handle. With this function, you can write a text file in Unicode instead of in the database character set. This procedure is equivalent to the PUT_NCHAR Procedure, except that the line separator is appended to the written text. See also PUT_LINE Procedure on page 251-31.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUT_LINE_NCHAR (
   file    IN FILE_TYPE,
   buffer  IN NVARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 251–23 PUT_LINE_NCHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN_NCHAR call. The file must be open for writing.
buffer	Text buffer that contains the lines to be written to the file

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

Usage Notes

- The maximum size of the buffer parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in FOPEN. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The sum of all sequential PUT calls cannot exceed 32767 without intermediate buffer flushes.
- If file is opened for byte mode operations, then the INVALID OPERATION exception is raised.

PUT_NCHAR Procedure

This procedure writes the text string stored in the buffer parameter to the open file identified by the file handle.

With this function, you can write a text file in Unicode instead of in the database character set. The file must be opened in the national character set mode. The text string will be written in the UTF8 character set. The expected buffer datatype is NVARCHAR2. If a variable of another datatype is specified, PL/SQL will perform implicit conversion to NVARCHAR2 before writing the text.

See also PUT Procedure on page 251-30

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUT_NCHAR (
   file      IN FILE_TYPE,
   buffer    IN NVARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 251–24 PUT_NCHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN_NCHAR call. If the file is opened by FOPEN instead of FOPEN_NCHAR, a CHARSETMISMATCH exception is raised.
buffer	Buffer that contains the text to be written to the file. User must have opened the file using mode w or mode a; otherwise, an INVALID_OPERATION exception is raised.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

Usage Notes

The maximum size of the buffer parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in FOPEN. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The sum of all sequential PUT calls cannot exceed 32767 without intermediate buffer flushes.

PUTF Procedure

This procedure is a formatted `PUT` procedure. It works like a limited `printf`(). See also PUTF_NCHAR Procedure on page 251-36.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUTF (
   file    IN FILE_TYPE,
   format  IN VARCHAR2,
   [arg1   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   . . .
   arg5    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL]);
```

Parameters

Table 251–25 PUTF Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
`file`	Active file handle returned by an `FOPEN` call
`format`	Format string that can contain text as well as the formatting characters `\n` and `%s`
`arg1..arg5`	From one to five operational argument strings. Argument strings are substituted, in order, for the `%s` formatters in the format string. If there are more formatters in the format parameter string than there are arguments, then an empty string is substituted for each `%s` for which there is no argument.

Usage Notes

- If file is opened for byte mode operations, then the `INVALID OPERATION` exception is raised.
- The format string can contain any text, but the character sequences `%s` and `\n` have special meaning.

Character Sequence	Meaning
`%s`	Substitute this sequence with the string value of the next argument in the argument list.
`\n`	Substitute with the appropriate platform-specific line terminator.

Exceptions

`INVALID_FILEHANDLE`

`INVALID_OPERATION`

`WRITE_ERROR`

Examples

The following example writes the lines:

```
Hello, world!
I come from Zork with greetings for all earthlings.
```

```
my_world  varchar2(4) := 'Zork';
...
PUTF(my_handle, 'Hello, world!\nI come from %s with %s.\n',
                my_world,
                'greetings for all earthlings');
```

If there are more `%s` formatters in the format parameter than there are arguments, then an empty string is substituted for each `%s` for which there is no matching argument.

PUTF_NCHAR Procedure

This procedure is a formatted version of a PUT_NCHAR Procedure. Using PUTF_NCHAR, you can write a text file in Unicode instead of in the database character set. It accepts a format string with formatting elements \n and %s, and up to five arguments to be substituted for consecutive instances of %s in the format string. The expected datatype of the format string and the arguments is NVARCHAR2.

If variables of another datatype are specified, PL/SQL will perform implicit conversion to NVARCHAR2 before formatting the text. Formatted text is written in the UTF8 character set to the file identified by the file handle. The file must be opened in the national character set mode.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUTF_NCHAR (
   file    IN FILE_TYPE,
   format  IN NVARCHAR2,
   [arg1   IN NVARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   . . .
   arg5    IN NVARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL]);
```

Parameters

Table 251–26 PUTF_NCHAR Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	Active file handle returned by an FOPEN_NCHAR call. The file must be open for reading (mode r). If the file is opened by FOPEN instead of FOPEN_NCHAR, a CHARSETMISMATCH exception is raised.
format	Format string that can contain text as well as the formatting characters \n and %s
arg1..arg5	From one to five operational argument strings. Argument strings are substituted, in order, for the %s formatters in the format string. If there are more formatters in the format parameter string than there are arguments, then an empty string is substituted for each %s for which there is no argument.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

Usage Notes

- The maximum size of the buffer parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in FOPEN. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The sum of all sequential PUT calls cannot exceed 32767 without intermediate buffer flushes.
- If file is opened for byte mode operations, then the INVALID OPERATION exception is raised.

PUT_RAW Procedure

This procedure accepts as input a RAW data value and writes the value to the output buffer.

Syntax

```
UTL_FILE.PUT_RAW (
   file          IN    UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE,
   buffer        IN    RAW,
   autoflush     IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 251–27 PUT_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameters	Description
file	File handle
buffer	The RAW data written to the buffer
autoflush	If TRUE, then performs a flush after writing the value to the output buffer; default is FALSE.

Exceptions

INVALID_FILEHANDLE

INVALID_OPERATION

WRITE_ERROR

Usage Notes

You can request an automatic flush of the buffer by setting the third argument to TRUE.

The maximum size of the buffer parameter is 32767 bytes unless you specify a smaller size in FOPEN. If unspecified, Oracle supplies a default value of 1024. The sum of all sequential PUT calls cannot exceed 32767 without intermediate buffer flushes.

252

UTL_HTTP

The UTL_HTTP package makes Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) callouts from SQL and PL/SQL. You can use it to access data on the Internet over HTTP.

When the package fetches data from a Web site using HTTPS, it requires Oracle Wallet Manager which can be created by either Oracle Wallet Manager or the orapki utility. Non-HTTPS fetches do not require an Oracle wallet.

See Also:

- Chapter 266, "UTL_URL"
- Chapter 263, "UTL_SMTP"
- *Oracle Database Enterprise User Security Administrator's Guide* for more information on Wallet Manager

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_HTTP

This section contains topics which relate to using the `UTL_HTTP` package.

Overview

With the UTL_HTTP package, you can write PL/SQL programs that communicate with Web (HTTP) servers. And UTL_HTTP contains a function that can be used in SQL queries.

The package supports HTTP over the Secured Socket Layer protocol (SSL), also known as HTTPS. It also supports SSL client authentication by sending the client-certificate in a wallet to authenticate with the remote Web server.

Other Internet-related data-access protocols (such as the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) or the Gopher protocol) are also supported using an HTTP proxy server that supports those protocols.

Security Model

This package is an invoker's rights package and the invoking user will need the `connect` privilege granted in the access control list assigned to the remote network host to which he wants to connect, as well as the `use-client-certificates` or the `use-passwords` privilege to authenticate himself with the remote Web server using the credentials stored in an Oracle wallet.

Note: For more information, see Managing Fine-grained Access to External Network Services in Oracle Database Security Guide

Constants

The UTL_HTTP package uses the constants shown in following tables.

- UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP Versions
- UTL_HTTP Constants - Default Ports
- UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP 1.1 Status Codes

Table 252–1 UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP Versions

Name	Type	Value	Description
HTTP_VERSION_1_0	VARCHAR2(10)	'HTTP/1.0'	Denotes HTTP version 1.0 that can be used in the function BEGIN_REQUEST.
HTTP_VERSION_1_1	VARCHAR2(10)	'HTTP/1.1'	Denotes HTTP version 1.1 that can be used in the function BEGIN_REQUEST.

Table 252–2 UTL_HTTP Constants - Default Ports

Name	Type	Value	Description
DEFAULT_HTTP_PORT	PLS_INTEGER	80	The default TCP/IP port (80) at which a Web server or proxy server listens
DEFAULT_HTTPS_PORT	PLS_INTEGER	443	The default TCP/IP port (443) at which an HTTPS Web server listens

Table 252–3 UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP 1.1 Status Codes

Name	Type	Value	Description
HTTP_CONTINUE	PLS_INTEGER	100	The client should continue with its request. This interim response is used to inform the client that the initial part of the request has been received and has not yet been rejected by the server.
HTTP_SWITCHING_PROTOCOLS	PLS_INTEGER	101	The server understands and is willing to comply with the client's request, through the Upgrade message header field, for a change in the application protocol being used on this connection. The server will switch protocols to those defined by the response's Upgrade header field immediately after the empty line which terminates the 101 response.
HTTP_OK	PLS_INTEGER	200	The request has succeeded. The information returned with the response is dependent on the method used in the request
HTTP_CREATED CONSTANT	PLS_INTEGER	201	The request has been fulfilled and resulted in a new resource being created.
HTTP_ACCEPTED	PLS_INTEGER	202	The request has been accepted for processing, but the processing has not been completed. The request might or might not eventually be acted upon, as it might be disallowed when processing actually takes place.

Table 252–3 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP 1.1 Status Codes

Name	Type	Value	Description
HTTP_NON_ AUTHORITATIVE_INFO	PLS_INTEGER	203	The returned metainformation in the entity-header is not the definitive set as available from the origin server, but is gathered from a local or a third-party copy.
HTTP_NO_CONTENT	PLS_INTEGER	204	The server has fulfilled the request but does not need to return an entity-body, and might want to return updated metainformation.
HTTP_RESET_CONTENT	PLS_INTEGER	205	The server has fulfilled the request and the user agent should reset the document view which caused the request to be sent. The response must not include an entity.
HTTP_PARTIAL_CONTENT	PLS_INTEGER	206	The server has fulfilled the partial GET request for the resource.
HTTP_MULTIPLE_CHOICES	PLS_INTEGER	300	The requested resource corresponds to any one of a set of representations, each with its own specific location, and agent-driven negotiation information is being provided so that the user (or user agent) can select a preferred representation and redirect its request to that location.
HTTP_MOVED_ PERMANENTLY	PLS_INTEGER	301	The requested resource has been assigned a new permanent URI and any future references to this resource should use one of the returned URIs.
HTTP_FOUND CONSTANT	PLS_INTEGER	302	The requested resource resides temporarily under a different URI.
HTTP_SEE_OTHER	PLS_INTEGER	303	The response to the request can be found under a different URI and should be retrieved using a GET method on that resource.
HTTP_NOT_MODIFIED	PLS_INTEGER	304	If the client has performed a conditional GET request and access is allowed, but the document has not been modified, the server responds with this status code.
HTTP_USE_PROXY	PLS_INTEGER	305	The requested resource must be accessed through the proxy given by the Location field. The Location field gives the URI of the proxy.
HTTP_TEMPORARY_ REDIRECT	PLS_INTEGER	307	The requested resource resides temporarily under a different URI.
HTTP_BAD_REQUEST	PLS_INTEGER	400	The request could not be understood by the server due to malformed syntax.
HTTP_UNAUTHORIZED	PLS_INTEGER	401	The request requires user authentication. The client may repeat the request with a suitable Authorization header field. If the request already included Authorization credentials, then the 401 response indicates that authorization has been refused for those credentials.
HTTP_PAYMENT_REQUIRED	PLS_INTEGER	402	This code is reserved for future use.

Table 252–3 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP 1.1 Status Codes

Name	Type	Value	Description
HTTP_FORBIDDEN	PLS_INTEGER	403	The server understood the request, but is refusing to fulfill it.
HTTP_NOT_FOUND	PLS_INTEGER	404	The server has not found anything matching the Request-URI.
HTTP_NOT_ACCEPTABLE	PLS_INTEGER	406	The resource identified by the request is only capable of generating response entities which have content characteristics not acceptable according to the accept headers sent in the request.
HTTP_PROXY_AUTH_ REQUIRED	PLS_INTEGER	407	This code is similar to 401 (Unauthorized), but indicates that the client must first authenticate itself with the proxy.
HTTP_REQUEST_TIME_OUT	PLS_INTEGER	408	The client did not produce a request within the time that the server was prepared to wait.
HTTP_CONFLICT	PLS_INTEGER	409	The request could not be completed due to a conflict with the current state of the resource.
HTTP_GONE	PLS_INTEGER	410	The requested resource is no longer available at the server and no forwarding address is known.
HTTP_LENGTH_REQUIRED	PLS_INTEGER	411	The server refuses to accept the request without a defined `Content-Length`.
HTTP_PRECONDITION_ FAILED	PLS_INTEGER	412	The precondition given in one or more of the request-header fields evaluated to false when it was tested on the server.
HTTP_REQUEST_ENTITY_ TOO_LARGE CONSTANT	PLS_INTEGER	413	The server is refusing to process a request because the request entity is larger than the server is willing or able to process.
HTTP_REQUEST_URI_TOO_ LARGE	PLS_INTEGER	414	The server is refusing to service the request because the Request-URI is longer than the server is willing to interpret.
HTTP_UNSUPPORTED_ MEDIA_TYPE	PLS_INTEGER	415	The server is refusing to service the request because the entity of the request is in a format not supported by the requested resource for the requested method.
HTTP_REQ_RANGE_NOT_ SATISFIABLE	PLS_INTEGER	416	A server returns a response with this status code if a request included a Range request-header field, and none of the range-specifier values in this field overlap the current extent of the selected resource, and the request did not include an If-Range request-header field.
HTTP_EXPECTATION_ FAILED	PLS_INTEGER	417	The expectation given in an Expect request-header field could not be met by this server, or, if the server is a proxy, the server has unambiguous evidence that the request could not be met by the next-hop server.

Table 252–3 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Constants - HTTP 1.1 Status Codes

Name	Type	Value	Description
HTTP_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	PLS_INTEGER	501	The server does not support the functionality required to fulfill the request.
HTTP_BAD_GATEWAY	PLS_INTEGER	502	The server, while acting as a gateway or proxy, received an invalid response from the upstream server it accessed in attempting to fulfill the request
HTTP_SERVICE_ UNAVAILABLE	PLS_INTEGER	503	The server is currently unable to handle the request due to a temporary overloading or maintenance of the server.
HTTP_GATEWAY_TIME_OUT	PLS_INTEGER	504	The server, while acting as a gateway or proxy, did not receive a timely response from the upstream server specified by the URI (for example, HTTP, FTP, LDAP) or some other auxiliary server (for example, DNS) it needed to access in attempting to complete the request.
HTTP_VERSION_NOT_ SUPPORTED	PLS_INTEGER	505	The server does not support, or refuses to support, the HTTP protocol version that was used in the request message.

Datatypes

REQ Type

Use this PL/SQL record type to represent an HTTP request.

Syntax

```
TYPE req IS RECORD (
   url           VARCHAR2(32767),
   method        VARCHAR2(64),
   http_version  VARCHAR2(64));
```

Parameters

Table 252–4 REQ Type Parameters

Parameter	Description
`url`	The URL of the HTTP request. It is set after the request is created by `BEGIN_REQUEST`.
`method`	The method to be performed on the resource identified by the URL. It is set after the request is created by `BEGIN_REQUEST`.
`http_version`	The HTTP protocol version used to send the request. It is set after the request is created by `BEGIN_REQUEST`.

Usage Notes

The information returned in `REQ` from the interface `begin_request` is for read-only. Changing the field values in the record has no effect on the request.

There are other fields in `REQ` record type whose names begin with the prefix `private_`. The fields are private and are intended for use by implementation of the `UTL_HTTP` package. You should not modify the fields.

REQUEST_CONTEXT_KEY Type

This type is used to represent the key to a request context. A request context is a context that holds a private wallet and cookie table to make a HTTP request. This private wallet and cookie table, unlike the session-wide ones maintained in the package, will not be shared with other HTTP requests within the database session.

Syntax

```
SUBTYPE request_context_key IS PLS_INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

To provide enhanced security, `UTL_HTTP` allows PL/SQL programs to create request contexts. A request context is a private context that holds a wallet and a cookie table that will not be shared with other programs in the same database session when

making HTTP requests and receiving HTTP responses. PL/SQL programs should use request contexts when they need to use wallets or cookies that contain sensitive information such as authentication credentials.

RESP Type

This PL/SQL record type is used to represent an HTTP response.

Syntax

```
TYPE resp IS RECORD (
   status_code    PLS_INTEGER,
   reason_phrase  VARCHAR2(256),
   http_version   VARCHAR2(64));
```

Parameters

Table 252–5 RESP Type Parameters

Parameter	Description
status_code	The status code returned by the Web server. It is a 3-digit integer that indicates the results of the HTTP request as handled by the Web server. It is set after the response is processed by GET_RESPONSE.
reason_phrase	The short textual message returned by the Web server that describe the status code. It gives a brief description of the results of the HTTP request as handled by the Web server. It is set after the response is processed by GET_RESPONSE.
http_version	The HTTP protocol version used in the HTTP response. It is set after the response is processed by GET_RESPONSE.

Usage Notes

The information returned in RESP from the interface GET_RESPONSE is read-only. There are other fields in the RESP record type whose names begin with the prefix private_. The fields are private and are intended for use by implementation of the UTL_HTTP package. You should not modify the fields.

COOKIE and COOKIE_TABLE Types

The COOKIE type is the PL/SQL record type that represents an HTTP cookie. The COOKIE_TABLE type is a PL/SQL index-by-table type that represents a collection of HTTP cookies.

Syntax

```
TYPE cookie IS RECORD (
   name  VARCHAR2(256),
   value  VARCHAR2(1024),
   domain  VARCHAR2(256),
   expire  TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   path  VARCHAR2(1024),
   secure  BOOLEAN,
   version  PLS_INTEGER,
   comment  VARCHAR2(1024));

TYPE cookie_table IS TABLE OF cookie INDEX BY binary_integer;
```

Fields of COOKIE Record Type

Table 252–6 shows the fields for the COOKIE and COOKIE_TABLE record types.

Table 252–6 Fields of COOKIE and COOKIE_TABLE Type

Field	Description
name	The name of the HTTP cookie
value	The value of the cookie
domain	The domain for which the cookie is valid
expire	The time by which the cookie will expire
path	The subset of URLs to which the cookie applies
secure	Should the cookie be returned to the Web server using secured means only.
version	The version of the HTTP cookie specification the cookie conforms. This field is NULL for Netscape cookies.
comment	The comment that describes the intended use of the cookie. This field is NULL for Netscape cookies.

Usage Notes

PL/SQL programs do not usually examine or change the cookie information stored in the UTL_HTTP package. The cookies are maintained by the package transparently. They are maintained inside the UTL_HTTP package, and they last for the duration of the database session only. PL/SQL applications that require cookies to be maintained beyond the lifetime of a database session can read the cookies using GET_COOKIES, store them persistently in a database table, and re-store the cookies back in the package using ADD_COOKIES in the next database session. All the fields in the cookie record, except for the comment field, must be stored. Do not alter the cookie information, which can result in an application error in the Web server or compromise the security of the PL/SQL and the Web server applications. See "Retrieving and Restoring Cookies" on page 252-21.

CONNECTION Type

Use the PL/SQL record type to represent the remote hosts and TCP/IP ports of a network connection that is kept persistent after an HTTP request is completed, according to the HTTP 1.1 protocol specification. The persistent network connection may be reused by a subsequent HTTP request to the same host and port. The subsequent HTTP request may be completed faster because the network connection latency is avoided. connection_table is a PL/SQL table of connection.

For a direct HTTP persistent connection to a Web server, the host and port fields contain the host name and TCP/IP port number of the Web server. The proxy_host and proxy_port fields are not set. For an HTTP persistent connection that was previously used to connect to a Web server using a proxy, the proxy_host and proxy_port fields contain the host name and TCP/IP port number of the proxy server. The host and port fields are not set, which indicates that the persistent connection, while connected to a proxy server, is not bound to any particular target Web server. An HTTP persistent connection to a proxy server can be used to access any target Web server that is using a proxy.

The SSL field indicates if Secured Socket Layer (SSL) is being used in an HTTP persistent connection. An HTTPS request is an HTTP request made over SSL. For an HTTPS (SSL) persistent connection connected using a proxy, the host and port fields contain the host name and TCP/IP port number of the target HTTPS Web server and

the fields will always be set. An HTTPS persistent connection to an HTTPS Web server using a proxy server can only be reused to make another request to the same target Web server.

Syntax

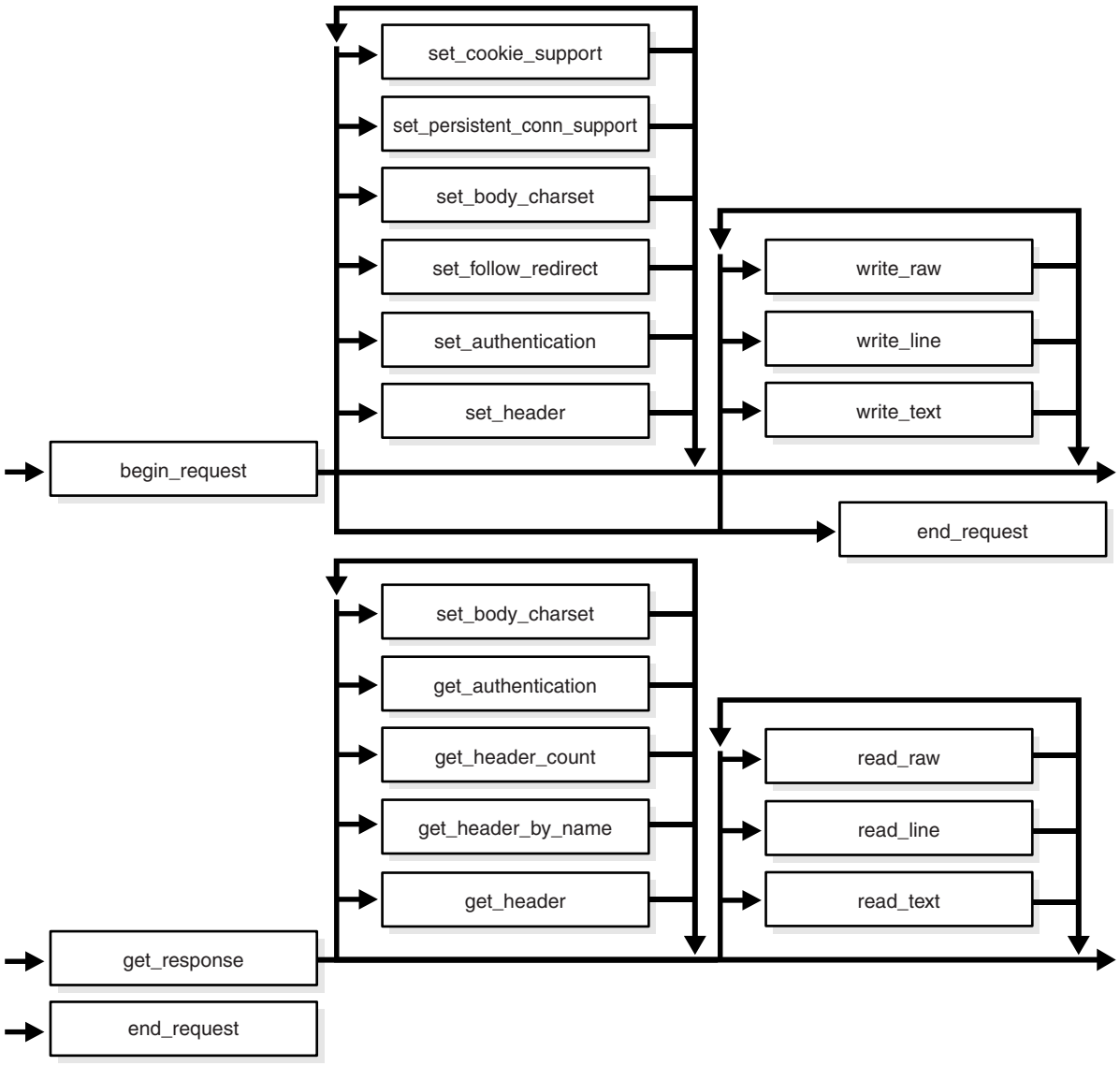
```
TYPE connection IS RECORD (
   host  VARCHAR2(256),
   port  PLS_INTEGER,
   proxy_host  VARCHAR2(256),
   proxy_port  PLS_INTEGER,
   ssl  BOOLEAN);

TYPE connection_table IS TABLE OF connection INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Operational Notes

Operational Flow

The `UTL_HTTP` package provides access to the HTTP protocol. The interfaces must be called in the order shown in Figure 252–1, or an exception will be raised.

Figure 252–1 Flow of the Core UTL_HTTP Package



The following can be called at any time:

- Non-protocol interfaces that manipulate cookies
  - `GET_COOKIE_COUNT`
  - `GET_COOKIES`
  - `ADD_COOKIES`
  - `CLEAR_COOKIES`
- Persistent connections
  - `GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_COUNT`
  - `GET_PERSISTENT_CONNS`
  - `CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN`
  - `CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS`

- Interfaces that manipulate attributes and configurations of the UTL_HTTP package in the current session
  - SET_PROXY
  - GET_PROXY
  - SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT
  - GET_COOKIE_SUPPORT
  - SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT
  - GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT
  - SET_BODY_CHARSET
  - GET_BODY_CHARSET
  - SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT
  - GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT
  - SET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT
  - GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT
  - SET_WALLET
  - SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT
  - GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT
- Interfaces that retrieve the last detailed exception code and message UTL_HTTP package in the current session
  - GET_DETAILED_SQLCODE
  - GET_DETAILED_SQLERRM

NOTE: Some of the request and response interfaces bear the same name as the interface that manipulates the attributes and configurations of the package in the current session. They are overloaded versions of the interface that manipulate a request or a response.

Simple HTTP Fetches

REQUEST and REQUEST_PIECES take a string uniform resource locator (URL), contact that site, and return the data (typically HTML) obtained from that site.

You should not expect REQUEST or REQUEST_PIECES to succeed in contacting a URL unless you can contact that URL by using a browser on the same machine (and with the same privileges, environment variables, and so on.)

If REQUEST or REQUEST_PIECES fails (for example, if it raises an exception, or if it returns an HTML-formatted error message, but you believe that the URL argument is correct), then try contacting that same URL with a browser to verify network availability from your machine. You may have a proxy server set in your browser that needs to be set with each REQUEST or REQUEST_PIECES call using the optional proxy parameter.

Note: UTL_HTTP can also use environment variables to specify its proxy behavior. For example, on UNIX, setting the environment variable http_proxy to a URL uses that service as the proxy server for HTTP requests. Setting the environment variable no_proxy to a domain name does not use the HTTP proxy server for URLs in that domain. When the UTL_HTTP package is executed in the Oracle database server, the environment variables are the ones that are set when the database instance is started.

See Also: Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms on page 252-25

HTTP Requests

The HTTP Requests group of subprograms begin an HTTP request, manipulate attributes, and send the request information to the Web server. When a request is created, it inherits the default settings of the HTTP cookie support, follow-redirect, body character set, persistent-connection support, and transfer timeout of the current session. The settings can be changed by calling the request interface.

See Also: HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

HTTP Responses

The HTTP Responses group of subprograms manipulate an HTTP response obtained from GET_RESPONSE and receive response information from the Web server. When a response is created for a request, it inherits settings of the HTTP cookie support, follow-redirect, body character set, persistent-connection support, and transfer timeout from the request. Only the body character set can be changed by calling the response interface.

See Also: HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

HTTP Cookies

The UTL_HTTP package provides subprograms to manipulate HTTP cookies.

See Also: HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30

HTTP Persistent Connections

The UTL_HTTP package provides subprograms to manipulate persistent connections.

See Also: HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31

Error Conditions

The UTL_HTTP package provides subprograms to retrieve error information.

See Also: Error Conditions Subprograms on page 252-32

Session Settings

Session settings manipulate the configuration and default behavior of UTL_HTTP when HTTP requests are executed within a database user session. When a request is created, it inherits the default settings of the HTTP cookie support, follow-redirect, body

character set, persistent-connection support, and transfer timeout of the current session. Those settings can be changed later by calling the request interface. When a response is created for a request, it inherits those settings from the request. Only the body character set can be changed later by calling the response interface.

See Also: Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Request Context

The `UTL_HTTP` package maintains a common wallet and cookie table within the database session that all HTTP requests and responses share. This makes it easy for users to share the wallet or to maintain application state in the cookies within the session. However, if an application stores private information in the wallet or in the cookies that it does not want to share with other applications in the same database session, it may define a request context to hold its own wallet and cookie table and use this request context to make HTTP requests.

See Also: HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

External Password Store

The `UTL_HTTP` package allows HTTP password credentials to be stored in an Oracle wallet's external password store. The external password store provides an easy but secure storage for passwords and frees the application developers from the need to maintain their own storage.

See Also: SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET Procedure on page 252-79

Exceptions

Table 252–7 lists the exceptions that the UTL_HTTP package interface can raise. By default, UTL_HTTP raises the exception request_failed when a request fails to execute. If the package is set to raise a detailed exception by set_detailed_excp_support, the rest of the exceptions will be raised directly (except for the exception end_of_body, which will be raised by READ_TEXT, READ_LINE, and READ_RAW regardless of the setting).

Table 252–7 UTL_HTTP Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Reason	Where Raised
BAD_ARGUMENT	29261	The argument passed to the interface is bad	Any HTTP request or response interface when detailed_exception is enabled
BAD_URL	29262	The requested URL is badly formed	BEGIN_REQUEST, when detailed_exception is enabled
END_OF_BODY	29266	The end of HTTP response body is reached	READ_RAW, READ_TEXT, and READ_LINE, when detailed_exception is enabled
HEADER_NOT_FOUND	29265	The header is not found	GET_HEADER, GET_HEADER_BY_NAME, when detailed_exception is enabled
HTTP_CLIENT_ERROR	29268	From GET_RESPONSE, the response status code indicates that a client error has occurred (status code in 4xx range). Or from begin_request, the HTTP proxy returns a status code in the 4xx range when making an HTTPS request through the proxy.	GET_RESPONSE, BEGIN_REQUEST when detailed_exception is enabled
HTTP_SERVER_ERROR	29269	From GET_RESPONSE, the response status code indicates that a client error has occurred (status code in 5xx range). Or from begin_request, the HTTP proxy returns a status code in the 5xx range when making an HTTPS request through the proxy.	GET_RESPONSE, BEGIN_REQUEST when detailed_exception is enabled
NETWORK_ACCESS_DENIED	24247	Access to the remote network host or credentials in an Oracle wallet is denied	BEGIN_REQUEST and SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET when detailed_exception is enabled
ILLEGAL_CALL	29267	The call to UTL_HTTP is illegal at the current state of the HTTP request	SET_HEADER, SET_AUTHENTICATION, and SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT, when detailed_exception is enabled
PARTIAL_MULTIBYTE_EXCEPTION	29275	No complete character is read and a partial multibyte character is found at the end of the response body	READ_TEXT and READ_LINE, when detailed_exception is enabled
PROTOCOL_ERROR	29263	An HTTP protocol error occurs when communicating with the Web server	SET_HEADER, GET_RESPONSE, READ_RAW, READ_TEXT, and READ_LINE, when detailed_exception is enabled

Table 252–7 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Reason	Where Raised
REQUEST_FAILED	29273	The request fails to executes	Any HTTP request or response interface when detailed_exception is disabled
TOO_MANY_REQUESTS	29270	Too many requests or responses are open	BEGIN_REQUEST, when detailed_exception is enabled
TRANSFER_TIMEOUT	29276	No data is read and a read timeout occurred	READ_TEXT and READ_LINE, when detailed_exception is enabled
UNKNOWN_SCHEME	29264	The scheme of the requested URL is unknown	BEGIN_REQUEST and GET_RESPONSE, when detailed_exception is enabled

NOTE: The partial_multibyte_char and transfer_timeout exceptions are duplicates of the same exceptions defined in UTL_TCP. They are defined in this package so that the use of this package does not require the knowledge of the UTL_TCP. As those exceptions are duplicates, an exception handle that catches the partial_multibyte_char and transfer_timeout exceptions in this package also catch the exceptions in the UTL_TCP.

For REQUEST and REQUEST_PIECES, the request_failed exception is raised when any exception occurs and detailed_exception is disabled.

Examples

The following examples demonstrate how to use UTL_HTTP.

- General Usage
- Retrieving HTTP Response Headers
- Handling HTTP Authentication
- Retrieving and Restoring Cookies
- Making HTTP Request with Private Wallet and Cookie Table

General Usage

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON SIZE 40000

DECLARE
  req   UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  resp  UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  value VARCHAR2(1024);
BEGIN
  UTL_HTTP.SET_PROXY('proxy.my-company.com', 'corp.my-company.com');
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www-hr.corp.my-company.com');
  UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER(req, 'User-Agent', 'Mozilla/4.0');
  resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(req);
  LOOP
    UTL_HTTP.READ_LINE(resp, value, TRUE);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(value);
  END LOOP;
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN UTL_HTTP.END_OF_BODY THEN
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
END;
```

Retrieving HTTP Response Headers

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON SIZE 40000

DECLARE
  req   UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  resp  UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  name  VARCHAR2(256);
  value VARCHAR2(1024);
BEGIN
  UTL_HTTP.SET_PROXY('proxy.my-company.com', 'corp.my-company.com');
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST('http://www-hr.corp.my-company.com');
  UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER(req, 'User-Agent', 'Mozilla/4.0');
  resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(req);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HTTP response status code: ' || resp.status_code);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HTTP response reason phrase: ' || resp.reason_phrase);
  FOR i IN 1..UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER_COUNT(resp) LOOP
    UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER(resp, i, name, value);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(name || ': ' || value);
  END LOOP;
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
END;
```

Handling HTTP Authentication

```
SET serveroutput ON SIZE 40000

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE get_page (url      IN VARCHAR2,
                                      username IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
                                      password IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
                                      realm    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL) AS
  req       UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  resp      UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  my_scheme VARCHAR2(256);
  my_realm  VARCHAR2(256);
  name      VARCHAR2(256);
  value     VARCHAR2(256);
BEGIN
  -- Turn off checking of status code. We will check it by ourselves.
  UTL_HTTP.SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK(FALSE);
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST(url);
  IF (username IS NOT NULL) THEN
    UTL_HTTP.SET_AUTHENTICATION(req, username, password); -- Use HTTP Basic
Authen. Scheme
  END IF;
  resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(req);
  IF (resp.status_code = UTL_HTTP.HTTP_UNAUTHORIZED) THEN
    UTL_HTTP.GET_AUTHENTICATION(resp, my_scheme, my_realm, FALSE);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Web proxy server is protected.');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('Please supplied the required ' || my_scheme || '
authentication username/password for realm ' || my_realm || ' for the proxy
server.');
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
    RETURN;
  ELSIF (resp.status_code = UTL_HTTP.HTTP_PROXY_AUTH_REQUIRED) THEN
    UTL_HTTP.GET_AUTHENTICATION(resp, my_scheme, my_realm, TRUE);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Web page ' || url || ' is protected.');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('Please supplied the required ' || my_scheme || '
authentication username/password for realm ' || my_realm || ' for the Web page.');
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
    RETURN;
  END IF;
  FOR i IN 1..UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER_COUNT(resp) LOOP
    UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER(resp, i, name, value);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(name || ': ' || value);
  END LOOP;
  UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
END;
```

Retrieving and Restoring Cookies

```
CREATE TABLE my_cookies (
    session_id  INTEGER,
    name        VARCHAR2(256),
    value       VARCHAR2(1024),
    domain      VARCHAR2(256),
    expire      DATE,
    path        VARCHAR2(1024),
    secure      VARCHAR2(1),
    version     INTEGER);

CREATE SEQUENCE session_id;
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON SIZE 40000
```

```
REM Retrieve cookies from UTL_HTTP
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION save_cookies RETURN PLS_INTEGER AS
  cookies        UTL_HTTP.COOKIE_TABLE;
  my_session_id  PLS_INTEGER;
  secure         VARCHAR2(1);
BEGIN
  /* assume that some cookies have been set in previous HTTP requests. */
  UTL_HTTP.GET_COOKIES(cookies);
  SELECT session_id.nextval INTO my_session_id FROM DUAL;
  FOR i in 1..cookies.count LOOP
    IF (cookies(i).secure) THEN
      secure := 'Y';
    ELSE
      secure := 'N';
    END IF;
    INSERT INTO my_cookies
    VALUES (my_session_id, cookies(i).name, cookies(i).value,
            cookies(i).domain,
            cookies(i).expire, cookies(i).path, secure, cookies(i).version);
  END LOOP;
  RETURN my_session_id;
END;
/

REM Retrieve cookies from UTL_HTTP
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE restore_cookies (this_session_id IN PLS_INTEGER)
AS
  cookies        UTL_HTTP.COOKIE_TABLE;
  cookie         UTL_HTTP.COOKIE;
  i              PLS_INTEGER := 0;
  CURSOR c (c_session_id PLS_INTEGER) IS
    SELECT * FROM my_cookies WHERE session_id = c_session_id;
BEGIN
  FOR r IN c(this_session_id) LOOP
    i := i + 1;
    cookie.name     := r.name;
    cookie.value    := r.value;
    cookie.domain   := r.domain;
    cookie.expire   := r.expire;
    cookie.path     := r.path;
    IF (r.secure = 'Y') THEN
      cookie.secure := TRUE;
    ELSE
      cookie.secure := FALSE;
    END IF;
    cookie.version := r.version;
    cookies(i) := cookie;
  END LOOP;
  UTL_HTTP.CLEAR_COOKIES;
  UTL_HTTP.ADD_COOKIES(cookies);
END;
/
```

Making HTTP Request with Private Wallet and Cookie Table

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON SIZE 40000

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE DISPLAY_PAGE(url IN VARCHAR2) AS
  request_context UTL_HTTP.REQUEST_CONTEXT_KEY;
  req             UTL_HTTP.REQ;
```

```
  resp            UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  data            VARCHAR2(1024);

BEGIN

  -- Create a request context with its wallet and cookie table
  request_context := UTL_HTTP.CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT(
                       wallet_path          => 'file:/oracle/wallets/test/wallet',
                       wallet_password      => '******',
                       enable_cookies       => TRUE,
                       max_cookies          => 300,
                       max_cookies_per_site => 20);

  -- Make a HTTP request using the private wallet and cookie
  -- table in the request context
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST(
           url             => url,
           request_context => request_context);
  resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(req);

  BEGIN
    LOOP
       UTL_HTTP.READ_TEXT(resp, data);
       DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(data);
    END LOOP;
  EXCEPTION
      WHEN UTL_HTTP.END_OF_BODY THEN
         UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
  END;

  -- Destroy the request context
  UTL_HTTP.DESTROY_REQUEST_CONTEXT(request_context);

END;

BEGIN
  DISPLAY_PAGE('https://www.example.com/');
END;
/
```

Subprogram Groups

`UTL_HTTP` subprograms are grouped by function:

- Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms
- Session Settings Subprograms
- HTTP Requests Subprograms
- HTTP Request Contexts Subprograms
- HTTP Responses Subprograms
- HTTP Cookies Subprograms
- HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms
- Error Conditions Subprograms

Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms

`REQUEST` and `REQUEST_PIECES` take a string uniform resource locator (URL), contact that site, and return the data (typically HTML) obtained from that site.

Table 252–8 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call

Subprogram	Description
REQUEST Function on page 252-73	Returns up to the first 2000 bytes of the data retrieved from the given URL. This function can be used directly in SQL queries.
REQUEST_PIECES Function on page 252-75	Returns a PL/SQL table of 2000-byte pieces of the data retrieved from the given URL

Session Settings Subprograms

Table 252–9 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—Session Settings

Subprogram	Description
GET_BODY_CHARSET Procedure on page 252-50	Retrieves the default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests
GET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-52	Retrieves the current cookie support settings
GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-54	Checks if the `UTL_HTTP` package will raise a detailed exception or not
GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedure on page 252-57	Retrieves the follow-redirect setting in the current session
GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-62	Checks if the persistent connection support is enabled and gets the maximum number of persistent connections in the current session
GET_PROXY Procedure on page 252-64	Retrieves the current proxy settings
GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure on page 252-67	Checks if the response error check is set or not
GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 252-68	Retrieves the current network transfer timeout value
SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 252-94	Sets the default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests when the media type is `text` and the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header
SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedures on page 252-83	Sets whether or not future HTTP requests will support HTTP cookies; sets the maximum number of cookies maintained in the current database user session
SET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-85	Sets the `UTL_HTTP` package to raise a detailed exception
SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedures on page 252-86	Sets the maximum number of times `UTL_HTTP` follows the HTTP redirect instruction in the HTTP responses to future requests in the `GET_RESPONSE` function
SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-88	Sets whether or not future HTTP requests will support the HTTP 1.1 persistent connection; sets the maximum number of persistent connections maintained in the current database user session
SET_PROXY Procedure on page 252-92	Sets the proxy to be used for requests of HTTP or other protocols
SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure on page 252-93	Sets whether or not `GET_RESPONSE` raises an exception when the Web server returns a status code that indicates an error—a status code in the 4xx or 5xx ranges
SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 252-94	Sets the timeout value for `UTL_HTTP` to read the HTTP response from the Web server or proxy server
SET_WALLET Procedure on page 252-95	Sets the Oracle Wallet used for all HTTP requests over Secured Socket Layer (SSL), that is, HTTPS

HTTP Requests Subprograms

Table 252–10 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—HTTP Requests

Subprogram	Description
BEGIN_REQUEST Function on page 252-38	Begins a new HTTP request.`UTL_HTTP` establishes the network connection to the target Web server or the proxy server and sends the HTTP request line.
SET_HEADER Procedure on page 252-87	Sets an HTTP request header. The request header is sent to the Web server as soon as it is set.
SET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 252-78	Sets HTTP authentication information in the HTTP request header. The Web server needs this information to authorize the request.
SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET Procedure on page 252-79	Sets the HTTP authentication information in the HTTP request header needed for the request to be authorized by the Web server using the username and password credential stored in the Oracle wallet.
SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedures on page 252-81	Sets the character set of the request body when the media type is `text` but the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header
SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedures on page 252-83	Enables or disables support for the HTTP cookies in the request
SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedures on page 252-86	Sets the maximum number of times `UTL_HTTP` follows the HTTP redirect instruction in the HTTP response to this request in the GET_RESPONSE Function on page 252-65
SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-88	Enables or disables support for the HTTP 1.1 persistent-connection in the request
SET_PROXY Procedure on page 252-92	Writes a text line in the HTTP request body and ends the line with new-line characters (CRLF as defined in `UTL_TCP`)
WRITE_RAW Procedure on page 252-97	Writes some binary data in the HTTP request body
WRITE_TEXT Procedure on page 252-98	Writes some text data in the HTTP request body

HTTP Request Contexts Subprograms

Table 252–11 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—HTTP Request Contexts

Subprogram	Description
CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT Function on page 252-44	Creates a request context in `UTL_HTTP` for a wallet and a cookie table
DESTROY_REQUEST_CONTEXT Procedure on page 252-46	Destroys a request context in `UTL_HTTP`

HTTP Responses Subprograms

Table 252–12 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—HTTP Responses

Subprogram	Description
END_RESPONSE Procedure on page 252-48	Ends the HTTP response. It completes the HTTP request and response.
GET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 252-49	Retrieves the HTTP authentication information needed for the request to be accepted by the Web server as indicated in the HTTP response header
GET_HEADER Procedure on page 252-58	Returns the n^{th} HTTP response header name and value returned in the response
GET_HEADER_BY_NAME Procedure on page 252-59	Returns the HTTP response header value returned in the response given the name of the header
GET_HEADER_COUNT Function on page 252-60	Returns the number of HTTP response headers returned in the response
GET_RESPONSE Function on page 252-65	Reads the HTTP response. When the function returns, the status line and the HTTP response headers have been read and processed.
READ_LINE Procedure on page 252-69	Reads the HTTP response body in text form until the end of line is reached and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer
READ_RAW Procedure on page 252-70	Reads the HTTP response body in binary form and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer
READ_TEXT Procedure on page 252-71	Reads the HTTP response body in text form and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer
SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedures on page 252-81	Sets the character set of the response body when the media type is "text" but the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header

HTTP Cookies Subprograms

Table 252–13 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—HTTP Cookies

Subprogram	Description
ADD_COOKIES Procedure on page 252-37	Add the cookies either to a request context or to the `UTL_HTTP` package's session state
CLEAR_COOKIES Procedure on page 252-40	Clears all the cookies maintained either in a request context or in the `UTL_HTTP` package's session state
GET_COOKIE_COUNT Function on page 252-51	Returns the number of cookies maintained either in a request context or in the `UTL_HTTP` package's session states
GET_COOKIES Function on page 252-53	Returns all the cookies maintained either in a request context or in the `UTL_HTTP` package's session state.

HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms

Table 252–14 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—HTTP Persistent Connections

Subprogram	Description
CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN Procedure on page 252-41	Closes an HTTP persistent connection maintained by the UTL_HTTP package in the current database session
CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure on page 252-42	Closes a group of HTTP persistent connections maintained by the UTL_HTTP package in the current database session
GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_COUNT Function on page 252-61	Returns the number of network connections currently kept persistent by the UTL_HTTP package to the Web servers
GET_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure on page 252-63	Returns all the network connections currently kept persistent by the UTL_HTTP package to the Web servers

Error Conditions Subprograms

Table 252–15 UTL_HTTP Subprograms—Error Conditions

Subprogram	Description
GET_DETAILED_SQLCODE Function on page 252-55	Retrieves the detailed SQLCODE of the last exception raised
GET_DETAILED_SQLERRM Function on page 252-56	Retrieves the detailed SQLERRM of the last exception raised

Summary of UTL_HTTP Subprograms

Table 252–16 UTL_HTTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
ADD_COOKIES Procedure on page 252-37	Add the cookies either to a request context or to the UTL_HTTP package's session state	HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30
BEGIN_REQUEST Function on page 252-38	Begins a new HTTP request. UTL_HTTP establishes the network connection to the target Web server or the proxy server and sends the HTTP request line	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
CLEAR_COOKIES Procedure on page 252-40	Clears all the cookies maintained either in a request context or in the UTL_HTTP package's session state	HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30
CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN Procedure on page 252-41	Closes an HTTP persistent connection maintained by the UTL_HTTP package in the current database session	HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31
CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure on page 252-42	Closes a group of HTTP persistent connections maintained by the UTL_HTTP package in the current database session	HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31
CREATE_REQUEST_ CONTEXT Function on page 252-44	Creates a request context in UTL_HTTP for a wallet and a cookie table	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
DESTROY_REQUEST_ CONTEXT Procedure on page 252-46	Destroys a request context in UTL_HTTP for a wallet and a cookie table	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
END_REQUEST Procedure on page 252-47	Ends the HTTP request	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
END_RESPONSE Procedure on page 252-48	Ends the HTTP response. It completes the HTTP request and response	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
GET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 252-49	Retrieves the HTTP authentication information needed for the request to be accepted by the Web server as indicated in the HTTP response header	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
GET_BODY_CHARSET Procedure on page 252-50	Retrieves the default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
GET_COOKIE_COUNT Function on page 252-51	Returns the number of cookies currently maintained by the UTL_HTTP package set by all Web servers	HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30
GET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-52	Retrieves the current cookie support settings	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
GET_COOKIES Function on page 252-53	Returns all the cookies currently maintained by the UTL_HTTP package set by all Web servers	HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30

Table 252–16 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-54	Checks if the UTL_HTTP package will raise a detailed exception or not	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
GET_DETAILED_SQLCODE Function on page 252-55	Retrieves the detailed SQLCODE of the last exception raised	Error Conditions Subprograms on page 252-32
GET_DETAILED_SQLERRM Function on page 252-56	Retrieves the detailed SQLERRM of the last exception raised	Error Conditions Subprograms on page 252-32
GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedure on page 252-57	Retrieves the follow-redirect setting in the current session	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
GET_HEADER Procedure on page 252-58	Returns the n^{th} HTTP response header name and value returned in the response	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
GET_HEADER_BY_NAME Procedure on page 252-59	Returns the HTTP response header value returned in the response given the name of the header	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
GET_HEADER_COUNT Function on page 252-60	Returns the number of HTTP response headers returned in the response	HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_COUNT Function on page 252-61	Returns the number of network connections currently kept persistent by the UTL_HTTP package to the Web servers	HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31
GET_HEADER_COUNT Function on page 252-60	Sees whether or not future HTTP requests will support the HTTP 1.1 persistent connection; sets the maximum number of persistent connections maintained in the current database user session	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-62	Checks if the persistent connection support is enabled and gets the maximum number of persistent connections in the current session (see Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26)	HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31
GET_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure on page 252-63	Returns all the network connections currently kept persistent by the UTL_HTTP package to the Web servers	HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31
GET_PROXY Procedure on page 252-64	Retrieves the current proxy settings	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
GET_RESPONSE Function on page 252-65	Reads the HTTP response. When the function returns, the status line and the HTTP response headers have been read and processed	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure on page 252-67	Checks if the response error check is set or no	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Table 252–16 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 252-68	Retrieves the current network transfer timeout value	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
READ_LINE Procedure on page 252-69	Reads the HTTP response body in text form until the end of line is reached and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
READ_RAW Procedure on page 252-70	Reads the HTTP response body in binary form and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
READ_TEXT Procedure on page 252-71	Reads the HTTP response body in text form and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer	HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
REQUEST Function on page 252-73	Returns up to the first 2000 bytes of the data retrieved from the given URL. This function can be used directly in SQL queries.	Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms on page 252-25
REQUEST_PIECES Function on page 252-75	Returns a PL/SQL table of 2000-byte pieces of the data retrieved from the given URL	Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms on page 252-25
SET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure on page 252-78	Sets HTTP authentication information in the HTTP request header. The Web server needs this information to authorize the request.	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_AUTHENTICATION_ FROM_WALLET Procedure on page 252-79	Sets the HTTP authentication information in the HTTP request header needed for the request to be authorized by the Web server using the username and password credential stored in the Oracle wallet.	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedures on page 252-81	Sets the default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests when the media type is `text` and the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedures on page 252-81	Sets the character set of the request body when the media type is `text` but the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedures on page 252-81	Sets the character set of the response body when the media type is "text" but the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header	HTTP Responses Subprograms and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedures on page 252-83	Enables or disables support for the HTTP cookies in the request	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_DETAILED_EXCP_ SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-85	Sets whether or not future HTTP requests will support HTTP cookies; sets the maximum number of cookies maintained in the current database user session	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_DETAILED_EXCP_ SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-85	Sets the `UTL_HTTP` package to raise a detailed exception	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Table 252–16 (Cont.) UTL_HTTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedures on page 252-86	Sets the maximum number of times UTL_HTTP follows the HTTP redirect instruction in the HTTP response to this request in the GET_RESPONSE function	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_HEADER Procedure on page 252-87	Sets the maximum number of times UTL_HTTP follows the HTTP redirect instruction in the HTTP responses to future requests in the GET_RESPONSE function	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_HEADER Procedure on page 252-87	Sets an HTTP request header. The request header is sent to the Web server as soon as it is set.	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure on page 252-88	Enables or disables support for the HTTP 1.1 persistent-connection in the request	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
SET_PROXY Procedure on page 252-92	Sets the proxy to be used for requests of HTTP or other protocols	Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure on page 252-93	Sets whether or not GET_RESPONSE raises an exception when the Web server returns a status code that indicates an error—a status code in the 4xx or 5xx ranges	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure on page 252-94	Sets the timeout value for UTL_HTTP to read the HTTP response from the Web server or proxy server	Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
SET_WALLET Procedure on page 252-95	Sets the Oracle Wallet used for all HTTP requests over Secured Socket Layer (SSL), that is, HTTPS	Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
WRITE_LINE Procedure on page 252-96	Writes a text line in the HTTP request body and ends the line with new-line characters (CRLF as defined in UTL_TCP	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
WRITE_RAW Procedure on page 252-97	Writes some binary data in the HTTP request body	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
WRITE_TEXT Procedure on page 252-98	Writes some text data in the HTTP request body	HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

ADD_COOKIES Procedure

This procedure adds the cookies either to a request context or to the UTL_HTTP package's session state.

> **See Also:** HTTP Cookies on page 252-16 and HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.ADD_COOKIES (
   cookies          IN  cookie_table,
   request_context  IN  request_context_key DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–17 ADD_COOKIES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
cookies	The cookies to be added
request_context	Request context to add the cookies. If NULL, the cookies will be added to the UTL_HTTP package's session state instead.

Usage Notes

The cookies that the package currently maintains are not cleared before new cookies are added.

BEGIN_REQUEST Function

This functions begins a new HTTP request. UTL_HTTP establishes the network connection to the target Web server or the proxy server and sends the HTTP request line. The PL/SQL program continues the request by calling some other interface to complete the request. The URL may contain the username and password needed to authenticate the request to the server. The format is

```
scheme://[user[:password]@]host[:port]/[...]
```

See Also: HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST (
   url               IN  VARCHAR2,
   method            IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'GET',
   http_version      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   request_context   IN  request_context_key DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN req;
```

Parameters

Table 252–18 BEGIN_REQUEST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
url	The URL of the HTTP request
method	The method performed on the resource identified by the URL
http_version	The HTTP protocol version that sends the request. The format of the protocol version is HTTP/major-version.minor-version, where major-version and minor-version are positive numbers. If this parameter is set to NULL, UTL_HTTP uses the latest HTTP protocol version that it supports to send the request. The latest version that the package supports is 1.1 and it can be upgraded to a later version. The default is NULL.
request_context	Request context that holds the private wallet and the cookie table to use in this HTTP request. If this parameter is NULL, the wallet and cookie table shared in the current database session will be used instead.

Usage Notes

- The URL passed as an argument to this function is not examined for illegal characters, such as spaces, according to URL specification RFC 2396. You should escape those characters with the UTL_URL package to return illegal and reserved characters. URLs should consist of US-ASCII characters only. See Chapter 266, "UTL_URL" for a list of legal characters in URLs. Note that URLs should consist of US-ASCII characters only. The use of non-US-ASCII characters in a URL is generally unsafe.
- BEGIN_REQUEST can send a URL whose length is up to 32767 bytes. However, different Web servers impose different limits on the length of the URL they can accept. This limit is often about 4000 bytes. If this limit is exceeded, the outcome will depend on the Web server. For example, a Web server might simply drop the HTTP connection without returning a response of any kind. If this happens, a subsequent invocation of the GET_RESPONSE Function will raise the PROTOCOL_

ERROR exception.

A URL will be long when its QUERY_STRING (that is, the information that follows the question mark (?)) is long. In general, it is better to send this parameterization in the body of the request using the POST method.

```
req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST (url=>the_url, method=>'POST');
UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER (r      =>  req,
                     name   =>  'Content-Type',
                     value  =>  'application/x-www-form-urlencoded');
UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER (r      =>   req,
                     name   =>   'Content-Length',
                     value  =>'  <length of data posted in bytes>');
UTL_HTTP.WRITE_TEXT (r      =>   req,
                     data   =>   'p1 = value1&p2=value2...');
resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE
                     (r     =>   req);
...
```

The programmer must determine whether a particular Web server may, or may not, accept data provided in this way.

- An Oracle wallet must be set before accessing Web servers over HTTPS. See the SET_WALLET Procedure procedure on how to set up an Oracle wallet. To use SSL client authentication, the client certificate should be stored in the wallet and the caller must have the use-client-certificates privilege on the wallet. See "Managing Fine-grained Access to External Network Services" in the *Oracle Database Security Guide* to grant the privilege.
- To connect to the remote Web server directly, or indirectly through a HTTP proxy, the UTL_HTTP must have the connect ACL privilege to the remote Web server host or the proxy host respectively.

CLEAR_COOKIES Procedure

This procedure clears all the cookies maintained either in a request context or in the `UTL_HTTP` package's session state.

> **See Also:** HTTP Cookies on page 252-16 and HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.CLEAR_COOKIES (
   request_context  IN  request_context_key DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–19 CLEAR_COOKIES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`request_context`	Request context to clear the cookies. If `NULL`, the cookies maintained in the `UTL_HTTP` package's session state will be cleared instead.

CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN Procedure

This procedure closes an HTTP persistent connection maintained by the `UTL_HTTP` package in the current database session.

> **See Also:** HTTP Persistent Connections on page 252-16 and HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN (
   conn  IN connection);
```

Parameters

Table 252–20 CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
conn	The HTTP persistent connection to close

CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure

This procedure closes a group of HTTP persistent connections maintained by the UTL_HTTP package in the current database session. This procedure uses a pattern-match approach to decide which persistent connections to close.

To close a group of HTTP persistent connection that share a common property (for example, all connections to a particular host, or all SSL connections), set the particular parameters and leave the rest of the parameters NULL. If a particular parameter is set to NULL when this procedure is called, that parameter will not be used to decide which connections to close.

For example, the following call to the procedure closes all persistent connections to foobar:

```
UTL_HTTP.CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS(host => 'foobar');
```

And the following call to the procedure closes all persistent connections through the foobar at TCP/IP port 80:

```
UTL_HTTP.CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS(proxy_host => 'foobar',
                                proxy_port => 80);
```

And the following call to the procedure closes all persistent connections:

```
UTL_HTTP.CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS;
```

See Also: HTTP Persistent Connections on page 252-16 and HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS (
   host        IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   port        IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   proxy_host  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   proxy_port  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   ssl         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–21 CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	The host for which persistent connections are to be closed
port	The port number for which persistent connections are to be closed
proxy_host	The proxy host for which persistent connections are to be closed
proxy_port	The proxy port for which persistent connections are to be closed
ssl	Close persistent SSL connection

Usage Notes

Connections to the same Web server at different TCP/IP ports are counted individually. The host names of the Web servers are identified as specified in the URL

of the original HTTP requests. Therefore, fully qualified host names with domain names will be counted differently from the host names without domain names.

Note that the use of a NULL value in a parameter when this procedure is called means that the caller does not care about its value when the package decides which persistent connection to close. If you want a NULL value in a parameter to match only a NULL value of the parameter of a persistent connection (which is when you want to close a specific persistent connection), you should use the CLOSE_PERSISTENT_CONN procedure that closes a specific persistent connection.

CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT Function

This function creates a request context. A request context is a context that holds a wallet and a cookie for private use in making a HTTP request. This allows the HTTP request to use a wallet and a cookie table that will not be shared with other applications making HTTP requests in the same database session.

> **See Also:** Request Context on page 252-17 and HTTP Request Contexts Subprograms on page 252-28

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT (
 wallet_path          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
 wallet_password      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
 enable_cookies       IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT TRUE,
 max_cookies          IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 300,
 max_cookies_per_site IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 20)
RETURN request_context_key;
```

Parameters

Table 252–22 CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`wallet_path`	Directory path that contains the Oracle wallet. The format is `file:`*`directory-path`*
`wallet_password`	The password needed to open the wallet. If the wallet is auto-login enabled, the password may be omitted and should be set to `NULL`. See the *Oracle Database Enterprise User Security Administrator's Guide* for detailed information about wallets.
`enable_cookies`	Sets whether HTTP requests using this request context should support HTTP cookies or not: `TRUE` to enable the support, `FALSE` to disable it.
`max_cookies`	Sets the maximum total number of cookies that will be maintained in this request context
`max_cookies_per_site`	Sets the maximum number of cookies per each Web site that will be maintained in this request context

Return Values

The request context created.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  request_context  UTL_HTTP.REQUEST_CONTEXT_KEY;
  req              utl_http.req;
BEGIN
  request_context := UTL_HTTP.CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT(
       wallet_path          => 'file:/oracle/wallets/test_wallets',
       wallet_password      => NULL,
       enable_cookies       => TRUE,
       max_cookies          => 300,
       max_cookies_per_site => 20);
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST(
```

```
        url                  => 'http://www.example.com/',
        request_context      => request_context);
END;
```

DESTROY_REQUEST_CONTEXT Procedure

This procedure destroys a request context in UTL_HTTP. A request context cannot be destroyed when it is in use by a HTTP request or response.

See Also: Request Context on page 252-17 and HTTP Request Contexts Subprograms on page 252-28

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.DESTROY_REQUEST_CONTEXT (
   request_context    request_context_key);
```

Parameters

Table 252–23 DESTROY_REQUEST_CONTEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
request_context	Request context to destroy

Examples

```
DECLARE
  request_context  UTL_HTTP.REQUEST_CONTEXT_KEY;
BEGIN
  request_context := UTL_HTTP.CREATE_REQUEST_CONTEXT(…);
  …
  UTL_HTTP.DESTROY_REQUEST_CONTEXT(request_context);
END;
```

END_REQUEST Procedure

This procedure ends the HTTP request. To terminate the HTTP request without completing the request and waiting for the response, the program can call this procedure. Otherwise, the program should go through the normal sequence of beginning a request, getting the response, and closing the response. The network connection will always be closed and will not be reused.

> **See Also:** HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.END_REQUEST (
   r  IN OUT NOCOPY req);
```

Parameters

Table 252–24 END_REQUEST Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request

END_RESPONSE Procedure

This procedure ends the HTTP response. It completes the HTTP request and response. Unless HTTP 1.1 persistent connection is used in this request, the network connection is also closed.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE (
   r  IN OUT NOCOPY resp);
```

Parameters

Table 252–25 END_RESPONSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP response

GET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure

This procedure retrieves the HTTP authentication information needed for the request to be accepted by the Web server as indicated in the HTTP response header.

See Also: HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_AUTHENTICATION(
   r          IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   scheme     OUT VARCHAR2,
   realm      OUT VARCHAR2,
   for_proxy  IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–26 GET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP response
scheme	The scheme for the required HTTP authentication
realm	The realm for the required HTTP authentication
for_proxy	Returns the HTTP authentication information required for the access to the HTTP proxy server instead of the Web server? Default is FALSE

Usage Notes

When a Web client is unaware that a document is protected, at least two HTTP requests are required for the document to be retrieved. In the first HTTP request, the Web client makes the request without supplying required authentication information; so the request is denied. The Web client can determine the authentication information required for the request to be authorized by calling GET_AUTHENTICATION. The Web client makes the second request and supplies the required authentication information with SET_AUTHORIZATION. If the authentication information can be verified by the Web server, the request will succeed and the requested document is returned. Before making the request, if the Web client knows that authentication information is required, it can supply the required authentication information in the first request, thus saving an extra request.

GET_BODY_CHARSET Procedure

This procedure retrieves the default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests.

> **See Also:** Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_BODY_CHARSET (
   charset  OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 252–27 GET_BODY_CHARSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`charset`	The default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests

GET_COOKIE_COUNT Function

This function returns the number of cookies maintained either in a request context or in the UTL_HTTP package's session state.

> **See Also:** HTTP Cookies on page 252-16 and HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_COOKIE_COUNT (
   request_context  IN  request_context_key DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 252–28 GET_COOKIE_COUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
request_context	Request context to return the cookie count for. If NULL, the cookie count maintained in the UTL_HTTP package's session state will be returned instead.

GET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedure

This procedure retrieves the current cookie support settings.

> **See Also:** Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_COOKIE_SUPPORT (
   enable                OUT BOOLEAN,
   max_cookies           OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   max_cookies_per_site  OUT PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 252–29 GET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`enable`	Indicates whether future HTTP requests should support HTTP cookies (`TRUE`) or not (`FALSE`)
`max_cookies`	Indicates the maximum total number of cookies maintained in the current session
`max_cookies_per_site`	Indicates the maximum number of cookies maintained in the current session for each Web site

GET_COOKIES Function

This function returns all the cookies maintained either in a request context or in the UTL_HTTP package's session state.

> **See Also:** HTTP Cookies on page 252-16 and HTTP Cookies Subprograms on page 252-30

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_COOKIES (
   cookies          IN  OUT NOCOPY cookie_table,
   request_context  IN             request_context_key DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–30 GET_COOKIES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
cookies	The cookies returned
request_context	Request context to return the cookies for. If NULL, the cookies maintained in the UTL_HTTP package's session state will be returned instead.

GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure

This procedure checks if the UTL_HTTP package will raise a detailed exception or not.

See Also: Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT (
   enable  OUT BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 252–31 GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enable	TRUE if UTL_HTTP raises a detailed exception; otherwise FALSE

GET_DETAILED_SQLCODE Function

This function retrieves the detailed SQLCODE of the last exception raised.

> **See Also:** Error Conditions on page 252-16 and Error Conditions Subprograms on page 252-32

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_DETAILED_SQLCODE
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

GET_DETAILED_SQLERRM Function

This function retrieves the detailed `SQLERRM` of the last exception raised.

See Also: Error Conditions on page 252-16 and Error Conditions Subprograms on page 252-32

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_DETAILED_SQLERRM
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedure

This procedure retrieves the follow-redirect setting in the current session

See Also: Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT (
   max_redirects  OUT PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 252–32 GET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
max_redirects	The maximum number of redirections for all future HTTP requests

GET_HEADER Procedure

This procedure returns the n^{th} HTTP response header name and value returned in the response.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER (
   r      IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   n      IN PLS_INTEGER,
   name   OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2,
   value  OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 252–33 GET_HEADER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP response
n	The n^{th} header to return
name	The name of the HTTP response header
value	The value of the HTTP response header

Usage Notes

If the response body returned by the remote Web server is encoded in chunked transfer encoding format, the trailer headers that are returned at the end of the response body will be added to the response, and the response header count will be updated. You can retrieve the additional headers after the end of the response body is reached and before you end the response.

GET_HEADER_BY_NAME Procedure

This procedure returns the HTTP response header value returned in the response given the name of the header.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER_BY_NAME(
   r      IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2,
   n      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1);
```

Parameters

Table 252–34 GET_HEADER_BY_NAME Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP response
name	The name of the HTTP response header for which the value is to return
value	The value of the HTTP response header
n	The n^{th} occurrence of an HTTP response header by the specified name to return. The default is 1.

Usage Notes

If the response body returned by the remote Web server is encoded in chunked transfer encoding format, the trailer headers that are returned at the end of the response body will be added to the response, and the response header count will be updated. You can retrieve the additional headers after the end of the response body is reached and before you end the response.

GET_HEADER_COUNT Function

This function returns the number of HTTP response headers returned in the response.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_HEADER_COUNT (
   r  IN OUT NOCOPY resp)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 252–35 GET_HEADER_COUNT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP response

Usage Notes

If the response body returned by the remote Web server is encoded in chunked transfer encoding format, the trailer headers that are returned at the end of the response body will be added to the response, and the response header count will be updated. You can retrieve the additional headers after the end of the response body is reached and before you end the response.

GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_COUNT Function

This function returns the number of network connections currently kept persistent by the UTL_HTTP package to the Web servers.

> **See Also:** HTTP Persistent Connections on page 252-16 and HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_COUNT
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Usage Notes

Connections to the same Web server at different TCP/IP ports are counted individually. The host names of the Web servers are identified as specified in the URL of the original HTTP requests. Therefore, fully qualified host names with domain names will be counted differently from the host names without domain names.

GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure

This procedure checks:

- If the persistent connection support is enabled
- Gets the maximum number of persistent connections in the current session

See Also: Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT (
   enable     OUT BOOLEAN,
   max_conns  OUT PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 252–36 GET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`enable`	`TRUE` if persistent connection support is enabled; otherwise `FALSE`
`max_conns`	the maximum number of persistent connections maintained in the current session

GET_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure

This procedure returns all the network connections currently kept persistent by the UTL_HTTP package to the Web servers.

See Also: HTTP Persistent Connections on page 252-16 and HTTP Persistent Connections Subprograms on page 252-31

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.get_persistent_conns (
   connections  IN OUT NOCOPY connection_table);
```

Parameters

Table 252–37 GET_PERSISTENT_CONNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
connections	The network connections kept persistent

Usage Notes

Connections to the same Web server at different TCP/IP ports are counted individually. The host names of the Web servers are identified as specified in the URL of the original HTTP requests. Therefore, fully qualified host names with domain names will be counted differently from the host names without domain names.

GET_PROXY Procedure

This procedure retrieves the current proxy settings.

> **See Also:** Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_PROXY (
   proxy             OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2,
   no_proxy_domains  OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 252–38 GET_PROXY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`proxy`	The proxy (host and an optional port number) currently used by the `UTL_HTTP` package
`no_proxy_domains`	The list of hosts and domains for which no proxy is used for all requests

GET_RESPONSE Function

This function reads the HTTP response. When the function returns, the status line and the HTTP response headers have been read and processed. The status code, reason phrase, and the HTTP protocol version are stored in the response record. This function completes the HTTP headers section.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE (
   r                      IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   return_info_response   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
RETURN resp;
```

Parameters

Table 252–39 GET_RESPONSE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP response
return_info_response	Return 100 informational response or not. ■ TRUE means get_response should return 100 informational response when it is received from the HTTP server. The request will not be ended if a 100 response is returned. ■ FALSE means the API should ignore any 100 informational response received from the HTTP server and should return the following non-100 response instead. The default is FALSE.

Exceptions

- When detailed-exception is disabled:

  ORA-29273 REQUEST_FAILED - the request fails to execute. Use the GET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure and the GET_DETAILED_SQLERRM Function to get the detailed error message.

- When detailed-exception is enabled:

  ORA-29261 BAD_ARGUMENT - some arguments passed are not valid

- When response error check is enabled:

  ORA-29268 HTTP_CLIENT_ERROR - the response code is in 400 range

  ORA-29269 HTTP_SERVER_ERROR - the response code is in 500 range

Usage Notes

- The request will be ended when this functions returns regardless of whether an exception is raised or not. There is no need to invoke the END_REQUEST Procedure.
- If URL redirection occurs, the URL and method fields in the req record will be updated to the last redirected URL and the method used to access the URL.

Examples

In certain situations (initiated by the HTTP client or not), the HTTP server may return a 1xx informational response. The user who does not expect such a response may indicate to GET_RESPONSE to ignore the response and proceed to receive the regular response. In the case when the user expects such a response, the user can indicate to GET_RESPONSE to return the response.

For example, when a user is issuing a HTTP POST request with a large request body, the user may want to check with the HTTP server to ensure that the server will accept the request before sending the data. To do so, the user will send the additional EXPECT: 100-CONTINUE request header, and check for 100 CONTINUE response from the server before proceeding to send the request body. Then, the user will get the regular HTTP response.

The following code example illustrates this:

```
DECLARE
 data  VARCHAR2(1024) := '...';
 req   utl_http.req;
 resp  utl_http.resp;
BEGIN

 req := utl_http.begin_request('http://www.acme.com/receiver', 'POST');
 utl_http.set_header(req, 'Content-Length', length(data));
 -- Ask HTTP server to return "100 Continue" response
 utl_http.set_header(req, 'Expect', '100-continue');
 resp := utl_http.get_response(req, TRUE);

 -- Check for and dispose "100 Continue" response
 IF (resp.status_code <> 100) THEN
   utl_http.end_response(resp);
   raise_application_error(20000, 'Request rejected');
 END IF;
 utl_http.end_response(resp);

 -- Now, send the request body
 utl_http.write_text(req, data);

 -- Get the regular response
 resp := utl_http.get_response(req);
 utl_http.read_text(resp, data);

 utl_http.end_response(resp);

END;
```

GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure

This procedure checks if the response error check is set or not.

> **See Also:** Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK (
   enable  OUT BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 252–40 GET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enable	TRUE if the response error check is set; otherwise FALSE

GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure

This procedure retrieves the default timeout value for all future HTTP requests.

See Also: Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT (
   timeout  OUT PLS_INTEGER);
```

Parameters

Table 252–41 GET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
timeout	The network transfer timeout value in seconds

READ_LINE Procedure

This procedure reads the HTTP response body in text form until the end of line is reached and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer. The end of line is as defined in the function `read_line` of UTL_TCP. The `end_of_body` exception will be raised if the end of the HTTP response body is reached. Text data is automatically converted from the response body character set to the database character set.

See Also: HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.READ_LINE(
   r            IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   data         OUT NOCOPY  VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   remove_crlf  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–42 READ_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	The HTTP response
`data`	The HTTP response body in text form
`remove_crlf`	Removes the newline characters if set to `TRUE`

Usage Notes

The `UTL_HTTP` package supports HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding. When the response body is returned in chunked transfer-encoding format as indicated in the response header, the package automatically decodes the chunks and returns the response body in de-chunked format.

If transfer timeout is set in the request of this response, `read_line` waits for each data packet to be ready to read until timeout occurs. If it occurs, this procedure stops reading and returns all the data read successfully. If no data is read successfully, the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

If a partial multibyte character is found at the end of the response body, `read_line` stops reading and returns all the complete multibyte characters read successfully. If no complete character is read successfully, the `partial_multibyte_char` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the bytes of that partial multibyte character can be read as binary by the `read_raw` procedure. If a partial multibyte character is seen in the middle of the response body because the remaining bytes of the character have not arrived and read timeout occurs, the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised instead. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

When the `Content-Type` response header specifies the character set of the response body and the character set is unknown or unsupported by Oracle, the "ORA-01482: unsupported character set" exception is raised if you try to read the response body as text. You can either read the response body as binary using the `READ_RAW` procedure, or set the character set of the response body explicitly using the `SET_BODY_CHARSET` procedure and read the response body as text again.

READ_RAW Procedure

This procedure reads the HTTP response body in binary form and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer. The `end_of_body` exception will be raised if the end of the HTTP response body is reached.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.READ_RAW(
   r     IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   data  OUT NOCOPY RAW,
   len   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–43 READ_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	The HTTP response
`data`	The HTTP response body in binary form
`len`	The number of bytes of data to read. If `len` is `NULL`, this procedure will read as much input as possible to fill the buffer allocated in `data`. The actual amount of data returned may be less than that specified if not much data is available before the end of the HTTP response body is reached or the `transfer_timeout` amount of time has elapsed. The default is `NULL`

Usage Notes

The `UTL_HTTP` package supports HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding. When the response body is returned in chunked transfer-encoding format as indicated in the response header, the package automatically decodes the chunks and returns the response body in de-chunked format.

If transfer timeout is set in the request of this response, `read_raw` waits for each data packet to be ready to read until timeout occurs. If it occurs, `read_raw` stops reading and returns all the data read successfully. If no data is read successfully, the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

READ_TEXT Procedure

This procedure reads the HTTP response body in text form and returns the output in the caller-supplied buffer. The `end_of_body` exception will be raised if the end of the HTTP response body is reached. Text data is automatically converted from the response body character set to the database character set.

> **See Also:** HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.READ_TEXT(
   r     IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   data  OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   len   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–44 READ_TEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	The HTTP response
`data`	The HTTP response body in text form
`len`	The maximum number of characters of data to read. If `len` is NULL, this procedure will read as much input as possible to fill the buffer allocated in `data`. The actual amount of data returned may be less than that specified if little data is available before the end of the HTTP response body is reached or the `transfer_timeout` amount of time has elapsed. The default is NULL.

Usage Notes

The `UTL_HTTP` package supports HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding. When the response body is returned in chunked transfer-encoding format as indicated in the response header, the package automatically decodes the chunks and returns the response body in de-chunked format.

If transfer timeout is set in the request of this response, `read_text` waits for each data packet to be ready to read until timeout occurs. If it occurs, this procedure stops reading and returns all the data read successfully. If no data is read successfully, the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

If a partial multibyte character is found at the end of the response body, `read_text` stops reading and returns all the complete multibyte characters read successfully. If no complete character is read successfully, the `partial_multibyte_char` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the bytes of that partial multibyte character can be read as binary by the `read_raw` procedure. If a partial multibyte character is seen in the middle of the response body because the remaining bytes of the character have not arrived and read timeout occurs, the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised instead. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

When the `Content-Type` response header specifies the character set of the response body and the character set is unknown or unsupported by Oracle, the "`ORA-01482: unsupported character set`" exception is raised if you try to read the response body

as text. You can either read the response body as binary using the `READ_RAW` procedure, or set the character set of the response body explicitly using the `SET_BODY_CHARSET` procedure and read the response body as text again.

REQUEST Function

This function returns up to the first 2000 bytes of data retrieved from the given URL. This function can be used directly in SQL queries. The URL may contain the username and password needed to authenticate the request to the server. The format is

```
scheme://[user[:password]@]host[:port]/[...]
```

You can define a username/password for the proxy to be specified in the proxy string. The format is

```
[http://][user[:password]@]host[:port][/]
```

> **See Also:** Simple HTTP Fetches on page 252-15 and Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms on page 252-25

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.REQUEST (
   url              IN VARCHAR2,
   proxy            IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_path      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_password  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references (request, wnds, rnds, wnps, rnps);
```

Parameters

Table 252–45 REQUEST Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`url`	Uniform resource locator
`proxy`	(Optional) Specifies a proxy server to use when making the HTTP request. See `SET_PROXY` for the full format of the proxy setting.
`wallet_path`	(Optional) Specifies a client-side wallet. The client-side wallet contains the list of trusted certificate authorities required for HTTPS request. The format of `wallet_path` on a PC is, for example, file:`c:\WINNT\Profiles\`*`username`*`\WALLETS`, and in Unix is, for example, `file:/home/`*`username`*`/wallets` When the `UTL_HTTP` package is executed in the Oracle database server, the wallet is accessed from the database server. Therefore, the wallet path must be accessible from the database server. See `SET_WALLET` for a description on how to set up an Oracle wallet. Non-HTTPS requests do not require an Oracle wallet.
`wallet_password`	(Optional) Specifies the password required to open the wallet

Return Values

The return type is a string of length 2000 or less, which contains up to the first 2000 bytes of the HTML result returned from the HTTP request to the argument URL.

Exceptions

```
INIT_FAILED
REQUEST_FAILED
```

Usage Notes

The URL passed as an argument to this function is not examined for illegal characters, for example, spaces, according to URL specification RFC 2396. The caller should escape those characters with the UTL_URL package. See the comments of the package for the list of legal characters in URLs. Note that URLs should consist of US-ASCII characters only. The use of non-US-ASCII characters in a URL is generally unsafe.

Please see the documentation of the function `SET_WALLET` on the use of an Oracle wallet, which is required for accessing HTTPS Web servers.

Unless response error check is turned on, this function does not raise an exception when a 4xx or 5xx response is received from the Web server. Instead, it returns the formatted error message from the Web server:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Error Message</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Fatal Error 500</H1>
Can't Access Document:  http://home.nothing.comm.
<P>
<B>Reason:</B> Can't locate remote host:  home.nothing.comm.
<P>
<P><HR>
<ADDRESS><A HREF="http://www.w3.org">
CERN-HTTPD3.0A</A></ADDRESS>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Examples

```
SQL> SELECT UTL_HTTP.REQUEST('http://www.my-company.com/') FROM DUAL;
UTL_HTTP.REQUEST('HTTP://WWW.MY-COMPANY.COM/')
<html>
<head><title>My Company Home Page</title>
<!--changed Jan. 16, 19
1 row selected.
```

If you are behind a firewall, include the `proxy` parameter. For example, from within the Oracle firewall, where there might be a proxy server named `www-proxy.my-company.com`:

```
SQLPLUS> SELECT
UTL_HTTP.REQUEST('http://www.my-company.com', 'www-proxy.us.my-company.com') FROM
DUAL;
```

REQUEST_PIECES Function

This function returns a PL/SQL table of 2000-byte pieces of the data retrieved from the given URL. You can define a username/password for the proxy to be specified in the proxy string. The format is

```
[http://][user[:password]@]host[:port][/]
```

See Also: Simple HTTP Fetches on page 252-15 and Simple HTTP Fetches in a Single Call Subprograms on page 252-25

Syntax

```
TYPE html_pieces IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(2000) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;

UTL_HTTP.REQUEST_PIECES (
   url             IN VARCHAR2,
   max_pieces      IN NATURAL DEFAULT 32767,
   proxy           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_path     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_password IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN html_pieces;
```

Pragmas

```
PRAGMA RESTRICT_REFERENCES (request_pieces, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 252–46 REQUEST_PIECES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
url	Uniform resource locator
max_pieces	(Optional) The maximum number of pieces (each 2000 characters in length, except for the last, which may be shorter), that REQUEST_PIECES should return. If provided, then that argument should be a positive integer.
proxy	(Optional) Specifies a proxy server to use when making the HTTP request. See SET_PROXY for the full format of the proxy setting.
wallet_path	(Optional) Specifies a client-side wallet. The client-side wallet contains the list of trusted certificate authorities required for HTTPS request. The format of wallet_path on a PC is, for example, file:c:\WINNT\Profiles*username*\WALLETS, and in Unix is, for example, file:/home/*username*/wallets. When the UTL_HTTP package is executed in the Oracle database server, the wallet is accessed from the database server. Therefore, the wallet path must be accessible from the database server. See SET_WALLET for the description on how to set up an Oracle wallet. Non-HTTPS requests do not require an Oracle wallet.
wallet_password	(Optional) Specifies the password required to open the wallet

Return Values

REQUEST_PIECES returns a PL/SQL table of type UTL_HTTP.HTML_PIECES. Each element of that PL/SQL table is a string of maximum length 2000. The elements of the PL/SQL

table returned by REQUEST_PIECES are successive pieces of the data obtained from the HTTP request to that URL.

Exceptions

INIT_FAILED
REQUEST_FAILED

Usage Notes

The URL passed as an argument to this function will not be examined for illegal characters, for example, spaces, according to URL specification RFC 2396. The caller should escape those characters with the UTL_URL package. See the comments of the package for the list of legal characters in URLs. Note that URLs should consist of US-ASCII characters only. The use of non-US-ASCII characters in a URL is generally unsafe.

Each entry of the PL/SQL table (the "pieces") returned by this function may not be filled to their fullest capacity. The function may start filling the data in the next piece before the previous "piece" is totally full.

Please see the documentation of the function SET_WALLET on the use of an Oracle wallet, which is required for accessing HTTPS Web servers.

Unless response error check is turned on, this function does not raise an exception when a 4xx or 5xx response is received from the Web server. Instead, it returns the formatted error message from the Web server:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Error Message</TITLE>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<H1>Fatal Error 500</H1>
Can't Access Document:  http://home.nothing.comm.
<P>
<B>Reason:</B> Can't locate remote host:  home.nothing.comm.
<P>
<P><HR>
<ADDRESS><A HREF="http://www.w3.org">
CERN-HTTPD3.0A</A></ADDRESS>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Examples

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

DECLARE
   x   UTL_HTTP.HTML_PIECES;
   len PLS_INTEGER;
BEGIN
   x := UTL_HTTP.REQUEST_PIECES('http://www.oracle.com/', 100);
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(x.count || ' pieces were retrieved.');
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('with total length ');
   IF x.count < 1 THEN
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('0');
  ELSE
   len := 0;
   FOR i in 1..x.count LOOP
      len := len + length(x(i));
```

```
   END LOOP;
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(len);
  END IF;
END;
/
-- Output
Statement processed.
4 pieces were retrieved.
with total length
7687
```

SET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure

This procedure sets HTTP authentication information in the HTTP request header. The Web server needs this information to authorize the request.

> **See Also:** HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_AUTHENTICATION(
   r         IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   username  IN VARCHAR2,
   password  IN VARCHAR2,
   scheme    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Basic',
   for_proxy IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–47 SET_AUTHENTICATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	HTTP request
`username`	Username for the HTTP authentication
`password`	Password for the HTTP authentication
`scheme`	HTTP authentication scheme. Either `Basic` for the HTTP basic or `AWS` for Amazon S3 authentication scheme. Default is basic.
`for_proxy`	Identifies if the HTTP authentication information is for access to the HTTP proxy server instead of the Web server. Default is `FALSE`.

Usage Notes

The supported authentication schemes are HTTP basic and Amazon S3 authentication.

SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET Procedure

This procedure sets the HTTP authentication information in the HTTP request header needed for the request to be authorized by the Web server using the username and password credential stored in the Oracle wallet.

> **See Also:** External Password Store on on page 252-17, and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET(
   r         IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   alias     IN VARCHAR2,
   scheme    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'Basic',
   for_proxy IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–48 SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
alias	Alias to identify and retrieve the username and password credential stored in the Oracle wallet
scheme	HTTP authentication scheme. Either Basic for the HTTP basic or AWS for Amazon S3 authentication scheme. Default is basic.
for_proxy	Identifies if the HTTP authentication information is for access to the HTTP proxy server instead of the Web server. Default is FALSE.

Usage Notes

- To use the password credentials in a wallet, the UTL_HTTP user must have the use-passwords privilege on the wallet.
- The supported authentication schemes are HTTP basic and Amazon S3 authentication schemes.

Examples

Creating a wallet and entering username and password in the wallet

```
> mkstore -wrl /oracle/wallets/test_wallet -create
Enter password: ******
Enter password again: ******
> mkstore -wrl /oracle/wallets/test_wallet -createCredential hr-access jsmith
Your secret/Password is missing in the command line
Enter your secret/Password: ****
Re-enter your secret/Password: ****
Enter wallet password: ******
```

Granting the use-passwords privilege on the wallet to a user by the database administrator

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.CREATE_ACL(
```

```
    acl         => 'wallet-acl.xml',
    description => 'Wallet ACL',
    principal   => 'SCOTT',
    is_grant    => TRUE,
    privilege   => 'use-passwords');
  DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN.ASSIGN_WALLET_acl(
      acl          => 'wallet-acl.xml',
      wallet_path  => 'file: /oracle/wallets/test_wallet');
END;
```

Using username and password from the wallet

```
DECLARE
  req  UTL_HTTP.req;
BEGIN
  UTL_HTTP.SET_WALLET(path => 'file:/oracle/wallets/test_wallet');
  req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST(…);
  UTL_HTTP.SET_AUTHENTICATION_FROM_WALLET(req, 'hr-access');
  …
END;
```

SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedures

This procedure is overloaded. The description of different functionality is located alongside the syntax declarations.

See Also:

- HTTP Responses on page 252-16 and HTTP Responses Subprograms on page 252-29
- Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

Sets the default character set of the body of all future HTTP requests when the media type is `text` and the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header. Following the HTTP protocol standard specification, if the media type of a request or a response is `text`, but the character set information is missing in the `Content-Type` header, the character set of the request or response body should default to `ISO-8859-1`. A response created for a request inherits the default body character set of the request instead of the body character set of the current session. The default body character set is ISO-8859-1 in a database user session. The default body character set setting affects only future requests and has no effect on existing requests. After a request is created, the body character set can be changed by using the other `SET_BODY_CHARSET` procedure that operates on a request:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_BODY_CHARSET (
   charset   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Sets the character set of the request body when the media type is `text` but the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header. According to the HTTP protocol standard specification, if the media type of a request or a response is "text" but the character set information is missing in the `Content-Type` header, the character set of the request or response body should default to "`ISO-8859-1`". Use this procedure to change the default body character set a request inherits from the session default setting:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_BODY_CHARSET(
   r         IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   charset   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Sets the character set of the response body when the media type is "text" but the character set is not specified in the `Content-Type` header. For each the HTTP protocol standard specification, if the media type of a request or a response is "text" but the character set information is missing in the `Content-Type` header, the character set of the request or response body should default to "ISO-8859-1". Use this procedure to change the default body character set a response inherits from the request:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_BODY_CHARSET(
   r         IN OUT NOCOPY resp,
   charset   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–49 SET_BODY_CHARSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	The HTTP response.
`charset`	The default character set of the response body. The character set can be in Oracle or Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) naming convention. If `charset` is `NULL`, the database character set is assumed.

SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedures

This procedure is overloaded. The description of different functionality is located alongside the syntax declarations.

This procedure

See Also:

- HTTP Requests on page 252-16 andHTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
- Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

Enables or disables support for the HTTP cookies in the request. Use this procedure to change the cookie support setting a request inherits from the session default setting:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT(
   r       IN OUT NOCOPY REQ,
   enable  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Sets whether or not future HTTP requests will support HTTP cookies, and the maximum number of cookies maintained in the current database user session:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT (
   enable       IN BOOLEAN,
   max_cookies  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 300,
   max_cookies_per_site  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 20);
```

Parameters

Table 252–50 SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
enable	Set enable to TRUE to enable HTTP cookie support; FALSE to disable
max_cookies	Sets the maximum total number of cookies maintained in the current session
max_cookies_per_site	Sets the maximum number of cookies maintained in the current session for each Web site

Usage Notes

If cookie support is enabled for an HTTP request, all cookies saved in the current session and applicable to the request are returned to the Web server in the request in accordance with HTTP cookie specification standards. Cookies set in the response to the request are saved in the current session for return to the Web server in the subsequent requests if cookie support is enabled for those requests. If the cookie support is disabled for an HTTP request, no cookies are returned to the Web server in the request and the cookies set in the response to the request are not saved in the current session, although the Set-Cookie HTTP headers can still be retrieved from the response.

Cookie support is enabled by default for all HTTP requests in a database user session. The default setting of the cookie support (enabled versus disabled) affects only the future requests and has no effect on the existing ones. After your request is created, the cookie support setting may be changed by using the other `SET_COOKIE_SUPPORT` procedure that operates on a request.

The default maximum number of cookies saved in the current session is 20 for each site and 300 total.

If you lower the maximum total number of cookies or the maximum number of cookies for each Web site, the oldest cookies will be purged first to reduce the number of cookies to the lowered maximum. HTTP cookies saved in the current session last for the duration of the database session only; there is no persistent storage for the cookies. Cookies saved in the current session are not cleared if you disable cookie support.

See "Examples" on page 252-20 for how to use `GET_COOKIES` and `ADD_COOKIES` to retrieve, save, and restore cookies.

SET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure

This procedure sets the UTL_HTTP package to raise a detailed exception. By default, UTL_HTTP raises the request_failed exception when an HTTP request fails. Use GET_DETAILED_SQLCODE and GET_DETAILED_SQLEERM for more detailed information about the error.

See Also: Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT (
   enable  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–51 SET_DETAILED_EXCP_SUPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enable	Asks UTL_HTTP to raise a detailed exception directly if set to TRUE; otherwise FALSE

SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedures

This procedure sets the maximum number of times UTL_HTTP follows the HTTP redirect instruction in the HTTP response to this request, or future requests, in the GET_RESPONSE function.

See Also:

- HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27
- Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

Use this procedure to set the maximum number of redirections:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT (
   max_redirects  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 3);
```

Use this procedure to change the maximum number of redirections a request inherits from the session default setting:

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT(
   r              IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   max_redirects  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 3);
```

Parameters

Table 252–52 SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
max_redirects	The maximum number of redirects. Set to zero to disable redirects.

Usage Notes

If max_redirects is set to a positive number, the GET_RESPONSE Function will automatically follow the redirected URL for the HTTP response status code 301, 302, and 307 for the HTTP HEAD and GET methods, and 303 for all HTTP methods, and retry the HTTP request (the request method will be changed to HTTP GET for the status code 303) at the new location. It follows the redirection until the final, non-redirect location is reached, or an error occurs, or the maximum number of redirections has been reached (to prevent an infinite loop). The URL and method fields in the REQ record will be updated to the last redirected URL and the method used to access the URL. Set the maximum number of redirects to zero to disable automatic redirection.

While it is set not to follow redirect automatically in the current session, it is possible to specify individual HTTP requests to follow redirect instructions the function FOLLOW_REDIRECT and vice versa.

The default maximum number of redirections in a database user session is 3. The default value affects only future requests and has no effect on existing requests.

The SET_FOLLOW_REDIRECT procedure must be called before GET_RESPONSE for any redirection to take effect.

SET_HEADER Procedure

This procedure sets an HTTP request header. The request header is sent to the Web server as soon as it is set.

See Also: HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_HEADER (
   r      IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   name   IN VARCHAR2,
   value  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 252–53 SET_HEADER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
name	The name of the HTTP request header
value	The value of the HTTP request header

Usage Notes

Multiple HTTP headers with the same name are allowed in the HTTP protocol standard. Therefore, setting a header does not replace a prior header with the same name.

If the request is made using HTTP 1.1, UTL_HTTP sets the Host header automatically for you.

When you set the Content-Type header with this procedure, UTL_HTTP looks for the character set information in the header value. If the character set information is present, it is set as the character set of the request body. It can be overridden later by using the SET_BODY_CHARSET procedure.

When you set the Transfer-Encoding header with the value chunked, UTL_HTTP automatically encodes the request body written by the WRITE_TEXT, WRITE_LINE and WRITE_RAW procedures. Note that some HTTP-1.1-based Web servers or CGI programs do not support or accept the request body encoding in the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format.

SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure

This procedure is overloaded. The description of different functionality is located alongside the syntax declarations.

> **See Also:** HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

Sets whether future HTTP requests should support the HTTP 1.1 persistent connection or not, and the maximum numbers of persistent connections to be maintained in the current database user session.

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT(
   enable      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   max_conns   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Enables or disables support for the HTTP 1.1 persistent-connection in the request.

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT(
   r           IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   enable      IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–54 SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`enable`	`TRUE` to keep the network connection persistent. `FALSE` otherwise.
maximum_conns	Maximum number of connections
`r`	The HTTP request

Usage Notes

If the persistent-connection support is enabled for an HTTP request, the package will keep the network connections to a Web server or the proxy server open in the package after the request is completed properly for a subsequent request to the same server to reuse for each HTTP 1.1 protocol specification. With the persistent connection support, subsequent HTTP requests may be completed faster because the network connection latency is avoided. If the persistent-connection support is disabled for a request, the package will always send the HTTP header "Connection: close" automatically in the HTTP request and close the network connection when the request is completed. This setting has no effect on HTTP requests that follows HTTP 1.0 protocol, for which the network connections will always be closed after the requests are completed.

When a request is being made, the package attempts to reuse an existing persistent connection to the target Web server (or proxy server) if one is available. If none is available, a new network connection will be initiated. The persistent-connection support setting for a request affects only whether the network connection should be closed after a request completes.

Use this procedure to change the persistent-connection support setting a request inherits from the session default setting.

Users should note that while the use of persistent connections in UTL_HTTP may reduce the time it takes to fetch multiple Web pages from the same server, it consumes precious system resources (network connections) in the database server. Also, excessive use of persistent connections may reduce the scalability of the database server when too many network connections are kept open in the database server. Network connections should be kept open only if they will be used immediately by subsequent requests and should be closed immediately when they are no longer needed. Set the default persistent connection support as disabled in the session, and enable persistent connection in individual HTTP requests as shown in "Examples" on page 252-89.

The default value of the maximum number of persistent connections in a database session is zero. To truly enable persistent connections, you must also set the maximum number of persistent connections to a positive value or no connections will be kept persistent.

Note that if you want to use persistent connections, you must call the overload that takes the maximum_conns parameter prior to calling the BEGIN_REQUEST Function, otherwise persistent connections will not be enabled for the current request even if the other form of SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT is called.

Examples

Using SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT in http requests at the session level, showing the active persistent connection after each request

```
DECLARE
  pieces utl_http.html_pieces;
  conns  utl_http.connection_table;
BEGIN

  -- Turns on persistent connection support for the request_pieces call.
  utl_http.set_persistent_conn_support(true, 1);

  FOR i IN 1..10 LOOP

    pieces := utl_http.request_pieces('http://www.example.com/');

    -- Shows the active persistent connection
    utl_http.get_persistent_conns(conns);
    FOR j IN 1..conns.count LOOP
       dbms_output.put_line('Persistent connection '||j||':
'||conns(j).host||':'||conns(j).port);
    END LOOP;

  END LOOP;


  -- Turns off persistent connection support. Set active max persistent connection
to 0 to close all active connections.
  utl_http.set_persistent_conn_support(false, 0);

END;
/
```

Using SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT in HTTP requets showing how to use persistent connection individually in each request to fetch multiple URLs at the same host

```
DECLARE
-- Table to store the URLs
TYPE vc2_table IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(256) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
paths VC2_TABLE;

PROCEDURE fetch_pages(paths IN vc2_table) AS
  req  UTL_HTTP.REQ;
  resp UTL_HTTP.RESP;
  data VARCHAR2(1024);

BEGIN

  -- Set the proxy server
  UTL_HTTP.SET_PROXY('www-proxy.example.com:80', '');

  FOR i IN 1..paths.count LOOP

    req := UTL_HTTP.BEGIN_REQUEST(paths(i));

    -- Use persistent connections except for the last request
    IF (i < paths.count) THEN
      -- Use a persistent connection for the current request
      UTL_HTTP.SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT(req, TRUE);
    END IF;

    resp := UTL_HTTP.GET_RESPONSE(req);

    -- Display the results of the response
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('URL: ' || paths(i));
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HTTP Response Status Code:   ' || resp.status_code);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HTTP Response Reason Phrase: ' || resp.reason_phrase);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('HTTP Response Version:       ' || resp.http_version);

    BEGIN
      LOOP
        UTL_HTTP.READ_TEXT(resp, data);
        -- do something with the data
      END LOOP;
    EXCEPTION
      WHEN UTL_HTTP.END_OF_BODY THEN
        NULL;
    END;
    UTL_HTTP.END_RESPONSE(resp);
  END LOOP;
END;

BEGIN
-- Set a maximum of 1 persistent connection, but start with persistent connections
-- off
   UTL_HTTP.SET_PERSISTENT_CONN_SUPPORT(FALSE, 1);

   -- Create a list of URLs
   paths(1) := 'http://www.example.com/technetwork/index.html';
   paths(2) := 'http://www.example.com/us/products/index.html';

   fetch_pages(paths);
```

```
 END;
/
```

SET_PROXY Procedure

This procedure sets the proxy to be used for requests of the HTTP or other protocols, excluding those for hosts that belong to the domain specified in `no_proxy_domains.no_proxy_domains` is a comma-, semi-colon-, or space-separated list of domains or hosts for which HTTP requests should be sent directly to the destination HTTP server instead of going through a proxy server.

> **See Also:** Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_PROXY (
   proxy             IN VARCHAR2,
   no_proxy_domains  IN VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 252–55 SET_PROXY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`proxy`	The proxy (host and an optional port number) to be used by the `UTL_HTTP` package
`no_proxy_domains`	The list of hosts and domains for which no proxy should be used for all requests

Usage Notes

The proxy may include an optional TCP/IP port number at which the proxy server listens. The syntax is `[http://]host[:port][/]`, for example, `www-proxy.my-company.com:80`. If the port is not specified for the proxy, port 80 is assumed.

Optionally, a port number can be specified for each domain or host. If the port number is specified, the no-proxy restriction is only applied to the request at the port of the particular domain or host, for example, `corp.my-company.com, eng.my-company.com:80`. When `no_proxy_domains` is `NULL` and the proxy is set, all requests go through the proxy. When the proxy is not set, `UTL_HTTP` sends requests to the target Web servers directly.

You can define a username/password for the proxy to be specified in the proxy string. The format is

```
[http://][user[:password]@]host[:port][/]
```

If proxy settings are set when the database server instance is started, the proxy settings in the environment variables `http_proxy` and `no_proxy` are assumed. Proxy settings set by this procedure override the initial settings.

SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure

This procedure sets whether or not GET_RESPONSE raises an exception when the Web server returns a status code that indicates an error—a status code in the 4xx or 5xx ranges. For example, when the requested URL is not found in the destination Web server, a 404 (document not found) response status code is returned.

See Also: Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK (
   enable  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 252–56 SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
enable	TRUE to check for response errors; otherwise FALSE

Usage Notes

If the status code indicates an error—a 4xx or 5xx code—and this procedure is enabled, GET_RESPONSE will raise the HTTP_CLIENT_ERROR or HTTP_SERVER_ERROR exception. If SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK is set to FALSE, GET_RESPONSE will not raise an exception when the status code indicates an error.

Response error check is turned off by default.

The GET_RESPONSE function can raise other exceptions when SET_RESPONSE_ERROR_CHECK is set to FALSE.

SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure

This procedure sets the default time out value for all future HTTP requests that the UTL_HTTP package should attempt while reading the HTTP response from the Web server or proxy server. This time out value may be used to avoid the PL/SQL programs from being blocked by busy Web servers or heavy network traffic while retrieving Web pages from the Web servers.

> **See Also:** Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT (
   timeout  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 60);
```

Parameters

Table 252–57 SET_TRANSFER_TIMEOUT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
timeout	The network transfer timeout value in seconds.

Usage Notes

The default value of the time out is 60 seconds.

SET_WALLET Procedure

This procedure sets the Oracle wallet used for all HTTP requests over Secured Socket Layer (SSL), namely HTTPS. When the UTL_HTTP package communicates with an HTTP server over SSL, the HTTP server presents its digital certificate, which is signed by a certificate authority, to the UTL_HTTP package for identification purpose. The Oracle wallet contains the list of certificate authorities that are trusted by the user of the UTL_HTTP package. An Oracle wallet is required to make an HTTPS request.

See Also:

- Session Settings on page 252-16 and Session Settings Subprograms on page 252-26
- "Managing Fine-Grained Access in PL/SQL Network Utility Packages" in the *Oracle Database Security Guide*

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.SET_WALLET (
   path      IN VARCHAR2,
   password  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 252–58 SET_WALLET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path	The directory path that contains the Oracle wallet. The format is file:*directory-path*. The format of wallet_path on a PC is, for example, file:c:\WINNT\Profiles*username*\WALLETS, and in Unix is, for example, file:/home/*username*/wallets. When the UTL_HTTP package is executed in the Oracle database server, the wallet is accessed from the database server. Therefore, the wallet path must be accessible from the database server.
password	The password needed to open the wallet. If the wallet is auto-login enabled, the password may be omitted and should be set to NULL. See "Using Wallets with Automatic Login Enabled" in the *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide* for information about using Oracle Wallet Manager and the ORAPKI utility to create an auto-login wallet

Usage Notes

To set up an Oracle wallet, use the Oracle Wallet Manager to create a wallet. In order for the HTTPS request to succeed, the certificate authority that signs the certificate of the remote HTTPS Web server must be a trust point set in the wallet.

When a wallet is created, it is populated with a set of well-known certificate authorities as trust points. If the certificate authority that signs the certificate of the remote HTTPS Web server is not among the trust points, or the certificate authority has new root certificates, you should obtain the root certificate of that certificate authority and install it as a trust point in the wallet using Oracle Wallet Manager

See Also: *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide* for more information on Wallet Manager

WRITE_LINE Procedure

This procedure writes a text line in the HTTP request body and ends the line with new-line characters (CRLF as defined in UTL_TCP). As soon as some data is sent as the HTTP request body, the HTTP request headers section is completed. Text data is automatically converted from the database character set to the request body character set.

> **See Also:** HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.WRITE_LINE(
   r     IN OUT NOCOPY req,
   data  IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);
```

Parameters

Table 252–59 WRITE_LINE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
data	The text line to send in the HTTP request body

Usage Notes

An HTTP client must always let the remote Web server know the length of the request body it is sending. If the amount of data is known beforehand, you can set the Content-Length header in the request, where the length of the content is measured in bytes instead of characters. If the length of the request body is not known beforehand, you can send the request body using the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format. The request body is sent in chunks, where the length of each chunk is sent before the chunk is sent. The UTL_HTTP package performs chunked transfer-encoding on the request body transparently when the Transfer-Encoding: chunked header is set. Note that some HTTP-1.1-based Web servers or CGI programs do not support or accept the request body encoding in the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format. See the SET_HEADER procedure for details.

If you send the Content-Length header, you should note that the length specified in the header should be the byte-length of the textual request body after it is converted from the database character set to the request body character set. When either one of the two character sets is a multibyte character set, the precise byte-length of the request body in the request body character set cannot be known beforehand. In this case, you can perform the character set conversion explicitly, determine the byte-length of the results, send the Content-Length header, and the results using the WRITE_RAW procedure to avoid the automatic character set conversion. Or, if the remove Web server or CGI programs allow, you can send the request body using the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format, where UTL_HTTP handles the length of the chunks transparently.

WRITE_RAW Procedure

This procedure writes some binary data in the HTTP request body. As soon as some data is sent as the HTTP request body, the HTTP request headers section is completed.

See Also: HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.WRITE_RAW(
   r     IN OUT NOCOPY REQ,
   data  IN            RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 252–60 WRITE_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
data	The binary data to send in the HTTP request body

Usage Notes

An HTTP client must always let the remote Web server know the length of the request body it is sending. If the amount of data is known beforehand, you can set the `Content-Length` header in the request, where the length of the content is measured in bytes instead of characters. If the length of the request body is not known beforehand, you can send the request body using the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format. The request body is sent in chunks, where the length of each chunk is sent before the chunk is sent. `UTL_HTTP` performs chunked transfer-encoding on the request body transparently when the `Transfer-Encoding:chunked` header is set. Note that some HTTP-1.1-based Web servers or CGI programs do not support or accept the request body encoding in the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format. See the `SET_HEADER` procedure for details.

WRITE_TEXT Procedure

This procedure writes some text data in the HTTP request body. As soon as some data is sent as the HTTP request body, the HTTP request headers section is completed. Text data is automatically converted from the database character set to the request body character set.

> **See Also:** HTTP Requests on page 252-16 and HTTP Requests Subprograms on page 252-27

Syntax

```
UTL_HTTP.WRITE_TEXT(
   r     IN OUT NOCOPY REQ,
   data  IN            VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);
```

Parameters

Table 252–61 WRITE_TEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	The HTTP request
data	The text data to send in the HTTP request body

Usage Notes

An HTTP client must always let the remote Web server know the length of the request body it is sending. If the amount of data is known beforehand, you can set the `Content-Length` header in the request, where the length of the content is measured in bytes instead of characters. If the length of the request body is not known beforehand, you can send the request body using the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format. The request body is sent in chunks, where the length of each chunk is sent before the chunk is sent. `UTL_HTTP` performs chunked transfer-encoding on the request body transparently when the `Transfer-Encoding: chunked` header is set. Note that some HTTP-1.1-based Web servers or CGI programs do not support or accept the request body encoding in the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format. See the `SET_HEADER` procedure for details.

If you send the `Content-Length` header, you should note that the length specified in the header should be the byte-length of the textual request body after it is converted from the database character set to the request body character set. When either one of the two character sets is a multibyte character set, the precise byte-length of the request body in the request body character set cannot be known beforehand. In this case, you can perform the character set conversion explicitly, determine the byte-length of the results, send the `Content-Length` header, and the results using the `WRITE_RAW` procedure to avoid the automatic character set conversion. Or, if the remove Web server or CGI programs allow, you can send the request body using the HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer-encoding format, where `UTL_HTTP` handles the length of the chunks transparently.

253

UTL_I18N

`UTL_I18N` is a set of services that provides additional globalization functionality for applications written in PL/SQL.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_I18N

This section contains topics which relate to using the `UTL_I18N` package.

Overview

The UTL_I18N PL/SQL package consists of the following categories of services:

- String conversion functions for various datatypes.
- Functions that convert a text string to character references and vice versa.
- Functions that map between Oracle, Java, and ISO languages and territories.
- Functions that map between Oracle, Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA), and e-mail safe character sets.
- A function that returns the Oracle character set name from an Oracle language name.
- A function that returns the maximum number of bytes for a character of an Oracle character set.
- A function that performs script transliteration.
- Functions that return the ISO currency code, local time zones, and local languages supported for a given territory.
- Functions that return the most appropriate linguistic sort, a listing of all the applicable linguistic sorts, and the local territories supported for a given language.
- Functions that map between the Oracle full and short language names.
- A function that returns the language translation of a given language and territory name.
- A function that returns a listing of the most commonly used time zones.

Security Model

The functions of the `UTL_I18N` package neither read database contents nor modify them. The functions operate on their arguments only and/or they retrieve static internationalization information from NLS Data files. The execution privilege for the package is granted to `PUBLIC` by default

Constants

The UTL_I18N package uses the constants shown in Table 253–1.

Table 253–1 UTL_I18N Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
GENERIC_CONTEXT	PLS_INTEGER	0	Returns the default character set for general cases.
MAIL_GENERIC	PLS_INTEGER	0	Map from an Oracle character set name to an email safe character set name on a non-Windows platform.
ORACLE_TO_IANA	PLS_INTEGER	0	Map from an Oracle character set name to an IANA character set name.
SHIFT_IN	PLS_INTEGER	0	Used with shift_status. Must be set the first time it is called in piecewise conversion.
IANA_TO_ORACLE	PLS_INTEGER	1	Map from an IANA character set name to an Oracle character set name.
MAIL_CONTEXT	PLS_INTEGER	1	The mapping is between an Oracle character set name and an email safe character set name.
MAIL_WINDOWS	PLS_INTEGER	1	Map from an Oracle character set name to an email safe character set name on a Windows platform.
SHIFT_OUT	PLS_INTEGER	1	
FWKATAKANA_HIRAGANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'fwkatakana_hiragana'	Converts only fullwidth Katakana characters to fullwidth Hiragana characters.
FWKATAKANA_HWKATAKANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'fwkatakana_hwkatakana'	Converts only fullwidth Katakana characters to halfwidth Katakana characters.
HIRAGANA_FWKATAKANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'hiragana_fwkatakana'	Converts only fullwidth Hiragana characters to fullwidth Katakana characters.
HIRAGANA_HWKATAKANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'hiragana_hwkatakana'	Converts only fullwidth Hiragana characters to halfwidth Katakana characters.
HWKATAKANA_FWKATAKANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'hwkatakana_fwkatakana'	Converts only halfwidth Katakana characters to fullwidth Katakana characters.
HWKATAKANA_HIRAGANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'hwkatakana_hiragana'	Converts only halfwidth Katakana characters to fullwidth Hiragana characters.
KANA_FWKATAKANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'kana_fwkatakana'	Converts any type of Kana character to a fullwidth Katakana character.
KANA_HIRAGANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'kana_hiragana'	Converts any type of Kana character to a fullwidth Hiragana character.

Table 253–1 (Cont.) UTL_I18N Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
KANA_HWKATAKANA	VARCHAR2(30)	'kana_ hwkatakana'	Converts any type of Kana character to a halfwidth Katakana character.

Summary of UTL_I18N Subprograms

Table 253–2 UTL_I18N Package Subprograms

Procedure	Description
ESCAPE_REFERENCE Function on page 253-9	Converts a given text string to its character reference counterparts, for characters that fall outside the document character set.
GET_COMMON_TIME_ZONES Function on page 253-10	Returns the list of common time zone IDs that are independent of the locales.
GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET Function on page 253-11	Returns the default Oracle character set name or the default e-mail safe character set name from an Oracle language name.
GET_DEFAULT_ISO_CURRENCY Function on page 253-12	Returns the default ISO 4217 currency code for the specified territory.
GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT Function on page 253-13	Returns the default linguistic sort name for the specified language.
GET_LOCAL_LANGUAGES Function on page 253-14	Returns the local language names for the specified territory.
GET_LOCAL_LINGUISTIC_SORTS Function on page 253-15	Returns the local linguistic sort names for the specified language.
GET_LOCAL_TERRITORIES Function on page 253-16	Returns the local territory names for the specified language.
GET_LOCAL_TIME_ZONES Function on page 253-17	Returns the local time zone IDs for the specified territory.
GET_MAX_CHARACTER_SIZE Function on page 253-19	Returns the maximum character size of a given character set.
GET_TRANSLATION Function on page 253-20	Returns the translation of the language and territory name in the specified translation language.
MAP_CHARSET Function on page 253-21	▪ Maps an Oracle character set name to an IANA character set name. ▪ Maps an IANA character set name to an Oracle character set name. ▪ Maps an Oracle character set name to an e-mail safe character set name.
MAP_FROM_SHORT_LANGUAGE Function on page 253-23	Maps an Oracle short language name to an Oracle language name.
MAP_LANGUAGE_FROM_ISO Function on page 253-24	Returns an Oracle language name from an ISO locale name.
MAP_LOCALE_TO_ISO Function on page 253-25	Returns an ISO locale name from the Oracle language and territory name.
MAP_TERRITORY_FROM_ISO Function on page 253-26	Returns an Oracle territory name from an ISO locale name.
MAP_TO_SHORT_LANGUAGE Function on page 253-27	Maps an Oracle language name to an Oracle short language name.
RAW_TO_CHAR Functions on page 253-28	Converts `RAW` data that is not encoded in the database character set into a `VARCHAR2` string
RAW_TO_NCHAR Functions on page 253-30	Converts `RAW` data that is not encoded in the national character set into an `NVARCHAR2` string

Table 253–2 (Cont.) UTL_I18N Package Subprograms

Procedure	Description
STRING_TO_RAW Function on page 253-32	Converts a VARCHAR2 or NVARCHAR2 string to another character set. The result is returned as a RAW datatype.
TRANSLITERATE Function on page 253-33	Transliterates between Japanese hiragana and katakana.
UNESCAPE_REFERENCE Function on page 253-35	Converts an input string that contains character references to a text string.

ESCAPE_REFERENCE Function

This function converts a text string to its character reference counterparts for characters that fall outside the character set used by the current document. Character references are mainly used in HTML and XML documents to represent characters independently of the encoding of the document.Character references may appear in two forms, numeric character references and character entity references. Numeric character references specify the Unicode code point value of a character, while character entity references use symbolic names to refer to the same character. For example, `&#xe5;` is the numeric character reference for the small letter "a" with a ring above, whereas `&aring;` is the character entity reference for the same character. Character entity references are also used to escape special characters, as an example, `<` represents the < (less than) sign. This is to avoid possible confusion with the beginning of a tag in Markup languages.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.ESCAPE_REFERENCE(
    str            IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
    page_cs_name   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 253–3 ESCAPE_REFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`str`	Specifies the input string
`page_cs_name`	Specifies the character set of the document. If `page_cs_name` is `NULL`, then the database character set is used for `CHAR` data and the national character set is used for `NCHAR` data.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid character set or a `NULL` string, then the function returns a `NULL` string.

Examples

```
UTL_I18N.ESCAPE_REFERENCE('hello < '||chr(229),'us7ascii')
```

This returns `'hello < &#xe5;'`.

GET_COMMON_TIME_ZONES Function

This function returns a listing of the most commonly used time zones. This list contains a subset of the time zones that are supported in the database.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_COMMON_TIME_ZONES
 RETURN STRING_ARRAY;
```

Examples

Returns the list of the most commonly used time zones.

```
DECLARE
   retval UTL_I18N.STRING_ARRAY;
BEGIN
   retval := UTL_I18N.GET_COMMON_TIME_ZONES;
END;
/
```

GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET Function

This function returns the default Oracle character set name or the default e-mail safe character set name from an Oracle language name.

> **See Also:** "MAP_CHARSET Function" on page 253-21 for an explanation of an e-mail safe character set

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET(
   language  IN VARCHAR2,
   context   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT GENERIC_CONTEXT,
   iswindows IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–4 GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
language	Specifies a valid Oracle language
context	GENERIC_CONTEXT | MAIL_CONTEXT
	GENERIC_CONTEXT: Returns the default character set for general cases
	MAIL_CONTEXT: Returns the default e-mail safe character set name
iswindows	If context is set as MAIL_CONTEXT, then iswindows should be set to TRUE if the platform is Windows and FALSE if the platform is not Windows. The default is FALSE.
	iswindows has no effect if context is set as GENERIC_CONTEXT.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid language name or an invalid flag, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

GENERIC_CONTEXT, iswindows=FALSE

```
UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET('French', UTL_I18N.GENERIC_CONTEXT, FALSE)
```

This returns 'WE8ISO8859P1'.

MAIL_CONTEXT, iswindows=TRUE

```
UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET('French', UTL_I18N.MAIL_CONTEXT, TRUE)
```

This returns 'WE8MSWIN1252'.

MAIL_CONTEXT, iswindows=FALSE

```
UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_CHARSET('French', UTL_I18N.MAIL_CONTEXT, FALSE)
```

This returns 'WE8ISO8859P1'.

GET_DEFAULT_ISO_CURRENCY Function

This function returns the default ISO 4217 currency code for the specified territory.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_ISO_CURRENCY (
   territory    IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–5 GET_DEFAULT_ISO_CURRENCY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
territory	Specifies a valid Oracle territory. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid territory name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Displays the default ISO currency code for China.

```
DECLARE
   retval VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
   retval := UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_ISO_CURRENCY('CHINA');
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval);
END;
/
```

GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT Function

This function returns the most commonly used Oracle linguistic sort for the specified language.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT (
   language  IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–6 GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
language	Specifies a valid Oracle language. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid language name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Displays the name of the most appropriate linguistic sort name for the language used in the current SQL session.

```
DECLARE
   retval VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
  SELECT value INTO retval FROM nls_session_parameters
   WHERE parameter = 'NLS_LANGUAGE';
   retval := UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT(retval);
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval);
END;
/
```

GET_LOCAL_LANGUAGES Function

This function returns the local language names for the specified territory.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_LOCAL_LANGUAGES (
   territory    IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN STRING_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 253–7 GET_LOCAL_LANGUAGES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
territory	Specifies a valid Oracle territory. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid territory name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Returns the list of local languages used in Belgium.

```
DECLARE
   retval UTL_I18N.STRING_ARRAY;
   cnt    INTEGER;
BEGIN
   retval   :=  UTL_I18N.GET_LOCAL_LANGUAGES('BELGIUM');
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('Count = ');
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval.LAST);
   cnt := retval.FIRST;
   WHILE cnt IS NOT NULL LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval(cnt));
      cnt := retval.NEXT(cnt);
   END LOOP;
END;
/
...
Count = 2
DUTCH
FRENCH
```

GET_LOCAL_LINGUISTIC_SORTS Function

This function returns a list of the Oracle linguistic sort names that are appropriate for the specified language. A BINARY sort is included for all languages.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_LOCAL_LINGUISTIC_SORTS (
   language  IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN STRING_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 253–8 GET_LOCAL_LINGUISTIC_SORTS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
language	Specifies a valid Oracle language. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid language name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Displays the local linguistic sort names for JAPANESE.

```
DECLARE
   retval UTL_I18N.STRING_ARRAY;
   cnt INTEGER;
BEGIN
  retval := UTL_I18N.GET_LOCAL_LINGUISTIC_SORTS('Japanese');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('Count = ');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval.COUNT);
  cnt := retval.FIRST;
   WHILE cnt IS NOT NULL LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval(cnt));
      cnt := retval.NEXT(cnt);
    END LOOP;
END;
/

...
Count = 2
JAPANESE_M
BINARY
```

GET_LOCAL_TERRITORIES Function

This function returns the local territory names for the specified language.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_LOCAL_TERRITORIES (
   language  IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN STRING_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 253–9 GET_LOCAL_TERRITORIES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
language	Specifies a valid Oracle language. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid language name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Returns the list of Oracle territories that use German as one of their local languages.

```
DECLARE
   retval  UTL_I18N.STRING_ARRAY;
   cnt     INTEGER;
BEGIN
   retval  := UTL_I18N.GET_LCOAL_TERRITORIIES('GERMAN');
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('Count = ');
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval.LAST);
  cnt := retval.FIRST;
   WHILE cnt IS NOT NULL LOOP
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval(cnt));
      cnt := retval.NEXT(cnt));
   END LOOP;
END;
/
...
Count = 4
GERMANY
AUSTRIA
LUXEMBOURG
SWITZERLAND
```

GET_LOCAL_TIME_ZONES Function

This function returns the local time zone IDs for the specified territory.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_LOCAL_TIME_ZONES (
   territory      IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN STRING_ARRAY;
```

Parameters

Table 253–10 GET_LOCAL_TIME_ZONES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
territory	Specifies a valid Oracle territory. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid territory name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Creates a function that returns the list of time zones locally used in the territory AZERBAIJAN followed by the general common time zones. This is useful for when the user's territory is known and the application still allows the user to choose other time zones as a user's preference.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_time_zones
(territory IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN utl_i18n.string_array
IS
  retval  utl_i18n.string_array;
  retval2 utl_i18n.string_array;
  stpos   INTEGER;
BEGIN
  retval  := utl_i18n.get_local_time_zones(
    territory);
  retval2 := utl_i18n.get_common_time_zones;
  stpos := retval.LAST + 1;
  retval(stpos) := '-----'; -- a separator
  FOR i IN retval2.FIRST..retval2.LAST LOOP
    stpos := stpos + 1;
    retval(stpos) := retval2(i);
  END LOOP;
  RETURN retval;
END;
/
```

Returns the list of local time zones for AZERBAIJAN followed by the common time zones with a separator string of five dashes (-----).

```
DECLARE
   retval UTL_I18N.STRING_ARRAY;
   cnt INTEGER;
BEGIN
   DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE(100000);
   retval UTL_I18N.GET_TIME_ZONES('AZERBAIJAN');
```

```
   cnt := retval.FIRST;
  WHILE cnt IS NOT NULL LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval(cnt));
    cnt := retval.NEXT(cnt);
  END LOOP;
END;
/

Asia/Baku
-----
Pacific/Pago_Pago
Pacific/Honolulu
America/Anchorage
America/Vancouver
America/Los_Angeles
America/Tijuana
America/Edmonton
America/Denver
America/Phoenix
America/Mazatlan
America/Winnipeg
America/Regina
America/Chicago
America/Mexico_City
America/Guatemala
America/El_Salvador
America/Managua
America/Costa_Rica
America/Montreal
...
```

GET_MAX_CHARACTER_SIZE Function

This function returns the maximum character size of a given character set.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_MAX_CHARACTER_SIZE(
    charset_name       IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 253–11 GET_MAX_CHARACTER_SIZE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
charset_name	Specifies a valid character set name. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

For shift-sensitive character sets, the returned maximum character size will include the possible extra shift characters.

Examples

```
UTL_I18N.GET_MAX_CHARACTER_SIZE('AL32UTF8');
```

This returns 4.

GET_TRANSLATION Function

This function returns the translation of the language and territory name in the specified translation language.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.GET_TRANSLATION (
   parameter        IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   trans_language   IN VARCHAR2 'AMERICAN',
   flag             IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT LANGUAGE_TRANS)
RETURN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET parameter%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 253–12 GET_TRANSLATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`parameter`	Specifies a valid language name, territory name, or a combined string in the form of *`language_territory`*. It is case-insensitive.
`trans_language`	Specifies a translation language name. For example, `ITALIAN` is for the Italian language. The default is `AMERICAN`, which indicates American English.
`flag`	Specifies the translation type: ■ `LANGUAGE_TRANS`: The function returns the language translation. ■ `TERRITORY_TRANS`: The function returns the territory translation. ■ `LANGUAGE_TERRITORY_TRANS`: The function returns the language and territory translation. The default translation type is `LANGUAGE_TRANS`.

Usage Notes

If `VARCHAR2` is used as a parameter type, the returned translation text can be corrupted due to the conversion to the database character set. Using `NVARCHAR2` as the parameter type will preserve the translation text because Unicode can encode all translated languages.

If the specified translation language is not available or an invalid name is provided, the default "American English" translations are returned. For example, Oracle does not provide `GUJARATI` translations, so the returned translation would be in American English.

Examples

The following returns the names of all the Oracle-supported languages in Italian.

```
DECLARE
   CURSOR c1 IS
     SELECT value FROM V$NLS_VALID_VALUES
     WHERE parameter = 'LANGUAGE'
  ORDER BY value;
  retval NVARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
   FOR item IN c1 LOOP
     retval := UTL_I18N.GET_TRANSLATION (TO_NCHAR(item.value), 'italian');
   END LOOP;
END;
```

MAP_CHARSET Function

This function maps the following:

- An Oracle character set name to an IANA character set name.
- An IANA character set name to an Oracle character set name.
- An Oracle character set to an e-mail safe character set name.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_CHARSET(
   charset   IN VARCHAR2,
   context   IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT GENERIC_CONTEXT,
   flag      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT ORACLE_TO_IANA)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–13 MAP_CHARSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
charset	Specifies the character set name to be mapped. The mapping is case-insensitive.
context	GENERIC_CONTEXT | MAIL_CONTEXT GENERIC_CONTEXT: The mapping is between an Oracle character set name and an IANA character set name. This is the default value. MAIL_CONTEXT: The mapping is between an Oracle character set name and an email safe character set name.
flag	■ ORACLE_TO_IANA | IANA_TO_ORACLE if GENERIC_CONTEXT is set ORACLE_TO_IANA: Map from an Oracle character set name to an IANA character set name. This is the default. IANA_TO_ORACLE: Map from an IANA character set name to an Oracle character set name. ■ MAIL_GENERIC | MAIL_WINDOWS if MAIL_CONTEXT is set MAIL_GENERIC: Map from an Oracle character set name to an email safe character set name on a non-Windows platform. MAIL_WINDOWS: Map from an Oracle character set name to an email safe character set name on a Windows platform.

Usage Notes

An e-mail safe character set is an Oracle character set that is commonly used by applications when they submit e-mail messages. The character set is usually used to convert contents in the database character set to e-mail safe contents. To specify the character set name in the mail header, you should use the corresponding IANA character set name obtained by calling the MAP_CHARSET function with the ORACLE_TO_IANA option, providing the e-mail safe character set name as input.

For example, no e-mail client recognizes message contents in the WE8DEC character set, whose corresponding IANA name is DEC-MCS. If WE8DEC is passed to the MAP_CHARSET function with the MAIL_CONTEXT option, then the function returns WE8ISO8859P1. Its corresponding IANA name, ISO-8859-1, is recognized by most e-mail clients.

The steps in this example are as follows:

1. Call the MAP_CHARSET function with the MAIL_CONTEXT | MAIL_GENERIC option with the database character set name, WE8DEC. The result is WE8ISO8859P1.
2. Convert the contents stored in the database to WE8ISO8859P1.
3. Call the MAP_CHARSET function with the ORACLE_TO_IANA | GENERIC_CONTEXT option with the e-mail safe character set, WE8ISO8859P1. The result is ISO-8859-1.
4. Specify ISO-8859-1 in the mail header when the e-mail message is submitted.

The function returns a character set name if a match is found. If no match is found or if the flag is invalid, then it returns NULL.

Note: Many Oracle character sets can map to one e-mail safe character set. There is no function that maps an e-mail safe character set to an Oracle character set name.

Examples

Generic Context

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_CHARSET('iso-8859-1',UTL_I18N.GENERIC_CONTEXT,UTL_I18N.IANA_TO_
ORACLE)
```

This returns 'WE8ISO8859P1'.

Context

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_CHARSET('WE8DEC', utl_i18n.mail_context,  utl_i18n.mail_generic)
```

This returns 'WE8ISO8859P1'.

See Also: *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for a list of valid Oracle character sets

MAP_FROM_SHORT_LANGUAGE Function

This function maps an Oracle short language name to an Oracle language name.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_FROM_SHORT_LANGUAGE (
   language           IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–14 MAP_FROM_SHORT_LANGUAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
language	Specifies a valid short language name. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid language name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Returns the default linguistic sort name for the customer with the ID of 9000. Note that the table customers is from the oe user in the Common Schema. Because the customer's language preference is stored using a short language name, you need to convert to a full language name by calling the GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT procedure.

```
DECLARE
   short_n VARCHAR2(10);
   ling_n VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
   SELECT nls_language INTO short
   FROM customers WHERE customer_id = 9000;
   ling_n := UTL_I18N.GET_DEFAULT_LINGUISTIC_SORT (
   UTL_I18N.MAP_FROM_SHORT_LANGUAGE(short_n));
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(ling_n);
END;
/
```

MAP_LANGUAGE_FROM_ISO Function

This function returns an Oracle language name from an ISO locale name.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_LANGUAGE_FROM_ISO(
  isolocale IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–15 MAP_LANGUAGE_FROM_ISO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
isolocale	Specifies the ISO locale. The mapping is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid locale string, then the function returns a NULL string.

If the user specifies a locale string that includes only the language (for example, en_ instead of en_US), then the function returns the default language name for the specified language (for example, American).

Examples

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_LANGUAGE_FROM_ISO('en_US')
```

This returns 'American'.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for a list of valid Oracle languages

MAP_LOCALE_TO_ISO Function

This function returns an ISO locale name from an Oracle language name and an Oracle territory name. A valid string must include at least one of the following: a valid Oracle language name or a valid Oracle territory name.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_LOCALE_TO_ISO (
   ora_language   IN VARCHAR2,
   ora_territory  IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–16 MAP_LOCALE_TO_ISO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`ora_language`	Specifies an Oracle language name. It is case-insensitive.
ora_territory	Specifies an Oracle territory name. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid string, then the function returns a `NULL` string.

Examples

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_LOCALE_TO_ISO('American','America')
```

This returns `'en_US'`.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for a list of valid Oracle languages and territories

MAP_TERRITORY_FROM_ISO Function

This function returns an Oracle territory name from an ISO locale.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_TERRITORY_FROM_ISO (
  isolocale IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–17 MAP_TERRITORY_FROM_ISO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
isolocale	Specifies the ISO locale. The mapping is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid locale string, then the function returns a NULL string.

If the user specifies a locale string that includes only the territory (for example, _fr instead of fr_fr), then the function returns the default territory name for the specified territory (for example, France).

Examples

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_TERRITORY_FROM_ISO('en_US')
```

This returns 'America'.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for a list of valid Oracle territories

MAP_TO_SHORT_LANGUAGE Function

This function maps an Oracle language name to an Oracle short language name.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.MAP_TO_SHORT_LANGUAGE (
   language    IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–18 MAP_TO_SHORT_LANGUAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
language	Specifies a valid full language name. It is case-insensitive.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid language name, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Returns the short language name for the language.

```
DECLARE  retval VARCHAR2(100);BEGIN  retval := UTL_I18N.MAP_TO_SHORT_
LANGUAGE('american');  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(retval);END;/US
```

RAW_TO_CHAR Functions

This function converts RAW data from a valid Oracle character set to a VARCHAR2 string in the database character set.

The function is overloaded. The different forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Buffer Conversion:

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR(
   data          IN RAW,
   src_charset   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Piecewise conversion converts raw data into character data piece by piece:

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR (
   data            IN RAW,
   src_charset     IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   scanned_length  OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   shift_status    IN OUT PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–19 RAW_TO_CHAR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
data	Specifies the RAW data to be converted to a VARCHAR2 string
src_charset	Specifies the character set that the RAW data was derived from. If src_charset is NULL, then the database character set is used.
scanned_length	Specifies the number of bytes of source data scanned
shift_status	Specifies the shift status at the end of the scan. The user must set it to SHIFT_IN the first time it is called in piecewise conversion. **Note:** ISO 2022 character sets use escape sequences instead of shift characters to indicate the encoding method. shift_status cannot hold the encoding method information that is provided by the escape sequences for the next function call. As a result, this function cannot be used to reconstruct ISO 2022 character from raw data in a piecewise way unless each unit of input can be guaranteed to be a closed string. A closed string begins and ends in a 7-bit escape state.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid character set, NULL data, or data whose length is 0, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Buffer Conversion

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR(hextoraw('616263646566C2AA'), 'utf8')
```

This returns the following string in the database character set:

```
'abcde'||chr(170)
```

Piecewise Conversion

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_CHAR(hextoraw('616263646566C2AA'),'utf8',shf,slen)
```

This expression returns the following string in the database character set:

```
'abcde'||chr(170)
```

It also sets `shf` to `SHIFT_IN` and `slen` to `8`.

The following example converts data from the Internet piece by piece to the database character set.

```
rvalue RAW(1050);
  nvalue VARCHAR2(1024);
  conversion_state  PLS_INTEGER = 0;
  converted_len   PLS_INTEGER;
  rtemp  RAW(10) = '';
  conn   utl_tcp.connection;
  tlen PLS_INTEGER;

  ...
  conn := utl_tcp.open_connection ( remote_host => 'localhost',
                                    remote_port => 2000);
  LOOP
      tlen := utl_tcp.read_raw(conn, rvalue, 1024);
      rvalue := utl_raw.concat(rtemp, rvalue);
      nvalue := utl_i18n.raw_to_char(rvalue, 'JA16SJIS', converted_len,
conversion_stat);
      if (converted_len < utl_raw.length(rvalue) )
      then
        rtemp := utl_raw.substr(rvalue, converted_len+1);
      else
        rtemp := '';
      end if;
      /* do anything you want with nvalue */
      /* e.g htp.prn(nvalue); */
    END LOOP;
    utl_tcp.close_connection(conn);
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN utl_tcp.end_of_input THEN
      utl_tcp.close_connection(conn);
END;
```

RAW_TO_NCHAR Functions

This function converts RAW data from a valid Oracle character set to an NVARCHAR2 string in the national character set.

The function is overloaded. The different forms of functionality are described along with the syntax declarations.

Syntax

Buffer Conversion:

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_NCHAR (
   data         IN RAW,
   src_charset  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN NVARCHAR2;
```

Piecewise conversion converts raw data into character data piece by piece:

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_NCHAR (
   data            IN RAW,
   src_charset      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   scanned_length   OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   shift_status     IN OUT PLS_INTEGER)
 RETURN NVARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 253–20 RAW_TO_NCHAR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
data	Specifies the RAW data to be converted to an NVARCHAR2 string
src_charset	Specifies the character set that the RAW data was derived from. If src_charset is NULL, then the database character set is used.
scanned_length	Specifies the number of bytes of source data scanned
shift_status	Specifies the shift status at the end of the scan. The user must set it to SHIFT_IN the first time it is called in piecewise conversion. **Note:** ISO 2022 character sets use escape sequences instead of shift characters to indicate the encoding method. shift_status cannot hold the encoding method information that is provided by the escape sequences for the next function call. As a result, this function cannot be used to reconstruct ISO 2022 character from raw data in a piecewise way unless each unit of input can be guaranteed to be a closed string. A closed string begins and ends in a 7-bit escape state.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid character set, NULL data, or data whose length is 0, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

Buffer Conversion

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_NCHAR(hextoraw('616263646566C2AA'),'utf8')
```

This returns the following string in the national character set:

```
'abcde'||chr(170)
```

Piecewise Conversion

```
UTL_I18N.RAW_TO_NCHAR(hextoraw('616263646566C2AA'),'utf8', shf, slen)
```

This expression returns the following string in the national character set:

```
'abcde'||chr(170)
```

It also sets `shf` to `SHIFT_IN` and `slen` to `8`.

The following example converts data from the Internet piece by piece to the national character set.

```
rvalue RAW(1050);
  nvalue NVARCHAR2(1024);
  converstion_state  PLS_INTEGER = 0;
  converted_len   PLS_INTEGER;
  rtemp  RAW(10) = '';
  conn   utl_tcp.connection;
  tlen PLS_INTEGER;

  ...
  conn := utl_tcp.open_connection ( remote_host => 'localhost',
                                    remote_port => 2000);
  LOOP
      tlen := utl_tcp.read_raw(conn, rvalue, 1024);
      rvalue := utl_raw.concat(rtemp, rvalue);
      nvalue := utl_i18n.raw_to_nchar(rvalue, 'JA16SJIS', converted_len,
conversion_stat);
      if (converted_len < utl_raw.length(rvalue) )
      then
        rtemp := utl_raw.substr(rvalue, converted_len+1);
      else
        rtemp := '';
      end if;
      /* do anything you want with nvalue */
      /* e.g htp.prn(nvalue); */
    END LOOP;
    utl_tcp.close_connection(conn);
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN utl_tcp.end_of_input THEN
      utl_tcp.close_connection(conn);
  END;
```

STRING_TO_RAW Function

This function converts a VARCHAR2 or NVARCHAR2 string to another valid Oracle character set and returns the result as RAW data.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.STRING_TO_RAW(
   data          IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   dst_charset   IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 253–21 STRING_TO_RAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
data	Specifies the VARCHAR2 or NVARCHAR2 string to convert.
dst_charset	Specifies the destination character set. If dst_charset is NULL, then the database character set is used for CHAR data and the national character set is used for NCHAR data.

Usage Notes

If the user specifies an invalid character set, a NULL string, or a string whose length is 0, then the function returns a NULL string.

Examples

```
DECLARE
    r raw(50);
    s varchar2(20);
  BEGIN
    s:='abcdef'||chr(170);
    r:=utl_i18n.string_to_raw(s,'utf8');
    dbms_output.put_line(rawtohex(r));
  end;
/
```

This returns a hex value of '616263646566C2AA'.

TRANSLITERATE Function

This function performs script transliteration. In this release, the TRANSLITERATE function only supports Japanese Kana conversion.

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.TRANSLITERATE (
  data IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
  name IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET data%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 253–22 TRANSLITERATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
data	Specifies the data to be converted. Either CHAR or NCHAR datatype can be specified.
name	Specifies the transliteration name string. For a list of valid names, see Table 253–23.

Constants

These options specify Japanese Kana conversions.

Table 253–23 TRANSLITERATE Function Constants

Constant Name	Value	Description
KANA_FWKATAKANA	'kana_fwkatakana'	Converts any type of Kana character to a fullwidth Katakana character.
KANA_HWKATAKANA	'kana_hwkatakana'	Converts any type of Kana character to a halfwidth Katakana character.
KANA_HIRAGANA	'kana_hiragana'	Converts any type of Kana character to a fullwidth Hiragana character.
FWKATAKANA_ HWKATAKANA	'fwkatakana_ hwkatakana'	Converts only fullwidth Katakana characters to halfwidth Katakana characters.
FWKATAKANA_ HIRAGANA	'fwkatakana_ hiragana'	Converts only fullwidth Katakana characters to fullwidth Hiragana characters.
HWKATAKANA_ FWKATAKANA	'hwkatakana_ fwkatakana'	Converts only halfwidth Katakana characters to fullwidth Katakana characters.
HWKATAKANA_ HIRAGANA	'hwkatakana_ hiragana'	Converts only halfwidth Katakana characters to fullwidth Hiragana characters.
HIRAGANA_ FWKATAKANA	'hiragana_ fwkatakana'	Converts only fullwidth Hiragana characters to fullwidth Katakana characters.
HIRAGANA_ HWKATAKANA	'hiragana_ hwkatakana'	Converts only fullwidth Hiragana characters to halfwidth Katakana characters.

Usage Notes

The function returns the converted string.

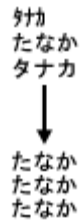
Examples

Given a table `japanese_emp`, containing an `NVARCHAR2` column `ename`, the following statement can be used to normalize all the kana names in `ename` to hiragana:

```
UPDATE japanese_emp
   SET ename = UTL_I18N.TRANSLITERATE (ename, 'kana_hiragana');
```

Figure shows how this output might look.

Figure 253–1 Loading Locale-Specific Data to the Database



The following statement normalizes one kana name to hiragana:

```
DECLARE
   Name  japanese_emp.ename%TYPE;
   Eno   CONSTANT  NUMBER(4) := 1;
BEGIN
   SELECT ename INTO name FROM japanese_emp WHERE enumber = eno;
   name := UTL_I18N.TRANSLITERATE(name, UTL_I18N.KANA_HIRAGANA);
   UPDATE japanese_emp SET ename = name WHERE enumber = eno;
EXCEPTION
   WHEN  UTL_I18N.UNSUPPORTED_TRANSLITERATION THEN
   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('transliteration not supported');
END;
/
```

UNESCAPE_REFERENCE Function

This function returns a string from an input string that contains character references. It decodes each character reference to the corresponding character value.

> **See Also:** "ESCAPE_REFERENCE Function" on page 253-9 for more information about escape sequences

Syntax

```
UTL_I18N.UNESCAPE_REFERENCE (
   str IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET str%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 253–24 UNESCAPE_REFERENCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
str	Specifies the input string

Usage Notes

If the user specifies a NULL string or a string whose length is 0, then the function returns a NULL string. If the function fails, then it returns the original string.

Examples

```
UTL_I18N.UNESCAPE_REFERENCE('hello &lt; &#xe5;')
```

This returns 'hello <'||chr(229).

254

UTL_INADDR

The `UTL_INADDR` package provides a PL/SQL procedures to support internet addressing. It provides an API to retrieve host names and IP addresses of local and remote hosts.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_INADDR

Security Model

This package is an invoker's rights package, which means that the invoking user must be granted the `connect` privilege in the access control list assigned to the remote network host to which he or she wishes to connect.

Note: For more information about managing fine-grained access, see *Oracle Database Security Guide*.

Exceptions

Table 254–1 Exception - Internet Address Package

Number	Exception	Description
ORA-24247	NETWORK_ACCESS_DENIED	Access to network is denied.
ORA-29257	UNKNOWN_HOST	The host is unknown.

Examples

Retrieve the local host name and IP address.

```
SET serveroutput on
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(UTL_INADDR.GET_HOST_NAME);  -- get local host name
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(UTL_INADDR.GET_HOST_ADDRESS);  -- get local IP addr
END;
/
```

Summary of UTL_INADDR Subprograms

Table 254–2 UTL_INADDR Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_HOST_ADDRESS Function on page 254-7	Retrieves the IP address of the local or remote host given its name
GET_HOST_NAME Function on page 254-8	Retrieves the name of the local or remote host given its IP address

GET_HOST_ADDRESS Function

This function retrieves the IP address of the specified host.

Syntax

```
UTL_INADDR.GET_HOST_ADDRESS (
   host  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN host_address VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 254–3 GET_HOST_ADDRESS Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	The name of the host to retrieve the IP address.

Return Values

Table 254–4 GET_HOST_ADDRESS Function Return Values

Parameter	Description
host_address	The IP address of the specified host, or that of the local host if host is NULL.

Exceptions

UNKNOWN_HOST: The specified IP address is unknown

Usage Notes

The permission to obtain the host name or IP address of the current host is controlled by the resolve privilege on LOCALHOST.

GET_HOST_NAME Function

This function retrieves the name of the local or remote host given its IP address.

Syntax

```
UTL_INADDR.GET_HOST_NAME (
   ip  IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN host_name VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 254–5 GET_HOST_NAME Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
ip	The IP address of the host used to determine its host name. If ip is not NULL, the official name of the host with its domain name is returned. If this is NULL, the name of the local host is returned and the name does not contain the domain to which the local host belongs.

Return Values

Table 254–6 GET_HOST_NAME Function Return Values

Parameter	Description
host_name	The name of the local or remote host of the specified IP address.

Exceptions

UNKNOWN_HOST: The specified IP address is unknown

Usage Notes

The permission to obtain the host name or IP address of the current host is controlled by the resolve privilege granted through DBMS_NETWORK_ACL_ADMIN on LOCALHOST.

255

UTL_IDENT

The `UTL_IDENT` package specifies which Database or client PL/SQL is running.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using UTL_IDENT
  - Overview
  - Security Model
  - Constants

Using UTL_IDENT

This section contains topics which relate to using the `UTL_IDENT` package.

Overview

The UTL_IDENT package is intended for use for conditional compilation of PL/SQL packages that are supported by Oracle, TimesTen Database, and clients such as Oracle Forms.

Security Model

The UTL_IDENT package runs as the package owner SYS. The public synonym UTL_IDENT, and EXECUTE permission on this package is granted to PUBLIC.

Constants

The UTL_IDENT package uses the constants shown in Table 255–1, " UTL_IDENT Constants".

Table 255–1 UTL_IDENT Constants

Constant	Type	Value	Description
IS_ORACLE_SERVER	BOOLEAN	TRUE/FALSE	Stipulates if Oracle Server or not
IS_ORACLE_CLIENT	BOOLEAN	TRUE/FALSE	Stipulates if Oracle Client or not
IS_TIMESTEN	BOOLEAN	TRUE/FALSE	Stipulates if TimesTen or not
IS_ORACLE_FORMS	BOOLEAN	TRUE/FALSE	Stipulates if Oracle Forms or not

256

UTL_LMS

`UTL_LMS` retrieves and formats error messages in different languages.

See Also: *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_LMS

This section contains topics which relate to using the `UTL_LMS` package.

Security Model

This package must be created as the user SYS.

Summary of UTL_LMS Subprograms

Table 256–1 UTL_LMS Package Subprograms

Function	Description
FORMAT_MESSAGE Function on page 256-5	Formats a retrieved error message
GET_MESSAGE Function on page 256-6	Retrieves an error message based on error number, product, facility, language, and message specified

FORMAT_MESSAGE Function

This function formats a message retrieved by the GET_MESSAGE function and returns the formatted message. If the function fails, then it returns a NULL result.

The following table shows special characters that can be used in the format string.

Special Character	Description
'%s'	Substitute the next string argument
'%d'	Substitute the next integer argument
'%%'	Represents the special character %

Syntax

```
UTL_LMS.FORMAT_MESSAGE (
   format IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   args   IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET format%CHARSET;
```

Parameters

Table 256–2 FORMAT_MESSAGE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
format	Specifies the string to format
args	Specifies the list of arguments

Examples

```
DECLARE
   s varchar2(200);
   i  pls_integer;
BEGIN
   i:= utl_lms.get_message(26052, 'rdbms', 'ora', 'french', s);
   dbms_output.put_line('before format, message is: '||s);
   dbms_output.put_line('formatted message is: '||utl_lms.format_message(s, 9,
'my_column_name');
END;
/
```

The following is an unformatted message:

```
Type %d non pris en charge pour l'expression SQL sur la colonne %s.
```

The following is the formatted message:

```
Type 9 non pris en charge pour l'expression SQL sur la colonne my_column_name.
```

GET_MESSAGE Function

This function retrieves an Oracle error message. The user can define user-specific error messages with the `lmsgen` utility.

It returns `0` when it is successful. It returns `-1` when it fails.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for more information about the `lmsgen` utility

Syntax

```
UTL_LMS.GET_MESSAGE (
   errnum    IN PLS_INTEGER,
   product   IN VARCHAR2,
   facility  IN VARCHAR2,
   language  IN VARCHAR2,
   message   OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2CHARCTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 256–3 GET_MESSAGE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`errnum`	Specifies the error number. Example: `'972'` (for `ORA-00972`)
`product`	Specifies the product to which the error message applies Example: '`rdbms`'
`facility`	Specifies the error message prefix Example: `'ora'`
`language`	Specifies the language of the message. The parameter is case-insensitive. The default is `NULL`, which causes `GET_MESSAGE` to use the value of the `NLS_LANGUAGE` session parameter.
`message`	Specifies the output buffer for the retrieved message

Usage Notes

If the `language` parameter is set to `NULL`, then the value of the `NLS_LANGUAGE` session parameter is used as the default.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  s varchar2(200);
  i pls_integer;
BEGIN
   i:=utl_lms.get_message(601, 'rdbms', 'oci', 'french', s);
   dbms_output.put_line('OCI--00601 is: '||s);
END
/
```

The following output results:

```
OCI--00601 is: Echec du processus de nettoyage.
```

257

UTL_MAIL

The `UTL_MAIL` package is a utility for managing email which includes commonly used email features, such as attachments, CC, and BCC.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_MAIL

Security Model

UTL_MAIL is not installed by default because of the SMTP_OUT_SERVER configuration requirement and the security exposure this involves. In installing UTL_MAIL, you should take steps to prevent the port defined by SMTP_OUT_SERVER being swamped by data transmissions.

This package is now an invoker's rights package and the invoking user will need the connect privilege granted in the access control list assigned to the remote network host to which he wants to connect.

Note: For more information, see Managing Fine-grained Access to External Network Services in Oracle Database Security Guide

---

Operational Notes

You must both install UTL_MAIL and define the SMTP_OUT_SERVER.

- To install UTL_MAIL:

```
sqlplus sys/<pwd>
SQL> @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/utlmail.sql
SQL> @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/prvtmail.plb
```

- You define the SMTP_OUT_SERVER parameter in the init.ora rdbms initialization file. However, if SMTP_OUT_SERVER is not defined, this invokes a default of DB_DOMAIN which is guaranteed to be defined to perform appropriately.

Rules and Limits

Use `UTL_MAIL` only within the context of the ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) and EBCDIC (Extended Binary-Coded Decimal Interchange Code) codes.

Summary of UTL_MAIL Subprograms

Table 257–1 UTL_MAIL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
SEND Procedure on page 257-7	Packages an email message into the appropriate format, locates SMTP information, and delivers the message to the SMTP server for forwarding to the recipients
SEND_ATTACH_RAW Procedure on page 257-8	Represents the `SEND` Procedure overloaded for `RAW` attachments
SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2 Procedure on page 257-9	Represents the `SEND` Procedure overloaded for `VARCHAR2` attachments

SEND Procedure

This procedure packages an email message into the appropriate format, locates SMTP information, and delivers the message to the SMTP server for forwarding to the recipients. It hides the SMTP API and exposes a one-line email facility for ease of use.

Syntax

```
UTL_MAIL.SEND (
   sender      IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   recipients  IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   cc          IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   bcc         IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   subject     IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   message     IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   mime_type   IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii',
   priority    IN    PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 3,
   replyto     IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 257–2 SEND Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sender	Email address of the sender
recipients	Email addresses of the recipient(s), separated by commas
cc	Email addresses of the CC recipient(s), separated by commas, default is NULL
bcc	Email addresses of the BCC recipient(s), separated by commas, default is NULL
subject	String to be included as email subject string, default is NULL
message	Text message body
mime_type	Mime type of the message, default is 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii'
priority	Message priority, which maps to the X-priority field. 1 is the highest priority and 5 the lowest. The default is 3.
replyto	Defines to whom the reply email is to be sent

SEND_ATTACH_RAW Procedure

This procedure is the SEND Procedure overloaded for RAW attachments.

Syntax

```
UTL_MAIL.SEND_ATTACH_RAW (
   sender           IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   recipients       IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   cc               IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   bcc              IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   subject          IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   message          IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   mime_type        IN    VARCHAR2 DEFAULT CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
                              DEFAULT 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii',
   priority         IN    PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 3,
   attachment       IN    RAW,
   att_inline       IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   att_mime_type    IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
                                       DEFAULT 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii',
   att_filename     IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   replyto          IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 257–3 SEND_ATTACH_RAW Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sender	Email address of the sender
recipients	Email addresses of the recipient(s), separated by commas
cc	Email addresses of the CC recipient(s), separated by commas, default is NULL
bcc	Email addresses of the BCC recipient(s), separated by commas, default is NULL
subject	String to be included as email subject string, default is NULL
message	Text message body
mime_type	Mime type of the message, default is 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii'
priority	Message priority, which maps to the X-priority field. 1 is the highest priority and 5 the lowest. The default is 3.
attachment	RAW attachment
att_inline	Specifies whether the attachment is viewable inline with the message body, default is TRUE
att_mime_type	Mime type of the attachment, default is 'application/octet'
att_filename	String specifying a filename containing the attachment, default is NULL
replyto	Defines to whom the reply email is to be sent

SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2 Procedure

This procedure is the SEND Procedure overloaded for VARCHAR2 attachments.

Syntax

```
UTL_MAIL.SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2 (
   sender            IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   recipients        IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   cc                IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   bcc               IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   subject           IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   message           IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   mime_type         IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
                                    DEFAULT 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii',
   priority          IN    PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 3,
   attachment        IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS, ,
   att_inline        IN    BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
   att_mime_type     IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS
                                    DEFAULT 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii,
   att_filename      IN    VARCHAR2CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL,
   replyto           IN    VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 257–4 SEND_ATTACH_VARCHAR2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
sender	Email address of the sender
recipients	Email addresses of the recipient(s), separated by commas
cc	Email addresses of the CC recipient(s), separated by commas, default is NULL
bcc	Email addresses of the BCC recipient(s), separated by commas, default is NULL
subject	String to be included as email subject string, default is NULL
message	Text message body
mime_type	Mime type of the message, default is 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii
priority	Message priority, which maps to the X-priority field. 1 is the highest priority and 5 the lowest. The default is 3.
attachment	Text attachment
att_inline	Specifies whether the attachment is inline, default TRUE
att_mime_type	Mime type of the attachment, default is 'text/plain; charset=us-ascii'
att_filename	String specifying a filename containing the attachment, default is NULL
replyto	Defines to whom the reply email is to be sent

258

UTL_MATCH

The `UTL_MATCH` package facilitates matching two records. This is typically used to match names, such as two First Names or two Last Names.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_MATCH

Overview

"Edit Distance" also known as "Levenshtein Distance "(named after the Russian scientist Vladimir Levenshtein, who devised the algorithm in 1965), is a measure of Similarity between two strings, s1 and s2. The distance is the number of insertions, deletions or substitutions required to transform s1 to s2.

```
The Edit Distance between strings "shackleford" and "shackelford" = 2
```

The "Jaro-Winkler algorithm" is another way of calculating Edit distance between two strings. This method, developed at the U.S. Census, is a String Comparator measure that gives values of partial agreement between two strings. The string comparator accounts for length of strings and partially accounts for typical human errors made in alphanumeric strings.

Table 258–1 shows similarity values returned by Jaro-Winkler and Edit Distance

Table 258–1 Comparison between normalized values returned by Jaro-Winkler and Edit Distance algorithms

String 1	String 2	Jaro Winkler	Edit Distance
Dunningham	Cunnigham	89	80
Abroms	Abrams	92	83
Lampley	Campley	90	86
Marhta	Martha	96	67
Jonathon	Jonathan	95	88
Jeraldine	Geraldine	92	89

Security Model

The UTL_MATCH package runs with definer's rights. UTL_MATCH must be created under SYS. Operations provided by this package are performed with SYS privileges.

Summary of UTL_MATCH Subprograms

Table 258–2 DBMS_ALERT Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
EDIT_DISTANCE Function on page 258-6	Calculates the number of changes required to transform string-1 into string-2
EDIT_DISTANCE_ SIMILARITY Function on page 258-7	Calculates the number of changes required to transform string-1 into string-2, returning a value between 0 (no match) and 100 (perfect match)
JARO_WINKLER Function on page 258-8	Calculates the measure of agreement between string-1 and string-2
JARO_WINKLER_ SIMILARITY Function on page 258-9	Calculates the measure of agreement between string-1 and string-2, returning a value between 0 (no match) and 100 (perfect match)

EDIT_DISTANCE Function

This function calculates the number of insertions, deletions or substitutions required to transform string-1 into string-2.

Syntax

```
UTL_MATCH.EDIT_DISTANCE (
   s1  IN  VARCHAR2,
   s2  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 258–3 EDIT_DISTANCE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
s1	The string to be transformed
s2	The string into which s1 is to be transformed

Examples

```
SELECT UTL_MATCH.EDIT_DISTANCE('shackleford', 'shackelford') FROM DUAL;
-------------
returns 2
```

EDIT_DISTANCE_SIMILARITY Function

This function calculates the number of insertions, deletions or substations required to transform string-1 into string-2, and returns the Normalized value of the Edit Distance between two Strings. The value is typically between 0 (no match) and 100 (perfect match).

Syntax

```
UTL_MATCH.EDIT_DISTANCE_SIMILARITY (
   s1  IN  VARCHAR2,
   s2  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 258–4 EDIT_DISTANCE_SIMILARITY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
s1	The string to be transformed
s2	The string into which s1 is to be transformed

Examples

```
SELECT UTL_MATCH.EDIT_DISTANCE_SIMILARITY('shackleford', 'shackelford') FROM DUAL;
--------------
returns 82
```

JARO_WINKLER Function

This function calculates the measure of agreement between two strings.

Syntax

```
UTL_MATCH.JARO_WINKLER (
   s1  IN  VARCHAR2,
   s2  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN BINARY_DOUBLE;
```

Parameters

Table 258–5 JARO_WINKLER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
s1	Input
s2	input

Examples

```
SELECT UTL_MATCH.JARO_WINKLER('shackleford', 'shackelford') FROM DUAL;
--------------
returns 9.818E-001
```

JARO_WINKLER_SIMILARITY Function

This function calculates the measure of agreement between two strings, and returns a score between 0 (no match) and 100 (perfect match).

Syntax

```
UTL_MATCH.JARO_WINKLER (
   s1  IN  VARCHAR2,
   s2  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 258–6 JARO_WINKLER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
s1	Input
s2	input

Examples

```
SELECT UTL_MATCH.JARO_WINKLER_SIMILARITY('shackleford', 'shackelford') FROM DUAL;
--------------
returns 98
```

259

UTL_NLA

The UTL_NLA package exposes a subset of the BLAS and LAPACK (Version 3.0) operations on vectors and matrices represented as VARRAYs.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_NLA

This section contains topics which relate to using the `UTL_NLA` package.

Overview

The UTL_NLA package exposes a subset of the BLAS (Basic Linear Algebra Subprograms) and LAPACK (Linear Algebra PACKage) (Version 3.0) operations on vectors and matrices represented as VARRAYs.

Standards

For more information on the BLAS and LAPACK standards see

http://www.netlib.org/blas/
http://www.netlib.org/lapack/

Required Expertise

Users of this package are expected to have a sound grasp of linear algebra in general and of the BLAS and LAPACK libraries in particular.

Implementation

The mapping between BLAS and LAPACK procedures and their corresponding PL/SQL calls is one-to-one.

- All BLAS functions have the BLAS_ prefix (for example, the BLAS_ASUM Functions). The subroutines and functions in BLAS are mapped to PL/SQL procedures and functions, respectively.
- All LAPACK functions have the LAPACK_ prefix (for example, the LAPACK_GBSV Procedures). The subroutines in LAPACK are mapped to PL/SQL procedures. Procedures that perform the same operation but differ only on the datatype of the arguments have the same overloaded names.

The mapping between BLAS and LAPACK procedure parameters and those of their corresponding PL/SQL subprograms is almost one-to-one.

- Also in the PL/SQL interface for LAPACK, all /work/ arguments have been removed. The UTL_NLA package manages the allocation and de-allocation of all work areas required by the libraries.
- A new optional parameter, pack, has been added to the end of each LAPACK procedure that specifies if the matrix has been linearized in the row-major or column-major (default) format.

Rules and Limits

Vectors and matrices are stored in `VARRAY`s with a maximum size of one million entries. Given this restriction, `UTL_NLA` vectors can be up to one million entries but matrices need to be of size RxC <= 1,000,000.

Security Model

The UTL_NLA package is owned by user SYS and is installed as part of database installation. Execution privilege on the package is granted to public. The routines in the package are run with invokers' rights (run with the privileges of the current user).

Subprogram Groups

- BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
- BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
- BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms
- LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
- LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms

BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Table 259–1 BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BLAS_ASUM Functions on page 259-18	Computes the sum of the absolute values of the vector components
BLAS_AXPY Procedures on page 259-19	Copies `alpha*X + Y` into vector `Y`
BLAS_COPY Procedures on page 259-20	Copies the contents of vector `X` to vector `Y`
BLAS_DOT Functions on page 259-21	Returns the dot (scalar) product of two vectors `X` and `Y`
BLAS_IAMAX Functions on page 259-30	Computes the index of the first element of a vector that has the largest absolute value
BLAS_NRM2 Functions on page 259-31	Computes the vector 2-norm (Euclidean norm)
BLAS_ROT Procedures on page 259-32	Returns the plane rotation of points
BLAS_ROTG Procedures on page 259-33	Returns the Givens rotation of points
BLAS_SCAL Procedures on page 259-34	Scales a vector by a constant
BLAS_SWAP Procedures on page 259-43	Swaps the contents of two vectors each of size n

BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Table 259–2 BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BLAS_GBMV Procedures on page 259-22	Performs the matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` or `y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are vectors and `A` is an `m` by `n` band matrix, with `kl` sub-diagonals and `ku` super-diagonals
BLAS_GEMV Procedures on page 259-26	Performs the matrix-vector operations `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` or `y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are vectors and `A` is an `m` by `n` matrix
BLAS_GER Procedures on page 259-28	Performs a rank 1 operation `A := alpha*x*y' + A` where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` is an `m` element vector, `y` is an n element vector and `A` is an `m` by `n` matrix
BLAS_SBMV Procedures on page 259-41	Performs a matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are n element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric band matrix, with `k` super-diagonals
BLAS_SPMV Procedures on page 259-35	Performs a matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form
BLAS_SPR Procedures on page 259-37	Performs a symmetric rank 1 operation `A := alpha*x*x' + A` where `alpha` is a real scalar, `x` is an `n` element vector, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form
BLAS_SPR2 Procedures on page 259-39	Performs a symmetric rank 2 operation `A := alpha*x*y' + alpha*y*x' +A` where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form
BLAS_SBMV Procedures on page 259-41	Performs a matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are n element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric band matrix, with `k` super-diagonals
BLAS_SYMV Procedures on page 259-46	Performs a matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix
BLAS_SYR Procedures on page 259-48	Performs a symmetric rank 1 operation `A := alpha*x*x' + A` where `alpha` is a real scalar, `x` is an `n` element vector, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix
BLAS_SYR2 Procedures on page 259-50	Performs a symmetric rank 2 operation `A := alpha*x*y' + alpha*y*x' + A` where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix
BLAS_TBMV Procedures on page 259-57	Performs a matrix-vector operation `x := A*x` or `A'*x = b` where `x` is an `n` element vector and `A` is an `n` by `n` unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular band matrix, with `(k + 1)` diagonals
BLAS_TBSV Procedures on page 259-59	Solves one of the systems of equation `A*x = b` or `A'*x = b` where `b` and `x` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an `n` by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular band matrix, with `(k + 1)` diagonals
BLAS_TPMV Procedures on page 259-61	Performs a matrix-vector operation `x := A*x` or `x := A'*x` where `x` is an `n` element vector and `A` is an `n` by `n` unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, supplied in packed form

Table 259–2 (Cont.) BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BLAS_TPSV Procedures on page 259-63	Solves one of the systems of equation `A*x = b` or `A'*x = b` where `b` and `x` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, supplied in packed form
BLAS_TRMV Procedures on page 259-67	Performs a matrix-vector operation `x := A*x` or `x := A'*x` where `x` is an `n` element vector and `A` is an `n` by `n` unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix
BLAS_TRSV Procedures on page 259-71	Solves one of the systems of equation `A*x = b` or `A'*x = b` where `b` and `x` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an n by `n` unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix

BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms

Table 259–3 BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BLAS_GEMM Procedures on page 259-26	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations `C := alpha*op(A)*op(B) + beta*C` where `op(X) is one of op(X) = X or op(X) = X'` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, and `A`, `B` and `C` are matrices, with `op(A)` an `m` by `k` matrix, `op(B)` a `k` by `n` matrix and `C` an `m` by `n` matrix
BLAS_SYMM Procedures on page 259-44	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations `C := alpha*A*B + beta*C` or `C := alpha*B*A + beta*C` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `A` is a symmetric matrix, and `B` and `C` are `m` by `n` matrices
BLAS_SYR2K Procedures on page 259-52	Performs one of the symmetric rank2 k operations `C := alpha*A*B' + alpha*B*A' + beta*C` or `C := alpha*A'*B + alpha*B'*A + beta*C` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `C` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix and `A` and `B` are `n` by `k` matrices in the first case and `k` by `n` matrices in the second case
BLAS_SYRK Procedures on page 259-55	Performs one of the symmetric rank `k` operations `C := alpha*A*A' + beta*C` or `C := alpha*A'*A + beta*C` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `C` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix and `A` is an `n` by `k` matrix in the first case and a `k` by `n` matrix in the second case
BLAS_TRMM Procedures on page 259-65	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations `B := alpha*op(A)*B` or `B := alpha*B*op(A)` where `alpha` is a scalar, `B` is an `m` by `n` matrix, `A` is a unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix and `op(A)` is one of two alternatives
BLAS_TRSM Procedures on page 259-69	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations `op(A)*X = alpha*B` or `X*op(A) = alpha*B` where `alpha` is a scalar, `X` and `B` are `m` by `n` matrices, `A` is a unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, `op(A)` is one of two alternatives. The matrix `X` is overwritten on `B`

LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms

Table 259–4 LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
LAPACK_GBSV Procedures on page 259-73	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an `n` by `n` matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The `LU` decomposition with partial pivoting and row interchanges is used to factor `A`.
LAPACK_GESV Procedures on page 259-82	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an `n` by `n` matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The `LU` decomposition with partial pivoting and row interchanges is used to factor `A`.
LAPACK_GTSV Procedures on page 259-90	This procedure solves the equation `a * x = b` where `a` is an `n` by `n` tridiagonal matrix, by Gaussian elimination with partial pivoting.
LAPACK_PBSV Procedures on page 259-92	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite band matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A`.
LAPACK_POSV Procedures on page 259-94	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A`.
LAPACK_PPSV Procedures on page 259-96	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite matrix stored in packed format and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A`.
LAPACK_PTSV Procedures on page 259-98	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite tridiagonal matrix, and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices.
LAPACK_SPSV Procedures on page 259-108	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric matrix stored in packed format, and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The diagonal pivoting method is used to factor `A`.
LAPACK_SYSV Procedures on page 259-118	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric matrix, and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The diagonal pivoting method is used to factor `A`.

LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms

Table 259–5 LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems)

Subprogram	Description
LAPACK_GEES Procedures on page 259-75	Computes for an `n` by `n` real nonsymmetric matrix `A`, the eigenvalues, the real Schur form `T`, and, optionally, the matrix of Schur vectors `Z`. This gives the Schur factorization `A = Z*T*(Z**T)`.
LAPACK_GEEV Procedures on page 259-87	Computes for an `n` by `n` real nonsymmetric matrix `A`, the eigenvalues and, optionally, the left and/or right eigenvectors.
LAPACK_GELS Procedures on page 259-77	Solves overdetermined or underdetermined real linear systems involving an `m` by `n` matrix `A`, or its transpose, using a `QR` or `LQ` factorization of `A`. It is assumed that `A` has full rank.
LAPACK_GESDD Procedures on page 259-79	Computes the singular value decomposition (SVD) of a real `m` by `n` matrix `A`, optionally computing the left and right singular vectors. If singular vectors are desired, it uses a divide-and-conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.
LAPACK_GESVD Procedures on page 259-84	Computes the singular value decomposition (SVD) of a real `m` by `n` matrix `A`, optionally computing the left and/or right singular vectors. The SVD is written `A = U * SIGMA * transpose(V)`.
LAPACK_SBEV Procedures on page 259-100	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric band matrix `A`
LAPACK_SBEVD Procedures on page 259-102	Ccomputes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.
LAPACK_SPEV Procedures on page 259-104	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A` in packed storage
LAPACK_SPEVD Procedures on page 259-106	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A` in packed storage. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.
LAPACK_STEV Procedures on page 259-110	Computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric tridiagonal matrix `A`
LAPACK_STEVD Procedures on page 259-112	Computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric tridiagonal matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.
LAPACK_SYEV Procedures on page 259-114	Computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A`
LAPACK_SYEVD Procedures on page 259-116	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.

Summary of UTL_NLA Subprograms

Table 259–6 UTL_NLA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
BLAS_ASUM Functions on page 259-18	Computes the sum of the absolute values of the vector components	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_AXPY Procedures on page 259-19	Copies `alpha*X + Y` into vector `Y`	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_COPY Procedures on page 259-20	Copies the contents of vector `X` to vector `Y`	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_DOT Functions on page 259-21	Returns the dot (scalar) product of two vectors `X` and `Y`	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_GBMV Procedures on page 259-22	Performs the matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` or `y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are vectors and `A` is an `m` by `n` band matrix, with `kl` sub-diagonals and `ku` super-diagonals	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_GEMM Procedures on page 259-26	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, and `A`, `B` and `C` are matrices, with `op(A)` an `m` by `k` matrix, `op(B)` a `k` by `n` matrix and `C` an `m` by `n` matrix	BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_GEMV Procedures on page 259-26	Performs the matrix-vector operations `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` or `y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are vectors and `A` is an `m` by `n` matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_GER Procedures on page 259-28	Performs a rank 1 operation `A := alpha*x*y' + A` where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` is an `m` element vector, `y` is an n element vector and `A` is an `m` by `n` matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_IAMAX Functions on page 259-30	Computes the index of the first element of a vector that has the largest absolute value	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_NRM2 Functions on page 259-31	Computes the vector 2-norm (Euclidean norm)	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_ROT Procedures on page 259-32	Returns the plane rotation of points	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_ROTG Procedures on page 259-33	Returns the Givens rotation of points	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Table 259–6 (Cont.) UTL_NLA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
BLAS_SBMV Procedures on page 259-41	Performs a matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are n element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric band matrix, with `k` super-diagonals	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SCAL Procedures on page 259-34	Scales a vector by a constant	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SPMV Procedures on page 259-35	Performs a matrix-vector operation `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SPR Procedures on page 259-37	Performs a symmetric rank 1 operation `A := alpha*x*x' + A` where `alpha` is a real scalar, `x` is an `n` element vector, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SPR2 Procedures on page 259-39	Performs a symmetric rank 2 operation where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SWAP Procedures on page 259-43	Swaps the contents of two vectors each of size n	BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SYMM Procedures on page 259-44	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `A` is a symmetric matrix, and `B` and `C` are `m` by `n` matrices	BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SYMV Procedures on page 259-46	Performs a matrix-vector operation where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SYR Procedures on page 259-48	Performs a symmetric rank 1 operation where `alpha` is a real scalar, `x` is an `n` element vector, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SYR2 Procedures on page 259-50	Performs a symmetric rank 2 operation where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SYR2K Procedures on page 259-52	Performs one of the symmetric rank2 k operations where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `C` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix and `A` and `B` are `n` by `k` matrices in the first case and `k` by `n` matrices in the second case	BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_SYRK Procedures on page 259-55	Performs one of the symmetric rank `k` operations where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `C` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix and `A` is an `n` by `k` matrix in the first case and a `k` by `n` matrix in the second case	BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TBMV Procedures on page 259-57	Performs a matrix-vector operation where `x` is an `n` element vector and `A` is an `n` by `n` unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular band matrix, with `(k + 1)` diagonals	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms

Table 259–6 (Cont.) UTL_NLA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
BLAS_TBSV Procedures on page 259-59	Solves one of the systems of equation where b and x are n element vectors and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular band matrix, with (k + 1) diagonals	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TPMV Procedures on page 259-61	Performs a matrix-vector operation where x is an n element vector and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, supplied in packed form	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TPSV Procedures on page 259-63	Solves one of the systems of equation where b and x are n element vectors and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, supplied in packed form	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TRMM Procedures on page 259-65	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations wherealpha is a scalar, B is an m by n matrix, A is a unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix and op(A) is one of two alternatives	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TRMV Procedures on page 259-67	Performs a matrix-vector operation where x is an n element vector and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TRSM Procedures on page 259-69	Performs one of the matrix-vector operations op(A)*X = alpha*B or X*op(A) = alpha*B where alpha is a scalar, X and B are m by n matrices, A is a unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, op(A) is one of two alternatives. The matrix X is overwritten on B	BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms
BLAS_TRSV Procedures on page 259-71	Solves one of the systems of equation where b and x are n element vectors and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix	BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms
LAPACK_GBSV Procedures on page 259-73	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations a * x = b where a is an n by n matrix and x and b are n by nrhs matrices. The LU decomposition with partial pivoting and row interchanges is used to factor A.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_GEES Procedures on page 259-75	Computes for an n by n real nonsymmetric matrix A, the eigenvalues, the real Schur form T, and, optionally, the matrix of Schur vectors Z. This gives the Schur factorization A = Z*T*(Z**T).	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_GEEV Procedures on page 259-87	Computes for an n by n real nonsymmetric matrix A, the eigenvalues and, optionally, the left and/or right eigenvectors.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_GELS Procedures on page 259-77	Solves overdetermined or underdetermined real linear systems involving an m by n matrix A, or its transpose, using a QR or LQ factorization of A. It is assumed that A has full rank.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_ GESDD Procedures on page 259-79	Computes the singular value decomposition (SVD) of a real m by n matrix A, optionally computing the left and right singular vectors. If singular vectors are desired, it uses a divide-and-conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms

Table 259–6 (Cont.) UTL_NLA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
LAPACK_GESV Procedures on page 259-82	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an `n` by `n` matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The `LU` decomposition with partial pivoting and row interchanges is used to factor `A`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_ GESVD Procedures on page 259-84	Computes the singular value decomposition (SVD) of a real `m` by `n` matrix `A`, optionally computing the left and/or right singular vectors. The SVD is written `A = U * SIGMA * transpose(V)`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_GTSV Procedures on page 259-90	This procedure solves the equation `a * x = b` where `a` is an `n` by `n` tridiagonal matrix, by Gaussian elimination with partial pivoting.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_PBSV Procedures on page 259-92	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite band matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_POSV Procedures on page 259-94	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_PPSV Procedures on page 259-96	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite matrix stored in packed format and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_PTSV Procedures on page 259-98	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite tridiagonal matrix, and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_SBEV Procedures on page 259-100	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric band matrix `A`	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_ SBEVD Procedures on page 259-102	Ccomputes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_SPEV Procedures on page 259-104	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A` in packed storage	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_ SPEVD Procedures on page 259-106	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A` in packed storage. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms

Table 259–6 (Cont.) UTL_NLA Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description	Group
LAPACK_SPSV Procedures on page 259-108	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric matrix stored in packed format, and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The diagonal pivoting method is used to factor `A`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms
LAPACK_STEV Procedures on page 259-110	Computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric tridiagonal matrix `A`	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_ STEVD Procedures on page 259-112	Computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric tridiagonal matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_ SYEVD Procedures on page 259-116	Computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.	LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms
LAPACK_SYSV Procedures on page 259-118	This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations `a * x = b` where `a` is an n by n symmetric matrix, and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices. The diagonal pivoting method is used to factor `A`.	LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms

BLAS_ASUM Functions

This procedure computes the sum of the absolute values of the vector components.

See Also: BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_ASUM (
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   x      IN       UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN       POSITIVEN)
 RETURN BINARY_DOUBLE;

UTL_NLA.BLAS_ASUM (
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN       SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   x      IN       UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT)
 RETURN BINARY_FLOAT
```

Parameters

Table 259–7 BLAS_ASUM Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors `x` and `y`. `n` must be at least zero.
`x`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL` of dimension at least `( 1 + ( n - 1 )*abs( incx ) )`
`incx`	Specifies the increment for the elements of `x`. `incx` must not be zero.

BLAS_AXPY Procedures

This procedure copies `alpha*X + Y` into vector `Y`.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_AXPY (
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN       SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   x      IN       UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN       POSITIVEN,
   y      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN       POSITIVEN);

UTL_NLA.BLAS_AXPY (
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN       SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   x      IN       UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN       POSITIVEN,
   y      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN       POSITIVEN);
```

Parameters

Table 259–8 BLAS_AXPY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`n`	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors `x` and `y`. `n` must be at least zero.
`alpha`	Specifies the scalar alpha.
`x`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL` of `dimension` at least `( 1 + ( n - 1 )*abs( incx ) )`
`incx`	Specifies the increment for the elements of `x`. `incx` must not be zero.
`y`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL` of `DIMENSION` at least `( 1 + ( n - 1 )*abs( incy) )`
`incy`	Specifies the increment for the elements of `y`. `incy` must not be zero.

BLAS_COPY Procedures

This procedure copies the contents of vector X to vector Y.

See Also: BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_COPY (
   n     IN     POSITIVEN,
   x     IN     UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx  IN     POSITIVEN,
   y     IN OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy  IN     POSITIVEN);

UTL_NLA.BLAS_COPY (
   n     IN     POSITIVEN,
   x     IN     UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx  IN     POSITIVEN,
   y     IN OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy  IN     POSITIVEN);
```

Parameters

Table 259–9 BLAS_COPY Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incy))
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incy must not be zero.

BLAS_DOT Functions

This function returns the dot (scalar) product of two vectors X and Y.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_DOT (
   n     IN   POSITIVEN,
   x     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx  IN   POSITIVEN,
   y     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy  IN   POSITIVEN)
  RETURN BINARY_DOUBLE;

UTL_NLA.BLAS_DOT (
   n     IN   POSITIVEN,
   x     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx  IN   POSITIVEN,
   y     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy  IN   POSITIVEN)
  RETURN BINARY_FLOAT;
```

Parameters

Table 259–10 BLAS_DOT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incy))
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incy must not be zero.

BLAS_GBMV Procedures

This procedure performs one of the matrix-vector operations

```
y := alpha*A*x + beta*y
```

or

```
y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y
```

where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are vectors and `A` is an `m` by `n` band matrix, with `kl` sub-diagonals and `ku` super-diagonals.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_GEMV (
   trans  IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   kl     IN      NATURALN,
   ku     IN      NATURALN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_GEMV (
   trans  IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   kl     IN      NATURALN,
   ku     IN      NATURALN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–11 BLAS_GBMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`trans`	Specifies the operation to be performed: ■ `trans` = 'N' or 'n' `y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` ■ `trans` = 'T' or 't' `y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y` ■ `trans` = 'C' or 'c' `y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y`

Table 259–11 (Cont.) BLAS_GBMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
m	Specifies the number of rows of the matrix A. m must be at least zero.
n	Specifies the number of columns of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
kl	Specifies the number of sub-diagonals of the matrix A. kl must satisfy 0. le. kl.
ku	Specifies the number of super-diagonals of the matrix A. ku must satisfy 0 .le. ku.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,n). Before entry, the leading (kl + ku + 1) by n part of the array A must contain the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row (ku+1) of the array, the first super-diagonal starting at position 2 in row ku, the first sub-diagonal starting at position 1 in row (ku+2), and so on. Elements in the array A that do not correspond to elements in the band matrix (such as the top left ku by ku triangle) are not referenced.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least (kl+ku+1).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incx)) when trans = ''N' or 'n' and at least (1 + (m - 1)*abs(incx)) otherwise. Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta. When beta is supplied as zero then y need not be set on input.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (m - 1)*abs(incy)) when trans = 'N' or 'n' and at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incy)) otherwise. Before entry with beta nonzero, the incremented array Y must contain the vector y. On exit, Y is overwritten by the updated vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_GEMM Procedures

This procedure performs one of the matrix-matrix operations

```
C := alpha*op( A )*op( B ) + beta*C
```

where `op(X)` is one of

```
op(X) = X
```

or

```
op(X) = X'
```

where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, and `A`, `B` and `C` are matrices, with `op(A)` an `m` by `k` matrix, `op(B)` a `k` by `n` matrix and `C` an `m` by `n` matrix.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms on page 259-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_GEMM (
   transa IN      flag,
   transb IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_GEMM (
   transa IN      flag,
   transb IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–12 BLAS_GEMM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
transa	Specifies the form of op(A) to be used in the matrix multiplication as follows: ■ transa = 'N' or 'n' : op(A) = 'A' ■ transa = 'T' or 't' : op(A) = 'A' ■ transa = 'C' or 'c' : op(A) = 'A'
transb	Specifies the form of op(B) to be used in the matrix multiplication as follows: ■ transb = 'N' or 'n' : op(B) = B ■ transb = 'T' or 't' : op(B) = B' ■ transb = 'C' or 'c': op(B) = B'
m	Specifies the number of rows of the matrix op(A) and of the matrix C. m must be at least zero.
n	Specifies the number of columns of the matrix op(B) and of the matrix C. n must be at least zero.
k	Specifies the rows of the matrix op(A) and the number of columns of the matrix op(B). k must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, ka) where ka is k when transa = 'N' or 'n', and is m otherwise. Before entry with transa = 'N' or 'n', the leading m by k part of the array A must contain the matrix A, otherwise the leading k by m part of the array A must contain the matrix A.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. When transa = 'N' or 'n', lda must be at least max (1,k).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, kb) where kb is n when transb = ''N' or 'n', and is k otherwise. Before entry with transb = 'N' or 'n', the leading k by n part of the array b must contain the matrix B, otherwise the leading n by k part of the arrayb must contain the matrix B.
ldb	Specifies the first dimension of b as declared in the calling (sub) program. When transb = 'N' or 'n', ldb must be at least max (1, n).
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta. When beta is supplied as zero then c need not be set on input.
c	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldc, n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array C must contain the matrix C, except when beta is zero, in which case C need not be set on entry. On exit, the arrayC is overwritten by the m by n matrix (alpha*op(A)*op(B) + beta*C).
ldc	Specifies the first dimension of C as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldc must be at least max(1, m).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_GEMV Procedures

This procedure performs one of the matrix-vector operations

```
y := alpha*A*x + beta*y
```

or

```
y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y
```

where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `x` and `y` are vectors and `A` is an `m` by `n` matrix.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_GEMV (
   trans  IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_GEMV (
   trans  IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–13 BLAS_GEMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`trans`	Specifies the operation to be performed: ■ `trans = 'N'` or `'n'`,`y := alpha*A*x + beta*y` ■ `trans = 'T'` or `'t'y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y` ■ `trans = 'C'` or `'c'y := alpha*A'*x + beta*y`
`m`	Specifies the number of rows of the matrix A. `m` must be at least zero.

Table 259–13 (Cont.) BLAS_GEMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of columns of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array a must contain the matrix of coefficients.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1, m).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incx)) when trans = ''N' or 'n' and at least (1+(m-1)*abs(incx)) otherwise. Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta. When beta is supplied as zero then y need not be set on input.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (m - 1)*abs(incy)) when trans = 'N' or 'n' and at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incy)) otherwise. Before entry with beta nonzero, the incremented array Y must contain the vector y. On exit, Y is overwritten by the updated vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_GER Procedures

This procedure performs the rank 1 operation

```
A := alpha*x*y' + A
```

where alpha is a scalar, x is an m element vector, y is an n element vector and A is an m by n matrix.

See Also: BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_GER (
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DBL,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_GER (
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLT,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–14 BLAS_GER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
m	Specifies the number of rows of the matrix A. m must be at least zero.
n	Specifies the number of columns of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	Specifies the scalar alpha.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (m - 1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the m element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.

Table 259–14 (Cont.) BLAS_GER Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incy)) Before entry, the incremented array Y must contain the m element vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incx must not be zero.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array a must contain the matrix of coefficients. On exit, a is overwritten by the updated matrix.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1, m)
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_IAMAX Functions

This function computes the index of first element of a vector that has the largest absolute value.

See Also: BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_IAMAX (
   n     IN   POSITIVEN,
   x     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx  IN   POSITIVEN,
  RETURN POSITIVEN;

UTL_NLA.BLAS_IAMAX (
   n     IN   POSITIVEN,
   x     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx  IN   POSITIVEN,
  RETURN POSITIVEN;
```

Parameters

Table 259–15 BLAS_IAMAX Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.

BLAS_NRM2 Functions

This function computes the vector 2-norm (Euclidean norm).

See Also: BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_NRM2 (
   n     IN   POSITIVEN,
   x     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx  IN   POSITIVEN)
  RETURN BINARY_DOUBLE;

UTL_NLA.BLAS_NRM2 (
   n     IN   POSITIVEN,
   x     IN   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx  IN   POSITIVEN)
  RETURN BINARY_FLOAT;
```

Parameters

Table 259–16 BLAS_NRM2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.

BLAS_ROT Procedures

This procedure returns the plane rotation of points.

See Also: BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_ROT (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   c      IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   s      IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE);

UTL_NLA.BLAS_ROT (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   c      IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   s      IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE);
```

Parameters

Table 259–17 BLAS_ROT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)* abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incy))
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incy must not be zero.
c	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE.Specifies the scalar C.
s	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE.Specifies the scalar S.

BLAS_ROTG Procedures

This procedure returns the Givens rotation of points.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_ROTG (
   a   IN OUT   SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   b   IN OUT   SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   c   IN OUT   SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   s   IN OUT   SCALAR_DOUBLE);

UTL_NLA.BLAS_ROTG (
   a   IN OUT   SCALAR_FLOAT,
   b   IN OUT   SCALAR_FLOAT,
   c   IN OUT   SCALAR_FLOAT,
   s   IN OUT   SCALAR_FLOAT);
```

Parameters

Table 259–18 BLAS_ROTG Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar A.
b	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar B.
c	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar C.
s	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar S.

BLAS_SCAL Procedures

This procedure scales a vector by a constant.

See Also: BLAS Level 1 (Vector-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-7 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SCAL (
   n      IN  POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN  SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   x      IN  OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN  POSITIVEN);

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SCAL (
   n      IN  POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN  SCALAR_FLOAT,
   x      IN  OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN  POSITIVEN);
```

Parameters

Table 259–19 BLAS_SCAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
alpha	Specifies the scalar alpha.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.

BLAS_SPMV Procedures

This procedure performs the matrix-vector operation

```
y := alpha*A*x + beta*y
```

where alpha and beta are scalars, x and y are n element vectors and A is an n by n symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SPMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   ap     IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SPMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   ap      IN     UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–20 BLAS_SPMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies the upper or lower triangular part of the matrix A is supplied in the packed array AP: ▪ uplo = 'U' or 'u'. The upper triangular part of A is supplied in AP. ▪ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. The lower triangular part of A is supplied in AP.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.

Table 259–20 (Cont.) BLAS_SPMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least ((n*(n+1))/2) Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the array ap must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(1,2) and a(2,2) respectively, and so on. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the array ap must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains, ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(2,1) and a(3,1) respectively, and so on.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta. When beta is supplied as zero then Y need not be set on input.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at leasT (1+(n-1)*abs(incy)) Before entry, the incremented array Y must contain the n element vector y. On exit, Y is overwritten by the updated vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SPR Procedures

This procedure performs the rank 1 operation

```
A := alpha*x*x' + A
```

where alpha is a real scalar, x is an n element vector, and A is an n by n symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form.

See Also: BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SPR (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DBL,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SPR (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLT,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–21 BLAS_SPR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the matrix A is supplied in the packed array ap: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u': The upper triangular part of A is supplied in ap. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : The lower triangular part of A is supplied in ap.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	Specifies the scalar alpha.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the m element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.

Table 259–21 (Cont.) BLAS_SPR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least ((n*(n +1))/2) Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the array ap must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(1,2) and a(2,2) respectively, and so on. On exit, the array ap is overwritten by the upper triangular part of the updated matrix. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the array ap must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(2,1) and a(3,1) respectively, and so on. On exit, the array ap is overwritten by the lower triangular part of the updated matrix
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SPR2 Procedures

This procedure performs the rank 2 operation

```
A := alpha*x*y' + alpha*y*x' +A
```

where alpha is a scalar, x and y are n element vectors, and A is an n by n symmetric matrix, supplied in packed form.

See Also: BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SPR2 (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DBL,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SPR2 (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLT,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–22 BLAS_SPR2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the matrix A is supplied in the packed array ap : ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u' : The upper triangular part of A is supplied in ap. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : The lower triangular part of A is supplied in ap.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	Specifies the scalar alpha.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the m element vector x.

Table 259–22 (Cont.) BLAS_SPR2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incy)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the m element vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incy must not be zero.
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least ((n*(n+1))/2) Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the array ap must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(1,2) and a(2,2) respectively, and so on. On exit, the array ap is overwritten by the upper triangular part of the updated matrix. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the array ap must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(2,1) and a(3,1) respectively, and so on. On exit, the array ap is overwritten by the lower triangular part of the updated matrix
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least (k + 1).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SBMV Procedures

This procedure performs the matrix-vector operation

```
y := alpha*A*x + beta*y
```

where alpha and beta are scalars, x and y are n element vectors and A is an n by n symmetric band matrix, with k super-diagonals.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SBMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      NATURALN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SBMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      NATURALN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–23 BLAS_SBMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the band matrix A is being supplied: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u'. The upper triangular part of A is supplied. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. The lower triangular part of A is supplied.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
k	Specifies the number of super-diagonals of the matrix A. k must satisfy 0 .le. k.

Table 259–23 (Cont.) BLAS_SBMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the upper triangular band part of the symmetric matrix, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row (k+1) of the array, the first super-diagonal starting at position 2 in rowk, and so on. The top left k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the lower triangular band part of the symmetric matrix, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row 1 of the array, the first sub-diagonal starting at position 1 in row 2, and so on. The bottom right k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Unchanged on exit
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least (k + 1).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incy)) Before entry, the incremented array Y must contain the n element vector y. On exit, Y is overwritten by the updated vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SWAP Procedures

This procedure swaps the contents of two vectors each of size n.

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SWAP (
   n     IN     POSITIVEN,
   x     IN OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx  IN     POSITIVEN,
   y     IN OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy  IN     POSITIVEN);

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SWAP (
   n     IN     POSITIVEN,
   x     IN OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx  IN     POSITIVEN,
   y     IN OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy  IN     POSITIVEN);
```

Parameters

Table 259–24 BLAS_SWAP Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	Specifies the number of elements of the vectors x and y. n must be at least zero.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx))
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incy))
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incy must not be zero.

BLAS_SYMM Procedures

This procedure performs one of the matrix-matrix operations

```
C := alpha*A*B + beta*C
```

or

```
C := alpha*B*A + beta*C
```

where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `A` is a symmetric matrix, and `B` and `C` are `m` by `n` matrices.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms on page 259-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYMM (
   side   IN      flag,
   uplo   IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYMM (
   side   IN      flag,
   uplo   IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–25 BLAS_SYMM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`side`	Specifies whether the symmetric matrix `A` appears on the left or right in the operation: ■ `side = 'L'` or `'l'` : `C := alpha*A*B + beta*C` ■ `side = 'R'` or `'r'` : `C := alpha*B*A + beta*C`

Table 259–25 (Cont.) BLAS_SYMM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array A is to be referenced: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u' : Only the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix is to be referenced. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : Only the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix is to be referenced.
m	Specifies the number of rows of the matrix C. m must be at least zero.
n	Specifies the number of columns of the matrix C. n must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,ka) where ka is m when side = 'L' or 'l', and is n otherwise. Before entry with side = 'L' or 'l', the leading m by m part of the array A must contain the symmetric matrix, such that when uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading m by m upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced, and when uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading m by m lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. Before entry with side = 'R' or 'r', the n by n part of the array A must contain the symmetric matrix, such that when uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced, and when uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. When side = 'L' or 'l', lda must be at least max(1,m), otherwise lda must be at least max(1,n).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldb,n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array B must contain the matrix B.
ldb	Specifies the first dimension of b as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldb must be at least max(1,m).
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta. When beta is supplied as zero then c need not be set on input.
c	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldc,n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array C must contain the matrix C, except when beta is zero, in which case C need not be set on entry. On exit, the array C is overwritten by the m by n updated matrix.
ldc	Specifies the first dimension of C as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldc must be at least max (1,m).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SYMV Procedures

This procedure performs the matrix-vector operation

```
y := alpha*A*x + beta*y
```

where alpha and beta are scalars, x and y are n element vectors and A is an n by n symmetric matrix.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   y      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–26 BLAS_SYMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array A is to be referenced: ■ uplo = 'U'or 'u'. Only the upper triangular part ofA is to be referenced. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. Only the lower triangular part of A is to be referenced.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.

Table 259–26 (Cont.) BLAS_SYMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1,n).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta. When beta is supplied as zero then y need not be set on input.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incy)) Before entry, the incremented array Y must contain the n element vector y. On exit, Y is overwritten by the updated vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SYR Procedures

This procedure performs the rank 1 operation

```
A := alpha*x*x' + A
```

where alpha is a real scalar, x is an n element vector, and A is an n by n symmetric matrix.

See Also: BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYR (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DBL,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYR (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLT,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–27 BLAS_SYR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array A is to be referenced: ■ uplo = 'U'or 'u' : Only the upper triangular part of A is to be referenced. ■ uplo = 'L'or 'l' : Only the lower triangular part of A is to be referenced.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
alpha	Specifies the scalar alpha.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the m element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.

Table 259–27 (Cont.) BLAS_SYR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n) Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. On exit, the upper triangular part of the array A is overwritten by the upper triangular part of the updated matrix. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. On exit, the lower triangular part of the array A is overwritten by the lower triangular part of the updated matrix.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1, n)
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SYR2 Procedures

This procedure performs the rank 2 operation

```
A := alpha*x*y' + alpha*y*x' + A
```

where `alpha` is a scalar, `x` and `y` are `n` element vectors, and `A` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYR2 (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DBL,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYR2 (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLT,
   x      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   y      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incy   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–28 BLAS_SYR2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`uplo`	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array `A` is to be referenced: ▪ `uplo = 'U'` or `'u'` : Only the upper triangular part of `A` is to be referenced. ▪ `uplo = 'L'` or `'l'` : Only the lower triangular part of `A` is to be referenced.
`n`	Specifies the order of the matrix `A`. `n` must be at least zero.
`alpha`	Specifies the scalar alpha.
`x`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL` of dimension at least `( 1 + ( n - 1 )*abs( incx ) )` Before entry, the incremented array `X` must contain the m element vector `x`.

Table 259–28 (Cont.) BLAS_SYR2 Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
y	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1)*abs(incy)) Before entry, the incremented array Y must contain the m element vector y.
incy	Specifies the increment for the elements of y. incy must not be zero.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n) With uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. On exit, the upper triangular part of the array A is overwritten by the upper triangular part of the updated matrix. With uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. On exit, the lower triangular part of the array A is overwritten by the lower triangular part of the updated matrix.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1, n)
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SYR2K Procedures

This procedure performs one of the symmetric rank2 k operations

```
C := alpha*A*B' + alpha*B*A' + beta*C
```

or

```
C := alpha*A'*B + alpha*B'*A + beta*C
```

where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `C` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix and `A` and `B` are `n` by `k` matrices in the first case and `k` by `n` matrices in the second case.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms on page 259-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYR2K (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYR2K (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–29 BLAS_SYR2K Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array C is to be referenced: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u' : Only the upper triangular part of C is to be referenced. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : Only the lower triangular part of C is to be referenced.
trans	Specifies the operations to be performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n'C : C := alpha*A*B' + alpha*B*A' + beta*C ■ trans = 'T' or 't'C : C := alpha*A'*B + alpha*B'*A + beta*C ■ trans = 'C' or 'c'C : C := alpha*A'*B + alpha*B'*A + beta*C
n	Specifies the order of matrix C. n must be at least zero.
k	On entry with trans = 'N' or 'n', k specifies the number of columns of the matrices A and B. On entry with trans = 'T' or 't' or trans = 'C' or 'c', k specifies the number of rows of the matrices A and B. k must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,ka) where kb is k when trans = 'N' or 'n', and is n otherwise. Before entry with trans = 'N' or 'n', the leading n byk part of the array A must contain the matrix A, otherwise the leading k by n part of the array A must contain the matrix A.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. When trans = 'N' or 'n', lda must be at leastmax(1,n), otherwise lda must be at least max(1,k).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,kb) where kb is k when trans = 'N' or 'n', and is n otherwise. Before entry with trans = 'N' or 'n', the leading n byk part of the array B must contain the matrix B, otherwise the leading k by n part of the array B must contain the matrix B.
ldb	Specifies the first dimension of b as declared in the calling (sub) program. When trans = 'N' or 'n', ldb must be at least max (1,n), otherwise ldb must be at least max (1,k).
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta.

Table 259–29 (Cont.) BLAS_SYR2K Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldc,n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array C must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of C is not referenced. On exit, the upper triangular part of the array C is overwritten by the upper triangular part of the updated matrix. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array C must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of C is not referenced. On exit, the lower triangular part of the array C is overwritten by the lower triangular part of the updated matrix.
ldc	Specifies the first dimension of C as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldc must be at least max(1,n).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_SYRK Procedures

This procedure performs one of the symmetric rank k operations

```
C := alpha*A*A' + beta*C
```

or

```
C := alpha*A'*A + beta*C
```

where `alpha` and `beta` are scalars, `C` is an `n` by `n` symmetric matrix and`A` is an `n` by `k` matrix in the first case and a `k` by`n` matrix in the second case.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms on page 259-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYRK (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_SYRK (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   beta   IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   c      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldc    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–30 BLAS_SYRK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`uplo`	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array `C` is to be referenced: ▪ `uplo` = `'U'` or `'u'` : Only the upper triangular part of `C` is to be referenced. ▪ `uplo` = `'L'` or `'l'` : Only the lower triangular part of `C` is to be referenced.

Table 259–30 (Cont.) BLAS_SYRK Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
trans	Specifies the operations to be performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n' : C := alpha*A*A' + beta*C ■ trans = 'T' or 't' : C := alpha*A'*A + beta*C ■ trans ='C' or 'c' : C := alpha*A'*A + beta*C
n	Specifies the order of matrix C. n must be at least zero.
k	On entry with trans = 'N' or 'n', k specifies the number of columns of the matrix A. On entry with trans = 'T' or 't' or trans = 'C' or 'c', k specifies the number of rows of the matrix A. k must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,ka) where ka is k when trans = 'N' or 'n', and is n otherwise. Before entry with trans = 'N' or 'n', the leading n byk part of the array A must contain the matrix A, otherwise the leading k by n part of the array A must contain the matrix A.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. When trans = 'N' or 'n', lda must be at least max(1,n), otherwiselda must be at least max(1,k).
beta	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar beta.
c	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldc,n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array C must contain the upper triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of C is not referenced. On exit, the upper triangular part of the array C is overwritten by the upper triangular part of the updated matrix. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array C must contain the lower triangular part of the symmetric matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of C is not referenced. On exit, the lower triangular part of the array C is overwritten by the lower triangular part of the updated matrix.
ldc	Specifies the first dimension of C as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldc must be at least max(1,n).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_TBMV Procedures

This procedure performs the matrix-vector operations

```
x := A*x
```

or

```
x := A'*x
```

where x is an n element vector and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular band matrix, with (k+1) diagonals.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TBMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      NATURALN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TBMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      NATURALN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–31 BLAS_TBMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the matrix is an upper or lower triangular matrix: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u'. A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. A is a lower triangular matrix.
trans	Specifies the operation to be performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n'x := A*x ■ trans = 'T' or 't'x := A'*x ■ trans = 'C' or 'c'x := A'*x

Table 259–31 (Cont.) BLAS_TBMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u'. A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n'. A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
k	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ with uplo = 'U' or 'u', K specifies the number of super-diagonals of the matrix A. ■ with uplo = 'L' or 'l', K specifies the number of sub-diagonals of the matrix A. K must satisfy 0 .le. k.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the upper triangular band part of the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row (k+1) of the array, the first super-diagonal starting at position 2 in row k, and so on. The top left k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the lower triangular band part of the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row 1 of the array, the first sub-diagonal starting at position 1 in row 2, and so on. The bottom right k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Note that when diag = ''U' or 'u', the elements of the array A corresponding to the diagonal elements of the matrix are not referenced, but are assumed to be unity.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least (k+1).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)). Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element vector x. On exit, X is overwritten with the transformed vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_TBSV Procedures

This procedure solves one of the systems of equations

```
A*x = b
```

or

```
A'*x = b
```

where b and x are n element vectors and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular band matrix, with (k+1) diagonals.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TBSV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      NATURALN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_STBSV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   k      IN      NATURALN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–32 BLAS_TBSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the matrix is an upper or lower triangular matrix: ■ uplo = ''U' or 'u'. A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. A is a lower triangular matrix.
trans	Specifies the equations to be solved: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n : 'A*x = b ■ trans = 'T' or 't': A'*x = b ■ trans = 'C' or 'c': A'*x = b

Table 259–32 (Cont.) BLAS_TBSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u' : A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n' : A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
k	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ with uplo = 'U' or 'u', K specifies the number of super-diagonals of the matrix A. ■ with uplo = 'L' or 'l', K specifies the number of sub-diagonals of the matrix A. K must satisfy 0 .le. k.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the upper triangular band part of the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row (k+1) of the array, the first super-diagonal starting at position 2 in row k, and so on. The top left k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the lower triangular band part of the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row 1 of the array, the first sub-diagonal starting at position 1 in row 2, and so on. The bottom right k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Note that when diag = 'U' or 'u', the elements of the array A corresponding to the diagonal elements of the matrix are not referenced, but are assumed to be unity.
lda	On entry, lda specifies the first dimension of A as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least (k+1).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1) *abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element right-hand side vector b. On exit, X is overwritten with the solution vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

Usage Notes

No test for singularity or near-singularity is included in this routine. Such tests must be performed before calling this routine.

BLAS_TPMV Procedures

This procedure performs the matrix-vector operations

```
x := A*x
```

or

```
x := A'*x
```

where x is an n element vector and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, supplied in packed form.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TPMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TBMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–33 BLAS_TPMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the matrix is an upper or lower triangular matrix: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u'. A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. A is a lower triangular matrix.
trans	Specifies the operation to e performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n'x := A*x ■ trans = 'T' or 't'x := A'*x ■ trans = 'C' or 'c'x := A'*x
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u'. A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n'. A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.

Table 259–33 (Cont.) BLAS_TPMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the upper triangular band part of the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row (k+1) of the array, the first super-diagonal starting at position 2 in row k, and so on. The top left k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading (k+1) by n part of the array A must contain the lower triangular band part of the matrix of coefficients, supplied column by column, with the leading diagonal of the matrix in row 1 of the array, the first sub-diagonal starting at position 1 in row 2, and so on. The bottom right k by k triangle of the array A is not referenced. Note that when diag = 'U' or 'u', the elements of the array A corresponding to the diagonal elements of the matrix are not referenced, but are assumed to be unity.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1+(n-1)*abs(incx)). Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element vector x. On exit, X is overwritten with the transformed vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_TPSV Procedures

This procedure solves one of the systems of equations

```
A*x = b
```

or

```
A'*x = b
```

where b and x are n element vectors and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix, supplied in packed form.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TPSV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TPSV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–34 BLAS_TPSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the matrix is an upper or lower triangular matrix: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u' : A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : A is a lower triangular matrix.
trans	Specifies the operation to be performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n' : A*x = b ■ trans = 'T' or 't' : A'*x = b ■ trans = 'C' or 'c' : A'*x = b
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u' : A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n' : 'A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.

Table 259–34 (Cont.) BLAS_TPSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least ((n*(n+1))/2) Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the array ap must contain the upper triangular matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(1,2) and a(2,2) respectively, and so on. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the array ap must contain the lower triangular matrix packed sequentially, column by column, so that ap(1) contains a(1,1), ap(2) and ap(3) contain a(2,1) and a(3,1) respectively, and so on. Note that when diag = 'U' or 'u', the diagonal elements of A are not referenced, but are assumed to be unity.
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1) *abs(incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element right-hand side vector b. On exit, X is overwritten with the solution vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. incx must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

Usage Notes

No test for singularity or near-singularity is included in this routine. Such tests must be performed before calling this routine.

BLAS_TRMM Procedures

This procedure performs one of the matrix-matrix operations

```
B := alpha*op( A )*B
```

or

```
B := alpha*B*op( A )
```

where `alpha` is a scalar, `B` is an `m` by `n` matrix, `A` is a unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix and `op(A)` is one of

```
op( A ) = A
```

or

```
op( A ) = A'
```

See Also: BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms on page 259-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRMM (
   side   IN      flag,
   uplo   IN      flag,
   transa IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRMM (
   side   IN      flag,
   uplo   IN      flag,
   transa IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–35 BLAS_TRMM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
side	Specifies whether the symmetric matrix A appears on the left or right in the operation: ■ side = 'L' or 'l' : B := alpha*op(A)*B ■ side = 'R' or 'r' : B := alpha*B*op(A)
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array A is to be referenced: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u' : A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : A is a lower triangular matrix.
transa	Specifies the form of op(A) to be used in the matrix multiplication as follows: ■ transa = 'N' or 'n' : op(A) = A ■ transa = 'T' or 't' : op(A) = A' ■ transa = 'C' or 'c' : op(A) = A'
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u'. A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n'. A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
m	Specifies the number of rows of the B. m must be at least zero.
n	Specifies the number of columns of B. n must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha. When alpha is zero then A is not referenced and B need not be set before entry.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda,k) where k is m when side = 'L' or 'l', and is n when side = ''R' or 'r'. Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u' , the leading k by k upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular matrix, and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading k byk lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. Note that when diag = ''U' or 'u', the diagonal elements of A are not referenced either, but are assumed to be unity.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. When side = 'L' or 'l', lda must be at least max(1,m), otherwise lda must be at least max(1,n).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldb,n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array B must contain the matrix B, and on exit is overwritten by the transformed matrix.
ldb	Specifies the first dimension of b as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldb must be at least max(1,m).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_TRMV Procedures

This procedure performs the matrix-vector operations

```
x := A*x
```

or

```
x := A'*x
```

where x is an n element vector and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRMV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–36 BLAS_TRMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the matrix is an upper or lower triangular matrix: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u'. A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. A is a lower triangular matrix.
trans	Specifies the operation to be performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n'x := A*x ■ trans= 'T' or 't'x := A'*x ■ trans = 'C' or 'c'x := A'*x

Table 259–36 (Cont.) BLAS_TRMV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u'. A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n'. A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. Note that when diag = 'U' or 'u', the diagonal elements of A are not referenced either, but are assumed to be unity
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1,n).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least(1+(n-1)*as(incx)). Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_TRSM Procedures

This procedure performs one of the matrix-matrix operations

```
op( A )*X = alpha*B
```

or

```
X*op( A ) = alpha*B
```

where `alpha` is a scalar, `X` and `B` are `m` by `n` matrices, `A` is a unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix and `op(A)` is one of

```
op( A ) = A
```

or

```
op( A ) = A'
```

The matrix `X` is overwritten on `B`.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 3 (Matrix-Matrix Operations) Subprograms on page 259-10 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRSM (
   side   IN      flag,
   uplo   IN      flag,
   transa IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_DOUBLE,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRSM (
   side   IN      flag,
   uplo   IN      flag,
   transa IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   m      IN      POSITIVEN,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   alpha  IN      SCALAR_FLOAT,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–37 BLAS_TRSM Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
side	Specifies whether the symmetric matrix A appears on the left or right in the operation: ■ side = 'L' or 'l' : op(A)*X = alpha*B ■ side = 'R' or 'r' : X*op(A) = alpha*B
uplo	Specifies whether the upper or lower triangular part of the array A is to be referenced: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u' : A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l' : A is a lower triangular matrix.
transa	Specifies the form of op(A) to be used in the matrix multiplication as follows: ■ transa = 'N' or 'n' : op(A) = A ■ transa = 'T' or 't' : op(A) = A' ■ transa = 'C' or 'c' : op(A) = A'
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u'. A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n'. A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
m	Specifies the number of rows of the B. m must be at least zero.
n	Specifies the number of columns of B. n must be at least zero.
alpha	SCALAR_FLOAT/DOUBLE. Specifies the scalar alpha. When alpha is zero then A is not referenced and B need not be set before entry.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, k) where k is m when side = 'L' or 'l', and is n when side = 'R' or 'r'. Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading k by k upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular matrix, and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading k by k lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. Note that when diag = 'U' or 'u', the diagonal elements of A are not referenced either, but are assumed to be unity.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of a as declared in the calling (sub) program. When side = 'L' or 'l', lda must be at least max(1, m), otherwise lda must be at least max (1, n).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (ldb, n). Before entry, the leading m by n part of the array B must contain the matrix B, and on exit is overwritten by the solution matrix X.
ldb	Specifies the first dimension of b as declared in the calling (sub) program. ldb must be at least max(1, m).
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

BLAS_TRSV Procedures

This procedure solves one of the systems of equations

```
A*x = b
```

or

```
A'*x = b
```

where b and x are n element vectors and A is an n by n unit, or non-unit, upper or lower triangular matrix.

> **See Also:** BLAS Level 2 (Matrix-Vector Operations) Subprograms on page 259-8 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRSV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.BLAS_TRSV (
   uplo   IN      flag,
   trans  IN      flag,
   diag   IN      flag,
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN      UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   x      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   incx   IN      POSITIVEN,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–38 BLAS_TRSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	Specifies whether the matrix is an upper or lower triangular matrix: ■ uplo = 'U' or 'u'. A is an upper triangular matrix. ■ uplo = 'L' or 'l'. A is a lower triangular matrix.
trans	Specifies the operation to be performed: ■ trans = 'N' or 'n'A*x = b ■ trans = 'T' or 't'A'*x = b ■ trans = 'C' or 'c'A'*x = b

Table 259–38 (Cont.) BLAS_TRSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
diag	Specifies whether or not A is unit triangular: ■ diag = 'U' or 'u'. A is assumed to be unit triangular. ■ diag = 'N' or 'n'. A is not assumed to be unit triangular.
n	Specifies the order of the matrix A. n must be at least zero.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of DIMENSION (lda, n). Before entry with uplo = 'U' or 'u', the leading n by n upper triangular part of the array A must contain the upper triangular matrix and the strictly lower triangular part of A is not referenced. Before entry with uplo = 'L' or 'l', the leading n by n lower triangular part of the array A must contain the lower triangular matrix and the strictly upper triangular part of A is not referenced. Note that when diag = 'U' or 'u', the diagonal elements of A are not referenced either, but are assumed to be unity.
lda	Specifies the first dimension of A as declared in the calling (sub) program. lda must be at least max(1, n).
x	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL of dimension at least (1 + (n - 1) * abs (incx)) Before entry, the incremented array X must contain the n element right-hand side vector b. On exit, X is overwritten with the solution vector x.
incx	Specifies the increment for the elements of x. Must not be zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

Usage Notes

No test for singularity or near-singularity is included in this routine. Such tests must be performed before calling this routine.

LAPACK_GBSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where a is a band matrix of order n with kl sub diagonals and ku superdiagonals, and x and b are n by nrhs matrices.

The LU decomposition with partial pivoting and row interchanges is used to factor A as

```
a = L * U
```

where L is a product of permutation and unit lower triangular matrices with kl sub diagonals, and U is upper triangular with kl+ku superdiagonals. The factored form of a is then used to solve the system of equations

```
a * x = b
```

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GBSV (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   kl     IN      NATURALN,
   ku     IN      NATURALN,
   nrhs   IN      POSITIVEN,
   ab     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldab   IN      POSITIVEN,
   ipiv   IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT  INTEGER,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GBSV (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   kl     IN      NATURALN,
   ku     IN      NATURALN,
   nrhs   IN      POSITIVEN,
   ab     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldab   IN      POSITIVEN,
   ipiv   IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT  INTEGER,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–39 LAPACK_GBSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	The number of linear equations, equivalent to the order of the matrixa .n >= 0
kl	The number of sub diagonals within the band of a. kl >= 0.

Table 259–39 (Cont.) LAPACK_GBSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ku	The number of superdiagonals within the band of a . ku >= 0.
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.
ab	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldab, n). On entry, the matrix a in band storage, in rows kl+1 to 2*kl+ku+1; rows 1 to kl of the array need not be set. The j-th column of A is stored in the j-th column of the array ab: ab(kl+ku+1+i-j,j) = a(i,j) for max(1,j-ku)<=i<=min(n,j+kl) On exit, details of the factorization: U is stored as an upper triangular band matrix with kl+ku superdiagonals in rows 1 to KL+KU+1, and the multipliers used during the factorization are stored in rows: kl+ku+2 to 2*kl+ku+1
ldab	The leading dimension of the array ab. ldab >= 2*kl+ku+1
ipiv	INTEGER array, DIMENSION (n). The pivot indices that define the permutation matrix P; row iof the matrix was interchanged with row ipiv(i).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, U(i,i) is exactly zero. The factorization has been completed, but the factor U is exactly singular, and the solution has not been computed
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_GEES Procedures

This procedure computes for an n by n real nonsymmetric matrix A, the eigenvalues, the real Schur form T, and, optionally, the matrix of Schur vectors Z. This gives the Schur factorization A = Z*T*(Z**T).

A matrix is in real Schur form if it is upper quasi-triangular with 1 by 1 and 2 by 2 blocks. 2 by 2 blocks will be standardized in the form

```
[ a b ]

[ c a ]
```

where b*c < 0. The eigenvalues of such a block are a +- sqrt(bc).

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GEES (
   jobvs    IN       flag,
   n        IN       POSITIVEN,
   a        IN  OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda      IN       POSITIVEN,
   wr       IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   wi       IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   vs       IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldvs     IN       POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT      INTEGER,
   pack     IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GEES (
   jobvs    IN       flag,
   n        IN       POSITIVEN,
   a        IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda      IN       POSITIVEN,
   wr       IN       OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   wi       IN       OUT UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   vs       IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldvs     IN       POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT      integer,
   pack     IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–40 LAPACK_GEES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobz	■ 'N': Schur vectors are not computed. ■ 'V': Schur vectors are computed.
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). ■ On entry, the n by n matrix A. ■ On exit, A has been overwritten by its real Schur form T.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n).

Table 259–40 (Cont.) LAPACK_GEES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
wr	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). wr and wi contain the real and imaginary parts respectively of the computed eigenvalues in the same order that they appear on the diagonal of the output Schur form T. Complex conjugate pairs of eigenvalues will appear consecutively with the eigenvalue having the positive imaginary part first.
wi	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz, n). wr and wi contain the real and imaginary parts respectively of the computed eigenvalues in the same order that they appear on the diagonal of the output Schur form T. Complex conjugate pairs of eigenvalues will appear consecutively with the eigenvalue having the positive imaginary part first.
vs	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). ■ If jobvs = 'V', vs contains the orthogonal matrix Z of Schur vectors. ■ If jobvs = 'N', vs is not referenced.
ldvs	The leading dimension of the array vs. VS. ldvs >= 1. If jobvs = 'V', ldvs >= N
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, and i is <= N: the QR algorithm failed to compute all the eigenvalues. Elements 1:ILO-1 and i+1:N of wr and wi contain those eigenvalues which have converged. If jobvs = 'V', vs contains the matrix which reduces A to its partially converged Schur form.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_GELS Procedures

This procedure solves overdetermined or underdetermined real linear systems involving an `m` by `n` matrix `A`, or its transpose, using a `QR` or `LQ` factorization of `A`. It is assumed that `A` has full rank.

The following options are provided:

1. If `TRANS = 'N'` and `m >= n`: find the least squares solution of an overdetermined system, that is, solve the least squares problem.

   ```
   minimize || B - A*X ||
   ```

2. If `TRANS = 'N'` and `m < n`: find the minimum norm solution of an underdetermined system `A * X = B`.
3. If `TRANS = 'T'` and `m >= n`: find the minimum norm solution of an undetermined system `A**T * X = B`.
4. If `TRANS = 'T'` and `m < n`: find the least squares solution of an overdetermined system, that is, solve the least squares problem `minimize || B - A**T * X ||`.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GELS (
   trans    IN       flag,
   m        IN       POSITIVEN,
   n        IN       POSITIVEN,
   nrhs     IN       POSITIVEN,
   a        IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda      IN       POSITIVEN,
   b        IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb      IN       POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT      INTEGER,
   pack     IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GELS (
  trans     IN       flag,
  m         IN       POSITIVEN,
  n         IN       POSITIVEN,
  nrhs      IN       POSITIVEN,
  a         IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
  lda       IN       POSITIVEN,
  b         IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
  ldb       IN       POSITIVEN,
  info      OUT      INTEGER,
  pack      IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–41 LAPACK_GELS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`trans`	■ `CHARACTER = 'N'`: The linear system involves `A`. ■ `CHARACTER = 'T'`: The linear system involves `A**T`.

Table 259–41 (Cont.) LAPACK_GELS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
m	The number of rows of the matrix a. M >= 0.
n	The number of columns of the matrix a. N >= 0.
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix band x.nrhs >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). On entry, the matrix b of right hand side vectors, stored columnwise; b is m by nrhs if TRANS = 'N', or n by nrhsif trans = 'T'. On exit, if m >= n, a is overwritten by details of its QR factorization as returned by SGEQRF. If m < n, A is overwritten by details of its LQ factorization as returned by SGELQF.
lda	The leading dimension of the array A. lda >= max(1,m).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the matrix b of right hand side vectors, stored columnwise. b is m bynrhs if trans = 'n', or n by nrhs if trans = 'T'. On exit, b is overwritten by the solution vectors, stored columnwise: ■ If trans = 'n' and m >= n, rows 1 to n of b contain the least squares solution vectors; the residual sum of squares for the solution in each column is given by the sum of squares of elements n+1 to m in that column. ■ If trans = 'n' and m < n, rows 1 to n of b contain the minimum norm solution vectors. ■ If trans = 'T' and m >= n, rows 1 to m of b contain the minimum norm solution vectors. ■ If trans = 'T' and m < n, rows 1 to m of b contain the least squares solution vectors; the residual sum of squares for the solution in each column is given by the sum of squares of elements m+1 to n in that column.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,m,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_GESDD Procedures

This procedures computes the singular value decomposition (SVD) of a real `m` by `n` matrix `A`, optionally computing the left and right singular vectors. If singular vectors are desired, it uses a divide-and-conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.

The SVD is written

```
A = U * SIGMA * transpose(V)
```

where SIGMA is an `m` by `n` matrix which is zero except for its `min(m,n)` diagonal elements, `U` is an`m` by `m` orthogonal matrix, and `V` is an`n` by `n` orthogonal matrix. The diagonal elements of SIGMA are the singular values of `A`, they are real and non-negative, and are returned in descending order. The first `min(m,n)` columns of `U` and `V` are the left and right singular vectors of `A`.

Note that the routine returns `V**T`, not `V`.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GESDD (
   jobz   IN       flag,
   m      IN       POSITIVEN,
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN       POSITIVEN,
   s      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   u      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldu    IN       POSITIVEN,
   vt     IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldvt   IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GESDD (
   jobz   IN       flag,
   m      IN       POSITIVEN,
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN       POSITIVEN,
   s      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   u      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldu    IN       POSITIVEN,
   vt     IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldvt   IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–42 LAPACK_GESDD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobz	Specifies options for computing all or part of the matrix U: ■ 'A': All m columns of u and all n rows of V**T are returned in arrays u and vt. ■ 'S': The first min(m,n) columns of u and the first min(m,n) rows of V**T are returned in the arrays u and vt. ■ 'O': The first min(m,n) columns of u (the left singular vectors) are overwritten on the array a. jobu and jobvt cannot both be 'O ■ 'N': No columns of u (no left singular vectors) are computed.
m	The order of the matrix a. m >= 0.
n	The order of the matrix a. n >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). On entry, the n by n matrix A. On exit: ■ If jobz = 'O', a is overwritten with the first min(m,n) columns of u (the left singular vectors, stored columnwise). ■ If m >= n, a is overwritten with the first m rows of V**T (the right singular vectors, stored rowwise). ■ If jobz .ne. 'O', the contents of a are destroyed.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,m).
s	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (min(m,n)). The singular values of a, sorted so that S(i) >= S(i+1).
u	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL. ucol = m if jobz = 'A' or jobz = 'O' and m < n; ucol = min(m,n) if jobz = 'S'. ■ If jobz = 'A' or jobz = 'O' and m < n, u contains the m by m orthogonal matrix u. ■ If jobz = 'S', u contains the first min(m,n) columns of u (the left singular vectors, stored columnwise). ■ If jobz = 'O' and m >= n, or jobz = 'n', u is not referenced.
ldu	The leading dimension of the array U. ldu >= 1. If jobz = 'S' or 'A',or jobz = 'O' and m < n, ldu >= m.
vt	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldvt, n). ■ If jobz = 'A' or jobz = 'O' and m >= n, vt contains the n by n orthogonal matrix V**T. ■ If jobz = 'S', vt contains the first min(m,n) rows of V**T (the right singular vectors, stored rowwise). ■ If jobz = 'O' and m < n, or jobz = 'N', vt is not referenced.
ldvt	The leading dimension of the array vt. ldvt >= 1. ■ If jobz = 'A', or jobz = 'O' and m >= n, ldvt >= n. ■ If jobz = 'S', ldvt >= min(m,n).

Table 259–42 (Cont.) LAPACK_GESDD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`info`	■ `= 0` : successful exit ■ `< 0` : If `info = -i`, the `i`-th argument had an illegal value ■ `> 0` : SBDSDC did not converge, updating process failed.
`pack`	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ `'C'`: column-major (default) ■ `'R'`: row-major

LAPACK_GESV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where a is an n by n matrix and x and b are n by nrhs matrices.

The LU decomposition with partial pivoting and row interchanges is used to factor A as

```
a = P * L * U
```

where P is a permutation matrix, L is unit lower triangular, and U is upper triangular. The factored form of a is then used to solve the system of equations

```
a * x = b
```

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GESV (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   ipiv   IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info      OUT  INTEGER,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GESV (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN      POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN      POSITIVEN,
   ipiv   IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info      OUT  INTEGER,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–43 LAPACK_GESV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	The number of linear equations, equivalent to the order of the matrix a. n >= 0
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). On entry, the n by n coefficient matrix a. On exit, the factors L and U from the factorization a = P*L*U; the unit diagonal elements of L are not stored.

Table 259–43 (Cont.) LAPACK_GESV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n)
ipiv	INTEGER array, DIMENSION (n). The pivot indices that define the permutation matrix P; row iof the matrix was interchanged with row ipiv(i).
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, U(i,i) is exactly zero. The factorization has been completed, but the factor U is exactly singular, so the solution could not be computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_GESVD Procedures

This procedures computes the singular value decomposition (SVD) of a real `m` by `n` matrix `A`, optionally computing the left and/or right singular vectors. The SVD is written

```
A = U * SIGMA * transpose(V)
```

where SIGMA is an `m` by `n` matrix which is zero except for its `min(m,n)` diagonal elements, `U` is an`m` by `m` orthogonal matrix, and `V` is an`n` by `n` orthogonal matrix. The diagonal elements of SIGMA are the singular values of `A`, they are real and non-negative, and are returned in descending order. The first `min(m,n)` columns of `U` and `V` are the left and right singular vectors of `A`.

Note that the routine returns `V**T`, not `V`.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GESVD (
   jobu   IN       flag,
   jobvt  IN       flag,
   m      IN       POSITIVEN,
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda    IN       POSITIVEN,
   s      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   u      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldu    IN       POSITIVEN,
   vt     IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldvt   IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GESVD (
   jobu   IN       flag,
   jobvt  IN       flag,
   m      IN       POSITIVEN,
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN       POSITIVEN,
   s      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   u      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldu    IN       POSITIVEN,
   vt     IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldvt   IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–44 LAPACK_GESVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobu	Specifies options for computing all or part of the matrix U: ■ 'A': All m columns of U are returned in array U. ■ 'S': The first min(m,n) columns of U (the left singular vectors) are returned in the array U. ■ 'O': The first min(m,n) columns of U (the left singular vectors) are overwritten on the array a. jobu and jobvt cannot both be 'O' ■ 'N': No columns of U (no left singular vectors) are computed.
jobvt	Specifies options for computing all or part of the matrix V**T: ■ 'A': All n rows of V**T are returned in the array vt. ■ 'S': The first min(m,n) rows of V**T (the right singular vectors) are returned in the array vt. ■ 'O': The first min(m,n) rows of V**T (the right singular vectors) are overwritten on the array a. jobvt and jobu cannot both be 'O'. ■ 'N': No rows of V**T (no right singular vectors) are computed.
m	The order of the matrix a. M >= 0.
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). On entry, the n by n matrix A. On exit: ■ If jobu = 'O', A is overwritten with the first min(m,n) columns of U (the left singular vectors, stored columnwise); ■ If jobvt = 'O', A is overwritten with the first min(m,n) rows of V**T (the right singular vectors, stored rowwise); ■ If jobu.ne.'O' and jobvt.ne.'O', the contents of A are destroyed.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n).
s	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (min(m,n)). The singular values of A, sorted so that S(i) >= S(i+1).
u	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldu,ucol).(ldu,m)if jobu = 'A' or (ldu,min(m,n)) if jobu = 'S'. ■ If jobu = 'A', U contains the m by m orthogonal matrix U. ■ If jobu = 'S', U contains the first min(m,n) columns of U (the left singular vectors, stored columnwise). ■ If jobu = 'N' or 'O', U is not referenced.
ldu	The leading dimension of the array U. ldu >= 1. If jobu = 'S' or 'a', ldu >= m.

Table 259–44 (Cont.) LAPACK_GESVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
vt	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldvt, n). ■ If jobvt = 'A', vt contains the n by n orthogonal matrix V**T. ■ If jobvt = 'S', vt contains the first min(m,n) rows of V**T (the right singular vectors, stored rowwise). ■ If jobvt = 'N' or 'O', vt is not referenced.
ldvt	The leading dimension of the array vt. ldvt >= 1. ■ If jobvt = 'A', ldvt >= n. ■ If jobvt = 'S', ldvt >= min(m,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : If info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : If SBDSQR did not converge, info specifies how many superdiagonals of an intermediate bidiagonal form B did not converge to zero.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_GEEV Procedures

This procedures computes for an `n` by `n` real nonsymmetric matrix `A`, the eigenvalues and, optionally, the left and/or right eigenvectors.

- The right eigenvector `v(j)` of `A` satisfies `A * v(j) = lambda(j) * v(j)` where `lambda(j)` is its eigenvalue.
- The left eigenvector `u(j)` of `A` satisfies `u(j)**H * A = lambda(j) * u(j)**H` where `u(j)**H` denotes the conjugate transpose of `u(j)`.

The computed eigenvectors are normalized to have Euclidean norm equal to `1` and largest component real.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GEEV (
   jobvl   IN      flag,
   jobvr   IN      flag,
   n       IN      POSITIVEN,
   a       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda     IN      POSITIVEN,
   wr      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   wi      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   vl      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldvl    IN      POSITIVEN,
   vr      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldvr    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info    OUT     INTEGER,
   pack    IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GEEV (
   jobvl   IN      flag,
   jobvr   IN      flag,
   n       IN      POSITIVEN,
   a       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda     IN      POSITIVEN,
   wr      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   wi      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   vl      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldvl    IN      POSITIVEN,
   vr      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldvr    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info    OUT     INTEGER,
   pack    IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–45 LAPACK_GEEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`jobvl`	■ `'N'`: Left eigenvectors of `A` are not computed. ■ `'V'`: Left eigenvectors of `A` are computed.

Table 259–45 (Cont.) LAPACK_GEEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobvr	■ 'N': Right eigenvectors of A are not computed. ■ 'V': Right eigenvectors of A are computed.
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). ■ On entry, the n by n matrix A. ■ On exit, A has been overwritten.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n).
wr	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). wr and wi contain the real and imaginary parts respectively of the computed eigenvalues. Complex conjugate pairs of eigenvalues will appear consecutively with the eigenvalue having the positive imaginary part first.
wi	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz, n). wr and wi contain the real and imaginary parts respectively of the computed eigenvalues. Complex conjugate pairs of eigenvalues will appear consecutively with the eigenvalue having the positive imaginary part first.
vl	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). ■ If jobvl = 'V', the left eigenvectors u(j) are stored one after another in the columns of vl, in the same order as their eigenvalues. ■ If jobvs = 'N', vl is not referenced. ■ If the j-th eigenvalue is real, then u(j) = VL(:,j), the j-th column of vl. ■ If the j-th and (j+1)-st eigenvalues form a complex conjugate pair, then u(j) = VL(:,j) + i*VL(:,j+1) and u(j+1) = VL(:,j) - i*VL(:,j+1).
ldv1	The leading dimension of the array vl. ldvl >= 1. If jobvl = 'v', ldvl >= n.
vr	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldvr, n). ■ If jobvr = 'V', the right eigenvectors v(j) are stored one after another in the columns of vr, in the same order as their eigenvalues.. ■ If jobvr = 'N', vr is not referenced. ■ If the j-th eigenvalue is real, then v(j) = VR(:,j), the j-th column of vr. ■ If the j-th and (j+1)-st eigenvalues form a complex conjugate pair, then v(j) = VR(:,j) + i*VR(:,j+1) and v(j+1) = VR(:,j) - i*VR(:,j+1).
ldvr	The leading dimension of the array vr. vr.ldvr >= 1. If jobvr = 'V', ldvr >= N
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, and i is <= N: the QR algorithm failed to compute all the eigenvalues, and no eigenvectors have been computed. Elements i+1:N of wr and wi contain eigenvalues which have converged..

Table 259–45 (Cont.) LAPACK_GEEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`pack`	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ `'C'`: column-major (default) ■ `'R'`: row-major

LAPACK_GTSV Procedures

This procedure solves the equation

```
a * x = b
```

where a is an n by n tridiagonal matrix, by Gaussian elimination with partial pivoting.

Note that the equation a'*x = b may be solved by interchanging the order of the arguments du and dl.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GTSV (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN      POSITIVEN,
   dl     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   d      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   du     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info       OUT INTEGER,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_GTSV (
   n      IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN      POSITIVEN,
   dl     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   d      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   du     IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   b      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN      POSITIVEN,
   info       OUT INTEGER,
   pack   IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–46 LAPACK_GTSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	The order of the matrix a .n >= 0
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.
dl	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n-1). On entry, dl must contain the (n-1) sub-diagonal elements of a. On exit, dl is overwritten by the (n-2) elements of the second super-diagonal of the upper triangular matrix U from the LU factorization of a, in dl(1), ..., dl(n-2).
d	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). On entry, d must contain the diagonal elements of a. On exit, d is overwritten by the n diagonal elements of U.

Table 259–46 (Cont.) LAPACK_GTSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
du	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n-1). On entry, du must contain the (n-1)super-diagonal elements of a. On exit, du is overwritten by the (n-1) elements of the first super-diagonal of U.
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (LDB, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0, the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max (1, n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, U(i,i) is exactly zero, and the solution has not been computed. The factorization has not been completed unless i = n.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_PBSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite band matrix and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices.

The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A` as

`A = U**T*U` if `UPLO ='U'`

or

`A = L * L**T` if `UPLO = 'L'`

where `U` is an upper triangular matrix and `L` is a lower triangular matrix. The factored form of `A` is then used to solve the system of equations `A * X = B`.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_PBSV (
uplo       IN      flag,
n          IN      POSITIVEN,
kd         IN      NATURALN,
nrhs       IN      POSITIVEN,
ab         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
ldab       IN      POSITIVEN,
b          IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
ldb        IN      POSITIVEN,
info       OUT     INTEGER,
pack       IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_PBSV (
uplo      IN      flag,
n         IN      POSITIVEN,
kd        IN      NATURALN,
nrhs      IN      POSITIVEN,
ab        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
ldab      IN      POSITIVEN,
b         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
ldb       IN      POSITIVEN,
info      OUT     INTEGER,
pack      IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–47 LAPACK_PBSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`uplo`	▪ `uplo = 'U'`. Upper triangular of `A` is stored. ▪ `uplo = 'L'`. Lower triangular of `A` is stored.
`n`	The number of linear equations, that is, the order of the matrix `a .n >= 0`

Table 259–47 (Cont.) LAPACK_PBSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
kd	The number of superdiagonals of the matrix A if uplo = 'U', or the number of subdiagonals if UPLO = 'L'. KD >= 0.
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.
ab	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldab, n). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric band matrix a, stored in the first kd+1 rows of the array. The j-th column of a is stored in the j-th column of the array ab is as follows: ■ if uplo = 'U',AB(KD+1+i-j,j) = A(i,j) for max(1,j-KD)<=i<=j; ■ if uplo = 'L',AB(1+i-j,j) = A(i,j) for j<=i<=min(N,j+KD) .See below for further details.On exit, if info = 0, the triangular factor U or L from the Cholesky factorization A = U**T*U or A = L*L**T of the bandmatrix A, in the same storage format as a.
ldab	The leading dimension of the array ab. ldb >= kd+1
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the leading minor of order i of a is not positive definite, so the factorization could not be completed, and the solution has not been computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_POSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where a is an n by n symmetric positive definite matrix and x and b are n by nrhs matrices.

The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor A as

```
A = U**T* U if uplo = 'U'
```

or

```
A = L * L**T if UPLO = 'L'
```

where U is an upper triangular matrix and L is a lower triangular matrix. The factored form of A is then used to solve the system of equations `A * X = B`.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_POSV (
   uplo      IN      flag,
   n         IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs      IN      POSITIVEN,
   a         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda       IN      POSITIVEN,
   b         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info      OUT     INTEGER,
   pack      IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_POSV (
   uplo      IN      flag,
   n         IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs      IN      POSITIVEN,
   a         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda       IN      POSITIVEN,
   b         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info      OUT     INTEGER,
   pack      IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–48 LAPACK_POSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
uplo	■ uplo = 'U'. Upper triangular of A is stored. ■ uplo = 'L'. Lower triangular of A is stored.
n	The number of linear equations, that is, the order of the matrix a .n >= 0
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.

Table 259–48 (Cont.) LAPACK_POSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). If uplo = 'U', the leading NRHS n by n upper triangular part of a contains the upper NRHS triangular part of the matrix A, and the strictly lower NRHS triangular part of A is not referenced. If uplo = ''L', then rhs leading n by n lower triangular part of a contains the lower nrhs triangular part of the matrix a, and the strictly upper nrhs triangular part of a is not referenced. On exit, if info = 0, the factor U or L from the Cholesky factorization A = U**T*U or A = L*L**T.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max (1, n)
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the leading minor of order i of a is not positive definite, so the factorization could not be completed, and the solution has not been computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_PPSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where `a` is an n by n symmetric positive definite matrix stored in packed format and `x` and `b` are `n` by `nrhs` matrices.

The Cholesky decomposition is used to factor `A` as

`A = U**T* U` if `UPLO = 'U'`

or

`A = L * L**T` if `UPLO = 'L'`

where **U** is an upper triangular matrix and `L` is a lower triangular matrix. The factored form of `A` is then used to solve the system of equations `A * X = B`.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_PPSV (
   uplo      IN      flag,
   n         IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs      IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   b         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info      OUT     INTEGER,
   pack      IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_PPSV (
   uplo      IN      flag,
   n         IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs      IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   b         IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info      OUT     INTEGER,
   pack      IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–49 LAPACK_PPSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`uplo`	▪ `uplo = 'U'` . Upper triangular of `A` is stored. ▪ `uplo = 'L'`. Lower triangular of `A` is stored.
`n`	The number of linear equations, that is, the order of the matrix `a` .`n >= 0`
`nrhs`	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix `b`. `nrhs >= 0`.

Table 259–49 (Cont.) LAPACK_PPSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n*(n+1)/2). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric matrix a, packed columnwise in a linear array. The j-th column of a is stored in the array ap as follows: If uplo = 'U', AP(i + (j-1)*j/2) = A(i,j) for 1<=i<=j; If uplo = 'L', AP(i + (j-1)*(2n-j)/2) = A(i,j) for j<=i<=n; On exit, if info = 0, the factor U or 'L' from the Cholesky factorization A = U**T*U or A = L*L**T in the same storage format as A.
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the leading minor of order i of a is not positive definite, so the factorization could not be completed, and the solution has not been computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_PTSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where a is an n by n symmetric positive definite tridiagonal matrix, and x and b are n by nrhs matrices.

a is factored as A = L*D*L**T, and the factored form of a is then used to solve the system of equations.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_PTSV (
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN       POSITIVEN,
   d      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   e      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   b      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb    IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag  DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_PTSV (
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN       POSITIVEN,
   d      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   e      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   b      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–50 LAPACK_PTSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.
d	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). On entry, the n diagonal elements of the tridiagonal matrix a. On exit, the n diagonal elements of the diagonal matrix d from the factorization A = L*D*L**T.
e	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n-1). On entry, the (n-1) subdiagonal elements of the tridiagonal matrix a. On exit, the (n-1) diagonal elements of the unit bidiagonal factor L from the factorization A = L*D*L**T of a.(e can also be regarded as the superdiagonal of the unit bidiagonal factor U from the U**T*D*U factorization of a)

Table 259–50 (Cont.) LAPACK_PTSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the leading minor of order i of a is not positive definite, so the factorization could not be completed, and the solution has not been computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SBEV Procedures

This procedure computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric band matrix `A`.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SBEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   kd       IN      NATURALN,
   ab       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldab     IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldz       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SBEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   kd       IN      NATURALN,
   ab       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldab     IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–51 LAPACK_SBEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`jobz`	▪ `'N'`: Compute eigenvalues only. ▪ `'V'`: Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
`uplo`	▪ `'U'`: Upper triangle of A is stored. ▪ `'L'`: Lower triangle of A is stored.
`n`	The order of the matrix `a`. `N >= 0`.
`kd`	The number of superdiagonals of the matrix `A` if `uplo = 'U'`, or the number of subdiagonals if `uplo = 'L'`. `kd >= 0`.

Table 259–51 (Cont.) LAPACK_SBEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ab	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldab, n). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric band matrix A stored in the first kd+1 rows of the array. The j-th column of A is stored in the j-th column of the array ab: ■ If uplo = 'U', ab(kd+1+i-j,j) = a(i,j) for max(1,j-kd)<=i<=j. ■ If uplo = 'L', AB(1+i-j,j) = A(i,j) for j<=i<=min(n,j+kd). On exit, ab is overwritten by values generated during the reduction to tridiagonal form: ■ If uplo = 'U', the diagonal and first superdiagonal of the tridiagonal matrix T are returned in rows kd and kd+1 of ab. ■ If uplo = 'L', the diagonal and first subdiagonal of T are returned in the first two rows of ab.
ldab	The leading dimension of the array ab. ldab >= kd + 1.
w	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). If info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
z	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, z contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix A, with the i-th column of z holding the eigenvector associated with w(i). ■ If jobz = 'N', then z is not referenced.
ldz	The leading dimension of the array z. ldz >= 1, and if jobz = 'v', ldz >= max(1,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SBEVD Procedures

This procedure computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A`. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SBEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   kd       IN      NATURALN,
   ab       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldab     IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldz       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SBEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   kd       IN      NATURALN,
   ab       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldab     IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–52 LAPACK_SBEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`jobz`	▪ `'N'`: Compute eigenvalues only. ▪ `'V'`: Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
`uplo`	▪ `'U'`: Upper triangle of A is stored. ▪ `'L'`: Lower triangle of A is stored.
`n`	The order of the matrix `a. N >= 0`.
`kd`	The number of superdiagonals of the matrix `A` if `uplo = 'U'`, or the number of subdiagonals if `uplo = 'L'. kd >= 0`.

Table 259–52 (Cont.) LAPACK_SBEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ab	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldab, n). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric band matrix A stored in the first kd+1 rows of the array. The j-th column of A is stored in the j-th column of the array ab: ■ If uplo = 'U', ab(kd+1+i-j,j) = a(i,j) for max(1,j-kd)<=i<=j. ■ If uplo = 'L', AB(1+i-j,j) = A(i,j) for j<=i<=min(n,j+kd). On exit, ab is overwritten by values generated during the reduction to tridiagonal form: ■ If uplo = 'U', the diagonal and first superdiagonal of the tridiagonal matrix T are returned in rows kd and kd+1 of ab. ■ If uplo = 'L', the diagonal and first subdiagonal of T are returned in the first two rows of ab.
ldab	The leading dimension of the array ab. ldab >= kd + 1.
w	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz,n). If info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
z	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, z contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix A, with the i-th column of z holding the eigenvector associated with w(i). ■ If jobz = 'N', then z is not referenced.
ldz	The leading dimension of the array z. ldz >= 1, and if jobz = 'v', ldz >= max(1,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SPEV Procedures

This procedure computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A` in packed storage.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SPEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SPEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–53 LAPACK_SPEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`jobz`	▪ `'N'`: Compute eigenvalues only. ▪ `'V'`: Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
`uplo`	▪ `'U'`: Upper triangle of `A` is stored. ▪ `'L'`: Lower triangle of A is stored.
`n`	The order of the matrix `a`. `N >= 0`.

Table 259–53 (Cont.) LAPACK_SPEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n*(n+1)/2). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric matrix a packed columnwise in a linear array. The j-th column of a is stored in the array ap: ■ If uplo = 'U', ap(i + (j-1)*j/2) = a(i,j) for 1<=i<=j. ■ If uplo = 'L', ap(i + (j-1)*(2*n-j)/2) = a(i,j) for j<=i<=n. On exit, ap is overwritten by values generated during the reduction to tridiagonal form: ■ If uplo = 'U', the diagonal and first superdiagonal of the tridiagonal matrix T overwrite the corresponding elements of A. ■ If uplo = 'L', the diagonal and first subdiagonal of T overwrite the corresponding elements of A.
w	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). If info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
z	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz,n). ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, z contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix A, with the i-th column of z holding the eigenvector associated with w(i). ■ If jobz = 'N', then z is not referenced.
ldz	The leading dimension of the array z. ldz >= 1, and if jobz = 'v', ldz >= max(1,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SPEVD Procedures

This procedure computes all the eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix `A` in packed storage. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm. The divide and conquer algorithm makes very mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SPEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldz       IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SPEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–54 LAPACK_SPEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`jobz`	■ `'N'`: Compute eigenvalues only. ■ `'V'`: Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
`uplo`	■ `'U'`: Upper triangle of A is stored. ■ `'L'`: Lower triangle of A is stored.
`n`	The order of the matrix `a. N >= 0`.

Table 259–54 (Cont.) LAPACK_SPEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n*(n+1)/2). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric matrix a packed columnwise in a linear array. The j-th column of a is stored in the array ap: ■ If uplo = 'U', ap(i + (j-1)*j/2) = a(i,j) for 1<=i<=j. ■ If uplo = 'L', ap(i + (j-1)*(2*n-j)/2) = a(i,j) for j<=i<=n. On exit, ap is overwritten by values generated during the reduction to tridiagonal form: ■ If uplo = 'U', the diagonal and first superdiagonal of the tridiagonal matrix T overwrite the corresponding elements of A. ■ If uplo = 'L', the diagonal and first subdiagonal of T overwrite the corresponding elements of A.
w	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). If info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
z	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz,n). ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, z contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix A, with the i-th column of z holding the eigenvector associated with w(i). ■ If jobz = 'N', then z is not referenced.
ldz	The leading dimension of the array z. ldz >= 1, and if jobz = 'v', ldz >= max(1,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SPSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

```
a * x = b
```

where `a` is an n by n symmetric matrix stored in packed format, and `x` and `b` are n by nrhs matrices.

The diagonal pivoting method is used to factor `A` as

`A = U * D * U**T`, if `UPLO = 'U'`

or

`A = L * D * L**T`, if `UPLO = 'L'`

where `U` (or `L`) is a product of permutation and unit upper (lower) triangular matrices, and `D` is symmetric and block diagonal with 1 by 1 and 2 by 2 diagonal blocks. The factored form of `A` is then used to solve the system of equations `A * X = B`.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SPSV (
   uplo    IN      flag,
   n       IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs    IN      POSITIVEN,
   ap      IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ipiv    IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb     IN      POSITIVEN,
   info    OUT     INTEGER,
   pack    IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SPSV (
   uplo   IN       flag,
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN       POSITIVEN,
   ap     IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ipiv   IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–55 LAPACK_SPSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`uplo`	■ `uplo = 'U'`. Upper triangular of `A` is stored. ■ `uplo = 'L'` . Lower triangular of `A` is stored.
`n`	The number of linear equations, which is the order of the matrix `a`. `N >= 0`.
`nrhs`	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix `b`. `nrhs >= 0`.

Table 259–55 (Cont.) LAPACK_SPSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ap	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n*(n+1)/2). On entry, the upper or lower triangle of the symmetric matrix A, packed columnwise in a linear array. The j-th column of A is stored in the array ap as follows: ■ uplo = 'U': AP(i + (j-1)*j/2) = A(i,j) for 1<=i<=j ■ uplo = 'L' : AP(i + (j-1)*(2n-j)/2) = A(i,j) for j<=i<=n See below for further details. On exit, the block diagonal matrix D and the multipliers used to obtain the factor U or L from the factorization A = U*D*U**T or A = L*D*L**T as computed by SSPTRF, stored as a packed triangular matrix in the same storage format as A.
ipiv	INTEGER array, DIMENSION (n). Details of the interchanges and the block structure of d, as determined by SSPTRF. ■ If ipiv(k) > 0, then rows and columns k and ipiv(k) were interchanged, and d(k,k) is a 1 by1 diagonal block. ■ If uplo = 'U' and ipiv(k) = ipiv(k-1) < 0, then rows and columns k-1 and -ipiv(k) were interchanged and d(k-1:k,k-1:k) is a 2 by 2 diagonal block. ■ If uplo = 'L' and ipiv(k) = ipiv(k+1) < 0, then rows and columns k+1 and -ipiv(k) were interchanged and d(k:k+1,k:k+1) is a 2 by 2 diagonal block.
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, d(i,i) is exactly zero. The factorization has been completed, but the block diagonal matrix d is exactly singular, so the solution could not be computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_STEV Procedures

This procedure computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric tridiagonal matrix `A`.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_STEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   d        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   e        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_STEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   d        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   e        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–56 LAPACK_STEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`jobz`	■ `'N'`: Compute eigenvalues only. ■ `'V'`: Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
`n`	The order of the matrix `a. N >= 0`.
`d`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n).` ■ On entry, the `n` diagonal elements of the tridiagonal matrix `A`. ■ On exit, if `info = 0`, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
`e`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n).` ■ On entry, the `(n-1)` subdiagonal elements of the tridiagonal matrix `A`, stored in elements 1 to `n-1` of `e`. `e(n)` need not be set, but is used by the subprogram. ■ On exit, the contents of `e` are destroyed.
`z`	`UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz, n).` ■ If `jobz = 'V'`, then if `info = 0`, `z` contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix `A`, with the `i`-th column of `z` holding the eigenvector associated with `d(i)`. ■ If `jobz = 'N'`, then `z` is not referenced.

Table 259–56 (Cont.) LAPACK_STEV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ldz	The leading dimension of the array z. ldz >= 1, and if jobz = 'v', ldz >= max(1,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_STEVD Procedures

This procedure computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric tridiagonal matrix. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_STEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   d        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   e        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_STEVD(
   jobz     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   d        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   e        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   z        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldz      IN      POSITIVEN,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–57 LAPACK_STEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobz	■ 'N': Compute eigenvalues only. ■ 'V': Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
d	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). ■ On entry, the n diagonal elements of the tridiagonal matrix A. ■ On exit, if info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
e	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). ■ On entry, the (n-1) subdiagonal elements of the tridiagonal matrix A, stored in elements 1 to n-1 of e. e(n) need not be set, but is used by the subprogram. ■ On exit, the contents of e are destroyed.
z	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldz, n). ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, z contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix A, with the i-th column of z holding the eigenvector associated with d(i). ■ If jobz = 'N', then z is not referenced.

Table 259–57 (Cont.) LAPACK_STEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
ldz	The leading dimension of the array z. ldz >= 1, and if jobz = 'v', ldz >= max(1,n).
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SYEV Procedures

This procedure computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix A.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SYEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   a        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda      IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SYEV (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   a        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda      IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–58 LAPACK_SYEV Procedure Parameters

Paramete	Description
jobz	■ 'N': Compute eigenvalues only. ■ 'V': Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
uplo	■ 'U': Upper triangle of A is stored. ■ 'L': Upper triangle of A is stored.
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). On entry, the symmetric matrix a: ■ If uplo = 'U', the leading n by n upper triangular part of a contains the upper triangular part of the matrix a. ■ If uplo = 'L', the leading n byn lower triangular part of a contains the lower triangular part of the matrix a. On exit: ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, a contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix a. ■ If jobz = 'N', then on exit the lower triangle (if uplo = 'L') or the upper triangle (if uplo='U') of a, including the diagonal, is destroyed.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n).

Table 259–58 (Cont.) LAPACK_SYEV Procedure Parameters

Paramete	Description
w	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). If info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SYEVD Procedures

This procedure computes all eigenvalues and, optionally, eigenvectors of a real symmetric matrix A. If eigenvectors are desired, it uses a divide and conquer algorithm that makes mild assumptions about floating point arithmetic.

See Also: LAPACK Driver Routines (LLS and Eigenvalue Problems) Subprograms on page 259-12 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SYEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   a        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda      IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SYEVD (
   jobz     IN      flag,
   uplo     IN      flag,
   n        IN      POSITIVEN,
   a        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda      IN      POSITIVEN,
   w        IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   info     OUT     INTEGER,
   pack     IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–59 LAPACK_SYEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
jobz	■ 'N': Compute eigenvalues only. ■ 'V': Compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
uplo	■ 'U' : Upper triangle of A is stored. ■ 'L': Upper triangle of A is stored.
n	The order of the matrix a. N >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (lda, n). On entry, the symmetric matrix a: ■ If uplo = 'U', the leading n by n upper triangular part of a contains the upper triangular part of the matrix a. ■ If uplo = 'L', the leading n byn lower triangular part of a contains the lower triangular part of the matrix a. On exit: ■ If jobz = 'V', then if info = 0, a contains the orthonormal eigenvectors of the matrix a. ■ If jobz = 'N', then on exit the lower triangle (if uplo = 'L') or the upper triangle (if uplo = 'U') of a, including the diagonal, is destroyed.

Table 259–59 (Cont.) LAPACK_SYEVD Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n).
w	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n). If info = 0, the eigenvalues in ascending order.
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i, the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, the algorithm failed to converge; i off-diagonal elements of an intermediate tridiagonal form did not converge to zero
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

LAPACK_SYSV Procedures

This procedure computes the solution to a real system of linear equations

`a * x = b`

where `a` is an n by n symmetric matrix, and `x` and `b` are n by nrhs matrices.

The diagonal pivoting method is used to factor `A` as

`A = U * D * U**T`, if `UPLO = 'U'`

or

`A = L * D * L**T`, if `UPLO = 'L'`

where `U` (or `L`) is a product of permutation and unit upper (lower) triangular matrices, and `D` is symmetric and block diagonal with 1 by 1 and 2 by 2 diagonal blocks. The factored form of `A` is then used to solve the system of equations `A * X = B`.

> **See Also:** LAPACK Driver Routines (Linear Equations) Subprograms on page 259-11 for other subprograms in this group

Syntax

```
UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SYSV (
   uplo    IN      flag,
   n       IN      POSITIVEN,
   nrhs    IN      POSITIVEN,
   a       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   lda     IN      POSITIVEN,
   ipiv    IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b       IN OUT  UTL_NLA_ARRAY_DBL,
   ldb     IN      POSITIVEN,
   info    OUT     INTEGER,
   pack    IN      flag DEFAULT 'C');

UTL_NLA.LAPACK_SYSV (
   uplo   IN       flag,
   n      IN       POSITIVEN,
   nrhs   IN       POSITIVEN,
   a      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   lda    IN       POSITIVEN,
   ipiv   IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_INT,
   b      IN OUT   UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT,
   ldb    IN       POSITIVEN,
   info   OUT      INTEGER,
   pack   IN       flag DEFAULT 'C');
```

Parameters

Table 259–60 LAPACK_SYSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`uplo`	▪ `uplo = 'U'`. Upper triangular of `A` is stored. ▪ `uplo = 'L'` . Lower triangular of `A` is stored.
`n`	The number of linear equations, which is the order of the matrix `a`. `N >= 0`.

Table 259–60 (Cont.) LAPACK_SYSV Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
nrhs	The number of right-hand sides, which is the number of columns of the matrix b. nrhs >= 0.
a	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (n-1). On entry, the symmetric matrix a. If UPLO = 'U', the leading n by n upper triangular part of a contains the upper triangular part of the matrix a, and the strictly lower triangular part of a is not referenced. If uplo = 'L', the leading n by n lower triangular part of a contains the lower triangular part of the matrix a, and the strictly upper triangular part of a is not referenced. On exit, if info = 0, the block diagonal matrix d and the multipliers used to obtain the factor U or L from the factorization A = U*D*U**T or A = L*D*L**T as computed by SSYTRF.
lda	The leading dimension of the array a. lda >= max(1,n)
ipiv	INTEGER array, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). Details of the interchanges and the block structure of d, as determined by SSYTRF. ■ If ipiv(k) > 0, then rows and columns k and ipiv(k) were interchanged, and d(k,k) is a 1 by1 diagonal block. ■ If uplo = 'U' and ipiv(k) = ipiv(k-1) < 0, then rows and columns k-1 and -ipiv(k) were interchanged and d(k-1:k,k-1:k) is a 2 by 2 diagonal block. ■ If uplo = 'L' and ipiv(k) = ipiv(k+1) < 0, then rows and columns k+1 and -ipiv(k) were interchanged and d(k:k+1,k:k+1) is a 2 by 2 diagonal block.
b	UTL_NLA_ARRAY_FLT/DBL, DIMENSION (ldb, nrhs). On entry, the n by nrhs matrix of right hand side matrix b. On exit, if info = 0 , the n by nrhs solution matrix X.
ldb	The leading dimension of the array b. ldb >= max(1,n)
info	■ = 0 : successful exit ■ < 0 : if info = -i , the i-th argument had an illegal value ■ > 0 : if info = i, d(i,i) is exactly zero. The factorization has been completed, but the block diagonal matrix d is exactly singular, so the solution could not be computed.
pack	(Optional) Flags the packing of the matrices: ■ 'C': column-major (default) ■ 'R': row-major

260

UTL_RAW

The `UTL_RAW` package provides SQL functions for manipulating `RAW` datatypes.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_RAW

Overview

This package is necessary because normal SQL functions do not operate on RAWs, and PL/SQL does not allow overloading between a RAW and a CHAR datatype. UTL_RAW also includes subprograms that convert various COBOL number formats to, and from, RAWs.

UTL_RAW is not specific to the database environment, and it may actually be used in other environments. For this reason, the prefix UTL has been given to the package, instead of DBMS.

Operational Notes

UTL_RAW allows a RAW "record" to be composed of many elements. By using the RAW datatype, character set conversion will not be performed, keeping the RAW in its original format when being transferred through remote procedure calls.

With the RAW functions, you can manipulate binary data that was previously limited to the hextoraw and rawtohex functions.

Note: Notes on datatypes:

- The PLS_INTEGER and BINARY_INTEGER datatypes are identical. This document uses BINARY_INTEGER to indicate datatypes in reference information (such as for table types, record types, subprogram parameters, or subprogram return values), but may use either in discussion and examples.
- The INTEGER and NUMBER(38) datatypes are also identical. This document uses INTEGER throughout.

Summary of UTL_RAW Subprograms

Table 260–1 UTL_RAW Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BIT_AND Function on page 260-7	Performs bitwise logical "and" of the values in RAW r1 with RAW r2 and returns the "anded" result RAW
BIT_COMPLEMENT Function on page 260-8	Performs bitwise logical "complement" of the values in RAW r and returns the "complement'ed" result RAW
BIT_OR Function on page 260-9	Performs bitwise logical "or" of the values in RAW r1 with RAW r2 and returns the "or'd" result RAW
BIT_XOR Function on page 260-10	Performs bitwise logical "exclusive or" of the values in RAW r1 with RAW r2 and returns the "xor'd" result RAW
CAST_FROM_BINARY_DOUBLE Function on page 260-11	Returns the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_DOUBLE value
CAST_FROM_BINARY_FLOAT Function on page 260-13	Returns the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_FLOAT value
CAST_FROM_BINARY_INTEGER Function on page 260-14	Returns the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_INTEGER value
CAST_FROM_NUMBER Function on page 260-15	Returns the RAW binary representation of a NUMBER value
CAST_TO_BINARY_DOUBLE Function on page 260-16	Casts the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_DOUBLE into a BINARY_DOUBLE
CAST_TO_BINARY_FLOAT Function on page 260-18	Casts the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_FLOAT into a BINARY_FLOAT
CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER Function on page 260-20	Casts the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_INTEGER into a BINARY_INTEGER
CAST_TO_NUMBER Function on page 260-21	Casts the RAW binary representation of a NUMBER into a NUMBER
CAST_TO_NVARCHAR2 Function on page 260-22	Converts a RAW value into a VARCHAR2 value
CAST_TO_RAW Function on page 260-23	Converts a VARCHAR2 value into a RAW value
CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 Function on page 260-24	Converts a RAW value into a VARCHAR2 value
COMPARE Function on page 260-25	Compares RAW r1 against RAW r2
CONCAT Function on page 260-26	Concatenates up to 12 RAWs into a single RAW
CONVERT Function on page 260-27	Converts RAW r from character set from_charset to character set to_charset and returns the resulting RAW
COPIES Function on page 260-29	Returns n copies of r concatenated together
LENGTH Function on page 260-30	Returns the length in bytes of a RAW r

Table 260–1 (Cont.) UTL_RAW Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
OVERLAY Function on page 260-31	Overlays the specified portion of target `RAW` with overlay `RAW`, starting from byte position `pos` of target and proceeding for `len` bytes
REVERSE Function on page 260-33	Reverses a byte sequence in `RAW r` from end to end
SUBSTR Function on page 260-34	Returns `len` bytes, starting at `pos` from `RAW r`
TRANSLATE Function on page 260-36	Translates the bytes in the input `RAW r` according to the bytes in the translation `RAWs from_set` and `to_set`
TRANSLITERATE Function on page 260-38	Converts the bytes in the input `RAW r` according to the bytes in the transliteration `RAWs from_set` and `to_set`
XRANGE Function on page 260-40	Returns a `RAW` containing all valid 1-byte encodings in succession, beginning with the value `start_byte` and ending with the value `end_byte`

BIT_AND Function

This function performs bitwise logical "and" of the values in RAW r1 with RAW r2 and returns the "anded" result RAW.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.BIT_AND (
   r1 IN RAW,
   r2 IN RAW)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(bit_and, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–2 BIT_AND Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r1	RAW to "and" with r2
r2	RAW to "and" with r1

Return Values

Table 260–3 BIT_AND Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Containing the "and" of r1 and r2
NULL	Either r1 or r2 input parameter was NULL

Usage Notes

If r1 and r2 differ in length, the and operation is terminated after the last byte of the shorter of the two RAWs, and the unprocessed portion of the longer RAW is appended to the partial result. The result length equals the longer of the two input RAWs.

BIT_COMPLEMENT Function

This function performs bitwise logical "complement" of the values in `RAW r` and returns the complement'ed result `RAW`. The result length equals the input `RAW r` length.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.BIT_COMPLEMENT (
   r IN RAW)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(bit_complement, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–4 BIT_COMPLEMENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	`RAW` to perform "complement" operation

Return Values

Table 260–5 BIT_COMPLEMENT Function Return Values

Return	Description
`RAW`	The "complement" of `r1`
`NULL`	If `r` input parameter was `NULL`

BIT_OR Function

This function performs bitwise logical "or" of the values in RAW r1 with RAW r2 and returns the or'd result RAW.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.BIT_OR (
   r1 IN RAW,
   r2 IN RAW)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(bit_or, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–6 BIT_OR Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
r1	RAW to "or" with r2
r2	RAW to "or" with r1

Return Values

Table 260–7 BIT_OR Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Containing the "or" of r1 and r2
NULL	Either r1 or r2 input parameter was NULL

Usage Notes

If r1 and r2 differ in length, then the "or" operation is terminated after the last byte of the shorter of the two RAWs, and the unprocessed portion of the longer RAW is appended to the partial result. The result length equals the longer of the two input RAWs.

BIT_XOR Function

This function performs bitwise logical "exclusive or" of the values in RAW r1 with RAW r2 and returns the xor'd result RAW.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.BIT_XOR (
   r1 IN RAW,
   r2 IN RAW)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(bit_xor, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–8 BIT_XOR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r1	RAW to "xor" with r2
r2	RAW to "xor" with r1

Return Values

Table 260–9 BIT_XOR Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Containing the "xor" of r1 and r2
NULL	If either r1 or r2 input parameter was NULL

Usage Notes

If r1 and r2 differ in length, then the "xor" operation is terminated after the last byte of the shorter of the two RAWs, and the unprocessed portion of the longer RAW is appended to the partial result. The result length equals the longer of the two input RAWs.

CAST_FROM_BINARY_DOUBLE Function

This function returns the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_DOUBLE value.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_FROM_BINARY_DOUBLE(
   n          IN BINARY_DOUBLE,
   endianess IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_from_binary_double, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–10 CAST_FROM_BINARY_DOUBLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	BINARY_DOUBLE value
endianess	A BINARY_INTEGER value indicating the endianess. The function recognizes the defined constants big_endian (1), little_endian (2), and machine_endian (3). The default is big_endian. A setting of machine_endian has the same effect as big_endian on a big endian machine, or the same effect as little_endian on a little endian machine.

Return Values

The binary representation of the BINARY_DOUBLE value, or NULL if the input is NULL.

Usage Notes

- An 8-byte binary_double value maps to the IEEE 754 double-precision format as follows:

```
byte 0: bit 63 ~ bit 56
byte 1: bit 55 ~ bit 48
byte 2: bit 47 ~ bit 40
byte 3: bit 39 ~ bit 32
byte 4: bit 31 ~ bit 24
byte 5: bit 23 ~ bit 16
byte 6: bit 15 ~ bit  8
byte 7: bit  7 ~ bit  0
```

- The parameter endianess describes how the bytes of BINARY_DOUBLE are mapped to the bytes of RAW. In the following matrix, rb0 ~ rb7 refer to the bytes in raw and db0 ~ db7 refer to the bytes in BINARY_DOUBLE.

	rb0	rb1	rb2	rb3	rb4	rb5	rb6	rb7
big_endian	db0	db1	db2	db3	db4	db5	db6	db7
little_endian	db7	db6	db5	db4	db3	db2	db1	db0

- In case of machine-endian, the 8 bytes of the `BINARY_DOUBLE` argument are copied straight across into the `RAW` return value. The effect is the same if the user has passed `big_endian` on a big-endian machine, or `little_endian` on a little-endian machine.

CAST_FROM_BINARY_FLOAT Function

This function returns the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_FLOAT value.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_FROM_BINARY_FLOAT(
   n          IN BINARY_FLOAT,
   endianess IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_from_binary_float, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–11 CAST_FROM_BINARY_FLOAT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	BINARY_FLOAT value
endianess	A BINARY_INTEGER value indicating the endianess. The function recognizes the defined constants big_endian (1), little_endian (2), and machine_endian (3). The default is big_endian. A setting of machine_endian has the same effect as big_endian on a big endian machine, or the same effect as little_endian on a little endian machine.

Return Values

The binary representation (RAW) of the BINARY_FLOAT value, or NULL if the input is NULL.

Usage Notes

- A 4-byte binary_float value maps to the IEEE 754 single-precision format as follows:

```
byte 0: bit 31 ~ bit 24
byte 1: bit 23 ~ bit 16
byte 2: bit 15 ~ bit  8
byte 3: bit 7 ~  bit  0
```

- The parameter endianess describes how the bytes of BINARY_FLOAT are mapped to the bytes of RAW. In the following matrix, rb0 ~ rb3 refer to the bytes in RAW and fb0 ~ fb3 refer to the bytes in BINARY_FLOAT.

	rb0	rb1	rb2	rb3
big_endian	fb0	fb1	fb2	fb3
little_endian	fb3	fb2	fb1	fb0

- In case of machine-endian, the 4 bytes of the BINARY_FLOAT argument are copied straight across into the RAW return value. The effect is the same if the user has passed big_endian on a big-endian machine, or little_endian on a little-endian machine.

CAST_FROM_BINARY_INTEGER Function

This function returns the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_INTEGER value.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_FROM_BINARY_INTEGER (
   n          IN BINARY_INTEGER
   endianess  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT BIG_ENDIAN)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_from_binary_integer, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–12 CAST_FROM_BINARY_INTEGER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	BINARY_INTEGER value.
endianess	A BINARY_INTEGER value indicating the endianess. The function recognizes the defined constants big_endian (1), little_endian (2), and machine_endian (3). The default is big_endian. A setting of machine_endian has the same effect as big_endian on a big endian machine, or the same effect as little_endian on a little endian machine.

Return Values

The binary representation of the BINARY_INTEGER value.

CAST_FROM_NUMBER Function

This function returns the RAW binary representation of a NUMBER value.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_FROM_NUMBER (
   n  IN NUMBER)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_from_number, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–13 CAST_FROM_NUMBER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
n	NUMBER value

Return Values

The binary representation of the NUMBER value.

CAST_TO_BINARY_DOUBLE Function

This function casts the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_DOUBLE into a BINARY_DOUBLE.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_DOUBLE (
   r          IN RAW
   endianess  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
RETURN BINARY_DOUBLE;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_binary_double, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–14 CAST_TO_BINARY_DOUBLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	Binary representation of a BINARY_DOUBLE
endianess	A PLS_INTEGER representing big-endian or little-endian architecture. The default is big-endian.

Return Values

The BINARY_DOUBLE value.

Usage Notes

- If the RAW argument is more than 8 bytes, only the first 8 bytes are used and the rest of the bytes are ignored. If the result is -0, +0 is returned. If the result is NaN, the value BINARY_DOUBLE_NAN is returned.
- If the RAW argument is less than 8 bytes, a VALUE_ERROR exception is raised.
- An 8-byte binary_double value maps to the IEEE 754 double-precision format as follows:

```
byte 0: bit 63 ~ bit 56
byte 1: bit 55 ~ bit 48
byte 2: bit 47 ~ bit 40
byte 3: bit 39 ~ bit 32
byte 4: bit 31 ~ bit 24
byte 5: bit 23 ~ bit 16
byte 6: bit 15 ~ bit  8
byte 7: bit  7 ~ bit  0
```

- The parameter endianess describes how the bytes of BINARY_DOUBLE are mapped to the bytes of RAW. In the following matrix, rb0 ~ rb7 refer to the bytes in raw and db0 ~ db7 refer to the bytes in BINARY_DOUBLE.

	rb0	rb1	rb2	rb3	rb4	rb5	rb6	rb7
big_endian	db0	db1	db2	db3	db4	db5	db6	db7
little_endian	db7	db6	db5	db4	db3	db2	db1	db0

- In case of machine-endian, the 8 bytes of the `RAW` argument are copied straight across into the `BINARY_DOUBLE` return value. The effect is the same if the user has passed `big_endian` on a big-endian machine, or `little_endian` on a little-endian machine.

CAST_TO_BINARY_FLOAT Function

This function casts the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_FLOAT into a BINARY_FLOAT.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_FLOAT (
   r          IN RAW
   endianess  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
RETURN BINARY_FLOAT;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_binary_float, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–15 CAST_TO_BINARY_FLOAT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	Binary representation of a BINARY_FLOAT
endianess	A PLS_INTEGER representing big-endian or little-endian architecture. The default is big-endian.

Return Values

The BINARY_FLOAT value.

Usage Notes

- If the RAW argument is more than 4 bytes, only the first 4 bytes are used and the rest of the bytes are ignored. If the result is -0, +0 is returned. If the result is NaN, the value BINARY_FLOAT_NAN is returned.
- If the RAW argument is less than 4 bytes, a VALUE_ERROR exception is raised.
- A 4-byte binary_float value maps to the IEEE 754 single-precision format as follows:

```
byte 0: bit 31 ~ bit 24
byte 1: bit 23 ~ bit 16
byte 2: bit 15 ~ bit  8
byte 3: bit 7 ~  bit  0
```

- The parameter endianess describes how the bytes of BINARY_FLOAT are mapped to the bytes of RAW. In the following matrix, rb0 ~ rb3 refer to the bytes in RAW and fb0 ~ fb3 refer to the bytes in BINARY_FLOAT.

	rb0	rb1	rb2	rb3
big_endian	fbo	fb1	fb2	fb3
little_endian	fb3	fb2	fb1	fb0

- In case of machine-endian, the 4 bytes of the RAW argument are copied straight across into the BINARY_FLOAT return value. The effect is the same if the user has

passed `big_endian` on a big-endian machine, or `little_endian` on a little-endian machine.

CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER Function

This function casts the RAW binary representation of a BINARY_INTEGER into a BINARY_INTEGER.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER (
   r          IN RAW
   endianess  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT BIG_ENDIAN)
RETURN BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_binary_integer, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–16 CAST_TO_BINARY_INTEGER Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	Binary representation of a BINARY_INTEGER
endianess	A PLS_INTEGER representing big-endian or little-endian architecture. The default is big-endian.

Return Values

The BINARY_INTEGER value

CAST_TO_NUMBER Function

This function casts the RAW binary representation of a NUMBER into a NUMBER.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_NUMBER (
   r  IN RAW)
 RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_number, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–17 CAST_TO_NUMBER function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	Binary representation of a NUMBER

Return Values

The NUMBER value.

CAST_TO_NVARCHAR2 Function

This function converts a RAW value represented using some number of data bytes into an NVARCHAR2 value with that number of data bytes.

> **Note:** When casting to a NVARCHAR2, the current Globalization Support character set is used for the characters within that NVARCHAR2 value.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_NVARCHAR2 (
   r IN RAW)
RETURN NVARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_NVARCHAR2, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–18 CAST_TO_NVARCHAR2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW (without leading length field) to be changed to a NVARCHAR2)

Return Values

Table 260–19 CAST_TO_NVARCHAR2 Function Return Values

Return	Description
NVARCHAR2	Containing having the same data as the input RAW
NULL	If r input parameter was NULL

CAST_TO_RAW Function

This function converts a VARCHAR2 value represented using some number of data bytes into a RAW value with that number of data bytes. The data itself is not modified in any way, but its datatype is recast to a RAW datatype.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_RAW (
   c  IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_raw, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–20 CAST_TO_RAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	VARCHAR2 to be changed to a RAW

Return Values

Table 260–21 CAST_TO_RAW Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Containing the same data as the input VARCHAR2 and equal byte length as the input VARCHAR2 and without a leading length field
NULL	If c input parameter was NULL

CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 Function

This function converts a RAW value represented using some number of data bytes into a VARCHAR2 value with that number of data bytes.

> **Note:** When casting to a VARCHAR2, the current Globalization Support character set is used for the characters within that VARCHAR2.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 (
   r IN RAW)
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(cast_to_VARCHAR2, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–22 CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW (without leading length field) to be changed to a VARCHAR2

Return Values

Table 260–23 CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 Function Return Values

Return	Description
VARCHAR2	Containing having the same data as the input RAW
NULL	If r input parameter was NULL

COMPARE Function

This function compares two RAW values. If they differ in length, then the shorter is extended on the right according to the optional pad parameter.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.COMPARE (
   r1  IN RAW,
   r2  IN RAW,
   pad IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(compare, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–24 COMPARE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r1	1st RAW to be compared, may be NULL or 0 length
r2	2nd RAW to be compared, may be NULL or 0 length
pad	This is an optional parameter. Byte to extend whichever of r1 or r2 is shorter. The default: x'00'

Return Values

Table 260–25 COMPARE Function Return Values

Return	Description
NUMBER	Equals 0 if RAW byte strings are both NULL or identical; or, Equals position (numbered from 1) of the first mismatched byte

CONCAT Function

This function concatenates up to 12 RAWs into a single RAW. If the concatenated size exceeds 32K, then an error is returned

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CONCAT (
   r1  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r2  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r3  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r4  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r5  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r6  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r7  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r8  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r9  IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r10 IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r11 IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   r12 IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(concat, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

r1....r12 are the RAW items to concatenate.

Return Values

Table 260–26 CONCAT Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Containing the items concatenated

Exceptions

There is an error if the sum of the lengths of the inputs exceeds the maximum allowable length for a RAW, which is 32767 bytes.

CONVERT Function

This function converts RAW r from character set from_charset to character set to_charset and returns the resulting RAW.

Both from_charset and to_charset must be supported character sets defined to the Oracle server.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.CONVERT (
   r            IN RAW,
   to_charset   IN VARCHAR2,
   from_charset IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(convert, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–27 CONVERT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW byte-string to be converted
to_charset	Name of the character set to which r is converted
from_charset	Name of the character set in which r is supplied

Return Values

Table 260–28 CONVERT Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Byte string r converted according to the specified character sets.

Exceptions

Table 260–29 CONVERT Function Exceptions

Error	Description
ORA-06502	PL/SQL: numeric or value error
ORA-12703	This character set conversion is not supported
ORA-12705	Cannot access NLS data files or invalid environment specified

Usage Notes

- The NLS_LANG parameter form *language_territory.character set* is also accepted for to_charset and from_charset. However, this form is deprecated and should be avoided. Note that *language* and *territory* are ignored by this subprogram.
- The converted value is silently truncated if it exceeds the maximum length of a RAW value, which is 32767 bytes. Do not convert values longer than floor(32767/4) = 8191 bytes if you want to avoid this truncation for all possible combinations of to_

`charset` and `from_charset`. You can use the maximum character width of the target character set `to_charset`, if known, to expand the limit to a less pessimistic value. For example, if the target character set is ZHS16GBK, the maximum safe source string length is floor(32767/2) = 16383 bytes. For single-byte target character sets, no truncation is ever necessary.

COPIES Function

This function returns n copies of r concatenated together.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.COPIES (
   r IN RAW,
   n IN NUMBER)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(copies, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–30 COPIES Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
r	RAW to be copied
n	Number of times to copy the RAW (must be positive)

Return Values

This returns the RAW copied n times.

Exceptions

Table 260–31 COPIES Function Exceptions

Error	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Either: - r is missing, NULL or 0 length - n < 1 - Length of result exceeds maximum length of a RAW

LENGTH Function

This function returns the length in bytes of a `RAW` `r`.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.LENGTH (
   r  IN RAW)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(length, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–32 LENGTH Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`r`	`RAW` byte stream to be measured

Return Values

Table 260–33 LENGTH Function Return Values

Return	Description
`NUMBER`	Current length of the `RAW`

OVERLAY Function

This function overlays the specified portion of target RAW with overlay_str RAW, starting from byte position pos of target and proceeding for len bytes.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.OVERLAY (
   overlay_str IN RAW,
   target      IN RAW,
   pos         IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   len         IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   pad         IN RAW            DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(overlay, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–34 OVERLAY Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
overlay_str	Byte-string used to overlay target
target	Byte-string which is to be overlaid
pos	Position in target (numbered from 1) to start overlay
len	The number of target bytes to overlay
pad	Pad byte used when overlay len exceeds overlay_str length or pos exceeds target length

Defaults and Optional Parameters

Table 260–35 OVERLAY Function Optional Parameters

Optional Parameter	Description
pos	1
len	To the length of overlay_str
pad	x'00'

Return Values

Table 260–36 OVERLAY Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	The target byte_string overlaid as specified.

Usage Notes

If overlay_str has less than len bytes, then it is extended to len bytes using the pad byte. If overlay_str exceeds len bytes, then the extra bytes in overlay_str are

ignored. If len bytes beginning at position pos of target exceeds the length of target, then target is extended to contain the entire length of overlay_str.

If len is specified, it must be greater than or equal to 0. If pos is specified, it must be greater than or equal to 1. If pos exceeds the length of target, then target is padded with pad bytes to position pos, and target is further extended with overlay_str bytes.

Exceptions

Table 260–37 OVERLAY Function Exceptions

Error	Description
VALUE_ERROR	Either: - Overlay_str is NULL or has 0 length - Target is missing or undefined - Length of target exceeds maximum length of a RAW - len < 0 - pos < 1

REVERSE Function

This function reverses a byte sequence in RAW r from end to end. For example, x'0102F3' would be reversed to x'F30201', and 'xyz' would be reversed to 'zyx'.The result length is the same as the input RAW length.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.REVERSE (
   r IN RAW)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(reverse, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–38 REVERSE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW to reverse

Return Values

Table 260–39 REVERSE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Containing the "reverse" of r

Exceptions

Table 260–40 REVERSE Function Exceptions

Error	Description
VALUE_ERROR	R is NULL or has 0 length

SUBSTR Function

This function returns len bytes, starting at pos from RAW r.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.SUBSTR (
   r   IN RAW,
   pos IN BINARY_INTEGER,
   len IN BINARY_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(substr, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–41 SUBSTR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW byte-string from which a portion is extracted
pos	Byte position in r at which to begin extraction
len	Number of bytes from pos to extract from r (optional)

Defaults and Optional Parameters

Table 260–42 SUBSTR Function Optional Parameter

Optional Parameter	Description
len	Position pos through to the end of r

Return Values

Table 260–43 SUBSTR Function Return Values

Return	Description
portion of r	Beginning at pos for len bytes long
NULL	r input parameter was NULL

Usage Notes

- If pos is positive, then SUBSTR counts from the beginning of r to find the first byte. If pos is negative, then SUBSTR counts backward from the end of the r. The value pos cannot be 0.
- If len is omitted, then SUBSTR returns all bytes to the end of r. The value len cannot be less than 1.

Exceptions

Table 260–44 SUBSTR Function Exceptions

Error	Description
VALUE_ERROR	VALUE_ERROR is returned if: ■ pos = 0 or > length of r ■ len < 1 or > length of r - (pos-1)

TRANSLATE Function

This function translates the bytes in the input RAW r according to the bytes in the translation RAWs from_set and to_set. If a byte in r has a matching byte in from_set, then it is replaced by the byte in the corresponding position in to_set, or deleted.

Bytes in r, but undefined in from_set, are copied to the result. Only the first (leftmost) occurrence of a byte in from_set is used. Subsequent duplicates are not scanned and are ignored.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.TRANSLATE (
   r        IN RAW,
   from_set IN RAW,
   to_set   IN RAW)
  RETURN RAW;
```

> **Note:** Be aware that *to_set* and *from_set* are reversed in the calling sequence compared to TRANSLITERATE.

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(translate, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–45 TRANSLATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW source byte-string to be translated
from_set	RAW byte-codes to be translated, if present in r
to_set	RAW byte-codes to which corresponding from_str bytes are translated

Return Values

Table 260–46 TRANSLATE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Translated byte-string

Usage Notes

- If to_set is shorter than from_set, the extra from_set bytes have no corresponding translation bytes. Bytes from the input RAW that match any such from_set bytes are not translated or included in the result. They are effectively translated to NULL.
- If to_set is longer than from_set, the extra to_set bytes are ignored.
- If a byte value is repeated in from_set, the repeated occurrence is ignored.

Note: Differences from the TRANSLITERATE Function:

- The `from_set` parameter comes before the `to_set` parameter in the calling sequence.
- Bytes from `r` that appear in `from_set` but have no corresponding values in `to_set` are not translated or included in the result.
- The resulting `RAW` value may be shorter than the input `RAW` value.

Note that `TRANSLATE` and `TRANSLITERATE` only differ in functionality when `to_set` has fewer bytes than `from_set`.

Exceptions

Table 260–47 TRANSLATE Function Exceptions

Error	Description
`VALUE_ERROR`	Either: - `r` is `NULL` or has 0 length - `from_set` is `NULL` or has 0 length - `to_set` is `NULL` or has 0 length

TRANSLITERATE Function

This function converts the bytes in the input RAW r according to the bytes in the transliteration RAWs from_set and to_set. Successive bytes in r are looked up in the from_set, and, if not found, copied unaltered to the result RAW. If found, then they are replaced in the result RAW by either corresponding bytes in the to_set, or the pad byte when no correspondence exists.

Bytes in r, but undefined in from_set, are copied to the result. Only the first (leftmost) occurrence of a byte in from_set is used. Subsequent duplicates are not scanned and are ignored. The result RAW is always the same length as r.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.TRANSLITERATE (
   r        IN RAW,
   to_set   IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   from_set IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   pad      IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Note: Be aware that *to_set* and *from_set* are reversed in the calling sequence compared to TRANSLATE.

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(transliterate, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–48 TRANSLITERATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
r	RAW input byte-string to be converted
to_set	RAW byte-codes to which corresponding from_set bytes are converted (any length)
from_set	RAW byte-codes to be converted, if presenting r (any length)
pad	1 byte used when to-set is shorter than the from_set

Defaults and Optional Parameters

Table 260–49 TRANSLITERATE Function Optional Parameters

Optional Parameter	Description
to_set	To the NULL string and effectively extended with pad to the length of from_set as necessary
from_set	x'00' through x'fff'
pad	x'00'

Return Values

Table 260–50 TRANSLITERATE Function Return Values

Return	Description
RAW	Converted byte-string.

Usage Notes

- If to_set is shorter than from_set, the extra from_set bytes have no corresponding conversion bytes. Bytes from the input RAW that match any such from_set bytes are converted in the result to the pad byte instead.
- If to_set is longer than from_set, the extra to_set bytes are ignored.
- If a byte value is repeated in from_set, the repeated occurrence is ignored.

Note: Differences from the TRANSLATE Function:

- The to_set parameter comes before the from_set parameter in the calling sequence.
- Bytes from r that appear in from_set but have no corresponding values in to_set are replaced by pad in the result.
- The resulting RAW value always has the same length as the input RAW value.

Note that TRANSLATE and TRANSLITERATE only differ in functionality when to_set has fewer bytes than from_set.

Exceptions

Table 260–51 TRANSLITERATE Function Exceptions

Error	Description
VALUE_ERROR	R is NULL or has 0 length

XRANGE Function

This function returns a RAW `value` containing the succession of one-byte encodings beginning and ending with the specified byte-codes. The specified byte-codes must be single-byte `RAW` values. If the `start_byte` value is greater than the `end_byte` value, then the succession of resulting bytes begins with `start_byte`, wraps through `x'FF'` back to `x'00'`, then ends at `end_byte`.

Syntax

```
UTL_RAW.XRANGE (
   start_byte IN RAW DEFAULT NULL,
   end_byte   IN RAW DEFAULT NULL)
  RETURN RAW;
```

Pragmas

```
pragma restrict_references(xrange, WNDS, RNDS, WNPS, RNPS);
```

Parameters

Table 260–52 XRANGE Function Parameters

Parameters	Description
`start_byte`	Beginning byte-code value of resulting sequence. The default is `x'00'`.
`end_byte`	Ending byte-code value of resulting sequence. The default is `x'FF'`.

Return Values

Table 260–53 XRANGE Function Return Values

Return	Description
`RAW`	Containing succession of 1-byte hexadecimal encodings

261

UTL_RECOMP

The UTL_RECOMP package recompiles invalid PL/SQL modules, invalid views, Java classes, indextypes and operators in a database, either sequentially or in parallel.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_RECOMP

Overview

This script is particularly useful after a major-version upgrade that typically invalidates all PL/SQL and Java objects. Although invalid objects are recompiled automatically on use, it is useful to run this script prior to operation because this will either eliminate or minimize subsequent latencies due to on-demand automatic recompilation at runtime.

Parallel recompilation can exploit multiple CPUs to reduce the time taken to recompile invalid objects. The degree of parallelism is specified by the first argument to RECOMP_PARALLEL Procedure.

In general, a parallelism setting of one thread for each available CPU provides a good initial setting. However, please note that the process of recompiling an invalid object writes a significant amount of data to system tables and is fairly I/O intensive. A slow disk system may be a significant bottleneck and limit speedups available from a higher degree of parallelism.

Operational Notes

- This package uses the job queue for parallel recompilation.
- This package must be run using `SQL*PLUS`.
- You must be connected `AS SYSDBA` to run this script.
- This package expects the following packages to have been created with VALID status:
  - `STANDARD` (`standard.sql`)
  - `DBMS_STANDARD` (`dbmsstdx.sql`)
  - `DBMS_JOB` (`dbmsjob.sql`)
  - `DBMS_RANDOM (dbmsrand.sql)`
- There should be no other DDL on the database while running entries in this package. Not following this recommendation may lead to deadlocks.

Examples

Recompile all objects sequentially:

```
EXECUTE UTL_RECOMP.RECOMP_SERIAL();
```

Recompile objects in schema SCOTT sequentially:

```
EXECUTE UTL_RECOMP.RECOMP_SERIAL('SCOTT');
```

Recompile all objects using 4 parallel threads:

```
EXECUTE UTL_RECOMP.RECOMP_PARALLEL(4);
```

Recompile objects in schema JOE using the number of threads specified in the parameter JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES:

```
EXECUTE UTL_RECOMP.RECOMP_PARALLEL(NULL, 'JOE');
```

Summary of UTL_RECOMP Subprograms

Table 261–1 UTL_RECOMP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
RECOMP_PARALLEL Procedure on page 261-7	Recompiles invalid objects in a given schema, or all invalid objects in the database, in parallel
RECOMP_SERIAL Procedure on page 261-8	Recompiles invalid objects in a given schema or all invalid objects in the database

RECOMP_PARALLEL Procedure

This procedure uses the information exposed in the DBA_Dependencies view to recompile invalid objects in the database, or in a given schema, in parallel.

Syntax

```
UTL_RECOMP.RECOMP_PARALLEL(
   threads  IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   schema   IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   flags    IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 261–2 RECOMP_PARALLEL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
threads	The number of recompile threads to run in parallel. If NULL, use the value of 'job_queue_processes'.
schema	The schema in which to recompile invalid objects. If NULL, all invalid objects in the database are recompiled.
flags	Flag values are intended for internal testing and diagnosability only.

Usage Notes

The parallel recompile exploits multiple CPUs to reduce the time taken to recompile invalid objects. However, please note that recompilation writes significant amounts of data to system tables, so the disk system may be a bottleneck and prevent significant speedups.

RECOMP_SERIAL Procedure

This procedure recompiles invalid objects in a given schema or all invalid objects in the database.

Syntax

```
UTL_RECOMP.RECOMP_SERIAL(
   schema    IN   VARCHAR2    DEFAULT NULL,
   flags     IN   PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 261–3 RECOMP_SERIAL Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`schema`	The schema in which to recompile invalid objects. If `NULL`, all invalid objects in the database are recompiled.
`flags`	Flag values are intended for internal testing and diagnosability only.

262

UTL_REF

The UTL_REF package provides PL/SQL procedures to support reference-based operations. Unlike SQL, UTL_REF procedures enable you to write generic type methods without knowing the object table name.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_REF

Overview

Oracle supports user-defined composite type or object type. Any instance of an object type is called an object. An object type can be used as the type of a column or as the type of a table.

In an object table, each row of the table stores an object. You can uniquely identify an object in an object table with an object identifier.

A reference is a persistent pointer to an object, and each reference can contain an object identifier. The reference can be an attribute of an object type, or it can be stored in a column of a table. Given a reference, an object can be retrieved.

Security Model

The procedural option is needed to use this package. This package must be created under SYS (CONNECT /AS SYSDBA). Operations provided by this package are performed under the current calling user, not under the package owner SYS.

You can use the UTL_REF package from stored PL/SQL procedures/packages on the server, as well as from client/side PL/SQL code.

When invoked from PL/SQL procedures/packages on the server, UTL_REF verifies that the invoker has the appropriate privileges to access the object pointed to by the REF.

> **Note:** This is in contrast to PL/SQL packages/procedures on the server which operate with definer's privileges, where the package owner must have the appropriate privileges to perform the desired operations.

Thus, if UTL_REF is defined under user SYS, and user A invokes UTL_REF.SELECT to select an object from a reference, then user A (the invoker) requires the privileges to check.

When invoked from client-side PL/SQL code, UTL_REF operates with the privileges of the client session under which the PL/SQL execution is being done.

Types

An object type is a composite datatype defined by the user or supplied as a library type. You can create the object type `employee_type` using the following syntax:

```
CREATE TYPE employee_type AS OBJECT (
   name    VARCHAR2(20),
   id      NUMBER,

member function GET_ID
    (name VARCHAR2)
   RETURN MEMBER);
```

The object type `employee_type` is a user-defined type that contains two attributes, `name` and `id`, and a member function, `GET_ID`().

You can create an object table using the following SQL syntax:

```
CREATE TABLE employee_table OF employee_type;
```

Exceptions

Exceptions can be returned during execution of UTL_REF functions for various reasons. For example, the following scenarios would result in exceptions:

- The object selected does not exist. This could be because either:
  1. The object has been deleted, or the given reference is dangling (invalid).
  2. The object table was dropped or does not exist.
- The object cannot be modified or locked in a serializable transaction. The object was modified by another transaction after the serializable transaction started.
- You do not have the privilege to select or modify the object. The caller of the UTL_REF subprogram must have the proper privilege on the object that is being selected or modified.

Table 262–1 UTL_REF Exceptions

Exceptions	Description
errnum == 942	Insufficient privileges.
errnum == 1031	Insufficient privileges.
errnum == 8177	Unable to serialize, if in a serializable transaction.
errnum == 60	Deadlock detected.
errnum == 1403	No data found (if the REF is NULL, and so on.).

The UTL_REF package does not define any named exceptions. You may define exception handling blocks to catch specific exceptions and to handle them appropriately.

Summary of UTL_REF Subprograms

Table 262–2 UTL_REF Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DELETE_OBJECT Procedure on page 262-8	Deletes an object given a reference
LOCK_OBJECT Procedure on page 262-10	Locks an object given a reference
SELECT_OBJECT Procedure on page 262-11	Selects an object given a reference
UPDATE_OBJECT Procedure on page 262-12	Updates an object given a reference

DELETE_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure deletes an object given a reference. The semantic of this subprogram is similar to the following SQL statement:

```
DELETE FROM object_table
WHERE REF(t) = reference;
```

Unlike the preceding SQL statement, this subprogram does not require you to specify the object table name where the object resides.

Syntax

```
UTL_REF.DELETE_OBJECT (
   reference IN REF "<typename>");
```

Parameters

Table 262–3 DELETE_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
reference	Reference of the object to delete.

Exceptions

May be raised.

Examples

The following example illustrates usage of the UTL_REF package to implement this scenario: if an employee of a company changes their address, their manager should be notified.

... declarations of Address_t and others...

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE Person_t (
   name    VARCHAR2(64),
   gender  CHAR(1),
   address Address_t,
   MEMBER PROCEDURE setAddress(addr IN Address_t)
);

CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE BODY Person_t (
   MEMBER PROCEDURE setAddress(addr IN Address_t) IS
   BEGIN
      address := addr;
   END;
);

CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE Employee_t (
```

Under Person_t: Simulate implementation of inheritance using a REF to Person_t and delegation of setAddress to it.

```
   thePerson  REF Person_t,
   empno      NUMBER(5),
   deptREF    Department_t,
   mgrREF     Employee_t,
   reminders  StringArray_t,
```

```
   MEMBER PROCEDURE setAddress(addr IN Address_t),
   MEMBER procedure addReminder(reminder VARCHAR2);
);

CREATE TYPE BODY Employee_t (
   MEMBER PROCEDURE setAddress(addr IN Address_t) IS
      myMgr Employee_t;
      meAsPerson Person_t;
   BEGIN
```

Update the address by delegating the responsibility to `thePerson`. Lock the Person object from the reference, and also select it:

```
      UTL_REF.LOCK_OBJECT(thePerson, meAsPerson);
      meAsPerson.setAddress(addr);
```

Delegate to `thePerson`:

```
        UTL_REF.UPDATE_OBJECT(thePerson, meAsPerson);
        if mgr is NOT NULL THEN
```

Give the manager a reminder:

```
         UTL_REF.LOCK_OBJECT(mgr);
         UTL_REF.SELECT_OBJECT(mgr, myMgr);
         myMgr.addReminder
         ('Update address in the employee directory for' ||
         thePerson.name || ', new address: ' || addr.asString);
         UTL_REF.UPDATE_OBJECT(mgr, myMgr);
      END IF;
   EXCEPTION
      WHEN OTHERS THEN
      errnum := SQLCODE;
      errmsg := SUBSTR(SQLERRM, 1, 200);
```

LOCK_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure locks an object given a reference. In addition, this procedure lets the program select the locked object. The semantic of this subprogram is similar to the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT VALUE(t)
  INTO object
  FROM object_table t
  WHERE REF(t) = reference
  FOR UPDATE;
```

Unlike the preceding SQL statement, this subprogram does not require you to specify the object table name where the object resides. It is not necessary to lock an object before updating/deleting it.

Syntax

```
UTL_REF.LOCK_OBJECT (
   reference IN REF "<typename>");

UTL_REF.LOCK_OBJECT (
   reference IN REF "<typename>",
   object    IN OUT "<typename>");
```

Parameters

Table 262–4 LOCK_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`reference`	Reference of the object to lock.
`object`	The PL/SQL variable that stores the locked object. This variable should be of the same object type as the locked object.

Exceptions

May be raised.

SELECT_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure selects an object given its reference. The selected object is retrieved from the database and its value is put into the PL/SQL variable 'object'. The semantic of this subprogram is similar to the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT VALUE(t)
INTO object
FROM object_table t
WHERE REF(t) = reference;
```

Unlike the preceding SQL statement, this subprogram does not require you to specify the object table name where the object resides.

Syntax

```
UTL_REF.SELECT_OBJECT (
   reference IN REF "<typename>",
   object    IN OUT "<typename>");
```

Parameters

Table 262–5 SELECT_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`reference`	Reference to the object to select or retrieve.
`object`	The PL/SQL variable that stores the selected object; this variable should be of the same object type as the referenced object.

Exceptions

May be raised.

UPDATE_OBJECT Procedure

This procedure updates an object given a reference. The referenced object is updated with the value contained in the PL/SQL variable 'object'. The semantic of this subprogram is similar to the following SQL statement:

```
UPDATE object_table t
SET VALUE(t) = object
WHERE REF(t) = reference;
```

Unlike the preceding SQL statement, this subprogram does not require you to specify the object table name where the object resides.

Syntax

```
UTL_REF.UPDATE_OBJECT (
   reference IN REF "<typename>",
   object    IN     "<typename>");
```

Parameters

Table 262–6 UPDATE_OBJECT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`reference`	Reference of the object to update.
`object`	The PL/SQL variable that contains the new value of the object. This variable should be of the same object type as the object to update.

Exceptions

May be raised.

263

UTL_SMTP

The `UTL_SMTP` package is designed for sending electronic mails (e-mails) over Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) as specified by RFC821.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Development Guide*

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_SMTP

Overview

The UTL_SMTP protocol consists of a set of commands for an e-mail client to dispatch e-mails to an SMTP server. The UTL_SMTP package provides interfaces to the SMTP commands. For many of the commands, the package provides both a procedural and a functional interface. The functional form returns the reply from the server for processing by the client. The procedural form checks the reply and raises an exception if the reply indicates a transient (400-range reply code) or permanent error (500-range reply code). Otherwise, it discards the reply.

Note that the original SMTP protocol communicates using 7-bit ASCII. Using UTL_SMTP, all text data (in other words, those in VARCHAR2) are converted to US7ASCII before it is sent to the server. Some implementations of SMTP servers that support SMTP extension 8BITMIME [RFC1652] support full 8-bit communication between client and server. The body of the DATA command can be transferred in full 8 bits, but the rest of the SMTP command and response must be in 7 bits. When the target SMTP server supports 8BITMIME extension, users of multibyte databases may convert their non-US7ASCII, multibyte VARCHAR2 data to RAW and use the WRITE_RAW_DATA subprogram to send multibyte data using 8-bit MIME encoding.

UTL_SMTP provides for SMTP communication as specified in RFC821, but does not provide an API to format the content of the message according to RFC 822 (for example, setting the subject of an electronic mail). You must format the message appropriately. In addition, UTL_SMTP does not have the functionality to implement an SMTP server for an e-mail clients to send e-mails using SMTP.

Security Model

This package is an invoker's rights package. The invoking user must have the `connect` privilege granted in the access control list assigned to the remote network host to which the user must connect.

Note: For more information, see Managing Fine-Grained Access in PL/SQL Packages and Types in *Oracle Database Security Guide*

Constants

The UTL_SMTP package uses the constants shown in Table 263–1, " UTL_SMTP Constants".

Table 263–1 UTL_SMTP Constants

Name	Type	Value	Description
ALL_SCHEMES	VARCHAR2(256)	'CRAM-MD5 PLAIN LOGIN'	List of all authentication schemes UTL_SMTP supports, in order of their relative security strength. The subset of the schemes in ALL_SCHEMES (namely, PLAIN and LOGIN) in which cleartext passwords are sent over SMTP must be used only in SMTP connections that are secured by Secure Socket Layer / Transport Layer Security (SSL/TLS).
NON_CLEARTEXT_PASSWORD_SCHEMES	VARCHAR2(256)	'CRAM-MD5'	List of authentication schemes that UTL_SMTP supports and in which no cleartext passwords are sent over SMTP. They can be used in SMTP connections that are not secured by SSL/TLS. Note that these schemes may still be weak when used in an insecure SMTP connection.

Types

CONNECTION Record Type

This is a PL/SQL record type used to represent an SMTP connection.

Syntax

```
TYPE connection IS RECORD (
    host              VARCHAR2(255),
    port              PLS_INTEGER,
    tx_timeout        PLS_INTEGER,
    private_tcp_con   utl_tcp.connection,
    private_state     PLS_INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 263–2 CONNECTION Record Type Fields

Field	Description
`host`	Name of the remote host when connection is established. `NULL` when no connection is established.
`port`	Port number of the remote SMTP server connected. `NULL` when no connection is established.
`tx_timeout`	Time in seconds that the `UTL_SMTP` package waits before timing out in a read or write operation in this connection. In read operations, this package times out if no data is available for reading immediately. In write operations, this package times out if the output buffer is full and no data is to be sent into the network without being blocked. `0` indicates not to wait at all. `NULL` indicates to wait forever.
`private_tcp_con`	Private, for implementation use only. You should not modify this field.
`private_state`	Private, for implementation use only. You should not modify this field.

Usage Notes

The read-only fields in a connection record are used to return information about the SMTP connection after the connection is successfully made with the `OPEN_CONNECTION Functions`. Changing the values of these fields has no effect on the connection. The fields `private_tcp_con` and `private_state` for implementation use only. You should not modify these fields.

REPLY, REPLIES Record Types

These are PL/SQL record types used to represent an SMTP reply line. Each SMTP reply line consists of a reply code followed by a text message. While a single reply line is expected for most SMTP commands, some SMTP commands expect multiple reply lines. For those situations, a PL/SQL table of reply records is used to represent multiple reply lines.

Syntax

```
TYPE reply IS RECORD (
  code    PLS_INTEGER,
  text    VARCHAR2(508));

TYPE replies IS TABLE OF reply INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

Fields

Table 263–3 REPLY, REPLIES Record Type Fields

Field	Description
`code`	3-digit reply code
`text`	Text message of the reply

Reply Codes

The following is a list of the SMTP reply codes.

Table 263–4 SMTP Reply Codes

Reply Code	Meaning
211	System status, or system help reply
214	Help message [Information on how to use the receiver or the meaning of a particular non-standard command; this reply is useful only to the human user]
220	<domain> Service ready
221	<domain> Service closing transmission channel
250	Requested mail action okay, completed
251	User not local; forwards to <forward-path>
252	OK, pending messages for node <node> started. Cannot VRFY user (for example, info is not local), but takes message for this user and attempts delivery.
253	OK, <messages> pending messages for node <node> started
354	Start mail input; end with <CRLF.CRLF>
355	Octet-offset is the transaction offset
421	<domain> Service not available, closing transmission channel (This can be a reply to any command if the service knows it must shut down.)
450	Requested mail action not taken: mailbox unavailable [for example, mailbox busy]
451	Requested action terminated: local error in processing
452	Requested action not taken: insufficient system storage
453	You have no mail.
454	TLS not available due to temporary reason. Encryption required for requested authentication mechanism.
458	Unable to queue messages for node <node>
459	Node <node> not allowed: reason
500	Syntax error, command unrecognized (This may include errors such as command line too long.)
501	Syntax error in parameters or arguments
502	Command not implemented
503	Bad sequence of commands
504	Command parameter not implemented
521	<Machine> does not accept mail.
530	Must issue a STARTTLS command first. Encryption required for requested authentication mechanism.
534	Authentication mechanism is too weak.
538	Encryption required for requested authentication mechanism.
550	Requested action not taken: mailbox unavailable [for, mailbox not found, no access]

Table 263–4 (Cont.) SMTP Reply Codes

Reply Code	Meaning
551	User not local; please try <forward-path>
552	Requested mail action terminated: exceeded storage allocation
553	Requested action not taken: mailbox name not allowed [for example, mailbox syntax incorrect]
554	Transaction failed

Operational Notes

SMTP connection is initiated by a call to OPEN_CONNECTION Functions which returns a SMTP connection. After a connection is established, the following calls are required to send a mail:

HELO Function and Procedure - identify the domain of the sender

MAIL Function and Procedure- start a mail, specify the sender

RCPT Function - specify the recipient

OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure- start the mail body

WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure - write the mail body (multiple calls allowed)

CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure - close the mail body and send the mail

The SMTP connection is closed by calling QUIT Function and Procedure.

Exceptions

The table lists the exceptions that can be raised by the interface of the UTL_SMTP package. The network error is transferred to a reply code of 421- service not available.

Table 263–5 UTL_SMTP Exceptions

INVALID_OPERATION	Raised when an invalid operation is made. In other words, calling API other than the WRITE_DATA Procedure, the WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure or the CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure after the OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure is called, or calling WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA or CLOSE_DATA without first calling OPEN_DATA.
TRANSIENT_ERROR	Raised when receiving a reply code in 400 range
PERMANENT_ERROR	Raised when receiving a reply code in 500 range

Rules and Limits

No limitation or range-checking is imposed by the API. However, you must be aware of the following size limitations on various elements of SMTP. Sending data that exceed these limits may result in errors returned by the server.

Table 263–6 SMTP Size Limitation

Element	Size Limitation
`user`	Maximum total length of a user name is 64 characters
`domain`	Maximum total length of a domain name or number is 64 characters
`path`	Maximum total length of a reverse-path or forward-path is 256 characters (including the punctuation and element separators)
`command line`	Maximum total length of a command line including the command word and the `<CRLF>` is 512 characters
`reply line`	Maximum total length of a reply line including the reply code and the `<CRLF>` is 512 characters
`text line`	Maximum total length of a text line including the `<CRLF>` is 1000 characters (but not counting the leading dot duplicated for transparency)
`recipients buffer`	Maximum total number of recipients that must be buffered is 100 recipients

Examples

The following example illustrates how UTL_SMTP is used by an application to send e-mail. The application connects to an SMTP server at port 25 and sends a simple text message.

```
DECLARE
  c UTL_SMTP.CONNECTION;

  PROCEDURE send_header(name IN VARCHAR2, header IN VARCHAR2) AS
  BEGIN
    UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA(c, name || ': ' || header || UTL_TCP.CRLF);
  END;

BEGIN
  c := UTL_SMTP.OPEN_CONNECTION('smtp-server.acme.com');
  UTL_SMTP.HELO(c, 'foo.com');
  UTL_SMTP.MAIL(c, 'sender@foo.com');
  UTL_SMTP.RCPT(c, 'recipient@foo.com');
  UTL_SMTP.OPEN_DATA(c);
  send_header('From',    '"Sender" <sender@foo.com>');
  send_header('To',      '"Recipient" <recipient@foo.com>');
  send_header('Subject', 'Hello');
  UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA(c, UTL_TCP.CRLF || 'Hello, world!');
  UTL_SMTP.CLOSE_DATA(c);
  UTL_SMTP.QUIT(c);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN utl_smtp.transient_error OR utl_smtp.permanent_error THEN
    BEGIN
      UTL_SMTP.QUIT(c);
    EXCEPTION
      WHEN UTL_SMTP.TRANSIENT_ERROR OR UTL_SMTP.PERMANENT_ERROR THEN
        NULL; -- When the SMTP server is down or unavailable, we don't have
              -- a connection to the server. The QUIT call raises an
              -- exception that we can ignore.
    END;
    raise_application_error(-20000,
      'Failed to send mail due to the following error: ' || sqlerrm);
END;
```

Summary of UTL_SMTP Subprograms

Table 263–7 UTL_SMTP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
AUTH Function and Procedure on page 263-15	Sends the AUTH command to authenticate to the SMTP server
CLOSE_CONNECTION Procedure on page 263-17	Closes the SMTP connection, causing the current SMTP operation to terminate
CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure on page 263-18	Closes the data session
COMMAND Function and Procedure on page 263-19	Performs a generic SMTP command
COMMAND_REPLIES Function on page 263-20	Performs a generic SMTP command and retrieves multiple reply lines
DATA Function and Procedure on page 263-21	Sends the e-mail body
EHLO Function and Procedure on page 263-22	Performs the initial handshake with SMTP server using the EHLO command
HELO Function and Procedure on page 263-23	Performs the initial handshake with SMTP server using the HELO command
HELP Function on page 263-24	Sends HELP command
MAIL Function and Procedure on page 263-25	Initiates an e-mail transaction with the server, the destination is a mailbox
NOOP Function and Procedure on page 263-26	NULL command
OPEN_CONNECTION Functions on page 263-27	Opens a connection to an SMTP server
OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure on page 263-29	Sends the DATA command
QUIT Function and Procedure on page 263-30	Terminates an SMTP session and disconnects from the server
RCPT Function on page 263-31	Specifies the recipient of an e-mail message
RSET Function and Procedure on page 263-32	Terminates the current e-mail transaction
STARTTLS Function and Procedure on page 263-33	Sends STARTTLS command to secure the SMTP connection using SSL/TLS
VRFY Function on page 263-34	Verifies the validity of a destination e-mail address
WRITE_DATA Procedure on page 263-35	Writes a portion of the e-mail message
WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure on page 263-36	Writes a portion of the e-mail message with RAW data

AUTH Function and Procedure

This subprogram sends the AUTH command to authenticate to the SMTP server. The UTL_SMTP package goes through the user's choices of authentication schemes, skips any that is not supported by the SMTP server and uses the first supported. To determine the schemes the SMTP server supports from its EHLO reply, the user must call the EHLO Function and Procedure. Otherwise, UTL_SMTP uses the first scheme in the list.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.AUTH (
   c          IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   username   IN            VARCHAR2,
   password   IN            VARCHAR2,
   schemes    IN            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NON_CLEARTEXT_PASSWORD_SCHEMES)
 RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.AUTH (
   c          IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   username   IN            VARCHAR2,
   password   IN            VARCHAR2,
   schemes    IN            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NON_CLEARTEXT_PASSWORD_SCHEMES);
```

Parameters

Table 263–8 AUTH Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
username	Username
password	Password
schemes	Space-separated list of authentication schemes UTL_SMTP is allowed to use in the preferred order. See the ALL_SCHEMES and NON_CLEARTEXT_PASSWORD_SCHEMES constants for suggestions.

Return Values

Table 263–9 AUTH Function and Procedure Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

- Currently only PLAIN, LOGIN and CRAM-MD5 authentication schemes are supported by UTL_SMTP.
- Since the SMTP server may change the authentication schemes it supports after the SMTP connection is secured by SSL/TLS after the STARTTLS command (for example, adding PLAIN and LOGIN), the caller must call the EHLO Function and Procedure again for UTL_SMTP to update the list after the STARTTLS Function and Procedure is called.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  c utl_smtp.connection;
BEGIN
  c := utl_smtp.open_connection(
      host => 'smtp.example.com',
      port => 25,
      wallet_path => 'file:/oracle/wallets/smtp_wallet',
      wallet_password => 'password',
      secure_connection_before_smtp => FALSE);
  UTL_SMTP.STARTTLS(c);
  UTL_SMTP.AUTH(
      c => c,
      username => 'scott',
      password => 'password'
      schemes  => utl_smtp.all_schemes);
END;
```

CLOSE_CONNECTION Procedure

This procedure closes the SMTP connection, causing the current SMTP operation to terminate. Use this procedure only to cancel an e-mail in the middle of the data session. To end the SMTP connection properly, use the QUIT Function and Procedure.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.CLOSE_CONNECTION (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 263–10 CLOSE_CONNECTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection

CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure

This subprogram ends the e-mail message by sending the sequence <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> (a single period at the beginning of a line).

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.CLOSE_DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.CLOSE_DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 263–11 CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection

Return Values

Table 263–12 CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

The calls to OPEN_DATA, WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA and CLOSE_DATA must be made in the right order. A program calls OPEN_DATA to send the DATA command to the SMTP server. After that, it can call WRITE_DATA or WRITE_RAW_DATA repeatedly to send the actual data. The data is terminated by calling CLOSE_DATA. After OPEN_DATA is called, the only subprograms that can be called are WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA, or CLOSE_DATA. A call to other subprograms results in an INVALID_OPERATION exception being raised.

CLOSE_DATA must be called only after OPEN_CONNECTION, HELO or EHLO, MAIL, and RCPT have been called. The connection to the SMTP server must be open and a mail transaction must be active when this routine is called.

Note that there is no function form of WRITE_DATA because the SMTP server does not respond until the data-terminator is sent during the call to CLOSE_DATA.

COMMAND Function and Procedure

This subprogram performs a generic SMTP command.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.COMMAND (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY    connection,
   cmd   IN               VARCHAR2,
   arg   IN               VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.COMMAND (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY    connection,
   cmd   IN               VARCHAR2,
   arg   IN               VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 263–13 COMMAND Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
cmd	SMTP command to send to the server
arg	Optional argument to the SMTP argument. A space is inserted between cmd and arg.

Return Values

Table 263–14 COMMAND Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

This function is used to invoke generic SMTP commands. Use COMMAND if only a single reply line is expected. Use COMMAND_REPLIES if multiple reply lines are expected.

For COMMAND, if multiple reply lines are returned from the SMTP server, it returns the last reply line only.

COMMAND_REPLIES Function

This function performs a generic SMTP command and retrieves multiple reply lines.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.COMMAND_REPLIES (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY    connection,
   cmd   IN               VARCHAR2,
   arg   IN               VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN replies;
```

Parameters

Table 263–15 COMMAND_REPLIES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
cmd	SMTP command to send to the server
arg	Optional argument to the SMTP argument. A space is inserted between cmd and arg.

Return Values

Table 263–16 COMMAND_REPLIES Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
replies	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types)

Usage Notes

This function is used to invoke generic SMTP commands. Use COMMAND if only a single reply line is expected. Use COMMAND_REPLIES if multiple reply lines are expected.

For COMMAND, if multiple reply lines are returned from the SMTP server, it returns the last reply line only.

DATA Function and Procedure

This subprogram specifies the body of an e-mail message.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection
   body  IN  VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection
   body  IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);
```

Parameters

Table 263–17 DATA Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP Connection
body	Text of the message to be sent, including headers, in [RFC822] format

Return Values

Table 263–18 DATA Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

The application must ensure that the contents of the body parameter conform to the MIME(RFC822) specification. The DATA routine terminates the message with a <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> sequence (a single period at the beginning of a line), as required by RFC821. It also translates any sequence of <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> (single period) in body to <CR><LF>..<CR><LF> (double period). This conversion provides the transparency as described in Section 4.5.2 of RFC821.

The DATA subprogram must be called only after OPEN_CONNECTION, HELO or EHLO, MAIL and RCPT have been called. The connection to the SMTP server must be open, and a mail transaction must be active when this routine is called.

The expected response from the server is a message beginning with status code 250. The 354 response received from the initial DATA command is not returned to the caller.

EHLO Function and Procedure

This subprogram performs the initial handshake with SMTP server using the EHLO command.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.EHLO (
   c       IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   domain  IN)
RETURN replies;

UTL_SMTP.EHLO (
   c       IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   domain  IN);
```

Parameters

Table 263–19 EHLO Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
domain	Domain name of the local (sending) host. Used for identification purposes.

Return Values

Table 263–20 EHLO Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
replies	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types).

Usage Notes

The EHLO interface is identical to HELO except that it allows the server to return more descriptive information about its configuration. [RFC1869] specifies the format of the information returned, which the PL/SQL application can retrieve using the functional form of this call. For compatibility with HELO, each line of text returned by the server begins with status code 250.

Related Functions

HELO Function and Procedure

HELO Function and Procedure

This subprogram performs the initial handshake with SMTP server using the `HELO` command.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.HELO (
   c       IN OUT NOCOPY   connection,
   domain  IN              VARCHAR2)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.HELO (
   c       IN OUT NOCOPY   connection,
   domain  IN              VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 263–21 HELO Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	SMTP connection
`domain`	Domain name of the local (sending) host. Used for identification purposes.

Return Values

Table 263–22 HELO Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
`reply`	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

RFC 821 specifies that the client must identify itself to the server after connecting. This routine performs that identification. The connection must have been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION Functions before calling this routine.

The expected response from the server is a message beginning with status code 250.

Related Functions

EHLO Function and Procedure

HELP Function

This function sends the `HELP` command.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.HELP (
   c         IN OUT NOCOPY   connection,
   command   IN              VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN replies;
```

Parameters

Table 263–23 HELP Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	SMTP connection
`command`	Command to get the help message

Return Values

Table 263–24 HELP Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
`replies`	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types)

MAIL Function and Procedure

This subprogram initiate a mail transaction with the server. The destination is a mailbox.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.MAIL (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY   connection,
   sender      IN              VARCHAR2,
   parameters  IN              VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.MAIL (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY   connection,
   sender      IN              VARCHAR2,
   parameters  IN              VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 263–25 MAIL Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
sender	E-mail address of the user sending the message.
parameters	Additional parameters to mail command as defined in Section 6 of [RFC1869]. It must follow the format of "XXX=XXX (XXX=XXX ....)".

Return Values

Table 263–26 MAIL Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

This command does not send the message; it simply begins its preparation. It must be followed by calls to RCPT and DATA to complete the transaction. The connection to the SMTP server must be open and a HELO or EHLO command must have already been sent.

The expected response from the server is a message beginning with status code 250.

NOOP Function and Procedure

This subprogram issues the NULL command.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.NOOP (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.NOOP (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameter

Table 263–27 NOOP Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection

Return Values

Table 263–28 NOOP Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

- This command has no effect except to elicit a successful reply from the server. It can be issued at any time after the connection to the server has been established with OPEN_CONNECTION. The NOOP command can be used to verify that the server is still connected and is listening properly.
- This command replies with a single line beginning with status code 250.

OPEN_CONNECTION Functions

These functions open a connection to an SMTP server.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.OPEN_CONNECTION (
   host                            IN  VARCHAR2,
   port                            IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 25,
   c                               OUT connection,
   tx_timeout                      IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_path                     IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_password                 IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   secure_connection_before_smtp   IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.OPEN_CONNECTION (
   host                           IN  VARCHAR2,
   port                           IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 25,
   tx_timeout                     IN  PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_path                    IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_password                IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   secure_connection_before_smtp  IN  BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
RETURN connection;
```

Parameters

Table 263–29 OPEN_CONNECTION Functions Parameters

Parameter	Description
host	Name of the SMTP server host
port	Port number on which SMTP server is listening (usually 25)
c	SMTP connection
tx_timeout	Time in seconds that the UTL_SMTP package waits before timing out in a read or write operation for this connection. In read operations, this package times out if no data is available for reading immediately. In write operations, this package times out if the output buffer is full and no data is to be sent into the network without being blocked. 0 indicates not to wait at all. NULL indicates to wait forever.
wallet_path	Directory path that contains the Oracle wallet for SSL/TLS. The format is file: <directory-path>
wallet_password	Password to open the wallet. When the wallet is auto-login enabled, the password can be set to NULL.
secure_connection_ before_smtp	If TRUE, a secure connection with SSL/TLS is made before SMTP communication. If FALSE, no connection is made.

Return Values

Table 263–30 OPEN_CONNECTION Functions Return Values

Return Value	Description
`reply`	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

- The expected response from the server is a message beginning with status code 220.
- The version of `OPEN_CONNECTION` that returns `UTL_SMTP.CONNECTION` record checks the reply code returned by an SMTP server when the connection is first established. It raises an exception when the reply indicates an error. Otherwise, it discards the reply. If you want to examine the reply, invoke the version of `OPEN_CONNECTION` that returns `REPLY`.
- `tx_timeout` is intended to govern both the read operations and the write operations. However, an implementation restriction prevents `tx_timeout` from governing write operations in the current release.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  c utl_smtp.connection;
BEGIN
  c := UTL_SMTP.OPEN_CONNECTION(
   host => 'smtp.example.com',
   port => 465,
   wallet_path => 'file:/oracle/wallets/smtp_wallet',
   wallet_password => 'password',
   secure_connection_before_smtp => TRUE);
END;
```

OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure

This subprogram sends the DATA command after which you can use WRITE_DATA and WRITE_RAW_DATA to write a portion of the e-mail message.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.OPEN_DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.OPEN_DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 263–31 OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
data	Portion of the text of the message to be sent, including headers, in RFC822 format.

Return Values

Table 263–32 OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

- The calls to OPEN_DATA, WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA and CLOSE_DATA must be made in the right order. A program calls OPEN_DATA to send the DATA command to the SMTP server. After that, it can call WRITE_DATA or WRITE_RAW_DATA repeatedly to send the actual data. The data is terminated by calling CLOSE_DATA. After OPEN_DATA is called, the only subprograms that can be called are WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA, or CLOSE_DATA. A call to other subprograms results in an INVALID_OPERATION exception being raised.
- OPEN_DATA must be called only after OPEN_CONNECTION, HELO or EHLO, MAIL, and RCPT have been called. The connection to the SMTP server must be open and a mail transaction must be active when this routine is called.

QUIT Function and Procedure

This subprogram terminates an SMTP session and disconnects from the server.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.QUIT (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.QUIT (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameter

Table 263–33 QUIT Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection

Return Values

Table 263–34 QUIT Function and Procedure Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

The QUIT command informs the SMTP server of the client's intent to terminate the session. It then closes the connection established by OPEN_CONNECTION which must have been called before executing this command. If a mail transaction is in progress when QUIT is issued, it is canceled in the same manner as RSET.

The function form of this command returns a single line beginning with the status code 221 on successful termination. In all cases, the connection to the SMTP server is closed. The fields REMOTE_HOST and REMOTE_PORT of c are reset.

Related Functions

RSET Function and Procedure

RCPT Function

This subprogram specifies the recipient of an e-mail message.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.RCPT (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY     connection,
   recipient   IN                VARCHAR2,
   parameters  IN                VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.RCPT (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY     connection,
   recipient   IN                VARCHAR2,
   parameters  IN                VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL);
```

Table 263–35 RCPT Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
recipient	E-mail address of the user to which the message is being sent
parameters	Additional parameters to RCPT command as defined in Section 6 of [RFC1869]. It must follow the format of "XXX=XXX (XXX=XXX ....)".

Return Values

Table 263–36 RCPT Function and Procedure Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

To send a message to multiple recipients, call this routine multiple times. Each invocation schedules delivery to a single e-mail address. The message transaction must have been begun by a prior call to MAIL, and the connection to the mail server must have been opened and initialized by prior calls to OPEN_CONNECTION and HELO or EHLO respectively.

The expected response from the server is a message beginning with status code 250 or 251.

RSET Function and Procedure

This subprogram terminates the current mail transaction.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.RSET (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.RSET (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 263–37 RSET Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection

Return Values

Table 263–38 RSET Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

- This command allows the client to cancel an e-mail message it was in the process of composing. No mail is sent. The client can call RSET at any time after the connection to the SMTP server has been opened by means of OPEN_CONNECTION until DATA or OPEN_DATA is called. Once the e-mail data has been sent, it is too late to prevent the e-mail from being sent.
- The server responds to RSET with a message beginning with status code 250.

Related Functions

QUIT Function and Procedure

STARTTLS Function and Procedure

This subprogram sends the STARTTLS command to secure the SMTP connection using SSL/TLS. SSL/TLS requires an Oracle wallet which must be specified when the connection was opened by the OPEN_CONNECTION Functions.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.STARTTLS (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection)
RETURN reply;

UTL_SMTP.STARTTLS (
   c  IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 263–39 STARTTLS Function and Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection

Return Values

Table 263–40 STARTTLS Function and Procedure Return Values

Return Value	Description
reply	SMTP reply

Usage Notes

The STARTTLS command must only be issued on an unencrypted connection and when the SMTP server indicates the support of the command in the reply of the EHLO command. The wallet to be used for encryption must have been specified when the initial SMTP connection was opened by the OPEN_CONNECTION function.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  c utl_smtp.connection;
BEGIN
  c := utl_smtp.open_connection(
     host => 'smtp.example.com',
     port => 25,
     wallet_path => 'file:/oracle/wallets/smtp_wallet',
     wallet_password => 'password',
     secure_connection_before_smtp => FALSE);
  utl_smtp.starttls(c);
END
```

VRFY Function

This function verifies the validity of a destination e-mail address.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.VRFY (
   c          IN OUT NOCOPY connection
   recipient  IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN reply;
```

Parameters

Table 263–41 VRFY Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	SMTP connection
`recipient`	E-mail address to be verified

Return Values

Table 263–42 VRFY Function Return Values

Return Value	Description
`reply`	Reply of the command (see REPLY, REPLIES Record Types). In cases where there are multiple replies, the last reply is returned.

Usage Notes

The server attempts to resolve the destination address `recipient`. If successful, it returns the recipient's full name and fully qualified mailbox path. The connection to the server must have already been established by means of `OPEN_CONNECTION` and `HELO` or `EHLO` before making this request.

Successful verification returns one or more lines beginning with status code 250 or 251.

WRITE_DATA Procedure

This procedure writes a portion of the e-mail message. A repeat call to WRITE_DATA appends data to the e-mail message.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.WRITE_DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data  IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS);
```

Parameters

Table 263–43 WRITE_DATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
data	Portion of the text of the message to be sent, including headers, in [RFC822] format

Usage Notes

- The calls to the OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure, WRITE_DATA Procedure, WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure and CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure must be made in the correct order. A program calls OPEN_DATA to send the DATA command to the SMTP server. After that, it can call WRITE_DATA or WRITE_RAW_DATA repeatedly to send the actual data. The data is terminated by calling CLOSE_DATA. After OPEN_DATA is called, the only subprograms that can be called are WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA, or CLOSE_DATA. A call to other subprograms results in an INVALID_OPERATION exception being raised.
- The application must ensure that the contents of the body parameter conform to the MIME(RFC822) specification. The DATA routine terminates the message with a <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> sequence (a single period at the beginning of a line), as required by RFC821. It also translates any sequence of <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> (single period) in the body to <CR><LF>..<CR><LF> (double period). This conversion provides the transparency as described in Section 4.5.2 of RFC821.
- The OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure, WRITE_DATA Procedure, WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure and CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure must be called only after OPEN_CONNECTION Functions, HELO Function and Procedure, or EHLO Function and Procedure, MAIL Function and Procedure, and RCPT Function have been called. The connection to the SMTP server must be open and a mail transaction must be active when this routine is called.
- Note that there is no function form of the WRITE_DATA Procedure because the SMTP server does not respond until the data-terminator is sent during the call to CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure.
- Text (VARCHAR2) data sent using WRITE_DATA is converted to US7ASCII before it is sent. If the text contains multibyte characters, each multibyte character in the text that cannot be converted to US7ASCII is replaced by a '?' character. If 8BITMIME extension is negotiated with the SMTP server using the EHLO subprogram, multibyte VARCHAR2 data can be sent by first converting the text to RAW using the UTL_RAW package, and then sending the RAW data using WRITE_RAW_DATA.

WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure

This procedure writes a portion of the e-mail message. A repeat call to WRITE_RAW_DATA appends data to the e-mail message.

Syntax

```
UTL_SMTP.WRITE_RAW_DATA (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection
   data  IN RAW);
```

Parameters

Table 263–44 WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	SMTP connection
data	Portion of the text of the message to be sent, including headers, in [RFC822] format

Usage Notes

- The calls to the OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure, WRITE_DATA Procedure, WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure and CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure must be made in the correct order. A program calls OPEN_DATA to send the DATA command to the SMTP server. After that, it can call WRITE_DATA or WRITE_RAW_DATA repeatedly to send the actual data. The data is terminated by calling CLOSE_DATA. After OPEN_DATA is called, the only subprograms that can be called are WRITE_DATA, WRITE_RAW_DATA, or CLOSE_DATA. A call to other subprograms results in an INVALID_OPERATION exception being raised.
- The application must ensure that the contents of the body parameter conform to the MIME(RFC822) specification. The DATA routine terminates the message with a <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> sequence (a single period at the beginning of a line), as required by RFC821. It also translates any sequence of <CR><LF>.<CR><LF> (single period) in the body to <CR><LF>..<CR><LF> (double period). This conversion provides the transparency as described in Section 4.5.2 of RFC821.
- The OPEN_DATA Function and Procedure, WRITE_DATA Procedure, WRITE_RAW_DATA Procedure and CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure must be called only after OPEN_CONNECTION Functions, HELO Function and Procedure, or EHLO Function and Procedure, MAIL Function and Procedure, and RCPT Function have been called. The connection to the SMTP server must be open and a mail transaction must be active when this routine is called.
- Note that there is no function form of the WRITE_DATA Procedure because the SMTP server does not respond until the data-terminator is sent during the call to CLOSE_DATA Function and Procedure.

264

UTL_SPADV

The UTL_SPADV package, one of a set of Oracle Streams packages, provides subprograms to collect and analyze statistics for the Oracle Streams components in a distributed database environment. This package uses the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor to gather statistics.

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Using UTL_SPADV
  - Overview
  - Security Model
  - Operational Notes
- Summary of UTL_SPADV Subprograms

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about this package and the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Using UTL_SPADV

Overview

This package enables you to collect and analyze statistics about the performance or Oracle Streams components. You can either collect statistics on demand or you can create a monitoring job that continually monitors Oracle Streams performance.

When this package is used on an Oracle Database 11*g* Release 2 (11.2) database, it can monitor Oracle Database 10*g* Release 2 (10.2) and later databases. It cannot monitor databases before release 10.2.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Security Model

Security on this package can be controlled in either of the following ways:

- Granting `EXECUTE` on this package to selected users or roles.
- Granting `EXECUTE_CATALOG_ROLE` to selected users or roles.

If subprograms in the package are run from within a stored procedure, then the user who runs the subprograms must be granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the package directly. It cannot be granted through a role.

To ensure that the user who runs the subprograms in this package has the necessary privileges, configure an Oracle Streams administrator and connect as the Oracle Streams administrator when using this package.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about configuring an Oracle Streams administrator

Operational Notes

To use this package, you must connect to an Oracle database as an Oracle Streams administrator and run the `utlspadv.sql` script in the `rdbms/admin` directory in `ORACLE_HOME`.

The `utlspadv.sql` script creates the following tables:

- STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT Table
- STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_LINK Table
- STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_PROP Table
- STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_STAT Table
- STREAMS$_PA_CONTROL Table
- STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE Table
- STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE_PROP Table
- STREAMS$_PA_MONITORING Table
- STREAMS$_PA_PATH_BOTTLENECK Table
- STREAMS$_PA_PATH_STAT Table
- STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_COMP_STAT Table
- STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT Table

The Oracle Streams Performance Advisor populates these tables when it is run.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT Table

The `STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT` table displays information about the Oracle Streams components at each database.

Table 264–1 STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
`COMPONENT_ID`	`NUMBER`	`NOT NULL`	Identification number assigned to the component by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
`COMPONENT_NAME`	`VARCHAR2(194)`		Name of the component
`COMPONENT_DB`	`VARCHAR2(128)`		Name of the database that contains the component

Table 264–1 (Cont.) STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
COMPONENT_TYPE	VARCHAR2(20)		Type of the component The following types are possible: ■ CAPTURE for a capture process ■ PROPAGATION SENDER for a propagation sender ■ PROPAGATION RECEIVER for a propagation receiver ■ APPLY for an apply process ■ QUEUE for a queue
COMPONENT_CHANGED_TIME	DATE		Time when the component was last changed

STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_LINK Table

The STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_LINK table displays information about how information flows between Oracle Streams components.

Table 264–2 STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_LINK Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
PATH_ID	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Identification number assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
PATH_KEY	VARCHAR2(4000)		Unique key assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
SOURCE_COMPONENT_ID	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Source component ID for the path The path starts with this component.
DESTINATION_COMPONENT_ID	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Destination component ID for the path The path ends with this component.
POSITION	NUMBER		Position of the component in the path

STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_PROP Table

The STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_PROP table displays information about capture processes and apply processes necessary for analysis by the Streams Performance Advisor.

Table 264–3 STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_PROP Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
COMPONENT_ID	NUMBER	NOT NULL	Identification number assigned to the component by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
PROP_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)		Property name For a capture process, the component properties include the following: ■ SOURCE_DATABASE - The source database for the changes captured by the capture process ■ PARALLELISM - The setting for the parallelism capture process parameter ■ OPTIMIZATION_MODE - Indicates whether the capture process uses combined capture and apply (greater than zero) or does not use combined capture and apply (0) For an apply process, the component properties include the following: ■ SOURCE_DATABASE - The source database for the messages applied by the apply process ■ PARALLELISM - The setting for the parallelism apply process parameter ■ APPLY_CAPTURED - Indicates whether the apply process applies captured messages (YES) persistent messages (NO) ■ MESSAGE_DELIVERY_MODE - Either buffered or persistent
PROP_VALUE	VARCHAR2(30)		Property value

STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_STAT Table

The STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_STAT table displays performance statistics and session statistics about each Oracle Streams component.

Table 264–4 STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run

Table 264–4 (Cont.) STREAMS$_PA_COMPONENT_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_TIME	DATE		Time when the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor was run for the advisor run ID
COMPONENT_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the component by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
STATISTIC_TIME	DATE		Time when the statistic was recorded
STATISTIC_NAME	VARCHAR2(64)		Name of the statistic
STATISTIC_VALUE	NUMBER		Value recorded for the statistic
STATISTIC_UNIT	VARCHAR2(64)		Unit of measurement for the statistic
SUB_COMPONENT_TYPE	VARCHAR2(64)		Type of the subcomponent Only capture processes and apply processes have subcomponents. The following capture process subcomponent types are possible: ■ LOGMINER READER for a builder server of a capture process ■ LOGMINER PREPARER for a preparer server of a capture process ■ LOGMINER BUILDER for a reader server of a capture process ■ CAPTURE SESSION for a capture process session The following apply process subcomponent types are possible: ■ PROPAGATION SENDER+RECEIVER for sending LCRs from a capture process directly to an apply process in a combined capture and apply configuration in which both the capture process and apply process run on a single database ■ APPLY READER for a reader server of an apply process ■ APPLY COORDINATOR for a coordinator process of an apply process ■ APPLY SERVER for a reader server of an apply process
SESSION_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the session for the component. Query the V$SESSION view for information about the session.
SESSION_SERIAL#	NUMBER		Session serial number of the session for the component. Query the V$SESSION view for information about the session.

STREAMS$_PA_CONTROL Table

The STREAMS$_PA_CONTROL table displays the parameters set for the COLLECT_STATS procedure in this package. The parameters control the monitoring behavior.

Table 264–5 STREAMS$_PA_CONTROL Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run
ADVISOR_RUN_TIME	DATE		Time when the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor was last run
PARAM_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)		The name of the parameter
PARAM_VALUE	VARCHAR2(4000)		The value set for the parameter
PARAM_UNIT	VARCHAR2(30)		The unit of the parameter

STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE Table

The STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE table displays information about each database that contains Oracle Streams components.

Table 264–6 STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
GLOBAL_NAME	VARCHAR2(128)	NOT NULL	Global name of the database analyzed by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
LAST_QUERIED	DATE		The time when the Performance Advisor successfully collected information from a database in its last run
ERROR_NUMBER	NUMBER		The error number of the error encountered when the database was last queried
ERROR_MESSAGE	VARCHAR2(4000)		The error message of the error encountered when the database was last queried

STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE_PROP Table

The STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE_PROP table displays Oracle Streams database property information necessary for analysis by the Streams Performance Advisor.

Table 264–7 STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE_PROP Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
GLOBAL_NAME	VARCHAR2(128)	NOT NULL	Global name of the database analyzed by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Table 264–7 (Cont.) STREAMS$_PA_DATABASE_PROP Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
PROP_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)		Property name The database properties include the following: ■ VERSION ■ COMPATIBILITY ■ MANAGEMENT_PACK_ACCESS ■ DB_UNIQUE_NAME
PROP_VALUE	VARCHAR2(30)		Property value

STREAMS$_PA_MONITORING Table

The STREAMS$_PA_MONITORING table displays information about each monitoring job running in a database.

Table 264–8 STREAMS$_PA_MONITORING Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
JOB_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)	NOT NULL	Name of the monitoring job
CLIENT_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)		Name of the client that submitted the job **See Also:** "Full Monitoring Job Names" on page 264-27
QUERY_USER_NAME	VARCHAR2(30)		User granted privileges to view the monitoring results
SHOW_STATS_TABLE	VARCHAR2(30)		Name of the table used by the SHOW_STATS procedure to display statistics
STARTED_TIME	TIMESTAMP		Time the monitoring job started
STOPPED_TIME	TIMESTAMP		Time the monitoring job last stopped
ALTERED_TIME	TIMESTAMP		Time the monitoring job was last altered
STATE	VARCHAR2(30)		State of the monitoring job, either ENABLED or STOPPED

STREAMS$_PA_PATH_BOTTLENECK Table

The STREAMS$_PA_PATH_BOTTLENECK table displays information about Oracle Streams components that might be slowing down the flow of messages.

Table 264–9 STREAMS$_PA_PATH_BOTTLENECK Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run
ADVISOR_RUN_TIME	DATE		Time when the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor was last run
ADVISOR_RUN_REASON	VARCHAR2(4000)		Reason for the bottleneck
PATH_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Table 264–9 (Cont.) STREAMS$_PA_PATH_BOTTLENECK Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
PATH_KEY	VARCHAR2(4000)		Unique key assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
COMPONENT_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the component by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
TOP_SESSION_ID	NUMBER		Session ID of the top component. Query the V$SESSION view for information about the session.
TOP_SESSION_SERIAL#	NUMBER		Session serial number of the top component. Query the V$SESSION view for information about the session.
ACTION_NAME	VARCHAR2(32)		Action name for the top session
BOTTLENECK_ IDENTIFIED	VARCHAR2(30)		Whether a bottleneck was identified

STREAMS$_PA_PATH_STAT Table

The STREAMS$_PA_PATH_STAT table displays performance statistics about each stream path.

Table 264–10 STREAMS$_PA_PATH_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run
ADVISOR_RUN_TIME	DATE		Time when the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor was run for the advisor run ID
PATH_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
PATH_KEY	VARCHAR2(4000)		Unique key assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
STATISTIC_TIME	DATE		Time when the statistic was recorded
STATISTIC_NAME	VARCHAR2(64)		Name of the statistic
STATISTIC_VALUE	NUMBER		Value recorded for the statistic
STATISTIC_UNIT	VARCHAR2(64)		Unit of measurement for the statistic

STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_COMP_STAT Table

The STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_COMP_STAT table displays statistics for Oracle Streams components.

Table 264–11 STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_COMP_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run

Table 264–11 (Cont.) STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_COMP_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
ADVISOR_RUN_TIME	DATE		Time when the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor was last run
PATH_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
POSITION	NUMBER		Position of the component in the path
COMPONENT_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the component by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
COMPONENT_NAME	VARCHAR2(194)		Name of the component
COMPONENT_TYPE	VARCHAR2(30)		Type of the component The following types are possible: ■ CAPTURE for a capture process ■ PROPAGATION SENDER for a propagation sender ■ PROPAGATION RECEIVER for a propagation receiver ■ APPLY for an apply process ■ QUEUE for a queue
SUB_COMPONENT_TYPE	VARCHAR2(30)		Type of the subcomponent Only capture processes and apply processes have subcomponents. The following capture process subcomponent types are possible: ■ LOGMINER READER for a builder server of a capture process ■ LOGMINER PREPARER for a preparer server of a capture process ■ LOGMINER BUILDER for a reader server of a capture process ■ CAPTURE SESSION for a capture process session The following apply process subcomponent types are possible: ■ PROPAGATION SENDER+RECEIVER for sending LCRs from a capture process directly to an apply process in a combined capture and apply configuration in which both the capture process and apply process run on a single database ■ APPLY READER for a reader server of an apply process ■ APPLY COORDINATOR for a coordinator process of an apply process ■ APPLY SERVER for a reader server of an apply process

Table 264–11 (Cont.) STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_COMP_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
SESSION_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the session for the component. Query the V$SESSION view for information about the session.
SESSION_SERIAL#	NUMBER		Session serial number of the session for the component. Query the V$SESSION view for information about the session.
STATISTIC_ALIAS	VARCHAR2(30)		Name of the statistic
STATISTIC_NAME	VARCHAR2(128)		Name of the statistic
STATISTIC_VALUE	NUMBER		Value recorded for the statistic
STATISTIC_UNIT	VARCHAR2(128)		Unit of measurement for the statistic

STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT Table

The STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT table displays statistics for the stream paths in an Oracle Streams configuration. A monitoring job uses this table as the default table for the statistics collected for stream paths.

Table 264–12 STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT Table

Column	Datatype	NULL	Description
PATH_ID	NUMBER		Identification number assigned to the path by the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor
ADVISOR_RUN_ID	NUMBER		Identification number of the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run
ADVISOR_RUN_TIME	DATE		Time when the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor was last run
SETTING	VARCHAR2(2000)		Setting for the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor Run
STATISTICS	VARCHAR2(4000)		Component-level statistics
SESSION_STATISTICS	VARCHAR2(4000)		Session-level statistics
OPTIMIZATION	NUMBER		Whether the path uses the combined capture and apply optimization 0 (zero) means that the path does not use the combined capture and apply optimization. 1 means that the path uses the combined capture and apply optimization.

Summary of UTL_SPADV Subprograms

Table 264–13 UTL_SPADV Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ALTER_MONITORING Procedure on page 264-15	Alters the monitoring job submitted by the current user.
COLLECT_STATS Procedure on page 264-17	Uses the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor to gather statistics about the Oracle Streams components and subcomponents in a distributed database environment.
IS_MONITORING Function on page 264-19	Checks whether a monitoring job is currently running.
SHOW_STATS Procedure on page 264-20	Generates output that includes the statistics gathered by the `COLLECT_STATS` procedure.
SHOW_STATS_HTML Procedure on page 264-20	Generates HTML output that includes the statistics gathered by the `COLLECT_STATS` procedure.
START_MONITORING Procedure on page 264-25	Starts a monitoring job.
STOP_MONITORING Procedure on page 264-28	Stops a monitoring job.

ALTER_MONITORING Procedure

This procedure alters the monitoring job submitted by the current user.

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.ALTER_MONITORING(
   interval                      IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL,
   top_event_threshold           IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL,
   bottleneck_idle_threshold     IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL,
   bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL,
   retention_time                IN NUMBER  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 264–14 ALTER_MONITORING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
interval	The amount of time, in seconds, between each Performance Advisor run. The maximum is 3600 seconds. If NULL, then the current value is not changed.
top_event_threshold	A percentage that determines whether a top wait event statistic is collected. The percentage for a wait event must be greater than the value specified in this parameter for the procedure to collect the wait event statistic. For example, if 15 is specified, then only wait events with a value larger than 15% are collected. If NULL, then the current value is not changed.
bottleneck_idle_threshold	A percentage that determines whether an Oracle Streams component session is eligible for bottleneck analysis based on its IDLE percentage. The IDLE percentage must be less than or equal to the value specified in this parameter for the Oracle Streams component session to be eligible for bottleneck analysis. For example, if 50 is specified, then only components that are idle 50% of the time or less are eligible for bottleneck analysis. If NULL, then the current value is not changed.
bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold	A percentage that determines whether an Oracle Streams component session is eligible for bottleneck analysis based on its FLOW CONTROL percentage. The FLOW CONTROL percentage must be less than or equal to the value specified in this parameter for the Oracle Streams component session to be eligible for bottleneck analysis. For example, if 50 is specified, then only components that are paused for flow control 50% of the time or less are eligible for bottleneck analysis. If NULL, then the current value is not changed.
retention_time	The number of hours to retain monitoring results. If NULL, then the current value is not changed.

Exceptions

Table 264–15 ALTER_MONITORING Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-20113	no active monitoring job found

COLLECT_STATS Procedure

This procedure uses the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor to gather statistics about the Oracle Streams components and subcomponents in a distributed database environment.

Note: This procedure commits.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.COLLECT_STATS(
   interval                      IN NUMBER  DEFAULT 60,
   num_runs                      IN NUMBER  DEFAULT 10,
   comp_stat_table             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'STREAMS$_ADVISOR_COMP_STAT',
   path_stat_table             IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'STREAMS$_ADVISOR_PATH_STAT',
   top_event_threshold           IN NUMBER  DEFAULT 15,
   bottleneck_idle_threshold     IN NUMBER  DEFAULT 50,
   bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold IN NUMBER  DEFAULT 50);
```

Parameters

Table 264–16 COLLECT_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
interval	The amount of time, in seconds, between each Performance Advisor run. The maximum is 3600 seconds.
num_runs	The number of times that the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor is run by the procedure.
comp_stat_table	The name of the table that stores the statistics collected for Oracle Streams components and subcomponents. Specify the table name as *[schema_name.]object_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The procedure creates the specified table if it does not exist. Oracle recommends that you use the default table STREAMS$_ADVISOR_COMP_STAT. See "Usage Notes" on page 264-18 for more information about this parameter.
path_stat_table	The name of the table that stores the statistics collected for stream paths. Specify the table name as *[schema_name.]object_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. The procedure creates the specified table if it does not exist. Oracle recommends that you use the default table STREAMS$_ADVISOR_PATH_STAT. See "Usage Notes" on page 264-18 for more information about this parameter.

Table 264–16 (Cont.) COLLECT_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
top_event_threshold	A percentage that determines whether a top wait event statistic is collected. The percentage for a wait event must be greater than the value specified in this parameter for the procedure to collect the wait event statistic. For example, if 15 is specified, then only wait events with a value larger than 15% are collected.
bottleneck_idle_threshold	A percentage that determines whether an Oracle Streams component session is eligible for bottleneck analysis based on its IDLE percentage. The IDLE percentage must be less than or equal to the value specified in this parameter for the Oracle Streams component session to be eligible for bottleneck analysis. For example, if 50 is specified, then only components that are idle 50% of the time or less are eligible for bottleneck analysis.
bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold	A percentage that determines whether an Oracle Streams component session is eligible for bottleneck analysis based on its FLOW CONTROL percentage. The FLOW CONTROL percentage must be less than or equal to the value specified in this parameter for the Oracle Streams component session to be eligible for bottleneck analysis. For example, if 50 is specified, then only components that are paused for flow control 50% of the time or less are eligible for bottleneck analysis.

Usage Notes

The table specified in the path_stat_table parameter stores stream path statistics. This table also concatenates the component and subcomponent statistics stored in the table specified in the comp_stat_table parameter. The SHOW_STATS procedure in this package shows only the statistics stored in the table specified in the path_stat_table parameter.

IS_MONITORING Function

This function checks whether a monitoring job is currently running. This function either returns `TRUE` if a monitoring job is currently running or `FALSE` if a monitoring job is not currently running.

A monitoring job is submitted using the `START_MONITORING` procedure.

See Also: "START_MONITORING Procedure" on page 264-25

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.IS_MONITORING(
   job_name    IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'STREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB',
   client_name IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

Parameters

Table 264–17 IS_MONITORING Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`job_name`	The name of the job for which to check.
`client_name`	The name of the client that submitted the job.

SHOW_STATS Procedure

This procedure generates output that includes the statistics gathered by the COLLECT_STATS and START_MONITORING procedures.

The output is formatted so that it can be imported into a spreadsheet for analysis.

Note: This procedure does not commit.

See Also:

- "COLLECT_STATS Procedure" on page 264-17
- "START_MONITORING Procedure" on page 264-25
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.SHOW_STATS(
   path_stat_table IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'STREAMS$_ADVISOR_PATH_STAT',
   path_id           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   bgn_run_id        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT -1,
   end_run_id        IN NUMBER    DEFAULT -10,
   show_path_id      IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   show_run_id       IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   show_run_time     IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   show_optimization IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   show_setting      IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   show_stat         IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE,
   show_sess         IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT FALSE,
   show_legend       IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 264–18 SHOW_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path_stat_table	The name of the table that contains the stream path statistics. Specify the table name as *[schema_name.]object_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. When you gather statistics using the COLLECT_STATS procedure, this table is specified in the path_stat_table parameter in the COLLECT_STATS procedure. The default table is STREAMS$_ADVISOR_PATH_STAT. When you gather statistics using the START_MONITORING procedure, you can determine the name for this table by querying the SHOW_STATS_TABLE column in the STREAMS$_PA_MONITORING view. The default table for a monitoring job is STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT.
path_id	A stream path ID. If non-NULL, then the procedure shows output for the specified stream path only. If NULL, then the procedure shows output for all active stream paths.

Table 264–18 (Cont.) SHOW_STATS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bgn_run_id	The first Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run ID to show in the range of runs. See "Usage Notes" on page 264-22 for more information about this parameter.
end_run_id	The last Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run ID to show in the range of runs. See "Usage Notes" on page 264-22 for more information about this parameter.
show_path_id	If TRUE, then the path ID for each stream path is included in the output. If FALSE, then the path ID for each stream path is not included in the output.
show_run_id	If TRUE, then the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run ID is included in the output. If FALSE, then the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run ID is not included in the output.
show_run_time	If TRUE, then the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run time is included in the output. If FALSE, then the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run time is not included in the output.
show_optimization	If TRUE, then path output includes information pertaining to the combined capture and apply optimization. If FALSE, then path output does not include information pertaining to the combined capture and apply optimization.
show_setting	If TRUE, then the settings for the threshold parameters are included in the output. The threshold parameters are the top_event_threshold, bottleneck_idle_threshold, and bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold parameters in the COLLECT_STATS procedure. If FALSE, then the settings for the threshold parameters are not included in the output.
show_stat	If TRUE, then the component-level and subcomponent-level statistics are included in the output. These components include capture processes, queues, propagation senders, propagation receivers, and apply processes. The subcomponents are the subcomponents for capture processes and apply processes. If FALSE, then the component-level and subcomponent-level statistics are not included in the output.
show_sess	If TRUE, then the session-level statistics are included in the output. Session-level statistics include IDLE, FLOW CONTROL, and EVENT statistics. If FALSE, then the session-level statistics are not included in the output.
show_legend	If TRUE, then the legend is included in the output. The legend describes the abbreviations used in the output. If FALSE, then the legend is not included in the output.

Usage Notes

Use the `bgn_run_id` and `end_run_id` together to specify the range of Oracle Streams Performance Advisor runs to display. Positive numbers show statistics from an earlier run forward. Negative numbers show statistics from a later run backward.

For example, if `bgn_run_id` is set to `1` and `end_run_id` is set to `10`, then the procedure shows statistics for the first ten Oracle Streams Performance Advisor runs.

However, if `bgn_run_id` is set to `-1` and `end_run_id` is set to `-10`, then the procedure shows statistics for the last ten Oracle Streams Performance Advisor runs.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for information about the combined capture and apply optimization

SHOW_STATS_HTML Procedure

This procedure generates HTML output that includes the statistics gathered by the COLLECT_STATS and START_MONITORING procedures.

Note: This procedure does not commit.

See Also:

- "COLLECT_STATS Procedure" on page 264-17
- "START_MONITORING Procedure" on page 264-25
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.SHOW_STATS_HTML(
   directory       IN VARCHAR2,
   reportname      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'SPADVREPORT.HTML',
   comp_stat_table IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'STREAMS$_ADVISOR_COMP_STAT',
   path_id         IN NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   bgn_run_id      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT -1,
   end_run_id      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT -10,
   detailed        IN BOOLEAN   DEFAULT TRUE);
```

Parameters

Table 264–19 SHOW_STATS_HTML Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
directory	The directory object for the directory on the local computer system into which the generated HTML report is placed The specified directory object must be created using the SQL statement CREATE DIRECTORY, and the user who invokes the procedure must have READ and WRITE privilege on each one.
reportname	The name of the HTML report
comp_stat_table	The name of the table that stores the statistics collected for Oracle Streams components and subcomponents. Specify the table name as *[schema_name.]object_name*. If the schema is not specified, then the current user is the default. When you gather statistics using the COLLECT_STATS procedure, this table is specified in the comp_stat_table parameter in the COLLECT_STATS procedure. The default table is STREAMS$_ADVISOR_COMP_STAT. When you gather statistics using the START_MONITORING procedure, you can determine the name for this table by querying the SHOW_STATS_TABLE column in the STREAMS$_PA_MONITORING view. The default table for a monitoring job is STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT. Oracle recommends that you start a monitoring job with the START_MONITORING procedure in this package and use the appropriate the STREAMS$_PA_SHOW_PATH_STAT table.

Table 264–19 (Cont.) SHOW_STATS_HTML Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
path_id	A stream path ID. If non-NULL, then the procedure shows output for the specified stream path only. If NULL, then the procedure shows output for all active stream paths.
bgn_run_id	The first Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run ID to show in the range of runs. See "Usage Notes" on page 264-24 for more information about this parameter.
end_run_id	The last Oracle Streams Performance Advisor run ID to show in the range of runs. See "Usage Notes" on page 264-24 for more information about this parameter.
detailed	If TRUE, then the procedure generates component-level statistics. If FALSE, then the procedure does not generate component-level statistics.

Usage Notes

Use the bgn_run_id and end_run_id together to specify the range of Oracle Streams Performance Advisor runs to display. Positive numbers show statistics from an earlier run forward. Negative numbers show statistics from a later run backward.

For example, if bgn_run_id is set to 1 and end_run_id is set to 10, then the procedure shows statistics for the first ten Oracle Streams Performance Advisor runs.

However, if bgn_run_id is set to -1 and end_run_id is set to -10, then the procedure shows statistics for the last ten Oracle Streams Performance Advisor runs.

START_MONITORING Procedure

This procedure starts a monitoring job.

This procedure runs the COLLECT_STATS procedure to gather statistics about the Oracle Streams components and subcomponents in a distributed database environment.

Note: This procedure commits.

See Also:

- "COLLECT_STATS Procedure" on page 264-17
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about the Oracle Streams Performance Advisor

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.START_MONITORING(
   job_name                      IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'STREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB',
   client_name                   IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   query_user_name               IN VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   interval                      IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 60,
   top_event_threshold           IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 15,
   bottleneck_idle_threshold     IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 50,
   bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 50,
   retention_time                IN NUMBER    DEFAULT 24);
```

Parameters

Table 264–20 START_MONITORING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
job_name	The name of the monitoring job to create.
client_name	The name of the client.
query_user_name	The user who will query the result tables. This procedure grants privileges to the specified user to enable the user to query the result tables.
interval	The amount of time, in seconds, between each Performance Advisor run. The maximum is 3600 seconds. The specified interval is used for the interval parameter in the COLLECT_STATS procedure.
top_event_threshold	A percentage that determines whether a top wait event statistic is collected. The percentage for a wait event must be greater than the value specified in this parameter for the procedure to collect the wait event statistic. For example, if 15 is specified, then only wait events with a value larger than 15% are collected.

Table 264–20 (Cont.) START_MONITORING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
bottleneck_idle_threshold	A percentage that determines whether an Oracle Streams component session is eligible for bottleneck analysis based on its IDLE percentage. The IDLE percentage must be less than or equal to the value specified in this parameter for the Oracle Streams component session to be eligible for bottleneck analysis. For example, if 50 is specified, then only components that are idle 50% of the time or less are eligible for bottleneck analysis.
bottleneck_flowctrl_threshold	A percentage that determines whether an Oracle Streams component session is eligible for bottleneck analysis based on its FLOW CONTROL percentage. The FLOW CONTROL percentage must be less than or equal to the value specified in this parameter for the Oracle Streams component session to be eligible for bottleneck analysis. For example, if 50 is specified, then only components that are paused for flow control 50% of the time or less are eligible for bottleneck analysis.
retention_time	The number of hours to retain monitoring results.

Exceptions

Table 264–21 START_MONITORING Procedure Exceptions

Exception	Description
ORA-20111	cannot start monitoring due to active EM monitoring job Stop the Oracle Enterprise Manager (EM) monitoring job, and run the START_MONITORING procedure again.
ORA-20112	cannot start monitoring due to active Streams monitoring job Stop the Streams monitoring job, and run the START_MONITORING procedure again.

Usage Notes

The following are usage notes for the START_MONITORING procedure:

- Requirements for the User Running the Procedure
- Full Monitoring Job Names
- Restrictions on Monitoring Jobs

Requirements for the User Running the Procedure

The user who runs the START_MONITORING procedure must meet the following requirements:

- The user must have access to a database link to each database that contains Oracle Streams components.
- The user must have been granted privileges using the DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure, and each database link must connect to a user at the remote database that has been granted privileges using the DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure.

Full Monitoring Job Names

When you submit a monitoring job, the client name and job name are concatenated to form the full monitoring job name. You specify the client name using the `client_name` parameter and the job name using the `job_name` parameter when you run the `START_MONITORING` procedure. The client name for a monitoring job submitted by Oracle Enterprise Manager is always `EM`.

The following table show examples of full monitoring job names:

Setting for client_name Parameter	Setting for job_name parameter	Full Monitoring Job Name
NULL	STREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB	STREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB
EM	STREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB	EMSTREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB
strm	STREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB	strmSTREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB
strm	mjob1	strmmjob1

Restrictions on Monitoring Jobs

The following restrictions apply to monitoring jobs:

- The limit for the length of the full monitoring job name is 30 bytes.
- Two monitoring jobs cannot have the same full monitoring job name, even if the monitoring jobs were submitted by different schemas. The name check is not case-sensitive. For example, `strmSTREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB` and `STRMSTREAMS$_MONITORING_JOB` are considered to be the same name.
- Oracle Enterprise Manager can have at most one monitoring job for each database.
- Each schema can have at most one monitoring job.

STOP_MONITORING Procedure

This procedure stops a monitoring job that was submitted by the current user.

Syntax

```
UTL_SPADV.STOP_MONITORING(
   purge IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 264–22 STOP_MONITORING Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
purge	If TRUE, then the procedure purges information about the monitoring job from the result tables. If FALSE, then the procedure retains information about the monitoring job in the result tables.

265

UTL_TCP

With the `UTL_TCP` package and its procedures and functions, PL/SQL applications can communicate with external TCP/IP-based servers using TCP/IP. Because many Internet application protocols are based on TCP/IP, this package is useful to PL/SQL applications that use Internet protocols and e-mail.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using UTL_TCP

Overview

The UTL_TCP package provides TCP/IP client-side access functionality in PL/SQL.

Security Model

This package is an invoker's rights package and the invoking user needs the connect privilege granted in the access control list assigned to the remote network host to which he wants to connect.

Note: For more information about managing fine-grained access, see *Oracle Database Security Guide*

Types

CONNECTION Type

This is a PL/SQL record type used to represent a TCP/IP connection.

Syntax

```
TYPE connection IS RECORD (
    remote_host    VARCHAR2(255),
    remote_port    PLS_INTEGER,
    local_host     VARCHAR2(255),
    local_port     PLS_INTEGER,
    charset        VARCHAR2(30),
    newline        VARCHAR2(2),
    tx_timeout     PLS_INTEGER,
    private_sd     PLS_INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 265–1 Connection Record Type Fields

Field	Description
remote_host	Name of the remote host when connection is established. NULL when no connection is established.
remote_port	Port number of the remote host connected. NULL when no connection is established.
local_host	Name of the local host used to establish the connection. NULL when no connection is established.
local_port	Port number of the local host used to establish the connection. NULL when no connection is established.
charset	The on-the-wire character set. Since text messages in the database may be encoded in a character set that is different from the one expected on the wire (that is, the character set specified by the communication protocol, or the one stipulated by the other end of the communication), text messages in the database are converted to and from the on-the-wire character set as they are sent and received on the network.
newline	Newline character sequence. This newline character sequence is appended to the text line sent by WRITE_LINE API.
tx_timeout	Time in seconds that the UTL_TCP package waits before giving up in a read or write operation in this connection. In read operations, this package gives up if no data is available for reading immediately. In write operations, this package gives up if the output buffer is full and no data is to be sent in the network without being blocked. Zero (0) indicates not to wait at all. NULL indicates to wait forever.

Usage Notes

The fields in a connection record are used to return information about the connection, which is often made using OPEN_CONNECTION. Changing the values of those fields has

no effect on the connection. The fields `private_XXXX` are for implementation use only. You should not modify the values.

In the current release of the `UTL_TCP` package, the parameters `local_host` and `local_port` are ignored when `open_connection` makes a TCP/IP connection. It does not attempt to use the specified local host and port number when the connection is made. The `local_host` and `local_port` fields are not set in the connection record returned by the function.

Time out on write operations is not supported in the current release of the `UTL_TCP` package.

CRLF

The character sequence carriage-return line-feed. It is the newline sequence commonly used by many communication standards.

Syntax

```
CRLF CONSTANT VARCHAR2(2 CHAR);
```

Usage Notes

This package variable defines the newline character sequence commonly used in many Internet protocols. This is the default value of the newline character sequence for `WRITE_LINE`, specified when a connection is opened. While such protocols use `<CR><LF>` to denote a new line, some implementations may choose to use just line-feed to denote a new line. In such cases, users can specify a different newline character sequence when a connection is opened.

Exceptions

The exceptions raised by the TCP/IP package are listed in Table 265–2.

Table 265–2 TCP/IP Exceptions

Exception	Description
BUFFER_TOO_SMALL	Buffer is too small for input that requires look-ahead
END_OF_INPUT	Raised when no more data is available to read from the connection
NETWORK_ERROR	Generic network error
BAD_ARGUMENT	Bad argument passed in an API call (for example, a negative buffer size)
TRANSFER_TIMEOUT	No data is read and a read time out occurred
PARTIAL_MULTIBYTE_CHAR	No complete character is read and a partial multibyte character is found at the end of the input

Rules and Limits

The interface provided in the package only allows connections to be initiated by the PL/SQL program. It does not allow the PL/SQL program to accept connections initiated outside the program.

Examples

The following code example illustrates how the TCP/IP package can be used to retrieve a Web page over HTTP. It connects to a Web server listening at port 80 (standard port for HTTP) and requests the root document.

```
DECLARE
  c  utl_tcp.connection;  -- TCP/IP connection to the Web server
  ret_val pls_integer;
BEGIN
  c := utl_tcp.open_connection(remote_host => 'www.acme.com',
                               remote_port =>  80,
                               charset     => 'US7ASCII');  -- open connection
  ret_val := utl_tcp.write_line(c, 'GET / HTTP/1.0');    -- send HTTP request
  ret_val := utl_tcp.write_line(c);
  BEGIN
    LOOP
      dbms_output.put_line(utl_tcp.get_line(c, TRUE));  -- read result
    END LOOP;
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN utl_tcp.end_of_input THEN
      NULL; -- end of input
  END;
  utl_tcp.close_connection(c);
END;
```

The following code example illustrates how the TCP/IP package can be used by an application to send e-mail (also known as email from PL/SQL). The application connects to an SMTP server at port 25 and sends a simple text message.

```
PROCEDURE send_mail (sender    IN VARCHAR2,
                     recipient IN VARCHAR2,
                   message   IN VARCHAR2) IS
    mailhost   VARCHAR2(30) := 'mailhost.mydomain.com';
    smtp_error  EXCEPTION;
    mail_conn   utl_tcp.connection;
    PROCEDURE smtp_command(command IN VARCHAR2,
                           ok      IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT '250')
    IS
        response varchar2(3);
        len pls_integer;
    BEGIN
        len := utl_tcp.write_line(mail_conn, command);
        response := substr(utl_tcp.get_line(mail_conn), 1, 3);
        IF (response <> ok) THEN
            RAISE smtp_error;
        END IF;
    END;

BEGIN
    mail_conn := utl_tcp.open_connection(remote_host => mailhost,
                                         remote_port => 25,
                                         charset     => 'US7ASCII');
    smtp_command('HELO ' || mailhost);
    smtp_command('MAIL FROM: ' || sender);
    smtp_command('RCPT TO: ' || recipient);
    smtp_command('DATA', '354');
    smtp_command(message);
    smtp_command('QUIT', '221');
    utl_tcp.close_connection(mail_conn);
```

```
EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        -- Handle the error
END;
```

Summary of UTL_TCP Subprograms

Table 265–3 UTL_TCP Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
AVAILABLE Function on page 265-12	Determines the number of bytes available for reading from a TCP/IP connection
CLOSE_ALL_ CONNECTIONS Procedure on page 265-14	Closes all open TCP/IP connections
CLOSE_CONNECTION Procedure on page 265-15	Closes an open TCP/IP connection
FLUSH Procedure on page 265-16	Transmits immediately to the server all data in the output buffer, if a buffer is used
GET_LINE Function on page 265-17	Returns the line of data read
GET_LINE_NCHAR Function on page 265-18	Returns the line of data read in NCHAR form
GET_RAW Function on page 265-19	Return the data read instead of the amount of data read
GET_TEXT Function on page 265-20	Returns the text data read
GET_TEXT_NCHAR Function on page 265-21	Returns the text data read in NCHAR form
OPEN_CONNECTION Function on page 265-22	Opens a TCP/IP connection to a specified service
READ_LINE Function on page 265-24	Receives a text line from a service on an open connection
READ_RAW Function on page 265-26	Receives binary data from a service on an open connection
READ_TEXT Function on page 265-27	Receives text data from a service on an open connection
SECURE_CONNECTION Procedure on page 265-29	Secures a TCP/IP connection using SSL/TLS
WRITE_LINE Function on page 265-30	Transmits a text line to a service on an open connection
WRITE_RAW Function on page 265-31	Transmits a binary message to a service on an open connection
WRITE_TEXT Function on page 265-32	Transmits a text message to a service on an open connection

AVAILABLE Function

This function determines the number of bytes available for reading from a TCP/IP connection. It is the number of bytes that can be read immediately without blocking. Determines if data is ready to be read from the connection.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.AVAILABLE (
   c        IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   timeout  IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–4 AVAILABLE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection to determine the amount of data that is available to be read
timeout	Time in seconds to wait before giving up and reporting that no data is available. Zero (0) indicates not to wait at all. NULL indicates to wait forever.

Return Values

The number of bytes available for reading without blocking

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION. Users may use this API to determine if data is available to be read before calling the read API so that the program are not blocked because data is not ready to be read from the input.

The number of bytes available for reading returned by this function may be less than what is actually available. On some platforms, this function may only return 1, to indicate that some data is available. If you are concerned about the portability of your application, then assume that this function returns a positive value when data is available for reading, and 0 when no data is available. This function returns a positive value when all the data at a particular connection has been read and the next read result in the END_OF_INPUT exception.

The following example illustrates using this function in a portable manner:

```
DECLARE
   c   utl_tcp.connection
   data VARCHAR2(256);
   len  PLS_INTEGER;
BEGIN
   c := utl_tcp.open_connection(...);
   LOOP
      IF (utl_tcp.available(c) > 0) THEN
         len := utl_tcp.read_text(c, data, 256);
      ELSE
         ---do some other things
        . . . .
      END IF
```

```
   END LOOP;
END;
```

CLOSE_ALL_CONNECTIONS Procedure

This procedure closes all open TCP/IP connections.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.CLOSE_ALL_CONNECTIONS;
```

Usage Notes

This call is provided to close all connections before a PL/SQL program ends to avoid dangling connections.

CLOSE_CONNECTION Procedure

This procedure closes an open TCP/IP connection.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.CLOSE_CONNECTION (
   c IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 265–5 CLOSE_CONNECTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection to close

Usage Notes

Connection must have been opened by a previous call to `OPEN_CONNECTION`. The fields `remote_host, remote_port, local_host, local_port` and `charset` of `c` are reset after the connection is closed.

An open connection must be closed explicitly. An open connection remains open when the PL/SQL record variable that stores the connection goes out-of-scope in the PL/SQL program. Failing to close unwanted connections may result in unnecessary tying up of local and remote system resources.

FLUSH Procedure

This procedure transfers immediately to the server all data in the output buffer, if a buffer is used.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.FLUSH (
   c IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 265–6 FLUSH Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection to which to send data

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION.

GET_LINE Function

This function returns the line of data read.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.GET_LINE (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   remove_crlf IN            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   peek        IN            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 265–7 GET_LINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data
remove_crlf	If TRUE, then one ore more trailing CRLF characters are removed from the received message.
peek	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to TRUE and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.

Return Values

The text line read

Usage Notes

- The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION.
- See READ_LINE for the read time out, character set conversion, buffer size, and multibyte character issues.

GET_LINE_NCHAR Function

This function returns the line of data read in NCHAR form.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.GET_LINE_NCHAR (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   remove_crlf IN            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
   peek        IN            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN NVARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 265–8 GET_LINE_NCHAR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	TCP connection from which to receive data
`remove_crlf`	If `TRUE`, then one ore more trailing CRLF characters are removed from the received message.
`peek`	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to `TRUE` and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.

Return Values

The text line read

Usage Notes

- The connection must have already been opened through a call to `OPEN_CONNECTION`.
- See `READ_LINE` for the read time out, character set conversion, buffer size, and multibyte character issues.

GET_RAW Function

This function returns the data read instead of the amount of data read.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.GET_RAW (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   len   IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   peek  IN            BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN RAW;
```

Parameters

Table 265–9 GET_RAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data
len	The number of bytes (or characters for VARCHAR2) of data to receive. Default is 1.
peek	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to TRUE and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.
remove_crlf	If TRUE, then one ore more trailing CRLF characters are removed from the received message.

Return Values

The binary data read

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION.

For all the get_* APIs described in this section, see the corresponding READ_* API for the read time out issue. For GET_TEXT and GET_LINE, see the corresponding READ_* API for character set conversion, buffer size, and multibyte character issues.

GET_TEXT Function

This function returns the text data read.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.GET_TEXT (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   len  IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   peek IN            BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 265–10 GET_TEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data
len	Number of bytes (or characters for VARCHAR2) of data to receive. Default is 1.
peek	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to TRUE and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.
remove_crlf	If TRUE, then one ore more trailing CRLF characters are removed from the received message.

Return Values

The text data read

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION.

For all the get_* APIs described in this section, see the corresponding read_* API for the read time out issue. For GET_TEXT and GET_LINE, see the corresponding READ_* API for character set conversion, buffer size, and multibyte character issues.

GET_TEXT_NCHAR Function

This function returns the text data read in NCHAR form.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.GET_TEXT_NCHAR (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   len  IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   peek IN            BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN NVARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 265–11 GET_TEXT_NCHAR Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data
len	The number of bytes (or characters for VARCHAR2) of data to receive. Default is 1.
peek	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to TRUE and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.
remove_crlf	If TRUE, then one ore more trailing CRLF characters are removed from the received message.

Return Values

The text data read

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION.

For all the get_* APIs described in this section, see the corresponding read_* API for the read time out issue. For GET_TEXT and GET_LINE, see the corresponding READ_* API for character set conversion, buffer size, and multibyte character issues.

OPEN_CONNECTION Function

This function opens a TCP/IP connection to a specified service.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.OPEN_CONNECTION  (
   remote_host          IN VARCHAR2,
   remote_port          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   local_host           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   local_port           IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   in_buffer_size       IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   out_buffer_size      IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   charset              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   newline              IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT CRLF,
   tx_timeout           IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_path          IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
   wallet_password      IN  VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
  RETURN connection;
```

Parameters

Table 265–12 OPEN_CONNECTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
remote_host	Name of the host providing the service. When remote_host is NULL, it connects to the local host.
remote_port	Port number on which the service is listening for connections
local_host	Name of the host providing the service. NULL means does not care.
local_port	Port number on which the service is listening for connections. NULL means don't care.
in_buffer_size	The size of input buffer. The use of an input buffer can speed up execution performance in receiving data from the server. The appropriate size of the buffer depends on the flow of data between the client and the server, and the traffic/latency on the network. A zero value means no buffer should be used. A NULL value means the caller does not care if a buffer is used or not. The maximum size of the input buffer is 32767 bytes.
out_buffer_size	The size of output buffer. The use of an output buffer can speed up execution performance in sending data to the server. The appropriate size of buffer depends on the flow of data between the client and the server, and the network condition. A zero value means no buffer should be used. A NULL value means the caller does not care if a buffer is used or not. The maximum size of the output buffer is 32767 bytes.
charset	The on-the-wire character set. Since text messages in the database may be encoded in a character set that is different from the one expected on the wire (that is, the character set specified by the communication protocol, or the one stipulated by the other end of the communication), text messages in the database are converted to and from the on-the-wire character set as they are sent and received on the network using READ_TEXT, READ_LINE, WRITE_TEXT and WRITE_LINE. Set this parameter to NULL when no conversion is needed.

Table 265–12 (Cont.) OPEN_CONNECTION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
newline	Newline character sequence. This newline character sequence is appended to the text line sent by WRITE_LINE API.
tx_timeout	Time in seconds that the UTL_TCP package should wait before giving up in a read or write operations in this connection. In read operations, this package gives up if no data is available for reading immediately. In write operations, this package gives up if the output buffer is full and no data is to be sent in the network without being blocked. Zero (0) indicates not to wait at all. NULL indicates to wait forever.
wallet_path	Directory path that contains the Oracle wallet for SSL/TLS. The format is file:*directory-path*
wallet_password	Password to open the wallet. When the wallet is auto-login enabled, the password may be set to NULL.

Return Values

A connection to the targeted TCP/IP service

Usage Notes

- Note that connections opened by this UTL_TCP package can remain open and be passed from one database call to another in a shared server configuration. However, the connection must be closed explicitly. The connection remains open when the PL/SQL record variable that stores the connection goes out-of-scope in the PL/SQL program. Failing to close unwanted connections may result in unnecessary tying up of local and remote system resources.
- In the current release of the UTL_TCP package, the parameters local_host and local_port are ignored when open_connection makes a TCP/IP connection. It does not attempt to use the specified local host and port number when the connection is made. The local_host and local_port fields is not set in the connection record returned by the function.
- tx_timeout is intended to govern both the read operations and the write operations. However, an implementation restriction prevents tx_timeout from governing write operations in the current release.

Examples

```
DECLARE
  c UTL_TCP.CONNECTION;
BEGIN
  c := UTL_TCP.OPEN_CONNECTION(
   host            => 'www.example.com',
   port            => 443,
   wallet_path     => 'file:/oracle/wallets/smtp_wallet',
   wallet_password => '****');
  UTL_TCP.SECURE_CONNECTION (c => c);
END;
```

READ_LINE Function

This function receives a text line from a service on an open connection. A line is terminated by a line-feed, a carriage-return or a carriage-return followed by a line-feed.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.READ_LINE (
   c           IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data        IN OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   peek        IN            BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–13 READ_LINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data
data	Data received.
remove_crlf	If TRUE, then one ore more trailing CRLF characters are removed from the received message.
peek	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to TRUE and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.

Return Values

The number of characters of data received

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION. This function does not return until the end-of-line have been reached, or the end of input has been reached. Text messages is converted from the on-the-wire character set, specified when the connection was opened, to the database character set before they are returned to the caller.

If transfer time out is set when the connection is opened, then this function waits for each data packet to be ready to read until time out occurs. If it occurs, then this function stops reading and returns all the data read successfully. If no data is read successfully, then the transfer_timeout exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

If a partial multibyte character is found at the end of input, then this function stops reading and returns all the complete multibyte characters read successfully. If no complete character is read successfully, then the partial_multibyte_char exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the bytes of that partial multibyte character can be read as binary by the READ_RAW function. If a partial multibyte character is seen

in the middle of the input because the remaining bytes of the character have not arrived and read time out occurs, then the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised instead. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

READ_RAW Function

This function receives binary data from a service on an open connection.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.READ_RAW (
   c     IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data  IN OUT NOCOPY RAW,
   len   IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   peek  IN            BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–14 READ_RAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	TCP connection from which to receive data
`data (IN OUT COPY)`	Data received
`len`	Number of bytes of data to receive
`peek`	Normally, you want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, you may just want to look ahead at the data, that is, peek at it, without removing it from the input queue, so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to `TRUE` and set up an input buffer before the connection is opened. The amount of data you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.

Return Values

The number of bytes of data received

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to `OPEN_CONNECTION`. This function does not return until the specified number of bytes have been read, or the end of input has been reached.

If transfer time out is set when the connection is opened, then this function waits for each data packet to be ready to read until time out occurs. If it occurs, then this function stops reading and returns all the data read successfully. If no data is read successfully, then the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

READ_TEXT Function

This function receives text data from a service on an open connection.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.READ_TEXT (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data IN OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   len  IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
   peek IN            BOOLEAN     DEFAULT FALSE)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–15 READ_TEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data
data	Data received
len	Number of characters of data to receive
peek	Normally, users want to read the data and remove it from the input queue, that is, consume it. In some situations, users may just want to look ahead at the data without removing it from the input queue so that it is still available for reading (or even peeking) in the next call. To keep the data in the input queue, set this flag to TRUE and an input buffer must be set up when the connection is opened. The amount of data that you can peek at (that is, read but keep in the input queue) must be less than the size of input buffer.

Return Values

The number of characters of data received

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to OPEN_CONNECTION. This function does not return until the specified number of characters has been read, or the end of input has been reached. Text messages is converted from the on-the-wire character set, specified when the connection was opened, to the database character set before they are returned to the caller.

Unless explicitly overridden, the size of a VARCHAR2 buffer is specified in terms of bytes, while the parameter len refers to the maximum number of characters to be read. When the database character set is multibyte, where a single character may consist of more than 1 byte, you should ensure that the buffer can hold the maximum of characters. In general, the size of the VARCHAR2 buffer should equal the number of characters to be read, multiplied by the maximum number of bytes of a character of the database character set.

If transfer time out is set when the connection is opened, then this function waits for each data packet to be ready to read until time out occurs. If it occurs, then this function stops reading and returns all the data read successfully. If no data is read successfully, then the transfer_timeout exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

If a partial multibyte character is found at the end of input, then this function stops reading and returns all the complete multibyte characters read successfully. If no complete character is read successfully, then the `partial_multibyte_char` exception is raised. The exception can be handled and the bytes of that partial multibyte character can be read as binary by the `READ_RAW` function. If a partial multibyte character is seen in the middle of the input because the remaining bytes of the character have not arrived and read time out occurs, then the `transfer_timeout` exception is raised instead. The exception can be handled and the read operation can be retried later.

SECURE_CONNECTION Procedure

This procedure secures a TCP/IP connection using SSL/TLS. SSL/TLS requires an Oracle wallet which must be specified when the connection was opened by the OPEN_CONNECTION Function.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.SECURE_CONNECTION (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection);
```

Parameters

Table 265–16 SECURE_CONNECTION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
c	TCP connection from which to receive data

WRITE_LINE Function

This function transmits a text line to a service on an open connection. The `newline` character sequence is appended to the message before it is transmitted.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.WRITE_LINE (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data IN            VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–17 WRITE_LINE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	TCP connection to which to send data
`data`	Buffer containing the data to be sent

Return Values

The actual number of characters of data transmitted

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to `OPEN_CONNECTION`. Text messages are converted to the on-the-wire character set, specified when the connection was opened, before they are transmitted on the wire.

WRITE_RAW Function

This function transmits a binary message to a service on an open connection. The function does not return until the specified number of bytes have been written.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.WRITE_RAW (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data IN            RAW,
   len  IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–18 WRITE_RAW Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	TCP connection to which to send data
`data`	Buffer containing the data to be sent
`len`	The number of bytes of data to transmit. When `len` is `NULL`, the whole length of data is written.

Return Values

The number of bytes of data transmitted

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to `OPEN_CONNECTION`.

WRITE_TEXT Function

This function transmits a text message to a service on an open connection.

Syntax

```
UTL_TCP.WRITE_TEXT (
   c    IN OUT NOCOPY connection,
   data IN            VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   len  IN            PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL)
 RETURN num_chars PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 265–19 WRITE_TEXT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`c`	TCP connection to which to send data
`data`	Buffer containing the data to be sent
`len`	The number of characters of data to transmit. When `len` is `NULL`, the whole length of data is written. The actual amount of data written may be less because of network condition.

Return Values

The actual number of characters of data transmitted

Usage Notes

The connection must have already been opened through a call to `OPEN_CONNECTION`. Text messages are converted to the on-the-wire character set, specified when the connection was opened, before they are transmitted on the wire.

266

UTL_URL

The UTL_URL package has two functions: ESCAPE and UNESCAPE.

See Also: Chapter 252, "UTL_HTTP"

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using UTL_URL
  - Overview
  - Exceptions
  - Examples
- Summary of UTL_URL Subprograms

Using UTL_URL

Overview

A Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is a string that identifies a Web resource, such as a page or a picture. Use a URL to access such resources by way of the HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP). For example, the URL for Oracle's Web site is:

```
http://www.oracle.com
```

Normally, a URL contains English alphabetic characters, digits, and punctuation symbols. These characters are known as the *unreserved characters*. Any other characters in URLs, including multibyte characters or binary octet codes, must be escaped to be accurately processed by Web browsers or Web servers. Some punctuation characters, such as dollar sign ($), question mark (?), colon (:), and equals sign (=), are reserved as delimiters in a URL. They are known as the *reserved characters*. To literally process these characters, instead of treating them as delimiters, they must be escaped.

The unreserved characters are:

- A through Z, a through z, and 0 through 9
- Hyphen (-), underscore (_), period (.), exclamation point (!), tilde (~), asterisk (*), accent ('), left parenthesis (( ), right parenthesis ( ))

The reserved characters are:

- Semi-colon (;) slash (/), question mark (?), colon (:), at sign (@), ampersand (&), equals sign (=), plus sign (+), dollar sign ($), percentage sign (%), and comma (,)

The UTL_URL package has two functions that provide escape and unescape mechanisms for URL characters. Use the escape function to escape a URL before the URL is used fetch a Web page by way of the UTL_HTTP package. Use the unescape function to unescape an escaped URL before information is extracted from the URL.

For more information, refer to the Request For Comments (RFC) document RFC2396. Note that this URL escape and unescape mechanism is different from the x-www-form-urlencoded encoding mechanism described in the HTML specification:

```
http://www.w3.org/TR/html
```

Exceptions

Table 266–1 lists the exceptions that can be raised when the UTL_URL package API is invoked.

Table 266–1 UTL_URL Exceptions

Exception	Error Code	Reason
BAD_URL	29262	The URL contains badly formed escape code sequences
BAD_FIXED_ WIDTH_CHARSET	29274	Fixed-width multibyte character set is not allowed as a URL character set.

Examples

You can implement the `x-www-form-urlencoded` encoding using the `UTL_URL.ESCAPE` function as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION form_url_encode (
   data    IN VARCHAR2,
   charset IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2 AS
BEGIN
  RETURN utl_url.escape(data, TRUE, charset); -- note use of TRUE
END;
```

For decoding data encoded with the `form-URL-encode scheme`, the following function implements the decording scheme:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION form_url_decode(
   data    IN VARCHAR2,
   charset IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2 AS
BEGIN
  RETURN utl_url.unescape(
     replace(data, '+', ' '),
     charset);
END;
```

Summary of UTL_URL Subprograms

Table 266–2 UTL_URL Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ESCAPE Function on page 266-7	Returns a URL with illegal characters (and optionally reserved characters) escaped using the `%2-digit-hex-code` format
UNESCAPE Function on page 266-9	Unescapes the escape character sequences to their original forms in a URL. Convert the `%XX` escape character sequences to the original characters

ESCAPE Function

This function returns a URL with illegal characters (and optionally reserved characters) escaped using the `%2-digit-hex-code` format.

Syntax

```
UTL_URL.ESCAPE (
   url                   IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   escape_reserved_chars IN BOOLEAN  DEFAULT  FALSE,
   url_charset           IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT  utl_http.body_charset)
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 266–3 ESCAPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`url`	The original URL
`escape_reserved_chars`	Indicates whether the URL reserved characters should be escaped. If set to `TRUE`, both the reserved and illegal URL characters are escaped. Otherwise, only the illegal URL characters are escaped. The default value is `FALSE`.
`url_charset`	When escaping a character (single-byte or multibyte), determine the target character set that character should be converted to before the character is escaped in %hex-code format. If `url_charset` is `NULL`, the database charset is assumed and no character set conversion will occur. The default value is the current default body character set of the `UTL_HTTP` package, whose default value is `ISO-8859-1`. The character set can be named in Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) or in the Oracle naming convention.

Usage Notes

Use this function to escape URLs that contain illegal characters as defined in the URL specification RFC 2396. The legal characters in URLs are:

- `A` through `Z`, `a` through `z`, and `0` through `9`
- Hyphen (`-`), underscore (_), period (`.`), exclamation point (`!`), tilde (`~`), asterisk (`*`), accent (`'`), left parenthesis (`(`), right parenthesis (`)`)

The reserved characters consist of:

- Semi-colon (`;`) slash (`/`), question mark (`?`), colon (`:`), at sign (`@`), ampersand (`&`), equals sign (`=`), plus sign (`+`), dollar sign (`$`), and comma (`,`)

Many of the reserved characters are used as delimiters in the URL. You should escape characters beyond those listed here by using escape_url. Also, to use the reserved characters in the name-value pairs of the query string of a URL, those characters must be escaped separately. An escape_url cannot recognize the need to escape those characters because once inside a URL, those characters become indistinguishable from the actual delimiters. For example, to pass a name-value pair `$logon=scott/tiger` into the query string of a URL, escape the `$` and `/` separately as `%24logon=scott%2Ftiger` and use it in the URL.

Normally, you will escape the entire URL, which contains the reserved characters (delimiters) that should not be escaped. For example:

```
utl_url.escape('http://www.acme.com/a url with space.html')
```

Returns:

```
http://www.acme.com/a%20url%20with%20space.html
```

In other situations, you may want to send a query string with a value that contains reserved characters. In that case, escape only the value fully (with `escape_reserved_chars` set to `TRUE`) and then concatenate it with the rest of the URL. For example:

```
url := 'http://www.acme.com/search?check=' || utl_url.escape
('Is the use of the "$" sign okay?', TRUE);
```

This expression escapes the question mark (`?`), dollar sign (`$`), and space characters in `'Is the use of the "$" sign okay?'` but not the `?` after `search` in the URL that denotes the use of a query string.

The Web server that you intend to fetch Web pages from may use a character set that is different from that of your database. In that case, specify the url_charset as the Web server character set so that the characters that need to be escaped are escaped in the target character set. For example, a user of an EBCDIC database who wants to access an ASCII Web server should escape the URL using `US7ASCII` so that a space is escaped as `%20` (hex code of a space in ASCII) instead of `%40` (hex code of a space in EBCDIC).

This function does not validate a URL for the proper URL format.

UNESCAPE Function

This function unescapes the escape character sequences to its original form in a URL, to convert the `%XX` escape character sequences to the original characters.

Syntax

```
UTL_URL.UNESCAPE (
   url            IN VARCHAR2 CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
   url_charset    IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT utl_http.body_charset)
                  RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 266–4 UNESCAPE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
`url`	The URL to unescape
`url_charset`	After a character is unescaped, the character is assumed to be in the `source_charset` character set and it will be converted from the `source_charset` to the database character set before the URL is returned. If `source_charset` is `NULL`, the database charset is assumed and no character set conversion occurred. The default value is the current default body character set of the `UTL_HTTP` package, whose default value is "ISO-8859-1". The character set can be named in Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) or Oracle naming convention.

Usage Notes

The Web server that you receive the URL from may use a character set that is different from that of your database. In that case, specify the url_charset as the Web server character set so that the characters that need to be unescaped are unescaped in the source character set. For example, a user of an EBCDIC database who receives a URL from an ASCII Web server should unescape the URL using `US7ASCII` so that `%20` is unescaped as a space (0x20 is the hex code of a space in ASCII) instead of a `?` (because 0x20 is not a valid character in EBCDIC).

This function does not validate a URL for the proper URL format.

267

WPG_DOCLOAD

The WPG_DOCLOAD package provides an interface to download files, BLOBs and BFILEs.

> **See Also:** For more information about implementation of this package:
>
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide for Oracle HTTP Server*
> - *Oracle Fusion Middleware User's Guide for mod_plsql*

The chapter contains the following topics:

Using WPG_DOCLOAD

Constants

NAME_COL_LEN

The `NAME` column in your document table must be the same as the value of `name_col_len`.

```
name_col_len CONSTANT pls_integer := 64;
```

MIMET_COL_LEN

The `MIME_TYPE` column in your document table must be the same as the value of `mimet_col_len`.

```
mimet_col_len CONSTANT pls_integer := 48;
```

MAX_DOCTABLE_NAME_LEN

The name length of your document table must be less than `max_doctable_name_len`.

```
max_doctable_name_len CONSTANT pls_integer := 256;
```

Summary of WPG_DOCLOAD Subprograms

Table 267–1 WPG_DOCLOAD Package Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
DOWNLOAD_FILE Procedures on page 267-5	Downloads files, `BLOBS` and `BFILES`

DOWNLOAD_FILE Procedures

There are three versions of this procedure:

- The first version downloads files and is invoked from within a document download procedure to signal the PL/SQL Gateway that `p_filename` is to be downloaded from the document table to the client's browser.
- The second version can be called from within any procedure to signal the PL/SQL Gateway that `p_blob` is to be downloaded to the client's browser.
- The third version can be called from within any procedure to signal the PL/SQL Gateway that `p_bfile` is to be downloaded to the client's browser.

Syntax

```
WPG_DOCLOAD.DOWNLOAD_FILE(
   p_filename      IN             VARCHAR2,
   p_bcaching      IN             BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE);


WPG_DOCLOAD.DOWNLOAD_FILE(
   p_blob          IN OUT NOCOPY  BLOB);

WPG_DOCLOAD.DOWNLOAD_FILE(
   p_bfile         IN OUT         BFILE);
```

Parameters

Table 267–2 DOWNLOAD_FILE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`p_filename`	The file to download from the document table.
`p_blob`	The `BLOB` to download.
`p_bfile`	The `BFILE` to download (see Usage Notes).
`p_bcaching`	Whether browser caching is enabled (see Usage Notes).

Usage Notes

- Normally, a document will be downloaded to the browser unless the browser sends an 'If-Modified-Since' header to the gateway indicating that it has the requested document in its cache. In that case, the gateway will determine if the browser's cached copy is up to date, and if it is, it will send an HTTP 304 status message to the browser indicating that the browser should display the cached copy. However, because a document URL and a document do not necessarily have a one-to-one relationship in the PL/SQL Web Gateway, in some cases it may be undesirable to have the cached copy of a document displayed. In those cases, the `p_bcaching` parameter should be set to FALSE to indicate to the gateway to ignore the 'If-Modified-Since' header, and download the document.
- `p_bfile` and `p_blob` are declared as `IN OUT` because the locator is initially opened to check for file accessibility and existence. The open operation can only be performed if the locator is writable and readable.

268

ANYDATA TYPE

An ANYDATA TYPE contains an instance of a given type, plus a description of the type. In this sense, an ANYDATA is self-describing. An ANYDATA can be persistently stored in the database.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using ANYDATA TYPE

Restrictions

Persistent storage of `ANYDATA` instances whose type contains embedded LOBs other than `BFILE`s is not currently supported.

Operational Notes

Construction

There are 2 ways to construct an ANYDATA. The CONVERT* calls enable construction of the ANYDATA in its entirety with a single call. They serve as explicit CAST functions from any type in the Oracle ORDBMS to ANYDATA.

```
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertBDouble(dbl IN BINARY_DOUBLE) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertBfile(b IN BFILE) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertBFloat(fl IN BINARY_FLOAT) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertBlob(b IN BLOB) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertChar(c IN CHAR) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertClob(c IN CLOB) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertCollection(col IN "collection_type") RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertDate(dat IN DATE) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertIntervalDS(inv IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertIntervalYM(invIN INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertNchar(nc IN NCHAR) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertNClob(nc IN NCLOB) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertNumber(num IN NUMBER) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertNVarchar2(nc IN NVARCHAR2) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertObject(obj IN "<object_type>") RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertRaw(r IN RAW) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertRef(rf IN REF "<object_type>") RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertTimestamp(ts IN TIMESTAMP) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertTimestampTZ(ts IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertTimestampLTZ(ts IN TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIMEZONE) return
ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertURowid(rid IN UROWID) return ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertVarchar(c IN VARCHAR) RETURN ANYDATA,
STATIC FUNCTION ConvertVarchar2(c IN VARCHAR2) RETURN ANYDATA,
```

The second way to construct an ANYDATA is a piece by piece approach. The BEGINCREATE Static Procedure call begins the construction process and ENDCREATE Member Procedure call finishes the construction process. In between these two calls, the individual attributes of an object type or the elements of a collection can be set using SET* calls. For piece by piece access of the attributes of objects and elements of collections, the PIECEWISE Member Procedure should be invoked prior to GET* calls.

Note: The ANYDATA has to be constructed or accessed sequentially starting from its first attribute (or collection element). The BEGINCREATE call automatically begins the construction in a piece-wise mode. There is no need to call PIECEWISE immediately after BEGINCREATE. ENDCREATE should be called to finish the construction process (before which any access calls can be made).

Access

Access functions are available based on SQL. These functions do not throw exceptions on type-mismatch. Instead, they return NULL if the type of the ANYDATA does not correspond to the type of access. If you wish to use only ANYDATA functions of the appropriate types returned in a query, you should use a WHERE clause which uses GETTYPENAME and choose the type you are interested in (say "SYS.NUMBER"). Each of

these functions returns the value of a specified datatype inside a SYS.ANYDATA wrapper.

```
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessBDouble(self IN ANYDATA) return BINARY_DOUBLE
   DETERMINISTIC,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessBfile(self IN ANYDATA) return BFILE,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessBFloat(self IN ANYDATA) return BINARY_FLOAT
   DETERMINISTIC,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessBlob(self IN ANYDATA) return BLOB,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessChar(self IN ANYDATA) return CHAR,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessClob(self IN ANYDATA) return CLOB,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessDate(self IN ANYDATA) return DATE,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessIntervalYM(self IN ANYDATA) return INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessIntervalDS(self IN ANYDATA) return INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessNchar(self IN ANYDATA) return NCHAR,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessNClob(self IN ANYDATA) return NCLOB
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessNumber(self IN ANYDATA) return NUMBER,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessNVarchar2(self IN ANYDATA) return NVARCHAR2,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessRaw(self IN ANYDATA) return RAW,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessTimestamp(self IN ANYDATA) return TIMESTAMP,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessTimestampLTZ(self IN ANYDATA) return TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL
   TIMEZONE,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessTimestampTZ(self IN ANYDATA) return TIMESTAMP WITH
   TIMEZONE,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessURowid(self IN ANYDATA) return UROWID DETERMINISTIC
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessVarchar(self IN ANYDATA) return VARCHAR,
MEMBER FUNCTION AccessVarchar2(self IN ANYDATA) return VARCHAR2,
```

Summary of ANYDATA Subprograms

Table 268–1 ANYDATA Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BEGINCREATE Static Procedure on page 268-7	Begins creation process on a new `ANYDATA`
ENDCREATE Member Procedure on page 268-8	Ends creation of an `ANYDATA`
GET* Member Functions on page 268-9	Gets the current data value (which should be of appropriate type)
GETTYPE Member Function on page 268-12	Gets the Type of the `ANYDATA`
GETTYPENAME Member Function on page 268-13	Get the fully qualified type name for the `ANYDATA`
PIECEWISE Member Procedure on page 268-14	Sets the `MODE` of access of the current data value to be an attribute at a time (if the data value is of `TYPECODE_OBJECT`)
SET* Member Procedures on page 268-15	Sets the current data value.

BEGINCREATE Static Procedure

This procedure begins the creation process on a new ANYDATA.

Syntax

```
STATIC PROCEDURE BeginCreate(
   dtype          IN OUT NOCOPY AnyType,
   adata          OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 268–2 BEGINCREATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
dtype	The type of the ANYDATA. (Should correspond to OCI_TYPECODE_OBJECT or a Collection typecode.)
adata	ANYDATA being constructed.

Exception

DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: dtype is invalid (not fully constructed, and similar deficits.)

Usage Notes

There is no need to call PIECEWISE immediately after this call. The construction process begins in a piece-wise manner automatically.

ENDCREATE Member Procedure

This procedure ends creation of an ANYDATA. Other creation functions cannot be called after this call.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE EndCreate(
   self         IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 268–3 ENDCREATE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	An ANYDATA.

GET* Member Functions

These functions get the current data value (which should be of appropriate type).

The type of the current data value depends on the MODE with which we are accessing (depending on whether we have invoked the PIECEWISE call).

If PIECEWISE has NOT been called, we are accessing the ANYDATA in its entirety and the type of the data value should match the type of the ANYDATA.

If PIECEWISE has been called, we are accessing the ANYDATA piece-wise. The type of the data value should match the type of the attribute (or collection element) at the current position.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GetBDouble(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   dbl          OUT NOCOPY BINARY_DOUBLE)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetBfile(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   b            OUT NOCOPY BFILE)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetBFloat(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   fl           OUT NOCOPY BINARY_FLOAT)
RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetBlob(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   b            OUT NOCOPY BLOB)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetChar(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   c            OUT NOCOPY CHAR)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetClob(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   c            OUT NOCOPY CLOB)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetCollection(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   col          OUT NOCOPY "<collection_type>")
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetDate(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   dat          OUT NOCOPY DATE)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetIntervalDS(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   inv          OUT NOCOPY INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND)
 RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GetIntervalYM(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   inv          OUT NOCOPY INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH)
 RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetNchar(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   nc           OUT NOCOPY NCHAR)
 RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetNClob(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   nc           OUT NOCOPY NCLOB)
 RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetNumber(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   num          OUT NOCOPY NUMBER)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetNVarchar2(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   nc           OUT NOCOPY NVARCHAR2)
 RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetObject(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   obj          OUT NOCOPY "<object_type>")
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetRaw(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   r            OUT NOCOPY RAW)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MMEMBER FUNCTION GetRef(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   rf           OUT NOCOPY REF "<object_type>")
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetTimestamp(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   ts           OUT NOCOPY TIMESTAMP)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetTimestampTZ(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   ts           OUT NOCOPY TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetTimestampLTZ(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   ts           OUT NOCOPY TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GetVarchar(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   c            OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GetVarchar2(
   self         IN ANYDATA,
   c            OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2)
   RETURN       PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 268–4 GET* Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	An ANYDATA.
num	The number to be obtained.

Return Values

DBMS_TYPES.SUCCESS or DBMS_TYPES.NO_DATA

The return value is relevant only if PIECEWISE has been already called (for a collection). In such a case, DBMS_TYPES.NO_DATA signifies the end of the collection when all elements have been accessed.

Exceptions

DBMS_TYPES.TYPE_MISMATCH: When the expected type is different from the passed in type.

DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid Parameters (if it is not appropriate to add a number at this point in the creation process).

DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: Incorrect usage.

GETTYPE Member Function

This function gets the typecode of the ANYDATA.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETTYPE(
   self          IN ANYDATA,
   typ           OUT NOCOPY AnyType)
   RETURN        PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 268–5 GETTYPE Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	An ANYDATA.
typ	The AnyType corresponding to the ANYDATA. May be NULL if it does not represent a user-defined type.

Return Values

The typecode corresponding to the type of the ANYDATA.

GETTYPENAME Member Function

This function gets the fully qualified type name for the ANYDATA.

If the ANYDATA is based on a built-in type, this function will return NUMBER and other relevant information.

If it is based on a user defined type, this function will return *schema_name.type_name*, for example, SCOTT.FOO.

If it is based on a transient anonymous type, this function will return NULL.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETTYPENAME(
   self         IN ANYDATA)
   RETURN       VARCHAR2;
```

Parameters

Table 268–6 GETTYPENAME Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	An ANYDATA.

Return Values

Type name of the ANYDATA.

PIECEWISE Member Procedure

This procedure sets the MODE of access of the current data value to be an attribute at a time (if the data value is of TYPECODE_OBJECT).

It sets the MODE of access of the data value to be a collection element at a time (if the data value is of collection type). Once this call has been made, subsequent calls to SET* and GET* will sequentially obtain individual attributes or collection elements.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE PIECEWISE(
   self         IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 268–7 PIECEWISE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The current data value.

Exceptions

- DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS
- DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: On incorrect usage.

Usage Notes

The current data value must be of an OBJECT or COLLECTION type before this call can be made.

Piece-wise construction and access of nested attributes that are of object or collection types is not supported.

SET* Member Procedures

Sets the current data value.

This is a list of procedures that should be called depending on the type of the current data value. The type of the data value should be the type of the attribute at the current position during the piece-wise construction process.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBDOUBLE(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   dbl         IN BINARY_DOUBLE,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBFILE(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   b           IN BFILE,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBFLOAT(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   fl          IN            BINARY_FLOAT,
   last_elem   IN            boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBLOB(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   b           IN BLOB,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETCHAR(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   c           IN CHAR,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETCLOB(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   c           IN CLOB,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETCOLLECTION(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   col         IN "<collectyion_type>",
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETDATE(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   dat         IN DATE,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETINTERVALDS(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   inv         IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
   last_elem IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETINTERVALYM(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   inv         IN INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);
```

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNCHAR(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   nc          IN NCHAR,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNCLOB(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   nc          IN NClob,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNUMBER(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   num         IN NUMBER,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNVARCHAR2(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   nc          IN NVarchar2,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE),

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETOBJECT(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   obj         IN "<object_type>",
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETRAW(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   r           IN RAW,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETREF(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   rf          IN REF "<object_type>",
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETTIMESTAMP(
   self       IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   ts         IN TIMESTAMP,
   last_elem  IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETTIMESTAMPTZ(self IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   ts          IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   last_elem   IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETTIMESTAMPLTZ(
   self IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   ts IN TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE,
   last_elem IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE),

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETVARCHAR(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   c           IN VARCHAR,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETVARCHAR2(
   self        IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATA,
   c           IN VARCHAR2,
   last_elem   IN boolean DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 268–8 SET Procedure Parameters*

Parameter	Description
self	An ANYDATA.
num	The number, and associated information, that is to be set.
last_elem	Relevant only if ANYDATA represents a collection. Set to TRUE if it is the last element of the collection, FALSE otherwise.

Exceptions

- DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid Parameters (if it is not appropriate to add a number at this point in the creation process).
- DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: Incorrect usage.
- DBMS_TYPES.TYPE_MISMATCH: When the expected type is different from the passed in type.

Usage Notes

When BEGINCREATE is called, construction has already begun in a piece-wise fashion. Subsequent calls to SET* will set the successive attribute values.

If the ANYDATA is a standalone collection, the SET* call will set the successive collection elements.

269

ANYDATASET TYPE

An ANYDATASET TYPE contains a description of a given type plus a set of data instances of that type. An ANYDATASET can be persistently stored in the database if desired, or it can be used as interface parameters to communicate self-descriptive sets of data, all of which belong to a certain type.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Construction

The ANYDATASET needs to be constructed value by value, sequentially.

For each data instance (of the type of the ANYDATASET), the ADDINSTANCE function must be invoked. This adds a new data instance to the ANYDATASET. Subsequently, SET* can be called to set each value in its entirety.

The MODE of construction/access can be changed to attribute/collection element wise by making calls to PIECEWISE.

- If the type of the ANYDATASET is TYPECODE_OBJECT, individual attributes will be set with subsequent SET* calls. Likewise on access.
- If the type of the current data value is a collection type individual collection elements will be set with subsequent SET* calls. Likewise on access. This call is very similar to ANYDATA.PIECEWISE call defined for the type ANYDATA.

Note that there is no support for piece-wise construction and access of nested (not top level) attributes that are of object types or collection types.

ENDCREATE should be called to finish the construction process (before which no access calls can be made).

Summary of ANYDATASET TYPE Subprograms

Table 269–1 ANYDATASET Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADDINSTANCE Member Procedure on page 269-4	Adds a new data instance to an ANYDATASET.
BEGINCREATE Static Procedure on page 269-5	Creates a new ANYDATASET which can be used to create a set of data values of the given ANYTYPE.
ENDCREATE Member Procedure on page 269-6	Ends Creation of a ANYDATASET. Other creation functions cannot be called after this call.
GET* Member Functions on page 269-7	Gets the current data value (which should be of appropriate type).
GETCOUNT Member Function on page 269-10	Gets the number of data instances in an ANYDATASET.
GETINSTANCE Member Function on page 269-11	Gets the next instance in an ANYDATASET.
GETTYPE Member Function on page 269-12	Gets the ANYTYPE describing the type of the data instances in an ANYDATASET.
	current data value (which should be of appropriate type).
GETTYPENAME Member Function on page 269-13	Gets the AnyType describing the type of the data instances in an ANYDATASET.
PIECEWISE Member Procedure on page 269-14	Sets the MODE of construction, access of the data value to be an attribute at a time (if the data value is of TYPECODE_OBJECT).
SET* Member Procedures on page 269-15	Sets the current data value.

ADDINSTANCE Member Procedure

This procedure adds a new data instance to an ANYDATASET.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE AddInstance(
   self          IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET);
```

Parameters

Table 269–2 ADDINSTANCE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being constructed.

Exceptions

```
DBMS_TYPES.invalid_parameters: Invalid parameters.
DBMS_TYPES.incorrect_usage: On incorrect usage.
```

Usage Notes

The data instances have to be added sequentially. The previous data instance must be fully constructed (or set to NULL) before a new one can be added.

This call DOES NOT automatically set the mode of construction to be piece-wise. The user has to explicitly call PIECEWISE if a piece-wise construction of the instance is intended.

BEGINCREATE Static Procedure

This procedure creates a new ANYDATASET which can be used to create a set of data values of the given ANYTYPE.

Syntax

```
STATIC PROCEDURE BeginCreate(
   typecode     IN PLS_INTEGER,
   rtype        IN OUT NOCOPY AnyType,
   aset         OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET);
```

Parameters

Table 269–3 BEGINCREATE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
typecode	The typecode for the type of the ANYDATASET.
dtype	The type of the data values. This parameter is a must for user-defined types like TYPECODE_OBJECT, Collection typecodes, and similar others.
aset	The ANYDATASET being constructed.

Exceptions

DBMS_TYPES.invalid_parameters: dtype is invalid (not fully constructed, and like errors.)

ENDCREATE Member Procedure

This procedure ends Creation of a ANYDATASET. Other creation functions cannot be called after this call.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE ENDCREATE(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET);
```

Parameters

Table 269–4 ENDCREATE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being constructed.

GET* Member Functions

These functions get the current data value (which should be of appropriate type).

The type of the current data value depends on the MODE with which you are accessing it (depending on how we have invoked the PIECEWISE call). If PIECEWISE has not been called, we are accessing the instance in its entirety and the type of the data value should match the type of the ANYDATASET.

If PIECEWISE has been called, we are accessing the instance piece-wise. The type of the data value should match the type of the attribute (or collection element) at the current position.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETBDOUBLE(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   dbl         OUT NOCOPY BINARY_DOUBLE)
   RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETBFLOAT(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   fl          OUT NOCOPY BINARY_FLOAT)
   RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETBFILE(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   b           OUT NOCOPY BFILE)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETBLOB(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   b           OUT NOCOPY BLOB)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETCHAR(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   c           OUT NOCOPY CHAR)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETCLOB(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   c           OUT NOCOPY CLOB)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETCOLLECTION(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   col         OUT NOCOPY "<collection_type>")
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETDATE(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   dat         OUT NOCOPY DATE)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETINTERVALDS(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   inv         IN OUT NOCOPY INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETINTERVALYM(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   inv IN OUT NOCOPY INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETNCHAR(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   nc          OUT NOCOPY NCHAR)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETNCLOB(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   nc          OUT NOCOPY NCLOB)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETNUMBER(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   num         OUT NOCOPY NUMBER)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETNVARCHAR2(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   nc          OUT NOCOPY NVARCHAR2)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETOBJECT(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   obj         OUT NOCOPY "<object_type>")
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETRAW(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   r           OUT NOCOPY RAW)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETREF(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   rf          OUT NOCOPY REF "<object_type>")
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETTIMESTAMP(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETTIMESTAMPLTZ(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   ts          OUT NOCOPY TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETTIMESTAMPTZ(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   ts          OUT NOCOPY TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER,

MEMBER FUNCTION GETUROWID(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   rid         OUT NOCOPY UROWID)
 RETURN PLS_INTEGER
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETVARCHAR(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   c           OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;

MEMBER FUNCTION GETVARCHAR2(
   self        IN ANYDATASET,
   c           OUT NOCOPY VARCHAR2)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 269–5 GET* Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being accessed.
num	The number, and associated information., that is to be obtained.

Return Values

DBMS_TYPES.SUCCESS or DBMS_TYPES.NO_DATA

The return value is relevant only if PIECEWISE has been already called (for a collection). In such a case, DBMS_TYPES.NO_DATA signifies the end of the collection when all elements have been accessed.

Exceptions

DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERs: Invalid Parameters (if it is not appropriate to add a number at this point in the creation process).

DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: Incorrect usage

DBMS_TYPES.TYPE_MISMATCH: When the expected type is different from the passed in type.

GETCOUNT Member Function

This function gets the number of data instances in an ANYDATASET.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GetCount(
   self        IN ANYDATASET)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameter

Table 269–6 GETCOUNT Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being accessed.

Return Values

The number of data instances.

GETINSTANCE Member Function

This function gets the next instance in an ANYDATASET. Only sequential access to the instances in an ANYDATASET is allowed. After this function has been called, the GET* functions can be invoked on the ANYDATASET to access the current instance. If PIECEWISE is called before doing the GET* calls, the individual attributes (or collection elements) can be accessed.

It is an error to invoke this function before the ANYDATASET is fully created.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETINSTANCE(
   self           IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET)
   RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 269–7 GETINSTANCE Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being accessed.

Return Values

DBMS_TYPES.SUCCESS or DBMS_TYPES.NO_DATA

DBMS_TYPES.NO_DATA signifies the end of the ANYDATASET (all instances have been accessed).

Usage Notes

This function should be called even before accessing the first instance.

GETTYPE Member Function

Gets the AnyType describing the type of the data instances in an ANYDATASET.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETTYPE(
   self           IN ANYDATASET,
   typ            OUT NOCOPY AnyType)
   RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 269–8 GETTYPE Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET.
typ	The ANYTYPE corresponding to the AnyData. May be NULL if it does not represent a user-defined function.

Return Values

The typecode corresponding to the type of the ANYDATA.

GETTYPENAME Member Function

This procedure gets the fully qualified type name for the ANYDATASET.

If the ANYDATASET is based on a built-in, this function will return NUMBER and associated information.

If it is based on a user defined type, this function will return *schema_name.type_name*. for example, SCOTT.FOO.

If it is based on a transient anonymous type, this function will return NULL.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETTYPENAME(
   self           IN ANYDATASET)
   RETURN         VARCHAR2;
```

Parameter

Table 269–9 GETTYPENAME Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being constructed.

Return Values

Type name of the ANYDATASET.

PIECEWISE Member Procedure

This procedure sets the MODE of construction, access of the data value to be an attribute at a time (if the data value is of TYPECODE_OBJECT).

It sets the MODE of construction, access of the data value to be a collection element at a time (if the data value is of a collection TYPE). Once this call has been made, subsequent SET* and GET* calls will sequentially obtain individual attributes or collection elements.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE PIECEWISE(
   self         IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET);
```

Parameters

Table 269–10 PIECEWISE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being constructed.

Exceptions

DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid parameters.

DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: On incorrect usage.

Usage Notes

The current data value must be of an object or collection type before this call can be made. There is no support for piece-wise construction or access of embedded object type attributes or nested collections.

SET* Member Procedures

This procedure sets the current data value.

The type of the current data value depends on the MODE with which we are constructing (depending on how we have invoked the PIECEWISE call). The type of the current data should be the type of the ANYDATASET if PIECEWISE has NOT been called. The type should be the type of the attribute at the current position if PIECEWISE has been called.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBDOUBLE(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   dbl               IN BINARY_DOUBLE,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBFLOAT(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   fl                IN BINARY_FLOAT,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBFILE(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   b                 IN BFILE,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETBLOB(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   b                 IN BLOB,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETCHAR(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   c                 IN CHAR,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETCLOB(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   c                 IN CLOB,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETCOLLECTION(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   col               IN "<collection_type>",
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETDATE(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   dat               IN DATE,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETINTERVALDS(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   inv               IN INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETINTERVALYM(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
```

```
   inv               IN INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNCHAR(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   nc                IN NCHAR,
   last_elem IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNCLOB(
  self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
  nc                 IN NClob,
  last_elem          IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNUMBER(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   num                IN NUMBER,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETNVARCHAR2(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   nc                IN NVarchar2,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETOBJECT(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   obj                IN "<object_type>",
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETRAW(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   r                  IN RAW,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETREF(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   rf                 IN REF "<object_type>",
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETTIMESTAMP(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   ts                 IN TIMESTAMP,
   last_elem IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETTIMESTAMPLTZ(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   ts                IN TIMESTAMP WITH LOCAL TIME ZONE,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETTIMESTAMPTZ(
   self              IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   ts                IN TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   last_elem         IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETUROWID(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   rid                IN UROWID,
   last_elem IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETVARCHAR(
   self               IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
```

```
   c                IN VARCHAR,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);

MEMBER PROCEDURE SETVARCHAR2(
   self             IN OUT NOCOPY ANYDATASET,
   c                IN VARCHAR2,
   last_elem BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

Parameters

Table 269–11 SET* Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYDATASET being accessed.
num	The number, and associated information, that is to be set.
last_elem	Relevant only if PIECEWISE has been already called (for a collection). Set to TRUE if it is the last element of the collection, FALSE otherwise.

Exceptions

- DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid parameters (if it is not appropriate to add a number at this point in the creation process).
- DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: Incorrect usage.
- DBMS_TYPES.TYPE_MISMATCH: When the expected type is different from the passed in type.

270

ANYTYPE TYPE

An `ANYTYPE TYPE` can contain a type description of any persistent SQL type, named or unnamed, including object types and collection types. It can also be used to construct new transient type descriptions.

New persistent types can only be created using the `CREATE TYPE` statement. Only new transient types can be constructed using the `ANYTYPE` interfaces.

This chapter discusses the following:

Summary of ANYTYPE Subprograms

Table 270–1 ANYTYPE Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
BEGINCREATE Static Procedure on page 270-3	Creates a new instance of `ANYTYPE` which can be used to create a transient type description.
SETINFO Member Procedure on page 270-4	Sets any additional information required for constructing a `COLLECTION` or builtin type.
ADDATTR Member Procedure on page 270-6	Adds an attribute to an `ANYTYPE` (of typecode `DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_OBJECT`).
ENDCREATE Member Procedure on page 270-7	Ends creation of a transient `ANYTYPE`. Other creation functions cannot be called after this call.
GETPERSISTENT Static Function on page 270-8	Returns an `ANYTYPE` corresponding to a persistent type created earlier using the `CREATE TYPE` SQL statement.
GETINFO Member Function on page 270-9	Gets the type information for the `ANYTYPE`.
GETATTRELEMINFO Member Function on page 270-10	Gets the type information for an attribute of the type (if it is of `TYPECODE_OBJECT`). Gets the type information for a collection's element type if the *self* parameter is of a collection type.

BEGINCREATE Static Procedure

This procedure creates a new instance of ANYTYPE which can be used to create a transient type description.

Syntax

```
STATIC PROCEDURE BEGINCREATE(
   typecode       IN          PLS_INTEGER,
   atype          OUT NOCOPY  ANYTYPE);
```

Parameters

Table 270–2 BEGINCREATE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
typecode	Use a constant from DBMS_TYPES package. Typecodes for user-defined type: ■ DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_OBJECT ■ DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_VARRAY or ■ DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_TABLE Typecodes for builtin types: ■ DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_NUMBER, and similar types.
atype	ANYTYPE for a transient type

SETINFO Member Procedure

This procedure sets any additional information required for constructing a COLLECTION or builtin type.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SETINFO(
   self          IN OUT NOCOPY ANYTYPE,
   prec          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   scale         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   len           IN PLS_INTEGER,
   csid          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   csfrm         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   atype         IN ANYTYPE DEFAULT NULL,
   elem_tc       IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT NULL,
   elem_count    IN PLS_INTEGER DEFAULT 0);
```

Parameters

Table 270–3 SETINFO Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The transient ANYTYPE that is being constructed.
prec	Optional.Required if typecode represents a NUMBER. Give precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
scale	Optional.Required if typecode represents a NUMBER. Give precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
len	Optional. Required if typecode represents a RAW, CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2 type. Gives length.
csid	Required if typecode represents types requiring character information such as CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
csfrm	Required if typecode represents types requiring character information such as CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
atype	Optional. Required if collection element typecode is a user-defined type such as TYPECODE_OBJECT, and similar others. It is also required for a built-in type that needs user-defined type information such as TYPECODE_REF. This parameter is not needed otherwise.

The Following Parameters Are Required For Collection Types

Table 270–4 SETINFO Procedure Parameters - Collection Types

Parameter	Description
elem_tc	Must be of the collection element's typecode (from DBMS_TYPES package).
elem_count	Pass 0 for elem_count if the self represents a nested table (TYPECODE_TABLE). Otherwise pass the collection count if *self* represents a VARRAY.

Exceptions

- DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETER: Invalid Parameters (typecode, typeinfo)
- DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: Incorrect usage (cannot call after calling ENDCREATE, and similar actions.)

Usage Notes

It is an error to call this function on an ANYTYPE that represents a persistent user defined type.

ADDATTR Member Procedure

This procedure adds an attribute to an ANYTYPE (of typecode DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_OBJECT).

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE ADDATTR(
   self          IN OUT NOCOPY ANYTYPE,
   aname         IN VARCHAR2,
   typecode      IN PLS_INTEGER,
   prec          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   scale         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   len           IN PLS_INTEGER,
   csid          IN PLS_INTEGER,
   csfrm         IN PLS_INTEGER,
   attr_type     IN ANYTYPE DEFAULT NULL);
```

Parameters

Table 270–5 ADDATTR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The transient ANYTYPE that is being constructed. Must be of type DBMS_TYPES.TYPECODE_OBJECT.
aname	Optional. Attribute's name. Could be NULL.
typecode	Attribute's typecode. Can be built-in or user-defined typecode (from DBMS_TYPES package).
prec	Optional. Required if typecode represents a NUMBER. Give precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
scale	Optional. Required if typecode represents a NUMBER. Give precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
len	Optional. Required if typecode represents a RAW, CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2 type. Give length.
csid	Optional. Required if typecode represents a type requiring character information, such as CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
csfrm	Optional. Required if typecode represents a type requiring character information, such as CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
attr_type	Optional. ANYTYPE corresponding to a user-defined type. This parameter is required if the attribute is a user defined type.

Exceptions

- DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid Parameters (typecode, typeinfo)
- DBMS_TYPES.INCORRECT_USAGE: Incorrect usage (cannot call after calling EndCreate, and similar actions.)

ENDCREATE Member Procedure

This procedure ends creation of a transient ANYTYPE. Other creation functions cannot be called after this call.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE ENDCREATE(
   self           IN OUT NOCOPY ANYTYPE);
```

Parameter

Table 270–6 ENDCREATE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
self	The transient ANYTYPE that is being constructed.

GETPERSISTENT Static Function

This procedure returns an ANYTYPE corresponding to a persistent type created earlier using the CREATE TYPE SQL statement.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION GETPERSISTENT(
   schema_name      IN VARCHAR2,
   type_name        IN VARCHAR2,
   version          IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
   RETURN           ANYTYPE;
```

Parameters

Table 270–7 GETPERSISTENT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
schema_name	Schema name of the type.
type_name	Type name.
version	Type version.

Return Values

An ANYTYPE corresponding to a persistent type created earlier using the CREATE TYPE SQL statement.

GETINFO Member Function

This function gets the type information for the ANYTYPE.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETINFO (
   self        IN ANYTYPE,
   prec        OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   scale       OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   len         OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   csid        OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   csfrm       OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   schema_name OUT VARCHAR2,
   type_name   OUT VARCHAR2,
   version     OUT varchar2,
   numelems    OUT PLS_INTEGER)
   RETURN      PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 270–8 GETINFO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYTYPE.
prec	If typecode represents a number. Gives precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
scale	If typecode represents a number. Gives precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
len	If typecode represents a RAW, CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2 type. Gives length.
csid	If typecode represents a type requiring character information such as: CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
csid	If typecode represents a type requiring character information such as: CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2.
schema_name	Type's schema (if persistent).
type_name	Type's typename.
version	Type's version.
numelems	If *self* is a TYPECODE_VARRAY, this gives the VARRAY count. If self is of TYPECODE_OBJECT, this gives the number of attributes.

Return Values

The typecode of *self*.

Exceptions

- DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid Parameters (position is beyond bounds or the ANYTYPE is not properly Constructed).

GETATTRELEMINFO Member Function

This function gets the type information for an attribute of the type (if it is of TYPECODE_OBJECT). Gets the type information for a collection's element type if the *self* parameter is of a collection type.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GETATTRELEMINFO (
   self           IN ANYTYPE,
   pos            IN PLS_INTEGER,
   prec           OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   scale          OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   len            OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   csid           OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   csfrm          OUT PLS_INTEGER,
   attr_elt_type  OUT ANYTYPE
   aname          OUT VARRCHAR2)
   RETURN         PLS_INTEGER;
```

Parameters

Table 270–9 GETATTRELEMINFO Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
self	The ANYTYPE.
pos	If self is of TYPECODE_OBJECT, this gives the attribute position (starting at 1). It is ignored otherwise.
prec	If attribute/collection element typecode represents a NUMBER. Gives precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
scale	If attribute/collection element typecode represents a NUMBER. Gives precision and scale. Ignored otherwise.
len	If typecode represents a RAW, CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2 type. Gives length.
csid, csfrm	If typecode represents a type requiring character information such as: CHAR, VARCHAR, or VARCHAR2. Gives character set ID, character set form.
attr_elt_type	If attribute/collection element typecode represents a user-defined type, this returns the ANYTYPE corresponding to it. User can subsequently describe the *attr_elt_type*.
aname	Attribute name (if it is an attribute of an object type, NULL otherwise).

Return Values

The typecode of the attribute or collection element.

Exceptions

DBMS_TYPES.INVALID_PARAMETERS: Invalid Parameters (position is beyond bounds or the ANYTYPE is not properly constructed).

271

Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) Types

This chapter describes the types used with Oracle Database Advanced Queuing (AQ) packages for PL/SQL, `DBMS_AQ`, and `DBMS_AQADM`.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Queuing User's Guide* for information about using Oracle Database Advanced Queuing.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Types

This section contains the following topic:

- Security Model

Security Model

PUBLIC is granted EXECUTE privilege on the types described in this chapter.

Summary of Types

- AQ$_AGENT Type
- AQ$_AGENT_LIST_T Type
- AQ$_DESCRIPTOR Type
- AQ$_NTFN_DESCRIPTOR Type
- AQ$_POST_INFO Type
- AQ$_POST_INFO_LIST Type
- AQ$_PURGE_OPTIONS_T Type
- AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T Type
- AQ$_REG_INFO Type
- AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST Type
- AQ$_SUBSCRIBER_LIST_T Type
- DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type
- ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type
- SYS.MSG_PROP_T Type
- MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type
- MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_ARRAY_T Type
- MSGID_ARRAY_T Type

AQ$_AGENT Type

This type identifies a producer or a consumer of a message.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_AGENT IS OBJECT (
   name       VARCHAR2(30),
   address    VARCHAR2(1024),
   protocol   NUMBER  DEFAULT 0);
```

Attributes

Table 271–1 AQ$_AGENT Attributes

Attribute	Description
`name`	Name of a producer or consumer of a message. The name must follow object name guidelines in the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* with regard to reserved characters.
`address`	Protocol-specific address of the recipient. If the protocol is `0`, then the address is of the form [*schema*.]*queue*[@*dblink*]. For example, a queue named `emp_messages` in the `HR` queue at the site `dbs1.net` has the address: hr.emp_messages@dbs1.net
`protocol`	Protocol to interpret the address and propagate the message. Protocols 1-127 are reserved for internal use. If the protocol number is in the range 128 - 255, the address of the recipient is not interpreted by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing.

AQ$_AGENT_LIST_T Type

This type identifies the list of agents for which `DBMS_AQ.LISTEN` listens.

See Also: "AQ$_AGENT Type" on page 271-5

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_AGENT_LIST_T IS TABLE OF SYS.AQ$_AGENT
   INDEX BY BINARY INTEGER;
```

AQ$_DESCRIPTOR Type

This type specifies the Oracle Database Advanced Queuing descriptor received by the AQ PL/SQL callbacks upon notification.

See Also: "MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type" on page 271-26

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_DESCRIPTOR IS OBJECT (
   queue_name      VARCHAR2(61),
   consumer_name   VARCHAR2(30),
   msg_id          RAW(16),
   msg_prop        MSG_PROP_T,
   gen_desc        AQ$_NTFN_DESCRIPTOR,
   msgid_array     SYS.AQ$_NTFN_MSGID_ARRAY,
   ntfnsRecdInGrp  NUMBER);
```

Attributes

Table 271–2 AQ$_DESCRIPTOR Attributes

Attribute	Description
queue_name	Name of the queue in which the message was enqueued which resulted in the notification
consumer_name	Name of the consumer for the multiconsumer queue
msg_id	Identification number of the message
msg_prop	Message properties specified by the MSG_PROP_T type
gen_desc	Indicates the timeout specifications
msgid_array	Group notification message ID list
ntfnsRecdInGrp	Notifications received in group

AQ$_NTFN_DESCRIPTOR Type

This type is for storing a generic notification descriptor regarding PL/SQL notification flags.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_NTFN_DESCRIPTOR IS OBJECT(   ntfn_flags   NUMBER)
```

Attributes

Table 271–3 AQ$_NTFN_DESCRIPTOR Attributes

Attribute	Description
`ntfn_flags`	Set to 1 if the notifications are already removed after a stipulated timeout. Set 2 to denote grouping. Default is 0.

AQ$_NTFN_MSGID_ARRAY Type

This type is for storing grouping notification data for AQ namespace, value 2^{30} which is the max varray size.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_NTFN_MSGID_ARRAY   AS VARRAY(1073741824)OF RAW(16);
```

AQ$_POST_INFO Type

Specifies anonymous subscriptions to which you want to post messages.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_POST_INFO IS OBJECT (
   name        VARCHAR2(128),
   namespace   NUMBER,
   payload     RAW(2000)  DEFAULT NULL);
```

Attributes

Table 271–4 AQ$_POST_INFO Attributes

Attribute	Description
`name`	Name of the anonymous subscription to which you want to post
`namespace`	To receive notifications from other applications through `DBMS_AQ.POST` or `OCISubscriptionPost()`, the namespace must be `DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_ANONYMOUS`
`payload`	The payload to be posted to the anonymous subscription

AQ$_POST_INFO_LIST Type

Identifies the list of anonymous subscriptions to which you want to post messages.

See Also: AQ$_POST_INFO Type on page 271-10

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_POST_INFO_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.AQ$_POST_INFO;
```

AQ$_PURGE_OPTIONS_T Type

This type specifies the options available for purging a queue table.

See Also: PURGE_QUEUE_TABLE Procedure on page 25-48.

Syntax

```
TYPE AQ$_PURGE_OPTIONS_T is RECORD (
   block           BOOLEAN       DEFAULT FALSE
   delivery_mode   PLS_INTEGER   DEFAULT PERSISTENT);
```

Table 271–5 AQ$_PURGE_OPTIONS_T Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
`block`	`TRUE/FALSE`. ■ If `block` is `TRUE`, then an exclusive lock on all the queues in the queue table is held while purging the queue table. This will cause concurrent enqueuers and dequeuers to block while the queue table is purged. The purge call always succeeds if `block` is `TRUE`. ■ The default for `block` is `FALSE`. This will not block enqueuers and dequeuers, but it can cause the purge to fail with an error during high concurrency times.
`delivery_mode`	Kind of messages to purge, either `DBMS_AQ.BUFFERED` or `DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT`

AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T Type

Identifies the list of agents that receive the message. This type can be used only when the queue is enabled for multiple dequeues.

See Also: "AQ$_AGENT Type" on page 271-5

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T IS TABLE OF SYS.AQ$_AGENT
   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

AQ$_REG_INFO Type

This type identifies a producer or a consumer of a message.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO IS OBJECT (
   name                              VARCHAR2(128),
   namespace                         NUMBER,
   callback                          VARCHAR2(4000),
   context                           RAW(2000)  DEFAULT NULL,
   qosflags                          NUMBER,
   timeout                           NUMBER
   ntfn_grouping_class               NUMBER,
   ntfn_grouping_value               NUMBER    DEFAULT 600,
   ntfn_grouping_type                NUMBER,
   ntfn_grouping_start_time          TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE,
   ntfn_grouping_repeat_count   NUMBER);
```

Attributes

Table 271–6 AQ$_REG_INFO Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
`name`	Specifies the name of the subscription. The subscription name is of the form *`schema.queue`* if the registration is for a single consumer queue or *`schema.queue:consumer_name`* if the registration is for a multiconsumer queues.
`namespace`	Specifies the namespace of the subscription. To receive notification from Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queues, the namespace must be `DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_AQ`. To receive notifications from other applications through `DBMS_AQ.POST` or `OCISubscriptionPost()`, the namespace must be `DBMS_AQ.NAMESPACE_ANONYMOUS`.
`callback`	Specifies the action to be performed on message notification. For HTTP notifications, use `http://www.company.com:8080`. For e-mail notifications, use `mailto://xyz@company.com`. For raw message payload for the `PLSQLCALLBACK` procedure, use `plsql://`*`schema.procedure`*`?PR=0`. For user-defined type message payload converted to XML for the `PLSQLCALLBACK` procedure, use `plsql://`*`schema.procedure`*`?PR=1`
`context`	Specifies the context that is to be passed to the callback function
`qosflags`	Can be set to one or more of the following values to specify the notification quality of service: ■ `NTFN_QOS_RELIABLE`- This value specifies that reliable notification is required. Reliable notifications persist across instance and database restarts. ■ `NTFN_QOS_PAYLOAD` - This value specifies that payload delivery is required. It is supported only for client notification and only for `RAW` queues. ■ `NTFN_QOS_PURGE_ON_NTFN` - This value specifies that the registration is to be purged automatically when the first notification is delivered to this registration location.

Table 271–6 (Cont.) AQ$_REG_INFO Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
ntfn_grouping_class	Currently, only the following flag can be set to specify criterion for grouping. The default value will be 0. If ntfn_grouping_class is 0, all other notification grouping attributes must be 0. ■ NTFN_GROUPING_CLASS_TIME - Notifications grouped by time, that is, the user specifies a time value and a single notification gets published at the end of that time.
ntfn_grouping_value	Time-period of grouping notifications specified in seconds, meaning the time after which grouping notification would be sent periodically until ntfn_grouping_repeat_count is exhausted.
ntfn_grouping_type	■ NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_SUMMARY - Summary of all notifications that occurred in the time interval. (Default) ■ NTFN_GROUPING_TYPE_LAST - Last notification that occurred in the interval.
ntfn_grouping_start_time	Notification grouping start time. Notification grouping can start from a user-specified time that should a valid timestamp with time zone. If ntfn_grouping_start_time is not specified when using grouping, the default is to current timestamp with time zone
ntfn_grouping_repeat_count	Grouping notifications will be sent as many times as specified by the notification grouping repeat count and after that revert to regular notifications. The ntfn_grouping_repeat_count, if not specified, will default to ■ NTFN_GROUPING_FOREVER - Keep sending grouping notifications forever.

Usage Notes

You can use the following notification mechanisms:

- OCI callback
- e-mail callback
- PL/SQL callback

Table 271–7 shows the actions performed for nonpersistent queues for different notification mechanisms when RAW presentation is specified. Table 271–8 shows the actions performed when XML presentation is specified.

Table 271–7 Actions Performed for Nonpersistent Queues When RAW Presentation Specified

Queue Payload Type	OCI Callback	E-mail	PL/SQL Callback
RAW	OCI callback receives the RAW data in the payload.	Not supported	PL/SQL callback receives the RAW data in the payload.
Oracle object type	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported

Table 271–8 Actions Performed for Nonpersistent Queues When XML Presentation Specified

Queue Payload Type	OCI Callback	E-mail	PL/SQL Callback
`RAW`	OCI callback receives the XML data in the payload.	XML data is formatted as a SOAP message and e-mailed to the registered e-mail address.	PL/SQL callback receives the XML data in the payload.
`Oracle object type`	OCI callback receives the XML data in the payload.	XML data is formatted as a SOAP message and e-mailed to the registered e-mail address.	PL/SQL callback receives the XML data in the payload.

AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST Type

Identifies the list of registrations to a queue.

See Also: "AQ$_REG_INFO Type" on page 271-14

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.AQ$_REG_INFO;
```

AQ$_SUBSCRIBER_LIST_T Type

Identifies the list of subscribers that subscribe to a queue.

See Also: "AQ$_AGENT Type" on page 271-5

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.AQ$_SUBSCRIBER_LIST_T IS TABLE OF SYS.AQ$_AGENT
   INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type

Specifies the options available for the dequeue operation.

Syntax

```
TYPE DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T IS RECORD (
   consumer_name     VARCHAR2(30)    DEFAULT NULL,
   dequeue_mode      BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT REMOVE,
   navigation        BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NEXT_MESSAGE,
   visibility        BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT ON_COMMIT,
   wait              BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT FOREVER,
   msgid             RAW(16)         DEFAULT NULL,
   correlation       VARCHAR2(128)   DEFAULT NULL,
   deq_condition     VARCHAR2(4000)  DEFAULT NULL,
   signature         aq$_sig_prop    DEFAULT NULL,
   transformation    VARCHAR2(61)    DEFAULT NULL,
   delivery_mode     PLS_INTEGER     DEFAULT PERSISTENT);
```

Attributes

Table 271–9 DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
consumer_name	Name of the consumer. Only those messages matching the consumer name are accessed. If a queue is not set up for multiple consumers, then this field should be set to NULL. For secure queues, consumer_name must be a valid AQ agent name, mapped to the database user performing the dequeue operation, through dbms_aqadm.enable_db_access procedure call.
dequeue_mode	Specifies the locking behavior associated with the dequeue. Possible settings are: BROWSE: Read the message without acquiring any lock on the message. This specification is equivalent to a select statement. LOCKED: Read and obtain a write lock on the message. The lock lasts for the duration of the transaction. This setting is equivalent to a select for update statement. REMOVE: Read the message and delete it. This setting is the default. The message can be retained in the queue table based on the retention properties. REMOVE_NODATA: Mark the message as updated or deleted. The message can be retained in the queue table based on the retention properties.

Table 271–9 (Cont.) DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
navigation	Specifies the position of the message that will be retrieved. First, the position is determined. Second, the search criterion is applied. Finally, the message is retrieved. Possible settings are: NEXT_MESSAGE: Retrieve the next message that is available and matches the search criteria. If the previous message belongs to a message group, then AQ retrieves the next available message that matches the search criteria and belongs to the message group. This setting is the default. NEXT_TRANSACTION: Skip the remainder of the current transaction group (if any) and retrieve the first message of the next transaction group. This setting can only be used if message grouping is enabled for the current queue. FIRST_MESSAGE: Retrieves the first message which is available and matches the search criteria. This setting resets the position to the beginning of the queue. FIRST_MESSAGE_MULTI_GROUP: indicates that a call to DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_ARRAY will reset the position to the beginning of the queue and dequeue messages (possibly across different transaction groups) that are available and match the search criteria, until reaching the ARRAY_SIZE limit. Refer to the TRANSACTION_GROUP attribute for the message to distinguish between transaction groups. NEXT_MESSAGE_MULTI_GROUP: indicates that a call to DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_ARRAY will dequeue the next set of messages (possibly across different transaction groups) that are available and match the search criteria, until reaching the ARRAY_SIZE limit. Refer to the TRANSACTION_GROUP attribute for the message to distinguish between transaction groups.
visibility	Specifies whether the new message is dequeued as part of the current transaction.The visibility parameter is ignored when using the BROWSE dequeue mode. Possible settings are: ON_COMMIT: The dequeue will be part of the current transaction. This setting is the default. IMMEDIATE: The dequeue operation is not part of the current transaction, but an autonomous transaction which commits at the end of the operation.
wait	Specifies the wait time if there is currently no message available which matches the search criteria. Possible settings are: FOREVER: Wait forever. This setting is the default. NO_WAIT: Do not wait. number: Wait time in seconds.
msgid	Specifies the message identifier of the message to be dequeued.
correlation	Specifies the correlation identifier of the message to be dequeued. Special pattern matching characters, such as the percent sign (%) and the underscore (_) can be used. If more than one message satisfies the pattern, then the order of dequeuing is undetermined.

Table 271–9 (Cont.) DEQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
deq_condition	A conditional expression based on the message properties, the message data properties, and PL/SQL functions. A deq_condition is specified as a Boolean expression using syntax similar to the WHERE clause of a SQL query. This Boolean expression can include conditions on message properties, user data properties (object payloads only), and PL/SQL or SQL functions (as specified in the WHERE clause of a SQL query). Message properties include priority, corrid and other columns in the queue table To specify dequeue conditions on a message payload (object payload), use attributes of the object type in clauses. You must prefix each attribute with tab.user_data as a qualifier to indicate the specific column of the queue table that stores the payload. The deq_condition parameter cannot exceed 4000 characters. If more than one message satisfies the dequeue condition, then the order of dequeuing is undetermined.
signature	Currently not implemented
transformation	Specifies a transformation that will be applied after dequeuing the message. The source type of the transformation must match the type of the queue.
delivery_mode	The dequeuer specifies the delivery mode of the messages it wishes to dequeue in the dequeue options. It can be BUFFERED or PERSISTENT or PERSISTENT_OR_BUFFERED. The message properties of the dequeued message indicate the delivery mode of the dequeued message. Array dequeue is only supported for buffered messages with an array size of '1'.

ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Type

Specifies the options available for the enqueue operation.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T IS RECORD (
   visibility            BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT ON_COMMIT,
   relative_msgid        RAW(16)         DEFAULT NULL,
   sequence_deviation    BINARY_INTEGER  DEFAULT NULL,
   transformation        VARCHAR2(61)    DEFAULT NULL,
   delivery_mode         PLS_INTEGER     NOT NULL DEFAULT PERSISTENT);
```

Attributes

Table 271–10 ENQUEUE_OPTIONS_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
visibility	Specifies the transactional behavior of the enqueue request. Possible settings are: ON_COMMIT: The enqueue is part of the current transaction. The operation is complete when the transaction commits. This setting is the default. IMMEDIATE: The enqueue operation is not part of the current transaction, but an autonomous transaction which commits at the end of the operation. This is the only value allowed when enqueuing to a non-persistent queue.
relative_msgid	Specifies the message identifier of the message which is referenced in the sequence deviation operation. This field is valid only if BEFORE is specified in sequence_deviation. This parameter is ignored if sequence deviation is not specified.
sequence_deviation	Specifies whether the message being enqueued should be dequeued before other messages already in the queue. Possible settings are: BEFORE: The message is enqueued ahead of the message specified by relative_msgid. TOP: The message is enqueued ahead of any other messages.
transformation	Specifies a transformation that will be applied before enqueuing the message. The return type of the transformation function must match the type of the queue.
delivery_mode	The enqueuer specifies the delivery mode of the messages it wishes to enqueue in the enqueue options. It can be BUFFERED or PERSISTENT. The message properties of the enqueued message indicate the delivery mode of the enqueued message. Array enqueue is only supported for buffered messages with an array size of '1'.

SYS.MSG_PROP_T Type

This type is used in PL/SQL notification, as one field in aq$_descriptor, to pass message properties of an AQ message to the PL/SQL notification client callback.

Syntax

```
CREATE or replace TYPE sys.msg_prop_t AS OBJECT (
   priority         NUMBER,
   delay            NUMBER,
   expiration       NUMBER,
   correlation      VARCHAR2(128),
   attempts         NUMBER,
   exception_queue  VARCHAR2(51),
   enqueue_time     DATE,
   state            NUMBER,
   sender_id        aq$_agent,
   original_msgid   RAW(16),
   delivery_mode    NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 271–11 SYS.MSG_PROP_T Type Attributes

Parameter	Description
priority	Specifies the priority of the message. A smaller number indicates higher priority. The priority can be any number, including negative numbers.
delay	Specifies the delay of the enqueued message. The delay represents the number of seconds after which a message is available for dequeuing. Dequeuing by msgid overrides the delay specification. A message enqueued with delay set is in the WAITING state, and when the delay expires, the message goes to the READY state. DELAY processing requires the queue monitor to be started. However the queue monitor is started automatically by the system if needed. Delay is set by the producer who enqueues the message. The possible settings follow: NO_DELAY: The message is available for immediate dequeuing number: The number of seconds to delay the message
expiration	Specifies the expiration of the message. It determines, in seconds, the duration the message is available for dequeuing. This parameter is an offset from the time the message is ready for dequeue. Expiration processing requires the queue monitor to be running. However the queue monitor is started automatically by the system if needed. The possible settings follow: NEVER: The message does not expire number: The number of seconds message remains in READY state. If the message is not dequeued before it expires, then it is moved to the exception queue in the EXPIRED state.
correlation	Returns the identifier supplied by the producer of the message at enqueue time.

Table 271–11 (Cont.) SYS.MSG_PROP_T Type Attributes

Parameter	Description
attempts	Returns the number of attempts that have been made to dequeue the message. This parameter cannot be set at enqueue time.
exception_queue	Specifies the name of the queue into which the message is moved if it cannot be processed successfully. Messages are moved automatically into the exception queue. Messages are moved into the exception queue in the following cases: ■ RETRY_COUNT, the number of unsuccessful dequeue attempts, has exceeded the specification for the MAX_RETRIES parameter in the DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE procedure during queue creation. For multiconsumer queues, the message becomes eligible to be moved to the exception queue even if failed dequeue attempts exceeds the MAX_RETRIES parameter for only one of the consumers. But the message will not be moved until either all other consumers have successfully consumed the message or failed more than MAX_RETRIES. You can view MAX_RETRIES for a queue in the ALL_QUEUES data dictionary view. If a dequeue transaction fails because the server process dies (including ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION) or SHUTDOWN ABORT on the instance, then RETRY_COUNT is not incremented. ■ A message was not dequeued before the expiration time elapsed. ■ Message propagation to the specified destination queue failed with one of the following errors: * There were no recipients for the multiconsumer destination queue. * Recipients were specified for a single-consumer destination queue. * Destination queue was an exception queue * There was an error when applying transformation. The default is the exception queue associated with the queue table. If the exception queue specified does not exist at the time of the move, then the message is moved to the default exception queue associated with the queue table, and a warning is logged in the alert log. If the default exception queue is specified, then the parameter returns a NULL value at dequeue time.
enqueue_time	Specifies the time the message was enqueued. This value is determined by the system and cannot be set by the user at enqueue time.
state	Specifies the state of the message at the time of the dequeue. This parameter cannot be set at enqueue time. The possible states follow: ■ DBMS_AQ.READY: The message is ready to be processed. ■ DBMS_AQ.WAITING: The message delay has not yet been reached. ■ DBMS_AQ.PROCESSED: The message has been processed and is retained. ■ DBMSAQ.EXPIRED: The message has been moved to the exception queue.

Table 271–11 (Cont.) SYS.MSG_PROP_T Type Attributes

Parameter	Description
sender_id	The application-sender identification specified at enqueue time by the message producer. Sender id is of type aq$_agent. Sender name is required for secure queues at enqueue time. This must be a valid AQ agent name, mapped to the database user performing the enqueue operation, through dbms_aqadm.enable_db_access procedure call. Sender address and protocol should not be specified. The Sender id in the message properties returned at dequeue time may have a sender address if the message was propagated from another queue. The value of the address is the source_queue, source database name if it was a remote database [format source_queue@source_database_name]
original_msgid	This parameter is used by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing for propagating messages.
delivery_mode	DBMS_AQ.BUFFERED or DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT.

MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type

This type is defined inside the DBMS_AQ package, and describes the information that AQ uses to convey the state of individual messages. These are set at enqueue time, and their values are returned at dequeue time.

See Also: AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T Type on page 271-13

Syntax

```
TYPE message_properties_t IS RECORD (
   priority               BINARY_INTEGER  NOT NULL DEFAULT 1,
   delay                  BINARY_INTEGER  NOT NULL DEFAULT NO_DELAY,
   expiration             BINARY_INTEGER  NOT NULL DEFAULT NEVER,
   correlation            VARCHAR2(128)   DEFAULT NULL,
   attempts               BINARY_INTEGER,
   recipient_list         AQ$_RECIPIENT_LIST_T,
   exception_queue        VARCHAR2(61)    DEFAULT NULL,
   enqueue_time           DATE,
   state                  BINARY_INTEGER,
   sender_id              SYS.AQ$_AGENT   DEFAULT NULL,
   original_msgid         RAW(16)         DEFAULT NULL,
   signature              aq$_sig_prop    DEFAULT NULL,
   transaction_group      VARCHAR2(30)    DEFAULT NULL,
   user_property          SYS.ANYDATA     DEFAULT NULL
   delivery_mode          PLS_INTEGER     NOT NULL DEFAULT DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT);
```

Attributes

Table 271–12 MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
priority	Specifies the priority of the message. A smaller number indicates higher priority. The priority can be any number, including negative numbers.
delay	Specifies the delay of the enqueued message. The delay represents the number of seconds after which a message is available for dequeuing. Dequeuing by msgid overrides the delay specification. A message enqueued with delay set is in the WAITING state, and when the delay expires, the message goes to the READY state. DELAY processing requires the queue monitor to be started. However the queue monitor is started automatically by the system if needed. Delay is set by the producer who enqueues the message. The possible settings follow: NO_DELAY: The message is available for immediate dequeuing number: The number of seconds to delay the message

Table 271–12 (Cont.) MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
`expiration`	Specifies the expiration of the message. It determines, in seconds, the duration the message is available for dequeuing. This parameter is an offset from the time the message is ready for dequeue. Expiration processing requires the queue monitor to be running. However the queue monitor is started automatically by the system if needed. The possible settings follow: `NEVER`: The message does not expire number: The number of seconds message remains in `READY` state. If the message is not dequeued before it expires, then it is moved to the exception queue in the `EXPIRED` state.
`correlation`	Returns the identifier supplied by the producer of the message at enqueue time.
`attempts`	Returns the number of attempts that have been made to dequeue the message. This parameter cannot be set at enqueue time.
`recipient_list`	This parameter is only valid for queues that allow multiple consumers. The default recipients are the queue subscribers. This parameter is not returned to a consumer at dequeue time. For type definition, see the "AQ$_AGENT Type" on page 271-5.

Table 271–12 (Cont.) MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
exception_queue	Specifies the name of the queue into which the message is moved if it cannot be processed successfully. Messages are moved automatically into the exception queue. Messages are moved into the exception queue in the following cases: ■ RETRY_COUNT, the number of unsuccessful dequeue attempts, has exceeded the specification for the MAX_RETRIES parameter in the DBMS_AQADM.CREATE_QUEUE procedure during queue creation. For multiconsumer queues, the message becomes eligible to be moved to the exception queue even if failed dequeue attempts exceeds the MAX_RETRIES parameter for only one of the consumers. But the message will not be moved until either all other consumers have successfully consumed the message or failed more than MAX_RETRIES. You can view MAX_RETRIES for a queue in the ALL_QUEUES data dictionary view. If a dequeue transaction fails because the server process dies (including ALTER SYSTEM KILL SESSION) or SHUTDOWN ABORT on the instance, then RETRY_COUNT is not incremented. ■ A message was not dequeued before the expiration time elapsed. ■ Message propagation to the specified destination queue failed with one of the following errors: * There were no recipients for the multiconsumer destination queue. * Recipients were specified for a single-consumer destination queue. * Destination queue was an exception queue * There was an error when applying transformation. The default is the exception queue associated with the queue table. If the exception queue specified does not exist at the time of the move, then the message is moved to the default exception queue associated with the queue table, and a warning is logged in the alert log. If the default exception queue is specified, then the parameter returns a NULL value at dequeue time.
enqueue_time	Specifies the time the message was enqueued. This value is determined by the system and cannot be set by the user at enqueue time.
state	Specifies the state of the message at the time of the dequeue. This parameter cannot be set at enqueue time. The possible states follow: ■ DBMS_AQ.READY: The message is ready to be processed. ■ DBMS_AQ.WAITING: The message delay has not yet been reached. ■ DBMS_AQ.PROCESSED: The message has been processed and is retained. ■ DBMSAQ.EXPIRED: The message has been moved to the exception queue.

Table 271–12 (Cont.) MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Attributes

Attribute	Description
sender_id	The application-sender identification specified at enqueue time by the message producer. Sender id is of type aq$_agent. Sender name is required for secure queues at enqueue time. This must be a valid AQ agent name, mapped to the database user performing the enqueue operation, through dbms_aqadm.enable_db_access procedure call. Sender address and protocol should not be specified. The Sender id in the message properties returned at dequeue time may have a sender address if the message was propagated from another queue. The value of the address is the source_queue, source database name if it was a remote database [format source_queue@source_database_name]
original_msgid	This parameter is used by Oracle Database Advanced Queuing for propagating messages.
signature	Currently not implemented
transaction_group	Specifies the transaction_group for the dequeued message. Messages belonging to the same transaction group will have the same value for this attribute. This attribute is only set by the DBMS_AQ.DEQUEUE_ARRAY. This attribute cannot be used to set the transaction group of a message through DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE or DBMS_AQ.ENQUEUE_ARRAY calls.
user_property	This optional attribute is used to store additional information about the payload.
delivery_mode	The message publisher specifies the delivery mode in the message_properties. This can be DBMS_AQ.BUFFERED or DBMS_AQ.PERSISTENT. Array enqueue is only supported for buffered messages with an array size of '1'.

MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_ARRAY_T Type

This type is used by `dbms_aq.enqueue_array` and `dbms_aq.dequeue_array` calls to hold the set of message properties. Each element in the `payload_array` should have a corresponding element in the `MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_ARRAY_T VARRAY`.

See Also: "MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T Type" on page 271-26

Syntax

```
TYPE MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_ARRAY_T IS VARRAY (2147483647)
   OF MESSAGE_PROPERTIES_T;
```

MSGID_ARRAY_T Type

The `msgid_array_t` type is used in `dbms_aq.enqueue_array` and `dbms_aq.dequeue_array` calls to hold the set of message IDs that correspond to the enqueued or dequeued messages.

Syntax

```
TYPE MSGID_ARRAY_T IS TABLE OF RAW(16) INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER
```

272

DBFS Content Interface Types

This chapter describes public types defined to support the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using Content Types
  - Overview
  - Security Model
- Data Structures

Using Content Types

Overview

The type definitions described in this chapter support the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface in implementing metadata tables, packages, views, dependent application-side entities, and service-provider entities.

Security Model

The user can access the content operational and administrative interfaces (packages, types, tables, and so on) by way of the `DBFS_ROLE`. This role can be granted to users as needed.

Data Structures

Types that support the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface include both Object and Table types.

Object Types

- DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type
- DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEM_T Object Type
- DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T Object Type

Table Types

- DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T Table Type
- DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type
- DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T Table Type

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Object Type

This type describes the execution context for the providers. It provides the user performing the operation with the Access Control List, the owner of the item(s), a timestamp for doing `asof` queries, and whether or not the item(s) are `read_only`. This type can be used both as input, in the case of path item creation functions, and output, in the case of path item query, or both.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dbms_dbfs_content_context_t
    AUTHID DEFINER
AS OBJECT (
    principal     VARCHAR2(32),
    acl           VARCHAR2(1024),
    owner         VARCHAR2(32),
    asof          TIMESTAMP,
    read_only     INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 272–1 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_CONTEXT_T Fields

Field	Description
`principal`	File system user
`acl`	Access control list
`owner`	Path item owner
`asof`	Timestamp
`read_only`	Nonzero if the path item is read-only

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEM_T Object Type

This type describes a type to assist in listing the contents of a directory.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dbms_dbfs_content_list_item_t
    AUTHID DEFINER
AS OBJECT (
    path          VARCHAR2(1024),
    item_name     VARCHAR2(256),
    item_type     INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 272–2 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEM_T Fields

Field	Description
`path`	Path to the path item
`item_name`	Name of the path item
`item_type`	Type of path item. (See DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Constants - Path Name Types

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T Object Type

This type describes a single (`name`, `value`, `typecode`) property tuple. All properties (standard, optional, and user-defined) are described using such tuples.

The type is used by both the client-facing interfaces and by store providers for the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` interface.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dbms_dbfs_content_property_t
    AUTHID DEFINER
AS OBJECT (
    propname     VARCHAR2(32),
    propvalue    VARCHAR2(1024),
    typecode     INTEGER);
```

Fields

Table 272–3 DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T Fields

Field	Description
`prop_name`	Name of property
`prop_value`	Value of property
`typecode`	Property type (See Constants in DBMS_TYPES)

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEMS_T Table Type

This type is a variable-sized array of DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_LIST_ITEM_T Object Type. It is used by both the client-facing interfaces and by store providers for the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dbms_dbfs_content_list_items_t AS
    TABLE OF dbms_dbfs_content_list_item_t;
```

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T Table Type

This type is a variable-sized array of property tuples of DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T Object Type. It is used by both the client-facing interfaces and by store providers for the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t AS
    TABLE OF dbms_dbfs_content_property_t;
```

DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_RAW_T Table Type

This type is an array of `RAW`. It is to enable `RAW` data transport for batch interfaces in the DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT interface.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE dbms_dbfs_content_raw_t AS
    TABLE OF RAW(32767);
```

273

Database URI TYPEs

Oracle supports the `UriType` family of types that can be used to store and query Uri-refs inside the database. The `UriType` itself is an abstract object type and the `HTTPURITYPE`, `XDBURITYPE` and `DBURITYPE` are subtypes of it.

You can create a `UriType` column and store instances of the `DBURITYPE, XDBURITYPE` or the `HTTPURITYPE` inside of it. You can also define your own subtypes of the `UriType` to handle different URL protocols.

Oracle also provides a `UriFactory` package that can be used as a factory method to automatically generate various instances of these `UriTypes` by scanning the prefix, such as `http://` or `/oradb`. You can also register your subtype and provide the prefix that you support. For instance, if you have written a subtype to handle the gopher protocol, you can register the prefix `gopher://` to be handled by your subtype. The `UriFactory` will then generate your subtype instance for any URL starting with that prefix.

This chapter contains the following topics:

See Also:

- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Summary of URITYPE Supertype Subprograms

The `UriType` is the abstract super type. It provides a standard set of functions to get the value pointed to by the URI. The actual implementation of the protocol must be defined by the subtypes of this type.

Instances of this type cannot be created directly. However, you can create columns of this type and store subtype instances in it, and also select from columns without knowing the instance of the URL stored.

Table 273–1 URITYPE Type Subprograms

Method	Description
GETBLOB on page 273-3	Returns the `BLOB` located at the address specified by the URL.
GETCLOB on page 273-4	Returns the `CLOB` located at the address specified by the URL.
GETCONTENTTYPE on page 273-5	Returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the `UriType` instance.
GETEXTERNALURL on page 273-6	Returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the `UriType` instance.
GETURL on page 273-7	Returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the `UriType` instance.
GETXML on page 273-8	Returns the `XMLType` located at the address specified by the URL.

GETBLOB

This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL. This function can be overridden in the subtype instances. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob()` `RETURN BLOB;`	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob(`
`  content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN BLOB;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

`FUNCTION getBlob(`
`  csid IN NUMBER)`
`RETURN BLOB;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL in the specified character set.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.
csid	(IN)	Character set id of the document. Must be a valid Oracle id and greater than 0; otherwise returns an error

GETCLOB

This function returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the URL. This function can be overridden in the subtype instances. This function returns either a permanent CLOB or a temporary CLOB. If a temporary CLOB is returned, it must be freed. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob()` `RETURN clob;`	This function returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob(`
`  content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN clob;`
	This function returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

GETCONTENTTYPE

This function returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI. This function can be overridden in the subtype instances. This function returns the content type as VARCHAR2.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getContentType()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GETEXTERNALURL

This function returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the `UriType` instance. The subtype instances override this member function to provide additional semantics. For instance, the `HTTPURITYPE` function does not store the prefix `http://` in the URL itself. When generating the external URL, it appends the prefix and generates it. For this reason, use the `getExternalUrl` function or the `getUrl` function to get to the URL value instead of using the attribute present in the `UriType` instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getExternalUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETURL

This function returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the `UriType` instance. The subtype instances override this member function to provide additional semantics. For instance, the `HTTPURITYPE` function does not store the prefix `http://` in the URL itself. When generating the external URL, it appends the prefix and generates it. For this reason, use the `getExternalUrl` function or the `getUrl` function to get to the URL value instead of using the attribute present in the `UriType` instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETXML

This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL. This function can be overridden in the subtype instances. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML()` `RETURN XMLType;`	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN XMLType;`
	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

Summary of HTTPURITYPE Subtype Subprograms

The HTTPURITYPE is a subtype of the UriType that provides support for the HTTP protocol. This uses the UTL_HTTP package underneath to access the HTTP URLs. Proxy and secure wallets are not supported in this release.

Table 273–2 HTTPURITYPE Type Subprorgams

Method	Description
CREATEURI on page 273-10	Creates an instance of HTTPURITYPE from the given URI.
GETBLOB on page 273-11	Returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL.
GETCLOB on page 273-12	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the URL.
GETCONTENTTYPE on page 273-13	Returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI.
GETEXTERNALURL on page 273-14	Returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the UriType instance.
GETURL on page 273-7	Returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the UriType instance.
GETXML on page 273-16	Returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL
HTTPURITYPE on page 273-17	Creates an instance of HTTPURITYPE from the given URI.

CREATEURI

This static function constructs a HTTPURITYPE instance. The HTTPURITYPE instance does not contain the prefix http:// in the stored URL.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION createUri(
   url IN varchar2)
RETURN HTTPURITYPE;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string containing a valid HTTP URL; escaped format.

GETBLOB

This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the HTTP URL.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob()` `RETURN blob;`	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the HTTP URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN blob;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the HTTP URL and the content type.

`FUNCTION getBlob(`
`csid IN NUMBER)`
`RETURN BLOB;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL in the specified character set.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.
csid	(IN)	Character set id of the document. Must be a valid Oracle id and greater than 0; otherwise returns an error.

GETCLOB

This function returns the CLOB located by the HTTP URL address. If a temporary CLOB is returned, it must be freed.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob()` `RETURN clob;`	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the HTTP URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN clob;`
	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the HTTP URL and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

GETCONTENTTYPE

Returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getContentType()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GETEXTERNALURL

This function returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the `HTTPURITYPE` instance. The subtype instances override this member function. The `HTTPURITYPE` function does not store the prefix `http://`, but generates it for the external URL.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getExternalUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETURL

This function returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the `HTTPURITYPE` instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETXML

This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL. An error is thrown if the address does not point to a valid XML document.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML()` `RETURN XMLType;`	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN XMLType;`
	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

HTTPURITYPE

This constructs a HTTPURITYPE instance. The HTTPURITYPE instance does not contain the prefix http:// in the stored URL.

Syntax

```
CONSTRUCTOR FUNCTION HTTPURITYPE(
   url IN varchar2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string containing a valid HTTP URL. The URL string is expected in escaped format. For example, non-url characters are represented as the hexadecimal value for the UTF-8 encoding of those characters.

Summary of DBURITYPE Subtype Subprogams

The DBURITYPE is a subtype of the UriType that provides support for DBUri-refs. A DBUri-ref is an intra-database URL that can be used to reference any row or row-column data in the database. The URL is specified as an XPath expression over a XML visualization of the database. The schemas become elements which contain tables and views. These tables and view further contain the rows and columns inside them.

Table 273–3 DBURITYPE Type Subprograms

Method	Description
CREATEURI on page 273-19	Constructs a DBURITYPE instance.
DBURITYPE on page 273-20	Creates an instance of DBURITYPE from the given URI.
GETBLOB on page 273-21	Returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the DBURITYPE instance.
GETCLOB on page 273-22	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the DBURITYPE instance.
GETCONTENTTYPE on page 273-23	Returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI.
GETEXTERNALURL on page 273-24	Returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the DBURITYPE instance.
GETURL on page 273-25	Returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the DBURITYPE instance.
GETXML on page 273-26	Returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL

CREATEURI

This static function constructs a DBURITYPE instance. Parses the URL given and creates a DBURITYPE instance.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION createUri(
   url IN varchar2)
RETURN DBURITYPE;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string, in escaped format, containing a valid DBURITYPE.

DBURITYPE

This constructs a DBURITYPE instance.

Syntax

```
CONSTRUCTOR FUNCTION DBURITYPE(
   url IN varchar2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string containing a valid DBURITYPE. The URL string is expected in escaped format. For example, non-URL characters are represented as the hexadecimal value for the UTF-8 encoding of those characters.

GETBLOB

This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob()` `RETURN blob;`	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN blob;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

`FUNCTION getBlob(`
`csid IN NUMBER)`
`RETURN BLOB;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL in the specified character set.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.
csid	(IN)	Character set id of the document. Must be a valid Oracle id and greater than 0; otherwise returns an error.

GETCLOB

This function returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the DBURITYPE instance. If a temporary CLOB is returned, it must be freed. The document returned may be an XML document or a text document. When the DBUri-ref identifies an element in the XPath, the result is a well-formed XML document. On the other hand, if it identifies a text node, then what is returned is only the text content of the column or attribute. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob()` `RETURN clob;`	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the DBURITYPE instance.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob(`
`  content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN clob;`
	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the DBURITYPE instance and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

GETCONTENTTYPE

This function returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getContentType()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GETEXTERNALURL

This function returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the DBURITYPE instance. The DBUri servlet URL that processes the DBURITYPE has to be appended before using the escaped URL in Web pages.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getExternalUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETURL

This function returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the DBURITYPE instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETXML

This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML()` `RETURN XMLType;`	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN XMLType;`
	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

Summary of XDBURITYPE Subtype Subprograms

XDBURITYPE is a new subtype of URIType. It provides a way to expose documents in the Oracle XML DB hierarchy as URIs that can be embedded in any URIType column in a table. The URL part of the URI is the hierarchical name of the XML document it refers to. The optional fragment part uses the XPath syntax, and is separated from the URL part by '#'. The more general XPointer syntax for specifying a fragment is not currently supported.

Table 273–4 XDBURITYPE Type Subprograms

Method	Description
CREATEURI on page 273-28	Returns the UriType corresponding to the specified URL.
GETBLOB on page 273-29	Returns the BLOB corresponding to the contents of the document specified by the XDBURITYPE instance.
GETCLOB on page 273-22	Returns the CLOB corresponding to the contents of the document specified by the XDBURITYPE instance.
GETCONTENTTYPE on page 273-31	Returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI.
GETEXTERNALURL on page 273-24	Returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the XDBURITYPE instance.
GETURL on page 273-25	Returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the XDBURITYPE instance.
GETXML on page 273-34	Returns the XMLType corresponding to the contents of the document specified by the URL.
XDBURITYPE on page 273-35	Creates an instance of XDBURITYPE from the given URI.

CREATEURI

This static function constructs a XDBURITYPE instance. Parses the URL given and creates a XDBURITYPE instance.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION createUri(
   url IN varchar2)
RETURN XDBURITYPE
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string, in escaped format, containing a valid XDBURITYPE.

GETBLOB

This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the XDBURITYPE instance. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob()` `RETURN blob;`	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getBlob(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN blob;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

`FUNCTION getBlob(`
`csid IN NUMBER)`
`RETURN BLOB;`
	This function returns the BLOB located at the address specified by the URL in the specified character set.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.
csid	(IN)	Character set id of the document. Must be a valid Oracle id and greater than 0; otherwise returns an error.

GETCLOB

This function returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the XDBURITYPE instance. If a temporary CLOB is returned, it must be freed. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob()` `RETURN clob;`	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the XDBUriType instance.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getClob(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN clob;`
	Returns the CLOB located at the address specified by the XDBUriType instance and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

GETCONTENTTYPE

This function returns the content type of the document pointed to by the URI. This function returns the content type as `VARCHAR2`.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getContentType()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GETEXTERNALURL

This function returns the URL, in escaped format, stored inside the `XDBURITYPE` instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getExternalUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETURL

This function returns the URL, in non-escaped format, stored inside the `XDBURITYPE` instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getUrl()
RETURN varchar2;
```

GETXML

This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML()` `RETURN XMLType;`	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL.

`MEMBER FUNCTION getXML(`
`content OUT VARCHAR2)`
`RETURN XMLType;`
	This function returns the XMLType located at the address specified by the URL and the content type.

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
content	(OUT)	Content type of the document to which URI is pointing.

XDBURITYPE

This constructs a XDBURITYPE instance.

Syntax

```
CONSTRUCTOR FUNCTION XDBURITYPE(
   url     IN   VARCHAR2,
   flags   IN   RAW := NULL)
 RETURN self AS RESULT;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string containing a valid XDBUriType. The URL string is expected in escaped format. For example, non-URL characters are represented as the hexadecimal value for the UTF-8 encoding of those characters.
flags	(IN)	Possible values are: ■ 1 - Expand all XInclude elements before returning the result contents. If any XInclude element cannot be successfully resolved according to the XInclude fallback semantics, then an error is raised. ■ 2 - Indicates that any errors during document retrieval should be suppressed ■ 3 - Both flag bits (1, 2) are enabled

Summary of URIFACTORY Package Subprograms

The `UriFactory` package contains factory methods that can be used to generate the appropriate instance of the URI types without having to hard code the implementation in the program.

The `UriFactory` package also provides the ability to register new subtypes of the `UriType` to handle various other protocols. For example, you can invent a new protocol `ecom://` and define a subtype of the `UriType` to handle that protocol and register it with `UriFactory`. After that any factory method would generate the new subtype instance if it sees the `ecom://` prefix.

Table 273–5 URIFACTORY Type Subprograms

Method	Description
GETURI on page 273-37	Returns the correct URL handler for the given URL string.
ESCAPEURI on page 273-38	Returns a URL in escaped format.
UNESCAPEURI on page 273-39	Returns a URL in unescaped format.
REGISTERURLHANDLER on page 273-40	Registers a particular type name for handling a particular URL.
UNREGISTERURLHANDLER on page 273-41	Unregisters a URL handler.

GETURI

This factory method returns the correct URI handler for the given URI string. It returns a subtype instance of the `UriType` that can handle the protocol. By default, it always creates an `XDBURITYPE` instance, if it cannot resolve the URL. A URL handler can be registered for a particular prefix using the REGISTERURLHANDLER function. If the prefix matches, GETURI would then use that subtype.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION getUri(
   url IN Varchar2)
RETURN UriType;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`uri`	`(IN)`	The URL string, in escaped format, containing a valid HTTP URL.

ESCAPEURI

This function returns a URL in escaped format. The subtype instances override this member function to provide additional semantics. For instance, the `HTTPURITYPE` does not store the prefix `http://` in the URL itself. When generating the external URL, it appends the prefix and generates it. For this reason, use the GETEXTERNALURL function or the GETURI function to get to the URL value instead of using the attribute present in the `UriType`.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION escapeUri()
RETURN varchar2;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`url`	`(IN)`	The URL string to be returned in escaped format.

UNESCAPEURI

This function returns a URL in unescaped format. This function is the reverse of the ESCAPEURI function. This function scans the string and converts any non-URL hexadecimal characters into the equivalent UTF-8 characters. Since the return type is a VARCHAR2, the characters would be converted into the equivalent characters as defined by the database character set.

Syntax

```
FUNCTION unescapeUri()
RETURN varchar2;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
url	(IN)	The URL string to be returned in unescaped format.

REGISTERURLHANDLER

Registers a particular type name for handling a particular URL. The type specified must be valid and must be a subtype of the `UriType` or one of its subtypes. It must also implement the `createUri` static member function. This function is called by the GETURI function to generate an instance of the type. The `stripprefix` parameter indicates that the prefix must be stripped off before calling this function.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE registerUrlHandler(
   prefix IN varchar2,
   schemaName IN varchar2,
   typename IN varchar2,
   ignoreCase IN boolean := true,
   stripprefix IN boolean := true);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`prefix`	`(IN)`	The prefix to handle; for example, `http://`.
`schemaName`	`(IN)`	Name of the schema where the type resides; case sensitive.
`typename`	`(IN)`	The name of the type to handle the URL; case sensitive.
`ignoreCase`	`(IN)`	Ignore case when matching prefixes.
`stripprefix`	`(IN)`	Strip prefix before generating the instance of the type.

UNREGISTERURLHANDLER

This procedure unregisters a URL handler. This only unregisters user registered handler prefixes and not predefined system prefixes such as `http://`.

Syntax

```
PROCEDURE unregisterUrlHandler(
   prefix IN varchar2);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`prefix`	`(IN)`	The prefix to be unregistered.

274

JMS Types

PL/SQL users can use the `DBMS_AQ` package to enqueue and dequeue messages from JMS queues. The JMS types member and static functions and procedures in this chapter are needed to populate JMS messages for enqueuing or to interpret a dequeued JMS message.

This chapter contains these topics:

Using JMS Types

Overview

Java Message Service (JMS) is a well known public standard interface for accessing messaging systems. Oracle JMS (OJMS) implements JMS based on Oracle Streams Advanced Queuing (AQ) and a relational database system (RDBMS). Messages are stored in queues as OJMS specific ADTs. Java clients use OJMS packages to enqueue, dequeue, and manipulate these messages.

PL/SQL users, on the other hand, use the `DBMS_AQ` package to enqueue and dequeue JMS messages and the member functions in this chapter to populate and interpret them. Oracle Database Advanced Queuing offers such member functions for the following JMS ADTs:

- `aq$_jms_header`
- `aq$_jms_message`
- `aq$_jms_text_message`
- `aq$_jms_bytes_message`
- `aq$_jms_map_message`
- `aq$_jms_stream_message`

In addition to these populating and interpreting member functions, Oracle Database Advanced Queuing offers:

- Casting between `aq$_jms_message` and other message ADTs.
- PL/SQL stored procedures for converting JMS selectors to equivalent Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rules

Security Model

PUBLIC is granted EXECUTE privilege on the following JMS types:

- SYS.AQ$_JMS_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_MAP_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_NAMEARRAY Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_VALUE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_EXCEPTION Type

Java Versus PL/SQL Datatypes

Datatypes do not map one-to-one between PL/SQL and Java.

Some Java types, such as `BYTE` and `SHORT`, are not present in PL/SQL. PL/SQL type `INT` was chosen to represent these types. If a PL/SQL `INT` value intended to hold a Java `BYTE` or `SHORT` value exceeds the corresponding range Java enforces, an out-of-range error is thrown.

Other Java types have more than one counterpart in PL/SQL with different capabilities. A Java String can be represented by both `VARCHAR2` and `CLOB`, but `VARCHAR2` has a maximum limit of 4000 bytes. When retrieving `TEXT` data from map, stream, and bytes message types, a `CLOB` is always returned. When updating the map, stream and bytes message types, users can submit either a `VARCHAR2` or `CLOB`.

Similarly, a Java `BYTE ARRAY` can be represented by both `RAW` and `BLOB`, with `RAW` having a maximum size of 32767. When retrieving `BYTE ARRAY` data from map, stream, and bytes message types, a `BLOB` is always returned. When updating the map, stream and bytes message types, users can submit either a `RAW` or `BLOB`.

> **See Also:** JMS specification 3.11.3, Conversion Provided by StreamMessage and MapMessage

New JMS Support in Oracle Database 10*g*

In Oracle Database 10*g*, a new `AQ$_JMS_VALUE` ADT has been added in the `SYS` schema for OJMS PL/SQL users. It is specifically used to implement the `read_object` procedure of `aq$_jms_stream_message` and `get_object` procedure of `aq$_jms_map_message`, to mimic the Java general object class `Object`. `AQ$_JMS_VALUE` ADT can represent any datatype that JMS `StreamMessage` and `MapMessage` can hold.

The collection ADT `AQ$_JMS_NAMEARRAY` was added for the `getNames` method of `MapMessage`. It holds an array of names.

In this release the ADT `AQ$_JMS_EXCEPTION` was added to represent a Java exception thrown in an OJMS JAVA stored procedure on the PL/SQL side. Now you can retrieve a Java exception thrown by an OJMS stored procedure and analyze it on the PL/SQL side.

More on Bytes, Stream and Map Messages

Oracle uses Java stored procedure to implement some of the procedures of `AQ$_MAP_MESSAGE`, `AQ$_JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE`, and `AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE` types. These types have some common functionalities that are different from `AQ$_JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE` type. This section discusses these common functionalities.

This section contains these topics:

- Using Java Stored Procedures to Encode and Decode Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Messages
- Read-Only and Write-Only Modes Enforced for Stream and Bytes Messages
- Differences Between Bytes and Stream Messages
- Getting and Setting Bytes, Map, and Stream Messages as RAW Bytes

Using Java Stored Procedures to Encode and Decode Oracle Database Advanced Queuing Messages

The major difference between map, stream, bytes, and other messages is that the message payload is encoded as a byte stream by JAVA. Retrieving and updating these payloads in PL/SQL therefore requires Oracle JAVA stored procedures.

A message payload is stored in two places during processing. On the PL/SQL side it is stored as the data members of a JMS message ADT, and on the Jserv side it is stored as a static variable. (Jserv is the JVM inside Oracle Database.) When the payload is processed, the payload data is first transformed to a static variable on the Jserv side. Once the static variable is initialized, all later updates on the message payload are performed on this static variable. At the end of processing, payload data is flushed back to the PL/SQL side.

Oracle provides member procedures that maintain the status of the Jserv static variable and enforce rules when calling these member procedures. These procedures are in the following ADTs:

- `aq$_jms_bytes_message`
- `aq$_jms_map_message`
- `aq$_jms_stream_message`

Initialize the Jserv Static Variable

Before you make any other calls to manipulate the payload data, the Jserv static variable must be properly initialized. This is done by calling the `prepare` or `clear_body` procedure. The `prepare` procedure uses the payload data in PL/SQL ADTs to initialize the static variable, while `clear_body` initializes the static variable to an empty payload (empty hashtable or stream).

Note: It is important to call the `prepare` or `clear_body` procedure before any other calls to properly initialize the Jserv static variables. Usually these two methods are called once at the beginning. But they can be called multiple times for one message. Any call of these two methods without first calling the `flush` procedure wipes out all updates made to the messages.

Get the Payload Data Back to PL/SQL

Calling the `flush` procedure synchronizes changes made to the Jserv static variable back to the PL/SQL ADTs. The `flush` call is required when you want the changes made to be reflected in the ADT payload. It is important to synchronize the changes back to the ADT, because it is the ADT payload that matters.

Garbage Collect the Static Variable

The `clean` procedure forces garbage collection of the static variable. It is there to do cleanup and free JVM memory. You can avoid memory leaks by doing it immediately after finishing processing the message.

Use a Message Store: A Static Variable Collection

Instead of a single static variable, Oracle uses a collection of static variables to process the message payload on the Jserv side. This collection is called the message store. Each map, bytes, or stream message type has its own message store within one session.

Oracle uses the operation ID parameter to locate the correct static variable to work on within the message store. Initialization calls such as `prepare` and `clear_body` give users an operation ID, which is used in later message access.

After users complete message processing, they must call the `clean` procedure with the operation ID to clean up the message store. This avoids possible memory leaks. The `clean_all` static procedures of message ADTs `aq$_jms_bytes_message`, `aq$_jms_map_message`, and `aq$_jms_stream_message` clean up all static variables of their corresponding message stores.

Typical Calling Sequences

This section describes typical procedures for retrieving and populating messages.

Here is a typical procedure for retrieving messages

1. Call `prepare` for a message.

   This call also gives you an operation ID if you do not specify one.
2. Call multiple retrieving procedures with the provided operation ID.
3. Call the `clean` procedure with the provided operation ID.

Here is a typical procedure for populating messages:

1. Call `clear_body` for a message.

   For `aq$_jms_map_message`, you can also call `prepare` to update the message based on the existing payload. This call also gives you an operation ID if you do not specify one.
2. Call multiple updating procedures with the provided operation ID.
3. Call the `flush` method with the provided operation ID.
4. Call the `clean` procedure with the provided operation ID.

Read-Only and Write-Only Modes Enforced for Stream and Bytes Messages

According to the JMS specification, when a message is received, its body is read-only. Users can call the `clear_body` method to make the body writable. This method erases the current message body and sets the message body to be empty.

The OJMS JAVA API follows the rule set by JMS specification. In updating the JMS message ADTs in PL/SQL, however, Oracle enforces the rule selectively:

- Map messages

  The restriction is relaxed, because adding more entries on top of a existing map payload is a convenient way for users to update the payload. Therefore there are no read-only or write-only modes for map messages.

- Stream and bytes messages

  The restriction is not relaxed, because these payloads use a stream when reading and writing data. It is difficult to update the payload while in the middle of a stream. Oracle enforces read-only and write-only modes in processing stream and bytes message payloads. Calling the `prepare` procedure initializes the message payload in read-only mode. Calling the `clear_body` procedure initializes the message payload in write-only mode.

  Calling the `reset` procedure resets the pointer to the beginning of the stream and switches the mode from write-only to read-only. The `reset` procedure keeps the updates made to the message payload in the Jserv static variable.

  The `prepare` procedure, on the other hand, overwrites the message payload in the Jserv static variable with the payload in the PL/SQL ADT.

  Oracle provides member function `get_mode` for users to query the mode.

Differences Between Bytes and Stream Messages

Member functions of bytes messages are not exactly the same as those of stream messages. Stream messages are encoded using Java `ObjectOutputStream` and bytes messages are encoded using Java `DataOutputStream`. In stream messages each primitive type is written and read as a Java Object, but in a bytes message they are written and read as raw bytes according to the encoding mechanism of `DataOutputStream`.

For stream messages, the `read_bytes` method works on a stream of bytes to the end of the byte array field written by the corresponding `write_bytes` method. The `read_bytes` method of bytes message works on a stream of bytes to the end of the whole byte stream. This is why the `read_bytes` member procedure of `aq$_bytes_message` also requires a `length` parameter to tell how long it is to read.

You will not see a type conversion error raised by bytes message, because bytes messages do not support type conversion.

Methods `get_unsigned_byte` and `get_unsigned_short` are available for bytes messages, but not for stream messages. This is because stream messages read Java objects, and there are no Java objects as unsigned bytes or unsigned shorts.

Methods `read_string` and `write_string` methods are not available for bytes messages. The bytes message ADT must enforce some character encoding. It has methods `read_utf` and `write_utf` which support `utf-8` encoding.

Note: All data written by bytes messages use `DataOutputStream` as the basis. See JDK API documentation JavaSoft.com for details on how the data is encoded into bytes.

Getting and Setting Bytes, Map, and Stream Messages as RAW Bytes

The payloads of bytes, map, and stream message types are stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. In this release Oracle Database Advanced Queuing provides the following member functions to set and get these payloads as raw bytes without interpreting them:

```
set_bytes(payload IN BLOB)
set_bytes(payload IN RAW)
get_bytes(payload OUT BLOB)
get_bytes(payload OUT RAW)
```

These functions were provided for bytes messages in Oracle9*i* Release 2 (9.2).

Upcasting and Downcasting Between General and Specific Messages

OJMS ADT `aq$_jms_message` is used to represent a general message, so that different types of messages can reside on the same Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue. Oracle Database Advanced Queuing supports retrieving and populating of `aq$_jms_message` by supporting upcasting and downcasting between this ADT and ADTs of specific message types.

To read an `aq$_jms_message`, you must first downcast it to a specific message type according to its `message_type` field

To populate an `aq$_jms_message`, you must first populate a specific message and upcast it to `aq$_jms_message`. This avoids copying all member functions of other specific message ADTs to this ADT. It also guarantees that the manipulation of this ADT is consistent with other specific message ADTs.

JMS Types Error Reporting

Table 274–1 lists Oracle JMS types related errors.

Table 274–1 Oracle JMS Types Errors

ORA error number	dbms_jms_plsql package constants	Explanation
ORA-24190	ERROR_DATA_OVERFLOW	The payload data exceeds the size that an out parameter can hold. For example, the get_text procedure with a VARCHAR2 parameter of aq$_jms_text_message or get_bytes procedure with a RAW parameter of aq$_jms_bytes_message.
ORA-24191	ERROR_PROP_NAME_EXIST	Setting a property that is previous set
ORA-24192	ERROR_PROP_NAME_NULL	Occurs when setting a property with null property name.
ORA-24193	ERROR_EXCEED_RANGE	PL/SQL number type exceeds the valid range of the respective Java type. For example set_byte_property, set_short_property of aq$_jms_head ADT; set_byte and set_short of aq$_jms_map_message ADT; write_byte and write_short of aq$_jms_stream_message and aq$_jms_bytes_message ADT.
ORA-24194	ERROR_TYPE_MISMATCH	The type conversion between the Java type of the retrieving method and the Java type of a field of the payload is not valid.
ORA-24195	ERROR_MAP_TOO_LARGE	The size of the map exceeds the aq$_jms_namearray ADT capacity. The current size limit is 1024. You can use the get_names function with offset and length parameters to retrieve the name array in multiple small chunks.
ORA-24196	ERROR_WRONG_MODE	The message payload is being accessed with a wrong access mode. For example, trying to read a message payload with write-only mode or trying to write a message payload with the read-only mode.
ORA-24197	ERROR_JAVA_EXCEPTION	ORA-24197 error is raised when a Java exception is raised that does not fit in any of the other error categories. You can use the get_exception static procedure of aq$_jms_map_message, aq$_jms_bytes_message, and aq$_jms_stream_message to retrieve the exception information last thrown by the Java stored procedure. A single static variable is used to store the last exception and is overwritten if another exception is thrown before you retrieve it. A new ADT aq$_jms_exception is created to represent the exception information on the PL/SQL side.
ORA-24198	ERROR_INVALID_ID	An invalid operation ID is being provided to access a message.
ORA-24199	ERROR_STORE_OVERFLOW	The number of messages (with the same type) that users are trying to manipulate exceeds the size of the message store on the Java stored procedure side. The current size of the store is 20. It unusual to need to manipulate more than 20 messages at the same time. A common mistake is to forget to call the clean procedure after using one message. The clean procedure frees the message slot for use by other messages attempting access.

Oracle JMS Type Constants

This section lists some useful constants when dealing with message type functions.

DBMS_AQ Package Constants

DBMS_AQ package constants specify different types of JMS messages. They are useful when dealing with general message types during upcasting and downcasting or constructing a general message with a specific message type:

```
JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE   CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER;
JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE  CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER;
JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER;
JMS_MAP_MESSAGE    CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER;
JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER;
```

SYS.DBMS_JMS_PLSQL Package Constants

SYS.DBMS_JMS_PLSQL package constants are new in Oracle Database 10*g*.

These constants specify the mode of message payload. They are useful when interpreting the mode of the message payload returned from the get_mode function:

```
MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY  CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
MESSAGE_ACCESS_WRITEONLY CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
```

These constants specify the ADT type of an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue. They are useful during the conversion of JMS selectors to Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rules:

```
DESTPLOAD_JMSTYPE CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DESTPLOAD_USERADT CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DESTPLOAD_ANYDATA CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
```

These constants specify the type of data that can be held by a aq$_jms_value type. They are useful when interpreting the aq$_jms_value returned by the get_object method of AQ$_JMS_MAP_MESSAGE or read_object method of AQ$_JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE:

```
DATA_TYPE_BYTE           CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_SHORT          CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_INTEGER        CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_LONG           CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_FLOAT          CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_DOUBLE         CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN        CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_CHARACTER      CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_STRING         CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_BYTES          CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_UNSIGNED_BYTE  CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
DATA_TYPE_UNSIGNED_SHORT CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER;
```

These constants specify the error number of the ORA errors that can be raised by the functions of message type ADTs. They are useful in user error handlers:

```
ERROR_DATA_OVERFLOW   CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24190;
ERROR_PROP_NAME_EXIST CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24191;
ERROR_PROP_NAME_NULL  CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24192;
ERROR_EXCEED_RANGE    CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24193;
ERROR_TYPE_MISMATCH   CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24194;
ERROR_MAP_TOO_LARGE   CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24195;
ERROR_WRONG_MODE      CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24196;
```

```
ERROR_JAVA_EXCEPTION  CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24197;
ERROR_INVALID_ID      CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24198;
ERROR_STORE_OVERFLOW  CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := -24199;
```

CONVERT_JMS_SELECTOR

Oracle Database includes three stored procedures to help users convert JMS selectors into Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rules. These rules can be used in `ADD_SUBSCRIBER` operations as subscriber rules or in `DEQUEUE` operations as dequeue conditions. These procedures are in the `SYS.dbms_jms_plsql` package.

Convert with Minimal Specification

The first procedure assumes the destination payload type is one of the JMS ADTs whose corresponding constant is `dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_JMSTYPE` and also assumes that the J2EE compliant mode is true.

Syntax

```
Function convert_jms_selector(selector IN VARCHAR2) RETURN VARCHAR2
```

Returns

The converted Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rule or null if there is any conversion error.

Exceptions

ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution.

Convert with Destination Payload Type Specified

The second procedure takes one more parameter: `dest_pload_type`. The conversion of a JMS selector to an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rule happens only if this parameter is `SYS.dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_JMSTYPE` or `SYS.dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_ANYDATA`. The function returns exactly the same `VARCHAR2` value as the selector parameter if the `dest_pload_type` parameter is `SYS.dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_USERADT`. The function returns null if `dest_pload_type` parameter is none of these three constants.

This function assumes that the J2EE compliant mode is true.

Syntax

```
Function convert_jms_selector(
   selector IN VARCHAR2,
   dest_pload_type IN PLS_INTEGER)
RETURN VARCHAR2
```

Returns

The converted Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rule or null if there is any conversion error.

Exceptions

ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution.

Convert with Destination Payload Type and Compliant Mode Specified

The third procedure takes a `dest_pload_type` parameter and a `compliant` parameter. The conversion of a JMS selector to an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rule happens only if the `dest_pload_type` parameter is `SYS.dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_JMSTYPE` or `SYS.dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_ANYDATA`. The function returns exactly the

same VARCHAR2 value as the selector parameter if the dest_pload_type parameter is SYS.dbms_jms_plsql.DESTPLOAD_USERADT. The function returns null if the dest_pload_type parameter is none of these three constants.

The compliant parameter controls if the conversion is in J2EE compliant mode or not. The noncompliant conversion of a JMS selector is for backward compatibility.

Syntax

```
Function convert_jms_selector(
   selector         IN  VARCHAR2,
   dest_pload_type  IN  PLS_INTEGER,
   compliant        IN  BOOLEAN )
```

Returns

The converted Oracle Database Advanced Queuing rule or null if there is any conversion error.

Exceptions

ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution.

Summary of JMS Types

- SYS.AQ$_JMS_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_MAP_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_NAMEARRAY Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_VALUE Type
- SYS.AQ$_JMS_EXCEPTION Type

SYS.AQ$_JMS_MESSAGE Type

This ADT type can represent any of five different JMS message types: text message, bytes message, stream message, map message, or object message. Queues created using this ADT can therefore store all five types of JMS messages.

This section contains these topics:

Syntax

```
TYPE AQ$_JMS_MESSAGE AS OBJECT(
 header        aq$_jms_header,
 senderid      varchar2(100),
 message_type  INT,
 text_len      INT,
 bytes_len     INT,
 text_vc       varchar2(4000),
 bytes_raw     raw(2000),
 text_lob      clob,
 bytes_lob     blob,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct (mtype      IN  INT)
   RETURN aq$_jms_message,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct (text_msg   IN  aq$_jms_text_message)
   RETURN aq$_jms_message,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct (bytes_msg  IN  aq$_jms_bytes_message)
   RETURN aq$_jms_message,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct (stream_msg IN  aq$_jms_stream_message)
   RETURN aq$_jms_message,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct (map_msg    IN  aq$_jms_map_message)
   RETURN aq$_jms_message,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct (object_msg IN  aq$_jms_object_message)
   RETURN aq$_jms_message,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  cast_to_bytes_msg  RETURN aq$_jms_bytes_message,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  cast_to_map_msg    RETURN aq$_jms_map_message,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  cast_to_object_msg RETURN aq$_jms_object_message,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  cast_to_stream_msg RETURN aq$_jms_stream_message,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  cast_to_text_msg   RETURN aq$_jms_text_message,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_replyto  (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_type     (type     IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_userid   (userid   IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_appid    (appid    IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupid  (groupid  IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupseq (groupseq IN  INT),
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_replyto  RETURN sys.aq$_agent,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_type     RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_userid   RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_appid    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_groupid  RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_groupseq RETURN INT,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_properties,
```

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN BOOLEAN),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_byte_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_double_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_float_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN FLOAT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_int_property     (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_long_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN NUMBER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_short_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
  property_value IN VARCHAR),
MEMBER FUNCTION get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_byte_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_double_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR)
  RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_float_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_int_property     (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_long_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_short_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_string_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR,
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_text     (payload  IN  VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_text     (payload  IN  CLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes    (payload  IN  RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes    (payload  IN  BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_text     (payload  OUT VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_text     (payload  OUT CLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes    (payload  OUT RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes    (payload  OUT BLOB));
```

CONSTRUCT Static Functions

There are six `CONSTRUCT` static functions in this type.

STATIC FUNCTION construct (mtype IN INT) RETURN aq$_jms_message
Creates an instance of `aq$_jms_message`, which can hold a specific type of JMS message (TextMessage, BytesMessage, MapMessage, StreamMessage or ObjectMessage). The message type of the created `aq$_jms_message` instance depends on the `mtype` parameter passed to the construct method. Once a message has been constructed, it can be used to store JMS messages of the type it has been constructed to hold.

The `mtype` parameter must be one of the following constants described in "Oracle JMS Type Constants" on page 274-12:

```
DBMS_AQ.JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE
DBMS_AQ.JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE
DBMS_AQ.JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE
DBMS_AQ.JMS_MAP_MESSAGE
DBMS_AQ.JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE
```

STATIC FUNCTION construct (text_msg IN aq$_jms_text_message) RETURN aq$_jms_message
Creates an `aq$_jms_message` from an `aq$_jms_text_message`.

STATIC FUNCTION construct (bytes_msg IN aq$_jms_bytes_message) RETURN aq$_

jms_message;
Creates an aq$_jms_message from an aq$_jms_bytes_message.

STATIC FUNCTION construct (stream_msg IN aq$_jms_stream_message) RETURN aq$_jms_message;
Creates an aq$_jms_message from an aq$_jms_stream_message.

STATIC FUNCTION construct (map_msg IN aq$_jms_map_message) RETURN aq$_jms_message;
Creates an aq$_jms_message from an aq$_jms_map_message.

STATIC FUNCTION construct (object_msg IN aq$_jms_object_message) RETURN aq$_jms_message;
Creates an aq$_jms_message from an aq$_jms_object_message.

Cast Methods

cast_to_bytes_msg RETURN aq$_jms_bytes_message
Casts an aq$_jms_message to an aq$_jms_bytes_message. Returns an aq$_jms_bytes_message or null if the message_type attribute of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQ.JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE. This function raises ORA-24198 if the message_type field of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQJMS.JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE.

cast_to_map_msg RETURN aq$_jms_map_message
Casts an aq$_jms_message to an aq$_jms_map_message. Returns an aq$_jms_map_message or null if the message_type attribute of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQ.JMS_MAP_MESSAGE. This function raises ORA-24198 if the message_type field of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQJMS.JMS_MAP_MESSAGE.

cast_to_object_msg RETURN aq$_jms_object_message
Casts an aq$_jms_message to an aq$_jms_object_message. Returns an aq$_jms_object_message or null if the message_type attribute of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQ.JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE. This function raises ORA-24198 if the message_type field of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQJMS.JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE.

cast_to_stream_msg RETURN aq$_jms_stream_message
Casts an aq$_jms_message to an aq$_jms_stream_message. Returns an aq$_jms_stream_message or null if the message_type attribute of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQ.JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE. This function raises ORA-24198 if the message_type field of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQJMS.JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE.

cast_to_text_msg RETURN aq$_jms_text_message
Casts an aq$_jms_message to an aq$_jms_text_message. Returns an aq$_jms_text_message or null if the message_type attribute of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQ.JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE. This function raises ORA-24198 if the message_type field of the aq$_jms_message is not DBMS_AQJMS.JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE.

JMS Header Methods

set_replyto (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent)
Sets the replyto parameter, which corresponds to JMSReplyTo.

get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent
Returns replyto, which corresponds to JMSReplyTo.

set_type (type IN VARCHAR)
Sets the JMS type, which can be any text and corresponds to `JMSType`.

get_type RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `type`, which corresponds to `JMSType`.

System Properties Methods

set_userid (userid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID`.

set_appid (appid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID`.

set_groupid (groupid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID`.

set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT)
Sets `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq`.

get_userid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID`.

get_appid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID`.

get_groupid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID`.

get_groupseq RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq`.

User Properties Methods

clear_properties
Clears all user properties. This procedure does not affect system properties.

set_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN BOOLEAN)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure stores `property_value` in an internal representation (a `NUMBER` type). Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -128 to 127 (8-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the `byte` datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN FLOAT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -2147483648 to 2147483647 (32-bits). This check is necessary because the `INT` datatype is 38 bits in PL/SQL and Oracle Database. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN NUMBER)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure stores `property_value`. In PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the `NUMBER` datatype is 38 bits. In Java, the long datatype is 64 bits. Therefore, no range check is needed. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -32768 to 32767 (16-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the `short` datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN VARCHAR)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If it is not null, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `BOOLEAN` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `BYTE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `DOUBLE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `FLOAT` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `Integer` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `long` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `short` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `STRING` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

Payload Methods

set_text (payload IN VARCHAR2)
Sets the payload, a `VARCHAR2` value, to an internal representation.

set_text (payload IN CLOB),
Sets the payload, a `CLOB` value, to an internal representation.

set_bytes (payload IN RAW)
Sets the payload, a `RAW` value, to an internal representation.

set_bytes (payload IN BLOB)
Sets the payload, a `BLOB` value, to an internal representation.

get_text (payload OUT VARCHAR2)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `VARCHAR2` variable payload.

get_text (payload OUT CLOB)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `CLOB` variable payload.

get_bytes (payload OUT RAW)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `RAW` variable payload.

get_bytes (payload OUT BLOB)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `BLOB` variable payload.

SYS.AQ$_JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE Type

This type is the ADT used to store a `TextMessage` in an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.

This section contains these topics:

Syntax

```
TYPE AQ$_JMS_TEXT_MESSAGE AS OBJECT(
 header    aq$_jms_header,
 text_len  INT,
 text_vc   varchar2(4000),
 text_lob  clob,
 STATIC FUNCTION construct    RETURN aq$_jms_text_message,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_replyto  (replyto  IN  sys.aq$_agent),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_type     (type     IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent,
 MEMBER FUNCTION  get_type    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_userid   (userid   IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_appid    (appid    IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupid  (groupid  IN  VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupseq (groupseq IN  INT),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_userid   RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_appid    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupid  RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupseq RETURN INT,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_properties,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_boolean_property(property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN BOOLEAN),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_byte_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_float_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN FLOAT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_int_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_long_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN NUMBER),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_short_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR)
   RETURN BOOLEAN,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_byte_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_double_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR)
   RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_float_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_int_property     (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_long_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER,
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION get_short_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_string_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR)
  RETURN VARCHAR,
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_text            (payload  IN  VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_text            (payload  IN  CLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_text            (payload  OUT VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_text            (payload  OUT CLOB));
```

CONSTRUCT Function

STATIC FUNCTION construct RETURN aq$_jms_text_message
Creates an empty `aq$_jms_text_message`.

JMS Header Methods

set_replyto (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent)
Sets the `replyto` parameter, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo` in JMS.

set_type (type IN VARCHAR)
Sets the JMS type, which can be any text, and which corresponds to `JMSType` in JMS.

get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent
Returns `replyto`, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo`.

get_type RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `type`, which corresponds to `JMSType`.

System Properties Methods

set_userid (userid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID` in JMS.

set_appid (appid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID` in JMS.

set_groupid (groupid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID` in JMS.

set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT)
Sets `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq` in JMS.

get_userid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID`.

get_appid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID`.

get_groupid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID`.

get_groupseq RETURN INT
Returns `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq`.

User Properties Methods

clear_properties
Clears all user properties. This procedure does not affect system properties.

set_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN BOOLEAN)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value in an internal representation. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether property_value is within -128 to 127 (8-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the BYTE datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN FLOAT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether property_value is within -2147483648 to 2147483647 (32-bits). This check is necessary because in PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the INT datatype is 38 bits. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN NUMBER)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. In PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the NUMBER datatype is 38 bits. In Java, the long datatype is 64 bits. Therefore, no range check is needed.Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_short_property property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether property_value is within -32768 to 32767 (16-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the short datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN VARCHAR)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a BOOLEAN property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a BYTE property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `DOUBLE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `FLOAT` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `Integer` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `long` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `short` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR)
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `STRING` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

Payload Methods

set_text (payload IN VARCHAR2)
Sets the payload, a `VARCHAR2` value, to an internal representation.

set_text (payload IN CLOB)
Sets the payload, a `CLOB` value, to an internal representation.

get_text (payload OUT VARCHAR2)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `VARCHAR2` variable payload.

get_text (payload OUT CLOB)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `CLOB` variable payload.

SYS.AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE Type

This type is the ADT used to store a `BytesMessage` in an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.

This section contains these topics:

- CONSTRUCT Function
- JMS Header Methods
- System Properties Methods
- User Properties Methods
- Payload Methods

Syntax

```
TYPE AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE AS OBJECT(
 header     aq$_jms_header,
 bytes_len  INT,
 bytes_raw  raw(2000),
 bytes_lob  blob,
 STATIC FUNCTION construct RETURN aq$_jms_bytes_message,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_replyto  (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_type     (type    IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_type    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_userid   (userid   IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_appid    (appid    IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupid  (groupid  IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_userid   RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_appid    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupid  RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupseq RETURN INT,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_properties,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_boolean_property(property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN BOOLEAN),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_byte_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_float_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN FLOAT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_int_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_long_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN NUMBER),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_short_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_valuE IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_byte_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_double_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR)
   RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_float_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_int_property     (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_long_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_short_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION get_string_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR,
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes           (payload  IN RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes           (payload  IN BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes           (payload  OUT RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes           (payload  OUT BLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION  prepare             (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE reset               (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE flush               (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_body          (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE clean               (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
STATIC PROCEDURE clean_all,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_mode           (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_boolean       (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN BOOLEAN,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_byte          (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_bytes         (id IN PLS_INTEGER,
  value OUT NOCOPY BLOB, length IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_char          (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN CHAR,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_double        (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_float         (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN FLOAT,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_int           (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN INT,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_long          (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN NUMBER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_short         (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_unsigned_byte  (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read_unsigned_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE read_utf          (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY CLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_boolean     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BOOLEAN),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_byte        (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes       (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes       (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes       (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW,
  offset IN PLS_INTEGER, length IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes       (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB,
  offset IN INT, length IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_char        (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CHAR),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_double      (id IN PLS_INTEGER,
  value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_float       (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN FLOAT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_int         (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_long        (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN NUMBER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_short       (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_utf         (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_utf         (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CLOB));
```

CONSTRUCT Function

STATIC FUNCTION construct RETURN aq$_jms_bytes_message
Creates an empty `aq$_jms_bytes_message`.

JMS Header Methods

set_replyto (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent)
Sets the `replyto` parameter, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo` in JMS.

set_type (type IN VARCHAR)
Sets the JMS type, which can be any text, and which corresponds to `JMSType` in JMS.

get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent
Returns `replyto`, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo`.

get_type RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `type`, which corresponds to `JMSType`.

System Properties Methods

set_userid (userid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID` in JMS.

set_appid (appid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID` in JMS.

set_groupid (groupid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID` in JMS.

set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT)
Sets `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq` in JMS.

get_userid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID`.

get_appid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID`.

get_groupid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID`.

get_groupseq RETURN NUMBER
Returns `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq`.

User Properties Methods

clear_properties
Clears all user properties. This procedure does not affect system properties.

set_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN BOOLEAN)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value` in an internal representation. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -128 to 127 (8-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the `BYTE` datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN FLOAT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -2147483648 to 2147483647 (32-bits). This check is necessary because in PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the `INT` datatype is 38 bits. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN NUMBER)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. In PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the `NUMBER` datatype is 38 bits. In Java, the `long` datatype is 64 bits. Therefore, no range check is needed.Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -32768 to 32767 (16-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the `short` datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN VARCHAR)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `BOOLEAN` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `BYTE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `DOUBLE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `FLOAT` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `Integer` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `long` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `short` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `STRING` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

Payload Methods

set_bytes (payload in RAW)
Sets the payload, a `RAW` value, to an internal representation.

set_bytes (payload in BLOB)
Sets the payload, a `BLOB` value, to an internal representation.

get_bytes (payload out RAW)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `RAW` variable payload. Raises exception ORA-24190 if the length of the internal payload is more than 32767 (the maximum length of `RAW` in PL/SQL).

get_bytes (payload out BLOB)
Puts the internal representation of the payload into a `BLOB` variable payload.

prepare (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Takes the byte array stored in aq$_jms_bytes_message and decodes it as a Java object in the Java stored procedure. The result of the decoding is stored as a static variable in Jserv session memory. Parameter `id` is used to identify the slot where the Java object is stored in the Oracle Database JVM session memory. If `id` is null, then a new slot is created for this PL/SQL object. Subsequent JMS operations on the payload need to provide this operation ID.

This function also sets the message access mode to `MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY`. Subsequent calls of `write_XXX` procedure raise an ORA-24196 error. Users can call the `clear_body` procedure to set the message access mode to `MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY`.

This function raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid, or ORA-24199 if the Java stored procedure message store overflows.

reset (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Resets the starting position of the stream to the beginning and puts the bytes message in read-only mode. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

flush (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Takes the static variable in Jserv and synchronizes the content back to the `aq$_jms_bytes_message`. This procedure will not affect the underlying access mode. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

clear_body (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Sets the Java stored procedure static variable to empty payload. Parameter `id` is used to identify the slot where the Java object is stored in the Oracle Database JVM session

memory. If id is null, a new slot is created for this PL/SQL object. Subsequent JMS operations on the payload need to provide this operation ID.

It also sets the message access mode to MESSAGE_ACCESS_WRITEONLY. Later calls of read_XXX procedure raise ORA-24196 error. Users can call the reset or prepare procedures to set the message access mode to MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY. Write-only and read-only modes affect only the payload functions of AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE. They do not affect the header functions.

This function raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid, or ORA-24199 if the Java stored procedure message store overflows.

clean (id IN PLS_INTEGER)

Closes and cleans up the DataInputStream or DataOutputStream at the Java stored procedure side corresponding to the operation ID. It is very important to call this procedure to avoid memory leaks. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

clean_all

Closes and cleans up all the messages in the corresponding type of message store at the Java stored procedure side. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution.

get_mode (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER

Returns the current mode of this message. The return value is either SYS.dbms_jms.plsql.MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY or SYS.dbms_jms.plsql.MESSAGE_ACCESS_WRITEONLY. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN BOOLEAN

Reads a Boolean value from the bytes message and returns the Boolean value read. Null is returned if the end of the message stream has been reached. Parameter id is the operation ID. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER

Reads a BYTE value from the bytes message and returns the BYTE value read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Because there is no BYTE type in PL/SQL, Oracle Database uses PLS_INTEGER to represent a BYTE. Although PL/SQL users get a PLS_INTEGER, they are guaranteed that the value is in the Java BYTE value range. If this value is issued with a write_byte function, then there will not be an out of range error. Parameter id is the operation ID. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NO COPY BLOB, length IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER

Reads length of the bytes from bytes message stream into value and returns the total number of bytes read. If there is no more data (because the end of the stream has been reached), then it returns -1. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_char (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN CHAR
Reads a character value from the bytes message and returns the character value read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_double (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
Reads a double from the bytes message and returns the character value read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_float (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN FLOAT
Reads a float from the bytes message and returns the float read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_int (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN INT
Reads an `INT` from the bytes message and returns the `INT` read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_long (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN NUMBER
Reads a long from the bytes message and returns the long read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Reads a short value from the bytes message and returns the short value read. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Because there is no short type in PL/SQL, `PLS_INTEGER` is used to represent a `SHORT`. Although PL/SQL users get an `PLS_INTEGER`, they are guaranteed that the value is in the Java short value range. If this value is issued with a `write_short` function, then there will not be an out of range error. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_unsigned_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Reads an unsigned 8-bit number from the bytes message stream and returns the next byte from the bytes message stream, interpreted as an unsigned 8-bit number. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_unsigned_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Reads an unsigned 16-bit number from the bytes message stream and returns the next two bytes from the bytes message stream, interpreted as an unsigned 16-bit integer. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_utf (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY CLOB)
Reads a string that has been encoded using a UTF-8 format from the bytes message. Null is returned if the end of the stream has been reached. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BOOLEAN)
Writes a Boolean to the bytes message stream as a 1-byte value. The value `true` is written as the value (byte)1. The value `false` is written as the value (byte)0. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Writes a byte to the bytes message. Because there is no `BYTE` type in PL/SQL, `PLS_INTEGER` is used to represent a `BYTE`. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW)
Writes an array of bytes to the bytes message. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB)
Writes an array of bytes to the bytes message. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW, offset IN PLS_INTEGER, length IN PLS_INTEGER)
Writes a portion of a byte array to the bytes message stream. Parameter `offset` is the initial offset within the byte array. If the range [offset, offset+length] exceeds the boundary of the byte array value, then a Java IndexOutOfBounds exception is thrown in the Java stored procedure and this procedure raises error ORA-24197. The index starts from 0. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB, offset IN INT, length IN INT)
Writes a portion of a byte array to the bytes message stream. Parameter `offset` is the initial offset within the byte array. If the range [offset, offset+length] exceeds the boundary of the byte array value, then a Java IndexOutOfBounds exception is thrown in the Java stored procedure and this procedure raises error ORA-24197. The index starts from 0. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_char (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CHAR)
Writes a character value to the bytes message. If this value has multiple characters, it is the first character that is written. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_double (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Writes a double to the bytes message. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_float (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN FLOAT)
Writes a float to the bytes message. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_int (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Writes an `INT` to the bytes message. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_long (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN NUMBER)
Writes a long to the bytes message. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Writes a short to the bytes message as two bytes, high byte first. Because there is no short type in PL/SQL, `INT` is used to represent a short. Raises exception ORA-24193 if the parameter value exceeds the valid range, ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_utf (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN VARCHAR2)
Writes a string to the bytes message stream using UTF-8 encoding in a machine-independent manner. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_utf (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CLOB)
Writes a string to the bytes message stream using UTF-8 encoding in a machine-independent manner. Raises exception ORA-24196 if the bytes message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

SYS.AQ$_JMS_MAP_MESSAGE Type

This type is the ADT used to store a `MapMessage` in an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.

This section contains these topics:

Syntax

```
TYPE aq$_jms_map_message AS object(
 header     aq$_jms_header,
 bytes_len  int,
 bytes_raw  raw(2000),
 bytes_lob  blob,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct   RETURN aq$_jms_map_message,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_replyto  (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_type     (type    IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_replyto  RETURN sys.aq$_agent,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_type     RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_userid   (userid   IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_appid    (appid    IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupid  (groupid  IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_userid   RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_appid    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupid  RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupseq RETURN INT,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_properties,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_boolean_property(property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN BOOLEAN),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_byte_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_float_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN FLOAT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_int_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_long_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN NUMBER),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_short_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_valuE IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_byte_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_double_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR)
   RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_float_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_int_property     (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_long_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_short_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION get_string_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR,
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes   (payload IN RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes   (payload IN BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes   (payload OUT RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes   (payload OUT BLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION  prepare     (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE flush       (id  IN  PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_body  (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE clean       (id  IN  PLS_INTEGER),
STATIC PROCEDURE clean_all,
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN BOOLEAN),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_byte    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN RAW, offset IN INT, length IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN BLOB, offset IN INT, length IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_char    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  CHAR),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_double  (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  DOUBLE PRECISION),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_float   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  FLOAT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_int     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_long    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  NUMBER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_short   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string  (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string  (id IN  PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value IN  CLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION get_boolean  (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN BOOLEAN,
MEMBER FUNCTION  get_byte    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value OUT NOCOPY BLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION get_char     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN CHAR,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_double   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_float   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN FLOAT,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_int     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_long    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN NUMBER,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_short   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2,
  value OUT NOCOPY CLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION get_names   (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN aq$_jms_namearray,
MEMBER FUNCTION get_names   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, names OUT aq$_jms_namearray,
  offset IN  PLS_INTEGER, length IN  PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_object (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN  VARCHAR2,
```

```
  value  OUT NOCOPY AQ$_JMS_VALUE),
MEMBER FUNCTION get_size    (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION item_exists (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2)
  RETURN BOOLEAN);
```

CONSTRUCT Function

STATIC FUNCTION construct RETURN aq$_jms_map_message
Creates an empty `aq$_jms_map_message` object.

JMS Header Methods

set_replyto (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent)
Sets the `replyto` parameter, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo` in JMS.

set_type (type IN VARCHAR)
Sets the JMS type, which can be any text, and which corresponds to `JMSType` in JMS.

get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent
Returns `replyto`, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo`.

get_type RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `type`, which corresponds to `JMSType`.

System Properties Methods

set_userid (userid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID` in JMS.

set_appid (appid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID` in JMS.

set_groupid (groupid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID` in JMS.

set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT)
Sets `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq` in JMS.

get_userid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID`.

get_appid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID`.

get_groupid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID`.

get_groupseq RETURN NUMBER
Returns `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq`.

User Properties Methods

clear_properties
Clears all user properties. This procedure does not affect system properties.

set_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN BOOLEAN)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value in an internal representation. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether property_value is within -128 to 127 (8-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the BYTE datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN FLOAT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether property_value is within -2147483648 to 2147483647 (32-bits). This check is necessary because in PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the INT datatype is 38 bits. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN NUMBER)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. In PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the NUMBER datatype is 38 bits. In Java, the long datatype is 64 bits. Therefore, no range check is needed.Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether property_value is within -32768 to 32767 (16-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the short datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN VARCHAR)
Checks whether property_name is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores property_value. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a BOOLEAN property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a BYTE property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `DOUBLE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `FLOAT` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `Integer` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `long` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `short` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `STRING` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

Payload Methods

set_bytes (payload IN RAW)
Sets the internal payload as a RAW variable without any interpretation. The payload of `aq$_jms_map_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function sets a payload as a RAW variable without interpreting it.

set_bytes (payload IN BLOB)
Sets the internal payload as a BLOB variable without any interpretation. The payload of `aq$_jms_map_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function sets a payload as a BLOB variable without interpreting it.

get_bytes (payload OUT RAW)
Puts the internal payload into a `RAW` variable without any interpretation. The payload of `aq$_jms_map_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function gets a payload as raw bytes without interpreting it. Raises exceptions ORA-24190 if the length of internal payload is more than 32767.

get_bytes (payload OUT BLOB)
Puts the internal payload into a `BLOB` variable without any interpretation. The payload of `aq$_jms_map_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function gets a payload as a `BLOB` without interpreting it.

prepare (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Takes the byte array stored in `aq$_jms_map_message` and decodes it as a Java object in the Java stored procedure. The result of the decoding is stored as a static variable in Jserv session memory. Parameter `id` is used to identify the slot where the Java object is

stored in the Oracle Database JVM session memory. If `id` is null, then a new slot is created for this PL/SQL object. Subsequent JMS operations on the payload need to provide this operation ID.

This function raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid, or ORA-24199 if the Java stored procedure message store overflows.

flush (id IN PLS_INTEGER)

Takes the static variable in Jserv and synchronizes the content back to `aq$_jms_map_message`. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

clear_body (id IN PLS_INTEGER)

Sets the Java stored procedure static variable to empty payload. Parameter `id` is used to identify the slot where the Java object is stored in the Oracle Database JVM session memory. If `id` is null, a new slot is created for this PL/SQL object. Subsequent JMS operations on the payload need to provide this operation ID.

This function raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid, or ORA-24199 if the Java stored procedure message store overflows.

clean (id IN PLS_INTEGER)

Closes and cleans up the `DataInputStream` or `DataOutputStream` at the Java stored procedure side corresponding to the operation ID. It is very important to call this procedure to avoid memory leaks. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

clean_all

Closes and cleans up all the messages in the corresponding type of message store at the Java stored procedure side. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution.

set_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN BOOLEAN)

Sets the Boolean value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN PLS_INTEGER)

Sets the `BYTE` value with the specified name in the map. Because there is no `BYTE` type in PL/SQL, `PLS_INTEGER` is used to represent a byte. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN RAW))

Sets the byte array value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN RAW, offset IN INT, length IN INT)

Sets a portion of the byte array value with the specified name in the map. Parameter `offset` is the initial offset within the byte array, and parameter `length` is the number of bytes to use. If the range [offset … offset+length] exceeds the boundary of the byte array value, then a Java `IndexOutOfBounds` exception is thrown in the Java stored procedure and this procedure raises an ORA-24197 error. The index starts from 0.

Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN BLOB)
Sets the byte array value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN BLOB, offset IN INT, length IN INT)
Sets a portion of the byte array value with the specified name in the map. Parameter `offset` is the initial offset within the byte array, and parameter `length` is the number of bytes to use. If the range [offset … offset+length] exceeds the boundary of the byte array value, then a Java `IndexOutOfBounds` exception is thrown in the Java stored procedure, and this procedure raises an ORA-24197 error. The index starts from 0. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_char (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN CHAR)
Sets the character value with the specified name in the map. If this value has multiple characters, then it is the first character that is used. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_double (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Sets the double value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_float (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN FLOAT)
This procedure is to set the float value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_int (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Sets the int value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_long (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN NUMBER)
Sets the long value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Sets the short value with the specified name in the map. Because there is no short type in PL/SQL, `PLS_INTEGER` is used to represent a short. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN VARCHAR2)
Sets the string value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

set_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value IN CLOB))
Sets the string value with the specified name in the map. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN BOOLEAN
Retrieves the Boolean value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Retrieves the `BYTE` value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Because there is no `BYTE` type in PL/SQL, `PLS_INTEGER` is used to represent a byte. Although the PL/SQL users get an `PLS_INTEGER`, they are guaranteed that the value is in the Java `BYTE` value range. If this value is issued with a `set_byte` function, then there will not be an out of range error. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value OUT NOCOPY BLOB)
Retrieves the byte array value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Because the size of the array might be larger than the limit of PL/SQL `RAW` type, a `BLOB` is always returned here. The `BLOB` returned is a copy, which means it can be modified without affecting the message payload. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_char (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN CHAR
Retrieves and returns the character value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid.

get_double (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
Retrieves and returns the double value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid.

get_float (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN FLOAT
Retrieves the float value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_int (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Retrieves the `INT` value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_long (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN NUMBER
Retrieves the long value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type

of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Retrieves the short value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Because there is no `short` type in PL/SQL, `INT` is used to represent a `short`. Although the PL/SQL users get an `PLS_INTEGER`, they are guaranteed that the value is in the Java short value range. If this value is issued with a `set_short` function, then there will not be an out of range error. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value OUT NOCOPY CLOB)
Retrieves the string value with the specified name. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_names (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN aq$_jms_namearray
Retrieves all the names within the map message and returns them in a varray. Because `aq$_jms_namearray` has a size as 1024 and each element is a `VARCHAR(200)`, this function will return an error if the size of the name array of the payload exceeds the limit. Raises exception ORA-24195 if the size of the name array or the size of a name exceeds the limit.

get_names (id IN PLS_INTEGER, names OUT aq$_jms_namearray, offset IN PLS_INTEGER, length IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Retrieves a portion of the names within the map message. Because `aq$_jms_namearray` has a size as 1024 and each element is a `VARCHAR(200)`, this function will return an error if either limits are exceeded during the retrieval. (This means there is no sense to put a `length` parameter greater than 1024.) The index of the names of a map messages begins from 0. Parameter `offset` is the offset from which to start retrieving.

The function returns the number of names that have been retrieved. The names retrieved is the intersection of the interval [offset, offset+length-1] and interval [0, size-1] where size is the size of this map message. If the intersection is an empty set, then names will be returned as null and the function returns 0 as the number of names retrieved. If users iterate the names by retrieving in small steps, then this can be used to test that there are no more names to read from map message.

Raises exception ORA-24195 if the size of the name array or the size of a name exceed the limit, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_object (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2, value OUT NOCOPY AQ$_JMS_VALUE)
Returns a general value ADT `AQ$_JMS_VALUE`. If there is no item by this name, then null is returned.Users can use the `type` attribute of this ADT to interpret the data. See the map in the `AQ$_JMS_VALUE` ADT for the correspondence among `dbms_jms_plsql` package constants, Java datatype and `AQ$_JMS_VALUE` attribute. Note this member procedure might bring additional overhead compared to other `get` member procedures or functions. It is used only if the user does not know the datatype of the fields within a message before hand. Otherwise it is a good idea to use a specific `get` member procedure or function. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored

procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

get_size (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Retrieves the size of the map message. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

item_exists (id IN PLS_INTEGER, name IN VARCHAR2) RETURN BOOLEAN
Indicates that an item exists in this map message by returning `TRUE`. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

SYS.AQ$_JMS_STREAM_MESSAGE Type

This type is the ADT used to store a `StreamMessage` in an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.

This section contains these topics:

- CONSTRUCT Function
- JMS Header Methods
- System Properties Methods
- User Properties Methods
- Payload Methods

Syntax

```
TYPE aq$_jms_stream_message AS object(
 header     aq$_jms_header,
 bytes_len  int,
 bytes_raw  raw(2000),
 bytes_lob  blob,
 STATIC FUNCTION  construct RETURN aq$_jms_stream_message,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_replyto  (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_type     (type    IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_replyto  RETURN sys.aq$_agent,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_type     RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_userid   (userid   IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_appid    (appid    IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupid  (groupid  IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_userid   RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_appid    RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupid  RETURN VARCHAR,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_groupseq RETURN INT,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_properties,
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_boolean_property(property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN BOOLEAN),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_byte_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_float_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN FLOAT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_int_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_long_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN NUMBER),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_short_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_valuE IN INT),
 MEMBER PROCEDURE set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR,
   property_value IN VARCHAR),
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_byte_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_double_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR)
   RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_float_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_int_property     (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_long_property    (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER,
 MEMBER FUNCTION get_short_property   (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT,
```

```
MEMBER FUNCTION get_string_property  (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR,
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes           (payload IN RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE set_bytes           (payload IN BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes           (payload OUT RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE get_bytes           (payload OUT BLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION  prepare             (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER PROCEDURE reset               (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE flush               (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE clear_body          (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE clean               (id IN PLS_INTEGER),
STATIC PROCEDURE clean_all,
MEMBER FUNCTION  get_mode       (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_boolean   (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN BOOLEAN,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_byte      (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_bytes     (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN BLOB,
MEMBER PROCEDURE read_bytes     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY BLOB),
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_char      (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN CHAR,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_double    (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_float     (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN FLOAT,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_int       (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_long      (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN NUMBER,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_short     (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION  read_string RETURN CLOB,
MEMBER PROCEDURE read_string    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY CLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE read_object    (id IN PLS_INTEGER,
  value OUT NOCOPY AQ$_JMS_VALUE),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_boolean  (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BOOLEAN),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_byte     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW,
  offset IN INT, length IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_bytes    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB,
  offset IN INT, length IN INT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_char     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CHAR),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_double   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN DOUBLE PRECISION),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_float    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN FLOAT),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_int      (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_long     (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN NUMBER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_short    (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_string   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN VARCHAR2),
MEMBER PROCEDURE write_string   (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CLOB));
```

CONSTRUCT Function

STATIC FUNCTION construct RETURN aq$_jms_stream_message
Creates an empty `aq$_jms_stream_message` object.

JMS Header Methods

set_replyto (replyto IN sys.aq$_agent)
Sets the `replyto` parameter, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo` in JMS.

set_type (type IN VARCHAR)
Sets the JMS type, which can be any text, and which corresponds to `JMSType` in JMS.

get_replyto RETURN sys.aq$_agent
Returns `replyto`, which corresponds to `JMSReplyTo`.

get_type RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `type`, which corresponds to `JMSType`.

System Properties Methods

set_userid (userid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID` in JMS.

set_appid (appid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID` in JMS.

set_groupid (groupid IN VARCHAR)
Sets `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID` in JMS.

set_groupseq (groupseq IN INT)
Sets `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq` in JMS.

get_userid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `userid`, which corresponds to `JMSXUserID`.

get_appid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `appid`, which corresponds to `JMSXAppID`.

get_groupid RETURN VARCHAR
Returns `groupid`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupID`.

get_groupseq RETURN NUMBER
Returns `groupseq`, which corresponds to `JMSXGroupSeq`.

User Properties Methods

clear_properties
Clears all user properties. This procedure does not affect system properties.

set_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN BOOLEAN)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value` in an internal representation. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -128 to 127 (8-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the `BYTE` datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN FLOAT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -2147483648 to 2147483647 (32-bits). This check is necessary because in PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the `INT` datatype is 38 bits. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN NUMBER)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. In PL/SQL and Oracle Database, the `NUMBER` datatype is 38 bits. In Java, the `long` datatype is 64 bits. Therefore, no range check is needed.Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

set_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN INT)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure checks whether `property_value` is within -32768 to 32767 (16-bits). This check is necessary because neither PL/SQL nor RDBMS defines the `short` datatype. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists, ORA-24192 if the property name is null, or ORA-24193 if the property value exceeds the valid range.

set_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR, property_value IN VARCHAR)
Checks whether `property_name` is null or exists. If not, the procedure stores `property_value`. Raises exception ORA-24191 if the property name exists or ORA-24192 if the property name is null.

get_boolean_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN BOOLEAN
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `BOOLEAN` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_byte_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `BYTE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_double_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `DOUBLE` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_float_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN FLOAT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `FLOAT` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_int_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `Integer` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_long_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN NUMBER
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `long` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_short_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN INT
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `short` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

get_string_property (property_name IN VARCHAR) RETURN VARCHAR
If the property with the corresponding property name passed in exists, and if it is a `STRING` property, then this function returns the value of the property. Otherwise it returns a null.

Payload Methods

get_bytes (payload OUT RAW)
Puts the internal payload into a RAW variable without any interpretation. The payload of type `aq$_jms_stream_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function gets a payload as raw bytes without interpreting it. Raises exception ORA-24190 if the length of internal payload is more than 32767.

get_bytes (payload OUT BLOB)
Puts the internal payload into a BLOB variable without any interpretation. The payload of type `aq$_jms_stream_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function gets a payload as a `BLOB` variable without interpreting it.

set_bytes (payload IN RAW)
Sets the internal payload as the RAW variable without any interpretation. The payload of type `aq$_jms_stream_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function sets a payload as raw bytes without interpreting it.

set_bytes (payload IN BLOB)
Sets the internal payload as the `BLOB` variable without any interpretation. The payload of type `aq$_jms_stream_message` is stored as either `RAW` or `BLOB` in the database. This member function sets a payload as a `BLOB` variable without interpreting it.

prepare (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Takes the byte array stored in `aq$_jms_stream_message` and decodes it as a Java object in the Java stored procedure. The result of the decoding is stored as a static variable in Jserv session memory. Parameter `id` is used to identify the slot where the Java object is stored in the Oracle Database JVM session memory. If `id` is null, then a new slot is created for this PL/SQL object. Subsequent JMS operations on the payload need to provide this operation ID.

This function also sets the message access mode to `MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY`. Subsequent calls of `write_XXX` procedure raise an ORA-24196 error. Users can call the `clear_body` procedure to set the message access mode to `MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY`.

This function raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid, or ORA-24199 if the Java stored procedure message store overflows.

reset (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Resets the starting position of the stream to the beginning and puts the stream message in `MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY` mode.

flush (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Takes the static variable in Jserv and synchronizes the content back to `aq$_jms_stream_message`. This procedure will not affect the underlying access mode. This

procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

clear_body (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Sets the Java stored procedure static variable to empty payload. Parameter `id` is used to identify the slot where the Java object is stored in the Oracle Database JVM session memory. If `id` is null, a new slot is created for this PL/SQL object. Subsequent JMS operations on the payload need to provide this operation ID.

It also sets the message access mode to `MESSAGE_ACCESS_WRITEONLY`. Later calls of `read_XXX` procedure raise ORA-24196 error. Users can call the `reset` or `prepare` procedures to set the message access mode to `MESSAGE_ACCESS_READONLY`. Write-only and read-only modes affect only the payload functions of `AQ$_JMS_BYTES_MESSAGE`. They do not affect the header functions.

This function raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid, or ORA-24199 if the Java stored procedure message store overflows.

clean (id IN PLS_INTEGER)
Closes and cleans up the `DataInputStream` or `DataOutputStream` at the Java stored procedure side corresponding to the operation ID. It is very important to call this procedure to avoid memory leaks. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

clean_all
Closes and cleans up all the messages in the corresponding type of message store at the Java stored procedure side. This procedure raises ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution.

get_mode (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Returns the current mode of this message. The return value is either `SYS.dbms_aqjms.READ_ONLY` or SYS.`dbms_aqjms.WRITE_ONLY`. Raises exception ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN BOOLEAN
Reads and returns a Boolean value from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Reads and returns a byte value from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Because there is no `BYTE` type in PL/SQL, `INT` is used to represent a byte. Although PL/SQL users get an `INT`, they are guaranteed that the value is in the Java `BYTE` value range. If this value is issued with a `write_byte` function, then there will not be an out of range error. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN BLOB
Reads and returns a byte array from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid or ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode.

read_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY BLOB)
Reads a byte array from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_char (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN CHAR
Reads and returns a character value from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_double (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN DOUBLE PRECISION
Reads and returns a double from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_float (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN FLOAT
Reads and returns a float from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_int (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Reads and returns an `INT` from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_long (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN NUMBER
Reads and returns a long from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER
Reads and returns a short value from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Because there is no short type in PL/SQL, `PLS_INTEGER` is used to represent a `SHORT`. Although PL/SQL users get an `INT`, they are guaranteed that the value is in the Java short value range. If this value is issued with a `write_short` function, then there will not be an out of range error. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the

expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_string RETURN CLOB
Reads and returns a string from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid or ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode.

read_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY CLOB)
Reads a string from the stream message. If the end of the message stream has been reached, then null is returned. Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

read_object (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value OUT NOCOPY AQ$_JMS_VALUE)
Returns a general value ADT `AQ$_JMS_VALUE`. Users can use the type attribute of this ADT to interpret the data. See Table 274–2 on page 274-58 for the correspondence among `dbms_jms_plsql` package constants, Java datatype and `AQ$_JMS_VALUE` attribute. This member procedure might bring additional overhead compared to other read member procedures or functions. It is used only if the user does not know the datatype of the fields within a message beforehand. Otherwise it is a good idea to use a specific read member procedure or function.

Raises exception ORA-24194 if the type conversion between the type of real value and the expected type is invalid, ORA-24196 if the stream message is in write-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_boolean (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BOOLEAN)
Writes a Boolean to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_byte (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN INT)
Writes a byte to the stream message. Because there is no `BYTE` type in PL/SQL, `INT` is used to represent a byte. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW)
Writes a byte array field to the stream message. Consecutively written byte array fields are treated as two distinct fields when the fields are read. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN RAW, offset IN INT, length IN INT)
Writes a portion of a byte array as a byte array field to the stream message. Consecutively written byte array fields are treated as two distinct fields when the fields are read. Parameter `offset` is the initial offset within the byte array, and parameter `length` is the number of bytes to use. If the range [offset, offset+length] exceeds the boundary of the byte array value, then a Java `IndexOutOfBounds` exception is thrown in the Java stored procedure. The index starts from 0.

Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB)
Writes a byte array field to the stream message. Consecutively written byte array fields are treated as two distinct fields when the fields are read. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_bytes (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN BLOB, offset IN INT, length IN INT)
Writes a portion of a byte array as a byte array field to the stream message. Consecutively written byte array fields are treated as two distinct fields when the fields are read. Parameter `offset` is the initial offset within the byte array, and parameter `length` is the number of bytes to use. If the range [offset, offset+length] exceeds the boundary of the byte array value, then a Java `IndexOutOfBounds` exception is thrown in the Java stored procedure. The index starts from 0.

Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_char (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CHAR)
Writes a character value to the stream message. If this value has multiple characters, then it is the first character that is written. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_double (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN DOUBLE PRECISION)
Writes a double to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_float (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN FLOAT)
Writes a float to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_int (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Writes an `INT` to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_long (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN NUMBER)
Writes a long to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_short (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN PLS_INTEGER)
Writes a short to the stream message. Because there is no short type in PL/SQL, `INT` is used to represent a short. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN VARCHAR2)
Writes a string to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

write_string (id IN PLS_INTEGER, value IN CLOB)
Writes a string to the stream message. Raises exceptions ORA-24196 if the stream message is in read-only mode, ORA-24197 if the Java stored procedure throws an exception during execution, or ORA-24198 if the operation ID is invalid.

SYS.AQ$_JMS_OBJECT_MESSAGE Type

This type is the ADT used to store an `ObjectMessage` in an Oracle Database Advanced Queuing queue.

Syntax

```
TYPE aq$_jms_object_message AS object(
  header     aq$_jms_header,
  bytes_len  int,
  bytes_raw  raw(2000),
  bytes_lob  blob);
```

SYS.AQ$_JMS_NAMEARRAY Type

This type represents the name array returned by the `get_names` procedure of `aq$_jms_map_message`. The maximum number of names this type can hold is 1024. The maximum length of each name is 200 characters.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE AQ$_JMS_NAMEARRAY AS VARRAY(1024) OF VARCHAR(100);
```

Usage Notes

If the names array in the message payload is greater than 1024, then use the following function to retrieve the names in multiple portions:

```
MEMBER FUNCTION get_names(id IN PLS_INTEGER, names OUT aq$_jms_namearray,
   offset IN PLS_INTEGER, length IN PLS_INTEGER) RETURN PLS_INTEGER;
```

SYS.AQ$_JMS_VALUE Type

This type represents the general data returned by the `get_object` procedure of `aq$_jms_map_message` and the `read_object` procedure of `aq$_jms_stream_message`. The `type` field in this ADT is used to decide which type of data this object is really holding. Table 274–2 lists the mapping between the `sys.dbms_jms_plsql` type constants, the corresponding Java type, and the data field of ADT `aq$_jms_value` which effectively holds the data.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE AQ$_JMS_VALUE AS object(
 type      number(2),
 num_val   number,
 char_val  char(1),
 text_val  clob,
 bytes_val blob);
```

Table 274–2 AQ$_JMS_VALUE Type Fields and Java Fields

Type	Java Type	aq$_jms_value Data Field
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_BYTE`	byte	num_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_SHORT`	short	num_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_INTEGER`	int	num_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_LONG`	long	num_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_FLOAT`	float	num_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_DOUBLE`	double	num_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_BOOLEAN`	boolean	num_val: 0 FALSE, 1 TRUE
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_CHARACTER`	char	char_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_STRING`	java.lang.String	text_val
`DBMS_JMS_PLSQL.DATA_TYPE_BYTES`	byte[]	bytes_val

SYS.AQ$_JMS_EXCEPTION Type

This type represents a Java exception thrown on the Java stored procedure side. The `id` field is reserved for future use. The `exp_name` stores the Java exception name, the `err_msg` field stores the Java exception error message, and the `stack` field stores the stack trace of the Java exception.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE AQ$_JMS_EXCEPTION AS OBJECT (
   id          number, -- Reserved and not used. Right now always return 0.
   exp_name    varchar(200),
   err_msg     varchar(500),
   stack       varchar(4000));
```

275

Logical Change Record TYPEs

This chapter describes the logical change record (LCR) types.

This chapter contains these topics:

Using Logical Change Record Types

This section contains topics that relate to using the logical change record (LCR) types.

Overview

In Oracle Streams, logical change records (LCRs) are message payloads that contain information about changes to a database. These changes can include changes to the data, which are data manipulation language (DML) changes, and changes to database objects, which are data definition language (DDL) changes.

When you use Oracle Streams, the capture process captures changes in the form of LCRs and enqueues them into a queue. These LCRs can be propagated from a queue in one database to a queue in another database. Finally, the apply process can apply LCRs at a destination database. You also have the option of creating, enqueuing, and dequeuing LCRs manually.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for more information about LCRs

Security Model

PUBLIC is granted EXECUTE privilege on the types described in this chapter.

Summary of Logical Change Record Types

Table 275–1 Logical Change Record (LCR) Types

Type	Description
LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type on page 275-6	Represents a data definition language (DDL) change to a database object
LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type on page 275-15	Represents a data manipulation language (DML) change to a database object
LCR$_ROW_LIST Type on page 275-47	Identifies a list of column values for a row in a table
LCR$_ROW_UNIT Type on page 275-48	Identifies the value for a column in a row

These logical change record (LCR) types can be used with the following Oracle-supplied PL/SQL packages:

- DBMS_APPLY_ADM
- DBMS_AQ
- DBMS_AQADM
- DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM
- DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM
- DBMS_RULE
- DBMS_RULE_ADM
- DBMS_STREAMS
- DBMS_STREAMS_ADM
- DBMS_TRANSFORM

LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type

This type represents a data definition language (DDL) change to a database object.

If you create or modify a DDL logical change record (DDL LCR), then make sure the `ddl_text` is consistent with the `base_table_name`, `base_table_owner`, `object_type`, `object_owner`, `object_name`, and `command_type` attributes.

This section contains information about the constructor for row LCRs and information about the member subprograms for this type:

- LCR$_DDL_RECORD Constructor
- Summary of LCR$_DDL_RECORD Subprograms, which also include the subprograms described in "Common Subprograms for LCR$_DDL_RECORD and LCR$_ROW_RECORD" on page 275-36

Note:

- When passing a name as a parameter to an LCR constructor, you can enclose the name in double quotes to handle names that use mixed case or lower case for database objects. For example, if a name contains any lower case characters, then you must enclose it in double quotes.
- The application does not need to specify a transaction identifier or SCN when it creates an LCR because the apply process generates these values and stores them in memory. If a transaction identifier or SCN is specified in the LCR, then the apply process ignores it and assigns a new value.

LCR$_DDL_RECORD Constructor

Creates a `SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD` object with the specified information.

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT(
   source_database_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   command_type          IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_owner          IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_type           IN  VARCHAR2,
   ddl_text              IN  CLOB,
   logon_user            IN  VARCHAR2,
   current_schema        IN  VARCHAR2,
   base_table_owner      IN  VARCHAR2,
   base_table_name       IN  VARCHAR2,
   tag                   IN  RAW       DEFAULT NULL,
   transaction_id        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   scn                   IN  NUMBER    DEFAULT NULL,
   position              IN  RAW       DEFAULT NULL,
   edition_name          IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL,
   root_name             IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD;
```

LCR$_DDL_RECORD Constructor Function Parameters

Table 275–2 Constructor Function Parameters for LCR$_DDL_RECORD

Parameter	Description
source_database_name	The database where the DDL statement occurred If the LCRs originated in a multitenant container database (CDB), then this field specifies the global name of the container where the DDL change occurred. If you do not include the domain name, then the function appends the local domain to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the local domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the function specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.
command_type	The type of command executed in the DDL statement Set this parameter to a non-NULL value. **See Also:** The "SQL Command Codes" table in the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for a complete list of command types The following command types *are not supported* in DDL LCRs: ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG ALTER SUMMARY CREATE SCHEMA CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG CREATE SUMMARY DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW LOG DROP SUMMARY RENAME The snapshot equivalents of the materialized view command types are also not supported.
object_owner	The user who owns the object on which the DDL statement was executed
object_name	The database object on which the DDL statement was executed

Table 275–2 (Cont.) Constructor Function Parameters for LCR$_DDL_RECORD

Parameter	Description
object_type	The type of object on which the DDL statement was executed The following are valid object types: CLUSTER FUNCTION INDEX LINK OUTLINE PACKAGE PACKAGE BODY PROCEDURE SEQUENCE SYNONYM TABLE TRIGGER TYPE USER VIEW LINK represents a database link. NULL is also a valid object type. Specify NULL for all object types not listed. The GET_OBJECT_TYPE member procedure returns NULL for object types not listed.
ddl_text	The text of the DDL statement Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.
logon_user	The user whose session executed the DDL statement
current_schema	The schema that is used if no schema is specified explicitly for the modified database objects in ddl_text If a schema is specified in ddl_text that differs from the one specified for current_schema, then the function uses the schema specified in ddl_text. Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.
base_table_owner	If the DDL statement is a table-related DDL (such as CREATE TABLE and ALTER TABLE), or if the DDL statement involves a table (such as creating a trigger on a table), then base_table_owner specifies the owner of the table involved. Otherwise, base_table_owner is NULL.
base_table_name	If the DDL statement is a table-related DDL (such as CREATE TABLE and ALTER TABLE), or if the DDL statement involves a table (such as creating a trigger on a table), then base_table_name specifies the name of the table involved. Otherwise, base_table_name is NULL.
tag	A binary tag that enables tracking of the LCR For example, this tag can be used to determine the original source database of the DDL statement if apply forwarding is used. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*
transaction_id	The identifier of the transaction
scn	The SCN at the time when the change record for a captured LCR was written to the redo log The SCN value is meaningless for a user-created LCR.

Table 275–2 (Cont.) Constructor Function Parameters for LCR$_DDL_RECORD

Parameter	Description
position	The position of the LCR LCR position is commonly used in XStream configurations. Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
edition_name	The name of the edition in which the DDL statement was executed
root_name	If the LCRs is associated with a CDB, then this field specifies the global name of the root in the CDB. If the LCR is associated with a non-CDB, then this field is NULL.

Summary of LCR$_DDL_RECORD Subprograms

Table 275–3 LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
EXECUTE Member Procedure on page 275-10	Executes the LCR under the security domain of the current user
GET_BASE_TABLE_NAME Member Function on page 275-10	Gets the base (dependent) table name
GET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER Member Function on page 275-10	Gets the base (dependent) table owner
GET_CURRENT_SCHEMA Member Function on page 275-10	Gets the default schema (user) name
GET_DDL_TEXT Member Procedure on page 275-10	Gets the DDL text in a CLOB
GET_EDITION_NAME Member Function on page 275-11	Gets the name of the edition in which the DDL statement was executed
GET_LOGON_USER Member Function on page 275-11	Gets the logon user name
GET_OBJECT_TYPE Member Function on page 275-11	Gets the type of the object involved for the DDL
SET_BASE_TABLE_NAME Member Procedure on page 275-12	Sets the base (dependent) table name
SET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER Member Procedure on page 275-12	Sets the base (dependent) table owner
SET_CURRENT_SCHEMA Member Procedure on page 275-12	Sets the default schema (user) name
SET_DDL_TEXT Member Procedure on page 275-12	Sets the DDL text
SET_EDITION_NAME Member Procedure on page 275-13	Sets the name of the edition in which the DDL statement was executed
SET_LOGON_USER Member Procedure on page 275-13	Sets the logon user name
SET_OBJECT_TYPE Member Procedure on page 275-13	Sets the object type

Table 275–3 (Cont.) LCR$_DDL_RECORD Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
Common Subprograms	See "Common Subprograms for LCR$_DDL_RECORD and LCR$_ROW_RECORD" on page 275-36 for a list of subprograms common to the SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD and SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD types

EXECUTE Member Procedure

Executes the DDL LCR under the security domain of the current user. Apply handlers are not run when the LCR is applied using this procedure.

Note: The EXECUTE member procedure can be invoked only in an apply handler for an Oracle Streams apply process.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE EXECUTE;
```

GET_BASE_TABLE_NAME Member Function

Gets the base (dependent) table name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_BASE_TABLE_NAME()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER Member Function

Gets the base (dependent) table owner.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_CURRENT_SCHEMA Member Function

Gets the current schema name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_CURRENT_SCHEMA()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_DDL_TEXT Member Procedure

Gets the DDL text in a CLOB.

For example, the following PL/SQL code uses this procedure to get the DDL text in a DDL LCR:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE ddl_in_lcr (ddl_lcr in SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD)
IS
  ddl_text   CLOB;
```

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( '  ----------------------------------------' );
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( '  Displaying DDL text in a DDL LCR: ' );
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( '  ----------------------------------------' );
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(ddl_text, true);
  ddl_lcr.GET_DDL_TEXT(ddl_text);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('DDL text:' || ddl_text);
  DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(ddl_text);
END;
/
```

Note: `GET_DDL_TEXT` is a member procedure and not a member function to make it easier for you to manage the space used by the `CLOB`. Notice that the previous example creates temporary space for the `CLOB` and then frees the temporary space when it is no longer needed.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_DDL_TEXT(
  ddl_text  IN/OUT  CLOB);
```

Parameter

Table 275–4 GET_DDL_TEXT Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`ddl_text`	The DDL text in the DDL LCR

GET_EDITION_NAME Member Function

Gets the name of the edition in which the DDL statement was executed.

See Also: *Oracle Database Development Guide*

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_EDITION_NAME()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_LOGON_USER Member Function

Gets the logon user name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_LOGON_USER()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_OBJECT_TYPE Member Function

Gets the type of the object involved for the DDL.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_OBJECT_TYPE()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SET_BASE_TABLE_NAME Member Procedure

Sets the base (dependent) table name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_BASE_TABLE_NAME(
   base_table_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–5 SET_BASE_TABLE_NAME Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
base_table_name	The name of the base table

SET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER Member Procedure

Sets the base (dependent) table owner.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER(
   base_table_owner  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–6 SET_BASE_TABLE_OWNER Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
base_table_owner	The name of the base table owner

SET_CURRENT_SCHEMA Member Procedure

Sets the default schema (user) name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_CURRENT_SCHEMA(
   current_schema  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–7 SET_CURRENT_SCHEMA Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
current_schema	The name of the schema to set as the current schema Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.

SET_DDL_TEXT Member Procedure

Sets the DDL text.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_DDL_TEXT(
   ddl_text  IN  CLOB);
```

Parameter

Table 275–8 SET_DDL_TEXT Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
ddl_text	The DDL text Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.

SET_EDITION_NAME Member Procedure

Sets the name of the edition in which the DDL statement was executed.

See Also: *Oracle Database Development Guide*

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_EDITION_NAME(
   edition_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–9 SET_EDITION_NAME Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
edition_name	Name of the edition

SET_LOGON_USER Member Procedure

Sets the logon user name.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_LOGON_USER(
   logon_user  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–10 SET_LOGON_USER Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
logon_user	The name of the schema to set as the logon user

SET_OBJECT_TYPE Member Procedure

Sets the object type.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_OBJECT_TYPE(
   object_type  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–11 SET_OBJECT_TYPE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
object_type	The object type The following are valid object types: CLUSTER FUNCTION INDEX LINK OUTLINE PACKAGE PACKAGE BODY PROCEDURE SEQUENCE SYNONYM TABLE TRIGGER TYPE USER VIEW LINK represents a database link. NULL is also a valid object type. Specify NULL for all object types not listed. The GET_OBJECT_TYPE member procedure returns NULL for object types not listed.

LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type

This type represents a data manipulation language (DML) change to a row in a table. This type uses the `LCR$_ROW_LIST` type.

If you create or modify a row logical change record (row LCR), then make sure the `command_type` attribute is consistent with the presence or absence of old column values and the presence or absence of new column values.

This section contains information about the constructor for DDL LCRs and information about the member subprograms for this type:

- LCR$_ROW_RECORD Constructor
- Summary of LCR$_ROW_RECORD Subprograms, which also include the subprograms described in Common Subprograms for LCR$_DDL_RECORD and LCR$_ROW_RECORD on page 275-36

Note:

- When passing a name as a parameter to an LCR constructor, you can enclose the name in double quotes to handle names that use mixed case or lower case for database objects. For example, if a name contains any lower case characters, then you must enclose it in double quotes.
- The application does not need to specify a transaction identifier or SCN when it creates an LCR because the apply process generates these values and stores them in memory. If a transaction identifier or SCN is specified in the LCR, then the apply process ignores it and assigns a new value.

See Also: LCR$_ROW_LIST Type on page 275-47

LCR$_ROW_RECORD Constructor

Creates a `SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD` object with the specified information.

```
STATIC FUNCTION CONSTRUCT(
   source_database_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   command_type          IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_owner          IN  VARCHAR2,
   object_name           IN  VARCHAR2,
   tag                   IN  RAW                DEFAULT NULL,
   transaction_id        IN  VARCHAR2           DEFAULT NULL,
   scn                   IN  NUMBER             DEFAULT NULL,
   old_values            IN  SYS.LCR$_ROW_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
   new_values            IN  SYS.LCR$_ROW_LIST  DEFAULT NULL,
   position              IN  RAW                DEFAULT NULL,
   root_name             IN  VARCHAR2           DEFAULT NULL)
RETURN SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD;
```

LCR$_ROW_RECORD Constructor Function Parameters

Table 275–12 Constructor Function Parameters for LCR$_ROW_RECORD

Parameter	Description
source_database_name	The database where the row change occurred If the LCRs originated in a CDB, then this field specifies the global name of the container where the row change occurred. If you do not include the domain name, then the function appends the local domain to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the local domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the function specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.
command_type	The type of command executed in the DML statement Set this parameter to a non-NULL value. Valid values are the following: INSERT UPDATE DELETE LOB ERASE LOB WRITE LOB TRIM If INSERT, then ensure that the LCR has a new_values collection that is not empty and an empty or NULL old_values collection. If UPDATE, then ensure that the LCR has a new_values collection that is not empty and an old_values collection that is not empty. If DELETE, then ensure that the LCR has a NULL or empty new_values collection and an old_values collection that is not empty. If LOB ERASE, LOB WRITE, or LOB TRIM, then ensure that the LCR has a new_values collection that is not empty and an empty or NULL old_values collection.
object_owner	The user who owns the table on which the row change occurred Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.
object_name	The table on which the DML statement was executed Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.
tag	A binary tag that enables tracking of the LCR For example, this tag can be used to determine the original source database of the DML change when apply forwarding is used. **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*
transaction_id	The identifier of the transaction
scn	The SCN at the time when the change record was written to the redo log The SCN value is meaningless for a user-created LCR.
old_values	The column values for the row before the DML change If the DML statement is an UPDATE or a DELETE statement, then this parameter contains the values of columns in the row before the DML statement. If the DML statement is an INSERT statement, then there are no old values.

Table 275–12 (Cont.) Constructor Function Parameters for LCR$_ROW_RECORD

Parameter	Description
new_values	The column values for the row after the DML change If the DML statement is an UPDATE or an INSERT statement, then this parameter contains the values of columns in the row after the DML statement. If the DML statement is a DELETE statement, then there are no new values. If the LCR reflects a LOB operation, then this parameter contains the supplementally logged columns and any relevant LOB information.
position	The position of the LCR LCR position is commonly used in XStream configurations. Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. **See Also:** *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
root_name	If the LCRs is associated with a CDB, then this field specifies the global name of the root in the CDB. If the LCR is associated with a non-CDB, then this field is NULL.

Summary of LCR$_ROW_RECORD Subprograms

Table 275–13 LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
ADD_COLUMN Member Procedure on page 275-18	Adds the value as old or new, depending on the value type specified, for the column
CONVERT_LONG_TO_LOB_CHUNK Member Procedure on page 275-19	Converts LONG data in a row LCR into fixed width CLOB, or converts LONG RAW data in a row LCR into a BLOB
DELETE_COLUMN Member Procedure on page 275-20	Deletes the old value, the new value, or both, for the specified column, depending on the value type specified
EXECUTE Member Procedure on page 275-20	Executes the LCR under the security domain of the current user
GET_LOB_INFORMATION Member Function on page 275-21	Gets the LOB information for the column
GET_LOB_OFFSET Member Function on page 275-22	Gets the LOB offset for the specified column
GET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE Member Function on page 275-23	Gets the operation size for the LOB column
GET_LONG_INFORMATION Member Function on page 275-23	Gets the LONG information for the column
GET_ROW_TEXT Member Procedure on page 275-24	Gets the SQL statement for the change that is encapsulated in the LCR
GET_VALUE Member Function on page 275-25	Gets the old or new value for the specified column, depending on the value type specified
GET_VALUES Member Function on page 275-25	Gets a list of old or new values, depending on the value type specified
GET_WHERE_CLAUSE Member Procedure on page 275-26	Gets a WHERE clause for the change that is encapsulated in the row LCR

Table 275–13 (Cont.) LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
GET_XML_INFORMATION Member Function on page 275-28	Gets the XML information for the specified column
KEEP_COLUMNS Member Procedure on page 275-28	Keeps a list of columns a row LCR
RENAME_COLUMN Member Procedure on page 275-29	Renames a column in an LCR
SET_LOB_INFORMATION Member Procedure on page 275-29	Sets LOB information for the column
SET_LOB_OFFSET Member Procedure on page 275-30	Sets the LOB offset for the specified column
SET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE Member Procedure on page 275-30	Sets the operation size for the LOB column
SET_VALUE Member Procedure on page 275-31	Overwrites the value of the specified column
SET_VALUES Member Procedure on page 275-33	Replaces the existing old or new values for the LCR, depending on the value type specified
SET_XML_INFORMATION Member Procedure on page 275-35	Sets the XML information for the column
Common Subprograms	See Common Subprograms for LCR$_DDL_RECORD and LCR$_ROW_RECORD on page 275-36 for a list of subprograms common to the `SYS.LCR$_ROW_RECORD` and `SYS.LCR$_DDL_RECORD` types

ADD_COLUMN Member Procedure

Adds the value as old or new, depending on the value type specified, for the column. An error is raised if a value of the same type already exists for the column.

Note: To set a column value that already exists, run `SET_VALUE`.

See Also: SET_VALUE Member Procedure on page 275-31

Considerations for LOB Columns

When processing a row LCR with LOB columns with a procedure DML handler or error handler and the handler is using LOB assembly (the `assemble_lobs` parameter is set to `TRUE` for the handler), you use this member procedure in the handler procedure to add a LOB column to a row LCR. If `assemble_lobs` is set to `FALSE` for the handler, then you cannot use this member procedure to add a LOB column to a row LCR.

To use a DML or error handler to add a LOB column, specify the LOB locator for the `column_value` parameter in the member procedure. The `ADD_COLUMN` member procedure verifies that an `ANYDATA` encapsulated LOB locator is processed with a DML or error handler that is using LOB assembly. An error is raised under the following conditions:

- The handler attempts to enqueue a row LCR with an `ANYDATA` encapsulated LOB locator.
- An attempt is made to add an LOB column that is set incorrectly.

If an error is raised because of one of these conditions, then the transaction that includes the row LCR is moved to the error queue, and the LOB is represented by the original (nonassembled) row LCRs.

Note:

- Database compatibility must be `10.2.0` or higher to use LOB assembly.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, you cannot use this member procedure to add a LOB column.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, procedure DML handler, or error handler, you cannot use this member procedure to add a `LONG` or `LONG RAW` column.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE ADD_COLUMN(
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_value  IN  ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 275–14 ADD_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`value_type`	The type of value to add for the column Specify `old` to add the old value of the column. Specify `new` to add the new value of the column.
`column_name`	The column name This name is not validated. An error can be raised during application of the LCRs if an invalid name is specified.
`column_value`	The value of the column If `NULL`, then this procedure raises an error. If the member procedure is used in a procedure DML handler or error handler that uses LOB assembly, then a LOB locator can be specified. A `NULL` column value can be specified by encapsulating the `NULL` value in an `ANYDATA` wrapper.

CONVERT_LONG_TO_LOB_CHUNK Member Procedure

Converts `LONG` data in a row LCR into a `CLOB`, or converts `LONG RAW` data in a row LCR into a `BLOB`.

This procedure can change the operation code from `LONG WRITE` to `LOB WRITE` for the row LCR.

This member procedure can be used in rule-based transformations.

The following restrictions apply to this member procedure:

- This member procedure cannot be used in apply handlers.

- LONG data can be sent as a part of a row LCR with one of the following operation codes: INSERT, UPDATE, or LONG_WRITE. Because LONG data can be sent in multiple pieces, make sure that this method is invoked on either none or all LONG pieces.
- LOB to LONG conversion is not supported.
- A row LCR on which this procedure is executed must have been created by a capture process. That is, this procedure does not support persistent row LCRs.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide*

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE CONVERT_LONG_TO_LOB_CHUNK;
```

DELETE_COLUMN Member Procedure

Deletes the old value, the new value, or both, for the specified column, depending on the value type specified.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE DELETE_COLUMN(
   column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*');
```

Parameters

Table 275–15 DELETE_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
column_name	The column name An error is raised if the column does not exist in the LCR.
value_type	The type of value to delete for the column Specify old to delete the old value of the column. Specify new to delete the new value of the column. If * is specified, then the procedure deletes both the old and new values.

EXECUTE Member Procedure

Executes the row LCR under the security domain of the current user. Any apply handlers that would be run for an LCR are not run when the LCR is applied using this procedure.

This member procedure can be run on a row LCR under any of the following conditions:

- The LCR is being processed by an apply handler.
- The LCR is in a queue and was last enqueued by a mechanism other than an Oracle Streams capture process, such as an Oracle Streams apply process or an application.
- The LCR has been constructed using the LCR$_ROW_RECORD constructor function but has not been enqueued.
- The LCR is in the error queue.

Note: Do not run this member procedure in a custom rule-based transformation on a row LCR. Doing so could execute the row LCR outside of its transactional context.

Considerations for LOB Columns

When processing a row LCR with LOB columns with a procedure DML handler or error handler, and the handler is using LOB assembly (the `assemble_lobs` parameter is set to `TRUE` for the handler), this member procedure executes the assembled row LCR. An assembled row LCR represents a LOB value with a LOB locator or `NULL`.

If `assemble_lobs` is set to `FALSE` for the handler, then this member procedure executes the nonassembled row LCRs. Nonassembled row LCRs represent LOB values with `VARCHAR2` and `RAW` data types. These nonassembled row LCRs might have been modified by the handler.

An error is raised under the following conditions:

- A DML or error handler configured with `assemble_lobs` set to `FALSE` attempts to execute a row LCR that contains a LOB locator.
- A DML or error handler configured with `assemble_lobs` set to `TRUE` attempts to execute a row LCR that contains one or more LOB values represented with `VARCHAR2` or `RAW` data types.

If an error is raised because of one of these conditions, then the transaction that includes the row LCR is moved to the error queue, and the LOB is represented by the original (nonassembled) row LCRs.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE EXECUTE(
   conflict_resolution  IN  BOOLEAN);
```

Parameters

Table 275–16 EXECUTE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`conflict_resolution`	If `TRUE`, then any conflict resolution defined for the table using the `SET_UPDATE_CONFLICT_HANDLER` procedure in the `DBMS_APPLY_ADM` package is used to resolve conflicts resulting from the execution of the LCR. If `FALSE`, then conflict resolution is not used. An error is raised if this parameter is not specified or is set to `NULL`.

GET_LOB_INFORMATION Member Function

Gets the LOB information for the column.

The return value can be one of the following:

```
DBMS_LCR.NOT_A_LOB        CONSTANT NUMBER := 1;
DBMS_LCR.NULL_LOB         CONSTANT NUMBER := 2;
DBMS_LCR.INLINE_LOB       CONSTANT NUMBER := 3;
DBMS_LCR.EMPTY_LOB        CONSTANT NUMBER := 4;
DBMS_LCR.LOB_CHUNK        CONSTANT NUMBER := 5;
DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK   CONSTANT NUMBER := 6;
```

Returns NULL if the specified column does not exist.

If the command type of the row LCR is UPDATE, then specifying 'Y' for the use_old parameter is a convenient way to get the value of the columns.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_LOB_INFORMATION(
  value_type   IN  VARCHAR2,
  column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  use_old      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Y')
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 275–17 GET_LOB_INFORMATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to return for the column, either old or new
column_name	The name of the column
use_old	If Y and value_type is new, and no new value exists, then the function returns the corresponding old value. If N and value_type is new, then the function does not return the old value if no new value exists. If value_type is old or if the command_type of the row LCR is not UPDATE, then the function ignores the value of the use_old parameter. NULL is not a valid specification for the use_old parameter.

GET_LOB_OFFSET Member Function

Gets the LOB offset for the specified column in the number of characters for CLOB columns and the number of bytes for BLOB columns. Returns a non-NULL value only if all of the following conditions are met:

- The value exists for the column
- The column value is an out-of-line LOB. That is, the information is DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK or DBMS_LCR.LOB_CHUNK
- The command type is LOB ERASE or LOB WRITE

Otherwise, returns NULL.

Syntax

```
GET_LOB_OFFSET(
   value_type   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 275–18 GET_LOB_OFFSET Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to return for the column Currently, only new can be specified.
column_name	The name of the LOB column

GET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE Member Function

Gets the operation size for the LOB column in the number of characters for CLOB columns and the number of bytes for BLOB columns. Returns a non-NULL value only if all of the following conditions are met:

- The value exists for the column
- The column value is an out-of-line LOB
- The command type is LOB ERASE or LOB TRIM
- The information is DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK

Otherwise, returns NULL.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE(
  value_type   IN  VARCHAR2,
  column_name  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN NUMBER,
```

Parameters

Table 275–19 GET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to return for the column Currently, only new can be specified.
column_name	The name of the LOB column

GET_LONG_INFORMATION Member Function

Gets the LONG information for the column.

The return value can be one of the following:

```
DBMS_LCR.NOT_A_LONG        CONSTANT NUMBER := 1;
DBMS_LCR.NULL_LONG         CONSTANT NUMBER := 2;
DBMS_LCR.INLINE_LONG       CONSTANT NUMBER := 3;
DBMS_LCR.LONG_CHUNK        CONSTANT NUMBER := 4;
DBMS_LCR.LAST_LONG_CHUNK   CONSTANT NUMBER := 5;
```

Returns NULL if the specified column does not exist.

If the command type of the row LCR is UPDATE, then specifying 'Y' for the use_old parameter is a convenient way to get the value of the columns.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_LONG_INFORMATION(
  value_type   IN  VARCHAR2,
  column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
  use_old      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Y')
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 275–20 GET_LONG_INFORMATION Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to return for the column, either old or new
column_name	The name of the column
use_old	If Y and value_type is new, and no new value exists, then the function returns the corresponding old value. If N and value_type is new, then the function does not return the old value if no new value exists. If value_type is old or if the command_type of the row LCR is not UPDATE, then the function ignores the value of the use_old parameter. NULL is not a valid specification for the use_old parameter.

GET_ROW_TEXT Member Procedure

Gets the SQL statement for the change that is encapsulated in the row LCR. This method performs SQL generation in PL/SQL.

This method is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definitions.

Syntax

The following procedure returns the SQL statement in a CLOB datatype.

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE GET_ROW_TEXT(
   row_text  IN/OUT  CLOB);
```

The following procedure returns the SQL statement with bind variables in a CLOB datatype.

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE GET_ROW_TEXT(
   row_text         IN/OUT  CLOB,
   variable_list    IN/OUT  LCR$_ROW_LIST,
   bind_var_syntax  IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT ':');
```

See Also: "LCR$_ROW_LIST Type" on page 275-47

Parameters

Table 275–21 GET_ROW_TEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
row_text	The SQL statement for the change that is encapsulated in the LCR

Table 275–21 (Cont.) GET_ROW_TEXT Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
variable_list	The values for the bind variables in the order of the bind variables
bind_var_syntax	The syntax for the bind variables One of the following values is valid: ■ Specify :, the default, for bind values to be in the form :1, :2, and so on. ■ Specify ? for bind values to be in the form ?.

GET_VALUE Member Function

Gets the old or new value for the specified column, depending on the value type specified.

If the command type of the row LCR is UPDATE, then specifying 'Y' for the use_old parameter is a convenient way to get the value of a column.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_VALUE(
   value_type   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   use_old      IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Y')
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 275–22 GET_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to return for the column Specify old to get the old value for the column. Specify new to get the new value for the column.
column_name	The column name If the column is present and has a NULL value, then the function returns an ANYDATA instance containing a NULL value. If the column value is absent, then the function returns a NULL.
use_old	If Y and value_type is new, and no new value exists, then the function returns the corresponding old value. If N and value_type is new, then the function returns NULL if no new value exists. If value_type is old or if the command_type of the row LCR is not UPDATE, then the function ignores the value of the use_old parameter. NULL is not a valid specification for the use_old parameter.

GET_VALUES Member Function

Gets a list of old or new values, depending on the value type specified.

If the command type of the row LCR is UPDATE, then specifying 'Y' for the use_old parameter is a convenient way to get the values of all columns.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_VALUES(
   value_type  IN  VARCHAR2,
   use_old     IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT 'Y')
RETURN SYS.LCR$_ROW_LIST;
```

Parameters

Table 275–23 GET_VALUES Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of values to return Specify old to return a list of old values. Specify new to return a list of new values.
use_old	If Y and value_type is new, then the function returns a list of all new values in the LCR. If a new value does not exist in the list, then the function returns the corresponding old value. Therefore, the returned list contains all existing new values and the old values where there are no new values. If N and value_type is new, then the function returns a list of all new values in the LCR without returning any old values. If value_type is old or if the command_type of the row LCR is not UPDATE, then the function ignores the value of the use_old parameter. NULL is not a valid specification for the use_old parameter.

GET_WHERE_CLAUSE Member Procedure

Gets a WHERE clause for the change that is encapsulated in the row LCR.

Use the WHERE clause returned by GET_WHERE_CLAUSE instead of using the ROWID, because the ROWID is not ANSI compatible. The generated WHERE clause might not match the WHERE clause in the original DML operation.

The ROWID of an INSERT statement is the ROWID of the new row created by the INSERT. The WHERE clause generated for an INSERT operation identifies the new row. Therefore, the generated WHERE clause includes all of the new values inserted.

For example, consider the following insert into the hr.departments table:

```
INSERT INTO hr.departments (
   department_id, department_name, manager_id, location_id)
   VALUES (10, 'HR', 20, 40);
```

The generated WHERE clause represents the row with the values 10, 'HR', 20, and 40. Hence, the generated WHERE clause is the following:

```
WHERE "DEPARTMENT_ID" = 10 AND "DEPARTMENT_NAME" = 'HR' AND
      "MANAGER_ID" = 20 AND "LOCATION_ID" = 40
```

The ROWID of an UPDATE statement is the ROWID of the row that was updated. The WHERE clause generated for an UPDATE operation identifies the row after the UPDATE executes. The generated WHERE clause is based on the old and new values of the UPDATE.

For example, consider the following update to the hr.departments table:

```
UPDATE hr.departments SET department_name='Management'
 WHERE department_name='Administration' AND location_id = 20 AND
       manager_id = 30 AND department_id = 10;
```

The values of the row after the UPDATE are 10, 'Management', 30, and 20. Hence, the generated WHERE clause to identify the row is the following:

```
WHERE "DEPARTMENT_ID" = 10 AND "DEPARTMENT_NAME" = 'MANAGEMENT' AND
      "MANAGER_ID" = 30 AND "LOCATION_ID" = 20
```

Notice that the new value is used for "DEPARTMENT_NAME", because the new value is the value of the column after the UPDATE. For the rest of the columns, the old values are used.

The ROWID of a DELETE operation is the row that existed before it was deleted. The generated WHERE clause consists of all the old column values present in the DELETE operation.

LOB columns do not appear in generated WHERE clauses. The generated WHERE clause is not affected by the presence of LOB columns in the LCR.

This method is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definitions.

Syntax

The following procedure returns the WHERE clause of a SQL statement in a CLOB datatype.

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE GET_WHERE_CLAUSE(
   where_clause  IN/OUT  CLOB);
```

The following procedure returns the WHERE clause of a SQL statement with bind variables in a CLOB datatype.

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE GET_WHERE_CLAUSE(
   where_clause     IN/OUT  CLOB,
   variable_list    IN/OUT  LCR$_ROW_LIST,
   bind_var_syntax  IN      VARCHAR2  DEFAULT ':');
```

See Also:

- LCR$_ROW_LIST Type on page 275-47
- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

Parameters

Table 275–24 GET_WHERE_CLAUSE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
where_clause	The WHERE clause of the SQL statement for the change that is encapsulated in the LCR
variable_list	The values for the bind variables in the order of the bind variables
bind_var_syntax	The syntax for the bind variables One of the following values is valid: ■ Specify :, the default, for bind values to be in the form :1, :2, and so on. ■ Specify ? for bind values to be in the form ?.

GET_XML_INFORMATION Member Function

Gets the XML information for the specified column.

The return value can be one of the following:

```
DBMS_LCR.NOT_XML   CONSTANT NUMBER := 1;
DBMS_LCR.XML_DOC   CONSTANT NUMBER := 2;
DBMS_LCR.XML_DIFF  CONSTANT NUMBER := 3;
```

`DBMS_LCR.NOT_XML` indicates that the column is not an `XMLType` column.

`DBMS_LCR.XML_DOC` indicates that the column contains an XML document.

`DBMS_LCR.XML_DIFF` indicates that the column contains an XML document that describes a change made by an update operation. This XML document describes the differences in the column's XML document. The entire XML document is not replaced.

Returns `NULL` if the specified column does not exist.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_XML_INFORMATION(
   column_name  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameter

Table 275–25 GET_XML_INFORMATION Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
`column_name`	The column name

KEEP_COLUMNS Member Procedure

This procedure keeps a list of columns in a row LCR. The procedure deletes columns that are not in the list from the row LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE KEEP_COLUMNS(
   column_list  IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type   IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*');
```

Parameters

Table 275–26 KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
`column_list`	The names of the columns kept for the row LCR Specify a comma-delimited list of type `VARCHAR2`. This procedure removes columns that are not in the list from the current row LCR.

Table 275–26 (Cont.) KEEP_COLUMNS Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value for which to keep the columns Specify old to keep the old values of the columns. An error is raised if the old values do not exist in the LCR. Specify new to keep the new values of the columns. An error is raised if the new values do not exist in the LCR. If * is specified, then the procedure keeps both the old and the new columns.

RENAME_COLUMN Member Procedure

Renames a column in a row LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE RENAME_COLUMN(
   from_column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   to_column_name    IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_type        IN  VARCHAR2  DEFAULT '*');
```

Parameters

Table 275–27 RENAME_COLUMN Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
from_column_name	The existing column name
to_column_name	The new column name An error is raised if a column with the specified name already exists.
value_type	The type of value for which to rename the column Specify old to rename the old value of the column. An error is raised if the old value does not exist in the LCR. Specify new to rename the new value of the column. An error is raised if the new value does not exist in the LCR. If * is specified, then the procedure renames the column names for both old and new value. The procedure raises an error if either column value does not exist in the LCR.

SET_LOB_INFORMATION Member Procedure

Sets LOB information for the column.

Note: When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, procedure DML handler, or error handler, you cannot use this member procedure.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_LOB_INFORMATION(
  value_type       IN  VARCHAR2,
  column_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
  lob_information  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 275–28 SET_LOB_INFORMATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to set for the column, either old or new Specify old only if lob_information is set to DBMS_LCR.NOT_A_LOB.
column_name	The name of the column. An exception is raised if the column value does not exist. You might need to set this parameter for non-LOB columns.
lob_information	Specify one of the following values: DBMS_LCR.NOT_A_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 1; DBMS_LCR.NULL_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 2; DBMS_LCR.INLINE_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 3; DBMS_LCR.EMPTY_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 4; DBMS_LCR.LOB_CHUNK CONSTANT NUMBER := 5; DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK CONSTANT NUMBER := 6;

SET_LOB_OFFSET Member Procedure

Sets the LOB offset for the specified column in the number of characters for CLOB columns and the number of bytes for BLOB columns.

Note: When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, procedure DML handler, or error handler, you cannot use this member procedure.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_LOB_OFFSET(
   value_type   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name  IN  VARCHAR2,
   lob_offset   IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 275–29 SET_LOB_OFFSET Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to set for the column Currently, only new can be specified.
column_name	The column name An error is raised if the column value does not exist in the LCR.
lob_offset	The LOB offset number Valid values are NULL or a positive integer less than or equal to DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE.

SET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE Member Procedure

Sets the operation size for the LOB column in the number of characters for CLOB columns and bytes for BLOB columns.

Note: When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, procedure DML handler, or error handler, you cannot use this member procedure.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE(
  value_type          IN  VARCHAR2,
  column_name         IN  VARCHAR2,
  lob_operation_size  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 275–30 SET_LOB_OPERATION_SIZE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to set for the column Currently, only new can be specified.
column_name	The name of the LOB column An exception is raised if the column value does not exist in the LCR.
lob_operation_size	If lob_information for the LOB is or will be DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK, then this parameter can be set to either a valid LOB ERASE value or a valid LOB TRIM value. A LOB ERASE value must be a positive integer less than or equal to DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE. A LOB TRIM value must be a nonnegative integer less than or equal to DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE. Otherwise, set to NULL.

SET_VALUE Member Procedure

Overwrites the old or new value of the specified column.

One reason to overwrite an old value for a column is to resolve an error that resulted from a conflict.

Note: To add a column to a row LCR, run ADD_COLUMN.

See Also: ADD_COLUMN Member Procedure on page 275-18

Considerations for LOB Columns

When processing a row LCR with LOB columns with a procedure DML handler or error handler, and the handler is using LOB assembly (the assemble_lobs parameter is set to TRUE for the handler), you can use this member procedure in the handler procedure on a LOB column in a row LCR. If assemble_lobs is set to FALSE for the handler, then you cannot use this member procedure on a LOB column.

To use a DML or error handler to set the value of a LOB column, specify the LOB locator for the column_value parameter in the member procedure. The SET_VALUE member procedure verifies that an ANYDATA encapsulated LOB locator is processed with a DML or error handler that is using LOB assembly. An error is raised under the following conditions:

- The handler attempts to enqueue a row LCR with an ANYDATA encapsulated LOB locator.
- An attempt is made to set a LOB column incorrectly.

If an error is raised because of one of these conditions, then the transaction that includes the row LCR is moved to the error queue, and the LOB is represented by the original (nonassembled) row LCRs.

Note:

- Database compatibility must be 10.2.0 or higher to use LOB assembly.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, you cannot use this member procedure on a LOB column.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, procedure DML handler, or error handler, you cannot use this member procedure on a LONG or LONG RAW column.

Considerations for XMLType Columns

When processing a row LCR with XMLType columns with a procedure DML handler or error handler, any XMLType columns and LOB columns in the LCR are always assembled using LOB assembly. You can use this member procedure in the handler procedure on a row LCR that contains one or more XMLType columns.

To use a DML or error handler to set the value an XMLType column, specify the XMLType for the column_value parameter. The SET_VALUE member procedure verifies that an ANYDATA encapsulated XMLType is processed with a DML or error handler. An error is raised under the following conditions:

- The handler attempts to enqueue a row LCR with an ANYDATA encapsulated XMLType.
- An attempt is made to set a XMLType column incorrectly.

If an error is raised because of one of these conditions, then the transaction that includes the row LCR is moved to the error queue, and the XMLType column is represented by the original (nonassembled) row LCRs.

Note:

- Database compatibility must be 11.1.0 or higher to process row LCRs with XMLType columns.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, you cannot use this member procedure on XMLType columns.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_VALUE(
   value_type    IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   column_value  IN  ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 275–31 SET_VALUE Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of value to set Specify old to set the old value of the column. Specify new to set the new value of the column.
column_name	The column name An error is raised if the specified column_value does not exist in the LCR for the specified column_type.
column_value	The new value of the column If NULL is specified, then this procedure raises an error. To set the value to NULL, encapsulate the NULL in an ANYDATA instance. If the member procedure is used in a procedure DML handler or error handler that uses LOB assembly, then specify a LOB locator for LOB columns.

SET_VALUES Member Procedure

Replaces all old values or all new values for the LCR, depending on the value type specified.

Considerations for LOB Columns

You can use this procedure when processing a row LCR with LOB columns with a procedure DML handler or error handler. If the handler is using LOB assembly (the assemble_lobs parameter is set to TRUE for the handler), then you can use this member procedure in the handler procedure. If assemble_lobs is set to FALSE for the handler, then you cannot use this member procedure on a row LCR.

To use a DML or error handler to set the value of one or more LOB columns in a row LCR, specify a LOB locator for each LOB column in the value_list parameter. The SET_VALUES member procedure verifies that an ANYDATA encapsulated LOB locator is processed with a DML or error handler that is using LOB assembly. An error is raised under the following conditions:

- The handler attempts to enqueue a row LCR with an ANYDATA encapsulated LOB locator.
- An attempt is made to set a LOB column incorrectly.

If an error is raised because of one of these conditions, then the transaction that includes the row LCR is moved to the error queue, and the LOB columns are represented by the original (nonassembled) row LCRs.

Note:

- Database compatibility must be `10.2.0` or higher to use LOB assembly.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, you cannot use this member procedure on LOB columns.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, procedure DML handler, or error handler, you cannot use this member procedure on `LONG` or `LONG RAW` columns.

Considerations for XMLType Columns

When processing a row LCR with `XMLType` columns with a procedure DML handler or error handler, any `XMLType` and LOB columns in the LCR are always assembled using LOB assembly. You can use this member procedure in the handler procedure on a row LCR that contains one or more `XMLType` columns.

To use a DML or error handler to set the value of one or more `XMLType` columns in a row LCR, specify an `XMLType` for each `XMLType` column in the `value_list` parameter. The `SET_VALUES` member procedure verifies that an `ANYDATA` encapsulated `XMLType` is processed with a DML or error handler. An error is raised under the following conditions:

- The handler attempts to enqueue a row LCR with an `ANYDATA` encapsulated `XMLType`.
- An attempt is made to set a `XMLType` incorrectly.

If an error is raised because of one of these conditions, then the transaction that includes the row LCR is moved to the error queue, and the `XMLType` columns are represented by the original (nonassembled) row LCRs.

Note:

- Database compatibility must be `11.1.0` or higher to process row LCRs with `XMLType` columns.
- When you are processing a row LCR with a rule-based transformation, you cannot use this member procedure on `XMLType` columns.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_VALUES(
   value_type  IN  VARCHAR2,
   value_list  IN  SYS.LCR$_ROW_LIST);
```

Parameters

Table 275–32 SET_VALUES Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
value_type	The type of values to replace Specify old to replace the old values. Specify new to replace the new values.
value_list	List of values to replace the existing list Use a NULL or an empty list to remove all values. If the member procedure is used in a procedure DML handler or error handler that uses LOB assembly, then specify one or more LOB locators for LOB columns.

SET_XML_INFORMATION Member Procedure

Sets the XML information for the column.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_XML_INFORMATION(
   column_name      IN  VARCHAR2,
   xml_information  IN  NUMBER);
```

Parameters

Table 275–33 SET_XML_INFORMATION Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
column_name	The name of the column An exception is raised if the column value does not exist in the LCR.

xml_information	Specify one of the following values:
	`DBMS_LCR.NOT_XML CONSTANT NUMBER := 1;`
	`DBMS_LCR.XML_DOC CONSTANT NUMBER := 2;`
	`DBMS_LCR.XML_DIFF CONSTANT NUMBER := 3;`
	DBMS_LCR.NOT_XML indicates that the column is not an XMLType column.
	DBMS_LCR.XML_DOC indicates that the column contains an XML document.
	DBMS_LCR.XML_DIFF indicates that the column contains an XML document that describes a change made by an update operation. This XML document describes the differences in the column's XML document. The entire XML document is not replaced.

Common Subprograms for LCR$_DDL_RECORD and LCR$_ROW_RECORD

The following functions and procedures are common to both the `LCR$_DDL_RECORD` and `LCR$_ROW_RECORD` type.

> **See Also:** For descriptions of the subprograms for these types that are exclusive to each type:
>
> - "Summary of LCR$_DDL_RECORD Subprograms" on page 275-9
> - "Summary of LCR$_ROW_RECORD Subprograms" on page 275-17

Table 275–34 Summary of Common Subprograms for DDL and Row LCR Types

Subprogram	Description
GET_COMMAND_TYPE Member Function on page 275-37	Gets the command type of the logical change record (LCR)
GET_COMMIT_SCN Member Function on page 275-37	Gets the commit system change number (SCN) of the transaction to which the current LCR belongs
GET_COMMIT_SCN_FROM_POSITION Static Function on page 275-38	Gets the commit SCN of a transaction from the input position, which is generated by an XStream outbound server
GET_COMMIT_TIME on page 275-38	Gets the commit time of the transaction to which the current LCR belongs
GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function on page 275-38	Gets the minimal database compatibility required to support the LCR
GET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Member Function on page 275-39	Gets the value for the specified extra attribute in the LCR
GET_OBJECT_NAME Member Function on page 275-40	Gets the name of the object that is changed by the LCR
GET_OBJECT_OWNER Member Function on page 275-40	Gets the owner of the object that is changed by the LCR
GET_POSITION Member Function on page 275-41	Gets the position of the current LCR
GET_ROOT_NAME Member Function on page 275-41	Gets the global name of the root for a CDB.
GET_SCN Member Function on page 275-41	Gets the SCN of the LCR
GET_SCN_FROM_POSITION Static Function on page 275-41	Gets the SCN from the input position, which is generated by an XStream outbound server
GET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME Member Function on page 275-42	Gets the source database name.
GET_SOURCE_TIME Member Function on page 275-42	Gets the time when the change in an LCR captured by a capture process was generated in the redo log of the source database, or the time when a persistent LCR was created
GET_TAG Member Function on page 275-42	Gets the tag for the LCR

Table 275–34 (Cont.) Summary of Common Subprograms for DDL and Row LCR Types

Subprogram	Description
GET_THREAD_NUMBER Member Function on page 275-42	Gets the thread number of the database instance that made the change that is encapsulated in the LCR
GET_TRANSACTION_ID Member Function on page 275-42	Gets the transaction identifier of the LCR
IS_NULL_TAG Member Function on page 275-42	Returns `Y` if the tag for the LCR is `NULL`, or returns `N` if the tag for the LCR is not `NULL`
SET_COMMAND_TYPE Member Procedure on page 275-43	Sets the command type in the LCR
SET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Member Procedure on page 275-43	Sets the value for the specified extra attribute in the LCR
SET_OBJECT_NAME Member Procedure on page 275-44	Sets the name of the object that is changed by the LCR
SET_OBJECT_OWNER Member Procedure on page 275-45	Sets the owner of the object that is changed by the LCR
SET_ROOT_NAME Member Procedure on page 275-45	Sets the global name of the root in a CDB.
SET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME Member Procedure on page 275-45	Sets the source database name of the object that is changed by the LCR
SET_TAG Member Procedure on page 275-46	Sets the tag for the LCR

GET_COMMAND_TYPE Member Function

Gets the command type of the LCR.

> **See Also:** The "SQL Command Codes" table in the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for a complete list of command types

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_COMMAND_TYPE()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_COMMIT_SCN Member Function

Gets the commit system change number (SCN) of the transaction to which the current LCR belongs.

The commit SCN for a transaction is available only during apply or during error transaction execution. This function can be used only in a procedure DML handler, DDL handler, or error handler.

The commit SCN might not be available for an LCR that is part of an incomplete transaction. For example, persistent LCRs might not have a commit SCN. If the commit SCN is not available for an LCR, then this function returns `NULL`.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_COMMIT_SCN()
RETURN NUMBER;
```

GET_COMMIT_SCN_FROM_POSITION Static Function

Gets the commit system change number (SCN) of a transaction from the input position, which is generated by an XStream outbound server.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION GET_COMMIT_SCN_FROM_POSITION(
   position  IN  RAW)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 275–35 GET_COMMIT_SCN_FROM_POSITION Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
position	The position You can obtain the position by using the GET_POSITION member function or by querying the DBA_XSTREAM_OUTBOUND_PROGRESS data dictionary view.

Note: Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

GET_COMMIT_TIME

Gets the commit time of the transaction to which the current LCR belongs.

The commit time for a transaction is available only during apply or during error transaction execution. This function can be used only in a procedure DML handler, DDL handler, or error handler.

The commit time might not be available for an LCR that is part of an incomplete transaction. For example, persistent LCRs might not have a commit time. If the commit time is not available for an LCR, then this function returns NULL.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_COMMIT_TIME()
RETURN DATE;
```

GET_COMPATIBLE Member Function

Gets the minimal database compatibility required to support the LCR. You control the compatibility of an Oracle database using the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter.

The return value for this function can be one of the following:

Return Value	COMPATIBLE Initialization Parameter Equivalent
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_9_2	9.2.0
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_1	10.1.0
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_2	10.2.0
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_1	11.1.0

Return Value	COMPATIBLE Initialization Parameter Equivalent
DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_2	11.2.0

DDL LCRs always return DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_9_2.

You can use the following functions in the DBMS_STREAMS package for constant compatibility return values:

- The COMPATIBLE_9_2 function returns the DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_9_2 constant.
- The COMPATIBLE_10_1 function returns DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_1 constant.
- The COMPATIBLE_10_2 function returns DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_10_2 constant.
- The COMPATIBLE_11_1 function returns DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_1 constant.
- The COMPATIBLE_11_2 function returns DBMS_STREAMS.COMPATIBLE_11_2 constant.
- The MAX_COMPATIBLE function returns an integer that is greater than the highest possible compatibility constant for the current release of Oracle Database.

You can use these functions with the GET_COMPATIBLE member function for an LCR in rule conditions and apply handlers.

Note: You can determine which database objects in a database are not supported by Oracle Streams by querying the DBA_STREAMS_UNSUPPORTED data dictionary view.

See Also:

- *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration* for examples of rules that discard changes that are not supported by Oracle Streams
- Chapter 158, "DBMS_STREAMS" and Chapter 159, "DBMS_STREAMS_ADM"
- *Oracle Database Reference* and *Oracle Database Upgrade Guide* for more information about the COMPATIBLE initialization parameter

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_COMPATIBLE()
RETURN NUMBER;
```

GET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Member Function

Gets the value for the specified extra attribute in the LCR. The returned extra attribute is contained within an ANYDATA instance. You can use the INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE procedure in the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM package to instruct a capture process to capture one or more extra attributes.

See Also: INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 34-33

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE(
   attribute_name  IN  VARCHAR2)
```

```
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 275–36 GET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
attribute_name	The name of the extra attribute to return Valid names are: ■ row_id The rowid of the row changed in a row LCR. This attribute is not included in DDL LCRs, nor in row LCRs for index-organized tables. The type is UROWID. ■ serial# The serial number of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is NUMBER. ■ session# The identifier of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is NUMBER. ■ thread# The thread number of the instance in which the change captured in the LCR was performed. Typically, the thread number is relevant only in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment. The type is NUMBER. ■ tx_name The name of the transaction that includes the LCR. The type is VARCHAR2. ■ username The name of the current user who performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is VARCHAR2. An error is raised if the specified attribute_name is not valid. If no value exists for the specified extra attribute, then the function returns a NULL. **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about the current user

GET_OBJECT_NAME Member Function

Gets the name of the object that is changed by the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_OBJECT_NAME()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_OBJECT_OWNER Member Function

Gets the owner of the object that is changed by the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_OBJECT_OWNER()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_POSITION Member Function

Gets the position of the current LCR. The position uniquely identifies each LCR. The position strictly increases within each transaction and across transactions.

LCR position is commonly used in XStream configurations.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_POSITION()
RETURN RAW;
```

Note: Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

GET_ROOT_NAME Member Function

Gets the global name of the root in a CDB, which is the root name for the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_ROOT_NAME()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_SCN Member Function

Gets the system change number (SCN) of the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_SCN()
RETURN NUMBER;
```

GET_SCN_FROM_POSITION Static Function

Gets the system change number (SCN) from the input position, which is generated by an XStream outbound server.

Syntax

```
STATIC FUNCTION GET_SCN_FROM_POSITION(
   position  IN  RAW)
RETURN NUMBER;
```

Parameters

Table 275–37 GET_SCN_FROM_POSITION Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
`position`	The position You can obtain the position by using the `GET_POSITION` member function or by querying the `DBA_XSTREAM_OUTBOUND_PROGRESS` data dictionary view.

Note: Using XStream requires purchasing a license for the Oracle GoldenGate product. See *Oracle Database XStream Guide*.

GET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME Member Function

Gets the global name of the source database. The source database is the database where the change occurred.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

GET_SOURCE_TIME Member Function

Gets the time when the change in an LCR captured by a capture process was generated in the redo log of the source database, or the time when a persistent LCR was created.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_SOURCE_TIME()
RETURN DATE;
```

GET_TAG Member Function

Gets the tag for the LCR. An LCR tag is a binary tag that enables tracking of the LCR. For example, this tag can be used to determine the original source database of the DML or DDL change when apply forwarding is used.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_TAG()
RETURN RAW;
```

GET_THREAD_NUMBER Member Function

Gets the thread number of the database instance that made the change that is encapsulated in the LCR. Typically, the thread number is relevant in an Oracle Real Application Clusters configuration.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide*

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_THREAD_NUMBER()
RETURN NUMBER;
```

GET_TRANSACTION_ID Member Function

Gets the transaction identifier of the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_TRANSACTION_ID()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

IS_NULL_TAG Member Function

Returns `Y` if the tag for the LCR is `NULL`, or returns `N` if the tag for the LCR is not `NULL`.

See Also: *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION IS_NULL_TAG()
RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

SET_COMMAND_TYPE Member Procedure

Sets the command type in the LCR. If the command type specified cannot be interpreted, then this procedure raises an error. For example, changing `INSERT` to `GRANT` would raise an error.

See Also:

- The description of the `command_type` parameter in LCR$_DDL_RECORD Constructor Function Parameters on page 275-7
- The description of the command_type parameter in LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type on page 275-15
- The "SQL Command Codes" table in the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for a complete list of command types

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_COMMAND_TYPE(
   command_type  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–38 SET_COMMAND_TYPE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`command_type`	The command type Set this parameter to a non-`NULL` value.

SET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Member Procedure

Sets the value for the specified extra attribute in the LCR. You can use the `INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE` procedure in the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM` package to instruct a capture process to capture one or more extra attributes.

See Also: INCLUDE_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Procedure on page 34-33

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE(
   attribute_name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   attribute_value  IN  ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 275–39 SET_EXTRA_ATTRIBUTE Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
attribute_name	The name of the extra attribute to set Valid names are: ■ row_id The rowid of the row changed in a row LCR. This attribute is not included in DDL LCRs, nor in row LCRs for index-organized tables. The type is VARCHAR2. ■ serial# The serial number of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is NUMBER. ■ session# The identifier of the session that performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is NUMBER. ■ thread# The thread number of the instance in which the change captured in the LCR was performed. Typically, the thread number is relevant only in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment. The type is NUMBER. ■ tx_name The name of the transaction that includes the LCR. The type is VARCHAR2. ■ username The name of the current user who performed the change captured in the LCR. The type is VARCHAR2. An error is raised if the specified attribute_name is not valid. **See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* for more information about the current user
attribute_value	The value to which the specified extra attribute is set If set to NULL, then this procedure removes the specified extra attribute from the LCR. To set to NULL, encapsulate the NULL in an ANYDATA instance.

SET_OBJECT_NAME Member Procedure

Sets the name of the object that is changed by the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_OBJECT_NAME(
   object_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–40 SET_OBJECT_NAME Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
object_name	The name of the object

SET_OBJECT_OWNER Member Procedure

Sets the owner of the object that is changed by the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_OBJECT_OWNER(
   object_owner  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–41 SET_OBJECT_OWNER Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
object_owner	The schema that contains the object

SET_ROOT_NAME Member Procedure

Sets the global name of the root in a CDB. The setting is the root name for the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_ROOT_NAME(
   root_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–42 SET_OBJECT_OWNER Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
root_name	The global name of the root.

SET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME Member Procedure

Sets the source database name of the object that is changed by the LCR.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME(
   source_database_name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameter

Table 275–43 SET_SOURCE_DATABASE_NAME Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
source_database_name	The source database of the change If you do not include the domain name, then the procedure appends the local domain to the database name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the local domain is EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically. Set this parameter to a non-NULL value.

SET_TAG Member Procedure

Sets the tag for the LCR. An LCR tag is a binary tag that enables tracking of the LCR. For example, this tag can be used to determine the original source database of the change when apply forwarding is used.

> **See Also:** *Oracle Streams Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information about tags

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE SET_TAG(
   tag  IN  RAW);
```

Parameter

Table 275–44 SET_TAG Procedure Parameter

Parameter	Description
`tag`	The binary tag for the LCR The size limit for a tag value is two kilobytes.

LCR$_ROW_LIST Type

Identifies a list of column values for a row in a table.

This type uses the `LCR$_ROW_UNIT` type and is used in the `LCR$_ROW_RECORD` type.

See Also:

- LCR$_ROW_UNIT Type on page 275-48
- LCR$_ROW_RECORD Type on page 275-15

Syntax

```
CREATE TYPE SYS.LCR$_ROW_LIST AS TABLE OF SYS.LCR$_ROW_UNIT
/
```

LCR$_ROW_UNIT Type

Identifies the value for a column in a row.

This type is used in the LCR$_ROW_LIST type.

See Also: LCR$_ROW_LIST Type on page 275-47

Syntax

```
CREATE TYPE LCR$_ROW_UNIT AS OBJECT (
  column_name         VARCHAR2(4000),
  data                ANYDATA,
  lob_information     NUMBER,
  lob_offset          NUMBER,
  lob_operation_size  NUMBER
  long_information    NUMBER);
/
```

Attributes

Table 275–45 LCR$_ROW_UNIT Attributes

Attribute	Description
column_name	The name of the column
data	The data contained in the column
lob_information	Contains the LOB information for the column and contains one of the following values: DBMS_LCR.NOT_A_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 1; DBMS_LCR.NULL_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 2; DBMS_LCR.INLINE_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 3; DBMS_LCR.EMPTY_LOB CONSTANT NUMBER := 4; DBMS_LCR.LOB_CHUNK CONSTANT NUMBER := 5; DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK CONSTANT NUMBER := 6;
lob_offset	The LOB offset specified in the number of characters for CLOB columns and the number of bytes for BLOB columns Valid values are NULL or a positive integer less than or equal to DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE.
lob_operation_size	If lob_information for the LOB is DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK, then this parameter can be set to either a valid LOB ERASE value or a valid LOB TRIM value. A LOB ERASE value must be a positive integer less than or equal to DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE. A LOB TRIM value must be a nonnegative integer less than or equal to DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE. If lob_information is not DBMS_LCR.LAST_LOB_CHUNK and for all other operations, is NULL.
long_information	Contains the LONG information for the column and contains one of the following values: DBMS_LCR.not_a_long CONSTANT NUMBER := 1; DBMS_LCR.null_long CONSTANT NUMBER := 2; DBMS_LCR.inline_long CONSTANT NUMBER := 3; DBMS_LCR.long_chunk CONSTANT NUMBER := 4; DBMS_LCR.last_long_chunk CONSTANT NUMBER := 5;

276

Oracle Multimedia ORDAudio TYPE

The `Oracle Multimedia ORDAudio` object type supports the storage and management of audio data.

Audio data can have different formats, encoding types, compression types, numbers of channels, sampling rates, sample sizes, and playing times (duration) depending upon how the audio data is digitally recorded. `Oracle Multimedia ORDAudio` can store and retrieve audio data of any data format. `Oracle Multimedia ORDAudio` can extract metadata from audio data of a variety of popular audio formats. `Oracle Multimedia ORDAudio` can also extract application attributes and store them in the `comments` attribute of the object in XML form.

- Documentation of ORDAudio

Documentation of ORDAudio

For a complete description of this type within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORDAudio` in the *Oracle Multimedia Reference*.

277

Oracle Multimedia ORDDicom TYPE

The `Oracle Multimedia ORDDicom` object type supports the storage, management, and manipulation of Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) data.

The DICOM standard is the dominant standard for radiology imaging and communication, to which all major manufacturers of radiological devices must conform. Oracle Multimedia DICOM provides native support for DICOM format medical images and other objects. These include objects such as single frame and multiframe images, waveforms, slices of 3-D volumes, video segments, and structured reports.

`Oracle Multimedia ORDDicom` provides methods to extract standard and private DICOM metadata from DICOM content into customizable XML documents, to perform image processing operations such as format conversion and thumbnail image generation, and to create new DICOM objects. `Oracle Multimedia ORDDicom` also provides methods to check DICOM objects for conformance based on a set of user-specified conformance rules, and to make DICOM objects anonymous based on user-defined rules that specify the set of attributes to be made anonymous and the actions to be taken to make those attributes anonymous.

- Documentation of ORDDicom

Documentation of ORDDicom

For a complete description of this type within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORDDicom` in the *Oracle Multimedia DICOM Developer's Guide*.

278

Oracle Multimedia ORDDoc TYPE

The `Oracle Multimedia ORDDoc` object type supports the storage and management of heterogeneous media data including image, audio, and video.

Heterogeneous media data can have different formats depending upon the application generating the media data. `Oracle Multimedia` can store and retrieve media data of any data format. `Oracle Multimedia ORDDoc` datatype can be used in applications that require you to store different types of heterogeneous media data in the same column so you can build a common metadata index on all the different types of media data. Using this index, you can search across all the different types of heterogeneous media data. However, you cannot use this same search technique if the different types of heterogeneous media data are stored in different types of objects in different columns of relational tables.

- Documentation of ORDDoc

Documentation of ORDDoc

For a complete description of this type within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORDDoc` in the *Oracle Multimedia Reference*.

279

Oracle Multimedia ORDImage TYPE

The `Oracle Multimedia ORDImage` object type supports the storage, management, and manipulation of image data.

Digitized images consist of the image data (digitized bits) and attributes that describe and characterize the image data.

The image data (pixels) can have varying depths (bits for each pixel) depending on how the image was captured, and can be organized in various ways. The organization of the image data is known as the data format. `Oracle Multimedia ORDImage` can store and retrieve image data of any data format. `Oracle Multimedia ORDImage` can process (cut, scale, and generate thumbnails) of images, convert the format of images, extract properties of images of a variety of popular data formats, and extract and embed application metadata in images.

- Documentation of ORDImage

Documentation of ORDImage

For a complete description of this type within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORDImage` in the *Oracle Multimedia Reference*.

280

Oracle Multimedia SQL/MM Still Image TYPES

Oracle Multimedia provides support for the SQL/MM Still Image Standard, which supports the storage, retrieval, and modification of images in the database and the ability to locate images using visual predicates.

The following object relational types for images and image characteristics are included in this support:

```
SI_StillImage
SI_AverageColor
SI_Color
SI_ColorHistogram
SI_FeatureList
SI_PositionalColor
SI_Texture
```

- Documentation of SQL/MM Still Image

Documentation of SQL/MM Still Image

For a complete description of this type within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `SQL/MM Still Image` in the *Oracle Multimedia Reference*.

281

Oracle Multimedia ORDVideo TYPE

The `Oracle Multimedia ORDVideo` object type supports the storage and management of video data.

Digitized video consists of the video data (digitized bits) and the attributes that describe and characterize the video data. Video applications sometimes associate application-specific information, such as the description of the video training tape, date recorded, instructor's name, producer's name, and so on, within the video data.

The video data can have different formats, compression types, frame rates, frame sizes, frame resolutions, playing times, compression types, number of colors, and bit rates depending upon how the video data was digitally recorded. `Oracle Multimedia ORDVideo` can store and retrieve video data of any data format. `Oracle Multimedia ORDVideo` can extract metadata from video data of a variety of popular video formats. `Oracle Multimedia ORDVideo` can also extract application attributes and store them in the `comments` attribute of the object in XML form.

- Documentation of ORDVideo

Documentation of ORDVideo

For a complete description of this type within the context of Oracle Multimedia, see `ORDVideo` in the *Oracle Multimedia Reference.*

282

MGD_ID Package Types

The MGD_ID package provides an extensible framework that supports current radio-frequency ID (RFID) tags with the standard family of EPC bit encodings for the supported encoding types. The MGD_ID Package also supports new and evolving tag encodings that are not included in the current EPC standard (EPC v1.1 specification). The MGD_ID package contains several predefined types.

See Also: *Oracle Database Development Guide* for more information.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using MGD_ID Package Object Types
- Summary of Types
- Summary of MGD_ID Subprograms

The method described in this reference chapter show examples based on the examples shown in the constructor functions.

The examples in this chapter assume that the you have run the following set of commands before running the contents of each script:

```
SQL> connect / as sysdba;
Connected.
SQL> create user mgduser identified by mgduser;
SQL> grant connect, resource to mgduser;
SQL> connect mgduser
Enter password: mgduserpassword
Connected.
SQL> set serveroutput on;
```

Using MGD_ID Package Object Types

This section contains topics that relate to using the `MGD_ID` package object types.

- Security Model

Security Model

You must run the `catmgd.sql` script to load the `DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL` package and create the required Identity Code Package schema objects in the `MGDSYS` schema.

`MGD_ID` is a `MGDSYS`-owned object type. Any `MGD_ID` subprogram called from an anonymous PL/SQL block is run using the privileges of the current user.

A user must be granted connect and resource roles to use the `MGD_ID` object type and its subprograms.

`EXECUTE` privilege is granted to `PUBLIC` for this ADT: `MGD_ID`.

A public synonym, by the same name, is created for this ADT: `MGD_ID`.

Summary of Types

Table 282–1 describes the MGD_ID Package object types.

Table 282–1 MGD_ID Package Object Types

Object Type Name	Description
MGD_ID_COMPONENT Object Type	Datatype that specifies the name and value pair attributes that define a component
MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY Object Type	Datatype that specifies a list of up to 128 components as name-value attribute pairs used in two constructor functions for creating an identity code type object
MGD_ID Object Type	Represents an MGD_ID object that specifies the category identifier for the code category for this identity code and its list of components

MGD_ID_COMPONENT Object Type

The MGD_ID_COMPONENT type is a datatype that specifies the name and value pair attributes that define a component.

Syntax

```
MGD_ID_COMPONENT as object (name  VARCHAR2(256),
                            value VARCHAR2(1024));
```

Attributes

Table 282–2 MGD_ID_COMPONENT Attributes

Attribute	Description
name	Name of component
value	Value of the component as a character

Examples

See the MGD_ID Constructor Function for an example.

MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY Object Type

The `MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY` type is a datatype that specifies a list of up to 128 components as name-value attribute pairs for use in two constructor functions for creating a product code type object with its list of components.

Syntax

```
MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY is VARRAY (128) of MGD_ID_COMPONENT;
```

Examples

See the MGD_ID Constructor Function for an example.

MGD_ID Object Type

The MGD_ID type represents an identity code in an RFID application. This type represents RFID tags with standard EPC bit encoding as well as tag encodings that are not included in the EPC standard.

Syntax

```
MGD_ID as object (category_id  VARCHAR2(256),
                  components   MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY);
```

Attributes

Table 282–3 MGD_ID Object Type Attributes

Attribute	Description
category_id	Category identifier for the code category of this code
components	List of components as name-value attributes

Methods

Table 282–5 describes the methods of the MGD_ID object type.

Table 282–4 MGD_ID Methods

Method	Description
MGD_ID constructor function	Creates an MGD_ID object based on the parameters passed in and returns self as a result
FORMAT function	Returns the string representation of the MGD_ID in the specified format
GET_COMPONENT function	Returns the string value of the specified MGD_ID component
TO_STRING function	Returns the string value of semicolon (;) separated component name value pairs of the MGD_ID object
TRANSLATE function	Returns the result of the conversion of the identifier from one format to the specified format

Examples

See the Summary of MGD_ID Subprograms section and the section about using the Identity Code package in *Oracle Database Development Guide* for examples.

Summary of MGD_ID Subprograms

Table 282–5 describes the subprograms in the MGD_ID object type.

All the values and names passed to the procedures defined in the MGD_ID object type are case insensitive unless otherwise mentioned. To preserve the case, enclose the values with double quotation marks.

Table 282–5 MGD_ID Object Type Subprograms

Subprogram	Description
MGD_ID Constructor Function	Creates an MGD_ID object based on the parameters passed in and returns self as a result
FORMAT Function	Returns the string representation of the MGD_ID object in the specified format
GET_COMPONENT Function	Returns the string value of the specified MGD_ID component
TO_STRING Function	Returns the string value of semicolon (;) separated component name value pairs of the MGD_ID object
TRANSLATE Function	Returns the result of the conversion of the identifier from one format to the specified format

MGD_ID Constructor Function

This constructor function constructs an identity code type object, MGD_ID. The constructor function is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definitions.

Syntax

Constructs an MGD_ID object type based on the category ID and a list of components.

```
MGD_ID (
   category_id      IN VARCHAR2,
   components       IN MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY)
 RETURN SELF AS RESULT DETERMINISTIC;
```

Constructs an MGD_ID object type based on the category ID, the identifier string, and the list of additional parameters required to create it.

```
MGD_ID (
   category_id        VARCHAR2,
   identifier         VARCHAR2,
   parameter_list      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN SELF AS RESULT DETERMINISTIC;
```

Constructs an MGD_ID object type based on the category name, category version, and a list of components.

```
MGD_ID (
   category_name      VARCHAR2,
   category_version   VARCHAR2,
   components         MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY)
 RETURN SELF AS RESULT DETERMINISTIC;
```

Constructs an MGD_ID object type based on the category name, category version, the identifier string, and the list of additional parameters required to create it.

```
MGD_ID (
   category_name      VARCHAR2,
   category_version   VARCHAR2,
   identifier         VARCHAR2,
   parameter_list      VARCHAR2)
 RETURN SELF AS RESULT DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 282–6 MGD_ID Constructor Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_id	Category identifier
components	List of component name value pairs
category_name	Category name, such as EPC
category_version	Category version. If NULL, the latest version for the specified category name will be used.

Table 282–6 (Cont.) MGD_ID Constructor Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
identifier	Identifier string in any format of an encoding scheme in the specified category. For example, for SGTIN-96 encoding, the identifier can be in the format of BINARY, PURE_IDENTITY, TAG_ENCODING, or LEGACY. Express this identifier as a string according to the appropriate grammar or pattern in the tag data translation (TDT) markup file. For example, a binary string consisting of characters 0 and 1, a URI (either tag-encoding or pure-identity formats), or a serialized legacy code expressed as a string format for input, such as gtin=00037000302414;serial=10419703 for a SGTIN coding scheme.
parameter_list	List of additional parameters required to create the object in the representation. The list is expressed as a parameter string containing key-value pairs, separated by the semicolon (;) as a delimiter between key-value pairs. For example, for a GTIN code, the parameter string would look as follows: filter=3;companyprefixlength=7;taglength=96

Usage Notes

- Use MGD_ID_UTL.EPC_ENCODING_CATEGORY_ID as category_id.
- If the category is not already registered, an error is raised.
- If the bit_length parameter is NULL, the bit_length is 8* the length of bit_encoding.
- If the component list does not contain all required components, an exception MGD_ID_UTL.e_LackComponent will be thrown.

Examples

The following examples construct identity code type objects.

Construct an MGD_ID object (SGTIN-64) passing in the category ID and a list of components.

```
--Contents of constructor11.sql
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category('1');
select MGD_ID('1',
              MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY(
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefix','0037000'),
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('itemref','030241'),
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('serial','1041970'),
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('schemes','SGTIN-64')
              )
             ) from dual;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();

SQL> @constructor11.sql
.
.
.
MGD_ID('1', MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY(MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefix', '0037000'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('itemref', '030241'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('serial', '1041970'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('schemes', 'SGTIN-64')))
```

```
.
.
.
```

Constructs an MGD_ID object (SGTIN-64) passing in the category ID, the tag identifier, and the list of additional parameters that may be required to create it.

```
--Contents of constructor22.sql
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category('1');
select MGD_ID('1',
              'urn:epc:id:sgtin:0037000.030241.1041970',
              'filter=3;scheme=SGTIN-64') from dual;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();

SQL> @constructor22.sql
.
.
.
MGD_ID('1', MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY(MGD_ID_COMPONENT('filter', '3'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('schemes', 'SGTIN-64'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefixlength', '7'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefix', '0037000'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('scheme', 'SGTIN-64'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('serial', '1041970'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('itemref', '030241')))
.
.
.
```

Construct an MGD_ID object (SGTIN-64) passing in the category name, category version (if NULL, then the latest version will be used), and a list of components.

```
--Contents of constructor33.sql
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
select MGD_ID('EPC', NULL,
              MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY(
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefix','0037000'),
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('itemref','030241'),
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('serial','1041970'),
               MGD_ID_COMPONENT('schemes','SGTIN-64')
              )
             ) from dual;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();

SQL> @constructor33.sql
.
.
.
MGD_ID('1', MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY(MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefix', '0037000'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('itemref', '030241'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('serial', '1041970'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('schemes', 'SGTIN-64')))
.
.
.
```

Constructs an MGD_ID object (SGTIN-64) passing in the category name and category version, the tag identifier, and the list of additional parameters that may be required to create it.

```
--Contents of constructor44.sql
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
select MGD_ID('EPC', NULL,
              'urn:epc:id:sgtin:0037000.030241.1041970',
              'filter=3;scheme=SGTIN-64') from dual;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();

SQL> @constructor4.sql
.
.
.
MGD_ID('1', MGD_ID_COMPONENT_VARRAY(MGD_ID_COMPONENT('filter', '3'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('schemes', 'SGTIN-64'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefixlength', '7'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('companyprefix', '0037000'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('scheme', 'SGTIN-64'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('serial', '1041970'),
                                    MGD_ID_COMPONENT('itemref', '030241')))
.
.
.
```

FORMAT Function

This function returns the string representation of the MGD_ID object in the specified format.

Syntax

```
FORMAT (parameter_list  IN VARCHAR2,
        output_format   IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 282–7 FORMAT Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
parameter_list	List of additional parameters required to create the object in the representation. The list is expressed as a parameter string containing key-value pairs, separated by the semicolon (;) as a delimiter between key-value pairs. For example, for a GTIN code, the parameter string would look as follows: filter=3;companyprefixlength=7;taglength=96
output_format	One of the supported output formats into which an MGD_ID component is formatted: ■ BINARY ■ LEGACY ■ TAG_ENCODING ■ PURE_IDENTITY ■ ONS_HOSTNAME

Examples

See the example for the GET_COMPONENT Function.

GET_COMPONENT Function

This function returns the value of the specified MGD_ID component.

Syntax

```
GET_COMPONENT (
   component_name  IN  VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 282–8 GET_COMPONENT Function Parameter

Parameter	Description
component_name	Name of component

Usage Notes

- If the code is an invalid code, meaning its structure is not defined in the metadata table, an error is raised.
- If the code is valid, but it does not contain the required component, NULL is returned.

Examples

The following example returns the general manager, object class, and serial number components for this GID-96 identity component:

```
--Contents of get_components.sql file
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
DECLARE
id  MGD_ID;
BEGIN
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_java_logging_level(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.LOGGING_LEVEL_OFF);
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
    ---------------
    --PURE_IDENTIT
    ---------------
    dbms_output.put_line('..Testing constructor with pure identity');
    ------------------------------------------------------------------------
    -- PURE_IDENTITY representation can be translated to BINARY and
    -- TAG_ENCODING ONLY when BOTH scheme and filer are provided.
    ------------------------------------------------------------------------
    id := MGD_ID('EPC', NULL, 'urn:epc:id:sgtin:0037000.030241.1041970',
'scheme=SGTIN-64;filter=3');
    dbms_output.put_line(id.to_string);
    dbms_output.put_line('filter         = ' || id.get_component('filter'));
    dbms_output.put_line('company prefix = ' || id.get_component('companyprefix'));
    dbms_output.put_line('itemref        = ' || id.get_component('itemref'));
    dbms_output.put_line('serial         = ' || id.get_component('serial'));
    dbms_output.put_line('BINARY format  = ' || id.format(NULL, 'BINARY'));
    dbms_output.put_line('PURE_IDENTITY format  = ' || id.format(NULL, 'PURE_IDENTITY'));
    dbms_output.put_line('TAG_ENCODING format   = ' || id.format(NULL, 'TAG_ENCODING'));
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;
```

```
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();
SQL> @get_component.sql
.
.
.
..Testing constructor with pure identity
category_id =1;filter = 3;schemes = SGTIN-64;companyprefixlength =
7;companyprefix = 0037000;scheme = SGTIN-64;serial = 1041970;itemref = 030241
filter         = 3
company prefix = 0037000
itemref        = 030241
serial         = 1041970
BINARY format  =10011000000000000010000011101100010000100000111111100110001100 10
PURE_IDENTITY format  = urn:epc:id:sgtin:0037000.030241.1041970
TAG_ENCODING format   = urn:epc:tag:sgtin-64:3.0037000.030241.1041970
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

TO_STRING Function

This function returns the semicolon (;) separated component name value pairs of the MGD_ID object.

Syntax

```
TO_STRING
 RETURN VARCHAR2;
```

Examples

The following example converts the MGD_ID object into a string value:

```
-- Contents of tostring3.sql file
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
DECLARE
id          MGD_ID;
BEGIN
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
 dbms_output.put_line('..Testing to_string');
   id := mgd_id('EPC', NULL, 'urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970', 'scheme=GID-96');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('mgd_id object as a string');
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(id.to_string);
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();
connect / as sysdba;
drop user mgduser cascade;

SQL> @tostring3.sql
.
.
.
..Testing to_string
mgd_id object as a string
category_id =1;schemes = GID-96;objectclass = 30241;generalmanager =
0037000;scheme = GID-96;1 = 1;serial = 1041970
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
```

TRANSLATE Function

This static function translates between different representations directly without first constructing an MGD_ID object. This method is overloaded. The different functionality of each form of syntax is presented along with the definitions.

Syntax

Converts the identifier in one format to another given the category name, the tag identifier, the parameter list, and the output format.

```
TRANSLATE (
   category_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   identifier       IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter_list   IN VARCHAR2,
   output_format    IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Converts the identifier in one format to another given the category name, category version, the tag identifier, the parameter list, and the output format.

```
TRANSLATE (
   category_name    IN VARCHAR2,
   category_version IN VARCHAR2,
   identifier       IN VARCHAR2,
   parameter_list   IN VARCHAR2,
   output_format    IN VARCHAR2)
 RETURN VARCHAR2 DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameters

Table 282–9 TRANSLATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
category_name	Name of category
category_version	Category version. If NULL, the latest version of the specified category name will be used.
identifier	EPC identifier, expressed as a string in accordance with one of the grammars or patterns in the TDT markup file. For example, a binary string consisting of characters 0 and 1, a URI (either tag-encoding or pure-identity formats), or a serialized legacy code expressed as a string format for input, such as gtin=00037000302414;serial=10419703 for a SGTIN coding scheme.
parameter_list	List of additional parameters required to create the object in the representation. The list is expressed as a parameter string containing key-value pairs, separated by the semicolon (;) as a delimiter between key-value pairs. For example, for a GTIN code, the parameter string would look as follows: filter=3;companyprefixlength=7;taglength=96

Table 282–9 (Cont.) TRANSLATE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
output_format	One of the supported output formats into which an MGD_ID component shall be converted: ■ BINARY ■ LEGACY ■ TAG_ENCODING ■ PURE_IDENTITY ■ ONS_HOSTNAME

Usage Notes

When converting from a pure identity representation to a binary representation, the filter value must be supplied as a value using the parameter_list parameter.

Examples

The following examples translates one GID-96 representation into another:

```
-- Contents of translate1.sql file
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.set_proxy('www-proxy.example.com', '80');
DECLARE
id          MGD_ID;
BEGIN
 DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.refresh_category(DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.get_category_id('EPC', NULL));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is BINARY, Output format is BINARY');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC',
NULL,'00110101000000000000100100001000100000000000011101100010000100000000000000000111111100110001100
010'
, NULL, 'BINARY'));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is BINARY, Output format is PURE_IDENTITY');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC',
NULL,'00110101000000000000100100001000100000000000011101100010000100000000000000000111111100110001100
010'
, NULL, 'PURE_IDENTITY'));
dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is BINARY, Output format is TAG_ENCODING');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC',
NULL,'00110101000000000000100100001000100000000000011101100010000100000000000000000111111100110001100
010'
, NULL, 'TAG_ENCODING'));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is TAG_ENCODING, Output format is BINARY');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC', NULL,
                     'urn:epc:tag:gid-96:0037000.30241.1041970',
                     NULL, 'BINARY'));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is TAG_ENCODING, Output format is
PURE_IDENTITY');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC', NULL,
                     'urn:epc:tag:gid-96:0037000.30241.1041970',
                     NULL, 'PURE_IDENTITY'));
dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is TAG_ENCODING, Output format is TAG_
ENCODING');
  dbms_output.put_line(
```

```
    mgd_id.translate('EPC', NULL,
                     'urn:epc:tag:gid-96:0037000.30241.1041970',
                     NULL, 'TAG_ENCODING'));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is PURE_IDENTITY, Output format is BINARY');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC', NULL,
                     'urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970',
                     NULL, 'BINARY'));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is PURE_IDENTITY, Output format is PURE_
IDENTITY');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC', NULL,
                     'urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970',
                     NULL, 'PURE_IDENTITY'));
  dbms_output.put_line('Category ID is EPC, Identifier is PURE_IDENTITY, Output format is TAG_
ENCODING');
  dbms_output.put_line(
    mgd_id.translate('EPC', NULL,
                     'urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970',
                     NULL, 'TAG_ENCODING'));
END;
/
SHOW ERRORS;
call DBMS_MGD_ID_UTL.remove_proxy();

SQL> @translate1.sql
.
.
.
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is BINARY, Output format is BINARY
00110101000000000000100100001000100000000000011101100010000100000000000000000011111110011000110010
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is BINARY, Output format is PURE_IDENTITY
urn:epc:id:gid:37000.30241.1041970
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is BINARY, Output format is TAG_ENCODING
urn:epc:tag:gid-96:37000.30241.1041970
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is TAG_ENCODING, Output format is BINARY
00110101000000000000100100001000100000000000011101100010000100000000000000000011111110011000110010
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is TAG_ENCODING, Output format is PURE_IDENTITY
urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is TAG_ENCODING, Output format is TAG_ENCODING
urn:epc:tag:gid-96:0037000.30241.1041970
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is PURE_IDENTITY, Output format is BINARY
00110101000000000000100100001000100000000000011101100010000100000000000000000011111110011000110010
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is PURE_IDENTITY, Output format is PURE_IDENTITY
urn:epc:id:gid:0037000.30241.1041970
Category ID is EPC, Identifier is PURE_IDENTITY, Output format is TAG_ENCODING
urn:epc:tag:gid-96:0037000.30241.1041970
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
.
.
.
```

283

Rule TYPEs

This chapter describes the types used with rules, rule sets, and evaluation contexts.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Using Rule Types

This section contains topics that relate to using the types used with rules, rule sets, and evaluation contexts.

Overview

This types in this chapter are used in rules and enable clients to evaluate rules with the rules engine.

See Also:

- Chapter 138, "DBMS_RULE"
- Chapter 139, "DBMS_RULE_ADM"
- *Oracle Streams Extended Examples* for examples that use rule types

Security Model

`PUBLIC` is granted `EXECUTE` privilege on the types described in this chapter.

See Also: *Oracle Database Security Guide* for more information about user group `PUBLIC`

Summary of Rule Types

Table 283–1 Rule Types

Type	Description
RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE Type on page 283-7	Specifies the value of a variable attribute
RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST Type on page 283-8	Identifies a list of attribute values
RE$COLUMN_VALUE Type on page 283-9	Specifies the value of a table column
RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST Type on page 283-10	Identifies a list of column values
RE$NAME_ARRAY Type on page 283-11	Identifies a list of names
RE$NAME_ARRAY Type on page 283-11	Identifies a list of name-value pairs
RE$NV_LIST Type on page 283-13	Identifies an object containing a list of name-value pairs and methods that operate on this list. This object type is used to represent the event context and the action context for a rule
RE$NV_NODE Type on page 283-15	Identifies a name-value pair
RE$RULE_HIT Type on page 283-16	Specifies a rule found because of evaluation
RE$RULE_HIT_LIST Type on page 283-17	Identifies a list of rules found because of evaluation
RE$TABLE_ALIAS Type on page 283-18	Provides the table corresponding to an alias used in a rule evaluation context
RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST Type on page 283-19	Identifies a list of table aliases used in a rule evaluation context
RE$TABLE_VALUE Type on page 283-20	Specifies the value of a table row using a `ROWID`
RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST Type on page 283-21	Identifies a list of table values
RE$VARIABLE_TYPE Type on page 283-22	Provides the type of a variable used in a rule evaluation context
RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST Type on page 283-24	Identifies a list of variables and their types used in a rule evaluation context
RE$VARIABLE_VALUE Type on page 283-25	Specifies the value of a variable
RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST Type on page 283-26	Identifies a list of variable values

Rule types are used with the following Oracle-supplied PL/SQL packages:

- `DBMS_RULE`
- `DBMS_RULE_ADM`

You can use the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package to create and administer rules, rule sets, and evaluation contexts, and you can use the `DBMS_RULE` package to evaluate rules.

When you use Oracle Streams, rules determine which changes are captured by a capture process, which messages are propagated by a propagation, which messages are applied by an apply process, and which messages are dequeued by a messaging client. The following Oracle Streams packages use rules:

- DBMS_APPLY_ADM
- DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM
- DBMS_PROPAGATION_ADM
- DBMS_STREAMS
- DBMS_STREAMS_ADM
- DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH

See Also: *Oracle Streams Concepts and Administration*

RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE Type

Specifies the value of a variable attribute.

> **Note:** Enclose the variable name and attribute name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE (
   variable_name    VARCHAR2(32),
   attribute_name   VARCHAR2(4000),
   attribute_value  ANYDATA);
```

Attributes

Table 283–2 RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE Attributes

Attribute	Description
`variable_name`	Specifies the variable used in a rule
`attribute_name`	Specifies the attribute name. The attribute name can be a multi-component name, such as `a1.b2.c3`.
`attribute_value`	Specifies the attribute value

RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST Type

Identifies a list of attribute values.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE;
```

RE$COLUMN_VALUE Type

Specifies the value of a table column.

> **Note:** Enclose the column name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE (
   table_alias   VARCHAR2(32),
   column_name   VARCHAR2(4000),
   column_value  ANYDATA);
```

Attributes

Table 283–3 RE$COLUMN_VALUE Attributes

Attribute	Description
table_alias	Specifies the alias used for the table in a rule
column_name	Specifies the column name
column_value	Specifies the column value

RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST Type

Identifies a list of column values.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$COLUMN_VALUE;
```

RE$NAME_ARRAY Type

Identifies a list of names.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$NAME_ARRAY AS VARRAY(1024) OF VARCHAR2(30);
```

RE$NV_ARRAY Type

Identifies a list of name-value pairs.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$NV_ARRAY AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$NV_NODE;
```

RE$NV_LIST Type

Identifies an object containing a list of name-value pairs and methods that operate on this list. This object type is used to represent the event context for rule set evaluation and the action context for a rule.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$NV_LIST AS OBJECT(
   actx_list  SYS.RE$NV_ARRAY);
```

Attributes

Table 283–4 RE$NV_LIST Attributes

Attribute	Description
actx_list	The list of name-value pairs

RE$NV_LIST Subprograms

This section describes the following member procedures and member functions of the SYS.RE$NV_LIST type:

- ADD_PAIR Member Procedure
- GET_ALL_NAMES Member Function
- GET_VALUE Member Function
- REMOVE_PAIR Member Procedure

ADD_PAIR Member Procedure

Adds a name-value pair to the list of name-value pairs.

Note: Enclose the name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE ADD_PAIR(
   name   IN  VARCHAR2,
   value  IN  ANYDATA);
```

Parameters

Table 283–5 ADD_PAIR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name in the name-value pair being added to the list. If the name exists in the list, then this procedure raises an error.
value	The value in the name-value pair being added to the list

GET_ALL_NAMES Member Function

Returns a list of all the names in the name-value pair list.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_ALL_NAMES()
RETURN SYS.RE$NAME_ARRAY;
```

GET_VALUE Member Function

Returns the value for the specified name in a name-value pair list.

> **Note:** Enclose the name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION GET_VALUE(
   name  IN  VARCHAR2)
RETURN ANYDATA;
```

Parameters

Table 283–6 GET_VALUE Function Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name whose value to return

REMOVE_PAIR Member Procedure

Removes the name-value pair with the specified name from the name-value pair list.

> **Note:** Enclose the name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE REMOVE_PAIR(
   name  IN  VARCHAR2);
```

Parameters

Table 283–7 REMOVE_PAIR Procedure Parameters

Parameter	Description
name	The name of the pair to remove

RE$NV_NODE Type

Identifies a name-value pair.

> **Note:** Enclose the name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$NV_NODE (
   nvn_name   VARCHAR2(30),
   nvn_value  ANYDATA);
```

Attributes

Table 283–8 RE$NV_NODE Attributes

Attribute	Description
nvn_name	Specifies the name in the name-value pair
nvn_value	Specifies the value in the name-value pair

RE$RULE_HIT Type

Specifies a rule found because of an evaluation.

See Also:

- CREATE_RULE Procedure on page 139-15
- ALTER_RULE Procedure on page 139-11

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$RULE_HIT (
   rule_name            VARCHAR2(65),
   rule_action_context  RE$NV_LIST);
```

Attributes

Table 283–9 RE$RULE_HIT Attributes

Attribute	Description
`rule_name`	The rule name in the form *`schema_name.rule_name`*. For example, a rule named `employee_rule` in the `hr` schema is returned in the form `"hr"."employee_rule"`.
`rule_action_context`	The rule action context as specified in the `CREATE_RULE` or `ALTER_RULE` procedure of the `DBMS_RULE_ADM` package

RE$RULE_HIT_LIST Type

Identifies a list of rules found because of an evaluation.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$RULE_HIT_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$RULE_HIT;
```

RE$TABLE_ALIAS Type

Provides the table corresponding to an alias used in a rule evaluation context. A specified table name must satisfy the schema object naming rules.

Note: Enclose the table name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

See Also: *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about schema object naming rules

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS IS OBJECT(
   table_alias  VARCHAR2(32),
   table_name   VARCHAR2(194));
```

Attributes

Table 283–10 RE$TABLE_ALIAS Attributes

Attribute	Description
`table_alias`	The alias used for the table in a rule
`table_name`	The table name referred to by the alias. A synonym can be specified. The table name is resolved in the evaluation context schema. The format is one of the following: *`schema_name.table_name`* *`table_name`* For example, if the *`schema_name`* is `hr` and the *`table_name`* is `employees`, then enter the following: `hr.employees`

RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST Type

Identifies a list of table aliases used in a rule evaluation context.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$TABLE_ALIAS;
```

RE$TABLE_VALUE Type

Specifies the value of a table row using a `ROWID`.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE(
   table_alias  VARCHAR2(32),
   table_rowid  VARCHAR2(18));
```

Attributes

Table 283–11 RE$TABLE_VALUE Attributes

Attribute	Description
`table_alias`	Specifies the alias used for the table in a rule
`table_rowid`	Specifies the rowid for the table row

RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST Type

Identifies a list of table values.

Note: Each table alias in the list in the list must be unique.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$TABLE_VALUE;
```

RE$VARIABLE_TYPE Type

Provides the type of a variable used in a rule evaluation context. A specified variable name must satisfy the schema object naming rules.

Note: Enclose the variable name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

See Also: *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about schema object naming rules

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE (
   variable_name             VARCHAR2(32),
   variable_type             VARCHAR2(4000),
   variable_value_function   VARCHAR2(228),
   variable_method_function  VARCHAR2(228));
```

Attributes

Table 283–12 RE$VARIABLE_TYPE Attributes

Attribute	Description
`variable_name`	The variable name used in a rule
`variable_type`	The type that is resolved in the evaluation context schema. Any valid Oracle built-in datatype, user-defined type, or Oracle-supplied type can be specified. See the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about these types.
`variable_value_function`	A value function that can be specified for implicit variables. A synonym can be specified. The function name is resolved in the evaluation context schema. It is executed on behalf of the owner of a rule set using the evaluation context or containing a rule that uses the evaluation context. See the "Usage Notes" for more information.
`variable_method_function`	Specifies a value function, which can return the result of a method invocation. Specifying such a function can speed up evaluation, if there are many simple rules that invoke the method on the variable. The function can be a synonym or a remote function. The function name is resolved in the evaluation context schema. It is executed on behalf of the owner of a rule set using the evaluation context or containing a rule that uses the evaluation context. See the "Usage Notes" for more information.

Usage Notes

The functions for both the for the `variable_value_function` parameter and `variable_method_function` parameter have the following format:

`schema_name.package_name.function_name@dblink`

Any of the following parts of the format can be omitted: *schema_name*, *package_name*, and *@dblink*.

For example, if the *schema_name* is hr, the *package_name* is var_pac, the *function_name* is func_value, and the *dblink* is dbs1.net, then enter the following:

```
hr.var_pac.func_value@dbs1.net
```

The following sections describe the signature of the functions.

Signature for variable_value_function

The function must have the following signature:

```
FUNCTION variable_value_function_name(
  evaluation_context_schema  IN VARCHAR2,
  evaluation_context_name    IN VARCHAR2,
  variable_name              IN VARCHAR2,
  event_context              IN SYS.RE$NV_LIST )
RETURN SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE;
```

Signature for variable_method_function

This function must have the following signature:

```
FUNCTION variable_method_function_name(
  evaluation_context_schema  IN VARCHAR2,
  evaluation_context_name    IN VARCHAR2,
  variable_value             IN SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE,
  method_name                IN VARCHAR2,
  event_context              IN SYS.RE$NV_LIST)
RETURN SYS.RE$ATTRIBUTE_VALUE;
```

RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST Type

Identifies a list of variables and their types used in a rule evaluation context.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$VARIABLE_TYPE;
```

RE$VARIABLE_VALUE Type

Specifies the value of a variable.

> **Note:** Enclose the variable name in double quotation marks (") if the name contains special characters.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE (
   variable_name  VARCHAR2(32),
   variable_data  ANYDATA);
```

Attributes

Table 283–13 RE$VARIABLE_VALUE Attributes

Attribute	Description
variable_name	Specifies the variable name used in a rule
variable_data	Specifies the data for the variable value

RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST Type

Identifies a list of variable values.

Syntax

```
TYPE SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE_LIST AS VARRAY(1024) OF SYS.RE$VARIABLE_VALUE;
```

284

UTL Streams Types

`UTL Streams Types` describes abstract types used with Oracle XML functionality. Four abstract PL/SQL streams are introduced and defined within the '`SYS`' schema. The streams may be referenced by `PUBLIC` and are described in the following sections.

> **See Also:** For more information, see Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using UTL Streams Types
- Summary of UTL Binary Streams Types

Using UTL Streams Types

- Security Model

Security Model

EXECUTE on UTL Streams Types is granted to PUBLIC.

Summary of UTL Binary Streams Types

Table 284–1 UTL Streams Types

Type	Description
UTL_BINARYINPUTSTREAM Type on page 284-5	Reads bytes and closes a stream.
UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM Type on page 284-6	Writes bytes and closes a stream.
UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM Type on page 284-7	Reads chars and closes a stream.
UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM Type on page 284-8	Writes chars and closes a stream.

UTL_BINARYINPUTSTREAM Type

This type is similar to `java.io.InputStream` in that it can only read and close a stream.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE Utl_BinaryInputStream AS OBJECT (

   MEMBER FUNCTION available (
        self    IN OUT NOCOPY  Utl_BinaryInputStream)
     RETURN INTEGER,

   MEMBER FUNCTION read (                                  -- #1
      self      IN OUT NOCOPY  Utl_BinaryInputStream,
      numBytes  IN             INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
    RETURN RAW,

  MEMBER PROCEDURE read (                                  -- #2
     self       IN OUT NOCOPY   Utl_BinaryInputStream,
     bytes      IN OUT NOCOPY  RAW,
     numBytes   IN OUT         INTEGER),

  MEMBER PROCEDURE read (                                  -- #3
     self       IN OUT NOCOPY   Utl_BinaryInputStream,
     bytes      IN OUT NOCOPY   RAW,
     offset     IN INTEGER,
     numBytes   IN OUT          INTEGER),

  member function close (
     self       In Out Nocopy   Utl_BinaryInputStream)

 ) NOT FINAL;
```

Attributes

Table 284–2 UTL_BINARYINPUTSTREAM Type Member Subprograms

Member Subprogram	Description
AVAILABLE	Returns the number of bytes available to be read
READ	■ #1 - Reads the number of bytes specified by numBytes (default is 1) and returns the bytes as a RAW. If there are no remaining bytes a value of NULL is returned. ■ #2 - Reads the number of bytes specified in numBytes into the parameter bytes. Additionally, the actual number of bytes read is returned in parameter numBytes. If this parameter is set to 0 then there are no more bytes to be read. ■ #3 - Reads the number of bytes specified in numBytes into the parameter bytes, beginning at the offset specified by parameter offset. The actual number of bytes read is returned in parameter numBytes. If this value is 0, then there are no additional bytes to be read.
CLOSE	Releases all resources held on the node to support the stream

UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM Type

This type is similar to `java.io.OutputStream` in that it can only write and close a stream.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE Utl_BinaryOutputStream AS OBJECT (

  MEMBER FUNCTION write (                                  -- #1
       self       IN OUT NOCOPY   sys.utl_BinaryOutputStream,
       bytes      IN              RAW,
       numBytes   IN              INTEGER DEFAULT 1)
  RETURN INTEGER,

  MEMBER PROCEDURE write (                                 -- #2
       self       IN OUT NOCOPY  sys.utl_BinaryOutputStream,
       bytes      IN NOCOPY      RAW,
       numBytes   IN OUT         INTEGER),

  MEMBER PROCEDURE write (                                 -- #3
       self       IN OUT NOCOPY  utl_BinaryOutputStream,        bytes      IN
NOCOPY      RAW,
       offset     IN             INTEGER,
       numBytes   IN OUT         INTEGER),

  MEMBER PROCEDURE flush (
       self       IN OUT NOCOPY  utl_BinaryOutputStream),

  MEMBER PROCEDURE close (
       self       IN OUT NOCOPY utl_BinaryOutputStream)

 ) NOT FINAL;
```

Attributes

Table 284–3 UTL_BINARYOUTPUTSTREAM Type Member Subprograms

Member Subprogram	Description
`WRITE`	■ #1 - Writes the number of bytes specified by `numBytes` (default is 1) from `RAW` into the stream. The actual number of bytes written is returned. ■ #2 - Writes the number of bytes specified in parameter `numBytes` from parameter bytes to the stream. The actual number of bytes written is returned in parameter `numBytes`. ■ #3 - Writes the number of bytes specified by `numBytes` to the stream, beginning at the offset specified by parameter offset. The actual number of bytes written is returned in parameter `numBytes`.
`FLUSH`	Insures that any buffered bytes are copied to the node destination
`CLOSE`	Frees all resources associated with the stream

UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM Type

This type is similar to `java.io.Reader` in that it can only read characters (chars) and close a stream.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE Utl_CharacterInputStream AS OBJECT (

   MEMBER FUNCTION available (
       self       IN OUT NOCOPY   utl_CharacterInputStream)     RETURN INTEGER,
MEMBER FUNCTION read (                                  -- #1
     self      IN OUT NOCOPY  utl_CharacterInputStream,      numChars   IN
INTEGER DEFAULT 1,       lineFeed   IN              BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
    RETURN VARCHAR2,  MEMBER PROCEDURE read (                                  --
#2
       self      IN OUT NOCOPY    utl_CharacterInputStream,        chars     IN
OUT NOCOPY    VARCHAR2,        numChars  IN OUT           INTEGER,       lineFeed
IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE),  MEMBER PROCEDURE read (
-- #3
       self      IN  OUT NOCOPY   utl_CharacterInputStream,        chars     IN
OUT NOCOPY    VARCHAR2,        offset    IN               INTEGER,        numChars
IN OUT          INTEGER,       lineFeed  IN               BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE),
MEMBER PROCEDURE close (
      self       IN OUT NOCOPY    utl_CharacterInputStream)  ) NOT FINAL;
```

Attributes

Table 284–4 UTL_CHARACTERINPUTSTREAM Type Member Subprograms

Member Subprogram	Description
`AVAILABLE`	Returns the number of bytes available to be read
`READ`	■ #1 - Returns the number of characters remaining to be read ■ #2 - Reads the number of characters specified by `numChars` (default value is 1) and returns the characters as a `VARCHAR2`. If the value of `lineFeed` is true (default value is `FALSE`) then the reading stops if a linefeed character is found. If there are no remaining characters a value of `NULL` is returned. ■ #3 - Reads reads the number of characters specified by parameter `numChars` into the parameter chars. Additionally, the actual number of characters read is returned in parameter `numChars`. If this value is 0, then there are no more characters to be read. If the value of `lineFeed` is `TRUE` (default is `FALSE`), then reading stops if a linefeed character is encountered.
`CLOSE`	Releases all resources held by the stream

UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM Type

This type is similar to `java.io.Reader` in that it can only read characters (chars) and close a stream.

Syntax

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE utl_CharacterOutputStream  AS OBJECT (

 MEMBER FUNCTION write (                                  -- #1
     self      IN OUT NOCOPY   utl_CharacterOutputStream,
     chars     IN              VARCHAR2,
     numChars  IN              INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
     lineFeed  IN              BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE)
  RETURN INTEGER,

 MEMBER PROCEDURE write (                                  -- #2
     self      IN OUT NOCOPY   utl_CharacterOutputStream,
     chars     IN OUT NOCOPY   VARCHAR2,
     numChars  IN OUT          INTEGER,
     lineFeed  IN              BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE),

 member procedure write (                                  -- #3
     self     IN OUT NOCOPY    utl_CharacterOutputStream,
     chars    IN  NOCOPY       varchar2,
     offset   IN               integer,
     numChars IN OUT           integer,
    lineFeed  IN               boolean default false),

 MEMBER PROCEDURE flush (
     self     IN OUT NOCOPY    utl_CharacterOutputStream),

MEMBER PROCEDURE close (
     self     IN OUT NOCOPY utl_CharacterOutputStream)

 ) NOT FINAL;
```

Attributes

Table 284–5 UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM Type Member Subprograms

Member Subprogram	Description
`WRITE`	■ #1 - Writes the number of characters specified by `numChars` (default is 1) from parameter chars into the stream and returns the actual number of characters written. If the value of `lineFeed` is TRUE (default is `FALSE`) a `lineFeed` character is inserted after the last character. ■ #2 - writes the number of characters specified by parameter `numChars`, from parameter `chars` into the stream. The actual number of characters written is returned in parameter `numChars`. If the value of `lineFeed` is true (default is `FALSE`) a `lineFeed` character is inserted after the last character. ■ #3 - Writes the number of characters specified by parameter `numChars`, from parameter `chars`, beginning at `offset` specified by parameter offset. The actual number of characters written is returned in parameter `numChars`. If the value of `lineFeed` is true (default is `FALSE`) a `lineFeed` character is inserted after the last character .
`FLUSH`	Copies all characters that may be contained within buffers to the node value

Table 284–5 (Cont.) UTL_CHARACTEROUTPUTSTREAM Type Member Subprograms

Member Subprogram	Description
CLOSE	Releases all resources held by the stream

285

XMLTYPE

`XMLType` is a system-defined opaque type for handling XML data. It as predefined member functions on it to extract XML nodes and fragments.

You can create columns of `XMLType` and insert XML documents into it. You can also generate XML documents as `XMLType` instances dynamically using the `SYS_XMLAGG SQL` function.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Summary of XMLType Subprograms

See Also:

- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*

Summary of XMLType Subprograms

Table 285–1 summarizes functions and procedures of the `XMLType`.

Table 285–1 XMLTYPE Subprograms

Method	Description
CREATENONSCHEMABASEDXML on page 285-4	Creates a non schema based XML from the input schema based instance.
CREATESCHEMABASEDXML on page 285-5	Creates a schema based `XMLType` instance from the non-schema based instance using the input schema URL.
CREATEXML on page 6	Static function for creating and returning an `XMLType` instance.
EXISTSNODE on page 285-8	Takes a `XMLType` instance and a `XPath` and returns 1 or 0 indicating if applying the `XPath` returns a non-empty set of nodes.
EXTRACT on page 285-9	Takes a `XMLType` instance and an `XPath`, applies the XPath expression and returns the results as an `XMLType`.
GETBLOBVAL on page 285-10	Returns the value of the `XMLType` instance as a `BLOB`
GETCLOBVAL on page 285-11	Returns the value of the `XMLType` instance as a `CLOB`.
GETNAMESPACE on page 285-12	Returns the namespace for the top level element in a schema based document.
GETNUMBERVAL on page 285-13	Returns the value of the `XMLType` instance as a `NUMBER`. This is only valid if the input `XMLType` instance contains a simple text node and is convertible to a number.
GETROOTELEMENT on page 285-14	Returns the root element of the input instance. Returns `NULL` if the instance is a fragment
GETSCHEMAURL on page 285-15	Returns the XML schema URL if the input is an XML Schema based.
GETSTRINGVAL on page 285-16	Returns the value of the `XMLType` instance as a string.
ISFRAGMENT on page 285-17	Checks if the input `XMLType` instance is a fragment or not. A fragment is a XML instance, which has more than one root element.
ISSCHEMABASED on page 285-18	Returns 1 or 0 indicating if the input `XMLType` instance is a schema based one or not.
ISSCHEMAVALID on page 285-19	Checks if the input instance is schema valid according to the given schema URL.
ISSCHEMAVALIDATED on page 285-20	Checks if the instance has been validated against the schema.
SCHEMAVALIDATE on page 285-21	Validates the input instance according to the XML Schema. Raises error if the input instance is non-schema based.
SETSCHEMAVALIDATED on page 285-22	Sets the schema valid flag to avoid costly schema validation.
TOOBJECT on page 285-23	Converts the `XMLType` instance to an object type.
TRANSFORM on page 285-24	Takes an `XMLType` instance and an associated stylesheet (which is also an `XMLType` instance), applies the stylesheet and returns the result as XML.

Table 285–1 (Cont.) XMLTYPE Subprograms

Method	Description
XMLTYPE on page 285-25	Constructs an instance of the `XMLType` datatype. The constructor can take in the XML as a `CLOB`, `VARCHAR2` or take in a object type.

CREATENONSCHEMABASEDXML

Member function. Creates a non-schema based XML document from a schema based instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION CREATENONSCHEMABASEDXML
return XMLType deterministic;
```

CREATESCHEMABASEDXML

Member function. Creates a schema based XMLType instance from a non-schema based XMLType value. It uses either the supplied SCHEMA URL, or the SCHEMALOCATION attribute of the instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION createSchemaBasedXML(
schema IN varchar2 := NULL)
return XMLType deterministic;
```

Parameter	Description
schema	Optional XMLSchema URL used to convert the value to the specified schema.

CREATEXML

Static function for creating and returning an XMLType instance. The string and CLOB parameters used to pass in the date must contain well-formed and valid XML documents. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`STATIC FUNCTION createXML(`
`  xmlData IN varchar2)`
`RETURN XMLType deterministic;`
	Creates the XMLType instance from a string.

`STATIC FUNCTION createXML(`
`  xmlData IN clob)`
`RETURN XMLType deterministic;`
	Creates the XMLType instance from a CLOB.

`STATIC FUNCTION createXML (`
`  xmlData IN clob,`
`  schema IN varchar2,`
`  validated IN number := 0,`
`  wellformed IN number := 0 )`
`RETURN XMLType deterministic;`
	This static function creates a schema-based XMLType instance using the specified schema and xml data parameters.

`STATIC FUNCTION createXML (`
`  xmlData IN varchar2,`
`  schema IN varchar2,`
`  validated IN number := 0,`
`  wellformed IN number := 0)`
`RETURN XMLType deterministic;`
	This static function creates a schema-based XMLType instance using the specified schema and xml data parameters.

`STATIC FUNCTION createXML (`
`  xmlData IN "<ADT_1>",`
`  schema IN varchar2 := NULL,`
`  element IN varchar2 := NULL,`
`  validated IN NUMBER := 0)`
`RETURN XMLType deterministic;`
	Creates an XML instance from an instance of an user-defined type.

`STATIC FUNCTION createXML (`
`  xmlData IN SYS_REFCURSOR,`
`  schema in varchar2 := NULL,`
`  element in varchar2 := NULL,`
`  validated in number := 0)`
`RETURN XMLType deterministic;`
	Creates an XML instance from a cursor reference. You can pass in any arbitrary SQL query as a CURSOR.

Syntax	Description
STATIC FUNCTION createXML (xmlData IN AnyData, schema in varchar2 := NULL, element in varchar2 := NULL, validated in number := 0) RETURN sys.XMLType deterministic parallel_enable	Creates an XML instance from ANYDATA.If the ANYDATAinstance contains an ADT, the XMLTypereturned is the same as would be returned for a call directly on the ADT. If the ANYDATAcontains a scalar, the XMLType contains a leaf node with the scalar value. The element name for this node is taken from the optional element string if present, and is "ANYDATA" if it is not.
STATIC FUNCTION createXML (xmlData IN blob, csid IN number, schema IN varchar2, validated IN number := 0, wellformed IN number := 0) return sys.XMLType deterministic	Creates an XML instance from a BLOB.
STATIC FUNCTION createXML (xmlData IN bfile, csid IN number, Schema IN varchar2, validated IN number := 0, wellformed IN number := 0) return sys.XMLType deterministic	Creates an XML instance from a BFILE.

Parameter	Description
xmlData	The actual data in the form of a BFILE, BLOB, CLOB, REF cursor, VARCHAR2 or object type.
schema	Optional Schema URL to be used to make the input conform to the given schema. **Caution**: Oracle does not support use of types generated by Schema Registration (see *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*).
validated	Flag to indicate that the instance is valid according to the given XML Schema. (Default is 0)
wellformed	Flag to indicate that the input is well formed. If set, then the database would not do well formed check on the input instance. (Default is 0)
element	Optional element name in the case of the ADT_1 or REF CURSOR constructors. (Default is NULL). **Caution**: Oracle does not support use of types generated by Schema Registration (see *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*).
csid	The character set id of input XML data.

EXISTSNODE

Member function. Checks if the node exists. If the XPath string is `NULL` or the document is empty, then a value of 0 is returned, otherwise returns 1. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description

`MEMBER FUNCTION existsNode(`
`  xpath IN varchar2)`
`RETURN number deterministic;`
	Given an XPath expression, checks if the XPath applied over the document can return any valid nodes.

`MEMBER FUNCTION existsNode(`
`  xpath in varchar2,`
`  nsmap in varchar2)`
`RETURN number deterministic;`
	This member function uses the XPath expression with the namespace information and checks if applying the XPath returns any nodes or not.

Parameter	Description
`xpath`	The XPath expression to test.
`nsmap`	Optional namespace mapping.

EXTRACT

Member function. Extracts an XMLType fragment and returns an XMLType instance containing the result node(s). If the XPath does not result in any nodes, then returns NULL. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
MEMBER FUNCTION extract(xpath IN varchar2) RETURN XMLType deterministic;	Given an XPath expression, applies the XPath to the document and returns the fragment as an XMLType.
MEMBER FUNCTION extract(xpath IN varchar2, nsmap IN varchar2) RETURN XMLType deterministic;	This member function applies the XPath expression and namespace mapping, over the XML data to return a XMLType instance containing the resultant fragment.

Parameter	Description
xpath	The XPath expression to apply.
nsmap	Optional prefix to namespace mapping information.

GETBLOBVAL

Member function. Returns a BLOB containing the serialized XML representation; if the BLOB returned is temporary, it must be freed after use.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getBlobVal(
   csid   IN   NUMBER)
 RETURN BLOB DETERMINISTIC;
```

Parameter	Description
csid	The desired character set ID of output BLOB

GETCLOBVAL

Member function. Returns a `CLOB` containing the serialized XML representation; if the `CLOB` returned is temporary, it must be freed after use.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getClobVal()
RETURN clob deterministic;
```

GETNAMESPACE

Member function. Returns the namespace of the top level element in the instance. Returns `NULL` if the input is a fragment or is a non-schema based instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getNamespace
return varchar2 deterministic;
```

GETNUMBERVAL

Member function. Returns a numeric value, formatted from the text value pointed to by the `XMLType` instance. The `XMLType` must point to a valid text node that contains a numerical value. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getNumberVal()
RETURN number deterministic;
```

GETROOTELEMENT

Member function. Gets the root element of the `XMLType` instance. Returns `NULL` if the instance is a fragment.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getRootElement
return varchar2 deterministic;
```

GETSCHEMAURL

Member function. Returns the XML Schema URL corresponding to the `XMLType` instance, if the `XMLType` instance is a schema-based document. Otherwise returns `NULL`.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getSchemaURL
return varchar2 deterministic;
```

GETSTRINGVAL

Member function. Returns the document as a string. Returns s string containing the seralized XML representation, or in case of text nodes, the text itself. If the XML document is bigger than the maximum size of the `VARCHAR2`, which is 4000, then an error is raised at run time.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION getStringVal()
RETURN varchar2 deterministic;
```

ISFRAGMENT

Determines if the XMLType instance corresponds to a well-formed document, or a fragment. Returns 1 or 0 indicating if the XMLType instance contains a fragment or a well-formed document.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION isFragment()
RETURN number deterministic;
```

ISSCHEMABASED

Member function. Determines whether the `XMLType` instance is schema-based or not. Returns 1 or 0 depending on whether the `XMLType` instance is schema-based.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION isSchemaBased
return number deterministic;
```

ISSCHEMAVALID

Member function. Checks if the input instance is conformant to a specified schema. Does not change the validation status of the XML instance. If a XML Schema URL is not specified and the xml document is schema based, the conformance is checked against the `XMLType` instance's own schema.

Syntax

```
member function isSchemaValid(
schurl IN VARCHAR2 := NULL,
elem IN VARCHAR2 := NULL)
return NUMBER deterministic;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`schurl`	`(IN)`	The URL of the XML Schema against which to check conformance.
`elem`	`(IN)`	Element of a specified schema, against which to validate. This is useful when we have a XML Schema which defines more than one top level element, and we want to check conformance against a specific one of these elements.

ISSCHEMAVALIDATED

Member function. Returns the validation status of the `XMLType` instance -- tells if a schema based instance has been actually validated against its schema. Returns 1 if the instance has been validated against the schema, 0 otherwise.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION isSchemaValidated
return NUMBER deterministic;
```

SCHEMAVALIDATE

Member procedure. Validates the XML instance against its schema if it hasn't already been done. For non-schema based documents an error is raised. If validation fails an error is raised; else, the document's status is changed to validated.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE schemaValidate(
   self IF OUT NOCOPY XMLType);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
self	(OUT)	XML instance being validated against the schema.

SETSCHEMAVALIDATED

Member function. Sets the `VALIDATION` state of the input XML instance.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE setSchemaValidated(
self IF OUT NOCOPY XMLType,
   flag IN BINARY_INTEGER := 1);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`self`	`(OUT)`	XML instance.
`flag`	`(IN)`	0 - `NOT VALIDATED`; 1 - `VALIDATED` (Default)

TOOBJECT

Member procedure. Converts the XML value to an object type using the XMLSCHEMA mapping, if available. If a SCHEMA is not supplied or the input is a non-schema based XML, the procedure uses cannonical mapping between elements and object type attributes.

Syntax

```
MEMBER PROCEDURE toObject(
SELF in XMLType,
object OUT "<ADT_1>",
schema in varchar2 := NULL,
element in varchar2 := NULL);
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
SELF	(IN)	Instance to be converted. Implicit if used as a member procedure.
object	(IN)	Converted object. An object instance of the required type may be passed in to this function
schema	(IN)	Schema URL. The mapping of the XMLType instance to the converted object instance may be specified using a schema. **Caution**: Oracle does not support use of types generated by Schema Registration (see *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*).
element	(IN)	Top-level element name. An XML Schema document does not specify the top-level element for a conforming XML instance document without this parameter. **Caution**: Oracle does not support use of types generated by Schema Registration (see *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*).

TRANSFORM

Member function. This member function transforms the XML data using the XSL stylesheet argument and the top-level parameters passed as a string of name=value pairs. If any of the arguments other than the parammap is `NULL`, then a `NULL` is returned.

Syntax

```
MEMBER FUNCTION transform(
xsl IN XMLType,
parammap in varchar2 := NULL)
RETURN XMLType deterministic;
```

Parameter	IN / OUT	Description
`xsl`	`(IN)`	The XSL stylesheet describing the transformation
`parammap`	`(IN)`	Top level parameters to the XSL - string of name=value pairs

XMLTYPE

XMLType constructor. The options are described in the following table.

Syntax	Description
constructor function XMLType(xmlData IN clob, schema IN varchar2 := NULL, validated IN number := 0, wellformed IN Number := 0) return self as result deterministic;	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based XMLType instance using the specified schema and xml data parameters.
constructor function XMLType(xmlData IN varchar2, schema IN varchar2 := NULL, validated IN number := 0, wellformed IN number := 0) return self as result deterministic;	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based XMLType instance using the specified schema and xml data parameters.
constructor function XMLType (xmlData IN "w<ADT_1>", schema IN varchar2 := NULL, element IN varchar2 := NULL, validated IN number := 0) return self as result deterministic;	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based XMLType instance from the specified object type parameter.
constructor function XMLType(xmlData IN SYS_REFCURSOR, schema in varchar2 := NULL, element in varchar2 := NULL, validated in number := 0) return self as result deterministic;	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based XMLType instance from the specified REF CURSOR parameter.
constructor function XMLType(xmlData IN AnyData, schema IN varchar2 := NULL, element IN varchar2 := NULL, validated IN number := 0) return self as result deterministic parallel_enable	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based XMLType instance from the specified ANYDATA parameter.If the ANYDATA instance contains an ADT, the XMLType returned is the same as would be returned for a call directly on the ADT. If the ANYDATA contains a scalar, the XMLType contains a leaf node with the scalar value. The element name for this node is taken from the optional element string if present, and is "ANYDATA" if it is not.
constructor function XMLType(xmlData IN blob, csid IN number, schema IN varchar2 := NULL, validated IN number := 0, wellformed IN number := 0) return self as result deterministic	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based XMLType instance from the specified BLOB parameter.

Syntax	Description

`constructor function XMLType(`
`  xmlData IN bfile,`
`  csid IN number,`
`  schema IN varchar2 := NULL,`
`  validated IN number := 0,`
`  wellformed IN number := 0)`
`return self as result deterministic`
	This constructor function creates an optionally schema-based `XMLType` instance from the specified `BFILE` parameter.

Parameter	Description
`xmlData`	The data in the form of a `BFILE`, `BLOB`, `CLOB`, `REF`s, `VARCHAR2` or object type.
`schema`	Optional Schema URL to be used to make the input conform to the given schema. **Caution**: Oracle does not support use of types generated by Schema Registration (see *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*).
`validated`	Indicates that the instance is valid to the given XML Schema.
`wellformed`	Indicates that the input is well formed. If set, then the database would not do well formed check on the input instance.
`element`	Optional element name in the case of the `ADT_1` or `REF CURSOR` constructors. (Default is `NULL`). **Caution**: Oracle does not support use of types generated by Schema Registration (see *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*).
`csid`	The character set id of input XML data.

Index

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X